

# Attachment D-1

This page intentionally left blank.



Building knowledge

# Job Order Contract Technical Specifications

Book 1   CSI Divisions 01 - 43   July 2019

Monterey County  
Roads and Bridges



**GORDIAN**<sup>®</sup>

This Page Intentionally Left Blank



## 01 General Requirements

01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 51 13 00	Electrical Renovation
01 51 13 00a	Panelboards
01 52 13 00	Temporary Facilities and Controls
01 54 23 00	Scaffolding Tubular Steel
01 54 23 00a	Unit Masonry Assemblies
01 56 26 00	Sediment Removal
01 56 26 00a	Erosion Control
01 71 23 16	Cutting and Patching
01 74 19 00	Construction Waste Management

## 02 Existing Conditions

02 32 13 00	Subsurface Drilling, Sampling, And Testing
02 41 13 13	Selective Demolition
02 41 13 13a	Portland Cement Concrete Removal
02 41 19 13	Building Demolition
02 61 00 00	Excavation And Handling Of Contaminated Material
02 61 13 00	Underground Storage Tank Removal
02 61 13 00a	Precision Testing Of Underground Fuel Oil Tanks
02 61 13 00b	Hydrostatic Pressure Testing Of Air Receiving Tanks
02 61 26 00	Disposal Of Hazardous Materials
02 61 26 00a	Removal Of Friable Asbestos-Containing Materials
02 82 16 00	Encapsulation (Lock-Down) Of Asbestos-Containing Materials
02 82 33 00	Removal Of Nonfriable Asbestos-Containing Materials
02 83 19 13	Removal And Disposal Of Lead-Containing Paint
02 83 19 13a	Lead Paint Related Abatement Procedures
02 83 19 13b	XRF Testing For Lead-Based Paint
02 83 19 13c	Lead Dust Wipe, Air And Tcpl Sampling And Analysis
02 87 13 33	Mold Remediation
02 87 16 13	Bird And Bird Waste Abatement

## 03 Concrete

03 01 30 71	Concrete Rehabilitation
03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 11 16 13	Rusticated Concrete Finishes
03 11 16 13a	Cast-In-Place Architectural Concrete
03 31 13 00	Cement Concrete Pavement
03 31 13 00a	Roller Compacted Concrete Pavement
03 31 13 00b	Pavement Joint Sealants
03 31 13 00c	Decorative Cement Concrete Pavement
03 31 13 00d	Portland Cement Concrete Overlays
03 31 13 00e	Steel Reinforced Portland Cement Concrete Overlays
03 31 13 00f	Fiber Reinforced Portland Cement Concrete Overlays
03 35 23 00	Exposed Aggregate Surface Concrete Walls
03 37 13 00	Shotcrete
03 37 13 00a	Glass Fiber Reinforced Concrete
03 41 16 00	Plant-Precast Structural Concrete
03 41 16 00a	Precast Lightweight Roof Slabs
03 41 23 00	Architectural Precast Concrete
03 41 26 00	Unbonded Post-Tensioned Concrete
03 53 14 00	Concrete Floor Topping
03 54 16 00	Cement-Based Underlayment

## 05 Metals

05 05 23 00	Structural Steel
-------------	------------------

05 12 23 00	Cold-Formed Metal Framing
05 14 13 00	Structural Aluminum
05 15 16 00	Ornamental Metal
05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 51 13 00	Metal Stairs
05 51 13 00a	Fabricated Spiral Stairs
05 52 13 00	Pipe And Tube Railings
05 53 13 00	Gratings
05 58 16 00	Ornamental Formed Metal

## 07 Thermal And Moisture Protection

07 11 13 00	Bituminous Dampproofing
07 11 19 00	EPDM Membrane Roofing
07 13 13 00	Bituminous Waterproofing
07 13 53 00	Self-Adhering Sheet Waterproofing
07 13 53 00a	Elastomeric Sheet Waterproofing
07 14 13 00	Hot Fluid-Applied Rubberized Asphalt Waterproofing
07 14 16 00	Cold Fluid-Applied Waterproofing
07 16 13 00	Modified Cement Waterproofing
07 16 16 00	Crystalline Waterproofing
07 16 19 00	Metal-Oxide Waterproofing
07 19 13 00	Water Repellents

## 09 Finishes

09 91 13 00	Exterior Painting
09 91 13 00a	High-Temperature-Resistant Coatings
09 91 33 00	Wood Stains and Transparent Finishes
09 96 00 00	High-Performance Coatings
09 96 56 00	Fiberglass Reinforced Epoxy Coating
09 96 66 00	Cementitious Coatings

## 10 Specialties

10 14 53 11	Traffic Signs
10 81 13 00	Oriented Flexible Netting Bird Barrier

## 11 Equipment

11 68 13 00	Playground Equipment And Structures
11 68 13 00a	Recreational Facilities
11 68 23 13	Playing Fields
11 82 19 00	Packaged Incinerators
11 82 26 00	Waste Compactors
11 82 26 00a	Food Service Equipment

## 13 Special Construction

13 47 13 13	Cathodic Protection
-------------	---------------------

## 22 Plumbing

22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
22 05 23 00a	Water Distribution
22 05 76 00	Sanitary Sewerage
22 05 76 00a	Storm Drainage Piping Specialties
22 07 19 00	Fire-Suppression Systems Insulation
22 07 19 00a	Plumbing Insulation
22 11 16 00	Common Work Results for Fire Suppression
22 11 16 00a	Common Work Results for Plumbing
22 11 16 00b	Common Work Results for HVAC
22 11 16 00c	Domestic Water Piping
22 11 16 00d	Sanitary Waste And Vent Piping
22 11 16 00e	Storm Drainage Piping
22 11 16 00f	Hydronic Piping
22 11 16 00g	Steam And Condensate Piping
22 11 16 00h	Refrigerant Piping
22 11 16 00i	General-Service Compressed-Air Piping
22 11 16 00j	Compressed-Air Piping For Laboratory And Healthcare Facilities
22 11 16 00k	Vacuum Piping For Laboratory And Healthcare Facilities
22 11 16 00l	Gas Piping For Laboratory And Healthcare Facilities
22 11 19 00	Electronic Air Cleaners
22 11 23 13	Water Distribution Pumps
22 11 23 13a	Packaged Booster Pumps
22 11 23 23	Water Supply Wells
22 11 23 23a	Hydronic Pumps
22 12 19 00	Surface Water-Storage Tanks
22 12 19 00a	Potable-Water Storage Tanks
22 12 23 13	Electric, Domestic Water Heaters
22 12 23 13a	Fuel-Fired, Domestic Water Heaters
22 12 23 26	Underground Storage Tanks
22 12 23 26a	Facility Fuel-Oil Piping
22 13 19 00	High-Efficiency Particulate Filtration
22 13 19 26	Interceptors
22 13 19 33	General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping
22 13 19 33a	General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping
22 13 29 13	Packaged Sewage Pumping Stations
22 13 29 13a	Lift Station
22 13 29 13b	Sewage Pumps

## 26 Electrical

26 01 50 51	Removal of Fluorescent Light Ballasts/Capacitors and Fluorescent Light Tubes
26 01 50 51a	Interior Lighting
26 01 50 51b	Exterior Lighting
26 05 00 00	Common Work Results for Electrical
26 05 13 16	Conductors And Cables
26 05 13 16a	Undercarpet Cables
26 05 13 16b	Medium-Voltage Cables
26 05 19 16	Common Work Results for Communications
26 05 19 16a	Common Work Results for Electronic Safety and Security
26 05 19 16b	Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables
26 05 19 16c	Communications Equipment Room Fittings
26 05 19 16d	Communications Backbone Cabling
26 05 19 16e	Communications Horizontal Cabling
26 05 19 16f	Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security
26 05 26 00	Lightning Protection
26 05 26 00a	Grounding And Bonding
26 05 26 00b	Overhead Electrical Distribution
26 05 29 00	Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems
26 05 29 00a	Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems
26 05 33 16	Raceways And Boxes
26 05 33 16a	Wiring Devices
26 05 53 00	Electrical Identification
26 09 23 00	Lighting Controls
26 09 23 00a	Lighting Control Devices
26 09 23 00b	Electrical Power Monitoring And Control

Table of Contents

26 09 23 00c Motor-Control Centers  
 26 09 23 00d Central Dimming Controls  
 26 09 23 00e Modular Dimming Controls  
 26 11 13 00 Secondary Unit Substations  
 26 11 16 00 Switchgear  
 26 12 13 00 Medium-Voltage Transformers  
 26 12 13 00a Low-Voltage Transformers  
 26 24 13 00 Electricity Metering  
 26 24 13 00a Enclosed Switches And Circuit Breakers  
 26 24 13 00b Switchboards  
 26 24 19 00 Enclosed Controllers  
 26 24 19 00a Power Distribution Units  
 26 25 00 00 Enclosed Bus Assemblies  
 26 28 13 00 Fuses  
 26 29 23 00 Variable Frequency Controllers  
 26 31 00 00 Photovoltaic Energy Equipment  
 26 32 13 13 Packaged Engine Generators  
 26 33 43 00 Central Battery Inverters  
 26 33 43 00a Nurse Call  
 26 33 43 00b Public Address and Mass Notification Systems  
 26 33 53 00 Static Uninterruptible Power Supply  
 26 35 33 00 Power Factor Correction Capacitors  
 26 36 13 00 Transfer Switches  
 26 43 13 00 Transient Voltage Suppression  
 26 55 68 00 Sports Lighting

27 Communications

27 05 26 00 Intercommunications and Program Systems  
 27 11 19 00 Loose-Tube Gel-Filled Fiber Optic Cables  
 27 51 33 00 Educational Intercommunications and Program Systems  
 27 53 13 00 Clock And Program Control

28 Electronic Safety And Security

28 46 00 00 Oil/Water Separator  
 28 46 21 33 Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System  
 28 46 21 33a Zoned (DC Loop) Fire-Alarm System

31 Earthwork

31 01 20 00 Earthwork  
 31 05 13 00 Subdrainage  
 31 11 00 00 Site Clearing  
 31 13 16 00 Tree Protection And Trimming  
 31 23 16 13 Excavation Support And Protection  
 31 23 16 26 Embankment  
 31 23 19 00 Dewatering  
 31 24 13 00 Levee Closure  
 31 25 14 13 Geosynthetic Fabric  
 31 25 14 23 Unit Pavers  
 31 25 14 23a Spray Applications, Seal Coats, And Surface Treatments  
 31 25 14 26 Silt Fences  
 31 31 16 13 Termite Control  
 31 31 19 13 Soil Sterilization  
 31 32 13 16 Soil Stabilization-Lime  
 31 32 19 16 Sewage Treatment Lagoons  
 31 32 19 16a Pond Reservoir Liners  
 31 36 13 00 Wire Mesh Gabions  
 31 37 00 00 Riprap

31 41 13 00	Drilled Piers
31 45 13 00	Soil Stabilization-Vibroflotation
31 62 23 13	Concrete-Filled Steel Piles

## 32 Exterior Improvements

32 01 11 53	Asphalt Paving
32 01 11 53a	Traffic Coatings
32 01 13 61	Crack Sealing Of Bituminous Pavements
32 01 16 71	Grinding/Grooving Pavement
32 01 16 71a	Cold Mix Recycling
32 01 16 74	Bituminous Rejuvenation
32 01 16 74a	Central Plant Hot-Mix Recycling
32 11 16 16	Crushed Stone Paving
32 11 16 16a	Crushed Stone
32 11 16 16b	Select Gravel
32 12 13 13	Bituminous Paving-Repair And Resurfacing
32 12 13 13a	Asphaltic Concrete Overlays
32 14 09 00	Exterior Plants
32 14 11 00	Asphalt Concrete Sidewalks
32 14 11 00a	Miscellaneous Sidewalks
32 14 11 00b	Precast Sidewalks And Pavers
32 14 33 00	Porous Unit Paving
32 14 33 00a	Vitrified Brick Pavement Replacement
32 16 13 13	Steel Curbs
32 17 13 23	Parking Control Equipment
32 17 13 23a	Prefabricated Control Booths
32 17 23 13	Track, Court, And Playground Markings
32 17 26 00	Tactile/Detectable Warning Tile
32 18 16 13	Playground Surface Systems
32 18 16 13a	Synthetic Running Track Surface
32 18 23 13	Lawns And Grasses
32 18 23 29	Colored Athletic Wearing Surface
32 18 23 29a	Synthetic Turf
32 31 11 00	Chain-Link Fences And Gates
32 31 13 13	High-Security Chain-Link Fences And Gates
32 31 19 00	Ornamental Metal Fences and Gates
32 31 29 00	Permanent Wood Fencing
32 32 13 00	Segmental Retaining Walls
32 35 16 00	Sound Barrier Walls
32 39 23 00	Miscellaneous Site and Street Furnishings
32 84 00 00	Modified Bitumous Protected Membrane Roofing
32 84 13 00	Irrigation Systems
32 91 13 16	Tree Relocation
32 91 19 13	Concrete Revetment
32 91 19 13a	Septic Tank Systems
32 94 43 00	Site Furnishings

## 33 Utilities

33 01 10 58	Repair And Maintenance Of Imhoff Tanks
33 01 10 58a	Sewer Line Cleaning
33 01 10 71	Pipe Lining
33 01 30 42	Repair And Maintenance Of Siphon Tank And Siphons
33 01 30 81	Underground Ducts And Utility Structures
33 05 07 13	Trenchless Excavation Using Microtunneling
33 11 13 00	Monitoring Wells
33 11 13 00a	Well Repair
33 14 13 23	Sand Drains
33 14 13 23a	Hydronic Distribution
33 14 13 23b	Ground-Loop Heat-Pump Piping
33 14 13 36	Steam Distribution
33 19 11 00	Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping
33 19 11 00a	Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping
33 42 11 00	Storm Drainage

Table of Contents

---

33 42 13 13 Culverts  
33 46 53 00 Relief Wells

34 Transportation

---

34 41 13 00 Electrical Traffic Control Signals  
34 71 13 13 Beam-Type Guardrail  
34 71 13 16 Active Vehicle Barriers



**SECTION 01 22 16 00 - NO SPECIFICATION REQUIRED**

1.1 GENERAL

- A. A separate specification is not required for this item. The description given in the line item of the Construction Task Catalog completely defines the item.

1.2 PRODUCTS - (Not Used)

1.3 EXECUTION - (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 22 16 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
01 22 20 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 22 23 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 01 51 13 00 - ELECTRICAL RENOVATION****1.1 DESCRIPTION OF WORK**

- A. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for electrical renovation. Products shall be as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**1.2 GENERAL****A. Quality Assurance**

1. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with following:
  - a. Electrical: National Fire Protection Association (NFPA): NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code (NEC).
  - b. Accessibility:
    - 1) Architectural Barriers Act of 1968 as amended (42 USC 4151-4157) and HUD implementing regulations (24 CFR Part 40).
      - a) Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards (UFAS).
    - 2) Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 as amended (29 USC 794) and HUD implementing regulations 24 CFR Part 8.
    - 3) Fair Housing Accessibility Guidelines (24 CFR Chapter 1).
    - 4) Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA) (42 USC §§ 12101, et seq.) and implementing regulations (28 CFR Part 35).

**B. Project Conditions**

1. Existing Conditions: Buildings will be occupied during construction. See Division 1 Section "Summary of Work." Do not interfere with use of occupied portions of building. Maintain free and safe passage to and from occupied areas.

**C. Scheduling And Sequencing**

1. Scheduling and Completion: Comply with requirements of Detailed Scope of Work.

**D. Alterations, Cutting And Protection**

1. Protection: Protect existing finishes, equipment, utilities and adjacent work, which is scheduled to remain, from damage.
2. Existing Operating Facilities: Confine operations to immediate vicinity of new work and do not interfere with or obstruct ingress or egress to and from adjacent facilities.

**1.3 PRODUCTS****A. Materials**

1. Electrical Materials and Devices: Comply with NFPA 70 (NEC):
  - a. Boxes: Galvanized steel, not less than 1.6 mm (0.0625 inch) thickness (NEC 370-20) grounded in accordance with NEC, Article 250, suitable for recess mounting.
    - 1) Provide boxes of appropriate shape and size for intended purpose.
  - b. Devices:
    - 1) Duplex Receptacles: 15 A or 20 A 115 V, UL Listed with screw side connections and corrugated bearing pads.
      - a) GFCI Outlets: 115 V, 60 Hz, 15/20 A rating, UL Listed.
    - 2) Switches: 15 A, 115 V, single pole, single throw switch, UL Listed, with side screw connections and corrugated bearing pads.



- a) Garbage Disposal: Heavy duty, 120/277 VAC, 60 Hz, single pole, single throw, 20 A rate, UL listed and CSA certified.
- 3) Cover Plates: Smooth plastic in color to match existing.
- c. Wiring: Insulated wire, Type NM 600 V with ground wire, sized as appropriate for intended purpose and in accordance with NEC.
  - 1) Aluminum Wire: Not allowed unless existing wiring is aluminum.
  - 2) Provide necessary fittings in accordance with NEC.

#### 1.4 EXECUTION

##### A. Examination

1. Units, Spaces and Areas to be Renovated: Inspect to become familiar with existing conditions and to take measurements which are necessary for renovation work to be completed in accordance with contract requirements.
  - a. Carefully inspect condition of existing spaces including, but not limited to walls, floors, plumbing, electrical, etc. as essential to successful completion of renovation work.
  - b. Survey each space and verify dimensions for work.

##### B. Preparation

1. Building Occupation: Carry out renovation work to cause as little inconvenience to occupants as possible. See Division 1 Section "Summary of Work."
2. Protection: Protect and be responsible for existing buildings, facilities, utilities, and improvements within areas of construction operations.
  - a. Tenant's Property: Be responsible for any damage or loss to residents' property and to other work. Replace any material, which, in opinion of the Owner, has become damaged to extent that it could not be restored to its original condition.
  - b. Take precautions to protect residents and public from injury from construction operations.

##### C. Laying Out Work

1. Discrepancies: Verify dimensions and elevations indicated in layout of existing work.
  - a. Prior to commencing work, carefully compare and check Drawings (if any), for discrepancies in locations or elevations of work to be executed.
  - b. Refer discrepancies among Drawings (if any), Specifications and existing conditions to the Owner for adjustment before work affected is performed.
    - 1) Failure to make such notification shall place responsibility on Contractor to carry out work in satisfactory, workmanlike manner.
2. Contractor: Responsible for location and elevation of construction contemplated by Construction Documents.

##### D. Location Of Equipment And Piping

1. Drawings (if any) indicating location of equipment, piping, ductwork, etc. are diagrammatic and job conditions shall not always permit their installation in location shown. When this situation occurs, bring condition to the Owner's attention immediately. Relocation will be determined in joint conference.
2. Contractor: Do not relocate any items without first obtaining the Owner's acceptance. Remove and relocate such relocated items at own expense if so directed.

##### E. Electrical Work

1. General: Install boxes, wiring, and devices as indicated and required to connect and control electrical devices in accordance with NFPA 70 (NEC).
  - a. Boxes: Solidly anchor to framing or blocking.
2. Removing Electrical Switch or Duplex Outlet (Non-Hazardous Locations):
  - a. Box to Remain:
    - 1) Remove electrical device; cap hot and neutral with set-screw wire connectors.



- 2) Attach ground wire to remaining box with solid screw attachment.
  - 3) Provide and install natural finish aluminum blank cover plate with screw fasteners integral to match size of box remaining.
  - b. Box to be removed:
    - 1) Remove electrical device and box and pull wire out of wall back to first circuit panel, disconnecting from circuit panel.
    - 2) Patch and repair hole in partition to match existing.
  3. Garbage Disposal Electrical Hook-up: See Section "Plumbing." Comply with NFPA 70 (NEC):
    - a. Wiring: Install from disposal through concealed spaces to house panel, anchoring wire, and providing necessary fittings.
    - b. Switch: Install above counter top backsplash.
  4. Range Hood Electrical Hook-up: See Section "Residential Appliances." Comply with NFPA 70 (NEC):
    - a. Electric service: Install insulated wire from range hood through concealed spaces to house panel, anchoring wire, and providing necessary fittings.
  5. Water Heater Electrical Hook-up: See Division 15 Section "Domestic Water Heaters." Comply with NFPA 70 (NEC).
  6. Furnace Electrical Hook-up: See Section "Furnaces." Comply with NFPA 70 (NEC).
  7. Smoke Detector Electrical Hook-up: See "Fire Alarm." Comply with NFPA 70 (NEC).
- F. Integrating Existing Work
1. Protection: Protect existing improvements from damage.
    - a. Where new work is to be connected to existing work, exercise special care not to disturb or damage existing work more than necessary.
    - b. Damaged Work: Replace, repair and restored to its original condition at no cost to the Owner.

END OF SECTION 01 51 13 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 01 51 13 00a - PANELBOARDS**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for panelboards. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Distribution panelboards.
  - b. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.
  - c. Load centers.
  - d. Electronic-grade panelboards.

## C. Definitions

1. SVR: Suppressed voltage rating.
2. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppressor.

## D. Performance Requirements

1. Seismic Performance: Panelboards shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
  - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

## E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
  - a. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings.
  - b. Detail enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - c. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
  - d. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
  - e. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
  - f. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
  - g. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
  - h. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. Submit on translucent log-log graph paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.
3. Seismic Qualification Certificates: Submit certification that panelboards, overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
4. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards.
5. Operation and maintenance data

## F. Quality Assurance

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
3. Comply with NFPA 70.



- G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards; install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.
  2. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NECA 407 **OR** NEMA PB 1.
- H. Project Conditions
1. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
    - a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
    - b. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without the Owner's written permission.
    - c. Comply with NFPA 70E.
- I. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace transient voltage suppression devices that fail in materials or workmanship within five years from date of Final Completion.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

- A. General Requirements For Panelboards
1. Fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
  2. Enclosures: Flush **OR** Surface **OR** Flush- and surface, **as directed**, -mounted cabinets.
    - a. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
      - 1) Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
      - 2) Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
      - 3) Kitchen or Wash-Down Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
      - 4) Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
      - 5) Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 5 **OR** Type 12, **as directed**.
    - b. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box.
    - c. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover.
    - d. Skirt for Surface-Mounted Panelboards: Same gage and finish as panelboard front with flanges for attachment to panelboard, wall, and ceiling or floor.
    - e. Gutter Extension and Barrier: Same gage and finish as panelboard enclosure; integral with enclosure body. Arrange to isolate individual panel sections.
    - f. Finishes:
      - 1) Panels and Trim: Steel and galvanized steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
      - 2) Back Boxes: Galvanized steel **OR** Same finish as panels and trim, **as directed**.
      - 3) Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for overcurrent protective devices and other components.
    - g. Directory Card: Inside panelboard door, mounted in transparent card holder **OR** metal frame with transparent protective cover, **as directed**.
  3. Incoming Mains Location: Top **OR** Bottom **OR** Top and bottom, **as directed**.
  4. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:
    - a. Material: Tin-plated aluminum **OR** Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity, **as directed**.





- b. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
  - c. Isolated Ground Bus: Adequate for branch-circuit isolated ground conductors; insulated from box.
  - d. Extra-Capacity Neutral Bus: Neutral bus rated 200 percent of phase bus and UL listed as suitable for nonlinear loads.
  - e. Split Bus: Vertical buses divided into individual vertical sections.
  5. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
    - a. Material: Tin-plated aluminum **OR** Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity, **as directed**.
    - b. Main and Neutral Lugs: Compression **OR** Mechanical, **as directed**, type.
    - c. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Compression **OR** Mechanical, **as directed**, type.
    - d. Feed-Through Lugs: Compression **OR** Mechanical, **as directed**, type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
    - e. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Compression **OR** Mechanical, **as directed**, type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
    - f. Gutter-Tap Lugs: Compression **OR** Mechanical, **as directed**, type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
    - g. Extra-Capacity Neutral Lugs: Rated 200 percent of phase lugs mounted on extra-capacity neutral bus.
  6. Service Equipment Label: NRTL labeled for use as service equipment for panelboards or load centers with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
  7. Future Devices: Mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.
  8. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Rated for series-connected system with integral or remote upstream overcurrent protective devices and labeled by an NRTL. Include size and type of allowable upstream and branch devices, listed and labeled for series-connected short-circuit rating by an NRTL.
  9. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals.
- B. Distribution Panelboards
1. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, power and feeder distribution type.
  2. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
    - a. For doors more than 36 inches (914 mm) high, provide two latches, keyed alike.
  3. Mains: Circuit breaker **OR** Fused switch **OR** Lugs only, **as directed**.
  4. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Plug-in **OR** Bolt-on, **as directed**, circuit breakers.
  5. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers; plug-in circuit breakers where individual positive-locking device requires mechanical release for removal.
  6. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Fused switches.
  7. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, electrically **OR** mechanically, **as directed**, held, general-purpose controller, with same short-circuit interrupting rating as panelboard.
    - a. Internal Control-Power Source: Control-power transformer, with fused primary and secondary terminals, connected to main bus ahead of contactor connection.
    - b. External Control-Power Source: 120-V branch circuit **OR** 24-V control circuit, **as directed**.
- C. Lighting And Appliance Branch-Circuit Panelboards
1. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.
  2. Mains: Circuit breaker **OR** Lugs only, **as directed**.
  3. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Plug-in **OR** Bolt-on, **as directed**, circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
  4. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, electrically **OR** mechanically, **as directed**, held, general-purpose controller, with same short-circuit interrupting rating as panelboard.



- a. Internal Control-Power Source: Control-power transformer, with fused primary and secondary terminals, connected to main bus ahead of contactor connection.
- b. External Control-Power Source: 120-V branch circuit **OR** 24-V control circuit, **as directed**.
5. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
6. Column-Type Panelboards: Narrow gutter extension, with cover, to overhead junction box equipped with ground and neutral terminal buses.

D. Load Centers

1. Load Centers: Comply with UL 67.
2. Mains: Circuit breaker **OR** Lugs only, **as directed**.
3. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Plug-in circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
4. Conductor Connectors: Mechanical type for main, neutral, and ground lugs and buses.

E. Electronic-Grade Panelboards

1. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1; with factory-installed, integral TVSS; labeled by an NRTL for compliance with UL 67 after installing TVSS.
2. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
3. Main Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on thermal-magnetic circuit breakers.
4. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on thermal-magnetic circuit breakers.
5. Buses:
  - a. Copper phase and neutral buses; 200 percent capacity neutral bus and lugs.
  - b. Copper equipment and isolated ground buses.
6. Surge Protection Device: IEEE C62.41-compliant, integrally mounted, plug-in **OR** wired-in **OR** bolt-on, **as directed**, solid-state, parallel-connected, modular (with field-replaceable modules) **OR** non-modular, **as directed**, type, with sine-wave tracking suppression and filtering modules, short-circuit current rating complying with UL 1449, second edition, and matching or exceeding the panelboard short-circuit rating, redundant suppression circuits, with individually fused metal-oxide varistors.
  - a. Accessories:
    - 1) Fuses rated at 200-kA interrupting capacity.
    - 2) Fabrication using bolted compression lugs for internal wiring.
    - 3) Integral disconnect switch.
    - 4) Redundant suppression circuits.
    - 5) Redundant replaceable modules.
    - 6) Arrangement with wire connections to phase buses, neutral bus, and ground bus.
    - 7) LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
    - 8) Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
    - 9) Form-C contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of system operation. Contacts shall reverse position on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.
    - 10) Four **OR** Six, **as directed**, -digit, transient-event counter set to totalize transient surges.
  - b. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating: 160 kA per mode/320 kA per phase **OR** 120 kA per mode/240 kA per phase **OR** 80 kA per mode/160 kA per phase, **as directed**.
  - c. Minimum single-impulse current ratings, using 8-by-20-mic.sec. waveform described in IEEE C62.41.2.
    - 1) Line to Neutral: 70,000 A.
    - 2) Line to Ground: 70,000 A.
    - 3) Neutral to Ground: 50,000 A.
  - d. Withstand Capabilities: 12,000 IEEE C62.41, Category C3 (10 kA), 8-by-20-mic.sec. surges with less than 5 percent change in clamping voltage.
  - e. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for grounded wye circuits with 480Y/277 **OR** 208Y/120 **OR** 600Y/347, **as directed**, -V, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall be as follows:



- 1) Line to Neutral: 800 V for 480Y/277 **OR** 400 V for 208Y/120 **OR** 1200 V for 600Y/347, **as directed**.
  - 2) Line to Ground: 800 V for 480Y/277 **OR** 400 V for 208Y/120 **OR** 1200 V for 600Y/347, **as directed**.
  - 3) Neutral to Ground: 800 V for 480Y/277 **OR** 400 V for 208Y/120 **OR** 1200 V for 600Y/347, **as directed**.
- f. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for 240/120-V, single-phase, three-wire circuits shall be as follows:
- 1) Line to Neutral: 400 V.
  - 2) Line to Ground: 400 V.
  - 3) Neutral to Ground: 400 V.
- g. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for 240/120-V, three-phase, four-wire circuits with high leg shall be as follows:
- 1) Line to Neutral: 400 V, 800 V from high leg.
  - 2) Line to Ground: 400 V.
  - 3) Neutral to Ground: 400 V.
- h. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for 240-, 480-, or 600-V, three-phase, three-wire, delta circuits shall be as follows:
- 1) Line to Line: 2000 V for 480 V **OR** 1000 V for 240 V **OR** 2500 V for 600 V, **as directed**.
  - 2) Line to Ground: 1500 V for 480 V **OR** 800 V for 240 V **OR** 2500 V for 600 V, **as directed**.
- F. Disconnecting And Overcurrent Protective Devices
1. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB): Comply with UL 489, with series-connected rating **OR** interrupting capacity, **as directed**, to meet available fault currents.
    - a. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
    - b. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
    - c. Electronic trip circuit breakers with rms sensing; field-replaceable rating plug or field-replaceable electronic trip; and the following field-adjustable settings:
      - 1) Instantaneous trip.
      - 2) Long- and short-time pickup levels.
      - 3) Long- and short-time time adjustments.
      - 4) Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and  $I^2t$  response.
    - d. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
    - e. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
    - f. Ground-Fault Equipment Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
    - g. Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupter (AFCI) Circuit Breakers: Comply with UL 1699; 120/240-V, single-pole configuration.
    - h. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker (MCCB) Features and Accessories:
      - 1) Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
      - 2) Lugs: Compression **OR** Mechanical, **as directed**, style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
      - 3) Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge (HID) lighting circuits.
      - 4) Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.



- 5) Communication Capability: Circuit-breaker-mounted **OR** Universal-mounted **OR** Integral **OR** Din-rail-mounted, **as directed**, communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Division 26 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring And Control".
  - 6) Shunt Trip: 120 **OR** 24, **as directed**, -V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 55 **OR** 75, **as directed**, percent of rated voltage.
  - 7) Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional **OR** with field-adjustable 0.1- to 0.6-second, **as directed**, time delay.
  - 8) Auxiliary Contacts: One SPDT switch **OR** Two SPDT switches, **as directed**, with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts and "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
  - 9) Alarm Switch: Single-pole, normally open contact that actuates only when circuit breaker trips.
  - 10) Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
  - 11) Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function with other upstream or downstream devices.
  - 12) Multipole units enclosed in a single housing or factory assembled to operate as a single unit.
  - 13) Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, for locking circuit-breaker handle in on **OR** off, **as directed**, position.
  - 14) Handle Clamp: Loose attachment, for holding circuit-breaker handle in on position.
2. Fused Switch: NEMA KS 1, Type HD; clips to accommodate specified fuses; lockable handle.
- a. Fuses, and Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Comply with requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Fuses".
  - b. Fused Switch Features and Accessories: Standard ampere ratings and number of poles.
  - c. Auxiliary Contacts: One **OR** Two, **as directed**, normally open and normally closed contact(s) that operate with switch handle operation.

#### G. Panelboard Suppressors

1. Surge Protection Device: IEEE C62.41-compliant, integrally mounted, solid-state, parallel-connected, non-modular type, with sine-wave tracking suppression and filtering modules, UL 1449, second edition, short-circuit current rating matching or exceeding the panelboard short-circuit rating, and with the following features and accessories:
  - a. Accessories:
    - 1) LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
    - 2) Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
    - 3) One set of dry contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, for remote monitoring of protection status.
2. Surge Protection Device: IEEE C62.41-compliant, integrally mounted, plug-in **OR** wired-in **OR** bolt-on, **as directed**, solid-state, parallel-connected, modular (with field-replaceable modules) **OR** non-modular, **as directed**, type, with sine-wave tracking suppression and filtering modules, UL 1449, second edition, short-circuit current rating matching or exceeding the panelboard short-circuit rating, and with the following features and accessories:
  - a. Accessories:
    - 1) Fuses rated at 200-kA interrupting capacity.
    - 2) Fabrication using bolted compression lugs for internal wiring.
    - 3) Integral disconnect switch.
    - 4) Redundant suppression circuits.
    - 5) Redundant replaceable modules.
    - 6) Arrangement with wire connections to phase buses, neutral bus, and ground bus.
    - 7) LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
    - 8) Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
    - 9) Form-C contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of system operation. Contacts shall reverse position



- on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.
- 10) Four **OR** Six, **as directed**, -digit, transient-event counter set to totalize transient surges.
  - b. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating: 160 kA per mode/320 kA per phase **OR** 120 kA per mode/240 kA per phase **OR** 80 kA per mode/160 kA per phase, **as directed**.
  - c. Minimum single-impulse current ratings, using 8-by-20-mic.sec. waveform described in IEEE C62.41.2.
    - 1) Line to Neutral: 70,000 A.
    - 2) Line to Ground: 70,000 A.
    - 3) Neutral to Ground: 50,000 A.
  - d. Withstand Capabilities: 12,000 IEEE C62.41, Category C3 (10 kA), 8-by-20-mic.sec. surges with less than 5 percent change in clamping voltage.
  - e. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for grounded wye circuits with 480Y/277 **OR** 208Y/120 **OR** 600Y/347, **as directed**, -V, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall be as follows:
    - 1) Line to Neutral: 800 V for 480Y/277 **OR** 400 V for 208Y/120 **OR** 1200 V for 600Y/347, **as directed**.
    - 2) Line to Ground: 800 V for 480Y/277 **OR** 400 V for 208Y/120 **OR** 1200 V for 600Y/347, **as directed**.
    - 3) Neutral to Ground: 800 V for 480Y/277 **OR** 400 V for 208Y/120 **OR** 1200 V for 600Y/347, **as directed**.
  - f. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for 240/120-V, single-phase, three-wire circuits shall be as follows:
    - 1) Line to Neutral: 400 V.
    - 2) Line to Ground: 400 V.
    - 3) Neutral to Ground: 400 V.
  - g. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for 240/120-V, three-phase, four-wire circuits with high leg shall be as follows:
    - 1) Line to Neutral: 400 V, 800 V from high leg.
    - 2) Line to Ground: 400 V.
    - 3) Neutral to Ground: 400 V.
  - h. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for 240-, 480-, or 600-V, three-phase, three-wire, delta circuits shall be as follows:
    - 1) Line to Line: 2000 V for 480 V **OR** 1000 V for 240 V **OR** 2500 V for 600 V, **as directed**.
    - 2) Line to Ground: 1500 V for 480 V **OR** 800 V for 240 V **OR** 2500 V for 600 V, **as directed**.
- H. Accessory Components And Features
1. Accessory Set: Include tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.
  2. Portable Test Set: For testing functions of solid-state trip devices without removing from panelboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing panelboard meters and switchboard class relays.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation

1. Install panelboards and accessories according to NECA 407 **OR** NEMA PB 1.1, **as directed**.
2. Equipment Mounting: Install panelboards on concrete bases, 4-inch (100-mm) nominal thickness. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
  - a. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around full perimeter of base.



- b. For panelboards, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
- c. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
- d. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to panelboards.
- e. Attach panelboard to the vertical finished or structural surface behind the panelboard.
3. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from panelboards.
4. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems".
5. Mount top of trim 90 inches (2286 mm) above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
6. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.
7. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
  - a. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
8. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
9. Stub four 1-inch (27-GRC) empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub four 1-inch (27-GRC) empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.
10. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties after completing load balancing, **as directed**.
11. Comply with NECA 1.

#### B. Identification

1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
2. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads after balancing panelboard loads, **as directed**; incorporate the Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Use a computer or typewriter to create directory; handwritten directories are not acceptable.
3. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
4. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in distribution panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".

#### C. Field Quality Control

1. Perform tests and inspections.
2. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
  - a. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
  - b. Test continuity of each circuit.
3. Tests and Inspections:
  - a. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - b. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
  - c. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
    - 1) Initial Infrared Scanning: After Final Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each panelboard. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
    - 2) Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each panelboard 11 months after date of Final Completion.
    - 3) Instruments and Equipment:



- a) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
  4. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
  5. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
- D. Adjusting
1. Adjust moving parts and operable component to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
  2. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated **OR** as specified in Division 26 Section "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study", **as directed**.
  3. Load Balancing: After Final Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, measure load balancing and make circuit changes.
    - a. Measure as directed during period of normal system loading.
    - b. Perform load-balancing circuit changes outside normal occupancy/working schedule of the facility and at time directed. Avoid disrupting critical 24-hour services such as fax machines and on-line data processing, computing, transmitting, and receiving equipment.
    - c. After circuit changes, recheck loads during normal load period. Record all load readings before and after changes and submit test records.
    - d. Tolerance: Difference exceeding 20 percent between phase loads, within a panelboard, is not acceptable. Rebalance and recheck as necessary to meet this minimum requirement.
- E. Protection
1. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 01 51 13 00a



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
01 51 26 00	01 51 13 00	Electrical Renovation

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 01 52 13 00 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Summary

1. This Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.

#### B. Definitions

1. Permanent Enclosure: As determined by the Owner, permanent or temporary roofing is complete, insulated, and weathertight; exterior walls are insulated and weathertight; and all openings are closed with permanent construction or substantial temporary closures.

#### C. Use Charges

1. General: Cost or use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum. Allow other entities to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, the Owner's construction forces, the Owner, occupants of Project, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Water Service: Water from the Owner's existing water system is available for use without metering and without payment of use charges. Provide connections and extensions of services as required for construction operations.
3. Electric Power Service: Electric power from the Owner's existing system is available for use without metering and without payment of use charges. Provide connections and extensions of services as required for construction operations.

#### D. Submittals

1. Site Plan: Show temporary facilities, utility hookups, staging areas, and parking areas for construction personnel.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.
2. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.

#### F. Project Conditions

1. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Installer of each permanent service shall assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before the Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Materials

1. Pavement: Comply with Division 32 Section(s) "Asphalt Paving" OR "Concrete Paving", **as directed**.
2. Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch (50-mm), 0.148-inch- (3.76-mm-) thick, galvanized steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet (1.8 m) high with galvanized steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch- (60-mm-) OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch- (73-mm-) OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch- (42-mm-) OD top rails **OR** with galvanized barbed-wire top strand, **as directed**.
3. Portable Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch (50-mm), 9-gage, galvanized steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet (1.8 m) high with galvanized steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch- (60-mm-) OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch- (73-mm-) OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch- (42-



mm-) OD top and bottom rails. Provide concrete **OR** galvanized steel, **as directed**, bases for supporting posts.

4. Wood Enclosure Fence: Plywood, 6 feet (1.8 m) **OR** 8 feet (2.4 m), **as directed**, high, framed with four 2-by-4-inch (50-by-100-mm) rails, with preservative-treated wood posts spaced not more than 8 feet (2.4 m) apart.
5. Lumber and Plywood: Comply with requirements in Division 06 Section(s) "Rough Carpentry" OR "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry", **as directed**.
6. Gypsum Board: Minimum 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) thick by 48 inches (1219 mm) wide by maximum available lengths; regular-type panels with tapered edges. Comply with ASTM C 36/C 36M.
7. Insulation: Unfaced mineral-fiber blanket, manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively.
8. Paint: Comply with requirements in Division 09.

#### B. Temporary Facilities

1. Field Offices, General: Prefabricated or mobile units with serviceable finishes, temperature controls, and foundations adequate for normal loading.
2. Common-Use Field Office: Of sufficient size to accommodate needs of construction personnel. Keep office clean and orderly. Furnish and equip offices as follows:
  - a. Furniture required for Project-site documents including file cabinets, plan tables, plan racks, and bookcases.
  - b. Conference room of sufficient size to accommodate meetings of 10 individuals. Provide electrical power service and 120-V ac duplex receptacles, with not less than 1 receptacle on each wall. Furnish room with conference table, chairs, and 4-foot- (1.2-m-) square tack board.
  - c. Drinking water and private toilet.
  - d. Coffee machine and supplies.
  - e. Heating and cooling equipment necessary to maintain a uniform indoor temperature of 68 to 72 deg F (20 to 22 deg C).
  - f. Lighting fixtures capable of maintaining average illumination of 20 fc (215 lx) at desk height.
3. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment for construction operations.
  - a. Store combustible materials apart from building.

#### C. Equipment

1. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.
2. HVAC Equipment: Unless the Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system, provide vented, self-contained, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.
  - a. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open-flame heaters, or salamander-type heating units is prohibited.
  - b. Heating Units: Listed and labeled for type of fuel being consumed, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
  - c. Permanent HVAC System: If the Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system for temporary use during construction, provide filter with MERV of 8 at each return air grille in system and remove at end of construction.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation, General

1. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.



- a. For greenfield sites if reduced site disturbance is required for LEED-NC Credit SS 5.1: Locate facilities to limit site disturbance as specified in General Requirements.
  2. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.
- B. Temporary Utility Installation
1. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.
    - a. Arrange with utility company, the Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
  2. Sewers and Drainage: Provide temporary utilities to remove effluent lawfully.
    - a. Connect temporary sewers to municipal system **OR** private system indicated, **as directed**, as directed by authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Water Service: Install water service and distribution piping in sizes and pressures adequate for construction.  
**OR**  
Water Service: Use of the Owner's existing water service facilities will be permitted, as long as facilities are cleaned and maintained in a condition acceptable to the Owner. At Final Completion, restore these facilities to condition existing before initial use.
    - a. Where installations below an outlet might be damaged by spillage or leakage, provide a drip pan of suitable size to minimize water damage. Drain accumulated water promptly from pans.
  4. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, and drinking water for use of construction personnel. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.
    - a. Toilets: Use of the Owner's existing toilet facilities will be permitted, as long as facilities are cleaned and maintained in a condition acceptable to the Owner. At Final Completion, restore these facilities to condition existing before initial use.
  5. Heating **OR** Heating and Cooling, **as directed**: Provide temporary heating **OR** heating and cooling, **as directed**, required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.
  6. Ventilation and Humidity Control: Provide temporary ventilation required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed. Coordinate ventilation requirements to produce ambient condition required and minimize energy consumption.
  7. Electric Power Service: Use of the Owner's existing electric power service will be permitted, as long as equipment is maintained in a condition acceptable to the Owner.  
**OR**  
Electric Power Service: Provide electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics required for construction operations.
    - a. Install electric power service overhead **OR** underground, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Connect temporary service to the Owner's existing power source, as directed by the Owner.
  8. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.
    - a. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.
    - b. Install lighting for Project identification sign.
  9. Telephone Service: Provide temporary telephone service in common-use facilities for use by all construction personnel. Install one telephone line for each field office.
    - a. Provide additional telephone lines for the following:
      - 1) Provide a dedicated telephone line for each facsimile machine and computer in each field office.



- b. At each telephone, post a list of important telephone numbers.
  - 1) Police and fire departments.
  - 2) Ambulance service.
  - 3) Contractor's home office.
  - 4) the Owner's office.
  - 5) the Owner's office.
  - 6) Principal subcontractors' field and home offices.
- c. Provide superintendent with cellular telephone or portable two-way radio for use when away from field office.
- 10. Electronic Communication Service: Provide temporary electronic communication service, including electronic mail, in common-use facilities.
  - a. Provide DSL **OR** T-1 line, **as directed**, in primary field office.

### C. Support Facilities Installation

- 1. General: Comply with the following:
  - a. Provide incombustible construction for offices, shops, and sheds located within construction area or within 30 feet (9 m) of building lines. Comply with NFPA 241.
  - b. Maintain support facilities until near Final Completion. Remove before Final Completion. Personnel remaining after Final Completion will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to the Owner.
- 2. Temporary Roads and Paved Areas: Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Locate temporary roads and paved areas as indicated **OR** within construction limits indicated, **as directed**, on Drawings.
  - a. Provide dust-control treatment that is nonpolluting and nontracking. Reapply treatment as required to minimize dust.
- OR**
- 3. Temporary Roads and Paved Areas: Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Locate temporary roads and paved areas in same location as permanent roads and paved areas. Extend temporary roads and paved areas, within construction limits indicated, as necessary for construction operations.
  - a. Coordinate elevations of temporary roads and paved areas with permanent roads and paved areas.
  - b. Prepare subgrade and install subbase and base for temporary roads and paved areas according to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".
  - c. Recondition base after temporary use, including removing contaminated material, regrading, proofrolling, compacting, and testing.
  - d. Delay installation of final course of permanent hot-mix asphalt pavement until immediately before Final Completion. Repair hot-mix asphalt base-course pavement before installation of final course according to Division 32 Section "Asphalt Paving".
- 4. Traffic Controls: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - a. Protect existing site improvements to remain including curbs, pavement, and utilities.
  - b. Maintain access for fire-fighting equipment and access to fire hydrants.
- 5. Parking: Provide temporary **OR** Use designated areas of the Owner's existing, **as directed**, parking areas for construction personnel.
- 6. Dewatering Facilities and Drains: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Maintain Project site, excavations, and construction free of water.
  - a. Dispose of rainwater in a lawful manner that will not result in flooding Project or adjoining properties nor endanger permanent Work or temporary facilities.
  - b. Remove snow and ice as required to minimize accumulations.
- 7. Project Identification and Temporary Signs: Provide Project identification and other signs as indicated on Drawings, **OR as directed**. Install signs where indicated to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to Project. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.
  - a. Provide temporary, directional signs for construction personnel and visitors.
  - b. Maintain and touchup signs so they are legible at all times.



8. Waste Disposal Facilities: Provide waste-collection containers in sizes adequate to handle waste from construction operations. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with General Requirements for progress cleaning requirements.
9. Lifts and Hoists: Provide facilities necessary for hoisting materials and personnel.
  - a. Truck cranes and similar devices used for hoisting materials are considered "tools and equipment" and not temporary facilities.
10. Temporary Elevator Use: Refer to Division 14 for temporary use of new elevators.
11. Existing Elevator Use: Use of the Owner's existing elevators will be permitted, as long as elevators are cleaned and maintained in a condition acceptable to the Owner. At Final Completion, restore elevators to condition existing before initial use, including replacing worn cables, guide shoes, and similar items of limited life.
  - a. Do not load elevators beyond their rated weight capacity.
  - b. Provide protective coverings, barriers, devices, signs, or other procedures to protect elevator car and entrance doors and frame. If, despite such protection, elevators become damaged, engage elevator Installer to restore damaged work so no evidence remains of correction work. Return items that cannot be refinished in field to the shop, make required repairs and refinish entire unit, or provide new units as required.
12. Temporary Stairs: Until permanent stairs are available, provide temporary stairs where ladders are not adequate.
13. Existing Stair Usage: Use of the Owner's existing stairs will be permitted, as long as stairs are cleaned and maintained in a condition acceptable to the Owner. At Final Completion, restore stairs to condition existing before initial use.
  - a. Provide protective coverings, barriers, devices, signs, or other procedures to protect stairs and to maintain means of egress. If, despite such protection, stairs become damaged, restore damaged areas so no evidence remains of correction work.
14. Temporary Use of Permanent Stairs: Cover finished, permanent stairs with protective covering of plywood or similar material so finishes will be undamaged at time of acceptance.

D. Security And Protection Facilities Installation

1. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction in ways and by methods that comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.
2. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Provide measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff and airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways, according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - a. Inspect, repair, and maintain erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
3. Stormwater Control: Comply with authorities having jurisdiction. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.
4. Tree and Plant Protection: Install temporary fencing located as indicated or outside the drip line of trees to protect vegetation from damage from construction operations. Protect tree root systems from damage, flooding, and erosion.
5. Pest Control: Engage pest-control service to recommend practices to minimize attraction and harboring of rodents, roaches, and other pests and to perform extermination and control procedures at regular intervals so Project will be free of pests and their residues at Final Completion. Obtain extended warranty for the Owner. Perform control operations lawfully, using environmentally safe materials.
6. Site Enclosure Fence: Before construction operations begin **OR** When excavation begins, **as directed**, furnish and install site enclosure fence in a manner that will prevent people and animals from easily entering site except by entrance gates.
  - a. Extent of Fence: As required to enclose entire Project site or portion determined sufficient to accommodate construction operations **OR** As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
  - b. Maintain security by limiting number of keys and restricting distribution to authorized personnel. Provide the Owner with one set of keys, **as directed**.



7. Security Enclosure and Lockup: Install substantial temporary enclosure around partially completed areas of construction. Provide lockable entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft, and similar violations of security.
8. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
9. Covered Walkway: Erect structurally adequate, protective, covered walkway for passage of individuals along adjacent public street(s). Coordinate with entrance gates, other facilities, and obstructions. Comply with regulations of authorities having jurisdiction and requirements indicated on Drawings, **OR as directed**.
  - a. Construct covered walkways using scaffold or shoring framing.
  - b. Provide wood-plank overhead decking, protective plywood enclosure walls, handrails, barricades, warning signs, lights, safe and well-drained walkways, and similar provisions for protection and safe passage.
  - c. Extend back wall beyond the structure to complete enclosure fence.
  - d. Paint and maintain in a manner approved by the Owner.
10. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weathertight enclosure for building exterior.
  - a. Where heating or cooling is needed and permanent enclosure is not complete, insulate temporary enclosures.
11. Temporary Partitions: Provide floor-to-ceiling dustproof partitions to limit dust and dirt migration and to separate areas occupied by the Owner and tenants from fumes and noise.
  - a. Construct dustproof partitions with gypsum wallboard with joints taped on occupied side, and fire-retardant plywood on construction operations side.
  - b. If containment of airborne particles and dust generated by construction activities is critical to occupants of other spaces in building, e.g., occupied healthcare facilities: Construct dustproof partitions with 2 layers of 3-mil (0.07-mm) polyethylene sheet on each side. Cover floor with 2 layers of 3-mil (0.07-mm) polyethylene sheet, extending sheets 18 inches (460 mm) up the sidewalls. Overlap and tape full length of joints. Cover floor with fire-retardant plywood.
    - 1) Construct vestibule and airlock at each entrance through temporary partition with not less than 48 inches (1219 mm) between doors. Maintain water-dampened foot mats in vestibule.
  - c. Insulate partitions to provide noise protection to occupied areas.
  - d. Seal joints and perimeter. Equip partitions with dustproof doors and security locks.
  - e. Protect air-handling equipment.
  - f. Weather strip openings.
  - g. Provide walk-off mats at each entrance through temporary partition.
12. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241.
  - a. Prohibit smoking in hazardous fire-exposure **OR** construction, **as directed**, areas.
  - b. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - c. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and -protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.
  - d. Provide temporary standpipes and hoses for fire protection. Hang hoses with a warning sign stating that hoses are for fire-protection purposes only and are not to be removed. Match hose size with outlet size and equip with suitable nozzles.

#### E. Operation, Termination, And Removal

1. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.
2. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.





- a. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
3. Operate Project-identification-sign lighting daily from dusk until 12:00 midnight.
4. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Final Completion.
5. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Final Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
  - a. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. the Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
  - b. Remove temporary paving not intended for or acceptable for integration into permanent paving. Where area is intended for landscape development, remove soil and aggregate fill that do not comply with requirements for fill or subsoil. Remove materials contaminated with road oil, asphalt and other petrochemical compounds, and other substances that might impair growth of plant materials or lawns. Repair or replace street paving, curbs, and sidewalks at temporary entrances, as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - c. At Final Completion, clean and renovate permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in General Requirements

END OF SECTION 01 52 13 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
01 52 13 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 52 19 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 52 19 00	01 52 13 00	Temporary Facilities and Controls
01 53 16 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



**SECTION 01 54 23 00 - SCAFFOLDING TUBULAR STEEL**

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of scaffolding-tubular steel. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

B. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.2 PRODUCTS

- A. Tubular steel or aluminum scaffolding system shall comply with OSHA Safety and Health Standards, Section 29 CFR, 1926/1910.

1.3 EXECUTION - (Section not used.)

END OF SECTION 01 54 23 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 01 54 23 00a - UNIT MASONRY ASSEMBLIES**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for unit masonry assemblies. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. This Section includes unit masonry assemblies consisting of the following:
  - a. Concrete masonry units (CMUs).
  - b. Decorative concrete masonry units.
  - c. Pre-faced concrete masonry units.
  - d. Concrete brick.
  - e. Face brick.
  - f. Building (common) brick.
  - g. Hollow brick.
  - h. Glazed brick.
  - i. Structural-clay facing tile.
  - j. Firebox brick.
  - k. Clay flue lining units.
  - l. Stone trim units.
  - m. Mortar and grout.
  - n. Reinforcing steel.
  - o. Masonry joint reinforcement.
  - p. Ties and anchors.
  - q. Embedded flashing.
  - r. Miscellaneous masonry accessories.
  - s. Masonry-cell insulation.
  - t. Cavity-wall insulation.

## C. Definitions

1. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing reinforcing steel in grouted cells.

## D. Performance Requirements

1. Provide structural unit masonry that develops indicated net-area compressive strengths ( $f'_m$ ) at 28 days.
2. Determine net-area compressive strength ( $f'_m$ ) of masonry from average net-area compressive strengths of masonry units and mortar types (unit-strength method) according to Tables 1 and 2 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 **OR** Tables 2105.2 in the International Building Code, **as directed.**  
**OR**  
Determine net-area compressive strength ( $f'_m$ ) of masonry by testing masonry prisms according to ASTM C 1314 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed.**

## E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: For reinforcing steel. Detail bending and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315, "Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement." Show elevations of reinforced walls.
3. Samples for each type and color of exposed masonry units and colored mortars.



4. Material Certificates: For each type of product indicated. Include statements of material properties indicating compliance with requirements including compliance with standards and type designations within standards.
5. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
  - a. For masonry units include material test reports substantiating compliance with requirements.
6. Cold-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with cold-weather requirements.

#### F. Quality Assurance

1. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform preconstruction testing indicated below.
  - a. Clay Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit required, per ASTM C 67.
  - b. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit required, per ASTM C 140.
  - c. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix required, per ASTM C 780 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
  - d. Grout Test (Compressive Strength): For each mix required, per ASTM C 1019 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
2. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide materials and construction identical to those of assemblies with fire-resistance ratings determined per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency, by equivalent concrete masonry thickness, or by other means, as acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Sample Panels: Build sample panels to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects.
  - a. Build sample panels for each type of exposed unit masonry construction **OR** typical exterior wall, **as directed**, in sizes approximately 48 inches (1200 mm) long by 48 inches (1200 mm) high.

#### G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.
2. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
3. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
4. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers designed for lifting and emptying into dispensing silo. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location or in a metal dispensing silo with weatherproof cover.
5. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

#### H. Project Conditions

1. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 **OR** Section 2104.3 in the International Building Code, **as directed**.
2. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.





## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Concrete Masonry Units (CMUs)

1. Shapes: Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
2. Integral Water Repellent: Provide units made with liquid polymeric, integral water-repellent admixture that does not reduce flexural bond strength for exposed units and where indicated.
3. Concrete Masonry Units: ASTM C 90 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
  - a. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 1900 psi (13.1 MPa) **OR** 2150 psi (14.8 MPa) **OR** 2800 psi (19.3 MPa) **OR** 3050 psi (21.0 MPa), **as directed**.
  - b. Weight Classification: Lightweight **OR** Medium weight **OR** Normal weight, **as directed**.
4. Decorative Concrete Masonry Units: ASTM C 90 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
  - a. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 1900 psi (13.1 MPa) **OR** 2150 psi (14.8 MPa) **OR** 2800 psi (19.3 MPa) **OR** 3050 psi (21.0 MPa), **as directed**.
  - b. Weight Classification: Lightweight **OR** Medium weight **OR** Normal weight, **as directed**.
  - c. Pattern and Texture:
    - 1) Standard pattern, ground finish.
    - 2) Standard pattern, split-face finish.
    - 3) Standard pattern, split-ribbed finish.
    - 4) Scored vertically, standard finish.
    - 5) Triple scored vertically, standard finish.
5. Pre-faced Concrete Masonry Units: Lightweight hollow **OR** solid, **as directed**, concrete units complying with ASTM C 90 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**, with manufacturer's standard smooth resinous facing complying with ASTM C 744.
  - a. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 1900 psi (13.1 MPa) **OR** 2150 psi (14.8 MPa) **OR** 2800 psi (19.3 MPa) **OR** 3050 psi (21.0 MPa), **as directed**.
  - b. Size: Manufactured with pre-faced surfaces having 1/16-inch- (1.5-mm-) wide returns of facing to create 1/4-inch- (6.5-mm-) wide mortar joints with modular coursing.
6. Concrete Building Brick: ASTM C 55 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
  - a. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 2500 psi (17.3 MPa) **OR** 3500 psi (24.1 MPa), **as directed**.
  - b. Weight Classification: Lightweight **OR** Medium weight **OR** Normal weight, **as directed**.

### B. Concrete And Masonry Lintels

1. General: Provide either concrete or masonry lintels, at Contractor's option, complying with requirements below.
2. Concrete Lintels:
  - a. Precast units matching concrete masonry units and with reinforcing bars indicated or required to support loads indicated.  
**OR**  
Precast or formed-in-place concrete lintels complying with requirements in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
3. Masonry Lintels: Made from bond beam concrete masonry units with reinforcing bars placed as indicated and filled with coarse grout.

### C. Brick

1. General: Provide shapes indicated and as follows:
  - a. For ends of sills and caps and for similar applications that would otherwise expose unfinished brick surfaces, provide units without cores or frogs and with exposed surfaces finished.
  - b. Provide special shapes for applications where shapes produced by sawing would result in sawed surfaces being exposed to view.



2. Face Brick: ASTM C 216 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**, Grade SW **OR** MW or SW, **as directed**, Type FBX **OR** FBS **OR** FBA, **as directed**.
  - a. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) **OR** 4400 psi (30.3 MPa) **OR** 5500 psi (37.9 MPa) **OR** 6400 psi (44.1 MPa) **OR** 8000 psi (55.2 MPa) **OR** 8400 psi (57.9 MPa), **as directed**.
  - b. Initial Rate of Absorption: Less than 30 g/30 sq. in. (30 g/194 sq. cm) per minute when tested per ASTM C 67.
  - c. Efflorescence: Provide brick that has been tested according to ASTM C 67 and is rated "not effloresced."
  - d. Surface Coating: Brick with colors or textures produced by application of coatings shall withstand 50 cycles of freezing and thawing per ASTM C 67 with no observable difference in the applied finish when viewed from 10 feet (3 m).
  - e. Size: **As directed**.
3. Building (Common) Brick: ASTM C 62 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**, Grade SW **OR** MW or SW **OR** NW, MW, or SW, **as directed**.
  - a. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) **OR** 4400 psi (30.3 MPa) **OR** 5500 psi (37.9 MPa) **OR** 6400 psi (44.1 MPa) **OR** 8000 psi (55.2 MPa) **OR** 8400 psi (57.9 MPa), **as directed**.
  - b. Size: Match size of face brick.
4. Hollow Brick: ASTM C 652 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**, Grade SW **OR** MW or SW, **as directed**, Class H40V (void areas between 25 and 40 percent of gross cross-sectional area) **OR** H60V (void areas between 40 and 60 percent of gross cross-sectional area) , **as directed**, Type HBX **OR** HBS **OR** HBA **OR** HBB, **as directed**.
  - a. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) **OR** 4400 psi (30.3 MPa) **OR** 5500 psi (37.9 MPa) **OR** 6400 psi (44.1 MPa) **OR** 8000 psi (55.2 MPa) **OR** 8400 psi (57.9 MPa), **as directed**.
  - b. Efflorescence: Provide brick that has been tested according to ASTM C 67 and is rated "not effloresced."
  - c. Surface Coating: Brick with colors or textures produced by application of coatings shall withstand 50 cycles of freezing and thawing per ASTM C 67 with no observable difference in the applied finish when viewed from 10 feet (3 m).
  - d. Size: **As directed**.
5. Glazed Face Brick: ASTM C 216 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**, Grade SW **OR** MW or SW, **as directed**, Type FBX **OR** FBS **OR** FBA, **as directed**; with glaze complying with ASTM C 126.
6. Glazed Face Brick: ASTM C 1405, Class Exterior **OR** Interior, **as directed**, Grade S (Select) **OR** SS (Select Sized or Ground Edge), **as directed**.
7. Glazed Face Brick: Either ASTM C 1405, Class Exterior **OR** Interior, **as directed**, Grade S (Select) or ASTM C 216 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**, Grade SW **OR** MW or SW, **as directed**, Type FBX; with glaze complying with ASTM C 126.
8. Glazed Hollow Brick: Hollow brick complying with ASTM C 652 **OR** IBC , **as directed**, Grade SW **OR** MW or SW, **as directed**, Class H40V (void areas between 25 and 40 percent of gross cross-sectional area) **OR** H60V (void areas between 40 and 60 percent of gross cross-sectional area), **as directed**, Type HBX **OR** HBS **OR** HBA, **as directed**; with glaze complying with ASTM C 126.
  - a. Size: **As directed**.
  - b. Provide Type I (single-faced units) where only one finished face is exposed when units are installed, and Type II (double-faced units) where two opposite finished faces are exposed when units are installed.

#### D. Structural-Clay Facing Tile

1. General:
  - a. Provide solid, multicored, or hollow units, with shape and direction of cores optional, unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Provide multicored units designed for use in reinforced, grouted masonry.
  - c. Provide special shapes where required for corners, jambs, coved bases, sills, and other special conditions indicated that cannot be produced by sawing standard units.



2. Glazed Structural-Clay Facing Tile: ASTM C 126, Grade S (Select) **OR** SS (Select Sized or Ground Edged), **as directed**.
    - a. Size: **As directed**.
    - b. Provide Type I (single-faced units) where only one finished face is exposed when units are installed, and Type II (double-faced units) where two opposite finished faces are exposed when units are installed.
  3. Unglazed Structural-Clay Facing Tile: ASTM C 212, Type FTX **OR** FTS, **as directed**, Standard **OR** Special-Duty, **as directed**, class.
    - a. Number of Faces: Single faced where only one finished face is exposed when units are installed **OR** Double faced where both finished faces are exposed when units are installed, **as directed**.
- E. Fireplace And Chimney Lining Units
1. Firebox Brick: ASTM C 1261, size required to produce lining thickness indicated.
  2. Clay Flue Lining Units: ASTM C 315.
- F. Stone Trim Units
1. Granite: ASTM C 615.
    - a. Description: Fine **OR** Medium, **as directed**,-grained, white **OR** pink **OR** gray **OR** black, **as directed**, stone. Uniform pattern, without veining.
  2. Limestone: ASTM C 568, Classification I Low **OR** II Medium **OR** III High, **as directed**,-Density.
  3. Marble: ASTM C 503, Classification I Calcite **OR** II Dolomite **OR** III Serpentine **OR** IV Travertine, **as directed**.
    - a. Description: Uniform, fine- to medium-grained, white stone with only slight veining.
  4. Quartz-Based Stone: ASTM C 616, Classification I Sandstone **OR** II Quartzitic Sandstone **OR** III Quartzite, **as directed**.
  5. Finish: Polished **OR** Honed **OR** Smooth **OR** Machine tooled, 4 bats per 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** Machine tooled, 6 bats per 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** Machine tooled, 8 bats per 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** Chat sawed **OR** Split face **OR** Rock face (pitched face), **as directed**.
    - a. Finish for Tops of Sills and Soffits of Lintels: Sand rubbed **OR** Split face, **as directed**.
  6. Provide stone units accurately shaped, with exposed faces dressed true, and with beds and joints at right angles to faces.
    - a. For granite, comply with recommendations in NBGQA's "Specifications for Architectural Granite."
    - b. For limestone, comply with recommendations in ILI's "Indiana Limestone Handbook."
    - c. For marble, comply with recommendations in MIA's "Dimensional Stone--Design Manual IV."
- G. Mortar And Grout Materials
1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction.
  2. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**, Type S.
  3. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I or Type III, and hydrated lime complying with ASTM C 207, Type S.
  4. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
  5. Mortar Cement: ASTM C 1329 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
  6. Mortar Pigments: Iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortar.
  7. Colored Cement Product: Packaged blend made from portland cement and lime or masonry cement and mortar pigments, all complying with specified requirements, and containing no other ingredients.
    - a. Formulate blend as required to produce color indicated or, if not indicated, as selected from manufacturer's standard colors.
    - b. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
    - c. Pigments shall not exceed 5 percent of masonry cement or mortar cement by weight.
  8. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144.



- a. For joints less than 1/4 inch (6.5 mm) thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 (1.18-mm) sieve.
  - b. Colored-Mortar Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
  - c. White-Mortar Aggregates: Natural white sand or crushed white stone.
  - d. Colored-Mortar Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
9. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404.
  10. Epoxy Pointing Mortar: ASTM C 395, epoxy-resin-based material formulated for use as pointing mortar for structural-clay tile facing units.
  11. Refractory Mortar Mix: Ground fireclay or non-water-soluble, calcium aluminate, medium-duty refractory mortar that passes ASTM C 199 test; or an equivalent product acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  12. Cold-Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C, and recommended by manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.
  13. Water-Repellent Admixture: Liquid water-repellent mortar admixture intended for use with concrete masonry units, containing integral water repellent by same manufacturer.
  14. Water: Potable.

#### H. Reinforcement

1. Uncoated Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M or ASTM A 996/A 996M, Grade 60 (Grade 420).
2. Masonry Joint Reinforcement, General: ASTM A 951 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
  - a. Interior Walls: Mill- **OR** Hot-dip, **as directed**, galvanized, carbon steel.
  - b. Exterior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized, carbon **OR** Stainless, **as directed**, steel.
  - c. Wire Size for Side Rods: W1.7 or 0.148-inch (3.8-mm) **OR** W2.8 or 0.188-inch (4.8-mm), **as directed**, diameter.
  - d. Wire Size for Cross Rods: W1.7 or 0.148-inch (3.8-mm) **OR** W2.8 or 0.188-inch (4.8-mm), **as directed** diameter.
  - e. Wire Size for Veneer Ties: W1.7 or 0.148-inch (3.8-mm) **OR** W2.8 or 0.188-inch (4.8-mm), **as directed** diameter.
  - f. Spacing of Cross Rods, Tabs, and Cross Ties: Not more than 16 inches (407 mm) o.c.
  - g. Single-Wythe Masonry: Either ladder or truss type with single pair of side rods.
  - h. Multiwythe Masonry:
    - 1) Ladder type with 1 side rod at each face shell of hollow masonry units more than 4 inches (100 mm) in width, plus 1 side rod at each wythe of masonry 4 inches (100 mm) or less in width.
    - 2) Tab type, with 1 side rod at each face shell of backing wythe and with rectangular tabs sized to extend at least halfway through facing wythe but with at least 5/8-inch (16-mm) cover on outside face.
    - 3) Adjustable (two-piece) type, with one side rod at each face shell of backing wythe and with ties that extend into facing wythe. Ties engage eyes or slots in reinforcement and extend at least halfway through facing wythe but with at least 5/8-inch (16-mm) cover on outside face. Ties have hooks or clips to engage a continuous wire in the facing wythe.
  - i. Veneers Anchored with Seismic Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Single 0.188-inch- (4.8-mm-) diameter, hot-dip galvanized, carbon-steel continuous wire.

#### I. Ties And Anchors

1. Materials:
  - a. Mill-Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82; with ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 coating.
  - b. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82; with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B-2 coating.



- c. Stainless-Steel Wire: ASTM A 580/A 580M, Type 304 **OR** 316, **as directed**.
  - d. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel, G60 (Z180) zinc coating.
  - e. Steel Sheet, Galvanized after Fabrication: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
  - f. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** 316, **as directed**.
  - g. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
  - h. Stainless Steel bars: ASTM A 276 or ASTM a 666, Type 304.
2. Corrugated Metal Ties: Metal strips not less than 7/8 inch (22 mm) wide with corrugations having a wavelength of 0.3 to 0.5 inch (7.6 to 12.7 mm) and an amplitude of 0.06 to 0.10 inch (1.5 to 2.5 mm) made from steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication **OR** stainless-steel sheet, **as directed**, not less than 0.043 inch (1.1 mm) **OR** 0.053 inch (1.3 mm) **OR** 0.067 inch (1.7 mm) **OR** 0.097 inch (2.5 mm), **as directed**, thick. Ties made from galvanized steel sheet may be used in interior walls, unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Wire Ties, General: Unless otherwise indicated, size wire ties to extend at least halfway through veneer but with at least 5/8-inch (16-mm) cover on outside face. Outer ends of wires are bent 90 degrees and extend 2 inches (50 mm) parallel to face of veneer.
  4. Individual Wire Ties: Rectangular units with closed ends and not less than 4 inches (100 mm) wide.
    - a. Z-shaped ties with ends bent 90 degrees to provide hooks not less than 2 inches (50 mm) long may be used for masonry constructed from solid units or hollow units laid with cells horizontal.
    - b. Where wythes do not align **OR** are of different materials, **as directed**, use adjustable ties with pintle-and-eye connections having a maximum adjustment of 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).
    - c. Wire: Fabricate from 3/16-inch- (4.8-mm-) **OR** 1/4-inch- (6.4-mm-), **as directed**, diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, wire. Mill-galvanized wire ties may be used in interior walls, unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Adjustable Anchors for Connecting to Structure: Provide anchors that allow vertical or horizontal adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall.
    - a. Anchor Section for Welding to Steel Frame: Crimped 1/4-inch- (6.4-mm-) diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, wire. Mill-galvanized wire may be used at interior walls, unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Tie Section for Steel Frame: Triangular-shaped wire tie, sized to extend within 1 inch (25 mm) of masonry face, made from 0.188-inch- (4.8-mm-) **OR** 0.25-inch- (6.4-mm-), **as directed**, diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed** wire. Mill-galvanized wire may be used at interior walls, unless otherwise indicated.
    - c. Connector Section for Concrete: Dovetail tabs for inserting into dovetail slots in concrete and attached to tie section; formed from 0.053-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication **OR** 0.097-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication **OR** 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet **OR** 0.109-inch- (2.8-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet, **as directed**. 0.064-inch- (1.6-mm-) **OR** 0.108-inch- (2.7-mm-), **as directed**, thick, galvanized sheet may be used at interior walls, unless otherwise indicated.
    - d. Tie Section for Concrete: Corrugated metal ties with dovetail tabs for inserting into dovetail slots in concrete and sized to extend to within 1 inch (25 mm) of masonry face.
  6. Partition Top anchors: 0.097-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick metal plate with 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) diameter metal rod 6 inches (150 mm) long welded to plate and with closed-end plastic tube fitted over rod that allows rod to move in and out of tube. Fabricate from steel, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**.
  7. Rigid Anchors: Fabricate from steel bars 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) wide by 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) thick by 24 inches (600 mm) long, with ends turned up 2 inches (50 mm) or with cross pins.
    - a. Corrosion Protection: Hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M **OR** Epoxy coating 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick **OR** Rust-inhibitive paint, **as directed**.
  8. Stone Anchors: Fabricate dowels, cramps, and other stone anchors from stainless steel.
  9. Adjustable Masonry-Veneer Anchors



- a. General: Provide anchors that allow vertical adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall, for attachment over sheathing to wood or metal studs, and as follows:
- 1) Structural Performance Characteristics: Capable of withstanding a 100-lbf (445-N) load in both tension and compression without deforming or developing play in excess of 0.05 inch (1.3 mm).
- b. Screw-Attached, Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Units consisting of a wire tie and a metal anchor section.
- 1) Anchor Section:
    - a) Rib-stiffened, sheet metal plate with screw holes top and bottom, and slotted holes for inserting wire tie.
    - b) Sheet metal plate with screw holes top and bottom and with raised rib-stiffened strap, stamped into center to provide a slot between strap and plate for inserting wire tie.
    - c) Gasketed sheet metal plate with screw holes top and bottom; top and bottom ends bent to form pronged legs of length to match thickness of insulation or sheathing; and raised rib-stiffened strap, stamped into center to provide a slot between strap and plate for inserting wire tie. Provide anchor manufacturer's standard, self-adhering, modified bituminous gaskets manufactured to fit behind anchor plate and extend beyond pronged legs.
  - 2) Fabricate sheet metal anchor sections and other sheet metal parts from 0.067-inch- (1.7-mm-) thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication **OR** 0.097-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication **OR** 0.078-inch- (2.0-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet **OR** 0.109-inch- (2.8-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet, **as directed**.
  - 3) Wire Ties: Triangular-, rectangular-, or T-shaped wire ties fabricated from 0.188-inch- (4.8-mm-) **OR** 0.25-inch- (6.4-mm-), **as directed**, diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, wire.
- c. Slip-in, Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Units consisting of a wire tie section and an anchor section designed to interlock with metal studs and be slipped into place as sheathing is installed.
- 1) Wire-Type Anchor: Bent wire anchor section with an eye to receive the wire tie. Wire tie has a vertical leg that slips into the eye of anchor section and allows vertical adjustment. Both sections are made from 3/16-inch (4.8-mm), hot-dip galvanized wire.
  - 2) Strap-and-Wire Type Anchor: Flat metal strap with notch to interlock with flange of metal stud and two holes for inserting vertical legs of wire tie specially formed to fit anchor section. Strap is made from 0.067-inch- (1.7-mm-) thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication; anchor wire tie is made from 3/16-inch (4.8-mm), hot-dip galvanized wire.
- d. Seismic Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Units consisting of a metal anchor section and a connector section designed to engage a continuous wire embedded in the veneer mortar joint.
- 1) Anchor Section: Rib-stiffened, sheet metal plate with screw holes top and bottom, and slotted holes for inserting connector section.
  - 2) Connector Section: Rib-stiffened, sheet metal bent plate; sheet metal clip; or wire tie and rigid extruded vinyl clip designed to engage continuous wire. Size connector to extend at least halfway through veneer but with at least 5/8-inch (16-mm) cover on outside face.
  - 3) Fabricate sheet metal anchor sections and other sheet metal parts from 0.067-inch- (1.7-mm-) thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication **OR** 0.097-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication **OR** 0.078-inch- (2.0-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet **OR** 0.109-inch- (2.8-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet, **as directed**.



- 4) Fabricate wire connector sections from 0.188-inch- (4.8-mm-) **-OR** 0.25-inch- (6.4-mm-), **as directed**, diameter, hot-dip galvanized, carbon **OR** stainless, **as directed**, steel wire.
  - e. Polymer-Coated, Steel Drill Screws for Steel Studs: ASTM C 954 except manufactured with hex washer head and neoprene washer, No. 10 (4.8-mm) diameter by length required to penetrate steel stud flange with not less than 3 exposed threads, and with organic polymer coating with salt-spray resistance to red rust of more than 800 hours per ASTM B 117.
  - f. Stainless-Steel Drill Screws for Steel Studs: Proprietary fastener consisting of carbon-steel drill point and 300 Series stainless-steel shank, complying with ASTM C 954 except manufactured with hex washer head and neoprene washer, No. 10 (4.8-mm) diameter by length required to penetrate steel stud flange with not less than three exposed threads.
- J. Miscellaneous Anchors
1. Unit Type Inserts in Concrete: Cast-iron or malleable-iron wedge-type inserts.
  2. Dovetail Slots in Concrete: Furnish dovetail slots with filler strips, of slot size indicated, fabricated from 0.034-inch (0.9-mm), galvanized steel sheet.
  3. Anchor Bolts: Headed or L-shaped steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers; hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C; of dimensions indicated.
  4. Postinstalled Anchors: Provide chemical or torque-controlled expansion anchors, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in solid or grouted unit masonry and equal to four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
    - a. Corrosion Protection:
      - 1) Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5 (5 microns) for Class SC 1 service condition (mild).
      - 2) Stainless-steel components complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F 738M and ASTM F 836M, Alloy Group 1 or 4) for bolts and nuts; ASTM A 666 or ASTM A 276, Type 304 or 316, for anchors.
- K. Embedded Flashing Materials
1. Metal Flashing: Provide metal flashing, where flashing is exposed or partly exposed and where indicated, complying with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual OR Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim" as directed.
    - a. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304, 0.016 inch (0.4 mm) thick.
    - b. Copper: ASTM B 370, Temper H00 or H01, cold-rolled copper sheet, 10-oz./sq. ft. (3-kg/sq. m) weight or 0.0135 inch (0.34 mm) thick for fully concealed flashing; 16-oz./sq. ft. (5-kg/sq. m) weight or 0.0216 inch (0.55 mm) thick elsewhere.
    - c. Fabricate continuous flashings in sections 96 inches (2400 mm) long minimum, but not exceeding 12 feet (3.6 m). Provide splice plates at joints of formed, smooth metal flashing.
    - d. Fabricate through-wall metal flashing embedded in masonry from stainless steel **OR** copper, **as directed**, with ribs at 3-inch (75-mm) intervals along length of flashing to provide an integral mortar bond.
    - e. Metal Drip Edges: Fabricate from stainless steel. Extend at least 3 inches (75 mm) into wall and 1/2 inch (13 mm) out from wall, with outer edge bent down 30 degrees and hemmed.
    - f. Metal Flashing Terminations: Fabricate from stainless steel. Extend at least 3 inches (75 mm) into wall and out to exterior face of wall. At exterior face of wall, bend metal back on itself for 3/4 inch (19 mm) and down into joint 3/8 inch (10 mm) to form a stop for retaining sealant backer rod.
    - g. Metal Expansion-Joint Strips: Fabricate from stainless steel **OR** copper, **as directed**, to shapes indicated.
  2. Flexible Flashing: For flashing not exposed to the exterior, use one of the following, unless otherwise indicated:



- a. Copper-Laminated Flashing: 5-oz./sq. ft. (1.5-kg/sq. m) **OR** 7-oz./sq. ft. (2-kg/sq. m), **as directed**, copper sheet bonded with asphalt between 2 layers of glass-fiber cloth. Use only where flashing is fully concealed in masonry.
  - b. Asphalt-Coated Copper Flashing: 5-oz./sq. ft. (1.5-kg/sq. m) **OR** 7-oz./sq. ft. (2-kg/sq. m), **as directed**, copper sheet coated with flexible asphalt. Use only where flashing is fully concealed in masonry.
  - c. Rubberized-Asphalt Flashing: Composite flashing product consisting of a pliable, adhesive rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.030 inch (0.8 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**.
  - d. Elastomeric Thermoplastic Flashing: Composite flashing product consisting of a polyester-reinforced ethylene interpolymer alloy 0.025 inch (0.6 mm) thick, with a 0.015-inch- (0.4-mm-) thick coating of rubberized-asphalt adhesive.
  - e. EPDM Flashing: Sheet flashing product made from ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer, complying with ASTM D 4637, 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick.
3. Single-Wythe CMU Flashing System: System of CMU cell flashing pans and interlocking CMU web covers made from high-density polyethylene incorporating chemical stabilizers that prevent UV degradation. Cell flashing pans have integral weep spouts that are designed to be built into mortar bed joints and weep collected moisture to the exterior of CMU walls and that extend into the cell to prevent clogging with mortar.
  4. Solder and Sealants for Sheet Metal Flashings:
    - a. Solder for Stainless Steel: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn60, with acid flux of type recommended by stainless-steel sheet manufacturer.
    - b. Solder for Copper: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn50, 50 percent tin and 50 percent lead.
    - c. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, chemically curing urethane **OR** polysulfide silicone **as directed**, sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.
  5. Adhesives, Primers, and Seam Tapes for Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products or products recommended by flashing manufacturer.
- L. Miscellaneous Masonry Accessories
1. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; formulated from neoprene, urethane or PVC.
  2. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Made from styrene-butadiene-rubber compound, complying with ASTM D 2000, Designation M2AA-805 or PVC, complying with ASTM D 2287, Type PVC-65406 and designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall.
  3. Bond-Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated, organic roofing felt complying with ASTM D 226, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).
  4. Weep/Vent Products: Use one of the following, unless otherwise indicated:
    - a. Wicking Material: Absorbent rope, made from cotton or UV-resistant synthetic fiber, 1/4 to 3/8 inch (6 to 10 mm) in diameter, in length required to produce 2-inch (50-mm) exposure on exterior and 18 inches (450 mm) in cavity between wythes. Use only for weeps.
    - b. Round Plastic Weep/Vent Tubing: Medium-density polyethylene, 3/8-inch (9-mm) OD by 4 inches (100 mm) long.
    - c. Rectangular Plastic Weep/Vent Tubing: Clear butyrate, 3/8 by 1-1/2 by 3-1/2 inches (9 by 38 by 89 mm) long.
    - d. Cellular Plastic Weep/Vent: One-piece, flexible extrusion made from UV-resistant polypropylene copolymer, full height and width of head joint and depth 1/8 inch (3 mm) less than depth of outer wythe, in color selected from manufacturer's standard.
    - e. Mesh Weep/Vent: Free-draining mesh; made from polyethylene strands, full height and width of head joint and depth 1/8 inch (3 mm) less than depth of outer wythe; in color selected from manufacturer's standard.
    - f. Aluminum Weep Hole/Vent: One-piece, L-shaped units made from sheet aluminum, designed to fit into a head joint and consisting of a vertical channel with louvers stamped in web and with a top flap to keep mortar out of the head joint; painted before installation to





- comply with Division 09 Section(s) "Exterior Painting" OR "Interior Painting", in color approved to match that of mortar.
- g. Vinyl Weep Hole/Vent: One-piece, offset, T-shaped units made from flexible, injection-molded PVC, designed to fit into a head joint and consisting of a louvered vertical leg, flexible wings to seal against ends of masonry units, and a top flap to keep mortar out of the head joint; in color approved by Architect to match that of mortar.
5. Cavity Drainage Material: Free-draining mesh, made from polymer strands that will not degrade within the wall cavity.
- a. Provide one of the following configurations:
- 1) Strips, full-depth of cavity and 10 inches (250 mm) wide, with dovetail shaped notches 7 inches (175 mm) deep.
  - 2) Strips, not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick and 10 inches (250 mm) wide, with dimpled surface designed to catch mortar droppings and prevent weep holes from being clogged with mortar.
  - 3) Sheets or strips full depth of cavity and installed to full height of cavity.
6. Reinforcing Bar Positioners: Wire units designed to fit into mortar bed joints spanning masonry unit cells with loops for holding reinforcing bars in center of cells. Units are formed from 0.142-inch (3.6-mm) steel wire, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication. Provide units with either two loops or four loops as needed for number of bars indicated.
- M. Insulation
1. Loose-Granular Fill Insulation: Perlite complying with ASTM C 549, Type II (surface treated for water repellency and limited moisture absorption) or Type IV (surface treated for water repellency and to limit dust generation).
  2. Molded-Polystyrene Insulation Units: Rigid, cellular thermal insulation formed by the expansion of polystyrene-resin beads or granules in a closed mold to comply with ASTM C 578, Type I. Provide specially shaped units designed for installing in cores of masonry units.
  3. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type IV **OR X, as directed**, closed-cell product extruded with an integral skin.
  4. Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type I.
  5. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type I (aluminum-foil-faced), Class 2 (glass-fiber-reinforced).
  6. Adhesive: Type recommended by insulation board manufacturer for application indicated.
- N. Masonry Cleaners
1. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains from new masonry without damaging masonry. Use product approved for intended use by cleaner manufacturer and manufacturer of masonry units being cleaned.
- O. Mortar And Grout Mixes
1. General: Do not use admixtures, unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
    - b. Limit cementitious materials in mortar for exterior and reinforced masonry to portland cement and lime.
    - c. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
  2. Preblended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in form of a preblended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.
  3. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270 **OR** BIA Technical Notes 8A **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**, Proportion Specification.
  4. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270 **OR** BIA Technical Notes 8A **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**, Property Specification.
    - a. For masonry below grade or in contact with earth, use Type M **OR** S, **as directed**.
    - b. For reinforced masonry, use Type S **OR** N, **as directed**.
    - c. For mortar parge coats, use Type S or N.



- d. For exterior, above-grade, load-bearing and non-load-bearing walls and parapet walls; for interior load-bearing walls; for interior non-load-bearing partitions; and for other applications where another type is not indicated, use Type N.
- e. For interior non-load-bearing partitions, Type O may be used instead of Type N.
5. Pigmented Mortar: Use colored cement product or select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Do not add pigments to colored cement products.
  - a. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
  - b. Pigments shall not exceed 5 percent of masonry cement or mortar cement by weight.
6. Colored-Aggregate Mortar: Produce required mortar color by using colored aggregates and natural color or white cement as necessary to produce required mortar color.
7. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 476 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
  - a. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with Table 1.15.1 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 **OR** Table 21-C in the International Building Code, **as directed**, for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
  - b. Provide grout with a slump of 8 to 11 inches (200 to 280 mm) as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.
8. Epoxy Pointing Mortar: Mix epoxy pointing mortar to comply with mortar manufacturer's written instructions.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation, General

1. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.
2. Select and arrange units for exposed unit masonry to produce a uniform blend of colors and textures.
3. Matching Existing Masonry: Match coursing, bonding, color, and texture of existing masonry.
4. Wetting of Brick: Wet brick before laying if initial rate of absorption exceeds 30 g/30 sq. in. (30 g/194 sq. cm) per minute when tested per ASTM C 67. Allow units to absorb water so they are damp but not wet at time of laying.
5. Comply with tolerances in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 and with the following:
  - a. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m), 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m), or 1/2 inch (12 mm) maximum.
  - b. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m), 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m), or 1/2 inch (12 mm) maximum.

#### B. Laying Masonry Walls

1. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.
2. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in running bond; do not use units with less than nominal 4-inch (100-mm) horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
3. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
4. Fill space between steel frames and masonry solidly with mortar, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Fill cores in hollow concrete masonry units with grout 24 inches (600 mm) under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items, unless otherwise indicated.

#### C. Mortar Bedding And Jointing



1. Lay hollow brick and concrete masonry units as follows:
  - a. With face shells fully bedded in mortar and with head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
  - b. With webs fully bedded in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
  - c. With webs fully bedded in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
  - d. With entire units, including areas under cells, fully bedded in mortar at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.
2. Lay solid masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.
3. Lay structural-clay tile as follows:
  - a. Lay vertical-cell units with full head joints, unless otherwise indicated. Provide bed joints with full mortar coverage on face shells and webs.
  - b. Lay horizontal-cell units with full bed joints, unless otherwise indicated. Keep drainage channels, if any, free of mortar. Form head joints with sufficient mortar so excess will be squeezed out as units are placed in position.
  - c. Maintain joint thicknesses indicated except for minor variations required to maintain bond alignment. If not indicated, lay walls with 1/4- to 3/8-inch- (6- to 10-mm-) thick joints.
  - d. Where epoxy-mortar pointed joints are indicated, rake out setting mortar to a uniform depth of 1/4 inch (6 mm) and point with epoxy mortar.
4. Set firebox brick in full bed of refractory mortar with full head joints. Form joints by buttering both surfaces of adjoining brick and sliding it into place. Make joints just wide enough to accommodate variations in size of brick, approximately 1/8 inch (3 mm). Tool joints smooth on surfaces exposed to fire or smoke.
5. Install clay flue liners to comply with ASTM C 1283. Install flue liners ahead of surrounding masonry. Set clay flue liners in full bed of refractory mortar 1/16 to 1/8 inch (1.6 to 3 mm) thick. Strike joints flush on inside of flue to provide smooth surface. Maintain expansion space between flue liner and surrounding masonry except where surrounding masonry is required to provide lateral support for flue liners.
6. Set stone **OR** cast-stone, **as directed**, trim units in full bed of mortar with full vertical joints. Fill dowel, anchor, and similar holes.
7. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness, unless otherwise indicated.
8. Cut joints flush for masonry walls to receive plaster or other direct-applied finishes (other than paint), unless otherwise indicated.

#### D. Composite Masonry

1. Bond wythes of composite masonry together using one of the following methods:
  - a. Individual Metal Ties: Provide ties as shown installed in horizontal joints, but not less than one metal tie for 4.5 sq. ft. (0.42 sq. m) **OR** 2.67 sq. ft. (0.25 sq. m), **as directed**, of wall area spaced not to exceed 36 inches (914 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm), **as directed**, o.c. horizontally and 16 inches (406 mm) o.c. vertically. Stagger ties in alternate courses. Provide additional ties within 12 inches (305 mm) of openings and space not more than 36 inches (915 mm) apart around perimeter of openings. At intersecting and abutting walls, provide ties at no more than 24 inches (610 mm) o.c. vertically.
    - 1) Where bed joints of wythes do not align, use adjustable (two-piece) type ties.
  - b. Masonry Joint Reinforcement: Installed in horizontal mortar joints.
    - 1) Where bed joints of both wythes align, use ladder-type reinforcement extending across both wythes **OR** tab-type reinforcement, **as directed**.
    - 2) Where bed joints of wythes do not align, use adjustable (two-piece) type reinforcement with continuous horizontal wire in facing wythe attached to ties.
2. Collar Joints: Solidly fill collar joints by parging face of first wythe that is laid and shoving units of other wythe into place.
3. Collar Joints in Clay Tile Masonry: After each course is laid, fill the vertical, longitudinal joint between wythes solidly with mortar at exterior walls, except cavity walls, and interior walls and partitions.



4. Corners: Provide interlocking masonry unit bond in each wythe and course at corners, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Intersecting and Abutting Walls: Unless vertical expansion or control joints are shown at juncture, bond walls together as follows:
  - a. Provide individual metal ties not more than 8 inches (203 mm) **OR** 16 inches (406 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
  - b. Provide continuity with masonry joint reinforcement by using prefabricated T-shaped units.
  - c. Provide rigid metal anchors not more than 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 48 inches (1220 mm), **as directed**, o.c. If used with hollow masonry units, embed ends in mortar-filled cores.

#### E. Cavity Walls

1. Bond wythes of cavity walls together using one of the following methods:
  - a. Individual Metal Ties: Provide ties as shown installed in horizontal joints, but not less than one metal tie for 4.5 sq. ft. (0.42 sq. m) **OR** 2.67 sq. ft. (0.25 sq. m), **as directed**, of wall area spaced not to exceed 36 inches (914 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm), **as directed**, o.c. horizontally and 16 inches (406 mm) o.c. vertically. Stagger ties in alternate courses. Provide additional ties within 12 inches (305 mm) of openings and space not more than 36 inches (915 mm) apart around perimeter of openings. At intersecting and abutting walls, provide ties at no more than 24 inches (610 mm) o.c. vertically.
  - b. Masonry Joint Reinforcement: Installed in horizontal mortar joints.
    - 1) Where bed joints of both wythes align, use ladder-type reinforcement extending across both wythes **OR** tab-type reinforcement, **as directed**.
    - 2) Where bed joints of wythes do not align, use adjustable (two-piece) type reinforcement with continuous horizontal wire in facing wythe attached to ties.
    - 3) Where one wythe is of clay masonry and the other of concrete masonry, use adjustable (two-piece) type reinforcement with continuous horizontal wire in facing wythe attached to ties to allow for differential movement regardless of whether bed joints align.
  - c. Masonry Veneer Anchors: Comply with requirements for anchoring masonry veneers.
2. Keep cavities clean of mortar droppings and other materials during construction. Bevel beds away from cavity, to minimize mortar protrusions into cavity. Do not attempt to trowel or remove mortar fins protruding into cavity.
3. Parge cavity face of backup wythe in a single coat approximately 3/8 inch (10 mm) thick. Trowel face of parge coat smooth.  
**OR**  
Coat cavity face of backup wythe to comply with Division 07 Section "Bituminous Dampproofing".

- #### F. Installing Cavity-Wall Insulation:
- Place small dabs of adhesive, spaced approximately 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. both ways, on inside face of insulation boards, or attach with plastic fasteners designed for this purpose. Fit insulation between wall ties and other confining obstructions, with edges butted tightly. Press units firmly against inside wythe of masonry.

#### G. Masonry-Cell Insulation

1. Pour granular insulation into cavities to fill void spaces. Maintain inspection ports to show presence of insulation at extremities of each pour area. Close the ports after filling has been confirmed. Limit the fall of insulation to 1 story in height, but not more than 20 feet (6 m).
2. Install molded-polystyrene insulation units into masonry unit cells before laying units.

#### H. Masonry Joint Reinforcement

1. General: Install in mortar with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch (16 mm) on exterior side of walls, 1/2 inch (13 mm) elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
2. Interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Provide continuity at wall intersections by using prefabricated T-shaped units.
4. Provide continuity at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units.



- I. Anchoring Masonry To Structural Members
1. Anchor masonry to structural members where masonry abuts or faces structural members to comply with the following:
    - a. Provide an open space not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, in width between masonry and structural member, unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Anchor masonry to structural members with anchors embedded in masonry joints and attached to structure.
    - c. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 24 inches (610 mm) o.c. vertically and 36 inches (915 mm) o.c. horizontally.
- J. Anchoring Masonry Veneers
1. Anchor masonry veneers to wall framing **OR** concrete and masonry backup, **as directed**, with seismic masonry-veneer anchors to comply with the following requirements:
    - a. Fasten screw-attached and seismic anchors through sheathing to wall framing and to concrete and masonry backup with metal fasteners of type indicated. Use two fasteners.
    - b. Insert slip-in anchors in metal studs as sheathing is installed. Provide one anchor at each stud in each horizontal joint between sheathing boards.
    - c. Embed tie sections **OR** connector sections and continuous wire, **as directed**, in masonry joints. Provide not less than 2 inches (50 mm) of air space between back of masonry veneer and face of sheathing.
    - d. Locate anchor sections to allow maximum vertical differential movement of ties up and down.
    - e. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 16 inches (406 mm) o.c. vertically and 32 inches (813 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm), **as directed**, o.c. horizontally with not less than 1 anchor for each 3.5 sq. ft. (0.33 sq. m) **OR** 2.67 sq. ft. (0.25 sq. m), **as directed**, of wall area. Install additional anchors within 12 inches (305 mm) of openings and at intervals, not exceeding 36 inches (914 mm), around perimeter.
- K. Control And Expansion Joints
1. General: Install control and expansion joint materials in unit masonry as masonry progresses. Do not allow materials to span control and expansion joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition movement.
  2. Provide horizontal, pressure-relieving joints by either leaving an air space or inserting a compressible filler of width required for installing sealant and backer rod specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants", but not less than 3/8 inch (10 mm).
    - a. Locate horizontal, pressure-relieving joints beneath shelf angles supporting masonry.
- L. Lintels
1. Provide concrete or masonry lintels where shown and where openings of more than 12 inches (305 mm) for brick-size units and 24 inches (610 mm) for block-size units are shown without structural steel or other supporting lintels.
  2. Provide minimum bearing of 8 inches (200 mm) at each jamb, unless otherwise indicated.
- M. Flashing, Weep Holes, Cavity Drainage, And Vents
1. General: Install embedded flashing and weep holes in masonry at shelf angles, lintels, ledges, other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated. Install vents at shelf angles, ledges, and other obstructions to upward flow of air in cavities, and where indicated.
  2. Install flashing as follows, unless otherwise indicated:
    - a. Prepare masonry surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing. Where flashing is within mortar joint, place through-wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Before covering with mortar, seal penetrations in flashing as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
    - b. At lintels and shelf angles, extend flashing a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) into masonry at each end. At heads and sills, extend flashing 6 inches (150 mm) at ends and turn up not less than 2 inches (50 mm) to form end dams.



- c. Install metal drip edges beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch (13 mm) back from outside face of wall and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal drip edge.
- d. Install metal flashing termination beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch (13 mm) back from outside face of wall and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal flashing termination.
3. Install single-wythe CMU flashing system in bed joints of CMU walls where indicated to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install CMU cell pans with upturned edges located below face shells and webs of CMUs above and with weep spouts aligned with face of wall. Install CMU web covers so that they cover upturned edges of CMU cell pans at CMU webs and extend from face shell to face shell.
4. Install reglets and nailers for flashing and other related construction where they are shown to be built into masonry.
5. Install weep holes in head joints in exterior wythes of first course of masonry immediately above embedded flashing and as follows:
  - a. Use specified weep/vent products or open head joints to form weep holes.
  - b. Space weep holes 24 inches (600 mm) o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
  - c. Cover cavity side of weep holes with plastic insect screening at cavities insulated with loose-fill insulation.
6. Place cavity drainage material in cavities to comply with configuration requirements for cavity drainage material in Part 2 "Miscellaneous Masonry Accessories" Article.
7. Install vents in head joints in exterior wythes at spacing indicated. Use specified weep/vent products or open head joints to form vents.
  - a. Close cavities off vertically and horizontally with blocking in manner indicated. Install through-wall flashing and weep holes above horizontal blocking.

#### N. Reinforced Unit Masonry Installation

1. Temporary Formwork and Shores: Construct formwork and shores as needed to support reinforced masonry elements during construction.
  - a. Construct formwork to provide shape, line, and dimensions of completed masonry as indicated. Make forms sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar and grout. Brace, tie, and support forms to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.
  - b. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and other temporary loads that may be placed on them during construction.
2. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 **OR** Section 2104.5 in the International Building Code, **as directed**.
  - a. Grouting: Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained enough strength to resist grout pressure.
  - b. Comply with requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 **OR** Section 2104.6 in the International Building Code, **as directed**, for cleanouts and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.
  - c. Limit height of vertical grout pours to not more than 60 inches (1520 mm).

#### O. Field Quality Control

1. Inspectors: Engage qualified independent inspectors to perform inspections and prepare reports. Allow inspectors access to scaffolding and work areas, as needed to perform inspections.
  - a. Place grout only after inspectors have verified compliance of grout spaces and grades, sizes, and locations of reinforcement.
2. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections indicated below and prepare test reports:
3. Testing Frequency: One set of tests for each 5000 sq. ft. (465 sq. m) of wall area or portion thereof.
4. Clay Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, per ASTM C 67.



5. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, per ASTM C 140.
  6. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix provided, per ASTM C 780 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**. Test mortar for mortar air content and compressive strength.
  7. Grout Test (Compressive Strength): For each mix provided, per ASTM C 1019 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
- P. Parging
1. Parge exterior faces of below-grade masonry walls, where indicated, in 2 uniform coats to a total thickness of 3/4 inch (19 mm) with a steel-trowel finish. Form a wash at top of parging and a cove at bottom. Damp-cure parging for at least 24 hours and protect parging until cured.
- Q. Cleaning
1. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
  2. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
    - a. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes.
    - b. Protect adjacent surfaces from contact with cleaner.
    - c. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
    - d. Clean brick by bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes 20.
    - e. Clean masonry with a proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - f. Clean concrete masonry by cleaning method indicated in NCMA TEK 8-2A applicable to type of stain on exposed surfaces.
- R. Masonry Waste Disposal
1. Waste Disposal as Fill Material: Dispose of clean masonry waste, including excess or soil-contaminated sand, waste mortar, and broken masonry units, by crushing and mixing with fill material as fill is placed.
    - a. Do not dispose of masonry waste as fill within 18 inches (450 mm) of finished grade.
    - b. Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off the Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 01 54 23 00a



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
01 54 23 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 54 26 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 55 23 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 55 26 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 56 16 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



**SECTION 01 56 26 00 - SEDIMENT REMOVAL**

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing of labor and equipment for sediment removal.

1.2 PRODUCTS - (Not Used)

1.3 EXECUTION

- A. The Contractor shall remove all material from areas as required to meet project requirements. Water and sediment removed from these areas shall be discharged to a sedimentation basin constructed and maintained by the Contractor. All work shall be in strict compliance with Pollution Control requirements and Dewatering requirements. All material removed shall be disposed of in an approved landfill in accordance with all State and Federal Regulations.

END OF SECTION 01 56 26 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 01 56 26 00a - EROSION CONTROL

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of mesh or netting for erosion control. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Materials

1. Jute Mesh: Fed. Spec. CCC-C-467.
2. Plastic Mesh: Manufacturer's recommendation.
3. Plastic Netting: Manufacturer's recommendation.
4. Polypropylene Mesh: Manufacturer's recommendation.
5. Woven Fabric Fence: EPA specifications.
6. Hay-Bales: EPA specifications.

### 1.3 EXECUTION:

- A. Preparation: Grade, compact, fertilize, and seed the area to be protected.
- B. Installation: Apply blankets either horizontally or vertically to the slope. In ditches, apply blanket in direction of water flow. Lap and anchor blankets according to the manufacturer's instructions. Install woven fabric fence and hay bales adjacent to all excavated areas.

END OF SECTION 01 56 26 00a



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
01 56 26 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 56 29 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 56 33 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 56 39 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 57 13 00	01 56 26 00	Sediment Removal
01 58 13 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 66 19 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 71 13 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





## SECTION 01 71 23 16 - CUTTING AND PATCHING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for cutting and patching. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes procedural requirements for cutting and patching.

#### C. Definitions

1. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of other Work.
2. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore surfaces to original conditions after installation of other Work.

#### D. Submittals

1. Cutting and Patching Proposal: Submit a proposal describing procedures at least 10 days before the time cutting and patching will be performed, requesting approval to proceed. Include the following information:
  - a. Extent: Describe cutting and patching, show how they will be performed, and indicate why they cannot be avoided.
  - b. Changes to In-Place Construction: Describe anticipated results. Include changes to structural elements and operating components as well as changes in building's appearance and other significant visual elements.
  - c. Products: List products to be used and firms or entities that will perform the Work.
  - d. Dates: Indicate when cutting and patching will be performed.
  - e. Utility Services and Mechanical/Electrical Systems: List services/systems that cutting and patching procedures will disturb or affect. List services/systems that will be relocated and those that will be temporarily out of service. Indicate how long services/systems will be disrupted.
  - f. Structural Elements: Where cutting and patching involve adding reinforcement to structural elements, submit details and engineering calculations showing integration of reinforcement with original structure.
  - g. the Owner's Approval: Obtain approval of cutting and patching proposal before cutting and patching. Approval does not waive right to later require removal and replacement of unsatisfactory work.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. LEED Requirements for Building Reuse:
  - a. Credit MR 1.1 and 1.2, **as directed**: Maintain existing building structure (including structural floor and roof decking) and envelope (exterior skin and framing, excluding window assemblies and nonstructural roofing material) not indicated to be removed; do not cut such existing construction beyond indicated limits.
  - b. Credit MR 1.3: Maintain existing interior nonstructural elements (interior walls, doors, floor coverings, and ceiling systems) not indicated to be removed; do not cut such existing construction beyond indicated limits.
  - c. Credit MR 1.2 and 1.3, **as directed**: Maintain existing nonshell, nonstructural components (walls, flooring, and ceilings) not indicated to be removed; do not cut such existing construction beyond indicated limits.



2. Structural Elements: Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or load-deflection ratio.
  - a. **Refer to the Owner for list of elements that might otherwise be overlooked as structural elements and that require Architect's or Construction Manager's approval of a cutting and patching proposal.**
3. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Operating elements include the following:
  - a. Primary operational systems and equipment.
  - b. Air or smoke barriers.
  - c. Fire-suppression systems.
  - d. Mechanical systems piping and ducts.
  - e. Control systems.
  - f. Communication systems.
  - g. Conveying systems.
  - h. Electrical wiring systems.
  - i. Operating systems of special construction in Division 13.
4. Miscellaneous Elements: Do not cut and patch miscellaneous elements or related components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Miscellaneous elements include the following:
  - a. Water, moisture, or vapor barriers.
  - b. Membranes and flashings.
  - c. Exterior curtain-wall construction.
  - d. Equipment supports.
  - e. Piping, ductwork, vessels, and equipment.
  - f. Noise- and vibration-control elements and systems.
5. Visual Requirements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch construction exposed on the exterior or in occupied spaces in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
6. Cutting and Patching Conference: Before proceeding, meet at Project site with parties involved in cutting and patching, including mechanical and electrical trades. Review areas of potential interference and conflict. Coordinate procedures and resolve potential conflicts before proceeding.

#### F. Warranty

1. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Materials

1. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.
2. In-Place Materials: Use materials identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
  - a. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will match the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.



### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Preparation

1. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of Work to be cut.
2. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
3. Adjoining Areas: Avoid interference with use of adjoining areas or interruption of free passage to adjoining areas.
4. Existing Utility Services and Mechanical/Electrical Systems: Where existing services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, bypass such services/systems before cutting to minimize **OR** prevent, **as directed**, interruption to occupied areas.

#### B. Performance

1. General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
  - a. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
2. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
  - a. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots as small as possible, neatly to size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
  - b. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
  - c. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
  - d. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Division 31 where required by cutting and patching operations.
  - e. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
  - f. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
3. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other Work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections.
  - a. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate integrity of installation.
  - b. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will eliminate evidence of patching and refinishing.
    - 1) Clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or other finishing materials.
    - 2) Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.
  - c. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove in-place floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.
    - 1) Where patching occurs in a painted surface, apply primer and intermediate paint coats over the patch and apply final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing the patch. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.



- 
- d. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang in-place ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
  - e. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weathertight condition.
4. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Completely remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials.

END OF SECTION 01 71 23 16



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
01 74 16 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 01 74 19 00 - CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Summary

1. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
  - a. Salvaging nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.  
**Note: All salvageable materials remain the property of the Owner and shall be turned over as directed when specified in the Job Order.**
  - b. Recycling nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.
  - c. Disposing of nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.

## B. Definitions

1. Construction Waste: Building and site improvement materials and other solid waste resulting from construction, remodeling, renovation, or repair operations. Construction waste includes packaging.
2. Demolition Waste: Building and site improvement materials resulting from demolition or selective demolition operations.
3. Disposal: Removal off-site of demolition and construction waste and subsequent sale, recycling, reuse, or deposit in landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
4. Recycle: Recovery of demolition or construction waste for subsequent processing in preparation for reuse.
5. Salvage: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent sale or reuse in another facility.
6. Salvage and Reuse: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent incorporation into the Work.

C. Performance Goals **OR** Requirements, **as directed**

1. General: Develop waste management plan that results in end-of-Project rates for salvage/recycling of 50 **OR** 75, **as directed**, percent by weight of total waste generated by the Work.
2. Salvage/Recycle Goals **OR** Requirements, **as directed**: Owner's goal is to salvage and recycle as much nonhazardous demolition and construction waste as possible including the following materials:  
**OR**  
Salvage/Recycle Goals **OR** Requirements, **as directed**: Owner's goal is to salvage and recycle as much nonhazardous demolition and construction waste as possible. Owner has established minimum goals for the following materials:
  - a. Demolition Waste:
    - 1) Asphaltic concrete paving.
    - 2) Concrete.
    - 3) Concrete reinforcing steel.
    - 4) Brick.
    - 5) Concrete masonry units.
    - 6) Wood studs.
    - 7) Wood joists.
    - 8) Plywood and oriented strand board.
    - 9) Wood paneling.
    - 10) Wood trim.
    - 11) Structural and miscellaneous steel.
    - 12) Rough hardware.
    - 13) Roofing.
    - 14) Insulation.
    - 15) Doors and frames.



- 16) Door hardware.
  - 17) Windows.
  - 18) Glazing.
  - 19) Metal studs.
  - 20) Gypsum board.
  - 21) Acoustical tile and panels.
  - 22) Carpet.
  - 23) Carpet pad.
  - 24) Demountable partitions.
  - 25) Equipment.
  - 26) Cabinets.
  - 27) Plumbing fixtures.
  - 28) Piping.
  - 29) Supports and hangers.
  - 30) Valves.
  - 31) Sprinklers.
  - 32) Mechanical equipment.
  - 33) Refrigerants.
  - 34) Electrical conduit.
  - 35) Copper wiring.
  - 36) Lighting fixtures.
  - 37) Lamps.
  - 38) Ballasts.
  - 39) Electrical devices.
  - 40) Switchgear and panelboards.
  - 41) Transformers.
- b. Construction Waste:
- 1) Site-clearing waste.
  - 2) Masonry and CMU.
  - 3) Lumber.
  - 4) Wood sheet materials.
  - 5) Wood trim.
  - 6) Metals.
  - 7) Roofing.
  - 8) Insulation.
  - 9) Carpet and pad.
  - 10) Gypsum board.
  - 11) Piping.
  - 12) Electrical conduit.
  - 13) Packaging: Regardless of salvage/recycle goal indicated above, salvage or recycle 100 percent of the following uncontaminated packaging materials:
    - a) Paper.
    - b) Cardboard.
    - c) Boxes.
    - d) Plastic sheet and film.
    - e) Polystyrene packaging.
    - f) Wood crates.
    - g) Plastic pails.

D. Submittals

1. Waste Management Plan: Submit 3 copies of plan within 7 **OR** 30, **as directed**, days of date established for commencement of the Work **OR** the Notice to Proceed **OR** the Notice of Award, **as directed**.





2. Waste Reduction Progress Reports: Concurrent with each Application for Payment, submit three copies of report. Include separate reports for demolition and construction waste, **as directed**. Include the following information:
    - a. Material category.
    - b. Generation point of waste.
    - c. Total quantity of waste in tons (tonnes).
    - d. Quantity of waste salvaged, both estimated and actual in tons (tonnes).
    - e. Quantity of waste recycled, both estimated and actual in tons (tonnes).
    - f. Total quantity of waste recovered (salvaged plus recycled) in tons (tonnes).
    - g. Total quantity of waste recovered (salvaged plus recycled) as a percentage of total waste.
  3. Waste Reduction Calculations: Before request for Final Completion, submit three copies of calculated end-of-Project rates for salvage, recycling, and disposal as a percentage of total waste generated by the Work.
  4. Recycling and Processing Facility Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of recyclable waste by recycling and processing facilities licensed to accept them. Include manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices.
  5. Landfill and Incinerator Disposal Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of waste by landfills and incinerator facilities licensed to accept them. Include manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices.
  6. LEED Submittal: LEED letter template for Credit MR 2.1 and 2.2, **as directed**, signed by Contractor, tabulating total waste material, quantities diverted and means by which it is diverted, and statement that requirements for the credit have been met.
  7. Qualification Data: For Waste Management Coordinator and refrigerant recovery technician.
  8. Statement of Refrigerant Recovery: Signed by refrigerant recovery technician responsible for recovering refrigerant, stating that all refrigerant that was present was recovered and that recovery was performed according to EPA regulations. Include name and address of technician and date refrigerant was recovered.
- E. Quality Assurance
1. Waste Management Coordinator Qualifications: LEED Accredited Professional by U.S. Green Building Council. Waste management coordinator may also serve as LEED coordinator.
  2. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by EPA-approved certification program.
  3. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
  4. Waste Management Conference: Conduct conference at Project site. Review methods and procedures related to waste management including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Review and discuss waste management plan including responsibilities of Waste Management Coordinator.
    - b. Review requirements for documenting quantities of each type of waste and its disposition.
    - c. Review and finalize procedures for materials separation and verify availability of containers and bins needed to avoid delays.
    - d. Review procedures for periodic waste collection and transportation to recycling and disposal facilities.
    - e. Review waste management requirements for each trade.
- F. Waste Management Plan
1. General: Develop plan consisting of waste identification, waste reduction work plan, and cost/revenue analysis. Include separate sections in plan for demolition and construction waste if Project requires selective demolition or building demolition. Indicate quantities by weight or volume, but use same units of measure throughout waste management plan.
  2. Waste Identification: Indicate anticipated types and quantities of demolition, site-clearing, and construction waste generated by the Work. Include estimated quantities and assumptions for estimates.
  3. Waste Reduction Work Plan: List each type of waste and whether it will be salvaged, recycled, or disposed of in landfill or incinerator. Include points of waste generation, total quantity of each type of waste, quantity for each means of recovery, and handling and transportation procedures.



- a. Salvaged Materials for Reuse: For materials that will be salvaged and reused in this Project, describe methods for preparing salvaged materials before incorporation into the Work.
  - b. Recycled Materials: Include list of local receivers and processors and type of recycled materials each will accept. Include names, addresses, and telephone numbers.
  - c. Disposed Materials: Indicate how and where materials will be disposed of. Include name, address, and telephone number of each landfill and incinerator facility.
  - d. Handling and Transportation Procedures: Include method that will be used for separating recyclable waste including sizes of containers, container labeling, and designated location on Project site where materials separation will be located.
4. Cost/Revenue Analysis: Indicate total cost of waste disposal as if there was no waste management plan and net additional cost or net savings resulting from implementing waste management plan. Include the following:
- a. Total quantity of waste.
  - b. Estimated cost of disposal (cost per unit). Include hauling and tipping fees and cost of collection containers for each type of waste.
  - c. Total cost of disposal (with no waste management).
  - d. Revenue from salvaged materials.
  - e. Revenue from recycled materials.
  - f. Savings in hauling and tipping fees by donating materials.
  - g. Savings in hauling and tipping fees that are avoided.
  - h. Handling and transportation costs. Include cost of collection containers for each type of waste.
  - i. Net additional cost or net savings from waste management plan.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS (Not Used)

## 1.3 EXECUTION

### A. Plan Implementation

1. General: Implement waste management plan as approved by the Owner. Provide handling, containers, storage, signage, transportation, and other items as required to implement waste management plan during the entire duration of the Contract.
  - a. Comply with Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities And Controls" for operation, termination, and removal requirements.
2. Waste Management Coordinator: Engage a waste management coordinator to be responsible for implementing, monitoring, and reporting status of waste management work plan. Coordinator shall be present at Project site full time for duration of Project.
3. Training: Train workers, subcontractors, and suppliers on proper waste management procedures, as appropriate for the Work occurring at Project site.
  - a. Distribute waste management plan to everyone concerned within three days of submittal return.
  - b. Distribute waste management plan to entities when they first begin work on-site. Review plan procedures and locations established for salvage, recycling, and disposal.
4. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct waste management operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
  - a. Designate and label specific areas on Project site necessary for separating materials that are to be salvaged, recycled, reused, donated, and sold.
  - b. Comply with Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities And Controls" for controlling dust and dirt, environmental protection, and noise control.

### B. Salvaging Demolition Waste



1. Salvaged Items for Reuse in the Work:
    - a. Clean salvaged items.
    - b. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
    - c. Store items in a secure area until installation.
    - d. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
    - e. Install salvaged items to comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make items functional for use indicated.
  2. Salvaged Items for Sale and Donation: Not permitted.
  3. Salvaged Items for Owner's Use:
    - a. Clean salvaged items.
    - b. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
    - c. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
    - d. Transport items to Owner's storage area on-site **OR** off-site **OR** designated by Owner, **as directed**.
    - e. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
  4. Doors and Hardware: Brace open end of door frames. Except for removing door closers, leave door hardware attached to doors.
- C. Recycling Demolition And Construction Waste, General
1. General: Recycle paper and beverage containers used by on-site workers.
  2. Recycling Receivers and Processors: Refer to the Owner for available recycling receivers and processors.
  3. Recycling Incentives: Revenues, savings, rebates, tax credits, and other incentives received for recycling waste materials shall accrue to Owner **OR** accrue to Contractor **OR** be shared equally by Owner and Contractor, **as directed**.
  4. Procedures: Separate recyclable waste from other waste materials, trash, and debris. Separate recyclable waste by type at Project site to the maximum extent practical.
    - a. Provide appropriately marked containers or bins for controlling recyclable waste until they are removed from Project site. Include list of acceptable and unacceptable materials at each container and bin.
      - 1) Inspect containers and bins for contamination and remove contaminated materials if found.
    - b. Stockpile processed materials on-site without intermixing with other materials. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
    - c. Stockpile materials away from construction area. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.
    - d. Store components off the ground and protect from the weather.
    - e. Remove recyclable waste off Owner's property and transport to recycling receiver or processor.
- D. Recycling Demolition Waste
1. Asphaltic Concrete Paving: Grind asphalt to maximum 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) **OR** 4-inch (100-mm), **as directed**, size.
    - a. Crush asphaltic concrete paving and screen to comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for use as general fill.
  2. Asphaltic Concrete Paving: Break up and transport paving to asphalt-recycling facility.
  3. Concrete: Remove reinforcement and other metals from concrete and sort with other metals.
    - a. Pulverize concrete to maximum 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) **OR** 4-inch (100-mm), **as directed**, size.
    - b. Crush concrete and screen to comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for use as satisfactory soil for fill or subbase.
  4. Masonry: Remove metal reinforcement, anchors, and ties from masonry and sort with other metals.
    - a. Pulverize masonry to maximum 3/4-inch (19-mm) **OR** 1-inch (25-mm) **OR** 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) **OR** 4-inch (100-mm), **as directed**, size.



- 1) Crush masonry and screen to comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for use as general fill **OR** satisfactory soil for fill or subbase, **as directed**.
  - 2) Crush masonry and screen to comply with requirements in Division 32 Section "Plants" for use as mineral mulch.
    - b. Clean and stack undamaged, whole masonry units on wood pallets.
  5. Wood Materials: Sort and stack members according to size, type, and length. Separate lumber, engineered wood products, panel products, and treated wood materials.
  6. Metals: Separate metals by type.
    - a. Structural Steel: Stack members according to size, type of member, and length.
    - b. Remove and dispose of bolts, nuts, washers, and other rough hardware.
  7. Asphalt Shingle Roofing: Separate organic and glass-fiber asphalt shingles and felts. Remove and dispose of nails, staples, and accessories.
  8. Gypsum Board: Stack large clean pieces on wood pallets and store in a dry location. Remove edge trim and sort with other metals. Remove and dispose of fasteners.
  9. Acoustical Ceiling Panels and Tile: Stack large clean pieces on wood pallets and store in a dry location.
    - a. Separate suspension system, trim, and other metals from panels and tile and sort with other metals.
  10. Carpet and Pad: Roll large pieces tightly after removing debris, trash, adhesive, and tack strips.
    - a. Store clean, dry carpet and pad in a closed container or trailer provided by Carpet Reclamation Agency or carpet recycler.
  11. Equipment: Drain tanks, piping, and fixtures. Seal openings with caps or plugs. Protect equipment from exposure to weather.
  12. Plumbing Fixtures: Separate by type and size.
  13. Piping: Reduce piping to straight lengths and store by type and size. Separate supports, hangers, valves, sprinklers, and other components by type and size.
  14. Lighting Fixtures: Separate lamps by type and protect from breakage.
  15. Electrical Devices: Separate switches, receptacles, switchgear, transformers, meters, panelboards, circuit breakers, and other devices by type.
  16. Conduit: Reduce conduit to straight lengths and store by type and size.
- E. Recycling Construction Waste
1. Packaging:
    - a. Cardboard and Boxes: Break down packaging into flat sheets. Bundle and store in a dry location.
    - b. Polystyrene Packaging: Separate and bag materials.
    - c. Pallets: As much as possible, require deliveries using pallets to remove pallets from Project site. For pallets that remain on-site, break down pallets into component wood pieces and comply with requirements for recycling wood.
    - d. Crates: Break down crates into component wood pieces and comply with requirements for recycling wood.
  2. Site-Clearing Wastes: Chip brush, branches, and trees on-site **OR** at landfill facility, **as directed**.
    - a. Comply with requirements in Division 32 Section "Plants" for use of chipped organic waste as organic mulch.
  3. Wood Materials:
    - a. Clean Cut-Offs of Lumber: Grind or chip into small pieces.
    - b. Clean Sawdust: Bag sawdust that does not contain painted or treated wood.
      - 1) Comply with requirements in Division 32 Section "Plants" for use of clean sawdust as organic mulch.
  4. Gypsum Board: Stack large clean pieces on wood pallets and store in a dry location.
    - a. Clean Gypsum Board: Grind scraps of clean gypsum board using small mobile chipper or hammer mill. Screen out paper after grinding.
      - 1) Comply with requirements in Division 32 Section "Plants" for use of clean ground gypsum board as inorganic soil amendment.



F. Disposal Of Waste

1. General: Except for items or materials to be salvaged, recycled, or otherwise reused, remove waste materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in a landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - a. Except as otherwise specified, do not allow waste materials that are to be disposed of accumulate on-site.
  - b. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
2. Burning: Do not burn waste materials.  
**OR**  
Burning: Burning of waste materials is permitted only at designated areas on Owner's property, provided required permits are obtained. Provide full-time monitoring for burning materials until fires are extinguished.
3. Disposal: Transport waste materials and dispose of at designated spoil areas on Owner's property.  
**OR**  
Disposal: Transport waste materials off Owner's property and legally dispose of them.

END OF SECTION 01 74 19 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
01 74 19 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



**SECTION 02 32 13 00 - SUBSURFACE DRILLING, SAMPLING, AND TESTING**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing of labor and equipment for drilling, sampling and testing for subsurface investigation of soils.

## B. System Description: The purpose of the work specified herein is to determine the type, nature, and characteristics of subsurface materials and the extent and conditions of the various materials as they exist to the depths and at the locations specified. This is to be accomplished by means of auger borings, drive sample borings, undisturbed sample borings, core drilling, pressure testing, or test pits.

1. Auger Borings and Sampling: An auger boring is any boring made in unconsolidated soils with a conventional manually or power-driven earth auger for the purpose of obtaining samples of subsurface materials. Auger boring and sampling shall be performed in accordance with ASTM D 1452.
2. Drive Sample Borings and Sampling: A drive sample boring is a boring made through unconsolidated or partly consolidated sediments or decomposed rock by means of a mechanically driven sampler. The purpose of these borings is to obtain knowledge of the composition, the thickness, the depth, the sequence, the structure, and the pertinent physical properties of foundation or borrow materials. Drive sample boring and sampling shall be performed in accordance with ASTM D 1587. Standard Penetration Tests (SPT) shall be performed in accordance with ASTM D 1586.
3. Undisturbed Sample Borings and Sampling: An undisturbed sample boring is a boring made to obtain soil samples which, when tested, will show properties as close to the in situ (in place) properties as any sample which can be obtained. All undisturbed sampling shall be accomplished in accordance with ASTM D 1587.
4. Core Drilling: Drilling of cores shall be performed as per ASTM D 2113. The method used shall provide equally good recovery of cores from both hard and soft rocks.
5. Pressure Testing (Hydraulic): Hydraulic pressure testing is the process of forcing water under pressure into subsurface rock formations through pre-drilled holes for the purpose of determining the subsurface leakage conditions and possible grouting requirements.
6. Test Pit Excavation and Sampling: A test pit is any excavation in soil, hardpan, decomposed rock, or other unconsolidated or partially consolidated overburden materials which has an open cross-sectional area large enough to permit efficient excavation and shoring/lining, engineering and geological inspection and photographing of the subsurface soils and manual undisturbed sampling from within the test pit. All test pits shall be excavated, dewatered (if necessary), shored/lined and protected from surface water drainage in accordance with all applicable Federal, State, local, and OSHA safety regulations.
7. Bearing Capacity: ASTM D 1149.
8. Soils Classification: ASTM D 2487, ASTM D 2488, MIL-STD 619.

## C. Submittals

1. Permits, Certifications, and Licenses: Comply with all Federal, State and local laws, regulations and ordinances relating to the performance of this work. The Contractor shall, at its own expense, procure all required permits, certifications and licenses required of him by Federal, State, and local law for the execution of this work. Furnish copies of all such documents to the Owner prior to starting work.
2. Drilling, Sampling, and Testing Plan: Prior to starting work, submit a plan for drilling, sampling, testing, and safety. The plan shall include, but not be limited to, the proposed method of drilling and sampling including a description of the equipment and sampling tools that will be used, a listing of any subcontractors to include a description of how the subcontractors will be used and a description of all methods and procedures that will be utilized to ensure a safe operation and to protect the environment. This submittal shall also include a statement of the prior experience, in



the type of work described in these specifications, of the person or persons designated to perform the work specified herein. No work shall be performed until this plan has been approved and no deviation from the approved plan will be permitted without prior approval by the Owner.

3. Drilling Log: Submit complete, legible copies of drilling log and records to the Owner within 5 days after a hole or test pit is completed.

D. Care And Delivery Of Samples

1. General: The Contractor shall be solely responsible for preserving all samples in good condition. Keep samples from freezing and from undue exposure to the weather, and shall keep all descriptive labels and designations on sample jars, tubes, and boxes clean and legible until final delivery. Except as otherwise specified, deliver samples safely to test facility, **as directed**. Deliver samples within the time limits specified for each type of investigation or in accordance with schedules prepared by the Owner.
2. Undisturbed Samples: Take every precaution to avoid damage to samples as a result of careless handling and undue delay in shipping. Ship samples in containers approved by the Owner, of sufficient durability to protect the samples from any damage during shipment. Pack sample tubes in vermiculite or other equal material approved by the Owner to protect the samples against vibration. Avoid exposing sealed and crated samples to precipitation, direct sunlight, freezing and temperatures in excess of 100 degrees F (38 degrees C). Samples permitted to freeze, even partially, shall be replaced by the Contractor at its expense. In general, no undisturbed samples shall remain on the site of sampling for more than one week before shipment. Store and ship samples with the tube in a horizontal **OR** vertical, **as directed**, position in order to prevent consolidation and segregation or change of water content.

E. Project/Site Conditions

1. Environmental Requirements
  - a. In order to prevent and to provide for abatement and control of any environmental pollution arising from Contractor activities in the performance of this contract, the Contractor and its subcontractors shall comply with all applicable Federal, State, and local laws, regulations, and ordinances concerning environmental pollution control and abatement.
    - 1) The Contractor shall be responsible for keeping informed of all updates and changes in all applicable laws, regulations, and ordinances.
    - 2) The Contractor shall not pollute lakes, ditches, rivers, springs, canals, waterways, groundwaters, or reservoirs with drill fluids, fuels, oils, bitumens, calcium chloride, insecticides, herbicides, or other materials that may be harmful to the environment or a detriment to outdoor recreation.
2. Field Measurements: The approximate locations of drill holes or test pits shall be as directed. The actual locations will be established in the field by the Owner prior to the start of work. The elevations of the established locations will also be provided by the Owner prior to the start of work. The Contractor will provide access to the locations as it deems necessary for the prosecution of the work. Since no separate payment will be made for access construction, all costs associated with this shall be included in the cost of drilling or excavating.

F. Sequencing And Scheduling

1. Schedule of Drilling, Sampling and Testing: The schedule of Drilling, Sampling, and Testing is listed in the following schedule:

SCHEDULE OF DRILLING, SAMPLING AND TESTING

HOLE NO. or PIT NO.	METHOD	DEPTH FT(M)	VERTICAL or INCLINED	SPECIAL INSTRUCTIONS
------------------------	--------	----------------	-------------------------	-------------------------

2. Order of Work: The order in which the work is to be accomplished will be determined in the field by the Owner.



1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Containers: Furnish jars, tubes, and boxes that meet the following requirements. All such containers will become the property of the Owner and the cost thereof shall be included in the contract price for the applicable item for which payment is provided.

1. Sample Jars: Sample jars shall be 1 pint (0.5 L) **OR** 1 quart (1.0 L), **as directed**, capacity, wide-mouth over 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) in diameter, glass **OR** plastic, **as directed**, jars with moisture-tight screw tops.
2. Shipping Boxes: Boxes for shipping sample jars shall be corrugated cardboard **OR** wooden, **as directed**, boxes that have the capacity to hold no more than 12 sample jars and the strength to contain and protect the jars and their contents under ordinary handling and environmental conditions.
3. Tubes and Crates: Undisturbed samples shall be shipped in thin walled Shelby tubes packed in crates.
4. Core Boxes: Longitudinally partitioned, hinged top, wooden core boxes constructed of plywood and dressed lumber or other approved materials shall be used for all rock cores. As many core boxes as may be required shall be used to box all core. Core boxes shall be completely equipped with all necessary partitions, hinges, and a hasp for holding down the cover. In addition, the Contractor shall provide wood spacers made of surfaced lumber (not plywood) and having dimensions that are 1/8 inch (3 mm) less than the inside dimensions of the individual core box troughs and no less than 3/4 inch (19 mm) thick for blocking the core in the boxes and for providing a marking space to identify core runs and pull depths/elevations. The quantities of these blocks that are required are: ten blocks per core box for 3-inch (75-mm) or smaller core, five blocks per core box for 4-inch (100-mm) and PQ core, and three blocks per core box for 6-inch (150-mm) core. The box should have the following capacities:

6-inch (150-mm) core	single row of core
4-inch (100-mm) or PQ core	2 rows of core
3-inch (75-mm) or smaller core	3 or 4 rows of core

The maximum length of a core box shall be 4 feet (1.2 m) for 3-inch (75 mm) or smaller core and shall be dimensioned so that a box will hold 12 to 16 feet (3.6 to 4.9 m) of core. The maximum length of a core box for core that is larger than 3 inches (75 mm) shall be 5 feet (1.5 m).

B. Labels

1. Sample Jar Labels: A printed or type-written, fade resistant and waterproof label shall be affixed to the outside of each jar and shall contain the following information:  
PROJECT \_\_\_\_\_ LOCATION \_\_\_\_\_  
(Such as Table Rock Dam) (Such as Borrow Area B)  
HOLE NO. \_\_\_\_\_ STATION \_\_\_\_\_  
JAR NO. \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ JARS  
TOP ELEV. OF HOLE \_\_\_\_\_ DEPTH OF SAMPLE \_\_\_\_\_  
DESCRIPTION OF MATERIAL \_\_\_\_\_  
(Such as moist, silty, medium sand)
2. Shipping Box Labels: Each box of jar samples shall be identified with weatherproof and wear-proof labels indicating the following:  
PROJECT: [\_\_\_\_\_]   
LOCATION: [\_\_\_\_\_]   
JAR SAMPLES FROM HOLE OR HOLES: [\_\_\_\_\_]
3. Core Box Labels: Core boxes shall be identified with stenciled labels. The information on this label shall contain the following:  
PROJECT: [\_\_\_\_\_]   
HOLE NO. [\_\_\_\_\_]   
BOX NO. [\_\_\_\_\_]   
TOTAL NUMBER OF BOXES FOR THE HOLE: [\_\_\_\_\_]

1.3 EXECUTION



A. Mobilization and Demobilization

1. Mobilization: Mobilization shall consist of the delivery to the site of all plant, equipment, materials and supplies to be furnished by the Contractor, the complete assembly in satisfactory working order of all such plant and equipment at the jobsite and the satisfactory storage at the site of all such materials and supplies.
2. Demobilization: Demobilization shall consist of the removal from the site of all plant, equipment, materials and supplies after completion of the work and also includes, at the direction of the Owner, the cleanup and removal of all scrap, waste backfill material, waste drilling fluid, soil contaminated with engine/hydraulic oil, backfilling all sumps or excavations resulting from the operations and, in general, returning the site as close to its original condition as possible.

B. Equipment and Supplies

1. Auger Boring and Sampling: The equipment to be furnished by the Contractor for making auger borings shall include, but not be limited to, standard continuous flight augers and/or standard cup-type earth augers, similar or equal to the Iwan Auger and not less than 4 inches (100 mm) in diameter unless otherwise approved. The augers shall be completely equipped with all the accessories necessary for boring and sampling of overburden materials to the depths and diameters specified or shown on the drawings.
2. Drive Sample Boring and Sampling: Equipment to be furnished by the Contractor for making drive sample borings shall include, but not be limited to, standard 2-inch (50 mm) split barrel **OR** solid barrel, **as directed**, drive samplers and power-driven drilling machinery of a type or types approved by the Owner, complete with a drive-hammer of the weight as required to meet project requirements, and all other accessories for taking samples of all types of soils or decomposed rock at the locations and to the depths indicated in the schedule in paragraph SCHEDULE OF DRILLING, SAMPLING, AND TESTING. The drive shoe for the split barrel samplers shall be of hardened steel and shall be replaced or repaired when it becomes dented or distorted. Supplies shall include, but not be limited to, all casing, drill stem, drill bits, drill fluid and additives, pumps, and power necessary to accomplish the required boring and sampling.
3. Undisturbed Sample Boring and Sampling: Equipment to be furnished by the Contractor for making undisturbed sample borings shall include, but not be limited to, power-driven drilling machinery of an approved type or types complete with the special devices and accessories enumerated and described hereinafter. Drilling machinery shall be of the hydraulic feed type. Supplies shall include, but not be limited to, all samplers, casing, drill stem, drill bits, drill fluid and additives, pumps, and power necessary to accomplish the required boring and sampling. Drill casing, if used, shall be of such minimum inside diameter as to allow use of the selected sampler.
  - a. Sands and Cohesive Soils: The sampling device used to sample fine to medium grain sands and cohesive soils shall be a fixed or stationary piston type that uses a 3-inch (75-mm) **OR** 5-inch (125-mm), **as directed**, diameter thin wall Shelby tube. Subject to the approval of the Owner, floating or free piston and non-piston type samplers may be used provided adequate means, such as check valve or vacuum system, are provided to prevent loss of samples.
  - b. Stiff and Dense Soils: The sampling device for obtaining samples of stiff and dense soils shall be similar or equal to a Denison double tube, swivel head core barrel, or a Pitcher sampler and must be approved by the Owner prior to use.
4. Core Drilling - Size BX and NX Core: Equipment to be furnished by the Contractor for core drilling shall include core-drilling machinery of a type or types approved by the Owner complete with all the accessories needed to take continuous rock cores of a diameter consistent with bit size to the depths specified. The Contractor shall use, as a minimum, a standard ball-bearing, swivel-head, double-tube core barrel, or equivalent. The capacity of the core barrel shall not exceed 10.5 feet (3.2 m) of core. Supplies for core drilling to be furnished by the Contractor shall include, but not be limited to, all casing, drill rods, core barrels, coring bits, piping, pumps, water, tools, and power required for drilling and all boxes and containers required for core samples. Selection of the type of bit shall be at the Contractor's discretion provided that the selected bit produces high quality rock core. (see paragraph SUPPLEMENTAL BORINGS or PITS). The



- Contractor's drilling equipment shall be capable of drilling inclined as well as vertical core holes as specified.
5. **Pressure Testing (Hydraulic):** Pressure testing equipment to be furnished by the Contractor shall include, but not be limited to, a water pump with a minimum capacity of 50 gallons per minute (3.15 liters per second) that is capable of delivering a constant discharge pressure with double expander packers with rubber expansion elements set 5 feet (1.5 m) **OR** 10 feet (3 m), **as directed**, apart with piping so arranged that water may be admitted either below the bottom packer element or between the two packer elements, a pressure relief valve, a pressure gage capable of measuring water pressures to the nearest 10 psi (1.45 kPa) and water meter capable of measuring flows to the nearest 1.6 gallon(s) per minute (0.1 liter(s) per second). Supplies shall include, but not be limited to, all accessory valves, gages, surge tanks, stopcocks, plugs, expanders, potable water for testing, standby pumps, fuels, pipes, pressure hose, and tools necessary for maintaining uninterrupted tests for each boring to be tested. The pressure test equipment shall be configured so that the pressure gage is located at the top of the hole, a by-pass water line and valve are located between the pump and the gage, a flow meter is located between the by-pass and the pressure gage, and a valve is located in the line between the flow meter and the pressure gage. All equipment and supplies used for pressure testing shall be approved by the Owner prior to use.
  6. **Test Pit Excavation and Sampling:** Selection of the test pit excavation, shoring/lining and dewatering (if necessary) methods and equipment shall be at the Contractor's discretion but must be approved by the Owner. When the number of test pits to be excavated is large, and when adaptable mechanical trenching equipment is available, the Owner may require that such mechanical excavating equipment be used to expedite completion of the pits. Supplies which the Contractor shall furnish for obtaining undisturbed samples shall include, but not be limited to, split metal cylinders and/or metal or wooden boxes of acceptable sizes and types. Accessories to be supplied by the Contractor shall include, but not be limited to, a small sample trimming shovel or spade, hatchet, trimming knife, wax and facilities for melting and brushing same, trowels, labels, and boxes for shipping samples. The Contractor shall also furnish all materials required for shoring/lining to comply with all applicable safety regulations. The Owner may require the Contractor to salvage and re-use this shoring/lining material in successive test pits.
- C. **Identifying Samples:** Sample jars, shipping boxes, and labels shall comply with paragraphs SAMPLE JARS, SHIPPING BOXES, and LABELS, respectively. The Contractor shall take all precautions required to insure that the shipping boxes are not subjected to rough handling or damaging environmental conditions, and complies with paragraph CARE AND DELIVERY OF SAMPLES. A copy of the boring log for the portion of the boring that the samples came from shall be enclosed in the shipping box.
- D. **Auger Boring and Sampling:** Samples shall be labeled in accordance with paragraph IDENTIFYING SAMPLES. Samples shall be obtained for each change of overburden material and at maximum vertical intervals as directed by the Owner. In order to retain the natural moisture content of the material to the fullest extent possible, all samples shall be of sufficient volume to completely fill the sample jars and the samples shall be placed in the sample jars as soon as possible after they are taken from the hole. All sample jars shall be labeled. In general, no sample shall remain on the site of boring for more than 1 week after being taken from the boring and placed in a jar.
- E. **Drive Sample Boring and Sampling:** Samples shall be labeled in accordance with paragraph IDENTIFYING SAMPLES. Drive sample borings drilled through overburden materials shall be suitably cased to permit obtaining drive samples of the size or sizes specified or as directed. Samples shall be taken either continuously or at a change in materials in accordance with instructions contained in the SCHEDULE OF DRILLING, SAMPLING, AND TESTING or as otherwise directed by the Owner. To minimize the compacting effect of casing driving when casing is used to stabilize a boring, the bottom of the casing shall be kept as high above the soil sampling zone as conditions permit. If hollow stem auger is used as a casing and/or to advance the boring, a plug assembly must be used to keep soil from entering the inside of the auger. Above the water table, samples shall be obtained from a dry hole. Below the water table, water shall be maintained within the hole at or above the groundwater level.



Where information on the natural water content of soils above the water table is not needed and when approved by the Owner, boreholes may be drilled without casing by using a suitable drilling fluid to prevent collapse of sidewalls. When a drilling fluid is used, soil sampling shall be done by such means that will prevent inclusion of drilling fluid in the samples. The samples shall be placed in sample jars as soon as possible after they are taken from the hole and, when possible, the volume of the sample shall be large enough to completely fill the sample jar in order that the natural moisture content of the material may be retained to the fullest extent possible. All samples shall be labeled. No sample shall remain at the site of boring for more than one week after being taken from the hole.

- F. **Undisturbed Sample Boring And Sampling:** In general, labeling of undisturbed samples shall conform to paragraph IDENTIFYING SAMPLES. Particular care shall be taken to indicate the top and bottom of each sample tube. Tubes and crates for undisturbed samples shall be labeled "DO NOT JAR OR VIBRATE" and "HANDLE, HAUL, AND SHIP IN A HORIZONTAL **OR** VERTICAL POSITION," **as directed.**
1. **Procedure:** The procedure for Undisturbed Sample Boring and Sampling shall be the same as outlined in paragraph DRIVE SAMPLE BORING AND SAMPLING, except that the sampling device shall be advanced downward by one continuous, smooth drive using the drill rig's hydraulic feed system. The hydraulic down pressure shall be read and recorded at 6 inch (150 mm) intervals during each sample drive. The sampling device for stiff and dense soils shall be advanced by continuous rotation of the outer cutting barrel in conjunction with use of drill fluid circulation. Driving of any undisturbed sampling device by means such as a drop hammer will not be permitted.
  2. **Sealing**
    - a. **Alternate 1:** The soil sample obtained in a thin wall Shelby tube shall be retained in the tube and sealed on both ends with a mechanically expandable O-ring sealing disk of the appropriate size.
    - b. **Alternate 2:** The soil sample obtained in a thin wall Shelby tube shall be extruded from the tube in the field as soon as the tube is removed from the boring by a method approved by the Owner. The extruded soil sample shall immediately be wrapped in aluminum foil or thin plastic wrap and placed in the center of a metal bottomed, waxed cardboard or plastic tube that has a diameter of at least 1 inch (25 mm) larger than the diameter of the soil sample, is at least 1-inch (25 mm) longer than the length of the soil sample, and has at least 1/2-inch (13 mm) of congealed 50/50 mixture of paraffin and microcrystalline wax in the bottom. The annular space between the soil sample and the tube shall be filled with a 50/50 mixture of paraffin and microcrystalline wax to a distance of at least 1/2-inch (13 mm) above the top of the soil sample.
    - c. **Alternate 3:** Both ends of the soil sample tube/liner obtained with a Denison barrel, or its equivalent, shall be cleaned out to remove all drill fluid contaminated and/or disturbed soil or to a minimum distance of 2 inches (50 mm) from the ends of the tube/liner. Any material removed that is not contaminated with drill fluid shall be placed in a sample jar and labeled in accordance with paragraph IDENTIFYING SAMPLES. The cleaned out ends of the sample liner tube shall then be sealed with a 50/50 mixture of paraffin and microcrystalline wax. A metal or wooden disk, having a diameter just slightly smaller than the inside diameter of the liner tube shall be inserted into the wax to a distance of 1/4-inch (6 mm) from the end of the soil sample. The wax plugs shall be flush with the ends of the tube and a final seal consisting of a metal cap or tape shall be placed over the ends of the tube.
- G. **Core Hole Overburden Drilling:** Where samples of overburden materials are required in connection with core drilling, the soil overburden shall be drilled and sampled in accordance with the applicable provisions for the type of samples required. Where sampling of the overburden materials is not required, the Contractor may utilize any method and equipment for drilling and, if required, casing through the overburden that will not affect the quality of the core drilling from the rock surface downward in accordance with these specifications. The method chosen must be approved by the Owner prior to starting any overburden drilling.



- H. Core Drilling - Size BX and NX core.
1. Procedure: All holes shall be drilled vertically **OR** at the inclined angles listed in paragraph SCHEDULE OF DRILLING, SAMPLING, AND TESTING, **as directed**, to the bottom elevations or depths specified unless indicated in the schedule of borings or directed to be drilled otherwise. Off-setting of borings from the locations specified in the Plan of Borings or as shown on the drawings, will not be permitted without prior approval. Casing through the overburden may be required. This casing shall be sealed in the rock at the elevation where rock is encountered prior to commencement of rock coring. The Contractor shall operate its drills at such speeds and with such down pressures and shall control drill fluid pressures and quantities to insure maximum core quality and recovery in whatever kind of rock is encountered. Where soft or broken rock is encountered, the Contractor shall reduce the length of runs to 5 feet (1.5 m) or less in order to reduce and/or keep core loss and core disturbance to the minimum. Failure to comply with the foregoing procedures shall constitute justification for the Owner to require redrilling, at the Contractor's expense, of any boring from which the core recovery is unsatisfactory. The Contractor shall exercise particular care in recording zones of water loss, cavities, rod jerks, rough drilling and other unusual and non-ordinary coring experiences that, supplementing the core record, will throw light on the nature and the extent of any fracturing or abnormalities.
  2. Arrangement of Core: Core boxes shall comply with paragraph CORE BOXES. All cores shall be arranged neatly in the partitioned boxes in the same sequence in which they occurred before removal from the hole. Facing the open box with the hinged cover above and the open box below, cores shall be arranged in descending sequence beginning at the left end of the trough nearest the hinges and continuing in the other troughs from left to right. The highest part of the core shall be placed in box 1, and the lower portions of the core shall be placed in the other boxes in consecutive order.
  3. Preservation of Core: Representative samples of core shall be wrapped in aluminum foil or thin plastic wrap or cheese cloth and then sealed by applying paraffin wax to the outside of the wrapping material prior to placing the core in the core box. This sealing process shall be accomplished as soon as possible after the core is removed from the core barrel. The minimum length of core that is preserved from each boring shall be no less than 2.5 times the core diameter. Spacer blocks shall be marked and placed in the core box to show where samples have been removed.
  4. Labeling, Marking and Packing Core: Stenciled labels for core boxes complying with paragraph CORE BOX LABELS shall be placed on the inside and outside of the top cover in addition to each end. In addition, the depths (or elevations) of each core run/pull shall be marked with a black waterproof pen on the spacer blocks that are placed between core pulls. When a box is full, the space between the core and the trough sides shall be filled with finely ground vermiculite or other packing material approved by the Owner.
  5. Disposition of Core: While on site, the Contractor shall protect the filled core boxes from direct sunlight, precipitation, and freezing by some form of the Owner approved shelter that allows ventilation to the boxes. Upon completion of core drilling and sampling operations, core boxes containing cores shall be stored in an area provided by the Owner near the site of drilling **OR** shipped or delivered to address provided by the Owner, **as directed**.
- I. Pressure Testing (Hydraulic): The Contractor shall pressure-test each hole commencing at the top of bedrock and progressing downward to the bottom of the hole or to such depths as determined by the Owner below which testing of the hole is not necessary. Where core data from the test holes indicate only isolated zones that are open or fractured, pressure testing may be limited by the Owner to these zones only. Water pressure employed for each lift shall be determined in the field by the Owner and shall not exceed of depth one pound per square inch per foot (22.6 kPa per meter) of depth to the upper expander. The pressure test will be divided into two phases; the first phase will be a flow test which shall then be followed by the second phase which is a duration test. In performing the first phase, water is pumped slowly at first, and the flow then gradually increased to the point where the predetermined maximum pressure is maintained, by adjusting the valve on the by-pass line. The allowable pressure shall be held for 1 minute before any readings are taken. The volume of flow into the test section shall be measured for a period of 5 minutes during which time the pressure shall not vary by more than 5 psi (34.5 kPa ). After this 5-minute test, the second phase shall be started by closing the valve located



between the flow meter and the pressure gage. The drop in pressure is then read for a period of 5 minutes at 15 to 30-second intervals. In some situations, such as in a very tight formation, the Owner may eliminate phase one of the test. The Contractor may be required to make check tests at its own expense if the testing equipment or its assembly and arrangement are found to be faulty during or after the testing of any holes. The Contractor shall record all gage and meter readings made during a pressure test on a suitable form approved by the Owner.

J. Test Pit Excavation And Sampling

1. Excavation: The test pits shall be excavated in the order scheduled in paragraph SCHEDULE OF DRILLING, SAMPLING, AND TESTING, and shall be excavated to depths and dimensions indicated in paragraph SCHEDULE OF DRILLING, SAMPLING, AND TESTING. Before excavating pits, the Contractor shall thoroughly familiarize itself with work site and with all available subsurface data, particularly groundwater conditions. Regardless of the method of excavation employed, the pits shall be excavated, dewatered and shored/lined in conformance with all applicable safety regulations.
2. Sampling: Soil samples shall be obtained from each pit at the depths/elevations indicated in paragraph SCHEDULE OF DRILLING, SAMPLING, AND TESTING **OR** at depths determined by the Owner, **as directed**. In obtaining samples from test pits, the undisturbed in situ (in place) natural physical and structural characteristics of the sampled materials shall be preserved insofar as possible both while samples are being taken and during shipment to the point of testing. In cohesive and partially cohesive soils this may be accomplished by isolating the soil column or cube to be sampled by gently trenching around it and knife-trimming it to the required dimensions of the split cylinder or box. A thin coating of melted 50/50 mixture of paraffin and microcrystalline wax shall then be applied quickly but gently to the sample with a paint brush to seal it against loss of moisture. The metal or wooden sample container, with the top and bottom removed shall then be placed over the wax coated sample such that the sample is centered within the container and the top of the container sides are at least 1 inch (25 mm) above the top of the sample. The spaces between the sample and the side walls of the container shall then be filled with melted wax. After this wax has congealed, the space between the top of the sample container sides and the top of the sample shall be filled with wax. After this wax has congealed, it shall be trimmed so that when the top of the sample container is installed there is no void between the container top and the wax. After the container top is installed, the soil column or cube shall then be cut off a few hundred inches (millimeters) below the container, the sample and container inverted and removed from the pit and the sample trimmed at the base so that the bottom of the sample is at least 1 inch (25 mm) below the bottom of the container. This space shall be filled with wax and, after the wax has congealed, it shall be trimmed so that when the bottom of the container is installed, there shall be no void between the wax and the bottom of the container. Where overburden materials to be sampled are only partially cohesive, it is best not to expose the entire soil column before waxing. By exposing and waxing small sections at a time, the sample will be subjected to less disturbance. Where natural moisture content is an important factor, delay shall be avoided in taking the sample in order that the natural moisture content of the material may be retained to the fullest extent.
3. Disposition of Samples: Samples shall be packed in vermiculite or a packing material approved by the Owner and shipped in sturdy wooden boxes of strength and construction sufficient to guarantee against damage during shipment. Boxes should be no larger than is required for shipping two such samples. All sample boxes shall be marked FRAGILE-HANDLE WITH CARE and shall be identified by labels, similar to those as specified in paragraph IDENTIFYING SAMPLES, attached to the outside of each box. Extreme care shall be taken to indicate the top and bottom of each sample. The Contractor shall avoid exposing sealed and crated samples to precipitation and extremes of temperature. Undisturbed samples permitted to freeze, even partially, shall be replaced by the Contractor at its expense. The Contractor shall not hold these samples at the site of sampling for a period in excess of one week. Prior to shipment, each sealed and boxed sample shall be checked for correct labeling.





- K. Supplemental Borings or Pits: Borings or Pits that are abandoned or from which unsatisfactory samples or cores are obtained will be supplemented by other borings or pits adjacent to the original in order that satisfactory samples or the required information will be obtained. Actual locations of any supplemental borings or pits will be established by the Owner. Penetration to the depth where the original was abandoned or to the depths where unsatisfactory samples were obtained may be made by any method selected by the Contractor that in the opinion of the Owner will permit satisfactory completion and sampling below the elevation where the last satisfactory sample was obtained in the abandoned or satisfactory sampling in the reaches where satisfactory samples were not obtained in the original borings or pits. No payment will be made for supplemental borings or pits that are required to be drilled or excavated to replace borings or pits that were abandoned or from which satisfactory samples were not obtained because of mechanical failure of drilling and sampling equipment, negligence on the part of the Contractor, or other preventable cause for which the Contractor is responsible except that payment will be made for acceptable portions of these supplementary borings or pits below the depths or outside the reaches for which payment was made for the original borings or pits.
- L. Backfilling
1. Drill Holes: Unless otherwise noted in these specifications or directed by the Owner, all drill holes shall be backfilled and abandoned in accordance with all Federal, State, and local laws, regulations and ordinances. The Contractor shall preserve all holes in good condition until final measurement and until the records and samples have been accepted. As a minimum, all holes shall be grouted from the bottom of the hole to within 2 feet (600 mm) of the ground. All grout shall be pumped through a tremie pipe that is inserted to the bottom of the boring to ensure that the grout fills the full extent of the hole. The remaining ungrouted portion of the hole shall be backfilled with local soil and tamped. All backfilling operations shall be performed in the presence of the Owner and, if required by regulation, Federal, State, and local officials. No separate payment will be made for backfilling drill holes. The cost of this work shall be included in the drilling costs.
  2. Test Pits: The Contractor shall backfill all test pits with local soil compacted to original densities as directed by the Owner. No separate payment will be made for backfilling test pits. The cost of this work shall be included in the test pit excavation costs.
- M. Records: The Contractor shall keep accurate driller's logs and records of all work accomplished under this contract and shall deliver complete, legible copies of these logs and records to the Owner upon completion of the work or at such other time or times as it may be directed. All such records shall be recorded during the actual performance of the work and shall be preserved in good condition and order by the Contractor until they are delivered and accepted. The Owner shall have the right to examine and review all such records at any time prior to their delivery to him and shall have the right to request changes to the record keeping procedure. The following information shall be included on the logs or in the records for each hole or test pit:
1. Hole or Test Pit number or designation and elevation of top of hole or test pit.
  2. Driller's name and Geologist's name.
  3. Make, size, and manufacturer's model designation of drilling, sampling, pressure testing, and test-pit excavating equipment.
  4. Type of drilling, sampling, and pressure testing operation by depth.
  5. Hole diameter.
  6. Dates and time by depths when test-pit excavation, drilling, sampling, and pressure testing operations were performed.
  7. Time required for drilling each run and pressure testing each interval tested.
  8. Drill action, rotation speed, hydraulic pressure, water pressure, tool drops, and any other unusual and non-ordinary experience which could indicate the subsurface conditions encountered.
  9. Depths at which samples or cores were recovered or attempts made to sample or core including top and bottom depth of each run and of each interval pressure tested.
  10. Classification or description by depths of the materials sampled, cored, or penetrated using the Unified Soil Classification System (ASTM D 2487) and including a description of moisture conditions, consistency and other appropriate descriptive information described in paragraph



SUPPLEMENTAL BORINGS or PITS of ASTM D 2488. This classification or description shall be made immediately after the samples or cores are retrieved.

11. Classification and description by depths of rock materials sampled or cored including rock type, composition, texture, presence and orientation of bedding, floiation, or fractures, presence of vugs or other interstices, and the RQD for each cored interval.
12. Indication of penetration resistance such as drive-hammer blows given in blows per foot for driving sample spoons and casing and the pressure in applied to push thin-wall or piston-type samplers.
13. Weight (Force) of drive hammer.
14. Percentage of sample or core recovered per run.
15. Depth at which groundwater is encountered initially and when stabilized.
16. Depths at which drill water is lost and regained and amounts.
17. Depths at which the color of the drill water return changes.
18. Type and weight of drill fluid.
19. Depth of bottom of hole.
20. Pressures employed in pressure testing.



TABLE 1 - COMMON CORE DIAMETERS  
CORE DIAMETER

	CORE DIAMETER		HOLE DIAMETER	
	in.	(mm)	in.	(mm)
<b>Conventional Core Barrels</b>				
AWG	1.185	(30.1)	1.890	(48.0)
BWG	1.655	(42.0)	2.360	(60.0)
NWG	2.155	(54.7)	2.980	(75.7)
HWG	3.000	(76.2)	3.907	(99.2)
<b>Wireline Core Barrels*</b>				
A	1.064	(27.0)	1.890	(48.0)
B	1.432	(36.5)	2.360	(60.0)
N	1.875	(47.6)	2.980	(75.7)
H	2.450	(62.2)	3.716	(94.4)
	3.345	(85.0)	4.827	(122.6)
<b>Large Diameter Series</b>				
2-3/4" X 3-7/8"	2.690	(68.3)	3.875	(98.4)
4" X 5-1/2"	3.970	(100.8)	5.495	(139.6)
6" X 7-3/4"	5.970	(151.6)	7.750	(196.9)

\*No Industry Standard for Wireline Sizes. Diameters shown for wireline core barrels are nominal and vary between manufacturers.

END OF SECTION 02 32 13 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
02 32 13 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 02 41 13 13 - SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for selective demolition. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Demolition and removal of selected portions of building or structure.
  - b. Demolition and removal of selected site elements.
  - c. Salvage of existing items to be reused or recycled.

#### C. Definitions

1. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and legally dispose of them off-site, unless indicated to be removed and salvaged or removed and reinstalled.
2. Remove and Salvage: Detach items from existing construction and deliver them to the Owner ready for reuse, **as directed**.
3. Remove and Reinstall: Detach items from existing construction, prepare them for reuse, and reinstall them where indicated.
4. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

#### D. Materials Ownership

1. Historic items, relics, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, antiques, and other items of interest or value to the Owner that may be encountered during selective demolition remain the Owner's property. Carefully remove and salvage each item or object in a manner to prevent damage and deliver promptly to the Owner.
  - a. Coordinate with the Owner's archaeologist **OR** historical adviser, **as directed**, who will establish special procedures for removal and salvage.

#### E. Submittals

1. Qualification Data: For demolition firm, professional engineer, refrigerant recovery technician, **as directed**.
2. Schedule of Selective Demolition Activities: Indicate the following:
  - a. Detailed sequence of selective demolition and removal work, with starting and ending dates for each activity. Ensure the Owner's building manager's and other tenants' on-site operations are uninterrupted.
  - b. Interruption of utility services. Indicate how long utility services will be interrupted.
  - c. Coordination for shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.
  - d. Use of elevator and stairs.
  - e. Locations of proposed dust- and noise-control temporary partitions and means of egress, including for other tenants affected by selective demolition operations.
  - f. Coordination of the Owner's continuing occupancy of portions of existing building and of the Owner's partial occupancy of completed Work.
  - g. Means of protection for items to remain and items in path of waste removal from building.
3. Inventory: After selective demolition is complete, submit a list of items that have been removed and salvaged.



4. Predemolition Photographs or Videotapes: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by selective demolition operations. Submit before Work begins.
5. Landfill Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of hazardous wastes by a landfill facility licensed to accept hazardous wastes.
  - a. Comply with submittal requirements in Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management And Disposal".

F. Quality Assurance

1. Demolition Firm Qualifications: An experienced firm that has specialized in demolition work similar in material and extent to that indicated for this Project.
2. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by an EPA-approved certification program.
3. LEED Requirements for Building Reuse:
  - a. Credit MR 1.1 and 1.2, **as directed**: Maintain existing building structure (including structural floor and roof decking) and envelope (exterior skin and framing, excluding window assemblies and nonstructural roofing material) not indicated to be demolished; do not demolish such existing construction beyond indicated limits.
  - b. Credit MR 1.3: Maintain existing interior nonstructural elements (interior walls, doors, floor coverings, and ceiling systems) not indicated to be demolished; do not demolish such existing construction beyond indicated limits.
  - c. Credit MR 1.2 and 1.3, **as directed**: Maintain existing nonshell, nonstructural components (walls, flooring, and ceilings) not indicated to be demolished; do not demolish such existing construction beyond indicated limits.
4. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
5. Standards: Comply with ANSI A10.6 and NFPA 241.
6. Predemolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site. Review methods and procedures related to selective demolition including, but not limited to, the following:
  - a. Inspect and discuss condition of construction to be selectively demolished.
  - b. Review structural load limitations of existing structure.
  - c. Review and finalize selective demolition schedule and verify availability of materials, demolition personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - d. Review requirements of work performed by other trades that rely on substrates exposed by selective demolition operations.
  - e. Review areas where existing construction is to remain and requires protection.

G. Project Conditions

1. the Owner will occupy portions of building immediately adjacent to selective demolition area. Conduct selective demolition so the Owner's operations will not be disrupted.
2. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by the Owner as far as practical.
  - a. Before selective demolition, items will be removed as directed by the Owner.
3. Notify the Owner of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.
4. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
  - a. Hazardous materials will be removed by the Owner before start of the Work **OR** have been removed by the Owner under a separate contract, **as directed**.
  - b. If materials suspected of containing hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify the Owner. the Owner will remove hazardous materials under a separate contract.

**OR**





5. Hazardous Materials: It is unknown whether hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
  - a. If materials suspected of containing hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify the Owner and the Owner. the Owner will remove hazardous materials under a separate contract.
6. Hazardous Materials (if asbestos abatement is part of Work of this Contract): Hazardous materials are present in construction to be selectively demolished. A report on the presence of hazardous materials is on file for review and use. Examine report to become aware of locations where hazardous materials are present.
  - a. Hazardous material remediation is specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents.
  - b. Do not disturb hazardous materials or items suspected of containing hazardous materials except under procedures specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents.
7. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site is not permitted.
8. Utility Service: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.
  - a. Maintain fire-protection facilities in service during selective demolition operations.

H. Warranty

1. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during selective demolition, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.

1.2 PRODUCTS (Not Used)

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Utility Services And Mechanical/Electrical Systems

1. Existing Services/Systems: Maintain services/systems indicated to remain and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.
2. Service/System Requirements: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off indicated utility services and mechanical/electrical systems serving areas to be selectively demolished.
  - a. the Owner will arrange to shut off indicated services/systems when requested by Contractor.
  - b. Arrange to shut off indicated utilities with utility companies.
  - c. If services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, before proceeding with selective demolition provide temporary services/systems that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of services/systems to other parts of building.
  - d. Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit after bypassing.
    - 1) Where entire wall is to be removed, existing services/systems may be removed with removal of the wall.

B. Preparation

1. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
2. Temporary Facilities: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.
  - a. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around selective demolition area and to and from occupied portions of building.
  - b. Provide temporary weather protection, during interval between selective demolition of existing construction on exterior surfaces and new construction, to prevent water leakage and damage to structure and interior areas.



- c. Protect walls, ceilings, floors, and other existing finish work that are to remain or that are exposed during selective demolition operations.
- d. Cover and protect furniture, furnishings, and equipment that have not been removed.
- e. Comply with requirements for temporary enclosures, dust control, heating, and cooling.
- 3. Temporary Shoring: Provide and maintain shoring, bracing, and structural supports as required to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of construction and finishes to remain, and to prevent unexpected or uncontrolled movement or collapse of construction being demolished.
  - a. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of selective demolition.

#### C. Selective Demolition, General

1. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:
  - a. Proceed with selective demolition systematically, from higher to lower level. Complete selective demolition operations above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on the next lower level.
  - b. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping, to minimize disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
  - c. Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.
  - d. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. At concealed spaces, such as duct and pipe interiors, verify condition and contents of hidden space before starting flame-cutting operations. Maintain fire watch and portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
  - e. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
  - f. Remove decayed, vermin-infested, or otherwise dangerous or unsuitable materials and promptly dispose of off-site.
  - g. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by method suitable to avoid free fall and to prevent ground impact or dust generation.
  - h. Locate selective demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
  - i. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly. Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management And Disposal".
2. Reuse of Building Elements: Project has been designed to result in end-of-Project rates for reuse of building elements as follows. Do not demolish building elements beyond what is indicated on Drawings without the Owner's approval.
  - a. Building Structure and Shell: 75 **OR** 100, **as directed**, percent.
  - b. Nonshell Elements: 50 percent.
3. Removed and Salvaged Items:
  - a. Clean salvaged items.
  - b. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
  - c. Store items in a secure area until delivery to the Owner.
  - d. Transport items to the Owner's storage area on-site **OR** off-site **OR** designated by the Owner **OR** indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
  - e. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
4. Removed and Reinstalled Items:
  - a. Clean and repair items to functional condition adequate for intended reuse. Paint equipment to match new equipment.
  - b. Pack or crate items after cleaning and repairing. Identify contents of containers.
  - c. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.



- d. Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make item functional for use indicated.
  5. Existing Items to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during selective demolition. When permitted by the Owner, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during selective demolition and cleaned, **as directed**, and reinstalled in their original locations after selective demolition operations are complete.
- D. Selective Demolition Procedures For Specific Materials
1. Concrete: Demolish in small sections. Cut concrete to a depth of at least 3/4 inch (19 mm) at junctures with construction to remain, using power-driven saw. Dislodge concrete from reinforcement at perimeter of areas being demolished, cut reinforcement, and then remove remainder of concrete indicated for selective demolition. Neatly trim openings to dimensions indicated.  
**OR**  
Concrete: Demolish in sections. Cut concrete full depth at junctures with construction to remain and at regular intervals, using power-driven saw, then remove concrete between saw cuts.
  2. Masonry: Demolish in small sections. Cut masonry at junctures with construction to remain, using power-driven saw, then remove masonry between saw cuts.
  3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade: Saw-cut perimeter of area to be demolished, then break up and remove.
  4. Resilient Floor Coverings: Remove floor coverings and adhesive according to recommendations in RFCI-WP and its Addendum.
    - a. Remove residual adhesive and prepare substrate for new floor coverings by one of the methods recommended by RFCI.
  5. Roofing: Remove no more existing roofing than can be covered in one day by new roofing and so that building interior remains watertight and weathertight. Refer to Division 07 for new roofing requirements.
    - a. Remove existing roof membrane, flashings, copings, and roof accessories.
    - b. Remove existing roofing system down to substrate.
  6. Air-Conditioning Equipment: Remove equipment without releasing refrigerants.
- E. Disposal Of Demolished Materials
1. General: Except for items or materials indicated to be recycled, **as directed**, reused, salvaged, reinstalled, or otherwise indicated to remain the Owner's property, remove demolished materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in an EPA-approved landfill.
    - a. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
    - b. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
    - c. Remove debris from elevated portions of building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.
    - d. Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management And Disposal".
  2. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.  
**OR**  
Burning: Burning of demolished materials will be permitted only at designated areas on the Owner's property, **as directed**, provided required permits are obtained. Provide full-time monitoring for burning materials until fires are extinguished.
  3. Disposal: Transport demolished materials and dispose of at designated spoil areas on the Owner's property.  
**OR**  
Disposal: Transport demolished materials off the Owner's property and legally dispose of them.
- F. Cleaning



1. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

G. Selective Demolition Schedule

1. Existing Items **OR** Construction, **as directed**, to Be Removed, as directed by the Owner.
2. Existing Items to Be Removed and Salvaged, as directed by the Owner.
3. Existing Items to Be Removed and Reinstalled, as directed by the Owner.
4. Existing Items to Remain, as directed by the Owner.

END OF SECTION 02 41 13 13



## SECTION 02 41 13 13a - PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE REMOVAL

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for portland cement concrete removal. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Section Includes:

1. Provide all labor, materials and equipment required for the removal work and disposal of existing Portland Cement Concrete indicated on the drawings and specified, including but not limited to the following:
  - a. Saw cutting existing concrete pavements, sidewalks, driveways, curbs and gutters noted on drawings to be removed.
  - b. Saw cutting existing concrete sidewalks for new tree pit openings (refer to drawings for locations).
  - c. Saw cutting existing bituminous paving noted on drawings to be removed.
  - d. Removal and disposal of demolished concrete sidewalks, driveways, curbs and gutters, including concrete removed for new tree pit openings.
  - e. Removal and disposal of demolished bituminous paving.
  - f. All excavating, rough grading and compacting as required to establish subgrade for new sidewalks, and Subgrade and Sub-Base for driveways.
  - g. Providing, placing and grading sand fill under new sidewalks. Top of compacted subgrades shall allow for the placement of sidewalks plus thickness of sand fill.
  - h. Removal and disposal of excavated material.

#### C. Special Requirements:

1. Protection: Provide protection barricades, maintain all lights and signals and other measures as required by federal, state, and municipal laws, for the full period of demolition operations and remove same when directed. In removing work, perform all work required to protect and maintain adjacent property, streets, alleys, sidewalks, curbs, and other structures remaining in place.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Backfilling Material:

1. Sand: Natural sand, with the following gradation: 100% passing the 1 sieve-, 65-100% passing the No. 4 sieve; 40-90% passing the No. 10 sieve- 30-80% passing the No. 16 sieve- 10-50% passing the No. 50 sieve; 0-30% passing the No. 100 sieve, and 0-10% passing the No. 200 sieve.
2. Crushed Stone: Crushed stone having a #57 crusher run gradation.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Demolition:

1. The contractor shall accept the site as it finds it and shall inform itself as to the character and types of work to be removed. The Owner assumes no responsibility for the condition of the existing construction to be removed or demolished.
2. No demolition shall be commenced until a program of operations has been coordinated with the Owner, except that preparatory work may be started if specifically approved by the Owner.



3. Operations shall be done in such manner as to avoid hazards to persons and property and interference with use of adjacent areas or interruption of free passage to and from such areas. Maintain Pedestrian access to all private entrances where construction of new sidewalks is in progress. Provide temporary walk ways or other means as required to maintain entry into the private properties, complying with all laws and ordinances and as approved by the Owner. Care shall be taken to prevent the spread of dust and flying particles.
4. Demolition and removal work shall be executed in a careful and orderly manner. Accumulation of rubbish will not be permitted.
5. After work is started, it shall be continued to completion at a rate that will allow the balance of the work to be completed within the time specified. If extra shifts are necessary beyond regular working hours, the work shall proceed with a minimum of nuisance to surrounding properties.
6. Contractor shall determine the nature and extent of demolition that will be necessary by comparing the drawings with the existing field conditions. It is expressly understood that this contract includes all work of a demolition nature that may be required or necessary for a full and complete execution of the work, whether particularly referred to herein or not.

B. Removal And Excavation:

1. When removing existing sidewalks, driveways, curbs and gutters provisions shall be made for satisfactory transition between replacements and the portion remaining in place. The contractor shall saw cut to a minimum depth of 1-1/2 inches with a concrete sawing machine to prevent the surface from spalling when the concrete is broken out. This work shall be done in such a manner that a straight joint will be secured.
2. It shall be the responsibility of the contractor to determine the thickness of the existing sidewalk to be removed. No additional compensation will be allowed because of variations from the assumed thickness or from the thickness shown on the plans.
3. After existing concrete sidewalks and driveways have been removed, excavate to depth required for sand fill.
4. The bottoms of all excavations shall be properly leveled off and all loose materials shall be removed from excavations. All wood, timber and organic materials, that are exposed at the bottom of all excavations, shall be removed and the area backfilled with sand and compacted.
5. Any excess or unauthorized excavation shall be backfilled with sand and compacted, at no additional cost to the Owner.
6. No backfill shall be placed in standing water, on frozen ground or on surfaces which have not been approved by the Commissioner.
7. Backfilling for all areas shall be approved material. Backfill shall be compacted to 95% maximum density in accordance with ASTM D 1557.
8. Contractor shall determine the nature and extent of excavation work that will be necessary by comparing the drawings with the existing areas to be excavated. It is expressly understood that this contract includes all work of an excavation nature that may be required or necessary for a complete execution of all excavation work, whether particularly referred to herein or not.

C. Disposal Of Materials:

1. All demolished and unsuitable materials, including excavated earth removed to establish required grade elevations shall be disposed of legally in such a manner that public or private property will not be damaged or endangered.

D. Clean-Up:

1. On completion of the demolition work, excavation work and before acceptance by the Owner, clean the areas affected, including areas outside the limits of the contractor's work area where permission to work has been granted. Remove surplus construction material or debris resulting from the demolition work and excavation work, and dispose of legally off the site.
2. Access routes to and from the site shall be kept clean of debris resulting from the work.

END OF SECTION 02 41 13 13a



## SECTION 02 41 19 13 - BUILDING DEMOLITION

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for building demolition. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Demolition and removal of buildings and site improvements.
  - b. Abandoning in place **OR** Removing, **as directed**, below-grade construction.
  - c. Disconnecting, capping or sealing, and abandoning in-place **OR** removing, **as directed**, site utilities.
  - d. Salvaging items for reuse by the Owner.

#### C. Definitions

1. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and legally dispose of them off-site unless indicated to be removed and salvaged.
2. Remove and Salvage: Carefully detach from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, and deliver to the Owner ready for reuse. Include fasteners or brackets needed for reattachment elsewhere.

#### D. Materials Ownership

1. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition waste becomes property of Contractor.
2. Historic items, relics, antiques, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, and other items of interest or value to the Owner that may be uncovered during demolition remain the property of the Owner.
  - a. Carefully salvage in a manner to prevent damage and promptly return to the Owner.

#### E. Informational Submittals

1. Qualification Data: For refrigerant recovery technician.
2. Proposed Protection Measures: Submit informational report, including drawings, that indicates the measures proposed for protecting individuals and property, for environmental protection, for dust control and, for noise control, **as directed**. Indicate proposed locations and construction of barriers.
  - a. Adjacent Buildings: Detail special measures proposed to protect adjacent buildings to remain.
3. Schedule of Building Demolition Activities: Indicate the following:
  - a. Detailed sequence of demolition work, with starting and ending dates for each activity.
  - b. Temporary interruption of utility services.
  - c. Shutoff and capping or re-routing of utility services.
4. Inventory: Submit a list of items to be removed and salvaged and deliver to the Owner prior to start of demolition.
5. Predemolition Photographs **OR** Video, **as directed**: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by building demolition operations. Submit before the Work begins.
6. Landfill Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of hazardous wastes by a landfill facility licensed to accept hazardous wastes.
7. Statement of Refrigerant Recovery: Signed by refrigerant recovery technician responsible for recovering refrigerant, stating that all refrigerant that was present was recovered and that



recovery was performed according to EPA regulations. Include name and address of technician and date refrigerant was recovered.

F. Quality Assurance

1. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by EPA-approved certification program.
2. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Standards: Comply with ANSI/ASSE A10.6 and NFPA 241.
4. Predemolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - a. Inspect and discuss condition of construction to be demolished.
  - b. Review structural load limitations of existing structures.
  - c. Review and finalize building demolition schedule and verify availability of demolition personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - d. Review and finalize protection requirements.
  - e. Review procedures for noise control and dust control.
  - f. Review procedures for protection of adjacent buildings.
  - g. Review items to be salvaged and returned to the Owner.

G. Project Conditions

1. Buildings to be demolished will be vacated and their use discontinued before start of the Work.
2. Buildings immediately adjacent to demolition area will be occupied. Conduct building demolition so operations of occupied buildings will not be disrupted.
  - a. Provide not less than 72 hours' notice of activities that will affect operations of adjacent occupied buildings.
  - b. Maintain access to existing walkways, exits, and other facilities used by occupants of adjacent buildings.
    - 1) Do not close or obstruct walkways, exits, or other facilities used by occupants of adjacent buildings without written permission from authorities having jurisdiction.
3. the Owner assumes no responsibility for buildings and structures to be demolished.
  - a. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by the Owner as far as practical.
  - b. Before building demolition, the Owner will remove certain items, as directed by the Owner.
4. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
  - a. Hazardous materials will be removed by the Owner before start of the Work.
  - b. If materials suspected of containing hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and the Owner. Hazardous materials will be removed by the Owner under a separate contract.

**OR**

- Hazardous Materials: Hazardous materials are present in buildings and structures to be demolished. A report on the presence of hazardous materials is on file for review and use. Examine report to become aware of locations where hazardous materials are present.
- a. Hazardous material remediation is specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents.
  - b. Do not disturb hazardous materials or items suspected of containing hazardous materials except under procedures specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents.
  - c. the Owner will provide material safety data sheets for materials that are known to be present in buildings and structures to be demolished because of building operations or processes performed there.
5. On-site storage or sale of removed items or materials is not permitted.

H. Coordination

1. Arrange demolition schedule so as not to interfere with the Owner's on-site operations **OR** operations of adjacent occupied buildings, **as directed**.





## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Soil Materials

1. Satisfactory Soils: Satisfactory Soils: For soils which is to be used for backfilling voids that result from demolition operations in below-grade areas, comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".

## 1.3 EXECUTION

### A. Examination

1. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before starting demolition operations.
2. Review Project Record Documents of existing construction provided by the Owner. the Owner does not guarantee that existing conditions are same as those indicated in Project Record Documents.
3. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and salvaged. Provide photographs **OR** video, **as directed**, of conditions that might be misconstrued as damage caused by salvage operations.
4. Perform **OR** Engage a professional engineer to perform, **as directed**, an engineering survey of condition of building to determine whether removing any element might result in structural deficiency or unplanned collapse of any portion of structure or adjacent structures during building demolition operations.
  - a. Steel Tendons: Locate tensioned steel tendons and include recommendations for de-tensioning.
5. Verify that hazardous materials have been remediated before proceeding with building demolition operations.

### B. Preparation

1. Refrigerant: Remove refrigerant from mechanical equipment according to 40 CFR 82 and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction before starting demolition.
2. Existing Utilities: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off indicated utilities serving buildings and structures to be demolished.
  - a. the Owner will arrange to shut off indicated utilities when requested by Contractor.  
**OR**  
Arrange to shut off indicated utilities with utility companies, **as directed**.
  - b. If removal, relocation, or abandonment of utility services will affect adjacent occupied buildings, then provide temporary utilities that bypass buildings and structures to be demolished and that maintain continuity of service to other buildings and structures.
  - c. Cut off pipe or conduit a minimum of 24 inches (610 mm) below grade. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit after bypassing according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.**OR**  
Existing Utilities: Refer to Division 22 AND Division 26 for shutting off, disconnecting, removing, and sealing or capping utilities. Do not start demolition work until utility disconnecting and sealing have been completed and verified in writing, **as directed**.
3. Temporary Shoring: Provide and maintain interior and exterior shoring, bracing, or structural support to preserve stability and prevent unexpected movement or collapse of construction being demolished.
  - a. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of demolition.
4. Salvaged Items: Comply with the following:
  - a. Clean salvaged items of dirt and demolition debris.
  - b. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
  - c. Store items in a secure area until delivery to the Owner.
  - d. Transport items to storage area designated by the Owner **OR** indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
  - e. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.



### C. Protection

1. Existing Facilities: Protect adjacent walkways, loading docks, building entries, and other building facilities during demolition operations. Maintain exits from existing buildings.
2. Existing Utilities: Maintain utility services to remain and protect from damage during demolition operations.
  - a. Do not interrupt existing utilities serving adjacent occupied or operating facilities unless authorized in writing by the Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
  - b. Provide temporary services during interruptions to existing utilities, as acceptable to the Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
    - 1) Provide at least 72 hours' notice to occupants of affected buildings if shutdown of service is required during changeover.
3. Temporary Protection: Erect temporary protection, such as walks, fences, railings, canopies, and covered passageways, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, and as indicated. Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities And Controls".
  - a. Protect adjacent buildings and facilities from damage due to demolition activities.
  - b. Protect existing site improvements, appurtenances, and landscaping to remain.
  - c. Erect a plainly visible fence around drip line of individual trees or around perimeter drip line of groups of trees to remain.
  - d. Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.
  - e. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around building demolition area and to and from occupied portions of adjacent buildings and structures.
  - f. Protect walls, windows, roofs, and other adjacent exterior construction that are to remain and that are exposed to building demolition operations.
  - g. Erect and maintain dustproof partitions and temporary enclosures to limit dust, noise, and dirt migration to occupied portions of adjacent buildings.
4. Remove temporary barriers and protections where hazards no longer exist. Where open excavations or other hazardous conditions remain, leave temporary barriers and protections in place.

### D. Demolition, General

1. General: Demolish indicated existing buildings and site improvements completely. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:
  - a. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. Maintain portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
  - b. Maintain fire watch during and for a specified time after flame cutting operations as directed by the Owner.
  - c. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
  - d. Locate building demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
2. Engineering Surveys: During demolition, perform surveys to detect hazards that may result from building demolition activities.
3. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct building demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
  - a. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, walkways, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from the Owner and authorities having jurisdiction. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - b. Use water mist and other suitable methods to limit spread of dust and dirt. Comply with governing environmental-protection regulations. Do not use water when it may damage adjacent construction or create hazardous or objectionable conditions, such as ice, flooding, and pollution.
4. Explosives: Use of explosives is not permitted, **unless directed otherwise**.

**E. Demolition By Mechanical Means**

1. Proceed with demolition of structural framing members systematically, from higher to lower level. Complete building demolition operations above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on the next lower level.
2. Remove debris from elevated portions of the building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.
  - a. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by method suitable to minimize ground impact and dust generation.
3. Salvage: Items to be salvaged are indicated on Drawings **OR** below, **as directed**:
  - a. Doors and door hardware.
  - b. Windows.
  - c. Cabinets.
  - d. Mirrors.
  - e. Chalkboards.
  - f. Tackboards.
  - g. Marker boards.
  - h. Plumbing fixtures.
  - i. Other items as directed.
4. Below-Grade Construction: Abandon foundation walls and other below-grade construction. Cut below-grade construction flush with grade.  
**OR**  
Below-Grade Construction: Demolish foundation walls and other below-grade construction that are within footprint of new construction and extending 5 feet (1.5 m) outside footprint indicated for new construction. Abandon below-grade construction outside this area.
  - a. Remove below-grade construction, including basements, foundation walls, and footings, completely **OR** to at least 6 inches (150 mm) below grade **OR** to at least 12 inches (300 mm) below grade **OR** to depths indicated, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Below-Grade Construction: Demolish foundation walls and other below-grade construction.
  - b. Remove below-grade construction, including basements, foundation walls, and footings, completely **OR** to at least 6 inches (150 mm) below grade **OR** to at least 12 inches (300 mm) below grade **OR** to depths indicated, **as directed**.
5. Existing Utilities: Abandon existing utilities and below-grade utility structures. Cut utilities flush with grade.  
**OR**  
Existing Utilities: Demolish existing utilities and below-grade utility structures that are within 5 feet (1.5 m) outside footprint indicated for new construction. Abandon utilities outside this area.
  - a. Fill abandoned utility structures with satisfactory soil materials **OR** recycled pulverized concrete, **as directed**, according to backfill requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".
  - b. Piping: Disconnect piping at unions, flanges, valves, or fittings.
  - c. Wiring Ducts: Disassemble into unit lengths and remove plug-in and disconnecting devices.  
**OR**  
Existing Utilities: Demolish and remove existing utilities and below-grade utility structures.
  - a. Piping: Disconnect piping at unions, flanges, valves, or fittings.
  - b. Wiring Ducts: Disassemble into unit lengths and remove plug-in and disconnecting devices.

**F. Demolition By Explosives – ONLY IF APPROVED BY THE OWNER**

1. Explosives: Perform explosive demolition according to governing regulations.
  - a. Obtain written permission from authorities having jurisdiction before bringing explosives to, or using explosives on, Project site.
  - b. Do not damage adjacent structures, property, or site improvements when using explosives.
2. Comply with recommendation in Explosives Consultant's report.



G. Site Restoration

1. Below-Grade Areas: Rough grade below-grade areas ready for further excavation or new construction.

**OR**

Below-Grade Areas: Completely fill below-grade areas and voids resulting from building demolition operations with satisfactory soil materials **OR** recycled pulverized concrete **OR** recycled pulverized masonry, **as directed**, according to backfill requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".

2. Site Grading: Uniformly rough grade area of demolished construction to a smooth surface, free from irregular surface changes. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.

H. Repairs

1. Promptly repair damage to adjacent buildings caused by demolition operations.

I. Disposal Of Demolished Materials

1. Remove demolition waste materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in EPA approved landfill acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. See Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management And Disposal" for recycling and disposal of demolition waste.
  - a. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
  - b. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
2. Do not burn demolished materials.

J. Cleaning

1. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by building demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before building demolition operations began.
  - a. Clean roadways of debris caused by debris transport.

END OF SECTION 02 41 19 13



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
02 41 19 13	01 71 23 16	Cutting and Patching
02 41 19 13	02 41 13 13	Selective Demolition
02 41 19 13	02 41 13 13a	Portland Cement Concrete Removal
02 43 13 13	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 02 61 00 00 - EXCAVATION AND HANDLING OF CONTAMINATED MATERIAL**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for excavation and handling of contaminated material. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Submittals

1. Shop Drawings: Separate cross-sections of each area before and after excavation and after backfilling.
2. Product Data: Work Plan within 30 calendar days after notice to proceed. No work at the site, with the exception of site inspections and surveys, shall be performed until the Work Plan is approved. The Contractor shall allow 30 calendar days in the schedule for the Owner's review. No adjustment for time or money will be made if resubmittals of the Work Plan are required due to deficiencies in the plan. At a minimum, the Work Plan shall include:
  - a. Schedule of activities.
  - b. Method of excavation and equipment to be used.
  - c. Shoring or side-wall slopes proposed.
  - d. Dewatering plan.
  - e. Storage methods and locations for liquid and solid contaminated material.
  - f. Borrow sources and haul routes.
  - g. Decontamination procedures.
  - h. Spill contingency plan.
3. Closure Report: Three (3) copies of the Closure Report within 14 calendar days of work completion at the site.
4. Test Reports
  - a. Backfill
  - b. Surveys
  - c. Confirmation Sampling and Analysis
  - d. Sampling of Stored Material
  - e. Sampling Liquid
  - f. Compaction
  - g. Test results.

## C. Surveys

1. Surveys shall be performed immediately prior to and after excavation of contaminated material to determine the volume of contaminated material removed. Surveys shall also be performed immediately after backfill of each excavation. The Contractor shall provide cross-sections on 25 foot (7.6 meter) intervals and at break points for all excavated areas. Locations of confirmation samples shall also be surveyed and shown on the drawings.

## D. Regulatory Requirements

1. Permits and Licenses: The Contractor shall obtain required federal, state, and local permits for excavation and storage of contaminated material. Permits shall be obtained at no additional cost the Owner.
2. Air Emissions: Air emissions shall be monitored and controlled in accordance with the Owner's Environmental Requirements.

## E. Chemical Testing

1. Required sampling and chemical analysis shall be conducted in accordance with local requirements and the Owner's requirements.



F. Scheduling

1. The Contractor shall notify the Owner five (5) calendar days prior to the start of excavation of contaminated material. The Owner will **OR** The Contractor shall, **as directed**, be responsible for contacting regulatory agencies in accordance with the applicable reporting requirements.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Backfill

1. Backfill material shall be obtained from the location indicated on the drawings **OR** offsite sources approved by the Owner, **as directed**. Backfill shall be classified in accordance with ASTM D 2487 as GW, GP, GM, GC, SW, SP, SM, SC, ML, MH, CL, or CH and shall be free from roots and other organic matter, trash, debris, snow, ice or frozen materials. Backfill material shall be tested for the parameters listed below at a frequency of once per 3000 cubic yards (cubic meters). A minimum of one set of classification tests shall be performed per borrow source. One backfill sample per borrow source shall also be collected and tested for the chemical parameters listed below.

<u>Physical Parameter</u>	<u>Test Method</u>
Grain Size	ASTM D 422
Compaction	ASTM D 698

Backfill shall not be used until borrow source chemical and physical test results have been submitted and approved.

B. Spill Response Materials

1. The Contractor shall provide appropriate spill response materials including, but not limited to the following: containers, adsorbents, shovels, and personal protective equipment. Spill response materials shall be available at all times when contaminated materials/wastes are being handled or transported. Spill response materials shall be compatible with the type of materials and contaminants being handled.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Existing Structures And Utilities

1. No excavation shall be performed until site utilities have been field located. The Contractor shall take the necessary precautions to ensure no damage occurs to existing structures and utilities. Damage to existing structures and utilities resulting from the Contractor's operations shall be repaired at no additional cost to the Owner. Utilities encountered that were not previously shown or otherwise located shall not be disturbed without approval from the Owner.

B. Clearing

1. Clearing shall be performed to the limits shown on the drawings in accordance with Division 2 Section "Site Clearing."

C. Contaminated Material Removal

1. Excavation: Areas of contamination shall be excavated to the depth and extent shown on the drawings and not more than 0.2 feet (60 mm) beyond the depth and extent shown on the drawings unless directed by the Owner. Excavation shall be performed in a manner that will limit spills and the potential for contaminated material to be mixed with uncontaminated material. An excavation log describing visible signs of contamination encountered shall be maintained for each area of excavation. Excavation logs shall be prepared in accordance with ASTM D 5434.
2. Shoring: If workers must enter the excavation, it shall be evaluated, shored, sloped or braced as required by U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) EM 385-1-1 and U.S. National Archives and Records Administration (NARA) 29 CFR 1926 section 650.





3. Dewatering: Surface water shall be diverted to prevent entry into the excavation. Dewatering shall be limited to that necessary to assure adequate access, a safe excavation, prevent the spread of contamination, and to ensure that compaction requirements can be met. No dewatering shall be performed without prior approval of the Owner.
- D. Confirmation Sampling And Analysis
1. the Owner shall be present to inspect the removal of contaminated material from each site. After all material suspected of being contaminated has been removed, the excavation shall be examined for evidence of contamination. If the excavation appears to be free of contamination, field analysis shall be used to determine the presence of contamination using a real time vapor monitoring instrument **OR** immunoassay field kits, **as directed**. Excavation of additional material shall be as directed by the Owner. After all suspected contaminated material is removed, confirmation samples shall be collected and analyzed.
  2. Samples shall be collected at a frequency as directed by the Owner. A minimum of one sample shall be collected from the bottom and each side wall of the excavation. Based on test results, the Contractor shall propose any additional excavation which may be required to remove material which is contaminated above action levels. Additional excavation shall be subject to approval by the Owner. Locations of samples shall be marked in the field and documented on the as-built drawings.
- E. Contaminated Material Storage
1. Material shall be placed in temporary storage immediately after excavation **OR** after treatment while awaiting test results, **as directed**. The following paragraphs describe acceptable methods of material storage. Storage units shall be in good condition and constructed of materials that are compatible with the material or liquid to be stored. If multiple storage units are required, each unit shall be clearly labeled with an identification number and a written log shall be kept to track the source of contaminated material in each temporary storage unit.
  2. Stockpiles
    - a. Stockpiles shall be constructed to isolate stored contaminated material from the environment. The maximum stockpile size shall be as directed by the Owner. Stockpiles shall be constructed to include:
      - 1) A chemically resistant geomembrane liner free of holes and other damage. Non-reinforced geomembrane liners shall have a minimum thickness of 20 mils (0.5 mm). Scrim reinforced geomembrane liners shall have a minimum weight of 40 lbs. per 1000 square feet (20 kg/100 square meters). The ground surface on which the geomembrane is to be placed shall be free of rocks greater than 0.5 inches (12 mm) in diameter and any other object which could damage the membrane.
      - 2) Geomembrane cover free of holes or other damage to prevent precipitation from entering the stockpile. Non-reinforced geomembrane covers shall have a minimum thickness of 10 mils (0.25 mm). Scrim reinforced geomembrane covers shall have a minimum weight of 26 lbs. per 1000 square feet (13 kg/100 square meters). The cover material shall be extended over the berms and anchored or ballasted to prevent it from being removed or damaged by wind.
      - 3) Berms surrounding the stockpile, a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) in height. Vehicle access points shall also be bermed.
      - 4) The liner system shall be sloped to allow collection of leachate. Storage and removal of liquid which collects in the stockpile, in accordance with paragraph Liquid Storage.
  3. Roll-Off Units: Roll-off units used to temporarily store contaminated material shall be water tight. A cover shall be placed over the units to prevent precipitation from contacting the stored material. The units shall be located as shown on the drawings. Liquid which collects inside the units shall be removed and stored in accordance with paragraph Liquid Storage.
  4. Liquid Storage: Liquid collected from excavations and stockpiles shall be temporarily stored in 55 gallon barrels (220 L barrels) **OR** 500 gallon tanks (2000 L tanks), **as directed**. Liquid storage containers shall be water-tight and shall be located as shown on the drawings.

**F. Sampling****1. Sampling of Stored Material**

- a. Samples of stored material shall be collected at a frequency as directed by the Owner.
- b. Stored material with contaminant levels that exceed the action levels shall be treated offsite. Analyses for contaminated material to be taken to an offsite treatment facility shall conform to local, state, and federal criteria as well as to the requirements of the treatment facility. Documentation of all analyses performed shall be furnished to the Owner. Additional sampling and analyses to the extent required by the approved offsite treatment, storage or disposal (TSD) facility shall be the responsibility of the Contractor and shall be performed at no additional cost to the Owner **OR** subject to approval by the Owner, **as directed**.

**OR**

Stored material with contaminant levels that exceed the action levels shall be treated onsite.

**2. Sampling Liquid**

- a. Liquid collected from excavations **OR** storage areas **OR** decontamination facilities, **as directed**, shall be sampled at a frequency of once for every 500 gallons (2,000 L) of liquid collected.
- b. Liquid with contaminant levels that exceed action levels shall be treated offsite. Analyses for contaminated liquid to be taken to an offsite treatment facility shall conform to local, state, and federal criteria as well as to the requirements of the treatment facility. Documentation of all analyses performed shall be furnished to the Owner. Additional sampling and analysis to the extent required by the approved offsite treatment, storage or disposal (TSD) facility receiving the material shall be the responsibility of the Contractor and shall be performed at no additional cost to the Owner **OR** subject to approval by the Owner.

**OR**

Liquid with contaminant levels that exceed action levels shall be treated onsite.

**3. Sampling Beneath Storage Units**

- a. Samples from beneath each storage unit shall be collected prior to construction of and after removal of the storage unit. Samples shall be collected at a frequency as directed by the Owner from a depth interval of 0 to 0.5 feet (0 to 0.15 m).
- b. Based on test results, soil which has become contaminated above action levels shall be removed at no additional cost to the Owner. Contaminated material which is removed from beneath the storage unit shall be handled in accordance with paragraph Sampling of Stored Material. as directed by the Owner and at no additional cost to the Owner, additional sampling and testing shall be performed to verify areas of contamination found beneath stockpiles have been cleaned up to below action levels.

**G. Spills**

1. In the event of a spill or release of a hazardous substance (as designated in NARA 40 CFR 302), pollutant, contaminant, or oil (as governed by the Oil Pollution Act [OPA], 33 U.S.C. 2701 et seq.), the Contractor shall notify the Owner immediately. If the spill exceeds the reporting threshold, the Contractor shall follow the pre-established procedures as described in the Contingency Plan for immediate reporting and containment. Immediate containment actions shall be taken to minimize the effect of any spill or leak. Cleanup shall be in accordance with applicable federal, state, and local regulations. as directed by the Owner, additional sampling and testing shall be performed to verify spills have been cleaned up. Spill cleanup and testing shall be done at no additional cost to the Owner.

**H. Backfilling**

1. Confirmation Test Results: Excavations shall be backfilled immediately after all contaminated materials have been removed and confirmation test results have been approved. Backfill shall be placed and compacted to the lines and grades shown on the drawings.



2. **Compaction:** Approved backfill shall be placed in lifts with a maximum loose thickness of 8 inches (200 mm). Soil shall be compacted to 90 percent of ASTM D 698 **OR** ASTM D 1557, **as directed**, maximum dry density. Density tests shall be performed at a frequency of once per 10,000 square feet (930 square meters) per lift. A minimum of one density test shall be performed on each lift of backfill placed. Field in-place dry density shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D 1556, ASTM D 2167, or ASTM D 2922. If ASTM D 2922 is used, a minimum of one in ten tests shall be checked using ASTM D 1556 or ASTM D 2167. Test results from ASTM D 1556 or ASTM D 2167 shall govern if there is a discrepancy with the ASTM D 2922 test results.
  - I. **Disposal Requirements**
    1. Offsite disposal of contaminated material shall be in accordance with Division 2 Section "Disposal of Hazardous Materials."
  - J. **Closure Report**
    1. Three copies of a Closure Report shall be prepared and submitted within 14 calendar days of completing work at the site. The report shall be labeled with the contract number, project name, location, date, and name of general contractor. The Closure Report shall include the following information as a minimum:
      - a. A cover letter signed by a responsible company official **OR** Professional Engineer registered in the state of the work who is a responsible company official, **as directed**, certifying that all services involved have been performed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the contract documents and regulatory requirements.
      - b. A narrative report including, but not limited to, the following:
        - 1) site conditions, ground water elevation, and cleanup criteria;
        - 2) excavation logs;
        - 3) field screening readings;
        - 4) quantity of materials removed from each area of contamination;
        - 5) quantity of water/product removed during dewatering;
        - 6) sampling locations and sampling methods;
        - 7) sample collection data such as time of collection and method of preservation;
        - 8) sample chain-of-custody forms; and
        - 9) source of backfill.
      - c. Copies of all chemical and physical test results.
      - d. Copies of all manifests and land disposal restriction notifications.
      - e. Copies of all certifications of final disposal signed by the responsible disposal facility official.
      - f. Waste profile sheets.
      - g. Scale drawings showing limits of each excavation, limits of contamination, known underground utilities within 50 feet (15 m) of excavation, sample locations, and sample identification numbers. On-site stockpile, storage, treatment, loading, and disposal areas shall also be shown on the drawings.
      - h. **Progress Photographs.** Color photographs shall be used to document progress of the work. A minimum of four views of the site showing the location of the area of contamination, entrance/exit road, and any other notable site conditions shall be taken before work begins. After work has been started, activities at each work location shall be photographically recorded daily **OR** weekly, **as directed**. Photographs shall be a minimum of 3 x 5 inches (76.2 x 127.0 mm) and shall include:
        - 1) Soil removal and sampling.
        - 2) Dewatering operations.
        - 3) Unanticipated events such as spills and the discovery of additional contaminated material.
        - 4) Contaminated material/water storage, handling, treatment, and transport.
        - 5) Site or task-specific employee respiratory and personal protection.
        - 6) Fill placement and grading.



- 
- 7) Post-construction photographs. After completion of work at each site, the Contractor shall take a minimum of four views of each excavation site. A digital version of all photos shown in the report shall be included with the Closure Report. Photographs shall be a minimum of 3 inches by 5 inches (76mm by 127 mm) and shall be mounted back-to-back in double face plastic sleeves punched to fit standard three ring binders. Each print shall have an information box attached. The box shall be typewritten and arranged as follows:
- Project Name: Direction of View:
  - Location: Date/Time:
  - Photograph No.: Description of View:

END OF SECTION 02 61 00 00

**SECTION 02 61 13 00 - UNDERGROUND STORAGE TANK REMOVAL**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing of labor and equipment for the underground storage tank removal. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Submittals

1. Work Plan: The Work Plan within 30 days after notice to proceed. The Contractor shall allow 30 days in the schedule for the Owner's review and approval. No adjustment for time or money will be made for resubmittals required as a result of noncompliance.
2. Qualifications: A document indicating that the Contractor meets the specified requirements.
3. Reports
  - a. Backfill Material.
  - b. Tank Contents Verification.
  - c. Contaminated Water Disposal.
  - d. Soil Examination, Testing, and Analysis.
  - e. Reports including the chain-of-custody records.
  - f. Backfilling.
  - g. Copies of all laboratory and field test reports.
  - h. Tank Closure Report: 3 copies of the report for each UST site opened, prepared in a standard 3-ring binder, within 14 days of completing work at each site. Each binder shall be labeled with contract number, project name, location and tank number; each binder shall be indexed. A copy of the report shall be furnished to the Installation Environmental Coordinator.
4. Records
  - a. Salvage Rights: A record of the disposition of salvaged materials at the end of the contract.
5. Qualifications
  - a. The Contractor shall have a minimum of 2 years of tank removal experience and shall be certified by the State in which the Project is located for tank removal work.
  - b. Laboratory Services: For laboratory services the Contractor shall be validated in accordance with state certification requirements.
  - c. Support Staff: The Contractor shall identify all staff involved for the various components, including personnel collecting and shipping samples. The qualifications of these staff members shall be detailed by the Contractor.

## C. Regulatory Requirements

1. Permits and Licenses: The Contractor, as required or as directed by the Owner, shall obtain local, state, or federal permits and licenses that directly impact the Contractor's ability to perform the work prior to commencing removal operations.
2. Statutes and Regulations: Tank closures shall be carried out in accordance with 40 CFR 280, 40 CFR 262, 40 CFR 264, and 40 CFR 265 as well as the applicable local and State regulations. Hazardous material and/or waste shall be transported in accordance with applicable local and State regulations.

## D. Project/Site Conditions: See the Detailed Scope of Work

1. Sequencing and Scheduling: The Contractor shall notify the Installation Environmental Coordinator and the Owner 5 days prior to tank removal. The Contractor shall be responsible for contacting the Implementation Agency (IA) in accordance with the applicable reporting requirements.



## 2. Work Plan

- a. The Contractor shall develop, implement, maintain, and supervise as part of the work, a comprehensive plan for tank removal and related operations. As a minimum the plan shall include, but not be limited to, excavation, removal, and ultimate disposal of the tank, its contents, and any contaminated materials. The Work Plan shall be based on work experience, on the requirements of this specification, and on the following references from the American Petroleum Institute:

API RP 1604.  
 API Standard 2015.  
 API RP 2003.  
 API Publication 2217A.  
 API Publication 2219.

No work at the site, with the exception of site inspections and mobilization, shall be performed until the Work Plan is approved. At a minimum, the Work Plan shall include:

- 1) Discussion of the removal approach, tank cleaning, and tank cutting procedures.
- 2) A Sampling and Analysis Plan.
- 3) Methods to be employed for product, sludge, vapor, and pumpable liquid removal; purging and inerting; and storage methods proposed for control of surface water.
- 4) Treatment options.
- 5) Identification of waste, tank and contaminated soil transporters and means of transportation.
- 6) Treatment, disposal, and alternate facilities, and means of treatment, disposal or remediation.
- 7) Borrow source.
- 8) Spill prevention plan.
- 9) Spill contingency plan.
- 10) Decontamination procedures, shoring plan, and safety measures.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Backfill Material

1. Backfill shall be classified in accordance with ASTM D 2487 as GW, GP, GM, GC, SW, SP, SM, SC, MH, CL, or CH and shall be free from roots and other organic matter, trash, debris, snow, ice or frozen materials. If off-site materials are used, soil classification test results shall be approved prior to bringing the material onsite. The testing frequency for backfill material shall be 1 per 1000 cubic yards or a minimum of 1 test. Non-contaminated material removed from the excavation shall be used for backfill in accordance with Paragraph BACKFILLING.

## 1.3 EXECUTION

### A. General Requirements

1. Safety Guidelines: Personnel shall abide by the safety guidelines specified in Division 01.
2. Burning and Explosives: Use of explosives or burning debris will not be allowed.
3. Protection of Existing Structures and Utilities: The Contractor shall take all necessary precautions to avoid damage to existing structures, their appurtenances, monitoring wells, or utilities that may be affected by work activities. Any damage to utilities or monitoring wells resulting from the Contractor's operations shall be repaired at no expense to the Owner. The Contractor shall coordinate with the installation to locate underground utilities prior to beginning construction. Utilities encountered which were not previously shown or otherwise located shall not be disturbed without approval from the Owner.
4. Shoring: Shoring requirements shall be provided.

### B. Tank Contents Verification



1. Sampling: Tank product, pumpable liquids, tank coatings and sludge shall be sampled by the Contractor. If the data is not adequate, additional sampling and analysis to the extent required by the approved permitted treatment, storage or disposal (TSD) facility receiving the material shall be the responsibility of the Contractor. Meeting all regulatory requirements, including the preparation of hazardous materials and waste for transportation shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.
  2. Analysis: Tank contents shall be tested by the Contractor for the parameters listed herein. Analyses shall include total petroleum hydrocarbons (TPH), benzene, ethylbenzene, toluene and xylene (BETX), and lead.
  3. Characterization: Prior to removing any of the tank contents, the contents shall be characterized to determine if the tank contents must be disposed as a hazardous or special waste or in a special manner based on local, state, and Federal disposal regulations. Tank product, pumpable liquids, and sludge shall be characterized in accordance with 40 CFR 261 and 40 CFR 279. The waste contents determination and accompanying test results for each phase present in the tank shall be submitted to the Owner. The Contractor shall be responsible for any additional requirements identified by the disposal facility. The tank contents shall not be removed until approval is given by the Owner.
- C. Clearing, Grubbing And Removals
1. Areas designated for clearing and grubbing shall be cleared of all trees, stumps, down timber, brush, rubbish, roots larger than 75 mm (3 inches) in diameter, and matted roots prior to commencing operations. Concrete or asphalt pavement shall be saw cut at the limits of removal, broken and removed with the resulting debris disposed of as directed by the Owner. Chain link fence shall be removed and salvaged for reuse or disposed of off-site, as directed by the Owner.
- D. Topsoil
1. Uncontaminated topsoil shall be stripped and stockpiled separately for reuse at a location approved by the Owner if it meets the requirements of clean fill given in Paragraph BACKFILLING. Additional topsoil in excess of that produced by excavation shall be obtained where directed by the Owner. All areas disturbed by tank removal operations, other than areas to receive pavement or similar surface under this contract, shall be topsoiled. Topsoil shall be used wherever directed by the Owner.
- E. Preparations For Excavation: Before excavating, the Contractor shall drain product piping back to the tank, remove residual liquids trapped in the product lines, and remove all product from the tank; and the tank shall be purged and vented in accordance with API RP 1604, and as specified herein.
1. Removal of Product, Pumpable Liquids, and Sludge: Tank product, pumpable liquids, and sludge shall be contained, and stored onsite, prior to disposal. Contaminated water shall be treated as specified. Tank product, pumpable liquids, and sludge shall be analyzed and segregated to recover reusable products by the Owner prior to being transported to the designated location or treatment, storage and disposal (TSD) facility. Tank product, pumpable liquids, and sludge shall be removed and disposed of by the Contractor. No Owner facilities shall be used for permanent storage or disposal of the wastes. Temporary storage on Owner's facilities will be allowed only until testing is complete, manifests (if necessary) are complete, and transportation is arranged. The Contractor shall be responsible for obtaining all required permits. Usable product shall be the property of the Contractor. The Contractor shall provide approved containers, vehicles, equipment, labor, signs, labels, placards and manifests and associated land disposal restriction notices and notifications, necessary for accomplishment of the work, including materials necessary for cleaning up spills that could occur from tank removal operations.
  2. Contaminated Water Disposal:
    - a. Sampling, Analysis, and Containment
      - 1) Contaminated water shall be sampled and analyzed both prior to and after treatment. Contaminated water produced from excavation operations and tank pumping treated onsite, shall be analyzed for pH; benzene, ethylbenzene, toluene, and xylene (BETX); total lead; oil and grease; total petroleum hydrocarbons (TPH). Sampling and analysis shall be performed prior to disposal for every 200,000 L



- (50,000 gallons) of contaminated water treated. Analysis for contaminated water to be taken to an off-site treatment facility shall conform to the requirements of the treatment facility with documentation of all analyses performed furnished to the Owner in accordance with paragraph RECORDS.
- 2) Contaminated water shall be contained, stored onsite, and analyzed and disposed of by the Contractor in accordance with applicable Federal and state disposal regulations. The Contractor shall provide approved containers, vehicles, equipment, labor, signs, labels, placards and manifests and associated land disposal notices and notifications, necessary for accomplishment of the work.
    - b. Treatment: Contaminated water shall be treated by oil water separation, filtering, air stripping and activated carbon, or other means as approved by the Owner. If contaminated water is to be treated onsite, the proposed treatment shall be specified in the Work Plan and submitted for approval. Temporary storage and treatment equipment shall be installed at a location approved by the Owner. Treated effluent shall be sampled and analyzed and the results approved by the Owner before discharge to the sanitary sewer or the surface. Effluent shall be treated and discharged in accordance with the discharge permit.
- F. Purging And Inerting: After the tank and piping contents have been removed, but prior to excavation beyond the top of the tank, the Contractor shall disconnect all the piping (except the piping needed to purge or inert the tank). Flammable and toxic vapors shall be purged from the tank or the tank made inert in accordance with API RP 1604, with the exceptions that filling with water shall not be used and, if dry ice is employed, the Contractor shall use a minimum of 1.8 kg per 500 L (3 pounds per 100 gallons) of tank volume. The tank atmosphere shall be continuously monitored for combustible vapors if the tank is purged, or continuously monitored for oxygen if the tank is inerted.
- G. Excavation: Excavation areas, as well as work near roadways, shall be marked as directed by the Owner.
  1. Exploratory Trenches: Exploratory trenches shall be excavated as necessary to determine the tank location, limits and the location of ancillary equipment.
  2. Tank Excavation: Excavation around the perimeter of the tank shall be performed limiting the amount of potentially petroleum contaminated soil that could be mixed with previously uncontaminated soil. Petroleum contaminated soil shall be segregated in separate stockpiles. The Contractor shall maintain around the tank an excavation of sufficient size to allow workers ample room to complete the work, but also protect the workers from sliding or cave-ins. Sheet piling, bracing, or shoring shall be installed in the absence of adequate side slopes if there is a need for workers to enter the excavated area. Surface water shall be diverted to prevent direct entry into the excavation. Dewatering of the excavation may require a discharge permit by the State and shall be limited to allow adequate access to the tank and piping, to assure a safe excavation, and to ensure that compaction and moisture requirements are met during backfilling. Dewatering may result in the production of petroleum contaminated water and/or free product. Free product shall be recovered from the groundwater only as part of necessary dewatering.
  3. Piping Excavation: Excavation shall be performed as necessary to remove tank piping and ancillary equipment in accordance with paragraphs: Shoring, Tank Excavation, and Open Excavations.
  4. Open Excavations: Open excavations and stockpile areas shall be secured while awaiting confirmation test results from the soil beneath the tank. The excavation shall be backfilled as soon as possible after tank and contaminated soil removals have been completed and confirmation samples have been taken. The Contractor shall divert surface water around excavations to prevent water from directly entering into the excavation.
  5. Stockpiles: Uncontaminated excavated soil and petroleum contaminated soil that is not a state-regulated hazardous waste shall be stockpiled and used for backfill in the tank excavation prior to using borrow material or disposed of off-site. Excavated material that is regulated by the state as a hazardous waste shall be considered contaminated and shall be placed in containers such as drums, roll-offs or dumpsters for sampling in accordance with paragraph Stockpiled Material





Sampling. Uncontaminated soil shall be stockpiled separately from the contaminated soil, a safe distance away from, but adjacent to, the excavation.

H. Removal Of Piping, Ancillary Equipment, And Tank

1. Piping and Ancillary Equipment: All piping and ancillary equipment shall be disconnected from the tank. The piping shall be removed completely (interior and exterior of the tank). All tank ancillary equipment and piping connections shall be capped, except those connections necessary to inert the tank within the excavation zone. The piping exterior and ancillary equipment shall be cleaned to remove all soil and inspected for signs of corrosion and leakage. The Contractor shall ensure no spillage of the piping contents occurs, as specified in the Work Plan, and as required in paragraph SPILLS. If the soil under and around the tank pad is contaminated, the tank pad shall be removed and disposed of off-site at an approved non-hazardous or hazardous waste facility, as required. If the soil under and around the tank pad is not contaminated, the tank pad shall remain in place.
2. Tank: The tank shall be removed from the excavation and the exterior cleaned to remove all soil and inspected for signs of corrosion, structural damage, or leakage. All materials coming into contact with the tank, or in the vicinity of the excavation such as shovels, slings and tools shall be of the non-sparking type. After removal from the excavation, the tank shall be placed on a level surface at an approved location and secured with wood blocks to prevent movement.
3. Contaminated Soil, Tank and Piping Excavation Examination: After the tank has been removed from the ground, the adjacent and underlying soil shall be examined for any evidence of leakage. The soil shall be visually inspected for staining after removal of all obviously contaminated soil, then screened for the presence of volatile and/or semi-volatile contamination using a real time vapor monitoring instrument or immunoassay field kits, as required. Uncontaminated soil or petroleum contaminated soil not regulated by the state as hazardous waste shall be transported off-site for disposal. Contaminated soil or suspected contaminated soil shall be containerized. the Owner shall determine the extent of the contaminated soil to be removed from each site. The Contractor shall report any evidence indicating that the amount of contaminated soil may exceed the individual site limit specified, to the Owner the same day it is discovered. If minimal additional excavation is required, the Owner may allow the Contractor to proceed. If extensive contamination is encountered, the excavation shall be sampled and backfilled in accordance with paragraph BACKFILLING. After the known contaminated soil is removed, the excavation shall be sampled and analyzed.

I. Tank Cleaning

1. Exterior: Soil shall be removed from the exterior of the tank, piping, and associated equipment to eliminate soil deposition on roadways during transportation to a temporary storage area, ensure markings will adhere to the surfaces, and simplify tank cutting. Soil shall be removed using non-sparking tools. Removed uncontaminated soil and soil not regulated by the state as a hazardous waste shall be recovered and used as backfill in the former tank excavation. Soil believed to be contaminated shall be removed and containerized.
2. Temporary Storage: If the tank is stored after the tank exterior is cleaned and ancillary equipment is removed, and prior to being cut into sections, the tank shall be labeled as directed in API RP 1604, placed on blocks, and temporarily stored in the area of the existing tank site. Prior to cleaning the tank interior the tank atmosphere shall be monitored for combustible vapors and purged or inerted if combustible vapors are detected.
3. Interior:
  - a. The tank interior shall be cleaned using a high pressure (greater than 500 psi (3.45 Mpa)), low volume (less than 2 gpm (0.13 L/s)) water spray or steam cleaned until all loose scale and sludge is removed, and contamination, in the form of a sheen, is no longer visible in the effluent stream. The interior surfaces of piping shall also be cleaned, to the extent possible, using the same method used for cleaning the tank. Contaminated water generated from interior cleaning operations (of both piping and tank) shall not exceed the following quantities for each UST cleaned:

UST VOLUME (LITERS)

PERCENT OF UST VOLUME



3,785 or less	5
37,850 or less	5 or 378 L, whichever is less
75,700 or less	1 or 568 L, whichever is less
greater than 75,700	1 or 946 L, whichever is less

UST VOLUME (GALLONS)	PERCENT OF UST VOLUME
1,000 or less	5
10,000 or less	5 or 100 gal., whichever is less
20,000 or less	1 or 150 gal., whichever is less
greater than 20,000	1 or 250 gal., whichever is less.

- b. All contaminated water resulting from cleaning operations shall be handled in accordance with paragraph Contaminated Water Disposal. Cleaning shall be accomplished eliminating, to the greatest extent possible, the need for personnel to enter the tank. Cleaning shall be done using specially designed tank cleaning equipment which allows the tank to be cleaned prior to cutting into sections without requiring personnel to enter the tank or, if less specialized equipment is used, the tank shall be partially dissected to overcome confined space entry hazards.

J. Soil Examination, Testing, And Analysis

1. Tank Excavation Sampling Procedures: After soil known to be contaminated has been removed or after soil excavation is complete, the excavation shall be sampled with procedures, number, location, and methodology in accordance with state regulations. Samples shall be obtained from the pits, in accordance with ASTM D 1587, using a backhoe with a Shelby tube attached to the bucket.
2. Stockpiled Material Sampling: Sampling locations, number and specific procedures shall be as required by the implementing agency and the disposal facility.
3. Analysis: Soil samples from the excavation and stockpiled material shall be tested in accordance with the approved Sampling and Analysis Plan for the following parameters: total petroleum hydrocarbon (TPH); benzene, ethylbenzene, toluene, xylene (BETX); toxicity characteristic leaching procedure (TCLP). Copies of all test results shall be provided to the Owner.

- K. Backfilling: The tank area and any other excavations shall be backfilled only after the soil test results have been approved. Contaminated soil removal shall be complete after the bottom of the tank excavation is determined to have soil contamination levels below the state standards of approval by the Owner. The excavation shall be dewatered if necessary. Stockpiled material subjected to chemical confirmation testing shall be used as backfill if it is found to conform to the requirements of clean fill per appropriate state and local regulations. Backfill consisting of clean fill shall be placed in layers with a maximum loose thickness of 200 mm (8 inches) and compacted to 90 percent maximum density for cohesive soils and 95 percent maximum density for cohesionless soils. Density tests shall be performed by an approved commercial testing laboratory or by facilities furnished by the Contractor. Test results shall be attached to contractor's Quality Control Report. A minimum of 1 density test shall be performed on each lift. Laboratory tests for moisture density relations shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D 1557, Method B, C, or D, or ASTM D 3017. A mechanical tamper may be used provided that the results are correlated with those obtained by the hand tamper. Field in-place density shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D 1556, ASTM D 2922, or ASTM D 2167.

L. Disposal Requirements

1. Treatment, Disposal, and Recycling: Disposal of hazardous or special wastes shall be in accordance with all local, State, and Federal solid and hazardous waste laws and regulations; and conditions specified herein. This work shall include all necessary personnel, labor, transportation, packaging, detailed analyses (if required for disposal, manifesting or completing waste profile sheets), equipment, and reports. Product and pumpable liquids removed from the tank shall be recycled to the greatest extent practicable. The tanks removed shall be disposed of



- at one of the state approved facilities. Each tank disposed of in this manner shall be manifested as required by the State to document delivery and acceptance at the disposal facility.
2. Tank and Ancillary Equipment Disposal: After the tank, piping, and ancillary equipment have been removed from the excavation and the tank cleaned, the tank shall be cut into sections with no dimension greater than 1500 mm (5 feet). Tank and piping sections shall be disposed of in a State approved off-site disposal facility or in a salvage yard. The tank shall be cut into sections prior to being taken from the tank removal site. The Contractor shall not sell the tank intact. Ancillary equipment shall be disposed of at an approved off-site disposal facility or a salvage yard. Piping shall be disconnected from the tank and removed or grouted full of a portland cement and water slurry consisting of 22.7 L (6 gallons) of clean water per 42.6 kg (94 pound) sack of portland cement, thoroughly mixed and free of lumps, unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Transportation of Wastes: Transportation shall be provided in accordance with Department of Transportation (DOT) Hazardous Material Regulations and State and local requirements, including obtaining all necessary permits, licenses, and approvals. Evidence that a State licensed hazardous waste or waste transporter is being used shall be included in the SUBMITTALS.
  4. Salvage Rights: The Contractor shall retain the rights to salvage value of recycled or reclaimed product and metal not otherwise identified, so long as the requirements of 40 CFR 266 and 40 CFR 279, or the applicable State requirements are met. At the end of the contract, the Contractor shall provide documentation on the disposition of salvaged materials.
  5. Records: Records shall be maintained of all waste determinations, including appropriate results of analyses performed, substances and sample location, the time of collection, and other pertinent data as required by 40 CFR 280, Section 74 and 40 CFR 262 Subpart D. Transportation, treatment, disposal methods and dates, the quantities of waste, the names and addresses of each transporter and the disposal or reclamation facility, shall also be recorded and available for inspection, as well as copies of the following documents:
    - a. Manifests.
    - b. Waste analyses or waste profile sheets.
    - c. Certifications of final treatment/disposal signed by the responsible disposal facility official.
    - d. Land disposal notification records required under 40 CFR 268 for hazardous wastes.
  6. Hazardous/Special Waste Manifests: Manifesting shall conform to Federal, State and local requirements.
  7. Documentation of Treatment or Disposal: The wastes, other than recyclable or reclaimable product or metal, shall be taken to a treatment, storage, or disposal facility which has EPA or appropriate state permits and hazardous or special waste identification numbers and complies with the provisions of the disposal regulations. Documentation of acceptance of special waste by a facility legally permitted to treat or dispose of those materials shall be furnished to the Owner not later than 5 working days following the delivery of those materials to the facility; and a copy shall be included in the Tank Closure Report. A statement of agreement from the proposed treatment, storage or disposal facility and certified transporters to accept hazardous or special wastes shall be furnished to the Owner not less than 14 days before transporting any wastes. If the Contractor selects a different facility than is identified in the contract, documentation shall be provided for approval to certify that the facility is authorized and meets the standards specified in 40 CFR 264.
- M. Spills: Immediate containment actions shall be taken as necessary to minimize effect of any spill or leak. Cleanup shall be in accordance with applicable Federal, State, local laws and regulations, and district policy at no additional cost to the Owner.
- N. Tank Closure Report: Tank Closure Reports shall include the following information as a minimum:
1. A cover letter signed by a Professional Engineer registered in the State in which the Project is located certifying that all services involved have been performed in accordance with the terms and conditions of this specification.
  2. A narrative report describing what was encountered at each site, including:
    - a. condition of the UST.
    - b. any visible evidence of leaks or stained soils.
    - c. results of vapor monitoring readings.



- d. actions taken including quantities of materials treated or removed.
  - e. reasons for selecting sample locations.
  - f. sample locations.
  - g. collection data such as time of collection and method of preservation.
  - h. reasons for backfilling site.
  - i. whether or not groundwater was encountered.
3. Copies of all analyses performed for disposal.
  4. Copies of all waste analyses or waste profile sheets.
  5. Copies of all certifications of final disposal signed by the responsible disposal installation official.
  6. Information on who sampled, analyzed, transported, and accepted all wastes encountered, including copies of manifests, waste profile sheets, land disposal restriction, notification and certification forms, certificates of disposal, and other pertinent documentation.
  7. Copies of all analyses performed for confirmation that underlying soil is not contaminated, with copies of chain-of-custody for each sample. Analyses shall give the identification number of the sample used. Sample identification numbers shall correspond to those provided on the one-line drawings.
  8. Scaled one-line drawings showing tank locations, limits of excavation, limits of contamination, underground utilities within 15 m (50 feet) sample locations, and sample identification numbers.
  9. Progress Photographs. The Contractor shall take a minimum of 4 views of the site showing such things as the location of each tank, entrance/exit road, and any other notable site condition before work begins. After work has been started at the site, the Contractor shall photographically record activities at each work location daily. Photographs shall be 76.2 x 127.0 mm (3 x 5 inches) and shall include:
    - a. Soil removal, handling, and sampling.
    - b. Unanticipated events such as discovery of additional contaminated areas.
    - c. Soil stockpile area.
    - d. Tank.
    - e. Site or task-specific employee respiratory and personal protection.
    - f. Fill placement and grading.
    - g. Post-construction photographs. After completion of work at each site, the Contractor shall take a minimum of four (4) views of the site. Prints shall illustrate the condition and location of work and the state of progress. The photographs shall be mounted and enclosed back-to-back in a double face plastic sleeve punched to fit standard three ring binders. Each color print shall show an information box, 40 x 90 mm (1-1/2 x 3-1/2 inches). The information box for the 76.2 x 127.0 mm (3 x 5 inch) photographs shall be scaled down accordingly, or taped to the bottom of the photo. The box shall be typewritten and arranged as follows:
      - Project No.
      - Contract No.
      - Location
      - Contractor/Photographer
      - Photograph No. Date/Time:
      - Description
      - Direction of View

END OF SECTION 02 61 13 00

**SECTION 02 61 13 00a - PRECISION TESTING OF UNDERGROUND FUEL OIL TANKS**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing of labor and equipment for the precision testing of underground fuel oil tanks. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS - (Not Used)

## 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. The Contractor shall furnish all the necessary labor and equipment to complete the Precision Fuel Oil Tank Testing at various buildings under the jurisdiction of the Owner. The pertinent quantity and the capacity of the tanks will be listed on each Job Order. When the contractor elects to use a volumetric tank tester, it shall be responsible to fill up and "top off" tank to a maximum of 100 gallons prior to the start of testing. The cost to "top off" tank will be the contractor's responsibility.
- B. The Contractor shall provide the material and labor necessary for the drilling and tapping of the existing oil tank manhole cover and the installation of new air bleeder valves. The air bleeder valve shall be a Hoffman Specialty #40 or #41 or their approved equal.
- C. Coordination of Work: Prior to performing any test, the contractor shall notify the Owner of the scheduled test date. Designated personnel from the Owner shall take necessary actions to coordinate fuel oil delivery and shall inform the contractor of the date and time of the fuel delivery. The contractor shall ascertain that the tanks are filled to capacity and shall be responsible to have the tanks "topped off" up to a maximum of 100 gallons prior to the start of testing. The contractor shall make arrangements to perform the testing within forty-eight (48) hours of notification that the oil tank has been filled. The Contractor's responsibility to "top off" tank only applies when the contractor elects to utilize a volumetric tank tester.
- D. Test Equipment: The Contractor shall be limited to using state approved Precision Testing methods equal to the following:
  - Ainlay Tank Tegrity Tester
  - Horner EZY 3
  - Hunter Leak Lokator
  - Tank Auditor
  - Petro Tite
- E. Test Results: The Contractor will be required to submit written reports of test results as noted below.
  1. The test reports' format shall be approved by the testing equipment manufacturer and the state.
  2. The Contractor shall submit one (1) type written report within seven (7) days of completion of the testing to the Owner.
  3. The Contractor shall submit one copy of the report to the state within thirty (30) days of completion of the testing. Proof of submission shall be appended to the request for payment.
  4. The test results shall include, but not be limited to:
    - a. Name and/or Number of Building
    - b. Address of Building



- 
- c. Date and Time of Test
  - d. Results of test including (Actual Data Calculations Graphs)
  - e. Test Method
  - f. Name and address of Contractor
  - g. Signature of test technician
5. Should the test indicate a leakage condition, the contractor shall perform the following:
    - a. Initiate procedure to isolate piping from tank and determine the source of the leak. This work shall be performed after notification of the Owner.
    - b. Submit a written proposal and cost estimate for work required to be performed to repair leak. Recommended proposal shall be submitted to the Owner within 48-hours after determining source of leak. No repair work shall proceed without authorization by the Owner.
    - c. Notify the state of leak discovered in underground buried tank. This notification shall take place within 2 hours of determining source of leak.
    - d. In these cases, the Owner may direct the Contractor to complete the work or exercise its option to perform the required work by its own forces or under separate contract.
  6. After completion of the remedial work when applicable, the contractor shall perform a re-test, and shall issue a final test report in aforementioned format. The contractor shall be paid 50% of the bid unit price for the re-test.

END OF SECTION 02 61 13 00a



---

**SECTION 02 61 13 00b - HYDROSTATIC PRESSURE TESTING OF AIR RECEIVING TANKS****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing of labor and equipment for the hydrostatic pressure testing of air receiving tanks. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**1.2 PRODUCTS - (Not Used)****1.3 EXECUTION****A. General**

1. Disconnect all piping and remove safety valve from air receiving tank and temporarily plug all openings on the disconnected tank.
2. Perform hydrostatic test at not less than twice the charging pressure, at 70 degrees Fahrenheit, for fifteen (15) minutes in accordance with the Administrative Code of the applicable Authority.
3. Test shall be performed in the presence of a representative of the Inspection Unit. Contractor shall notify the Owner's Inspection Unit seventy-two (72) hours prior to test.
4. At the completion of each test, contractor shall reconnect all piping and reinstall all removed equipment.
5. The Contractor shall issue an affidavit of test to the Owner. The affidavit shall state the date of test, testing pressure and the maximum working pressure allowable until the next test.
6. Furnish and install a glass enclosed aluminum frame of suitable size to display affidavit. Frame shall be open at the top for easy access to affidavit. Frame shall be firmly affixed in a permanent location adjacent to receiver tank as directed by the Owner.

**B. Intent: Pursuant to the provisions of the Administrative Code of applicable Authority, and in the interest of public safety, the Owner requires that:**

1. All compressed air tanks shall be tested by a person who has received a Certificate of Fitness from the Owner to conduct such a test in the manner and to the pressure set forth in the code before being continued in use.
2. Licensed testers shall submit ten (10) day notice of appointments to the Owner.
3. A sworn statement by the person conducting the test, in proper affidavit form, attesting to the completion of such test, shall be filed with the Owner's office and a copy thereof posted on the premises.
4. The submission of such an affidavit or posting a copy thereof, where the required test has not been carried out in accordance with the foregoing provisions of law, shall be cause for the revocation of the Certificate of Fitness, denial of the required permits to maintain and operate equipment and may also subject the individual to criminal liability for filing a false affidavit and a fine of up to five hundred dollars, imprisonment of up to six months, or both.

END OF SECTION 02 61 13 00b



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
02 61 13 00	02 41 13 13	Selective Demolition
02 61 13 00	02 61 00 00	Excavation And Handling Of Contaminated Material



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

**SECTION 02 61 26 00 - DISPOSAL OF HAZARDOUS MATERIALS****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for disposal of hazardous materials. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Definition**

1. Hazardous materials shall be defined as asbestos containing materials, lead-based paint, PCBs, bird waste, and other materials categorized as hazardous by the EPA.

**C. Submittals**

1. Before start of work: At the pre-construction meeting, the Contractor shall submit the following to the Owner's Representative for review. Do not start work until these submittal are returned with Owner's Representative stamp indicating that the submittal is returned for unrestricted use.
  - a. Copy of State or local license for hazardous waste hauler.
  - b. Certificate of at least one on-site supervisor which has satisfactorily completed the OSHA 40 hour Health and Safety course for handling hazardous materials.
  - c. Certificates of workers which have successfully completed the OSHA 40-Hour Health and Safety Course for Hazardous Materials.
  - d. List of the employees scheduled to perform this work.
  - e. Schedule of start and finish times and dates for this work.
  - f. Name and address of landfill where these waste materials are to be deposited. Include contact person and telephone number.
  - g. Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS) for all materials to be removed.
  - h. If contractor introduces any chemical into the work environment, a MSDS for that chemical must be presented to the Owner's Representative prior to use.
  - i. Transporter must have notified the EPA and/or other appropriate local government agency in advance of its intentions to transport hazardous materials and, if applicable, receive an identification number.
  - j. Contingency Plan for handling emergencies with spills or leaks.
  - k. Certificates of workers which have successfully completed the OSHA 24-Hour Health and Safety Course for Hazardous Materials.

**1.2 PRODUCTS****A. Materials**

1. Drums: Recovery or salvage drums acceptable for disposal of hazardous waste. Prior approval of drums is required. Drums or containers must meet the required OSHA, EPA (40 CFR Parts 264-264 and 300), and DOT Regulations (49 CFR Parts 171-178). Use of damaged containers shall not be allowed.
2. Labels: As required by the EPA and OSHA for handling, transportation, and disposal of hazardous waste.
3. Absorbent Material: Clay, soil or any commercially available absorbent used for the purpose of absorbing hazardous or potentially hazardous materials.

**1.3 EXECUTION**



- 
- A. All waste shall be transported and disposed of in accordance with all federal, state and local guidelines and regulations. The contractor is to obtain all permits, licenses, etc., which are necessary for the transporting and disposal of hazardous waste.
  - B. Waste haulers shall maintain waste manifest and shipment record forms.

END OF SECTION 02 61 26 00



---

**SECTION 02 61 26 00a - REMOVAL OF FRIABLE ASBESTOS-CONTAINING MATERIALS****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for removal of friable asbestos-containing materials. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Description**

1. Furnish all labor, materials, facilities, equipment, services, employee training and testing, permits and agreements necessary to perform the work required for asbestos removal, encapsulation, repair, clean-up, decontamination, re-insulation and all other work in accordance with these specifications, in accordance with the latest regulations from the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA), the recommendations of National Institute of Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH), and any other applicable federal, state and local government regulations. Whenever there is a conflict or overlap of the above references, the most stringent provision is applicable.
2. The work specified herein shall be performed by competent persons trained, knowledgeable and qualified in the state-of-the-art techniques of asbestos abatement, handling and subsequent cleaning of contaminated areas.

**C. Scope**

1. The quantities of materials and limits of abatement work area(s) shall be verified by the asbestos contractor.

**D. Asbestos Hazard**

1. Asbestos-containing material when damaged or disturbed is subject to fiber releases. Wet methods are a primary means of controlling fiber release.
2. Strict compliance with each of the provisions outlined in these specifications for the encapsulation, repair and handling of asbestos-containing material is of great importance, because:
  - a. The inhalation of airborne asbestos fibers can cause a very serious and often fatal disease.
  - b. Workers may not be aware they are inhaling asbestos fibers.
  - c. Symptoms of the disease do not appear for many years.
  - d. Only the Contractor and its employees can prevent the inhalation of asbestos fibers, which can lead to the development of asbestos-related disease.
  - e. No insurance is available to provide for asbestos-related disease.

**E. Other Hazardous Material**

1. Contractor shall comply with OSHA 29 CFR 1926.62 - Lead in Construction when demolishing any equipment or architectural component identified as lead-containing or lead-based paint. The work of this project is considered a demolition activity.
2. the Owner anticipates that a substantial amount of the Project will involve lead paint.

**F. Qualifications**

1. the Owner and the Owner's Representative will verify and approve the experience of the Asbestos Abatement Contractor based upon submission at the time of bidding by Contractor evidence of the following:
  - a. Experience: Provide the names and locations of at least three asbestos abatement projects of comparable size and complexity comparable with this work. Provide the names and telephone numbers of contact person at previous projects. Provide the final air monitoring decontamination fiber levels achieved.



- b. Personnel: Provide the name(s) of "Competent Person" as defined by OSHA 29 CFR 1926.32(f) - Asbestos. Demonstrate the education and specialized training with successful completion of examination of an EPA approved course. Provide evidence of participation in five projects of complexity comparable with this project.
- c. Licensing and Certification: The Contractor must hold a current, valid asbestos license issued by the State in which the work is to be performed.

G. Notices And Record Keeping

1. Contractor shall maintain for at least 30 years, a record for each asbestos project in which the Contractor engages. Each record shall include the following information: name, address, and social security number of all personnel involved with the project, the name address and social security number of the OSHA "Competent Person" who will supervise the work, the amount of asbestos material that was removed, repaired, encapsulated or disturbed, the commencement and completion date of the work, copies of Hazardous Waste Manifest(s), personal air monitoring results and any other appropriate information.
2. The Contractor shall send written notification as required by USEPA National Emission Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutants (NESHAPS) Asbestos Regulations (40 CFR 61, Subpart M) to the Owner, at least 10 working days prior to beginning any work on asbestos-containing materials.
3. Include the following information:
  - a. Name and address of the Owner or operator.
  - b. Description of the facility being demolished or renovated, including the size, age, and prior use of the facility.
  - c. Estimate of the approximate amount of asbestos material present in the facility in terms of linear feet of pipe, and surface area on other facility components. For facilities in which the amount of asbestos materials is less than 80 linear meters (260 linear feet) on pipes and less than 15 square meters (160 square feet) on other facility components, explain techniques of estimation.
  - d. Location of the facility being demolished or renovated.
  - e. Scheduled starting and completion dates of demolition or renovation.
  - f. Nature of planned demolition or renovation and method(s) to be used.
  - g. Procedures to be used to comply with the requirements of USEPA National Emission Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutants (NESHAPS) Asbestos Regulations (40 CFR 61 Subpart M).
  - h. Name and location of the waste disposal site where the asbestos waste material will be deposited.
4. Prior to commencement of work, the Contractor shall submit the following documents to the Owner's Representative. No work will be allowed to start until these documents have been approved:
  - a. The schedule of the work, including manpower, length and number of work shifts. Schedule shall be coordinated with the Owner's full occupancy of all areas of the building.
  - b. Satisfactory proof that written notification has been provided to the EPA regional office and the Owner.
  - c. Proof that all required permits, disposal site locations, and arrangements for transportation and disposal of asbestos-contaminated materials, supplies and the like have been obtained.
  - d. Complete a worker certificate indicating that all employees have had instruction and training on the hazards of asbestos exposure, the use and fitting of respirators, protective dress, wet and dry decontamination procedures, entry and exit from work areas, and all aspects of work procedures and protective measures.
  - e. Documentation indicating that all employees have received appropriate medical examinations and have successfully passed fit testing for the respirator to be worn. As a minimum, medical exams must be consistent with OSHA 29 CFR 1926.1101(K)(9)(viii)(G)-Asbestos Regulation.



- f. Samples of signs to be used in and around the work area to comply with OSHA 29 CFR 1926.1101(K)(9)(viii)(I)- Asbestos regulations and as required by federal, state and municipal regulations.
  - g. Material Safety Data Sheets (OSHA form 174 or equivalent) for all chemicals used during work performed under this section.
  - h. Encapsulation data and encapsulation procedures.
  - i. Design of pressure differential system including calculation used to arrive at the number of machines necessary to achieve one air change per every 10 minutes.
  - j. Location of personnel and material decontamination units for each work area.
5. Contractor shall provide written notification to the Owner's Representative of its intent to start work at least five days in advance. In no case will the Contractor start work until authorization to proceed is given.
  6. During the work, Contractor shall maintain a daily log which will be kept at the job site. Items to be included in the daily log shall include but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Meetings, purpose, attendees, discussions, items of resolution.
    - b. Visitations, authorized and unauthorized.
    - c. Sign-in sheets of all personnel entering and leaving the work area.
    - d. Special or unusual events (i.e., barrier breeching equipment failures).
    - e. Personal air monitoring results.
    - f. Two copies of the daily log are required for Project Closeout.
- H. Terminology (Definitions)
1. Abatement - Procedures to control fiber release from asbestos-containing materials. Includes removal, enclosure or encapsulation.
  2. Air Lock - A system for permitting ingress or egress without permitting air movement between any two adjacent areas consisting of two curtained doorways. The air lock must be maintained in an uncontaminated condition at all times.
  3. Air Monitoring; - The process of measuring the asbestos fiber content of a specific volume of air in a stated period of time using methods approved or recommended by OSHA, EPA, NIOSH or other method approved by the Owner or the Owner's Representative.
  4. Amended water - Water to which a surfactant has been added.
  5. Asbestos - A generic name given to a number of naturally occurring hydrated mineral silicates that possess a unique crystalline structure, are incombustible in air, and are separable into fibers. Asbestos includes the asbestiform varieties of Chrysotile (serpentine), Crocidolite (Riebeckite), Amosite (Cummingtonite-Grunente), Anthophyllite, Actinolite, and Tremolite.
  6. Asbestos-containing material (ACM) - Any material that contains more than 1 percent asbestos by weight as determined by Polarized Light Microscopy (PLM).
  7. Authorized Visitor - the Owner or its designated representative, or a representative of any regulatory or other agency having jurisdiction over the project.
  8. Class I - Asbestos work means activities involving the removal of thermal systems insulation (TSI) and surfacing ACM and PACM.
  9. Class II - Asbestos work means activities involving the removal of ACM which is not TSI or surfacing material. This includes, but is not limited to, the removal of asbestos-containing wallboard, floor tile and sheeting, roofing and siding shingles, and construction mastics.
  10. Class III - Asbestos work means repair and maintenance operations where "ACM" including TSI and surfacing ACM and PACM is likely to be disturbed.
  11. Class IV - Asbestos work means maintenance and custodial activities during which employees contact but do not disturb ACM or PACM and activities to clean-up dust, waste and debris resulting from Class I, II and III activities.
  12. Critical Barrier - A unit of temporary construction which provides the only separation between an asbestos work area and an adjacent, potentially occupied, space. The critical barrier is composed of at least one intact sheet of polyethylene sheeting.
  13. Decontamination Enclosure System - A series of connected rooms with curtained doorways between any two adjacent rooms, for the decontamination of workers or of materials and equipment. A decontamination system contains at least two air locks.



14. Disposal - All procedures necessary to transport and deposit the asbestos-contaminated material stripped and removed from the building in a waste disposal site in compliance with applicable federal, state, and local regulations.
  15. Disposal Site - A site approved by the EPA for the disposal of asbestos-containing wastes.
  16. Encapsulant - A liquid which can be applied to asbestos-containing materials and which controls the possible release of fibers from the materials.
  17. Encapsulation - The use of an agent to seal the surface (bridging encapsulant) or penetrate the bulk (penetrating encapsulant) of the asbestos-containing material.
  18. HEPA -High Efficiency Particulate Air - A type of filter which is 99.97% efficient at filtering particles of 0.3 micrometers in diameter.
  19. HEPA Vacuum Equipment - Vacuuming equipment equipped with a HEPA filter in the exhaust outlet, and so designed and maintained that 99.97% of all particles of 0.3 micrometer in diameter in the inlet air are collected and retained.
  20. Negative Pressure Respirators - Respirators which function by the wearer breathing in air through a filter.
  21. NIOSH - National Institute of Occupational Safety and Health.
  22. the Owner's Representative - Authorized Consultants
  23. Permissible Exposure Level (PEL) - A level of airborne fibers specified by OSHA as an occupational exposure standard for asbestos. It is 0.1 f/cc of air, eight-hour TWA, as measured by Phase Contrast Microscopy.
  24. Repair - The restoration of damaged or deteriorated asbestos-containing material to intact condition.
  25. Respirator Protection Program - A set of procedures and equipment required by OSHA if employees wear negative pressure respirators or if fiber levels are above the PEL.
  26. Surfactant - Chemical wetting agent added to water to improve penetration, thus reducing the amount of water required for a given operation or area, and enhancing the effect of the water in reducing fiber release.
  27. Thermal Systems Insulation - Material applied to pipes, fittings, boilers, breeching, tanks, ducts or other interior structural components to prevent heat loss or gain, or water condensation, or for other purposes.
  28. Wet Cleaning - The process of eliminating asbestos contamination from building surfaces and objects by using cloths and mops or other cleaning tools that have been dampened with clean water and afterwards disposing of these cleaning tools as asbestos-contaminated waste.
- I. Permits And Licenses:
1. The Contractor must maintain current licenses as required by applicable state or local jurisdictions for the removal, transporting, disposal or other regulated activity relative to the work of this contract.
- J. Regulations
1. This section sets forth governmental regulations and industry standards which are included and incorporated herein by reference and made a part of the specifications. This section also sets forth those notices and permits which are known to the Owner and which either must be applied for and received, or which must be given to governmental agencies before start of work.
  2. Except to the extent that more explicit or more stringent requirements are written directly into the contract documents, all applicable codes, regulations, and standards have the same force and effect (and are made a part of the contract documents by reference) as if copied directly into the contract documents, or as if published copies are bound herewith.
  3. The Contractor shall assume full responsibility and liability for the compliance with all applicable federal, state, and local regulations pertaining to work practices, hauling, disposal, and protection of workers, visitors to the site, and persons occupying areas adjacent to the site. The Contractor is responsible for providing medical examinations and maintaining medical records of personnel as required by the applicable federal, state, and local regulations. The Contractor shall hold the Owner and the Owner's Representative harmless for failure to comply with any applicable work,





- hauling, disposal, safety, health or other regulation on the part of itself, its employees, or its Sub-Contractors.
4. Federal requirements which govern asbestos abatement work or hauling and disposal of asbestos waste materials include but are not limited to the following regulations:
    - a. U.S. Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Administration, (OSHA), including but not limited to:
      - 1) U.S. Department of Labor, OSHA, including, but not limited to:
        - a) Occupational Exposure to Asbestos, Tremolite, Anthophyllite and Actinolite; Final Rules  
Title 29, Part 1910, Section 1001  
Part 1926, Section 1101 of the Code of Federal Regulations
        - b) Respiratory Protection  
Title 29, Part 1910, Section 134 of the Code of Federal Regulations
        - c) Construction Industry  
Title 29, Part 1926.1011, of the Code of Federal Regulation
        - d) Access to Employee Exposure and Medical Records  
Title 29, Part 1910, Section 2 of the Code of Federal Regulations
        - e) Hazard Communication  
Title 29, Part 1910, Section 1200 of the Code of Federal Regulations
        - f) Specifications for Accident Prevention Signs and Tags  
Title 29, Part 1910, Section 145 of the Code of Federal Regulations
      - 2) U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) including, but not limited to:
        - a) Asbestos Abatement Projects Rule  
40 CFR Part 762  
CPTS 62044, FRL 2843-9  
Federal Register, Vol. 50 No. 134, July 12, 1985  
P28530-28540
        - b) Regulation for Asbestos  
Title 40, Part 61, Subpart A of the Code of Federal Regulations
        - c) National Emission Standard for Asbestos  
Title 40, Part 61, Subpart M (Revised Subpart B) of the Code of Federal Regulations
      - 3) State requirements which govern asbestos abatement work and/or hauling and disposal of asbestos waste materials.
      - 4) Contractor shall abide by all local requirements which govern asbestos abatement work or hauling and disposal of asbestos waste materials including the following:
        - a) American National Standards Institute (ANSI)  
1430 Broadway  
New York, NY 10018  
(212) 354-3300
        - b) Fundamentals Governing the Design and Operation of Local Exhaust Systems  
Publication Z9.2-79
        - c) Practices for Respiratory Protection Publication Z288.2-80
        - d) American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)  
1916 Race Street  
Philadelphia, PA 19103  
(215) 299-5400
        - e) Specification for Encapsulants for Friable Asbestos-Containing Building Materials
        - f) Safety and Health Requirements Relating to Occupational Exposure to Asbestos

K. the Owner's Representative

1. the Owner's Representative is authorized by the Owner to perform the following:
  - a. Have free access to all asbestos work areas.



- b. To assist in interpretation of procedures.
- c. To advise on all provisions of the contract documents pertaining to the control of asbestos.
- d. To stop work if, in the course of performing their monitoring duties, an instance of substantial nonconformance with the contract documents is observed.
- e. To stop work if a situation presenting a health hazard to workers or the Owner's employees or occupants of the building is observed.
- f. To act as the Owner's liaison in technical matters involving the asbestos-related work.
- g. To perform air sampling inside and outside the asbestos work area during the project. The Contractor shall cooperate fully with the Owner's Representative, its agents and employees, and ensure cooperation of its workers during collection of air samples and work area inspections.
- h. the Owner's Representative role in advising the Owner on environmental health matters does not relieve the Contractor's obligation to comply with all applicable health and safety regulations. Air monitoring results generated by the Owner's Representative shall not be used by the Contractor to represent compliance with regulatory agency requirements for monitoring of worker's exposure to airborne asbestos, nor shall any other activity on the part of the Owner's Representative represent the Contractor's compliance with applicable health and safety regulations.

L. Pre-Construction Conference

1. An initial progress meeting recognized as "Pre-Construction Conference" shall be held prior to start of any work. Contractor shall meet at project site, with General Superintendent, the Owner, the Owner's Representative, and other entities concerned with asbestos abatement work. Record discussions and agreements and furnish copy to each participant. Provide at least 72 hours advance notice to all participants prior to convening Pre-Construction Conference.
2. This is an organizational meeting, to review responsibilities and personnel assignments, to locate the containment and decontamination areas; and temporary facilities including power, light, water, etc.
3. Submit waivers on forms, and executed in a manner acceptable to the Owner. Administrative requirements that must proceed or coincide with Contractor's submittal for final payment shall consist of the following:
  - a. Completion of project closeout requirements.
  - b. Completion of items specified for completion beyond time of Final Completion (regardless of whether special payment application was previously made).
  - c. Assurance, satisfactory to the Owner, that unsettled claims will be settled and that work not actually completed and accepted will be completed without undue delay.
  - d. Transmittal of required project construction records to the Owner.
  - e. Landfill receipts for all asbestos-containing material.
  - f. Proof, satisfactory to the Owner, that taxes, fees and similar obligations of Contractor have been paid.
  - g. Removal of temporary facilities, services, surplus materials, rubbish and similar elements.
  - h. Consent of surety for final payment.

M. Project Closeout

1. Project closeout is the term used to describe certain collective project requirements that indicate completion of the work to be fulfilled near the end of the contract time. Also, in preparation for final acceptance of the work by the Owner, as well as, final payment to the Contractor and the normal termination of the Contract.
2. Include supporting documentation for completion as indicated in these contract documents.
3. Submit a statement on accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
4. Advise the Owner of pending insurance change-over requirements.
5. Submit specific warranties, workmanship and maintenance bonds, maintenance agreements, final certifications and similar documents.



6. Obtain and submit releases enabling the Owner's full, unrestricted use of the work area and access to services and utilities. Where required, include occupancy permits, operating certificates and similar releases.
7. Results of the completed inspection will form the initial "punch-list" for final acceptance.
8. A complete record, certified by the testing laboratory, of all personal air monitoring results.
9. Complete the following cleaning operations as outlined in Paragraph "Decontamination Procedures" before requesting the Owner's Representative inspection for certification of Final Completion.
  - a. Remove exposed labels in finished spaces which are not required as permanent labels on materials supplied as part of the work, except for "Asbestos", "Asbestos Free", or Thermal Insulation Labels specified elsewhere.
  - b. Clean transparent materials, affected by the work including mirrors and window/door glass, to a polished condition, removing substances which are noticeably vision-obscuring materials. Replace broken glass and damaged transparent materials.
  - c. Clean exposed hard-surfaced finishes affected by the work, to a dirt-free condition, free of dust, stains, films and similar distracting substances. Except as otherwise indicated, avoid disturbance of natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to original reflective condition.
  - d. Clean plumbing fixtures affected by the work to a sanitary condition, free of stains including those resulting from water exposure.
  - e. Replace all HVAC filters using materials supplied by the Owner or clean non-replaceable filters after minimum of two days of operation of HVAC equipment.
  - f. Clean light fixtures and lamps, which have been affected by the work so as to function with full efficiency. Replace lamps where inoperable.
  - g. Repair any damage to wall, ceiling and floor surfaces caused by installation and removal of the polyethylene sheeting.

N. Personnel Protection

1. Prior to commencement of work, the workers shall be instructed and be knowledgeable in the areas described in Paragraph "Submittals and Notices" having to do with employees.
2. Worker Protection - shall comply with 29 CFR 1910.134 (Respiratory Protection).
  - a. Because there is no known safe level of exposure to asbestos, it is prudent to reduce worker's exposures to as low a level as possible. Proper respiratory protection is critical in minimizing exposure.
  - b. Workers shall be provided, as a minimum, with personally issued and marked respirators equipped with high efficiency particulate filters approved by NIOSH to be worn in the designated work area and/or whenever a potential exposure to asbestos exists. Sufficient filters shall be provided for replacement as required by the workers or applicable regulations. Disposable respirators shall not be used.
  - c. No worker shall be exposed to levels greater than 0.01 f/cc as determined by the protection factor of the respirator worn and the work area fiber levels.
  - d. Whenever powered purifying respirator protection is used, a sufficient supply of replacement batteries and HEPA filter cartridges shall be provided to the workers.
  - e. Air monitoring required by OSHA is work of the Contractor and not covered in this specification. Contractor shall post, on a daily basis, results of the air monitoring results from the previous shift. A complete record, certified by the testing laboratory, of all personal air monitoring tests and results will be furnished to the Owner and the Owner's Representative prior to Contractor's Request for Final Payment.
  - f. During encapsulation operations or usage of other organic base aerosols (e.g., spray glue, expanding foam), workers shall be provided with combination cartridges consisting of organic vapor and HEPA sections.
  - g. Workers shall be provided with sufficient sets of protective full-body clothing to be worn in the designated work area and/or whenever potential exposure to asbestos exists. Such clothing shall include, but not be limited to, full-body coveralls, headgear and gloves. Workers shall assure that hoods covering their hair are worn in the designated work areas



- at all times. Eye protection and hard hats shall be provided as required by applicable safety regulations. Eye protection shall be worn during encapsulation operations. Non-disposable type protective clothing and footwear shall be left in the work area until the end of the asbestos abatement work, at which time such items will be disposed of as asbestos waste.
- h. Non-skid footwear shall be provided to all abatement workers. Disposable clothing shall be adequately sealed to the footwear to prevent body contamination.
  - i. Protective clothing shall not be worn in lieu of street clothing outside the work area.
  - j. Visitor Clothing: The Contractor shall provide authorized visitors with suitable respirator, protective clothing, headgear, eye protection, and footwear as described herein, whenever they enter the work area.
3. Decontamination and Work Procedures: The decontamination and work procedures to be followed by workers shall be posted as described in these specifications.
  4. Worker and Authorized Visitor Protection Procedures:
    - a. Each worker and authorized visitor shall, upon entering the job site, remove street clothes in a designated clean change area and put on a respirator with new filters and clean protective clothing before entering the work area.
    - b. The Contractor's employees shall perform a positive/negative respirator fit test each time it enters the work area. If leakage occurs, the respirator must be re-adjusted or replaced.
    - c. Workers shall maintain their respirators in a safe operating condition. The condition of respirators shall be checked daily.
    - d. Workers and visitors shall complete the decontamination procedures as outlined in the specification upon exiting the work area.
    - e. Workers shall not eat, drink, smoke, or chew gum or tobacco in or near the asbestos work areas.
    - f. Workers shall be fully protected with respirators and protective clothing immediately prior to the first disturbance of asbestos-containing or contaminated materials and until final cleanup is completed.
- O. Air Monitoring
1. The airborne fiber counts outside the work area will be monitored to detect faults in the work area isolation such as contamination of the building outside of the work areas with airborne asbestos fibers, failure of filtration or rupture in the negative pressure system. Should any of the above occur, the Contractor shall immediately cease asbestos abatement activities until the fault is corrected. Work shall not recommence until authorized by the Owner's Representative. In the case of mini-enclosures the Owner's Representative will monitor air in a remote location of the residence to determine the baseline of asbestos.
  2. The airborne fiber counts in the work area will be monitored. The purpose of this air monitoring will be to detect airborne fiber counts which may significantly challenge the ability of the work area isolation procedures to protect the balance of the building or outside of the building from contamination by airborne fibers. In the case of mini-enclosures the Owner's representative may monitor air outside of several enclosures if they are in close proximity.
  3. Contractor shall maintain an average airborne count inside the work area of less than 0.5 f/cc. If the fiber counts rise above this figure for any sample taken, revise work procedures to lower fiber counts. If the TWA fiber count for any work shift or eight-hour period exceeds 0.5 f/cc, stop all work, leave pressure differential system in operation and notify the Owner's Representative. Do not recommence work until authorized in writing by the Owner's Representative.
  4. If airborne fiber counts exceed 1.0 f/cc for any period of time cease all work until fiber counts fall below 0.5 f/cc and notify the Owner's Representative. Do not recommence work until authorized in writing by the Owner's Representative.
  5. If any air sample taken outside of the work area exceeds the 0.01 f/cc of air, Contractor shall immediately and automatically stop all work. If this air sample was taken inside the building and outside of critical barriers around the work area, immediately erect new critical barriers to isolate the affected area from the balance of the building. Erect Critical Barriers at the next existing structural isolation of the involved space (e.g., wall, ceiling, and floor). Leave Critical Barriers in



- place until completion of work and insure that the operation of the negative pressure system in the work area results in a flow of air from the balance of the building into the affected area.
6. If the exit from the clean room of the personnel decontamination unit enters the affected area, establish a temporary decontamination facility consisting of a shower room and changing room. After cleaning and decontamination of the affected area remove the shower room and leave the changing room in place as an air lock.
  7. After certification of visual inspection in the work area, remove critical barriers separating the work area from the affected area. Final air samples will be taken within the entire area.
  8. The following procedure will be used to resolve any disputes regarding fiber types when a project has been stopped due to excessive airborne fiber counts. "Airborne Fibers" referred to above include all fibers regardless of composition as counted in the Phase Contrast Microscopy (PCM) NIOSH 7400 Method procedures. If work has stopped due to high airborne fiber counts, air samples will be secured in the same area by the Owner's Representative for analysis by electron microscopy. "Airborne fibers" counted in samples analyzed by Scanning or Transmission Electron Microscopy (TEM) shall be only asbestos fibers, but of any diameter and length. Subsequent to analysis by Electron Microscopy the number of airborne fibers shall be determined by multiplying the number of fibers, regardless of composition, counted by the PCM NIOSH 7400 Method procedure by a number equal to asbestos fibers counted divided by all fibers counted in the electron microscopy analysis.
  9. If electron microscopy is used to arrive at the basis for determining airborne fiber counts in accordance with the above paragraph, and if the average of airborne asbestos fibers in all samples taken exceeds 0.1 f/cc, or if any one sample exceeds 0.2 f/cc, then the cost of such analysis will be born by the Contractor, at no additional cost to the Owner.
  10. the Owner's Representative will secure at least the following air samples to establish a base line before start of work involving large enclosures:

Location Sampled	Number of Samples	Analysis Method	Detection Limit f/cc	Minimum Volume Liters	Rate LPM
Each Work Area	1	PCM	0.01	1,900	2-16
Outside Each Work Area	1-3	PCM	0.01	1,900	2-16

11. Base Line is an action level expressed in f/cc, which is ten percent greater than the largest of the following:
  - a. Average of the samples collected on cellulose ester filters outside each work area.
  - b. Average of the samples collected on cellulose ester filters outside the building.
  - c. 0.01 fibers per cubic centimeter.
12. Daily: From start of work of Paragraph "Temporary Enclosure" through the work of Paragraph "Project Decontamination," the Owner may be taking the following samples on a daily basis. The location of each air sample will be determined by the Owner's Representative.
  - a. Baseline
  - b. Work Area
13. For larger enclosures samples will be collected on 25 mm cassettes with the following filter media:
 

PCM: 0.8 micrometer mixed cellulose ester.

Location Sampled	Number of Samples	Analysis Method	Detection Limit f/cc	Minimum Volume Liters	Rate LPM
Each Work Area	2	PCM	0.01	1,900 as required by conditions	2-16
Outside Each Work Area Critical Barrier	1	PCM	0.01	1,900	2-16
Clean Room	1	PCM	0.01	1,900	2-16
Equip Decon	1	PCM	0.01	1,900	2-16



14. Additional samples may be taken at the Owner or the Owner's Representative discretion. If airborne fiber counts exceed allowed limits, additional samples will be taken as necessary to monitor fiber levels.
15. The services of a testing laboratory will be employed by the Owner to perform laboratory analysis of the air samples. Samples will be sent daily so that verbal reports on air samples can be obtained in a timely manner. A complete record, certified by the testing laboratory, of all air monitoring tests and results will be furnished to the Owner's Representative, the Owner and the Contractor.
16. Air samples may be analyzed on site by the Owner's Representative, if they are to be analyzed by the NIOSH 7400 Method.
17. Cellulose ester filters will be analyzed using the PCM NIOSH 7400 Method. Thus analysis will be carried out at a laboratory located off the job site.
18. At the completion of the work in occupied areas and prior to the dismantling of the isolation system, final air clearance will be conducted by the Owner's Representative.
19. Decontamination of the work area will be considered complete when all samples indicate fiber levels are less than 0.01 f/cc of air as analyzed by PCM NIOSH 7400 Method or an average of less than 70 structures per square millimeter of filter area as analyzed by TEM; Level II AHERA Method.
20. The Contractor may conduct its own air monitoring and laboratory testing. If it elects to do this the cost of such air monitoring and laboratory testing shall be included in the Contract Sum.

P. Equipment Removal Procedures

1. Clean all external surfaces of contaminated waste containers and equipment thoroughly by wet sponging or HEPA vacuuming before moving such items into the equipment decontamination enclosure system washroom for final cleaning and removal to uncontaminated areas. Ensure that personnel do not leave the work areas through the equipment decontamination enclosure system.

Q. Disposal Activities

1. It is the responsibility of the Contractor to comply with current federal, state and local regulations concerning the waste handling, transportation, and disposal of asbestos-containing material (ACM) and accompanying solvents or residues.
2. The Contractor will document actual disposal of the waste at the designated landfill by completing Disposal Certificate or submitting proof of landfill receipt.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials

1. All Contractor's equipment delivered to the site shall be free of asbestos contamination.
2. Store all materials subject to damage off the ground, away from wet or damp surfaces, and under cover sufficient to prevent damage or contamination.
3. Damaged or deteriorating materials shall not be used and shall be removed from the premises. Materials that become contaminated shall be disposed of in accordance with applicable regulations.
4. Polyethylene flame retardant sheet of 6-mil thickness shall be used unless otherwise specified. Polyethylene sheeting shall be sized to minimize the frequency of joints. Polyethylene sheeting must satisfy the National Fire Prevention Association Standard 701, "Small Scale Fire Test for Flame Resistant Textile and Film."
5. Adhesive tape shall be capable of sealing joints of adjacent sheets of polyethylene and for use in attachment of polyethylene sheet to finished or unfinished surfaces of similar materials and shall be capable of adhering under dry and wet conditions, including use of amended water. Contractor shall use adhesive tape compatible with finished surfaces.



6. Protective devices such as, but not limited to, disposable clothing, respirators, gloves, hard hats, etc. shall be used.
7. Wetting agent shall be a mixture of 50/50 polyoxyethylene ether and polyglycol ester or equivalent commercial product.
8. Encapsulant materials shall be the bridging and penetrating type and conform with the following characteristics:
  - a. Encapsulants shall not be solvent-based or utilize a hydrocarbon in the liquid in which the solid parts of the encapsulant are suspended.
  - b. Encapsulant shall not be flammable.
9. A non-hardening lagging sealer for enclosing and sealing raw exposed edges and surfaces of asbestos-containing materials.
10. Pre-mixed or job mixed insulating plaster manufactured for use on plumbing equipment shall be used when repairing damaged thermal insulation material.
11. Non-woven fibrous glass mat and open weave glass fiber mat cloth for repair of thermal systems insulation.
12. Fire retardant sealant shall prevent fire, smoke, water and toxic fumes from penetrating through sealants. Sealant shall have a flame spread, smoke and fuel contribution of zero, and shall be ASTM and Underwriter's Laboratory (UL) rated for three hours for standard method of fire test for fire stop systems.

B. Tools And Equipment

1. Provide suitable tools for repair and encapsulation of asbestos-containing materials and for removal of asbestos-containing materials that are beyond repair. Wire brushes shall not be used as a means of removing or cleaning asbestos-containing materials from surfaces, if they are used as the surface is being sprayed with water or amended water.
2. Provide sufficient number of HEPA-filtered vacuum cleaners equipped with pick-up adapters, steel floor wands, crevice tools, and carpet tools.
3. Airless sprayers capable of spraying amended water shall be provided in sufficient number to allow continuous uninterrupted work.
4. Asbestos filtration devices shall utilize high efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filtration systems.
5. Transportation equipment, as required, shall be suitable for loading, temporary storage, and unloading of contaminated waste without exposure to persons or property, and shall be quiet in motion if used within the building.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Safety Procedures For Power And Lighting

1. The use of wet methods for removal, repair, encapsulation or cleaning procedures increases the potential for electrical shock when working around electrical panels, conduit, light fixtures, alarm systems, junction boxes, transformers, etc. In coordination with the Owner, de-energize as much electrical equipment as possible to prevent electrical shock to employees performing the work. The Contractor shall use the following precautions:
  - a. Use non-conductive tools and vacuum attachments.
  - b. Utilize "hot line" covers over energized cables and power lines when possible.
  - c. Ensure all electrical equipment in use is properly grounded before the job starts. Check outlets, wiring, extension cords and power pickups.
  - d. Avoid stringing wiring across floors. Elevate wiring if possible.
  - e. Ensure electrical outlets are tightly sealed and taped to avoid water spray.
  - f. Determine operating voltages of equipment and lines before working on or near energized parts.
  - g. Energized parts must be insulated or guarded from employee contact and other conductive objects. Extension cords must be three-wire type and connected to a Ground Fault Interrupter (GFI) circuit.
  - h. Lock or secure de-energized circuits at panel and post warning signs.



- i. Seal heating vents with two layers of polyethylene sheeting prior to the start of work. The Contractor shall repair any damage caused by Contractor's operations to duct work, grilles, dampers, louvers or HVAC equipment at the completion of the work at Contractor's expense. Coordinate all lock out and or de-energizing with the Owner.

B. Temporary Facilities

1. Use qualified tradesmen for installation of temporary services and facilities. Locate temporary services and facilities where they will serve the entire project adequately and result in minimum interference with the performance of the work and operations of the building. Coordinate all installations and shut downs with building owner.
2. Relocate, modify and extend services and facilities as required during the course of work so as to accommodate the entire work of the project.
3. Provide new or used materials and equipment that are undamaged and in serviceable condition. Provide only materials and equipment that are recognized as being suitable for the intended use, by compliance with appropriate standards.
4. During the erection and/or moving of scaffolding, care must be exercised so that the polyethylene floor covering is not damaged.
5. Clean, as necessary, debris from non-slip surfaces.
6. At the completion of abatement work, clean all construction aids within the work area, wrap in one layer of 6-mil polyethylene sheet and seal before removal from the work area.
7. Temporary water service connections to the Owner's water system shall include back flow protection. Valves shall be temperature and pressure rated for operation of the temperatures and pressures encountered.
8. Employ heavy-duty abrasion-resistant hoses with a pressure rating 50 percent greater than the maximum pressure of the water distribution system to provide water into each work area and to each Decontamination Unit. Provide fittings as required to allow for connection to existing wall hydrants or spouts, as well as temporary water heating equipment, branch piping, showers, shut-off nozzles and equipment.
9. Electrical Services shall comply with applicable NEMA, NECA and UL standards and governing regulations for materials and layout of temporary electric service.
10. Provide a weatherproof, grounded temporary electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics to accommodate performance of work during the construction period. Install temporary lighting adequate to provide sufficient illumination for safe work and traffic conditions in every area of work.
11. Provide receptacle outlets equipped with ground fault interrupters, reset button and pilot light, for plug-in connection of power tools and equipment.
12. Use only grounded extension cords; use "hard-service" cords where exposed to abrasion and traffic. Use single lengths or use waterproof connectors to connect separate lengths of electric cords, if single lengths will not reach areas of work. All cords shall be elevated off the floor inside the containment area.
13. Temporary wiring in the work area shall be type UL non-metallic sheathed cable located overhead and exposed for surveillance. Do not wire temporary lighting with plain, exposed (insulated) electrical conductors. Provide liquid tight enclosures or boxes for wiring devices.
14. Provide Type "A" fire extinguishers for temporary offices and similar spaces where there is minimal danger of electrical or grease-oil-flammable liquid fires. In other locations provide type "ABC" dry chemical extinguishers, or a combination of several extinguishers of NFPA recommended types for the exposures in each case.
15. Use of the Owner's existing toilet facilities, as indicated, will be permitted, so long as these facilities are properly cleaned and maintained in a condition acceptable to the Owner. At Final Completion, restore these facilities to the condition prevalent at the time of initial use. All provisions of these specifications regarding leaving the work area must be met.
16. When mini-enclosures area being used all of the requirements above will be enforced by the Owner's Representative. The construction and set-up of the mini-enclosures may be done by the Abatement Contractor.





- C. Pressure Differential System
1. Before start of work Contractor shall submit design of pressure differential system to the Owner's Representative for review. Do not begin work until system has been approved by the Owner's Representative. Include in the submittal the following:
    - a. Number of pressure differential machines required and the calculations necessary to determine the number of machines.
    - b. Description of projected air-flow within work area and methods required to provide adequate air flow in all portions of the work area.
  2. If the enclosure is not a mini-enclosure, the Contractor must supply the required number of asbestos air filtration units to the site in accordance with these specifications. Each unit shall include the following:
    - a. Cabinet constructed of steel or other durable materials able to withstand damage from rough handling and transportation. The width of the cabinet should be less than 30 inches to fit through standard-size doorways. Cabinet shall be factory sealed to prevent asbestos-containing dust from being released during use, transport, or maintenance. Access to and replacement of all air filters shall be from intake end. Unit shall be mounted on casters or wheels.
    - b. Rate capacity of fan according to useable air-moving capacity under actual operating conditions. Use centrifugal-type fan.
    - c. The final filter shall be the HEPA type. The filter media (folded into closely pleated panels) must be completely sealed on all edges with a structurally rigid frame.
    - d. A continuous rubber gasket shall be located between the filter and the filter housing to form a tight seal.
    - e. Provide HEPA Units that are individually tested and certified on site by an independent testing agency to have an efficiency of not less than 99.97 percent when challenged with 0.3 m dioctylphthlaate (DOP) particles when tested in accordance with Military Standard Number 2182 and Army Instruction Manual 136-300-175A. Provide filters that bear a UL586 label to indicate ability to perform under specified conditions.
    - f. Pre-filters, which protect the final filter by removing the larger particles, are required to prolong the operating life of the HEPA filter. Two stages of pre-filtration are required. The first-stage pre-filter shall be a low-efficiency type (e.g., for particles 10 microns and larger). The second-stage (or intermediate) filter shall have a medium efficiency (e.g., effective for particles down to 5 microns). Pre-filters and intermediate filters shall be installed either on or in the intake grid of the unit and held in place with special housings or clamps.
    - g. Each unit shall be equipped with a Magnahelic gauge or manometer to measure the pressure drop across filters and indicate when filters have become loaded and need to be changed. A table indicating the useable air-handling capacity for various static pressure readings on the Magnahelic gauge shall be affixed near the gauge for reference, or the Magnahelic reading indicating at what point the filters should be changed, noting Cubic Feet per Minute (CFM) air delivery at that point. Provide units equipped with an elapsed time meter to show the total accumulated hours of operation.
    - h. The unit shall have an electrical (or mechanical) lockout to prevent fan from operating without a HEPA filter. Units shall be equipped with automatic shutdown system to stop fan in the event of a major rupture in the HEPA filter or blocked air discharge. Warning lights are required to indicate normal operation, too high a pressure drop across the filters (i.e., filter overloading), and too low of a pressure drop (i.e., major rupture in HEPA filter or obstructed discharge).
    - i. Electrical components shall be approved by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) and Underwriters' Laboratories (UL). Each unit shall be equipped with overload protection sized for the equipment. The motor, fan, fan housing, and cabinet shall be grounded.
    - j. If a mini-enclosure is used the air filtration unit may be a HEPA filtered vacuum with a flow rate of at least 100 cubic feet per minute (CFM).
  3. Provide a fully operational pressure differential system within the work area maintaining continuously a pressure differential across work area enclosures of 0.02 inches of water for glove



- bag operations and mini-containments. Demonstrate to the Owner's Representative the pressure differential by use of pressure differential meter or a manometer, before disturbance of any asbestos-containing materials. In the case of a mini-enclosure visual evidence of pressure differential through the use of a smoke generation tube shall be sufficient as in paragraph C.13 of this section.
4. Continuously monitor and record the pressure differential between the work area and the building outside of the work area.
  5. Provide fully operational negative pressure systems supplying a minimum of one air change every ten minutes (six changes per hour), less in the instance of a mini-enclosure. Determine the volume in cubic feet of the work area by multiplying floor area by ceiling height. Determine total ventilation requirement in cubic feet per minute (cfm) for the work area by dividing this volume by the air change rate.
  6. Ventilation Required (CFM) = Volume of work area (cu. ft.)/10 min.
  7. Determine number of units needed to achieve ten-minute change rate by dividing the ventilation requirement (CFM) above capacity of exhaust unit(s) used. Capacity of a unit for purposes of this section is the capacity in cubic feet per minute with fully loaded filters (pressure differential which causes loaded filter warning light to come on) in the machines labeled operating characteristics.
  8. Add one additional unit as a backup in case of equipment failure or machine shutdown for filter changing.
  9. Locate exhaust unit(s) so that makeup air enters work area primarily through decontamination facilities and traverses work area as much as possible. This may be accomplished by positioning the unit(s) at a maximum distance from the worker access opening or other makeup air sources.
  10. Vent to outside of building, unless authorized in writing by the Owner's Representative.
  11. Each unit shall be serviced by a dedicated minimum 115v-20A circuit with overload device tied into an existing building electrical panel which has sufficient spare capacity to accommodate the load of all pressure differential units connected. Dedication of an existing circuit may be accomplished by shutting down existing loads on the circuit.
  12. Test pressure differential system before any asbestos-containing material is wetted or removed. After the work area has been prepared, the decontamination facility set up, and the exhaust unit(s) installed, start the unit(s) (one at a time). Demonstrate operation and testing of pressure differential system to the Owner's Representative.
  13. Demonstrate of operations of the pressure differential system to the Owner's Representative will include, but not be limited to, the following:
    - a. Plastic barriers and sheeting move lightly in toward work area.
    - b. Curtain of decontamination units move lightly in toward work area.
    - c. There is a noticeable movement of air through the decontamination unit. Use stroke tube to demonstrate air movement from clean room, and from equipment room to work area.
    - d. Use smoke tubes to demonstrate a positive motion of air across all area in which work is to be performed.
    - e. Use a differential pressure meter or manometer to demonstrate a pressure difference of at least 0.02 inches (as allowed) of water across every barrier separating the work area from the balance of the building or outside. This is not required in the case of a mini enclosure.
  14. Start exhaust units before beginning work (before any asbestos-containing material is disturbed). After abatement work has begun, run units continuously to maintain a constant negative pressure until decontamination of the work area is complete. Do not turn off units at the end of the work shift or when abatement operations temporarily stop.
  15. Do not shut down pressure differential system during encapsulating procedures, unless authorized by the Owner's Representative in writing. Start abatement work at a location farthest from the exhaust units and proceed toward them. If an electric power failure occurs, immediately stop all abatement work and do not resume until power is restored and exhaust units are operating again.
  16. At completion of abatement work, allow exhaust units to run as specified to remove airborne fibers that may have been generated during abatement work and cleanup and to purge the work area with clean makeup air. The units may be required to run for a longer time after decontamination, if



dry or only partially wetted asbestos material was encountered during any abatement work. In the case of a mini-enclosure the vacuum may be removed and the entrance sealed following encapsulation until the clearance sample is collected.

17. Prior to final air test, remove pre-filter and wipe out inside lip of negative air machine.
18. When a final inspection and the results of final air tests indicate that the area has been decontaminated, exhaust units may be removed from the work area. Before removal from the work area, remove and properly dispose of pre-filter, and seal Intake to the machine with 6-mil polyethylene to prevent environmental contamination from the filters.

D. Work Area Preparation

1. The work area is the location where asbestos-abatement work occurs. It is a variable of the extent of work of the contract. It may be a portion of a room, a single room, or a complex of rooms. A "work area" is considered contaminated during the work, and must be isolated from the balance of the building, and decontaminated at the completion of the asbestos-control work.
2. Pre-clean fixed objects, walls and floor surfaces within the proposed work areas using HEPA filtered vacuum equipment and wet cleaning methods as appropriate.
3. Seal all openings, supply and exhaust vents, and convectors within ten feet of the work area with 6-mil polyethylene sheeting secured and completely sealed with plastic adhesion tape.
4. Contact fire control agencies to review procedures prior to start of work.
5. Provide flame resistant polyethylene sheeting that conforms to requirements set forth by the National Fire Protection Association Standard 701, Small Scale Fire Test for Flame-resistant Textiles and Films. Provide largest size possible to minimize seams, four- or six- mils thick, frosted or black.
6. Provide spray adhesive in aerosol cans which is specifically formulated to stick tenaciously to sheet polyethylene and supporting surface.
7. Completely isolate the work area from other parts of the building so as to prevent asbestos-containing dust or debris from passing beyond the isolated area. Should the area beyond the work area(s) become contaminated with asbestos-containing dust or debris as a consequence of the work, clean those areas in accordance with the procedures indicated in Paragraph "Decontamination Procedures." All such required cleaning or decontamination shall be performed at no additional cost to the Owner.
8. Place all tools (i.e., scaffolding, staging) necessary for the work in the area to be isolated prior to erection of plastic sheeting temporary enclosure.
9. Disable ventilation systems or any other system bringing air into or out of the work area. Disable system by disconnecting wires, removing circuit breakers, by lockable switch or other positive means that will prevent accidental premature restarting of equipment.
10. Remove and dispose of all electrical and mechanical items, such as lighting fixtures, clocks, diffusers, registers, escutcheon plates, etc., which cover any part of the surface on which work is to be performed.
11. All general construction items such as cabinets, casework, doors and window trim, moldings, ceilings, trim, etc., which cover the surface of the work as required to prevent interference with the work. To be performed by the Owner: clean, decontaminate and reinstall all such materials, upon completion of all removal work with materials, finishes, and workmanship to match existing installations before start of work.
12. Permit Access to the work area only through the Decontamination Unit. All other means of access shall be closed off and sealed and warning signs displayed on the clean side of the sealed access.
13. Provide Warning Signs at each visual and physical barriers reading as follows in both English and Spanish:

<u>Legend</u>	<u>Notation</u>
KEEP OUT	3" Sans Serif Gothic or Block
BEYOND THIS POINT	1" Sans Serif Gothic or Block
ASBESTOS ABATEMENT WORK	1" Sans Serif Gothic or Block



IN PROGRESS  
BREATHING ASBESTOS DUST MAY BE  
HAZARDOUS TO YOUR HEALTH

1" Sans Serif Gothic or Block  
14 Point Gothic

14. Alternate methods of containing the work area may be submitted to the Owner's Representative for approval. Do not proceed with any such method(s) without prior written approval of the Owner's Representative.
15. Individually seal all ventilation openings (supply and exhaust), lighting fixtures, clocks, doorways, windows, convectors and speakers, and other openings into the work area with plastic adhesion tape alone or with polyethylene sheeting at least 4-mil in thickness, taped securely in place with plastic adhesion tape. Maintain seal until all work including Project Decontamination is completed. Take care in sealing off lighting fixtures to avoid melting or burning of sheeting.
16. Provide sheet plastic barriers at least 6-mil in thickness as required to completely seal openings from the work area into adjacent areas. Seal the perimeter of all sheet plastic barriers with plastic adhesion tape or spray cement.
17. Where applicable, construct framing of the containment out of fire treated wood or aluminum studs. Mini-enclosure frames may be constructed of Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) tubing.
18. Cover all walls in work area extending to the underside of the ceiling grid system with one layer of polyethylene sheeting, at least 6-mil in thickness, mechanically supported and sealed with plastic adhesion tape or spray-glue in the same manner as "Critical Barrier" sheet plastic barriers. Tape all joints with plastic adhesion tape. Contractor shall be responsible for repair of damaged wall finishes.
19. Cover floor with two layers of 6-mil polyethylene sheeting (exclude for floor tile and adhesive).
20. Provide Pressure Differential System per Paragraph "Pressure Differential System."
21. If the enclosure barrier is breached in any manner that could allow the passage of asbestos debris or airborne fibers, then add the affected area to the work area, enclose it as required by this section of the specification and decontaminate it as described in Paragraph "Decontamination Procedures."
22. Establishing a Mini-Containment area:
  - a. Establish work area so that unauthorized entry is prevented; Construct a two-compartment fire treated wood frame around work area; install one layer 6-mil polyethylene sheeting to structural members and two layers 6 mil polyethylene sheeting to the floor. Exception: no floor required if mini-containment is being constructed to perform a floor tile activity. Seal all edges to wall, ceiling, and floor surfaces with duct tape. Install viewing inspection windows, where feasible.
  - b. Seal all penetrations with duct tape such as pipes, electrical conduit, or ducts contained within the mini-containment.
  - c. Install triple 6-mil polyethylene flaps at both doorways. Place portable sprayer with clean water, disposable towels, and pre-labeled disposal bag in air lock.
  - d. Install appropriate signs on outside of mini-containment area.
  - e. Install HEPA vacuum; extend hose into mini-containment area for general vacuuming, negative air, and cleaning of disposal suit.
  - f. Accumulate all loose materials for disposal. Place in approved container. Apply appropriate labels. Adequately wet clean all wall, floor, tool and equipment surfaces.
  - g. Abatement worker must wear two disposable suits. Remove outer suit in work area and place in a plastic bag. Enter air lock.
  - h. In air lock, wet wipe respirator and wash hands with clean water. Remove respirator and place in a clean plastic bag. Proceed to remote shower unit where inner suit may be removed.

#### E. Worker Protection

1. This section describes the equipment and procedures required for protecting workers against asbestos contamination and other work place hazards except for respiratory protection.
2. Respiratory Protection is specified in Paragraph "Respiratory Protection."



3. Train in accordance with EPA's Model Accreditation Plan, 40 CFR 763 - Asbestos, all workers in the dangers inherent in handling asbestos and breathing asbestos dust and in proper work procedures and personal and area protective measures. Include but do not limit the topics covered in the course to the following:
  - a. Methods of recognizing asbestos.
  - b. Health effects associated with asbestos.
  - c. Relationship between smoking and asbestos in producing lung cancer.
  - d. Nature of operations that could result in exposure to asbestos.
4. Importance of and instruction in the use of necessary protective controls, practices and procedures to minimize exposure including:

Engineering controls  
Work practices  
Respirators  
Housekeeping procedures  
Hygiene facilities  
Protective clothing  
Decontamination procedures  
Emergency procedures  
Waste disposal procedures  
Appropriate work practices for the work  
Requirements of medical surveillance program  
Review of OSHA 29 CFR 1926.1101(k)(9)(viii)(G) - Asbestos  
Pressure differential systems  
Work practices including hands on or on job training  
Personal decontamination procedures  
Air monitoring, personal and area

5. Provide medical examinations for all workers who may encounter an airborne fiber level of 0.1 f/cc or greater for an 8 hour time weighted average. In the absence of specific airborne fiber data, provide medical examination for all workers who will enter the work area for any reason. Examination shall, at minimum, meet OSHA requirements as set forth in 29 CFR 1926.1101(k)(9)(viii)(G) - Asbestos. In addition, provide an evaluation of the individual's ability to work in environments capable of producing heat stress in the worker.
6. Before start of work Contractor shall submit the following to the Owner's Representative for review. Do not start work until receipt of the Owner's Representative.
  - a. An original signed copy of the Certificate of Worker's Acknowledgement found at the end of this specification, for each worker who is to be at the job site or enter the work area.
  - b. Courses outline or name of institution providing the worker training course.
  - c. Report from medical examination conducted within last 12 months as part of compliance with OSHA medical surveillance requirements for each worker who is to enter the work area.
7. Provide disposable full-body coveralls and disposable head covers, and require that they be worn by all workers in the work area. Provide a sufficient number for all required changes, for all workers in the work area.
8. Provide work boots with non-skid soles, and where required by OSHA, foot protectives, for all workers. Provide boots at no cost to workers. Paint uppers of all boots red with water proof enamel. Do not allow boots to be removed from the work area for any reason, after being contaminated with asbestos-containing material. Dispose of boots as asbestos contaminated waste at the end of the work.
9. Provide head protectives (hard hats) as required by OSHA for all workers, and provide four spares for use by the Owner's Representative, and the Owner. Label hats with same warning labels as used on disposal bags. Require hard hats to be worn at all times that work is in progress that may potentially cause head injury. Provide hard hats with plastic strap type suspension. Require hats



to remain in the work area throughout the work. Thoroughly clean, decontaminate and bag hats before removing them from work area at the end of the work.

10. Provide eye protectives (goggles) as required by OSHA for all workers involved in scraping, spraying, or any other activity which may potentially cause eye injury.
11. Provide work gloves to all workers and require that they be worn at all times in the work area. Do not remove gloves from work area. Dispose of gloves as asbestos contaminated waste at the end of the work.
12. Respirators, disposable coveralls, head covers, and footwear covers shall be provided by the contractor for the Owner, the Owner's Representative, and other authorized representatives who may inspect the job site.
13. Provide worker protection as required by the most stringent OSHA and/or EPA standards applicable to the work. The following procedures are minimums to be adhered to regardless of fiber count in the work area.
14. Each time work is entered, remove all street clothes in the changing room of the Personnel Decontamination Unit and put on new disposable coverall, new head cover, and a clean respirator. Proceed through shower room to equipment room and put on work boots.
15. In the event a mini-enclosure is used refer to Paragraph "Work Area Preparation" for personal decontamination procedures.

#### F. Respiratory Protection

1. Instruct and train each worker involved in asbestos abatement or maintenance and repair of friable asbestos-containing materials in proper respiratory use and require that each worker always wear a respirator, properly fitted on the face in the work area from the start of any operation which may cause airborne asbestos fibers until the work area is completely decontaminated. Use respiratory protection appropriate for the fiber level encountered in the work place or as required for other toxic or oxygen-deficient situations encountered.
2. Except to the extent that more stringent requirements are written directly into the Contract Documents, the following regulations and standards have the same force and effect (and are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference) as if copied directly into the Contract Documents, or as if published copies were bound herewith. Where there is a conflict in requirements set forth in these regulations and standards meet the more stringent requirement.
  - a. OSHA - U.S. Department of Labor Occupational Safety and Health Administration, Safety and Health Standards 29 CFR 1910, Section 1001 and Section 1910.134.29 CFR 1926.
  - b. ANSI - American National Standard Practices for Respiratory Protection. ANSI Z88.2-1980.
  - c. NIOSH - National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health.
  - d. MSHA - Mine Safety and Health Administration.

#### G. Type Of Respiratory Protection Required

1. Provide Respiratory Protection as indicated in paragraph below. Where paragraph below does not apply, determine the proper level of protection by dividing the expected or actual airborne fiber count in the work area by the "protection factors" given below. The level of respiratory protection which supplies an airborne fiber level inside the respirator, at the breathing zone of the wearer, at or below 0.01 fibers/cubic centimeter is the minimum level of protection allowed.
2. Eight-hour Time Weighted Average (TWA) of asbestos fibers to which any worker may be exposed shall not exceed 0.1 fibers/cubic centimeter.
3. For purposes of this section fibers are defined as all fibers regardless of composition as counted in the OSHA Reference Method (ORM), NIOSH P&CAM 239 or 7400 procedure, or asbestos fibers of any size as counted using either a scanning or transmission electron microscope.
4. Require that respiratory protection be used at all times that there is any possibility of disturbance of asbestos-containing materials whether intentional or accidental.
5. Require that a respirator be worn by anyone in a work area at all times, regardless of activity, during a period that starts with any operation which could cause airborne fibers until the area has been cleared for re-occupancy.



## H. Respiratory Protection Factor

<u>Respirator Type</u>	<u>Protection Factor</u>
Air purifying: Negative pressure respirator High efficiency filter Half facepiece	10
Air purifying: Negative pressure respirator High efficiency filter Full facepiece	50
Powered-air purifying (PAPR): Positive pressure respirator High efficiency filter Half or Full facepiece	100
Type C supplied air: Positive pressure respirator continuous-flow Half or full facepiece	100
Type C supplied air: Positive pressure respirator pressure demand Full facepiece	1000
Type C supplied air: Positive pressure respirator pressure demand Full facepiece Equipped with an auxiliary positive pressure Self-contained breathing apparatus (SCBA)	over 1000
Self-contained breathing apparatus (SCBA): Positive Pressure respirator Pressure demand Full facepiece	over 1000

## I. Air Purifying Respirator

1. Provide half face or full face type respirators. Equip full-face respirators with a nose cup or other anti-fogging device as would be appropriate for use in air temperatures less than 32 degrees Fahrenheit.
2. Provide, at a minimum, HEPA type filters labeled with NIOSH and MSHA certification for "Radionuclides, Radon Daughters, Dust, Fumes, Mists including Asbestos-Containing Dusts and Mists" and color coded in accordance with ANSI Z228.2 (1980). In addition, a chemical cartridge section may be added, if required, for solvents, etc., in use. In this case, provide cartridges that have each section of the combination canister labeled with the appropriate color code and NIOSH/MSHA Certification.
3. Supply with a sufficient quantity of respirator filters approved for asbestos, so that workers can change filters during the work day. Require that respirators be wet-rinsed, and filters discarded, each time a worker leaves the work area. Require that new filters be installed each time a worker re-enters the work area. Store respirators and filters at the job site in the changing room and protect totally from exposure to asbestos prior to their use. Do not use single use, disposable or quarterface respirators.



- J. Powered Air Purifying Respirator (PAPR)
1. Provide full-facepiece type respirators. Provide nose-cups for full-facepiece respirators. Provide, at a minimum, HEPA type cartridges approved by NIOSH/MSHA and certified for use in atmospheres containing asbestos dusts.
  2. Provide, at a minimum, one extra battery pack for each respirator so that one can be charging while one is in use.
  3. Provide non-cloth belts capable of being decontaminated in shower.
  4. Supply with a sufficient quantity of high efficiency respirator filters approved for asbestos so that workers can change filters at any time that flow through the face piece decreases to the level at which the manufacturer recommends filter replacement. Require that regardless of flow, filter cartridges be replaced after 40 hours of use. Require that HEPA elements in filter cartridges be protected from wetting during showering. Require entire exterior housing of respirator including blower unit, filter cartridges, hoses, battery pack, face mask, belt, and cords to be washed each time a worker leaves the work area. Caution should be used to avoid shorting battery pack during washing.
- K. Required Respiratory Protection
1. Regardless of airborne fiber levels, require the following minimum level of respiratory protection:
    - a. Half-face air purifying respirators may be used during set-up of the containment and removal of the material so long as fiber counts inside the respirator do not exceed .01 f/cc fibers per cubic centimeter.
- L. Decontamination Units -Three-Stage
1. Provide a Personnel Decontamination Unit consisting of a serial arrangement of rooms or spaces, Changing Room, Shower Room, Equipment Room adjacent to each full containment area.
  2. Require all persons without exception to pass through this decontamination unit for entry into and exiting from the work area for any purpose. Do not remove equipment or materials through Personnel Decontamination Unit.
  3. Changing (Clean) Room:
    - a. Provide a room that is physically and visually separated from the rest of the building for the purpose of changing into protective clothing.
    - b. Locate so that access to work area from changing room is through shower room.
    - c. Separate changing room from the building by a double-sheeted polyethylene flapped doorway.
    - d. Provide sub-panel at changing room to accommodate all removal equipment. Power sub-panel directly from a building electrical panel. Connect all electrical branch circuits in decontamination unit and particularly any pumps in shower room to a ground-fault circuit protection device.
  4. Shower Room:
    - a. Provide a completely water tight operational shower to be used for transit by cleanly dressed workers heading for the work area from the changing room, or for showering by workers headed out of the work area after undressing in the equipment room.
    - b. Construct room by providing a shower pan and two shower walls in a configuration that will cause water running down walls to drip into pan. Install a freely draining wood floor in shower pan at elevation of top of pan.
    - c. Separate this room from rest of building, drying room and airlock with airtight walls fabricated of 6-mil polyethylene.
    - d. Provide splash proof entrances to Drying Room and Airlock.
  5. Equipment Room (contaminated area):
    - a. Require work equipment, footwear and additional contaminated work clothing to be left here. This is a change and transit area for workers. Separate this room from the work area by a 6-mil polyethylene flap doorway.
    - b. Separate this room from the rest of the building, the shower room and work area with air tight walls fabricated of 6-mil polyethylene.





- 6. Clean Room: Provide Clean Room to isolate the holding room from the building exterior.
- 7. Load-out Area:
  - a. The load-out area is the transfer area from the building to a truck or dumpster.
  - b. Wet wipe bags before they are passed through the equipment decon-chamber.
  - c. When cleaning is complete pass items into holding room. Close all doorways except the doorway between the holding room and the Clean Room.
  - d. Workers from the area outside the containment area enter holding area and remove decontaminated equipment and/or containers for disposal.
  - e. Require these workers to wear full protective clothing and appropriate respiratory protection.
  - f. At no time is a worker from an uncontaminated area to enter the enclosure when a removal worker is inside.
  - g. Post an approximately 20 inch x 14 inch manufactured caution sign at each entrance to the work area displaying the following legend with letter sizes and styles of a visibility required by OSHA 29 CFR 1926.1101(k)(9)(viii)(J) - Asbestos.

LEGEND  
DANGER

ASBESTOS

**CANCER AND LUNG DISEASE HAZARD**  
RESPIRATORS AND PROTECTIVE CLOTHING ARE REQUIRED  
IN THIS AREA

- h. Provide spacing between respective lines at least equal to the height of the respective upper line.
- i. Additional Signage: Shall also be posted in accordance with OSHA 29 CFR 1926.1101(k)(9)(viii)(J) - Asbestos

DANGER  
ASBESTOS  
CANCER AND LUNG DISEASE HAZARD

**AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY**  
RESPIRATORS AND PROTECTIVE CLOTHING  
ARE REQUIRED IN THIS AREA

DANGER  
ASBESTOS  
CANCER AND LUNG HAZARD  
KEEP OUT

- j. Post an approximately 10 inch by 14 inch manufactured sign at each entrance to each work area displaying the following legend with letter sizes and styles of a visibility at least equal to the following:

<u>LEGEND</u>	<u>NOTATION</u>
No Food, Beverages or Tobacco Permitted	3/4 inch Block
All Persons Shall Don Protective Clothing (Coverings) Before Entering the Work Area	3/4 inch Block
All Persons Shall Shower Immediately After Leaving Work Area and Before Entering the Changing Area	3/4 inch Block



#### M. Decontamination Procedures

1. Contractor shall require all workers and visitors to adhere to the following personal decontamination procedures whenever they leave the work area:
  - a. Require that all workers use the following decontamination procedure as a minimum requirement whenever leaving the work area.
  - b. When exiting area, remove disposable coveralls, disposable head covers, and disposable footwear covers or boots in the Equipment Room.
  - c. Still wearing respirators, proceed to showers. Showering is mandatory. Care must be taken to follow reasonable procedures in removing the respirator to avoid asbestos fibers while showering. The following procedure is required as a minimum:
    - 1) Thoroughly wet body including hair and face. If using a PAPR, hold blower unit above head to keep canisters dry.
    - 2) With respirator still in place thoroughly wash body, hair, respirator face piece, and all parts of the respirator except the blower unit and battery pack on a PAPR. Pay particular attention to seal between face and respirator and under straps.
    - 3) Take a deep breath, hold it and/or exhale slowly, completely wet hair, face, and respirator. While still holding breath, remove respirator and hold it away from face before starting to breathe.
    - 4) Carefully wash face-piece of respirator inside and out.
  - d. If using PAPR, shut down in the following sequence, first cap inlets to filter cartridges, then turn off blower unit (this sequence will help keep debris which has collected on the inlet side of filter from dislodging and contaminating the outside of the unit). Thoroughly wash blower unit and hoses. Carefully wash battery pack with wet rag. Be extremely cautious of getting water in battery pack as this will short out and destroy battery.
    - 1) Shower completely with soap and water.
    - 2) Rinse thoroughly.
    - 3) Rinse shower room walls and floor prior to exit.
    - 4) Proceed from shower to changing room and change into street clothes or into new disposable work items.
  - e. Require that all workers use the following decontamination procedure as a minimum requirement whenever leaving the work area with a half or full face cartridge type respirator:
    - 1) When exiting area, remove disposable coveralls, disposable headcovers, and disposable footwear covers or boots in the equipment room.
    - 2) Still wearing respirators, proceed to showers. Showering is mandatory. Care must be taken to follow reasonable procedures in removing the respirator and filters to avoid asbestos fibers while showering. The following procedure is required as a minimum:
      - 3) Thoroughly wet body from neck down.
      - 4) Wet hair as thoroughly as possible without wetting the respirator filter if using an air purifying type respirator.
      - 5) Take a deep breath, hold it and/or exhale slowly, complete wetting of hair, thoroughly wetting face, respirator and filter (air purifying respirator). While still holding breath, remove respirator and hold it away from face before starting to breath.
      - 6) Dispose of wet filters from air purifying respirator.
      - 7) Carefully wash facepiece of respirator inside and out.
      - 8) Shower completely with soap and water.
      - 9) Rinse thoroughly.
      - 10) Rinse shower room walls and floor prior to exit.
      - 11) Proceed from shower to changing room and change into street clothes or into new disposable work items.

#### N. Project Decontamination

1. If the asbestos abatement work is on damaged or friable materials, then the building space is deemed contaminated before start of the work and in need of decontamination. In this case, the



- procedure includes two cleanings of the primary barrier plastic prior to its removal and two cleanings of the room surfaces to remove any new or existing contamination.
2. Work of this section includes the decontamination of air in the work area which has been, or may have been contaminated by the elevated airborne asbestos fiber levels generated during abatement activities, or which may previously have had elevated fiber levels due to friable materials in the space.
  3. Work of this section also includes the cleaning, decontamination, and removal of temporary facilities installed prior to abatement work and decontamination of all surfaces (ceiling, walls, floor) of the work area, and all furniture or equipment in the work area.
  4. First Cleaning
    - a. Carry out a first cleaning of all surfaces of the work area including items of remaining sheeting, tools, scaffolding and/or staging by use of damp-cleaning and mopping, and/or a HEPA filtered vacuum. (Note: A HEPA vacuum will fail if used with wet material). Do not perform dry dusting or dry sweeping. Use each surface of a cleaning cloth one time only and then dispose as contaminated waste. Continue this cleaning until there is no visible debris from removed materials on plastic sheeting or other surfaces. Upon authorization of the Owner's Representative proceed with encapsulation of substrate.
    - b. Perform encapsulation of substrate where required at this time. Maintain pressure differential system in operation during encapsulation work. Allow encapsulant to dry before proceeding with removal of Secondary layer of plastic.
  5. Second Cleaning
    - a. Upon authorization of the Owner's Representative, remove all Primary Barrier sheeting and Material Decontamination Unit, if there is one, leaving only the following:
      - 1) Critical Barrier which forms the sole barrier between the work area and other portions of the building or outside.
      - 2) Critical Barrier Sheeting over lighting fixtures and clocks, ventilation openings, doorways, convectors, speakers and other openings.
      - 3) Personnel Decontamination Unit.
      - 4) Pressure Differential System in continuous operation.
    - b. Remove all filters in Air Handling System(s) and dispose of as asbestos-containing waste.
  6. Final Cleaning: Carry out a final cleaning of all surfaces in the work in the same manner as the first cleaning immediately after removal of primary plastic. This cleaning is now being applied to existing room surfaces. Take care to avoid water marks or other damage to surfaces.
  7. Visual Inspection: Perform a complete visual inspection with the Owner's Representative of the entire work area including decontamination unit, all plastic sheeting, seals over ventilation openings, doorways, windows, and other openings; look for debris from any sources, residue on surfaces, dust or other matter. If any such debris, residue, dust or other matter is found repeat cleaning and continue decontamination procedure from that point. When the area is visually clean, complete the certification at the end of this section.
  8. Final Air Sampling
    - a. After the work area is found to be visually clean, air samples will be taken and analyzed in accordance with the procedures set forth in Paragraph "Powered Air Purifying Respirator (PAPR).
    - b. If Release Criteria are not met, repeat cleaning and continue decontamination procedure from that point.
    - c. If Release Criteria is met, remove the interior of the decontamination unit leaving in place only the Critical Barriers separating the work area from the rest of the building and the operating negative pressure system.
    - d. Any small quantities of residual material found upon removal of the plastic sheeting shall be removed with a HEPA filtered vacuum cleaner and local area protection. If significant quantities, as determined by the Owner's Representative, are found then the entire area affected shall be decontaminated as specified herein for the cleaning.

- O. Work Area Clearance  
1. Air Monitoring



- a. Visual Inspection is required as a prerequisite of air testing.
  - b. To determine if the elevated airborne asbestos structure concentration during abatement operations have been reduced to the specified level, the Owner's Representative will secure samples and analyze them according to the following procedures.
2. Aggressive Sampling
- a. All air samples will be taken using aggressive sampling techniques as follows. (There are no standards available for flow rate of leaf blowers or large fans. However, this information is not critical to the success of the procedure).
  - b. Before sampling pumps are started, the exhaust from forced-air equipment (leaf blower with at least 1 horsepower electric motor) will be swept against all walls, ceilings, floors, ledges and other surfaces in the room. This procedure will be continued for five minutes per 10,000 cubic feet of room volume.
  - c. Air samples will be collected in areas subject to normal air circulation away from room corners, obstructed locations, and sites near windows, doors or vents.
3. Schedule of Air Samples
- a. General: The number and volume of air samples taken and analytical methods used by the Owner's Representative will be in accordance with the following schedule. Sample volumes given may vary depending upon the analytical instruments used. In each homogeneous work area after completion of all cleaning work, samples will be taken and analyzed by either PCM or TEM analysis.
  - b. Transmission Electron Microscopy (TEM) Samples:
    - 1) In each homogeneous work area after completion of all cleaning work, samples will be taken and analyzed by either PCM or TEM analysis as follows:
    - 2) Samples will be collected on 25 mm cassettes with filter media: TEM - 0.45 micrometer mixed cellulose ester or 0.40 micrometer polycarbonate, with 5.0 micron mixed cellulose ester backing filter.

Location Sampled	Number of Samples	Detection Limit (f/cc)	Minimum Volume (Liters)	Rate LPM
Each Work Area	5	0.005	1,300	2-10

- 3) TEM Analysis will be performed using the analysis method set forth in the AHERA Regulation 40 CFR Part 763 Appendix A.
  - 4) Asbestos Structures referred to in this Section include asbestos fibers, bundles, clusters, or matrices, as defined by method of analysis.
  - 5) Decontamination of the work site is complete when all the sample results are below 0.01 fibers per cubic centimeters (f/cc) of air or 70 structures per square millimeter.
- c. Phase Contrast Microscopy (PCM) Samples:
- 1) In each homogeneous work area after completion of all cleaning work, samples may be taken and analyzed as follows:
  - 2) Samples will be analyzed by PCM for clearance in areas where ceiling tile and/or pipe insulation are removed
  - 3) Samples will be collected on 25 mm cassettes with filter media: PCM - 0.8 micrometer mixed cellulose ester.

Location Sampled	Number of Samples	Detection Limit (s/cc)	Minimum Volume (Liters)	Rate LPM
Each Work Area	1-5	0.01	2,400	2-10

- 4) PCM Analysis: Fibers on each filter will be measured using the NIOSH 7400 Method entitled "Fibers" published in the NIOSH Manual of Analytical Methods, 3rd Edition, Second Supplement, August 1987.



- 5) Fibers: Referred to in this section include fibers regardless of composition as counted by the phase contrast microscopy method used
  - 6) Decontamination of the work site is complete when all the sample results are below 0.01 fibers per cubic centimeters (f/cc) of air or 70 structures per square millimeter.
4. Failure of Clearance Sampling: Should results from analysis of final clearance air samples not meet the specified criteria, Contractor will be responsible for the payment of all costs, including Consultant's time for subsequent clearance air sampling. The costs associated with subsequent re-sampling for final clearance shall be deducted from the Contractor's final payment of the contract amount.

P. Removal Of Pipe Insulation

1. The work of this section applied to the removal of asbestos-containing Pipe Insulation.
  - a. Place one layer of 6-mil fire retardant polyethylene sheeting directly below the work. The sheet shall be of sufficient size to completely wrap the pipe once it has been removed.
  - b. Thoroughly wet the ends of the pipe with amended water and scrape off a minimum of 6 inches of asbestos wrap from both ends of the pipe. Immediately place the wetted material into pre-labeled asbestos disposal bag(s).
  - c. Detach the pipe at each scraped end and place the pipe onto one sheet of 6-mil fire retardant polyethylene sheeting. Wrap the pipe with the 6-mil fire retardant polyethylene sheeting. Contractor shall wrap the pipe with a second sheet of 6-mil, fire retardant polyethylene sheeting and label as asbestos-containing material. Dispose of the bag(s) and duct in accordance with the Paragraph "Handling and Disposal of Asbestos Contaminated Waste" of this specification.
  - d. Upon clearance from the Owner's Representative, Contractor shall remove the 6-trail, fire retardant polyethylene sheeting from the openings.

Q. Glove Bag Removal

1. The work of this section applies to full containment or glovebag removal.
2. Isolate the area in accordance with Paragraph "Temporary Facilities."
3. Construct a decontamination unit as described in Paragraph "Decontamination Units" and attach to the work area.
4. Set up pressure differential isolation and ventilation of the work area in accordance to Paragraph "Pressure Differential System."
  - a. Upon approval of the enclosure by the Owner's Representative, Contractor may proceed to remove the material using the following method.
  - b. Thoroughly wet to satisfaction of the Owner's Representative, asbestos-containing insulation to be removed prior to stripping and/or tooling to reduce fiber dispersal into the air. Accomplish wetting by a fine spray (mist) of amended water or removal encapsulant. Saturate material sufficiently to wet the substrate without causing excess dripping. Allow time for removal encapsulant to penetrate material thoroughly. If amended water is used, spray material repeatedly during the work process to maintain a continuously wet condition. If a removal encapsulant is used, apply in strict accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. If insulation is covered with canvas, Contractor will wet the exterior covering and slice it with utility knife while saturating the material.
  - c. Mist work area continuously with amended water whenever necessary to reduce airborne fiber levels using commercially available "foggers."
  - d. Remove saturated asbestos-containing material in small sections from all areas. Do not allow material to dry out. As it is removed, simultaneously pack material while still wet into disposal bags. Twist neck of bags, bend over and seal with minimum three wraps of duct tape. Clean outside and move to wash down station adjacent to material decontamination unit.
  - e. Evacuate air from disposal bags with a HEPA filtered vacuum cleaner before sealing.
  - f. Contractor must always clean area of visible asbestos debris prior to end of shift.
5. These procedures shall be followed to remove pipe insulation elbows:
  - a. Install critical barriers to isolate the work site. Install 2 or 3 Stage Decontamination Units.



- b. HEPA vacuum the work site.
  - c. Provide negative air machine in addition to those required, in the vicinity of the work. Arrange so that exhaust is into the work area, oriented in a direction away from the work. Extend a 2-inch diameter flexible non-collapsing duct from the intake end to a point no more than 4'-0" from any scraping or brushing activity.
  - d. Locate intake of duct so that airflow is horizontally and slightly downward into intake. Replace primary filter on negative air machine at an interval of no greater than 30 minutes. Allow no more than one scraping or brushing activity per negative air machine.
  - e. Check pipe where the work will be performed. Wrap damaged (broken lagging, hanging, etc.), pipe in 6 mil plastic and "candy-stripe" with duct tape. Place one layer of duct tape around undamaged pipe at each end where the glovebag will be attached.
  - f. Place necessary tools into pouch located inside glovebag. This will usually include: bone saw, utility knife, rags, scrub brush, wire cutters, tin snips and pre-wetted cloth.
  - g. Place one strip of plastic adhesion tape along the edge of the open top slit of glove bag for reinforcement.
  - h. Place the glove bag around section of pipe to be worked on and staple top together through reinforcing tape. Next, tape the ends of glovebag to pipe itself, where previously covered with plastic or tape.
  - i. Use smoke tube and aspirator bulb to test seal. Place tube into water sleeve (two-inch opening to glovebag) squeezing bulb and filling bag with visible smoke. Remove smoke tube and twist water sleeve closed. While holding the water sleeve tightly, gently squeeze glovebag and by using a flashlight, look for smoke leaking out, (especially at the top and ends of the glovebag). If leaks are found, tape closed using plastic adhesion tape and re-test.
  - j. Insert wand from garden sprayer through water sleeve. Plastic adhesion tape water sleeve tightly around the wand to prevent leakage.
  - k. One person places its hands into the long-sleeved gloves while the second person directs garden sprayer at the work.
  - l. Use bone saw, if required, to cut insulation at each end of the section to be removed. A bone saw is a serrated heavy gauge wire with ring-type handles at each end. Throughout this process, spray amended water or removal encapsulant on the cutting area to keep dust to a minimum.
  - m. Remove insulation using putty knives or other tools. Place pieces in bottom of bag without dropping.
  - n. Rinse all tools with water inside the bag and place back into pouch.
  - o. Using scrub brush, rags and water, scrub and wipe down the exposed pipe. (Inexpensive horse rub-down mittens work well for this).
  - p. Remove water wand from water sleeve and attach the small nozzle from HEPA-filtered vacuum. Turn on the vacuum only briefly to collapse the bag.
  - q. Remove the vacuum nozzle, twist water sleeve closed and seal with plastic adhesion tape.
- R. Handling And Disposal Of Asbestos-Containing Waste
1. All waste and asbestos contaminated waste shall be double bagged in pre-labeled 6-mil airtight puncture resistant bags. Labeling shall be in accordance with OSHA and EPA requirements.
    - a. Bags of asbestos-containing waste shall be sealed with tape in the work area. Asbestos waste shall not be allowed to dry out prior to sealing bags. While in the work area, bags shall be decontaminated of any bulk debris by wet wiping. Bags shall be pre-labeled in accordance with OSHA and EPA.
    - b. The Contractor shall ensure that the sealed bags are transported to the waste disposal site.
  2. The Contractor shall establish a manifest system to enable the Owner to report the quantity of asbestos waste being deposited at the landfill. Contractor shall report the quantity of waste in pounds or tons as appropriate. The Contractor must be able to demonstrate custody over all asbestos waste from the time it is removed from the work area until it is deposited at the land fill.



- a. Copies of the manifest and any receipts generated during the handling and disposal process shall be provided to the Owner's Representative and the Owner.
  - b. Final manifest and documents must be provided to the Owner's Representative and the Owner within two weeks of the removal of the asbestos materials from the site by the waste hauler.
- S. Encapsulation Of Asbestos-Containing Materials
1. General provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01, apply to work of this section.
    - a. The work includes the sealing of all piping or vessels from which asbestos-containing insulation has been removed with one coat of a lock down encapsulant.
    - b. Where repair work is being performed, the end will be sealed with a minimum of one coat of bridging encapsulant.
  2. Submittals
    - a. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical information including label analysis and application instructions for each material proposed for use.
    - b. Installation Instructions: Submit manufacturer's installation instructions with specific project requirements noted.
    - c. Performance Warrantee: Submit manufacturer's performance guarantee.
    - d. Certification: Submit written approval of entity installing the encapsulant from encapsulant manufacturer.
    - e. Material Safety Data Sheet: Submit the Material Safety Data Sheet, or equivalent, in accordance with the OSHA Hazard Communication Standard (29 CFR 1910.1200) for each surfactant and encapsulating material proposed for use on the work. Include a separate attachment for each sheet indicating the specific worker protective equipment proposed for use with the material indicated.
  3. Deliver materials to the job site in original, new and unopened packages and containers bearing manufacturer's name and label, and following information:
    - a. Name or title of material
    - b. Manufacturer's stock number and date of manufacture
    - c. Manufacturer's name
    - d. Thinning Instructions
    - e. Application Instructions
  4. Deliver materials together with a copy of the OSHA Material Safety Data Sheet for the material.
  5. Job Conditions
    - a. Apply encapsulating materials only when environmental conditions in the work area are as required by the manufacturer's instructions.
  6. Quality Assurance
    - a. Installation of Spray-on Encapsulation Materials: Install spray-on materials by a firm and personnel approved by the manufacturer of the primary materials.
    - b. Testing: Test material to be encapsulated using methods set forth in ASTM E1494 "Standard Practice for Encapsulants Spray-or-Trowel-Applied for Friable Asbestos-Containing Building Materials."
    - c. Performance Warranty: Submit written Performance Warranty, executed by the manufacturer and co-signed by the Contractor, agreeing to repair/replace spray-on work which has cracked, fallen from substrate, or otherwise deteriorated to a condition where it would not perform effectively for its intended purposes due substantially to defective materials or workmanship and not due to abuse by occupants, improper maintenance, non-foreseeable ambient exposures or other causes beyond anticipated conditions and manufacturer's/contractor's control.
    - d. Compatibility: Selection and use of encapsulant shall be compatible with replacement materials. Submit manufacturer's data indicating compatibility with replacement materials.
  7. Product Selection
    - a. Encapsulants: Provide penetrating or bridging type encapsulants specifically designed for application to asbestos-containing material.



- b. Standards: Product shall be rated as acceptable for use intended when field tested in accordance with ASTM E1494 "Standard Practice for Encapsulants Spray-or-Trowel-Applied for Friable Asbestos-Containing Building Materials."
  - c. Fire Safety: Use only materials that have a flame spread index of less than 25, when dry, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
8. Manufacturers
- a. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products, which may be incorporated in the work, include, but are not limited to the following:
    - 1) Penetrating Encapsulants: As currently accepted by the EPA. Refer to most recent EPA approval list.
    - 2) Bridging Encapsulants: As currently accepted by the EPA. Refer to most recent EPA approval list.
9. General
- a. Prior to applying any encapsulating material, ensure that application of the sealer will not cause the base material to fail and allow the sealed material to fall of its own weight or separate from the substrate. Should Contractor doubt the ability of the installation to support the sealant, request direction from the Owner's Representative before proceeding with the encapsulating work.
  - b. Do Not Commence Application of encapsulating materials until all removal work within the work area has been completed.
10. Worker Protection
- a. Before beginning work with any material for which a Material Safety Data Sheet has been submitted, provide workers with the required protective equipment. Require that appropriate protective equipment be used at all times.
  - b. In addition to protective breathing equipment required by OSHA requirements or by this specification, use painting pre-filters on respirators to protect the dust filters when organic solvent based encapsulants are used.
11. Substrate
- a. Apply lock down encapsulant to all substrate after all asbestos-containing materials have been removed. Apply in strict accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions for use of the encapsulation as an asbestos coating. Any deviations from such printed instructions shall be approved by the Owner's Representative in writing prior to commencing work.
  - b. Apply encapsulant with an airless spray gun with air pressure and nozzle orifice as recommended by the encapsulant manufacturer.
- T. Removal Of Floor Tile
- 1. This section applies to the removal of floor tile.
    - a. Prior to start of work, wet wipe all surfaces including floor tile to remove any visible dust.
    - b. Isolate the room by sealing hallway or doors and installing critical barriers on all ducting, windows and other penetrations of the room, in the specified area. Install a splash guard a minimum of 4 feet high on the walls of the room with one layer of 6-mil fire retardant poly.
    - c. Install a two-stage decontamination configuration contiguous (under certain conditions may be remote) with the work in accordance with Paragraph "Decontamination Units."
    - d. Using water or amended water in a Hudson-type sprayer or garden sprayer, lightly mist the area where the material is to be removed. This may take several passes with the hose of the sprayer. Allow time for the water to soak into the material.
    - e. Immediately place individual tiles in proper asbestos disposal bags. Vacuum collapse the bag, twist the neck of the bag, tape with duct tape, fold the twisted portion over onto itself and tape again. Wipe the outside of the bag with clean damp cloths and place the bag into a second prelabeled disposal bag. Tape shut the second bag.
- U. Removal Of Fireproofing





1. The work of this section applies to the removal of all asbestos containing fireproofing including all over-spray that may be located on concrete block, columns, metal deck, beams, fixtures conduit and ducting.
  - a. Isolate the floor per Paragraph "Temporary Enclosure."
  - b. Construct a decontamination unit as described in Paragraph "Decontamination Units" and attach to the work area.
  - c. Set up pressure differential isolation and ventilation of the work area in accordance to Paragraph "Temporary Pressure Differential and Air Circulation System."
  - d. Upon approval of the enclosure by the Owner's Representative, contractor may proceed to remove the material using the following method.
  - e. Pre-clean columns, beams, electrical, mechanical and plumbing systems in the work area using wet wipe and HEPA vacuuming methods. Mask off with flame retardant polyethylene sheeting to protect from contamination during bulk abatement.
  - f. Thoroughly wet to satisfaction of the Owner's Representative, asbestos-containing fireproofing to be removed prior to stripping and/or tooling to reduce fiber dispersal into the air. Accomplish wetting by a fine spray (mist) of amended water or removal encapsulant. Saturate material sufficiently to wet the substrate without causing excess dripping. Allow time for removal encapsulant to penetrate material thoroughly. If amended water is used, spray material repeatedly during the work process to maintain a continuously wet condition. If a removal encapsulant is used, apply in strict accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - g. Mist work area continuously with amended water whenever necessary to reduce airborne fiber levels using commercially available "foggers."
  - h. Remove saturated asbestos-containing material in small sections from all areas. Do not allow material to dry out. As it is removed, simultaneously pack material while still wet into disposal bags. Twist neck of bags, bend over and seal with minimum three wraps of duct tape. Clean outside and move to wash down station adjacent to material decontamination unit.
  - i. Evacuate air from disposal bags with a HEPA filtered vacuum cleaner before sealing.
  - j. Provide Pressure Differential Machine in addition to those required in Paragraph "Pressure Differential System," in the vicinity of the work. Arrange so that exhaust is into the work area, oriented in a direction away from the work. Extend a 12" diameter flexible non-collapsing duct from the intake end to a point no more than 4'-0" from any scraping or brushing activity.
  - k. Locate intake of duct so that air flow is horizontally and slightly down-ward into intake. Replace primary filter on pressure differential machine at an interval of no greater that 30 minutes. Allow no more than one scraping or brushing activity per pressure differential machine.
- V. Removal Of Wall Plaster: HEPA vacuum work site.
  1. Place two layers of 6-mil flame retardant polyethylene sheeting on the floor adjacent to the wall to be demolished. Pull the wall down in manageable sections onto the polyethylene sheeting. Control dust and fiber release by misting the air and lightly wetting the material with amended water from a Hudson-type sprayer or garden sprayer as it is demolished.
  2. Wrap the first layer of polyethylene sheeting around the material and seal with duct tape. Wrap the second layer of polyethylene sheeting around the bundle and seal with duct tape.
  3. Label and dispose of the entire bundle.
  4. Provide Pressure Differential Machine in addition to those required in Paragraph "Pressure Differential System," in the vicinity of the work. Arrange so that exhaust is into the work area, oriented in a direction away from the work. Extend a 12-inch diameter flexible non-collapsing duct from the intake end to a point no more than 4'-0" from any scraping or brushing activity.
  5. Locate intake of duct so that air flow is horizontally and slightly down-ward into intake. Replace primary filter on negative air machine at an interval of no greater that 30 minutes.

W. Clean-Up Of Asbestos-Containing Debris On Ceiling Tile Or Solid Ceiling



1. This section applies to the decontamination of the entire plaster ceiling, removal of existing fiberglass on duct work and removal of all batt insulation covering the existing plaster ceiling.
    - a. Isolate the floor per Paragraph "Temporary Facilities."
    - b. Construct a decontamination unit as described in Paragraph "Decontamination Units" and attach to the work area. General Contractor will give direction regarding exact location of decontamination unit(s).
    - c. Set up pressure differential isolation and ventilation of the work area in accordance to Paragraph "Temporary Pressure Differential and Air Circulation System."
    - d. Upon approval of the enclosure by the Owner's Representative, contractor may proceed to remove the material using the following method:
  2. These procedures shall be followed to for clean up of asbestos-containing debris on existing plaster ceiling:
    - a. This work will be performed prior to the removal of fireproofing. The isolation of the work area is considered essential to the pre-cleaning activities for the total area. Isolate the area in accordance with Paragraph "Temporary Facilities."
    - b. Remove asbestos-containing debris and fiberglass batt and duct insulation and decontaminate the area using the following procedures:
      - 1) Remove all small debris with the HEPA vacuum.
      - 2) Gently mist all fiberglass insulation, remove from ducts and ceiling and place into pre-labeled hazardous disposal bags and dispose of in accordance with Paragraph "Disposal of Asbestos Containing Waste Material."
      - 3) Exposure of ducting will expose all fireproofing overspray, this material may be removed during the removal of fireproofing from decks and beams.
      - 4) Pick up all large visible debris on the ceiling or any horizontal surfaces and place in the bottom of a 6-mil polyethylene disposal bag conforming to the requirements of Paragraph "Disposal of Asbestos-Containing Waste." Place pieces in the bag without dropping and avoiding unnecessary disturbance and release of material.
      - 5) HEPA vacuum the entire plaster ceiling surface.
    - c. Upon completion of the decontamination of the area request a visual inspection of the ceiling and other horizontal surfaces. This area will be considered a portion of work area for the duration of the work and will be included in the final encapsulation of the area.
- X. Removal Of Adhesive: This section applies to the removal of all asbestos-containing floor tile and adhesive, sheet vinyl flooring, vinyl floor tile, and baseboard adhesive, etc.
1. Ensure that workers are equipped with proper respiratory protection. In addition to the HEPA cartridges, respirators must also be equipped with organic solvent cartridges.
  2. Provide HEPA filtered fan units in the vicinity of the work. Arrange so that units exhaust outside the building. Replace primary filters on HEPA filtered fan units at an interval of no greater than 30 minutes.
  3. Apply adhesive removal solvent as recommended by manufacturer after removal of floor tile has been completed.
  4. Provide tile adhesive (mastic) remover that meets the following criteria:
    - a. Flash Point: 122E or greater.
    - b. Special Precautions: No heavy smoke generated if ignited.
    - c. Health Effects: Limited to mild skin rash or eye irritation.
    - d. Respiratory Protection: MSHA - NIOSH approved Organic vapor cartridges in conjunction with standard HEPA filters.
    - e. Petroleum Distillates: None.
    - f. Odor: Pine, Citrus or none.

**Use of diesel fuel in the removal of tile and baseboard adhesive is strictly prohibited.**

5. Remove adhesive in small sections from all areas. Do not allow material to dry out. As adhesive is removed, simultaneously pack rags contaminated with adhesive material into disposal bags. Twist



neck of bags, bend over and seal with minimum three wraps of duct tape. Clean outside of bag and move to material decontamination unit.

6. Upon completion of adhesive removal, thoroughly clean bare substrate of all solvent residue.
7. Place adhesive residue in proper asbestos disposal bags. Vacuum collapse the bag, twist the neck of the bag, tape with duct tape, fold the twisted portion over onto itself and tape again. Wipe the outside of the bag with clean damp cloths and place bag into second pre-labeled disposal bag. Tape shut the second bag.



**CERTIFICATE OF WORKER'S ACKNOWLEDGEMENT**

PROJECT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

PROJECT ADDRESS: \_\_\_\_\_

CONTRACTOR: \_\_\_\_\_

**WORKING WITH ASBESTOS CAN BE DANGEROUS. INHALING ASBESTOS FIBERS HAS BEEN LINKED WITH VARIOUS TYPES OF CANCER IF YOU SMOKE AND INHALE ASBESTOS FIBERS, THE CHANCE THAT YOU WILL DEVELOP LUNG CANCER IS GREATER THAN THAT OF THE NON-SMOKING PUBLIC.**

Your employer's contract with the Owner for the above project requires that: You be supplied with the proper respirator and be trained in its use. You be trained in safe work practices and in the use of the equipment found on the job. You receive a medical examination. These things are to have been done at no cost to you. By signing this certification you are assuring the Owner that your employer has met these obligations to you.

RESPIRATORY PROTECTION: I have been trained in the proper use of respirators, and informed of the type respirator to be used on the above referenced project. I have a copy of the written respiratory protection manual issued by my employers. I have been equipped at no cost with the respirator to be used on the above project.

TRAINING COURSE: I have been trained in the dangers inherent in handling asbestos and breathing asbestos dust and in proper work procedures and personal and area protective measures. The topics covered in the course included the following:

- Physical characteristics of asbestos
- Health hazards associated with asbestos
- Respiratory protection
- Use of protective equipment
- Pressure differential systems
- Work practices including hands-on or on-the-job training
- Personal decontamination procedures
- Air monitoring, personal and area

MEDICAL EXAMINATION: I have had a medical examination within the last 12 months which was paid for by my employer. This examination included: health history, pulmonary function tests and may have included an evaluation of a chest x-ray.

Signature \_\_\_\_\_ Witness \_\_\_\_\_

Printed Name \_\_\_\_\_ Social Security Number \_\_\_\_\_



**CERTIFICATION OF VISUAL INSPECTION**

**AREA** \_\_\_\_\_

In accordance with Paragraph "Project Decontamination" the Contractor hereby certifies that it has visually inspected the work area (all surfaces including pipes, beams, ledges, walls, ceiling and floor, Decontamination Unit, sheet plastic, etc.) and has found no dust, debris or residue.

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_

Print Name \_\_\_\_\_

Print Title \_\_\_\_\_

OWNER'S REPRESENTATIVE CERTIFICATION

the Owner's Representative hereby certifies that it has accompanied the Contractor on its visual inspection and verifies that this inspection has been thorough and to the best of its knowledge and belief, the Contractor's certification above is a true and honest one.

Signature \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_

Print Name \_\_\_\_\_

Print Title \_\_\_\_\_



**RESPIRATORY PROTECTION PROGRAM**

Project Name \_\_\_\_\_

Location \_\_\_\_\_

Date \_\_\_\_\_

Based upon airborne asbestos-fiber counts encountered on previous projects of similar type working on materials similar to those found on the above referenced project. The following level of respiratory protection is proposed for the indicated operations to maintain an Airborne Fiber Count (as measured by the NIOSH 7400 Method) below the specified Permissible Exposure Limit (PEL) inside the respirator face piece.

Operation	Anticipated f/cc	Respiratory Protection	Protection Factor	f/cc in Mask
Installing sheet plastic				
Removing trim in contact with asbestos-containing material				
Removal of architectural finish or fireproofing				
Removal of pipe insulation				
Removal of fitting insulation				
Encapsulation of pipe and boiler insulation				
Gross debris removal				
Cleaning "primary" sheet plastic				
Cleaning "critical" barrier				
Removing Decontamination Unit				
Other				

The Contractor certifies that to the best of its knowledge and belief the above represent a true and accurate representation of Airborne Fiber Counts to be expected for the operations indicated, and are based upon airborne fiber data from past projects with similar materials and operations.

Contractor \_\_\_\_\_

Signature \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_

Print Name \_\_\_\_\_ Title \_\_\_\_\_

END OF SECTION 02 61 26 00a



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
02 62 16 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
02 65 00 00	02 41 13 13	Selective Demolition
02 65 00 00	02 61 00 00	Excavation And Handling Of Contaminated Material
02 65 00 00	02 61 13 00	Underground Storage Tank Removal
02 65 00 00	02 61 13 00a	Precision Testing Of Underground Fuel Oil Tanks
02 65 00 00	02 61 13 00b	Hydrostatic Pressure Testing Of Air Receiving Tanks
02 81 00 00	02 61 00 00	Excavation And Handling Of Contaminated Material
02 81 00 00	02 61 26 00	Disposal Of Hazardous Materials



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



**SECTION 02 82 16 00 - ENCAPSULATION (LOCK-DOWN) OF ASBESTOS-CONTAINING MATERIALS**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for encapsulation (lock-down) of asbestos-containing materials. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Submittals

1. Product Data: Manufacturers technical information including label analysis and application instructions for each material proposed for use.
2. Installation Instructions: Manufacturer's installation instructions with specific project requirements noted.
3. Performance Warrantee: Manufacturers performance guarantee.
4. Material Safety Data Sheet: Material Safety Data Sheet in accordance with the OSHA Hazard Communication Standard (29 CFR 1910.1200) for each surfactant and encapsulating material proposed for use on the work. Include a separate attachment for each sheet indicating the specific worker protective equipment proposed for use with the material indicated.

## C. Delivery And Storage: Deliver materials to the job site in original, new and unopened packages and containers bearing manufacturer's name and label, and following information:

1. Name or title of material
2. Manufacturer's stock number and date of manufacture
3. Manufacturer's name
4. Thinning instructions
5. Application instructions
6. Deliver materials together with a copy of the OSHA Material
7. Safety Data Sheet for the material.

## D. Job Conditions: Apply encapsulating materials only when environmental conditions in the work area are as required by the manufacturer's instructions.

## E. Quality Assurance

1. Testing: Test material to be encapsulated using methods set forth in ASTM E1494 "Standard Practice for Encapsulants for Spray-or-Trowel-Applied Friable Asbestos- Containing Building Materials."

## F. Warranty

1. Performance Warranty: Contractor shall submit written Performance Warranty, executed by the contractor, agreeing to repair/replace spray-on work which has cracked, fallen from substrate, or otherwise deteriorated to a condition where it would not perform effectively for its intended purposes due substantially to defective materials or workmanship and not due to abuse by occupants, improper maintenance, unforeseeable ambient exposures or other causes beyond anticipated conditions and contractors control. Warranty period shall be for at least one year after date of Final Completion.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

## A. Materials



1. Encapsulant system shall be an acrylic, elastomeric type, spray, brush or roller-applied, tinted penetrating or tinted bridging type, specifically designed for application to asbestos-containing material. System shall be equal to Global Encasement System as manufactured by GLOBAL Encasement Inc., 132-32nd Street, Union City, NJ 07087 U.S.A., Tel. (800) 266-3982/(201) 902-9770.
  - a. All encasement topcoat materials shall be warranted to be heavy-bodied, from the same manufacturer, and shall be long lasting, highly-pure (low VOC) materials that remain flexible, chalk resistant and resist cracking, peeling, algae and fungus that can cause future indoor air quality concerns.
  - b. To allow for building movement without cracking or disturbing fibrous materials, coating systems shall have passed testing to ASTM standards for adhesion, permeability, aged flexibility and with aged elasticity for the encasement system of over 250%.
  - c. Coatings shall be Class A Fire Rated, water-based, non-toxic, safe and easy to use, contain no hazardous ingredients by OSHA definition, comply with all known building codes and be non-flammable.
  - d. Coating materials shall have low VOC (Volatile Organic Compound) content.
  - e. Coating materials shall not release health threatening toxic smoke and fumes in a fire and shall comply with all known building codes.
  - f. Coating materials shall have passed the following testing standards:
    - 1) ASTM E 119 fire tests demonstrating that applying a multi-layer system over fireproofing does not adversely affect the fireproof rating of the fireproofing (3 hour test).
    - 2) UPITT Combustion Toxicity Test proving nothing toxic is released in a fire.
    - 3) ASTM E 84 and E162 fire tests for "Class A" - Surface Flammability and Burning Characteristics (Flame Spread = 0, Smoke Developed = 5).
    - 4) "Pull-off Adhesion" test per ASTM E736 equals or exceeds 9,950 lbs./sq. ft. (89.1 lbs./sq. in.).
    - 5) ASTM D 1653 and E96 "Water Vapor Permeability" (showing the rate that water vapor can pass through the system).
    - 6) Impact Resistance, "Tensile Strength" shall exceed 150 psi; "Elongation" shall exceed 250%.
    - 7) System shall be mildew resistant, impact resistant, scrub resistant, non-yellowing, non-chalking, highly blister resistant, rust resistant, highly chemical resistant and shall remain flexible after 1000 hour ASTM Accelerated Weather testing.
    - 8) Water-Based materials (low VOC) Volatile Organic Content of Primer-Sealer-Neutralizer = 0.1 g/L (0.001 lb./gal.) and Encasement Top Coat = 0.1 g/L (0.001 lb./gal.) as tested by EPA Method 24.
    - 9) Materials comply with applicable standards for installation on interior and/or exterior surfaces of a building.
    - 10) Encasement Systems shall provide additional water-proofing protection.
- B. Related Materials:
  1. Elastomeric architectural sealants, caulking compounds, primers, and similar materials shall be approved by the manufacturer of the encasement coatings. All materials used shall be applied in accordance with its manufacturer's recommendations.
- C. Applicable Standards
  1. Product shall be rated as acceptable for use intended when field tested in accordance with ASTM E 1494.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. General



1. Prior to applying any encapsulating material in Work Areas, Contractor shall obtain final visual inspection approval by the Project Administrator.
  2. Prior to applying any encapsulating material, Contractor shall ensure that application of the sealer will not cause the base material to fail and allow the sealed material to fall of its own weight or separate from the substrate. Should Contractor doubt the ability of the installation to support the sealant, request direction from the Owner's Representative before proceeding with the encapsulating work.
  3. Do Not Commence Application of encapsulating materials until all removal work within the work area has been completed.
- B. Worker Protection
1. Before beginning work with any material for which a Material Safety Data Sheet has been submitted provide workers with the required protective equipment. Require that appropriate protective equipment be used at all times.
- C. Application
1. Comply with all manufacturer's instructions for particular conditions of installation. Consult with manufacturer's technical representative for conditions not covered.
  2. Encapsulate all surfaces in full compliance with manufacturer's procedures.
  3. At completion of Encapsulation and before removal of Work Area enclosures and Pressure Differential System, decontaminate space in accordance with requirements of manufacturer's instructions.
  4. Remove all debris from the project site and restore area to proper conditions by cleaning all surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations.
  5. At completion of work submit manufacturer's record of inspection of completed work and Manufacturers Performance Guarantee executed by both manufacturer and Contractor.

END OF SECTION 02 82 16 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

**SECTION 02 82 33 00 - REMOVAL OF NONFRIABLE ASBESTOS-CONTAINING MATERIALS****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for removal of nonfriable asbestos-containing materials. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Definitions**

1. ACM: Asbestos Containing material which is any material containing more than one percent asbestos.
2. Amended Water: Water containing a wetting agent or surfactant with a maximum surface tension of 2.9 Pa 29 dynes per centimeter when tested in accordance with ASTM D 1331.
3. Area Sampling: Sampling of asbestos fiber concentrations which approximates the concentrations of asbestos in the theoretical breathing zone but is not actually collected in the breathing zone of an employee.
4. Asbestos: The term asbestos collectively refers to a naturally occurring mineral known by the following specific names: chrysotile, amosite, crocidolite, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite.
5. Asbestos control Area: That area where asbestos removal operations are performed. The area shall be isolated by physical boundaries to assist in the prevention of the uncontrolled access by non-qualified persons.
6. Asbestos Fibers: Those fibers having an aspect ratio of at least 3:1 and longer than-5 micrometers as determined by National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) Method 7400.
7. Asbestos Permissible Exposure Limit: 0.1 fibers per cubic centimeter of air as an e-hour time weighted average measured in the breathing zone as by defined 29 CFR 1926.1101 or other Federal legislation having legal jurisdiction for the protection of workers health.
8. Background: The ambient airborne asbestos concentration in an uncontaminated area as measured prior to any asbestos hazard abatement efforts. Background concentrations for contaminated areas are measured in similar but asbestos free locations.
9. Contractor: The Contractor is that individual, or entity under contract to the Owner to perform the herein listed work.
10. Contractor/Supervisor (Asbestos abatement): A person who has successfully completed training and is therefore accredited as a Contractor/Supervisor under a State Model Accreditation Plan or EPA Model Accreditation Plan as described in 40 CFR 763.
11. Critical Barrier: The layer of polyethylene sheeting that covers an opening or penetration in a room or area that is to become a negative pressure enclosure.
12. Encapsulation: The abatement of an asbestos hazard through the appropriate use of chemical encapsulants.
13. Encapsulants: Specific materials in various forms used to chemically or physically entrap asbestos fibers in various configurations to prevent these fibers from becoming airborne. There are four types of encapsulants as follows which must comply with performance requirements as specified herein.
  - a. Removal Encapsulant (can be used as a wetting agent)
  - b. Bridging Encapsulant (used to provide a tough, durable surface coating to asbestos containing material)
  - c. Penetrating Encapsulant (used to penetrate the asbestos containing material encapsulating all asbestos fibers and preventing fiber release due to routine mechanical damage)
  - d. Lock-Down Encapsulant (used to seal off or "lock-down" minute asbestos fibers left on surfaces from which asbestos containing material has been removed).
14. Friable Asbestos Material: Any material containing more than one percent asbestos that can be crumbled, pulverized, or reduced to powder by hand pressure when dry.



15. Glovebag Technique: Those asbestos removal and control techniques put forth in 29 CFR 1926.1101.
16. HEPA Filter Equipment: High efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filtered vacuum and/or exhaust ventilation equipment with a filter system capable of collecting and retaining asbestos fibers. Filters shall retain 99.97 percent of particles 0.3 microns or larger as indicated in UL 586.
17. the Owner: That qualified person employed directly by the Owner to monitor, sample, inspect the work, and advise the Owner.
18. Negative Pressure Enclosure (NPE): That engineering control technique described as a negative pressure enclosure in 29 CFR 1926.1101.
19. Non-friable Asbestos Material: Material that contains asbestos in which the fibers have been immobilized by a bonding agent, coating, binder, or other material so that the asbestos is well bound and will not normally release asbestos fibers during any appropriate use, handling, storage or transportation. It is understood that asbestos fibers may be released under other conditions such as demolition, renovation, removal, or mishap.
20. Personal Sampling: Air sampling which is performed to determine asbestos fiber concentrations within the breathing zone of a specific employee, as performed in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.1101.
21. Competent Person (CP): A person who has successfully completed training and is therefore accredited under a legitimate State Model Accreditation Plan or EPA Model Accreditation Plan as described in 40 CFR 763 as a Contractor/Supervisor and shall be appropriately licensed according to the Statutes of the State in which the work is to be performed.
22. TEM: Refers to Transmission Electron Microscopy.
23. Time Weighted Average (TWA): The TWA is an 8-hour time weighted average airborne concentration of asbestos fibers.
24. Wetting Agent: A chemical added to water to reduce the water's surface tension thereby increasing the water's ability to soak into the material to which it is applied. An equivalent wetting agent must have a surface tension of at most 2.9 Pa 29 dynes per centimeter when tested in accordance with ASTM D 1331.

#### C. Requirements

1. Description of Work: The work covered by this section includes the handling and control of asbestos containing materials and describes some of the resultant procedures and equipment required to protect workers, the environment and occupants of the building or area, or both, from contact with airborne asbestos fibers. The work also includes the disposal of any asbestos containing materials generated by the work. More specific operational procedures shall be outlined in the Asbestos Hazard Abatement Plan called for elsewhere in this specification. The asbestos work includes the use of non-friable removal technique(s) which is governed by 40 CFR 763 as indicated. Provide non-friable removal technique(s) as outlined in this specification for the locations indicated.
2. Medical Requirements: Provide medical requirements including but not limited to medical surveillance and medical record keeping as listed in 29 CFR 1926.1101.
  - a. Medical Examinations: Before exposure to airborne asbestos fibers, provide workers with a comprehensive medical examination as required by 29 CFR 1926.1101 or other pertinent State or local directives. This requirement must have been satisfied within the 12 months prior to the start of work on this contract. The same medical examination shall be given on an annual basis to employees engaged in an occupation involving asbestos and within 30 calendar days before or after the termination of employment in such occupation. Specifically identify x-ray films of asbestos workers to the consulting radiologist and mark medical record jackets with the word "ASBESTOS."
  - b. Medical Records: Maintain complete and accurate records of employees' medical examinations, medical records, and exposure data for a period of 30 years after termination of employment and make records of the required medical examinations and exposure data available for inspection and copying to: The Assistant Secretary of Labor for Occupational



- Safety and Health (OSHA), or authorized representatives of them, and an employee's physician upon the request of the employee or former employee.
- c. Medical Certification: Submit written certification for each worker and contractor/supervisor, signed by a licensed physician indicating that the worker and contractor/supervisor has met or exceeded all of the medical prerequisites listed herein and in 29 CFR 1926.1101 and 29 CFR 1910.134 as prescribed by law.
3. Training: Train all personnel involved in the asbestos control work in accordance with United States Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA) Asbestos Hazard Emergency Response Act (AHERA) training criteria or State training criteria whichever is more stringent. The Contractor shall document the training by providing a copy of a current training certification to the the Owner for each person assigned to work on this project. Furnish each employee with respirator training and fit testing documentation as required by 29 CFR 1910.134. Provide instruction on the engineering and other hazard control techniques and procedures to be used on this project.
    - a. Employee Training: Submit copies of training certificates for each employee indicating that the employee has received training at the appropriate level in accordance with 40 CFR 763.
  4. Permits, Licenses, and Notifications: Notify the local air pollution control district/agency and the the Owner in writing 10 working days prior to commencement of work in accordance with 40 CFR 61-SUBPART M or applicable state and local regulations. Obtain necessary permits or licenses in conjunction with asbestos removal, encapsulation, hauling, and disposal. Post the permit and/or license at the work site, visible from a non-controlled area. Notify the local fire department 3 days prior to removing fire-proofing material from the building including notice that the material contains asbestos.
  5. Environment, Safety and Health Compliance: Comply with the applicable requirements of the current issue of 29 CFR 1926.1101, 40 CFR 61-SUBPART A, and 40 CFR 61-SUBPART M or applicable State or local regulations regarding handling, storing, transporting, and disposing of asbestos waste materials. Submit matters of interpretation of standards to the appropriate administrative agency for resolution before starting the work. Where the requirements of this specification, applicable regulations, or referenced documents vary, the most stringent requirement shall apply.
    - a. Site Inspection: While performing asbestos engineering control work, the Contractor shall be subject to on-site inspection by the Federal, State, or local regulatory agencies and the Contracting Officer or its designated representative. If the work is found to be in violation of Federal, State, or local regulations or this specification, the Contracting Officer or its representative will issue a stop work order to be in effect immediately and until the violation is resolved. All related costs including standby time required to resolve the. violation shall be at the Contractor's expense.
  6. Respiratory Protection Program: Establish and implement a respirator program as required by ANSI 288.2 and 29 CFR 1910.134. Submit a written program manual or operating procedure including methods of compliance with regulatory statutes.
    - a. Respirator Program Records: Submit records of the respirator program as required by ANSI 288.2 and 29 CFR 1910.134.
  7. Contractor/Supervisor (Asbestos Abatement): The Contractor shall be represented on-site by a trained contractor/Supervisor. This person shall be on-site at all times when asbestos work is in progress. The Qualified Person, as defined herein, can be the Contractor/Supervisor.
  8. Hazard Communication: Adhere to all parts of 29 CFR 1910.1200 and 29 CFR 1926.59. Provide the Contracting Officer with a copy of the Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) for all materials brought to the site. Review the Asbestos Survey Report(s) provided by the the Owner, if any.
  9. Asbestos Hazard Abatement Plan: Submit a detailed plan of the safety precautions such as lockout, tag-out, tryout, fall protection, and confined space entry procedures and equipment and work procedures to be used in the removal of materials containing asbestos. The plan shall be prepared by the Contractor (and reviewed and signed by an asbestos consultant (LAC) licensed according to the Statutes of the State in which the work is to be performed) for review and recommendation for approval by the the Owner. The plan shall be forwarded to the the Owner for final approval at least 10 days prior to beginning abatement activities. The plan shall include but not be limited to the detailed description of personal protective equipment and work practices to



be used including, but not limited to, respiratory protection, type of whole-body protection, the location of asbestos control areas including clean and dirty areas, buffer zones, showers, storage areas, change rooms, removal method, interface of trades involved in the construction, sequencing of asbestos related work, disposal plan, type of wetting agent and asbestos encapsulant to be used, locations of local exhaust equipment, planned air sampling strategies, and a detailed description of the method to be employed in order to control environmental pollution. The plan shall also include both fire and medical emergency response plans. The Asbestos Hazard Abatement Plan must be approved in writing prior to starting any asbestos work.

10. Testing Laboratory: Submit the name, address, and telephone number of each testing laboratory selected for the sampling, analysis, and reporting of airborne concentrations of asbestos fibers along with evidence that each laboratory selected holds the appropriate State license and/or permits and certification that each laboratory is American Industrial Hygiene Association (AIHA) accredited and that persons counting the samples have been judged proficient by current inclusion on the AIHA Asbestos Analysis Registry (AAR) and successful participation of the laboratory in the Proficiency Analytical Testing (PAT) Program. Where analysis to determine asbestos content in bulk materials or transmission electron microscopy is required, submit evidence that the laboratory is accredited by the National Institute of Science and Technology (NIST) under National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP) for asbestos analysis.
11. Landfill Approval: Submit written evidence that the landfill for disposal is approved for asbestos disposal by the USEPA and State and local regulatory agency(s).
12. Waste Shipment Records/Asbestos Waste Manifest: Submit waste shipment records and/or asbestos manifest records, prepared in accordance with applicable Federal, State, or local regulations, signed and dated by an agent of the landfill, certifying the amount of asbestos materials delivered to the landfill, within 3 days after delivery.
13. Negative Exposure Assessment: Submit objective data demonstrating that the method(s) used for the specified non-friable ACM removal does not release airborne concentrations of asbestos fibers exceeding the TWA PEL or excursion limit. This data may be from previous work within the last 12 months or from initial exposure assessments on this project. Data from previous work must have been gathered by the firm employed on this contract, using workers trained to the same level, with the ACM and workplace conditions "closely resembling" the conditions for this contract.
14. Contractor Daily Reports: Prepare a written report for each day that asbestos work is being accomplished. The report should be submitted to the the Owner monthly. The report as a minimum shall include the following, where applicable:
  - a. Daily Visual Inspection Reports: Prepare a written report documenting compliance with the Asbestos Hazard Abatement Plan and Federal, State, or local regulations.
  - b. Air Sampling Reports: Complete fiber counting within 24 hours of the "time off" of the sample pump. Notify the the Owner immediately of any airborne levels of asbestos fibers in excess of the acceptable limits. Sampling results shall be submitted to the the Owner the day following receipt. The affected employees will be provided copies of the results where required by law within 3 working days. These results shall be signed by the air sampler and the testing laboratory employee that analyzed the sample.
  - c. Pressure Differential Recordings for Local Exhaust System-Not Used
  - d. Asbestos Disposal Quantity Report: The Contractor shall record and report daily the amount of asbestos containing material removed and the amount transported for disposal. Deliver the report for the previous day and cumulative totals with amounts of material removed reported in linear meters or square meters linear feet or square feet as described initially in this specification and the amounts of material transported for disposal reported in cubic meters yards.

#### D. Submittals

1. Submit the following in accordance with Section "Submittal Procedures."
  - a. Vacuums and tools





- b. Respirators
- c. Wetting Agent
- d. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) for all materials proposed for transport to the project site
- e. Local exhaust system
- f. Pressure differential automatic recording instrument
- g. Daily Reports
- h. Asbestos hazard abatement plan
- i. Testing laboratory
- j. Training Certificates
- k. Landfill approval
- l. Employee training
- m. Medical certification requirements
- n. Waste shipment records/Asbestos waste manifest
- o. Respiratory Protection Program
- p. Negative Exposure Assessment
- q. Local Exhaust system
- r. Show compliance with ANSI Z9.2 by providing manufacturers' certifications.
- s. Permits, licenses, and Notifications
- t. Rental equipment
- u. Respirator program records
- v. Protective clothing decontamination quality control records
- w. Protective clothing decontamination facility notification.

E. Quality Assurance

- 1. Glovebags-Not Used
- 2. Rental Equipment: Provide a copy of the written notification to the rental company concerning the intended use of the equipment and the possibility of asbestos contamination of the equipment.
- 3. Protective Clothing Decontamination Quality Control Records: Provide all records that document quality control for the decontamination of reusable outer protective clothing.
- 4. Protective Clothing Decontamination Facility Notification: Submit written evidence that persons who decontaminate, store, or transport asbestos contaminated clothing used in the performance of this contract were duly notified in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.1101.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Encapsulants

- 1. See Division 21 Section "Facility Fire-suppression Water-service Piping".

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Equipment

- 1. Respirators: Select respirators from those approved by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH). Provide personnel engaged in pre-cleaning, cleanup, handling, and removal of asbestos containing materials with the appropriate respiratory protection as specified in 29 CFR 1910.134.
- 2. Exterior Whole Body Protection
  - a. Outer Protective Clothing: Provide personnel exposed to asbestos with disposable "non-breathable," or reusable "non-breathable" whole body outer protective clothing, head coverings, gloves, and foot coverings. Provide disposable plastic or rubber gloves to protect hands. Cloth gloves may be worn inside the plastic or rubber gloves for comfort, but shall not be used alone. Make sleeves secure at the wrists, make foot coverings secure at the ankles, and make clothing secure at the neck by the use of tape. Reusable whole body



- outer protective clothing shall be either disposed of as asbestos contaminated waste upon exiting from the asbestos regulated work area or be properly decontaminated.
- b. Work Clothing-Not Used
  - c. Decontamination of Reusable Outer Protective Clothing: When reusable outer protective clothing is used, transport the double bagged clothing to a previously notified commercial/industrial decontamination facility for decontamination. Perform non-destructive testing to determine the effectiveness of asbestos decontamination. If representative sampling is used, ensure the statistical validity of the sampling results. If representative sampling is used, reject any entire batch in which any of the pieces exceed 40 fibers per square millimeter. Inspect reusable protective clothing prior to use to ensure that it will provide adequate protection and is not or is not about to become ripped, torn, deteriorated, or damaged, and that it is not visibly contaminated. Notify, in writing, all personnel involved in the decontamination of reusable outer protective clothing as indicated in 29 CFR 1926.1101.
  - d. Eye Protection: Provide goggles to personnel engaged in asbestos abatement operations when the use of a full face respirator is not required.
3. Warning Signs and Labels: Provide bilingual warning signs printed in English and Spanish at all approaches to asbestos control areas. Locate signs at such a distance that personnel may read the sign and take the necessary protective steps required before entering the area. Provide labels and affix to all asbestos materials, scrap, waste, debris, and other products contaminated with asbestos.
    - a. Warning Sign: Provide vertical format conforming to 29 CFR 1926.1101 minimum 20 by 14 inches (500 by 355 mm) displaying the following legend in the lower panel:

DANGER  
ASBESTOS  
MAY CAUSE CANCER  
CAUSES DAMAGE TO LUNGS  
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY  
WEAR RESPIRATORY PROTECTION AND  
PROTECTIVE CLOTHING IN THIS AREA

- b. Warning Labels: Provide labels conforming to 29 CFR 1926.1101 of sufficient size to be clearly legible, displaying the following legend:

DANGER  
CONTAINS ASBESTOS FIBERS  
MAY CAUSE CANCER  
CAUSES DAMAGE TO LUNGS  
DO NOT BREATHE DUST  
AVOID CREATING DUST

- c. Provide the following asbestos labels, of sufficient size to be clearly legible, for display on waste containers (bags or drums) which will be used to transport asbestos contaminated material in accordance with United States Department of Transportation 49 CFR Parts 171 and 172.

NA2212, (WASTE) ASBESTOS, 9, PGIII

4. Vacuums and Tools: Vacuums shall be leak proof to the filter and equipped with HEPA filters. Filters on vacuums shall conform to ANSI Z9.2 and UL 586. Do not use power tools to remove asbestos containing materials unless the tool is equipped with effective, integral HEPA filtered



exhaust ventilation systems. Remove all residual asbestos from reusable tools prior to storage or reuse.

B. General

1. Pre-Asbestos Work Conference: The Contractor and the Contractor/Supervisor shall meet with the Contracting officer prior to beginning work, to discuss in detail the Asbestos Hazard Abatement Plan, including work procedures and safety precautions. Once approved by the Owners Engineer, the plan will be enforced as if a part of this specification. Any changes required in the specification as a result of the plan shall be identified specifically in the plan to allow for free discussion and approval by the Owners Engineer prior to starting work.
2. Asbestos Control Area Requirements: The Contractor shall demarcate the asbestos control area(s) using physical barriers and signs to prevent access by unauthorized personnel. This area is defined by 29 CFR 1926.1101 as the regulated area.
3. Work Procedure: Perform asbestos related work in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.1101, 40 CFR 61-SUBPART M, applicable State or local regulation, and as specified herein. Use wet removal procedures. Personnel shall wear and utilize protective clothing and equipment as specified herein. Eating, smoking, drinking, chewing gum or tobacco, or applying cosmetics shall not be permitted in the asbestos control area(s). Personnel of other trades not engaged in the removal of asbestos containing material shall not be exposed at any time to airborne concentrations of asbestos. If an asbestos fiber release or spill, stop work immediately, correct the condition to the satisfaction of the Owners Engineer, including clean-up and clearance sampling, if appropriate, prior to resumption of work.
4. Furnishings: Furniture will be removed from the area of work by the Owner before asbestos work begins.
5. Pre-cleaning: Wet wipe and HEPA vacuum all surfaces potentially contaminated with asbestos prior to establishment of an enclosure.

C. Removal Procedures: Wet asbestos containing material with a fine spray of amended water during removal, cutting, or other handling so as to reduce the emission of airborne fibers. Remove material and immediately place in 0.15 mm 6 mil plastic disposal bags. Remove asbestos containing material in a gradual manner, with continuous application of the amended water in such a manner that no asbestos material is disturbed prior to being adequately wetted. Where unusual circumstances prohibit the use of 0.15 mm 6 mil plastic bags, submit an alternate proposal for containment of asbestos fibers to the Owner's Engineer for approval. Asbestos containing material shall be containerized while wet. At no time shall asbestos containing material be allowed to accumulate or become dry. Handle asbestos containing material as indicated in 40 CFR 61-SUBPART M, applicable State or local regulation, and 29 CFR 1926.1101.

1. Exposed Pipe Insulation Edges-Not Used
2. Negative Pressure Enclosure: Block and seal openings in areas where the release of airborne asbestos fibers can be expected. Establish an asbestos negative pressure enclosure with the use of curtains, portable partitions, or other enclosures in order to prevent the escape of asbestos fibers from the contaminated asbestos work area.
  - a. Personnel/Equipment Decontamination Unit: Provide a temporary facility with a separate equipment/dirty change room and clean change room. Provide a shower that complies with 29 CFR 1926.51 in between the dirty room and clean room for personnel required to wear whole body protective clothing. Provide two separate lockers for each asbestos worker, one in each locker room. Keep street clothing and street shoes in the clean locker. HEPA vacuum and remove asbestos contaminated disposable protective clothing while still wearing respirators at the boundary of the asbestos work area and seal in impermeable bags or containers for disposal. Do not wear work clothing between home and work. All employees shall shower before changing into street clothes. Collect used shower water and filter with approved water filtration equipment to remove asbestos contamination. Dispose of filters and residue as asbestos waste. Discharge clean water to the sanitary system. Dispose of asbestos contaminated work clothing as asbestos contaminated waste or properly decontaminate as specified in the Asbestos Hazard Abatement Plan.



- b. Waste Load-Out Unit: Provide a separate temporary area expressly for short-term storage of bagged asbestos containing material that is ready for disposal. The unit shall be the only port used to transfer waste to a truck, dumpster, or other approved on-site storage facility. It shall not be used for personnel egress. A waste load-out unit shall be integral to each negative pressure enclosure.
3. Non-friable Removal Procedures:
  - a. Under normal conditions EPA Category II, non-friable asbestos containing materials may not be considered hazardous; however, this material may release airborne asbestos fibers during demolition and removal; therefore it must be handled in a manner to prevent the release of asbestos fibers. At no time will this material be mechanically chipped, sawed, sanded, or ground.
  - b. Prior to beginning removal, establish an Asbestos Control Area and install Critical Barriers as specified elsewhere in this section. Submit a Negative Exposure Assessment which is less than 12 months old to the the Owner for approval or conduct air sampling as specified elsewhere in this section to establish the exposure levels for the exact removal method being used. The Contractor will establish the correct level of Personal Protective Equipment required.
  - c. Acceptable methods of removal include, but are not limited to, the use of dry ice, a heat gun or lamp, citrus-based solvents, and hand tools with amended water. Removal shall be accomplished to keep the ACM substantially intact. Breakage into small pieces is an unacceptable work practice. The method shall be detailed in the Asbestos Abatement Plan and shall not be changed during the removal without Contracting Officer approval.
  - d. Upon completion of the removal and clean-up, but prior to removal of critical barriers, the Contractor Testing company shall conduct a visual inspection of all areas affected by the removal. Re-clean as required.
- D. Field Quality Control Requirements
  1. Visual Inspections: The the Owner will conduct periodic inspections of all areas where asbestos removal and activities are in progress to ensure compliance with the approved Asbestos Hazard Abatement Plan and Federal/State regulatory requirements. This inspection shall include confirmation of proper control/containment/enclosure, worker protection, housekeeping, exhaust equipment operation, decontamination procedures, proper wetting and disposal, and inspection of work progress and work practices. Each activity will be documented as acceptable or noted as unacceptable with justification for the non-compliance.
  2. Air Sampling: Sampling of airborne concentrations of asbestos fibers shall be performed in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.1101 and as specified herein. Unless otherwise specified, use NIOSH Method 7400 for sampling and analysis. Air Sampling may be duplicated by the Government at the discretion of the Contracting Officer. If the air sampling results obtained by the Government differ from those results obtained by the Contractor, the Government will determine which results predominate.
    - a. Sampling Prior to Asbestos Work (Not Used)
    - b. Sampling During Asbestos Work
      - 1) The Contractor's testing company shall perform area sampling as indicated in 29 CFR 1926.1101 and governing environmental regulations. Perform area sampling at least once every week close to the work inside the enclosure, outside the personnel/equipment decontamination unit entrance to the enclosure.
      - 2) If sampling outside the enclosure shows airborne levels have exceeded background or 0.01 fibers per cubic centimeter, whichever is greater, stop all work, correct the condition(s) causing the fiber release, and notify the the Owner immediately. Determine by testing if adjacent areas are contaminated. If so the Contractor shall clean the contaminated areas, visually inspect, and sample the areas as specified herein.
      - 3) The Contractor shall conduct personal sampling of at least 25% of the workers engaged in asbestos handling (removal, disposal, transport and other associated



work) throughout the duration of the project. If the quantity of airborne asbestos fibers monitored at the breathing zone of the workers at any time exceeds 0.1 fibers per cubic centimeter, notify the PQP immediately, evaluate work practices, and take corrective action to reduce airborne asbestos fibers.

E. Clean-Up And Disposal

1. Housekeeping

- a. Essential parts of asbestos dust control are housekeeping and clean-up procedures. Maintain surfaces of the asbestos control area free of accumulations of asbestos fibers. Give meticulous attention to restricting the spread of dust and debris; keep waste from being distributed over the general area. Use HEPA filtered vacuum cleaners. **DO NOT BLOW DOWN THE SPACE WITH COMPRESSED AIR.** All asbestos waste shall be placed in an approved on-site storage facility or transported for disposal daily. When asbestos removal is complete, all asbestos waste is removed from the work-site, and final clean-up is completed, the PQP shall visually inspect the asbestos control area for cleanliness. After final clean-up and acceptable pre-clearance airborne concentrations are attained but before the local exhaust system is turned off and the negative pressure enclosure removed), remove all pre-filters on the building HVAC system and provide new pre-filters.
- b. Dispose of filters as asbestos contaminated materials. Reestablish HVAC, mechanical, and electrical systems in proper working order.

2. Title to Materials: All waste materials, except as specified otherwise, shall become the property of the Contractor and shall be disposed of as specified in applicable Federal, State, and local regulations and herein.

3. Disposal of Asbestos

- a. Collect all removed asbestos containing material, contaminated materials, contaminated water, scrap, debris, bags, containers, expendable equipment, and asbestos contaminated clothing which may produce airborne asbestos fibers and place in sealed fiber-proof, waterproof, non-returnable containers (e.g. double plastic bags 0.15 mm 6 mils thick, cartons, drums or cans). Wastes within the containers must be adequately wet in accordance with 40 CFR 61-SUBPART M. Affix a warning and Department of Transportation (DOT) label to each container including the bags or use at least 0.15 mm 6 mils thick bags with the approved warnings and DOT labeling preprinted on the bag.
- b. Each container or bag shall clearly indicate that the waste generator is the Owner and the development at which the waste is generated, and the Job Order number of the project.
- c. Prevent contamination of the transport vehicle (especially if the transport vehicle is a rented truck likely to be used in the future for non-asbestos purposes). These precautions include lining the vehicle cargo area with plastic sheeting (similar to work area enclosure) and thorough cleaning of the cargo area after transport and unloading of asbestos debris is complete. Dispose of waste asbestos material at an Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) or State-approved asbestos landfill off the Owner's property. For temporary storage, store sealed impermeable bags in asbestos waste drums or skids. An area for interim storage of asbestos waste-containing drums or skids will be coordinated with the the Owner. Procedure for hauling and disposal shall comply with 40 CFR 61-SUBPART M, State, regional, and local standards. Sealed plastic bags may be dumped from drums into the burial site unless the bags have been broken or damaged. Damaged bags shall remain in the drum and the entire contaminated drum shall be buried. Uncontaminated drums may be recycled. Workers unloading the sealed drums shall wear appropriate respirators and personal protective equipment when handling asbestos materials at the disposal site.

END OF SECTION 02 82 33 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
02 82 33 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
02 82 33 00	02 61 26 00	Disposal Of Hazardous Materials
02 82 33 00	02 61 26 00a	Removal Of Friable Asbestos-Containing Materials
02 82 33 00	02 82 16 00	Encapsulation (Lock-Down) Of Asbestos-Containing Materials



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



**SECTION 02 83 19 13 - REMOVAL AND DISPOSAL OF LEAD-CONTAINING PAINT**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the removal and disposal of lead-based or lead-containing paint. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Definitions

1. Action Level: Employee exposure, without regard to use of respirators, to an airborne concentration of lead of 30 micrograms per cubic meter of air averaged over an 8 hour period in an occupational/industrial environment.
2. Area Sampling: Sampling of lead concentrations within the lead control area and inside the physical boundaries which is representative of the airborne lead concentrations but is not collected in the breathing zone of personnel.
3. Competent Person (CP): As used in this section, refers to a person employed by the Contractor who is trained in the recognition and control of lead hazards in accordance with current federal, State, and local regulations. An industrial hygienist or safety professional certified for comprehensive practice by the American Board of Industrial Hygiene or by the Board of Certified Safety Professionals is the best choice.
4. Contaminated Room: Room for removal of contaminated personal protective equipment (PPE).
5. Decontamination Shower Facility: That facility that encompasses a clean clothing storage room, and a contaminated clothing storage and disposal rooms, with a shower facility in between.
6. Eight-Hour Time Weighted Average (TWA): Airborne concentration of lead to which an employee is exposed, averaged over an 8 hour workday as indicated in 29 CFR 1926.62.
7. High Efficiency Particulate Air (HEPA) Filter Equipment: HEPA filtered vacuuming equipment with a UL 586 filter system capable of collecting and retaining lead-contaminated paint dust. A high efficiency particulate filter means 99.97 percent efficient against 0.3 micron or larger size particles.
8. Lead: Metallic lead, inorganic lead compounds, and organic lead soaps.
9. Lead-Based Paint (LBP): Paint or other surface coating that contains lead in excess of 1.0 milligrams per centimeter squared or 0.5 percent by weight.
10. Lead-Based Paint Hazard (LBP Hazard): Any condition that causes exposure to lead from lead-contaminated dust, lead-contaminated soil, lead-based paint that is deteriorated or present in accessible surfaces, friction surfaces, or impact surfaces that would result in adverse human health effects.
11. Lead-Containing Paint (LCP): Lead-based paint or other similar surface coating containing lead or lead compound in excess of 0.06 percent by weight of the total nonvolatile content of the paint.
12. Lead Control Area: An enclosed area or structure, constructed as a temporary containment equipped with HEPA filtered local exhaust, which prevents the spread of lead dust, paint chips, or debris existing as a condition of lead-based paint removal operations. The lead control area is also isolated by physical boundaries to prevent unauthorized entry of personnel.
13. Lead Permissible Exposure Limit (PEL): Fifty micrograms per cubic meter of air as an 8 hour time weighted average as determined by 29 CFR 1926.62. If an employee is exposed for more than eight hours in a work day, the PEL shall be determined by the following formula:  
$$\text{PEL (micrograms/cubic meter of air)} = 400/\text{No. hrs. worked per day.}$$
14. Personal Sampling: Sampling of airborne lead concentrations within the breathing zone of an employee to determine the 8 hour time weighted average concentration in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62. Samples shall be representative of the employees' work tasks. Breathing zone shall be considered an area within a hemisphere, forward of the shoulders, with a radius of 6 to 9 inches (150 to 225 mm) and centered at the nose or mouth of an employee.



15. Physical Boundary: Area physically roped or partitioned off around an enclosed lead control area to limit unauthorized entry of personnel. As used in this section, "inside boundary" shall mean the same as "outside lead control area but inside boundary."

C. Submittals: Submit the following:

1. Product Data:
  - a. Vacuum filters
  - b. Respirators
2. Test Reports
  - a. Sampling results
  - b. Assessment data report
3. Certificates
  - a. Qualifications of CP
  - b. Testing laboratory</SUB> qualifications
  - c. Third party consultant qualifications
  - d. Lead-Based Paint/Lead-Containing Paint Removal Plan including CP approval (signature, date, and certification number)
  - e. Rental equipment notification
  - f. Respiratory protection program
  - g. Hazard communication program
  - h. EPA approved hazardous waste treatment or disposal facility for lead disposal
  - i. Hazardous waste management plan
  - j. Vacuum filters
4. Manufacturer's Instructions
  - a. Chemicals and equipment
  - b. Materials
  - c. Material safety data sheets for all chemicals
5. Closeout Submittals
  - a. Completed and signed hazardous waste manifest from treatment or disposal facility
  - b. Certification of medical examinations
  - c. Employee training certification

D. Qualifications Of CP

1. Submit name, address, and telephone number of the CP selected to perform responsibilities specified in paragraph entitled "Competent Person (CP) Responsibilities." Provide previous experience of the CP. Submit proper documentation that the CP is trained and licensed and certified in accordance with Federal, State, and local laws.

E. Third Party Consultant Qualifications

1. Submit the name, address, and telephone number of the third party consultant selected to perform the wipe sampling for determining concentrations of lead in dust or soil sampling. Submit proper documentation that the consultant is trained and certified as an inspector technician or inspector/risk assessor by the USEPA authorized State (or local) certification and accreditation program.

F. Testing Laboratory

1. Submit the name, address, and telephone number of the testing laboratory selected to perform the air and wipe and soil sampling, testing, and reporting of airborne concentrations of lead. Use a laboratory accredited under the EPA National Lead Laboratory Accreditation Program (NLLAP) by either the American Association for Laboratory Accreditation (A2LA) or the American Industrial Hygiene Association (AIHA) and that is successfully participating in the Environmental Lead Proficiency Analytical Testing (ELPAT) program to perform sample analysis.

G. Lead-Based Paint/Lead-Containing Paint Removal Plan (LBP/LCPRP)



1. Submit a detailed job-specific plan of the work procedures to be used in the removal of LBP/LCP. The plan shall include a sketch showing the location, size, and details of lead control areas, location and details of decontamination facilities, viewing ports, and mechanical ventilation system. Include in the plan, eating, drinking, smoking and sanitary procedures, interface of trades, sequencing of lead related work, collected waste water and paint debris disposal plan, air sampling plan, respirators, personal protective equipment, and a detailed description of the method of containment of the operation to ensure that airborne lead concentrations of 30 micrograms per cubic meter of air and baseline lead dust/soil concentrations are not reached or exceeded outside of the lead control area. Include site preparation and cleanup procedures. Include occupational and environmental sampling, training and strategy, sampling methodology, frequency, duration of sampling, and qualifications of sampling personnel in the air sampling portion of the plan.
- H. Occupational And Environmental Sampling Results
1. Submit occupational and environmental sampling results to the the Owner within three working days of collection, signed by the testing laboratory responsible official, the employee that performed the sampling, and the CP.
    - a. The sampling results shall represent each job classification, or if working conditions are similar to previous jobs by the same employer, provide previously collected exposure data that can be used to estimate worker exposures in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62. The data shall represent the worker's regular daily exposure to lead.
    - b. Submit worker exposure data conducted during the task based trigger operations of 29 CFR 1926.62.
    - c. The initial monitoring shall determine the requirements for further monitoring and the need to fully implement the control and protective requirements including the compliance program (LBP/LCP) in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62.
- I. Occupational And Environmental Assessment Data Report:
1. Some LBP/LCP removal work may not require full implementation of the requirements of 29 CFR 1926.62. Based on the experience of the Contractor and/or the use of a specific process or method for performing the work, the Contractor may be able to provide historic data (previous 12 months) to demonstrate that airborne exposures are controlled below the action level. Such methods or controls shall be fully presented in the LBP/LCPRP. To reduce the full implementation of 29 CFR 1926.62, the Contractor shall provide documentation in an Assessment Data Report.
  2. Submit occupational and environmental assessment report to the the Owner prior to start of work, signed by the testing laboratory responsible official, and the CP.
    - a. Submit a report that supports the determination regarding the reduction of the need to fully implement the requirements of 29 CFR 1926.62 and supporting the LBP/LCP. The exposure assessment shall represent each job classification, or if working conditions are similar to previous jobs by the same employer, provide previously collected exposure data that can be used to estimate worker exposures in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62. The data shall represent the worker's regular daily exposure to lead for stated work.
    - b. Submit worker exposure data conducted during the task based trigger operations of 29 CFR 1926.62 with a complete process description in supporting a negative assessment.
    - c. The initial assessment shall determine the requirement for further monitoring and the need to fully implement the control and protective requirements including the compliance program (LBP/LCPRP) in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62.
- J. Quality Assurance
1. Medical Examinations: Initial medical surveillance as required by 29 CFR 1926.62 shall be made available to all employees exposed to lead at any time (1 day) above the action level. Full medical surveillance shall be made available to all employees on an annual basis who are or may be exposed to lead in excess of the action level for more than 30 days a year or as required by 29 CFR 1926.62. Adequate records shall show that employees meet the medical surveillance requirements of 29 CFR 1926.33, 29 CFR 1926.62, and 29 CFR 1926.103.



- a. Medical Records: Maintain complete and accurate medical records of employees for a period of at least 30 years or for the duration of employment plus 30 years, whichever is longer.
- b. Medical Surveillance: Provide medical surveillance to all personnel exposed to lead as indicated in 29 CFR 1926.62.
2. Competent Person (CP) Responsibilities
  - a. Certify training as meeting all federal, State, and local requirements.
  - b. Review and approve lead-based paint/lead-containing paint removal plan for conformance to the applicable referenced standards.
  - c. Continuously inspect lead-based paint removal work for conformance with the approved plan.
  - d. Perform air and wipe sampling.
  - e. Ensure work is performed in strict accordance with specifications at all times.
  - f. Control work to prevent hazardous exposure to human beings and to the environment at all times.
  - g. Certify the conditions of the work as called for elsewhere in this specification.
3. Training: Train each employee performing paint removal, disposal, and air sampling operations prior to the time of initial job assignment and annually thereafter, in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.21, 29 CFR 1926.62, and State and local regulations.
  - a. Training Certification: Submit a certificate for each employee, signed and dated by the approved training source, stating that the employee has received the required lead training.
4. Respiratory Protection Program
  - a. Furnish each employee required to wear a negative pressure respirator or other appropriate type with a respirator fit test at the time of initial fitting and at least annually thereafter as required by 29 CFR 1926.62.
  - b. Establish and implement a respiratory protection program as required by ANSI Z88.2, 29 CFR 1926.103, 29 CFR 1926.62, and 29 CFR 1926.55.
5. Hazard Communication Program: Establish and implement a Hazard Communication Program as required by 29 CFR 1926.59.
6. Hazardous Waste Management: The Hazardous Waste Management Plan shall comply with applicable requirements of federal, State, and local hazardous waste regulations and address:
  - a. Identification and classification of hazardous wastes associated with the work.
  - b. Estimated quantities of wastes to be generated and disposed of.
  - c. Names and qualifications of each contractor that will be transporting, storing, treating, and disposing of the wastes. Include the facility location and operator and a 24-hour point of contact. Furnish two copies of EPA, or State and local hazardous waste permit applications or permits or manifests, as required, and EPA Identification numbers.
  - d. Names and qualifications (experience and training) of personnel who will be working on-site with hazardous wastes.
  - e. List of waste handling equipment to be used in performing the work, to include cleaning, volume reduction, and transport equipment.
  - f. Spill prevention, containment, and cleanup contingency measures including a health and safety plan to be implemented in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.65.
  - g. Work plan and schedule for waste containment, removal and disposal. Wastes shall be cleaned up and containerized daily.
  - h. Unit cost for hazardous waste disposal according to this plan.
7. Environmental, Safety and Health Compliance: In addition to the detailed requirements of this specification, comply with laws, ordinances, rules, and regulations of Federal, State, and local authorities regarding removing, handling, storing, transporting, and disposing of lead waste materials. Comply with the applicable requirements of the current issue of 29 CFR 1926.62. Submit matters regarding interpretation of standards to the the Owner for resolution before starting work. Where specification requirements and the referenced documents vary, the most stringent requirement shall apply.



8. Pre-Construction Conference: Along with the CP, meet with the the Owner to discuss in detail the hazardous waste management plan and the lead-based paint/lead-containing paint removal plan, including work procedures and precautions for the removal plan.

K. Equipment

1. Respirators: Furnish appropriate respirators approved by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH), Department of Health and Human Services, for use in atmospheres containing lead dust. Respirators shall comply with the requirements of 29 CFR 1926.62.
2. Special Protective Clothing: Furnish personnel who will be exposed to lead-contaminated dust with proper disposable uncontaminated, reusable protective whole body clothing, head covering, gloves, and foot coverings as required by 29 CFR 1926.62. Furnish proper disposable plastic or rubber gloves to protect hands. Reduce the level of protection only after obtaining approval from the CP.
3. Rental Equipment Notification: If rental equipment is to be used during lead-based paint handling and disposal, notify the rental agency in writing concerning the intended use of the equipment. Furnish a copy of the written notification to the the Owner.
4. Vacuum Filters: UL 586 labeled HEPA filters.
5. Equipment for Owner's Personnel: Furnish the the Owner with two complete sets of personal protective equipment (PPE) daily, as required herein, for entry into and inspection of the paint removal work within the lead controlled area. Personal protective equipment shall include disposable whole body covering, including appropriate foot, head, and hand protection. PPE shall remain the property of the Contractor. Respiratory protection for the the Owner will be provided by the Owner.

L. Removal

1. Title to Materials: Materials resulting from demolition work, except as specified otherwise, shall become the property of the Contractor and shall be disposed of in accordance with Division 02 Section(s) "Selective Structure Demolition" OR "Structure Demolition", except as specified herein.

1.2 PRODUCT

A. Chemicals

1. Submit applicable Material Safety Data Sheets for all chemicals used in paint removal work. Use the least toxic product approved by the the Owner.

B. Materials

1. The soluble metal content and the total metal content shall not exceed values which would cause a material to be classified as a hazardous waste.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Protection

1. Notification: Notify the the Owner 20 days prior to the start of any paint removal work.
2. Lead Control Area Requirements
  - a. If LBP will be removed by means which will not likely create airborne, lead-containing dust (such as careful wet scraping or chemical stripping), establish a lead control area by situating critical barriers and physical boundaries around the area or structure where LBP/LCP removal operations will be performed.
  - b. If removal practice will create airborne, lead-containing dust (such as sanding, abrasive blasting, thermal cutting, demolition, or needle gun use), utilize full containment procedures - Contain removal operations by the use of critical barriers and HEPA filtered exhaust **OR** a negative pressure enclosure system with decontamination facilities and with HEPA filtered exhaust if required by the CP, **as directed**. For containment areas larger than 1,000 square feet (100 square meters) install a minimum of two 18 inch (450 mm) square viewing



- ports. Locate ports to provide a view of the required work from the exterior of the enclosed contaminated area. Glaze ports with laminated safety glass.
3. Protection of Existing Work to Remain: Perform paint removal work without damage or contamination of adjacent areas. Where existing work is damaged or contaminated, restore work to its original condition or better.
  4. Boundary Requirements: Provide physical boundaries around the lead control area by roping off the area designated in the work plan or providing curtains, portable partitions or other enclosures to ensure that airborne concentrations of lead will not reach 30 micrograms per cubic meter of air outside of the lead control area.
    - a. Physical Boundary: Provide physical boundaries around the lead control area by roping off the area designated in the work plan or providing curtains, portable partitions or other enclosures to ensure that airborne concentrations of lead will not reach 30 micrograms per cubic meter of air outside of the lead control area.
    - b. Warning Signs: Provide warning signs at approaches to lead control areas. Locate signs at such a distance that personnel may read the sign and take the necessary precautions before entering the area. Signs shall comply with the requirements of 29 CFR 1926.62.
  5. Furnishings:
    - a. The Owner will remove furniture and equipment from the building before lead-based paint removal work begins.  
**OR**  
 Furniture and equipment will remain in the building. Protect and cover furnishings or remove furnishings from the work area and store in a location approved by the the Owner.  
**OR**  
 Existing furniture and equipment is lead contaminated, decontaminate, dispose of as lead contaminated waste.
  6. Heating, Ventilating and Air Conditioning (HVAC) Systems: Shut down, lock out, and isolate HVAC systems that supply, exhaust, or pass through the lead control areas. Seal intake and exhaust vents in the lead control area with 6 mil (0.15 mm) plastic sheet and tape. Seal seams in HVAC components that pass through the lead control area. Provide temporary HVAC system for areas in which HVAC has been shut down outside the lead control area.
  7. Decontamination Shower Facility: Provide clean and contaminated change rooms and shower facilities in accordance with this specification and 29 CFR 1926.62.
  8. Eye Wash Station: Where eyes may be exposed to injurious corrosive materials, suitable facilities for quick drenching or flushing of the eyes shall be provided within the work area.
  9. Mechanical Ventilation System
    - a. Use adequate ventilation to control personnel exposure to lead in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62.
    - b. To the extent feasible, use fixed local exhaust ventilation connected to HEPA filters or other collection systems, approved by the CP. Local exhaust ventilation systems shall be designed, constructed, installed, and maintained in accordance with ANSI Z9.2.
    - c. Vent local exhaust outside the building only and away from building ventilation intakes.
    - d. Use locally exhausted, power actuated, paint removal tools.
  10. Personnel Protection: Personnel shall wear and use protective clothing and equipment as specified herein. Eating, smoking, or drinking or application of cosmetics is not permitted in the lead control area. No one will be permitted in the lead control area unless they have been appropriately trained and provided with protective equipment.
- B. Work Procedures: Perform removal of lead-based paint in accordance with approved lead-based paint/lead-containing paint removal plan. Use procedures and equipment required to limit occupational and environmental exposure to lead when lead-based paint is removed in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62, except as specified herein. Dispose of removed paint chips and associated waste in compliance with Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), federal, State, and local requirements.
1. Personnel Exiting Procedures: Whenever personnel exit the lead-controlled area, they shall perform the following procedures and shall not leave the work place wearing any clothing or equipment worn during the work day:



- a. Vacuum themselves off.
  - b. Remove protective clothing in the contaminated change room, and place them in an approved impermeable disposal bag.
  - c. Shower **OR** Wash hands and face at the site, **as directed**, don appropriate disposable or uncontaminated reusable clothing; move to an appropriate facility; shower.
  - d. Change to clean clothes prior to leaving the physical boundary designated around the lead control area.
2. Air and Wipe Sampling
- a. Air sample for lead in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62 and as specified herein. Air and wipe sampling shall be directed or performed by the CP.
    - 1) The CP shall be on the job site directing the air and non-clearance wipe sampling and inspecting the lead-based paint removal work to ensure that the requirements of the contract have been satisfied during the entire lead-based paint removal operation.
    - 2) Collect personal air samples on employees who are anticipated to have the greatest risk of exposure as determined by the CP. In addition, collect air samples on at least 25 percent of the work crew or a minimum of two employees, whichever is greater, during each work shift.
    - 3) Submit results of air samples, signed by the CP, within 72 hours after the air samples are taken. Notify the the Owner immediately of exposure to lead at or in excess of the action level of 30 micrograms per cubic meter of air outside of the lead control area.
    - 4) For high profile, sensitive work such as present in family housing, child care facilities, administrative buildings, kitchens, barracks, etc., surface dust sampling to determine clearance (i.e., that the work has not contaminated surfaces within and adjacent to the control area) should be performed by a third party to reduce a conflict of interest. Samples must be conducted by an individual not paid or employed or otherwise compensated by the LBP/LCP removal Contractor. State or local regulations may require third party testing if the LBP/LCP removal operation is considered a lead hazard reduction activity.
    - 5) Before any work begins, collect and analyze baseline or soil wipe samples in accordance with methods defined in federal, State, and local standards inside and outside of the physical boundary to assess the degree of dust contamination in the facility prior to lead-based paint removal.
  - b. Air Sampling During Paint Removal Work: Conduct area air sampling daily, on each shift in which lead-based paint removal operations are performed, in areas immediately adjacent to the lead control area. Sufficient area monitoring shall be conducted to ensure unprotected personnel are not exposed at or above 30 micrograms per cubic meter of air. If 30 micrograms per cubic meter of air is reached or exceeded, stop work, correct the condition(s) causing the increased levels. Notify the the Owner immediately. Determine if condition(s) require any further change in work methods. Removal work shall resume only after approval is given by the CP and the the Owner. For outdoor operations, at least one sample on each shift shall be taken on the downwind side of the lead control area.
3. Lead-Based Paint Removal
- a. Manual or power sanding of interior and exterior surfaces is not permitted. Provide methodology for removing LBP in work plan. Remove paint within the areas designated on the drawings in order to completely expose the substrate. Take whatever precautions necessary to minimize damage to the underlying substrate.
  - b. Avoid flash rusting or deterioration of the substrate. Provide surface preparations for painting in accord with Division 07.
  - c. Provide methodology for removing LBP/LCP removal processes to minimize contamination of work areas outside the control area with lead-contaminated dust or other lead-contaminated debris/waste and to ensure that unprotected personnel are not exposed to hazardous concentrations of lead. Describe this LBP/LCP removal process in the LBP/LCPRP.



- d. Indoor Lead Paint Removal: Perform manual **OR** mechanical **OR** thermal **OR** chemical, **as directed**, paint removal in lead control areas using enclosures, barriers, or containments and powered locally exhausted paint removal tools. Collect residue and/or debris for disposal in accordance with federal, State, and local requirements.
  - e. Outdoor Lead Paint Removal: Perform outdoor removal as indicated in federal, State, and local regulations and in the LBP/CPRP. The worksite preparation (barriers or containments) shall be job dependent and presented in the LBP/LCPRP.
  - f. Sampling After Paint Removal: After the visual inspection, conduct soil sampling if bare soil is present during external removal operations and collect air samples inside and outside the lead control area to determine the airborne levels of lead inside and outside the work area. Collect wipe samples according to the HUD protocol contained in HUD Guidelines to determine the lead content of settled dust and dirt in micrograms per square foot (square meter) of surface area and parts per million (ppm) or micrograms per gram ( $\mu\text{g/g}$ ) for soil.
4. Cleanup and Disposal
- a. Cleanup: Maintain surfaces of the lead control area free of accumulations of paint chips and dust. Restrict the spread of dust and debris; keep waste from being distributed over the work area. Do not dry sweep or use compressed air to clean up the area. At the end of each shift and when the paint removal operation has been completed, clean the area of visible lead paint contamination by vacuuming with a HEPA filtered vacuum cleaner, wet mopping the area and wet wiping the area as indicated by the CP. Reclean areas showing dust or residual paint chips or debris. After visible dust, chips and debris is removed, wet wipe and HEPA vacuum all surfaces in the work area. If adjacent areas become contaminated at any time during the work, clean, visually inspect, and then wipe sample all contaminated areas. The CP shall then certify in writing that the area has been cleaned of lead contamination before restarting work.
  - b. Clearance Certification
    - 1) The CP shall certify in writing that the final air samples collected inside and outside the lead control area are less than 30 micrograms per cubic meter of air; the respiratory protection used for the employees was adequate; the work procedures were performed in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62 and 40 CFR 745; and that there were no visible accumulations of material and dust containing lead left in the work site. Do not remove the lead control area or roped off boundary and warning signs prior to the the Owner's acknowledgement of receipt of the CP certification.
    - 2) A third party consultant shall certify surface wipe sample results collected inside and outside the work area are less than 100 micrograms per square foot (0.1 square meter) on uncarpeted floors, less than 500 micrograms per square foot (0.1 square meter) on interior window sills and less than 800 micrograms per square foot (0.1 square meter) on window troughs **OR** not significantly greater than the initial surface loading determined prior to work, **as directed**.
    - 3) For exterior paint removal work, soil samples taken at the exterior of the work site shall be used to determine if soil lead levels had increased at a statistically significant level (significant at the 95 percent confidence limit) from the soil lead levels prior to the work. If soil lead levels do show a statistically significant increase above any applicable Federal or State standard for lead in soil, the soil shall be remediated back to the pre-work level.
  - c. Testing of Lead-Based Paint Residue and Used Abrasive: Test paint residue and used abrasive in accordance with 40 CFR 261 for hazardous waste.
  - d. Disposal
    - 1) Collect lead-contaminated waste, scrap, debris, bags, containers, equipment, and lead-contaminated clothing which may produce airborne concentrations of lead particles. Label the containers in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62 and 40 CFR 261. Dispose of lead-contaminated waste material at an EPA or State approved hazardous waste treatment, storage, or disposal facility off Owner's property.





- 2) Store waste materials in U.S. Department of Transportation (49 CFR 178) approved 55 gallon (208 liter) drums. Properly label each drum to identify the type of waste (49 CFR 172) and the date the drum was filled. The the Owner or an authorized representative will assign an area for interim storage of waste-containing drums. Do not store hazardous waste drums in interim storage longer than 90 calendar days from the date affixed to each drum.
- 3) Handle, store, transport, and dispose lead or lead-contaminated waste in accordance with 40 CFR 260, 40 CFR 261, 40 CFR 262, 40 CFR 263, 40 CFR 264, and 40 CFR 265. Comply with land disposal restriction notification requirements as required by 40 CFR 268.
- 4) All material, whether hazardous or non-hazardous shall be disposed in accordance with laws and provisions and Federal, State, or local regulations. Ensure waste is properly characterized. The result of each waste characterization (TCLP for RCRA materials) will dictate disposal requirements.
5. Disposal Documentation: Submit written evidence that the hazardous waste treatment, storage, or disposal facility (TSD) is approved for lead disposal by the EPA and State or local regulatory agencies. Submit one copy of the completed manifest, signed and dated by the initial transporter in accordance with 40 CFR 262.
6. Payment for Hazardous Waste: Payment for disposal of hazardous waste will not be made until a signed copy of the manifest from the treatment or disposal facility certifying the amount of lead-containing materials delivered is returned and a copy is furnished to the Owner.

END OF SECTION 02 83 19 13



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 02 83 19 13a - LEAD PAINT RELATED ABATEMENT PROCEDURES**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for lead paint related abatement procedures. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. General Provisions

1. The site of this work will be occupied while work is being done. Perform the abatement work with the least inconvenience to the residents.
2. Take all necessary precautions to protect the property of the the Owner and its residents. Damaged property shall be repaired and restored to its original condition. If the damage is beyond repair, the Contractor shall replace it with new materials to match existing, at the Contractor's expense.
3. Hazardous waste generated during the abatement process (including lead-base paint) when carted away from the developments shall not be transferred from one vehicle to another except at a licensed transfer station.
4. Develop a work plan to be performed as requested by the the Owner. The detailed plan shall include sequencing of abatement work in a manner that will be least disruptive to the normal use of the non-work areas in the building. The plan should also include emergency procedures in case of fire.
5. The Contractor shall include all supplementary miscellaneous items not specified but implied or required in order to complete the work.
6. Workmanship required in the execution of the work herein specified shall be of good quality and subject to the approval of the the Owner.
7. Make in a timely fashion all applicable and necessary notifications to relevant Federal, State and Local authorities. The Contractor shall indemnify the the Owner and the the Owner's representative from, and pay all claims resulting from failure to adhere to these provisions.
8. the Owner may retain an independent Monitoring Contractor to monitor the abatement contract and conduct all wipe sampling and clearance tests.
9. Contractor performing lead-based paint abatement or renovation activities involving lead-based paint shall be a Certified Lead Abatement Contractor and shall ensure that supervisors and workers are trained and certified by U.S. EPA approved state program or equivalent, to perform lead paint removal operations.
10. Establish and implement a Chemical Hazard Communication Program as required by OSHA regulations 29 CFR 1926.59.
11. Provide workers with a comprehensive medical examination as required by OSHA regulations 29 CFR 1926.62 before exposure to lead contaminated dust. The medical examination shall be conducted to approve use of appropriate respirators and shall include biological monitoring. NIOSH/MSHA approved respirators shall be utilized.
12. For employees required to wear a negative pressure respirators: conduct a respirator fit test at the time of initial fitting and at least once every six (6) months thereafter as required by OSHA regulations 29 CFR 1926.62.
13. Determine if any worker will be exposed to lead at or above the action level in accordance with OSHA regulation 29 CFR 1926.62 and 29 CFR 1910.1025. Conduct an exposure assessment to identify the level of exposure a worker would be subjected to without respiratory protection. Assess the exposure level by obtaining personal monitoring samples representative of a full shift of at least an 8-hour TWA.
14. Furnish appropriate respirators approved by NIOSH/MSHA for use in atmospheres containing lead aerosols. Instruct workers in all aspects of respiratory protection. Maintain an adequate supply of HEPA filter elements and spare parts on site for all types of respirators in use.



15. For manual demolition, scraping, sanding, use of heat gun or power tool paint removal with HEPA collection systems, workers shall minimally use the half-mask negative pressure respirator with high efficiency filters (for airborne concentrations not in excess of 500µg/m<sup>3</sup>).
16. Ensure that work area preparation, work practices, and clean-up procedures comply with these specifications and applicable Federal, State and Local regulations.
17. Notify all applicable agencies five days prior to the date the abatement will begin and provide evidence of notifications to the the Owner at the pre-start meeting.

#### C. Submissions

1. Within ten (10) consecutive calendar days calculated from the date of the the Owner's Job Order, the Contractor shall tender all required submissions. Six (6) sets of each submission are required. Where physical samples are required two (2) physical samples shall be submitted for each item. In general, items shall include but not be restricted to the following:
  - a. Paint remover - corner cutter/Vac-Pac System by Pentek Inc; Decontamination Products Division 1026 Fourth Avenue, Corapolis, PA. 15108. Telephone No. (412) 262-0725 or approved equal.
  - b. Description of removal method to be used on each substrate condition including manufacturer's operating instructions and recommendation for equipment usage.
  - c. Copies of current training certificates of Staff to be assigned to the contract.
  - d. List of three previous lead abatement jobs performed successfully by Contractor and name, address, and telephone number of contact person for verification.
2. In the event that all or any portion of the submitted material is rejected by the the Owner, the Contractor shall tender new submissions. All submissions returned for corrections shall be resubmitted with the required corrections within ten(10) consecutive calendar days calculated from the date of rejection, until final submissions are obtained that require no further correction. In no event shall the Contractor be permitted to tender submissions hereunder beyond twenty (20) days from the the Owner's Job Order, unless duly extended in writing by the the Owner.
3. No work shall begin, nor shall the materials be ordered or delivered to the site until final approval of all submissions.

#### D. Applicable Regulations

1. 24 CFR Part 35
2. HUD "Guidelines For the Evaluation and Control of Lead-Based Paint Hazards in Housing"
3. Abatement work shall also be in accordance with applicable regulations of the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), Occupational Safety & Health Agency (OSHA) and any State or Local LBP standards. Where there is a conflict between Federal, State or Local regulations, the more stringent requirement shall prevail.
4. OSHA Standards
  - a. 29 CFR 1926.20 General safety and health provisions;
  - b. 29 CFR 1926.21 Safety training and education;
  - c. 29 CFR 1925.25 Housekeeping;
  - d. 29 CFR 1926-28 Personal protective equipment;
  - e. 29 CFR 1926.51(f) Washing facilities;
  - f. 29 CFR 1926.55 Gases, vapors, fumes, dusts, and mists;
  - g. 29 CFR 1926.57 Ventilation
  - h. 29 CFR 1926.59 Hazardous Communication Standards;
  - i. 29 CFR 1926.103 Respiratory protection, and
  - j. 29 CFR 1926.62 Lead in Construction
5. The Contractor must comply with all applicable requirements of the Resource Conservation & Recovery Act (RCRA) of 1976 as amended in 1980 and 1984 by the Hazardous & Solid Waste Amendments (HSWA).
6. These Specifications refer to many requirements found in the preceding references but in no way is it intended to cite or reiterate all provisions therein or elsewhere. It is the Contractor's responsibility to obtain a copy, and know, understand and abide by all such regulations, guidelines and common practices.



1.2 PRODUCTS – (not used)

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Abatement

1. Have risk assessment or paint inspection performed by certified risk assessor or a certified inspector technician who is independent of the abatement contractor.
2. Develop a site specific lead hazard control plan, reviewed and signed by an asbestos consultant (LAC) who is licensed in the State in which the work is to be performed, and submit for review and approval to the the Owner.
3. Obtain any necessary building or waste permits, notify local authorities as required by applicable codes and laws.
4. Select specific building component replacement items, enclosure materials, paint removal equipment and/or chemicals, tools, and cleaning supplies. Consider waste management and historical preservation implications of selected treatment.
5. Develop project specific specifications.
6. Schedule other work so that leaded surfaces are not inadvertently disturbed and unprotected workers are not place at risk. Include time for clearance examinations and laboratory dust sample analysis in the scheduling process.
7. Select a certified abatement subcontractor.
8. Conduct a pre-construction conference to ensure that the subcontractor fully understands the work involved.
9. Notify residents of the dwelling and adjacent dwellings of the work and date it will begin. Coordinate this with the the Owner.
10. Correct any existing conditions that could impede the abatement work (i.e. trash removal, structural deficiencies).
11. Post warning signs and restrict entry to work area to authorized personnel. Implement worksite preparation procedures.
  - a. Place proper warning signs required by OSHA regulations at all entrances to the work area. Signage shall be minimum of 12" x 20" and shall state the following:

**WARNING  
LEAD WORK AREA  
POISON  
NO SMOKING OR EATING**

12. Coordinate test, pilot or sample portion approach to the project with the Owner.
13. Shut-down forced air heating, ventilation and air conditioning systems and cover all vents, diffusers, windows etc., with a single layer six-mil polyethylene sheet secured with duct tape. Exceptions shall be for minor disturbances of area less than 2 square feet and where if vents, diffusers, and windows are more than 5 feet away from surface being disturbed, they need not be covered.
14. Collect preabatement soil samples, which may not have to be analyzed until post abatement soil samples have been collected, analyzed, and compared to clearance standards. If postabatement soil levels are below applicable limits, the preabatement samples need not be analyzed.
15. Cover entrances to the work area with a single layer of 6 mil polyethylene sheets taped to the top and weighted at bottom.
16. Rig a containment non-flammable polyethylene sheet underneath the work area. This containment method should catch all stripped paint for proper disposal.
17. Execute abatement work.
18. Avoid spreading dust and debris outside the work area.
19. Store all waste in a secure area and make sure it is properly labeled with an accumulation start date.
20. Conduct daily and final cleanup.
21. Execute waste disposal procedures.



22. Maintain appropriate records.

**B. Paint Removal**

1. Do not use the following prohibited paint removal methods:
  - a. Dry scraping or sanding (except for limited areas)
  - b. Use of heat gun over 1,100°F
  - c. Open flame burning or torching
  - d. Machine sanding or grinding without HEPA vacuum exhaust tool
  - e. Abrasive blasting or sandblasting without HEPA vacuum exhaust tool
  - f. Uncontained hydro blasting or high-pressure wash
  - g. Use of chemical strippers containing Methylene chloride.
2. Select the appropriate worksite preparation level.
3. For heat gun work, provide fire extinguishers in the work area and ensure that adequate electrical power is available. Use for limited areas only. Train workers to avoid gouging or abrading the substrate.
4. For mechanical removal methods, use tools equipped with HEPA exhaust capability. Be sure workers keep the shroud against the surface being treated. Vacuum blasting and needle guns should not be used on wood, plaster, drywall, or other soft substrates. Observe all manufacturers directions for the amount of vacuum airflow required.
5. For wet scraping, use a spray bottle or wet sponge attached to the scraper to keep the surface wet while scraping. Apply enough water to moisten the surface completely, but not so much that large amounts of water run onto the ground or floor. Do not moisten areas near electrical circuits.
6. For chemical paint removers, determine if the building component can be removed and stripped offsite. Offsite stripping is generally preferred to onsite paint removal. Observe all manufacturers' directions for use of paint removers.
7. For offsite stripping, determine how to remove the component. Score the edges with a knife or razor blade to minimize the damage to adjacent surfaces. Punch or tag the building component, if similar building components are also being stripped offsite (i.e. doors). This will ensure that the individual component is reinstalled in the same location. Inform the offsite paint remover that the lead-based paint component is present for shipping. Wrap the component in plastic and send to the offsite stripping location. Clean all surfaces before reinstallation and remove any lead residue by HEPA vacuuming all surfaces, cleaning with other lead-specific cleaners, or phosphate detergents, and HEPA vacuuming again.
8. For onsite paint removal, first test the product on a small area to determine its effectiveness. Chemical paint removers may not be effective or desirable on exterior, deteriorated wood surfaces, aluminum, and glass. Provide neoprene, nitrile, rubber, or polyvinyl chloride (PVC) gloves (or other type of glove recommended by the manufacture); face shields; respirators with combination filter cartridges for lead dust and organic vapors(if appropriate); and chemically resistant clothing. Be sure to select the right type of organic vapor filter cartridge, gloves, and clothing for the specific chemical being used. Portable eyewash stations capable of providing a 15-minute flow must be on-site. Apply the chemical and wait the required period of time. Securely store chemical s overnight. For caustic chemical paint removers, neutralize the surface before repainting using glacial acetic acid (not vinegar). Repaint.
9. Make sure all debris is caught in the containment sheet for proper disposal.
10. Mark and legally dispose of waste in accordance with all applicable Federal, State and Local regulations. Most wastes from paint removal projects, such as paint chips and paint remover sludge, will need to be managed as hazardous waste.
11. Conduct clean-up
12. Have a certified risk assessor or inspector technician conduct a clearance examination and provide documentation and a Statement of Lead-Based Paint Compliance.

**C. Building Component Replacement**

1. Prepare work area by selecting proper worksite preparation level.
2. Prepare the hazardous material building component for removal. Turn off and disconnect any electrical circuits inside or near the building component to be removed.



3. Lightly mist the component to be removed (unless electrical circuits are located nearby).
4. Score all painted seams with a sharp knife.
5. Remove any screw, nails, or other fasteners.
6. Use flat pry instrument and hammer to pry component from the substrate.
7. Remove or bend back all nails.
8. Wrap and seal all bulk components in plastic and take them to a covered truck or secured waste storage area along a pathway covered in plastic. Shovel any debris. Dispose of properly.
9. HEPA vacuum any dust or chips in the area where the component was located.
10. Conduct cleaning and clearance activities.

D. Soil and Exterior Dust Abatement

1. Determine if soil lead hazard exists. For hazard to exist, a total of at least 9 square feet of soil in a single yard or area must be bare and soil concentrations must exceed 2,000 $\mu\text{g}/\text{gram}$  lead for the yard or building perimeter or 400 $\mu\text{g}/\text{gram}$  of lead for small, high-contact play areas (pending the development of an EPA soil standard). Bare soil above these levels shall be treated by either interim controls or abatement. Soil abatement is most appropriate when levels of lead are extraordinarily high (greater than 5,000 $\mu\text{g}/\text{gram}$  lead) and when use patterns indicate contact frequency and exposure will be high.
2. Collect Preabatement soil samples to determine baseline levels. These samples need not be analyzed if post abatement samples are below applicable clearance levels.
3. Determine the method of soil abatement (soil removal and replacement, soil cleaning, or paving). Soil cultivation (rototilling or turning over the soil) is not permitted.
4. If paving, use a high quality concrete or asphalt. Observe normal precautions associate with traffic load weight and thermal expansion and contraction. Obtain necessary permits. Keep soil cultivation to a minimum.
5. If removing and replacing soil.
  - a. Determine if waste soil will be placed in an offsite burial pit. Prepare vehicle operation and soil movement plan. Test new replacement soil (should not contain more than 200  $\mu\text{g}/\text{gram}$  lead).
  - b. Contact local utilities to determine location of underground utilities including water, gas, cable TV, electric, telephone, and sewer. Mark all locations to be avoided
  - c. Remove fencing, if necessary to allow equipment access and define set limits with temporary fencing, signs, or yellow caution tape.
  - d. Tie and protect existing trees, shrubs, and bushes.
  - e. Have enough tools to avoid handling clean soil with contaminated tools.
  - f. Remove soil.
  - g. Clean all walkways, driveways, and street areas near abatement area.
  - h. Replace soil at proper grade to allow drainage. Replacement soil should be at least 2 inches above existing grade to allow for settling.
  - i. Install new soil covering (grass or sod) and maintain it through the growing season.
  - j. Determine if soil waste is hazardous and manage it accordingly
  - k. Conduct clean-up and clearance.
  - l. Provide walk-off doormats.
  - m. Maintain proper documentation.

E. Encapsulation

1. Determine if the applicable regulations also encapsulates to be used. Do not encapsulate the following surfaces:
  - a. Friction surfaces, such as window jambs and door jambs.
  - b. Surfaces that fail patch tests.
  - c. Surfaces with substrates or existing coatings that have a high level of deterioration.
  - d. Surfaces in which there is a known incompatibility between two existing paint layers.
  - e. Surfaces that cannot support the additional weight stress of encapsulation due to existing paint thickness.
  - f. Metal surfaces that are prone to rust or corrosion.
2. Conduct field tests of surfaces to be encapsulated for paint film integrity.



3. Consider special use and environmental requirements (i.e. abrasion resistance and ability to span base substrate cracks).
4. Provide to the the Owner encapsulant test data provided by the manufacturer.
5. Conduct at least one test patch on each type of building component where the encapsulant will be used. Report the results to the the Owner.
6. For both nonreinforced and reinforced coatings, use a 6" x 6" test patch area. Prepare the surface in the manner selected to complete the job. Prepared surfaces for patch testing should be at least 2" larger in each direction than the patch area.
7. For fiber-reinforced wall coverings, use 3" x 3" patch. For rigid coatings that cannot be cut with a knife, use soundness test. For all encapsulants, carry out the appropriate adhesion tests.
8. For liquid coating encapsulants, allow coating to cure, then visually examine it for wrinkling, blistering, cracking, bubbling, or other chemical reaction with the underlying paint.
9. Record results of all patch tests and provide to the the Owner.
10. Implement proper work site preparation level.
11. Repair all building components and substrates as needed (i.e. caulk cracks and repair sources of water leaks).
12. Prepare surfaces. Remove all dirt, grease, chalking paint, mildew and other surface contaminants, remnants of cleaning solutions, and loose paint. All surfaces should be deglossed, as needed.
13. Ventilate the contaminated area whenever solvents or chemicals are used.
14. During encapsulant application or installation, monitor temperature and humidity. For liquid coatings monitor coating thickness to ensure that the encapsulant manufacturer's installation/application specifications are followed.
15. Conduct clean up and clearance.
16. Provide the the Owner information on how to care for the encapsulation system properly.
17. Maintain records on the exact detailed locations of encapsulant applications, patch test specifications and results, product name, subcontractor, date of application, a copy of the product label and material Data Safety sheet (MSDS) for the product and provide to the the Owner.

#### F. Enclosure

1. Stamp, label or stencil all lead-based painted surfaces that will be enclosed with a warning approximately every 2 feet both horizontally and vertically on all components. The Warning shall read "**Danger Lead-Based Paint**". Deteriorated paint should not be removed from the surface to be enclosed.
2. Select the proper worksite preparation level.
3. Attach a durable drawing to the utility room closet showing where lead-based paint has been enclosed in the dwelling.
4. An independent inspector or technician or risk assessor should evaluate the integrity of the enclosure.
5. Repair any unsound substrates and structural members that will support the enclosure, if necessary.
6. Utilize appropriate enclosure material (drywall or fiberboard, wood paneling, laminated products, ridged tile and brick veneers, vinyl, aluminum m, or plywood).
7. Install extension rings for all electrical switches and outlets that will penetrate the enclosure.
8. If enclosing floors, remove all dirt with a HEPA vacuum to avoid small lumps in the new flooring.
9. Seal and back-caulk all seams and joints. Back-caulk means applying caulk to the underside of the enclosure.
10. When installing enclosure directly to painted surfaces, use adhesive and then anchor with mechanical fasteners (screws or nails).
11. Conduct clean up and clearance activities.
12. Maintain proper records and submit a Statement of Lead-Based Paint Compliance.

#### G. Final Cleaning Procedures

1. Use the following step-by-step procedures





- a. Assign responsibilities to specific workers for cleaning and for maintaining the cleaning equipment.
  - b. Have sufficient cleaning equipment and supplies before beginning work.
  - c. If contamination is extensive, conduct precleaning of the dwelling unit.
  - d. Conduct ongoing cleaning during the job, including regular removal of large and small debris and dust. Decontamination of all tools, equipment and worker protection gear is required before it leaves contaminated areas. Electrical equipment should be wiped and high-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) vacuumed, not wetted down, to minimize electrocution hazards.
  - e. Schedule sufficient time (usually 30 minutes to an hour) for complete daily cleaning, starting at the same time near the end of every workday after lead hazard control activity has stopped.
  - f. For final cleaning, wait at least 1 hour after active lead hazard control activity has ceased to let dust particles settle.
  - g. Use a vacuum cleaner equipped with a HEPA exhaust filter. HEPA vacuum all surfaces in the room (ceilings, walls, trim, and floors). Start with the ceiling and work down, moving toward the entry door. Completely clean each room before moving on.
  - h. Wash all surfaces with lead-specific detergent, high-phosphate detergent, or other suitable cleaning agent to dislodge any ground-in contamination, then rinse. Change the cleaning solution after every room is cleaned.
  - i. Repeat step g above. To meet clearance standards consistently, a HEPA vacuum, wet wash, and HEPA vacuum cycle is recommended. For interim control projects involving dust removal only, the final HEPA vacuuming step is usually not needed. Other cleaning methods are acceptable, as long as clearance criteria are met and workers are not over exposed.
  - j. After final cleaning perform visual examination to ensure that all surfaces requiring lead hazard control have been addressed and all visible dust and debris have been removed. Record findings and correct any incomplete work.
  - k. If other construction work will disturb the lead-based paint surfaces, it should be completed at this point. If those surfaces are disturbed, repeat the final cleaning step after construction work has been completed.
  - l. Paint and otherwise seal treated surfaces and interior floors.
  - m. Conduct clearance examination.
  - n. If clearance is not achieved, repeat final cleaning.
  - o. Continue clearance testing and repeated cleanings until dwelling unit achieves compliance with all clearance standards. The cost of repeated cleaning, after failure to achieve clearance is to be borne by the contractor.
  - p. Do not allow residents to enter work area until final cleaning is completed and clearance is established.
  - q. Cleaning equipment list is as follows:
    - 1) HEPA Vacuums
    - 2) Detergent
    - 3) Waterproof gloves
    - 4) Rags
    - 5) Sponges
    - 6) Mops
    - 7) Buckets
    - 8) HEPA vacuum attachments (crevice tools, beater bar for cleaning rugs)
    - 9) 6-mil plastic bags
    - 10) Debris containers
    - 11) Waste water containers
    - 12) Shovels
    - 13) Rakes
    - 14) Water-misting sprayers
    - 15) 6-mil polyethylene sheeting (or equivalent)
2. Order of execution for final cleaning steps should be as follows:



- a. As the first stage in final cleaning, floor plastic shall be misted and swept.
- b. Upper level plastic, such as on cabinets and counters should be removed first, after it has been misted and cleaned. All plastic should be carefully folded from the corners/ends to the middle to trap any remaining dust. Next remove both layers of plastic from the floor.
- c. Plastic sheets used to isolate contaminated rooms from noncontaminated rooms should remain in place until after cleaning and removal of other plastic sheeting, these sheets may then be misted, cleaned and removed last.
- d. Removed plastic should be placed into double 4-mil or single 6-mil plastic bags, or plastic bags with equivalent (or better) performance characteristics, which are sealed and removed from the premises. As with daily cleanings, this plastic removal process usually requires workers to use protective clothing and respirators.
- e. After plastic has been removed from the contaminated area, the entire area should be cleaned using the HEPA/wet wash/HEPA cycle.

#### H. Waste Testing And Disposal

1. General: All materials, whether hazardous or non-hazardous shall be properly disposed of. the Owner may hire an independent Monitoring Consultant to perform TCLP test to determine which of the wastes are hazardous. Contractor shall cooperate in this test. If less than 100kg (200 lbs) or 1/2 of a 55 gallon drum of hazardous waste per month will be generated, it is considered "conditionally exempt" abatement waste, and may be managed as solid non-hazardous waste. The RCRA hazardous waste manifest is not required when shipping this waste to an offsite disposal facility.
2. Separate Abatement Waste into The Following Four Categories:
  - a. Category I. Low lead waste (typically non-hazardous) e.g. Filtered personal and commercial wash water.
  - b. Category II. Architectural components - (painted finish carpentry items) e.g. Doors, windows, window trim and sills, baseboards, railings, moldings. (May do a TCLP to determine if they are hazardous).
  - c. Category III. Concentrated lead waste e.g. sludge from stripping, lead-base paint chip and dust, HEPA vacuum debris and filter, unfiltered wash waste, any waste included in EPA's list of hazardous waste.
  - d. Category IV. Material that cannot be determined to be either hazardous or non-hazardous must be tested by TCLP.

If the hazardous waste generated is greater than 100kg per month, dispose according to the referenced guidelines and RCRA hazardous waste management requirements including those listed below.

3. Disposal Requirements: Contact the regional EPA, state, local and all other pertinent authorities to determine lead-based paint debris disposal requirements. Comply with requirements of the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA) and with applicable federal, state, county, or local waste requirements.
4. EPA ID Numbers: Obtain a Generator RCRA Hazardous Material ID number and coordinate this action through the State and secure any additional number as required.
5. Storage Requirements: Keep all hazardous items in a secure area or lockable container that is inaccessible to all persons other than the Contractor's personnel. Label all hazardous waste "Hazardous Waste" with the date that the Contractor began to collect the waste in that container. Keep hazardous and non-hazardous waste in separate containers. Until TCLP testing is completed, considered all items hazardous and store in a secured area or lockable container.
6. Waste Transportation: Transport hazardous waste using a RCRA/DOT/EPA certified Hazardous Waste Transporter. Submit names and qualifications of certified transporter/hauler for the Owner approval. The Contractor shall be responsible for all actions of the waste hauler as pertaining to waste removal and disposal under these procedures and all EPA, DOT and other applicable regulations.
7. Disposal Facility: Supply documents that detail the site(s) to be used for ultimate disposal. Submit documents from these sites proving that they are licensed/permitted to accept such waste and shall accept the waste proposed by the Contractor for treatment or ultimate disposal.



8. Waste Containers: Comply with EPA and DOT regulations for waste containers. Contact the state and local authorities to determine their criteria for containers. In the case of any conflict in regulations, the more stringent shall apply.
  9. Emergencies: Contact local fire, police, hospitals or local emergency response teams and inform them of the type of hazardous waste activity and ask for assistance in the event of any accident. Additionally, the container shall provide the following:
    - a. Keep and properly maintain a suitable fire extinguisher(s) on site.
    - b. Have a immediate means of communication with the regulatory agency in the event of an emergency.
    - c. Keep a list of phone numbers of regulatory agencies on site.
    - d. Appoint an emergency coordinator and ensure the coordinator is on site to supervise emergency procedures to be carried out in the event of an emergency.
    - e. Keep and maintain a "right to know" manual that is in an easily accessible location and in an area that is known to all employees.
  10. Transporting Waste: Provide certifications that the transporter is registered with the U.S. Department of Transportation is required by 49 CFR Part 107(a) transport hazardous waste.
    - a. Provide certifications that each vehicle dedicated to haul hazardous waste has been assigned a "U.S. DOT Hazardous Material Registration Number" as required by 49 CFR Part 107.
    - b. Be responsible for all other applicable permits pertaining to hauling, transport, reduction, and disposal of hazardous waste as they may apply to this project.
    - c. Vehicle: Ensure that all non-hazardous waste is transported in covered vehicles to a landfill, or lined landfill, if required.
    - d. Container Handling: Carefully place the containers into the truck or dumpster used for disposal. At no time shall debris or containers be thrown or dropped.
    - e. Liquid Wastes: Contain and properly dispose of all liquid wastes, including lead-contaminated wash water.
    - f. Containers: HEPA vacuum the exterior of all waste containers prior to removing the waste containers from the work area. Wet wipe the containers to ensure that there is no residual contamination. Then move containers out of the work area into the designated storage area.
- I. Clearance
1. Clearance on all abatement projects must be done by an independent certified risk assessor or inspector technician. Follow all jurisdictional law with regard to licensure requirements for personnel conducting clearance activities.
  2. Clearance step-by-step procedures are as follows:
    - a. Finish the lead hazard control clean-up effort. Seal floors before clearance (if necessary).
    - b. Wait 1 hour to allow any airborne dust to settle. Do not enter work area during that hour.
    - c. Conduct visual examination
      - 1) Determine if all required work has been completed and all lead-based paint hazards have been controlled.
      - 2) Determine if there is visible settled dust, paint chips, or debris in the interior or around the exterior.
    - d. Complete the Visual Clearance Form required by the the Owner; if all work is not completed inform the the Owner and order completion of the work and repeat cleanup, if necessary.
    - e. Conduct clearance dust sampling of the floors, interior window sills, and window troughs using approved protocol.
    - f. Conduct soil sampling if bare soil is present that was not sampled previously, or if exterior paint work was completed as part of the lead hazard control effort. Whenever exterior work has been don, it may be necessary to take samples from the soil that is not bare to determine if contamination has occurred. If results are above 1,000 µg/g (or 400 µg/g in high contact play area), compare the results to baseline soil sampling results to determine what additional measures are needed.
    - g. Complete the Dust and Soil Sampling Clearance Form required by the the Owner.



- h. Submit samples to a U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) recognized laboratory participating in the National Lead Laboratory Accreditation program (NLLAP) for analysis.
- i. Interpret results by comparing them to Interim Clearance Standards as listed below:
  - 1) Floors 400 µg/ft<sup>2</sup>
  - 2) Window sills 250 µg/ft<sup>2</sup>
  - 3) Window Troughs 800 µg/ft<sup>2</sup>
  - 4) Soils (Play area with children under 6 years of age) 400 µg/gram
- j. If clearance is achieved go to step N.
- k. Order repeated cleanings or soil treatments if results are above applicable standards. Clean all surfaces the sample represents.
- l. Continue sampling and repeated cleanings until the dwelling achieves compliance with all applicable clearance standards.
- m. Complete any related construction work that does not disturb a surface with lead-based paint (all work that does disturb painted surfaces or that could generate lead dust should be completed as part of the lead hazard control effort).
- n. Issue any necessary statements of lead-based paint compliance or releases and maintain appropriate records.

J. Labels

- 1. Use the following labels on drums used for disposal.

<b>HAZARDOUS WASTE</b>	
FEDERAL LAW PROHIBITS IMPROPER DISPOSAL.	
IF FOUND, CONTACT THE NEAREST POLICE OR PUBLIC SAFETY AUTHORITY OR THE U.S. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY.	
GENERATOR INFORMATION:	
NAME _____	
ADDRESS _____ PHONE _____	
CITY _____ STATE _____ ZIP _____	
EPA- / MANIFEST ID NO. / DOCUMENT NO. _____ / _____	
ACCUMULATION START DATE _____ EPA WASTE NO. _____	
[ <b>HAZARDOUS WASTE, SOLID, N.O.S.</b> ]	
[ _____ ]	
<b>NA3077</b>	
<small>D.O.T. PROPER SHIPPING NAME AND UN OR NA NO. WITH PREFIX</small>	
<b>HANDLE WITH CARE!</b>	
<small>STYLE HMM12</small>	



<b>WORKPLACE ACCUMULATION CONTAINER</b>		
Proper D.O.T. Shipping Name: _____	<b>HAZARDOUS WASTE</b>	Workplace Accumulation Start Date: <input type="text"/>
UN or NA# _____		
Generator Information:	<b>FEDERAL LAW PROHIBITS IMPROPER DISPOSAL.</b>	Waste Accumulation Area: <input type="text"/>
Name: _____		
Facility: _____	<b>IF FOUND, CONTACT THE NEAREST POLICE OR PUBLIC SAFETY AUTHORITY OR THE U.S. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY.</b>	
Address: _____		
Phone: _____	<b>HANDLE WITH CARE!</b>	
City: _____		
State: _____ Zip: _____		<b>MANEJESE CON CUIDADO CONTIENE DESPERDICIOS TOXICOS</b>
EPA / Manifest ID No. / Document No. _____		
State Manifest Document No. _____		
EPA Waste No. _____		



## K. Disposal of lead-based paint waste.

1. Follow the RCRA and HUD recommended practices as defined in the table below:

<b>Waste Management Practices</b>	<b>Category I: Low Lead Waste</b>	<b>Category II: Architectural Components</b>	<b>Category III: Concentrated Lead Waste</b>	<b>Category IV: Other waste</b>
<b>RCRA Requirements</b>	Manage as nonhazardous Waste	Depending upon knowledge or TCLP testing results, manage as solid hazardous or nonhazardous waste	If more than 100 kg/ month, manage as hazardous waste. If less than 100 kg/month manage as solid waste.	Use TCP to determine if waste is hazardous.
<b>HUD Recommended Practices</b>	Applicable	Applicable, if knowledge or TCLP testing indicates that it is nonhazardous.	Applicable if less than 100 kg/month otherwise subject to full RCRA regulations	Only applicable if TCLP testing shows waste is nonhazardous
Wrapped in plastic; seal all seams with tape (if acceptable to the disposal facility).	X	X	X	X
Stored in designated, secure area.	X	X	X	X
Covered During Transport	X	X	X	X
Prohibit cutting/breaking outside work area.	X	X	X	X
Cover ground with 6-mil plastic if handling outside.	X	X	X	X
Prohibit disposal in solid waste incinerators and reuse recycling for mulch	X	X	X	X
Recommended disposal in State licensed/permited	X	X	If appropriate.	X



solid waste landfill.				
-----------------------	--	--	--	--

L. Safety Requirements

1. To protect the health and safety of all persons involved, it is of the utmost importance that deleading is safely and correctly done in a timely manner. The following specific safety requirements are the responsibility of the Deleading Contractor.

K. General Safety:

1. General
  - a. NO ONE is to be allowed in the work area without an approved respirator except for methods that have been documented not requiring a respirator.
  - b. Each work area must be sealed from the remainder of the dwelling by taping plastic sheets (6 mil thick). Work areas must remain sealed off until both work and clean-up are completed.
  - c. Cover all floors, carpets, furniture and appliances with 6 mil plastic within the work area. Use automotive masking tape (2 inches wide) to seal all edges and seams.
  - d. Make certain all electrical connections are properly grounded.
  - e. At least three days prior to the start of any deleading work, post appropriate warning signs at all entrances and exits of work areas and leave in place until all clearance testing indicates that these areas are safe for re-occupancy. The signs must include the following phrase: "CAUTION LEAD HAZARD-KEEP OUT". Post bilingual signs when necessary.
2. Worker Safety: The Deleading Contractor shall take the following minimum precautions to protect the health of all individuals involved in the deleading process.
  - a. Pre-Abatement Medical Exam: Each employee shall undergo a medical examination to determine both respiratory fitness capability and also pre-existing/current blood lead level. Said results shall be provided to the employee and also to the Owner within 3 days of receipt of same, and in all cases, prior to employee's commencement to active abatement. Records of same are required to be kept by the Contractor for 40 years.
  - b. Medical Surveillance is the monitoring of worker blood levels. It is required that the Contractor have blood level monitoring of all active abatement and clean-up workmen and on-site supervisors performed and said results provided to the Owner.
    - 1) Before assignment to active abatement activity for each worker.
    - 2) 30 days after active abatement has begun.
    - 3) At least every two months during the first six months and every six months throughout the deleading job.
    - 4) At least every two months for each employee whose blood lead analysis indicated a blood lead level at or above 25 micrograms per deciliter. (20 micrograms per deciliter for women of child bearing age).
    - 5) At termination of employment.
    - 6) Contractor shall reassign any employee whose blood lead has reached 25 µg/dl (20 µg/dl for women of child bearing age) to a job function deemed safe from lead exposure. Said employee shall remain away from active abatement until such time as 2 consecutive months' blood tests indicate µg/dl below 20 µg/dl.
  - c. Respiratory Protection Programs must be established by the Contractor in accordance with OSHA regulations and qualitative respirator fit testing must be conducted daily by the on-site supervisor. Medical examinations must be performed by a physician prior to fit testing and at anytime when a worker demonstrates any difficulty breathing during the use of or the fit testing of respirators. The following are minimal acceptable respiratory protection program requirements as set up and administered by the Contractor:
    - 1) Written standard operating procedures which oversees the selection and use of respirators.
    - 2) Selection of respirators on the basis of hazards to which the worker is exposed.
    - 3) Worker training on the limitations and use of respirators (includes fit testing).
    - 4) Individual workers assigned respirators for their exclusive use only.



- 5) Daily cleaning and disinfecting of respirators.
- 6) Proper storage of all respirators.
- 7) Proper inspection of all respirators for wear and tear.
- 8) Continual surveillance of work area conditions and level of worker exposure or stress.
- 9) Use of approved respirators only, modified as needed by the weekly exposure monitoring results.
- 10) Supply weekly report covering items 1-9 to the Owner or its Lead Consultant.
- d. Exposure Monitoring is the measured concentration of lead in the workers breathing zones. The Contractor shall perform personnel monitoring during active abatement using the NIOSH 7072 method and shall be responsible for:
  - 1) Monitoring the level of worker protection needed during the abatement process;
  - 2) Evaluating, modifying and improving any engineering and work practice control(s) as needed;
  - 3) Evaluating each employee's personal quality of work and any need for additional worker training or safety instruction;
  - 4) Providing the Owner results of all personnel monitoring tests within 10 days of testing; and
  - 5) Providing half-face APR respirators with HEPA filters unless said monitoring test results dictate differently. OSHA guidelines shall be used to determine respirator PEL protection factors.
- e. Protective Clothing Equipment must be provided to all workers to help assure that lead dust is contained to the work areas. The following must be supplied/enforced by the Deleading Contractor:
  - 1) Full body protective clothing and shoe covers of appropriate sizes on a daily basis or as needed.
  - 2) Clean changing areas separated from the dirty/contaminated clothes storage area.
  - 3) Water and wash facilities for washing of hands and face and shower facilities if deemed necessary by the Owner's Lead Advisor.
  - 4) Instructing worker on proper maintenance of clothing and equipment.
  - 5) Proper disposal of disposable clothing and proper permanent work clothes.
  - 6) Enforcing the removal of protective clothing at the end of each work day and before eating, drinking and smoking.
  - 7) Enforcement of the removal of protective shoe covers before leaving work area.
3. Contractor/Worker Daily Safe-Work Procedures
  - a. Daily Start-Up:
    - 1) Workers to put on protective gear prior to entering work areas.
    - 2) All garment seams to be sealed with duct tape.
    - 3) All non-working garments must be stored in designated changing area.
    - 4) Respirators, as required, must be properly fitted before entering work area. Perform qualitative fit test.
  - b. Temporary depart:
    - 1) All protective clothing to be HEPA vacuumed while still being worn.
    - 2) All shoe covers to be removed and left in the work area (immediate departure upon removing).
    - 3) Remove all protective gear in designated "contaminated" changing area before eating, drinking, and smoking or before leaving work site.
    - 4) Wash hands and face.
    - 5) Clean respirators.
  - c. Daily Shut-Down:
    - 1) Dispose of protective clothing with abatement waste by sealing in a 6 mil poly bag.
    - 2) Laundered clothes must be placed in closed container.
    - 3) Wash hands and face.
    - 4) Shower if facilities allow and circumstances dictate.
    - 5) Clean all protective gear (respirators included).





4. Tenant's Safety: Temporary relocation of the tenants is necessary if the lead paint surface is broken. Temporary relocation of the tenants and their belongings is the responsibility of the Owner. However, the Contractor has the joint responsibility to administer and enforce the following safety practices on behalf of the occupants:
  - a. Adults
    - 1) NO OCCUPANT is allowed to enter the work area during paint removal and initial clean-up. A three day clean-up and settlement period may be imposed depending upon the abatement procedures used, at the discretion of the Owner or their Lead Consultant.
    - 2) the Owner shall notify all occupants in writing when they are allowed to return to their post-abated residence. Contractor shall abide by these notices.
    - 3) Every resident who has received prior notice of abatement is responsible for placing all personal items (clothing, dishes, linens, etc.) in closed, easy to handle containers; and move such items to the center of each room as requested.
    - 4) As long as visible dust remains, occupants may not occupy dwelling, and all surfaces within the dwelling must be re-washed with trisodium phosphate and HEPA vacuumed by deleading contractor.
    - 5) Persons reoccupying dwellings following abatement are required to report any visible dust or debris to the Owner immediately for additional Contractor clean-up.
  - b. Pregnant Women and Children
    - 1) Absolutely no pregnant women nor children under the age of twelve years of age may be allowed in the building while any part of the abatement process is going on.

END OF SECTION 02 83 19 13a



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

**SECTION 02 83 19 13b - XRF TESTING FOR LEAD-BASED PAINT****1.1 DESCRIPTION OF WORK**

- A. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for XRF testing for lead-based paint. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. The Contractor shall perform work in accordance with the latest HUD Guidelines, in accordance with all applicable regulations of the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), Occupational Safety & Health Agency (OSHA) and any applicable State or Local standards that may be more stringent than the Federal Standards except, as such guidelines are modified by the Owner in writing in this contract or any contract pursuant to this contract.
- B. Workmanship required in the execution of the work herein specified shall be of good quality and subject to the approval of the the Owner.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS****A. Notification Before Start of Work**

1. The Contractor shall send notices to the Project Superintendent, Residents, and the Department of Planning and Development 48 hours before the scheduled start of work. The Contractor shall make three (3) attempts to gain entry to each apartment, with proper 48 hour notification to the resident each time.
2. The Contractor shall begin work no later than 48 hours after receiving a work proceed order.

**B. Copies of the submissions listed below must be tendered with the bid:**

1. Ability to perform XRF testing and paint chip sampling by submitting evidence of the successful completion of lead inspector training by all staff to be assigned to the job including inspector technicians. Training must be provided through a State approved EPA-Model program. All staff assigned to the Contract must also demonstrate training in the use of the XRF testing machines to be dedicated to this contract. The serial number of such XRF machine shall be provided to the the Owner.
  - a. Contractor or Subcontractor performing the work must have at least 3 years of satisfactory experience (documented) in performing XRF testing for a City, State or Federal Agency.
2. Laboratory certification by the State Department of Health (or other responsible agency) and by the USEPA through the EPA's National Lead Laboratory Accreditation Program ("NLLAP"), or as an alternative having accreditation application pending before NLLAP, and having acceptable performance on five consecutive rounds of the EPA, Environmental Laboratory Proficiency Analytical Testing (ELPAT) program, including the most recent round; evidence of such accreditation must be provided. Indicate if the laboratory is an independent entity from the Contractor.
3. If a subcontractor will be used for any of the laboratory work of this contract, evidence of certification stated above must also be provided for the subcontractor.

**C. XRF Testing Report Format**



- a. All XRF report must be made after a formal submittal and approval by the Owner.
- b. A faxed summary report must be provided to the the Owner within 48 hours after completion of testing for a work Authorization. For XRF testing requiring confirmation by laboratory analysis of paint chip samples, the faxed summary report must be provided within 48 hours after the the Owner gives approval for testing of the collected paint chip samples.
- c. A detailed report must be provided to the the Owner within 5 business days after completion of the testing.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. The work shall consist of furnishing all labor, material, insurance and all other incidental items required to do the following:
  1. XRF Testing
    - a. Random or comprehensive testing of various components in single family housing units, multi-family housing units, common areas and exterior sites, using any of the approved X-ray Fluorescence ("XRF") machines, to determine if the lead-based paint concentration is within permissible limits.  
Note: Testing may be for entire apartments or selected rooms or components within the apartment.
    - b. The permissible limit shall be defined as a final reading showing a lead concentration of less than 1.0 mg/cm<sup>2</sup>.
    - c. Refer to the Manufacturer's manual, as well as the "XRF Performance Characteristic Sheet" when determining calibration check tolerance, and other instrument specific information. Use the adjusted "XRF Performance Characteristic Sheets" in this contract when determining the inconclusive range.
    - d. In addition to the manufacturer's recommended warm up and quality control procedures, a set of three nominal XRF calibration check readings must be taken before the inspection begins and after the inspection has been completed in a particular unit, or every 4 hours, whichever occurs first. All reference material values and calibration check readings must be included in the report provided to the Owner.
    - e. Do not use the XRF to test highly curved or ornate surfaces, or surfaces inaccessible to the XRF, due to poor reliability of results. For such surfaces, laboratory analysis of paint chips must be done.
    - f. Only one XRF reading is required per testing combination. A unique testing combination is characterized by the room equivalent, the component, the substrate and the visible color of the paint. However, testing combinations with different colors on the same component and substrate may be combined into a single component type.
    - g. All inconclusive results must be treated according to the inspection rules using multi-family inspection or single family inspection rules as appropriate.
    - h. XRF field data sheets shall be filled out as they appear on completed Form 7.1("Single-Family Housing LBP Testing Data Sheet") and 7.5 ("Multifamily Housing LBP Testing Data Sheet") in HUD Guidelines.
    - i. Room equivalents or sections thereof that are not accessible for testing (i.e. locked bedrooms) shall be noted in the final report to the Owner.
  2. Laboratory testing of paint chips.
    - a. Collection of paint chips from various painted components for laboratory analysis due to XRF substrate corrected inconclusive and/or positive readings as directed by the the Owner.



- b. Laboratory preparation and testing by Flame Atomic Absorption Spectrometry (FAAS) or Graphite Furnace Atomic Absorption Spectrometry (GFAAS) to determine if the lead paint concentration is within permissible limits.
  - c. The permissible limit shall be defined as a lead concentration less than 0.5% by weight.
  - d. Collect paint chips in accordance with ASTM ES28-94.
  - e. Prepare paint chips in the laboratory for testing in accordance with ASTM ES37-94.
  - f. Repair and repaint areas from which paint chips have been collected, to match adjacent areas, unless notified by the the Owner in writing to utilize a temporary covering for the tested surfaces. The Contractor shall provide water based latex paint for this purpose. Colors shall be limited to white and off-white; and other colors if provided by the tenant.
  - g. Only one paint chip is required per testing combination. A unique testing combination is characterized by the room equivalent, the component, the substrate, and the visible color of the paint. However, testing combinations with different colors on the same component and substrate may be combined into a single component type.
  - h. Field data sheets and signed chain of custodies must be attached to the final report to the Owner.
- B. Occupied Residences
1. Some of the work of this contract will be in occupied apartments. The Contractor shall perform all of the work of this contract with the least inconvenience to the tenants.
  2. The Contractor shall take all necessary precautions to protect the property of the the Owner, its residents and the public. The contractor must repair any damaged property, whether of the the Owner, its residents, or the public, and restore such property to its original condition. If the damage is beyond repair, the Contractor shall replace it with new, that in the judgement of the the Owner, match the existing materials and are of equal quality and workmanship. All such repairs shall be at the Contractor's expense.
- C. Applicable Regulations
1. ASTM Standards
    - a. ASTM E 1583 on evaluating laboratories used to determine lead levels;
    - b. ASTM E 1605 on terminology;
    - c. ASTM E 1613 on determining lead by atomic emission or atomic absorption spectroscopy;
    - d. ASTM E 1645 on laboratory preparation of paint-chip samples;
    - e. ASTM E 1775 on-site extraction and field portable stripping voltammetry analysis for lead;
    - f. ASTM PS 53 on identifying and managing lead in facilities;
    - g. ASTM PS 87 on ultrasonic extraction for later analysis for lead;
    - h. ASTM PS 88 on determining lead by portable electro analysis
  2. OSHA Standards (without limitation), include:
    - a. 29 CFR 1926.20 - General safety and health provisions;
    - b. 29 CFR 1926.21 - Safety training and education;
    - c. 29 CFR 1925.25 - Housekeeping;
    - d. 29 CFR 1926.28 - Personal protective equipment;
    - e. 29 CFR 1926.51(f) - Washing facilities;
    - f. 29 CFR 1926.55 - Gases, vapors, fumes, dusts, and mists;
    - g. 29 CFR 1926.57 - Ventilations;
    - h. 29 CFR 1926.59 - Hazardous Communication Standards;
    - i. 29 CFR 1926.10 - Respiratory protection; and
    - j. 29 CFR 1926.62 - Lead in Construction
  3. The Contractor must comply with all applicable requirements of the Resource Conservation & Recovery Act (RCRA) of 1976 as amended in 1980 and 1984 by the Hazardous & Solid Waste Amendments (HSWA).



4. The Contractor must follow the XRF Performance Characteristic Sheet (PCS) for all inspection activities. XRF PCSs are available from the National Lead Information Center Clearinghouse or through the HUD website at <http://www.hud.gov/offices/lead/lbp/hudguidelines/allpcs.pdf>.

## 1.5 PRODUCTS

- A. XRF Instruments and Testing Protocols
  1. The Contractor shall use XRF instruments that are approved by the Owner.
  2. XRFs must be used in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the XRF Performance Characteristic Sheet. If discrepancies exist between the XRF Performance Characteristic Sheet, the HUD Guidelines and the manufacturer's instructions, the most stringent guidelines should be followed.

## 1.6 EXECUTION

- A. Inspection and Testing
  1. **Single Family Testing Rules**
    - a. If the housing development has less
      - 1) than 10 units built between 1960-1970 or
      - 2) 20 units built before 1960 or
      - 3) the random testing rules in a multi-family development are not being used then single family testing rules must be followed.
    - b. List all testing combinations (see HUD Guidelines Table for an example) in all interior rooms, on all exterior building surfaces, and on surfaces in other exterior areas, such as fences, playground equipment, and garages. The "SingleFamily Housing LBP Testing Data Sheet" (see HUD Guidelines) or a comparable data collection instrument may be used for this purpose.
      - 1) Test all room equivalents inside and outside the dwelling unit. The final report must include a final determination of the presence or absence of lead-based paint on each testing combination in each room equivalent.
      - 2) Inspect each testing combination in each room equivalent, unless similar building component types with identical substrates (such as windows) are all found to contain lead-based paint in the first five interior room equivalents. In that case, testing of that component type in the remaining room equivalents may be discontinued, if and only if the Owner agrees beforehand to such a discontinuation. The inspector should then conclude that similar building component types in the rest of the dwelling unit also contain lead-based paint.
      - 3) Painted furniture that is physically attached to the unit (for example, a desk or dresser that is built-in) should be included in the inspection as a testing combination.
      - 4) Results of an inspection may be summarized by classifying component types across room equivalents if patterns or trends are supported by the data.
      - 5) All substrates across all room equivalents should be grouped into one of the six substrate categories (brick, concrete, drywall, metal, plaster, or wood).
    - c. Number and Location of XRF Readings
      - 1) XRF testing is required for at least one location per layers of paint should be included and the XRF probe testing combination, except for interior and exterior faceplate should be able to lie flat against the surface walls, where four readings should be taken, one on of the test location each wall.
      - 2) For interior and exterior walls: take at least four readings (one of ea. wall). If there are more than four walls test the four largest walls, calculate the average of the



- readings, round the result to same number of decimal places as the XRF instrument displays, and classify the remaining walls with the same painting history as the tested walls, based on this rounded average. When the remaining walls in a room equivalent clearly do not have the same painting history as that of the tested walls, test and classify the remaining walls individually.
- 3) Select areas of paint which are most likely to have old paint or coatings, where areas of paint appear thickest. Avoid testing where paint has worn away, chipped; or over pipes, electrical surfaces, nails, and any other possible interferences.
  - 4) A numbering system, floor plan, sketch or other system may be used to document which testing combinations were tested and sufficiently detailed enough for another individual to find them.
    - a) Side identification Identify perimeter wall sides with letters A, B, C, and D (or numbers or Roman numerals). Side A for single-family housing is the street side for the address. Side A in multi-family housing is the apartment entry door side. Side B, C, and D are identified clockwise from Side A as one faces the dwelling; thus Wall B is to the left, Wall C is across from Side A, and Side D is to the right of Side A. Each room equivalent's side identification follows the scheme for the whole housing unit. Because a room can have two or more entries, sides should not be allocated based on the entry point. For example, giving a closet a side allocation based on how the room is entered would make it difficult for another person to make an easy identification, especially if the room had two closets and two entryways.
    - b) Room Equivalent Identification Room equivalents should be identified by both a number and a use pattern (for example, Room 5-Kitchen). Room 1 can always be the first room, at the A-D junction at the entryway, or it can be the exterior. Rooms are consecutively numbered clockwise. If multiple closets exist, they are given the side allocation: for example, Room 3, Side C Closet. The exterior is always assigned a separate room equivalent identifier.
    - c) Sides in a Room Sides in an interior room equivalent follow the overall housing unit side allocation. Therefore, when standing in any four-sided room facing Side C, the room's Side A will always be to the rear, Side B will be to the left, and Side D will be to the right.
    - d) Building Component Identification Individual building components are first identified by their room number and side allocation (for example, the radiator in Room 1, Side B is easily identified). If multiple similar component types are in a room (for example, three windows), they are differentiated from each other by side allocation. If multiple components are on the same wall side, they are differentiated by being numbered left to right when facing the components. For example, three windows on Wall D are identified as windows D1, D2, and D3, left to right. If window D3 has the only old original sash, it is considered a separate testing combination from the other two windows. Codes or abbreviations for building components and/or locations may be used in order to shorten the time needed for data entry. If codes or abbreviations are used, the inspection records and the inspection report must include a table showing their meaning.
  - d. XRF Instrument Reading Time
    - 1) The recommended time to open an XRF instrument's shutter to obtain a single XRF result for a testing location depends on the specific XRF instrument model and the mode in which the instrument is operating. Follow manufacturer's instructions per HUD Guidelines.
  - e. XRF Calibration Check Readings
    - 1) Follow manufacturer's instructions per HUD Guidelines.



---

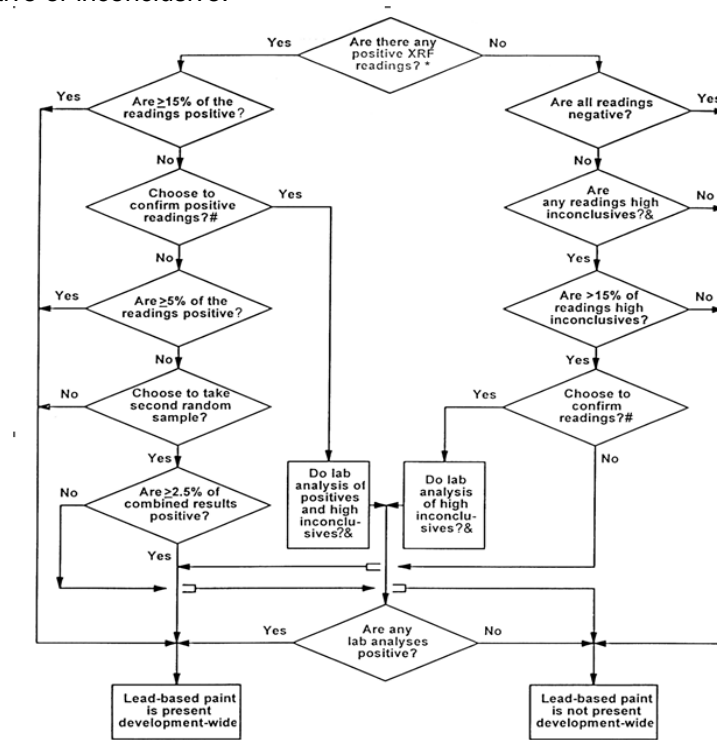
f. Substrate Correction

- 1) The XRF measurements, corrected for substrate contribution, if required by the Performance Characteristic Sheet ("PCS") for the particular type of instrument being used, should be sorted by the inspector by component type into the following categories:
  - a) Positive- A positive XRF reading in accordance with the XRF's Performance Characteristic Sheet.
  - b) Negative- A negative XRF reading in accordance with the XRF's Performance Characteristic Sheet.
  - c) High Inconclusive- An inconclusive XRF reading equal to or greater than the midpoint of the XRF's inconclusive range, in accordance with the XRF's Performance Characteristic Sheet.





- g. The following Decision analyses will be used to determine which components are positive, negative or inconclusive:



\* "Positive," "negative," and "inconclusive" XRF readings are determined in accordance with the XRF instrument's Performance Characteristics Sheet as described in the HUD Guidelines for the Evaluation and Control of Lead Hazards in Housing, chapter 7.  
 & A high inconclusive reading is an XRF reading at or above the midpoint of the inconclusive range. For example, if the inconclusive range is 0.41 to 1.39, its midpoint (average) is 0.90; a reading in the range from 0.90 to 1.39 would be a high inconclusive reading.  
 # Any paint or coating may be assumed to be lead-based paint, even without XRF or laboratory analysis. Similarly, any XRF reading may be confirmed by laboratory analysis.

- 1)
- 2) All inconclusive results must be confirmed with laboratory analysis, or as an alternative must be classified as positive. the Owner may also wish to confirm positive XRF results with laboratory analysis. Therefore the Contractor must make a field determination of which XRF readings falls in the inconclusive or positive ranges and take paint chip samples during the XRF testing for possible laboratory analysis. If the majority of XRF readings are positive in the first few units, the inspector must consult with the Owner on whether to continue taking paint chip samples. Only the Owner may determine whether to submit collected paint chip samples for laboratory analysis or to classify the element as positive.

**2. Multi-family Housing Testing Rules (Random Sampling)**

- a. In order to use the Multi-family housing testing rules, there must multi-family housing is defined as any group of more than four units that are similar in construction from unit to unit
- b. Determine the number of randomly selected units to be tested in accordance with Table 7.3, below. Chapter 7 of the HUD Guidelines also describes how to select the units randomly. If a unit or units which were selected as part of the original random sample cannot be entered for a particular reason, a replacement unit(s) must be randomly selected in accordance with the HUD Guidelines.



**Table 7.3 Number of Units to be Tested in Multi-family Building or Developments\***

Number of Similar Units, Similar Common Areas, or Similar Exterior Sites	Pre-1960 or Unknown-Age Building or Development: Number of Units to Test *	1960-1977 Building or Development: Number of Units to Test *
1-10	All	All
11-13	All	10
14	All	11
15	All	12
16-17	All	13
18	All	14
19	All	15
20	All	16
21-26	20	16
27	21	17
28	22	18
29	23	18
30	23	19
31	24	19
32	25	19
33-34	26	19
35	27	19
36	28	19
37	29	19
38-39	30	20
40-48	31	21
49-50	31	22
51	32	22
52-53	33	22
54	34	22
55-56	35	22
57-58	36	22
59	37	23
60-69	38	23
70-73	38	24
74-75	39	24
76-77	40	24



Number of Similar Units, Similar Common Areas, or Similar Exterior Sites	Pre-1960 or Unknown-Age Building or Development: Number of Units to Test *	1960-1977 Building or Development: Number of Units to Test *
78-79	41	24
80-88	42	24
89-95	42	25
96-97	43	25
98-99	44	25
100-109	45	25
110-117	45	26
118-119	46	26
120-138	47	26
139-157	48	26
158-159	49	26
160-177	49	27
178-197	50	27
198-218	51	27
219-258	52	27
259-279	53	27
280-299	53	28
300-379	54	28
380-499	55	28
500-776	56	28
777-939	57	28
940-1004	57	29
1005-1022	58	29
1023-1032	59	29
1033-1039	59	30
1500	87	44
2000	116	58
2500	145	73
3000	174	87
3500	203	102
4000	232	116

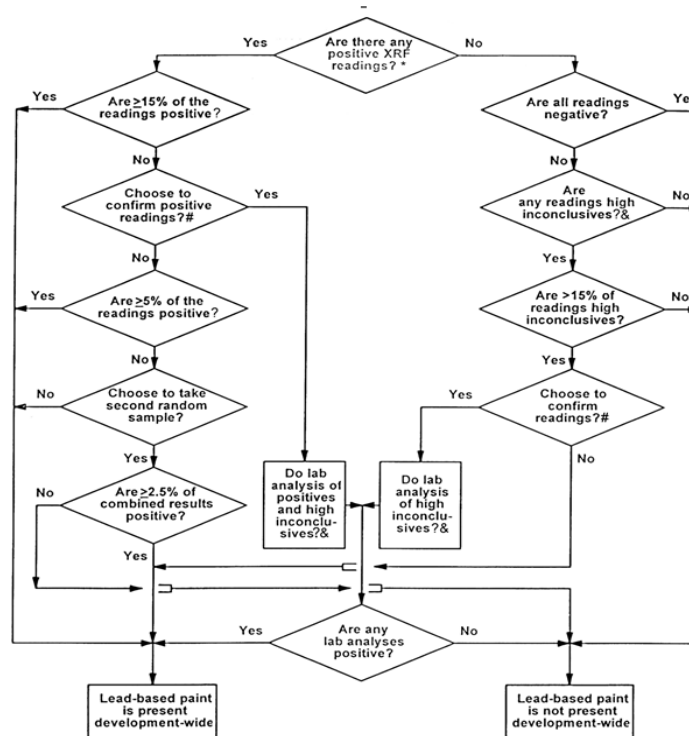
\* For brevity, "Number of Units" and "Number of Units to Test" are used, but the number to test is the same for similar units, similar common areas, and similar exterior sites.



- c. An assessment on each tested component must note four attributes, also called a testing combination.
  - 1) The room equivalent (where the testing took place i.e. bedroom, bathroom, etc.)
  - 2) The component type (door, wall #1 - upper left, etc.)
  - 3) The substrate (brick, wood, concrete, drywall, plaster or metal).
  - 4) The color of the paint.
- d. These attributes must be included as part of the report.
- e. For each testing combination, the condition of the painted surfaces should be noted as either intact, fair or poor.
- f. One reading with the X-ray fluorescence (XRF) instrument on each testing combination is all that is required.
- g. At least 40 components of a given type must be tested to obtain the desired level of confidence in the results throughout the multi-family development. If less than 40 components of a given type exist in the buildings to be tested i.e. they are unique components, then the measurement should be taken using single family testing rules (described below). If less than 40 components of a given type exist in the units to be tested, additional components of this type can be identified in other units in the complex and tested to bring the total up to 40 so that multi-family testing rules can be used. The decision of which option the Contractor should use will be made by the the Owner.
- h. To increase the number of tested components of a given type, testing combinations with different colors on the same component and substrate may be combined into a single component type. For example, if "wood doors" is the component type, all wood doors tested for lead-based paint could belong to the same component type, regardless of color.
- i. A component type may be differentiated by color as long as there are 40 tested and there is a good reason for differentiation.
- j. The XRF measurements, corrected for substrate contribution, if required by the Performance Characteristic Sheet ("PCS") for the particular type of instrument being used, should be sorted by the inspector by component type into the following categories:
  - 1) Positive- A positive XRF reading in accordance with the XRF's Performance Characteristic Sheet.
  - 2) Negative- A negative XRF reading in accordance with the XRF's Performance Characteristic Sheet.
  - 3) High Inconclusive- An inconclusive XRF reading equal to or greater than the midpoint of the XRF's inconclusive range, in accordance with the XRF's Performance Characteristic Sheet.



k. The following Decision analyses will be used to determine which components are positive, negative or inconclusive:



\* "Positive," "negative," and "inconclusive" XRF readings are determined in accordance with the XRF instrument's Performance Characteristics Sheet as described in the HUD Guidelines for the Evaluation and Control of Lead Hazards in Housing, chapter 7.

& A high inconclusive reading is an XRF reading at or above the midpoint of the inconclusive range. For example, if the inconclusive range is 0.41 to 1.39, its midpoint (average) is 0.90; a reading in the range from 0.90 to 1.39 would be a high inconclusive reading.

# Any paint or coating may be assumed to be lead-based paint, even without XRF or laboratory analysis. Similarly, any XRF reading may be confirmed by laboratory analysis.

- i. If there are readings on a component type(s) equal to or greater than 1.0 mg/cm<sup>2</sup> and paint chip samples are submitted to the laboratory, there are two possible results:
  - 1) If all lab samples on a component type are below 0.5% lead by weight, the component type can be classified as negative throughout the development.
  - 2) If one or more lab results are positive, (equal to or greater than 0.5% lead by weight for a component) the the Owner will take one of three options:
    - a) Treat the component type as positive throughout the development, or
    - b) Test the component type throughout the development, or
    - c) If 5% or less of the component type are positive, take a second random sample, just testing that component type.
  - 3) If option 2)c) above is selected by the Owner and the combined results of the first and second random sample are less than 2½% positive, the following additional options are available depending on the results.
    - a) If no positives are found in the second sample, no further testing is necessary. Those positives in the first random sample will be monitored/abated (not by this Agreement), but the rest of the component type can be classified as negative.



- b) If positives are found on a component type in the second sample, the the Owner has the option to classify the component type as positive throughout the development or comprehensively test it.
    - c) If the combined results of the two random samples are equal to or greater than 2½%, the the Owner also has the option to comprehensively test the remaining components of that type or classify them as positive.
  - m. **Paint Chip Sample Size:** The Paint chip samples should be taken from a 4 square inch (25 square centimeter) area that is representative of the paint on the testing combination, as close as possible to any XRF reading locations and, if possible, unobtrusive. This area may be a 2" x 2" (5 x 5 centimeters) square, or a 1" x 4" (2.5 x 10 centimeters) rectangle, or have any other dimensions that equal at least 4 square inches (25 square centimeters). Regardless of shape, the dimensions of the surface area must be accurately measured (to the nearest millimeter or 1/16<sup>th</sup> of an inch) so that the laboratory results can be reported in mg/cm<sup>2</sup>. Results should be reported as percent by weight if the surface area cannot be measured accurately or if all paint within the sampled area cannot be removed. In these cases, lead should be reported in ppm or percent weight, not in mg/cm<sup>2</sup>. Smaller surface area can be used if acceptable to the laboratory. (See ASTM E 1729). In all cases those who take the samples should consult with the NLAAP recognized laboratory selected regarding the requirements for the submission samples for lead-based paint analysis.
  - n. If the the Owner decides to test in search of these hard-to-find components coated with lead based paint, the inspector must use the single family testing rules described in the previous section.
- 3. Common Areas and Exterior Sites Testing Rules**
- a. Similar common areas and similar exterior sites must always be tested, but in some cases they can be sampled in much the same way that dwelling units are. Common areas and building exteriors typically have a similar painting history from one building to the next. In multifamily housing, each common area (such as building lobby, laundry room, or hallway) can be treated as a dwelling unit. If there are multiple similar common areas, they may be grouped for sampling purposes I exactly the same way as regular dwelling units. However, dwelling units, common areas and exterior sites cannot be all mixed together in a single group. All testing combinations within each common area or building exteriors selected for testing must be inspected. This includes playground equipment, benches and miscellaneous testing combinations located throughout the development. The specific common areas and building exteriors to test should be randomly selected, in much the same way as specific units are selected using random numbers. The number of common areas to be tested should be taken from table 7.3 (HUD Guidelines). In this instance, common areas and building exteriors can be treated in the same way as housing units (although they are not to be confused with true housing units).
- 4. Unit and Common Area Drawings**
- a. Mark-ups of as built drawings depicting room equivalents that are tested must be provided as part of the report.
  - b. The Contractor should test in a clockwise path starting from the door through the space and room equivalents so that the approximate location of each component tested can be easily established by referencing the room equivalent and sides.
  - c. Each space must have a reference point (side A, B, C, D or wall 1, 2, 3 or 4). The wall with the door should always be referenced as wall 1 or side A. If there is more than one door, wall 1 or side A should be used to refer to the wall with the door through which the room is first entered when moving in a clockwise fashion through the unit.

**B. Evaluation of the Inspection by the the Owner**



1. The Contractor will be required to carry out retesting at no additional cost to the the Owner, after completion of the Inspection at each the Owner's development as described in the HUD Guidelines, for single family housing, multi-family housing and common areas. The the Owner shall randomly select the testing combinations to be retested and the Contractor shall perform the retesting using the same XRF instrument(s) which was/were used to take the original readings. An the Owner's inspector shall be present to observe all retesting. The retesting shall be limited to ten (10) testing combinations, and if necessary to repeat the retest, the testing combinations randomly selected for repeating the retest shall also be limited to ten.
  2. If the retest tolerance limit computed from the information provided in the "XRF Performance Characteristics Sheet" (see HUD Guidelines) is exceeded, the retest will be repeated as described in the HUD Guidelines for single family, multi-family housing and common areas. If the retest tolerance limit is exceeded again, the the Owner may require the Contractor to retest the entire development at no additional cost to the the Owner, or the the Owner may withhold all payments and terminate its agreement with the Contractor.
- C. Option to do Laboratory Testing only
1. The the Owner may, for a specific testing assignment, request in writing that the Contractor, when utilizing the multi-family housing testing rules for random sampling, or the single family housing testing rules, do all testing through laboratory analysis of paint chips rather than through XRF Spectrum Analyzer testing with laboratory confirmation as needed. Please note that under the single family housing testing rules, only one paint chip must be taken and analyzed for each component type.
- D. Waste Disposal
1. All waste generated must be legally disposed in accordance with Federal, State and Local regulations.

END OF SECTION 02 83 19 13b



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





---

**SECTION 02 83 19 13c - LEAD DUST WIPE, AIR AND TCLP SAMPLING AND ANALYSIS****1.1 DESCRIPTION OF WORK**

- A. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for lead dust wipe, air and TCLP sampling and analysis. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**1.2 GENERAL**

- A. Definitions: Unless otherwise specified the following definitions shall apply:
1. **"Approved"**: shall mean approved by all public agencies having jurisdiction, and the Owner.
  2. **"The Owner"**: shall mean the Owner and its designated authorized representatives.
  3. **"Contractor"**: shall mean the firm that is awarded this contract and is responsible to ensure compliance with Federal, State and City regulations as well as these Contract documents.
  4. **"Development or Project"**: a group of buildings in one or more designated geographical locations, owned or operated by the Owner and referred to by a common name by the Owner.
  5. **"Dust Cleaning Firm"**: shall mean the contractor under a separate contract or the Owner responsible for cleaning of lead dust, as directed by the Owner, until the clearance levels are achieved, as defined in the "Guidelines for the Evaluation and Control of Lead-Based Paint Hazards in Housing, June 1995" or latest edition published by the United States Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD).
  6. **"Equal or Approved Equal"**: shall mean equal in the opinion of the Owner.
  7. **"HUD"**: the United States Department of Housing and Urban Development.
  8. **"HUD Guidelines"**: shall mean Guidelines for the Evaluation and Control of Lead-Based Paint Hazards in Housing issued by HUD'S Office of Lead-Based Paint Abatement and Poisoning Prevention in June 1995 except as such guidelines are later modified by HUD and/or modified by the Owner in writing pursuant to this contract.
  9. **"Inspector"**: an individual who has completed training from an accredited program and been licensed or certified by the appropriate State or local agency to (1) perform inspections to determine and report the presence of lead-based paint on a surface-by-surface basis through on-site testing, (2) report the findings of such an inspection, (3) collect environmental samples for laboratory analysis, (4) perform clearance testing, and (5) document successful compliance with lead-based paint hazard control requirements or standards.
  10. **"Lead-Based Paint"**: any paint, varnish, shellac, or other coating that contains lead equal to or greater than 1.0 mg/cm<sup>2</sup> as measured by XRF or laboratory analysis, or 0.5 percent by weight (5,000 µg/g, 5,000 PPM, or 5,000 mg/kg) as measured by laboratory analysis.
  11. **"Lead-Based Paint Hazard"**: a condition in which exposure to lead from lead-contaminated dust, lead-contaminated soil or deteriorated lead-based paint would have an adverse effect on human health (as established by the EPA Administrator under Title IV of the Toxic Substance Control Act). Lead-based paint hazards include for example, deteriorated lead-based paint, leaded dust levels above applicable standards and bare leaded soil above applicable standards.
  12. **"Lead-Based Paint Hazard Control"**: activities to control or eliminate lead-based paint hazards, including interim controls and complete abatement.
  13. **"Lead-Contaminated Dust"**: surface dust in residences that contain an area or mass concentration of lead in excess of the standard established by the EPA Administrator, pursuant to Title IV of the Toxic Substance Control Act. Until the EPA standards are set, the HUD recommended clearance and risk assessment standards for leaded dust are 40 µg/ft<sup>2</sup> on floors, 250 µg/ft<sup>2</sup> on interior window sills, and 800 µg/ft<sup>2</sup> on window troughs.



14. **"Monitoring"**: shall refer to inspection to ensure compliance with all Federal, State and City Standards or guidelines, and contractual specifications.
15. **"Provide"**: shall mean furnish and install.
16. **"Risk Assessor"**: a certified individual who has completed training with an accredited training program and who has been certified to (1) perform risk assessments, (2) identify acceptable abatement and interim control strategies for reducing identified lead-based paint hazards, (3) perform clearance testing and reevaluations, and (4) document the successful completion of lead-based paint hazard control activities.

B. Applicable Regulations/References

1. The work conducted shall comply with all applicable Federal, State and City regulations. Applicable guidelines and standards listed in the scope of work include, but are not limited to:
 

<p>24 CFR Parts 35,36,37 Guidelines for the Evaluation and Control of Lead-Based Paint in Housing (HUD Guidelines June 1995) &amp; 1997 Revisions</p> <p>29 CFR 1910 29 CFR 1910.1025 29 CFR 1910.134 29 CFR 1910.1200 29 CFR 1910.245 29 CFR 1926 29 CFR 1926.20 29 CFR 1926.21 29 CFR 1926.25 29 CFR 1926.28 29 CFR 1926.51 29 CFR 1926.55 29 CFR 1926.59 29 CFR 1926.62 29 CFR 1926.103 40 CFR 61 Subpart A 40 CFR 241</p> <p>40 CFR 257 40 CFR 261/262 American National Standards Institute (ANSI) Z87.1 ANSI Z88.2-80 American Society For Testing Materials (ASTM)</p>	<p>HUD Lead-Based Paint Regulations</p> <p>General Industry Standard Lead Standard for General Industry Respiratory Protection Hazard Communication Specification for Accident Prevention Construction Industry Standards General Safety &amp; Health Provisions Safety Training &amp; Education Housekeeping Personal Protective Equipment Washing Facilities Gases, Vapors, Fumes, Dusts &amp; Mists Hazard Communication Standard Construction Industry Lead Standard Respiratory Protection General Provisions Guidelines for the Land Disposal of Solid Waste Criteria for the Land Disposal of Solid Waste Waste Disposal Facilities &amp; Practices Eye Protection</p> <p>Practices for Respiratory Protection All Applicable Standards</p>
---	--
2. The contractor shall ensure that any programs, certifications, licenses or other documentation in accordance with the above and/or any other applicable Federal, State, and Local Regulations/Guidelines are provided.

C. Scope Of Work

1. The work shall consist of furnishing labor, materials, insurance and all other incidental items required to perform the following:
  - a. Dust wipe sampling and analysis
    - 1) Collect dust wipe samples from various horizontal surfaces, such as floors, window sills, window troughs, etc., as directed by the Owner.
    - 2) Dust wipe samples shall be collected in accordance with ASTM ES30-94.



- 3) Analyze dust wipe sample in the laboratory using Flame Atomic Absorption Spectrometry ("FAAS") or Graphite Furnace Atomic Absorption Spectrometry("GFAAS").
  - 4) Provide result of analysis in micrograms per square foot.
  - 5) A faxed summary of results must be provided to the Owner within 24 hours after the Owner authorizes the Contractor to perform the laboratory analysis of the collected dust wipe sample. Contractor shall also have the ability to provide results in 4 hours for clearance, following lead-based paint abatement work, if requested by the Owner. The sampling result must be provided in a form approved by the Owner and must include for each dust wipe sample, the Project, the building address, the sample number, the room or room equivalent, the surface type, dimensions of sample areas, total micrograms, micrograms per square feet, and an indication of pass or fail.
  - 6) Turn-around time for results shall be counted from the time the Contractor performs collection of dust wipe samples to the time the results are actually presented to the Owner. This includes travel time from the site to the laboratory of the Contractor and back to the site.
  - 7) A detailed final report covering the results of all dust wipe samples taken and analyzed must be submitted within 5 days from the time the Owner authorizes the performance of the laboratory analysis. The sampling report must include for each dust wipe sample, the Project, the building address, the sample number, the room or room equivalent, the surface type, dimensions of sample areas, total micrograms, micrograms per square feet, and indicate pass or fail in a form approved by the Owner. Also include in the report the method of analysis, i.e. "FAAS" or "GFAAS", and the detection limits. The laboratory test results in the final report must be signed by the Laboratory Director.
  - 8) The sampling data report must contain all required data fields as specified by the Owner. The sampling data report shall be provided to the Owner on 3.5 inch high density diskettes in ASCII file form. The required data fields will be provided by the Owner to the Contractor.
  - 9) The laboratory used for the analysis of the dust wipe samples must be certified by the State Department of Health (or other responsible agency) and by the USEPA through the EPA's National Lead Laboratory Accreditation Program ("NLLAP"), or as an alternative having accreditation application pending before NLLAP, and having acceptable performance on five consecutive rounds of the EPA, Environmental Laboratory Proficiency Analytical Testing (ELPAT) program, including the most recent round; evidence of such accreditation must be provided. Indicate if the laboratory is an independent entity from the Contractor.
- b. Dust Spiked Samples
- 1) Provide dust spiked samples to the Owner. Dust spiked samples shall be prepared in accordance with the HUD Guidelines.  
**NOTE:** These samples are separate from the ones required by the Contractor for its own QA/QC
  - 2) Prepare dust spiked samples in a manner such that they are indistinguishable from the field samples.
  - 3) Prepare dust spiked samples using the same lot as that to be used in the field.
  - 4) Dust spiked samples shall be inserted into the sample stream, randomly, by the Owner Inspector.
  - 5) Blind analysis of dust spiked samples must fall within 80%-120% of the true value. If the laboratory fails to obtain readings within these limits, two more spiked samples shall be sent immediately to the lab for analysis.
  - 6) If the two additional spiked samples fail, the sample batch shall be considered invalid, and the Owner may, at its sole discretion, terminate this contract as well as withhold payment for services already rendered.
- c. Air Sampling and Analysis



- 1) Collect area air samples at various locations and various projects for personal exposure assessment as directed by the Owner.
  - 2) Air samples shall be collected in accordance with ASTM E1553-93.
  - 3) Prepare air samples for analysis in accordance with ASTM E33-94
  - 4) Analyze air samples using FAAS or GFAAS.
  - 5) All equipment required for personal air sampling, including pumps shall be provided by the Contractor at no extra cost to the Owner.
  - 6) Provide results of air samples in micrograms per cubic meter.
  - 7) A faxed summary of result must be provided to the Owner within 24 hours after the Owner authorizes the Contractor to perform the laboratory analysis of the collected air sample. The sampling result must include for each air sample taken the Project, the building address, the sample number, the room or room equivalent, and the reading.
  - 8) Turn-around time shall start after collection of the air samples, and includes travel time to and from the laboratory.
  - 9) A detailed final report covering the results of all air samples taken and analyzed must be submitted within 5 days from the time the Owner authorizes the performance of the laboratory analysis. The sampling report must include for each air sample, the Project, the building address, the sample number, the room or room equivalent, and the reading. The laboratory report contained in the final report must be signed by the Laboratory Director.
  - 10) The sampling data report must contain all required data fields as specified by the Owner. The sampling data report shall be provided to the Owner on 3.5 inch high density diskettes in ASCII file form. The required data fields will be provided by the Owner to the Contractor.
  - 11) The laboratory used for the analysis of the dust wipe samples must be certified by the State Department of Health (or other responsible agency) and by the USEPA through the EPA's National Lead Laboratory Accreditation Program ("NLLAP"), or as an alternative having accreditation application pending before NLLAP, and having acceptable performance on five consecutive rounds of the EPA, Environmental Laboratory Proficiency Analytical Testing (ELPAT) program, including the most recent round; evidence of such accreditation must be provided. Indicate if the laboratory is an independent entity from the Contractor.
  - 12) Air sampling technician shall be present during the entire shift of the air sampling.
- d. TCLP Sampling and Analysis
- 1) Take core samples of construction waste as directed by the Owner and analyze by TCLP testing to determine if waste is hazardous.
  - 2) Waste shall be classified as hazardous if the concentration of lead is greater than 5 parts per million by TCLP testing.
  - 3) The laboratory used for the analysis of the TCLP samples must be certified by the State Department of Health (or other responsible agency) and by the USEPA through the EPA's National Lead Laboratory Accreditation Program ("NLLAP"), or as an alternative having accreditation application pending before NLLAP, and having acceptable performance on five consecutive rounds of the EPA, Environmental Laboratory Proficiency Analytical Testing (ELPAT) program, including the most recent round; evidence of such accreditation must be provided. Indicate if the laboratory is an independent entity from the Contractor.
  - 4) A faxed summary of result must be provided to the Owner within 48 hours after the Owner authorizes the Contractor to perform the TCLP analysis of the waste. Provide results in parts per million (ppm).
  - 5) Final results provided to the Owner by the Contractor must include written sample preparation procedure and laboratory specific written procedures for performing TCLP, including quality control procedures used for performing the TCLP, and a table listing the sample numbers, description of the construction waste, and the



result of the TCLP. The laboratory report contained in the final report must be signed by the Laboratory Director.

- 6) Final report must also specify detection limits.
- 7) Final report must be provided within 5 days from the time the authorization to perform the TCLP is given by the Owner.

D. General Provisions

1. Some of the work of this contract may be in occupied apartments. The Contractor shall perform all of the work of this contract with the least inconvenience to the tenants.
2. The Contractor shall take all necessary precautions to protect the property of the Owner, its residents, and the public. The Contractor must repair any damaged property, whether of the Owner, its residents, or the public, and restore such property to its original condition. If the damage is beyond repair, the Contractor shall replace it with new, that in the judgment of the Owner, match the existing materials and/or of equal quality and workmanship. All such repairs shall be at the Contractor's expense.
3. The Contractor shall develop a work plan to be performed as requested by the Department of Planning and Development. The detailed plan shall include coordination of the monitoring and sampling work with the Contractor in a manner that will be least disruptive to the normal use of the non-work areas in the building. The plan should also include emergency procedures in case of fire.
4. The Contractor shall perform work in accordance with the latest HUD Guidelines, except as such Guidelines are modified by the Owner in writing in this Contract, or any Contract pursuant to this Contract, and in accordance with all applicable Federal, State and Local regulations.
5. The Contractor shall include in the bid price all supplementary miscellaneous items not specified but implied or required in order to complete the work.

E. Submissions

1. Six (6) copies of the submissions listed below must be submitted to the Owner by the Contractor or Subcontractor performing the Work:
  - a. Ability to perform lead dust wipe sampling by submitting evidence of the successful completion of lead inspector and/or risk assessor training by all staff to be assigned to the job including inspector technicians. As stated previously, training must be provided through an approved program.
  - b. Laboratory certification by the State Department of Health (or other responsible agency) through its ELAP program and by the USEPA through the EPA's National Lead Laboratory Accreditation Program ("NLLAP"), or as an alternative having accreditation application pending before NLLAP and having acceptable performance on five consecutive rounds of the EPA, Environmental Laboratory Proficiency Analytical Testing (ELPAT) program, including the most recent round; evidence of such accreditation must be provided.
  - c. If a subcontractor will be used for any of the laboratory work of this contract, evidence of certification stated in (2) above must also be provided for the subcontractor.

F. Waste Disposal

1. All waste generated must be legally disposed in accordance with the Federal, State and Local Regulations.

END OF SECTION 02 83 19 13c



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
02 83 33 13	02 83 19 13	Removal And Disposal Of Lead-Containing Paint
02 83 33 13	02 83 19 13a	Lead Paint Related Abatement Procedures
02 83 33 13	02 83 19 13b	XRF Testing For Lead-Based Paint
02 83 33 13	02 83 19 13c	Lead Dust Wipe, Air And Tcpl Sampling And Analysis
02 86 00 00	02 41 13 13	Selective Demolition
02 86 00 00	02 61 00 00	Excavation And Handling Of Contaminated Material
02 86 00 00	02 61 13 00	Underground Storage Tank Removal
02 86 00 00	02 61 13 00a	Precision Testing Of Underground Fuel Oil Tanks
02 86 00 00	02 61 13 00b	Hydrostatic Pressure Testing Of Air Receiving Tanks
02 86 00 00	02 61 26 00	Disposal Of Hazardous Materials



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





---

**SECTION 02 87 13 33 - MOLD REMEDIATION****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the removal and disposal of mold. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Submittals**

1. List of all personnel to be involved in the work with their training and certifications.
2. List of all products and procedures proposed for use in performance of the work.
3. Test reports.
4. Certificates.

**C. References**

1. U.S. EPA "Mold Remediation in Schools and Commercial Buildings"
2. U.S. EPA "A Brief Guide to Mold, Moisture, and Your Home"

**D. Quality Assurance**

1. Conform to all Federal, State, and Local regulations which govern the handling and disposal of mold materials.

**1.2 PRODUCT - (Not Used)****1.3 EXECUTION**

- A. Environmental Assessment:** The presence of mold, water damage, or musty odors shall be addressed immediately. In all instances, any source(s) of water must be stopped and the extent of water damaged determined. Water damaged materials shall be dried and repaired. Mold damaged materials shall be remediated in accordance with this document.

1. **Visual Inspection:** A visual inspection is the most important initial step in identifying a possible contamination problem. The extent of any water damage and mold growth shall be visually assessed. This assessment is important in determining remedial strategies. Ventilation systems shall also be visually checked, particularly for damp filters but also for damp conditions elsewhere in the system and overall cleanliness. Ceiling tiles, gypsum wallboard (sheetrock), cardboard, paper, and other cellulosic surfaces shall be given careful attention during a visual inspection. The use of equipment such as a boroscope, to view spaces in ductwork or behind walls, or a moisture meter, to detect moisture in building materials, may be helpful in identifying hidden sources of fungal growth and the extent of water damage.

2. **Bulk/Surface Sampling**

- a. Bulk or surface sampling is not required to undertake a remediation. Remediation of visually identified fungal contamination shall proceed without further evaluation.
- b. Bulk or surface samples may need to be collected to identify specific fungal contaminants as part of a medical evaluation if occupants are experiencing symptoms which may be related to fungal exposure or to identify the presence or absence of mold if a visual inspection is equivocal (e.g., discoloration, and staining).
- c. An individual trained in appropriate sampling methodology shall perform bulk or surface sampling. Bulk samples shall be collected from visibly moldy surfaces by scraping or cutting materials with a clean tool into a clean plastic bag. Surface samples shall be collected by wiping a measured area with a sterile swab or by stripping the suspect surface



with clear tape. Surface sampling is less destructive than bulk sampling. Other sampling methods may also be available. A laboratory specializing in mycology shall be consulted for specific sampling and delivery instructions.

3. Air Monitoring
  - a. Air sampling for fungi shall not be part of a routine assessment. This is because decisions about appropriate remediation strategies can usually be made on the basis of a visual inspection. In addition, air-sampling methods for some fungi are prone to false negative results and therefore cannot be used to definitively rule out contamination.
  - b. Air monitoring may be necessary if an individual(s) has been diagnosed with a disease that is or may be associated with a fungal exposure (e.g., pulmonary hemorrhage/hemosiderosis, and aspergillosis).
  - c. Air monitoring may be necessary if there is evidence from a visual inspection or bulk sampling that ventilation systems may be contaminated. The purpose of such air monitoring is to assess the extent of contamination throughout a building. It is preferable to conduct sampling while ventilation systems are operating.
  - d. Air monitoring may be necessary if the presence of mold is suspected (e.g., musty odors) but cannot be identified by a visual inspection or bulk sampling (e.g., mold growth behind walls). The purpose of such air monitoring is to determine the location and/or extent of contamination.
  - e. If air monitoring is performed, for comparative purposes, outdoor air samples shall be collected concurrently at an air intake, if possible, and at a location representative of outdoor air. For additional information on air sampling, refer to the American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists' document, "Bioaerosols: Assessment and Control."
  - f. Personnel conducting the sampling shall be trained in proper air sampling methods for microbial contaminants. A laboratory specializing in mycology shall be consulted for specific sampling and shipping instructions.
4. Analysis of Environmental Samples
  - a. Microscopic identification of the spores/colonies requires considerable expertise. These services are not routinely available from commercial laboratories. Documented quality control in the laboratories used for analysis of the bulk/surface and air samples is necessary. The American Industrial Hygiene Association (AIHA) offers accreditation to microbial laboratories (Environmental Microbiology Laboratory Accreditation Program (EMLAP)). Accredited laboratories must participate in quarterly proficiency testing (Environmental Microbiology Proficiency Analytical Testing Program (EMPAT)).
5. Evaluation of bulk/surface and air sampling data shall be performed by an experienced health professional. The presence of few or trace amounts of fungal spores in bulk/surface sampling shall be considered background. Amounts greater than this or the presence of fungal fragments (e.g., hyphae, and conidiophores) may suggest fungal colonization, growth, and/or accumulation at or near the sampled location. Air samples shall be evaluated by means of comparison (i.e., indoors to outdoors) and by fungal type (e.g., genera, and species). In general, the levels and types of fungi found should be similar indoors (in non-problem buildings) as compared to the outdoor air. Differences in the levels or types of fungi found in air samples may indicate that moisture sources and resultant fungal growth may be problematic.

## B. Remediation

1. General
  - a. **In all situations, the underlying cause of water accumulation must be rectified or fungal growth will recur.** Any initial water infiltration shall be stopped and cleaned immediately. An immediate response (within 24 to 48 hours) and thorough clean up, drying, and/or removal of water damaged materials will prevent or limit mold growth. If the source of water is elevated humidity, relative humidity shall be maintained at levels below 60% to inhibit mold growth. Emphasis shall be on ensuring proper repairs of the building infrastructure, so that water damage and moisture buildup does not recur.
  - b. Five different levels of abatement are described below. The size of the area impacted by fungal contamination primarily determines the type of remediation. The sizing levels below



are based on professional judgment and practicality; currently there is not adequate data to relate the extent of contamination to frequency or severity of health effects. **The goal of remediation is to remove or clean contaminated materials in a way that prevents the emission of fungi and dust contaminated with fungi from leaving a work area and entering an occupied or non-abatement area, while protecting the health of workers performing the abatement.** The listed remediation methods were designed to achieve this goal, however, due to the general nature of these methods it is the responsibility of the people conducting remediation to ensure the methods enacted are adequate. The listed remediation methods are not meant to exclude other similarly effective methods. Any changes to the remediation methods listed in these guidelines, however, shall be carefully considered prior to implementation.

- c. Non-porous (e.g., metals, glass, and hard plastics) and semi-porous (e.g., wood, and concrete) materials that are structurally sound and are visibly moldy can be cleaned and reused. Cleaning shall be done using a detergent solution. Porous materials such as ceiling tiles and insulation, and wallboards with more than a small area of contamination shall be removed and discarded. Porous materials (e.g., wallboard, and fabrics) that can be cleaned, can be reused, but should be discarded if possible. A professional restoration consultant shall be contacted when restoring porous materials with more than a small area of fungal contamination. All materials to be reused shall be dry and visibly free from mold. Routine inspections shall be conducted to confirm the effectiveness of remediation work.
  - d. The use of gaseous, vapor-phase, or aerosolized biocides for remedial purposes is **not** recommended. The use of biocides in this manner can pose health concerns for people in occupied spaces of the building and for people returning to the treated space if used improperly. Furthermore, the effectiveness of these treatments is unproven and does not address the possible health concerns from the presence of the remaining non-viable mold. For additional information on the use of biocides for remedial purposes, refer to the American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists' document, "Bioaerosols: Assessment and Control."
2. **Level I: Small Isolated Areas** (10 sq. ft or less) - e.g., ceiling tiles, small areas on walls
    - a. Remediation can be conducted by regular building maintenance staff. Such persons shall receive training on proper clean up methods, personal protection, and potential health hazards. This training can be performed as part of a program to comply with the requirements of the OSHA Hazard Communication Standard (29 CFR 1910.1200).
    - b. Respiratory protection (e.g., N95 disposable respirator), in accordance with the OSHA respiratory protection standard (29 CFR 1910.134), is recommended. Gloves and eye protection shall be worn.
    - c. The work area shall be unoccupied. Vacating people from spaces adjacent to the work area is not necessary but is recommended in the presence of infants (less than 12 months old), persons recovering from recent surgery, immune suppressed people, or people with chronic inflammatory lung diseases (e.g., asthma, hypersensitivity, pneumonitis, and severe allergies).
    - d. Containment of the work area is not necessary. Dust suppression methods, such as misting (not soaking) surfaces prior to remediation, are recommended.
    - e. Contaminated materials that cannot be cleaned shall be removed from the building in a sealed plastic bag. There are no special requirements for the disposal of moldy materials.
    - f. The work area and areas used by remedial workers for egress shall be cleaned with a damp cloth and/or mop and a detergent solution.
    - g. All areas shall be left dry and visibly free from contamination and debris.
  3. **Level II: Mid-Sized Isolated Areas** (10 - 30 sq. ft.) - e.g., individual wallboard panels.
    - a. Remediation can be conducted by regular building maintenance staff. Such persons shall receive training on proper clean up methods, personal protection, and potential health hazards. This training can be performed as part of a program to comply with the requirements of the OSHA Hazard Communication Standard (29 CFR 1910.1200).
    - b. Respiratory protection (e.g., N95 disposable respirator), in accordance with the OSHA respiratory protection standard (29 CFR 1910.134), is recommended. Gloves and eye protection shall be worn.



- c. The work area shall be unoccupied. Vacating people from spaces adjacent to the work area is not necessary but is recommended in the presence of infants (less than 12 months old), persons having undergone recent surgery, immune suppressed people, or people with chronic inflammatory lung diseases (e.g., asthma, hypersensitivity, pneumonitis, and severe allergies).
- d. The work area shall be covered with a plastic sheet(s) and sealed with tape before remediation, to contain dust/debris.
- e. Dust suppression methods, such as misting (not soaking) surfaces prior to remediation, are recommended.
- f. Contaminated materials that cannot be cleaned shall be removed from the building in sealed plastic bags. There are no special requirements for the disposal of moldy materials.
- g. The work area and areas used by remedial workers for egress shall be HEPA vacuumed (a vacuum equipped with a High-Efficiency Particulate Air filter) and cleaned with a damp cloth and/or mop and a detergent solution.
- h. All areas shall be left dry and visibly free from contamination and debris.
- 4. **Level III: Large Isolated Areas** (30 - 100 square feet) - e.g., several wallboard panels.
  - a. A health and safety professional with experience performing microbial investigations shall be consulted prior to remediation activities to provide oversight for the project.
  - b. The following procedures *at a minimum* are recommended:
    - 1) Personnel trained in the handling of hazardous materials and equipped with respiratory protection, (e.g., N95 disposable respirator), in accordance with the OSHA respiratory protection standard (29 CFR 1910.134), is recommended. Gloves and eye protection shall be worn.
    - 2) The work area and areas directly adjacent shall be covered with a plastic sheet(s) and taped before remediation, to contain dust/debris.
    - 3) Seal ventilation ducts/grills in the work area and areas directly adjacent with plastic sheeting.
    - 4) The work area and areas directly adjacent shall be unoccupied. Further vacating of people from spaces near the work area is recommended in the presence of infants (less than 12 months old), persons having undergone recent surgery, immune suppressed people, or people with chronic inflammatory lung diseases (e.g., asthma, hypersensitivity, pneumonitis, and severe allergies).
    - 5) Dust suppression methods, such as misting (not soaking) surfaces prior to remediation, are recommended.
    - 6) Contaminated materials that cannot be cleaned shall be removed from the building in sealed plastic bags. There are no special requirements for the disposal of moldy materials.
    - 7) The work area and surrounding areas shall be HEPA vacuumed and cleaned with a damp cloth and/or mop and a detergent solution.
    - 8) All areas shall be left dry and visibly free from contamination and debris.
  - c. If abatement procedures are expected to generate a lot of dust (e.g., abrasive cleaning of contaminated surfaces, demolition of plaster walls) or the visible concentration of the fungi is heavy (blanket coverage as opposed to patchy), then it is recommended that the remediation procedures for Level IV are followed.
- 5. **Level IV: Extensive Contamination** (greater than 100 contiguous square feet in an area)
  - a. A health and safety professional with experience performing microbial investigations shall be consulted prior to remediation activities to provide oversight for the project. The following procedures are recommended:
    - 1) Personnel trained in the handling of hazardous materials equipped with:
      - a) Full-face respirators with high efficiency particulate air (HEPA) cartridges
      - b) Disposable protective clothing covering both head and shoes
      - c) Gloves
    - 2) Containment of the affected area:



- a) Complete isolation of work area from occupied spaces using plastic sheeting sealed with duct tape (including ventilation ducts/grills, fixtures, and any other openings)
  - b) The use of an exhaust fan with a HEPA filter to generate negative pressurization
  - c) Airlocks and decontamination room
- 3) Vacating people from spaces adjacent to the work area is not necessary but is recommended in the presence of infants (less than 12 months old), persons having undergone recent surgery, immune suppressed people, or people with chronic inflammatory lung diseases (e.g., asthma, hypersensitivity, pneumonitis, and severe allergies).
  - 4) Contaminated materials that cannot be cleaned shall be removed from the building in sealed plastic bags. The outside of the bags shall be cleaned with a damp cloth and a detergent solution or HEPA vacuumed in the decontamination chamber prior to their transport to uncontaminated areas of the building. There are no special requirements for the disposal of moldy materials.
  - 5) The contained area and decontamination room shall be HEPA vacuumed and cleaned with a damp cloth and/or mop with a detergent solution and be visibly clean prior to the removal of isolation barriers.
  - 6) Air monitoring shall be conducted prior to occupancy to determine if the area is fit to reoccupy.
6. **Level V: Remediation of HVAC Systems**
- a. A Small Isolated Area of Contamination (<10 square feet) in the HVAC System
    - 1) Remediation can be conducted by regular building maintenance staff. Such persons shall receive training on proper clean up methods, personal protection, and potential health hazards. This training can be performed as part of a program to comply with the requirements of the OSHA Hazard Communication Standard (29 CFR 1910.1200).
    - 2) Respiratory protection (e.g., N95 disposable respirator), in accordance with the OSHA respiratory protection standard (29 CFR 1910.134), is recommended. Gloves and eye protection shall be worn.
    - 3) The HVAC system shall be shut down prior to any remedial activities.
    - 4) The work area shall be covered with a plastic sheet(s) and sealed with tape before remediation, to contain dust/debris.
    - 5) Dust suppression methods, such as misting (not soaking) surfaces prior to remediation, are recommended.
    - 6) Growth supporting materials that are contaminated, such as the paper on the insulation of interior lined ducts and filters, shall be removed. Other contaminated materials that cannot be cleaned shall be removed in sealed plastic bags. There are no special requirements for the disposal of moldy materials.
    - 7) The work area and areas immediately surrounding the work area shall be HEPA vacuumed and cleaned with a damp cloth and/or mop and a detergent solution.
    - 8) All areas shall be left dry and visibly free from contamination and debris.
    - 9) A variety of biocides are recommended by HVAC manufacturers for use with HVAC components, such as, cooling coils and condensation pans. HVAC manufacturers shall be consulted for the products they recommend for use in their systems.
  - b. Areas of Contamination (>10 square feet) in the HVAC System: A health and safety professional with experience performing microbial investigations shall be consulted prior to remediation activities to provide oversight for remediation projects involving more than a small isolated area in an HVAC system. The following procedures are recommended:
    - 1) Personnel trained in the handling of hazardous materials equipped with:
      - a) Respiratory protection (e.g., N95 disposable respirator), in accordance with the OSHA respiratory protection standard (29 CFR 1910.134), is recommended.
      - b) Gloves and eye protection



- c) Full-face respirators with HEPA cartridges and disposable protective clothing covering both head and shoes shall be worn if contamination is greater than 30 square feet.
  - 2) The HVAC system shall be shut down prior to any remedial activities.
  - 3) Containment of the affected area:
    - a) Complete isolation of work area from the other areas of the HVAC system using plastic sheeting sealed with duct tape.
    - b) The use of an exhaust fan with a HEPA filter to generate negative pressurization.
    - c) Airlocks and decontamination room if contamination is greater than 30 square feet.
  - 4) Growth supporting materials that are contaminated, such as the paper on the insulation of interior lined ducts and filters, shall be removed. Other contaminated materials that cannot be cleaned should be removed in sealed plastic bags. When a decontamination chamber is present, the outside of the bags shall be cleaned with a damp cloth and a detergent solution or HEPA vacuumed prior to their transport to uncontaminated areas of the building. There are no special requirements for the disposal of moldy materials.
  - 5) The contained area and decontamination room shall be HEPA vacuumed and cleaned with a damp cloth and/or mop and a detergent solution prior to the removal of isolation barriers.
  - 6) All areas shall be left dry and visibly free from contamination and debris.
  - 7) Air monitoring shall be conducted prior to re-occupancy with the HVAC system in operation to determine if the area(s) served by the system are fit to reoccupy.
  - 8) A variety of biocides are recommended by HVAC manufacturers for use with HVAC components, such as, cooling coils and condensation pans. HVAC manufacturers shall be consulted for the products they recommend for use in their systems.
7. Hazard Communication: When fungal growth requiring large-scale remediation is found, the building owner, management, and/or employer shall notify occupants in the affected area(s) of its presence. Notification shall include a description of the remedial measures to be taken and a timetable for completion. Group meetings held before and after remediation with full disclosure of plans and results can be an effective communication mechanism. Individuals with persistent health problems that appear to be related to bioaerosol exposure should see their physicians for a referral to practitioners who are trained in occupational/environmental medicine or related specialties and are knowledgeable about these types of exposures. Individuals seeking medical attention shall be provided with a copy of all inspection results and interpretation to give to their medical practitioners.

END OF SECTION 02 87 13 33



---

**SECTION 02 87 16 13 - BIRD AND BIRD WASTE ABATEMENT****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for bird and bird waste abatement. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Summary Of Work**

1. Work Included - Conventional Enclosure for Removal of Birds and Bird Waste
  - a. Seal off penetrations on perimeter walls into the work area (critical barriers) and establish a decontamination facility for workers.
  - b. Coordinate activities with the demolition and well capping activities.
2. Work Included - Removal and disposal of birds and bird waste.
  - a. Establish work area by installing construction barrier tape around removal area.
  - b. Remove and properly dispose of bulk contamination debris.
  - c. Mist bird waste and contaminated material with Biocide or the equivalent (i.e. Sanogene, Oxine, or Envirocon).
  - d. Remove and properly dispose of contaminated waste material from all building components.
  - e. Utilize low pressure washers or scrub brushes to clean all wall surfaces of bird waste.

**C. Quality Criteria**

1. Qualifications for Performance of Work
  - a. Contractor (or subcontractor engaged to perform the Work of this Section) shall:
    - 1) Be a licensed bird waste abatement contractor in accordance with the Statutes of the State in which the work is to be performed. Submit notarized documentation confirming current licensure.
    - 2) Have a record of not less than five years successful experience in bird waste removal or asbestos removal.
2. Reference Standards
  - a. Acknowledge, by the executing of the Contract, awareness and familiarity with the contents and requirements of the following regulations, codes, and standards, and assume responsibility for the performance of the Work in strict compliance therewith and for every instance of failure to comply therewith.
  - b. Where conflict among requirements or with the Contract Documents exists, the more stringent requirements shall apply.
    - 1) USEPA Regional National Emissions Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutants (NESHAPS)
    - 2) U.S. Occupational and Safety and Health Administration (OSHA)
    - 3) U.S. EPA Office of Pesticide and Toxic Substances Guidance Document
    - 4) U.S. Department of Transportation, Hazardous Substances: Final Rule (49 CFR 171 and 172), Federal Register November 21, 1986 and corrected February 17, 1987.
    - 5) Statutes of the State in which the Work is to be Performed: Licensure for Asbestos Consultants and Contractors.
    - 6) All state, county, and city codes and ordinances as applicable. Make available for review at the site one copy of EPA, OSHA, and applicable State, County, and City Regulations governing the Work.
3. Patent/Copyright Compliance: Contractor shall determine the applicability of any process patents that may be employed and shall be responsible for the payment of all fees, royalties and licenses that may be required for the use of any patented or licensed process. Contractor shall hold the Owner, Engineer and Testing Laboratory harmless for failure to obtain any licenses and to pay any applicable fees and royalties.



D. Product Handling

1. Deliver all materials in the original packages, containers, or bundles bearing the name of the manufacturer and the brand name.
2. Store all materials subject to damage off the ground, away from wet or damp surfaces, and under cover sufficient to prevent damage or contamination.
3. Remove from the premises all damaged or deteriorating materials. Dispose of materials that become contaminated with waste in accordance with applicable regulatory standards.

E. Worksite Conditions

1. Worker and Visitor Procedures: The Contractor is hereby advised that the birds and bird wastes have been determined to cause diseases by inhalation and Contractor shall provide workers and qualified visitors with respirators that, as a minimum, shall meet the requirements of current applicable OSHA regulations, and protective clothing during preparation of system of enclosures, prior to commencing, during actual removal, and until final clean-up is completed. Also all personnel assigned to work on this project shall attend a training/awareness class for the purpose of explaining the hazards of improperly handling these materials and proper control measures to take in order to protect themselves.

F. Personnel Protection

1. General

- a. Provide respiratory protection in accordance with OSHA regulations 29 CFR 1910-134 and in accordance with the following paragraphs.
  - 1) Prior to commencement of work, all workers shall be instructed by the Contractor and shall be knowledgeable in the appropriate procedures of personnel protection and waste removal.
  - 2) Where respirators with disposable filters are used, provide sufficient filters for replacement as necessary by the workers, or as required by applicable regulations.
  - 3) Permit no visitors, except for governmental inspectors having jurisdiction, or as authorized by Engineer or the Owner, in the work areas after commencement of waste disturbance or removal. Provide authorized visitors with suitable respirators.
  - 4) Provide workers with sufficient sets of protective disposable clothing, consisting of full-body coveralls, head covers, gloves, and foot covers, of sizes to properly fit individual workers.
  - 5) Provide authorized visitors with a set of suitable protective disposable clothing, headgear, eye protection, and/or footwear of sizes to properly fit visitors whenever they are required to enter the work area, to a maximum of six sets per day.
  - 6) Provide, in addition to respirators and protective clothing provided for authorized visitors, protective clothing and respirators for use by Testing Laboratory's representative. Furnish protective clothing in as many sets as required for full-time monitoring by Testing Laboratory.
  - 7) Provide and post the decontamination and work procedures to be followed by workers.

2. Respiratory Protection Program

- a. Maintain a respiratory protection program that contains all the elements of the OSHA regulations. Provide a copy to the Engineer for approval.
- b. Appoint a respiratory protection program administrator, who shall be responsible for the program, maintaining all documentation, instructing workers and providing fit tests. Respiratory protection administrator is to be qualified under OSHA requirements and to have attended and passed, as a minimum, OSHA training institute 2-week course on respiratory protection or NIOSH course "Occupational Respiratory Protection." Respiratory protection program administrator is to be on-site daily during abatement activities. All written programs and directions are to be in English and/or the language of the abatement workers if they are not fluent in English.
- c. The Contractor is advised that the minimum respiratory requirements as called for in this section and on any drawings/sketches shall be applied unless reported measures indicate





that a lower form of respiratory protection is acceptable according to the appropriate OSHA regulations and the more strict sections of the specification.

3. Respiratory Protection Requirements
  - a. Workers shall be provided with respiratory protection equipment. The respirators are to be sanitized and maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's specification. Appropriate respirator selection will be dependent upon the work to be performed and the level of exposure, as given below.
  - b. For the clean-up, as a minimum, the use of full-faced air-purifying respirators is required for all preparation, removal and cleaning work.
  - c. This specification requires that workers shall wear suitable respiratory protection at all times whenever a potential for exposure to bird and bird waste exists.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Materials

1. Polyethylene/Plastic sheeting shall be of the thicknesses specified, not less than 6 mil, in sizes to minimize the frequency of joints. Utilize reinforced plastic sheeting in specified thicknesses on floors.
2. Tape shall be glass fiber or other type capable of sealing joints of adjacent sheets of plastic and for attachment of plastic sheet to finished or unfinished surfaces of dissimilar materials under both dry and wet conditions.
3. Sodium Hypochlorite ("bleach")
4. Impermeable Containers shall be suitable to receive and retain contaminated materials until disposal at an approved site and shall be labeled in accordance with U.S. DOT 49 CFR 171 and 172, and containers shall be both air- and water-tight. Use a minimum of two types of impermeable containers: 1) six millimeter-thick (mil) plastic bags sized to fit within the drum; and 2) metal or fiber drums with tightly fitting lids.
5. Other Materials: Provide all other materials, such as lumber, nails, and hardware, that may be required to construct and dismantle the decontamination area and the barriers that isolate the work area(s).
6. Caulking shall be non-shrinking caulk to be used where insulated pipes continue through areas such as walls and ceilings. Contractor shall determine and submit proof that caulk proposed for use is compatible with the temperature conditions of the surfaces to which it is to be applied.
  - a. Tools And Equipment
    - 1) Water Sprayer - utilize airless or other low pressure sprayer for amended water application.
    - 2) Air Purifying Equipment (for internal recirculation in the work area) shall be HEPA Filtration Systems or Electronic Precipitators. Ensure that no internal air movement system or purification equipment exhausts contaminated air from the work area(s) outside the work area.
    - 3) Diminished Air Pressure Equipment shall comply with ANSI 29.2-7, local exhaust ventilation.
    - 4) Scaffolding shall be as required to accomplish the specified work and shall meet all applicable safety regulations.
    - 5) Transportation - as required for loading, temporary storage, transit, and unloading of contaminated waste without exposure to persons or property.

## 1.3 EXECUTION

### A. Procedures

1. All personnel assigned to perform the work shall attend a training/awareness class for the purpose of explaining the hazards of improperly handling the waste and the proper control measures to take in order to protect themselves. These work procedures shall be discussed with



- each individual followed by the individual acknowledging receipt of this training by completing the pertinent information on a Hazardous Awareness Training Form
2. The majority of diseases related to bird waste is related to the inhalation of the airborne dust released by the waste. All personnel performing removal/decontamination waste shall therefore wear Powered Air Purifying Respirators (PAPR) equipped with combination Organic Vapor and High Efficiency Particulate Air (HEPA) filters while handling the waste.
  3. Workers shall wear non-porous gloves and boots during all preparatory and removal operations.
  4. When entering the building, the removal/decontamination personnel shall mist all surfaces having visible remnants of waste, using a diluted sodium hypochlorite ("bleach") and water solution. This solution shall be diluted at a ratio of 10 parts water to 1 part bleach for a 10 to 1 ration (10:1). The waste shall be continuously misted during occupancy in order to keep airborne dust emissions from the waste to a minimum.
  5. Remove all birds from the building and seal all openings into the building. The main purpose of this is to eliminate the availability for future bird access into the building. The openings may be temporarily sealed or closed up in many ways, including boarding up windows/doors, polyethylene sheeting, or other convenient and cost effective means. It is not the intention of this task to complete seal the building airtight.
  6. Designate an area of the facility for the purpose of storing the waste prior to loading for transportation to the appropriate landfill. The area designated shall have easy access to the door which will be utilized as the waste load-out.

END OF SECTION 02 87 16 13



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
02 89 00 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
02 89 00 00	02 83 19 13	Removal And Disposal Of Lead-Containing Paint
02 89 00 00	02 83 19 13a	Lead Paint Related Abatement Procedures
02 89 00 00	02 83 19 13b	XRF Testing For Lead-Based Paint
02 89 00 00	02 83 19 13c	Lead Dust Wipe, Air And Tcpl Sampling And Analysis



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 03 01 30 71 - CONCRETE REHABILITATION**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for concrete rehabilitation. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Removal of deteriorated concrete and reinforcement and subsequent replacement and patching.
  - b. Floor joint repair.
  - c. Epoxy crack injection.
  - d. Corrosion-inhibiting treatment.
  - e. Polymer overlays.
  - f. Polymer sealers.
  - g. Steel structural reinforcement.
  - h. Composite structural reinforcement.

## C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include material descriptions, chemical composition, physical properties, test data, and mixing, preparation, and application instructions.
2. Formwork and Shoring Drawings: Prepared by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer detailing formwork and temporary shoring and supports. Include schedule and sequence for erection and removal relative to removal of deteriorated concrete and reinforcement and subsequent repair and reinforcement.
3. Samples: Cured Samples of overlay and patching materials.
4. Rehabilitation Program: For each phase of rehabilitation process, including protection of surrounding materials and Project site during operations. Describe in detail materials, methods, equipment, and sequence of operations to be used for each phase of the Work.
  - a. If alternative materials and methods to those indicated are proposed for any phase of rehabilitation work, submit substitution request and provide a written description of proposed materials and methods, including evidence of successful use on other comparable projects, and a testing program to demonstrate their effectiveness for this Project.

## D. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver materials to Project site in manufacturer's original and unopened containers, labeled with type and name of products and manufacturers.
2. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for minimum and maximum temperature requirements and other conditions for storage.
3. Store cementitious materials off the ground, under cover, and in a dry location.
4. Store aggregates, covered and in a dry location, where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.

## E. Project Conditions

1. Environmental Limitations for Epoxies: Do not apply when air and substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by manufacturer. During hot weather, cool epoxy components before mixing, store mixed products in shade, and cool unused mixed products to retard setting. Do not apply to wet substrates unless approved by manufacturer.



- a. Use only Class A epoxies when substrate temperatures are below or are expected to go below 40 deg F (5 deg C) within 8 hours.
  - b. Use only Class A or B epoxies when substrate temperatures are below or are expected to go below 60 deg F (16 deg C) within 8 hours.
  - c. Use only Class C epoxies when substrate temperatures are above and are expected to stay above 60 deg F (16 deg C) for 8 hours.
2. Cold-Weather Requirements for Cementitious Materials:
- a. Do not apply unless air temperature is above 40 deg F (5 deg C) and will remain so for at least 48 hours after completion of Work.  
**OR**  
Comply with the following procedures:
    - 1) When air temperature is below 40 deg F (5 deg C), heat patching material ingredients and existing concrete to produce temperatures between 40 and 90 deg F (5 and 32 deg C).
    - 2) When mean daily air temperature is between 25 and 40 deg F (minus 4 and plus 5 deg C), cover completed Work with weather-resistant insulating blankets for 48 hours after repair or provide enclosure and heat to maintain temperatures above 32 deg F (0 deg C) within the enclosure for 48 hours after repair.
    - 3) When mean daily air temperature is below 25 deg F (minus 4 deg C), provide enclosure and heat to maintain temperatures above 32 deg F (0 deg C) within the enclosure for 48 hours after repair.
3. Hot-Weather Requirements for Cementitious Materials: Protect repair work when temperature and humidity conditions produce excessive evaporation of water from patching materials. Provide artificial shade and wind breaks, and use cooled materials as required. Do not apply to substrates with temperatures of 90 deg F (32 deg C) and above.
4. Environmental Limitations for High-Molecular-Weight Methacrylate Sealers: Do not apply when concrete surface temperature is below 55 deg F (13 deg C) or above 75 deg F (24 deg C) **OR** 90 deg F (32 deg C), **as directed**. Apply only to dry substrates **OR** substrates that have been dry for at least 72 hours.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Bonding Agents

1. Epoxy-Modified, Cementitious Bonding and Anticorrosion Agent: Product that consists of water-insensitive epoxy adhesive, portland cement, and water-based solution of corrosion-inhibiting chemicals that forms a protective film on steel reinforcement.
2. Epoxy Bonding Agent: ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type II **OR** V, **as directed**.  
a. Thin Film Open Time: Not less than two **OR** six **OR** 24, **as directed**, hours.
3. Latex Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type I **OR** II **OR** II at exterior locations and where indicated, Type I at other locations, **as directed**.
4. Mortar Scrub-Coat: 1 part portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I, II, or III and 1 part fine aggregate complying with ASTM C 144, except 100 percent passing a No. 16 (1.18-mm) sieve.

### B. Patching Mortar

1. Patching Mortar, General:
  - a. Overhead Patching Mortar: For overhead repairs, use patching mortar recommended by manufacturer for overhead use and as specified in this Article.
  - b. Coarse Aggregate for Adding to Patching Mortar: Washed aggregate complying with ASTM C 33, Size No. 8, Class 5S. Add only as permitted by patching mortar manufacturer.
2. Job-Mixed Patching Mortar: 1 part portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I, II, or III and 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate complying with ASTM C 144, except 100 percent passing a No. 16 (1.18-mm) sieve.



3. Cementitious Patching Mortar: Packaged, dry mix complying with ASTM C 928.
4. Polymer-Modified, Cementitious Patching Mortar: Packaged, dry mix complying with ASTM C 928, that contains a non-redispersible latex additive as either a dry powder or a separate liquid that is added during mixing.
5. Polymer-Modified, Silica-Fume-Enhanced, Cementitious Patching Mortar: Packaged, dry mix complying with ASTM C 928, that contains silica fume complying with ASTM C 1240 and a non-redispersible latex additive as either a dry powder or a separate liquid that is added during mixing.

#### C. Concrete

1. Concrete Materials and Admixtures: Comply with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
2. Steel and Fiber Reinforcement and Reinforcement Accessories: Comply with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
3. Form-Facing Materials: Comply with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
4. Shotcrete: Comply with Division 03 Section "Shotcrete".
5. Preplaced Aggregate: Washed aggregate complying with ASTM C 33, Class 5S, with 95 to 100 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch (37.5-mm) sieve, 40 to 80 percent passing a 1-inch (25-mm) sieve, 20 to 45 percent passing a 3/4-inch (19-mm) sieve, 0 to 10 percent passing a 1/2-inch (12.5-mm) sieve, and 0 to 2 percent passing a 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) sieve **OR** 100 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch (37.5-mm) sieve, 95 to 100 percent passing a 1-inch (25-mm) sieve, 40 to 80 percent passing a 3/4-inch (19-mm) sieve, 0 to 15 percent passing a 1/2-inch (12.5-mm) sieve, and 0 to 2 percent passing a 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) sieve, **as directed**.
6. Fine Aggregate for Grout Used with Preplaced Aggregate: Fine aggregate complying with ASTM C 33, but with 100 percent passing a No. 8 (2.36-mm) sieve, 95 to 100 percent passing a No. 16 (1.18-mm) sieve, 55 to 80 percent passing a No. 30 (0.6-mm) sieve, 30 to 55 percent passing a No. 50 (0.3-mm) sieve, 10 to 30 percent passing a No. 100 (0.15-mm) sieve, 0 to 10 percent passing a No. 200 (0.075-mm) sieve, and having a fineness modulus of 1.30 to 2.10.
7. Grout Fluidifier for Grout Used with Preplaced Aggregate: ASTM C 937.
8. Portland Cement for Grout Used with Preplaced Aggregate: ASTM C 150.
9. Pozzolans for Grout Used with Preplaced Aggregate: ASTM C 618.

#### D. Miscellaneous Materials

1. Epoxy Joint Filler: 2-component, semirigid, 100 percent solids, epoxy resin with a Type A Shore durometer hardness of at least 80 per ASTM D 2240.
2. Polyurea Joint Filler: 2-component, semirigid, 100 percent solids, polyurea resin with a Type A Shore durometer hardness of at least 80 per ASTM D 2240.
3. Epoxy Crack Injection Adhesive: ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type I **OR** IV, **as directed**, Grade 1, except for gel time **OR** solvent free, **as directed**.
4. Capping Adhesive: Product manufactured for use with crack injection adhesive by same manufacturer.
5. Corrosion-Inhibiting Treatment Materials: Water-based solution of alkaline corrosion-inhibiting chemicals that penetrates concrete by diffusion and forms a protective film on steel reinforcement.
6. Polymer Overlay: Epoxy adhesive complying with ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type III.
7. Aggregate for Use with Polymer Overlay: Oven-dried, washed silica sand complying with ACI 503.3.
8. Polymer Sealer: Low-viscosity epoxy or high-molecular-weight methacrylate penetrating sealer recommended by manufacturer for application to exterior concrete traffic surfaces.
9. Methylmethacrylate Sealer/Brighteners: Clear low-viscosity sealer recommended by manufacturer for sealing exterior exposed-aggregate concrete, and formulated to bring out color of aggregates and give concrete a wet look.
10. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
  - a. After fabricating, prepare surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."



- b. For minimum protection to steel after preparation, apply one coat of lead- and chromate-free, modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#76 and one coat of alkyd-gloss enamel complying with MPI#96.
- c. After preparation, apply two-coat high-performance coating system consisting of organic zinc-rich primer, complying with SSPC-Paint 20 or SSPC-Paint 29 and topcoat of high-build, urethane or epoxy coating recommended by manufacturer for application over specified zinc-rich primer. Comply with coating manufacturer's written directions and with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
11. Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: Carbon steel; ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6), for bolts; ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M), Grade A, for nuts; and ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M) for washers; hot-dip or mechanically zinc coated.
12. Postinstalled Anchors: Chemical or expansion anchors, made from stainless-steel components complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F 738M and ASTM F 836M, Alloy Group A1 or A4) for bolts and nuts; ASTM A 666 or ASTM A 276, Type 304 or 316, for anchors, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to four times the load imposed, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
13. Composite Structural Reinforcement: Manufacturer's system consisting of carbon **OR** glass, **as directed**,-fiber reinforcement in the form of preimpregnated sheets or tow sheet with field-applied saturant, and epoxy primers, fillers, adhesives, saturants, and topcoats, designed for use as external structural reinforcement for concrete.

#### E. Mixes

1. Mix products, in clean containers, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Add clean silica sand and coarse aggregates to products only as recommended by manufacturer.
  - b. Do not add water, thinners, or additives unless recommended by manufacturer.
  - c. When practical, use manufacturer's premeasured packages to ensure that materials are mixed in proper proportions. When premeasured packages are not used, measure ingredients using graduated measuring containers; do not estimate quantities or use shovel or trowel as unit of measure.
  - d. Do not mix more materials than can be used within recommended open time. Discard materials that have begun to set.
2. Mortar Scrub-Coat: Mix with enough water to provide consistency of thick cream.
3. Dry-Pack Mortar: Mix with just enough liquid to form damp cohesive mixture that can be squeezed by hand into a ball but is not plastic.
4. Concrete: Comply with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
5. Shotcrete: Comply with Division 03 Section "Shotcrete".
6. Grout for Use with Preplaced Aggregate: Proportion according to ASTM C 938. Add grout fluidifier to mixing water followed by cementitious materials and then fine aggregate.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

1. Notify the Owner seven days in advance of dates when areas of deteriorated or delaminated concrete and deteriorated reinforcing bars will be located.
2. Locate areas of deteriorated or delaminated concrete using hammer or chain drag sounding and mark boundaries. Mark areas for removal by simplifying and squaring off boundaries. At columns and walls make boundaries level and plumb, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Locate at least three reinforcing bars using a pachometer, and drill test holes to determine depth of cover. Calibrate pachometer, using depth of cover measurements, and verify depth of cover in removal areas using pachometer.



**B. Preparation**

1. Protect people, motor vehicles, equipment, surrounding construction, Project site, plants, and surrounding buildings from injury resulting from concrete rehabilitation work.
  - a. Erect and maintain temporary protective covers over pedestrian walkways and at points of entrance and exit for people and vehicles, unless such areas are made inaccessible during the course of concrete rehabilitation work. Construct covers of tightly fitted, 3/4-inch (19-mm) exterior-grade plywood supported at 16 inches (405 mm) o.c. and covered with asphalt roll roofing.
  - b. Protect adjacent equipment and surfaces by covering them with heavy polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape or a liquid strippable masking agent. If practical, remove items, store, and reinstall after potentially damaging operations are complete.
  - c. Neutralize and collect alkaline and acid wastes according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, and dispose of by legal means off the Owner's property.
  - d. Dispose of runoff from wet operations by legal means and in a manner that prevents soil erosion, undermining of paving and foundations, damage to landscaping, and water penetration into building interiors.
  - e. Collect runoff from wet operations and dispose of by legal means off the Owner's property.
2. Shoring: Install temporary supports before beginning concrete removal.
3. Concrete Removal:
  - a. Saw-cut perimeter of areas indicated for removal to a depth of at least 1/2 inch (13 mm). Make cuts perpendicular to concrete surfaces and no deeper than cover on reinforcement.
  - b. Remove deteriorated and delaminated concrete by breaking up and dislodging from reinforcement.
  - c. Remove additional concrete, if necessary, to provide a depth of removal of at least 1/2 inch (13 mm) over entire removal area.
  - d. Where half or more of the perimeter of reinforcing bar is exposed, bond between reinforcing bar and surrounding concrete is broken, or reinforcing bar is corroded, remove concrete from entire perimeter of bar and to provide at least a 3/4-inch (19-mm) clearance around bar.
  - e. Test areas where concrete has been removed by tapping with hammer, and remove additional concrete until unsound and disbonded concrete is completely removed.
  - f. Provide fractured aggregate surfaces with a profile of at least 1/8 inch (3 mm) that are approximately perpendicular or parallel to original concrete surfaces. At columns and walls, make top and bottom surfaces level, unless otherwise directed.
  - g. Thoroughly clean removal areas of loose concrete, dust, and debris.
4. Reinforcing Bar Preparation: Remove loose and flaking rust from reinforcing bars by high-pressure water cleaning **OR** abrasive blast cleaning **OR** needle scaling **OR** wire brushing, **as directed**, until only tightly bonded light rust remains.
  - a. Where section loss of reinforcing bar is more than 25 percent, or 20 percent in 2 or more adjacent bars, cut bars and remove and replace. Remove additional concrete as necessary to provide at least 3/4-inch (19-mm) clearance at existing and replacement bars. Splice replacement bars to existing bars according to ACI 318 (ACI 318M), by lapping, welding, or using mechanical couplings.
5. Preparation of Floor Joints for Repair: Saw-cut joints full width to edges and depth of spalls, but not less than 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, deep. Clean out debris and loose concrete; vacuum or blow clear with compressed air.
6. Surface Preparation for Corrosion-Inhibiting Treatment: Clean concrete by low-pressure water cleaning **OR** detergent scrubbing **OR** sand blasting, **as directed**, to remove dirt, oils, films, and other materials detrimental to treatment application. Allow surface to dry before applying corrosion-inhibiting treatment.
7. Surface Preparation for Overlays: Remove delaminated material and deteriorated concrete surface material. Roughen surface of concrete by sand blasting **OR** shot blasting **OR** scarifying **OR** needle scaling **OR** high-pressure water jetting **OR** scabbling **OR** flame blasting **OR** milling, **as directed**, to produce a surface profile matching CSP 3 **OR** 4 **OR** 5 **OR** 6 **OR** 7 **OR** 8 **OR** 9, **as directed**, per ICRI 03732. Sweep and vacuum roughened surface to remove debris followed by low-pressure water cleaning.



8. Surface Preparation for Sealers: Clean concrete by shot blasting **OR** low-pressure water cleaning **OR** detergent scrubbing, **as directed**, to remove dirt, oils, films, and other materials detrimental to sealer application.
9. Surface Preparation for Sealers: Acid etch surface of concrete to produce a surface profile matching CSP 1 per ICRI 03732. Prepare surface for acid etching by detergent scrubbing to remove oils and films that may prevent acid penetration.
  - a. Remove excess acid solution, reaction products, and debris by squeegeeing or vacuuming.
  - b. Scrub surface with an alkaline detergent, rinse, and squeegee or vacuum.
  - c. Check acidity of surface with pH test paper and continue rinsing until pH is acceptable.
  - d. When pH is acceptable and surface is clean, vacuum dry.
10. Surface Preparation for Composite Structural Reinforcement: Remove delaminated material and deteriorated concrete surface material. Clean concrete where reinforcement and epoxy patching mortar is to be applied by low-pressure water cleaning **OR** detergent scrubbing, **as directed**, to remove dirt, oils, films, and other materials detrimental to epoxy application. Roughen surface of concrete by sand blasting.

### C. Application

1. General: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for application of products, including surface preparation.
2. Epoxy-Modified, Cementitious Bonding and Anticorrosion Agent: Apply to reinforcing bars and concrete by stiff brush or hopper spray according to manufacturer's written instructions. Apply to reinforcing bars in two coats, allowing first coat to dry two to three hours before applying second coat. Allow to dry before placing patching mortar or concrete.
3. Epoxy Bonding Agent: Apply to reinforcing bars and concrete by brush, roller, or spray according to manufacturer's written instructions, leaving no pinholes or other uncoated areas. Apply to reinforcing bars in at least two coats, allowing first coat to dry before applying second coat. Apply patching mortar or concrete while epoxy is still tacky. If epoxy dries, recoat before placing patching mortar or concrete.
4. Latex Bonding Agent, Type II: Mix with portland cement and scrub into concrete surface according to manufacturer's written instructions. Apply patching mortar or concrete while bonding agent is still wet. If bonding agent dries, recoat before placing patching mortar or concrete.
5. Latex Bonding Agent, Type I: Apply to concrete by brush roller or spray. Allow to dry before placing patching mortar or concrete.
6. Mortar Scrub-Coat: Dampen repair area and surrounding concrete 6 inches (150 mm) beyond repair area. Remove standing water and apply scrub-coat with a brush, scrubbing it into surface and thoroughly coating repair area. If scrub-coat dries, recoat before applying patching mortar or concrete.
7. Patching Mortar: Unless otherwise recommended by manufacturer, apply as follows:
  - a. Wet substrate thoroughly and then remove standing water. Scrub a slurry of neat patching mortar mixed with latex bonding agent into substrate, filling pores and voids.
  - b. Place patching mortar by troweling toward edges of patch to force intimate contact with edge surfaces. For large patches, fill edges first and then work toward center, always troweling toward edges of patch. At fully exposed reinforcing bars, force patching mortar to fill space behind bars by compacting with trowel from sides of bars.
  - c. For vertical patching, place material in lifts of not more than 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**, nor less than 1/8 inch (3 mm) **OR** 1/4 inch (6 mm), **as directed**. Do not feather edge.
  - d. For overhead patching, place material in lifts of not more than 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, nor less than 1/8 inch (3 mm) **OR** 1/4 inch (6 mm), **as directed**. Do not feather edge.
  - e. After each lift is placed, consolidate material and screed surface.
  - f. Where multiple lifts are used, score surface of lifts to provide a rough surface for application of subsequent lifts. Allow each lift to reach final set before placing subsequent lifts.



- g. Allow surfaces of lifts that are to remain exposed to become firm and then finish to a smooth **OR** rough, **as directed**, surface with a wood or sponge float **OR** broom or burlap drag, **as directed**.
      - h. Wet-cure cementitious patching materials, including polymer-modified, cementitious patching materials, for not less than seven days by water-fog spray or water-saturated absorptive cover.
8. Dry-Pack Mortar: Use for deep cavities and where indicated. Unless otherwise recommended by manufacturer, apply as follows:
  - a. Provide forms where necessary to confine patch to required shape.
  - b. Wet substrate and forms thoroughly and then remove standing water.
  - c. Place dry-pack mortar into cavity by hand, and compact into place with a hardwood drive stick and mallet or hammer. Do not place more material at a time than can be properly compacted. Continue placing and compacting until patch is approximately level with surrounding surface.
  - d. After cavity is filled and patch is compacted, trowel surface to match profile and finish of surrounding concrete. A thin coat of patching mortar may be troweled into the surface of patch to help obtain required finish.
  - e. Wet-cure patch for not less than seven days by water-fog spray or water-saturated absorptive cover.
9. Concrete: Place according to Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete" and as follows:
  - a. Apply epoxy-modified, cementitious bonding and anticorrosion agent **OR** epoxy bonding agent, **as directed**, to reinforcement and concrete substrate.
  - b. Apply latex bonding agent **OR** Type I, latex bonding agent **OR** mortar scrub-coat, **as directed**, to concrete substrate.
  - c. Use vibrators to consolidate concrete as it is placed.
  - d. At unformed surfaces, screed concrete to produce a surface that when finished with patching mortar will match required profile and surrounding concrete.
  - e. Where indicated place concrete by form and pump method.
    - 1) Design and construct forms to resist pumping pressure in addition to weight of wet concrete. Seal joints and seams in forms and junctions of forms with existing concrete.
    - 2) Pump concrete into place, releasing air from forms as concrete is introduced. When formed space is full, close air vents and pressurize to 14 psi (96 kPa).
  - f. Wet-cure concrete for not less than seven days by leaving forms in place or keeping surfaces continuously wet by water-fog spray or water-saturated absorptive cover.
  - g. Fill placement cavities with dry-pack mortar and repair voids with patching mortar. Finish to match surrounding concrete.
10. Shotcrete: Place according to Division 03 Section "Shotcrete" and as follows:
  - a. Apply epoxy-modified, cementitious bonding and anticorrosion agent **OR** epoxy bonding agent, **as directed**, to reinforcement and concrete substrate.
  - b. Apply latex bonding agent **OR** Type I, latex bonding agent **OR** mortar scrub-coat, **as directed**, to concrete substrate.
  - c. Screed and finish shotcrete to produce a surface matching required profile and surrounding concrete.
11. Grouted Preplaced Aggregate Concrete: Use for column and wall repairs **OR** where indicated, **as directed**. Place as follows:
  - a. Design and construct forms to resist pumping pressure in addition to weight of wet grout. Seal joints and seams in forms and junctions of forms with existing concrete.
  - b. Apply epoxy-modified, cementitious bonding and anticorrosion agent **OR** epoxy bonding agent, **as directed**, to reinforcement and concrete substrate.
  - c. Place aggregate in forms, consolidating aggregate as it is placed. Pack aggregate into upper areas of forms to achieve intimate contact with concrete surfaces.
  - d. Fill forms with water to thoroughly dampen aggregate and substrates. Drain water from forms before placing grout.



- e. Pump grout into place at bottom of preplaced aggregate, forcing grout upward. Release air from forms at top as grout is introduced. When formed space is full and grout flows from air vents, close vents and pressurize to 14 psi (96 kPa).
  - f. Wet-cure concrete for not less than seven days by leaving forms in place or keeping surfaces continuously wet by water-fog spray or water-saturated absorptive cover.
  - g. Repair voids with patching mortar and finish to match surrounding concrete.
12. Joint Filler: Install in nonmoving floor joints where indicated.
- a. Install filler to a depth of at least 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**. Use fine silica sand no more than 1/4 inch (6 mm) deep to close base of joint. Do not use sealant backer rods or compressible fillers below joint filler.
  - b. Install filler so that when cured, it is flush at top surface of adjacent concrete. If necessary, overfill joint and remove excess when filler has cured.
13. Epoxy Crack Injection: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and the following:
- a. Clean areas to receive capping adhesive of oil, dirt, and other substances that would interfere with bond, and clean cracks with oil-free compressed air or low-pressure water to remove loose particles.
  - b. Place injection ports as recommended by epoxy manufacturer, spacing no farther apart than thickness of member being injected. Seal injection ports in place with capping adhesive.
  - c. Seal cracks at exposed surfaces with a ribbon of capping adhesive at least 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick by 1 inch (25 mm) wider than crack.
  - d. Inject cracks wider than 0.003 inch (0.075 mm) to a depth of 8 inches (200 mm) or to a width of less than 0.003 inch (0.075 mm), whichever is less.
  - e. Inject epoxy adhesive, beginning at widest part of crack and working toward narrower parts. Inject adhesive into ports to refusal, capping adjacent ports when they extrude epoxy. Cap injected ports and inject through adjacent ports until crack is filled.
  - f. After epoxy adhesive has set, remove injection ports and grind surfaces smooth.
14. Corrosion-Inhibiting Treatment: Apply by brush, roller, or airless spray in two coats at manufacturer's recommended application rate. Remove film of excess treatment by high-pressure washing before patching treated concrete or applying a sealer or overlay.
15. Polymer Overlay: Apply according to ACI 503.3.
- a. Apply to traffic-bearing surfaces, including parking areas and walks.
16. Polymer Sealer: Apply by brush, roller, or airless spray at manufacturer's recommended application rate.
- a. Apply to traffic-bearing surfaces, including parking areas and walks.
17. Methylmethacrylate Sealer/Brighteners: Apply by brush, roller, or airless spray at manufacturer's recommended application rate.
- a. Apply to exterior concrete surfaces that are exposed to view, excluding traffic-bearing surfaces.
18. Composite Structural Reinforcement Using Preimpregnated Fiber Sheet: Unless otherwise recommended by manufacturer, apply as follows:
- a. Patch surface defects with epoxy mortar and allow to set before beginning reinforcement application.
  - b. Apply epoxy adhesive to a thickness of 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) to prepared concrete surfaces in areas where composite structural reinforcement will be applied.
  - c. Clean preimpregnated fiber sheet with acetone or other suitable solvent, and apply epoxy adhesive to a thickness of 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
  - d. Apply adhesive-coated fiber sheet to adhesive-coated concrete within open time of epoxy adhesive, and roll with a hard rubber roller until fiber sheet is fully embedded in adhesive, air pockets are removed, and adhesive is forced out from beneath fiber sheet at edges.
  - e. Apply additional layers as indicated using same procedure.
19. Composite Structural Reinforcement Using Fiber Tow Sheet and Saturant: Unless otherwise recommended by manufacturer, apply as follows:
- a. Apply epoxy primer using brush or short nap roller to prepared concrete surfaces in areas where composite structural reinforcement will be applied.



- b. After primer has set, patch surface defects with epoxy filler and allow to set before beginning reinforcement application.
  - c. Apply epoxy saturant to fiber tow sheet or primed and patched surface with 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) nap roller. Apply fiber tow sheet to primed and patched surface while saturant is still wet, using pressure roller to remove air pockets. Remove paper backing from fiber tow sheet and apply additional epoxy as needed to fully saturate tow sheet.
  - d. Apply additional layers as indicated, fully saturating each with epoxy.
  - e. After saturant has cured, apply protective topcoat by brush, roller or spray.
- D. Field Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to sample materials and perform tests as follows:
    - a. Patching Mortar, Packaged Mixes: <Insert number> randomly selected samples tested according to ASTM C 928.
    - b. Patching Mortar, Field Mixed: <Insert number> randomly selected samples tested for compressive strength according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
    - c. Concrete: As specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
    - d. Shotcrete: As specified in Division 03 Section "Shotcrete".
    - e. Grouted Preplaced Aggregate: Tested for compressive strength of grout according to ASTM C 942.
      - 1) Testing Frequency: One sample for each 25 cu. yd. (19 cu. m) of grout or fraction thereof, but not less than one sample for each day's work.
    - f. Joint Filler: Core drilled samples to verify proper installation.
      - 1) Testing Frequency: One sample for each 100 feet (30 m) of joint filled.
      - 2) Where samples are taken, fill holes with joint filler.
    - g. Epoxy Crack Injection: Core drilled samples to verify proper installation.
      - 1) Testing Frequency: 3 samples from mockup and 1 sample for each 100 feet (30 m) of crack injected.
      - 2) Where samples are taken, fill holes with epoxy mortar.

END OF SECTION 03 01 30 71



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
03 01 30 71	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





---

**SECTION 03 05 13 00 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for cast-in-place concrete. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Summary**

1. This Section specifies cast-in place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes, for the following:
  - a. Footings.
  - b. Foundation walls.
  - c. Slabs-on-grade.
  - d. Suspended slabs.
  - e. Concrete toppings.
  - f. Building frame members.
  - g. Building walls.

**C. Definitions**

1. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume; subject to compliance with requirements.

**D. Submittals**

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
    - 1) Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
  - b. Design Mixtures for Credit ID 1.1: For each concrete mixture containing fly ash as a replacement for portland cement or other portland cement replacements and for equivalent concrete mixtures that do not contain portland cement replacements.
3. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture.
4. Shop Drawings: For steel reinforcement and formwork. Material test reports **OR** certificates, **as directed**.

**E. Quality Assurance**

1. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
  - a. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."
2. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, **as directed**, qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
3. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
  - a. ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete," Sections 1 through 5 **OR** Sections 1 through 5 and Section 7, "Lightweight Concrete", **as directed**.
  - b. ACI 117, "Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials."
4. Concrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixtures.



5. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage. Avoid damaging coatings on steel reinforcement, **as directed**.
2. Waterstops: Store waterstops under cover to protect from moisture, sunlight, dirt, oil, and other contaminants.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Form-Facing Materials

1. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: Form-facing panels that will provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
2. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.
3. Forms for Cylindrical Columns, Pedestals, and Supports: Metal, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic, paper, or fiber tubes that will produce surfaces with gradual or abrupt irregularities not exceeding specified formwork surface class. Provide units with sufficient wall thickness to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation.
4. Pan-Type Forms: Glass-fiber-reinforced plastic or formed steel, stiffened to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation.
5. Void Forms: Biodegradable paper surface, treated for moisture resistance, structurally sufficient to support weight of plastic concrete and other superimposed loads.
6. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, 3/4 by 3/4 inch (19 by 19 mm), minimum.
7. Rustication Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, kerfed for ease of form removal.
8. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
  - a. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.
9. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off metal or glass-fiber-reinforced plastic form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.
  - a. Furnish units that will leave no corrodible metal closer than 1 inch (25 mm) to the plane of exposed concrete surface.
  - b. Furnish ties that, when removed, will leave holes no larger than 1 inch (25 mm) in diameter in concrete surface.
  - c. Furnish ties with integral water-barrier plates to walls indicated to receive dampproofing or waterproofing.

B. Steel Reinforcement

1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 **OR** 60, **as directed**, percent.
2. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed.
3. Low-Alloy-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 706/A 706M, deformed.
4. Galvanized Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) **OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed bars, ASTM A 767/A 767M, Class I **OR** II, **as directed**, zinc coated after fabrication and bending.
5. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) **OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed bars, ASTM A 775/A 775M **OR** ASTM A 934/A 934M, **as directed**, epoxy coated, with less than 2 percent damaged coating in each 12-inch (300-mm) bar length.
6. Stainless-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 955/A 955M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), Type 304 **OR** 316L, **as directed**, deformed.



7. Steel Bar Mats: ASTM A 184/A 184M, fabricated from ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) **OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed bars, assembled with clips.
  8. Plain-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82, as drawn **OR** galvanized, **as directed**.
  9. Deformed-Steel Wire: ASTM A 496.
  10. Epoxy-Coated Wire: ASTM A 884/A 884M, Class A, Type 1 coated, as-drawn, plain-steel-wire **OR** deformed-steel wire, **as directed**, with less than 2 percent damaged coating in each 12-inch (300-mm) wire length.
  11. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 1064, plain, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.
  12. Deformed-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 497, flat sheet.
  13. Galvanized-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 1064, plain, fabricated from galvanized steel wire into flat sheets.
  14. Epoxy-Coated Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 884/A 884M, Class A coated, Type 1, plain **OR** deformed, **as directed**, steel.
- C. Reinforcement Accessories
1. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), plain-steel bars, cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
  2. Epoxy-Coated Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), plain-steel bars, ASTM A 775/A 775M epoxy coated.
  3. Epoxy Repair Coating: Liquid, two-part, epoxy repair coating; compatible with epoxy coating on reinforcement and complying with ASTM A 775/A 775M.
  4. Zinc Repair Material: ASTM A 780, zinc-based solder, paint containing zinc dust, or sprayed zinc.
  5. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete and as follows:
    - a. For concrete surfaces exposed to view where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected steel wire or CRSI Class 2 stainless-steel bar supports.
    - b. For epoxy-coated reinforcement, use epoxy-coated or other dielectric-polymer-coated wire bar supports.
    - c. For zinc-coated reinforcement, use galvanized wire or dielectric-polymer-coated wire bar supports.
- D. Concrete Materials
1. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and source, throughout Project:
    - a. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I **OR** II **OR** I/II **OR** III **OR** V, **as directed**, gray **OR** white, **as directed**. Supplement with the following:
      - 1) Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C **OR** F, **as directed**.
      - 2) Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.
    - b. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595, Type IS, portland blast-furnace slag **OR** IP, portland-pozzolan **OR** I (PM), pozzolan-modified portland **OR** I (SM), slag-modified Portland, **as directed**, cement.
  2. Silica Fume: ASTM C 1240, amorphous silica.
  3. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, graded, 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) **OR** 1-inch (25-mm) **OR** 3/4-inch (19-mm), **as directed**, nominal maximum coarse-aggregate size.
    - a. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
  4. Lightweight Aggregate: ASTM C 330, 1-inch (25-mm) **OR** 3/4-inch (19-mm) **OR** 1/2-inch (13-mm) **OR** 3/8-inch (10-mm), **as directed**, nominal maximum aggregate size.
  5. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M and potable, **as directed**.
- E. Admixtures
1. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.



2. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that will not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
    - a. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
    - b. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
    - c. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
    - d. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
    - e. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
    - f. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.
  3. Set-Accelerating Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Commercially formulated, anodic inhibitor or mixed cathodic and anodic inhibitor; capable of forming a protective barrier and minimizing chloride reactions with steel reinforcement in concrete and complying with ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C.
  4. Non-Set-Accelerating Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Commercially formulated, non-set-accelerating, anodic inhibitor or mixed cathodic and anodic inhibitor; capable of forming a protective barrier and minimizing chloride reactions with steel reinforcement in concrete.
  5. Color Pigment: ASTM C 979, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures; color stable, free of carbon black, **as directed**, nonfading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis.
    - a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designation **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
- F. Fiber Reinforcement
1. Carbon-Steel Fiber: ASTM A 820, deformed, minimum of 1.5 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 2.4 inches (60 mm), **as directed**, long, and aspect ratio of 35 to 40 **OR** 45 to 50 **OR** 60 to 65, **as directed**.
    - a. Fiber: Type 1, cold-drawn wire **OR** 2, cut sheet, **as directed**.
  2. Synthetic Micro-Fiber: Monofilament or fibrillated polypropylene micro-fibers engineered and designed for use in concrete, complying with ASTM C 1116/ C 1116M , Type III, 1/2 to 1-1/2 inches (13 to 38 mm) **OR** 1 to 2-1/4 inches (25 to 57 mm)long.
  3. Synthetic Macro-Fiber: Polyolefin macro-fibers engineered and designed for use in concrete, complying with ASTM C 1116/C 1116M, Type III, 1 to 2-1/4 inches (25 to 57 mm) long.
- G. Waterstops
1. Flexible Rubber Waterstops: CE CRD-C 513, with factory-installed metal eyelets, **as directed**, for embedding in concrete to prevent passage of fluids through joints. Factory fabricate corners, intersections, and directional changes.
    - a. Profile: Flat, dumbbell with center bulb **OR** Flat, dumbbell without center bulb **OR** Ribbed with center bulb **OR** Ribbed without center bulb **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
    - b. Dimensions: 4 inches by 3/16 inch thick (100 mm by 4.75 mm thick) **OR** 6 inches by 3/8 inch thick (150 mm by 10 mm thick) **OR** 9 inches by 3/8 inch thick (225 mm by 10 mm thick), **as directed**; nontapered.
  2. Chemically Resistant Flexible Waterstops: Thermoplastic elastomer rubber waterstops with factory-installed metal eyelets, **as directed**, for embedding in concrete to prevent passage of fluids through joints; resistant to oils, solvents, and chemicals. Factory fabricate corners, intersections, and directional changes.
    - a. Profile: Flat, dumbbell with center bulb **OR** Flat, dumbbell without center bulb **OR** Ribbed with center bulb **OR** Ribbed without center bulb **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
    - b. Dimensions: 4 inches by 3/16 inch thick (100 mm by 4.75 mm thick) **OR** 6 inches by 3/16 inch thick (150 mm by 4.75 mm thick) **OR** 6 inches by 3/8 inch thick (150 mm by 10 mm thick) **OR** 9 inches by 3/16 inch thick (225 mm by 4.75 mm thick) **OR** 9 inches by 3/8 inch thick (225 mm by 10 mm thick), **as directed**; nontapered.
  3. Flexible PVC Waterstops: CE CRD-C 572, with factory-installed metal eyelets, **as directed**, for embedding in concrete to prevent passage of fluids through joints. Factory fabricate corners, intersections, and directional changes.



- a. Profile: Flat, dumbbell with center bulb **OR** Flat, dumbbell without center bulb **OR** Ribbed with center bulb **OR** Ribbed without center bulb **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  - b. Dimensions: 4 inches by 3/16 inch thick (100 mm by 4.75 mm thick) **OR** 6 inches by 3/8 inch thick (150 mm by 10 mm thick) **OR** 9 inches by 3/8 inch thick (225 mm by 10 mm thick), **as directed**; nontapered.
  4. Self-Expanding Butyl Strip Waterstops: Manufactured rectangular or trapezoidal strip, butyl rubber with sodium bentonite or other hydrophilic polymers, for adhesive bonding to concrete, 3/4 by 1 inch (19 by 25 mm).
  5. Self-Expanding Rubber Strip Waterstops: Manufactured rectangular or trapezoidal strip, bentonite-free hydrophilic polymer modified chloroprene rubber, for adhesive bonding to concrete, 3/8 by 3/4 inch (10 by 19 mm).
- H. Vapor Retarders
1. Plastic Vapor Retarder:
    - a. ASTM E 1745, Class A. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape.
    - b. ASTM E 1745, Class B. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape.
    - c. ASTM E 1745, Class C, or polyethylene sheet, ASTM D 4397, not less than 10 mils (0.25 mm) thick, **as directed**. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive joint tape.
  2. Bituminous Vapor Retarder: 110-mil- (2.8-mm-) thick, semiflexible, 7-ply sheet membrane consisting of reinforced core and carrier sheet with fortified asphalt layers, protective weathercoating, and removable plastic release liner. Furnish manufacturer's accessories including bonding asphalt, pointing mastics, and self-adhering joint tape.
    - a. Water-Vapor Permeance: 0.00 grains/h x sq. ft. x inches Hg (0.00 ng/Pa x s x sq. m); ASTM E 154.
    - b. Tensile Strength: 140 lbf/in. (24.5 kN/m); ASTM E 154.
    - c. Puncture Resistance: 90 lbf (400N); ASTM E 154.
  3. Granular Fill: Clean mixture of crushed stone or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D 448, Size 57, with 100 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch (37.5-mm) sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 8 (2.36-mm) sieve.
  4. Fine-Graded Granular Material: Clean mixture of crushed stone, crushed gravel, and manufactured or natural sand; ASTM D 448, Size 10, with 100 percent passing a 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) sieve, 10 to 30 percent passing a No. 100 (0.15-mm) sieve, and at least 5 percent passing No. 200 (0.075-mm) sieve; complying with deleterious substance limits of ASTM C 33 for fine aggregates.
- I. Floor And Slab Treatments
1. Slip-Resistive Emery Aggregate Finish: Factory-graded, packaged, rustproof, nonglazing, abrasive, crushed emery aggregate containing not less than 50 percent aluminum oxide and not less than 20 percent ferric oxide; unaffected by freezing, moisture, and cleaning materials with 100 percent passing 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) **OR** No. 4 (4.75-mm) **OR** No. 8 (2.36-mm), **as directed**, sieve.
  2. Slip-Resistive Aluminum Granule Finish: Factory-graded, packaged, rustproof, nonglazing, abrasive aggregate of not less than 95 percent fused aluminum-oxide granules.
  3. Emery Dry-Shake Floor Hardener: Pigmented **OR** Unpigmented, **as directed**, factory-packaged, dry combination of portland cement, graded emery aggregate, and plasticizing admixture; with emery aggregate consisting of no less than 60 percent of total aggregate content.
    - a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designation **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  4. Metallic Dry-Shake Floor Hardener: Pigmented **OR** Unpigmented, **as directed**, factory-packaged, dry combination of portland cement, graded metallic aggregate, rust inhibitors, and plasticizing admixture; with metallic aggregate consisting of no less than 65 percent of total aggregate content.



- a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designation **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  5. Unpigmented Mineral Dry-Shake Floor Hardener: Factory-packaged dry combination of portland cement, graded quartz aggregate, and plasticizing admixture.
  6. Pigmented Mineral Dry-Shake Floor Hardener: Factory-packaged, dry combination of portland cement, graded quartz aggregate, color pigments, and plasticizing admixture. Use color pigments that are finely ground, nonfading mineral oxides interground with cement.
    - a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designation **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  7. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Clear, chemically reactive, waterborne solution of inorganic silicate or silicate materials and proprietary components; odorless; colorless; that penetrates, hardens, and densifies concrete surfaces.
- J. Liquid Floor Treatments
1. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Clear, chemically reactive, waterborne solution of inorganic silicate or silicate materials and proprietary components; odorless; that penetrates, hardens, and densifies concrete surfaces.
  2. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatments for Polished Concrete Finish: Clear, waterborne solution of inorganic silicate or silicate materials and proprietary components; odorless; that penetrates, hardens, and is suitable for polished concrete surfaces.
- K. Curing Materials
1. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
  2. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. (305 g/sq. m) when dry.
  3. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
  4. Water: Potable.
  5. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, dissipating.
  6. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, nondissipating, certified by curing compound manufacturer to not interfere with bonding of floor covering, **as directed**.
  7. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, 18 to 25 percent solids, nondissipating, certified by curing compound manufacturer to not interfere with bonding of floor covering, **as directed**.
  8. Clear, Solvent-Borne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type 1, Class A.
  9. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type 1, Class A.
- L. Related Materials
1. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber **OR** ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork, **as directed**.
  2. Semirigid Joint Filler: Two-component, semirigid, 100 percent solids, epoxy resin with a Type A shore durometer hardness of 80 **OR** aromatic polyurea with a Type A shore durometer hardness range of 90 to 95, **as directed**, per ASTM D 2240.
  3. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
  4. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade to suit requirements, and as follows:
    - a. Types I and II, non-load bearing **OR** IV and V, load bearing, **as directed**, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.
  5. Reglets: Fabricate reglets of not less than 0.0217-inch- (0.55-mm-) thick, galvanized steel sheet. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of reglet to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.



6. Dovetail Anchor Slots: Hot-dip galvanized steel sheet, not less than 0.0336 inch (0.85 mm) thick, with bent tab anchors. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of slots to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.

M. Repair Materials

1. Repair Underlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
  - a. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
  - b. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
  - c. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch (3.2 to 6 mm) or coarse sand as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
  - d. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4100 psi (29 MPa) at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
2. Repair Overlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
  - a. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
  - b. Primer: Product of topping manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
  - c. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch (3.2 to 6 mm) or coarse sand as recommended by topping manufacturer.
  - d. Compressive Strength: Not less than 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.

N. Concrete Mixtures, General

1. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301.
  - a. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs based on laboratory trial mixtures.
2. Cementitious Materials: Use fly ash, pozzolan, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume as needed to reduce the total amount of portland cement, which would otherwise be used, by not less than 40 percent **OR** Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows, **as directed**
  - a. Fly Ash: 25 percent.
  - b. Combined Fly Ash and Pozzolan: 25 percent.
  - c. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent.
  - d. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolan and Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent portland cement minimum, with fly ash or pozzolan not exceeding 25 percent.
  - e. Silica Fume: 10 percent.
  - f. Combined Fly Ash, Pozzolans, and Silica Fume: 35 percent with fly ash or pozzolans not exceeding 25 percent and silica fume not exceeding 10 percent.
  - g. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolans, Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag, and Silica Fume: 50 percent with fly ash or pozzolans not exceeding 25 percent and silica fume not exceeding 10 percent.
3. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.06 **OR** 0.15 **OR** 0.30 **OR** 1.00, **as directed**, percent by weight of cement.
4. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Use water-reducing **OR** high-range water-reducing **OR** plasticizing, **as directed**, admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
  - b. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.



- c. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, concrete for heavy-use industrial slabs and parking structure slabs, concrete required to be watertight, and concrete with a water-cementitious materials ratio below 0.50.
  - d. Use corrosion-inhibiting admixture in concrete mixtures where indicated.
5. Color Pigment: Add color pigment to concrete mixture according to manufacturer's written instructions and to result in hardened concrete color consistent with approved mockup.

O. Concrete Mixtures For Building Elements

1. Footings: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
  - a. Minimum Compressive Strength: 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) **OR** 4500 psi (31 MPa) **OR** 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) **OR** 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) **OR** 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), **as directed**, at 28 days.
  - b. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.50 **OR** 0.45 **OR** 0.40, **as directed**.
  - c. Slump Limit: 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 5 inches (125 mm) **OR** 8 inches (200 mm) for concrete with verified slump of 2 to 4 inches (50 to 100 mm) before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture, **as directed**, plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
  - d. Air Content:
    - 1) 5-1/2 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
    - 2) 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-inch (25-mm) **OR** 3/4-inch (19-mm), **as directed**, nominal maximum aggregate size.
2. Foundation Walls: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
  - a. Minimum Compressive Strength: 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) **OR** 4500 psi (31 MPa) **OR** 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) **OR** 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) **OR** 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), **as directed**, at 28 days.
  - b. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.50 **OR** 0.45 **OR** 0.40, **as directed**.
  - c. Slump Limit: 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 5 inches (125 mm) **OR** 8 inches (200 mm) for concrete with verified slump of 2 to 4 inches (50 to 100 mm) before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture, **as directed**, plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
  - d. Air Content:
    - 1) 5-1/2 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
    - 2) 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-inch (25-mm) **OR** 3/4-inch (19-mm), **as directed**, nominal maximum aggregate size.
3. Slabs-on-Grade: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
  - a. Minimum Compressive Strength: 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) **OR** 4500 psi (31 MPa) **OR** 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) **OR** 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) **OR** 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), **as directed**, at 28 days.
  - b. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: 470 lb/cu. yd. (279 kg/cu. m) **OR** 520 lb/cu. yd. (309 kg/cu. m) **OR** 540 lb/cu. yd. (320 kg/cu. m), **as directed**.
  - c. Slump Limit: 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 5 inches (125 mm), **as directed**, plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
  - d. Air Content
    - 1) 5-1/2 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
    - 2) 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-inch (25-mm) **OR** 3/4-inch (19-mm), **as directed**, nominal maximum aggregate size.
    - 3) Do not allow air content of troweled finished floors to exceed 3 percent.
  - e. Steel-Fiber Reinforcement: Add to concrete mixture, according to manufacturer's written instructions, at a rate of 50 lb/cu. yd. (29.7 kg/cu. m).
  - f. Synthetic Fiber: Uniformly disperse in concrete mixture at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than 1.0 lb/cu. yd. (0.60 kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5 lb/cu. yd. (0.90 kg/cu. m), **as directed**.
4. Suspended Slabs: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
  - a. Minimum Compressive Strength: 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) **OR** 4500 psi (31 MPa) **OR** 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) **OR** 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) **OR** 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), **as directed**, at 28 days.





- b. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: 470 lb/cu. yd. (279 kg/cu. m) **OR** 520 lb/cu. yd. (309 kg/cu. m) **OR** 540 lb/cu. yd. (320 kg/cu. m), **as directed**.
  - c. Slump Limit: 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 5 inches (125 mm), **as directed**, plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
  - d. Air Content:
    - 1) 5-1/2 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
    - 2) 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-inch (25-mm) **OR** 3/4-inch (19-mm), **as directed**, nominal maximum aggregate size.
    - 3) Do not allow air content of troweled finished floors to exceed 3 percent.
  - e. Steel-Fiber Reinforcement: Add to concrete mixture, according to manufacturer's written instructions, at a rate of 50 lb/cu. yd. (29.7 kg/cu. m).
  - f. Synthetic Fiber: Uniformly disperse in concrete mixture at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than 1.0 lb/cu. yd. (0.60 kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5 lb/cu. yd. (0.90 kg/cu. m), **as directed**.
5. Suspended Slabs: Proportion structural lightweight concrete mixture as follows:
- a. Minimum Compressive Strength: 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) **OR** 4500 psi (31 MPa) **OR** 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) **OR** 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) **OR** 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), **as directed**, at 28 days.
  - b. Calculated Equilibrium Unit Weight: 115 lb/cu. ft. (1842 kg/cu. m) **OR** 110 lb/cu. ft. (1762 kg/cu. m) **OR** 105 lb/cu. ft. (1682 kg/cu. m), **as directed**, plus or minus 3 lb/cu. ft. (48.1 kg/cu. m) as determined by ASTM C 567.
  - c. Slump Limit: 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 5 inches (125 mm), **as directed**, plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
  - d. Air Content:
    - 1) 6 percent, plus or minus 2 percent at point of delivery for nominal maximum aggregate size greater than 3/8 inch (10 mm).
    - 2) 7 percent, plus or minus 2 percent at point of delivery for nominal maximum aggregate size 3/8 inch (10 mm) or less.
    - 3) Do not allow air content of troweled finished floors to exceed 3 percent.
  - e. Steel-Fiber Reinforcement: Add to concrete mixture, according to manufacturer's written instructions, at a rate of 50 lb/cu. yd. (29.7 kg/cu. m).
  - f. Synthetic Fiber: Uniformly disperse in concrete mixture at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than 1.0 lb/cu. yd. (0.60 kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5 lb/cu. yd. (0.90 kg/cu. m), **as directed**.
6. Concrete Toppings: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
- a. Minimum Compressive Strength: 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) **OR** 4500 psi (31 MPa) **OR** 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) **OR** 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) **OR** 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), **as directed**, at 28 days.
  - b. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: 470 lb/cu. yd. (279 kg/cu. m) **OR** 520 lb/cu. yd. (309 kg/cu. m) **OR** 540 lb/cu. yd. (320 kg/cu. m), **as directed**.
  - c. Slump Limit: 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 5 inches (125 mm), **as directed**, plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
  - d. Air Content:
    - 1) 5-1/2 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
    - 2) 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-inch (25-mm) **OR** 3/4-inch (19-mm), **as directed**, nominal maximum aggregate size.
    - 3) Do not allow air content of troweled finished toppings to exceed 3 percent.
  - e. Steel-Fiber Reinforcement: Add to concrete mixture, according to manufacturer's written instructions, at a rate of 50 lb/cu. yd. (29.7 kg/cu. m).
  - f. Synthetic Fiber: Uniformly disperse in concrete mixture at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than 1.0 lb/cu. yd. (0.60 kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5 lb/cu. yd. (0.90 kg/cu. m), **as directed**.
7. Building Frame Members: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
- a. Minimum Compressive Strength: 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) **OR** 4500 psi (31 MPa) **OR** 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) **OR** 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) **OR** 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), **as directed**, at 28 days.
  - b. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.50 **OR** 0.45 **OR** 0.40, **as directed**.



- c. Slump Limit: 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 5 inches (125 mm) **OR** 8 inches (200 mm) for concrete with verified slump of 2 to 4 inches (50 to 100 mm) before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture, **as directed**, plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
  - d. Air Content:
    - 1) 5-1/2 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
    - 2) 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-inch (25-mm) **OR** 3/4-inch (19-mm), **as directed**, nominal maximum aggregate size.
8. Building Walls: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
- a. Minimum Compressive Strength: 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) **OR** 4500 psi (31 MPa) **OR** 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) **OR** 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) **OR** 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), **as directed**, at 28 days.
  - b. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.50 **OR** 0.45 **OR** 0.40, **as directed**.
  - c. Slump Limit: 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 5 inches (125 mm) **OR** 8 inches (200 mm) for concrete with verified slump of 2 to 4 inches (50 to 100 mm) before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture, **as directed**, plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
  - d. Air Content:
    - 1) 5-1/2 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
    - 2) 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-inch (25-mm) **OR** 3/4-inch (19-mm), **as directed**, nominal maximum aggregate size.

P. Fabricating Reinforcement

- 1. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

Q. Concrete Mixing

- 1. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M and ASTM C 1116, **as directed**, and furnish batch ticket information.
  - a. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F (30 and 32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F (32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.
- 2. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.
  - a. For mixer capacity of 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m) or smaller, continue mixing at least 1-1/2 minutes, but not more than 5 minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.
  - b. For mixer capacity larger than 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m), increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m).
  - c. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mixture type, mixture time, quantity, and amount of water added. Record approximate location of final deposit in structure.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Formwork

- 1. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads.
- 2. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117.
- 3. Limit concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI 347R as abrupt or gradual, as follows:
  - a. Class A, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) for smooth-formed finished surfaces.



- b. Class B, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** Class C, 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** Class D, 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, for rough-formed finished surfaces.
    4. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.
    5. Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.
      - a. Install keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.
      - b. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.
    6. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips; use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.
    7. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.
    8. Chamfer **OR** Do not chamfer, **as directed**, exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.
    9. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.
    10. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.
    11. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.
    12. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.
  - B. Embedded Items
    1. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
      - a. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
      - b. Install reglets to receive waterproofing and to receive through-wall flashings in outer face of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, shelf angles, and other conditions.
      - c. Install dovetail anchor slots in concrete structures as indicated.
  - C. Removing And Reusing Forms
    1. General: Formwork for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) for 24 hours after placing concrete, if concrete is hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations and curing and protection operations are maintained.
      - a. Leave formwork for beam soffits, joists, slabs, and other structural elements that supports weight of concrete in place until concrete has achieved at least 70 percent of, **as directed**, its 28-day design compressive strength.
      - b. Remove forms only if shores have been arranged to permit removal of forms without loosening or disturbing shores.
    2. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material will not be acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-release agent.
    3. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by the Owner.
  - D. Shores And Reshores



1. Comply with ACI 318 (ACI 318M) and ACI 301 for design, installation, and removal of shoring and reshoring.
  - a. Do not remove shoring or reshoring until measurement of slab tolerances is complete.
2. In multistory construction, extend shoring or reshoring over a sufficient number of stories to distribute loads in such a manner that no floor or member will be excessively loaded or will induce tensile stress in concrete members without sufficient steel reinforcement.
3. Plan sequence of removal of shores and reshore to avoid damage to concrete. Locate and provide adequate reshoring to support construction without excessive stress or deflection.

#### E. Vapor Retarders

1. Plastic Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair vapor retarders according to ASTM E 1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Lap joints 6 inches (150 mm) and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape.
2. Bituminous Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair vapor retarders according to manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Granular Course: Cover vapor retarder with granular fill **OR** fine-graded granular material, **as directed**, moisten, and compact with mechanical equipment to elevation tolerances of plus 0 inch (0 mm) or minus 3/4 inch (19 mm).
  - a. Place and compact a 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) thick layer of fine-graded granular material over granular fill.

#### F. Steel Reinforcement

1. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for placing reinforcement.
  - a. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.
2. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that would reduce bond to concrete.
3. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.
  - a. Weld reinforcing bars according to AWS D1.4, where indicated.
4. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
5. Install welded wire reinforcement in longest practicable lengths on bar supports spaced to minimize sagging. Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets at least one mesh spacing. Offset laps of adjoining sheet widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction. Lace overlaps with wire.
6. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcement: Repair cut and damaged epoxy coatings with epoxy repair coating according to ASTM D 3963/D 3963M. Use epoxy-coated steel wire ties to fasten epoxy-coated steel reinforcement.
7. Zinc-Coated Reinforcement: Repair cut and damaged zinc coatings with zinc repair material according to ASTM A 780. Use galvanized steel wire ties to fasten zinc-coated steel reinforcement.

#### G. Joints

1. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
2. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by the Owner.
  - a. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints, unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
  - b. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) into concrete.
  - c. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders in the middle third of spans. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
  - d. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.



- e. Space vertical joints in walls, **as directed**. Locate joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
  - f. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
  - g. Use epoxy-bonding adhesive at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
3. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:
    - a. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of 1/8 inch (3.2 mm). Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.
    - b. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- (3.2-mm-) wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.
  4. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
    - a. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface, unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) or more than 1 inch (25 mm) below finished concrete surface where joint sealants, specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants", are indicated.
    - c. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.
  5. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
- H. Waterstops
1. Flexible Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other joints indicated to form a continuous diaphragm. Install in longest lengths practicable. Support and protect exposed waterstops during progress of the Work. Field fabricate joints in waterstops according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Self-Expanding Strip Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other locations indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions, adhesive bonding, mechanically fastening, and firmly pressing into place. Install in longest lengths practicable.
- I. Concrete Placement
1. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.
  2. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by the Owner.
  3. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301.
    - a. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.
  4. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete will be placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
    - a. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth to not exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
    - b. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 301.
    - c. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6



inches (150 mm) into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.

5. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
  - a. Consolidate concrete during placement operations so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
  - b. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
  - c. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
  - d. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
  - e. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.
6. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
  - a. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
  - b. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
  - c. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.
7. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows:
  - a. Maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F (32 deg C) at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
  - b. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

#### J. Finishing Formed Surfaces

1. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
  - a. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view.
2. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch tie holes and defects. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
  - a. Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view, **OR** to receive a rubbed finish, **OR** to be covered with a coating or covering material applied directly to concrete, **as directed**.
3. Rubbed Finish: Apply the following to smooth-formed finished as-cast concrete where indicated:
  - a. Smooth-Rubbed Finish: Not later than one day after form removal, moisten concrete surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or another abrasive until producing a uniform color and texture. Do not apply cement grout other than that created by the rubbing process.
  - b. Grout-Cleaned Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply grout of a consistency of thick paint to coat surfaces and fill small holes. Mix one part portland cement to one and one-half parts fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding admixture and water. Add white portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches so color of dry grout will match adjacent surfaces. Scrub grout into voids and remove excess grout. When grout whitens, rub surface with clean burlap and keep surface damp by fog spray for at least 36 hours.



- c. Cork-Floated Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply a stiff grout. Mix one part portland cement and one part fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding agent and water. Add white portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches so color of dry grout will match adjacent surfaces. Compress grout into voids by grinding surface. In a swirling motion, finish surface with a cork float.
  4. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Finishing Floors And Slabs
1. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraightening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
  2. Scratch Finish: While still plastic, texture concrete surface that has been screeded and bull-floated or darbied. Use stiff brushes, brooms, or rakes to produce a profile amplitude of 1/4 inch (6 mm) in 1 direction.
    - a. Apply scratch finish to surfaces indicated and to receive concrete floor toppings **OR** to receive mortar setting beds for bonded cementitious floor finishes, **as directed**.
  3. Float Finish: Consolidate surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power driven floats. Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and restraightening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture.
    - a. Apply float finish to surfaces indicated **OR** to receive trowel finish **OR** to be covered with fluid-applied or sheet waterproofing, built-up or membrane roofing, or sand-bed terrazzo, **as directed**.
  4. Trowel Finish: After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
    - a. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces indicated **OR** exposed to view **OR** to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin-film-finish coating system, **as directed**.
    - b. Finish surfaces to the following tolerances, according to ASTM E 1155 (ASTM E 1155M), for a randomly trafficked floor surface:
      - 1) Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 25; and of levelness, F(L) 20; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 17; and of levelness, F(L) 15.
      - 2) Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 35; and of levelness, F(L) 25; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 24; and of levelness, F(L) 17; for slabs-on-grade.
      - 3) Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 30; and of levelness, F(L) 20; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 24; and of levelness, F(L) 15; for suspended slabs.
      - 4) Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 45; and of levelness, F(L) 35; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 30; and of levelness, F(L) 24.
    - c. Finish and measure surface so gap at any point between concrete surface and an unleveled, freestanding, 10-foot- (3.05-m-) long straightedge resting on 2 high spots and placed anywhere on the surface does not exceed 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) **OR** 1/8 inch (3.2 mm), **as directed**.
  5. Trowel and Fine-Broom Finish: Apply a first trowel finish to surfaces indicated **OR** where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed by either thickset or thin-set method, **as directed**. While concrete is still plastic, slightly scarify surface with a fine broom.
    - a. Comply with flatness and levelness tolerances for trowel finished floor surfaces.
  6. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, and ramps, and elsewhere as indicated.
    - a. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with the Owner before application.



7. Slip-Resistive Finish: Before final floating, apply slip-resistive aggregate **OR** aluminum granule, **as directed**, finish where indicated and to concrete stair treads, platforms, and ramps. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
  - a. Uniformly spread 25 lb/100 sq. ft. (12 kg/10 sq. m) of dampened slip-resistive aggregate **OR** aluminum granules, **as directed**, over surface in 1 or 2 applications. Tamp aggregate flush with surface, but do not force below surface.
  - b. After broadcasting and tamping, apply float finish.
  - c. After curing, lightly work surface with a steel wire brush or an abrasive stone and water to expose slip-resistive aggregate **OR** aluminum granules, **as directed**.
8. Dry-Shake Floor Hardener Finish: After initial floating, apply dry-shake floor hardener to surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
  - a. Uniformly apply dry-shake floor hardener at a rate of 100 lb/100 sq. ft. (49 kg/10 sq. m), **as directed**, unless greater amount is recommended by manufacturer.
  - b. Uniformly distribute approximately two-thirds of dry-shake floor hardener over surface by hand or with mechanical spreader, and embed by power floating. Follow power floating with a second dry-shake floor hardener application, uniformly distributing remainder of material, and embed by power floating.
  - c. After final floating, apply a trowel finish. Cure concrete with curing compound recommended by dry-shake floor hardener manufacturer and apply immediately after final finishing.

#### L. Miscellaneous Concrete Items

1. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures, unless otherwise indicated, after work of other trades is in place. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.
2. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.
3. Equipment Bases and Foundations: Provide machine and equipment bases and foundations as shown on Drawings. Set anchor bolts for machines and equipment at correct elevations, complying with diagrams or templates from manufacturer furnishing machines and equipment.
4. Steel Pan Stairs: Provide concrete fill for steel pan stair treads, landings, and associated items. Cast-in inserts and accessories as shown on Drawings. Screed, tamp, and trowel-finish concrete surfaces.

#### M. Concrete Protecting And Curing

1. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and ACI 301 for hot-weather protection during curing.
2. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h (1 kg/sq. m x h) before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
3. Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for the remainder of the curing period.
4. Unformed Surfaces: Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete. Cure unformed surfaces, including floors and slabs, concrete floor toppings, and other surfaces.
5. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods:
  - a. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
    - 1) Water.
    - 2) Continuous water-fog spray.





- 3) Absorptive cover, water saturated, and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch (300-mm) lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
    - b. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches (300 mm), and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
      - 1) Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings.
      - 2) Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive penetrating liquid floor treatments.
      - 3) Cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings with either a moisture-retaining cover or a curing compound that the manufacturer certifies will not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.
    - c. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
      - 1) After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer unless manufacturer certifies curing compound will not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.
    - d. Curing and Sealing Compound: Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Repeat process 24 hours later and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
- N. Liquid Floor Treatments
  1. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Prepare, apply, and finish penetrating liquid floor treatment according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - a. Remove curing compounds, sealers, oil, dirt, laitance, and other contaminants and complete surface repairs.
    - b. Do not apply to concrete that is less than three **OR** seven **OR** 14 **OR** 28, **as directed**, days' old.
    - c. Apply liquid until surface is saturated, scrubbing into surface until a gel forms; rewet; and repeat brooming or scrubbing. Rinse with water; remove excess material until surface is dry. Apply a second coat in a similar manner if surface is rough or porous.
  2. Polished Concrete Floor Treatment: Apply polished concrete finish system to cured and prepared slabs to match.
    - a. Machine grind floor surfaces to receive polished finishes level and smooth and to depth required to reveal aggregate to match.
    - b. Apply penetrating liquid floor treatment for polished concrete in polishing sequence and according to manufacturer's written instructions, allowing recommended drying time between successive coats.
    - c. Continue polishing with progressively finer grit diamond polishing pads to gloss level to match approved mockup.
    - d. Control and dispose of waste products produced by grinding and polishing operations.
    - e. Neutralize and clean polished floor surfaces.
  3. Sealing Coat: Uniformly apply a continuous sealing coat of curing and sealing compound to hardened concrete by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- O. Joint Filling
  1. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - a. Defer joint filling until concrete has aged at least one **OR** six, **as directed**, month(s). Do not fill joints until construction traffic has permanently ceased.



2. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joint clean and dry.
3. Install semirigid joint filler full depth in saw-cut joints and at least 2 inches (50 mm) deep in formed joints. Overfill joint and trim joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.

P. Concrete Surface Repairs

1. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by the Owner. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to the Owner's approval.
2. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of one part portland cement to two and one-half parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 (1.18-mm) sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.
3. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.
  - a. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch (13 mm) in any dimension in solid concrete, but not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in depth. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
  - b. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white portland cement and standard portland cement so that, when dry, patching mortar will match surrounding color. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
  - c. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by the Owner.
4. Repairing Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface. Correct low and high areas. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.
  - a. Repair finished surfaces containing defects. Surface defects include spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch (0.25 mm) wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
  - b. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
  - c. Correct localized low areas during or immediately after completing surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
  - d. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
  - e. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with a repair topping. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch (6 mm) to match adjacent floor elevations. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
  - f. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch (25 mm) or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts and expose steel reinforcement with at least a 3/4-inch (19-mm) clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete except without coarse aggregate. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
  - g. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch (25 mm) or less in diameter with patching mortar. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete and clean off dust, dirt,



- and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.
5. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to the Owner's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.
  6. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to the Owner's approval.

Q. Field Quality Control

1. Testing and Inspecting: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and to submit reports.
2. Inspections:
  - a. Steel reinforcement placement.
  - b. Steel reinforcement welding.
  - c. Headed bolts and studs.
  - d. Verification of use of required design mixture.
  - e. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.
  - f. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.
  - g. Verification of concrete strength before removal of shores and forms from beams and slabs.
3. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:
  - a. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. (76 cu. m) or fraction thereof of each concrete mixture placed each day.
    - 1) When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
  - b. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
  - c. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; ASTM C 173/C 173M, volumetric method, for structural lightweight concrete, **as directed**; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
  - d. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and below and when 80 deg F (27 deg C) and above, and one test for each composite sample.
  - e. Unit Weight: ASTM C 567, fresh unit weight of structural lightweight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
  - f. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M.
    - 1) Cast and laboratory cure two sets of two standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
    - 2) Cast and field cure two sets of two standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
  - g. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test one set of two laboratory-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
    - 1) Test one set of two field-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
    - 2) A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from a set of two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.
  - h. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, Contractor shall evaluate operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
  - i. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength



and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi (3.4 MPa).

- j. Test results shall be reported in writing to the Owner, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
  - k. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by the Owner but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
  - l. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by the Owner. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42/C 42M or by other methods as directed by the Owner.
  - m. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
  - n. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate do not comply with the Contract Documents.
4. Measure floor and slab flatness and levelness according to ASTM E 1155 (ASTM E 1155M) within 24 **OR** 48, **as directed**, hours of finishing.
- R. Protection Of Liquid Floor Treatments
- 1. Protect liquid floor treatment from damage and wear during the remainder of construction period. Use protective methods and materials, including temporary covering, recommended in writing by liquid floor treatments installer.

END OF SECTION 03 05 13 00



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
03 11 13 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
03 11 13 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

**SECTION 03 11 16 13 - RUSTICATED CONCRETE FINISHES****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of rusticated concrete finishes. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Submittals**

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Sample: A sample of finish expected shall be erected on site. Completed work shall approximate the sample. Work determined by the contracting officer not to be similar shall be removed and replaced without further expense to the Owner.

**1.2 PRODUCTS**

- A. Overlaid Plywood: DOC PS 1, B-B High Density Overlaid Concrete Form, Class I.
- B. Plywood: DOC PS 1, B-B (Concrete Form) Plywood, Class I, Exterior Grade or better, mill-oiled and edge-sealed, with each piece bearing legible inspection mark.
- C. Chamfer Strips: Clear white pine with surface against concrete to be planed, metal, PVC, or rubber.
- D. Form Liners: Provide commercially available molds and form-facing materials of metal, plastic, mood, or another material that is nonreactive with concrete and dimensionally stable to produce repetitive concrete surfaces.

**1.3 EXECUTION**

- A. Form Construction: Forms shall be constructed to provide required sizes, shapes, lines, and dimensions and to provide continuous, straight, smooth exposed surfaces. Forms shall be fabricated for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. The number of joints shall be minimized. Joints shall be made watertight to prevent leakage of cement paste. Provisions shall be made for openings, offsets, sinkages, keyways, recesses, moldings, rustications, reglets, chamfers, blocking, inserts, and other features required in the work.
- B. Form Coatings: Forms shall be oiled with form-coating compounds that will not bond with, stain, nor adversely effect concrete surfaces, and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
- C. Finish: Fins and other projections shall be completely removed and smoothed. A smooth rubbed finish shall be provided not less than one day after form removal.

END OF SECTION 03 11 16 13



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



**SECTION 03 11 16 13a - CAST-IN-PLACE ARCHITECTURAL CONCRETE**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for cast-in-place architectural concrete. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. This Section specifies cast-in-place architectural concrete including form facings, reinforcement accessories, concrete materials, concrete mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes.

## C. Definitions

1. Cast-in-Place Architectural Concrete: Formed concrete that is exposed to view on surfaces of completed structure or building and that requires special concrete materials, formwork, placement, or finishes to obtain specified architectural appearance.
2. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume; subject to compliance with requirements.
3. Design Reference Sample: Sample designated by the Owner in the Contract Documents that reflects acceptable surface quality and appearance of cast-in-place architectural concrete.
4. Reveal: Projection of coarse aggregate from matrix or mortar after completion of exposure operations.

## D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
    - 1) Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
  - b. Design Mixtures for Credit ID 1.1: For each concrete mixture containing fly ash as a replacement for portland cement or other portland cement replacements and for equivalent concrete mixtures that do not contain portland cement replacements.
3. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
  - a. Indicate amounts of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at Project site.
4. Formwork Shop Drawings: Show formwork construction including form-facing joints, rustications, construction and contraction joints, form joint-sealant details, form tie locations and patterns, inserts and embedments, cutouts, cleanout panels, and other items that visually affect cast-in-place architectural concrete.
5. Placement Schedule: Submit concrete placement schedule before start of placement operations. Include locations of all joints including construction joints.
6. Samples: For each of the following materials:
  - a. Form-facing panel.
  - b. Form ties.
  - c. Form liners.
  - d. Coarse- and fine-aggregate gradations.
  - e. Chamfers and rustications.
7. Material test reports **OR** certificates, **as directed**.



#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
  - a. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."
2. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
  - a. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-01 or an equivalent certification program.
  - b. Personnel performing laboratory tests shall be an ACI-certified Concrete Strength Testing Technician and Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician - Grade I. Testing Agency laboratory supervisor shall be an ACI-certified Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician - Grade II.
3. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
  - a. ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete," Sections 1 through 5 **OR** Sections 1 through 5 and Section 6, "Architectural Concrete", **as directed**.
  - b. ACI 303.1, "Specification for Cast-in-Place Architectural Concrete."
4. Field Sample Panels: After approval of verification sample and before casting architectural concrete, produce field sample panels to demonstrate the approved range of selections made under sample submittals. Produce a minimum of 3 sets of full-scale panels, cast vertically, approximately 48 by 48 by 6 inches (1200 by 1200 by 150 mm) minimum, to demonstrate the expected range of finish, color, and texture variations.
5. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Form-Facing Materials

1. General: Comply with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete" for formwork and other form-facing material requirements.
2. Form-Facing Panels for As-Cast **OR** Exposed-Aggregate, **as directed**, Finishes: Steel, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic, or other approved nonabsorptive panel materials that will provide continuous, true, and smooth architectural concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
3. Forms for Cylindrical Columns, Pedestals, and Supports: Metal, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic, paper, or fiber tubes that will provide surfaces with gradual or abrupt irregularities not exceeding specified formwork surface class. Provide units with sufficient wall thickness to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation.
4. Pan-Type Forms: Glass-fiber-reinforced plastic or formed steel, stiffened to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation.
5. Form Liners: Units of face design, texture, arrangement, and configuration indicated **OR** to match design reference sample, **as directed**. Furnish with manufacturer's recommended liquid-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent surface treatments of concrete.
6. Rustication Strips: Metal, rigid plastic, or dressed wood with sides beveled and back kerfed; nonstaining; in longest practicable lengths.
7. Chamfer Strips: Metal, rigid plastic, elastomeric rubber, or dressed wood, 3/4 by 3/4 inch (19 by 19 mm), minimum; nonstaining; in longest practicable lengths.
8. Form Joint Tape: Compressible foam tape; pressure sensitive; AAMA 800, "Specification 810.1, Expanded Cellular Glazing Tape"; minimum 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick.
9. Form Joint Sealant: Elastomeric sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type M or S, Grade NS, that adheres to form joint substrates.
10. Sealer: Penetrating, clear, polyurethane wood form sealer formulated to reduce absorption of bleed water and prevent migration of set-retarding chemicals from wood.



11. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated colorless form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect architectural concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of those surfaces.
    - a. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.
  12. Surface Retarder: Chemical liquid set retarder, for application on form-facing materials, capable of temporarily delaying final hardening of newly placed concrete surface to depth of reveal specified.
  13. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic **OR** internally disconnecting **OR** removable, **as directed**, ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.
    - a. Furnish ties with tapered tie cone spreaders, **as directed**, that, when removed, will leave holes 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), **as directed**, in diameter on concrete surface.
    - b. Furnish internally disconnecting ties that will leave no metal closer than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), after exposing aggregate, **as directed**, from the architectural concrete surface.
    - c. Furnish glass-fiber-reinforced plastic ties, not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) in diameter, of color to match the Owner's sample **OR** selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
    - d. Furnish ties with integral water-barrier plates to walls indicated to receive dampproofing or waterproofing.
- B. Steel Reinforcement And Accessories
1. General: Comply with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete" for steel reinforcement and other requirements for reinforcement accessories.
  2. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 **OR** 60, **as directed**, percent.
  3. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded-wire fabric in place; manufacture according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."
    - a. Where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use gray, all-plastic **OR** CRSI Class 1, gray, plastic-protected **OR** CRSI Class 2, stainless-steel, **as directed**, bar supports.
- C. Concrete Materials
1. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and source, throughout Project:
    - a. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I **OR** II **OR** I/II **OR** III, **as directed**, gray **OR** white, **as directed**. Supplement with the following:, **as directed**
      - 1) Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C **OR** F, **as directed**.
      - 2) Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.
      - 3) Silica Fume: ASTM C 1240, amorphous silica.
    - b. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595, Type IS, portland blast-furnace slag **OR** IP, portland-pozzolan **OR** (PM), pozzolan-modified Portland **OR** I (SM), slag-modified Portland, **as directed**, cement.
  2. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, Class 5S **OR** 5M **OR** 1N, **as directed**, coarse aggregate or better, graded. Provide aggregates from a single source with documented service record data of at least 10 years' satisfactory service in similar applications and service conditions using similar aggregates and cementitious materials, **as directed**.
    - a. Maximum Coarse Aggregate Size: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (10 mm), **as directed**.
    - b. Gradation: Uniformly **OR** Gap, **as directed**, graded.
  3. Normal-Weight Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33 **OR** ASTM C 144, **as directed**, manufactured or natural sand, from same source for entire Project.
  4. Water: Potable, complying with ASTM C 94/C 94M except free of wash water from mixer washout operations.



#### D. Admixtures

1. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
2. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that will not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
  - a. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
  - b. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
  - c. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
  - d. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
  - e. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
  - f. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.
3. Color Pigment: ASTM C 979, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures; color stable, free of carbon black, **as directed**, nonfading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis.
  - a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designation **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

#### E. Curing Materials

1. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. (305 g/sq. m) when dry.
2. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
3. Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B.
  - a. For integrally colored concrete, curing compound shall be pigmented type, **as directed**, approved by color pigment manufacturer.
  - b. For concrete indicated to be sealed, curing compound shall be compatible with sealer.

#### F. Repair Materials

1. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, nonredispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
2. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade to suit requirements.
  - a. Types I and II, non-load bearing **OR** IV and V, load bearing, **as directed**, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.

#### G. Concrete Mixtures, General

1. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of cast-in-place architectural concrete proportioned on basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301.
  - a. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed design mixtures based on laboratory trial mixtures.
2. Proportion concrete mixtures as follows:
  - a. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) **OR** 4500 psi (31 MPa) **OR** 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) **OR** 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) **OR** 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), **as directed**.
  - b. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.46.
  - c. Slump Limit: 3 inches (75 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 8 inches (200 mm) for concrete with verified slump of 2 to 4 inches (50 to 100 mm) before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture, **as directed**, plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
  - d. Air Content:
    - 1) 5-1/2 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
    - 2) 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-inch (25-mm) **OR** 3/4-inch (19-mm), **as directed**, nominal maximum aggregate size.
3. Cementitious Materials: For cast-in-place architectural concrete exposed to deicers, limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement according to ACI 301 requirements. Use fly ash, pozzolan, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica



- fume as needed to reduce the total amount of portland cement, which would otherwise be used, by not less than 40 percent, **as directed**.
4. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.06 **OR** 0.15 **OR** 0.30 **OR** 1.00, **as directed**, percent by weight of cement.
  5. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  6. Color Pigment: Add color pigment to concrete mixture according to manufacturer's written instructions and to result in hardened concrete color consistent with approved mockup.

#### H. Concrete Mixing

1. Ready-Mixed or Site-Mixed Architectural Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M and furnish batch ticket information.
  - a. Clean equipment used to mix and deliver cast-in-place architectural concrete to prevent contamination from other concrete.
  - b. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F (30 and 32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F (32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Formwork

1. General: Comply with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete" for formwork, embedded items, and shoring and reshoring.
2. Limit deflection of form-facing panels to not exceed ACI 303.1 requirements.
3. In addition to ACI 303.1 limits on form-facing panel deflection, limit cast-in-place architectural concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI 347R as abrupt or gradual, as follows:
  - a. Class A, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) **OR** B, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** C, 1/2 inch (13 mm), **as directed**.
4. Fabricate forms to result in cast-in-place architectural concrete that complies with ACI 117, "Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials."
  - a. In addition to ACI 117, comply with the following tolerances: **<Insert tolerances.>**
5. Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast-in-place surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical. Kerf wood rustications, keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.
  - a. Seal form joints and penetrations at form ties with form joint tape or form joint sealant to prevent cement paste leakage.
  - b. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.
6. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.
7. Chamfer **OR** Do not chamfer, **as directed**, exterior corners and edges of cast-in-place architectural concrete.
8. Coat contact surfaces of wood rustications and chamfer strips with sealer before placing reinforcement, anchoring devices, and embedded items.
9. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.
10. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.
11. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.
12. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.
13. Coat contact surfaces of forms with surface retarder, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.
14. Place form liners accurately to provide finished surface texture indicated. Provide solid backing and attach securely to prevent deflection and maintain stability of liners during concreting.



Prevent form liners from sagging and stretching in hot weather. Seal joints of form liners and form liner accessories to prevent mortar leaks. Coat form liner with form-release agent.

B. Reinforcement And Inserts

1. General: Comply with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete" for fabricating and installing steel reinforcement. Securely fasten steel reinforcement and wire ties against shifting during concrete placement.
2. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.

C. Removing And Reusing Forms

1. Formwork for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) for 24 hours after placing concrete, if concrete is hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations and curing and protection operations are maintained.
  - a. Schedule form removal to maintain surface appearance that matches approved field sample panels.
  - b. Cut off and grind glass-fiber-reinforced plastic form ties flush with surface of concrete.
2. Leave formwork for beam soffits, joists, slabs, and other structural elements that support weight of concrete in place until concrete has achieved 28-day design compressive strength **OR** at least 70 percent of 28-day design compressive strength, **as directed**. Remove forms only if shores have been arranged to permit removal of forms without loosening or disturbing shores.
3. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Do not use split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material. Apply new form-release agent.
4. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for cast-in-place architectural concrete surfaces.

D. Joints

1. Construction Joints: Install construction joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of cast-in-place architectural concrete so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by the Owner.
  - a. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints, unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) into concrete, **as directed**. Align construction joint within rustications attached to form-facing material.
  - c. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders in the middle third of spans. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
  - d. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
  - e. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated. Locate joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
  - f. Use bonding agent **OR** epoxy-bonding adhesive, **as directed**, at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
2. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of cast-in-place architectural concrete so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by the Owner.

E. Concrete Placement

1. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, form-release agent, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.
2. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by the Owner.
3. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301.



- a. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.
  4. Deposit concrete continuously between construction joints. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
    - a. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth to not exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
    - b. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 303.1.
    - c. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches (150 mm) into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity. Do not permit vibrators to contact forms.
  5. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
    - a. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
    - b. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
    - c. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents.
    - d. Do not use chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in design mixtures.
  6. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows:
    - a. Maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F (32 deg C) at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
    - b. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.
- F. Finishes, General
1. Architectural Concrete Finish: Match the Owner's design reference sample, identified and described as indicated, to satisfaction of the Owner.
  2. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces.
    - a. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Maintain uniformity of special finishes over construction joints, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. As-Cast Formed Finishes
1. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections exceeding specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
  2. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Remove fins and other projections exceeding specified limits on formed-surface irregularities. Repair **OR** Do not repair, **as directed**, and patch tie holes and defects.
  3. Rubbed Finish: Apply the following to smooth-form-finished as-cast concrete where indicated:
    - a. Smooth-Rubbed Finish: Not later than one day after form removal, moisten concrete surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or another abrasive until producing a uniform color and texture. Do not apply cement grout other than that created by the rubbing process.
    - b. Grout-Cleaned Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply grout of a consistency of thick paint to coat surfaces and fill small holes. Mix one part portland cement to one and one-half parts fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding admixture and water. Add white portland



cement in amounts determined by trial patches so color of dry grout will match surrounding concrete. Scrub grout into voids and remove excess grout. When grout whitens, rub surface with clean burlap and keep surface damp by fog spray for at least 36 hours.

- c. Cork-Floated Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply a stiff grout. Mix one part portland cement and one part fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding agent and water. Add white portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches so color of dry grout will match surrounding concrete. Compress grout into voids by grinding surface. In a swirling motion, finish surface with a cork float.
4. Form-Liner Finish: Produce a textured surface free of pockets, streaks, and honeycombs, and of uniform appearance, color, and texture.

#### H. Exposed-Aggregate Finishes

1. Scrubbed Finish: After concrete has achieved a compressive strength of from 1000 to 1500 psi (6.9 to 10.3 MPa), apply scrubbed finish. Wet concrete surfaces thoroughly and scrub with stiff fiber or wire brushes, using water freely, until top mortar surface is removed and aggregate is uniformly exposed. Rinse scrubbed surfaces with clean water. Maintain continuity of finish on each surface or area of Work. Remove only enough concrete mortar from surfaces to match design reference sample.
2. High-Pressure Water-Jet Finish: Perform high-pressure water jetting on concrete that has achieved a minimum compressive strength of 4500 psi (31 MPa). Coordinate with formwork removal to ensure that surfaces to be high-pressure water-jet finished are treated at same age for uniform results.
  - a. Surface Continuity: Perform high-pressure water-jet finishing in as continuous an operation as possible, maintaining continuity of finish on each surface or area of Work. Maintain required patterns or variances in reveal projection to match design reference sample.
3. Abrasive-Blast Finish: Perform abrasive blasting after compressive strength of concrete exceeds 2000 psi (13.8 MPa). Coordinate with formwork removal to ensure that surfaces to be abrasive blasted are treated at same age for uniform results.
  - a. Surface Continuity: Perform abrasive-blast finishing in as continuous an operation as possible, maintaining continuity of finish on each surface or area of Work. Maintain required patterns or variances in depths of blast to match design reference sample.
  - b. Abrasive Blasting: Abrasive blast corners and edges of patterns carefully, using backup boards, to maintain uniform corner or edge line. Determine type of nozzle, nozzle pressure, and blasting techniques required to match design reference sample.
  - c. Depth of Cut: Use an abrasive grit of proper type and gradation to expose aggregate and surrounding matrix surfaces to match design reference sample, as follows:
    - 1) Brush: Remove cement matrix to dull surface sheen and expose face of fine aggregate; with no significant reveal.
    - 2) Light: Expose fine aggregate with occasional exposure of coarse aggregate and uniform color; with maximum reveal of 1/16 inch (1.5 mm).
    - 3) Medium: Generally expose coarse aggregate; with slight reveal, a maximum of 1/4 inch (6 mm).
    - 4) Heavy: Expose and reveal coarse aggregate to a maximum projection of one-third its diameter; with reveal range of 1/4 to 1/2 inch (6 to 13 mm).
4. Bushhammer Finish: Allow concrete to cure at least 14 days before starting bushhammer surface finish operations.
  - a. Surface Continuity: Perform bushhammer finishing in as continuous an operation as possible, maintaining continuity of finish on each surface or area of Work. Maintain required patterns or variances of cut as shown on Drawings or to match design reference sample or mockup.
  - b. Surface Cut: Maintain required depth of cut and general aggregate exposure. Use power tool with hammer attachments for large, flat surfaces, and use hand hammers for small areas, at corners and edges, and for restricted locations where power tools cannot reach.
  - c. Remove impressions of formwork and form facings with exception of tie holes.





- I. Concrete Protecting And Curing
1. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and with ACI 301 for hot-weather protection during curing.
  2. Begin curing cast-in-place architectural concrete immediately after removing forms from **OR** applying as-cast formed finishes to, **as directed**, concrete. Cure according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods that will not mottle, discolor, or stain concrete:
    - a. Moisture Curing: Keep exposed surfaces of cast-in-place architectural concrete continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
      - 1) Water.
      - 2) Continuous water-fog spray.
      - 3) Absorptive cover, water saturated and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch (300-mm) lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
    - b. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches (300 mm), and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period; use cover material and waterproof tape.
    - c. Curing Compound: Mist concrete surfaces with water. Apply curing compound uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
- J. Field Quality Control
1. General: Comply with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete" for field quality-control requirements.
- K. Repairs, Protection, And Cleaning
1. Repair and cure damaged finished surfaces of cast-in-place architectural concrete when approved by the Owner. Match repairs to color, texture, and uniformity of surrounding surfaces and to repairs on approved mockups.
    - a. Remove and replace cast-in-place architectural concrete that cannot be repaired and cured to the Owner's approval.
  2. Protect corners, edges, and surfaces of cast-in-place architectural concrete from damage; use guards and barricades.
  3. Protect cast-in-place architectural concrete from staining, laitance, and contamination during remainder of construction period.
  4. Clean cast-in-place architectural concrete surfaces after finish treatment to remove stains, markings, dust, and debris.
  5. Wash and rinse surfaces according to concrete finish applicator's written recommendations. Protect other Work from staining or damage due to cleaning operations.
    - a. Do not use cleaning materials or processes that could change the appearance of cast-in-place architectural concrete finishes.

END OF SECTION 03 11 16 13a



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
03 11 16 13	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 11 23 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
03 11 23 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 15 13 13	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 15 13 16	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 15 16 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 15 19 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
03 21 11 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 21 16 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 22 11 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 22 13 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 22 16 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 30 53 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 03 31 13 00 - CEMENT CONCRETE PAVEMENT**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for cement concrete pavement. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Driveways.
  - b. Roadways.
  - c. Parking lots.
  - d. Curbs and gutters.
  - e. Walks.

## C. Definitions

1. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, and ground granulated blast-furnace slag.

## D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
  - b. Design Mixtures for Credit ID 1.1: For each concrete mixture containing fly ash as a replacement for portland cement or other portland cement replacements. For each design mixture submitted, include an equivalent concrete mixture that does not contain portland cement replacements, to determine amount of portland cement replaced.
3. Shop Drawings: Indicate pavement markings, lane separations, and defined parking spaces. Indicate, with international symbol of accessibility, spaces allocated for people with disabilities.
4. Samples: For each type of product or exposed finish, prepared as Samples of size indicated below:
  - a. Exposed Aggregate: 10-lb (4.5-kg) Sample of each mix.
  - b. Wheel Stops: 6 inches (150 mm) long showing cross section; with fasteners.
  - c. Preformed Traffic-Calming Devices: 6 inches (150 mm) long showing cross section; with fasteners.
5. Other Action Submittals:
  - a. Design Mixtures: For each concrete paving mixture. Include alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
6. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer of detectable warnings, ready-mix concrete manufacturer and testing agency.
7. Material Certificates: For the following, from manufacturer:
  - a. Cementitious materials.
  - b. Steel reinforcement and reinforcement accessories.
  - c. Fiber reinforcement.
  - d. Admixtures.
  - e. Curing compounds.
  - f. Applied finish materials.



- g. Bonding agent or epoxy adhesive.
- h. Joint fillers.
- 8. Material Test Reports: For each of the following:
  - a. Aggregates. Include service-record data indicating absence of deleterious expansion of concrete due to alkali-aggregate reactivity.
- 9. Field quality-control reports.

#### E. Quality Assurance

- 1. Detectable Warning Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer of stamped concrete paving systems.
- 2. Ready-Mix-Concrete Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
  - a. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities" (Quality Control Manual - Section 3, "Plant Certification Checklist").
- 3. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
  - a. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-1 or an equivalent certification program.
- 4. Concrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixtures.
- 5. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301 (ACI 301M) unless otherwise indicated.
- 6. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### F. Project Conditions

- 1. Traffic Control: Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activities.
- 2. Pavement-Marking Paint: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces and at a minimum ambient or surface temperature of 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) for oil-based materials **OR** 55 deg F (12.8 deg C) for water-based materials, **as directed**, and not exceeding 95 deg F (35 deg C).

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Forms

- 1. Form Materials: Plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood, or other approved panel-type materials to provide full-depth, continuous, straight, and smooth exposed surfaces.
  - a. Use flexible or uniformly curved forms for curves with a radius of 100 feet (30.5 m) or less. Do not use notched and bent forms.
- 2. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and that will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

#### B. Steel Reinforcement

- 1. Recycled Content: Provide steel reinforcement with an average recycled content of steel so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
- 2. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 1064/A 1064M, fabricated from as-drawn steel **OR** galvanized-steel, **as directed**, wire into flat sheets.
- 3. Deformed-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 497/A 497M, flat sheet.
- 4. Epoxy-Coated Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 884/A 884M, Class A, plain steel.
- 5. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420); deformed.
- 6. Galvanized Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 767/A 767M, Class II zinc coated, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and bending; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) deformed bars.



7. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 775/A 775M or ASTM A 934/A 934M; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) deformed bars.
8. Steel Bar Mats: ASTM A 184/A 184M; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed bars; assembled with clips.
9. Plain-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82/A 82M, as drawn **OR** galvanized, **as directed**.
10. Deformed-Steel Wire: ASTM A 496/A 496M.
11. Epoxy-Coated-Steel Wire: ASTM A 884/A 884M, Class A coated, plain **OR** deformed, **as directed**.
12. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) plain-steel bars; zinc coated (galvanized) after fabrication according to ASTM A 767/A 767M, Class I coating, **as directed**. Cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
13. Epoxy-Coated, Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 775/A 775M; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), plain-steel bars.
14. Tie Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed.  
**OR**  
Hook Bolts: ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6), internally and externally threaded. Design hook-bolt joint assembly to hold coupling against paving form and in position during concreting operations, and to permit removal without damage to concrete or hook bolt.
15. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars, welded wire reinforcement, and dowels in place. Manufacture bar supports according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete of greater compressive strength than concrete specified, and as follows:
  - a. Equip wire bar supports with sand plates or horizontal runners where base material will not support chair legs.
  - b. For epoxy-coated reinforcement, use epoxy-coated or other dielectric-polymer-coated wire bar supports.
16. Epoxy Repair Coating: Liquid, two-part, epoxy repair coating, compatible with epoxy coating on reinforcement.
17. Zinc Repair Material: ASTM A 780.

#### C. Concrete Materials

1. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of same type, brand, and source throughout Project:
  - a. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, gray **OR** white, **as directed**, portland cement Type I **OR** Type II **OR** Type I/II **OR** Type III **OR** Type V, **as directed**. Supplement with the following, **as directed**:
    - 1) Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C or Class F.
    - 2) Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.
  - b. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595, Type IS, portland blast-furnace slag **OR** Type IP, portland-pozzolan, **as directed**, cement.
2. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, Class 4S **OR** Class 4M **OR** Class 1N, **as directed**, uniformly graded. Provide aggregates from a single source with documented service-record data of at least 10 years' satisfactory service in similar paving applications and service conditions using similar aggregates and cementitious materials, **as directed**.
  - a. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, nominal.
  - b. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
3. Exposed Aggregate: Selected, hard, and durable; washed; free of materials with deleterious reactivity to cement or that cause staining; from a single source, with gap-graded coarse aggregate as follows:
  - a. Aggregate Sizes: 3/4 to 1 inch (19 to 25 mm) **OR** 1/2 to 3/4 inch (13 to 19 mm) **OR** 3/8 to 5/8 inch (10 to 16 mm), **as directed**, nominal.
  - b. Aggregate Source, Shape, and Color: **As required to meet Project requirements**.
4. Water: Potable and complying with ASTM C 94/C 94M.
5. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.



6. Chemical Admixtures: Admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and to contain not more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious material.
    - a. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
    - b. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
    - c. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
    - d. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
    - e. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
    - f. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.
  7. Color Pigment: ASTM C 979, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures; color stable, free of carbon black, **as directed**, nonfading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis.
- D. Fiber Reinforcement
1. Synthetic Fiber: Monofilament or fibrillated polypropylene fibers engineered and designed for use in concrete paving, complying with ASTM C 1116/C 1116M, Type III, 1/2 to 1-1/2 inches (13 to 38 mm) long.
- E. Curing Materials
1. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 3, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. (305 g/sq. m) dry or cotton mats.
  2. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
  3. Water: Potable.
  4. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular, film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
  5. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, dissipating.
  6. White, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 2, Class B, dissipating.
- F. Related Materials
1. Joint Fillers: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork in preformed strips.
  2. Slip-Resistive Aggregate Finish: Factory-graded, packaged, rustproof, nonglazing, abrasive aggregate of fused aluminum-oxide granules or crushed emery aggregate containing not less than 50 percent aluminum oxide and not less than 20 percent ferric oxide; unaffected by freezing, moisture, and cleaning materials.
  3. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
  4. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881/C 881M, two-component epoxy resin capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces; of class suitable for application temperature, of grade complying with requirements, and of the following types:
    - a. Types I and II, non-load bearing **OR** Types IV and V, load bearing, **as directed**, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.
  5. Chemical Surface Retarder: Water-soluble, liquid, set retarder with color dye, for horizontal concrete surface application, capable of temporarily delaying final hardening of concrete to a depth of 1/8 to 1/4 inch (3 to 6 mm).
  6. Pigmented Mineral Dry-Shake Hardener: Factory-packaged, dry combination of portland cement, graded quartz aggregate, color pigments, and plasticizing admixture. Use color pigments that are finely ground, nonfading mineral oxides interground with cement.
  7. Rock Salt: Sodium chloride crystals, kiln dried, coarse gradation with 100 percent passing 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) sieve and 85 percent retained on a No. 8 (2.36-mm) sieve.
- G. Detectable Warning Materials





1. Detectable Warning Stamp: Semirigid polyurethane mats with formed underside capable of imprinting detectable warning pattern on plastic concrete; perforated with a vent hole at each dome.
    - a. Size of Stamp: One piece matching detectable warning area shown on Drawings **OR** 24 by 24 inches (610 by 610 mm) **OR** 24 by 36 inches (610 by 914 mm) **OR** 24 by 48 inches (610 by 1220 mm) **OR** 26 by 26 inches (660 by 660 mm) **OR** 26 by 36 inches (660 by 914 mm), **as directed**.
  2. Liquid Release Agent: Manufacturer's standard, clear, evaporating formulation designed to facilitate release of stamp mats.
- H. Pavement Markings
1. Pavement-Marking Paint: Alkyd-resin type, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with AASHTO M 248, Type N **OR** Type F **OR** Type S, **as directed**; colors complying with FS TT-P-1952.
    - a. Color: White **OR** Yellow **OR** Blue **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  2. Pavement-Marking Paint: MPI #32 Alkyd Traffic Marking Paint.
    - a. Color: White **OR** Yellow **OR** Blue **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  3. Pavement-Marking Paint: Latex, waterborne emulsion, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with FS TT-P-1952, Type II, with drying time of less than three **OR** 45, **as directed**, minutes.
    - a. Color: White **OR** Yellow **OR** Blue **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  4. Pavement-Marking Paint: MPI #97 Latex Traffic Marking Paint.
    - a. Color: White **OR** Yellow **OR** Blue **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  5. Glass Beads: AASHTO M 247, Type 1 **OR** FS TT-B-1325, Type 1A, **as directed**.
- I. Wheel Stops
1. Wheel Stops: Precast, air-entrained concrete, 2500-psi (17.2-MPa) minimum compressive strength, 4-1/2 inches (115 mm) high by 9 inches (225 mm) wide by 72 inches (1820 mm) long. Provide chamfered corners and drainage slots on underside and holes for anchoring to substrate.
    - a. Dowels: Galvanized steel, 3/4 inch (19 mm) in diameter, 10-inch (254-mm) minimum length.
  2. Wheel Stops: Solid, integrally colored, 96 percent recycled HDPE, or commingled postconsumer and postindustrial recycled rubber or plastic; UV stabilized; 4 inches (100 mm) high by 6 inches (150 mm) wide by 72 inches (1820 mm) long. Provide chamfered corners and drainage slots on underside and holes for anchoring to substrate.
    - a. Color: Black **OR** Yellow **OR** Gray **OR** Green **OR** Blue, **as directed**.
    - b. Dowels: Galvanized steel, 3/4 inch (19 mm) in diameter, 10-inch (254-mm) minimum length.
    - c. Adhesive: As recommended by wheel stop manufacturer for application to concrete pavement.
- J. Preformed Traffic-Calming Devices
1. Speed Bumps **OR** Humps **OR** Cushions, **as directed**: Solid, integrally colored, 100 percent postconsumer or commingled postconsumer and postindustrial recycled rubber or plastic; UV stabilized. Provide holes for anchoring to substrate.
    - a. Bump Size: Modular 2 inches (50 mm) high by 10 inches (254 mm) wide by 72 inches (1800 mm) long, with overall length as dimensioned on Drawings.
    - b. Hump **OR** Cushion, **as directed**, Size: Modular assemblies 3 inches (75 mm) high by 12 feet (3.7 m) in overall width **OR** 4 inches (100 mm) high by 14 feet (4.3 m) in overall width, **as directed**, with overall length as dimensioned on Drawings.
    - c. Color: Black **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.
    - d. Mounting Hardware: Galvanized-steel lag screw, shield, and washers; 1/2-inch (13-mm) diameter, 8-inch (200-mm) minimum length **OR** hardware as standard with device manufacturer for use with concrete paving, **as directed**.
    - e. Adhesive: As recommended by device manufacturer.



#### K. Concrete Mixtures

1. Prepare design mixtures, proportioned according to ACI 301 (ACI 301M), for each type and strength of normal-weight concrete, and as determined by either laboratory trial mixtures or field experience.
  - a. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed concrete design mixtures for the trial batch method.
  - b. When automatic machine placement is used, determine design mixtures and obtain laboratory test results that meet or exceed requirements.
2. Proportion mixtures to provide normal-weight concrete with the following properties:
  - a. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 4500 psi (31 MPa) **OR** 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) **OR** 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) **OR** 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), **as directed**.
  - b. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio at Point of Placement: 0.45 **OR** 0.50, **as directed**.
  - c. Slump Limit: 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 5 inches (125 mm) **OR** 8 inches (200 mm), **as directed**, plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
3. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in normal-weight concrete at point of placement having an air content as follows:
  - a. Air Content: 5-1/2 **OR** 4-1/2 **OR** 2-1/2, **as directed**, percent plus or minus 1.5 percent for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
  - b. Air Content: 6 **OR** 4-1/2 **OR** 3, **as directed**, percent plus or minus 1.5 percent for 1-inch (25-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
  - c. Air Content: 6 **OR** 5 **OR** 3-1/2, **as directed**, percent plus or minus 1.5 percent for 3/4-inch (19-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
4. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 **OR** 0.30, **as directed**, percent by weight of cement.
5. Chemical Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Use water-reducing admixture **OR** high-range, water-reducing admixture **OR** high-range, water-reducing and retarding admixture **OR** plasticizing and retarding admixture, **as directed**, in concrete as required for placement and workability.
  - b. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
6. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage by weight of cementitious materials other than portland cement according to ACI 301 (ACI 301M) requirements for concrete exposed to deicing chemicals **OR** as follows, **as directed**:
  - a. Fly Ash or Pozzolan: 25 percent.
  - b. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent.
  - c. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolan, and Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent, with fly ash or pozzolan not exceeding 25 percent.
7. Synthetic Fiber: Uniformly disperse in concrete mixture at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than 1.0 lb/cu. yd. (0.60 kg/cu. m) **OR** 1.5 lb/cu. yd. (0.90 kg/cu. m), **as directed**.
8. Color Pigment: Add color pigment to concrete mixture according to manufacturer's written instructions and to result in hardened concrete color consistent with approved mockup.

#### L. Concrete Mixing

1. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M and ASTM C 1116/C 1116M, **as directed**. Furnish batch certificates for each batch discharged and used in the Work.
  - a. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F (30 and 32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F (32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.
2. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.
  - a. For concrete batches of 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m) or smaller, continue mixing at least 1-1/2 minutes, but not more than 5 minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.



- b. For concrete batches larger than 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m), increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m).
- c. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mixture type, mixing time, quantity, and amount of water added.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

1. Examine exposed subgrades and subbase surfaces for compliance with requirements for dimensional, grading, and elevation tolerances.
2. Proof-roll prepared subbase surface below concrete paving to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding.
  - a. Completely proof-roll subbase in one direction and repeat in perpendicular direction, **as directed**. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph (5 km/h).
  - b. Proof-roll with a pneumatic-tired and loaded, 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons (13.6 tonnes).
  - c. Correct subbase with soft spots and areas of pumping or rutting exceeding depth of 1/2 inch (13 mm) according to requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".
3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### B. Preparation

1. Remove loose material from compacted subbase surface immediately before placing concrete.

#### C. Edge Forms And Screed Construction

1. Set, brace, and secure edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed guides to required lines, grades, and elevations. Install forms to allow continuous progress of work and so forms can remain in place at least 24 hours after concrete placement.
2. Clean forms after each use and coat with form-release agent to ensure separation from concrete without damage.

#### D. Steel Reinforcement

1. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
2. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, or other bond-reducing materials.
3. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position during concrete placement. Maintain minimum cover to reinforcement.
4. Install welded wire reinforcement in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh, and lace splices with wire. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.
5. Zinc-Coated Reinforcement: Use galvanized-steel wire ties to fasten zinc-coated reinforcement. Repair cut and damaged zinc coatings with zinc repair material.
6. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcement: Use epoxy-coated steel wire ties to fasten epoxy-coated reinforcement. Repair cut and damaged epoxy coatings with epoxy repair coating according to ASTM D 3963/D 3963M.
7. Install fabricated bar mats in lengths as long as practicable. Handle units to keep them flat and free of distortions. Straighten bends, kinks, and other irregularities, or replace units as required before placement. Set mats for a minimum 2-inch (50-mm) overlap of adjacent mats.

#### E. Joints

1. General: Form construction, isolation, and contraction joints and tool edges true to line, with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete. Construct transverse joints at right angles to centerline unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. When joining existing paving, place transverse joints to align with previously placed joints unless otherwise indicated.



2. Construction Joints: Set construction joints at side and end terminations of paving and at locations where paving operations are stopped for more than one-half hour unless paving terminates at isolation joints.
    - a. Continue steel reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of paving strips unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Provide tie bars at sides of paving strips where indicated.
    - c. Butt Joints: Use bonding agent **OR** epoxy bonding adhesive, **as directed**, at joint locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
    - d. Keyed Joints: Provide preformed keyway-section forms or bulkhead forms with keys unless otherwise indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) into concrete.
    - e. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or coat with asphalt one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
  3. Isolation Joints: Form isolation joints of preformed joint-filler strips abutting concrete curbs, catch basins, manholes, inlets, structures, other fixed objects, and where indicated.
    - a. Locate expansion joints at intervals of 50 feet (15.25 m) unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Extend joint fillers full width and depth of joint.
    - c. Terminate joint filler not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) or more than 1 inch (25 mm) below finished surface if joint sealant is indicated.
    - d. Place top of joint filler flush with finished concrete surface if joint sealant is not indicated.
    - e. Furnish joint fillers in one-piece lengths. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip joint-filler sections together.
    - f. During concrete placement, protect top edge of joint filler with metal, plastic, or other temporary preformed cap. Remove protective cap after concrete has been placed on both sides of joint.
  4. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of the concrete thickness, as follows, to match jointing of existing adjacent concrete paving:
    - a. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint with grooving tool to a 1/4-inch (6-mm) **OR** 3/8-inch (10-mm), **as directed**, radius. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate grooving-tool marks on concrete surfaces, **as directed**.
      - 1) Tolerance: Ensure that grooved joints are within 3 inches (75 mm) either way from centers of dowels.
    - b. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- (3-mm-) wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before developing random contraction cracks.
      - 1) Tolerance: Ensure that sawed joints are within 3 inches (75 mm) either way from centers of dowels.
    - c. Doweled Contraction Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or coat with asphalt one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
    - d. Edging: After initial floating, tool edges of paving, gutters, curbs, and joints in concrete with an edging tool to a 1/4-inch (6-mm) **OR** 3/8-inch (10-mm), **as directed**, radius. Repeat tooling of edges after applying surface finishes. Eliminate edging-tool marks on concrete surfaces, **as directed**.
- F. Concrete Placement
1. Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation, steel reinforcement, and items to be embedded or cast-in.
  2. Remove snow, ice, or frost from subbase surface and steel reinforcement before placing concrete. Do not place concrete on frozen surfaces.



3. Moisten subbase to provide a uniform dampened condition at time concrete is placed. Do not place concrete around manholes or other structures until they are at required finish elevation and alignment.
4. Comply with ACI 301 (ACI 301M) requirements for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete.
5. Do not add water to concrete during delivery or at Project site. Do not add water to fresh concrete after testing.
6. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints. Do not push or drag concrete into place or use vibrators to move concrete into place.
7. Consolidate concrete according to ACI 301 (ACI 301M) by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand spading, rodding, or tamping.
  - a. Consolidate concrete along face of forms and adjacent to transverse joints with an internal vibrator. Keep vibrator away from joint assemblies, reinforcement, or side forms. Use only square-faced shovels for hand spreading and consolidation. Consolidate with care to prevent dislocating reinforcement, dowels, and joint devices.
8. Screed paving surface with a straightedge and strike off.
9. Commence initial floating using bull floats or darbies to impart an open-textured and uniform surface plane before excess moisture or bleed water appears on the surface. Do not further disturb concrete surfaces before beginning finishing operations or spreading surface treatments.
10. Curbs and Gutters: Use design mixture for automatic machine placement. Produce curbs and gutters to required cross section, lines, grades, finish, and jointing.
11. Slip-Form Paving: Use design mixture for automatic machine placement. Produce paving to required thickness, lines, grades, finish, and jointing.
  - a. Compact subbase and prepare subgrade of sufficient width to prevent displacement of slip-form paving machine during operations.
12. Cold-Weather Placement: Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing, or low temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 and the following:
  - a. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40 deg F (4.4 deg C), uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) and not more than 80 deg F (27 deg C) at point of placement.
  - b. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
  - c. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in design mixtures.
13. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 (ACI 301M) and as follows when hot-weather conditions exist:
  - a. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F (32 deg C) at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated in total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
  - b. Cover steel reinforcement with water-soaked burlap so steel temperature will not exceed ambient air temperature immediately before embedding in concrete.
  - c. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade moisture uniform without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

#### G. Float Finishing

1. General: Do not add water to concrete surfaces during finishing operations.
2. Float Finish: Begin the second floating operation when bleed-water sheen has disappeared and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operations. Float surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Finish surfaces to true planes. Cut down high spots and fill low spots. Refloat surface immediately to uniform granular texture.
  - a. Burlap Finish: Drag a seamless strip of damp burlap across float-finished concrete, perpendicular to line of traffic, to provide a uniform, gritty texture.



- b. Medium-to-Fine-Textured Broom Finish: Draw a soft-bristle broom across float-finished concrete surface perpendicular to line of traffic to provide a uniform, fine-line texture.
- c. Medium-to-Coarse-Textured Broom Finish: Provide a coarse finish by striating float-finished concrete surface 1/16 to 1/8 inch (1.6 to 3 mm) deep with a stiff-bristled broom, perpendicular to line of traffic.

#### H. Special Finishes

1. Monolithic Exposed-Aggregate Finish: Expose coarse aggregate in paving surface as follows:
  - a. Immediately after float finishing, spray-apply chemical surface retarder to paving according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - b. Cover paving surface with plastic sheeting, sealing laps with tape, and remove when ready to continue finishing operations.
  - c. Without dislodging aggregate, remove mortar concealing the aggregate by lightly brushing surface with a stiff, nylon-bristle broom. Do not expose more than one-third of the average diameter of the aggregate and not more than one-half of the diameter of the smallest aggregate.
  - d. Fine-spray surface with water and brush. Repeat cycle of water flushing and brushing until cement film is removed from aggregate surfaces to depth required.
2. Seeded Exposed-Aggregate Finish: Immediately after initial floating, spread a single layer of aggregate uniformly on paving surface. Tamp aggregate into plastic concrete and float finish to entirely embed aggregate with mortar cover of 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
  - a. Spray-apply chemical surface retarder to paving according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - b. Cover paving surface with plastic sheeting, sealing laps with tape, and remove sheeting when ready to continue finishing operations.
  - c. Without dislodging aggregate, remove mortar concealing the aggregate by lightly brushing surface with a stiff, nylon-bristle broom. Do not expose more than one-third of the average diameter of the aggregate and not more than one-half of the diameter of the smallest aggregate.
  - d. Fine-spray surface with water and brush. Repeat cycle of water flushing and brushing until cement film is removed from aggregate surfaces to depth required.
3. Slip-Resistive Aggregate Finish: Before final floating, spread slip-resistive aggregate finish on paving surface according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
  - a. Uniformly spread 25 lb/100 sq. ft. (12 kg/10 sq. m) **OR** 40 lb/100 sq. ft. (19.5 kg/10 sq. m) **OR** 60 lb/100 sq. ft. (29 kg/10 sq. m), **as directed**, of dampened, slip-resistive aggregate over paving surface in two applications. Tamp aggregate flush with surface using a steel trowel, but do not force below surface.
  - b. Uniformly distribute approximately two-thirds of slip-resistive aggregate over paving surface with mechanical spreader, allow to absorb moisture, and embed by power floating. Follow power floating with a second slip-resistive aggregate application, uniformly distributing remainder of material at right angles to first application to ensure uniform coverage, and embed by power floating.
  - c. Cure concrete with curing compound recommended by slip-resistive aggregate manufacturer. Apply curing compound immediately after final finishing.
  - d. After curing, lightly work surface with a steel wire brush or abrasive stone and water to expose nonslip aggregate.
4. Rock-Salt Finish: After initial floating **OR** troweling **OR** brooming, **as directed**, uniformly spread rock salt over paving surface at the rate of 5 lb/100 sq. ft. (0.2 kg/10 sq. m).
  - a. Embed rock salt into plastic concrete with roller or magnesium float.
  - b. Cover paving surface with 1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick polyethylene sheet and remove sheet when concrete has hardened and seven-day curing period has elapsed.
  - c. After seven-day curing period, saturate concrete with water and broom-sweep surface to dissolve remaining rock salt, thereby leaving pits and holes.
5. Pigmented Mineral Dry-Shake Hardener Finish: After initial floating, apply dry-shake materials to paving surface according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:



- a. Uniformly spread dry-shake hardener at a rate of 100 lb/100 sq. ft. (49 kg/10 sq. m), unless greater amount is recommended by manufacturer to match paving color required.
  - b. Uniformly distribute approximately two-thirds of dry-shake hardener over the concrete surface with mechanical spreader; allow hardener to absorb moisture and embed it by power floating. Follow power floating with a second application of pigmented mineral dry-shake hardener, uniformly distributing remainder of material at right angles to first application to ensure uniform color, and embed hardener by final power floating.
  - c. After final power floating, apply a hand-trowel finish followed by a broom finish.
  - d. Cure concrete with curing compound recommended by dry-shake hardener manufacturer. Apply curing compound immediately after final finishing.
- I. Detectable Warnings
1. Blockouts: Form blockouts in concrete for installation of detectable paving units specified in Division 32 Section "Unit Paving".
    - a. Tolerance for Opening Size: Plus 1/4 inch (6 mm), no minus.
  2. Stamped Detectable Warnings: Install stamped detectable warnings as part of a continuous concrete paving placement and according to stamp-mat manufacturer's written instructions.
    - a. Before using stamp mats, verify that the vent holes are unobstructed.
    - b. Apply liquid release agent to the concrete surface and the stamp mat.
    - c. Stamping: While initially finished concrete is plastic **OR** After application and final floating of pigmented mineral dry-shake hardener, **as directed**, accurately align and place stamp mats in sequence. Uniformly load, gently vibrate, and press mats into concrete to produce imprint pattern on concrete surface. Load and tamp mats directly perpendicular to the stamp-mat surface to prevent distortion in shape of domes. Press and tamp until mortar begins to come through all of the vent holes. Gently remove stamp mats.
    - d. Trimming: After 24 hours, cut off the tips of mortar formed by the vent holes.
    - e. Remove residual release agent according to manufacturer's written instructions, but no fewer than three days after stamping concrete. High-pressure-wash surface and joint patterns, taking care not to damage stamped concrete. Control, collect, and legally dispose of runoff.
- J. Concrete Protection And Curing
1. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
  2. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection.
  3. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h (1 kg/sq. m x h) before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete but before float finishing.
  4. Begin curing after finishing concrete but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface.
  5. Curing Methods: Cure concrete by moisture curing, moisture-retaining-cover curing, curing compound, or a combination of these as follows:
    - a. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
      - 1) Water.
      - 2) Continuous water-fog spray.
      - 3) Absorptive cover, water saturated and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch (300-mm) lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
    - b. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches (300 mm) and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Immediately repair any holes or tears occurring during installation or curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
    - c. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas that have been subjected to



heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating, and repair damage during curing period.

K. Paving Tolerances

1. Comply with tolerances in ACI 117 and as follows:
  - a. Elevation: 3/4 inch (19 mm).
  - b. Thickness: Plus 3/8 inch (10 mm), minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - c. Surface: Gap below 10-foot- (3-m-) long, unlevelled straightedge not to exceed 1/2 inch (13 mm).
  - d. Alignment of Tie-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Paving Edge: 1/2 inch per 12 inches (13 mm per 300 mm) of tie bar.
  - e. Lateral Alignment and Spacing of Dowels: 1 inch (25 mm).
  - f. Vertical Alignment of Dowels: 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - g. Alignment of Dowel-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Paving Edge: 1/4 inch per 12 inches (6 mm per 300 mm) of dowel.
  - h. Joint Spacing: 3 inches (75 mm).
  - i. Contraction Joint Depth: Plus 1/4 inch (6 mm), no minus.
  - j. Joint Width: Plus 1/8 inch (3 mm), no minus.

L. Pavement Marking

1. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with the Owner.
2. Allow concrete paving to cure for a minimum of 28 days and be dry before starting pavement marking.
3. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.
4. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce markings of dimensions indicated with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils (0.4 mm).
  - a. Apply graphic symbols and lettering with paint-resistant, die-cut stencils, firmly secured to concrete surface. Mask an extended area beyond edges of each stencil to prevent paint application beyond stencil. Apply paint so that it cannot run beneath stencil.
  - b. Broadcast glass beads uniformly into wet markings at a rate of 6 lb/gal. (0.72 kg/L).

M. Wheel Stops

1. Install wheel stops in bed of adhesive applied as recommended by manufacturer.
2. Securely attach wheel stops to paving with not less than two steel **OR** galvanized-steel, **as directed**, dowels located at one-quarter to one-third points. Install dowels in drilled holes in the paving and bond dowels to wheel stop. Recess head of dowel beneath top of wheel stop.

N. Preformed Traffic-Calming Devices

1. Install preformed speed bumps **OR** humps **OR** cushions, **as directed**, in bed of adhesive applied as recommended by manufacturer for heavy traffic.
2. Securely attach preformed speed bumps **OR** humps **OR** cushions, **as directed**, to paving with hardware spaced as recommended by manufacturer for heavy traffic. Recess head of hardware beneath top surface.

O. Field Quality Control

1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
2. Testing Services: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:
  - a. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. (76 cu. m) **OR** 5000 sq. ft. (465 sq. m), **as directed**, or fraction thereof of each concrete mixture placed each day.





- 1) When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
  - b. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
  - c. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
  - d. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and below and when it is 80 deg F (27 deg C) and above, and one test for each composite sample.
  - e. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M; cast and laboratory cure one set of three standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
  - f. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test one specimen at seven days and two specimens at 28 days.
    - 1) A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at 28 days.
  3. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi (3.4 MPa).
  4. Test results shall be reported in writing to the Owner, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
  5. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by the Owner but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
  6. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by the Owner.
  7. Concrete paving will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  8. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
  9. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- P. Repairs And Protection
1. Remove and replace concrete paving that is broken, damaged, or defective or that does not comply with requirements in this Section. Remove work in complete sections from joint to joint unless otherwise approved by the Owner.
  2. Drill test cores, where directed by the Owner, when necessary to determine magnitude of cracks or defective areas. Fill drilled core holes in satisfactory paving areas with portland cement concrete bonded to paving with epoxy adhesive.
  3. Protect concrete paving from damage. Exclude traffic from paving for at least 14 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain paving as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials as they occur.
  4. Maintain concrete paving free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep paving not more than two days before date scheduled for Final Completion inspections.

END OF SECTION 03 31 13 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 03 31 13 00a - ROLLER COMPACTED CONCRETE PAVEMENT**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of roller compacted concrete pavement. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

## A. Cementitious Materials:

1. Portland cement shall conform to ASTM C 150, Type I. Low alkali is to be used with aggregates when directed. In lieu of low-alkali cement, the Contractor may use a combination of Portland cement that does not meet the low-alkali requirement with a suitable pozzolan or ground granulated blast-furnace slag (GGBFS) provided the following requirement is met. The expansion of the proposed combination shall be equal to or less than the expansion of a low-alkali cement meeting the requirements of ASTM C 150 when tested in conformance with ASTM C 441. These two tests shall be performed concurrently at an independent certified laboratory at the Contractor's expense. the Owner reserves the right to confirm the test results and to adjust the percentage of pozzolan or GGBFS in the combination to suit other requirements at no additional cost to the Owner. Portland cement shall be furnished in bulk.
2. Pozzolan shall conform to ASTM C 618, and, in addition, limits in Table 2A, Uniformity Requirements (for air content) shall apply to all fly ash. Table 1A, Supplementary Optional Chemical Requirement for Maximum Alkalies, shall apply when it is to be used with aggregates listed to require low-alkali cement. Pozzolan shall be furnished in bulk.
3. The temperature of the cementitious materials as delivered to the site shall not exceed 150 degrees F.

## B. Admixtures: All chemical admixtures furnished as liquids shall be in a solution of suitable viscosity and dilution for field use as determined by the Owner.

1. Water-Reducing Admixture (WRA) shall meet the requirements of ASTM C 494, Type D.
2. Air-entraining admixture shall conform to ASTM C 260.

## C. Water for washing aggregates and for mixing and curing concrete shall be free from injurious amounts of oil, acid, salt, alkali, organic matter, or other deleterious substances and shall comply with COE CRD-C 400.

## D. Aggregates

1. Composition: Fine aggregate shall consist of natural sand, manufactured sand, or a combination of natural and manufactured sands. Coarse aggregate shall consist of gravel, crushed gravel, crushed stone, air-cooled blast-furnace slag, or a combination thereof.

**OR**

All concrete mixtures will be proportioned by the Owner except that proportions for the slipformed facing concrete mixture will be selected by the Contractor. RCC shall be composed of cementitious materials, water, fine and coarse aggregates, and possibly admixtures. The cementitious material shall be portland cement, or portland cement in combination with pozzolan. An admixture when approved or directed will be a water-reducing/retarding admixture. Air-entraining admixture will be used in the bedding concrete and other conventional concrete.



### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. **Concrete Mixing Plant:** A continuous mixing plant(s) shall be capable of producing RCC of the same quality and uniformity as would be produced in a conventional redi-mix batch plant and shall be capable of producing a uniform continuous product (at both maximum and minimum production rates) that is mixed so that complete intermingling of all ingredients occurs without balling, segregation, and wet or dry portions.
- B. **Trucks:** Truck mixers or agitators used for transporting central-mixed conventional concrete shall conform to the applicable requirements of ASTM C 94. Truck mixers shall not be used to transport concrete with larger than 37.5 mm (1-1/2-inch) nominal maximum size aggregate (NMSA) or 2 inch slump, or less. Nonagitator trucks may be used for transporting conventional central-mixed concrete over a smooth road when the hauling time is less than 15 minutes and the slump is less than 3 inches. Bodies of nonagitator trucks shall be smooth, water-tight, metal containers specifically designed to transport concrete, shaped with rounded corners to minimize segregation.
- C. **Belt Conveyors:** Belt conveyors shall be designed and operated to assure a uniform flow of concrete from mixer or delivery truck to final place of deposit without segregation of ingredients or loss of mortar and shall be provided with positive means for preventing segregation of the concrete or loss of mortar at transfer points and the point of placing. The NMSA required in mixture proportions furnished by the Owner will not be changed to accommodate the belt width.
- D. **Spreading and Remixing Equipment:** The primary spreading procedure shall be accomplished by dozer. Graders or other equipment not specified may be used to facilitate the RCC spreading process only when approved. For open, unrestricted areas, the dozer shall be a minimum size and weight equivalent to a Caterpillar D-6. For restricted placement areas, such as placement of RCC near the dam crest or next to abutments, the dozer shall have as a minimum a size and weight equivalent to a Caterpillar D-4. There shall be a minimum of one operating dozer for each 200 cubic yards of RCC placed each hour. The dozers shall be equipped with well-maintained grousers. A front-end loader with operator shall be available to assist with deposition and spreading of RCC as needed in confined areas. The equipment shall be maintained in good operating condition. The equipment shall not leak or drip oil, grease, or other visible contaminants onto the RCC surface. All equipment used for spreading and remixing that leaves the surface of the structure for maintenance or repairs or, for any other reason, must be cleaned of all contaminants by an approved method before returning to the structure surface. Under no conditions shall a dozer or other tracked vehicle be operated on other than fresh uncompacted RCC except to facilitate startup operations for each lift and by approved procedures.
- E. **Compaction Equipment:**
1. Self-propelled vibratory rollers shall be used for primary rolling and shall be double-drum. They shall transmit a dynamic impact to the surface through a smooth steel drum by means of revolving weights, eccentric shafts, or other equivalent methods. The compactor shall have a minimum gross mass of 20,000 pounds and shall produce a minimum dynamic force of 350 pounds per linear inch of drum width. The operating frequency shall be variable in the approximate range of 1,700 to 3,000 cycles per minute. The amplitude shall be adjustable between 0.015 and 0.04 inches. The roller shall be capable of full compaction in both forward and reverse directions. The roller shall be operated at speeds not exceeding 2.2 ft/s. Within the range of the operating capability of the equipment, the Owner may direct or approve variations to the frequency, amplitude, and speed of operation which result in the specified density at the fastest production rate.
  2. Small vibratory rollers shall be used to compact the RCC where the larger vibratory rollers specified above cannot maneuver. The rollers shall compact the RCC to the required density and shall be so demonstrated during construction of the test section. Small vibratory rollers cannot compact the RCC to the same density and thickness as the primary rollers. When small rollers are used, total lift thickness of the RCC layer or lift shall be reduced to not over 6 inches



- uncompacted thickness to permit adequate compaction. Rollers shall have independent speed and vibration controls and shall be capable of a wide range of speed adjustments.
3. The tampers shall compact the RCC to the required density and shall be so demonstrated during construction of the test section. Tampers cannot compact the RCC to the same density and thickness as the primary rollers. When tampers are used, thickness of each RCC layer that is to be compacted shall be reduced to not more than 6 inches uncompacted thickness to assure adequate compaction.
- F. **Placing During Rain:** RCC shall not be placed during rainfall of 0.1 inch/hr or more. During periods of lesser rainfall, placement of RCC may continue if, in the opinion of the Owner, no damage to the RCC is occurring. Work shall commence only after excess free surface water and contaminated paste or RCC have been removed. The surface shall have gained sufficient strength (no less than 4 hours after the RCC placement was suspended) to prevent rutting, pumping, intermixing of rainwater with the RCC, or other damage to the RCC. When the RCC surface has been contaminated or damaged in any manner, the RCC surface shall be washed to break up and remove laitance and/or mud-like coatings from the surface. Any undercut coarse aggregate shall be removed. All waste shall be removed and disposed of in an approved manner.
- G. **Hot-Weather Placement:** In hot-weather placement the temperature of the RCC shall be controlled so that it does not exceed 75.0 degrees F when placed. Placement shall be suspended as soon as the RCC temperature exceeds 75 degrees F. Measures that can be taken to prevent temperatures exceeding 75 degrees F include, but are not limited to; 1.) chilling mixing water, 2.) sprinkling aggregate stockpiles, 3.) use of a canopy to shade the RCC placement areas, 4.) placing during nighttime and early morning hours, or 5.) restricting placements to cloudy days. Use of any of these systems shall not be reason for extension of completion dates specified in these specifications. In addition, to prevent potential damage to the RCC due to hot-weather related placement conditions, all RCC operation shall be suspended between June 15 and October 31, unless directed otherwise.

END OF SECTION 03 31 13 00a



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 03 31 13 00b - PAVEMENT JOINT SEALANTS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for pavement joint sealants. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Cold-applied joint sealants.
  - b. Cold-applied, jet-fuel-resistant joint sealants.
  - c. Hot-applied joint sealants.
  - d. Hot-applied, jet-fuel-resistant joint sealants.

#### C. Preconstruction Testing

1. Preconstruction Compatibility and Adhesion Testing: Submit to joint-sealant manufacturers, eight, Samples of materials that will contact or affect joint sealants. Use ASTM C 1087 **OR** manufacturer's standard test method, **as directed**, to determine whether priming and other specific joint-preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of joint sealants to joint substrates.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product indicated.
2. Samples: For each kind and color of joint sealant required.
3. Pavement-Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
  - a. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
  - b. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
  - c. Joint-sealant formulation.
  - d. Joint-sealant color.
4. Product certificates.
5. Product test reports.
6. Preconstruction compatibility and adhesion test reports.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### F. Project Conditions

1. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
  - a. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F (5 deg C).
  - b. When joint substrates are wet.
  - c. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
  - d. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.



## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Materials

1. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backing materials, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
2. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

### B. Cold-Applied Joint Sealants

1. Single-Component, Nonsag, Silicone Joint Sealant for Concrete: ASTM D 5893, Type NS.
2. Single-Component, Self-Leveling, Silicone Joint Sealant for Concrete: ASTM D 5893, Type SL.
3. Multicomponent, Pourable, Traffic-Grade, Urethane Joint Sealant for Concrete: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade P, Class 25, for Use T.

### C. Cold-Applied, Jet-Fuel-Resistant Joint Sealants

1. Jet-Fuel-Resistant, Single-Component, Pourable, Traffic-Grade, Modified-Urethane Joint Sealant for Concrete: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, for Use T.
2. Jet-Fuel-Resistant, Multicomponent, Pourable, Traffic-Grade, Modified-Urethane Joint Sealant for Concrete: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade P, Class 12-1/2, for Use T.
3. Jet-Fuel-Resistant, Multicomponent, Pourable, Traffic-Grade, Modified-Urethane Joint Sealant for Concrete: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade P, Class 25, for Use T.

### D. Hot-Applied Joint Sealants

1. Hot-Applied, Single-Component Joint Sealant for Concrete: ASTM D 3406.
2. Hot-Applied, Single-Component Joint Sealant for Concrete and Asphalt: ASTM D 6690, Types I, II, and III.

### E. Hot-Applied, Jet-Fuel-Resistant Joint Sealants

1. Hot-Applied, Jet-Fuel-Resistant, Single-Component Joint Sealant for Concrete: ASTM D 7116, Type I.
2. Hot-Applied, Jet-Fuel-Resistant, Single-Component Joint Sealant for Concrete and Tar Concrete: Single-component formulation complying with ASTM D 3581.

### F. Joint-Sealant Backer Materials

1. General: Provide joint-sealant backer materials that are nonstaining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications indicated by joint-sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
2. For use in joints such as contraction joints cut partially through paving material:
  - a. Round Backer Rods for Cold- and Hot-Applied Joint Sealants: ASTM D 5249, Type 1, of diameter and density required to control sealant depth and prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant.
  - b. Round Backer Rods for Cold-Applied Joint Sealants: ASTM D 5249, Type 3, of diameter and density required to control joint-sealant depth and prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant.
3. For use in joints such as expansion joints extending through the full depth of the pavement:
  - a. Backer Strips for Cold- and Hot-Applied Joint Sealants: ASTM D 5249; Type 2; of thickness and width required to control joint-sealant depth, prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant, and fill remainder of joint opening under sealant.

### G. Primers

1. Primers: Product recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.





### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Installation Of Joint Sealants
1. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements apply.
  2. Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants.
  3. Joint-Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
  4. Install joint-sealant backings of kind indicated to support joint sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
    - a. Do not leave gaps between ends of joint-sealant backings.
    - b. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear joint-sealant backings.
    - c. Remove absorbent joint-sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
  5. Install joint sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
    - a. Place joint sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
    - b. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
    - c. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
  6. Tooling of Nonsag Joint Sealants: Immediately after joint-sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to the following requirements to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint:
    - a. Remove excess joint sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
    - b. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
  7. Provide joint configuration to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Cleaning
1. Clean off excess joint sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses, by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.
- C. Protection
1. Protect joint sealants, during and after curing period, from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Final Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately and replace with joint sealant so installations in repaired areas are indistinguishable from the original work.

END OF SECTION 03 31 13 00b



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 03 31 13 00c - DECORATIVE CEMENT CONCRETE PAVEMENT

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for decorative cement concrete pavement. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section includes colored, stamped, stenciled, and stained concrete paving.

#### C. Definitions

1. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, and ground granulated blast-furnace slag.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
  - b. Design Mixtures for Credit ID 1.1: For each concrete mixture containing fly ash as a replacement for portland cement or other portland cement replacements. For each design mixture submitted, include an equivalent concrete mixture that does not contain portland cement replacements, to determine amount of portland cement replaced.
3. Samples: For each type of exposed color, pattern, or texture indicated.
4. Other Action Submittals:
  - a. Design Mixtures: For each decorative concrete paving mixture. Include alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
5. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer, ready-mix concrete manufacturer, and testing agency.
6. Material Certificates: For the following, from manufacturer:
  - a. Cementitious materials.
  - b. Steel reinforcement and reinforcement accessories.
  - c. Fiber reinforcement.
  - d. Admixtures.
  - e. Curing compounds.
  - f. Applied finish materials.
  - g. Bonding agent or epoxy adhesive.
  - h. Joint fillers.
7. Material Test Reports: For each of the following:
  - a. Aggregates. Include service-record data indicating absence of deleterious expansion of concrete due to alkali-aggregate reactivity.
8. Field quality-control reports.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer of decorative concrete paving systems.
2. Ready-Mix-Concrete Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.



- a. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities" (Quality Control Manual - Section 3, "Plant Certification Checklist").
3. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
  - a. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-1 or an equivalent certification program.
4. Source Limitations: Obtain decorative concrete paving products and each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from same manufacturer's plant, and obtain each aggregate from single source.
5. Concrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixtures.
6. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301 (ACI 301M) unless otherwise indicated.
7. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

F. Project Conditions

1. Traffic Control: Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activities.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Forms

1. Form Materials: Plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood, or other approved panel-type materials to provide full-depth, continuous, straight, and smooth exposed surfaces.
  - a. Use flexible or uniformly curved forms for curves of a radius of 100 feet (30.5 m) or less. Do not use notched and bent forms.
2. Forms for Textured Finish Concrete: Units of face design, size, arrangement, and configuration indicated. Provide solid backing and form supports to ensure stability of textured form liners.
3. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and that will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

B. Steel Reinforcement

1. Recycled Content: Provide steel reinforcement with an average recycled content of steel so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
2. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 1064/A 1064M, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.
3. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420); deformed.
4. Steel Bar Mats: ASTM A 184/A 184M; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed bars; assembled with clips.
5. Plain-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82/A 82M, as drawn.
6. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) plain-steel bars. Cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
7. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars, welded wire reinforcement, and dowels in place. Manufacture bar supports according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete of greater compressive strength than concrete specified, and as follows:
  - a. Equip wire bar supports with sand plates or horizontal runners where base material will not support chair legs.

C. Concrete Materials

1. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and source, throughout Project:



- a. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, gray **OR** white, **as directed**, portland cement Type I **OR** Type II **OR** Type I/II **OR** Type III **OR** Type V, **as directed**. Supplement with the following, **as directed**:
    - 1) Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C or F.
    - 2) Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.
  - b. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595, Type IS, portland blast-furnace slag **OR** Type IP, portland-pozzolan, **as directed**, cement.
  2. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, Class 4S **OR** Class 4M **OR** Class 1N, **as directed**, uniformly graded. Provide aggregates from a single source with documented service-record data of at least 10 years' satisfactory service in similar paving applications and service conditions using similar aggregates and cementitious materials, **as directed**.
    - a. Maximum Aggregate Size: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, nominal.
    - b. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
  3. Water: Potable and complying with ASTM C 94/C 94M.
  4. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
  5. Chemical Admixtures: Admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and to contain not more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious material.
    - a. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A, colored, **as directed**.
    - b. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D, colored, **as directed**.
    - c. Water-Reducing and Accelerating Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type E.
  6. Color Pigment: ASTM C 979, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures; color stable, free of carbon black, **as directed**, nonfading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis.
- D. Fiber Reinforcement
1. Synthetic Fiber: Monofilament or fibrillated polypropylene fibers engineered and designed for use in decorative concrete paving, complying with ASTM C 1116/C 1116M, Type III, 1/2 to 1-1/2 inches (13 to 38 mm) long.
- E. Surface Coloring Materials
1. Pigmented Mineral Dry-Shake Hardener: Factory-packaged, dry combination of portland cement, graded quartz aggregate, color pigments, and plasticizing admixture. Use color pigments that are finely ground, nonfading mineral oxides interground with cement.
  2. Pigmented Powder Release Agent: Factory-packaged, dry combination of surface-conditioning and dispersing agents interground with color pigments that facilitates release of stamp mats. Use color pigments that are finely ground, nonfading mineral oxides interground with cement.
  3. Liquid Release Agent: Manufacturer's standard, clear, evaporating formulation that facilitates release of stamp mats and texture rollers.
- F. Stamping Devices
1. Stamp Mats: Semirigid polyurethane mats with projecting textured and ridged underside capable of imprinting texture and joint patterns on plastic concrete.
  2. Stamp Tools: Open-grid, aluminum or rigid-plastic stamp tool capable of imprinting joint patterns on plastic concrete.
  3. Rollers: Manually controlled, water-filled aluminum rollers with projecting ridges on drum capable of imprinting texture and joint patterns on plastic concrete.
  4. Texture Rollers: Manually controlled, abrasion-resistant polyurethane rollers capable of imprinting texture on plastic concrete.
- G. Stencil Materials
1. Stencils: Manufacturer's standard, moisture-resistant paper or reusable plastic stencils, designed for use on plastic concrete.



- H. Stain Materials
1. Reactive Stain: Acidic-based stain with wetting agents and high-grade, UV-stable metallic salts that react with calcium hydroxide in cured concrete to produce permanent, variegated, or translucent color effects.
  2. Penetrating Stain: Water-based, acrylic latex, penetrating stain with colorfast pigments.
- I. Curing And Sealing Materials
1. Curing Paper: Nonstaining, waterproof paper, consisting of two layers of kraft paper cemented together and reinforced with fiber, and complying with ASTM C 171.
  2. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular, film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
  3. Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type I, Class B, manufactured for colored concrete.
    - a. For integrally colored concrete, curing compound shall be pigmented type approved by coloring admixture manufacturer.
    - b. For concrete indicated to be sealed, curing compound shall be compatible with sealer.
  4. Clear, Solvent-Borne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type I, Class A, manufactured for use with colored concrete.
  5. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type I, Class A, manufactured for use with colored concrete.
  6. Clear Acrylic Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, waterborne, nonyellowing and UV-resistant, membrane-forming, medium-gloss, acrylic copolymer emulsion solution, manufactured for colored concrete, containing not less than 15 percent solids by volume.
  7. Slip-Resistance-Enhancing Additive: Manufacturer's standard finely graded aggregate or polymer additive, designed to be added to clear acrylic sealer to enhance slip resistance of sealed paving surface.
- J. Related Materials
1. Joint Fillers: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork in preformed strips.
  2. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
  3. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881/C 881M, two-component epoxy resin capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces; of class suitable for application temperature, of grade complying with requirements, and of the following types:
    - a. Types I and II, non-load bearing **OR** Types IV and V, load bearing, **as directed**, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.
  4. Polyethylene Film: ASTM D 4397, 1 mil (0.025 mm) thick, clear.
- K. Concrete Mixtures
1. Prepare design mixtures, proportioned according to ACI 301 (ACI 301M), for each type and strength of normal-weight concrete, and as determined by either laboratory trial mixtures or field experience.
    - a. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed concrete design mixtures for the trial batch method.
  2. Proportion mixtures to provide normal-weight concrete with the following properties:
    - a. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 4500 psi (31 MPa) **OR** 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) **OR** 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) **OR** 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), **as directed**.
    - b. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio at Point of Placement: 0.45 **OR** 0.50, **as directed**.
    - c. Slump Limit: 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 5 inches (125 mm), **as directed**, plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
  3. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in normal-weight concrete at point of placement having an air content as follows:
    - a. Air Content: 5-1/2 **OR** 4-1/2 **OR** 2-1/2, **as directed**, percent plus or minus 1.5 percent for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.



- b. Air Content: 6 **OR** 4-1/2 **OR** 3, **as directed**, percent plus or minus 1.5 percent for 1-inch (25-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
- c. Air Content: 6 **OR** 5 **OR** 3-1/2, **as directed**, percent plus or minus 1.5 percent for 3/4-inch (19-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
4. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 **OR** 0.30, **as directed**, percent by weight of cement.
5. Chemical Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Use water-reducing admixture **OR** water-reducing and retarding admixture **OR** water-reducing and accelerating admixture, **as directed**, in concrete as required for placement and workability.
  - b. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
6. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage by weight of cementitious materials other than portland cement according to ACI 301 (ACI 301M) requirements for concrete exposed to deicing chemicals **OR** as follows, **as directed**:
  - a. Fly Ash or Pozzolan: 25 percent.
  - b. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent.
  - c. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolan, and Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent, with fly ash or pozzolan not exceeding 25 percent.
7. Synthetic Fiber: Uniformly disperse in concrete mixture at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than 1.0 lb/cu. yd. (0.60 kg/cu. m).
8. Color Pigment: Add color pigment to concrete mixture according to manufacturer's written instructions and to result in hardened concrete color consistent with approved mockup.

#### L. Concrete Mixing

1. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M and ASTM C 1116/C 1116M, **as directed**. Furnish batch certificates for each batch discharged and used in the Work.
  - a. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F (30 and 32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F (32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.
2. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.
  - a. For concrete batches of 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m) or smaller, continue mixing at least 1-1/2 minutes, but not more than 5 minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.
  - b. For concrete batches larger than 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m), increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m).
  - c. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mixture type, mixing time, quantity, and amount of water added.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

1. Examine exposed subgrades and subbase surfaces for compliance with requirements for dimensional, grading, and elevation tolerances.
2. Proof-roll prepared subbase surface below decorative concrete paving to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding.
  - a. Completely proof-roll subbase in one direction and repeat in perpendicular direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph (5 km/h).
  - b. Proof-roll with a pneumatic-tired and loaded, 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons (13.6 tonnes).
  - c. Correct subbase with soft spots and areas of pumping or rutting exceeding depth of 1/2 inch (13 mm) according to requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".



3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- B. Preparation
1. Remove loose material from compacted subbase surface immediately before placing concrete.
  2. Protect adjacent construction from discoloration and spillage during application of color hardeners, release agents, stains, curing compounds, and sealers.
- C. Edge Forms And Screed Construction
1. Set, brace, and secure edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed guides to required lines, grades, and elevations. Install forms to allow continuous progress of work and so forms can remain in place at least 24 hours after concrete placement.
  2. Clean forms after each use and coat with form-release agent to ensure separation from concrete without damage.
- D. Steel Reinforcement
1. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
  2. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, or other bond-reducing materials.
  3. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position during concrete placement. Maintain minimum cover to reinforcement.
  4. Install welded wire reinforcement in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh, and lace splices with wire. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.
  5. Install fabricated bar mats in lengths as long as practicable. Handle units to keep them flat and free of distortions. Straighten bends, kinks, and other irregularities, or replace units as required before placement. Set mats for a minimum 2-inch (50-mm) overlap to adjacent mats.
- E. Joints
1. General: Form construction, isolation, and contraction joints and tool edges true to line, with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete. Construct transverse joints at right angles to centerline unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. When joining existing paving, place transverse joints to align with previously placed joints unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Construction Joints: Set construction joints at side and end terminations of paving and at locations where paving operations are stopped for more than one-half hour unless paving terminates at isolation joints.
    - a. Continue steel reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of paving strips unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Butt Joints: Use bonding agent **OR** epoxy bonding adhesive, **as directed**, at joint locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
    - c. Keyed Joints: Provide preformed keyway-section forms or bulkhead forms with keys unless otherwise indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) into concrete.
    - d. Dowelled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or coat with asphalt one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
  3. Isolation Joints: Form isolation joints of preformed joint-filler strips abutting concrete curbs, catch basins, manholes, inlets, structures, walks, other fixed objects, and where indicated.
    - a. Locate expansion joints at intervals of 50 feet (15.25 m) unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Extend joint fillers full width and depth of joint.
    - c. Terminate joint filler not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) or more than 1 inch (25 mm) below finished surface if joint sealant is indicated.
    - d. Place top of joint filler flush with finished concrete surface if joint sealant is not indicated.
    - e. Furnish joint fillers in one-piece lengths. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip joint-filler sections together.





- f. During concrete placement, protect top edge of joint filler with metal, plastic, or other temporary preformed cap. Remove protective cap after concrete has been placed on both sides of joint.
4. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of the concrete thickness, as follows, to match jointing of existing adjacent decorative concrete paving, **as directed**:
  - a. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint with grooving tool to a 1/4-inch (6-mm) **OR** 3/8-inch (10-mm), **as directed**, radius. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate grooving-tool marks on concrete surfaces.
    - 1) Tolerance: Ensure that grooved joints are within 3 inches (75 mm) either way from centers of dowels.
  - b. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- (3-mm-) wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before developing random contraction cracks.
    - 1) Tolerance: Ensure that sawed joints are within 3 inches (75 mm) in both directions from center of dowels.
  - c. Doweled Contraction Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or coat with asphalt one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
5. Edging: After initial floating, tool edges of paving, gutters, curbs, and joints in concrete with an edging tool to a 1/4-inch (6-mm) **OR** 3/8-inch (10-mm), **as directed**, radius. Repeat tooling of edges after applying surface finishes. Eliminate edging tool marks on concrete surfaces.

#### F. Concrete Placement

1. Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation, steel reinforcement, and items to be embedded or cast-in.
2. Remove snow, ice, or frost from subbase surface and steel reinforcement before placing concrete. Do not place concrete on frozen surfaces.
3. Moisten subbase to provide a uniform dampened condition at time concrete is placed. Do not place concrete around manholes or other structures until they are at required finish elevation and alignment.
4. Comply with ACI 301 (ACI 301M) requirements for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete.
5. Do not add water to concrete during delivery or at Project site. Do not add water to fresh concrete after testing.
6. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints. Do not push or drag concrete into place or use vibrators to move concrete into place.
7. Consolidate concrete according to ACI 301 (ACI 301M) by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand spading, rodding, or tamping.
  - a. Consolidate concrete along face of forms and adjacent to transverse joints with an internal vibrator. Keep vibrator away from joint assemblies, reinforcement, or side forms. Use only square-faced shovels for hand spreading and consolidation. Consolidate with care to prevent dislocating reinforcement, dowels, and joint devices.
8. Screed paving surface with a straightedge and strike off.
9. Commence initial floating using bull floats or darbies to impart an open-textured and uniform surface plane before excess moisture or bleed water appears on the surface. Do not further disturb concrete surfaces before beginning finishing operations or spreading surface treatments.
10. Cold-Weather Placement: Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing, or low temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 and the following:
  - a. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40 deg F (4.4 deg C), uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture



- temperature of not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) and not more than 80 deg F (27 deg C) at point of placement.
- b. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
  - c. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in design mixtures.
11. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 (ACI 301M) and as follows when hot-weather conditions exist:
- a. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F (32 deg C) at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated in total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
  - b. Cover steel reinforcement with water-soaked burlap so steel temperature will not exceed ambient air temperature immediately before embedding in concrete.
  - c. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade moisture uniform without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.
- G. Float Finishing
1. General: Do not add water to concrete surfaces during finishing operations.
  2. Float Finish: Begin the second floating operation when bleed-water sheen has disappeared and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operations. Float surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Finish surfaces to true planes. Cut down high spots and fill low spots. Refloat surface immediately to uniform granular texture.
- H. Integrally Colored Concrete Finish
1. Integrally Colored Concrete Finish: After final floating, apply the following finish:
    - a. Burlap Finish: Drag a seamless strip of damp burlap across float-finished concrete, perpendicular to line of traffic, to provide a uniform, gritty texture.
    - b. Medium-to-Fine-Textured Broom Finish: Draw a soft-bristle broom across float-finished concrete surface, perpendicular to line of traffic, to provide a uniform, fine-line texture.
    - c. Medium-to-Coarse-Textured Broom Finish: Provide a coarse finish by striating float-finished concrete surface 1/16 to 1/8 inch (1.6 to 3 mm) deep with a stiff-bristled broom, perpendicular to line of traffic.
- I. Stenciling
1. Cut stencils to slab width and lay on wet concrete. Overlap "mortar joint" on trailing edge of each section of stencil onto leading "mortar joint" of previous section.
  2. Trim stencils to fit slab and adjacent patterns.
  3. Slightly embed stencil into concrete by rolling with stencil roller.
  4. Apply pigmented mineral dry-shake hardener materials to concrete surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  5. Stencil Rolling:
    - a. Apply pigmented powder release agent **OR** liquid release agent, **as directed**, according to manufacturer's written instructions prior to applying texture roller to surface of concrete.
    - b. Perform rolling operation to produce required texture on concrete surface.
  6. Remove stencils when concrete has sufficiently cured to bear weight. Do not leave stencils in concrete overnight.
  7. Remove debris with mechanical blower prior to application of curing compound. If release agent is applied, delay removal of debris for 24 hours, then flood area with low-pressure water hose, wetting release agent, and follow by cleaning surface with pressure washer.
- J. Pigmented Mineral Dry-Shake Hardener
1. Pigmented Mineral Dry-Shake Hardener Finish: After initial floating, apply dry-shake materials to paving surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:



- a. Uniformly apply dry-shake hardener at a rate of 100 lb/100 sq. ft. (49 kg/10 sq. m) unless greater amount is recommended by manufacturer to match paving color required.
- b. Uniformly distribute approximately two-thirds of dry-shake hardener over the concrete surface with mechanical spreader; allow hardener to absorb moisture and embed it by power floating. Follow power floating with a second application of pigmented mineral dry-shake hardener, uniformly distributing remainder of material at right angles to first application to ensure uniform color, and embed hardener by final power floating.
- c. After final power floating, apply the following finish:
  - 1) Burlap Finish: Drag a seamless strip of damp burlap across float-finished concrete, perpendicular to line of traffic, to provide a uniform, gritty texture.
  - 2) Medium-to-Fine-Textured Broom Finish: Draw a soft bristle broom across float-finished concrete surface, perpendicular to line of traffic, to provide a uniform, fine-line texture.
  - 3) Medium-to-Coarse-Textured Broom Finish: Provide a coarse finish by striating float-finished concrete surface 1/16 to 1/8 inch (1.6 to 3 mm) deep with a stiff-bristled broom, perpendicular to line of traffic.
2. Pigmented Powder Release Agent: Uniformly distribute onto dry-shake-hardened and still-plastic concrete at a rate of 3 to 4 lb/100 sq. ft. (1.5 to 2 kg/10 sq. m).
3. Liquid Release Agent: Uniformly mist surface of dry-shake-hardened and still-plastic concrete at a rate of 5 gal/1000 sq. ft. (0.2 L/sq. m).

#### K. Stamping

1. Mat Stamping: After floating and while concrete is plastic, apply mat-stamped finish.
  - a. Pigmented Powder Release Agent: Uniformly distribute onto concrete at a rate of 3 to 4 lb/100 sq. ft. (1.5 to 2 kg/10 sq. m).
  - b. Liquid Release Agent: Apply liquid release agent to the concrete surface and the stamp mat. Uniformly mist surface of concrete at a rate of 5 gal/1000 sq. ft. (0.2 L/sq. m).
  - c. After application of release agent, accurately align and place stamp mats in sequence.
  - d. Uniformly load mats and press into concrete to produce required imprint pattern and depth of imprint on concrete surface. Gently remove stamp mats. Hand stamp edges and surfaces unable to be imprinted by stamp mats.
  - e. Remove residual release agent according to manufacturer's written instructions, but no fewer than three days after stamping concrete. High-pressure-wash surface and joint patterns, taking care not to damage stamped concrete. Control, collect, and legally dispose of runoff.
2. Tool Stamping: After floating and while concrete is plastic, apply tool-stamped finish.
  - a. Cover surface with polyethylene film, stretch taut to remove wrinkles, lap sides and ends 3 inches (75 mm), and secure to edge forms. Lightly broom surface to remove air bubbles.
  - b. Accurately align and place stamp tools in sequence and tamp into concrete to produce required imprint pattern and depth of imprint on concrete surface. Gently remove stamp tools. Hand stamp edges and surfaces unable to be imprinted by stamp tools.
  - c. Carefully remove polyethylene film immediately after tool stamping.
3. Roller Stamping: After floating and while concrete is plastic, apply roller-stamped finish.
  - a. Cover surface with polyethylene film, stretch taut to remove wrinkles, lap sides and ends 3 inches (75 mm), and secure to edge forms. Lightly broom surface to remove air bubbles.
  - b. Accurately align roller and perform rolling operation to produce required imprint pattern and depth of imprint on concrete surface. Hand stamp surfaces inaccessible to roller.
  - c. Carefully remove polyethylene film immediately after roller stamping.

#### L. Concrete Protection And Curing

1. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
2. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection.
3. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h (1 kg/sq. m x h) before and during



finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete but before float finishing.

4. Begin curing after finishing concrete but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface.
5. Curing Compound: Apply curing compound immediately after final finishing. Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas that have been subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after application. Maintain continuity of coating, and repair damage during curing period.
  - a. Cure integrally colored concrete with a pigmented, **as directed**, curing compound.
  - b. Cure concrete finished with pigmented mineral dry-shake hardener with a pigmented, **as directed**, curing compound.
6. Curing and Sealing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Repeat process 24 hours later and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
7. Curing Paper: Cure with unwrinkled curing paper in pieces large enough to cover the entire width and edges of slab. Do not lap sheets. Fold curing paper down over paving edges and secure with continuous banks of earth to prevent displacement or billowing due to wind. Immediately repair holes or tears in paper.

#### M. Staining

1. Newly placed concrete paving shall be at least 14 **OR** 30, **as directed**, days old before staining.
2. Prepare surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
  - a. Clean concrete thoroughly by scraping, applying solvents or stripping agents, sweeping and pressure washing, or scrubbing with a rotary floor machine and detergents recommended by stain manufacturer. Rinse until water is clear and allow surface to dry.
    - 1) Do not use acidic solutions to clean surfaces.
  - b. Test surfaces with droplets of water. If water beads and does not penetrate surface, or penetrates only in some areas, profile surfaces by acid etching, grinding, sanding, or abrasive blasting. Retest and continue profiling surface until water droplets immediately darken and uniformly penetrate concrete surfaces.
  - c. Apply acidic solution to dampened concrete surfaces, scrubbing with uncolored, acid-resistant nylon-bristle brushes until bubbling stops and concrete surface has texture of 120-grit sandpaper. Do not allow solution to dry on concrete surfaces. Rinse until water is clear. Control, collect, and legally dispose of runoff.
  - d. Neutralize concrete surfaces and rinse until water is clear. Test surface for residue with clean white cloth. Test surface according to ASTM F 710 to ensure pH is between 7 and 8.
3. Scoring: Score decorative jointing in paving surfaces 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) deep with diamond blades to match pattern indicated. Rinse until water is clear. Score after **OR** before, **as directed**, staining.
  - a. Joint Width: 3/8 inch (10 mm).
4. Allow paving surface to dry before applying stain. Verify readiness of paving to receive stain according to ASTM D 4263 by tightly taping 18-by-18-inch (450-by-450-mm), 4-mil- (0.1-mm-) thick polyethylene sheet to a representative area of paving surface. Apply stain only if no evidence of moisture has accumulated under sheet after 16 hours.
5. Reactive Stain: Apply reactive stain to paving surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
  - a. Apply stain by uncolored bristle brush, roller, or high-volume, low-pressure sprayer and immediately scrub into concrete surface with uncolored, acid-resistant nylon-bristle brushes in continuous, circular motion. Do not spread stain after fizzing stops. Allow to dry four hours and repeat application of stain in sufficient quantity to obtain color consistent with approved mockup.
  - b. Remove stain residue after four hours by wet scrubbing with commercial-grade detergent recommended by stain manufacturer. Rinse until water is clear. Control, collect, and legally dispose of runoff.



6. Penetrating Stain: Apply penetrating stain to paving surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
  - a. Apply first coat of stain to dry, clean surfaces by airless sprayer or by high-volume, low-pressure sprayer.
  - b. Allow to dry four hours and repeat application of stain in sufficient quantity to obtain color consistent with approved mockup.
  - c. Rinse until water is clear. Control, collect, and legally dispose of runoff.

N. Sealer

1. Clear Acrylic Sealer: Apply uniformly in two coats in continuous operations according to manufacturer's written instructions. Allow first coat to dry before applying second coat, at 90 degrees to the direction of the first coat using same application methods and rates.
  - a. Begin sealing dry surface no sooner than 14 days after concrete placement.
  - b. Allow stained concrete surfaces to dry before applying sealer.
  - c. Thoroughly mix slip-resistance-enhancing additive into sealer before applying sealer according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stir sealer occasionally during application to maintain even distribution of additive.

O. Paving Tolerances

1. Comply with tolerances in ACI 117 and as follows:
  - a. Elevation: 3/4 inch (19 mm).
  - b. Thickness: Plus 3/8 inch (10 mm), minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - c. Surface: Gap below 10-foot- (3-m-) long, unlevelled straightedge not to exceed 1/2 inch (13 mm).
  - d. Lateral Alignment and Spacing of Dowels: 1 inch (25 mm).
  - e. Vertical Alignment of Dowels: 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - f. Alignment of Dowel-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Paving Edge: 1/4 inch per 12 inches (6 mm per 300 mm) of dowel.
  - g. Joint Spacing: 3 inches (75 mm).
  - h. Contraction Joint Depth: Plus 1/4 inch (6 mm), no minus.
  - i. Joint Width: Plus 1/8 inch (3 mm), no minus.

P. Field Quality Control

1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
2. Testing Services: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:
  - a. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. (76 cu. m) OR 5000 sq. ft. (465 sq. m), **as directed**, or fraction thereof of each concrete mixture placed each day.
    - 1) When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
  - b. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
  - c. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
  - d. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and below and when it is 80 deg F (27 deg C) and above, and one test for each composite sample.
  - e. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M; cast and laboratory cure one set of three standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
  - f. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test one specimen at seven days and two specimens at 28 days.
    - 1) A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at 28 days.



3. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi (3.4 MPa).
4. Test results shall be reported in writing to the Owner, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
5. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by the Owner but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
6. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by the Owner.
7. Decorative concrete paving will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
8. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
9. Prepare test and inspection reports.

Q. Repairs And Protection

1. Remove and replace decorative concrete paving that is broken or damaged or does not comply with requirements in this Section. Remove work in complete sections from joint to joint unless otherwise approved by the Owner.
2. Detailing: Grind concrete "squeeze" left from tool placement. Color ground areas with slurry of color hardener mixed with water and bonding agent. Remove excess release agent with high-velocity blower.
3. Protect decorative concrete paving from damage. Exclude traffic from paving for at least 14 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain paving as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials as they occur.
4. Maintain decorative concrete paving free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep paving not more than two days before date scheduled for Final Completion inspections.

END OF SECTION 03 31 13 00c

**SECTION 03 31 13 00d - PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE OVERLAYS**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of Portland cement concrete overlays. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

## A. Coarse Aggregate:

1. Composition: Coarse aggregate shall consist of gravel, crushed gravel, crushed stone, a combination thereof, or crushed blast-furnace slag.
2. Particle Shape: Particles of the coarse aggregate shall be generally spherical or cubical in shape. The quantity of flat and elongated particles in any size group shall not exceed 20 percent by weight as determined by ASTM D 3398.
3. Gradation: The maximum size of coarse aggregate shall be the lesser of 1/4 of the pavement thickness or 2 inches nominal size. Gradation limits are specified in ASTM C 136.
4. Deleterious Substances: The amount of deleterious substances in the coarse aggregate shall not exceed the limits, defined in ASTM C 117 and C 123.

- B. Fine Aggregate shall consist of natural sand, manufactured sand, or a combination of natural and manufactured sand and shall be composed of clean, hard, durable particles. Particles of the fine aggregate shall be generally spherical or cubical in shape. Gradation limits are specified in ASTM C 136.

- C. Portland Cement shall be Type I in compliance with ASTM C 150.

- D. Air-Entraining Admixture shall be in compliance with ASTM C 260. Concrete mixtures shall have air content by volume of concrete of 4 to 7 percent based on measurements made immediately after discharge from the mixer.

- E. Concrete Mixture shall have a nominal slump of 2 inches with a maximum of 3 inches and a 28-day flexural strength of not less than 650 psi.

- F. Joint and Crack Sealing Materials: Joint filler, joint sealant, and crack sealant shall comply with the following:

1. Expansion Joint Fillers shall comply with ASTM D 1751 or D 1752 or shall be resin impregnated fiberboard in compliance with the physical requirements of ASTM D 1752.
2. Type I Sealant shall comply with Fed. Spec. SS-S-200, except that sealant may be furnished as a ready-mixed liquid.
3. Type II Sealant shall comply with Fed. Spec. SS-S-1401.
4. Type V Sealant shall comply with COE CRD-C-527 and may be either a single- or multiple-component material.

- G. Epoxy-Resin Materials: Materials used in epoxy-resin grout, mortar, and concrete shall comply with the following:

1. Epoxy-Resin Grout shall be a two-compound material formulated to comply with ASTM C 881.



2. Epoxy-Resin Concrete shall be composed of epoxy-resin binder and uniformly graded aggregate in compliance with ASTM C 144. The maximum size of aggregate shall be 3/8 or 1/2 inch.

H. Dowels shall be plain steel bars complying with ASTM A 499.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Preparation of Existing Surface: The Contractor shall raise and reset all structures such as manhole frames, valve boxes, drainage structures, etc. to meet the required grade. Bonding course shall be applied to the area prepared to receive overlay and shall be of epoxy-resin grout and Portland cement mortar.
- B. Concrete Placement: Concrete shall be placed within 45 minutes from the time all ingredients are charged into the mixing drum.
- C. Vibration: In the final phases of placing, surface vibrating equipment shall be used, and the duration of vibration shall not exceed 20 seconds.
- D. Joints shall be saw cut and in alignment with underlying existing joints.
- E. Finishing:
  1. Transverse Finishing: Immediately after placement, concrete shall be accurately struck off and screeded to such elevation that when consolidated and finished, the surface of the pavement will be free from porous places and will be at the required grade. The finishing machine shall make at least two trips over each area of pavement to compact the concrete and produce a surface of uniform texture, true to grade.
  2. Longitudinal Floating: After completion of the transverse finishing, the longitudinal mechanical float shall be operated to smooth and finish the pavement to grade.
  3. Hand Finishing shall be with an approved strike and tamping template and a longitudinal float.
  4. Straightedge Finishing: After the longitudinal floating is completed but while the concrete is still plastic, minor irregularities and score marks in the pavement surface shall be eliminated by means of long-handled wood floats and straightedges. The final finish shall be made with the straightedges, which shall be used to float the entire pavement surface.
  5. Burlap Drag Finishing: When most of the water glaze or sheen has disappeared and before the concrete becomes nonplastic, drag the surface of the pavement in the direction of the concrete placement with a multiple-ply burlap drag.
  6. Edging: After other finishing has been completed, the edges of slabs along the forms and at the joints shall be carefully finished with an edging tool to form a smooth rounded surface of the required radius.
- F. Concrete Curing and Protection:
  1. Concrete Curing Methods shall consist of mat method, impervious sheeting method, or liquid membrane curing method.
  2. Concrete Protection: Protect repaired areas against damage prior to final acceptance. Traffic shall be excluded from repaired areas.

END OF SECTION 03 31 13 00d



**SECTION 03 31 13 00e - STEEL REINFORCED PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE OVERLAYS**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of steel reinforced Portland cement concrete overlays. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

## A. Coarse Aggregate:

1. Composition: Coarse aggregate shall consist of gravel, crushed gravel, crushed stone, a combination thereof, or crushed blast-furnace slag.
2. Particle Shape: Particles of the coarse aggregate shall be generally spherical or cubical in shape. The quantity of flat and elongated particles in any size group shall not exceed 20 percent by weight as determined by ASTM D 3398.
3. Gradation: The maximum size of coarse aggregate shall be the lesser of 1/4 of the pavement thickness or 2 inches nominal size. Gradation limits are specified in ASTM C 136.
4. Deleterious Substances: The amount of deleterious substances in the coarse aggregate shall not exceed the limits, defined in ASTM C 117 and C 123.

- B. Fine Aggregate shall consist of natural sand, manufactured sand, or a combination of natural and manufactured sand and shall be composed of clean, hard, durable particles. Particles of the fine aggregate shall be generally spherical or cubical in shape. Gradation limits are specified in ASTM C 136.

- C. Portland Cement shall be Type I in compliance with ASTM C 150.

- D. Air-Entraining Admixture shall be in compliance with ASTM C 260. Concrete mixtures shall have air content by volume of concrete of 4 to 7 percent based on measurements made immediately after discharge from the mixer.

- E. Concrete Mixture shall have a nominal slump of 2 inches with a maximum of 3 inches and a 28-day flexural strength of not less than 650 psi.

- F. Joint and Crack Sealing Materials: Joint filler, joint sealant, and crack sealant shall comply with the following:

1. Expansion Joint Fillers shall comply with ASTM D 1751 or D 1752 or shall be resin impregnated fiberboard in compliance with the physical requirements of ASTM D 1752.
2. Type I Sealant shall comply with Fed. Spec. SS-S-200, except that sealant may be furnished as a ready-mixed liquid.
3. Type II Sealant shall comply with Fed. Spec. SS-S-1401.
4. Type V Sealant shall comply with COE CRD-C-527 and may be either a single- or multiple-component material.

- G. Epoxy-Resin Materials: Materials used in epoxy-resin grout, mortar, and concrete shall comply with the following:



1. Epoxy-Resin Grout shall be a two-compound material formulated to comply with ASTM C 881.
2. Epoxy-Resin Concrete shall be composed of epoxy-resin binder and uniformly graded aggregate in compliance with ASTM C 144. The maximum size of aggregate shall be 3/8 or 1/2 inch.

H. Steel Reinforcement: All reinforcement shall be free from loose flaky rust, loose scale, oil, grease, mud, or other coatings that might reduce bond. Bar mats shall comply with ASTM A 184. Welded steel wire fabric shall comply with ASTM A 1064. Tie bars shall be deformed bars in compliance with ASTM A 615, A 616, or A 617. Dowels shall be plain steel bars complying with ASTM A 499.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation of Existing Surface: The Contractor shall raise and reset all structures such as manhole frames, valve boxes, drainage structures, etc. to meet the required grade. Bonding course shall be applied to the area prepared to receive overlay and shall be of epoxy-resin grout and Portland cement mortar.

B. Reinforcement Steel shall be installed by the strike-off method wherein the concrete is deposited on the subgrade and struck to the indicated elevation of the steel. The reinforcement shall be laid upon the prestruck surface.

C. Concrete Placement: Concrete shall be placed within 45 minutes from the time all ingredients are charged into the mixing drum.

D. Vibration: In the final phases of placing, surface vibrating equipment shall be used, and the duration of vibration shall not exceed 20 seconds.

E. Joints shall be saw cut and in alignment with underlying existing joints.

F. Finishing:

1. Transverse Finishing: Immediately after placement, concrete shall be accurately struck off and screeded to such elevation that when consolidated and finished, the surface of the pavement will be free from porous places and will be at the required grade. The finishing machine shall make at least two trips over each area of pavement to compact the concrete and produce a surface of uniform texture, true to grade.
2. Longitudinal Floating: After completion of the transverse finishing, the longitudinal mechanical float shall be operated to smooth and finish the pavement to grade.
3. Hand Finishing shall be with an approved strike and tamping template and a longitudinal float.
4. Straightedge Finishing: After the longitudinal floating is completed but while the concrete is still plastic, minor irregularities and score marks in the pavement surface shall be eliminated by means of long-handled wood floats and straightedges. The final finish shall be made with the straightedges, which shall be used to float the entire pavement surface.
5. Burlap Drag Finishing: When most of the water glaze or sheen has disappeared and before the concrete becomes nonplastic, drag the surface of the pavement in the direction of the concrete placement with a multiple-ply burlap drag.
6. Edging: After other finishing has been completed, the edges of slabs along the forms and at the joints shall be carefully finished with an edging tool to form a smooth rounded surface of the required radius.

G. Concrete Curing and Protection:

1. Concrete Curing Methods shall consist of mat method, impervious sheeting method, or liquid membrane curing method.
2. Concrete Protection: Protect repaired areas against damage prior to final acceptance. Traffic shall be excluded from repaired areas.



---

END OF SECTION 03 31 13 00e



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 03 31 13 00f - FIBER REINFORCED PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE OVERLAYS**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of fiber reinforced Portland cement concrete overlays. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

## A. Coarse Aggregate:

1. Composition: Coarse aggregate shall consist of gravel, crushed gravel, crushed stone, a combination thereof, or crushed blast-furnace slag.
2. Particle Shape: Particles of the coarse aggregate shall be generally spherical or cubical in shape. The quantity of flat and elongated particles in any size group shall not exceed 20 percent by weight as determined by ASTM D 3398.
3. Gradation: The maximum size of coarse aggregate shall be the lesser of 1/4 of the pavement thickness or 2 inches nominal size. Gradation limits are specified in ASTM C 136.
4. Deleterious Substances: The amount of deleterious substances in the coarse aggregate shall not exceed the limits, defined in ASTM C 117 and C 123.

- B. Fine Aggregate shall consist of natural sand, manufactured sand, or a combination of natural and manufactured sand and shall be composed of clean, hard, durable particles. Particles of the fine aggregate shall be generally spherical or cubical in shape. Gradation limits are specified in ASTM C 136.

- C. Portland Cement shall be Type I in compliance with ASTM C 150.

- D. Air-Entraining Admixture shall be in compliance with ASTM C 260. Concrete mixtures shall have air content by volume of concrete of 4 to 7 percent based on measurements made immediately after discharge from the mixer.

- E. Concrete Mixture shall have a nominal slump of 2 inches with a maximum of 3 inches and a 28-day flexural strength of not less than 650 psi.

- F. Joint and Crack Sealing Materials: Joint filler, joint sealant, and crack sealant shall comply with the following:

1. Expansion Joint Fillers shall comply with ASTM D 1751 or D 1752 or shall be resin impregnated fiberboard in compliance with the physical requirements of ASTM D 1752.
2. Type I Sealant shall comply with Fed. Spec. SS-S-200, except that sealant may be furnished as a ready-mixed liquid.
3. Type II Sealant shall comply with Fed. Spec. SS-S-1401.
4. Type V Sealant shall comply with COE CRD-C-527 and may be either a single- or multiple-component material.

- G. Epoxy-Resin Materials: Materials used in epoxy-resin grout, mortar, and concrete shall comply with the following:



1. Epoxy-Resin Grout shall be a two-compound material formulated to comply with ASTM C 881.
2. Epoxy-Resin Concrete shall be composed of epoxy-resin binder and uniformly graded aggregate in compliance with ASTM C 144. The maximum size of aggregate shall be 3/8 or 1/2 inch.

H. Steel Fibers: The fibers shall be made from low carbon steel. The following sizes of steel are acceptable:

1. 0.010-inch x 0.022-inch flat steel fiber,
2. 0.010-inch x 0.50-inch round steel fiber,
3. 0.016-inch x 1.0-inch round steel fiber,
4. 0.016-inch x 0.75-inch round steel fiber with 0.010-inch x 0.020-inch flat section along the length of the fiber
5. 2.5-inch x 0.025-inch round steel fibers.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation of Existing Surface: The Contractor shall raise and reset all structures such as manhole frames, valve boxes, drainage structures, etc. to meet the required grade. Bonding course shall be applied to the area prepared to receive overlay and shall be of epoxy-resin grout and Portland cement mortar.

B. Reinforcement Steel shall be installed by the strike-off method wherein the concrete is deposited on the subgrade and struck to the indicated elevation of the steel. The reinforcement shall be laid upon the prestruck surface.

C. Concrete Placement: Concrete shall be placed within 45 minutes from the time all ingredients are charged into the mixing drum.

D. Vibration: In the final phases of placing, surface vibrating equipment shall be used, and the duration of vibration shall not exceed 20 seconds.

E. Joints shall be saw cut and in alignment with underlying existing joints.

F. Finishing:

1. Transverse Finishing: Immediately after placement, concrete shall be accurately struck off and screeded to such elevation that when consolidated and finished, the surface of the pavement will be free from porous places and will be at the required grade. The finishing machine shall make at least two trips over each area of pavement to compact the concrete and produce a surface of uniform texture, true to grade.
2. Longitudinal Floating: After completion of the transverse finishing, the longitudinal mechanical float shall be operated to smooth and finish the pavement to grade.
3. Hand Finishing shall be with an approved strike and tamping template and a longitudinal float.
4. Straightedge Finishing: After the longitudinal floating is completed but while the concrete is still plastic, minor irregularities and score marks in the pavement surface shall be eliminated by means of long-handled wood floats and straightedges. The final finish shall be made with the straightedges, which shall be used to float the entire pavement surface.
5. Broom Finishing: Burlap drag finishing will not be allowed as this brings the steel fibers to the surface. Finishing shall be accomplished using a stiff broom.
6. Edging: After other finishing has been completed, the edges of slabs along the forms and at the joints shall be carefully finished with an edging tool to form a smooth rounded surface of the required radius.

G. Concrete Curing and Protection:

1. Concrete Curing Methods shall consist of mat method, impervious sheeting method, or liquid membrane curing method.



- 
2. Concrete Protection: Protect repaired areas against damage prior to final acceptance. Traffic shall be excluded from repaired areas.

END OF SECTION 03 31 13 00f



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
03 31 13 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 35 13 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 35 16 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 35 19 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 03 35 23 00 - EXPOSED AGGREGATE SURFACE CONCRETE WALLS****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of exposed aggregate surface concrete walls. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Submittals**

1. Submit product data and manufacturer's application instruction.
2. Shop drawings shall be submitted for approval.

**1.2 PRODUCTS****A. Concrete Materials and Mixing**

1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type 1 or 1A.
  - a. Shrinkage-Compensating Cement: Portland cement containing a stable expansive chemical compound such as calcium sulfoaluminate.
  - b. Aggregate: ASTM C 33; aggregate for exposed aggregate concrete shall match existing, if appropriate.
  - c. Admixtures: Submit manufacturer's literature for all admixtures proposed for the work.
  - d. Curing Compounds: ASTM C 309, Type 1.
  - e. Epoxy Bonding Agent: Sika or approved equal.

**B. Concrete Formwork, Reinforcement, and Accessories**

1. Formwork: Plywood form and liners shall be minimum grade B-B High Density Concrete Form Overlay, Class I, complying with ANSI A199.1.
2. Reinforcement:
  - a. Reinforcement Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 40 or Grade 60.
  - b. Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 1064. Where welded wire fabric is needed, use No. 6 gauge wire at 6-inch spacing in each direction.
  - c. Accessories for proper installation of reinforcement shall comply with CRSI "Manual of Standard Practice for Reinforced Concrete Construction."
  - d. Reinforcement fabrication shall comply with ACI 318 and ACI 315.

**C. Curing and Climatic Conditions**

1. Comply with ACI 306 and ACI 305 for protecting and curing concrete in cold and hot weather.
2. Immediately after finishing, begin curing flatwork by covering with constantly saturated moisture retaining fabrics, impervious sheeting, or membrane curing compounds.
3. Apply membrane curing compounds as required.

**1.3 EXECUTION****A. Preparation when attaching to existing surfaces:**

1. Remove all defective material by chipping and cutting to sound concrete in order to secure a solid foundation.
2. Square cut or undercut the edges to a minimum depth of one inch to form key.
3. Cut concrete out from behind exposed reinforcing bars and rods.
4. All exposed reinforcing shall be cleaned of rust and primed.



---

B. Installation

1. Formwork requirements:
  - a. Formwork shall comply with ACI 347. Joints in forms shall be horizontal or vertical.
  - b. Use plywood, fiberglass, or metal forms.
2. Reinforcement shall be repaired when rusted through. Rods at least 12 inches long shall be wired to the failed rods. In closing gaps, rods shall lap existing rods by at least 12 inches or 30 diameters, whichever is greater.
3. Mixing and transporting concrete: Ready-mixed concrete shall be mixed and delivered to the project in compliance with ASTM C 94. Job-mixed concrete shall comply with the requirements of ACI 318.
4. Mixing epoxy-resin patching mortar: Mix thoroughly with a power mixer at low speeds (150 - 400 rpm) until material attains uniform color and consistency (minimum time of two to three minutes at 70 F).

END OF SECTION 03 35 23 00



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
03 35 23 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 35 26 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 35 29 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 35 29 00	03 11 16 13a	Cast-In-Place Architectural Concrete
03 35 33 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 35 63 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 35 66 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 35 83 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 03 37 13 00 - SHOTCRETE**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for shotcrete. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. This Section includes shotcrete applied by dry-mix or wet-mix process.

## C. Definitions

1. Shotcrete: Mortar or concrete pneumatically projected onto a surface at high velocity.
2. Dry-Mix Shotcrete: Shotcrete with most of the water added at nozzle.
3. Wet-Mix Shotcrete: Shotcrete with ingredients, including mixing water, mixed before introduction into delivery hose.

## D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For manufactured materials and products including reinforcement and forming accessories, shotcrete materials, admixtures, and curing compounds.
2. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
    - 1) Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
3. Shop Drawings: For details of fabricating, bending, and placing reinforcement. Include support and anchor details, number and location of splices, and special reinforcement required for openings through shotcrete structures.
4. Samples: Approximately 24 by 24 by 2 inches (600 by 600 by 50 mm), to illustrate quality of finishes, colors, and textures of exposed surfaces of shotcrete.
5. Design Mixes: For each shotcrete mix.
6. Material Test Reports: For shotcrete materials.
7. Material Certificates: For each material item, signed by manufacturers.
8. Field quality-control test reports.

## E. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer employing nozzle operators for the Project, each of whom attains mean core grades not exceeding 2.5, according to ACI 506.2, on preconstruction tests **OR** is ACI Shotcrete Nozzleman certified in Dry-Mix Process for Vertical Position **OR** is ACI Shotcrete Nozzleman certified in Dry-Mix Process for Vertical and Overhead Positions **OR** is ACI Shotcrete Nozzleman certified in Wet-Mix Process for Vertical Position **OR** is ACI Shotcrete Nozzleman certified in Wet-Mix Process for Vertical and Overhead Positions as appropriate to the required shotcrete work, **as directed**.
2. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated, and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, **as directed**.
3. Comply with provisions of the following, unless more stringent requirements are indicated:
  - a. ACI 301, "Specifications for Structural Concrete."
  - b. ACI 506.2, "Specification for Shotcrete."
4. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
5. Shotcrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design shotcrete mixtures.



#### F. Project Conditions

1. Cold-Weather Shotcreting: Protect shotcrete work from physical damage or reduced strength caused by frost, freezing, or low temperatures according to ACI 306.1 and as follows:
  - a. Discontinue shotcreting when ambient temperature is 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and falling. Uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a shotcrete shooting temperature of not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) and not more than 90 deg F (32 deg C).
  - b. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
  - c. Do not place shotcrete on frozen surfaces or surfaces containing frozen materials.
  - d. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents.
2. Hot-Weather Shotcreting: Mix, place, and protect shotcrete according to ACI 305R when hot-weather conditions and high temperatures would seriously impair quality and strength of shotcrete, and as follows:
  - a. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain shotcrete temperature at time of placement below 100 deg F (38 deg C) for dry mix or 90 deg F (32 deg C) for wet mix.
  - b. Reduce temperature of reinforcing steel and receiving surfaces below 100 deg F (38 deg C) before shotcreting.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Form Materials

1. Forms: Form-facing panels that will provide continuous, straight, smooth, concrete surfaces. Furnish panels in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.

#### B. Reinforcing Materials

1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 **OR** 60, **as directed** percent.
2. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed.
3. Low-Alloy-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 706/A 706M, deformed.
4. Galvanized Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 767/A 767M, Class II, zinc coated, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and bending, as follows:
  - a. Steel Reinforcement: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) **OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed.
5. Plain-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82, as drawn **OR** galvanized, **as directed**.
6. Plain-Steel-Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 1064, fabricated from as-drawn **OR** galvanized, **as directed**, steel wire into flat sheets.
7. Deformed-Steel-Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 497, flat sheet.
8. Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, ties, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing steel in place according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" and as follows:
  - a. For uncoated reinforcement, use all-plastic **OR** CRSI Class 1, plastic-protected **OR** CRSI Class 2, stainless-steel, **as directed**, bar supports.
  - b. For zinc-coated reinforcement, use galvanized wire or dielectric-polymer-coated wire **OR** all-plastic, **as directed**, bar supports.
  - c. Retain paragraph and subparagraph below if devices are required to anchor, support, or space steel reinforcement.
9. Reinforcing Anchors: ASTM A 36/A 36M, unheaded rods or ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6), hex-head bolts; carbon steel; and carbon-steel nuts.
  - a. Finish: Plain, uncoated **OR** Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C, **as directed**.

#### C. Shotcrete Materials

1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I **OR** III, **as directed**. Use only one brand and type of cement for Project.





- a. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C or F.
  - b. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.
  2. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595, Type IS **OR** IP **OR** I(PM) **OR** I(SM), **as directed**.
  3. Silica Fume: ASTM C 1240, amorphous silica.
  4. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, from a single source, and as follows:
    - a. Aggregate Gradation: ACI 506R, Gradation No. 1 with 100 percent passing 3/8-inch (10-mm) **OR** 2 with 100 percent passing 1/2-inch (13-mm), **as directed**, sieve.
    - b. Coarse-Aggregate Class: 3S **OR** 3M **OR** 1N, **as directed**.
  5. Lightweight Aggregates: ASTM C 330.
    - a. Aggregate Gradation: ACI 506R, Gradation No. 1 with 100 percent passing 3/8-inch (10-mm) **OR** 2 with 100 percent passing 1/2-inch (13-mm), **as directed** sieve.
  6. Coloring Agent: ASTM C 979, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored, water-reducing admixtures, free of carbon black; color stable, nonfading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis.
    - a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designation **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  7. Water: Potable, complying with ASTM C 94/C 94M, free from deleterious materials that may affect color stability, setting, or strength of shotcrete.
  8. Carbon-Steel Fiber: ASTM C 1116, Type 1, carbon-steel fiber and ASTM A 820, Type 1, cold-drawn wire **OR** cut sheet, **as directed**, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) long.
  9. Synthetic Fiber: Fibrillated polypropylene fibers engineered and designed for use in shotcrete, complying with ASTM C 1116, Type III, not less than 3/4 inch (19 mm) long.
  10. Ground Wire: High-strength steel wire, 0.8 to 1 mm in diameter.
  11. Joint Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork.
- D. Chemical Admixtures
1. General: ASTM C 1141, Class A or B, but limited to the following admixture materials. Provide admixtures for shotcrete that contains not more than 0.1 percent chloride ions. Certify compatibility of admixtures with each other and with other cementitious materials.
    - a. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
    - b. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
    - c. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
    - d. Water-Reducing and Accelerating Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type E.
    - e. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
    - f. Accelerating Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C.
- E. Curing Materials
1. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. (305 g/sq. m) dry.
  2. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
  3. Water: Potable.
  4. Clear, Waterborne **OR** Solvent-Borne, **as directed**, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B.
- F. Shotcrete Mixtures, General
1. Prepare design mixes for each type and strength of shotcrete.
    - a. Limit use of fly ash **OR** ground granulated blast-furnace slag **OR** silica fume, **as directed**, to not exceed, in combination, 25 percent of portland cement by weight.
  2. Limit water-soluble chloride ions to maximum percentage by weight of cement or cementitious materials permitted by ACI 301.
  3. Admixtures: When included in shotcrete design mixes, use admixtures and retarding admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  4. Carbon-Steel Fiber: Uniformly disperse in shotcrete mix, according to manufacturer's written instructions, at a rate of 50 lb/cu. yd. (30 kg/cu. m) **OR** 100 lb/cu. yd. (60 kg/cu. m), **as directed**.
  5. Synthetic Fiber: Uniformly disperse in shotcrete mix, according to manufacturer's written instructions, at a rate of 1.5 lb/cu. yd. (0.90 kg/cu. m) **OR** 5 lb/cu. yd. (3 kg/cu. m), **as directed**.



6. Design-Mix Adjustments: Subject to compliance with requirements, shotcrete design-mix adjustments may be proposed when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant.

#### G. Shotcrete Mixtures

1. Proportion dry mixtures by field test data methods and wet mixtures according to ACI 211.1 and ACI 301, using materials to be used on Project, to provide shotcrete with the following properties:
  - a. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) **OR** 4500 psi (31 MPa) **OR** 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) **OR** 3500 psi (24.1 MPa), **as directed**.
  - b. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in normal-weight, wet-mix shotcrete having an air content before pumping of 7 **OR** 8, **as directed**, percent with a tolerance of plus or minus 1-1/2 percent.

#### H. Shotcrete Equipment

1. Mixing Equipment: Capable of thoroughly mixing shotcrete materials in sufficient quantities to maintain continuous placement.
2. Dry-Mix Delivery Equipment: Capable of discharging aggregate-cement mixture into delivery hose under close control and maintaining continuous stream of uniformly mixed materials at required velocity to discharge nozzle. Equip discharge nozzle with manually operated water-injection system for directing even distribution of water to aggregate-cement mixture.
  - a. Provide uniform, steady supply of clean, compressed air to maintain constant nozzle velocity while simultaneously operating blow pipe for cleaning away rebound.
  - b. Provide water supply with uniform pressure at discharge nozzle to ensure uniform mixing with aggregate-cement mix. Provide water pump to system if line water pressure is inadequate.
3. Wet-Mix Delivery Equipment: Capable of discharging aggregate-cement-water mixture accurately, uniformly, and continuously.

#### I. Batching And Mixing

1. Dry-Mix Process: Measure mix proportions by weight batching according to ASTM C 94/C 94M or by volume batching complying with ASTM C 685/C 685M requirements.
  - a. In volume batching, adjust fine-aggregate volume for bulking. Test fine-aggregate moisture content at least once daily to determine extent of bulking.
  - b. Prepackaged shotcrete materials may be used at Contractor's option. Predampen prepackaged shotcrete materials and mix before use.
2. Wet-Mix Process: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver shotcrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M and ASTM C 1116, **as directed**, and furnish batch ticket information.
  - a. Comply with ASTM C 685/C 685M when shotcrete ingredients are delivered dry and proportioned and mixed on-site.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Preparation

1. Concrete or Masonry: Before applying shotcrete, remove unsound or loose materials and contaminants that may inhibit shotcrete bonding. Chip or scarify areas to be repaired to extent necessary to provide sound substrate. Cut edges square and 1/2 inch (13 mm) deep at perimeter of work, tapering remaining shoulder at 1:1 slope into cavity to eliminate square shoulders. Dampen surfaces before shotcreting.
  - a. Abrasive blast or hydroblast existing surfaces that do not require chipping to remove paint, oil, grease, or other contaminants and to provide roughened surface for proper shotcrete bonding.
2. Earth: Compact and trim to line and grade before placing shotcrete. Do not place shotcrete on frozen surfaces. Dampen surfaces before shotcreting.



3. Rock: Clean rock surfaces of loose materials, mud, and other foreign matter that might weaken shotcrete bonding.
  4. Steel: Clean steel surfaces by abrasive blasting according to SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
- B. Forms
1. General: Design, erect, support, brace, and maintain forms, according to ACI 301, to support shotcrete and construction loads and to facilitate shotcreting. Construct forms so shotcrete members and structures are secured to prevent excessive vibration or deflection during shotcreting.
    - a. Fabricate forms to be readily removable without impact, shock, or damage to shotcrete surfaces and adjacent materials.
    - b. Construct forms to required sizes, shapes, lines, and dimensions using ground wires and depth gages to obtain accurate alignment, location, and grades in finished structures. Construct forms to prevent mortar leakage but permit escape of air and rebound during shotcreting. Provide for openings, offsets, blocking, screeds, anchorages, inserts, and other features required in the Work.
  2. Form openings, chases, recesses, bulkheads, keyways, and screeds in formwork. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items. Accurately place and securely support items built into forms.
- C. Steel Reinforcement
1. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
  2. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other materials that weaken shotcrete bonding.
  3. Securely embed reinforcing anchors into existing substrates, located as required.
  4. Accurately position, support, and rigidly secure reinforcement against displacement by formwork, construction, or shotcreting. Locate and support reinforcement by metal chairs, runners, bolsters, spacers, and hangers, as required.
  5. Place reinforcement to obtain minimum coverage for shotcrete protection. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position during shotcreting. Set wire ties with ends directed into shotcrete, not toward exposed shotcrete surfaces.
  6. Install welded wire fabric in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh and lace splices with wire. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.
- D. Joints
1. Construction Joints: Locate and install construction joints tapered to a 1:1 slope where joint is not subject to compression loads and square where joint is perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement through construction joints, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Contraction Joints: Construct contraction joints in shotcrete using saw cuts 1/8-inch- (3-mm-) wide-by-1/3 slab depth or joint-filler strips 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) wide-by-1/3 shotcrete depth, unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. After shotcrete has cured, remove strip inserts and clean groove of loose debris.
    - b. Space joints at 15 feet (4.5 m) o.c. **OR** centers indicated, **as directed**, horizontally and vertically.
    - c. Tool edges round on each side of strip inserts if floated or troweled finishes are required.
- E. Alignment Control
1. Ground Wires: Install ground wires to establish thickness and planes of shotcrete surfaces. Install ground wires at corners and offsets not established by forms. Pull ground wires taut and position adjustment devices to permit additional tightening.
- F. Embedded Items



1. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by shotcrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.

#### G. Application

1. Apply temporary protective coverings and protect adjacent surfaces against deposit of rebound and overspray or impact from nozzle stream.
2. Moisten wood forms immediately before placing shotcrete where form coatings are not used.
3. Apply shotcrete according to ACI 506.2.
4. Apply dry-mix shotcrete materials within 45 minutes after predampening and wet-mix shotcrete materials within 90 minutes after batching.
5. Deposit shotcrete continuously in multiple passes, to required thickness, without cold joints and laminations developing. Place shotcrete with nozzle held perpendicular to receiving surface. Begin shotcreting in corners and recesses.
6. Remove and dispose of rebound and overspray materials during shotcreting to maintain clean surfaces and to prevent rebound entrapment.
7. Maintain reinforcement in position during shotcreting. Place shotcrete to completely encase reinforcement and other embedded items. Maintain steel reinforcement free of overspray and prevent buildup against front face during shotcreting.
8. Do not place subsequent lifts until previous lift of shotcrete is capable of supporting new shotcrete.
9. Do not permit shotcrete to sag, slough, or dislodge.
10. Remove hardened overspray, rebound, and laitance from shotcrete surfaces to receive additional layers of shotcrete; dampen surfaces before shotcreting.
11. Do not disturb shotcrete surfaces before beginning finishing operations.
12. Remove ground wires or other alignment control devices after shotcrete placement.
13. Shotcrete Core Grade: Apply shotcrete to achieve mean core grades not exceeding 2.5 according to ACI 506.2, with no single core grade exceeding 3.0.
14. Installation Tolerances: Place shotcrete without exceeding installation tolerances permitted by ACI 117R, increased by a factor of 2.

#### H. Surface Finishes

1. General: Finish shotcrete according to descriptions in ACI 506R for the following finishes:
2. Natural Finish:
  - a. Gun Finish: Natural undisturbed finish.
  - b. Rod Finish: Rough-textured finish obtained by cutting or screeding exposed face of shotcrete to plane by rod or straightedge after initial set, and wood-float finished **OR** and steel-trowel finished **as directed**.
  - c. Broom Finish: Rough-textured finish obtained by screeding exposed face of shotcrete to required plane by rod, cutting screed, or trowel, and brooming after initial set.
3. Flash-Coat Finish: After screeding and rodding surface, apply up to 1/4-inch (6-mm) coat of shotcrete using ACI 506R, Gradation No. 1, fine-screened sand modified with maximum aggregate size not exceeding No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve to provide a finely textured finish.
4. Flash-Coat and Final Finish: After screeding and rodding surface, apply up to 1/4-inch (6-mm) coat of shotcrete using ACI 506R, Gradation No. 1, fine-screened sand modified with maximum aggregate size not exceeding No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and apply wood-float **OR** rubber-float **OR** brush-float **OR** steel-trowel, **as directed**, finish.
5. Finish-Coat Finish: After screeding and rodding surface, apply shotcrete finish coat, 1/4 to 1 inch (6 to 25 mm) thick, using ACI 506R, Gradation No. 1, fine-screened sand modified with maximum aggregate size not exceeding No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve to provide a finish of uniform texture and appearance.
6. Finish-Coat and Final Finish: After screeding and rodding surface, apply shotcrete finish coat, 1/4 to 1 inch (6 to 25 mm) thick, using ACI 506R, Gradation No. 1, fine-screened sand modified with



maximum aggregate size not exceeding No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and apply wood-float **OR** rubber-float **OR** brush-float **OR** steel-trowel, **as directed**, finish.

I. Curing

1. Protect freshly placed shotcrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
2. Start initial curing as soon as free water has disappeared from shotcrete surface after placing and finishing.
3. Curing Exposed Surfaces: Cure shotcrete by one of the following methods:
  - a. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for at least seven days with water, continuous water-fog spray, water-saturated absorptive covers, or moisture-retaining covers. Lap and seal sides and ends of covers.
  - b. Curing Compound: Apply curing compound uniformly in continuous operation by power spray according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
    - 1) Apply curing compound to natural- or gun-finished shotcrete at rate of 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (1 L/2.5 sq. m).
4. Curing Formed Surfaces: Cure formed shotcrete surfaces by moist curing with forms in place for full curing period or until forms are removed. If forms are removed, continue curing by methods specified above, as applicable.

J. Form Removal

1. Forms not supporting weight of shotcrete may be removed after curing at not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) for 24 consecutive hours after gunning, provided shotcrete is hard enough not to be damaged by form-removal operations and provided curing and protecting operations are maintained.
  - a. Leave forms supporting weight of shotcrete in place until shotcrete has attained design compressive strength. Determine compressive strength of in-place shotcrete by testing representative field-cured specimens of shotcrete.
  - b. Remove forms only if shores have been arranged to permit removal of forms without loosening or disturbing shores.
2. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing materials are unacceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-coating compound as specified for new formwork.

K. Field Quality Control

1. Engage a qualified independent testing agency to sample materials, visually grade cores, perform tests, and submit reports during shotcreting.
2. Air Content: ASTM C 173/C 173M, volumetric method or ASTM C 231, pressure method; 1 test for each compressive-strength test for each mix of air-entrained, wet-mix shotcrete measured before pumping.
3. Shotcrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; 1 test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and below and when 80 deg F (27 deg C) and above, and 1 test for each set of compressive-strength specimens.
4. Test Panels: Make a test panel, reinforced as in structure, for each shotcrete mix and for each workday or for every 50 cu. yd. (38 cu. m) of shotcrete placed; whichever is less. Produce test panels with dimensions of 24 by 24 inches (600 by 600 mm) minimum and of average thickness of shotcrete, but not less than 4-1/2 inches (115 mm). From each test panel, testing agency will obtain six test specimens: one set of three specimens unreinforced and one set of three specimens reinforced.
  - a. Test each set of unreinforced specimens for compressive strength according to ASTM C 1140 and construction testing requirements in ACI 506.2.
  - b. Visually inspect each set of reinforced shotcrete cores taken from test panels and determine mean core grades according to ACI 506.2.



5. In-Place Shotcrete: Take a set of 3 unreinforced cores for each mix and for each workday or for every 50 cu. yd. (38 cu. m) of shotcrete placed; whichever is less. Test cores for compressive strength according to ACI 506.2 and ASTM C 42. Do not cut steel reinforcement.
6. Strength of shotcrete will be considered satisfactory when mean compressive strength of each set of 3 unreinforced cores equals or exceeds 85 percent of specified compressive strength, with no individual core less than 75 percent of specified compressive strength.
  - a. Mean compressive strength of each set of 3 unreinforced cubes shall equal or exceed design compressive strength with no individual cube less than 88 percent of specified compressive strength.

L. Repairs

1. Remove and replace shotcrete that is delaminated or exhibits laminations, voids, or sand/rock pockets exceeding limits for specified core grade of shotcrete.
  - a. Remove unsound or loose materials and contaminants that may inhibit bond of shotcrete repairs. Chip or scarify areas to be repaired to extent necessary to provide sound substrate. Cut edges square and 1/2 inch (13 mm) deep at perimeter of work, tapering remaining shoulder at 1:1 slope into cavity to eliminate square shoulders. Dampen surfaces and apply new shotcrete.
2. Repair core holes from in-place testing according to repair provisions in ACI 301 and match adjacent finish, texture, and color.

M. Cleaning

1. Remove and dispose of rebound and overspray materials from final shotcrete surfaces and areas not intended for shotcrete placement.

END OF SECTION 03 37 13 00

**SECTION 03 37 13 00a - GLASS FIBER REINFORCED CONCRETE**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for glass-fiber-reinforced precast concrete panels. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. Section includes glass-fiber-reinforced concrete (GFRC) panels consisting of GFRC panel frames, anchors, and connection hardware.
  - a. GFRC panels include wall units, window wall units, mullions, column covers, fascia units, cornices, and soffits.

## C. Definitions

1. Design Reference Sample: Sample of approved GFRC color, finish, and texture; preapproved by the Owner.

## D. Performance Requirements

1. Structural Performance: Provide GFRC panels, including panel frames, anchors, and connections, capable of withstanding the following design loads as well as the effects of thermal- and moisture-induced volume changes, according to load factors and combinations established in PCI MNL 128, "Recommended Practice for Glass Fiber Reinforced Concrete Panels."
  - a. Design Loads: As required to meet Project requirements.
  - b. Deflection Limits: Design panel frames to withstand design loads without lateral deflections greater than 1/240 of wall span.
  - c. Thermal Movements: Provide for thermal movements resulting from annual ambient temperature changes of 100 deg F (56 deg C).
  - d. Design panel frames and connections to accommodate deflections and other building movements.
  - e. Design panel frames to transfer window loads to building structure.

## E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include GFRC design mixes.
2. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for GFRC panels including the following:
  - a. Structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - b. Panel elevations, sections, and dimensions.
  - c. Thickness of facing mix, GFRC backing, and bonding pads for typical panels.
  - d. Finishes.
  - e. Joint and connection details.
  - f. Erection details.
  - g. Panel frame details for typical panels including sizes, spacings, thickness, and yield strength of various members.
  - h. Location and details of connection hardware attached to structure.
  - i. Size, location, and details of flex, gravity, and seismic anchors for typical panels.
  - j. Other items sprayed into panels.
  - k. Erection sequence for special conditions.
  - l. Relationship to adjacent materials.
  - m. Description of loose, cast-in, and field hardware.



3. Samples: Representative of finished exposed face of GFRC showing the full range of colors and textures specified, 12 by 12 inches (305 by 305 mm) and of actual thickness.
4. Qualification Data: For qualified GFRC manufacturer, including proof of current Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute (PCI) or Architectural Precast Association (APA) Plant Certification.
5. Welding certificates.
6. Steel Sheet Certification: For steel sheet used in cold-formed steel panel framing.
7. Mill Certificates: For structural-steel shapes and hollow structural sections used in panel framing.
8. Source Quality-Control Program: For GFRC manufacturer.
9. Source Quality-Control Test Reports: For GFRC, inserts, and anchors.

#### F. Quality Assurance

1. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that participates in PCI's Plant Certification Program and is designated a PCI-Certified Plant for Group G - Glass Fiber Reinforced Concrete or that participates in APA's Plant Certification Program and is certified for GFRC production.
  - a. Manufacturer's responsibility includes fabricating and installing GFRC panels and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility for GFRC panels.
  - b. Engineering responsibility includes preparation of Shop Drawings and comprehensive engineering analysis, based on GFRC production test values, by a qualified professional engineer experienced in GFRC design.
2. Steel Sheet Certifications: Obtain mill certificates signed by manufacturers of steel sheet, or test reports from a qualified testing agency, indicating that steel sheet used in cold-formed metal panel framing complies with requirements including uncoated steel thickness, yield strength, tensile strength, total elongation, chemical requirements, and galvanized-coating thickness.
3. Mill Certificates: Obtain certified mill test reports from manufacturer of structural-steel shapes and hollow structural sections used in panel framing indicating compliance of these products with requirements.
4. Source Limitations: Obtain GFRC panels from single source from single manufacturer.
5. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," and AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
6. PCI Manuals: Comply with requirements and recommendations in the following PCI manuals unless more stringent requirements are indicated:
  - a. PCI MNL 128, "Recommended Practice for Glass Fiber Reinforced Concrete Panels."
  - b. PCI MNL 130, "Manual for Quality Control for Plants and Production of Glass Fiber Reinforced Concrete Products."
7. AISC Specifications: Comply with AISC's "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings - Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design" **OR** "Load and Resistance Factor Design Specification for Structural Steel Buildings" **OR** "Specification for the Design of Steel Hollow Structural Sections," **as directed**, if using structural-steel shapes or hollow structural sections for panel frames.
8. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Handle and transport GFRC panels to avoid damage.
  - a. Place nonstaining resilient spacers between panels.
  - b. Support panels on nonstaining material during shipment.
  - c. Protect panels from dirt and damage during handling and transport.
2. Store GFRC panels to protect from contact with soil, staining, and physical damage.
  - a. Store panels with nonstaining resilient supports in same positions as when transported.
  - b. Store panels on firm, level, and smooth surfaces.
  - c. Place stored panels so identification marks are clearly visible.





## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Mold Materials

1. Molds: Rigid, dimensionally stable, nonabsorptive material, warp and buckle free, that will provide continuous and true GFRC surfaces; nonreactive with GFRC and capable of producing required finish surfaces.
  - a. Mold-Release Agent: Commercially produced liquid-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect GFRC surfaces and will not impair subsequent surface or joint treatments of GFRC.
2. Form Liners: Units of face design, texture, arrangement, and configuration indicated **OR** to match GFRC design reference sample, **as directed**. Provide solid backing and form supports to ensure that form liners remain in place during GFRC application. Use with manufacturer's recommended liquid-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect GFRC surfaces and will not impair subsequent surface or joint treatments of GFRC.
3. Surface Retarder: Chemical liquid set retarder capable of temporarily delaying hardening of newly placed GFRC face mix to depth of reveal specified.

### B. GFRC Materials

1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150; Type I, II, or III.
  - a. For surfaces exposed to view in finished structure, use gray **OR** white, **as directed**, of same type, brand, and source throughout GFRC production.
  - b. Metakaolin: ASTM C 618, Class N.
2. Glass Fibers: Alkali resistant, with a minimum zirconia content of 16 percent, 1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm) long, specifically produced for use in GFRC, and complying with PCI MNL 130.
3. Sand: Washed and dried silica, complying with composition requirements in ASTM C 144; passing No. 20 (0.85-mm) sieve with a maximum of 2 percent passing No. 100 (0.15-mm) sieve.
4. Facing Aggregate: ASTM C 33, except for gradation, and PCI MNL 130, 1/4-inch (6-mm) maximum size.
  - a. Aggregates: Selected, hard, and durable; free of material that reacts with cement or causes staining; to match sample.
5. Coloring Admixture: ASTM C 979, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures, temperature stable, nonfading, and alkali resistant.
6. Water: Potable; free from deleterious material that may affect color stability, setting, or strength of GFRC and complying with chemical limits of PCI MNL 130.
7. Polymer-Curing Admixture: Acrylic thermoplastic copolymer dispersion complying with PCI MNL 130.
8. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260, containing not more than 0.1 percent chloride ions.
9. Chemical Admixtures: ASTM C 494/C 494M, containing not more than 0.1 percent chloride ions.

### C. Anchors, Connectors, And Miscellaneous Materials

1. Stainless-Steel Plates: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304.
2. Carbon-Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M. Finish steel shapes and plates less than 3/16 inch (4.76 mm) thick as follows:
  - a. Finish: Zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M, after fabrication, or ASTM A 153/A 153M, as applicable **OR** electrodeposition according to ASTM B 633, SC 3, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Finish: Shop primed with MPI#79 **OR** SSPC-Paint 25, **as directed**, on surfaces prepared to comply with SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning," or better.
3. Stainless-Steel Bars and Shapes: ASTM A 276, Type 304.
4. Carbon-Steel Bars: ASTM A 108, AISI Grade 1018. Finish steel bars less than 3/16 inch (4.76 mm) thick as follows:
  - a. Finish: Zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M, after fabrication, or ASTM A 153/A 153M, as applicable **OR** electrodeposition according to ASTM B 633, SC 3, **as directed**.



- b. Finish: Shop primed with MPI#79 **OR** SSPC-Paint 25, **as directed**, on surfaces prepared to comply with SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning," or better.
- 5. Malleable-Iron Castings: ASTM A 47/ A 47M, Grade 32510 (Grade 22010).
- 6. Carbon-Steel Castings: ASTM A 27/A 27M, Grade 60-30 (Grade 415-205).
- 7. Bolts: ASTM A 307 or ASTM A 325 (ASTM F 568M or ASTM A 325M).
  - a. Finish: Zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M, after fabrication, and ASTM A 153/A 153M, as applicable **OR** electrodeposition according to ASTM B 633, SC 3, **as directed**.
- 8. Reglets: PVC extrusions **OR** Stainless steel, ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304, 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick, **as directed**.

#### D. Panel Frame Materials

- 1. Cold-Formed Steel Framing: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, complying with AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members," minimum uncoated steel thickness of 0.053 inch (1.34 mm) of web depth indicated, with stiffened flanges, U-shaped steel track, and of the following steel sheet:
  - a. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural-steel sheet, G60 (Z180) **OR** G90 (Z275), **as directed**, zinc coating, of grade required by structural performance of framing.
  - b. Painted, Nonmetallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, hot rolled; or ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, cold rolled; nonmetallic coated according to ASTM A 1003/A 1003M; of grade required by structural performance of framing.
- 2. Hollow Structural Sections: Steel tubing, ASTM A 500, Grade B, or ASTM A 513. Finish hollow structural sections with wall thickness less than 3/16 inch (4.76 mm) as follows:
  - a. Organic Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-Paint 20 on surfaces prepared to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - b. Primer: MPI#79 **OR** SSPC-Paint 25, **as directed**, on surfaces prepared to comply with SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning," or better.
- 3. Steel Channels and Angles: ASTM A 36/A 36M, finished as follows:
  - a. Organic Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-Paint 20 on surfaces prepared to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - b. Primer: MPI#79 **OR** SSPC-Paint 25, **as directed**, on surfaces prepared to comply with SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning," or better.

#### E. GFRC Mixes

- 1. Backing Mix: Proportion backing mix of portland cement, glass fibers, sand, and admixtures to comply with design requirements. Provide nominal glass-fiber content of not less than 5 percent by weight of total mix.
- 2. Face Mix: Proportion face mix of portland cement, sand, facing aggregates, and admixtures to comply with design requirements.
- 3. Mist Coat: Portland cement, sand slurry, and admixtures; of same proportions as backing mix without glass fibers.
- 4. Polymer-Curing Admixture: 6 to 7 percent by weight of polymer-curing admixture solids to dry portland cement.
- 5. Air Content: 8 to 10 percent; ASTM C 185.
- 6. Coloring Admixture: Not to exceed 10 percent of cement weight.

#### F. Panel Frame Fabrication

- 1. Fabricate panel frames and accessories plumb, square, true to line, and with components securely fastened, according to Shop Drawings and requirements in this Section.
  - a. Fabricate panel frames using jigs or templates.
  - b. Cut cold-formed metal framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
  - c. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding. Comply with AWS D1.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.



- d. Fasten framing members of hollow structural sections, steel channels, or steel angles by welding. Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
  - e. Weld flex, gravity, and seismic anchors to panel frames.
  2. Reinforce, stiffen, and brace framing assemblies, if necessary, to withstand handling, delivery, and erection stresses. Lift fabricated assemblies in a manner that prevents damage or significant distortion.
  3. Galvanizing Repair: Touch up accessible damaged galvanized surfaces according to ASTM A 780.
  4. Painting Repair: Touch up accessible damaged painted surfaces using same primer.
- G. Mold Fabrication
1. Construct molds that will result in finished GFRC complying with profiles, dimensions, and tolerances indicated, without damaging GFRC during stripping. Construct molds to prevent water leakage and loss of cement paste.
    - a. Coat contact surfaces of molds with form-release agent.
    - b. Coat contact surfaces of molds with surface retarder.
  2. Place form liners accurately to provide finished surface texture indicated. Provide solid backing and supports to maintain stability of liners during GFRC application. Coat form liner with form-release agent.
  3. Locate, place, and secure flashing reglets accurately.
- H. GFRC Fabrication
1. Proportioning and Mixing: For backing mix, meter sand/cement slurry and glass fibers to spray head at rates to achieve design mix proportions and glass-fiber content according to PCI MNL 130 procedures.
  2. Spray Application: Comply with general procedures as follows:
    - a. Spray mist coat over molds to a nominal thickness of 1/8 inch (3 mm) on planar surfaces.
    - b. Spray or place face mix in thickness indicated on Shop Drawings.
    - c. Proceed with spraying backing mix before face mix **OR** mist coat, **as directed**, has set, using procedures that produce a uniform thickness and even distribution of glass fibers and matrix.
    - d. Consolidate backing mix by rolling or other technique to achieve complete encapsulation of glass fibers and compaction.
    - e. Measure thickness with a pin gage or other acceptable method at least once for each 5 sq. ft. (0.5 sq. m) of panel surface. Take not less than six measurements per panel.
  3. Hand form and consolidate intricate details, incorporate formers or infill materials, and over spray before material reaches initial set to ensure complete bonding.
  4. Attach panel frame to GFRC before initial set of GFRC backing, maintaining a minimum clearance of 1/2 inch (13 mm) from GFRC backing, and without anchors protruding into GFRC backing.
  5. Build up homogeneous GFRC bonding pads over anchor feet, maintaining a minimum thickness of 1/2 inch (13 mm) over tops of anchor feet, before initial set of GFRC backing.
  6. Inserts and Embedments: Build up homogeneous GFRC bosses or bonding pads over inserts and embedments to provide sufficient anchorage and embedment to comply with design requirements.
  7. Curing: Employ initial curing method that will ensure sufficient strength for removing units from mold. Comply with PCI MNL 130 procedures.
  8. Panel Identification: Mark each GFRC panel to correspond with identification mark on Shop Drawings. Mark each panel with its casting date.
- I. Fabrication Tolerances
1. Manufacturing Tolerances: Manufacture GFRC panels so each finished unit complies with PCI MNL 130 for dimension, position, and tolerances.  
**OR**



Manufacturing Tolerances: Manufacture GFRC panels so each finished unit complies with the following dimensional tolerances. For dimensional tolerances not listed below, comply with PCI MNL 130.

- a. Overall Height and Width of Units, Measured at the Face Adjacent to Mold: As follows:
    - 1) 10 feet (3 m) or less, plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
    - 2) More than 10 feet (3 m), plus or minus 1/8 inch per 10 feet (3 mm per 3 m); 1/4 inch (6 mm) maximum.
  - b. Edge Return Thickness: Plus 1/2 inch (13 mm), minus 0 inch (0 mm).
  - c. Architectural Facing Thickness: Plus 1/8 inch (3 mm), minus 0 inch (0 mm).
  - d. Backing Thickness: Plus 1/4 inch (6 mm), minus 0 inch (0 mm).
  - e. Panel Depth from Face of Skin to Back of Panel Frame or Integral Rib: Plus 3/8 inch (10 mm), minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - f. Angular Variation of Plane of Side Mold: Plus or minus 1/32 inch per 3 inches (0.8 mm per 75 mm) of depth or plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) total, whichever is greater.
  - g. Variation from Square or Designated Skew (Difference in Length of Two Diagonal Measurements): Plus or minus 1/8 inch per 72 inches (3 mm per 1800 mm) or plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm) total, whichever is greater.
  - h. Local Smoothness: 1/4 inch per 10 feet (6 mm per 3 m).
  - i. Bowing: Not to exceed L/240 unless unit meets erection tolerances using connection adjustments.
  - j. Length and Width of Block Outs and Openings within One Unit: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - k. Location of Window Opening within Panel: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - l. Maximum Permissible Warpage of One Corner out of the Plane of the Other Three: 1/16 inch per 12 inches (1.5 mm per 305 mm) of distance from nearest adjacent corner.
2. Position Tolerances: Measured from datum line locations, as indicated on Shop Drawings.
    - a. Panel Frame and Track: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
    - b. Flashing Reglets at Edge of Panel: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
    - c. Inserts: Plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm).
    - d. Special Handling Devices: Plus or minus 3 inches (75 mm).
    - e. Location of Bearing Devices: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
    - f. Blockouts: Plus or minus 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  3. Panel Frame Tolerances: As follows:
    - a. Vertical and Horizontal Alignment: 1/4 inch per 10 feet (6 mm per 3 m).
    - b. Spacing of Framing Member: Plus or minus 3/8 inch (10 mm).
    - c. Squareness of Frame: Difference in length of diagonals of 3/8 inch (10 mm).
    - d. Overall Size of Frame: Plus or minus 3/8 inch (10 mm).

#### J. Finishes

1. Finish exposed-face surfaces of GFRC as follows to match approved design reference sample. Panel faces shall be free of joint marks, grain, or other obvious defects.
  - a. Design Reference Sample: <Insert description and identify manufacturer and code number of sample>.
  - b. As-Cast-Surface Finish: Provide free of sand streaks, honeycombs, and excessive air voids, with uniform color and texture.
  - c. Textured-Surface Finish: Impart by form liners to provide surfaces free of sand streaks, honeycombs, and excessive air voids, with uniform color and texture.
  - d. Retarded Finish: Use chemical-retarding agents applied to concrete forms and washing and brushing procedures to expose aggregate and surrounding matrix surfaces after form removal.
  - e. Sand- or Abrasive-Blast Finish: Use abrasive grit, equipment, application techniques, and cleaning procedures to expose aggregate and surrounding matrix surfaces.
  - f. Acid-Etched Finish: Use acid and hot-water solution equipment, application techniques, and cleaning procedures to expose aggregate and surrounding matrix surfaces.

**K. Source Quality Control**

1. Quality-Control Testing: Establish and maintain a quality-control program for manufacturing GFRC panels according to PCI MNL 130.
  - a. Test materials and inspect production techniques.
  - b. Quality-control program shall monitor glass-fiber content, spray rate, unit weight, product physical properties, anchor pull-off and shear strength, and curing period and conditions.
  - c. Prepare test specimens and test according to ASTM C 1228, PCI MNL 130, and PCI MNL 128 procedures.
  - d. Test GFRC inserts and anchors according to ASTM C 1230 to validate design values.
  - e. Produce test boards at a rate not less than one per work shift per operator for each spray machine and for each mix design.
    - 1) For each test board, determine glass-fiber content according to ASTM C 1229, and flexural yield and ultimate strength according to ASTM C 947.

**1.3 EXECUTION****A. Examination**

1. Examine structure and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, true and level bearing surfaces, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

**B. Erection**

1. Install clips, hangers, and other accessories required for connecting GFRC panels to supporting members and backup materials.
2. Lift GFRC panels and install without damage.
3. Install GFRC panels level, plumb, square, and in alignment. Provide temporary supports and bracing as required to maintain position, stability, and alignment of panels until permanent connections are completed.
  - a. Maintain horizontal and vertical joint alignment and uniform joint width.
  - b. Remove projecting hoisting devices.
4. Connect GFRC panels in position by bolting or welding, or both, as indicated on Shop Drawings. Remove temporary shims, wedges, and spacers as soon as possible after connecting is completed.
5. Welding: Comply with applicable AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.3 requirements for welding, appearance, quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
  - a. Protect GFRC panels from damage by field welding or cutting operations, and provide noncombustible shields as required.
6. At bolted connections, use lock washers or other acceptable means to prevent loosening of nuts.

**C. Erection Tolerances**

1. Erect GFRC panels to comply with the following noncumulative tolerances:
  - a. Plan Location from Building Grid Datum: Plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm).
  - b. Top Elevation from Nominal Top Elevation: As follows:
    - 1) Exposed Individual Panel: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
    - 2) Nonexposed Individual Panel: Plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm).
    - 3) Exposed Panel Relative to Adjacent Panel: 1/4 inch (6 mm).
    - 4) Nonexposed Panel Relative to Adjacent Panel: 1/2 inch (13 mm).
  - c. Support Elevation from Nominal Elevation: As follows:
    - 1) Maximum Low: 1/2 inch (13 mm).
    - 2) Maximum High: 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - d. Maximum Plumb Variation over the Lesser of Height of Structure or 100 Feet (30 m): 1 inch (25 mm).
  - e. Plumb in Any 10 Feet (3 m) of Element Height: 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - f. Maximum Jog in Alignment of Matching Edges: 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - g. Maximum Jog in Alignment of Matching Faces: 1/4 inch (6 mm).



- h. Face Width of Joint: As follows (governs over joint taper):
  - 1) Panel Dimension 20 Feet (6 m) or Less: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - 2) Panel Dimension More Than 20 Feet (6 m): Plus or minus 5/16 inch (8 mm).
- i. Maximum Joint Taper: 3/8 inch (10 mm).
- j. Joint Taper in 10 Feet (3 m): 1/4 inch (6 mm).
- k. Differential Bowing, as Erected, between Adjacent Members of Same Design: 1/4 inch (6 mm).

D. Repairs

- 1. Repairs will be permitted provided structural adequacy of GFRC panel and appearance are not impaired, as approved by the Owner.
- 2. Mix patching materials and repair GFRC so cured patches blend with color, texture, and uniformity of adjacent exposed surfaces.
- 3. Prepare and repair accessible damaged galvanized coatings with galvanizing repair paint according to ASTM A 780.
- 4. Wire brush, clean, and paint accessible weld areas on prime-painted components with same type of shop primer.
- 5. Remove and replace damaged GFRC panels when repairs do not comply with requirements.

E. Cleaning And Protection

- 1. Perform cleaning procedures, if necessary, according to GFRC manufacturer's written instructions. Clean soiled GFRC surfaces with detergent and water, using soft fiber brushes and sponges, and rinse with clean water. Prevent damage to GFRC surfaces and staining of adjacent materials.

END OF SECTION 03 37 13 00a



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
03 37 16 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 37 16 00	03 11 16 13a	Cast-In-Place Architectural Concrete
03 39 13 00	03 11 16 13a	Cast-In-Place Architectural Concrete
03 39 23 23	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





## SECTION 03 41 16 00 - PLANT-PRECAST STRUCTURAL CONCRETE

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for plant-precast structural concrete. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Precast structural concrete.
  - b. Precast structural concrete with thin-brick or stone facings.
  - c. Precast structural concrete with commercial architectural finish.

#### C. Definition

1. Design Reference Sample: Sample of approved precast structural concrete color, finish, and texture, preapproved by the Owner.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. Delegated Design: Design precast structural concrete, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. Structural Performance: Precast structural concrete units and connections shall withstand design loads indicated within limits and under conditions indicated.
  - a. Fire-Resistance Rating: Select material and minimum thicknesses to provide indicated fire rating.

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
    - 1) Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
  - b. Design Mixtures for Credit ID 1.1: For each concrete mixture containing fly ash as a replacement for portland cement or other portland cement replacements and for equivalent concrete mixtures that do not contain portland cement replacements.
3. Design Mixtures: For each precast concrete mixture. Include compressive strength and water-absorption tests.
4. Shop Drawings: Include member locations, plans, elevations, dimensions, shapes and sections, openings, support conditions, and types of reinforcement, including special reinforcement. Detail fabrication and installation of precast structural concrete units.
5. Delegated-Design Submittal: For precast structural concrete indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
6. Qualification Data: For Installer **OR** fabricator **OR** testing agency, **as directed**.
7. Welding certificates.
8. Material Certificates.
9. Material Test Reports.
10. Source quality-control reports.
11. Field quality-control and special inspection, **as directed**, reports.



#### F. Quality Assurance

1. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm that assumes responsibility for engineering precast structural concrete units to comply with performance requirements. Responsibility includes preparation of Shop Drawings and comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer.
  - a. Participates in PCI's Plant Certification program and is designated a PCI-certified plant as follows:
    - 1) Group C, Category C1 - Precast Concrete Products (no prestressed reinforcement) **OR** Category C2 - Prestressed Hollowcore and Repetitively Produced Products **OR** Category C3 - Prestressed Straight Strand Structural Members **OR** Category C4 - Prestressed Deflected Strand Structural Members, **as directed**.
    - 2) Group CA, Category C1A - Precast Concrete Products (no prestressed reinforcement) **OR** Category C2A - Prestressed Hollowcore and Repetitively Produced Products **OR** Category C3A - Prestressed Straight-Strand Structural Members **OR** Category C4A - Prestressed Deflected-Strand Structural Members, **as directed**.
2. Design Standards: Comply with ACI 318 (ACI 318M) and design recommendations in PCI MNL 120, "PCI Design Handbook - Precast and Prestressed Concrete," applicable to types of precast structural concrete units indicated.
3. Quality-Control Standard: For manufacturing procedures and testing requirements, quality-control recommendations, and dimensional tolerances for types of units required, comply with PCI MNL 116, "Manual for Quality Control for Plants and Production of Structural Precast Concrete Products."
4. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - a. AWS D1.1/D.1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - b. AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel."
5. Fire-Resistance Calculations: Where indicated, provide precast structural concrete units whose fire resistance meets the prescriptive requirements of authorities having jurisdiction or has been calculated according to ACI 216.1/TMS 0216.1, "Standard Method for Determining Fire Resistance of Concrete and Masonry Construction Assemblies," **OR** PCI MNL 124, "Design for Fire Resistance of Precast Prestressed Concrete," **as directed**, and is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
6. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Support units during shipment on nonstaining shock-absorbing material in same position as during storage.
2. Store units with adequate bracing and protect units to prevent contact with soil, to prevent staining, and to prevent cracking, distortion, warping or other physical damage.
  - a. Store units with dunnage across full width of each bearing point unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Place adequate dunnage of even thickness between each unit.
  - c. Place stored units so identification marks are clearly visible, and units can be inspected.
3. Handle and transport units in a position consistent with their shape and design in order to avoid excessive stresses that would cause cracking or damage.
4. Lift and support units only at designated points shown on Shop Drawings.

#### H. Coordination

1. Furnish loose connection hardware and anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction before starting that Work. Provide locations, setting diagrams, templates, instructions, and directions, as required, for installation.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Mold Materials



1. Molds: Rigid, dimensionally stable, non-absorptive material, warp and buckle free, that will provide continuous and true precast concrete surfaces within fabrication tolerances indicated; nonreactive with concrete and suitable for producing required finishes.
    - a. Mold-Release Agent: Commercially produced liquid-release agent that will not bond with, stain or adversely affect precast concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent surface or joint treatments of precast concrete.
  2. Form Liners: Units of face design, texture, arrangement, and configuration indicated **OR** to match those used for precast concrete design reference sample, **as directed**. Furnish with manufacturer's recommended liquid-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect precast concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent surface or joint treatments of precast concrete.
  3. Surface Retarder: Chemical set retarder, capable of temporarily delaying final hardening of newly placed concrete mixture to depth of reveal specified.
- B. Reinforcing Materials
1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 **OR** 60, **as directed**, percent.
  2. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed.
  3. Low-Alloy-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 706/A 706M, deformed.
  4. Galvanized Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) **OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed bars, ASTM A 767/A 767M, Class II zinc coated, hot-dip galvanized, and chromate wash treated after fabrication and bending, **as directed**.
  5. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) **OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed bars, ASTM A 775/A 775M **OR** ASTM A 934/A 934M, **as directed**, epoxy coated, with less than 2 percent damaged coating in each 12-inch (300-mm) bar length.
  6. Steel Bar Mats: ASTM A 184/A 184M, fabricated from ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) **OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed bars, assembled with clips.
  7. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 1064, fabricated from as-drawn steel **OR** galvanized-steel, **as directed**, wire into flat sheets.
  8. Deformed-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 497/A 497M, flat sheet.
  9. Epoxy-Coated-Steel Wire: ASTM A 884/A 884M, Class A coated, plain **OR** deformed, **as directed**, flat sheet, Type 1 bendable **OR** Type 2 nonbendable, **as directed**, coating.
  10. Supports: Suspend reinforcement from back of mold or use bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place according to PCI MNL 116.
- C. Prestressing Tendons
1. Pretensioning Strand: ASTM A 416/A 416M, Grade 250 (Grade 1720) or Grade 270 (Grade 1860), uncoated, 7-wire **OR** ASTM A 886/A 886M, Grade 270 (Grade 1860), indented, 7-wire, **as directed**, low-relaxation strand.
  2. Unbonded Post-Tensioning Strand: ASTM A 416/A 416M, Grade 270 (Grade 1860), uncoated, 7-wire, low-relaxation strand.
    - a. Coat unbonded post-tensioning strand with post-tensioning coating complying with ACI 423.6 and sheath with polypropylene tendon sheathing complying with ACI 423.6. Include anchorage devices and coupler assemblies.
  3. Post-Tensioning Bars: ASTM A 722, uncoated high-strength steel bar.
- D. Concrete Materials
1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or Type III, gray, unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. For surfaces exposed to view in finished structure, mix gray with white cement, of same type, brand, and mill source.
  2. Supplementary Cementitious Materials:
    - a. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C or F, with maximum loss on ignition of 3 percent.
    - b. Metakaolin Admixture: ASTM C 618, Class N.



- c. Silica Fume Admixture: ASTM C 1240, with optional chemical and physical requirement.
  - d. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.
  3. Normal-Weight Aggregates: Except as modified by PCI MNL 116, ASTM C 33, with coarse aggregates complying with Class 5S **OR** Class 5M **OR** Class 4S **OR** Class 4M, **as directed**. Stockpile fine and coarse aggregates for each type of exposed finish from a single source (pit or quarry) for Project.
    - a. Face-Mixture-Coarse Aggregates: Selected, hard, and durable; free of material that reacts with cement or causes staining; to match selected finish sample.
      - 1) Gradation: Uniformly graded **OR** Gap graded **OR** To match design reference sample, **as directed**.
    - b. Face-Mixture-Fine Aggregates: Selected, natural or manufactured sand of same material as coarse aggregate unless otherwise approved by the Owner.
  4. Lightweight Aggregates: Except as modified by PCI MNL 116, ASTM C 330, with absorption less than 11 percent.
  5. Coloring Admixture: ASTM C 979, synthetic or natural mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures, temperature stable, and nonfading.
  6. Water: Potable; free from deleterious material that may affect color stability, setting, or strength of concrete and complying with chemical limits of PCI MNL 116.
  7. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260, certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other required admixtures.
  8. Chemical Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and to not contain calcium chloride, or more than 0.15 percent chloride ions or other salts by weight of admixture.
    - a. Water-Reducing Admixtures: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
    - b. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
    - c. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
    - d. Water-Reducing and Accelerating Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type E.
    - e. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
    - f. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
    - g. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M.
  9. Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Commercially formulated, anodic inhibitor or mixed cathodic and anodic inhibitor; capable of forming a protective barrier and minimizing chloride reactions with steel reinforcement in concrete.
- E. Steel Connection Materials
1. Carbon-Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
  2. Carbon-Steel-Headed Studs: ASTM A 108, AISI 1018 through AISI 1020, cold finished, AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Type A or B, with arc shields and with minimum mechanical properties of PCI MNL 116.
  3. Carbon-Steel Plate: ASTM A 283/A 283M.
  4. Malleable-Iron Castings: ASTM A 47/A 47M.
  5. Carbon-Steel Castings: ASTM A 27/A 27M, Grade 60-30 (Grade 415-205).
  6. High-Strength, Low-Alloy Structural Steel: ASTM A 572/A 572M.
  7. Carbon-Steel Structural Tubing: ASTM A 500, Grade B.
  8. Wrought Carbon-Steel Bars: ASTM A 675/A 675M, Grade 65 (Grade 450).
  9. Deformed-Steel Wire or Bar Anchors: ASTM A 496 or ASTM A 706/A 706M.
  10. Carbon-Steel Bolts and Studs: ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); carbon-steel, hex-head bolts and studs; carbon-steel nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and flat, unhardened steel washers, ASTM F 844.
  11. High-Strength Bolts and Nuts: ASTM A 325 (ASTM A 325M) or ASTM A 490 (ASTM A 490M), Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts; heavy hex carbon-steel nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and hardened carbon-steel washers, ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M).
    - a. Do not zinc coat ASTM A 490 (ASTM A 490M) bolts.
  12. Zinc-Coated Finish: For exterior steel items, steel in exterior walls, **as directed**, and items indicated for galvanizing, apply zinc coating by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M



or ASTM A 153/A 153M **OR** electrodeposition according to ASTM B 633, SC 3, Types 1 and 2, **as directed**.

- a. For steel shapes, plates, and tubing to be galvanized, limit silicon content of steel to less than 0.03 percent or to between 0.15 and 0.25 percent or limit sum of silicon and 2.5 times phosphorous content to 0.09 percent.
  - b. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint with dry film containing not less than 94 percent zinc dust by weight, and complying with DOD-P-21035B or SSPC-Paint 20.
13. Shop-Primed Finish: Prepare surfaces of nongalvanized-steel items, except those surfaces to be embedded in concrete, according to requirements in SSPC-SP 3, and shop apply lead- and chromate-free, rust-inhibitive primer, complying with performance requirements in MPI 79 **OR** SSPC-Paint 25, **as directed**, according to SSPC-PA 1.
14. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.
15. Precast Accessories: Provide clips, hangers, plastic or steel shims, and other accessories required to install precast structural concrete units.
- F. Stainless-Steel Connection Materials
1. Stainless-Steel Plate: ASTM A 666, Type 304, of grade suitable for application.
  2. Stainless-Steel Bolts and Studs: ASTM F 593, Alloy 304 or 316, hex-head bolts and studs; stainless-steel nuts; and flat, stainless-steel washers. Lubricate threaded parts of stainless-steel bolts with an antiseize thread lubricant during assembly.
  3. Stainless-Steel-Headed Studs: ASTM A 276, with minimum mechanical properties of PCI MNL 116.
- G. Bearing Pads
1. Provide one of the following bearing pads for precast structural concrete units as recommended by precast fabricator for application, **as directed**:
    - a. Elastomeric Pads: AASHTO M 251, plain, vulcanized, 100 percent polychloroprene (neoprene) elastomer, molded to size or cut from a molded sheet, 50 to 70 Shore, Type A durometer hardness, ASTM D 2240; minimum tensile strength 2250 psi (15.5 MPa), ASTM D 412.
    - b. Random-Oriented, Fiber-Reinforced Elastomeric Pads: Preformed, randomly oriented synthetic fibers set in elastomer. 70 to 90 Shore, Type A durometer hardness, ASTM D 2240; capable of supporting a compressive stress of 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) with no cracking, splitting, or delaminating in the internal portions of pad. Test 1 specimen for every 200 pads used in Project.
    - c. Cotton-Duck-Fabric-Reinforced Elastomeric Pads: Preformed, horizontally layered cotton-duck fabric bonded to an elastomer; 80 to 100 Shore, Type A durometer hardness, ASTM D 2240; complying with AASHTO's "AASHTO Load and Resistance Factor Design (LRFD) Bridge Specifications," Division II, Section 18.10.2; or with MIL-C-882E.
    - d. Frictionless Pads: Tetrafluoroethylene, glass-fiber reinforced, bonded to stainless- or mild-steel plate, of type required for in-service stress.
    - e. High-Density Plastic: Multimonomer, nonleaching, plastic strip.
- H. Grout Materials
1. Sand-Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I, and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 144 or ASTM C 404. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration.
  2. Nonmetallic, Nonshrink Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout containing selected silica sands, portland cement, shrinkage-compensating agents, plasticizing and water-reducing agents, complying with ASTM C 1107, Grade A for drypack and Grades B and C for flowable grout and of consistency suitable for application within a 30-minute working time.
  3. Epoxy-Resin Grout: Two-component, mineral-filled epoxy resin; ASTM C 881/C 881M, of type, grade, and class to suit requirements.
- I. Thin-Brick Units And Accessories



1. Thin-Brick Units: ASTM C 216, Type FBX or ASTM C 1088, Grade Exterior, Type TBX, not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick with a tolerance of plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), and as follows:
  - a. Face Color and Texture: Match the Owner's samples **OR** Medium brown, wire cut **OR** Full-range red, sand molded **OR** Gray, velour, **as directed**.
  - b. Face Size:
    - 1) 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) high by 8 inches (203 mm) long.
    - 2) 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) high by 7-1/2 to 7-5/8 inches (190 to 194 mm) long.
    - 3) 2-3/4 to 2-13/16 inches (70 to 71 mm) high by 7-1/2 to 7-5/8 inches (190 to 194 mm) long.
    - 4) 3-1/2 to 3-5/8 inches (89 to 92 mm) high by 7-1/2 to 7-5/8 inches (190 to 194 mm) long.
    - 5) 3-1/2 to 3-5/8 inches (89 to 92 mm) high by 11-1/2 to 11-5/8 inches (292 to 295 mm) long.
  - c. Where indicated to "match existing," provide thin brick matching color, texture, and face size of existing adjacent brick work.
  - d. Face Size:
    - 1) 57 mm high by 190 mm long.
    - 2) 70 mm high by 190 mm long.
    - 3) 90 mm high by 190 mm long.
    - 4) 90 mm high by 290 mm long.
  - e. Special Shapes: Include corners, edge corners, and end edge corners.
  - f. Initial Rate of Absorption: Less than 30 g/30 sq. in. (30 g/194 sq. cm) per minute; ASTM C 67.
  - g. Efflorescence: Tested according to ASTM C 67 and rated "not effloresced."
  - h. Surface Coating: Thin brick with colors or textures applied as coatings shall withstand 50 cycles of freezing and thawing; ASTM C 67 with no observable difference in applied finish when viewed from 10 feet (3 m).
  - i. Back Surface Texture: Scored, combed, wire roughened, ribbed, keybacked, or dovetailed.
2. Sand-Cement Mortar: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I, and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 144. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 4 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement.
3. Latex-Portland Cement Pointing Grout: ANSI A118.6 and as follows:
  - a. Dry-grout mixture, factory prepared, of portland cement, graded aggregate, and dry, redispersible, ethylene-vinyl-acetate additive for mixing with water; uniformly colored.
  - b. Commercial portland cement grout, factory prepared, with liquid styrene-butadiene rubber or acrylic-resin latex additive; uniformly colored.
  - c. Colors: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match the Owner's samples **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

#### J. Stone Materials And Accessories

1. Stone facing for precast structural concrete is specified in Division 04 Section "Exterior Stone Cladding".
2. Anchors: Stainless steel, ASTM A 666, Type 304, of temper and diameter required to support loads without exceeding allowable design stresses.
  - a. Fit each anchor leg with neoprene grommet collar of width at least twice the diameter and of length at least five times the diameter of anchor.
3. Sealant Filler: ASTM C 920, low-modulus, multicomponent, nonsag urethane sealant complying with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" and that is nonstaining to stone substrate.
4. Epoxy Filler: ASTM C 881/C 881M, 100 percent solids, sand-filled nonshrinking, nonstaining of type, class, and grade to suit application.
  - a. Elastomeric Anchor Sleeve: 1/2 inch (13 mm) long; 60 Shore, Type A durometer hardness; ASTM D 2240.



5. Bond Breaker: Preformed, compressible, resilient, nonstaining, nonwaxing, closed-cell polyethylene foam pad, nonabsorbent to liquid and gas, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick **OR** Polyethylene sheet, ASTM D 4397, 6 to 10 mils (0.15 to 0.25 mm) thick, **as directed**.
- K. Insulated Flat Wall Panel Accessories
1. Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type I, 0.90 lb/cu. ft. (15 kg/cu. m) **OR** Type VIII, 1.15 lb/cu. ft. (18 kg/cu. m) **OR** Type II, 1.35 lb/cu. ft. (22 kg/cu. m), **as directed**; square **OR** ship-lap, **as directed**, edges; with R-value and thickness as directed by the Owner.
  2. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type IV, 1.60 lb/cu. ft. (26 kg/cu. m) **OR** Type X, 1.30 lb/cu. ft. (21 kg/cu. m) **OR** Type VI, 1.80 lb/cu. ft. (29 kg/cu. m), **as directed**; square **OR** ship-lap, **as directed**, edges; with R-value and thickness as directed by the Owner.
  3. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 591, Type I, 1.8 lb/cu. ft. (29 kg/cu. m) **OR** Type IV, 2 lb/cu. ft. (32 kg/cu. m) **OR** Type II, 2.5 lb/cu. ft. (40 kg/cu. m), **as directed**, unfaced, with R-value and thickness as directed by the Owner.
  4. Wythe Connectors: Glass-fiber connectors **OR** Vinyl-ester polymer connectors **OR** Polypropylene pin connectors **OR** Stainless-steel pin connectors **OR** Bent galvanized reinforcing bars **OR** Galvanized welded wire trusses **OR** Galvanized bent wire connectors **OR** Cylindrical metal sleeve anchors, **as directed**, manufactured to connect wythes of precast concrete panels.
- L. Concrete Mixtures
1. Prepare design mixtures for each type of precast concrete required.
    - a. Use fly ash, pozzolan, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume as needed to reduce the total amount of portland cement, which would otherwise be used, by not less than 40 percent.
    - b. Limit use of fly ash to 25 percent replacement of portland cement by weight and granulated blast-furnace slag to 40 percent of portland cement by weight; metakaolin and silica fume to 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
  2. Design mixtures may be prepared by a qualified independent testing agency or by qualified precast plant personnel at precast structural concrete fabricator's option.
  3. Limit water-soluble chloride ions to maximum percentage by weight of cement permitted by ACI 318 (ACI 318M) or PCI MNL 116 when tested according to ASTM C 1218/C 1218M.
  4. Normal-Weight Concrete Mixtures: Proportion face mixtures **OR** face and backup mixtures **OR** full-depth mixture, **as directed**, by either laboratory trial batch or field test data methods according to ACI 211.1, with materials to be used on Project, to provide normal-weight concrete with the following properties:
    - a. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 5000 psi (34.5 MPa).
    - b. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.45.
  5. Water Absorption: 6 percent by weight or 14 percent by volume, tested according to PCI MNL 116.
  6. Lightweight Concrete Backup Mixtures: Proportion mixtures by either laboratory trial batch or field test data methods according to ACI 211.2, with materials to be used on Project, to provide lightweight concrete with the following properties:
    - a. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 5000 psi (34.5 MPa).
    - b. Unit Weight: Calculated equilibrium unit weight of 115 lb/cu. ft. (1842 kg/cu. m), plus or minus 3 lb/cu. ft. (48 kg/cu. m), according to ASTM C 567.
  7. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in concrete at point of placement having an air content complying with PCI MNL 116.
  8. When included in design mixtures, add other admixtures to concrete mixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  9. Concrete Mix Adjustments: Concrete mix design adjustments may be proposed if characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant.
- M. Mold Fabrication
1. Molds: Accurately construct molds, mortar tight, of sufficient strength to withstand pressures due to concrete-placement operations and temperature changes and for prestressing and



denstening operations. Coat contact surfaces of molds with release agent before reinforcement is placed. Avoid contamination of reinforcement and prestressing tendons by release agent.

- a. Place form liners accurately to provide finished surface texture indicated. Provide solid backing and supports to maintain stability of liners during concrete placement. Coat form liner with form-release agent.
2. Maintain molds to provide completed precast structural concrete units of shapes, lines, and dimensions indicated, within fabrication tolerances specified.
  - a. Form joints are not permitted on faces exposed to view in the finished work.
  - b. Edge and Corner Treatment: Uniformly chamfered **OR** radiused, **as directed**.

#### N. Thin-Brick Facings

1. Place form-liner templates accurately to provide grid for thin-brick facings. Provide solid backing and supports to maintain stability of liners while placing thin bricks and during concrete placement.
2. Securely place thin-brick units face down into form-liner pockets and place concrete backing mixture.
3. Completely fill joint cavities between thin-brick units with sand-cement mortar, and place precast concrete backing mixture while sand-cement mortar is still fluid enough to ensure bond.
4. Mix and install pointing grout according to ANSI A108.10. Completely fill joint cavities between thin-brick units with pointing grout, and compress into place without spreading pointing grout onto faces of thin-brick units. Remove excess pointing grout immediately to prevent staining of brick.
  - a. Tool joints to a slightly concave shape **OR** grapevine shape **OR** V-shape, **as directed**, when pointing grout is thumbprint hard.
5. Clean faces and joints of brick facing.

#### O. Stone Facings

1. Clean stone surfaces before placing in molds to remove soil, stains, and foreign materials. Use cleaning methods and materials recommended by stone supplier.
2. Accurately position stone facings to comply with requirements and in locations indicated on Shop Drawings. Install anchors, supports, and other attachments indicated or necessary to secure stone in place. Keep concrete reinforcement a minimum of 3/4 inch (19 mm) from the back surface of stone. Use continuous spacers to obtain uniform joints of widths indicated and with edges and faces aligned according to established relationships and indicated tolerances.
  - a. Stone to Precast Anchorages: Provide anchors in numbers, types and locations required to satisfy specified performance criteria, but not less than 2 anchors per stone unit of less than 2 sq. ft. (0.19 sq. m) in area and 4 anchors per unit of less than 12 sq. ft. (1.1 sq. m) in area; for units larger than 12 sq. ft. (1.1 sq. m) in area, provide anchors spaced not more than 24 inches (600 mm) o.c. horizontally and vertically. Locate anchors a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) from stone edge.
3. Fill anchor holes with sealant filler and install anchors **OR** epoxy filler and install anchors with elastomeric anchor sleeve at back surface of stone, **as directed**.
  - a. Install polyethylene sheet to prevent bond between back of stone facing and concrete substrate and to ensure no passage of precast matrix to stone surface.
  - b. Install 1/8-inch (3-mm) polyethylene-foam bond breaker to prevent bond between back of stone facing and concrete substrate and to ensure no passage of precast matrix to stone surface. Maintain minimum projection requirements of stone anchors into concrete substrate.

#### P. Fabrication

1. Cast-in Anchors, Inserts, Plates, Angles, and Other Anchorage Hardware: Fabricate anchorage hardware with sufficient anchorage and embedment to comply with design requirements. Accurately position for attachment of loose hardware, and secure in place during precasting operations. Locate anchorage hardware where it does not affect position of main reinforcement or concrete placement.





- a. Weld-headed studs and deformed bar anchors used for anchorage according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS C5.4, "Recommended Practices for Stud Welding."
2. Furnish loose hardware items including steel plates, clip angles, seat angles, anchors, dowels, cramps, hangers, and other hardware shapes for securing precast structural concrete units to supporting and adjacent construction.
3. Cast-in reglets, slots, holes, and other accessories in precast structural concrete units as indicated on the Contract Drawings.
4. Cast-in openings larger than 10 inches (250 mm) in any dimension. Do not drill or cut openings or prestressing strand without the Owner's approval.
5. Reinforcement: Comply with recommendations in PCI MNL 116 for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
  - a. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, and other materials that reduce or destroy the bond with concrete. When damage to epoxy-coated reinforcement exceeds limits specified, repair with patching material compatible with coating material and epoxy coat bar ends after cutting.
  - b. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement during concrete-placement and consolidation operations. Completely conceal support devices to prevent exposure on finished surfaces.
  - c. Place reinforcement to maintain at least 3/4-inch (19-mm) minimum coverage. Increase cover requirements according to ACI 318 (ACI 318M) when units are exposed to corrosive environment or severe exposure conditions. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position while placing concrete. Direct wire tie ends away from finished, exposed concrete surfaces.
  - d. Place reinforcing steel and prestressing strand to maintain at least 3/4-inch (19-mm) minimum concrete cover. Increase cover requirements for reinforcing steel to 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) when units are exposed to corrosive environment or severe exposure conditions. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position while placing concrete. Direct wire tie ends away from finished, exposed concrete surfaces.
  - e. Install welded wire fabric in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh spacing and wire tie laps, where required by design. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.
6. Reinforce precast structural concrete units to resist handling, transportation, and erection stresses.
7. Prestress tendons for precast structural concrete units by either pretensioning or post-tensioning methods. Comply with PCI MNL 116.
  - a. Delay detensioning or post-tensioning of precast, prestressed structural concrete units until concrete has reached its indicated minimum design release compressive strength as established by test cylinders cured under same conditions as concrete.
  - b. Detension pretensioned tendons either by gradually releasing tensioning jacks or by heat cutting tendons, using a sequence and pattern to prevent shock or unbalanced loading.
  - c. If concrete has been heat cured, detension while concrete is still warm and moist to avoid dimensional changes that may cause cracking or undesirable stresses.
  - d. Protect strand ends and anchorages with bituminous, zinc-rich, or epoxy paint to avoid corrosion and possible rust spots.
  - e. Protect strand ends and anchorages with a minimum of 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, nonmetallic, nonshrink, grout mortar and sack rub surface. Coat or spray the inside surfaces of pocket with bonding agent before installing grout.
8. Comply with requirements in PCI MNL 116 and in this Section for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete. After concrete batching, no additional water may be added.
9. Place face mixture to a minimum thickness after consolidation of the greater of 1 inch (25 mm) or 1.5 times the maximum aggregate size, but not less than the minimum reinforcing cover specified.
10. Place concrete in a continuous operation to prevent seams or planes of weakness from forming in precast concrete units.
  - a. Place backup concrete mixture to ensure bond with face-mixture concrete.



11. Thoroughly consolidate placed concrete by internal and external vibration without dislocating or damaging reinforcement and built-in items, and minimize pour lines, honeycombing, or entrapped air on surfaces. Use equipment and procedures complying with PCI MNL 116.
  - a. Place self-consolidating concrete without vibration according to PCI TR-6, "Interim Guidelines for the Use of Self-Consolidating Concrete in Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute Member Plants."
12. Comply with ACI 306.1 procedures for cold-weather concrete placement.
13. Comply with PCI MNL 116 procedures for hot-weather concrete placement.
14. Identify pickup points of precast structural concrete units and orientation in structure with permanent markings, complying with markings indicated on Shop Drawings. Imprint or permanently mark casting date on each precast structural concrete unit on a surface that will not show in finished structure.
15. Cure concrete, according to requirements in PCI MNL 116, by moisture retention without heat or by accelerated heat curing using low-pressure live steam or radiant heat and moisture. Cure units until compressive strength is high enough to ensure that stripping does not have an effect on performance or appearance of final product.
16. Discard and replace precast structural concrete units that do not comply with requirements, including structural, manufacturing tolerance, and appearance, unless repairs meet requirements in PCI MNL 116 and meet the Owner's approval.

Q. Casting Insulated Wall Panels

1. Cast and screed wythe supported by mold.
2. Place insulation boards abutting edges and ends of adjacent boards. Insert wythe connectors through insulation, and consolidate concrete around connectors according to connector manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Cast and screed top wythe to meet required finish.

R. Fabrication Tolerances

1. Fabricate precast structural concrete units straight and true to size and shape with exposed edges and corners precise and true so each finished unit complies with PCI MNL 116 product dimension tolerances.
2. Brick-Faced Precast Structural Concrete Units: Restrict the following misalignments to 2 percent of number of bricks in a unit:
  - a. Alignment of Mortar Joints:
    - 1) Jog in Alignment: 1/8 inch (3 mm).
    - 2) Alignment with Panel Centerline: Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
  - b. Variation in Width of Exposed Mortar Joints: Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
  - c. Tipping of Individual Bricks from the Panel Plane of Exposed Brick Surface: Plus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm); minus 1/4 inch (6 mm) less than or equal to depth of form-liner joint.
  - d. Exposed Brick Surface Parallel to Primary Control Surface of Panel: Plus 1/4 inch (6 mm); minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
  - e. Individual Brick Step in Face from Panel Plane of Exposed Brick Surface: Plus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm); minus 1/4 inch (6 mm) less than or equal to depth of form-liner joint.
3. Stone Veneer-Faced Precast Structural Concrete Units:
  - a. Variation in Cross-Sectional Dimensions: For thickness of walls from dimensions indicated: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - b. Variation in Joint Width: 1/8 inch in 36 inches (3 mm in 900 mm) or a quarter of nominal joint width, whichever is less.
  - c. Variation in Plane between Adjacent Stone Units (Lipping): 1/16-inch (1.6-mm) difference between planes of adjacent units.

S. Commercial Finishes

1. Commercial Grade: Remove fins and large protrusions and fill large holes. Rub or grind ragged edges. Faces must have true, well-defined surfaces. Air holes, water marks, and color variations are permitted. Limit form joint offsets to 3/16 inch (5 mm).



2. Standard Grade: Normal plant-run finish produced in molds that impart a smooth finish to concrete. Surface holes smaller than 1/2 inch (13 mm) caused by air bubbles, normal color variations, form joint marks, and minor chips and spalls are permitted. Fill air holes greater than 1/4 inch (6 mm) in width that occur more than once per 2 sq. in. (1300 sq. mm). Major or unsightly imperfections, honeycombs, or structural defects are not permitted. Limit joint offsets to 1/8 inch (3 mm).
3. Grade B Finish: Fill air pockets and holes larger than 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter with sand-cement paste matching color of adjacent surfaces. Fill air holes greater than 1/8 inch (3 mm) in width that occur more than once per 2 sq. in. (1300 sq. mm). Grind smooth form offsets or fins larger than 1/8 inch (3 mm). Repair surface blemishes due to holes or dents in molds. Discoloration at form joints is permitted.
4. Grade A Finish: Fill surface blemishes with the exception of air holes 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) in width or smaller, and form marks where the surface deviation is less than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm). Float apply a neat cement-paste coating to exposed surfaces. Rub dried paste coat with burlap to remove loose particles. Discoloration at form joints is permitted. Grind smooth all form joints.
5. Screed or float finish unformed surfaces. Strike off and consolidate concrete with vibrating screeds to a uniform finish. Hand screed at projections. Normal color variations, minor indentations, minor chips, and spalls are permitted. Major imperfections, honeycombing, or defects are not permitted.
6. Smooth, steel trowel finish unformed surfaces. Consolidate concrete, bring to proper level with straightedge, float, and trowel to a smooth, uniform finish.
7. Apply roughened surface finish according to ACI 318 (ACI 318M) to precast concrete units that will receive concrete topping after installation.

T. Commercial Architectural Finishes

1. Manufacture member faces free of joint marks, grain, and other obvious defects with corners, including false joints, uniform, straight, and sharp. Finish exposed-face surfaces of precast concrete units to match approved design reference sample **OR** sample panels, **as directed**, and as follows:
  - a. PCI's "Architectural Precast Concrete - Color and Texture Selection Guide," of plate numbers indicated.
  - b. Smooth-Surface Finish: Provide surfaces free of excessive air voids, sand streaks, and honeycombs, with uniform color and texture.
  - c. Textured-Surface Finish: Impart by form liners or inserts to provide surfaces free of pockets, streaks, and honeycombs, with uniform color and texture.
  - d. Bushhammer Finish: Use power or hand tools to remove matrix and fracture coarse aggregates.
  - e. Exposed-Aggregate Finish: Use chemical-retarding agents applied to concrete molds and washing and brushing procedures to expose aggregate and surrounding matrix surfaces after form removal.
  - f. Abrasive-Blast Finish: Use abrasive grit, equipment, application techniques, and cleaning procedures to expose aggregate and surrounding matrix surfaces.
  - g. Acid-Etched Finish: Use acid and hot-water solution, equipment, application techniques, and cleaning procedures to expose aggregate and surrounding matrix surfaces. Protect hardware, connections, and insulation from acid attack.
  - h. Honed Finish: Use continuous mechanical abrasion with fine grit, followed by filling and rubbing procedures.
  - i. Polished Finish: Use continuous mechanical abrasion with fine grit, followed by filling and rubbing procedures.
  - j. Sand-Embedment Finish: Use selected stones placed in a sand bed in bottom of mold, with sand removed after curing.

U. Source Quality Control

1. Testing: Test and inspect precast structural concrete according to PCI MNL 116 requirements.
  - a. Test and inspect self-consolidating concrete according to PCI TR-6.



2. Strength of precast structural concrete units will be considered deficient if units fail to comply with ACI 318 (ACI 318M) requirements for concrete strength.
3. If there is evidence that strength of precast concrete units may be deficient or may not comply with ACI 318 (ACI 318M) requirements, employ a qualified testing agency to obtain, prepare, and test cores drilled from hardened concrete to determine compressive strength according to ASTM C 42/C 42M.
  - a. A minimum of three representative cores will be taken from units of suspect strength, from locations directed by the Owner.
  - b. Cores will be tested in an air-dry condition or, if units will be wet under service conditions, test cores after immersion in water in a wet condition.
  - c. Strength of concrete for each series of 3 cores will be considered satisfactory if average compressive strength is equal to at least 85 percent of 28-day design compressive strength and no single core is less than 75 percent of 28-day design compressive strength.
  - d. Test results will be made in writing on same day that tests are performed, with copies to the Owner, Contractor, and precast concrete fabricator. Test reports will include the following:
    - 1) Project identification name and number.
    - 2) Date when tests were performed.
    - 3) Name of precast concrete fabricator.
    - 4) Name of concrete testing agency.
    - 5) Identification letter, name, and type of precast concrete unit(s) represented by core tests; design compressive strength; type of break; compressive strength at breaks, corrected for length-diameter ratio; and direction of applied load to core in relation to horizontal plane of concrete as placed.
4. Patching: If core test results are satisfactory and precast structural concrete units comply with requirements, clean and dampen core holes and solidly fill with same precast concrete mixture that has no coarse aggregate, and finish to match adjacent precast concrete surfaces.
5. Defective Units: Discard and replace precast structural concrete units that do not comply with requirements, including strength, manufacturing tolerances, and color and texture range. Chipped, spalled, or cracked units may be repaired, subject to the Owner's approval. the Owner reserves the right to reject precast units that do not match approved samples and sample panels.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation

1. Install clips, hangers, bearing pads, and other accessories required for connecting precast structural concrete units to supporting members and backup materials.
2. Erect precast structural concrete level, plumb, and square within specified allowable tolerances. Provide temporary structural framing, supports, and bracing as required to maintain position, stability, and alignment of units until permanent connection.
  - a. Install temporary steel or plastic spacing shims or bearing pads as precast structural concrete units are being erected. Tack weld steel shims to each other to prevent shims from separating.
  - b. Maintain horizontal and vertical joint alignment and uniform joint width as erection progresses.
  - c. Remove projecting lifting devices and grout fill voids within recessed lifting devices flush with surface of adjacent precast surfaces when recess is exposed.
  - d. For hollow-core slab voids used as electrical raceways or mechanical ducts, align voids between units and tape butt joint at end of slabs.
3. Connect precast structural concrete units in position by bolting, welding, grouting, or as otherwise indicated on Shop Drawings. Remove temporary shims, wedges, and spacers as soon as practical after connecting and grouting are completed.
  - a. Do not permit connections to disrupt continuity of roof flashing.
4. Field cutting of precast units is not permitted without approval of the the Owner.



5. Fasteners: Do not use drilled or powder-actuated fasteners for attaching accessory items to precast, prestressed concrete units.
  6. Welding: Comply with applicable AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.4 for welding, welding electrodes, appearance, quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
    - a. Protect precast structural concrete units and bearing pads from damage by field welding or cutting operations, and provide noncombustible shields as required.
    - b. Clean weld-affected steel surfaces with chipping hammer followed by brushing, and apply a minimum 4.0-mil- (0.1-mm-) thick coat of galvanized repair paint to galvanized surfaces according to ASTM A 780.
    - c. Clean weld-affected steel surfaces with chipping hammer followed by brushing, and reprime damaged painted surfaces.
    - d. Remove, reweld, or repair incomplete and defective welds.
  7. At bolted connections, use lock washers, tack welding, or other approved means to prevent loosening of nuts after final adjustment.
    - a. Where slotted connections are used, verify bolt position and tightness. For sliding connections, properly secure bolt but allow bolt to move within connection slot. For friction connections, apply specified bolt torque and check 25 percent of bolts at random by calibrated torque wrench.
  8. Grouting: Grout connections and joints and open spaces at keyways, connections, and joints where required or indicated on Shop Drawings. Retain grout in place until hard enough to support itself. Pack spaces with stiff grout material, tamping until voids are completely filled.
    - a. Place grout to finish smooth, level, and plumb with adjacent concrete surfaces.
    - b. Fill joints completely without seepage to other surfaces.
    - c. Trowel top of grout joints on roofs smooth and uniform. Finish transitions between different surface levels not steeper than 1 to 12.
    - d. Place grout end cap or dam in voids at ends of hollow-core slabs.
    - e. Promptly remove grout material from exposed surfaces before it affects finishes or hardens.
    - f. Keep grouted joints damp for not less than 24 hours after initial set.
- B. Erection Tolerances
1. Erect precast structural concrete units level, plumb, square, true, and in alignment without exceeding the noncumulative erection tolerances of PCI MNL 135.
  2. Minimize variations between adjacent slab members by jacking, loading, or other method recommended by fabricator and approved by the Owner.
- C. Field Quality Control
1. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
    - a. Erection of precast structural concrete members.
  2. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
  3. Field welds will be visually inspected and nondestructive tested according to ASTM E 165 or ASTM E 709. High-strength bolted connections will be subject to inspections.
  4. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and the Owner.
  5. Repair or remove and replace work where tests and inspections indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
  6. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
  7. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- D. Repairs
1. Repair precast structural concrete units if permitted by the Owner.
    - a. Repairs may be permitted if structural adequacy, serviceability, durability, and appearance of units has not been impaired.



2. Mix patching materials and repair units so cured patches blend with color, texture, and uniformity of adjacent exposed surfaces and show no apparent line of demarcation between original and repaired work, when viewed in typical daylight illumination from a distance of 20 feet (6 m).
3. Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings with galvanizing repair paint according to ASTM A 780.
4. Wire brush, clean, and paint damaged prime-painted components with same type of shop primer.
5. Remove and replace damaged precast structural concrete units that cannot be repaired or when repairs do not comply with requirements as determined by the Owner.

E. Cleaning

1. Clean mortar, plaster, fireproofing, weld slag, and other deleterious material from concrete surfaces and adjacent materials immediately.
2. Clean exposed surfaces of precast concrete units after erection and completion of joint treatment to remove weld marks, other markings, dirt, and stains.
  - a. Perform cleaning procedures, if necessary, according to precast concrete fabricator's written recommendations. Clean soiled precast concrete surfaces with detergent and water, using stiff fiber brushes and sponges, and rinse with clean water. Protect other work from staining or damage due to cleaning operations.
  - b. Do not use cleaning materials or processes that could change the appearance of exposed concrete finishes or damage adjacent materials.

END OF SECTION 03 41 16 00



---

**SECTION 03 41 16 00a - PRECAST LIGHTWEIGHT ROOF SLABS****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of precast lightweight roof deck concrete channels, concrete planks, and gypsum planks. Products shall be as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**1.2 PRODUCTS**

- A. Channel Slabs: Slabs shall be composed of Portland cement and lightweight aggregate with minimum compressive strength 3,750 psi. Legs shall be reinforced with deformed bars; web shall have welded wire fabric reinforcement. Channels shall support a 30 psf live load plus a 20 psf superimposed dead load.
- B. Concrete Planks: Planks shall be composed of Portland cement and lightweight aggregate with a minimum compressive strength of 3,750 psi. Planks shall be reinforced with welded wire fabric. Planks shall support a 30 psf live load plus a 20 psf superimposed dead load.
- C. Gypsum Planks shall conform to ASTM C 956, factory-laminated to 2-inch thickness, 2-foot wide panels. Planks shall be continuously supported along sides.
- D. Subpurlins shall be bulb-ties, ASTM A 440.
- E. Grout shall be lightweight concrete or gypsum concrete.

**1.3 EXECUTION**

- A. Concrete Channels and Planks shall be securely attached to support steel or concrete by metal clips or other approved attachments; minimum support bearing shall be 4 inches. Open joints between channels or planks shall be filled with lightweight concrete grout. Planks with tongue and groove edges may not require grouting.
- B. Gypsum Planks shall be snugly fit between bulb-tee subpurlins. Subpurlins shall be tack-welded or screw-attached to supporting steel or weld bar cast in supporting concrete. Joints at bulb-tees shall be grouted with gypsum grout.

END OF SECTION 03 41 16 00a



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
03 41 19 00	03 41 16 00	Plant-Precast Structural Concrete

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

**SECTION 03 41 23 00 - ARCHITECTURAL PRECAST CONCRETE****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for architectural precast concrete. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Summary**

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Architectural precast concrete cladding and load-bearing units.
  - b. Insulated, architectural precast concrete units.
  - c. Brick-faced, architectural precast concrete units.
  - d. Stone-faced, architectural precast concrete units.

**C. Definition**

1. Design Reference Sample: Sample of approved architectural precast concrete color, finish and texture, preapproved by the Owner.

**D. Performance Requirements**

1. Structural Performance: Provide architectural precast concrete units and connections capable of withstanding the following design loads within limits and under conditions indicated:
  - a. Loads: As indicated.

**E. Submittals**

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Design Mixtures: For each precast concrete mixture. Include compressive strength and water-absorption tests.
3. Shop Drawings: Detail fabrication and installation of architectural precast concrete units. Indicate locations, plans, elevations, dimensions, shapes, and cross sections of each unit. Indicate joints, reveals, and extent and location of each surface finish. Indicate details at building corners.

NOTE: The following paragraph is not required if Architect or Engineer assumes or is required by law to assume design responsibility.

  - a. Comprehensive engineering analysis signed and sealed **OR** certified, **as directed**, by the qualified professional engineer responsible for its preparation. Show governing panel types, connections, and types of reinforcement, including special reinforcement. Indicate location, type, magnitude, and direction of loads imposed on the building structural frame from architectural precast concrete.
4. Samples: For each type of finish indicated on exposed surfaces of architectural precast concrete units, in sets of 3, illustrating full range of finish, color, and texture variations expected; approximately 12 by 12 by 2 inches (300 by 300 by 50 mm).
5. Welding certificates.
6. Material Test Reports: For aggregates.
7. Material Certificates: Signed by manufacturers:
8. Field quality-control test and special inspection reports.

**F. Quality Assurance**

1. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm that assumes responsibility for engineering architectural precast concrete units to comply with performance requirements. This responsibility includes preparation of Shop Drawings and comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer.



- a. Participates in PCI's plant certification program and is designated a PCI-certified plant for Group A, Category A1 - Architectural Cladding and Load Bearing Units or participates in APA's "Plant Certification Program for Production of Architectural Precast Concrete Products" and is designated an APA-certified plant.
2. Design Standards: Comply with ACI 318 (ACI 318M) and design recommendations of PCI MNL 120, "PCI Design Handbook - Precast and Prestressed Concrete," applicable to types of architectural precast concrete units indicated.
3. Quality-Control Standard: For manufacturing procedures and testing requirements, quality-control recommendations, and dimensional tolerances for types of units required, comply with PCI MNL 117, "Manual for Quality Control for Plants and Production of Architectural Precast Concrete Products."
4. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D.1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel"; and AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel."
5. Calculated Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where indicated, provide architectural precast concrete units whose fire resistance has been calculated according to ACI 216.1/TMS 0216.1, "Standard Method for Determining Fire Resistance of Concrete and Masonry Construction Assemblies," **OR** PCI MNL 124, "Design for Fire Resistance of Precast Prestressed Concrete," **as directed**, and is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
6. Sample Panels: After sample approval and before fabricating architectural precast concrete units, produce a minimum of 2 sample panels approximately 16 sq. ft. (1.5 sq. m) in area for review by the Owner. Incorporate full-scale details of architectural features, finishes, textures, and transitions in sample panels.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver architectural precast concrete units in such quantities and at such times to limit unloading units temporarily on the ground.
2. Support units during shipment on nonstaining shock-absorbing material.
3. Store units with adequate dunnage and bracing and protect units to prevent contact with soil, to prevent staining, and to prevent cracking, distortion, warping or other physical damage.
4. Place stored units so identification marks are clearly visible, and units can be inspected.
5. Handle and transport units in a position consistent with their shape and design in order to avoid excessive stresses which would cause cracking or damage.
6. Lift and support units only at designated points shown on Shop Drawings.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Mold Materials

1. Molds: Rigid, dimensionally stable, non-absorptive material, warp and buckle free, that will provide continuous and true precast concrete surfaces within fabrication tolerances indicated; nonreactive with concrete and suitable for producing required finishes.
  - a. Mold-Release Agent: Commercially produced liquid-release agent that will not bond with, stain or adversely affect precast concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent surface or joint treatments of precast concrete.
2. Form Liners: Units of face design, texture, arrangement, and configuration indicated **OR** to match those used for precast concrete design reference sample, **as directed**. Furnish with manufacturer's recommended liquid-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect precast concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent surface or joint treatments of precast concrete.
3. Surface Retarder: Chemical set retarder, capable of temporarily delaying final hardening of newly placed concrete mixture to depth of reveal specified.

B. Reinforcing Materials

1. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed.
2. Low-Alloy-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 706/A 706M, deformed.



3. Galvanized Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) **OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed bars, ASTM A 767/A 767M, Class II zinc coated, hot-dip galvanized, and chromate wash treated after fabrication and bending, **as directed**.
  4. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) **OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed bars, ASTM A 775/A 775M or ASTM A 934/A 934M epoxy coated.
  5. Steel Bar Mats: ASTM A 184/A 184M, fabricated from ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) **OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed bars, assembled with clips.
  6. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 1064, fabricated from as-drawn **OR** galvanized, **as directed**, steel wire into flat sheets.
  7. Deformed-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 497/A 497M, flat sheet.
  8. Epoxy-Coated-Steel Wire: ASTM A 884/A 884M, Class A coated, plain **OR** deformed, **as directed**, flat sheet, Type 1 bendable **OR** 2 nonbendable, **as directed**, coating.
  9. Supports: Suspend reinforcement from back of mold or use bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place according to PCI MNL 117.
- C. Prestressing Tendons
1. Prestressing Strand: ASTM A 416/A 416M, Grade 270 (Grade 1860), uncoated, 7-wire, low-relaxation strand.
    - a. Coat unbonded post-tensioning strand with corrosion inhibitor passing ASTM D 1743 and sheath with polypropylene tendon sheathing. Include anchorage devices and coupler assemblies.
- D. Concrete Materials
1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or Type III, gray, unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. For surfaces exposed to view in finished structure, mix gray with white cement, of same type, brand, and mill source.
  2. Supplementary Cementitious Materials:
    - a. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C or F, with maximum loss on ignition of 3 percent.
    - b. Metakaolin Admixture: ASTM C 618, Class N.
    - c. Silica Fume Admixture: ASTM C 1240, with optional chemical and physical requirement.
    - d. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.
  3. Normal-Weight Aggregates: Except as modified by PCI MNL 117, ASTM C 33, with coarse aggregates complying with Class 5S. Stockpile fine and coarse aggregates for each type of exposed finish from a single source (pit or quarry) for Project.
    - a. Face-Mixture-Coarse Aggregates: Selected, hard, and durable; free of material that reacts with cement or causes staining; to match selected finish sample.
      - 1) Gradation: Uniformly graded **OR** Gap graded **OR** To match design reference sample, **as directed**.
    - b. Face-Mixture-Fine Aggregates: Selected, natural or manufactured sand of same material as coarse aggregate, unless otherwise approved by the Owner.
  4. Lightweight Aggregates: Except as modified by PCI MNL 117, ASTM C 330, with absorption less than 11 percent.
  5. Coloring Admixture: ASTM C 979, synthetic or natural mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures, temperature stable, and nonfading.
  6. Water: Potable; free from deleterious material that may affect color stability, setting, or strength of concrete and complying with chemical limits of PCI MNL 117.
  7. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260, certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other required admixtures.
  8. Chemical Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and to not contain calcium chloride, or more than 0.15 percent chloride ions or other salts by weight of admixture.
    - a. Water-Reducing Admixtures: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
    - b. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
    - c. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.



- d. Water-Reducing and Accelerating Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type E.
- e. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
- f. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
- g. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017 M.

#### E. Steel Connection Materials

1. Carbon-Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
2. Carbon-Steel-Headed Studs: ASTM A 108, AISI 1018 through AISI 1020, cold finished, AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Type A or B, with arc shields and with minimum mechanical properties of PCI MNL 117, Table 3.2.3.
3. Carbon-Steel Plate: ASTM A 283/A 283M.
4. Malleable Iron Castings: ASTM A 47/A 47M.
5. Carbon-Steel Castings: ASTM A 27/A 27M, Grade 60-30 (Grade 415-205).
6. High-Strength, Low-Alloy Structural Steel: ASTM A 572/A 572M.
7. Carbon-Steel Structural Tubing: ASTM A 500, Grade B.
8. Wrought Carbon-Steel Bars: ASTM A 675/A 675M, Grade 65 (Grade 450).
9. Deformed-Steel Wire or Bar Anchors: ASTM A 496 or ASTM A 706/A 706M.
10. Carbon-Steel Bolts and Studs: ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); carbon-steel, hex-head bolts and studs; carbon-steel nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and flat, unhardened steel washers, ASTM F 844.
11. High-Strength Bolts and Nuts: ASTM A 325 (ASTM A 325M), Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts; heavy hex carbon-steel nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and hardened carbon-steel washers, ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M).
12. Zinc-Coated Finish: For exterior steel items, steel in exterior walls, and items indicated for galvanizing, apply zinc coating by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M or ASTM A 153/A 153M **OR** electrodeposition according to ASTM B 633, SC 3, Types 1 and 2, **as directed**.
  - a. For steel shapes, plates, and tubing to be galvanized, limit silicon content of steel to less than 0.03 percent or to between 0.15 and 0.25 percent or limit sum of silicon and 2.5 times phosphorous content to 0.09 percent.
  - b. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint with dry film containing not less than 94 percent zinc dust by weight, and complying with DOD-P-21035A or SSPC-Paint 20.
13. Shop-Primed Finish: Prepare surfaces of nongalvanized steel items, except those surfaces to be embedded in concrete, according to requirements in SSPC-SP 3 and shop-apply lead- and chromate-free, rust-inhibitive primer, complying with performance requirements in MPI 79 **OR** SSPC-Paint 25, **as directed**, according to SSPC-PA 1.
14. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.

#### F. Stainless-Steel Connection Materials

1. Stainless-Steel Plate: ASTM A 666, Type 304, of grade suitable for application.
2. Stainless-Steel Bolts and Studs: ASTM F 593, Alloy 304 or 316, hex-head bolts and studs; stainless-steel nuts; and flat, stainless-steel washers.
  - a. Lubricate threaded parts of stainless-steel bolts with an antiseize thread lubricant during assembly.
3. Stainless-Steel-Headed Studs: ASTM A 276, with minimum mechanical properties of PCI MNL 117, Table 3.2.3.

#### G. Bearing Pads

1. Provide one of the following bearing pads for architectural precast concrete units as recommended by precast fabricator for application:
  - a. Elastomeric Pads: AASHTO M 251, plain, vulcanized, 100 percent polychloroprene (neoprene) elastomer, molded to size or cut from a molded sheet, Type A durometer hardness of 50 to 70, ASTM D 2240, minimum tensile strength 2250 psi (15.5 MPa), ASTM D 412.



- b. Random-Oriented, Fiber-Reinforced Elastomeric Pads: Preformed, randomly oriented synthetic fibers set in elastomer. Type A durometer hardness of 70 to 90, ASTM D 2240; capable of supporting a compressive stress of 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) with no cracking, splitting, or delaminating in the internal portions of pad. Test one specimen for every 200 pads used in Project.
  - c. Cotton-Duck-Fabric-Reinforced Elastomeric Pads: Preformed, horizontally layered cotton-duck fabric bonded to an elastomer; Type A durometer hardness of 80 to 100, ASTM D 2240; complying with AASHTO's "AASHTO Load and Resistance Factor Design (LRFD) Bridge Design Specifications, Division II, Section 18.10.2, or with MIL-C-882E.
  - d. Frictionless Pads: Tetrafluoroethylene (Teflon), glass-fiber reinforced, bonded to stainless or mild-steel plate, of type required for in-service stress.
  - e. High-Density Plastic: Multimonomer, nonleaching, plastic strip.
- H. Accessories
1. Reglets: Specified in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim".  
**OR**  
Reglets: PVC extrusions, **OR** Stainless steel, Type 302 or 304, **OR** Copper, **as directed**, felt or fiber filled, or with face opening of slots covered.
  2. Precast Accessories: Provide clips, hangers, plastic or steel shims, and other accessories required to install architectural precast concrete units.
- I. Grout Materials
1. Sand-Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I, and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 144 or ASTM C 404. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration.
  2. Nonmetallic, Nonshrink Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout containing selected silica sands, portland cement, shrinkage-compensating agents, plasticizing and water-reducing agents, complying with ASTM C 1107, Grade A for drypack and Grades B and C for flowable grout and of consistency suitable for application within a 30-minute working time.
  3. Epoxy-Resin Grout: Two-component, mineral-filled epoxy resin; ASTM C 881/C 881M, of type, grade, and class to suit requirements.
- J. Thin Brick Units And Accessories
1. Thin Brick Units: ASTM C 216, Type FBX or ASTM C 1088, Grade Exterior, Type TBX, not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick with a tolerance of plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), and as follows:
    - a. Face Size: 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) high by 8 inches (203 mm) long.
    - b. Face Size: 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) high by 7-1/2 to 7-5/8 inches (190 to 194 mm) long.
    - c. Face Size: 2-3/4 to 2-13/16 inches (70 to 71 mm) high by 7-1/2 to 7-5/8 inches (190 to 194 mm) long.
    - d. Face Size: 3-1/2 to 3-5/8 inches (89 to 92 mm) high by 7-1/2 to 7-5/8 inches (190 to 194 mm) long.
    - e. Face Size: 3-1/2 to 3-5/8 inches (89 to 92 mm) high by 11-1/2 to 11-5/8 inches (292 to 295 mm) long.
    - f. Where indicated to "match existing," provide thin brick matching color, texture, and face size of existing adjacent brick work.
    - g. Face Size: 57 mm high by 190 mm long.
    - h. Face Size: 70 mm high by 190 mm long.
    - i. Face Size: 90 mm high by 190 mm long.
    - j. Face Size: 90 mm high by 290 mm long.
    - k. Special Shapes: Include corners, edge corners, and end edge corners.
    - l. Initial Rate of Absorption: Less than 30 g/30 sq. in. (30 g/194 sq. cm) per minute; ASTM C 67.
    - m. Efflorescence: Tested according to ASTM C 67 and rated "not effloresced."



- n. Surface Coating: Thin brick with colors or textures applied as coatings shall withstand 50 cycles of freezing and thawing; ASTM C 67 with no observable difference in applied finish when viewed from 10 feet (3 m).
  - o. Face Color and Texture: Match approved samples **OR** Medium brown, wire cut **OR** Full-range red, sand molded **OR** Gray, velour, **as directed**.
  - p. Back Surface Texture: Scored, combed, wire roughened, ribbed, keybacked, or dovetailed.
2. Sand-Cement Mortar: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I, and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 144. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 4 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement.
  3. Latex-Portland Cement Pointing Grout: ANSI A118.6 and as follows:
    - a. Dry-grout mixture, factory prepared, of portland cement, graded aggregate, and dry, redispersible, ethylene-vinyl-acetate additive for mixing with water; uniformly colored.
    - b. Commercial portland cement grout, factory prepared, with liquid styrene-butadiene rubber or acrylic-resin latex additive; uniformly colored.
    - c. Colors: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
- K. Stone Materials And Accessories
1. Stone facing for architectural precast concrete is specified in Division 04 Section "Exterior Stone Cladding".
  2. Anchors: Stainless steel, ASTM A 666, Type 304, of temper and diameter required to support loads without exceeding allowable design stresses.
    - a. Fit each anchor leg with neoprene grommet collar of width at least twice the diameter and of length at least five times the diameter of anchor.
  3. Sealant Filler: ASTM C 920, low-modulus, multicomponent, nonsag urethane sealant complying with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" and that is nonstaining to stone substrate.
  4. Epoxy Filler: ASTM C 881/C 881M, 100 percent solids, sand-filled nonshrinking, nonstaining of type, class, and grade to suit application.
    - a. Elastomeric Anchor Sleeve: 1/2 inch (13 mm) long, Type A durometer hardness of 60, ASTM D 2240.
  5. Bond Breaker: Preformed, compressible, resilient, nonstaining, nonwaxing, closed-cell polyethylene foam pad, nonabsorbent to liquid and gas, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick **OR** Polyethylene sheet, ASTM D 4397, 6 to 10 mils (0.15 to 0.25 mm) thick, **as directed**.
- L. Insulated Panel Accessories
1. Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type I, 0.90 lb/cu. ft. (15 kg/cu. m) **OR** VIII, 1.15 lb/cu. ft. (18 kg/cu. m) **OR** II, 1.35 lb/cu. ft. (22 kg/cu. m), **as directed**; square **OR** ship-lap, **as directed**, edges; with R-value and thickness as required to meet Project requirements.
  2. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type IV, 1.60 lb/cu. ft. (26 kg/cu. m) **OR** X, 1.30 lb/cu. ft. (21 kg/cu. m) **OR** VI, 1.80 lb/cu. ft. (29 kg/cu. m), **as directed**; square **OR** ship-lap, **as directed**, edges; with R-value and thickness as required to meet Project requirements.
  3. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 591, Type I, 1.8 lb/cu. ft. (29 kg/cu. m) **OR** IV, 2 lb/cu. ft. (32 kg/cu. m) **OR** II, 2.5 lb/cu. ft. (40 kg/cu. m), **as directed**, unfaced, with R-value and thickness as required to meet Project requirements.
  4. Wythe Connectors: Glass-fiber and vinyl-ester polymer connectors **OR** Polypropylene pin connectors **OR** Stainless-steel pin connectors **OR** Bent galvanized reinforcing bars or galvanized welded wire trusses **OR** Cylindrical metal sleeve anchors, **as directed**, manufactured to connect wythes of precast concrete panels.
- M. Concrete Mixtures
1. Prepare design mixtures for each type of precast concrete required.
    - a. Limit use of fly ash and silica fume to 20 percent of portland cement by weight; limit metakaolin and silica fume to 10 percent of portland cement by weight.





2. Design mixtures may be prepared by a qualified independent testing agency or by qualified precast plant personnel at architectural precast concrete fabricator's option.
3. Limit water-soluble chloride ions to maximum percentage by weight of cement permitted by ACI 318 (ACI 318M) or PCI MNL 117 when tested according to ASTM C 1218/C 1218M.
4. Normal-Weight Concrete Mixtures: Proportion mixtures by either laboratory trial batch or field test data methods according to ACI 211.1, with materials to be used on Project, to provide normal-weight concrete with the following properties:
  - a. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) minimum.
  - b. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.45.
5. Water Absorption: 6 percent by weight or 14 percent by volume, tested according to PCI MNL 117.
6. Lightweight Concrete Backup Mixtures: Proportion mixtures by either laboratory trial batch or field test data methods according to ACI 211.2, with materials to be used on Project, to provide lightweight concrete with the following properties:
  - a. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 5000 psi (34.5 MPa).
  - b. Unit Weight: Calculated equilibrium unit weight of 115 lb/cu. ft. (1842 kg/cu. m), plus or minus 3 lb/cu. ft. (48 kg/cu. m), according to ASTM C 567.
7. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in concrete at point of placement having an air content complying with PCI MNL 117.
8. When included in design mixtures, add other admixtures to concrete mixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.

#### N. Mold Fabrication

1. Molds: Accurately construct molds, mortar tight, of sufficient strength to withstand pressures due to concrete-placement operations and temperature changes and for prestressing and detensioning operations. Coat contact surfaces of molds with release agent before reinforcement is placed. Avoid contamination of reinforcement and prestressing tendons by release agent.
  - a. Place form liners accurately to provide finished surface texture indicated. Provide solid backing and supports to maintain stability of liners during concrete placement. Coat form liner with form-release agent.
2. Maintain molds to provide completed architectural precast concrete units of shapes, lines, and dimensions indicated, within fabrication tolerances specified.
  - a. Form joints are not permitted on faces exposed to view in the finished work.
  - b. Edge and Corner Treatment: Uniformly chamfered **OR** radiused, **as directed**.

#### O. Thin Brick Facings

NOTE: The following 2 paragraphs are not applicable if bonding back of thin brick directly to concrete instead of using mortar.

1. Place form liner templates accurately to provide grid for thin brick facings. Provide solid backing and supports to maintain stability of liners while placing thin bricks and during concrete placement.
2. Securely place thin brick units face down into form liner pockets and place concrete backing mixture.
3. Completely fill joint cavities between thin brick units with sand-cement mortar, and place precast concrete backing mixture while sand-cement mortar is still fluid enough to ensure bond.
4. Mix and install grout according to ANSI A108.10. Completely fill joint cavities between thin brick units with grout, and compress into place without spreading grout onto faces of thin brick units. Remove excess grout immediately to prevent staining of brick.
  - a. Tool joints to a slightly concave **OR** grapevine **OR** V-, **as directed**, shape when pointing grout is thumbprint hard.
5. Clean faces and joints of brick facing.

#### P. Stone Facings

1. Accurately position stone facings to comply with requirements and in locations indicated on Shop Drawings. Install anchors, supports, and other attachments indicated or necessary to secure



stone in place. Keep concrete reinforcement a minimum of 3/4 inch (19 mm) from the back surface of stone. Use continuous spacers to obtain uniform joints of widths indicated and with edges and faces aligned according to established relationships and indicated tolerances.

- a. Stone to Precast Anchorages: Provide anchors in numbers, types and locations required to satisfy specified performance criteria, but not less than 2 anchors per stone unit of less than 2 sq. ft. (0.19 sq. m) in area and 4 anchors per unit of less than 12 sq. ft. (1.1 sq. m) in area; for units larger than 12 sq. ft. (1.1 sq. m) in area, provide anchors spaced not more than 24 inches (600 mm) o.c. horizontally and vertically. Locate anchors a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) from stone edge.
2. Fill anchor holes with sealant filler and install anchors **OR** epoxy filler and install anchors with elastomeric anchor sleeve at back surface of stone, **as directed**.
  - a. Install polyethylene sheet to prevent bond between back of stone facing and concrete substrate and to ensure no passage of precast matrix to stone surface.  
**OR**  
Install 1/8-inch (3-mm) polyethylene-foam bond breaker to prevent bond between back of stone facing and concrete substrate and to ensure no passage of precast matrix to stone surface. Maintain minimum projection requirements of stone anchors into concrete substrate.

Q. Fabrication

1. Cast-in Anchors, Inserts, Plates, Angles, and Other Anchorage Hardware: Fabricate anchorage hardware with sufficient anchorage and embedment to comply with design requirements. Accurately position for attachment of loose hardware, and secure in place during precasting operations. Locate anchorage hardware where it does not affect position of main reinforcement or concrete placement.
  - a. Weld-headed studs and deformed bar anchors used for anchorage according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS C5.4, "Recommended Practices for Stud Welding."
2. Furnish loose hardware items including steel plates, clip angles, seat angles, anchors, dowels, cramps, hangers, and other hardware shapes for securing architectural precast concrete units to supporting and adjacent construction.
3. Cast-in reglets, slots, holes, and other accessories in architectural precast concrete units as indicated on the Contract Drawings.
4. Cast-in openings larger than 10 inches (250 mm) in any dimension. Do not drill or cut openings or prestressing strand without the Owner's approval.
5. Reinforcement: Comply with recommendations in PCI MNL 117 for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
  - a. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, and other materials that reduce or destroy the bond with concrete. When damage to epoxy-coated reinforcing exceeds limits specified in ASTM A 775/A 775M, repair with patching material compatible with coating material and epoxy coat bar ends after cutting.
  - b. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement during concrete-placement and consolidation operations. Completely conceal support devices to prevent exposure on finished surfaces.
  - c. Place reinforcement to maintain at least 3/4-inch (19-mm) minimum coverage. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position while placing concrete. Direct wire tie ends away from finished, exposed concrete surfaces.
  - d. Place reinforcing steel and prestressing strand to maintain at least 3/4-inch (19-mm) minimum concrete cover. Increase cover requirements for reinforcing steel to 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) when units are exposed to corrosive environment or severe exposure conditions. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position while placing concrete. Direct wire tie ends away from finished, exposed concrete surfaces.
  - e. Install welded wire fabric in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh spacing and wire tie laps, where required by design. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.



6. Reinforce architectural precast concrete units to resist handling, transportation, and erection stresses.
  7. Prestress tendons for architectural precast concrete units by either pretensioning or post-tensioning methods. Comply with PCI MNL 117.
    - a. Delay detensioning or post-tensioning of precast, prestressed architectural concrete units until concrete has reached its indicated minimum design release compressive strength as established by test cylinders cured under same conditions as concrete.
    - b. Detension pretensioned tendons either by gradually releasing tensioning jacks or by heat-cutting tendons, using a sequence and pattern to prevent shock or unbalanced loading.
    - c. If concrete has been heat cured, detension while concrete is still warm and moist to avoid dimensional changes that may cause cracking or undesirable stresses.
    - d. Protect strand ends and anchorages with bituminous, zinc-rich, or epoxy paint to avoid corrosion and possible rust spots.
  8. Comply with requirements in PCI MNL 117 and requirements in this Section for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete. After concrete batching, no additional water may be added.
  9. Place face mixture to a minimum thickness after consolidation of the greater of 1 inch (25 mm) or 1.5 times the maximum aggregate size, but not less than the minimum reinforcing cover specified.
  10. Place concrete in a continuous operation to prevent seams or planes of weakness from forming in precast concrete units.
    - a. Place backup concrete mixture to ensure bond with face-mixture concrete.
  11. Thoroughly consolidate placed concrete by internal and external vibration without dislocating or damaging reinforcement and built-in items, and minimize pour lines, honeycombing, or entrapped air on surfaces. Use equipment and procedures complying with PCI MNL 117.
    - a. Place self-consolidating concrete without vibration according to PCI TR-6, "Interim Guidelines for the Use of Self-Consolidating Concrete in Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute Member Plants."
  12. Comply with PCI MNL 117 for hot- and cold-weather concrete placement.
  13. Identify pickup points of architectural precast concrete units and orientation in structure with permanent markings, complying with markings indicated on Shop Drawings. Imprint or permanently mark casting date on each architectural precast concrete unit on a surface that will not show in finished structure.
  14. Cure concrete, according to requirements in PCI MNL 117, by moisture retention without heat or by accelerated heat curing using low-pressure live steam or radiant heat and moisture. Cure units until compressive strength is high enough to ensure that stripping does not have an effect on performance or appearance of final product.
  15. Discard and replace architectural precast concrete units that do not comply with requirements, including structural, manufacturing tolerance, and appearance, unless repairs meet requirements in PCI MNL 117 and the Owner's approval.
- R. Insulated Panel Casting
1. Cast and screed supported wythe over mold.
  2. Place insulation boards abutting edges and ends of adjacent boards. Insert wythe connectors through insulation, and consolidate concrete around connectors according to connector manufacturer's written instructions.
  3. Cast and screed top wythe to meet required finish.
- S. Fabrication Tolerances
1. Fabricate architectural precast concrete units straight and true to size and shape with exposed edges and corners precise and true so each finished panel complies with PCI MNL 117 product tolerances as well as position tolerances for cast-in items.  
**OR**  
Fabricate architectural precast concrete units straight and true to size and shape with exposed edges and corners precise and true so each finished panel complies with the following product tolerances:



- a. Overall Height and Width of Units, Measured at the Face Exposed to View: As follows:
  - 1) 10 feet (3 m) or under, plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
  - 2) 10 to 20 feet (3 to 6 m), plus 1/8 inch (3 mm), minus 3/16 inch (5 mm).
  - 3) 20 to 40 feet (6 to 12 m), plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - 4) Each additional 10 feet (3 m), plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.5 mm).
- b. Overall Height and Width of Units, Measured at the Face Not Exposed to View: As follows:
  - 1) 10 feet (3 m) or under, plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - 2) 10 to 20 feet (3 to 6 m), plus 1/4 inch (6 mm), minus 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - 3) 20 to 40 feet (6 to 12 m), plus or minus 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - 4) Each additional 10 feet (3 m), plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
- c. Total Thickness or Flange Thickness: Plus 1/4 inch (6 mm), minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
- d. Rib Thickness: Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
- e. Rib to Edge of Flange: Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
- f. Distance between Ribs: Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
- g. Variation from Square or Designated Skew (Difference in Length of the Two Diagonal Measurements): Plus or minus 1/8 inch per 72 inches (3 mm per 1830 mm) or 1/2 inch (13 mm) total, whichever is greater.
- h. Length and Width of Block-outs and Openings within One Unit: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
- i. Location and Dimension of Block-outs Hidden from View and Used for HVAC and Utility Penetrations: Plus or minus 3/4 inch (19 mm).
- j. Dimensions of Haunches: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
- k. Haunch Bearing Surface Deviation from Specified Plane: Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
- l. Difference in Relative Position of Adjacent Haunch Bearing Surfaces from Specified Relative Position: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
- m. Bowing: Plus or minus L/360, maximum 1 inch (25 mm).
- n. Local Smoothness: 1/4 inch per 10 feet (6 mm per 3 m).
- o. Warping: 1/16 inch per 12 inches (1.5 mm per 300 mm) of distance from nearest adjacent corner.
- p. Tipping and Flushness of Plates: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
- q. Dimensions of Architectural Features and Rustications: Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
2. Position Tolerances: For cast-in items measured from datum line location, as indicated on Shop Drawings.
  - a. Weld Plates: Plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
  - b. Inserts: Plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm).
  - c. Handling Devices: Plus or minus 3 inches (75 mm).
  - d. Reinforcing Steel and Welded Wire Fabric: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm) where position has structural implications or affects concrete cover; otherwise, plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm).
  - e. Reinforcing Steel Extending out of Member: Plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm) of plan dimensions.
  - f. Tendons: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm), vertical; plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm), horizontal.
  - g. Location of Rustication Joints: Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
  - h. Location of Opening within Panel: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - i. Location of Flashing Reglets: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - j. Location of Flashing Reglets at Edge of Panel: Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
  - k. Reglets for Glazing Gaskets: Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
  - l. Electrical Outlets, Hose Bibs: Plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm).
  - m. Location of Bearing Surface from End of Member: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - n. Allowable Rotation of Plate, Channel Inserts, and Electrical Boxes: 2-degree rotation or 1/4 inch (6 mm) maximum over the full dimension of unit.
  - o. Position of Sleeve: Plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm).
  - p. Location of Window Washer Track or Buttons: Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).



3. Brick-Faced Architectural Precast Concrete Units: Restrict the following misalignments to 2 percent of number of bricks in a unit.
  - a. Alignment of Mortar Joints:
    - 1) Jog in Alignment: 1/8 inch (3 mm).
    - 2) Alignment with Panel Centerline: Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
  - b. Variation in Width of Exposed Mortar Joints: Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
  - c. Tipping of Individual Bricks from the Panel Plane of Exposed Brick Surface: Plus 1/16 inch (1.5 mm); minus 1/4 inch (6 mm) less than or equal to depth of form liner joint.
  - d. Exposed Brick Surface Parallel to Primary Control Surface of Panel: Plus 1/4 inch (6 mm); minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
  - e. Individual Brick Step in Face from Panel Plane of Exposed Brick Surface: Plus 1/16 inch (1.5 mm); minus 1/4 inch (6 mm) less than or equal to depth of form liner joint.
4. Stone Veneer-Faced Architectural Precast Concrete Units (for smooth-finished stone):
  - a. Variation in Cross-Sectional Dimensions: For thickness of walls from dimensions indicated: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - b. Variation in Joint Width: 1/8 inch in 36 inches (3 mm in 900 mm) or a quarter of nominal joint width, whichever is less.
  - c. Variation in Plane between Adjacent Stone Units (Lipping): 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) difference between planes of adjacent units.

#### T. Finishes

1. Panel faces shall be free of joint marks, grain, and other obvious defects. Corners, including false joints shall be uniform, straight, and sharp. Finish exposed-face surfaces of architectural precast concrete units to match approved design reference sample **OR** sample panels, **as directed**, and as follows:
  - a. PCI's "Architectural Precast Concrete - Color and Texture Selection Guide," of plate numbers indicated.
  - b. As-Cast Surface Finish: Provide surfaces free of pockets, sand streaks, and honeycombs.
  - c. Textured-Surface Finish: Impart by form liners or inserts to provide surfaces free of pockets, streaks, and honeycombs, with uniform color and texture.
  - d. Bushhammer Finish: Use power or hand tools to remove matrix and fracture coarse aggregates.
  - e. Exposed-Aggregate Finish: Use chemical retarding agents applied to concrete forms and washing and brushing procedures to expose aggregate and surrounding matrix surfaces after form removal.
  - f. Abrasive-Blast Finish: Use abrasive grit, equipment, application techniques, and cleaning procedures to expose aggregate and surrounding matrix surfaces.
  - g. Acid-Etched Finish: Use acid and hot-water solution, equipment, application techniques, and cleaning procedures to expose aggregate and surrounding matrix surfaces. Protect hardware, connections, and insulation from acid attack.
  - h. Honed Finish: Use continuous mechanical abrasion with fine grit, followed by filling and rubbing procedures.
  - i. Polished Finish: Use continuous mechanical abrasion with fine grit, followed by filling and rubbing procedures.
  - j. Sand-Embedment Finish: Use selected stones placed in a sand bed in bottom of mold, with sand removed after curing.
2. Finish exposed top **OR** bottom, **as directed**, and back, **as directed**, surfaces of architectural precast concrete units to match face-surface finish.  
**OR**  
Finish exposed top **OR** bottom, **as directed**, and back, **as directed**, surfaces of architectural precast concrete units by smooth, steel-trowel finish.
3. Finish unexposed surfaces of architectural precast concrete units by float finish.

#### U. Source Quality Control

1. Quality-Control Testing: Test and inspect precast concrete according to PCI MNL 117 requirements. If using self-consolidating concrete, also test and inspect according to PCI TR-6,



"Interim Guidelines for the Use of Self-Consolidating Concrete in Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute Member Plants."

2. Strength of precast concrete units will be considered deficient if units fail to comply with ACI 318 (ACI 318M) requirements for concrete strength.
3. Testing: If there is evidence that strength of precast concrete units may be deficient or may not comply with ACI 318 (ACI 318M) requirements, precaster will employ an independent testing agency to obtain, prepare, and test cores drilled from hardened concrete to determine compressive strength according to ASTM C 42/C 42M.
  - a. A minimum of three representative cores will be taken from units of suspect strength, from locations directed by the Owner.
  - b. Cores will be tested in an air-dry condition.
  - c. Strength of concrete for each series of 3 cores will be considered satisfactory if average compressive strength is equal to at least 85 percent of 28-day design compressive strength and no single core is less than 75 percent of 28-day design compressive strength.
  - d. Test results will be made in writing on same day that tests are performed, with copies to the Owner, Contractor, and precast concrete fabricator. Test reports will include the following:
    - 1) Project identification name and number.
    - 2) Date when tests were performed.
    - 3) Name of precast concrete fabricator.
    - 4) Name of concrete testing agency.
    - 5) Identification letter, name, and type of precast concrete unit(s) represented by core tests; design compressive strength; type of break; compressive strength at breaks, corrected for length-diameter ratio; and direction of applied load to core in relation to horizontal plane of concrete as placed.
4. Patching: If core test results are satisfactory and precast concrete units comply with requirements, clean and dampen core holes and solidly fill with precast concrete mixture that has no coarse aggregate, and finish to match adjacent precast concrete surfaces.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation

1. Install clips, hangers, bearing pads, and other accessories required for connecting architectural precast concrete units to supporting members and backup materials.
2. Erect architectural precast concrete level, plumb, and square within specified allowable tolerances. Provide temporary supports and bracing as required to maintain position, stability, and alignment as units are being permanently connected.
  - a. Install temporary steel or plastic spacing shims or bearing pads as precast concrete units are being erected. Tack weld steel shims to each other to prevent shims from separating.
  - b. Maintain horizontal and vertical joint alignment and uniform joint width as erection progresses.
  - c. Remove projecting lifting devices and grout fill voids within recessed lifting devices flush with surface of adjacent precast surfaces when recess is exposed.
  - d. Unless otherwise indicated, maintain uniform joint widths of 3/4 inch (19 mm).
3. Connect architectural precast concrete units in position by bolting, welding, grouting, or as otherwise indicated on Shop Drawings. Remove temporary shims, wedges, and spacers as soon as practical after connecting and grouting are completed.
  - a. Do not permit connections to disrupt continuity of roof flashing.
4. Welding: Comply with applicable AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.4 for welding, welding electrodes, appearance, quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
  - a. Protect architectural precast concrete units and bearing pads from damage by field welding or cutting operations, and provide noncombustible shields as required.
  - b. Welds not specified shall be continuous fillet welds, using no less than the minimum fillet as specified by AWS.



- c. Clean weld-affected metal surfaces with chipping hammer followed by brushing, and apply a minimum 4.0-mil- (0.1-mm-) thick coat of galvanized repair paint to galvanized surfaces according to ASTM A 780.  
**OR**  
Clean weld-affected metal surfaces with chipping hammer followed by brushing, and reprime damaged painted surfaces.
  - d. Remove, reweld, or repair incomplete and defective welds.
  5. At bolted connections, use lock washers, tack welding, or other approved means to prevent loosening of nuts after final adjustment.
    - a. Where slotted connections are used, verify bolt position and tightness. For sliding connections, properly secure bolt but allow bolt to move within connection slot. For friction connections, apply specified bolt torque and check 25 percent of bolts at random by calibrated torque wrench.
  6. Grouting Connections: Grout connections where required or indicated. Retain grout in place until hard enough to support itself. Pack spaces with stiff grout material, tamping until voids are completely filled. Place grout to finish smooth, level, and plumb with adjacent concrete surfaces. Keep grouted joints damp for not less than 24 hours after initial set. Promptly remove grout material from exposed surfaces before it affects finishes or hardens.
- B. Erection Tolerances
1. Erect architectural precast concrete units level, plumb, square, true, and in alignment without exceeding the noncumulative erection tolerances of PCI MNL 117, Appendix I.
- C. Field Quality Control
1. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections and prepare reports:
    - a. Erection of precast concrete members.
  2. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
  3. Field welds will be subject to visual inspections and nondestructive testing according to ASTM E 165 or ASTM E 709. High-strength bolted connections will be subject to inspections.
  4. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and the Owner.
  5. Repair or remove and replace work where tests and inspections indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
  6. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- D. Repairs
1. Repair architectural precast concrete units if permitted by the Owner. the Owner reserves the right to reject repaired units that do not comply with requirements.
  2. Mix patching materials and repair units so cured patches blend with color, texture, and uniformity of adjacent exposed surfaces and show no apparent line of demarcation between original and repaired work, when viewed in typical daylight illumination from a distance of 20 feet (6 m).
  3. Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings with galvanizing repair paint according to ASTM A 780.
  4. Wire brush, clean, and paint damaged prime-painted components with same type of shop primer.
  5. Remove and replace damaged architectural precast concrete units when repairs do not comply with requirements.
- E. Cleaning
1. Clean surfaces of precast concrete units exposed to view.
  2. Clean mortar, plaster, fireproofing, weld slag, and other deleterious material from concrete surfaces and adjacent materials immediately.
  3. Clean exposed surfaces of precast concrete units after erection and completion of joint treatment to remove weld marks, other markings, dirt, and stains.



- 
- a. Perform cleaning procedures, if necessary, according to precast concrete fabricator's recommendations. Clean soiled precast concrete surfaces with detergent and water, using stiff fiber brushes and sponges, and rinse with clean water. Protect other work from staining or damage due to cleaning operations.
  - b. Do not use cleaning materials or processes that could change the appearance of exposed concrete finishes or damage adjacent materials.

END OF SECTION 03 41 23 00





---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
03 41 23 00	03 41 16 00	Plant-Precast Structural Concrete

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 03 41 26 00 - UNBONDED POST-TENSIONED CONCRETE

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for unbonded post-tensioned concrete. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Furnishing post-tensioning reinforcement and accessories including non-encapsulated and encapsulated prestressing tendons, pocket formers, support bars, bar chairs, and slab bolsters.
  - b. Installing post-tensioning tendons.
  - c. Performing post-tensioning operations including stressing and finishing tendons.
  - d. Recording tendon elongations and gage pressures.
  - e. Finishing tendon ends and patching stressing pockets.

#### C. Definitions

1. Strand Tail: Excess strand length extending past the anchorage device.
2. Stressing Blockout: Opening created in the slab to allow access to stressing-end anchorages.
3. Stressing Pocket: Void formed by pocket former at stressing-end anchorage to provide required cover over wedges and strand tail.
4. Wedge Cavity: Cone-shaped hole in anchorage device designed to hold the wedges that anchor the strand.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. Structural Performance: Design cast-in-place, post-tensioned concrete reinforcement as indicated in this Section. Show final effective forces, tendon profiles, and nonprestressed reinforcement on design Shop Drawings.
2. Employ professional Engineer, registered in <Insert State>, and acceptable to the Owner, to perform design. Sign and seal design Shop Drawings and design calculations submitted to the Owner for review. Prepare and seal drawings and calculations for submittal to authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with design intent, criteria, and requirements of the Contract Documents.
3. Design structure to withstand loads according to governing codes, within limits and under conditions indicated.
4. Average Precompression:
  - a. Minimum Average Slab Precompression: 125 psi (0.86 MPa) **OR** 200 psi (1.4 MPa), **as directed.**
  - b. Maximum Average Slab Precompression: 300 psi (2.1 MPa) **OR** 500 psi (3.4 MPa), **as directed.**
  - c. Minimum Average Precompression in T-, L-, and Rectangular-Beam Cross Sections: 200 psi (1.4 MPa).
  - d. Minimum Precompression in Slab Section Not Included in T- or L-Beam Section: 100 psi (0.7 MPa).
  - e. Maximum Precompression in Transfer Girders: 1000 psi (6.9 MPa). Specify stage-stressing sequence to avoid overstress.
5. Comply with ACI 318 (ACI 318M) limits on stresses at transfer of prestress and under service load.
6. Comply with ACI 318 (ACI 318M) requirements for minimum bonded reinforcement.
7. Comply with ACI 318 (ACI 318M) requirements for concrete cover over reinforcement.



8. Design members such that thickness and concrete cover over reinforcement comply with fire-resistance requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
9. Design members such that thickness and concrete cover over reinforcement comply with the following fire-resistance requirements:
  - a. Slabs: Two hours.
  - b. Beam: Two hours.
10. Deflection Limits Including Creep and Shrinkage Effects:
  - a. Total Dead Load:  $L/600$ .
  - b. Total Dead Plus Live Load:  $L/360$ .
11. Slab Design:
  - a. Minimum Slab Thickness: 5-1/2 inches (140 mm).
    - 1) Minimum Thickness if Conduit Is Embedded: 6 inches (150 mm).
    - 2) Maximum Span/Depth Ratio: 45.
  - b. Locate closure strips at midspan and adjust tendon forces and profiles accordingly. Calculate moments in spans with closure strips assuming a continuous slab. Provide only nonprestressed reinforcement within closure strips. Design reinforcement in closure strip to carry ultimate moment at midspan.

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
    - 1) Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
3. Shop Drawings: Installation drawings including plans, elevations, sections, details, and notes prepared by or under the supervision of a registered professional engineer detailing tendon layout and installation procedures.
4. Product Certificates:
5. Qualification Data: For Installer, manufacturer, and testing agency.
6. Mill Test Reports: For prestressing strand.
7. Field quality-control test reports.
8. Calibration Certificates: For jacks and gages.
9. Stressing Records: Filled out by testing agency during stressing operation with the following information recorded:
  - a. Name of Project.
  - b. Date of approved installation drawings used for installation and stressing.
  - c. Floor number and concrete placement area.
  - d. Date of stressing operation.
  - e. Weather conditions including temperature and rainfall.
  - f. Name and signature of inspector.
  - g. Name of individual in charge of stressing operation.
  - h. Serial or identification numbers of jack and gage.
  - i. Date of jack-and-gage calibration certificates.
  - j. Gage pressure to achieve required stressing force per supplied calibration chart.
  - k. Tendon identification mark.
  - l. Calculated tendon elongation.
  - m. Actual tendon elongation.
  - n. Actual gage pressure.

#### F. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer whose full-time Project superintendent has successfully completed PTI's Level 1 - Field Fundamentals course or has equivalent verifiable experience and knowledge acceptable to the Owner.



- a. Superintendent must have received training from post-tensioning supplier in the operation of stressing equipment to be used on Project.
  2. Manufacturer Qualifications: Fabricating plant certified by PTI.
  3. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
    - a. Testing Agency Inspector: Personnel performing field inspections and measuring elongations shall have successfully completed PTI's Level 1 - Field Fundamentals course or shall have equivalent qualifications acceptable to the Owner.
  4. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 423.6, "Specification for Unbonded Single Strand Tendons," unless otherwise indicated in the Contract Documents.
  5. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
- G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver, store, and handle post-tensioning materials according to PTI's "Field Procedures Manual for Unbonded Single Strand Tendons."
- H. Coordination
1. Attachments and Penetrations:
    - a. Attach permanent fixtures such as curtain-wall systems, handrails, fire-protection equipment, lights, and security devices to the slab using embedded anchors. Drilled anchors are not allowed unless authorized in writing by the Owner.
    - b. Power-driven fasteners are not allowed unless authorized in writing by the Owner.
    - c. Core drilling for sleeves or other penetrations is not allowed unless authorized in writing by the Owner.
    - d. Protect penetrations within 18 inches (460 mm) of an anchorage with ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40 steel pipe.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

- A. Prestressing Tendons
1. Prestressing Strand: ASTM A 416/A 416M, Grade 270 (Grade 1860), uncoated, 7-wire, low-relaxation, 0.5-inch- (12.7-mm-) **OR** 0.6-inch- (15.2-mm-), **as directed**, diameter strand.
  2. Post-Tensioning Coating: Compound with friction-reducing, moisture-displacing, and corrosion-inhibiting properties specified in ACI 423.6; chemically stable and nonreactive with prestressing steel, nonprestressed reinforcement, sheathing material, and concrete.
    - a. Minimum Coating Weight: 2.5 lb (1.14 kg) for 0.5-inch- (12.7-mm-) diameter strand **OR** 3 lb (1.36 kg) for 0.6-inch- (15.2-mm-) diameter strand, **as directed**, per 100 feet (30 m) of strand.
    - b. Completely fill annular space between strand and sheathing over entire tendon length with post-tensioning coating.
  3. Tendon Sheathing: Comply with ACI 423.6.
    - a. Minimum Thickness: 0.050 inch (1.25 mm) for polyethylene or polypropylene with a minimum density of 0.034 lb/cu. in. (0.9 g/cu. cm).
    - b. Continuous over the entire length of tendon to provide watertight encapsulation of strand and between anchorages to prevent intrusion of cement paste or loss of coating for a non-encapsulated system.
  4. Anchorage Device and Coupler Assembly: Assembly of strand, wedges, and anchorage device or coupler complying with static and fatigue testing requirements in ACI 423.6 and capable of developing 95 percent of actual breaking strength of strand.
    - a. Anchorage Bearing Stresses: Comply with ACI 423.6 for stresses at transfer load and service load.
    - b. Fixed-End Anchorage Device Assemblies: Plant fabricated with wedges seated at a load of not less than 80 percent and not more than 85 percent of breaking strength of strand.
  5. Encapsulation System: Watertight encapsulation of prestressing strand consisting of the following:



- a. Wedge-Cavity Caps: Attached to anchorages with a positive mechanical connection and completely filled with post-tensioning coating.
    - 1) Caps for Fixed and Stressing-End Anchorages Devices: Designed to provide watertight encapsulation of wedge cavity. Sized to allow required extension of strand past the wedges.
      - a) Attach cap for fixed-end anchorage device in fabricating plant.
    - 2) Caps at Intermediate Anchorages: Open to allow passage of strand.
  - b. Sleeves: Attached to anchorage device with positive mechanical connection; overlapped a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) with sheathing and completely filled with post-tensioning coating.
- B. Nonprestressed Steel Bars
1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 **OR** 60, **as directed**, percent.
  2. Support Bars, Reinforcing Bars, Hairpins: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed. Minimum support bar size is 1/2 inch (13 mm).
  3. Low-Alloy-Steel Support Bars, Reinforcing Bars, Hairpins: ASTM A 706/A 706M, deformed.
  4. Galvanized Support Bars, Reinforcing Bars, Hairpins: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) **OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed bars, ASTM A 767/A 767M, Class I **OR** II, **as directed**, zinc coated after fabrication and bending.
    - a. Zinc Repair Material: ASTM A 780, zinc-based solder, paint containing zinc dust, or sprayed zinc.
  5. Epoxy-Coated Support Bars, Reinforcing Bars, Hairpins: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) **OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed bars, ASTM A 775/A 775M epoxy coated with less than 2 percent damaged coating in each 12-inch (300-mm) bar length.
    - a. Epoxy Repair Coating: Liquid, two-part, epoxy repair coating; compatible with epoxy coating on bars and complying with ASTM A 775/A 775M. Repair damaged areas according to ASTM D 3963/D 3963M.
  6. Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening tendons and tendon support bars in place. Manufacture bar supports, according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete of greater compressive strength than concrete, and as follows:
    - a. For uncoated bars, use all-plastic **OR** CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected **OR** CRSI Class 2 stainless-steel, **as directed**, bar supports.
    - b. For epoxy-coated bars, use CRSI Class 1A epoxy-coated or other dielectric-polymer-coated wire **OR** all-plastic, **as directed**, bar supports.
    - c. For zinc-coated bars, use galvanized wire or dielectric-polymer-coated wire **OR** all-plastic, **as directed**, bar supports.
- C. Accessories
1. Pocket Formers: Capable of completely sealing wedge cavity; sized to provide the required cover over the anchorage and allow access for cutting strand tail.
  2. Anchorage Fasteners: Stainless-steel **OR** Galvanized steel **OR** Uncoated steel, **as directed**, nails, wires, and screws used to attach anchorage devices to formwork.
  3. Sheathing Repair Tape: Elastic, self-adhesive, moistureproof tape with minimum width of 2 inches (50 mm), in contrasting color to tendon sheathing; nonreactive with sheathing, coating, or prestressing steel.
- D. Patching Material
1. Patching Material: One component, polymer-modified, premixed patching material containing selected silica aggregates and portland cement, suitable for vertical and overhead application. Do not use material containing chlorides or other chemicals known to be deleterious to prestressing steel or material that is reactive with prestressing steel, anchorage device material, or concrete.



### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Formwork

1. Provide formwork for post-tensioned elements as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete". Design formwork to support load redistribution that may occur during stressing operation. Ensure that formwork does not restrain elastic shortening, camber, or deflection resulting from application of prestressing force.
2. Do not remove forms supporting post-tensioned elements until tendons have been fully stressed and elongations have been approved by the Owner, unless authorized in writing by the Owner.
3. Do not place concrete in supported floors until tendons on supporting floors have been stressed and elongations have been approved by the Owner, unless authorized in writing by the Owner.

#### B. Nonprestressed Steel Reinforcement Placement

1. Placement of nonprestressed steel reinforcement is specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete". Coordinate placement of nonprestressed steel reinforcement with installation of post-tensioning tendons.

#### C. Tendon Installation

1. Install tendons according to approved installation drawings and procedures stated in PTI's "Field Procedures Manual for Unbonded Single Strand Tendons."
2. Tendon Supports: Provide continuous slab bolsters or bars supported on individual high chairs spaced at a maximum of 42 inches (1070 mm) o.c. to ensure tendons remain in their designated positions during construction operations and concrete placement.
  - a. Support tendons as required to provide profiles shown on installation drawings. Position supports at high and low points and at intervals not exceeding 48 inches (1220 mm). Ensure that tendon profiles between high and low points are smooth parabolic curves.
  - b. Attach tendons to supporting chairs and reinforcement without damaging tendon sheathing.
  - c. Support slab tendons independent of beam reinforcement.
3. Maintain tendon profile within maximum allowable deviations from design profile as follows:
  - a. 1/4 inch (6.3 mm) for member depth less than or equal to 8 inches (200 mm).
  - b. 3/8 inch (10 mm) for member depth greater than 8 inches (200 mm) and less than or equal to 24 inches (610 mm).
  - c. 1/2 inch (13 mm) for member depth greater than 24 inches (610 mm).
4. Maintain minimum radius of curvature of 480-strand diameters for lateral deviations to avoid openings, ducts, and embedded items. Maintain a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) of separation between tendons at locations of curvature.
5. Limit tendon bundles to five tendons. Do not twist or entwine tendons within a bundle. Maintain a minimum distance of 12 inches (300 mm) between center of adjacent bundles.
6. If tendon locations conflict with nonprestressed reinforcement or embedded items, tendon placement governs unless changes are authorized in writing by the Owner. Obtain the Owner's approval before relocating tendons or tendon anchorages that interfere with one another.
7. Deviations in horizontal spacing and location of slab tendons are permitted when required to avoid openings and inserts.
8. Installation of Anchorage Devices:
  - a. Place anchorage devices at locations shown on approved installation drawings.
  - b. Do not switch fixed and stressing-end anchorage locations unless authorized in writing by the Owner.
  - c. Attach pocket formers, intermediate anchorage devices, and stressing-end anchorage devices securely to bulkhead forms. Install stressing-end and intermediate anchorage devices perpendicular to tendon axis.
  - d. Install tendons straight, without vertical or horizontal curvature, for a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) behind stressing-end and intermediate anchorages.
  - e. Embed intermediate anchorage devices at construction joints in first concrete placed at joint.



- f. Minimum splice length in reinforcing bars at anchorages is 24 inches (600 mm). Stagger splices a minimum of 60 inches (1500 mm).
  - g. Place fixed-end anchorage devices in formwork at locations shown on installation drawings. Support anchorages firmly to avoid movement during concrete placement.
  - h. Remove loose caps on fixed-end anchorages, refill with post-tensioning coating, and re-attach caps to achieve a watertight enclosure.
9. Maintain minimum concrete cover as follows:
    - a. From Exterior Edge of Concrete to Wedge Cavity: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**.
    - b. From Exterior Edge of Concrete to Strand Tail: 3/4 inch (19 mm).
    - c. From Exterior Edge of Concrete to Wedge-Cavity Cap: 1 inch (25 mm).
    - d. Top, Bottom, and Edge Cover for Anchorage Devices: 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), **as directed**.
  10. Maintain minimum clearance of 6 inches (150 mm) between tendons and openings.
  11. Prior to concrete placement, mark tendon locations on formwork with spray paint.
  12. Do not install sleeves within 36 inches (914 mm) of anchorages after tendon layout has been inspected unless authorized in writing by the Owner.
  13. Do not install conduit, pipe, or embeds requiring movement of tendons after tendon layout has been inspected unless authorized in writing by the Owner.
  14. Do not use couplers unless location has been approved by the Owner.
- D. Sheathing Inspection And Repair
1. Inspect sheathing for damage after installing tendons. Repair damaged areas by restoring post-tensioning coating and repairing or replacing tendon sheathing.
    - a. Ensure that sheathing is watertight and there are no air voids.
    - b. Follow tape repair procedures in PTI's "Field Procedures Manual for Unbonded Single Strand Tendons."
  2. Maximum length of exposed strand behind anchorages is as follows:
    - a. Fixed End: 12 inches (300 mm).
    - b. Intermediate and Stressing End: 0 inches (0 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**.
      - 1) Cover exposed strand with sheathing repair tape to prevent contact with concrete.
  3. Immediately remove and replace tendons that have damaged strand.
- E. Concrete Placement
1. Do not place concrete until placement of tendons and nonprestressed steel reinforcement has been inspected by special inspector **OR** testing agency, **as directed**.
  2. Provide the Owner and special inspector **OR** testing agency, **as directed**, a minimum of 48 hours' notice before concrete placement.
  3. Place concrete as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete". Ensure compaction of concrete around anchorages.
  4. Ensure that position of tendon and nonprestressed steel reinforcement does not change during concrete placement. Reposition tendons and nonprestressed steel reinforcement moved during concrete placement.
  5. Ensure that method of concrete placement does not damage tendon sheathing. Do not support pump lines, chutes, or other concrete placing equipment on tendons.
- F. Tendon Stressing
1. Calibrate stressing jacks and gages at start of job and at least every six months thereafter. Keep copies of calibration certificates for each jack-and-gage pair on Project site and available for inspection. Exercise care in handling stressing equipment to ensure that proper calibration is maintained.
  2. Stress tendons only under supervision of qualified post-tensioning superintendent.
  3. Do not begin stressing operations until concrete strength has reached 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) as indicated by compression tests of field-cured cylinders.
  4. Complete stressing within 96 hours of concrete placement.





5. If concrete has not reached required strength, obtain the Owner's approval to partially stress tendons and delay final stressing until concrete has reached required strength.
6. Stage stress transfer girders **OR** foundation mats, **as directed**, according to schedule shown on the Contract Drawings.
7. If detensioning and restressing of tendon is required, discard wedges used in original stressing and provide new wedges.
8. Mark and measure elongations according to PTI's "Field Procedures Manual for Unbonded Single Strand Tendons." Measure elongations to closest 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).
9. Submit stressing records within one day of completion of stressing. If discrepancies between measured and calculated elongations exceed plus or minus 7 percent, resolve these discrepancies to satisfaction of the Owner.
10. Prestressing will be considered acceptable if gage pressures shown on stressing record correspond to required stressing force and calculated and measured elongations agree within 7 percent.
11. If measured elongations deviate from calculated elongations by more than 7 percent, additional testing, restressing, strengthening, or replacement of affected elements may be required.

#### G. Tendon Finishing

1. Do not cut strand tails or cover anchorages until stressing records have been reviewed and approved by the Owner.
2. Cut strand tails as soon as possible after approval of elongations.
3. Cut strand tail between 1/2 and 3/4 inch (13 and 19 mm) from wedges. Do not damage tendon or concrete during removal of strand tail. Acceptable methods of cutting strand tail include the following:
  - a. Oxyacetylene flame.
  - b. Abrasive wheel.
  - c. Hydraulic shears.
  - d. Plasma cutting.
4. Install caps and sleeves on intermediate anchorages within one day of stressing.
5. Cut strand tails and install caps on stressing-end anchorages within one day of the Owner's acceptance of elongations.
6. Patch stressing pockets within one day of cutting strand tail. Clean inside surface of pocket to remove laitance or post-tensioning coating before installing patch material. Finish patch material flush with adjacent concrete.

#### H. Field Quality Control

1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports. Cooperate with testing agency to facilitate the execution of its duties.
  - a. Before concrete placement, special inspector **OR** testing agency, **as directed**, will inspect the following for compliance with post-tensioning installation drawings and the Contract Documents:
    - 1) Location and number of tendons.
    - 2) Tendon profiles and cover.
    - 3) Installation of backup bars, hairpins, and other nonprestressed reinforcement shown on post-tensioning installation drawings.
    - 4) Installation of pocket formers and anchorage devices.
    - 5) Repair of damaged sheathing.
    - 6) Connections between sheathing and anchorage devices.
  - b. Special inspector **OR** Testing agency, **as directed**, will record tendon elongations during stressing.
  - c. Special inspector **OR** Testing agency, **as directed**, will immediately report deviations from the Contract Documents to the Owner.

#### I. Protection



1. Do not expose tendons to electric ground currents, welding sparks, or temperatures that would degrade component.
2. Protect exposed components within one workday of their exposure during installation.
3. Prevent water from entering tendons during installation and stressing.
4. Provide weather protection to stressing-end anchorages if strand tails are not cut within 10 days of stressing the tendons.

J. Repairs

1. Submit repair procedure to the Owner for evaluation and approval.
2. Do not proceed with repairs requiring removal of concrete unless authorized in writing by the Owner.

END OF SECTION 03 41 26 00



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
03 41 26 00	03 41 16 00	Plant-Precast Structural Concrete
03 41 33 00	03 41 16 00	Plant-Precast Structural Concrete
03 48 16 00	03 41 23 00	Architectural Precast Concrete
03 48 21 00	03 41 23 00	Architectural Precast Concrete
03 48 22 00	03 41 23 00	Architectural Precast Concrete
03 48 22 00	03 37 13 00a	Glass Fiber Reinforced Concrete
03 48 24 00	03 41 23 00	Architectural Precast Concrete
03 48 29 00	03 41 16 00	Plant-Precast Structural Concrete
03 48 29 00	03 41 23 00	Architectural Precast Concrete
03 48 46 00	03 41 16 00	Plant-Precast Structural Concrete
03 48 46 00	03 41 23 00	Architectural Precast Concrete
03 48 49 00	03 41 16 00	Plant-Precast Structural Concrete
03 48 49 00	03 41 23 00	Architectural Precast Concrete



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 03 53 14 00 - CONCRETE FLOOR TOPPING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for concrete floor topping. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Emery-aggregate concrete floor topping.
  - b. Iron-aggregate concrete floor topping.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Product Test Reports.
3. Field quality-control test reports.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver materials in original packages and containers, with seals unbroken, bearing manufacturer's labels indicating brand name and directions for storage, mixing with other components, and application.
2. Store materials to comply with manufacturer's written instructions to prevent deterioration from moisture or other detrimental effects.

#### F. Project Conditions

1. Environmental Limitations: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for substrate temperature and moisture content, ambient temperature and humidity, ventilation, and other conditions affecting concrete floor topping performance.
  - a. Place concrete floor topping only when ambient temperature and temperature of base slabs are between 50 and 86 deg F (10 and 30 deg C).
2. Close areas to traffic during topping application and, after application, for time period recommended in writing by manufacturer.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Concrete Floor Toppings

1. Emery-Aggregate Concrete Floor Topping: Factory-prepared and dry-packaged mixture of graded, crushed emery aggregate containing not less than 50 percent aluminum oxide, not less than 24 percent ferric oxide, and not more than 8 percent silica; portland cement or blended hydraulic cement; plasticizers; and other admixtures to which only water needs to be added at Project site.
  - a. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 10,000 psi (69 MPa); ASTM C 109/C 109M.
2. Iron-Aggregate Concrete Floor Topping: Factory-prepared and dry-packaged mixture of graded iron aggregate, portland cement, plasticizers, and other admixtures to which only water needs to be added at Project site.



a. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 12,000 psi (83 MPa); ASTM C 109/C 109M.

B. Curing Materials

1. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming; manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
2. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. (305 g/sq. m) when dry.
3. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
4. Water: Potable.
5. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, 25 percent solids content, minimum.

C. Related Materials

1. Semirigid Joint Filler: Two-component, semirigid, 100 percent solids, epoxy resin with a Type A Shore durometer hardness of 80 **OR** aromatic polyurea with a Type A Shore durometer hardness range of 90 to 95, **as directed**, per ASTM D 2240.
2. Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork.
3. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II.
4. Sand: ASTM C 404, fine aggregate passing No. 16 (1.18-mm) sieve.
5. Water: Potable.
6. Acrylic-Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
7. Epoxy Adhesive: ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type V, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class and grade to suit requirements.

D. Mixing

1. Bonding Slurry: Mix portland cement with water to a thick paint consistency.  
**OR**  
Bonding Slurry: Mix 1 part portland cement and 1-1/2 **OR** 2 **OR** 2-1/2, **as directed**, parts sand with water and an acrylic-bonding agent according to manufacturer's written instructions, **as directed**, to a thick paint consistency.
2. Floor Topping: Mix concrete floor topping materials and water in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer or truck mixer according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination

1. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for conditions affecting performance of concrete floor topping.
2. Verify that base concrete slabs comply with scratch finish requirements specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
3. Verify that base slabs are visibly dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by the plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
4. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Preparation

1. Existing Concrete: Remove existing surface treatments and deteriorated and unsound concrete. Mechanically abrade base slabs to produce a heavily scarified surface profile with an amplitude of 1/4 inch (6 mm.)
  - a. Prepare and clean existing base slabs according to concrete floor topping manufacturer's written instructions. Fill voids, cracks, and cavities in base slabs.
  - b. Mechanically remove contaminants from existing concrete that might impair bond of floor topping.



- c. Saw cut contraction and construction joints in existing concrete to a depth of 1/2 inch (13 mm) and fill with semirigid joint filler.
  - d. To both sides of joint edges and at perimeter of existing base slab mechanically remove a 4-inch- (100-mm-) wide and 0- to 1-inch (0- to 25-mm-) deep, tapered wedge of concrete and retexture surface **OR** install concrete nails in manufacturer's recommended staggered pattern, **as directed**.
  2. Install joint-filler strips where topping abuts vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
    - a. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with topping surface, unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Terminate full-width, joint-filler strips 1/2 inch (13 mm) below topping surface where joint sealants, specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants", are indicated.
    - c. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.
- C. Floor Topping Application
1. Start floor topping application in presence of manufacturer's technical representative.
  2. Monolithic Floor Topping: After textured-float finish is applied to fresh concrete of base slabs specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete", place concrete floor topping while concrete is still plastic.
  3. Deferred Floor Topping: Within 72 hours of placing base slabs, mix and scrub bonding slurry into dampened concrete to a thickness of 1/16 to 1/8 inch (1.6 to 3 mm), without puddling. Place floor topping while slurry is still tacky.
  4. Existing Concrete: Apply epoxy-bonding adhesive, mixed according to manufacturer's written instructions, and scrub into dry base slabs to a thickness of 1/16 to 1/8 inch (1.6 to 3 mm), without puddling. Place floor topping while adhesive is still tacky.
  5. Place concrete floor topping continuously in a single layer, tamping and consolidating to achieve tight contact with bonding surface. Do not permit cold joints or seams to develop within pour strip.
    - a. Screed surface with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
    - b. Slope surfaces uniformly where indicated.
    - c. Begin initial floating using bull floats to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane free of humps or hollows.
  6. Finishing: Consolidate surface with power-driven floats as soon as concrete floor topping can support equipment and operator. Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and restraightening until concrete floor topping surface has a uniform, smooth, granular texture.
    - 1) Hard Trowel Finish: After floating surface, apply first trowel finish and consolidate concrete floor topping by power-driven trowel without allowing blisters to develop. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is smooth and uniform in texture.
    - 2) Finish surfaces to specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 25; and levelness, F(L) 20; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 17; and levelness, F(L) 15, and measure **OR** notify independent testing agency to permit measurement, **as directed**, within 24 hours according to ASTM E 1155 (ASTM E 1155M) for a randomly trafficked floor surface.
    - 3) Finish and measure surface so gap at any point between surface and an unlevelled freestanding 10-foot- (3-m-) long straightedge, resting on 2 high spots and placed anywhere on the surface, does not exceed 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  7. Construction Joints: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete floor topping, at locations indicated or as approved by the Owner.
    - a. Coat face of construction joint with epoxy adhesive at locations where concrete floor topping is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete floor topping.
  8. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- (3-mm-) wide joints into concrete



floor topping when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before random contraction cracks develop.

- a. Form joints in concrete floor topping over contraction joints in base slabs, unless otherwise indicated.
- b. Construct contraction joints for a combined depth equal to topping thickness and not less than one-fourth of base-slab thickness.
- c. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to one-half of concrete floor topping thickness, but not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) deep.

D. Protecting And Curing

1. General: Protect freshly placed concrete floor topping from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
2. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to concrete floor topping surfaces in hot, dry, or windy conditions before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying floor topping, but before float finishing.
3. Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete floor topping. Cure by one or a combination of the following methods, according to concrete floor topping manufacturer's written instructions:
  - a. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than 7 days with water **OR** continuous water-fog spray **OR** absorptive cover, water saturated and kept continuously wet. Cover topping surfaces and edges with 12-inch (300-mm) lap over adjacent absorptive covers, **as directed**.
  - b. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches (300 mm), and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
  - c. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in two coats in continuous operations by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

E. Joint Filling

1. Prepare and clean contraction joints and install semirigid joint filler, according to manufacturer's written instructions, once topping has fully cured.
2. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joint clean and dry.
3. Install semirigid joint filler full depth of contraction joints. Overfill joint and trim semirigid joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.

F. Repairs

1. Defective Topping: Repair and patch defective concrete floor topping areas, including areas that have not bonded to concrete substrate.

G. Field Quality Control

1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
2. Testing Services: Testing and inspecting of completed applications of concrete floor toppings shall take place in successive stages, in areas of extent and using methods as follows:
  - a. Sample Sets: At point of placement, a set of 3 molded-cube samples shall be taken from the topping mix for the first 1000 sq. ft. (93 sq. m), plus 1 set of samples for each subsequent 5000 sq. ft. (464 sq. m) of topping, or fraction thereof, but not less than 6 samples for each day's placement. Samples shall be tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M for compliance with compressive-strength requirements.





- b. Concrete floor topping shall be tested for delamination by dragging a steel chain over the surface.
- c. Concrete floor topping shall be tested for compliance with surface flatness and levelness tolerances.
3. Remove and replace applications of concrete floor topping where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
4. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

END OF SECTION 03 53 14 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
03 53 19 00	03 53 14 00	Concrete Floor Topping

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

**SECTION 03 54 16 00 - CEMENT-BASED UNDERLAYMENT****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for hydraulic cement-based underlayment. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Summary**

1. Section includes hydraulic-cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling underlayment for application below interior floor coverings.

**C. Action Submittals**

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.2: For priming and sealing coatings, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings: Include plans indicating substrates, locations, and average depths of underlayment based on survey of substrate conditions.

**D. Informational Submittals**

1. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
2. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of underlayment and floor-covering systems certifying that products are compatible.
3. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

**E. Quality Assurance**

1. Installer Qualifications: Installer who is approved by manufacturer for application of underlayment products required for this Project.
2. Product Compatibility: Manufacturers of underlayment and floor-covering systems certify in writing that products are compatible.
3. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide hydraulic-cement underlayment systems identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - a. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.
4. Sound Transmission Characteristics: Where indicated, provide hydraulic-cement underlayment systems identical to those of assemblies tested for STC and IIC ratings per ASTM E 90 and ASTM E 492 by a qualified testing agency.

**F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling**

1. Store materials to comply with manufacturer's written instructions to prevent deterioration from moisture or other detrimental effects.

**G. Project Conditions**

1. Environmental Limitations: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for substrate temperature, ventilation, ambient temperature and humidity, and other conditions affecting underlayment performance.
  - a. Place hydraulic-cement-based underlayments only when ambient temperature and temperature of substrates are between 50 and 80 deg F (10 and 27 deg C).



## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Hydraulic-Cement-Based Underlayments

1. Underlayment: Hydraulic-cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in minimum uniform thicknesses of 1/4 inch (6 mm) and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
  - a. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement, or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined by ASTM C 219.
  - b. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4100 psi (28 MPa) at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
  - c. Underlayment Additive: Resilient-emulsion product of underlayment manufacturer formulated for use with underlayment when applied to substrate and conditions indicated.
2. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch (3 to 6 mm); or coarse sand as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
  - a. Provide aggregate when recommended in writing by underlayment manufacturer for underlayment thickness required.
3. Water: Potable and at a temperature of not more than 70 deg F (21 deg C).
4. Reinforcement: For underlayment applied to wood substrates, provide galvanized metal lath or other corrosion-resistant reinforcement recommended in writing by underlayment manufacturer.
5. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended in writing for substrate, conditions, and application indicated.
6. Corrosion-Resistant Coating: Recommended in writing by underlayment manufacturer for metal substrates.

### B. Accessories

1. Sound Mat
2. Sound Reduction Board

## 1.3 EXECUTION

### A. Examination

1. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for conditions affecting performance.
  - a. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### B. Preparation

1. General: Prepare and clean substrate according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Treat nonmoving substrate cracks according to manufacturer's written instructions to prevent cracks from telegraphing (reflecting) through underlayment.
  - b. Fill substrate voids to prevent underlayment from leaking.
2. Concrete Substrates: Mechanically remove, according to manufacturer's written instructions, laitance, glaze, efflorescence, curing compounds, form-release agents, dust, dirt, grease, oil, and other contaminants that might impair underlayment bond.
  - a. Moisture Testing: Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test, ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates do not exceed a maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. (1.36 kg of water/100 sq. m) in 24 hours.
3. Wood Substrates: Mechanically fasten loose boards and panels to eliminate substrate movement and squeaks. Sand to remove coatings that might impair underlayment bond and remove sanding dust.
  - a. Install underlayment reinforcement recommended in writing by manufacturer.
4. Metal Substrates: Mechanically remove, according to manufacturer's written instructions, rust, foreign matter, and other contaminants that might impair underlayment bond. Apply corrosion-resistant coating compatible with underlayment if recommended in writing by underlayment manufacturer.



5. Nonporous Substrates: For ceramic tile, quarry tile, and terrazzo substrates, remove waxes, sealants, and other contaminants that might impair underlayment bond, and prepare surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.
6. Adhesion Tests: After substrate preparation, test substrate for adhesion with underlayment according to manufacturer's written instructions.
7. Sound Control Mat and Board: Install sound control materials according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Do not install mechanical fasteners that penetrate through the sound control materials.

C. Application

1. General: Mix and apply underlayment components according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Close areas to traffic during underlayment application and for time period after application recommended in writing by manufacturer.
  - b. Coordinate application of components to provide optimum underlayment-to-substrate and intercoat adhesion.
  - c. At substrate expansion, isolation, and other moving joints, allow joint of same width to continue through underlayment.
2. Apply primer over prepared substrate at manufacturer's recommended spreading rate.
3. Apply underlayment to produce uniform, level surface.
  - a. Apply a final layer without aggregate to product surface.
  - b. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
4. Cure underlayment according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent contamination during application and curing processes.
5. Do not install floor coverings over underlayment until after time period recommended in writing by underlayment manufacturer.
6. Remove and replace underlayment areas that evidence lack of bond with substrate, including areas that emit a "hollow" sound when tapped.

D. Protection

1. Protect underlayment from concentrated and rolling loads for remainder of construction period.

END OF SECTION 03 54 16 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
03 61 16 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
03 62 13 00	03 41 16 00	Plant-Precast Structural Concrete
03 62 16 00	03 41 16 00	Plant-Precast Structural Concrete
03 64 23 00	03 41 16 00	Plant-Precast Structural Concrete
03 64 26 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
05 05 19 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 05 05 23 00 - STRUCTURAL STEEL

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for structural steel. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Structural steel.
  - b. Prefabricated building columns.
  - c. Grout.

#### C. Definitions

1. Structural Steel: Elements of structural-steel frame, as classified by AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
2. Seismic-Load-Resisting System: Elements of structural-steel frame designated as "SLRS" or along grid lines designated as "SLRS" on Drawings, including columns, beams, and braces and their connections.
3. Heavy Sections: Rolled and built-up sections as follows:
  - a. Shapes included in ASTM A 6/A 6M with flanges thicker than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
  - b. Welded built-up members with plates thicker than 2 inches (50 mm).
  - c. Column base plates thicker than 2 inches (50 mm).
4. Protected Zone: Structural members or portions of structural members indicated as "Protected Zone" on Drawings. Connections of structural and nonstructural elements to protected zones are limited.
5. Demand Critical Welds: Those welds, the failure of which would result in significant degradation of the strength and stiffness of the Seismic-Load-Resisting System and which are indicated as "Demand Critical" or "Seismic Critical" on Drawings.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. Connections: Provide details of connections **OR** simple shear connections, **as directed**, required by the Contract Documents to be selected or completed by structural-steel fabricator, including comprehensive engineering design by a qualified professional engineer, **as directed**, to withstand loads indicated and comply with other information and restrictions indicated.
  - a. Select and complete connections using schematic details indicated and AISC 360.
  - b. Use LRFD; data are given at factored-load level **OR** ASD; data are given at service-load level, **as directed**.
2. Moment Connections: Type PR, partially **OR** FR, fully, **as directed**, restrained.
3. Construction: Moment frame **OR** Braced frame **OR** Shear wall system **OR** Combined system of moment frame and braced frame **OR** Combined system of moment frame and shear walls **OR** Combined system of braced frame and shear walls **OR** Combined system of moment frame, braced frame, and shear walls, **as directed**.

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.



3. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.
  - a. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
  - b. Include embedment drawings.
  - c. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld. Show backing bars that are to be removed and supplemental fillet welds where backing bars are to remain.
  - d. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical high-strength bolted connections.
  - e. Identify members and connections of the seismic-load-resisting system.
  - f. Indicate locations and dimensions of protected zones.
  - g. Identify demand critical welds.
  - h. For structural-steel connections indicated to comply with design loads, include structural design data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation, **as directed**.
4. Welding Procedure Specifications (WPSs) and Procedure Qualification Records (PQRs): Provide according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for each welded joint whether prequalified **OR** qualified by testing, **as directed**, including the following:
  - a. Power source (constant current or constant voltage).
  - b. Electrode manufacturer and trade name, for demand critical welds.
5. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer **OR** fabricator **OR** professional engineer **OR** testing agency, **as directed**.
6. Welding certificates.
7. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers, certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.
8. Mill test reports for structural steel, including chemical and physical properties.
9. Product Test Reports: For the following:
  - a. Bolts, nuts, and washers including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
  - b. Direct-tension indicators.
  - c. Tension-control, high-strength bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
  - d. Shear stud connectors.
  - e. Shop primers.
  - f. Nonshrink grout.
10. Source quality-control reports.

#### F. Quality Assurance

1. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator that participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category STD.
2. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Erector, Category ACSE **OR** CSE, **as directed**.
3. Shop-Painting Applicators: Qualified according to AISC's Sophisticated Paint Endorsement P1 **OR** P2 **OR** P3, **as directed**, or SSPC-QP 3, "Standard Procedure for Evaluating Qualifications of Shop Painting Applicators."
4. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - a. Welders and welding operators performing work on bottom-flange, demand-critical welds shall pass the supplemental welder qualification testing, as required by AWS D1.8. FCAW-S and FCAW-G shall be considered separate processes for welding personnel qualification.
5. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
  - a. AISC 303.
  - b. AISC 341 and AISC 341s1.
  - c. AISC 360.
  - d. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
6. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.



#### G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.
  - a. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.
2. Store fasteners in a protected place in sealed containers with manufacturer's labels intact.
  - a. Fasteners may be repackaged provided the Owner's testing and inspecting agency observes repackaging and seals containers.
  - b. Clean and relubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
  - c. Comply with manufacturers' written recommendations for cleaning and lubricating ASTM F 1852 fasteners and for retesting fasteners after lubrication.

#### H. Coordination

1. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
2. Coordinate installation of anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Structural-Steel Materials

1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 **OR** 50, **as directed**, percent.  
**OR**  
Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than the following:
  - a. W-Shapes: 60 percent.
  - b. Channels, Angles, M **OR** S, **as directed**, -Shapes: 60 percent.
  - c. Plate and Bar: 25 percent.
  - d. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: 25 percent.
  - e. Steel Pipe: 25 percent.
  - f. All Other Steel Materials: 25 percent.
2. W-Shapes: ASTM A 992/A 992M **OR** ASTM A 572/A 572M, Grade 50 (345) **OR** ASTM A 529/A 529M, Grade 50 (345) **OR** ASTM A 913/A 913M, Grade 50 (345), **as directed**.
3. Channels, Angles, M **OR** S, **as directed**, -Shapes: ASTM A 36/A 36M **OR** ASTM A 572/A 572M, Grade 50 (345) **OR** ASTM A 529/A 529M, Grade 50 (345) **OR** ASTM A 913/A 913M, Grade 50 (345), **as directed**.
4. Plate and Bar: ASTM A 36/A 36M **OR** ASTM A 572/A 572M, Grade 50 (345) **OR** ASTM A 529/A 529M, Grade 50 (345), **as directed**.
5. Corrosion-Resisting Structural-Steel Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 588/A 588M, Grade 50 (345).
6. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 500, Grade B **OR** C, **as directed**, structural tubing.
7. Corrosion-Resisting Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 847/A 847M, structural tubing.
8. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or S, Grade B.
  - a. Weight Class: Standard **OR** Extra strong **OR** Double-extra strong, **as directed**.
  - b. Finish: Black **OR** Galvanized **OR** Black except where indicated to be galvanized, **as directed**.



9. Steel Castings: ASTM A 216/A 216M, Grade WCB with supplementary requirement S11.
10. Steel Forgings: ASTM A 668/A 668M.
11. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

B. Bolts, Connectors, And Anchors

1. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325 (ASTM A 325M), Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563, Grade C, (ASTM A 563M, Class 8S) heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M), Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers; all with plain finish.
  - a. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 325 (ASTM F 959M, Type 8.8), compressible-washer type with plain finish.
2. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 490 (ASTM A 490M), Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts or tension-control, bolt-nut-washer assemblies with splined ends, **as directed**; ASTM A 563, Grade DH, (ASTM A 563M, Class 10S) heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M), Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers with plain finish.
  - a. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 490 (ASTM F 959M, Type 10.9), compressible-washer type with plain finish.
3. Zinc-Coated High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325 (ASTM A 325M), Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563, Grade DH (ASTM A 563M, Class 10S) heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M), Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers.
  - a. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating **OR** Mechanically deposited zinc coating, **as directed**.
  - b. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 325 (ASTM F 959M, Type 8.8), compressible-washer type with mechanically deposited zinc coating **OR** mechanically deposited zinc coating, baked epoxy-coated, **as directed**, finish.
4. Tension-Control, High-Strength Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F 1852, Type 1, heavy-hex **OR** round, **as directed**, head assemblies consisting of steel structural bolts with splined ends, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts, and hardened carbon-steel washers.
  - a. Finish: Plain **OR** Mechanically deposited zinc coating, **as directed**.
5. Shear Connectors: ASTM A 108, Grades 1015 through 1020, headed-stud type, cold-finished carbon steel; AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Type B.
6. Unheaded Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36 **OR** ASTM F 1554, Grade 55, weldable **OR** ASTM A 354 **OR** ASTM A 449 **OR** ASTM A 572/A 572M, Grade 50 (345) **OR** ASTM A 36/A 36M, **as directed**.
  - a. Configuration: Straight **OR** Hooked, **as directed**.
  - b. Nuts: ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex **OR** heavy-hex, **as directed**, carbon steel.
  - c. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
  - d. Washers: ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M), Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
  - e. Finish: Plain **OR** Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C **OR** Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B 695, Class 50, **as directed**.
7. Headed Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36 **OR** ASTM F 1554, Grade 55, weldable **OR** ASTM A 354 **OR** ASTM A 449, **as directed**, straight.
  - a. Nuts: ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex **OR** heavy-hex, **as directed**, carbon steel.
  - b. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
  - c. Washers: ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M), Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
  - d. Finish: Plain **OR** Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C **OR** Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B 695, Class 50, **as directed**.
8. Threaded Rods: ASTM A 36/A 36M **OR** ASTM A 193/A 193M, Grade B7 **OR** ASTM A 354, Grade BD **OR** ASTM A 449 **OR** ASTM A 572/A 572M, Grade 50 (345), **as directed**.
  - a. Nuts: ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex **OR** heavy-hex, **as directed**, carbon steel.
  - b. Washers: ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M), Type 1, hardened **OR** ASTM A 36/A 36M, **as directed**, carbon steel.
  - c. Finish: Plain **OR** Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C **OR** Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B 695, Class 50, **as directed**.
9. Clevises and Turnbuckles: Made from cold-finished carbon steel bars, ASTM A 108, Grade 1035.
10. Eye Bolts and Nuts: Made from cold-finished carbon steel bars, ASTM A 108, Grade 1030.





11. Sleeve Nuts: Made from cold-finished carbon steel bars, ASTM A 108, Grade 1018.
  12. Structural Slide Bearings: Low-friction assemblies, of configuration indicated, that provide vertical transfer of loads and allow horizontal movement perpendicular to plane of expansion joint while resisting movement within plane of expansion joint.
    - a. Mating Surfaces: PTFE and PTFE **OR** PTFE and mirror-finished stainless steel, **as directed**.
    - b. Coefficient of Friction: Not more than 0.03 **OR** 0.04 **OR** 0.05 **OR** 0.06 **OR** 0.10 **OR** 0.12, **as directed**.
    - c. Design Load: Not less than 2,000 psi (13.7 MPa) **OR** 5,000 psi (34 MPa) **OR** 6,000 psi (41 MPa), **as directed**.
    - d. Total Movement Capability: 2 inches (50 mm).
- C. Primer
1. Primer: Comply with Division 07 **OR** Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 **AND** Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Primer: SSPC-Paint 25, Type I **OR** Type II, **as directed**, zinc oxide, alkyd, linseed oil primer.  
**OR**  
Primer: SSPC-Paint 25 BCS, Type I **OR** Type II, **as directed**, zinc oxide, alkyd, linseed oil primer.  
**OR**  
Primer: SSPC-Paint 23, latex primer.  
**OR**  
Primer: Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, nonasphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat, **as directed**.
  2. Galvanizing Repair Paint: MPI#18, MPI#19, or SSPC-Paint 20 **OR** ASTM A 780, **as directed**.
- D. Grout
1. Metallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, metallic aggregate grout, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.
  2. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive and nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.
- E. Fabrication
1. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate according to AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and AISC 360.
    - a. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.
    - b. Fabricate beams with rolling camber up.
    - c. Identify high-strength structural steel according to ASTM A 6/A 6M and maintain markings until structural steel has been erected.
    - d. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
    - e. If shop priming is required, complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.
  2. Thermal Cutting: Perform thermal cutting by machine to greatest extent possible.
    - a. Plane thermally cut edges to be welded to comply with requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
  3. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, **as directed**, or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.
  4. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.
  5. Cleaning: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted according to SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning" **OR** SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning" **OR** SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning", **as directed**.
  6. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.



7. Steel Wall-Opening Framing: Select true and straight members for fabricating steel wall-opening framing to be attached to structural steel. Straighten as required to provide uniform, square, and true members in completed wall framing.
  8. Welded Door Frames: Build up welded door frames attached to structural steel. Weld exposed joints continuously and grind smooth. Plug-weld fixed steel bar stops to frames. Secure removable stops to frames with countersunk machine screws, uniformly spaced not more than 10 inches (250 mm) o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
  9. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for other work to pass through steel framing members.
    - a. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces. Do not thermally cut bolt holes or enlarge holes by burning, **unless directed otherwise**.
    - b. Baseplate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
    - c. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.
- F. Shop Connections
1. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
    - a. Joint Type: Snug tightened **OR** Pretensioned **OR** Slip critical, **as directed**.
  2. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.8/D1.8M, **as directed**, for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
    - a. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC 303 for mill material.
- G. Prefabricated Building Columns
1. Prefabricated building columns consisting of load-bearing structural-steel members protected by concrete fireproofing encased in an outer non-load-bearing steel shell.
  2. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Provide prefabricated building column listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for ratings indicated, based on testing according to ASTM E 119.
    - a. Fire-Resistance Rating: 4 hours **OR** 3 hours **OR** 2 hours **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
- H. Shop Priming
1. If shop priming is required, shop prime steel surfaces except the following:
    - a. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches (50 mm).
    - b. Surfaces to be field welded.
    - c. Surfaces to be high-strength bolted with slip-critical connections.
    - d. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials (applied fireproofing).
    - e. Galvanized surfaces.
  2. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to the following specifications and standards:
    - a. SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."
    - b. SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
    - c. SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-Off Blast Cleaning."
    - d. SSPC-SP 11, "Power Tool Cleaning to Bare Metal."
    - e. SSPC-SP 14/NACE No. 8, "Industrial Blast Cleaning."
    - f. SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
    - g. SSPC-SP 10/NACE No. 2, "Near-White Blast Cleaning."
    - h. SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning."
    - i. SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
  3. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5



- mils (0.038 mm). Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.
- a. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.
  - b. Apply two coats of shop paint to surfaces that are inaccessible after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from first.
4. Painting: Prepare steel and apply a one-coat, nonasphaltic primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide 7.00, "Painting System Guide 7.00: Guide for Selecting One-Coat Shop Painting Systems," to provide a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils (0.038 mm).
- I. Galvanizing
1. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
    - a. Fill vent and drain holes that will be exposed in the finished Work unless they will function as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
    - b. Galvanize lintels, shelf angles, and welded door frames attached to structural-steel frame and located in exterior walls.
- J. Source Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage an independent testing and inspecting agency to perform shop tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
    - a. Provide testing agency with access to places where structural-steel work is being fabricated or produced to perform tests and inspections.
  2. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.
  3. Bolted Connections: Shop-bolted connections will be inspected **OR** tested and inspected, **as directed**, according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
  4. Welded Connections: In addition to visual inspection, shop-welded connections will be tested and inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
    - a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
    - b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration will not be accepted.
    - c. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
    - d. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.
  5. In addition to visual inspection, shop-welded shear connectors will be tested and inspected according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M for stud welding and as follows:
    - a. Bend tests will be performed if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
    - b. Tests will be conducted on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested, according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

1. Verify, with steel Erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.
  - a. Prepare a certified survey of bearing surfaces, anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations.
2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### B. Preparation

1. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in



intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated.

- a. Do not remove temporary shoring supporting composite deck construction until cast-in-place concrete has attained its design compressive strength.

#### C. Erection

1. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC 303 and AISC 360.
2. Base Bearing and Leveling Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.
  - a. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
  - b. Weld plate washers to top of baseplate.
  - c. Snug-tighten **OR** Pretension, **as directed**, anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.
  - d. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts, **as directed**.
3. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
4. Align and adjust various members that form part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that will be in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.
  - a. Level and plumb individual members of structure.
  - b. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.
5. Splice members only where indicated.
6. Do not use thermal cutting during erection unless approved by the Owner. Finish thermally cut sections within smoothness limits in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
7. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.
8. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.

#### D. Field Connections

1. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
  - a. Joint Type: Snug tightened **OR** Pretensioned **OR** Slip critical, **as directed**.
2. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.8/D1.8M, **as directed**, for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
  - a. Comply with AISC 303 and AISC 360 for bearing, alignment, adequacy of temporary connections, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
  - b. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs where indicated, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
  - c. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for mill material.

#### E. Prefabricated Building Columns

1. Install prefabricated building columns to comply with AISC 360, manufacturer's written recommendations, and requirements of testing and inspecting agency that apply to the fire-resistance rating indicated.

**F. Field Quality Control**

1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to inspect field welds and high-strength bolted connections.
2. Bolted Connections: Bolted connections will be inspected **OR** tested and inspected, **as directed**, according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
3. Welded Connections: Field welds will be visually inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
  - a. In addition to visual inspection, field welds will be tested and inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
    - 1) Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
    - 2) Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration will not be accepted.
    - 3) Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
    - 4) Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.
4. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field-welded shear connectors according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M for stud welding and as follows:
  - a. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
  - b. Conduct tests on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested, according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
5. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

**G. Repairs And Protection**

1. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean areas where galvanizing is damaged or missing and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.
2. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean exposed areas where primer is damaged or missing and paint with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
  - a. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.

**OR**

Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting are specified in Division 07.

END OF SECTION 05 05 23 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
05 05 23 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





## SECTION 05 12 23 00 - COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for cold-formed metal framing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Exterior load-bearing wall framing.
  - b. Interior load-bearing wall framing.
  - c. Exterior non-load-bearing wall framing.
  - d. Floor joist framing.
  - e. Roof trusses.
  - f. Roof rafter framing.
  - g. Ceiling joist framing.

#### C. Performance Requirements

1. Structural Performance: Provide cold-formed metal framing capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated.
  - a. Design Loads: **As directed.**
  - b. Deflection Limits: Design framing systems to withstand design loads without deflections greater than the following:
    - 1) Exterior Load-Bearing Wall Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/240 **OR** 1/360 **OR** 1/600 **OR** 1/720, **as directed**, of the wall height.
    - 2) Interior Load-Bearing Wall Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/240 **OR** 1/360, **as directed**, of the wall height under a horizontal load of 5 lbf/sq. ft. (239 Pa).
    - 3) Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/240 **OR** 1/360 **OR** 1/600 **OR** 1/720, **as directed**, of the wall height.
    - 4) Floor Joist Framing: Vertical deflection of 1/480 for live loads and 1/360 for total loads of the span.
    - 5) Roof Trusses: Vertical deflection of 1/240 **OR** 1/360, **as directed**, of the span.
    - 6) Scissor Roof Trusses: Horizontal deflection of 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) <Insert dimension> at reactions.
    - 7) Roof Rafter Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/240 **OR** 1/360, **as directed**, of the horizontally projected span.
    - 8) Ceiling Joist Framing: Vertical deflection of 1/240 **OR** 1/360, **as directed**, of the span.
  - c. Design framing systems to provide for movement of framing members without damage or overstressing, sheathing failure, connection failure, undue strain on fasteners and anchors, or other detrimental effects when subject to a maximum ambient temperature change of 120 deg F (67 deg C).
  - d. Design framing system to maintain clearances at openings, to allow for construction tolerances, and to accommodate live load deflection of primary building structure as follows:
    - 1) Upward and downward movement of 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), **as directed.**
2. Cold-Formed Steel Framing, General: Design according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions."
  - a. Headers: Design according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Header Design."



- b. Design exterior non-load-bearing wall framing to accommodate horizontal deflection without regard for contribution of sheathing materials.
- c. Roof Trusses: Design according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Truss Design."

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product and accessory indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
    - 1) Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
3. Shop Drawings: Show layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed metal framing; fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners.
  - a. For cold-formed metal framing indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
4. Welding certificates.
5. Qualification data.
6. Product test reports.
7. Research/evaluation reports.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings, design calculations, and other structural data by a qualified professional engineer.
2. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of cold-formed metal framing that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.
3. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM E 329 to conduct the testing indicated.
4. Product Tests: Mill certificates or data from a qualified independent testing agency, or in-house testing with calibrated test equipment, **as directed**, indicating steel sheet complies with requirements, including base-metal thickness, yield strength, tensile strength, total elongation, chemical requirements, ductility, and metallic-coating thickness.
5. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code--Steel," and AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."
6. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where indicated, provide cold-formed metal framing identical to that of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
7. AISI Specifications and Standards: Comply with AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members" and its "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions."
  - a. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Truss Design."
  - b. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Header Design."
8. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Prescriptive Method for One and Two Family Dwellings" as applicable.
9. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Protect cold-formed metal framing from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.
2. Store cold-formed metal framing, protect with a waterproof covering, and ventilate to avoid condensation.



## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Materials

1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
2. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating weight as follows:
  - a. Grade: ST33H (ST230H) **OR** ST50H (ST340H) **OR** As required by structural performance, **as directed**.
  - b. Coating: G60 (Z180), A60 (ZF180), AZ50 (AZ150), or GF30 (ZGF90) **OR** G90 (Z275) or equivalent, **as directed**.
3. Steel Sheet for Vertical Deflection **OR** Drift, **as directed**, Clips: ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural steel, zinc coated, of grade and coating as follows:
  - a. Grade: 50 (340), Class 1 or 2 **OR** As required by structural performance, **as directed**.
  - b. Coating: G90 (Z275).

### B. Load-Bearing Wall Framing

1. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges.
2. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with straight flanges.
3. Steel Box or Back-to-Back Headers: Manufacturer's standard C-shapes used to form header beams, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges.
4. Steel Double-L Headers: Manufacturer's standard L-shapes used to form header beams, of web depths indicated.

### C. Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Wall Framing

1. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges.
2. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened flanges.
3. Vertical Deflection Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass **OR** head, **as directed**, clips, capable of accommodating upward and downward vertical displacement of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web.
4. Single Deflection Track: Manufacturer's single, deep-leg, U-shaped steel track; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, of web depth to contain studs while allowing free vertical movement, with flanges designed to support horizontal and lateral loads and transfer them to the primary structure.
5. Double Deflection Tracks: Manufacturer's double, deep-leg, U-shaped steel tracks, consisting of nested inner and outer tracks; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges.
  - a. Outer Track: Of web depth to allow free vertical movement of inner track, with flanges designed to support horizontal and lateral loads and transfer them to the primary structure.
  - b. Inner Track: Of web depth indicated, and as follows:
6. Drift Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass or head clips, capable of isolating wall stud from upward and downward vertical displacement and lateral drift of primary structure.

### D. Floor Joist Framing

1. Steel Joists: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel joists, of web depths indicated, unpunched, **OR** punched, **OR** punched, with enlarged service holes, **as directed**, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
2. Steel Joist Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel joist track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, and as follows:

### E. Roof Trusses

1. Roof Truss Members:



- a. Manufacturer's standard-shape steel sections.  
**OR**  
Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel sections, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with stiffened flanges.
- F. Roof-Rafter Framing
- 1. Steel Rafters: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel sections, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with stiffened flanges.
  - 2. Built-up Members: Built-up members of manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel section, with stiffened flanges, nested into a U-shaped steel section joist track, with unstiffened flanges; unpunched; of web depths indicated.
- G. Ceiling Joist Framing
- 1. Steel Ceiling Joists: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel sections, of web depths indicated, unpunched, **OR** punched with enlarged service holes, **as directed**, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
- H. Framing Accessories
- 1. Fabricate steel-framing accessories from steel sheet, ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of same grade and coating weight used for framing members.
  - 2. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration, unless otherwise indicated, as follows:
    - a. Supplementary framing.
    - b. Bracing, bridging, and solid blocking.
    - c. Web stiffeners.
    - d. Anchor clips.
    - e. End clips.
    - f. Foundation clips.
    - g. Gusset plates.
    - h. Stud kickers, knee braces, and girts.
    - i. Joist hangers and end closures.
    - j. Hole reinforcing plates.
    - k. Backer plates.
- I. Anchors, Clips, And Fasteners
- 1. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A 36/A 36M, zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
  - 2. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36 **OR** 55, **as directed**, threaded carbon-steel hex-headed bolts **OR** headless, hooked bolts **OR** headless bolts, with encased end threaded, **as directed**, and carbon-steel nuts; and flat, hardened-steel washers; zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C **OR** mechanically deposition according to ASTM B 695, Class 50, **as directed**.
  - 3. Expansion Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 5 times design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
  - 4. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 1190 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
  - 5. Mechanical Fasteners: ASTM C 1513, corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping steel drill screws.
    - a. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing, manufacturer's standard elsewhere.
  - 6. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.
- J. Miscellaneous Materials



1. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20 or DOD-P-21035 **OR** ASTM A 780, **as directed**.
2. Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I; and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 404. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration.
3. Nonmetallic, Nonshrink Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout containing selected silica sands, portland cement, shrinkage-compensating agents, and plasticizing and water-reducing agents, complying with ASTM C 1107, with fluid consistency and 30-minute working time.
4. Shims: Load bearing, high-density multimonomer plastic, nonleaching.
5. Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to match width of bottom track or rim track members.

#### K. Fabrication

1. Fabricate cold-formed metal framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened, according to referenced AISI's specifications and standards, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
  - a. Fabricate framing assemblies using jigs or templates.
  - b. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
  - c. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting as standard with fabricator. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
    - 1) Comply with AWS D1.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
    - 2) Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, with screw penetrating joined members by not less than three exposed screw threads.
  - d. Fasten other materials to cold-formed metal framing by welding, bolting, or screw fastening, according to Shop Drawings.
2. Reinforce, stiffen, and brace framing assemblies to withstand handling, delivery, and erection stresses. Lift fabricated assemblies to prevent damage or permanent distortion.
3. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate assemblies level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet (1:960) and as follows:
  - a. Spacing: Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm) from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.
  - b. Squareness: Fabricate each cold-formed metal framing assembly to a maximum out-of-square tolerance of 1/8 inch (3 mm).

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Preparation

1. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach continuous angles, supplementary framing, or tracks to structural members indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.
2. After applying sprayed fire-resistive materials, remove only as much of these materials as needed to complete installation of cold-formed framing without reducing thickness of fire-resistive materials below that are required to obtain fire-resistance rating indicated. Protect remaining fire-resistive materials from damage.
3. Install load bearing shims or grout between the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations to ensure a uniform bearing surface on supporting concrete or masonry construction.
4. Install sealer gaskets to isolate the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations.

#### B. Installation, General

1. Cold-formed metal framing may be shop or field fabricated for installation, or it may be field assembled.



2. Install cold-formed metal framing according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions" and to manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
3. Install shop- or field-fabricated, cold-formed framing and securely anchor to supporting structure.
  - a. Screw, bolt, or weld wall panels at horizontal and vertical junctures to produce flush, even, true-to-line joints with maximum variation in plane and true position between fabricated panels not exceeding 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
4. Install cold-formed metal framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened.
  - a. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
  - b. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
    - 1) Comply with AWS D1.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
    - 2) Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, and complying with requirements for spacing, edge distances, and screw penetration.
5. Install framing members in one-piece lengths unless splice connections are indicated for track or tension members.
6. Install temporary bracing and supports to secure framing and support loads comparable in intensity to those for which structure was designed. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to framing are secured.
7. Do not bridge building expansion and control joints with cold-formed metal framing. Independently frame both sides of joints.
8. Install insulation, specified in Division 07 Section "Thermal Insulation", in built-up exterior framing members, such as headers, sills, boxed joists, and multiple studs at openings, that are inaccessible on completion of framing work.
9. Fasten hole reinforcing plate over web penetrations that exceed size of manufacturer's standard punched openings.
10. Erection Tolerances: Install cold-formed metal framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet (1:960) and as follows:
  - a. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm) from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

#### C. Load-Bearing Wall Installation

1. Install continuous top and bottom tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor at corners and ends, and at spacings as follows:
  - a. Anchor Spacing: 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 32 inches (813 mm) **OR** To match stud spacing **OR** As shown on Shop Drawings, **as directed**.
2. Squarely seat studs against top and bottom tracks with gap not exceeding of 1/8 inch (3 mm) between the end of wall framing member and the web of track. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom tracks. Space studs as follows:
  - a. Stud Spacing:
    - 1) 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 16 inches (406 mm) **OR** 19.2 inches (488 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
    - 2) 300 mm **OR** 400 mm **OR** 600 mm **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
3. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar configurations.
4. Align studs vertically where floor framing interrupts wall-framing continuity. Where studs cannot be aligned, continuously reinforce track to transfer loads.
5. Align floor and roof framing over studs. Where framing cannot be aligned, continuously reinforce track to transfer loads.
6. Anchor studs abutting structural columns or walls, including masonry walls, to supporting structure as indicated.



7. Install headers over wall openings wider than stud spacing. Locate headers above openings as indicated. Fabricate headers of compound shapes indicated or required to transfer load to supporting studs, complete with clip-angle connectors, web stiffeners, or gusset plates.
    - a. Frame wall openings with not less than a double stud at each jamb of frame as indicated on Shop Drawings. Fasten jamb members together to uniformly distribute loads.
    - b. Install runner tracks and jack studs above and below wall openings. Anchor tracks to jamb studs with clip angles or by welding, and space jack studs same as full-height wall studs.
  8. Install supplementary framing, blocking, and bracing in stud framing indicated to support fixtures, equipment, services, casework, heavy trim, furnishings, and similar work requiring attachment to framing.
    - a. If type of supplementary support is not indicated, comply with stud manufacturer's written recommendations and industry standards in each case, considering weight or load resulting from item supported.
  9. Install horizontal bridging in stud system, spaced 48 inches (1220 mm) **OR** as indicated **OR** as indicated on Shop Drawings, **as directed**. Fasten at each stud intersection.
    - a. Bridging:
      - 1) Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs with a minimum of 2 screws into each flange of the clip angle for framing members up to 6 inches (150 mm) deep.  
**OR**  
Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness to match studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.  
**OR**  
Proprietary bridging bars installed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  10. Install steel sheet diagonal bracing straps to both stud flanges, terminate at and fasten to reinforced top and bottom tracks. Fasten clip-angle connectors to multiple studs at ends of bracing and anchor to structure.
  11. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including supplementary framing, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.
- D. Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Wall Installation
1. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to supporting structure as indicated.
  2. Fasten both flanges of studs to bottom **OR** top and bottom, **as directed**, track, unless otherwise indicated. Space studs as follows:
    - a. Stud Spacing:
      - 1) 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 16 inches (406 mm) **OR** 19.2 inches (488 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
      - 2) 300 mm **OR** 400 mm **OR** 480 mm **OR** 600 mm **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  3. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.
  4. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support.
    - a. Install single-leg deflection tracks and anchor to building structure.
    - b. Install double deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor outer track to building structure.
    - c. Connect vertical deflection clips to bypassing **OR** infill, **as directed**, studs and anchor to building structure.
    - d. Connect drift clips to cold formed metal framing and anchor to building structure.
  5. Install horizontal bridging in wall studs, spaced in rows indicated on Shop Drawings but not more than 48 inches (1220 mm) apart. Fasten at each stud intersection.
    - a. Top Bridging for Single Deflection Track: Install row of horizontal bridging within 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 18 inches (450 mm), **as directed**, of single deflection track. Install a combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud or



stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness matching studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.

- 1) Install solid blocking at 96-inch (2440-mm) centers **OR** centers indicated **OR** centers indicated on Shop Drawings, **as directed**.
- b. Bridging:
  - 1) Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs.
 

**OR**

 Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness to match studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.

**OR**

 Proprietary bridging bars installed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
6. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including stud kickers, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, fasteners, and stud girts, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

#### E. Joist Installation

1. Install perimeter joist track sized to match joists. Align and securely anchor or fasten track to supporting structure at corners, ends, and spacings indicated on Shop Drawings.
2. Install joists bearing on supporting frame, level, straight, and plumb; adjust to final position, brace, and reinforce. Fasten joists to both flanges of joist track.
  - a. Install joists over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
  - b. Reinforce ends and bearing points of joists with web stiffeners, end clips, joist hangers, steel clip angles, or steel-stud sections as indicated on Shop Drawings.
3. Space joists not more than 2 inches (51 mm) from abutting walls, and as follows:
  - a. Joist Spacing:
    - 1) 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 16 inches (406 mm) **OR** 19.2 inches (488 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
    - 2) 300 mm **OR** 400 mm **OR** 480 mm **OR** 600 mm **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
4. Frame openings with built-up joist headers consisting of joist and joist track, nesting joists, or another combination of connected joists if indicated.
5. Install joist reinforcement at interior supports with single, short length of joist section located directly over interior support, with lapped joists of equal length to joist reinforcement, or as indicated **OR** as indicated on Shop Drawings, **as directed**.
  - a. Install web stiffeners to transfer axial loads of walls above.
6. Install bridging at intervals indicated **OR** indicated on Shop Drawings, **as directed**. Fasten bridging at each joist intersection as follows:
  - a. Bridging:
    - 1) Joist-track solid blocking of width and thickness indicated, secured to joist webs.
 

**OR**

 Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and joist-track solid blocking of width and thickness indicated. Fasten flat straps to bottom flange of joists and secure solid blocking to joist webs.
7. Secure joists to load-bearing interior walls to prevent lateral movement of bottom flange.
8. Install miscellaneous joist framing and connections, including web stiffeners, closure pieces, clip angles, continuous angles, hold-down angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable joist-framing assembly.

#### F. Truss Installation

1. Install, bridge, and brace trusses according to Shop Drawings and requirements in this Section.
2. Truss Spacing:
  - a. 16 inches (406 mm) **OR** 19.2 inches (488 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 32 inches (813 mm) **OR** 48 inches (1220 mm) **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  - b. 400 mm **OR** 480 mm **OR** 600 mm **OR** 800 mm **OR** 1200 mm, **as directed**.





3. Do not alter, cut, or remove framing members or connections of trusses.
4. Erect trusses with plane of truss webs plumb and parallel to each other, align, and accurately position at spacings indicated.
5. Erect trusses without damaging framing members or connections.
6. Align webs of bottom chords and load-bearing studs or continuously reinforce track to transfer loads to structure. Anchor trusses securely at all bearing points.
7. Install continuous bridging and permanently brace trusses as indicated on Shop Drawings and designed according to LGSEA's Technical Note 551e, "Design Guide for Permanent Bracing of Cold-Formed Steel Trusses," **as directed**.

G. Field Quality Control

1. Testing: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
2. Field and shop welds will be subject to testing and inspecting.
3. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and the Owner.
4. Remove and replace work where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
5. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

H. Repairs And Protection

1. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed metal framing with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that cold-formed metal framing is without damage or deterioration at time of Final Completion.

END OF SECTION 05 12 23 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
05 12 23 00	05 05 23 00	Structural Steel
05 12 23 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 05 14 13 00 - STRUCTURAL ALUMINUM

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for structural aluminum. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Performance Requirements

1. Connections: Provide details of simple shear connections required by the Contract Documents to be selected or completed by structural-aluminum fabricator to withstand loads indicated and comply with other information and restrictions indicated.
  - a. Select and complete connections using schematic details indicated and in accordance with minimum mechanical properties and applicable buckling formula constants published by The Aluminum Association's "Aluminum Construction Manual."

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-aluminum components.
3. Welding certificates.
4. Mill test reports.
5. Source quality-control test reports.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator who has provided successful structural aluminum fabrication for a minimum of 5 years.
2. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code--Aluminum."
3. Comply with applicable provisions of The Aluminum Association's "Aluminum Construction Manual."
4. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Structural-Aluminum Materials

1. W-Shapes, Channels, Angles, Plate and Bar, Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections, and Pipe: Structural shapes indicating minimum mechanical properties and applicable buckling formula constants are listed in Table 3.3.1, Section 3, of "Specifications for Aluminum Structures," Construction Manual Series Section 1, as published by The Aluminum Association. Applicable ASTM Designations include B209, B210, B211, B221, B241, B247, B308, and B429
2. Allowable Stresses:
  - a. Building Type Structures: Basic allowable tensile stresses for buildings, structural supports for highway signs, luminaires, traffic signals and similar structures shall be the lesser of the minimum yield strength divided by a factor of safety of 1.65, or the minimum ultimate tensile strength divided by a factor of safety of 1.95. Other allowable stresses for buildings and similar structures shall be based upon the factors of safety shown in Table 3.3.3 of "Specifications for Aluminum Structures."
  - b. Bridge Type Structures: Basic allowable tensile stresses for bridge type structures shall be the lesser of the minimum yield strength divided by a factor of safety of 1.85, or the minimum ultimate tensile strength divided by a factor of safety of 2.2. Other allowable



stresses for bridge and similar structures shall be based upon the factors of safety shown in Table 3.3.3 of "Specifications for Aluminum Structures."

3. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

#### B. Bolts and Connectors

1. Rivets and Bolts:
  - a. Aluminum alloys used for rivets and bolts shall be those listed in Tables 5.1.1b and 5.1.1c of "Specifications for Aluminum Structures."
  - b. Nuts:
    - 1) For bolts 1/4" and smaller: Alloy 2024-T4. For improved corrosion resistance, apply 0.0002" minimum thickness anodic coating.
    - 2) For bolts larger than 1/4": 6061-T6 or 6262-T9.
    - 3) Flat Washers: Alclad 2024-T4.
    - 4) Spring Lock Washers: Alloy 7075-T6.
  - c. Steel Bolts: Hot-dip galvanized, electro-galvanized, cadmium plated or aluminized steel bolts and Series 300 stainless steel bolts may be used instead of aluminum bolts. Plating thickness on steel shall be adequate to provide corrosion protection for the anticipated environ and service life.

#### C. Grout

1. Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I; and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 404, Size No. 2. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration.
2. Metallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, metallic aggregate grout, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.
3. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

#### D. Fabrication

1. Structural Aluminum: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate according to The Aluminum Association's "Aluminum Construction Manual."

#### E. Source Quality Control

1. Engage an independent testing and inspecting agency to perform shop tests and inspections and prepare test reports. Comply with testing and inspection requirements of Part 1.3, Article "Field Quality Control."
2. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Erection

1. Examination: Verify elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments, with erector present, for compliance with requirements.
  - a. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
2. Set structural aluminum accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to The Aluminum Association's "Aluminum Construction Manual."
3. Base and Bearing Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting base and bearing plates. Clean bottom surface of base and bearing plates.
  - a. Set base and bearing plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.



- b. Weld plate washers to top of base plate.
  - c. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of base or bearing plate before packing with grout.
  - d. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and base or bearing plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.
4. Maintain erection tolerances of structural aluminum within The Aluminum Association's "Aluminum Construction Manual."
- B. Field Connections
1. Bolts: Shop install bolts according to The Aluminum Association's "Aluminum Construction Manual" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
  2. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.2 for welding procedure specifications, tolerances, appearance, and quality of welds and for methods used in correcting welding work.
    - a. Comply with The Aluminum Association's "Aluminum Construction Manual" for bearing, adequacy of temporary connections, and alignment.
- C. Field Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to inspect field welds and high-strength bolted connections.
  2. Bolted Connections: Shop-bolted connections shall be tested and inspected according to The Aluminum Association's "Aluminum Construction Manual."
  3. Welded Connections: Field welds shall be visually inspected according to AWS D1.2.
    - a. In addition to visual inspection, field welds shall be tested according to AWS D1.2.
  4. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate are not in compliance with the Contract Documents.

END OF SECTION 05 14 13 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
05 14 13 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 05 15 16 00 - ORNAMENTAL METAL

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for ornamental metal. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Decorative window security bars.
  - b. Decorative mechanical grilles and frames.
  - c. Decorative-metal-clad, hollow-metal doors and frames.
  - d. Custom door pulls.
  - e. Combination hall push-button stations.
  - f. Metal reveals at wood paneling.
  - g. Cast-metal rosettes at marble joints.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, including finishing materials.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
3. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for decorative metal.
  - a. Include plans, elevations, component details, and attachments to other work.
  - b. Indicate materials and profiles of each decorative metal member, fittings, joinery, finishes, fasteners, anchorages, and accessory items.
4. Patterns, Models, or Plaster Castings: Made from proposed patterns for each design of custom casting required.
5. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required.
  - a. Sections of linear shapes.
  - b. Full-size Samples of castings and forgings.
    - 1) For custom castings, submit finished Samples showing ability to reproduce detail, cast-metal color, and quality of finish. Samples may be of similar previous work.
  - c. Samples of welded and brazed joints showing quality of workmanship and color matching of materials.
6. Qualification Data: For qualified fabricator **OR** organic-coating applicator **OR** anodic finisher **OR** powder-coating applicator, **as directed**.
7. Mill Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of stainless-steel certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
8. Welding certificates.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing decorative metal similar to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
2. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.



3. Organic-Coating Applicator Qualifications: A firm experienced in successfully applying organic coatings, of type indicated, to aluminum extrusions and employing competent control personnel to conduct continuing, effective quality-control program to ensure compliance with requirements.
4. Anodic Finisher Qualifications: A firm experienced in successfully applying anodic finishes of type indicated and employing competent control personnel to conduct continuing, effective quality-control program to ensure compliance with requirements.
5. Powder-Coating Applicator Qualifications: A firm experienced in successfully applying powder coatings of type indicated and employing competent control personnel to conduct continuing, effective quality-control program to ensure compliance with requirements.
6. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - a. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - b. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
  - c. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
  - d. AWS D1.6, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."
7. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Store decorative metal in a well-ventilated area, away from uncured concrete and masonry, and protected from weather, moisture, soiling, abrasion, extreme temperatures, and humidity.
2. Deliver and store cast-metal products in wooden crates surrounded by sufficient packing material to ensure that products will not be cracked or otherwise damaged.

F. Project Conditions

1. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with decorative metal by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

G. Coordination

1. Coordinate installation of anchorages for decorative metal items. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Metals, General

1. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. Provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.

B. Aluminum

1. Aluminum, General: Provide alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with strength and durability properties for each aluminum form required not less than that of alloy and temper designated below.
  - a. Extruded Bars and Shapes: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T5/T52.
  - b. Extruded Structural Pipe and Round Tubing: ASTM B 429/B 429M, Alloy 6063-T6.
  - c. Drawn Seamless Tubing: ASTM B 210 (ASTM B 210M) or ASTM B 483/B 483M, Alloy 6063-T832.
  - d. Plate and Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003-H14 **OR** Alloy 5005-H32 **OR** Alloy 6061-T6, **as directed**.
  - e. Die and Hand Forgings: ASTM B 247 (ASTM B 247M), Alloy 6061-T6.
  - f. Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy A356.0-T6.

C. Copper Alloys



1. Copper and Copper Alloys, General: Provide alloys indicated and temper to suit application and forming methods but with strength and stiffness not less than H01 (quarter-hard) for plate, sheet, strip, and bars and H55 (light-drawn) for tube and pipe.
  2. Extruded Shapes, Bronze: ASTM B 455, Alloy UNS No. C38500 (architectural bronze).
  3. Extruded Shapes, Brass: ASTM B 249/B 249M, Alloy UNS No. C36000 (free-cutting brass).
  4. Extruded Shapes, Nickel Silver: ASTM B 249/B 249M, Alloy UNS No. C79600.
  5. Seamless Pipe, Bronze: ASTM B 43, Alloy UNS No. C23000 (red brass, 85 percent copper).
  6. Seamless Tube, Bronze: ASTM B 135 (ASTM B 135M), Alloy UNS No. C23000 (red brass, 85 percent copper).
  7. Seamless Tube, Brass: ASTM B 135 (ASTM B 135M), Alloy UNS No. C26000 (cartridge brass, 70 percent copper).
  8. Seamless Tube, Copper: ASTM B 75 (ASTM B 75M), Alloy UNS No. C12200 (phosphorous deoxidized, high residual phosphorous copper).
  9. Castings, Bronze: ASTM B 62, Alloy UNS No. C83600 (85-5-5-5 or No. 1 composition commercial red brass) or ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C86500 (No. 1 manganese bronze).
  10. Castings, Brass: ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C85200 (high-copper yellow brass).
  11. Castings, Copper: ASTM B 824, with a minimum of 99.9 percent copper.
  12. Castings, Nickel Silver: ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C97300 (12 percent leaded nickel silver).
  13. Plate, Sheet, Strip, and Bars; Bronze: ASTM B 36/B 36M, Alloy UNS No. C28000 (muntz metal, 60 percent copper).
  14. Plate, Sheet, Strip, and Bars; Brass: ASTM B 36/B 36M, Alloy UNS No. C26000 (cartridge brass, 70 percent copper).
  15. Plate, Sheet, Strip, and Bars; Copper: ASTM B 152/B 152M, Alloy UNS No. C11000 (electrolytic tough pitch copper) or UNS No. C12200 (phosphorous deoxidized, high-residual phosphorous copper).
- D. Stainless Steel
1. Tubing: ASTM A 554, Grade MT 304 **OR** Grade MT 316 **OR** Grade MT 316L, **as directed**.
  2. Pipe: ASTM A 312/A 312M, Grade TP 304 **OR** Grade TP 316 **OR** Grade TP 316L, **as directed**.
  3. Castings: ASTM A 743/A 743M, Grade CF 8 or CF 20 **OR** Grade CF 8M or CF 3M, **as directed**.
  4. Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bar: ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316 **OR** Type 316L, **as directed**.
  5. Bars and Shapes: ASTM A 276, Type 304 **OR** Type 316 **OR** Type 316L, **as directed**.
  6. Wire Rope and Fittings:
    - a. Wire Rope: 1-by-19 **OR** 7-by-7 **OR** 7-by-19, **as directed**, wire rope made from wire complying with ASTM A 492, Type 316.
    - b. Wire-Rope Fittings: Connectors of types indicated, fabricated from stainless steel, and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to minimum breaking strength of wire rope with which they are used.
- E. Steel And Iron
1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
  2. Tubing: ASTM A 500 (cold formed) or ASTM A 513, Type 5 (mandrel drawn).
  3. Bars: Hot-rolled, carbon steel complying with ASTM A 29/A 29M, Grade 1010.
  4. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
  5. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A 48/A 48M, or malleable iron, ASTM A 47/A 47M unless otherwise indicated.
  6. Steel Sheet, Cold Rolled: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, either commercial steel or structural steel, exposed.
- F. Titanium
1. Titanium Strip, Sheet, and Plate: ASTM B 265, Grade 1.
  2. Titanium Bars: ASTM B 348, Grade 1.



## G. Fasteners

1. Fastener Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, provide the following:
  - a. Aluminum Items: Aluminum **OR** Type 304 stainless-steel **OR** Type 316 stainless-steel, **as directed**, fasteners.
  - b. Copper-Alloy (Bronze) Items: Silicon bronze (Alloy 651 or Alloy 655) fasteners where concealed, muntz metal (Alloy 280) fasteners where exposed.
  - c. Copper-Alloy (Brass) Items: Silicon bronze (Alloy 651 or Alloy 655) fasteners where concealed, brass (Alloy 260 or 360) fasteners where exposed.
  - d. Stainless-Steel Items: Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, stainless-steel fasteners.
  - e. Titanium Items: Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, stainless-steel fasteners.
  - f. Uncoated-Steel Items: Plated steel fasteners complying with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 25 for electrodeposited zinc coating where concealed, Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners where exposed.
  - g. Galvanized-Steel Items: Plated steel fasteners complying with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 25 for electrodeposited zinc coating.
  - h. Dissimilar Metals: Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, stainless-steel fasteners.
2. Fasteners for Anchoring to Other Construction: Unless otherwise indicated, select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring indicated items to other types of construction indicated.
3. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting components and for attaching decorative metal items to other work unless otherwise indicated **OR** exposed fasteners are unavoidable, **as directed**.
  - a. Provide Phillips **OR** tamper-resistant **OR** square or hex socket, **as directed**, flat-head machine screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
4. Anchors, General: Anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
5. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion type or chemical type.
  - a. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5 unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 (A1) **OR** Group 2 (A4), **as directed**, stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M), and nuts, ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M).

## H. Miscellaneous Materials

1. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
  - a. For aluminum, provide type and alloy as recommended by producer of metal to be welded and as required for color match, strength, and compatibility in fabricated items.
2. Brazing Rods: For copper alloys, provide type and alloy as recommended by producer of metal to be brazed and as required for color match, strength, and compatibility in fabricated items.
3. Etching Cleaner for Galvanized Metal: Complying with MPI#25.
4. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
5. Lacquer for Copper Alloys: Clear, acrylic lacquer specially developed for coating copper-alloy products.
6. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 07 **OR** Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
7. Universal Shop Primer for Ferrous Metal: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
  - a. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
8. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.



9. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Cementitious galvanized metal primer complying with MPI#26 **OR** Vinyl wash primer complying with MPI#80 **OR** Water-based galvanized metal primer complying with MPI#134, **as directed**.
10. Intermediate Coats and Topcoats for Steel: Provide products that comply with Division 07 **OR** Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 **AND** Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
11. Epoxy Intermediate Coat for Steel: Complying with MPI#77 and compatible with primer and topcoat.
12. Polyurethane Topcoat for Steel: Complying with MPI#72 and compatible with undercoat.
13. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

I. Fabrication, General

1. Assemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
2. Make up wire-rope assemblies in the shop to field-measured dimensions with fittings machine swaged. Minimize amount of turnbuckle take-up used for dimensional adjustment so maximum amount is available for tensioning wire ropes. Tag wire-rope assemblies and fittings to identify installation locations and orientations for coordinated installation.
3. Form decorative metal to required shapes and sizes, true to line and level with true curves and accurate angles and surfaces. Finish exposed surfaces to smooth, sharp, well-defined lines and arris.
4. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing the Work.
5. Form simple and compound curves in bars, pipe, tubing, and extruded shapes by bending members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each configuration required; maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces.
6. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
7. Mill joints to a tight, hairline fit. Cope or miter corner joints. Fabricate connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water.
8. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate. Locate weep holes in inconspicuous locations.
9. Provide necessary rebates, lugs, and brackets to assemble units and to attach to other work. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as needed to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items unless otherwise indicated.
10. Comply with AWS for recommended practices in shop welding and brazing. Weld and braze behind finished surfaces without distorting or discoloring exposed side. Clean exposed welded and brazed joints of flux, and dress exposed and contact surfaces.
  - a. Where welding and brazing cannot be concealed behind finished surfaces, finish joints to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for Type 1 Welds: no evidence of a welded joint **OR** Type 2 Welds: completely sanded joint, some undercutting and pinholes okay **OR** Type 3 Welds: partially dressed weld with spatter removed **OR** Type 4 Welds: good quality, uniform undressed weld with minimal splatter, **as directed**.
11. Provide castings that are sound and free of warp, cracks, blowholes, or other defects that impair strength or appearance. Grind, wire brush, sandblast, and buff castings to remove seams, gate marks, casting flash, and other casting marks.

J. Decorative Window Security Bars

1. General: Fabricate decorative window grilles to designs indicated from steel bars and shapes of sizes and profiles indicated. Form steel bars by bending, forging, coping, mitering, and welding.
2. Welding: Interconnect grille members with full-length, full-penetration welds unless otherwise indicated. Use welding method that is appropriate for metal and finish indicated and that



develops full strength of members joined. Finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth, flush, and blended to match adjoining surfaces.

3. Brackets, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, fittings, and anchors to connect decorative window grilles to other work unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Furnish inserts and other anchorage devices to connect decorative window grilles to concrete and masonry work. Coordinate anchorage devices with supporting structure.
  - b. Fabricate anchorage devices that are capable of withstanding loads indicated.

#### K. Decorative Mechanical Grilles

1. Fabricate decorative grilles from perforated aluminum **OR** brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless-steel **OR** steel, **as directed**, sheet or plate of thickness, size, and pattern indicated. Form perforations by punching, cutting, or drilling to produce openings of sizes and shapes indicated. Roll, press, and grind perforated metal to flatten and to remove burrs and deformations.
  - a. Form perforations to match existing grilles.  
**OR**  
Drawings indicate perforated metal patterns required and are based on products of one manufacturer. Perforated metal patterns produced by other manufacturers may be considered, provided deviations are minor and do not change design concept as judged solely by the Owner.
2. Drill and countersink grilles for mounting screws at 2 inches (50 mm) from corners and at 10 inches (250 mm) or less o.c. Provide units with oval-head wood **OR** self-tapping machine, **as directed**, screws.
3. Fabricate grille frames from extruded aluminum **OR** brass **OR** bronze, **as directed**, of profiles, and to sizes and shapes indicated. Miter frame members at corners and connect with concealed splice plates welded **OR** brazed, **as directed**, to back of frames.
  - a. Secure grilles in frames with 0.5-inch- (12-mm-) long welds **OR** brazing, **as directed**, along perimeter of grilles at 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
  - b. Provide frame profiles to match existing frames.  
**OR**  
Drawings indicate frame profiles required and are based on products of one manufacturer. Similar frame profiles produced by other manufacturers may be considered, provided deviations are minor and do not change design concept as judged solely by the Owner.
4. Drill and countersink frames for mounting screws at 4 inches (100 mm) from corners and at 16 inches (400 mm) or less o.c. Provide units with oval-head wood **OR** self-tapping machine, **as directed**, screws.

#### L. Decorative-Metal-Clad Doors And Frames

1. Laminate 0.0403-inch- (1.0-mm-) thick, muntz-metal **OR** 0.0403-inch- (1.0-mm-) thick, brass **OR** 0.0375-inch- (0.95-mm-) thick, stainless-steel **OR** 0.024-inch- (0.6-mm-) thick, titanium, **as directed**, sheets to outside face of hollow-metal doors and frames at locations and to comply with details indicated. Use adhesive recommended by metal fabricator that will fully bond metal to metal and that will prevent telegraphing and oil canning.
  - a. Hollow-metal doors and frames are specified in Division 8 Section "Steel Doors and Frames."

#### M. Custom Door Pulls

1. Fabricate custom door pulls from brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, bar stock of profile indicated, fabricated to shapes indicated. Form curves by bending to produce uniform curvature of radii indicated; maintain profile of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces. Where radii of bends are too small to avoid buckling, grind bars after bending to restore original profile. Drill and tap door pulls to receive through bolts for attachment to doors.
2. Fabricate backing plates for custom door pulls from 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, sheet. Cut to shape indicated and bevel edges at a 45-degree angle for one-half thickness of metal. Drill and countersink holes where indicated for screws and bolts.





3. Provide units with oval-head through bolts for mounting pulls and with oval-head wood screws for mounting backing plates.
- N. Combination Hall Push-Button Stations
1. Fabricate units of brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, to comply with details indicated. Coordinate with requirements in Division 14 Section "Electric Traction Elevators" to provide integrated, closely fitted assemblies.
    - a. Fabricate faceplates from 1/8-inch- (3.2-mm-) thick sheet with edges beveled at a 45-degree angle for one-half thickness of metal.
    - b. Provide units with rectangular, split-bowl trash receptacle, designed for recess mounting in nominal 4-inch (100-mm) wall depth. Fabricate recessed cabinets, top rings, and split bowls of same metal as face of units; fabricate removable receptacles of drawn aluminum. Nominal dimensions of units are 10 by 10 by 3-1/2 inches (250 by 250 by 90 mm) in depth.
    - c. Provide units with emergency pictorial signs and text, complying with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, indicating that in fire emergency, elevators should not be used and that stairways should be used instead. Engrave pictorial sign and text into front surface of faceplates to a depth of 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) with engraving painted red. Make signs 5 inches (125 mm) wide by 8 inches (200 mm) high.
    - d. Provide cutouts in faceplates of units for push buttons of elevator hall push-button station, card reader, **as directed**, and elevator key switches. Coordinate locations and sizes of cutouts so additional faceplate is not required and so faces of push buttons are flush with fronts of faceplates and key switches project beyond faceplate only by depth of bezel.
- O. Metal Reveals
1. Fabricate metal reveals for wood paneling from 3/4-by-3/4-by-1/16-inch (19-by-19-by-3-mm) extruded-bronze **OR** 3/4-by-3/4-by-0.025-inch (19-by-19-by-0.6-mm) brake-formed, stainless-steel **OR** 3/4-by-3/4-by-0.015-inch (19-by-19-by-0.4-mm) brake-formed titanium, **as directed**, channels. Drill for mounting screws 6 inches (150 mm) from ends of channels and not more than 24 inches (600 mm) o.c. Locate mounting screws at same heights for all channels. Provide black-finished, **as directed**, hex-socket, wafer-head screws for mounting reveals.
- P. Cast-Metal Rosettes
1. Fabricate cast-metal rosettes to design indicated from aluminum **OR** brass **OR** bronze **OR** nickel silver, **as directed**. Drill and tap castings for threaded mounting studs.
    - a. Provide custom castings to match design indicated.
    - b. Manufacturer's stock castings may be considered, provided deviations are minor and do not change design concept as judged solely by the Owner.
    - c. Drawings indicate cast-metal rosette designs required and are based on products of one manufacturer. Castings produced by other manufacturers may be considered, provided deviations are minor and do not change design concept as judged solely by the Owner.
- Q. Finishes, General
1. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
  2. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- R. Aluminum Finishes
1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
  2. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm **OR** AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm, **as directed**, or thicker.
  3. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm **OR** AA-M12C22A32/A34, Class II, 0.010 mm, **as directed**, or thicker.



- a. Color: Champagne **OR** Light bronze **OR** Medium bronze **OR** Dark bronze **OR** Black **OR** As selected from full range of industry colors and color densities, **as directed**.
4. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
  - a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
5. Siliconized Polyester Finish: Epoxy primer and silicone-modified, polyester-enamel topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than 0.2 mil (0.005 mm) for primer and 0.8 mil (0.02 mm) for topcoat.
  - a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
6. High-Performance Organic Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2604 **OR** AAMA 2605, **as directed**, and containing not less than 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  - a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

**OR**

High-Performance Organic Finish: Three **OR** Four, **as directed**, -coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

- b. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

## S. Copper-Alloy Finishes

1. Finish designations for copper alloys comply with the system established for designating copper-alloy finish systems defined in NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products."
2. Buffed Finish: M21 (Mechanical Finish: buffed, smooth specular).
3. Hand-Rubbed Finish: M31-M34 (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, fine satin; Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, hand rubbed).
4. Medium-Satin Finish: M32 (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, medium satin).
5. Fine-Matte Finish: M42 (Mechanical Finish: nondirectional finish, fine matte).
6. Buffed Finish, Lacquered: M21-O6x (Mechanical Finish: buffed, smooth specular; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below):
  - a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).
7. Hand-Rubbed Finish, Lacquered: M31-M34-O6x (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, fine satin; Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, hand rubbed; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below):
  - a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).
8. Medium-Satin Finish, Lacquered: M32-O6x (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, medium satin; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below):
  - a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).
9. Fine-Matte Finish, Lacquered: M42-O6x (Mechanical Finish: nondirectional finish, fine matte; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below):



- a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).
  10. Statuary Conversion Coating over Satin Finish: M31-C55 (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, fine satin; Chemical Finish: conversion coating, sulfide), with color matching the Owner's sample.
  11. Patina Conversion Coating: M36-C12-C52 (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, uniform; Chemical Finish: nonetched cleaned, degreased; Chemical Finish: conversion coating, ammonium sulfate), with color matching the Owner's sample.
  12. Statuary Conversion Coating, Bright Relieved and Lacquered: M12-C55-M2x-O6x (Mechanical Finish: matte finish, as cast; Chemical Finish: conversion coating, sulfide; Mechanical Finish: buffed, as specified; Coating: clear, organic, air drying, as specified below), with color matching the Owner's sample:
    - a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).
  13. Blackened, Bright Relieved, and Lacquered: M33-O60-M2x-O6x (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, coarse satin; Coating: black, air drying; Mechanical Finish: buffed, as specified; Coating: clear, organic, air drying, as specified below), with blackening and buffing matching the Owner's sample:
    - a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).
- T. Stainless-Steel Finishes
1. Surface Preparation: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
  2. Polished Finishes: Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches.
    - a. Run grain of directional finishes with long dimension of each piece.
  3. Bright, Cold-Rolled, Unpolished Finish: No. 2B.
  4. Directional Satin Finish: No. 4.
  5. Dull Satin Finish: No. 6.
  6. Reflective, Directional Polish: No. 7.
  7. Mirrorlike Reflective, Nondirectional Polish: No. 8.
  8. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.
  9. Sputter-Coated Finish: Titanium nitride coating deposited by magnetic sputter-coating process over indicated mechanical finish.
  10. Colored, Oxide-Film Finish: Clear, oxide interference film produced by degreasing and then immersing in a mixture of chromic and sulfuric acids.
    - a. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide INCO colored stainless-steel finish as developed and licensed by International Nickel Co., Ltd.
    - b. Color: Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected from finisher's full range, **as directed**.
- U. Steel And Iron Finishes
1. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize products made from rolled, pressed, and forged steel shapes, castings, plates, bars, and strips indicated to be galvanized to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M.
    - a. Hot-dip galvanize steel and iron hardware indicated to be galvanized to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
    - b. Do not quench or apply post-galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
    - c. Fill vent and drain holes that will be exposed in finished Work, unless indicated to remain as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
  2. Preparing Galvanized Items for Shop Priming: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean decorative metal of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with etching cleaner.



3. Preparing Nongalvanized Items for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning" **OR** SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning" **OR** requirements indicated below, **as directed**:
  - a. Exteriors (SSPC Zone 1B): SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - b. Interiors (SSPC Zone 1A): SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning."
4. Primer Application: Apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of items unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Primer need not be applied to surfaces to be embedded in concrete or masonry.
  - a. Shop prime uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces with universal shop primer **OR** primers specified in Division 07, **as directed**, unless zinc-rich primer is **OR** primers specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings" are, **as directed**, indicated.
  - b. Do not apply primer to galvanized surfaces.
5. Shop-Painted Finish: Comply with Division 09 Section(s) "Exterior Painting" **OR** "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
  - a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
6. High-Performance Coating: Apply epoxy intermediate and polyurethane topcoats to prime-coated surfaces. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions and with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Apply at spreading rates recommended by coating manufacturer.
  - a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
7. Powder-Coat Finish: Prepare, treat, and coat nongalvanized ferrous metal to comply with resin manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
  - a. Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - b. Treat prepared metal with iron-phosphate pretreatment, rinse, and seal surfaces.
  - c. Apply thermosetting polyester or acrylic urethane powder coating with cured-film thickness not less than 1.5 mils (0.04 mm).
  - d. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
8. Powder-Coat Finish: Prepare, treat, and coat galvanized metal to comply with resin manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
  - a. Prepare galvanized metal by thoroughly removing grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter.
  - b. Treat prepared metal with zinc-phosphate pretreatment, rinse, and seal surfaces.
  - c. Apply thermosetting polyester or acrylic urethane powder coating with cured-film thickness not less than 1.5 mils (0.04 mm).
  - d. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

#### V. Titanium Finishes

1. General: Fabricate items from finished titanium stock, taking care not to damage finish during fabrication. Protect finish as needed during fabrication by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering.
2. Dull Matte Finish: Pickled and annealed.
3. Bright Matte Finish: Vacuum annealed.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

1. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of decorative metal.



2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- B. Installation, General
1. Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where needed to secure decorative metal to in-place construction.
  2. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required to install decorative metal. Set products accurately in location, alignment, and elevation, measured from established lines and levels. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
  3. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form tight, hairline joints or, where indicated, uniform reveals and spaces for sealants and joint fillers. Where cutting, welding, and grinding are required for proper shop fitting and jointing of decorative metal, restore finishes to eliminate evidence of such corrective work.
  4. Do not cut or abrade finishes that cannot be completely restored in the field. Return items with such finishes to the shop for required alterations, followed by complete refinishing, or provide new units as required.
  5. Install concealed gaskets, joint fillers, insulation, and flashings as work progresses.
  6. Restore protective coverings that have been damaged during shipment or installation. Remove protective coverings only when there is no possibility of damage from other work yet to be performed at same location.
    - a. Retain protective coverings intact; remove coverings simultaneously from similarly finished items to preclude nonuniform oxidation and discoloration.
  7. Field Welding: Comply with applicable AWS specification for procedures of manual shielded metal arc welding and requirements for welding and for finishing welded connections in "Fabrication, General" Article. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
  8. Field Brazing: Comply with requirements for brazing and for finishing brazed connections in "Fabrication, General" Article. Braze connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop brazed because of shipping size limitations.
  9. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will be in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.
- C. Installing Decorative Window Security Bars
1. Fasten security bar frames to concrete and masonry walls with cast-in-place or postinstalled anchors. Peen exposed threads of anchors to prevent removal of security bars.
- D. Installing Decorative Mechanical Grilles
1. Mount decorative grilles at heights and in positions indicated, adjusting ductwork to be centered on grilles if any.
    - a. Secure to framing and blocking with specified fasteners.
    - b. On marble, brick, and other solid surfaces, secure with wood screws in lead plugs.
- E. Installing Decorative-Metal-Clad, Hollow-Metal Doors And Frames
1. Install doors and frames to comply with requirements specified in Division 08 Section "Hollow Metal Doors And Frames".
- F. Installing Custom Door Pulls
1. Install door pulls at heights and locations shown. Install with backing plates on both sides of doors. Fasten backing plates to doors with oval-head wood **OR** self-tapping metal, **as directed**, screws and secure pulls through doors and backing plates with oval-head machine screws.
- G. Installing Combination Hall Push-Button Stations
1. Coordinate installation of combination hall push-button stations with installation of related elevator signal equipment components specified in Division 14 Section "Electric Traction Elevators". Secure units in place with faceplate overlapping surrounding wall finish and drawn into contact with surrounding wall finish at entire perimeter of faceplate.



- H. Installing Metal Reveals At Wood Paneling
1. Install metal reveals between wood panels as paneling is installed. Secure to wood grounds with specified screws.
- I. Installing Cast-Metal Rosettes At Marble Joints
1. Install cast-metal rosettes at intersections of marble joints where indicated. Install only after marble work is complete and joints are grouted. Secure to wall by drilling a 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) round hole at intersection of marble joints and by filling hole with molding plaster into which threaded stud is embedded. Angle drill and rotate so bottom of hole is larger than at surface.
    - a. Secure rosettes in place with masking tape until plaster sets. After plaster has set, remove masking tape and adhesive residue.
- J. Cleaning And Protection
1. Unless otherwise indicated, clean metals by washing thoroughly with clean water and soap, rinsing with clean water, and drying with soft cloths.
  2. Clean copper alloys according to metal finisher's written instructions in a manner that leaves an undamaged and uniform finish matching approved Sample.
  3. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
    - a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.

**OR**

Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 AND Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed.**
  4. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.
  5. Protect finishes of decorative metal from damage during construction period with temporary protective coverings approved by decorative metal fabricator. Remove protective covering at time of Final Completion.
  6. Restore finishes damaged during installation and construction period so no evidence remains of correction work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the shop; make required alterations and refinish entire unit, or provide new units.

END OF SECTION 05 15 16 00



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
05 15 16 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 15 19 00	05 15 16 00	Ornamental Metal
05 41 00 00	05 12 23 00	Cold-Formed Metal Framing
05 42 13 00	05 12 23 00	Cold-Formed Metal Framing
05 43 00 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
05 43 00 00	05 12 23 00	Cold-Formed Metal Framing
05 43 00 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





## SECTION 05 50 00 00 - METAL FABRICATIONS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for metal fabrications. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Steel framing and supports for ceiling-hung toilet compartments.
  - b. Steel framing and supports for operable partitions.
  - c. Steel framing and supports for overhead doors and grilles.
  - d. Steel framing and supports for countertops.
  - e. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
  - f. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
  - g. Steel framing and supports (outriggers) for window-washing equipment including mounting brackets and anchorages.  
**OR**  
Mounting brackets and anchorages for window-washing equipment.
  - h. Elevator machine beams, hoist beams, and divider beams.
  - i. Steel shapes for supporting elevator door sills.
  - j. Steel girders for supporting wood frame construction.
  - k. Steel pipe columns for supporting wood frame construction.
  - l. Prefabricated building columns.
  - m. Shelf angles.
  - n. Metal ladders.
  - o. Ladder safety cages.
  - p. Alternating tread devices.
  - q. Metal ships' ladders and pipe crossovers.
  - r. Metal floor plate and supports.
  - s. Structural-steel door frames.
  - t. Miscellaneous steel trim including steel angle corner guards, steel edgings, and loading-dock edge angles.
  - u. Metal bollards.
  - v. Pipe **OR** Downspout, **as directed**, guards.
  - w. Abrasive metal nosings, treads, and thresholds.
  - x. Cast-iron wheel guards.
  - y. Metal downspout boots.
  - z. Loose bearing and leveling plates for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.
2. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section:
  - a. Loose steel lintels.
  - b. Anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, and wedge-type inserts indicated to be cast into concrete or built into unit masonry.
  - c. Steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.

#### C. Performance Requirements



1. Delegated Design: Design ladders and alternating tread devices, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. Structural Performance of Aluminum Ladders: Aluminum ladders, including landings, shall withstand the effects of loads and stresses within limits and under conditions specified in ANSI A14.3.
3. Structural Performance of Alternating Tread Devices: Alternating tread devices shall withstand the effects of loads and stresses within limits and under conditions specified in ICC's International Building Code.
4. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.
  - a. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For the following:
  - a. Nonslip aggregates and nonslip-aggregate surface finishes.
  - b. Prefabricated building columns.
  - c. Metal nosings and treads.
  - d. Paint products.
  - e. Grout.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: Indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content for products having recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
3. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for metal fabrications.
  - a. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.
4. Samples: For each type and finish of extruded nosing and tread.
5. Delegated-Design Submittal: For installed products indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
6. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer.
7. Mill Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of stainless-steel certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
8. Welding certificates.
9. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - a. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - b. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
  - c. AWS D1.6, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

#### F. Project Conditions

1. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

#### G. Coordination



1. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
2. Coordinate installation of anchorages and steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Metals, General

1. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.

### B. Ferrous Metals

1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
2. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
3. Stainless-Steel Sheet, Strip, and Plate: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316L, **as directed**.
4. Stainless-Steel Bars and Shapes: ASTM A 276, Type 304 **OR** Type 316L, **as directed**.
5. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 786/A 786M, rolled from plate complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M or ASTM A 283/A 283M, Grade C or D.
6. Rolled-Stainless-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 793.
7. Abrasive-Surface Floor Plate: Steel plate with abrasive granules rolled into surface or with abrasive material metallurgically bonded to steel.
8. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500, cold-formed steel tubing.
9. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, standard weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated.
10. Slotted Channel Framing: Cold-formed metal box channels (struts) complying with MFMA-4.
  - a. Size of Channels: 1-5/8 by 1-5/8 inches (41 by 41 mm) **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  - b. Material: Galvanized steel, ASTM A 653/A 653M, commercial steel, Type B **OR** structural steel, Grade 33 (Grade 230), **as directed**, with G90 (Z275) coating; 0.108-inch (2.8-mm) (12 gage) **OR** 0.079-inch (2-mm) (14 gage) **OR** 0.064-inch (1.6-mm) (16 gage), **as directed**, nominal thickness.  
**OR**  
Material: Cold-rolled steel, ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, commercial steel, Type B **OR** structural steel, Grade 33 (Grade 230), **as directed**; 0.0966-inch (2.5-mm) (12 gage) **OR** 0.0677-inch (1.7-mm) (14 gage) **OR** 0.0528-inch (1.35-mm) (16 gage), **as directed**, minimum thickness; unfinished **OR** coated with rust-inhibitive, baked-on, acrylic enamel **OR** hot-dip galvanized after fabrication, **as directed**.
11. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A 48/A 48M, or malleable iron, ASTM A 47/A 47M, unless otherwise indicated.

### C. Nonferrous Metals

1. Aluminum Plate and Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 6061-T6.
2. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T6.
3. Aluminum-Alloy Rolled Tread Plate: ASTM B 632/B 632M, Alloy 6061-T6.
4. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy 443.0-F.
5. Bronze Plate, Sheet, Strip, and Bars: ASTM B 36/B 36M, Alloy UNS No. C28000 (muntz metal, 60 percent copper).
6. Bronze Extrusions: ASTM B 455, Alloy UNS No. C38500 (extruded architectural bronze).
7. Bronze Castings: ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C83600 (leaded red brass) or No. C84400 (leaded semired brass).



8. Nickel Silver Extrusions: ASTM B 151/B 151M, Alloy UNS No. C74500.
9. Nickel Silver Castings: ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C97600 (20 percent leaded nickel bronze).

#### D. Fasteners

1. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
  - a. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening aluminum.
  - b. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening stainless steel.
  - c. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening nickel silver.
  - d. Provide bronze fasteners for fastening bronze.
2. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with hex nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and, where indicated, flat washers.
3. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 325, Type 3 (ASTM A 325M, Type 3); with hex nuts, ASTM A 563, Grade C3 (ASTM A 563M, Class 8S3); and, where indicated, flat washers.
4. Stainless-Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head annealed stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M); with hex nuts, ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M); and, where indicated, flat washers; Alloy Group 1 (A1) **OR** Group 2 (A4), **as directed**.
5. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
  - a. Hot-dip galvanize or provide mechanically deposited, zinc coating where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.
6. Eyebolts: ASTM A 489.
7. Machine Screws: ASME B18.6.3 (ASME B18.6.7M).
8. Lag Screws: ASME B18.2.1 (ASME B18.2.3.8M).
9. Wood Screws: Flat head, ASME B18.6.1.
10. Plain Washers: Round, ASME B18.22.1 (ASME B18.22M).
11. Lock Washers: Helical, spring type, ASME B18.21.1 (ASME B18.21.2M).
12. Anchors, General: Anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
13. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Either threaded type or wedge type unless otherwise indicated; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A 47/A 47M malleable iron or ASTM A 27/A 27M cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, all hot-dip galvanized per ASTM F 2329.
14. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors.
  - a. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 (A1) **OR** Group 2 (A4), **as directed**, stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M), and nuts, ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M).
15. Slotted-Channel Inserts: Cold-formed, hot-dip galvanized-steel box channels (struts) complying with MFMA-4, 1-5/8 by 7/8 inches (41 by 22 mm) by length indicated with anchor straps or studs not less than 3 inches (75 mm) long at not more than 8 inches (200 mm) o.c. Provide with temporary filler and tee-head bolts, complete with washers and nuts, all zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5, as needed for fastening to inserts.

#### E. Miscellaneous Materials

1. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.



2. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 AND Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
3. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
  - a. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
4. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.
5. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
6. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
7. Nonshrink, Metallic Grout: Factory-packaged, ferrous-aggregate grout complying with ASTM C 1107, specifically recommended by manufacturer for heavy-duty loading applications.
8. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
9. Concrete: Comply with requirements in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20 MPa).

F. Fabrication, General

1. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
2. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
3. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
4. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
5. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
  - a. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - b. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - c. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - d. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
6. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
7. Fabricate seams and other connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
8. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
9. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.
  - a. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors, 1/8 by 1-1/2 inches (3.2 by 38 mm), with a minimum 6-inch (150-mm) embedment and 2-inch (50-mm) hook, not less than 8 inches (200 mm) from ends and corners of units and 24 inches (600 mm) o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

G. Miscellaneous Framing And Supports

1. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.



2. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction.
  - a. Fabricate units from slotted channel framing where indicated.
  - b. Furnish inserts for units installed after concrete is placed.
3. Fabricate supports for operable partitions from continuous steel beams of sizes indicated **OR** recommended by partition manufacturer, **as directed**, with attached bearing plates, anchors, and braces as indicated **OR** recommended by partition manufacturer, **as directed**. Drill or punch bottom flanges of beams to receive partition track hanger rods; locate holes where indicated on operable partition Shop Drawings.
4. Fabricate steel girders for wood frame construction from continuous steel shapes of sizes indicated.
  - a. Provide bearing plates welded to beams where indicated.
  - b. Drill or punch girders and plates for field-bolted connections where indicated.
  - c. Where wood nailers are attached to girders with bolts or lag screws, drill or punch holes at 24 inches (600 mm) o.c.
5. Fabricate steel pipe columns for supporting wood frame construction from steel pipe with steel baseplates and top plates as indicated. Drill or punch baseplates and top plates for anchor and connection bolts and weld to pipe with fillet welds all around. Make welds the same size as pipe wall thickness unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate from Schedule 40 steel pipe.
  - b. Unless otherwise indicated, provide 1/2-inch (12.7-mm) baseplates with four 5/8-inch (16-mm) anchor bolts and 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) top plates.
6. Galvanize miscellaneous framing and supports where indicated.  
**OR**  
Prime miscellaneous framing and supports with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**, where indicated.

#### H. Prefabricated Building Columns

1. General: Provide prefabricated building columns consisting of load-bearing structural-steel members protected by concrete fireproofing encased in an outer non-load-bearing steel shell. Fabricate connections to comply with details shown or as needed to suit type of structure indicated.
2. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Provide prefabricated building columns listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for ratings indicated, based on testing according to ASTM E 119.
  - a. Fire-Resistance Rating: 4 hours **OR** 3 hours **OR** 2 hours **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.

#### I. Shelf Angles

1. Fabricate shelf angles from steel angles of sizes indicated and for attachment to concrete framing. Provide horizontally slotted holes to receive 3/4-inch (19-mm) bolts, spaced not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from ends and 24 inches (600 mm) o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Provide mitered and welded units at corners.
  - b. Provide open joints in shelf angles at expansion and control joints. Make open joint approximately 2 inches (50 mm) larger than expansion or control joint.
2. For cavity walls, provide vertical channel brackets to support angles from backup masonry and concrete.
3. Galvanize shelf angles located in exterior walls.  
**OR**  
Prime shelf angles located in exterior walls with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
4. Furnish wedge-type concrete inserts, complete with fasteners, to attach shelf angles to cast-in-place concrete.

#### J. Metal Ladders



1. General:
    - a. Comply with ANSI A14.3 unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. For elevator pit ladders, comply with ASME A17.1.
  2. Steel Ladders:
    - a. Space siderails 16 inches (406 mm) **OR** 18 inches (457 mm), **as directed**, apart unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Space siderails of elevator pit ladders 12 inches (300 mm) apart.
    - c. Siderails: Continuous, 3/8-by-2-1/2-inch (9.5-by-64-mm) **OR** 1/2-by-2-1/2-inch (12.7-by-64-mm), **as directed**, steel flat bars, with eased edges.
    - d. Rungs: 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) diameter **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) square **OR** 1-inch- (25-mm-) diameter **OR** 1-inch- (25-mm-) square, **as directed**, steel bars.
    - e. Fit rungs in centerline of siderails; plug-weld and grind smooth on outer rail faces.
    - f. Provide nonslip surfaces on top of each rung, either by coating rung with aluminum-oxide granules set in epoxy-resin adhesive or by using a type of manufactured rung filled with aluminum-oxide grout.
    - g. Provide nonslip surfaces on top of each rung by coating with abrasive material metallurgically bonded to rung.
    - h. Provide platforms as indicated fabricated from welded or pressure-locked steel bar grating, supported by steel angles. Limit openings in gratings to no more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, in least dimension.
    - i. Support each ladder at top and bottom and not more than 60 inches (1500 mm) o.c. with welded or bolted steel brackets.
    - j. Galvanize ladders **OR** exterior ladders, **as directed**, including brackets and fasteners.  
**OR**  
Prime ladders **OR** exterior ladders, **as directed**, including brackets and fasteners, with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
  3. Aluminum Ladders:
    - a. Space siderails 16 inches (406 mm) **OR** 18 inches (457 mm), **as directed**, apart unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Siderails: Continuous extruded-aluminum channels or tubes, not less than 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) deep, 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide, and 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick.
    - c. Rungs: Extruded-aluminum tubes, not less than 3/4 inch (19 mm) deep and not less than 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, with ribbed tread surfaces.
    - d. Fit rungs in centerline of siderails; fasten by welding or with stainless-steel fasteners or brackets and aluminum rivets.
    - e. Provide platforms as indicated fabricated from pressure-locked aluminum bar grating or extruded-aluminum plank grating, supported by extruded-aluminum framing. Limit openings in gratings to no more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, in least dimension.
    - f. Support each ladder at top and bottom and not more than 60 inches (1500 mm) o.c. with welded or bolted aluminum brackets.
    - g. Provide minimum 72-inch- (1830-mm-) high, hinged security door with padlock hasp at foot of ladder to prevent unauthorized ladder use.
- K. Ladder Safety Cages
1. General:
    - a. Fabricate ladder safety cages to comply with ANSI A14.3 **OR** OSHA regulations, **as directed**. Assemble by welding or with stainless-steel fasteners.
    - b. Provide primary hoops at tops and bottoms of cages and spaced not more than 20 feet (6 m) o.c. Provide secondary intermediate hoops spaced not more than 48 inches (1200 mm) o.c. between primary hoops.
    - c. Fasten assembled safety cage to ladder rails and adjacent construction by welding or with stainless-steel fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Steel Ladder Safety Cages:
    - a. Primary Hoops: 1/4-by-4-inch (6.4-by-100-mm) flat bar hoops.



- b. Secondary Intermediate Hoops: 1/4-by-2-inch (6.4-by-50-mm) flat bar hoops.
- c. Vertical Bars: 3/16-by-1-1/2-inch (4.8-by-38-mm) flat bars secured to each hoop.
- d. Galvanize ladder safety cages, including brackets and fasteners.

**OR**

Prime ladder safety cages, including brackets and fasteners, with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.

3. Aluminum Ladder Safety Cages:

- a. Primary Hoops: 1/4-by-4-inch (6.4-by-100-mm) flat bar hoops.
- b. Secondary Intermediate Hoops: 1/4-by-2-inch (6.4-by-50-mm) flat bar hoops.
- c. Vertical Bars: 1/4-by-2-inch (6.4-by-50-mm) flat bars secured to each hoop.

L. Alternating Tread Devices

- 1. Alternating Tread Devices: Fabricate alternating tread devices to comply with ICC's International Building Code. Fabricate of open-type construction with channel or plate stringers and pipe and tube railings unless otherwise indicated. Provide brackets and fittings for installation.
  - a. Fabricate from steel **OR** stainless steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, and assemble by welding or with stainless-steel fasteners.
  - b. Comply with applicable railing requirements in Division 05 Section "Pipe And Tube Railings".
- 2. Galvanize steel **OR** exterior steel, **as directed**, alternating tread devices, including treads, railings, brackets, and fasteners.

**OR**

Prime steel **OR** exterior steel, **as directed**, alternating tread devices, including treads, railings, brackets, and fasteners, with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.

M. Metal Ships' Ladders And Pipe Crossovers

- 1. Provide metal ships' ladders and pipe crossovers where indicated. Fabricate of open-type construction with channel or plate stringers and pipe and tube railings unless otherwise indicated. Provide brackets and fittings for installation.
  - a. Fabricate ships' ladders and pipe crossovers, including railings from steel **OR** stainless steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**.
  - b. Fabricate treads **OR** treads and platforms, **as directed**, from welded or pressure-locked steel bar grating **OR** pressure-locked stainless-steel bar grating **OR** pressure-locked aluminum bar grating **OR** extruded-aluminum plank grating, **as directed**. Limit openings in gratings to no more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, in least dimension.
  - c. Fabricate treads **OR** treads and platforms, **as directed**, from rolled-steel floor plate **OR** rolled-stainless-steel floor plate **OR** rolled-aluminum-alloy tread plate **OR** abrasive-surface floor plate, **as directed**.
  - d. Comply with applicable railing requirements in Division 5 Section "Pipe and Tube Railings."
- 2. Galvanize steel **OR** exterior steel, **as directed**, ships' ladders and pipe crossovers, including treads, railings, brackets, and fasteners.

**OR**

Prime steel **OR** exterior steel, **as directed**, ships' ladders and pipe crossovers, including treads, railings, brackets, and fasteners, with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.

N. Metal Floor Plate

- 1. Fabricate from rolled-steel floor **OR** rolled-stainless-steel floor **OR** rolled-aluminum-alloy tread **OR** abrasive-surface floor, **as directed**, plate of thickness indicated below:
  - a. Thickness: 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) **OR** 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) **OR** 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) **OR** 5/16 inch (8 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
- 2. Provide grating sections where indicated fabricated from welded or pressure-locked steel bar grating **OR** pressure-locked stainless steel bar grating **OR** pressure-locked aluminum bar grating





- OR** extruded-aluminum plank grating, **as directed**. Limit openings in gratings to no more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, in least dimension.
3. Provide steel **OR** stainless-steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, angle supports as indicated.
  4. Include steel **OR** stainless-steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, angle stiffeners, and fixed and removable sections as indicated.
  5. Provide flush steel **OR** stainless-steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, bar drop handles for lifting removable sections, one at each end of each section.
- O. Structural-Steel Door Frames
1. Fabricate structural-steel door frames from steel shapes, plates, and bars of size and to dimensions indicated, fully welded together, with 5/8-by-1-1/2-inch (16-by-38-mm) steel channel stops, unless otherwise indicated. Plug-weld built-up members and continuously weld exposed joints. Secure removable stops to frame with countersunk machine screws, uniformly spaced at not more than 10 inches (250 mm) o.c. Reinforce frames and drill and tap as necessary to accept finish hardware.
    - a. Provide with integrally welded steel strap anchors for securing door frames into adjoining concrete or masonry.
  2. Extend bottom of frames to floor elevation indicated with steel angle clips welded to frames for anchoring frame to floor with expansion shields and bolts.
  3. Galvanize steel **OR** exterior steel, **as directed**, frames.  
**OR**  
Prime steel **OR** exterior steel, **as directed**, frames with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
- P. Miscellaneous Steel Trim
1. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of profiles shown with continuously welded joints and smooth exposed edges. Miter corners and use concealed field splices where possible.
  2. Provide cutouts, fittings, and anchorages as needed to coordinate assembly and installation with other work.
    - a. Provide with integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete or masonry construction.
  3. Galvanize miscellaneous steel **OR** exterior miscellaneous steel, **as directed**, trim.  
**OR**  
Prime miscellaneous steel **OR** exterior miscellaneous steel, **as directed**, trim with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
- Q. Metal Bollards
1. Fabricate metal bollards from Schedule 40 steel pipe **OR** Schedule 80 steel pipe **OR** 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) wall-thickness rectangular steel tubing **OR** steel shapes, as indicated, **as directed**.
    - a. Cap bollards with 1/4-inch- (6.4-mm-) thick steel plate (not required if bollards are concrete filled).
    - b. Where bollards are indicated to receive controls for door operators, provide necessary cutouts for controls and holes for wire.
    - c. Where bollards are indicated to receive light fixtures, provide necessary cutouts for fixtures and holes for wire.
  2. Fabricate bollards with 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) thick steel baseplates for bolting to concrete slab (for mounting bollards on structural slab or on existing pavement). Drill baseplates at all four corners for 3/4-inch (19-mm) anchor bolts.
    - a. Where bollards are to be anchored to sloping concrete slabs, angle baseplates for plumb alignment of bollards.
  3. Fabricate sleeves for bollard anchorage from steel pipe or tubing with 1/4-inch- (6.4-mm-) thick steel plate welded to bottom of sleeve. Make sleeves not less than 8 inches (200 mm) deep and 3/4 inch (19 mm) larger than OD of bollard.



4. Fabricate internal sleeves for removable bollards from Schedule 40 steel pipe or 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) wall-thickness steel tubing with an OD approximately 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) less than ID of bollards. Match drill sleeve and bollard for 3/4 inch (19 mm) steel machine bolt.
  5. Prime bollards with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
- R. Pipe Or Downspout Guards
1. Fabricate pipe **OR** downspout, **as directed**, guards from 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) thick by 12-inch- (300-mm-) wide steel plate, bent to fit flat against the wall or column at both ends and to fit around pipe with 2-inch (50-mm) clearance between pipe and pipe guard. Drill each end for two 3/4-inch (19-mm) anchor bolts.
  2. Galvanize pipe **OR** downspout, **as directed**, guards.  
**OR**  
Prime pipe **OR** downspout, **as directed**, guards with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
- S. Abrasive Metal Nosings, Treads And Thresholds
1. Cast-Metal Units: Cast iron **OR** aluminum **OR** bronze (leaded red or semired brass) **OR** nickel silver (leaded nickel bronze), **as directed**, with an integral-abrasive, as-cast finish consisting of aluminum oxide, silicon carbide, or a combination of both. Fabricate units in lengths necessary to accurately fit openings or conditions.
    - a. Nosings: Cross-hatched units, 4 inches (100 mm) wide with 1/4-inch (6-mm) **OR** 1-inch (25-mm), **as directed**, lip, for casting into concrete steps.  
**OR**  
Nosings: Cross-hatched units, 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches (38 by 38 mm), for casting into concrete curbs.
    - b. Treads: Cross-hatched units, full depth of tread with 3/4-by-3/4-inch (19-by-19-mm) nosing, for application over bent plate treads or existing stairs.
    - c. Thresholds: Fluted-saddle-type units, 5 inches (125 mm) wide by 1/2 inch (12 mm) high, with tapered edges.  
**OR**  
Thresholds: Fluted-interlocking- (hook-strip-) type units, 5 inches (125 mm) wide by 5/8 inch (16 mm) high, with tapered edge.  
**OR**  
Thresholds: Plain-stepped- (stop-) type units, 5 inches (125 mm) wide by 1/2 inch (12 mm) high, with 1/2-inch (12-mm) step.
  2. Extruded Units: Aluminum **OR** Bronze, **as directed**, with abrasive filler consisting of aluminum oxide, silicon carbide, or a combination of both, in an epoxy-resin binder. Fabricate units in lengths necessary to accurately fit openings or conditions.
    - a. Provide ribbed units, with abrasive filler strips projecting 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) above aluminum extrusion.  
**OR**  
Provide solid-abrasive-type units without ribs.
    - b. Nosings: Square-back units, 1-7/8 inches (48 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, wide, for casting into concrete steps.  
**OR**  
Nosings: Beveled-back units, 3 inches (75 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, wide with 1-3/8-inch (35-mm) lip, for surface mounting on existing stairs.  
**OR**  
Nosings: Two-piece units, 3 inches (75 mm) wide, with subchannel for casting into concrete steps.
    - c. Treads: Square **OR** Beveled, **as directed**, -back units, full depth of tread with 1-3/8-inch (35-mm) lip, for application over existing stairs.
  3. Provide anchors for embedding units in concrete, either integral or applied to units, as standard with manufacturer.



4. Drill for mechanical anchors and countersink. Locate holes not more than 4 inches (100 mm) from ends and not more than 12 inches (300 mm) o.c., evenly spaced between ends, unless otherwise indicated. Provide closer spacing if recommended by manufacturer.
    - a. Provide two rows of holes for units more than 5 inches (125 mm) wide, with two holes aligned at ends and intermediate holes staggered.
  5. Apply bituminous paint to concealed surfaces of cast-metal units.
  6. Apply clear lacquer to concealed surfaces of extruded units.
- T. Cast-Iron Wheel Guards
1. Provide wheel guards made from cast iron, 3/4 inch (19 mm) thick, hollow-core construction, of size and shape indicated. Provide holes for countersunk anchor bolts and grouting.
  2. Prime cast iron wheel guards with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
- U. Metal Downspout Boots
1. Provide downspout boots made from cast iron **OR** cast aluminum, **as directed**, in heights indicated with inlets of size and shape to suit downspouts. Provide units with flanges and holes for countersunk anchor bolts.
    - a. Outlet: Vertical, to discharge into pipe **OR** Horizontal, to discharge into pipe **OR** At 35 degrees from horizontal, to discharge onto splash block or pavement, **as directed**.
  2. Prime cast iron downspout boots with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
- V. Loose Bearing And Leveling Plates
1. Provide loose bearing and leveling plates for steel items bearing on masonry or concrete construction. Drill plates to receive anchor bolts and for grouting.
  2. Galvanize plates.  
**OR**  
Prime plates with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
- W. Loose Steel Lintels
1. Fabricate loose steel lintels from steel angles and shapes of size indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated. Fabricate in single lengths for each opening unless otherwise indicated. Weld adjoining members together to form a single unit where indicated.
  2. Size loose lintels to provide bearing length at each side of openings equal to 1/12 of clear span but not less than 8 inches (200 mm) unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Galvanize loose steel lintels located in exterior walls.
  4. Prime loose steel lintels located in exterior walls with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
- X. Steel Weld Plates And Angles
1. Provide steel weld plates and angles not specified in other Sections, for items supported from concrete construction as needed to complete the Work. Provide each unit with no fewer than two integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete.
- Y. Finishes, General
1. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
  2. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.
  3. Finish exposed surfaces to remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, and to blend into surrounding surface.
- Z. Steel And Iron Finishes



1. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123/A 123M for other steel and iron products.
  - a. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
2. Shop prime iron and steel items not indicated to be galvanized, **as directed**, unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Shop prime with universal shop primer **OR** primers specified in Division 07, **as directed**, unless zinc-rich primer is **OR** primers specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings" are, **as directed**, indicated.
3. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning" **OR** SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning" **OR** requirements indicated below, **as directed**:
  - a. Exterior Items: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - b. Items Indicated to Receive Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - c. Items Indicated to Receive Primers Specified in Division 9 Section "High-Performance Coatings": SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - d. Other Items: SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
4. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
  - a. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

#### AA. Aluminum Finishes

1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
2. As-Fabricated Finish: AA-M10 (Mechanical Finish: as fabricated, unspecified).
3. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation, General

1. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
2. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
3. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
  - a. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - b. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - c. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - d. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
4. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag screws, wood screws, and other connectors.
5. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.



6. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will come into contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals with the following:
  - a. Cast Aluminum: Heavy coat of bituminous paint.
  - b. Extruded Aluminum: Two coats of clear lacquer.
  
- B. Installing Miscellaneous Framing And Supports
  1. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.
  2. Anchor supports for operable partitions securely to and rigidly brace from building structure.
  3. Support steel girders on solid grouted masonry, concrete, or steel pipe columns. Secure girders with anchor bolts embedded in grouted masonry or concrete or with bolts through top plates of pipe columns.
    - a. Where grout space under bearing plates is indicated for girders supported on concrete or masonry, install as specified in "Installing Bearing and Leveling Plates" Article.
  4. Install pipe columns on concrete footings with grouted baseplates. Position and grout column baseplates as specified in "Installing Bearing and Leveling Plates" Article.
    - a. Grout baseplates of columns supporting steel girders after girders are installed and leveled.
  
- C. Installing Prefabricated Building Columns
  1. Install prefabricated building columns to comply with AISC's "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings" and with requirements applicable to listing and labeling for fire-resistance rating indicated.
  
- D. Installing Metal Bollards
  1. Fill metal-capped bollards solidly with concrete and allow concrete to cure seven days before installing.
    - a. Do not fill removable bollards with concrete.
  2. Anchor bollards to existing construction with expansion anchors **OR** anchor bolts **OR** through bolts, **as directed**. Provide four 3/4-inch (19-mm) bolts at each bollard unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Embed anchor bolts at least 4 inches (100 mm) in concrete.
  3. Anchor bollards in concrete with pipe sleeves preset and anchored into concrete **OR** in formed or core-drilled holes not less than 8 inches (200 mm) deep and 3/4 inch (19 mm) larger than OD of bollard, **as directed**. Fill annular space around bollard solidly with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout; mixed and placed to comply with grout manufacturer's written instructions. Slope grout up approximately 1/8 inch (3 mm) toward bollard.
  4. Anchor bollards in place with concrete footings. Center and align bollards in holes 3 inches (75 mm) above bottom of excavation. Place concrete and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Support and brace bollards in position until concrete has cured.
  5. Anchor internal sleeves for removable bollards in concrete by inserting into pipe sleeves preset into concrete **OR** formed or core-drilled holes not less than 8 inches (200 mm) deep and 3/4 inch (19 mm) larger than OD of sleeve, **as directed**. Fill annular space around internal sleeves solidly with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout; mixed and placed to comply with grout manufacturer's written instructions. Slope grout up approximately 1/8 inch (3 mm) toward internal sleeve.
  6. Anchor internal sleeves for removable bollards in place with concrete footings. Center and align sleeves in holes 3 inches (75 mm) above bottom of excavation. Place concrete and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Support and brace sleeves in position until concrete has cured.
  7. Place removable bollards over internal sleeves and secure with 3/4-inch (19-mm) machine bolts and nuts. After tightening nuts, drill holes in bolts for inserting padlocks. the Owner will furnish padlocks.
  8. Fill bollards solidly with concrete, mounding top surface to shed water.
    - a. Do not fill removable bollards with concrete.
  
- E. Installing Pipe Guards



1. Provide pipe guards at exposed vertical pipes in parking garage where not protected by curbs or other barriers. Install by bolting to wall or column with expansion anchors. Provide four 3/4-inch (19-mm) bolts at each pipe guard. Mount pipe guards with top edge 26 inches (660 mm) above driving surface.
- F. Installing Nosings, Treads, And Thresholds
1. Center nosings on tread widths unless otherwise indicated.
  2. For nosings embedded in concrete steps or curbs, align nosings flush with riser faces and level with tread surfaces.
  3. Seal thresholds exposed to exterior with elastomeric sealant complying with Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" to provide a watertight installation.
- G. Installing Cast-Iron Wheel Guards
1. Anchor wheel guards to concrete or masonry construction to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Fill cores solidly with concrete.
- H. Installing Bearing And Leveling Plates
1. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of plates.
  2. Set bearing and leveling plates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After bearing members have been positioned and plumbed, tighten anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before packing with grout.
    - a. Use nonshrink grout, either metallic or nonmetallic, in concealed locations where not exposed to moisture; use nonshrink, nonmetallic grout in exposed locations unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.
- I. Adjusting And Cleaning
1. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
    - a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.

**OR**

Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 07.
  2. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 05 50 00 00



## SECTION 05 51 13 00 - METAL STAIRS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for metal stairs. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Preassembled steel stairs with concrete-filled, precast concrete, epoxy-resin-filled, and abrasive-coating-finished formed-metal treads.
  - b. Industrial-type stairs with steel floor plate and grating treads.
  - c. Ornamental steel-framed stairs.
  - d. Railings and Steel tube railings attached to metal stairs.
  - e. Handrails and Steel tube handrails attached to walls adjacent to metal stairs.
  - f. Railing gates at the level of exit discharge.

#### C. Performance Requirements

1. Delegated Design: Design metal stairs, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. Structural Performance of Stairs: Metal stairs shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated.
  - a. The following are based on the 2006 International Building Code (IBC):
    - 1) Uniform Load: 100 lbf/sq. ft. (4.79 kN/sq. m).
    - 2) Concentrated Load: 300 lbf (1.33 kN) applied on an area of 4 sq. in. (2580 sq. mm).
    - 3) Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
  - b. Stair Framing: Capable of withstanding stresses resulting from railing loads in addition to loads specified above, **as applicable**.
  - c. Limit deflection of treads, platforms, and framing members to L/240 **OR** L/360, **as directed**, or 1/4 inch (6.4 mm), whichever is less. Preassembled steel stair manufacturers usually design stairs to L/240; retaining L/360 will decrease bounce and may be required to prevent cracking of plaster or gypsum board soffits. If brittle materials such as marble, granite, or ceramic tiles are used on treads and platforms, deflection limit should be reduced to L/720.
3. Structural Performance of Railings: Railings shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated. The following loads are based on the 2006 IBC.
  - a. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:
    - 1) Uniform load of 50 lbf/ ft. (0.73 kN/m) applied in any direction.
    - 2) Concentrated load of 200 lbf (0.89 kN) applied in any direction.
    - 3) Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
  - b. Infill of Guards:
    - 1) Concentrated load of 50 lbf (0.22 kN) applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft. (0.093 sq. m).
    - 2) Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
4. Seismic Performance: Metal stairs shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - a. Component Importance Factor is 1.5.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For metal stairs and the following:



- a. Prefilled metal-pan stair treads.
  - b. Precast concrete treads.
  - c. Epoxy-resin-filled stair treads.
  - d. Nonslip aggregates and nonslip-aggregate finishes.
  - e. Abrasive nosings.
  - f. Metal floor plate treads.
  - g. Paint products.
  - h. Grout.
2. LEED Submittals:
    - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: Indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content for products having recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
3. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  4. Samples: For the following products, in manufacturer's standard sizes:
    - a. Precast concrete treads.
    - b. Epoxy-resin-filled stair treads.
    - c. Stair treads with nonslip-aggregate surface finish.
    - d. Metal floor plate treads.
    - e. Grating treads.
    - f. Abrasive nosings.
  5. Delegated-Design Submittal: For installed products indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  6. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer **OR** testing agency, **as directed**.
  7. Welding certificates.
  8. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.
  9. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for stairs and railings.
    - a. Test railings according ASTM E 894 and ASTM E 935.
- E. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.
  2. NAAMM Stair Standard: Comply with "Recommended Voluntary Minimum Standards for Fixed Metal Stairs" in NAAMM AMP 510, "Metal Stairs Manual," for class of stair designated, unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
    - a. Preassembled Stairs:
      - 1) Commercial class - typical enclosed stair (welds are required to be smooth).
      - 2) Service class - economy enclosed stair.
    - b. Industrial-Type Stairs: Industrial class - typical for exposed locations in industrial facilities or for exterior stairs.
    - c. Ornamental Stairs: Architectural class - ornamental stairs in exposed locations (joints are required to be concealed to maximum extent possible).
  3. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  4. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
    - a. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
    - b. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
- F. Coordination
1. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
  2. Coordinate installation of anchorages for metal stairs. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items





with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

3. Coordinate locations of hanger rods and struts with other work so that they will not encroach on required stair width and will be within the fire-resistance-rated stair enclosure.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Metals, General

1. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For components exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.

### B. Ferrous Metals

1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
2. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
3. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500 (cold formed) **OR** ASTM A 513, **as directed**.
4. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 786/A 786M, rolled from plate complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M or ASTM A 283/A 283M, Grade C or D.
5. Abrasive-Surface Floor Plate: Steel plate with abrasive granules rolled into surface or with abrasive material metallurgically bonded to steel.
6. Steel Bars for Grating Treads: ASTM A 36/A 36M or steel strip, ASTM A 1011/A 1011M or ASTM A 1018/A 1018M.
7. Wire Rod for Grating Crossbars: ASTM A 510 (ASTM A 510M).
8. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A 48/A 48M, or malleable iron, ASTM A 47/A 47M, unless otherwise indicated.
9. Uncoated, Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, either commercial steel, Type B, or structural steel, Grade 25 (Grade 170), unless another grade is required by design loads; exposed.
10. Uncoated, Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, either commercial steel, Type B, or structural steel, Grade 30 (Grade 205), unless another grade is required by design loads.
11. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating, either commercial steel, Type B, or structural steel, Grade 33 (Grade 230), unless another grade is required by design loads.
12. Expanded-Metal, Carbon Steel: ASTM F 1267, Type I (expanded) **OR** Type II (expanded and flattened), **as directed**, Class 1 (uncoated).
  - a. Style Designation: 3/4 number 13 **OR** 1-1/2 number 10, **as directed**.
13. Perforated Metal: Cold-rolled steel sheet, ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, or hot-rolled steel sheet, ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, commercial steel Type B, 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) thick, with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) holes 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) o.c. in staggered rows **OR** with 1/8-by-1-inch (3.2-by-25.4-mm) round end slotted holes in staggered rows, **as directed**.
14. Perforated Metal: Galvanized-steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating, commercial steel Type B, 0.064 inch (1.63 mm) thick, with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) holes 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) o.c. in staggered rows.
15. Woven-Wire Mesh: Intermediate-crimp, diamond **OR** square, **as directed**, pattern, 2-inch (50-mm) woven-wire mesh, made from 0.135-inch (3.5-mm) nominal diameter wire complying with ASTM A 510 (ASTM A 510M).

### C. Nonferrous Metals

1. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T6.
2. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy 443.0-F.
3. Bronze Extrusions: ASTM B 455, Alloy UNS No. C38500 (extruded architectural bronze).
4. Bronze Castings: ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C83600 (leaded red brass) or No. C84400 (leaded semired brass).



5. Nickel Silver Castings: ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C97600 (20 percent leaded nickel bronze).

#### D. Abrasive Nosings

1. Cast-Metal Units: Cast iron **OR** aluminum **OR** bronze **OR** nickel silver, **as directed**, with an integral abrasive, as-cast finish consisting of aluminum oxide, silicon carbide, or a combination of both. Fabricate units in lengths necessary to accurately fit openings or conditions.
  - a. Configuration: Cross-hatched units, 3 inches (75 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, wide without lip.
 

**OR**

 Configuration: Cross-hatched angle-shaped units, same depth as bar-grating treads and 1 to 1-1/2 inches (25 to 38 mm) wide.
2. Extruded Units: Aluminum **OR** Bronze, **as directed**, units with abrasive filler consisting of aluminum oxide, silicon carbide, or a combination of both, in an epoxy-resin binder. Fabricate units in lengths necessary to accurately fit openings or conditions.
  - a. Provide ribbed units, with abrasive filler strips projecting 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) above aluminum extrusion.
 

**OR**

 Provide solid-abrasive-type units without ribs.
  - b. Nosings: Square-back units, 1-7/8 inches (48 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, wide, without lip.
 

**OR**

 Nosings: Two-piece units, 3 inches (75 mm) wide, with subchannel for casting into concrete.
3. Provide anchors for embedding units in concrete, either integral or applied to units, as standard with manufacturer.
4. Apply bituminous paint to concealed surfaces of cast-metal units set into concrete.
5. Apply clear lacquer to concealed surfaces of extruded units set into concrete.

#### E. Fasteners

1. General: Provide zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 12 for exterior use, and Class Fe/Zn 5 where built into exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
2. Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with hex nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and, where indicated, flat washers.
3. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and, where indicated, flat washers.
  - a. Provide mechanically deposited or hot-dip, zinc-coated anchor bolts for exterior stairs **OR** stairs indicated to be galvanized **OR** stairs indicated to be shop primed with zinc-rich primer, **as directed**.
4. Machine Screws: ASME B18.6.3 (ASME B18.6.7M).
5. Lag Screws: ASME B18.2.1 (ASME B18.2.3.8M).
6. Plain Washers: Round, ASME B18.22.1 (ASME B18.22M).
7. Lock Washers: Helical, spring type, ASME B18.21.1 (ASME B18.21.2M).
8. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
  - a. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 (A1) **OR** Group 2 (A4), **as directed**, stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M), and nuts, ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M).

#### F. Miscellaneous Materials



1. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
2. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 AND Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
3. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
  - a. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
4. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.
5. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
6. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
7. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
8. Concrete Materials and Properties: Comply with requirements in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, ready-mix concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20 MPa) unless otherwise indicated.
9. Nonslip-Aggregate Concrete Finish: Factory-packaged abrasive aggregate made from fused, aluminum-oxide grits or crushed emery; rustproof and nonglazing; unaffected by freezing, moisture, or cleaning materials.
10. Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 1064/A 1064M, 6 by 6 inches (152 by 152 mm), W1.4 by W1.4, unless otherwise indicated.

#### G. Precast Concrete Treads

1. Concrete Materials and Properties: Comply with requirements in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete" for normal-weight, ready-mixed concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 5000 psi (35 MPa) and a total air content of not less than 4 percent or more than 6 percent.
2. Reinforcing Wire Fabric: Galvanized, welded wire fabric, 2 by 2 inches (50 by 50 mm) by 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) diameter wire; comply with ASTM A 1064/A 1064M and ASTM A 82/A 82M, except for minimum wire size.

#### H. Fabrication, General

1. Provide complete stair assemblies, including metal framing, hangers, struts, railings, **as directed**, clips, brackets, bearing plates, and other components necessary to support and anchor stairs and platforms on supporting structure.
  - a. Join components by welding unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
  - c. Fabricate treads and platforms of exterior stairs so finished walking surfaces slope to drain.
2. Preassembled Stairs: Assemble stairs in shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
3. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
4. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
5. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
6. Weld connections to comply with the following:
  - a. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - b. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - c. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - d. Weld exposed corners and seams continuously unless otherwise indicated.



- e. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for Type 1 welds: no evidence of a welded joint **OR** Type 2 welds: completely sanded joint, some undercutting and pinholes okay **OR** Type 3 welds: partially dressed weld with spatter removed **OR** Type 4 welds: good quality, uniform undressed weld with minimal splatter, **as directed**.
7. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) screws or bolts unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
8. Fabricate joints that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- I. Steel-Framed Stairs
1. Stair Framing:
- a. Fabricate stringers of steel plates **OR** channels **OR** tubes, **as directed**.  
 1) Provide closures for exposed ends of channel **OR** tube, **as directed**, stringers.
- b. Construct platforms of steel plate **OR** channel **OR** tube, **as directed**, headers and miscellaneous framing members as needed to comply with performance requirements **OR** indicated, **as directed**.
- c. Weld or bolt, **as directed**, stringers to headers; weld or bolt, **as directed**, framing members to stringers and headers. If using bolts, fabricate and join so bolts are not exposed on finished surfaces.
- d. Where stairs are enclosed by gypsum board **OR** gypsum board shaft-wall, **as directed**, assemblies, provide hanger rods or struts to support landings from floor construction above or below. Locate hanger rods and struts where they will not encroach on required stair width and will be within the fire-resistance-rated stair enclosure.
- e. Where masonry walls support metal stairs, provide temporary supporting struts designed for erecting steel stair components before installing masonry.
2. Metal-Pan Stairs: Form risers, subreads pans, and subplatforms to configurations shown from steel sheet of thickness needed to comply with performance requirements but not less than 0.067 inch (1.7 mm) **OR** indicated, **as directed**.
- a. Steel Sheet: Uncoated cold **OR** hot, **as directed**,-rolled steel sheet unless otherwise indicated.  
**OR**  
 Steel Sheet: Galvanized-steel sheet, where indicated.
- b. Directly weld metal pans to stringers; locate welds on top of subreads where they will be concealed by concrete fill. Do not weld risers to stringers.  
**OR**  
 Attach risers and subreads to stringers with brackets made of steel angles or bars. Weld brackets to stringers and attach metal pans to brackets by welding, riveting, or bolting.
- c. Shape metal pans to include nosing integral with riser.
- d. Attach abrasive nosings to risers.
- e. At Contractor's option, provide stair assemblies with metal-pan subreads filled with reinforced concrete during fabrication.
- f. Provide epoxy-resin-filled treads, reinforced with glass fibers, with slip-resistant, abrasive surface.
- g. Provide subplatforms of configuration indicated or, if not indicated, the same as subreads. Weld subplatforms to platform framing.  
 1) Smooth Soffit Construction: Construct subplatforms with flat metal under surfaces to produce smooth soffits.
3. Abrasive-Coating-Finished, Formed-Metal Stairs: Form risers, treads, and platforms to configurations shown from steel sheet of thickness needed to comply with performance requirements but not less than 0.097 inch (2.5 mm) **OR** indicated, **as directed**.
- a. Steel Sheet: Uncoated hot-rolled steel sheet unless otherwise indicated.
- b. Directly weld risers and treads to stringers; locate welds on underside of stairs.



- c. Provide platforms of configuration indicated or, if not indicated, the same as treads. Weld platforms to platform framing.
      - d. Finish tread and platform surfaces with manufacturer's standard epoxy-bonded abrasive finish.
    4. Metal Floor Plate Stairs: Form treads and platforms to configurations shown from rolled-steel **OR** abrasive-surface, **as directed**, floor plate of thickness needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) **OR** needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) **OR** needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) **OR** indicated, **as directed**.
      - a. Form treads with integral nosing and back edge stiffener. Form risers of same material as treads.  
**OR**  
Form treads with integral nosing and back edge stiffener. Form risers from steel sheet not less than 0.097 inch (2.5 mm) thick, welded to tread nosings and stiffeners and to platforms.  
**OR**  
Form treads with integral nosing and back edge stiffener, and with open risers.
      - b. Weld steel supporting brackets to stringers and weld treads to brackets.
      - c. Fabricate platforms with integral nosings matching treads and weld to platform framing.
    5. Metal Bar-Grating Stairs: Form treads and platforms to configurations shown from metal bar grating; fabricate to comply with NAAMM MBG 531, "Metal Bar Grating Manual."
      - a. Fabricate treads and platforms from welded or pressure-locked steel grating with 1-1/4-by-3/16-inch (32-by-5-mm) bearing bars at 15/16 inch (24 mm) o.c. **OR** 1-by-3/16-inch (25-by-5-mm) bearing bars at 11/16 inch (17 mm) o.c. **OR** 1-by-1/8-inch (25-by-3-mm) bearing bars at 7/16 inch (11 mm) o.c., **as directed**, and crossbars at 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.  
**OR**  
Fabricate treads and platforms from welded or pressure-locked steel grating with openings in gratings no more than 5/16 inch (8 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (12 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, in least dimension.
        - b. Surface: Plain **OR** Serrated, **as directed**.
        - c. Finish: Shop primed **OR** Painted **OR** Galvanized, **as directed**.
        - d. Fabricate grating treads with rolled-steel floor plate **OR** cast abrasive, **as directed**, nosing and with steel angle or steel plate carrier at each end for stringer connections. Secure treads to stringers with bolts.
        - e. Fabricate grating platforms with nosing matching that on grating treads. Provide toeplates at open-sided edges of grating platforms. Weld grating to platform framing.
- J. Stair Railings
  1. Comply with applicable requirements in Division 05 Section(s) "Pipe And Tube Railings" OR "Decorative Metal Railings", **as directed**.
    - a. Fabricate newels of square steel tubing and provide newel caps of pressed steel **OR** gray-iron castings, **as directed**, as shown.
    - b. Rails may be bent at corners, rail returns, and wall returns, instead of using prefabricated fittings.
    - c. Connect posts to stair framing by direct welding unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Steel Tube Railings: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, details, finish, and member sizes, including wall thickness of tube, post spacings, and anchorage, but not less than that needed to withstand indicated loads.
    - a. Rails and Posts: 1-5/8-inch- (41-mm-) diameter **OR** 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) square, **as directed**, top and bottom rails and 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) square posts.
    - b. Picket Infill: 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) square pickets spaced less than 4 inches (100 mm) clear.
    - c. Expanded-Metal Infill: Expanded-metal panels edged with U-shaped channels made from steel sheet not less than 0.043 inch (1.1 mm) thick. Orient expanded metal with long dimension of diamonds parallel to top rail **OR** perpendicular to top rail **OR** vertical, **as directed**.



- d. Perforated-Metal Infill: Perforated-metal panels edged with U-shaped channels made from metal sheet, of same metal as perforated metal and not less than 0.043 inch (1.1 mm) thick. Orient perforated metal with pattern parallel to top rail **OR** perpendicular to top rail **OR** horizontal **OR** vertical **OR** as indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
  - e. Mesh Infill: Woven wire mesh crimped into 1-by-1/2-by-1/8-inch (25-by-13-by-3-mm) steel channel frames. Orient wire mesh with diamonds vertical **OR** wires perpendicular and parallel to top rail **OR** wires horizontal and vertical, **as directed**.
  - f. Intermediate Rails Infill: 1-5/8-inch- (41-mm-) diameter **OR** 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) square, **as directed**, intermediate rails spaced less than 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 21 inches (533 mm), **as directed**, clear.
  - g. Gates: Form gates from steel tube of same size and shape as top rails, with infill to match guards. Provide with cam-type, self-closing **OR** spring, **as directed**, hinges for fastening to wall and overlapping stop with rubber bumper to prevent gate from opening in direction opposite egress.
3. Welded Connections: Fabricate railings with welded connections. Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
    - a. Finish welds to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for Type 1 welds: no evidence of a welded joint **OR** Type 2 welds: completely sanded joint, some undercutting and pinholes okay **OR** Type 3 welds: partially dressed weld with spatter removed **OR** Type 4 welds: good quality, uniform undressed weld with minimal splatter, **as directed**.
  4. Form changes in direction of railings as follows:
    - a. As detailed.  
**OR**  
By bending or by inserting prefabricated elbow fittings.  
**OR**  
By flush bends or by inserting prefabricated flush-elbow fittings.  
**OR**  
By radius bends of radius indicated or by inserting prefabricated elbow fittings of radius indicated.  
**OR**  
By inserting prefabricated elbow fittings **OR** flush-elbow fittings **OR** elbow fittings of radius indicated, **as directed**.
  5. Form simple and compound curves by bending members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each repetitive configuration required; maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.
  6. Close exposed ends of railing members with prefabricated end fittings.
  7. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns unless clearance between end of rail and wall is 1/4 inch (6 mm) or less.
  8. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, end closures, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors for interconnecting components and for attaching to other work. Furnish inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting to concrete or masonry work.
    - a. Connect posts to stair framing by direct welding unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. For galvanized railings, provide galvanized fittings, brackets, fasteners, sleeves, and other ferrous-metal components.
    - c. For nongalvanized railings, provide nongalvanized ferrous-metal fittings, brackets, fasteners, and sleeves, except galvanize anchors embedded in exterior masonry and concrete construction.
  9. Fillers: Provide fillers made from steel plate, or other suitably crush-resistant material, where needed to transfer wall bracket loads through wall finishes to structural supports. Size fillers to suit wall finish thicknesses and to produce adequate bearing area to prevent bracket rotation and overstressing of substrate.

## K. Finishes



1. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
2. Finish metal stairs after assembly.
3. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123/A 123M for other steel and iron products.
  - a. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
  - b. Fill vent and drain holes that will be exposed in finished Work, unless indicated to remain as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
4. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning" **OR** SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning" **OR** minimum requirements indicated below for SSPC surface preparation specifications and environmental exposure conditions of installed products, **as directed**:
  - a. Exterior Stairs: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - b. Interior Stairs: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning" for stairs that are to receive zinc-rich primer or primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings".  
**OR**  
Interior Stairs: SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
5. Apply shop primer to uncoated surfaces of metal stair components, except those with galvanized finishes and those to be embedded in concrete or masonry unless otherwise indicated. Comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
  - a. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation, General

1. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing metal stairs to in-place construction. Include threaded fasteners for concrete and masonry inserts, through-bolts, lag bolts, and other connectors.
2. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal stairs. Set units accurately in location, alignment, and elevation, measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
3. Install metal stairs by welding stair framing to steel structure or to weld plates cast into concrete unless otherwise indicated.
4. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
5. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
6. Field Welding: Comply with requirements for welding in "Fabrication, General" Article.
7. Place and finish concrete fill for treads and platforms to comply with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete"
  - a. Install abrasive nosings with anchors fully embedded in concrete. Center nosings on tread width.
8. Install precast concrete treads with adhesive supplied by manufacturer.

#### B. Installing Metal Stairs With Grouted Baseplates

1. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of baseplates.
2. Set steel stair baseplates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After stairs have been positioned and aligned, tighten anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before packing with grout.



- a. Use nonmetallic, nonshrink grout unless otherwise indicated.
- b. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.

C. Installing Railings

1. Adjust railing systems before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints. Space posts at spacing indicated or, if not indicated, as required by design loads. Plumb posts in each direction. Secure posts and rail ends to building construction as follows:
  - a. Anchor posts to steel by welding directly to steel supporting members.
  - b. Anchor handrail ends to concrete and masonry with steel round flanges welded to rail ends and anchored with postinstalled anchors and bolts.
2. Attach handrails to wall with wall brackets. Use type of bracket with flange tapped for concealed anchorage to threaded hanger bolt **OR** with predrilled hole for exposed bolt anchorage, **as directed**. Provide bracket with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) clearance from inside face of handrail and finished wall surface. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads. Secure wall brackets to building construction as required to comply with performance requirements **OR** as follows, **as directed**:
  - a. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use drilled-in expansion shields and hanger or lag bolts.
  - b. For hollow masonry anchorage, use toggle bolts.
  - c. For wood stud partitions, use hanger or lag bolts set into studs or wood backing between studs. Coordinate with carpentry work to locate backing members.
  - d. For steel-framed partitions, use hanger or lag bolts set into fire-retardant-treated, **as directed**, wood backing between studs. Coordinate with stud installation to locate backing members.

**OR**

For steel-framed partitions, use self-tapping screws fastened to steel framing or to concealed steel reinforcements.

**OR**

For steel-framed partitions, use toggle bolts installed through flanges of steel framing or through concealed steel reinforcements.

D. Adjusting And Cleaning

1. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
  - a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.

**OR**

Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 AND Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
2. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 05 51 13 00





## SECTION 05 51 13 00a - FABRICATED SPIRAL STAIRS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for fabricated spiral stairs. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section includes fabricated spiral stairs with steel central-supporting columns and radiating treads.

#### C. Performance Requirements

1. Delegated Design: Design fabricated spiral stairs, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. Structural Performance of Stairs: Fabricated spiral stairs shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to SEI/ASCE 7:
  - a. Uniform Load: 40 lbf/sq. ft. (1.92 kN/sq. m) **OR** 100 lbf/sq. ft. (4.79 kN/sq. m), **as directed**.
  - b. Concentrated Load: 300 lbf (1.33 kN) applied on an area of 4 sq. in. (2580 sq. mm).
  - c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
  - d. Railing Loads: Stairs shall withstand stresses resulting from railing loads in addition to loads specified above.
3. Structural Performance of Railings: Railings shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to SEI/ASCE 7:
  - a. Handrails:
    - 1) Uniform load of 20 lbf/ft. (0.29 kN/m) **OR** 50 lbf/ft. (0.73 kN/m), **as directed**, applied in any direction.
    - 2) Concentrated load of 200 lbf (0.89 kN) applied in any direction.
    - 3) Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
  - b. Top Rails of Guards:
    - 1) Uniform load of 20 lbf/ft. (0.29 kN/m) applied in any direction **OR** 50 lbf/ft. (0.73 kN/m) applied in any direction **OR** 50 lbf/ft. (0.73 kN/m) applied horizontally and concurrently, with 100 lbf/ft. (1.46 kN/m) applied vertically downward, **as directed**.
    - 2) Concentrated load of 200 lbf (0.89 kN) applied in any direction.
    - 3) Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
  - c. Infill of Guards:
    - 1) Concentrated load of 50 lbf (0.22 kN) **OR** 200 lbf (0.89 kN), **as directed**, applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft. (0.093 sq. m).
    - 2) Uniform load of 25 lbf/sq. ft. (1.2 kN/sq. m) applied horizontally.
    - 3) Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
4. Seismic Performance: Fabricated spiral stairs shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
  - a. Component Importance Factor is 1.5 **OR** 1.0, **as directed**.
5. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.



2. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
    - 1) Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
3. Shop Drawings.
4. Samples: For the following products, in manufacturer's standard sizes:
  - a. Treads.
  - b. Metal with painted finish.
  - c. Railing members.
5. Delegated-Design Submittal: For fabricated spiral stairs indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
6. Welding certificates.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - a. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - b. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
  - c. AWS D1.6/D1.6M, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Materials

1. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth surfaces, without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.
2. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Same metal and finish as supported item unless otherwise indicated.
3. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
4. Steel Bars for Grating Treads and Platforms: ASTM A 36/A 36M or ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.
5. Wire Rod for Grating Crossbars: ASTM A 510 (ASTM A 510M).
6. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 786/A 786M, rolled from plate complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M or ASTM A 283/A 283M, Grade C or Grade D.
7. Steel Pipe Columns: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40. Provide Schedule 80 for columns larger than NPS 4 (DN 100) and where required to support loads.
8. Steel Pipe Railings: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40.
9. Steel Tubing: Either cold-formed steel tubing complying with ASTM A 500 or mandrel-drawn mechanical tubing complying with ASTM A 513, Type 5.
10. Iron Castings: Either gray iron complying with ASTM A 48/A 48M or malleable iron complying with ASTM A 47/A 47M unless otherwise indicated or required by structural loads.
11. Aluminum Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 6061-T6.
12. Aluminum-Alloy Rolled Tread Plate: ASTM B 632/B 632M, Alloy 6061-T6.
13. Aluminum Pipe and Structural Round Tubing: ASTM B 429, Alloy 6063-T6.
14. Extruded-Aluminum Tubing: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T5/T52.
15. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy 319.0-F.
16. Extruded-Bronze Handrails: ASTM B 455, Alloy UNS No. C38500 (architectural bronze).
17. Seamless Bronze Tubing: ASTM B 135 (ASTM B 135M), Alloy UNS No. C23000 (red brass, 85 percent copper).
18. Seamless Brass Tubing: ASTM B 135 (ASTM B 135M), Alloy UNS No. C26000 (cartridge brass, 70 percent copper).
19. Stainless-Steel Tubing: ASTM A 554, Grade MT 304.

### B. Miscellaneous Materials



1. Fasteners: For connecting stair components and for anchoring stairs to other construction, select fasteners of the type, grade, and class required to produce connections capable of withstanding design loadings.
  - a. For aluminum, provide fasteners fabricated from Type 304 stainless steel.
  - b. For steel and cast iron, use plated steel fasteners complying with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 25 for electrodeposited zinc coating.
2. Lacquer for Copper Alloys: Clear, air-drying, acrylic lacquer specially developed for coating copper-alloy products.
3. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 09 Section(s) "Exterior Painting" OR "Interior Painting" **as directed**.
4. Shop Primer for Ferrous Metal: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with finish paint systems indicated.
5. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Primer formulated for use over zinc-coated metal and compatible with finish paint systems indicated.
6. Shop Primer for Aluminum: Primer formulated for use over aluminum and compatible with finish paint systems indicated.
7. Wood for Stair Treads, Handrails, and Platforms: Unless directed otherwise, laminated red oak, sanded to 120-grit smoothness. Apply uniform coat of manufacturer's standard clear sealer.
8. Rubber Wearing Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard, 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) thick, molded-rubber covering in pattern and color indicated or, if not indicated, as selected by the Owner from manufacturer's standard colors and patterns.

C. Fabrication

1. Assemble spiral stairs in the shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
2. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
3. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.
4. Fabricate connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
5. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as needed to receive hardware, screws, and similar items.
6. Welded Connections: Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
  - a. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - b. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - c. Remove flux immediately.
  - d. Provide Type 1 **OR** Type 2 **OR** Type 3, **as directed**, welds according to NOMMA Guideline 1, "Joint Finishes."
  - e. At exposed connections, finish exposed surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and, except for fillet welds, welded surface matches contours of adjoining surfaces.
7. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) screws or bolts unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
8. Fabricate center column from steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, pipe welded to baseplate for anchorage to floor structure. Brace column at upper floors by means of landings attached to column and floor structure unless otherwise indicated. Provide cap for column if top is exposed.
9. Provide cast-aluminum **OR** cast-iron, **as directed**, treads and platforms, **as directed**, with integral frames, legs, and hubs.
  - a. Provide treads and platforms, **as directed**, with abrasive surfaces.
10. Provide steel-bar grating treads and platforms, **as directed**, with welded hubs and as follows:
  - a. Radial grating treads.



- OR**  
Abrasive **OR** Rolled-steel, floor-plate, **as directed**, nosings.
- OR**  
Straight flanges and welded-on legs.
- OR**  
Tapered flanges without legs.
11. Provide formed steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, -plate treads and platforms, **as directed**, welded to hubs or center column and as follows:
- a. Straight flanges and welded-on legs.
- OR**  
Tapered flanges without legs.
- OR**  
Pan treads without legs.
- OR**  
One-piece treads and risers, without legs.
- OR**  
Rolled-steel, floor-plate wearing surfaces.
- OR**  
Aluminum-alloy, rolled tread-plate wearing surfaces.
- OR**  
Smooth steel-plate wearing surfaces.
- OR**  
Rubber wearing surfaces.
- OR**  
Plywood subread for covering with finish flooring specified in another Section.
12. Provide steel-framed treads and platforms, **as directed**, welded to hubs or center column and without legs; wearing surface as follows:
- a. Cast iron with integral abrasive.
- OR**  
Smooth steel plate with integral abrasive.
- OR**  
Wood.
- OR**  
Plywood insert for covering with finish flooring specified in another Section.
13. Railings: Provide railing system indicated, uniformly bent to spiral shape, and continuing at top to form guardrail around floor opening.
- a. Space balusters less than 4 inches (102 mm), clear.
- OR**  
Space balusters to provide one baluster per tread, but spaced less than 21 inches (533 mm), clear.
- b. Space intermediate rails less than 4 inches (101 mm) **OR** 21 inches (533 mm), **as directed**, clear.
- c. Locate bottom rail so that a 6-inch- (152-mm-) diameter sphere cannot pass between the stair and rail.
- d. Fabricate top rail from 1-1/4- to 2-inch- (32- to 51-mm-) OD steel pipe or round tubing.
- OR**  
Fabricate top rail from steel of shape and size indicated.
- OR**  
Fabricate top rail from 1-1/4- to 2-inch- (32- to 51-mm-) OD round aluminum **OR** bronze **OR** brass **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, tubing.
- OR**  
Fabricate top rail from extruded bronze of shape and size indicated.
- OR**  
Fabricate top rail from wood of shape and size indicated.



- e. Fabricate balusters from 7/8-inch- (22-mm-) OD **OR** 1-inch- (25-mm-) OD **OR** 1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-) OD steel pipe or round tubing.  
**OR**  
Fabricate balusters from 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) OD **OR** 5/8-inch- (16-mm-) OD round steel bars **OR** tubing, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Fabricate balusters from 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) **OR** 5/8-inch- (16-mm-) **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-), **as directed**, square steel bars **OR** tubing, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Fabricate balusters from 5/8-inch- (16-mm-) OD **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) OD, **as directed**, round aluminum tubing.
- f. Fabricate intermediate rails from 7/8-inch- (22-mm-) OD **OR** 1-inch- (25-mm-) OD **OR** 1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-) OD, **as directed**, steel pipe or round tubing.  
**OR**  
Fabricate intermediate rails from steel pipe or round tubing same size as top rail.  
**OR**  
Fabricate intermediate rails from 5/8-inch- (16-mm-) OD **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) OD, **as directed**, round steel bars **OR** tubing, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Fabricate intermediate rails from 5/8-inch- (16-mm-) OD **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) OD **OR** 1-inch- (25-mm-) OD **OR** 1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-) OD, **as directed**, round aluminum tubing.  
**OR**  
Fabricate intermediate rails from round aluminum tubing same size as top rail.

D. Steel And Iron Finishes

1. Galvanized Finish: Hot-dip galvanize stairs after fabrication to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M.
2. Preparation for Shop Priming: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean railings of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with metallic phosphate process.
3. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with minimum requirements indicated below for SSPC's surface-preparation specifications and environmental exposure conditions of installed stairs:
  - a. Exteriors (SSPC Zone 1B): SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - b. Interiors (SSPC Zone 1A): SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning."
4. Apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of handrails and railing components unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.

E. Aluminum Finishes

1. Conversion-Coated and Factory-Primed Finish: AA-C12C42R1x (Chemical Finish: cleaned with inhibited chemicals; Chemical Finish: acid chromate-fluoride-phosphate conversion coating; Organic Coating: shop primer).
  - a. Apply shop primer with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm).
2. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
  - a. Color and Gloss: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.

F. Stainless-Steel Finishes

1. Surface Preparation: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
2. Polished Finishes: Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish indicated, free of cross scratches.
  - a. Run grain of directional finishes with long dimension of each piece.
  - b. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.
  - c. Directional Satin Finish: No. 4.
  - d. Reflective, Directional Polish: No. 7.



e. Mirrorlike Reflective, Nondirectional Polish: No. 8.

G. Copper-Alloy Finishes

1. Finish designations for copper alloys comply with the system established for designating copper-alloy finish systems defined in NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products."
2. Buffed Finish: M21 (Mechanical Finish: buffed, smooth specular).
3. Buffed Finish, Lacquered: M21-O6x (Mechanical Finish: buffed, smooth specular; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below).
4. Medium-Satin Finish, Lacquered: M32-O6x (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, medium satin; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below).
  - a. Clear Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).
5. Statuary Conversion Coating over Satin Finish: M31-C55 (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, fine satin; Chemical Finish: conversion coating, sulfide).
  - a. Color: Match the Owner's sample.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation

1. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where needed for securing fabricated spiral stairs to in-place construction; include threaded fasteners for concrete and masonry inserts, through bolts, lag bolts, wood screws, and other connectors as required.
2. Assemble fabricated spiral stair components to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, with each component aligned and in correct relation to each other, securely anchored to the supporting column and adjacent structure.
3. Do not cut, alter, or drill stair components in the field that do not fit properly. Return components that do not fit to manufacturer for adjustment.
4. Install fabricated spiral stairs accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; level and plumb; and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Install fabricated spiral stairs by welding to steel structure or to weld plates cast into concrete unless otherwise indicated.
6. Field Welding:
  - a. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - b. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - c. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - d. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and welded surface matches contours of adjoining surfaces.

B. Cleaning And Protection

1. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint and paint exposed areas with same material.
2. For galvanized surfaces, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A 780.
  - a. Paint repaired areas with same material used for shop painting.
3. Protect finished tread surfaces during construction by covering with 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) thick plywood secured with plastic strapping or another nonmarring fastening method.

END OF SECTION 05 51 13 00a



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
05 51 13 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 51 19 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 51 19 00	05 51 13 00	Metal Stairs
05 51 19 00	05 51 13 00a	Fabricated Spiral Stairs
05 51 33 13	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 51 33 13	05 52 13 00	Pipe And Tube Railings
05 51 33 16	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 51 33 23	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 51 33 23	05 52 13 00	Pipe And Tube Railings



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





## SECTION 05 52 13 00 - PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for pipe and tube railings. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Steel pipe and tube railings.
  - b. Aluminum pipe and tube railings.
  - c. Stainless-steel pipe and tube railings.

#### C. Performance Requirements

1. Delegated Design: Design railings, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. General: In engineering railings to withstand structural loads indicated, determine allowable design working stresses of railing materials based on the following:
  - a. Steel: 72 percent of minimum yield strength.
  - b. Aluminum: The lesser of minimum yield strength divided by 1.65 or minimum ultimate tensile strength divided by 1.95.
  - c. Stainless Steel: 60 percent of minimum yield strength.
3. Structural Performance: Railings shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated. Following loads are examples only and are based on the 2006 International Building Code (IBC).
  - a. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:
    - 1) Uniform load of 50 lbf/ ft. (0.73 kN/m) applied in any direction.
    - 2) Concentrated load of 200 lbf (0.89 kN) applied in any direction.
    - 3) Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
  - b. Infill of Guards:
    - 1) Concentrated load of 50 lbf (0.22 kN) applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft. (0.093 sq. m).
    - 2) Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
4. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.
  - a. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
5. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For the following:
  - a. Manufacturer's product lines of mechanically connected railings.
  - b. Railing brackets.
  - c. Grout, anchoring cement, and paint products.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: Indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content for products having recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
3. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.



4. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required.
  - a. Sections of each distinctly different linear railing member, including handrails, top rails, posts, and balusters.
  - b. Fittings and brackets.
  - c. Assembled Sample of railing system, made from full-size components, including top rail, post, handrail, and infill. Sample need not be full height.
    - 1) Show method of finishing **OR** connecting, **as directed**, members at intersections.
5. Delegated-Design Submittal: For installed products indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
6. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer **OR** testing agency, .
7. Mill Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of stainless-steel products certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
8. Welding certificates.
9. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.
10. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, according to ASTM E 894 and ASTM E 935.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of railing from single source from single manufacturer.
2. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
3. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - a. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - b. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
  - c. AWS D1.6, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

#### F. Project Conditions

1. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

#### G. Coordination And Scheduling

1. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
2. Coordinate installation of anchorages for railings. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
3. Schedule installation so wall attachments are made only to completed walls. Do not support railings temporarily by any means that do not satisfy structural performance requirements.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Metals, General

1. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth surfaces, without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.
2. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Cast or formed metal of same type of material and finish as supported rails unless otherwise indicated.

### B. Steel And Iron



1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
2. Tubing: ASTM A 500 (cold formed) or ASTM A 513.
3. Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type F or Type S, Grade A, Standard Weight (Schedule 40), unless another grade and weight are required by structural loads.
  - a. Provide galvanized finish for exterior installations and where indicated.
4. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
5. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A 48/A 48M, or malleable iron, ASTM A 47/A 47M, unless otherwise indicated.
6. Expanded Metal: ASTM F 1267, Type I (expanded) **OR** Type II (expanded and flattened), **as directed**, Class 1 (uncoated).
  - a. Style Designation: 3/4 number 13 **OR** 1-1/2 number 10, **as directed**.
7. Perforated Metal: Cold-rolled steel sheet, ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, or hot-rolled steel sheet, ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, commercial steel Type B, 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) thick, with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) holes 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) o.c. in staggered rows.
8. Perforated Metal: Galvanized-steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating, commercial steel Type B, 0.064 inch (1.63 mm) thick, with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) holes 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) o.c. in staggered rows **OR** with 1/8-by-1-inch (3.2-by-25.4-mm) round end slotted holes in staggered rows, **as directed**.
9. Woven-Wire Mesh: Intermediate-crimp, diamond **OR** square, **as directed**, pattern, 2-inch (50-mm) woven-wire mesh, made from 0.135-inch (3.5-mm) nominal diameter wire complying with ASTM A 510 (ASTM A 510M).

#### C. Aluminum

1. Aluminum, General: Provide alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with not less than the strength and durability properties of alloy and temper designated below for each aluminum form required.
2. Extruded Bars and Tubing: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T5/T52.
3. Extruded Structural Pipe and Round Tubing: ASTM B 429/B 429M, Alloy 6063-T6.
  - a. Provide Standard Weight (Schedule 40) pipe, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Drawn Seamless Tubing: ASTM B 210 (ASTM B 210M), Alloy 6063-T832.
5. Plate and Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 6061-T6.
6. Die and Hand Forgings: ASTM B 247 (ASTM B 247M), Alloy 6061-T6.
7. Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy A356.0-T6.
8. Perforated Metal: Aluminum sheet, ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 6061-T6, 0.063 inch (1.60 mm) thick, with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) holes 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) o.c. in staggered rows.
9. Woven-Wire Mesh: Intermediate-crimp, diamond **OR** square, **as directed**, pattern, 2-inch (50-mm) woven-wire mesh, made from 0.162-inch (4.1-mm) nominal diameter wire complying with ASTM B 211 (ASTM B 211M), Alloy 6061-T94.

#### D. Stainless Steel

1. Tubing: ASTM A 554, Grade MT 304 **OR** Grade MT 316L, **as directed**.
2. Pipe: ASTM A 312/A 312M, Grade TP 304 **OR** Grade TP 316L, **as directed**.
3. Castings: ASTM A 743/A 743M, Grade CF 8 or CF 20 **OR** Grade CF 8M or CF 3M, **as directed**.
4. Plate and Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316L, **as directed**.
5. Expanded Metal: ASTM F 1267, Type I (expanded) **OR** Type II (expanded and flattened), **as directed**, Class 3 (corrosion-resistant steel), made from stainless-steel sheet, ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.
  - a. Style Designation: 3/4 number 13 **OR** 1-1/2 number 10, **as directed**.
6. Perforated Metal: Stainless-steel sheet, ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316L, **as directed**, 0.062 inch (1.59 mm) thick, with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) holes 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) o.c. in staggered rows.
7. Woven-Wire Mesh: Intermediate-crimp, diamond **OR** square, **as directed**, pattern, 2-inch (50-mm) woven-wire mesh, made from 0.135-inch (3.5-mm) nominal diameter wire complying with ASTM A 580/A 580M, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.



#### E. Fasteners

1. General: Provide the following:
  - a. Ungalvanized-Steel Railings: Plated steel fasteners complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5 for zinc coating.
  - b. Hot-Dip Galvanized Railings: Type 304 stainless-steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel fasteners complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329 for zinc coating.
  - c. Aluminum Railings: Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, stainless-steel fasteners.
  - d. Stainless-Steel Railings: Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, stainless-steel fasteners.
2. Fasteners for Anchoring Railings to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring railings to other types of construction indicated and capable of withstanding design loads, **as directed**.
3. Fasteners for Interconnecting Railing Components:
  - a. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless otherwise indicated.  
**OR**  
Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless exposed fasteners are unavoidable or are the standard fastening method for railings indicated.
  - b. Provide Phillips **OR** tamper-resistant **OR** square or hex socket, **as directed**, flat-head machine screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
4. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
  - a. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 (A1) **OR** Group 2 (A4), **as directed**, stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M), and nuts, ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M).

#### F. Miscellaneous Materials

1. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
  - a. For aluminum and stainless-steel railings, provide type and alloy as recommended by producer of metal to be welded and as required for color match, strength, and compatibility in fabricated items.
2. Etching Cleaner for Galvanized Metal: Complying with MPI#25.
3. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
4. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 07 **OR** Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 **AND** Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
5. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
  - a. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
6. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.
7. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Cementitious galvanized metal primer complying with MPI#26 **OR** Vinyl wash primer complying with MPI#80 **OR** Water based galvanized metal primer complying with MPI#134, **as directed**.
8. Intermediate Coats and Topcoats: Provide products that comply with Division 07 **OR** Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 **AND** Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
9. Epoxy Intermediate Coat: Complying with MPI #77 and compatible with primer and topcoat.
10. Polyurethane Topcoat: Complying with MPI #72 and compatible with undercoat.



11. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
12. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
13. Anchoring Cement: Factory-packaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic-controlled expansion cement formulation for mixing with water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching, and grouting compound.
  - a. Water-Resistant Product: At exterior locations and where indicated provide formulation that is resistant to erosion from water exposure without needing protection by a sealer or waterproof coating and that is recommended by manufacturer for exterior use.

#### G. Fabrication

1. General: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, member sizes and spacing, details, finish, and anchorage, but not less than that required to support structural loads.
2. Assemble railings in the shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
3. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
4. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.
5. Fabricate connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
6. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
7. Connections: Fabricate railings with welded **OR** nonwelded, **as directed**, connections unless otherwise indicated.
8. Welded Connections: Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
  - a. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - b. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - c. Remove flux immediately.
  - d. At exposed connections, finish exposed surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and welded surface matches contours of adjoining surfaces.
9. Welded Connections for Aluminum Pipe: Fabricate railings to interconnect members with concealed internal welds that eliminate surface grinding, using manufacturer's standard system of sleeve and socket fittings.
10. Nonwelded Connections: Connect members with concealed mechanical fasteners and fittings. Fabricate members and fittings to produce flush, smooth, rigid, hairline joints.
  - a. Fabricate splice joints for field connection using an epoxy structural adhesive if this is manufacturer's standard splicing method.
11. Form changes in direction as follows:
  - a. As detailed.  
**OR**  
By bending or by inserting prefabricated elbow fittings.  
**OR**  
By flush bends or by inserting prefabricated flush-elbow fittings.  
**OR**  
By radius bends of radius indicated or by inserting prefabricated elbow fittings of radius indicated.
12. Bend members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each configuration required; maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.
13. Close exposed ends of railing members with prefabricated end fittings.



14. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns unless clearance between end of rail and wall is 1/4 inch (6 mm) or less.
15. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to interconnect railing members to other work unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. At brackets and fittings fastened to plaster or gypsum board partitions, provide crush-resistant fillers, or other means to transfer loads through wall finishes to structural supports and prevent bracket or fitting rotation and crushing of substrate.
16. Provide inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting railings to concrete or masonry work. Fabricate anchorage devices capable of withstanding loads imposed by railings. Coordinate anchorage devices with supporting structure.
17. For railing posts set in concrete, provide steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, sleeves not less than 6 inches (150 mm) long with inside dimensions not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) greater than outside dimensions of post, with metal plate forming bottom closure.
18. For removable railing posts, fabricate slip-fit sockets from steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, tube or pipe whose ID is sized for a close fit with posts; limit movement of post without lateral load, measured at top, to not more than one-fortieth of post height. Provide socket covers designed and fabricated to resist being dislodged.
  - a. Provide chain with eye, snap hook, and staple across gaps formed by removable railing sections at locations indicated. Fabricate from same metal as railings.
19. Expanded-Metal Infill Panels: Fabricate infill panels from expanded metal made from same metal as railings in which they are installed.
  - a. Edge panels with U-shaped channels made from metal sheet, of same metal as expanded metal and not less than 0.043 inch (1.1 mm) thick.
  - b. Orient expanded metal with long dimension of diamonds parallel to top rail **OR** perpendicular to top rail **OR** horizontal **OR** vertical, **as directed**.
20. Perforated-Metal Infill Panels: Fabricate infill panels from perforated metal made from steel **OR** galvanized steel **OR** aluminum **OR** stainless steel **OR** same metal as railings in which they are installed, **as directed**.
  - a. Edge panels with U-shaped channels made from metal sheet, of same metal as perforated metal and not less than 0.043 inch (1.1 mm) thick.
  - b. Orient perforated metal with pattern parallel to top rail **OR** perpendicular to top rail **OR** horizontal **OR** vertical **OR** as indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
21. Woven-Wire Mesh Infill Panels: Fabricate infill panels from woven-wire mesh crimped into 1-by-1/2-by-1/8-inch (25-by-13-by-3-mm) metal channel frames. Make wire mesh and frames from same metal as railings in which they are installed.
  - a. Orient wire mesh with diamonds vertical **OR** wires perpendicular and parallel to top rail **OR** wires horizontal and vertical, **as directed**.
22. Toe Boards: Where indicated, provide toe boards at railings around openings and at edge of open-sided floors and platforms. Fabricate to dimensions and details indicated.

#### H. Finishes, General

1. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
2. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
3. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
4. Provide exposed fasteners with finish matching appearance, including color and texture, of railings.

#### I. Steel And Iron Finishes

1. Galvanized Railings:



- a. Hot-dip galvanize steel **OR** exterior steel, **as directed**, and iron railings, including hardware, after fabrication.  
**OR**  
Hot-dip galvanize indicated steel and iron railings, including hardware, after fabrication.
  - b. Comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M for hot-dip galvanized railings.
  - c. Comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for hot-dip galvanized hardware.
  - d. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
  - e. Fill vent and drain holes that will be exposed in the finished Work, unless indicated to remain as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
  2. For galvanized railings, provide hot-dip galvanized fittings, brackets, fasteners, sleeves, and other ferrous components.
  3. Preparing Galvanized Railings for Shop Priming: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean railings of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with etching cleaner.
  4. For nongalvanized steel railings, provide nongalvanized ferrous-metal fittings, brackets, fasteners, and sleeves, except galvanize anchors to be embedded in exterior concrete or masonry.
  5. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning" **OR** SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning" **OR** requirements indicated below, **as directed**:
    - a. Exterior Railings: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
    - b. Railings Indicated to Receive Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
    - c. Railings Indicated to Receive Primers Specified in Division 9 Section "High-Performance Coatings": SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
    - d. Other Railings: SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
  6. Primer Application: Apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of railings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Primer need not be applied to surfaces to be embedded in concrete or masonry.
    - a. Shop prime uncoated railings with universal shop primer **OR** primers specified in Division 07, **as directed**, unless zinc-rich primer is **OR** primers specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings" are, **as directed**, indicated.
    - b. Do not apply primer to galvanized surfaces.
  7. Shop-Painted Finish: Comply with Division 09 Section(s) "Exterior Painting" **OR** "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
    - a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  8. High-Performance Coating: Apply epoxy intermediate and polyurethane topcoats to prime-coated surfaces. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions and with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Apply at spreading rates recommended by coating manufacturer.
    - a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
- J. Aluminum Finishes
1. Mechanical Finish: AA-M12 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated).
  2. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm **OR** AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm, **as directed**, or thicker.
  3. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm **OR** AA-M12C22A32/A34, Class II, 0.010 mm, **as directed**, or thicker.
    - a. Color: Light bronze **OR** Medium bronze **OR** Dark bronze **OR** Black **OR** As selected from full range of industry colors and color densities, **as directed**.
  4. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.



- a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
5. High-Performance Organic Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2604 **OR** AAMA 2605, **as directed**, and containing not less than 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  - a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

**OR**

 High-Performance Organic Finish: Three **OR** Four, **as directed**, -coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  - b. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

#### K. Stainless-Steel Finishes

1. Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
2. Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform, directionally textured, polished finish indicated, free of cross scratches. Run grain with long dimension of each piece.
3. 180-Grit Polished Finish: Oil-ground, uniform, directionally textured finish.
4. 320-Grit Polished Finish: Oil-ground, uniform, fine, directionally textured finish.
5. Polished and Buffed Finish: Oil-ground, 180-grit finish followed by buffing.
6. Directional Satin Finish: No. 4.
7. Dull Satin Finish: No. 6.
8. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

1. Examine plaster and gypsum board assemblies, where reinforced to receive anchors, to verify that locations of concealed reinforcements have been clearly marked for Installer. Locate reinforcements and mark locations if not already done.

#### B. Installation, General

1. Fit exposed connections together to form tight, hairline joints.
2. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing railings. Set railings accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
  - a. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of railing components that have been coated or finished after fabrication and that are intended for field connection by mechanical or other means without further cutting or fitting.
  - b. Set posts plumb within a tolerance of 1/16 inch in 3 feet (2 mm in 1 m).
  - c. Align rails so variations from level for horizontal members and variations from parallel with rake of steps and ramps for sloping members do not exceed 1/4 inch in 12 feet (5 mm in 3 m).
3. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will be in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.
4. Adjust railings before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints.
5. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Use anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing railings and for properly transferring loads to in-place construction.

#### C. Railing Connections





1. Nonwelded Connections: Use mechanical or adhesive joints for permanently connecting railing components. Seal recessed holes of exposed locking screws using plastic cement filler colored to match finish of railings.
2. Welded Connections: Use fully welded joints for permanently connecting railing components. Comply with requirements for welded connections in "Fabrication" Article whether welding is performed in the shop or in the field.
3. Expansion Joints: Install expansion joints at locations indicated but not farther apart than required to accommodate thermal movement. Provide slip-joint internal sleeve extending 2 inches (50 mm) beyond joint on either side, fasten internal sleeve securely to one side, and locate joint within 6 inches (150 mm) of post.

D. Anchoring Posts

1. Use metal sleeves preset and anchored into concrete for installing posts. After posts have been inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between post and sleeve with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout or anchoring cement, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Form or core-drill holes not less than 5 inches (125 mm) deep and 3/4 inch (20 mm) larger than OD of post for installing posts in concrete. Clean holes of loose material, insert posts, and fill annular space between post and concrete with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout or anchoring cement, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Cover anchorage joint with flange of same metal as post, welded to post after placing anchoring material **OR** attached to post with set screws, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Leave anchorage joint exposed with 1/8-inch (3-mm) buildup, sloped away from post **OR** anchoring material flush with adjacent surface, **as directed**.
4. Anchor posts to metal surfaces with oval flanges, angle type, or floor type as required by conditions, connected to posts and to metal supporting members as follows:
  - a. For aluminum pipe railings, attach posts using fittings designed and engineered for this purpose.
  - b. For stainless-steel pipe railings, weld flanges to post and bolt to supporting surfaces.
  - c. For steel pipe railings, weld flanges to post and bolt to metal supporting surfaces.
5. Install removable railing sections, where indicated, in slip-fit metal sockets cast in concrete.

E. Attaching Railings

1. Anchor railing ends at walls with round flanges anchored to wall construction and welded to railing ends or connected to railing ends using nonwelded connections.
2. Anchor railing ends to metal surfaces with flanges bolted to metal surfaces and welded to railing ends or connected to railing ends using nonwelded connections.
3. Attach railings to wall with wall brackets, except where end flanges are used. Provide brackets with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) clearance from inside face of handrail and finished wall surface. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.
  - a. Use type of bracket with flange tapped for concealed anchorage to threaded hanger bolt **OR** predrilled hole for exposed bolt anchorage, **as directed**.
  - b. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.
4. Secure wall brackets and railing end flanges to building construction as follows:
  - a. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use drilled-in expansion shields and hanger or lag bolts.
  - b. For hollow masonry anchorage, use toggle bolts.
  - c. For wood stud partitions, use hanger or lag bolts set into studs or wood backing between studs. Coordinate with carpentry work to locate backing members.
  - d. For steel-framed partitions, use hanger or lag bolts set into fire-retardant-treated, **as directed**, wood backing between studs. Coordinate with stud installation to locate backing members.**OR**



For steel-framed partitions, use self-tapping screws fastened to steel framing or to concealed steel reinforcements.

**OR**

For steel-framed partitions, use toggle bolts installed through flanges of steel framing or through concealed steel reinforcements.

F. Adjusting And Cleaning

1. Clean aluminum and stainless steel by washing thoroughly with clean water and soap and rinsing with clean water.
2. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
  - a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.
3. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 AND Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
4. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

G. Protection

1. Protect finishes of railings from damage during construction period with temporary protective coverings approved by railing manufacturer. Remove protective coverings at time of Final Completion.

END OF SECTION 05 52 13 00



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
05 52 13 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 05 53 13 00 - GRATINGS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for gratings. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Metal bar gratings.
  - b. Expanded-metal gratings.
  - c. Formed-metal plank gratings.
  - d. Extruded-aluminum plank gratings.
  - e. Glass-fiber-reinforced plastic gratings.
  - f. Metal frames and supports for gratings.

#### C. Performance Requirements

1. Delegated Design: Design gratings, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. Structural Performance: Gratings shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated.
  - a. Loads in subparagraphs below are examples based on the 2006 International Building Code and ASCE/SEI 7. Adjust to local Project requirements.
    - 1) Floors (light manufacturing): Uniform load of 125 lbf/sq. ft. (6.00 kN/sq. m) or concentrated load of 2000 lbf (8.90 kN), whichever produces the greater stress.
    - 2) Floors (heavy manufacturing): Uniform load of 250 lbf/sq. ft. (11.97 kN/sq. m) or concentrated load of 3000 lbf (13.40 kN), whichever produces the greater stress.
    - 3) Walkways and Elevated Platforms Other Than Exits: Uniform load of 60 lbf/sq. ft. (2.87 kN/sq. m).
    - 4) Walkways and Elevated Platforms Used as Exits: Uniform load of 100 lbf/sq. ft. (4.79 kN/sq. m).
    - 5) Sidewalks and Vehicular Driveways, Subject to Trucking: Uniform load of 250 lbf/sq. ft. (11.97 kN/sq. m) or concentrated load of 8000 lbf (35.60 kN), whichever produces the greater stress.
    - 6) Limit deflection to L/240 **OR** L/360, **as directed**, or 1/4 inch (6.4 mm), whichever is less.
3. Seismic Performance: Provide gratings capable of withstanding the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For the following:
  - a. Formed-metal plank gratings.
  - b. Extruded-aluminum plank gratings.
  - c. Glass-fiber-reinforced plastic gratings.
  - d. Clips and anchorage devices for gratings.
  - e. Paint products.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: Indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content for products having recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
3. Shop Drawings: Include plans, sections, details, and attachments to other work.



4. Delegated-Design Submittal: For installed products indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
5. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer.
6. Mill Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of stainless-steel sheet certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
7. Welding certificates.
8. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.

E. Quality Assurance

1. Metal Bar Grating Standards: Comply with NAAMM MBG 531, "Metal Bar Grating Manual" and NAAMM MBG 532, "Heavy-Duty Metal Bar Grating Manual."
2. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - a. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - b. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
  - c. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
  - d. AWS D1.6, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

F. Project Conditions

1. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with gratings by field measurements before fabrication.

G. Coordination

1. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
2. Coordinate installation of anchorages for gratings, grating frames, and supports. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Ferrous Metals

1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
2. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
3. Steel Bars for Bar Gratings: ASTM A 36/A 36M or steel strip, ASTM A 1011/A 1011M or ASTM A 1018/A 1018M.
4. Wire Rod for Bar Grating Crossbars: ASTM A 510 (ASTM A 510M).
5. Uncoated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, structural steel, Grade 30 (Grade 205).
6. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural quality, Grade 33 (Grade 230), with G90 (Z275) coating.
7. Expanded-Metal Carbon Steel: ASTM F 1267, Class 1.
8. Expanded-Metal Galvanized Steel: ASTM F 1267, Class 2, Grade A.
9. Stainless-Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bars: ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.
10. Stainless-Steel Bars and Shapes: ASTM A 276, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.
11. Expanded-Metal Stainless Steel: ASTM F 1267, Class 3, made from stainless-steel sheet, ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.

B. Aluminum



1. Aluminum, General: Provide alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer for type of use indicated, and with not less than the strength and durability properties of alloy and temper designated below for each aluminum form required.
  2. Extruded Bars and Shapes: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), alloys as follows:
    - a. 6061-T6 or 6063-T6, for bearing bars of gratings and shapes.
    - b. 6061-T1, for grating crossbars.
  3. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 5052-H32.
- C. Fasteners
1. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
    - a. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening aluminum.
    - b. Provide stainless steel fasteners for fastening stainless steel.
  2. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with hex nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and, where indicated, flat washers.
  3. Stainless-Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head annealed stainless-steel bolts, nuts, and, where indicated, flat washers; ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M) for bolts and ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M) for nuts, Alloy Group 1 (A1) **OR** Group 2 (A4), **as directed**.
  4. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and, where indicated, flat washers.
    - a. Hot-dip galvanize or provide mechanically deposited, zinc coating where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.
  5. Plain Washers: Round, ASME B18.22.1 (ASME B18.22M).
  6. Lock Washers: Helical, spring type, ASME B18.21.1 (ASME B18.21.2M).
  7. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
    - a. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 (A1) **OR** Group 2 (A4), **as directed**, stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M), and nuts, ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M).
- D. Miscellaneous Materials
1. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy that is welded.
  2. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 07 **OR** Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 **AND** Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
  3. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
    - a. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
  4. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.
  5. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
  6. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
- E. Fabrication
1. Shop Assembly: Fabricate grating sections in shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling



limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

2. Cut, drill, and punch material cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
3. Form from materials of size, thickness, and shapes indicated, but not less than that needed to support indicated loads.
4. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints.
5. Welding: Comply with AWS recommendations and the following:
  - a. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - b. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - c. Remove welding flux immediately.
6. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Fabricate and space the anchoring devices to secure gratings, frames, and supports rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.
  - a. Fabricate toeplates to fit grating units and weld to units in shop unless otherwise indicated.  
**OR**  
Fabricate toeplates for attaching in the field.
  - b. Toeplate Height: 4 inches (100 mm) unless otherwise indicated.

#### F. Metal Bar Gratings

1. Welded Steel Grating:
  - a. Bearing Bar Spacing: 7/16 or 1/2 inch (11 or 13 mm) **OR** 11/16 inch (17 mm) **OR** 15/16 inch (24 mm) **OR** 1-3/16 inches (30 mm) **OR** 1-3/8 inches (35 mm) **OR** 1-7/8 inches (48 mm) **OR** 2-3/8 inches (60 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
  - b. Bearing Bar Depth: 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) **OR** 3 inches (76 mm) **OR** 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) **OR** 4 inches (102 mm) **OR** 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) **OR** 5 inches (127 mm) **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
  - c. Bearing Bar Thickness: 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) **OR** 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) **OR** 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
  - d. Crossbar Spacing: 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 4 inches (102 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
  - e. Grating Mark W-11-4 (1 x 3/16) STEEL: 1-by-3/16-inch (25-by-4.8-mm) bearing bars at 11/16 inch (18 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
  - f. Grating Mark W-15-4 (1 x 1/8) STEEL: 1-by-1/8-inch (25-by-3.2-mm) bearing bars at 15/16 inch (24 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
  - g. Grating Mark W-19-4 (1-1/4 x 3/16) STEEL: 1-1/4-by-3/16-inch (32-by-4.8-mm) bearing bars at 1-3/16 inches (30 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
  - h. Grating Mark W-19-4 (1-1/2 x 3/16) STEEL: 1-1/2-by-3/16-inch (38-by-4.8-mm) bearing bars at 1-3/16 inches (30 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
  - i. Grating Mark W-19-4 (2 x 1/4) STEEL: 2-by-1/4-inch (51-by-6.4-mm) bearing bars at 1-3/16 inches (30 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
  - j. Grating Mark W-30-4 (5 x 3/8) STEEL: 5-by-3/8-inch (127-by-9.5-mm) bearing bars at 1-7/8 inches (60 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
  - k. Grating Mark: As indicated.
  - l. Traffic Surface: Plain **OR** Serrated **OR** Knurled **OR** Applied abrasive finish consisting of aluminum-oxide aggregate in an epoxy-resin adhesive **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  - m. Steel Finish: Shop primed **OR** Hot-dip galvanized with a coating weight of not less than 1.8 oz./sq. ft. (550 g/sq. m) of coated surface, **as directed**.
2. Pressure-Locked Steel Grating: Fabricated by pressing rectangular flush-top crossbars into slotted bearing bars or swaging crossbars between bearing bars.





- a. Bearing Bar Spacing: 7/16 or 1/2 inch (11 or 13 mm) **OR** 11/16 inch (17 mm) **OR** 15/16 inch (24 mm) **OR** 1-3/16 inches (30 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
  - b. Bearing Bar Depth: 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
  - c. Bearing Bar Thickness: 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) **OR** 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
  - d. Crossbar Spacing: 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 4 inches (102 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
  - e. Grating Mark P-11-4 (1 x 3/16) STEEL: 1-by-3/16-inch (25-by-4.8-mm) bearing bars at 11/16 inch (18 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
  - f. Grating Mark P-15-4 (1-1/4 x 1/8) STEEL: 1-1/4-by-1/8-inch (32-by-3.2-mm) bearing bars at 15/16 inch (24 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
  - g. Grating Mark P-19-4 (1-1/2 x 3/16) STEEL: 1-1/2-by-3/16-inch (38-by-4.8-mm) bearing bars at 1-3/16 inches (30 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
  - h. Grating Mark: As indicated.
  - i. Traffic Surface: Plain **OR** Serrated **OR** Knurled **OR** Applied abrasive finish consisting of aluminum-oxide aggregate in an epoxy-resin adhesive **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  - j. Steel Finish: Shop primed **OR** Hot-dip galvanized with a coating weight of not less than 1.8 oz./sq. ft. (550 g/sq. m) of coated surface, **as directed**.
3. Riveted Steel Grating:
- a. Bearing Bar Spacing: 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1-1/8 inches (29 mm) **OR** 2-5/16 inches (59 mm), **as directed**, clear.
  - b. Bearing Bar Depth: 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) **OR** 3 inches (76 mm) **OR** 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) **OR** 4 inches (102 mm) **OR** 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) **OR** 5 inches (127 mm) **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
  - c. Bearing Bar Thickness: 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) **OR** 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) **OR** 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
  - d. Rivet Spacing: 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) **OR** 5 inches (127 mm) **OR** 7 inches (178 mm), **as directed**, o.c. along bearing bar.
  - e. Grating Mark R-12-3-1/2 (1 x 1/8) STEEL: 1-by-1/8-inch (25-by-3.2-mm) bearing bars with 3/4-inch (19-mm) clear space between bearing bars, and rivets at 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) o.c. along bearing bar.
  - f. Grating Mark R-18-7 (1-1/2 x 3/16) STEEL: 1-1/2-by-3/16-inch (38-by-4.8-mm) bearing bars with 1-1/8-inch (29-mm) clear space between bearing bars, and rivets at 7 inches (178 mm) o.c. along bearing bar.
  - g. Grating Mark R-37-5 (4 x 1/4) STEEL: 4-by-1/4-inch (102-by-6.4-mm) bearing bars with 2-5/16-inch (59-mm) clear space between bearing bars, and rivets at 5 inches (127 mm) o.c. along bearing bar.
  - h. Grating Mark R-37-5 (5 x 3/8) STEEL: 5-by-3/8-inch (127-by-9.5-mm) bearing bars with 2-5/16-inch (59-mm) clear space between bearing bars, and rivets at 5 inches (127 mm) o.c. along bearing bar.
  - i. Grating Mark: As indicated.
  - j. Traffic Surface: Plain **OR** Serrated **OR** Knurled **OR** Applied abrasive finish consisting of aluminum-oxide aggregate in an epoxy-resin adhesive **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  - k. Steel Finish: Shop primed **OR** Hot-dip galvanized with a coating weight of not less than 1.8 oz./sq. ft. (550 g/sq. m) of coated surface, **as directed**.
4. Pressure-Locked, Stainless-Steel Grating: Fabricated by pressing rectangular flush-top crossbars into slotted bearing bars or swaging crossbars between bearing bars, **as directed**.
- a. Bearing Bar Spacing: 7/16 or 1/2 inch (11 or 13 mm) **OR** 11/16 inch (17 mm) **OR** 15/16 inch (24 mm) **OR** 1-3/16 inches (30 mm) **OR** 1-3/8 inches (35 mm) **OR** 1-7/8 inches (48 mm) **OR** 2-3/8 inches (60 mm), **as directed**, o.c.



- b. Bearing Bar Depth: 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) **OR** 3 inches (76 mm) **OR** 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) **OR** 4 inches (102 mm) **OR** 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) **OR** 5 inches (127 mm) **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
  - c. Bearing Bar Thickness: 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) **OR** 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) **OR** 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
  - d. Crossbar Spacing: 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 4 inches (102 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
  - e. Grating Mark P-11-4 (1 x 3/16) STAINLESS STEEL: 1-by-3/16-inch (25-by-4.8-mm) bearing bars at 11/16 inch (18 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
  - f. Grating Mark P-15-2 (1 x 1/8) STAINLESS STEEL: 1-by-1/8-inch (25-by-3.2-mm) bearing bars at 15/16 inch (24 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 2 inches (51 mm) o.c.
  - g. Grating Mark P-19-4 (1-1/2 x 3/16) STAINLESS STEEL: 1-1/2-by-3/16-inch (38-by-4.8-mm) bearing bars at 1-3/16 inches (30 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
  - h. Grating Mark P-30-4 (3 x 3/8) STAINLESS STEEL: 3-by-3/8-inch (76-by-9.5-mm) bearing bars at 1-7/8 inches (48 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
  - i. Grating Mark: As indicated.
  - j. Traffic Surface: Plain **OR** Serrated **OR** Knurled **OR** Applied abrasive finish consisting of aluminum-oxide aggregate in an epoxy-resin adhesive **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  - k. Finish: Mill finish **OR** Abrasive blasted **OR** Electropolished, **as directed**.
5. Pressure-Locked, Rectangular Bar Aluminum Grating: Fabricated by pressing rectangular flush-top crossbars into slotted bearing bars or swaging crossbars between bearing bars.
- a. Bearing Bar Spacing: 7/16 or 1/2 inch (11 or 13 mm) **OR** 11/16 inch (17.5 mm) **OR** 15/16 inch (24 mm) **OR** 1-3/16 inches (30 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
  - b. Bearing Bar Depth: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
  - c. Bearing Bar Thickness: 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) **OR** 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) **OR** 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
  - d. Crossbar Spacing: 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 4 inches (102 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
  - e. Grating Mark P-7-4 (1 x 1/8) ALUMINUM: 1-by-1/8-inch (25-by-3.2-mm) bearing bars at 7/16 inch (11 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
  - f. Grating Mark P-11-4 (1 x 3/16) ALUMINUM: 1-by-3/16-inch (25-by-4.8-mm) bearing bars at 11/16 inch (18 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
  - g. Grating Mark P-15-4 (1-1/2 x 3/16) ALUMINUM: 1-1/2-by-3/16-inch (38-by-4.8-mm) bearing bars at 15/16 inch (24 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
  - h. Grating Mark P-19-4 (2 x 3/16) ALUMINUM: 2-by-3/16-inch (51-by-4.8-mm) bearing bars at 1-3/16 inches (30 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
  - i. Grating Mark: As indicated.
  - j. Traffic Surface: Plain **OR** Applied abrasive finish consisting of aluminum-oxide aggregate in an epoxy-resin adhesive **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  - k. Aluminum Finish: Mill finish **OR** Class I, clear, anodized finish, **as directed**.
6. Pressure-Locked, Aluminum I-Bar Grating: Fabricated by swaging crossbars between bearing bars.
- a. Bearing Bar Spacing: 7/16 or 1/2 inch (11 or 13 mm) **OR** 11/16 inch (17 mm) **OR** 15/16 inch (24 mm) **OR** 1-3/16 inches (30 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
  - b. Bearing Bar Depth: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
  - c. Bearing Bar Flange Width: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
  - d. Crossbar Spacing: 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 4 inches (102 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
  - e. Grating Mark P-11-4 (1 I-Bar) ALUMINUM: 1-inch (25-mm) I-bar bearing bars at 11/16 inch (18 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.



- f. Grating Mark P-15-2 (1 I-Bar) ALUMINUM: 1-inch (25-mm) I-bar bearing bars at 15/16 inch (24 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 2 inches (51 mm) o.c.
  - g. Grating Mark P-19-4 (1-1/2 I-Bar) ALUMINUM: 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) I-bar bearing bars at 1-3/16 inches (30 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
  - h. Grating Mark: As indicated.
  - i. Traffic Surface: Plain **OR** Grooved **OR** Applied abrasive finish consisting of aluminum-oxide aggregate in an epoxy-resin adhesive **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  - j. Aluminum Finish: Mill finish **OR** Class I, clear, anodized finish, **as directed**.
7. Removable Grating Sections: Fabricate with banding bars attached by welding to entire perimeter of each section. Include anchors and fasteners of type indicated or, if not indicated, as recommended by manufacturer for attaching to supports.
- a. Provide no fewer than four weld lugs for each heavy-duty grating section, with each lug shop welded to two bearing bars.
  - b. Provide no fewer than four saddle clips for each grating section composed of rectangular bearing bars 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) or less in thickness and spaced 15/16 inch (24 mm) or more o.c., with each clip designed and fabricated to fit over two bearing bars.
  - c. Provide no fewer than four weld lugs for each grating section composed of rectangular bearing bars 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) or less in thickness and spaced less than 15/16 inch (24 mm) o.c., with each lug shop welded to three or more bearing bars. Interrupt intermediate bearing bars as necessary for fasteners securing grating to supports.
  - d. Provide no fewer than four flange blocks for each section of aluminum I-bar grating, with block designed to fit over lower flange of I-shaped bearing bars.
  - e. Furnish threaded bolts with nuts and washers for securing grating to supports.
  - f. Furnish self-drilling fasteners with washers for securing grating to supports.
  - g. Furnish galvanized malleable-iron flange clamp with galvanized bolt for securing grating to supports. Furnish as a system designed to be installed from above grating by one person.
8. Fabricate cutouts in grating sections for penetrations indicated. Arrange cutouts to permit grating removal without disturbing items penetrating gratings.
- a. Edge-band openings in grating that interrupt four or more bearing bars with bars of same size and material as bearing bars.
9. Do not notch bearing bars at supports to maintain elevation.
- G. Expanded-Metal Gratings
1. Provide expanded-metal gratings in material, finish, style, size, thickness, weight, and type indicated or, if not indicated, as recommended by manufacturer for indicated applications and as needed to support indicated loads.
    - a. Material: Steel **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Aluminum, **as directed**.
    - b. Steel Finish: Unfinished, oiled **OR** Shop primed **OR** Galvanized, **as directed**.
    - c. Stainless-Steel Finish: Mill finish, as fabricated.
    - d. Aluminum Finish: Mill finish, as fabricated.
    - e. Style Designation (for steel): 4.27 lb **OR** 3/4 number 9, **as directed**.
    - f. Style Designation (for stainless steel): 1-1/2 number 9 **OR** 3/4 number 9, **as directed**.
    - g. Size (for aluminum): 2 lb **OR** 3/4 0.188 **OR** 1-1/2 0.125, **as directed**.
    - h. Type: I, expanded **OR** II, expanded and flattened, **as directed**.
  2. Fabricate cutouts in grating sections for penetrations of sizes and at locations indicated. Cut openings neatly and accurately to size. Edge-band openings with bars having a thickness not less than overall grating thickness at contact points.
  3. Where gratings are pierced by pipes, ducts, and structural members, cut openings neatly and accurately to size and weld a strap collar not less than 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick to the cut ends. Divide panels into sections only to extent required for installation where grating platforms and runways are to be placed around previously installed pipe, ducts, and structural members.
- H. Formed-Metal Plank Gratings
1. C-shaped channels rolled from heavy sheet metal of thickness indicated, and punched in serrated diamond shape to produce raised slip-resistant surface and drainage holes.



- a. Channel Width: 4-3/4 inches (121 mm) **OR** 7 inches (178 mm) **OR** 9-1/2 inches (241 mm) **OR** 11-3/4 inches (298 mm) **OR** 18-3/4 inches (476 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** As indicated **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
  - b. Channel Depth: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) **OR** 3 inches (76 mm) **OR** As indicated **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
  - c. Material: 0.074-inch- (1.9-mm-) thick steel sheet, shop primed **OR** 0.104-inch- (2.65-mm-) thick steel sheet, shop primed **OR** 0.079-inch- (2.0-mm-) thick, hot-dip galvanized-steel sheet **OR** 0.108-inch- (2.8-mm-) thick, hot-dip galvanized-steel sheet **OR** 0.074-inch- (1.9-mm-) thick steel sheet, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication **OR** 0.104-inch- (2.65-mm-) thick steel sheet, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication **OR** 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet **OR** 0.078-inch- (2.0-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet **OR** 0.080-inch- (2.0-mm-) thick aluminum sheet **OR** 0.100-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick aluminum sheet, **as directed**.
2. Fabricate cutouts in grating sections for penetrations of sizes and at locations indicated. Cut openings neatly and accurately to size. Edge-band openings with metal sheet or bars having a thickness not less than grating material.
  3. Where gratings are pierced by pipes, ducts, and structural members, cut openings neatly and accurately to size and weld a strap collar not less than 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick to the cut ends. Divide panels into sections only to extent required for installation where grating platforms and runways are to be placed around previously installed pipe, ducts, and structural members.
- I. Extruded-Aluminum Plank Gratings
1. Provide extruded-aluminum plank gratings in type, size, and finish indicated or, if not indicated, as recommended by manufacturer for indicated applications and as needed to support indicated loads.
    - a. Type: Extruded-aluminum planks approximately 6 inches (152 mm) wide with multiple flanges approximately 1.2 inches (30 mm) o.c., acting as bearing bars connected by a web that serves as a walking surface. Top surface has raised ribs to increase slip resistance.
    - b. Depth: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - c. Perforations: None **OR** Rectangular, 19/32 by 3 inches (15 by 76 mm), with adjacent rows staggered **OR** 19/32 inch (15 mm) square, with adjacent rows aligned, **as directed**.
    - d. Finish: Mill finish, as fabricated.
  2. Fabricate cutouts in grating sections for penetrations indicated. Arrange cutouts to permit grating removal without disturbing items penetrating gratings.
- J. Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Plastic Gratings
1. Molded Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Gratings: Bar gratings made by placing glass-fiber strands that have been saturated with thermosetting plastic resin in molds in alternating directions to form interlocking bars without voids and with a high resin content.
    - a. Configuration: 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) square mesh, 1 inch (25 mm) thick **OR** 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) square mesh, 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) thick **OR** 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) square mesh, 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick **OR** 2-inch- (51-mm-) square mesh, 2 inches (51 mm) thick **OR** 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) square mesh, thickness as required to comply with structural performance requirements **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - b. Weight: 2.5 lb/sq. ft. (12.2 kg/sq. m) **OR** 2.7 lb/sq. ft. (13.2 kg/sq. m) **OR** 3.2 lb/sq. ft. (15.6 kg/sq. m) **OR** 3.5 lb/sq. ft. (17.1 kg/sq. m) **OR** 3.7 lb/sq. ft. (18.1 kg/sq. m) **OR** 4.1 lb/sq. ft. (20.0 kg/sq. m) **OR** 5.0 lb/sq. ft. (24.4 kg/sq. m), **as directed**.
    - c. Resin: Polyester **OR** Vinylester, **as directed**.
      - 1) Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84.
      - 2) U.S.D.A. Acceptance: Accepted for food-processing applications.
    - d. Color: Beige **OR** Gray **OR** Green **OR** Orange **OR** Yellow **OR** Manufacturer's standard, **as directed**.
    - e. Traffic Surface: Plain, meniscus **OR** Applied abrasive finish **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.



2. Pultruded Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Gratings: Bar gratings assembled from components made by simultaneously pulling glass fibers and extruding thermosetting plastic resin through a heated die under pressure to produce a product without voids and with a high glass-fiber content.
  - a. Configuration: I4010; 1-inch (25-mm) I-bars spaced 1 inch (25 mm) o.c. (40 percent open) **OR** I6010; 1-inch (25-mm) I-bars spaced 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) o.c. (60 percent open) **OR** I4015; 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) I-bars spaced 1 inch (25 mm) o.c. (40 percent open) **OR** I6015; 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) I-bars spaced 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) o.c. (60 percent open) **OR** T3320; 2-inch (51-mm) T-bars spaced 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) o.c. (33 percent open) **OR** T5020; 2-inch (51-mm) T-bars spaced 2 inches (51 mm) o.c. (50 percent open) **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
  - b. Weight: 2.35 lb/sq. ft. (11.5 kg/sq. m) **OR** 2.83 lb/sq. ft. (13.8 kg/sq. m) **OR** 3.10 lb/sq. ft. (15.1 kg/sq. m) **OR** 3.41 lb/sq. ft. (16.6 kg/sq. m) **OR** 4.10 lb/sq. ft. (20.0 kg/sq. m) **OR** 4.13 lb/sq. ft. (20.2 kg/sq. m), **as directed**.
  - c. Resin Type: Polyester **OR** Vinylester, **as directed**.
    - 1) Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84.
    - 2) U.S.D.A. Acceptance: Accepted for food processing applications.
  - d. Color: Beige **OR** Gray **OR** Green **OR** Orange **OR** Yellow **OR** Manufacturer's standard, **as directed**.
  - e. Traffic Surface: Plain, grooved **OR** Applied abrasive finish **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
3. Fabricate cutouts in grating sections for penetrations indicated. Arrange cutouts to permit grating removal without disturbing items penetrating gratings.

#### K. Grating Frames And Supports

1. Frames and Supports for Metal Gratings: Fabricate from metal shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive gratings. Miter and weld connections for perimeter angle frames. Cut, drill, and tap units to receive hardware and similar items.
  - a. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate from same basic metal as gratings.
  - b. Equip units indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry with integrally welded anchors. Unless otherwise indicated, space anchors 24 inches (600 mm) o.c. and provide minimum anchor units in the form of steel straps 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) wide by 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick by 8 inches (200 mm) long.
2. Frames and Supports for Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Plastic Gratings: Fabricate from glass-fiber-reinforced plastic shapes of sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive gratings. Miter connections for perimeter angle frames. Cut, drill, and tap units to receive hardware and similar items.
  - a. Unless otherwise indicated, use shapes made from same resin as gratings.
  - b. Equip units indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry with integral anchors.
3. Galvanize steel frames and supports in the following locations:
  - a. Exterior.
  - b. Interior, where indicated.

#### L. Aluminum Finishes

1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
2. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.

#### M. Steel Finishes

1. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
2. Finish gratings, frames, and supports after assembly.
3. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123/A 123M for other steel and iron products.



- a. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
4. Shop prime gratings, frames and supports not indicated to be galvanized unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Shop prime with universal shop primer **OR** primers specified in Division 07, **as directed**, unless zinc-rich primer is **OR** primers specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings" are, **as directed**, indicated.
5. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning" **OR** SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning" **OR** requirements indicated below, **as directed**:
  - a. Exterior Items: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - b. Items Indicated to Receive Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - c. Items Indicated to Receive Primers Specified in Division 9 Section "High-Performance Coatings": SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - d. Other Items: SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning."
6. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation, General

1. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing gratings to in-place construction. Include threaded fasteners for concrete and masonry inserts, through-bolts, lag bolts, and other connectors.
2. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing gratings. Set units accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
3. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete or masonry.
4. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints.
  - a. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade the surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
5. Attach toeplates to gratings by welding at locations indicated.
6. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
  - a. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - b. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - c. Remove welding flux immediately.
7. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will come into contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.

#### B. Installing Metal Bar Gratings

1. General: Install gratings to comply with recommendations of referenced metal bar grating standards that apply to grating types and bar sizes indicated, including installation clearances and standard anchoring details.
2. Attach removable units to supporting members with type and size of clips and fasteners indicated or, if not indicated, as recommended by grating manufacturer for type of installation conditions shown.
3. Attach nonremovable units to supporting members by welding where both materials are same; otherwise, fasten by bolting as indicated above.



- C. Installing Expanded-Metal Gratings
1. General: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing gratings.
  2. Place units with straight edge of bond up and with long direction of diamond-shaped openings parallel to direction of span.
  3. Attach removable units to supporting members by bolting at 6-inch (150-mm) intervals.
  4. Attach nonremovable units to supporting members by welding unless otherwise indicated. Space welds at 6-inch (150-mm) intervals.
  5. Attach aluminum units to steel supporting members by bolting at 6-inch (150-mm) intervals.
  6. Butt edges parallel to long direction of diamond-shaped openings and weld at every second bond point. Place individual grating sections so diamonds of one piece are aligned with those of adjacent sections.
- D. Installing Metal Plank Gratings
1. General: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing gratings. Use manufacturer's standard anchor clips and hold-down devices for bolted connections.
  2. Attach removable units to supporting members by bolting at every point of contact.
  3. Attach nonremovable units to supporting members by welding unless otherwise indicated. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for size and spacing of welds.
  4. Attach aluminum units to steel supporting members by bolting at side channels at every point of contact and by bolting intermediate planks at each end on alternate sides. Bolt adjacent planks together at midspan.
- E. Installing Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Plastic Gratings
1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing gratings. Use manufacturer's standard stainless-steel anchor clips and hold-down devices for bolted connections.
- F. Adjusting And Cleaning
1. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
    - a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.

**OR**

Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 07.
  2. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 05 53 13 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
05 53 13 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
05 53 13 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 54 00 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 55 13 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 55 13 00	05 51 13 00	Metal Stairs
05 55 13 00	05 51 13 00a	Fabricated Spiral Stairs
05 55 16 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 55 16 00	05 51 13 00	Metal Stairs
05 55 16 00	05 51 13 00a	Fabricated Spiral Stairs
05 56 00 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 05 58 16 00 - ORNAMENTAL FORMED METAL

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for ornamental formed metal. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Beam wraps.
  - b. Closures and trim.
  - c. Column covers.
  - d. Decorative-metal-clad, hollow-metal doors and frames.
  - e. Elevator cab and entrance finishes.
  - f. Escalator enclosures.
  - g. Filler panels at demountable partitions and/or between dissimilar construction.
  - h. Heating-cooling unit enclosures.
  - i. Lighting coves.
  - j. Metal base.
  - k. Mullion cladding.
  - l. Pipe system covers.
  - m. Pockets for window treatment.
  - n. Window stools.
  - o. Exterior fins.
  - p. Exterior formed-metal-shaped panels.
  - q. Exterior sunshades.
  - r. Exterior trellises.
  - s. Exterior window covers.
  - t. Metal shapes as part of roof construction.

#### C. Performance Requirements

1. Delegated Design: Design exterior decorative formed metal items, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. Structural Performance: Decorative formed metal items, including anchors and connections, shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses without exceeding the allowable design working stress of materials involved and without exhibiting permanent deformation in any components:
  - a. Wind Loads on Exterior Items: As indicated on Drawings **OR** 20 lbf/sq. ft. (957 Pa) **OR** 30 lbf/sq. ft. (1436 Pa) **OR** As required to meet local Project requirements.
  - b. Live Loads on Heating-Cooling Unit Enclosures: 100 lbf/sq. ft. (4.8 kN/sq. m) or a concentrated load of 300 lbf (1.3 kN) on an area of 4 sq. in. (26 sq. cm), whichever produces the greater stress.
3. Seismic Performance: Exterior decorative formed metal items, including anchors and connections, shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - a. Component Importance Factor is 1.0.
4. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.



- a. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
5. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include finishing materials.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
  - b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for decorative formed metal.
  - a. Include plans, elevations, component details, and attachments to other work.
  - b. Indicate materials and profiles of each decorative formed metal member, fittings, joinery, finishes, fasteners, anchorages, and accessory items.
4. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on 6-inch- (150-mm-) square Samples of metal of same thickness and material indicated for the Work.
5. Delegated-Design Submittal: For installed products indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
6. Coordination Drawings: For decorative formed metal elements that house items specified in other Sections. Show dimensions of housed items, including locations of housing penetrations and attachments, and necessary clearances.
7. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer, fabricator, organic-coating applicator, anodic finisher, powder-coating applicator and professional engineer.
8. Mill Certificates: Signed by stainless-steel manufacturers certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
9. Welding certificates.
10. Maintenance Data: For mirrorlike stainless-steel finish and statuary conversion coating copper-alloy finish to include in maintenance manuals.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing decorative formed metal similar to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
2. Organic-Coating Applicator Qualifications: A firm experienced in successfully applying organic coatings of type indicated to metals of types indicated and that employs competent control personnel to conduct continuing, effective quality-control program to ensure compliance with requirements.
3. Anodic Finisher Qualifications: A firm experienced in successfully applying anodic finishes of type indicated and that employs competent control personnel to conduct continuing, effective quality-control program to ensure compliance with requirements.
4. Powder-Coating Applicator Qualifications: A firm experienced in successfully applying powder coatings of type indicated to metals of types indicated and that employs competent control personnel to conduct continuing, effective quality-control program to ensure compliance with requirements.
5. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.
6. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - a. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - b. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
  - c. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
  - d. AWS D1.6, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."



7. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver decorative formed metal products wrapped in protective coverings and strapped together in suitable packs or in heavy-duty cartons. Remove protective coverings before they stain or bond to finished surfaces.
2. Store products on elevated platforms in a dry location.

G. Project Conditions

1. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls, columns, beams, and other construction contiguous with decorative formed metal by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

H. Coordination

1. Coordinate installation of anchorages for decorative formed metal items. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
2. Coordinate installation of decorative formed metal with adjacent construction to ensure that wall assemblies, flashings, trim, and joint sealants, are protected against damage from the effects of weather, age, corrosion, and other causes.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Sheet Metal

1. General: Provide sheet metal without pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, or other imperfections where exposed to view on finished units.
2. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
3. Aluminum Sheet: Flat sheet complying with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with not less than strength and durability properties of Alloy 5005-H32.
4. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating, either commercial steel or forming steel.
5. Steel Sheet: Uncoated, cold-rolled, ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, commercial steel, exposed or electrolytic zinc-coated, ASTM A 879/A 879M, with steel sheet substrate complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, commercial steel, exposed.
6. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, stretcher-leveled standard of flatness.
7. Bronze Sheet: ASTM B 36/B 36M, Alloy UNS No. C28000 (muntz metal, 60 percent copper) or Alloy UNS No. C23000 (red brass, 85 percent copper).
8. Brass Sheet: ASTM B 36/B 36M, Alloy UNS No. C26000 (cartridge brass, 70 percent copper).
9. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 370, cold-rolled copper sheet, H00 temper.
10. Titanium Sheet: ASTM B 265, Grade 1.

B. Miscellaneous Materials

1. Gaskets: As required to seal joints in decorative formed metal and remain airtight **OR** weathertight, **as directed**; as recommended in writing by decorative formed metal manufacturer.
  - a. ASTM D 1056, Type 1, Class A, grade as recommended by gasket manufacturer to obtain seal for application indicated.
  - b. Closed-cell polyurethane foam, adhesive on two sides, release paper protected.
2. Sealants, Exterior: ASTM C 920; elastomeric silicone **OR** polyurethane **OR** polysulfide, **as directed**, sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in



- decorative formed metal and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by decorative formed metal manufacturer.
3. Sealants, Interior: Nonsag, paintable, nonstaining, latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834; of type and grade required to seal joints in decorative formed metal; and as recommended in writing by decorative formed metal manufacturer.
    - a. Use sealant that has a VOC content of not more than 250 g/L when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  4. Filler Metal and Electrodes: Provide type and alloy of filler metal and electrodes as recommended by producer of metal to be welded or brazed and as necessary for strength, corrosion resistance, and compatibility in fabricated items.
    - a. Use filler metals that will match the color of metal being joined and will not cause discoloration.
  5. Fasteners: Fabricated from same basic metal and alloy as fastened metal unless otherwise indicated. Do not use metals that are incompatible with materials joined.
    - a. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting decorative formed metal items and for attaching them to other work unless otherwise indicated **OR** exposed fasteners are unavoidable or are the standard fastening method, **as directed**.
    - b. Provide Phillips **OR** tamper-resistant **OR** square or hex socket, **as directed**, flat-head machine screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
  6. Structural Anchors: For applications indicated to comply with certain design loads, provide chemical or torque-controlled expansion anchors with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
  7. Nonstructural Anchors: For applications not indicated to comply with design loads, provide powder-actuated fasteners **OR** metal expansion sleeve anchors **OR** metal-impact expansion anchors, **as directed**, of type, size, and material necessary for type of load and installation indicated, as recommended by manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
  8. Anchor Materials:
    - a. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 (A1) **OR** Group 2 (A4), **as directed**, stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M), and nuts, ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M).
  9. Sound-Deadening Materials:
    - a. Insulation: Unfaced, mineral-fiber blanket insulation complying with ASTM C 665, Type I, and passing ASTM E 136 test.
    - b. Mastic: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
  10. Backing Materials: Provided or recommended by decorative formed metal manufacturer.
  11. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive recommended by metal fabricator that will fully bond metal to metal and that will prevent telegraphing and oil canning and is compatible with substrate and noncombustible after curing.
    - a. Contact Adhesive: VOC content of not more than 80 g/L when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
    - b. Metal-to-Metal Adhesive: VOC content of not more than 30 g/L when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
    - c. Multipurpose Construction Adhesive: VOC content of not more than 70 g/L when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
    - d. Special-Purpose Contact Adhesive: (Contact adhesive used to bond melamine-covered board, metal, unsupported vinyl, ultrahigh molecular weight polyethylene, and rubber or wood veneer, 1/16 inch thick or less, to any surface): 250 g/L.
  12. Isolation Coating: Manufacturer's standard alkali-resistant coating **OR** bituminous paint **OR** epoxy coating, **as directed**.



C. Paints And Coatings

1. Etching Cleaner for Galvanized Metal: Complying with MPI#25.
2. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
3. Lacquer for Copper Alloys: Clear, acrylic lacquer specially developed for coating copper-alloy products.
4. Shop Primers: Comply with Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
5. Universal Shop Primer for Ferrous Metal: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
  - a. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
6. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.
7. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Cementitious galvanized metal primer complying with MPI#26 **OR** Vinyl wash primer complying with MPI#80 **OR** Water-based galvanized metal primer complying with MPI#134, **as directed**.
8. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

D. Fabrication, General

1. Shop Assembly: Preassemble decorative formed metal items in shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
2. Coordinate dimensions and attachment methods of decorative formed metal items with those of adjoining construction to produce integrated assemblies with closely fitting joints and with edges and surfaces aligned unless otherwise indicated.
3. Form metal to profiles indicated, in maximum lengths to minimize joints. Produce flat, flush surfaces without cracking or grain separation at bends. Fold back exposed edges of unsupported sheet metal to form a 1/2-inch- (12-mm-) wide hem on the concealed side, or ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) and support with concealed stiffeners.
4. Increase metal thickness or reinforce with concealed stiffeners, backing materials, or both, as needed to provide surface flatness equivalent to stretcher-leveled standard of flatness and sufficient strength for indicated use.
  - a. Support joints with concealed stiffeners as needed to hold exposed faces of adjoining sheets in flush alignment.
5. Build in straps, plates, and brackets as needed to support and anchor fabricated items to adjoining construction. Reinforce decorative formed metal items as needed to attach and support other construction.
6. Provide support framing, mounting and attachment clips, splice sleeves, fasteners, and accessories needed to install decorative formed metal items.
7. Where welding or brazing is indicated, weld or braze joints and seams continuously. Grind, fill, and dress to produce smooth, flush, exposed surfaces in which joints are not visible after finishing is completed.
  - a. Use welding and brazing procedures that will blend with and not cause discoloration of metal being joined.

E. Beam Wraps

1. Form beam wraps from metal of type and thickness indicated below. Fabricate to fit tightly to adjoining construction.
  - a. Aluminum Sheet: 0.063 inch (1.60 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - 1) Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Mill **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
  - b. Steel Sheet: 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - 1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.



- c. Stainless-Steel Sheet: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
  - 1) Finish: No. 2B **OR** No. 4 **OR** No. 6 **OR** No. 7 **OR** No. 8, **as directed**.
2. Fabricate with calk stop angle to retain backer rod and sealant.

#### F. Closures And Trim

1. Form closures and trim from metal of type and thickness indicated below. Fabricate to fit tightly to adjoining construction, with weathertight joints at exterior installations.
  - a. Aluminum Sheet: 0.063 inch (1.60 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - 1) Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Mill **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
  - b. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.052 inch (1.32 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - 1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
  - c. Steel Sheet: 0.048 inch (1.21 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - 1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
  - d. Closures and trim may be fabricated from prefinished metal sheet in lieu of finishing after fabrication provided unfinished edges are concealed from view and not exposed to weather.
2. Conceal fasteners where possible; otherwise, locate where they are as inconspicuous as possible. Size fasteners to support closures and trim, with fasteners spaced to prevent buckling or waviness in finished surfaces.
3. Drill and tap holes needed for securing closures and trim to other surfaces.
4. Incorporate gaskets where indicated or needed for concealed, continuous seal at abutting surfaces.
5. Miter or cope trim members at corners and reinforce with bent metal splice plates to form tight joints.

#### G. Column Covers

1. Spackled-Seam Type: Form column covers from 0.125-inch (3.2-mm) aluminum, rolled to radii indicated. Taper edges of adjoining pieces of column covers, for taping and spackling, to 0.094-inch (2.4-mm) thickness in approximately 1 inch (25 mm) of width. Punch tapered edges for gypsum board screws at 1/2 inch (12 mm) o.c., and mill grooves in tapered edge to improve bond with joint compound.
  - a. Support Framing: At vertical joints, provide 1-1/2-by-3-5/8-inch (38-by-89-mm) steel channel support posts formed from 0.040-inch (1.0-mm) galvanized steel.
  - b. Joint Treatment Materials: Provide joint treatment compounds and reinforcing tape complying with requirements in Division 9 Section "Gypsum Board."
2. Snap-Together Type: Form column covers to shapes indicated from metal of type and minimum thickness indicated below. Return vertical edges and bend to form hook that will engage continuous mounting clips.
  - a. Aluminum Sheet: 0.063 inch (1.60 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - 1) Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Mill **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
  - b. Steel Sheet: 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - 1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
  - c. Stainless-Steel Sheet: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.





- 1) Finish: No. 2B **OR** No. 4 **OR** No. 6 **OR** No. 7 **OR** No. 8, **as directed**.
  - d. Bronze Sheet: 0.051 inch (1.29 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - 1) Finish: Buffed finish, lacquered **OR** Hand-rubbed finish, lacquered **OR** Statuary conversion coating over satin finish, **as directed**.
  - e. Brass Sheet: 0.051 inch (1.29 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - 1) Finish: Buffed **OR** Hand-rubbed, **as directed**, finish, lacquered.
  - f. Column covers may be fabricated from prefinished metal sheet in lieu of finishing after fabrication provided unfinished edges are concealed from view.
  - g. Form returns at vertical joints to provide hairline V-joints.  
**OR**  
Form returns at vertical joints to provide 1/2-inch- (12-mm-) **OR** 3/4-inch- (18-mm-), **as directed**, wide reveal at joints. Provide snap-in metal filler strips at reveals that leave reveals 1/2 inch (12 mm) deep **OR** flush, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Form returns at vertical joints to accommodate backer rod and sealant.
  - h. Fabricate column covers with hairline horizontal V-joints produced by forming returns on mating ends of column cover sections. Locate horizontal joints as indicated.  
**OR**  
Fabricate column covers without horizontal joints.  
**OR**  
Fabricate column covers with horizontal butt joints, tightly fitted and backed with a sleeve for field splicing with adhesive.  
**OR**  
Fabricate column covers with 1/2-inch- (12-mm-) wide, **as directed**, reveals at horizontal joints produced by forming returns on mating ends of column cover sections. Provide snap-in metal filler strips at reveals matching reveals at vertical joints. Locate horizontal joints as indicated.
  - i. Fabricate base **OR** ceiling, **as directed**, ring to match **OR** contrast with, **as directed**, column covers.
  - j. Fabricate with calk stop/stiffener ring.
  - k. Apply manufacturer's recommended sound-deadening insulation **OR** mastic, **as directed**, to backs of column covers.
- H. Decorative-Metal-Clad Doors And Frames
  - 1. Laminate metal sheets, of type and thickness indicated below, to faces of hollow-metal doors and frames and elevator entrances where indicated:
    - a. Bronze Sheet: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm).
      - 1) Finish: Buffed finish, lacquered **OR** Hand-rubbed finish, lacquered **OR** Statuary conversion coating over satin finish, lacquered, **as directed**.
    - b. Brass Sheet: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm).
      - 1) Finish: Buffed **OR** Hand-rubbed, **as directed**, finish lacquered.
    - c. Stainless-Steel Sheet: 0.038 inch (0.95 mm).
      - 1) Finish: No. 2B **OR** No. 4 **OR** No. 6 **OR** No. 7 **OR** No. 8, **as directed**.
    - d. Titanium Sheet: 0.025 inch (0.64 mm).
      - 1) Finish: Dull **OR** Bright, **as directed**, matte.
- I. Escalator Enclosures
  - 1. Form escalator enclosures from metal of type and thickness indicated below. Coordinate size of enclosures, location of cutouts, and method of attachment to adjoining construction.
    - a. Stainless-Steel Sheet: 0.062 inch (1.59 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
      - 1) Finish: No. 2B **OR** No. 4 **OR** No. 6 **OR** No. 7 **OR** No. 8, **as directed**.
    - b. Bronze Sheet: 0.081 inch (2.05 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.



- 1) Finish: Buffed finish, lacquered **OR** Hand-rubbed finish, lacquered **OR** Statuary conversion coating over satin finish, **as directed**.

#### J. Filler Panels

1. Form filler panels for closing ends of partition systems and for other applications indicated. Form from two sheets of metal of type and thickness indicated below, separated by channels formed from the same material, producing a panel of same thickness as partitions **OR** mullions, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated. Incorporate reveals, trim, and concealed anchorages for attaching to adjacent surfaces.
  - a. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.064 inch (1.63 mm).
    - 1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
  - b. Steel Sheet: 0.060 inch (1.52 mm).
    - 1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
  - c. Filler panels may be fabricated from prefinished metal sheet in lieu of finishing after fabrication provided unfinished edges are concealed from view.
2. Fill interior of panel with sound-deadening insulation permanently attached to inside panel faces.
3. Adhesively attach gaskets to filler panel edges where they abut mullions or glazing. Use 1-inch- (25-mm-) square material, unless otherwise indicated, set approximately 1/4 inch (6 mm) into channeled edge of filler panel.
 

**OR**

Attach gaskets to all edges of panels that abut adjacent surfaces to form a continuous seal. Use compressible gaskets or mastic sealing tape, applied to center of panel edges to be concealed from view, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Do not mechanically fasten filler panels to mullions.

#### K. Heating-Cooling Unit Enclosures

1. Fabricate heating-cooling unit enclosures from metal of type and thickness indicated below:
  - a. Galvanized-Steel Sheet:
    - 1) Framing: 0.108 inch (2.74 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements.
    - 2) Sills and Stools: 0.079 inch (2.01 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - 3) Front Panels and Bases: 0.064 inch (1.63 mm).
    - 4) Concealed Panels and Trim: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm).
    - 5) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
  - b. Steel Sheet:
    - 1) Framing: 0.105 inch (2.66 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - 2) Sills and Stools: 0.075 inch (1.90 mm) **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - 3) Front Panels and Bases: 0.060 inch (1.52 mm).
    - 4) Concealed Panels and Trim: 0.036 inch (0.91 mm).
    - 5) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
2. Weld seams and connections unless otherwise indicated or unless other methods are necessary for access to heating and cooling equipment.
3. Incorporate stiffeners or laminated backing using noncombustible materials as needed for strength and rigidity.
  - a. Fill space between stiffeners with sound-deadening insulation attached to face sheet with insulation adhesive unless otherwise indicated.
 

**OR**

Coat concealed faces of metal panels more than 6 inches (150 mm) wide with a heavy coating of sound-deadening mastic applied at the minimum rate of 20 sq. ft./gal. (0.5 sq. m/L).



4. Provide louvers and grilles of size, type, and materials indicated.
    - a. For removable grilles, use modular units with recessed openings formed into surfaces of enclosures and without blank filler panels between grilles, so face panels and stools are continuous. Fabricate removable grilles and openings to precise tolerances to produce well-fitted assemblies free of warp or rattle, with grilles supported continuously along parallel edges and with tops flush with top of enclosure.
  5. Incorporate removable tops and fronts where indicated or needed for access to heating-cooling units and to piping, ductwork, controls, and electrical service, with panels and openings as follows:
    - a. Fabricate with a fitting tolerance of not less than 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) and not more than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) at each edge, with face of panels flush with adjoining fixed surfaces of enclosure.
    - b. Form panels for easy removal without interfering with adjoining construction or furniture. Hold panels in place with concealed clips and hardware that prevent warp and rattle.
  6. Incorporate hinged access panels in enclosures for access to heating-cooling unit controls, as either separate elements or integrated with grille openings, as indicated or needed.
  7. Coordinate construction, configuration, and dimensions of enclosures with those of heating-cooling units. Provide support for heating-cooling units and controls where indicated. Provide blind knockouts and supports for piping, ductwork, control lines, electrical conduit, and wiring where indicated or needed.
  8. Locate fixed surfaces of enclosure to coincide precisely with window mullions and partition system terminations. Provide closures at ends of units, at recessed openings in base of units, and at other locations where needed to conceal unfinished wall or floor surfaces, piping, conduit, ductwork, or heating-cooling units.
    - a. Provide built-in partitions (bulkheads) within enclosures between heating-cooling units, located to coincide with mullions and partition system terminations. Seal partitions to faces of enclosures with compressible gaskets or mastic sealing tape, and cover both sides of partitions with sound-deadening insulation attached to partitions with insulation adhesive.
- L. Lighting Coves
1. Form lighting coves from metal of type and thickness indicated below. Coordinate size of coves, location of cutouts for electrical wiring, and method of attachment to adjoining construction.
    - a. Aluminum Sheet: 0.063 inch (1.60 mm).
      - 1) Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Mill **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
    - b. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.052 inch (1.32 mm).
      - 1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
    - c. Steel Sheet: 0.048 inch (1.21 mm).
      - 1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
    - d. Fabricate light coves with hairline butt joints **OR** tapered edges for taping and spackling, **as directed**.
    - e. Provide mitered corners, factory welded with backplates **OR** factory endcaps, **as directed**.
    - f. Lighting coves may be fabricated from prefinished metal sheet in lieu of finishing after fabrication provided unfinished edges are concealed from view.
- M. Metal Base
1. Form metal base from metal of type and thickness indicated below:
    - a. Aluminum Sheet: 0.063 inch (1.60 mm).
      - 1) Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Mill **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
    - b. Stainless-Steel Sheet: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm).
      - 1) Finish: No. 2B **OR** No. 4 **OR** No. 6 **OR** No. 7 **OR** No. 8, **as directed**.



N. Mullion Cladding

1. Form mullion cladding from metal of type and thickness indicated below. Fabricate to fit tightly to adjoining construction.
  - a. Aluminum Sheet: 0.063 inch (1.60 mm).
    - 1) Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Mill **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
  - b. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.052 inch (1.32 mm).
    - 1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
  - c. Stainless-Steel Sheet: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm).
    - 1) Finish: No. 2B **OR** No. 4 **OR** No. 6 **OR** No. 7 **OR** No. 8, **as directed**.

O. Pipe System Covers

1. Form pipe system covers from metal of type and thickness indicated below. Coordinate size of covers, location of cutouts for piping, and method of attachment to adjoining construction.
  - a. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.052 inch (1.32 mm).
    - 1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
  - b. Steel Sheet: 0.048 inch (1.21 mm).
    - 1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.

P. Pockets For Window Treatment

1. Form pockets from metal of type and thickness indicated below, with end closures. Coordinate dimensions and attachment methods with window treatment equipment, window frames, ceiling suspension system, and other related construction to produce a coordinated, closely fitting assembly.
  - a. Aluminum Sheet: 0.063 inch (1.60 mm).
    - 1) Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Mill **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
  - b. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.052 inch (1.32 mm).
    - 1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
  - c. Steel Sheet: 0.048 inch (1.21 mm).
    - 1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
  - d. Pockets for window treatment may be fabricated from prefinished metal sheet in lieu of finishing after fabrication provided unfinished edges are concealed from view.
2. Reinforce pockets for attaching window treatment equipment and hardware, or increase metal thickness.
3. Divide continuous pockets with built-in partitions located to separate adjoining drapery and blind units, to coincide with window mullions, and to receive filler panels at ends of partitions.

Q. Window Stools

1. Form window stools from metal of type and thickness indicated below, with end closures:
  - a. Aluminum Sheet: 0.063 inch (1.60 mm).
    - 1) Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Mill **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
  - b. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.052 inch (1.32 mm).
    - 1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
  - c. Stainless-Steel Sheet: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) **OR** 1.3 mm, **as directed**.
    - 1) Finish: No. 2B **OR** No. 4 **OR** No. 6 **OR** No. 7 **OR** No. 8, **as directed**.
  - d. Bronze Sheet: 0.051 inch (1.29 mm).



- 1) Finish: Buffed finish, lacquered **OR** Hand-rubbed finish, lacquered **OR** Statuary conversion coating over satin finish, **as directed**.
  2. Weld seams at end closures.  
**OR**  
Braze seams at end closures.
  3. Apply sound-deadening insulation **OR** mastic, **as directed**, to underside of window stools.
- R. General Finish Requirements
1. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
  2. Complete mechanical finishes of flat sheet metal surfaces before fabrication where possible. After fabrication, finish all joints, bends, abrasions, and other surface blemishes to match sheet finish.
  3. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
  4. Apply organic and anodic finishes to formed metal after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Finish items indicated on Drawings after assembly.
  6. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- S. Aluminum Finishes
1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
  2. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm **OR** AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm, **as directed**, or thicker.
  3. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm **OR** AA-M12C22A32/A34, Class II, 0.010 mm, **as directed**, or thicker.
    - a. Color: Champagne **OR** Light bronze **OR** Medium bronze **OR** Dark bronze **OR** Black **OR** As selected from full range of industry colors and color densities, **as directed**.
  4. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
    - a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  5. Siliconized Polyester Finish: Epoxy primer and silicone-modified, polyester-enamel topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than 0.2 mil (0.005 mm) for primer and 0.8 mil (0.02 mm) for topcoat.
    - a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  6. High-Performance Organic Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2604 **OR** AAMA 2605, **as directed**, and containing not less than 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
    - a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

**OR**

High-Performance Organic Finish: Three **OR** Four, **as directed**, -coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
    - b. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.



T. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Finishes

1. Preparing Galvanized Items for Factory Priming: Thoroughly clean galvanized decorative formed metal of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with etching cleaner.
2. Preparing Galvanized Items for Factory Finishing: Clean surfaces with nonpetroleum solvent so surfaces are free of oil and other contaminants. After cleaning, apply a conversion coating suited to the organic coating to be applied over it.
3. Repairing Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.
4. Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Where field painting after installation is indicated, apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of items unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
5. Factory-Painted Finish: Comply with Division 09 Section(s) "Exterior Painting" OR "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
  - a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
6. Baked-Enamel Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-enamel finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm) for topcoat. Comply with paint manufacturer's written instructions for applying and baking to achieve a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils (0.05 mm).
  - a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
7. Powder-Coat Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard thermosetting polyester or acrylic urethane powder coating with cured-film thickness not less than 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Prepare, treat, and coat metal to comply with resin manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
8. Siliconized-Polyester Coating: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard epoxy primer and silicone-modified, polyester-enamel topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than 0.2 mil (0.005 mm) for primer and 0.8 mil (0.02 mm) for topcoat.
  - a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
9. High-Performance Organic Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2604 **OR** AAMA 2605, **as directed**, and containing not less than 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  - a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

**OR**

High-Performance Organic Finish: Three **OR** Four, **as directed**, -coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

- a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

U. Steel Sheet Finishes

1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning," to remove dirt, oil, grease, or other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or with SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
2. Pretreatment: Immediately after cleaning, apply a conversion coating of type suited to organic coating applied over it.



3. Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Where field painting after installation is indicated, apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of items unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
4. Baked-Enamel Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-enamel finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for applying and baking to achieve a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils (0.05 mm).
  - a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
5. Powder-Coat Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard thermosetting polyester or acrylic urethane powder coating with cured-film thickness not less than 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Prepare, treat, and coat metal to comply with resin manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

V. Stainless-Steel Finishes

1. Surface Preparation: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
2. Polished Finishes: Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches.
  - a. Run grain of directional finishes with long dimension of each piece.
3. Bright, Cold-Rolled, Unpolished Finish: No. 2B.
4. Directional Satin Finish: No. 4.
5. Dull Satin Finish: No. 6.
6. Satin, Reflective, Directional Polish: No. 7.
7. Mirrorlike Reflective, Nondirectional Polish: No. 8 finish.
8. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.

W. Copper-Alloy Finishes

1. Finish designations for copper alloys comply with the system established for designating copper-alloy finish systems defined in NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products."
2. Buffed Finish: M21 (Mechanical Finish: buffed, smooth specular).
3. Hand-Rubbed Finish: M31-M34 (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, fine satin; Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, hand rubbed).
4. Medium-Satin Finish: M32 (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, medium satin).
5. Fine-Matte Finish: M42 (Mechanical Finish: nondirectional finish, fine matte).
6. Buffed Finish, Lacquered: M21-O6x (Mechanical Finish: buffed, smooth specular; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below).
  - a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).
7. Hand-Rubbed Finish, Lacquered: M31-M34-O6x (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, fine satin; Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, hand rubbed; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below).
  - a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).
8. Medium-Satin Finish, Lacquered: M32-O6x (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, medium satin; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below).
  - a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).
9. Fine-Matte Finish, Lacquered: M42-O6x (Mechanical Finish: nondirectional finish, fine matte; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below).



- a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).
  10. Statuary Conversion Coating over Satin Finish: M31-C55 (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, fine satin; Chemical Finish: conversion coating, sulfide), with color matching the Owner's sample.
  11. Statuary Conversion Coating over Satin Finish, Lacquered: M31-C55-O6x (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, fine satin; Chemical Finish: conversion coating, sulfide; Coating: clear, organic, air drying, as specified below) , with color matching the Owner's sample:
    - a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm).
- X. Titanium Finishes
1. General: Fabricate items from finished titanium sheet, taking care not to damage finish during fabrication. Protect finish as needed during fabrication by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering.
  2. Dull Matte Finish: Pickled and annealed.
  3. Bright Matte Finish: Vacuum annealed.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

1. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of decorative formed metal.
2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### B. Installation

1. Locate and place decorative formed metal items level and plumb and in alignment with adjacent construction. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required to install decorative formed metal.
  - a. Do not cut or abrade finishes that cannot be completely restored in the field. Return items with such finishes to the shop for required alterations, followed by complete refinishing, or provide new units as required.
2. Use concealed anchorages where possible. Provide brass or lead washers fitted to screws where needed to protect metal surfaces and to make a weathertight connection.
3. Form tight joints with exposed connections accurately fitted together. Provide reveals and openings for sealants and joint fillers as indicated.
4. Install concealed gaskets, joint fillers, insulation, sealants, and flashings, as the Work progresses, to make exterior decorative formed metal items weatherproof.
5. Install concealed gaskets, joint fillers, sealants, and insulation, as the Work progresses, to make interior decorative formed metal items soundproof or lightproof as applicable to type of fabrication indicated.
6. Corrosion Protection: Apply bituminous paint or other permanent separation materials on concealed surfaces where metals would otherwise be in direct contact with substrate materials that are incompatible or could result in corrosion or deterioration of either material or finish.
7. Install decorative-formed-metal-clad doors and frames to comply with requirements specified in Division 08 Section "Hollow Metal Doors And Frames".
8. Apply joint treatment at joints of spackled-seam-type metal column covers. Comply with requirements in Division 09 Section "Gypsum Board".

#### C. Adjusting And Cleaning

1. Unless otherwise indicated, clean metals by washing thoroughly with clean water and soap, rinsing with clean water, and drying with soft cloths.





2. Clean copper alloys according to metal finisher's written instructions in a manner that leaves an undamaged and uniform finish matching approved Sample.
  3. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
    - a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.
  4. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 AND Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
  5. Restore finishes damaged during installation and construction period so no evidence remains of correction work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the shop; make required alterations and refinish entire unit or provide new units.
- D. Protection
1. Protect finishes of decorative formed metal items from damage during construction period. Remove temporary protective coverings at time of Final Completion.

END OF SECTION 05 58 16 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
05 58 16 00	05 15 16 00	Ornamental Metal
05 59 65 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
05 59 65 00	05 15 16 00	Ornamental Metal



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

## SECTION 07 11 13 00 - BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for bituminous dampproofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Hot-applied asphalt dampproofing.
  - 2. Cold-applied, cut-back-asphalt dampproofing.
  - 3. Cold-applied, emulsified-asphalt dampproofing.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. LEED Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.2: For dampproofing, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
  - 2. Laboratory Test Reports for Credit IEQ 4: For dampproofing, documentation indicating that products comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

#### 1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with application only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit dampproofing to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Ventilation: Provide adequate ventilation during application of dampproofing in enclosed spaces. Maintain ventilation until dampproofing has cured.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain primary dampproofing materials and primers from single source from single manufacturer. Provide protection course, molded-sheet drainage panels and auxiliary materials recommended in writing by manufacturer of primary materials.



- B. VOC Content: Products shall comply with VOC content limits of authorities having jurisdiction unless otherwise required.

## 2.2 HOT-APPLIED ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

- A. Hot-Applied Asphalt: ASTM D 449, Type II **OR** Type III, **as directed**.
- B. VOC Content: 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. Low-Emitting Materials: Dampproofing shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.3 COLD-APPLIED, CUT-BACK-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

- A. Trowel Coats: ASTM D 4586, Type I, Class 1, fibered.
- B. Brush and Spray Coats: ASTM D 4479, Type I, fibered or nonfibered.
- C. VOC Content: 250 **OR** 300, **as directed**, g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- D. Low-Emitting Materials: Dampproofing shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.4 COLD-APPLIED, EMULSIFIED-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

- A. Trowel Coats: ASTM D 1227, Type II, Class 1.
- B. Fibered Brush and Spray Coats: ASTM D 1227, Type II, Class 1.
- C. Brush and Spray Coats: ASTM D 1227, Type III, Class 1.
- D. VOC Content: Zero **OR** 30 g/L or less, **as directed**.
- E. Low-Emitting Materials: Dampproofing shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.5 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Furnish auxiliary materials recommended in writing by dampproofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with bituminous dampproofing.
- B. Cut-Back-Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 41.
- C. Emulsified-Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 1227, Type III, Class 1, except diluted with water as recommended in writing by manufacturer.



1. Primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

- D. Asphalt-Coated Glass Fabric: ASTM D 1668, Type I.
- E. Patching Compound: Epoxy or latex-modified repair mortar **OR** Asbestos-free fibered mastic, **as directed**, of type recommended in writing by dampproofing manufacturer.
- F. Protection Course: ASTM D 6506, 1/8-inch- (3-mm-) thick, semirigid sheets of fiberglass or mineral-reinforced-asphalitic core, pressure laminated between two asphalt-saturated fibrous liners.
- G. Protection Course: Fan folded, with a core of extruded-polystyrene board insulation faced on one side or both sides with plastic film, nominal thickness 1/4 inch (6 mm), with a compressive strength of not less than 8 psi (55 kPa) per ASTM D 1621, and maximum water absorption by volume of 0.6 percent per ASTM C 272.
- H. Protection Course: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation, unfaced, ASTM C 578, Type X, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
- I. Protection Course: Smooth-surfaced roll roofing complying with ASTM D 6380, Class S, Type III.

## 2.6 MOLDED-SHEET DRAINAGE PANELS

- A. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Comply with Section 334600 "Subdrainage."
- B. Nonwoven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Composite subsurface drainage panel consisting of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core; with a nonwoven, needle-punched geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding No. 70 (0.21-mm) sieve laminated to one side of the core; and with a vertical flow rate of 9 to 15 gpm per ft. (112 to 188 L/min. per m).

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for surface smoothness, surface moisture, and other conditions affecting performance of bituminous dampproofing work.
  1. Test for surface moisture according to ASTM D 4263.
- B. Proceed with application only after substrate construction and penetrating work have been completed and unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Mask or otherwise protect adjoining exposed surfaces from being stained, spotted, or coated with dampproofing. Prevent dampproofing materials from entering and clogging weep holes and drains.



- B. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to the dampproofing work; fill voids, seal joints, and remove bond breakers if any, as recommended in writing by prime material manufacturer.
- C. Apply patching compound to patch and fill tie holes, honeycombs, reveals, and other imperfections; cover with asphalt-coated glass fabric.

### 3.3 APPLICATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for dampproofing application, cure time between coats, and drying time before backfilling unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
  - 1. Apply dampproofing to provide continuous plane of protection.
  - 2. Apply additional coats if recommended in writing by manufacturer or to achieve a smooth surface and uninterrupted coverage.
- B. Where dampproofing footings and foundation walls, apply from finished-grade line to top of footing; extend over top of footing and down a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) over outside face of footing.
  - 1. Extend dampproofing 12 inches (300 mm) onto intersecting walls and footings, but do not extend onto surfaces exposed to view when Project is completed.
  - 2. Install flashings and corner protection stripping at internal and external corners, changes in plane, construction joints, cracks, and where shown as "reinforced," by embedding an 8-inch- (200-mm-) wide strip of asphalt-coated glass fabric in a heavy coat of dampproofing. Dampproofing coat for embedding fabric is in addition to other coats required.
- C. Where dampproofing exterior face of inner wythe of exterior masonry cavity walls, lap dampproofing at least 1/4 inch (6 mm) onto flashing, masonry reinforcement, veneer ties, and other items that penetrate inner wythe.
  - 1. Extend dampproofing over outer face of structural members and concrete slabs that interrupt inner wythe.
  - 2. Lap dampproofing at least 1/4 inch (6 mm) onto shelf angles supporting veneer.
- D. Where dampproofing interior face of above-grade, exterior concrete and masonry single-wythe masonry walls, continue dampproofing through intersecting walls by keeping vertical mortar joints at intersection temporarily open or by dampproofing wall before constructing intersecting walls.

### 3.4 HOT-APPLIED ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

- A. Do not apply hot asphalt when substrate condition causes foaming.
- B. Kettle Temperature: Comply with dampproofing-material manufacturer's written instructions, and keep at least 25 deg F (14 deg C) below the flash point.
- C. Prime masonry and other porous substrates.
- D. Apply a uniform coat of hot asphalt by mopping or spraying at not less than 20 lb or 2.5 gal./100 sq. ft. (1 kg or 1 L/sq. m).
  - 1. Apply a second coat to below-grade foundation walls and where first application has failed to produce a smooth surface and uninterrupted coverage. Apply second coat at the rate specified for first coat.





### 3.5 COLD-APPLIED, CUT-BACK-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

- A. Concrete Foundations and Parged Masonry Foundation Walls: Apply two brush or spray coats at not less than 1.25 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.5 L/sq. m) for first coat and 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m) for second coat or one trowel coat at not less than 4 gal./100 sq. ft. (1.6 L/sq. m).
- B. Unparged Masonry Foundation Walls: Apply primer and two brush or spray coats at not less than 1.25 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.5 L/sq. m) for first coat and 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m) for second coat or primer and one trowel coat at not less than 4 gal./100 sq. ft. (1.6 L/sq. m).
- C. Unexposed Face of Concrete Retaining Walls: Apply one brush or spray coat at not less than 1.25 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.5 L/sq. m).
- D. Unexposed Face of Masonry Retaining Walls: Apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than 1.25 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.5 L/sq. m).
- E. Concrete Backup for Brick Veneer Assemblies, Stone Veneer Assemblies and Dimension Stone Cladding: Apply one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).
- F. Masonry Backup for Brick Veneer Assemblies, Stone Veneer Assemblies and Dimension Stone Cladding: Apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).
- G. Exterior Face of Inner Wythe of Cavity Walls: Apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).

### 3.6 COLD-APPLIED, EMULSIFIED-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

- A. Concrete Foundations and Parged Masonry Foundation Walls: Apply two brush or spray coats at not less than 1.5 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.6 L/sq. m) for first coat and 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m) for second coat one fibered brush or spray coat at not less than 3 gal./100 sq. ft. (1.2 L/sq. m) or one trowel coat at not less than 4 gal./100 sq. ft. (1.6 L/sq. m).
- B. Unparged Masonry Foundation Walls: Apply primer and two brush or spray coats at not less than 1.5 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.6 L/sq. m) for first coat and 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m) for second coat primer and one fibered brush or spray coat at not less than 3 gal./100 sq. ft. (1.2 L/sq. m) or primer and one trowel coat at not less than 5 gal./100 sq. ft. (2 L/sq. m).
- C. Unexposed Face of Concrete Retaining Walls: Apply one brush or spray coat at not less than 1.25 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.5 L/sq. m).
- D. Unexposed Face of Masonry Retaining Walls: Apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than 1.25 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.5 L/sq. m).
- E. Concrete Backup for Brick Veneer Assemblies, Stone Veneer Assemblies and Dimension Stone Cladding: Apply one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).
- F. Masonry Backup for Brick Veneer Assemblies, Stone Veneer Assemblies and Dimension Stone Cladding: Apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).
- G. Exterior Face of Inner Wythe of Cavity Walls: Apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).
- H. Interior Face of Exterior Concrete Walls: Where above grade and indicated to be furred and finished, apply one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).



- I. Interior Face of Single-Wythe Exterior Masonry Walls: Where above grade and indicated to be furred and finished, apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF PROTECTION COURSE

- A. Where indicated, install protection course over completed-and-cured dampproofing. Comply with dampproofing-material and protection-course manufacturers' written instructions for attaching protection course.
  - 1. Support protection course over cured coating with spot application of adhesive type recommended in writing by protection-board manufacturer.
  - 2. Install protection course on same day **OR** within 24 hours, **as directed**, of installation of dampproofing (while coating is tacky) to ensure adhesion.

### 3.8 INSTALLATION OF MOLDED-SHEET DRAINAGE PANELS

- A. Place and secure molded-sheet drainage panels, with geotextile facing away from wall substrate, according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use adhesives or other methods that do not penetrate dampproofing. Lap edges and ends of geotextile to maintain continuity. Protect installed molded-sheet drainage panels during subsequent construction.
  - 1. Install protection course before installing drainage panels.

### 3.9 CLEANING

- A. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended in writing by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 11 13 00



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
07 11 13 00	07 14 16 00	Cold Fluid-Applied Waterproofing

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 07 11 19 00 - EPDM MEMBRANE ROOFING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for ethylene-propylene-diene-monomer (EPDM) roofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Adhered EPDM membrane roofing system.
  - b. Mechanically fastened EPDM membrane roofing system.
  - c. Loosely laid and ballasted EPDM membrane roofing system.
  - d. Vapor retarder.
  - e. Roof insulation.
2. Section includes the installation of acoustical roof deck rib insulation strips furnished under Division 05 Section "Steel Decking".

#### C. Definitions

1. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definitions of terms related to roofing work in this Section.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. General Performance: Installed membrane roofing and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Membrane roofing and base flashings shall remain watertight.
2. Material Compatibility: Provide roofing materials that are compatible with one another under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by membrane roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
3. Roofing System Design: Provide membrane roofing system that is identical to systems that have been successfully tested by a qualified testing and inspecting agency to resist uplift pressure calculated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
4. FM Approvals Listing: Provide membrane roofing, base flashings, and component materials that comply with requirements in FM Approvals 4450 and FM Approvals 4470 as part of a membrane roofing system, and that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FM Approvals' markings.
  - a. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-60 **OR** Class 1A-75 **OR** Class 1A-90 **OR** Class 1A-105 **OR** Class 1A-120 **OR** Class 1A-135 **OR** Class 1A-150 **OR** Class 1A-165, **as directed**.
  - b. Hail Resistance: MH **OR** SH, **as directed**.
5. Energy Performance (for "cool-roof" performance): Provide roofing system with initial Solar Reflectance Index not less than 78 **OR** 29, **as directed**, when calculated according to ASTM E 1980 based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency, **as directed**.
6. Energy Performance: Provide roofing system that is listed on the DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for low **OR** steep, **as directed**, -slope roof products, **as directed**.
7. Energy Performance: Provide roofing system with initial solar reflectance not less than 0.70 and emissivity not less than 0.75 when tested according to CRRC-1.

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:



- a. Product Test Reports for Credit SS 7.2: For roof materials, documentation indicating that roof materials comply with Solar Reflectance Index requirement.
  - b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, including printed statement of VOC content.
  3. Shop Drawings: For roofing system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  4. Samples: For each product included in the roofing system.
  5. Manufacturer Certificate: Signed by roofing manufacturer certifying that membrane roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
    - a. Submit evidence of complying with performance requirements.
  6. Research/evaluation reports.
  7. Field quality-control reports.
  8. Maintenance data.
  9. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.
- F. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by membrane roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.
  2. Source Limitations: Obtain components for membrane roofing system from same manufacturer as membrane roofing or approved by membrane roofing manufacturer.
  3. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E 108, Class A **OR** Class B **OR** Class C, **as directed**; for application and roof slopes indicated, as determined by testing identical membrane roofing materials by a qualified testing agency. Materials shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  4. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide fire-resistance-rated roof assemblies identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  5. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
- G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
  2. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
    - a. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
  3. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
  4. Handle and store roofing materials and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.
- H. Project Conditions
1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.
- I. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard or customized form, without monetary limitation, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of membrane roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within 10 **OR** 15 **OR** 20, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.



## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. EPDM Membrane Roofing

1. EPDM: ASTM D 4637, Type I, non-reinforced, **OR** Type II, scrim or fabric internally reinforced, **as directed**, uniform, flexible EPDM sheet.
  - a. Thickness: 45 mils (1.1 mm) **OR** 60 mils (1.5 mm) **OR** 75 mils (1.9 mm) **OR** 90 mils (2.2 mm), **as directed**, nominal.
  - b. Exposed Face Color: Black **OR** White on black, **as directed**.
2. Fabric-Backed EPDM: ASTM D 4637, Type III, non-reinforced, uniform, flexible EPDM sheet, laminated to a nonwoven polyester fabric backing except at selvages.
  - a. Composite Thickness: 90 mils (2.3 mm) **OR** 100 mils (2.5 mm) **OR** 105 mils (2.7 mm) **OR** 115 mils (2.9 mm), **as directed**, nominal.
  - b. Exposed Face Color: Black **OR** White on black, **as directed**.

### B. Auxiliary Membrane Roofing Materials

1. General: Auxiliary membrane roofing materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with membrane roofing.
  - a. Liquid-type auxiliary materials shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - b. Adhesives and sealants that are not on the exterior side of weather barrier shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
    - 1) Plastic Foam Adhesives: 50 g/L.
    - 2) Gypsum Board and Panel Adhesives: 50 g/L.
    - 3) Multipurpose Construction Adhesives: 70 g/L.
    - 4) Fiberglass Adhesives: 80 g/L.
    - 5) Contact Adhesive: 80 g/L.
    - 6) Single-Ply Roof Membrane Sealants: 450 g/L.
    - 7) Nonmembrane Roof Sealants: 300 g/L.
    - 8) Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
    - 9) Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
    - 10) Other Adhesives and Sealants: 250 g/L.
2. Sheet Flashing: 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick EPDM, partially cured or cured, according to application.
3. Protection Sheet: Epichlorohydrin or neoprene non-reinforced flexible sheet, 55- to 60-mil- (1.4- to 1.5-mm-) thick, recommended by EPDM manufacturer for resistance to hydrocarbons, non-aromatic solvents, grease, and oil.
4. Bonding Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard, water based, **as directed**.
5. Modified Asphaltic Fabric-Backed Membrane Adhesive: Roofing system manufacturer's standard modified asphalt, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive formulated for compatibility and use with fabric-backed membrane roofing.
6. Water-Based, Fabric-Backed Membrane Adhesive: Roofing system manufacturer's standard water-based, cold-applied adhesive formulated for compatibility and use with fabric-backed membrane roofing.
7. Low-Rise, Urethane, Fabric-Backed Membrane Adhesive: Roof system manufacturer's standard spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive formulated for compatibility and use with fabric-backed membrane roofing.
8. Seaming Material: Single-component, butyl splicing adhesive and splice cleaner **OR** Manufacturer's standard, synthetic-rubber polymer primer and 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide minimum, butyl splice tape with release film, **as directed**.
9. Lap Sealant: Manufacturer's standard, single-component sealant, colored to match membrane roofing, **as directed**.
10. Water Cutoff Mastic: Manufacturer's standard butyl mastic sealant.
11. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard, predrilled stainless-steel or aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch (25 by 3 mm) thick; with anchors.
12. Metal Battens: Manufacturer's standard, aluminum-zinc-alloy-coated or zinc-coated steel sheet, approximately 1 inch wide by 0.05 inch thick (25 mm wide by 1.3 mm thick), prepunched.



13. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening membrane to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
14. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide pourable sealers, preformed cone and vent sheet flashings, preformed inside and outside corner sheet flashings, reinforced EPDM securement strips, T-joint covers, in-seam sealants, termination reglets, cover strips, and other accessories.
15. Liquid coating, specifically formulated for coating EPDM membrane roofing, as follows:
  - a. Type: Acrylic emulsion **OR** Hypalon, **as directed**.
  - b. Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Tan **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

#### C. Substrate Boards

1. Substrate Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, Type X gypsum board, 5/8 inch (16 mm) thick.  
**OR**  
Substrate Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** Type X, 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick.  
**OR**  
Substrate Board: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, cellulosic-fiber-reinforced, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (10 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick.  
**OR**  
Substrate Board: ASTM C 728, perlite board, 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick, seal coated.
2. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening substrate panel to roof deck.

#### D. Vapor Retarder

1. Polyethylene Film: ASTM D 4397, 6 mils (0.15 mm) thick, minimum, with maximum permeance rating of 0.13 perm (7.5 ng/Pa x s x sq. m).
  - a. Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.
  - b. Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard lap adhesive, FM Approvals approved for vapor-retarder application.
2. Laminated Sheet: Kraft paper, two layers, laminated with asphalt and edge reinforced with woven fiberglass yarn with maximum permeance rating of 0.50 perm (29 ng/Pa x s x sq. m) and with manufacturer's standard adhesive, **as directed**.
3. Glass-Fiber Felts: ASTM D 2178, Type IV, asphalt impregnated.

#### E. Roof Insulation

1. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by EPDM membrane roofing manufacturer, selected from manufacturer's standard sizes suitable for application, of thicknesses indicated and that produce FM Approvals-approved roof insulation, **as directed**.
2. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type IV, 1.6-lb/cu. ft. (26-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type X, 1.3-lb/cu. ft. (21-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, minimum density, square edged.
3. Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type II, 1.35-lb/cu. ft. (22-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type VIII, 1.15-lb/cu. ft. (18-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type IX, 1.8-lb/cu. ft. (29-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, minimum density.
4. Composite Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type II, 1.35-lb/cu. ft. (22-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type VIII, 1.15-lb/cu. ft. (18-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type IX, 1.8-lb/cu. ft. (29-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, minimum density, with factory-applied facings, as follows:
  - a. Facer: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, cellulosic-fiber insulation board, asphalt coated, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.  
**OR**  
Facer: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1, OSB, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick.





5. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2 **OR** Type II, Class I, Grade 3, **as directed**, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.
6. Composite Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, with factory-applied facing board on one major surface, as indicated below by type, and felt or glass-fiber mat facer on the other.
  - a. Type IV, cellulosic-fiber-insulation-board facer, Grade 2, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
  - b. Type V, OSB facer, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick.
  - c. Type VII, glass mat faced gypsum board facer, 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick.
7. Perlite Board Insulation: ASTM C 728, rigid, mineral-aggregate thermal insulation board composed of expanded perlite, cellulosic fibers, binders, and waterproofing agents with top surface seal coated.
8. Cellulosic-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, fibrous-felted, rigid insulation boards of wood fiber or other cellulosic-fiber and water-resistant binders, asphalt impregnated, chemically treated for deterioration.
9. Cellular-Glass Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV, rigid, cellular-glass thermal board insulation faced with manufacturer's standard kraft-paper sheets.
10. Tapered Insulation: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards fabricated to slope of 1/4 inch per 12 inches (1:48) unless otherwise indicated.
11. Provide preformed saddles, crickets, tapered edge strips, and other insulation shapes where indicated for sloping to drain. Fabricate to slopes indicated.

F. Insulation Accessories

1. General: Furnish roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with membrane roofing.
2. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation and cover boards, **as directed**, to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
3. Modified Asphaltic Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended modified asphalt, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
4. Bead-Applied Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended bead-applied, low-rise, one- or multicomponent urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
5. Full-Spread Applied Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
6. Cover Board: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, cellulosic-fiber insulation board, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.  
**OR**  
Cover Board: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1, OSB, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick.  
**OR**  
Cover Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick, factory primed, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Cover Board: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, cellulosic-fiber reinforced, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (10 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm), **as directed**, thick.
7. Protection Mat: Woven or nonwoven polypropylene, polyolefin, or polyester fabric, water permeable and resistant to UV degradation, type and weight as recommended by roofing system manufacturer for application.

G. Asphalt Materials

1. Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 312, Type III or Type IV **OR** ASTM D 6152, SEBS modified, **as directed**.
2. Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 41.

H. Aggregate Ballast (for loosely laid and aggregate-ballasted installations)



1. Aggregate Ballast: Provide aggregate ballast that will withstand weather exposure without significant deterioration and will not contribute to membrane degradation, of the following type and size:
  - a. Aggregate Type: Smooth, washed, riverbed gravel or other acceptable smooth-faced stone **OR** Crushed gravel or crushed stone, **as directed**.
  - b. Size: ASTM D 448, Size 4, ranging in size from 3/4 to 1-1/2 inches (19 to 38 mm).  
**OR**  
Size: ASTM D 448, Size 2, ranging in size from 1-1/2 to 2-1/2 inches (38 to 63 mm).  
**OR**  
Size: ASTM D 448, Size 3, ranging in size from 1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm).

#### I. Roof Pavers

1. Lightweight Roof Pavers: Interlocking, lightweight concrete units, specially factory cast for use as roof ballast; grooved back, with four-way drainage capability; beveled, doweled, or otherwise profiled; and as follows:
  - a. Size: 8 by 16 inches (200 by 400 mm) **OR** 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm) **OR** 12 by 16-1/2 inches (300 by 420 mm) **OR** 12 by 18 inches (300 by 450 mm), **as directed**.
  - b. Weight: At least 10 lb/sq. ft. (50 kg/sq. m) but not exceeding 18 lb/sq. ft. (90 kg/sq. m).
  - c. Compressive Strength: 2500 psi (17 MPa) **OR** 5000 psi (34 MPa), **as directed**, minimum.
  - d. Colors and Textures: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
2. Rubber Roof Pavers: Interlocking, lightweight rubber units, 24 by 24 by 2-1/4 inches (600 by 600 by 57 mm), 6 lb/sq. ft. (30 kg/sq. m) specially manufactured for use as roof ballast; with grooved back for four-way drainage, beveled and doweled; and as follows:
  - a. Perimeter Securement Strip: Manufacturer's standard coated steel sheet channel **OR** aluminum sheet channel **OR** mill-finish aluminum sheet hold down **OR** coated aluminum sheet hold down, color as selected, **as directed**, and fasteners.
  - b. Color: Black **OR** Gray **OR** Terra cotta, **as directed**.
3. Heavyweight Roof Pavers: Heavyweight, hydraulically pressed, concrete units, square edged **OR** with top edges beveled 3/16 inch (5 mm), **as directed**, factory cast for use as roof pavers; absorption not greater than 5 percent, ASTM C 140; no breakage and maximum 1 percent mass loss when tested for freeze-thaw resistance, ASTM C 67; and as follows:
  - a. Size: 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm) **OR** 18 by 18 inches (450 by 450 mm) **OR** 24 by 24 inches (600 by 600 mm), **as directed**. Manufacture pavers to dimensional tolerances of plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) in length, height, and thickness.
  - b. Weight: 18 lb/sq. ft. (90 kg/sq. m) **OR** 22 lb/sq. ft. (110 kg/sq. m), **as directed**.
  - c. Compressive Strength: 7500 psi (52 MPa) **OR** 6500 psi (45 MPa), **as directed**, minimum.
  - d. Colors and Textures: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

#### J. Walkways

1. Flexible Walkways: Factory-formed, nonporous, heavy-duty, solid-rubber, slip-resisting, surface-textured walkway pads **OR** rolls, **as directed**, approximately 3/16 inch (5 mm) thick, and acceptable to membrane roofing system manufacturer.
2. Walkway Roof Pavers: Heavyweight, hydraulically pressed, concrete units, square edged **OR** with top edges beveled 3/16 inch (5 mm), **as directed**, factory cast for use as roof pavers; absorption not greater than 5 percent, ASTM C 140; no breakage and maximum 1 percent mass loss when tested for freeze-thaw resistance, ASTM C 67; and as follows:
  - a. Size: 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm) **OR** 18 by 18 inches (450 by 450 mm) **OR** 24 by 24 inches (600 by 600 mm), **as directed**. Manufacture pavers to dimensional tolerances of plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) in length, height, and thickness.
  - b. Weight: 18 lb/sq. ft. (90 kg/sq. m) **OR** 22 lb/sq. ft. (110 kg/sq. m), **as directed**.
  - c. Compressive Strength: 7500 psi (52 MPa) **OR** 6500 psi (45 MPa), **as directed**, minimum.
  - d. Colors and Textures: As selected from manufacturer's full range.



### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Preparation

1. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
2. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
3. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.
4. Install acoustical roof deck rib insulation strips, specified in Division 05 Section "Steel Decking", according to acoustical roof deck manufacturer's written instructions, immediately before installation of overlying construction and to remain dry.

#### B. Substrate Board

1. Install substrate board with long joints in continuous straight lines, perpendicular to roof slopes with end joints staggered between rows. Tightly butt substrate boards together.
  - a. Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck according to recommendations in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" and FM Global Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29 for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.  
**OR**  
Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof according to membrane roofing system manufacturers' written instructions.

#### C. Vapor-Retarder Installation

1. Polyethylene Film: Loosely lay polyethylene-film vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively.
  - a. Continuously seal side and end laps with tape **OR** adhesive, **as directed**.
2. Laminate Sheet: Install laminate-sheet vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively. Bond vapor retarder to substrate as follows:
  - a. Apply adhesive at rate recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer. Seal laps with adhesive.  
**OR**  
Apply ribbons of hot roofing asphalt at spacing, temperature, and rate recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer. Seal laps with hot roofing asphalt.
3. Built-Up Vapor Retarder: Install two glass-fiber felt plies lapping each felt 19 inches (483 mm) over preceding felt. Embed each felt in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt. Glaze-coat completed surface with hot roofing asphalt. Apply hot roofing asphalt within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature.
4. Completely seal vapor retarder at terminations, obstructions, and penetrations to prevent air movement into membrane roofing system.

#### D. Insulation Installation

1. Coordinate installing membrane roofing system components so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at the end of the workday.
2. Comply with membrane roofing system and insulation manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
3. Install tapered insulation under area of roofing to conform to slopes indicated.
4. Install insulation under area of roofing to achieve required thickness. Where overall insulation thickness is 2.7 inches (68 mm) or greater, install two or more layers with joints of each succeeding layer staggered from joints of previous layer a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) in each direction.



- a. Where installing composite and noncomposite insulation in two or more layers, install noncomposite board insulation for bottom layer and intermediate layers, if applicable, and install composite board insulation for top layer.
5. Trim surface of insulation where necessary at roof drains so completed surface is flush and does not restrict flow of water.
6. Install insulation with long joints of insulation in a continuous straight line with end joints staggered between rows, abutting edges and ends between boards. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch (6 mm) with insulation.
  - a. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch (6 mm) of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
7. Adhered Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and adhere to substrate as follows:
  - a. Prime surface of concrete deck with asphalt primer at rate of 3/4 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.3 L/sq. m) and allow primer to dry.
  - b. Set each layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, applied within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature.
  - c. Set each layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
 

**OR**

 Set each layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
8. Mechanically Fastened Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and secure to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
  - a. Fasten insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
 

**OR**

 Fasten insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
9. Mechanically Fastened and Adhered Insulation: Install first layer of insulation to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
  - a. Fasten first layer of insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
 

**OR**

 Fasten first layer of insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
  - b. Set each subsequent layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, applied within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature.
 

**OR**

 Set each subsequent layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
 

**OR**

 Set each subsequent layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
10. Loosely Laid Insulation: Loosely lay insulation units over substrate.
11. Install cover boards over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines with end joints staggered between rows. Offset joints of insulation below a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) in each direction. Loosely butt cover boards together and fasten to roof deck, **as directed**.
  - a. Fasten cover boards according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
 

**OR**

 Fasten cover boards to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.

#### E. Adhered Membrane Roofing Installation

1. Adhere membrane **OR** fabric-backed membrane, **as directed**, roofing over area to receive roofing according to membrane roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Unroll membrane roofing and allow to relax before installing.



2. Start installation of membrane roofing in presence of membrane roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
3. Accurately align membrane roofing and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
4. Bonding Adhesive: Apply to substrate and underside of membrane roofing at rate required by manufacturer and allow to partially dry before installing membrane roofing. Do not apply to splice area of membrane roofing.
5. Hot Roofing Asphalt: Apply a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt to substrate at temperature and rate required by manufacturer and install fabric-backed membrane roofing. Do not apply to splice area of membrane roofing.  
**OR**  
Fabric-Backed Membrane Adhesive: Apply to substrate at rate required by manufacturer and install fabric-backed membrane roofing.
6. In addition to adhering, mechanically fasten membrane roofing securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeters.
7. Apply membrane roofing with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
8. Adhesive Seam Installation: Clean both faces of splice areas, apply splicing cement, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping membrane roofing according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of membrane roofing terminations.
  - a. Apply a continuous bead of in-seam sealant before closing splice if required by membrane roofing system manufacturer.
9. Tape Seam Installation: Clean and prime both faces of splice areas, apply splice tape, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping membrane roofing according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of membrane roofing terminations.
10. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing that does not comply with requirements.
11. Spread sealant or mastic bed over deck drain flange at roof drains and securely seal membrane roofing in place with clamping ring.
12. Install membrane roofing and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing membrane roofing to maintain weather-tightness of transition and to not void warranty for existing membrane roofing system.
13. Adhere protection sheet over membrane roofing at locations indicated.

F. Mechanically Fastened Membrane Roofing Installation

1. Mechanically fasten membrane roofing over area to receive roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Unroll membrane roofing and allow to relax before installing.
  - a. For in-splice attachment, install membrane roofing with long dimension perpendicular to steel roof deck flutes.
2. Start installation of membrane roofing in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
3. Accurately align membrane roofing and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
4. Mechanically fasten or adhere membrane roofing securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roofing.
5. Apply membrane roofing with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
6. Adhesive Seam Installation: Clean both faces of splice areas, apply splicing cement, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping membrane roofing according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of membrane roofing terminations.
  - a. Apply a continuous bead of in-seam sealant before closing splice if required by membrane roofing system manufacturer.
7. Tape Seam Installation: Clean and prime both faces of splice areas, apply splice tape, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping membrane roofing according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of membrane roofing terminations.
8. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing that does not comply with requirements.



9. Spread sealant or mastic bed over deck drain flange at roof drains and securely seal membrane roofing in place with clamping ring.
10. In-Splice Attachment: Secure one edge of membrane roofing using fastening plates or metal battens centered within membrane splice and mechanically fasten membrane roofing to roof deck. Field splice seam.  
**OR**  
Through-Membrane Attachment: Secure membrane roofing using fastening plates or metal battens and mechanically fasten membrane roofing to roof deck. Cover battens and fasteners with a continuous cover strip.
11. Install membrane roofing and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing roofing to maintain weather-tightness of transition and to not void warranty for existing membrane roofing system.
12. Adhere protection sheet over membrane roofing at locations indicated.

G. Loosely Laid And Ballasted Membrane Roofing Installation

1. Loosely lay membrane roofing over area to receive roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Unroll membrane roofing and allow to relax before installing.
  - a. Comply with requirements in SPRI RP-4 for System 1 **OR** System 2 **OR** System 3, **as directed**.
2. Start installation of membrane roofing in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
3. Accurately align membrane roofing, without stretching, and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
4. Mechanically fasten or adhere perimeter of membrane roofing according to requirements in SPRI RP-4.  
**OR**  
Mechanically fasten or adhere membrane roofing at corners, perimeters, and transitions according to requirements in SPRI RP-4.
  - a. At corners and perimeters, omit aggregate ballast leaving membrane roofing exposed.
  - b. At corners and perimeters, adhere a second layer of membrane roofing
5. Apply membrane roofing with side laps shingled with slope of deck where possible.
6. Adhesive Seam Installation: Clean both faces of splice areas, apply splicing cement, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping membrane roofing according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of membrane roofing terminations.
  - a. Apply a continuous bead of in-seam sealant before closing splice if required by membrane roofing system manufacturer.
7. Tape Seam Installation: Clean and prime both faces of splice areas, apply splice tape, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping membrane roofing according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of membrane roofing terminations.
8. Leave seams uncovered until inspected by membrane roofing system manufacturer **OR** testing agency, **as directed**.
9. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing that does not comply with requirements.
10. Spread sealant or mastic bed over deck drain flange at roof drains and securely seal membrane roofing in place with clamping ring.
11. Install membrane roofing and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing roofing to maintain weather-tightness of transition and to not void warranty for existing membrane roofing system.
12. Adhere protection sheet over membrane roofing at locations indicated.
13. Install protection mat over membrane roofing, overlapping a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm). Install an additional protection mat layer at projections, pipes, vents, and drains, overlapping a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
14. Aggregate Ballast, **as directed**: Apply uniformly over membrane roofing at the rate required by membrane roofing system manufacturer, but not less than the following, spreading with care to minimize possibility of damage to membrane roofing system. Lay ballast as membrane roofing is installed, leaving membrane roofing ballasted at the end of the workday.



- a. Ballast Weight: Size 4 aggregate, 10 lb/sq. ft. (50 kg/sq. m).  
**OR**  
Ballast Weight: Size 2 aggregate, 13 lb/sq. ft. (65 kg/sq. m), at corners and perimeter; Size 4 aggregate, 10 lb/sq. ft. (50 kg/sq. m), elsewhere.  
**OR**  
Ballast Weight: Size 2 aggregate, 13 lb/sq. ft. (65 kg/sq. m).
- 15. Roof-Paver Ballast: Install lightweight **OR** heavyweight, **as directed**, roof-paver ballast according to manufacturer's written instructions.  
**OR**  
Roof-Paver Ballast: Install rubber roof-paver ballast according to manufacturer's written instructions, in locations indicated.
  - a. Install perimeter paver edge securement.  
**OR**  
Roof-Paver and Aggregate Ballast: Install heavyweight roof pavers according to manufacturer's written instructions on roof corners and perimeter.
  - b. Install Size 4 aggregate ballast elsewhere on roofing at a minimum rate of 10 lb/sq. ft. (50 kg/sq. m).  
**OR**  
Install Size 2 aggregate ballast elsewhere on roofing at a minimum rate of 13 lb/sq. ft. (65 kg/sq. m).
- H. Base Flashing Installation
  - 1. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories and adhere to substrates according to membrane roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of sheet flashing at required rate and allow to partially dry. Do not apply to seam area of flashing.
  - 3. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with cured or uncured sheet flashing.
  - 4. Clean splice areas, apply splicing cement, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping sheets to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of sheet flashing terminations.
  - 5. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings and mechanically anchor to substrate through termination bars, **as directed**.
- I. Coating Installation
  - 1. Apply coatings to membrane roofing **OR** base flashings, **as directed**, according to manufacturer's written recommendations, by spray, roller, or other suitable application method.
- J. Walkway Installation
  - 1. Flexible Walkways: Install walkway products in locations indicated. Adhere walkway products to substrate with compatible adhesive according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Roof-Paver Walkways: Install walkway roof pavers according to manufacturer's written instructions in locations indicated, to form walkways. Leave 3 inches (75 mm) of space between adjacent roof pavers.
- K. Field Quality Control
  - 1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform inspections.
  - 2. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion.
  - 3. Repair or remove and replace components of membrane roofing system where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
  - 4. Additional inspections, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- L. Protecting And Cleaning



1. Protect membrane roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction will not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to the Owner.
2. Correct deficiencies in or remove membrane roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates and repair or reinstall membrane roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Final Completion and according to warranty requirements.
3. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 11 19 00



**SECTION 07 13 13 00 - BITUMINOUS WATERPROOFING**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for bituminous waterproofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include recommendations for method of application, primer, number of coats, coverage or thickness, and protection course.

## C. Delivery, Storage And Handling

1. Waterproofing materials shall be delivered to the project site in the original sealed containers bearing the name of the manufacturer, contents and brand name. Asphalt shall be protected from freezing in a weathertight enclosure. Reinforcement fabrics shall be protected from moisture damage and moisture absorption in a weathertight enclosure or shall be stored off the ground on pallets, and covered on top and all sides with breathable-type canvas tarpaulins. Plastic sheets cause condensation buildup and therefore shall not be used to cover waterproofing materials. Damaged or deteriorated materials shall be removed from project site.

## D. Project Conditions

1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit waterproofing to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions.
2. Ventilation: Provide adequate ventilation during application of waterproofing in enclosed spaces. Maintain ventilation until waterproofing has cured.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

## A. Asphalt Waterproofing

1. Primer: Primer for hot-applied asphalt waterproofing shall conform to ASTM D41, asbestos-free, non-fibrated, manufactured with highly ductile soft asphalts and selected hydrocarbons.
2. Above-Grade Hot-Applied Asphalt: For above-grade applications where asphalt will not be exposed to temperatures exceeding 122 degrees F (50 degrees C), hot-applied asphalt for membrane waterproofing system shall conform to ASTM D449, Type II. For above-grade applications where asphalt will be exposed to sunlight and temperatures exceeding 122 degrees F (50 degrees C), hot-applied asphalt shall conform to ASTM D449, Type III.
3. Below-Grade Hot-Applied Asphalt: Hot-applied asphalt for below-grade applications shall conform to ASTM D449, Type I, asbestos-free, manufactured from crude petroleum, suitable for use with membrane waterproofing systems.
4. Reinforcement Fabrics
  - a. Cotton Fabrics: Cotton fabrics shall be woven entirely of cotton conforming with ASTM D173, thoroughly and uniformly saturated with asphalt.
  - b. Woven Burlap Fabrics: Woven burlap fabrics shall be composed of 100 percent jute fiber and two cotton threads at each selvage conforming with ASTM D1327, thoroughly and uniformly saturated with asphalt. The fabric mesh shall not be completely closed or sealed by the process of saturation. Sufficient porosity shall be maintained to allow successive moppings of the plying asphalt to seep through. The surface shall not be coated or covered with talc or any other substances that will interfere with the adhesion between fabric and plying asphalt. The fabric surface shall be uniformly smooth and free of



irregularities, folds and knots. The finished woven burlap fabrics shall be free of ragged edges, untrue edges, breaks or cracks, and other visible external defects.

- c. Glass Fabrics: Glass fabrics shall conform to ASTM D1668 Type I, asphalt-treated woven glass waterproofing fabrics coated with asphalt.
- d. Flashing Cement: Flashing cement shall conform to ASTM D4586, Type I, trowel grade, asbestos free, manufactured from asphalts characterized as adhesive, healing and ductile.

#### B. Insulation Boards

- 1. Insulation boards shall conform to ASTM C208 cellulosic fiber boards, construction grade, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick, fibrous-felted homogeneous panel. Insulation boards shall be manufactured from ligno-cellulosic fibers (wood or cane) by a felting or molding process, asphalt-saturated or coated, with a density of 10 to 31 psf (49 to 151 kg/square meter). Surfaces of insulation boards shall be free of cracks, lumps, excessive departure from planeness, or other defects that adversely affect performance.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Surface Preparation

- 1. Surfaces scheduled for bituminous waterproofing shall be prepared in accordance with waterproofing manufacturer's recommendations. Surface preparation shall be approved prior to waterproofing application.
- 2. Protection of Surrounding Areas: Before starting the waterproofing work, the surrounding areas and surfaces shall be protected from spillage and migration of asphalt onto other work. Drains and conductors shall be protected from clogging with asphalt.
- 3. Masonry Surfaces: Surfaces shall be free of oil, grease, dirt, laitance, loose material, frost, debris and other contaminants. Mortar joints shall be flush and free of extraneous mortar and chipped or broken masonry.
- 4. Concrete Surfaces: Surfaces shall be properly cured, free of form release agents, oil, grease, dirt, laitance, loose material, frost, debris and other contaminants. Form ties shall be cut flush with surface. Sharp protrusions and form match lines shall be removed. Holes, voids, spalled areas and cracks which can damage waterproofing materials shall be repaired. Rough surfaces shall be parged with a well-adhering coat of cement mortar.
- 5. Metal Surfaces: Surfaces shall be dry and be free of rust, scale, loose paint, oil, grease, dirt, frost and debris.

#### B. Hot-Applied Asphalt Waterproofing

- 1. Asphalt waterproofing shall be applied when the ambient temperature is 40 degrees F (4 degrees C) or above. Heating kettles and tanks shall be provided with automatic thermostatic control capable of maintaining asphalt temperature. Controls shall be calibrated and maintained in working order for duration of work. At time of application, asphalt shall not be heated above the equiviscous temperature (EVT) recommended by manufacturer. Immediately before use, temperature shall be measured with a portable thermometer at the point of application. EVT and flashpoint temperatures of asphalt in kettle shall be conspicuously posted on kettle. Asphalt with a temperature not conforming to the manufacturer's recommendations shall be returned to the kettle. Asphalt overheated by more than 50 degrees F (10 degrees C) for more than 1 hour shall be removed from site.
- 2. Below-Grade Wall Waterproofing: Waterproofing for foundation walls shall consist of a 1-ply **OR** 2-ply **OR** 3-ply **OR** 4-ply **OR** 5-ply, **as directed**, hot-applied asphalt membrane system. Fabrics shall be installed using the "shingle" method. Joints shall be caulked prior to primer applications. Primer shall be applied at a rate of 1/2 gallon per 100 square feet (0.2 L/square meter). Fabrics shall be overlapped at ends and staggered a minimum 10 inch (250 mm) for 1-ply **OR** 19 inch (480 mm) for 2-ply **OR** 24 inch (610 mm) for 3-ply **OR** 27 inch (685 mm) for 4-ply **OR** 30 inch (750 mm) for 5-ply, **as directed**, system. End-to-end taping is not acceptable. Each fabric shall be firmly embedded into a solid uniform coating of hot asphalt at a rate of 20 pounds per 100 square



feet (0.98 kg/square meter) by pressing with broom. Fabrics shall not touch fabrics. Hot asphalt shall penetrate each fabric to provide the required adhesion. Asphalt between fabrics shall not be excessive to prevent slippage. Waterproofing system consisting of two or more fabrics shall be provided with fabric reinforcement at corners, angles, over construction joints, and in locations where waterproofing fabrics are subject to unusual stress.

3. Floor Waterproofing: Primer shall be applied at a rate of 1/2 gallon per 100 square feet (0.2 L/square meter). Primer shall not be left in puddles. Primer shall be dry to the touch before application of asphalt. Where slab abuts walls, first reinforcing fabric shall extend 6 inches (150 mm) minimum on slab and 8 inches (200 mm) on wall. At vertical corners, first fabric shall extend minimum 5 inches (125 mm) from corner on each side. Second fabric shall lap the first fabric 2 inches (50 mm) minimum. At floor drains, and elsewhere as indicated, the fabric shall extend into a clamping device, set in a heavy coating of flashing cement, and securely clamped.

C. Flood Testing

1. Prior to concealment, waterproofed floors over occupied spaces shall be tested for watertightness. Drains shall be plugged and floors shall be submerged with 3 inches (75 mm) of clean water. Water shall be permitted to stand for a minimum of 24 hours. If leaks occur, water shall be drained and repairs made. Upon completion of repairs, floors shall be flooded with 3 inches (75 mm) of clean water and flood testing shall be repeated for minimum of 24 hours from the time each leak is repaired. Waterproofing system shall be completely watertight, and shall be approved in writing before covering up with other materials. Additional coats of asphalt are not an acceptable method for repairing leaks.

D. Clean-Up

1. Surfaces of other work which are stained with waterproofing materials shall be cleaned with a cleaner recommended by waterproofing manufacturer.

E. Protection Of Completed Work

1. Floor Waterproofing: The completed waterproofing work shall be protected from damage during and after construction. Protective covering shall be placed immediately before proceeding with the work which will conceal the waterproofing.
2. Wall Waterproofing: Waterproofing against which backfill is to be placed shall be protected with a single layer of insulation board. Insulation boards shall be pressed into the final mopping while the asphalt is still hot, with edges of boards placed into moderate contact and joints staggered. For two-layer installation, joints in second layer shall be staggered over joints in first layer. Where surfaced insulation board is used, the surfaced side shall face outward. Boards shall be carefully and neatly fitted around projections, and shall cover the entire surface of the waterproofing materials. Waterproofing system not covered with protection board shall be protected to prevent damage from subsequent building operations. Installed boards shall not remain exposed at the end of a work day.

END OF SECTION 07 13 13 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
07 13 13 00	07 11 13 00	Bituminous Dampproofing

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 07 13 53 00 - SELF-ADHERING SHEET WATERPROOFING**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for self-adhering sheet waterproofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Modified bituminous sheet waterproofing.
  - b. Modified bituminous sheet waterproofing, fabric reinforced.
  - c. Modified bituminous deck paving sheet waterproofing.
  - d. Modified bituminous composite panel waterproofing.
  - e. Adhesive-coated HDPE sheet waterproofing.
  - f. Molded-sheet drainage panels.
  - g. Insulation.
  - h. Plaza deck pavers and paver pedestals.

## C. Submittals

1. Product Data: Include manufacturer's written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating substrate, technical data, and tested physical and performance properties of waterproofing.
2. Shop Drawings: Show locations and extent of waterproofing. Include details for substrate joints and cracks, sheet flashings, penetrations, inside and outside corners, tie-ins with adjoining waterproofing, and other termination conditions.
3. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for waterproofing.
4. Special warranties.
5. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Certificates for Credit MR 5: For products and materials required to comply with requirements for regional materials, certificates indicating location of material manufacturer and point of extraction, harvest, or recovery for each raw material. Include statement indicating distance to Project, cost for each regional material, and fraction by weight that is considered regional.
  - b. Shop Drawings: Show locations and extent of waterproofing and details of substrate joints and cracks, sheet flashings, penetrations, inside and outside corners, tie-ins with adjoining waterproofing, and other termination conditions.
    - 1) Include setting drawings showing layout, sizes, sections, profiles, and joint details of pedestal-supported concrete pavers.
  - c. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, including the following products:
    - 1) 8-by-8-inch (200-by-200-mm) square of waterproofing and flashing sheet.
    - 2) 8-by-8-inch (200-by-200-mm) square of insulation.
    - 3) 4-by-4-inch (100-by-100-mm) square of drainage panel.
    - 4) Plaza-deck paver, 4-by-4-inch (100-by-100-mm) square **OR** full sized, **as directed**, in each color and texture required.
    - 5) Paver pedestal assembly.

## D. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications: A firm that is approved or licensed by **OR** acceptable to, **as directed**, waterproofing manufacturer for installation of waterproofing required for this Project.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.



- a. Review waterproofing requirements including surface preparation, substrate condition and pretreatment, minimum curing period, forecasted weather conditions, special details and sheet flashings, installation procedures, testing and inspection procedures, and protection and repairs.

E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver liquid materials to Project site in original packages with seals unbroken, labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
2. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged packages in a clean, dry, protected location and within temperature range required by waterproofing manufacturer.
3. Remove and replace liquid materials that cannot be applied within their stated shelf life.
4. Store rolls according to manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

F. Project Conditions

1. Environmental Limitations: Apply waterproofing within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended by waterproofing manufacturer. Do not apply waterproofing to a damp or wet substrate.

G. Warranty

1. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace waterproofing material that does not comply with requirements or that fails to remain watertight within specified warranty period.
  - a. Warranty Period: Three **OR** Five, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Modified Bituminous Sheet Waterproofing

1. Modified Bituminous Sheet: Not less than 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick, self-adhering sheet consisting of 56 mils (1.4 mm) of rubberized asphalt laminated to a 4-mil- (0.10-mm-) thick, polyethylene film with release liner on adhesive side and formulated for application with primer or surface conditioner that complies with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - a. Physical Properties:
    - 1) Tensile Strength: 250 psi (1.7 MPa) minimum; ASTM D 412, Die C, modified.
    - 2) Ultimate Elongation: 300 percent minimum; ASTM D 412, Die C, modified.
    - 3) Low-Temperature Flexibility: Pass at minus 20 deg F (minus 29 deg C); ASTM D 1970.
    - 4) Crack Cycling: Unaffected after 100 cycles of 1/8-inch (3-mm) movement; ASTM C 836.
    - 5) Puncture Resistance: 40 lbf (180 N) minimum; ASTM E 154.
    - 6) Hydrostatic-Head Resistance: 150 feet (45 m) minimum; ASTM D 5385.
    - 7) Water Absorption: 0.15 percent weight-gain maximum after 48-hour immersion at 70 deg F (21 deg C); ASTM D 570.
    - 8) Vapor Permeance: 0.05 perms (2.9 ng/Pa x s x sq. m); ASTM E 96, Water Method.
2. Modified Bituminous Sheet, Fabric Reinforced: 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick, self-adhering sheet consisting of rubberized-asphalt membrane embedded in spun-bonded polyester or fiberglass nonwoven fabric reinforcement laminated to a 0.50-mil- (0.01-mm-) thick polyester film with release liner on adhesive side.
  - a. Physical Properties:
    - 1) Pliability: No cracks when bent 180 degrees over a 1-inch (25-mm) mandrel at minus 25 deg F (minus 32 deg C); ASTM D 146.
    - 2) Hydrostatic-Head Resistance: 150 feet (45 m) minimum.
    - 3) Vapor Permeance: 0.05 perms (2.9 ng/Pa x s x sq. m); ASTM E 96, Water Method.





- B. Modified Bituminous Deck Paving Sheet Waterproofing
1. Modified Bituminous Deck Paving Sheet: Provide one of the products described below, **as directed**:
    - a. 65-mil- (1.6-mm-) thick, self-adhering sheets consisting of 53 to 56 mils (1.3 to 1.4 mm) of rubberized asphalt laminated to a heat-resisting, 9- to 12-mil- (0.2- to 0.3-mm-) thick, woven polypropylene geotextile reinforcement with release liner on adhesive side.
    - b. 70-mil- (1.8-mm-) thick, self-adhering sheets consisting of rubberized asphalt embedded in inert fabric reinforcement laminated to a reflective geotextile protective topping with release liner on adhesive side.
    - c. 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick, self-adhering sheets consisting of rubberized asphalt embedded in nonwoven **OR** woven, **as directed**, fiberglass fabric reinforcement laminated to a 0.50-mil- (0.01-mm-) thick polyester mat with release liner on adhesive side.
    - d. Physical Properties:
      - 1) Tensile Strength, Membrane: 50 lbf/in (8.75 kN/m) minimum; ASTM D 882.
      - 2) Pliability: Unaffected when bent 180 degrees over a 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) mandrel at minus 15 deg F (minus 26 deg C); ASTM D 146.
      - 3) Puncture Resistance, Mesh: 200 lbf (890 N) minimum; ASTM E 154.
- C. Modified Bituminous Composite Panel Waterproofing
1. Modified Bituminous Composite Panel: 90-mil- (2.2-mm-) thick, multilaminated panel consisting of a protection course bonded to an asphalt saturated carrier sheet bonded to a rubberized asphalt waterproofing self-adhering membrane with release liner.
- D. Adhesive-Coated HDPE Sheet Waterproofing
1. Adhesive-Coated HDPE Sheet for Vertical Applications: 32-mil- (0.8-mm-) thick, uniform, flexible sheets consisting of 16-mil- (0.4-mm-) thick, HDPE sheet coated with a pressure-sensitive rubber adhesive, a protective adhesive coating, and a release liner with the following physical properties:
    - a. Tensile Strength, Film: 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) minimum; ASTM D 412.
    - b. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Pass at minus 10 deg F (minus 23 deg C); ASTM D 1970.
    - c. Peel Adhesion to Concrete: 5 lbf/in. (875 N/m); ASTM D 903, modified.
    - d. Lap Adhesion: 2.5 lbf/in. (440 N/m); ASTM D 1876, modified.
    - e. Hydrostatic-Head Resistance: 231 feet (70 m); ASTM D 5385, modified.
    - f. Vapor Permeance: 0.01 perms (0.6 ng/Pa x s x sq. m); ASTM E 96, Water Method.
    - g. Water Absorption: 0.5 percent; ASTM D 570.
  2. Adhesive-Coated HDPE Sheet for Horizontal Applications: 46-mil- (1.2-mm-) thick, uniform, flexible sheets consisting of 30-mil- (0.76-mm-) thick, HDPE sheet coated with a pressure-sensitive rubber adhesive, a protective adhesive coating, a detackifying surface treatment, an uncoated self-adhering side lap strip, and a release liner with the following physical properties:
    - a. Tensile Strength, Film: 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) minimum; ASTM D 412.
    - b. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Pass at minus 10 deg F (minus 23 deg C); ASTM D 1970.
    - c. Peel Adhesion to Concrete: 5 lbf/in. (875 N/m); ASTM D 903, modified.
    - d. Lap Adhesion: 2.5 lbf/in. (440 N/m); ASTM D 1876, modified.
    - e. Hydrostatic-Head Resistance: 231 feet (70 m); ASTM D 5385, modified.
    - f. Vapor Permeance: 0.01 perms (0.6 ng/Pa x s x sq. m); ASTM E 96, Water Method.
    - g. Water Absorption: 0.5 percent; ASTM D 570.
- E. Auxiliary Materials
1. General: Furnish auxiliary materials recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with sheet waterproofing.
    - a. Furnish liquid-type auxiliary materials that comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Primer: Liquid waterborne **OR** solvent-borne, **as directed**, primer recommended for substrate by manufacturer of sheet waterproofing material.
  3. Surface Conditioner: Liquid, waterborne surface conditioner recommended for substrate by manufacturer of sheet waterproofing material.



4. Liquid Membrane: Elastomeric, two-component liquid, cold fluid applied, trowel grade or low viscosity.
  5. Substrate Patching Membrane: Low-viscosity, two-component, asphalt-modified coating.
  6. Sheet Strips: Self-adhering, rubberized-asphalt sheet strips of same material and thickness as sheet waterproofing.
  7. Mastic, Adhesives, and Tape: Liquid mastic and adhesives, and adhesive tapes recommended by waterproofing manufacturer.
    - a. Detail Tape: Two-sided, pressure-sensitive, self-adhering reinforced tape, 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) wide, with a tack-free protective adhesive coating on one side and release film on self-adhering side.
    - b. Detail Strips: 62.5-mil- (1.58-mm-) thick, felt-reinforced self-adhesive strip, 9 inches (229 mm) wide, with release film on adhesive side.
  8. Metal Termination Bars: Aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch (25 by 3 mm) thick, predrilled at 9-inch (229-mm) centers.
  9. Protection Course: ASTM D 6506, semirigid sheets of fiberglass or mineral-reinforced-asphaltic core, pressure laminated between two asphalt-saturated fibrous liners and as follows:
    - a. Thickness: 1/8 inch (3 mm), nominal, for vertical applications; 1/4 inch (6 mm), nominal, elsewhere.
    - b. Adhesive: Rubber-based solvent type recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for type of protection course.
  10. Protection Course: Fan folded, with a core of extruded-polystyrene board insulation faced one side or both sides with plastic film, nominal thickness 1/4 inch (6 mm), with compressive strength of not less than 8 psi (55 kPa) per ASTM D 1621, and maximum water absorption by volume of 0.6 percent per ASTM C 272.
  11. Protection Course: Unfaced, fan-folded, extruded-polystyrene board insulation, nominal thickness 1/4 inch (6 mm) with compressive strength of not less than 8 psi (55 kPa) per ASTM D 1621.
  12. Protection Course: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation, unfaced, ASTM C 578, Type X, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
  13. Protection Course: Molded-polystyrene board insulation, ASTM C 578, Type I, 0.90-lb/cu. ft. (15-kg/cu. m) minimum density, 1-inch (25-mm) minimum thickness.
- F. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panels
1. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Comply with Division 33 Section "Subdrainage".
  2. Nonwoven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Manufactured composite subsurface drainage panels consisting of a nonwoven, needle-punched geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding No. 70 (0.21-mm) sieve laminated to one side with or without a polymeric film bonded to the other side of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core, with a vertical flow rate of 9 to 15 gpm per ft. (112 to 188 L/min. per m).
  3. Woven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Manufactured composite subsurface drainage panels consisting of a woven-geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding No. 40 (0.425-mm) sieve laminated to one side with or without a polymeric film bonded to the other side of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core, with a horizontal flow rate not less than 2.8 gpm per ft. (35 L/min. per m).
- G. Insulation
1. Board Insulation: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, square or shiplap edged.
    - a. Type IV, 25-psi (173-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
    - b. Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
    - c. Type VII, 60-psi (414-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
    - d. Type V, 100-psi (690-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
  2. Unfaced Wall Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type IV, 25-psi (173-kPa) or Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa) minimum compressive



- strength; unfaced; fabricated with shiplap or channel edges and with 1 side having grooved drainage channels.
3. Geotextile-Faced Wall Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type IV, 25-psi (173-kPa) or Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa) minimum compressive strength; fabricated with tongue-and-groove edges and with 1 side having grooved drainage channels faced with nonwoven geotextile filter fabric.
  4. Unfaced Plaza Deck Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa) **OR** Type VII, 60-psi (414-kPa), **as directed**, minimum compressive strength; unfaced; fabricated with shiplapped or channel edges and with 1 side having ribbed drainage channels.
  5. Geotextile-Faced Plaza Deck Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type VII, 60-psi (414-kPa) minimum compressive strength; fabricated with tongue-and-groove edges and with 1 side having grooved drainage channels faced with manufacturer's standard, nonwoven geotextile filter fabric.
- H. Plaza Deck Pavers
1. Plaza Deck Pavers: Brick **OR** Concrete **OR** Asphalt-Block, **as directed**, pavers specified in Division 32 Section "Unit Paving".
  2. Plaza Deck Pavers: Granite **OR** Limestone **OR** Marble **OR** Quartz-Based Stone **OR** Slate, **as directed**, pavers specified in Division 09 Section "Stone Flooring".
  3. Plaza Deck Pavers: Heavyweight, hydraulically pressed, concrete units, square edged **OR** with top edges beveled 3/16 inch (5 mm), **as directed**, manufactured for use as plaza deck pavers; minimum compressive strength 7500 psi (52 mpa) **or** 6500 psi (45 mpa), **as directed**, ASTM C 140; absorption not greater than 5 percent, ASTM C 140; no breakage and maximum 1 percent mass loss when tested for freeze-thaw resistance according to ASTM C 67.
    - a. Thickness: 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) **OR** 1-3/4 inches (45 mm) **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 2-3/8 inches (60 mm), **as directed**.
    - b. Face Size: 8-7/8 inches (225 mm) square **OR** 9 inches (229 mm) square **OR** 9 by 18 inches (229 by 457 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm) square **OR** 12 by 24 inches (305 by 610 mm) **OR** 18 inches (457 mm) square **OR** 24 inches (610 mm) square **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
    - c. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match sample **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  4. Setting Bed: Provide aggregate **OR** mortar **OR** bituminous, **as directed**, setting-bed materials specified in Division 32 Section "Unit Paving".
  5. Paver Pedestals: Paver manufacturer's standard SBR rubber, HDPE, or polyurethane paver support assembly, including fixed-height **OR** adjustable or stackable, **as directed**, pedestals, shims, and spacer tabs for joint spacing of 1/8 inch (3 mm) **OR** 3/16 inch (5 mm) **OR** 1/8 to 3/16 inch (3 to 5 mm), **as directed**.
    - a. Concrete Fill: ACI 301, compressive strength of 5000 psi (34 MPa) at 28 days and air content of 6 percent.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Surface Preparation
1. Clean, prepare, and treat substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrates for waterproofing application.
  2. Mask off adjoining surfaces not receiving waterproofing to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.
  3. Remove grease, oil, bitumen, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.
  4. Remove fins, ridges, mortar, and other projections and fill honeycomb, aggregate pockets, holes, and other voids.
  5. Prepare, fill, prime, and treat joints and cracks in substrates. Remove dust and dirt from joints and cracks according to ASTM D 4258.



- a. Install sheet strips and center over treated construction and contraction joints and cracks exceeding a width of 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) or 1/8 inch (3 mm) for modified bituminous deck paving waterproofing.
  6. Bridge and cover isolation joints, expansion joints, and discontinuous deck-to-wall and deck-to-deck joints with overlapping sheet strips.
    - a. Invert and loosely lay first sheet strip over center of joint. Firmly adhere second sheet strip to first and overlap to substrate.
  7. Corners: Prepare, prime, and treat inside and outside corners according to ASTM D 6135.
    - a. Install membrane strips centered over vertical inside corners. Install 3/4-inch (19-mm) fillets of liquid membrane on horizontal inside corners and as follows:
      - 1) At footing-to-wall intersections, extend liquid membrane each direction from corner or install membrane strip centered over corner.
      - 2) At plaza deck-to-wall intersections, extend liquid membrane or sheet strips onto deck waterproofing and to finished height of sheet flashing.
  8. Prepare, treat, and seal vertical and horizontal surfaces at terminations and penetrations through waterproofing and at drains and protrusions according to ASTM D 6135.
- B. Modified Bituminous Sheet Waterproofing Application
1. Install modified bituminous sheets according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions and according to recommendations in ASTM D 6135.
  2. Apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow to dry. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by sheet waterproofing in same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
  3. Apply and firmly adhere sheets over area to receive waterproofing. Accurately align sheets and maintain uniform 2-1/2-inch- (64-mm-) minimum lap widths and end laps. Overlap and seal seams and stagger end laps to ensure watertight installation.
    - a. When ambient and substrate temperatures range between 25 and 40 deg F (minus 4 and plus 5 deg C), install self-adhering, modified bituminous sheets produced for low-temperature application. Do not use low-temperature sheets if ambient or substrate temperature is higher than 60 deg F (16 deg C).
  4. Two-Ply Application: Install sheets to form a membrane with lap widths not less than 50 percent of sheet widths to provide a minimum of 2 thicknesses of sheet membrane over areas to receive waterproofing.
  5. Horizontal Application: Apply sheets from low point to high point of decks to ensure that side laps shed water.
  6. Apply continuous sheets over sheet strips bridging substrate cracks, construction, and contraction joints.
  7. Seal exposed edges of sheets at terminations not concealed by metal counterflashings or ending in reglets with mastic.
  8. Install sheet waterproofing and auxiliary materials to tie into adjacent waterproofing.
  9. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in waterproofing not complying with requirements. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with sheet waterproofing extending 6 inches (150 mm) beyond repaired areas in all directions.
  10. Install protection course with butted joints over waterproofing membrane immediately.
    - a. Molded-sheet drainage panels **OR** Insulation drainage panels **OR** Board insulation, **as directed**, may be used in place of a separate protection course to vertical applications when approved by waterproofing manufacturer and installed immediately.
  11. Correct deficiencies in or remove sheet waterproofing that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates, reapply waterproofing, and repair sheet flashings.
- C. Modified Bituminous Deck Paving Sheet Waterproofing Application
1. Install modified bituminous deck paving sheets according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow to dry. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by sheet waterproofing in same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.



3. Apply and firmly adhere sheets over areas to receive waterproofing. Accurately align sheets and maintain uniform 2-1/2-inch- (64-mm-) minimum lap widths and 6-inch (150-mm) end laps. Overlap and seal seams and stagger end laps to ensure watertight installation.
  4. Apply sheet waterproofing from low point to high point of decks to ensure that side laps shed water.
  5. Apply continuous sheets over sheet strips bridging substrate cracks, construction, and contraction joints.
  6. Seal edges of sheet waterproofing terminations with mastic.
  7. Install sheet waterproofing and auxiliary materials to tie into adjacent waterproofing.
  8. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in waterproofing not complying with requirements. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with sheet waterproofing extending 6 inches (150 mm) beyond repaired areas in all directions.
  9. Correct deficiencies in or remove sheet waterproofing that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates, reapply waterproofing, and repair sheet flashings.
- D. Modified Bituminous Composite Panel Waterproofing Application
1. Install modified bituminous composite panels according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Apply primer to substrate at required rate and allow to dry. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by waterproofing in same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
  3. Install and firmly adhere composite panels over area to receive waterproofing. Accurately align and butt vertical and horizontal joints.
  4. Seal vertical and horizontal butt joints and exposed top, side, and bottom edges at composite panel waterproofing terminations with detail strips.
  5. Correct deficiencies in or remove composite panel waterproofing that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates, reapply waterproofing, and repair detail strips.
- E. Adhesive-Coated HDPE Sheet Waterproofing Application
1. Install adhesive-coated HDPE sheets according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Place and secure molded-sheet drainage panels over substrate. Lap edges and ends of geotextile to maintain continuity.
  3. Vertical Applications: Install adhesive-coated HDPE sheet with HDPE face against substrate. Accurately align sheets and maintain uniform 3-inch- (75-mm-) minimum lap widths and end laps. Overlap and seal seams and stagger and tape end laps to ensure watertight installation. Mechanically fasten to substrate.
    - a. Securely fasten top termination of membrane with continuous metal termination bar anchored into substrate and cover with detailing tape.
  4. Horizontal Applications: Install adhesive-coated HDPE sheet with HDPE face against substrate. Accurately align sheets and maintain uniform 3-inch- (75-mm-) minimum lap widths and end laps. Overlap and seal seams. Overlap, stagger, and seal end laps with detail tape to ensure watertight installation.
  5. Corners: Seal lapped terminations and cut edges of sheet waterproofing at inside and outside corners with detail tape.
  6. Seal penetrations through sheet waterproofing to provide watertight seal with detail tape patches or wraps and a liquid-membrane troweling.
  7. Install sheet waterproofing and auxiliary materials to produce a continuous watertight tie into adjacent waterproofing.
  8. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in waterproofing not complying with requirements. Tape perimeter of damaged or nonconforming area extending 6 inches (150 mm) beyond repaired areas in all directions. Apply a patch of sheet waterproofing and firmly secure with detail tape.
  9. Correct deficiencies in or remove waterproofing that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates, reapply waterproofing, and repair sheet flashings.
- F. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel Installation
1. Place and secure molded-sheet drainage panels, with geotextile facing away from wall or deck substrate, according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use adhesives or mechanical



fasteners that do not penetrate waterproofing. Lap edges and ends of geotextile to maintain continuity. Protect installed molded-sheet drainage panels during subsequent construction.

- a. For vertical applications, install board insulation **OR** protection course, **as directed**, before installing drainage panels.

G. Insulation Installation

1. Install one or more layers of board insulation to achieve required thickness and insulation drainage panels over waterproofed surfaces. Cut and fit to within 3/4 inch (19 mm) of projections and penetrations.
2. On vertical surfaces, set insulation units in adhesive or tape applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.
3. On horizontal surfaces, loosely lay insulation units according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger end joints and tightly abut insulation units.

H. Plaza Deck Paver Installation

1. Setting Bed: Install setting bed in locations and of thickness indicated to comply with requirements in Division 32 Section(s) "Unit Paving" OR Division 09 Section(s) "Stone Flooring", **as directed**.
2. Install concrete pavers in locations indicated according to manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Accurately install fixed **OR** adjustable, **as directed**, -height paver pedestals and accessories in locations and to elevations required. Adjust for final level and slope with shims.
  - a. Fill paver pedestal with concrete mix, strike smooth with top of pedestal, and cure according to ACI 301.
4. Loosely lay pavers on pedestals, maintaining a uniform open joint width. Tightly seat pavers against spacers to eliminate lateral movement or drift of paving assembly. Align joint patterns parallel in each direction.
  - a. Lay out pavers to avoid less-than-half-width pavers at perimeter or other terminations.
5. Install pavers to not vary more than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) in elevation between adjacent pavers or more than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) from surface plane elevation of individual paver.
6. Maintain tolerances of paving installation within 1/4 inch in 10 feet (1:48) of surface plane in any direction.

I. Field Quality Control

1. Flood Testing: Flood test each deck area for leaks, according to recommendations in ASTM D 5957, after completing waterproofing but before overlying construction is placed. Install temporary containment assemblies, plug or dam drains, and flood with potable water.
  - a. Flood to an average depth of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) with a minimum depth of 1 inch (25 mm) and not exceeding a depth of 4 inches (100 mm). Maintain 2 inches (51 mm) of clearance from top of sheet flashings.
  - b. Flood each area for 24 **OR** 48 **OR** 72, **as directed**, hours.
  - c. After flood testing, repair leaks, repeat flood tests, and make further repairs until waterproofing installation is watertight.
2. Engage an independent testing agency to observe flood testing and examine underside of decks and terminations for evidence of leaks during flood testing.

J. Protection And Cleaning

1. Do not permit foot or vehicular traffic on unprotected membrane.
2. Protect waterproofing from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
3. Protect installed board insulation **OR** insulation drainage panels, **as directed**, from damage due to UV light, harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings where insulation will be subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.
4. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.



END OF SECTION 07 13 53 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



**SECTION 07 13 53 00a - ELASTOMERIC SHEET WATERPROOFING**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for elastomeric sheet waterproofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Butyl rubber sheet waterproofing.
  - b. EPDM rubber sheet waterproofing.
  - c. Molded-sheet drainage panels.
  - d. Insulation.
  - e. Plaza deck pavers and paver pedestals.

## C. Submittals

1. Product Data: Include manufacturer's written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating substrate, technical data, and tested physical and performance properties of waterproofing.
2. Shop Drawings: Show locations and extent of waterproofing. Include details for substrate joints and cracks, sheet flashings, penetrations, inside and outside corners, tie-ins with adjoining waterproofing, and other termination conditions.
3. Product test reports.
4. Special warranties.

## D. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications: A firm that is approved or licensed by **OR** acceptable to, **as directed**, waterproofing manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - a. Review waterproofing requirements including surface preparation, substrate condition and pretreatment, minimum curing period, forecasted weather conditions, special details and sheet flashings, installation procedures, testing and inspection procedures, and protection and repairs.

## E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver liquid materials to Project site in original packages with seals unbroken, labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
2. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged packages in a clean, dry, protected location and within temperature range required by waterproofing manufacturer.
3. Remove and replace liquid materials that cannot be applied within their stated shelf life.
4. Store rolls according to manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

## F. Project Conditions

1. Environmental Limitations: Apply waterproofing within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended by waterproofing manufacturer. Do not apply waterproofing to a damp or wet substrate.

## G. Warranty



1. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace waterproofing material that does not comply with requirements or that fails to remain watertight within 10 **OR** 20, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Sheet Waterproofing

1. Butyl Rubber Sheet: ASTM D 6134, Type II, 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) **OR** 90-mil- (2.3-mm-) **OR** 120-mil- (3.0-mm-), **as directed**, thick flexible sheet, unreinforced, formed from isobutylene-isoprene rubber.
2. EPDM Rubber Sheet: ASTM D 6134, Type I, 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick flexible sheet, unreinforced, formed from EPDM.

### B. Auxiliary Materials

1. General: Furnish auxiliary materials recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with sheet waterproofing.
  - a. Furnish liquid-type auxiliary materials that comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Concealed Sheet Flashing: Same material, construction, and thickness as sheet waterproofing or 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick, uncured EPDM as required by manufacturer.
3. Exposed Sheet Flashing: 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick EPDM, cured or uncured, as required by manufacturer.
4. Bonding Adhesives: Adhesive for bonding polymeric sheets and sheet flashings to substrates and projections.
5. Splicing Cement and Cleaner: Single-component butyl splicing cement and solvent-based splice cleaner.
  - a. Butyl Gum Tape: 30-mil- (0.76-mm-) thick-by-6-1/4-inch- (160-mm-) wide, uncured butyl with polyethylene release film.
6. Lap Sealant: Single-component sealant.
7. In-Seam Sealant: Single-component sealant.
8. Water Cutoff Mastic: Butyl mastic sealant.
9. Waterproofing and Sheet Flashing Accessories: Provide sealants, pourable sealers, cone and vent flashings, inside and outside corner flashings, termination reglets, and other accessories recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for intended use.
10. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard aluminum bars, approximately 1 inch (25 mm) wide, prepunched, with zinc-alloy-body fasteners and stainless-steel pins.
11. Protection Course: ASTM D 6506, semirigid sheets of fiberglass or mineral-reinforced-asphaltic core, pressure laminated between two asphalt-saturated fibrous liners and as follows:
  - a. Thickness: 1/8 inch (3 mm), nominal, for vertical applications; 1/4 inch (6 mm), nominal, elsewhere.
  - b. Adhesive: Rubber-based solvent type recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for type of protection course.
12. Protection Course:
  - a. Faced, fan folded, with a core of extruded-polystyrene board insulation sandwiched between 2 sheets of plastic film, nominal thickness 1/4 inch (6 mm), with compressive strength of not less than 8 psi (55 kPa) per ASTM D 1621, and maximum water absorption by volume of 0.6 percent per ASTM C 272.
  - b. Unfaced, fan-folded, extruded-polystyrene board insulation, nominal thickness 1/4 inch (6 mm) with compressive strength of not less than 8 psi (55 kPa) per ASTM D 1621.
  - c. Extruded-polystyrene board insulation, unfaced, ASTM C 578, Type X, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
  - d. Molded-polystyrene board insulation, ASTM C 578, Type I, 0.90-lb/cu. ft. (15-kg/cu. m) minimum density, 1-inch (25-mm) minimum thickness.



- C. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panels
1. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Comply with Division 33 Section "Subdrainage".
  2. Nonwoven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Manufactured composite subsurface drainage panels consisting of a nonwoven, needle-punched geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding No. 70 (0.21-mm) sieve laminated to one side with or without a polymeric film bonded to the other side of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core, with a vertical flow rate of 9 to 15 gpm per ft. (112 to 188 L/min. per m).
  3. Woven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Manufactured composite subsurface drainage panels consisting of a woven-geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding No. 40 (0.425-mm) sieve laminated to one side with or without a polymeric film bonded to the other side of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core, with a horizontal flow rate not less than 2.8 gpm per ft. (35 L/min. per m).
- D. Insulation
1. Board Insulation: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, square or shiplap edged.
    - a. Type IV, 25-psi (173-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
    - b. Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
    - c. Type VII, 60-psi (414-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
    - d. Type V, 100-psi (690-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
  2. Unfaced Wall Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type IV, 25-psi (173-kPa) or Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa) minimum compressive strength; unfaced; fabricated with shiplap or channel edges and with 1 side having grooved drainage channels.
  3. Geotextile-Faced Wall Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type IV, 25-psi (173-kPa) or Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa) minimum compressive strength; fabricated with tongue-and-groove edges and with 1 side having grooved drainage channels faced with nonwoven geotextile filter fabric.
  4. Unfaced Plaza Deck Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa) **OR** Type VII, 60-psi (414-kPa), **as directed**, minimum compressive strength; unfaced; fabricated with shiplapped or channel edges and with 1 side having ribbed drainage channels.
  5. Geotextile-Faced Plaza Deck Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type VII, 60-psi (414-kPa) minimum compressive strength; fabricated with tongue-and-groove edges and with 1 side having grooved drainage channels faced with manufacturer's standard, nonwoven geotextile filter fabric.
- E. Plaza Deck Pavers
1. Plaza Deck Pavers: Brick **OR** Concrete **OR** Asphalt-block, **as directed**, pavers specified in Division 32 Section "Unit Paving".
  2. Plaza Deck Pavers: Granite **OR** Limestone **OR** Marble **OR** Quartz-based stone **OR** Slate, **as directed**, pavers specified in Division 09 Section "Stone Flooring".
  3. Plaza Deck Pavers: Heavyweight, hydraulically pressed, concrete units, square edged **OR** with top edges beveled 3/16 inch (5 mm), **as directed**, manufactured for use as plaza deck pavers; minimum compressive strength 7500 psi (52 MPa) **OR** 6500 psi (45 MPa), **as directed**, ASTM C 140; absorption not greater than 5 percent, ASTM C 140; no breakage and maximum 1 percent mass loss when tested for freeze-thaw resistance according to ASTM C 67.
    - a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
  4. Setting Bed: Provide aggregate **OR** mortar **OR** bituminous, **as directed**, setting-bed materials specified in Division 32 Section "Unit Paving".
  5. Paver Pedestals: Paver manufacturer's standard SBR rubber, HDPE, or polyurethane paver support assembly, including fixed-height **OR** adjustable or stackable, **as directed**, pedestals, shims, and spacer tabs for joint spacing of 1/8 inch (3 mm) **OR** 3/16 inch (5 mm) **OR** 1/8 to 3/16 inch (3 to 5 mm), **as directed**.
    - a. Concrete Fill: ACI 301, compressive strength of 5000 psi (34 MPa) at 28 days and air content of 6 percent.



### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Surface Preparation

1. Clean, prepare, and treat substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrates for waterproofing application.
2. Mask off adjoining surfaces not receiving waterproofing to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.
3. Remove grease, oil, bitumen, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.
4. Remove fins, ridges, mortar, and other projections and fill honeycomb, aggregate pockets, holes, and other voids.
5. Prepare, fill, prime, and treat joints and cracks in substrates. Remove dust and dirt from joints and cracks according to ASTM D 4258.
6. Prepare, treat, and seal vertical and horizontal surfaces at terminations and penetrations through waterproofing and at drains and protrusions.

#### B. Fully Adhered Sheet Installation

1. Install fully adhered sheets over entire area to receive waterproofing according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in ASTM D 5843.
2. Accurately align sheets and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required. Stagger end laps.
3. Apply bonding adhesive to substrates at required rate and allow to partially dry.
4. Apply bonding adhesive to sheets and firmly adhere sheets to substrates. Do not apply bonding adhesive to splice area of sheet.
5. Install fully adhered sheets and auxiliary materials to tie into existing waterproofing.
6. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in waterproofing not complying with requirements. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with sheet waterproofing extending beyond repaired areas in all directions.
7. Horizontal Application: Apply sheets with side laps shingled with slope of deck where possible.
  - a. Spread sealant bed over deck drain flange at deck drains and securely seal sheet waterproofing in place with clamping ring.

#### C. Partially Adhered Sheet Installation

1. Install partially adhered sheets over entire area to receive waterproofing according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Accurately align sheets and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required. Stagger end laps.
3. Apply bonding adhesive to the following areas of substrates and to each sheet at required rate and allow to partially dry:
  - a. Upper 25 percent of length of each sheet and 18 inches (457 mm) around perimeter of each sheet.
4. Firmly adhere sheets to substrate. Do not apply bonding adhesive to splice area of sheet.
5. Install partially adhered sheets and auxiliary materials to tie into existing waterproofing.
6. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in waterproofing not complying with requirements. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with sheet waterproofing extending beyond repaired areas in all directions.

#### D. Compartmented, Loosely Laid Sheet Installation

1. Install compartmented, loosely laid sheets over entire area to receive waterproofing according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Accurately align sheets and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required. Stagger end laps.
3. Apply continuous beads of water cutoff mastic, of size recommended by waterproofing manufacturer, to substrates in a 60-by-60-inch (1500-by-1500-mm) grid pattern before installing sheet.



4. Apply sheets with side laps shingled with slope of deck where possible.
  5. Spread sealant bed over deck drain flange at deck drains and securely seal sheet waterproofing in place with clamping ring.
  6. Install compartmented, loosely laid sheets and auxiliary materials to tie into existing waterproofing.
  7. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in waterproofing not complying with requirements. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with sheet waterproofing extending beyond repaired areas in all directions.
- E. Seam Installation
1. Cement Splice: Clean splice areas, apply splicing cement and in-seam sealant, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping sheets according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a splice not less than 6 inches (150 mm) wide and to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of sheet terminations.
  2. Cement and Tape Splice: Clean splice areas, apply splicing cement and butyl gum tape, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping sheets according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of sheet terminations.
- F. Sheet Flashing Installation
1. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories and adhere to substrates according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Form wall flashings using exposed sheet flashing.
  3. Extend deck sheet waterproofing to form wall flashings.
    - a. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with uncured sheet flashing.
    - b. Clean splice areas, apply splicing cement, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping sheets to ensure a watertight installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of sheet flashing terminations.
  4. Cover expansion joints and discontinuous deck-to-wall or deck-to-deck joints by extending deck sheet waterproofing over joints.
  5. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings with mechanically anchored termination bars.
- G. Protection Course Installation
1. Install protection course over waterproofing membrane according to manufacturer's written instructions and before beginning subsequent construction operations. Minimize exposure of membrane.
    - a. Molded-sheet drainage panels **OR** Insulation drainage panels **OR** Board insulation, **as directed**, may be used in place of a separate protection course to vertical applications when approved by waterproofing manufacturer.
- H. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel Installation
1. Place and secure molded-sheet drainage panels, with geotextile facing away from wall or deck substrate, according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use adhesives or mechanical fasteners that do not penetrate waterproofing. Lap edges and ends of geotextile to maintain continuity. Protect installed molded-sheet drainage panels during subsequent construction.
    - a. For vertical applications, install board insulation **OR** protection course, **as directed**, before installing drainage panels.
- I. Insulation Installation
1. Install one or more layers of board insulation to achieve required thickness and insulation drainage panels over waterproofed surfaces. Cut and fit to within 3/4 inch (19 mm) of projections and penetrations.
  2. On vertical surfaces, place and secure insulation units according to manufacturer's written instructions.



3. On horizontal surfaces, loosely lay insulation units according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger end joints and tightly abut insulation units.

J. Plaza Deck Paver Installation

1. Setting Bed: Install setting bed in locations and of thickness indicated to comply with requirements in Division 32 Section(s) "Unit Paving" OR Division 09 Section(s) "Stone Flooring", **as directed**.
2. Install concrete pavers in locations indicated according to manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Accurately install fixed **OR** adjustable, **as directed**, -height paver pedestals and accessories in locations and to elevations required. Adjust for final level and slope with shims.
  - a. Fill paver pedestal with concrete mix, strike smooth with top of pedestal, and cure according to ACI 301.
4. Loosely lay pavers on pedestals, maintaining a uniform open joint width. Tightly seat pavers against spacers to eliminate lateral movement or drift of paving assembly. Align joint patterns parallel in each direction.
  - a. Lay out pavers to avoid less-than-half-width pavers at perimeter or other terminations.
5. Install pavers to not vary more than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) in elevation between adjacent pavers or more than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) from surface plane elevation of individual paver.
6. Maintain tolerances of paving installation within 1/4 inch in 10 feet (1:48) of surface plane in any direction.

K. Protection And Cleaning

1. Do not permit foot or vehicular traffic on unprotected membrane.
2. Protect waterproofing from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
3. Protect installed board insulation **OR** insulation drainage panels, **as directed**, from damage due to UV light, harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings where insulation will be subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.
4. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 13 53 00a

**SECTION 07 14 13 00 - HOT FLUID-APPLIED RUBBERIZED ASPHALT WATERPROOFING**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for hot fluid-applied rubberized asphalt waterproofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Rubberized-asphalt waterproofing membrane, unreinforced and reinforced.
  - b. Molded-sheet drainage panels.
  - c. Insulation.
  - d. Plaza deck pavers.

## C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Show locations and extent of waterproofing. Include details for substrate joints and cracks, sheet flashings, penetrations, inside and outside corners, tie-ins to adjoining waterproofing, and other termination conditions.
  - a. Include setting drawings showing layout, sizes, sections, profiles, and joint details of pedestal-supported concrete pavers.
3. Product test reports.
4. Sample warranties

## D. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications: A firm that is approved or licensed by **OR** acceptable to, **as directed**, manufacturer for installation of waterproofing required for this Project and is eligible to receive special warranties specified.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

## E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by waterproofing manufacturer.
2. Remove and replace liquid materials that cannot be applied within their stated shelf life.
3. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

## F. Project Conditions

1. Environmental Limitations: Apply waterproofing within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended by waterproofing manufacturer. Do not apply waterproofing to a damp or wet substrate, or when temperature is below 0 deg F (minus 18 deg C).
  - a. Do not apply waterproofing in snow, rain, fog, or mist.
2. Maintain adequate ventilation during application and curing of waterproofing materials.

## G. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace waterproofing and sheet flashings that do not comply with requirements or that fail to remain watertight within five **OR** 10, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.



## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Waterproofing Membrane

1. Hot Fluid-Applied, Rubberized-Asphalt Waterproofing Membrane: Single component; 100 percent solids; hot fluid-applied, rubberized asphalt.

### B. Flashing Sheet Materials

1. Elastomeric Flashing Sheet: 50-mil- (1.3-mm-) minimum, uncured sheet neoprene as follows:
  - a. Tensile Strength: 1400 psi (9.6 MPa) minimum; ASTM D 412, Die C.
  - b. Elongation: 300 percent minimum; ASTM D 412.
  - c. Tear Resistance: 125 psi (860 kPa) minimum; ASTM D 624, Die C.
  - d. Brittleness: Does not break at minus 30 deg F (34 deg C); ASTM D 2137.

### C. Auxiliary Materials

1. Primer: ASTM D 41, asphaltic primer.
2. Elastomeric Sheet: 50-mil- (1.3-mm-) minimum, uncured sheet neoprene as follows:
  - a. Tensile Strength: 1400 psi (9.6 MPa) minimum; ASTM D 412, Die C.
  - b. Elongation: 300 percent minimum; ASTM D 412.
  - c. Tear Resistance: 125 psi (860 kPa) minimum; ASTM D 624, Die C.
  - d. Brittleness: Does not break at minus 30 deg F (34 deg C); ASTM D 2137.
3. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard, predrilled stainless-steel or aluminum termination bars; approximately 1 by 1/8 inch (25 by 3 mm) thick; with anchors.
4. Sealants and Accessories: Manufacturer's recommended sealants and accessories.
5. Reinforcing Fabric: Manufacturer's recommended, spun-bonded polyester fabric.
6. Protection Course: ASTM D 6506, semirigid sheets of fiberglass or mineral-reinforced-asphaltic core, pressure laminated between two asphalt-saturated fibrous liners and nominal thickness of 1/8 inch (3 mm) **OR** 1/4 inch (6 mm), **as directed**.
7. Protection Course: Manufacturer's standard, 80- to 90-mil- (2.0- to 2.3-mm-) thick, fiberglass-reinforced rubberized asphalt or modified bituminous sheet.

### D. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panels

1. Nonwoven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Manufactured composite subsurface drainage panels consisting of a nonwoven, needle-punched geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding No. 70 (0.21-mm) sieve, laminated to one side with **OR** without, **as directed**, a polymeric film bonded to the other side of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core, with a vertical flow rate of 9 to 15 gpm/ft. (112 to 188 L/min. per m).
2. Woven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Manufactured composite subsurface drainage panels consisting of a woven-geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding No. 40 (0.43-mm) sieve, laminated to one side with **OR** without, **as directed**, a polymeric film bonded to the other side of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core, with a horizontal flow rate not less than 2.8 gpm/ft. (35 L/min. per m).

### E. Insulation

1. Board Insulation: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, square **OR** shiplap, **as directed**, edged.
  - a. Type IV, 25-psi (173-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
  - b. Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
  - c. Type VII, 60-psi (414-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
  - d. Type V, 100-psi (690-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
2. Unfaced Wall Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type IV, 25-psi (173-kPa) **OR** Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa), **as directed**, minimum compressive strength; unfaced; fabricated with shiplap or channel edges and with one side having grooved drainage channels.





3. Geotextile-Faced Wall Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type IV, 25-psi (173-kPa) **OR** Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa), **as directed**, minimum compressive strength; fabricated with tongue-and-groove edges and with one side having grooved drainage channels faced with a nonwoven, geotextile filter fabric.
  4. Unfaced Plaza Deck Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa) **OR** Type VII, 60-psi (414-kPa), **as directed**, minimum compressive strength; unfaced; fabricated with shiplapped or channel edges and with one side having ribbed drainage channels.
  5. Geotextile-Faced Plaza Deck Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type VII, 60-psi (414-kPa) minimum compressive strength; fabricated with tongue-and-groove edges and with one side having grooved drainage channels faced with a nonwoven, geotextile filter fabric.
- F. Plaza Deck Pavers
1. Plaza Deck Pavers:
    - a. Brick **OR** Concrete **OR** Asphalt-block, **as directed**, pavers specified in Division 32 Section "Unit Paving".  
**OR**  
Granite **OR** Limestone **OR** Marble **OR** Quartz-based stone **OR** Slate, **as directed**, pavers specified in Division 09 Section "Stone Flooring".  
**OR**  
Heavyweight, hydraulically pressed, concrete units, square edged **OR** with top edges beveled 3/16 inch (5 mm), **as directed**, manufactured for use as plaza deck pavers; minimum compressive strength 7500 psi (52 MPa) **OR** 6500 psi (45 MPa), **as directed**, ASTM C 140; absorption not greater than 5 percent, ASTM C 140; no breakage and maximum 1 percent mass loss when tested for freeze-thaw resistance according to ASTM C 67.
      - 1) Thickness: 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) **OR** 1-3/4 inches (45 mm) **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 2-3/8 inches (60 mm), **as directed**.
      - 2) Face Size: 8-7/8 inches (225 mm) square **OR** 9 inches (229 mm) square **OR** 9 by 18 inches (229 by 457 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm) square **OR** 12 by 24 inches (305 by 610 mm) **OR** 18 inches (457 mm) square **OR** 24 inches (610 mm) square, **as directed**.
      - 3) Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
  2. Setting Bed: Provide aggregate **OR** mortar **OR** bituminous, **as directed**, setting-bed materials specified in Division 32 Section "Unit Paving".
  3. Paver Supports: Paver manufacturer's standard SBR rubber, high-density polyethylene, or polyurethane paver support assembly, including fixed-height **OR** adjustable or stackable, **as directed**, pedestals, shims, and spacer tabs for joint spacing of 1/8 inch (3 mm) **OR** 3/16 inch (5 mm), **as directed**.
    - a. Concrete Fill: ACI 301, compressive strength of 5000 psi (34 MPa) at 28 days, and air content of 6 percent.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Preparation
1. Clean and prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrate for waterproofing application.
  2. Mask off adjoining surfaces not receiving waterproofing to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.
  3. Close off deck drains and other deck penetrations to prevent spillage and migration of waterproofing fluids.
  4. Remove grease, oil, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.



- a. Abrasive blast clean concrete surfaces uniformly to expose top surface of fine aggregate according to ASTM D 4259 with a self-contained, recirculating, blast-cleaning apparatus. Remove material to provide a sound surface free of laitance, glaze, efflorescence, curing compounds, concrete hardeners, or form-release agents. Remove remaining loose material and clean surfaces according to ASTM D 4258.
  5. Remove fins, ridges, and other projections and fill honeycomb, aggregate pockets, and other voids.
- B. Joints, Cracks, And Terminations
1. Prepare and treat substrates to receive waterproofing membrane, including joints and cracks, deck drains, corners, and penetrations according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - a. Rout and fill joints and cracks in substrate. Before filling, remove dust and dirt according to ASTM D 4258.
    - b. Adhere strip of elastomeric sheet to substrate in a layer of hot rubberized asphalt. Extend elastomeric sheet a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) on each side of moving joints and cracks or joints and cracks exceeding 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick, and beyond deck drains and penetrations. Apply second layer of hot fluid-applied, rubberized asphalt over elastomeric sheet.
    - c. Embed strip of reinforcing fabric into a layer of hot rubberized asphalt. Extend reinforcing fabric a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) on each side of nonmoving joints and cracks not exceeding 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick, and beyond roof drains and penetrations.
      - 1) Apply second layer of hot fluid-applied, rubberized asphalt over reinforcing fabric.
  2. At expansion joints and discontinuous deck-to-wall or deck-to-deck joints, bridge joints with elastomeric sheet extended a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) on each side of joints and adhere to substrates in a layer of hot rubberized asphalt. Apply second layer of hot fluid-applied, rubberized asphalt over elastomeric sheet.
- C. Flashing Installation
1. Install elastomeric flashing sheets at terminations of waterproofing membrane according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Prime substrate with asphalt primer.
  3. Install elastomeric flashing sheet and adhere to deck and wall substrates in a layer of hot rubberized asphalt.
  4. Extend elastomeric flashing sheet up walls or parapets a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above plaza deck pavers and 6 inches (150 mm) onto deck to be waterproofed.
  5. Install termination bars and mechanically fasten to top of elastomeric flashing sheet at terminations and perimeter of roofing.
- D. Membrane Application
1. Apply primer, at manufacturer's recommended rate, over prepared substrate and allow to dry.
  2. Heat and apply rubberized asphalt according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - a. Heat rubberized asphalt in an oil- or air-jacketed melter with mechanical agitator specifically designed for heating rubberized asphalt.
  3. Start application with manufacturer's authorized representative present.
  4. Unreinforced Membrane: Apply hot rubberized asphalt to substrates and adjoining surfaces indicated. Spread to form a uniform, unreinforced, seamless membrane, 180-mil (4.5-mm) minimum thickness **OR** 180-mil (4.5-mm) average thickness, but not less than 125 mil (3.2 mm) thick, **as directed**.
  5. Reinforced Membrane: Apply hot rubberized asphalt to substrates and adjoining surfaces indicated. Spread to a thickness of 90 mils (2.3 mm); embed reinforcing fabric, overlapping sheets 2 inches (50 mm); spread another 125-mil- (3.2-mm-) thick layer to provide a uniform, reinforced, seamless membrane 215 mils (5.5 mm) thick.
  6. Apply waterproofing over prepared joints and up wall terminations and vertical surfaces to heights indicated or required by manufacturer.



7. Cover waterproofing with protection course with overlapped joints before membrane is subject to backfilling **OR** construction or vehicular traffic, **as directed**.
- E. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel Installation
1. Place and secure molded-sheet drainage panels, with geotextile facing away from wall or deck substrate according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use methods that do not penetrate waterproofing. Lap edges and ends of geotextile to maintain continuity. Protect installed molded-sheet drainage panels during subsequent construction.
    - a. For vertical applications, install board insulation **OR** protection course, **as directed**, before installing drainage panels.
- F. Insulation Installation
1. Install one or more layers of board insulation to achieve required thickness and insulation drainage panels over waterproofed surfaces. Cut and fit to within 3/4 inch (19 mm) of projections and penetrations.
  2. On vertical surfaces, set insulation units into rubberized asphalt according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  3. On horizontal surfaces, loosely lay insulation units according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger end joints and tightly abut insulation units.
- G. Plaza Deck Paver Installation
1. Setting Bed: Install setting bed in locations and of thickness indicated to comply with requirements in Division 32 Section(s) "Unit Paving" **OR** Division 09 Section(s) "Stone Flooring", **as directed**.
  2. Install concrete pavers in locations indicated according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  3. Accurately install fixed-height **OR** adjustable-height, **as directed**, paver pedestals and accessories in locations and to elevations required. Adjust for final level and slope with shims.
    - a. Fill paver pedestal with concrete mix, strike smooth with top of pedestal, and cure according to ACI 301.
  4. Loosely lay pavers on pedestals, maintaining a uniform open joint width. Tightly seat pavers against spacers to eliminate lateral movement or drift of paving assembly. Align joint patterns parallel in each direction.
    - a. Lay out pavers to avoid less-than-half-width pavers at perimeter or other terminations.
  5. Install pavers to not vary more than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) in elevation between adjacent pavers or more than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) from surface plane elevation of individual paver.
  6. Maintain tolerances of paving installation within 1/4 inch in 10 feet (1:48) of surface plane in any direction.
- H. Cleaning And Protection
1. Protect waterproofing from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
  2. Protect installed board insulation **OR** insulation drainage panels, **as directed**, from damage due to UV light, harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings where insulation will be subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.
  3. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 14 13 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 07 14 16 00 - COLD FLUID-APPLIED WATERPROOFING**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for cold fluid-applied waterproofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Single-component polyurethane waterproofing.
  - b. Two-component polyurethane waterproofing.
  - c. Polyester waterproofing.
  - d. Latex-rubber waterproofing.
  - e. Molded-sheet drainage panels.
  - f. Insulation.
  - g. Plaza deck pavers.

## C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Show locations and extent of waterproofing. Include details for substrate joints and cracks, sheet flashings, penetrations, inside and outside corners, tie-ins with adjoining waterproofing, and other termination conditions.
3. Product test reports.

## D. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications: A firm that is approved or licensed by **OR** acceptable to, **as directed**, waterproofing manufacturer for installation of waterproofing required for this Project.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - a. Review waterproofing requirements including surface preparation, substrate condition and pretreatment, minimum curing period, forecasted weather conditions, special details and flashings, installation procedures, testing and inspection procedures, and protection and repairs.

## E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver liquid materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken, labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, shelf life, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
2. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by waterproofing manufacturer.
3. Remove and replace liquid materials that cannot be applied within their stated shelf life.
4. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

## F. Project Conditions

1. Environmental Limitations: Apply waterproofing within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended by waterproofing manufacturer. Do not apply waterproofing to a damp or wet substrate, when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent, or when temperatures are less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above dew point.

## G. Warranty



1. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which waterproofing manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace waterproofing that does not comply with requirements or that fails to remain watertight within specified warranty period.
  - a. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Final Completion.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Single-Component Polyurethane Waterproofing

1. Single-Component, Modified Polyurethane Waterproofing: Comply with ASTM C 836 and with manufacturer's written physical requirements.
2. Single-Component, Reinforced, Modified Polyurethane Waterproofing: Comply with ASTM C 836 and with manufacturer's written physical requirements.
3. Single-Component, Unmodified Polyurethane Waterproofing: Comply with ASTM C 836 and with manufacturer's written physical requirements.

### B. Two-Component Polyurethane Waterproofing

1. Two-Component, Modified Polyurethane Waterproofing: Comply with ASTM C 836 and with manufacturer's written physical requirements.
2. Two-Component, Unmodified Polyurethane Waterproofing: Comply with ASTM C 836 and with manufacturer's written physical requirements.
3. Two-Component, Reinforced, Unmodified Polyurethane Waterproofing: Comply with ASTM C 836 and with manufacturer's written physical requirements.

### C. Polyester Waterproofing

1. Two-Component, Reinforced, Unsaturated Polyester Waterproofing: Comply with ASTM C 836 and with manufacturer's written physical requirements.

### D. Latex-Rubber Waterproofing

1. Two-Component, Unreinforced, Latex-Rubber Waterproofing: Comply with ASTM C 836 and with manufacturer's written physical requirements.
2. Two-Component, Reinforced, Latex-Rubber Waterproofing: Comply with ASTM C 836 and with manufacturer's written physical requirements.

### E. Auxiliary Materials

1. General: Provide auxiliary materials recommended by manufacturer to be compatible with one another and with waterproofing, as demonstrated by waterproofing manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
2. Primer: Manufacturer's standard, factory-formulated polyurethane or epoxy primer.
3. Sheet Flashing: 50-mil- (1.3-mm-) minimum, nonstaining, uncured sheet neoprene.
  - a. Adhesive: Manufacturer's recommended contact adhesive.
4. Membrane-Reinforcing Fabric: Nonwoven, needle-punched white polyester fabric, 6-oz./sq. yd. (200-g/sq. m) **OR** 5-oz./sq. yd. (169-g/sq. m) **OR** 3.2-oz./sq. yd. (109-g/sq. m) **OR** manufacturer's standard, **as directed**, weight.
5. Joint Reinforcing Strip: Manufacturer's recommended fiberglass mesh or polyester fabric.
6. Joint Sealant: Multicomponent polyurethane sealant, compatible with waterproofing, complying with ASTM C 920 Type M, Class 25; Grade NS for sloping and vertical applications or Grade P for deck applications; Use NT exposure; and as recommended by manufacturer for substrate and joint conditions.
  - a. Backer Rod: Closed-cell polyethylene foam.

### F. Protection Course

1. Protection Course: ASTM D 6506, semirigid sheets of fiberglass or mineral-reinforced-asphaltic core, pressure laminated between two asphalt-saturated fibrous liners and as follows:



- a. Thickness: 1/8 inch (3 mm), nominal, for vertical applications; 1/4 inch (6 mm), nominal, elsewhere.
  - b. Adhesive: Rubber-based solvent type recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for type of protection course.
  2. Protection Course: Fan folded, with a core of extruded-polystyrene board insulation faced one or both side(s) with plastic film, nominal thickness of 1/4 inch (6 mm), with compressive strength not less than 8 psi (55 kPa) per ASTM D 1621 and maximum water absorption by volume of 0.6 percent per ASTM C 272.
  3. Protection Course: Unfaced, fan-folded, rigid, extruded-polystyrene board insulation; nominal thickness of 1/4 inch (6 mm) with compressive strength of not less than 8 psi (55 kPa) per ASTM D 1621.
  4. Protection Course: Fan folded, with a core of molded-polystyrene board insulation faced both sides with plastic film, nominal thickness of 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm), **as directed**, with compressive strength not less than 12 psi (83 kPa) per ASTM D 1621 and water absorption by volume of less than 1 percent per ASTM C 272.
  5. Protection Course: Unfaced, extruded-polystyrene board insulation; ASTM C 578, Type X, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
  6. Protection Course: Molded-polystyrene board insulation, ASTM C 578, Type I, 0.90-lb/cu. ft. (15-kg/cu. m) minimum density, 1-inch (25-mm) minimum thickness.
- G. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panels
1. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Comply with Division 33 Section "Subdrainage".
  2. Nonwoven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Manufactured composite subsurface drainage panels consisting of a nonwoven, needle-punched geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding No. 70 (0.21-mm) sieve laminated to one side with or without a polymeric film bonded to the other side of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core, with a vertical flow rate of 9 to 15 gpm per ft. (112 to 188 L/min. per m).
  3. Woven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Manufactured composite subsurface drainage panels consisting of a woven-geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding No. 40 (0.43-mm) sieve, laminated to one side with or without a polymeric film bonded to the other side of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core, with a horizontal flow rate not less than 2.8 gpm per ft. (35 L/min. per m).
- H. Insulation
1. Board Insulation: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, square or shiplap edged.
    - a. Type IV, 25-psi (173-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
    - b. Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
    - c. Type VII, 60-psi (414-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
    - d. Type V, 100-psi (690-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
  2. Unfaced, Wall Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type IV, 25-psi (173-kPa) **OR** Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa), **as directed**, minimum compressive strength; unfaced; fabricated with shiplap or channel edges and with one side having grooved drainage channels.
  3. Geotextile-Faced, Wall Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type IV, 25-psi (173-kPa) **OR** Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa), **as directed**, minimum compressive strength; fabricated with tongue-and-groove edges and with one side having grooved drainage channels faced with a nonwoven-geotextile filter fabric.
  4. Unfaced, Plaza Deck, Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa) **OR** Type VII, 60-psi (414-kPa), **as directed**, minimum compressive strength; unfaced; fabricated with shiplapped or channel edges and with one side having ribbed drainage channels.
  5. Geotextile-Faced, Plaza Deck, Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type VII, 60-psi (414-kPa) minimum compressive strength; fabricated with tongue-and-groove edges and with one side having grooved drainage channels faced with manufacturer's standard, nonwoven-geotextile filter fabric.



- I. Plaza Deck Pavers
  1. Plaza Deck Pavers: Brick **OR** Concrete **OR** Asphalt-block, **as directed**, pavers specified in Division 32 Section "Unit Paving".
  2. Plaza Deck Pavers: Granite **OR** Limestone **OR** Marble **OR** Quartz-based stone **OR** Slate, **as directed**, pavers specified in Division 09 Section "Stone Flooring".
  3. Plaza Deck Pavers: Heavyweight, hydraulically pressed, concrete units, square edged **OR** with top edges beveled 3/16 inch (5 mm), **as directed**, manufactured for use as plaza deck pavers; minimum compressive strength of 7500 psi (52 MPa) **OR** 6500 psi (45 MPa), **as directed**, ASTM C 140; absorption not greater than 5 percent, ASTM C 140; no breakage and maximum 1 percent mass loss when tested for freeze-thaw resistance according to ASTM C 67.
    - a. Thickness: 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) **OR** 1-3/4 inches (45 mm) **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 2-3/8 inches (60 mm), **as directed**.
    - b. Face Size: 8-7/8 inches (225 mm) square **OR** 9 inches (229 mm) square **OR** 9-by-18 inches (229-by-457 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm) square **OR** 12-by-24 inches (305-by-610 mm) **OR** 18 inches (457 mm) square **OR** 24 inches (610 mm) square **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
    - c. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match sample **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  4. Setting Bed: Provide aggregate **OR** mortar **OR** bituminous, **as directed**, setting-bed materials specified in Division 32 Section "Unit Paving".
  5. Paver Pedestals: Paver manufacturer's standard SBR rubber, high-density polyethylene, or polyurethane paver support assembly, including fixed-height **OR** adjustable or stackable, **as directed**, pedestals, shims, and spacer tabs for joint spacing of 1/8 inch (3 mm) **OR** 3/16 inch (5 mm) **OR** 1/8 to 3/16 inch (3 to 5 mm), **as directed**.
    - a. Concrete Fill: ACI 301, compressive strength of 5000 psi (34 MPa) at 28 days and air content of 6 percent.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Surface Preparation
  1. Clean and prepare substrate according to manufacturer's written recommendations. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrate for waterproofing application.
  2. Mask off adjoining surfaces not receiving waterproofing to prevent spillage or overspray affecting other construction.
  3. Close off deck drains and other deck penetrations to prevent spillage and migration of waterproofing fluids.
  4. Remove grease, oil, bitumen, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, acid residues, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.
    - a. Abrasive blast clean concrete surfaces uniformly to expose top surface of fine aggregate according to ASTM D 4259 with a self-contained, recirculating, blast-cleaning apparatus. Remove material to provide a sound surface free of laitance, glaze, efflorescence, curing compounds, concrete hardeners, or form-release agents. Remove remaining loose material and clean surfaces according to ASTM D 4258.
  5. Remove fins, ridges, and other projections and fill honeycomb, aggregate pockets, and other voids.
- B. Preparation At Terminations And Penetrations
  1. Prepare vertical and horizontal surfaces at terminations and penetrations through waterproofing and at expansion joints, drains, and sleeves according to ASTM C 898 **OR** ASTM C 1471, **as directed**, and manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Prime substrate unless otherwise instructed by waterproofing manufacturer.
  3. Apply waterproofing in two separate applications, and embed a joint reinforcing strip in the first preparation coat when recommended by waterproofing manufacturer.





- a. Provide sealant cants around penetrations and at inside corners of deck-to-wall butt joints when recommended by waterproofing manufacturer.
- C. Joint And Crack Treatment
1. Prepare, treat, rout, and fill joints and cracks in substrate according to ASTM C 898 **OR** ASTM C 1471, **as directed**, and waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions. Remove dust and dirt from joints and cracks, complying with ASTM D 4258, before coating surfaces.
    - a. Comply with ASTM C 1193 for joint-sealant installation.
    - b. Apply bond breaker between sealant and preparation strip.
    - c. Prime substrate and apply a single thickness of preparation strip extending a minimum of 3 inches (75 mm) along each side of joint. Apply waterproofing in two separate applications and embed a joint reinforcing strip in the first preparation coat.
  2. Install sheet flashing and bond to deck and wall substrates where indicated or required according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.
    - a. Extend sheet flashings onto perpendicular surfaces and other work penetrating substrate according to ASTM C 898.
- D. Waterproofing Application
1. Apply waterproofing according to ASTM C 898 **OR** ASTM C 1471, **as directed**, and manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Start installing waterproofing in presence of manufacturer's technical representative.
  3. Apply primer over prepared substrate.
  4. Unreinforced Waterproofing Applications: Mix materials and apply waterproofing by spray, roller, notched squeegee, trowel, or other application method suitable to slope of substrate.
    - a. Apply one or more coats of waterproofing to obtain a seamless membrane free of entrapped gases, with an average dry film thickness of 60 mils (1.5 mm) and a minimum dry film thickness of 50 mils (1.3 mm) at any point **OR** 120 mils (3 mm), **as directed**.
    - b. Apply waterproofing to prepared wall terminations and vertical surfaces.
    - c. Verify wet film thickness of waterproofing every 100 sq. ft. (9.3 sq. m).
  5. Reinforced Waterproofing Applications: Mix materials and apply waterproofing by roller, notched squeegee, trowel, or other suitable application method.
    - a. Apply first coat of waterproofing, embed membrane-reinforcing fabric, and apply second coat of waterproofing to completely saturate reinforcing fabric and to obtain a seamless reinforced membrane free of entrapped gases, with an average dry film total thickness of 70 mils (1.8 mm) **OR** 80 mils (2 mm) **OR** 120 mils (3 mm) **as directed**, .
    - b. Apply reinforced waterproofing to prepared wall terminations and vertical surfaces.
    - c. Verify wet film thickness of waterproofing every 100 sq. ft. (9.3 sq. m).
  6. Install protection course with butted joints over nominally cured membrane before starting subsequent construction operations.
    - a. Molded-sheet drainage panels **OR** Insulation drainage panels **OR** Board insulation, **as directed**, may be used in place of a separate protection course to vertical applications when approved by waterproofing manufacturer.
- E. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel Installation
1. Place and secure molded-sheet drainage panels, with geotextile facing away from wall or deck substrate, according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use adhesives or mechanical fasteners that do not penetrate waterproofing. Lap edges and ends of geotextile fabric to maintain continuity. Protect installed molded-sheet drainage panels during subsequent construction.
    - a. For vertical applications, install board insulation **OR** protection course, **as directed**, before installing drainage panels.
- F. Insulation Installation
1. Install one or more layers of board insulation to achieve required thickness **OR** insulation drainage panels, **as directed**, over waterproofed surfaces. Cut and fit to within 3/4 inch (19 mm) of projections and penetrations.



2. On vertical surfaces, set insulation units in adhesive applied according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use type of adhesive recommended in writing by insulation manufacturer.
3. On horizontal surfaces, place insulation units unadhered according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger end joints and tightly abut insulation units.

G. Plaza Deck Paver Installation

1. Setting Bed: Install setting bed in locations and of thickness indicated to comply with requirements in Division 32 Section(s) "Unit Paving" OR Division 09 Section(s) "Stone Flooring", **as directed**.
2. Install concrete pavers, in locations indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Accurately install fixed **OR** adjustable, **as directed**, -height paver pedestals in locations and to elevations required. Adjust for final level and slope with shims.
  - a. Fill paver pedestal with concrete mix, strike smooth with top of pedestal, and cure according to ACI 301.
4. Loosely lay pavers on pedestals, maintaining a uniform open joint width. Tightly seat pavers against spacers to eliminate lateral movement or drift of paving assembly. Align joint patterns parallel in each direction.
  - a. Lay out pavers to avoid less-than-half-width pavers at perimeter or other terminations.
5. Install pavers to not vary more than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) in elevation between adjacent pavers or more than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) from surface plane elevation of individual paver.
6. Maintain tolerances of paving installation within 1/4 inch in 10 feet (1:48) of surface plane in any direction.

H. Field Quality Control

1. Flood Testing: Flood test each deck area for leaks, according to recommendations in ASTM D 5957, after completing waterproofing but before overlaying construction is placed. Install temporary containment assemblies, plug or dam drains, and flood with potable water.
  - a. Flood to an average depth of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) with a minimum depth of 1 inch (25 mm) and not exceeding a depth of 4 inches (100 mm). Maintain 2 inches (50 mm) of clearance from top of sheet flashings.
  - b. Flood each area for 24 **OR** 48 **OR** 72, **as directed**, hours.
  - c. After flood testing, repair leaks, repeat flood tests, and make further repairs until waterproofing installation is watertight.
2. Engage an independent testing agency to observe flood testing and examine underside of decks and terminations for evidence of leaks during flood testing.

I. Curing, Protection, And Cleaning

1. Cure waterproofing according to manufacturer's written recommendations, taking care to prevent contamination and damage during application stages and curing.
  - a. Do not permit foot or vehicular traffic on unprotected membrane.
2. Protect waterproofing from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
3. Protect installed board insulation **OR** insulation drainage panels, **as directed**, from damage due to ultraviolet light, harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Immediately after installation, provide temporary coverings where insulation will be subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction.
4. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 14 16 00



## SECTION 07 16 13 00 - MODIFIED CEMENT WATERPROOFING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for modified cement waterproofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section includes polymer-modified cement waterproofing for positive or negative-side application to concrete, concrete unit masonry, and clay masonry.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions and installation instructions for polymer-modified cement waterproofing.
2. Samples: For each type of polymer-modified cement waterproofing indicated.
3. Qualification Data: For Applicator.
4. Product Certificates: For waterproofing, patching, and plugging materials, from manufacturer.
5. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for each type of polymer-modified cement waterproofing.
6. Field quality-control reports.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Applicator Qualifications: A firm experienced in applying polymer-modified cement waterproofing similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in applications with a record of successful in-service performance, and that employs workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### E. Project Conditions

1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with application only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit polymer-modified cement waterproofing to be performed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Proceed with waterproofing work only after pipe sleeves, vents, curbs, inserts, drains, and other projections through the substrate to be waterproofed have been completed. Proceed only after substrate defects, including honeycombs, voids, and cracks, have been repaired to provide a sound substrate free of forming materials, including reveal inserts.
3. Ambient Conditions: Proceed with waterproofing work only if temperature is maintained at 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) or above during work and cure period, and space is well ventilated and kept free of water.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Field-Mixed, Polymer-Modified Cement Waterproofing

1. Admixture for Field Mixing: Manufacturer's standard polymer admixture for mixing with portland cement and sand to produce a waterproof coating that is suitable for vertical and horizontal applications below or above grade, is breathable, resists positive-side **OR** negative-side, **as directed**, hydrostatic pressure, has VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction, and has properties meeting or exceeding the criteria specified below.



- a. Water Permeability: Maximum zero for water at 30 feet (9 m) when tested according to CE CRD-C 48.
  - b. Compressive Strength: Minimum 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
  - c. Flexural Strength: Minimum 710 psi (4.8 MPa) at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 348.
  - d. Bond Strength: Minimum 220 psi (1.5 MPa) at 14 days when tested according to ASTM C 321.
- B. Prepackaged, Polymer-Modified Cement Waterproofing
1. Negative-Side, Polymer-Modified Cement Waterproofing: Manufacturer's proprietary blend of dry cementitious and other ingredients for mixing with potable water **OR** polymer admixture, **as directed**, to produce a waterproof coating that is suitable for vertical and horizontal applications below or above grade, is breathable, resists negative-side hydrostatic pressure, has VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction, and has properties meeting or exceeding the criteria specified below.
    - a. Water Permeability: Maximum zero for water at 30 feet (9 m) when tested according to CE CRD-C 48.
    - b. Compressive Strength: Minimum 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
    - c. Flexural Strength: Minimum 710 psi (4.8 MPa) at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 348.
    - d. Bond Strength: Minimum 220 psi (1.5 MPa) at 14 days when tested according to ASTM C 321.
    - e. Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** As selected from full range **OR** As indicated in a color schedule, **as directed**.
  2. Positive-Side, Polymer-Modified Cement Waterproofing: Manufacturer's proprietary blend of dry cementitious and other ingredients for mixing with potable water or polymer admixture to produce a waterproof coating that is suitable for vertical and horizontal applications below or above grade, is breathable, resists positive-side hydrostatic pressure, has VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction, and has properties meeting or exceeding the criteria specified below.
    - a. Water Permeability: Maximum zero for water at 30 feet (9 m) when tested according to CE CRD-C 48.
    - b. Compressive Strength: Minimum 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
    - c. Flexural Strength: Minimum 710 psi (4.8 MPa) at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 348.
    - d. Bond Strength: Minimum 220 psi (1.5 MPa) at 14 days when tested according to ASTM C 321.
    - e. Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** As selected from full range **OR** As indicated in a color schedule, **as directed**.
- C. Accessory Materials
1. Patching Compound: Factory-premixed cementitious repair mortar, crack filler, or sealant recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for filling and patching tie holes, honeycombs, reveals, and other imperfections; compatible with substrate and other materials indicated; and VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Plugging Compound: Factory-premixed cementitious compound with hydrophobic properties and recommended by waterproofing manufacturer; resistant to water and moisture but vapor permeable for all standard applications (vertical, overhead, and horizontal surfaces not exposed to vehicular traffic); compatible with substrate and other materials indicated; and VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I.
  4. Slurry-Coat and Protective-Topping Sand: ASTM C 144.



5. Trowel-Coat Sand: ASTM C 33, fine aggregate.
6. Polymer Admixture for Protective Topping: Polymer bonding agent and admixture designed to improve adhesion to prepared substrates and to not create a vapor barrier.
7. Water: Potable.

D. Mixes

1. Field-Mixed, Polymer-Modified Cement Waterproofing: Add polymer admixture to portland cement and sand according to manufacturer's written instructions. Blend together with mechanical mixer or by hand to required consistency.  
**OR**  
Prepackaged, Polymer-Modified Cement Waterproofing: Add prepackaged dry ingredients to mixing liquid according to manufacturer's written instructions. Mix together with mechanical mixer or by hand to required consistency.
2. Protective Topping: Measure, batch, and mix portland cement and sand in the proportion of 1:3 and water gaged with a polymer admixture. Blend together with mechanical mixer to required consistency.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination

1. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for suitable conditions where waterproofing is to be applied.
2. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
3. Notify the Owner in writing of active leaks or defects that would affect system performance.

B. Preparation

1. Protect other work from damage caused by cleaning, preparation, and application of waterproofing. Provide temporary enclosure to confine spraying operation and to ensure adequate ambient temperatures and ventilation conditions for application.
2. Do not allow waterproofing, patching, and plugging materials to enter reveals or annular spaces intended for resilient sealants or gaskets, such as joint spaces between pipes and pipe sleeves.
3. Stop active water leaks with plugging compound according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Repair damaged or unsatisfactory substrate with patching compound according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. At holes and cracks in substrate, remove loosened chips and cut reveal with sides perpendicular to surface, not tapered, and approximately 1 inch (25.4 mm) deep. Fill reveal with patching compound flush with surface.
5. Surface Preparation: Comply with waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions to remove efflorescence, chalk, dust, dirt, mortar spatter, grease, oils, paint, curing compounds, and form-release agents to ensure that waterproofing bonds to surfaces.
  - a. Clean concrete surfaces according to ASTM D 4258.
    - 1) Scratch- and Float-Finished Concrete: Etch with 10 percent muriatic (hydrochloric) acid solution according to ASTM D 4260.
    - 2) Prepare smooth-formed and trowel-finished concrete by mechanical abrading or abrasive-blast cleaning according to ASTM D 4259.
  - b. Clean concrete unit masonry surfaces according to ASTM D 4261.
    - 1) Lightweight Concrete Unit Masonry: Etch with 10 percent muriatic (hydrochloric) acid solution or abrade surface by wire brushing. Remove acid residue until pH readings of water after rinse are not more than 1.0 pH lower or 2.0 pH higher than pH of water before rinse.
    - 2) Medium- and Normal-Weight Concrete Unit Masonry: Sandblast or bushhammer to a depth of 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
  - c. Clean clay masonry surfaces according to ASTM D 5703.



- d. Concrete Joints: Clean reveals according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Application

1. General: Comply with waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions for application and curing.
  - a. Saturate surface with water for several hours prior to application with water and maintain damp condition until applying waterproofing. Remove standing water.
  - b. Apply waterproofing to surfaces indicated on Drawings.
  - c. Number of Coats: Number required for specified water permeability **OR** Two **OR** Three, **as directed**.
    - 1) Coating Thickness: Maximum application thickness of 47 mils (1.2 mm) per coat for total thickness as required for specified water permeability **OR** of 100 mils (2.5 mm), **as directed**.
    - 2) Apply first coat as a slurry with brush or roller, and apply subsequent coats with brush, roller, spray, or trowel.
    - 3) Vigorously work first coat onto the substrate, forcing the material into surface voids. Apply each subsequent coat into full contact with previous coat.
    - 4) Allow manufacturer's recommended time between coats. Dampen surface between coats.
2. Final Coat Finish: Smooth troweled **OR** Brushed **OR** Textured, **as directed**.
3. Curing: Air-cure waterproofing for not less than five days immediately after application and prior to being placed in service.
4. Curing: Moist-cure waterproofing for not less than three days immediately after application has set, followed by air drying prior to being placed in service unless otherwise recommended in writing by manufacturer.
5. Waterproofing Treatment Extensions: Extend waterproofing treatment as follows:
  - a. Onto columns integral with treated walls.
  - b. Onto interior nontreated walls intersecting exterior treated walls, for a distance of 24 inches (600 mm) for cast-in-place concrete and 48 inches (1200 mm) for masonry.
  - c. Onto exterior walls and onto both exterior and interior columns, for a height of 12 inches (300 mm), where floors, but not walls, are treated.
  - d. Onto every substrate in areas indicated for treatment, including pipe trenches, pipe chases, pits, sumps, and similar offsets and features.
6. Protective Floor Topping: Apply 1-inch- (25.4-mm-) thick, protective topping over floor surfaces.

D. Field Quality Control

1. Inspection: Engage manufacturer's representative to inspect completed application and provide a written report that application complies with manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 07 16 13 00



## SECTION 07 16 16 00 - CRYSTALLINE WATERPROOFING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for crystalline waterproofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section includes crystalline waterproofing for positive or negative-side application to concrete and concrete unit masonry.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions and installation instructions for crystalline waterproofing.
2. Qualification Data: For Applicator.
3. Product Certificates: For waterproofing, patching, and plugging materials, from manufacturer.
4. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for crystalline waterproofing.
5. Field quality-control reports.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Applicator Qualifications: A firm experienced in applying crystalline waterproofing similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in applications with a record of successful in-service performance, and that employs workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### E. Project Conditions

1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with application only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit crystalline waterproofing to be performed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Proceed with waterproofing work only after pipe sleeves, vents, curbs, inserts, drains, and other projections through the substrate to be waterproofed have been completed. Proceed only after substrate defects, including honeycombs, voids, and cracks, have been repaired to provide a sound substrate free of forming materials, including reveal inserts.
3. Ambient Conditions: Proceed with waterproofing work only if temperature is maintained at 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) or above during work and cure period, and space is well ventilated and kept free of water.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Waterproofing Materials

1. Crystalline Waterproofing: Prepackaged, gray-colored **OR** white-colored, **as directed**, proprietary blend of portland cement, specially treated sand, and active chemicals that, when mixed with water and applied, penetrates into concrete and concrete unit masonry and reacts chemically with the byproducts of cement hydration in the presence of water to develop crystalline growth within substrate capillaries to produce an impervious, dense, waterproof substrate; that has VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction; with properties meeting or exceeding the criteria specified below.



- a. Water Permeability: Maximum zero for water at 30 feet (9 m) when tested according to CE CRD-C 48.
- b. Compressive Strength: Minimum 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.

#### B. Accessory Materials

1. Patching Compound: Factory-premixed cementitious repair mortar, crack filler, or sealant recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for filling and patching tie holes, honeycombs, reveals, and other imperfections; compatible with substrate and other materials indicated; and VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Plugging Compound: Factory-premixed cementitious compound with hydrophobic properties and recommended by waterproofing manufacturer; resistant to water and moisture but vapor permeable for all standard applications (vertical, overhead, and horizontal surfaces not exposed to vehicular traffic); compatible with substrate and other materials indicated; and VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I.
4. Sand: ASTM C 144.
5. Polymer Admixture for Protective Topping: Polymer bonding agent and admixture designed to improve adhesion to prepared substrates and not to create a vapor barrier.
6. Water: Potable.

#### C. Mixes

1. Crystalline Waterproofing: Add prepackaged dry ingredients to water according to manufacturer's written instructions. Mix together with mechanical mixer or by hand to required consistency.
2. Protective Topping: Measure, batch, and mix portland cement and sand in the proportion of 1:3 and water gaged with a polymer admixture. Blend together with mechanical mixer to required consistency.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

1. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for suitable conditions where waterproofing is to be applied.
2. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
3. Notify the Owner in writing of active leaks or defects that would affect system performance.

#### B. Preparation

1. Protect other work from damage caused by cleaning, preparation, and application of waterproofing. Provide temporary enclosure to confine spraying operation and to ensure adequate ambient temperatures and ventilation conditions for application.
2. Do not allow waterproofing, patching, and plugging materials to enter reveals or annular spaces intended for resilient sealants or gaskets, such as joint spaces between pipes and pipe sleeves.
3. Stop active water leaks with plugging compound according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Repair damaged or unsatisfactory substrate with patching compound according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. At holes and cracks in substrate, remove loosened chips and cut reveal with sides perpendicular to surface, not tapered, and approximately 1 inch (25.4 mm) deep. Fill reveal with patching compound flush with surface.
5. Surface Preparation: Comply with waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions to remove efflorescence, chalk, dust, dirt, mortar spatter, grease, oils, paint, curing compounds, and form-release agents to ensure that waterproofing bonds to surfaces.
  - a. Clean concrete surfaces according to ASTM D 4258.





- 1) Scratch- and Float-Finished Concrete: Etch with 10 percent muriatic (hydrochloric) acid solution according to ASTM D 4260.
- 2) Prepare smooth-formed and trowel-finished concrete by mechanical abrading or abrasive-blast cleaning according to ASTM D 4259.
- b. Clean concrete unit masonry surfaces according to ASTM D 4261.
  - 1) Lightweight Concrete Unit Masonry: Etch with 10 percent muriatic (hydrochloric) acid solution or abrade surface by wire brushing. Remove acid residue until pH readings of water after rinse are not more than 1.0 pH lower or 2.0 pH higher than pH of water before rinse.
  - 2) Medium- and Normal-Weight Concrete Unit Masonry: Sandblast or bushhammer to a depth of 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
- c. Concrete Joints: Clean reveals according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.

#### C. Application

1. General: Comply with waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions for application and curing.
  - a. Saturate surface with water for several hours prior to application and maintain damp condition until applying waterproofing. Remove standing water.
  - b. Apply waterproofing to surfaces indicated on Drawings.
  - c. Number of Coats: Number required for specified water permeability **OR Two OR Three, as directed.**
  - d. Application Method: Brush **OR Spray, as directed.** Apply to ensure that each coat fills voids and is in full contact with substrate or previous coat.
  - e. Dampen surface between coats.
2. Final Coat Finish: Smooth **OR Brushed OR Spray Textured, as directed.**
3. Curing: Moist-cure waterproofing for three, **as directed,** days immediately after final coat has set, followed by air drying, unless otherwise recommended in writing by manufacturer.
4. Waterproofing Treatment Extensions: Extend waterproofing treatment as follows:
  - a. Onto columns integral with treated walls.
    - 1) Onto interior nontreated walls intersecting exterior treated walls, for a distance of 24 inches (600 mm) for cast-in-place concrete and 48 inches (1200 mm) for masonry.
    - 2) Onto exterior walls and onto both exterior and interior columns, for a height of 12 inches (300 mm), where floors, but not walls, are treated.
    - 3) Onto every substrate in areas indicated for treatment, including pipe trenches, pipe chases, pits, sumps, and similar offsets and features.
5. Protective Topping: Apply 1-inch- (25.4-mm-) thick, protective topping over floor surfaces.

#### D. Field Quality Control

1. Inspection: Engage manufacturer's representative to inspect completed application and provide a written report that application complies with manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 07 16 16 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 07 16 19 00 - METAL-OXIDE WATERPROOFING****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work:**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for metal-oxide waterproofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Summary**

1. Section includes metal-oxide waterproofing for positive or negative-side application to concrete, concrete unit masonry, and clay masonry.

**C. Submittals**

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions and installation instructions for metal-oxide waterproofing.
2. Qualification Data: For Applicator.
3. Product Certificates: For waterproofing, patching, and plugging materials, from manufacturer.
4. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for metal-oxide waterproofing.
5. Field quality-control reports.

**D. Quality Assurance**

1. Applicator Qualifications: A firm experienced in applying metal-oxide waterproofing similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in applications with a record of successful in-service performance, and that employs workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

**E. Project Conditions**

1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with application only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit metal-oxide waterproofing to be performed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Proceed with waterproofing work only after pipe sleeves, vents, curbs, inserts, drains, and other projections through the substrate to be waterproofed have been completed. Proceed only after substrate defects, including honeycombs, voids, and cracks, have been repaired to provide a sound substrate free of forming materials, including reveal inserts.
3. Ambient Conditions: Proceed with waterproofing work only if temperature is maintained at 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) or above during work and cure period, and space is well ventilated and kept free of water.

**1.2 PRODUCTS****A. Waterproofing Materials**

1. Metal-Oxide Waterproofing Compound: A product specifically formulated for waterproofing concrete and masonry substrates; containing pulverized iron and a chemical oxidizing agent to cause the iron particles to rust and grow in size in the presence of water; with VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction.

**B. Accessory Materials**

1. Patching Compound: Factory-premixed cementitious repair mortar, crack filler, or sealant recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for filling and patching tie holes, honeycombs,



reveals, and other imperfections; compatible with substrate and other materials indicated; and VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Plugging Compound: Factory-premixed cementitious compound with hydrophobic properties and recommended by waterproofing manufacturer; resistant to water and moisture but vapor permeable for all standard applications (vertical, overhead, and horizontal surfaces not exposed to vehicular traffic); compatible with substrate and other materials indicated; and VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I.
4. Sand: ASTM C 144.
5. Water: Potable.

#### C. Mixes

1. Metal-Oxide Coats: Add metal-oxide waterproofing compound to portland cement, sand, and water according to manufacturer's written instructions. Blend together with mechanical mixer or by hand to required consistency for each coat.
2. Protection Coat: Field mix protection coat consisting of portland cement and sand as recommended by same manufacturer as metal-oxide waterproofing according to manufacturer's written instructions for application over waterproofing. Measure, batch, and mix materials with potable water. Blend together with mechanical mixer to required consistency.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

1. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for suitable conditions where waterproofing is to be applied.
2. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
3. Notify the Owner in writing of active leaks or defects that would affect system performance.

#### B. Preparation

1. Protect other work from damage caused by cleaning, preparation, and application of waterproofing. Provide temporary enclosure to confine spraying operation and to ensure adequate ambient temperatures and ventilation conditions for application.
2. Do not allow waterproofing, patching, and plugging materials to enter reveals or annular spaces intended for resilient sealants or gaskets, such as joint spaces between pipes and pipe sleeves.
3. Stop active water leaks with plugging compound according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Repair damaged or unsatisfactory substrate with patching compound according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. At holes and cracks in substrate, remove loosened chips and cut reveal with sides perpendicular to surface, not tapered, and approximately 1 inch (25.4 mm) deep. Fill reveal with patching compound flush with surface.
5. Surface Preparation: Comply with waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions to remove efflorescence, chalk, dust, dirt, mortar spatter, grease, oils, paint, curing compounds, and form-release agents to ensure that waterproofing bonds to surfaces.
  - a. Clean concrete surfaces according to ASTM D 4258.
    - 1) Scratch- and Float-Finished Concrete: Etch with 10 percent muriatic (hydrochloric) acid solution according to ASTM D 4260.
    - 2) Prepare smooth-formed and trowel-finished concrete by mechanical abrading or abrasive-blast cleaning according to ASTM D 4259.
  - b. Clean concrete unit masonry surfaces according to ASTM D 4261.
    - 1) Lightweight Concrete Unit Masonry: Etch with 10 percent muriatic (hydrochloric) acid solution or abrade surface by wire brushing. Remove acid residue until pH readings of water after rinse are not more than 1.0 pH lower or 2.0 pH higher than pH of water before rinse.



- 2) Medium- and Normal-Weight Concrete Unit Masonry: Sandblast or bushhammer to a depth of 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
- c. Clean clay masonry surfaces according to ASTM D 5703.
- d. Concrete Joints: Clean reveals according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Application

1. General: Comply with waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions for application and curing.
  - a. Saturate surface for several hours prior to application with water and maintain damp condition until applying waterproofing. Remove standing water.
  - b. Apply waterproofing to surfaces indicated on Drawings.
  - c. Number of Metal-Oxide Coats: Number required for specified water permeability **OR Two OR Three, as directed.**
  - d. Application Method: Brush apply the waterproofing, vigorously working first coat onto the substrate and forcing the material into surface voids. Brush each subsequent coat into full contact with previous coat.
  - e. Dampen surface between coats.
  - f. Allow each coat to set for 24 hours between coats.
  - g. Protection Coat: Apply to a thickness of 1/8 inch (3 mm) **OR 1/4 inch (6 mm), as directed,** for walls and 1 inch (25 mm) for floors.
2. Final Coat Finish: Smooth **OR Brushed OR Textured, as directed.**
3. Curing: Moist-cure waterproofing for three days immediately after final coat has set, followed by air drying prior to being placed in service, unless otherwise recommended in writing by manufacturer.
4. Waterproofing Treatment Extensions: Extend waterproofing treatment as follows:
  - a. Onto columns integral with treated walls.
  - b. Onto interior nontreated walls intersecting exterior treated walls, for a distance of 24 inches (600 mm) for cast-in-place concrete and 48 inches (1200 mm) for masonry.
  - c. Onto exterior walls and onto both exterior and interior columns, for a height of 12 inches (300 mm), where floors, but not walls, are treated.
  - d. Onto every substrate in areas indicated for treatment, including pipe trenches, pipe chases, pits, sumps, and similar offsets and features.

D. Field Quality Control

1. Inspection: Engage manufacturer's representative to inspect completed application and provide a written report that application complies with manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 07 16 19 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 07 19 13 00 - WATER REPELLENTS**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for water repellents. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. This Section includes penetrating and film-forming water-repellent coatings for the following vertical and horizontal surfaces:
  - a. Concrete (unpainted).
  - b. Cast stone.
  - c. Brick masonry.
  - d. Concrete unit masonry (unpainted and unglazed).
  - e. Portland cement plaster (stucco).
  - f. Stonework.

## C. Performance Requirements

1. Performance Testing: Provide water repellents that comply with test-performance requirements indicated, as evidenced by reports of tests performed by manufacturer **OR** based on Project-specific preconstruction testing, **as directed**, by a qualified independent testing agency on manufacturer's standard products applied to substrates simulating those on Project using same application methods to be used for Project.
  - a. Engage testing agency to perform preconstruction tests on laboratory mockups.
  - b. Select sizes and configurations of assemblies to adequately demonstrate capability of water repellents to comply with performance requirements.
  - c. Notify the Owner seven days in advance of the dates and times when assemblies will be constructed.
2. Absorption: Minimum 80 **OR** 90, **as directed**, percent reduction of absorption after 24 hours in comparison of treated and untreated specimens.
  - a. Brick: ASTM C 67.
  - b. Stone: ASTM C 97.
  - c. Concrete Unit Masonry: ASTM C 140.
  - d. Hardened Concrete: ASTM C 642.
3. Water-Vapor Transmission: Maximum 10 percent reduction in rate of vapor transmission in comparison of treated and untreated specimens, per ASTM E 96.
4. Permeability: Minimum 80 percent water-vapor transmission in comparison of treated and untreated specimens, per ASTM D 1653.
5. Water Penetration and Leakage through Masonry: Maximum 90 percent reduction in leakage rate in comparison of treated and untreated specimens, per ASTM E 514.
6. Durability: Maximum 5 percent loss of water repellency after 2500 hours of weathering in comparison to specimens before weathering, per ASTM G 154.
  - a. Reduction of Water Absorption: 80 percent.
  - b. Reduction in Chloride Content: 80 percent.

## D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Product test reports.

## E. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.



F. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer and Applicator agree(s) to repair or replace materials that fail to maintain water repellency specified in Part 1.1 "Performance Requirements" Article within specified warranty period.
  - a. Warranty Period: Two **OR** Five, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Penetrating Water Repellents

1. Silane, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, monomeric compound containing 20 percent or more solids of alkyltrialkoxysilanes; with alcohol, mineral spirits, water, or other proprietary solvent carrier; and with 3.3 lb/gal. (400 g/L) or less of VOCs.
2. Silane, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, monomeric compound containing 20 percent or more solids of alkyltrialkoxysilanes; with alcohol, mineral spirits, water, or other proprietary solvent carrier; and with 5 lb/gal. (600 g/L) or less of VOCs.
3. Silane, Penetrating Water Repellent: Pigmented, monomeric compound containing 20 percent or more solids of alkyltrialkoxysilanes; with alcohol, mineral spirits, water, or other proprietary solvent carrier; and with 5 lb/gal. (600 g/L) or less of VOCs.
4. Silane, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, monomeric compound containing 20 percent or more solids of alkyltrialkoxysilanes; with alcohol, mineral spirits, water, or other proprietary solvent carrier; and with more than 5 lb/gal. (600 g/L) of VOCs.
5. Siloxane, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, oligomeric alkylalkoxysiloxanes containing 10 percent or more solids; with alcohol, ethanol, mineral spirits, water, or other proprietary solvent carrier; and with 3.3 lb/gal. (400 g/L) or less of VOCs.
6. Siloxane, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, oligomeric alkylalkoxysiloxanes containing 10 percent or more solids; with alcohol, ethanol, mineral spirits, water, or other proprietary solvent carrier; and with 5 lb/gal. (600 g/L) or less of VOCs.
7. Siloxane, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, oligomeric alkylalkoxysiloxanes containing 10 percent or more solids; with alcohol, ethanol, mineral spirits, water, or other proprietary solvent carrier; and with more than 5 lb/gal. (600 g/L) of VOCs.
8. Silane/Siloxane-Blend, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, silane and siloxane blends with 3.3 lb/gal. (400 g/L) or less of VOCs.
9. Silane/Siloxane-Blend, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, silane and siloxane blends with 5 lb/gal. (600 g/L) or less of VOCs.
10. Proprietary-Blend, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, consisting of 1 or several different resins (silanes or siloxanes), polymers, stearates, or oils plus other compounds or products of components; and with 3.3 lb/gal. (400 g/L) or less of VOCs.
11. Proprietary-Blend, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, consisting of 1 or several different resins (silanes or siloxanes), polymers, stearates, or oils plus other compounds or products of components; and with 5 lb/gal. (600 g/L) or less of VOCs.

B. Film-Forming Water Repellents

1. Silicone Sealer, Film-Forming Water Repellent: Clear, polymerized, silicone-resin water repellent for dense substrates; with a solvent- or water-based solution containing not less than 3 and up to 5 percent solids by weight; and with 3.3 lb/gal. (400 g/L) or less of VOCs.
2. Silicone-Sealer, Film-Forming Water Repellent: Clear, polymerized, silicone-resin water repellent for dense substrates; with a solvent- or water-based solution containing not less than 3 and up to 5 percent solids by weight; and with 5 lb/gal. (600 g/L) or less of VOCs.
3. Proprietary-Blend, Film-Forming Water Repellent: Clear, consisting of 1 or several different resins, acrylics, polymers, stearates, or oils plus other compounds or products of components; and with 3.3 lb/gal. (400 g/L) or less of VOCs.
4. Proprietary-Blend, Film-Forming Water Repellent: Clear, consisting of 1 or several different resins, acrylics, polymers, stearates, or oils plus other compounds or products of components; and with 5 lb/gal. (600 g/L) or less of VOCs.





5. Siliconate, Film-Forming Water Repellent: Clear, with 3.3 lb/gal. (400 g/L) or less of VOCs.
6. Acrylic, Film-Forming Water Repellent: Clear **OR** Pigmented, **as directed**, breathing coating of acrylic resins; with a water-based, solvent-based, or acrylic emulsion solution containing less than 15 percent solids by volume; and with 3.3 lb/gal. (400 g/L) or less of VOCs.
  - a. Colors: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
7. Acrylic, Film-Forming Water Repellent: Pigmented, with 5 lb/gal. (600 g/L) or less of VOCs.
  - a. Colors: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Preparation

1. Clean substrate of substances that might interfere with penetration or performance of water repellents. Test for moisture content, according to water-repellent manufacturer's written instructions, to ensure that surface is dry enough.
  - a. Cast-in-Place Concrete: Remove oil, curing compounds, laitance, and other substances that could prevent adhesion or penetration of water repellents.
  - b. Clay Brick Masonry: Clean clay brick masonry per ASTM D 5703.
2. Test for pH level, according to water-repellent manufacturer's written instructions, to ensure chemical bond to silicate minerals.
3. Protect adjoining work, including sealant bond surfaces, from spillage or blow-over of water repellent. Cover adjoining and nearby surfaces of aluminum and glass if there is the possibility of water repellent being deposited on surfaces. Cover live plants and grass.
4. Coordination with Sealants: Do not apply water repellent until sealants for joints adjacent to surfaces receiving water-repellent treatment have been installed and cured.
  - a. Water-repellent work may precede sealant application only if sealant adhesion and compatibility have been tested and verified using substrate, water repellent, and sealant materials identical to those used in the work.
5. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### B. Application

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect the substrate before application of water repellent and to instruct Applicator on the product and application method to be used.
2. Apply a heavy-saturation spray coating of water repellent on surfaces indicated for treatment using low-pressure spray equipment. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for using airless spraying procedure, unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Precast Concrete: At Contractor's option, first application of water repellent on precast concrete units may be completed before installing units. Mask sealant-bond surfaces to prevent water repellent from migrating onto joint surfaces.
3. Apply a second saturation spray coating, as directed, repeating first application. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for limitations on drying time between coats and after rainstorm wetting of surfaces between coats. Consult manufacturer's technical representative if written instructions are not applicable to Project conditions.

#### C. Cleaning

1. Immediately clean water repellent from adjoining surfaces and surfaces soiled or damaged by water-repellent application as work progresses. Repair damage caused by water-repellent application. Comply with manufacturer's written cleaning instructions.

END OF SECTION 07 19 13 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
07 19 16 00	07 19 13 00	Water Repellents

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 09 91 13 00 - EXTERIOR PAINTING**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for exterior painting. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. This Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on the following exterior substrates:
  - a. Concrete.
  - b. Clay masonry.
  - c. Concrete masonry units (CMU).
  - d. Steel.
  - e. Galvanized metal.
  - f. Aluminum (not anodized or otherwise coated).
  - g. Wood.
  - h. Plastic trim fabrications.
  - i. Exterior portland cement (stucco).
  - j. Exterior gypsum board.

## C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Samples: For each finish and for each color and texture required.
3. Product List: Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified in Part 1.2, with the proposed product highlighted.

## D. Quality Assurance

1. MPI Standards:
  - a. Products: Complying with MPI standards indicated and listed in "MPI Approved Products List."
  - b. Preparation and Workmanship: Comply with requirements in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" for products and paint systems indicated. For renovation projects, comply with requirements of "MPI Maintenance Repainting Manual" for products and paint systems indicated.
2. Mockups: Apply mockups of each paint system indicated and each color and finish selected to verify preliminary selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
  - a. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each paint system specified in Part 3.
    - 1) Vertical and Horizontal Surfaces: Provide samples of at least 100 sq. ft. (9 sq. m).
    - 2) Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.
  - b. Final approval of color selections will be based on mockups.
    - 1) If preliminary color selections are not approved, apply additional mockups of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.
  - c. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - d. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.



- E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
  - 1. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F (7 deg C).
    - a. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
    - b. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.
- F. Project Conditions
  - 1. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F (10 and 35 deg C).
  - 2. Do not apply paints in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

- A. Paint, General
  - 1. Material Compatibility:
    - a. Provide materials for use within each paint system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
    - b. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by manufacturers of topcoat for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
  - 2. Colors: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Block Fillers
  - 1. Interior/Exterior Latex Block Filler: MPI #4.
    - a. VOC Content: E Range of E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
- C. Primers/Sealers
  - 1. Alkali-Resistant Primer: MPI #3.
    - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
  - 2. Bonding Primer (Water Based): MPI #17.
    - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
  - 3. Bonding Primer (Solvent Based): MPI #69.
    - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
  - 4. Wood-Knot Sealer: Sealer recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer for use in paint system indicated.
- D. Metal Primers
  - 1. Alkyd Anticorrosive Metal Primer: MPI #79.
    - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2, **as directed**.
  - 2. Quick-Drying Alkyd Metal Primer: MPI #76.
    - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
  - 3. Cementitious Galvanized-Metal Primer: MPI #26.
    - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1.
  - 4. Waterborne Galvanized-Metal Primer: MPI #134.
    - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
    - b. Environmental Performance Rating: EPR 1 **OR** EPR 2 **OR** EPR 3, **as directed**.
  - 5. Quick-Drying Primer for Aluminum: MPI #95.
    - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
- E. Wood Primers
  - 1. Exterior Latex Wood Primer: MPI #6.
    - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
  - 2. Exterior Alkyd Wood Primer: MPI #5.



- a. VOC Content: E Range of E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
  3. Exterior Oil Wood Primer: MPI #7.
    - a. VOC Content: E Range of E2.
  - F. Exterior Latex Paints
    1. Exterior Latex (Flat): MPI #10 (Gloss Level 1).
      - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
    2. Exterior Latex (Semigloss): MPI #11 (Gloss Level 5).
      - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
    3. Exterior Latex (Gloss): MPI #119 (Gloss Level 6, except minimum gloss of 65 units at 60 deg).
      - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
  - G. Exterior Alkyd Paints
    1. Exterior Alkyd Enamel (Flat): MPI #8 (Gloss Level 1).
      - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1.
    2. Exterior Alkyd Enamel (Semigloss): MPI #94 (Gloss Level 5).
      - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2, **as directed**.
    3. Exterior Alkyd Enamel (Gloss): MPI #9 (Gloss Level 6).
      - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2, **as directed**.
  - H. Quick-Drying Enamels
    1. Quick-Drying Enamel (Semigloss): MPI #81 (Gloss Level 5).
      - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
    2. Quick-Drying Enamel (High Gloss): MPI #96 (Gloss Level 7).
      - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
  - I. Textured And High-Build Coatings
    1. Latex Stucco and Masonry Textured Coating: MPI #42.
      - a. VOC Content: E Range of E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
    2. High-Build Latex (Exterior): MPI #40.
      - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
  - J. Aluminum Paint
    1. Aluminum Paint: MPI #1.
      - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
  - K. Floor Coatings
    1. Interior/Exterior Clear Concrete Floor Sealer (Water Based): MPI #99.
      - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
    2. Interior/Exterior Clear Concrete Floor Sealer (Solvent Based): MPI #104.
      - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2, **as directed**.
    3. Interior/Exterior Latex Floor and Porch Paint (Low Gloss): MPI #60 (maximum Gloss Level 3).
      - a. VOC Content: E Range of E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
      - b. Environmental Performance Rating: EPR 3.
    4. Exterior/Interior Alkyd Floor Enamel (Gloss): MPI #27 (Gloss Level 6).
      - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2, **as directed**.
      - b. Additives: Manufacturer's standard additive to increase skid resistance of painted surface.
- ### 1.3 EXECUTION
- A. Examination
    1. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of work.
    2. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:



- a. Concrete: 12 percent.
  - b. Masonry (Clay and CMU): 12 percent.
  - c. Wood: 15 percent.
  - d. Plaster: 12 percent.
  - e. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
3. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.
  4. Begin coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and surfaces are dry.
    - a. Beginning coating application constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.
- B. Preparation And Application
1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
  2. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
    - a. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers as required to produce paint systems indicated.
  3. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
  4. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
  5. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.
- C. Exterior Painting Schedule
1. Paint systems herein are based on "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" (hereafter, "MPI Manual"). For renovation projects, consult "MPI Maintenance Repainting Manual" and revise paint systems accordingly.
  2. For a Premium Grade system, "MPI Manual" requires intermediate coat; if Custom Grade system is required or if so directed, delete intermediate coat, **unless directed otherwise** or as otherwise required by manufacturer's recommendations.
  3. Concrete Substrates, Nontraffic Surfaces:
    - a. Latex System: MPI EXT 3.1A.
      - 1) Prime Coat: Exterior latex matching topcoat.
      - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior latex matching topcoat.
      - 3) Topcoat: Exterior latex (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
    - b. Latex Aggregate/Latex System: MPI EXT 3.1 B.
      - 1) Prime Coat: Latex stucco and masonry textured coating.
      - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior latex matching topcoat.
      - 3) Topcoat: Exterior latex (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
    - c. Latex Over Alkali-Resistant Primer System: MPI EXT 3.1K.
      - 1) Prime Coat: Alkali-resistant primer.
      - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior latex matching topcoat.
      - 3) Topcoat: Exterior latex (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
    - d. High-Build Latex System: MPI EXT 3.1L, applied to form dry film thickness of not less than 10 mils (0.25 mm).
      - 1) Prime Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
      - 2) Intermediate Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
      - 3) Topcoat: High-build latex (exterior).
    - e. Latex Aggregate System: MPI EXT 3.1N.
      - 1) Prime Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.





- 2) Intermediate Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
  - 3) Topcoat: Latex stucco and masonry textured coating.
4. Concrete Substrates, Traffic Surfaces:
    - a. Latex Floor Paint System: MPI EXT 3.2A.
      - 1) Prime Coat: Interior/exterior latex floor and porch paint (low gloss).
      - 2) Intermediate Coat: Interior/exterior latex floor and porch paint (low gloss).
      - 3) Topcoat: Interior/exterior latex floor and porch paint (low gloss).
    - b. Alkyd Floor Enamel System: MPI EXT 3.2D.
      - 1) Prime Coat: Exterior/interior alkyd floor enamel (gloss).
      - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior/interior alkyd floor enamel (gloss).
      - 3) Topcoat: Exterior/interior alkyd floor enamel (gloss).
    - c. Clear Sealer System: MPI EXT 3.2G.
      - 1) Prime Coat: Interior/exterior clear concrete floor sealer (solvent based).
      - 2) Intermediate Coat: Interior/exterior clear concrete floor sealer (solvent based).
      - 3) Topcoat: Interior/exterior clear concrete floor sealer (solvent based).
    - d. Water-Based Clear Sealer System: MPI EXT 3.2H.
      - 1) Prime Coat: Interior/exterior clear concrete floor sealer (water based).
      - 2) Intermediate Coat: Interior/exterior clear concrete floor sealer (water based).
      - 3) Topcoat: Interior/exterior clear concrete floor sealer (water based).
  5. Clay-Masonry Substrates:
    - a. Latex System: MPI EXT 4.1A.
      - 1) Prime Coat: Exterior latex matching topcoat.
      - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior latex matching topcoat.
      - 3) Topcoat: Exterior latex (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
    - b. High-Build Latex System: MPI EXT 4.1H, applied to form dry film thickness of not less than 10 mils (0.25 mm).
      - 1) Prime Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
      - 2) Intermediate Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
      - 3) Topcoat: High-build latex (exterior).
    - c. Latex Aggregate System: MPI EXT 4.1B.
      - 1) Prime Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
      - 2) Intermediate Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
      - 3) Topcoat: Latex stucco and masonry textured coating.
  6. CMU Substrates:
    - a. Latex System: MPI EXT 4.2A.
      - 1) Prime Coat: Interior/exterior latex block filler.
      - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior latex matching topcoat.
      - 3) Topcoat: Exterior latex (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
    - b. Latex Over Alkali-Resistant Primer System: MPI EXT 4.2L.
      - 1) Prime Coat: Alkali-resistant primer.
      - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior latex matching topcoat.
      - 3) Topcoat: Exterior latex (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
    - c. High-Build Latex System: MPI EXT 4.2K, applied to form dry film thickness of not less than 10 mils (0.25 mm).
      - 1) Prime Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
      - 2) Intermediate Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
      - 3) Topcoat: High-build latex (exterior).
    - d. Latex Aggregate System: MPI EXT 4.2B.
      - 1) Prime Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
      - 2) Intermediate Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
      - 3) Topcoat: Latex stucco and masonry textured coating.
  7. Steel Substrates:
    - a. Quick-Drying Enamel System: MPI EXT 5.1A.
      - 1) Prime Coat: Quick-drying alkyd metal primer.
      - 2) Intermediate Coat: Quick-drying enamel matching topcoat.
      - 3) Topcoat: Quick-drying enamel (semigloss) **OR** (high gloss), **as directed**.



- b. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.1D.
  - 1) Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
  - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
  - 3) Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
- c. Aluminum Paint System: MPI EXT 5.1K.
  - 1) Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
  - 2) Intermediate Coat: Aluminum paint.
  - 3) Topcoat: Aluminum paint.
- 8. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Galvanized-metal substrates should not be chromate passivated (commercially known as "bonderized") if primer is field applied. If galvanized metal is chromate passivated, consult manufacturers for appropriate surface preparation and primers.
  - a. Latex System: MPI EXT 5.3A.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Cementitious galvanized-metal primer.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior latex matching topcoat.
    - 3) Topcoat: Exterior latex (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
  - b. Latex Over Water-Based Primer System: MPI EXT 5.3H. "MPI Manual" recommends latex over water-based primer system for low-contact/traffic areas.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Waterborne galvanized-metal primer.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior latex matching topcoat.
    - 3) Topcoat: Exterior latex (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
  - c. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.3B.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Cementitious galvanized-metal primer.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
    - 3) Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
- 9. Aluminum Substrates:
  - a. Latex System: MPI EXT 5.4H.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Quick-drying primer for aluminum.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior latex matching topcoat.
    - 3) Topcoat: Exterior latex (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
  - b. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.4F.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Quick-drying primer for aluminum.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
    - 3) Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
- 10. Glue-Laminated Beam and Column Substrates:
  - a. Latex System: MPI EXT 6.1L.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Exterior latex wood primer.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior latex matching topcoat.
    - 3) Topcoat: Exterior latex (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
  - b. Latex Over Alkyd Primer System: MPI EXT 6.1A.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Exterior alkyd **OR** oil, **as directed**, wood primer.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior latex matching topcoat.
    - 3) Topcoat: Exterior latex (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
  - c. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 6.1B.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Exterior alkyd **OR** oil, **as directed**, wood primer.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
    - 3) Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
- 11. Dressed Lumber Substrates: Including architectural woodwork **OR** doors, **as directed**.
  - a. Latex System: MPI EXT 6.3L.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Exterior latex wood primer.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior latex matching topcoat.
    - 3) Topcoat: Exterior latex (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**. Flat paint is not recommended for use on doors.
  - b. Latex Over Alkyd Primer System: MPI EXT 6.3A.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Exterior alkyd **OR** oil, **as directed**, wood primer.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior latex matching topcoat.



- 3) Topcoat: Exterior latex (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**. Flat paint is not recommended for use on doors.
- c. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 6.3B.
  - 1) Prime Coat: Exterior alkyd **OR** oil, **as directed**, wood primer.
  - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
  - 3) Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**. Flat paint is not recommended for use on doors.
12. Wood Panel Substrates: Including plywood siding **OR** fascias **OR** soffits, **as directed**.
  - a. Latex System: MPI EXT 6.4K.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Exterior latex wood primer.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior latex matching topcoat.
    - 3) Topcoat: Exterior latex (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
  - b. Latex Over Alkyd Primer System: MPI EXT 6.4G.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Exterior alkyd wood primer.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior latex matching topcoat.
    - 3) Topcoat: Exterior latex (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
  - c. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 6.4B.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Exterior alkyd **OR** oil, **as directed**, wood primer.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
    - 3) Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
13. Wood Shingle and Shake Substrates (Excluding Roofs):
  - a. Latex System: MPI EXT 6.6E.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Exterior latex wood primer.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior latex matching topcoat.
    - 3) Topcoat: Exterior latex (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
  - b. Latex Over Alkyd Primer System: MPI EXT 6.6A.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Exterior alkyd **OR** oil, **as directed**, wood primer.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior latex matching topcoat.
    - 3) Topcoat: Exterior latex (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
  - c. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 6.6B.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Exterior alkyd **OR** oil, **as directed**, wood primer.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
    - 3) Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
14. Dimension Lumber Substrates, Nontraffic Surfaces: Including board siding **OR** fencing **OR** undersides of decking, **as directed**.
  - a. Latex System: MPI EXT 6.2M.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Exterior latex wood primer.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior latex matching topcoat.
    - 3) Topcoat: Exterior latex (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
  - b. Latex Over Alkyd Primer System: MPI EXT 6.2A.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Exterior alkyd **OR** oil, **as directed**, wood primer.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior latex matching topcoat.
    - 3) Topcoat: Exterior latex (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
  - c. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 6.2C.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Exterior alkyd **OR** oil, **as directed**, wood primer.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
    - 3) Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
15. Dimension Lumber Substrates, Traffic Surfaces: Including lumber decking **OR** stairs, **as directed**.
  - a. Latex System: MPI EXT 6.5E.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Exterior latex wood primer.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Interior/exterior latex floor and porch (low gloss).
    - 3) Topcoat: Interior/exterior latex floor and porch (low gloss).
      - a) With additive to increase skid resistance of painted surface.
  - b. Latex Over Alkyd Primer System: MPI EXT 6.5A.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Exterior alkyd wood primer.



- 2) Intermediate Coat: Interior/exterior latex floor and porch (low gloss).
- 3) Topcoat: Interior/exterior latex floor and porch (low gloss).
  - a) With additive to increase skid resistance of painted surface.
- c. Alkyd Floor Enamel System: MPI EXT 6.5B.
  - 1) Prime Coat: Exterior/interior alkyd floor enamel (gloss).
  - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior/interior alkyd floor enamel (gloss).
  - 3) Topcoat: Exterior/interior alkyd floor enamel (gloss).
    - a) With additive to increase skid resistance of painted surface.
16. Plastic Trim Fabrication Substrates:
  - a. Latex System: MPI EXT 6.8A.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Bonding primer (water based) **OR** (solvent based), **as directed**.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior latex matching topcoat.
    - 3) Topcoat: Exterior latex (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
  - b. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 6.8B.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Bonding primer (water based) **OR** (solvent based), **as directed**.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
    - 3) Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
17. Stucco Substrates:
  - a. Latex System: MPI EXT 9.1A.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Exterior latex matching topcoat.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior latex matching topcoat.
    - 3) Topcoat: Exterior latex (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
  - b. Latex Over Alkali-Resistant Primer System: MPI EXT 9.1J.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Alkali-resistant primer.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior latex matching topcoat.
    - 3) Topcoat: Exterior latex (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
  - c. High-Build Latex System: MPI EXT 9.1H, applied to form dry film thickness of not less than 10 mils (0.25 mm).
    - 1) Prime Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
    - 3) Topcoat: High-build latex (exterior).
18. Exterior Gypsum Board Substrates:
  - a. Latex System: MPI EXT 9.2A.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Exterior latex matching topcoat.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Exterior latex matching topcoat.
    - 3) Topcoat: Exterior latex (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.

END OF SECTION 09 91 13 00



## SECTION 09 91 13 00a - HIGH-TEMPERATURE-RESISTANT COATINGS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for high-temperature-resistant coatings. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes surface preparation and application of high-temperature-resistant coating systems on steel substrates subject to high temperatures.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Samples: For each coating and for each color and texture required.
3. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.2: For coatings, including printed statement of VOC content and chemical components.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Master Painters Institute (MPI) Standards:
  - a. Products: Complying with MPI standards indicated and listed in "MPI Approved Products List" **OR** "MPI Maintenance Repainting Manual," **as directed**.
  - b. Preparation and Workmanship: Comply with requirements in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" **OR** "MPI Maintenance Repainting Manual," **as directed**, for products and coating systems indicated.

#### E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F (7 deg C).
  - a. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  - b. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

#### F. Project Conditions

1. Apply coatings only when temperature of surfaces to be coated and surrounding air temperatures are between 50 and 104 deg F (10 and 40 deg C).
2. Do not apply coatings in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. High-Temperature-Resistant Coatings

1. VOC Content of Interior Paints and Coatings: Provide products that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24) :
  - a. Flat Paints, Coatings, and Primers: VOC content of not more than 50 g/L.
  - b. Nonflat Paints, Coatings, and Primers: VOC content of not more than 150 g/L.
  - c. Anticorrosive and Anti-Rust Paints Applied to Ferrous Metals: VOC content of not more than 250 g/L.
  - d. Flat Interior Topcoat Paints: VOC content of not more than 50 g/L.
  - e. Nonflat Interior Topcoat Paints: VOC content of not more than 150 g/L.



- f. Anti-Corrosive and Anti-Rust Paints Applied to Ferrous Metals: VOC not more than 250 g/L.
  - g. Primers, Sealers, and Undercoaters: VOC content of not more than 200 g/L.
  - h. Zinc-Rich Industrial Maintenance Primers: VOC content of not more than 340 g/L.
2. Chemical Components of Interior Paints and Coatings: Provide topcoat paints and anti-corrosive and anti-rust paints applied to ferrous metals that comply with the following chemical restrictions; these requirements do not apply to paints and coatings that are applied in a fabrication or finishing shop:
- a. Aromatic Compounds: Paints and coatings shall not contain more than 1.0 percent by weight of total aromatic compounds (hydrocarbon compounds containing 1 or more benzene rings).
  - b. Restricted Components: Paints and coatings shall not contain any of the following:
    - 1) Acrolein.
    - 2) Acrylonitrile.
    - 3) Antimony.
    - 4) Benzene.
    - 5) Butyl benzyl phthalate.
    - 6) Cadmium.
    - 7) Di (2-ethylhexyl) phthalate.
    - 8) Di-n-butyl phthalate.
    - 9) Di-n-octyl phthalate.
    - 10) 1,2-dichlorobenzene.
    - 11) Diethyl phthalate.
    - 12) Dimethyl phthalate.
    - 13) Ethylbenzene.
    - 14) Formaldehyde.
    - 15) Hexavalent chromium.
    - 16) Isophorone.
    - 17) Lead.
    - 18) Mercury.
    - 19) Methyl ethyl ketone.
    - 20) Methyl isobutyl ketone.
    - 21) Methylene chloride.
    - 22) Naphthalene.
    - 23) Toluene (methylbenzene).
    - 24) 1,1,1-trichloroethane.
    - 25) Vinyl chloride.
3. Colors: As selected from manufacturer's full range **OR** Match samples, **as directed**.
4. Primer: Undercoating recommended in writing for use in coating system by manufacturer of high-temperature-resistant coating under conditions indicated.
5. Heat-Resistant Enamel (Gloss): MPI #21.
- a. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
6. Inorganic Zinc Primer: MPI #19.
- a. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of 0 **OR** E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
7. Aluminum Heat-Resistant Enamel: MPI #2.
- a. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
8. High-Heat-Resistant Coating: MPI #22.
- a. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Preparation



1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" **OR** "MPI Maintenance Repainting Manual," **as directed**, applicable to substrates indicated.
  2. Remove plates, machined surfaces, and similar items already in place that are not to be coated. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and coating.
    - a. After completing coating operations, reinstall items that were removed; use workers skilled in the trades involved.
  3. Clean steel substrates of substances that could impair bond of coatings, including dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
    - a. Remove incompatible primers as required to produce coating systems indicated.
- B. Application
1. Apply high-temperature-resistant coating systems according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - a. Use applicators and techniques suited for coating and substrate indicated.
    - b. Coat surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, coat surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
    - c. Coat back sides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
- C. Field Quality Control
1. Contractor shall invoke the following procedure at any time and as often as necessary during the period when coatings are being applied:
    - a. Engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample coating material being used. Samples of material delivered to Project site will be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in presence of Contractor.
    - b. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with specified requirements.
    - c. the Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying coatings if test results show materials being used do not comply with specified requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying coating materials from Project site, pay for testing, and recoat surfaces coated with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously coated surfaces if, on recoating with complying materials, the two coatings are incompatible.
- D. Cleaning And Protection
1. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
  2. After completing coating application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered coatings by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
  3. Protect work of other trades against damage from coating operation. Correct damage by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and recoating, as approved by the Owner, and leave in an undamaged condition.
  4. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced coated surfaces.
- E. High-Temperature-Resistant Coating Schedule
1. Heat-Resistant Enamel (Gloss) Coating System (System below corresponds with MPI EXT 5.2A and MPI INT 5.2A coating systems) {suitable for use on surfaces that reach a maximum temperature of 400 deg F (205 deg C)}:
    - a. Surface Preparation: Clean using methods recommended in writing by finish-coat manufacturer, but not less than blast cleaning according to SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning **OR** SSPC-SP 10/NACE No. 2, "Near-White Blast Cleaning **OR** SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning," **as directed**.
    - b. Prime Coat: Primer.



- c. Finish Coat(s): Heat-resistant enamel (gloss), MPI #21, in number of coats recommended in writing by manufacturer for conditions indicated.
  2. Inorganic Zinc Primer Coating System (System below corresponds with MPI EXT 5.2C and MPI INT 5.2C coating systems) {suitable for use on surfaces that reach a maximum temperature of 750 deg F (400 deg C)}:
    - a. Surface Preparation: Clean using methods recommended in writing by finish-coat manufacturer, but not less than blast cleaning according to SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning **OR** SSPC-SP 10/NACE No. 2, "Near-White Blast Cleaning **OR** SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning," **as directed**.
    - b. Prime Coat: Primer.
    - c. Finish Coat(s): Inorganic zinc primer, MPI #19, in number of coats recommended in writing by manufacturer for conditions indicated.
  3. Aluminum Heat-Resistant Enamel Coating System (System below corresponds with MPI EXT 5.2B and MPI INT 5.2B coating systems) {suitable for use on surfaces that reach a maximum temperature of 800 deg F (427 deg C)}:
    - a. Surface Preparation: Clean using methods recommended in writing by finish-coat manufacturer, but not less than blast cleaning according to SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning **OR** SSPC-SP 10/NACE No. 2, "Near-White Blast Cleaning **OR** SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning," **as directed**.
    - b. Prime Coat: Primer.
    - c. Finish Coat(s): Aluminum heat-resistant enamel, MPI #2, in number of coats recommended in writing by manufacturer for conditions indicated.
  4. High-Heat-Resistant Coating System (System below corresponds with MPI EXT 5.2D and MPI INT 5.2D coating systems) {suitable for use on surfaces that reach a maximum temperature of 1100 deg F (593 deg C)}:
    - a. Surface Preparation: Clean using methods recommended in writing by finish-coat manufacturer, but not less than blast cleaning according to SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning **OR** SSPC-SP 10/NACE No. 2, "Near-White Blast Cleaning **OR** SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning," **as directed**.
    - b. Prime Coat: Primer.
    - c. Finish Coat(s): High-heat-resistant coating, MPI #22, in number of coats recommended in writing by manufacturer for conditions indicated.

END OF SECTION 09 91 13 00a





---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
09 91 13 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 09 91 33 00 - WOOD STAINS AND TRANSPARENT FINISHES****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for wood stains and transparent finishes. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Summary**

1. This Section includes surface preparation and the application of wood finishes on the following substrates:
  - a. Exterior Substrates:
    - 1) Exposed glue-laminated beams and columns.
    - 2) Exposed dimension lumber (rough carpentry).
    - 3) Dressed lumber (finish carpentry).
    - 4) Exposed wood panel products.
    - 5) Wood decks and stairs.
    - 6) Wood shingles and shakes (excluding roofs).
  - b. Interior Substrates:
    - 1) Exposed glue-laminated beams and columns.
    - 2) Exposed dimension lumber (rough carpentry).
    - 3) Dressed lumber (finish carpentry).
    - 4) Exposed wood panel products.

**C. Submittals**

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.2: For interior primers, stains, and transparent finishes, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Samples: For each finish and for each color and texture required.
4. Product List: Printout of MPI's current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified in Part 1.2, with the product proposed for use highlighted.

**D. Quality Assurance**

1. MPI Standards:
  - a. Products: Complying with MPI standards indicated and listed in its "MPI Approved Products List."
  - b. Preparation and Workmanship: Comply with requirements in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" for products and finish systems indicated.

**E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling**

1. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F (7 deg C).
  - a. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  - b. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

**F. Project Conditions**

1. Apply finishes only when temperature of surfaces to be finished and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F (10 and 35 deg C).
2. Do not apply exterior finishes in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.



## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Materials, General

1. Material Compatibility:
  - a. Provide materials for use within each finish system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
  - b. For each coat in a finish system, provide products recommended in writing by manufacturers of topcoat for use in finish system and on substrate indicated.
2. VOC Content of Field-Applied Interior Primers, Stains, and Transparent Finishes: Provide products that comply with the following limits for VOC content, exclusive of colorants added to a tint base, when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24); these requirements do not apply to primers, stains, and transparent finishes that are applied in a fabrication or finishing shop:
  - a. Flat Primers: VOC content of not more than 50 g/L.
  - b. Nonflat Primers: VOC content of not more than 150 g/L.
  - c. Primers, Sealers, and Undercoaters: VOC content of not more than 200 g/L.
  - d. Clear Wood Finishes, Varnishes: VOC not more than 350 g/L.
  - e. Clear Wood Finishes, Lacquers: VOC not more than 550 g/L.
  - f. Floor Coatings: VOC not more than 100 g/L.
  - g. Shellacs, Clear: VOC not more than 730 g/L.
  - h. Stains: VOC not more than 250 g/L.
3. Stain Colors: As selected from manufacturer's full range **OR** Match samples **OR** As indicated in a color schedule, **as directed**.

### B. Wood Fillers

1. Wood Filler Paste: MPI #91.
  - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.

### C. Primers And Sealers

1. Exterior Alkyd Wood Primer: MPI #5.
  - a. VOC Content: E Range of E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
2. Exterior Latex Wood Primer: MPI #6.
  - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
3. Exterior Oil Wood Primer: MPI #7.
  - a. VOC Content: E Range of E2.
4. Wood Preservative: MPI #37.
  - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
5. Alkyd Sanding Sealer: MPI #102.
  - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
6. Lacquer Sanding Sealer: MPI #84.
  - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
7. Shellac: MPI #88.
  - a. VOC Content: E Range of E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.

### D. Stains

1. Exterior Semitransparent Stain (Solvent Based): MPI #13.
  - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2, **as directed**.
2. Exterior Solid-Color Stain (Solvent Based): MPI #14.
  - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
3. Exterior, Solid-Color Latex Stain: MPI #16.
  - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
4. Stain for Wood Decks: MPI #33.
  - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
5. Interior Wood Stain (Semitransparent): MPI #90.



- a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2, **as directed**.

#### E. Varnishes

1. Exterior Marine Spar Varnish (Gloss): MPI #28, Gloss Level 7.
  - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2, **as directed**.
2. Exterior Varnish (Gloss): MPI #29, Gloss Level 6.
  - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1.
3. Exterior Varnish (Semigloss): MPI #30, Gloss Level 5.
  - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1.
4. Interior Varnish (Flat): MPI #73, Gloss Level 1, alkyd type.
  - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
5. Interior Varnish (Semigloss): MPI #74, Gloss Level 5, alkyd type.
  - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
6. Interior Varnish (Gloss): MPI #75, Gloss Level 6, alkyd type.
  - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.

#### F. Polyurethane Finishes

1. Two-Component Aliphatic Polyurethane (Clear): MPI #78.
  - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
2. Interior, Oil-Modified, Clear Urethane (Satin): MPI #57, Gloss Level 4.
  - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2, **as directed**.
3. Interior, Oil-Modified, Clear Urethane (Gloss): MPI #56, Gloss Level 6.
  - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
4. Moisture-Cured Clear Polyurethane (Flat): MPI #71, Gloss Level 1.
  - a. VOC Content: E Range of E2.
5. Moisture-Cured Clear Polyurethane (Gloss): MPI #31.
  - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.

#### G. Waterborne Acrylic Finishes

1. Waterborne Clear Acrylic (Satin): MPI #128, Gloss Level 4.
  - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
  - b. Environmental Performance Rating: EPR 1 **OR** EPR 2 **OR** EPR 3, **as directed**.
2. Waterborne Clear Acrylic (Semigloss): MPI #129, Gloss Level 5.
  - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
  - b. Environmental Performance Rating: EPR 1 **OR** EPR 2 **OR** EPR 3, **as directed**.
3. Waterborne Clear Acrylic (Gloss): MPI #130, Gloss Level 6.
  - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
  - b. Environmental Performance Rating: EPR 1 **OR** EPR 2 **OR** EPR 3, **as directed**.

#### H. Lacquers

1. Lacquer (Clear Flat): MPI #87, Gloss Level 1.
  - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
2. Lacquer (Clear Satin): MPI #85, Gloss Level 4.
  - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
3. Lacquer (Clear Gloss): MPI #86, Gloss Level 6.
  - a. VOC Content: E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.

#### I. Oil Finish

1. Danish Oil: MPI #92.
  - a. VOC Content: E Range of E3.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Preparation



1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates indicated.
  2. Remove plates, machined surfaces, and similar items already in place that are not to be finished. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and finishing.
    - a. After completing finishing operations, reinstall items that were removed; use workers skilled in the trades involved. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
  3. Clean and prepare surfaces to be finished according to manufacturer's written instructions for each particular substrate condition and as specified.
    - a. Remove surface dirt, oil, or grease by washing with a detergent solution; rinse thoroughly with clean water and allow to dry. Remove grade stamps and pencil marks by sanding lightly. Remove loose wood fibers by brushing.
    - b. Remove mildew by scrubbing with a commercial wash formulated for mildew removal and as recommended by stain manufacturer.
    - c. Countersink steel nails, if used, and fill with putty tinted to final color to eliminate rust leach stains.
  4. Apply wood filler paste to open-grain woods, as defined in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual," to produce smooth, glasslike finish.
- B. Application
1. Apply finishes according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - a. Use applicators and techniques suited for finish and substrate indicated.
    - b. Finish surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces.
  2. Apply finishes to produce surface films without cloudiness, holidays, lap marks, brush marks, runs, ropiness, or other surface imperfections.
- C. Field Quality Control
1. The following procedure may be requested at any time and as often as the Owner deems necessary during the period when finishes are being applied:
    - a. Engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample finish materials being used. Samples of material delivered to Project site will be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in presence of Contractor.
    - b. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
    - c. the Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying finishes if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying materials from Project site, pay for testing, and refinish surfaces finished with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously finished surfaces if, on refinishing with complying materials, the two finishes are incompatible.
- D. Cleaning And Protection
1. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
  2. After completing finish application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered materials by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
  3. Protect work of other trades against damage from finish application. Correct damage by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by the Owner, and leave in an undamaged condition.
  4. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced finished wood surfaces.
- E. Exterior Wood-Finish-System Schedule
1. Exposed Glue-Laminated Beam and Column Substrates:
    - a. Solid-Color, Solvent-Based Stain System: MPI EXT 6.1C.



- 1) Prime Coat: Exterior alkyd **OR** oil, **as directed**, wood primer.
- 2) Two Stain Coats: Exterior solid-color stain (solvent based).
- b. Varnish Over Semitransparent Stain System: MPI EXT 6.1D.
  - 1) Stain Coat: Exterior semitransparent stain (solvent based).
  - 2) Three (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** Two, **as directed**, Finish Coats: Exterior marine spar varnish (gloss) **OR** varnish (gloss) **OR** varnish (semigloss), **as directed**.
- c. Varnish System: MPI EXT 6.1K.
  - 1) Four (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** Three, **as directed**, Finish Coats: Exterior marine spar varnish (gloss) **OR** varnish (gloss) **OR** varnish (semigloss), **as directed**.
- d. Clear, Two-Component Polyurethane Over Stain System: MPI EXT 6.1E.
  - 1) Stain Coat: Exterior semitransparent stain (solvent based).
  - 2) Three (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** Two, **as directed**, Finish Coats: Two-component aliphatic polyurethane (clear).
- e. Clear, Two-Component Polyurethane System: MPI EXT 6.1H.
  - 1) Three Finish Coats: Two-component aliphatic polyurethane (clear).
2. Exposed Rough Carpentry Substrates:
  - a. Solid-Color Latex Stain System: MPI EXT 6.2B.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Exterior alkyd **OR** oil, **as directed**, wood primer.
    - 2) Two Stain Coats (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** One Stain Coat, **as directed**: Exterior, solid-color latex stain.
  - b. Solid-Color, Solvent-Based Stain System: MPI EXT 6.2D.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Exterior alkyd **OR** oil, **as directed**, wood primer.
  - c. Two Stain Coats (for a Premium Grade system) One Stain Coat, **as directed**: Exterior solid-color stain (solvent based).
  - d. Semitransparent Stain System: MPI EXT 6.2L.
    - 1) Two Stain Coats: Exterior semitransparent stain (solvent based).
  - e. Varnish Over Semitransparent Stain System: MPI EXT 6.2E.
    - 1) Stain Coat: Exterior semitransparent stain (solvent based).
    - 2) Three (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** Two, **as directed**, Finish Coats: Exterior marine spar varnish (gloss) **OR** varnish (gloss) **OR** varnish (semigloss), **as directed**.
  - f. Varnish System: MPI EXT 6.2K.
    - 1) Four (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** Three, **as directed**, Finish Coats: Exterior varnish (marine spar, high gloss) **OR** (gloss) **OR** (semigloss), **as directed**.
  - g. Clear, Two-Component Polyurethane System: MPI EXT 6.2H.
    - 1) Three Finish Coats: Two-component aliphatic polyurethane (clear).
3. Finish Carpentry Substrates:
  - a. Solid-Color Latex Stain System: MPI EXT 6.3K.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Exterior alkyd **OR** oil, **as directed**, wood primer.
    - 2) Two Stain Coats (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** One Stain Coat, **as directed**: Exterior, solid-color latex stain.
  - b. Solid-Color, Solvent-Based Stain System: MPI EXT 6.3C.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Exterior alkyd **OR** oil, **as directed**, wood primer.
    - 2) Two Stain Coats (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** One Stain Coat, **as directed**: Exterior solid-color stain (solvent based).
  - c. Semitransparent Stain System: MPI EXT 6.3D.
    - 1) Two Stain Coats: Exterior semitransparent stain (solvent based).
  - d. Varnish Over Semitransparent Stain System: MPI EXT 6.3E.
    - 1) Stain Coat: Exterior semitransparent stain (solvent based).
    - 2) Three (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** Two, **as directed**, Finish Coats: Exterior varnish (marine spar, high gloss) **OR** (gloss) **OR** (semigloss), **as directed**.
  - e. Varnish System: MPI EXT 6.3F.
    - 1) Four (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** Three, **as directed**, Finish Coats: Exterior varnish (marine spar, high gloss) **OR** (gloss) **OR** (semigloss), **as directed**.
  - f. Clear, Two-Component Polyurethane System: MPI EXT 6.3G.
    - 1) Three Finish Coats: Two-component aliphatic polyurethane (clear).



- F. Exposed Wood Panel-Product Substrates:
- a. Solid-Color Latex Stain System: MPI EXT 6.4A.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Exterior alkyd **OR** latex **OR** oil, **as directed**, wood primer.
    - 2) Two Stain Coats (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** One Stain Coat, **as directed**: Exterior, solid-color latex stain.
  - b. Solid-Color, Solvent-Based Stain System: MPI EXT 6.4C.
    - 1) Prime Coat (for a Premium Grade system): Exterior alkyd **OR** oil, **as directed**, wood primer.
    - 2) Two Stain Coats: Exterior solid-color stain (solvent based).
  - c. Semitransparent Stain System: MPI EXT 6.4D.
    - 1) Two Stain Coats: Exterior semitransparent stain (solvent based).
  - d. Varnish Over Semitransparent Stain System: MPI EXT 6.4J.
    - 1) Stain Coat: Exterior semitransparent stain (solvent based).
    - 2) Three (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** Two, **as directed**, Finish Coats: Exterior varnish (marine spar, high gloss) **OR** (gloss) **OR** (semigloss), **as directed**.
  - e. Varnish System: MPI EXT 6.4H.
    - 1) Four (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** Three, **as directed**, Finish Coats: Exterior varnish (marine spar, high gloss) **OR** (gloss) **OR** (semigloss), **as directed**.
2. Wood Deck and Stair Substrates:
- a. MPI EXT 6.5D.
    - 1) Preservative Coat: Wood preservative.
    - 2) Two Stain Coats (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** One Stain Coat, **as directed**: Stain for wood decks.
  - b. MPI EXT 6.5F.
    - 1) Two Stain Coats: Stain for wood decks.
3. Wood Shingle and Shake Substrates (Excluding Roofs):
- a. Solid-Color Latex Stain System: MPI EXT 6.6D.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Exterior alkyd **OR** oil, **as directed**, wood primer.
    - 2) Two Stain Coats (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** One Stain Coat, **as directed**: Exterior, solid-color latex stain.
  - b. Solid-Color, Solvent-Based Stain System: MPI EXT 6.6C.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Exterior alkyd **OR** oil, **as directed**, wood primer.
    - 2) Two Stain Coats (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** One Stain Coat, **as directed**: Exterior solid-color stain (solvent based).
  - c. Semitransparent Stain System: MPI EXT 6.6F.
    - 1) Two Stain Coats: Exterior semitransparent stain (solvent based).
- G. Interior Wood-Finish-System Schedule
1. Exposed Glue-Laminated Beam and Column Substrates:
    - a. Alkyd Varnish Over Stain System: MPI INT 6.1K.
      - 1) Stain Coat: Interior wood stain (semitransparent).
      - 2) Three (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** Two, **as directed**, Finish Coats: Interior varnish (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
    - b. Alkyd Varnish Over Stain and Sealer System: MPI INT 6.1P.
      - 1) Stain Coat: Interior wood stain (semitransparent).
      - 2) Seal Coat: Alkyd sanding sealer.
      - 3) Two Finish Coats (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** One Finish Coat, **as directed**: Interior varnish (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
    - c. Alkyd Varnish Over Sealer System: MPI INT 6.1C.
      - 1) Seal Coat: Alkyd sanding sealer.
      - 2) Two Finish Coats: Interior varnish (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
    - d. Polyurethane Varnish Over Stain System: MPI INT 6.1J.
      - 1) Stain Coat: Interior wood stain (semitransparent).
      - 2) Three (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** Two, **as directed**, Finish Coats: Interior, oil-modified, clear urethane (satin) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.





- e. Polyurethane Varnish System: MPI INT 6.1D.
  - 1) One Factory-Applied Finish Coat: Matching field-applied finish coats.
  - 2) Two Field-Applied Finish Coats: Interior, oil-modified, clear urethane (satin) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
- f. Moisture-Cured Clear Polyurethane Over Stain System: MPI INT 6.1S.
  - 1) Stain Coat: Interior wood stain (semitransparent).
  - 2) Three (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** Two, **as directed**, Finish Coats: Moisture-cured clear polyurethane (flat) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
- g. Waterborne Clear Acrylic Over Stain System: MPI INT 6.1R.
  - 1) Stain Coat: Interior wood stain (semitransparent).
  - 2) Three (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** Two, **as directed**, Finish Coats: Waterborne clear acrylic (satin) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
- h. Waterborne Clear Acrylic System: MPI INT 6.F.
  - 1) Three Finish Coats: Waterborne clear acrylic (satin) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
- i. Solid-Color Latex Stain System: MPI INT 6.1T.
  - 1) Prime Coat: Exterior alkyd **OR** oil, **as directed**, wood primer.
  - 2) Two Stain Coats (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** One Stain Coat, **as directed**: Exterior, solid-color latex stain.
- j. Solid-Color, Solvent-Based Stain System: MPI INT 6.1H.
  - 1) Two Stain Coats: Exterior solid-color stain (solvent based).
- k. Semitransparent Stain System: MPI INT 6.1G.
  - 1) Two Stain Coats: Exterior semitransparent stain (solvent based).
- 2. Exposed Rough Carpentry Substrates:
  - a. Alkyd Varnish Over Stain and Sealer System: MPI INT 6.2K.
    - 1) Stain Coat: Interior wood stain (semitransparent).
    - 2) Seal Coat: Alkyd sanding sealer.
    - 3) Two Finish Coats (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** One Finish Coat, **as directed**: Interior varnish (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
  - b. Alkyd Varnish Over Sealer System: MPI INT 6.2P.
    - 1) Seal Coat: Alkyd sanding sealer.
    - 2) Two Finish Coats (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** One Finish Coat, **as directed**: Interior varnish (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
  - c. Polyurethane Varnish Over Stain System: MPI INT 6.2J.
    - 1) Stain Coat: Interior wood stain (semitransparent).
    - 2) Three (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** Two, **as directed**, Finish Coats: Interior, oil-modified, clear urethane (satin) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
  - d. Polyurethane Varnish System: MPI INT 6.2H.
    - 1) Three (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** Two, **as directed**, Finish Coats: Interior, oil-modified, clear urethane (satin) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
  - e. Moisture-Cured Clear Polyurethane Over Stain System: MPI INT 6.2N.
    - 1) Stain Coat: Interior wood stain (semitransparent).
    - 2) Three (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** Two, **as directed**, Finish Coats: Moisture-cured clear polyurethane (flat) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
  - f. Waterborne Clear Acrylic Over Stain System: MPI INT 6.2M.
    - 1) Stain Coat: Interior wood stain (semitransparent).
    - 2) Three (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** Two, **as directed**, Finish Coats: Waterborne clear acrylic (satin) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
- 3. Finish Carpentry Substrates:
  - a. Alkyd Varnish Over Stain and Sealer System: MPI INT 6.3D.
    - 1) Stain Coat: Interior wood stain (semitransparent).
    - 2) Seal Coat: Alkyd sanding sealer **OR** Shellac, **as directed**.
    - 3) Two Finish Coats (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** One Finish Coat, **as directed**: Interior varnish (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
  - b. Alkyd Varnish Over Sealer System: MPI INT 6.3J.
    - 1) Seal Coat: Alkyd sanding sealer **OR** Shellac, **as directed**.



- 2) Two Finish Coats (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** One Finish Coat, **as directed**: Interior varnish (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
- c. Polyurethane Varnish Over Stain System: MPI INT 6.3E.
  - 1) Stain Coat: Interior wood stain (semitransparent).
  - 2) Three (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** Two, **as directed**, Finish Coats: Interior, oil-modified, clear urethane (satin) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
- d. Polyurethane Varnish System: MPI INT 6.3K.
  - 1) One Factory-Applied Finish Coat: Matching field-applied finish coats.
  - 2) Two Field-Applied Finish Coats: Interior, oil-modified, clear urethane (satin) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
- e. Moisture-Cured Clear Polyurethane Over Stain System: MPI INT 6.3Y.
  - 1) Stain Coat: Interior wood stain (semitransparent).
  - 2) Three (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** Two, **as directed**, Finish Coats: Moisture-cured clear polyurethane (flat) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
- f. Moisture-Cured Clear Polyurethane System: MPI INT 6.3X.
  - 1) Three (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** Two, **as directed**, Finish Coats: Moisture-cured clear polyurethane (flat) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
- g. Clear, Two-Component Polyurethane System: MPI INT 6.3Z.
  - 1) Three (for a Premium Grade system) Two, **as directed**, Finish Coats: Two-component aliphatic polyurethane (clear).
- h. Waterborne Clear Acrylic Over Stain System: MPI INT 6.3W.
  - 1) Stain Coat: Interior wood stain (semitransparent).
  - 2) Three (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** Two, **as directed**, Finish Coats: Waterborne clear acrylic (satin) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
- i. Waterborne Clear Acrylic System: MPI INT 6.3Q.
  - 1) Three Finish Coats: Waterborne clear acrylic (satin) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
- j. Lacquer Over Stain and Sealer System: MPI INT 6.3F.
  - 1) Stain Coat: Interior wood stain (semitransparent).
  - 2) Seal Coat: Lacquer sanding sealer.
  - 3) Two Finish Coats (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** One Finish Coat, **as directed**: Lacquer (clear flat **OR** satin **OR** gloss, **as directed**).
- k. Lacquer Over Sealer System: MPI INT 6.3H.
  - 1) Seal Coat: Lacquer sanding sealer.
  - 2) Two Finish Coats (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** One Finish Coat, **as directed**: Lacquer (clear flat **OR** satin **OR** gloss, **as directed**).
- l. Semitransparent Stain System: MPI INT 6.3C.
  - 1) Two Stain Coats: Exterior semitransparent stain (solvent based).
- m. Danish Oil System: MPI INT 6.3M.
  - 1) Two Finish Coats: Danish oil.
4. Exposed Wood Panel-Product Substrates:
  - a. Alkyd Varnish Over Sealer and Stain System: MPI INT 6.4D.
    - 1) Stain Coat: Interior wood stain (semitransparent).
    - 2) Seal Coat: Alkyd sanding sealer **OR** Shellac, **as directed**.
    - 3) Two Finish Coats (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** One Finish Coat, **as directed**: Interior varnish (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
  - b. Alkyd Varnish Over Sealer System: MPI INT 6.4G.
    - 1) Seal Coat: Alkyd sanding sealer **OR** Shellac, **as directed**.
    - 2) Two Finish Coats (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** One Finish Coat, **as directed**: Interior varnish (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
  - c. Polyurethane Varnish Over Stain System: MPI INT 6.4E.
    - 1) Stain Coat: Interior wood stain (semitransparent).
    - 2) Three (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** Two, **as directed**, Finish Coats: Interior, oil-modified, clear urethane (satin) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
  - d. Polyurethane Varnish System: MPI INT 6.4.J.



- 1) One Factory-Applied Finish Coat: Matching field-applied finish coats.
- 2) Two Field-Applied Finish Coats: Interior, oil-modified, clear urethane (satin) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
- e. Moisture-Cured Clear Polyurethane Over Stain System: MPI INT 6.4V.
  - 1) Stain Coat: Interior wood stain (semitransparent).
  - 2) Three (for a Premium Grade system) Two, **as directed**, Finish Coats: Moisture-cured clear polyurethane (flat) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
- f. Waterborne Clear Acrylic Over Stain System: MPI INT 6.4U.
  - 1) Stain Coat: Interior wood stain (semitransparent).
  - 2) Three (for a Premium Grade system) Two, **as directed**, Finish Coats: Waterborne clear acrylic (satin) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
- g. Lacquer Over Stain and Sealer System: MPI INT 6.4F.
  - 1) Stain Coat: Interior wood stain (semitransparent).
  - 2) Seal Coat: Lacquer sanding sealer.
  - 3) Two Finish Coats (for a Premium Grade system) **OR** One Finish Coat, **as directed**: Lacquer (clear flat **OR** satin **OR** gloss, **as directed**).
- h. Lacquer Over Sealer System: MPI INT 6.4Y.
  - 1) Seal Coat: Lacquer sanding sealer.
  - 2) Three (for a Premium Grade system) Two, **as directed**, Finish Coats: Lacquer (clear flat **OR** satin **OR** gloss, **as directed**).
- i. Semitransparent Stain System: MPI INT 6.4C.
  - 1) Two Stain Coats: Exterior semitransparent stain (solvent based).
- j. Danish Oil System: MPI INT 6.4K.
  - 1) Two Finish Coats: Danish oil.

END OF SECTION 09 91 33 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
09 91 33 00	09 91 13 00a	High-Temperature-Resistant Coatings
09 91 43 00	03 01 30 71	Concrete Rehabilitation

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 09 96 00 00 - HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATINGS**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for high performance coatings. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. This Section includes surface preparation and application of high-performance coating systems on the following substrates:
  - a. Exterior Substrates:
    - 1) Concrete, vertical and horizontal surfaces.
    - 2) Clay masonry.
    - 3) Concrete masonry units (CMU).
    - 4) Steel.
    - 5) Galvanized metal.
    - 6) Aluminum (not anodized or otherwise coated).
    - 7) Wood.
  - b. Interior Substrates:
    - 1) Concrete, vertical and horizontal surfaces.
    - 2) Clay masonry.
    - 3) Concrete masonry units (CMU).
    - 4) Steel.
    - 5) Galvanized metal.
    - 6) Aluminum (not anodized or otherwise coated).
    - 7) Wood.
    - 8) Gypsum board.

## C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Samples: For each type of finish-coat product indicated.
3. Product List: For each product indicated. Cross-reference products to coating system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
4. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.2: For coatings, including printed statement of VOC content and chemical components.

## D. Quality Assurance

1. Master Painters Institute (MPI) Standards:
  - a. Products: Complying with MPI standards indicated and listed in "MPI Approved Products List."
  - b. Preparation and Workmanship: Comply with requirements in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" **OR** "MPI Maintenance Repainting Manual," **as directed**, for products and coating systems indicated.
2. Mockups: Apply mockups of each coating system indicated to verify preliminary selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
  - a. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each coating system specified in Part 3.
    - 1) Wall and Ceiling Surfaces: Provide samples of at least 100 sq. ft. (9 sq. m).
    - 2) Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.



- b. Final approval of color selections will be based on mockups.
  - 1) If preliminary color selections are not approved, apply additional mockups of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.
- c. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
- d. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

- 1. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F (7 deg C).
  - a. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  - b. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

F. Project Conditions

- 1. Apply coatings only when temperature of surfaces to be coated and surrounding air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F (10 and 35 deg C).
- 2. Do not apply coatings in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. High-Performance Coatings, General

- 1. Material Compatibility:
  - a. Provide materials for use within each coating system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
  - b. Provide products of same manufacturer for each coat in a coating system.
- 2. VOC Content of Field-Applied Interior Paints and Coatings: Provide products that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
  - a. Flat Paints, Coatings, and Primers: VOC content of not more than 50 g/L.
  - b. Nonflat Paints, Coatings, and Primers: VOC content of not more than 150 g/L.
  - c. Anticorrosive and Anti-Rust Paints Applied to Ferrous Metals: VOC content of not more than 250 g/L.
  - d. Clear Wood Finishes, Varnishes: VOC not more than 350 g/L.
  - e. Clear Wood Finishes, Lacquers: VOC not more than 550 g/L.
  - f. Floor Coatings: VOC not more than 100 g/L.
  - g. Shellacs, Clear: VOC not more than 730 g/L.
  - h. Shellacs, Pigmented: VOC not more than 550 g/L.
  - i. Stains: VOC content of not more than 250 g/L.
  - j. Flat Interior Topcoat Paints: VOC content of not more than 50 g/L.
  - k. Nonflat Interior Topcoat Paints: VOC content of not more than 150 g/L.
  - l. Anti-Corrosive and Anti-Rust Paints Applied to Ferrous Metals: VOC not more than 250 g/L.
  - m. Clear Wood Finishes, Varnishes: VOC not more than 350 g/L.
  - n. Clear Wood Finishes, Lacquers: VOC not more than 550 g/L.
  - o. Floor Coatings: VOC not more than 100 g/L.
  - p. Shellacs, Clear: VOC not more than 730 g/L.
  - q. Shellacs, Pigmented: VOC not more than 550 g/L.
  - r. Stains: VOC not more than 250 g/L.
  - s. Primers, Sealers, and Undercoaters: VOC content of not more than 200 g/L.
  - t. Zinc-Rich Industrial Maintenance Primers: VOC content of not more than 340 g/L.





- u. Pre-Treatment Wash Primers: VOC content of not more than 420 g/L.
  - 3. Chemical Components of Field-Applied Interior Paints and Coatings: Provide topcoat paints and anti-corrosive and anti-rust paints applied to ferrous metals that comply with the following chemical restrictions; these requirements do not apply to paints and coatings that are applied in a fabrication or finishing shop:
    - a. Aromatic Compounds: Paints and coatings shall not contain more than 1.0 percent by weight of total aromatic compounds (hydrocarbon compounds containing 1 or more benzene rings).
    - b. Restricted Components: Paints and coatings shall not contain any of the following:
      - 1) Acrolein.
      - 2) Acrylonitrile.
      - 3) Antimony.
      - 4) Benzene.
      - 5) Butyl benzyl phthalate.
      - 6) Cadmium.
      - 7) Di (2-ethylhexyl) phthalate.
      - 8) Di-n-butyl phthalate.
      - 9) Di-n-octyl phthalate.
      - 10) 1,2-dichlorobenzene.
      - 11) Diethyl phthalate.
      - 12) Dimethyl phthalate.
      - 13) Ethylbenzene.
      - 14) Formaldehyde.
      - 15) Hexavalent chromium.
      - 16) Isophorone.
      - 17) Lead.
      - 18) Mercury.
      - 19) Methyl ethyl ketone.
      - 20) Methyl isobutyl ketone.
      - 21) Methylene chloride.
      - 22) Naphthalene.
      - 23) Toluene (methylbenzene).
      - 24) 1,1,1-trichloroethane.
      - 25) Vinyl chloride.
  - 4. Colors: As selected from manufacturer's full range **OR** Match samples **OR** As indicated in color schedule, **as directed**.
- B. Block Fillers
- 1. Interior/Exterior Latex Block Filler: MPI#4.
    - a. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
  - 2. Epoxy Block Filler: MPI #116.
    - a. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
- C. Interior Primers/Sealers
- 1. Interior Latex Primer/Sealer: MPI #50.
    - a. Environmental Characteristics:
      - 1) VOC Content:
        - a) Minimum E Range of E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
        - b) Meets or exceeds LEED requirements for VOC content.
      - 2) Environmental Performance Rating (EPR): Minimum EPR 2 **OR** 3, **as directed**.
  - 2. Interior Alkyd Primer/Sealer: MPI #45.
    - a. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1 **OR** E2, **as directed**.
  - 3. Interior Latex-Based Wood Primer: MPI #39.
    - a. Environmental Characteristics:
      - 1) VOC Content:
        - a) Minimum E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.



- b) Meets or exceeds LEED requirements for VOC content.
    - 2) Environmental Performance Rating (EPR): Minimum EPR 1 **OR 2 OR 3, as directed.**
  - 4. Wood-Knot Sealer: White shellac or other sealer recommended in writing by manufacturer for this purpose.
- D. Metal Primers
  - 1. Inorganic Zinc Primer: MPI #19.
    - a. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of 0 **OR E1 OR E2 OR E3, as directed.**
  - 2. Epoxy Zinc Primer: MPI #20.
    - a. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1 **OR E2 OR E3, as directed.**
  - 3. Rust-Inhibitive Primer (Water Based): MPI #107.
    - a. Environmental Characteristics:
      - 1) VOC Content:
        - a) Minimum E Range of E1 **OR E2 OR E3, as directed.**
        - b) Meets or exceeds LEED requirements for VOC content.
      - 2) Environmental Performance Rating (EPR): Minimum EPR 1 **OR 2 OR 3, as directed.**
  - 4. Cold-Curing Epoxy Primer: MPI #101.
    - a. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1 **OR E3, as directed.**
  - 5. Alkyd Anticorrosive Metal Primer: MPI #79.
    - a. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1 **OR E2, as directed.**
  - 6. Quick-Dry Alkyd Metal Primer: MPI #76.
    - a. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1 **OR E2 OR E3, as directed.**
  - 7. Cementitious Galvanized-Metal Primer: MPI #26.
    - a. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1 **OR E2 OR E3, as directed.**
  - 8. Waterborne Galvanized-Metal Primer: MPI #134.
    - a. Environmental Characteristics:
      - 1) VOC Content:
        - a) Minimum E Range of E1 **OR E2 OR E3, as directed.**
        - b) Meets or exceeds LEED requirements for VOC content.
      - 2) Environmental Performance Rating (EPR): Minimum EPR 1 **OR 2 OR 3, as directed.**
  - 9. Quick-Drying Primer for Aluminum: MPI #95.
    - a. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1 **OR E2 OR E3, as directed.**
  - 10. Vinyl Wash Primer: MPI #80.
    - a. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E2 **OR E3, as directed.**
- E. Water-Based, Light-Industrial Coatings
  - 1. Gloss, Water-Based, Light-Industrial Coating: MPI #110-G6.
    - a. Environmental Characteristics:
      - 1) VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E2.
      - 2) Environmental Performance Rating (EPR): Minimum EPR 2.
  - 2. Semigloss, Water-Based, Light-Industrial Coating: MPI #110-G5.
    - a. Environmental Characteristics:
      - 1) VOC Content:
        - a) Minimum E Range of E2 **OR E3, as directed.**
        - b) Meets or exceeds LEED requirements for VOC content.
      - 2) Environmental Performance Rating (EPR): Minimum EPR 2 **OR 3, as directed.**
  - 3. Eggshell, Water-Based, Light-Industrial Coating: MPI #110-G3.
    - a. Environmental Characteristics:
      - 1) VOC Content:
        - a) Minimum E Range of E2 **OR E3, as directed.**
        - b) Meets or exceeds LEED requirements for VOC content.
      - 2) Environmental Performance Rating (EPR): Minimum EPR 2 **OR 3, as directed.**



## F. Epoxy Coatings

1. Epoxy, Cold-Cured, Gloss: MPI #77.
  - a. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
2. Water-Based Epoxy (Interior and Exterior): MPI #115.
  - a. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
3. High-Build Epoxy Marine Coating, Low Gloss: MPI #108.
  - a. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
4. Epoxy Deck Coating: MPI #82.
  - a. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
5. Water-Based Epoxy Floor Paint: MPI #93.
  - a. Environmental Characteristics:
    - 1) VOC Content:
      - a) Minimum E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
      - b) Meets or exceeds LEED requirements for VOC content.
    - 2) Environmental Performance Rating (EPR): Minimum EPR 1 **OR** 2 **OR** 3, **as directed**.

## G. Polyurethane Coatings

1. Polyurethane, Two-Component, Pigmented, Gloss: MPI #72.
  - a. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
2. Two-Component, Aliphatic Polyurethane, Clear: MPI #78.
  - a. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
3. Polyurethane, Moisture Cured, Clear, Gloss: MPI #31.
  - a. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
4. Polyurethane, Moisture Cured, Clear, Flat: MPI #71.
  - a. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E2.

## H. Interior High-Performance Architectural Latex Coatings

1. High-Performance Architectural Latex, Velvet Finish: MPI #138, Gloss Level 2.
  - a. Environmental Characteristics:
    - 1) VOC Content:
      - a) Minimum E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
      - b) Meets or exceeds LEED requirements for VOC content.
    - 2) Environmental Performance Rating (EPR): Minimum EPR 4 **OR** 5 **OR** 6, **as directed**.
2. High-Performance Architectural Latex, Eggshell Finish: MPI #139, Gloss Level 3.
  - a. Environmental Characteristics:
    - 1) VOC Content:
      - a) Minimum E Range of E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
      - b) Meets or exceeds LEED requirements for VOC content.
    - 2) Environmental Performance Rating (EPR): Minimum EPR 5 **OR** 6, **as directed**.
3. High-Performance Architectural Latex, Satin Finish: MPI #140, Gloss Level 4.
  - a. Environmental Characteristics:
    - 1) VOC Content:
      - a) Minimum E Range of E1 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
      - b) Meets or exceeds LEED requirements for VOC content.
    - 2) Environmental Performance Rating (EPR): Minimum EPR 4.5 **OR** 6.5, **as directed**.
4. High-Performance Architectural Latex, Semigloss Finish: MPI #141, Gloss Level 5.
  - a. Environmental Characteristics:
    - 1) VOC Content:
      - a) Minimum E Range of E1 **OR** E2 **OR** E3, **as directed**.
      - b) Meets or exceeds LEED requirements for VOC content.
    - 2) Environmental Performance Rating (EPR): Minimum EPR 5 **OR** 6 **OR** 7, **as directed**.

## I. Wood Stains



1. Exterior Semitransparent Stain (Solvent Based): MPI #13.
  - a. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1 **OR** E2, **as directed**.
2. Interior Wood Stain, Semitransparent (Solvent Based): MPI #90.
  - a. VOC Content: Minimum E Range of E1 **OR** E2, **as directed**.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Preparation

1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates indicated.
2. Remove plates, machined surfaces, and similar items already in place that are not to be coated. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and coating.
  - a. After completing coating operations, reinstall items that were removed; use workers skilled in the trades involved.
3. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of coatings, including dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
  - a. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers as required to produce coating systems indicated.
4. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not coat surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be coated exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Clean surfaces with pressurized water. Use pressure range of 1500 to 4000 psi (10 350 to 27 580 kPa) at 6 to 12 inches (150 to 300 mm) **OR** 4000 to 10,000 psi (27 580 to 68 950 kPa), **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Abrasive blast clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-Off Blast Cleaning."
5. Clay Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not coat surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be coated exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Clean surfaces with pressurized water. Use pressure range of 100 to 600 psi (690 to 4140 kPa) **OR** 1500 to 4000 psi (10 350 to 27 580 kPa), **as directed**, at 6 to 12 inches (150 to 300 mm).
6. CMU Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not coat surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be coated exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
7. Steel Substrates (for field applied primers): Remove rust and loose mill scale.
  - a. Clean using methods recommended in writing by coating manufacturer.  
  
Blast clean according to SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning **OR** SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning **OR** SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-Off Blast Cleaning **OR** SSPC-SP 10/NACE No. 2, "Near-White Blast Cleaning," **as directed**.
8. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal fabricated from coil stock by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied coatings.
9. Aluminum Substrates: Remove surface oxidation.
10. Wood Substrates:
  - a. Scrape and clean small, dry, seasoned knots, and apply a thin coat of knot sealer before applying primer.
  - b. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view and dust off.
  - c. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and back sides of wood.
  - d. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.

**B. Application**

1. Apply high-performance coatings according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Use applicators and techniques suited for coating and substrate indicated.
  - b. Coat surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, coat surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
  - c. Coat back sides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
2. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of the same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of finish coat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
3. If undercoats or other conditions show through final coat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform coating finish, color, and appearance.
4. Apply coatings to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Produce sharp glass lines and color breaks.

**C. Field Quality Control**

1. The following procedure may be requested at any time and as often as the Owner deems necessary during the period when coatings are being applied:
  - a. Engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample coating material being used. Samples of material delivered to Project site will be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in presence of Contractor.
  - b. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with specified requirements.
  - c. the Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying coatings if test results show materials being used do not comply with specified requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying coating materials from Project site, pay for testing, and recoat surfaces coated with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously coated surfaces if, on recoating with complying materials, the two coatings are incompatible.

**D. Cleaning And Protection**

1. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
2. After completing coating application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered coatings by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
3. Protect work of other trades against damage from coating operation. Correct damage by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and recoating, as approved by the Owner, and leave in an undamaged condition.
4. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced coated surfaces.

**E. Exterior High-Performance Coating Schedule**

1. Coating systems in this Article are based on "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual." For renovation projects, consult "MPI Maintenance Repainting Manual" and revise coating systems accordingly.
2. Concrete Substrates, Vertical Surfaces:
  - a. Water-Based, Light-Industrial Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI EXT 3.1C):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110, gloss matching topcoat.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110, gloss matching topcoat, **as directed**.
    - 3) Topcoat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110-G6, gloss **OR** 5, semigloss **OR** 3, eggshell, **as directed**.
  - b. Epoxy Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI EXT 3.1D):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.



- 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77, **as directed**.
- 3) Topcoat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
- c. Water-Based Epoxy Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI EXT 3.1E):
  - 1) Prime Coat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.
  - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115, **as directed**.
  - 3) Topcoat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.
3. Concrete Substrates, Horizontal Surfaces (System below corresponds to MPI EXT 3.2C):
  - a. Epoxy Slip-Resistant Deck Coating System:
    - 1) Topcoat: Epoxy deck coating, MPI #82.
4. Clay-Masonry Substrates (System below corresponds to MPI EXT 4.1C):
  - a. Water-Based, Light-Industrial Coating System:
    - 1) Prime Coat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110, gloss matching topcoat.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110, gloss matching topcoat, **as directed**.
    - 3) Topcoat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110-G6, gloss **OR** 5, semigloss **OR** 3, eggshell, **as directed**.
  - b. Epoxy Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI EXT 4.1D) (MPI recommends this system for smooth brick.):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat : Not required **OR** Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77, **as directed**.
    - 3) Topcoat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
  - c. Water-Based Epoxy Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI EXT 4.1E) (MPI recommends this system for smooth brick.):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115, **as directed**.
    - 3) Topcoat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.
  - d. Polyurethane, Pigmented, Over Epoxy Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI EXT 4.1J):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
    - 3) Topcoat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.
5. CMU Substrates:
  - a. Water-Based, Light-Industrial Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI EXT 4.2C):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Interior/exterior latex block filler, MPI #4.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110, gloss matching topcoat, **as directed**.
    - 3) Topcoat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110-G6, gloss **OR** 5, semigloss **OR** 3, eggshell, **as directed**.
  - b. Epoxy Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI EXT 4.2E):
    - 1) Block Filler: Epoxy block filler, MPI #116.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77, **as directed**.
    - 3) Topcoat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
  - c. Water-Based Epoxy Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI EXT 4.2F):
    - 1) Block Filler: Epoxy block filler, MPI #116.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115, **as directed**.
    - 3) Topcoat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.



- d. Polyurethane, Pigmented, Over High-Build Epoxy Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI EXT 4.2G):
  - 1) Block Filler: Epoxy block filler, MPI #116.
  - 2) Intermediate Coat: High-build epoxy marine coating, low gloss, MPI #108.
  - 3) Topcoat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.
- 6. Steel Substrates:
  - a. Water-Based, Light-Industrial Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI EXT 5.1B, MPI EXT 5.1C, MPI EXT 5.1M and MPI EXT 5.1N, depending on primer selected):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Inorganic zinc primer, MPI #19 **OR** Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer, MPI #79 **OR** Rust-inhibitive primer, (water based), MPI #107 **OR** Cold-curing epoxy primer, MPI #101, **as directed**, primer.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110, gloss matching topcoat (intermediate coat is required for coating systems except MPI Custom Grade system using inorganic zinc primer).
    - 3) Topcoat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110-G6, gloss **OR** 5, semigloss **OR** 3, eggshell, **as directed**.
  - b. High-Build Epoxy Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI EXT 5.1F):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Cold-curing epoxy primer, MPI #101.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: High-build epoxy marine coating, low gloss, MPI #108.
    - 3) Topcoat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
  - c. Water-Based Epoxy Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI EXT 5.1E):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Rust-inhibitive primer, (water based), MPI #107.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.
    - 3) Topcoat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.
  - d. Polyurethane, Pigmented, Over Epoxy Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI EXT 5.1H):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Cold-curing epoxy primer, MPI #101.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
    - 3) First Topcoat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.
    - 4) Second Topcoat (for Premium Grade system): Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.
  - e. Polyurethane, Pigmented, Over Epoxy Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI EXT 5.1P)
    - 1) Prime Coat: Epoxy zinc primer, MPI#20.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
    - 3) First Topcoat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.
    - 4) Second Topcoat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.
  - f. Polyurethane, Pigmented, Over High-Build Epoxy Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI EXT 5.1G):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Epoxy zinc primer, MPI#20.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: High-build epoxy marine coating, low gloss, MPI #108.
    - 3) First Topcoat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.
    - 4) Second Topcoat (for Premium Grade system): Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.
  - g. Polyurethane, Pigmented, Over High-Build Epoxy Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI EXT 5.1J):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Cold-curing epoxy primer, MPI #101.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: High-build epoxy marine coating, low gloss, MPI #108.
    - 3) First Topcoat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.
    - 4) Second Topcoat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.
  - h. Polyurethane, Pigmented, Over High-Build Epoxy Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI EXT 5.1L):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Inorganic zinc primer, MPI #19.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: High-build epoxy marine coating, low gloss, MPI #108.
    - 3) First Topcoat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.



- 4) Second Topcoat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.
7. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:
  - a. Water-Based, Light-Industrial Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI EXT 5.3G and MPI EXT 5.3J, depending on primer selected):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Cementitious galvanized-metal primer, MPI #26 **OR** Waterborne galvanized-metal primer, MPI #134, **as directed**.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat (for Premium Grade system): Not required **OR** Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110, gloss matching topcoat, **as directed**.
    - 3) Topcoat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110-G6, gloss **OR** 5, semigloss **OR** 3, eggshell, **as directed**.
  - b. Epoxy Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI EXT 5.3C) (MPI recommends this system for high-contact and -traffic areas.):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Cold-curing epoxy primer, MPI #101.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat (for Premium Grade system): Not required **OR** Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77, **as directed**.
    - 3) Topcoat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
  - c. Polyurethane, Pigmented Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI EXT 5.3D) (MPI recommends these systems for high-contact and -traffic areas.):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Vinyl wash primer, MPI #80.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Cold-curing epoxy primer, MPI #101, **as directed**.
    - 3) First Topcoat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.
    - 4) Second Topcoat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.
  - d. Polyurethane, Pigmented Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI EXT 5.3L):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Cold-curing epoxy primer, MPI #101.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72, **as directed**.
    - 3) First Topcoat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.
    - 4) Second Topcoat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.
8. Aluminum (Not Anodized or Otherwise Coated) Substrates:
  - a. Water-Based, Light-Industrial Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI EXT 5.4G):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Quick-drying primer for aluminum, MPI #95.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110, gloss matching topcoat, **as directed**.
    - 3) Topcoat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110-G6, gloss **OR** 5, semigloss **OR** 3, eggshell, **as directed**.
  - b. Epoxy Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI EXT 5.4E):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Vinyl wash primer, MPI #80.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat (for Premium Grade system): Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
    - 3) Topcoat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
  - c. Polyurethane, Pigmented Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI EXT 5.4B) (MPI recommends these systems for high-contact and -traffic areas.):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Vinyl wash primer, MPI #80.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Cold-curing epoxy primer, MPI #101.
    - 3) First Topcoat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.
    - 4) Second Topcoat (for Premium Grade system): Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.
9. Wood Substrates:
  - a. Pigmented Polyurethane Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI EXT 6.1J, MPI EXT 6.2J, and MPI EXT 6.3H):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.
    - 3) Topcoat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.





- b. Polyurethane, Clear, Two-Component Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI EXT 6.1E for use on glue-laminated beams and columns):
- 1) Stain Coat: Exterior semitransparent stain (solvent based), MPI #13.
  - 2) Intermediate Coat: Two-component, aliphatic polyurethane, clear, MPI #78.
  - 3) First Topcoat: Two-component, aliphatic polyurethane, clear, MPI #78.
  - 4) Second Topcoat (for Premium Grade systems): Two-component, aliphatic polyurethane, clear, MPI #78.
- F. Interior High-Performance Coating Schedule
1. Coating systems in this Article are based on "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual." For renovation projects, consult "MPI Maintenance Repainting Manual" and revise coating systems accordingly.
  2. Concrete Substrates, Vertical Surfaces (System below corresponds to MPI INT 3.1C):
    - a. High-Performance Architectural Latex Coating System:
      - 1) Prime Coat: Interior latex primer/sealer, MPI #50.
      - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** High-performance architectural latex matching topcoat, **as directed**.
      - 3) Topcoat: High-performance architectural latex, velvet finish, MPI #138, Gloss Level 2 **OR** eggshell finish, MPI #139, Gloss Level 3 **OR** satin finish, MPI #140, Gloss Level 4 **OR** semigloss finish, MPI #141, Gloss Level 5, **as directed**.
    - b. Water-Based, Light-Industrial Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 3.1L):
      - 1) Prime Coat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110, gloss matching topcoat.
      - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110, gloss matching topcoat, **as directed**.
      - 3) Topcoat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110-G6, gloss **OR** 5, semigloss **OR** 3, eggshell, **as directed**.
    - c. Epoxy Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 3.1F.) (MPI recommends this system for smooth concrete.):
      - 1) Prime Coat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
      - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77, **as directed**.
      - 3) Topcoat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
    - d. Water-Based Epoxy Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 3.1G) (MPI recommends this system for smooth concrete.):
      - 1) Prime Coat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.
      - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115, **as directed**.
      - 3) Topcoat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.
  3. Concrete Substrates, Horizontal Surfaces.
    - a. Epoxy Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 3.2C):
      - 1) Prime Coat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
      - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77, **as directed**.
      - 3) Topcoat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
    - b. Water-Based Epoxy Floor Paint Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 3.2L).
      - 1) Prime Coat: Water-based epoxy floor paint, MPI #93.
      - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Water-based epoxy floor paint, MPI #93, **as directed**.
      - 3) Topcoat: Water-based epoxy floor paint, MPI #93.
    - c. Polyurethane, Pigmented Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 3.2D):
      - 1) Prime Coat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
      - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72, **as directed**.



- 3) Topcoat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.
- d. Polyurethane, Clear, Two-Component Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 3.2K):
  - 1) Prime Coat: Two-component, aliphatic polyurethane, clear, MPI #78.
  - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Two-component, aliphatic polyurethane, clear, MPI #78, **as directed**.
  - 3) Topcoat: Two-component, aliphatic polyurethane, clear, MPI #78.
4. Clay-Masonry Substrates:
  - a. High-Performance Architectural Latex Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 4.1L):
    - 1) Prime Coat: High-performance architectural latex matching topcoat.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** High-performance architectural latex matching topcoat, **as directed**.
    - 3) Topcoat: High-performance architectural latex, velvet finish, MPI #138, Gloss Level 2 **OR** eggshell finish, MPI #139, Gloss Level 3 **OR** satin finish, MPI #140, Gloss Level 4 **OR** semigloss finish, MPI #141, Gloss Level 5, **as directed**.
  - b. Water-Based, Light-Industrial Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 4.1C):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110, gloss matching topcoat.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110, gloss matching topcoat, **as directed**.
    - 3) Topcoat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110-G6, gloss **OR** 5, semigloss **OR** 3, eggshell, **as directed**.
  - c. Epoxy Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 4.1F) (MPI recommends this system for smooth brick.):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77, **as directed**.
    - 3) Topcoat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
  - d. Water-Based Epoxy Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 4.1G) (MPI recommends this system for smooth brick.):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115, **as directed**.
    - 3) Topcoat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.
  - e. Polyurethane, Clear, Two-Component Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 4.1K):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Two-component, aliphatic polyurethane, clear, MPI #78.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Two-component, aliphatic polyurethane, clear, MPI #78, **as directed**.
    - 3) Topcoat: Two-component, aliphatic polyurethane, clear, MPI #78.
5. CMU Substrates:
  - a. High-Performance Architectural Latex Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 4.2D):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Interior/exterior latex block filler, MPI #4.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** High-performance architectural latex matching topcoat, **as directed**.
    - 3) Topcoat: High-performance architectural latex, velvet finish, MPI #138, Gloss Level 2 **OR** eggshell finish, MPI #139, Gloss Level 3 **OR** satin finish, MPI #140, Gloss Level 4 **OR** semigloss finish, MPI #141, Gloss Level 5, **as directed**.
  - b. Water-Based, Light-Industrial Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 4.2K):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Interior/exterior latex block filler, MPI #4.



- 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110, gloss matching topcoat, **as directed**.
  - 3) Topcoat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110-G6, gloss **OR** 5, semigloss **OR** 3, eggshell, **as directed**.
  - c. Epoxy Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 4.2F and MPI INT 4.2G, depending on primer selected) (MPI recommends these systems for dry environments.):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Interior/exterior latex block filler, MPI #4 **OR** Epoxy block filler, MPI #116, **as directed**.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77, **as directed**.
    - 3) Topcoat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
  - d. Water-Based Epoxy Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 4.2J) (MPI recommends this system for wet environments.):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Interior/exterior latex block filler, MPI #4.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115, **as directed**.
    - 3) Topcoat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.
6. Steel Substrates:
- a. High-Performance Architectural Latex Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 5.1R):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer, MPI #79 **OR** Quick-dry alkyd metal primer, MPI #76, **as directed**.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** High-performance architectural latex matching topcoat, **as directed**.
    - 3) Topcoat: High-performance architectural latex, velvet finish, MPI #138, Gloss Level 2 **OR** eggshell finish, MPI #139, Gloss Level 3 **OR** satin finish, MPI #140, Gloss Level 4 **OR** semigloss finish, MPI #141, Gloss Level 5, **as directed**.
  - b. Water-Based, Light-Industrial Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 5.1B and MPI INT 5.1N, depending on primer selected.):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Rust-inhibitive primer (water based), MPI #107 **OR** Cold-curing epoxy primer, MPI #101, **as directed**.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110, gloss matching topcoat, **as directed**.
    - 3) Topcoat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110-G6, gloss **OR** 5, semigloss **OR** 3, eggshell, **as directed**.
  - c. High-Build Epoxy Coating System - Premium Grade (System below corresponds to MPI INT 5.1P):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Epoxy zinc primer, MPI#20.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: High-build epoxy marine coating, low gloss, MPI #108.
    - 3) Topcoat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
  - d. High-Build Epoxy Coating System – Custom Grade (System below corresponds to MPI INT 5.1P):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Epoxy zinc primer, MPI#20.
    - 2) Topcoat: High-build epoxy marine coating, low gloss, MPI #108.
  - e. Epoxy Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 5.1L):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Cold-curing epoxy primer, MPI #101.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77, **as directed**.
    - 3) Topcoat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
  - f. Water-Based Epoxy Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 5.1K):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Rust-inhibitive primer (water based), MPI #107.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.
    - 3) Topcoat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.
  - g. Polyurethane, Pigmented Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 5.1F):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Cold-curing epoxy primer, MPI #101.



- 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72, **as directed**.
- 3) Topcoat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.
- h. Polyurethane, Pigmented Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 5.1H):
  - 1) Prime Coat: Inorganic zinc primer, MPI #19.
  - 2) Intermediate Coat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
  - 3) Topcoat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.
- i. Polyurethane, Pigmented Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 5.1J):
  - 1) Prime Coat: Epoxy zinc primer, MPI#20.
  - 2) Intermediate Coat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
  - 3) Topcoat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.
- j. Polyurethane, Pigmented, Over High-Build Epoxy Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 5.1G):
  - 1) Prime Coat: Cold-curing epoxy primer, MPI #101.
  - 2) Intermediate Coat: High-build epoxy marine coating, low gloss, MPI #108.
  - 3) Topcoat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.
7. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:
  - a. High-Performance Architectural Latex Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 5.3M):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Waterborne galvanized-metal primer, MPI #134.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** High-performance architectural latex matching topcoat, **as directed**.
    - 3) Topcoat: High-performance architectural latex, velvet finish, MPI #138, Gloss Level 2 **OR** eggshell finish, MPI #139, Gloss Level 3 **OR** satin finish, MPI #140, Gloss Level 4 **OR** semigloss finish, MPI #141, Gloss Level 5, **as directed**.
  - b. Water-Based, Light-Industrial Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 5.3B and MPI INT 5.3K, depending on primer selected.):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Cementitious galvanized-metal primer, MPI #26 **OR** Waterborne galvanized-metal primer, MPI #134, **as directed**.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110, gloss matching topcoat, **as directed**.
    - 3) Topcoat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110-G6, gloss **OR** 5, semigloss **OR** 3, eggshell, **as directed**.
  - c. Epoxy Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 5.3D):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Cold-curing epoxy primer, MPI #101.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77, **as directed**.
    - 3) Topcoat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
8. Aluminum (Not Anodized or Otherwise Coated) Substrates (System below corresponds to MPI INT 5.4F):
  - a. High-Performance Architectural Latex Coating System:
    - 1) Prime Coat: Quick-drying primer for aluminum, MPI #95.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** High-performance architectural latex, matching topcoat, **as directed**.
    - 3) Topcoat: High-performance architectural latex, velvet finish, MPI #138, Gloss Level 2 **OR** eggshell finish, MPI #139, Gloss Level 3 **OR** satin finish, MPI #140, Gloss Level 4 **OR** semigloss finish, MPI #141, Gloss Level 5, **as directed**.
  - b. Water-Based, Light-Industrial Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 5.4E):
    - 1) Prime Coat: Quick-drying primer for aluminum, MPI #95.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110, gloss matching topcoat, **as directed**.
    - 3) Topcoat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110-G6, gloss **OR** 5, semigloss **OR** 3, eggshell, **as directed**.
  - c. Epoxy Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 5.4B):



- 1) Prime Coat: Vinyl wash primer, MPI #80.
  - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77, **as directed**.
  - 3) Topcoat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
- d. Polyurethane, Pigmented Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 5.4C):
- 1) Prime Coat: Vinyl wash primer, MPI #80.
  - 2) Intermediate Coat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
  - 3) Topcoat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.
9. Wood Substrates:
- a. High-Performance Architectural Latex Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 6.1N, MPI INT 6.3A, and MPI INT 6.4S):
- 1) Prime Coat: Interior latex-based wood primer, MPI #39.
  - 2) Intermediate Coat: High-performance architectural latex matching topcoat.
  - 3) Topcoat: High-performance architectural latex, velvet finish, MPI #138, Gloss Level 2 **OR** eggshell finish, MPI #139, Gloss Level 3 **OR** satin finish, MPI #140, Gloss Level 4 **OR** semigloss finish, MPI #141, Gloss Level 5, **as directed**.
- b. Water-Based, Light-Industrial Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 6.3P and MPI INT 6.4N):
- 1) Prime Coat: Interior alkyd primer/sealer, MPI #45.
  - 2) Intermediate Coat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110, gloss matching topcoat.
  - 3) Topcoat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110-G6, gloss **OR** 5, semigloss **OR** 3, eggshell, **as directed**.
- c. Epoxy Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 6.1L and MPI INT 6.3L):
- 1) Prime Coat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
  - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77, **as directed**.
  - 3) Topcoat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
- d. Pigmented Polyurethane Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 6.1E):
- 1) Prime Coat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.
  - 2) Intermediate Coat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.
  - 3) Topcoat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss, MPI #72.
- e. Polyurethane, Clear, Moisture-Cured Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 6.1S, MPI INT 6.2N, MPI INT 6.3Y, and MPI INT 6.4V):
- 1) Stain Coat: Interior wood stain, semitransparent (solvent based), MPI #90.
  - 2) Intermediate Coat: Polyurethane, moisture cured, clear, flat, MPI #71 **OR** Polyurethane, moisture cured, clear, gloss, MPI #31, **as directed**.
  - 3) First Topcoat: Polyurethane, moisture cured, clear, flat, MPI #71 **OR** Polyurethane, moisture cured, clear, gloss, MPI #31, **as directed**.
  - 4) Second Topcoat: Not required **OR** Polyurethane, moisture cured, clear, flat, MPI #71 **OR** Polyurethane, moisture cured, clear, gloss, MPI #31, **as directed**.
- f. Polyurethane, Clear, Moisture-Cured Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 6.3X):
- 1) Intermediate Coat: Polyurethane, moisture cured, clear, flat, MPI #71 **OR** Polyurethane, moisture cured, clear, gloss, MPI #31, **as directed**.
  - 2) First Topcoat: Polyurethane, moisture cured, clear, flat, MPI #71 **OR** Polyurethane, moisture cured, clear, gloss, MPI #31, **as directed**.
  - 3) Second Topcoat: Not required **OR** Polyurethane, moisture cured, clear, flat, MPI #71 **OR** Polyurethane, moisture cured, clear, gloss, MPI #31, **as directed**.
- g. Polyurethane, Clear, Two-Component Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 6.3Z):
- 1) Stain Coat: Exterior semitransparent stain (solvent based), MPI #13.
  - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Two-component, aliphatic polyurethane, clear, MPI #78, **as directed**.
  - 3) Topcoat: Two-component, aliphatic polyurethane, clear, MPI #78.
10. Gypsum Board Substrates:



- a. High-Performance Architectural Latex Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 9.2B):
  - 1) Prime Coat: Interior latex primer/sealer, MPI #50.
  - 2) Intermediate Coat: High-performance architectural latex matching topcoat.
  - 3) Topcoat: High-performance architectural latex, velvet finish, MPI #138, Gloss Level 2 **OR** eggshell finish, MPI #139, Gloss Level 3 **OR** satin finish, MPI #140, Gloss Level 4 **OR** semigloss finish, MPI #141, Gloss Level 5, **as directed**.
- b. Water-Based, Light-Industrial Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 9.2L):
  - 1) Prime Coat: Interior latex primer/sealer, MPI #50.
  - 2) Intermediate Coat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110, gloss matching topcoat.
  - 3) Topcoat: Water-based, light-industrial coating, MPI #110-G6, gloss **OR** 5, semigloss **OR** 3, eggshell, **as directed**.
- c. Epoxy Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 9.2E):
  - 1) Prime Coat: Interior latex primer/sealer, MPI #50.
  - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77, **as directed**.
  - 3) Topcoat: Epoxy, cold-cured, gloss, MPI #77.
- d. Water-Based Epoxy Coating System (System below corresponds to MPI INT 9.2F):
  - 1) Prime Coat: Interior latex primer/sealer, MPI #50.
  - 2) Intermediate Coat: Not required **OR** Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115, **as directed**.
  - 3) Topcoat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.

END OF SECTION 09 96 00 00



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
09 96 53 00	09 91 13 00	Exterior Painting

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



**SECTION 09 96 56 00 - FIBERGLASS REINFORCED EPOXY COATING****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for fiberglass reinforced epoxy coating. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Submittals**

1. Product Data: For each coating system specified.

**C. Material Storage**

1. Store materials in a temperature controlled environment (50°F - 90°F) and out of direct sunlight.
2. Keep resins, hardeners, and solvents separated from each other and away from sources of ignition. One year shelf life is expected for products stored between 50°F - 90°F.

**1.2 PRODUCTS****A. Materials**

1. Multi-Layer, High Build Wall and Ceiling Surfacing System
  - a. Primer
    - 1) Water-based epoxy base coating.
  - b. Base Coat
    - 1) High performance epoxy coating.
  - c. Fiberglass Mesh Reinforcement
    - 1) Bound fiberglass cloth, 5.6 oz.
  - d. Saturant
    - 1) High performance epoxy coating.
  - e. Level Coat
    - 1) High performance epoxy coating.
  - f. Chemical Resistant Finish Coat
    - 1) 100% solids polyurethane.

**1.3 EXECUTION****A. Primer**

1. Mixing and Application: Water Based Epoxy Wall Coating should only be used on unpainted, porous surfaces. If the surface is painted with latex or an epoxy coating, clean and abrade the surface then apply the primer.
2. Premix resin and hardener separately, using a low speed drill and Jiffy mixer. Mix for three minutes and until uniform, exercising caution not to whip air into the materials.
3. Add 2 parts resin to 1 part hardener, mix with low speed drill and Jiffy mixer for three minutes and until uniform. Apply material using a 1/4" short nap roller at a spread rate of 300-350 sq. ft. per gallon to yield 5 mils WFT.
4. Allow to cure for a minimum of 3 hours depending upon air movement. Lightly "pole sand" smooth rough edges of the flake before applying base coat.

**B. Base Coat**

1. Mixing and Application



- a. Premix resin and hardener separately, using a low speed drill and Jiffy mixer. Mix for three minutes and until uniform, exercising caution not to introduce air into the material.
  - b. Add 3 parts resin to 1 part hardener by volume. Mix with low speed drill and Jiffy mixer for three minutes and until uniform. To insure proper system cure and performance, strictly follow mix ratio recommendations.
  - c. Base coat may be applied via spray, roller or brush. Apply using a 1/4" nap roller at a spread rate of 200-250 sq. ft. per gallon to yield 6-8 mils WFT evenly with no runs. Coverage will vary depending upon porosity of the substrate and surface texture.
- C. Fiberglass Reinforcement
1. Apply 5.6 oz. bound fiberglass cloth for walls and 4 oz. for ceilings directly into wet resin. Do not allow material to cure or recoating will be necessary.
  2. Hang fiberglass cloth directly to the wall similar to hanging wallpaper so seams are uniform and even. Overlap each strip using a double cut method. Remove the trimmed material behind the front strip.
  3. After hand affixing to wall, use a broad knife to remove air pockets, wrinkles or any irregularities.
- D. Saturant Coat
1. Mixing and Application
    - a. Premix resin and hardener separately, using a low speed drill and Jiffy mixer. Mix for three minutes and until uniform, exercising caution not to introduce air into the material.
    - b. Add 3 parts 3548PA (resin) to 1 part 3548B (hardener) by volume. Mix with low speed drill and Jiffy mixer for three minutes and until uniform. To insure proper system cure and performance, strictly follow mix ratio recommendations.
    - c. Saturant coat may be applied via spray, roller or brush. Apply at a spread rate of 250-400 sq. ft. per gallon to yield 4-6 mils WFT evenly with no runs. Allow to cure overnight (minimum 10 hours) before lightly sanding seams, bumps and other imperfections with 60-80 grit sandpaper caused by the saturant coat.
- E. Level Coat
1. Mixing and Application
    - a. Apply leveling coat as described in previous step.
    - b. Allow to cure overnight.
    - c. An additional level coat may be applied.
    - d. Sand any imperfections prior to applying finish coat.
- F. Finish Coat
1. Mixing and Application
    - a. Premix resin using a low speed drill and Jiffy mixer. Mix for three minutes and until uniform, exercising caution not to introduce air into the material.
    - b. Add 1 part resin to 1 part hardener by volume. Mix with low speed drill and Jiffy mixer for three minutes and until uniform. To insure proper system cure and performance, strictly follow mix ratio recommendations.
    - c. Finish coat may be applied via spray, roller or brush. Apply using a 1/4" nap non-shedding, urethane enamel roller at a spread rate of 250-400 sq. ft. per gallon to yield 4-6 WFT mils evenly with no runs. If second coat is required, the surface must be abraded with 80-120 grit paper or screen and tack wiped prior to second application.
    - d. Allow to cure 48 hours for water exposure and 7 days for chemical exposure. In cool and/or high humidity conditions, a surface film may form which can be washed with soap and water.

END OF SECTION 09 96 56 00



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
09 96 56 00	09 96 00 00	High-Performance Coatings

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 09 96 66 00 - CEMENTITIOUS COATINGS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for cementitious coatings. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section includes surface preparation and application of cementitious coating systems on the following substrates:
  - a. Exterior and Interior concrete.
  - b. Exterior and Interior concrete masonry units.
  - c. Exterior and Interior brick.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.2: For paints and coatings, including printed statement of VOC content and chemical components.
3. Samples: In each color and gloss of finish coat indicated.
  - a. Submit Samples on rigid backing **OR** actual substrate, **as directed**, not less than 4 by 8 inches (100 by 200 mm), with mortar joint in center, **as directed**.
  - b. Step coats on Samples to show each coat required for system.
  - c. Label each coat of each Sample.
4. Material Certificates: For each cementitious coating, from manufacturer.
5. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency or by a qualified testing agency, for each product formulation.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Source Limitations: Obtain cementitious coating materials from single source from single manufacturer.
2. Mockups: Apply benchmark samples of coating system indicated and each color and finish selected to verify preliminary selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
  - a. Architect will select one actual substrate of each type to represent surfaces and conditions for application of coating.
    - 1) Wall Surfaces: Prepare samples of at least 100 sq. ft. (9.3 sq. m).
  - b. Apply benchmark samples after permanent lighting and other environmental services have been activated.
  - c. Final approval of color selections will be based on benchmark samples.
    - 1) If preliminary color selections are not approved, apply additional benchmark samples of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.

#### E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver materials to Project site in manufacturer's original, new, unopened packages and containers bearing manufacturer's name and label, and the following information:
  - a. Product name or title of material.
  - b. Manufacturer's stock number and date of manufacture.
  - c. Contents by volume, for pigment and vehicle constituents.
  - d. Application instructions.



- e. Color name and number.
- f. Handling instructions and precautions.
2. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in a well-ventilated area at a minimum ambient temperature of 45 deg F (7 deg C). Maintain containers used in storage of coatings in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  - a. Protect cementitious coating materials from freezing. Keep materials dry and storage area neat and orderly. Remove waste daily. Take necessary measures to ensure that workers and work areas are protected from health hazards resulting from handling, mixing, and applying the coating.

#### F. Project Conditions

1. Apply coatings only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F (10 and 35 deg C).
2. Do not apply coatings when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Cementitious Coatings

1. Polymer-Modified Cementitious Coating: Containing portland cement, polymer, and hydrated lime or aggregates.
2. Performance Requirements: Comply with the following:
  - a. Compressive Strength: Not less than 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) at 28 days according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
  - b. Tensile Strength: Not less than 350 psi (2.41 MPa) at 28 days according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
  - c. Flexural Strength: as directed by the Owner.
  - d. Adhesion: as directed by the Owner.
  - e. Permeance: as directed by the Owner.
  - f. Accelerated Weathering: as directed by the Owner.
  - g. UV Resistance: as directed by the Owner.
  - h. Salt-Spray Resistance: as directed by the Owner.
3. Other Materials: Provide crack fillers, block fillers, and related materials that are compatible with cementitious finish-coat materials and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
4. Chemical Components of Field-Applied Interior Paints and Coatings: Provide products that comply with the following limits for VOC content, exclusive of colorants added to a tint base, when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24) and the following chemical restrictions:
  - a. Flat Paints and Coatings: VOC content of not more than 50 g/L.
  - b. Nonflat Paints and Coatings: VOC content of not more than 150 g/L.
5. Chemical Components of Interior Paints and Coatings: Provide topcoat paints that comply with the following chemical restrictions:
  - a. Aromatic Compounds: Paints and coatings shall not contain more than 1.0 percent by weight of total aromatic compounds (hydrocarbon compounds containing one or more benzene rings).
  - b. Restricted Components: Paints and coatings shall not contain any of the following:
    - 1) Acrolein.
    - 2) Acrylonitrile.
    - 3) Antimony.
    - 4) Benzene.
    - 5) Butyl benzyl phthalate.
    - 6) Cadmium.
    - 7) Di (2-ethylhexyl) phthalate.



- 8) Di-n-butyl phthalate.
  - 9) Di-n-octyl phthalate.
  - 10) 1,2-dichlorobenzene.
  - 11) Diethyl phthalate.
  - 12) Dimethyl phthalate.
  - 13) Ethylbenzene.
  - 14) Formaldehyde.
  - 15) Hexavalent chromium.
  - 16) Isophorone.
  - 17) Lead.
  - 18) Mercury.
  - 19) Methyl ethyl ketone.
  - 20) Methyl isobutyl ketone.
  - 21) Methylene chloride.
  - 22) Naphthalene.
  - 23) Toluene (methylbenzene).
  - 24) 1,1,1-trichloroethane.
  - 25) Vinyl chloride.
6. Colors: As selected from manufacturer's full range **OR** As indicated in a color schedule, **as directed**.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

1. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
2. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility.
3. Begin coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and surfaces are dry.
  - a. Beginning coating application constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.

#### B. Preparation

1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for mixing and preparing materials and as applicable to substrates indicated.
2. Remove plates, machined surfaces, and similar items already in place that are not to be coated. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and coating.
  - a. After completing coating operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
3. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of coatings, including dirt, oil, grease, incompatible coatings, and loose substrate materials.
4. Cementitious and Masonry Surfaces: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Crack Repair: Fill cracks according to manufacturer's written instructions before coating surfaces.
  - a. Cracks Larger Than 1/32 Inch (0.8 mm): Cut out static cracks, voids, or honeycombing larger than 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) and patch with materials recommended in writing by coating manufacturer. Identify dynamic cracks and treat according to manufacturer's written instructions before beginning application.

#### C. Application

1. Apply coatings according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use applicators and techniques suited for coating and substrate indicated.



- a. Dampen substrate of surfaces to receive cementitious coatings one hour before beginning application to prevent surface drag. Immediately before applying coatings, redampen substrate. Substrates shall be saturated surface dry at time of application.
  - b. Brushes: Use tampico or masonry brushes best suited for material being applied.
  - c. Spray Equipment: Use spray equipment recommended in writing by manufacturer for material and texture required.
2. Apply each material at not less than manufacturer's recommended spreading rate. Provide total cured material thickness indicated or as recommended in writing by manufacturer.
  3. Brush Application: Brush-out and work brush coats into surfaces in an even film, filling all pores and voids at rate recommended in writing by manufacturer to achieve cured material thickness indicated. Finish coat with smooth, horizontal strokes.
  4. Spray Application: Apply each coat according to manufacturer's written instructions to provide the equivalent hiding of brush-applied coats. Follow spray application with a general light brooming of coated surface to impart a slight texture.
- D. Field Quality Control
1. Testing of Coating Materials: Contractor shall invoke the following procedure at any time and as often as necessary during the period when coating operations are being conducted:
    - a. Engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample coating materials being used. Samples of material delivered to Project site will be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in presence of Contractor.
    - b. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with the following product requirements.
      - 1) Quantitative material analysis.
      - 2) Compressive strength.
      - 3) Tensile strength.
      - 4) Flexural strength.
      - 5) Permeance.
      - 6) Accelerated weathering.
    - c. the Owner may direct Contractor to stop coating application if test results show materials being used do not comply with requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying materials from Project site, pay for testing, and recoat surfaces coated with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously coated surfaces if, on recoating with complying materials, the two coatings are incompatible.
- E. Cleaning And Protection
1. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
  2. After completing coating application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered coatings by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
  3. Protect work of other trades against damage from coating application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by the Owner, and leave in an undamaged condition.
  4. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced coated surfaces.
- F. Coating Schedule
1. General: Apply additional coats when undercoats or other conditions show through final coat until cured film is of uniform coating finish, color, and appearance.
  2. Above-Grade Concrete and Masonry: Two finish coats with total cured thickness not less than 40 mils (1.0 mm).
    - a. First Coat: Apply polymer-modified cementitious coating material at the rate of 2 lb/sq. yd. (1 kg/sq. m) to achieve a total cured thickness of 25 mils (0.6 mm).
    - b. Second Coat: Apply polymer-modified cementitious coating material at the rate of 1 lb/sq. yd. (0.5 kg/sq. m) to achieve a total cured thickness of 15 mils (0.4 mm).





- 
3. Surfaces Previously Coated with Polymer-Modified Cementitious Coating: One finish coat with a total cured thickness of not less than 15 mils (0.4 mm).
    - a. Apply polymer-modified cementitious coating material at the rate of 1 lb/sq. yd. (0.5 kg/sq. m) to achieve a total cured thickness of 15 mils (0.4 mm).

END OF SECTION 09 96 66 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
09 97 13 23	09 96 00 00	High-Performance Coatings
09 97 13 24	09 96 00 00	High-Performance Coatings
09 97 26 13	09 96 00 00	High-Performance Coatings
09 97 63 00	09 96 00 00	High-Performance Coatings



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 10 14 53 11 - TRAFFIC SIGNS**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of traffic signs. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## 1.2 PRODUCT

## A. Sign Foundations:

1. Replacement Foundation Footing Concrete shall be a mixture of cement complying with ASTM C 150 and aggregate complying with ASTM C 33. Compressive strength shall be 2,800 psi at 28 days.
2. Sulfur Mortar shall comply with ASTM C 287.
3. Reinforcing Steel shall comply with ASTM A 615.

## B. Sign Supports shall be of the "break-away" type. Supports shall be strong enough to resist applicable wind forces without damage, but shall be designed to experience a brittle rupture type failure or a "quick separation" type joint.

## 1. Sign Support, Aluminum:

- a. Replacement Castings shall be Alloy A356.0-T6 in compliance with ASTM B 108.
- b. Replacement Structural Members shall comply with ASTM B 308.
- c. Replacement Bars, Rods, Shapes, and Tubes shall comply with ASTM B 221, alloy 6061-T6.
- d. Replacement Bolts, Nuts, and Screws shall match items being replaced and shall be alloy 2024-T4 with anodic coating complying with ASTM B 580, or 6061-T6 in compliance with ASTM B 211. Bolt heads shall be hexagon. Bolt threads shall be Class 2, 2A, or 2B in compliance with ANSI B18.2.1. Nuts shall be hexagon shaped in compliance with ANSI B18.2.2.
- e. Replacement washers shall be furnished from sheet metal complying with ASTM B 209, alloy Alclad 2024-T3 or T4.

## 2. Sign Support, Steel:

- a. Replacement Structural Members shall comply with ASTM A 36.
- b. Replacement Bars shall comply with ASTM A 108.
- c. Replacement Pipe shall comply with ASTM A 53 standard weight.
- d. Replacement Fasteners shall comply with ASTM A 307 and ASTM A 325.
- e. Replacement Anchor Bolts for anchoring base plates to concrete bases and nuts and washers shall be galvanized in compliance with ASTM A 153.

## 3. Sign Support, Wood:

- a. Replacement Wood Sign Post shall be of the species listed in AASHTO M168, dressed four sides and having a pyramidal top cut before being treated.
- b. Replacement Sign Post shall be pressure treated with creosote or creosote-tar solution complying with AWPB LP-55.

## C. Sign Face:

1. Replacement Plywood Sign Face shall be grade HDOAB G-1 EXTERIOR, in compliance with DOC PS 1. Material shall be cut to size in compliance with ANSI D6.1E.
2. Replacement Galvanizing Steel Sign Face shall comply with USDOT FHA MUTCD.

## D. Reflective Sheeting shall be enclosed lens unless otherwise directed by the Owner.



1. Enclosed Lens Reflective Sheeting shall comply with Fed. Spec. L-S-300.
  2. Reflective Sheeting shall comply with FP-79 minimum reflective intensity. Measurements shall comply with Fed. Spec. L-S-300.
  3. Color shall be matched visually and within the limits shown on the Color Tolerance Charts issued by the Federal Highway Administration. The diffuse day color of the reflective sheeting shall be determined in compliance with ASTM E 97.
  4. Film:
    - a. General: Reflective sheeting shall be sufficiently flexible to be easily cut to shape and permit application over, and conformance to, moderate shallow embossing characteristic of certain sign borders and symbols.
    - b. Surface: Sheeting surface shall be smooth and flat, shall facilitate cleaning and wet performance, and shall exhibit 85 degrees glossmeter rating of not less than 40, as specified in ASTM D 523. The sheeting surface shall withstand cleaning with gasoline, VM&P Naphtha, mineral spirits, turpentine, methanol, and xylol.
- E. Demountable Sign Face Materials:
1. Acrylic Plastic Reflectors: Replacement demountable sign letters, digits, arrows, borders, and alphabet accessories shall be reflectorized and shall consist of acrylic plastic reflectors supported by embossed aluminum frames. They shall comply with the Standard Alphabet for Highway Signs, of the Federal Highway Administration, Series E.
  2. Design and Fabrication: The letters shall be modified as necessary to accommodate the required reflectors. All items except border strips shall be fabricated from 0.040-inch minimum sheet aluminum. Border strips shall be of 0.032-inch minimum sheet aluminum. Mounting holes shall be provided within the frames to permit the use of screws, rivets or other acceptable fasteners. The size and spacing of the reflector holes shall provide maximum night legibility and visibility of the finished cutout figure.
  3. General Requirements: The reflectors shall be of acrylic plastic meeting the requirements of Fed. Spec. L-P-380, Type I, Class 3. The reflectors shall be yellow or colorless. The lens shall consist of a smooth front surface, free from projections or indentations other than for identification, and a rear surface bearing a prismatic configuration that will effect total internal reflection of light.
  4. Reflective Sheeting:
    - a. Demountable Sign Letters, Digits, Arrows, Borders, and Alphabet Accessories, when so specified, shall be reflectorized with reflective sheeting supported by flat aluminum backing and shall comply with the Standard Alphabet Highway Signs of the Federal Highway Administration.
    - b. Design and Fabrication: Letter design shall be Series E, modified for legibility. All items except border strips shall be fabricated from 0.040-inch sheet aluminum, 6061-T6 alloy, with mounting holes to permit use of screws, rivets, or other acceptable fasteners.
- F. Highway Delineators, Enclosed Lens Type: Replacement reflectors shall be of acrylic plastic and a minimum of 3 inches in diameter. They shall be mounted in a heavy-duty housing with a back plate. The reflector shall consist of a clear and transparent plastic lens, which shall be colorless, and a plastic back of the same material, fused to the lens under heat and pressure around the entire perimeter to form a homogeneous unit, permanently sealed against dust, water, and water vapor. The acrylic plastic shall comply with Fed. Spec. L-P-380, Type I, Class 3.
- G. Highway Delineators, High Intensity Type:
1. Replacement Reflectorized Delineators shall consist of a reflective sheeting compound of glass spheres, embedded in a weatherproof, synthetic, noncellulose material. The overall size of the plastic reflectors shall be 4 inches by 5 inches, with a reflective area of at least 17.5 square inches.
  2. Delineators shall be silver-white when viewed with reflected light.
- H. Highway Delineators Including Posts and Attachments:



1. Reflective Sheeting: Replacement reflective sheeting for delineators shall match delineators being replaced.
  2. Delineator Posts and Accessories shall be of steel or aluminum. They shall have the necessary holes for attachment of the delineator housing. The assembly shall be furnished with the necessary bolts, nuts, and washers for attaching to the posts.
  3. Insulating Materials: Neoprene, for separation of aluminum and steel parts, shall contain at least 60 percent, by volume, of pure neoprene. Other material may be used, subject to the approval of the Owner as to pliability and ability to withstand wear caused by stretching or distortion.
  4. Reflector Units for guardrail installation shall match existing reflector being replaced in size and color.
  5. Highway Delineators shall be supplemented with directional guidance signs as directed by the Owner. Signs shall be the chevron alignment type and shall comply with ANSI D6.1E, Type W 1-8.
- I. Painting Panels for Nonreflectorized Background:
1. Replacement Metal Panels for sign categories not required to be reflectorized shall have a nonreflectorized background composed of one spray coat of primer and two finish coats of baked enamel.
  2. Finish Coats shall be baked alkyd resin enamels meeting Fed. Spec. TT-E-529, Class B, of a composition that affects the finished background surface. When thoroughly dry, the colors shall match those described in the current Highway Blue Color Tolerance Chart, PR Color No. 3, or in Highway Green Color Tolerance Chart, PR Color No. 4, of the Federal Highway Administration.
  3. Wood Signs shall have two coats of oil paint complying with Fed. Spec. TT-P-52. Message paint shall be a single coat of oil paint. All colors shall comply with ANSI D6.1E.
- J. Sign Wash Detergent shall comply with ASTM D 3399.
- K. Street, Wayside, Utility Location, And Parking Lot Signs; Decals
1. Blanks: aluminum of type, size, and shape indicated.
  2. Reflective sheeting: Type 1 sheeting having Level A reflective intensity.
  3. Silk screen lettering paint and transparent process colors: as directed by the Owner.
  4. Posts
    - a. Drive type: as directed by the Owner.
    - b. Pipe type: Two-inch inside diameter.
  5. Hardware: as directed by the Owner.
  6. Fabrication
    - a. Dimensions, colors, and reflectorizing: As indicated, and in accordance with MUTCD.
    - b. Size, style, and spacing of letters, numerals, symbols, and borders: As indicated, and the Owner; as supplemented by DOT/FHA's publication entitled Standard Highway Signs as specified in MUTCD 1978.
    - c. Workmanship: as directed by the Owner.
- 1.3 EXECUTION
- A. Footings for Signs, Posts, and Supports:
1. Backfill Material shall be at or near optimum moisture and neither dry nor saturated. It shall be tamped thoroughly in place.
  2. Concrete Footings may be cast in place or precast. Hand mixing of concrete will be permitted where the quantity does not exceed one-half cubic yard.
- B. Erection of Signs and Sign Supports: Sign posts shall be erected vertically. Posts erected in sleeves shall be anchored with sulphur mortar. Mortar shall comply with ASTM C 287. Sign faces shall be positioned to be generally perpendicular to the line-of-sight for the observer. Reflectorized signs shall



---

be inspected at night. If specular reflection is apparent on any sign, its position shall be adjusted by the Contractor to eliminate the condition.

- C. Delineators and Hazard Markers: Delineator posts shall be driven to a depth of 30 inches.
- D. Removal of Existing Signs and Posts:
  - 1. Damaged, Obsolete, or Change of Purpose Signs and Posts shall be removed and delivered to a storage area designated by the Owner. Post hole shall be backfilled, tamped, and made level with the adjacent surface. Disturbed paving, sidewalks, and grassed areas shall be replaced with matching material of same quality and quantity as existing.
  - 2. Signs and Posts to be Replaced shall be removed and replaced by new signs and posts in identical locations. Backfill around post shall be thoroughly compacted to hold posts securely in a vertical position.
- E. Installation: Install in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and as directed by the Owner. Unless otherwise indicated, install not more than one sign on each post.

END OF SECTION 10 14 53 11





---

**SECTION 10 81 13 00 - ORIENTED FLEXIBLE NETTING BIRD BARRIER****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of oriented flexible netting bird barrier. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**1.2 PRODUCTS****A. Material**

1. Polyethylene twine netting attached to pre-installed cable system and steel installation hardware.
2. Netting shall be high density polyethylene knitted into sheets with mesh sizes of 3/4" **OR** 1-1/8" **OR** 2", **as directed**. Polyethylene shall be UV treated, color stable, and flame-retardant.
3. Color shall be selected from manufacturer's standard colors.
4. Installation hardware shall include corner and intermediate attachments, perimeter cable, turnbuckles, ferrules or clamps and net rings.

**1.3 EXECUTION****A. Installation**

1. Comply with manufacturer's printed instructions.

END OF SECTION 10 81 13 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 11 68 13 00 - PLAYGROUND EQUIPMENT AND STRUCTURES

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for playground equipment and structures. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Freestanding playground equipment and structures.
  - b. Composite playground equipment and structures.

#### C. Definitions

1. Fall Height: According to ASTM F 1487, "the vertical distance between a designated play surface and the protective surfacing beneath it."
2. HDPE: High-density polyethylene.
3. IPEMA: International Play Equipment Manufacturers Association.
4. LLDPE: Linear low-density polyethylene.
5. MDPE: Medium-density polyethylene.
6. Use Zone: According to ASTM F 1487, "the area beneath and immediately adjacent to a play structure that is designated for unrestricted circulation around the equipment and on whose surface it is predicted that a user would land when falling from or exiting the equipment."

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for playground equipment and structures.
3. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
  - a. Extent of surface systems and use zones for equipment.
  - b. Critical heights for playground surface, or fall heights for equipment.
4. Samples: For each type of exposed finish.
5. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
    - 1) Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
  - b. Certificates for Credit MR 7: Chain-of-custody certificates certifying that products specified to be made from certified wood comply with forest certification requirements. Include evidence that manufacturer is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
    - 1) Include statement indicating costs for each certified wood product.
6. Product Certificates: For each type of playground equipment, signed by product manufacturer.
7. Material Certificates: For the following items, signed by manufacturers:
  - a. Shop finishes.
  - b. Wood Preservative Treatment: Include certification by treating plant that states type of preservative solution and pressure process used, net amount of preservative retained, and compliance with applicable standards.
  - c. Recycled plastic.
8. Field quality-control test reports.



9. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for playground equipment.
10. Maintenance Data: For playground equipment and finishes to include in maintenance manuals.
11. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

E. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
2. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm whose playground equipment components have been certified by IPEMA's third-party product certification service.
3. Forest Certification: Fabricate designated playground equipment with wood components produced from wood obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship."
4. Safety Standards: Provide playground equipment complying with or exceeding requirements in the following:
  - a. ASTM F 1487.
  - b. CPSC No. 325.
5. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

F. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of playground equipment that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - a. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) Structural failures.
    - 2) Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
  - b. Warranty Period: Two **OR** Five, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials

1. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
  - a. Extruded Bars, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M).
  - b. Cast Aluminum: ASTM B 179.
  - c. Flat Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M).
2. Steel: Comply with the following:
  - a. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M, hot-dip galvanized.
  - b. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M or ASTM A 135/A 135M standard-weight, hot-dip galvanized.
  - c. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 513, cold formed, hot-dip galvanized.
  - d. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, hot-dip galvanized not less than G60 (Z180) coating designation.
  - e. Perforated Metal: Steel sheet not less than 0.075-inch (1.9-mm) **OR** 0.090-inch (2.3-mm) **OR** 0.120-inch (3.0-mm) uncoated thickness; hot-dip galvanized; manufacturer's standard perforation pattern.
  - f. Expanded Metal: Manufacturer's standard carbon-steel sheets complying with ASTM F 1267, Type II (expanded and flattened); deburred after expansion.
  - g. Woven Wire Mesh: Manufacturer's standard, with wire complying with ASTM A 510 (ASTM A 510M).
3. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666; Type 304, finished on exposed faces with No. 2B finish.
4. Wood: Surfaced smooth on all sides and all edges rounded, Douglas fir, preservative treated after fabrication **OR** Pine, preservative treated after fabrication **OR** [Western red cedar, as directed.



5. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1, Exterior; smooth surfaced with rounded edges; preservative treated after fabrication.
6. Opaque Plastic: Color impregnated, UV stabilized, and mold resistant.
  - a. Polyethylene: Fabricated from virgin **OR** 96 percent recycled, purified, fractional-melt plastic resin; rotationally molded HDPE, LLDPE, or MDPE with not less than 1/4-inch (6-mm) wall thickness.
7. Transparent Plastic: Abrasion-resistant, UV-stabilized monolithic polycarbonate sheet; clear, colorless; not less than 3/16 inch (5 mm) thick.
8. Chain and Fittings: ASTM A 467/A 467M, Class CS, 4/0 or 5/0, welded-straight-link coil chain; hot-dip galvanized **OR** zinc plated **OR** PVC coated, **as directed**. With commercial-quality, hot-dip galvanized **OR** zinc-plated, **as directed**, steel connectors and swing or ring hangars.
9. Castings and Hangers: Malleable iron, ASTM A 47/A 47M, Grade 32510, hot-dip galvanized.
10. Post Caps: Cast aluminum **OR** color-impregnated, UV-stabilized, mold-resistant polyethylene or polypropylene, **as directed**; color to match posts.
11. Platform Clamps and Hangers: Cast aluminum **OR** zinc-plated steel, not less than 0.105-inch-(2.7-mm-) nominal thickness, **as directed**.
12. Hardware: Manufacturer's standard; commercial-quality; corrosion-resistant; hot-dip galvanized steel and iron, stainless steel, or aluminum; of a secure and vandal-resistant design.
13. Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard; corrosion-resistant; hot-dip galvanized or plated steel and iron, or stainless steel; permanently capped, and theft resistant.

B. Wood-Preservative-Treated Materials

1. Preservative Treatment: Pressure-treat wood according to AWWA C2 (lumber) and AWWA C9 (plywood).
  - a. Use preservative chemicals acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium. Use chemical formulations that do not bleed through or otherwise adversely affect finishes. Do not use colorants to distinguish treated materials from untreated materials.
  - b. Kiln-dry lumber and plywood after treatment to a maximum moisture content, respectively, of 19 and 15 percent. Do not use materials that are warped or do not comply with requirements for untreated materials.

C. Playground Equipment Fabrication

1. General: Provide sizes, strengths, thicknesses, wall thickness, and weights of components as indicated but not less than required to comply with structural performance and other requirements in ASTM F 1487. Factory drill components for field assembly. Unnecessary holes in components, not required for field assembly, are not permitted. Provide complete play structure, including supporting members and connections, means of access and egress, designated play surfaces, barriers, guardrails, handrails, handholds, and other components indicated or required to comply with referenced standards for equipment indicated.
  - a. Composite Play Structure: Provide complete play structure, designed to be modular, linked, and expandable, forming one integral unit for more than one play activity.
2. Metal Frame: Fabricate main-frame upright support posts from metal pipe or tubing with cross-section profile and dimensions as indicated. Unless otherwise indicated, provide each pipe or tubing main-frame member with manufacturer's standard drainable bottom plate or support flange. Fabricate secondary frame members, bracing, and connections from either steel or aluminum.
3. Wood Frame: Fabricate main-frame upright support posts from wood species and with profile and dimensions as indicated. Fabricate secondary frame members, bracing, and connections from wood, steel, or aluminum.
4. Composite Frame: Fabricate main-frame upright support posts from metal and plastic with profile and dimensions as indicated. Fabricate secondary frame members, bracing, and connections from either steel or aluminum.
5. Play Surfaces: Provide manufacturer's standard elevated drainable decks, platforms, landings, walkways, ramps, and similar transitional play surfaces, designed to withstand loads; fabricated from perforated or expanded metal **OR** molded plastic **OR** plastic panel or plank **OR** recycled



polyethylene panel or plank **OR** wood plank, **as directed**, made into floor units with slip-slip-resistant foot surfaces. Fabricate units in manufacturer's standard modular sizes and shapes to form assembled play surfaces indicated.

- a. Elevated Play Surfaces: Provide protective devices, completely surrounding play surface except for access openings, if play-surface heights above protective surfacing exceed requirements in ASTM F 1487 **OR** CPSC No. 325, **as directed**.
  - b. Stepped Play Surfaces: Provide protective infill between stepped platforms.
6. Protective Barriers: Fabricated such that openings within the barrier and between the barrier and the play surface preclude passage of the torso probe according to ASTM F 1487 **OR** CPSC No. 325, **as directed**. Provide barriers designed to minimize the possibility of climbing, free of hand- and footholds, and configured to completely surround the protected area except for access openings. Extend barriers above the protected elevated surface for use by age group indicated. Fabricate from the following:
- a. Welded metal pipe or tubing with vertical bars.
  - b. Steel sheet with openings for vision and ventilation.
  - c. Metal-pipe or -tubing frame with wire mesh infill panels.
  - d. Opaque **OR** Transparent as directed, solid plastic panels with openings.
  - e. Vertical wood balusters with metal pipe or tubing or wood frame.
  - f. Wood panels with openings for vision and ventilation.
7. Guardrails: Provide guardrails configured to completely surround the protected area except for access openings. Fabricate from welded metal pipe or tubing **OR** metal pipe or tubing, and wood, as directed. Extend guardrails to comply with requirements for use by age group indicated.
8. Handrails: Welded metal pipe or tubing, OD between **0.095 to 1.55 inches (24.1 to 39.4 mm) OR 0.125 inch (3.2 mm)**.
- a. Provide handrails at heights to comply with requirements for use by age group indicated according to ASTM F 1487 **OR** CPSC No. 325.
9. Roofs and Canopies: Manufacturer's standard, designed to be positioned overhead and to discourage and minimize climbing by users.
- a. Fabricated from metal **OR** metal-pipe or -tubing-framed, welded wire **OR** opaque plastic **OR** clear polycarbonate plastic **OR** recycled polyethylene **OR** wood, as directed.
10. Signs: Manufacturer's standard sign panels, fabricated from opaque plastic with graphics molded in **OR** wood with painted graphics, as directed, attached to upright support posts.
- a. Text: As directed.
  - b. Colors: As directed.
- D. Freestanding Playground Equipment And Structures
1. Swings, Single **OR** Multiple, **as directed**, Axis:
    - a. Frame: Galvanized steel **OR** Aluminum pipe or tubing connected frame sections.
      - 1) Leg Upright(s): Not less than **1-7/8-inch (48-mm) OR 2-3/8-inch (60-mm) OR 3-1/2-inch (89-mm) OR 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) OR 5-inch (127-mm)**, as directed
      - 2) Overhead Beam: Match leg upright **OR** Not less than **2-3/8-inch (60-mm) OR** Not less than **3-1/2-inch (89-mm)**, as directed.
      - 3) Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range].
    - b. Frame: Wood connected frame sections with leg upright(s) and overhead beam not less than 4 inches (100 mm) square **OR** 6 inches (152 mm) square **OR** 6 inches (152 mm) round, **as directed**, for legs.
    - c. Overhead Beam Height: 96 inches (2440 mm) **OR** 10 feet (3 m) **OR** Height as indicated on Drawings, **as directed**, from pivot point above protective surfacing.
    - d. Chain: Standard link **OR** Short link not permitting finger penetration **OR** Manufacturer's standard, **as directed**.
      - 1) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
    - e. Swing Connector: S-hook **OR** Double clevis and bolt link, **as directed**.
    - f. Swing Hanger: Galvanized stamped steel clamp and ductile-iron pivot **OR** heavy-duty ductile iron **OR** manufacturer's standard, **as directed**.



- g. Swing Seats: Enclosed, full-bucket infant/tot **OR** Half-bucket **OR** U-shaped flexible belt **OR** Rigid rectangular **OR** Rigid disk **OR** Tire seat made from rubber **OR** plastic, as directed.
- h. Swing Seats: EPDM rubber **OR** Injection molded plastic, **as directed**, enclosed infant seat **OR** flexible seat **OR** tire, **as directed**.
  - 1) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
- i. Age Appropriateness: Two through five years **OR** 5 through 12 years, **as directed**.
- 2. Slides: Fabricated from stainless steel **OR** opaque plastic **OR** aluminum, **as directed**.
  - a. Configuration: Straight-aligned **OR** Quarter-turn **OR** Half-turn **OR** Three-quarter-turn **OR** Full-turn spiral **OR** S-shaped **OR** Squiggle-shaped descending chute(s), **as directed**.
  - b. Access: Stair or step ladder with handrails **OR** Vertical ladder **OR** Vertical ladder with side handrails, **as directed**.
  - c. Sit-Down Entrance: With protective barriers **OR** opaque plastic panel barriers **OR** canopy or hood enclosure, **as directed** and overhead handhold and side handholds.
  - d. Frame: Manufacturer's standard galvanized-steel pipe or tubing **OR** aluminum pipe or tubing **OR** wood, **as directed**.
  - e. Sliding Surface: Inclined **OR** Wavy **OR** Washboard rollers, **as directed**.
  - f. Sliding Surface Construction: Flat, continuous stainless-steel sheet with integral, full-length side rails **OR** U-shaped, continuous stainless-steel sheet with integral, full-length side rails **OR** [One-piece plastic with integral, full-length side rails **OR** Plastic tube, ID not less than **24 inches (610 mm)** **OR** [Plastic tube, ID not less than **30 inches (760 mm)**, **as directed**.
  - g. Colors: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
  - h. Age Appropriateness: Two through five years **OR** 5 through 12 years, **as directed**.
    - 1) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  - i. Tube, round, not less than 24-inch (610-mm) **OR** 30-inch (760-mm), **as directed**, diameter.
- 3. Merry-Go-Rounds: Rotating platform **OR** seating, **as directed**, around a vertical axis.
  - a. Rotating Mechanism: Permanently sealed and lubricated ball bearings with hydraulic-speed **OR** mechanical-speed, **as directed**, limiting device.
  - b. Platform: Round, dish-shaped **OR** flat **OR** flat, dimpled, **as directed**, steel sheet, not less than 0.1196-inch- (3.038-mm-) nominal thickness, with slip-resistant footing.
    - 1) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  - c. Handholds and Handrails: Metal pipe or tubing.
    - 1) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  - d. Capacity: Single user **OR** Two users **OR** Five users, **as directed**.
- 4. Tunnels (Crawl Tubes): Fabricated from stainless steel **OR** opaque plastic, **as directed**.
  - a. Shape: Straight **OR** Curved, quarter turn, **as directed**.
  - b. Tube, round, not less than 24-inch (610-mm) **OR** 30-inch (760-mm), **as directed**, diameter.
    - 1) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
- 5. Climbers: Fabricated from steel with galvanized **OR** PVC-plastisol, **as directed**, finish.
  - a. Horizontal ladder with hand rings, **as directed**.
  - b. Vertical fence.
  - c. Chain or cable ladder **OR** walks, **as directed**.
    - 1) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
- 6. Spring Rocking-Rider **OR** Seesaw, **as directed**:
  - a. Seat: Cast aluminum **OR** Molded HDPE or other plastic **OR** Wood, **as directed**; with handholds **OR** handholds and footrests, **as directed**.
    - 1) Seat Style: as directed by the Owner.
    - 2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  - b. Base: One **OR** Two, **as directed**, coil spring(s) with steel base plate.



- c. Capacity: Single user **OR** Two users, **as directed**.
- E. Composite Playground Equipment And Structures
1. Composite Structure: Fabricated from steel **OR** wood **OR** opaque plastic, **as directed**.
    - a. Frame: Galvanized steel pipe or tubing frame sections connected with bolts **OR** clamps, **as directed**.
      - 1) Pipe or Tubing: Not less than 4-inch (102-mm) **OR** 5-inch (127-mm), **as directed**, OD legs.
      - 2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
    - b. Frame: Wood frame sections connected with bolts.
      - 1) Wood not less than 4 inches (102 mm) square **OR** 6 inches (152 mm) round, **as directed**, for legs.
    - c. Horizontal Ladder Beam Height: 60 inches (1524 mm) **OR** 84 inches (2130 mm) **OR** Height as indicated on Drawings, **as directed**, above protective surfacing.
      - 1) Steel overhead beam, 2-3/8-inch (60-mm) OD.
      - 2) Wood overhead beam, 6 inches (152 mm) square.
    - d. Platforms: Perforated metal **OR** Wood **OR** Manufacturer's standard, **as directed**.
      - 1) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
    - e. Roofs: Perforated metal **OR** Wood **OR** Manufacturer's standard, **as directed**.
      - 1) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
    - f. Equipment: Include the following play event components:
      - 1) Slide.
      - 2) Crawl tube with spy holes, **as directed**.
      - 3) Horizontal ladder.
      - 4) Log roll.
      - 5) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
    - g. Accessories: as directed by the Owner.
    - h. Arrangement: As indicated **OR** Manufacturer's standard, **as directed**.
    - i. Capacity: 10 **OR** 20, **as directed**, users.
    - j. Age Appropriateness: 2 through 5 years **OR** 5 through 12 years, **as directed**.
- F. Cast-In-Place Concrete
1. Concrete Materials and Properties: Comply with requirements in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete" **OR** ACI 301, **as directed**, to produce normal-weight, air-entrained, **as directed**, concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), 3-inch (75-mm) slump, and 1-inch- (25-mm-) maximum-size aggregate.
  2. Concrete Materials and Properties: Dry-packaged concrete mix complying with ASTM C 387 and mixed at site with potable water, according to manufacturer's written instructions, to produce normal-weight concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), 3-inch (75-mm) slump, and 1-inch- (25-mm-) maximum-size aggregate.
- G. Aluminum Finishes
1. Baked-Enamel Finish: Prepare, treat, and coat metal to comply with paint manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
    - a. Thermosetting, modified-acrylic enamel primer/topcoat system complying with AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness not less than 1.5 mils (0.04 mm) **OR** 3 to 5 mils (0.076 to 0.127 mm), **as directed**, medium gloss.
  2. PVC Finish: Manufacturer's standard, UV-stabilized, mold-resistant, slip-resistant, matte-textured, dipped or sprayed-on, PVC-plastisol finish, with flame retardant added, complying with coating manufacturer's written instructions for pretreatment, application, and minimum dry film thickness of 80 mils (2 mm) **OR** 100 mils (2.5 mm), **as directed**.





3. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

#### H. Iron And Steel Finishes

1. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize products made from rolled-, pressed-, and forged-steel shapes, castings, plates, bars, and strips indicated to be galvanized to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M.
  - a. Hot-dip galvanize steel and iron hardware indicated to be galvanized to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
  - b. Galvanized Steel Sheet: Commercial steel sheet, hot-dip galvanized, complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M for not less than G60 (Z180) coating designation; mill phosphatized.
2. Powder-Coat Finish: Prepare, treat, and coat ferrous metal to comply with resin manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
  - a. Apply thermosetting polyester or acrylic urethane powder coating with cured-film thickness not less than 1.5 mils (0.04 mm).
3. Baked-Enamel Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-enamel finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat. Comply with paint manufacturer's written instructions for applying and baking to achieve a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils (0.05 mm).
4. PVC Finish: Manufacturer's standard, UV-stabilized, mold-resistant, slip-resistant, matte-textured, dipped or sprayed-on, PVC-plastisol finish, with flame retardant added, complying with coating manufacturer's written instructions for pretreatment, application, and minimum dry film thickness of 80 mils (2 mm) **OR** 100 mils (2.5 mm), **as directed**.
5. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

#### I. Stainless-Steel Finishes

1. Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines or blend into finish.
2. Bright, Cold-Rolled, Unpolished Finish: No. 2B finish on exposed faces.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation, General

1. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions, unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Anchor playground equipment securely, positioned at locations and elevations indicated.
  - a. Maximum Equipment Height: Coordinate installed heights of equipment and components with finished elevations of protective surfacing. Set equipment so fall heights and elevation requirements for age group use and accessibility are within required limits. Verify that playground equipment elevations comply with requirements for each type and component of equipment.
2. Post and Footing Excavation: Excavate holes for posts and footings as indicated in firm, undisturbed or compacted subgrade soil.
3. Post Set on Subgrade: Level bearing surfaces with drainage fill to required elevation.
4. Post Set with Concrete Footing: Comply with ACI 301 for measuring, batching, mixing, transporting, forming, and placing concrete.
  - a. Set equipment posts in **OR** on, **as directed**, concrete footing. Protect portion of posts above footing from concrete splatter. Verify that posts are set plumb or at the correct angle, alignment, height, and spacing.
    - 1) Place concrete around posts and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Hold posts in position during placement and finishing operations until concrete is sufficiently cured.
  - b. Embedded Items: Use setting drawings and manufacturer's written instructions to ensure correct installation of anchorages for equipment.
  - c. Concrete Footings: Smooth top, and shape to shed water.



---

B. Field Quality Control

1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
2. Arrange for playground equipment manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect playground and playground equipment and components during installation and, **as directed**, at final completion and to certify compliance with the following:
  - a. ASTM F 1487.
  - b. CPSC No. 325.
3. Notify the Owner 48 hours in advance of date and time of final inspection.

END OF SECTION 11 68 13 00



## SECTION 11 68 13 00a - RECREATIONAL FACILITIES

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of recreational facilities. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Submittals

1. Shop Drawings and/or Catalogue Cuts shall be submitted for approval prior to any installation.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Materials shall be resistant to corrosion and degradation by ultraviolet rays. Hardware and fittings shall be at least as corrosion-resistant as the materials fastened.

1. Steel Plates, Pipe, Tubing, Sheets, Wire Ropes, Chains, and Miscellaneous Shapes shall be stainless steel or galvanized steel, even if painted or coated with vinyl or other protective finish. All open pipe and tube ends shall have rain caps.
2. Wood shall be all-heart cedar, cypress, or redwood or shall be treated with a non-toxic preservative. Wood shall not be used where it will be in direct contact with the ground, unless approved by the Owner.
3. Fiberglass shall be smooth fiberglass-reinforced polyester with gelcoat coating and shall meet the following minimum physical properties: 22,000 psi (1,550 kg/sq cm) flexural strength, 15,000 psi (1,055 kg/sq cm) tensile strength, and 20,000 psi (1,410 kg sq cm) compressive strength.
4. Aluminum shall be anodized.
5. Foundations shall be 3,200 psi (225 kg/sq cm) compressive strength concrete, enforced as required. Provide embedded anchorage items as required,

#### B. Playground Equipment, including see-saws, slides, swings, whirlers, and monkey bars, shall be prefabricated and designed to withstand the anticipated structural loads.

1. Exposed Surfaces shall be smooth (except where required to be nonslip) seamless, and nonsplintering.
2. Steps, Platforms, and Other Flat Surfaces Subject to Foot Traffic shall be non-slip, but not abrasive and shall be formed to exclude or drain away water.
3. Fastening shall be flush, concealed, or otherwise formed or located to prevent injury to children playing on the equipment.
4. Slides shall have stainless steel sliding surfaces.

#### C. Bike Racks shall be mounted, and sections (if rack is sectional) shall be attached with tamper-proof fasteners.

#### D. Fiberglass Shelters shall be reinforced with steel, aluminum, or wood framework as required. Shelter roof shall be sloped to drain. Fiberglass edges shall be returned so that they are not exposed, Shelters shall be prefabricated and designed to withstand the anticipated live, dead, and wind loads.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- #### A. Recreational facilities shall be installed plumb, aligned, and securely anchored to the ground. Adjust equipment with moving parts until operation is smooth and easy.



---

END OF SECTION 11 68 13 00a



## SECTION 11 68 23 13 - PLAYING FIELDS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for repair and maintenance of playing fields. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product/material indicated.
2. Shop drawings shall be submitted for approval.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

- #### A. Fills required to bring the subgrade of playing surfaces up to required elevation shall be placed in horizontal layers of not more than 8 in. (200 mm) in loose thickness. The top layer of all fills and excavated areas under the playing surfaces shall be compacted to 95 percent maximum density in accordance with ASTM D 698.

- #### B. Sand-Clay Playing Surfaces shall consist of a stone foundation course, a clay foundation course, a wearing course and, where equipped, a drainage filter course, constructed on the prepared subgrade.

1. Stone Foundation Course: A layer at least 3 in. (75 mm) thick of 3/4- to 1-1/2 in. (19 to 38 mm) crushed stone shall be spread over the subgrade or over the drainage filter course constructed thereon and shall be given preliminary compaction by rolling, followed by a filler consisting of 1/4- to 1/2-in. (6 to 13 mm) crushed stone to fill voids in the underlying stone. The stone foundation course shall be compacted to a minimum of 95 percent maximum density in accordance with ASTM D 698.
2. Clay Foundation Course: Selected inorganic fat clay (CH) shall be evenly spread on the stone foundation course to produce a compacted layer not less than 3 in. (75 mm) thick. The clay layer shall be compacted to a minimum of 90 percent of CE 55 maximum density in accordance with ASTM D 698.
3. Wearing Course: The approved inorganic clay-silt mixture of approximately 50 percent each of clay and silt shall be screened through a 1/4-in. (6 mm) mesh screen. The wearing course shall be mixed in proportions of 1 part sand to 2 parts clay-silt by volume. The wearing course shall be compacted to at least 95 percent maximum density in accordance with ASTM D 698 and shall range from 1 to 1-1/2 in. (25 to 38 mm) in thickness.
4. Drainage Filter Course: The drainage filter course shall consist of a well-graded aggregate course encased in a geotextile material and laid in such a manner to allow water to freely drain from the playing surfaces. The geotextile material shall be a woven or non-woven filter material with a minimum permeability of 0.008 in./sec (0.02 cm/sec). The material shall be resistant to mildew, rotting, insects, rodents, and chemicals normally encountered in a subsurface drainage system.

- #### C. Bituminous Concrete Playing Surfaces shall consist of a base course, prime coat, bituminous leveling course, tack coat, surface course, color coating and, where required, a drainage filter course, all constructed on a prepared subgrade. The stabilized-aggregate base course shall be compacted at optimum moisture to at least 95 percent maximum density in accordance with ASTM D 698. Marshall stability shall not be less than 500 pounds (190 kg) and the flow shall not be greater than 20/100 in. (12.7 mm). The bituminous mixture shall be compacted until the voids in the total mix are reduced to less than 4.0 percent by volume.



1. Thickness of Courses: Base course shall be 4 in. (400 mm) thick after compaction. Leveling course shall be 1-1/2 in. (38 mm) thick after compaction unless directed otherwise. Surface course shall be 1 in. (100 mm) thick after Compaction.
2. Color Coating and Marking Paint: After curing of the bituminous surface course, the entire playing surface shall be covered with a color coat as required.

D. Portland Cement Concrete Playing Surfaces:

1. Aggregate: The nominal aggregate size shall be 1-1/2 in. (38 mm) to No. 4 sieve size and shall conform to ASTM C 33.
2. Portland Cement: The cement shall conform to ASTM C 150, Type IA or IIA; or ASTM C 595, Type IP-A.
3. Thickness: Horizontal Portland cement concrete playing surfaces shall consist of concrete slabs 4 inches thick.

E. Maintenance of Sand-Clay Surfaces: Prior to final acceptance, the Contractor shall make one application of 3/4 lb/sq yd (0.4 kg/sq m) of calcium chloride to the sand-clay surface of the entire playing area.

F. Portable Outdoor Bleachers:

1. Bleachers shall be designed to support a uniformly distributed live load of 100 lb/sq ft (490 kg/sq m) of gross horizontal projection and a horizontal wind load of 30 lbs/sq ft (150 kg/sq ft) of gross vertical projection. All seat and foot plank members shall be designed to support not less than 120 lb/lin ft (150 kg/m).
2. Wood Seating and Walk Boards shall be preservative-treated and painted.

G. Steel Basketball Poles: Minimum diameter 3-1/2 in. (88 mm); galvanized pipe.

H. Running Track: Gravel and cinders over stone base; compaction to 95 percent of maximum density in accordance with ASTM D 698. One hundred percent by weight of the gravel and cinders shall pass the 3/4-in. (19 mm) screen, and 90 percent of the gravel and cinders shall be retained on the No. 4 screen.

1.3 EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 11 68 23 13

**SECTION 11 82 19 00 - PACKAGED INCINERATORS**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of packaged incinerators. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Definitions

## 1. Waste Type

- a. Type 0, Trash: A mixture of highly combustible waste such as paper, cardboard cartons, wood boxes, and floor sweepings from commercial and industrial activities. The mixture consists of up to 10 percent by weight plastic bags, coated paper, laminated paper, treated corrugated cardboard, oily rags, and plastic or rubber scraps. This type of waste contains up to 10 percent moisture and not more than 5 percent non-combustible solids, and has a heating value of 8,500 BTU per pound (19,805 kJ/kg) as fired.
- b. Type 1, Rubbish: A mixture of combustible waste such as paper, cardboard cartons, wood scraps, foliage, and floor sweepings from domestic, commercial, and industrial activities. The mixture consists of up to 20 percent by weight restaurant waste, but contains little or no treated paper, plastic, or rubber wastes. This type of waste contains up to 25 percent moisture and not more than 10 percent incombustible solids, and has a heating value of 6,500 BTU per pound (15,145 kJ/kg) as fired.
- c. Type 2, Refuse: An approximately even mixture of rubbish and garbage by weight. This type of waste, common to apartment and residential occupancy, consists of up to 50 percent moisture and not more than 7 percent incombustible solids, and has a heating value of 4,300 BTU per pound (10,019 kJ/kg) as fired.
- d. Type 3, Garbage: Garbage such as animal and vegetable wastes from restaurants, hotels, hospitals, markets, and similar installations. This type of waste contains up to 70 percent moisture and up to not more than 5 percent incombustible solids, and has a heating value of 2,500 BTU per pound (5825 kJ/kg) as fired.
- e. Type 4, Pathological: Human and animal remains, such as organs, animal carcasses, and solid organic wastes from hospitals, laboratories, slaughterhouses, animal pounds, and similar sources. This type of waste contains up to 85 percent moisture and not more than 5 percent incombustible solids, and has a heating value as low as 1,000 BTU per pound (2330 kJ/kg) as fired.
- f. Type 5, Classified: A mixture of highly combustible waste such as paper, plastics, or other items that have been used for intelligence purposes, or deemed sensitive to completing a sensitive mission on behalf of our National security. This mixture consists of up to 10 percent by weight plastic bags, coated paper, laminated paper, and plastic products. This type waste has approximately zero percent moisture content and non-combustible solids, and has a heating value of 7,000 to 10,000 BTU per pound (16,310 to 23,300 kJ/kg) as fired.

## C. Submittals:

1. Shop Drawings: Equipment installation.
2. Product Data:
  - a. Incinerator
  - b. Controls and instruments
3. Test Reports:
  - a. Instrument readings
  - b. Computations
  - c. Methods



- d. Performance
- 4. Certificates: Incinerator
- 5. Operation and Maintenance Data: Incinerator

D. Special Tools

- 1. Equipment specified under this section requiring special tools for assembly, adjustment, setting, or maintenance thereof shall be furnished as standard accessories.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

- A. Incinerator (Manufactured Units): Provide packaged type controlled-air incinerator capable of burning Type as required to meet project requirements waste suitable for indoor installation, As required to meet project requirements, outdoor installation including totally enclosed electric motors, and corrosion and moisture protection, and equipped for manual **OR** mechanical, **as directed**, loading and operation.
- B. Capacity: Burn rate shall be as required to meet project requirements. Ash removal shall be an entire clean-out. Incinerator shall require no more than three ash clean-outs per week. Burnout and cool-down for ash removal shall be accomplished in not more than 72 hours after first ignition and in not more than 20 hours after final load addition during the weekly time period specified herein.
- C. Incineration of Classified Material: Incinerator shall reduce paper content to ash. Oxidize or melt other materials containing classified information, to prevent recovery of information for intelligence purposes. Screening ash, manual stoking, manual agitation, or opening of incinerator doors will not be allowed.
- D. Stack Emissions: The incinerator shall conform to all Federal, State and local Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) requirements and regulations.
- E. Noise Level: Noise level at one foot from each incinerator component shall not exceed 84 decibels, A scale.
- F. Electromagnetic Interference Control: Equipment shall conform to Class IIIC electromagnetic interference control and test limit requirements specified in MIL-STD-461.
- G. Primary and Secondary Chambers: Incinerator shall consist of a primary combustion chamber for partial burning and conversion of combustible material to gas and a secondary combustion chamber that shall consume combustible gases and entrained combustible particles. Preassemble and mount incinerator in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Packaged unit shall include a combustion air fan, primary and secondary burners, air distribution controls, and burner controls. Unit shall be ready for immediate mounting and ready for attachment of fuel, electrical, and vent and water supply connections. Provide lifting eyes.
  - 1. Primary Chamber: Construct primary chamber casing of steel supported by a steel frame and provided with insulation and refractory. Casing shall be not less than 3/16 inch (4.76 mm) sheet steel conforming to ASTM A 569/A 569M and reinforced to withstand internal pressures without deflection or damage to refractory or other components. Construct frame and reinforcing members of steel conforming to ASTM A 36/A 36M. Frame shall be free standing and support the weight of incinerator components, including doors, burners, breeching, stack connections, and appurtenant assemblies without binding or warping. Provide access doors and ports with seals to prevent emission of smoke or admission of significant amounts of air during incinerator operation. Primary chamber shall have no grates, ash clean-out doors, or other openings which would permit leakage of waste fluids.
    - a. Insulation:
      - 1) The values for minimum thickness of insulation are in the following table:

### INSULATION THICKNESS VS. CAPACITY





Capacity (pounds/hour)	(grams/second)	Min. Insulation Thickness (inches)	(mm)
For Walls	For Walls		
Up to 500	Up to 63	2	50.80
500 to 2,000	63 to 252	2 1/2	63.50
For Hearths			
Indoors			
Up to 500	Up to 63	2 1/2	63.50
500 to 2,000	63 to 252	4	101.60
Outdoors		1 1/2	38.10

- 2) Class 5 block conforming to ASTM C 612, containing no asbestos material, and of such thickness to prevent damage to the foundation due to excessive heat. Insulating cement shall conform to ASTM C 195 or ASTM C 196.

b. Refractory:

- 1) Values for minimum thickness of refractory:



## REFRACTORY THICKNESS VS. CAPACITY

<u>Capacity</u> <u>(pounds/hour)</u>	<u>(grams/second)</u>	<u>Min. Insulation Thickness</u>	
		<u>(inches)</u>	<u>(mm)</u>
For Walls	For Walls		
Up to 500	Up to 63	4 1/4	108
500 to 2,000	63 to 252	4 1/4	108
For Hearths			
Indoors			
Up to 500	Up to 63	4 1/2	114
500 to 2,000	63 to 252	4 1/2	114
Outdoors		2 1/2	63.50

- 2) Heat-resistant non-asbestos containing clay, plastic or castable type. Attach refractory walls to casing with alloy steel or refractory anchors to form a monolithic structure which will resist heat and support walls with a safety factor of 4.
- c. Doors: Provide doors for stoking, clean-out, and charging areas of the incinerator. Construct doors and door frames of cast iron conforming to ASTM A 319 or steel conforming to ASTM A 569/A 569M or ASTM A 36/A 36M. Line doors exposed to flame or direct heat of combustion gases with the same type and thickness of refractory and insulation used in the combustion chamber. Attach refractory to doors to prevent sagging. Refractory shall have tapered edges to clear door frames during movement of swinging doors. Weld alloy steel hooked bars to the door cover to anchor the refractory. Doors shall be safely operable by one person. Temperature of door handles shall permit operation of door without gloves or other protective devices. Interlock charging doors with burners and air supply so that burners and blowers disconnect when door opens. Door closure gasket shall be non-asbestos high-temperature resistant material capable of withstanding expected temperatures. Vertically operated doors shall be counterweighted to require a manual operating force of 30 pounds (134 N) maximum. Guillotine type doors shall lift completely off the seals prior to movement. Provide full swing type doors with an integral smaller feed door having a minimum rectangular clear opening of 24 by 24 inches (610 by 610 mm) or a minimum circular clear opening of 30 inches (762 mm) diameter. Provide doors with hasps or brackets to permit locking. Furnish a lock and two keys for each door on classified waste incinerators.
- 1) Manual Charging Doors: Provide full swing type doors for batch feeding; guillotine type doors for continuous feeding. Minimum door size of 24 by 24 inches (610 by 610 mm).
  - 2) Mechanical Charging Doors: Guillotine type or sweep type. Provide an inner and outer door. The inner or charging door shall open with operation of the charger. Interlock the inner and outer doors to prevent simultaneous opening during operation of incinerator. Insulate door to combustion chamber of incinerator. Line door with refractory material and anchor as specified herein for refractory. Construct outer door of same materials as exterior casing of incinerator. Provide doors with means for manual operation.
  - 3) Clean-out Doors: Clean-out doors shall provide access for total clean-out and visual inspection of the entire interior of the incinerator and shall not permit leakage of waste fluids.
- d. Observation Ports: Provide two observation ports in the primary combustion chamber. Furnish ports with a heat-resistant glass cover or angular steel frame and closure plate with handle for operation without gloves or other protective devices. Ports shall extend from casing exterior to not less than one-half the thickness of the refractory lining. Observation ports shall be gas tight.



- e. Test Holes: Fit test holes with standard weight, 2 inch (50 mm) **OR** 4 inch (100 mm), **as directed**, diameter, black steel pipe sleeve welded to casing. Extend sleeve from casing exterior to not less than one-half the thickness of the refractory lining. Form refractory opening from the pipe sleeve end to the interior wall surface to shield the sleeve end from reflected heat. Fit sleeve with a brass screw cap.
  - f. Solid Hearth: Construct of non-asbestos heat-resistant clay, plastic or castable type. Provide solid hearth for incinerators burning pathological wastes. Provide refractory of sufficient thickness and strength to prevent heat transfer to casing or foundation, not less than 4 1/2 inches (114 mm) in thickness and able to withstand temperatures of 3000 degrees F (1649 degrees C). Hearth shall support not less than twice the hourly burn rate load and shall not permit leakage of waste fluids.
  - g. Draft Equipment: Capability of providing the correct amount of air to permit controlled combustion through operating range. Equipment shall include forced draft fans, draft gages, dampers, damper actuators, and linkage.
    - 1) Air Ducts: Introduce air for combustion to the primary chamber below the waste material through perforated under-fire air pipes or ducts. Over-fire air shall be controlled with automatic modulating air intake ports for completing combustion of combustible materials in gases, or for reducing operating temperatures. Ducts shall be constructed of sheet steel conforming to ASTM A 569/A 569M. Seams shall be air tight.
    - 2) Fan: Forced draft, multi-blade, forward curved, centrifugal type conforming to CID A-A-59222. Fan shall comply with standards of AMCA 99, applicable to centrifugal furnace fans, and rated for flow rate, pressure, power, speed of rotation, and efficiency in accordance with ANSI/AMCA 210.
    - 3) Damper: Controller-actuated to regulate air to the fan. Construct of wrought sheet steel conforming to ASTM A 569/A 569M, and no less than 1/16 inch (1.59 mm) thick. Damper shall operate without noise or flutter. Actuators shall be electric motor operated, 115 volts ac.
  - 2. Secondary Chamber: Provide with an exterior casing not less than 3/16 inch (4.76 mm steel) conforming to ASTM A 569/A 569M. Refractory lining shall be same type and thickness required for primary chamber walls. Insulation shall be of the same class and thickness used in the primary chamber. Minimum retention time of one second shall be allowed for conditions within normal operating limits.
- H. Burners
- 1. Insert appropriate fuel oil or gas specification section(s) associated with this project. Only allow direct electric spark ignition for burners up to 2,500,000 BTU/hour (732,500 watt). Values of minimum burner input capacity:



SIZE OF BURNERS, (x1000) Watts  
Primary Burners

Capacity of Incinerator, (grams/sec)	2490 Min. kJ/kg Refuse	1905 Min. kJ/kg Refuse	1260 Min. kJ/kg Refuse	733 Min. kJ/kg Refuse	293 Min. kJ/kg Refuse	Secondary Burners All Refuse
6.30	350	350	582	815	990	466
12.60	466	466	1282	1631	1980	699
18.90	582	559	1514	2330	3262	932
31.50	699	699	1748	2680	3728	1514
63.00	1282	1282	2563	3845	5126	2330
94.50	1748	1748	3495	5242	6990	3029
126.00	2097	2047	3961	5592	7223	3961
189.00	2563	2563	5126	7689	10252	4893
252.00	3728	3728	7689	11650	15378	6291

SIZE OF BURNERS, (x1000) BTU/Hr  
Primary Burners

Capacity of Incinerator, (lb/hr)	8500 Min. BTU/lb Refuse	6500 Min. BTU/lb Refuse	4300 Min. BTU/lb Refuse	2500 Min. BTU/lb Refuse	1000 Min. BTU/lb Refuse	Secondary Burners All Refuse
50	150	150	250	350	425	200
100	200	200	550	700	850	300
150	250	240	650	1,000	1,400	400
250	300	300	750	1,150	1,600	650
500	550	550	1,100	1,650	2,200	1,000
750	750	750	1,500	2,250	3,000	1,300
1,000	900	900	1,700	2,400	3,100	1,700
1,500	1,100	1,100	2,200	3,300	4,400	2,100
2,000	1,600	1,600	3,300	5,000	6,600	2,700

- Provide gas **OR** oil **OR** combination gas and oil, **as directed**, burners for the primary and secondary combustion chambers. Design burners for natural type gas or No. 2 fuel oil conforming to ASTM D 396. Fuel oil **OR** Gas, **as directed**, piping is covered in Division 23 Section(s) "Facility Fuel-oil Piping" OR "Facility Natural-gas Piping" OR "Facility Liquefied-petroleum Gas Piping", **as directed**. Each burner shall be a complete burner assembly including fuel, control systems, and accessories. Secondary burner shall be capable of maintaining a minimum continuous temperature in the secondary chamber of 1,600 degrees F (871 degrees). Minimum continuous temperature of 1,400 degrees F (760 degrees C) shall be maintained at the roof near the exit of the primary chamber. Burners shall be interrupted type with gas-electric or electrically spark-ignited and regulated by a variable set point indicator-controller adjustable from zero to 3000 degrees F (1649 degrees C) to operate within temperature limits recommended by the manufacturer. Controllers shall be actuated by a thermocouple. Mounting, flame shape, and characteristics of each burner shall be suitable for the incinerator chamber in which the burner is installed. Flame impingement on the incinerator wall will not be permitted. Each burner shall be Factory Mutual listed in FM P7825 and furnished with flame failure protection. Flame safeguard sensor shall be sighted to detect only the burner flame for which it is designed. Furnish burners with manufacturer recommended appurtenances, for a complete installation. Burners shall be removable for inspection, cleaning, adjustment, and maintenance. Locate thermocouples in the



primary and secondary chambers capable of operating at a maximum temperature of 3000 degrees F (1649 degrees C).

- I. Controls And Instruments: Control equipment and instruments shall include burners and fan controls, time clocks, relays, operating switches, indicating lights, gages, motor starters, fuses, alarms, circuit elements of control system, and other instruments required for operation. Mount controls and instruments on a single control panel. Control system shall provide on-off control or proportioning control of the primary air supply and fuel supply to the secondary burner. Temperature indicator shall provide a visual indication for safe loading of the incinerator and excessive high temperature conditions which may require control by the operator. Interlock control circuit systems to prevent hazardous conditions, air pollution, and made fail safe.
  1. Control Panel: Sheet steel, weather tight, conforming to UL 50. Flush mount controls, instruments, and other equipment at the factory and test the assembly prior to shipment. Furnish a lock and two keys. Identify controls and instruments with nameplates conforming to MIL-DTL-15024. Provide a heater to prevent condensation.
  2. Draft Gages: ANSI/ASME B40.1, diaphragm or bellows actuating system and circular scale. The gages shall have a zero adjustment screw. Provide shut-off cocks.
  3. Pressure Gages: ANSI/ASME B40.1, single Bourdon tube style, suitable for measuring air pressure.
  4. Thermocouples: Provide to measure gas passage temperatures and control burner operation. Provide thermocouples which operation up to 3000 degrees F (1649 degrees C), and accurate within one-half percent of the operating and indicating temperature range.
  5. Emissions Monitoring Instrumentation: Provide incinerator and stack monitoring instrumentation for acceptance tests, emissions tests, and monitoring.
- J. Stack: Stack shall meet local building and fire protection codes, including local, state, and federal regulations conforming to NFPA 211. Attach a corrosion-resistant steel spark arrestor not less than No. 18 gage, and with 1/2 inch (15 mm) mesh wire screen extending to top of stack and a corrosion-resistant steel weather cap. Provide tests ports for acceptance testing and/or emissions testing and monitoring.
- K. Connectors: Provide to connect the incinerator to the stack in accordance with NFPA 211. Locate the connector at a minimum clear vertical distance of eight feet (2.45 mm) above the floor **OR** ground, **as directed**.
- L. Charging Method:
  1. Manual: Incinerators having a capacity of less than 300 pounds per hour (38 grams per second) should be manually charged. Manual charger shall include a front loading door with minimum dimensions of 24 by 24 inches (610 by 610 mm). Combustion chamber shall operate at negative air pressure when the loading door is open to prevent injury to the operator and the escape of smoke and gases. Provide an interlock to prevent operation of the charger when a predetermined safe operating temperature is exceeded. Locate the charger on the end **OR** side **OR** top, **as directed**, of the incinerator.
  2. Mechanical: Incinerators having a capacity of 300 pounds per hour (38 grams per second) or more should be mechanically charged. Provide an automatic mechanical loading device compatible with the incinerator. Flange loader to incinerator. Construct loading device of plate steel conforming to ASTM A 36/A 36M. The loader shall include a single **OR** dual, **as directed**, hydraulic power pack driven by an electric motor conforming to NEMA MG 1. Loader shall include a guillotine type fire door lined with the same thickness refractory as the combustion chamber. The charging chamber shall have a capacity of not less than one cubic yard (0.76 cubic meter). Locate charging chamber access door on top of the loader and hinged. Provide a temperature actuated automatic sprinkler device located inside the loader. Integrate operation of the automatic loader with the control system. An indicating light shall indicate when the incinerator can be charged. Mount light on control box, visible to the operator. When charging chamber door is closed and light on; indicating the incinerator can be charged, the following sequence shall take place when the loader is actuated in the charge mode: (1) fire door opens,



(2) ram pushes material into the incinerator, (3) ram retracts, (4) fire door closes, (5) indicator light signals the loader is ready to be charged. When loader is in the automatic mode of operation, fire door and charging chamber door shall not be allowed to open at the same time. Provide a manual override system so that ram, fire door, or charging chamber door can be operated independently.

3. Firing Tools: Provide firing tools, including shovel, hoe, rake, slice bar, used for firing the incinerator, and firing tool rack. Locate as indicated. Rack shall be steel and include hooks or other means for storing tools.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Equipment Installation: NFPA 82, as applicable. Combustion air supply and ventilation shall be in accordance with NFPA 54 **OR** NFPA 31, **as directed**.
- B. Utility Services Connections: Connect to utility services as directed.
- C. Foundation: Foundation shall be of size and strength to support incinerator and extend not less than 3 feet (one meter) beyond incinerator sides, and not less than 8 feet (2.45 meters) on front or side where ashes are removed.
- D. Fuel Supply: Install gas appliances and piping in accordance with NFPA 54, as applicable. Install oil burning equipment to conform to the applicable requirements of NFPA 31.
- E. Stack Support: Stack support shall be in accordance with paragraph entitled "Stack" of this section, NFPA 82 and NFPA 211, as applicable. Adequate vertical and lateral supports for exterior chimneys shall withstand wind forces of 106 miles per hour (171 km per hour), **unless directed otherwise**.
- F. Lubrication: Provide lubrication means for parts of equipment normally requiring lubrication. Where use of high pressure will damage grease seals or other parts, provide pressure release fittings.
- G. Treatment And Painting: Provide manufacturer's standard factory applied finish suitable for exterior service.
- H. Identification: Fasten an aluminum, brass, or corrosion-resistant steel nameplate to the equipment in a visible location by means of rivets or sheet metal screws. The nameplate shall contain data such as the manufacturer's name, model, or series number; electrical requirements; and serial number. The information shall be indented or embossed in the metal. The nameplate shall not be painted over.
- I. Field Quality Control
  1. General: Upon delivery to the job site, equipment and materials shall receive a preliminary inspection by the the Owner. Inspection will be continued during installation, after installation, and during tests. Inspections shall be made to assure equipment and installation comply with local, state, federal, and utility requirements for equipment, air pollution, and safety. Furnish labor, equipment, apparatus, and materials for testing, except waste materials used for testing. the Owner will supply waste material, fuel oil, gas, water, and electricity. Rectify defects disclosed by tests, and repeat tests. Two instruction manuals shall be available during tests. Perform tests under direct supervision of the start-up engineer employed by the Contractor. The the Owner shall be present for tests. Reports certifying instrument readings indicated are actual, computations required for testing are accurate, acceptable methods were used, and units satisfactory performed in accordance with requirements shall be furnished.
  2. Tests
    - a. Fuel Systems: Remove gages and apparatus that may be damaged by test pressure from the system prior to testing. Maintain required test pressure for not less than two hours to provide sufficient time for inspection of joints and connections. Correct defects which



- develop during testing and retest piping system until system shows no defects or weakness.
- 1) Oil: Test oil piping systems with a hydrostatic pressure of one and one-half times the maximum working pressure.
  - 2) Gas: Pneumatically test gas piping systems tested at operating pressure. Use the soap bubble method to verify the tightness of the system.
- b. Performance: Preheat incinerator for four hours to reach the firing temperature of 1800 degrees F (982 degrees C). Weight the waste charges and provide a record of the total charge weight. Charge incinerator with the Owner provided waste at rated capacity in lb/hr (kg/sec) for a period of four hours. Operate incinerator in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Waste shall be reduced to a fine ash residual. Follow normal burnout procedure. Weigh residue after incinerator has cooled. Weight of residue shall not exceed 5.0 percent charge weight.
- 1) Clean-out: Residue from burning classified material shall be hand sorted or screened into three categories; totally oxidized white or off-white ash, unburned materials, and blackened or partially burned paper fragments. Clean-out and sorting shall be witnessed by the the Owner. Inspect materials to verify that the requirements in paragraph entitled "Incineration" of Classified Materials, are met. After clean-out, inspect incinerator for deterioration such as slagged or spalling refractory, warping of parts, and discolored exterior paint. Unit will be rejected until these conditions are repaired and do not recur in retesting. Such procedures that may create respirable dust shall require use of a OSHA certified dust respirator.
- c. Control: Test incinerator under actual firing conditions. Test shall verify controls function within maximum and minimum limits for temperature or timing. Simulate actual unsafe conditions such as high temperatures and flame failure by reducing settings for the activation of limit and safety controls.
- d. Shell Temperature: Operate incinerator under normal load conditions for not less than four hours. Record temperature readings of the outer shell at not less than five random locations of the secondary chamber. Shield incinerators installed outdoors from direct rays of the sun.

END OF SECTION 11 82 19 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



**SECTION 11 82 26 00 - WASTE COMPACTORS**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for waste compactors. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. This Section includes waste compactors and diverters.

## C. Definitions

1. WASTEC Rating: The volume of waste material in the charging chamber moved by the ram within the compactor in a single stroke.

## D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties and accessories, and finishes.
2. Shop Drawings: For each installation and for special components not dimensioned or detailed in manufacturer's product data. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - a. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - b. Dimensions locating chutes that interface with waste compactors.
  - c. Location and installation details of automatic sprinkler in hopper of each chute-fed compactor.
  - d. Equipment access points and required space for equipment service and operation.
  - e. Setting drawings, templates, and instructions for installing anchor bolts and other anchorages.
  - f. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
4. Product Certificates: For each type of waste compactor, from manufacturer.
5. Field quality-control reports.
6. Operation and Maintenance Data: For waste compactors to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## E. Quality Assurance

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Waste Compactor Standards: Comply with ANSI Z245.2 and with NFPA 82.
3. Waste Bin and Hopper Standard: Comply with ANSI Z245.30.

## F. Maintenance Service

1. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Final Completion, provide 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of waste compactor Installer. Include monthly preventive maintenance, repair, or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper waste-compactor operation at rated speed and capacity. Provide parts and supplies the same as those used in the manufacture and installation of original equipment.
2. Continuing Maintenance Proposal: From Installer to the Owner, in the form of a standard yearly (or other period) maintenance agreement, starting on date initial maintenance service is concluded. State services, obligations, conditions, and terms for agreement period and for future renewal options.



## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Waste Compactors

1. Waste Compactors: Manufacturer's standard vertical **OR** stationary horizontal **OR** self-contained horizontal **OR** combination-container **OR** vertical **OR** pivoting-ram type, **as directed**, packaged units with components, options, and accessories needed to comply with requirements and provide complete functional systems.
  - a. WASTEC Rating Size (Volume): Minimum: 0.14 cu. yd. (0.11 cu. m) **OR** 1.00 cu. yd. (0.77 cu. m) **OR** 1.50 cu. yd. (1.15 cu. m) **OR** 2.00 cu. yd. (1.53 cu. m) **OR** 3.50 cu. yd. (2.68 cu. m) **OR** 5.00 cu. yd. (3.82 cu. m) **OR** 7.50 cu. yd. (5.73 cu. m) **OR** 10.00 cu. yd. (7.65 cu. m), **as directed**.
  - b. Clear Top Opening (Length by Width) Minimum: 20 by 28 inches (508 by 711 mm) **OR** 24 by 36 inches (610 by 914 mm) **OR** 30 by 48 inches (762 by 1219 mm) **OR** 60 by 48 inches (1524 by 1219 mm) **OR** 108 by 72 inches (2743 by 1829 mm), **as directed**.
  - c. Cycle Time: Maximum 30 **OR** 40 **OR** 50 **OR** 60 **OR** 70 seconds, as directed.
  - d. Discharge Opening (Width by Height): Maximum: **As directed**.
  - e. Minimum Discharge Opening: **As directed**.
  - f. Ground Height: Minimum **As directed**.
  - g. Ram Face: **As directed**.
  - h. Ram Penetration: 6 inches (152 mm) **OR** 14 inches (355 mm) **OR** 30 inches (762 mm), **as directed**.
  - i. Normal/Maximum Result Ram Forces: 20,000/22,000 lbf (89/98 kN) **OR** 36,000/40,000 lbf (160/178 kN) **OR** 70,000/80,000 lbf (311/356 kN) **OR** 125,000/150,000 lbf (556/667 kN), **as directed**.
  - j. Normal/Maximum System Pressures: 1600/1800 psi (11.0/12.4 MPa) **OR** 2000/2400 psi (13.8/16.5 MPa) **OR** 2500/2800 psi (17.2/19.3 MPa), **as directed**.
  - k. Scale Weight. Maximum: 2500 lb (1134 kg) **OR** 6000 lb (2722 kg) **OR** 12,000 lb (5443 kg) **OR** 20,000 lb (9072 kg), **as directed**.
  - l. Motor Size: 3 hp **OR** 10 hp **OR** 15 hp **OR** 20 hp **OR** 30 hp **OR** 50 hp, **as directed**.
  - m. Electrical Power Supply: 120 **OR** 208 **OR** 240 **OR** 480 V, 1 **OR** 3 phase, **as directed**, 60 Hz.
  - n. Controls: **As Directed**.
  - o. Finish: Manufacturer's standard **OR** as selected by the Owner.
  - p. Deodorizing Device: Manufacturer's standard **OR** as selected by the Owner.
2. Diverter: Compactor Manufacturer's standard **OR** as selected by the Owner coordinated with chute dimensions and designed to divert waste from one chute into two compactors, with chute-relay controls and finished to match compactor or as directed by the Owner.
3. Number of Extra Storage Containers: One **OR** Two, **as directed**.

### B. Fabrication

1. Fabricate waste compactors with smooth, eased, exposed edges to prevent injury to persons in vicinity of the equipment.
2. Fabricate containers, hoppers, compaction chambers, unit bodies, and similar components of steel with welded joints. Reinforce with steel members sized and spaced to withstand impacts and pressures of normal operations and to prevent deformation.
3. Fabricate equipment with replaceable parts at points of normal wear.
4. Fabricate liquidtight compactor baffles to stop liquid from leaking out.
5. Fabricate diverter to fit chute and properly align with compactor hoppers.

## 1.3 EXECUTION

### A. Examination



1. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, clearances, service rough-ins, and other conditions affecting performance of waste-compactor work.
  2. Examine walls, floors, and chutes for suitable conditions where each waste compactor will be installed.
  3. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
  4. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- B. Installation
1. Install each waste compactor according to manufacturer's written instructions, ANSI Z245.2, and ANSI Z245.21 including annexes.
  2. Install automatic sprinkler in hopper of each chute-fed compactor according to NFPA 82.
  3. Set waste compactors level, plumb, properly aligned, and securely in place. Anchor as required for secure operation.
  4. Install diverter to chute and properly align with compactor hoppers.
- C. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections.
    - a. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
  2. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. Perform installation and startup checks according to ANSI Z245.21, Annex D, "Tests for Evaluation of Equipment and Performance," and manufacturer's written instructions.
    - b. Test and adjust controls, alarms, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
    - c. Verify unrestricted access to each firefighting access door or fire port required by ANSI Z245.21 and NFPA 82 for compactor container(s).
    - d. Verify correct locations, color-coding, and legibility of caution, warning, and danger markings.
    - e. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  3. A waste compactor will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  4. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 11 82 26 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 11 82 26 00a - FOOD SERVICE EQUIPMENT**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for food service equipment. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Fabricated equipment.
  - b. Food waste machines.
  - c. Cooking equipment.
  - d. Self-contained refrigeration equipment.
  - e. Walk-in refrigeration equipment.
  - f. Powered food-preparation equipment.
  - g. Warewashing equipment.
  - h. Serving equipment.
  - i. Utility distribution systems.
2. Owner-Furnished Equipment: Where indicated, the Owner will furnish equipment for installation by Contractor.

## C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include the following:
  - a. Manufacturer's model number.
  - b. Accessories and components that will be included for Project.
  - c. Clearance requirements for access and maintenance.
  - d. Utility service connections for water, drainage, power, and fuel; include roughing-in dimensions.
2. Shop Drawings: For fabricated equipment. Include plans, elevations, sections, roughing-in dimensions, fabrication details, utility service requirements, and attachments to other work.
3. Samples: For each factory-applied color finish required, in manufacturer's standard sizes.
4. Coordination Drawings: For foodservice facilities.
  - a. Indicate locations of foodservice equipment and connections to utilities.
  - b. Key equipment using same designations as indicated on Drawings.
  - c. Include plans and elevations; clearance requirements for equipment access and maintenance; details of equipment supports; and utility service characteristics.
  - d. Include details of seismic bracing for equipment.
5. Operation and Maintenance Data: For foodservice equipment to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Include the following:
  - a. Product Schedule: For each foodservice equipment item, include the following:
    - 1) Designation indicated on Drawings.
    - 2) Manufacturer's name and model number.
    - 3) List of factory-authorized service agencies including addresses and telephone numbers.
6. Warranty: Samples of special warranty.

## D. Quality Assurance

1. NSF Standards: Provide equipment that bears NSF Certification Mark or UL Classification Mark certifying compliance with applicable NSF standards.
2. BISSC Standards: Provide bakery equipment that complies with BISSC/Z50.2.



- a. Provide BISSC-certified equipment, with certification verified by a third-party agency, **as directed**.
  3. UL Certification: Provide electric and fuel-burning equipment and components that are evaluated by UL for fire, electric shock, and casualty hazards according to applicable safety standards, and that are UL certified for compliance and labeled for intended use.
  4. Steam Equipment: Provide steam-generating and direct-steam heating equipment that is fabricated and labeled to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
  5. Regulatory Requirements: Install equipment to comply with the following:
    - a. ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Mechanical Refrigeration."
    - b. NFPA 54, "National Fuel Gas Code."
    - c. NFPA 70, "National Electrical Code."
    - d. NFPA 96, "Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations."
  6. Seismic Restraints: Comply with SMACNA's "Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines," Appendix A, "Seismic Restraint Details," unless otherwise indicated.
  7. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
- E. Project Conditions
1. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of construction contiguous with foodservice equipment by field measurements before fabrication. Indicate measurements on Coordination Drawings.
- F. Coordination
1. Coordinate foodservice equipment layout and installation with other work, including layout and installation of lighting fixtures, HVAC equipment, and fire-suppression system components.
  2. Coordinate locations and requirements of utility service connections.
  3. Coordinate sizes, locations, and requirements of the following:
    - a. Overhead equipment supports.
    - b. Equipment bases.
    - c. Floor depressions.
    - d. Insulated floors.
    - e. Floor areas with positive slopes to drains.
    - f. Floor sinks and drains serving foodservice equipment.
    - g. Roof curbs, equipment supports, and penetrations.
- G. Warranty
1. Refrigeration Compressor Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace compressors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
    - a. Failure includes, but is not limited to, inability to maintain set temperature.
    - b. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Final Completion.
- 1.2 PRODUCTS
- A. Fabricated Equipment
1. Stainless-Steel Sinks:
    - a. Description: One **OR** Two **OR** Three **OR** Four, **as directed**,-compartment sink(s). Fabricate units of welded stainless steel, sound deadened.
      - 1) Bowls: Stainless steel, Type 304, 0.078 inch (1.98 mm) **OR** 0.062 inch (1.59 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      - 2) Integral Drainboards: Stainless steel, Type 304, 0.078 inch (1.98 mm) **OR** 0.062 inch (1.59 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      - 3) Body: Stainless steel, Type 304, 0.078 inch (1.98 mm) **OR** Type 304, 0.062 inch (1.59 mm) **OR** Type 430, 0.062 inch (1.59 mm), **as directed**, thick.



- a)
    - a) Back Splash: Manufacturer's standard height **OR** 13 inches (330 mm) **OR** 18 inches (457 mm), **as directed**.
    - b) Side Splash: Manufacturer's standard height **OR** 13 inches (330 mm) **OR** 18 inches (457 mm), **as directed**.
  - 4) Legs and Feet: Stainless-steel tubing legs with adjustable bullet feet.
  - 5) Accessories:
    - a) Faucets and Spouts: as directed by the Owner.
    - b) Prerinse Faucet: as directed by the Owner.
    - c) Vacuum breaker.
    - d) Lever waste with **OR** without, **as directed**, overflow.
    - e) Basket strainer.
    - f) Continuous waste.
    - g) Scrap trough.
    - h) Control bracket for food waste disposer controls.
    - i) Scrap block and hole.
    - j) Stainless-steel pot rack.
  - b. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M, austenitic stainless steel, type as indicated.
  - c. Fabrication: Prepare sink for installation of the following equipment items:
    - 1) Water heater.
    - 2) Food waste disposer; weld disposer cone or collar into sink.
    - 3) Undercounter dishwasher.
  - d. Stainless-Steel Finish: Directional satin finish, No. 4.
2. Stainless-Steel Tables:
- a. Description: Flat-countertop **OR** Prep **OR** Equipment-stand **OR** Mixer-stand **OR** Dish, **as directed**, table.
    - 1) Tops: Stainless steel, Type 304, 0.078 inch (1.98 mm) **OR** Type 304, 0.062 inch (1.59 mm) **OR** Type 430, 0.062 inch (1.59 mm), **as directed**, thick, reinforced and sound deadened.
      - a) Back Splash: Manufacturer's standard height **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 5 inches (127 mm), **as directed**.
      - b) Edge: Bullnose on four sides **OR** Bullnose on front edge, straight on sides and back **OR** Marine edge, **as directed**.
    - 2) Welded **OR** Adjustable, **as directed**, Undershelf: Stainless steel, Type 304, 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick **OR** Metallic-coated steel, 0.052-inch (1.32-mm) nominal thickness, **as directed**.
    - 3) Crossbracing: Stainless-steel **OR** Metallic-coated steel, **as directed**, tubing, bolted **OR** welded, **as directed**, to legs.
    - 4) Cabinet:
      - a) Body: Stainless steel, Type 430, 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick.
      - b) Doors: Sliding **OR** Hinged, **as directed**, stainless steel, Type 304, 0.038 inch (0.95 mm) thick.
      - c) Drawers: Stainless-steel drawer and faceplate **OR** Galvanized-steel drawer and stainless-steel faceplate **OR** Stainless-steel front and liner **OR** Stainless-steel front and galvanized-steel liner, **as directed**.
    - 5) Sink: Stainless steel, Type 304, 0.078 inch (1.98 mm) thick, welded into tabletop and including the following:
      - a) Faucet and Spout: as directed by the Owner.
      - b) Vacuum breaker.
      - c) Leverwaste with **OR** without, **as directed**, overflow.
      - d) Basket strainer.
      - e) Tail piece.
    - 6) Legs: Stainless-steel **OR** Metallic-coated steel, **as directed**, tubing.
    - 7) Feet: Stainless-steel adjustable bullets **OR** Plastic adjustable bullets **OR** Stainless-steel, flanged, adjustable bullets **OR** Casters, **as directed**.
    - 8) Accessories:
      - a) Control panel.



- b) Control bracket for food waste disposer controls.
  - c) Aluminum pan rack slides, six **OR** three, **as directed**, slides each.
  - d) Urn trough.
  - e) Spice bins.
- b. Materials:
- 1) Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M, austenitic stainless steel, type as indicated.
  - 2) Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; with minimum G90 (Z275) coating.
- c. Fabrication: Prepare table for installation of the following equipment items:
- 1) Food waste disposer; weld disposer cone or collar into sink.
  - 2) Heat lamp.
- d. Stainless-Steel Finish: Directional satin finish, No. 4.
3. Stainless-Steel Shelf Units:
- a. Description: Table mounted, single deck **OR** Table mounted, double deck **OR** Wall mounted, **as directed**. Fabricate units of stainless steel, Type 304, 0.062 inch (1.59 mm) **OR** Type 304, 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) **OR** Type 430, 0.050 inch (1.27 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  - b. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M, austenitic stainless steel, type as indicated.
  - c. Stainless-Steel Finish: Directional satin finish, No. 4.
4. Pot Racks:
- a. Description: Wall mounted **OR** Ceiling hung **OR** Corner, **as directed**. Fabricate units of stainless steel **OR** painted, cold-rolled steel, **as directed**.
    - 1) Bars: Double **OR** Single, **as directed**.
    - 2) Hooks: 18 per unit.
  - b. Materials:
    - 1) Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M, austenitic stainless steel, Type 304.
    - 2) Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B, suitable for exposed applications.
  - c. Finishes:
    - 1) Stainless Steel: Directional satin finish, No. 4.
    - 2) Cold-Rolled Steel: Powder-coat painted finish.
5. Stainless-Steel Hand Sinks:
- a. Description: Lavatory sink. Fabricate units of stainless steel, Type 304, 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) **OR** 0.038 inch (0.95 mm), **as directed**, thick.
    - 1) Operation: Electronic **OR** Knee valve **OR** Foot pedal **OR** Wrist handle **OR** Handle, **as directed**.
    - 2) Faucet and Spout: as directed by the Owner.
    - 3) Accessories:
      - a) Chrome-plated tail piece and P trap, NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40), with 0.045-inch (1.1-mm) minimum wall thickness.
      - b) Strainer basket with metal post.
      - c) Liquid soap dispenser, splash **OR** deck, **as directed**, mounted.
      - d) Liquid soap and towel dispenser.
      - e) Towel dispenser.
      - f) Tubular wall supports.
      - g) Skirt assembly for support.
      - h) Side splashes.
  - b. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M, austenitic stainless steel, type as indicated.
  - c. Stainless-Steel Finish: Directional satin finish, No. 4.
6. Floor Troughs **OR** Water Receptacles, **as directed**:
- a. Description: 4-inch (102-mm) **OR** 2-inch (50-mm), **as directed**, nominal depth excluding tailpiece.
    - 1) Body: Stainless steel, Type 304, 0.078 inch (1.98 mm) thick.
    - 2) Grate: Stainless-steel bar, Type 304 **OR** Fiberglass, **as directed**.





- 3) Waste Connection: NPS 3 (DN 80).
  - b. Materials:
    - 1) Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M, austenitic stainless steel, type as indicated.
    - 2) Stainless-Steel Bars: ASTM A 276, austenitic stainless steel, type as indicated.
  - c. Stainless-Steel Finish: Directional satin finish, No. 4.
- B. Food Waste Machines
1. Food Waste Disposer Units:
    - a. Description: 3 **OR** 5 **OR** 7, **as directed**, hp, with dual-direction shredding elements, and the following:
      - 1) Stainless-steel **OR** Corrosion-resistant, **as directed**, housing.
      - 2) Flow control.
      - 3) Solenoid valve.
      - 4) Vacuum breaker.
      - 5) Fixed nozzle.
      - 6) Control Panel:
        - a) Autoreversing and internal timed water flush.
        - b) Stainless-steel mounting bracket.
      - 7) Prerinse: Backsplash mounted with hot- and cold-water mixing valve and with stainless-steel **OR** corrosion-resistant, **as directed**, exposed metal parts and the following:
        - a) Wall support bracket.
        - b) Flexible, 3/8-inch (10-mm) metal-encased hose with a minimum length of 29 inches (737 mm) and supported by spiral spring.
        - c) Spray-head assembly with lockable lever handle.
      - 8) Accessories:
        - a) Collar adaptor for sink **OR** trough, **as directed**.
        - b) Cone with adaptor ring.
          - i. Size: 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 15 inches (381 mm) **OR** 18 inches (457 mm), **as directed**.
        - c) Cone cover in size that matches cone.
        - d) Silver accumulator.
      - 9) Electrical Service: Equip unit for connection to service indicated on Drawings.
    2. Food Waste Pulper and Water Extractor Systems:
      - a. Description: Stainless-steel pulper unit, extractor unit, and control panel with water-level control and push-button start.
        - 1) Capacity: Not less than 600 lb (272 kg) **OR** 700 lb (318 kg) **OR** 900 lb (408 kg), **as directed**, of waste per hour.
        - 2) Accessories:
          - a) Feed trough connection.
          - b) Feed tray.
          - c) Feed hood assembly.
          - d) Under-dish-table lid.
          - e) Remote Water Extractor:
            - i. Dam, to prevent siphoning of water from pulper tank.
            - ii. Remote piping system, overhead **OR** below floor, **as directed**.
        - 3) Electrical Service: Equip unit for connection to service indicated on Drawings.
      3. Food Waste Grinder and Water Extractor Systems:
        - a. Description: Stainless-steel construction; with off and on controls on unit, food waste hopper, silver saver, internal disposer, removable water extraction auger with internal water sprays, and discharge chute.
          - 1) Capacity: Not less than 600 lb (272 kg) **OR** 700 lb (318 kg), **as directed**, of waste per hour.
          - 2) Accessories:
            - a) Reel rinse unit with spray valve.



- b) Recirculation water pump.
        - c) Trough mount.
      - 3) Electrical Service: Equip unit for connection to service indicated on Drawings.
  - 4. Undercounter Food Waste Grinder and Water Extractors:
    - a. Description: Stainless-steel, undercounter, cleanable assembly including the following:
      - 1) Capacity: Not less than 600 lb (272 kg) **OR** 700 lb (318 kg), **as directed**, of waste per hour.
      - 2) Separate water-extractor and disposer units.
        - a) Disposer: Corrosion-resistant housing, dual-direction shredding elements.
      - 3) Piping between disposer and water extractor.
      - 4) Vacuum breaker.
      - 5) Solenoid valve.
      - 6) Flow control.
      - 7) Time-delayed relay.
      - 8) Control Panel:
        - a) Autoreversing and internal timed water flush.
        - b) Stainless-steel mounting bracket.
      - 9) Prerinse: Backsplash mounted with hot- and cold-water mixing valve and with stainless-steel **OR** corrosion-resistant, **as directed**, exposed metal parts and the following:
        - a) Wall support bracket.
        - b) Flexible, 3/8-inch (10-mm) metal-encased hose with a minimum length of 29 inches (737 mm) and supported by spiral spring.
        - c) Spray-head assembly with lockable lever handle.
      - 10) Accessories:
        - a) Cone with adaptor ring.
          - i. Size: 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 15 inches (381 mm) **OR** 18 inches (457 mm), **as directed**.
        - b) Cone cover in size that matches cone.
        - c) Silver sorter.
        - d) Trough collar connection.
      - 11) Electrical Service: Equip unit for connection to service indicated on Drawings.
- C. Cooking Equipment
  - 1. Ranges:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Top Configuration:
        - a) Open-Burner Unit:
          - i. Standard Burners: Four **OR** Six **OR** Eight **OR** Four, step-up type, **as directed**.
          - ii. Wok **OR** Saute, **as directed**, Head: as directed by the Owner.
        - b) Griddle: Flat **OR** Raised, **as directed**.
        - c) Radiant Broiler: as directed by the Owner.
      - 2) Base Configuration:
        - a) Standard Oven(s): One **OR** Two, **as directed**.
        - b) Convection Oven(s): One **OR** Two, **as directed**.
        - c) Storage Base: One.
      - 3) Accessories:
        - a) High **OR** Double-deck, **as directed**, back shelf.
        - b) Stainless-steel sides.
        - c) Stainless-steel back.
        - d) Legs for curb base.
        - e) Toe Base: 4 inches (102 mm) high.
        - f) Casters: as directed by the Owner.
        - g) Oven Rack(s): One for each oven.



- 4) Electrical Service: Equip unit for connection to service indicated on Drawings.
  - 5) Gas Service: Natural **OR** Liquefied propane, **as directed**, gas.
2. Deep Fat Fryers:
- a. Description: Electric fryer, solid-state controls **OR** Electric, programmable computer controls **OR** Gas fryer, **as directed**.
    - 1) Oil Capacity: 40 lb (18 kg) **OR** 85 lb (39 kg), **as directed**.
    - 2) Accessories:
      - a) Stainless-steel sides.
      - b) Stainless-steel fry tank.
      - c) Stainless-steel fry tank cover.
      - d) Casters: as directed by the Owner.
      - e) Automatic basket lifts.
      - f) Single Fry Baskets: as directed by the Owner.
      - g) Twin Fry Baskets: as directed by the Owner.
      - h) Triple Fry Baskets: as directed by the Owner.
      - i) Quick gas-service disconnect and flexible hose.
    - 3) Electrical Service: Equip unit for connection to service indicated on Drawings.
    - 4) Gas Service: Natural **OR** Liquefied propane, **as directed**, gas.
3. Steam Jacketed Kettles:
- a. Description: Stainless steel, Type 304.
    - 1) Type: Stationary **OR** Tilting, **as directed**.
    - 2) Steam Source: Electrically heated, self-contained **OR** Direct, **as directed**.
      - a) Maximum **OR** Operating, **as directed**, Steam Pressure: 50 psig (345 kPa) **OR** 25 psig (172 kPa), **as directed**.
    - 3) Capacity: 10 quarts (9.5 L) **OR** 20 gal. (76 L), **as directed**.
    - 4) Accessories:
      - a) Basket insert.
      - b) Lift-off cover.
      - c) Single **OR** Double, **as directed**, -pantry water filler.
      - d) Tangent Drawoff: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (76 mm), **as directed**.
      - e) Disc Strainer: 1/8 inch (3 mm), perforated **OR** solid, **as directed**.
      - f) Interior Finish: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Stainless steel, Type 316, **as directed**.
      - g) Cold-water jacket cooling.
      - h) Steam trap assemblies.
      - i) Kettle brush kit.
    - 5) Electrical Service: Equip unit for connection to service indicated on Drawings.
  - b. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M, austenitic stainless steel, type as indicated.
  - c. Stainless-Steel Finish: Directional satin finish, No. 4.
4. Ovens:
- a. Description: Electric convection **OR** Gas convection **OR** Rotisserie, **as directed**.
    - 1) Single deck **OR** Double deck **OR** Single deck with open stand, **as directed**.
    - 2) Accessories:
      - a) Oven Rack(s): One per oven chamber.
      - b) Stainless-steel drip pan.
      - c) Down-draft flue diverter.
      - d) Stacking kit.
    - 3) Electrical Service: Equip unit for connection to service indicated on Drawings.
    - 4) Gas Service: Natural **OR** Liquefied propane, **as directed**, gas.
5. Microwave Ovens:
- a. Description: 1200-W cooking power.
    - 1) Electrical Service: Equip unit with plug and cord for 120-V service.
6. Coffee Urns:
- a. Description: Single **OR** Twin **OR** Triple, **as directed**, urn.
    - 1) Capacity: 3 gal. (11 L) **OR** 6 gal. (23 L) **OR** 10 gal. (38 L), **as directed**, per liner.
    - 2) Type: Electric **OR** Gas **OR** Steam, **as directed**, heated.



- 3) Agitator: Automatic **OR** Push button, **as directed**.
- 4) Spray Arm: With **OR** Without, **as directed**, bypass.
- 5) Timer: Digital **OR** Electromechanical, **as directed**.
- 6) Accessories:
  - a) Fill/Dispense: as directed by the Owner.
  - b) Multiple Faucet: as directed by the Owner.
  - c) Filtering: Permanent, stainless-steel, woven-wire cloth **OR** Disposable filter paper, **as directed**.
  - d) Finish: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Brass body and trim **OR** Copper body and brass trim, **as directed**.
- b. Electrical Service: Equip unit for connection to service indicated on Drawings.
- c. Gas Service: Natural **OR** Liquefied propane, **as directed**, gas.
- d. Operating Steam Pressure: As indicated on Drawings **OR** As directed.

#### D. Self-Contained Refrigeration Equipment

##### 1. Refrigerators **OR** Freezers, **as directed**:

- a. Description: Reach-in **OR** Roll-in **OR** Pass-through, **as directed**, type.
  - 1) Exterior Finish: Stainless steel.
  - 2) Interior Finish: Stainless steel **OR** Manufacturer's standard, **as directed**.
  - 3) Doors: Full length **OR** Half length **OR** In configuration shown on Drawings, **as directed**.
  - 4) Accessories:
    - a) Casters.
    - b) Stainless-steel back with rear louvers.
    - c) Re-hinging feature for doors.
    - d) Hinged glass doors and fluorescent fixtures.
    - e) Tray Slides: For sheet pans.
    - f) Chrome-Plated **OR** Stainless-Steel, **as directed**, Shelves: Quantity, as directed by the Owner.
    - g) Loading Rack: as directed by the Owner.
    - h) Transfer Carriage: as directed by the Owner.
  - 5) Electrical Service: Equip unit with plug and cord for service indicated on Drawings.

##### 2. Undercounter Refrigerators **OR** Freezers, **as directed**:

- a. Description: Compact unit with rear-mounted, self-contained refrigeration system.
  - 1) Accessories:
    - a) Stainless-steel top with backsplash.
    - b) Stainless-steel back panel.
    - c) Casters: 6 inches (152 mm) **OR** 4 inches (102 mm) **OR** 3-1/2 inches (89 mm), **as directed**, high.
    - d) Utility Base: 6 inches (152 mm) high.
    - e) Shelves: Description and quantity, as directed by the Owner.
    - f) Stacking kit.
  - 2) Electrical Service: Equip unit with plug and cord for service indicated on Drawings.

##### 3. Merchandiser Refrigeration Units:

- a. Description: Curved-glass, self-contained refrigerator **OR** Sliding-glass, self-contained refrigerator **OR** Sliding-glass, self-contained freezer, **as directed**.
  - 1) Exterior Finish: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
  - 2) Interior Finish: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Stainless steel **OR** White, **as directed**.
  - 3) Accessories:
    - a) Door locks.
    - b) Fluorescent Light Fixtures: Quantity, as directed by the Owner.
    - c) Base: as directed by the Owner.
    - d) Casters: as directed by the Owner.
    - e) Legs: as directed by the Owner.
    - f) Chrome-Plated Shelves: Quantity, as directed by the Owner.



- 4) Electrical Service: Equip unit with plug and cord for service indicated on Drawings.
4. Ice-Making Machine:
  - a. Description: Undercounter **OR** Freestanding, **as directed**, units.
    - 1) Production: Ice cubes **OR** cubes, dice **OR** cubes, half dice **OR** flakes **OR** chiplets (compacted flake ice), **as directed**.
    - 2) Capacity: as directed by The Owner per 24-hour period.
    - 3) Accessories:
      - a) Storage Bin: as directed by the Owner..
        - i. Stainless-steel stand and legs.
      - b) Water filter.
    - 4) Electrical Service: Equip unit for connection to service indicated on Drawings.
- E. Walk-In Refrigeration Equipment
  1. Walk-in Refrigeration Units:
    - a. Description: Cooler **OR** Freezer **OR** Two-compartment unit, with cooler and freezer compartments, **as directed**.
      - 1) Wall and Ceiling Panels: Interlocking insulating panels.
      - 2) Floors: Insulated floor panels **OR** Field installed; provide manufacturer's standard insulated floor screed, **as directed**.
      - 3) Doors:
        - a) Hinges: Two per door **OR** Self-closing and spring loaded; three per door, **As directed**.
        - b) Latch: Edge-mounted, positive-type latch with cylinder lock.
        - c) Include an accessible safety-release handle that opens door from inside when door is locked per building code.
      - 4) Door Accessories:
        - a) Vision port: Install per building code. The bottom of the glass not higher than 43" AFF.
        - b) Pressure relief port.
        - c) Threshold: Stainless steel, factory installed per building code.
        - d) Anticondensate heater at freezer doors.
      - 5) Vaporproof Lighting Fixtures: Incandescent fixture with 100-W lamp.
        - a) Control: Neon pilot light and toggle switch located on exterior of door panel.
        - b) Quantity: One per compartment, located on door panel.
      - 6) Refrigeration System: Self-contained, mounted on unit **OR** Remote system with preassembled condensing unit and evaporator assemblies.
        - a) Exterior Condensing Units: Include winter control, crankcase heater, and enclosed weatherproof housing.
        - b) Operating Temperature: as directed by the Owner.
      - 7) Temperature Monitoring System: Electronic monitoring and remote audible alarm system that warns when temperatures register 10 deg F (6 deg C) above or below set temperature.
      - 8) Closure Panels and Trim: Include closure panels and trim.
      - 9) Electrical Service: Equip unit for connection to service indicated on Drawings.
    - b. Finishes:
      - 1) Exposed Exterior Finish: Stucco-patterned aluminum **OR** Smooth, mill-finished aluminum **OR** White-painted aluminum, **as directed**.
      - 2) Unexposed Exterior Finish: Stucco-patterned, metallic-coated steel.
      - 3) Interior Finish: Stucco-patterned aluminum **OR** Smooth, mill-finished aluminum **OR** White-painted aluminum, **as directed**.
      - 4) Closure Panels and Trim: Matched to exposed exterior finish of panels.
- F. Powered Food-Preparation Equipment
  1. Mixers **OR** Slicers **OR** Meat Saws **OR** Peelers, **as directed**:
    - a. Description: as directed by the Owner.
    - b. Accessories: as directed by the Owner.



c. Electrical Service: Equip unit with plug and cord for service indicated on Drawings.

G. Warewashing Equipment

1. Warewashing Machines:

- a. Description: Dishwashing, single tank **OR** Dishwashing, double tank **OR** Dishwashing, rackless conveyor **OR** Dishwashing, with circular conveyor table **OR** Pot and pan washing, two racks **OR OR** Pot and pan washing, one rack, **as directed**.
- 1) Capacity: as directed by the Owner.
  - 2) Accessories: as directed by the Owner.
  - 3) Electrical Service: Equip unit for connection to service indicated on Drawings.

H. Serving Equipment

1. Modular Counters:

- a. Description: Hot food **OR** Refrigerated salad **OR** Ice-cooled salad **OR** Sliding-glass door refrigerated **OR** Frost-top **OR** Sandwich **OR** Pizza **OR** Refrigerated-chest **OR** Dual-temperature **OR** Tray-starter **OR** Storage **OR** Cashier, **as directed**, module.
- 1) Cabinet Face Panels: Manufacturer's standard.
  - 2) Accessories:
    - a) Tray slide.
    - b) Work shelf.
    - c) Casters.
    - d) Electrical receptacle.
    - e) Cam-action latch locks with trigger release to mate with adjoining modular counters.
    - f) Tempered-glass, food-protector shield.
  - 3) Electrical Service: Equip unit for connection to service indicated on Drawings.
  - 4) Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
  - 5) Install serving counters, tray slides, heights and reach depths per building code.

I. Utility Distribution Systems

1. Utility Distribution Systems:

- a. Description: Overhead **OR** Counter **OR** Island **OR** Tray-slide **OR** Steam **OR** Wall-mounted, **as directed**, system.
- b. Accessories: as directed by the Owner.

J. Miscellaneous Materials

1. Installation Accessories, General: NSF certified for end-use application indicated.
2. Elastomeric Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920; silicone **OR** urethane, **as directed**. Type S (single component), Grade NS (nonsag), Class 25, Use NT (nontraffic) related to exposure, and Use M, G, A, or O as applicable to joint substrates indicated.
  - a. Public Health and Safety Requirements:
    - 1) Sealant is certified for compliance with NSF standards for end-use application indicated.
    - 2) Washed and cured sealant complies with the FDA's regulations for use in areas that come in contact with food.
  - b. Cylindrical Sealant Backing: ASTM C 1330, Type C, closed-cell polyethylene, in diameter greater than joint width.

K. Finishes

1. Stainless-Steel Finishes:

- a. Surface Preparation: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
- b. Polished Finishes: Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches.
  - 1) Run grain of directional finishes with long dimension of each piece.



- 2) When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.
2. Powder-Coat Finishes: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, electrostatically apply manufacturer's standard, baked-polymer, thermosetting powder finish. Comply with resin manufacturer's written instructions for application, baking, and minimum dry film thickness.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation

1. Install foodservice equipment level and plumb, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Connect equipment to utilities.
  - b. Provide cutouts in equipment, neatly formed, where required to run service lines through equipment to make final connections.
2. Complete equipment assembly where field assembly is required.
  - a. Provide closed butt and contact joints that do not require a filler.
  - b. Grind field welds on stainless-steel equipment until smooth and polish to match adjacent finish.
3. Install equipment with access and maintenance clearances that comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
4. Install cabinets and similar equipment on bases in a bed of sealant.
5. Install closure-trim strips and similar items requiring fasteners in a bed of sealant.
6. Install joint sealant in joints between equipment and abutting surfaces with continuous joint backing unless otherwise indicated. Produce airtight, watertight, vermin-proof, sanitary joints.

#### B. Cleaning And Protecting

1. After completing installation of equipment, repair damaged finishes.
2. Clean and adjust equipment as required to produce ready-for-use condition.
3. Protect equipment from damage during remainder of the construction period.

#### C. Demonstration

1. Train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain foodservice equipment.

END OF SECTION 11 82 26 00a



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



**SECTION 13 47 13 13 - CATHODIC PROTECTION**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for cathodic protection. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. Section includes passive cathodic protection systems that use magnesium or zinc anodes to protect iron and steel piping and tanks.

## C. Performance Requirements

1. Delegated Design: Design, supervise, test, and inspect the installation of cathodic protection systems, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
  - a. Design cathodic protection for pipelines according to NACE RP0169.
  - b. Design cathodic protection for metal underground storage tanks according to NACE RP0285.
2. Survey site and determine soil or water corrosivity (resistivity), current requirements, potential surveys, stray currents, and water chemistry/corrosivity (pH).
3. Select anodes and accessories relevant to level of protection. Design anodes for an estimated life of 15 **OR** 30, **as directed**, years before replacement.
4. Cathodic protection systems shall provide protective potential that complies with referenced NACE standards. Insulators are required if needed to insulate protected metals from other structures.

## D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: For cathodic protection. Include plans, evaluations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - a. Detail locations of cathodic protection equipment, devices, and outlets, with characteristics and cross-references to products.
  - b. Include calculations and details of anode designs.
  - c. Include labeling and identifying scheme for wires, cables, and test boxes.
3. Delegated-Design Submittal: For cathodic protection system indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified corrosion engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - a. Conduct site tests necessary for design, including soil resistivity, close-interval potential surveys, testing during construction, interference testing, and training of the Owner's personnel.
  - b. Provide system design calculations, stating the maximum recommended anode current output density, and the rate of gaseous production, if any, at that current density.
4. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, and coordinating connections to piping and tanks.
5. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer. Submit evidence of current license, corporate authorization (if applicable) of the engineering business, and NACE certifications.
6. Field quality-control reports.
7. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include the following:
  - a. Basic system operation, outlining the step-by-step procedures required for system startup, operation, adjustment of current flow, and shutdown.
  - b. Instructions for pipe-to-reference cell and tank-to-reference cell potential measurements and frequency of monitoring.



- c. Instructions for dielectric connections, interference and sacrificial-anode bonds; and precautions to ensure safe conditions during repair of pipe, tank or other metallic systems. Instructions shall be neatly bound.
  - d. Locations of all anodes, test stations, and insulating joints.
  - e. Structure-to-reference cell potentials as measured during the tests required by "Field Quality Control" Article.
  - f. Recommendations for maintenance testing, including instructions for pipe-to-reference cell potential measurements and frequency of testing.
  - g. Precautions to ensure safe conditions during repair of pipe system.
8. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.
- E. Quality Assurance
- 1. Corrosion Engineer Qualifications: A qualified professional engineer who has education and experience in cathodic protection of buried and submerged metal structures and has NACE accreditation or certification as a Corrosion Specialist or Cathodic Protection Specialist.
- F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
- 1. Protect anodes from exposure to rain and direct sunlight.
- G. Warranty
- 1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace permanent reference electrodes that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
    - a. Warranty Period: 15 **OR** 30, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

- A. Magnesium Anodes, Type II
- 1. Comply with ASTM B 843.
  - 2. Chemical composition as percent of weight shall be as follows:
    - a. Aluminum: 0.010 maximum.
    - b. Manganese: 0.50 to 1.3.
    - c. Zinc: 0.05 maximum.
    - d. Silicon: 0.50 maximum.
    - e. Copper: 0.02 maximum.
    - f. Nickel: 0.001 maximum.
    - g. Iron: 0.03 maximum.
    - h. Other Impurities: 0.05 each; 0.3 maximum total.
    - i. Magnesium: Remainder.
  - 3. Anode Core: Galvanized steel with anode wire silver-soldered to the core. Connection shall be recessed and epoxy insulated for 600-V rating. Connection shall be covered with heat-shrinkable tubing, and insulation shall be extended over connection.
  - 4. Anode Wires: Factory-installed cables, with copper conductors, suitable for direct burial; not less than No. 10 AWG with Type THWN insulation according to ASTM D 1248 and NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658; long enough to extend to accompanying junction box without splicing.
  - 5. Anode Backfill: Backfill materials packaged in water-permeable fabric sack or cardboard container. Anodes shall be factory installed in packaged backfill using methods that result in dense packing of fill with factory-installed anode spacers to ensure centering of anode in packaged anode backfill. Backfill material shall have the following chemical composition by weight:
    - a. Hydrated Gypsum: 75 percent.
    - b. Bentonite Clay: 20 percent.
    - c. Anhydrous Sodium Sulfate: 5 percent.



- B. Magnesium/Manganese Alloy Anodes
1. Chemical composition as percent of weight shall be as follows:
    - a. Aluminum: 0.01 maximum.
    - b. Manganese: 0.50 to 1.3.
    - c. Copper: 0.02 maximum.
    - d. Nickel: 0.001 maximum.
    - e. Iron: 0.03 maximum.
    - f. Other Impurities: 0.05 each; 0.3 maximum total.
    - g. Magnesium: Remainder.
  2. Bare Anode Weight: 40 lb (18 kg), not including core, and a nominal length of 60 inches (1520 mm).
  3. Anode Wires: Factory-installed cables, with copper conductors, suitable for direct burial; not less than No. 10 AWG with Type THWN insulation according to ASTM D 1248 and NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658; long enough to extend to accompanying junction box without splicing.
  4. Anode Backfill: Backfill materials packaged in water-permeable fabric sack or cardboard container. Anodes shall be factory installed in packaged backfill using methods that result in dense packing of fill with factory-installed anode spacers to ensure centering of anode in packaged anode backfill. Backfill material shall have the following chemical composition by weight:
    - a. Hydrated Gypsum: 75 percent.
    - b. Bentonite Clay: 20 percent.
    - c. Anhydrous Sodium Sulfate: 5 percent.
- C. Zinc Anodes For Buried Service, Type Z-1
1. Comply with ASTM B 418, Type II.
  2. Chemical composition as percent of weight shall be as follows:
    - a. Aluminum: 0.005 maximum.
    - b. Cadmium: 0.003 maximum.
    - c. Iron: 0.0014 maximum.
    - d. Zinc: Remainder.
  3. Bare Anode Ingot Weight: 30 lb (13.6 kg), 2 inches (50 mm) square and 30 inches (760 mm) long. Packaged weight of anode bag shall be 70 lb (32 kg).
  4. Anode Wires: Factory-installed cables, with copper conductors, suitable for direct burial; not less than No. 10 AWG with Type THWN insulation according to ASTM D 1248 and NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658; long enough to extend to accompanying junction box without splicing.
  5. Anode Backfill: Backfill materials packaged in water-permeable fabric sack or cardboard container. Anodes shall be factory installed in packaged backfill using methods that result in dense packing of fill with factory-installed anode spacers to ensure centering of anode in packaged anode backfill. Backfill material shall have the following chemical composition by weight:
    - a. Hydrated Gypsum: 75 percent.
    - b. Bentonite Clay: 20 percent.
    - c. Anhydrous Sodium Sulfate: 5 percent.
- D. Permanent Reference Electrodes
1. Copper/copper sulfate (Cu/CuSO<sub>4</sub>), suitable for direct burial. Electrode shall be guaranteed by supplier for 15 **OR** 30, **as directed**, years' service in the installed environment.
- E. Wire And Cable
1. Anode Header Cable: Single-conductor, Type HMWPE, insulated cable specifically designed for direct-buried dc service in cathodic protection installations.
    - a. Conductor: Stranded, annealed, uncoated copper, not less than No. 8 AWG, complying with ASTM B 3 and ASTM B 8.



- b. Insulation: High-molecular-weight polyethylene, complying with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658.
  - c. Minimum Average Thickness of Insulation: 110 mils (2.8 mm) for Nos. 8 through 2 AWG, and 125 mils (3.2 mm) for Nos. 1 through 4/0 AWG; rated at 600 V.
  - d. Connectors: Copper-compression type or exothermic welds.
  2. Conductors and Cables: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".
    - a. Bonding Conductors for Joint and Continuity Bonds: Not less than No. 8 AWG, stranded, Type THWN copper conductors.
    - b. Flexible Pipe Coupling Bonds: Flexible copper straps with electrical resistance equal to No. 1/0 AWG stranded copper wire and with five holes for five exothermic welds to pipe.
    - c. Test Wires: No. 12 AWG, Type THWN copper conductors.
    - d. Resistance Wires: No. 16 or No. 22 AWG nickel-chromium wire.
    - e. Cables for Installation in Conduit: Type THWN copper conductors.
- F. Test Stations
1. Plastic Test Stations: Flush-mounted type, manufactured of high-impact-resistant PVC or polycarbonate with watertight conduit connections and cover and removable terminal board having at least five terminals.
  2. Test Station Mounting Enclosures:
    - a. Non-Traffic-Area Boxes: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems".
    - b. Traffic-Area Boxes: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Underground Ducts And Raceways For Electrical Systems". Boxes shall have cast-iron covers with a welded bead legend "CP TEST."
- G. Sealing, Potting, And Dielectric Compounds
1. Sealing and Dielectric Insulating Compound: Comply with NACE RP0188. Black, rubber based, soft, permanently pliable, tacky, moldable, and unbacked; 0.125 inch (3 mm) **OR** 0.5 inch (13 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  2. Potting Compound: Comply with NACE RP0188. Cast-epoxy, two-package type; fabricated for this purpose and covered with heat-shrinkable tape.
  3. Pressure-Sensitive, Vinyl-Plastic Electrical Tape: Comply with UL 510.
- H. Exothermic Welding Materials
1. Exothermic Weld Kits: Specifically designed by manufacturer for welding materials and shapes required.
  2. Exothermic Weld Caps: Dome of high-density polyethylene, 10-mil (0.254-mm) minimum thickness, filled with mastic and containing a tunnel portion to separate lead wire from exothermic weld.
- I. Coating Repair Materials
1. Touchup Coating Materials: Comply with requirements in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings" for coating systems for touchup of factory-applied coatings.
  2. Adhesive-Applied Coating Materials: Coating materials shall be compatible with factory-applied coating system.
    - a. Nominal thickness of coating materials shall be not less than 8 mils (0.2 mm) **OR** 16 mils (0.4 mm) **OR** 24 mils (0.6 mm) **OR** 40 mils (1.0 mm) **OR** 60 mils (1.5 mm), **as directed**, plus or minus 5 percent.
    - b. Coating materials shall be one of the following supplied by factory-applied coating system manufacturer:
      - 1) Polyvinyl-chloride, pressure-sensitive, adhesive tape.
      - 2) High-density polyethylene/bituminous rubber compound tape.
      - 3) Butyl rubber tape.
      - 4) Coal-tar epoxy.



### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. General Installation Requirements

1. Comply with ANSI/IEEE C2 and NFPA 70.
2. Make connections to ferrous pipe and metal tanks using exothermic welding.
3. Coat welds with the coating repair material and apply an exothermic weld cap.

#### B. Magnesium Anode Installation

1. Install magnesium anodes at locations that clear obstructions. Install at least 36 inches (900 mm) and no more than 10 feet (3 m) from pipe or tank to be protected. Install in augered holes with top of anode 24 inches (600 mm) below pipe invert elevation **OR** a minimum of 36 inches (900 mm) below finished grade. In soils that will collapse into augered holes, use casing of galvanized sheet steel.
2. Install anodes in a dry condition after plastic or waterproof protective covering has been completely removed from water-permeable permanent container that houses anode metal. Do not use anode-connecting wire for lowering anode into hole. Backfill annular space around anode with fine earth in 6-inch (150-mm) layers; compact each layer using hand tools. Do not strike anode or connecting wire during backfilling and compacting. After backfilling and compacting to within 6 inches (150 mm) of finished grade, pour approximately 5 gal. (20 L) of water into each filled hole. After water has been absorbed by earth, complete backfilling to finished level.
3. If rock strata are encountered before achieving specified augured hole depth, install anodes horizontally at depth at least as deep as bottom of pipe to be protected.
4. Install anodes spaced as indicated, directly connected **OR** connected through a test station, **as directed**, to the pipeline, allowing slack in connecting wire to compensate for movement during backfill operation.
5. For tank protection, connect groups of anodes to collector cable. Make contact, through a test station, with tank to be protected.
6. Do not use resistance wires to reduce current output of individual or group anodes.

#### C. Zinc Anode Installation

1. Install zinc anode horizontally in a hole at least 3 inches (76 mm) larger than anode. Install anode under new copper water tubing, including service lines, blowoffs, and air releases. Separate piping and anode by at least 24 inches (600 mm), but not more than 60 inches (1520 mm).
2. Install anode midway between both ends of piping. Install anode wire in piping trench and connect to piping at an accessible location. Install anode wire in PVC conduit where rising out of the ground to the aboveground connection.

#### D. Installation Of Reference Electrodes

1. Install directly beneath the buried metallic component being protected.

#### E. Cable And Wire Installation

1. Install conductors, except anode wires, in PVC conduit with waterproof PVC junction boxes. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems" for conduit and its installation.
2. Anode Wire Installation: Cover trench bottom for the anode wire with 3-inch (76-mm) layer of sand or stone-free earth. Center wire on backfill layer and do not stretch or kink the conductor. Place backfill over wire in layers not exceeding 6 inches (150 mm) deep, and compact each layer. Use clean fill, free from roots, vegetable matter, and refuse. Place cable underground-line warning tape within 18 inches (460 mm) of finished grade, above cable and conduit.
3. Bonding Conductors: Install conductors on metallic pipe and tanks, to and across buried flexible couplings, mechanical joints, and flanged joints except at places where insulating joints are specified. Welded and threaded joints are considered electrically continuous and do not require bonding.
  - a. Install at least two bonds between parts requiring bonding.



- b. Bonding conductors must contain sufficient slack for anticipated movement between structures. Bonding conductors across pipe joints shall have not less than a 4-inch (100-mm) slack for pipe expansion, contraction, and soil stress.
  - c. Connect bonding conductors to pipe, coupling follower rings and coupling middle ring or sleeve. Connect bonding conductors with exothermic welds.
4. For wire splicing, use compression connectors or exothermic welds.

F. Test Stations

1. Install test stations as follows:
  - a. At 1000-foot (300-m) intervals.
  - b. At insulating joints.
  - c. At both ends of casings when casing material is included in the cathodic protection system.
  - d. Where pipe crosses other metal pipes.
  - e. Where pipe connects to existing piping system.
  - f. Where pipe connects to dissimilar metal pipe.
  - g. At each tank component.
2. Install test stations on backfill complying with requirements for trench bottom fill for anode wires unless otherwise indicated.
3. Terminate test conductors on terminal boards and install a spare set of test leads at each testing location.

G. Pipe Joints

1. Insulating Flange Sets: Cover flanges with sealing and dielectric compound.
2. Insulating Unions: Install electrical isolation at each building entrance and at other locations indicated on approved Delegated-Design Drawings. Cover unions with sealing and dielectric compound.

H. Insulating Pipe Sleeves

1. Install insulating sleeves between metallic piping and metal buildings, hangers, supports, and other metal structures. Completely surround the metallic pipe for the full length of the steel contact and effectively prevent contact between the cathodically protected metallic pipe and other metallic structures. Support insulating sleeve to prevent damage to coating and to accommodate relative movement, vibrations, and temperature differentials.

I. Dissimilar Metals

1. Underground Dissimilar Piping: Coat insulating joint and pipe at joints of dissimilar piping material with sealing and dielectric compound for a minimum distance of 10 pipe diameters on both sides of joint.
2. Underground Dissimilar Valves: Coat dissimilar ferrous valves and pipe with sealing and dielectric compound for a minimum distance of 10 pipe diameters on both sides of valve.
3. Aboveground Dissimilar Pipe and Valves: If dissimilar metal pipe joints and valves are not buried and are exposed only to atmosphere, coat connection or valve, including pipe, with sealing and dielectric compound for a minimum distance of three pipe diameters on both sides of junction.

J. Coatings

1. Field Joints: Apply adhesive-applied coating system in a thickness to achieve corrosion protection equal to adjacent factory-applied coating.

K. Identification

1. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
  - a. Identify anode wires and anode header cables with marker tape.
  - b. Identify underground wires and cables with underground-line warning tape.
  - c. Identify text boxes with engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label, permanently attached to text box.



- L. Field Quality Control
1. Comply with NACE RP0169 and NACE RP0285.
  2. Perform tests and inspections.
    - a. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
  3. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. Static Pull Test: Choose, at random, one completed anode of each type for this destructive test. Demonstrate that anode wire connections have enough strength to withstand a minimum tensile load of 300 lb (136 kg). If test fails, replace all anodes and repeat test at another randomly selected anode.
    - b. Insulation Testing: Before anode system is connected to pipe and tank, test insulation at each insulating joint and fitting. Demonstrate that no metallic contact, or short circuit, exists between the two insulated sections of pipe and tank. Replace defective joints or fittings.
    - c. Bonding Tests: Test for electrical continuity across all bonded joints. Repair or add additional bonds until electrical continuity is achieved.
    - d. Baseline Potentials: After backfilling of pipe, tank, and anodes is completed, but before anodes are connected to pipe and tank, measure the static potential of pipe and tank to soil. Record initial measurements.
    - e. Anode Output: Measure electrical current as anodes or groups of anodes are connected to pipe and tank. Use a low-resistance ammeter. Record current, date, time, and location of each measurement.
    - f. Pipe- and- Tank-to-Reference Electrode Potential Measurements: On completion of installation of entire cathodic protection system, make electrode potential measurements according to NACE RP0169, using a copper/copper-sulfate reference electrode and a potentiometer-voltmeter, or a dc voltmeter with an internal resistance (sensitivity) of not less than 100,000 ohms per volt and a full scale of 1 or 2 V. Make measurements at same locations as those used for baseline potentials. Record voltage, date, time, and location of each measurement, using one of the following two methods:
      - 1) 0.85 V Negative Voltage: With cathodic system in operation, measure a negative voltage of at least minus 0.85 V between pipe or tank and a saturated copper/copper-sulfate reference electrode contacting the earth directly over pipe or tank.
      - 2) 100-mV Polarization Voltage: Determine polarization voltage shift by interrupting protective current and measuring polarization decay. An immediate voltage shift will occur if protective current is interrupted. Use voltage reading, after immediate shift, as base reading from which to measure polarization decay. Measure at least a minimum polarization voltage shift of 100 mV between pipe or tank and a saturated copper/copper-sulfate reference electrode contacting the earth directly over pipe or tank.
  4. Location of Measurements for Piping: For coated piping or conduit, measure from reference electrode in contact with the earth directly over pipe. Measure at intervals not exceeding 400 feet (120 m). Make additional measurements at each distribution service riser, with reference electrode placed directly over service line.
  5. Location of Measurements for Tanks: For underground tanks, measure from reference electrode located as follows:
    - a. Directly over center of tank.
    - b. At a point directly over tank and midway between each pair of anodes.
    - c. At each end of tank.
  6. Interference Testing: Test interference with cathodic protection from any foreign pipes and tanks in cooperation with the Owner of foreign pipes and tanks. Report results and recommendations.
  7. Stray Current Measurements: Perform at each test station. Mitigate stray currents due to lightning or overhead ac power transmission lines as provided for in NACE standards.
  8. Inspect coatings; comply with NACE RP0188. Repair imperfections of factory-applied coatings as specified in "Coatings" Article.



- a. Use electronic holiday detectors to detect coating imperfections.
- b. All damage to the protective coating during transit and handling shall be repaired before installation.
- c. Repair factory-applied coatings to have equal or better corrosion resistance than the factory-applied coating system. Field-repair material shall be of the type approved by, and shall be applied as recommended by, manufacturer of the coating material.

M. Adjusting

1. Adjust cathodic current using resistors as recommended by corrosion engineer who prepared the Delegated-Design Submittal in Part 1.1.
2. During the first year after Final Completion, test, inspect, and adjust cathodic protection system every three months to ensure its continued compliance with specified requirements.

N. Demonstration

1. Train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain cathodic protection system.

END OF SECTION 13 47 13 13



**SECTION 22 05 23 00 - PIPED UTILITIES BASIC MATERIALS AND METHODS**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for piped utilities - basic materials and methods. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Piping joining materials.
  - b. Transition fittings.
  - c. Dielectric fittings.
  - d. Sleeves.
  - e. Identification devices.
  - f. Grout.
  - g. Flowable fill.
  - h. Piped utility demolition.
  - i. Piping system common requirements.
  - j. Equipment installation common requirements.
  - k. Painting.
  - l. Concrete bases.
  - m. Metal supports and anchorages.

## C. Definitions

1. Exposed Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions.
2. Concealed Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
3. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
4. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
5. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
6. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

## D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For the following:
  - a. Dielectric fittings.
  - b. Identification devices.
2. Welding certificates.

## E. Quality Assurance

1. Steel Support Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. Steel Piping Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
  - a. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
  - b. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
3. Comply with ASME A13.1 for lettering size, length of color field, colors, and viewing angles of identification devices.



F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
2. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Piping Joining Materials

1. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
  - a. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness, unless otherwise indicated.
    - 1) Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
    - 2) Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
  - b. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
5. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BA<sub>g</sub>1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.
6. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
7. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
  - a. ABS Piping: ASTM D 2235.
  - b. CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493.
  - c. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
  - d. PVC to ABS Piping Transition: ASTM D 3138.
8. Fiberglass Pipe Adhesive: As furnished or recommended by pipe manufacturer.

B. Transition Fittings

1. Transition Fittings, General: Same size as, and with pressure rating at least equal to and with ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
2. Transition Couplings NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller:
  - a. Underground Piping: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
  - b. Aboveground Piping: Specified piping system fitting.
3. AWWA Transition Couplings NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger:
  - a. Description: AWWA C219, metal sleeve-type coupling for underground pressure piping.
4. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
  - a. Description: CPVC and PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint or threaded end.
5. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:
  - a. Description: MSS SP-107, CPVC and PVC four-part union. Include brass or stainless-steel threaded end, solvent-cement-joint or threaded plastic end, rubber O-ring, and union nut.
6. Flexible Transition Couplings for Underground Nonpressure Drainage Piping:
  - a. Description: ASTM C 1173 with elastomeric sleeve, ends same size as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant metal band on each end.



- C. Dielectric Fittings
1. Dielectric Fittings, General: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials or ferrous material body with separating nonconductive insulating material suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
  2. Dielectric Unions:
    - a. Description: Factory fabricated, union, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.
      - 1) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum **OR** 250 psig (1725 kPa), **as directed**, at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
      - 2) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded ferrous.
  3. Dielectric Flanges:
    - a. Description: Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100) and larger.
      - 1) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum **OR** 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum **OR** 300 psig (2070 kPa), **as directed**.
      - 2) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
  4. Dielectric-Flange Kits:
    - a. Description: Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
      - 1) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum.
      - 2) Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
      - 3) Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
      - 4) Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
  5. Dielectric Couplings:
    - a. Description: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining, NPS 3 (DN 80) and smaller.
      - 1) Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
      - 2) End Connections: Threaded.
  6. Dielectric Nipples:
    - a. Description: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining.
      - 1) Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
      - 2) End Connections: Threaded or grooved.
- D. Sleeves
1. Mechanical sleeve seals for pipe penetrations are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".
  2. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
  3. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
  4. Cast-Iron Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Molded PVC Sleeves: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
  6. PVC Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
  7. Molded PE Sleeves: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- E. Identification Devices
1. Equipment Nameplates: Metal permanently fastened to equipment with data engraved or stamped.
    - a. Data: Manufacturer, product name, model number, serial number, capacity, operating and power characteristics, labels of tested compliances, and essential data.
    - b. Location: Accessible and visible.
  2. Stencils: Standard stencils prepared with letter sizes complying with recommendations in ASME A13.1. Minimum letter height is 1-1/4 inches (30 mm) for ducts, and 3/4 inch (20 mm) for access door signs and similar operational instructions.
    - a. Material: Fiberboard **OR** Brass, **as directed**.



- b. Stencil Paint: Exterior, oil-based, alkyd-gloss black enamel, unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
  - c. Identification Paint: Exterior, oil-based, alkyd enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Snap-on Plastic Pipe Markers: Manufacturer's standard preprinted, semirigid, snap-on type. Include color-coding according to ASME A13.1, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Pressure-Sensitive Pipe Markers: Manufacturer's standard preprinted, color-coded, pressure-sensitive-vinyl type with permanent adhesive.
5. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches (150 mm): Full-band pipe markers, extending 360 degrees around pipe at each location.
6. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches (150 mm) and Larger: Either full-band or strip-type pipe markers, at least three times letter height and of length required for label.
7. Lettering: Manufacturer's standard preprinted captions as selected by the Owner.
8. Lettering: Use piping system terms indicated and abbreviate only as necessary for each application length.
  - a. Arrows: Either integrally with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions of flow, or as separate unit on each pipe marker to indicate direction of flow.
9. Plastic Tape: Manufacturer's standard color-coded, pressure-sensitive, self-adhesive vinyl tape, at least 3 mils (0.08 mm) thick.
  - a. Width: 1-1/2 inches (40 mm) on pipes with OD, including insulation, less than 6 inches (150 mm); 2-1/2 inches (65 mm) for larger pipes.
  - b. Color: Comply with ASME A13.1, unless otherwise indicated.
10. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch (13-mm) sequenced numbers. Include 5/32-inch (4-mm) hole for fastener.
  - a. Material: 0.032-inch- (0.8-mm-) thick, polished brass **OR** aluminum, **as directed**.
  - b. Material: 0.0375-inch- (1-mm-) thick stainless steel.
  - c. Material: 3/32-inch- (2.4-mm-) thick plastic laminate with 2 black surfaces and a white inner layer.
  - d. Material: Valve manufacturer's standard solid plastic.
  - e. Size: 1-1/2 inches (40 mm) in diameter, unless otherwise indicated.
  - f. Shape: As indicated for each piping system.
11. Valve Tag Fasteners: Brass, wire-link or beaded chain; or brass S-hooks.
12. Engraved Plastic-Laminate Signs: ASTM D 709, Type I, cellulose, paper-base, phenolic-resin-laminate engraving stock; Grade ES-2, black surface, black phenolic core, with white melamine subcore, unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate in sizes required for message. Provide holes for mechanical fastening.
  - a. Engraving: Engraver's standard letter style, of sizes and with terms to match equipment identification.
  - b. Thickness: 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), for units up to 20 sq. in. (130 sq. cm) or 8 inches (200 mm) in length, and 1/8 inch (3 mm) for larger units.
  - c. Fasteners: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or contact-type permanent adhesive.
13. Plastic Equipment Markers: Manufacturer's standard laminated plastic, in the following color codes:
  - a. Green: Cooling equipment and components.
  - b. Yellow: Heating equipment and components.
  - c. Brown: Energy reclamation equipment and components.
  - d. Blue: Equipment and components that do not meet criteria above.
  - e. Hazardous Equipment: Use colors and designs recommended by ASME A13.1.
  - f. Terminology: Match schedules as closely as possible. Include the following:
    - 1) Name and plan number.
    - 2) Equipment service.
    - 3) Design capacity.
    - 4) Other design parameters such as pressure drop, entering and leaving conditions, and speed.



- g. Size: 2-1/2 by 4 inches (65 by 100 mm) for control devices, dampers, and valves; 4-1/2 by 6 inches (115 by 150 mm) for equipment.
14. Plasticized Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with mat finish suitable for writing.
  - a. Size: 3-1/4 by 5-5/8 inches (83 by 143 mm).
  - b. Fasteners: Brass grommets and wire.
  - c. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as DANGER, CAUTION, or DO NOT OPERATE.
15. Lettering and Graphics: Coordinate names, abbreviations, and other designations used in piped utility identification with corresponding designations indicated. Use numbers, letters, and terms indicated for proper identification, operation, and maintenance of piped utility systems and equipment.
  - a. Multiple Systems: Identify individual system number and service if multiple systems of same name are indicated.

#### F. Grout

1. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
  - a. Characteristics: Post hardening, volume adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
  - b. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
  - c. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

#### G. Flowable Fill

1. Description: Low-strength-concrete, flowable-slurry mix.
  - a. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I, portland.
  - b. Density: 115- to 145-lb/cu. ft. (1840- to 2325-kg/cu. m).
  - c. Aggregates: ASTM C 33, natural sand, fine and crushed gravel or stone, coarse  
**OR**  
Aggregates: ASTM C 33, natural sand, fine with admixture, ASTM C 618, fly-ash mineral.
  - d. Water: Comply with ASTM C 94/C 94M.
  - e. Strength: 100 to 200 psig (690 to 1380 kPa) at 28 days.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Piped Utility Demolition

1. Refer to Division 01 Section(s) "Cutting And Patching" AND Division 02 Section(s) "Selective Structure Demolition" for general demolition requirements and procedures.
2. Disconnect, demolish, and remove piped utility systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
  - a. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
  - b. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping. Fill abandoned piping with flowable fill, and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
  - c. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
  - d. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make operational.
  - e. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to the Owner.
3. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

#### B. Dielectric Fitting Applications

1. Dry Piping Systems: Connect piping of dissimilar metals with the following:
  - a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Dielectric unions.
  - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): Dielectric flanges or dielectric flange kits.



2. Wet Piping Systems: Connect piping of dissimilar metals with the following:
  - a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Dielectric couplings **OR** dielectric nipples, **as directed**.
  - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Dielectric nipples.
  - c. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 65 to DN 200): Dielectric nipples or dielectric flange kits.
  - d. NPS 10 and NPS 12 (DN 250 and DN 300): Dielectric flange kits.

#### C. Piping Installation

1. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 33 specifying piping systems.
2. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on the Coordination Drawings.
3. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
4. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
5. Install piping at indicated slopes.
6. Install piping free of sags and bends.
7. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
8. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
9. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes, unless directed otherwise.
10. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves, unless directed otherwise.
11. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.
  - a. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - 1) Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
  - b. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
    - 1) PVC **OR** Steel, **as directed**, Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6 (DN 150).
    - 2) Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.
12. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
13. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections for roughing-in requirements.

#### D. Piping Joint Construction

1. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 33 specifying piping systems.
2. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
3. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
4. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  - b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
5. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1.1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
6. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
7. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with grooved-end pipe coupling with coupling housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts according to coupling and fitting manufacturer's written instructions.



8. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813 water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy (0.20 percent maximum lead content) complying with ASTM B 32.
  9. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
  10. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Assemble joints for plain-end copper tube and mechanical pressure seal fitting with proprietary crimping tool to according to fitting manufacturer's written instructions.
  11. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
    - a. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
    - b. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2235 and ASTM D 2661 appendixes.
    - c. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
    - d. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
    - e. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
    - f. PVC to ABS Nonpressure Transition Fittings: Join according to ASTM D 3138 Appendix.
  12. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3139.
  13. Plastic Nonpressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3212.
  14. Plastic Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
    - a. Plain-End PE Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
    - b. Plain-End PE Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.
  15. Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Piping Connections
1. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
    - a. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
    - b. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
    - c. Install dielectric fittings at connections of dissimilar metal pipes.
- F. Equipment Installation
1. Install equipment level and plumb, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Install equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference with other installations. Extend grease fittings to an accessible location.
  3. Install equipment to allow right of way to piping systems installed at required slope.
- G. Painting
1. Painting of piped utility systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 09.
  2. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.
- H. Identification
1. Piping Systems: Install pipe markers on each system. Include arrows showing normal direction of flow.
    - a. Stenciled Markers: According to ASME A13.1.
    - b. Plastic markers, with application systems. Install on insulation segment if required for hot noninsulated piping.
    - c. Locate pipe markers on exposed piping according to the following:
      - 1) Near each valve and control device.



- 2) Near each branch, excluding short takeoffs for equipment and terminal units. Mark each pipe at branch if flow pattern is not obvious.
  - 3) Near locations where pipes pass through walls or floors or enter inaccessible enclosures.
  - 4) At manholes and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
  - 5) Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
2. Equipment: Install engraved plastic-laminate sign or equipment marker on or near each major item of equipment.
    - a. Lettering Size: Minimum 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) high for name of unit if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (610 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) high for distances up to 72 inches (1800 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater distances. Provide secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths of size of principal lettering.
    - b. Text of Signs: Provide name of identified unit. Include text to distinguish among multiple units, inform user of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations.
  3. Adjusting: Relocate identifying devices that become visually blocked by work of this or other Divisions.

#### I. Concrete Bases

1. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
  - a. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit.
  - b. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of base.
  - c. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - d. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - e. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  - f. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
  - g. Use 3000-psi (20.7-MPa), 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".

#### J. Erection Of Metal Supports And Anchorages

1. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
2. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor piped utility materials and equipment.
3. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

#### K. Grouting

1. Mix and install grout for equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
2. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
3. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
4. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
5. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
6. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
7. Place grout around anchors.
8. Cure placed grout.

END OF SECTION 22 05 23 00





## SECTION 22 05 23 00a - WATER DISTRIBUTION

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for water distribution. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes water-distribution piping and related components outside the building for water service **OR** fire-service mains **OR** combined water service and fire-service mains, **as directed**.
2. Utility-furnished products include water meters that will be furnished to the site, ready for installation.

#### C. Definitions

1. EPDM: Ethylene propylene diene terpolymer rubber.
2. LLDPE: Linear, low-density polyethylene plastic.
3. PA: Polyamide (nylon) plastic.
4. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
5. PP: Polypropylene plastic.
6. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
7. RTRF: Reinforced thermosetting resin (fiberglass) fittings.
8. RTRP: Reinforced thermosetting resin (fiberglass) pipe.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Detail precast concrete vault assemblies and indicate dimensions, method of field assembly, and components.
  - a. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring for alarms.
3. Field quality-control test reports.
4. Operation and Maintenance Data.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Regulatory Requirements:
  - a. Comply with requirements of utility company supplying water. Include tapping of water mains and backflow prevention.
  - b. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for potable-water-service piping, including materials, installation, testing, and disinfection.
  - c. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for fire-suppression water-service piping, including materials, hose threads, installation, and testing.
2. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
4. Comply with ASTM F 645 for selection, design, and installation of thermoplastic water piping.
5. Comply with FMG's "Approval Guide" or UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" for fire-service-main products.
6. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 24 for materials, installations, tests, flushing, and valve and hydrant supervision for fire-service-main piping for fire suppression.
7. NSF Compliance:



- a. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic potable-water-service piping. Include marking "NSF-pw" on piping.
- b. Comply with NSF 61 for materials for water-service piping and specialties for domestic water.

#### F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Preparation for Transport: Prepare valves, including fire hydrants, according to the following:
  - a. Ensure that valves are dry and internally protected against rust and corrosion.
  - b. Protect valves against damage to threaded ends and flange faces.
  - c. Set valves in best position for handling. Set valves closed to prevent rattling.
2. During Storage: Use precautions for valves, including fire hydrants, according to the following:
  - a. Do not remove end protectors unless necessary for inspection; then reinstall for storage.
  - b. Protect from weather. Store indoors and maintain temperature higher than ambient dew-point temperature. Support off the ground or pavement in watertight enclosures when outdoor storage is necessary.
3. Handling: Use sling to handle valves and fire hydrants if size requires handling by crane or lift. Rig valves to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.
4. Deliver piping with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe-end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
5. Protect stored piping from moisture and dirt. Elevate above grade. Do not exceed structural capacity of floor when storing inside.
6. Protect flanges, fittings, and specialties from moisture and dirt.
7. Store plastic piping protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

#### G. Project Conditions

1. Interruption of Existing Water-Distribution Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water-distribution service according to requirements indicated:
  - a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
  - b. Do not proceed with interruption of water-distribution service without the Owner's written permission.

#### H. Coordination

1. Coordinate connection to water main with utility company.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Copper Tube And Fittings

1. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) **OR** ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), **as directed**, water tube, annealed temper.
  - a. Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint pressure type. Furnish only wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
  - b. Copper, Pressure-Seal Fittings:
    - 1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Bronze fitting with stainless-steel grip ring and EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
2. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) **OR** ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), **as directed**, water tube, drawn temper.
  - a. Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint pressure type. Furnish only wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
  - b. Copper, Pressure-Seal Fittings:



- 1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
  - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Bronze fitting with stainless-steel grip ring and EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
  3. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint end. Furnish Class 300 flanges if required to match piping.
  4. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
- B. Ductile-Iron Pipe And Fittings
1. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
    - a. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
    - b. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
  2. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
    - a. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
    - b. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
  3. Grooved-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with cut, rounded-grooved ends.
    - a. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe Appurtenances:
      - 1) Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Fittings: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron castings or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron castings with dimensions matching pipe.
      - 2) Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron-Piping Couplings: AWWA C606, for ductile-iron-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, gasket suitable for water, and bolts and nuts.
  4. Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 125, cast iron.
- C. PE Pipe And Fittings
1. PE, ASTM Pipe: ASTM D 2239, SIDR No. 5.3, 7, or 9; with PE compound number required to give pressure rating not less than 160 psig (1100 kPa) **OE** 200 psig (1380 kPa), **as directed**.
    - a. Insert Fittings for PE Pipe: ASTM D 2609, made of PA, PP, or PVC with serrated male insert ends matching inside of pipe. Include bands or crimp rings.
    - b. Molded PE Fittings: ASTM D 3350, PE resin, socket- or butt-fusion type, made to match PE pipe dimensions and class.
  2. PE, AWWA Pipe: AWWA C906, DR No. 7.3, 9, or 9.3; with PE compound number required to give pressure rating not less than 160 psig (1100 kPa) **OR** 200 psig (1380 kPa), **as directed**.
    - a. PE, AWWA Fittings: AWWA C906, socket- or butt-fusion type, with DR number matching pipe and PE compound number required to give pressure rating not less than 160 psig (1100 kPa) **OR** 200 psig (1380 kPa), **as directed**.
  3. PE, Fire-Service Pipe: ASTM F 714, AWWA C906, or equivalent for PE water pipe; FMG approved, with minimum thickness equivalent to FMG Class 150 and Class 200.
    - a. Molded PE Fittings: ASTM D 3350, PE resin, socket- or butt-fusion type, made to match PE pipe dimensions and class.
- D. PVC Pipe And Fittings
1. PVC, Schedule 40 Pipe: ASTM D 1785.
    - a. PVC, Schedule 40 Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2466.
  2. PVC, Schedule 80 Pipe: ASTM D 1785.
    - a. PVC, Schedule 80 Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2467.
    - b. PVC, Schedule 80 Threaded Fittings: ASTM D 2464.
  3. PVC, AWWA Pipe: AWWA C900, Class 150 **OR** Class 200, **as directed**, with bell end with gasket, and with spigot end.
    - a. Comply with UL 1285 for fire-service mains if indicated.



- b. PVC Fabricated Fittings: AWWA C900, Class 150 **OR** Class 200, **as directed**, with bell-and-spigot or double-bell ends. Include elastomeric gasket in each bell.
  - c. PVC Molded Fittings: AWWA C907, Class 150, with bell-and-spigot or double-bell ends. Include elastomeric gasket in each bell.
  - d. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
    - 1) Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
  - e. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
    - 1) Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- E. Fiberglass Pipe And Fittings
- 1. AWWA RTRP: AWWA C950, Class 150 **OR** Class 200 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, Type I **OR** II, **as directed**, Grade 1, epoxy **OR** Grade 2, polyester, **as directed**, with bell-and-spigot ends for bonded **OR** with gasket or seal for gasketed, **as directed**, joints. Liner is optional, unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. RTRF: AWWA C950, similar to pipe in material, pressure class, and joining method.
  - 2. UL RTRP: UL 1713, Class 150 **OR** Class 200 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, with bell-and-spigot ends with gasket or seal for gasketed joints. Liner is optional, unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. RTRF: Similar to pipe in material, pressure class, and joining method.
- F. Special Pipe Fittings
- 1. Ductile-Iron Rigid Expansion Joints:
    - a. Description: Three-piece, ductile-iron assembly consisting of telescoping sleeve with gaskets and restrained-type, ductile-iron, bell-and-spigot end sections complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Select and assemble components for expansion indicated. Include AWWA C111, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
      - 1) Pressure Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa) minimum.
      - 2) Expansion Required: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
  - 2. Ductile-Iron Flexible Expansion Joints:
    - a. Description: Compound, ductile-iron fitting with combination of flanged and mechanical-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include two gasketed ball-joint sections and one or more gasketed sleeve sections. Assemble components for offset and expansion indicated. Include AWWA C111, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
      - 1) Pressure Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa) minimum.
      - 2) Offset: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
      - 3) Expansion Required: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
  - 3. Ductile-Iron Deflection Fittings:
    - a. Description: Compound, ductile-iron coupling fitting with sleeve and 1 or 2 flexing sections for up to 15-degree deflection, gaskets, and restrained-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include AWWA C111, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
      - 1) Pressure Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa) minimum.
- G. Joining Materials
- 1. Refer to Division 33 Section "Common Work Results For Utilities" for commonly used joining materials.
  - 2. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series.
  - 3. Bonding Adhesive for Fiberglass Piping: As recommended by fiberglass piping manufacturer.
  - 4. Plastic Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Piping Specialties



1. Transition Fittings: Manufactured fitting or coupling same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to and ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
  2. Tubular-Sleeve Pipe Couplings:
    - a. Description: Metal, bolted, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, with center sleeve, gaskets, end rings, and bolt fasteners and with ends of same sizes as piping to be joined.
      - 1) Standard: AWWA C219.
      - 2) Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Carbon steel **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Ductile iron **OR** Malleable iron, **as directed**.
      - 3) Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
      - 4) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) **OR** 200 psig (1380 kPa), **as directed**, minimum.
      - 5) Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.
  3. Split-Sleeve Pipe Couplings:
    - a. Description: Metal, bolted, split-sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling with sealing pad and closure plates, O-ring gaskets, and bolt fasteners.
      - 1) Standard: AWWA C219.
      - 2) Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Carbon steel **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
      - 3) Sleeve Dimensions: Of thickness and width required to provide pressure rating.
      - 4) Gasket Material: O-rings made of EPDM rubber, unless otherwise indicated.
      - 5) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) **OR** 200 psig (1380 kPa), **as directed**, minimum.
      - 6) Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.
  4. Flexible Connectors:
    - a. Nonferrous-Metal Piping: Bronze hose covered with bronze wire braid; with copper-tube, pressure-type, solder-joint ends or bronze flanged ends brazed to hose.
    - b. Ferrous-Metal Piping: Stainless-steel hose covered with stainless-steel wire braid; with ASME B1.20.1, threaded steel pipe nipples or ASME B16.5, steel pipe flanges welded to hose.
  5. Dielectric Fittings: Combination of copper alloy and ferrous; threaded, solder, or plain end types; and matching piping system materials.
    - a. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated union assembly, designed for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure at 180 deg F (82 deg C). Include insulating material that isolates dissimilar metals and ends with inside threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
    - b. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure to suit system pressures.
    - c. Dielectric-Flange Insulation Kits: Field-assembled companion-flange assembly, full-face or ring type. Components include neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
      - 1) Provide separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts for 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure to suit system pressures.
    - d. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel couplings with inert and noncorrosive thermoplastic lining, with threaded ends and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
    - e. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipples with inert and noncorrosive thermoplastic lining, with combination of plain, threaded, or grooved end types, and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
- I. Corrosion-Protection Piping Encasement
1. Encasement for Underground Metal Piping:
    - a. Standards: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
    - b. Form: Sheet **OR** Tube, **as directed**.
    - c. Material: LLDPE film of 0.008-inch (0.20-mm) minimum thickness.
    - d. Material: LLDPE film of 0.008-inch (0.20-mm) minimum thickness, or high-density, crosslaminated PE film of 0.004-inch (0.10-mm) minimum thickness.



- e. Material: High-density, crosslaminated PE film of 0.004-inch (0.10-mm) minimum thickness.
- f. Color: Black **OR** Natural, **as directed**.

## J. Gate Valves

### 1. AWWA, Cast-Iron Gate Valves:

- a. Nonrising-Stem, Metal-Seated Gate Valves:
  - 1) Description: Gray- or ductile-iron body and bonnet; with cast-iron or bronze double-disc gate, bronze gate rings, bronze stem, and stem nut.
    - a) Standard: AWWA C500.
    - b) Minimum Pressure Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - c) End Connections: Mechanical joint.
    - d) Interior Coating: Complying with AWWA C550.
- b. Nonrising-Stem, Resilient-Seated Gate Valves:
  - 1) Description: Gray- or ductile-iron body and bonnet; with bronze or gray- or ductile-iron gate, resilient seats, bronze stem, and stem nut.
    - a) Standard: AWWA C509.
    - b) Minimum Pressure Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - c) End Connections: Mechanical joint.
    - d) Interior Coating: Complying with AWWA C550.
- c. Nonrising-Stem, High-Pressure, Resilient-Seated Gate Valves:
  - 1) Description: Ductile-iron body and bonnet; with bronze or ductile-iron gate, resilient seats, bronze stem, and stem nut.
    - a) Standard: AWWA C509.
    - b) Minimum Pressure Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa).
    - c) End Connections: Push on or mechanical joint.
    - d) Interior Coating: Complying with AWWA C550.
- d. OS&Y, Rising-Stem, Metal-Seated Gate Valves:
  - 1) Description: Cast- or ductile-iron body and bonnet, with cast-iron double disc, bronze disc and seat rings, and bronze stem.
    - a) Standard: AWWA C500.
    - b) Minimum Pressure Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - c) End Connections: Flanged.
- e. OS&Y, Rising-Stem, Resilient-Seated Gate Valves:
  - 1) Description: Cast- or ductile-iron body and bonnet, with bronze or gray- or ductile-iron gate, resilient seats, and bronze stem.
    - a) Standard: AWWA C509.
    - b) Minimum Pressure Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - c) End Connections: Flanged.

### 2. UL/FMG, Cast-Iron Gate Valves:

- a. UL/FMG, Nonrising-Stem Gate Valves:
  - 1) Description: Iron body and bonnet with flange for indicator post, bronze seating material, and inside screw.
    - a) Standards: UL 262 and FMG approved.
    - b) Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1207 kPa).
    - c) End Connections: Flanged.
- b. OS&Y, Rising-Stem Gate Valves:
  - 1) Description: Iron body and bonnet and bronze seating material.
    - a) Standards: UL 262 and FMG approved.
    - b) Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1207 kPa).
    - c) End Connections: Flanged.

### 3. Bronze Gate Valves:

- a. OS&Y, Rising-Stem Gate Valves:
  - 1) Description: Bronze body and bonnet and bronze stem.
    - a) Standards: UL 262 and FMG approved.



- b) Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1207 kPa).
      - c) End Connections: Threaded.
    - b. Nonrising-Stem Gate Valves:
      - 1) Description: Class 125, Type 1, bronze with solid wedge, threaded ends, and malleable-iron handwheel.
        - a) Standard: MSS SP-80.
- K. Gate Valve Accessories And Specialties
  - 1. Tapping-Sleeve Assemblies:
    - a. Description: Sleeve and valve compatible with drilling machine.
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-60.
      - 2) Tapping Sleeve: Cast- or ductile-iron or stainless-steel, two-piece bolted sleeve with flanged outlet for new branch connection. Include sleeve matching size and type of pipe material being tapped and with recessed flange for branch valve.
      - 3) Valve: AWWA, cast-iron, nonrising-stem, metal **OR** resilient, **as directed**, -seated gate valve with one raised face flange mating tapping-sleeve flange.
  - 2. Valve Boxes: Comply with AWWA M44 for cast-iron valve boxes. Include top section, adjustable extension of length required for depth of burial of valve, plug with lettering "WATER," and bottom section with base that fits over valve and with a barrel approximately 5 inches (125 mm) in diameter.
    - a. Operating Wrenches: Steel, tee-handle with one pointed end, stem of length to operate deepest buried valve, and socket matching valve operating nut.
  - 3. Indicator Posts: UL 789, FMG-approved, vertical-type, cast-iron body with operating wrench, extension rod, and adjustable cast-iron barrel of length required for depth of burial of valve.
- L. Check Valves
  - 1. AWWA Check Valves:
    - a. Description: Swing-check type with resilient seat. Include interior coating according to AWWA C550 and ends to match piping.
      - 1) Standard: AWWA C508.
      - 2) Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1207 kPa).
  - 2. UL/FMG, Check Valves:
    - a. Description: Swing-check type with pressure rating; rubber-face checks, unless otherwise indicated; and ends matching piping.
      - 1) Standards: UL 312 and FMG approved.
      - 2) Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1207 kPa) **OR** 250 psig (1725 kPa), **as directed**.
- M. Detector Check Valves
  - 1. Detector Check Valves:
    - a. Description (with water meter): Galvanized cast-iron body, bolted cover with air-bleed device for access to internal parts, and flanged ends. Include one-piece bronze disc with bronze bushings, pivot, and replaceable seat. Include threaded bypass taps in inlet and outlet for bypass meter connection. Set valve to allow minimal water flow through bypass meter when major water flow is required.
      - 1) Standards: UL 312 and FMG approved.
      - 2) Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1207 kPa).
      - 3) Water Meter: AWWA C700, disc type, at least one-fourth size of detector check valve. Include meter, bypass piping, gate valves, check valve, and connections to detector check valve.
    - b. Description (without water meter): Iron body, corrosion-resistant clapper ring and seat ring material, flanged ends, with connections for bypass and installation of water meter.
      - 1) Standards: UL 312 and FMG approved.
      - 2) Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1207 kPa).
- N. Butterfly Valves
  - 1. AWWA Butterfly Valves:



- a. Description: Rubber seated.
    - 1) Standard: AWWA C504.
    - 2) Body: Cast or ductile iron.
    - 3) Body Type: Wafer **OR** Flanged, **as directed**.
    - 4) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
  - 2. UL Butterfly Valves:
    - a. Description: Metal on resilient material seating.
      - 1) Standards: UL 1091 and FMG approved.
      - 2) Body: Cast or ductile iron.
      - 3) Body Type: Wafer **OR** Flanged, **as directed**.
      - 4) Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1207 kPa).
- O. Plug Valves
- 1. Plug Valves:
    - a. Description: Resilient-seated eccentric.
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-108.
      - 2) Body: Cast iron.
      - 3) Pressure Rating: 175-psig (1207-kPa) minimum CWP.
      - 4) Seat Material: Suitable for potable-water service.
- P. Corporation Valves And Curb Valves
- 1. Service-Saddle Assemblies: Comply with AWWA C800. Include saddle and valve compatible with tapping machine.
    - a. Service Saddle: Copper alloy with seal and AWWA C800, threaded outlet for corporation valve.
    - b. Corporation Valve: Bronze body and ground-key plug, with AWWA C800, threaded inlet and outlet matching service piping material.
    - c. Manifold (if utility company requires multiple connections): Copper fitting with two to four inlets as required, with ends matching corporation valves and outlet matching service piping material.
  - 2. Curb Valves: Comply with AWWA C800. Include bronze body, ground-key plug or ball, and wide tee head, with inlet and outlet matching service piping material.
  - 3. Service Boxes for Curb Valves: Similar to AWWA M44 requirements for cast-iron valve boxes. Include cast-iron telescoping top section of length required for depth of burial of valve, plug with lettering "WATER," and bottom section with base that fits over curb valve and with a barrel approximately 3 inches (75 mm) in diameter.
    - a. Shutoff Rods: Steel, tee-handle with one pointed end, stem of length to operate deepest buried valve, and slotted end matching curb valve.
- Q. Water Meters
- 1. Water meters will be furnished by utility company.  
NOTE: If water meters are specified in this Section, delete paragraph above and retain and edit paragraphs and subparagraphs below.
  - 2. Displacement-Type Water Meters:
    - a. Description: With bronze main case.
      - 1) Standard: AWWA C700.
      - 2) Registration: Flow in gallons (liters) **OR** cubic feet (cubic meters), **as directed**.
  - 3. Turbine-Type Water Meters:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: AWWA C701.
      - 2) Registration: Flow in gallons (liters) **OR** cubic feet (cubic meters), **as directed**.
  - 4. Compound-Type Water Meters:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: AWWA C702.
      - 2) Registration: Flow in gallons (liters) **OR** cubic feet (cubic meters), **as directed**.





5. Remote Registration System:
    - a. Description: Utility company standard; direct-reading type. Include meter modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly.
      - 1) Standard: AWWA C706.
      - 2) Registration: Flow in gallons (liters) **OR** cubic feet (cubic meters), **as directed**.
  6. Remote Registration System:
    - a. Description: Utility company standard; encoder type. Include meter modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly.
      - 1) Standard: AWWA C707.
      - 2) Registration: Flow in gallons (liters) **OR** cubic feet (cubic meters), **as directed**.
      - 3) Data-Acquisition Units: Comply with utility company requirements for type and quantity.  
**OR**  
Visible Display Units: Comply with utility company requirements for type and quantity.
- R. Detector-Type Water Meters
1. Detector-Type Water Meters
  2. Description: Main line, proportional meter with second meter on bypass. Register flow in gallons (liters) **OR** cubic feet (cubic meters), **as directed**.
    - a. Standards: AWWA C703, UL listed, and FMG approved.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - c. Bypass Meter: AWWA C701, turbine **OR** AWWA C702, compound, **as directed**, -type, bronze case.
      - 1) Size: At least one-half nominal size of main-line meter.
  3. Description: Main-line turbine meter with strainer and second meter on bypass. Register flow in gallons (liters) **OR** cubic feet (cubic meters), **as directed**.
    - a. Standards: AWWA C703, UL listed, and FMG approved.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1207 kPa).
    - c. Bypass Meter: AWWA C701, turbine-type, bronze case.
      - 1) Size: At least NPS 2 (DN 50).
  4. Remote Registration System:
    - a. Description: Utility company standard; direct-reading type. Include meter modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly.
      - 1) Standard: AWWA C706.
      - 2) Registration: Flow in gallons (liters) **OR** cubic feet (cubic meters), **as directed**.
  5. Remote Registration System:
    - a. Description: Utility company standard; encoder type. Include meter modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly.
      - 1) Standard: AWWA C707.
      - 2) Registration: Flow in gallons (liters) **OR** cubic feet (cubic meters), **as directed**.
      - 3) Data-Acquisition Units: Comply with utility company requirements for type and quantity.  
**OR**  
Visible Display Units: Comply with utility company requirements for type and quantity.
- S. Pressure-Reducing Valves
1. Water Regulators:
    - a. Standard: ASSE 1003.
    - b. Pressure Rating: Initial pressure of 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - c. Size: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
    - d. Design Flow Rate: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
    - e. Design Inlet Pressure: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
    - f. Design Outlet Pressure Setting: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.



- g. Body: Bronze with chrome-plated finish, **as directed**, for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved, **as directed**, for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3 (DN 65 and DN 80).
  - h. Valves for Booster Heater Water Supply: Include integral bypass.
  - i. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3 (DN 65 and DN 80).
2. Water Control Valves:
- a. Description: Pilot-operation, diaphragm-type, single-seated main water control valve with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, interior epoxy coating. Include small pilot control valve, restrictor device, specialty fittings, and sensor piping.
    - 1) Pressure Rating: Initial pressure of 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum.
    - 2) Main Valve Body: Cast- or ductile-iron body with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, interior epoxy coating; or stainless-steel body.
      - a) Size: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
      - b) Pattern: Angle **OR** Globe, **as directed**, -valve design.
      - c) Trim: Stainless steel.
    - 3) Design Flow Rate: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
    - 4) Design Inlet Pressure: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
    - 5) Design Outlet Pressure Setting: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
    - 6) End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged, **as directed**, for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

#### T. Relief Valves

- 1. Air-Release Valves:
  - a. Description: Hydromechanical device to automatically release accumulated air.
    - 1) Standard: AWWA C512.
    - 2) Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa), **as directed**.
    - 3) Body Material: Cast iron, **as directed**.
    - 4) Trim Material: Stainless steel, brass, or bronze, **as directed**.
    - 5) Water Inlet Size: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
    - 6) Air Outlet Size: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
    - 7) Orifice Size: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
    - 8) Design Air-Release Capacity: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
- 2. Air/Vacuum Valves:
  - a. Description: Direct-acting, float-operated, hydromechanical device with large orifice to automatically release accumulated air or to admit air during filling of piping.
    - 1) Standard: AWWA C512.
    - 2) Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa), **as directed**.
    - 3) Body Material: Cast iron, **as directed**.
    - 4) Trim Material: Stainless steel, brass, or bronze, **as directed**.
    - 5) Inlet and Outlet Size: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
    - 6) Orifice Size: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
    - 7) Design Air Capacity: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
- 3. Combination Air Valves:
  - a. Description: Float-operated, hydromechanical device to automatically release accumulated air or to admit air.
    - 1) Standard: AWWA C512.
    - 2) Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa), **as directed**.
    - 3) Body Material: Cast iron, **as directed**.
    - 4) Trim Material: Stainless steel, brass, or bronze, **as directed**.
    - 5) Inlet and Outlet Size: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
    - 6) Orifice Size: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
    - 7) Design Air Capacity: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.



#### U. Vacuum Breakers

1. Pressure Vacuum Breaker Assembly:
  - a. Standard: ASSE 1020.
  - b. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
  - c. Pressure Loss: 5 psig (35 kPa), **as directed**, maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
  - d. Size: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
  - e. Design Flow Rate: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
  - f. Selected Unit Flow Range Limits: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
  - g. Pressure Loss at Design Flow Rate: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
  - h. Accessories: Ball valves on inlet and outlet.

#### V. Backflow Preventers

1. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers:
  - a. Standard: ASSE 1013 **OR** AWWA C511, **as directed**.
  - b. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
  - c. Pressure Loss: 12 psig (83 kPa), **as directed**, maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
  - d. Size: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
  - e. Design Flow Rate: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
  - f. Selected Unit Flow Range Limits: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
  - g. Pressure Loss at Design Flow Rate: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
  - h. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved **OR** steel with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
  - i. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged, **as directed**, for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
  - j. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight through **OR** vertical inlet, horizontal center section, and vertical outlet **OR** vertical, **as directed**, flow.
  - k. Accessories:
    - 1) Valves: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; OS&Y gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
    - 2) Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow preventer connection.
2. Double-Check, Backflow-Prevention Assemblies:
  - a. Standard: ASSE 1015 **OR** AWWA C510, **as directed**.
  - b. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications, unless otherwise indicated.
  - c. Pressure Loss: 5 psig (35 kPa), **as directed**, maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
  - d. Size: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
  - e. Design Flow Rate: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
  - f. Selected Unit Flow Range Limits: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
  - g. Pressure Loss at Design Flow Rate: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
  - h. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved **OR** steel with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
  - i. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged, **as directed**, for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.



- j. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight through, **as directed**, flow.
  - k. Accessories: Ball valves with threaded ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; OS&Y gate valves with flanged ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
3. Reduced-Pressure-Detector, Fire-Protection Backflow Preventer Assemblies:
- a. Standards: ASSE 1047 and UL listed or FMG approved.
  - b. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
  - c. Pressure Loss: 12 psig (83 kPa), **as directed**, maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
  - d. Size: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner. Design Flow Rate: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
  - e. Selected Unit Flow Range Limits: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
  - f. Pressure Loss at Design Flow Rate: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
  - g. Body: Cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved **OR** Steel with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
  - h. End Connections: Flanged.
  - i. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight through **OR** vertical inlet, horizontal center section, and vertical outlet **OR** vertical, **as directed**, flow.
  - j. Accessories:
    - 1) Valves: UL 262, FMG-approved, OS&Y gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
    - 2) Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow preventer connection.
    - 3) Bypass: With displacement-type water meter, shutoff valves, and reduced-pressure backflow preventer.
4. Double-Check, Detector-Assembly Backflow Preventers:
- a. Standards: ASSE 1048 and UL listed or FMG approved.
  - b. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
  - c. Pressure Loss: 5 psig (35 kPa), **as directed**, maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
  - d. Size: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
  - e. Design Flow Rate: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
  - f. Selected Unit Flow Range Limits: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
  - g. Pressure Loss at Design Flow Rate: As directed by the manufacturer or as directed by the Owner.
  - h. Body: Cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved **OR** Steel with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
  - i. End Connections: Flanged.
  - j. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight through **OR** vertical inlet, horizontal center section, and vertical outlet **OR** vertical, **as directed**, flow.
  - k. Accessories:
    - 1) Valves: UL 262, FMG-approved, OS&Y gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
    - 2) Bypass: With displacement-type water meter, shutoff valves, and reduced-pressure backflow preventer.
5. Backflow Preventer Test Kits:
- a. Description: Factory calibrated, with gages, fittings, hoses, and carrying case with test-procedure instructions.
- W. Water Meter Boxes
- 1. Description: Cast-iron body and cover for disc-type water meter, with lettering "WATER METER" in cover; and with slotted, open-bottom base section of length to fit over service piping.



- a. Option: Base section may be cast-iron, PVC, clay, or other pipe.
2. Description: Cast-iron body and double cover for disc-type water meter, with lettering "WATER METER" in top cover; and with separate inner cover; air space between covers; and slotted, open-bottom base section of length to fit over service piping.
3. Description: Polymer-concrete body and cover for disc-type water meter, with lettering "WATER" in cover; and with slotted, open-bottom base section of length to fit over service piping. Include vertical and lateral design loadings of 15,000 lb minimum over 10 by 10 inches (6800 kg minimum over 254 by 254 mm) square.
  - a. Use of this meter box is permitted in walks or unpaved areas away from traffic; do not use in roadways.

#### X. Concrete Vaults

1. Description: Precast, reinforced-concrete vault, designed for A-16 load designation according to ASTM C 857 and made according to ASTM C 858.
  - a. Ladder: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel or polyethylene-encased steel steps.
  - b. Manhole: ASTM A 48/A 48M Class No. 35A minimum tensile strength, gray-iron traffic frame and cover.
    - 1) Dimension: 24-inch (610-mm) minimum diameter, unless otherwise indicated.
  - c. Manhole: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, ductile-iron traffic frame and cover.
    - 1) Dimension: 24-inch- (610-mm-) minimum diameter, unless otherwise indicated.
  - d. Drain: ASME A112.6.3, cast-iron floor drain with outlet of size indicated. Include body anchor flange, light-duty cast-iron grate, bottom outlet, and integral or field-installed bronze ball or clapper-type backwater valve.

#### Y. Protective Enclosures

1. Freeze-Protection Enclosures:
  - a. Description: Insulated enclosure designed to protect aboveground water piping, equipment, or specialties from freezing and damage, with heat source to maintain minimum internal temperature of 40 deg F (4 deg C) when external temperatures reach as low as minus 34 deg F (minus 36 deg C).
    - 1) Standard: ASSE 1060.
    - 2) Class I: For equipment or devices other than pressure or atmospheric vacuum breakers.
    - 3) Class I-V: For pressure or atmospheric vacuum breaker equipment or devices. Include drain opening in housing.
      - a) Housing: Reinforced-aluminum **OR** -fiberglass, **as directed**, construction.
        - i. Size: Of dimensions indicated, but not less than those required for access and service of protected unit.
        - ii. Drain opening for units with drain connection.
        - iii. Access doors with locking devices.
        - iv. Insulation inside housing.
        - v. Anchoring devices for attaching housing to concrete base.
      - b) Electric heating cable or heater with self-limiting temperature control.
2. Weather-Resistant Enclosures:
  - a. Description: Uninsulated enclosure designed to protect aboveground water piping, equipment, or specialties from weather and damage.
    - 1) Standard: ASSE 1060.
    - 2) Class III: For equipment or devices other than pressure or atmospheric vacuum breakers.
    - 3) Class III-V: For pressure or atmospheric vacuum breaker equipment or devices. Include drain opening in housing.
      - i. Housing: Reinforced-aluminum **OR** -fiberglass, **as directed**, construction.
      - ii. Size: Of dimensions indicated, but not less than those required for access and service of protected unit.
      - iii. Drain opening for units with drain connection.



- iv. Access doors with locking devices.
      - v. Anchoring devices for attaching housing to concrete base.
  - 3. Expanded-Metal Enclosures:
    - a. Description: Enclosure designed to protect aboveground water piping, equipment, or specialties from damage.
      - 1) Material: ASTM F 1267, expanded metal side and top panels, of weight and with reinforcement of same metal at edges as required for rigidity.
      - 2) Type: Type I, expanded **OR** II, expanded and flattened, **as directed**.
      - 3) Class: Class 1, uncoated carbon steel **OR** 2, hot-dip, zinc-coated carbon steel **OR** 3, corrosion-resisting steel, **as directed**.
      - 4) Finish: Manufacturer's enamel paint.
      - 5) Size: Of dimensions indicated, but not less than those required for access and service of protected unit.
      - 6) Locking device.
      - 7) Lugs or devices for securing enclosure to base.
  - 4. Enclosure Bases:
    - a. Description: 4-inch- (100-mm-) **OR** 6-inch- (150-mm-), **as directed**, minimum thickness precast concrete, of dimensions required to extend at least 6 inches (150 mm) beyond edges of enclosure housings. Include openings for piping.
- Z. Fire Hydrants
- 1. Dry-Barrel Fire Hydrants:
    - a. Description (for AWWA dry-barrel fire hydrants): Freestanding, with one NPS 4-1/2 (DN 115) and two NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) outlets, 5-1/4-inch (133-mm) main valve, drain valve, and NPS 6 (DN 150) mechanical-joint inlet. Include interior coating according to AWWA C550. Hydrant shall have cast-iron body, compression-type valve opening against pressure and closing with pressure.
      - 1) Standard: AWWA C502.
      - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum **OR** 250 psig (1725 kPa), **as directed**.
      - 3) Outlet Threads: NFPA 1963, with external hose thread used by local fire department. Include cast-iron caps with steel chains.
      - 4) Operating and Cap Nuts: Pentagon, 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) point to flat.
      - 5) Direction of Opening: Open hydrant valve by turning operating nut to left or counterclockwise.
      - 6) Exterior Finish: Red alkyd-gloss enamel paint, unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Description (for UL/FMG, dry-barrel fire hydrants): Freestanding, with one NPS 4-1/2 (DN 115) and two NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) outlets, 5-1/4-inch (133-mm) main valve, drain valve, and NPS 6 (DN 150) mechanical-joint inlet. Hydrant shall have cast-iron body, compression-type valve opening against pressure and closing with pressure.
      - 1) Standards: UL 246, FMG approved.
      - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum **OR** 250 psig (1725 kPa), **as directed**.
      - 3) Outlet Threads: NFPA 1963, with external hose thread used by local fire department. Include cast-iron caps with steel chains.
      - 4) Operating and Cap Nuts: Pentagon, 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) point to flat.
      - 5) Direction of Opening: Open hydrant valve by turning operating nut to left or counterclockwise.
      - 6) Exterior Finish: Red alkyd-gloss enamel paint, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Wet-Barrel Fire Hydrants:
    - a. Description (for AWWA wet-barrel fire hydrants): Freestanding, with one NPS 4-1/2 (DN 115) and two NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) outlets, NPS 6 (DN 150) threaded or flanged inlet, and base section with NPS 6 (DN 150) mechanical-joint inlet. Include interior coating according to AWWA C550.
      - 1) Standard: AWWA C503.



- 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum.
  - 3) Outlet Threads: NFPA 1963, with external hose thread used by local fire department. Include cast-iron caps with steel chains.
  - 4) Operating and Cap Nuts: Pentagon, 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) point to flat.
  - 5) Direction of Opening: Open hydrant valves by turning operating nut to left or counterclockwise.
  - 6) Exterior Finish: Red alkyd-gloss enamel paint, unless otherwise indicated.
- b. Description (for UL/FMG, wet-barrel fire hydrants): Freestanding, with one NPS 4-1/2 (DN 115) and two NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) outlets, NPS 6 (DN 150) threaded or flanged inlet, and base section with NPS 6 (DN 150) mechanical-joint inlet.
- 1) Standards: UL 246 and FMG approved.
  - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum.
  - 3) Outlet Threads: NFPA 1963, with external hose thread used by local fire department. Include cast-iron caps with steel chains.
  - 4) Operating and Cap Nuts: Pentagon, 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) point to flat.
  - 5) Direction of Opening: Open hydrant valves by turning operating nut to left or counterclockwise.
  - 6) Exterior Finish: Red alkyd-gloss enamel paint, unless otherwise indicated.

#### AA. Flushing Hydrants

1. Post-Type Flushing Hydrants:
  - a. Description: Nonfreeze and drainable, of length required for shutoff valve installation below frost line.
    - 1) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum.
    - 2) Outlet: One, with horizontal discharge.
    - 3) Hose Thread: NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65), with NFPA 1963 external hose thread for use by local fire department, and with cast-iron cap with brass chain.
    - 4) Barrel: Cast-iron or steel pipe with breakaway feature.
    - 5) Valve: Bronze body with bronze-ball or plunger closure, and automatic draining.
    - 6) Security: Locking device for padlock.
    - 7) Exterior Finish: Red alkyd-gloss enamel paint, unless otherwise indicated.
    - 8) Inlet: NPS 2 (DN 50) minimum.
    - 9) Operating Wrench: One for each unit.
2. Ground-Type Flushing Hydrants:
  - a. Description: Nonfreeze and drainable, of length required for shutoff valve installation below frost line.
    - 1) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum.
    - 2) Outlet: One, with vertical **OR** angle, **as directed**, discharge.
    - 3) Hose Thread: NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65), with NFPA 1963 external hose thread for use by local fire department, and with cast-iron cap with brass chain.
    - 4) Barrel: Cast-iron or steel pipe.
    - 5) Valve: Bronze body with bronze-ball or plunger closure, and automatic draining.
    - 6) Inlet: NPS 2 (DN 50) minimum.
    - 7) Hydrant Box: Cast iron with cover, for ground mounting.
    - 8) Operating Wrench: One for each unit.
3. Post-Type Sampling Station:
  - a. Description: Nonfreeze and drainable, of length required for shutoff valve installation below frost line.
    - 1) Pressure Rating: 100 psig (690 kPa) minimum.
    - 2) Sampling Outlet: One unthreaded nozzle with handle.
    - 3) Valve: Bronze body with bronze-ball or plunger closure. Include operating handle.
    - 4) Drain: Tubing with separate manual vacuum pump.
    - 5) Inlet: NPS 3/4 (DN 20) minimum.
    - 6) Housing: Weatherproof material with locking device. Include anchor device.
    - 7) Operating Wrench: One for each unit.



## BB. Fire Department Connections

### 1. Fire Department Connections:

- a. Description: Freestanding, with cast-bronze body, thread inlets according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire department hose threads, and threaded bottom outlet. Include lugged caps, gaskets, and chains; lugged swivel connection and drop clapper for each hose-connection inlet; 18-inch- (460-mm-) high brass sleeve; and round escutcheon plate.
  - 1) Standard: UL 405.
  - 2) Connections: Two NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) inlets and one NPS 4 (DN 100) **OR** NPS 6 (DN 150), **as directed**, outlet.
  - 3) Connections: Three **OR** Four, **as directed**, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) inlets and one NPS 6 (DN 150) outlet.
  - 4) Connections: Six NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) inlets and one NPS 6 (DN 150) **OR** NPS 8 (DN 200), **as directed**, outlet.
  - 5) Inlet Alignment: Inline, horizontal **OR** Square, **as directed**.
  - 6) Finish Including Sleeve: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough chrome-plated **OR** Polished bronze, **as directed**.
  - 7) Escutcheon Plate Marking: "AUTO SPKR" **OR** "STANDPIPE" **OR** "AUTO SPKR & STANDPIPE."

## CC. Alarm Devices

1. Alarm Devices, General: UL 753 and FMG approved, of types and sizes to mate and match piping and equipment.
2. Water-Flow Indicators (can be used with wet-barrel fire hydrants): Vane-type water-flow detector, rated for 250-psig (1725-kPa) working pressure; designed for horizontal or vertical installation; with 2 single-pole, double-throw circuit switches to provide isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125-V ac and 0.25 A, 24-V dc; complete with factory-set, field-adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends signal when cover is removed.
3. Supervisory Switches: Single pole, double throw; designed to signal valve in other than fully open position. Mount on stem of OS&Y gate valves and on indicator posts.
4. Pressure Switches: Single pole, double throw; designed to signal increase in pressure. Mount on barrel of dry-barrel fire hydrants.

## 1.3 EXECUTION

### A. Earthwork

1. Refer to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

### B. Piping Applications

1. General: Use pipe, fittings, and joining methods for piping systems according to the following applications.
2. Transition couplings and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping pressure rating may be used, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Do not use flanges or unions for underground piping.
4. Flanges, unions, grooved-end-pipe couplings, and special fittings may be used, instead of joints indicated, on aboveground piping and piping in vaults.
5. Underground water-service piping NPS 3/4 to NPS 3 (DN 20 to DN 80), **as directed**, shall be selected from the following, **as directed**:
  - a. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) **OR** ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), **as directed**; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed **OR** copper, pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed, **as directed**, joints.
  - b. PE, ASTM pipe; insert fittings for PE pipe; and clamped **OR** molded PE fittings; and heat-fusion, **as directed**, joints.
  - c. PVC, Schedule 40 pipe; PVC, Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80 pipe; PVC, Schedule 80, **as directed**, socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.





- d. NPS 1 to NPS 3 (DN 25 to DN 80) fiberglass, AWWA RTRP, Class 150 **OR** 200 **OR** 250, **as directed**; RTRF; and bonded joints.
- e. Fiberglass, AWWA RTRP, Class 150 **OR** 200 **OR** 250, **as directed**; RTRF; and bonded joints.
6. Underground water-service piping NPS 4 to NPS 8 (DN 100 to DN 200), **as directed**, shall be selected from the following, **as directed**:
  - a. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) **OR** ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), **as directed**; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
  - b. Ductile-iron, push-on-joint pipe; ductile-iron, push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed **OR** mechanical-joint pipe; ductile-iron, mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical **OR** grooved-end pipe; ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved, **as directed**, joints.
  - c. PE, AWWA pipe; PE, AWWA fittings; and heat-fusion joints.
  - d. PVC, Schedule 40 pipe; PVC, Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80 pipe; PVC, Schedule 80, **as directed**, socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
  - e. NPS 4 and NPS 6 (DN 100 and DN 150): NPS 6 (DN 150) PVC, AWWA Class 150 pipe; PVC, AWWA Class 150 fabricated **OR** molded, **as directed**, fittings; and gasketed joints.
  - f. NPS 8 (DN 200): PVC, AWWA Class 200 pipe; PVC, AWWA Class 200 fabricated **OR** push-on-joint, ductile-iron **OR** mechanical-joint, ductile-iron, **as directed**, fittings; and gasketed joints.
  - g. Fiberglass, AWWA RTRP, Class 150 **OR** 200 **OR** 250, **as directed**; RTRF; and bonded joints.
7. Water Meter Box Water-Service Piping NPS 3/4 to NPS 2 (DN 20 to DN 50), **as directed**, shall be same as underground water-service piping.
8. Aboveground and Vault, **as directed**, Water-Service Piping NPS 3/4 to NPS 3 (DN 20 to DN 80), **as directed**, shall be selected from the following:

NOTE: Water-service piping materials listed in subparagraphs below are for potable-water service. They may not be suitable for fire-service mains.

- a. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) **OR** ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), **as directed**; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed **OR** copper, pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed, **as directed**, joints.
- b. PVC, Schedule 80 pipe; PVC, Schedule 80 socket fittings; and solvent-cemented **OR** threaded fittings; and threaded, **as directed**, joints.
- c. NPS 1 to NPS 2 (DN 25 to DN 50) fiberglass, AWWA RTRP, Class 150 **OR** 200 **OR** 250, **as directed**; RTRF; and bonded joints.
9. Aboveground and vault, **as directed**, water-service piping NPS 4 to NPS 8 (DN 100 to DN 200), **as directed**, shall be selected from the following:
  - a. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) **OR** ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), **as directed**; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
  - b. Ductile-iron, grooved-end pipe; ductile-iron, grooved-end appurtenances; and grooved joints.
  - c. PVC, Schedule 80 pipe; PVC, Schedule 80 socket fittings; and solvent-cemented **OR** threaded fittings; and threaded, **as directed**, joints.
  - d. Fiberglass, AWWA RTRP, Class 150 **OR** 200 **OR** 250, **as directed**; RTRF; and bonded joints.
10. Underground Fire-Service-Main Piping NPS 4 to NPS 12 (DN 100 to DN 300), **as directed**, shall be selected from the following:

NOTE: Fire-service-main piping materials listed in subparagraphs below are for fire-protection water service. They may not be suitable for potable-water service.

- a. Ductile-iron, push-on-joint pipe; ductile-iron, push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed **OR** mechanical-joint pipe; ductile-iron, mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical **OR** grooved-end pipe; ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved, **as directed**, joints.
- b. PE, Class 150 **OR** 200, **as directed**, fire-service pipe; molded PE fittings; and heat-fusion joints.



- c. PVC, AWWA Class 150 pipe listed for fire-protection service; PVC Class 150 fabricated or molded fittings; and gasketed joints.
  - d. PVC, AWWA Class 200 pipe listed for fire-protection service; PVC Class 200 fabricated fittings; and gasketed joints.
  - e. Fiberglass, AWWA, FMG-approved RTRP, Class 150 **OR** 200, **as directed**; RTRF; and gasketed joints.
  - f. Fiberglass, UL RTRP, Class 150 **OR** 200 **OR** 250, **as directed**; RTRF; and gasketed joints.
11. Aboveground and Vault, **as directed**, Fire-Service-Main Piping NPS 4 to NPS 12 (DN 100 to DN 300), **as directed**, shall be ductile-iron, grooved-end pipe; ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
12. Underground Combined Water-Service and Fire-Service-Main Piping NPS 6 to NPS 12 (DN 150 to DN 300), **as directed**, shall be selected from the following:
- a. Ductile-iron, push-on-joint pipe; ductile-iron, push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed **OR** mechanical-joint pipe; ductile-iron, mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical **OR** grooved-end pipe; ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved, **as directed**, joints.
  - b. PVC, AWWA Class 150 **OR** 200, **as directed**, pipe listed for fire-protection service; PVC fabricated or molded fittings of same class as pipe; and gasketed joints.
  - c. Fiberglass, AWWA, FMG-approved RTRP, Class 150 **OR** 200, **as directed**; RTRF; and gasketed joints.
13. Aboveground and Vault, **as directed**, Combined Water Service and Fire-Service-Main Piping NPS 6 to NPS 12 (DN 150 to DN 300), **as directed**, shall be ductile-iron, grooved-end pipe; ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.

#### C. Valve Applications

- 1. General Application: Use mechanical-joint-end valves for NPS 3 (DN 80) and larger underground installation. Use threaded- or flanged-end valves for installation in vaults. Use UL/FMG, nonrising-stem gate valves for installation with indicator posts. Use corporation valves and curb valves with ends compatible with piping, for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller installation.
- 2. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
  - a. Underground Valves, NPS 3 (DN 80) and Larger: AWWA, cast-iron, nonrising-stem, metal **OR** resilient **OR** high-pressure, resilient, **as directed**,-seated gate valves with valve box.
  - b. Underground Valves, NPS 4 (DN 100) and Larger, for Indicator Posts: UL/FMG, cast-iron, nonrising-stem gate valves with indicator post.
  - c. Use the following for valves in vaults and aboveground:
    - 1) Gate Valves, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze, nonrising **OR** rising, **as directed**, stem.
    - 2) Gate Valves, NPS 3 (DN 80) and Larger: AWWA, cast iron, OS&Y rising stem, metal seated **OR** AWWA, cast iron, OS&Y rising stem, resilient seated **OR** UL/FMG, cast iron, OS&Y rising stem, **as directed**.
    - 3) Check Valves: AWWA C508 **OR** UL/FMG, **as directed**, swing type.
  - d. Pressure-Reducing Valves: Use for water-service piping in vaults and aboveground to control water pressure.
  - e. Relief Valves: Use for water-service piping in vaults and aboveground.
    - 1) Air-Release Valves: To release accumulated air.
    - 2) Air/Vacuum Valves: To release or admit large volume of air during filling of piping.
    - 3) Combination Air Valves: To release or admit air.
  - f. Detector Check Valves: Use for water-service piping in vaults and aboveground to detect unauthorized use of water.

#### D. Piping Systems - Common Requirements

- 1. See Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing" for piping-system common requirements.



#### E. Piping Installation

1. Water-Main Connection (if tap is made by utility company): Arrange with utility company for tap of size and in location indicated in water main.
2. Water-Main Connection (if tap is made by Contractor): Tap water main according to requirements of water utility company and of size and in location indicated.
3. Make connections larger than NPS 2 (DN 50) with tapping machine according to the following:
  - a. Install tapping sleeve and tapping valve according to MSS SP-60.
  - b. Install tapping sleeve on pipe to be tapped. Position flanged outlet for gate valve.
  - c. Use tapping machine compatible with valve and tapping sleeve; cut hole in main. Remove tapping machine and connect water-service piping.
  - d. Install gate valve onto tapping sleeve. Comply with MSS SP-60. Install valve with stem pointing up and with valve box.
4. Make connections NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller with drilling machine according to the following:
  - a. Install service-saddle assemblies and corporation valves in size, quantity, and arrangement required by utility company standards.
  - b. Install service-saddle assemblies on water-service pipe to be tapped. Position outlets for corporation valves.
  - c. Use drilling machine compatible with service-saddle assemblies and corporation valves. Drill hole in main. Remove drilling machine and connect water-service piping.
  - d. Install corporation valves into service-saddle assemblies.
  - e. Install manifold for multiple taps in water main.
  - f. Install curb valve in water-service piping with head pointing up and with service box.
5. Comply with NFPA 24 for fire-service-main piping materials and installation.
  - a. Install PE corrosion-protection encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
  - b. Install copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
6. Install ductile-iron, water-service piping according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
  - a. If required, install PE corrosion-protection encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
7. Install PE pipe according to ASTM D 2774 and ASTM F 645.
8. Install PVC, AWWA pipe according to ASTM F 645 and AWWA M23.
9. Install fiberglass AWWA pipe according to AWWA M45.
10. Bury piping with depth of cover over top at least 30 inches (750 mm), **as directed**, with top at least 12 inches (300 mm), **as directed**, below level of maximum frost penetration, and according to the following:
  - a. Under Driveways: With at least 36 inches (910 mm), **as directed**, cover over top.
  - b. Under Railroad Tracks: With at least 48 inches (1220 mm), **as directed**, cover over top.
  - c. In Loose Gravelly Soil and Rock: With at least 12 inches (300 mm), **as directed**, additional cover.
11. Install piping by tunneling or jacking, or combination of both, under streets and other obstructions that cannot be disturbed.
12. Extend water-service piping and connect to water-supply source and building-water-piping systems at outside face of building wall in locations and pipe sizes indicated.
  - a. Terminate water-service piping at building wall until building-water-piping systems are installed. Terminate piping with caps, plugs, or flanges as required for piping material. Make connections to building-water-piping systems when those systems are installed.
13. Sleeves are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".
14. Mechanical sleeve seals are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".
15. For piping with gasketed joints: Install underground piping with restrained joints at horizontal and vertical changes in direction. Use restrained-joint piping, thrust blocks, anchors, tie-rods and clamps, and other supports.
16. See Division 21 Section "Common Work Results For Fire Suppression" for fire-suppression-water piping inside the building.
17. See Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing" for potable-water piping inside the building.



#### F. Joint Construction

1. See Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing" for basic piping joint construction.
2. Make pipe joints according to the following:
  - a. Copper-Tubing, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Use proprietary crimping tool and procedure recommended by copper, pressure-seal-fitting manufacturer.
  - b. Ductile-Iron Piping, Gasketed Joints for Water-Service Piping: AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
  - c. Ductile-Iron Piping, Gasketed Joints for Fire-Service-Main Piping: UL 194.
  - d. Ductile-Iron Piping, Grooved Joints: Cut-groove pipe. Assemble joints with grooved-end, ductile-iron-piping couplings, gaskets, lubricant, and bolts according to coupling manufacturer's written instructions.
  - e. PE Piping Insert-Fitting Joints: Use plastic insert fittings and fasteners according to fitting manufacturer's written instructions.
  - f. PVC Piping Gasketed Joints: Use joining materials according to AWWA C900. Construct joints with elastomeric seals and lubricant according to ASTM D 2774 or ASTM D 3139 and pipe manufacturer's written instructions.
  - g. Fiberglass Piping Bonded Joints: Use adhesive and procedure recommended by piping manufacturer.
  - h. Dissimilar Materials Piping Joints: Use adapters compatible with both piping materials, with OD, and with system working pressure. Refer to Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing" for joining piping of dissimilar metals.

#### G. Anchorage Installation

1. Anchorage, General: Install water-distribution piping with restrained joints. Anchorages and restrained-joint types that may be used include the following:
  - a. Concrete thrust blocks.
  - b. Locking mechanical joints.
  - c. Set-screw mechanical retainer glands.
  - d. Bolted flanged joints.
  - e. Heat-fused joints.
  - f. Pipe clamps and tie rods.
2. Install anchorages for tees, plugs and caps, bends, crosses, valves, and hydrant branches. Include anchorages for the following piping systems:
  - a. Gasketed-Joint, Ductile-Iron, Water-Service Piping: According to AWWA C600.
  - b. Gasketed-Joint, PVC Water-Service Piping: According to AWWA M23.
  - c. Bonded-Joint Fiberglass, Water-Service Piping: According to AWWA M45.
  - d. Fire-Service-Main Piping: According to NFPA 24.
3. Apply full coat of asphalt or other acceptable corrosion-resistant material to surfaces of installed ferrous anchorage devices.

#### H. Valve Installation

1. AWWA Gate Valves: Comply with AWWA C600 and AWWA M44. Install each underground valve with stem pointing up and with valve box.
2. AWWA Valves Other Than Gate Valves: Comply with AWWA C600 and AWWA M44.
3. UL/FMG, Gate Valves: Comply with NFPA 24. Install each underground valve and valves in vaults with stem pointing up and with vertical cast-iron indicator post.
4. UL/FMG, Valves Other Than Gate Valves: Comply with NFPA 24.
5. MSS Valves: Install as component of connected piping system.
6. Corporation Valves and Curb Valves: Install each underground curb valve with head pointed up and with service box.
7. Pressure-Reducing Valves: Install in vault or aboveground between shutoff valves. Install full-size valved bypass, **as directed**.
8. Relief Valves: Comply with AWWA C512. Install aboveground with shutoff valve on inlet.

#### I. Detector-Check Valve Installation



1. Install in vault or aboveground.
  2. Install for proper direction of flow. Install bypass with water meter, gate valves on each side of meter, and check valve downstream from meter.
  3. Support detector check valves, meters, shutoff valves, and piping on brick or concrete piers.
- J. Water Meter Installation
1. If water meters are provided by the Contractor: Install water meters, piping, and specialties according to utility company's written instructions.
  2. Water Meters: Install displacement **OR** turbine, **as directed**, -type water meters, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, in meter boxes with shutoff valves on water meter inlets. Include valves on water meter outlets and valved bypass around meters unless prohibited by authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Water Meters: Install compound **OR** turbine, **as directed**, -type water meters, NPS 3 (DN 80) and larger, in meter vaults. Include shutoff valves on water meter inlets and outlets and valved bypass around meters. Support meters, valves, and piping on brick or concrete piers.
  4. Water Meters: Install detector-type water meters in meter vault according to AWWA M6. Include shutoff valves on water meter inlets and outlets and full-size valved bypass around meters. Support meters, valves, and piping on brick or concrete piers.
- K. Roughing-In For Water Meters
1. If Contractor is to rough-in for water meters to be installed by utility company: Rough-in piping and specialties for water meter installation according to utility company's written instructions.
- L. Vacuum Breaker Assembly Installation
1. Install pressure vacuum breaker assemblies of type, size, and capacity indicated. Include valves and test cocks. Install according to requirements of plumbing and health department and authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Do not install pressure vacuum breaker assemblies in vault or other space subject to flooding.
- M. Backflow Preventer Installation
1. Install backflow preventers of type, size, and capacity indicated. Include valves and test cocks. Install according to requirements of plumbing and health department and authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Do not install backflow preventers that have relief drain in vault or in other spaces subject to flooding.
  3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
  4. Support NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger backflow preventers, valves, and piping near floor and on brick or concrete piers.
- N. Water Meter Box Installation
1. Install water meter boxes in paved areas flush with surface.
  2. Install water meter boxes in grass or earth areas with top 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, above surface.
- O. Concrete Vault Installation
1. Install precast concrete vaults according to ASTM C 891.
- P. Protective Enclosure Installation
1. Install concrete base level and with top approximately 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, above grade.
  2. Install protective enclosure over valves and equipment.
  3. Anchor protective enclosure to concrete base.
- Q. Fire Hydrant Installation
1. General: Install each fire hydrant with separate gate valve in supply pipe, anchor with restrained joints or thrust blocks, and support in upright position.



2. Wet-Barrel Fire Hydrants: Install with valve below frost line. Provide for drainage.
3. AWWA Fire Hydrants: Comply with AWWA M17.
4. UL/FMG Fire Hydrants: Comply with NFPA 24.

R. Flushing Hydrant Installation

1. Install post-type flushing hydrants with valve below frost line and provide for drainage. Support in upright position. Include separate gate valve or curb valve and restrained joints in supply piping.
2. Install ground-type flushing hydrants with valve below frost line and provide for drainage. Install hydrant box flush with grade. Include separate gate valve or curb valve and restrained joints in supply piping.
3. Install sampling stations with valve below frost line and provide for drainage. Attach weather-resistant housing and support in upright position. Include separate curb valve in supply piping.

S. Fire Department Connection Installation

1. Install ball drip valves at each check valve for fire department connection to mains.
2. Install protective pipe bollards on two sides of **OR** on three sides of, **as directed**, each fire department connection. Pipe bollards are specified in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications".

T. Alarm Device Installation

1. General: Comply with NFPA 24 for devices and methods of valve supervision. Underground valves with valve box do not require supervision.
2. Supervisory Switches: Supervise valves in open position.
  - a. Valves: Grind away portion of exposed valve stem. Bolt switch, with plunger in stem depression, to OS&Y gate-valve yoke.
  - b. Indicator Posts: Drill and thread hole in upper-barrel section at target plate. Install switch, with toggle against target plate, on barrel of indicator post.
3. Locking and Sealing: Secure unsupervised valves as follows:
  - a. Valves: Install chain and padlock on open OS&Y gate valve.
  - b. Post Indicators: Install padlock on wrench on indicator post.
4. Pressure Switches: Drill and thread hole in exposed barrel of fire hydrant. Install switch.
5. Water-Flow Indicators: Install in water-service piping in vault. Select indicator with saddle and vane matching pipe size. Drill hole in pipe, insert vane, and bolt saddle to pipe.
6. Connect alarm devices to building fire alarm system. Wiring and fire-alarm devices are specified in Division 28.

U. Connections

1. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
2. See Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing" for piping connections to valves and equipment.
3. Connect water-distribution piping to utility water main **OR** existing water main, **as directed**. Use tapping sleeve and tapping valve **OR** service clamp and corporation valve, **as directed**.
4. Connect water-distribution piping to interior domestic water **OR** fire-suppression, **as directed**, piping.
5. Connect waste piping from concrete vault drains to sanitary sewerage system. See Division 22 for connection to sanitary-sewer **OR** storm-drainage system. See Division 23 for connection to storm-sewer, **as directed**, piping.
6. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
7. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".

V. Field Quality Control



1. Piping Tests: Conduct piping tests before joints are covered and after concrete thrust blocks have hardened sufficiently. Fill pipeline 24 hours before testing and apply test pressure to stabilize system. Use only potable water.
2. Hydrostatic Tests: Test at not less than one-and-one-half times working pressure for two hours.
  - a. Increase pressure in 50-psig (350-kPa) increments and inspect each joint between increments. Hold at test pressure for 1 hour; decrease to 0 psig (0 kPa). Slowly increase again to test pressure and hold for 1 more hour. Maximum allowable leakage is 2 quarts (1.89 L) per hour per 100 joints. Remake leaking joints with new materials and repeat test until leakage is within allowed limits.
3. Prepare reports of testing activities.

W. Identification

1. Install continuous underground detectable, **as directed**, warning tape during backfilling of trench for underground water-distribution piping. Locate below finished grade, directly over piping. Underground warning tapes are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".
2. Permanently attach equipment nameplate or marker indicating plastic water-service piping, on main electrical meter panel. See Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing" for identifying devices.

NOTE: Delete paragraph above if metallic water-service piping without electrically insulated fittings will be used.

X. Cleaning

1. Clean and disinfect water-distribution piping as follows:
  - a. Purge new water-distribution piping systems and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired before use.
  - b. If fire-protection-water piping is not connected to potable-water supply, use purging and disinfecting procedure prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if method is not prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction, use procedure described in NFPA 24 for flushing of piping. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at points of outlet.
  - c. If fire-protection-water piping is connected to potable-water supply, use purging and disinfecting procedure prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if method is not prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction, use procedure described in AWWA C651 or do as follows:
    - 1) Fill system or part of system with water/chlorine solution containing at least 50 ppm of chlorine; isolate and allow to stand for 24 hours **OR** Drain system or part of system of previous solution and refill with water/chlorine solution containing at least 200 ppm of chlorine; isolate and allow to stand for 3 hours, **as directed**.
    - 2) After standing time, flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine remains in water coming from system.
    - 3) Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedure if biological examination shows evidence of contamination.
2. Prepare reports of purging and disinfecting activities.

END OF SECTION 22 05 23 00a



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
22 05 23 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 22 05 76 00 - SANITARY SEWERAGE****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for sanitary sewerage. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Summary**

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Pipe and fittings.
  - b. Nonpressure and pressure couplings.
  - c. Expansion joints and deflection fittings.
  - d. Backwater valves.
  - e. Cleanouts.
  - f. Encasement for piping.
  - g. Manholes.

**C. Definitions**

1. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.

**D. Submittals**

1. Product Data: For the following:
  - a. Expansion joints and deflection fittings.
  - b. Backwater valves.
2. Shop Drawings: For manholes. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and frames and covers.
3. Coordination Drawings: Show pipe sizes, locations, and elevations. Show other piping in same trench and clearances from sewer system piping. Indicate interface and spatial relationship between manholes, piping, and proximate structures.
4. Profile Drawings: Show system piping in elevation. Draw profiles to horizontal scale of not less than 1 inch equals 50 feet (1:500) and to vertical scale of not less than 1 inch equals 5 feet (1:50). Indicate manholes and piping. Show types, sizes, materials, and elevations of other utilities crossing system piping.
5. Product Certificates: For each type of cast-iron soil pipe and fitting, from manufacturer.
6. Field quality-control reports.

**E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling**

1. Do not store plastic manholes, pipe, and fittings in direct sunlight.
2. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.
3. Handle manholes according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

**F. Project Conditions**

1. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Sewerage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
  - a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
  - b. Do not proceed with interruption of service without the Owner written permission.



## 1.2 PRODUCTS

- A. Hub-And-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Pipe And Fittings
1. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service class **OR** Service and Extra-Heavy classes **OR** Extra-Heavy class, **as directed**.
  2. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
  3. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.
- B. Hubless Cast-Iron Soil Pipe And Fittings
1. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
  2. CISPI-Trademark, Shielded Couplings:
    - a. Description: ASTM C 1277 and CISPI 310, with stainless-steel corrugated shield; stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
  3. Heavy-Duty, Shielded Couplings:
    - a. Description: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540, with stainless-steel shield; stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
  4. Cast-Iron, Shielded Couplings:
    - a. Description: ASTM C 1277 with ASTM A 48/A 48M, two-piece, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
  5. Unshielded Couplings:
    - a. Description: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1461, rigid, sleeve-type, reducing- or transition-type mechanical coupling, with integral, center pipe stop, molded from ASTM C 1440, TPE material; with corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
- C. Ductile-Iron, Gravity Sewer Pipe And Fittings
1. Pipe: ASTM A 746, for push-on joints.
  2. Standard Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron, for push-on joints.
  3. Compact Fittings: AWWA C153, ductile iron, for push-on joints.
  4. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
- D. Ductile-Iron, Pressure Pipe And Fittings
1. Push-on-Joint Piping:
    - a. Pipe: AWWA C151.
    - b. Standard Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron.
    - c. Compact Fittings: AWWA C153.
    - d. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber, of shape matching pipe and fittings.
  2. Mechanical-Joint Piping:
    - a. Pipe: AWWA C151, with bolt holes in bell.
    - b. Standard Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron, with bolt holes in bell.
    - c. Compact Fittings: AWWA C153, with bolt holes in bells.
    - d. Glands: Cast or ductile iron; with bolt holes and high-strength, cast-iron or high-strength, low-alloy steel bolts and nuts.
    - e. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber, of shape matching pipe, fittings, and glands.
- E. ABS Pipe And Fittings
1. ABS Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM D 2751, with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints.
    - a. NPS 3 to NPS 6 (DN 80 to DN 150): SDR 35.
    - b. NPS 8 to NPS 12 (DN 200 to DN 300): SDR 42.
  2. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
- F. PVC Pipe And Fittings



1. PVC Cellular-Core Sewer Piping:
    - a. Pipe: ASTM F 891, Sewer and Drain Series, PS 50 minimum stiffness, PVC cellular-core pipe with plain ends for solvent-cemented joints.
    - b. Fittings: ASTM D 3034, SDR 35, PVC socket-type fittings.
  2. PVC Corrugated Sewer Piping:
    - a. Pipe: ASTM F 949, PVC corrugated pipe with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints.
    - b. Fittings: ASTM F 949, PVC molded or fabricated, socket type.
    - c. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
  3. PVC Profile Sewer Piping:
    - a. Pipe: ASTM F 794, PVC profile, gravity sewer pipe with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints.
    - b. Fittings: ASTM D 3034, PVC with bell ends.
    - c. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
  4. PVC Type PSM Sewer Piping:
    - a. Pipe: ASTM D 3034, SDR 35, PVC Type PSM sewer pipe with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints.
    - b. Fittings: ASTM D 3034, PVC with bell ends.
    - c. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
  5. PVC Gravity Sewer Piping:
    - a. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM F 679, T-1 **OR** T-2, **as directed**, wall thickness, PVC gravity sewer pipe with bell-and-spigot ends and with integral ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals for gasketed joints.
  6. PVC Pressure Piping:
    - a. Pipe: AWWA C900, Class 100 **OR** Class 150 **OR** Class 200, **as directed**, PVC pipe with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints.
    - b. Fittings: AWWA C900, Class 100 **OR** Class 150 **OR** Class 200, **as directed**, PVC pipe with bell ends.
    - c. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
  7. PVC Water-Service Piping:
    - a. Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80, **as directed**, PVC, with plain ends for solvent-cemented joints.
    - b. Fittings: ASTM D 2466, Schedule 40 **OR** ASTM D 2467, Schedule 80, **as directed**, PVC, socket type.
- G. Fiberglass Pipe And Fittings
1. Fiberglass Sewer Pipe: ASTM D 3262, RTRP, for gasketed joints fabricated with Type 2, polyester **OR** Type 4, epoxy, **as directed**, resin.
    - a. Liner: Reinforced thermoset **OR** Nonreinforced thermoset **OR** Thermoplastic **OR** No liner, **as directed**.
    - b. Grade: Reinforced, surface layer matching pipe resin **OR** Nonreinforced, surface layer matching pipe resin **OR** No surface layer, **as directed**.
    - c. Stiffness: 9 psig (62 kPa) **OR** 18 psig (124 kPa) **OR** 36 psig (248 kPa) **OR** 72 psig (496 kPa), **as directed**.
  2. Fiberglass Nonpressure Fittings: ASTM D 3840, RTRF, for gasketed joints.
    - a. Laminating Resin: Type 1, polyester **OR** Type 2, epoxy, **as directed**, resin.
    - b. Reinforcement: Grade with finish compatible with resin.
  3. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
- H. Concrete Pipe And Fittings
1. Nonreinforced-Concrete Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM C 14 (ASTM C 14M), Class 1 **OR** Class 2 **OR** Class 3, **as directed**, with bell-and-spigot **OR** tongue-and-groove, **as directed**, ends for gasketed joints with ASTM C 443 (ASTM C 443M), rubber gaskets.
  2. Reinforced-Concrete Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM C 76 (ASTM C 76M).
    - a. Bell-and-spigot **OR** tongue-and-groove, **as directed**, ends for gasketed joints, with ASTM C 443 (ASTM C 443M), rubber gaskets.
    - b. Class II, Wall A **OR** Wall B **OR** Wall C, **as directed**.



- c. Class III, Wall A **OR** Wall B **OR** Wall C, **as directed**.
  - d. Class IV, Wall A **OR** Wall B **OR** Wall C, **as directed**.
  - e. Class V, Wall A **OR** Wall B, **as directed**.
- I. Nonpressure-Type Transition Couplings
1. Comply with ASTM C 1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, for joining underground nonpressure piping. Include ends of same sizes as piping to be joined and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
  2. Sleeve Materials:
    - a. For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
    - b. For Concrete Pipes: ASTM C 443 (ASTM C 443M), rubber.
    - c. For Fiberglass Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
    - d. For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
    - e. For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
  3. Unshielded, Flexible Couplings:
    - a. Description: Elastomeric sleeve, with stainless-steel shear ring, **as directed**, and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
  4. Shielded, Flexible Couplings:
    - a. Description: ASTM C 1460, elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
  5. Ring-Type, Flexible Couplings:
    - a. Description: Elastomeric compression seal with dimensions to fit inside bell of larger pipe and for spigot of smaller pipe to fit inside ring.
  6. Nonpressure-Type, Rigid Couplings:
    - a. Description: ASTM C 1461, sleeve-type, reducing- or transition-type mechanical coupling, molded from ASTM C 1440, TPE material; with corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
- J. Pressure-Type Pipe Couplings
1. Tubular-Sleeve Couplings: AWWA C219, with center sleeve, gaskets, end rings, and bolt fasteners.
  2. Metal, bolted, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, for joining underground pressure piping. Include 150-psig (1035-kPa) **OR** 200-psig (1380-kPa), **as directed**, minimum pressure rating and ends of same sizes as piping to be joined.
  3. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Carbon steel **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Ductile iron **OR** Malleable iron, **as directed**.
  4. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
  5. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.
- K. Expansion Joints And Deflection Fittings
1. Ductile-Iron, Flexible Expansion Joints:
    - a. Description: Compound fitting with combination of flanged and mechanical-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include two gasketed ball-joint sections and one or more gasketed sleeve sections, rated for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure and for offset and expansion indicated.
  2. Ductile-Iron Expansion Joints:
    - a. Description: Three-piece assembly of telescoping sleeve with gaskets and restrained-type, ductile-iron, bell-and-spigot end sections complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include rating for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure and for expansion indicated.
  3. Ductile-Iron Deflection Fittings:



- a. Description: Compound coupling fitting with ball joint, flexing section, gaskets, and restrained-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include rating for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure and for up to 15 degrees of deflection.
- L. Backwater Valves
1. Cast-Iron Backwater Valves:
    - a. Description: ASME A112.14.1, gray-iron body and bolted cover, with bronze seat.
    - b. Horizontal type; with swing check valve and hub-and-spigot ends.
    - c. Combination horizontal and manual gate-valve type; with swing check valve, integral gate valve, and hub-and-spigot ends.
    - d. Terminal type; with bronze seat, swing check valve, and hub inlet.
  2. PVC Backwater Valves:
    - a. Description: Horizontal type; with PVC body, PVC removable cover, and PVC swing check valve.
- M. Cleanouts
1. Cast-Iron Cleanouts:
    - a. Description: ASME A112.36.2M, round, gray-iron housing with clamping device and round, secured, scoriated, gray-iron cover. Include gray-iron ferrule with inside calk or spigot connection and countersunk, tapered-thread, brass closure plug.
    - b. Top-Loading Classification(s): Light Duty **OR** Medium Duty **OR** Heavy Duty **OR** Extra-Heavy Duty, **as directed**.
    - c. Sewer Pipe Fitting and Riser to Cleanout: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
  2. PVC Cleanouts:
    - a. Description: PVC body with PVC threaded plug. Include PVC sewer pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as sewer piping.
- N. Encasement For Piping
1. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
  2. Material: Linear low-density polyethylene film of 0.008-inch (0.20-mm) **OR** high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film of 0.004-inch (0.10-mm), **as directed**, minimum thickness.
  3. Form: Sheet **OR** Tube, **as directed**.
  4. Color: Black **OR** Natural, **as directed**.
- O. Manholes
1. Standard Precast Concrete Manholes:
    - a. Description: ASTM C 478 (ASTM C 478M), precast, reinforced concrete, of depth indicated, with provision for sealant joints.
    - b. Diameter: 48 inches (1200 mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
    - c. Ballast: Increase thickness of precast concrete sections or add concrete to base section, as required to prevent flotation.
    - d. Base Section: 6-inch (150-mm) minimum thickness for floor slab and 4-inch (100-mm) minimum thickness for walls and base riser section; with separate base slab or base section with integral floor.
    - e. Riser Sections: 4-inch (100-mm) minimum thickness, of length to provide depth indicated.
    - f. Top Section: Eccentric-cone type unless concentric-cone or flat-slab-top type is indicated; with top of cone of size that matches grade rings.
    - g. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 990 (ASTM C 990M), bitumen or butyl rubber.
    - h. Resilient Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923 (ASTM C 923M), cast or fitted into manhole walls, for each pipe connection.
    - i. Steps: Individual FRP steps or FRP ladder **OR** Individual FRP steps, FRP ladder, or ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP **OR** ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP, **as directed**; wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor



- steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch (300- to 400-mm) intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of manhole to finished grade is less than 60 inches (1500 mm).
- j. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking HDPE rings, with level or sloped edge in thickness and diameter matching manhole frame and cover, and with height as required to adjust manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.  
**OR**  
Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch (150- to 225-mm) total thickness, with diameter matching manhole frame and cover, and with height as required to adjust manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope.
2. Designed Precast Concrete Manholes:
    - a. Description: ASTM C 913; designed according to ASTM C 890 for A-16 (ASSHTO HS20-44), heavy-traffic, structural loading; of depth, shape, and dimensions indicated, with provision for sealant joints.
    - b. Ballast: Increase thickness of one or more precast concrete sections or add concrete to manhole as required to prevent flotation.
    - c. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 990 (ASTM 990M), bitumen or butyl rubber.
    - d. Resilient Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923 (ASTM C 923M), cast or fitted into manhole walls, for each pipe connection.
    - e. Steps: Individual FRP steps or FRP ladder **OR** Individual FRP steps, FRP ladder, or ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP **OR** ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP, **as directed**; wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch (300- to 400-mm) intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of manhole to finished grade is less than 60 inches (1500 mm).
    - f. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking HDPE rings, with level or sloped edge in thickness and diameter matching manhole frame and cover, and with height as required to adjust manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.  
**OR**  
Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch (150- to 225-mm) total thickness, with diameter matching manhole frame and cover, and with height as required to adjust manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope.
  3. Fiberglass Manholes:
    - a. Description: ASTM D 3753.
    - b. Diameter: 48 inches (1200 mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
    - c. Ballast: Increase thickness of concrete base as required to prevent flotation.
    - d. Base Section: Concrete, 6-inch (150-mm) minimum thickness.
    - e. Resilient Pipe Connectors (if required): ASTM C 923 (ASTM C 923M), cast or fitted into manhole walls, for each pipe connection.
    - f. Steps: Individual FRP steps or FRP ladder, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch (300- to 400-mm) intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of manhole to finished grade is less than 60 inches (1500 mm).
    - g. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking HDPE rings, with level or sloped edge in thickness and diameter matching manhole frame and cover, and with height as required to adjust manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.  
**OR**  
Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch (150- to 225-mm) total thickness, with diameter matching manhole frame and cover, and with height as required to adjust manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope.
  4. Manhole Frames and Covers:





- a. Description: Ferrous; 24-inch (610-mm) ID by 7- to 9-inch (175- to 225-mm) riser, with 4-inch- (100-mm-) minimum-width flange and 26-inch- (660-mm-) diameter cover. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to "SANITARY SEWER."
  - b. Material: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18 ductile **OR** ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 35 gray, **as directed**, iron unless otherwise indicated.
5. Manhole-Cover Inserts:
- a. Description: Manufactured, plastic form, of size to fit between manhole frame and cover and designed to prevent stormwater inflow. Include handle for removal and gasket for gastight sealing.
  - b. Type: Solid **OR** Drainage with vent holes **OR** Valve, **as directed**.

P. Concrete

1. General: Cast-in-place concrete complying with ACI 318, ACI 350/350R (ACI 350M/350RM), and the following:
  - a. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II.
  - b. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33, sand.
  - c. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C 33, crushed gravel.
  - d. Water: Potable.
2. Portland Cement Design Mix: 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) minimum, with 0.45 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio.
  - a. Reinforcing Fabric: ASTM A 1064/A 1064M, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
  - b. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (420 MPa) deformed steel.
3. Manhole Channels and Benches: Factory or field formed from concrete. Portland cement design mix, 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) minimum, with 0.45 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio. Include channels and benches in manholes.
  - a. Channels: Concrete invert, formed to same width as connected piping, with height of vertical sides to three-fourths of pipe diameter. Form curved channels with smooth, uniform radius and slope.
    - 1) Invert Slope: **1 OR 2, as directed**, percent through manhole.
  - b. Benches: Concrete, sloped to drain into channel.
    - 1) Slope: **4 OR 8, as directed**, percent.
4. Ballast and Pipe Supports: Portland cement design mix, 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) minimum, with 0.58 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio.
  - a. Reinforcing Fabric: ASTM A 1064/A 1064M, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
  - b. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (420 MPa) deformed steel.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Earthwork

1. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".

B. Piping Installation

1. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground sanitary sewer piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take into account design considerations. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical. Where specific installation is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions for using lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
3. Install manholes for changes in direction unless fittings are indicated. Use fittings for branch connections unless direct tap into existing sewer is indicated.
4. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.



5. When installing pipe under streets or other obstructions that cannot be disturbed, use pipe-jacking process of microtunneling.
6. Install gravity-flow, nonpressure, drainage piping according to the following:
  - a. Install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at minimum slope of 1 **OR** 2, **as directed**, percent unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Install piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger with restrained joints at tee fittings and at changes in direction. Use corrosion-resistant rods, pipe or fitting manufacturer's proprietary restraint system, or cast-in-place-concrete supports or anchors.
  - c. Install piping with 36-inch (915-mm) **OR** 48-inch (1220-mm) **OR** 60-inch (1520-mm) **OR** 72-inch (1830-mm), **as directed**, minimum cover.
  - d. Install hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook."
  - e. Install hubless cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook."
  - f. Install ductile-iron, gravity sewer piping according to ASTM A 746.
  - g. Install ABS sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
  - h. Install PVC cellular-core sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
  - i. Install PVC corrugated sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
  - j. Install PVC profile sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
  - k. Install PVC Type PSM sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
  - l. Install PVC gravity sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
  - m. Install fiberglass sewer piping according to ASTM D 3839 and ASTM F 1668.
  - n. Install nonreinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ASTM C 1479 and ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual."
  - o. Install reinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ASTM C 1479 and ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual."
7. Install force-main, pressure piping according to the following:
  - a. Install piping with restrained joints at tee fittings and at horizontal and vertical changes in direction. Use corrosion-resistant rods, pipe or fitting manufacturer's proprietary restraint system, or cast-in-place-concrete supports or anchors.
  - b. Install piping with 36-inch (915-mm) **OR** 48-inch (1220-mm) **OR** 60-inch (1520-mm) **OR** 72-inch (1830-mm), **as directed**, minimum cover.
  - c. Install ductile-iron pressure piping according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41.
  - d. Install ductile-iron special fittings according to AWWA C600.
  - e. Install PVC pressure piping according to AWWA M23 or to ASTM D 2774 and ASTM F 1668.
  - f. Install PVC water-service piping according to ASTM D 2774 and ASTM F 1668.
8. If required to provide protection for metal piping, install corrosion-protection piping encasement over the following underground metal piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105:
  - a. Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe.
  - b. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
  - c. Ductile-iron pipe and fittings.
  - d. Expansion joints and deflection fittings.
9. Clear interior of piping and manholes of dirt and superfluous material as work progresses. Maintain swab or drag in piping, and pull past each joint as it is completed. Place plug in end of incomplete piping at end of day and when work stops.

#### C. Pipe Joint Construction

1. Join gravity-flow, nonpressure, drainage piping according to the following:
  - a. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
  - b. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with calked joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead and oakum calked joints.
  - c. Join hubless cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-coupling joints.



- d. Join ductile-iron, gravity sewer piping according to AWWA C600 for push-on joints.
  - e. Join ABS sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM D 2751 for elastomeric-seal joints.
  - f. Join PVC cellular-core sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 891 for solvent-cemented joints.
  - g. Join PVC corrugated sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321.
  - h. Join PVC profile sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 for elastomeric-seal joints or ASTM F 794 for gasketed joints.
  - i. Join PVC Type PSM sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-seal joints or ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-gasket joints.
  - j. Join PVC gravity sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-seal joints or ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-gasket joints.
  - k. Join fiberglass sewer piping according to ASTM D 4161 for elastomeric-seal joints.
  - l. Join nonreinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ASTM C 14 (ASTM C 14M) and ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual" for rubber-gasket joints.
  - m. Join reinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual" for rubber-gasket joints.
  - n. Join dissimilar pipe materials with nonpressure-type, flexible **OR** rigid, **as directed**, couplings.
2. Join force-main, pressure piping according to the following:
    - a. Join ductile-iron pressure piping according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41 for push-on joints.
    - b. Join ductile-iron special fittings according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41 for push-on joints.
    - c. Join PVC pressure piping according to AWWA M23 for gasketed joints.
    - d. Join PVC water-service piping according to ASTM D 2855.
    - e. Join dissimilar pipe materials with pressure-type couplings.
  3. Pipe couplings, expansion joints, and deflection fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Use nonpressure flexible couplings where required to join gravity-flow, nonpressure sewer piping unless otherwise indicated.
      - 1) Unshielded **OR** Shielded, **as directed**, flexible **OR** rigid, **as directed**, couplings for pipes of same or slightly different OD.
      - 2) Unshielded, increaser/reducer-pattern, flexible **OR** rigid, **as directed**, couplings for pipes with different OD.
      - 3) Ring-type flexible couplings for piping of different sizes where annular space between smaller piping's OD and larger piping's ID permits installation.
    - b. Use pressure pipe couplings for force-main joints.
- D. Manhole Installation
1. General: Install manholes complete with appurtenances and accessories indicated.
  2. Install precast concrete manhole sections with sealants according to ASTM C 891.
  3. Install FRP manholes according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  4. Form continuous concrete channels and benches between inlets and outlet.
  5. Set tops of frames and covers flush with finished surface of manholes that occur in pavements. Set tops 3 inches (76 mm) above finished surface elsewhere unless otherwise indicated.
  6. Install manhole-cover inserts in frame and immediately below cover.
- E. Concrete Placement
1. Place cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318.
- F. Backwater Valve Installation
1. Install horizontal-type backwater valves in piping manholes or pits.
  2. Install combination horizontal and manual gate valves in piping and in manholes.
  3. Install terminal-type backwater valves on end of piping and in manholes. Secure units to sidewalls.



### G. Cleanout Installation

1. Install cleanouts and riser extensions from sewer pipes to cleanouts at grade. Use cast-iron soil pipe fittings in sewer pipes at branches for cleanouts, and use cast-iron soil pipe for riser extensions to cleanouts. Install piping so cleanouts open in direction of flow in sewer pipe.
  - a. Use Light-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in earth **OR** unpaved foot-traffic, **as directed**, areas.
  - b. Use Medium-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in paved foot-traffic areas.
  - c. Use Heavy-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in vehicle-traffic service areas.
  - d. Use Extra-Heavy-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in roads.
2. Set cleanout frames and covers in earth in cast-in-place-concrete block, 18 by 18 by 12 inches (450 by 450 by 300 mm) deep. Set with tops 1 inch (25 mm) above surrounding grade.
3. Set cleanout frames and covers in concrete pavement and roads with tops flush with pavement surface.

### H. Connections

1. Connect nonpressure, gravity-flow drainage piping to building's sanitary building drains specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste And Vent Piping".
2. Connect force-main piping to building's sanitary force mains specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste And Vent Piping". Terminate piping where indicated.
3. Make connections to existing piping and underground manholes.
  - a. Use commercially manufactured wye fittings for piping branch connections. Remove section of existing pipe, install wye fitting into existing piping, and encase entire wye fitting plus 6-inch (150-mm) overlap with not less than 6 inches (150 mm) of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20.7 MPa).
  - b. Make branch connections from side into existing piping, NPS 4 to NPS 20 (DN 100 to DN 500). Remove section of existing pipe, install wye fitting into existing piping, and encase entire wye with not less than 6 inches (150 mm) of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20.7 MPa).
  - c. Make branch connections from side into existing piping, NPS 21 (DN 525) or larger, or to underground manholes by cutting opening into existing unit large enough to allow 3 inches (76 mm) of concrete to be packed around entering connection. Cut end of connection pipe passing through pipe or structure wall to conform to shape of and be flush with inside wall unless otherwise indicated. On outside of pipe or manhole wall, encase entering connection in 6 inches (150 mm) of concrete for minimum length of 12 inches (300 mm) to provide additional support of collar from connection to undisturbed ground.
    - 1) Use concrete that will attain a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) unless otherwise indicated.
    - 2) Use epoxy-bonding compound as interface between new and existing concrete and piping materials.
  - d. Protect existing piping and manholes to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making tap connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.
4. Connect to grease **OR** oil **OR** sand, **as directed**, interceptors specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Interceptors".

### I. Closing Abandoned Sanitary Sewer Systems

1. Abandoned Piping: Close open ends of abandoned underground piping indicated to remain in place. Include closures strong enough to withstand hydrostatic and earth pressures that may result after ends of abandoned piping have been closed. Use either procedure below:
  - a. Close open ends of piping with at least 8-inch- (203-mm-) thick, brick masonry bulkheads.
  - b. Close open ends of piping with threaded metal caps, plastic plugs, or other acceptable methods suitable for size and type of material being closed. Do not use wood plugs.
2. Abandoned Manholes: Excavate around manhole as required and use either procedure below:
  - a. Remove manhole and close open ends of remaining piping.



- b. Remove top of manhole down to at least 36 inches (915 mm) below final grade. Fill to within 12 inches (300 mm) of top with stone, rubble, gravel, or compacted dirt. Fill to top with concrete.
3. Backfill to grade according to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".

J. Identification

1. Materials and their installation are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving". Arrange for installation of green warning tapes directly over piping and at outside edges of underground manholes.
  - a. Use warning tape **OR** detectable warning tape, **as directed**, over ferrous piping.
  - b. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground manholes.

K. Field Quality Control

1. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches (600 mm) of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.
  - a. Submit separate report for each system inspection.
  - b. Defects requiring correction include the following:
    - 1) Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
    - 2) Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
    - 3) Damage: Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
    - 4) Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.
    - 5) Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.
  - c. Replace defective piping using new materials, and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
  - d. Reinspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.
2. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.
  - a. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
  - b. Test completed piping systems according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - c. Schedule tests and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
  - d. Submit separate report for each test.
  - e. Hydrostatic Tests: Test sanitary sewerage according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and the following:
    - 1) Fill sewer piping with water. Test with pressure of at least 10-foot (3-m) head of water, and maintain such pressure without leakage for at least 15 minutes.
    - 2) Close openings in system and fill with water.
    - 3) Purge air and refill with water.
    - 4) Disconnect water supply.
    - 5) Test and inspect joints for leaks.

**OR**

Air Tests: Test sanitary sewerage according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, UNI-B-6, and the following:

    - 6) Option: Test plastic gravity sewer piping according to ASTM F 1417.
    - 7) Option: Test concrete gravity sewer piping according to ASTM C 924 (ASTM C 924M).
  - f. Force Main: Perform hydrostatic test after thrust blocks, supports, and anchors have hardened. Test at pressure not less than 1-1/2 times the maximum system operating pressure, but not less than 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 1) Ductile-Iron Piping: Test according to AWWA C600, "Hydraulic Testing" Section.
    - 2) PVC Piping: Test according to AWWA M23, "Testing and Maintenance" Chapter.
  - g. Manholes: Perform hydraulic test according to ASTM C 969 (ASTM C 969M).
3. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.



- 
4. Replace leaking piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.
- L. Cleaning
1. Clean dirt and superfluous material from interior of piping. Flush with potable water.

END OF SECTION 22 05 76 00



## SECTION 22 05 76 00a - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for storm drainage piping specialties. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Roof drains.
  - b. Miscellaneous storm drainage piping specialties.
  - c. Cleanouts.
  - d. Backwater valves.
  - e. Trench drains.
  - f. Channel drainage systems.
  - g. Through-penetration firestop assemblies.
  - h. Flashing materials.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Metal Roof Drains

1. Cast-Iron, Large-Sump, General-Purpose Roof Drains:
  - a. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for general-purpose roof drains.
  - b. Body Material: Cast iron.
  - c. Dimension of Body: Nominal 14-inch (357-mm) diameter.
  - d. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - e. Flow-Control Weirs: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - f. Outlet: Bottom **OR** Side, **as directed**.
  - g. Extension Collars: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - h. Underdeck Clamp: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - i. Expansion Joint: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - j. Sump Receiver Plate: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - k. Dome Material: Aluminum **OR** Cast iron **OR** PE **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
  - l. Perforated Gravel Guard: Stainless steel **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
  - m. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - n. Water Dam: Not required **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) high, **as directed**.
2. Cast-Iron, Medium-Sump, General-Purpose Roof Drains:
  - a. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for general-purpose roof drains.
  - b. Body Material: Cast iron.
  - c. Dimension of Body: 8- to 12-inch (203- to 305-mm) diameter.
  - d. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - e. Flow-Control Weirs: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - f. Outlet: Bottom **OR** Side, **as directed**.
  - g. Extension Collars: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.



- h. Underdeck Clamp: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - i. Expansion Joint: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - j. Sump Receiver Plate: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - k. Dome Material: Aluminum **OR** Cast iron **OR** Copper **OR** PE **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
  - l. Wire Mesh: Stainless steel or brass over dome **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
  - m. Perforated Gravel Guard: Stainless steel **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
  - n. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - o. Water Dam: Not required **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) high, **as directed**.
3. Copper, Medium-Sump, General-Purpose Roof Drains:
- a. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for general-purpose roof drains.
  - b. Body Material: Copper.
  - c. Dimension of Body: 8- to 12-inch (203- to 305-mm) diameter.
  - d. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - e. Flow-Control Weirs: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - f. Outlet: Bottom **OR** Side, **as directed**.
  - g. Extension Collars: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - h. Underdeck Clamp: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - i. Expansion Joint: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - j. Sump Receiver Plate: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - k. Dome Material: Aluminum **OR** Cast iron **OR** Copper **OR** PE **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
  - l. Wire Mesh: Stainless steel or brass over dome **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
  - m. Perforated Gravel Guard: Stainless steel **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
  - n. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - o. Water Dam: Not required **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) high, **as directed**.
4. Cast-Iron, Small-Sump, General-Purpose Roof Drains:
- a. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for general-purpose roof drains.
  - b. Body Material: Cast iron.
  - c. Dimension of Body: Nominal 8-inch (203-mm) diameter.
  - d. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - e. Outlet: Bottom **OR** Side, **as directed**.
  - f. Extension Collars: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - g. Underdeck Clamp: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - h. Expansion Joint: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - i. Sump Receiver Plate: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - j. Dome Material: Cast iron.
  - k. Wire Mesh: Stainless steel or brass over dome **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
  - l. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
5. Copper, Small-Sump, General-Purpose Roof Drains:
- a. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for general-purpose roof drains.
  - b. Body Material: Copper.
  - c. Dimension of Body: Nominal 8-inch (203-mm) diameter.
  - d. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - e. Outlet: Bottom **OR** Side, **as directed**.
  - f. Extension Collars: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - g. Underdeck Clamp: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - h. Expansion Joint: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - i. Sump Receiver Plate: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - j. Dome Material: Cast iron.
  - k. Wire Mesh: Stainless steel or brass over dome **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
  - l. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
6. Metal, Cornice and Gutter Roof Drains:
- a. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for cornice and gutter roof drains.
  - b. Body Material: Metal.





- c. Dimension of Body: Nominal 6-inch (152-mm) diameter.
  - d. Outlet: Bottom **OR** Side **OR** 45-degree angle, **as directed**.
  - e. Dome Material: Bronze.
  - f. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
7. Metal, Parapet Roof Drains:
- a. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for parapet roof drains.
  - b. Body Material: Cast iron.
  - c. Outlet: Back **OR** Angle, **as directed**.
    - d. Grate Material: Bronze **OR** Cast iron **OR** Nickel-bronze alloy, **as directed**.
  - e. Vandal-Proof Grate: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
8. Metal, Large-Sump, Promenade Roof Drains:
- a. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for promenade roof drains.
  - b. Body Material: Cast iron.
  - c. Dimension of Body: Nominal 14-inch (357-mm) diameter.
  - d. Dimension of Frame and Grate: Nominal 14 inches (357 mm) square.
  - e. Outlet: Bottom.
  - f. Grate Material: Bronze **OR** Cast iron **OR** Nickel-bronze alloy, **as directed**.
  - g. Vandal-Proof Grate: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - h. Extension Collars: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - i. Underdeck Clamp: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - j. Expansion Joint: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - k. Sump Receiver Plate: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
9. Metal, Medium-Sump, Promenade Roof Drains:
- a. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for promenade roof drains.
  - b. Body Material: Cast iron.
  - c. Dimension of Body: 11- to 12-inch (280- to 305-mm) diameter.
  - d. Dimension of Frame and Grate: Nominal 12 inches (305 mm) square.
  - e. Outlet: Bottom.
  - f. Grate Material: Bronze **OR** Cast iron **OR** Nickel-bronze alloy, **as directed**.
  - g. Vandal-Proof Grate: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - h. Extension Collars: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - i. Underdeck Clamp: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - j. Expansion Joint: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - k. Sump Receiver Plate: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
10. Metal, Small-Sump, Promenade Roof Drains:
- a. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for promenade roof drains.
  - b. Body Material: Cast iron.
  - c. Dimension of Body: Nominal 8-inch (203-mm) diameter.
  - d. Dimension of Frame and Grate: Nominal 8 inches (203 mm) square.
  - e. Outlet: Bottom.
  - f. Grate Material: Bronze **OR** Cast iron **OR** Nickel-bronze alloy, **as directed**.
  - g. Vandal-Proof Grate: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - h. Extension Collars: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - i. Underdeck Clamp: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - j. Expansion Joint: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - k. Sump Receiver Plate: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
11. Metal, Medium-Sump, Deck Roof Drains:
- a. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for deck roof drains; ASME A112.6.3, for floor drains.
  - b. Body Material: Metal.
  - c. Flange: Anchor **OR** Anchor with weep holes **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
  - d. Clamping Device: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - e. Integral Backwater Valve: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - f. Outlet: Bottom **OR** End **OR** Side, **as directed**.
  - g. Grate Material: Cast iron.
  - h. Grate Finish: Painted **OR** Not required, **as directed**.



- i. Overall Dimension of Frame and Grate: Nominal 14 inches (357 mm) round **OR** square, **as directed**.
  - j. Top-Loading Classification: Extra-Heavy Duty **OR** Heavy Duty, **as directed**.
  - k. Vandal-Proof Frame and Grate: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
12. Metal, Small-Sump, Deck Roof Drains:
- a. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for deck roof drains; ASME A112.6.3, for floor drains.
  - b. Body Material: Metal.
  - c. Flange: Anchor **OR** Anchor with weep holes **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
  - d. Clamping Device: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - e. Integral Backwater Valve: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - f. Outlet: Bottom **OR** End **OR** Side, **as directed**.
  - g. Grate Material: Cast iron.
  - h. Grate Finish: Painted **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
  - i. Overall Dimension of Frame and Grate: Nominal 8 inches (203 mm) round **OR** square, **as directed**.
  - j. Top-Loading Classification: Extra-Heavy Duty **OR** Heavy Duty **OR** Light Duty **OR** Medium Duty, **as directed**.
  - k. Vandal-Proof Frame and Grate: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
- B. Plastic Roof Drains
- 1. Plastic Roof Drains:
    - a. Standard: ASME A112.6.4, for plastic roof drains.
    - b. Body Material: ABS or PVC.
    - c. Sump Diameter: <Insert nominal dimension>.
    - d. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
    - e. Outlet: Bottom.
    - f. Extension Collars: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
    - g. Underdeck Clamp: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
    - h. Expansion Joint: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
    - i. Sump Receiver Plate: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
    - j. Dome Material: Aluminum **OR** Cast iron **OR** PE **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
    - k. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
- C. Miscellaneous Storm Drainage Piping Specialties
- 1. Downspout Adaptors:
    - a. Description: Manufactured, gray-iron casting, for attaching to horizontal-outlet, parapet roof drain and to exterior, sheet metal downspout.
    - b. Size: Inlet size to match parapet drain outlet.
  - 2. Downspout Boots:
    - a. Description: Manufactured, ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray-iron casting, with strap or ears for attaching to building; NPS 4 (DN 100) outlet; and shop-applied bituminous coating.
    - b. Size: Inlet size to match downspout and NPS 4 (DN 100) outlet.
  - 3. Conductor Nozzles:
    - a. Description: Bronze body with threaded inlet and bronze wall flange with mounting holes.
    - b. Size: Same as connected conductor.
- D. Cleanouts
- 1. Floor Cleanouts:
    - a. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M, for adjustable housing **OR** cast-iron soil pipe with cast-iron ferrule **OR** heavy-duty, adjustable housing **OR** threaded, adjustable housing, **as directed**, cleanouts.
    - b. Size: Same as connected branch.
    - c. Type: Adjustable housing **OR** Cast-iron soil pipe with cast-iron ferrule **OR** Heavy-duty, adjustable housing **OR** Threaded, adjustable housing, **as directed**.
    - d. Body or Ferrule Material: Cast iron **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.



- e. Clamping Device: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
  - f. Outlet Connection: Inside callk **OR** Spigot **OR** Threaded, **as directed**.
  - g. Closure: Brass plug with straight threads and gasket **OR** Brass plug with tapered threads **OR** Cast-iron plug **OR** Plastic plug, **as directed**.
  - h. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron **OR** Plastic, **as directed**, with threads **OR** set-screws or other device, **as directed**.
  - i. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy **OR** Painted cast iron **OR** Polished bronze **OR** Rough bronze **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
  - j. Frame and Cover Shape: Round **OR** Square, **as directed**.
  - k. Top-Loading Classification: Extra-Heavy Duty **OR** Heavy Duty **OR** Light Duty **OR** Medium Duty, **as directed**.
  - l. Riser: ASTM A 74, Extra-Heavy **OR** Service, **as directed**, class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.
2. Test Tees:
- a. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M and ASTM A 74, ASTM A 888, or CISPI 301, for cleanout test tees.
  - b. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
  - c. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil-pipe T-branch or hubless, cast-iron soil-pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
  - d. Closure Plug: Countersunk or raised head, brass.
  - e. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
3. Wall Cleanouts:
- a. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M, for cleanouts. Include wall access.
  - b. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
  - c. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil-pipe T-branch **OR** Hubless, cast-iron soil-pipe test tee, **as directed**, as required to match connected piping.
  - d. Closure: Countersunk **OR** Countersunk or raised-head **OR** Raised-head, **as directed**, drilled-and-threaded **OR** brass **OR** cast-iron, **as directed**, plug.
  - e. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
  - f. Wall Access: Round, deep, chrome-plated bronze **OR** flat, chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel, **as directed**, cover plate with screw.
  - g. Wall Access: Round **OR** Square, **as directed**, nickel-bronze, copper-alloy, or stainless-steel wall-installation frame and cover.
4. Plastic Floor Cleanouts:
- a. Size: Same as connected branch.
  - b. Body Material: PVC.
  - c. Closure Plug: PVC.
  - d. Riser: Drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as drainage piping.
- E. Backwater Valves
1. Cast-Iron, Horizontal Backwater Valves:
- a. Standard: ASME A112.14.1, for backwater valves.
  - b. Size: Same as connected piping.
  - c. Body Material: Cast iron.
  - d. Cover: Cast iron with bolted or threaded access check valve.
  - e. End Connections: Hub and spigot or hubless.
  - f. Check Valve: Removable, bronze, swing check, factory assembled or field modified to hang closed **OR** open for airflow unless subject to backflow condition, **as directed**.
  - g. Extension: ASTM A 74, Service class; full-size, cast-iron soil-pipe extension to field-installed cleanout at floor; replaces backwater valve cover.
2. Cast-Iron, Drain-Outlet Backwater Valves:
- a. Size: Same as floor drain outlet.
  - b. Body Material: Cast iron or bronze made for vertical installation in bottom outlet of floor drain.
  - c. Check Valve: Removable ball float.
  - d. Inlet: Threaded.



- e. Outlet: Threaded or spigot.
- 3. Plastic, Horizontal Backwater Valves:
  - a. Standard: ASME A112.14.1, for backwater valves.
  - b. Size: Same as connected piping.
  - c. Body Material: ABS **OR** PVC, **as directed**.
  - d. Cover: Same material as body with threaded access to check valve.
  - e. Check Valve: Removable swing check.
  - f. End Connections: Socket type.
  
- F. Trench Drains
  - 1. Trench Drains:
    - a. Standard: ASME A112.6.3, for trench drains.
    - b. Body Material: Cast iron.
    - c. Flange: Anchor **OR** Anchor with weep holes **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
    - d. Clamping Device: Not required **OR** Required, **as directed**.
    - e. Outlet: Bottom **OR** End **OR** Side, **as directed**.
    - f. Grate Material: Ductile iron or gray iron **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.
    - g. Grate Finish: Painted **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
    - h. Dimensions of Frame and Grate: **<Insert dimensions>**.
    - i. Top-Loading Classification: Extra-Heavy Duty **OR** Heavy Duty **OR** Light Duty **OR** Medium Duty, **as directed**.
  
- G. Channel Drainage Systems
  - 1. Narrow, Sloped-Invert, Polymer-Concrete, Channel Drainage Systems:
    - a. Type: Modular system of channel sections, grates, and appurtenances; designed so grates fit into channel recesses without rocking or rattling.
      - 1) Channel Sections: Narrow, interlocking-joint, sloped-invert, polymer-concrete modular units with end caps. Include rounded bottom, with built-in invert slope of 0.6 percent and with outlets in number, sizes, and locations indicated. Include extension sections necessary for required depth.
        - a) Dimensions: 4-inch (102-mm) inside width. Include number of units required to form total lengths indicated.
        - b) Frame: Galvanized steel or gray iron for grates **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
      - 2) Grates: Manufacturer's designation "heavy duty" **OR** "medium duty", **as directed**, with slots or perforations, and of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections.
        - a) Material: Ductile iron **OR** Fiberglass **OR** Galvanized steel **OR** Gray iron **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
        - b) Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
      - 3) Covers: Solid ductile or gray iron, of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections, and of lengths indicated.
      - 4) Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard unless otherwise indicated.
      - 5) Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.
  - 2. Narrow, Level-Invert, Polymer-Concrete, Channel Drainage Systems:
    - a. Type: Modular system of channel sections, grates, and appurtenances; designed so grates fit into channel recesses without rocking or rattling.
      - 1) Channel Sections: Narrow, interlocking-joint, precast, polymer-concrete modular units with end caps. Include rounded bottom, with level invert and with NPS 4 (DN 100) outlets in number and locations indicated.
        - a) Dimensions: 5-inch (127-mm) inside width and 9-3/4-inch (248-mm) depth. Include number of units required to form total lengths indicated.



- b) Frame: Galvanized steel or gray iron for grates **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
        - 2) Grates: Manufacturer's designation "heavy duty" **OR** "medium duty", **as directed**, with slots or perforations, and of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections.
          - a) Material: Ductile iron **OR** Fiberglass **OR** Galvanized steel **OR** Gray iron **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
          - b) Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
        - 3) Covers: Solid ductile or gray iron, of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections, and of lengths indicated.
        - 4) Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard unless otherwise indicated.
        - 5) Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.
3. Wide, Level-Invert, Polymer-Concrete, Channel Drainage Systems:
  - a. Type: Modular system of channel sections, grates, and appurtenances; designed so grates fit into channel recesses without rocking or rattling.
    - 1) Channel Sections: Wide, interlocking-joint, precast, polymer-concrete modular units with end caps. Include flat or rounded bottom, with level invert and with outlets in number, sizes, and locations indicated.
      - a) Dimensions: 8-inch (203-mm) inside width and 13-3/4-inch (350-mm) depth. Include number of units required to form total lengths indicated.
      - b) Frame: Galvanized steel or gray iron for grates **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
    - 2) Grates: Manufacturer's designation "heavy duty" **OR** "medium duty", **as directed**, with slots or perforations, and of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections.
      - a) Material: Ductile iron **OR** Fiberglass **OR** Galvanized steel **OR** Gray iron **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
      - b) Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections **OR** Not required, **as directed**.
    - 3) Covers: Solid ductile or gray iron, of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections, and of lengths indicated.
    - 4) Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard unless otherwise indicated.
    - 5) Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.
- H. Through-Penetration Firestop Assemblies
  1. Through-Penetration Firestop Assemblies:
    - a. Standard: ASTM E 814, for through-penetration firestop assemblies.
    - b. Certification and Listing: Intertek Testing Service NA for through-penetration firestop assemblies.
    - c. Size: Same as connected pipe.
    - d. Sleeve: Molded PVC plastic, of length to match slab thickness and with integral nailing flange on one end for installation in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
    - e. Stack Fitting: ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray-iron, hubless-pattern, wye branch with neoprene O-ring at base and gray-iron plug in thermal-release harness. Include PVC protective cap for plug.
    - f. Special Coating: Corrosion resistant on interior of fittings.
- I. Flashing Materials
  1. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 152/B 152M, 12 oz./sq. ft. (3.7 kg/sq. m or 0.41-mm thickness).



2. Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with 0.20 percent copper content and 0.04-inch (1.01-mm) minimum thickness unless otherwise indicated. Include G90 (Z275) hot-dip galvanized, mill-phosphatized finish for painting if indicated.
3. Elastic Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 4068, flexible, chlorinated polyethylene, 40-mil (1.01-mm) minimum thickness.
4. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.
5. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.
6. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation

1. Install roof drains at low points of roof areas according to roof membrane manufacturer's written installation instructions. Roofing materials are specified in Division 7 Sections.
  - a. Install flashing collar or flange of roof drain to prevent leakage between drain and adjoining roofing. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
  - b. Install expansion joints, if indicated, in roof drain outlets.
  - c. Position roof drains for easy access and maintenance.
2. Install downspout adapters on outlet of back-outlet parapet roof drains and connect to sheet metal downspouts.
3. Install downspout boots at grade with top 6 inches (152 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 18 inches (457 mm), **as directed**, above grade. Secure to building wall.
4. Install conductor nozzles at exposed bottom of conductors where they spill onto grade.
5. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following instructions unless otherwise indicated:
  - a. Use cleanouts the same size as drainage piping up to NPS 4 (DN 100). Use NPS 4 (DN 100) for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
  - b. Locate cleanouts at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
  - c. Locate cleanouts at minimum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) for piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller and 100 feet (30 m) for larger piping.
  - d. Locate cleanouts at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
6. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
7. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
8. Install horizontal backwater valves in floor with cover flush with floor.
9. Install drain-outlet backwater valves in outlet of drains.
10. Install test tees in vertical conductors and near floor.
11. Install wall cleanouts in vertical conductors. Install access door in wall if indicated.
12. Install trench drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished surface unless otherwise indicated.
13. Assemble channel drainage system components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install on support devices so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.
14. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies in plastic conductors at concrete floor penetrations.
15. Install sleeve flashing device with each conductor passing through floors with waterproof membrane.

#### B. Connections

1. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Division 15 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

#### C. Flashing Installation



1. Fabricate flashing from single piece of metal unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:
    - a. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of 6.0-lb/sq. ft. (30-kg/sq. m) lead sheets, 0.0938-inch (2.4-mm) thickness or thicker. Solder joints of 4.0-lb/sq. ft. (20-kg/sq. m) lead sheets, 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) thickness or thinner.
    - b. Copper Sheets: Solder joints of copper sheets.
  2. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
    - a. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching the pipe size, with a minimum length of 10 inches (250 mm) and with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) around pipe.
    - b. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) around sleeve.
    - c. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) around specialty.
  3. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
  4. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.
  5. Fabricate and install flashing and pans, sumps, and other drainage shapes.
- D. Protection
1. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
  2. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 22 05 76 00a



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



**SECTION 22 07 19 00 - FIRE-SUPPRESSION SYSTEMS INSULATION**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for fire-suppression systems insulation. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Insulation Materials:
    - 1) Calcium silicate.
    - 2) Cellular glass.
    - 3) Flexible elastomeric.
    - 4) Mineral fiber.
    - 5) Phenolic.
    - 6) Polyisocyanurate.
    - 7) Polyolefin.
    - 8) Polystyrene.
  - b. Insulating cements.
  - c. Adhesives.
  - d. Mastics.
  - e. Lagging adhesives.
  - f. Sealants.
  - g. Factory-applied jackets.
  - h. Field-applied fabric-reinforcing mesh.
  - i. Field-applied cloths.
  - j. Field-applied jackets.
  - k. Tapes.
  - l. Securements.
  - m. Corner angles.

## C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings:
  - a. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
  - b. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
  - c. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
  - d. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
  - e. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties and equipment connections.
  - f. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
  - g. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
  - h. Detail field application for fire-suppression water storage tanks.
4. Field quality-control reports.

## D. Quality Assurance



1. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Insulation and related materials shall have fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
  - a. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
  - b. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Insulation Materials

1. Comply with requirements in Part 1.3 schedule articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
2. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
3. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
4. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
5. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
6. Calcium Silicate:
  - a. Preformed Pipe Sections: Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
  - b. Prefabricated Fitting Covers: Comply with ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585 for dimensions used in preforming insulation to cover valves, elbows, tees, and flanges.
7. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - a. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
  - b. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
  - c. Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV.
  - d. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 1.
  - e. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied ASJ **OR** ASJ-SSL, **as directed**: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.
  - f. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
8. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.
9. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
10. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For equipment applications, provide insulation without factory-applied jacket **OR** with factory-applied ASJ **OR** with factory-applied FSK jacket, **as directed**. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
11. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
  - a. Type I, 850 deg F (454 deg C) Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, without factory-applied



- jacket **OR** with factory-applied ASJ **OR** with factory-applied ASJ-SSL, **as directed**.  
Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- b. Type II, 1200 deg F (649 deg C) Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type II, Grade A, without factory-applied jacket **OR** with factory-applied ASJ **OR** with factory-applied ASJ-SSL, **as directed**.  
Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
12. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ **OR** FSK jacket, **as directed**, complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. (40 kg/cu. m) or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F (55 deg C) is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.042 W/m x K) or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
13. Phenolic:
- a. Preformed pipe insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type III, Grade 1.
- b. Block insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type II, Grade 1.
- c. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
- d. Factory-Applied Jacket: Requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- 1) Preformed Pipe Insulation: None **OR** ASJ, **as directed**.
- 2) Board for Equipment Applications: None **OR** ASJ, **as directed**.
14. Polyisocyanurate: Unfaced, preformed, rigid cellular polyisocyanurate material intended for use as thermal insulation.
- a. Comply with ASTM C 591, Type I or Type IV, except thermal conductivity (k-value) shall not exceed 0.19 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.027 W/m x K) at 75 deg F (24 deg C) after 180 days of aging.
- b. Flame-spread index shall be 25 or less and smoke-developed index shall be 50 or less for thickness up to 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) as tested by ASTM E 84.
- c. Fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
- d. Factory-Applied Jacket: Requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- 1) Pipe Applications: None **OR** ASJ **OR** ASJ-SSL **OR** PVDC **OR** PVDC-SSL, **as directed**.
- 2) Equipment Applications: None **OR** ASJ **OR** ASJ-SSL **OR** PVDC **OR** PVDC-SSL, **as directed**.
15. Polyolefin: Unicellular, polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C 534 or ASTM C 1427, Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials and Type II, Grade 1 for sheet materials.
16. Polystyrene: Rigid, extruded cellular polystyrene intended for use as thermal insulation. Comply with ASTM C 578, Type IV or Type XIII, except thermal conductivity (k-value) shall not exceed 0.26 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.038 W/m x K) after 180 days of aging. Fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
- B. Insulating Cements
1. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.
2. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 196.
3. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449/C 449M.
- C. Adhesives
1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Calcium Silicate Adhesive: Fibrous, sodium-silicate-based adhesive with a service temperature range of 50 to 800 deg F (10 to 427 deg C).
- a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).



3. Cellular-Glass, Phenolic, Polyisocyanurate, and Polystyrene Adhesive: Solvent-based resin adhesive, with a service temperature range of minus 75 to plus 300 deg F (minus 59 to plus 149 deg C).
  - a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
4. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
  - a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
5. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
  - a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
6. Polystyrene Adhesive: Solvent- or water-based, synthetic resin adhesive with a service temperature range of minus 20 to plus 140 deg F (29 to plus 60 deg C).
7. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A, for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
  - a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
8. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
  - a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

#### D. Mastics

1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-C-19565C, Type II.
  - a. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of <Insert value> g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on below ambient services.
  - a. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96, Procedure B, 0.013 perm (0.009 metric perm) at 43-mil (1.09-mm) dry film thickness.
  - b. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
  - c. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 59 percent by volume and 71 percent by weight.
  - d. Color: White.
3. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below ambient services.
  - a. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.033 metric perm) at 30-mil (0.8-mm) dry film thickness.
  - b. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 104 deg C).
  - c. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
  - d. Color: White.
4. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.
  - a. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 3 perms (2 metric perms) at 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) dry film thickness.
  - b. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 93 deg C).
  - c. Solids Content: 63 percent by volume and 73 percent by weight.
  - d. Color: White.

#### E. Lagging Adhesives

1. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A, and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  - a. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of <Insert value> g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - b. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over equipment and pipe insulation.
  - c. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 82 deg C).
  - d. Color: White.



#### F. Sealants

1. Joint Sealants:
  - a. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  - b. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  - c. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F (Minus 73 to plus 149 deg C).
  - d. Color: White or gray.
  - e. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
  - a. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  - b. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  - c. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
  - d. Color: Aluminum.
  - e. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
  - a. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  - b. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  - c. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
  - d. Color: White.
  - e. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

#### G. Factory-Applied Jackets

1. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
  - a. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  - b. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  - c. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
  - d. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil- (0.10-mm-) thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perms (0.013 metric perms) when tested according to ASTM E 96 and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
  - e. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil- (0.15-mm-) thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perms (0.007 metric perms) when tested according to ASTM E 96 and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 25 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
  - f. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.

#### H. Field-Applied Fabric-Reinforcing Mesh

1. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric for Pipe Insulation: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. (68 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. inch (4 strands by 4 strands/sq. mm) for covering pipe and pipe fittings.
2. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric for Equipment Insulation: Approximately 6 oz./sq. yd. (203 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 5 strands by 5 strands/sq. inch (2 strands by 2 strands/sq. mm) for covering equipment.
3. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. (34 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. inch (4 strands by 4 strands/sq. mm), in a Leno weave.

#### I. Field-Applied Cloths

1. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd. (271 g/sq. m).



#### J. Field-Applied Jackets

1. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
2. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
  - a. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
  - b. Color: White **OR** Color-code jackets based on system. Color as selected by the Owner, **as directed**.
  - c. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
    - 1) Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
  - d. Factory-fabricated tank heads and tank side panels.
3. Metal Jacket:
  - a. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105 or 5005, Temper H-14.
    - 1) Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing **OR** Factory cut and rolled to size, **as directed**.
    - 2) Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
    - 3) Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper **OR** 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper **OR** 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick Polysurlyn, **as directed**.
    - 4) Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper **OR** 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick Polysurlyn, **as directed**.
    - 5) Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
      - a) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
      - b) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
      - c) Tee covers.
      - d) Flange and union covers.
      - e) End caps.
      - f) Beveled collars.
      - g) Valve covers.
      - h) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
  - b. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M.
    - 1) Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing **OR** Factory cut and rolled to size, **as directed**.
    - 2) Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
    - 3) Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper **OR** 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper **OR** 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick Polysurlyn, **as directed**.
    - 4) Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper **OR** 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick Polysurlyn, **as directed**.
    - 5) Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
      - a) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
      - b) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
      - c) Tee covers.
      - d) Flange and union covers.
      - e) End caps.
      - f) Beveled collars.
      - g) Valve covers.
      - h) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

#### K. Tapes



1. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
  - a. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
  - b. Thickness: 11.5 mils (0.29 mm).
  - c. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
  - d. Elongation: 2 percent.
  - e. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
  - f. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
2. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
  - a. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
  - b. Thickness: 6.5 mils (0.16 mm).
  - c. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
  - d. Elongation: 2 percent.
  - e. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
  - f. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
3. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive. Suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
  - a. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
  - b. Thickness: 6 mils (0.15 mm).
  - c. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch (0.7 N/mm) in width.
  - d. Elongation: 500 percent.
  - e. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch (3.3 N/mm) in width.
4. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
  - a. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
  - b. Thickness: 3.7 mils (0.093 mm).
  - c. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch (1.1 N/mm) in width.
  - d. Elongation: 5 percent.
  - e. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch (6.2 N/mm) in width.
5. PVDC Tape for Indoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.
  - a. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
  - b. Film Thickness: 4 mils (0.10 mm).
  - c. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils (0.04 mm).
  - d. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
  - e. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch (10.1 N/mm) in width.
6. PVDC Tape for Outdoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.
  - a. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
  - b. Film Thickness: 6 mils (0.15 mm).
  - c. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils (0.04 mm).
  - d. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
  - e. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch (10.1 N/mm) in width.

L. Securements

1. Bands:
  - a. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**; 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, wide with wing seal **OR** closed seal, **as directed**.
  - b. Aluminum: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick, 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, wide with wing seal **OR** closed seal, **as directed**.
  - c. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.
2. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
  - a. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in



position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:

- 1) Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
  - 2) Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low carbon steel **OR** Aluminum **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
  - 3) Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
- b. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
- 1) Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
  - 2) Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low carbon steel **OR** Aluminum **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
  - 3) Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.
- c. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel **OR** aluminum **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
- 1) Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
3. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) wide, stainless steel or Monel.
  4. Wire: 0.080-inch (2.0-mm) nickel-copper alloy **OR** 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, stainless steel **OR** 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, galvanized steel, **as directed**.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Preparation

1. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.  
**OR**  
Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
  - a. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F (60 and 149 deg C). Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
  - b. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F (0 and 149 deg C) with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
2. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
3. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

#### B. General Installation Requirements

1. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment and piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.





2. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of equipment and pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
3. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
4. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
5. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
6. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
7. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
8. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
9. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
10. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - a. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - b. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - c. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  - d. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
11. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
12. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - a. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  - b. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
  - c. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
    - 1) For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  - d. Cover joints and seams with tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor seal.
  - e. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
13. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
14. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
15. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches (100 mm) beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
16. For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
  - a. Vibration-control devices.
  - b. Testing agency labels and stamps.
  - c. Nameplates and data plates.
  - d. Manholes.
  - e. Handholes.
  - f. Cleanouts.

### C. Penetrations



1. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
    - a. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
    - b. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
    - c. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm) below top of roof flashing.
    - d. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
  2. Insulation Installation at Below-Grade Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
  3. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
    - a. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
    - b. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
    - c. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm).
    - d. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
  4. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
  5. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
    - a. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
  6. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
    - a. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
    - b. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
- D. Equipment, Tank, And Vessel Insulation Installation
1. Secure insulation with adhesive and anchor pins and speed washers.
    - a. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 **OR** 50, **as directed**, percent coverage of tank and vessel surfaces.
    - b. Groove and score insulation materials to fit as closely as possible to equipment, including contours. Bevel insulation edges for cylindrical surfaces for tight joints. Stagger end joints.
    - c. Protect exposed corners with secured corner angles.
    - d. Install adhesively attached or self-sticking insulation hangers and speed washers on sides of tanks and vessels as follows:
      - 1) Do not weld anchor pins to ASME-labeled pressure vessels.
      - 2) Select insulation hangers and adhesive that are compatible with service temperature and with substrate.
      - 3) On tanks and vessels, maximum anchor-pin spacing is 3 inches (75 mm) from insulation end joints, and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. in both directions.
      - 4) Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
      - 5) Cut and miter insulation segments to fit curved sides and domed heads of tanks and vessels.
      - 6) Impale insulation over anchor pins and attach speed washers.
      - 7) Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.



- e. Secure each layer of insulation with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation materials.
  - f. Where insulation hangers on equipment and vessels are not permitted or practical and where insulation support rings are not provided, install a girdle network for securing insulation. Stretch prestressed aircraft cable around the diameter of vessel and make taut with clamps, turnbuckles, or breather springs. Place one circumferential girdle around equipment approximately 6 inches (150 mm) from each end. Install wire or cable between two circumferential girdles 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. Install a wire ring around each end and around outer periphery of center openings, and stretch prestressed aircraft cable radially from the wire ring to nearest circumferential girdle. Install additional circumferential girdles along the body of equipment or tank at a minimum spacing of 48 inches (1200 mm) o.c. Use this network for securing insulation with tie wire or bands.
  - g. Stagger joints between insulation layers at least 3 inches (75 mm).
  - h. Install insulation in removable segments on equipment access doors, manholes, handholes, and other elements that require frequent removal for service and inspection.
  - i. Bevel and seal insulation ends around manholes, handholes, ASME stamps, and nameplates.
  - j. For equipment with surface temperatures below ambient, apply mastic to open ends, joints, seams, breaks, and punctures in insulation.
2. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Install insulation over entire surface of tanks and vessels.
    - a. Apply 100 percent coverage of adhesive to surface with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
    - b. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints.

#### E. General Pipe Insulation Installation

1. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
2. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
  - a. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity, unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
  - c. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
  - d. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
  - e. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
  - f. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
  - g. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below ambient services and a breather mastic for



above ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.

- h. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
  - i. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "UNION." Match size and color of pipe labels.
3. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes, vessels, and equipment. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
  4. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
    - a. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
    - b. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
    - c. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
    - d. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm) over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
    - e. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

#### F. Calcium Silicate Insulation Installation

1. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
  - a. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
  - b. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches (75 mm). Secure inner layer with wire spaced at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals.
  - c. Apply a skim coat of mineral-fiber, hydraulic-setting cement to insulation surface. When cement is dry, apply flood coat of lagging adhesive and press on one layer of glass cloth or tape. Overlap edges at least 1 inch (25 mm). Apply finish coat of lagging adhesive over glass cloth or tape. Thin finish coat to achieve smooth, uniform finish.
2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
  - a. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  - b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
  - c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as pipe insulation.
  - d. Finish flange insulation same as pipe insulation.
3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
  - a. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.



- b. When preformed insulation sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of calcium silicate insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
  - c. Finish fittings insulation same as pipe insulation.
4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
- a. Install mitered segments of calcium silicate insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  - b. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
  - c. Finish valve and specialty insulation same as pipe insulation.
- G. Cellular-Glass Insulation Installation
1. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
- a. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
  - b. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and applicable insulation joint sealant.
  - c. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
  - d. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
- a. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  - b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
  - c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
  - d. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.
3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
- a. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
  - b. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
- a. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
  - b. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  - c. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
- H. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation Installation
1. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
- a. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  - b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
  - c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
  - d. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
- a. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
  - b. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.



4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
  - a. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
  - b. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  - c. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
  - d. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
  
- I. Mineral-Fiber Insulation Installation
  1. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
    - a. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
    - b. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and applicable insulation joint sealant.
    - c. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
    - d. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
  2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
    - a. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
    - b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
    - c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
    - d. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.
  3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
    - a. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
    - b. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
  4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
    - a. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
    - b. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
    - c. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
    - d. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
  
- J. Phenolic Insulation Installation
  1. General Installation Requirements:
    - a. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
    - b. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches (75 mm). Secure inner layer with 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) wire spaced at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals.
  2. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
    - a. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.



- b. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and applicable insulation joint sealant.
      - c. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
      - d. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor retarders on below ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
    3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
      - a. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
      - b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
      - c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as pipe insulation.
    4. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
      - a. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation.
    5. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
      - a. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation.
      - b. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
      - c. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
- K. Polyisocyanurate Insulation Installation
  1. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
    - a. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with tape or bands and tighten without deforming insulation materials. Orient longitudinal joints between half sections in 3 and 9 o'clock positions on the pipe.
    - b. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor barriers, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive or tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic.
    - c. All insulation shall be tightly butted and free of voids and gaps at all joints. Vapor barrier must be continuous. Before installing jacket material, install vapor-barrier system.
  2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
    - a. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
    - b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, same thickness of adjacent pipe insulation, not to exceed 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) thickness.
    - c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyisocyanurate block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
  3. Insulation Installation on Fittings and Elbows:
    - a. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation.
  4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
    - a. Install preformed sections of polyisocyanurate insulation to valve body.
    - b. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
    - c. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
- L. Polyolefin Insulation Installation
  1. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
    - a. Seal split-tube longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
  2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
    - a. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.



- b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
  - c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyolefin sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
  - d. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
    - a. Install mitered sections of polyolefin pipe insulation.
    - b. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
  4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
    - a. Install cut sections of polyolefin pipe and sheet insulation to valve body.
    - b. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
    - c. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
    - d. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

#### M. Polystyrene Insulation Installation

1. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
  - a. Secure each layer of insulation with tape or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials. Orient longitudinal joints between half sections in 3 and 9 o'clock positions on the pipe.
  - b. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor barriers, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive or tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - c. All insulation shall be tightly butted and free of voids and gaps at all joints. Vapor barrier must be continuous. Before installing jacket material, install vapor-barrier system.
2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
  - a. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  - b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, same thickness of adjacent pipe insulation, not to exceed 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) thickness.
  - c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polystyrene block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
  - a. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation.
4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
  - a. Install preformed section of polystyrene insulation to valve body.
  - b. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  - c. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

#### N. Field-Applied Jacket Installation

1. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
  - a. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at seams and joints.
  - b. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick coats of lagging adhesive.
  - c. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
2. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
  - a. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
  - b. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.





- c. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
  - d. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide joint strips at end joints.
  - e. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch (25-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
    - a. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
  4. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. and at end joints.
  5. Where PVDC jackets are indicated, install as follows:
    - a. Apply three separate wraps of filament tape per insulation section to secure pipe insulation to pipe prior to installation of PVDC jacket.
    - b. Wrap factory-presizes jackets around individual pipe insulation sections with one end overlapping the previously installed sheet. Install presized jacket with an approximate overlap at butt joint of 2 inches (50 mm) over the previous section. Adhere lap seal using adhesive or SSL, and then apply 1-1/4 circumferences of appropriate PVDC tape around overlapped butt joint.
    - c. Continuous jacket can be spiral wrapped around a length of pipe insulation. Apply adhesive or PVDC tape at overlapped spiral edge. When electing to use adhesives, refer to manufacturer's written instructions for application of adhesives along this spiral edge to maintain a permanent bond.
    - d. Jacket can be wrapped in cigarette fashion along length of roll for insulation systems with an outer circumference of 33-1/2 inches (850 mm) or less. The 33-1/2-inch- (850-mm-) circumference limit allows for 2-inch- (50-mm-) overlap seal. Using the length of roll allows for longer sections of jacket to be installed at one time. Use adhesive on the lap seal. Visually inspect lap seal for "fishmouthing," and use PVDC tape along lap seal to secure joint.
    - e. Repair holes or tears in PVDC jacket by placing PVDC tape over the hole or tear and wrapping a minimum of 1-1/4 circumferences to avoid damage to tape edges.
- O. Finishes
1. Equipment and Pipe Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Division 07.
    - a. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
      - 1) Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
  2. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
  3. Color: Final color as selected by the Owner. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
  4. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.
- P. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections.
  2. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. Inspect field-insulated equipment, randomly selected by the Owner, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each type of equipment defined in the "Equipment Insulation Schedule" Article. For large equipment, remove only a portion adequate to determine compliance.
    - b. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by the Owner, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of



inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

3. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

Q. Equipment Insulation Schedule

1. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a type of equipment, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
2. Insulate indoor and outdoor equipment in paragraphs below that is not factory insulated.
3. Fire-suppression water storage tank insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
  - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch (25 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
  - d. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - e. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - f. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - g. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

R. Piping Insulation Schedule, General

1. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
2. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
  - a. Indoor fire-suppression piping.
  - b. Underground piping.

S. Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule

1. Indoor Engine Coolant Piping for Remote Radiator of Engine-Driven Fire Pump:
  - a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - 1) Calcium Silicate: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
    - 2) Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
    - 3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
2. Indoor Engine Exhaust Piping and Silencer, All Pipe Sizes: Calcium silicate, 4 inches (100 mm) thick.

T. Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule

1. Outdoor Engine Coolant Piping for Remote Radiator of Engine-Driven Fire Pump:
  - a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - 1) Calcium Silicate: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
    - 2) Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
    - 3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
2. Outdoor Engine Exhaust Piping and Silencer, All Pipe Sizes: Calcium silicate, 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
3. Outdoor Fire-Suppression Piping Filled with Water:
  - a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - 1) Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
    - 2) Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
    - 3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
    - 4) Phenolic: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
    - 5) Polyisocyanurate: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
    - 6) Polyolefin: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
    - 7) Polystyrene: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.



U. Indoor, Field-Applied Jacket Schedule

1. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
2. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
3. Piping, Concealed:
  - a. None.
  - b. Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  - c. Painted Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  - d. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
4. Piping, Exposed:
  - a. None.
  - b. PVC **OR** PVC, Color-Coded by System, **as directed**: 20 mils (0.5 mm) **OR** 30 mils (0.8 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  - c. Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  - d. Painted Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  - e. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.

V. Outdoor, Field-Applied Jacket Schedule

1. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
2. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
3. Equipment, Concealed:
  - a. None.
  - b. PVC **OR** PVC, Color-Coded by System, **as directed**: 20 mils (0.5 mm) **OR** 30 mils (0.8 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  - c. Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  - d. Painted Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  - e. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
4. Equipment, Exposed, up to 48 Inches (1200 mm) in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches (1800 mm):
  - a. Aluminum **OR** Painted Aluminum, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, with Z-Shaped Locking Seam, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  - b. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, with Z-Shaped Locking Seam, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.



5. Equipment, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches (1200 mm) in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches (1800 mm):
  - a. Aluminum **OR** Painted Aluminum, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, with 1-1/4-Inch- (32-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 2-1/2-Inch- (65-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 4-by-1-Inch (100-by-25-mm) Box Ribs, **as directed**: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  - b. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, with 1-1/4-Inch- (32-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 2-1/2-Inch- (65-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 4-by-1-Inch (100-by-25-mm) Box Ribs, **as directed**: 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
6. Outdoor Exposed Piping:
  - a. PVC: 20 mils (0.5 mm) **OR** 30 mils (0.8 mm) **OR** 40 mils (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  - b. Aluminum **OR** Painted Aluminum, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, with Z-Shaped Locking Seam, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  - c. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed** with Z-Shaped Locking Seam, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.

END OF SECTION 22 07 19 00

**SECTION 22 07 19 00a - PLUMBING INSULATION****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for plumbing insulation. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Summary**

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Insulation Materials:
    - 1) Calcium silicate.
    - 2) Cellular glass.
    - 3) Flexible elastomeric.
    - 4) Mineral fiber.
    - 5) Phenolic.
    - 6) Polyisocyanurate.
    - 7) Polyolefin.
    - 8) Polystyrene.
  - b. Insulating cements.
  - c. Adhesives.
  - d. Mastics.
  - e. Lagging adhesives.
  - f. Sealants.
  - g. Factory-applied jackets.
  - h. Field-applied fabric-reinforcing mesh.
  - i. Field-applied cloths.
  - j. Field-applied jackets.
  - k. Tapes.
  - l. Securements.
  - m. Corner angles.

**C. Submittals**

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings:
  - a. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
  - b. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
  - c. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
  - d. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
  - e. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
  - f. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
  - g. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
  - h. Detail field application for each equipment type.
4. Field quality-control reports.

**D. Quality Assurance**



1. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Insulation and related materials shall have fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
  - a. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
  - b. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Insulation Materials

1. Comply with requirements in Part 1.3 schedule articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
2. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
3. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
4. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
5. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
6. Calcium Silicate:
  - a. Preformed Pipe Sections: Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
  - b. Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
  - c. Prefabricated Fitting Covers: Comply with ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585 for dimensions used in preforming insulation to cover valves, elbows, tees, and flanges.
7. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - a. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
  - b. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
  - c. Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV.
  - d. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 1.
  - e. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied ASJ **OR** ASJ-SSL, **as directed**: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.
  - f. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
8. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.
9. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
10. High-Temperature, Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type V, without factory-applied jacket.
11. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For equipment applications, provide insulation



- without factory-applied jacket **OR** with factory-applied ASJ **OR** with factory-applied FSK jacket, **as directed**. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
12. High-Temperature, Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type III, without factory-applied jacket.
  13. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
    - a. Type I, 850 deg F (454 deg C) Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, without factory-applied jacket **OR** with factory-applied ASJ **OR** with factory-applied ASJ-SSL, **as directed**. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  14. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ **OR** FSK jacket, **as directed**, complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. (40 kg/cu. m) or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F (55 deg C) is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.042 W/m x K) or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  15. Phenolic:
    - a. Preformed pipe insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type III, Grade 1.
    - b. Block insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type II, Grade 1.
    - c. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
    - d. Factory-Applied Jacket: Requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
      - 1) Preformed Pipe Insulation: None **OR** ASJ, **as directed**.
      - 2) Board for Equipment Applications: None **OR** ASJ, **as directed**.
  16. Polyisocyanurate: Unfaced, preformed, rigid cellular polyisocyanurate material intended for use as thermal insulation.
    - a. Comply with ASTM C 591, Type I or Type IV, except thermal conductivity (k-value) shall not exceed 0.19 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.027 W/m x K) at 75 deg F (24 deg C) after 180 days of aging.
    - b. Flame-spread index shall be 25 or less and smoke-developed index shall be 50 or less for thickness up to 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) as tested by ASTM E 84.
    - c. Fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
    - d. Factory-Applied Jacket: Requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
      - 1) Pipe Applications: None **OR** ASJ **OR** ASJ-SSL **OR** PVDC **OR** PVDC-SSL, **as directed**.
      - 2) Equipment Applications: None **OR** ASJ **OR** ASJ-SSL **OR** PVDC **OR** PVDC-SSL, **as directed**.
  17. Polyolefin: Unicellular, polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C 534 or ASTM C 1427, Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials and Type II, Grade 1 for sheet materials.
  18. Polystyrene: Rigid, extruded cellular polystyrene intended for use as thermal insulation. Comply with ASTM C 578, Type IV or Type XIII, except thermal conductivity (k-value) shall not exceed 0.26 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.038 W/m x K) after 180 days of aging. Fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.

#### B. Insulating Cements

1. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.
2. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 196.
3. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449/C 449M.

#### C. Adhesives

1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Calcium Silicate Adhesive: Fibrous, sodium-silicate-based adhesive with a service temperature range of 50 to 800 deg F (10 to 427 deg C).



- a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Cellular-Glass, Phenolic, Polyisocyanurate, and Polystyrene Adhesive: Solvent-based resin adhesive, with a service temperature range of minus 75 to plus 300 deg F (minus 59 to plus 149 deg C).
  - a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
4. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
  - a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
5. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
  - a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
6. Polystyrene Adhesive: Solvent- or water-based, synthetic resin adhesive with a service temperature range of minus 20 to plus 140 deg F (29 to plus 60 deg C).
7. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
  - a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
8. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
  - a. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

#### D. Mastics

1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-C-19565C, Type II.
  - a. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of <Insert value> g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on below ambient services.
  - a. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96, Procedure B, 0.013 perm (0.009 metric perm) at 43-mil (1.09-mm) dry film thickness.
  - b. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
  - c. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 59 percent by volume and 71 percent by weight.
  - d. Color: White.
3. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
  - a. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.03 metric perm) at 35-mil (0.9-mm) dry film thickness.
  - b. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
  - c. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
  - d. Color: White.
4. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below ambient services.
  - a. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.033 metric perm) at 30-mil (0.8-mm) dry film thickness.
  - b. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 104 deg C).
  - c. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
  - d. Color: White.
5. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.
  - a. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 3 perms (2 metric perms) at 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) dry film thickness.
  - b. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 93 deg C).
  - c. Solids Content: 63 percent by volume and 73 percent by weight.
  - d. Color: White.

#### E. Lagging Adhesives





1. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A, and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  - a. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of <Insert value> g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - b. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over equipment and pipe insulation.
  - c. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 82 deg C).
  - d. Color: White.
  
- F. Sealants
  1. Joint Sealants:
    - a. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
    - b. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
    - c. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F (Minus 73 to plus 149 deg C).
    - d. Color: White or gray.
    - e. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  2. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
    - a. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
    - b. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
    - c. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
    - d. Color: Aluminum.
    - e. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  3. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
    - a. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
    - b. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
    - c. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
    - d. Color: White.
    - e. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  
- G. Factory-Applied Jackets
  1. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
    - a. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
    - b. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
    - c. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
    - d. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil- (0.10-mm-) thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perms (0.013 metric perms) when tested according to ASTM E 96 and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
    - e. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil- (0.15-mm-) thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perms (0.007 metric perms) when tested according to ASTM E 96 and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 25 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
    - f. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.
  
- H. Field-Applied Fabric-Reinforcing Mesh
  1. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric for Pipe Insulation: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. (68 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. inch (4 strands by 4 strands/sq. mm) for covering pipe and pipe fittings.



2. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric for Equipment Insulation: Approximately 6 oz./sq. yd. (203 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 5 strands by 5 strands/sq. inch (2 strands by 2 strands/sq. mm) for covering equipment.
  3. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. (34 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. inch (4 strands by 4 strands/sq. mm), in a Leno weave, for equipment and pipe.
- I. Field-Applied Cloths
1. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd. (271 g/sq. m).
- J. Field-Applied Jackets
1. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
    - a. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
    - b. Color: White **OR** Color-code jackets based on system. Color as selected by the Owner, **as directed**.
    - c. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
      - 1) Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
    - d. Factory-fabricated tank heads and tank side panels.
  3. Metal Jacket:
    - a. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105 or 5005, Temper H-14.
      - 1) Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing **OR** Factory cut and rolled to size, **as directed**.
      - 2) Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
      - 3) Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper **OR** 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper **OR** 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick Polysurlyn, **as directed**.
      - 4) Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper **OR** 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick Polysurlyn, **as directed**.
      - 5) Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
        - a) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
        - b) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
        - c) Tee covers.
        - d) Flange and union covers.
        - e) End caps.
        - f) Beveled collars.
        - g) Valve covers.
        - h) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
    - b. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M.
      - 1) Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing **OR** Factory cut and rolled to size, **as directed**.
      - 2) Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
      - 3) Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper **OR** 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper **OR** 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick Polysurlyn, **as directed**.
      - 4) Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper **OR** 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick Polysurlyn, **as directed**.
      - 5) Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:



- a) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
  - b) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
  - c) Tee covers.
  - d) Flange and union covers.
  - e) End caps.
  - f) Beveled collars.
  - g) Valve covers.
  - h) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
4. Underground Direct-Buried Jacket: 125-mil- (3.2-mm-) thick vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin reinforced with a woven-glass fiber or polyester scrim and laminated aluminum foil.

#### K. Tapes

1. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
  - a. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
  - b. Thickness: 11.5 mils (0.29 mm).
  - c. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
  - d. Elongation: 2 percent.
  - e. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
  - f. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
2. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
  - a. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
  - b. Thickness: 6.5 mils (0.16 mm).
  - c. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
  - d. Elongation: 2 percent.
  - e. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
  - f. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
3. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive. Suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
  - a. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
  - b. Thickness: 6 mils (0.15 mm).
  - c. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch (0.7 N/mm) in width.
  - d. Elongation: 500 percent.
  - e. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch (3.3 N/mm) in width.
4. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
  - a. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
  - b. Thickness: 3.7 mils (0.093 mm).
  - c. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch (1.1 N/mm) in width.
  - d. Elongation: 5 percent.
  - e. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch (6.2 N/mm) in width.
5. PVDC Tape: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.
  - a. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
  - b. Film Thickness: 4 mils (0.10 mm) **OR** 6 mils (0.15 mm), **as directed**.
  - c. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils (0.04 mm).
  - d. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
  - e. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch (10.1 N/mm) in width.

#### L. Securements

1. Bands:
  - a. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**; 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, wide with wing seal **OR** closed seal, **as directed**.



- b. Aluminum: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick, 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm), **as directed**, wide with wing seal **OR** closed seal, **as directed**.
  - c. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.
2. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
- a. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) **OR** 0.135-inch- (3.5-mm-), **as directed**, diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
  - b. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) **OR** 0.135-inch- (3.5-mm-), **as directed**, diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) galvanized carbon-steel washer.
  - c. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
    - 1) Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
    - 2) Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low carbon steel **OR** Aluminum **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
    - 3) Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
  - d. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
    - 1) Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
    - 2) Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches (63 mm).
    - 3) Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
  - e. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
    - 1) Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
    - 2) Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low carbon steel **OR** Aluminum **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
    - 3) Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.
  - f. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel **OR** aluminum **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
    - 1) Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
  - g. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.



3. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) wide, stainless steel or Monel.
4. Wire: 0.080-inch (2.0-mm) nickel-copper alloy **OR** 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, stainless steel **OR** 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, galvanized steel, **as directed**.

M. Corner Angles

1. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils (0.8 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), PVC according to ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.
2. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), aluminum according to ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105 or 5005; Temper H-14.
3. Stainless-Steel Corner Angles: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), stainless steel according to ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation

1. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.  
**OR**  
Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
  - a. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F (60 and 149 deg C). Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
  - b. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F (0 and 149 deg C) with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
2. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
3. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

B. General Installation Requirements

1. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment and piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
2. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of equipment and pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
3. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
4. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
5. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
6. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
7. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
8. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
9. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
10. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - a. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.



- b. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
- c. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- d. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- 11. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- 12. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - a. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  - b. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
  - c. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
    - 1) For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  - d. Cover joints and seams with tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor seal.
  - e. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- 13. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- 14. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- 15. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches (100 mm) beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- 16. For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
  - a. Vibration-control devices.
  - b. Testing agency labels and stamps.
  - c. Nameplates and data plates.
  - d. Manholes.
  - e. Handholes.
  - f. Cleanouts.

### C. Penetrations

- 1. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
  - a. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  - b. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  - c. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm) below top of roof flashing.
  - d. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- 2. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- 3. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
  - a. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.



- b. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  - c. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm).
  - d. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
  4. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
  5. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
    - a. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
  6. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
    - a. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
    - b. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
- D. Equipment, Tank, And Vessel Insulation Installation
1. Mineral Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Secure insulation with adhesive and anchor pins and speed washers.
    - a. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 **OR** 50, **as directed**, percent coverage of tank and vessel surfaces.
    - b. Groove and score insulation materials to fit as closely as possible to equipment, including contours. Bevel insulation edges for cylindrical surfaces for tight joints. Stagger end joints.
    - c. Protect exposed corners with secured corner angles.
    - d. Install adhesively attached or self-sticking insulation hangers and speed washers on sides of tanks and vessels as follows:
      - 1) Do not weld anchor pins to ASME-labeled pressure vessels.
      - 2) Select insulation hangers and adhesive that are compatible with service temperature and with substrate.
      - 3) On tanks and vessels, maximum anchor-pin spacing is 3 inches (75 mm) from insulation end joints, and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. in both directions.
      - 4) Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
      - 5) Cut and miter insulation segments to fit curved sides and domed heads of tanks and vessels.
      - 6) Impale insulation over anchor pins and attach speed washers.
      - 7) Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
    - e. Secure each layer of insulation with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation materials.
    - f. Where insulation hangers on equipment and vessels are not permitted or practical and where insulation support rings are not provided, install a girdle network for securing insulation. Stretch prestressed aircraft cable around the diameter of vessel and make taut with clamps, turnbuckles, or breather springs. Place one circumferential girdle around equipment approximately 6 inches (150 mm) from each end. Install wire or cable between two circumferential girdles 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. Install a wire ring around each end and around outer periphery of center openings, and stretch prestressed aircraft cable radially from the wire ring to nearest circumferential girdle. Install additional circumferential girdles along the body of equipment or tank at a minimum spacing of 48 inches (1200 mm) o.c. Use this network for securing insulation with tie wire or bands.
    - g. Stagger joints between insulation layers at least 3 inches (75 mm).
    - h. Install insulation in removable segments on equipment access doors, manholes, handholes, and other elements that require frequent removal for service and inspection.



- i. Bevel and seal insulation ends around manholes, handholes, ASME stamps, and nameplates.
- j. For equipment with surface temperatures below ambient, apply mastic to open ends, joints, seams, breaks, and punctures in insulation.
- 2. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Install insulation over entire surface of tanks and vessels.
  - a. Apply 100 percent coverage of adhesive to surface with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
  - b. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints.
- 3. Insulation Installation on Pumps:
  - a. Fabricate metal boxes lined with insulation. Fit boxes around pumps and coincide box joints with splits in pump casings. Fabricate joints with outward bolted flanges. Bolt flanges on 6-inch (150-mm) centers, starting at corners. Install 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) diameter fasteners with wing nuts. Alternatively, secure the box sections together using a latching mechanism.
  - b. Fabricate boxes from galvanized steel **OR** aluminum **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, at least 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) **OR** 0.050 inch (1.3 mm) **OR** 0.060 inch (1.6 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  - c. For below ambient services, install a vapor barrier at seams, joints, and penetrations. Seal between flanges with replaceable gasket material to form a vapor barrier.

#### E. General Pipe Insulation Installation

- 1. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- 2. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
  - a. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity, unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
  - c. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
  - d. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
  - e. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
  - f. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
  - g. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below ambient services and a breather mastic for above ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.





- h. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
- i. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "UNION." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- 3. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes, vessels, and equipment. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- 4. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
  - a. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
  - b. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
  - c. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
  - d. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm) over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
  - e. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

F. Calcium Silicate Insulation Installation

- 1. Insulation Installation on Domestic Water Boiler Breechings:
  - a. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation material.
  - b. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches (75 mm). Secure inner layer with wire spaced at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals.
  - c. On exposed applications without metal jacket, finish insulation surface with a skim coat of mineral-fiber, hydraulic-setting cement. When cement is dry, apply flood coat of lagging adhesive and press on one layer of glass cloth. Overlap edges at least 1 inch (25 mm). Apply finish coat of lagging adhesive over glass cloth. Thin finish coat to achieve smooth, uniform finish.
- 2. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
  - a. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
  - b. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches (75 mm). Secure inner layer with wire spaced at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals.
  - c. Apply a skim coat of mineral-fiber, hydraulic-setting cement to insulation surface. When cement is dry, apply flood coat of lagging adhesive and press on one layer of glass cloth or tape. Overlap edges at least 1 inch (25 mm). Apply finish coat of lagging adhesive over glass cloth or tape. Thin finish coat to achieve smooth, uniform finish.
- 3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
  - a. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  - b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.



- c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as pipe insulation.
    - d. Finish flange insulation same as pipe insulation.
  - 4. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
    - a. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - b. When preformed insulation sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of calcium silicate insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
    - c. Finish fittings insulation same as pipe insulation.
  - 5. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
    - a. Install mitered segments of calcium silicate insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
    - b. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
    - c. Finish valve and specialty insulation same as pipe insulation.
- G. Cellular-Glass Insulation Installation
  - 1. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
    - a. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
    - b. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
    - c. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
    - d. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
  - 2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
    - a. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
    - b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
    - c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
    - d. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.
  - 3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
    - a. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - b. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
  - 4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
    - a. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
    - b. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
    - c. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
- H. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation Installation
  - 1. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
  - 2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
    - a. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
    - b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.



- c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
      - d. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
    3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
      - a. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
      - b. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
    4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
      - a. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
      - b. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
      - c. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
      - d. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- I. Mineral-Fiber Insulation Installation
  1. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
    - a. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
    - b. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
    - c. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
    - d. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
  2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
    - a. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
    - b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
    - c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
    - d. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.
  3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
    - a. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
    - b. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
  4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
    - a. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
    - b. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
    - c. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
    - d. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
- J. Phenolic Insulation Installation
  1. General Installation Requirements:



- a. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
  - b. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches (75 mm). Secure inner layer with 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) wire spaced at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals.
2. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
    - a. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
    - b. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
    - c. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
    - d. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor retarders on below ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
  3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
    - a. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
    - b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
    - c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as pipe insulation.
  4. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
    - a. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  5. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
    - a. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - b. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
    - c. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
- K. Polyisocyanurate Insulation Installation
1. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
    - a. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with tape or bands and tighten without deforming insulation materials. Orient longitudinal joints between half sections in 3 and 9 o'clock positions on the pipe.
    - b. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor barriers, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive or tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic.
    - c. All insulation shall be tightly butted and free of voids and gaps at all joints. Vapor barrier must be continuous. Before installing jacket material, install vapor-barrier system.
  2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
    - a. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
    - b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, same thickness of adjacent pipe insulation, not to exceed 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) thickness.
    - c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyisocyanurate block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
  3. Insulation Installation on Fittings and Elbows:
    - a. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
    - a. Install preformed sections of polyisocyanurate insulation to valve body.



- b. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  - c. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
- L. Polyolefin Insulation Installation
- 1. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
    - a. Seal split-tube longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
  - 2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
    - a. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
    - b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
    - c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyolefin sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
    - d. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
  - 3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
    - a. Install mitered sections of polyolefin pipe insulation.
    - b. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
  - 4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
    - a. Install cut sections of polyolefin pipe and sheet insulation to valve body.
    - b. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
    - c. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
    - d. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- M. Polystyrene Insulation Installation
- 1. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
    - a. Secure each layer of insulation with tape or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials. Orient longitudinal joints between half sections in 3 and 9 o'clock positions on the pipe.
    - b. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor barriers, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive or tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic.
    - c. All insulation shall be tightly butted and free of voids and gaps at all joints. Vapor barrier must be continuous. Before installing jacket material, install vapor-barrier system.
  - 2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
    - a. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
    - b. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, same thickness of adjacent pipe insulation, not to exceed 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) thickness.
    - c. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polystyrene block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
  - 3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
    - a. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
    - a. Install preformed section of polystyrene insulation to valve body.
    - b. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
    - c. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

**N. Field-Applied Jacket Installation**

1. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
  - a. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at seams and joints.
  - b. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick coats of lagging adhesive.
  - c. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
2. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
  - a. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
  - b. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
  - c. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
  - d. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide joint strips at end joints.
  - e. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch (25-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
  - a. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
4. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. and at end joints.
5. Where PVDC jackets are indicated, install as follows:
  - a. Apply three separate wraps of filament tape per insulation section to secure pipe insulation to pipe prior to installation of PVDC jacket.
  - b. Wrap factory-presizes jackets around individual pipe insulation sections with one end overlapping the previously installed sheet. Install presized jacket with an approximate overlap at butt joint of 2 inches (50 mm) over the previous section. Adhere lap seal using adhesive or SSL, and then apply 1-1/4 circumferences of appropriate PVDC tape around overlapped butt joint.
  - c. Continuous jacket can be spiral wrapped around a length of pipe insulation. Apply adhesive or PVDC tape at overlapped spiral edge. When electing to use adhesives, refer to manufacturer's written instructions for application of adhesives along this spiral edge to maintain a permanent bond.
  - d. Jacket can be wrapped in cigarette fashion along length of roll for insulation systems with an outer circumference of 33-1/2 inches (850 mm) or less. The 33-1/2-inch- (850-mm-) circumference limit allows for 2-inch- (50-mm-) overlap seal. Using the length of roll allows for longer sections of jacket to be installed at one time. Use adhesive on the lap seal. Visually inspect lap seal for "fishmouthing," and use PVDC tape along lap seal to secure joint.
  - e. Repair holes or tears in PVDC jacket by placing PVDC tape over the hole or tear and wrapping a minimum of 1-1/4 circumferences to avoid damage to tape edges.

**O. Finishes**

1. Equipment and Pipe Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Division 07.
  - a. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
    - 1) Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
2. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
3. Color: Final color as selected by the Owner. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
4. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.



P. Field Quality Control

1. Perform tests and inspections.
2. Tests and Inspections:
  - a. Inspect field-insulated equipment, randomly selected by the Owner, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each type of equipment defined in the "Equipment Insulation Schedule" Article. For large equipment, remove only a portion adequate to determine compliance.
  - b. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by the Owner, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
3. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

Q. Domestic Water Boiler Breeching Insulation Schedule

1. Round, exposed breeching and connector insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Calcium Silicate: 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
  - b. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
  - c. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
2. Round, concealed breeching and connector insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Calcium Silicate: 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
  - b. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
  - c. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
3. Rectangular, exposed breeching and connector insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Calcium Silicate: 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
  - b. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
  - c. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
4. Rectangular, concealed breeching and connector insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Calcium Silicate: 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
  - b. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
  - c. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.

R. Equipment Insulation Schedule

1. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a type of equipment, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
2. Insulate indoor and outdoor equipment in paragraphs below that is not factory insulated.
3. Heat-exchanger (water-to-water for domestic water heating service) insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Calcium Silicate: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
  - b. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
  - c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
  - d. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
4. Steam-to-hot-water converter insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Calcium Silicate: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.



- b. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
  - c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
  - d. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
5. Domestic water pump insulation shall be one of the following:
- a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
  - b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch (25 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
  - c. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - d. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
6. Domestic chilled-water (potable) pump insulation shall be one of the following:
- a. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
  - b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
  - c. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - d. Polyisocyanurate: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
7. Domestic hot-water pump insulation shall be one of the following:
- a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
  - b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch (25 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
  - c. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - d. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
8. Domestic water, domestic chilled-water (potable), and domestic hot-water hydropneumatic tank insulation shall be one of the following:
- a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
  - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch (25 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
  - d. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - e. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - f. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - g. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
9. Domestic hot-water storage tank insulation shall be one of the following, of thickness to provide an R-value of 12.5:
- a. Cellular glass.
  - b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
  - c. Mineral-fiber pipe and tank.
  - d. Phenolic.
10. Domestic water storage tank insulation shall be one of the following:
- a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
  - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch (25 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
  - d. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - e. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - f. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - g. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
11. Domestic chilled-water (potable) storage tank insulation shall be one of the following:
- a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
  - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - c. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch (25 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
  - d. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - e. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.





- f. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - g. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
12. Piping system filter-housing insulation shall be one of the following:
- a. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
  - b. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m) **OR** 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) **OR** 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, nominal density.
  - c. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
- S. Piping Insulation Schedule, General
- 1. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
  - 2. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
    - a. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
    - b. Underground piping.
    - c. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.
- T. Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule
- 1. Domestic Cold Water:
    - a. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      - 1) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
      - 2) Flexible Elastomeric: 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      - 3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      - 4) Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      - 5) Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      - 6) Polyolefin: 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick.
    - b. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      - 1) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
      - 2) Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      - 3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      - 4) Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      - 5) Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      - 6) Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - 2. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:
    - a. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      - 1) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
      - 2) Flexible Elastomeric: 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      - 3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      - 4) Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      - 5) Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      - 6) Polyolefin: 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick.
    - b. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      - 1) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
      - 2) Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      - 3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      - 4) Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      - 5) Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      - 6) Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - 3. Domestic Chilled Water (Potable):
    - a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      - 1) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
      - 2) Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.



- 3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - 4) Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - 5) Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - 6) Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
4. Stormwater and Overflow:
    - a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      - 1) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
      - 2) Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      - 3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      - 4) Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      - 5) Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      - 6) Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  5. Roof Drain and Overflow Drain Bodies:
    - a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      - 1) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
      - 2) Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      - 3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      - 4) Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      - 5) Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      - 6) Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  6. Exposed Sanitary Drains, Domestic Water, Domestic Hot Water, and Stops for Plumbing Fixtures for People with Disabilities:
    - a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      - 1) Flexible Elastomeric: 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      - 2) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      - 3) Polyolefin: 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  7. Sanitary Waste Piping Where Heat Tracing Is Installed:
    - a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      - 1) Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      - 2) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
      - 3) Phenolic: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
      - 4) Polyisocyanurate: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
  8. Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F (16 Deg C):
    - a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      - 1) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
      - 2) Flexible Elastomeric: 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      - 3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      - 4) Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      - 5) Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      - 6) Polyolefin: 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  9. Floor Drains, Traps, and Sanitary Drain Piping within 10 Feet (3 m) of Drain Receiving Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F (16 Deg C):
    - a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      - 1) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
      - 2) Flexible Elastomeric: 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      - 3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick.
      - 4) Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      - 5) Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
      - 6) Polyolefin: 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  10. Hot Service Drains:
    - a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:



- 1) Calcium Silicate: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
  - 2) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
  - 3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
11. Hot Service Vents:
- a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - 1) Calcium Silicate: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
    - 2) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
    - 3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- U. Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule
1. Domestic Water Piping:
    - a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      - 1) Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      - 2) Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      - 3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      - 4) Phenolic: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      - 5) Polyisocyanurate: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      - 6) Polyolefin: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      - 7) Polystyrene: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
  2. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:
    - a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      - 1) Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      - 2) Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      - 3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      - 4) Phenolic: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      - 5) Polyisocyanurate: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      - 6) Polyolefin: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
  3. Sanitary Waste Piping Where Heat Tracing Is Installed:
    - a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      - 1) Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      - 2) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      - 3) Phenolic: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
      - 4) Polyisocyanurate: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
  4. Hot Service Drains:
    - a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      - 1) Calcium Silicate: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
      - 2) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
      - 3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  5. Hot Service Vents:
    - a. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
      - 1) Calcium Silicate: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
      - 2) Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
      - 3) Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type II: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- V. Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule
1. Loose-fill insulation, for belowground piping, is specified in Division 28.
  2. Sanitary Waste Piping, All Sizes, Where Heat Tracing Is Installed: Cellular glass, 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
  3. Chilled Water, All Sizes: Cellular glass, 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
- W. Indoor, Field-Applied Jacket Schedule
1. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
  2. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
  3. Equipment, Concealed:
    - a. None.



- b. PVC **OR** PVC, Color-Coded by System, **as directed**: 20 mils (0.5 mm) **OR** 30 mils (0.8 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  - c. Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  - d. Painted Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  - e. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
4. Equipment, Exposed, up to 48 Inches (1200 mm) in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches (1800 mm):
- a. None.
  - b. PVC **OR** PVC, Color-Coded by System, **as directed**: 20 mils (0.5 mm) **OR** 30 mils (0.8 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  - c. Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  - d. Painted Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  - e. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
5. Equipment, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches (1200 mm) in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches (1800 mm):
- a. None.
  - b. Aluminum **OR** Painted Aluminum, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, with 1-1/4-Inch- (32-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 2-1/2-Inch- (65-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 4-by-1-Inch (100-by-25-mm) Box Ribs, **as directed**: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  - c. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, with 1-1/4-Inch- (32-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 2-1/2-Inch- (65-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 4-by-1-Inch (100-by-25-mm) Box Ribs, **as directed**: 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
6. Piping, Concealed:
- a. None.
  - b. PVC **OR** PVC, Color-Coded by System, **as directed**: 20 mils (0.5 mm) **OR** 30 mils (0.8 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  - c. Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  - d. Painted Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  - e. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
7. Piping, Exposed:
- a. None.
  - b. PVC **OR** PVC, Color-Coded by System, **as directed**: 20 mils (0.5 mm) **OR** 30 mils (0.8 mm), **as directed**, thick.



- c. Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  - d. Aluminum **OR** Painted Aluminum, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  - e. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
- X. Outdoor, Field-Applied Jacket Schedule
1. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
  2. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
  3. Equipment, Concealed:
    - a. None.
    - b. PVC **OR** PVC, Color-Coded by System, **as directed**: 20 mils (0.5 mm) **OR** 30 mils (0.8 mm), **as directed**, thick.
    - c. Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
    - d. Aluminum **OR** Painted Aluminum, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm), **as directed**, thick.
    - e. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  4. Equipment, Exposed, up to 48 Inches (1200 mm) in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches (1800 mm):
    - a. Aluminum **OR** Painted Aluminum, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, with Z-Shaped Locking Seam, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
    - b. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, with Z-Shaped Locking Seam, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  5. Equipment, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches (1200 mm) in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches (1800 mm):
    - a. Aluminum **OR** Painted Aluminum, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed** with 1-1/4-Inch- (32-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 2-1/2-Inch- (65-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 4-by-1-Inch (100-by-25-mm) Box Ribs, **as directed**: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
    - b. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, with 1-1/4-Inch- (32-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 2-1/2-Inch- (65-mm-) Deep Corrugations **OR** 4-by-1-Inch (100-by-25-mm) Box Ribs, **as directed**: 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  6. Piping, Concealed:
    - a. None.
    - b. PVC **OR** PVC, Color-Coded by System, **as directed**: 20 mils (0.5 mm) **OR** 30 mils (0.8 mm), **as directed**, thick.
    - c. Aluminum, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.



- d. Aluminum **OR** Painted Aluminum, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  - e. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
7. Piping, Exposed:
- a. PVC: 20 mils (0.5 mm) **OR** 30 mils (0.8 mm) **OR** 40 mils (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  - b. Aluminum **OR** Painted Aluminum, **as directed**, Smooth **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, with Z-Shaped Locking Seam, **as directed**: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) **OR** 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) **OR** 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), **as directed**, thick.
  - c. Stainless Steel, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, Smooth 2B Finish **OR** Corrugated **OR** Stucco Embossed, **as directed**, with Z-Shaped Locking Seam, **as directed**: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) **OR** 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) **OR** 0.024 inch (0.61 mm), **as directed**, thick.
- Y. Underground, Field-Installed Insulation Jacket
- 1. For underground direct-buried piping applications, install underground direct-buried jacket over insulation material.

END OF SECTION 22 07 19 00a



## SECTION 22 11 16 00 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for common work results for fire suppression. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
  - b. Mechanical sleeve seals.
  - c. Sleeves.
  - d. Escutcheons.
  - e. Grout.
  - f. Fire-suppression equipment and piping demolition.
  - g. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
  - h. Painting and finishing.
  - i. Concrete bases.
  - j. Supports and anchorages.

#### C. Definitions

1. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
2. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
3. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
4. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in chases.
5. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
6. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:
  - a. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
7. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:
  - a. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
  - b. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

#### D. Submittals

1. Welding certificates.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
2. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
  - a. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
  - b. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.



3. Electrical Characteristics for Fire-Suppression Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
2. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Pipe, Tube, And Fittings

1. Refer to individual Division 28 for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
2. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

B. Joining Materials

1. Refer to individual Division 28 for special joining materials not listed below.
2. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
  - a. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
    - 1) Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
    - 2) Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
  - b. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
6. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.
7. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
8. Solvent Cements for Joining CPVC Plastic Piping: ASTM F 493.

C. Mechanical Sleeve Seals

1. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
  - a. Sealing Elements: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  - b. Pressure Plates: Plastic **OR** Carbon steel **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**. Include two for each sealing element.
  - c. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

D. Sleeves

1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
2. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.





3. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
  - a. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
5. Molded PVC: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
6. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
7. Molded PE: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth-outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

#### E. Escutcheons

1. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
2. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
3. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
  - a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass **OR** Polished chrome-plated and rough brass, **as directed**.
4. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
  - a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass **OR** Polished chrome-plated and rough brass, **as directed**.
5. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.
6. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge, set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.
7. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Type: Cast-iron floor plate.
8. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Type: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

#### F. Grout

1. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
  - a. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
  - b. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
  - c. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Fire-Suppression Demolition

1. Refer to Division 01 Section(s) "Cutting And Patching" AND Division 02 Section(s) "Selective Structure Demolition" for general demolition requirements and procedures.
2. Disconnect, demolish, and remove fire-suppression systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
  - a. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
  - b. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
  - c. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
  - d. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
  - e. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to the Owner.
3. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.



## B. Piping Systems - Common Requirements

1. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 28 specifying piping systems.
2. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
3. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
4. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
5. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
6. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
7. Install piping at indicated slopes.
8. Install piping free of sags and bends.
9. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
10. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
11. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
12. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
  - a. New Piping:
    - 1) Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
    - 2) Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
    - 3) Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring clips.
    - 4) Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
      - a) One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.  
**OR**  
One-piece, stamped-steel type.
    - 5) Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
      - a) One-piece **OR** Split-casting, **as directed**, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.  
**OR**  
One-piece, stamped-steel type **OR** Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge, **as directed**, and set screw.
    - 6) Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces:
      - a) One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated **OR** rough-brass, **as directed**, finish.  
**OR**  
One-piece, stamped-steel type with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge and set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**.
    - 7) Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms:
      - a) One-piece, cast-brass type.  
  
One-piece, stamped-steel type with set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**.
    - 8) Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.
  - b. Existing Piping: Use the following:
    - c. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
    - d. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge and spring clips.
    - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
      - 1) Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.  
**OR**  
Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and spring clips.



- f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
    - 1) Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.  
**OR**  
Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and set screw.
  - g. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces:
    - 1) Split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated **OR** rough-brass, **as directed**, finish.  
**OR**  
Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge and set screw or spring clips.
  - h. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms:
    - 1) Split-casting, cast-brass type.  
**OR**  
Split-plate, stamped-steel type with set screw or spring clips.
  - i. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting, floor-plate type.
13. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
14. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
15. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.
16. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
- a. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - 1) Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
  - b. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
  - c. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
    - 1) PVC **OR** Steel, **as directed**, Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6 (DN 150).
    - 2) Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.
    - 3) Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Refer to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim" for flashing.
      - a) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
  - d. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.
17. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- a. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches (150 mm) in diameter.
  - b. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches (150 mm) and larger in diameter.
  - c. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
18. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- a. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.



19. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for materials.
20. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
21. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

#### C. Piping Joint Construction

1. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 28 specifying piping systems.
2. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
3. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
4. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
5. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
6. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  - b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
7. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Para. 1.1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
8. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
9. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
  - a. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
  - b. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
10. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3139.

#### D. Painting

1. Painting of fire-suppression systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 09 Section(s) "Exterior Painting" AND "Interior Painting".
2. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

#### E. Concrete Bases

1. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
  - a. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit.
  - b. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of the base.
  - c. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - d. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - e. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  - f. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.



- 
- g. Use 3000-psi (20.7-MPa), 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
- F. Erection Of Metal Supports And Anchorages
1. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
  2. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor fire-suppression materials and equipment.
  3. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.
- G. Erection Of Wood Supports And Anchorages
1. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorages to support, and anchor fire-suppression materials and equipment.
  2. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.
  3. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.
- H. Grouting
1. Mix and install grout for fire-suppression equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
  2. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
  3. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
  4. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
  5. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
  6. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
  7. Place grout around anchors.
  8. Cure placed grout.

END OF SECTION 22 11 16 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 22 11 16 00a - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR PLUMBING**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for common work results for plumbing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
  - b. Transition fittings.
  - c. Dielectric fittings.
  - d. Mechanical sleeve seals.
  - e. Sleeves.
  - f. Escutcheons.
  - g. Grout.
  - h. Plumbing demolition.
  - i. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
  - j. Painting and finishing.
  - k. Concrete bases.
  - l. Supports and anchorages.

## C. Definitions

1. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspace, and tunnels.
2. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
3. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
4. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in chases.
5. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
6. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:
  - a. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
  - b. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
  - c. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
  - d. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
7. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:
  - a. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
  - b. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

## D. Submittals

1. Welding certificates.

## E. Quality Assurance

1. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."



2. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
  - a. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
  - b. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
3. Electrical Characteristics for Plumbing Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
2. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Pipe, Tube, And Fittings

1. Refer to individual Division 14 for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
2. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

B. Joining Materials

1. Refer to individual Division 14 for special joining materials not listed below.
2. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
  - a. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
    - 1) Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
    - 2) Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
  - b. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
6. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.
7. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
8. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
  - a. ABS Piping: ASTM D 2235.
  - b. CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493.
  - c. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
  - d. PVC to ABS Piping Transition: ASTM D 3138.
9. Fiberglass Pipe Adhesive: As furnished or recommended by pipe manufacturer.

C. Transition Fittings

1. AWWA Transition Couplings: Same size as, and with pressure rating at least equal to and with ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
  - a. Underground Piping NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Manufactured fitting or coupling.





- b. Underground Piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger: AWWA C219, metal sleeve-type coupling.
  - c. Aboveground Pressure Piping: Pipe fitting.
  2. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings: CPVC **OR** PVC, **as directed**, one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
  3. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Adaptors: One-piece fitting with manufacturer's SDR 11 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
  4. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions: MSS SP-107, CPVC **OR** PVC, **as directed**, four-part union. Include brass end, solvent-cement-joint end, rubber O-ring, and union nut.
  5. Flexible Transition Couplings for Underground Nonpressure Drainage Piping: ASTM C 1173 with elastomeric sleeve, ends same size as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant metal band on each end.
- D. Dielectric Fittings
1. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
  2. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
  3. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
  4. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
  5. Dielectric-Flange Kits: Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
    - a. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.
  6. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
  7. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
- E. Mechanical Sleeve Seals
1. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
    - a. Sealing Elements: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
    - b. Pressure Plates: Plastic **OR** Carbon steel **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**. Include two for each sealing element.
    - c. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.
- F. Sleeves
1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
  2. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
  3. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
    - a. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
  5. Molded PVC: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
  6. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.



7. Molded PE: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth-outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

#### G. Escutcheons

1. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
2. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
3. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
  - a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass **OR** Polished chrome-plated and rough brass, **as directed**.
4. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
  - a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass **OR** Polished chrome-plated and rough brass, **as directed**.
5. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.
6. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge, set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.
7. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Type: Cast-iron floor plate.
8. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Type: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

#### H. Grout

1. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
  - a. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
  - b. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
  - c. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Plumbing Demolition

1. Refer to Division 01 Section(s) "Cutting And Patching" AND Division 02 Section(s) "Selective Structure Demolition" for general demolition requirements and procedures.
2. Disconnect, demolish, and remove plumbing systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
  - a. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
  - b. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
  - c. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
  - d. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
  - e. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to the Owner.
3. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

#### B. Piping Systems - Common Requirements

1. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 14 specifying piping systems.
2. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.



3. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
4. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
5. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
6. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
7. Install piping at indicated slopes.
8. Install piping free of sags and bends.
9. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
10. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
11. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
12. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
  - a. New Piping:
    - 1) Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
    - 2) Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
    - 3) Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring clips.
    - 4) Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
      - a) One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.  
**OR**  
One-piece, stamped-steel type.
    - 5) Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
      - a) One-piece **OR** Split-casting, **as directed**, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.  
**OR**  
One-piece, stamped-steel type **OR** Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge, **as directed**, and set screw.
    - 6) Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces:
      - a) One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated **OR** rough-brass, **as directed**, finish.  
**OR**  
One-piece, stamped-steel type with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge and set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**.
    - 7) Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms:
      - a) One-piece, cast-brass type.  
**OR**  
One-piece, stamped-steel type with set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**.
    - 8) Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.
  - b. Existing Piping: Use the following:
    - 1) Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
    - 2) Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge and spring clips.
    - 3) Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
      - a) Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.  
**OR**  
Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and spring clips.
    - 4) Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
      - a) Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.  
**OR**  
Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and set screw.
    - 5) Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces:
      - a) Split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated **OR** rough-brass, **as directed**, finish.  
**OR**



- Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge and set screw or spring clips.
- 6) Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms:
    - a) Split-casting, cast-brass type.  
**OR**  
Split-plate, stamped-steel type with set screw or spring clips.
  - 7) Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting, floor-plate type.
13. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
  14. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
  15. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.
  16. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
    - a. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
      - 1) Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
    - b. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
    - c. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
      - 1) PVC **OR** Steel, **as directed**, Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6 (DN 150).
      - 2) Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.
      - 3) Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Refer to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim" for flashing.
        - a) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
    - d. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.
  17. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
    - a. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches (150 mm) in diameter.
    - b. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches (150 mm) and larger in diameter.
    - c. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
  18. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
    - a. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
  19. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for materials.
  20. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
  21. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.



- C. Piping Joint Construction
1. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 14 specifying piping systems.
  2. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
  3. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
  4. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
  5. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
  6. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
    - a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
    - b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
  7. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Para. 1.1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
  8. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
  9. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
    - a. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
    - b. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2235 and ASTM D 2661 Appendixes.
    - c. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
    - d. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
    - e. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
    - f. PVC to ABS Nonpressure Transition Fittings: Join according to ASTM D 3138 Appendix.
  10. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3139.
  11. Plastic Nonpressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3212.
  12. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
    - a. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
    - b. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.
  13. Fiberglass Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Piping Connections
1. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
    - a. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
    - b. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
    - c. Dry Piping Systems: Install dielectric unions and flanges to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
    - d. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
- E. Equipment Installation - Common Requirements
1. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.



2. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Install plumbing equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
  4. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.
- F. Painting
1. Painting of plumbing systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 09 Section(s) "Exterior Painting" AND "Interior Painting".
  2. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.
- G. Concrete Bases
1. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
    - a. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit.
    - b. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of the base.
    - c. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
    - d. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
    - e. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
    - f. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
    - g. Use 3000-psi (20.7-MPa), 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
- H. Erection Of Metal Supports And Anchorages
1. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
  2. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor plumbing materials and equipment.
  3. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.
- I. Erection Of Wood Supports And Anchorages
1. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorages to support, and anchor plumbing materials and equipment.
  2. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.
  3. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.
- J. Grouting
1. Mix and install grout for plumbing equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
  2. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
  3. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
  4. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
  5. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
  6. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
  7. Place grout around anchors.
  8. Cure placed grout.



---

END OF SECTION 22 11 16 00a



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



**SECTION 22 11 16 00b - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for common work results for HVAC. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
  - b. Transition fittings.
  - c. Dielectric fittings.
  - d. Mechanical sleeve seals.
  - e. Sleeves.
  - f. Escutcheons.
  - g. Grout.
  - h. HVAC demolition.
  - i. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
  - j. Painting and finishing.
  - k. Concrete bases.
  - l. Supports and anchorages.

## C. Definitions

1. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
2. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
3. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
4. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and chases.
5. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
6. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:
  - a. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
  - b. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
  - c. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
7. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:
  - a. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
  - b. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

## D. Submittals

1. Welding certificates.

## E. Quality Assurance

1. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
2. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."



- a. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
  - b. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
3. Electrical Characteristics for HVAC Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
2. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Pipe, Tube, And Fittings

1. Refer to individual Division 21 for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
2. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

B. Joining Materials

1. Refer to individual Division 21 for special joining materials not listed below.
2. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
  - a. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
    - 1) Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
    - 2) Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
  - b. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
6. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.
7. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
8. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
  - a. CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493.
  - b. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
9. Fiberglass Pipe Adhesive: As furnished or recommended by pipe manufacturer.

C. Transition Fittings

1. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings: CPVC **OR** PVC, **as directed**, one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
2. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Adaptors: One-piece fitting with manufacturer's SDR 11 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
3. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions: MSS SP-107, CPVC **OR** PVC, **as directed**, four-part union. Include brass end, solvent-cement-joint end, rubber O-ring, and union nut.



- D. Dielectric Fittings
1. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
  2. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
  3. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
  4. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
  5. Dielectric-Flange Kits: Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
    - a. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.
  6. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
  7. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
- E. Mechanical Sleeve Seals
1. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
    - a. Sealing Elements: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
    - b. Pressure Plates: Plastic **OR** Carbon steel **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**. Include two for each sealing element.
    - c. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.
- F. Sleeves
1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
  2. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
  3. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
    - a. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
  5. Molded PVC: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
  6. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
  7. Molded PE: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth-outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- G. Escutcheons
1. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
  2. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
  3. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
    - a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass **OR** Polished chrome-plated and rough brass, **as directed**.
  4. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
    - a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass **OR** Polished chrome-plated and rough brass, **as directed**.



5. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.
6. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge, set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.
7. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Type: Cast-iron floor plate.
8. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Type: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

#### H. Grout

1. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
  - a. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
  - b. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
  - c. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. HVAC Demolition

1. Refer to Division 01 Section(s) "Cutting And Patching" AND Division 02 Section(s) "Selective Structure Demolition" for general demolition requirements and procedures.
2. Disconnect, demolish, and remove HVAC systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
  - a. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
  - b. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
  - c. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and plug remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
  - d. Ducts to Be Abandoned in Place: Cap or plug ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
  - e. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
  - f. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
  - g. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to the Owner.
3. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

#### B. Piping Systems - Common Requirements

1. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 21 specifying piping systems.
2. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
3. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
4. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
5. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
6. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
7. Install piping at indicated slopes.
8. Install piping free of sags and bends.
9. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.



10. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
11. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
12. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
  - a. New Piping:
    - 1) Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
    - 2) Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
    - 3) Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring clips.
    - 4) Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
      - a) One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.  
**OR**  
One-piece, stamped-steel type.
    - 5) Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
      - a) One-piece **OR** Split-casting, **as directed**, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.  
**OR**  
One-piece, stamped-steel type **OR** Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge, **as directed**, and set screw.
    - 6) Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces:
      - a) One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated **OR** rough-brass, **as directed**, finish.  
**OR**  
One-piece, stamped-steel type with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge and set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**.
    - 7) Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms:
      - a) One-piece, cast-brass type.  
**OR**  
One-piece, stamped-steel type with set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**.
    - 8) Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.
  - b. Existing Piping: Use the following:
    - 1) Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
    - 2) Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge and spring clips.
    - 3) Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
      - a) Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.  
**OR**  
Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and spring clips.
    - 4) Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces:
      - a) Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.  
**OR**  
Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and set screw.
    - 5) Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces:
      - a) Split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated **OR** rough-brass, **as directed**, finish.  
**OR**  
Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge and set screw or spring clips.
    - 6) Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms:
      - a) Split-casting, cast-brass type.  
**OR**  
Split-plate, stamped-steel type with set screw or spring clips.
    - 7) Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting, floor-plate type.
13. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
14. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.



15. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.
16. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
  - a. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - 1) Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
  - b. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
  - c. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
    - 1) PVC **OR** Steel, **as directed**, Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6 (DN 150).
    - 2) Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.
    - 3) Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Refer to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim" for flashing.
      - a) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
  - d. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.
17. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
  - a. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches (150 mm) in diameter.
  - b. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches (150 mm) and larger in diameter.
  - c. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
18. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
  - a. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
19. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for materials.
20. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
21. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

#### C. Piping Joint Construction

1. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 21 specifying piping systems.
2. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
3. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
4. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
5. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.



6. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
    - a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
    - b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
  7. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Para. 1.1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
  8. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
  9. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
    - a. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
    - b. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
    - c. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
    - d. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
  10. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3139.
  11. Plastic Nonpressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3212.
  12. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
    - a. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
    - b. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.
  13. Fiberglass Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Piping Connections
1. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
    - a. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
    - b. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
    - c. Dry Piping Systems: Install dielectric unions and flanges to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
    - d. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
- E. Equipment Installation - Common Requirements
1. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.
  2. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Install HVAC equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
  4. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.
- F. Painting
1. Painting of HVAC systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 09 Section(s) "Exterior Painting" AND "Interior Painting".
  2. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.



#### G. Concrete Bases

1. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
  - a. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit.
  - b. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of the base.
  - c. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - d. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - e. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  - f. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
  - g. Use 3000-psi (20.7-MPa), 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".

#### H. Erection Of Metal Supports And Anchorages

1. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
2. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor HVAC materials and equipment.
3. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

#### I. Erection Of Wood Supports And Anchorages

1. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorages to support, and anchor HVAC materials and equipment.
2. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.
3. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.

#### J. Grouting

1. Mix and install grout for HVAC equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
2. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
3. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
4. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
5. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
6. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
7. Place grout around anchors.
8. Cure placed grout.

END OF SECTION 22 11 16 00b





## SECTION 22 11 16 00c - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for domestic water piping. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Under-building slab and aboveground domestic water pipes, tubes, fittings, and specialties inside the building.
  - b. Encasement for piping.
  - c. Specialty valves.
  - d. Flexible connectors.
  - e. Water meters furnished by utility company for installation by Contractor.  
**OR**  
Water meters.
  - f. Escutcheons.
  - g. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
  - h. Wall penetration systems.

#### C. Performance Requirements

1. Seismic Performance: Domestic water piping and support and installation shall withstand effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For solvent cements and adhesive primers, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Field quality-control reports.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
2. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic, potable domestic water piping and components. Include marking "NSF-pw" on piping, **as directed**.
3. Comply with NSF 61 for potable domestic water piping and components.

#### F. Project Conditions

1. Interruption of Existing Water Service: Do not interrupt water service to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water service according to requirements indicated:
  - a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of water service.
  - b. Do not proceed with interruption of water service without the Owner's written permission.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Piping Materials



1. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.
- B. Copper Tube And Fittings
1. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) water tube, drawn temper.
    - a. Cast-Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.
    - b. Wrought-Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
    - c. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
    - d. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
    - e. Copper Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
      - 1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.
      - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Cast-bronze or wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.
    - f. Copper Push-on-Joint Fittings:
      - 1) Description: Cast-copper fitting complying with ASME B16.18 or wrought-copper fitting complying with ASME B 16.22; with stainless-steel teeth and EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end instead of solder-joint ends.
    - g. Copper-Tube Extruded-Tee Connections:
      - 1) Description: Tee formed in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014.
    - h. Grooved-Joint Copper-Tube Appurtenances:
      - 1) Copper Grooved-End Fittings: ASTM B 75 (ASTM B 75M) copper tube or ASTM B 584 bronze castings.
      - 2) Grooved-End-Tube Couplings: Copper-tube dimensions and design similar to AWWA C606. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water, and bolts and nuts.
  2. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) and ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) water tube, annealed temper.
    - a. Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
    - b. Copper Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
      - 1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.
      - 2) NPS 3 and NPS 4 (DN 80 and DN 100): Cast-bronze or wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.
- C. Ductile-Iron Pipe And Fittings
1. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
    - a. Standard-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron.
    - b. Compact-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings: AWWA C153, ductile iron.
      - 1) Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
  2. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
    - a. Standard-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron.
      - 1) Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
    - b. Compact-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings: AWWA C153, ductile iron.
      - 1) Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
  3. Plain-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151.
    - a. Grooved-Joint, Ductile-Iron-Pipe Appurtenances:
      - 1) Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Fittings: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron castings or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron castings with dimensions matching pipe.



- 2) Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron-Pipe Couplings: AWWA C606 for ductile-iron-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water, and bolts and nuts.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Pipe And Fittings
1. Galvanized-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Standard Weight. Include ends matching joining method.
    - a. Galvanized-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M or ASTM A 106/A 106M, Standard Weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.
    - b. Galvanized, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
    - c. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal, bronze seating surface, and female threaded ends.
    - d. Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125, cast iron.
    - e. Grooved-Joint, Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
      - 1) Galvanized, Grooved-End Fittings for Galvanized-Steel Piping: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron casting; ASTM A 106/A 106M, steel pipe; or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting; with dimensions matching steel pipe.
      - 2) Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Galvanized-Steel Piping: AWWA C606 for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water, and bolts and nuts.
- E. CPVC Piping
1. CPVC Pipe: ASTM F 441/F 441M, Schedule 40 and Schedule 80.
    - a. CPVC Socket Fittings: ASTM F 438 for Schedule 40 and ASTM F 439 for Schedule 80.
    - b. CPVC Threaded Fittings: ASTM F 437, Schedule 80.
  2. CPVC Piping System: ASTM D 2846/D 2846M, SDR 11, pipe and socket fittings.
  3. CPVC Tubing System: ASTM D 2846/D 2846M, SDR 11, tube and socket fittings.
- F. PEX Tube And Fittings
1. PEX Distribution System: ASTM F 877, SDR 9 tubing.
    - a. Fittings for PEX Tube: ASTM F 1807, metal-insert type with copper or stainless-steel crimp rings and matching PEX tube dimensions.
    - b. Manifold: Multiple-outlet, plastic or corrosion-resistant-metal assembly complying with ASTM F 877; with plastic or corrosion-resistant-metal valve for each outlet.
- G. PVC Pipe And Fittings
1. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40 and Schedule 80.
    - a. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2466 for Schedule 40 and ASTM D 2467 for Schedule 80.
    - b. PVC Schedule 80 Threaded Fittings: ASTM D 2464.
- H. Piping Joining Materials
1. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free, unless otherwise indicated; full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
  4. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Solvent Cements for Joining CPVC Piping and Tubing: ASTM F 493.
    - a. Use CPVC solvent cement that has a VOC content of 490 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
    - b. Use adhesive primer that has a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  6. Solvent Cements for Joining PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.



- a. Use PVC solvent cement that has a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - b. Use adhesive primer that has a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gaskets, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Encasement For Piping
1. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
  2. Form: Sheet **OR** Tube, **as directed**.
  3. Material: LLDPE film of 0.008-inch (0.20-mm) **OR** LLDPE film of 0.008-inch (0.20-mm) minimum thickness or high-density, cross-laminated PE film of 0.004-inch (0.10-mm) **OR** High-density, cross-laminated PE film of 0.004-inch (0.10-mm), **as directed**, minimum thickness.
  4. Color: Black **OR** Natural, **as directed**.
- J. Specialty Valves
1. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping" for general-duty metal valves.
  2. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for balancing valves, drain valves, backflow preventers, and vacuum breakers.
  3. CPVC Union Ball Valves:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-122.
      - 2) Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**, at 73 deg F (23 deg C).
      - 3) Body Material: CPVC.
      - 4) Body Design: Union type.
      - 5) End Connections for Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Detachable, socket **OR** threaded, **as directed**.
      - 6) End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Detachable, socket **OR** threaded **OR** flanged, **as directed**.
      - 7) Ball: CPVC; full port.
      - 8) Seals: PTFE or EPDM-rubber O-rings.
      - 9) Handle: Tee shaped.
  4. PVC Union Ball Valves:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-122.
      - 2) Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**, at 73 deg F (23 deg C).
      - 3) Body Material: PVC.
      - 4) Body Design: Union type.
      - 5) End Connections for Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Detachable, socket **OR** threaded, **as directed**.
      - 6) End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Detachable, socket **OR** threaded **OR** flanged, **as directed**.
      - 7) Ball: PVC; full port.
      - 8) Seals: PTFE or EPDM-rubber O-rings.
      - 9) Handle: Tee shaped.
  5. CPVC Non-Union Ball Valves:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-122.
      - 2) Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**, at 73 deg F (23 deg C).
      - 3) Body Material: CPVC.
      - 4) Body Design: Non-union type.



- 5) End Connections: Socket or threaded.
  - 6) Ball: CPVC; full or reduced port.
  - 7) Seals: PTFE or EPDM-rubber O-rings.
  - 8) Handle: Tee shaped.
6. PVC Non-Union Ball Valves:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-122.
    - 2) Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**, at 73 deg F (23 deg C).
    - 3) Body Material: PVC.
    - 4) Body Design: Non-union type.
    - 5) End Connections: Socket or threaded.
    - 6) Ball: PVC; full or reduced port.
    - 7) Seals: PTFE or EPDM-rubber O-rings.
    - 8) Handle: Tee shaped.
7. CPVC Butterfly Valves:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**, at 73 deg F (23 deg C).
    - 2) Body Material: CPVC.
    - 3) Body Design: Lug or wafer type.
    - 4) Seat: EPDM rubber.
    - 5) Seals: PTFE or EPDM-rubber O-rings.
    - 6) Disc: CPVC.
    - 7) Stem: Stainless steel.
    - 8) Handle: Lever.
8. PVC Butterfly Valves:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**, at 73 deg F (23 deg C).
    - 2) Body Material: PVC.
    - 3) Body Design: Lug or wafer type.
    - 4) Seat: EPDM rubber.
    - 5) Seals: PTFE or EPDM-rubber O-rings.
    - 6) Disc: PVC.
    - 7) Stem: Stainless steel.
    - 8) Handle: Lever.
9. CPVC Ball Check Valves:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**, at 73 deg F (23 deg C).
    - 2) Body Material: CPVC.
    - 3) Body Design: Union-type ball check.
    - 4) End Connections for Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Detachable, socket **OR** threaded, **as directed**.
    - 5) End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Detachable, socket **OR** threaded **OR** flanged, **as directed**.
    - 6) Ball: CPVC.
    - 7) Seals: EPDM- or FKM-rubber O-rings.
10. PVC Ball Check Valves:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**, at 73 deg F (23 deg C).
    - 2) Body Material: PVC.
    - 3) Body Design: Union-type ball check.



- 4) End Connections for Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Detachable, socket **OR** threaded, **as directed**.
  - 5) End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Detachable, socket **OR** threaded **OR** flanged, **as directed**.
  - 6) Ball: PVC.
  - 7) Seals: EPDM- or FKM-rubber O-rings.
11. CPVC Gate Valves:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**, at 73 deg F (23 deg C).
    - 2) Body Material: CPVC.
    - 3) Body Design: Nonrising stem.
    - 4) End Connections for Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Socket **OR** Threaded, **as directed**.
    - 5) End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Socket **OR** Threaded **OR** Flanged, **as directed**.
    - 6) Gate and Stem: Plastic.
    - 7) Seals: EPDM rubber.
    - 8) Handle: Wheel.
12. PVC Gate Valves:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**, at 73 deg F (23 deg C).
    - 2) Body Material: PVC.
    - 3) Body Design: Nonrising stem.
    - 4) End Connections for Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Socket **OR** Threaded, **as directed**.
    - 5) End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Socket **OR** Threaded **OR** Flanged, **as directed**.
    - 6) Gate and Stem: Plastic.
    - 7) Seals: EPDM rubber.
    - 8) Handle: Wheel.
- K. Transition Fittings
1. General Requirements:
    - a. Same size as pipes to be joined.
    - b. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
    - c. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
  2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
  3. Sleeve-Type Transition Coupling: AWWA C219.
  4. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
    - a. Description: CPVC **OR** PVC, **as directed**, one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert and one solvent-cement-socket threaded, **as directed**, end.
  5. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:
    - a. Description: CPVC **OR** PVC, **as directed**, four-part union. Include brass or stainless-steel, **as directed**, threaded end, solvent-cement-joint or threaded, **as directed**, plastic end, rubber O-ring, and union nut.
- L. Dielectric Fittings
1. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials or ferrous material body with separating nonconductive insulating material suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
  2. Dielectric Unions:



- a. Description:
    - 1) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) **OR** 250 psig (1725 kPa), **as directed**, at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
    - 2) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
  3. Dielectric Flanges:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
      - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) **OR** 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum **OR** 300 psig (2070 kPa), **as directed**.
      - 3) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
  4. Dielectric-Flange Kits:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
      - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      - 3) Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
      - 4) Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
      - 5) Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
  5. Dielectric Couplings:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Galvanized-steel coupling.
      - 2) Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
      - 3) End Connections: Female threaded.
      - 4) Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic.
  6. Dielectric Nipples:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
      - 2) Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
      - 3) End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
      - 4) Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.
- M. Flexible Connectors
1. Bronze-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-bronze tubing with bronze wire-braid covering and ends brazed to inner tubing.
    - a. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig (1380 kPa) **OR** 250 psig (1725 kPa), **as directed**.
    - b. End Connections NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded copper pipe or plain-end copper tube.
    - c. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged copper alloy.
  2. Stainless-Steel-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-stainless-steel tubing with stainless-steel wire-braid covering and ends welded to inner tubing.
    - a. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig (1380 kPa) **OR** 250 psig (1725 kPa), **as directed**.
    - b. End Connections NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded steel-pipe nipple.
    - c. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged steel nipple.
- N. Water Meters
1. Displacement-Type Water Meters:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: AWWA C700.
      - 2) Pressure Rating: 150-psig (1035-kPa) working pressure.
      - 3) Body Design: Nutating disc; totalization meter.
      - 4) Registration: In gallons (liters) or cubic feet (cubic meters) as required by utility.
      - 5) Case: Bronze.
      - 6) End Connections: Threaded.
  2. Turbine-Type Water Meters:



- a. Description:
  - 1) Standard: AWWA C701.
  - 2) Pressure Rating: 150-psig (1035-kPa) working pressure.
  - 3) Body Design: Turbine; totalization meter.
  - 4) Registration: In gallons (liters) or cubic feet (cubic meters) as required by utility company.
  - 5) Case: Bronze.
  - 6) End Connections for Meters NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded.
  - 7) End Connections for Meters NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged.
3. Compound-Type Water Meters:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: AWWA C702.
    - 2) Pressure Rating: 150-psig (1035-kPa) working pressure.
    - 3) Body Design: With integral mainline and bypass meters; totalization meter.
    - 4) Registration: In gallons (liters) or cubic feet (cubic meters) as required by utility company.
    - 5) Case: Bronze.
    - 6) Pipe Connections: Flanged.
4. Fire-Service-Type Water Meters:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: AWWA C703 and UL listing.
    - 2) Pressure Rating: 175-psig (1200-kPa) working pressure.
    - 3) Body Design:
      - a) Proportional, Detector-Type Water Meters: With meter on bypass.
        - i. Bypass Meter: AWWA C701, turbine **OR** AWWA C702, compound, **as directed**, type with bronze case; size not less than one-half nominal size of main-line meter.
      - b) Turbine-Type Water Meters: With strainer, and with meter on bypass.
        - i. Strainer: Full size, matching water meter.
        - ii. Bypass Meter: AWWA C701, turbine type with bronze case; not less than NPS 2 (DN 50).
    - 4) Registration: In gallons (liters) or cubic feet (cubic meters) as required by utility company.
    - 5) Case: Bronze.
    - 6) Pipe Connections for Meters NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded.
    - 7) Pipe Connections for Meters NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged.
5. Remote Registration System: Direct-reading type complying with AWWA C706; modified with signal transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly as required by utility company.  
**OR**  
 Remote Registration System: Encoder type complying with AWWA C707; modified with signal transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly as required by utility company.

#### O. Escutcheons

1. General: Manufactured ceiling, floor, and wall escutcheons and floor plates.
2. One Piece, Cast Brass: Polished, chrome-plated **OR** rough-brass, **as directed**, finish with setscrews.
3. One Piece, Deep Pattern: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish.
4. One Piece, Stamped Steel: Chrome-plated finish with setscrew **OR** spring clips, **as directed**.
5. Split Casting, Cast Brass: Polished, chrome-plated **OR** rough-brass, **as directed**, finish with concealed hinge and setscrew.
6. Split Plate, Stamped Steel: Chrome-plated finish with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge, setscrew **OR** spring clips, **as directed**.
7. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners, **as directed**.





8. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

P. Sleeves

1. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Fabricated of cast iron, and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
2. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
3. Molded-PE Sleeves: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
4. Molded-PVC Sleeves: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
5. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
6. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc-coated, with plain ends.
7. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
  - a. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

Q. Sleeve Seals

1. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, used to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
  - a. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber **OR** NBR, **as directed**, interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  - b. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel **OR** Plastic **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
  - c. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

R. Wall Penetration Systems

1. Description: Wall-sleeve assembly, consisting of housing and gland, gaskets, and pipe sleeve.
  - a. Carrier-Pipe Deflection: Up to 5 percent without leakage.
  - b. Housing: Ductile-iron casting with hub, waterstop, anchor ring, and locking devices. Include gland, bolts, and nuts.
  - c. Housing-to-Sleeve Gasket: EPDM rubber **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
  - d. Housing-to-Carrier-Pipe Gasket: AWWA C111, EPDM rubber **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
  - e. Pipe Sleeve: AWWA C151, ductile-iron pipe **OR** ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, zinc-coated steel pipe, **as directed**.

S. Grout

1. Standard: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
2. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
3. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
4. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Earthwork

1. Comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

B. Piping Installation

1. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
2. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."



3. Install ductile-iron piping under building slab with restrained joints according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
4. Install underground copper tube and ductile-iron pipe in PE encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
5. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve, inside the building at each domestic water service entrance. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping" for pressure gages and Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for drain valves and strainers.
6. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
7. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for pressure-reducing valves.
8. Install domestic water piping level with 0.25 percent slope downward toward drain **OR** without pitch, **as directed**, and plumb.
9. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.
10. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" for seismic-restraint devices.
11. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
12. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
13. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
14. Install piping adjacent to equipment and specialties to allow service and maintenance.
15. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
16. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
17. Install piping free of sags and bends.
18. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
19. Install PEX piping with loop at each change of direction of more than 90 degrees.
20. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
21. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping from each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping" for pressure gages.
22. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Pumps" for thermostats.
23. Install thermometers on inlet **OR** inlet and outlet, **as directed**, piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping" for thermometers.

#### C. Joint Construction

1. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
3. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
  - b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
4. Brazed Joints: Join copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Braze Joints" Chapter.



5. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
  6. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join copper tube and pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
  7. Copper-Tubing, Push-on Joints: Clean end of tube. Measure insertion depth with manufacturer's depth gage. Join copper tube and push-on-joint fittings by inserting tube to measured depth.
  8. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.
  9. Copper-Tubing Grooved Joints: Roll groove end of tube. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join copper tube and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for roll-grooved joints.
  10. Ductile-Iron-Piping Grooved Joints: Cut groove end of pipe. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join ductile-iron pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for ductile-iron-pipe, cut-grooved joints.
  11. Steel-Piping Grooved Joints: Cut **OR** Roll, **as directed**, groove end of pipe. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.
  12. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
  13. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
    - a. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements. Apply primer.
    - b. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
    - c. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
  14. PEX Piping Joints: Join according to ASTM F 1807.
  15. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.
- D. Valve Installation
1. General-Duty Valves: Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping" for valve installations.
  2. Install shutoff valve close to water main on each branch and riser serving plumbing fixtures or equipment, on each water supply to equipment, and on each water supply to plumbing fixtures that do not have supply stops. Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller. Use butterfly or gate valves for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
  3. Install drain valves for equipment at base of each water riser, at low points in horizontal piping, and where required to drain water piping. Drain valves are specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties".
    - a. Hose-End Drain Valves: At low points in water mains, risers, and branches.
    - b. Stop-and-Waste Drain Valves: Instead of hose-end drain valves where indicated.
  4. Install balancing valve in each hot-water circulation return branch and discharge side of each pump and circulator. Set balancing valves partly open to restrict but not stop flow. Use ball valves for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller and butterfly valves for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for balancing valves.
  5. Install calibrated balancing valves in each hot-water circulation return branch and discharge side of each pump and circulator. Set calibrated balancing valves partly open to restrict but not stop flow. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for calibrated balancing valves.
- E. Transition Fitting Installation
1. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.
  2. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:



- a. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
  - b. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.
3. Transition Fittings in Aboveground Domestic Water Piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Plastic-to-metal transition fittings **OR** unions, **as directed**.
- F. Dielectric Fitting Installation
1. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
  2. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Use dielectric couplings **OR** nipples **OR** unions, **as directed**.
  3. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Use dielectric flanges **OR** flange kits **OR** nipples, **as directed**.
  4. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.
- G. Flexible Connector Installation
1. Install flexible connectors in suction and discharge piping connections to each domestic water pump and in suction and discharge manifold connections to each domestic water booster pump, **as directed**.
  2. Install bronze-hose flexible connectors in copper domestic water tubing.
  3. Install stainless-steel-hose flexible connectors in steel domestic water piping.
- H. Water Meter Installation
1. Rough-in domestic water piping for water meter installation, and install water meters, **as directed**, according to utility company's requirements.
  2. Water meters will be furnished and installed by utility company.  
**OR**  
Install water meters according to AWWA M6 and utility company's requirements.
  3. Install displacement-type water meters with shutoff valve on water-meter inlet. Install valve on water-meter outlet and valved bypass around meter unless prohibited by authorities having jurisdiction.  
**OR**  
Install turbine-type water meters with shutoff valve on water-meter inlet. Install valve on water-meter outlet and valved bypass around meter unless prohibited by authorities having jurisdiction.  
**OR**  
Install compound-type water meters with shutoff valves on water-meter inlet and outlet and on valved bypass around meter. Support meters, valves, and piping on brick or concrete piers.  
**OR**  
Install fire-service water meters with shutoff valves on water-meter inlet and outlet and on full-size valved bypass around meter. Support meter, valves, and piping on brick or concrete piers.
  4. Install remote registration system according to standards of utility company and of authorities having jurisdiction.
- I. Hanger And Support Installation
1. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" for seismic-restraint devices.
  2. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Hangers And Supports For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" for pipe hanger and support products and installation.
    - a. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
    - b. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
      - 1) 100 Feet (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
      - 2) Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
      - 3) Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m) If Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
    - c. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
    - d. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
  3. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.



4. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch (10 mm).
5. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - a. NPS 3/4 (DN 20) and Smaller: 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - b. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4 (DN 25 and DN 32): 72 inches (1800 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - c. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 96 inches (2400 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - d. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - e. NPS 3 to NPS 5 (DN 80 to DN 125): 10 feet (3 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - f. NPS 6 (DN 150): 10 feet (3 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
  - g. NPS 8 (DN 200): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
6. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet (3 m).
7. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - a. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Smaller: 84 inches (2100 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - b. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - c. NPS 2 (DN 50): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - d. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 11 feet (3.4 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - e. NPS 3 and NPS 3-1/2 (DN 80 and DN 90): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - f. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
  - g. NPS 6 (DN 150): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
  - h. NPS 8 to NPS 12 (DN 200 to DN 300): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
8. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet (4.5 m).
9. Install vinyl-coated hangers for CPVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - a. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: 36 inches (900 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - b. NPS 1-1/4 to NPS 2 (DN 32 to DN 50): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - c. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 65 to DN 90): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - d. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
  - e. NPS 6 (DN 150): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
  - f. NPS 8 (DN 200): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
10. Install supports for vertical CPVC piping every 60 inches (1500 mm) for NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller, and every 72 inches (1800 mm) for NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and larger.
11. Install vinyl-coated hangers for PEX piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - a. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: 32 inches (815 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
12. Install hangers for vertical PEX piping every 48 inches (1200 mm).
13. Install vinyl-coated hangers for PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 65 to DN 90): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - c. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
  - d. NPS 6 (DN 150): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
  - e. NPS 8 (DN 200): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
14. Install supports for vertical PVC piping every 48 inches (1200 mm).
15. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

#### J. Connections

1. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
2. Install piping adjacent to equipment and machines to allow service and maintenance.



3. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
4. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
  - a. Domestic Water Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
  - b. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
  - c. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section(s) "Plumbing Fixtures" OR "Healthcare Plumbing Fixtures" OR "Emergency Plumbing Fixtures" OR "Security Plumbing Fixtures", **as directed**, for connection sizes.
  - d. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

#### K. Escutcheon Installation

1. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
2. Escutcheons for New Piping:
  - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One piece, deep pattern.
  - b. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** stamped steel with set screw **OR** stamped steel with set screw or spring clips **OR** stamped steel with spring clips, **as directed**.
  - c. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** One piece or split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** Split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** One piece, stamped steel with set screw **OR** One piece or split plate, stamped steel with set screw **OR** Split plate, stamped steel with set screw, **as directed**.
  - d. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** cast brass with rough-brass finish **OR** stamped steel with set screw **OR** stamped steel with spring clips **OR** stamped steel with set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
  - e. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One piece, cast brass **OR** stamped steel with set screw **OR** stamped steel with spring clips **OR** stamped steel with set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
  - f. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece floor plate.
3. Escutcheons for Existing Piping:
  - a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish.
  - b. Insulated Piping: Split plate, stamped steel with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge and spring clips.
  - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge and spring clips, **as directed**.
  - d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge and set screw, **as directed**.
  - e. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** casting, cast brass with rough-brass finish **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge and set screw or spring clips **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge and set screw or spring clips **OR** plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge and set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
  - f. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split casting, cast brass **OR** plate, stamped steel with set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
  - g. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting floor plate.

#### L. Sleeve Installation



1. General Requirements: Install sleeves for pipes and tubes passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
2. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
3. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
4. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
5. Install sleeves in new partitions, slabs, and walls as they are built.
6. For interior wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants.
7. For exterior wall penetrations above grade, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants.
8. For exterior wall penetrations below grade, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe using sleeve seals **OR** wall penetration systems, **as directed**, specified in this Section.
9. Seal space outside of sleeves in concrete slabs and walls with grout.
10. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation unless otherwise indicated.
11. Install sleeve materials according to the following applications:
  - a. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Concrete Floor Slabs: Molded PE **OR** Molded PVC **OR** Steel pipe, **as directed**.
  - b. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Concrete Floor Slabs of Mechanical Equipment Areas or Other Wet Areas: Steel pipe **OR** Stack sleeve fittings, **as directed**.
    - 1) Extend sleeves 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
    - 2) For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing, extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim" for flashing.
  - c. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Gypsum-Board Partitions:
    - 1) PVC pipe **OR** Steel pipe, **as directed**, sleeves for pipes smaller than NPS 6 (DN 150).
    - 2) Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves for pipes NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger.
    - 3) Exception: Sleeves are not required for water supply tubes and waste pipes for individual plumbing fixtures if escutcheons will cover openings.
  - d. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Concrete Roof Slabs: Molded PE **OR** Molded PVC **OR** Steel pipe, **as directed**.
  - e. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Exterior Concrete Walls:
    - 1) Steel pipe sleeves for pipes smaller than NPS 6 (DN 150).
    - 2) Cast-iron wall pipe sleeves for pipes NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger.
    - 3) Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation when sleeve seals are used.
    - 4) Do not use sleeves when wall penetration systems are used.
  - f. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Interior Concrete Walls:
    - 1) PVC pipe **OR** Steel pipe, **as directed**, sleeves for pipes smaller than NPS 6 (DN 150).
    - 2) Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves for pipes NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger.
12. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for firestop materials and installations.

#### M. Sleeve Seal Installation

1. Install sleeve seals in sleeves in exterior concrete walls at water-service piping entries into building.
2. Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble sleeve seal components and install in annular space between pipe



and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

N. Wall Penetration System Installation

1. Install wall penetration systems in new, exterior concrete walls.
2. Assemble wall penetration system components with sleeve pipe. Install so that end of sleeve pipe and face of housing are flush with wall. Adjust locking devices to secure sleeve pipe in housing.

O. Identification

1. Identify system components. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Identification For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" for identification materials and installation.
2. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

P. Field Quality Control

1. Perform tests and inspections.
2. Piping Inspections:
  - a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
    - 1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
    - 2) Final Inspection: Arrange final inspection for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
  - c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
  - d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Piping Tests:
  - a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
  - b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  - c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  - d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig (345 kPa) above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
  - e. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
  - f. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.
4. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
5. Prepare test and inspection reports.

Q. Adjusting

1. Perform the following adjustments before operation:
  - a. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
  - b. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
  - c. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
  - d. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.





- 1) Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide flow of hot water in each branch.
- 2) Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
- e. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
- f. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
- g. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
- h. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

#### R. Cleaning

1. Clean and disinfect potable and non-potable, **as directed**, domestic water piping as follows:
  - a. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
  - b. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
    - 1) Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
    - 2) Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
      - a) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm (50 mg/L) of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
      - b) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm (200 mg/L) of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
    - 3) Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
    - 4) Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
2. Clean non-potable domestic water piping as follows:
  - a. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
  - b. Use purging procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or; if methods are not prescribed, follow procedures described below:
    - 1) Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
    - 2) Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
3. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities.
4. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

#### S. Piping Schedule

1. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
2. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
3. Fitting Option: Extruded-tee connections and brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.
4. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building service piping, NPS 3 (DN 80) and smaller, shall be one of the following:
  - a. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) **OR** ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), **as directed**; wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed **OR** copper pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed, **as directed**, joints.
  - b. PVC, Schedule 40 pipe; PVC, Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80 pipe; PVC, Schedule 80, **as directed**, socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
5. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 4 to NPS 8 (DN 100 to DN 200) and larger, shall be one of the following:



- a. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) **OR** ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), **as directed**; wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
  - b. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard-pattern **OR** compact-pattern, **as directed**, mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical joints.
  - c. Push-on-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard-pattern **OR** compact-pattern, **as directed**, push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed joints.
  - d. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
  - e. PVC, Schedule 40 pipe; PVC, Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80 pipe; PVC, Schedule 80, **as directed**, socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
6. Under-building slab, combined domestic water, building-service, and fire-service-main piping, NPS 6 to NPS 12 (DN 150 to DN 300), shall be one of the following:
- a. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard-pattern **OR** compact-pattern, **as directed**, mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical joints.
  - b. Push-on-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard-pattern **OR** compact-pattern, **as directed**, push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed joints.
  - c. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
7. Under-building-slab, domestic water piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be one of the following:
- a. Hard **OR** Soft, **as directed**, copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B); wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed **OR** copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed, **as directed**, joints.
  - b. PVC, Schedule 40 pipe; PVC, Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80 pipe; PVC, Schedule 80, **as directed**, socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
8. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be one of the following:
- a. Galvanized-steel pipe and nipples; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  - b. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), **as directed**; cast-copper **OR** wrought-copper, **as directed**, solder-joint fittings; and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
  - c. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), **as directed**; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
  - d. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) **OR**, **as directed**; copper push-on-joint fittings; and push-on joints.
  - e. CPVC, Schedule 40 pipe; CPVC, Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80 pipe; CPVC, Schedule 80, **as directed**, socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
  - f. CPVC, Schedule 80 pipe; CPVC, Schedule 80 threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  - g. CPVC Tubing System: CPVC tube; CPVC socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and NPS 2 (DN 50) CPVC pipe with CPVC socket fittings may be used instead of tubing.
  - h. PEX Tube, NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller; fittings for PEX tube; and crimped joints.
  - i. PVC, Schedule 40 pipe; PVC, Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80 pipe; PVC, Schedule 80, **as directed**, socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
9. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100), shall be one of the following:
- a. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), **as directed**; cast-copper **OR** wrought-copper, **as directed**, solder-joint fittings; and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
  - b. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), **as directed**; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
  - c. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), **as directed**; grooved-joint copper-tube appurtenances; and grooved joints.



- d. Galvanized-steel pipe and nipples; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  - e. Galvanized-steel pipe; grooved-joint, galvanized-steel-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
  - f. CPVC, Schedule 40 pipe; CPVC, Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80 pipe; CPVC, Schedule 80, **as directed**, socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
  - g. CPVC, Schedule 80 pipe; CPVC, Schedule 80 threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  - h. PVC, Schedule 40 pipe; PVC, Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80 pipe; PVC, Schedule 80, **as directed**, socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
10. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 5 to NPS 8 (DN 125 to DN 200), shall be one of the following:
- a. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), **as directed**; cast-copper **OR** wrought-copper, **as directed**, solder-joint fittings; and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
  - b. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), **as directed**; grooved-joint copper-tube appurtenances; and grooved joints.
  - c. Galvanized-steel pipe and nipples; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  - d. Galvanized-steel pipe; grooved-joint, galvanized-steel-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
  - e. CPVC, Schedule 40 pipe; CPVC, Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80 pipe; CPVC, Schedule 80, **as directed**, socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
  - f. CPVC, Schedule 80 pipe; CPVC, Schedule 80 threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  - g. PVC, Schedule 40 pipe; PVC, Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80 pipe; PVC, Schedule 80, **as directed**, socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
11. Aboveground, combined domestic-water-service and fire-service-main piping, NPS 6 to NPS 12 (DN 150 to DN300), shall be one of the following:
- a. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
  - b. Galvanized-steel pipe and nipples; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  - c. Galvanized-steel pipe; grooved-joint, galvanized-steel-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
- T. Valve Schedule
1. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
    - a. Shutoff Duty: Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller. Use butterfly, ball, or gate valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
    - b. Throttling Duty: Use ball or globe valves for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller. Use butterfly or ball valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
    - c. Hot-Water Circulation Piping, Balancing Duty: Calibrated **OR** Memory-stop, **as directed**, balancing valves.
    - d. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.
  2. Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.
  3. Iron grooved-end valves may be used with grooved-end piping.
  4. CPVC and PVC valves matching piping materials may be used.

END OF SECTION 22 11 16 00c



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 22 11 16 00d - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for sanitary waste and vent piping. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes:
  - a. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
  - b. Special pipe fittings.
  - c. Encasement for underground metal piping.

#### C. Performance Requirements

1. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure, unless otherwise indicated:
  - a. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water (30 kPa).
  - b. Sanitary Sewer, Force-Main Piping: 50 psig (345 kPa) **OR** 100 psig (690 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**.
2. Seismic Performance: Soil, waste, and vent piping and support and installation shall be capable of withstanding the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures."

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For solvent cements and adhesive primers, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings: For solvent Drainage System: Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
4. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For waste and vent piping, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
  - a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  - b. Detailed description of piping anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
5. Field quality-control inspection and test reports.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
2. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping; "NSF-drain" for plastic drain piping; "NSF-tubular" for plastic continuous waste piping; and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

#### F. Project Conditions

1. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Waste Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
  - a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of sanitary waste service.



- b. Do not proceed with interruption of sanitary waste service without the Owner written permission.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Piping Materials

1. Comply with requirements in "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

### B. Hub-And-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Pipe And Fittings

1. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service and Extra-Heavy class(es).
2. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
3. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

### C. Hubless, Cast-Iron Soil Pipe And Fittings

1. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
2. Sovent Stack Fittings: ASME B16.45 or ASSE 1043, hubless, cast-iron aerator and deaerator drainage fittings.
3. CISPI, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
  - a. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and CISPI 310
  - b. Description: Stainless-steel corrugated shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
4. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
  - a. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540.
  - b. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
5. Cast-Iron, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
  - a. Standard: ASTM C 1277.
  - b. Description: Two-piece ASTM A 48/A 48M, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

### D. Galvanized-Steel Pipe And Fittings

1. Galvanized Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Standard Weight. Include ends matching joining method.
2. Galvanized-Cast-Iron Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.12, galvanized.
3. Steel Pipe Pressure Fittings:
  - a. Galvanized-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M or ASTM A 106, Schedule 40, galvanized, seamless steel pipe. Include ends matching joining method.
  - b. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Class 150; hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal, bronze seating surface; and female threaded ends.
  - c. Galvanized-Gray-Iron, Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, galvanized, **as directed**, standard pattern.
4. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125.
  - a. Flange Gasket Materials: ASME ASME B16.21, full-face, flat, nonmetallic, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
  - b. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
5. Grooved-Joint Systems:
  - a. Galvanized, Grooved-End Fittings for Galvanized-Steel Piping: ASTM A 536 ductile-iron castings, ASTM A 47/A 47M malleable-iron castings, ASTM A 234/A 234M forged steel fittings, or ASTM A 106/A 106M steel pipes with dimensions matching ASTM A 53/A 53M steel pipe, and complying with AWWA C606 for grooved ends.
  - b. Grooved Mechanical Couplings for Galvanized-Steel Piping: ASTM F 1476, Type I. Include ferrous housing sections with continuous curved keys; EPDM-rubber gasket suitable for hot and cold water; and bolts and nuts.



- E. Stainless-Steel Pipe And Fittings
1. Pipe and Fittings: ASME A112.3.1, drainage pattern with socket and spigot ends.
  2. Internal Sealing Rings: Elastomeric gasket shaped to fit socket groove.
    - a. Material: EPDM, unless NBR is indicated.
- F. Ductile-Iron Pipe And Fittings
1. Ductile-Iron, Mechanical-Joint Piping:
    - a. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
    - b. Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110/A21.10, mechanical-joint, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile-iron compact pattern.
    - c. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
  2. Ductile-Iron, Push-on-Joint Piping:
    - a. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
    - b. Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110/A21.10, push-on-joint ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile-iron compact pattern.
    - c. Gaskets: AWWA C111/A21.11, rubber.
  3. Ductile-Iron, Grooved-Joint Piping:
    - a. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51 with round-cut-grooved ends according to AWWA C606.
    - b. Ductile-Iron-Pipe Appurtenances:
      - 1) Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Fittings: ASTM A 536 ductile-iron castings with dimensions matching AWWA C110/A 21.10 ductile-iron pipe or AWWA C153/A 21.53 ductile-iron fittings and complying with AWWA C606 for grooved ends.
      - 2) Grooved Mechanical Couplings for Ductile-Iron Pipe: ASTM F 1476, Type I. Include ferrous housing sections with continuous curved keys; EPDM-rubber center-leg gasket suitable for hot and cold water; and bolts and nuts.
- G. Copper Tube And Fittings
1. Copper DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.
  2. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast copper or ASME B16.29, wrought copper, solder-joint fittings.
  3. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Types L and M (ASTM B 88M, Types B and C), water tube, drawn temper.
  4. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), water tube, annealed temper.
  5. Copper Pressure Fittings:
    - a. ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
    - b. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends
  6. Copper Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast copper with solder-joint end.
    - a. Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, full-face, flat, nonmetallic, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
    - b. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
  7. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead free with ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux
- H. ABS Pipe And Fittings
1. Solid-Wall ABS Pipe: ASTM D 2661, Schedule 40.
  2. Cellular-Core ABS Pipe: ASTM F 628, Schedule 40.
  3. ABS Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2661, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns.
  4. Solvent Cement ASTM D 2235:
    - a. Use ABS solvent cement that has a VOC content of 325 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).



- I. PVC Pipe And Fittings
1. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.
  2. Cellular-Core PVC Pipe: ASTM F 891, Schedule 40.
  3. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.
  4. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F 656.
    - a. Use adhesive primer that has a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  5. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.
    - a. Use PVC solvent cement that has a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- J. Specialty Pipe Fittings
1. Transition Couplings:
    - a. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in OD's or of different materials. Include end connections same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
    - b. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
    - c. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
      - 1) Standard: ASTM C 1173.
      - 2) Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
      - 3) Sleeve Materials:
        - a) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
        - b) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
        - c) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
    - d. Shielded Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
      - 1) ASTM C 1460.
      - 2) Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
    - e. Pressure Transition Pipe Couplings:
      - 1) AWWA C219.
      - 2) Description: Metal, sleeve-type same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to, and ends compatible with, pipes to be joined.
      - 3) Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Carbon steel **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Ductile iron **OR** Malleable iron, **as directed**.
      - 4) Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
      - 5) Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.
  2. Dielectric Fittings:
    - a. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
    - b. Dielectric Unions:
      - 1) Description:
        - a) Standard: ASSE 1079.
        - b) Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum at 180 deg F (82 deg C) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa) **OR** 250 psig (1725 kPa), **as directed**.
        - c) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
    - c. Dielectric Flanges:
      - 1) Description:
        - a) Standard: ASSE 1079.





- b) Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
- c) Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum at 180 deg F (82 deg C) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa) **OR** 175 psig (1200 kPa) **OR** 300 psig (2070 kPa), **as directed**.
- d) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- d. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
  - 1) Description:
    - a) Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
    - b) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - c) Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
    - d) Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
    - e) Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
- e. Dielectric Nipples
  - 1) Description:
    - a) Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
    - b) Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
    - c) End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
    - d) Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

K. Encasement For Underground Metal Piping

- 1. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5
- 2. Material: Linear low-density polyethylene film of 0.008-inch (0.20-mm) **OR** high density, cross-laminated polyethylene film of 0.004-inch (0.10-mm), **as directed**, minimum thickness.
- 3. Form: Sheet **OR** Tube, **as directed**.
- 4. Color: Black **OR** Natural, **as directed**.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Earth Moving

- 1. Refer to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

B. Piping Installation

- 1. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- 2. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- 3. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- 4. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- 5. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- 6. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- 7. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- 8. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- 9. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- 10. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
- 11. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with



- common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
12. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
  13. Install soil and waste drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
    - a. Building Sanitary Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 (DN 80) and smaller; 1 percent **OR** 2 percent, as directed downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger.
    - b. Horizontal Sanitary Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
    - c. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
  14. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
    - a. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
  15. Install steel piping according to applicable plumbing code.
  16. Install stainless-steel piping according to ASME A112.3.1 and applicable plumbing code.
  17. Install aboveground copper tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
  18. Install aboveground ABS piping according to ASTM D 2661.
  19. Install aboveground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2665.
  20. Install underground ABS and PVC piping according to ASTM D 2321.
  21. Install engineered soil and waste drainage and vent piping systems as follows:
    - a. Combination Waste and Vent: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
    - b. Solvent Drainage System: Comply with ASSE 1043 and solvent fitting manufacturer's written installation instructions.
    - c. Reduced-Size Venting: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
  22. Install underground, ductile-iron, force-main piping according to AWWA C600. Install buried piping inside building between wall and floor penetrations and connection to sanitary sewer piping outside building with restrained joints. Anchor pipe to wall or floor. Install thrust-block supports at vertical and horizontal offsets.
    - a. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
  23. Install underground, copper, force-main tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
    - a. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
  24. Install force mains at elevations indicated.
  25. Plumbing Specialties:
    - a. Install backwater valves in sanitary waste gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties".
    - b. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary drainage force-main piping. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties".
    - c. Install drains in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties".
  26. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  27. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".
  28. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".



29. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".

C. Joint Construction

1. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
2. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with calked joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead-and-oakum calked joints.
3. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.
4. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  - b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
5. Join stainless-steel pipe and fittings with gaskets according to ASME A112.3.1.
6. Join copper tube and fittings with soldered joints according to ASTM B 828. Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux and ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder.
7. Grooved Joints: Cut groove ends of pipe according to AWWA C606. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fitting. Install coupling housing sections, over gasket, with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
8. Flanged Joints: Align bolt holes. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Torque bolts in cross pattern.
9. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
  - a. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
  - b. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2235 and ASTM D 2661 Appendixes.
  - c. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM D 2665 Appendixes.

D. Specialty Pipe Fitting Installation

1. Transition Couplings:
  - a. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in OD's.
  - b. In Drainage Piping: Unshielded **OR** Shielded, **as directed**, nonpressure transition couplings.
  - c. In Aboveground Force Main Piping: Fitting-type transition couplings.
  - d. In Underground Force Main Piping:
    - 1) NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Fitting-type transition couplings.
    - 2) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger: Pressure transition couplings.
2. Dielectric Fittings:
  - a. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
  - b. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Use dielectric nipples **OR** unions, **as directed**.
  - c. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Use dielectric flanges **OR** flange kits **OR** nipples, **as directed**.
  - d. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

E. Valve Installation

1. General valve installation requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping".
2. Shutoff Valves:
  - a. Install shutoff valve on each sewage pump discharge.



- b. Install gate or full-port ball valve for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.
- c. Install gate valve for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
- 3. Check Valves: Install swing check valve, between pump and shutoff valve, on each sewage pump discharge.
- 4. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to sewage backflow.
  - a. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves. Use normally closed type, unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Floor Drains: Drain outlet backwater valves, unless drain has integral backwater valve.
  - c. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.
  - d. Backwater valve are specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties".

#### F. Hanger And Support Installation

- 1. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
- 2. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers And Supports For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
  - a. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
  - b. Install stainless-steel **OR** fiberglass pipe hangers, **as directed** for horizontal piping in corrosive environments.
  - c. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
  - d. Install stainless-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
  - e. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
  - f. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs according to the following:
    - 1) 100 Feet (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - 2) Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - 3) Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m), if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
  - g. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
  - h. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- 3. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches (300 mm) of each fitting[, **valve,**] and coupling.
- 4. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- 5. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum rods.
- 6. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - a. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - b. NPS 3 (DN 80): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - c. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
  - d. NPS 6 (DN 150): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
  - e. NPS 8 to NPS 12 (DN 200 to DN 300): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
  - f. Spacing for 10-foot (3-m) lengths may be increased to 10 feet (3 m). Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches (1500 mm).
- 7. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet (4.5 m).
- 8. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - a. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): 84 inches (2100 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - b. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - c. NPS 2 (DN 50): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - d. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 11 feet (3.4 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - e. NPS 3 (DN 80): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - f. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
  - g. NPS 6 and NPS 8 (DN 150 and DN 200): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
  - h. NPS 10 to NPS 12 (DN 250 to DN 300): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.



9. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet (4.5 m).
10. Install hangers for stainless-steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - a. NPS 2 (DN 50): 84 inches (2100 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - b. NPS 3 (DN 80): 96 inches (2400 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - c. NPS 4 (DN 100): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - d. NPS 6 (DN 150): 10 feet (3 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
11. Install supports for vertical stainless-steel piping every 10 feet (3 m).
12. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - a. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): 72 inches (1800 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - b. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 96 inches (2400 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - c. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - d. NPS 3 to NPS 5 (DN 80 to DN 125): 10 feet (3 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - e. NPS 6 (DN 150): 10 feet (3 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
  - f. NPS 8 (DN 200): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
13. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet (3 m).
14. Install hangers for ABS and PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - a. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - b. NPS 3 (DN 80): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - c. NPS 4 and 5 (DN 100 and 125): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
  - d. NPS 6 and NPS 8 (DN 150 and DN 200): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
  - e. NPS 10 to NPS 12 (DN 250 to DN 300): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
15. Install supports for vertical ABS and PVC piping every 48 inches (1200 mm).
16. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

#### G. Connections

1. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
2. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
3. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:
  - a. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
  - b. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - c. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
  - d. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
  - e. Install horizontal backwater valves with cleanout cover flush with floor **OR** in pit with pit cover flush with floor, **as directed**.
  - f. Comply with requirements for backwater valves, cleanouts and drains specified in Division 22 Section "Facility Storm Drainage Piping".
  - g. Equipment: Connect drainage piping as indicated. Provide shutoff valve if indicated and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
4. Connect force-main piping to the following:
  - a. Sanitary Sewer: To exterior force main or sanitary manhole.
  - b. Sewage Pumps: To sewage pump discharge.
5. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.
6. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:



- a. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
- b. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

#### H. Identification

1. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 Section "Identification For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".

#### I. Field Quality Control

1. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - a. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
  - b. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
2. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
3. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
4. Test sanitary drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
  - a. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  - b. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  - c. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping, except outside leaders, on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water (30 kPa). From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
  - d. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg (250 Pa). Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
  - e. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  - f. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.
5. Test force-main piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
  - a. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced force-main piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  - b. Cap and subject piping to static-water pressure of 50 psig (345 kPa) above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
  - c. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  - d. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.



J. Cleaning and Protection

1. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
2. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
3. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.
4. Exposed ABS and PVC Piping: Protect plumbing vents exposed to sunlight with two coats of water-based latex paint.

END OF SECTION 22 11 16 00d



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





## SECTION 22 11 16 00e - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for storm drainage piping. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section includes:
  - a. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
  - b. Special pipe fittings.
  - c. Encasement for underground metal piping.

#### C. Performance Requirements

1. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working-pressure, unless otherwise indicated:
  - a. Storm Drainage Piping: 10-foot head of water (30 kPa).
  - b. Storm Drainage, Force-Main Piping: 50 psig (345 kPa) **OR** 100 psig (690 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**.
2. Seismic Performance: Soil, waste, and vent piping and support and installation shall be capable of withstanding the effects of seismic events determined according to ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures."

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For solvent cements and adhesive primers, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings: For controlled-flow **OR** siphonic roof drainage system, as directed by the Owner. Include calculations, plans, and details. Controlled-Flow Storm Drainage System: Include calculations, plans, and details.
4. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For storm drainage piping, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
  - a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  - b. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
5. Field quality-control inspection and test reports.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
2. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-drain" for plastic drain piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

#### F. Project Conditions

1. Interruption of Existing Storm-Drainage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
  - a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of storm-drainage service.



- b. Do not proceed with interruption of storm-drainage service without the Owner's written permission.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Piping Materials

1. Refer to Part 1.3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

### B. Hub-And-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Pipe And Fittings

1. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service and Extra-Heavy class(es).
2. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
3. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

### C. Hubless Cast-Iron Soil Pipe And Fittings

1. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
2. Shielded Couplings: ASTM C 1277 assembly of metal shield or housing, corrosion-resistant fasteners, and rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
  - a. Standard, Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings: CISPI 310, with stainless-steel corrugated shield; stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
  - b. Heavy-Duty, Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings: With stainless-steel shield, stainless-steel bands and tightening devices, and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
  - c. Heavy-Duty, Shielded, Cast-Iron Couplings: ASTM A 48/A 48M, two-piece, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
3. Rigid, Unshielded Couplings: ASTM C 1461, sleeve-type, reducing- or transition-type mechanical coupling molded from ASTM C 1440, TPE material with corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

### D. Galvanized-Steel Pipe And Fittings

1. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or S, Grade A or B, Standard Weight or Schedule 40, galvanized. Include ends matching joining method.
2. Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.12, galvanized, **as directed**, threaded, cast-iron drainage pattern.
3. Pressure Fittings:
  - a. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M or ASTM A 106, Schedule 40, galvanized, seamless steel pipe. Include ends matching joining method.
  - b. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Class 150; hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal, bronze seating surface; and female threaded ends.
  - c. Gray-Iron, Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, galvanized, **as directed**, standard pattern.
  - d. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125.
  - e. Cast-Iron, Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Class 125, galvanized, **as directed**.
4. Grooved-Joint Systems:
  - a. Grooved-End, Steel-Piping Fittings: ASTM A 47/A 47M, galvanized, **as directed**, malleable-iron casting; ASTM A 106, galvanized-steel pipe; or ASTM A 536, galvanized, **as directed**, ductile-iron casting; with dimensions matching steel pipe.
  - b. Grooved-End, Steel-Piping Couplings: AWWA C606, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, gasket suitable for water, and bolts and nuts.

### E. Ductile-Iron, Pipe and Fittings

1. Ductile-Iron, Mechanical-Joint Piping
  - a. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end, unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
  - b. Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110/A21.10, mechanical-joint ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile-iron compact pattern.



- c. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A121.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
  2. Ductile-Iron, Push-on-Joint,
    - a. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end, unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
    - b. Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110/A21.10, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile-iron compact pattern.
    - c. Gaskets: AWWA C111/A21.11, rubber.
  3. Ductile Iron, Grooved-Joint Piping:
    - a. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51 with round-cut-grooved ends according to AWWA C606.
    - b. Ductile-Iron-Pipe Appurtenances:
      - 1) Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Fittings: ASTM A 536, ductile-iron castings with dimensions matching pipe. AWWA C110/A21.10 ductile-iron pipe or AWWA C153/A21.53 ductile-iron fittings and complying with AWWA C606 for grooved ends.
      - 2) Grooved Mechanical Couplings for Ductile-Iron Pipe: ASTM F 1476, Type I. Include ferrous housing sections with continuous curved keys, EPDM-rubber center-leg gasket suitable for hot and cold water, and bolts and nuts.
- F. Copper Tube And Fittings
  1. Copper DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.
  2. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast-copper or ASME B16.29, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings.
  3. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Types L and M (ASTM B 88M, Types B and C), water tube, drawn temper.
  4. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), water tube, annealed temper.
  5. Copper Pressure Fittings:
    - a. Copper Pressure Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
    - b. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
  6. Copper Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast copper with solder-joint end.
    - a. Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, full-face, flat, nonmetallic, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
    - b. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
  7. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead free with ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux.
- G. ABS Pipe And Fittings
  1. Solid-Wall ABS Pipe: ASTM D 2661, Schedule 40.
  2. Cellular-Core ABS Pipe: ASTM F 628, Schedule 40.
  3. ABS Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2661, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns.
  4. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2235
    - a. Use ABS solvent cement that has a VOC content of 325 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- H. PVC Pipe And Fittings
  1. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.
  2. Cellular-Core PVC Pipe: ASTM F 891, Schedule 40.
  3. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.
  4. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F 656.
    - a. Use adhesive primer that has a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  5. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.



- a. Use PVC solvent cement that has a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## I. Specialty Pipe Fittings

### 1. Transition Couplings:

- a. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in OD's or of different materials. Include end connections same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
- b. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified-piping-system fitting.
- c. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
  - 1) Standard: ASTM C 1173.
  - 2) Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
  - 3) Sleeve Materials:
    - a) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
    - b) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
    - c) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
- d. Shielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
  - 1) Standard: ASTM C 1460.
  - 2) Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
- e. Pressure Transition Couplings:
  - f. Standard: AWWA C219.
  - g. Description: Metal, sleeve-type couplings same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to and ends compatible with, pipes to be joined.
  - h. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Carbon steel **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Ductile iron **OR** Malleable iron, **as directed**.
  - i. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
  - j. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.

### 2. Dielectric Fittings:

- a. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- b. Dielectric Unions:
  - 1) Description:
    - a) Standard: ASSE 1079.
    - b) Pressure Rating: **150 psig (1035 kPa) OR 250 psig (1725 kPa)** at 180 deg F (82 deg C), **as directed**.
    - c) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- c. Dielectric Flanges:
  - 1) Description:
    - a) Standard: ASSE 1079.
    - b) Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
    - c) Pressure Rating: **150 psig (1035 kPa) OR 175 psig (1200 kPa)** minimum **OR 300 psig (2070 kPa), as directed**.
    - d) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- d. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
  - 1) Description:
    - a) Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.



- b) Pressure Rating: **150 psig (1035 kPa)**
- c) Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
- d) Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
- e) Washers: Phenolic with steel-backing washers.
- e. Dielectric Nipples:
  - 1) Description:
    - a) Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
    - b) Pressure Rating: **300 psig (2070 kPa) at 225 deg F (107 deg C)**.
    - c) End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
    - d) Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

J. Encasement For Underground Metal Piping

- 1. Description: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105
- 2. Material: High-density, crosslaminated PE film of 0.004-inch (0.10-mm) **OR** LLDPE film of 0.008-inch (0.20-mm), **as directed**, minimum thickness.
- 3. Form: Sheet **OR** Tube, **as directed**.
- 4. Color: Black **OR** Natural, **as directed**.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Earth Moving

- 1. Refer to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

B. Piping Installation

- 1. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations from layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- 2. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- 3. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- 4. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- 5. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- 6. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- 7. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- 8. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- 9. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- 10. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
- 11. Make changes in direction for storm drainage piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- 12. Lay buried building storm drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- 13. Install storm drainage piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
  - a. Building Storm Drain: 1 percent **OR** 2 percent, **as directed**, downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 (DN 80) and smaller; 1 percent **OR** 2 percent, **as directed**, downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger.



- b. Horizontal Storm-Drainage Piping: **2 percent** downward in direction of flow.
- 14. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
  - a. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- 15. Install steel piping according to applicable plumbing code.
- 16. Install aboveground copper tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- 17. Install aboveground ABS piping according to ASTM D 2661.
- 18. Install aboveground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2665.
- 19. Install underground ABS and PVC piping according to ASTM D 2321.
- 20. Install engineered controlled-flow **OR** siphonic, **as directed**, drain specialties and storm drainage piping in locations indicated.
- 21. Install underground, ductile-iron, force-main piping according to AWWA C600. Install buried piping inside building between wall and floor penetrations and connection to storm sewer piping outside building with restrained joints. Anchor pipe to wall or floor. Install thrust-block supports at vertical and horizontal offsets.
  - a. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- 22. Install underground, copper, force-main tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
  - a. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- 23. Install force mains at elevations indicated.
- 24. Plumbing Specialties:
  - a. Install backwater valves in storm drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Division 33 Section "Storm Utility Drainage Piping".
  - b. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building storm drains connect to building storm sewers in storm drainage gravity-flow piping. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in storm drainage force-main piping. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Division 33 Section "Storm Utility Drainage Piping".
  - c. Install drains in storm drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Division 33 Section "Storm Utility Drainage Piping".
- 25. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- 26. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".
- 27. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".
- 28. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".

#### C. Joint Construction

- 1. Basic piping joint construction requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".
- 2. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
- 3. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Calked Joints: Join according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead and oakum calked joints.
- 4. Hubless Cast-Iron Soil Piping Coupled Joints: Join according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-coupling joints.
- 5. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  - b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.



6. Join copper tube and fittings with soldered joints according to ASTM B 828 procedure. Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux and ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder.
  7. Grooved Joints: Cut groove ends of pipe according to AWWA C606. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fittings. Install coupling housing sections, over gasket, with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
  8. Flanged Joints: Align bolt holes. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Torque bolts in cross pattern.
  9. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
    - a. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
    - b. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2235 and ASTM D 2661 Appendixes.
    - c. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM D 2665 Appendixes.
- D. Specialty Pipe Fitting Installation
1. Transition Couplings:
    - a. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in OD's.
    - b. In Drainage Piping: Unshielded **OR** Shielded, **as directed** nonpressure transition couplings.
    - c. In Aboveground Force-Main Piping: Fitting-type transition couplings.
    - d. In Underground Force-Main Piping:
      - 1) NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Fitting-type transition couplings.
      - 2) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger: Pressure transition couplings.
  2. Dielectric Fittings:
    - a. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
    - b. Dielectric Fittings for **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Smaller: Use dielectric nipples **OR** unions, **as directed**.
    - c. Dielectric Fittings for **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100)**: Use dielectric flanges **OR** flange kits **OR** nipples, **as directed**.
    - d. Dielectric Fittings for **NPS 5 (DN 125)** and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.
- E. Valve Installation
1. General valve installation requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping".
  2. Shutoff Valves: Install shutoff valve on each sump pump discharge.
    - a. Install gate or full-port ball valve for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.
    - b. Install gate valve for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
  3. Check Valves: Install swing check valve, between pump and shutoff valve, on each sump pump discharge.
  4. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to backflow.
    - a. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves. Use normally closed type, unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.
    - c. Comply with requirements for backwater valve specified in Division 22 Section "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties".
- F. Hanger And Support Installation
1. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
  2. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports and installation specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers And Supports For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
    - a. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
    - b. Install stainless-steel **OR** fiberglass pipe hangers, **as directed**, for horizontal piping in corrosive environments.
    - c. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.



- d. Install stainless-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
- e. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
- f. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
  - 1) 100 Feet (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
  - 2) Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
  - 3) Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m), if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
- g. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
- h. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
3. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches (300 mm) of each fitting, valve, and coupling.
4. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
5. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum rods.
6. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - a. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - b. NPS 3 (DN 80): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - c. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
  - d. NPS 6 (DN 150): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
  - e. NPS 8 to NPS 12 (DN 200 to DN 300): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
  - f. Spacing for 10-foot (3-m) lengths may be increased to 10 feet (3 m). Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches (1500 mm).
7. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet (4.5 m).
8. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - a. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): 84 inches (2100 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - b. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - c. NPS 2 (DN 50): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - d. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 11 feet (3.4 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - e. NPS 3 (DN 80): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - f. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
  - g. NPS 6 (DN 150): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
  - h. NPS 8 to NPS 12 (DN 200 to DN 300): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
9. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet (4.5 m).
10. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - a. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): 72 inches (1800 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - b. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 96 inches (2400 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - c. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - d. NPS 3 to NPS 5 (DN 80 to DN 125): 10 feet (3 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - e. NPS 6 (DN 150): 10 feet (3 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
  - f. NPS 8 (DN 200): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
11. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet (3 m).
12. Install hangers for ABS and PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - a. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - b. NPS 3 (DN 80): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - c. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
  - d. NPS 6 (DN 150): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
  - e. NPS 8 to NPS 12 (DN 200 to DN 300): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
13. Install supports for vertical ABS and PVC piping every 48 inches (1200 mm).





14. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

G. Connections

1. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
2. Connect interior storm drainage piping to exterior storm drainage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
3. Connect storm drainage piping to roof drains and storm drainage specialties.
  - a. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor, and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
  - b. Install horizontal backwater valves with cleanout cover flush with floor **OR** in pit with pit cover flush with floor, **as directed**.
  - c. Comply with requirements for backwater valves, cleanouts and drains specified in Division 22 Section "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties".
4. Connect force-main piping to the following:
  - a. Storm Sewer: To exterior force main or storm manhole.
  - b. Sump Pumps: To sump pump discharge.
5. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.
6. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - a. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  - b. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

H. Identification

1. Identify exposed storm drainage piping. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 Section "Identification For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".

I. Field Quality Control

1. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - a. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in.
  - b. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
2. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
3. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
4. Test storm drainage piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
  - a. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  - b. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced storm drainage piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  - c. Test Procedure: Test storm drainage piping, except outside leaders, **as directed**, on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water (30 kPa). From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
  - d. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  - e. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.



5. Test force-main piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
  - a. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced force-main piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  - b. Cap and subject piping to static-water pressure of 50 psig (345 kPa) above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
  - c. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  - d. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

#### J. Cleaning

1. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
2. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
3. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

#### K. Piping Schedule

1. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.
2. Aboveground storm drainage piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and smaller shall be any of the following:
  - a. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - b. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; **CISPI, heavy-duty**, hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  - c. Galvanized-steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
  - d. Copper tube and fittings in first subparagraph below are only available in NPS 1-1/4 to NPS 8 (DN 32 to DN 200).
  - e. Copper DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
  - f. Solid-wall **OR** Cellular-core ABS pipe, **as directed**, ABS socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  - g. Solid-wall **OR** Cellular-core PVC pipe, **as directed**, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  - h. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded **OR** Shielded, **as directed**, nonpressure transition couplings.
3. Aboveground, storm drainage piping NPS 8 (DN 200) and larger shall be any of the following:
  - a. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - b. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; **CISPI, heavy-duty**, hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  - c. Galvanized-steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
  - d. Copper DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
  - e. Solid-wall **OR** Cellular-core PVC pipe, **as directed**, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  - f. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded **OR** Shielded, **as directed**, nonpressure transition couplings.
4. Underground storm drainage piping **NPS 6 (DN 150) and smaller** shall be **any of** the following:
  - a. Extra Heavy **OR** Service class, **as directed**, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed **OR** calking materials; and calked joints, **as directed**.
  - b. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; **CISPI, heavy-duty, cast-iron**, hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  - c. Solid-wall **OR** Cellular-core ABS pipe, **as directed**, ABS socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  - d. **Solid-wall OR Cellular-core** PVC pipe, **as directed**, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.



- e. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded **OR** Shielded, **as directed**, nonpressure transition couplings.
5. Underground, storm drainage piping **NPS 8 (DN 200) and larger** shall be **any of** the following:
  - a. Extra Heavy **OR** Service class, **as directed**, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed **OR** calking materials; and calked joints **as directed**.
  - b. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; **CISPI, heavy-duty, cast-iron**, hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  - c. **Solid-wall OR Cellular-core** PVC pipe, **as directed**, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  - d. Cellular-core, sewer and drain series, PVC pipe; PVC socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
  - e. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: **Unshielded OR Shielded, as directed**, nonpressure transition couplings.
6. Aboveground storm drainage force mains **NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50)** shall be **any of** the following:
  - a. Hard copper tube, copper pressure fittings, and soldered joints.
  - b. Galvanized-steel pipe, pressure fittings, and threaded joints.
7. Aboveground storm drainage force mains **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 (DN 65 to DN 150)** shall be any of the following:
  - a. Hard copper tube, copper pressure fittings, and soldered joints.
  - b. Galvanized-steel pipe, pressure fittings, and threaded joints.
  - c. Grooved-end, galvanized-steel pipe; grooved-joint, galvanized-steel-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
  - d. Fitting-type transition couplings if dissimilar pipe materials.
8. Underground storm drainage force mains NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller shall be any of the following:
  - a. Hard **OR** Soft, **as directed** copper tube; **wrought-copper** pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
  - b. Ductile-iron, mechanical-joint piping and mechanical joints.
  - c. Ductile-iron, push-on-joint piping and push-on joints.
  - d. Ductile-iron, grooved-joint piping and grooved joints.
  - e. Fitting-type transition coupling for piping smaller than NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and pressure transition coupling for NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and larger if dissimilar pipe materials.
9. Underground storm drainage force mains NPS 5 (DN 125) and larger shall be any of the following:
  - a. Hard copper tube; **wrought-copper** pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
  - b. Ductile-iron, mechanical-joint piping and mechanical joints.
  - c. Ductile-iron, push-on-joint piping and push-on joints.
  - d. Ductile-iron, grooved-joint piping and grooved joints.
  - e. Pressure transition couplings if dissimilar pipe materials.

END OF SECTION 22 11 16 00e



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 22 11 16 00f - HYDRONIC PIPING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for hydronic piping. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes pipe and fitting materials, joining methods, special-duty valves, and specialties for the following:
  - a. Hot-water heating piping.
  - b. Chilled-water piping.
  - c. Dual-temperature heating and cooling water piping.
  - d. Condenser-water piping.
  - e. Glycol cooling-water piping.
  - f. Makeup-water piping.
  - g. Condensate-drain piping.
  - h. Blowdown-drain piping.
  - i. Air-vent piping.
  - j. Safety-valve-inlet and -outlet piping.

#### C. Definitions

1. PTFE: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
2. RTRF: Reinforced thermosetting resin (fiberglass) fittings.
3. RTRP: Reinforced thermosetting resin (fiberglass) pipe.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature:
  - a. Hot-Water Heating Piping: **psig (kPa)**, as directed by the Owner at 200 deg F (93 deg C).
  - b. Chilled-Water Piping: **psig (kPa)**, as directed by the Owner at 200 deg F (93 deg C).
  - c. Dual-Temperature Heating and Cooling Water Piping: **psig (kPa)**, ethylene at 200 deg F (93 deg C).
  - d. Condenser-Water Piping: **psig (kPa)**, as directed by the Owner at 150 deg F (66 deg C).
  - e. Glycol Cooling-Water Piping: **psig (kPa)**, as directed by the Owner at 150 deg F (66 deg C).
  - f. Makeup-Water Piping: 80 psig (552 kPa) at 150 deg F (66 deg C).
  - g. Condensate-Drain Piping: 150 deg F (66 deg C).
  - h. Blowdown-Drain Piping: 200 deg F (93 deg C).
  - i. Air-Vent Piping: 200 deg F (93 deg C).
  - j. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to the pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of the following:
  - a. Plastic pipe and fittings with solvent cement.
  - b. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive.
  - c. Pressure-seal fittings.
  - d. Valves. Include flow and pressure drop curves based on manufacturer's testing for calibrated-orifice balancing valves and automatic flow-control valves.
  - e. Air control devices.



- f. Chemical treatment.
- g. Hydronic specialties.
2. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For solvent cements and adhesive primers, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings: Detail, at 1/4 (1:50) scale, the piping layout, fabrication of pipe anchors, hangers, supports for multiple pipes, alignment guides, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to the building structure. Detail location of anchors, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops.
4. Welding certificates.
5. Qualification Data: For Installer.
6. Field quality-control test reports.
7. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air control devices, hydronic specialties, and special-duty valves to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
8. Water Analysis: Submit a copy of the water analysis to illustrate water quality available at Project site.

#### F. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications:
  - a. Installers of Pressure-Sealed Joints: Installers shall be certified by the pressure-seal joint manufacturer as having been trained and qualified to join piping with pressure-seal pipe couplings and fittings.
  - b. Fiberglass Pipe and Fitting Installers: Installers of RTRF and RTRP shall be certified by the manufacturer of pipes and fittings as having been trained and qualified to join fiberglass piping with manufacturer-recommended adhesive.
2. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
3. Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
  - a. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
  - b. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
4. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation. Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Copper Tube And Fittings

1. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) **OR** ASTM B 88, Type M (ASTM B 88M, Type C), **as directed**.
2. Annealed-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A).
3. DWV Copper Tubing: ASTM B 306, Type DWV.
4. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
  - a. Grooved-End Copper Fittings: ASTM B 75 (ASTM B 75M), copper tube or ASTM B 584, bronze casting.
  - b. Grooved-End-Tube Couplings: Rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated; gasketed fitting. Ductile-iron housing with keys matching pipe and fitting grooves, prelubricated, **as directed**, EPDM gasket rated for minimum 230 deg F (110 deg C) for use with housing, and steel bolts and nuts.
5. Copper or Bronze Pressure-Seal Fittings:
  - a. Housing: Copper.
  - b. O-Rings and Pipe Stops: EPDM.



- c. Tools: Manufacturer's special tools.
  - d. Minimum 200-psig (1379-kPa) working-pressure rating at 250 deg F (121 deg C).
  6. Copper, Mechanically Formed Tee Option: For forming T-branch on copper water tube.
  7. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- B. Steel Pipe And Fittings
1. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; type, grade, and wall thickness as indicated in Part 1.3 "Piping Applications" Article.
  2. Cast-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4; Classes 125 and 250 as indicated in Part 1.3 "Piping Applications" Article.
  3. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300 as indicated in Part 1.3 "Piping Applications" Article.
  4. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300 as indicated in Part 1.3 "Piping Applications" Article.
  5. Cast-Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Classes 25, 125, and 250; raised ground face, and bolt holes spot faced as indicated in Part 1.3 "Piping Applications" Article.
  6. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.
  7. Wrought Cast- and Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
    - a. Material Group: 1.1.
    - b. End Connections: Butt welding.
    - c. Facings: Raised face.
  8. Grooved Mechanical-Joint Fittings and Couplings:
    - a. Joint Fittings: ASTM A 536, Grade 65-45-12 ductile iron; ASTM A 47/A 47M, Grade 32510 malleable iron; ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type F, E, or S, Grade B fabricated steel; or ASTM A 106, Grade B steel fittings with grooves or shoulders constructed to accept grooved-end couplings; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.
    - b. Couplings: Ductile- or malleable-iron housing and synthetic rubber gasket of central cavity pressure-responsive design; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.
  9. Steel Pressure-Seal Fittings:
    - a. Housing: Steel.
    - b. O-Rings and Pipe Stop: EPDM.
    - c. Tools: Manufacturer's special tool.
    - d. Minimum 300-psig (2070-kPa) working-pressure rating at 230 deg F (110 deg C).
  10. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of same materials and wall thicknesses as pipe in which they are installed.
- C. Plastic Pipe And Fittings
1. CPVC Plastic Pipe: ASTM F 441/F 441M, Schedules 40 and 80, plain ends as indicated in Part 1.3 "Piping Applications" Article.
  2. CPVC Plastic Pipe Fittings: Socket-type pipe fittings, ASTM F 438 for Schedule 40 pipe; ASTM F 439 for Schedule 80 pipe.
  3. PVC Plastic Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedules 40 and 80, plain ends as indicated in Part 1.3 "Piping Applications" Article.
  4. PVC Plastic Pipe Fittings: Socket-type pipe fittings, ASTM D 2466 for Schedule 40 pipe; ASTM D 2467 for Schedule 80 pipe.
- D. Fiberglass Pipe And Fittings
1. RTRP: ASTM D 2996, filament-wound pipe with tapered bell and spigot ends for adhesive joints.
  2. RTRF: Compression or spray-up/contact molded of same material, pressure class, and joining method as pipe.
  3. Flanges: ASTM D 4024. Full-face gaskets suitable for the service, minimum 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) thick, 60-70 durometer. ASTM A 307, Grade B, hex head bolts with washers.



#### E. Joining Materials

1. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
  - a. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
    - 1) Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
    - 2) Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
5. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BAg-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.
6. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
7. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
  - a. CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493.
    - 1) Use CPVC solvent cement that has a VOC content of 490 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
    - 2) Use adhesive primer that has a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - b. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
    - 1) Use PVC solvent cement that has a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
    - 2) Use adhesive primer that has a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
8. Fiberglass Pipe Adhesive: As furnished or recommended by pipe manufacturer.
  - a. Use fiberglass adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
9. Gasket Material: Thickness, material, and type suitable for fluid to be handled and working temperatures and pressures.

#### F. Transition Fittings

1. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
  - a. CPVC **OR** PVC, **as directed**, one-piece fitting with one threaded brass or copper insert and one Schedule 80 solvent-cement-joint end.
2. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:
  - a. MSS SP-107, CPVC **OR** PVC, **as directed**, union. Include brass or copper end, Schedule 80 solvent-cement-joint end, rubber gasket, and threaded union.

#### G. Dielectric Fittings

1. Description: Combination fitting of copper-alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
2. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
3. Dielectric Unions:
  - a. Factory-fabricated union assembly, for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
4. Dielectric Flanges:
  - a. Factory-fabricated companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
5. Dielectric-Flange Kits:
  - a. Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.





- b. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.
- 6. Dielectric Couplings:
  - a. Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
- 7. Dielectric Nipples:
  - a. Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).

#### H. Valves

- 1. Gate, Globe, Check, Ball, and Butterfly Valves: Comply with requirements specified in Division 22 Section(s) "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping" OR Division 23 Section(s) "General-duty Valves For Hvac Piping".
- 2. Automatic Temperature-Control Valves, Actuators, and Sensors: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac".
- 3. Plastic Ball Valves:
  - a. Body: One-, two-, or three-piece CPVC or PVC to match piping.
  - b. Ball: Full-port CPVC or PVC to match piping.
  - c. Seats: PTFE.
  - d. Seals: EPDM.
  - e. End Connections: Socket, union, or flanged.
  - f. Handle Style: Tee shape.
  - g. CWP Rating: Equal to piping service.
  - h. Maximum Operating Temperature: Equal to piping service.
  - i. Comply with MSS SP-122.
- 4. Plastic Butterfly Valves:
  - a. Body: PVC or CPVC to match piping wafer type for installation between flanges.
  - b. Disc: EPDM-coated steel.
  - c. Seats: PTFE.
  - d. Handle Style: Locking lever.
  - e. CWP Rating: Equal to piping service.
  - f. Maximum Operating Temperature: Equal to piping service.
- 5. Plastic Check Valves:
  - a. Body: One-, two-, or three-piece PVC or CPVC to match piping.
  - b. Ends: Socket or flanged.
  - c. Seats: PTFE.
  - d. Check Style: Swing or ball type.
  - e. CWP Rating: Equal to piping service.
  - f. Maximum Operating Temperature: Equal to piping service.
- 6. Bronze, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:
  - a. Body: Bronze, ball or plug type with calibrated orifice or venturi.
  - b. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
  - c. Plug: Resin.
  - d. Seat: PTFE.
  - e. End Connections: Threaded or socket.
  - f. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
  - g. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
  - h. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig (860 kPa).
  - i. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).
- 7. Cast-Iron or Steel, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:
  - a. Body: Cast-iron or steel body, ball, plug, or globe pattern with calibrated orifice or venturi.
  - b. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
  - c. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
  - d. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
  - e. Seat: PTFE.



- f. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
  - g. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
  - h. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
  - i. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig (860 kPa).
  - j. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).
8. Diaphragm-Operated, Pressure-Reducing Valves:
- a. Body: Bronze or brass.
  - b. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
  - c. Seat: Brass.
  - d. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
  - e. Diaphragm: EPT.
  - f. Low inlet-pressure check valve.
  - g. Inlet Strainer: removable without system shutdown.
  - h. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
  - i. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.
9. Diaphragm-Operated Safety Valves:
- a. Body: Bronze or brass.
  - b. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
  - c. Seat: Brass.
  - d. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
  - e. Diaphragm: EPT.
  - f. Wetted, Internal Work Parts: Brass and rubber.
  - g. Inlet Strainer: removable without system shutdown.
  - h. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
  - i. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IV, and selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.
10. Automatic Flow-Control Valves:
- a. Body: Brass or ferrous metal.
  - b. Piston and Spring Assembly: Stainless steel **OR** Corrosion resistant, **as directed**, tamper proof, self cleaning, and removable.
  - c. Combination Assemblies: Include bronze or brass-alloy ball valve.
  - d. Identification Tag: Marked with zone identification, valve number, and flow rate.
  - e. Size: Same as pipe in which installed.
  - f. Performance: Maintain constant flow, plus or minus 5 percent over system pressure fluctuations.
  - g. Minimum CWP Rating: 175 psig (1207 kPa) **OR** 300 psig (2070 kPa), **as directed**.
  - h. Maximum Operating Temperature: 200 deg F (93 deg C) **OR** 250 deg F (121 deg C), **as directed**.
- I. Air Control Devices
1. Manual Air Vents:
- a. Body: Bronze.
  - b. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
  - c. Operator: Screwdriver or thumbscrew.
  - d. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
  - e. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8 (DN 6).
  - f. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
  - g. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F (107 deg C).
2. Automatic Air Vents:
- a. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
  - b. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
  - c. Operator: Noncorrosive metal float.
  - d. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).



- e. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/4 (DN 8).
- f. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
- g. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F (116 deg C).
3. Expansion Tanks:
  - a. Tank: Welded steel, rated for 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure and 375 deg F (191 deg C) maximum operating temperature, with taps in bottom of tank for tank fitting and taps in end of tank for gage glass. Tanks shall be factory tested with taps fabricated and labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
  - b. Air-Control Tank Fitting: Cast-iron body, copper-plated tube, brass vent tube plug, and stainless-steel ball check, 100-gal. (379-L) unit only; sized for compression-tank diameter. Provide tank fittings for 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure and 250 deg F (121 deg C) maximum operating temperature.
  - c. Tank Drain Fitting: Brass body, nonferrous internal parts; 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure and 240 deg F (116 deg C) maximum operating temperature; constructed to admit air to compression tank, drain water, and close off system.
  - d. Gage Glass: Full height with dual manual shutoff valves, 3/4-inch- (20-mm-) diameter gage glass, and slotted-metal glass guard.
4. Diaphragm-Type **OR** Bladder-Type, **as directed**, Expansion Tanks:
  - a. Tank: Welded steel, rated for 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure and 375 deg F (191 deg C) maximum operating temperature. Factory test with taps fabricated and supports installed and labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
  - b. Diaphragm **OR** Bladder, **as directed**: Securely sealed into tank to separate air charge from system water to maintain required expansion capacity.
  - c. Air-Charge Fittings: Schrader valve, stainless steel with EPDM seats.
5. Tangential-Type Air Separators:
  - a. Tank: Welded steel; ASME constructed and labeled for 125-psig (860-kPa) minimum working pressure and 375 deg F (191 deg C) maximum operating temperature.
  - b. Air Collector Tube: Perforated stainless steel, constructed to direct released air into expansion tank.
  - c. Tangential Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged connections for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
  - d. Blowdown Connection: Threaded.
  - e. Size: Match system flow capacity.
6. In-Line Air Separators:
  - a. Tank: One-piece cast iron with an integral weir constructed to decelerate system flow to maximize air separation.
  - b. Maximum Working Pressure: Up to 175 psig (1207 kPa).
  - c. Maximum Operating Temperature: Up to 300 deg F (149 deg C).
7. Air Purgers:
  - a. Body: Cast iron with internal baffles that slow the water velocity to separate the air from solution and divert it to the vent for quick removal.
  - b. Maximum Working Pressure: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
  - c. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).
- J. Chemical Treatment
  1. Bypass Chemical Feeder: Welded steel construction; 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure; 5-gal. (19-L) capacity; with fill funnel and inlet, outlet, and drain valves.
    - a. Chemicals: Specially formulated, based on analysis of makeup water, to prevent accumulation of scale and corrosion in piping and connected equipment.
  2. Ethylene and Propylene Glycol: Industrial grade with corrosion inhibitors and environmental-stabilizer additives for mixing with water in systems indicated to contain antifreeze or glycol solutions.
- K. Hydronic Piping Specialties
  1. Y-Pattern Strainers:



- a. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
  - b. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
  - c. Strainer Screen: 40 **OR** 60, **as directed**, -mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
  - d. CWP Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).
2. Basket Strainers:
- a. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, high-tensile cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
  - b. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
  - c. Strainer Screen: 40 **OR** 60, **as directed**, -mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
  - d. CWP Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).
3. T-Pattern Strainers:
- a. Body: Ductile or malleable iron with removable access coupling and end cap for strainer maintenance.
  - b. End Connections: Grooved ends.
  - c. Strainer Screen: 40 **OR** 60, **as directed**, -mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 57 percent free area.
  - d. CWP Rating: 750 psig (5170 kPa).
4. Stainless-Steel Bellow, Flexible Connectors:
- a. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
  - b. End Connections: Threaded or flanged to match equipment connected.
  - c. Performance: Capable of 3/4-inch (20-mm) misalignment.
  - d. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
  - e. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).
5. Spherical, Rubber, Flexible Connectors:
- a. Body: Fiber-reinforced rubber body.
  - b. End Connections: Steel flanges drilled to align with Classes 150 and 300 steel flanges.
  - c. Performance: Capable of misalignment.
  - d. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
  - e. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).
6. Expansion fittings are specified in Division 22 Section(s) "Expansion Fittings And Loops For Plumbing Piping" OR Division 23 Section(s) "Expansion Fittings And Loops For Hvac Piping".

### 1.3 EXECUTION

1. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be any of the following:
  - a. Type L (B) **OR** M (C), **as directed**, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed **OR** pressure-seal, **as directed**, joints.
  - b. Schedule 40 **OR** 30 **OR** 20, **as directed**, steel pipe; Class 125, cast-iron **OR** 150, malleable-iron **OR** 250, cast-iron **OR** 300, malleable-iron, **as directed**, fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.
  - c. Schedule 5 steel pipe; steel, pressure-seal couplings and fittings; and pressure-seal joints.
  - d. Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, CPVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
2. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, shall be any of the following:
  - a. Type L (B) **OR** M (C), **as directed**, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed, **as directed**, joints.
  - b. Schedule 40 **OR** 30 **OR** 20, **as directed**, steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
  - c. Schedule 40 **OR** 30 **OR** 20, **as directed**, steel pipe; grooved, mechanical joint coupling and fittings; and grooved, mechanical joints.



- d. Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, CPVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
- e. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
3. Hot-water heating piping installed belowground and within slabs shall be either of the following:
  - a. Type K (A), annealed-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed, **as directed**, joints. Use the fewest possible joints.
  - b. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
4. Chilled-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be any of the following:
  - a. Type L (B) **OR** M (C), **as directed**, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed **OR** pressure-seal, **as directed**, joints.
  - b. Schedule 40 **OR** 30 **OR** 20, **as directed**, steel pipe; Class 125, cast-iron **OR** 150, malleable-iron **OR** 250, cast-iron **OR** 300, malleable-iron, **as directed**, fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.
  - c. Schedule 5 steel pipe; steel, pressure-seal couplings and fittings; and pressure-seal joints.
  - d. Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, CPVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
5. Chilled-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, shall be any of the following:
  - a. Type L (B) **OR** M (C), **as directed**, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed, **as directed**, joints.
  - b. Schedule 40 **OR** 30 **OR** 20, **as directed**, steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
  - c. Schedule 40 **OR** 30 **OR** 20, **as directed**, steel pipe; grooved, mechanical joint coupling and fittings; and grooved, mechanical joints.
  - d. Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, CPVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
  - e. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
6. Chilled-water piping installed belowground and within slabs shall be either of the following:
  - a. Type K (A), annealed-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed, **as directed**, joints. Use the fewest possible joints.
  - b. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
7. Dual-temperature heating and cooling water piping, aboveground, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be any of the following:
  - a. Type L (B) **OR** M (C), **as directed**, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed **OR** pressure-seal, **as directed**, joints.
  - b. Schedule 40 **OR** 30 **OR** 20, **as directed**, steel pipe; Class 125, cast-iron **OR** 150, malleable-iron **OR** 250, cast-iron **OR** 300, malleable-iron, **as directed**, fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.
  - c. Schedule 5 steel pipe; steel, pressure-seal couplings and fittings; and pressure-seal joints.
  - d. Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, CPVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
8. Dual-temperature heating and cooling water piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, shall be any of the following:
  - a. Type L (B) **OR** M (C), **as directed**, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed, **as directed**, joints.
  - b. Schedule 40 **OR** 30 **OR** 20, **as directed**, steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
  - c. Schedule 40 **OR** 30 **OR** 20, **as directed**, steel pipe; grooved, mechanical joint coupling and fittings; and grooved, mechanical joints.
  - d. Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, CPVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
  - e. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
9. Dual-temperature heating and cooling water piping installed belowground and within slabs shall be either of the following:
  - a. Type K (A), annealed-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed, **as directed**, joints. Use the fewest possible joints.
  - b. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
10. Condenser-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be any of the following:
  - a. Type L (B) **OR** M (C), **as directed**, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed **OR** pressure-seal, **as directed**, joints.



- b. Schedule 80 **OR** 40 **OR** 30 **OR** 20, **as directed**, steel pipe; Class 125, cast-iron **OR** 150, malleable-iron **OR** 250, cast-iron **OR** 300, malleable-iron, **as directed**, fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.
- c. Schedule 5 steel pipe; steel, pressure-seal couplings and fittings; and pressure-seal joints.
- d. Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, CPVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
11. Condenser-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, shall be any of the following:
- a. Type L (B) **OR** M (C), **as directed**, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed, **as directed**, joints.
- b. Schedule 80 **OR** 40 **OR** 30 **OR** 20, **as directed**, steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
- c. Schedule 80 **OR** 40 **OR** 30 **OR** 20, **as directed**, steel pipe; grooved, mechanical joint coupling and fittings; and grooved, mechanical joints.
- d. Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, CPVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
- e. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
12. Condenser-water piping installed belowground and within slabs shall be either of the following:
- a. Type K (A), annealed-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed, **as directed**, joints. Use the fewest possible joints.
- b. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
13. Glycol cooling-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be any of the following:
- a. Type L (B) **OR** M (C), **as directed**, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed **OR** pressure-seal, **as directed**, joints.
- b. Schedule 40 **OR** 30 **OR** 20, **as directed**, steel pipe; Class 125, cast-iron **OR** 150, malleable-iron **OR** 250, cast-iron **OR** 300, malleable-iron, **as directed**, fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.
- c. Schedule 5 steel pipe; steel, pressure-seal couplings and fittings; and pressure-seal joints.
- d. Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, CPVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
14. Glycol cooling-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, shall be any of the following:
- a. Type L (B) **OR** M (C), **as directed**, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed, **as directed**, joints.
- b. Schedule 40 **OR** 30 **OR** 20, **as directed**, steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
- c. Schedule 40 **OR** 30 **OR** 20, **as directed**, steel pipe; grooved, mechanical joint coupling and fittings; and grooved, mechanical joints.
- d. Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, CPVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
- e. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
15. Glycol cooling-water piping installed belowground and within slabs shall be either of the following:
- a. Type K (A), annealed-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed, **as directed**, joints. Use the fewest possible joints.
- b. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
16. Makeup-water piping installed aboveground shall be either of the following:
- a. Type L (B) **OR** M (C), **as directed**, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed, **as directed**, joints.
- b. Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, CPVC plastic pipe and fittings, and solvent-welded joints.
17. Makeup-Water Piping Installed Belowground and within Slabs: Type K (A), annealed-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints. Use the fewest possible joints.
18. Condensate-Drain Piping: Type M (C) **OR** DWV, **as directed**, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints or Schedule 40 PVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints, **as directed**.
- OR**
- Condensate-Drain Piping: Schedule 40 PVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.



19. Blowdown-Drain Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which blowdown drain is installed.
  20. Air-Vent Piping:
    - a. Inlet: Same as service where installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to the piping manufacturer's written instructions.
    - b. Outlet: Type K (A), annealed-temper copper tubing with soldered or flared joints.
  21. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping for Hot-Water Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which safety valve is installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to the piping manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Valve Applications
1. Install shutoff-duty valves at each branch connection to supply mains, and at supply connection to each piece of equipment.
  2. Install throttling-duty **OR** calibrated-orifice, balancing, **as directed**, valves at each branch connection to return main.
  3. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves in the return pipe of each heating or cooling terminal.
  4. Install check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.
  5. Install safety valves at hot-water generators and elsewhere as required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install drip-pan elbow on safety-valve outlet and pipe without valves to the outdoors; and pipe drain to nearest floor drain or as indicated on Drawings. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.
  6. Install pressure-reducing valves at makeup-water connection to regulate system fill pressure.
- C. Piping Installations
1. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicate piping locations and arrangements if such were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
  2. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
  3. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
  4. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
  5. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
  6. Install piping at indicated slopes.
  7. Install piping free of sags and bends.
  8. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
  9. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
  10. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
  11. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.
  12. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 (DN 20) ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 (DN 20) threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.
  13. Install piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow.
  14. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side down.
  15. Install branch connections to mains using mechanically formed, **as directed**, tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to the bottom of the main pipe. For up-feed risers, connect the branch to the top of the main pipe.
  16. Install valves according to Division 22 Section(s) "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping" OR Division 23 Section(s) "General-duty Valves For Hvac Piping".
  17. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.



18. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.
19. Install strainers on inlet side of each control valve, pressure-reducing valve, solenoid valve, in-line pump, and elsewhere as indicated. Install NPS 3/4 (DN 20) nipple and ball valve in blowdown connection of strainers NPS 2 (DN 50) and larger. Match size of strainer blowoff connection for strainers smaller than NPS 2 (DN 50).
20. Install expansion loops, expansion joints, anchors, and pipe alignment guides as specified in Division 22 Section(s) "Expansion Fittings And Loops For Plumbing Piping" OR Division 23 Section(s) "Expansion Fittings And Loops For Hvac Piping".
21. Identify piping as specified in Division 22 Section(s) "Identification For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" OR Division 23 Section(s) "Identification For Hvac Piping And Equipment".

#### D. Hangers And Supports

1. Hanger, support, and anchor devices are specified in Division 22 Section(s) "Hangers And Supports For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" OR Division 23 Section(s) "Hangers And Supports For Hvac Piping And Equipment". Comply with the following requirements for maximum spacing of supports.
2. Seismic restraints are specified in Division 21 Section(s) "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Fire-suppression Piping And Equipment" OR Division 22 Section(s) "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" OR Division 23 Section(s) "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Hvac Piping And Equipment".
3. Install the following pipe attachments:
  - a. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet (6 m) long.
  - b. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet (6 m) or longer.
  - c. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet (6 m) or longer, supported on a trapeze.
  - d. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
  - e. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
  - f. On plastic pipe, install pads or cushions on bearing surfaces to prevent hanger from scratching pipe.
4. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
  - a. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): Maximum span, 7 feet (2.1 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - b. NPS 1 (DN 25): Maximum span, 7 feet (2.1 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - c. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): Maximum span, 7 feet (2.1 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - d. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): Maximum span, 9 feet (2.7 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - e. NPS 2 (DN 50): Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - f. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Maximum span, 11 feet (3.4 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (12 mm).
  - g. NPS 3 (DN 80): Maximum span, 12 feet (3.7 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (12 mm).
  - h. NPS 3-1/2 (DN 90): Maximum span, 13 feet (4 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (12 mm).
  - i. NPS 4 (DN 100): Maximum span, 14 feet (4.3 m); minimum rod size, 5/8 inch (16 mm).
  - j. NPS 5 (DN 125): Maximum span, 16 feet (4.9 m); minimum rod size, 5/8 inch (16 mm).
  - k. NPS 6 (DN 150): Maximum span, 17 feet (5.2 m); minimum rod size, 3/4 inch (20 mm).
  - l. NPS 8 (DN 200): Maximum span, 19 feet (5.8 m); minimum rod size, 3/4 inch (20 mm).
  - m. NPS 10 (DN 250): Maximum span, 22 feet (6.7 m); minimum rod size, 7/8 inch (20 mm).
  - n. NPS 12 (DN 300): Maximum span, 23 feet (7 m); minimum rod size, 7/8 inch (20 mm).
  - o. NPS 14 (DN 350): Maximum span, 25 feet (7.6 m); minimum rod size, 1 inch (24 mm).
  - p. NPS 16 (DN 400): Maximum span, 27 feet (8.2 m); minimum rod size, 1 inch (24 mm).
  - q. NPS 18 (DN 450): Maximum span, 28 feet (8.5 m); minimum rod size, 1 inch (24 mm).
  - r. NPS 20 (DN 500): Maximum span, 30 feet (9.1 m); minimum rod size, 1-1/4 inches (30 mm).
5. Install hangers for drawn-temper copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
  - a. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): Maximum span, 5 feet (1.5 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).





- b. NPS 1 (DN 25): Maximum span, 6 feet (1.8 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - c. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): Maximum span, 7 feet (2.1 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - d. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): Maximum span, 8 feet (2.4 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - e. NPS 2 (DN 50): Maximum span, 8 feet (2.4 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - f. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Maximum span, 9 feet (2.7 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (12 mm).
  - g. NPS 3 (DN 80): Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (12 mm).
6. Plastic Piping Hanger Spacing: Space hangers according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions for service conditions. Avoid point loading. Space and install hangers with the fewest practical rigid anchor points.
  7. Fiberglass Piping Hanger Spacing: Space hangers according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions for service conditions. Avoid point loading. Space and install hangers with the fewest practical rigid anchor points.
  8. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at 10-foot (3-m) intervals between floors.
- E. Pipe Joint Construction
1. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 21 specifying piping systems.
  2. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
  3. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
  4. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
  5. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
  6. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
    - a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
    - b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
  7. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1.1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
  8. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
  9. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
    - a. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
    - b. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
    - c. PVC Pressure Piping: Join ASTM D 1785 schedule number, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
    - d. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
  10. Fiberglass Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.
  11. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with coupling and gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Cut or roll grooves in ends of pipe based on pipe and coupling manufacturer's written instructions for pipe wall thickness. Use grooved-end fittings and rigid, grooved-end-pipe couplings.
  12. Mechanically Formed, Copper-Tube-Outlet Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tool and procedure, and brazed joints.
  13. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tool and procedure. Leave insertion marks on pipe after assembly.
- F. Hydronic Specialties Installation



1. Install manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.  
**OR**  
Install automatic air vents at high points of system piping in mechanical equipment rooms only. Manual vents at heat-transfer coils and elsewhere as required for air venting.
2. Install piping from boiler air outlet, air separator, or air purger to expansion tank with a 2 percent upward slope toward tank.
3. Install in-line air separators in pump suction. Install drain valve on air separators NPS 2 (DN 50) and larger.  
**OR**  
Install tangential air separator in pump suction. Install blowdown piping with gate or full-port ball valve; extend full size to nearest floor drain.
4. Install bypass chemical feeders in each hydronic system where indicated, in upright position with top of funnel not more than 48 inches (1200 mm) above the floor. Install feeder in minimum NPS 3/4 (DN 20) bypass line, from main with full-size, full-port, ball valve in the main between bypass connections. Install NPS 3/4 (DN 20) pipe from chemical feeder drain, to nearest equipment drain and include a full-size, full-port, ball valve.
5. Install expansion tanks above the air separator. Install tank fitting in tank bottom and charge tank. Use manual vent for initial fill to establish proper water level in tank.
  - a. Install tank fittings that are shipped loose.
  - b. Support tank from floor or structure above with sufficient strength to carry weight of tank, piping connections, fittings, plus tank full of water. Do not overload building components and structural members.  
**OR**  
Install expansion tanks on the floor. Vent and purge air from hydronic system, and ensure tank is properly charged with air to suit system Project requirements.

#### G. Terminal Equipment Connections

1. Sizes for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.
2. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.
3. Install bypass piping with globe valve around control valve. If parallel control valves are installed, only one bypass is required.
4. Install ports for pressure gages and thermometers at coil inlet and outlet connections according to Division 22 Section(s) "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping" OR Division 23 Section(s) "Meters And Gages For Hvac Piping".

#### H. Chemical Treatment

1. Perform an analysis of makeup water to determine type and quantities of chemical treatment needed to keep system free of scale, corrosion, and fouling, and to sustain the following water characteristics:
  - a. pH: 9.0 to 10.5.
  - b. "P" Alkalinity: 100 to 500 ppm.
  - c. Boron: 100 to 200 ppm.
  - d. Chemical Oxygen Demand: Maximum 100 ppm. Modify this value if closed system contains glycol.
  - e. Corrosion Inhibitor:
    - 1) Sodium Nitrate: 1000 to 1500 ppm.
    - 2) Molybdate: 200 to 300 ppm.
    - 3) Chromate: 200 to 300 ppm.
    - 4) Sodium Nitrate Plus Molybdate: 100 to 200 ppm each.
    - 5) Chromate Plus Molybdate: 50 to 100 ppm each.
  - f. Soluble Copper: Maximum 0.20 ppm.
  - g. Tolyriazole Copper and Yellow Metal Corrosion Inhibitor: Minimum 10 ppm.
  - h. Total Suspended Solids: Maximum 10 ppm.



- i. Ammonia: Maximum 20 ppm.
  - j. Free Caustic Alkalinity: Maximum 20 ppm.
  - k. Microbiological Limits:
    - 1) Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maximum 1000 organisms/ml.
    - 2) Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maximum 100 organisms/ml.
    - 3) Nitrate Reducers: 100 organisms/ml.
    - 4) Sulfate Reducers: Maximum 0 organisms/ml.
    - 5) Iron Bacteria: Maximum 0 organisms/ml.
  2. Fill system with fresh water and add liquid alkaline compound with emulsifying agents and detergents to remove grease and petroleum products from piping. Circulate solution for a minimum of 24 hours, drain, clean strainer screens, and refill with fresh water.
  3. Add initial chemical treatment and maintain water quality in ranges noted above for the first year of operation.
  4. Fill systems indicated to have antifreeze or glycol solutions with the following concentrations:
    - a. Hot-Water Heating Piping: Minimum percent ethylene, as directed by the Owner **OR** propylene, **as directed**, glycol.
    - b. Chilled-Water Piping: Minimum percent ethylene, as directed by the Owner **OR** propylene, **as directed**, glycol.
    - c. Dual-Temperature Heating and Cooling Water Piping: Minimum percent, as directed by the Owner ethylene **OR** propylene, **as directed**, glycol.
    - d. Glycol Cooling-Water Piping: Minimum percent ethylene, as directed by the Owner. **OR** propylene, **as directed**, glycol.
- I. Field Quality Control
1. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:
    - a. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
    - b. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
    - c. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace strainer screens.
    - d. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
    - e. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.
  2. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:
    - a. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
    - b. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.
    - c. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.
    - d. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the system's working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength or 1.7 times "SE" value in Appendix A in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
    - e. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
    - f. Prepare written report of testing.
  3. Perform the following before operating the system:
    - a. Open manual valves fully.
    - b. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.
    - c. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.
    - d. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).



- 
- e. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
  - f. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment, such as boilers, chillers, cooling towers, to specified values.
  - g. Verify lubrication of motors and bearings.

END OF SECTION 22 11 16 00f



## SECTION 22 11 16 00g - STEAM AND CONDENSATE PIPING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for steam and condensate piping. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following for LP and HP steam and condensate piping:
  - a. Pipe and fittings.
  - b. Strainers.
  - c. Flash tanks.
  - d. Safety valves.
  - e. Pressure-reducing valves.
  - f. Steam traps.
  - g. Thermostatic air vents and vacuum breakers.
  - h. Steam and condensate meters.

#### C. Definitions

1. HP Systems: High-pressure piping operating at more than 15 psig (104 kPa) as required by ASME B31.1.
2. LP Systems: Low-pressure piping operating at 15 psig (104 kPa) or less as required by ASME B31.9.
3. RTRF: Reinforced thermosetting resin (fiberglass) fittings.
4. RTRP: Reinforced thermosetting resin (fiberglass) pipe.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressures and temperatures:
  - a. HP Steam Piping: <Insert psig (kPa).>
  - b. LP Steam Piping: <Insert psig (kPa).>
  - c. Condensate Piping: <Insert psig (kPa)> at 250 deg F (121 deg C).
  - d. Makeup-Water Piping: 80 psig (552 kPa) at 150 deg F (66 deg C).
  - e. Blowdown-Drain Piping: Equal to pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.
  - f. Air-Vent and Vacuum-Breaker Piping: Equal to pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.
  - g. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of the following:
  - a. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive.
  - b. Pressure-reducing and safety valve.
  - c. Steam trap.
  - d. Air vent and vacuum breaker.
  - e. Flash tank.
  - f. Meter.
2. Shop Drawings: Detail, 1/4 inch equals 1 foot (1:50) scale, flash tank assemblies and fabrication of pipe anchors, hangers, pipe, multiple pipes, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops and their attachment to the building structure. Detail locations of anchors, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops.



3. Welding certificates.
4. Field quality-control test reports.
5. Operation and Maintenance Data: For valves, safety valves, pressure-reducing valves, steam traps, air vents, vacuum breakers, and meters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

F. Quality Assurance

1. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to the following:
  - a. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
  - b. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
3. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.1, "Power Piping" **AND/OR** ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping", **as directed**, for materials, products, and installation. Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp flash tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Copper Tube And Fittings

1. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) **OR** ASTM B 88, Type M (ASTM B 88M, Type C), **as directed**.
2. Annealed-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A).
3. Wrought-Copper Fittings and Unions: ASME B16.22.

B. Steel Pipe And Fittings

1. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, plain ends, Type, Grade, and Schedule as indicated in Part 3 piping applications articles.
2. Cast-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4; Classes 125, 150, and 300 as indicated in Part 3 piping applications articles.
3. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3; Classes 150 and 300 as indicated in Part 3 piping applications articles.
4. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300 as indicated in Part 3 piping applications articles.
5. Cast-Iron Threaded Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Classes 125 and 250 as indicated in Part 3 piping applications articles; raised ground face, and bolt holes spot faced.
6. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.
7. Wrought-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
  - a. Material Group: 1.1.
  - b. End Connections: Butt welding.
  - c. Facings: Raised face.
8. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel of same Type, Grade, and Schedule as pipe in which installed.
9. Stainless-Steel Bellows, Flexible Connectors:
  - a. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforced, protective jacket.
  - b. End Connections: Threaded or flanged to match equipment connected.
  - c. Performance: Capable of 3/4-inch (20-mm) misalignment.
  - d. CWP Rating: 150-psig (1035-kPa).
  - e. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

C. Fiberglass Pipe And Fittings



1. RTRP: ASTM D 2996 filament-wound pipe with tapered bell and spigot ends for adhesive joints.
2. RTRF: Compression or spray-up/contact molded fittings of same material, pressure class, and joining method as pipe.
3. Flanges: ASTM D 4024 full-face gaskets suitable for the service, minimum 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, 60-70 durometer. ASTM A 307, Grade B, hex head bolts with washers.
4. Bonding Adhesive for Fiberglass Piping: As recommended by fiberglass piping manufacturer.

D. Joining Materials

1. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
  - a. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
    - 1) Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
    - 2) Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
4. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BA9-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.
5. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 (AWS D10.12M) for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
6. Welding Materials: Comply with Section II, Part C, of ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and for chemical analysis of pipe being welded.

E. Dielectric Fittings

1. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
2. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
3. Dielectric Unions:
  - a. Factory-fabricated union assembly, for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
4. Dielectric Flanges:
  - a. Factory-fabricated companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
5. Dielectric-Flange Kits:
  - a. Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
  - b. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.

F. Valves

1. Gate, Globe, Check, Ball, and Butterfly Valves: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 Section "General-duty Valves For Hvac Piping".
2. Stop-Check Valves:
  - a. Body and Bonnet: Malleable iron.
  - b. End Connections: Flanged.
  - c. Disc: Cylindrical with removable liner and machined seat.
  - d. Stem: Brass alloy.
  - e. Operator: Outside screw and yoke with cast-iron handwheel.
  - f. Packing: Polytetrafluoroethylene-impregnated packing with two-piece packing gland assembly.
  - g. Pressure Class: 250.

G. Strainers

1. Y-Pattern Strainers:



- a. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B cast iron, with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
  - b. End Connections: Threaded ends for strainers NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for strainers NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
  - c. Strainer Screen: Stainless-steel, 20 mesh strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
  - d. Tapped blowoff plug.
  - e. CWP Rating: 250-psig (1725-kPa) working steam pressure.
2. Basket Strainers:
- a. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B cast iron, with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
  - b. End Connections: Threaded ends for strainers NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for strainers NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
  - c. Strainer Screen: Stainless-steel, 20 mesh strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
  - d. CWP Rating: 250-psig (1725-kPa) working steam pressure.
- H. Flash Tanks
1. Shop or factory fabricated of welded steel according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, for 150-psig (1035-kPa) rating; and bearing ASME label. Fabricate with tappings for low-pressure steam and condensate outlets, high-pressure condensate inlet, air vent, safety valve, and legs.
- I. Safety Valves
1. Bronze **OR** Brass, **as directed**, Safety Valves:
    - a. Disc Material: Forged copper alloy.
    - b. End Connections: Threaded inlet and outlet.
    - c. Spring: Fully enclosed steel spring with adjustable pressure range and positive shutoff, factory set and sealed.
    - d. Pressure Class: 250.
    - e. Drip-Pan Elbow: Cast iron and having threaded inlet and outlet with threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
    - f. Size and Capacity: As required for equipment according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
  2. Cast-Iron Safety Valves:
    - a. Disc Material: Forged copper alloy with bronze nozzle.
    - b. End Connections: Raised-face flanged inlet and threaded or flanged outlet connections.
    - c. Spring: Fully enclosed cadmium-plated steel spring with adjustable pressure range and positive shutoff, factory set and sealed.
    - d. Pressure Class: 250.
    - e. Drip-Pan Elbow: Cast iron and having threaded inlet, outlet, and drain, with threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
    - f. Exhaust Head: Cast iron and having threaded inlet and drain, with threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
    - g. Size and Capacity: As required for equipment according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- J. Pressure-Reducing Valves
1. Size, Capacity, and Pressure Rating: Factory set for inlet and outlet pressures indicated.
  2. Description: Pilot-actuated, diaphragm type, with adjustable pressure range and positive shutoff.
  3. Body: Cast iron.
  4. End Connections: Threaded connections for valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller and flanged connections for valves NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
  5. Trim: Hardened stainless steel.
  6. Head and Seat: Replaceable, main head stem guide fitted with flushing and pressure-arresting device cover over pilot diaphragm.
  7. Gaskets: Non-asbestos materials.





## K. Steam Traps

1. Thermostatic Traps:
  - a. Body: Bronze angle-pattern body with integral union tailpiece and screw-in cap.
  - b. Trap Type: Balanced-pressure.
  - c. Bellows: Stainless steel or monel.
  - d. Head and Seat: Replaceable, hardened stainless steel.
  - e. Pressure Class: 125.
2. Thermodynamic Traps:
  - a. Body: Stainless steel with screw-in cap.
  - b. End Connections: Threaded.
  - c. Disc and Seat: Stainless steel.
  - d. Maximum Operating Pressure: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
3. Float and Thermostatic Traps:
  - a. Body and Bolted Cap: ASTM A 126, cast iron.
  - b. End Connections: Threaded.
  - c. Float Mechanism: Replaceable, stainless steel.
  - d. Head and Seat: Hardened stainless steel.
  - e. Trap Type: Balanced pressure.
  - f. Thermostatic Bellows: Stainless steel or monel.
  - g. Thermostatic air vent capable of withstanding 45 deg F (25 deg C) of superheat and resisting water hammer without sustaining damage.
  - h. Vacuum Breaker: Thermostatic with phosphor bronze bellows, and stainless steel cage, valve, and seat.
  - i. Maximum Operating Pressure: 125 psig (860 kPa).
4. Inverted Bucket Traps:
  - a. Body and Cap: Cast iron.
  - b. End Connections: Threaded.
  - c. Head and Seat: Stainless steel.
  - d. Valve Retainer, Lever, and Guide Pin Assembly: Stainless steel.
  - e. Bucket: Brass or stainless steel.
  - f. Strainer: Integral stainless-steel inlet strainer within the trap body.
  - g. Air Vent: Stainless-steel thermostatic vent.
  - h. Pressure Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa).

## L. Thermostatic Air Vents And Vacuum Breakers

1. Thermostatic Air Vents:
  - a. Body: Cast iron, bronze or stainless steel.
  - b. End Connections: Threaded.
  - c. Float, Valve, and Seat: Stainless steel.
  - d. Thermostatic Element: Phosphor bronze bellows in a stainless-steel cage.
  - e. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (861 kPa) **OR** 300 psig (2068 kPa), **as directed**.
  - f. Maximum Temperature Rating: 350 deg F (177 deg C).
2. Vacuum Breakers:
  - a. Body: Cast iron, bronze, or stainless steel.
  - b. End Connections: Threaded.
  - c. Sealing Ball, Retainer, Spring, and Screen: Stainless steel.
  - d. O-ring Seal: EPR.
  - e. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (861 kPa) **OR** 300 psig (2068 kPa), **as directed**.
  - f. Maximum Temperature Rating: 350 deg F (177 deg C).

## M. Steam Meters

1. Meters shall have a microprocessor to display totalizer flow, flow rate, temperature, pressure, time, and date; alarms for high and low flow rate and temperature.
  - a. Computer shall have 4 to 20-mA or 2 to 10 volt output for temperature, pressure, and contact closure for flow increments.
  - b. Independent timers to store four peak flow rates and total flow.



- c. Interface compatible with central workstation described in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac".
  - d. Microprocessor Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4.
2. Sensor:
- a. Venturi, of stainless-steel **OR** carbon-steel, **as directed**, construction, for insertion in pipeline between flanges. At least 10:1 turndown with plus or minus 1 percent accuracy over full-flow range.
  - b. Vortex type with stainless-steel wetted parts and wafer **OR** flange, **as directed**, connections; and with a piezoelectric sensor removable and serviceable without shutting down the process. At least 10:1 turndown with plus or minus 1 percent accuracy over full-flow range.
  - c. Spring-loaded, variable-area flowmeter type; density compensated with stainless-steel wetted parts and wafer **OR** flange, **as directed**, connections. At least 10:1 turndown with plus or minus 2 percent accuracy over full-flow range.

#### N. Condensate Meters

- 1. Body: Cast iron, bronze, or brass.
- 2. Turbine: Copper, brass, or stainless steel.
- 3. Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller and flanged for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65).
- 4. Totalizer: Meters shall have a microprocessor to display flow, flow rate, time, and date; alarms for high and low flow rate, pressure, and temperature.
  - a. Computer shall have 4- to 20-mA or 2- to 10-volt output for temperature, pressure, and contact closure for flow increments.
  - b. Independent timers to store four peak flow rates and total flow.
  - c. Interface compatible with central workstation specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac".
  - d. Microprocessor Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4.
- 5. Pressure Rating: Atmospheric.
- 6. Maximum Temperature Rating: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. LP Steam Piping Applications

- 1. LP Steam Piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, Type S, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 125 cast-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
- 2. LP Steam Piping, NPS 2-1/2 through NPS 12 (DN 65 through DN 300): Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, Type E, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 150 wrought-steel fittings, flanges, and flange fittings; and welded and flanged joints.
- 3. LP Steam Piping, NPS 14 through NPS 18 (DN 350 through DN 450): Schedule 30, Type E, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 150 wrought-steel fittings, flanges, and flange fittings; and welded and flanged joints.
- 4. LP Steam Piping, NPS 20 (DN 500) and Larger: Schedule 20, Type E, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 150 wrought-steel fittings, flanges, and flange fittings; and welded and flanged joints.
- 5. Condensate piping above grade, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be either of the following, **as directed**:
  - a. Schedule 80, Type S, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 125 cast-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
  - b. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
- 6. Condensate piping above grade, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, shall be either of the following, **as directed**:
  - a. Schedule 80, Type E, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 150 wrought-steel fittings, flanges, and flange fittings; and welded and flanged joints.
  - b. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
- 7. Condensate piping below grade, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be either of the following, **as directed**:



- a. Schedule 80, Type S, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 125 cast-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
    - b. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
  8. Condensate piping below grade, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, shall be either of the following, **as directed**:
    - a. Schedule 80, Type E, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 150 wrought-steel fittings, flanges, and flange fittings; and welded and flanged joints.
    - b. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
- B. HP Steam Piping Applications
  1. HP Steam Piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, Type S, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 125 cast-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
  2. HP Steam Piping, NPS 2-1/2 through NPS 12 (DN 65 through DN 300): Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, Type E, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 150 wrought-steel fittings, flanges, and flange fittings; and welded and flanged joints.
  3. HP Steam Piping, NPS 14 through NPS 18 (DN 350 through DN 450): Schedule 30, Type E, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 150 wrought-steel fittings, flanges, and flange fittings; and welded and flanged joints.
  4. HP Steam Piping, NPS 20 (DN 500) and Larger: Schedule 20, Type E, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 150 wrought-steel fittings, flanges, and flange fittings; and welded and flanged joints.
  5. Condensate piping above grade, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be either of the following, **as directed**:
    - a. Schedule 80, Type S, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 125 cast-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
    - b. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
  6. Condensate piping above grade, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, shall be either of the following, **as directed**:
    - a. Schedule 80, Type E, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 150 wrought-steel fittings, flanges, and flange fittings; and welded and flanged joints.
    - b. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
  7. Condensate piping below grade, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be either of the following, **as directed**:
    - a. Schedule 80, Type S, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 125 cast-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
    - b. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
  8. Condensate piping below grade, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, shall be either of the following, **as directed**:
    - a. Schedule 80, Type E, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 150 wrought-steel fittings, flanges, and flange fittings; and welded and flanged joints.
    - b. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive or flanged joints.
- C. Ancillary Piping Applications
  1. Makeup-water piping installed above grade shall be either of the following, **as directed**:
    - a. Drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** brazed, **as directed**, joints.
    - b. Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, CPVC plastic pipe and fittings, and solvent welded joints.
  2. Makeup-Water Piping Installed below Grade and within Slabs: Annealed-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints. Use the fewest possible joints.
  3. Blowdown-Drain Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which blowdown drain is installed.
  4. Air-Vent Piping:
    - a. Inlet: Same as service where installed.
    - b. Outlet: Type K (A) annealed-temper copper tubing with soldered or flared joints.
  5. Vacuum-Breaker Piping: Outlet, same as service where installed.
  6. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which safety valve is installed.
- D. Valve Applications



1. Install shutoff duty valves at branch connections to steam supply mains, at steam supply connections to equipment, and at the outlet of steam traps.
2. Install safety valves on pressure-reducing stations and elsewhere as required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install safety-valve discharge piping, without valves, to nearest floor drain or as indicated on Drawings. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.

E. Piping Installation

1. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Use indicated piping locations and arrangements if such were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
2. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
3. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
4. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
5. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
6. Install piping free of sags and bends.
7. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
8. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
9. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
10. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.
11. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 (DN 20) full port-ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 (DN 20) threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.
12. Install steam supply piping at a minimum uniform grade of 0.2 percent downward in direction of steam flow.
13. Install condensate return piping at a minimum uniform grade of 0.4 percent downward in direction of condensate flow.
14. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side down.
15. Install branch connections to mains using mechanically formed, **as directed**, tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to top of main pipe.
16. Install valves according to Division 23 Section "General-duty Valves For Hvac Piping".
17. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
18. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.
19. Install strainers on supply side of control valves, pressure-reducing valves, traps, and elsewhere as indicated. Install NPS 3/4 (DN 20) nipple and full port ball valve in blowdown connection of strainers NPS 2 (DN 50) and larger. Match size of strainer blowoff connection for strainers smaller than NPS 2 (DN 50).
20. Install expansion loops, expansion joints, anchors, and pipe alignment guides as specified in Division 23 Section "Expansion Fittings And Loops For Hvac Piping".
21. Identify piping as specified in Division 23 Section "Identification For Hvac Piping And Equipment".
22. Install drip legs at low points and natural drainage points such as ends of mains, bottoms of risers, and ahead of pressure regulators, and control valves.
  - a. On straight runs with no natural drainage points, install drip legs at intervals not exceeding 300 feet (90 m).
  - b. Size drip legs same size as main. In steam mains NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger, drip leg size can be reduced, but to no less than NPS 4 (DN 100).
23. Flash Tank:



- a. Pitch condensate piping down toward flash tank.
  - b. If more than one condensate pipe discharges into flash tank, install a check valve in each line.
  - c. Install thermostatic air vent at tank top.
  - d. Install safety valve at tank top.
  - e. Install full-port ball valve, and swing check valve on condensate outlet.
  - f. Install inverted bucket or float and thermostatic trap at low-pressure condensate outlet, sized for three times the calculated heat load.
  - g. Install pressure gage on low-pressure steam outlet according to Division 23 Section "Meters And Gages For Hvac Piping".
- F. Steam-Trap Installation
1. Install steam traps in accessible locations as close as possible to connected equipment.
  2. Install full-port ball valve, strainer, and union upstream from trap; install union, check valve, and full-port ball valve downstream from trap unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Pressure-Reducing Valve Installation
1. Install pressure-reducing valves in accessible location for maintenance and inspection.
  2. Install bypass piping around pressure-reducing valves, with globe valve equal in size to area of pressure-reducing valve seat ring, unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Install gate valves on both sides of pressure-reducing valves.
  4. Install unions or flanges on both sides of pressure-reducing valves having threaded- or flanged-end connections respectively.
  5. Install pressure gages on low-pressure side of pressure-reducing valves after the bypass connection according to Division 23 Section "Meters And Gages For Hvac Piping".
  6. Install strainers upstream for pressure-reducing valve.
  7. Install safety valve downstream from pressure-reducing valve station.
- H. Steam Or Condensate Meter Installation
1. Install meters with lengths of straight pipe upstream and downstream according to steam meter manufacturer's instructions.
  2. Provide data acquisition wiring. Refer to Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac".
- I. Safety Valve Installation
1. Install safety valves according to ASME B31.1, "Power Piping" **OR** ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," **as directed**
  2. Pipe safety-valve discharge without valves to atmosphere outside the building.
  3. Install drip-pan elbow fitting adjacent to safety valve and pipe drain connection to nearest floor drain.
  4. Install exhaust head with drain to waste, on vents equal to or larger than NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65).
- J. Hangers And Supports
1. Install hangers and supports according to Division 23 Section "Hangers And Supports For Hvac Piping And Equipment". Comply with requirements below for maximum spacing.
  2. Seismic restraints are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Hvac Piping And Equipment".
  3. Install the following pipe attachments:
    - a. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet (6 m) long.
    - b. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet (6 m) or longer.
    - c. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet (6 m) or longer, supported on a trapeze.
    - d. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
  4. Install hangers with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
    - a. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): Maximum span, 9 feet (2.7 m); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).



- b. NPS 1 (DN 25): Maximum span, 9 feet (2.7 m); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
  - c. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): Maximum span, 12 feet (3.7 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - d. NPS 2 (DN 50): Maximum span, 13 feet (4 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - e. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Maximum span, 14 feet (4.3 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - f. NPS 3 (DN 80): Maximum span, 15 feet (4.6 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - g. NPS 4 (DN 100): Maximum span, 17 feet (5.2 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (13 mm).
  - h. NPS 6 (DN 150): Maximum span, 21 feet (6.4 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (13 mm).
  - i. NPS 8 (DN 200): Maximum span, 24 feet (7.3 m); minimum rod size, 5/8 inch (16 mm).
  - j. NPS 10 (DN 250): Maximum span, 26 feet (8 m); minimum rod size, 3/4 inch (19 mm).
  - k. NPS 12 (DN 300): Maximum span, 30 feet (9.1 m); minimum rod size, 7/8 inch (22 mm).
  - l. NPS 14 (DN 350): Maximum span, 32 feet (9.8 m); minimum rod size, 1 inch (25 mm).
  - m. NPS 16 (DN 400): Maximum span, 35 feet (10.7 m); minimum rod size, 1 inch (25 mm).
  - n. NPS 18 (DN 450): Maximum span, 37 feet (11.3 m); minimum rod size, 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).
  - o. NPS 20 (DN 500): Maximum span, 39 feet (11.9 m); minimum rod size, 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).
5. Install hangers for drawn-temper copper piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
- a. NPS 1/2 (DN 15): Maximum span, 4 feet (1.2 m); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
  - b. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): Maximum span, 5 feet (1.5 m); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
  - c. NPS 1 (DN 25): Maximum span, 6 feet (1.8 m); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
  - d. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): Maximum span, 8 feet (2.4 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - e. NPS 2 (DN 50): Maximum span, 8 feet (2.4 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - f. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Maximum span, 9 feet (2.7 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - g. NPS 3 (DN 80): Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
6. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at 10-foot (3-m) intervals between floors.
7. Fiberglass Piping Hanger Spacing: Space hangers according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions for service conditions. Avoid point loading. Space and install hangers with the fewest practical rigid anchor points.

#### K. Pipe Joint Construction

1. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 21 specifying piping systems.
2. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
3. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
4. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube ends. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
5. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
6. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  - b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
7. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12 (AWS D10.12M), using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
8. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
9. Fiberglass Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.

#### L. Terminal Equipment Connections



1. Size for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.
2. Install traps and control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.
3. Install bypass piping with globe valve around control valve. If parallel control valves are installed, only one bypass is required.
4. Install vacuum breakers downstream from control valve, close to coil inlet connection.
5. Install a drip leg at coil outlet.

M. Field Quality Control

1. Prepare steam and condensate piping according to ASME B31.1, "Power Piping" **AND/OR** ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," **as directed**, and as follows:
  - a. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
  - b. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
  - c. Flush system with clean water. Clean strainers.
  - d. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
2. Perform the following tests on steam and condensate piping:
  - a. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
  - b. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength.
  - c. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
3. Prepare written report of testing.

END OF SECTION 22 11 16 00g



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



**SECTION 22 11 16 00h - REFRIGERANT PIPING****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for refrigerant piping. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Summary**

1. This Section includes refrigerant piping used for air-conditioning applications.

**C. Performance Requirements**

1. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-134a:
  - a. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 115 psig (793 kPa).
  - b. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 225 psig (1551 kPa).
  - c. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 225 psig (1551 kPa).
2. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-407C:
  - a. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 230 psig (1586 kPa).
  - b. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 380 psig (2620 kPa).
  - c. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 380 psig (2620 kPa).
3. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:
  - a. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 300 psig (2068 kPa).
  - b. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig (3689 kPa).
  - c. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig (3689 kPa).

**D. Submittals**

1. Product Data: For each type of valve and refrigerant piping specialty indicated. Include pressure drop, based on manufacturer's test data, for the following:
  - a. Thermostatic expansion valves.
  - b. Solenoid valves.
  - c. Hot-gas bypass valves.
  - d. Filter dryers.
  - e. Strainers.
  - f. Pressure-regulating valves.
2. Shop Drawings: Show layout of refrigerant piping and specialties, including pipe, tube, and fitting sizes, flow capacities, valve arrangements and locations, slopes of horizontal runs, oil traps, double risers, wall and floor penetrations, and equipment connection details. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.
  - a. Shop Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch equals 1 foot (1:50).
  - b. Refrigerant piping indicated on Drawings is schematic only. Size piping and design actual piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.
3. Welding certificates.
4. Field quality-control test reports.
5. Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

**E. Quality Assurance**

1. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."



2. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."
3. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

F. Product Storage And Handling

1. Store piping in a clean and protected area with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Copper Tube And Fittings

1. Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K or L (ASTM B 88M, Type A or B) **OR** ASTM B 280, Type ACR, **as directed**.
2. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
3. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
4. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32. Use 95-5 tin antimony or alloy HB solder to join copper socket fittings on copper pipe.
5. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8.
6. Flexible Connectors:
  - a. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
  - b. End Connections: Socket ends.
  - c. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch (20-mm) misalignment in minimum 7-inch- (180-mm-) long assembly.
  - d. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig (3450 kPa).
  - e. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

B. Steel Pipe And Fittings

1. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; Type, Grade, and wall thickness as selected in Part 3 piping applications articles.
2. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, for welded joints.
3. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, steel, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets, bevel-welded end connection, and raised face.
4. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
5. Flanged Unions:
  - a. Body: Forged-steel flanges for NPS 1 to NPS 1-1/2 (DN 25 to DN 40) and ductile iron for NPS 2 to NPS 3 (DN 50 to DN 80). Apply rust-resistant finish at factory.
  - b. Gasket: Fiber asbestos free.
  - c. Fasteners: Four plated-steel bolts, with silicon bronze nuts. Apply rust-resistant finish at factory.
  - d. End Connections: Brass tailpiece adapters for solder-end connections to copper tubing.
  - e. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch (20-mm) misalignment in minimum 7-inch- (180-mm-) long assembly.
  - f. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 400 psig (2760 kPa).
  - g. Maximum Operating Temperature: 330 deg F (165 deg C).
6. Flexible Connectors:
  - a. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, stainless-steel-wire-reinforced protective jacket
  - b. End Connections:
    - 1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: With threaded-end connections.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: With flanged-end connections.
  - c. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch (20-mm) misalignment in minimum 7-inch- (180-mm-) long assembly.
  - d. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig (3450 kPa).



- e. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

### C. Valves And Specialties

1. Diaphragm Packless Valves:
  - a. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze; globe design with straight-through or angle pattern.
  - b. Diaphragm: Phosphor bronze and stainless steel with stainless-steel spring.
  - c. Operator: Rising stem and hand wheel.
  - d. Seat: Nylon.
  - e. End Connections: Socket, union, or flanged.
  - f. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
  - g. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F (135 deg C).
2. Packed-Angle Valves:
  - a. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze.
  - b. Packing: Molded stem, back seating, and replaceable under pressure.
  - c. Operator: Rising stem.
  - d. Seat: Nonrotating, self-aligning polytetrafluoroethylene.
  - e. Seal Cap: Forged-brass or valox hex cap.
  - f. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
  - g. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
  - h. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F (135 deg C).
3. Check Valves:
  - a. Body: Ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; globe pattern.
  - b. Bonnet: Bolted ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; or brass hex plug.
  - c. Piston: Removable polytetrafluoroethylene seat.
  - d. Closing Spring: Stainless steel.
  - e. Manual Opening Stem: Seal cap, plated-steel stem, and graphite seal.
  - f. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
  - g. Maximum Opening Pressure: 0.50 psig (3.4 kPa).
  - h. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
  - i. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F (135 deg C).
4. Service Valves:
  - a. Body: Forged brass with brass cap including key end to remove core.
  - b. Core: Removable ball-type check valve with stainless-steel spring.
  - c. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
  - d. End Connections: Copper spring.
  - e. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
5. Solenoid Valves: Comply with ARI 760 and UL 429; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
  - a. Body and Bonnet: Plated steel.
  - b. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
  - c. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
  - d. End Connections: Threaded.
  - e. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch (16-GRC) conduit adapter, and 24 **OR** 115 **OR** 208, **as directed**, -V ac coil.
  - f. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
  - g. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F (116 deg C).
  - h. Manual operator.
6. Safety Relief Valves: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
  - a. Body and Bonnet: Ductile iron and steel, with neoprene O-ring seal.
  - b. Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
  - c. Seat Disc: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
  - d. End Connections: Threaded.
  - e. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
  - f. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F (116 deg C).
7. Thermostatic Expansion Valves: Comply with ARI 750.



- a. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Forged brass or steel.
  - b. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
  - c. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
  - d. Capillary and Bulb: Copper tubing filled with refrigerant charge.
  - e. Suction Temperature: 40 deg F (4.4 deg C).
  - f. Superheat: Adjustable **OR** Nonadjustable, **as directed**.
  - g. Reverse-flow option (for heat-pump applications).
  - h. End Connections: Socket, flare, or threaded union.
  - i. Working Pressure Rating: 700 psig (4820 kPa) **OR** 450 psig (3100 kPa), **as directed**.
8. Hot-Gas Bypass Valves: Comply with UL 429; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
- a. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Ductile iron or steel.
  - b. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
  - c. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
  - d. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
  - e. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
  - f. Equalizer: Internal **OR** External, **as directed**.
  - g. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch (16-GRC) conduit adapter, and 24 **OR** 115 **OR** 208, **as directed**, -V ac coil.
  - h. End Connections: Socket.
  - i. Set Pressure: as directed by the Owner.
  - j. Throttling Range: Maximum 5 psig (34 kPa).
  - k. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
  - l. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F (116 deg C).
9. Straight-Type Strainers:
- a. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
  - b. Screen: 100-mesh stainless steel.
  - c. End Connections: Socket or flare.
  - d. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
  - e. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F (135 deg C).
10. Angle-Type Strainers:
- a. Body: Forged brass or cast bronze.
  - b. Drain Plug: Brass hex plug.
  - c. Screen: 100-mesh monel.
  - d. End Connections: Socket or flare.
  - e. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
  - f. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F (135 deg C).
11. Moisture/Liquid Indicators:
- a. Body: Forged brass.
  - b. Window: Replaceable, clear, fused glass window with indicating element protected by filter screen.
  - c. Indicator: Color coded to show moisture content in ppm.
  - d. Minimum Moisture Indicator Sensitivity: Indicate moisture above 60 ppm.
  - e. End Connections: Socket or flare.
  - f. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
  - g. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F (116 deg C).
12. Replaceable-Core Filter Dryers: Comply with ARI 730.
- a. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell with ductile-iron cover, stainless-steel screws, and neoprene gaskets.
  - b. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
  - c. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina **OR** charcoal, **as directed**.
  - d. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
  - e. End Connections: Socket.
  - f. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 (DN 8) connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
  - g. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig (14 kPa).



- h. Rated Flow: as directed by the Owner.
  - i. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
  - j. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F (116 deg C).
13. Permanent Filter Dryers: Comply with ARI 730.
- a. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell.
  - b. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
  - c. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina **OR** charcoal, **as directed**.
  - d. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
  - e. End Connections: Socket.
  - f. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 (DN 8) connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
  - g. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig (14 kPa).
  - h. Rated Flow: as directed by the Owner.
  - i. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
  - j. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F (116 deg C).
14. Mufflers:
- a. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
  - b. End Connections: Socket or flare.
  - c. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
  - d. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F (135 deg C).
15. Receivers: Comply with ARI 495.
- a. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
  - b. Comply with UL 207; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
  - c. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
  - d. Tappings: Inlet, outlet, liquid level indicator, and safety relief valve.
  - e. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
  - f. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
  - g. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F (135 deg C).
16. Liquid Accumulators: Comply with ARI 495.
- a. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
  - b. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
  - c. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
  - d. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F (135 deg C).
- D. Refrigerants
- 1. ASHRAE 34, R-134a: Tetrafluoroethane.
  - 2. ASHRAE 34, R-407C: Difluoromethane/Pentafluoroethane/1,1,1,2-Tetrafluoroethane.
  - 3. ASHRAE 34, R-410A: Pentafluoroethane/Difluoromethane.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Piping Applications For Refrigerant R-134a

- 1. Suction Lines NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.  
**OR**  
Suction Lines NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller **OR** NPS 2 to NPS 4 (DN 50 to DN 100), **as directed**, for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
- 2. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications, **as directed**: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.  
**OR**



Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications, **as directed**: Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

**OR**

Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications, **as directed**:

a. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

**OR**

NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

b. NPS 4 (DN 100): Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

3. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Schedule 40, black-steel and wrought-steel fittings with welded joints.

**OR**

Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

**OR**

Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping:

a. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

**OR**

NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

b. NPS 4 (DN 100): Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

B. Piping Applications For Refrigerant R-407c

1. Suction Lines NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings

**OR**

Suction Lines NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller **OR** NPS 2 to NPS 4 (DN 50 to DN 100), **as directed**, for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

2. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications, **as directed**: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

**OR**

Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications, **as directed**: Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

**OR**

Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications, **as directed**:

a. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

**OR**

NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

b. NPS 1-1/4 to NPS 2 (DN 32 to DN 50): Copper, Type K (A), annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

c. NPS 4 (DN 100): Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

3. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Schedule 40, black-steel and wrought-steel fittings with welded joints.

**OR**

Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

**OR**

Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping:

- a. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered joints.

**OR**

NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

- b. NPS 1-1/4 to NPS 2 (DN 32 to DN 50): Copper, Type K (A), annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
- c. NPS 4 (DN 100): Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

**C. Piping Applications For Refrigerant R-410a**

1. Suction Lines NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

**OR**

Suction Lines NPS 3-1/2 (DN 90) and Smaller **OR** NPS 2 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 50 to DN 90), **as directed**, for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

**OR**

Suction Lines NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

2. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications, **as directed**: Copper, Type ACR **OR** L (B), **as directed**, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

**OR**

Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications, **as directed** Copper, Type K (A), annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.

**OR**

Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications, **as directed**: Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with 95-5 tin-antimony soldered joints.

**OR**

Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications, **as directed**: Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with Alloy HB soldered joints.

**OR**

Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications, **as directed**:

- a. NPS 5/8 (DN 18) and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR **OR** L (B), **as directed**, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
- b. NPS 3/4 to NPS 1 (DN 20 to DN 25) and Smaller: Copper, Type K (A), annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
- c. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with 95-5 tin-antimony soldered joints.
- d. NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 2 (DN 40 to DN 50): Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with Alloy HB soldered joints.

**OR**



- Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications, **as directed**, NPS 2 to NPS 4 (DN 50 to DN 100): Schedule 40, black-steel and wrought-steel fittings with welded joints.
3. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type ACR **OR** L (B), **as directed**, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.  
**OR**  
 Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type K (A), annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.  
**OR**  
 Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with 95-5 tin-antimony soldered joints.  
**OR**  
 Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with Alloy HB soldered joints.  
**OR**  
 Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping:  
 a. NPS 5/8 (DN 18) and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR **OR** L (B), **as directed**, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.  
 b. NPS 3/4 to NPS 1 (DN 20 to DN 25) and Smaller: Copper, Type K (A), annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.  
 c. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with 95-5 tin-antimony soldered joints.  
 d. NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 2 (DN 40 to DN 50): Copper, Type ACR **OR** K (A) **OR** L (B), **as directed**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with Alloy HB soldered joints.  
**OR**  
 Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping NPS 2 to NPS 4 (DN 50 to DN 100): Schedule 40, black-steel and wrought-steel fittings with welded joints.
- D. Valve And Specialty Applications
1. Install diaphragm packless **OR** packed-angle, **as directed**, valves in suction and discharge lines of compressor.
  2. Install service valves for gage taps at inlet and outlet of hot-gas bypass valves and strainers if they are not an integral part of valves and strainers.
  3. Install a check valve at the compressor discharge and a liquid accumulator at the compressor suction connection.
  4. Except as otherwise indicated, install diaphragm packless **OR** packed-angle, **as directed**, valves on inlet and outlet side of filter dryers.
  5. Install a full-sized, three-valve bypass around filter dryers.
  6. Install solenoid valves upstream from each expansion valve and hot-gas bypass valve. Install solenoid valves in horizontal lines with coil at top.
  7. Install thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.
    - a. Install valve so diaphragm case is warmer than bulb.
    - b. Secure bulb to clean, straight, horizontal section of suction line using two bulb straps. Do not mount bulb in a trap or at bottom of the line.
    - c. If external equalizer lines are required, make connection where it will reflect suction-line pressure at bulb location.
  8. Install safety relief valves where required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Pipe safety-relief-valve discharge line to outside according to ASHRAE 15.
  9. Install moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve or at the inlet of the evaporator coil capillary tube.
  10. Install strainers upstream from and adjacent to the following unless they are furnished as an integral assembly for device being protected:
    - a. Solenoid valves.
    - b. Thermostatic expansion valves.





- c. Hot-gas bypass valves.
  - d. Compressor.
  11. Install filter dryers in liquid line between compressor and thermostatic expansion valve, and in the suction line at the compressor, **as directed**.
  12. Install receivers sized to accommodate pump-down charge.
  13. Install flexible connectors at compressors.
- E. Piping Installation
1. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.
  2. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.
  3. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
  4. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
  5. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
  6. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
  7. Install piping free of sags and bends.
  8. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
  9. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
  10. Refer to Division 23 Section(s) "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac" AND "Sequence Of Operations For Hvac Controls" for solenoid valve controllers, control wiring, and sequence of operation.
  11. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
  12. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors And Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.
  13. Install refrigerant piping in protective conduit where installed belowground.
  14. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.
  15. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
    - a. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
    - b. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
    - c. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
    - d. Liquid lines may be installed level.
  16. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.
  17. Before installation of steel refrigerant piping, clean pipe and fittings using the following procedures:
    - a. Shot blast the interior of piping.
    - b. Remove coarse particles of dirt and dust by drawing a clean, lintless cloth through tubing by means of a wire or electrician's tape.
    - c. Draw a clean, lintless cloth saturated with trichloroethylene through the tube or pipe. Continue this procedure until cloth is not discolored by dirt.
    - d. Draw a clean, lintless cloth, saturated with compressor oil, squeezed dry, through the tube or pipe to remove remaining lint. Inspect tube or pipe visually for remaining dirt and lint.
    - e. Finally, draw a clean, dry, lintless cloth through the tube or pipe.



- f. Safety-relief-valve discharge piping is not required to be cleaned but is required to be open to allow unrestricted flow.
18. Install pipe sleeves at penetrations in exterior walls and floor assemblies.
19. Seal penetrations through fire and smoke barriers according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
20. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.
21. Install sleeves through floors, walls, or ceilings, sized to permit installation of full-thickness insulation.
22. Seal pipe penetrations through exterior walls according to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and methods.
23. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Division 23 Section "Identification For Hvac Piping And Equipment".

#### F. Pipe Joint Construction

1. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
3. Fill pipe and fittings with an inert gas (nitrogen or carbon dioxide), during brazing or welding, to prevent scale formation.
4. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
5. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."
  - a. Use Type BcuP, copper-phosphorus alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
  - b. Use Type BA9, cadmium-free silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.
6. Threaded Joints: Thread steel pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry-seal threading is specified.
  - b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
7. Steel pipe can be threaded, but threaded joints must be seal brazed or seal welded.
8. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M.
9. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

#### G. Hangers And Supports

1. Hanger, support, and anchor products are specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers And Supports For Hvac Piping And Equipment".
2. Install the following pipe attachments:
  - a. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet (6 m) long.
  - b. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet (6 m) or longer.
  - c. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet (6 m) or longer, supported on a trapeze.
  - d. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
  - e. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
3. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
  - a. NPS 1/2 (DN 15): Maximum span, 60 inches (1500 mm); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
  - b. NPS 5/8 (DN 18): Maximum span, 60 inches (1500 mm); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
  - c. NPS 1 (DN 25): Maximum span, 72 inches (1800 mm); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).



- d. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): Maximum span, 96 inches (2400 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
  - e. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): Maximum span, 96 inches (2400 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
  - f. NPS 2 (DN 50): Maximum span, 96 inches (2400 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
  - g. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Maximum span, 108 inches (2700 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
  - h. NPS 3 (DN 80): Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
  - i. NPS 4 (DN 100): Maximum span, 12 feet (3.7 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (13 mm).
4. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
    - a. NPS 2 (DN 50): Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Maximum span, 11 feet (3.4 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
    - c. NPS 3 (DN 80): Maximum span, 12 feet (3.7 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
    - d. NPS 4 (DN 100): Maximum span, 14 feet (4.3 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (13 mm).
  5. Support multifloor vertical runs at least at each floor.
- H. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
  2. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
    - b. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
    - c. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
      - 1) Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
      - 2) System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
      - 3) Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
      - 4) Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.
- I. System Charging
1. Charge system using the following procedures:
    - a. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
    - b. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers (67 Pa). If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
    - c. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig (14 kPa).
    - d. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.
- J. Adjusting
1. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.
  2. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.
  3. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.
  4. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:
    - a. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
    - b. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
    - c. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
    - d. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
    - e. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.
  5. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.



---

END OF SECTION 22 11 16 00h

**SECTION 22 11 16 00i - GENERAL-SERVICE COMPRESSED-AIR PIPING**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for general-service compressed-air piping. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. This Section includes piping and related specialties for general-service compressed-air systems operating at 200 psig (1380 kPa) or less.

## C. Definitions

1. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
2. CR: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic rubber.
3. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
4. HDPE: High-density polyethylene plastic.
5. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.
6. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
7. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
8. High-Pressure Compressed-Air Piping: System of compressed-air piping and specialties operating at pressures between 150 and 200 psig (1035 and 1380 kPa).
9. Low-Pressure Compressed-Air Piping: System of compressed-air piping and specialties operating at pressures of 150 psig (1035 kPa) or less.

## D. Performance Requirements

1. Seismic Performance: Compressed-air piping and support and installation shall withstand effects of seismic events determined according to SEI/ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures."

## E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For the following:
  - a. Plastic pipes, fittings, and valves.
  - b. Dielectric fittings.
  - c. Flexible pipe connectors.
  - d. Safety valves.
  - e. Pressure regulators. Include rated capacities and operating characteristics.
  - f. Automatic drain valves.
  - g. Filters. Include rated capacities and operating characteristics.
  - h. Lubricators. Include rated capacities and operating characteristics.
  - i. Quick couplings.
  - j. Hose assemblies.
2. Brazing **OR** Welding, **as directed**, certificates.
3. Field quality-control test reports.
4. Operation and maintenance data.

## F. Quality Assurance

1. Brazing: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications," or to AWS B2.2, "Standard for Brazing Procedure and Performance Qualification."
2. Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.



3. ASME Compliance:
  - a. Comply with ASME B31.1, "Power Piping," for high-pressure compressed-air piping.
  - b. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for low-pressure compressed-air piping.

G. Project Conditions

1. Interruption of Existing Compressed-Air Service: Do not interrupt compressed-air service to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary compressed-air service according to requirements indicated:
  - a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of compressed-air service.
  - b. Do not proceed with interruption of compressed-air service without the Owner's written permission.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Pipes, Tubes, And Fittings

1. Schedule 40, Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or S, Grade B, black or hot-dip zinc coated with ends threaded according to ASME B1.20.1.
  - a. Steel Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M or ASTM A 106, Schedule 40, galvanized seamless steel pipe. Include ends matching joining method.
  - b. Malleable-Iron Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150 or 300, threaded.
  - c. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150 or 300, threaded.
  - d. Steel Flanges: ASME B16.5, Class 150 or 300, carbon steel, threaded.
  - e. Wrought-Steel Butt-Welding Fittings: ASME B16.9, Schedule 40.
  - f. Steel Flanges: ASME B16.5, Class 150 or 300, carbon steel.
  - g. Grooved-End Fittings and Couplings:
    - 1) Grooved-End Fittings: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron castings or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting; with grooves according to AWWA C606 and dimensions matching steel pipe.
    - 2) Couplings: AWWA C606 or UL 213, for steel-pipe dimensions and rated for 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure. Include ferrous housing sections, gasket suitable for compressed air, and bolts and nuts. Provide EDPM gaskets for oil-free compressed air. Provide NBR gaskets if compressed air contains oil or oil vapor.
2. Schedule 5, Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135, carbon steel with plain ends and zinc-plated finish.
  - a. Pressure-Seal Fittings: Listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency and FMG-approved, carbon-steel, pressure-seal housing with O-ring end seals suitable for compressed-air piping and rated for 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure. Provide EDPM seals for oil-free compressed air. Provide NBR seals if compressed air contains oil or oil vapor.
3. Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K or L (ASTM B 88M, Type A or B) and ASTM B 88, Type M (ASTM B 88M, Type C) seamless, drawn-temper, water tube.
  - a. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, solder-joint pressure type or MSS SP-73, wrought copper with dimensions for brazed joints.
  - b. Cast-Copper-Alloy Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150 or 300.
  - c. Copper Unions: ASME B16.22 or MSS SP-123.
  - d. Press-Type Fittings, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
  - e. Press-Type Fittings, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Bronze fitting with stainless-steel grip ring and EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
  - f. Extruded-Tee Outlets: Procedure for making branch outlets in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014.



- g. Grooved-End Fittings and Couplings:
    - 1) Grooved-End Fittings: ASTM B 75 (ASTM B 75M), copper tube or ASTM B 584, bronze castings.
    - 2) Couplings: Copper-tube dimensions and design similar to AWWA C606. Include ferrous housing sections, gasket suitable for compressed air, and bolts and nuts. Provide EDPM gasket for oil-free compressed air. Provide NBR gasket if compressed air contains oil or oil vapor.
  4. Transition Couplings for Metal Piping: Metal coupling or other manufactured fitting same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to and ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
  5. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
    - a. PVC Fittings: ASTM D 2466, Schedule 40, socket type.
  6. Blue ABS Piping System: Made of ASTM D 3965, ABS-resin modified to provide shatter-resistant pipe for compressed-air service. Pipe and fittings are light blue and sizes are in millimeters.
    - a. Transition Fittings, 20 to 63 mm: Composite union with ABS socket end, CR O-ring, and malleable-iron union nut and threaded end; with construction similar to MSS SP-107, transition union.
    - b. Transition Fittings, 90 to 110 mm: Flange assembly with ABS flange, CR gasket, and metal flange of material matching piping to be connected.
    - c. Valves, 20 to 63 mm: ABS union ball valve with socket ends.
    - d. Valves, 90 to 110 mm: ABS butterfly valve with lever handle.
  7. Green ABS Piping System: Made of ASTM D 3965, ABS-resin modified to provide shatter-resistant pipe for compressed-air service. Pipe and fittings are dark green with SDR of 9.0 and same OD as ASTM A 53/A 53M, steel pipe.
    - a. Transition Fittings, NPS 1/2 to NPS 2 (DN 15 to DN 50): Composite union with ABS socket end, CR O-ring, ABS union nut, and brass solder-joint end; with construction similar to MSS SP-107, transition union.
    - b. Transition Fittings, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): ABS flange, CR gasket, and metal flange of material matching piping to be connected.
    - c. Valves, NPS 1/2 to NPS 2 (DN 15 to DN 50): Union ball valve with socket ends.
    - d. Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Union ball valve with flanged ends. Include safety exhaust feature in Part 3 "Valve Applications" Article if required.
  8. HDPE Piping System: Made of ASTM D 1248, HDPE resin to provide shatter-resistant pipe for compressed-air service. Pipe and fittings are dark blue with pipe dimensions about the same OD as ASTM D 3035, PE pipe.
    - a. Transition Fittings, NPS 1/2 to NPS 2 (DN 15 to DN 50): HDPE adapter with one socket end and one end with threaded brass insert.
    - b. Transition Fittings, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): HDPE flange, CR gasket, and metal flange of material matching piping to be connected.
    - c. Valves, NPS 1/2 to NPS 3 (DN 15 to DN 80): HDPE union ball valve with socket ends.
- B. Joining Materials
1. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for compressed-air piping system contents.
    - a. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
      - 1) Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
      - 2) Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
  2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Plastic Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
  5. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated.
  6. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
  7. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:



- a. ABS Piping: ASTM D 2235.
  - b. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer complying with ASTM F 656.
- C. Valves
1. Metal Ball, Butterfly, Check, Gate, and Globe Valves: Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping".
- D. Dielectric Fittings
1. General Requirements for Dielectric Fittings: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with insulating material; suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature. Include threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
  2. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated union assembly, for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
  3. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
  4. Dielectric-Flange Kits: Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
    - a. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.
- E. Flexible Pipe Connectors
1. Bronze-Hose Flexible Pipe Connectors: Corrugated-bronze tubing with bronze wire-braid covering and ends brazed to inner tubing.
    - a. Working-Pressure Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa) **OR** 250 psig (1725 kPa), **as directed**, minimum.
    - b. End Connections, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded copper pipe or plain-end copper tube.
    - c. End Connections, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged copper alloy.
  2. Stainless-Steel-Hose Flexible Pipe Connectors: Corrugated-stainless-steel tubing with stainless-steel wire-braid covering and ends welded to inner tubing.
    - a. Working-Pressure Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa) **OR** 250 psig (1725 kPa), **as directed**, minimum.
    - b. End Connections, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded steel pipe nipple.
    - c. End Connections, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged steel nipple.
- F. Sleeves
1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
  2. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
    - a. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
- G. Escutcheons
1. General Requirements: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with ID to closely fit around pipe and tube and OD that completely covers opening.
  2. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Escutcheons: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
  3. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: With set screw.
    - a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass, **as directed**.
  4. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: With concealed hinge and set screw.
    - a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass, **as directed**.
  5. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: With set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.





6. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: With concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge, set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.
7. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Escutcheons: Cast iron.
8. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Escutcheons: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

#### H. Specialties

1. Safety Valves: ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, "Pressure Vessels," construction; National Board certified, labeled, and factory sealed; constructed of bronze body with poppet-type safety valve for compressed-air service.
  - a. Pressure Settings: Higher than discharge pressure and same or lower than receiver pressure rating.
2. Air-Main Pressure Regulators: Bronze body, direct acting, spring-loaded manual pressure-setting adjustment, and rated for 250-psig (1725-kPa) inlet pressure, unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Type: Pilot operated.
3. Air-Line Pressure Regulators: Diaphragm **OR** Pilot, **as directed**, operated, bronze body, direct acting, spring-loaded manual pressure-setting adjustment, and rated for 200-psig (1380-kPa) minimum inlet pressure, unless otherwise indicated.

**OR**

Air-Line Pressure Regulators: Diaphragm operated, aluminum alloy or plastic body, direct acting, spring-loaded manual pressure-setting adjustment, and rated for 200-psig (1380-kPa) minimum inlet pressure, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Automatic Drain Valves: Stainless-steel body and internal parts, rated for 200-psig (1380-kPa) minimum working pressure, capable of automatic discharge of collected condensate. Include mounting bracket if wall mounting is indicated, **as directed**.
5. Coalescing Filters: Coalescing type with activated carbon capable of removing water and oil aerosols; with color-change dye to indicate when carbon is saturated and warning light to indicate when selected maximum pressure drop has been exceeded. Include mounting bracket if wall mounting is indicated, **as directed**.
6. Mechanical Filters: Two-stage, mechanical-separation-type, air-line filters. Equip with deflector plates, resin-impregnated-ribbon-type filters with edge filtration, and drain cock. Include mounting bracket if wall mounting is indicated, **as directed**.
7. Air-Line Lubricators: With drip chamber and sight dome for observing oil drop entering air stream; with oil-feed adjustment screw and quick-release collar for easy bowl removal. Include mounting bracket if wall mounting is indicated, **as directed**.
  - a. Provide with automatic feed device for supplying oil to lubricator.

#### I. Quick Couplings

1. General Requirements for Quick Couplings: Assembly with locking-mechanism feature for quick connection and disconnection of compressed-air hose.
2. Automatic-Shutoff Quick Couplings: Straight-through brass body with O-ring or gasket seal and stainless-steel or nickel-plated-steel operating parts.
  - a. Socket End: With one-way valve and threaded inlet for connection to piping or threaded hose fitting.
  - b. Plug End: Flow-sensor-bleeder, check-valve **OR** Straight-through, **as directed**, type with barbed outlet for attaching hose.
3. Valveless Quick Couplings: Straight-through brass body with stainless-steel or nickel-plated-steel operating parts.
  - a. Socket End: With O-ring or gasket seal, without valve, and with barbed inlet for attaching hose.
  - b. Plug End: With barbed outlet for attaching hose.

#### J. Hose Assemblies

1. Description: Compatible hose, clamps, couplings, and splicers suitable for compressed-air service, of nominal diameter indicated, and rated for 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure, unless otherwise indicated.



- a. Hose: Reinforced single **OR** double, **as directed**,-wire-braid, CR-covered hose for compressed-air service.
- b. Hose Clamps: Stainless-steel clamps or bands.
- c. Hose Couplings: Two-piece, straight-through, threaded brass or stainless-steel O-ring or gasket-seal swivel coupling with barbed ends for connecting two sections of hose.
- d. Hose Splicers: One-piece, straight-through brass or stainless-steel fitting with barbed ends for connecting two sections of hose.

#### K. Grout

1. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
  - a. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
  - b. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
  - c. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Piping Applications

1. Compressed-Air Piping between Air Compressors and Receivers: Use one of the following piping materials for each size range:
  - a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Schedule 40, black **OR** galvanized, **as directed**,-steel pipe; threaded, malleable-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
  - b. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Schedule 5, galvanized-steel pipe; pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
  - c. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Schedule 40, black-steel pipe; wrought-steel fittings; and welded joints.
  - d. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Type K or L (Type A or B), copper tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
  - e. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Schedule 40, black **OR** galvanized, **as directed**,-steel pipe; threaded, malleable-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
  - f. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Schedule 40, black **OR** galvanized, **as directed**,-steel pipe; grooved-end fittings; couplings; and grooved joints.
  - g. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Schedule 40, black-steel pipe; wrought-steel fittings; and welded joints.
  - h. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Type K or L (Type A or B), copper tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
  - i. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Type K or L (Type A or B), copper tube; grooved-end copper fittings; couplings; and grooved joints.
  - j. NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Schedule 40, black **OR** galvanized, **as directed**,-steel pipe; threaded, malleable-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
  - k. NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Schedule 40, black **OR** galvanized, **as directed**,-steel pipe; grooved-end fittings; couplings; and grooved joints.
  - l. NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Schedule 40, black-steel pipe; wrought-steel fittings; and welded joints.
  - m. NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Grooved-end, Type K or L (ASTM B 88M Type A or B), copper tube; grooved-end copper fittings; couplings; and grooved joints.
2. Low-Pressure Compressed-Air Distribution Piping: Use one of the following piping materials for each size range:
  - a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Schedule 40, black **OR** galvanized, **as directed**,-steel pipe; threaded, malleable-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
  - b. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Schedule 5, galvanized-steel pipe; pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
  - c. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Type K or L (Type A or B), copper tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.



- d. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Type K or L (Type A or B), copper tube; press-type fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
  - e. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: 63-mm and smaller, blue ABS pipe and fittings; transition fittings; valves; and solvent-cemented joints.
  - f. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Green ABS pipe and fittings, transition fittings, and valves; and solvent-cemented joints.
  - g. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: HDPE pipe, fittings, and valves; and heat-fusion joints.
  - h. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Schedule 40, black **OR** galvanized, **as directed**, -steel pipe; threaded, malleable-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
  - i. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Schedule 40, black **OR** galvanized, **as directed**, -steel pipe; grooved-end fittings; couplings; and grooved joints.
  - j. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Type K or L (Type A or B), copper tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
  - k. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Type K or L (Type A or B), copper tube; grooved-end copper fittings; couplings; and grooved joints.
  - l. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Type K or L (Type A or B), copper tube; press-type fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
  - m. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): 90- and 110-mm, blue ABS pipe and fittings; transition fittings; and solvent-cemented joints. Include butterfly valves and flanged joints.
  - n. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): NPS 3 and NPS 4 (DN 80 and DN 100), green ABS pipe and fittings; transition fittings; and solvent-cemented joints. Include ball valves and flanged joints.
  - o. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): NPS 3 and NPS 4 (DN 80 and DN 100), HDPE pipe and fittings; valves; and heat-fusion joints.
  - p. NPS 5 and NPS 6 (DN 125 and DN 150): Schedule 40, black **OR** galvanized, **as directed**, -steel pipe; threaded, malleable-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
  - q. NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Schedule 40, black **OR** galvanized, **as directed**, -steel pipe; grooved-end fittings; couplings; and grooved joints.
  - r. NPS 5 to NPS 8 (DN 125 to DN 200): Type K or L (Type A or B), copper tube; grooved-end copper fittings; couplings; and grooved joints.
3. High-Pressure Compressed-Air Distribution Piping: Use one of the following piping materials for each size range:
- a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Schedule 40, black **OR** galvanized, **as directed**, -steel pipe; threaded, malleable-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
  - b. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Schedule 5, galvanized-steel pipe; pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
  - c. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Schedule 40, black-steel pipe; wrought-steel fittings; and welded joints.
  - d. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Type K or L (Type A or B), copper tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
  - e. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 (DN 65 to DN 150): Schedule 40, black **OR** galvanized, **as directed**, -steel pipe; threaded, malleable-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
  - f. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 (DN 65 to DN 150): Schedule 40, black **OR** galvanized, **as directed**, -steel pipe; grooved-end fittings; couplings; and grooved joints.
  - g. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 (DN 65 to DN 150): Schedule 40, black-steel pipe; wrought-steel fittings; and welded joints.
  - h. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Type K or L (Type A or B), copper tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
  - i. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 (DN 65 to DN 150): Type K or L (Type A or B), copper tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
  - j. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 (DN 65 to DN 150): Type K or L (Type A or B), copper tube; grooved-end copper fittings; couplings; and grooved joints.
  - k. NPS 8 (DN 200) and Larger: Schedule 40, black **OR** galvanized, **as directed**, -steel pipe; grooved-end fittings; couplings; and grooved joints.
  - l. NPS 8 (DN 200) and Larger: Schedule 40, black-steel pipe; wrought-steel fittings; and welded joints.



- m. NPS 8 (DN 200): Type K or L (Type A or B), copper tube; grooved-end copper fittings; couplings; and grooved joints.
  - 4. Drain Piping: Use one of the following piping materials:
    - a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Type M (Type C) copper tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed or soldered joints.
    - b. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: PVC pipe and fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
- B. Valve Applications
- 1. General-Duty Valves: Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping" for metal general-duty valves. Use metal valves, unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Metal General-Duty Valves: Use valve types specified in "Valve Applications" Article in Division 22 Section "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping" according to the following:
      - 1) Low-Pressure Compressed Air: Valve types specified for low-pressure compressed air.
      - 2) High-Pressure Compressed Air: Valve types specified for medium-pressure compressed air.
      - 3) Equipment Isolation NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Safety-exhaust, copper-alloy ball valve with exhaust vent and pressure rating at least as great as piping system operating pressure.
      - 4) Grooved-end valves may be used with grooved-end piping and grooved joints.
    - b. Plastic General-Duty Valves: Provide valves, made by piping manufacturer, that are compatible with piping. Do not use plastic valves between air compressors and receivers.
      - 1) Blue ABS Piping System: Ball and butterfly valves.
      - 2) Green ABS Piping System: Ball valves.
      - 3) HDPE Piping System: Ball valves.
- C. Piping Installation
- 1. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of compressed-air piping. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, air-compressor sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
  - 2. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
  - 3. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal and to coordinate with other services occupying that space.
  - 5. Install piping adjacent to equipment and machines to allow service and maintenance.
  - 6. Install air and drain piping with 1 percent slope downward in direction of flow.
  - 7. Install nipples, flanges, unions, transition and special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings same as or higher than system pressure rating, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 8. Equipment and Specialty Flanged Connections:
    - a. Use steel companion flange with gasket for connection to steel pipe.
    - b. Use cast-copper-alloy companion flange with gasket and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joint for connection to copper tube. Do not use soldered joints for connection to air compressors or to equipment or machines producing shock or vibration.
  - 9. Flanged joints may be used instead of specified joint for any piping or tubing system.
  - 10. Extended-tee outlets with brazed branch connection may be used for copper tubing, within extruded-tee connection diameter to run tube diameter ratio for tube type, according to Extruded Tee Connections Sizes and Wall Thickness for Copper Tube (Inches) Table in ASTM F 2014.
  - 11. Install eccentric reducers where compressed-air piping is reduced in direction of flow, with bottoms of both pipes and reducer fitting flush.
  - 12. Install branch connections to compressed-air mains from top of main. Provide drain leg and drain trap at end of each main and branch and at low points.



13. Install thermometer and pressure gage on discharge piping from each air compressor and on each receiver. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping".
14. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
15. Install piping free of sags and bends.
16. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
17. Install seismic restraints on piping. Seismic-restraint devices are specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".

#### D. Joint Construction

1. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
3. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  - b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
4. Welded Joints for Steel Piping: Join according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M.
5. Brazed Joints for Copper Tubing: Join according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter.
6. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Join according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
7. Extruded-Tee Outlets for Copper Tubing: Form branches according to ASTM F 2014, with tools recommended by procedure manufacturer, and using operators qualified according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
8. Flanged Joints: Use asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket suitable for compressed air. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9 for bolting procedure.
9. Grooved Joints: Assemble couplings with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join according to AWWA C606 for grooved joints. Do not apply lubricant to prelubricated gaskets.
10. Heat-Fusion Joints for PE Piping: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657 for socket-fusion joints.
11. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer, using operators qualified according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
12. Solvent-Cemented Joints for ABS Piping: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join according to the following:
  - a. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
  - b. Join according to ASME B31.9 for solvent-cemented joints and to ASTM D 2235 Appendix.
13. Solvent-Cemented Joints for PVC Piping: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join according to the following:
  - a. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
  - b. Apply primer and join according to ASME B31.9 for solvent-cemented joints and to ASTM D 2672.
14. Dissimilar Metal Piping Material Joints: Use dielectric fittings.

#### E. Valve Installation

1. General-Duty Valves: Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping".
2. Install shutoff valves and unions or flanged joints at compressed-air piping to air compressors.
3. Install shutoff valve at inlet to each automatic drain valve, filter, lubricator, and pressure regulator.
4. Install check valves to maintain correct direction of compressed-air flow to and from compressed-air piping specialties and equipment.



- F. Dielectric Fitting Installation
1. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
  2. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
  3. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Use dielectric flanges.
  4. NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.
- G. Flexible Pipe Connector Installation
1. Install flexible pipe connectors in discharge piping and in inlet air piping from remote air-inlet filter, **as directed**, of each air compressor.
  2. Install bronze-hose flexible pipe connectors in copper compressed-air tubing.
  3. Install stainless-steel-hose flexible pipe connectors in steel compressed-air piping.
- H. Specialty Installation
1. Install safety valves on receivers in quantity and size to relieve at least the capacity of connected air compressors.
  2. Install air-main pressure regulators in compressed-air piping at or near air compressors.
  3. Install air-line pressure regulators in branch piping to equipment and tools, **as directed**.
  4. Install automatic drain valves on aftercoolers, receivers, and dryers. Discharge condensate onto nearest floor drain.
  5. Install coalescing filters in compressed-air piping at or near air compressors and upstream from mechanical filters. Mount on wall at locations indicated, **as directed**.
  6. Install mechanical filters in compressed-air piping at or near air compressors and downstream from coalescing filters. Mount on wall at locations indicated, **as directed**.
  7. Install air-line lubricators in branch piping to machine tools. Mount on wall at locations indicated, **as directed**.
  8. Install quick couplings at piping terminals for hose connections.
  9. Install hose assemblies at hose connections.
- I. Connections
1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment and machine.
  2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment and machine.
- J. Sleeve Installation
1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
  2. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
  3. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs using galvanized-steel pipe **OR** galvanized-steel sheet **OR** stack sleeve fittings **OR** PVC pipe, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
    - a. Wall Penetrations: Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - b. Floor Penetrations: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
  4. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
  5. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
    - a. PVC **OR** Steel, **as directed**, Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6 (DN 150).
    - b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger, penetrating gypsum board partitions.
    - c. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to



- 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim" for flashing.
- 1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
6. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
- K. Escutcheon Installation
1. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
    - a. New Piping:
      - 1) Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One piece, deep pattern.
      - 2) Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** stamped steel with set screw **OR** stamped steel with set screw or spring clips **OR** stamped steel with spring clips, **as directed**.
      - 3) Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** One piece or split-casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** Split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** One piece, stamped steel with set screw **OR** One piece or split plate, stamped steel with set screw **OR** Split plate, stamped steel with set screw, **as directed**.
      - 4) Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** cast brass with rough-brass finish **OR** stamped steel with set screw **OR** stamped steel with spring clips **OR** stamped steel with set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
      - 5) Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One piece, cast brass **OR** stamped steel with set screw **OR** stamped steel with spring clips **OR** stamped steel with set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
      - 6) Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece floor plate.
    - b. Existing Piping:
      - 1) Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish.
      - 2) Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge and spring clips.
      - 3) Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge and spring clips, **as directed**.
      - 4) Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge and set screw, **as directed**.
      - 5) Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** casting, cast brass with rough-brass finish **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge and set screw or spring clips **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge and set screw or spring clips **OR** plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge and set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
      - 6) Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split casting, cast brass **OR** plate, stamped steel with set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
      - 7) Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting floor plate.
- L. Hanger And Support Installation
1. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" for seismic-restraint devices.
  2. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Hangers And Supports For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" for pipe hanger and support devices.
  3. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
  4. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
    - a. 100 Feet (30 m) or Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.



- b. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
5. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
6. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
7. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches (300 mm) of each fitting and coupling.
8. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum rods.
9. Install hangers for Schedule 40, steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 1/2 (DN 8 to DN 15): 96 inches (2400 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - b. NPS 3/4 to NPS 1-1/4 (DN 20 to DN 32): 84 inches (2100 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - c. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - d. NPS 2 (DN 50): 13 feet (4 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - e. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 14 feet (4.3 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - f. NPS 3 (DN 80): 15 feet (4.6 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - g. NPS 3-1/2 (DN 90): 16 feet (4.9 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - h. NPS 4 (DN 100): 17 feet (5.2 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
  - i. NPS 5 (DN 125): 19 feet (5.8 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
  - j. NPS 6 (DN 150): 21 feet (6.4 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
  - k. NPS 8 (DN 200): 24 feet (7.3 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
  - l. NPS 10 (DN 250): 26 feet (7.9 m) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
  - m. NPS 12 (DN 300): 30 feet (9.1 m) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
10. Install supports for vertical, Schedule 40, steel piping every 15 feet (4.6 m).
11. Install hangers for Schedule 5, steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - a. NPS 1/2 (DN 15): 72 inches (1800 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - b. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): 84 inches (2100 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - c. NPS 1 (DN 25): 96 inches (2400 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - d. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - e. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - f. NPS 2 (DN 50): 11 feet (3.4 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
12. Install supports for vertical, Schedule 5, steel piping every 10 feet (3 m).
13. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - a. NPS 1/4 (DN 8): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - b. NPS 3/8 and NPS 1/2 (DN 10 and DN 15): 72 inches (1800 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - c. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): 84 inches (2100 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - d. NPS 1 (DN 25): 96 inches (2400 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - e. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - f. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - g. NPS 2 (DN 50): 11 feet (3.4 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - h. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 13 feet (4 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - i. NPS 3 (DN 80): 14 feet (4.3 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - j. NPS 3-1/2 (DN 90): 15 feet (4.6 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - k. NPS 4 (DN 100): 16 feet (4.9 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - l. NPS 5 (DN 125): 18 feet (5.5 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - m. NPS 6 (DN 150): 20 feet (6 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
  - n. NPS 8 (DN 200): 23 feet (7 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
14. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet (3 m).
15. Install vinyl-coated hangers for ABS piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - a. All Sizes: Install continuous support for piping with compressed air at normal operating temperature above 100 deg F (38 deg C).
  - b. NPS 3/8 and NPS 1/2 (DN 10 and DN 15): 30 inches (760 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.





- c. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): 38 inches (975 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - d. NPS 1 (DN 25): 40 inches (1015 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - e. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): 45 inches (1140 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - f. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): 52 inches (1330 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - g. NPS 2 (DN 50): 58 inches (1470 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - h. NPS 3 (DN 80): 68 inches (1730 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - i. NPS 4 (DN 100): 76 inches (1900 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
16. Install supports for vertical ABS piping every 48 inches (1220 mm).
  17. Install vinyl-coated hangers for HDPE piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
    - a. All Sizes: Install continuous support for piping with compressed air at normal operating temperature above 100 deg F (38 deg C).
    - b. NPS 1/2 (DN 15): 30 inches (760 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
    - c. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): 35 inches (890 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
    - d. NPS 1 (DN 25): 40 inches (1015 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
    - e. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): 43 inches (1090 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
    - f. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): 49 inches (1245 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
    - g. NPS 2 (DN 50): 55 inches (1400 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
    - h. NPS 3 and NPS 4 (DN 80 and DN 100): 96 inches (2440 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  18. Install supports for vertical HDPE piping every 48 inches (1220 mm).

M. Labeling And Identification

1. Install identifying labels and devices for general-service compressed-air piping, valves, and specialties. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Identification For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".

N. Field Quality Control

1. Perform field tests and inspections.
2. Tests and Inspections:
  - a. Piping Leak Tests for Metal Compressed-Air Piping: Test new and modified parts of existing piping. Cap and fill general-service compressed-air piping with oil-free dry air or gaseous nitrogen to pressure of 50 psig (345 kPa) above system operating pressure, but not less than 150 psig (1035 kPa). Isolate test source and let stand for four hours to equalize temperature. Refill system, if required, to test pressure; hold for two hours with no drop in pressure.
  - b. Piping Leak Tests for ABS Compressed-Air Piping: Test new and modified parts of existing piping. Cap and fill general-service compressed-air piping with oil-free dry air or gaseous nitrogen, at temperature of 110 deg F (43 deg C) or less, to pressure of 40 psig (275 kPa) above system operating pressure, but not less than 80 psig (550 kPa) **OR** 100 psig (690 kPa), **as directed**, or more than 120 psig (825 kPa). Isolate test source and let stand for four hours to equalize temperature. Refill system, if required, to test pressure; hold for two hours with no drop in pressure.
  - c. Piping Leak Tests for HDPE Compressed-Air Piping: Test new and modified parts of existing piping. Cap and fill general-service compressed-air piping with oil-free dry air or gaseous nitrogen, at temperature of 100 deg F (38 deg C) or less, to pressure of 40 psig (275 kPa) above system operating pressure, but not less than 100 psig (690 kPa) **OR** 125 psig (860 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**, or more than 180 psig (1240 kPa). Isolate test source and let stand for four hours to equalize temperature. Refill system, if required, to test pressure; hold for two hours with no drop in pressure.
  - d. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - e. Inspect filters, lubricators, and pressure regulators for proper operation.
3. Prepare test reports.

END OF SECTION 22 11 16 00i



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 22 11 16 00j - COMPRESSED-AIR PIPING FOR LABORATORY AND HEALTHCARE FACILITIES**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for compressed-air piping for laboratory and healthcare facilities. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Compressed-air piping and specialties for nonmedical laboratory facilities, designated "laboratory air," operating at 50 psig (345 kPa) **OR** 100 psig (690 kPa) **OR** 125 psig (860 kPa), **as directed**.
  - b. Medical air piping and specialties, designated "medical air," operating at 50 to 55 psig (345 to 380 kPa).
  - c. Dental air piping and specialties, designated "dental air," operating at 80 to 100 psig (550 to 690 kPa).
  - d. Gas-powered-tool air piping and specialties, designated "instrument air," operating at 175 psig (1200 kPa).
  - e. Healthcare laboratory air piping and specialties, designated "medical laboratory air," operating at 100 psig (690 kPa).

## C. Definitions

1. D.I.S.S.: Diameter-index safety system.
2. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.
3. Medical Compressed-Air Piping Systems: Include medical air, dental air, instrument air, and medical laboratory air piping systems.

## D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For the following:
  - a. Compressed-air tubes and fittings.
  - b. Compressed-air valves and valve boxes.
  - c. Medical compressed-air service connections.
  - d. Medical compressed-air pressure control panels.
  - e. Medical compressed-air manifolds.
  - f. Medical compressed-air alarm system components.
2. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Piping Material Certification: Signed by Installer certifying that medical compressed-air piping materials comply with NFPA 99 requirements.
4. Brazing certificates.
5. Field quality-control test reports.
6. Operation and maintenance data.

## E. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications:
  - a. Medical Compressed-Air Piping Systems for Healthcare Facilities: Qualify installers according to ASSE Standard #6010.
  - b. Pressure-Seal Joining Procedure for Copper Tubing: Qualify operators according to training provided by Viega; Plumbing and Heating Systems.



2. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the vacuum piping testing indicated, that is a member of the Medical Gas Professional Healthcare Organization **OR** is an NRTL, **as directed**, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - a. Qualify testing personnel according to ASSE Standard #6020 for inspectors and ASSE Standard #6030 for verifiers.
3. Source Limitations: Obtain compressed-air service connections of same type and from same manufacturer as service connections provided for in Division 22 Section "Gas Piping For Laboratory And Healthcare Facilities".
4. Brazing: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications," or AWS B2.2, "Standard for Brazing Procedure and Performance Qualification."
5. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
6. ASME Compliance:
  - a. Comply with ASME B31.1, "Power Piping," for laboratory compressed-air piping operating at more than 150 psig (1035 kPa).
  - b. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for laboratory compressed-air piping operating at 150 psig (1035 kPa) or less.
7. Comply with NFPA 99, "Health Care Facilities," for medical compressed-air system materials and installation in healthcare facilities.

#### F. Project Conditions

1. Interruption of Existing Laboratory and Medical Compressed-Air Service(s): Do not interrupt laboratory or medical compressed-air service to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
  - a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of laboratory and medical compressed-air service(s).
  - b. Do not proceed with interruption of laboratory and medical compressed-air service(s) without the Owner's written permission.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Pipes, Tubes, And Fittings

1. Copper Medical Gas Tube: ASTM B 819, Type K **OR** Type L, **as directed**, seamless, drawn temper, that has been manufacturer cleaned, purged, and sealed for medical gas service or according to CGA G-4.1 for oxygen service. Include standard color marking "OXY," "MED," "OXY/MED," "OXY/ACR," or "ACR/MED" in green for Type K tube and in blue for Type L tube.
  - a. General Requirements for Copper Fittings: Manufacturer cleaned, purged, and bagged for oxygen service according to CGA G-4.1.
  - b. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, solder-joint pressure type or MSS SP-73, with dimensions for brazed joints.
  - c. Copper Unions: ASME B16.22 or MSS SP-123, wrought copper or cast-copper alloy.
  - d. Press-Type Fittings:
    - 1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Bronze fitting with stainless-steel grip ring and EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
2. Memory-Metal Couplings: Cryogenic compression fitting made of ASTM F 2063, nickel-titanium, shape-memory alloy, and that has been manufacturer cleaned, purged, and sealed for oxygen service according to CGA G-4.1.



3. Copper Water Tube: ASTM B 88, Type M (ASTM B 88M, Type C), seamless, drawn temper.
    - a. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint pressure type.
    - b. Press-Type Fittings:
      - 1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
      - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Bronze fitting with stainless-steel grip ring and EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
  4. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
    - a. PVC Fittings: ASTM D 2466, Schedule 40, socket type.
- B. Joining Materials
1. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
  2. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Threaded-Joint Tape: PTFE.
  4. Solvent Cement for Joining PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer complying with ASTM F 656.
- C. Valves
1. General Requirements for Valves: Manufacturer cleaned, purged, and bagged according to CGA G-4.1 for oxygen service.
  2. Ball Valves: MSS SP-110, 3-piece body, brass or bronze.
    - a. Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) minimum.
    - b. Ball: Full-port, chrome-plated brass.
    - c. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - d. Handle: Lever type with locking device, **as directed**.
    - e. Stem: Blowout proof with PTFE or TFE seal.
    - f. Ends: Manufacturer-installed ASTM B 819, copper-tube extensions.
  3. Check Valves: In-line pattern, bronze.
    - a. Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) minimum.
    - b. Operation: Spring loaded.
    - c. Ends: Manufacturer-installed ASTM B 819, copper-tube extensions.
  4. Zone Valves: MSS SP-110, 3-piece-body, brass or bronze ball valve with gage.
    - a. Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) minimum.
    - b. Ball: Full-port, chrome-plated brass.
    - c. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - d. Handle: Lever type with locking device, **as directed**.
    - e. Stem: Blowout proof with PTFE or TFE seal.
    - f. Ends: Manufacturer-installed ASTM B 819, copper-tube extensions.
    - g. Pressure Gage: Manufacturer installed on one copper-tube extension.
  5. Zone Valve Boxes: Formed steel with anchors for recessed mounting, holes with grommets in box sides for tubing extension protection, and of size for single or multiple valves with pressure gages and in sizes required to permit manual operation of valves.
    - a. Interior Finish: Factory-applied white enamel.
    - b. Cover Plate: Aluminum or extruded-anodized aluminum **OR** Satin-chrome finish steel **OR** Stainless steel with NAAMM AMP 503, No. 4 finish, **as directed**, with frangible or removable windows.
    - c. Valve-Box Windows: Clear or tinted transparent plastic with labeling that includes rooms served, according to NFPA 99.
- OR**
- Zone Valve Boxes: Formed or extruded aluminum with anchors for recessed mounting, holes with grommets in box sides for tubing extension protection, and of size for single or multiple valves with pressure gages and in sizes required to permit manual operation of valves.



- a. Interior Finish: Factory-applied white enamel.
  - b. Cover Plate: Aluminum or extruded-anodized aluminum **OR** Stainless steel with NAAMM AMP 503, No. 4 finish, **as directed**, with frangible or removable windows.
  - c. Valve-Box Windows: Clear or tinted transparent plastic with labeling that includes rooms served, according to NFPA 99.
6. Safety Valves: Bronze-body, ASME-construction, poppet, pressure-relief type with settings to match system requirements.
  7. Pressure Regulators: Bronze body and trim; spring-loaded, diaphragm-operated relieving type; manual pressure-setting adjustment; rated for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum inlet pressure; and capable of controlling delivered air pressure within 0.5 psig for each 10-psig (5.0 kPa for each 100-kPa) inlet pressure.
  8. Automatic Drain Valves: Stainless-steel body and internal parts, rated for 200-psig (1380-kPa) minimum working pressure, capable of automatic discharge of collected condensate. Include mounting bracket where wall mounting is indicated, **as directed**.
- D. Medical Compressed-Air Service Connections
1. Connection Devices: For specific medical compressed-air pressure and service listed. Include roughing-in assemblies, finishing assemblies, and cover plates. Individual cover plates are not required if service connection is in multiple unit or assembly with cover plate. Furnish recessed-type units made for concealed piping unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Roughing-in Assembly:
      - 1) Steel outlet box for recessed mounting and concealed piping.
      - 2) Brass-body outlet block with secondary check valve that will prevent gas flow when primary valve is removed.
      - 3) Double seals that will prevent air leakage.
      - 4) ASTM B 819, NPS 3/8 (DN 10) copper outlet tube brazed to valve with service marking and tube-end dust cap.
    - b. Finishing Assembly:
      - 1) Brass housing with primary check valve.
      - 2) Double seals that will prevent air leakage.
      - 3) Cover plate with gas-service label.
    - c. Quick-Coupler Service Connections: Pressure outlet with noninterchangeable keyed indexing to prevent interchange between services, constructed to permit one-handed connection and removal of equipment, and with positive-locking ring that retains equipment stem in valve during use.
    - d. D.I.S.S. Service Connections: Pressure outlets, complying with CGA V-5, with threaded indexing to prevent interchange between services, constructed to permit one-handed connection and removal of equipment.
      - 1) Medical Air Service Connections: CGA V-5, D.I.S.S. No. 1160.
      - 2) Instrument Air Service Connections: CGA V-5, D.I.S.S. No. 1160.
    - e. Cover Plates: One piece, stainless steel, with NAAMM AMP 503, No. 4 finish **OR** metal, with chrome-plated finish **OR** anodized aluminum, **as directed**, and permanent, color-coded, identifying label matching corresponding service.
- E. Medical Compressed-Air Pressure Control Panels
1. Description: Steel box and support brackets for recessed roughing in with stainless-steel or anodized-aluminum cover plate with printed operating instructions. Include manifold assembly consisting of inlet supply valve, inlet supply pressure gage, line-pressure control regulator, outlet supply pressure gage, D.I.S.S. service connection, and piping outlet for remote service connection.
    - a. Minimum Working Pressure: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - b. Line-Pressure Control Regulator: Self-relieving diaphragm type with precision manual adjustment.
    - c. Pressure Gages: 0- to 300-psig (0- to 2070-kPa) range.



- d. Service Connection: CGA V-5, D.I.S.S. No. 1160, instrument air outlet.
- e. Before final assembly, provide temporary dust shield and U-tube for testing.
- f. Label cover plate "Air Pressure Control."

F. Medical Compressed-Air Manifolds

1. General Requirements for Medical Compressed-Air Manifolds: Comply with NFPA 99, Ch. 5, "Manifolds for Gas Cylinders without Reserve Supply."
2. Central Control Panel Unit: Weatherproof cabinet, supply and delivery pressure gages, electrical alarm system connections and transformer, indicator lights or devices, manifold connection, pressure changeover switch, line-pressure regulator, shutoff valves, and safety valve.
3. Manifold and Headers: Duplex, nonferrous-metal header for number of cylinders indicated, divided into two equal banks. Units include design for 2000-psig (13.8-MPa) minimum inlet pressure. Include cylinder bank headers with inlet (pigtail) connections complying with CGA V-1, individual inlet check valves, shutoff valve, pressure regulator, check valve, and pressure gage.
4. Compressed-Air Cylinders: Will be furnished by the Owner **OR** Number and type of compressed-air cylinders required for complete manifold systems, **as directed**.
5. Operation: Automatic, pressure-switch-activated changeover from one cylinder bank to the other when first bank becomes exhausted, without line-pressure fluctuation or resetting of regulators and without supply interruption by shutoff of either cylinder bank header.
6. Mounting: Wall with mounting brackets for manifold control cabinet and headers **OR** Floor with support legs for manifold control cabinet, **as directed**.
7. Label manifold control unit with permanent label identifying compressed air and system operating pressure.
8. Medical Air Manifolds: For 4 cylinders and 1250-cu. ft./h (9.85-L/s) **OR** 8 cylinders and 2500-cu. ft./h (19.7-L/s), **as directed**, capacity at 55-psig (380-kPa) line pressure.
9. Instrument Air Manifolds: For 8 cylinders and 2000-cu. ft./h (15.7-L/s) **OR** 12 cylinders and 3000-cu. ft./h (23.6-L/s), **as directed**, capacity at 200-psig (1380-kPa) minimum line pressure.

G. Medical Compressed-Air-Piping Alarm Systems

1. Panels for medical compressed-air piping systems may be combined in single panels with medical vacuum and medical gas piping systems.
2. Components: Designed for continuous service and to operate on power supplied from 120 **OR** 240 **OR** 277, **as directed**, -V ac power source to alarm panels and with connections for low-voltage wiring to remote sensing devices. Include step-down transformers if required.
3. Dew Point Monitors: Continuous line monitoring, having panel with gage or digital display, pipeline sensing element, electrical connections for alarm system, factory- or field-installed valved bypass, and visual and cancelable audio signal for dryer site and master alarm panels. Alarm signals when pressure dew point rises above 39 deg F (4 deg C) at 55 psig (380 kPa).
  - a. Operation: Chilled-mirror method **OR** Chilled-mirror method or hygrometer moisture analyzer with sensor probe **OR** Hygrometer moisture analyzer with sensor probe, **as directed**.
4. Pressure Switches or Transducer Sensors: Continuous line monitoring with electrical connections for alarm system.
  - a. Low-Pressure Operating Range: 0- to 100-psig (0- to 690-kPa).
  - b. High-Pressure Operating Range: Up to 250-psig (1725-kPa).
5. Carbon Monoxide Monitors: Panel with gage or digital display, pipeline sensing element, electrical connections for alarm system, and factory- or field-installed valved bypass. Alarm signals when carbon monoxide level rises above 10 ppm.
6. General Requirements for Medical Compressed-Air Alarm Panels: Factory wired with audible and color-coded visible signals to indicate specified functions.
  - a. Mounting: Exposed, surface **OR** Recessed, **as directed**, installation.
  - b. Enclosures: Fabricated from minimum 0.047-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick steel or minimum 0.05-inch- (1.27-mm-) thick aluminum, with knockouts for electrical and piping connections.
7. Master Alarm Panels: Separate trouble alarm signals, pressure gages, and indicators for medical compressed-air piping systems.



- a. Include alarm signals when the following conditions exist:
    - 1) Medical Air: Pressure drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa), backup air compressor is in operation, pressure drop across filter assembly increases more than 2 psig (13.8 kPa), dew point rises above 39 deg F (4 deg C) at 55 psig (380 kPa), carbon monoxide level rises above 10 ppm, and high water level is reached in receiver for liquid-ring, medical air compressor systems.
    - 2) Dental Air: Pressure drops below 65 psig (450 kPa) or rises above 110 psig (760 kPa), backup air compressor is in operation, pressure drop across filter assembly increases more than 2 psig (13.8 kPa), dew point rises above 50 deg F (10 deg C) at 125 psig (860 kPa), and carbon monoxide level rises above 10 ppm.
    - 3) Instrument Air: Pressure drops below 165 psig (1140 kPa) or rises above 185 psig (1275 kPa).
    - 4) Medical Laboratory Air: Pressure drops below 90 psig (630 kPa) or rises above 110 psig (760 kPa).
  8. Anesthetizing-Area Alarm Panels: Separate trouble alarm signals, pressure gages, and indicators for medical compressed-air piping systems.
    - a. Include alarm signals when the following conditions exist:
      - 1) Medical Air: Pressure drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa).
      - 2) Instrument Air: Pressure drops below 165 psig (1140 kPa) or rises above 185 psig (1275 kPa).
  9. Area Alarm Panels: Separate trouble alarm signals, pressure gages, and indicators for medical compressed-air piping systems.
    - a. Include alarm signals when the following condition exists:
      - 1) Medical Air: Pressure drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa).
  10. Dental-Area Alarm Panels: Separate trouble alarm signals, pressure gages, and indicators for medical compressed-air piping systems.
    - a. Include alarm signals when the following conditions exist:
      - 1) Dental Air: Pressure drops below 65 psig (450 kPa) or rises above 110 psig (760 kPa), backup air compressor is in operation, pressure drop across filter assembly increases more than 2 psig (13.8 kPa), dew point rises above 50 deg F (10 deg C) at 125 psig (860 kPa), and carbon monoxide level rises above 10 ppm.
      - 2) Instrument Air: Pressure drops below 165 psig (1140 kPa) or rises above 185 psig (1275 kPa).
  11. Medical Laboratory Area Alarm Panels: Separate trouble alarm signals, pressure gages,; and indicators for medical compressed-air piping systems.
    - a. Include alarm signals when the following condition exists:
      - 1) Medical Laboratory Air: Pressure drops below 90 psig (630 kPa) or rises above 110 psig (760 kPa).
- H. Computer Interface Cabinet
1. Description: Wall-mounting, welded-steel control cabinet with gasketed door, mounting brackets, grounding device, and white-enamel finish for connection of medical compressed-air- piping-system alarms to facility computer. Include factory-installed signal circuit boards, power transformer, circuit breaker, wiring terminal board, and internal wiring capable of interfacing 20, **as directed**, alarm signals.
- I. Compressed-Air-Cylinder Storage Racks
1. Wall Storage Racks: Fabricate racks with chain restraints for upright cylinders as indicated or provide equivalent manufactured wall racks.
  2. Freestanding Storage Racks: Fabricate racks as indicated or provide equivalent manufactured storage racks.





- J. Flexible Pipe Connectors
1. Description: Corrugated-bronze tubing with bronze wire-braid covering and ends brazed to inner tubing.
    - a. Working-Pressure Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa) **OR** 250 psig (1725 kPa), **as directed**, minimum.
    - b. End Connections: Threaded copper pipe or plain-end copper tube.
- K. Sleeves
1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
  2. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
    - a. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
- L. Escutcheons
1. General Requirements for Escutcheons: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with ID to closely fit around pipe and tube and OD that completely covers opening.
  2. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Escutcheons: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
  3. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: With set screw.
    - a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass, **as directed**.
  4. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: With concealed hinge and set screw.
    - a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass, **as directed**.
  5. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: With set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.
  6. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: With concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge, set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.
  7. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Escutcheons: Cast iron.
  8. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Escutcheons: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.
- M. Grout
1. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
    - a. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
    - b. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
    - c. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.
- N. Nitrogen
1. Description: Comply with USP 28 - NF 23 for oil-free dry nitrogen.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Piping Applications
1. Connect new tubing to existing tubing with memory-metal couplings.
  2. Laboratory Air Piping: Use one of the following piping materials for each size range:
    - a. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Type L, copper medical gas tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
    - b. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Type L, copper medical gas tube; press-type fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
    - c. NPS 5 to NPS 8 (DN 125 to DN 200): Type L, copper medical gas tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
  3. Medical Air Piping: Use Type L, copper medical gas tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.



4. Dental Air Piping: Use Type L, copper medical gas tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
5. Instrument Air Piping:
  - a. NPS 3 (DN 80) and Smaller: Use Type K **OR** Type L, **as directed**, copper medical gas tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
  - b. NPS 3-1/2 (DN 90) and Larger: Use Type K, copper medical gas tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
6. Medical Laboratory Air Piping: Use Type L, copper medical gas tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
7. Drain Piping: Use one of the following piping materials:
  - a. Copper water tube, cast- or wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** press-type fittings, and pressure-sealed, **as directed**, joints.
  - b. PVC pipe, PVC fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.

#### B. Piping Installation

1. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of compressed-air piping. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, air-compressor sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
2. Comply with ASSE Standard #6010 for installation of compressed-air piping.
3. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
4. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
5. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
6. Install piping adjacent to equipment and specialties to allow service and maintenance.
7. Install air and drain piping with 1 percent slope downward in direction of flow.
8. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings same as or higher than system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
9. Install eccentric reducers, if available, where compressed-air piping is reduced in direction of flow, with bottoms of both pipes and reducer fitting flush.
10. Install branch connections to compressed-air mains from top of main. Provide drain leg and drain trap at end of each main and branch and at low points.
11. Install thermometer and pressure gage on discharge piping from each air compressor and on each receiver. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping".
12. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
13. Install piping free of sags and bends.
14. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
15. Install medical compressed-air piping to medical compressed-air service connections specified in this Section, to medical compressed-air service connections in equipment specified in Division 22 Section "Gas Piping For Laboratory And Healthcare Facilities", and to equipment specified in other Sections requiring medical compressed-air service.
16. Install seismic restraints on compressed-air piping. Seismic-restraint devices are specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
17. Install compressed-air service connections recessed in walls. Attach roughing-in assembly to substrate; attach finishing assembly to roughing-in assembly.
18. Connect compressed-air piping to air compressors and to compressed-air outlets and equipment requiring compressed-air service.
19. Install unions in copper compressed-air tubing adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.



- C. Valve Installation
1. Install shutoff valve at each connection to and from compressed-air equipment and specialties.
  2. Install check valves to maintain correct direction of compressed-air flow from compressed-air equipment.
  3. Install valve boxes recessed in wall and anchored to substrate. Single boxes may be used for multiple valves that serve same area or function.
  4. Install zone valves and gages in valve boxes. Rotate valves to angle that prevents closure of cover when valve is in closed position.
  5. Install safety valves on compressed-air receivers where required by NFPA 99 and where recommended by specialty manufacturers.
  6. Install pressure regulators on compressed-air piping where reduced pressure is required.
  7. Install automatic drain valves on equipment, specialties, and piping with drain connection. Run drain piping to floor drain so contents spill over or into it.
  8. Install flexible pipe connectors in discharge piping and in inlet air piping from remote air-inlet filter, **as directed**, of each air compressor.
- D. Joint Construction
1. Ream ends of PVC pipes and remove burrs.
  2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from outside of cleaned tubing and fittings before assembly.
  3. Threaded Joints: Apply appropriate tape to external pipe threads.
  4. Brazed Joints: Join copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Brazed Joints" Chapter. Continuously purge joint with oil-free dry nitrogen during brazing.
  5. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to tube end. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828.
  6. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join copper tube and press-type fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
  7. Memory-Metal Coupling Joints: Join new copper tube to existing tube according to procedures developed by fitting manufacturer for installation of memory-metal coupling joints.
  8. Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join PVC pipe and fittings according to the following:
    - a. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
    - b. Apply primer and join according to ASME B31.9 for solvent-cemented joints, and ASTM D 2672.
- E. Compressed-Air Service Component Installation
1. Install compressed-air pressure control panel in walls. Attach to substrate.
  2. Install compressed-air manifolds on concrete base, **as directed**, anchored to substrate.
  3. Install compressed-air cylinders and connect to manifold piping.
  4. Install compressed-air manifolds with seismic restraints as indicated.
  5. Install compressed-air-cylinder wall storage racks attached to substrate.
- F. Medical Compressed-Air-Piping Alarm System Installation
1. Alarm panels for medical compressed-air piping systems may be combined in single panels with medical vacuum piping systems and medical gas piping systems.
  2. Install alarm system components for medical compressed-air-piping according to and in locations required by NFPA 99.
  3. Install area and master alarm panels for medical compressed-air piping system where indicated.
  4. Install computer interface cabinet with connection to medical compressed-air-piping alarm system and to facility computer.
- G. Sleeve Installation
1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
  2. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.



3. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs using galvanized-steel pipe **OR** galvanized-steel sheet **OR** stack sleeve fittings **OR** PVC pipe, **as directed**.
  - a. Wall Penetrations: Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  - b. Floor Penetrations: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.

**OR**

Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
4. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
  - a. PVC **OR** Steel, **as directed**, Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6 (DN 150).
  - b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger penetrating gypsum board partitions.
  - c. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim" for flashing.
    - 1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
5. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".

#### H. Escutcheon Installation

1. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
  - a. New Piping:
    - 1) Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One piece, deep pattern.
    - 2) Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** stamped steel with set screw **OR** stamped steel with set screw or spring clips **OR** stamped steel with spring clips, **as directed**.
    - 3) Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** One piece or split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** Split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** One piece, stamped steel with set screw **OR** One piece or split plate, stamped steel with set screw **OR** Split plate, stamped steel with set screw, **as directed**.
    - 4) Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** cast brass with rough-brass finish **OR** stamped steel with set screw **OR** stamped steel with spring clips **OR** stamped steel with set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
    - 5) Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One piece, cast brass **OR** stamped steel with set screw **OR** stamped steel with spring clips **OR** stamped steel with set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
    - 6) Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece floor plate.
  - b. Existing Piping:
    - 1) Chrome-Plated Piping: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish.
    - 2) Insulated Piping: Split plate, stamped steel with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge and spring clips.
    - 3) Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge and spring clips, **as directed**.



- 4) Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge and set screw, **as directed**.
- 5) Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** casting, cast brass with rough-brass finish **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge and set screw or spring clips **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge and set screw or spring clips **OR** plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge and set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
- 6) Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split casting, cast brass **OR** plate, stamped steel with set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
- 7) Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting floor plate.

I. Hanger And Support Installation

1. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" for seismic-restraint devices.
2. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Hangers And Supports For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" for pipe hanger and support devices.
3. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
4. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
  - a. 100 Feet (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel, clevis hangers.
  - b. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable, roller hangers.
5. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Hangers And Supports For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" for trapeze hangers.
6. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
7. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches (300 mm) of each fitting and coupling.
8. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum rods.
9. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - a. NPS 1/4 (DN 8): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - b. NPS 3/8 and NPS 1/2 (DN 10 and DN 15): 72 inches (1800 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - c. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): 84 inches (2100 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - d. NPS 1 (DN 25): 96 inches (2400 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - e. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - f. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - g. NPS 2 (DN 50): 11 feet (3.4 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - h. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 13 feet (4 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - i. NPS 3 (DN 80): 14 feet (4.3 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - j. NPS 3-1/2 (DN 90): 15 feet (4.6 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - k. NPS 4 (DN 100): 16 feet (4.9 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - l. NPS 5 (DN 125): 18 feet (5.5 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - m. NPS 6 (DN 150): 20 feet (6 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
  - n. NPS 8 (DN 200): 23 feet (7 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
10. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet (3 m).

J. Labeling And Identification

1. Install identifying labels and devices for nonmedical laboratory compressed-air piping, valves, and specialties. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Identification For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
2. Install identifying labels and devices for medical compressed-air piping systems according to NFPA 99. Use the following or similar captions and color-coding for piping products where required by NFPA 99:
  - a. Medical Air: Black letters on yellow background.



- b. Dental Air: Black letters on yellow-and-white diagonal stripe background.
  - c. Instrument Air: White letters on red background.
  - d. Medical Laboratory Air: Black letters on yellow-and-white checkerboard background.
- K. Field Quality Control For Compressed-Air Piping In Nonmedical Laboratory Facilities
1. Perform tests and inspections of compressed-air piping in nonmedical laboratory facilities and prepare test reports.
  2. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. Piping Leak Tests for Compressed-Air Piping: Test new and modified parts of existing piping. Cap and fill general-service compressed-air piping with oil-free dry nitrogen to pressure of 50 psig (345 kPa) above system operating pressure, but not less than 150 psig (1035 kPa). Isolate test source and let stand for four hours to equalize temperature. Refill system, if required, to test pressure; hold for two hours with no drop in pressure.
    - b. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
    - c. Inspect filters and pressure regulators for proper operation.
- L. Field Quality Control For Medical Compressed-Air Piping In Healthcare Facilities
1. Perform tests and inspections of medical compressed-air piping systems in healthcare facilities and prepare test reports.
  2. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. Medical Compressed-Air Testing Coordination: Perform tests, inspections, verifications, and certification of medical compressed-air piping systems concurrently with tests, inspections, and certification of medical vacuum piping and medical gas piping systems.
    - b. Preparation: Perform the following Installer tests according to requirements in NFPA 99 and ASSE Standard #6010:
      - 1) Initial blowdown.
      - 2) Initial pressure test.
      - 3) Cross-connection test.
      - 4) Piping purge test.
      - 5) Standing pressure test for positive-pressure medical compressed-air piping.
      - 6) Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
    - c. System Verification: Comply with requirements in NFPA 99, ASSE Standard #6020, and ASSE Standard #6030 for verification of medical compressed-air piping systems and perform the following tests and inspections:
      - 1) Standing pressure test.
      - 2) Individual-pressurization **OR** Individual-pressurization or pressure-differential **OR** Pressure-differential, **as directed**, cross-connection test.
      - 3) Valve test.
      - 4) Master and area alarm tests.
      - 5) Piping purge test.
      - 6) Piping particulate test.
      - 7) Piping purity test.
      - 8) Final tie-in test.
      - 9) Operational pressure test.
      - 10) Medical air purity test.
      - 11) Verify correct labeling of equipment and components.
    - d. Testing Certification: Certify that specified tests, inspections, and procedures have been performed and certify report results. Include the following:
      - 1) Inspections performed.
      - 2) Procedures, materials, and gases used.
      - 3) Test methods used.
      - 4) Results of tests.
  3. Remove and replace components that do not pass tests and inspections and retest as specified above.



---

END OF SECTION 22 11 16 00j



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



**SECTION 22 11 16 00k - VACUUM PIPING FOR LABORATORY AND HEALTHCARE FACILITIES**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for vacuum piping for laboratory and healthcare facilities. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Laboratory low-vacuum piping and specialties, designated "laboratory low vacuum" operating at 12 inches mercury (40.6 kPa vacuum) **OR** 20 inches mercury (67.7 kPa vacuum), **as directed**.
  - b. Laboratory high-vacuum piping and specialties, designated "laboratory high vacuum" operating at 24 inches mercury (81.3 kPa vacuum) **OR** 29 inches mercury (98.2 kPa vacuum), **as directed**.
  - c. Medical surgical vacuum piping and specialties, designated "medical vacuum" operating at 15 inches mercury (380 mm mercury or 50.7 kPa vacuum) **OR** 20 inches mercury (510 mm mercury or 67.7 kPa vacuum) **OR** 30 inches mercury (760 mm mercury or 101.4 kPa vacuum), **as directed**.
  - d. Waste anesthetic gas disposal piping and specialties, designated "WAGD evacuation" operating at 14 inches mercury (355 mm mercury or 47.2 kPa vacuum) **OR** 15 inches mercury (380 mm mercury or 50.7 kPa vacuum), **as directed**.
  - e. Dental vacuum piping and specialties, designated "dental vacuum" operating at 10 inches mercury (255 mm mercury or 33.8 kPa vacuum) **OR** 12 inches mercury (305 mm mercury or 40.6 kPa vacuum), **as directed**.
  - f. Oral-evacuation piping and specialties, designated "HVE" operating at 5 inches mercury (127 mm mercury or 16.9 kPa vacuum) **OR** 8 inches mercury (203 mm mercury or 27.0 kPa vacuum), **as directed**.
  - g. Healthcare laboratory vacuum piping and specialties, designated "medical laboratory vacuum" operating at 12 inches mercury (40.6 kPa vacuum) **OR** 20 inches mercury (67.7 kPa vacuum) **OR** 24 inches mercury (81.3 kPa vacuum), **as directed**.

## C. Definitions

1. D.I.S.S.: Diameter-index safety system.
2. HVE: High-volume (oral) evacuation.
3. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.
4. WAGD: Waste anesthetic gas disposal.
5. Medical vacuum piping systems include medical vacuum, WAGD evacuation, dental vacuum, HVE, and medical laboratory vacuum piping systems.

## D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For the following:
  - a. Vacuum pipes **OR** tubes, **as directed**, and fittings.
  - b. Vacuum valves and valve boxes.
  - c. Medical vacuum service connections and vacuum-bottle brackets.
2. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For solvent cements and adhesive primers, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.



4. Piping Material Certification: Signed by Installer certifying that medical vacuum piping materials comply with NFPA 99 requirements.
5. Qualification Data: For Installer and testing agency.
6. Brazing certificates.
7. Field quality-control test reports.
8. Operation and maintenance data.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications:
  - a. Medical Vacuum Piping Systems for Healthcare Facilities: Qualify installers according to ASSE Standard #6010.
  - b. Extruded-Tee Outlet Procedure: Qualify operators according to training provided by T-DRILL Industries Inc., for making branch outlets.
  - c. Pressure-Seal Joining Procedure for Copper Tubing: Qualify operators according to training provided by Viega; Plumbing and Heating Systems.
2. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the vacuum piping testing indicated, that is a member of the Medical Gas Professional Healthcare Organization or is an NRTL, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - a. Qualify testing personnel according to ASSE Standard #6020 for inspectors and ASSE Standard #6030 for verifiers.
3. Source Limitations: Obtain vacuum service connections of same type and from same manufacture as service connections provided for in Division 22 Section "Gas Piping For Laboratory And Healthcare Facilities".
4. Brazing: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications," or AWS B2.2, "Standard for Brazing Procedure and Performance Qualification."
5. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
6. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for vacuum piping in laboratory facilities.
7. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 99, "Health Care Facilities," for medical vacuum system materials and installation in healthcare facilities.

#### F. Project Conditions

1. Interruption of Existing Laboratory or Medical Vacuum Service(s): Do not interrupt laboratory or medical vacuum service to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
  - a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of laboratory or medical vacuum service(s).
  - b. Do not proceed with interruption of laboratory or medical vacuum service(s) without the Owner's written permission.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Pipes, Tubes, And Fittings

1. Copper Medical Gas Tube: ASTM B 819, Type L, seamless, drawn temper that has been manufacturer cleaned, purged, and sealed for medical gas service or according to CGA G-4.1 for oxygen service. Include standard color marking "OXY," "MED," "OXY/MED," "OXY/ACR," or "ACR/MED" in blue.
  - a. General Requirements for Copper Fittings: Manufacturer cleaned, purged, and bagged for oxygen service according to CGA G-4.1.



- b. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, solder-joint pressure type or MSS SP-73, with dimensions for brazed joints.
  - c. Copper Unions: ASME B16.22 or MSS SP-123, wrought copper or cast-copper alloy.
  - d. Press-Type Fittings:
    - 1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Bronze fitting with stainless-steel grip ring and EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
  2. Copper Water Tube: ASTM B 88, Type M (ASTM B 88M, Type C), seamless, drawn temper.
    - a. Cast-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.18, solder-joint pressure type.
    - b. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, solder-joint pressure type.
    - c. Cast-Copper-Alloy Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150.
    - d. Copper Unions: ASME B16.22 or MSS SP-123, wrought copper or cast-copper alloy.
    - e. Press-Type Fittings:
      - 1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
      - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Bronze fitting with stainless-steel grip ring and EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
  3. Extruded-Tee Outlets: ASTM F 2014 procedure for making branch outlets in copper tube.
  4. Memory-Metal Couplings: Cryogenic compression fitting made of ASTM F 2063, nickel-titanium, shape-memory alloy, and that has been manufacturer cleaned, purged, and sealed for oxygen service according to CGA G-4.1.
  5. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40 and Schedule 80.
    - a. PVC Pressure Fittings: ASTM D 2466, Schedule 40 and ASTM D 2467, Schedule 80; socket type.
- B. Joining Materials
1. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
  2. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Threaded-Joint Tape: PTFE.
  4. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness, full-face type.
  5. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel.
  6. Solvent Cement for Joining PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer complying with ASTM F 656.
    - a. Use PVC solvent cement that has a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
    - b. Use adhesive primer that has a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. Valves
1. General Requirements for Valves: Manufacturer cleaned, purged, and bagged according to CGA G-4.1 for oxygen service.
    - a. Exception: Factory cleaning and bagging are not required for valves for WAGD service.
  2. Copper-Alloy Ball Valves: MSS SP-110, 3-piece body, brass or bronze.
    - a. Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) minimum.
    - b. Ball: Full-port, chrome-plated brass.
    - c. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - d. Handle: Lever type with locking device, **as directed**.
    - e. Stem: Blowout proof with PTFE or TFE seal.
    - f. Ends: Manufacturer-installed ASTM B 819, copper-tube extensions.
  3. Bronze Check Valves: In-line pattern.
    - a. Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) minimum.
    - b. Operation: Spring loaded.



- c. Ends: Manufacturer-installed ASTM B 819, copper-tube extensions.
  4. Zone Valves: MSS SP-110, 3-piece-body, brass or bronze ball valve with gage.
    - a. Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) minimum.
    - b. Ball: Full-port, chrome-plated brass.
    - c. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - d. Handle: Lever type with locking device, **as directed**.
    - e. Stem: Blowout proof with PTFE or TFE seal.
    - f. Ends: Manufacturer-installed ASTM B 819, copper-tube extensions.
    - g. Vacuum Gage: Manufacturer installed on one copper-tube extension.
  5. Zone Valve Boxes: Formed steel with anchors for recessed mounting, holes with grommets in box sides for tubing extension protection, and of size for single or multiple valves with vacuum gages and in sizes required to permit manual operation of valves.
    - a. Interior Finish: Factory-applied white enamel.
    - b. Cover Plate: Aluminum or extruded-anodized aluminum **OR** Satin-chrome finish steel **OR** Stainless steel with NAAMM AMP 503, No. 4 finish, **as directed**, with frangible or removable windows.
    - c. Valve-Box Windows: Clear or tinted transparent plastic with labeling that includes rooms served, according to NFPA 99.
  6. Zone Valve Boxes: Formed or extruded aluminum with anchors for recessed mounting, holes with grommets in box sides for tubing extension protection, and of size for single or multiple valves with vacuum gages and in sizes required to permit manual operation of valves.
    - a. Interior Finish: Factory-applied white enamel.
    - b. Cover Plate: Aluminum or extruded-anodized aluminum **OR** Stainless steel with NAAMM AMP 503, No. 4 finish, **as directed**, with frangible or removable windows.
    - c. Valve-Box Windows: Clear or tinted transparent plastic with labeling that includes rooms served, according to NFPA 99.
  7. PVC Ball Valves: MSS SP-122, with union ends and 150-psig (1035-kPa) minimum working-pressure rating and suitable for vacuum service.
  8. PVC Butterfly Valves: Lug type with lever handle and 150-psig (1035-kPa) minimum working-pressure rating and suitable for vacuum service.
  9. PVC Check Valves: Ball-, in-line-, piston-, or swing-check design with flanged or union ends and 70-psig (480-kPa) **OR** 100-psig (690-kPa), **as directed**, minimum working-pressure rating and suitable for vacuum service.
  10. Safety Valves: Bronze-body, ASME-construction, pressure-relief type with settings to match system requirements.
  11. Automatic Drain Valves: Stainless-steel body and internal parts, rated for 200-psig (1380-kPa) minimum working pressure, capable of automatic discharge of collected condensate. Include mounting bracket where wall mounting is indicated.
- D. Medical Vacuum Service Connections
1. Connection Devices: For specific medical vacuum service listed. Include roughing-in assemblies, finishing assemblies, and cover plates. Individual cover plates are not required if service connection is in multiple unit or assembly with cover plate. Furnish recessed-type units made for concealed piping unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Roughing-in Assembly:
      - 1) Steel outlet box for recessed mounting and concealed piping.
      - 2) Brass-body inlet block.
      - 3) Seals that will prevent vacuum leakage.
      - 4) ASTM B 819, NPS 3/8 (DN 10) copper outlet tube brazed to valve with service marking and tube-end dust cap.
    - b. Finishing Assembly:
      - 1) Brass housing with primary check valve.
      - 2) Seals that will prevent vacuum leakage.
      - 3) Cover plate with gas-service label.



- c. Quick-Coupler Service Connections: Suction inlets for medical vacuum **OR** medical vacuum and WAGD evacuation **OR** WAGD evacuation, **as directed**, service outlets with noninterchangeable keyed indexing to prevent interchange between services, constructed to permit one-handed connection and removal of equipment, and with positive-locking ring that retains equipment stem in valve during use.
  - d. D.I.S.S. Service Connections: Suction inlets, complying with CGA V-5, with threaded indexing to prevent interchange between services, constructed to permit one-handed connection and removal of equipment.
    - 1) Medical Vacuum Service Connections: CGA V-5, D.I.S.S. No. 1220.
    - 2) WAGD Evacuation Service Connections: CGA V-5, D.I.S.S. No. 2220.
  - e. Vacuum Bottle Brackets: One piece, with pattern and finish matching corresponding service cover plate.
  - f. Cover Plates: One piece, stainless steel, with NAAMM AMP 503, No. 4 finish **OR** metal, with chrome-plated finish **OR** anodized aluminum, **as directed**, and permanent, color-coded, identifying label matching corresponding service.
- E. Medical Vacuum Piping Alarm Systems
1. Panels for medical vacuum piping systems may be combined in single panels with medical compressed-air and medical gas piping systems.
  2. Components: Designed for continuous service and to operate on power supplied from 120-V **OR** 240-V **OR** 277-V, **as directed**, ac power source to alarm panels and with connections for low-voltage wiring to remote sensing devices. Include step-down transformers if required.
  3. Vacuum Switches or Transducer Sensors: Continuous line monitoring with electrical connections for alarm system.
    - a. Vacuum Operating Range: 0- to 30-in. Hg (0- to 101-kPa vacuum).
  4. General Requirements for Medical Vacuum Alarm Panels: Factory wired with audible and color-coded visible signals to indicate specified functions.
    - a. Mounting: Exposed, surface **OR** Recessed, **as directed**, installation.
    - b. Enclosures: Fabricated from minimum 0.047-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick steel or minimum 0.05-inch- (1.27-mm-) thick aluminum, with knockouts for electrical and piping connections.
  5. Master Alarm Panels: With separate trouble alarm signals, vacuum gages, and indicators for medical vacuum piping systems.
    - a. Include alarm signals when the following conditions exist:
      - 1) Medical Vacuum: Vacuum drops below 12-in. Hg (40 kPa vacuum) and backup vacuum pump is in operation.
      - 2) WAGD Evacuation: Vacuum drops below 12-in. Hg (40 kPa vacuum).
      - 3) Dental Vacuum: Vacuum drops below 6-in. Hg (20 kPa vacuum) and backup vacuum producer is in operation.
      - 4) HVE: 4-in. Hg (13 kPa vacuum) and backup vacuum producer is in operation.
      - 5) Medical Laboratory Vacuum: Vacuum drops below 10-in. Hg (34 kPa vacuum).
  6. Anesthetizing-Area Alarm Panels: Separate trouble alarm signals; vacuum gages; and indicators for medical vacuum piping systems.
    - a. Include alarm signals when the following conditions exist:
      - 1) Medical Vacuum: Vacuum drops below 12-in. Hg (40 kPa vacuum).
      - 2) WAGD Evacuation: Vacuum drops below 12-in. Hg (40 kPa vacuum).
  7. Area Alarm Panels: Separate trouble alarm signals; vacuum gages; and indicators for medical vacuum piping systems.
    - a. Include alarm signals when the following condition exists:
      - 1) Medical Vacuum: Vacuum drops below 12-in. Hg (40 kPa vacuum).
  8. Dental Area Alarm Panels: Separate trouble alarm signals; vacuum gages; and indicators for medical vacuum piping systems.
    - a. Include alarm signals when the following conditions exist:
      - 1) Dental Vacuum: Vacuum drops below 6-in. Hg (20 kPa vacuum) and backup vacuum producer is in operation.
      - 2) HVE: 4-in. Hg (13 kPa vacuum) and backup vacuum producer is in operation.



9. Medical Laboratory Area Alarm Panels: Separate trouble alarm signals; vacuum gages; and indicators for medical vacuum piping systems.
- a. Include alarm signals when the following condition exists:
    - 1) Medical Vacuum: Vacuum drops below 12-in. Hg (40 kPa vacuum).
- F. Computer Interface Cabinet
1. Description: Wall-mounting, welded-steel, control cabinet with gasketed door, mounting brackets, grounding device, and white-enamel finish for connection of medical vacuum piping system alarms to facility computer. Include factory-installed signal circuit boards, power transformer, circuit breaker, wiring terminal board, and internal wiring capable of interfacing 20 alarm signals.
- G. Flexible Pipe Connectors
1. Description: Corrugated-bronze tubing with bronze wire-braid covering and ends brazed to inner tubing.
    - a. Working-Pressure Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa) **OR** 250 psig (1725 kPa), **as directed**, minimum.
    - b. End Connections: Threaded copper pipe or plain-end copper tube.
- H. Sleeves
1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
  2. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
    - a. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
- I. Escutcheons
1. General Requirements for Escutcheons: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with ID to closely fit around pipe and tube and OD that completely covers opening.
  2. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Escutcheons: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
  3. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: With set screw.
    - a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass **OR** Polished chrome-plated and rough brass, **as directed**.
  4. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: With concealed hinge and set screw.
    - a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass **OR** Polished chrome-plated and rough brass, **as directed**.
  5. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: With set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.
  6. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: With concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge, set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.
  7. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Escutcheons: Cast iron.
  8. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Escutcheons: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.
- J. Grout
1. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
    - a. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
    - b. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
    - c. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.
- K. Nitrogen
1. Description: Comply with USP 28 - NF 23 for oil-free dry nitrogen.



### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Preparation

1. Cleaning of Medical Gas Tubing: If manufacturer-cleaned and -capped fittings or tubing are not available or if precleaned fittings or tubing must be recleaned because of exposure, have supplier or separate agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction perform the following procedures:
  - a. Clean medical gas tube and fittings, valves, gages, and other components of oil, grease, and other readily oxidizable materials as required for oxygen service according to CGA G-4.1, "Cleaning Equipment for Oxygen Service."
  - b. Wash medical gas tubing and components in hot, alkaline-cleaner-water solution of sodium carbonate or trisodium phosphate in proportion of 1 lb (0.453 kg) of chemical to 3 gal. (11.3 L) of water.
    - 1) Scrub to ensure complete cleaning.
    - 2) Rinse with clean, hot water to remove cleaning solution.

#### B. Piping Applications

1. Connect new copper tubing to existing tubing with memory-metal couplings.
2. Nonhealthcare Laboratory Low Vacuum Piping: Use one of the following piping materials for each size range:
  - a. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
  - b. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; press-type fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
  - c. NPS 5 to NPS 8 (DN 125 to DN 200): Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
3. Nonhealthcare Laboratory High Vacuum Piping: Use one of the following piping materials for each size range:
  - a. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
  - b. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; press-type fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
  - c. NPS 5 to NPS 8 (DN 125 to DN 200): Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
4. Medical Vacuum Piping: Use one of the following piping materials for each size range:
  - a. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
  - b. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; press-type fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
  - c. NPS 5 to NPS 8 (DN 125 to DN 200): Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
5. WAGD Evacuation Piping: Use one of the following piping materials for each size range:
  - a. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
  - b. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; press-type fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
  - c. NPS 5 to NPS 8 (DN 125 to DN 200): Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
6. Dental Vacuum Piping: Use one of the following piping materials for each size range:
  - a. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
  - b. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; press-type fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
  - c. NPS 5 to NPS 8 (DN 125 to DN 200): Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
7. HVE Piping: Use one of the following piping materials for each size range:



- a. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
  - b. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; press-type fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
  - c. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Schedule 40 PVC pipe, Schedule 40 PVC fittings **OR** Schedule 80 PVC pipe, Schedule 80 PVC fittings, **as directed**, and solvent-cemented joints.
  - d. NPS 5 to NPS 8 (DN 125 to DN 200): Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
  - e. NPS 5 to NPS 8 (DN 125 to DN 200): Schedule 40 PVC pipe, Schedule 40 PVC fittings **OR** Schedule 80 PVC pipe, Schedule 80 PVC fittings, **as directed**, and solvent-cemented joints.
8. Medical Laboratory Vacuum Piping: Use one of the following piping materials for each size range:
- a. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
  - b. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; press-type fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
  - c. NPS 5 to NPS 8 (DN 125 to DN 200): Type L, copper medical gas **OR** M (C) copper water, **as directed**, tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
9. Drain Piping: Use one of the following piping materials:
- a. Copper water tube, cast- or wrought-copper fittings, and soldered **OR** press-type fittings, and pressure-sealed, **as directed**, joints.
  - b. PVC pipe, PVC fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.

### C. Piping Installation

1. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of vacuum piping. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, air-compressor sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
2. Comply with ASSE Standard #6010 for installation of vacuum piping.
3. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
4. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
5. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
6. Install piping adjacent to equipment and specialties to allow service and maintenance.
7. Install vacuum and drain piping with 1 percent slope downward in direction of flow.
8. Install nipples, unions, and special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings same as or higher than piping pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
9. Install eccentric reducers, if available, where vacuum piping is reduced in direction of flow, with bottoms of both pipes and reducer fitting flush.
10. Provide drain leg and drain trap at end of each main and branch and at low points.
11. Install thermometer and vacuum gage on inlet piping to each vacuum producer and on each receiver and separator, **as directed**. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping".
12. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
13. Install piping free of sags and bends.
14. Install fittings for changes in direction and for branch connections. Extruded-tee branch outlets in copper tubing may be made where specified.
15. Install medical vacuum piping to medical vacuum service connections specified in this Section and to equipment specified in other Sections requiring medical vacuum service.





16. Install seismic restraints on vacuum piping. Seismic-restraint devices are specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
  17. Install medical vacuum service connections recessed in walls. Attach roughing-in assembly to substrate; attach finishing assembly to roughing-in assembly.
  18. Install medical vacuum bottle bracket adjacent to each wall-mounted medical vacuum service connection suction inlet.
  19. Connect vacuum piping to vacuum producers and to equipment requiring vacuum service.
  20. Install unions, in copper vacuum tubing adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
  21. Install unions, in PVC vacuum piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
  22. Install flanges, in PVC vacuum piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- D. Valve Applications
1. Valves for Copper Vacuum Tubing: Use copper alloy ball and bronze check types.
  2. Valves for PVC Vacuum Piping:
    - a. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Use copper alloy ball and bronze **OR** PVC ball, butterfly, and, **as directed**, check types.
    - b. NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Use PVC butterfly and check types.
- E. Valve Installation
1. Install shutoff valve at each connection to and from vacuum equipment and specialties.
  2. Install check valves to maintain correct direction of vacuum flow to vacuum-producing equipment.
  3. Install valve boxes recessed in wall and anchored to substrate. Single boxes may be used for multiple valves that serve same area or function.
  4. Install zone valves and gages in valve boxes. Rotate valves to angle that prevents closure of cover when valve is in closed position.
  5. Install safety valves on vacuum receivers, where required by NFPA 99, and where recommended by specialty manufacturers.
  6. Install automatic drain valves on equipment, specialties, and piping with drain connection. Run drain piping to floor drain, so contents spill over or into it.
  7. Install flexible pipe connectors in suction inlet piping to each vacuum producer.
- F. Joint Construction
1. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
  2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from outside of cleaned tubing and fittings before assembly.
  3. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
  4. Threaded Joints: Apply appropriate tape to external pipe threads.
  5. Brazed Joints: Join copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Brazed Joints" Chapter. Continuously purge joint with oil-free dry nitrogen during brazing.
  6. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to tube end. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828.
  7. Extruded-Tee Outlets: Form branches in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014, with tools recommended by procedure manufacture.
  8. Flanged Joints:
    - a. Copper Tubing: Install flange on copper tubes. Use pipe-flange gasket between flanges. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9 for bolting procedure.
    - b. PVC Piping: Install PVC flange on PVC pipes. Use pipe-flange gasket between flanges. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9 for bolting procedure.
  9. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join copper tube and copper and copper-alloy fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
  10. Memory-Metal Coupling Joints: Join new copper tube to existing tube according to procedures developed by fitting manufacturer for installation of memory-metal coupling joints.
  11. Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join PVC pipe and fittings according to the following:



- a. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
- b. Apply primer and join according to ASME B31.9 for solvent-cemented joints and to ASTM D 2672.

#### G. Medical Vacuum Piping Alarm System Installation

1. Panels for medical vacuum piping systems may be combined in single panels with medical compressed-air piping systems and medical gas piping systems.
2. Install medical vacuum piping system alarm system components in locations required by and according to NFPA 99.
3. Install medical vacuum piping system area and master alarm panels where indicated.
4. Install computer interface cabinet with connection to medical vacuum piping alarm system and to facility computer.

#### H. Sleeve Installation

1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
2. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
3. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs using galvanized-steel pipe **OR** galvanized-steel sheet **OR** stack sleeve fittings **OR** PVC pipe, **as directed**.
  - a. Wall Penetrations: Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  - b. Floor Penetrations: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.

#### **OR**

Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.

4. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
  - a. PVC **OR** Steel, **as directed**, Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6 (DN 150).
  - b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger, penetrating gypsum board partitions.
  - c. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim" for flashing.
    - 1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
5. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".

#### I. Escutcheon Installation

1. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
  - a. New Piping:
    - 1) Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One piece, deep pattern.
    - 2) Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** stamped steel with set screw **OR** stamped steel with set screw or spring clips **OR** stamped steel with spring clips, **as directed**.
    - 3) Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** One piece or split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** Split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** One-piece, stamped steel with set screw **OR** One piece or split plate, stamped steel with set screw **OR** Split plate, stamped steel with set screw, **as directed**.



- 4) Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** cast brass with rough-brass finish **OR** stamped steel with set screw **OR** stamped steel with spring clips **OR** stamped steel with set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
  - 5) Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One piece, cast brass **OR** stamped steel with set screw **OR** stamped steel with spring clips **OR** stamped steel with set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
  - 6) Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece floor plate.
- b. Existing Piping:
- 1) Chrome-Plated Piping: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish.
  - 2) Insulated Piping: Split plate, stamped steel with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge and spring clips.
  - 3) Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge and spring clips, **as directed**.
  - 4) Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge and set screw, **as directed**.
  - 5) Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** casting, cast brass with rough-brass finish **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge and set screw or spring clips **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge and set screw or spring clips **OR** plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge and set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
  - 6) Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split casting, cast brass **OR** plate, stamped steel with set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
  - 7) Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting floor plate.

#### J. Hanger And Support Installation

1. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Hangers And Supports For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" for pipe hanger and support devices.
2. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
3. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
  - a. 100 Feet (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel, clevis hangers.
  - b. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable, roller hangers.
4. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Hangers And Supports For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" for trapeze hangers.
5. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
6. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches (300 mm) of each fitting and coupling.
7. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum rods.
8. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - a. NPS 1/4 (DN 8): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - b. NPS 3/8 and NPS 1/2 (DN 10 and DN 15): 72 inches (1800 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - c. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): 84 inches (2100 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - d. NPS 1 (DN 25): 96 inches (2400 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - e. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - f. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - g. NPS 2 (DN 50): 11 feet (3.4 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - h. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 13 feet (4 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - i. NPS 3 (DN 80): 14 feet (4.3 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - j. NPS 3-1/2 (DN 90): 15 feet (4.6 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - k. NPS 4 (DN 100): 16 feet (4.9 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - l. NPS 5 (DN 125): 18 feet (5.5 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.



- m. NPS 6 (DN 150): 20 feet (6 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
  - n. NPS 8 (DN 200): 23 feet (7 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
  - 9. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet (3 m).
  - 10. Install hangers **OR** vinyl-coated hangers, **as directed**, for PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
    - a. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: 30 inches (760 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
    - b. NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 2 (DN 40 to DN 50): 36 inches (900 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
    - c. NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3 (DN 65 and DN 80): 42 inches (1150 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
    - d. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 48 inches (1220 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
    - e. NPS 6 and NPS 8 (DN 150 and DN 200): 54 inches (1350 mm) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
  - 11. Install supports for vertical PVC piping every 48 inches (1220 mm).
- K. Labeling And Identification
- 1. Install identifying labels and devices for laboratory vacuum piping, valves, and specialties. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Identification For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
  - 2. Install identifying labels and devices for medical vacuum piping systems according to NFPA 99. Use the following or similar captions and color-coding for piping products where required by NFPA 99:
    - a. Medical Vacuum: Black letters on white background.
    - b. WAGD: White letters on violet background.
    - c. Dental Vacuum: Black boxed letters on white-and-black diagonal stripe background.
    - d. HVE: Black boxed letters on white-and-black diagonal stripe background.
    - e. Medical Laboratory Vacuum: Black boxed letters on white-and-black checkerboard background.
- L. Field Quality Control For Laboratory Facility Nonmedical Vacuum Piping
- 1. Perform tests and inspections of vacuum piping in nonmedical laboratory facilities.
  - 2. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. Piping Leak Tests for Vacuum Piping: Test new and modified parts of existing piping. Cap and fill vacuum piping with oil-free, dry nitrogen. Isolate test source and let stand for four hours to equalize temperature. Refill system, if required, to test pressure; hold for two hours with no drop in pressure.
      - 1) Test Pressure for Copper Tubing: 100 psig (690 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**.
      - 2) Test Pressure for PVC Piping: 50 psig (345 kPa) **OR** 100 psig (690 kPa), **as directed**.
    - b. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
    - c. Inspect filters for proper operation.
  - 3. Prepare test reports.
- M. Field Quality Control For Healthcare Facility Medical Vacuum Piping
- 1. Perform tests and inspections of medical vacuum piping systems in healthcare facilities and prepare test reports.
  - 2. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. Medical Vacuum Testing Coordination: Perform tests, inspections, verifications, and certification of medical vacuum piping systems concurrently with tests, inspections, and certification of medical compressed-air piping and medical gas piping systems.
    - b. Perform the following Installer tests according to requirements in NFPA 99 and ASSE Standard #6010:
      - 1) Initial blow down.
      - 2) Initial pressure test.
      - 3) Cross-connection test.
      - 4) Piping purge test.



- 
- 5) Standing pressure test for vacuum systems.
  - 6) Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - c. System Verification: Comply with requirements in NFPA 99, ASSE Standard #6020, and ASSE Standard #6030 for verification of medical vacuum piping systems and perform the following tests and inspections:
    - 1) Standing pressure test.
    - 2) Individual-pressurization **OR** Pressure-differential, **as directed**, cross-connection test.
    - 3) Valve test.
    - 4) Master and area alarm tests.
    - 5) Piping purge test.
    - 6) Final tie-in test.
    - 7) Operational vacuum test.
    - 8) Verify correct labeling of equipment and components.
  - d. Testing Certification: Certify that specified tests, inspections, and procedures have been performed and certify report results. Include the following:
    - 1) Inspections performed.
    - 2) Procedures, materials, and gases used.
    - 3) Test methods used.
    - 4) Results of tests.
  3. Remove and replace components that do not pass tests and inspections and retest as specified above.
- N. Demonstration
1. Train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain medical vacuum alarm systems.

END OF SECTION 22 11 16 00k



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 22 11 16 001 - GAS PIPING FOR LABORATORY AND HEALTHCARE FACILITIES

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for gas piping for laboratory and healthcare facilities. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Carbon dioxide piping and specialties designated "medical carbon dioxide" operating at 50 to 55 psig (345 to 380 kPa).
  - b. Helium piping, designated "medical helium" operating at 50 to 55 psig (345 to 380 kPa).
  - c. Nitrogen piping and specialties designated "medical nitrogen" operating at 160 to 185 psig (1100 to 1275 kPa) **OR** higher than 200 psig (1380 kPa), **as directed**.
  - d. Nitrous oxide piping and specialties designated "medical nitrous oxide" operating at 50 to 55 psig (345 to 380 kPa).
  - e. Oxygen piping and specialties designated "medical oxygen" operating at 50 to 55 psig (345 to 380 kPa).

#### C. Definitions

1. CR: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic rubber.
2. D.I.S.S.: Diameter-index safety system.
3. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.
4. Medical gas piping systems include medical carbon dioxide, medical helium, medical nitrogen, medical nitrous oxide, and medical oxygen nonflammable gas for healthcare facility patient care or for healthcare laboratory applications.
5. Specialty Gas: Gas, other than medical gas, for nonmedical laboratory facility applications.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. Seismic Performance: Gas manifolds, Bulk gas storage tanks, Gas manifolds and bulk gas storage tanks, and piping shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
  - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For the following:
  - a. Tubes and fittings.
  - b. Valves and valve boxes.
  - c. Medical gas service connections.
  - d. Electrical service connections.
  - e. Patient service consoles.
  - f. Medical nitrogen pressure control panels.
  - g. Ceiling columns. Include integral service connections.
  - h. Ceiling hose assemblies. Include integral service connections.
  - i. Gas manifolds.
  - j. Bulk gas storage tanks. Include rated capacities and operating weights.
  - k. Medical gas alarm system components.
  - l. Gas cylinder storage racks.
2. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.



3. Piping Material Certification: Signed by Installer certifying that medical gas piping materials comply with NFPA 99 requirements.
4. Brazing certificates.
5. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that gas manifolds and bulk gas storage tanks, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment". Include the following:
  - a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
6. Certificates of Shop Inspection and Data Report for Bulk Gas Storage Tanks: As required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
7. Field quality-control test reports.
8. Operation and maintenance data.

#### F. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications:
  - a. Medical Gas Piping Systems for Healthcare Facilities: Qualify installers according to ASSE Standard #6010 for installers.
2. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the medical gas piping testing indicated, that is a member of the Medical Gas Professional Healthcare Organization or is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - a. Qualify testing personnel according to ASSE Standard #6020 for inspectors and ASSE Standard #6030 for verifiers.
3. Brazing: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications"; or AWS B2.2, "Standard for Brazing Procedure and Performance Qualification."
4. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
5. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label bulk medical gas storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
6. NFPA Compliance:
  - a. Comply with NFPA 50, "Bulk Oxygen Systems at Consumer Sites," for bulk oxygen storage tanks.
  - b. Comply with NFPA 99, "Health Care Facilities," for medical gas piping system materials and installation.
7. CGA Compliance: Comply with CGA G-8.1, "Nitrous Oxide Systems at Consumer Sites," for bulk nitrous oxide storage tanks.
8. UL Compliance:
  - a. Comply with UL 498, "Attachment Plugs and Receptacles," for electrical service connections.
  - b. Comply with UL 544, "Medical and Dental Equipment," for medical gas specialties.

#### G. Project Conditions

1. Interruption of Existing Specialty and Medical Gas Service(s): Do not interrupt specialty or medical gas service to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
  - a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of specialty and medical gas service(s).
  - b. Do not proceed with interruption of specialty and medical gas service(s) without the Owner's written permission.





## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Pipes, Tubes, And Fittings

1. Copper Medical Gas Tube: ASTM B 819, Type K **OR** Type L, **as directed**, seamless, drawn temper that has been manufacturer cleaned, purged, and sealed for medical gas service or according to CGA G-4.1 for oxygen service. Include standard color marking "OXY," "MED," "OXY/MED," "OXY/ACR," or "ACR/MED" in green for Type K tube and blue for Type L tube.
  - a. General Requirements for Copper Fittings: Manufacturer cleaned, purged, and bagged for oxygen service according to CGA G-4.1.
  - b. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, solder-joint pressure type or MSS SP-73, with dimensions for brazed joints.
  - c. Copper Unions: ASME B16.22 or MSS SP-123, wrought copper or cast-copper alloy.
  - d. Press-Type Fittings:
    - 1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Bronze fitting with stainless-steel grip ring and EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
  - e. Memory-Metal Couplings: Cryogenic compression fitting made of ASTM F 2063, nickel-titanium, shape-memory-alloy, and that has been manufacturer cleaned, purged, and sealed for oxygen service according to CGA G-4.1.
2. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40 and Schedule 80.
  - a. PVC Fittings: ASTM D 2466, Schedule 40 **OR** ASTM D 2467, Schedule 80, **as directed**; socket type.

### B. Joining Materials

1. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys.
2. Threaded-Joint Tape: PTFE.
3. Solvent Cement for Joining PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer complying with ASTM F 656.

### C. Valves

1. General Requirements for Valves: Manufacturer cleaned, purged, and bagged according to CGA G-4.1 for oxygen service.
2. Ball Valves: MSS SP-110, 3-piece body, brass or bronze.
  - a. Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) minimum.
  - b. Ball: Full-port, chrome-plated brass.
  - c. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
  - d. Handle: Lever type with locking device, **as directed**.
  - e. Stem: Blowout proof with PTFE or TFE seal.
  - f. Ends: Manufacturer-installed ASTM B 819, copper-tube extensions.
3. Check Valves: In-line pattern, bronze.
  - a. Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) minimum.
  - b. Operation: Spring loaded.
  - c. Ends: Manufacturer-installed ASTM B 819, copper-tube extensions.
4. Zone Valves: MSS SP-110, 3-piece-body, brass or bronze ball valve with gage.
  - a. Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) minimum.
  - b. Ball: Full-port, chrome-plated brass.
  - c. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
  - d. Handle: Lever type with locking device, **as directed**.
  - e. Stem: Blowout proof with PTFE or TFE seal.
  - f. Ends: Manufacturer-installed ASTM B 819, copper-tube extensions.
  - g. Pressure Gage: Manufacturer-installed on one copper-tube extension.
5. Zone Valve Boxes: Formed steel with anchors for recessed mounting, holes with grommets in box sides for tubing extension protection, and of size for single or multiple valves with pressure gages and in sizes required to permit manual operation of valves.
  - a. Interior Finish: Factory-applied white enamel.



- b. Cover Plate: Aluminum or extruded-anodized aluminum **OR** Satin-chrome finish steel **OR** Stainless steel with NAAMM AMP 503, No. 4 finish, **as directed**, with frangible or removable windows.
- c. Valve-Box Windows: Clear or tinted transparent plastic with labeling that includes rooms served, according to NFPA 99.

**OR**

Zone Valve Boxes: Formed or extruded aluminum with anchors for recessed mounting, holes with grommets in box sides for tubing extension protection, and of size for single or multiple valves with pressure gages and in sizes required to permit manual operation of valves.

- a. Interior Finish: Factory-applied white enamel.
  - b. Cover Plate: Aluminum or extruded-anodized aluminum **OR** Stainless steel with NAAMM AMP 503, No. 4 finish, **as directed**, with frangible or removable windows.
  - c. Valve-Box Windows: Clear or tinted transparent plastic with labeling that includes rooms served, according to NFPA 99.
6. Emergency Oxygen Connections: Low-pressure oxygen inlet assembly for connection to building oxygen piping systems.
    - a. Enclosure: Weatherproof hinged locking cover with caption similar to "Emergency Low-Pressure Gaseous Oxygen Inlet."
    - b. Inlet: Manufacturer-installed, NPS 1 or NPS 1-1/4 (DN 25 or DN 32), ASTM B 819, copper tubing with NPS 1 (DN 25) minimum ball valve and plugged inlet.
    - c. Safety Valve: Bronze-body, pressure relief valve set at 75 or 80 psig (520 or 550 kPa).
    - d. Instrumentation: Pressure gage.
  7. Safety Valves: Bronze-body, ASME-construction, poppet, pressure-relief type with settings to match system requirements.
  8. Pressure Regulators: Bronze **OR** Stainless-steel, **as directed**, body and trim; spring-loaded, diaphragm-operated, relieving type; manual pressure-setting adjustment; rated for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum inlet pressure; and capable of controlling delivered gas pressure within 0.5 psig for each 10-psig (5.0 kPa for each 100-kPa) inlet pressure.

## D. Medical Gas Service Connections

1. General Requirements for Medical Gas Service Connections: For specific medical gas pressure and suction service listed. Include roughing-in assemblies, finishing assemblies, and cover plates. Individual cover plates are not required if service connection is in multiple unit or assembly with cover plate. Furnish recessed-type units made for concealed piping unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Roughing-in Assembly:
    - 1) Steel outlet box for recessed mounting and concealed piping.
    - 2) Brass-body outlet block with secondary check valve that will prevent gas flow when primary valve is removed. Suction inlets to be without secondary valve.
    - 3) Double seals that will prevent gas leakage.
    - 4) ASTM B 819, NPS 3/8 (DN 10) copper outlet tube brazed to valve with service marking and tube-end dust cap.
  - b. Finishing Assembly:
    - 1) Brass housing with primary check valve.
    - 2) Double seals that will prevent gas leakage.
    - 3) Cover plate with gas-service label.
  - c. Quick-Coupler Service Connections: Pressure outlets for carbon dioxide, nitrous oxide, oxygen, and **<Insert medical gas>** service connections with noninterchangeable keyed indexing to prevent interchange between services, constructed to permit one-handed connection and removal of equipment, and with positive-locking ring that retains equipment stem in valve during use.
  - d. D.I.S.S. Service Connections: Pressure outlets, complying with CGA V-5, with threaded indexing to prevent interchange between services, constructed to permit one-handed connection and removal of equipment.
    - 1) Medical Carbon Dioxide Service Connections: D.I.S.S. No. 1080.



- 2) Medical Helium Service Connections: D.I.S.S. No. 1060.
  - 3) Medical Nitrogen Service Connections: D.I.S.S. No. 1120.
  - 4) Medical Nitrous Oxide Service Connections: D.I.S.S. No. 1040.
  - 5) Medical Oxygen Service Connections: D.I.S.S. No. 1240.
  - e. Cover Plates: One piece, stainless steel, with NAAMM AMP 503, No. 4 finish **OR** metal, with chrome-plated finish **OR** anodized aluminum, **as directed**, and permanent, color-coded, identifying label matching corresponding service.
- E. Electrical Service Connections
1. Power Outlets: UL 498, Hospital Grade, 125-V receptacles; color selected. Include the following configurations complying with NEMA WD 1:
    - a. L5-20R, locking type, 20 A, single or duplex.
    - b. L5-20R, isolated ground, locking type, 20 A, single or duplex.
    - c. Explosion proof, 20 A, 2 pole, 3 wire, single; suitable for Class I, Group C hazardous location and interchangeable with receptacles used in nonhazardous areas; flush mounted.
    - d. 5-20R, straight blade, 20 A, duplex.
    - e. 5-20R, isolated ground, straight blade, 20 A, duplex.
  2. Electrical Accessory Outlets: Provide the following configured receptacles in color selected:
    - a. Patient Equipment Ground Jack: Single pole, 30 A.
    - b. Patient Monitoring: Single, 5 and 37 pin.
  3. Wall Outlet Cover Plates: One piece, stainless steel, with NAAMM AMP 503, No. 4 finish **OR** metal, with chrome-plated finish **OR** anodized aluminum, **as directed**, and permanent identifying label.
- F. Patient Service Consoles
1. General Requirements for Patient Service Consoles: Recessed- or semirecessed-mounting wall units with medical gas service connections as specified in "Medical Gas Service Connections" Article and electrical service connections as specified in "Electrical Service Connections" Article, **as directed**. Include labels indicating services, and the following:
    - a. Recessed- or semirecessed-mounting steel console box or mounting bracket.
    - b. Concealed supplies.
    - c. Cover Plate: One piece, anodized aluminum **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, and permanent identifying label with service connections for the following:
      - 1) Medical Air: Quick-coupler pressure outlet.
      - 2) Medical Oxygen: Quick-coupler pressure outlet.
      - 3) Medical Vacuum: Quick-coupler suction inlet.
      - 4) Medical vacuum bottle bracket.
      - 5) L5-20R, locking type, 20 A, single **OR** duplex, **as directed**.
- G. Medical Nitrogen Pressure Control Panels
1. Description: Steel box and support brackets for recessed roughing-in with stainless-steel or anodized-aluminum cover plate with printed operating instructions. Include manifold assembly consisting of inlet supply valve, inlet supply pressure gage, line-pressure control regulator, outlet supply pressure gage, D.I.S.S. service connection, and piping outlet for remote service connection.
    - a. Minimum Working Pressure: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - b. Line-Pressure Control Regulator: Self-relieving diaphragm type with precision manual adjustment.
    - c. Pressure Gages: 0- to 300-psig (0- to 2070-kPa) range.
    - d. Service Connection: CGA V-5, D.I.S.S. No. 1120, nitrogen outlet.
    - e. Before final assembly, provide temporary dust shield and U-tube for testing.
    - f. Label cover plate "Nitrogen Pressure Control."
- H. Ceiling Columns
1. General Requirements for Ceiling Columns: Ceiling-mounting units with medical gas service connections as specified in "Medical Gas Service Connections" Article and electrical service



connections as specified in "Electrical Service Connections" Article, **as directed**. Include labels indicating services, and the following:

- a. Ceiling-Mounting Plate: Manufacturer's standard plate or roughing-in assembly.
  - b. Exposed Surfaces: Minimum 0.0375-inch- (0.95-mm-) thick stainless steel with NAAMM AMP 503, No. 4 directional polish.
  - c. Servicing: Include access panels or means of removing shroud.
  - d. Blank cover plates for cutouts not having service connections.
  - e. ASTM B 819, NPS 3/8 (DN 10) copper-tube extensions for connection to medical gas systems.
  - f. Service Connections: Type and number indicated.
  - g. Dust Covers: For medical gas service connection.
2. Rigid Ceiling Columns: 44-inch- (1120-mm-) long, rectangular fixed column section with 2 **OR** 4, **as directed**, double intravenous medication hooks. Include 0.078-inch- (2.0-mm-) thick, stainless-steel bottom plate with the following service connections:
- a. Instrument Air: One D.I.S.S. No. 1160 pressure outlet(s).
  - b. Medical Air: One quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1160, **as directed**, pressure outlet(s).
  - c. Medical Carbon Dioxide: One quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1080, **as directed**, pressure outlet(s).
  - d. Medical Helium: One D.I.S.S. No. 1060, pressure outlet(s).
  - e. Medical Nitrogen: One D.I.S.S. No. 1120 pressure outlet(s).
  - f. Medical Nitrous Oxide: One quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1040, **as directed**, pressure outlet(s).
  - g. Medical Oxygen: Two quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1240, **as directed**, pressure outlets.
  - h. Medical Vacuum: Two quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1220, **as directed**, suction inlets.
  - i. Vacuum Bottle Brackets: Two.
  - j. WAGD Evacuation: One quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 2220, **as directed**, suction inlet(s).
  - k. Power: 2 **OR** 4, **as directed**, L5-20R, locking-type, 20-A, single receptacles.
  - l. Patient Equipment: 2 **OR** 4, **as directed**, ground-jack, single-pole, 30-A receptacles.
3. Retractable Ceiling Columns: Manually adjustable using release and lock handles capable of locking column in all positions from fully retracted to fully extended; 15-inch- (380-mm-) long, rectangular counterbalanced telescoping section with 2 **OR** 4, **as directed**, double intravenous medication hooks; and 36-inch- (915-mm-) long, fixed column section. Include 0.078-inch- (2.0-mm-) thick, stainless-steel bottom plate with the following service connections:
- a. Instrument Air: One D.I.S.S. No. 1160 pressure outlet(s).
  - b. Medical Air: One quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1160, **as directed**, pressure outlet(s).
  - c. Medical Carbon Dioxide: One quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1080, **as directed**, pressure outlet(s).
  - d. Medical Helium: One D.I.S.S. No. 1060, pressure outlet(s).
  - e. Medical Nitrogen: One D.I.S.S. No. 1120 pressure outlet(s).
  - f. Medical Nitrous Oxide: One quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1040, **as directed**, pressure outlet(s).
  - g. Medical Oxygen: Two quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1240, **as directed**, pressure outlets.
  - h. Medical Vacuum: Two quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1220, **as directed**, suction inlets.
  - i. Vacuum Bottle Brackets: Two.
  - j. WAGD Evacuation: One quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 2220, **as directed**, suction inlet(s).
  - k. Power: 2 **OR** 4, **as directed**, L5-20R, locking-type, 20-A, single receptacles.
  - l. Patient Equipment: 2 **OR** 4, **as directed**, ground-jack, single-pole, 30-A receptacles.
- I. Ceiling Hose Assemblies
1. Ceiling Hose Assemblies, General: Ceiling-mounting units with medical gas service connections as specified in "Medical Gas Service Connections" Article and electrical service connections as specified in "Electrical Service Connections" Article, **as directed**. Include labels indicating services, and the following:
    - a. Ceiling-Mounting Plate: Manufacturer's standard plate or roughing-in assembly.



- b. Exposed Surfaces: Minimum 0.0375-inch- (0.95-mm-) thick stainless steel with NAAMM AMP 503, No. 4 directional polish.
  - c. Servicing: Include access panels or means of removing shroud.
  - d. Blank cover plates for cutouts not having service connections.
  - e. ASTM B 819, NPS 3/8 (DN 10) copper-tube extensions for connection to medical gas systems.
  - f. Service Connections: Type and number indicated.
  - g. Dust Covers: For medical gas service connection.
2. Hose-Reel Service Assemblies: Individual, concealed, retractable hose-reel units with stainless-steel face plates, steel mounting boxes, factory- or field-fabricated mounting brackets, and color-coded service hoses with adjustable stops and service connections matching hoses. Include 15 feet (4.5 m) minimum of conductive, CR, 1/4- or 5/16-inch- (6.4- or 7.9-mm-) ID, medical gas hoses rated for 200-psig (1380-kPa) minimum working pressure, and the following service connections:
- a. Instrument Air Hose: D.I.S.S. No. 1160 pressure outlet.
  - b. Medical Air Hose: Quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1160, **as directed**, pressure outlet.
  - c. Medical Carbon Dioxide Hose: Quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1080, **as directed**, pressure outlet.
  - d. Medical Nitrogen Hose: D.I.S.S. No. 1120 pressure outlet.
  - e. Medical Nitrous Oxide Hose: Quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1040, **as directed**, pressure outlet.
  - f. Medical Oxygen Hose: Quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1240, **as directed**, pressure outlet.
  - g. Medical Vacuum Hose: Quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1220, **as directed**, suction inlet.
  - h. WAGD Evacuation Hose: Quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 2220, **as directed**, suction inlet.
  - i. Power: L5-20R, locking-type, 20-A, single, power receptacle.
3. Fixed Hose Service Assemblies: Individual, concealed hose connection with stainless-steel face plates, steel mounting boxes, factory- or field-fabricated mounting brackets, and color-coded service hoses with retractor device and service connections matching hoses. Include 72 inches (1830 mm) of conductive, CR, 1/4- or 5/16-inch- (6.4- or 7.9-mm-), ID, medical gas hoses rated for 200-psig (1380-kPa) minimum working pressure, and the following service hose connections:
- a. Instrument Air Hose: D.I.S.S. No. 1160 pressure outlet.
  - b. Medical Air Hose: Quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1160, **as directed**, pressure outlet.
  - c. Medical Carbon Dioxide Hose: Quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1080, **as directed**, pressure outlet.
  - d. Medical Nitrogen Hose: D.I.S.S. No. 1120 pressure outlet.
  - e. Medical Nitrous Oxide Hose: Quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1040, **as directed**, pressure outlet.
  - f. Medical Oxygen Hose: Quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1240, **as directed**, pressure outlet.
  - g. Medical Vacuum Hose: Quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 1220, **as directed**, suction inlet.
  - h. WAGD Evacuation Hose: Quick-coupler **OR** D.I.S.S. No. 2220, **as directed**, suction inlet.
  - i. Power: L5-20R, locking-type, 20-A, single, power receptacle.
- J. Gas Manifolds
1. Simplex Specialty Gas Manifolds:
    - a. Control Panel Unit: Weatherproof cabinet, supply and delivery pressure gages, electrical alarm system connections and transformer, indicator lights or devices, manifold connection, line-pressure regulator, shutoff valves, and safety valve.
    - b. Manifold and Header: Nonferrous-metal header for number of cylinders indicated. Units include design for 2000-psig (13.8-MPa) minimum inlet pressure. Include cylinder bank header with inlet (pigtail) connections complying with CGA V-1, individual inlet check valves, shutoff valve, pressure regulator, check valve, and pressure gage.
    - c. **<Insert specialty gas>** Manifold: For **<Insert number cylinders>** capacity at 55-psig (380-kPa) line pressure, with electric heater or orifice design that will prevent freezing during high demand.
    - d. Specialty Gas Cylinders: Will be furnished by the Owner **OR** Number and type of medical gas cylinders required for complete manifold systems, **as directed**.



- e. Label manifold control unit with permanent label identifying specialty gas type and system operating pressure.
  - f. Mounting: Wall with mounting brackets for manifold control cabinet and header **OR** Floor with support legs for manifold control cabinet, **as directed**.
2. Duplex Specialty Gas Manifolds:
- a. Central Control Panel Unit: Weatherproof cabinet, supply and delivery pressure gages, electrical alarm system connections and transformer, indicator lights or devices, manifold connection, line-pressure regulator, shutoff valves, and safety valve.
  - b. Manifold and Headers: Duplex, nonferrous-metal header for number of cylinders indicated, divided into two equal banks. Units include design for 2000-psig (13.8-MPa) minimum inlet pressure. Include cylinder bank headers with inlet (pigtail) connections complying with CGA V-1, individual inlet check valves, shutoff valve, pressure regulator, check valve, and pressure gage.
  - c. Operation: Automatic, pressure-switch-activated changeover from one cylinder bank to the other when first bank becomes exhausted, without line-pressure fluctuation or resetting of regulators and without supply interruption by shutoff of either cylinder bank header.
  - d. **<Insert specialty gas>** Manifold: For **<Insert number cylinders>** capacity at 55-psig (380-kPa) line pressure, with electric heater or orifice design that will prevent freezing during high demand.
  - e. Specialty Gas Cylinders: Will be furnished by the Owner **OR** Number and type of medical gas cylinders required for complete manifold systems, **as directed**.
  - f. Label manifold control unit with permanent label identifying specialty gas type and system operating pressure.
  - g. Mounting: Wall with mounting brackets for manifold control cabinet and headers **OR** Floor with support legs for manifold control cabinet, **as directed**.
3. Medical Gas Manifolds: Comply with NFPA 99, Ch. 5, for high-pressure medical gas cylinders.
- a. Central Control Panel Unit: Weatherproof cabinet, supply and delivery pressure gages, electrical alarm system connections and transformer, indicator lights or devices, manifold connection, pressure changeover switch, line-pressure regulator, shutoff valves, and safety valve.
  - b. Manifold and Headers: Duplex, nonferrous-metal header for number of cylinders indicated, divided into two equal banks. Units include design for 2000-psig (13.8-MPa) minimum inlet pressure, except nitrous oxide manifolds may be designed for 800 psig (5520 kPa) and carbon dioxide manifolds may be designed for 1500 psig (10.35 MPa). Include cylinder bank headers with inlet (pigtail) connections complying with CGA V-1, individual inlet check valves, shutoff valve, pressure regulator, check valve, and pressure gage.
  - c. Operation: Automatic, pressure-switch-activated changeover from one cylinder bank to the other when first bank becomes exhausted, without line-pressure fluctuation or resetting of regulators and without supply interruption by shutoff of either cylinder bank header.
  - d. Medical Carbon Dioxide Manifolds: For 2 cylinders and 250-cfh (1.97-L/s) **OR** 4 cylinders and 500-cfh (3.94-L/s), **as directed**, capacity at 55-psig (380-kPa) line pressure.
  - e. Medical Helium Manifolds: For 2 cylinders and 250-cfh (1.97-L/s) **OR** 4 cylinders and 500-cfh (3.94-L/s), **as directed**, capacity at 55-psig (380-kPa) line pressure.
  - f. Medical Nitrous Oxide Manifolds: For 8 cylinders and 1333-cfh (10.5-L/s) **OR** 12 cylinders and 2000-cfh (15.7-L/s), **as directed**, capacity at 55-psig (380-kPa) line pressure, with electric heater or orifice design that will prevent freezing during high demand.
  - g. Medical Nitrogen Manifolds: For 8 cylinders and 2000-cfh (15.7-L/s) **OR** 12 cylinders and 3000-cfh (23.6-L/s), **as directed**, capacity at 180-psig (1240-kPa) **OR** higher than 200-psig (1380-kPa), **as directed**, line pressure.
  - h. Medical Oxygen Manifolds: For 12 cylinders and 1500-cfh (11.8-L/s) **OR** 20 cylinders 2500-cfh (19.7-L/s), **as directed**, capacity at 55-psig (380-kPa), **as directed**, line pressure.
  - i. Medical Gas Cylinders: Will be furnished by the Owner **OR** Number and type of medical gas cylinders required for complete manifold systems, **as directed**.
  - j. Label manifold control unit with permanent label identifying medical gas type and system operating pressure.



- k. Mounting: Wall with mounting brackets for manifold control cabinet and headers **OR** Floor with support legs for manifold control cabinet, **as directed**.

K. Bulk Gas Storage Tanks

1. Bulk Specialty Gas Storage Tanks:
2. Bulk Medical Gas Storage Tanks:
  - a. Bulk Medical Gas Storage Tank Systems: Bulk storage tank with connections for alarm system, continuous supply, and reserve supply that will operate only during emergencies, complying with NFPA 99, "Health Care Facilities."
  - b. Controls: Include actuating switch for alarm system connection and means for automatic actuating of reserve supply.
  - c. Bulk Medical Gas Storage Tanks: Vertical mounting, double-wall construction with inner vessel fabricated according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code for unfired pressure vessels and suitable for medical gas service. Include insulation and vacuum seal between walls. Fabricate outer shell from carbon steel with factory-applied manufacturer's standard protective paint finish suitable for exterior installation. Include the following features, specialties, and components:
    - 1) Safety Valves: ASME construction with pressure setting to correspond to tank working pressure and as required for component or system being protected.
    - 2) Pressure Gages: For tank pressure and facility service line pressure.
    - 3) Contents Gage: High- and low-level indicator with electric signal circuit connection.
    - 4) Drain Valves: For piping, inner vessel, and outer shell.
    - 5) Fill Assembly: Fill connection, piping, valves, relief devices, and controls.
    - 6) Facility Service Assembly: Piping, valves, relief devices, vaporizer, shutoff valve, pressure regulator, line shutoff valve or check valve, and reserve supply connection for connection to building service piping.
    - 7) Include permanent label showing medical gas type, storage tank capacity, tank pressure rating, vaporizer capacity, and operating instructions.
    - 8) Liquid Oxygen Storage Tank: Nickel-steel or stainless-steel inner vessel with 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure. Include electric **OR** steam **OR** ambient vaporizer, **as directed**.
    - 9) Liquid Nitrous Oxide Storage Tank: Steel-alloy inner vessel with 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure. Include electric **OR** steam, **as directed**, vaporizer.
  - d. Oxygen Reserve Supply: Manifold header for high-pressure cylinders, fabricated from copper-tube or brass pipe and fittings and suitable for pressures up to 4000 psig (27.6 MPa). Include header inlet connections complying with CGA V-1, with individual inlet check valves, header shutoff valve, header pressure regulator, line shutoff valve or check valve, pressure gage, and inlet connections for number of cylinders indicated.
  - e. Nitrous Oxide Reserve Supply: Manifold header for high-pressure cylinders, fabricated from copper-tube or brass pipe and fittings and suitable for pressures up to 4000 psig (27.6 MPa). Include header inlet connections complying with CGA V-1, with individual inlet check valves, header shutoff valve, header pressure regulator, line shutoff valve or check valve, pressure gage, inlet connections for number of cylinders indicated, and electric heater.

L. Medical Gas Piping Alarm Systems

1. Panels for medical gas piping systems may be combined in single panels with medical compressed-air and medical vacuum piping systems.
2. Components: Designed for continuous service and to operate on power supplied from 120 **OR** 240 **OR** 277, **as directed**, -V ac power source to alarm panels and with connections for low-voltage wiring to remote sensing devices. Include step-down transformers if required.
3. Pressure Switches or Pressure Transducer Sensors: Continuous line monitoring with electrical connections for alarm system.
  - a. Low-Pressure Operating Range: 0- to 100-psig (0- to 690-kPa).
  - b. High-Pressure Operating Range: Up to 250-psig (1725-kPa).



4. General Requirements for Medical Gas Alarm Panels: Factory wired with audible and color-coded visible signals to indicate specified functions.
  - a. Mounting: Exposed, surface **OR** Recessed, **as directed**, installation.
  - b. Enclosures: Fabricated from minimum 0.047-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick steel or minimum 0.05-inch- (1.27-mm-) thick aluminum, with knockouts for electrical and piping connections.
5. Master Alarm Panels: With separate trouble alarm signals, pressure gages, and indicators for medical gas piping systems.
  - a. Include alarm signals when the following conditions exist:
    - 1) Medical Carbon Dioxide: Pressure drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa) and changeover is made to alternate bank.
    - 2) Medical Helium: Pressure drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa) and changeover is made to alternate bank.
    - 3) Medical Nitrogen: Pressure drops below 145 psig (1000 kPa) or rises above 200 psig (1380 kPa) and changeover is made to alternate bank.
    - 4) Medical Nitrous Oxide (for bulk oxygen storage tank system with cylinder reserve): Liquid level is low, pressure downstream from main shutoff valve drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa), changeover is made to reserve, reserve is in use, and reserve level is low.
    - 5) Medical Nitrous Oxide (for nitrous oxide manifold system): Pressure drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa) and changeover is made to alternate bank.
    - 6) Medical Oxygen (for bulk oxygen storage tank system with cylinder reserve): Liquid level is low, pressure downstream from main shutoff valve drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa), changeover is made to reserve, reserve is in use, reserve level is low, and reserve pressure is low.
    - 7) Medical Oxygen (for oxygen manifold system): Pressure downstream from main shutoff valve drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa) and changeover is made to alternate bank.
6. Anesthetizing-Area Alarm Panels: Separate trouble alarm signals; pressure gages; and indicators for medical gas piping systems.
  - a. Include alarm signals when the following conditions exist:
    - 1) Medical Carbon Dioxide: Pressure drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa).
    - 2) Medical Helium: Pressure drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa).
    - 3) Medical Nitrous Oxide: Pressure drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa).
    - 4) Medical Nitrogen: Pressure drops below 145 psig (1000 kPa) or rises above 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 5) Medical Oxygen: Pressure drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa).
7. Area Alarm Panels: Separate trouble alarm signals; pressure and vacuum gages; and indicators for medical gas piping systems.
  - a. Include alarm signals when the following conditions exist:
    - 1) Oxygen: Pressure drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa).
8. Dental Area Alarm Panels: Separate trouble alarm signals; pressure and vacuum gages; and indicators for medical gas piping systems.
  - a. Include alarm signals when the following conditions exist:
    - 1) Medical Nitrogen: Pressure drops below 145 psig (1000 kPa) or rises above 200 psig (1380 kPa) and changeover is made to alternate bank.
    - 2) Medical Nitrous Oxide (for bulk nitrous oxide storage tank system with cylinder reserve): Liquid level is low, pressure downstream from main shutoff valve drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa), changeover is made to reserve, reserve is in use, and reserve level is low.





- 3) Medical Nitrous Oxide (for nitrous oxide manifold system): Pressure drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa) and changeover is made to alternate bank.
  - 4) Medical Oxygen (for bulk oxygen storage tank system with cylinder reserve): Liquid level is low, pressure downstream from main shutoff valve drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa), changeover is made to reserve, reserve is in use, reserve level is low, and reserve pressure is low.
  - 5) Medical Oxygen (for nitrous oxide manifold system): Pressure downstream from main shutoff valve drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa) and changeover is made to alternate bank.
9. Medical Laboratory Area Alarm Panels: Separate trouble alarm signals; pressure and vacuum gages; and indicators for medical gas piping systems.
- a. Include alarm signals when the following conditions exist:
    - 1) Medical Carbon Dioxide: Pressure drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa).
    - 2) Medical Helium: Pressure drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa).
    - 3) Medical Oxygen: Pressure drops below 40 psig (275 kPa) or rises above 60 psig (415 kPa).
- M. Computer Interface Cabinet
1. Description: Wall-mounting, welded-steel, control cabinet with gasketed door, mounting brackets, grounding device, and white-enamel finish for connection of medical gas system alarms to facility computer. Include factory-installed signal circuit boards, power transformer, circuit breaker, wiring terminal board, and internal wiring capable of interfacing 20, **as directed**, alarm signals.
- N. Gas Cylinder Storage Racks
1. Wall Storage Racks: Fabricate racks with chain restraints for upright cylinders as indicated or provide equivalent manufactured wall racks.
  2. Freestanding Storage Racks: Fabricate racks as indicated or provide equivalent manufactured storage racks.
- O. Sleeves
1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
  2. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
    - a. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
- P. Escutcheons
1. General Requirements for Escutcheons: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with ID to closely fit around pipe and tube and OD that completely covers opening.
  2. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Escutcheons: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
  3. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: With set screw.
    - a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass, **as directed**.
  4. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: With concealed hinge and set screw.
    - a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass, **as directed**.
  5. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: With set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.
  6. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: With concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge, set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.
  7. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Escutcheons: Cast iron.
  8. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Escutcheons: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.
- Q. Grout



1. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
  - a. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
  - b. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
  - c. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

R. Nitrogen

1. Description: Comply with USP 28 - NF 23 for oil-free dry nitrogen.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Earthwork

1. Comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling and for underground warning tapes.

B. Piping Applications

1. Nonhealthcare, Specialty Gas Piping: Type L, copper medical gas tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed **OR** press-type fittings and pressure-sealed, **as directed**, joints.
2. Nonhealthcare, Specialty Gas Piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Smaller: Type K **OR** Type L, **as directed**, copper medical gas tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed **OR** press-type fittings and pressure-sealed, **as directed**, joints.
3. Nonhealthcare, Specialty Gas Piping NPS 3 (DN 80) and Larger: Type K, copper tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed **OR** press-type fittings and pressure-sealed, **as directed**, joints.
4. Medical Gas Piping: Use Type L, copper medical gas tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
5. Medical Gas Piping Except Nitrogen: Use Type L, copper medical gas tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
6. Medical Nitrogen Piping: Type L, copper medical gas tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
7. Medical Nitrogen Piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Smaller: Type K **OR** Type L, **as directed**, copper medical gas tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
8. Medical Nitrogen Piping NPS 3 (DN 80) and Larger: Type K, copper tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed joints.
9. Protective Conduit: Use PVC pipe, PVC fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.

C. Piping Installation

1. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of gas piping. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, air-compressor sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
2. Comply with ASSE Standard #6010 for installation of medical gas piping.
3. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
4. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
5. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
6. Install piping adjacent to equipment and specialties to allow service and maintenance.
7. Install nipples, unions, and special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings same as or higher than system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
8. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
9. Install piping free of sags and bends.
10. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.



11. Install medical gas piping to medical gas service connections specified in this Section, to medical gas service connections in equipment specified in this Section, and to equipment specified in other Sections requiring medical gas service.
  12. Install exterior, buried medical gas piping in protective conduit fabricated with PVC pipe and fittings. Do not extend conduit through foundation wall.
  13. Install seismic restraints on gas piping. Seismic-restraint devices are specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
  14. Install medical gas service connections recessed in walls. Attach roughing-in assembly to substrate; attach finishing assembly to roughing-in assembly.
  15. Connect gas piping to gas sources and to gas outlets and equipment requiring gas service.
  16. Install unions, in copper tubing adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment and specialty.
- D. Valve Installation
1. Install shutoff valve at each connection to gas laboratory and healthcare equipment and specialties.
  2. Install check valves to maintain correct direction of gas flow from laboratory and healthcare gas supplies.
  3. Install valve boxes recessed in wall and anchored to substrate. Single boxes may be used for multiple valves that serve same area or function.
  4. Install zone valves and gages in valve boxes. Rotate valves to angle that prevents closure of cover when valve is in closed position.
  5. Install pressure regulators on gas piping where reduced pressure is required.
  6. Install emergency oxygen connection with pressure relief valve and full-size discharge piping to outside, with check valve downstream from pressure relief valve and with ball valve and check valve in supply main from bulk oxygen storage tank.
- E. Joint Construction
1. Ream ends of PVC pipes and remove burrs.
  2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from outside of cleaned tubing and fittings before assembly.
  3. Threaded Joints: Apply appropriate tape to external pipe threads.
  4. Brazed Joints: Join copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Brazed Joints" Chapter. Continuously purge joint with oil-free, dry nitrogen during brazing.
  5. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join copper tube and press-type fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
  6. Memory-Metal Coupling Joints: Join new copper tube to existing tube according to procedures developed by fitting manufacturer for installation of memory-metal coupling joints.
  7. Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join PVC pipe and fittings according to the following:
    - a. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
    - b. Apply primer and join according to ASME B31.9 for solvent-cemented joints and to ASTM D 2672.
- F. Gas Service Component Installation
1. Assemble patient service console with service connections. Install with supplies concealed, in walls. Attach console box or mounting bracket to substrate.
  2. Install nitrogen pressure-control panels in walls. Attach to substrate.
  3. Assemble ceiling columns and install anchored to substrate. Provide structural steel, hanger rods, anchors, and fasteners in addition to components furnished with specialties necessary to fabricate supports.
  4. Assemble ceiling assemblies and install anchored to substrate. Provide structural steel, hanger rods, anchors, and fasteners in addition to components furnished with specialties necessary to fabricate supports.
  5. Install gas manifolds on concrete base, **as directed**, anchored to substrate.
  6. Install gas cylinders and connect to manifold piping.



7. Install gas manifolds with seismic restraints as indicated.
8. Install bulk gas storage tanks and reserve supply tanks level on concrete bases. Set tanks and connect gas piping to tanks according to applicable requirements in NFPA 50 for bulk oxygen storage systems, **as directed**. Install tanks level and plumb, firmly anchored to concrete bases; maintain NFPA 50 and tank manufacturer's recommended clearances. Orient tanks so controls and devices are accessible for servicing.
9. Install bulk gas storage tanks and reserve supply tanks with seismic restraints.

#### G. Medical Gas Piping Alarm System Installation

1. Install medical gas alarm system components in locations required by and according to NFPA 99.
2. Install medical gas area and master alarm panels where indicated.
3. Install computer interface cabinet with connection to medical gas piping alarm system and facility computer.

#### H. Sleeve Installation

1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
2. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
3. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs using galvanized-steel pipe **OR** galvanized-steel sheet **OR** stack sleeve fittings **OR** PVC pipe, **as directed**.
  - a. Wall Penetrations: Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  - b. Floor Penetrations: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.

#### **OR**

Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.

4. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
  - a. PVC **OR** Steel, **as directed**, Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6 (DN 150).
  - b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger, penetrating gypsum board partitions.
  - c. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim" for flashing.
    - 1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
5. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".

#### I. Escutcheon Installation

1. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
  - a. New Piping:
    - 1) Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One piece, deep pattern.
    - 2) Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** stamped steel with set screw **OR** stamped steel with set screw or spring clips **OR** stamped steel with spring clips, **as directed**.
    - 3) Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** One piece or split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** Split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** One piece, stamped steel with set screw **OR** One piece or split plate, stamped steel with set screw **OR** Split plate, stamped steel with set screw, **as directed**.



- 4) Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** cast brass with rough-brass finish **OR** stamped steel with set screw **OR** stamped steel with spring clips **OR** stamped steel with set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
  - 5) Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One piece, cast brass **OR** stamped steel with set screw **OR** stamped steel with spring clips **OR** stamped steel with set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
  - 6) Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece floor plate.
  - b. Existing Piping:
    - 1) Chrome-Plated Piping: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish.
    - 2) Insulated Piping: Split plate, stamped steel with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge and spring clips.
    - 3) Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge and spring clips, **as directed**.
    - 4) Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge and set screw, **as directed**.
    - 5) Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish **OR** casting, cast brass with rough-brass finish **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge and set screw or spring clips **OR** plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge and set screw or spring clips **OR** plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge and set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
    - 6) Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split casting, cast brass **OR** plate, stamped steel with set screw or spring clips, **as directed**.
    - 7) Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting floor plate.
- J. Hanger And Support Installation
1. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" for seismic-restraint devices.
  2. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Hangers And Supports For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" for pipe hanger and support devices.
  3. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
  4. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
    - a. 100 Feet (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel, clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable, roller hangers.
  5. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Hangers And Supports For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" for trapeze hangers.
  6. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
  7. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches (300 mm) of each fitting and coupling.
  8. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum rods.
  9. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
    - a. NPS 1/4 (DN 8): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
    - b. NPS 3/8 and NPS 1/2 (DN 10 and DN 15): 72 inches (1800 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
    - c. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): 84 inches (2100 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
    - d. NPS 1 (DN 25): 96 inches (2400 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
    - e. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
    - f. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
    - g. NPS 2 (DN 50): 11 feet (3.4 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
    - h. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 13 feet (4 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
    - i. NPS 3 (DN 80): 14 feet (4.3 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
    - j. NPS 3-1/2 (DN 90): 15 feet (4.6 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.



- k. NPS 4 (DN 100): 16 feet (4.9 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - l. NPS 5 (DN 125): 18 feet (5.5 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - m. NPS 6 (DN 150): 20 feet (6 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
  - n. NPS 8 (DN 200): 23 feet (7 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
10. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet (3 m).
- K. Labeling And Identification
- 1. Install identifying labels and devices for specialty gas piping, valves, and specialties. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Identification For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
  - 2. Install identifying labels and devices for healthcare medical gas piping systems according to NFPA 99. Use the following or similar captions and color-coding for piping products where required by NFPA 99:
    - a. Carbon Dioxide: Black or white letters on gray background.
    - b. Helium: White letters on brown background.
    - c. Nitrogen: White letters on black background.
    - d. Nitrous Oxide: White letters on blue background.
    - e. Oxygen: White letters on green background or green letters on white background.
- L. Field Quality Control For Laboratory Facility Specialty Gas
- 1. Perform field tests and inspections of specialty gas piping for nonhealthcare laboratory facilities and prepare test reports.
  - 2. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. Piping Leak Tests for Specialty Gas Piping: Test new and modified parts of existing piping. Cap and fill specialty gas piping with oil-free, dry nitrogen to pressure of 50 psig (345 kPa) above system operating pressure, but not less than 150 psig (1035 kPa). Isolate test source and let stand for four hours to equalize temperature. Refill system, if required, to test pressure; hold for two hours with no drop in pressure.
    - b. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
    - c. Inspect specialty gas regulators for proper operation.
- M. Field Quality Control For Healthcare Facility Medical Gas
- 1. Perform tests and inspections of medical gas piping systems in healthcare facilities and prepare test reports.
  - 2. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. Medical Gas Piping Testing Coordination: Perform tests, inspections, verifications, and certification of medical gas piping systems concurrently with tests, inspections, and certification of medical compressed-air piping and medical vacuum piping systems.
    - b. Preparation: Perform the following Installer tests according to requirements in NFPA 99 and ASSE Standard #6010:
      - 1) Initial blow down.
      - 2) Initial pressure test.
      - 3) Cross-connection test.
      - 4) Piping purge test.
      - 5) Standing pressure test for positive pressure medical gas piping.
      - 6) Standing pressure test for vacuum systems.
      - 7) Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
    - c. System Verification: Comply with requirements in NFPA 99, ASSE Standard #6020, and ASSE Standard #6030 for verification of medical gas piping systems and perform the following tests and inspections:
      - 1) Standing pressure test.
      - 2) Individual-pressurization **OR** Pressure-differential, **as directed**, cross-connection test.
      - 3) Valve test.
      - 4) Master and area alarm tests.
      - 5) Piping purge test.



- 
- 6) Piping particulate test.
  - 7) Piping purity test.
  - 8) Final tie-in test.
  - 9) Operational pressure test.
  - 10) Medical gas concentration test.
  - 11) Medical air purity test.
  - 12) Verify correct labeling of equipment and components.
  - 13) Verify the following source equipment:
    - a) Medical gas supply sources.
- d. Testing Certification: Certify that specified tests, inspections, and procedures have been performed and certify report results. Include the following:
- 1) Inspections performed.
  - 2) Procedures, materials, and gases used.
  - 3) Test methods used.
  - 4) Results of tests.
3. Remove and replace components that do not pass tests and inspections and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION 22 11 16 00I



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





## SECTION 22 11 19 00 - ELECTRONIC AIR CLEANERS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for electronic air cleaners. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Electronic air cleaners.
  - b. Side-service housings.
  - c. Front- and rear-access filter frames.
  - d. Filter gages.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include dimensions; operating characteristics; required clearances and access; rated flow capacity, including initial and final pressure drop at rated airflow; efficiency and test method; fire classification; furnished specialties; and accessories for each model indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Product Data for Prerequisite EQ 1: Documentation indicating that units comply with ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment."
3. Shop Drawings: For each electronic air cleaner. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - a. Show filter assembly, dimensions, materials, and methods of assembly of components.
  - b. Include setting drawings, templates, and requirements for installing anchor bolts and anchorages.
  - c. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Field quality-control reports.
5. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of filter and housing to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. ASHRAE Compliance:
  - a. Comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 4 - "Outdoor Air Quality," Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
  - b. Comply with ASHRAE 52.1 for arrestance and with ASHRAE 52.2 for MERV for methods of testing and rating air-filter units.
3. Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.
4. Comply with ARI 850.
5. Comply with UL 867.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Electronic Air Cleaners

1. Description: Factory-fabricated electronic air cleaner operating by electrostatic precipitation principles.



2. Prefilter Media: Four **OR** Six, **as directed**, alternate layers of galvanized-steel **OR** aluminum **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, flat and herringbone-crimp screen.
3. Prefilter: Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Particulate Air Filtration" for flat **OR** pleated **OR** ring, **as directed**, panel. Size and airflow capacity shall match those of electronic air cleaners.
  - a. Depth: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**.
  - b. Filter Unit Class: UL 900, Class 1 **OR** Class 2, **as directed**.
  - c. Arrestance: 85 percent when tested according to ASHRAE 52.1.
  - d. MERV: 8 when tested according to ASHRAE 52.2.
4. Final Filter: Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Particulate Air Filtration" for supported bag **OR** unsupported bag **OR** rigid-cell box **OR** V-bank cell **OR** self-supported pocket, **as directed**. Size and airflow capacity shall match those of gas-phase filters.
  - a. Depth: 12 inches (300 mm) **OR** 18 inches (450 mm) **OR** 24 inches (600 mm), **as directed**.
  - b. Filter Unit Class: UL 900, Class 1 **OR** Class 2, **as directed**.
  - c. Arrestance: 85 percent when tested according to ASHRAE 52.1.
  - d. MERV: 13 when tested according to ASHRAE 52.2.
5. Collection Cells: Aluminum, independently supported and nested.
  - a. Ionizing Section: Alternately spaced grounded struts and charged ionizing wires.
  - b. Collecting Section: Alternately grounded and charged plates, with insulators located out of airstream.
6. Power Pack: Self-contained, prewired rectifying unit to convert 120 **OR** 208/240 **OR** 480, **as directed**, -V ac, single-phase, 60-Hz power to approximately 12,000-V dc for ionizer and 6000-V dc for collector; include overload protection, on-off switch, pilot light showing operating status, and access door interlock.
7. Safety Accessories: Manual-reset safety switches and warning lights for filter plenum access doors, signal lights and safety switching upstream and downstream from unit within duct, and enameled high-voltage warning signs.
8. Collection Section Cleaning System:
  - a. Detergent Reservoir Tank: 30 gal. (110 L) **OR** 55 gal. (200 L), **as directed**, with pump, motor, solenoid valve, level sensor, backflow preventer, wye-strainer, and ball valve.
  - b. Detergent.
  - c. Dispensing System: Motor-driven oscillating copper manifolds with brass spray nozzles on each side of the collector.
9. Mist Eliminators: Upstream **OR** Upstream and downstream **OR** Downstream, **as directed**.
10. Controls: Programmable logic controller in remotely mounted NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure; with integral time clock and manual override.
  - a. Contacts for enable-disable control by building automation system.
11. Finish of Interior Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

#### B. Fan Section

1. Fan: Forward curved, belt driven.
2. Motor:
  - a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".
  - b. Type: Permanent-split capacitor with SCR for speed adjustment **OR** Electronically commutated motor, **as directed**.
  - c. Fan-Motor Assembly Isolation: Rubber isolators.
  - d. Enclosure: Totally enclosed, fan cooled, and explosion proof **OR** dust-ignition proof, **as directed**.
  - e. Enclosure Materials: Cast iron **OR** Cast aluminum **OR** Rolled steel, **as directed**.
  - f. Motor Bearings: Sealed ball.
  - g. Unusual Service Conditions:
    - 1) Ambient Temperature: <Insert deg F (deg C)>.



- 2) Altitude: **<Insert feet (m)>** above sea level.
  - 3) High humidity.
  - h. Efficiency: Premium efficient.
  - i. NEMA Design: **<Insert designation>**.
  - j. Service Factor: **<Insert value>**.
  - k. Motor Speed: Single speed **OR** Multispeed, **as directed**.
    - 1) Speed Control: Infinitely adjustable with pneumatic-electric and electronic controls.
- C. Cabinet
1. Description: 16-gage galvanized steel with epoxy powder finish for suspended, wall, frame, or duct mounting.
- D. Side-Service Housings
1. Description: Factory-assembled, side-service housings, with bottom drain, **as directed**, constructed of galvanized steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, and configured for stacking, with flanges to connect to duct or casing system.
  2. Access Doors: Hinged with continuous **OR** Continuous, **as directed**, gaskets on perimeter and positive-locking devices.
  3. Sealing: Incorporate positive-sealing gasket material on channels to seal top and bottom of filter cartridge frames to prevent bypass of unfiltered air.
  4. Finish of Interior Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- E. Front- And Rear-Access Filter Frames
1. Framing System: Galvanized-steel **OR** Aluminum, **as directed**, framing members with access for either upstream (front) or downstream (rear) filter servicing, cut to size and prepunched for assembly into modules with bottom drain, **as directed**, and configured for stacking. Vertically support filters to prevent deflection of horizontal members without interfering with either filter installation or operation.
  2. Prefilters: Incorporate a separate track with spring clips, **as directed**, removable from front or back, **as directed**.
  3. Final Filters: Integral tracks to accommodate particulate **OR** gas-phase, **as directed**, disposable filters.
  4. Sealing: Factory-installed, positive-sealing device for each row of filters to ensure seal between gasketed filter elements to prevent bypass of unfiltered air.
  5. Finish of Interior Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- F. Filter Gages
1. Diaphragm type, with dial and pointer in metal case, vent valves, black figures on white background, and front recalibration adjustment.
    - a. Diameter: 4-1/2 inches (115 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**.
    - b. Scale Range for Filter Media Having a Recommended Final Resistance of 0.5-Inch wg (125 Pa) or Less: 0- to 0.5-inch wg (0 to 125 Pa).
    - c. Scale Range for Filter Media Having a Recommended Final Resistance of 0.5- to 1-Inch wg (125 to 250 Pa) or Less: 0- to 1.0-inch wg (0 to 250 Pa).
    - d. Scale Range for Filter Media Having a Recommended Final Resistance of 1.0- to 2.0-Inch wg (250 to 500 Pa) or Less: 0- to 2.0-inch wg (0 to 500 Pa).
    - e. Scale Range for Filter Media Having a Recommended Final Resistance of 2.0- to 3.0-Inch wg (500 to 750 Pa) or Less: 0- to 3.0-inch wg (0 to 750 Pa).
    - f. Scale Range for Filter Media Having a Recommended Final Resistance of 3.0- to 4.0-Inch wg (750 to 1000 Pa) or Less: 0- to 4.0-inch wg (0 to 1000 Pa).
  2. Manometer-Type Filter Gage: Molded plastic, with epoxy-coated aluminum scale, logarithmic-curve tube gage, with integral leveling indicator, graduated to read from 0- to 3.0-inch wg (0 to 750 Pa), and accurate within 3 percent of full-scale range.
  3. Accessories: Static-pressure tips, tubing, gage connections, and mounting bracket.



### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation

1. Position each filter unit with clearance for normal service and maintenance. Anchor filter holding frames to substrate.
2. Install filters in position to prevent passage of unfiltered air.
3. Do not operate fan system until filters (temporary or permanent) are in place. Replace temporary filters used during construction and testing with new, clean filters.
4. Operate electronic air cleaners for 24 hours as part of startup before filters are put into operation.
5. Install filter-gage, static-pressure taps upstream and downstream from filters. Install filter gages on filter banks with separate static-pressure taps upstream and downstream from filters. Mount filter gages on outside of filter housing or filter plenum in an accessible position. Adjust and level inclined gages.
6. Install and connect water-supply and drainage piping.
7. Coordinate filter installations with duct and air-handling-unit installations.

#### B. Field Quality Control

1. Perform tests and inspections.
2. Tests and Inspections: Test for leakage of unfiltered air while system is operating.
3. Air filter will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
4. Prepare test and inspection reports.

#### C. Cleaning

1. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing air-handling and air-distribution systems, clean filter housings and install new prefilter and final-filter media.

END OF SECTION 22 11 19 00



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
22 11 19 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
22 11 19 00	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
22 11 19 00	22 05 23 00a	Water Distribution
22 11 19 00	22 11 16 00	Common Work Results for Fire Suppression
22 11 19 00	22 11 16 00a	Common Work Results for Plumbing
22 11 19 00	22 11 16 00b	Common Work Results for HVAC
22 11 19 00	22 11 16 00g	Steam And Condensate Piping



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 22 11 23 13 - WATER DISTRIBUTION PUMPS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for domestic water pumps. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. In-line, sealless centrifugal pumps.
  - b. Horizontally mounted, in-line, separately coupled centrifugal pumps.
  - c. Horizontally mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
  - d. Vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.

#### C. Definitions

1. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include materials of construction, rated capacities, certified performance curves with operating points plotted on curves, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
2. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water pumps to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

#### F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.
2. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.
3. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions for handling.

#### G. Coordination

1. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. In-Line, Sealless Centrifugal Pumps

1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, close-coupled, canned-motor, sealless, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps.
2. Pump Construction:
  - a. Pump and Motor Assembly: Hermetically sealed, replaceable-cartridge type with motor and impeller on common shaft and designed for installation with pump and motor shaft horizontal.
  - b. Casing: Bronze, with threaded or companion-flange connections.
  - c. Impeller: Plastic.
  - d. Motor: Single speed, unless otherwise indicated.



- B. Horizontally Mounted, In-Line, Separately Coupled Centrifugal Pumps
1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, single-stage, separately coupled, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontal.
  2. Pump Construction:
    - a. Casing: Radially split with threaded companion-flange connections for pumps with NPS 2 (DN 50) pipe connections and flanged connections for pumps with NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) pipe connections.
    - b. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, closed, and keyed to shaft.
    - c. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Steel shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
    - d. Coupling: Flexible.
    - e. Seal: Mechanical, with carbon-steel rotating ring, stainless-steel spring, ceramic seat, and rubber bellows and gasket.
    - f. Bearings: Oil-lubricated; bronze-journal or ball type.
    - g. Shaft Coupling: Flexible, capable of absorbing torsional vibration and shaft misalignment.
  3. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings; and resiliently **OR** rigidly, **as directed**, mounted to pump casing.
- C. Horizontally Mounted, In-Line, Close-Coupled Centrifugal Pumps
1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps designed for installation with pump and motor shaft mounted horizontal.
  2. Pump Construction:
    - a. Casing: Radially split with threaded companion-flange connections for pumps with NPS 2 (DN 50) pipe connections and flanged connections for pumps with NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) pipe connections.
    - b. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, closed, and keyed to shaft.
    - c. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Steel shaft with deflector, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
    - d. Seal: Mechanical, with carbon-steel rotating ring, stainless-steel spring, ceramic seat, and rubber bellows and gasket.
    - e. Bearings: Oil-lubricated; bronze-journal or ball type.
    - f. Shaft Coupling: Flexible, capable of absorbing torsional vibration and shaft misalignment.
  3. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings; and resiliently or rigidly mounted to pump casing.
- D. Vertically Mounted, In-Line, Close-Coupled Centrifugal Pumps
1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps designed for installation with pump and motor shaft mounted vertical.
  2. Pump Construction:
    - a. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with wear rings and threaded companion-flange connections for pumps with NPS 2 (DN 50) pipe connections and flanged connections for pumps with NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) pipe connections. Include pump manufacturer's base attachment for mounting pump on concrete base, **as directed**.
    - b. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, closed, and keyed to shaft.
    - c. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Stainless-steel or steel **OR** Stainless-steel, **as directed**, shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
    - d. Seal: Mechanical, with carbon-steel rotating ring, stainless-steel spring, ceramic seat, and rubber bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
    - e. Bearings: Oil-lubricated; bronze-journal or ball type.
    - f. Shaft Coupling: Flexible or rigid type if pump is provided with coupling.
  3. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings; and rigidly mounted to pump casing.
- E. Motors





1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 22 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Plumbing Equipment".
  - a. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
  - b. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 22.

#### F. Controls

1. Pressure Switches: Electric, adjustable for control of water-supply pump.
  - a. Type: Water-immersion pressure sensor, for installation in piping.
  - b. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
  - c. Operation of Pump: On or off.
  - d. Transformer: Provide if required.
  - e. Power Requirement: 24 V, ac **OR** 120 V, ac, **as directed**.
  - f. Settings: Start pump at **<Insert pressure>** and stop pump at **<Insert pressure>**.
2. Thermostats: Electric; adjustable for control of hot-water circulation pump.
  - a. Type: Water-immersion temperature sensor, for installation in piping.
  - b. Range: 50 to 125 deg F (10 to 52 deg C) **OR** 65 to 200 deg F (18 to 93 deg C) **OR** 100 to 240 deg F (38 to 116 deg C), **as directed**.
  - c. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
  - d. Operation of Pump: On or off.
  - e. Transformer: Provide if required.
  - f. Power Requirement: 24 V, ac **OR** 120 V, ac, **as directed**.
  - g. Settings: Start pump at 105 deg F (41 deg C) **OR** 110 deg F (43 deg C) **OR** 115 deg F (46 deg C), **as directed**, and stop pump at 120 deg F (49 deg C) **OR** 125 deg F (52 deg C), **as directed**.
3. Timers: Electric, for control of hot-water circulation pump.
  - a. Type: Programmable, seven-day clock with manual override on-off switch.
  - b. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1, suitable for wall mounting.
  - c. Operation of Pump: On or off.
  - d. Transformer: Provide if required.
  - e. Power Requirement: 24 V, ac **OR** 120 V, ac, **as directed**.
  - f. Programmable Sequence of Operation: Up to two on-off cycles each day for seven days.
4. Time-Delay Relays: Electric, for control of hot-water circulation pump between water heater and connected hot-water storage tank.
  - a. Type: Adjustable time-delay relay.
  - b. Range: Up to five minutes.
  - c. Setting: Five minutes.
  - d. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
  - e. Operation of Pump: On or off.
  - f. Transformer: Provide if required.
  - g. Power Requirement: 24 V, ac **OR** 120 V, ac, **as directed**.
  - h. Programmable Sequence of Operation: Limit pump operation to periods of burner operation plus maximum five minutes after the burner stops.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

1. Examine roughing-in of domestic-water-piping system to verify actual locations of connections before pump installation.

#### B. Pump Installation

1. Comply with HI 1.4.
2. Install in-line, sealless centrifugal pumps with shaft horizontal unless otherwise indicated.



3. Install horizontally mounted, in-line, separately coupled and close-coupled centrifugal pumps with shaft(s) horizontal.
4. Install vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps with shaft vertical.
5. Pump Mounting: Install vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps with cast-iron base mounted on concrete base using elastomeric pads **OR** elastomeric mounts **OR** restrained spring isolators, **as directed**. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
  - a. Minimum Deflection: 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**.
  - b. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
  - c. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - d. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - e. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
6. Install continuous-thread hanger rods and spring hangers **OR** spring hangers with vertical-limit stop, **as directed**, of size required to support pump weight.
  - a. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment". Fabricate brackets or supports as required.
  - b. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers And Supports For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
7. Install pressure switches in water supply piping.
8. Install thermostats in hot-water return piping.
9. Install timers on wall in engineer's office, **as directed**.
10. Install time-delay relays in piping between water heaters and hot-water storage tanks.

#### C. Connections

1. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping". Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
2. Install piping adjacent to pumps to allow service and maintenance.
3. Connect domestic water piping to pumps. Install suction and discharge piping equal to or greater than size of pump nozzles.
  - a. Install flexible connectors adjacent to pumps in suction and discharge piping of the following pumps:
    - 1) Horizontally mounted, in-line, separately coupled centrifugal pumps.
    - 2) Horizontally mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
    - 3) Vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
    - 4) Comply with requirements for flexible connectors specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping".
  - b. Install shutoff valve and strainer on suction side of each pump, and check, shutoff, and throttling valves on discharge side of each pump. Install valves same size as connected piping. Comply with requirements for valves specified in Division 22 Section "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping" and comply with requirements for strainers specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties".
  - c. Install pressure gage and snubber, **as directed**, at suction of each pump and pressure gage and snubber, **as directed**, at discharge of each pump. Install at integral pressure-gage tappings where provided or install pressure-gage connectors in suction and discharge piping around pumps. Comply with requirements for pressure gages and snubbers specified in Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping".
4. Comply with Division 22 for electrical connections, and wiring methods.
5. Connect pressure switches, thermostats, time-delay relays, and timers to pumps that they control.
6. Interlock pump between water heater and hot-water storage tank with water heater burner and time-delay relay.



- D. Identification
1. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 Section "Identification For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" for identification of pumps.
- E. Startup Service
1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform **OR** Perform, **as directed**, startup service.
    - a. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - b. Check piping connections for tightness.
    - c. Clean strainers on suction piping.
    - d. Set pressure switches, thermostats, timers, and time-delay relays for automatic starting and stopping operation of pumps.
    - e. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
      - 1) Verify bearing lubrication.
      - 2) Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
      - 3) Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.
    - f. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
    - g. Start motor.
    - h. Open discharge valve slowly.
    - i. Adjust temperature settings on thermostats.
    - j. Adjust timer settings.
- F. Adjusting
1. Adjust domestic water pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
  2. Adjust initial temperature set points.
  3. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

END OF SECTION 22 11 23 13



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 22 11 23 13a - PACKAGED BOOSTER PUMPS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for packaged booster pumps. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Simplex, constant-speed booster pumps.
  - b. Multiplex, constant-speed booster pumps.
  - c. Simplex, variable-speed booster pumps.
  - d. Multiplex, variable-speed booster pumps.

#### C. Definitions

1. VFC: Variable-frequency controller(s).

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. Seismic Performance: Booster pumps shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - a. The term "withstand" means "the booster pump will remain in place without separation of any parts from the booster pump when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the booster pump will be fully operational after the seismic event."

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, and dimensions of individual components and profiles **OR** Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories, **as directed**.
2. Shop Drawings: For booster pumps. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - a. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - b. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For booster pumps, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
  - a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  - b. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  - c. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
4. Operation and Maintenance Data: For booster pumps to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### F. Quality Assurance

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.9 for piping.
3. UL Compliance for Packaged Pumping Systems:
  - a. UL 508, "Industrial Control Equipment."



- b. UL 508A, "Industrial Control Panels."
- c. UL 778, "Motor-Operated Water Pumps."
- d. UL 1995, "Heating and Cooling Equipment."
- 4. Booster pumps shall be listed and labeled as packaged pumping systems by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

- 1. Retain protective coatings and flange's protective covers during storage.

H. Coordination

- 1. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Simplex, Constant-Speed Booster Pumps

- 1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, fluid-handling system for domestic water, with pump, piping, valves, specialties, and controls, and mounted on base.
- 2. Pump:
  - a. Type: End suction as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3 for end-suction, close-coupled, single-stage, overhung-impeller, centrifugal pump.
  - b. Casing: Radially split; bronze **OR** cast iron **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.
  - c. Impeller: Closed, ASTM B 584 cast bronze **OR** stainless steel, **s directed**; statically and dynamically balanced and keyed to shaft.
  - d. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Steel shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve and deflector.
  - e. Seal: Mechanical.
  - f. Orientation: Mounted horizontally or vertically.
- 3. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated or pre-greased, permanently shielded, ball-type bearings, and directly mounted to pump casing. Select motor that will not overload through full range of pump performance curve.
- 4. Piping: Copper tube and copper fittings **OR** Stainless-steel pipe and fittings **OR** Stainless-steel pipe and fitting headers and copper tube and copper fittings between headers and pump **OR** Galvanized-steel pipe and cast-iron fittings, **as directed**.
- 5. Valves:
  - a. Shutoff Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller: Gate valve or two-piece, full-port ball valve, in pump suction and discharge piping.
  - b. Shutoff Valves NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Gate valve or lug-type butterfly valve, in pump suction and discharge piping.
  - c. Check Valve NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller: Silent or swing type in pump discharge piping.
  - d. Check Valve NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Silent type in pump discharge piping.
  - e. Control Valve: Adjustable, automatic, pilot-operated or direct-acting, pressure-reducing type in pump discharge piping.
  - f. Control Valve: Combination adjustable, automatic, pilot-operated or direct-acting pressure-reducing-and-check type in pump discharge piping.
  - g. Thermal-Relief Valve: Temperature-and-pressure relief type in pump discharge piping.
- 6. Dielectric Fittings: With insulating material isolating joined dissimilar metals.
- 7. Hydropneumatic Tank: Precharged, ASME-construction, **as directed**, diaphragm or bladder tank made of materials complying with NSF 61.
- 8. Control Panel: Factory installed and connected as an integral part of booster pump; automatic for single-pump, constant-speed operation, with load control and protection functions.
  - a. Control Logic: Electromechanical system with switches, relays **OR** Solid-state system with transducers, programmable microprocessor, **as directed**, and other devices in the controller.



- b. Motor Controller: NEMA ICS 2, general-purpose, Class A, full-voltage, combination-magnetic type with undervoltage release feature, motor-circuit-protector-type disconnect, and short-circuit protective device.
    - 1) Control Voltage: 24 **OR** 120, **as directed**, -V ac, with integral control-power transformer.
  - c. Motor Controller: NEMA ICS 2, solid-state, reduced-voltage type.
    - 1) Control Voltage: 24 **OR** 120, **as directed**, -V ac, with integral control-power transformer.
  - d. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 3R **OR** Type 4 **OR** Type 12, **as directed**.
  - e. Motor Overload Protection: Overload relay in each phase.
  - f. Starting Devices: Hand-off-automatic selector switch in cover of control panel, plus pilot device for automatic control.
  - g. Pump Operation: Current- or pressure- sensing method.
    - 1) Time Delay: Controls pump on-off operation; adjustable from 1 to 300 seconds.
  - h. Instrumentation: Suction and discharge pressure gages.
  - i. Light: Running light for pump.
  - j. Thermal-bleed cutoff.
  - k. Low-suction-pressure **OR** Water-storage-tank, low-level, **as directed**, cutout.
  - l. High-suction-pressure cutout.
  - m. Low-discharge-pressure cutout.
  - n. High-discharge-pressure cutout.
  - o. Building Automation System Interface: Provide auxiliary contacts for interface to BACnet **OR** LonWorks, **as directed**, building automation system. Building automation systems are specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac". Include the following:
    - 1) On-off status of pump.
    - 2) Alarm status.
9. Base: Structural steel.

B. Multiplex, Constant-Speed Booster Pumps

- 1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, fluid-handling system for domestic water, with pumps, piping, valves, specialties, and controls, and mounted on base.
- 2. Pumps:
  - a. Type: End suction as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3 for end-suction, close-coupled, single-stage, overhung-impeller, centrifugal pump.
  - b. Casing: Radially split; bronze **OR** cast iron **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.
  - c. Impeller: Closed, ASTM B 584 cast bronze **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**; statically and dynamically balanced and keyed to shaft.
  - d. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Steel shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve and deflector.
  - e. Seal: Mechanical.
  - f. Orientation: Mounted horizontally or vertically.

**OR**

Pumps:

  - a. Type: End suction as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3 for end-suction, frame-mounted, separately coupled, single-stage, overhung-impeller, centrifugal pump. Include back-pullout design, **as directed**.
  - b. Casing: Radially split; bronze **OR** cast iron **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.
  - c. Impeller: Closed, ASTM B 584 cast bronze **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**; statically and dynamically balanced and keyed to shaft.
  - d. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Stainless-steel or steel, **as directed**, shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve and deflector.
  - e. Seal: Mechanical.
  - f. Bearing: Grease-lubricated or pre-greased, permanently shielded ball type.
  - g. Coupling: Flexible, with metal guard.

**OR**

Pumps:



- a. Type: In line, single stage as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3 for in-line, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal pump.
  - b. Casing: Radially split; bronze **OR** cast iron **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.
  - c. Impeller: Closed, ASTM B 584 cast bronze **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**; statically and dynamically balanced and keyed to shaft.
  - d. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Stainless-steel or steel, **as directed**, shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
  - e. Seal: Mechanical.
  - f. Bearing: Grease-lubricated or pre-greased, permanently shielded ball type.
- OR**
- Pumps:
- a. Type: Vertical, multistage as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3 for in-line, multistage, separately coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal pump.
  - b. Casing: Cast-iron or steel base and stainless-steel chamber.
  - c. Impeller: Closed, stainless steel; statically and dynamically balanced and keyed to shaft.
  - d. Shaft: Stainless steel.
  - e. Seal: Mechanical.
  - f. Bearing: Water-lubricated sleeve type.
- OR**
- Pumps:
- a. Type: Vertical, can, as defined in HI 2.1-2.2 and HI 2.3 for in-line, barrel or can, lineshaft, vertical pump.
  - b. Impeller: Closed, stainless steel; statically and dynamically balanced and keyed to shaft.
  - c. Bowls: Epoxy-coated cast iron **OR** Cast iron, **as directed**.
  - d. Shaft: Stainless steel.
  - e. Seals: Mechanical and stuffing-box types.
  - f. Bearings: Water-lubricated bushing type.
3. Motors: Single speed, with grease-lubricated or pre-greased, permanently shielded, ball-type bearings. Select motors that will not overload through full range of pump performance curve.
  4. Piping: Copper tube and copper fittings **OR** Stainless-steel pipe and fittings **OR** Stainless-steel pipe and fitting headers and copper tube and copper fittings between headers and pump **OR** Galvanized-steel pipe and cast-iron fittings, **as directed**.
  5. Valves:
    - a. Shutoff Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller: Gate valve or two-piece, full-port ball valve, in each pump's suction and discharge piping.
    - b. Shutoff Valves NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Gate valve or lug-type butterfly valve, in each pump's suction and discharge piping and in inlet and outlet headers, **as directed**.
    - c. Check Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller: Silent or swing type in each pump's discharge piping.
    - d. Check Valves NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Silent type in each pump's discharge piping.
    - e. Control Valves: Adjustable, automatic, pilot-operated or direct-acting, pressure-reducing type in each pump's discharge piping.
    - f. Control Valves: Combination adjustable, automatic, pilot-operated or direct-acting pressure-reducing-and-check type in each pump's discharge piping.
    - g. Thermal-Relief Valve: Temperature-and-pressure relief type in pump's discharge header piping.
  6. Dielectric Fittings: With insulating material isolating joined dissimilar metals.
  7. Control Panel: Factory installed and connected as an integral part of booster pump; automatic for multiple-pump, constant-speed operation, with load control and protection functions.
    - a. Control Logic: Electromechanical system with switches, relays **OR** Solid-state system with transducers, programmable microprocessor, **as directed**, and other devices in the controller.
    - b. Motor Controller: NEMA ICS 2, general-purpose, Class A, full-voltage, combination-magnetic type with undervoltage release feature, motor-circuit-protector-type disconnect, and short-circuit protective device.





- 1) Control Voltage: 24 **OR** 120, **as directed**, -V ac, with integral control-power transformer.
  - c. Motor Controller: NEMA ICS 2, solid-state, reduced-voltage type.
    - 1) Control Voltage: 24 **OR** 120, **as directed**, -V ac, with integral control-power transformer.
  - d. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 3R **OR** Type 4 **OR** Type 12, **as directed**.
  - e. Motor Overload Protection: Overload relay in each phase.
  - f. Starting Devices: Hand-off-automatic selector switch for each pump in cover of control panel, plus pilot device for automatic control.
    - 1) Duplex, Automatic, Alternating Starter: Switches lead pump to lag main pump and to two-pump operation.
    - 2) Triplex, Sequence (Lead-Lag-Lag) Starter: Switches lead pump to one lag main pump and to three-pump operation.
  - g. Pump Operation and Sequencing: Current- or pressure- sensing method.
    - 1) Time Delay: Controls pump on-off operation; adjustable from 1 to 300 seconds.
  - h. Instrumentation: Suction and discharge pressure gages.
  - i. Lights: Running light for each pump.
  - j. Alarm Signal Device: Sounds alarm when backup pumps are operating.
    - 1) Time Delay: Controls alarm operation; adjustable from 1 to 300 seconds, with automatic **OR** manual, **as directed**, reset.
  - k. Thermal-bleed cutoff.
  - l. Low-suction-pressure **OR** Water-storage-tank, low-level, **as directed**, cutout.
  - m. High-suction-pressure cutout.
  - n. Low-discharge-pressure cutout.
  - o. High-discharge-pressure cutout.
  - p. Building Automation System Interface: Provide auxiliary contacts for interface to BACnet **OR** LonWorks, **as directed**, building automation system. Building automation systems are specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac". Include the following:
    - 1) On-off status of each pump.
    - 2) Alarm status.
8. Base: Structural steel.
- C. Simplex, Variable-Speed Booster Pumps
1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, fluid-handling system for domestic water, with pump, piping, valves, specialties, and controls, and mounted on base.
  2. Pump:
    - a. Type: End suction as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3 for end-suction, close-coupled, single-stage, overhung-impeller, centrifugal pump.
    - b. Casing: Radially split; bronze **OR** cast iron **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.
    - c. Impeller: Closed, ASTM B 584 cast bronze **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**; statically and dynamically balanced and keyed to shaft.
    - d. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Steel shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve and deflector.
    - e. Seal: Mechanical.
    - f. Orientation: Mounted horizontally or vertically.
  3. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated or pre-greased, permanently shielded, ball-type bearings, and directly mounted to pump casing. Select motor that will not overload through full range of pump performance curve.
  4. Piping: Copper tube and copper fittings **OR** Stainless-steel pipe and fittings **OR** Stainless-steel pipe and fitting headers and copper tube and copper fittings between headers and pump **OR** Galvanized-steel pipe and cast-iron fittings, **as directed**.
  5. Valves:
    - a. Shutoff Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Gate valve or two-piece, full-port ball valve, in pump suction and discharge piping.
    - b. Shutoff Valves NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Gate valve or lug-type butterfly valve, in pump suction and discharge piping.



- c. Check Valve NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Silent or swing type in pump discharge piping.
  - d. Check Valve NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Silent type in pump discharge piping.
  - e. Thermal-Relief Valve: Temperature-and-pressure relief type in pump discharge piping.
  - 6. Dielectric Fittings: With insulating material isolating joined dissimilar metals.
  - 7. Hydropneumatic Tank: Precharged, ASME-construction, **as directed**, diaphragm or bladder tank made of materials complying with NSF 61.
  - 8. Control Panel: Factory installed and connected as an integral part of booster pump; automatic for single-pump, variable-speed operation, with load control and protection functions.
    - a. Control Logic: Solid-state system with transducers, programmable microprocessor, VFC, and other devices in the controller.
    - b. Motor Controller: NEMA ICS 2, variable-frequency, solid-state type.
      - 1) Control Voltage: 24 **OR** 120, **as directed**, -V ac, with integral control-power transformer.
    - c. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 3R **OR** Type 4 **OR** Type 12, **as directed**.
    - d. Motor Overload Protection: Overload relay in each phase.
    - e. Starting Devices: Hand-off-automatic selector switch in cover of control panel, plus pilot device for automatic control.
    - f. Pump Operation: Pressure-sensing method.
      - 1) Time Delay: Controls pump on-off operation; adjustable from 1 to 300 seconds.
    - g. VFC: Voltage-source, pulse-width, modulating-frequency converter; installed in control panel.
    - h. Manual Bypass: Magnetic contactor arranged to transfer to constant-speed operation upon VFC failure.
    - i. Instrumentation: Suction and discharge pressure gages.
    - j. Light: Running light for pump.
    - k. Thermal-bleed cutoff.
    - l. Low-suction-pressure **OR** Water-storage-tank, low-level, **as directed**, cutout.
    - m. High-suction-pressure cutout.
    - n. Low-discharge-pressure cutout.
    - o. High-discharge-pressure cutout.
    - p. Building Automation System Interface: Provide auxiliary contacts for interface to BACnet **OR** LonWorks, **as directed**, building automation system. Building automation systems are specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac". Include the following:
      - 1) On-off status of each pump.
      - 2) Alarm status.
  - 9. Base: Structural steel.
- D. Multiplex, Variable-Speed Booster Pumps
- 1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, fluid-handling system for domestic water, with pumps, piping, valves, specialties, and controls, and mounted on base.
  - 2. Pumps:
    - a. Type: End suction as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3 for end-suction, close-coupled, single-stage, overhung-impeller, centrifugal pump.
    - b. Casing: Radially split; bronze **OR** cast iron **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.
    - c. Impeller: Closed, ASTM B 584 cast bronze **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**; statically and dynamically balanced and keyed to shaft.
    - d. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Steel shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve and deflector.
    - e. Seal: Mechanical.
    - f. Orientation: Mounted horizontally or vertically.
  - 3. Pumps:
    - a. Type: End suction as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3 for end-suction, frame-mounted, separately coupled, single-stage, overhung-impeller, centrifugal pump. Include back-pullout design, **as directed**.
    - b. Casing: Radially split; bronze **OR** cast iron **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.



- c. Impeller: Closed, ASTM B 584 cast bronze **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**; statically and dynamically balanced and keyed to shaft.
  - d. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Stainless-steel or steel, **as directed**, shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve and deflector.
  - e. Seal: Mechanical.
  - f. Bearing: Grease-lubricated or pre-greased, permanently shielded ball type.
  - g. Coupling: Flexible, with metal guard.
4. Pumps:
- a. Type: In line, single stage as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3 for in-line, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal pump.
  - b. Casing: Radially split; bronze **OR** cast iron **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.
  - c. Impeller: Closed, ASTM B 584 cast bronze **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**; statically and dynamically balanced and keyed to shaft.
  - d. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Stainless-steel or steel, **as directed**, shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
  - e. Seal: Mechanical.
  - f. Bearing: Grease-lubricated or pre-greased, permanently shielded ball type.
5. Pumps:
- a. Type: Vertical, multistage as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3 for in-line, multistage, separately coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal pump.
  - b. Casing: Cast-iron or steel base and stainless-steel chamber.
  - c. Impeller: Closed, stainless steel; statically and dynamically balanced and keyed to shaft.
  - d. Shaft: Stainless steel.
  - e. Seal: Mechanical.
  - f. Bearing: Water-lubricated sleeve type.
6. Pumps:
- a. Type: Vertical, can, as defined in HI 2.1-2.2 and HI 2.3 for in-line, barrel or can, lineshaft, vertical pump.
  - b. Impeller: Closed, stainless steel; statically and dynamically balanced and keyed to shaft.
  - c. Bowls: Epoxy-coated cast iron **OR** Cast iron, **as directed**.
  - d. Shaft: Stainless steel.
  - e. Seals: Mechanical and stuffing-box types.
  - f. Bearings: Water-lubricated bushing type.
7. Motors: Single speed, with grease-lubricated or pre-greased, permanently shielded, ball-type bearings. Select motors that will not overload through full range of pump performance curve.
8. Piping: Copper tube and copper fittings **OR** Stainless-steel pipe and fittings **OR** Stainless-steel pipe and fitting headers and copper tube and copper fittings between headers and pump **OR** Galvanized-steel pipe and cast-iron fittings, **as directed**.
9. Valves:
- a. Shutoff Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Gate valve or two-piece, full-port ball valve, in each pump's suction and discharge piping.
  - b. Shutoff Valves NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Gate valve or lug-type butterfly valve, in each pump's suction and discharge piping and in inlet and outlet headers, **as directed**.
  - c. Check Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Silent or swing type in each pump's discharge piping.
  - d. Check Valves NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Silent type in each pump's discharge piping.
  - e. Thermal-Relief Valve: Temperature-and-pressure relief type in pump's discharge header piping.
10. Dielectric Fittings: With insulating material isolating joined dissimilar metals.
11. Control Panel: Factory installed and connected as an integral part of booster pump; automatic for multiple-pump, variable-speed operation, with load control and protection functions.
- a. Control Logic: Solid-state system with transducers, programmable microprocessor, VFC, and other devices in controller. Install VFC for pump motors larger than 25 hp in separate panel; same type as motor control panel enclosure.
  - b. Motor Controller: NEMA ICS 2, variable-frequency, solid-state type.



- 1) Control Voltage: 24 **OR** 120, **as directed**, -V ac, with integral control-power transformer.
  - c. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 3R **OR** Type 4 **OR** Type 12, **as directed**.
  - d. Motor Overload Protection: Overload relay in each phase.
  - e. Starting Devices: Hand-off-automatic selector switch for each pump in cover of control panel, plus pilot device for automatic control.
    - 1) Duplex, Automatic, Alternating Starter: Switches lead pump to lag main pump and to two-pump operation.
    - 2) Triplex, Sequence (Lead-Lag-Lag) Starter: Switches lead pump to one lag main pump and to three-pump operation.
  - f. Pump Operation and Sequencing: Pressure-sensing method or flow-sensing method **OR** Pressure-sensing method for lead pump and flow-sensing method for lag pumps, **as directed**.
    - 1) Time Delay: Controls pump on-off operation; adjustable from 1 to 300 seconds.
  - g. VFC: Voltage-source, pulse-width, modulating-frequency converter for each **OR** lead, **as directed**, pump.
  - h. Manual Bypass: Magnetic contactor arranged to transfer to constant-speed operation upon VFC failure.
  - i. Instrumentation: Suction and discharge pressure gages.
  - j. Lights: Running light for each pump.
  - k. Alarm Signal Device: Sounds alarm when backup pumps are operating.
    - 1) Time Delay: Controls alarm operation; adjustable from 1 to 300 seconds, with automatic **OR** manual, **as directed**, reset.
  - l. Thermal-bleed cutoff.
  - m. Low-suction-pressure **OR** Water-storage-tank, low-level, **as directed**, cutout.
  - n. High-suction-pressure cutout.
  - o. Low-discharge-pressure cutout.
  - p. High-discharge-pressure cutout.
  - q. Building Automation System Interface: Provide auxiliary contacts for interface to BACnet **OR** LonWorks, **as directed**, building automation system. Building automation systems are specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac". Include the following:
    - 1) On-off status of each pump.
    - 2) Alarm status.
12. Base: Structural steel.

#### E. Motors

1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors.
  - a. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
  - b. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in NFPA 70.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

1. Examine roughing-in for booster pumps to verify actual locations of piping connections before booster-pump installation.

#### B. Installation

1. Equipment Mounting: Install booster pumps on concrete base using elastomeric pads **OR** elastomeric mounts **OR** restrained spring isolators, **as directed**. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete", **as directed**.



- a. Minimum Deflection: 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**.
  - b. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
  - c. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - d. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - e. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  2. Equipment Mounting: Install booster pumps using elastomeric pads **OR** elastomeric mounts **OR** restrained spring isolators, **as directed**. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
    - a. Minimum Deflection: 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**.
  3. Support connected domestic-water piping so weight of piping is not supported by booster pumps.
- C. Connections
1. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping". Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
  2. Connect domestic-water piping to booster pumps. Install suction and discharge pipe equal to or greater than size of system suction and discharge headers **OR** piping, **as directed**.
    - a. Install shutoff valves on piping connections to booster-pump suction and discharge headers **OR** piping, **as directed**. Install ball, butterfly, or gate valves same size as suction and discharge headers **OR** piping, **as directed**. Comply with requirements for general-duty valves specified in Division 22 Section "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping".
    - b. Install union, flanged, or grooved-joint connections on suction and discharge headers **OR** piping, **as directed**, at connection to domestic-water piping. Comply with requirements for unions and flanges specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping".
    - c. Install valved bypass, same size as and between piping, at connections to booster-pump suction and discharge headers **OR** piping, **as directed**. Comply with requirements for domestic-water piping specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping".
    - d. Install flexible connectors, same size as piping, on piping connections to booster-pump suction and discharge headers **OR** piping, **as directed**. Comply with requirements for flexible connectors specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping".
    - e. Install piping adjacent to booster pumps to allow service and maintenance.
- D. Identification
1. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 Section "Identification For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
- E. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections.
  2. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. Perform visual and mechanical inspection.
    - b. Leak Test: After installation, charge booster pump and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
    - c. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start booster pumps to confirm proper motor rotation and booster-pump operation.
    - d. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  3. Pumps and controls will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
  4. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- F. Startup Service
1. Perform startup service.
    - a. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.



- 
- G. Adjusting
1. Adjust booster pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
  2. Adjust pressure set points.
  3. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Final Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting booster pump to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
- H. Demonstration
1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain booster pumps.

END OF SECTION 22 11 23 13a



## SECTION 22 11 23 23 - WATER SUPPLY WELLS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for water supply wells. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Cable-tool, Rotary drilled, Reverse-rotary drilled, and Driven water supply wells.
  - b. Jet, Line-shaft, and Submersible well pumps.

#### C. Definitions

1. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
2. PA: Polyamide (nylon) plastic.
3. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
4. PP: Polypropylene plastic.
5. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: Submit certified performance curves and rated capacities of selected well pumps and furnished specialties for each type and size of well pump indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Show layout and connections for well pumps.
  - a. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Field quality-control reports.
4. Operation and maintenance data.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Well Driller Qualifications: An experienced water supply well driller licensed in the jurisdiction where Project is located.
2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
3. Comply with AWWA A100 for water supply wells.

#### F. Project Conditions

1. Interruption of Existing Water Service: Do not interrupt water service to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water service according to requirements indicated:
  - a. Notify the Owner no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of water service.
  - b. Do not proceed with interruption of water service without the Owner's written permission.
2. Well Drilling Water: Provide temporary water and piping for drilling purposes. Provide necessary piping for water supply.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Well Casings

1. Steel Casing: AWWA C200, single ply, steel pipe with threaded ends and threaded couplings for threaded joints.



2. ABS Casing: ASTM F 480, ABS, Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, bell-and-spigot pipe and couplings for solvent-cemented joints.
  3. PVC Casing: ASTM F 480 and NSF 14, **as directed**, PVC, Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, bell-and-spigot pipe and couplings for solvent-cemented joints. Include NSF listing mark "NSF wc," **as directed**.
  4. Pitless Adapter: Fitting, of shape required to fit onto casing, with waterproof seals.
  5. Pitless Unit: Factory-assembled equipment that includes pitless adapter.
  6. Well Seals: Casing cap, with holes for piping and cables, that fits into top of casing and is removable, waterproof, and vermin proof.
- B. Grout
1. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II.
  2. Aggregates: ASTM C 33, fine and coarse grades.
  3. Water: Potable.
- C. Water Well Screens
1. Screen Material: Fabricated of ASTM A 666, Type 304 stainless steel, welded; with continuous-slot, V-shaped openings that widen inwardly **OR** tube; with slotted or perforated surface and designed for well-screen applications, **as directed**.
    - a. Screen Couplings: Butt-type, stainless-steel coupling rings.
    - b. Screen Fittings: Screen, with necessary fittings, closes bottom and makes tight seal between top of screen and well casing.
    - c. Maximum Entering Velocity: 0.1 fps (0.03 m/s).
- D. Pack Materials
1. Coarse, uniformly graded filter sand, maximum 1/8 inch (3 mm) in diameter.
  2. Fine gravel, maximum 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
- E. Jet-Type Well Pumps
1. Description: Shallow **OR** Deep, **as directed**,-well-design, jet well pump; self-priming; centrifugal pump capable of continuous operation; with the following features:
    - a. Housing: Cast iron.
    - b. Impeller: Single stage **OR** Multistage, **as directed**, centrifugal; fabricated of corrosion-resistant materials.
    - c. Seals: Mechanical.
    - d. Shaft: Stainless steel.
    - e. Motor: Manufacturer's standard, NEMA MG 1 motor, panel, and accessories.
    - f. Motor Controls: Electronic; variable speed.
    - g. Check valve, ejector, and pressure-control valve.
  2. Pump Accessories:
    - a. Compression Tanks: Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Facility Indoor Potable-water Storage Tanks" **OR** Precharged butyl rubber diaphragm, steel shell, fused polymeric lining, and 100-psig (690-kPa) working pressure, **as directed**.
    - b. Pressure Switches: For pump control; for installation in piping.
    - c. Water Piping: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends.
      - 1) Cast-Iron Fittings: ASME B16.4, threaded, galvanized.
    - d. Water Piping: ASTM D 2239, SIDR Numbers 5.3, 7, or 9 PE pipe; made with PE compound number required to give pressure rating not less than 160 psig (1100 kPa) **OR** 200 psig (1380 kPa), **as directed**. Include NSF listing mark "NSF pw."
      - 1) Fittings for PE Pipe: ASTM D 2609, made of PA, PP, or PVC with serrated, male insert ends matching inside of pipe. Include bands or crimp rings.
- F. Line-Shaft Well Pumps
1. Description: Line-shaft, water **OR** oil, **as directed**,-lubricated, vertical-turbine well pump complying with HI 2.1-2.2 and HI 2.3; with the following features:





- a. Impeller Material: Stainless steel **OR** Carbon steel **OR** Bronze, **as directed**.
- b. Motor: Full-voltage starting, vertical hollow- or solid-shaft, squirrel-cage induction type complying with ANSI C50.10.
- c. Pump Base: Cast iron or fabricated steel.
- d. Column Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends and cast-iron or steel threaded couplings.

#### G. Submersible Well Pumps

1. Description: Submersible, vertical-turbine well pump complying with HI 2.1-2.2 and HI 2.3; with the following features:
  - a. Impeller Material: Stainless steel **OR** Silicon bronze, **as directed**.
  - b. Motor: Capable of continuous operation under water, with protected submersible power cable.
  - c. Column Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends and cast-iron or steel threaded couplings.
  - d. Discharge Piping: ASTM D 2239, SDR Numbers 5.3, 7, or 9 PE pipe; made with PE compound number required to give pressure rating not less than 160 psig (1100 kPa) **OR** 200 psig (1380 kPa), **as directed**. Include NSF listing mark "NSF pw."
    - 1) Insert Fittings for PE Pipe: ASTM D 2609, made of PA, PP, or PVC with serrated, male insert ends matching inside of pipe. Include bands or crimp rings.

#### H. Motors

1. General requirements for motors are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Plumbing Equipment".
  - a. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
  - b. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Electrical devices and connections are specified in Division 22.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Preparation

1. Pilot-Hole Data: Review pilot-hole test analysis furnished by the Owner.
2. Neighborhood Well Data: Review operating and test analyses.

#### B. Installation

1. Construct well using cable-tool **OR** rotary drilling **OR** reverse-rotary drilling **OR** driven, **as directed**, method.
2. Take samples of substrata formation at 10-foot (3-m) intervals and at changes in formation throughout entire depth of each water supply well. Carefully preserve samples on-site in glass jars properly labeled for identification.
3. If selecting rotary drilled or reverse-rotary drilled method, excavate for mud pit or provide aboveground structure, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to allow settlement of cuttings and circulation of drill fluids back to well without discharging to on-site waterways.
4. Enlarge pilot hole and install permanent casing, screen, and grout. Install first section of casing with hardened steel driving shoe of an OD slightly larger than casing couplings if threaded couplings are used.
5. Set casing and liners round, plumb, and true to line.
6. Join casing pipe as follows:
  - a. Ream ends of pipe and remove burrs.
  - b. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside casing before installation.
  - c. Cut bevel in ends of steel casing pipe and make threaded joints.
  - d. Clean and make solvent-cemented joints for ABS and PVC casings.
7. If rotary drilled or reverse-rotary drilled well, mix grout in proportions of 1 cu. ft. (0.03 cu. m) or a 94-lb (42.6-kg) sack of cement with 5 to 6 gal. (19 to 23 L) of water. Bentonite clay may be added



in amounts of 3 to 5 lb/cu. ft. (1.4 to 2.3 kg/0.03 cu. m) for a 94-lb (42.6-kg) sack of cement. If bentonite clay is added, water may be increased to 6.5 gal./cu. ft. (25 L/0.03 cu. m) of cement.

8. If rotary drilled or reverse-rotary drilled well, place grout continuously, from bottom to top surface, to ensure filling of annular space in one operation. Do not perform other operations in well within 72 hours after grouting of casing. When quick-setting cement is used, this period may be reduced to 24 hours.
9. Provide permanent casing with temporary well cap. Install with top of casing 36 inches (910 mm) above finished grade, **as directed**.
10. Develop wells to maximum yield per foot (meter) of drawdown.
  - a. Extract maximum practical quantity of sand, drill fluid, and other fine materials from water-bearing formation.
  - b. Avoid settlement and disturbance of strata above water-bearing formation.
  - c. Do not disturb sealing around well casings.
  - d. Continue developing wells until water contains no more than 2 ppm of sand by weight when pumped at maximum testing rate.
11. Install jet well pumps with ejector in or attached to pump housing. Place check valve on suction line to prevent drainage of compression tank.
12. Install jet well pumps and pressure and suction lines. Install ejector where pressure and suction lines connect above well screen. Install check valve in suction line, or install foot valve below ejector, to prevent drainage of compression tank.
13. Install line-shaft **OR** submersible, **as directed**, well pumps according to HI 2.1-2.4 and provide access for periodic maintenance.
  - a. Before lowering permanent pump into well, lower a dummy pump that is slightly longer and wider than permanent pump to determine that permanent pump can be installed. Correct alignment problems.
  - b. Before lowering permanent pump into well, start pump to verify correct rotation.
  - c. Securely tighten discharge piping joints.
  - d. Locate line-shaft well pump near well bottom; locate motor above grade. Install driver plate to correctly align motor and pump.
  - e. Connect motor to submersible pump and locate near well bottom.
    - 1) Connect power cable while connection points are dry and undamaged.
    - 2) Do not damage power cable during installation; use cable clamps that do not have sharp edges.
    - 3) Install water-sealed surface plate that will support pump and piping.

#### C. Connections

1. Piping installation requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Facility Water Distribution Piping". Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
  - a. Connect piping between well pump and water piping.
  - b. Connect water distribution system in trench to well pipe at pitless adapter **OR** unit, **as directed**.
  - c. Connect building water distribution to well pipe inside well house.
2. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
3. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".

#### D. Well Abandonment

1. Comply with AWWA A100 when abandoning water supply wells. Fill and seal holes and casings and restore ground surface to finished grade.  
**OR**  
Follow well-abandonment procedures of authorities having jurisdiction. Restore ground surface to finished grade.

#### E. Field Quality Control



1. Plumbness and Alignment Testing: Comply with AWWA A100.
2. Furnish samples of water-bearing formation to testing laboratory and well-screen manufacturer for mechanical sieve analysis.
3. Prepare reports on static level of ground water, level of water for various pumping rates, and depth to water-bearing strata.
4. Performance Testing: Conduct final pumping tests after wells have been constructed, cleaned, and tested for plumbness and alignment.
  - a. Provide discharge piping to conduct water to locations where disposal will not create a nuisance or endanger adjacent property. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - b. Measure elevation to water level in wells.
  - c. Perform two bailer or air-ejection tests to determine expected yield. Test at depths with sufficient quantity of water to satisfy desired yields.
  - d. Test Pump: Variable capacity test pump with capacity equal to maximum expected yields at pressure equal to drawdown in wells, plus losses in pump columns and discharge pipes.
  - e. Start and adjust test pumps and equipment to required pumping rates.
  - f. Record readings of water levels in wells and pumping rates at 30-minute maximum intervals throughout 24-hour minimum period.
  - g. Record maximum yields when drawdown is 60 inches (1500 mm) above top of suction screens after designated times.
  - h. Operate pumping units continuously for eight hours after maximum drawdown is reached.
  - i. Record returning water levels in wells and plot curves of well recovery rates.
  - j. Remove sand, stones, and other foreign materials that may become deposited in wells after completing final tests.
5. Water Analysis Testing:
  - a. Engage] a qualified testing agency to make bacteriological, physical, and chemical analyses of water from each finished well and report the results. Make analyses according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.  
**OR**  
Analyze water sample from each finished well for bacteriological, physical, and chemical quality and report the results. Make analyses according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

F. Cleaning

1. Disinfect water supply wells according to AWWA A100 and AWWA C654 before testing well pumps.  
**OR**  
Follow water supply well disinfection procedures required by authorities having jurisdiction before testing well pumps.

G. Protection

1. Water Quality Protection: Prevent well contamination, including undesirable physical and chemical characteristics.
2. Ensure that mud pit will not leak or overflow into streams or wetlands. When well is accepted, remove mud and solids in mud pit from Project site and restore site to finished grade.
3. Provide casings, seals, sterilizing agents, and other materials to eliminate contamination; shut off contaminated water.
4. Exercise care to prevent breakdown or collapse of strata overlaying that from which water is to be drawn.
5. Protect water supply wells to prevent tampering and introducing foreign matter. Retain temporary well cap until installation is complete.

END OF SECTION 22 11 23 23



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 22 11 23 23a - HYDRONIC PUMPS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for hydronic pumps. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Close-coupled, in-line centrifugal pumps.
  - b. Close-coupled, end-suction centrifugal pumps.
  - c. Separately coupled, horizontal, in-line centrifugal pumps.
  - d. Separately coupled, vertical, in-line centrifugal pumps.
  - e. Separately coupled, base-mounted, end-suction centrifugal pumps.
  - f. Separately coupled, base-mounted, double-suction centrifugal pumps.
  - g. Separately coupled, vertical-mounted, double-suction centrifugal pumps.
  - h. Separately coupled, vertical-mounted, turbine centrifugal pumps.
  - i. Automatic condensate pump units.

#### C. Definitions

1. Buna-N: Nitrile rubber.
2. EPT: Ethylene propylene terpolymer.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: Include certified performance curves and rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, final impeller dimensions, and accessories for each type of product indicated. Indicate pump's operating point on curves.
2. Shop Drawings: Show pump layout and connections. Include setting drawings with templates for installing foundation and anchor bolts and other anchorages.
  - a. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pumps to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
2. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

#### F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Manufacturer's Preparation for Shipping: Clean flanges and exposed machined metal surfaces and treat with anticorrosion compound after assembly and testing. Protect flanges, pipe openings, and nozzles with wooden flange covers or with screwed-in plugs.
2. Store pumps in dry location.
3. Retain protective covers for flanges and protective coatings during storage.
4. Protect bearings and couplings against damage from sand, grit, and other foreign matter.
5. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions.



## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Close-Coupled, In-Line Centrifugal Pumps

1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, close-coupled, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontally or vertically. Rate pump for 125-psig (860-kPa) **OR** 175-psig (1204-kPa) **OR** 250-psig (1720-kPa), **as directed**, minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 200 deg F (93 deg C) **OR** 225 deg F (107 deg C) **OR** 250 deg F (121 deg C), **as directed**.
2. Pump Construction:
  - a. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with replaceable bronze wear rings, **as directed**, threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, and threaded companion-flange **OR** union end, **as directed**, connections.
  - b. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. Trim impeller to match specified performance.
  - c. Pump Shaft: Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
  - d. Mechanical Seal: Carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N **OR** EPT, **as directed**, bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
  - e. Packing Seal: Stuffing box, with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
  - f. Pump Bearings: Permanently lubricated ball bearings **OR** Oil lubricated; bronze-journal or thrust type, **as directed**.
3. Motor: Single speed, with permanently lubricated **OR** grease-lubricated, **as directed**, ball bearings, unless otherwise indicated; and rigidly mounted to pump casing. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".

### B. Close-Coupled, End-Suction Centrifugal Pumps

1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, close-coupled, end-suction pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontally. Rate pump for 125-psig (860-kPa) **OR** 175-psig (1204-kPa), **as directed**, minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 225 deg F (107 deg C) **OR** 250 deg F (121 deg C), **as directed**.
2. Pump Construction:
  - a. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with replaceable bronze wear rings, **as directed**, drain plug at bottom and air vent at top of volute, threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, and threaded companion-flange **OR** flanged, **as directed**, connections.
  - b. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. Trim impeller to match specified performance.
  - c. Pump Shaft: Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
  - d. Mechanical Seal: Carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N **OR** EPT, **as directed**, bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
  - e. Pump Bearings: Permanently lubricated ball bearings **OR** Oil lubricated; bronze-journal or thrust type, **as directed**.
  - f. Motor: Single speed, with permanently lubricated **OR** grease-lubricated, **as directed**, ball bearings, unless otherwise indicated; rigidly mounted to pump casing with integral pump support. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".

### C. Separately Coupled, Horizontal, In-Line Centrifugal Pumps

1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, separately coupled, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontally. Rate pump for 125-psig (860-kPa) **OR** 175-psig (1204-kPa), **as**



- directed**, minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 225 deg F (107 deg C) **OR** 250 deg F (121 deg C), **as directed**.
2. Pump Construction:
    - a. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, and threaded companion-flange **OR** union end, **as directed**, connections.
    - b. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, and keyed to shaft. Trim impeller to match specified performance.
    - c. Pump Shaft: Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
    - d. Mechanical Seal: Carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N **OR** EPT, **as directed**, bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
    - e. Pump Bearings: Permanently lubricated ball bearings **OR** Oil lubricated; bronze-journal or thrust type, **as directed**.
  3. Shaft Coupling: Molded rubber insert with interlocking spider **OR** Interlocking frame with interconnecting springs, **as directed**, capable of absorbing vibration.
  4. Motor: Single speed, with permanently lubricated ball **OR** oil-lubricated sleeve, **as directed**, bearings, unless otherwise indicated; and resiliently **OR** rigidly, **as directed**, mounted to pump casing. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".
- D. Separately Coupled, Vertical, In-Line Centrifugal Pumps
1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, separately coupled, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted vertically. Rate pump for 125-psig (860-kPa) **OR** 175-psig (1204-kPa) **OR** 250-psig (1720-kPa), **as directed**, minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 200 deg F (93 deg C) **OR** 225 deg F (107 deg C) **OR** 250 deg F (121 deg C), **as directed**.
  2. Pump Construction:
    - a. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with replaceable bronze wear rings, **as directed**, threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, and threaded companion-flange **OR** union end, **as directed**, connections.
    - b. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. Trim impeller to match specified performance.
    - c. Pump Shaft: Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
    - d. Mechanical Seal: Carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N **OR** EPT, **as directed**, bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
    - e. Packing Seal: Stuffing box, with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
    - f. Pump Bearings: Permanently lubricated ball bearings **OR** Oil lubricated; bronze-journal or thrust type, **as directed**.
  3. Shaft Coupling: Axially split spacer coupling.
  4. Motor: Single speed, with permanently lubricated **OR** grease-lubricated, **as directed**, ball bearings, unless otherwise indicated; rigidly mounted to pump casing with lifting eye and supporting lugs in motor enclosure. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".
- E. Separately Coupled, Base-Mounted, End-Suction Centrifugal Pumps
1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, separately coupled, end-suction pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for base mounting, with pump and motor shafts horizontal. Rate pump for 125-psig (860-kPa) **OR** 175-psig (1204-kPa) **OR** 250-psig (1720-kPa), **as directed**, minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 200 deg F (93 deg C) **OR** 225 deg F (107 deg C) **OR** 250 deg F (121 deg C), **as directed**.
  2. Pump Construction:
    - a. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with replaceable bronze wear rings, **as directed**, threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, drain plug at bottom and air vent at top of volute, and threaded companion-flange **OR** flanged, **as directed**, connections. Provide integral mount



on volute to support the casing, and attached piping to allow removal and replacement of impeller without disconnecting piping or requiring the realignment of pump and motor shaft, **as directed**.

- b. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. Trim impeller to match specified performance.
  - c. Pump Shaft: Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
  - d. Mechanical Seal: Carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N **OR** EPT, **as directed**, bellows and gasket.
  - e. Packing Seal: Stuffing box, with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
  - f. Pump Bearings: Grease-lubricated ball bearings contained in cast-iron housing with grease fittings.
3. Shaft Coupling: Molded rubber insert and interlocking spider capable of absorbing vibration. Couplings shall be drop-out type to allow disassembly and removal without removing pump shaft or motor **OR** EPDM coupling sleeve for variable-speed applications, **as directed**.
  4. Coupling Guard: Dual rated; ANSI B15.1, Section 8; OSHA 1910.219 approved; steel; removable; attached to mounting frame.
  5. Mounting Frame: Welded-steel frame and cross members, factory fabricated from ASTM A 36/A 36M channels and angles. Fabricate to mount pump casing, coupling guard, and motor.
  6. Motor: Single speed, with permanently lubricated **OR** grease-lubricated, **as directed**, ball bearings, unless otherwise indicated; secured to mounting frame, with adjustable alignment. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".

F. Separately Coupled, Base-Mounted, Double-Suction Centrifugal Pumps

1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, impeller-between-bearings, separately coupled, double-suction pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for base mounting, with pump and motor shafts horizontal. Rate pump for 125-psig (860-kPa) **OR** 175-psig (1204-kPa) **OR** 250-psig (1720-kPa), **as directed**, minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 200 deg F (93 deg C) **OR** 225 deg F (107 deg C) **OR** 250 deg F (121 deg C), **as directed**.
2. Pump Construction:
  - a. Casing: Radially **OR** Horizontally, **as directed**, split, cast iron, with replaceable bronze wear rings, **as directed**, threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, drain plug at bottom and air vent at top of volute, and ASME B16.1, Class 125 **OR** 250, **as directed**, flanges. Casing supports shall allow removal and replacement of impeller without disconnecting piping, **as directed**.
  - b. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, and keyed to shaft. Trim impeller to match specified performance.
  - c. Pump Shaft: Stainless steel.
  - d. Mechanical Seal: Carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N **OR** EPT, **as directed**, bellows and gasket.
  - e. Packing Seal: Stuffing box, with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
  - f. Pump Bearings: Grease-lubricated ball bearings contained in cast-iron housing with grease fittings.
3. Shaft Coupling: Molded rubber insert and interlocking spider capable of absorbing vibration. Couplings shall be drop-out type to allow disassembly and removal without removing pump shaft or motor **OR** EPDM coupling sleeve for variable-speed applications, **as directed**.
4. Coupling Guard: Dual rated; ANSI B15.1, Section 8; OSHA 1910.219 approved; steel; removable; attached to mounting frame.
5. Mounting Frame: Welded-steel frame and cross members, factory fabricated from ASTM A 36/A 36M channels and angles. Fabricate to mount pump casing, coupling guard, and motor.





6. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings, unless otherwise indicated; secured to mounting frame, with adjustable alignment. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".
- G. Separately Coupled, Vertical-Mounted, Double-Suction Centrifugal Pumps
1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, impeller-between-bearings, separately coupled, double-suction pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted vertically. Rate pump for 125-psig (860-kPa) **OR** 175-psig (1204-kPa) **OR** 250-psig (1720-kPa), **as directed**, minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 200 deg F (93 deg C) **OR** 225 deg F (107 deg C) **OR** 250 deg F (121 deg C), **as directed**.
  2. Pump Construction:
    - a. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with replaceable bronze wear rings, **as directed**, threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, drain plug at bottom of volute, mounting support, and ASME B16.1, Class 125 **OR** 250, **as directed**, flanges.
    - b. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, and keyed to shaft. Trim impeller to match specified performance.
    - c. Pump Shaft: Stainless steel.
    - d. Mechanical Seal: Carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N **OR** EPT, **as directed**, bellows and gasket.
    - e. Packing Seal: Stuffing box, with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
    - f. Pump Bearings: Grease-lubricated ball bearings contained in cast-iron housing with grease fittings.
  3. Shaft Coupling: Molded rubber insert and interlocking spider capable of absorbing vibration.
  4. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings, unless otherwise indicated; secured to casing. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".
- H. Separately Coupled, Vertical-Mounted, Turbine Centrifugal Pumps
1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, single-stage **OR** multistage, **as directed**, centrifugal, impeller-between-bearings, end-suction pump as defined in HI 2.1-2.2 and HI 2.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted vertically and projecting into a sump. Rate pump for 125-psig (860-kPa) **OR** 175-psig (1204-kPa), **as directed**, minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 200 deg F (93 deg C).
  2. Pump Construction:
    - a. Pump Bowl: Cast iron, with replaceable bronze wear ring, **as directed**, cone **OR** basket, **as directed**, strainer, and suction bell. Water passages of intermediate bowls shall be coated with porcelain enamel, **as directed**.
    - b. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, and keyed to shaft. Trim impeller to match specified performance.
    - c. Pump Shaft: Carbon **OR** Stainless, **as directed**, steel sized per AWWA E-101.
    - d. Pump Bearings: Water-lubricated bronze and rubber sleeve bearings contained in cast-iron housing.
    - e. Pump Column: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Grade B steel pipe.
    - f. Mechanical Seal: Carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N bellows and gasket. Seal shall be replaceable without removing the motor or disturbing the piping.
    - g. Packing Seal: Stuffing box, with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
  3. Shaft Coupling: Keyed with locking collets.
  4. Discharge Head: ASME B16.1, Class 125 **OR** 250, **as directed**, discharge flange with threaded gage tapping. Top of discharge head shall have a registered fit to accurately locate the driver.
  5. Drive Ratchet: Nonreversing ratchet.



6. Hollow Shaft Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings, unless otherwise indicated; secured to discharge head. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".

I. Automatic Condensate Pump Units

1. Description: Packaged units with corrosion-resistant pump, plastic tank with cover, and automatic controls. Include factory- or field-installed check valve and a 72-inch- (1800-mm-) minimum, electrical power cord with plug.

J. Pump Specialty Fittings

1. Suction Diffuser: Angle pattern, 175-psig (1204-kPa) **OR** 300-psig (2060-kPa), **as directed**, pressure rating, cast **OR** ductile, **as directed**,-iron body and end cap, pump-inlet fitting; with bronze startup and bronze or stainless-steel permanent strainers; bronze or stainless-steel straightening vanes; drain plug; and factory-fabricated support.
2. Triple-Duty Valve: Angle or straight pattern, 175-psig (1204-kPa) **OR** 300-psig (2060-kPa), **as directed**, pressure rating, cast **OR** ductile, **as directed**,-iron body, pump-discharge fitting; with drain plug and bronze-fitted shutoff, balancing, and check valve features. Brass gage ports with integral check valve, and orifice for flow measurement.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Concrete Bases

1. Install concrete bases of dimensions indicated for pumps and controllers. Refer to Division 23 Section "Common Work Results For Hvac"
  - a. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around full perimeter of base.
  - b. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - c. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - d. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
2. Cast-in-place concrete materials and placement requirements are specified in Division 31.

B. Pump Installation

1. Comply with HI 1.4 **OR** HI 2.4, **as directed**.
2. Install pumps with access for periodic maintenance including removal of motors, impellers, couplings, and accessories.
3. Independently support pumps and piping so weight of piping is not supported by pumps and weight of pumps is not supported by piping.
4. Install continuous-thread hanger rods and elastomeric hangers **OR** spring hangers **OR** spring hangers with vertical-limit stop, **as directed**, of sufficient size to support pump weight. Vibration isolation devices are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Hvac Piping And Equipment". Fabricate brackets or supports as required. Hanger and support materials are specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers And Supports For Hvac Piping And Equipment".
5. Suspend vertically mounted, in-line centrifugal pumps independent of piping. Install pumps with motor and pump shafts vertical. Use continuous-thread hanger rods and elastomeric hangers **OR** spring hangers **OR** spring hangers with vertical-limit stop, **as directed**, of sufficient size to support pump weight. Vibration isolation devices are specified in Division 21 Section(s) "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Fire-suppression Piping And Equipment" AND Division 23 Section(s) "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Hvac Piping And Equipment". Hanger and support materials are specified in Division 22 Section(s) "Hangers And Supports For Plumbing Piping And Equipment" AND Division 23 Section(s) "Hangers And Supports For Hvac Piping And Equipment".



6. Set base-mounted pumps on concrete foundation. Disconnect coupling before setting. Do not reconnect couplings until alignment procedure is complete.
  - a. Support pump baseplate on rectangular metal blocks and shims, or on metal wedges with small taper, at points near foundation bolts to provide a gap of 3/4 to 1-1/2 inches (19 to 38 mm) between pump base and foundation for grouting.
  - b. Adjust metal supports or wedges until pump and driver shafts are level. Check coupling faces and suction and discharge flanges of pump to verify that they are level and plumb.
7. Automatic Condensate Pump Units: Install units for collecting condensate and extend to open drain.

C. Alignment

1. Align pump and motor shafts and piping connections after setting on foundation, grout has been set and foundation bolts have been tightened, and piping connections have been made.
2. Comply with pump and coupling manufacturers' written instructions.
3. Adjust pump and motor shafts for angular and offset alignment by methods specified in HI 1.1-1.5, "Centrifugal Pumps for Nomenclature, Definitions, Application and Operation" **OR** HI 2.1-2.5, "Vertical Pumps for Nomenclature, Definitions, Application and Operation", **as directed**.
4. After alignment is correct, tighten foundation bolts evenly but not too firmly. Completely fill baseplate with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout while metal blocks and shims or wedges are in place. After grout has cured, fully tighten foundation bolts.

D. Connections

1. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 21. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
2. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
3. Connect piping to pumps. Install valves that are same size as piping connected to pumps.
4. Install suction and discharge pipe sizes equal to or greater than diameter of pump nozzles.
5. Install check valve and throttling **OR** triple-duty, **as directed**, valve on discharge side of pumps.
6. Install Y-type strainer **OR** suction diffuser, **as directed**, and shutoff valve on suction side of pumps.
7. Install flexible connectors on suction and discharge sides of base-mounted pumps between pump casing and valves.
8. Install pressure gages on pump suction and discharge, at integral pressure-gage tapping, or install single gage with multiple input selector valve.
9. Install check valve and gate or ball valve on each condensate pump unit discharge.
10. Install electrical connections for power, controls, and devices.
11. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
12. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".

END OF SECTION 22 11 23 23a



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
22 11 23 23	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 22 12 19 00 - SURFACE WATER-STORAGE TANKS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for surface water-storage tanks. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes welded-steel reservoirs and standpipes for storage of domestic and fire-suppression water.
2. This Section includes bolted-steel reservoirs and standpipes for storage of domestic and fire-suppression water.
3. This Section includes wire- or strand-wound, concrete, surface water-storage tanks for storage of domestic and fire-suppression water.
4. This Section includes circular, prestressed-concrete, surface water-storage tanks for storage of domestic and fire-suppression water.

#### C. Definitions

1. Reservoir: Flat-bottomed, cylindrical, surface water-storage tank with shell height equal to or less than its diameter.
2. Standpipe: Flat-bottomed, cylindrical, surface water-storage tank with shell height greater than its diameter.
3. CR: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic rubber.
4. NR: Natural rubber.
5. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. Structural Performance: Surface water-storage tank, including structural reinforcement and foundation, shall be capable of withstanding the effects of dead and live gravity loads and winds of 100 mph (161 km/h).
2. Seismic Performance: Surface water-storage tank, including structural reinforcement and foundation, shall be capable of withstanding the effects of earthquake motions determined according to authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Thermal Movements: Surface water-storage tank, including structural reinforcement and foundation, shall allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base engineering calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
  - a. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: Include rated capacities, accessories, appurtenances, and furnished specialties for each surface water-storage tank indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details for each surface water-storage tank, including the following:
  - a. Tank, roof, and shell openings.
  - b. Safety railings and ladders.
  - c. Plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.



- d. Structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- e. Power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Welding certificates.
4. Bacteriological test results.
5. Field quality-control test reports.
6. Operation and Maintenance Data: For the following to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals:
  - a. Obstruction lighting.
  - b. Lightning protection.
  - c. Cathodic protection.
  - d. Tank heaters.

#### F. Quality Assurance

1. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - a. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
  - b. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."
  - c. AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code--Reinforcing Steel."
2. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
4. Comply with AWWA D100, "Welded Steel Tanks for Water Storage," and with AWWA M42, "Steel Water-Storage Tanks," for welded-steel, surface water-storage tanks.
5. Comply with AWWA D103, "Factory-Coated Bolted Steel Tanks for Water Storage," and with AWWA M42, "Steel Water-Storage Tanks," for bolted-steel, surface water-storage tanks.
6. Comply with AWWA D110, "Wire- and Strand-Wound, Circular, Prestressed Concrete Water Tanks," for concrete, surface water-storage tanks with steel diaphragm.
7. Comply with AWWA D110, "Wire- and Strand-Wound, Circular, Prestressed Concrete Water Tanks," for cast-in-place-concrete, surface water-storage tanks with vertical prestressed reinforcement.
8. Comply with AWWA D115, "Circular Prestressed Concrete Water Tanks with Circumferential Tendons," for concrete, surface water-storage tanks with circumferential tendons.
9. Comply with NFPA 22, "Water Tanks for Private Fire Protection," for surface water-storage tanks for fire-suppression water supply.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Welded-Steel Reservoirs/Standpipes

1. Description: Welded-steel plates, bolts, rods, and reinforcing steel; designed and fabricated according to AWWA D100, AWWA M42, and NFPA 22 (if tank is for fire-suppression water supply).
  - a. Capacity: 50,000 gal. (189 cu. m) **OR** 5,000,000 gal. (18 930 cu. m), **as directed**.
  - b. Shell Roof (if self-supporting roof is required): Conical **OR** Dome **OR** Ellipsoidal, **as directed**, welded steel and self-supporting.
  - c. Shell Roof (if supported roof is required): Conical with knuckle and column-rafter support.
  - d. Reservoir Shell Diameter: as directed by the Owner.
  - e. Standpipe Shell Height: Height, as directed by the Owner from top of foundation to lower capacity **OR** overflow, **as directed**, level.
  - f. Range of Head: Height, as directed by the Owner from lower capacity level to overflow level.
  - g. Pipe Connection: Match size of water-distribution pipe.





- h. Overflow Piping: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Grade B, Schedule 40, welded-steel pipe with ASTM A 234/A 234M, Grade WPB, Schedule 40, carbon-steel butt-weld fittings.
  - i. Roof Hatch: Steel, hinged cover, 24 by 15 inches (600 by 380 mm) minimum with 4-inch (100-mm) neck and 2-inch (50-mm) downward overlap with hasp and lock, located over interior ladder and adjacent to exterior ladder.
  - j. Roof Manhole: Steel, removable, 20-inch- (500-mm-) minimum-diameter cover with 4-inch (100-mm) neck and 2-inch- (50-mm-) downward overlap with hasp and lock. Construct opening with capability of supporting ventilation fan.
  - k. Shell Sidewall Manholes: Two, steel, circular, 24 inches (600 mm) in diameter **OR** elliptical, 18 by 22 inches (450 by 560 mm) minimum, **as directed**.
  - l. Painter's Accessories: Include lugs **OR** couplings **OR** rail, **as directed**, inside and outside tank for painting.
  - m. Tank Vent: Steel pipe with stainless-steel screen, constructed to prevent entrance of rain, insects, birds, and animals. Include pressure-vacuum screened vent or separate pressure-vacuum relief mechanism to maintain clear screen, **as directed**.
  - n. Foundation: Reinforced concrete. Refer to Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
- B. Bolted-Steel Reservoirs/Standpipes
- 1. Description: Bolted-steel plates, bolts, rods, and reinforcing steel; designed and fabricated according to AWWA D100, AWWA M42, and NFPA 22 (if tank is for fire-suppression water supply).
    - a. Capacity: 4000 gal. (15 cu. m) **OR** 160,000 gal. (605 cu. m), **as directed**.
    - b. Shell Roof: Comply with AWWA D103.
    - c. Reservoir Shell Diameter: as directed by the Owner.
    - d. Standpipe Shell Height: Height, as directed by the Owner from top of foundation to lower capacity **OR** overflow, **as directed**, level.
    - e. Range of Head: Height, as directed by the Owner from lower capacity level to overflow level.
    - f. Pipe Connection: Match size of water-distribution pipe.
    - g. Overflow Piping: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Grade B, Schedule 40, welded-steel pipe with ASTM A 234/A 234M, Grade W.B., Schedule 40, carbon-steel butt-weld fittings.
    - h. Roof Hatch: Steel, hinged cover, 24 by 15 inches (600 by 380 mm) minimum with 4-inch (100-mm) neck and 2-inch (50-mm) downward overlap with hasp and lock, located over interior ladder and adjacent to exterior ladder.
    - i. Roof Manhole: Steel, removable, 20-inch- (500-mm-) minimum-diameter cover with 4-inch (100-mm) neck and 2-inch- (50-mm-) downward overlap with hasp and lock. Construct opening with capability of supporting ventilation fan.
    - j. Shell Sidewall Manholes: Two, steel, circular, 24 inches (600 mm) in diameter **OR** elliptical, 18 by 22 inches (450 by 560 mm) minimum, **as directed**.
    - k. Painter's Accessories: Include lugs **OR** couplings **OR** rail, **as directed**, inside and outside tank for painting.
    - l. Tank Vent: Steel pipe with stainless-steel screen, constructed to prevent entrance of rain, insects, birds, and animals. Include pressure-vacuum screened vent or separate pressure-vacuum relief mechanism to maintain clear screen, **as directed**.
    - m. Foundation: Reinforced concrete. Refer to Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
- C. Wire- Or Strand-Wound, Concrete, Surface Water-Storage Tanks
- 1. Comply with AWWA D110 and NFPA 22 (if tank is for fire-suppression water supply).
  - 2. Tank Capacity: 100,000 gal. (379 cu. m) **OR** 40,000,000 gal. (151 400 cu. m), **as directed**.
  - 3. Tank Height: as directed by the Owner.
  - 4. Tank Wall Diameter: as directed by the Owner.
  - 5. Tank Floor: Reinforced, cast-in-place concrete.
  - 6. Tank Wall (for cast-in-place concrete with vertical prestressed reinforcement):
    - a. Materials: Cast-in-place concrete, with at least 7 sacks of portland cement to 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m) of concrete sand in mixer and with vertical prestressed reinforcement. Superplasticizers are prohibited.



- b. Wall-Base Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Class 25, Type S, Grade P or NS, polyurethane.
  - c. Threadbars: Hot-dip galvanized steel, 1.25 to 1.375 inches (31 to 35 mm) in diameter.
  - d. Wire: Hot-dip galvanized.
7. Tank Wall (for shotcrete with steel diaphragm):
- a. Materials: Shotcrete, with at least 10 sacks of portland cement to 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m) of concrete sand in mixer. Include steel diaphragm. Air-entrainment admixtures and superplasticizers are prohibited.
  - b. Wall-Base Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Class 25, Type S, Grade P or NS, polyurethane.
  - c. Diaphragm: Galvanized-steel sheet, at least 0.017 inch (0.43 mm) thick, complying with ASTM A 924/A 924M. Height of sheet shall be same as wall height.
  - d. Diaphragm Sealants: ASTM C 920, Type M, polysulfide; ASTM C 920, Class 25, Type M, Grade P or NS, polyurethane; or ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type III, Grade 1, epoxy or double-fold vertical joints with mechanical seamer.
  - e. Wire: Hot-dip galvanized.
8. Tank Wall (for precast concrete with steel diaphragm):
- a. Materials: Precast concrete, with at least 7 sacks of portland cement to 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m) of concrete sand in mixer and with vertical prestressed reinforcement. Include steel diaphragm. Superplasticizers are prohibited.
  - b. Wall-Base Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Class 25, Type S, Grade P or NS, polyurethane.
  - c. Diaphragm: Galvanized-steel sheet, at least 0.017 inch (0.43 mm) thick, complying with ASTM A 924/A 924M. Height of sheet shall be same as wall height.
  - d. Diaphragm Sealants: ASTM C 920, Type M, polysulfide; ASTM C 920, Class 25, Type M, Grade P or NS, polyurethane; or ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type III, Grade 1, epoxy or double-fold vertical joints with mechanical seamer.
  - e. Wire: Hot-dip galvanized.
9. Tank Wall (for cast-in-place concrete with steel diaphragm):
- a. Materials: Cast-in-place concrete, with at least 7 sacks of portland cement to 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m) of concrete sand in mixer and with vertical prestressed reinforcement. Include steel diaphragm. Superplasticizers are prohibited.
  - b. Wall-Base Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Class 25, Type S, Grade P or NS, polyurethane.
  - c. Diaphragm: Galvanized-steel sheet, at least 0.017 inch (0.43 mm) thick, complying with ASTM A 924/A 924M. Height of sheet shall be same as wall height.
  - d. Diaphragm Sealants: ASTM C 920, Type M, polysulfide; ASTM C 920, Class 25, Type M, Grade P or NS, polyurethane; or ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type III, Grade 1, epoxy or double-fold vertical joints with mechanical seamer.
  - e. Wire: Hot-dip galvanized.
10. Domed Tank Roof: Reinforced, cast-in-place **OR** precast **OR** shotcrete, **as directed**, concrete, with at least 7 sacks of portland cement to 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m) of concrete sand in mixer. Air-entrainment admixtures are permitted. Superplasticizers are prohibited.
11. Flat Tank Roof: Reinforced, cast-in-place **OR** precast, **as directed**, concrete, with at least 7 sacks of portland cement to 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m) of concrete sand in mixer. Air-entrainment admixtures are permitted. Superplasticizers are prohibited.
12. Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A 767/A 767M, Grade 60 (Grade 240), zinc-coated billet steel bars.
13. Waterstops: Ribbed, PVC, 6 and 9 inches wide by 3/8 inch (150 and 225 mm wide by 10 mm) thick.
14. Bearing Pads:
- a. Material: NR **OR** ASTM D 2240, CR, with durometer hardness of 40 to 50, **as directed**.
  - b. Minimum Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm) under walls and 1/2 inch (13 mm) under roof.
  - c. Minimum Width: 3 inches (75 mm) under walls and 2 inches (50 mm) under roof.
15. Sponge Filler: ASTM D 1056, Types 2A1 through 2A4, closed-cell CR; or ASTM D 1752, Type I, sponge rubber.
16. Bolts, Nuts, Washers, and Expansion Sleeve Inserts: Stainless steel.
17. Construction and Maintenance Hatch: Aluminum **OR** Galvanized-steel, **as directed**, frame and cover at least 3/16 inch (5 mm) thick, 48-by-48-inch- (1200-by-1200-mm-) minimum-size, hinged



- cover with a 4-inch (100-mm) neck and 2-inch (50-mm) downward overlap and having a hasp and lock. Locate top of hatch above grade, **as directed**.
18. Personnel Hatch: Aluminum **OR** Galvanized-steel, **as directed**, frame and cover at least 3/16 inch (5 mm) thick, 30-inch- (760-mm-) minimum, square hinged cover with a 4-inch (100-mm) neck and 2-inch (50-mm) downward overlap and having a hasp and lock. Construct opening with capability of supporting ventilation fan. Locate top of hatch above grade, **as directed**.
  19. Tank Vents: Fiberglass **OR** Galvanized-steel, **as directed**, pipe with aluminum **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, screen, constructed to prevent entrance of rain, insects, birds, and animals. Include pressure-vacuum screened vent or separate pressure-vacuum relief mechanism to maintain clear screen, **as directed**.
  20. Tank Interior Surface Sealer: Cementitious coating modified with acrylic or styrene-acrylic based polymer.
- D. Circular, Prestressed-Concrete, Surface Water-Storage Tanks
1. Comply with AWWA D115 and NFPA 22 (if tank is for fire-suppression water supply).
  2. Tank Capacity: 100,000 gal. (379 cu. m) **OR** 40,000,000 gal. (151 400 cu. m), **as directed**.
  3. Tank Height: as directed by the Owner.
  4. Tank Wall Diameter: as directed by the Owner.
  5. Tank Floor: Reinforced, cast-in-place concrete.
  6. Tank Wall:
    - a. Materials: Cast-in-place concrete, with at least 7 sacks of portland cement to 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m) of concrete sand in mixer and with vertical prestressed reinforcement. Superplasticizers are prohibited.
    - b. Wall-Base Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Class 25, Type S, Grade P or NS, polyurethane.
    - c. Wire: Hot-dip galvanized.
  7. Domed Tank Roof: Reinforced, cast-in-place **OR** precast **OR** shotcrete, **as directed**, concrete, with at least 7 sacks of portland cement to 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m) of concrete sand in mixer. Air-entrainment admixtures are permitted. Superplasticizers are prohibited.
  8. Flat Tank Roof: Reinforced, cast-in-place **OR** precast, **as directed**, concrete, with at least 7 sacks of portland cement to 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m) of concrete sand in mixer. Air-entrainment admixtures are permitted. Superplasticizers are prohibited.
  9. Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A 767/A 767M, Grade 60 (Grade 240), zinc-coated billet steel bars.
  10. Waterstops: Ribbed, PVC, 6 and 9 inches wide by 3/8 inch (150 and 225 mm wide by 10 mm) thick.
  11. Bearing Pads:
    - a. Material: NR **OR** ASTM D 2240, CR, with durometer hardness of 40 to 50, **as directed**.
    - b. Minimum Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm) under walls and 1/2 inch (13 mm) under roof.
    - c. Minimum Width: 3 inches (75 mm) under walls and 2 inches (50 mm) under roof.
  12. Sponge Filler: ASTM D 1056, Types 2A1 through 2A4, closed-cell CR; or ASTM D 1752, Type I, sponge rubber.
  13. Bolts, Nuts, Washers, and Expansion Sleeve Inserts: Stainless steel.
  14. Construction and Maintenance Hatch: Aluminum **OR** Galvanized-steel, **as directed**, frame and cover at least 3/16 inch (5 mm) thick, 48-by-48-inch- (1200-by-1200-mm-) minimum-size, hinged cover with a 4-inch (100-mm) neck and 2-inch (50-mm) downward overlap and having a hasp and lock. Locate top of hatch above grade, **as directed**.
  15. Personnel Hatch: Aluminum **OR** Galvanized-steel, **as directed**, frame and cover at least 3/16 inch (5 mm) thick, 30-inch- (760-mm-) minimum, square hinged cover with a 4-inch (100-mm) neck and 2-inch (50-mm) downward overlap and having a hasp and lock. Construct opening with capability of supporting ventilation fan. Locate top of hatch above grade, **as directed**.
  16. Tank Vents: Fiberglass **OR** Galvanized-steel, **as directed**, pipe with aluminum **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, screen, constructed to prevent entrance of rain, insects, birds, and animals. Include pressure-vacuum screened vent or separate pressure-vacuum relief mechanism to maintain clear screen, **as directed**.
  17. Tank Interior Surface Sealer: Cementitious coating modified with acrylic or styrene-acrylic based polymer.



- E. Paint Materials
1. Paint: Comply with AWWA D102.
  2. Primer: Tank fabricator's standard epoxy-polyamide paint.
  3. Tank Shell Interior Finish Paint: Tank fabricator's standard epoxy-polyamide paint complying with NSF 61 and compatible with prime coat.
  4. Tank Shell Exterior Intermediate Paint: Tank fabricator's standard, two-component epoxy paint compatible with prime and finish paint. Intermediate coat shall have a slight color contrast with finish coat.
  5. Tank Shell Exterior Finish Paint: Tank fabricator's standard urethane paint.
    - a. Color: As selected by the Owner from tank manufacturer's paint chart.
- F. Shop Painting
1. Factory coating according to AWWA D103.
  2. Tank Shell Interior Finish Coat: Comply with NSF 61.
  3. Tank Shell Exterior Finish Coat: Factory coating according to AWWA D103.
- G. Surface Water-Storage Tank Appurtenances
1. Water-Level Controls: Automatic controls for maintaining water level in tank, with valves, piping, and audible and visual alarms to indicate the following:
    - a. High- and low-water levels.
    - b. Tank overflowing or tank not filling.
  2. Obstruction Lighting: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Lightning Protection: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Lightning Protection For Structures".
  4. Cathodic Protection: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Cathodic Protection" and with AWWA D104.
  5. Tank Heaters: Comply with NFPA 22 and with capacity to maintain 42 deg F (6 deg C) water temperature inside surface water-storage tank.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Steel, Surface Water-Storage Tank Installation
1. Erect tank shell, accessories, and appurtenances according to AWWA D100 and AWWA M42.
  2. Fabricate steel plate sections in the shop (for welded-steel, surface water-storage tanks). Erect tank shell by welding plate sections in the field.
  3. Fabricate tank sections and drill or punch bolt holes in the shop (for bolted-steel, surface water-storage tanks). Install bolts during field erection of tank.
  4. Set top of reinforced-concrete foundation at least 6 inches (150 mm) above finish grade.
  5. Install roof hatch near exterior ladder.
  6. Install roof manhole near center of roof.
  7. Install tank vent at center of roof.
  8. Install two manholes in tank wall near grade.
- B. Concrete, Surface Water-Storage Tank Installation
1. Tank Wall (for wire- or strand-wound, prestressed-concrete, surface water-storage tanks): Construct tank wall and install accessories and appurtenances according to AWWA D110 and the following:
    - a. Construct cast-in-place **OR** Erect precast, **as directed**, core wall with steel diaphragm. Install solid neoprene bearing pad and 9-inch- (225-mm-) wide waterstop between wall and wall footing.
    - b. Install steel diaphragm. Apply shotcrete to interior of diaphragm to form core wall.
      - 1) Seal vertical joints in diaphragm with polysulfide, polyurethane, or epoxy sealant; or double-fold with a mechanical seamer.



- 2) Sand blast exterior of core wall to provide a well-pitted surface free from curing compounds, laitance, and form oils. Use 1.5 lb (7.3 kg) of silica sand (No. 16 grit) per square foot (meter) of surface area.
  - 3) After sandblasting, wind wires or strands around exterior of core wall separating wires by at least 2.5 wire diameters or 3/8 inch (10 mm) to ensure that mortar will be located between wires. Do not install wires at horizontal level of pipe penetrations.
  - 4) After installation of wires or strands, apply at least 3 coats of wet-mix shotcrete to exterior of tank wall in layers of at least 3/8 inch (10 mm) thick for a minimum total thickness of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Apply shotcrete when temperature range is at least 35 deg F (2 deg C) and rising to a maximum temperature of 95 deg F (35 deg C). Do not apply shotcrete if temperature is 40 deg F (5 deg C) and falling.
  - 5) Fill voids in wall-to-base joint and seal around waterstops, base pads, and sponge fillers with polyurethane filler.
2. Tank Wall (for circular, prestressed-concrete, surface water-storage tanks): Construct tank wall and install accessories and appurtenances according to AWWA D115 and the following:
- a. Install vertical prestressed wall with threadbars and screw nut anchors.
  - b. Sand blast exterior of core wall to provide well-pitted surface free from curing compounds, laitance, and form oils. Use 1.5 lb (7.3 kg) of silica sand (No. 16 grit) per square foot (meter) of surface area.
  - c. Apply at least 3 coats of wet-mix shotcrete to exterior of tank wall in layers of at least 3/8 inch (10 mm) thick for a minimum total thickness of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Apply shotcrete when temperature range is at least 35 deg F (2 deg C) and rising to a maximum temperature of 95 deg F (35 deg C). Do not apply shotcrete if temperature is 40 deg F (5 deg C) and falling.
3. Floor: Reinforced, cast-in-place concrete. Slope floor 1.0 to 1.5 percent from highest point to water outlet pipe. Pour monolithically without cold joints and provide mechanical float finish.
4. Dome Roof: Install reinforced, cast-in-place concrete with circumferential prestressing. Place 6-inch (150-mm) waterstop between roof and wall if backfill level is within 6 inches (150 mm) of top of tank wall.
- a. Install curb on roof perimeter with at least 6 downspouts spaced 60 degrees and no more than 50 feet (15 m) apart.
5. Flat Slab Roof: Install reinforced, cast-in-place concrete with drop panels and support having reinforced, cast-in-place concrete columns. Place solid neoprene bearing pads and 6-inch (150-mm) waterstop (if backfill level is within 6 inches (150 mm) of top of tank wall) between roof and wall. If voids are present between wall and roof after use of solid bearing pads, fill voids with closed-cell CR pads and soft mastic.
- a. Install curb on roof perimeter with at least 6 downspouts spaced 60 degrees and no more than 50 feet (15 m) apart.
6. Install construction and maintenance hatch near wall **OR** ladder, **as directed**.
7. Install ventilators at highest point of roof. Install others where indicated.
- C. Connections
1. Piping installation requirements are specified in Division 21 OR Division 22. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
  2. Connect tanks to water-distribution piping.
  3. Connect drains to storm-drainage piping.
  4. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
  5. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".
- D. Surface Preparation Of Steel Tanks
1. Field Cleaning: After erecting tank shell, remove burrs, dirt, and construction debris and repair damaged finishes. Remove weld splatter, sharp edges on weld seams, and scabs and slivers by grinding. Remove weld flux, slag, fins, and laminations.



2. Field Surface Preparation: After field cleaning, prepare steel surfaces where shop prime coat has been damaged, according to Specifications listed above for shop cleaning, and remove dust or residue from cleaned surfaces.
3. If surface develops rust before prime coat is applied, repeat field surface preparation.

#### E. Field Painting

1. Apply paint according to AWWA D102.
2. Prime-Coat Touchup: Apply primer to cleaned areas and where shop finish has been damaged during shipping, handling, and erection. Apply prime coat to a dry film thickness of 3.0 to 5.0 mils (0.08 to 0.13 mm) for tank interior and to a dry film thickness of 2.0 to 3.0 mils (0.05 to 0.08 mm) for exterior tank and support surfaces.
3. Tank Shell Interior Finish Coats: Apply 2 coats of interior finish paint above bottom ring to a dry film thickness of 4.0 to 5.0 mils (0.1 to 0.13 mm). Apply interior finish paint to surfaces below bottom ring to a dry film thickness of 8.0 to 10.0 mils (0.2 to 0.25 mm).
4. Tank Shell and Steel Support Exterior Coats: Apply intermediate paint to a dry film thickness of 2.0 to 3.0 mils (0.05 to 0.08 mm). Apply finish paint to a dry film thickness of 2.0 to 3.0 mils (0.05 to 0.08 mm).
5. Concrete tanks do not require painting **OR** Paint concrete, surface water-storage tanks according to Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
6. Tank Exterior Lettering and Logo, **as directed**, (for all surface water-storage tanks): Apply one coat **OR** two coats, **as directed**, of urethane paint to a dry film thickness of 2.0 to 3.0 mils (0.05 to 0.08 mm) for each application.
7. Overflow Pipe: Paint pipe exterior that is outside tank and structure as indicated for tank exterior.
8. Exterior Ladders: Paint as indicated for tank shell exterior.
9. Do not paint if ambient temperature is less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) or is expected to drop below 40 deg F (5 deg C) in the next 18 hours. Do not paint if temperature of steel surface is higher than 125 deg F (52 deg C). Do not apply paint if surfaces are wet or damp, if precipitation is expected, or if relative humidity will exceed 85 percent. Do not spray paint when wind velocity exceeds 15 mph (24 km/h). Maintain at least a 24-hour waiting period between coats. Provide adequate ventilation in tank during painting to maintain clear atmosphere and provide explosion-proof flood lighting and spot lighting.
10. Complete daily painting to allow time for paint to dry before condensation is expected.

#### F. Surface Water-Storage Tank Appurtenance Installation

1. Install and adjust water-level control valves, piping, and alarms.
2. Install obstruction lighting according to authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Install lightning protection according Division 26 Section "Lightning Protection For Structures".
4. Install cathodic protection according to Division 26 Section "Cathodic Protection" and AWWA D104.
5. Install tank heaters according to NFPA 22.

#### G. Field Quality Control

1. Testing: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform the following field quality-control testing:
  - a. Tank Weld Test: Use radiographic method according to AWWA D100. Repair failures and retest.
  - b. Leak Test (for welded-steel, surface water-storage tanks): Comply with AWWA D100 and NFPA 22 (if tank is for fire-suppression water supply). Fill tanks with potable water and test for leaks after installation. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
    - 1) Water will be furnished by the Owner.
  - c. Leak Test (for bolted-steel, surface water-storage tanks): Comply with AWWA D103 and NFPA 22 (if tank is for fire-suppression water supply). Fill tanks with potable water and test for leaks after installation. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
    - 1) Water will be furnished by the Owner.
  - d. Leak Test (for concrete, surface water-storage tanks): Comply with AWWA D110, AWWA D115 and NFPA 22 (if tank is for fire-suppression water supply). Fill tanks with



potable water and test for leaks after installation. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

1) Water will be furnished by the Owner.

e. Test and adjust controls and safeties (for all surface water-storage tanks). Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

2. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

H. Cleaning

1. Clean interior and exterior of surface water-storage tanks.

2. Disinfect surface water-storage tanks according to AWWA C652 **OR** requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, **as directed**.

END OF SECTION 22 12 19 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





## SECTION 22 12 19 00a - POTABLE-WATER STORAGE TANKS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for potable-water storage tanks. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes potable-water storage tanks and related accessories for indoor installation.

#### C. Definitions

1. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
2. HDPE: High-density polyethylene plastic.
3. LDPE: Low-density polyethylene plastic.
4. PE: Polyethylene plastic.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of potable-water storage tank indicated.
2. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification
3. Source quality-control test reports.
4. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification, **as directed**.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. ASME Compliance for Steel Tanks: Fabricate and label steel, potable-water storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, where indicated.
2. ASME Compliance for FRP Tanks: Fabricate and label FRP, potable-water storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section X, where indicated.
3. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic potable-water storage tanks and components. Include appropriate NSF marking.
4. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components--Health Effects, Sections 1 to 9," for potable-water storage tanks. Include appropriate NSF marking.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Steel, Pressure, Potable-Water Storage Tanks

1. Description: Steel, horizontal **OR** vertical, **as directed**, pressure-rated tank with cylindrical sidewalls.
2. Fabricate supports and attachments to tank with reinforcement strong enough to resist tank movement during seismic event when tank supports are anchored to building structure.
3. Construction: ASME code, steel **OR** Steel, **as directed**, constructed with nontoxic welded joints, for 125-psig (860-kPa) **OR** 150-psig (1035-kPa), **as directed**, working pressure.
4. Manhole: Watertight, for tank more than 36 inches (915 mm) in diameter; same pressure rating as tank.
5. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, welded to tank before testing and labeling.
  - a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: ASME B1.20.1, with female thread.
  - b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: ASME B16.5, flanged.
6. Specialties and Accessories: Include pressure relief valve; pressure gage; thermometer; air-charging connection; and gage glass, brass fittings, compression stops, and gage-glass guard.



7. Horizontal Tank Supports: Factory-fabricated steel saddles, welded to tank before testing and labeling.
  8. Vertical Tank Supports: Factory-fabricated steel legs or steel skirt, welded to tank before testing and labeling.
  9. Tank Interior Finish: Materials and thicknesses complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings. Extend finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
    - a. Lining Material: Cement **OR** Copper, **as directed**.
    - b. Coating: Epoxy resin **OR** Galvanized **OR** Glass **OR** Nickel, **as directed**.
  10. Exterior Coating: Galvanized **OR** Manufacturer's standard enamel paint **OR** Primer paint, **as directed**.
- B. Steel, Nonpressure, Potable-Water Storage Tanks
1. Description: Steel, horizontal **OR** vertical, **as directed**, nonpressure-rated tank with cylindrical sidewalls.
  2. Fabricate supports and attachments to tank with reinforcement strong enough to resist tank movement during seismic event when tank supports are anchored to building structure.
  3. Construction: Steel, constructed with nontoxic welded joints.
  4. Manhole: Watertight, for tank more than 36 inches (915 mm) in diameter.
  5. Cover for Open Tank: Plastic **OR** Steel, with lining same as or similar to tank lining and, **as directed**, with shape that encloses top of tank.
  6. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, welded to tank.
    - a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: ASME B1.20.1, with female thread.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: ASME B16.5, flanged.
  7. Specialties and Accessories: Include tappings in the tank and the following:
    - a. Vacuum relief valve.
    - b. Free air vent with insect screen.
    - c. Thermometer.
    - d. Gage glass, brass fittings, compression stops, and gage-glass guard.
  8. Horizontal Tank Supports: Factory-fabricated steel saddles, welded to tank before testing and labeling.
  9. Vertical Tank Supports: Factory-fabricated steel legs or steel skirt, welded to tank before testing and labeling.
  10. Tank Interior Finish: Materials and thicknesses complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings. Extend finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
    - a. Lining Material: Cement **OR** Copper, **as directed**.
    - b. Coating: Epoxy resin **OR** Galvanized **OR** Glass **OR** Nickel, **as directed**.
  11. Exterior Coating: Galvanized **OR** Manufacturer's standard enamel paint **OR** Primer paint, **as directed**.
- C. Steel, Floating-Wafer, Pressure, Potable-Water Storage Tanks
1. Description: Steel, vertical, pressure-rated tank with cylindrical sidewalls and with floating-wafer separator.
  2. Fabricate supports and attachments to tank with reinforcement strong enough to resist tank movement during seismic event when tank supports are anchored to building structure.
  3. Construction: ASME code, steel **OR** Steel, **as directed**, constructed with nontoxic welded joints, for 125-psig (860-kPa) **OR** 150-psig (1035-kPa), **as directed**, working pressure.
  4. Manhole: Watertight, for tank more than 36 inches (915 mm) in diameter; same pressure rating as tank.
  5. Floating Wafer: Nontoxic plastic, of diameter to match tank.
  6. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, welded to tank before testing and labeling.
    - a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: ASME B1.20.1, with female thread.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: ASME B16.5, flanged.
  7. Specialties and Accessories: Include tappings in tank and the following:
    - a. Pressure relief valve.



- b. Pressure gage.
  - c. Thermometer.
  - d. Air-charging connection.
  - e. Gage glass, brass fittings, compression stops, and gage-glass guard.
  8. Vertical Tank Supports: Factory-fabricated steel legs or steel skirt, welded to tank before testing and labeling.
  9. Tank Interior Finish: Materials and thicknesses complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings. Extend finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
    - a. Lining Material: Cement **OR** Copper, **as directed**.
    - b. Coating: Epoxy resin **OR** Galvanized **OR** Glass **OR** Nickel, **as directed**.
  10. Exterior Coating: Galvanized **OR** Manufacturer's standard enamel paint **OR** Primer paint, **as directed**.
- D. Steel, Precharged, Pressure, Potable-Water Storage Tanks
1. Steel, Precharged, Diaphragm, Pressure, Potable-Water Storage Tanks
    - a. Description: Steel, vertical, pressured-rated tank with cylindrical sidewalls and with air-charging valve and air precharge.
    - b. Fabricate supports and attachments to tank with reinforcement strong enough to resist tank movement during seismic event when tank supports are anchored to building structure.
    - c. Operation: Factory-installed, butyl-rubber diaphragm.
  2. Steel, Precharged, Bladder, Water Storage Tanks
    - a. Description: Steel, vertical, pressured-rated tank with cylindrical sidewalls and with air-charging valve and air precharge.
    - b. Fabricate supports and attachments to tank with reinforcement strong enough to resist tank movement during seismic event when tank supports are anchored to building structure.
    - c. Operation: Factory-installed, butyl-rubber bladder.
  3. Construction: ASME code, steel **OR** Steel, **as directed**, constructed with nontoxic welded joints, for 125-psig (860-kPa) **OR** 150-psig (1035-kPa), **as directed**, working pressure.
  4. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, welded to tank before testing and labeling.
    - a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: ASME B1.20.1, with female thread.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: ASME B16.5, flanged.
  5. Specialties and Accessories: Include tappings in tank and pressure gage.
  6. Vertical Tank Supports: Factory-fabricated steel legs or steel skirt, welded to tank before testing and labeling.
  7. Tank Interior Finish: Materials and thicknesses complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings. Extend finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
    - a. Lining Material: Cement **OR** Copper, **as directed**.
    - b. Coating: Epoxy resin **OR** Galvanized **OR** Glass **OR** Nickel, **as directed**.
  8. Exterior Coating: Galvanized **OR** Manufacturer's standard enamel paint **OR** Primer paint, **as directed**.
- E. Insulated, Steel, Pressure, Potable-Water Storage Tanks
1. Description: Steel, vertical, pressure-rated tank with cylindrical sidewalls.
  2. Construction: ASME code, steel **OR** Steel, **as directed**, constructed with nontoxic welded joints, for 125-psig (860-kPa) **OR** 150-psig (1035-kPa), **as directed**, working pressure.
  3. Manhole: Watertight, for tank more than 36 inches (915 mm) in diameter; same pressure rating as tank.
  4. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, welded to tank before testing and labeling.
    - a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: ASME B1.20.1, with female thread.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: ASME B16.5, flanged.
  5. Specialties and Accessories: Include pressure relief valve; pressure gage; thermometer; air-charging connection; and gage glass, brass fittings, compression stops, and gage-glass guard.
  6. Vertical Tank Supports: Factory-fabricated steel legs or steel skirt, welded to tank before testing and labeling.



7. Tank Interior Finish: Materials and thicknesses complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings. Extend finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
    - a. Lining Material: Cement **OR** Copper, **as directed**.
    - b. Coating: Epoxy resin **OR** Galvanized **OR** Glass **OR** Nickel, **as directed**.
  8. Insulation: Factory-installed, fiberglass or polyurethane foam; surrounding entire tank except connections and other openings; suitable for tank operating temperature; and complying with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
  9. Jacket: Steel, with manufacturer's standard finish, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Steel, Gravity, Nonpressure, Potable-Water Storage Tanks
1. Description: Steel, horizontal **OR** vertical, **as directed**, nonpressure-rated tank with cylindrical **OR** rectangular, **as directed**, sidewalls.
  2. Fabricate supports and attachments to tank with reinforcement strong enough to resist tank movement during seismic event when tank supports are anchored to building structure.
  3. Construction: Nonpressure rated, factory or field fabricated from ASTM A 794 steel sheets, with nontoxic welded joints.
  4. Reinforcement: ASTM A 36/A 36M, structural-steel shapes, welded to tank as required to maintain tank shape.
  5. Manhole: Watertight, for tank more than 36 inches (915 mm) in diameter **OR** wide, **as directed**.
  6. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, welded to tank.
    - a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: ASME B1.20.1, with female thread.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: ASME B16.5, flanged.
  7. Specialties and Accessories: Include tappings in tank and the following:
    - a. Vacuum relief valve.
    - b. Free air vent with insect screen.
    - c. Thermometer.
    - d. Gage glass, brass fittings, compression stops, and gage-glass guard.
  8. Horizontal Tank Supports: Factory-fabricated steel saddles or legs, welded to tank.
  9. Vertical Tank Supports: Factory-fabricated steel legs or steel skirt, welded to tank.
  10. Tank Interior Finish: Materials and thicknesses complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings. Extend finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
    - a. Lining Material: Cement **OR** Copper, **as directed**.
    - b. Coating: Epoxy resin **OR** Galvanized **OR** Glass **OR** Nickel, **as directed**.
  11. Exterior Coating: Galvanized **OR** Manufacturer's standard enamel paint **OR** Primer paint, **as directed**.
- G. Plastic, Pressure, Potable-Water Storage Tanks
1. Description: FRP, vertical, pressure-rated tank with cylindrical sidewalls.
  2. Construction: ASME code, composite FRP **OR** Composite FRP, **as directed**, contact-molded or filament-wound, thermosetting-resin tank for 100-psig (690-kPa) **OR** 125-psig (860-kPa) **OR** 150-psig (1035-kPa), **as directed**, working pressure.
    - a. Tank Lining Material: Nontoxic HDPE **OR** LDPE, **as directed**, complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tanks.
  3. Manhole: Watertight, for tank more than 36 inches (915 mm) in diameter; same pressure rating as tank.
  4. Tappings: Factory-fabricated, reinforced FRP flanged-end nozzle.
    - a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Include plastic-to-steel transition fitting from tank nozzle flange to ASME B1.20.1, female thread.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: ASME B16.5, flanged.
  5. Specialties and Accessories: Include tappings in tank and the following:
    - a. Pressure relief valve.
    - b. Pressure gage.
    - c. Thermometer.
  6. Vertical Tank Supports: Factory-fabricated steel legs or reinforced FRP skirt attached by FRP brackets to tank sidewall.



7. Tank Interior Finish: Materials and thicknesses complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings. Extend finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
- H. Plastic, Nonpressure, Potable-Water Storage Tanks
1. FRP, Potable-Water Storage Tanks:
    - a. Description: FRP, vertical, nonpressure-rated water tank; complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tanks.
    - b. Construction: ASTM D 3299, filament-wound **OR** ASTM D 4097, contact-molded, **as directed**, FRP.
    - c. Tappings: Factory-fabricated, FRP flanged-end nozzle.
      - 1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Include plastic-to-steel transition fitting from tank nozzle flange to ASME B1.20.1, female thread.
        - a) Exception: Tappings may be threaded FRP coupling integral with nozzle for connections for plastic piping.
      - 2) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged.
    - d. Vertical Tank Support: Separate factory-fabricated steel stand, capable of supporting tank.
  2. PE, Potable-Water Storage Tanks:
    - a. Description: PE, vertical, flat-bottom, nonpressure-rated water tank; complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tanks.
    - b. Construction: ASTM D 1998, molded PE.
    - c. Tappings: Factory-fabricated bulkhead fittings, attached to tank.
      - 1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: With female thread.
      - 2) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged.
    - d. Vertical Tank Support: Separate factory-fabricated steel stand, capable of supporting entire bottom of tank.
  3. Manhole: Watertight, for tank more than 36 inches (915 mm) in diameter.
  4. Cover for Open Tank: Plastic, same as or similar to tank material and with shape that encloses top of tank.
  5. Specialties and Accessories: Include vacuum relief valve; free air vent with insect screen; thermometer; and gage glass, brass fittings, compression stops, and gage-glass guard.
- I. Source Quality Control
1. Test and inspect potable-water storage tanks according to the following tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
    - a. Pressure Testing for ASME-Code, Potable-Water Storage Tanks: Hydrostatically test to ensure structural integrity and freedom from leaks. Fill tanks with water, vent air, pressurize to 1-1/2 times tank pressure rating, disconnect test equipment, hold pressure for 30 minutes with no drop in pressure, and check for leaks. Replace tanks that fail test with new tanks, and repeat until test is satisfactory.
    - b. Pressure Testing for Non-ASME-Code, Pressure, Potable-Water Storage Tanks: Hydrostatically test to ensure structural integrity and freedom from leaks at pressure of 50 psig (345 kPa) above system operating pressure, but not less than 150 psig (1035 kPa). Fill tanks with water, vent air, pressurize tanks, disconnect test equipment, hold pressure for two hours with no drop in pressure, and check for leaks. Repair or replace tanks that fail test with new tanks and repeat until test is satisfactory.
    - c. Nonpressure Testing for Potable-Water Storage Tanks: Fill tanks to water operating level to ensure structural integrity and freedom from leaks. Hold water level for two hours with no drop in water level. Repair or replace tanks that fail test with new tanks, and repeat until test is satisfactory.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Concrete Bases

1. Install concrete bases of dimensions indicated for tanks. Refer to Division 03 Section(s) "Cast-in-place Concrete" AND Division 22 Section(s) "Common Work Results For Plumbing".

**B. Installation**

1. Install water storage tanks on concrete bases, level and plumb, firmly anchored. Arrange so devices needing servicing are accessible.
  - a. Install horizontal tanks on concrete piers and factory-fabricated **OR** fabricated steel supports and, **as directed**, saddles.
2. Anchor tank supports and tanks to substrate.
  - a. Use steel or FRP straps over or around plastic tanks.
3. Install tank seismic restraints.
4. Install thermometers and pressure gages on water storage tanks and piping, if indicated. Thermometers and pressure gages are specified in Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping".
5. Install the following devices on tanks where indicated:
  - a. Pressure relief valves.
  - b. Temperature and pressure relief valves.
  - c. Vacuum relief valves.
  - d. Tank vents on nonpressure tanks.
  - e. Connections to accessories.
6. After installing tanks with factory finish, inspect finishes and repair damages to finishes.

**C. Connections**

1. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 14.. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
2. Install piping adjacent to potable-water storage tanks to allow service and maintenance.
3. Connect water piping to water storage tanks with unions or flanges and with shutoff valves. Connect tank drains with shutoff valves and discharge over closest floor drains.
  - a. General-duty valves are specified in Division 22 Section "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping".
    - 1) Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Gate or ball.
    - 2) Valves NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Gate or butterfly.
    - 3) Drain Valves: NPS 3/4 (DN 20) gate or ball valve. Include outlet with, or nipple in outlet with, ASME B1.20.7, 3/4-11.5NH thread for garden-hose service, threaded cap, and chain.
  - b. Water Piping Connections: Make connections to dissimilar metals with dielectric fittings. Dielectric fittings are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".
  - c. Connect air piping to hydropneumatic tanks with unions or flanges and gate or ball valves. Make connections to dissimilar metals with dielectric fittings, which are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".

**D. Field Quality Control**

1. Perform the following final checks before filling:
  - a. Verify that air precharge in precharged tanks is correct.
  - b. Test operation of tank accessories and devices.
  - c. Verify that pressure relief valves have correct setting.
    - 1) Manually operate pressure relief valves.
    - 2) Adjust pressure settings.
  - d. Verify that vacuum relief valves are correct size.
    - 1) Manually operate vacuum relief valves.
    - 2) Adjust vacuum settings.
2. Filling Procedures: Follow manufacturer's written procedures. Fill tanks with water to operating level.

**E. Cleaning**

1. Clean and disinfect potable-water storage tanks.



- 
2. Use purging and disinfecting procedure prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if method is not prescribed, use procedure described in AWWA C652.

END OF SECTION 22 12 19 00a



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



**SECTION 22 12 23 13 - ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC WATER HEATERS**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for electric, water heaters. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following electric water heaters:
  - a. Household, small-capacity electric water heaters.
  - b. Household, storage electric water heaters.
  - c. Household, collector-to-tank, solar-electric water heaters.
  - d. Household, collector-to-tank, heat-exchanger-coil, solar-electric water heaters.
  - e. Flow-control, instantaneous electric water heaters.
  - f. Thermostat-control, instantaneous electric water heaters.
  - g. Light-commercial electric water heaters.
  - h. Commercial electric booster heaters.
  - i. Commercial, storage electric water heaters.
  - j. Compression tanks.
  - k. Water heater accessories.

## C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type and size of water heater indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
2. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Product Data for Prerequisite EA 2: Documentation indicating that units comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 7 - "Service Water Heating."
3. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that commercial water heaters, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
5. Field quality-control test reports.
6. Operation and maintenance data.
7. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

## D. Quality Assurance

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
2. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
3. ASME Compliance: Where indicated, fabricate and label commercial water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
4. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; Sections 1 through 9," for all components that will be in contact with potable water.

## E. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of electric water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - a. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) Structural failures including storage tank and supports.



- 2) Faulty operation of controls.
- 3) Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
- b. Warranty Period(s): From date of Final Completion:
  - 1) Household Electric Water Heaters:
    - a) Storage Tank: Five **OR** Six **OR** 10, **as directed**, years.
    - b) Controls and Other Components: Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, years.
  - 2) Instantaneous Electric Water Heaters: One **OR** Two **OR** Five, **as directed**, year(s).
  - 3) Light-Commercial Electric Water Heaters:
    - a) Storage Tank: Three **OR** Five, **as directed**, years.
    - b) Controls and Other Components: Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, years.
  - 4) Commercial Electric Water Heaters:
    - a) Storage Tank: Three **OR** Five, **as directed**, years.
    - b) Controls and Other Components: Three **OR** Five, **as directed**, years.
  - 5) Compression Tanks: One year.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Household Electric Water Heaters

1. Household, Small-Capacity Electric Water Heaters: Comply with UL 174.
  - a. Storage-Tank Construction: Corrosion-resistant metal or steel with corrosion-resistant coating, **as directed**.
    - 1) Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
    - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
  - b. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
    - 1) Drain Valve: ASSE 1005, if tank has drain outlet. Provide hose-end drain valve in piping for water heaters without drain outlet. Hose-end drain valves are specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties".
    - 2) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2, **as directed**.
    - 3) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
    - 4) Heating Element: Electric, screw-in immersion type.
    - 5) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
    - 6) Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
    - 7) Power Supply Cord: 24 to 72 inches (610 to 1830 mm) with plug.
    - 8) Relief Valve: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3 for combination temperature and pressure relief valves. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
2. Household, Standard **OR** Tabletop, **as directed**, Storage Electric Water Heaters: Comply with UL 174.
  - a. Storage-Tank Construction: Steel.
    - 1) Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
    - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
  - b. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
    - 1) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
    - 2) Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
    - 3) Drain Valve: ASSE 1005.
    - 4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2, **as directed**.
    - 5) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
      - a) Standard: Cylindrical shape.



- b) Tabletop: Rectangular shape, with flat-top work surface and raised back.
  - 6) Heat Trap Fittings: Inlet type in cold-water inlet and outlet type in hot-water outlet.
  - 7) Heating Elements: Two; electric, screw-in immersion type with 12 kW or less total, and wired for nonsimultaneous operation, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 8) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat for each element.
  - 9) Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
  - 10) Relief Valve: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3 for combination temperature and pressure relief valves. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
3. Household, Collector-to-Tank, Solar-Electric Water Heaters: Comply with UL 174 with piping and electrical connections for UL 1279 solar collector system.
- a. Storage-Tank Construction: Steel.
    - 1) Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
    - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
  - b. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
    - 1) Sensor electrical connections and tank stud for sensor.
    - 2) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
    - 3) Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
    - 4) Drain Valve: ASSE 1005.
    - 5) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2, **as directed**.
    - 6) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
    - 7) Heat Trap Fittings: Inlet type in cold-water inlet and outlet type in hot-water outlet.
    - 8) Heating Element: One; electric, screw-in immersion type with 6 kW or less.
    - 9) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat for each element.
    - 10) Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
    - 11) Relief Valve: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3 for combination temperature and pressure relief valves. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
4. Household, Collector-to-Tank, Heat-Exchanger-Coil, Solar-Electric Water Heaters: Comply with UL 174 with integral coil-type heat exchanger.
- a. Storage-Tank Construction: Steel.
    - 1) Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
    - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
  - b. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
    - 1) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
    - 2) Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
    - 3) Drain Valve: ASSE 1005.
    - 4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2, **as directed**.
    - 5) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
    - 6) Heat Trap Fittings: Inlet type in cold-water inlet and outlet type in hot-water outlet.
    - 7) Heat Exchanger: Corrosion-resistant-metal immersion coil.
    - 8) Heating Element: One; electric, screw-in immersion type with 6 kW or less.
    - 9) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat for each element.
    - 10) Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
    - 11) Relief Valve: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3 for combination temperature and pressure relief valves. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater



working-pressure rating. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

#### B. Instantaneous Electric Water Heaters

1. Flow-Control, Instantaneous Electric Water Heaters: Comply with UL 499 for tankless electric (water heater) heating appliance.
  - a. Construction: Copper piping or tubing complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable water, without storage capacity.
    - 1) Connections: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
    - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) Heating Element: Resistance heating system.
    - 4) Temperature Control: Flow-control fitting.
    - 5) Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
    - 6) Jacket: Aluminum or steel with enameled finish or plastic.
  - b. Support: Bracket for wall mounting.
2. Thermostat-Control, Instantaneous Electric Water Heaters: Comply with UL 499 for tankless electric (water heater) heating appliance.
  - a. Construction: Copper piping or tubing complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable water, without storage capacity.
    - 1) Connections: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
    - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) Heating Element: Resistance heating system.
    - 4) Temperature Control: Thermostat.
    - 5) Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
    - 6) Jacket: Aluminum or steel with enameled finish or plastic.
  - b. Support: Bracket for wall mounting.

#### C. Light-Commercial Electric Water Heaters

1. Description: Comply with UL 174 for household, storage electric water heaters.
  - a. Storage-Tank Construction: Steel, vertical arrangement.
    - 1) Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
    - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
  - b. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
    - 1) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
    - 2) Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
    - 3) Drain Valve: ASSE 1005.
    - 4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2, **as directed**.
    - 5) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
    - 6) Heat Trap Fittings: Inlet type in cold-water inlet and outlet type in hot-water outlet.
    - 7) Heating Elements: Two; electric, screw-in immersion type; wired for simultaneous operation, unless otherwise indicated.
    - 8) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat for each element.
    - 9) Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
    - 10) Relief Valve: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3 for combination temperature and pressure relief valves. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
  - c. Special Requirements: NSF 5 construction with legs for off-floor installation.

#### D. Commercial Electric Water Heaters

1. Commercial Electric Booster Heaters: Comply with UL 1453 requirements for booster-type water heaters.



- a. Storage-Tank Construction: Corrosion-resistant metal **OR** Steel, **as directed**.
    - 1) Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
    - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
  - b. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
    - 1) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
    - 2) Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
    - 3) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
    - 4) Jacket: Rectangular shaped, with stainless-steel front panel, unless otherwise indicated.
    - 5) Heating Elements: Electric, screw-in or bolt-on immersion type arranged in multiples of three.
      - a) Option: Booster heaters with 9 kW or less total may have 2 or 3 elements.
      - b) Staging: Input not exceeding 18 kW per step.
    - 6) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat, to setting of at least 180 deg F (82 deg C).
    - 7) Safety Controls: High-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
    - 8) Relief Valve: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3, combination temperature and pressure relief valve. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
    - 9) Gages: Combination temperature and pressure type or separate thermometer and pressure gage.
  - c. Special Requirements: NSF 5 construction with brackets for undercounter **OR** legs for floor, **as directed**, installation.
2. Commercial, Storage Electric Water Heaters: Comply with UL 1453 requirements for storage-tank-type water heaters.
    - a. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code **OR** Non-ASME-code, **as directed**, steel horizontal **OR** vertical, **as directed**, arrangement.
      - 1) Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank and piping connections. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
        - a) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
        - b) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
      - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      - 3) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
    - b. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
      - 1) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
      - 2) Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
      - 3) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
      - 4) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
      - 5) Heating Elements: Electric, screw-in or bolt-on immersion type arranged in multiples of three.
        - a) Staging: Input not exceeding 18 kW per step.
      - 6) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
      - 7) Safety Controls: High-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
      - 8) Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3, for combination temperature and pressure relief valves. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
    - c. Special Requirements: NSF 5 construction.



- d. Building Automation System Interface: Normally closed dry contacts for enabling and disabling water heater.

E. Compression Tanks

1. Description: Steel pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
  - a. Construction:
    - 1) Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1, pipe thread.
    - 2) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
    - 3) Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.

F. Water Heater Accessories

1. Combination Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valves with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
2. Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3. Include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating.
3. Water Heater Stand and Drain-Pan Units: High-density-polyethylene-plastic, 18-inch- (457-mm-) high, enclosed-base stand complying with IAPMO PS 103 and IAS No. 2. Include integral or separate drain pan with raised edge and NPS 1 (DN 25) drain outlet with ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
4. Water Heater Stands: Water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel stand for floor mounting and capable of supporting water heater and water. Include dimension that will support bottom of water heater a minimum of 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor.
5. Water Heater Mounting Brackets: Water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel bracket for wall mounting and capable of supporting water heater and water.
6. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Include dimensions not less than base of water heater and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4 (DN 20).
7. Piping Manifold Kits: Water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated inlet and outlet piping arrangement for multiple-unit installation. Include piping and valves for field assembly that are capable of isolating each water heater and of providing balanced flow through each water heater.
8. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement according to ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2, **as directed**.
9. Water Regulators: ASSE 1003, water-pressure reducing valve. Set at 25-psig- (172.5-kPa-) maximum outlet pressure, unless otherwise indicated.
10. Shock Absorbers: ASSE 1010 or PDI WH 201, Size A water hammer arrester.

G. Source Quality Control

1. Test and inspect water heater storage tanks, specified to be ASME-code construction, according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
2. Hydrostatically test commercial, **as directed**, water heater storage tanks before shipment to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating.
3. Prepare test reports.

## 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Water Heater Installation

1. Install commercial water heaters on concrete bases.
  - a. Exception: Omit concrete bases for commercial water heaters if installation on stand, bracket, suspended platform, or direct on floor is indicated.



- b. Concrete base construction requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".
  2. Install water heaters level and plumb, according to layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
  3. Install seismic restraints for light-commercial and commercial water heaters. Anchor to substrate.
  4. Install combination temperature and pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
  5. Install combination temperature and pressure relief valves in water piping for water heaters without storage. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
  6. Install water-heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for water heaters that do not have tank drains. Refer to Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for hose-end drain valves.
  7. Install thermometer on outlet piping of water heaters. Refer to Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping" for thermometers.
  8. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping of household, collector-to-tank, solar-electric water heaters. Refer to Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping" for thermometers.
  9. Install pressure gage(s) on inlet and outlet of commercial electric water- heater piping. Refer to Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping" for pressure gages.
  10. Assemble and install inlet and outlet piping manifold kits for multiple water heaters. Fabricate, modify, or arrange manifolds for balanced water flow through each water heater. Include shutoff valve, thermometer in each water heater inlet and outlet, and throttling valve in each water heater outlet. Refer to Division 22 Section "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping" for general-duty valves and to Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping" for thermometers.
  11. Install water regulator, with integral bypass relief valve, in booster-heater inlet piping and water hammer arrester in booster-heater outlet piping.
  12. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of water heater storage tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.
  13. Fill water heaters with water.
  14. Charge compression tanks with air.
- B. Connections
  1. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 14. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
  2. Install piping adjacent to water heaters to allow service and maintenance. Arrange piping for easy removal of water heaters.
  3. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
  4. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".
- C. Field Quality Control
  1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.
  2. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
    - a. Leak Test: After installation, test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
    - b. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, confirm proper operation.
    - c. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.



- 
3. Remove and replace water heaters that do not pass tests and inspections and retest as specified above.

D. Demonstration

1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain commercial and instantaneous electric water heaters.

END OF SECTION 22 12 23 13



**SECTION 22 12 23 13a - FUEL-FIRED, DOMESTIC WATER HEATERS****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for fuel-fired water heaters. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Summary**

1. This Section includes the following fuel-fired water heaters:
  - a. Household, atmospheric, storage, gas water heaters.
  - b. Household, direct-vent, storage, gas water heaters.
  - c. Household, power-vent, storage, gas water heaters.
  - d. Instantaneous, tankless, gas water heaters.
  - e. Commercial, atmospheric, storage, gas water heaters.
  - f. Commercial, power-burner, storage, gas water heaters.
  - g. Commercial, power-vent, storage, gas water heaters.
  - h. Commercial, high-efficiency, gas water heaters.
  - i. Commercial, coil-type, finned-tube, gas water heaters.
  - j. Commercial, grid-type, finned-tube, gas water heaters.
  - k. Household, oil-fired water heaters.
  - l. Commercial, oil-fired water heaters.
  - m. Large-capacity, oil-fired water heaters.
  - n. Dual-fuel, gas and oil-fired water heaters.
  - o. Compression tanks.
  - p. Water heater accessories.

**C. Definitions**

1. LP Gas: Liquefied-petroleum fuel gas.

**D. Submittals**

1. Product Data: For each type and size of water heater indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
2. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Product Data for Prerequisite EA 2: Documentation indicating that units comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 7 - "Service Water Heating."
3. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that commercial water heaters, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment". Include the following:
5. Field quality-control test reports.
6. Operation and maintenance data.
7. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

**E. Quality Assurance**

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
2. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
3. ASME Compliance:



- a. Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
  - b. Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, finned-tube water heaters to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IV.
4. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; Sections 1 through 9" for all components that will be in contact with potable water.

#### F. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of fuel-fired water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - a. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) Structural failures including storage tank and supports.
    - 2) Faulty operation of controls.
    - 3) Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
  - b. Warranty Period(s): From date of Final Completion:
    - 1) Household, Gas Water Heaters:
      - a) Storage Tank: Five **OR** Six **OR** 10, **as directed**, years.
      - b) Controls and Other Components: Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, years.
    - 2) Instantaneous, Gas Water Heaters:
      - a) Heat Exchanger: Five years.
      - b) Controls and Other Components: Three years.
    - 3) Commercial, Gas Water Heaters:
      - a) Storage Tank: Three **OR** Five, **as directed**, years.
      - b) Controls and Other Components: Three **OR** Five, **as directed**, years.
    - 4) Oil-Fired Water Heaters:
      - a) Storage Tank: Three **OR** Five, **as directed**, years.
      - b) Burner and Controls: One **OR** Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, year(s).
      - c) Other Components: Three **OR** Five, **as directed**, years.
    - 5) Dual-Fuel Water Heaters:
      - a) Storage Tank: Three **OR** Five, **as directed**, years.
      - b) Burner and Controls: One **OR** Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, year(s).
      - c) Other Components: Three **OR** Five, **as directed**, years.
    - 6) Compression Tanks: One year.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Household, Gas Water Heaters

1. Household, Atmospheric, Storage, Gas Water Heaters: Comply with ANSI Z21.10.1/CSA 4.1.
  - a. Storage-Tank Construction: Steel.
    - 1) Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
    - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
  - b. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
    - 1) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
    - 2) Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
    - 3) Drain Valve: ASSE 1005.
    - 4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2, **as directed**.
    - 5) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
    - 6) Burner: For use with atmospheric water heaters and for natural-gas **OR** LP-gas, **as directed**, fuel.
    - 7) Automatic Ignition: ANSI Z21.20, electric, automatic, gas-ignition system.



- 8) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
  - 9) Heat Trap Fittings: Inlet type in cold-water inlet and outlet type in hot-water outlet.
  - 10) Combination Temperature and Pressure Relief Valve: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
  - c. Draft Hood: Low-profile-type, draft diverter; complying with ANSI Z21.12.
  - d. Automatic Damper: ANSI Z21.66, electrically operated **OR** mechanically activated **OR** thermally activated, **as directed**, automatic-vent-damper device with size matching draft hood.
2. Household, Direct-Vent, Storage, Gas Water Heaters: Comply with ANSI Z21.10.1/CSA 4.1.
- a. Storage-Tank Construction: Steel.
    - 1) Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
    - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
  - b. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
    - 1) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
    - 2) Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
    - 3) Drain Valve: ASSE 1005.
    - 4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2, **as directed**.
    - 5) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
    - 6) Burner: For use with direct-vent water heaters and for natural-gas **OR** LP-gas, **as directed**, fuel.
    - 7) Automatic Ignition: ANSI Z21.20, electric, automatic, gas-ignition system.
    - 8) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
    - 9) Heat Trap Fittings: Inlet type in cold-water inlet and outlet type in hot-water outlet.
    - 10) Combination Temperature and Pressure Relief Valve: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
  - c. Direct-Vent System: Through-wall **OR** Through-roof, **as directed**, coaxial- or double-channel, vent assembly with water heater manufacturers' outside intake/exhaust screen.
3. Household, Power-Vent, Storage, Gas Water Heaters: Comply with ANSI Z21.10.1/CSA 4.1.
- a. Storage-Tank Construction: Steel.
    - 1) Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
    - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
  - b. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
    - 1) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
    - 2) Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
    - 3) Drain Valve: ASSE 1005.
    - 4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2, **as directed**.
    - 5) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
    - 6) Burner: For use with power-vent water heaters and for natural-gas **OR** LP-gas, **as directed**, fuel.
    - 7) Automatic Ignition: ANSI Z21.20, electric, automatic, gas-ignition system.
    - 8) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
    - 9) Heat Trap Fittings: Inlet type in cold-water inlet and outlet type in hot-water outlet.
    - 10) Combination Temperature and Pressure Relief Valve: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
  - c. Power-Vent System: Exhaust fan, interlocked with burner.



B. Instantaneous, Gas Water Heaters

1. Description: Comply with ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3, except storage is not required.
  - a. Construction: Copper piping or tubing complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable water, without storage capacity.
    - 1) Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
    - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) Heat Exchanger: Copper tubing.
    - 4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2, **as directed**.
    - 5) Burner: For use with tankless water heaters and for natural-gas **OR** LP-gas, **as directed**, fuel.
    - 6) Automatic Ignition: Manufacturer's proprietary system for automatic, gas ignition.
    - 7) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
    - 8) Jacket: Metal with enameled finish or plastic.
  - b. Support: Bracket for wall mounting.

C. Commercial, Gas Water Heaters

1. Commercial, Atmospheric, Storage, Gas Water Heaters: Comply with ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3.
  - a. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code **OR** Non-ASME-code, **as directed**, steel with 150-psig (1035-kPa) working-pressure rating.
    - 1) Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
      - a) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
      - b) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
    - 2) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
    - 3) Lining: Cement **OR** Glass **OR** Nickel plate **OR** Phenolic coating **OR** Sheet copper, **as directed**, complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining into and through tank fittings and outlets.
  - b. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
    - 1) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
    - 2) Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
    - 3) Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
    - 4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1. Surround entire storage tank except connections and controls.
    - 5) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
    - 6) Burner: For use with atmospheric water heaters and for natural-gas **OR** LP-gas, **as directed**, fuel.
    - 7) Automatic Ignition: ANSI Z21.20, electric, automatic, gas-ignition system.
    - 8) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
    - 9) Safety Controls: Automatic, high-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
    - 10) Combination Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
  - c. Special Requirements: NSF 5 construction.
  - d. Draft Hood: Draft diverter; complying with ANSI Z21.12.
  - e. Automatic Damper: ANSI Z21.66, electrically operated **OR** mechanically activated **OR** thermally activated, **as directed**, automatic-vent-damper device with size matching draft hood.
  - f. Building Automation System Interface: Normally closed dry contacts for enabling and disabling water heater.
2. Commercial, Power-Burner, Storage, Gas Water Heaters: Comply with ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3.



- a. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code **OR** Non-ASME-code, **as directed**, steel with 150-psig (1035-kPa) working-pressure rating.
    - 1) Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
      - a) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
      - b) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
    - 2) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
    - 3) Lining: Cement **OR** Glass **OR** Nickel plate **OR** Phenolic coating **OR** Sheet copper, **as directed**, complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining into and through tank fittings and outlets.
  - b. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
    - 1) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
    - 2) Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
    - 3) Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
    - 4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1. Surround entire storage tank except connections and controls.
    - 5) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
    - 6) Combination Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
  - c. Burner: Comply with UL 795 for power-burner water heaters and for natural-gas **OR** LP-gas, **as directed**, fuel.
    - 1) Automatic Ignition: ANSI Z21.20, electric, automatic, gas-ignition system.
  - d. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
  - e. Safety Controls: Automatic, high-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
  - f. Special Requirements: NSF 5 construction.
  - g. Draft Hood: Draft diverter; complying with ANSI Z21.12.
  - h. Building Automation System Interface: Normally closed dry contacts for enabling and disabling water heater.
3. Commercial, Power-Vent, Storage, Gas Water Heaters: Comply with ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3.
    - a. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code **OR** Non-ASME-code, **as directed**, steel with 150-psig (1035-kPa) working-pressure rating.
      - 1) Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
        - a) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
        - b) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
      - 2) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
      - 3) Lining: Cement **OR** Glass **OR** Nickel plate **OR** Phenolic coating **OR** Sheet copper, **as directed**, complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining into and through tank fittings and outlets.
    - b. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
      - 1) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
      - 2) Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
      - 3) Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
      - 4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1. Surround entire storage tank except connections and controls.
      - 5) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.



- 6) Burner: For use with power-vent water heaters and for natural-gas **OR** LP-gas, **as directed**, fuel.
  - 7) Automatic Ignition: ANSI Z21.20, electric, automatic, gas-ignition system.
  - 8) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
  - 9) Safety Controls: Automatic, high-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
  - 10) Combination Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Include one or more relief valve with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
  - c. Special Requirements: NSF 5 construction.
  - d. Power-Vent System: Exhaust fan, interlocked with burner.
  - e. Building Automation System Interface: Normally closed dry contacts for enabling and disabling water heater.
4. Commercial, High-Efficiency, Gas Water Heaters: Comply with ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3.
- a. Description: Manufacturer's proprietary design to provide at least 84 **OR** 85 **OR** 88 **OR** 95, **as directed**, percent combustion efficiency at optimum operating conditions. Following features and attributes may be modified or omitted if water heater otherwise complies with requirements for performance.
  - b. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code steel with 150-psig (1035-kPa) minimum working-pressure rating.
    - 1) Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
      - a) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
      - b) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
    - 2) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
    - 3) Lining: Cement **OR** Glass **OR** Nickel plate **OR** Phenolic coating **OR** Sheet copper, **as directed**, complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining into and through tank fittings and outlets.
  - c. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
    - 1) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
    - 2) Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
    - 3) Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
    - 4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1. Surround entire storage tank except connections and controls.
    - 5) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
    - 6) Combination Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
  - d. Burner or Heat Exchanger: Comply with UL 795 or approved testing agency requirements for high-efficiency water heaters and for natural-gas **OR** LP-gas, **as directed**, fuel.
  - e. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
  - f. Safety Controls: Automatic, high-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
  - g. Building Automation System Interface: Normally closed dry contacts for enabling and disabling water heater.
  - h. Draft Hood: Draft diverter; complying with ANSI Z21.12.
5. Commercial, Coil-Type, Finned-Tube, Gas Water Heaters: Comply with ANSI Z21.13 for hot-water boilers.
- a. Description: Packaged unit with boiler, storage tank, pump, piping, and controls.



- b. Boiler Construction: ASME code with 160-psig (1100-kPa) working-pressure rating for hot-water-boiler-type water heater.
    - 1) Heat Exchanger: Helix or spiral, finned-copper-tube coils with bronze headers.
    - 2) Connections: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with boiler. Attach to boiler before testing.
      - a) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
      - b) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
  - c. Boiler Appurtenances:
    - 1) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1. Surround entire boiler except connections and controls.
    - 2) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
    - 3) Burner: For use with coil-type, finned-tube water heaters and for natural-gas **OR** LP-gas, **as directed**, fuel.
    - 4) Temperature Control: Adjustable, storage tank temperature-control fitting and flow switch, interlocked with circulator and burner.
    - 5) Safety Control: Automatic, high-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
    - 6) Automatic Ignition: Intermittent electronic ignition complying with ANSI Z21.20.
  - d. Building Automation System Interface: Normally closed dry contacts for enabling and disabling water heater.
  - e. Support: Steel base or skids.
  - f. Draft Hood: Draft diverter; complying with ANSI Z21.12.
  - g. Automatic Damper: ANSI Z21.66, electrically operated **OR** mechanically activated **OR** thermally activated, **as directed**, automatic-vent-damper device with size matching draft hood.
  - h. Hot-Water Storage Tank: Connected with piping to circulating pump and water heater.
    - 1) Construction: According to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, steel with 150-psig (1035-kPa) **OR** 125-psig (860-kPa), **as directed**, working-pressure rating.
    - 2) Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
      - a) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
      - b) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
    - 3) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
    - 4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1. Surround entire storage tank except connections and controls.
    - 5) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
    - 6) Anode Rods: Factory installed, magnesium.
    - 7) Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005, factory installed.
    - 8) Combination Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
  - i. Circulating Pump: UL 778, all-bronze, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, separately coupled, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3. Include mechanical seals, 125-psig (860-kPa) minimum working-pressure rating, and 225 deg F (107 deg C) continuous-water-temperature rating.
  - j. Piping: Copper tubing; copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed or flanged joints.
  - k. Mounting: Water heater, tank, and accessories factory mounted on skids.
6. Commercial, Grid-Type, Finned-Tube, Gas Water Heaters: Comply with ANSI Z21.13 for hot-water boilers.
- a. Description: Packaged unit with boiler, storage tank, pump, piping, and controls.



- b. Boiler Construction: ASME code with 160-psig (1100-kPa) working-pressure rating for hot-water-boiler-type water heater.
  - 1) Heat Exchanger: Horizontal, straight, finned-copper tubes with bronze headers.
  - 2) Connections: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with boiler. Attach to boiler before testing.
    - a) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
    - b) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
- c. Boiler Appurtenances:
  - 1) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1. Surround entire boiler except connections and controls.
  - 2) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
  - 3) Burner: For use with grid-type, finned-tube water heaters and for natural-gas **OR** LP-gas, **as directed**, fuel.
  - 4) Temperature Control: Adjustable, storage tank temperature-control fitting and flow switch, interlocked with circulator and burner.
  - 5) Safety Control: Automatic, high-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
  - 6) Automatic Ignition: Intermittent electronic ignition complying with ANSI Z21.20.
- d. Building Automation System Interface: Normally closed dry contacts for enabling and disabling water heater.
- e. Support: Steel base or skids.
- f. Draft Hood: Draft diverter; complying with ANSI Z21.12.
- g. Automatic Damper: ANSI Z21.66, electrically operated **OR** mechanically activated **OR** thermally activated, **as directed**, automatic-vent-damper device with size matching draft hood.
- h. Hot-Water Storage Tank: Connected with piping to circulating pump and water heater.
  - 1) Construction: According to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, steel with 150-psig (1035-kPa) **OR** 125-psig (860-kPa), **as directed**, working-pressure rating.
  - 2) Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
    - a) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
    - b) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
  - 3) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
  - 4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1. Surround entire storage tank except connections and controls.
  - 5) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
  - 6) Anode Rods: Factory installed, magnesium.
  - 7) Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005, factory installed.
  - 8) Combination Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
- i. Circulating Pump: UL 778, all-bronze, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, separately-coupled, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3. Include mechanical seals, 125-psig (860-kPa) minimum working-pressure rating, and 225 deg F (107 deg C) continuous-water-temperature rating.
- j. Piping: Copper tubing; copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed or flanged joints.
- k. Mounting: Water heater, tank, and accessories factory mounted on skids.

#### D. Oil-Fired Water Heaters





1. Household, Oil-Fired Water Heaters: Comply with UL 732 for storage water heaters.
  - a. Storage-Tank Construction: Steel.
    - 1) Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
    - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
  - b. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
    - 1) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
    - 2) Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
    - 3) Drain Valve: ASSE 1005.
    - 4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2, **as directed**.
    - 5) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
    - 6) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
    - 7) Heat Trap Fittings: Inlet type in cold-water inlet and outlet type in hot-water outlet.
    - 8) Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3, for combination temperature and pressure relief valves. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
  - c. Oil Burner: Comply with UL 296 for use with No. 2 fuel oil.
  - d. Draft Regulator: Barometric type or adjustable-damper device.
2. Commercial, Oil-Fired Water Heaters: Comply with UL 732 for storage water heaters.
  - a. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code **OR** Non-ASME-code, **as directed**, steel with 150-psig (1035-kPa) minimum working-pressure rating.
    - 1) Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
      - a) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
      - b) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
    - 2) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
    - 3) Lining: Cement **OR** Glass **OR** Nickel plate **OR** Phenolic coating **OR** Sheet copper, **as directed**, complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining into and through tank fittings and outlets.
  - b. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
    - 1) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
    - 2) Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
    - 3) Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
    - 4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2, **as directed**.
    - 5) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
    - 6) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
    - 7) Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3, for combination temperature and pressure relief valves. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
  - c. Oil Burners: Comply with UL 296 for use with No. 2 fuel oil.
  - d. Safety Control: Automatic, high-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
  - e. Draft Regulator: Barometric type or adjustable-damper device.
  - f. Building Automation System Interface: Normally closed dry contacts for enabling and disabling water heater.
3. Large-Capacity, Oil-Fired Water Heaters: Comply with UL 732 for storage water heaters except when capacity is greater than 120 gal. (454 L).
  - a. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code steel with 150-psig (1035-kPa) minimum working-pressure rating.



- 1) Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
  - a) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
  - b) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
- 2) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
- 3) Lining: Cement **OR** Glass **OR** Nickel plate **OR** Phenolic coating **OR** Sheet copper, **as directed**, complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining into and through tank fittings and outlets.
- b. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
  - 1) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
  - 2) Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
  - 3) Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
  - 4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2, **as directed**.
  - 5) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
  - 6) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
  - 7) Safety Control: Automatic, high-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
  - 8) Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3, for combination temperature and pressure relief valves. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
- c. Oil Burner: Comply with UL 296 for use with No. 2 fuel oil.
- d. Safety Controls: Automatic, high-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
- e. Draft Regulator: Barometric type or adjustable-damper device.
- f. Building Automation System Interface: Normally closed dry contacts for enabling and disabling water heater.

#### E. Dual-Fuel Water Heaters

1. Description: Comply with ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3 or UL 732 requirements appropriate for dual-fuel, gas and oil-fired water heaters.
  - a. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code steel with 150-psig (1035-kPa) minimum working-pressure rating.
    - 1) Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
      - a) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
      - b) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
    - 2) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
    - 3) Lining: Cement **OR** Glass **OR** Nickel plate **OR** Phenolic coating **OR** Sheet copper, **as directed**, complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining into and through tank fittings and outlets.
  - b. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
    - 1) Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
    - 2) Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
    - 3) Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
    - 4) Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2, **as directed**.
    - 5) Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
    - 6) Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.



- 7) Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3, for combination temperature and pressure relief valves. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
  - c. Dual-Fuel Burners: Combination gas-oil burner assembly, complying with appropriate requirements of UL 795; or comply with UL 296 for oil burners for No. 2 fuel oil and UL 795 for natural-gas **OR** LP-gas, **as directed**, fuel.
  - d. Safety Control: Automatic, high-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
  - e. Vent Connection: According to standards of authorities having jurisdiction for dual-fuel water heaters.
  - f. Building Automation System Interface: Normally closed dry contacts for enabling and disabling water heater.
- F. Compression Tanks
1. Description: Steel, pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed, butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
    - a. Construction:
      - 1) Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
      - 2) Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
      - 3) Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.
- G. Water Heater Accessories
1. Gas Shutoff Valves: ANSI Z21.15/CGA 9.1, manually operated. Furnish for installation in piping.
  2. Gas Pressure Regulators: ANSI Z21.18, appliance type. Include pressure rating, capacity, and pressure differential required between gas supply and water heater.
  3. Gas Automatic Valves: ANSI Z21.21, appliance, electrically operated, on-off automatic valve.
  4. Combination Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves: Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select each relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
    - a. Gas Water Heaters: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4.
    - b. Oil-Fired Water Heaters: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3.
  5. Pressure Relief Valves: Include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of water heater.
    - a. Gas Water Heaters: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4.
    - b. Oil-Fired Water Heaters: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3.
  6. Water Heater Stand and Drain Pan Units: High-density-polyethylene-plastic, 18-inch- (457-mm-) high, enclosed-base stand complying with IAPMO PS 103 and IAS No. 2. Include integral or separate drain pan with raised edge and NPS 1 (DN 25) drain outlet with ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
  7. Water Heater Stands: Water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel stand for floor mounting and capable of supporting water heater and water. Provide dimension that will support bottom of water heater a minimum of 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor.
  8. Water Heater Mounting Brackets: Water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel bracket for wall mounting and capable of supporting water heater and water.
  9. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Provide dimensions not less than base of water heater and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4 (DN 20).
  10. Piping Manifold Kits: Water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated inlet and outlet piping arrangement for multiple-unit installation. Include piping and valves for field assembly that is capable of isolating each water heater and of providing balanced flow through each water heater.
  11. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement according to ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2, **as directed**.
- H. Source Quality Control



1. Test and inspect water heater storage tanks, specified to be ASME-code construction, according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
2. Hydrostatically test commercial water heater storage tanks before shipment to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating.
3. Prepare test reports.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Water Heater Installation

1. Install commercial water heaters on concrete bases.
  - a. Exception: Omit concrete bases for commercial water heaters if installation on stand, bracket, suspended platform, or direct on floor is indicated.
  - b. Concrete base construction requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".
2. Install water heaters level and plumb, according to layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
3. Install seismic restraints for commercial water heaters. Anchor to substrate.
4. Install gas water heaters according to NFPA 54.
5. Install gas shutoff valves on gas supplies to gas water heaters without shutoff valves.
6. Install gas pressure regulators on gas supplies to gas water heaters without gas pressure regulators if gas pressure regulators are required to reduce gas pressure at burner.
7. Install automatic gas valves on gas supplies to gas water heaters, if required for operation of safety control.
8. Install oil-fired water heaters according to NFPA 31.
9. Install combination temperature and pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend commercial-water-heater, relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
10. Install combination temperature and pressure relief valves in water piping for water heaters without storage. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
11. Install water heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for water heaters that do not have tank drains. Refer to Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for hose-end drain valves.
12. Install thermometer on outlet piping of water heaters. Refer to Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping" for thermometers.
13. Install pressure gage(s) on inlet and outlet piping of commercial, fuel-fired water heater piping. Refer to Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping" for pressure gages.
14. Assemble and install inlet and outlet piping manifold kits for multiple water heaters. Fabricate, modify, or arrange manifolds for balanced water flow through each water heater. Include shutoff valve and thermometer in each water heater inlet and outlet, and throttling valve in each water heater outlet. Refer to Division 22 Section "General-duty Valves For Plumbing Piping" for general-duty valves and to Division 22 Section "Meters And Gages For Plumbing Piping" for thermometers.
15. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of water heater storage tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.
16. Fill water heaters with water.
17. Charge compression tanks with air.

#### B. Connections



1. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 14. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
  2. Install piping adjacent to water heaters to allow service and maintenance. Arrange piping for easy removal of water heaters.
  3. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
  4. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".
- C. Field Quality Control
1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.
  2. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
    - a. Leak Test: After installation, test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
    - b. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, confirm proper operation.
    - c. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  3. Remove and replace water heaters that do not pass tests and inspections and retest as specified above.
- D. Demonstration
1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain instantaneous and commercial water heaters.

END OF SECTION 22 12 23 13a



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 22 12 23 26 - UNDERGROUND STORAGE TANKS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of underground storage tanks. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Intent of Work

1. It is the intent of this specification to ensure that the work, as completed, shall meet or exceed all applicable codes, ordinances, rules and regulations of every authority having jurisdiction in the area.
2. The installation shall include all necessary equipment, controls, valves and fittings, excavation, backfill as described or called for on the plans. In some cases, the Contractor shall prepare the plans. In any case, the Contractor shall obtain all permits at its expense.
3. The Contractor shall install equipment in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Where drawings (if any) and specification conflict with manufacturer's recommendations, it shall be the Contractor's responsibility to bring this to the attention of the Owner before installation.
4. The overall intent shall be that the Contractor shall provide everything required to make a complete and operational job in every respect.

#### C. Codes And Standards

1. Reference is to the latest edition of the code or standard unless otherwise noted. Comply with the latest EPA requirements.
2. The codes and standards referred to are the minimum standards. Where the requirements of these specifications and the accompanying drawings (if any) exceed those of the codes and standards, the drawings and specifications shall supersede.
3. The installation shall conform to provisions of the NFPA requirement with latest amendments.
4. The entire installation including all equipment shall conform to The Occupational and Safety Health Act of 1970, and all EPA regulations.

- #### D. Visit To Site: Bidders are advised to visit the site and carefully examine the existing conditions before submitting bids, as no allowance will be made for lack of knowledge of existing conditions where such conditions may reasonably be determined by observation.

#### E. Permits

1. Obtain all permits required for the installation of this work and pay all fees in connection therewith. Permits and fees involved in removal of any item from the site shall be included.
2. Provide copies of inspection and testing certificates from all agencies and authorities having jurisdiction.

#### F. Layout Basis

1. The layout, which must be stamped by an Engineer registered in the State in which the Project is located, is based upon the use of particular items of equipment, identified by manufacturer's make and model number. Dimensions, arrangements, efficiency and service connections required for these particular items have been considered in making the layout. Contractor shall submit any deviations proposed with its bid.
2. The Contractor may use the equipment of any manufacturer listed as approved for substitution provided they have the proper connections, capacities, efficiency and dimensions. Variances from the requirements stated herein shall be sustainable reasons for disapproval of the submitted equipment. All costs arising from variances in substituted items shall be paid for by the Contractor.



3. Equivalent products by other manufacturers must be submitted to the the Owner for prior approval at least ten (10) days prior to bid date.

#### G. Submittals

1. All submittals shall bear a stamp or notation indicating that the Contractor has reviewed the submittals for compliance with drawings, governing authorities and specifications.
2. All submittals shall bear sufficient notations to clearly indicate the specific make, model number, accessories, capacities, options, and specification paragraph numbers.
3. All submittals shall indicate complete compliance with all performance and specification requirements as herein specified and/or indicated or shall specifically list any exceptions. Exceptions shall be subject to approval by the the Owner.
4. The review (by the the Owner) of equipment does not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility for compliance with the contract documents or authorities as specified.
5. Contractor shall coordinate electrical characteristics of equipment with electrical specifications and the available power characteristics.
6. Materials requiring shop drawing submittals shall not be installed prior to shop drawings being reviewed by the the Owner. The Contractor agrees that failure to conform to the above may result in removal of all installed materials that have been disapproved from the project. Installation of specified equipment will be mandatory. Removal of disapproved equipment shall be at the sole expense of the Contractor.
7. Submit the following for review via shop drawings (to be approved or disapproved):
  - a. Xerxes or approved equal, double wall (do not unload manually). Size and capacity.
  - b. Bury depth.
  - c. Bed and backfill (not over 7'-0" traffic and no traffic).
  - d. Double walls when continuous vacuum pump and monitor are used require a maximum burial depth of three (3) feet from tank top to grade.
  - e. When not subjected to traffic loads, use 24" backfill or 12" minimum backfill plus 4" re-bar reinforced concrete on top.
  - f. When subjected to traffic loads, use 36" backfill or 18" minimum backfill plus 6" of re-bar reinforced concrete.
  - g. If tank is 12'-0" in diameter (actually, 7'-11" is manufactured for large gallonage) then, no traffic shall be provided with 42" minimum cover, or 38" backfill plus 4" re-bar reinforced concrete. With traffic, use 38" backfill plus 6" of asphalt or 6" of re-bar reinforced concrete.
  - h. Monitoring fittings, fiberglass reservoir, vapor sensor 4" tank fittings, tank fill tube insert, venting, stage two vapor recovery system, manway and manway extensions, manway risers, site monitoring wells, barricades, installation check list, hydrostatic tank monitoring.
  - i. Job site safety precautions.
  - j. Reservoir fiberglass sensor.
  - k. Reservoir leak detection.
  - l. Electronic control panels, sensor circuit, transmission contact switch power source circuit, alarm bell, alarm bell silence button, control panel false alarms, etc.
  - m. Piping sump bottom, usually 28 3/8" x 30".
  - n. Flex connectors to piping.
  - o. Unions, nipples, manway cover, FRP fitting, opening for stage II vapor recovery line if required.
  - p. 3" pipe sump fitting.
  - q. When using piping sump sensor equal to Owens Corning fiberglass model PSS, submit system including electrical power supply and signal wiring.
  - r. Control panel equal to Owens Corning fiberglass model SB-0011B (single circuit) or SB-0014B (4 circuit) as applicable.
  - s. Fiberglass pipe and fittings equal to "Ameron" type Dualoy 3000/L pressure rated and with chemically resistant epoxy resin for the service intended. The Dualoy 3000/L shall be a secondary containment system. No other product piping will be acceptable.

#### H. Guarantee





1. Contractor shall guarantee that if any materials or workmanship covered by these specifications proves defective within one (1) year, such defects shall be corrected by the Contractor at once without charge to the Owner.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS:

### A. Single-Wall Fiberglass Underground Storage Tanks

1. The tank shall comply with the following governing standards:
  - a. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL) Standard 1316. A UL certification plate shall be attached to each tank.
  - b. National Sanitation Foundation Standard, NSF Standard 61.
  - c. ANSI/AWWA D120-02 Thermosetting Fiberglass-Reinforced Plastic Tanks.
  - d. Military Specification No. MIL-T-52777(A)
2. The Contractor shall provide and install the "fiberglass" underground storage tanks. Tanks shall be as manufactured by Xerxes Corporation, Minneapolis, MN or approved equal as judged by the Owner. Follow manufacturer's instructions for installation and testing.
3. Loading Conditions: Tank shall meet the following design criteria:
  - a. Internal Load: Tank shall be designed to withstand a 5-psig air-pressure test with 5:1 safety factor. When tank is designed for on-site testing, contractor shall individually test tank for leakage prior to installation. Maximum test pressure is 5 psig (3 psig for a 12-foot diameter tank).
  - b. Vacuum Test: Tanks 10-foot diameter and smaller shall be designed to withstand a vacuum test to 11.5 inches of mercury.
  - c. Surface Loads: Tank shall withstand surface H-20 axle loads when properly installed according to tank manufacturer's current Installation Manual and Operating Guidelines.
  - d. External Hydrostatic Pressure: Tank shall be capable of being buried in ground with 7 feet of overburden over the top of the tank, the hole fully flooded and a safety factor of 5:1 against general buckling.
  - e. Tank shall support accessory equipment- such as internal pump platforms, drop/fill tubes, submersible pumps and ladders- when installed according to tank manufacturer's current Installation Manual and Operating Guidelines.
4. Product Storage:
  - a. Tank shall be capable of storing water products with specific gravity up to 1.1.
  - b. Tank shall be vented to atmospheric pressure.
  - c. Tank shall be capable of storing products identified in the manufacturer's current standard limited warranty.
5. Materials:
  - a. Tank shall be manufactured with 100% resin and glass-fiber reinforcement No sand fillers.
  - b. The laminate materials used in the internal coating system of a portable water tank shall conform to the requirements of NSF Standard 61.
  - c. Tank Dimensions: as directed by the Owner.
6. Manways (Required for Potable Water Tanks): Shall be flanged and 22-inch I.D. **OR** 30-inch I.D (for larger tanks), **as directed**, complete with gasket, bolting hardware and cover. Optional manway extensions shall be FRP.

### B. Double-Wall Fiberglass Underground Storage Tanks

1. The Contractor shall provide and install the "fiberglass" underground storage tanks of the specified volume and diameter.
2. The tank shall be of fiberglass. Tank laminates shall be constructed of 100% resin and fiberglass reinforcements without sand fillers. Ribs are to be integrally cast into tank body. Tanks shall bear the listing mark of Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. Tank shall have an annular space between the primary and secondary shell walls to allow for free flow and containment of all leaked product from primary tank. This space shall be filled at the factory with a brine solution for hydrostatic monitoring. Tanks shall be as manufactured by Xerxes Corporation, Minneapolis, MN or approved equal as judged by the Owner.



3. The tank shall comply with the following governing standards:
    - a. ASTM Standard Document No. 4021-81
    - b. Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. (UL.) File #MH-9061 (N) for underground storage of flammable liquids. A UL certification plate shall be attached to each tank.
    - c. Military Specification No. MIL-T-52777(A)
    - d. Factory Mutual Systems approval J.I. IG4AO.AF
    - e. National Sanitation Foundation, Standard 14
    - f. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA-30), (NFPA-30A) Flammable and Combustible Liquid Code and (NFPA-31) Standard for Installation of Oil Burning Equipment.
  4. The tank shall be capable of the following loading conditions:
    - a. Internal load: Tank shall withstand 5 psi air pressure test with 5 to 1 safety factor. Contractor shall test prior to installation as this is to test for leakage. Maximum test pressure is 5 psi.
    - b. Vacuum Test: Every tank shall be tested to 11.5 inches (primary tank) and 9.5 inches (secondary tank) mercury vacuum by the tank manufacturer to assure structural integrity.
    - c. Surface Loads: Tank shall withstand surface H-20 axle load when properly installed according to current manufacturer's installation instruction (32,000 lbs.).
    - d. External hydrostatic pressure: Tank shall withstand 7' of overburden with the hole fully flooded with 7:1 safety factor against buckling.
  5. Provide glass fiber-reinforced plastic straps for the tank shown. Provide number and location of straps as specified by the manufacturer. Each strap shall be capable of withstanding the buoyancy load of 25,000 lbs. for 8' tank diameter. Straps shall be standard as supplied by the tank manufacturer. A concrete pad or concrete deadman must be used with anchor straps as recommended by tank manufacturer.
  6. The Contractor shall provide fiberglass piping sump with fittings as indicated. The piping sump shall be manufactured by Xerxes Corporation or approved equal and supplied with tanks.
    - a. The piping sump shall be installed so that it is suitable for monitoring the double-wall piping system and containment of its product. Piping sump shall be located on tanks 22" minimum manway.
  7. All tank fittings shall be standard (proofed tight) as supplied by the tank manufacturer. The tank shall have an opening for one each of the following:
    - a. Fill/Manual Gauging
    - b. Vent/Overfill/Stage One Vapor Recovery
    - c. Pump (pressure system) or supply and return (suction system)
    - d. In tank gauging automatic inventory control
    - e. Others as shown or required by the operating agency
  8. The tank shall have a factory filled brine interstitial and reservoir for continuous monitoring of both inner and outer walls.
  9. Tank to be installed per manufacturer installation instructions which will be inspected as it progresses.
- C. Spill Protection
1. Universal model 70CD, or approved equal, spill containment shall be used as containment basin for spills during filling. A manual valve, if so required, shall be used to return any spilled product back to tank.
- D. Overfill Prevention
1. Universal model 37, or approved equal, float valve is to be used for overfill prevention. The automatic shut off device must stop the flow of product being delivered when tank is 90% full. Access must be provided.
- E. Stage One Vapor Recovery
1. Stage one vapor recovery is incorporated into the access assembly of the overfill prevention access way. See drawing for details. (Less than 10,000 gals per month through flow)



- F. Stage Two Vapor Recover
1. Piping for stage two vapor recovery will be installed for future use. Required for gasoline motor fuel only. (More than 10,000 gales per month through flow)
- G. Tank Trim
1. Surface manholes shall have all cast iron rim and minimum 10" galvanized steel skirt. Tank trim shall have Universal Valve.
- H. Submersible Turbine Pump Specifications
1. General Pump Specifications: The pump shall be designed to pump gasoline, diesel, kerosene and jet fuel. The entire pumping assembly shall have UL listing and shall meet all requirements of UL79. The pump discharge head and manifold assembly shall be manufactured from ASTM A 48 Class 30 grey iron. The pump shall be available in 1/3, 3/4, and 1-1/2 hp sizes and shall be manufactured to the proper length as determined by the tank diameter, type of tank, and bury depth. The pump motor shall have a thermal over current overload protector with automatic reset. The pump motor assembly shall be clearly marked with pertinent information including Model, Horsepower, Voltage, Phase, and Manufacturer. The pump motor shall be a permanent split phase capacitor type, and shall incorporate a 15 mfd capacitor. The pumping unit shall not incorporate any flexible diaphragms and all sealing shall be accomplished with "o" ring or UL recognized fiber gaskets. The pump shall have a removable intake screen with openings no greater than 3/32 inch. The pump shall be manufactured by FE Petro, Inc., McFarland, WI. or approved equal as judged by the the Owner.
  2. Installation and Maintenance Specifications: The pump shall have a two-wire field connection and an easy access ground wire terminal, and shall incorporate a wire seal plug which will accommodate three wires. The pump shall incorporate a port for line pressure testing that shall be sealed with a 1/4 NPT pipe plug. The pump unit shall have a fully extractable head in order to permit removal of the pump motor assembly without disturbing the discharge piping or the electrical wiring. The product in the pipelines shall be held in place by a line check valve that shall have a minimum sealing of 170 lbs when the pump is not running. The line check valve shall be independent of the removable head and shall be easily accessible. The removal of the extractable portion of the pump shall not disturb product in the pipelines downstream of the check valve. During the removal of the extractable portion of the pump, product contained in the discharge manifold of the pump shall drain automatically into the storage tank. The pump motor shall be interchangeable by horsepower with different manufacturers' product.
  3. Operation Specifications: The pump shall have an air/vapor elimination system that returns air or vapors to the underground storage tank through a tube discharging near the top of the pump motor assembly. The pump unit shall contain a built-in expansion relief valve that relieves pressure above pumping pressure but below 50 psi. The pump motor shall utilize the product being pumped for lubrication of the motor bearings and for cooling the stator, and this fluid shall discharge into the underground storage tank at the top of the motor. The pump shall have siphon capability built into the pump as standard.
- I. Piping System
1. All piping fittings and adhesives shall be UL listed made of fiberglass double wall. Pipe shall be in compliance with ASTM D 2996 and classified by designation code RTRP-11AF-3111. Pipe shall be filament wind of continuous glass filament. Pipe must have a minimum bend radius of 50 feet on 2" primary (80 feet on 3" secondary) to allow settling of tank. Pipe shall have maximum tensile loads of 1160 lbs, compressive loads 2210 lbs at 75 degrees Fahrenheit on 2" primary. 3" pipe shall have tensile load of 2020 lbs at 75 degrees and compressive loads of 3850 lbs. Pipe to be factory proof tested at 1000 psig-2", 700 psig-3". Pipe shall be Smith Fiberglass Red thread II, or approved equal as judged by the Owner.
  2. Vent piping shall not have secondary containment. Vent shall not be sloped less than 1/4" per foot downward to tank.
  3. Product piping shall have secondary containment. Product piping shall not be sloped less than 1/8" per foot downward toward tank.
  4. All piping must slope back toward tank.



5. All piping must be installed as per manufacturer installation instructions. the Owner shall monitor each installation daily.

J. Leak Detection

1. Tank shall have a Pullulert FD241RRA, or approved equal, float probe mounted on the brine filled hydrostatic reservoir. The system shall monitor both the inner and outer walls of the tank.
  - a. Alarm Conditions:
    - 1) Hydrocarbons in hydrostatic reservoir
    - 2) A loss of fluid in reservoir
2. Piping shall have a Pollulert FD241RRA, or approved equal, float probe mounted in the piping sump. System shall monitor the piping sump compartment that has to be designed to catch any leaked product from the primary piping system. This probe shall distinguish the difference between water and hydrocarbons and alarm on any one or both conditions.
3. Remote monitoring piping sumps shall be installed only if piping can not be sloped toward tank. The Contractor shall use as many remote monitoring piping sumps as needed to assure that all sections of piping are monitored. All monitoring sumps shall have a Pollulert FD241RRA or approved equal probe for leak detection.
4. Control panel shall have probe status for wet, dry, or hydrocarbon. Alarm conditions are to be selectable. Control panel must have installed relay or provision for installing relays for remote alarms. Control panel shall have both visual and audible alarm. System shall have a two year warranty from date of manufacture. Ground water probes shall be adjustable 1/8" to 2" for product detection. Probes shall be wired by a single cable run. Systems must be UL listed for Class 1, Division 1, Group D locations and meet all existing EPA regulations. Leak detection shall be Pollulert systems or approved equal.
5. Submersible pump shall have a mechanical in-line leak detector with a free floating check valve. Leak detector shall be vaporless LD2000 or approved equal.

K. In Tank Gauging System

1. Gauging system shall provide inventory management designed to continuously monitor underground storage tanks. System must provide information on inventory, delivery of fuel, and product through-put. System must measure fuel levels, water level and fuel temperature. This is to ensure proper compensated level readings. System shall have five temperature sensors, two floats, one for product level, one for water interface. System shall have a 48 character LCD display and internal thermal printer. System shall utilize a magnetostrictive probe and have visual, audible alarm with automatic printout. The system shall be designed to have 16 input on/off devices, RS232 port full duplex with adjustable baud rate. Tank gauging system shall be Pollulert system or approved equal.

L. Test For Pipe

1. Test of the piping system shall be made per manufacturer's recommendations.
2. Furnish the Owner with a certificate stating that all piping has been tested as specified and has been shown to be tight.
3. The piping systems may be tested in sections if necessary, but a final test may be required of the entire piping system at the completion of the system. The final test shall be made while pipe is exposed to view where possible.
4. Both primary and secondary pipe must be tested.

M. Test For Tank

1. Pre-installation: All Xerxes or approved equal tanks shall be tested prior to shipment, but it is required that all tanks be tested by the Contractor prior to installation. After installation and before final backfilling to grade, the tank must be retested to assure that no damage occurred during installation.
2. Hose/Valve Assembly: In order to test the tank, the hose/valve assembly must be connected from the reservoir to a service fitting. The hose/valve assembly will already be connected from the reservoir to a service fitting when the tank is shipped. If the hose/valve assembly is not connected



- when the tank is delivered, contact the Customer Service Representative at the Xerxes or other plant nearest you, before attempting to test the tank.
3. Primary (Internal) Tank Test: Prior to installation, check to see that all service and monitor fittings are plugged and tightened, except the service fitting with a temporary plastic plug. Close the valve on the hose/valve assembly. Remove the temporary plastic plug and connect the pressure source to the service fitting. Pressure test the primary (internal) tank to 5 psig for 60 minutes.
  4. Secondary (External) Tank Test:
    - a. CAUTION: Never pressurize the secondary tank or (annular space) without connecting it to the primary tank. The secondary tank and primary tank will be properly connected if the hose/valve assembly is in place as shipped. Failure to have the secondary tank and primary tank properly connected could potentially result in tank failure and personal injury, and will void all warranties.
    - b. While the primary tank is still under pressure, open the valve on the hose/valve assembly until the pressure stabilizes. Once the pressure has stabilized, either add or subtract air pressure to stabilize the pressure at 5 psig. Observe the tank for any liquid on the exterior surface and check the gauge at the pressure source for any drop in pressure.
    - c. After completing the test, relieve the pressure at the source.
- N. Product Dispenser
1. A fiberglass containment box shall be installed with each product dispenser. Containment box shall be as manufactured by Petro Fiberglass or approved equal. Double wall pipe shall terminate inside containment box. A flex connector as manufactured by Dana Everflex or approved equal shall be used to connect product pipe to the shear valve within the containment box. The shear valve shall be air tested at the factory and shall not lose its seal when its top is removed for service. Shear valve shall be Universal model 521 or approved equal. Each product dispensing hose shall be equipped with a re-connectable breakaway featuring a pressure balancing chamber to prevent nuisance breaks and shall disconnect at 200 lbs. A hose coupling shall separate the breakaway and hose swivel. The nozzle shall have a means of automatically stopping flow if the nozzle is not at the proper dispensing angle. Nozzle shall be of die-cast construction UL listed and have a flow equalizer to maintain 10 GPM flow. Breakaway, hose coupling, hose swivel, and nozzle shall be as manufactured by Husky or approved equal. Dispenser shall be compatible with vapor recovery systems.

END OF SECTION 22 12 23 26



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 22 12 23 26a - FACILITY FUEL-OIL PIPING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for facility fuel-oil piping. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes fuel-oil, fuel-oil and diesel-fuel-oil, and diesel-fuel-oil distribution systems and the following:
  - a. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
  - b. Piping and tubing joining materials.
  - c. Piping specialties.
  - d. Valves.
  - e. Vertical, steel, fuel-oil ASTs.
  - f. Horizontal, steel, fuel-oil ASTs.
  - g. Containment-dike, steel, fuel-oil ASTs.
  - h. Insulated, steel, fuel-oil ASTs.
  - i. Concrete-vaulted, steel, fuel-oil ASTs.
  - j. Steel, fuel-oil USTs with STI-P3.
  - k. Composite, steel, fuel-oil USTs.
  - l. Jacketed, steel, fuel-oil USTs.
  - m. FRP fuel-oil USTs.
  - n. Fuel-oil AST accessories.
  - o. Fuel-oil UST accessories.
  - p. Fuel-oil storage tank piping specialties.
  - q. Fuel-oil storage tank pumps.
  - r. Fuel-transfer pumps.
  - s. Fuel maintenance system.
  - t. Liquid-level gage system.
  - u. Leak-detection and monitoring system.
  - v. Mechanical sleeve seals.
  - w. Grout.
  - x. Concrete bases.

#### C. Definitions

1. AST: Aboveground storage tank.
2. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
3. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
4. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
5. FPM: Vinylidene fluoride-hexafluoropropylene copolymer rubber.
6. FRP: Glass-fiber-reinforced plastic.
7. UST: Underground storage tank.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. Maximum Operating-Pressure Ratings: 3-psig (21-kPa) fuel-oil supply pressure at oil-fired appliances.



2. Delegated Design: Design restraint and anchors for fuel-oil piping, ASTs, and equipment, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
3. Seismic Performance: Factory-installed support attachments for AST shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
  - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event, **as directed**."

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: For facility fuel-oil piping layout. Include plans, piping layout and elevations, sections, and details for fabrication of pipe anchors, hangers, supports for multiple pipes, alignment guides, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to building structure. Detail location of anchors, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops.
3. Delegated-Design Submittal: For fuel-oil piping and equipment indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - a. Detail fabrication and assembly of anchors and seismic restraints.
  - b. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints.
  - c. Detail fabrication and assembly of pipe anchors, hangers, supports for multiple pipes, and attachments of the same to building structure.
4. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For ASTs, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
  - a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  - b. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  - c. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
5. Brazing certificates.
6. Welding certificates.
7. Field quality-control reports.
8. Operation and Maintenance Data.
9. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

#### F. Quality Assurance

1. Brazing: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
2. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
3. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
4. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
5. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for fuel-oil piping materials, installation, testing, and inspecting.
6. Comply with requirements of the EPA and of state and local authorities having jurisdiction. Include recording of fuel-oil storage tanks and monitoring of tanks and piping.

#### G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Lift and support fuel-oil storage tanks only at designated lifting or supporting points, as shown on Shop Drawings. Do not move or lift tanks unless empty.
2. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.





3. Store pipes and tubes with protective PE coating to avoid damaging the coating and to protect from direct sunlight.
4. Store PE pipes and valves protected from direct sunlight.

#### H. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of fuel-oil storage tanks and flexible, double-containment piping and related equipment that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - a. Storage Tanks:
    - 1) Failures include, but are not limited to, the following when used for storage of fuel oil at temperatures not exceeding 150 deg F (66 deg C):
      - a) Structural failures including cracking, breakup, and collapse.
      - b) Corrosion failure including external and internal corrosion of steel tanks.
    - 2) Warranty Period: 30 years from date of Final Completion.
  - b. Flexible, Double-Containment Piping and Related Equipment:
    - 1) Failures due to defective materials or workmanship for materials installed together, including piping, dispenser sumps, entry boots, and sump mounting adapters.
    - 2) Warranty Period: 10 **OR** 30, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Pipes, Tubes, And Fittings

1. See Part 1.3 piping schedule articles for where pipes, tubes, fittings, and joining materials are applied in various services.
2. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
  - a. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
  - b. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, for butt and socket welding.
  - c. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.
  - d. Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, minimum Class 150, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
    - 1) Material Group: 1.1.
    - 2) End Connections: Threaded or butt welding to match pipe.
    - 3) Lapped Face: Not permitted underground.
    - 4) Gasket Materials: Asbestos free, ASME B16.20 metallic, or ASME B16.21 nonmetallic, gaskets compatible with fuel oil.
    - 5) Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, cadmium-plated steel.
  - e. Protective Coating for Underground Piping: Factory-applied, three-layer coating of epoxy, adhesive, and PE.
    - 1) Joint Cover Kits: Epoxy paint, adhesive, and heat-shrink PE sleeves.
3. Drawn-Temper Copper Tube: Comply with ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) **OR** ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), **as directed**.
  - a. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought copper, streamlined pattern.
  - b. Bronze Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.24, Class 150.
    - 1) Gasket Material: Asbestos free, ASME B16.20, metallic, or ASME B16.21 nonmetallic, gaskets compatible with fuel oil.
    - 2) Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, cadmium-plated steel.
4. Annealed-Temper Copper Tube: Comply with ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) **OR** ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), **as directed**.
  - a. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought copper, streamlined pattern.
  - b. Flare Fittings: Comply with ASME B16.26 and SAE J513.
    - 1) Copper fittings with long nuts.
    - 2) Metal-to-metal compression seal without gasket.
    - 3) Dryseal threads complying with ASME B1.20.3.



## B. Double-Containment Pipe And Fittings

1. Flexible, Double-Containment Piping: Comply with UL 971.
  - a. Pipe Materials: PVDF complying with ASTM D 3222 for carrier pipe with mechanical couplings to seal carrier, and PE pipe complying with ASTM D 4976 for containment piping.
  - b. Fiberglass **OR PE, as directed**, sumps.
  - c. Watertight sump entry boots, pipe adapters with test ports and tubes, coaxial fittings, and couplings.
  - d. Minimum Operating Pressure Rating: 10 psig (69 kPa).
  - e. Plastic to Steel Pipe Transition Fittings: Factory-fabricated fittings with plastic end matching or compatible with carrier piping, and steel pipe end complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
  - f. Include design and fabrication of double-containment pipe and fitting assemblies with provision for field installation of cable leak-detection system in annular space between carrier and containment piping.
2. Rigid, Double-Containment Piping: Comply with UL 971.
  - a. RTRP: ASTM D 2996 or ASTM D 2997 carrier and containment piping and mechanical couplings to seal carrier and containment piping or individually bonded joints.
    - 1) Minimum Operating-Pressure Rating for RTRP NPS 2 and NPS 3 (DN 50 and DN 80): 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 2) Minimum Operating-Pressure Rating for RTRP NPS 4 and NPS 6 (DN 100 and DN 150): 125 psig (860 kPa). Compliance with UL 971 is not required for NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger piping.
    - 3) Fittings: RTRF complying with ASTM D 2996 or ASTM D 2997, and made by RTRP manufacturer; watertight sump entry boots, termination, or other end fittings.
  - b. Include design and fabrication of double-containment pipe and fitting assemblies with provision for field installation of cable leak-detection system in annular space between carrier and containment piping.

## C. Piping Specialties

1. Flexible Connectors: Comply with UL 567.
  - a. Metallic Connectors:
    - 1) Listed and labeled for aboveground and underground applications by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
    - 2) Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze or stainless-steel, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
    - 3) Minimum Operating Pressure: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 4) End Connections: Socket, flanged, or threaded end to match connected piping.
    - 5) Maximum Length: 30 inches (762 mm).
    - 6) Swivel end, 50-psig (345-kPa) maximum operating pressure.
    - 7) Factory-furnished anode.
  - b. Nonmetallic Connectors:
    - 1) Listed and labeled for underground applications by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
    - 2) PTFE bellows with woven, flexible, bronze or stainless-steel, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
    - 3) Minimum Operating Pressure: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 4) End Connections: Socket, flanged, or threaded end to match connected piping.
    - 5) Maximum Length: 30 inches (762 mm).
    - 6) Swivel end, 50-psig (345-kPa) maximum operating pressure.
    - 7) Factory-furnished anode.
2. Y-Pattern Strainers:
  - a. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
  - b. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.



- c. Strainer Screen: 60 **OR** 80, **as directed**, -mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
      - d. CWP Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).
    3. Basket Strainers:
      - a. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, high-tensile cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
      - b. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
      - c. Strainer Screen: 60 **OR** 80, **as directed**, -mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
      - d. CWP Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).
    4. T-Pattern Strainers:
      - a. Body: Ductile or malleable iron with removable access coupling and end cap for strainer maintenance.
      - b. End Connections: Grooved ends.
      - c. Strainer Screen: 60 **OR** 80, **as directed**, -mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 57 percent free area.
      - d. CWP Rating: 750 psig (5170 kPa).
    5. Manual Air Vents:
      - a. Body: Bronze.
      - b. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
      - c. Operator: Screwdriver or thumbscrew.
      - d. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
      - e. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8 (DN 6).
      - f. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      - g. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F (107 deg C).
- D. Joining Materials
  1. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for fuel oil.
  2. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
  3. Brazing Filler Metals: Alloy with melting point greater than 1000 deg F (540 deg C) complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M. Brazing alloys containing more than 0.05 percent phosphorus are prohibited.
  4. Bonding Adhesive for Fiberglass Piping: As recommended by fiberglass piping manufacturer.
- E. Manual Fuel-Oil Shutoff Valves
  1. See valve schedule in Part 1.3 for where each valve type is applied in various services.
  2. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller for Liquid Service: Comply with UL 842.
    - a. CWP Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).
    - b. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
    - c. Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.3.
    - d. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in the valve schedule.
    - e. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.
  3. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Comply with UL 842.
    - a. CWP Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).
    - b. Flanged Ends: Comply with ASME B16.5 for steel flanges.
    - c. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in the valve schedule.
    - d. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.
  4. One-Piece, Bronze Ball Valve with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
    - a. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
    - b. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    - c. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
    - d. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
    - e. Packing: Separate packnut with adjustable-stem packing threaded ends.



- f. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in the valve schedule.
- g. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
- h. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.
- 5. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
  - a. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
  - b. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
  - c. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
  - d. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
  - e. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
  - f. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in the valve schedule.
  - g. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
  - h. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.
- 6. Two-Piece, Regular-Port Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
  - a. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
  - b. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
  - c. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
  - d. Seats: Reinforced TFE.
  - e. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
  - f. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in the valve schedule.
  - g. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
  - h. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.

#### F. Specialty Valves

- 1. Pressure Relief Valves: Comply with UL 842.
  - a. Listed and labeled for fuel-oil service by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - b. Body: Brass, bronze, or cast steel.
  - c. Springs: Stainless steel, interchangeable.
  - d. Seat and Seal: Nitrile rubber.
  - e. Orifice: Stainless steel, interchangeable.
  - f. Factory-Applied Finish: Baked enamel.
  - g. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
  - h. Relief Pressure Setting: 60 psig (414 kPa).
- 2. Oil Safety Valves: Comply with UL 842.
  - a. Listed and labeled for fuel-oil service by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - b. Body: Brass, bronze, or cast steel.
  - c. Springs: Stainless steel.
  - d. Seat and Diaphragm: Nitrile rubber.
  - e. Orifice: Stainless steel, interchangeable.
  - f. Factory-Applied Finish: Baked enamel.
  - g. Manual override port.
  - h. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 60 psig (414 kPa).
  - i. Maximum Outlet Pressure: 3 psig (21 kPa).
- 3. Emergency Shutoff Valves: Comply with UL 842.
  - a. Listed and labeled for fuel-oil service by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - b. Single **OR** Double, **as directed**, poppet valve.
  - c. Body: ASTM A 126, cast iron.
  - d. Disk: FPM.
  - e. Poppet Spring: Stainless steel.
  - f. Stem: Plated brass.
  - g. O-Ring: FPM.
  - h. Packing Nut: PTFE-coated brass.
  - i. Fusible link to close valve at 165 deg F (74 deg C).



- j. Thermal relief to vent line pressure buildup due to fire.
- k. Air test port.
- l. Maximum Operating Pressure: 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa).
- 4. Mechanical Leak Detector: Comply with UL 842.
  - a. Listed and labeled for fuel-oil service by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - b. Body: ASTM A 126, cast iron.
  - c. O-Rings: Elastomeric compatible with fuel oil.
  - d. Piston and Stem Seals: PTFE.
  - e. Stem and Spring: Stainless steel.
  - f. Piston Cylinder: Burnished brass.
  - g. Indicated Leak Rate: Maximum 3 gph (3 mL/s) at 10 psig (69 kPa).
  - h. Leak Indication: Reduced flow.
- G. Vertical, Steel, Fuel-Oil AST
  - 1. Description:
    - a. UL 142, single-wall, vertical, steel tank.
    - b. UL 142 and STI F921, **as directed**, double-wall, vertical, steel tank; with primary- and secondary-containment walls and interstitial space.
  - 2. Construction: Fabricated with welded, carbon steel suitable for operation at atmospheric pressure and for storing fuel oil with specific gravity up to 1.1 and maintained temperature up to 150 deg F (66 deg C).
- H. Horizontal, Steel, Fuel-Oil AST
  - 1. Description:
    - a. UL 142, single-wall, horizontal, steel tank.
    - b. UL 142 and STI F921, **as directed**, double-wall, horizontal, steel tank; with primary- and secondary-containment walls and interstitial space.
  - 2. Construction: Fabricated with welded, carbon steel; suitable for operation at atmospheric pressure and for storing fuel oil with specific gravity up to 1.1 and with maintained temperature up to 150 deg F (66 deg C).
  - 3. Supports:
    - a. Manufacturer's standard structural steel welded to tank.
    - b. Manufacturer's standard type and number, steel or cast-iron cradles, for field installation.
- I. Containment-Dike, Steel, Fuel-Oil AST
  - 1. Description: UL 142 and STI F911, single-wall, horizontal, steel tank; with open or enclosed **OR** enclosed, **as directed**, secondary-containment dike with capacity greater than tank capacity.
  - 2. Construction: Fabricated with welded, carbon steel; suitable for operation at atmospheric pressure and for storing fuel oil with specific gravity up to 1.1 and with maintained temperature up to 150 deg F (66 deg C).
- J. Insulated, Steel, Fuel-Oil AST
  - 1. Description: UL 142 and UL 2085 **OR** UL 142, UL 2085, and STI F941, **as directed**, thermally insulated and fire-resistant, double-wall, horizontal, steel tank; with primary- and secondary-containment walls and insulation and with interstitial space.
  - 2. Construction: Fabricated with welded, carbon steel and insulation; suitable for operation at atmospheric pressure and for storing fuel oil with specific gravity up to 1.1 and with test temperature according to UL 2085.
- K. Concrete-Vaulted, Steel, Fuel-Oil AST
  - 1. Description: UL 142 and UL 2085 **OR** UL 142, UL 2085, and STI F941, **as directed**; thermally insulated, fire-resistant and protected, double-wall, horizontal, steel tank; with primary- and secondary-containment walls and insulation and with interstitial space.



2. Construction: Fabricated with welded, carbon steel and insulation and encased in concrete that will protect from bullets; suitable for operation at atmospheric pressure and for storing fuel oil with specific gravity up to 1.1 and with test temperature according to UL 2085.
- L. Steel, Fuel-Oil UST With STI-P3
1. Description: UL 58 and STI P3, double-wall, horizontal, steel tank; with cathodic protection and electrical isolation.
    - a. Containment Method: STI-P3, Type I, with primary and secondary walls in contact **OR** Type II, with interstitial space, **as directed**.
  2. Construction: Fabricated with welded steel; suitable for operation at atmospheric pressure and for storing liquids with specific gravity up to 1.1; fabricated for the following loads:
    - a. Depth of Bury: 3 feet (1 m) from top of tank to finished surface.
    - b. External Hydrostatic Pressure: To withstand general buckling with safety factor of 2:1 if hole is fully flooded.
    - c. Surface Loads: AASHTO's "Specifications for Highway Bridges," H-20 axle loads of 32,000 lb (14 515 kg).
  3. Corrosion-Protection System: Protect tank and factory-installed piping by engineered and installed corrosion-protection system according to STI P3, with means of monitoring cathodic protection.
- M. Composite, Steel, Fuel-Oil UST
1. Description: UL 58, double-wall, horizontal, composite tank; with coating complying with UL 1746 and STI F894.
    - a. Containment Method: STI F894, Type I, with primary and secondary walls in contact **OR** Type II, with interstitial space, **as directed**.
  2. Construction: Fabricated with welded steel and factory coating according to UL 1746 and STI F894; suitable for operation at atmospheric pressure and for storing liquids with specific gravity up to 1.1; fabricated for the following loads:
    - a. Depth of Bury: 3 feet (1 m) from top of tank to finished surface.
    - b. External Hydrostatic Pressure: To withstand general buckling with safety factor of 2:1 if hole is fully flooded.
    - c. Surface Loads: AASHTO's "Specifications for Highway Bridges," H-20 axle loads of 32,000 lb (14 515 kg).
- N. Jacketed, Steel, Fuel-Oil UST
1. Description: Jacketed, horizontal, steel tank; complying with UL 58, and with plastic or fiberglass jacket and corrosion-protection system according to UL 1746 and STI F922, **as directed**.
  2. Construction: Tank fabricated with welded carbon steel, and jacket fabricated with plastic or fiberglass and vacuum-sealed interstitial space; suitable for operation at atmospheric pressure and with integral leak-detection device. Tank fabricated for the following loads:
    - a. Depth of Bury: 3 feet (1 m) from top of tank to finished surface.
    - b. External Hydrostatic Pressure: To withstand general buckling with safety factor of 2:1 if hole is fully flooded.
    - c. Surface Loads: AASHTO's "Specifications for Highway Bridges," H-20 axle loads of 32,000 lb (14 515 kg).
- O. FRP Fuel-Oil UST
1. Description: Horizontal, FRP UST; UL 1316, double wall, with interstitial space and integral, hydrostatic, leak-detection and monitoring system, **as directed**.
  2. Construction: Fabricated with fiberglass-reinforced polyester resins; suitable for operation at atmospheric pressure; fabricated for the following loads:
    - a. Depth of Bury: 3 feet (1 m) from top of tank to finished surface.
    - b. External Hydrostatic Pressure: To withstand general buckling with safety factor of 2:1 if hole is fully flooded.



- c. Surface Loads: AASHTO's "Specifications for Highway Bridges," H-20 axle loads of 32,000 lb (14 515 kg).
- P. Shop Painting Of AST
1. Apply manufacturer's standard prime coat to exterior steel surface of AST and supports.
  2. Prepare exterior steel surface of AST and tank supports.
  3. Shop Cleaning: After fabrication, blast clean according to SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3 **OR** SSPC-SP 10/NACE No. 2, **as directed**.
  4. After cleaning, remove dust or residue from cleaned surfaces.
  5. If surface develops rust before prime coat is applied, repeat surface preparation.
  6. Apply manufacturer's standard prime coat to shop-cleaned, dry surface same day as surface preparation.
  7. Apply manufacturer's standard two-component, epoxy finish coats.
- Q. Fuel-Oil AST Accessories
1. Tank Manholes (for horizontal tanks and some vertical tanks): 22-inch- (560-mm-) minimum diameter; bolted, flanged, and gasketed; centered on top of tank.
  2. Tank Manholes (for vertical tanks): 22-inch- (560-mm-) minimum diameter; bolted, flanged, and gasketed; on top and at side of tank.
  3. For Horizontal Tanks: Threaded pipe connection fittings on top of tank, for fill, supply, return, vent, sounding, and gaging. Include cast-iron plugs for shipping.
  4. For Vertical Tanks: Threaded pipe connection fittings on top or sides of tank as indicated, for fill, supply, return, vent, sounding, and gaging. Include cast-iron plugs for shipping.
  5. Striker Plates: Inside tank, on bottom below fill, vent, sounding, gage, and other tube openings.
  6. Lifting Lugs: For handling and installation.
  7. Ladders (for horizontal tanks and some vertical tanks): Carbon-steel ladder inside tank, anchored to top and bottom, and located as indicated. Include reinforcement of tank at bottom of ladder.
  8. Ladders (for vertical tanks): Carbon-steel ladder outside tank, anchored to top and side wall. Comply with requirements in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for exterior steel ladder.
    - a. Cage: Include welded steel cage around ladders for tanks 20 feet (6 m) high or higher.
  9. Supply Tube: Extension of supply piping fitting into tank, terminating 6 inches (150 mm) above tank bottom and cut at a 45-degree angle (1:1 slope).
  10. Sounding and Gage Tubes: Extension of fitting into tank, terminating 6 inches (150 mm) above tank bottom and cut at a 45-degree angle (1:1 slope).
- R. Fuel-Oil UST Accessories
1. Tank Manholes: 22-inch- (560-mm-) minimum diameter; bolted, flanged, and gasketed, with extension collar; for access to inside of tank.
  2. Steel Tank Masonry Supports: Two 6-by-6-by-3/8-inch (150-by-150-by-10-mm) steel angles, 72 inches (1800 mm) long, located longitudinally on tank on each side of manholes and continuously welded in place.
  3. Threaded pipe connection fittings on top of tank for fill, supply, return, vent, sounding, and gaging, in locations and of sizes indicated. Include cast-iron plugs for shipping.
  4. Striker Plates: Inside tank, on bottom below fill, vent, sounding, gage, and other tube openings.
  5. Lifting Lugs: For handling and installation.
  6. Ladders: Carbon-steel ladder inside tank, anchored to top and bottom. Include reinforcement of tank at bottom of ladder.
  7. Supply Tube: Extension of supply piping fitting into tank, terminating 6 inches (150 mm) above tank bottom and cut at a 45-degree angle (1:1 slope).
  8. Sounding and Gage Tubes: Extension of fitting into tank, terminating 6 inches (150 mm) above tank bottom and cut at a 45-degree angle (1:1 slope).
  9. Containment Sumps: Fiberglass **OR** PE, **as directed**, with sump base, add-on extension pieces as required, sump top, lid, and gasket-seal joints. Include sump entry boots for pipe penetrations through sidewalls.



10. Sump Entry Boots: Two-part pipe fitting for field assembly and of size required to fit over pipe. Include gaskets shaped to fit sump sidewall, sleeves, seals, and clamps as required for liquid-tight pipe penetrations.
11. Anchor Straps: Storage tank manufacturer's standard anchoring system, with straps, strap-insulating material, cables and turnbuckles, of strength at least one and one-half times maximum uplift force of empty tank without backfill in place.
12. Filter Mat: Geotextile woven or spun filter fabric, in 1 or more layers, for minimum total weight of 3 oz./sq. yd. (101.7 g/sq. m).
13. Overfill Prevention Valves: Factory fabricated or shop or field assembled from manufacturer's standard components. Include drop tube, cap, fill nozzle adaptor, check valve mechanism or other devices, and vent if required to restrict flow at 95 percent of tank capacity and to provide complete shutoff of filling at 98 **OR** 99, **as directed**, percent of tank capacity.

#### S. Fuel-Oil Storage Tank Piping Specialties

1. Fitting Materials: Cast iron, malleable iron, brass, or corrosion-resistant metal; suitable for fuel-oil service.
  - a. Surface, Flush-Mounted Fittings: Waterproof and suitable for truck traffic.
  - b. Aboveground-Mounted Fittings: Weatherproof.
2. Spill-Containment Fill Boxes: Flush mounting, with drainage feature to drain oil into tank, threaded fill-pipe connection, and wrench operation.
3. Fill Boxes: Flush mounting, with threaded fill-pipe connection and wrench operation.
4. Locking Fill Boxes: Flush mounting, with locking-type inner fill cap for standard padlock and threaded fill-pipe connection.
5. Supply and Sounding Drop Tubes: Fuel-oil supply piping or fitting, inside tank, terminating 6 inches (150 mm) above bottom of tank, and with end cut at a 45-degree angle (1:1 slope).
6. Pipe Adapters and Extensions: Compatible with piping and fittings.
7. Suction Strainers and Check Valves: Bronze or corrosion-resistant metal components.
8. Foot Valves and Antisiphon Valves: Poppet-type, bronze or corrosion-resistant metal components.
9. Weatherproof Vent Cap: Cast- or malleable-iron increaser fitting with corrosion-resistant wire screen, with free area at least equal to cross-sectional area of connecting pipe and threaded-end connection.
10. Metal Manholes: 22-inch- (560-mm-) minimum diameter frame and cover. Furnish manhole units of adequate size for access to fittings if size is not indicated.
11. Monitoring Well Caps: Locking pipe plug and manhole.

#### T. Submersible Fuel-Oil Pumps

1. Description: Comply with UL 79, UL 87, and UL 343.
  - a. Listed and labeled for fuel-oil service by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - b. Impeller: Turbine.
  - c. Housing and Volute: Cast iron.
  - d. Bearings: Bronze, self-lubricating.
  - e. Seals: Mechanical.
  - f. Shaft: Polished steel.
  - g. Suspension Piping: Telescoping to accommodate tank diameter and depth of bury.
  - h. Base: Steel.
  - i. Pressure Relief: Built in.
  - j. Discharge Check Valve: Built in.
  - k. Drive: Direct, close coupled.
2. Controls: Pump controller panel complying with UL 353 and UL 508C and with interlock and terminals for connections to fuel-oil-burning equipment **OR** diesel-driven fire pumps **OR** diesel-driven emergency generators **OR** diesel-fuel-oil dispenser, **as directed**.
  - a. Run pumps to maintain minimum manifold pressure with outdoor-air temperature less than 60 deg F (16 deg C).





- b. Run pumps on seven-day schedule.
  - c. Stage pumps on pressure at a common supply manifold.
  - d. Alternate pumps to equalize run time.
  - e. Alarm motor failure.
  - f. Manual reset dry-run protection. Stop pumps if fuel level falls below pump suction.
  - g. Deenergize and alarm pump locked rotor condition.
  - h. Alarm open circuit, high and low voltage.
  - i. Indicating lights for power on, run, and off normal conditions.
  - j. Interface with automatic control system is specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac" to control and indicate the following:
    - 1) Start/stop pump set when required by schedule, fuel-fired appliance operation, day tank level control, or weather conditions.
    - 2) Operating status.
    - 3) Alarm off-normal status.
3. Motor: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".
- a. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
  - b. Thermal-Overload Protection: Motor-winding temperature sensor.
  - c. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 22.

#### U. Simplex Fuel-Oil Transfer Pumps

1. Description: Comply with UL 343, and HI M109.
  - a. Listed and labeled for fuel-oil service by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - b. Type: Positive-displacement, rotary type.
  - c. Impeller: Steel gear with crescent **OR** Carbon vane, **as directed**.
  - d. Housing: Cast-iron foot mounted.
  - e. Bearings: Bronze, self-lubricating.
  - f. Shaft: Polished steel.
  - g. Seals: Mechanical.
  - h. Base: Steel.
  - i. Pressure Relief: Built in.
  - j. Discharge Check Valve: Built in.
2. Drive: V-belt with guard; gear reducer; or direct, close coupled **OR** V-belt with guard **OR** Gear reducer **OR** Direct, close coupled, **as directed**.
3. Controls:
  - a. Run pump to maintain minimum manifold pressure with outdoor-air temperature less than 60 deg F (16 deg C).
  - b. Run pump on seven-day schedule.
  - c. Alarm motor failure.
  - d. Manual reset dry-run protection. Stop pump if fuel level falls below pump suction.
  - e. Deenergize and alarm pump locked rotor condition.
  - f. Alarm open circuit, high and low voltage.
  - g. Indicating lights for power on, run, and off normal conditions.
  - h. Interface with automatic control system is specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac" to control and indicate the following:
    - 1) Start/stop pump set when required by schedule, fuel-fired appliance operation, day tank level control, or weather conditions.
    - 2) Operating status.
    - 3) Alarm off-normal status.
4. Motor: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".



- a. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
- b. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 22.

V. Duplex **OR** Triplex, **as directed**, Fuel-Oil Transfer Pump Sets

1. Description: Comply with HI M109.
  - a. Listed and labeled for fuel-oil service by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - b. Type: Positive-displacement, rotary type.
  - c. Impeller: Steel gear with crescent **OR** Carbon vane, **as directed**.
  - d. Housing: Cast-iron foot mounted.
  - e. Bearings: Bronze, self-lubricating.
  - f. Shaft: Polished steel.
  - g. Seals: Mechanical.
  - h. Base: Steel.
  - i. Pressure Relief: Built in.
  - j. Discharge Check Valve: Built in.
2. Drive: V-belt with guard, gear reducer, or direct close coupled **OR** V-belt with guard **OR** Gear reducer **OR** Direct close coupled, **as directed**.
3. Controls:
  - a. Run pumps to maintain minimum manifold pressure with outdoor-air temperature less than 60 deg F (16 deg C).
  - b. Run pumps on seven-day schedule.
  - c. Stage pumps on pressure at a common supply manifold.
  - d. Alternate pumps to equalize run time.
  - e. Alarm motor failure.
  - f. Manual reset dry-run protection. Stop pumps if fuel level falls below pump suction.
  - g. Deenergize and alarm pump locked rotor condition.
  - h. Alarm open circuit, high and low voltage.
  - i. Indicating lights for power on, run, and off normal conditions.
  - j. Interface with automatic control system is specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac" to control and indicate the following:
    - 1) Start/stop pump set when required by schedule, fuel-fired appliance operation, day tank level control, or weather conditions.
    - 2) Operating status.
    - 3) Alarm off-normal status.
4. Motor: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".
  - a. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
  - b. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 22.
5. Piping Furnished with Pumps: Steel with ferrous fittings and threaded or welded joints.
6. Strainers Furnished with Pumps: Duplex, basket type with corrosion-resistant-metal-screen baskets.

W. Fuel Maintenance System

1. Description: Factory fabricated and wired fuel maintenance system for fuel-oil filtration; with enclosure, filter, fuel-oil pump, and controls; FMG approved, listed, and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - a. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 3R, painted steel containing pumps, filters, accessories, and controls. Hinged door on the front of enclosure.



- b. Pump: Comply with HI M109, steel-gear-with-crescent, positive-displacement, direct-coupled, rotary-type.
  - c. Materials: Cast-iron housing; bronze bearings; steel shaft; mechanical seals; and built-in, pressure relief bypass valve.
  - d. Motor: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".
    - 1) Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
    - 2) Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 22.
  - e. Piping: Steel with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints or wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
  - f. Multistage Filter: Spin-on, replaceable types.
    - 1) Stage 1: 100-mesh strainer.
    - 2) Stage 2: Centrifuge to separate particulates and water from oil.
    - 3) Stage 3: Coalescing water and particulate filter.
    - 4) Stage 4: 30-micron particulate removal.
    - 5) Stage 5: 10-micron particulate removal.
    - 6) Stage 6: Minimum 99.5 percent water removal with see-through bowl and water-sensor probe.
    - 7) Stage 7: 1.5 **OR** 3, **as directed**, -micron particulate removal.
  - g. Multiple-Tank Manifolds:
    - 1) Manifold fabricated of Schedule 80, black steel pipe and threaded nipples for two **OR** three **OR** four, **as directed**, tanks.
    - 2) Solenoid valves for supply and return piping to each tank.
    - 3) Strainers for each tank supply connection.
  - h. Programmable Logic Controller:
    - 1) Alarm on maximum 15-in. Hg (51-kPa) vacuum at pump suction indicating plugged filter.
    - 2) Alarm on high water level in filter.
    - 3) Alarm leak in enclosure.
    - 4) Touch screen; with minimum 2-line, 20-character, backlit, LCD display.
    - 5) Controller strip heater with thermostat.
  - i. Interface with automatic control system is specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation And Control For Hvac" to control and indicate the following:
    - 1) Start/stop system when required by schedule.
    - 2) Operating status.
    - 3) Alarm off-normal status.
- X. Liquid-Level Gage System
- 1. Description: Calibrated, liquid-level gage system complying with UL 180 with floats **OR** UL 1238 with probes, **as directed**, or other sensors and remote annunciator panel.
  - 2. Annunciator Panel: With visual and audible, high-tank-level and low-tank-level alarms, fuel indicator with registration in gallons (liters), and overfill alarm. Include gage volume range that covers fuel-oil storage capacity.
  - 3. Controls: Electrical, operating on 120-V ac.
- Y. Leak-Detection And Monitoring System
- 1. Cable and Sensor System: Comply with UL 1238.
    - a. Calibrated, leak-detection and monitoring system with probes and other sensors and remote alarm panel for fuel-oil storage tanks and fuel-oil piping.
    - b. Include fittings and devices required for testing.
    - c. Controls: Electrical, operating on 120-V ac.
    - d. Calibrated, liquid-level gage complying with UL 180 with floats **OR** UL 1238 with probes, **as directed**, or other sensors and remote annunciator panel.



- e. Remote Annunciator Panel: With visual and audible, high-tank-level and low-tank-level alarms, fuel indicator with registration in gallons (liters), and overfill alarm. Include gage volume range that covers fuel-oil storage capacity.
  - f. Controls: Electrical, operating on 120-V ac.
  - 2. Hydrostatic System: Comply with UL 1238.
    - a. Calibrated, leak-detection and monitoring system with brine antifreeze solution, reservoir sensor, and electronic control panel to monitor leaks in inner and outer tank walls.
    - b. Include fittings and devices required for testing.
    - c. Controls: Electrical, operating on 120-V ac.
    - d. Calibrated, liquid-level gage complying with UL 180 with floats **OR** UL 1238 with probes, **as directed**, or other sensors and remote annunciator panel.
    - e. Remote Annunciator Panel: With visual and audible, high-tank-level and low-tank-level alarms, fuel indicator with registration in gallons (liters), and overfill alarm. Include gage volume range that covers fuel-oil storage capacity.
    - f. Controls: Electrical, operating on 120-V ac.
- Z. Fuel Oil
- 1. Fuel Oil: ASTM D 396, Grade No. 1 **OR** No. 2, **as directed**.
  - 2. Diesel Fuel Oil: ASTM D 975, Grade Low Sulfur **OR** No. 1-D, special-purpose **OR** No. 2-D, general-purpose, **as directed**, high volatility.
- AA. Sleeves
- 1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
  - 2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- BB. Mechanical Sleeve Seals
- 1. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
    - a. Sealing Elements: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe and sleeve.
    - b. Pressure Plates: Plastic **OR** Carbon steel **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
    - c. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one nut and bolt for each sealing element.
- CC. Escutcheons
- 1. General Requirements for Escutcheons: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with ID to fit around pipe or tube and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 2. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Escutcheons: Deep-drawn brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
  - 3. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: With set screw.
    - a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass, **as directed**.
  - 4. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: With concealed hinge and set screw.
    - a. Finish: Polished chrome-plated **OR** Rough brass, **as directed**.
  - 5. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: With set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.
  - 6. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: With concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge, set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**, and chrome-plated finish.
  - 7. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Escutcheons: Cast-iron floor plate.
  - 8. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Escutcheons: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.
- DD. Grout
- 1. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.



- a. Characteristics: Posthardening, volume adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- b. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
- c. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

EE. Labeling And Identifying

1. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, PE film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) wide and 4 mils (0.1 mm) thick, continuously inscribed with a description of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches (762 mm) deep; colored yellow.

FF. Concrete Manholes

1. Precast Concrete Manhole Sections: ASTM C 478 (ASTM C 478M), base and concentric-cone sections with integral ladder or steps.
2. Cast-Iron Frame and Cover: Heavy-duty, water-resistant, cast-iron manhole frame, gasket, and bolted cover; 24-inch- (609-mm-) diameter, inside opening dimension; 8-inch (203-mm) frame riser height.

GG. Source Quality Control

1. Pressure test and inspect fuel-oil storage tanks, after fabrication and before shipment, according to ASME and the following:
  - a. Vertical **OR** Horizontal, **as directed**, Single-Wall Steel ASTs: UL 142.
  - b. Vertical **OR** Horizontal, **as directed**, Double-Wall Steel ASTs: UL 142, STI F921, and STI R931.
  - c. Horizontal, Containment-Dike, Steel ASTs: UL 142 and STI F911.
  - d. Horizontal, Concrete-Vaulted **OR** Concrete-Vaulted and Insulated **OR** Insulated, **as directed**, Steel ASTs: UL 142 and UL 2085.
  - e. Horizontal, Steel USTs with the STI-P3 Corrosion-Protection System: UL 58 and STI P3.
  - f. Composite **OR** Composite and Jacketed **OR** Jacketed, **as directed**, Steel USTs: UL 58.
  - g. FRP USTs: UL 1316.
2. Affix standards organization's code stamp.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Earthwork

1. Comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

B. Preparation

1. Close equipment shutoff valves before turning off fuel oil to premises or piping section.
2. Comply with NFPA 30 and NFPA 31 requirements for prevention of accidental ignition.

C. Outdoor Piping Installation

1. Install underground fuel-oil piping buried at least 18 inches (457 mm) below finished grade. Comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.
  - a. If fuel-oil piping is installed with less than 12 inches (305 mm) of cover to finished grade, install in containment piping.
2. Steel Piping with Protective Coating:
  - a. Apply joint cover kits to pipe after joining, to cover, seal, and protect joints.
  - b. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating manufacturer. Review protective coating damage prior to repair.  
**OR**  
Replace pipe having damaged PE coating with new pipe.



3. Install double-containment, fuel-oil pipe at a minimum slope of 1 percent downward toward fuel-oil storage tank sump.
4. Install vent pipe at a minimum slope of 2 percent downward toward fuel-oil storage tank sump.
5. Assemble and install entry boots for pipe penetrations through sump sidewalls for liquid-tight joints.
6. Install metal pipes and tubes, fittings, valves, and flexible connectors at piping connections to AST and UST.
7. Install fittings for changes in direction in rigid pipe.
8. Install system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
9. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Install sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
10. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
11. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
12. Install pressure gage on suction **OR** suction and discharge, **as directed**, from each pump. Pressure gages are specified in Division 23 Section "Meters And Gages For Hvac Piping".

#### D. Indoor Piping Installation

1. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
2. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.
3. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
4. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
5. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
6. Install piping free of sags and bends.
7. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
8. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
  - a. New Piping:
    - 1) Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
    - 2) Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.  
**OR**  
Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
    - 3) Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece **OR** Split-casting, **as directed**, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.  
**OR**  
Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type **OR** Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge, **as directed**, and set screw.
    - 4) Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated **OR** rough-brass, **as directed**, finish.  
**OR**



- Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type with set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**.
- 5) Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type.  
**OR**  
Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type with set screw **OR** spring clips, **as directed**.
- 6) Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.
9. Existing Piping:
- 1) Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.  
**OR**  
Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and spring clips.
- 2) Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.  
**OR**  
Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and set screw.
- 3) Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated **OR** rough-brass, **as directed**, finish.  
**OR**  
Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed **OR** exposed-rivet, **as directed**, hinge and set screw or spring clips.
- 4) Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting, cast-brass type.  
**OR**  
Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with set screw or spring clips.
- 5) Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting, floor-plate type.
10. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
11. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
12. Comply with requirements for equipment specifications in Division 14 AND Division 21 for roughing-in requirements.
13. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, or utility spaces; above ceilings; below grade or floors; and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.
14. Prohibited Locations:
- a. Do not install fuel-oil piping in or through circulating air ducts, clothes or trash chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator shafts.
- b. Do not install fuel-oil piping in solid walls or partitions.
15. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.
16. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.
17. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller at final connection to each piece of equipment and elsewhere as indicated. Unions are not required on flanged devices.
18. Do not use fuel-oil piping as grounding electrode.
19. Install Y-pattern **OR** basket **OR** T-pattern, **as directed**, strainer on inlet side of fuel-oil pump.
- E. Valve Installation
1. Install manual fuel-oil shutoff valves on branch connections to fuel-oil appliance.
2. Install valves in accessible locations.
3. Protect valves from physical damage.
4. Install metal tag attached with metal chain indicating fuel-oil piping systems.
5. Identify valves as specified in Division 23 Section "Identification For Hvac Piping And Equipment".
6. Install oil safety valves at inlet of each oil-fired appliance.



7. Install pressure relief valves in distribution piping between the supply and return lines.
8. Install one-piece, bronze ball valve with hose end connection at low points in fuel-oil piping.
9. Install manual air vents at high points in fuel-oil piping.
10. Install emergency shutoff valves at dispensers (for systems with fuel-oil or diesel-fuel-oil dispensers).

#### F. Piping Joint Construction

1. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
3. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  - b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
4. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.
  - a. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
  - b. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.
5. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter.
6. Flanged Joints: Install gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned.
7. Flared Joints: Comply with SAE J513. Tighten finger tight, then use wrench according to fitting manufacturer's written recommendations. Do not overtighten.
8. Fiberglass-Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.

#### G. Fuel-Oil AST Installation

1. Install tank bases and supports.
2. Connect piping and vent fittings.
3. Install ground connections.
4. Install tank leak-detection and monitoring devices.
5. Install steel ASTs according to STI R912.
6. Install insulated and concrete-vaulted, steel ASTs according to STI R942.
7. Fill storage tanks with fuel oil.

#### H. Fuel-Oil UST Installation

1. Excavate to sufficient depth for a minimum of 3 feet (1 m) of earth cover from top of tank to finished grade. Allow for cast-in-place, concrete-ballast base plus 6 inches (150 mm) of sand or pea gravel between ballast base and tank. Extend excavation at least 12 inches (300 mm) around perimeter of tank.
2. Set tie-down eyelets for hold-down straps in concrete-ballast base and tie to reinforcing steel.
3. Place 6 inches (152 mm) of clean sand or pea gravel on top of concrete-ballast base.
4. Set tank on fill materials and install hold-down straps.
5. Connect piping.
6. Install tank leak-detection and monitoring devices.
7. Install containment sumps.
8. Backfill excavation with clean sand or pea gravel in 12-inch (305-mm) lifts and tamp backfill lift to consolidate.
9. Install filter mat between top of backfill material and earth fill.
10. Install steel USTs with the STI-P3 corrosion-protection system according to STI R821 and STI R891. Protect anodes during tank placement and backfilling operations.





11. Install composite, steel USTs according to STI R913 and STI R891.
12. Install jacketed, steel USTs according to STI R923 and STI R891.
13. Install FRP USTs with FRP hold-down straps, manhole extensions, and manhole risers.
14. Fill storage tanks with fuel oil.

I. Hanger And Support Installation

1. Pipe hanger and support and equipment support materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers And Supports For Hvac Piping And Equipment".
2. Install hangers for horizontal steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
  - a. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Smaller: Maximum span, 84 inches (2130 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - b. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): Maximum span, 108 inches (2740 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - c. NPS 2 (DN 50): Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - d. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Maximum span, 11 feet (3.4 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (13 mm).
  - e. NPS 3 (DN 80): Maximum span, 12 feet (3.7 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (13 mm).
  - f. NPS 4 (DN 100): Maximum span, 13 feet (4 m); minimum rod size, 5/8 inch (16 mm).
3. Support vertical steel pipe at each floor and at spacing not greater than 15 feet (4.5 m).
4. Install hangers for horizontal, drawn-temper copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
  - a. NPS 3/4 (DN 20) and Smaller: Maximum span, 60 inches (1524 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - b. NPS 1 (DN 25): Maximum span, 72 inches (1830 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - c. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): Maximum span, 84 inches (2130 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - d. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): Maximum span, 96 inches (2440 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - e. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Maximum span, 108 inches (2740 mm); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (13 mm).
  - f. NPS 3 (DN 80): Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (13 mm).
  - g. NPS 4 (DN 100): Maximum span, 11 feet (3.4 m); minimum rod size, 5/8 inch (16 mm).
5. Support vertical copper tube at each floor and at spacing not greater than 10 feet (3 m).

J. Fuel-Oil Pump Installation

1. Submersible Pumps:
  - a. Suspend pumps from supply piping and anchored to bottom of tank.
2. Transfer Pumps:
  - a. Install pumps with access space for periodic maintenance including removal of motors, impellers, and accessories.
  - b. Set pumps on and anchor to concrete base.
3. Install two-piece, full-port ball valves at suction and discharge of pumps.
4. Install mechanical leak-detector valves at pump discharge.
5. Install Y-pattern **OR** basket **OR** T-pattern, **as directed**, strainer on inlet side of simplex fuel-oil pumps.
6. Install check valve on discharge of simplex fuel-oil pumps.
7. Install suction piping with minimum fittings and change of direction.
8. Install vacuum and pressure gage, upstream and downstream respectively, at each pump to measure the differential pressure across the pump. Pressure gages are specified in Division 23 Section "Meters And Gages For Hvac Piping".

K. Fuel Maintenance System Installation

1. Install suction line, with foot valve, at one end of storage tank, 1 inch (25 mm) from the bottom of tank.
2. Install return line at the opposite end of storage tank from suction line.



- L. Liquid-Level Gage System Installation
1. Install liquid-level gage system. Locate panel inside building where indicated.
- M. Leak-Detection And Monitoring System Installation
1. Install leak-detection and monitoring system. Install alarm panel inside building where indicated.
    - a. Double-Wall, Fuel-Oil Storage Tanks: Install probes **OR** Install probes or use factory-installed integral probes **OR** Use factory-installed integral probes, **as directed**, in interstitial space.
    - b. Single-Wall, Fuel-Oil Storage Tanks: Install probes as indicated.
    - c. Double-Containment, Fuel-Oil Piping: Install leak-detection sensor probes in fuel-oil storage tank containment sumps and at low points in piping **OR** cable probes in interstitial space of double-containment piping, **as directed**.
    - d. Install liquid-level gage.
- N. Connections
1. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
  2. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment having threaded pipe connection.
  3. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment having flanged pipe connection.
  4. Connect piping to equipment with ball valve and union. Install union between valve and equipment.
  5. Install flexible piping connectors at final connection to burners or oil-fired appliances that must be moved for maintenance access.
- O. Labeling And Identifying
1. Nameplates, pipe identification, and signs are specified in Division 23 Section "Identification For Hvac Piping And Equipment".  
**OR**  
Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplates and signs on or near each service regulator, service meter, and earthquake valve.
    - a. Text: In addition to identifying unit, distinguish between multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations.
  2. Install detectable warning tape directly above fuel-oil piping, 12 inches (304 mm) below finished grade, except 6 inches (152 mm) below subgrade under pavements and slabs. Terminate tracer wire in an accessible area, and identify as "tracer wire" for future use with plastic-laminate sign.
    - a. Piping: Over underground fuel-oil distribution piping.
    - b. Fuel-Oil Storage Tanks: Over edges of each UST.
- P. Field Painting Of AST
1. If shop painting AST, prepare and touch up damaged exterior surface of AST and supports, **as directed**, as specified in "Shop Painting of AST" Article.
  2. If field painting AST, prepare exterior steel surface of AST and tank supports, **as directed**.
  3. Field Cleaning: After fabrication, blast clean according to SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3 **OR** SSPC-SP 10/NACE No. 2, **as directed**.
  4. After cleaning, remove dust or residue from cleaned surfaces.
  5. If surfaces develop rust before prime coat is applied, repeat surface preparation.
  6. Prepare surface of AST and supports, **as directed**, and apply painting systems according to specifications in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings" for severe **OR** moderate **OR** mild, **as directed**, environment high-gloss **OR** semigloss, **as directed**, finish for ferrous metal.
- Q. Field Painting Of Aboveground Piping
1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 for painting interior and exterior fuel-oil piping.



2. Paint exposed, exterior metal piping, valves, and piping specialties, except components with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
  - a. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.1D.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat (for a Premium Grade system): Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
    - 3) Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (flat) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
    - 4) Color: Gray, **as directed**.
3. Paint exposed, interior metal piping, valves, and piping specialties, except components with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
  - a. Latex Over Alkyd Primer System: MPI INT 5.1Q.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive **OR** Quick-drying alkyd, **as directed**, metal primer.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat (for a Premium Grade system): Interior latex matching topcoat.
    - 3) Topcoat: Interior latex (flat) **OR** (low sheen) **OR** (eggshell) **OR** (satin) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
    - 4) Color: Gray, **as directed**.
  - b. Alkyd System: MPI INT 5.1E.
    - 1) Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive **OR** Quick-drying alkyd, **as directed**, metal primer.
    - 2) Intermediate Coat (for a Premium Grade system): Interior alkyd matching topcoat.
    - 3) Topcoat: Interior alkyd (flat) **OR** (eggshell) **OR** (semigloss) **OR** (gloss), **as directed**.
    - 4) Color: Gray, **as directed**.
4. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-applied finishes with materials and by procedures to match original factory finish.

#### R. Concrete Bases

1. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
  - a. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit.
  - b. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (457-mm) centers around the full perimeter of the base.
  - c. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - d. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - e. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  - f. Use 3000-psig (20.7-MPa), **unless directed otherwise**, 28-day, compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".

#### S. Field Quality Control

1. Perform tests and inspections.
  - a. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
2. Tests and Inspections:
  - a. Tanks: Minimum hydrostatic or compressed-air test pressures for fuel-oil storage tanks that have not been factory tested and do not bear the ASME code stamp or a listing mark acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:
    - 1) Single-Wall Tanks: Minimum 3 psig (20.7 kPa) and maximum 5 psig (34.5 kPa).
    - 2) Double-Wall Tanks:
      - a) Inner Tanks: Minimum 3 psig (20.7 kPa) and maximum 5 psig (34.5 kPa).
      - b) Interstitial Space: Minimum 3 psig (20.7 kPa) and maximum 5 psig (34.5 kPa), or 5.3-in. Hg (18-kPa) vacuum.



- 3) Where vertical height of fill and vent pipes is such that the static head imposed on the bottom of the tank is greater than 10 psig (69 kPa), hydrostatically test the tank and fill and vent pipes to a pressure equal to the static head thus imposed.
- 4) Maintain the test pressure for one hour.
- b. Piping: Minimum hydrostatic or pneumatic test-pressures measured at highest point in system:
  - 1) Fuel-Oil Distribution Piping: Minimum 5 psig (34.5 kPa) for minimum 30 minutes.
  - 2) Fuel-Oil, Double-Containment Piping:
    - a) Carrier Pipe: Minimum 5 psig (34.5 kPa) for minimum 30 minutes.
    - b) Containment Conduit: Minimum 5 psig (34.5 kPa) for minimum 60 minutes.
  - 3) Suction Piping: Minimum 20-in. Hg (68 kPa) for minimum 30 minutes.
  - 4) Isolate storage tanks if test pressure in piping will cause pressure in storage tanks to exceed 10 psig (69 kPa).
- c. Inspect and test fuel-oil piping according to NFPA 31, "Tests of Piping" Paragraph; and according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- d. Test liquid-level gage for accuracy by manually measuring fuel-oil levels at not less than three **OR** four **OR** five, **as directed**, different depths while filling tank and checking against gage indication.
- e. Test leak-detection and monitoring system for accuracy by manually operating sensors and checking against alarm panel indication.
- f. Start fuel-oil transfer pumps to verify for proper operation of pump and check for leaks.
- g. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- h. Bleed air from fuel-oil piping using manual air vents.
3. Fuel-oil piping and equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
4. Prepare test and inspection reports.

#### T. Outdoor Piping Schedule

1. Underground fuel-oil piping shall be one of the following. Size indicated is carrier-pipe size.
  - a. Flexible, double-containment piping.
  - b. Rigid, double-containment piping.
2. Underground fuel-oil-tank fill and vent piping shall be one of the following:
  - a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Steel pipe, steel or malleable-iron threaded fittings, and threaded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
  - b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Steel pipe, steel welding fittings, and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
3. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
4. Aboveground fuel-oil piping shall be one of the following:
  - a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Steel pipe, steel or malleable-iron threaded fittings, and threaded joints.
  - b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Steel pipe, steel welding fittings, and welded joints.
  - c. Annealed **OR** Drawn, **as directed**,-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.

#### U. Indoor Piping Schedule

1. Aboveground fuel-oil piping shall be one of the following:
  - a. NPS 1/2 (DN 15) and Smaller: Steel pipe, steel or malleable-iron threaded fittings, and threaded joints **OR** Annealed-temper copper pipe, wrought copper fittings, and brazed or flared joints, **as directed**.
  - b. NPS 5/8 to NPS 2 (DN 18 to DN 50): Steel pipe, steel or malleable-iron threaded fittings, and threaded joints **OR** Drawn temper copper pipe, wrought copper fittings, and brazed joints, **as directed**.



- c. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Steel pipe, steel fittings, and welded or flanged joints **OR** Drawn temper copper pipe, wrought copper fittings, and brazed or flanged joints, **as directed**.
  - d. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
  - e. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
  - f. Annealed-temper copper tube, brass fittings, and flared joints.
  - g. Drawn-temper copper tubing, copper fittings, and brazed joints.
- V. Aboveground Manual Fuel-Oil Shutoff Valve Schedule
- 1. Distribution piping valves for pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller shall be one of the following:
    - a. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
    - b. Two-piece, full **OR** regular, **as directed**, -port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
  - 2. Distribution piping valves for pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger shall be one of the following:
    - a. Two-piece, full **OR** regular, **as directed**, -port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
    - b. Bronze, nonlubricated **OR** lubricated, **as directed**, plug valve.
  - 3. Valves in branch piping for single appliance shall be one of the following:
    - a. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
    - b. Two-piece, full **OR** regular, **as directed**, -port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.

END OF SECTION 22 12 23 26a



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
22 12 23 26	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
22 13 16 00	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
22 13 16 00	22 11 23 23	Water Supply Wells
22 13 16 00	22 05 76 00	Sanitary Sewerage
22 13 16 00	22 11 16 00	Common Work Results for Fire Suppression
22 13 16 00	22 11 16 00a	Common Work Results for Plumbing
22 13 16 00	22 11 16 00b	Common Work Results for HVAC
22 13 16 00	22 11 16 00d	Sanitary Waste And Vent Piping
22 13 16 00	22 11 16 00e	Storm Drainage Piping



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



**SECTION 22 13 19 00 - HIGH-EFFICIENCY PARTICULATE FILTRATION****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for high-efficiency particulate filtration. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Summary**

1. Section Includes:
  - a. HEPA rigid-cell box filters.
  - b. HEPA V-bank cell filters.
  - c. HEPA filter diffusers.
  - d. HEPA filter fan modules.
  - e. ULPA filters.
  - f. 95 percent DOP filters.
  - g. Front- and rear-access filter frames.
  - h. Side-service housings.
  - i. Filter gages.

**C. Submittals**

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include dimensions; operating characteristics; required clearances and access; rated flow capacity, including initial and final pressure drop at rated airflow; efficiency and test method; fire classification; furnished specialties; and accessories for each model indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Prerequisite EQ 1: Documentation indicating that units comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5, "Systems and Equipment."
3. Shop Drawings: For air filters. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - a. Show filter rack assembly, dimensions, materials, and methods of assembly of components.
  - b. Include setting drawings, templates, and requirements for installing anchor bolts and anchorages.
  - c. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Field quality-control reports.
5. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of filter and rack to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

**D. Quality Assurance**

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended use.
2. ASHRAE Compliance:
  - a. Finish of Interior Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
3. Comply with IEST-RP-CC001.3.
4. Comply with UL 586.
5. Comply with IEST-RP-CC007.1.
6. Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

**E. Coordination**

1. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases.



## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. HEPA Rigid-Cell Box Filters

1. Description: Factory-fabricated, disposable, packaged air filters with media perpendicular to airflow and with holding frames.
2. Filter Unit Class: UL 900, Class 1 **OR** Class 2, **as directed**.
3. Media: Fibrous material, constructed so individual pleats are maintained under rated-airflow conditions.
  - a. Internal Separators: None **OR** Aluminum in media folds, **as directed**.
  - b. Gasket Material: None **OR** Neoprene **OR** Blue gel, **as directed**.
  - c. Gasket Location: None **OR** Upstream **OR** Upstream and Downstream **OR** Downstream, **as directed**.
  - d. Faceguard Material: Aluminum **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
  - e. Faceguard Location: None **OR** Upstream **OR** Upstream and Downstream **OR** Downstream, **as directed**.
4. Filter-Media Frames:
  - a. Finish of Interior Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
  - b. Materials: Stainless steel **OR** Fire-retardant plywood **OR** Fabricated aluminum **OR** Fire-retardant particleboard **OR** Galvanized sheet **OR** Non-fire-retardant particleboard, **as directed**.
  - c. Style: Box **OR** Double-turned flange **OR** Deep channel **OR** Double-turned flange, one side, **as directed**.
5. Mounting Frames: Welded galvanized steel with gaskets and fasteners; suitable for bolting together into built-up filter banks.

### B. HEPA V-Bank Cell Filters

1. Description: Factory-fabricated, disposable, packaged air filters with media at an angle to airflow and with holding frames.
2. Filter Unit Class: UL 900, Class 1 **OR** Class 2, **as directed**.
3. Media: Fibrous material, constructed so individual pleats are maintained under rated-airflow conditions.
  - a. Internal Separators: None **OR** Aluminum in media folds, **as directed**.
  - b. Gasket Material: None **OR** Neoprene **OR** Blue gel, **as directed**.
  - c. Gasket Location: None **OR** Upstream **OR** Upstream and Downstream **OR** Downstream, **as directed**.
  - d. Faceguard Material: Aluminum **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
  - e. Faceguard Location: None **OR** Upstream **OR** Upstream and Downstream **OR** Downstream, **as directed**.
4. Filter-Media Frames:
  - a. Finish of Interior Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
  - b. Materials: Stainless steel **OR** Fire-retardant plywood **OR** Fabricated aluminum **OR** Fire-retardant particleboard **OR** Galvanized sheet **OR** Non-fire-retardant particleboard, **as directed**.
  - c. Style: Box **OR** Double-turned flange **OR** Deep channel **OR** Double-turned flange, one side, **as directed**.
5. Mounting Frames: Welded galvanized steel with gaskets and fasteners; suitable for bolting together into built-up filter banks.

### C. HEPA Filter Diffusers

1. Description: Factory-fabricated, individually ducted, HEPA filter-holding ceiling modules.
2. Media: Fibrous glass, constructed of continuous sheets with closely spaced pleats with glass filament separators.
  - a. Media to Module Side Bond: Urethane sealant.



- b. Media to Frame Side Bond: Polyurethane foam **OR** Silicone **OR** Neoprene adhesive **OR** Fiberglass-mat packing **OR** Thermosetting sealant **OR** Knife edge in fluid-filled channel, **as directed**.
  - c. Application: Class 100 **OR** Class 10 **OR** Class 1, **as directed**, clean room.
  - 3. Casing:
    - a. Configuration: Ducted inlet **OR** Plenum inlet **OR** Plenum inlet with prefilter, **as directed**.
    - b. Module Material: Extruded aluminum, 16 gage with mill finish.
    - c. Suspension: Ceiling grid.
  - 4. Accessories:
    - a. Diffusion damper.
    - b. Diffusion-damper adjustment port.
    - c. Filter test port.
- D. HEPA Filter Fan Modules
- 1. Description: Factory-fabricated, HEPA filter ceiling module with fan.
  - 2. Casing:
    - a. Configuration: Ducted inlet **OR** Plenum inlet **OR** Plenum inlet with prefilter, **as directed**.
    - b. Module Material: Extruded aluminum, 16 gage with mill finish.
    - c. Suspension: Ceiling grid **OR** Independent, **as directed**.
  - 3. Media: Fibrous glass, constructed of continuous sheets with closely spaced pleats with aluminum separators **OR** vinyl-coated aluminum separators **OR** separators of ribbons of filter media, **as directed**.
    - a. Frame Material: 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) thick, fire-retardant plywood **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) thick, fire-retardant particleboard **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) thick plywood **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) thick particleboard **OR** Galvanized steel **OR** Aluminized steel **OR** Cadmium-plated steel **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Aluminum, **as directed**.
    - b. Media to Frame Side Bond: Polyurethane foam **OR** Silicone **OR** Neoprene adhesive **OR** Fiberglass-mat packing **OR** Thermosetting sealant **OR** Knife edge in fluid-filled channel, **as directed**.
    - c. Face Gasket: Neoprene expanded rubber **OR** Ceramic fiber **OR** Silicone, **as directed**.
    - d. Faceguard: Plastic **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
  - 4. Accessories: Filter test port.
  - 5. Control: Variable speed.
  - 6. Motor:
    - a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".
    - b. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 22.
    - c. Type: Permanent-split capacitor with SCR for speed adjustment **OR** Electronically commutated motor, **as directed**.
    - d. Fan-Motor Assembly Isolation: Rubber isolators.
    - e. Enclosure: Open dripproof **OR** Totally enclosed, fan cooled **OR** Totally enclosed, air over **OR** Open, externally ventilated **OR** Totally enclosed, nonventilated **OR** Severe duty **OR** Explosion proof **OR** Dust-ignition-proof machine, **as directed**.
    - f. Enclosure Materials: Cast iron **OR** Cast aluminum **OR** Rolled steel, **as directed**.
    - g. Motor Bearings: **<Insert special requirements>**.
    - h. Unusual Service Conditions:
      - 1) Ambient Temperature: **<Insert deg F (deg C)>**.
      - 2) Altitude: **<Insert feet (m)>** above sea level.
      - 3) High humidity.
    - i. Efficiency: Premium efficient.
    - j. NEMA Design: **<Insert designation>**.
    - k. Service Factor: **<Insert value>**.
    - l. Motor Speed: Single speed **OR** Multispeed, **as directed**.
      - 1) Speed Control: Infinitely adjustable with pneumatic-electric and electronic controls.



#### E. ULPA Filters

1. Description: Factory-fabricated, ULPA filters with holding casing.
2. Media: Fibrous glass, constructed of continuous sheets with closely spaced pleats with aluminum separators **OR** vinyl-coated aluminum separators **OR** separators of ribbons of filter media, **as directed**.
3. Frame Material: 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) thick, fire-retardant plywood **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) thick, fire-retardant particleboard **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) thick plywood **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) thick particleboard **OR** Galvanized steel **OR** Aluminized steel **OR** Cadmium-plated steel **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Aluminum, **as directed**.
4. Media to Frame Side Bond: Polyurethane foam **OR** Silicone **OR** Neoprene adhesive **OR** Fiberglass-mat packing **OR** Thermosetting sealant **OR** Knife-edge in fluid-filled channel, **as directed**.
5. Face Gasket: Neoprene expanded rubber **OR** Ceramic fiber **OR** Silicone, **as directed**.
6. Mounting Frames: Construct downstream corners of holding device with cushion pads to protect media. Provide bolted filter-sealing mechanism to mount and continuously seal each individual filter.

#### F. 95 Percent DOP Filters

1. Description: Factory-fabricated, 95 percent DOP filters with holding casing.
2. Media: Fibrous glass, constructed of continuous sheets with closely spaced pleats with aluminum separators **OR** vinyl-coated aluminum separators **OR** separators of ribbons of filter media, **as directed**.
3. Frame Material: 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) thick, fire-retardant plywood **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) thick, fire-retardant particleboard **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) thick plywood **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) thick particleboard **OR** Galvanized steel **OR** Aluminized steel **OR** Cadmium-plated steel **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Aluminum, **as directed**.
4. Frame Style: Box single header **OR** Double header **OR** Double turned flange **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) deep channel, **as directed**.
5. Media to Frame Side Bond: Polyurethane foam **OR** Silicone **OR** Neoprene adhesive **OR** Fiberglass-mat packing **OR** Thermosetting sealant **OR** Knife edge in fluid-filled channel, **as directed**.
6. Face Guard Material: Galvanized **OR** Aluminum, **as directed**, mesh.
7. Face Guard Location: Upstream **OR** Upstream and Downstream **OR** Downstream, **as directed**.
8. Gasket Material: Neoprene expanded rubber **OR** Ceramic fiber **OR** Silicone, **as directed**.
9. Gasket Location: Upstream **OR** Upstream and Downstream **OR** Downstream, **as directed**.
10. Mounting Frames: Construct downstream corners of holding device with cushion pads to protect media. Provide bolted filter-sealing mechanism to mount and continuously seal each individual filter.

#### G. Front- And Rear-Access Filter Frames

1. Framing System: Aluminum framing members with access for either upstream (front) or downstream (rear) filter servicing, cut to size and prepunched for assembly into modules. Vertically support filters to prevent deflection of horizontal members without interfering with either filter installation or operation.
2. Prefilters: Incorporate a separate track, removable from front or back.
3. Sealing: Factory-installed, positive-sealing device for each row of filters to ensure seal between gasketed filter elements to prevent bypass of unfiltered air.
4. Finish of Interior Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

#### H. Side-Service Housings

1. Description: Factory-assembled, side-service housings, constructed of 0.064-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick, galvanized steel **OR** stainless steel **OR** double-wall casing with 1-inch (25-mm) insulation, **as directed**, to hold filters. Side servicing is through gasketed access doors on one side, and



housings are capable of connection to other housings. Equip housings with metal slide channel tracks with clamping mechanisms to hold filters, and the following:

- a. Pressure tap and fitting.
  - b. DOP/freon test ports.
  - c. Decontamination ports.
  - d. Isolation dampers.
  - e. Lifting lugs.
2. Prefilters: Integral tracks to accommodate 2-, 4-, and 6-inch- (50-, 100-, and 150-mm-) thick, disposable filters.
  3. Access Doors: Continuous gaskets on perimeter and positive-locking swivel, **as directed**, devices. Provide ribbed bagging rim behind access door and PVC bags for bag-in, bag-out arrangement, **as directed**. Arrange so filter cartridges can be loaded from an access door for each tier and section of the following:
    - a. Combination prefilter and HEPA filter.  
**OR**  
Prefilter.  
**OR**  
HEPA filter.
    - b. Upstream and downstream test section.
  4. Sealing: Incorporate positive-sealing gasket material on channels to seal top and bottom of filter cartridge frames to prevent bypass of unfiltered air.
  5. Accessories:
    - a. Filter change-out trays.
    - b. Document-storage pocket.
    - c. Filter removal rod.
  6. Finish of Interior Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

#### I. Filter Gages

1. Diaphragm type with dial and pointer in metal case, vent valves, black figures on white background, and front recalibration adjustment.
  - a. Diameter: 4-1/2 inches (115 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**.
  - b. Scale Range for Filter Media Having a Recommended Final Resistance of 0.5-Inch wg (125 Pa) or Less: 0- to 0.5-inch wg (0 to 125 Pa).
  - c. Scale Range for Filter Media Having a Recommended Final Resistance of 0.5- to 1.0-Inch wg (125 to 250 Pa) or Less: 0- to 1.0-inch wg (0 to 250 Pa).
  - d. Scale Range for Filter Media Having a Recommended Final Resistance of 1.0- to 2.0-Inch wg (250 to 500 Pa) or Less: 0- to 2.0-inch wg (0 to 500 Pa).
  - e. Scale Range for Filter Media Having a Recommended Final Resistance of 2.0- to 3.0-Inch wg (500 to 750 Pa) or Less: 0- to 3.0-inch wg (0 to 750 Pa).
  - f. Scale Range for Filter Media Having a Recommended Final Resistance of 3.0- to 4.0-Inch wg (750 to 1000 Pa) or Less: 0- to 4.0-inch wg (0 to 1000 Pa).
2. Manometer-Type Filter Gage: Molded plastic, with epoxy-coated aluminum scale, logarithmic-curve tube gage with integral leveling gage; graduated to read from 0- to 3.0-inch wg (0 to 750 Pa) and accurate within 3 percent of full-scale range.
3. Accessories: Static-pressure tips, tubing, gage connections, and mounting bracket.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation

1. Position each filter unit with clearance for normal service and maintenance. Anchor filter holding frames to substrate.
2. Install filters in position to prevent passage of unfiltered air.
3. Install filter gage for each filter bank.



4. Do not operate fan system until filters (temporary or permanent) are in place. Replace temporary filters that were used during construction and testing with new, clean filters.
5. Install filter-gage static-pressure taps upstream and downstream from filters. Install filter gages on filter banks with separate static-pressure taps upstream and downstream from filters. Mount filter gages on outside of filter housing or filter plenum in an accessible position. Adjust and level inclined gages.
6. Coordinate filter installations with duct and air-handling unit installations.

B. Field Quality Control

1. Perform tests and inspections.
2. Tests and Inspections:
  - a. Operate automatic roll filters to demonstrate compliance with requirements.
  - b. Test for leakage of unfiltered air while system is operating.
  - c. HEPA Filters: Pressurize housing to a minimum of 3.0-inch wg (750 Pa) or to designed operating pressure, whichever is higher; test housing joints, door seals, and sealing edges of filter with soapy water to check for air leaks.
  - d. HEPA Filters: Pressurize housing to a minimum of 3.0-inch wg (750 Pa) or to designed operating pressure, whichever is higher; and test housing joints, door seals, and sealing edges of filter for air leaks according to pressure-decay method in ASME N510.
3. Air filter will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
4. Prepare test and inspection reports.

C. Cleaning

1. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing air-handling and air-distribution systems, clean filter housings and install new filter media.

END OF SECTION 22 13 19 00



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
22 13 19 13	22 13 19 00	High-Efficiency Particulate Filtration

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





## SECTION 22 13 19 26 - INTERCEPTORS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for interceptors. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Grease interceptors.
  - b. Oil interceptors.
  - c. Sand interceptors.

#### C. Definitions

1. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
2. PP: Polypropylene plastic.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of metal and plastic interceptor indicated. Include materials of fabrication, dimensions, rated capacities, retention capacities, operating characteristics, size and location of each pipe connection, furnished specialties, and accessories.
2. Shop Drawings: For each type and size of precast-concrete interceptor indicated.
  - a. Include materials of construction, dimensions, rated capacities, retention capacities, location and size of each pipe connection, furnished specialties, and accessories.
3. Coordination Drawings: Interceptors, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from Installers of the items involved:
  - a. Interceptors.
  - b. Piping connections. Include size, location, and elevation of each.
  - c. Interface with underground structures and utility services.

#### E. Project Conditions

1. Interruption of Existing Sewer Services: Do not interrupt services to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary sewer services according to requirements indicated:
  - a. Notify the Owner no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
  - b. Do not proceed with interruption of sewer services without the Owner's written permission.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Grease Interceptors

1. Grease Interceptors: Precast concrete complying with ASTM C 913.
  - a. Include rubber-gasketed joints, vent connections (if required), manholes, compartments or baffles, and piping or openings to retain grease and to permit wastewater flow, unless directed otherwise.
  - b. Structural Design Loads:
    - 1) Light-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-8 (ASSHTO HS10-44).
    - 2) Medium-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-12 (ASSHTO HS15-44).
    - 3) Heavy-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-16 (ASSHTO HS20-44).
    - 4) Walkway Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-03.



- c. Resilient Pipe Connectors (if required): ASTM C 923 (ASTM C 923M), cast or fitted into interceptor walls, for each pipe connection.
- d. Steps: Individual FRP steps or FRP ladder **OR** Individual FRP steps, FRP ladder, or ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP **OR** ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP, **as directed**, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch (300- to 400-mm) intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of interceptor to finished grade is less than 60 inches (1500 mm).
- e. Grade Rings (if required): Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch (150- to 225-mm) total thickness, to match diameter of manhole frame and cover.
- f. Manhole Frames and Covers: Ferrous; 24-inch (610-mm) ID by 7- to 9-inch (175- to 225-mm) riser with 4-inch- (100-mm-) minimum width flange and 26-inch- (660-mm-) diameter cover.
  - 1) Ductile Iron: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2) Gray Iron: ASTM A 48, Class 35, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3) Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to "INTERCEPTOR," or "GREASE INTERCEPTOR," or "SANITARY SEWER."

#### B. Oil Interceptors

1. Oil Interceptors: Precast concrete comply with ASTM C 913.
  - a. Include rubber-gasketed joints, vent connections, manholes, compartments or baffles, and piping or openings to retain grease and to permit wastewater flow.
  - b. Structural Design Loads:
    - 1) Light-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-8 (ASSHTO HS10-44).
    - 2) Medium-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-12 (ASSHTO HS15-44).
    - 3) Heavy-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-16 (ASSHTO HS20-44).
    - 4) Walkway Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-03.
  - c. Resilient Pipe Connectors (if required): ASTM C 923 (ASTM C 923M), cast or fitted into interceptor walls, for each pipe connection.
  - d. Steps: Individual FRP steps or FRP ladder **OR** Individual FRP steps, FRP ladder, or ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP **OR** ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP, **as directed**, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch (300- to 400-mm) intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of interceptor to finished grade is less than 60 inches (1500 mm).
  - e. Grade Rings (if required): Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch (150- to 225-mm) total thickness, to match diameter of manhole frame and cover.
  - f. Manhole Frames and Covers: Ferrous; 24-inch (610-mm) ID by 7- to 9-inch (175- to 225-mm) riser with 4-inch- (100-mm-) minimum width flange and 26-inch- (660-mm-) diameter cover.
    - 1) Ductile Iron: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, unless otherwise indicated.
    - 2) Gray Iron: ASTM A 48, Class 35, unless otherwise indicated.
    - 3) Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to "INTERCEPTOR," or "OIL INTERCEPTOR," or "SANITARY SEWER."
  - g. Waste-oil storage tank and piping are specified in Division 23 Section "Facility Fuel-oil Piping".
2. Oil Interceptors: Factory-fabricated, cast-iron or steel body; with removable sediment bucket or strainer, baffles, vents, and flow-control fitting on inlet.
  - a. Inlet, Outlet, Vent, and Waste-Oil Outlet Piping Connections: Hub, hubless, or threaded, unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Extension (if required): Cast-iron or steel shroud, full size of interceptor, extending from top of interceptor to grade.



- c. Cover: Cast iron or steel, with steel reinforcement to provide ASTM C 890, A-03, walkway load, **as directed**.
    - d. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Facility Fuel-oil Piping" for waste-oil storage tank and piping
  3. Oil Interceptors: Plastic body; with removable sediment bucket or strainer, baffles, vents, and flow-control fitting on inlet.
    - a. Inlet, Outlet, Vent, and Waste-Oil Outlet Piping Connections: Hub, hubless, or threaded, unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Extension (if required): Plastic shroud, full size of interceptor, extending from top of interceptor to grade.
    - c. Cover: Plastic with steel reinforcement to provide ASTM C 890, A-03, walkway load, **as directed**.
    - d. Waste-oil storage tank and piping are specified in Division 23 Section "Facility Fuel-oil Piping".
- C. Sand Interceptors
  1. Description: Factory-fabricated, cast-iron or steel body and inlet grate; with settlement chamber and removable basket or strainer.
  2. Outlet Piping Connection: Hub, hubless, or threaded, unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Grate: Cast iron or steel with reinforcement to provide ASTM C 890, A-03, walkway load, **as directed**.
- D. Precast-Concrete Manhole Risers
  1. Precast-Concrete Manhole Risers: ASTM C 478 (ASTM C 478M) **OR** ASTM C 913, **as directed**, with rubber-gasket joints.
    - a. Structural Design Loads:
      - 1) Light-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-8 (ASSHTO HS10-44).
      - 2) Medium-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-12 (ASSHTO HS15-44).
      - 3) Heavy-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-16 (ASSHTO HS20-44).
      - 4) Walkway Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-03.
    - b. Length: From top of underground concrete structure to grade.
    - c. Riser Sections: 3-inch (75-mm) minimum thickness and 36-inch (915-mm) diameter.
    - d. Top Section: Eccentric cone, unless otherwise indicated. Include top of cone to match grade ring size.
    - e. Gaskets: ASTM C 443 (ASTM C 443M), rubber.
    - f. Steps: Individual FRP steps or FRP ladder **OR** Individual FRP steps, FRP ladder, or ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP **OR** ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP, **as directed**, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch (300- to 400-mm) intervals.
  2. Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch (150- to 225-mm) total thickness, diameter matching manhole frame and cover, and height as required to adjust the manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope.
  3. Manhole Frames and Covers (if required): Ferrous; 24-inch (610-mm) ID by 7- to 9-inch (175- to 225-mm) riser with 4-inch- (100-mm-) minimum width flange and 26-inch- (660-mm-) diameter cover.
    - a. Ductile Iron: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Gray Iron: ASTM A 48, Class 35, unless otherwise indicated.
    - c. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to the following:
      - 1) Grease Interceptors in Sanitary Sewerage System: "INTERCEPTOR" **OR** "GREASE INTERCEPTOR" **OR** "SANITARY SEWER", **as directed**.
      - 2) Oil Interceptors in Sanitary Sewerage System: "INTERCEPTOR" **OR** "OIL INTERCEPTOR" **OR** "SANITARY SEWER", **as directed**.



### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Earthwork

1. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".

#### B. Installation

1. Install precast-concrete interceptors according to ASTM C 891. Set level and plumb.
2. Install manhole risers from top of underground concrete interceptors to manholes and gratings at finished grade.
3. Set tops of manhole frames and covers flush with finished surface in pavements. Set tops 3 inches (75 mm) above finish surface elsewhere, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Set tops of grating frames and grates flush with finished surface.
5. Set metal and plastic interceptors level and plumb.
6. Set tops of metal interceptor covers flush with finished surface in pavements. Set tops 3 inches (75 mm) above finish surface elsewhere, unless otherwise indicated.
7. Install piping and oil storage tanks according to Division 23 Section "Facility Fuel-oil Piping".

#### C. Connections

1. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
2. Make piping connections between interceptors and piping systems.

#### D. Identification

1. Identification materials and installation are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving". Arrange for installation of green warning tapes directly over piping and at outside edges of underground interceptors.
  - a. Use warning tapes or detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.
  - b. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground structures.

END OF SECTION 22 13 19 26



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
22 13 19 26	22 13 19 00	High-Efficiency Particulate Filtration

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 22 13 19 33 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of general-duty valves for plumbing piping. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Bronze angle valves.
  - b. Brass ball valves.
  - c. Bronze ball valves.
  - d. Iron ball valves.
  - e. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
  - f. Iron, grooved-end butterfly valves.
  - g. Bronze lift check valves.
  - h. Bronze swing check valves.
  - i. Iron swing check valves.
  - j. Iron swing check valves with closure control.
  - k. Iron, grooved-end swing check valves.
  - l. Iron, center-guided check valves.
  - m. Iron, plate-type check valves.
  - n. Bronze gate valves.
  - o. Iron gate valves.
  - p. Bronze globe valves.
  - q. Iron globe valves.
  - r. Lubricated plug valves.
  - s. Chainwheels.

#### C. Definitions

1. CWP: Cold working pressure.
2. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
3. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
4. NRS: Nonrising stem.
5. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
6. RS: Rising stem.
7. SWP: Steam working pressure.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
2. ASME Compliance:
  - a. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
  - b. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
  - c. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
3. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.

#### F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling



1. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
  - a. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
  - b. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
  - c. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
  - d. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
  - e. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
  - f. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
2. Use the following precautions during storage:
  - a. Maintain valve end protection.
  - b. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
3. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. General Requirements For Valves

1. Refer to valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
2. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
3. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
4. Valve Actuator Types:
  - a. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 (DN 200) and larger.
  - b. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
  - c. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 (DN 150) and smaller except plug valves, **as directed**.
  - d. Wrench: For plug valves with square heads. Furnish the Owner with 1 wrench for every 5 **OR 10, as directed**, plug valves, for each size square plug-valve head.
  - e. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to valve handwheel, stem, or other actuator; of size and with chain for mounting height, as indicated in the "Valve Installation" Article.
5. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch (50-mm) stem extensions and the following features:
  - a. Gate Valves: With rising stem.
  - b. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
  - c. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.
6. Valve-End Connections:
  - a. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
  - b. Grooved: With grooves according to AWWA C606.
  - c. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
  - d. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
7. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

### B. Bronze Angle Valves

1. Class 125, Bronze Angle Valves with Bronze Disc:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
    - 4) Ends: Threaded.
    - 5) Stem and Disc: Bronze.
    - 6) Packing: Asbestos free.
    - 7) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.
2. Class 125, Bronze Angle Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:





- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
    - 4) Ends: Threaded.
    - 5) Stem: Bronze.
    - 6) Disc: PTFE or TFE.
    - 7) Packing: Asbestos free.
    - 8) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.
  3. Class 150, Bronze Angle Valves with Bronze Disc:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
      - 2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      - 3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
      - 4) Ends: Threaded.
      - 5) Stem and Disc: Bronze.
      - 6) Packing: Asbestos free.
      - 7) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.
  4. Class 150, Bronze Angle Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
      - 2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      - 3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
      - 4) Ends: Threaded.
      - 5) Stem: Bronze.
      - 6) Disc: PTFE or TFE.
      - 7) Packing: Asbestos free.
      - 8) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.
- C. Brass Ball Valves
1. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
      - 2) CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
      - 3) Body Design: One piece.
      - 4) Body Material: Forged brass.
      - 5) Ends: Threaded.
      - 6) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
      - 7) Stem: Brass.
      - 8) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
      - 9) Port: Reduced.
  2. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
      - 2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      - 3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
      - 4) Body Design: Two piece.
      - 5) Body Material: Forged brass.
      - 6) Ends: Threaded.
      - 7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
      - 8) Stem: Brass.
      - 9) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
      - 10) Port: Full.
  3. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-110.



- 2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
  - 3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
  - 4) Body Design: Two piece.
  - 5) Body Material: Forged brass.
  - 6) Ends: Threaded.
  - 7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
  - 8) Stem: Stainless steel.
  - 9) Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
  - 10) Port: Full.
4. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
      - 2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      - 3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
      - 4) Body Design: Two piece.
      - 5) Body Material: Forged brass.
      - 6) Ends: Threaded.
      - 7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
      - 8) Stem: Brass.
      - 9) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
      - 10) Port: Regular.
  5. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
      - 2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      - 3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
      - 4) Body Design: Two piece.
      - 5) Body Material: Brass or bronze.
      - 6) Ends: Threaded.
      - 7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
      - 8) Stem: Stainless steel.
      - 9) Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
      - 10) Port: Regular.
  6. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
      - 2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      - 3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
      - 4) Body Design: Three piece.
      - 5) Body Material: Forged brass.
      - 6) Ends: Threaded.
      - 7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
      - 8) Stem: Brass.
      - 9) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
      - 10) Port: Full.
  7. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
      - 2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      - 3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
      - 4) Body Design: Three piece.
      - 5) Body Material: Forged brass.
      - 6) Ends: Threaded.
      - 7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
      - 8) Stem: Stainless steel.



- 9) Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- 10) Port: Full.

D. Bronze Ball Valves

1. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: One piece.
    - 4) Body Material: Bronze.
    - 5) Ends: Threaded.
    - 6) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - 7) Stem: Bronze.
    - 8) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    - 9) Port: Reduced.
2. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: One piece.
    - 4) Body Material: Bronze.
    - 5) Ends: Threaded.
    - 6) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - 7) Stem: Stainless steel.
    - 8) Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
    - 9) Port: Reduced.
3. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - 2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
    - 4) Body Design: Two piece.
    - 5) Body Material: Bronze.
    - 6) Ends: Threaded.
    - 7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - 8) Stem: Bronze.
    - 9) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    - 10) Port: Full.
4. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - 2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
    - 4) Body Design: Two piece.
    - 5) Body Material: Bronze.
    - 6) Ends: Threaded.
    - 7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - 8) Stem: Stainless steel.
    - 9) Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
    - 10) Port: Full.
5. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - 2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
    - 4) Body Design: Two piece.



- 5) Body Material: Bronze.
  - 6) Ends: Threaded.
  - 7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
  - 8) Stem: Bronze.
  - 9) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  - 10) Port: Regular.
6. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
      - 2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      - 3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
      - 4) Body Design: Two piece.
      - 5) Body Material: Bronze.
      - 6) Ends: Threaded.
      - 7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
      - 8) Stem: Stainless steel.
      - 9) Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
      - 10) Port: Regular.
  7. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
      - 2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      - 3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
      - 4) Body Design: Three piece.
      - 5) Body Material: Bronze.
      - 6) Ends: Threaded.
      - 7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
      - 8) Stem: Bronze.
      - 9) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
      - 10) Port: Full.
  8. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
      - 2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      - 3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
      - 4) Body Design: Three piece.
      - 5) Body Material: Bronze.
      - 6) Ends: Threaded.
      - 7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
      - 8) Stem: Stainless steel.
      - 9) Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
      - 10) Port: Full.
- E. Iron Ball Valves
1. Class 125, Iron Ball Valves:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-72.
      - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      - 3) Body Design: Split body.
      - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      - 5) Ends: Flanged.
      - 6) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
      - 7) Stem: Stainless steel.
      - 8) Ball: Stainless steel.
      - 9) Port: Full.



## F. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves

1. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - 5) Seat: EPDM.
    - 6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
    - 7) Disc: Aluminum bronze.
2. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - 5) Seat: NBR.
    - 6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
    - 7) Disc: Aluminum bronze.
3. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Ductile-Iron Disc:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - 5) Seat: EPDM.
    - 6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
    - 7) Disc: Nickel-plated or -coated, **as directed**, ductile iron.
4. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Ductile-Iron Disc:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - 5) Seat: NBR.
    - 6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
    - 7) Disc: Nickel-plated or -coated, **as directed**, ductile iron.
5. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Stainless-Steel Disc:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - 5) Seat: EPDM.
    - 6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
    - 7) Disc: Stainless steel.
6. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Stainless-Steel Disc:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).



- 3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
- 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
- 5) Seat: NBR.
- 6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
- 7) Disc: Stainless steel.

#### G. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves

1. 175 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: Coated, ductile iron.
    - 4) Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
    - 5) Disc: Coated, ductile iron.
    - 6) Seal: EPDM.
2. 300 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - 2) NPS 8 (DN 200) and Smaller CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
    - 3) NPS 10 (DN 250) and Larger CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 4) Body Material: Coated, ductile iron.
    - 5) Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
    - 6) Disc: Coated, ductile iron.
    - 7) Seal: EPDM.

#### H. Bronze Lift Check Valves

1. Class 125, Lift Check Valves with Bronze Disc:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: Vertical flow.
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
    - 5) Ends: Threaded.
    - 6) Disc: Bronze.
2. Class 125, Lift Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: Vertical flow.
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
    - 5) Ends: Threaded.
    - 6) Disc: NBR, PTFE, or TFE.

#### I. Bronze Swing Check Valves

1. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: Horizontal flow.
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
    - 5) Ends: Threaded.
    - 6) Disc: Bronze.
2. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
  - a. Description:



- 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
  - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
  - 3) Body Design: Horizontal flow.
  - 4) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
  - 5) Ends: Threaded.
  - 6) Disc: PTFE or TFE.
3. Class 150, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: Horizontal flow.
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
    - 5) Ends: Threaded.
    - 6) Disc: Bronze.
4. Class 150, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: Horizontal flow.
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
    - 5) Ends: Threaded.
    - 6) Disc: PTFE or TFE.

J. Iron Swing Check Valves

1. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
    - 5) Ends: Flanged.
    - 6) Trim: Bronze.
    - 7) Gasket: Asbestos free.
2. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic-to-Metal Seats:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
    - 5) Ends: Flanged.
    - 6) Trim: Composition.
    - 7) Seat Ring: Bronze.
    - 8) Disc Holder: Bronze.
    - 9) Disc: PTFE or TFE.
    - 10) Gasket: Asbestos free.
3. Class 250, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
    - 5) Ends: Flanged.
    - 6) Trim: Bronze.
    - 7) Gasket: Asbestos free.

K. Iron Swing Check Valves With Closure Control



1. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever- and Spring-Closure Control:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
      - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      - 3) Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
      - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      - 5) Ends: Flanged.
      - 6) Trim: Bronze.
      - 7) Gasket: Asbestos free.
      - 8) Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and spring.
  2. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever- and Weight-Closure Control:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
      - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      - 3) Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
      - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      - 5) Ends: Flanged.
      - 6) Trim: Bronze.
      - 7) Gasket: Asbestos free.
      - 8) Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and weight.
- L. Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves
1. 300 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      - 2) Body Material: ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      - 3) Seal: EPDM.
      - 4) Disc: Spring-operated, ductile iron or stainless steel.
- M. Iron, Center-Guided Check Valves
1. Class 125, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
      - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      - 4) Style: Compact wafer.
      - 5) Seat: Bronze.
  2. Class 125, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
      - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      - 4) Style: Globe, spring loaded.
      - 5) Ends: Flanged.
      - 6) Seat: Bronze.
  3. Class 150, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
      - 2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      - 4) Style: Compact wafer.
      - 5) Seat: Bronze.
  4. Class 150, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-125.





- 2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
  - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
  - 4) Style: Globe, spring loaded.
  - 5) Ends: Flanged.
  - 6) Seat: Bronze.
5. Class 250, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - 4) Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
    - 5) Seat: Bronze.
6. Class 250, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - 4) Style: Globe, spring loaded.
    - 5) Ends: Flanged.
    - 6) Seat: Bronze.
7. Class 300, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - 4) Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
    - 5) Seat: Bronze.
8. Class 300, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - 4) Style: Globe, spring loaded.
    - 5) Ends: Flanged.
    - 6) Seat: Bronze.
9. Class 125, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - 4) Style: Compact wafer.
    - 5) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
10. Class 125, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - 4) Style: Globe, spring loaded.
    - 5) Ends: Flanged.
    - 6) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
11. Class 150, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - 4) Style: Compact wafer.



- 5) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
  12. Class 150, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
      - 2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      - 4) Style: Globe, spring loaded.
      - 5) Ends: Flanged.
      - 6) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
  13. Class 250, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
      - 2) CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
      - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      - 4) Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
      - 5) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
  14. Class 250, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
      - 2) CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
      - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      - 4) Style: Globe, spring loaded.
      - 5) Ends: Flanged.
      - 6) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
  15. Class 300, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
      - 2) CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
      - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      - 4) Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
      - 5) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
  16. Class 300, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
      - 2) CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
      - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      - 4) Style: Globe, spring loaded.
      - 5) Ends: Flanged.
      - 6) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
- N. Iron, Plate-Type Check Valves
1. Class 125, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: API 594.
      - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      - 3) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
      - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      - 5) Seat: Bronze.
  2. Class 150, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: API 594.
      - 2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      - 3) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
      - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      - 5) Seat: Bronze.



3. Class 250, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: API 594.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - 5) Seat: Bronze.
4. Class 300, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: API 594.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - 5) Seat: Bronze.
5. Class 125, Iron, Single-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: API 594.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plate.
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - 5) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
6. Class 125, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: API 594.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - 5) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
7. Class 150, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: API 594.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - 5) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
8. Class 250, Iron, Wafer, Single-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: API 594.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plate.
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - 5) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
9. Class 250, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: API 594.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - 5) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
10. Class 300, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: API 594.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - 5) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.



O. Bronze Gate Valves

1. Class 125, NRS Bronze Gate Valves:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
    - 4) Ends: Threaded or solder joint, **as directed**.
    - 5) Stem: Bronze.
    - 6) Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
    - 7) Packing: Asbestos free.
    - 8) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.
2. Class 125, RS Bronze Gate Valves:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
    - 4) Ends: Threaded or solder joint, **as directed**.
    - 5) Stem: Bronze.
    - 6) Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
    - 7) Packing: Asbestos free.
    - 8) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.
3. Class 150, NRS Bronze Gate Valves:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
    - 4) Ends: Threaded.
    - 5) Stem: Bronze.
    - 6) Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
    - 7) Packing: Asbestos free.
    - 8) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.
4. Class 150, RS Bronze Gate Valves:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
    - 4) Ends: Threaded.
    - 5) Stem: Bronze.
    - 6) Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
    - 7) Packing: Asbestos free.
    - 8) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.

P. Iron Gate Valves

1. Class 125, NRS, Iron Gate Valves:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
    - 4) Ends: Flanged.
    - 5) Trim: Bronze.
    - 6) Disc: Solid wedge.
    - 7) Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
2. Class 125, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.



- 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
  - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - 4) Ends: Flanged.
  - 5) Trim: Bronze.
  - 6) Disc: Solid wedge.
  - 7) Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
3. Class 250, NRS, Iron Gate Valves:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
    - 4) Ends: Flanged.
    - 5) Trim: Bronze.
    - 6) Disc: Solid wedge.
    - 7) Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
4. Class 250, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
    - 4) Ends: Flanged.
    - 5) Trim: Bronze.
    - 6) Disc: Solid wedge.
    - 7) Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

Q. Bronze Globe Valves

1. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Bronze Disc:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
    - 4) Ends: Threaded or solder joint, **as directed**.
    - 5) Stem and Disc: Bronze.
    - 6) Packing: Asbestos free.
    - 7) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.
2. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
    - 4) Ends: Threaded or solder joint, **as directed**.
    - 5) Stem: Bronze.
    - 6) Disc: PTFE or TFE.
    - 7) Packing: Asbestos free.
    - 8) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.
3. Class 150, Bronze Globe Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
    - 4) Ends: Threaded.
    - 5) Stem: Bronze.
    - 6) Disc: PTFE or TFE.
    - 7) Packing: Asbestos free.
    - 8) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.



## R. Iron Globe Valves

1. Class 125, Iron Globe Valves:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
    - 4) Ends: Flanged.
    - 5) Trim: Bronze.
    - 6) Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
2. Class 250, Iron Globe Valves:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
    - 4) Ends: Flanged.
    - 5) Trim: Bronze.
    - 6) Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

## S. Lubricated Plug Valves

1. Class 125, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
    - 4) Pattern: Regular or short **OR** Venturi, **as directed**.
    - 5) Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
2. Class 125, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
    - 4) Pattern: Regular or short **OR** Venturi, **as directed**.
    - 5) Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
3. Class 125, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
    - 4) Pattern: Regular or short **OR** Venturi, **as directed**.
    - 5) Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
4. Class 125, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
    - 4) Pattern: Regular or short **OR** Venturi, **as directed**.
    - 5) Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
5. Class 250, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).



- 3) Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
  - 4) Pattern: Regular or short **OR** Venturi, **as directed**.
  - 5) Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
6. Class 250, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
    - 4) Pattern: Regular or short **OR** Venturi, **as directed**.
    - 5) Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
7. Class 250, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
    - 4) Pattern: Regular or short **OR** Venturi, **as directed**.
    - 5) Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
8. Class 250, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, Grade 40 cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
    - 4) Pattern: Regular or short **OR** Venturi, **as directed**.
    - 5) Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

#### T. Chainwheels

1. Description: Valve actuation assembly with sprocket rim, brackets, and chain.
  - a. Brackets: Type, number, size, and fasteners required to mount actuator on valve.
  - b. Attachment: For connection to ball **OR** butterfly **OR** plug, **as directed**, valve stems.
  - c. Sprocket Rim with Chain Guides: Ductile iron **OR** Cast iron **OR** Aluminum **OR** Bronze, **as directed**, of type and size required for valve. Include zinc coating, **as directed**.
  - d. Chain: Hot-dip, galvanized steel **OR** Brass **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, of size required to fit sprocket rim.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Valve Installation

1. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
2. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
3. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
4. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
5. Install chainwheels on operators for ball **OR** butterfly **OR** gate **OR** globe **OR** plug, **as directed**, valves NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger and more than 96 inches (2400 mm) above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches (1520 mm) above finished floor.
6. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
  - a. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
  - b. Center-Guided and Plate-Type Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
  - c. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.



- B. Adjusting
1. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.
- C. General Requirements For Valve Applications
1. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
    - a. Shutoff Service: Ball **OR** butterfly **OR** gate **OR** plug, **as directed**, valves.
    - b. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.
    - c. Throttling Service: Globe **OR** angle **OR** ball **OR** butterfly, **as directed**, valves.
    - d. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
      - 1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
      - 2) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger for Domestic Water: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring or iron, center-guided, metal **OR** resilient, **as directed**, -seat check valves.
      - 3) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger for Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or spring.
  2. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
  3. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
    - a. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
    - b. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
    - c. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Flanged ends.
    - d. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends.
    - e. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
    - f. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Flanged ends.
    - g. For Grooved-End Copper Tubing and Steel Piping: Valve ends may be grooved.
- D. Low-Pressure, Compressed-Air Valve Schedule (150 psig (1035 kPa) Or Less)
1. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
    - a. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
    - b. Ball Valves: One **OR** Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, piece, full **OR** regular **OR** reduced, **as directed**, port, brass **OR** bronze, **as directed**, with brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, trim.
    - c. Bronze Lift Check Valves: Class 125, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
    - d. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
    - e. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, NRS **OR** RS, **as directed**.
  2. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
    - a. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
    - b. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, NBR seat, aluminum-bronze **OR** ductile-iron **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, disc.
    - c. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves: 175 **OR** 300, **as directed**, CWP.
    - d. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, metal **OR** nonmetallic-to-metal, **as directed**, seats.
    - e. Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves: 300 CWP.
    - f. Iron, Center-Guided Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150 **OR** Class 250 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**, compact-wafer **OR** globe, **as directed**, metal **OR** resilient, **as directed**, seat.
    - g. Iron, Plate-Type Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150 **OR** Class 250 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**; single **OR** dual, **as directed**, plate; metal **OR** resilient, **as directed**, seat.





- h. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, NRS **OR** OS&Y, **as directed**.
- E. High-Pressure, Compressed-Air Valve Schedule (150 to 200 psig (1035 to 1380 kPa))
- 1. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
    - a. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
    - b. Ball Valves: One **OR** Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, piece, full **OR** regular **OR** reduced, **as directed**, port, brass **OR** bronze, **as directed**, with brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, trim.
    - c. Bronze Lift Check Valves: Class 125, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
    - d. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
    - e. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, NRS **OR** RS, **as directed**.
  - 2. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
    - a. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
    - b. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, NBR seat, aluminum-bronze **OR** ductile-iron **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, disc.
    - c. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves: 175 **OR** 300, **as directed**, CWP.
    - d. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, metal **OR** nonmetallic-to-metal, **as directed**, seats.
    - e. Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves: 300 CWP.
    - f. Iron, Center-Guided Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150 **OR** Class 250 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**, compact-wafer **OR** globe, **as directed**, metal **OR** resilient, **as directed**, seat.
    - g. Iron, Plate-Type Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150 **OR** Class 250 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**; single **OR** dual, **as directed**, plate; metal **OR** resilient, **as directed**, seat.
    - h. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, NRS **OR** OS&Y, **as directed**.
- F. Domestic, Hot- And Cold-Water Valve Schedule
- 1. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
    - a. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
    - b. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
    - c. Ball Valves: One **OR** Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, piece, full **OR** regular **OR** reduced, **as directed**, port, brass **OR** bronze, **as directed**, with brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, trim.
    - d. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
    - e. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, NRS **OR** RS, **as directed**.
    - f. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
  - 2. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
    - a. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
    - b. Iron Ball Valves: Class 150.
    - c. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, seat, aluminum-bronze **OR** ductile-iron **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, disc.
    - d. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves: 175 **OR** 300, **as directed**, CWP.
    - e. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, metal **OR** nonmetallic-to-metal, **as directed**, seats.
    - f. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control: Class 125, lever and spring **OR** weight, **as directed**.
    - g. Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves: 300 CWP.
    - h. Iron, Center-Guided Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150 **OR** Class 250 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**, compact-wafer **OR** globe, **as directed**, metal **OR** resilient, **as directed**, seat.



- i. Iron, Plate-Type Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150 **OR** Class 250 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**; single **OR** dual, **as directed**, plate; metal **OR** resilient, **as directed**, seat.
- j. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, NRS **OR** OS&Y, **as directed**.
- k. Iron Globe Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**.

G. Sanitary-Waste And Storm-Drainage Valve Schedule

1. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
  - a. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
  - b. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, disc.
  - c. Ball Valves: One **OR** Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, piece, full **OR** regular **OR** reduced, **as directed**, port, brass **OR** bronze, **as directed**, with brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, trim.
  - d. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
  - e. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, NRS **OR** RS, **as directed**.
  - f. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
2. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
  - a. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
  - b. Iron Ball Valves: Class 150.
  - c. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, metal **OR** nonmetallic-to-metal, **as directed**, seats.
  - d. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control: Class 125, lever and spring **OR** weight, **as directed**.
  - e. Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves: 300 CWP.
  - f. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, NRS **OR** OS&Y, **as directed**.
  - g. Iron Globe Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**.
  - h. Lubricated Plug Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, regular gland **OR** cylindrical, **as directed**, threaded **OR** flanged, **as directed**.

END OF SECTION 22 13 19 33

**SECTION 22 13 19 33a - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of general-duty valves for HVAC piping. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Bronze angle valves.
  - b. Brass ball valves.
  - c. Bronze ball valves.
  - d. Iron ball valves.
  - e. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
  - f. Iron, grooved-end butterfly valves.
  - g. High-performance butterfly valves.
  - h. Bronze lift check valves.
  - i. Bronze swing check valves.
  - j. Iron swing check valves.
  - k. Iron swing check valves with closure control.
  - l. Iron, grooved-end swing-check valves.
  - m. Iron, center-guided check valves.
  - n. Iron, plate-type check valves.
  - o. Bronze gate valves.
  - p. Iron gate valves.
  - q. Bronze globe valves.
  - r. Iron globe valves.
  - s. Lubricated plug valves.
  - t. Eccentric plug valves.
  - u. Chainwheels.

## C. Definitions

1. CWP: Cold working pressure.
2. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
3. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
4. NRS: Nonrising stem.
5. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
6. RS: Rising stem.
7. SWP: Steam working pressure.

## D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

## E. Quality Assurance

1. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
2. ASME Compliance:
  - a. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
  - b. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
  - c. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.



#### F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
  - a. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
  - b. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
  - c. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
  - d. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
  - e. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
  - f. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
2. Use the following precautions during storage:
  - a. Maintain valve end protection.
  - b. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
3. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. General Requirements For Valves

1. Refer to HVAC valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
2. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
3. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
4. Valve Actuator Types:
  - a. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 (DN 200) and larger.
  - b. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
  - c. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 (DN 150) and smaller except plug valves, **as directed**.
  - d. Wrench: For plug valves with square heads. Furnish the Owner with 1 wrench for every 5 **OR 10, as directed**, plug valves, for each size square plug-valve head.
  - e. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to valve handwheel, stem, or other actuator; of size and with chain for mounting height, as indicated in the "Valve Installation" Article.
5. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch (50-mm) stem extensions and the following features:
  - a. Gate Valves: With rising stem.
  - b. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
  - c. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.
6. Valve-End Connections:
  - a. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
  - b. Grooved: With grooves according to AWWA C606.
  - c. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
  - d. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
7. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

#### B. Bronze Angle Valves

1. Class 125, Bronze Angle Valves with Bronze Disc:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
    - 4) Ends: Threaded.
    - 5) Stem and Disc: Bronze.
    - 6) Packing: Asbestos free.
    - 7) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.



2. Class 125, Bronze Angle Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
    - 4) Ends: Threaded.
    - 5) Stem: Bronze.
    - 6) Disc: PTFE or TFE.
    - 7) Packing: Asbestos free.
    - 8) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.
3. Class 150, Bronze Angle Valves with Bronze Disc:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
    - 4) Ends: Threaded.
    - 5) Stem and Disc: Bronze.
    - 6) Packing: Asbestos free.
    - 7) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.
4. Class 150, Bronze Angle Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
    - 4) Ends: Threaded.
    - 5) Stem: Bronze.
    - 6) Disc: PTFE or TFE.
    - 7) Packing: Asbestos free.
    - 8) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.

C. Brass Ball Valves

1. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: One piece.
    - 4) Body Material: Forged brass.
    - 5) Ends: Threaded.
    - 6) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - 7) Stem: Brass.
    - 8) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    - 9) Port: Reduced.
2. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - 2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
    - 4) Body Design: Two piece.
    - 5) Body Material: Forged brass.
    - 6) Ends: Threaded.
    - 7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - 8) Stem: Brass.
    - 9) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    - 10) Port: Full.
3. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
  - a. Description:



- 1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
  - 2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
  - 3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
  - 4) Body Design: Two piece.
  - 5) Body Material: Forged brass.
  - 6) Ends: Threaded.
  - 7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
  - 8) Stem: Stainless steel.
  - 9) Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
  - 10) Port: Full.
4. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - 2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
    - 4) Body Design: Two piece.
    - 5) Body Material: Forged brass.
    - 6) Ends: Threaded.
    - 7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - 8) Stem: Brass.
    - 9) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    - 10) Port: Regular.
5. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - 2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
    - 4) Body Design: Two piece.
    - 5) Body Material: Brass or bronze.
    - 6) Ends: Threaded.
    - 7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - 8) Stem: Stainless steel.
    - 9) Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
    - 10) Port: Regular.
6. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - 2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
    - 4) Body Design: Three piece.
    - 5) Body Material: Forged brass.
    - 6) Ends: Threaded.
    - 7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - 8) Stem: Brass.
    - 9) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    - 10) Port: Full.
7. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - 2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
    - 4) Body Design: Three piece.
    - 5) Body Material: Forged brass.
    - 6) Ends: Threaded.
    - 7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.



- 8) Stem: Stainless steel.
- 9) Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- 10) Port: Full.

D. Bronze Ball Valves

1. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: One piece.
    - 4) Body Material: Bronze.
    - 5) Ends: Threaded.
    - 6) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - 7) Stem: Bronze.
    - 8) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    - 9) Port: Reduced.
2. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: One piece.
    - 4) Body Material: Bronze.
    - 5) Ends: Threaded.
    - 6) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - 7) Stem: Stainless steel.
    - 8) Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
    - 9) Port: Reduced.
3. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - 2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
    - 4) Body Design: Two piece.
    - 5) Body Material: Bronze.
    - 6) Ends: Threaded.
    - 7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - 8) Stem: Bronze.
    - 9) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    - 10) Port: Full.
4. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - 2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
    - 4) Body Design: Two piece.
    - 5) Body Material: Bronze.
    - 6) Ends: Threaded.
    - 7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - 8) Stem: Stainless steel.
    - 9) Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
    - 10) Port: Full.
5. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - 2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).



- 4) Body Design: Two piece.
  - 5) Body Material: Bronze.
  - 6) Ends: Threaded.
  - 7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
  - 8) Stem: Bronze.
  - 9) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  - 10) Port: Regular.
6. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
      - 2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      - 3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
      - 4) Body Design: Two piece.
      - 5) Body Material: Bronze.
      - 6) Ends: Threaded.
      - 7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
      - 8) Stem: Stainless steel.
      - 9) Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
      - 10) Port: Regular.
  7. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
      - 2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      - 3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
      - 4) Body Design: Three piece.
      - 5) Body Material: Bronze.
      - 6) Ends: Threaded.
      - 7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
      - 8) Stem: Bronze.
      - 9) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
      - 10) Port: Full.
  8. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
      - 2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      - 3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
      - 4) Body Design: Three piece.
      - 5) Body Material: Bronze.
      - 6) Ends: Threaded.
      - 7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
      - 8) Stem: Stainless steel.
      - 9) Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
      - 10) Port: Full.

#### E. Iron Ball Valves

1. Class 125, Iron Ball Valves:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-72.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: Split body.
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - 5) Ends: Flanged.
    - 6) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - 7) Stem: Stainless steel.
    - 8) Ball: Stainless steel.





9) Port: Full.

F. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves

1. 150 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - 5) Seat: EPDM.
    - 6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
    - 7) Disc: Aluminum bronze.
2. 150 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - 5) Seat: NBR.
    - 6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
    - 7) Disc: Aluminum bronze.
3. 150 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Ductile-Iron Disc:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - 5) Seat: EPDM.
    - 6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
    - 7) Disc: Nickel-plated or -coated, **as directed**, ductile iron.
4. 150 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Ductile-Iron Disc:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - 5) Seat: NBR.
    - 6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
    - 7) Disc: Nickel-plated or -coated, **as directed**, ductile iron.
5. 150 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Stainless-Steel Disc:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - 5) Seat: EPDM.
    - 6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
    - 7) Disc: Stainless steel.
6. 150 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Stainless-Steel Disc:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.



- 2) CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
  - 3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
  - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
  - 5) Seat: NBR.
  - 6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
  - 7) Disc: Stainless steel.
7. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - 5) Seat: EPDM.
    - 6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
    - 7) Disc: Aluminum bronze.
8. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - 5) Seat: NBR.
    - 6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
    - 7) Disc: Aluminum bronze.
9. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Ductile-Iron Disc:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - 5) Seat: EPDM.
    - 6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
    - 7) Disc: Nickel-plated or -coated, **as directed**, ductile iron.
10. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Ductile-Iron Disc:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - 5) Seat: NBR.
    - 6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
    - 7) Disc: Nickel-plated or -coated, **as directed**, ductile iron.
11. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Stainless-Steel Disc:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - 5) Seat: EPDM.



- 6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
      - 7) Disc: Stainless steel.
    12. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Stainless-Steel Disc:
      - a. Description:
        - 1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
        - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
        - 3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
        - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
        - 5) Seat: NBR.
        - 6) Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
        - 7) Disc: Stainless steel.
- G. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves
  1. 175 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
      - 2) CWP Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
      - 3) Body Material: Coated, ductile iron.
      - 4) Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
      - 5) Disc: Coated, ductile iron.
      - 6) Seal: EPDM.
  2. 300 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
      - 2) NPS 8 (DN 50) and Smaller CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      - 3) NPS 10 (DN 250) and Larger CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      - 4) Body Material: Coated, ductile iron.
      - 5) Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
      - 6) Disc: Coated, ductile iron.
      - 7) Seal: EPDM.
- H. High-Performance Butterfly Valves
  1. Class 150, Single-Flange, High-Performance Butterfly Valves:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-68.
      - 2) CWP Rating: 285 psig (1965 kPa) at 100 deg F (38 deg C).
      - 3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
      - 4) Body Material: Carbon steel, cast iron, ductile iron, or stainless steel.
      - 5) Seat: Reinforced PTFE or metal.
      - 6) Stem: Stainless steel; offset from seat plane.
      - 7) Disc: Carbon steel.
      - 8) Service: Bidirectional.
  2. Class 300, Single-Flange, High-Performance Butterfly Valves:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-68.
      - 2) CWP Rating: 720 psig (4965 kPa) at 100 deg F (38 deg C).
      - 3) Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
      - 4) Body Material: Carbon steel, cast iron, or ductile iron.
      - 5) Seat: Reinforced PTFE or metal.
      - 6) Stem: Stainless steel; offset from seat plane.
      - 7) Disc: Carbon steel.
      - 8) Service: Bidirectional.



- I. Bronze Lift Check Valves
1. Class 125, Lift Check Valves with Bronze Disc:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
      - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      - 3) Body Design: Vertical flow.
      - 4) Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
      - 5) Ends: Threaded.
      - 6) Disc: Bronze.
  2. Class 125, Lift Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
      - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      - 3) Body Design: Vertical flow.
      - 4) Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
      - 5) Ends: Threaded.
      - 6) Disc: NBR, PTFE, or TFE.
- J. Bronze Swing Check Valves
1. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
      - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      - 3) Body Design: Horizontal flow.
      - 4) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
      - 5) Ends: Threaded.
      - 6) Disc: Bronze.
  2. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
      - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      - 3) Body Design: Horizontal flow.
      - 4) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
      - 5) Ends: Threaded.
      - 6) Disc: PTFE or TFE.
  3. Class 150, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
      - 2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      - 3) Body Design: Horizontal flow.
      - 4) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
      - 5) Ends: Threaded.
      - 6) Disc: Bronze.
  4. Class 150, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
      - 2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      - 3) Body Design: Horizontal flow.
      - 4) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
      - 5) Ends: Threaded.
      - 6) Disc: PTFE or TFE.
- K. Iron Swing Check Valves
1. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:
    - a. Description:



- 1) Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
  - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
  - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
  - 4) Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
  - 5) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - 6) Ends: Flanged.
  - 7) Trim: Bronze.
  - 8) Gasket: Asbestos free.
2. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic-to-Metal Seats:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 4) Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
    - 5) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
    - 6) Ends: Flanged.
    - 7) Trim: Composition.
    - 8) Seat Ring: Bronze.
    - 9) Disc Holder: Bronze.
    - 10) Disc: PTFE or TFE.
    - 11) Gasket: Asbestos free.
3. Class 250, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
    - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
    - 4) Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
    - 5) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
    - 6) Ends: Flanged.
    - 7) Trim: Bronze.
    - 8) Gasket: Asbestos free.
- L. Iron Swing Check Valves With Closure Control
1. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever- and Spring-Closure Control:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
      - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      - 4) Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
      - 5) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      - 6) Ends: Flanged.
      - 7) Trim: Bronze.
      - 8) Gasket: Asbestos free.
      - 9) Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and spring.
  2. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever and Weight-Closure Control:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
      - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      - 4) Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
      - 5) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      - 6) Ends: Flanged.
      - 7) Trim: Bronze.
      - 8) Gasket: Asbestos free.
      - 9) Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and weight.



- M. Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves
1. 300 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      - 2) Body Material: ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      - 3) Seal: EPDM.
      - 4) Disc: Spring operated, ductile iron or stainless steel.
- N. Iron, Center-Guided Check Valves
1. Class 125, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
      - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      - 5) Style: Compact wafer.
      - 6) Seat: Bronze.
  2. Class 125, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
      - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      - 5) Style: Globe, spring loaded.
      - 6) Ends: Flanged.
      - 7) Seat: Bronze.
  3. Class 150, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
      - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa).
      - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      - 5) Style: Compact wafer.
      - 6) Seat: Bronze.
  4. Class 150, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
      - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa).
      - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      - 5) Style: Globe, spring loaded.
      - 6) Ends: Flanged.
      - 7) Seat: Bronze.
  5. Class 250, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
      - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
      - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      - 5) Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
      - 6) Seat: Bronze.
  6. Class 250, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
      - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).



- 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
  - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
  - 5) Style: Globe, spring loaded.
  - 6) Ends: Flanged.
  - 7) Seat: Bronze.
7. Class 300, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
    - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - 5) Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
    - 6) Seat: Bronze.
8. Class 300, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
    - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - 5) Style: Globe, spring loaded.
    - 6) Ends: Flanged.
    - 7) Seat: Bronze.
9. Class 125, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - 5) Style: Compact wafer.
    - 6) Seat: EPDM **OR** BR, **as directed**.
10. Class 125, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - 5) Style: Globe, spring loaded.
    - 6) Ends: Flanged.
    - 7) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
11. Class 150, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
    - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa).
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - 5) Style: Compact wafer.
    - 6) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
12. Class 150, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
    - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa).
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - 5) Style: Globe, spring loaded.
    - 6) Ends: Flanged.
    - 7) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.



13. Class 250, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
      - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
      - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      - 5) Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
      - 6) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
  14. Class 250, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
      - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
      - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      - 5) Style: Globe, spring loaded.
      - 6) Ends: Flanged.
      - 7) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
  15. Class 300, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
      - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
      - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
      - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      - 5) Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
      - 6) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
  16. Class 300, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-125.
      - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
      - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
      - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      - 5) Style: Globe, spring loaded.
      - 6) Ends: Flanged.
      - 7) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
- O. Iron, Plate-Type Check Valves
1. Class 125, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: API 594.
      - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      - 4) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
      - 5) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
      - 6) Seat: Bronze.
  2. Class 150, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: API 594.
      - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa).
      - 4) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
      - 5) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
      - 6) Seat: Bronze.
  3. Class 250, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: API 594.





- 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
  - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
  - 4) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
  - 5) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
  - 6) Seat: Bronze.
4. Class 300, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: API 594.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
    - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
    - 4) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
    - 5) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - 6) Seat: Bronze.
5. Class 125, Iron, Single-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: API 594.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 4) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plate.
    - 5) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - 6) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
6. Class 125, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: API 594.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 4) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
    - 5) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - 6) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
7. Class 150, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: API 594.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
    - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa).
    - 4) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
    - 5) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - 6) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
8. Class 250, Iron, Wafer, Single-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: API 594.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
    - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
    - 4) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plate.
    - 5) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - 6) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
9. Class 250, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: API 594.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
    - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
    - 4) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
    - 5) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - 6) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.
10. Class 300, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: API 594.



- 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
- 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
- 4) Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
- 5) Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
- 6) Seat: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**.

P. Bronze Gate Valves

1. Class 125, NRS Bronze Gate Valves:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
    - 4) Ends: Threaded or solder joint, **as directed**.
    - 5) Stem: Bronze.
    - 6) Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
    - 7) Packing: Asbestos free.
    - 8) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.
2. Class 125, RS Bronze Gate Valves:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
    - 4) Ends: Threaded or solder joint, **as directed**.
    - 5) Stem: Bronze.
    - 6) Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
    - 7) Packing: Asbestos free.
    - 8) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.
3. Class 150, NRS Bronze Gate Valves:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
    - 4) Ends: Threaded.
    - 5) Stem: Bronze.
    - 6) Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
    - 7) Packing: Asbestos free.
    - 8) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.
4. Class 150, RS Bronze Gate Valves:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
    - 4) Ends: Threaded.
    - 5) Stem: Bronze.
    - 6) Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
    - 7) Packing: Asbestos free.
    - 8) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.

Q. Iron Gate Valves

1. Class 125, NRS, Iron Gate Valves:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.



- 5) Ends: Flanged.
  - 6) Trim: Bronze.
  - 7) Disc: Solid wedge.
  - 8) Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
2. Class 125, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
      - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
      - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      - 5) Ends: Flanged.
      - 6) Trim: Bronze.
      - 7) Disc: Solid wedge.
      - 8) Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
  3. Class 250, NRS, Iron Gate Valves:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
      - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
      - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      - 5) Ends: Flanged.
      - 6) Trim: Bronze.
      - 7) Disc: Solid wedge.
      - 8) Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
  4. Class 250, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
      - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
      - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
      - 5) Ends: Flanged.
      - 6) Trim: Bronze.
      - 7) Disc: Solid wedge.
      - 8) Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

#### R. Bronze Globe Valves

1. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Bronze Disc:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
    - 4) Ends: Threaded or solder joint, **as directed**.
    - 5) Stem and Disc: Bronze.
    - 6) Packing: Asbestos free.
    - 7) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.
2. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
    - 4) Ends: Threaded or solder joint, **as directed**.
    - 5) Stem: Bronze.
    - 6) Disc: PTFE or TFE.
    - 7) Packing: Asbestos free.
    - 8) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.
3. Class 150, Bronze Globe Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:



- a. Description:
  - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
  - 2) CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
  - 3) Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
  - 4) Ends: Threaded.
  - 5) Stem: Bronze.
  - 6) Disc: PTFE or TFE.
  - 7) Packing: Asbestos free.
  - 8) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum, **as directed**.

#### S. Iron Globe Valves

- 1. Class 125, Iron Globe Valves:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
    - 4) Ends: Flanged.
    - 5) Trim: Bronze.
    - 6) Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
- 2. Class 250, Iron Globe Valves:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
    - 4) Ends: Flanged.
    - 5) Trim: Bronze.
    - 6) Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

#### T. Lubricated Plug Valves

- 1. Class 125, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
    - 5) Pattern: Regular or short **OR Venturi, as directed**.
    - 6) Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
- 2. Class 125, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
    - 5) Pattern: Regular or short **OR Venturi, as directed**.
    - 6) Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
- 3. Class 125, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
    - 5) Pattern: Regular or short **OR Venturi, as directed**.



- 6) Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
4. Class 125, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
    - 5) Pattern: Regular or short **OR** Venturi, **as directed**.
    - 6) Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
5. Class 250, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
    - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
    - 5) Pattern: Regular or short **OR** Venturi, **as directed**.
    - 6) Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
6. Class 250, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
    - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
    - 5) Pattern: Regular or short **OR** Venturi, **as directed**.
    - 6) Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
7. Class 250, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
    - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
    - 5) Pattern: Regular or short **OR** Venturi, **as directed**.
    - 6) Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
8. Class 250, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
    - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, Grade 40 cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
    - 5) Pattern: Regular or short **OR** Venturi, **as directed**.
    - 6) Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

#### U. Eccentric Plug Valves

1. 175 CWP, Eccentric Plug Valves with Resilient Seating.
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-108.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum.
    - 3) Body and Plug: ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray iron; ASTM A 126, gray iron; or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - 4) Bearings: Oil-impregnated bronze or stainless steel.
    - 5) Ends: Flanged.



- 6) Stem-Seal Packing: Asbestos free.
- 7) Plug, Resilient-Seating Material: Suitable for potable-water service unless otherwise indicated.

#### V. Chainwheels

1. Description: Valve actuation assembly with sprocket rim, brackets, and chain.
  - a. Brackets: Type, number, size, and fasteners required to mount actuator on valve.
  - b. Attachment: For connection to ball **OR** butterfly **OR** plug, **as directed**, valve stems.
  - c. Sprocket Rim with Chain Guides: Ductile iron **OR** Cast iron **OR** Aluminum **OR** Bronze, **as directed**, of type and size required for valve. Include zinc coating, **as directed**.
  - d. Chain: Hot-dip, galvanized steel **OR** Brass **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, of size required to fit sprocket rim.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Valve Installation

1. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
2. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
3. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
4. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
5. Install chainwheels on operators for ball **OR** butterfly **OR** gate **OR** globe **OR** plug, **as directed**, valves NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger and more than 96 inches (2400 mm) above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches (1520 mm) above finished floor.
6. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
  - a. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
  - b. Center-Guided and Plate-Type Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
  - c. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.

#### B. Adjusting

1. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

#### C. General Requirements For Valve Applications

1. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
  - a. Shutoff Service: Ball, butterfly **OR** gate **OR** plug, **as directed**, valves.
  - b. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.
  - c. Throttling Service except Steam: Globe **OR** angle **OR** ball **OR** butterfly, **as directed**, valves.
  - d. Throttling Service, Steam: Globe **OR** angle **OR** butterfly, **as directed**, valves.
  - e. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
    - 1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring or iron, center-guided, metal **OR** resilient, **as directed**,-seat check valves.
2. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
3. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
  - a. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  - b. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.



- c. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Flanged ends.
- d. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends.
- e. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
- f. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Flanged ends.
- g. For Grooved-End Copper Tubing and Steel Piping except Steam and Steam Condensate Piping: Valve ends may be grooved.

#### D. Chilled-Water Valve Schedule

- 1. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
  - a. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
  - b. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
  - c. Ball Valves: One **OR** Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, piece, full **OR** regular **OR** reduced, **as directed**, port, brass **OR** bronze, **as directed**, with brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, trim.
  - d. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
  - e. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, NRS **OR** RS, **as directed**, bronze.
  - f. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
- 2. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
  - a. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
  - b. Iron Ball Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 10 (DN 65 to DN 250): Class 150.
  - c. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): 200 CWP, EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, seat, aluminum-bronze **OR** ductile-iron **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, disc.
  - d. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600): 150 CWP, EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, seat, aluminum-bronze **OR** ductile-iron **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, disc.
  - e. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): 175 **OR** 300, **as directed**, CWP.
  - f. High-Performance Butterfly Valves: Class 150 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**, single flange.
  - g. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, metal **OR** nonmetallic-to-metal, **as directed**, seats.
  - h. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): Class 125, lever and spring **OR** weight, **as directed**.
  - i. Iron, Grooved-End Check Valves, NPS 3 to NPS 12 (DN 80 to DN 300): 300 CWP.
  - j. Iron, Center-Guided Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150 **OR** Class 250 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**, compact-wafer **OR** globe, **as directed**, metal **OR** resilient, **as directed**, seat.
  - k. Iron, Plate-Type Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150 **OR** Class 250 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**; single **OR** dual, **as directed**, plate; metal **OR** resilient, **as directed**, seat.
  - l. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, NRS **OR** OS&Y, **as directed**.
  - m. Iron Globe Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**.
  - n. Lubricated Plug Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, regular gland **OR** cylindrical, **as directed**, threaded **OR** flanged, **as directed**.
  - o. Eccentric Plug Valves: 175 CWP, resilient seating.

#### E. Condenser-Water Valve Schedule

- 1. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
  - a. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.



- b. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
  - c. Ball Valves: One **OR** Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, piece, full **OR** regular **OR** reduced, **as directed**, port, brass **OR** bronze, **as directed**, with brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, trim.
  - d. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
  - e. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, NRS **OR** RS, **as directed**.
  - f. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
2. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
- a. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
  - b. Iron Ball Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 10 (DN 65 to DN 250): Class 150.
  - c. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): 200 CWP, EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, seat, aluminum-bronze **OR** ductile-iron **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, disc.
  - d. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600): 150 CWP, EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, seat, aluminum-bronze **OR** ductile-iron **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, disc.
  - e. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): 175 **OR** 300, **as directed**, CWP.
  - f. High-Performance Butterfly Valves: Class 150 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**, single flange.
  - g. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, metal **OR** nonmetallic-to-metal, **as directed**, seats.
  - h. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): Class 125, lever and spring **OR** weight, **as directed**.
  - i. Iron, Grooved-End Check Valves, NPS 3 to NPS 12 (DN 80 to DN 300): 300 CWP.
  - j. Iron, Center-Guided Check Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 65 to DN 600): Class 125 **OR** Class 150 **OR** Class 250 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**, metal **OR** resilient, **as directed**, seat.
  - k. Iron, Plate-Type Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150 **OR** Class 250 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**; single **OR** dual, **as directed**, plate; metal **OR** resilient, **as directed**, seat.
  - l. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, NRS **OR** OS&Y, **as directed**.
  - m. Iron Globe Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**.
  - n. Lubricated Plug Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, regular gland **OR** cylindrical, **as directed**, threaded **OR** flanged, **as directed**.
- F. Heating-Water Valve Schedule
- 1. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
    - a. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
    - b. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
    - c. Ball Valves: One **OR** Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, piece, full **OR** regular **OR** reduced, **as directed**, port, brass **OR** bronze, **as directed**, with brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, trim.
    - d. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
    - e. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, NRS **OR** RS, **as directed**.
    - f. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
  - 2. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:





- a. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
  - b. Iron Ball Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 10 (DN 65 to DN 250): Class 150.
  - c. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): 200 CWP, EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, seat, aluminum-bronze **OR** ductile-iron **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, disc.
  - d. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600): 150 CWP, EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, seat, aluminum-bronze **OR** ductile-iron **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, disc.
  - e. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): 175 **OR** 300, **as directed**, CWP.
  - f. High-Performance Butterfly Valves: Class 150 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**, single flange.
  - g. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, metal **OR** nonmetallic-to-metal, **as directed**, seats.
  - h. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): Class 125, lever and spring **OR** weight, **as directed**.
  - i. Iron, Grooved-End Check Valves, NPS 3 to NPS 12 (DN 80 to DN 300): 300 CWP.
  - j. Iron, Center-Guided Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150 **OR** Class 250 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**, compact-wafer **OR** globe, **as directed**, metal **OR** resilient, **as directed**, seat.
  - k. Iron, Plate-Type Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150 **OR** Class 250 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**; single **OR** dual, **as directed**, plate; metal **OR** resilient, **as directed**, seat.
  - l. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, NRS **OR** OS&Y, **as directed**.
  - m. Iron Globe Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**.
- G. Low-Pressure Steam Valve Schedule (15 psig (104 kPa) Or Less)
1. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
    - a. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
    - b. Ball Valves: One **OR** Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, piece, full **OR** regular **OR** reduced, **as directed**, port, brass **OR** bronze, **as directed**, with brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, trim.
    - c. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
    - d. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, NRS **OR** RS, **as directed**.
    - e. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
  2. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
    - a. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
    - b. Iron Ball Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 10 (DN 65 to DN 250): Class 150.
    - c. High-Performance Butterfly Valves: Class 150 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**, single flange.
    - d. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, metal **OR** nonmetallic-to-metal, **as directed**, seats.
    - e. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): Class 125, lever and spring **OR** weight, **as directed**.
    - f. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, NRS **OR** OS&Y, **as directed**.
    - g. Iron Globe Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**.
- H. High-Pressure Steam Valve Schedule (More Than 15 psig (104 kPa))
1. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
    - a. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.



- b. Ball Valves: One **OR** Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, piece, full **OR** regular **OR** reduced, **as directed**, port, brass **OR** bronze, **as directed**, with brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, trim.
  - c. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
  - d. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, NRS **OR** RS, **as directed**, bronze.
  - e. Globe Valves: Class 125 **OR** 150, **as directed**, bronze, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
2. Pipe Sizes NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
- a. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
  - b. Ball Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 10 (DN 65 to DN 250): Class 150, iron.
  - c. High-Performance Butterfly Valves: Class 150 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**, single flange.
  - d. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, metal **OR** nonmetallic-to-metal, **as directed**, seats.
  - e. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): Class 125, lever and spring **OR** weight, **as directed**.
  - f. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, NRS **OR** OS&Y, **as directed**.
  - g. Iron Globe Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**.
- I. Steam-Condensate Valve Schedule
1. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
- a. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
  - b. Ball Valves: One **OR** Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, piece, full **OR** regular **OR** reduced, **as directed**, port, brass **OR** bronze, **as directed**, with brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, trim.
  - c. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
  - d. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, NRS **OR** RS, **as directed**.
  - e. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 150, **as directed**, bronze **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, disc.
2. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
- a. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
  - b. Iron Ball Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 10 (DN 65 to DN 250): Class 150.
  - c. High-Performance Butterfly Valves: Class 150 **OR** Class 300, **as directed**, single flange.
  - d. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, metal **OR** nonmetallic-to-metal, **as directed**, seats.
  - e. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control: Class 125, lever and spring **OR** weight, **as directed**.
  - f. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, NRS **OR** OS&Y, **as directed**.
  - g. Iron Globe Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**.
  - h. Lubricated Plug Valves: Class 125 **OR** Class 250, **as directed**, regular gland **OR** cylindrical, **as directed**, threaded **OR** flanged, **as directed**.

END OF SECTION 22 13 19 33a



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
22 13 19 33	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
22 13 19 33	22 05 76 00	Sanitary Sewerage
22 13 19 33	22 13 19 00	High-Efficiency Particulate Filtration
22 13 19 36	22 13 19 00	High-Efficiency Particulate Filtration
22 13 23 00	22 13 19 26	Interceptors



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 22 13 29 13 - PACKAGED SEWAGE PUMPING STATIONS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for packaged sewage pumping stations. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes dry-well, packaged pumping stations with dry-well or vacuum-primed sewage pumps.
2. This Section includes wet-well, packaged pumping stations with submersible or submersible grinder or wet-well-mounting sewage pumps.

#### C. Performance Requirements

1. Pressure Rating of Sewage Pumps and Discharge Piping Components: At least equal to sewage pump discharge pressure, but not less than 125 psig (860 kPa).
2. Pressure Rating of Other Piping Components: At least equal to system operating pressure.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: Include rated capacities; shipping, installed, and operating weights; furnished specialties; and accessories.
2. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for each packaged pumping station. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - a. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Product Certificates: For sewage pumps, signed by product manufacturer.
4. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification
5. Field quality-control test reports.
6. Maintenance Data: For packaged pumping stations to include in maintenance manuals.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
2. Testing Agency Qualifications: Nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7.
3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
4. Comply with HI 1.1-1.2, "Centrifugal Pumps for Nomenclature and Definitions"; HI 1.3, "Centrifugal Pumps for Design and Application"; and HI 1.4, "Centrifugal Pumps for Installation, Operation and Maintenance," for sewage and sump pumps.
5. Comply with UL 778, "Motor-Operated Water Pumps," for sewage and sump pumps.

#### F. Project Conditions

1. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Sewer Service: Do not interrupt sanitary sewer service to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary sanitary sewer service according to requirements indicated:
  - a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of sanitary sewer service.



- b. Do not proceed with interruption of sanitary sewer service without the Owner's written permission.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Dry-Well, Packaged Sewage Pumping Stations

#### 1. Dry-Well, Packaged Sewage Pumping Stations with Dry-Well Sewage Pumps:

- a. Description: Factory fabricated, assembled, and tested with wet well for comminutor and collection of sanitary sewage and with dry equipment chamber for sewage pumps, controls, and accessories.
- 1) Orientation: Shell underground with dry equipment chamber underground with top flush with grade **OR** partially recessed underground **OR** above grade **OR** underground with entrance tube to grade, **as directed**.
  - 2) Shell: Factory fabricated from structural-steel plate **OR** fiberglass, **as directed**.
  - 3) Entrance Tube: From dry compartment to entrance at grade, and of size required to replace largest piece of equipment, but not smaller than 36 inches (914 mm) in diameter.
  - 4) Cathodic Protection: as directed by the Owner, exterior magnesium anode(s).
  - 5) Comminutor: Full size of sewage inlet pipe.
  - 6) Sewage Pumps: Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, dry-well-type, nonclog sewage pumps with controls and piping. Include ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 25, nonclog, cast-iron impeller capable of passing solids of 3-inch (76-mm) minimum diameter; mechanical or stuffing-box seals; and pedestal-mounted motor.

#### 2. Dry-Well, Packaged Sewage Pumping Stations with Vacuum-Primed Sewage Pumps:

- a. Description: Factory fabricated, assembled, and tested with wet well for comminutor and collection of sanitary sewage and with dry equipment chamber for sewage pumps, vacuum pumps, controls, and accessories.
- 1) Orientation: Shell underground with dry equipment chamber underground with top flush with grade **OR** partially recessed underground **OR** above grade **OR** underground with entrance tube to grade, **as directed**.
  - 2) Shell: Factory fabricated from structural-steel plate **OR** fiberglass, **as directed**.
  - 3) Entrance Tube: From dry compartment to entrance at grade, and of size required to replace largest piece of equipment, but not smaller than 36 inches (914 mm) in diameter.
  - 4) Cathodic Protection: as directed by the Owner, exterior magnesium anode(s).
  - 5) Comminutor: Full size of sewage inlet pipe.
  - 6) Sewage Pumps: Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, dry-chamber-mounting, vacuum-primed, nonclog sewage pumps located in dry compartment above wet pit, with controls and piping. Include ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 25, nonclog, cast-iron impeller capable of passing solids of 3-inch (76-mm) minimum diameter; mechanical or stuffing-box seals; pedestal-mounted motor; and suction piping extending to bottom of wet pit.
  - 7) Vacuum Pumps: Duplex arrangement with controls, vacuum piping, and vent piping of size and capacity required for system. Include automatic alternator, with manual disconnect switch, to change sequence of lead-lag vacuum pumps at completion of each cycle.

### B. Wet-Well, Packaged Sewage Pumping Stations

#### 1. Wet-Well, Packaged Sewage Pumping Stations with Submersible Sewage Pumps:

- a. Description: Factory fabricated, assembled, and tested with wet well for comminutor, sewage pumps and collection of sanitary sewage and with sewage pumps and dry equipment chamber for controls and accessories.



- 1) Orientation: Shell underground with dry equipment chamber underground with top flush with grade **OR** partially recessed underground **OR** above grade **OR** underground with entrance tube to grade, **as directed**.
  - 2) Shell: Factory fabricated from structural-steel plate **OR** fiberglass, **as directed**.
  - 3) Entrance Tube: From dry compartment to entrance at grade, and of size required to replace largest piece of equipment, but not smaller than 36 inches (914 mm) in diameter.
  - 4) Cathodic Protection: as directed by the Owner, exterior magnesium anode(s).
  - 5) Comminutor: Full size of sewage inlet pipe.
  - 6) Sewage Pumps: Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, submersible-type sewage pumps, with guide rail, quick-disconnect system, controls, and piping. Include ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 25, nonclog, cast-iron impeller capable of passing solids of 3-inch (76-mm) minimum diameter; and hermetically sealed motor with moisture-sensing probe, mechanical seals, and waterproof power cable.
2. Wet-Well, Packaged Sewage Pumping Stations with Submersible Grinder Sewage Pumps:
- a. Description: Factory fabricated, assembled, and tested with wet well for sewage pumps and collection of sanitary sewage and with dry equipment chamber for controls and accessories.
    - 1) Orientation: Shell underground with dry equipment chamber underground with top flush with grade **OR** partially recessed underground **OR** above grade **OR** underground with entrance tube to grade, **as directed**.
    - 2) Shell: Factory fabricated from structural-steel plate **OR** fiberglass, **as directed**.
    - 3) Entrance Tube: From dry compartment to entrance at grade, and of size required to replace largest piece of equipment, but not smaller than 36 inches (914 mm) in diameter.
    - 4) Cathodic Protection: as directed by the Owner, exterior magnesium anode(s).
    - 5) Sewage Pumps: Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, submersible grinder-type sewage pumps, with guide rail, quick-disconnect system, controls, and piping. Include stainless-steel grinder impeller and hermetically sealed motor with moisture-sensing probe, mechanical seals, and waterproof power cable.
      - a) If Project has more than one wet-well, packaged sewage pumping station with submersible grinder sewage pumps,
3. Wet-Well, Packaged Sewage Pumping Stations with Wet-Well-Mounting Sewage Pumps:
- a. Description: Factory fabricated, assembled, and tested with wet well for comminutor, sewage pumps and collection of sanitary sewage and with suspended sewage pumps and dry equipment chamber for pump motors, controls, and accessories.
    - 1) Orientation: Shell underground with dry equipment chamber underground with top flush with grade **OR** partially recessed underground **OR** above grade **OR** underground with entrance tube to grade, **as directed**.
    - 2) Shell: Factory fabricated from structural-steel plate **OR** fiberglass, **as directed**.
    - 3) Entrance Tube: From dry compartment to entrance at grade, and of size required to replace largest piece of equipment, but not smaller than 36 inches (914 mm) in diameter.
    - 4) Cathodic Protection: as directed by XXXXcontractingpositiontheXXX, exterior magnesium anode(s).
    - 5) Comminutor: Full size of sewage inlet pipe.
    - 6) Sewage Pumps: Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, wet-well-mounting-type, nonclog sewage pumps suspended from dry-compartment floor, with controls and piping. Include ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 25, nonclog, cast-iron impeller capable of passing solids of 3-inch (76-mm) minimum diameter; grease-lubricated bearings and stuffing-box seal; shaft coupling; and pedestal-mounted motor.
- C. Comminutors:
1. Description: Motor-operated, single- or twin-shaft, cutter- or grinder-design unit with controls; for pipeline installation.
    - a. Body: Stainless steel or ductile iron with flanged ends and access plate.



- b. Cutting Elements: Motor-driven rotor and stationary cutters or grinders of hardened stainless or heat-treated steel.
- c. Motor: Explosion proof, directly connected to body.
- d. Control Panel: NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure for installation in dry equipment chamber.

#### D. Controls

1. Control Sequence of Operation: Cycle each sewage pump on and off automatically to maintain wet-well sewage level. Automatic control operates both pumps in parallel if wet-well level rises above starting point of low-level pump, until shutoff level is reached. Automatic alternator, with manual disconnect switch, changes sequence of lead-lag sewage pumps at completion of each pumping cycle.
2. Self-Purging, Air-Bubbler System: Senses variations of sewage level in wet well. Include duplex-arrangement oilless air compressors to furnish bubbler air; filters; air-storage reservoir; piping; airflow meter with needle valve adjustment for airflow regulation; sewage depth gage; air-bubbler piping to wet well; and pressure-sensing, dustproof mercury switches.
3. Electrode **OR** Float-Switch **OR** Pressure-Switch **OR** Ultrasonic, **as directed**, System: Senses variations of sewage level in wet well. Include high and low adjustments capable of operating on 6-inch (150-mm) minimum differential of liquid level.
4. Motor Controllers: Magnetic, full voltage, nonreversing. Include undervoltage release, thermal-overload heaters in each phase, manual reset buttons, and hand-automatic selector switches. Include circuit breakers to provide branch-circuit protection for each controller.
5. 120-V accessory controls with 15-A, single-phase circuit breakers or fuses for each item.
6. Control Panel: Enclosure complying with UL 508A and with UL 508A, Supplement SB, **as directed**, with separate compartments and covers for controllers, circuit breakers, transformers, alternators, and single-phase controls. Include 20-A duplex receptacle in NEMA WD 1, Configuration 5-20R mounted on exterior of control panel.
  - a. Mounting: Inside, on dry-chamber wall **OR** Outside, on pedestal, at grade, **as directed**.
  - b. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** 4 **OR** 4X, **as directed**.
7. Install labels on panel face to identify switches and controls.
8. Wiring: Tin-copper wiring.
9. Connection for Portable Generator: Nonautomatic (manual) transfer switch with receptacle matching generator electrical power requirements. Nonautomatic transfer switches are specified in Division 26 Section "Transfer Switches" and receptacles are specified in Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices".

#### E. Accessories

1. Lighting: Minimum of 2, UL 1571, heavy-duty, cast-metal, wet-location-type fixtures with 100-W bulbs and guards in service area. Locate switches, with pilot lights, at chamber entrance.
2. Submersible Sump Pump:
  - a. Discharge Size: NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) minimum.
  - b. Pump End Bell and Motor Shell: Cast iron.
  - c. Motor: 1/3 hp, 1750-rpm, hermetically sealed, capacitor-start, with built-in overload protection.
  - d. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze or ASTM B 36/B 36M, brass.
  - e. Shaft: Stainless steel.
  - f. Bearings: Grease-lubricated, factory-sealed ball bearings.
  - g. Seals: Mechanical.
  - h. Accessories: Inlet strainer.
  - i. Controls: Float switch.
3. Dehumidifier: Electric refrigeration system, adjustable humidistat, reverse-acting thermostat for low-temperature cutoff controls, and condensate pump with drain piping to sump.
  - a. Dehumidification system capacity adequate to remove at least 15 pints (7 L) of water per day from service area air that is 80 deg F (27 deg C) with a relative humidity of 60 percent.
4. Ventilation: Electrically powered ventilation system. Include centrifugal blower with 4-inch- (100-mm-) round exhaust vent designed to keep out rain, insects, and other foreign matter; limit switch





- to start blower if entrance door or lid is opened; 0- to 15-minute timer; and separate manual switch.
- a. Ventilating system capacity to change air in dry equipment chamber every two minutes.
5. Heater: Electric, 1.5 kW minimum, with fan and thermostat control.
  6. High-Water Audio Alarm: Horn for audio indication of station high-water level, energized by separate level-detecting device. Include alarm silencer switch and relay in station.
  7. Remote Alarm Circuit: Include contacts for connection to remote alarm panel.
- F. Motors
1. General requirements for motors are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Plumbing Equipment".
- G. Miscellaneous Materials
1. Structural Steel: ASTM A 6/A 6M, W or HP shapes, or ASTM A 36/A 36M, plates or beams.
  2. Grout: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink cement grout.
    - a. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
  3. Concrete: Concrete is specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
- H. Packaged Sewage Pumping Station Fabrication
1. Fabricate shell from structural-steel plate with continuous welds to make watertight and gastight construction.
    - a. Walls: 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) minimum thickness.
    - b. Top and Bottom Heads: 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) minimum thickness. Weld reinforcing steel to top and bottom heads.
    - c. Entrance-Tube Walls: 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) minimum thickness.
    - d. Weld steel access ladder and air vent to shell and entrance tube, **as directed**.
    - e. Apply three coats of epoxy resin to interior and exterior surfaces.
    - f. Include at least two **OR** four, **as directed**, exterior magnesium anode(s) for cathodic protection.
  2. Fabricate shell from fiberglass with structural-steel reinforcement.
    - a. Attach structural-steel reinforcement to top and bottom heads.
    - b. Fabricate shell with continuous joints to make watertight and gastight construction.
    - c. Attach air vent to pump chamber and entrance tube, **as directed**.
    - d. Ladder: Steel **OR** Fiberglass, **as directed**.
  3. Install sump, 18 inches (450 mm) in diameter by 10 inches (254 mm) deep in dry-chamber floor. Slope floor toward sump and fasten rubber mat to floor walkway with cement.
  4. Entrance tube may be furnished separately for field installation.
  5. Entrance Cover: Waterproof and corrosion resistant, with lock. Include way to open cover from inside tube if cover is locked.
  6. Air Vent: Duct fabricated from corrosion-resistant material, extended to above grade, outlet turned down, and with insect screen in outlet.
  7. Factory fabricate piping between unit components.
    - a. Use galvanized-steel pipe and cast-iron fittings or ductile-iron pipe and fittings.
    - b. Use fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
    - c. Flanged and union joints may be used instead of joints specified.
    - d. Use dielectric fittings for connections between ferrous- and copper-alloy piping.
  8. Piping Connections: Unless otherwise indicated, make the following piping connections:
    - a. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment having NPS 2 (DN 50) or smaller threaded pipe connection.
    - b. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment having flanged pipe connection.
  9. Valves: Ferrous alloy.
    - a. Sewage Pump Piping: Include gate valve on each pump inlet and gate and check valves on each discharge pipe.
    - b. Sump Pump Piping: Include ball or gate and check valves on discharge pipe.



- c. Compressed-Air Piping: Include ball and check valves on discharge pipe from each air compressor.
  - d. Vacuum Piping: Include ball and check valves on inlet pipe to each vacuum pump.
10. Wiring: Tin-coated copper.
- I. Source Quality Control
- 1. Test and inspect sewage and sump, **as directed**, pumps according to HI 1.6, "Centrifugal Pump Tests." Include test recordings that substantiate correct performance of pumps at design head, capacity, suction lift, speed, and horsepower.
  - 2. Test accessories and controls through complete cycle. Include test recordings that substantiate correct performance.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Earthwork

- 1. Excavation, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".

#### B. Installation

- 1. Install packaged sewage pumping station components where indicated, according to specific equipment and piping arrangement indicated.
- 2. Shell Base Supports: Form from structural-steel beams, of number and lengths required to support bottom of shell and to anchor beams to concrete foundation.
  - a. Use elevator blocks attached to bottom of shell to slope station floor 1 inch in 10 feet (25.4 mm in 3 m) down toward sump.
- 3. Grout under and around shell. Ensure that there are no voids between foundation slab and underslab of pumping station.
- 4. Fill voids between shell sidewalls, sleeves, and piping and make watertight seal with grout.
- 5. Connect anode conductors to grounding lugs on steel housing.
- 6. Join separate sections of housing by field welding.
- 7. Field weld entrance tube to housing.

#### C. Connections

- 1. Sanitary sewer piping installation requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Facility Sanitary Sewers". Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping.
- 2. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
- 3. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
- 4. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".

#### D. Identification

- 1. Install identifying labels permanently attached to equipment.
- 2. Install operating instruction signs permanently attached to equipment or on pumping station wall near equipment.
- 3. Arrange for installing green warning tape or detectable warning tape over outside edges of underground packaged sewage pumping stations. Tape materials and their installation are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".

#### E. Painting

- 1. Prepare and paint ferrous piping in wet wells, structural-steel supports, and anchor devices with coal-tar epoxy-polyamide paint according to SSPC-Paint 16.
- 2. Paint field-welded areas to match factory coating.

#### F. Field Quality Control



1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
  2. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.. Report results in writing.
  3. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
    - a. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
  4. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. After installing packaged sewage pumping stations and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements. Furnish water required for pump tests.
    - b. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
    - c. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
    - d. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  5. Remove and replace packaged sewage pumping stations that do not pass tests and inspections and retest as specified above.
- G. Startup Service
1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
    - a. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - b. Adjust pump, accessory, and control settings, and safety and alarm devices.
- H. Demonstration
1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain packaged sewage pumping stations.

END OF SECTION 22 13 29 13



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 22 13 29 13a - LIFT STATION

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This Specification covers the furnishing and installation of sewage lift stations. Work includes but is not limited to earthwork, installation of watertight precast concrete sump basin, basin access cover, submersible sewage pumps, pump guide rail system, pump control system, valves and piping and electrical connections as required. Specific sizes of basins, pumps, and piping shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner.

#### B. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
  - a. Pipe and fittings
  - b. Check valves
  - c. Gate valves
  - d. Submersible sewage grinder pumps
  - e. Pump motor
  - f. Flexible flanged coupling
2. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include pumps, alarms, and motors. Data for submersible sewage grinder pump station data shall include all information on all equipment, alarm panel and controls, pumps and pump performance curves, and station layout.

#### C. Delivery, Storage, and Handling of Materials

1. Delivery and Storage: Inspect materials delivered to site for damage. Unload and store with minimum handling. Store materials in enclosures or under protective covering. Store rubber gaskets not to be installed immediately under cover, out of direct sunlight. Do not store materials directly on the ground. Keep interior of pipes and fittings free of dirt and debris.
2. Handling: Handle pipe, fittings, valves, and other accessories in such manner as to ensure delivery to the trench in sound, undamaged condition. Avoid injury to coatings and linings on pipe and fittings; make satisfactory repairs if coatings or linings are damaged. Carry pipe to the trench; do not drag it.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Precast Concrete Sump Basin(s)

1. Precast Concrete Sump Basin shall be constructed in conformance with Division 26 Section "Underground Ducts And Raceways For Electrical Systems". Basin shall have an integral bottom base section.
2. Joint Sealant: Seal all joints with EZ Stik Butyl Gasket as manufactured by Concrete Products Supply Co., or approved equal. Install in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
3. Pipe Opening Seals.
4. Waterproofing: Waterproof interior of concrete sump with one coat of Koppers Coal Tar Bitumastic Black or approved equal. Repair all damaged coating before final backfill. Do not coat cover of basin.
5. Access Hatch - Aluminum Hinged Frame and Cover Model EC-3HD by Syracuse Castings, Cicero, NY (315) 699-2601, or approved equal. Frame and cover shall be heavy duty, rated for H-20 Loadings. Frame shall be angle style frame. Material shall be 6061-T6 aluminum for bars, angles and extrusions. 1/4" diamond plate shall be 5086 aluminum. Unit designed heavy duty, for H-20 wheel loads where not subject to high density traffic. Unit supplied with a heavy duty pneu-spring, for ease of operation when opening cover. Each hatch shall be equipped with a hold open arm. Door shall lock open in the 90 degree position. Hinges shall be of heavy duty design. Material shall be a brass alloy with a 65,000 psi tensile strength. Each hinge shall have



a Grade 316 Stainless Steel, 3/8" diameter hinge pin. Exterior of frame, which comes in contact with concrete shall have one coat black bituminous paint. Unit supplied with a recessed stainless steel slamlock. Angle frame must be completely encased in concrete. Both bearing plates must be fully supported by a bed of concrete.

6. The unit shall be supplied with aluminum safety grate. Safety Grate shall be made of 6061-T6 aluminum with a minimum ultimate strength of 38,000 psi and a minimum yield strength of 35,000 psi as per ASTM B221. Grate design shall use safety factors as defined in the "Specifications for Aluminum Structures", by the Aluminum Association, Inc., 5<sup>th</sup> edition, DEC. 1986 for "Bridge Type Structures."
  - a. Grating shall be designed to withstand a minimum live load of 300 pounds per square foot. Deflection shall not exceed 1/150<sup>th</sup> of the span.
  - b. Grate openings shall be 4" x 4", which will allow for visual inspection of the pit once the access hatch is open.
  - c. Each grate shall be provided with a stainless steel, safety check chain. Chain will prevent the grating from falling into the pit.
  - d. Welding shall be in accordance with ANSI/AWS D1.2 "Structural Welding Code for Aluminum."

B. Submersible Sewage Pump System

1. Submersible sewage effluent pumps shall be sized as directed by the Owner and specified herein. Pump shall be heavy duty cast iron with stainless steel fasteners. The impeller shall be semi-open, non-clog, engineered plastic capable of passing 3/4" solids. Pump motor shall be oil filled. Pumps shall be equal to SHEF Series as manufactured by Hydromatic or approved equal. Specific pump performance data shall conform to the following:

1/2 HP Pumps 230 volt/single phase/60 Hz/2" NPT/ 3450 rpm

40 gpm @ 42 ft.	TDH
50 gpm @ 32 ft.	TDH
60 gpm @ 18 ft.	TDH

1 HP Pumps 230 volt/single phase/60 Hz/2" NPT/3450 rpm

20 gpm @ 80 ft.	TDH
30 gpm @ 76 ft.	TDH
40 gpm @ 71 ft.	TDH
50 gpm @ 65 ft.	TDH

C. Duplex Guide Rail System: Complete package system shall be as manufactured by Moran Manufacturing Inc., or approved equal, as follows.

1. The guide rail assembly shall be constructed of Type 304 stainless steel and shall consist of a minimum of two rails, a bottom base plate, a minimum of one cross brace every 18 inches between the rails and a wall brace, all welded together to provide the maximum structural integrity. The rails shall be round to provide a non-binding surface during installation and removal of the pump. The guide rail assembly shall be installed as a one piece unit and shall be bolted with stainless anchor bolts to the basin bottom and the basin wall a minimum of two places each.
2. The pump bracket assembly shall consist of a top bracket and a bottom bracket. The brackets shall be fabricated of 1/4" steel material and shall be painted with coal tar epoxy paint at such rate as to provide a minimum 10 mil thickness. The top bracket shall be attached to the discharge piping above the pump disconnect and shall be constructed in such a manner that pump cannot be removed from the guide rail assembly except when removing pump out the top of the sump basin. The bottom bracket shall be attached to the pump at the discharge connection and shall guide the pump along the guide rail assembly to ensure proper alignment of the pump.



3. A 3/16" min. (7 x 9) stainless steel lifting cable, 10 ft. longer than the sump depth, shall be furnished for lifting and lowering the pump in the sump basin. The stainless steel lifting cable shall be of the 18-8 type 302/304 stainless steel and shall have minimum nominal breaking strength of 15 times the weight of the pump. It shall be substantially attached to the top of the pump and shall have a formed loop at the other end.
4. The discharge piping shall include a cast iron ball check valve, with a natural rubber ball and clean out port with plug for easy access, a brass quick disconnect fitting, with an O-ring stem brass gate valve, per pump. All other piping shall be schedule 40 stainless steel.
5. The station shall have a gate valve extension handle per valve which will allow the gate valve to be operated from a maximum of 6" below the basin cover. The handle shall be constructed of a minimum of 3/8" dia. Type 304 stainless steel. The handle shall be held in place by being attached to the gate valve and by the guide rail wall brace.
6. All internal metal parts that are not brass, galvanized steel, or stainless steel shall be painted with coal-tar epoxy paint to resist corrosion, unless otherwise noted.
7. Mercury level control switches shall be provided for lead pump on, lag pump on and high level alarm, pumps off and low level alarm.
8. The mercury switch shall be encapsulated in polyurethane foam for corrosion and shock resistance. Level switches shall be weighted to hold position in the sump. The cord connecting the control shall be No. 16-2, rated for 13 amps, and shall be type C-SJO. To ensure optimum longevity, mercury contacts shall be of the mercury-to-mercury type and encapsulated in a glass tube and shall be rated for 20 amps at 115 VAC.
9. The manufacturer of the lift station shall furnish a limited warranty for 18 months from the date of shipment or 12 months from start-up (whichever occurs first), that all equipment shall be free from defects in design, materials and workmanship. The lift station manufacturer shall furnish replacement parts for any component proven defective whether of its or other manufacturer during the warranty period, excepting only those items which are normally consumed in service, such as (but not limited to) light bulbs, oil, grease, packing, etc.
10. Installation instructions shall be furnished with the station.

#### D. Control System

1. This system shall be controlled and protected by a packaged system as manufactured by Rombus, or approved equal. The control shall provide automatic start, stop and alternation of 2 pumps, and shall provide an audible alarm as well as visual indication of high level conditions.
2. The control panel shall be pre-wired in a NEMA 3R weatherproof enclosure, and all necessary components including the following: single phase lightning arrester for protection of the pumps, NEMA rated contractor and thermal magnetic circuit breaker for each pump, a main control/alarm circuit fused disconnect switch, separately fused control and alarm circuits, panel mounted duplex alternating relays, control relays, and terminal blocks for the connection on all external wiring. Provide a 20 amp/115v convenience outlet in each panel on its own GFCI circuit breaker. Multi-colored circuitry is to be used within the control panel to facilitate trouble shooting.
3. Mounted inside the enclosure shall be hand-off-auto switches and run pilot lights for each pump circuit; normal-off-test switch and alarm pilot light for high level alarm; float test toggle switches for each float to override floats to simulate operation; non-resettable elapsed time meters for each pump.
4. Mounted remotely from the Control Panel shall be a 4" 120V alarm bell and a flashing alarm light.

E. System Operation: As the level in the sump rises to the lead pump on level, the pump selected as lead by the alternator will come on line, and will pump the level down to the pump off level. The pump will then turn off, and the alternator will cycle, selecting the other pump as lead for the next cycle. If, with the lead pump running, the level in the tank continues to rise to the lag pump on level, the lag pump will come on line, alarms will sound, and will run with the lead pump until the pumps off level has been reached. The pumps will then be turned off, and the alternator will cycle. If level continues to drop to the low level alarm float, alarm circuits will be activated.

1. Placing the T-O-N switch into the off position will de-energize the alarm bell and flashing light, but the alarm pilot light will remain illuminated until the alarm condition has been cleared. When the



alarm pilot light is extinguished, the T-O-N switch may be reset to the normal position, and the alarm will stand ready for the next alarm.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. The Contractor shall excavate the station site to the elevations as required to meet project requirements. Compact the subgrade and install crushed stone.
- B. Install lift station in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Perform additional exterior waterproofing as required to repair original coating and to achieve a watertight sump basin. The discharge piping shall be extended and connected to the sewage force mains. Backfill material shall be approved by the Owner. No backfill material shall have any dimension greater than 6". Backfill material within 15" of basin shall not have a dimension greater than 2".
- C. The Lift Station control panel shall be mounted to the building nearby and shall have sufficient cord supplied by the Lift Station manufacturer to avoid any splices. All necessary electrical connections between pumps, flow controls and control panel shall be made in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. No splices shall be made in the basin. Lightning protection shall be provided in the panel.
- D. Install pump power conductors in rigid steel conduit between Lift Station and Control Panel.
- E. Upon completion, the Lift Station shall be tested to assure there is no leakage and that the pumps, controls and alarm are operating satisfactorily. The Lift Station manufacturer's representative shall be present during initial start up and testing. Three (3) Lift Station operation and maintenance manuals shall be provided.

END OF SECTION 22 13 29 13a





## SECTION 22 13 29 13b - SEWAGE PUMPS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for sewage pumps. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Submersible effluent pumps.
  - b. Submersible sewage pumps.
  - c. Wet-pit-volute sewage pumps.
  - d. Sewage-pump, reverse-flow assemblies.
  - e. Sewage-pump basins and basin covers.
  - f. Progressing-cavity sewage pumps.
  - g. Packaged, submersible sewage-pump units.
  - h. Packaged wastewater-pump units.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pumps and controls, to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

#### E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.
2. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.
3. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions for handling.

#### F. Coordination

1. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Submersible Effluent Pumps

1. Submersible, Fixed-Position, Single-Seal Effluent Pumps:
  - a. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested effluent-pump unit.
  - b. Pump Type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal effluent pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
  - c. Pump Casing: Cast iron, with open inlet, legs that elevate pump to permit flow into impeller, and vertical discharge for piping connection.
  - d. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class No. 25 A cast iron **OR** ASTM A 532/A 532M, abrasion-resistant cast iron **OR** ASTM B 584, cast bronze, **as**



- directed**, and stainless steel, **as directed**, closed or semiopen design for clear wastewater, and keyed and secured to shaft.
- e. Pump and Motor Shaft: Stainless steel **OR** steel, **as directed**, with factory-sealed, grease-lubricated ball bearings.
  - f. Seal: Mechanical.
  - g. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type; with built-in overload protection; lifting eye or lug; and three-conductor, waterproof power cable of length required and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
    - 1) Motor Housing Fluid: Air **OR** Oil, **as directed**.
  - h. Controls (rod-and-float type):
    - 1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**.
    - 2) Switch Type: Pedestal-mounted float switch with float rods and rod buttons.
    - 3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
    - 4) Float Guides: Pipe or other restraint for floats and rods in basins of depth greater than 60 inches (1500 mm).
    - 5) High-Water Alarm: Cover-mounted, compression-probe alarm, with electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
  - i. Controls (float- and pressure-switch types):
    - 1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**; pedestal-mounted **OR** wall-mounted, **as directed**.
    - 2) Switch Type: Mechanical-float **OR** Mercury-float **OR** Pressure, **as directed**, type, in NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosures with mounting rod and electric cables.
    - 3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
    - 4) High-Water Alarm: Rod-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosure with mechanical-float, mercury-float, or pressure switch matching control and electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
  - j. Control-Interface Features:
    - 1) Remote Alarm Contacts: For remote alarm interface.
    - 2) Building Automation System Interface: Auxiliary contacts in pump controls for interface to building automation system and capable of providing the following:
      - a) On-off status of pump.
      - b) Alarm status.
2. Submersible, Fixed-Position, Double-Seal Effluent Pumps:
- a. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested effluent-pump unit.
  - b. Pump Type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal effluent pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
  - c. Pump Casing: Cast iron, with open inlet, legs that elevate pump to permit flow into impeller, and vertical discharge for piping connection.
  - d. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class No. 25 A cast iron **OR** ASTM A 532/A 532M, abrasion-resistant cast iron **OR** ASTM B 584, cast bronze, **as directed**, and stainless steel, **as directed**, closed or semiopen design for clear wastewater, and keyed and secured to shaft.
  - e. Pump and Motor Shaft: Stainless steel **OR** steel, **as directed**, with factory-sealed, grease-lubricated ball bearings.
  - f. Seals: Mechanical.
  - g. Moisture-Sensing Probe: Internal moisture sensor and moisture alarm.
  - h. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type; with built-in overload protection; lifting eye or lug; and three-conductor, waterproof power cable of length required and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
    - 1) Motor Housing Fluid: Air **OR** Oil, **as directed**.
  - i. Controls (rod-and-float type):
    - 1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**.
    - 2) Switch Type: Pedestal-mounted float switch with float rods and rod buttons.



- 3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
- 4) Float Guides: Pipe or other restraint for floats and rods in basins of depth greater than 60 inches (1500 mm).
- 5) High-Water Alarm: Cover-mounted, compression-probe alarm, with electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
- j. Controls (float- and pressure-switch types):
  - 1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**; pedestal-mounted **OR** wall-mounted, **as directed**.
  - 2) Switch Type: Mechanical-float **OR** Mercury-float **OR** Pressure, **as directed**, type, in NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosures with mounting rod and electric cables.
  - 3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
  - 4) High-Water Alarm: Rod-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosure with mechanical-float, mercury-float, or pressure switch matching control and electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
- k. Control-Interface Features:
  - 1) Remote Alarm Contacts: For remote alarm interface.
  - 2) Building Automation System Interface: Auxiliary contacts in pump controls for interface to building automation system and capable of providing the following:
    - a) On-off status of pump.
    - b) Alarm status.
3. Submersible, Quick-Disconnect, Single-Seal Effluent Pumps:
  - a. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested effluent-pump unit with guide-rail supports.
  - b. Pump Type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal effluent pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
  - c. Pump Casing: Cast iron, with open inlet, and discharge fittings for connection to guide-rail support.
  - d. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class No. 25 A cast iron **OR** ASTM A 532/A 532M, abrasion-resistant cast iron **OR** ASTM B 584, cast bronze, **as directed**, and stainless steel, **as directed**, closed or semiopen design for clear wastewater, and keyed and secured to shaft.
  - e. Pump and Motor Shaft: Stainless steel **OR** steel, **as directed**, with factory-sealed, grease-lubricated ball bearings.
  - f. Seal: Mechanical.
  - g. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type; with built-in overload protection; lifting eye or lug; and three-conductor, waterproof power cable of length required and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
    - 1) Motor Housing Fluid: Air **OR** Oil, **as directed**.
  - h. Controls (rod-and-float type):
    - 1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**.
    - 2) Switch Type: Pedestal-mounted float switch with float rods and rod buttons.
    - 3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
    - 4) Float Guides: Pipe or other restraint for floats and rods in basins of depth greater than 60 inches (1500 mm).
    - 5) High-Water Alarm: Cover-mounted, compression-probe alarm, with electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
  - i. Controls (float- and pressure-switch types):
    - 1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**; pedestal-mounted **OR** wall-mounted, **as directed**.
    - 2) Switch Type: Mechanical-float **OR** Mercury-float **OR** Pressure, **as directed**, type, in NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosures with mounting rod and electric cables.
    - 3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.



- 4) High-Water Alarm: Rod-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosure with mechanical-float, mercury-float, or pressure switch matching control and electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
- j. Control-Interface Features:
  - 1) Remote Alarm Contacts: For remote alarm interface.
  - 2) Building Automation System Interface: Auxiliary contacts in pump controls for interface to building automation system and capable of providing the following:
    - a) On-off status of pump.
    - b) Alarm status.
- k. Guide-Rail Supports:
  - 1) Standard: SWPA's "Submersible Sewage Pumping Systems (SWPA) Handbook."
  - 2) Guide Rails: Vertical pipes or structural members, made of galvanized steel or other corrosion-resistant metal, attached to baseplate and basin sidewall or cover.
  - 3) Baseplate: Corrosion-resistant metal plate, attached to basin floor, supporting guide rails and stationary elbow.
  - 4) Pump Yoke: Motor-mounted or casing-mounted yokes or other attachments for aligning pump during connection of flanges.
  - 5) Movable Elbow: Pump discharge-elbow fitting with flange, seal, and positioning device.
  - 6) Stationary Elbow: Fixed discharge-elbow fitting with flange that mates to movable-elbow flange and support attached to baseplate.
  - 7) Lifting Cable: Stainless steel; attached to pump and cover at manhole.
4. Submersible, Quick-Disconnect, Double-Seal Effluent Pumps:
  - a. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested effluent-pump unit with guide-rail supports.
  - b. Pump Type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal effluent pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
  - c. Pump Casing: Cast iron, with open inlet, and discharge fittings for connection to guide-rail support.
  - d. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class No. 25 A cast iron **OR** ASTM A 532/A 532M, abrasion-resistant cast iron **OR** ASTM B 584, cast bronze, **as directed**, and stainless steel, **as directed**, closed or semiopen design for clear wastewater, and keyed and secured to shaft.
  - e. Pump and Motor Shaft: Stainless steel **OR** steel, **as directed**, with factory-sealed, grease-lubricated ball bearings.
  - f. Seals: Mechanical.
  - g. Moisture-Sensing Probe: Internal moisture sensor and moisture alarm.
  - h. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type; with built-in overload protection; lifting eye or lug; and three-conductor, waterproof power cable of length required and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
    - 1) Motor Housing Fluid: Air **OR** Oil, **as directed**.
  - i. Controls (rod-and-float type):
    - 1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**.
    - 2) Switch Type: Pedestal-mounted float switch with float rods and rod buttons.
    - 3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
    - 4) Float Guides: Pipe or other restraint for floats and rods in basins of depth greater than 60 inches (1500 mm).
    - 5) High-Water Alarm: Cover-mounted, compression-probe alarm, with electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
  - j. Controls (float- and pressure-switch types):
    - 1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**; pedestal-mounted **OR** wall-mounted, **as directed**.
    - 2) Switch Type: Mechanical-float **OR** Mercury-float **OR** Pressure, **as directed**, type, in NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosures with mounting rod and electric cables.



- 3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
- 4) High-Water Alarm: Rod-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosure with mechanical-float, mercury-float, or pressure switch matching control and electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
- k. Control-Interface Features:
  - 1) Remote Alarm Contacts: For remote alarm interface.
  - 2) Building Automation System Interface: Auxiliary contacts in pump controls for interface to building automation system and capable of providing the following:
    - a) On-off status of pump.
    - b) Alarm status.
- l. Guide-Rail Supports:
  - 1) Standard: SWPA's "Submersible Sewage Pumping Systems (SWPA) Handbook."
  - 2) Guide Rails: Vertical pipes or structural members, made of galvanized steel or other corrosion-resistant metal, attached to baseplate and basin sidewall or cover.
  - 3) Baseplate: Corrosion-resistant metal plate, attached to basin floor, supporting guide rails and stationary elbow.
  - 4) Pump Yoke: Motor-mounted or casing-mounted yokes or other attachments for aligning pump during connection of flanges.
  - 5) Movable Elbow: Pump discharge-elbow fitting with flange, seal, and positioning device.
  - 6) Stationary Elbow: Fixed discharge-elbow fitting with flange that mates to movable-elbow flange and support attached to baseplate.
  - 7) Lifting Cable: Stainless steel; attached to pump and cover at manhole.

## B. Submersible Sewage Pumps

1. Submersible, Fixed-Position, Single-Seal Sewage Pumps:
  - a. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested sewage-pump unit.
  - b. Pump Type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal sewage pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
  - c. Pump Casing: Cast iron, with open inlet, legs that elevate pump to permit flow into impeller, and vertical discharge for piping connection.
  - d. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class No. 25 A cast iron **OR** ASTM A 532/A 532M, abrasion-resistant cast iron **OR** ASTM B 584, cast bronze, **as directed**, and stainless steel, **as directed**, nonclog, open, or semiopen design for solids handling, and keyed and secured to shaft.
  - e. Pump and Motor Shaft: Stainless steel **OR** steel, **as directed**, with factory-sealed, grease-lubricated ball bearings.
  - f. Seal: Mechanical.
  - g. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type; with built-in overload protection; lifting eye or lug; and three-conductor, waterproof power cable of length required and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
    - 1) Motor Housing Fluid: Air **OR** Oil, **as directed**.
  - h. Controls (rod-and-float type):
    - 1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**.
    - 2) Switch Type: Pedestal-mounted float switch with float rods and rod buttons.
    - 3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
    - 4) Float Guides: Pipe or other restraint for floats and rods in basins of depth greater than 60 inches (1500 mm).
    - 5) High-Water Alarm: Cover-mounted, compression-probe alarm, with electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
  - i. Controls (float- and pressure-switch types):
    - 1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**; pedestal-mounted **OR** wall-mounted, **as directed**.



- 2) Switch Type: Mechanical-float **OR** Mercury-float **OR** Pressure, **as directed**, type, in NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosures with mounting rod and electric cables.
- 3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
- 4) High-Water Alarm: Rod-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosure with mechanical-float, mercury-float, or pressure switch matching control and electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
- j. Control-Interface Features:
  - 1) Remote Alarm Contacts: For remote alarm interface.
  - 2) Building Automation System Interface: Auxiliary contacts in pump controls for interface to building automation system and capable of providing the following:
    - a) On-off status of pump.
    - b) Alarm status.
2. Submersible, Fixed-Position, Double-Seal Sewage Pumps:
  - a. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested sewage-pump unit.
  - b. Pump Type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal sewage pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
  - c. Pump Casing: Cast iron, with open inlet, legs that elevate pump to permit flow into impeller, and vertical discharge for piping connection.
  - d. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class No. 25 A cast iron **OR** ASTM A 532/A 532M, abrasion-resistant cast iron **OR** ASTM B 584, cast bronze, **as directed**, and stainless steel, **as directed**, nonclog, open, or semiopen design for solids handling, and keyed and secured to shaft.
  - e. Pump and Motor Shaft: Stainless steel **OR** steel, **as directed**, with factory-sealed, grease-lubricated ball bearings.
  - f. Seals: Mechanical.
  - g. Moisture-Sensing Probe: Internal moisture sensor and moisture alarm.
  - h. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type; with built-in overload protection; lifting eye or lug; and three-conductor, waterproof power cable of length required and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
    - 1) Motor Housing Fluid: Air **OR** Oil, **as directed**.
  - i. Controls (rod-and-float type):
    - 1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**.
    - 2) Switch Type: Pedestal-mounted float switch with float rods and rod buttons.
    - 3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
    - 4) Float Guides: Pipe or other restraint for floats and rods in basins of depth greater than 60 inches (1500 mm).
    - 5) High-Water Alarm: Cover-mounted, compression-probe alarm, with electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
  - j. Controls (float- and pressure-switch types):
    - 1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**; pedestal-mounted **OR** wall-mounted, **as directed**.
    - 2) Switch Type: Mechanical-float **OR** Mercury-float **OR** Pressure, **as directed**, type, in NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosures with mounting rod and electric cables.
    - 3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
    - 4) High-Water Alarm: Rod-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosure with mechanical-float, mercury-float, or pressure switch matching control and electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
  - k. Control-Interface Features:
    - 1) Remote Alarm Contacts: For remote alarm interface.
    - 2) Building Automation System Interface: Auxiliary contacts in pump controls for interface to building automation system and capable of providing the following:
      - a) On-off status of pump.



- b) Alarm status.
3. Submersible, Quick-Disconnect, Single-Seal Sewage Pumps:
- a. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested sewage-pump unit with guide-rail supports.
  - b. Pump Type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal sewage pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
  - c. Pump Casing: Cast iron, with open inlet, and discharge fittings for connection to guide-rail support.
  - d. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class No. 25 A cast iron **OR** ASTM A 532/A 532M, abrasion-resistant cast iron **OR** ASTM B 584, cast bronze, **as directed**, and stainless steel, **as directed**, nonclog, open, or semiopen design for solids handling, and keyed and secured to shaft.
  - e. Pump and Motor Shaft: Stainless steel **OR** steel, **as directed**, with factory-sealed, grease-lubricated ball bearings.
  - f. Seal: Mechanical.
  - g. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type; with built-in overload protection; lifting eye or lug; and three-conductor, waterproof power cable of length required and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
    - 1) Motor Housing Fluid: Air **OR** Oil, **as directed**.
  - h. Controls (rod-and-float type):
    - 1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**.
    - 2) Switch Type: Pedestal-mounted float switch with float rods and rod buttons.
    - 3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
    - 4) Float Guides: Pipe or other restraint for floats and rods in basins of depth greater than 60 inches (1500 mm).
    - 5) High-Water Alarm: Cover-mounted, compression-probe alarm, with electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
  - i. Controls (float- and pressure-switch types):
    - 1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**; pedestal-mounted **OR** wall-mounted, **as directed**.
    - 2) Switch Type: Mechanical-float **OR** Mercury-float **OR** Pressure, **as directed**, type, in NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosures with mounting rod and electric cables.
    - 3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
    - 4) High-Water Alarm: Rod-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosure with mechanical-float, mercury-float, or pressure switch matching control and electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
  - j. Control-Interface Features:
    - 1) Remote Alarm Contacts: For remote alarm interface.
    - 2) Building Automation System Interface: Auxiliary contacts in pump controls for interface to building automation system and capable of providing the following:
      - a) On-off status of pump.
      - b) Alarm status.
  - k. Guide-Rail Supports:
    - 1) Standard: SWPA's "Submersible Sewage Pumping Systems (SWPA) Handbook."
    - 2) Guide Rails: Vertical pipes or structural members, made of galvanized steel or other corrosion-resistant metal, attached to baseplate and basin sidewall or cover.
    - 3) Baseplate: Corrosion-resistant metal plate, attached to basin floor, supporting guide rails and stationary elbow.
    - 4) Pump Yoke: Motor-mounted or casing-mounted yokes or other attachments for aligning pump during connection of flanges.
    - 5) Movable Elbow: Pump discharge-elbow fitting with flange, seal, and positioning device.
    - 6) Stationary Elbow: Fixed discharge-elbow fitting with flange that mates to movable-elbow flange and support attached to baseplate.
    - 7) Lifting Cable: Stainless steel; attached to pump and cover at manhole.



4. Submersible, Quick-Disconnect, Double-Seal Sewage Pumps:
  - a. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested sewage-pump unit with guide-rail supports.
  - b. Pump type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal sewage pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
  - c. Pump Casing: Cast iron, with open inlet, and discharge fittings for connection to guide-rail support.
  - d. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class No. 25 A cast iron **OR** ASTM A 532/A 532M, abrasion-resistant cast iron **OR** ASTM B 584, cast bronze, **as directed**, and stainless steel, **as directed**, nonclog, open, or semiopen design for solids handling, and keyed and secured to shaft.
  - e. Pump and Motor Shaft: Stainless steel **OR** steel, **as directed**, with factory-sealed, grease-lubricated ball bearings.
  - f. Seals: Mechanical.
  - g. Moisture-Sensing Probe: Internal moisture sensor and moisture alarm.
  - h. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type; with built-in overload protection; lifting eye or lug; and three-conductor, waterproof power cable of length required and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
    - 1) Motor Housing Fluid: Air **OR** Oil, **as directed**.
  - i. Controls (rod-and-float type):
    - 1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**.
    - 2) Switch Type: Pedestal-mounted float switch with float rods and rod buttons.
    - 3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
    - 4) Float Guides: Pipe or other restraint for floats and rods in basins of depth greater than 60 inches (1500 mm).
    - 5) High-Water Alarm: Cover-mounted, compression-probe alarm, with electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
  - j. Controls (float- and pressure-switch types):
    - 1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**; pedestal-mounted **OR** wall-mounted, **as directed**.
    - 2) Switch Type: Mechanical-float **OR** Mercury-float **OR** Pressure, **as directed**, type, in NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosures with mounting rod and electric cables.
    - 3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
    - 4) High-Water Alarm: Rod-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosure with mechanical-float, mercury-float, or pressure switch matching control and electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
  - k. Control-Interface Features:
    - 1) Remote Alarm Contacts: For remote alarm interface.
    - 2) Building Automation System Interface: Auxiliary contacts in pump controls for interface to building automation system and capable of providing the following:
      - a) On-off status of pump.
      - b) Alarm status.
  - l. Guide-Rail Supports:
    - 1) Standard: SWPA's "Submersible Sewage Pumping Systems (SWPA) Handbook."
    - 2) Guide Rails: Vertical pipes or structural members, made of galvanized steel or other corrosion-resistant metal, attached to baseplate and basin sidewall or cover.
    - 3) Baseplate: Corrosion-resistant metal plate, attached to basin floor, supporting guide rails and stationary elbow.
    - 4) Pump Yoke: Motor-mounted or casing-mounted yokes or other attachments for aligning pump during connection of flanges.
    - 5) Movable Elbow: Pump discharge-elbow fitting with flange, seal, and positioning device.
    - 6) Stationary Elbow: Fixed discharge-elbow fitting with flange that mates to movable-elbow flange and support attached to baseplate.





- 7) Lifting Cable: Stainless steel; attached to pump and cover at manhole.
5. Submersible, Quick-Disconnect, Grinder Sewage Pumps:
- a. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, grinder sewage-pump unit with guide-rail supports.
  - b. Pump Type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal sewage pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
  - c. Pump Casing: Cast iron, with open inlet, and discharge fittings for connection to guide-rail supports.
  - d. Impeller: Bronze or stainless steel; statically and dynamically balanced, with stainless-steel cutter, grinder, or slicer assembly; capable of handling solids; and keyed and secured to shaft.
  - e. Pump and Motor Shaft: Stainless steel **OR** steel, **as directed**, with factory-sealed, grease-lubricated ball bearings.
  - f. Seal: Mechanical.
  - g. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type; with built-in overload protection; lifting eye or lug; and three-conductor, waterproof power cable of length required and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
    - 1) Motor Housing Fluid: Air **OR** Oil, **as directed**.
  - h. Controls (rod-and-float type):
    - 1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**.
    - 2) Switch Type: Pedestal-mounted float switch with float rods and rod buttons.
    - 3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
    - 4) Float Guides: Pipe or other restraint for floats and rods in basins of depth greater than 60 inches (1500 mm).
    - 5) High-Water Alarm: Cover-mounted, compression-probe alarm, with electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
  - i. Controls (float- and pressure-switch types):
    - 1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**; pedestal-mounted **OR** wall-mounted, **as directed**.
    - 2) Switch Type: Mechanical-float **OR** Mercury-float **OR** Pressure, **as directed**, type, in NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosures with mounting rod and electric cables.
    - 3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
    - 4) High-Water Alarm: Rod-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosure with mechanical-float, mercury-float, or pressure switch matching control and electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
  - j. Control-Interface Features:
    - 1) Remote Alarm Contacts: For remote alarm interface.
    - 2) Building Automation System Interface: Auxiliary contacts in pump controls for interface to building automation system and capable of providing the following:
      - a) On-off status of pump.
      - b) Alarm status.
  - k. Guide-Rail Supports:
    - 1) Standard: SWPA's "Submersible Sewage Pumping Systems (SWPA) Handbook."
    - 2) Guide Rails: Vertical pipes or structural members, made of galvanized steel or other corrosion-resistant metal, attached to baseplate and basin sidewall or cover.
    - 3) Baseplate: Corrosion-resistant metal plate, attached to basin floor, supporting guide rails and stationary elbow.
    - 4) Pump Yoke: Motor-mounted or casing-mounted yokes or other attachments for aligning pump during connection of flanges.
    - 5) Movable Elbow: Pump discharge-elbow fitting with flange, seal, and positioning device.
    - 6) Stationary Elbow: Fixed discharge-elbow fitting with flange that mates to movable-elbow flange and support attached to baseplate.
    - 7) Lifting Cable: Stainless steel; attached to pump and cover at manhole.



6. Submersible, Quick-Disconnect, Progressing-Cavity, Grinder Sewage Pumps:
- a. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested progressing-cavity, grinder sewage-pump unit with guide-rail supports.
  - b. Pump Type: Submersible, progressing-cavity, single-screw rotary, grinder sewage pump as defined in HI 3.1-3.5.
  - c. Pump Body: Cast iron.
  - d. Pump Bearings: Radial and thrust types.
  - e. Pump Shaft: Steel.
  - f. Rotor: Stainless steel.
  - g. Stator: Buna-N **OR** Natural rubber, **as directed**.
  - h. Seal: Packing gland and mechanical types.
  - i. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type; with built-in overload protection; lifting eye or lug; and three-conductor, waterproof power cable of length required and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
  - j. Controls (rod-and-float type):
    - 1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**.
    - 2) Switch Type: Pedestal-mounted float switch with float rods and rod buttons.
    - 3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
    - 4) Float Guides: Pipe or other restraint for floats and rods in basins of depth greater than 60 inches (1500 mm).
    - 5) High-Water Alarm: Cover-mounted, compression-probe alarm, with electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
  - k. Controls (float- and pressure-switch types):
    - 1) Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**; pedestal-mounted **OR** wall-mounted, **as directed**.
    - 2) Switch Type: Mechanical-float **OR** Mercury-float **OR** Pressure, **as directed**, type, in NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosures with mounting rod and electric cables.
    - 3) Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
    - 4) High-Water Alarm: Rod-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosure with mechanical-float, mercury-float, or pressure switch matching control and electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
  - l. Control-Interface Features:
    - 1) Remote Alarm Contacts: For remote alarm interface.
    - 2) Building Automation System Interface: Auxiliary contacts in pump controls for interface to building automation system and capable of providing the following:
      - a) On-off status of pump.
      - b) Alarm status.
  - m. Guide-Rail Supports:
    - 1) Standard: SWPA's "Submersible Sewage Pumping Systems (SWPA) Handbook."
    - 2) Guide Rails: Vertical pipes or structural members, made of galvanized steel or other corrosion-resistant metal, attached to baseplate and basin sidewall or cover.
    - 3) Baseplate: Corrosion-resistant metal plate, attached to basin floor, supporting guide rails and stationary elbow.
    - 4) Pump Yoke: Motor-mounted or casing-mounted yokes or other attachments for aligning pump during connection of flanges.
    - 5) Movable Elbow: Pump discharge-elbow fitting with flange, seal, and positioning device.
    - 6) Stationary Elbow: Fixed discharge-elbow fitting with flange that mates to movable-elbow flange and support attached to baseplate.
    - 7) Lifting Cable: Stainless steel; attached to pump and cover at manhole.

C. Wet-Pit-Volute Sewage Pumps

1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested sewage-pump unit.



2. Pump Type: Wet-pit-volute, single-stage, separately-coupled, overhung-impeller, centrifugal sewage pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
  3. Pump Casing: Cast iron, with open inlet and threaded or flanged connection for discharge piping.
  4. Pump Shaft: Stainless-steel **OR** steel, **as directed**.
  5. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class No. 25 A cast iron **OR** ASTM A 532/A 532M, abrasion-resistant cast iron **OR** ASTM B 584, cast bronze, **as directed**, nonclog, open, or semiopen design for solids handling, and keyed and secured to shaft.
  6. Sleeve Bearings: Bronze. Include oil-lubricated, intermediate sleeve bearings at 48-inch (1200-mm) maximum intervals if basin depth is more than 48 inches (1200 mm), and grease-lubricated, ball-type thrust bearings.
  7. Pump and Motor Shaft Coupling: Flexible, capable of absorbing torsional vibration and shaft misalignment.
  8. Pump Discharge Piping: Factory or field fabricated, galvanized, ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, steel pipe with ASME B16.1, Class 125, cast-iron flanges and flanged fittings or ASME B16.4, Class 125, gray iron threaded fittings, **as directed**.
    - a. Modify piping configuration to accommodate reverse-flow assembly.
  9. Support Plate: Cast iron or coated steel and strong enough to support pumps, motors, and controls. Refer to Part 1.2 "Sewage-Pump Basins and Basin Covers" Article for requirements.
  10. Shaft Seal: Stuffing box, with graphite-impregnated braided-yarn rings and bronze packing gland.
  11. Motor: Single-speed; grease-lubricated ball bearings and mounted on vertical, cast-iron pedestal.
  12. Controls (rod-and-float type):
    - a. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**.
    - b. Switch Type: Pedestal-mounted float switch with float rods and rod buttons.
    - c. Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
    - d. Float Guides: Pipe or other restraint for floats and rods in basins of depth greater than 60 inches (1500 mm).
    - e. High-Water Alarm: Cover-mounted, compression-probe alarm, with electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
  13. Controls (float- and pressure-switch types):
    - a. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**; pedestal-mounted **OR** wall-mounted, **as directed**.
    - b. Switch Type: Mechanical-float **OR** Mercury-float **OR** Pressure, **as directed**, type, in NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosures with mounting rod and electric cables.
    - c. Automatic Alternator: Start pumps on successive cycles and start multiple pumps if one cannot handle load.
    - d. High-Water Alarm: Rod-mounted, NEMA 250, Type 6 enclosure with mechanical-float, mercury-float, or pressure switch matching control and electric bell; 120-V ac, with transformer and contacts for remote alarm bell.
  14. Control-Interface Features:
    - a. Remote Alarm Contacts: For remote alarm interface.
    - b. Building Automation System Interface: Auxiliary contacts in pump controls for interface to building automation system and capable of providing the following:
      - 1) On-off status of pump.
      - 2) Alarm status.
- D. Sewage-Pump, Reverse-Flow Assemblies
1. Description: Factory-fabricated, sewage pump reverse-flow assembly for factory or field assembly and installation in sewage pump basin. Include the following corrosion-resistant-metal components:
    - a. Inlet Fitting: One combination inlet-overflow strainer fitting.
    - b. Valves: Two shutoff valves and two check valves.
    - c. Strainers: Two strainer housings with reverse-flow, self-flushing strainers.
    - d. Pipe and Fittings: Size and configuration required to connect to sewage pumps and piping.

E. Sewage-Pump Basins And Basin Covers



1. Basins: Factory-fabricated, watertight, cylindrical, basin sump with top flange and sidewall openings for pipe connections.
    - a. Material: Cast iron **OR** Fiberglass **OR** Polyethylene, **as directed**.
    - b. Reinforcement: Mounting plates for pumps, fittings, guide-rail supports if used, and accessories.
    - c. Anchor Flange: Same material as or compatible with basin sump, cast in or attached to sump, in location and of size required to anchor basin in concrete slab.
  2. Basin Covers: Fabricate metal cover with openings having gaskets, seals, and bushings; for access to pumps, pump shafts, control rods, discharge piping, vent connections, and power cables.
    - a. Reinforcement: Steel or cast iron, capable of supporting foot traffic for basins installed in foot-traffic areas.
- F. Progressing-Cavity Sewage Pumps
1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested progressing-cavity, single-screw rotary pump as defined in HI 3.1-3.5.
  2. Pump Body: Cast iron with feet for base or floor installation.
  3. Pump Bearings: Radial and thrust types.
  4. Pump Shaft: Steel.
  5. Rotor: Chrome-plated steel.
  6. Stator: Buna-N **OR** Natural rubber, **as directed**.
  7. Seals: Packing gland and mechanical types.
  8. Coupling: Flexible.
  9. Motor: Single-speed; grease-lubricated ball bearings.
- G. Packaged, Submersible Sewage-Pump Units
1. Packaged, Submersible, Grinder, Sewage-Pump Units:
    - a. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, automatic-operation, basin-mounted, grinder, sewage-pump unit.
    - b. Pump Type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller centrifugal pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
    - c. Pump Casing: Cast iron.
    - d. Impeller: Stainless-steel grinder, cutter, or slicer type with shredding ring.
    - e. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type; with built-in overload protection; and three-conductor, waterproof power cable of length required and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
    - f. Control (for simplex pump unit): Manufacturer's standard panel for one pump.
    - g. Controls (for duplex pump unit): Automatic, with mechanical- or mercury-float switches and alternator.
    - h. Pump Discharge Piping: Factory or field fabricated, galvanized, ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, steel pipe with ASME B16.4, Class 125, gray iron threaded fittings, **as directed**.
    - i. Basin: Watertight plastic, **as directed**, and of size required for pumps, with inlet pipe connection and gastight cover with pump discharge and vent connections.
  2. Packaged, Submersible, Nonclog, Sewage-Pump Units:
    - a. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, automatic-operation, basin-mounted, sewage-pump unit.
    - b. Pump Type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller centrifugal pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
    - c. Pump Casing: Cast iron.
    - d. Impeller: Brass or cast iron; statically and dynamically balanced, non-clog design, and capable of handling 2-inch (50-mm) diameter solids.
    - e. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type; with built-in overload protection; lifting eye or lug; and three-conductor, waterproof power cable of length required and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.



- f. Control (for simplex pump units): Manufacturer's standard panel for one pump.
  - g. Controls (for duplex pump unit): Automatic, with mechanical- or mercury-float switches and alternator.
  - h. Pump Discharge Piping: Factory or field fabricated, galvanized, ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, steel pipe with ASME B16.4, Class 125, gray iron threaded fittings, **as directed**.
  - i. Basin: Watertight plastic, **as directed**, and of size required for pumps, with inlet pipe connection and gastight cover with pump discharge and vent connections.
- H. Packaged Wastewater-Pump Units
- 1. Packaged, Wet-Pit-Volute, Wastewater-Pump Units:
    - a. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, automatic-operation, basin-mounted, effluent-pump unit.
    - b. Pump Type: Wet-pit-volute, single-stage, separately-coupled, overhung-impeller centrifugal pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
    - c. Pump Body and Impeller: Corrosion-resistant materials.
    - d. Motor: With built-in overload protection and mounted vertically on basin cover.
    - e. Power Cord: Three-conductor, waterproof cable of length required but not less than 72 inches (1830 mm) and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
    - f. Control: Float switch.
    - g. Pump Discharge Piping: Factory or field fabricated, galvanized, ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, steel pipe with ASME B16.4, Class 125, gray iron threaded fittings, **as directed**.
    - h. Basin: Watertight, aluminum, plastic, or coated steel with inlet pipe connection and gastight cover with vent and pump discharge connections.
  - 2. Packaged, Submersible Wastewater-Pump Units:
    - a. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, automatic-operation, effluent-pump unit with basin.
    - b. Pump Type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, overhung-impeller, centrifugal pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
    - c. Pump Body and Impeller: Corrosion-resistant materials.
    - d. Pump Seals: Mechanical.
    - e. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type, with built-in overload protection.
    - f. Power Cord: Three-conductor, waterproof cable of length required but not less than 72 inches (1830 mm) and with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
    - g. Control: Float switch.
    - h. Pump Discharge Piping: Factory or field fabricated, galvanized, ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, steel pipe with ASME B16.4, Class 125, gray iron threaded fittings, **as directed**.
    - i. Basin: Watertight plastic with inlet pipe connection and gastight cover with vent and pump discharge connections.
- I. Motors
- 1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 22 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Plumbing Equipment".
    - a. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
    - b. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 22.
  - 2. Motors for submersible pumps shall be hermetically sealed.



### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Earthwork

1. Excavation and filling are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".

#### B. Examination

1. Examine roughing-in for plumbing piping to verify actual locations of sanitary drainage and vent piping connections before sewage pump installation.

#### C. Installation

1. Pump Installation Standards:
  - a. Comply with HI 1.4 for installation of centrifugal pumps.
  - b. Comply with HI 3.1-3.5 for installation of progressing-cavity sewage pumps.
2. Equipment Mounting (for equipment supported on slabs-on-grade): Install progressing-cavity sewage pumps on concrete base using elastomeric pads **OR** elastomeric mounts **OR** restrained spring isolators, **as directed**. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
  - a. Minimum Deflection: 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**.
  - b. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
  - c. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - d. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - e. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
3. Equipment Mounting: Install progressing-cavity sewage pumps using elastomeric pads **OR** elastomeric mounts **OR** restrained spring isolators, **as directed**. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
  - a. Minimum Deflection: 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**.
4. Equipment Mounting: Install progressing-cavity sewage pumps on vibration isolation equipment base. Comply with requirements specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
5. Wiring Method (for pumps with wall-mounted controls): Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".
6. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

#### D. Connections

1. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste And Vent Piping". Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
2. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

#### E. Field Quality Control

1. Perform tests and inspections.
2. Tests and Inspections:
  - a. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection.
  - b. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - c. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - d. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
3. Pumps and controls will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.



- 
4. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- F. Startup Service
    1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform **OR** Perform, **as directed**, startup service.
      - a. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - G. Adjusting
    1. Adjust pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
    2. Adjust control set points.
  - H. Demonstration
    1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain controls and pumps.

END OF SECTION 22 13 29 13b



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
22 13 29 16	22 13 29 13b	Sewage Pumps
22 13 29 33	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
22 66 53 00	22 11 16 00	Common Work Results for Fire Suppression
22 66 53 00	22 11 16 00a	Common Work Results for Plumbing
22 66 53 00	22 11 16 00b	Common Work Results for HVAC
22 66 53 00	22 11 16 00d	Sanitary Waste And Vent Piping
22 66 53 00	22 11 16 00i	General-Service Compressed-Air Piping



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
26 01 20 91	01 51 13 00	Electrical Renovation
26 01 30 91	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

**SECTION 26 01 50 51 - REMOVAL OF FLUORESCENT LIGHT BALLASTS/CAPACITORS AND FLUORESCENT LIGHT TUBES****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for removal of fluorescent light ballasts/capacitors and fluorescent light tubes. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Submittals**

1. Before Start of Work: Submit the following to the Owner's Representative for review. Do not start work until these submittals are returned with Owner's Representative's approval.
  - a. Copy of State or local license for hazardous waste hauler;
  - b. Certification of at least one on-site supervisor which has satisfactorily completed the OSHA 40 Hour Health and Safety Course for Handling Hazardous Materials;
  - c. Certificates of workers which have successfully completed at least the OSHA 40-Hour Health and Safety Course for Hazardous Materials;
  - d. List of employees scheduled to perform this work;
  - e. Schedule of start and finish times and dates for this work;
  - f. Name and address of landfill where these waste materials are to be deposited (include contact person and telephone numbers);
  - g. Material Safety Data Sheets for all materials requiring removal;
  - h. If contractor introduces any chemical into the work environmental, a MSDS for that chemical is required before use;
  - i. Transporter must have notified the EPA and/or the appropriate local government agency in advance of its intentions to transport PCB's, mercury and cadmium, and receive an identification number pursuant to the Toxic Substance Control Act (TSCA); and
  - j. Contingency Plan for handling emergency spills or leaks.

**1.2 PRODUCTS****A. Materials**

1. Polyethylene Sheet: A single polyethylene film in the largest sheet size possible to minimize seams, 4.0 and 6.0 mil thick, clear, frosted, or black.
2. Duct Tape: Provide duct tape in 3" widths, with an adhesive which is formulated to stick aggressively to sheet polyethylene.
3. Spray Cement: Provide spray adhesive in aerosol cans which is specifically formulated to stick tenaciously to sheet polyethylene.
4. Disposal Bays: Provide 6 mil thick leak-tight polyethylene bags.
5. Labels: As required by the EPA and OSHA for handling, transportation, and disposal of hazardous waste.
6. **Drums:** Recovery or salvage drums acceptable for disposal of hazardous waste. Prior approval of drums is required. Drums or containers must meet the required OSHA EPA (40 CFR Parts 264-265 and 300), and DOT regulations (49 CFR Parts 171-178). Use of damaged drums will not be allowed.

**1.3 EXECUTION****A. General**



1. Where necessary, scaffolding shall be erected to fully access all applicable fluorescent light ballasts/capacitors and tubes. At no time will the ballasts/capacitors and tubes be allowed to drop onto the floor. Contractor must take care to protect from dropping the ballasts/capacitors and fluorescent tubes.
2. Prior to removing ballasts/capacitors and fluorescent tubes, contractor shall ensure that all electrical service to lights has been shut off, and locked out. Temporary lighting shall be erected to adequately illuminate work areas.
3. Depending on height of light fixtures, contractor shall utilize at least a 2-person per team system. The fluorescent light tubes shall be removed and passed to the appropriate number of workers required to lower the tubes to the floor without breaking them.
4. The worker on the floor shall lay the tubes in cardboard boxes large enough to hold a small quantity of tubes. Worker shall take care to not damage the tubes while they are lowered into the box. Once the box is full, it shall be wrapped with two layers of 6 mil thick polyethylene sheeting and sealed with duct tape.
5. Contractor may choose to either remove the fluorescent light ballasts/capacitors in-place or lower the lighting fixtures for easy access. The ballasts/capacitors shall be removed from the fixtures. Electrical wiring leading from the ballasts/capacitors shall be cut away. Ballasts/capacitors shall be placed in 55-gallon drums lined with at least two 6 mil thick polyethylene bags. Be careful not to overfill the drums so that they remain manageable. Once the drums have been filled to the acceptable level, seal the lid onto the top of the drum, and affix appropriate labels. Transport drums via hand dollies.

B. Worker Protection

1. As a minimum, while working with the ballasts/capacitors and light tubes, workers shall utilize impervious gloves adequate for the use with hazardous materials. If light ballasts/capacitors and/or light tubes are damaged, and/or exposure to these materials may reach the OSHA PEL or AGGIH threshold limit value (TLV), the contractor shall be required to provide impervious full body protection and respiratory protection. However, contractor is required to verify the type of protection required prior to working with these materials, and have written approval by Owner's Representative prior to beginning.
2. In addition, workers shall not smoke, drink or eat in these areas during work activities.

C. Storage Of Fluorescent Light Ballasts/Capacitors And Light Tubes

1. Once the containers holding the ballasts/capacitors and light tubes have been filled and sealed, they shall be stored in designated areas as agreed upon by the Owners Representative and Contractor. They shall not be allowed to be stored on-site in transportation vehicles until the time for them to be transported to the hazardous waste incinerators or landfill facility.

END OF SECTION 26 01 50 51



## SECTION 26 01 50 51a - INTERIOR LIGHTING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for interior lighting. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Interior lighting fixtures, lamps, and ballasts.
  - b. Emergency lighting units.
  - c. Exit signs.
  - d. Lighting fixture supports.
  - e. Retrofit kits for fluorescent lighting fixtures.

#### C. Definitions

1. BF: Ballast factor.
2. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
3. CRI: Color-rendering index.
4. HID: High-intensity discharge.
5. LER: Luminaire efficacy rating.
6. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
7. Luminaire: Complete lighting fixture, including ballast housing if provided.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of lighting fixture, arranged in order of fixture designation. Include data on features, accessories, finishes, and the following:
  - a. Physical description of lighting fixture including dimensions.
  - b. Emergency lighting units including battery and charger.
  - c. Ballast, including BF.
  - d. Energy-efficiency data.
  - e. Air and Thermal Performance Data: For air-handling lighting fixtures. Furnish data required in "Submittals" Article in Division 23 Section "Diffusers, Registers, And Grilles".
  - f. Sound Performance Data: For air-handling lighting fixtures. Indicate sound power level and sound transmission class in test reports certified according to standards specified in Division 23 Section "Diffusers, Registers, And Grilles".
  - g. Life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data for lamps.
  - h. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IESNA Lighting Measurements Testing & Calculation Guides, of each lighting fixture type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps, ballasts, and accessories identical to those indicated for the lighting fixture as applied in this Project.
    - 1) Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated fixtures, photometric data shall be certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining fixtures shall be certified by manufacturer.
- OR**  
Manufacturer Certified Data: Photometric data shall be certified by a manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
2. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom lighting fixtures. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.



- a. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
- b. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Samples: For each lighting fixture indicated in the Interior Lighting Fixture Schedule. Each Sample shall include the following:
  - a. Lamps and ballasts, installed.
  - b. Cords and plugs.
  - c. Pendant support system.
4. Installation instructions.
5. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - a. Lighting fixtures.
  - b. Suspended ceiling components.
  - c. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extends to within 12 inches (305 mm) of the plane of the luminaires.
  - d. Ceiling-mounted projectors.
  - e. Structural members to which suspension systems for lighting fixtures will be attached.
  - f. Other items in finished ceiling including the following:
    - 1) Air outlets and inlets.
    - 2) Speakers.
    - 3) Sprinklers.
    - 4) Smoke and fire detectors.
    - 5) Occupancy sensors.
    - 6) Access panels.
  - g. Perimeter moldings.
6. Qualification Data: For qualified agencies providing photometric data for lighting fixtures.
7. Product Certificates: For each type of ballast for bi-level and dimmer-controlled fixtures, from manufacturer.
8. Field quality-control reports.
9. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lighting equipment and fixtures to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  - a. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.
10. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by manufacturers' laboratories that are accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

**OR**

1. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910, complying with the IESNA Lighting Measurements Testing & Calculation Guides.
2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. Comply with NFPA 70.
4. FM Global Compliance: Lighting fixtures for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.

#### F. Coordination

1. Coordinate layout and installation of lighting fixtures and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.





## G. Warranty

1. Special Warranty for Emergency Lighting Batteries: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer of battery-powered emergency lighting unit agrees to repair or replace components of rechargeable batteries that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - a. Warranty Period for Emergency Lighting Unit Batteries: 10 years from date of Final Completion. Full warranty shall apply for first year, and prorated warranty for the remaining nine years.
  - b. Warranty Period for Emergency Fluorescent Ballast and Self-Powered Exit Sign Batteries: Seven years from date of Final Completion. Full warranty shall apply for first year, and prorated warranty for the remaining six years.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. General Requirements For Lighting Fixtures And Components

1. Recessed Fixtures: Comply with NEMA LE 4 for ceiling compatibility for recessed fixtures.
2. Incandescent Fixtures: Comply with UL 1598. Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5A.
3. Fluorescent Fixtures: Comply with UL 1598. Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5 and NEMA LE 5A as applicable.
4. HID Fixtures: Comply with UL 1598. Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5B.
5. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
6. Sheet Metal Components: Steel unless otherwise indicated. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
7. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
8. Diffusers and Globes:
  - a. Acrylic Lighting Diffusers: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic. High resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
    - 1) Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch (3.175 mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
    - 2) UV stabilized.
  - b. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
9. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps and ballasts. Labels shall be located where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
  - a. Label shall include the following lamp and ballast characteristics:
    - 1) "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
    - 2) Lamp diameter code (T-4, T-5, T-8, T-12, etc.), tube configuration (twin, quad, triple, etc.), base type, and nominal wattage for fluorescent and compact fluorescent luminaires.
    - 3) Lamp type, wattage, bulb type (ED17, BD56, etc.) and coating (clear or coated) for HID luminaires.
    - 4) Start type (preheat, rapid start, instant start, etc.) for fluorescent and compact fluorescent luminaires.
    - 5) ANSI ballast type (M98, M57, etc.) for HID luminaires.
    - 6) CCT and CRI for all luminaires.
10. Electromagnetic-Interference Filters: Factory installed to suppress conducted electromagnetic interference as required by MIL-STD-461E. Fabricate lighting fixtures with one filter on each ballast indicated to require a filter.
11. Air-Handling Fluorescent Fixtures: For use with plenum ceiling for air return and heat extraction and for attaching an air-diffuser-boot assembly specified in Division 15 Section "Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles."
  - a. Air-Supply Units: Slots in one or both side trims join with air-diffuser-boot assemblies.



- b. Heat-Removal Units: Air path leads through lamp cavity.
- c. Combination Heat-Removal and Air-Supply Unit: Heat is removed through lamp cavity at both ends of the fixture door with air supply same as for air-supply units.
- d. Dampers: Operable from outside fixture for control of return-air volume.
- e. Static Fixture: Air-supply slots are blanked off, and fixture appearance matches active units.

B. Ballasts For Linear Fluorescent Lamps

1. General Requirements for Electronic Ballasts:
  - a. Comply with UL 935 and with ANSI C82.11.
  - b. Designed for type and quantity of lamps served.
  - c. Ballasts shall be designed for full light output unless another BF, dimmer, or bi-level control is indicated.
  - d. Sound Rating: Class A **OR** Class A except Class B for T8/HO and T12/Slimline lamp ballasts, **as directed**.
  - e. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: Less than 10 **OR** 20, **as directed**, percent.
  - f. Transient Voltage Protection: IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2, Category A or better.
  - g. Operating Frequency: 42 kHz or higher.
  - h. Lamp Current Crest Factor: 1.7 or less.
  - i. BF: 0.88 or higher.
  - j. Power Factor: 0.95 **OR** 0.98, **as directed**, or higher.
  - k. Parallel Lamp Circuits: Multiple lamp ballasts shall comply with ANSI C82.11 and shall be connected to maintain full light output on surviving lamps if one or more lamps fail.
2. Luminaires controlled by occupancy sensors shall have programmed-start ballasts.
3. Electronic Programmed-Start Ballasts for T5 **OR** T8 **OR** T5HO **OR** T5 and T5HO, **as directed**, Lamps: Comply with ANSI C82.11 and the following:
  - a. Lamp end-of-life detection and shutdown circuit for T5 diameter lamps.
  - b. Automatic lamp starting after lamp replacement.
4. Electromagnetic Ballasts: Comply with ANSI C82.1; energy saving, high-power factor, Class P, and having automatic-reset thermal protection.
  - a. Ballast Manufacturer Certification: Indicated by label.
5. Single Ballasts for Multiple Lighting Fixtures: Factory wired with ballast arrangements and bundled extension wiring to suit final installation conditions without modification or rewiring in the field.
6. Ballasts for Low-Temperature Environments:
  - a. Temperatures 0 Deg F (Minus 17 Deg C) and Higher: Electronic or electromagnetic type rated for 0 deg F (minus 17 deg C) starting and operating temperature with indicated lamp types.
  - b. Temperatures Minus 20 Deg F (Minus 29 Deg C) and Higher: Electromagnetic type designed for use with indicated lamp types.
7. Ballasts for Residential Applications: Fixtures designated as "Residential" may use low-power-factor electronic ballasts having a Class B sound rating and total harmonic distortion of approximately 30 percent.
8. Ballasts for Low Electromagnetic-Interference Environments: Comply with 47 CFR 18, Ch. 1, Subpart C, for limitations on electromagnetic and radio-frequency interference for consumer equipment.
9. Ballasts for Dimmer-Controlled Lighting Fixtures: Electronic type.
  - a. Dimming Range: 100 to 5 percent of rated lamp lumens.
  - b. Ballast Input Watts: Can be reduced to 20 percent of normal.
  - c. Compatibility: Certified by manufacturer for use with specific dimming control system and lamp type indicated.
  - d. Control: Coordinate wiring from ballast to control device to ensure that the ballast, controller, and connecting wiring are compatible.
10. Ballasts for Bi-Level Controlled Lighting Fixtures: Electronic type.



- a. Operating Modes: Ballast circuit and leads provide for remote control of the light output of the associated lamp between high- and low-level and off.
    - 1) High-Level Operation: 100 percent of rated lamp lumens.
    - 2) Low-Level Operation: 30 percent of rated lamp lumens.
  - b. Ballast shall provide equal current to each lamp in each operating mode.
  - c. Compatibility: Certified by manufacturer for use with specific bi-level control system and lamp type indicated.
11. Ballasts for Tri-Level Controlled Lighting Fixtures: Electronic type.
- a. Operating Modes: Ballast circuit and leads provide for remote control of the light output of the associated lamp between high- and low-level and off.
    - 1) High-Level Operation: 100 percent of rated lamp lumens.
    - 2) Low-Level Operation: 30 and 50 **OR** 30 and 60, **as directed**, percent of rated lamp lumens.
  - b. Ballast shall provide equal current to each lamp in each operating mode.
  - c. Compatibility: Certified by manufacturer for use with specific tri-level control system and lamp type indicated.
- C. Ballasts For Compact Fluorescent Lamps
1. Description: Electronic-programmed rapid-start type, complying with UL 935 and with ANSI C 82.11, designed for type and quantity of lamps indicated. Ballast shall be designed for full light output unless dimmer or bi-level control is indicated:
    - a. Lamp end-of-life detection and shutdown circuit.
    - b. Automatic lamp starting after lamp replacement.
    - c. Sound Rating: Class A.
    - d. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: Less than 20 percent.
    - e. Transient Voltage Protection: IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2, Category A or better.
    - f. Operating Frequency: 20 kHz or higher.
    - g. Lamp Current Crest Factor: 1.7 or less.
    - h. BF: 0.95 or higher unless otherwise indicated.
    - i. Power Factor: 0.95 **OR** 0.98, **as directed**, except fixtures designated as "Residential" may use low-power-factor electronic ballasts, **as directed**, or higher.
    - j. Interference: Comply with 47 CFR 18, Ch. 1, Subpart C, for limitations on electromagnetic and radio-frequency interference for nonconsumer equipment.
- D. Emergency Fluorescent Power Unit
1. Internal Type: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, factory mounted within lighting fixture body and compatible with ballast. Comply with UL 924.
    - a. Emergency Connection: Operate one fluorescent lamp(s) continuously at an output of 1100 lumens each. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to fixture ballast.
    - b. Nightlight Connection: Operate one fluorescent lamp continuously.
    - c. Test Push Button and Indicator Light: Visible and accessible without opening fixture or entering ceiling space.
      - 1) Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
      - 2) Indicator Light: LED indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
    - d. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
    - e. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type with sealed power transfer relay.
    - f. Remote Test: Switch in hand-held remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.



- g. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.
- 2. External Type: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, suitable for powering one or more fluorescent lamps, remote mounted from lighting fixture. Comply with UL 924.
  - a. Emergency Connection: Operate one fluorescent lamp continuously. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to fixture ballast.
  - b. Nightlight Connection: Operate one fluorescent lamp in a remote fixture continuously.
  - c. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
  - d. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type.
  - e. Housing: NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.
  - f. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
  - g. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
  - h. Remote Test: Switch in hand-held remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
  - i. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.

#### E. Ballasts For HID Lamps

- 1. Electromagnetic Ballast for Metal-Halide Lamps: Comply with ANSI C82.4 and UL 1029. Include the following features unless otherwise indicated:
  - a. Ballast Circuit: Constant-wattage autotransformer or regulating high-power-factor type.
  - b. Minimum Starting Temperature: Minus 22 deg F (Minus 30 deg C) for single-lamp ballasts.
  - c. Rated Ambient Operating Temperature: 104 deg F (40 deg C).
  - d. Open-circuit operation that will not reduce average life.
  - e. Low-Noise Ballasts: Manufacturers' standard epoxy-encapsulated models designed to minimize audible fixture noise.
- 2. Electronic Ballast for Metal-Halide Lamps: Include the following features unless otherwise indicated:
  - a. Minimum Starting Temperature: Minus 20 deg F (Minus 29 deg C) for single-lamp ballasts.
  - b. Rated Ambient Operating Temperature: 130 deg F (54 deg C).
  - c. Lamp end-of-life detection and shutdown circuit.
  - d. Sound Rating: Class A.
  - e. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: Less than 20 percent.
  - f. Transient Voltage Protection: IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2, Category A or better.
  - g. Lamp Current Crest Factor: 1.5 or less.
  - h. Power Factor: 0.90 or higher.
  - i. Interference: Comply with 47 CFR 18, Ch. 1, Subpart C, for limitations on electromagnetic and radio-frequency interference for nonconsumer equipment.
  - j. Protection: Class P thermal cutout.
  - k. Bi-Level Dimming Ballast: Ballast circuit and leads provide for remote control of the light output of the associated fixture between high- and low-level and off.
    - 1) High-Level Operation: 100 percent of rated lamp lumens.
    - 2) Low-Level Operation: 35 **OR** 50, **as directed**, percent of rated lamp lumens.
    - 3) Compatibility: Certified by ballast manufacturer for use with specific bi-level control system and lamp type indicated. Certified by lamp manufacturer that ballast operating modes are free from negative effect on lamp life and color-rendering capability.
  - l. Continuous Dimming Ballast: Dimming range shall be from 100 to 35 percent of rated lamp lumens without flicker.



- 1) Ballast Input Watts: Reduced to a maximum of 50 percent of normal at lowest dimming setting.
  3. High-Pressure Sodium Ballasts: Electromagnetic type, with solid-state igniter/starter. Igniter/starter shall have an average life in pulsing mode of 10,000 hours at an igniter/starter-case temperature of 90 deg C.
    - a. Instant-Restrike Device: Integral with ballast, or solid-state potted module, factory installed within fixture and compatible with lamps, ballasts, and mogul sockets up to 150 W.
    - b. Minimum Starting Temperature: Minus 40 deg F (Minus 40 deg C).
- F. Quartz Lamp Lighting Controller
1. General Requirements for Controllers: Factory installed by lighting fixture manufacturer. Comply with UL 1598.
  2. Standby (Quartz Restrike): Automatically switches quartz lamp on when a HID lamp in the fixture is initially energized and during the HID lamp restrike period after brief power outages.
  3. Connections: Designed for a single branch -circuit connection.
  4. Switching Off: Automatically switches quartz lamp off when HID lamp strikes.  
**OR**  
Switching Off: Automatically switches quartz lamp off when HID lamp reaches approximately 60 percent light output.
- G. Exit Signs
1. General Requirements for Exit Signs: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Internally Lighted Signs:
    - a. Lamps for AC Operation: Fluorescent, two for each fixture, 20,000 hours of rated lamp life.  
**OR**  
Lamps for AC Operation: LEDs, 50,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.
    - b. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Integral automatic charger in a self-contained power pack.
      - 1) Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
      - 2) Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state type with sealed transfer relay.
      - 3) Operation: Relay automatically energizes lamp from battery when circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
      - 4) Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
      - 5) LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
      - 6) Remote Test: Switch in hand-held remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
      - 7) Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.
    - c. Master/Remote Sign Configurations:
      - 1) Master Unit: Comply with requirements above for self-powered exit signs, and provide additional capacity in LED power supply **OR** ballast **OR** battery, **as directed**, for power connection to remote unit.
      - 2) Remote Unit: Comply with requirements above for self-powered exit signs, except omit power supply, battery, and test features. Arrange to receive full power requirements from master unit. Connect for testing concurrently with master unit as a unified system.



3. Self-Luminous Signs: Powered by tritium gas, with universal bracket for flush-ceiling, wall, or end mounting. Signs shall be guaranteed by manufacturer to maintain the minimum brightness requirements in UL 924 for 10 **OR** 15 **OR** 20, **as directed**, years.

**OR**

Self-Luminous Signs: Using strontium oxide aluminate compound to store ambient light and release the stored energy when the light is removed. Provide with universal bracket for flush-ceiling, wall, or end mounting.

#### H. Emergency Lighting Units

1. General Requirements for Emergency Lighting Units: Self-contained units complying with UL 924.
  - a. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, lead-acid type.
  - b. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state type with sealed transfer relay.
  - c. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
  - d. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
  - e. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
  - f. Wire Guard: Heavy-chrome-plated wire guard protects lamp heads or fixtures.
  - g. Integral Time-Delay Relay: Holds unit on for fixed interval of 15 minutes when power is restored after an outage.
  - h. Remote Test: Switch in hand-held remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
  - i. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.

#### I. Fluorescent Lamps

1. T8 rapid-start lamps, rated 32 W maximum, nominal length of 48 inches (1220 mm), 2800 initial lumens (minimum), CRI 75 (minimum), color temperature 3500 K, and average rated life 20,000 hours unless otherwise indicated.
2. T8 rapid-start lamps, rated 17 W maximum, nominal length of 24 inches (610 mm), 1300 initial lumens (minimum), CRI 75 (minimum), color temperature 3500 K, and average rated life of 20,000 hours unless otherwise indicated.
3. T5 rapid-start lamps, rated 28 W maximum, nominal length of 45.2 inches (1150 mm), 2900 initial lumens (minimum), CRI 85 (minimum), color temperature 3000 K, and average rated life of 20,000 hours unless otherwise indicated.
4. T5HO rapid-start, high-output lamps, rated 54 W maximum, nominal length of 45.2 inches (1150 mm), 5000 initial lumens (minimum), CRI 85 (minimum), color temperature 4100 K, and average rated life of 20,000 hours unless otherwise indicated.
5. Compact Fluorescent Lamps: 4-Pin, CRI 80 (minimum), color temperature 3500 K, average rated life of 10,000 hours at three hours operation per start, and suitable for use with dimming ballasts, **as directed**.

#### J. HID Lamps

1. High-Pressure Sodium Lamps: ANSI C78.42, CRI 21 (minimum), color temperature 1900 K, and average rated life of 24,000 hours, minimum.



- a. Dual-Arc Tube Lamps: Arranged so only one of two arc tubes is lighted at one time and, when power is restored after an outage, the cooler arc tube, with lower internal pressure, lights instantly, providing an immediate 8 to 15 percent of normal light output.
  2. Metal-Halide Lamps: ANSI C78.43, with minimum CRI 65, and color temperature 4000 K.
  3. Pulse-Start, Metal-Halide Lamps: Minimum CRI 65, and color temperature 4000 K.
  4. Ceramic, Pulse-Start, Metal-Halide Lamps: Minimum CRI 80, and color temperature 4000 K.
  5. Low-Pressure Sodium Lamps: ANSI 78.41, CRI 0, and color temperature 1800 K.
- K. Lighting Fixture Support Components
1. Comply with Division 26 Section "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems" for channel- and angle-iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
  2. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as fixture.
  3. Twin-Stem Hangers: Two, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel tubes with single canopy designed to mount a single fixture. Finish same as fixture.
  4. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage (2.68 mm).
  5. Wires for Humid Spaces: ASTM A 580/A 580M, Composition 302 or 304, annealed stainless steel, 12 gage (2.68 mm).
  6. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch (5-mm) minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
  7. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to fixture and line voltage and equipped with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.
- L. Retrofit Kits For Fluorescent Lighting Fixtures
1. Reflector Kit: UL 1598, Type I. Suitable for two- to four-lamp, surface-mounted or recessed lighting fixtures by improving reflectivity of fixture surfaces.
  2. Ballast and Lamp Change Kit: UL 1598, Type II. Suitable for changing existing ballast, lamps, and sockets.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Installation
1. Lighting fixtures:
    - a. Set level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Install lamps in each luminaire.
  2. Temporary Lighting: If it is necessary, and approved by the Owner, to use permanent luminaires for temporary lighting, install and energize the minimum number of luminaires necessary. When construction is sufficiently complete, remove the temporary luminaires, disassemble, clean thoroughly, install new lamps, and reinstall.
  3. Remote Mounting of Ballasts: Distance between the ballast and fixture shall not exceed that recommended by ballast manufacturer. Verify, with ballast manufacturers, maximum distance between ballast and luminaire.
  4. Lay-in Ceiling Lighting Fixtures Supports: Use grid as a support element.
    - a. Install ceiling support system rods or wires, independent of the ceiling suspension devices, **as directed**, for each fixture. Locate not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from lighting fixture corners.
    - b. Support Clips: Fasten to lighting fixtures and to ceiling grid members at or near each fixture corner with clips that are UL listed for the application.
    - c. Fixtures of Sizes Less Than Ceiling Grid: Install as indicated on reflected ceiling plans or center in acoustical panel, and support fixtures independently with at least two 3/4-inch (20-mm) metal channels spanning and secured to ceiling tees.
    - d. Install at least one independent support rod or wire from structure to a tab on lighting fixture. Wire or rod shall have breaking strength of the weight of fixture at a safety factor of 3.
  5. Suspended Lighting Fixture Support:
    - a. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches (1200 mm), brace to limit swinging.



- b. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Fixtures: Suspend with twin-stem hangers.
  - c. Continuous Rows: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and tubing or rod for suspension for each unit length of fixture chassis, including one at each end.
  - d. Do not use grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.
6. Air-Handling Lighting Fixtures: Install with dampers closed and ready for adjustment.
  7. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".
- B. Identification
1. Install labels with panel and circuit numbers on concealed junction and outlet boxes. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
- C. Field Quality Control
1. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery and retransfer to normal.
  2. Verify that self-luminous exit signs are installed according to their listing and the requirements in NFPA 101.
  3. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.
- D. Startup Service
1. Burn-in all lamps that require specific aging period to operate properly, prior to occupancy by the Owner. Burn-in fluorescent and compact fluorescent lamps intended to be dimmed, for at least 100 hours at full voltage.
- E. Adjusting
1. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Final Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting aimable luminaires to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required after dark.
    - a. Adjust aimable luminaires in the presence of the Owner.

END OF SECTION 26 01 50 51a





## SECTION 26 01 50 51b - EXTERIOR LIGHTING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for exterior lighting. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Exterior luminaires with lamps and ballasts.
  - b. Luminaire-mounted photoelectric relays.
  - c. Poles and accessories.
  - d. Luminaire lowering devices.

#### C. Definitions

1. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
2. CRI: Color-rendering index.
3. HID: High-intensity discharge.
4. LER: Luminaire efficacy rating.
5. Luminaire: Complete lighting fixture, including ballast housing if provided.
6. Pole: Luminaire support structure, including tower used for large area illumination.
7. Standard: Same definition as "Pole" above.

#### D. Structural Analysis Criteria For Pole Selection

1. Dead Load: Weight of luminaire and its horizontal and vertical supports, lowering devices, and supporting structure, applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M.
2. Live Load: Single load of 500 lbf (2224 N), distributed as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M.
3. Ice Load: Load of 3 lbf/sq. ft. (145 Pa), applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M Ice Load Map.
4. Wind Load: Pressure of wind on pole and luminaire and banners and banner arms, calculated and applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M.
  - a. Basic wind speed for calculating wind load for poles exceeding 49.2 feet (15 m) in height is 100 mph (45 m/s) **OR** 90 mph (40 m/s), **as directed**.
    - 1) Wind Importance Factor: 1.0.
    - 2) Minimum Design Life: 50 years.
    - 3) Velocity Conversion Factors: 1.0.
  - b. Basic wind speed for calculating wind load for poles 50 feet (15 m) high or less is 100 mph (45 m/s) **OR** 90 mph (40 m/s).
    - 1) Wind Importance Factor: 1.0.
    - 2) Minimum Design Life: 25 years.
    - 3) Velocity Conversion Factors: 1.0.

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each luminaire, pole, and support component, arranged in order of lighting unit designation. Include data on features, accessories, finishes, and the following:
  - a. Physical description of luminaire, including materials, dimensions, effective projected area, and verification of indicated parameters.
  - b. Details of attaching luminaires and accessories.
  - c. Details of installation and construction.
  - d. Luminaire materials.
  - e. Photometric data based on laboratory tests of each luminaire type, complete with indicated lamps, ballasts, and accessories.



- 1) Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data shall be certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.  
**OR**  
Manufacturer Certified Data: Photometric data shall be certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
  - f. Photoelectric relays.
  - g. Ballasts, including energy-efficiency data.
  - h. Lamps, including life, output, CCT, CRI, lumens, and energy-efficiency data.
  - i. Materials, dimensions, and finishes of poles.
  - j. Means of attaching luminaires to supports, and indication that attachment is suitable for components involved.
  - k. Anchor bolts for poles.
  - l. Manufactured pole foundations.
  2. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
    - a. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
    - b. Anchor-bolt templates keyed to specific poles and certified by manufacturer.
    - c. Design calculations, certified by a qualified professional engineer, indicating strength of screw foundations and soil conditions on which they are based.
    - d. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
  3. Samples: For products designated for sample submission in the Exterior Lighting Device Schedule. Each Sample shall include lamps and ballasts.
  4. Pole and Support Component Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of poles, certifying that products are designed for indicated load requirements in AASHTO LTS-4-M and that load imposed by luminaire and attachments has been included in design. The certification shall be based on design calculations by a professional engineer.
  5. Qualification Data: For qualified agencies providing photometric data for lighting fixtures.
  6. Field quality-control reports.
  7. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and poles **OR** luminaire lowering devices, **as directed**, to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  8. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.
- F. Quality Assurance
1. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by manufacturers' laboratories that are accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.  
**OR**  
Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.
  2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  3. Comply with IEEE C2, "National Electrical Safety Code."
  4. Comply with NFPA 70.
- G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Package aluminum poles for shipping according to ASTM B 660.
  2. Store poles on decay-resistant-treated skids at least 12 inches (300 mm) above grade and vegetation. Support poles to prevent distortion and arrange to provide free air circulation.
  3. Handle wood poles so they will not be damaged. Do not use pointed tools that can indent pole surface more than 1/4 inch (6 mm) deep. Do not apply tools to section of pole to be installed below ground line.



4. Retain factory-applied pole wrappings on fiberglass and laminated wood poles until right before pole installation. Handle poles with web fabric straps.
5. Retain factory-applied pole wrappings on metal poles until right before pole installation. For poles with nonmetallic finishes, handle with web fabric straps.

#### H. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace products that fail in materials or workmanship; that corrode; or that fade, stain, perforate, erode, or chalk due to effects of weather or solar radiation within specified warranty period. Manufacturer may exclude lightning damage, hail damage, vandalism, abuse, or unauthorized repairs or alterations from special warranty coverage.
  - a. Warranty Period for Luminaires: Five years from date of Final Completion.
  - b. Warranty Period for Metal Corrosion: Five years from date of Final Completion.
  - c. Warranty Period for Color Retention: Five years from date of Final Completion.
  - d. Warranty Period for Poles: Repair or replace lighting poles and standards that fail in finish, materials, and workmanship within manufacturer's standard warranty period, but not less than three years from date of Final Completion.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. General Requirements For Luminaires

1. Luminaires shall comply with UL 1598 and be listed and labeled for installation in wet locations by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - a. LER Tests Incandescent Fixtures: Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5A.
  - b. LER Tests Fluorescent Fixtures: Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5 and NEMA LE 5A as applicable.
  - c. LER Tests HID Fixtures: Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5B.
2. Lateral Light Distribution Patterns: Comply with IESNA RP-8 for parameters of lateral light distribution patterns indicated for luminaires.
3. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
4. Sheet Metal Components: Corrosion-resistant aluminum unless otherwise indicated. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
5. Housings: Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosures that will not warp, sag, or deform in use. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.
6. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lenses. Designed to disconnect ballast when door opens.
7. Exposed Hardware Material: Stainless steel.
8. Plastic Parts: High resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
9. Light Shields: Metal baffles, factory installed and field adjustable, arranged to block light distribution to indicated portion of normally illuminated area or field.
10. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows unless otherwise indicated:
  - a. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
  - b. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
  - c. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.
11. Lenses and Refractors Gaskets: Use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.
12. Luminaire Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested luminaire before shipping. Where indicated, match finish process and color of pole or support materials.
13. Factory-Applied Finish for Steel Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.



- a. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning," to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
  - b. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.
    - 1) Color: As selected from manufacturer's standard catalog of colors **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
14. Factory-Applied Finish for Aluminum Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- a. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
  - b. Natural Satin Finish: Provide fine, directional, medium satin polish (AA-M32); buff complying with AA-M20; and seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.
  - c. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: medium satin; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
  - d. Class I, Color Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: medium satin; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
    - 1) Color: Light bronze **OR** Medium bronze **OR** Dark bronze **OR** Black, **as directed**.
15. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps and ballasts. Labels shall be located where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
- a. Label shall include the following lamp and ballast characteristics:
    - 1) "USES ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
    - 2) Lamp diameter code (T-4, T-5, T-8, T-12), tube configuration (twin, quad, triple), base type, and nominal wattage for fluorescent and compact fluorescent luminaires.
    - 3) Lamp type, wattage, bulb type (ED17, BD56, etc.) and coating (clear or coated) for HID luminaires.
    - 4) Start type (preheat, rapid start, instant start) for fluorescent and compact fluorescent luminaires.
    - 5) ANSI ballast type (M98, M57, etc.) for HID luminaires.
    - 6) CCT and CRI for all luminaires.
- B. Luminaire-Mounted Photoelectric Relays
1. Comply with UL 773 or UL 773A.
  2. Contact Relays: Factory mounted, single throw, designed to fail in the on position, and factory set to turn light unit on at 1.5 to 3 fc (16 to 32 lx) and off at 4.5 to 10 fc (48 to 108 lx) with 15-second minimum time delay. Relay shall have directional lens in front of photocell to prevent artificial light sources from causing false turnoff, **as directed**.
    - a. Relay with locking-type receptacle shall comply with ANSI C136.10.
    - b. Adjustable window slide for adjusting on-off set points.
- C. Fluorescent Ballasts And Lamps
1. Ballasts for Low-Temperature Environments:
    - a. Temperatures 0 Deg F (Minus 17 Deg C) and Higher: Electronic or electromagnetic type rated for 0 deg F (minus 17 deg C) starting and operating temperature with indicated lamp types.
    - b. Temperatures Minus 20 Deg F (Minus 29 Deg C) and Higher: Electromagnetic type designed for use with indicated lamp types.
  2. Ballast Characteristics:
    - a. Power Factor: 90 percent, minimum.



- b. Sound Rating: Class A **OR** Class A except Class B for T8/HO ballasts, **as directed**.
  - c. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: Less than 10 **OR** 20, **as directed**, percent.
  - d. Electromagnetic Ballasts: Comply with ANSI C82.1, energy-saving, high power factor, Class P, automatic-reset thermal protection.
  - e. Case Temperature for Compact Lamp Ballasts: 65 deg C, maximum.
  - f. Transient-Voltage Protection: Comply with IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2, Category A or better.
3. Low-Temperature Lamp Capability: Rated for reliable starting and operation with ballast provided at temperatures 0 deg F (minus 18 deg C) **OR** minus 20 deg F (minus 29 deg C), **as directed**, and higher.
- D. Ballasts For HID Lamps
1. Comply with ANSI C82.4 and UL 1029 and capable of open-circuit operation without reduction of average lamp life. Include the following features unless otherwise indicated:
    - a. Ballast Circuit: Constant-wattage autotransformer or regulating high-power-factor type.
    - b. Minimum Starting Temperature: Minus 22 deg F (Minus 30 deg C).
    - c. Normal Ambient Operating Temperature: 104 deg F (40 deg C).
    - d. Ballast Fuses: One in each ungrounded power supply conductor. Voltage and current ratings as recommended by ballast manufacturer.
  2. Auxiliary, Instant-On, Quartz System: Factory-installed feature automatically switches quartz lamp on when fixture is initially energized and when momentary power outages occur. System automatically turns quartz lamp off when HID lamp reaches approximately 60 percent of light output.
  3. High-Pressure Sodium Ballasts: Electromagnetic type with solid-state igniter/starter and capable of open-circuit operation without reduction of average lamp life. Igniter/starter shall have an average life in pulsing mode of 10,000 hours at an igniter/starter-case temperature of 90 deg C.
    - a. Instant-Restrike Device: Integral with ballast, or solid-state potted module, factory installed within fixture and compatible with lamps, ballasts, and mogul sockets up to 150 W.
      - 1) Restrike Range: 105- to 130-V ac.
      - 2) Maximum Voltage: 250-V peak or 150-V ac rms.
    - b. Minimum Starting Temperature: Minus 40 deg F (Minus 40 deg C).
- E. HID Lamps
1. High-Pressure Sodium Lamps: ANSI C78.42, CRI 21 (minimum), CCT color temperature 1900 K, and average rated life of 24,000 hours, minimum.
    - a. Dual-Arc Tube Lamp: Arranged so only one of two arc tubes is lighted at one time and, when power is restored after an outage, the cooler arc tube, with lower internal pressure, lights instantly, providing an immediate 8 to 15 percent of normal light output.
  2. Low-Pressure Sodium Lamps: ANSI C78.43.
  3. Metal-Halide Lamps: ANSI C78.43, with minimum CRI 65, and CCT color temperature 4000 K.
  4. Pulse-Start, Metal-Halide Lamps: Minimum CRI 65, and CCT color temperature 4000 K.
  5. Ceramic, Pulse-Start, Metal-Halide Lamps: Minimum CRI 80, and CCT color temperature 4000 K.
- F. General Requirements For Poles And Support Components
1. Structural Characteristics: Comply with AASHTO LTS-4-M.
    - a. Wind-Load Strength of Poles: Adequate at indicated heights above grade without failure, permanent deflection, or whipping in steady winds of speed indicated in "Structural Analysis Criteria for Pole Selection" Article.
    - b. Strength Analysis: For each pole, multiply the actual equivalent projected area of luminaires and brackets by a factor of 1.1 to obtain the equivalent projected area to be used in pole selection strength analysis.
  2. Luminaire Attachment Provisions: Comply with luminaire manufacturers' mounting requirements. Use stainless-steel fasteners and mounting bolts unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Mountings, Fasteners, and Appurtenances: Corrosion-resistant items compatible with support components.



- a. Materials: Shall not cause galvanic action at contact points.
- b. Anchor Bolts, Leveling Nuts, Bolt Caps, and Washers: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.
- c. Anchor-Bolt Template: Plywood or steel.
4. Handhole: Oval-shaped, with minimum clear opening of 2-1/2 by 5 inches (65 by 130 mm), with cover secured by stainless-steel captive screws. Provide on all, except wood poles.
5. Concrete Pole Foundations: Cast in place, with anchor bolts to match pole-base flange. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
6. Power-Installed Screw Foundations: Factory fabricated by pole manufacturer, with structural steel complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M and hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123M; and with top-plate and mounting bolts to match pole base flange and strength required to support pole, luminaire, and accessories.
7. Breakaway Supports: Frangible breakaway supports, tested by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, according to AASHTO LTS-4-M.

#### G. Steel Poles

1. Poles: Comply with ASTM A 500, Grade B, carbon steel with a minimum yield of 46,000 psig (317 MPa); one-piece construction up to 40 feet (12 m) in height with access handhole in pole wall.
  - a. Shape: Round, tapered **OR** Round, straight **OR** Square, tapered **OR** Square, straight, **as directed**.
  - b. Mounting Provisions: Butt flange for bolted mounting on foundation or breakaway support.
2. Steel Mast Arms: Single-arm **OR** Truss **OR** Davit, **as directed**, type, continuously welded to pole attachment plate. Material and finish same as pole.
3. Brackets for Luminaires: Detachable, cantilever, without underbrace.
  - a. Adapter fitting welded to pole, allowing the bracket to be bolted to the pole mounted adapter, then bolted together with stainless **OR** galvanized, **as directed**, -steel bolts.
  - b. Cross Section: Tapered oval, with straight tubular end section to accommodate luminaire.
  - c. Match pole material and finish.
4. Pole-Top Tenons: Fabricated to support luminaire or luminaires and brackets indicated, and securely fastened to pole top.
5. Steps: Fixed steel, with nonslip treads, positioned for 15-inch (381-mm) vertical spacing, alternating on opposite sides of pole; first step at elevation 10 feet (3 m) above finished grade.
6. Intermediate Handhole and Cable Support: Weathertight, 3-by-5-inch (76-by-127-mm) handhole located at midpoint of pole with cover for access to internal welded attachment lug for electric cable support grip.
7. Grounding and Bonding Lugs: Welded 1/2-inch (13-mm) threaded lug, complying with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems", listed for attaching grounding and bonding conductors of type and size listed in that Section, and accessible through handhole.
8. Cable Support Grip: Wire-mesh type with rotating attachment eye, sized for diameter of cable and rated for a minimum load equal to weight of supported cable times a 5.0 safety factor.
9. Platform for Lamp and Ballast Servicing: Factory fabricated of steel with finish matching that of pole.
10. Prime-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.
11. Galvanized Finish: After fabrication, hot-dip galvanize complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M.
12. Factory-Painted Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
  - a. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning," to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or with SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."



- b. Interior Surfaces of Pole: One coat of bituminous paint, or otherwise treat for equal corrosion protection.
- c. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.
  - 1) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

#### H. Aluminum Poles

- 1. Poles: Seamless, extruded structural tube complying with ASTM B 429/B 429M, Alloy 6063-T6 with access handhole in pole wall.
- 2. Poles: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), 5052-H34 marine sheet alloy with access handhole in pole wall.
  - a. Shape: Round, tapered **OR** Round, straight **OR** Square, tapered **OR** Square, straight, **as directed**.
  - b. Mounting Provisions: Butt flange for bolted mounting on foundation or breakaway support.
- 3. Pole-Top Tenons: Fabricated to support luminaire or luminaires and brackets indicated, and securely fastened to pole top.
- 4. Grounding and Bonding Lugs: Welded 1/2-inch (13-mm) threaded lug, complying with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems", listed for attaching grounding and bonding conductors of type and size listed in that Section, and accessible through handhole.
- 5. Brackets for Luminaires: Detachable, with pole and adapter fittings of cast aluminum. Adapter fitting welded to pole and bracket, then bolted together with stainless-steel bolts.
  - a. Tapered oval cross section, with straight tubular end section to accommodate luminaire.
  - b. Finish: Same as pole **OR** luminaire, **as directed**.
- 6. Prime-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.
- 7. Aluminum Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
  - a. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
  - b. Natural Satin Finish: Provide fine, directional, medium satin polish (AA-M32); buff complying with AA-M20; and seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.
  - c. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: medium satin; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
  - d. Class I, Color Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: medium satin; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
    - 1) Color: Light bronze **OR** Medium bronze **OR** Dark bronze **OR** Black **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

#### I. Fiberglass Poles

- 1. Poles: Designed specifically for supporting luminaires, with factory-formed cable entrance and handhole. Not less than 65 percent fiberglass, with resin and pigment making up the remainder.
  - a. Resin Color: Dark bronze; provide uniform coloration throughout entire wall thickness.
  - b. Surface Finish: Pigmented polyurethane, with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Polyurethane may be omitted if the surface layer of pole is inherently UV inhibited.

#### J. Decorative Poles

- 1. Pole Material:
  - a. Cast ductile iron.
  - b. Cast gray iron, according to ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 30.
  - c. Cast aluminum.
  - d. Cast concrete.



- e. Spun concrete.
  - f. Steel tube, covered with closed-cell polyurethane foam, with a polyethylene exterior.
2. Mounting Provisions:
    - a. Bolted to concrete foundation.
    - b. Embedded.
  3. Fixture Brackets:
    - a. Cast ductile iron.
    - b. Cast gray iron.
    - c. Cast aluminum.
  4. Pole Finish: **<Insert finish>**.
- K. Laminated Wood Poles
1. Species and Grades for Structural Glulam Timber: Engineer and fabricate structural laminated wood poles, complying with ANSI A190.1. Use southern pine **OR** Douglas fir **OR** Alaska cedar **OR** any species listed in AITC 117, **as directed**, to withstand indicated structural loads without exceeding allowable design working stresses according to AITC 117.
  2. Features: Include wood bracket **OR** wood crossarm **OR** pole-top adapter, **as directed**, for mounting luminaire(s), metal pole cap, **as directed**, and concealed raceway path connected to access handhole.
  3. Mounting Provisions: Embedded.
  4. Appearance Grade: Architectural appearance grade complying with AITC 110.
  5. Preservative Treatment: Pressure treat lumber before gluing according to AWWA C28 for waterborne preservatives. After dressing and end-cutting each member to final size and shape, apply a field-treatment preservative to comply with AWWA M4 to surfaces cut to a depth of more than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
  6. Adhesive: Wet-use type complying with ASTM D 2559.
  7. End Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, colorless wood sealer that is effective in retarding the transmission of moisture at cross-grain cuts and is compatible with indicated finish.
  8. Penetrating Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, penetrating wood sealer that is compatible with indicated finish.
  9. Finish: Natural, unstained wood **OR** Semitransparent stain applied after erection **OR** Semitransparent stain applied at factory, **as directed**, color as selected.
- L. Wood Poles
1. Poles: Douglas fir **OR** Southern yellow pine, **as directed**, machine trimmed by turning, **as directed**, complying with ANSI O5.1 and with AWWA C4 for wood species used; and bored, roofed, and gabled before treatment.
    - a. Mounting Provisions: Embedded.
  2. Preservative Treatment: Pressure treat poles with creosote **OR** pentachlorophenol **OR** ammoniacal copper arsenate, **as directed**, according to AWWA C1 and AWWA C4.
  3. Luminaire Brackets: Comply with ANSI C136.13.
- M. Prestressed Concrete Poles
1. Poles: Manufactured by centrifugal spin-casting process **OR** of cast concrete, **as directed**.
    - a. Shape: Round, tapered **OR** Round, straight **OR** Square, tapered **OR** Square, straight, **as directed**.
    - b. Mounting Provisions: Steel butt flange for bolted mounting to foundation or breakaway support **OR** Embedded, **as directed**.
    - c. Finishing: Capped at top and plugged at bottom. Seat each steel reinforcing strand with epoxy adhesive.
    - d. Grounding: Continuous copper ground wire cast into pole. Terminate at top of pole and attach to 24-inch (610-mm) lightning rod, **as directed**.
  2. Cure with wet steam and age for a minimum of 15 days before installation.
  3. Fabricate poles with a hard, nonporous surface that is resistant to water, frost, and road and soil chemicals and that has a maximum water-absorption rate of 3 percent.





4. Cast aluminum nameplate into pole wall at approximately 5 feet (1.5 m) above ground line, listing name of manufacturer, Project identifier, overall height, and approximate weight.
5. Pole Brackets: Comply with ANSI C136.13.
6. Finish Color: Provided by color material complying with ASTM C 979, uniformly impregnated throughout the pole concrete. Color material shall provide a uniform, stable, permanent color and be as follows:
  - a. Inert, and carbon free.
  - b. Unaffected by environmental conditions and contaminants including, but not limited to, UV solar radiation, salts, and alkalis.
7. Finish Texture: Standard form **OR** Polished exposed aggregate **OR** Etched exposed aggregate, **as directed**.
  - a. Exposed aggregate shall be of **<Insert aggregate type selected from manufacturers' lists>** type.

#### N. Pole Accessories

1. Duplex Receptacle: 120 V, 20 A in a weatherproof assembly complying with Division 16 Section "Wiring Devices" for ground-fault circuit-interrupter type.
  - a. Surface mounted **OR** Recessed, **as directed**, 12 inches (300 mm) above finished grade.
  - b. Nonmetallic polycarbonate plastic or reinforced fiberglass, weatherproof in use, cover, that when mounted results in NEMA 250, Type 3R **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**, enclosure.
  - c. With cord opening.
  - d. With lockable hasp and latch that complies with OSHA lockout and tag-out requirements.
2. Minimum 1800-W transformer, protected by replaceable fuses, mounted behind access cover.
3. Base Covers: Manufacturers' standard metal units, arranged to cover pole's mounting bolts and nuts. Finish same as pole.
4. Transformer Type Base: Same material and color as pole. Coordinate dimensions to suit pole's base flange and accept ballast(s) **OR** indicated accessories, **as directed**.
5. Decorative accessories, supplied by decorative pole manufacturer, include the following:
  - a. Banner Arms: **<Insert material>**.
  - b. Flag Holders: **<Insert material>**.
  - c. Ladder Rests: **<Insert material>**.

#### O. Lowering System For Luminaires

1. Arrange system to lower luminaire **OR** luminaire assembly, **as directed**, to a servicing position within 36 inches (900 mm) of finished grade in winds up to 30 mph (49 km/h) and to provide for manual plug connection to electrical power in the lowered position for testing.
2. Coordinate with luminaire and pole manufacturers for assembly details, wind-load and vibration analysis, and compatibility of materials for electrolysis-free attachment and connection for luminaire mounting assembly, lowering device, lowering cable, and portable winch.
3. Structural and Mechanical Design: Use a minimum safety factor of 5.0 for static and dynamic loads of load-bearing components, including cable.
4. Luminaire Mounting and Disconnect Arrangement: Multiple ring **OR** carriage, **as directed**, -mounted luminaires, arranged for lowering and rising as a group.
  - a. Electrical cable for normal operating power to luminaires manually disconnects inside pole base, using weatherproof multipin connector, and shall be arranged to move within the pole during lowering and rising of luminaire assembly.  
**OR**  
Electrical cable for normal operating power to luminaires automatically disconnects at a weatherproof multipin connector within the pole-top lowering head at the beginning of the lowering cycle and reconnects when luminaire or luminaire assembly is raised to the operating position.
5. Lowering Device: Weatherproof, cast-aluminum housing and multiple mechanical latches. Moving parts of latching assembly shall be located in the portion of the unit that is lowered to the servicing position. Positive latching in the operating position shall be indicated to the operator at the base of the pole by a clear visual signal, or by other means acceptable to the Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.



6. Lowering Cable: Zinc-electroplated- or stainless-steel aircraft cable.
7. Portable Winch: Manual **OR** 120-V electric, **as directed**, type. One required.
  - a. Winch Power Connection: Cord and plug.
  - b. Winch Raise-Lower Control: Remote-control station with 15 feet (5 m) of cable.
8. Winch Transformer: Portable, totally enclosed, encapsulated, single-phase, dry type. Primary rated at lighting-circuit voltage; secondary rated at 120 V. Permanent, primary and secondary, twist-locking plug connectors on pigtails shall match pole-base power outlet and winch plug.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Luminaire Installation

1. Install lamps in each luminaire.
2. Fasten luminaire to indicated structural supports.
  - a. Use fastening methods and materials selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
3. Adjust luminaires that require field adjustment or aiming. Include adjustment of photoelectric device to prevent false operation of relay by artificial light sources, favoring a north orientation, **as directed**.

#### B. Pole Installation

1. Alignment: Align pole foundations and poles for optimum directional alignment of luminaires and their mounting provisions on the pole.
2. Clearances: Maintain the following minimum horizontal distances of poles from surface and underground features unless otherwise indicated on Drawings:
  - a. Fire Hydrants and Storm Drainage Piping: 60 inches (1520 mm).
  - b. Water, Gas, Electric, Communication, and Sewer Lines: 10 feet (3 m).
  - c. Trees: 15 feet (5 m) from tree trunk.
3. Concrete Pole Foundations: Set anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt templates furnished by pole manufacturer. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing requirements are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
4. Foundation-Mounted Poles: Mount pole with leveling nuts, and tighten top nuts to torque level recommended by pole manufacturer.
  - a. Use anchor bolts and nuts selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
  - b. Grout void between pole base and foundation. Use nonshrink or expanding concrete grout firmly packed to fill space.
  - c. Install base covers unless otherwise indicated.
  - d. Use a short piece of 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) diameter pipe to make a drain hole through grout. Arrange to drain condensation from interior of pole.
5. Embedded Poles with Tamped Earth Backfill: Set poles to depth below finished grade indicated on Drawings, but not less than one-sixth of pole height.
  - a. Dig holes large enough to permit use of tampers in the full depth of hole.
  - b. Backfill in 6-inch (150-mm) layers and thoroughly tamp each layer so compaction of backfill is equal to or greater than that of undisturbed earth.
6. Embedded Poles with Concrete Backfill: Set poles in augered holes to depth below finished grade indicated on Drawings, but not less than one-sixth of pole height.
  - a. Make holes 6 inches (150 mm) in diameter larger than pole diameter.
  - b. Fill augered hole around pole with air-entrained concrete having a minimum compressive strength of 3000 psi (20 MPa) at 28 days, and finish in a dome above finished grade.
  - c. Use a short piece of 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) diameter pipe to make a drain hole through concrete dome. Arrange to drain condensation from interior of pole.
  - d. Cure concrete a minimum of 72 hours before performing work on pole.
7. Poles and Pole Foundations Set in Concrete Paved Areas: Install poles with minimum of 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide, unpaved gap between the pole or pole foundation and the edge of adjacent



- concrete slab. Fill unpaved ring with pea gravel to a level 1 inch (25 mm) below top of concrete slab.
8. Raise and set poles using web fabric slings (not chain or cable).
- C. Bollard Luminaire Installation
1. Align units for optimum directional alignment of light distribution.
  2. Install on concrete base with top 4 inches (100 mm) above finished grade or surface at bollard location. Cast conduit into base, and shape base to match shape of bollard base. Finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
- D. Installation Of Individual Ground-Mounting Luminaires
1. Install on concrete base with top 4 inches (100 mm) above finished grade or surface at luminaire location. Cast conduit into base, and finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
- E. Corrosion Prevention
1. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum by insulating fittings or treatment.
  2. Steel Conduits: Comply with Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems". In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with 0.010-inch- (0.254-mm-) thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlap.
- F. Grounding
1. Ground metal poles and support structures according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
    - a. Install grounding electrode for each pole unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Install grounding conductor pigtail in the base for connecting luminaire to grounding system.
  2. Ground nonmetallic poles and support structures according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
    - a. Install grounding electrode for each pole.
    - b. Install grounding conductor and conductor protector.
    - c. Ground metallic components of pole accessories and foundations.
- G. Field Quality Control
1. Inspect each installed fixture for damage. Replace damaged fixtures and components.
  2. Illumination Observations: Verify normal operation of lighting units after installing luminaires and energizing circuits with normal power source.
    - a. Verify operation of photoelectric controls.
  3. Illumination Tests:
    - a. Measure light intensities at night. Use photometers with calibration referenced to NIST standards. Comply with the following IESNA testing guide(s):
      - 1) IESNA LM-5, "Photometric Measurements of Area and Sports Lighting Installations."
      - 2) IESNA LM-50, "Photometric Measurements of Roadway Lighting Installations."
      - 3) IESNA LM-52, "Photometric Measurements of Roadway Sign Installations."
      - 4) IESNA LM-64, "Photometric Measurements of Parking Areas."
      - 5) IESNA LM-72, "Directional Positioning of Photometric Data."
  4. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.
- H. Demonstration
1. Train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain luminaire lowering devices.



---

END OF SECTION 26 01 50 51b



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
26 01 50 51	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
26 01 50 52	26 01 50 51	Removal of Fluorescent Light Ballasts/Capacitors and Fluorescent Light Tubes
26 01 50 52	26 01 50 51a	Interior Lighting
26 01 50 52	26 01 50 51b	Exterior Lighting
26 01 50 53	26 01 50 51	Removal of Fluorescent Light Ballasts/Capacitors and Fluorescent Light Tubes
26 01 50 53	26 01 50 51a	Interior Lighting
26 01 50 53	26 01 50 51b	Exterior Lighting



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 26 05 00 00 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for common work results for electrical. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Electrical equipment coordination and installation.
  - b. Sleeves for raceways and cables.
  - c. Sleeve seals.
  - d. Grout.
  - e. Common electrical installation requirements.

## C. Definitions

1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

## D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For sleeve seals.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

## A. Sleeves For Raceways And Cables

1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel.
  - a. Minimum Metal Thickness:
    - 1) For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and no side more than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
    - 2) For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or more than, 50 inches (1270 mm) and 1 or more sides equal to, or more than, 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).

## B. Sleeve Seals

1. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
  - a. Sealing Elements: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
  - b. Pressure Plates: Plastic **OR** Carbon steel **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**. Include two for each sealing element.
  - c. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

## C. Grout



1. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Common Requirements For Electrical Installation

1. Comply with NECA 1.
2. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and to center of unit for wall-mounting items.
3. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.
4. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both electrical equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnecting with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity.
5. Right of Way: Give to piping systems installed at a required slope.

#### B. Sleeve Installation For Electrical Penetrations

1. Electrical penetrations occur when raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, or busways penetrate concrete slabs, concrete or masonry walls, or fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.
2. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
3. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
4. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
5. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.
6. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
7. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable, unless indicated otherwise.
8. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry
  - a. Promptly pack grout solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect grout while curing.
9. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
10. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway and cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal raceway and cable penetration sleeves with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
11. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
12. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel **OR** cast-iron, **as directed**, pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
13. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

#### C. Sleeve-Seal Installation

1. Install to seal exterior wall penetrations.
2. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve





---

seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

D. Firestopping

1. Apply firestopping to penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies for electrical installations to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".

END OF SECTION 26 05 00 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 26 05 13 16 - CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of conductors and cables. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Building wires and cables rated 600 V and less.
  - b. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.
  - c. Sleeves and sleeve seals for cables.

#### C. Definitions

1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Field quality-control test reports.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
2. Comply with NFPA 70.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Conductors And Cables

1. Aluminum and Copper, **as directed**, Conductors: Comply with NEMA WC 70.
2. Conductor Insulation: Comply with NEMA WC 70 for Types THW **OR** THHN-THWN **OR** XHHW **OR** UF **OR** USE **OR** SO, **as directed**.
3. Multiconductor Cable: Comply with NEMA WC 70 for armored cable, Type AC **OR** metal-clad cable, Type MC **OR** mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI **OR** nonmetallic-sheathed cable, Type NM **OR** Type SO **OR** Type USE, **as directed**, with ground wire.

#### B. Connectors And Splices

1. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated.

#### C. Sleeves For Cables

1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel with minimum 0.052- or 0.138-inch (1.3- or 3.5-mm) thickness as indicated and of length to suit application.
4. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".



#### D. Sleeve Seals

1. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and cable.
  - a. Sealing Elements: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
  - b. Pressure Plates: Plastic **OR** Carbon steel **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**. Include two for each sealing element.
  - c. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Conductor Material Applications

1. Feeders: Copper **OR** Aluminum for feeders smaller than No. 4 AWG; copper or aluminum for feeders No. 4 AWG and larger, **as directed**. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
2. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

#### B. Conductor Insulation And Multiconductor Cable Applications And Wiring Methods

1. Service Entrance: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway **OR** Type XHHW, single conductors in raceway **OR** Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI **OR** Type SE or USE multiconductor cable, **as directed**.
2. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway **OR** Armored cable, Type AC **OR** Metal-clad cable, Type MC **OR** Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI **OR** Nonmetallic-sheathed cable, Type NM, **as directed**.
3. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspace: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway **OR** Armored cable, Type AC **OR** Metal-clad cable, Type MC **OR** Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI **OR** Nonmetallic-sheathed cable, Type NM, **as directed**.
4. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway **OR** Underground feeder cable, Type UF, **as directed**.
5. Feeders Installed below Raised Flooring: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway **OR** Armored cable, Type AC **OR** Metal-clad cable, Type MC **OR** Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI, **as directed**.
6. Feeders in Cable Tray: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway **OR** Armored cable, Type AC **OR** Metal-clad cable, Type MC **OR** Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI **OR** Nonmetallic-sheathed cable, Type NM, **as directed**.
7. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspace: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway **OR** Armored cable, Type AC **OR** Metal-clad cable, Type MC **OR** Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI **OR** Nonmetallic-sheathed cable, Type NM, **as directed**.
8. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway **OR** Armored cable, Type AC **OR** Metal-clad cable, Type MC **OR** Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI **OR** Nonmetallic-sheathed cable, Type NM, **as directed**.
9. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway **OR** Underground branch-circuit cable, Type UF, **as directed**.
10. Branch Circuits Installed below Raised Flooring: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway **OR** Armored cable, Type AC **OR** Metal-clad cable, Type MC **OR** Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI, **as directed**.



11. Branch Circuits in Cable Tray: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway **OR** Armored cable, Type AC **OR** Metal-clad cable, Type MC **OR** Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI, **as directed**.
  12. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SO, hard service cord with stainless-steel, wire-mesh, strain relief device at terminations to suit application.
  13. Class 1 Control Circuits: Type THHN-THWN, in raceway.
  14. Class 2 Control Circuits: Type THHN-THWN, in raceway **OR** Power-limited cable, concealed in building finishes **OR** Power-limited tray cable, in cable tray, **as directed**.
- C. Installation Of Conductors And Cables
1. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
  3. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
  4. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
  5. Support cables according to Division 26 Section "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems".
  6. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
  7. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.
  8. Make splices and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
    - a. Use oxide inhibitor in each splice and tap conductor for aluminum conductors.
  9. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inches (150 mm) **OR** 12 inches (300 mm), **as directed**, of slack.
- D. Sleeve Installation For Electrical Penetrations
1. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
  2. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
  3. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
  4. Rectangular Sleeve Minimum Metal Thickness:
    - a. For sleeve rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and no side greater than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
    - b. For sleeve rectangle perimeter equal to, or greater than, 50 inches (1270 mm) and 1 or more sides equal to, or greater than, 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).
  5. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
  6. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both wall surfaces.
  7. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
  8. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed or unless seismic criteria require different clearance, **as directed**.
  9. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry and with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies, **as directed**.
  10. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint according to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".



11. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal with firestop materials according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
12. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
13. Aboveground Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
14. Underground Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

E. Sleeve-Seal Installation

1. Install to seal underground exterior-wall penetrations.
2. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for cable material and size. Position cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

F. Firestopping

1. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".

G. Field Quality Control

1. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
2. Tests and Inspections:
  - a. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors, and conductors feeding the following critical equipment and services, **as directed**, for compliance with requirements.
  - b. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - c. Infrared Scanning: After Final Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in cables and conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner.
    - 1) Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each splice 11 months after date of Final Completion.
    - 2) Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
    - 3) Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies splices checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
3. Test Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:
  - a. Test procedures used.
  - b. Test results that comply with requirements.
  - c. Test results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.
4. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION 26 05 13 16



## SECTION 26 05 13 16a - UNDERCARPET CABLES

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of undercarpet cables. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Undercarpet cable and service fittings for branch circuits.
  - b. Undercarpet cable and service fittings for communication and data transmission.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details of components, and attachments to other work.
  - a. Indicate cable types, accessories, and transition boxes.
  - b. Indicate proposed layering of cables, cable dimensions, and installation requirements.
3. Field quality-control test reports.
4. Operation and maintenance data.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
2. Comply with NEMA UC 2, "Undercarpet Power Distribution Systems" and with NFPA 70.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Power Distribution Cable

1. Cable: Factory laminated and complying with NEMA UC 2; three-piece assembly including bottom shield, conductor assembly, and top shield.
  - a. Bottom Shield: Abrasion resistant, nonmetallic **OR** Metallic, **as directed**.
  - b. Conductor Assembly: Two **OR** Three **OR** Four, **as directed**, -wire branch circuit with insulated ground, **as directed**.
  - c. Top Shield: Copper or copper alloy.
2. Current Rating: 20 **OR** 30 **OR** 20 and 30, **as directed**, A.

#### B. Communication And Data Cable

1. Category 5e Communication and Data Cable: Extruded-vinyl jacket over 4 unshielded, twisted pairs, No. 24 AWG, copper; complying with TIA/EIA 568-B; and tested to 300-lb (136-kg) rollover test.

#### C. Pedestals

1. Description: Manufacturer's standard low **OR** regular, **as directed**, -profile type, single **OR** two **OR** three, **as directed**, gang with single **OR** duplex, **as directed**, receptacles and Category 5e modular connectors, **as directed**.
  - a. Pedestal Colors: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

#### D. Power Cable Transition Unit



1. Description: Interface transition unit, with junction box, for connecting three-, four-, or five-conductor, flat-conductor cable to building wiring system.

E. Communication And Data Cable Transition Unit

1. Description: Category 5 transition termination circuit board in wall-mounted box to convert round incoming cable to outgoing flat-undercarpet cable.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation

1. Do not begin installation until heavy construction is completed and wheeled traffic is no longer a threat.
2. Do not stack cables in circulation routes.
3. Limit total installed height to 0.09 inch (2.29 mm).
4. Install cables in proper order with power-transmission cable first, followed by telephone cable and then data cable. Cross cables at 90-degree angles.
5. Install undercarpet cables and accessories using special tools as recommended by undercarpet cable manufacturer.

B. Connections

1. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
2. Connect undercarpet cable and components to branch circuits and to ground as indicated and instructed by manufacturer.

C. Field Quality Control

1. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
2. Tests and Inspections:
  - a. Branch-Circuit Cables: After cables have been installed and energized, perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - b. Communication and Data Cables: After cables have been installed and connected between telecommunications outlet and system cross-connect panel, test each cable according to TIA/EIA TSB67. Certify compliance with test parameters.
3. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION 26 05 13 16a





## SECTION 26 05 13 16b - MEDIUM-VOLTAGE CABLES

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of medium-voltage cables. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes cables and related splices, terminations, and accessories for medium-voltage electrical distribution systems.

#### C. Definitions

1. NETA ATS: Acceptance Testing Specification.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of cable indicated. Include splices and terminations for cables and cable accessories.
2. Field quality-control test reports.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
2. Comply with IEEE C2 and NFPA 70.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Cables

1. Cable Type: MV90 **OR** MV105, **as directed**.
2. Comply with UL 1072, AEIC CS 8, ICEA S-93-639, and ICEA S-97-682, **OR** ICEA S-94-649, **as directed**.
3. Conductor: Copper **OR** Aluminum, **as directed**.
4. Conductor Stranding: Compact round, concentric lay, Class B) **OR** Concentric lay, Class B, **as directed**.
5. Strand Filling: Conductor interstices are filled with impermeable compound.
6. Conductor Insulation: Crosslinked polyethylene **OR** Ethylene-propylene rubber, **as directed**.
  - a. Voltage Rating: 5 **OR** 8 **OR** 15 **OR** 25 **OR** 35, **as directed**, kV.
  - b. Insulation Thickness: 100 **OR** 133, **as directed**, percent insulation level.
7. Shielding: Copper tape **OR** Solid copper wires, **as directed**, helically applied over semiconducting insulation shield.
8. Shielding and Jacket: Corrugated copper drain wires embedded in extruded, chlorinated, polyethylene jacket.
9. Three-Conductor Cable Assembly: Three insulated, shielded conductors cabled together with ground conductors, **as directed**.
  - a. Circuit Identification: Color-coded tape (black, red, blue) under the metallic shielding.
10. Cable Armor: Interlocked aluminum **OR** Interlocked galvanized steel **OR** Corrugated aluminum tube, **as directed**, applied over cable.
11. Cable Jacket: Sunlight-resistant PVC **OR** Chlorosulfonated polyethylene, CPE, **as directed**.

#### B. Splice Kits



1. Connectors and Splice Kits: Comply with IEEE 404; type as recommended by cable or splicing kit manufacturer for the application.
2. Splicing Products: As recommended, in writing, by splicing kit manufacturer for specific sizes, ratings, and configurations of cable conductors. Include all components required for complete splice, with detailed instructions.
  - a. Combination tape and cold-shrink-rubber sleeve kit with re-jacketing by cast-epoxy-resin encasement or other waterproof, abrasion-resistant material.
  - b. Heat-shrink splicing kit of uniform, cross-section, polymeric construction with outer heat-shrink jacket.
  - c. Premolded, cold-shrink-rubber, in-line splicing kit.
  - d. Premolded EPDM splicing body kit with cable joint sealed by interference fit of mating parts and cable.

#### C. Solid Terminations

1. Multiconductor Cable Sheath Seals: Type recommended by seal manufacturer for type of cable and installation conditions, including orientation.
  - a. Compound-filled, cast-metal body, metal-clad cable terminator for metal-clad cable with **OR** without, **as directed**, external plastic jacket.
  - b. Cold-shrink sheath seal kit with preformed sleeve openings sized for cable and insulated conductors.
  - c. Heat-shrink sheath seal kit with phase- and ground-conductor re-jacketing tubes, cable-end sealing boot, and sealing plugs for unused ground-wire openings in boot.
  - d. Cast-epoxy-resin sheath seal kit with wraparound mold and packaged, two-part, epoxy-resin casting material.
2. Shielded-Cable Terminations: Comply with the following classes of IEEE 48. Insulation class is equivalent to that of cable. Include shield ground strap for shielded cable terminations.
  - a. Class 1 Terminations: Modular type, furnished as a kit, with stress-relief tube; multiple, molded-silicone rubber, insulator modules; shield ground strap; and compression-type connector.
  - b. Class 1 Terminations: Heat-shrink type with heat-shrink inner stress control and outer nontracking tubes; multiple, molded, nontracking skirt modules; and compression-type connector.
  - c. Class 1 Terminations: Modular type, furnished as a kit, with stress-relief shield terminator; multiple-wet-process, porcelain, insulator modules; shield ground strap; and compression-type connector.
  - d. Class 1 Terminations, Indoors: Kit with stress-relief tube, nontracking insulator tube, shield ground strap, compression-type connector, and end seal.
  - e. Class 2 Terminations, Indoors: Kit with stress-relief tube, nontracking insulator tube, shield ground strap, and compression-type connector. Include silicone-rubber tape, cold-shrink-rubber sleeve, or heat-shrink plastic-sleeve moisture seal for end of insulation whether or not supplied with kits.
  - f. Class 3 Terminations: Kit with stress cone and compression-type connector.
3. Nonshielded-Cable Terminations: Kit with compression-type connector. Include silicone-rubber tape, cold-shrink-rubber sleeve, or heat-shrink plastic-sleeve moisture seal for end of insulation whether or not supplied with kits.

#### D. Separable Insulated Connectors

1. Description: Modular system, complying with IEEE 386, with disconnecting, single-pole, cable terminators and with matching, stationary, plug-in, dead-front terminals designed for cable voltage and for sealing against moisture.
2. Terminations at Distribution Points: Modular type, consisting of terminators installed on cables and modular, dead-front, terminal junctions for interconnecting cables.
3. Load-Break Cable Terminators: Elbow-type units with 200-A load make/break and continuous-current rating; coordinated with insulation diameter, conductor size, and material of cable being terminated. Include test point on terminator body that is capacitance coupled.



4. Dead-Break Cable Terminators: Elbow-type unit with 600-A continuous-current rating; designed for de-energized disconnecting and connecting; coordinated with insulation diameter, conductor size, and material of cable being terminated. Include test point on terminator body that is capacitance coupled.
5. Dead-Front Terminal Junctions: Modular bracket-mounted groups of dead-front stationary terminals that mate and match with above cable terminators. Two-, three-, or four-terminal units as indicated, with fully rated, insulated, watertight conductor connection between terminals and complete with grounding lug, manufacturer's standard accessory stands, stainless-steel mounting brackets, and attaching hardware.
  - a. Protective Cap: Insulating, electrostatic-shielding, water-sealing cap with drain wire.
  - b. Portable Feed-Through Accessory: Two-terminal, dead-front junction arranged for removable mounting on accessory stand of stationary terminal junction.
  - c. Grounding Kit: Jumpered elbows, portable feed-through accessory units, protective caps, test rods suitable for concurrently grounding three phases of feeders, and carrying case.
  - d. Standoff Insulator: Portable, single dead-front terminal for removable mounting on accessory stand of stationary terminal junction. Insulators suitable for fully insulated isolation of energized cable-elbow terminator.
6. Test-Point Fault Indicators: Applicable current-trip ratings and arranged for installation in test points of load-break separable connectors, and complete with self-resetting indicators capable of being installed with shotgun hot stick and tested with test tool.
7. Tool Set: Shotgun hot stick with energized terminal indicator, fault-indicator test tool, and carrying case.

E. Arc-Proofing Materials

1. Tape for First Course on Metal Objects: 10-mil- (250-micrometer-) thick, corrosion-protective, moisture-resistant, PVC pipe-wrapping tape.
2. Arc-Proofing Tape: Fireproof tape, flexible, conformable, intumescent to 0.3 inch (8 mm) thick, compatible with cable jacket.
3. Glass-Cloth Tape: Pressure-sensitive adhesive type, 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide.

F. Fault Indicators

1. Indicators: Automatically **OR** Manually, **as directed**, reset fault indicator with inrush restraint feature, arranged to clamp to cable sheath and provide a display after a fault has occurred in cable. Instrument shall not be affected by heat, moisture, and corrosive conditions and shall be recommended by manufacturer for installation conditions.
2. Resetting Tool: Designed for use with fault indicators, with moisture-resistant storage and carrying case.

G. Source Quality Control

1. Test and inspect cables according to ICEA S-97-682 **OR** ICEA S-94-649, **as directed**, before shipping.
2. Test strand-filled cables for water-penetration resistance according to ICEA T-31-610, using a test pressure of 5 psig (35 kPa).

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation

1. Install cables according to IEEE 576.
2. Pull Conductors: Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
  - a. Where necessary, use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant that will not deteriorate conductor or insulation.
  - b. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave cable grips that will not damage cables and raceways. Do not use rope hitches for pulling attachment to cable.



3. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members and follow surface contours where possible.
  4. Support cables according to Division 26 Section "Common Work Results For Electrical".
  5. Install direct-buried cables on leveled and tamped bed of 3-inch- (75-mm-) thick, clean sand. Separate cables crossing other cables or piping by a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) of tamped earth. Install permanent markers at ends of cable runs, changes in direction, and buried splices.
  6. Install "buried-cable" warning tape 12 inches (305 mm) above cables.
  7. In manholes, handholes, pull boxes, junction boxes, and cable vaults, train cables around walls by the longest route from entry to exit and support cables at intervals adequate to prevent sag.
  8. Install cable splices at pull points and elsewhere as indicated; use standard kits.
  9. Install terminations at ends of conductors and seal multiconductor cable ends with standard kits.
  10. Install separable insulated-connector components as follows:
    - a. Protective Cap: At each terminal junction, with one on each terminal to which no feeder is indicated to be connected.
    - b. Portable Feed-Through Accessory: Three.
    - c. Standoff Insulator: Three.
  11. Arc Proofing: Unless otherwise indicated, arc proof medium-voltage cable at locations not protected by conduit, cable tray, direct burial, or termination materials. In addition to arc-proofing tape manufacturer's written instructions, apply arc proofing as follows:
    - a. Clean cable sheath.
    - b. Wrap metallic cable components with 10-mil (250-micrometer) pipe-wrapping tape.
    - c. Smooth surface contours with electrical insulation putty.
    - d. Apply arc-proofing tape in one half-lapped layer with coated side toward cable.
    - e. Band arc-proofing tape with 1-inch- (25-mm-) wide bands of half-lapped, adhesive, glass-cloth tape 2 inches (50 mm) o.c.
  12. Seal around cables passing through fire-rated elements according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
  13. Install fault indicators on each phase where indicated.
  14. Ground shields of shielded cable at terminations, splices, and separable insulated connectors. Ground metal bodies of terminators, splices, cable and separable insulated-connector fittings, and hardware.
  15. Identify cables according to Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
- B. Field Quality Control
1. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
    - a. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters.
    - b. After installing medium-voltage cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
  2. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION 26 05 13 16b



## SECTION 26 05 19 16 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for common work results for communications. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Communications equipment coordination and installation.
  - b. Sleeves for pathways and cables.
  - c. Sleeve seals.
  - d. Grout.
  - e. Common communications installation requirements.

#### C. Definitions

1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For sleeve seals.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Sleeves For Pathways And Cables

1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel.
  - a. Minimum Metal Thickness:
    - 1) For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and no side more than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
    - 2) For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or more than, 50 inches (1270 mm) and 1 or more sides equal to, or more than, 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).

#### B. Sleeve Seals

1. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and pathway or cable.
  - a. Sealing Elements: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of pathway or cable.
  - b. Pressure Plates: Plastic **OR** Carbon steel **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**. Include two for each sealing element.
  - c. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

#### C. Grout



1. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Common Requirements For Communications Installation

1. Comply with NECA 1.
2. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and to center of unit for wall-mounting items.
3. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.
4. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both communications equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnecting with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity.
5. Right of Way: Give to piping systems installed at a required slope.

#### B. Sleeve Installation For Communications Penetrations

1. Communications penetrations occur when pathways, cables, wireways, or cable trays penetrate concrete slabs, concrete or masonry walls, or fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.
2. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
3. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
4. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
5. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.
6. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
7. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pathway or cable, unless indicated otherwise.
8. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry
  - a. Promptly pack grout solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect grout while curing.
9. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and pathway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
10. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pathway and cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal pathway and cable penetration sleeves with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
11. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual pathways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
12. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel **OR** cast-iron, **as directed**, pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
13. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pathway or cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

#### C. Sleeve-Seal Installation

1. Install to seal exterior wall penetrations.
2. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for pathway or cable material and size. Position pathway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve



---

seals and install in annular space between pathway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

D. Firestopping

1. Apply firestopping to penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies for communications installations to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".

END OF SECTION 26 05 19 16



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



**SECTION 26 05 19 16a - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for common work results for electronic safety and security. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Electronic safety and security equipment coordination and installation.
  - b. Sleeves for raceways and cables.
  - c. Sleeve seals.
  - d. Grout.
  - e. Common electronic safety and security installation requirements.

## C. Definitions

1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

## D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For sleeve seals.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

## A. Sleeves For Raceways And Cables

1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel.
  - a. Minimum Metal Thickness:
    - 1) For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and no side more than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
    - 2) For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or more than, 50 inches (1270 mm) and 1 or more sides equal to, or more than, 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).

## B. Sleeve Seals

1. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
  - a. Sealing Elements: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
  - b. Pressure Plates: Plastic **OR** Carbon steel **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**. Include two for each sealing element.
  - c. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

## C. Grout



1. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Common Requirements For Electronic Safety And Security Installation

1. Comply with NECA 1.
2. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and to center of unit for wall-mounting items.
3. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.
4. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both electronic safety and security equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnecting with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity.
5. Right of Way: Give to piping systems installed at a required slope.

#### B. Sleeve Installation For Electronic Safety And Security Penetrations

1. Electronic safety and security penetrations occur when raceways, pathways, cables, wireways, or cable trays penetrate concrete slabs, concrete or masonry walls, or fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.
2. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
3. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
4. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
5. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.
6. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
7. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable, unless indicated otherwise.
8. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry
  - a. Promptly pack grout solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect grout while curing.
9. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
10. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway and cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal raceway and cable penetration sleeves with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
11. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
12. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel **OR** cast-iron, **as directed**, pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
13. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

#### C. Sleeve-Seal Installation

1. Install to seal exterior wall penetrations.



- 
2. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- D. Firestopping
1. Apply firestopping to penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies for electronic safety and security installations to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".

END OF SECTION 26 05 19 16a



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 26 05 19 16b - CONTROL-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CABLES

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of control-voltage electrical power cables. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. UTP cabling.
  - b. 50/125 **OR** 62.5/125, **as directed**,-micrometer, multimode optical fiber cabling.
  - c. RS-232 cabling.
  - d. RS-485 cabling.
  - e. Low-voltage control cabling.
  - f. Control-circuit conductors.
  - g. Identification products.

#### C. Definitions

1. Basket Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of wire mesh bottom and side rails.
2. Channel Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of a one-piece, ventilated-bottom or solid-bottom channel section.
3. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
4. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.
5. Ladder Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of two longitudinal side rails connected by individual transverse members (rungs).
6. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control and signaling power-limited circuits.
7. Open Cabling: Passing telecommunications cabling through open space (e.g., between the studs of a wall cavity).
8. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.
9. Solid-Bottom or Nonventilated Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of integral or separate longitudinal side rails, and a bottom without ventilation openings.
10. Trough or Ventilated Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of integral or separate longitudinal rails and a bottom having openings sufficient for the passage of air and using 75 percent or less of the plan area of the surface to support cables.
11. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Field quality-control reports.
3. Maintenance data.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of an NRTL.
  - a. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing **OR** possess the standards and experience for membership, **as directed**.
2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
  - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 **OR** 450, **as directed**, or less.



3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.
  - a. Test optical fiber cable to determine the continuity of the strand end to end. Use optical fiber flashlight **OR** optical loss test set, **as directed**.
  - b. Test optical fiber cable on reels. Use an optical time domain reflectometer to verify the cable length and locate cable defects, splices, and connector; include the loss value of each. Retain test data and include the record in maintenance data.
  - c. Test each pair of UTP cable for open and short circuits.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Pathways

1. Support of Open Cabling: NRTL labeled for support of Category 5e **OR** Category 6, **as directed**, cabling, designed to prevent degradation of cable performance and pinch points that could damage cable.
  - a. Support brackets with cable tie slots for fastening cable ties to brackets.
  - b. Lacing bars, spools, J-hooks, and D-rings.
  - c. Straps and other devices.
2. Cable Trays:
  - a. Cable Tray Materials: Metal, suitable for indoors and protected against corrosion by electroplated zinc galvanizing, complying with ASTM B 633, Type 1, not less than 0.000472 inch (0.012 mm) thick **OR** hot-dip galvanizing, complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M, Grade 0.55, not less than 0.002165 inch (0.055 mm) thick, **as directed**.
    - 1) Basket Cable Trays: 6 inches (150 mm) wide and 2 inches (50 mm) deep. Wire mesh spacing shall not exceed 2 by 4 inches (50 by 100 mm).
    - 2) Trough or Ventilated Cable Trays: Nominally 6 inches (150 mm) wide.
    - 3) Ladder Cable Trays: Nominally 18 inches (455 mm) wide, and a rung spacing of 12 inches (305 mm).
    - 4) Channel Cable Trays: One-piece construction, nominally 4 inches (100 mm) wide. Slot spacing shall not exceed 4-1/2 inches (115 mm) o.c.
    - 5) Solid-Bottom or Nonventilated Cable Trays: One-piece construction, nominally 12 inches (305 mm) wide. Provide with **OR** without, **as directed**, solid covers.
3. Conduit and Boxes: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems". Flexible metal conduit shall not be used, **as directed**.
  - a. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches (50 mm) wide, 3 inches (75 mm) high, and 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) deep.

B. Backboards

1. Description: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, **as directed**, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches (19 by 1220 by 2440 mm). Comply with requirements for plywood backing panels in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry".

C. UTP Cable

1. Description: 100-ohm, four-pair UTP, formed into 25-pair binder groups covered with a blue thermoplastic jacket, **as directed**.
  - a. Comply with ICEA S-90-661 for mechanical properties.
  - b. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1 for performance specifications.
  - c. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, Category 5e **OR** Category 6, **as directed**.
  - d. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444 and NFPA 70 for the following types:



- 1) Communications, General Purpose: Type CM or Type CMG; or Type MPP, Type CMP, Type MPR, Type CMR, Type MP, or Type MPG, **as directed**.
- 2) Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CMP or Type MPP, **as directed**, complying with NFPA 262.
- 3) Communications, Riser Rated: Type CMR; or Type MPP, Type CMP, or Type MPR, **as directed**; complying with UL 1666.
- 4) Communications, Limited Purpose: Type CMX; or Type MPP, Type CMP, Type MPR, Type CMR, Type MP, Type MPG, Type CM, or Type CMG, **as directed**.
- 5) Multipurpose: Type MP or Type MPG; or Type MPP or Type MPR, **as directed**.
- 6) Multipurpose, Plenum Rated: Type MPP, complying with NFPA 262.
- 7) Multipurpose, Riser Rated: Type MPR or Type MPP, **as directed**, complying with UL 1666.

D. UTP Cable Hardware

1. UTP Cable Connecting Hardware: IDC type, using modules designed for punch-down caps or tools. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of the same category or higher.
2. Connecting Blocks: 110 style for Category 5e **OR** 110 style for Category 6 **OR** 66 style for Category 5e, **as directed**. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare; integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.

E. Optical Fiber Cable

1. Description: Multimode, 50/125 **OR** 62.5/125, **as directed**,-micrometer, 24-fiber, nonconductive, **as directed**, tight buffer, optical fiber cable.
  - a. Comply with ICEA S-83-596 for mechanical properties.
  - b. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3 for performance specifications.
  - c. Comply with TIA/EIA-492AAAA-B **OR** TIA/EIA-492AAAA-A, **as directed**, for detailed specifications.
  - d. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444, UL 1651, and NFPA 70 for the following types:
    - 1) General Purpose, Nonconductive: Type OFN or OFNG, or Type OFNR or Type OFNP, **as directed**.
    - 2) Plenum Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP, complying with NFPA 262.
    - 3) Riser Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNR or Type OFNP, **as directed**, complying with UL 1666.
    - 4) General Purpose, Conductive: Type OFC or Type OFCG; or Type OFNG, Type OFN, Type OFCR, Type OFNR, Type OFCP, or Type OFNP, **as directed**.
    - 5) Plenum Rated, Conductive: Type OFCP or Type OFNP, **as directed**, complying with NFPA 262.
    - 6) Riser Rated, Conductive: Type OFCR; or Type OFNR, Type OFCP, or Type OFNP, **as directed**; complying with UL 1666.
  - e. Conductive cable shall be steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**,-armored type.
  - f. Maximum Attenuation: 3.5 dB/km at 850 nm; 1.5 dB/km at 1300 nm.
  - g. Minimum Modal Bandwidth: 160 MHz-km at 850 nm; 500 MHz-km at 1300 nm.
2. Jacket:
  - a. Jacket Color: Aqua for 50/125 **OR** Orange for 62.5/125, **as directed**,-micrometer cable.
  - b. Cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color shall be according to TIA/EIA-598-B.
  - c. Imprinted with fiber count, fiber type, and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inches (1000 mm).

F. Optical Fiber Cable Hardware

1. Cable Connecting Hardware: Comply with the Fiber Optic Connector Intermateability Standards (FOCIS) specifications of TIA/EIA-604-2, TIA/EIA-604-3-A, and TIA/EIA-604-12. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
  - a. Quick-connect, simplex and duplex, Type SC **OR** Type ST **OR** Type LC **OR** Type MT-RJ, **as directed**, connectors. Insertion loss not more than 0.75 dB.
  - b. Type SFF connectors may be used in termination racks, panels, and equipment packages.



- G. RS-232 Cable
1. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CM.
    - a. Paired, two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
    - b. Polypropylene insulation.
    - c. Individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage.
    - d. PVC jacket.
    - e. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned-copper drain wire.
    - f. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.
  2. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
    - a. Paired, two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
    - b. Plastic insulation.
    - c. Individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage.
    - d. Plastic jacket.
    - e. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned-copper drain wire.
    - f. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.
- H. RS-485 Cable
1. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CM or Type CMG, **as directed**.
    - a. Paired, two pairs, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
    - b. PVC insulation.
    - c. Unshielded.
    - d. PVC jacket.
    - e. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.
  2. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
    - a. Paired, two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
    - b. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
    - c. Unshielded.
    - d. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
    - e. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262, Flame Test.
- I. Low-Voltage Control Cable
1. Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.
    - a. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned-copper conductors.
    - b. PVC insulation.
    - c. Unshielded.
    - d. PVC jacket.
    - e. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.
  2. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
    - a. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned-copper conductors.
    - b. PVC insulation.
    - c. Unshielded.
    - d. PVC jacket.
    - e. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.
  3. Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.
    - a. One pair, twisted, No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned-copper conductors.
    - b. PVC insulation.
    - c. Unshielded.
    - d. PVC jacket.
    - e. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.
  4. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
    - a. One pair, twisted, No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned-copper conductors.
    - b. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
    - c. Unshielded.





- d. Plastic jacket.
  - e. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262, Flame Test.
- J. Control-Circuit Conductors
- 1. Class 1 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN-THWN **OR** Type XHHN, **as directed**, in raceway, complying with UL 83 **OR** UL 44, **as directed**.
  - 2. Class 2 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN-THWN, in raceway **OR** Type XHHN, in raceway **OR** power-limited cable, concealed in building finishes **OR** power-limited tray cable, in cable tray, **as directed**, complying with UL 83 **OR** UL 44, **as directed**.
  - 3. Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits: Stranded copper, Type TW or Type TF, complying with UL 83.
- K. Identification Products
- 1. Comply with UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.
  - 2. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
- L. Source Quality Control
- 1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.
  - 2. Factory test UTP and optical fiber cables on reels according to TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
  - 3. Factory test UTP cables according to TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
  - 4. Factory test multimode optical fiber cables according to TIA/EIA-526-14-A and TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
  - 5. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  - 6. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Installation Of Pathways
- 1. Cable Trays: Comply with NEMA VE 2 and TIA/EIA-569-A-7.
  - 2. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
  - 3. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems" for installation of conduits and wireways.
  - 4. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows if possible.
  - 5. Pathway Installation in Equipment Rooms:
    - a. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard if a single piece of plywood is installed or in the corner of room if multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of room.
    - b. Install cable trays to route cables if conduits cannot be located in these positions.
    - c. Secure conduits to backboard if entering room from overhead.
    - d. Extend conduits 3 inches (75 mm) above finished floor.
    - e. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.
  - 6. Backboards: Install backboards with 96-inch (2440-mm) dimension vertical. Butt adjacent sheets tightly and form smooth gap-free corners and joints.
- B. Installation Of Conductors And Cables
- 1. Comply with NECA 1.
  - 2. General Requirements for Cabling:
    - a. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
    - b. Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 6, "Cable Termination Practices."
    - c. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels.



- d. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
  - e. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
  - f. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
  - g. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
  - h. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.
3. UTP Cable Installation:
    - a. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
    - b. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated.
    - c. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.
  4. Installation of Control-Circuit Conductors:
    - a. Install wiring in raceways. Comply with requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems".
  5. Optical Fiber Cable Installation:
    - a. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
    - b. Cable shall be terminated on connecting hardware that is rack or cabinet mounted.
  6. Open-Cable Installation:
    - a. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
    - b. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above ceilings by cable supports not more than 60 inches (1525 mm) apart.
    - c. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.
  7. Installation of Cable Routed Exposed under Raised Floors:
    - a. Install plenum-rated cable only.
    - b. Install cabling after the flooring system has been installed in raised floor areas.
    - c. Coil cable 72 inches (1830 mm) long shall be neatly coiled not less than 12 inches (305 mm) in diameter below each feed point.
  8. Separation from EMI Sources:
    - a. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA/EIA-569-A recommendations for separating unshielded copper voice and data communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
    - b. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
      - 1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).
      - 2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (305 mm).
      - 3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches (600 mm).
    - c. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
      - 1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).
      - 2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
      - 3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (305 mm).
    - d. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:



- 1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
  - 2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches (75 mm).
  - 3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
  - e. Separation between Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches (1200 mm).
  - f. Separation between Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).
- C. Removal Of Conductors And Cables
1. Remove abandoned conductors and cables.
- D. Control-Circuit Conductors
1. Minimum Conductor Sizes:
    - a. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits, No 14 AWG.
    - b. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control, and signal circuits, No. 16 AWG.
    - c. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm, and signal circuits, No 12 AWG.
- E. Firestopping
1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
  2. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A, Annex A, "Firestopping."
  3. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping Systems" Article.
- F. Grounding
1. For data communication wiring, comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A and with BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.
  2. For low-voltage wiring and cabling, comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
- G. Identification
- H. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling according to TIA/EIA-606-A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
- I. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections.
  2. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. Visually inspect UTP and optical fiber cable jacket materials for UL or third-party certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations to confirm color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections to confirm compliance with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
    - b. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
    - c. Test UTP cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not after cross connection.
      - 1) Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
    - d. Optical Fiber Cable Tests:
      - 1) Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.1. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
      - 2) Link End-to-End Attenuation Tests:
        - a) Multimode Link Measurements: Test at 850 or 1300 nm in one direction according to TIA/EIA-526-14-A, Method B, One Reference Jumper.



- 
- b) Attenuation test results for links shall be less than 2.0 dB. Attenuation test results shall be less than that calculated according to equation in TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
  3. Document data for each measurement. Print data for submittals in a summary report that is formatted using Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM as a guide, or transfer the data from the instrument to the computer, save as text files, print, and submit.
  4. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  5. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 26 05 19 16b

**SECTION 26 05 19 16c - COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT ROOM FITTINGS**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for communications equipment room fittings. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Telecommunications mounting elements.
  - b. Backboards.
  - c. Telecommunications equipment racks and cabinets.
  - d. Telecommunications service entrance pathways.
  - e. Grounding.

## C. Definitions

1. Basket Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of wire mesh bottom and side rails.
2. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.
3. Channel Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of a one-piece, ventilated-bottom or solid-bottom channel not exceeding 6 inches (152 mm) in width.
4. Ladder Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of two longitudinal side rails connected by individual transverse members (rungs).
5. LAN: Local area network.
6. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.
7. Solid-Bottom or Nonventilated Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of a bottom without ventilation openings within integral or separate longitudinal side rails.
8. Trough or Ventilated Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of integral or separate longitudinal rails and a bottom having openings sufficient for the passage of air and using 75 percent or less of the plan area of the surface to support cables.

## D. Performance Requirements

1. Seismic Performance: Floor-mounted cabinets and cable pathways shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
  - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

## E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: For communications equipment room fittings. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - a. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - b. Equipment Racks and Cabinets: Include workspace requirements and access for cable connections.
  - c. Grounding: Indicate location of grounding bus bar and its mounting detail showing standoff insulators and wall mounting brackets.
3. Qualification Data: For Installer, qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
4. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For floor-mounted cabinets, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.



- a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
- b. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions. Base certification on the maximum number of components capable of being mounted in each rack type. Identify components on which certification is based.
- c. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

#### F. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff **OR** personnel must possess the standards and experience for membership.
  - a. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings shall be under the direct supervision of RCDD **OR** RCDD/NTS **OR** possess the standards and experience for membership **OR** Commercial Installer, Level 2, **as directed**.
  - b. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Registered Technician **OR** Level 2 Installer, **as directed**, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
  - c. Field Inspector: Currently registered by BICSI as RCDD **OR** possess the standards and experience for membership **OR** Commercial Installer, Level 2, **as directed**, to perform the on-site inspection.
2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A.
4. Grounding: Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.

#### G. Project Conditions

1. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install equipment frames and cable trays until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and work above ceilings is complete.

#### H. Coordination

1. Coordinate layout and installation of communications equipment with the Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers. Coordinate service entrance arrangement with local exchange carrier.
  - a. Meet jointly with telecommunications and LAN equipment suppliers, local exchange carrier representatives, and the Owner to exchange information and agree on details of equipment arrangements and installation interfaces.
  - b. Record agreements reached in meetings and distribute them to other participants.
  - c. Adjust arrangements and locations of distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels in equipment rooms to accommodate and optimize arrangement and space requirements of telephone switch and LAN equipment.
  - d. Adjust arrangements and locations of equipment with distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels of cabling systems of other communications, electronic safety and security, and related systems that share space in the equipment room.
2. Coordinate location of power raceways and receptacles with locations of communications equipment requiring electrical power to operate.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Pathways

1. General Requirements: Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A.



2. Cable Support: NRTL labeled. Cable support brackets shall be designed to prevent degradation of cable performance and pinch points that could damage cable. Cable tie slots fasten cable ties to brackets.
    - a. Comply with NFPA 70 and UL 2043 for fire-resistant and low-smoke-producing characteristics.
    - b. Support brackets with cable tie slots for fastening cable ties to brackets.
    - c. Lacing bars, spools, J-hooks, and D-rings.
    - d. Straps and other devices.
  3. Cable Trays:
    - a. Cable Tray Materials: Metal, suitable for indoors and protected against corrosion by electroplated zinc galvanizing, complying with ASTM B 633, Type 1, not less than 0.000472 inch (0.012 mm) thick **OR** hot-dip galvanizing, complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M, Grade 0.55, not less than 0.002165 inch (0.055 mm) thick, **as directed**.
      - 1) Basket Cable Trays: 6 inches (150 mm) wide and 2 inches (50 mm) deep. Wire mesh spacing shall not exceed 2 by 4 inches (50 by 100 mm).
      - 2) Trough Cable Trays: Nominally 6 inches (150 mm) wide.
      - 3) Ladder Cable Trays: Nominally 18 inches (455 mm) wide, and a rung spacing of 12 inches (305 mm).
      - 4) Channel Cable Trays: One-piece construction, nominally 4 inches (100 mm) wide. Slot spacing shall not exceed 4-1/2 inches (115 mm) o.c.
      - 5) Solid-Bottom Cable Trays: One-piece construction, nominally 12 inches (305 mm) wide. Provide with **OR** without, **as directed**, solid covers.
  4. Conduit and Boxes: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems". Flexible metal conduit shall not be used.
    - a. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches (50 mm) wide, 3 inches (75 mm) high, and 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) deep.
- B. Backboards
1. Backboards: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, **as directed**, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches (19 by 1220 by 2440 mm). Comply with requirements for plywood backing panels specified in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry".
- C. Equipment Frames
1. General Frame Requirements:
    - a. Distribution Frames: Freestanding and wall-mounting, modular-steel units designed for telecommunications terminal support and coordinated with dimensions of units to be supported.
    - b. Module Dimension: Width compatible with EIA 310 standard, 19-inch (480-mm) panel mounting.
    - c. Finish: Manufacturer's standard, baked-polyester powder coat.
  2. Floor-Mounted Racks: Modular-type, steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, construction.
    - a. Vertical and horizontal cable management channels, top and bottom cable troughs, grounding lug, and a power strip, **as directed**.
    - b. Baked-polyester powder coat finish.
  3. Modular Freestanding Cabinets:
    - a. Removable and lockable side panels.
    - b. Hinged and lockable front and rear doors.
    - c. Adjustable feet for leveling.
    - d. Screened ventilation openings in the roof and rear door.
    - e. Cable access provisions in the roof and base.
    - f. Grounding bus bar.
    - g. Rack **OR** Roof, **as directed**, -mounted, 550-cfm (260-L/s) fan with filter.
    - h. Power strip.
    - i. Baked-polyester powder coat finish.
    - j. All cabinets keyed alike.



4. Modular Wall Cabinets:
    - a. Wall mounting.
    - b. Steel **OR** Aluminum, **as directed**, construction.
    - c. Treated to resist corrosion.
    - d. Lockable front and rear doors.
    - e. Louvered side panels.
    - f. Cable access provisions top and bottom.
    - g. Grounding lug.
    - h. Rack **OR** Roof, **as directed**, -mounted, 250-cfm (118-L/s) fan.
    - i. Power strip.
    - j. All cabinets keyed alike.
  5. Cable Management for Equipment Frames:
    - a. Metal, with integral wire retaining fingers.
    - b. Baked-polyester powder coat finish.
    - c. Vertical cable management panels shall have front and rear channels, with covers.
    - d. Provide horizontal crossover cable manager at the top of each relay rack, with a minimum height of two rack units each.
- D. Power Strips
1. Power Strips: Comply with UL 1363.
    - a. Rack mounting.
    - b. Six, 15-A, 120-V ac, NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R **OR** 20-A, 120-V ac, NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R, **as directed**, receptacles.
    - c. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
    - d. LED indicator lights for reverse polarity and open outlet ground.
    - e. Circuit Breaker and Thermal Fusing:
      - 1) When protection is lost, circuit opens and cannot be reset.

**OR**

 Unit continues to supply power if protection is lost.
    - f. Close-coupled, direct plug-in **OR** Cord connected with 15-foot (4.5-m), **as directed**, line cord.
    - g. Rocker-type on-off switch, illuminated when in on position.
    - h. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating: 33 **OR** 26 **OR** 13, **as directed**, kA per phase.
    - i. Protection modes shall be line to neutral, line to ground, and neutral to ground. UL 1449 clamping voltage for all 3 modes shall be not more than 330 V.
- E. Grounding
1. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.
  2. Telecommunications Main Bus Bar:
    - a. Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless compression **OR** exothermic, **as directed**, -type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.
    - b. Ground Bus Bar: Copper, minimum 1/4 inch thick by 4 inches wide (6 mm thick by 100 mm wide) with 9/32-inch (7.14-mm) holes spaced 1-1/8 inches (28 mm) apart.
    - c. Stand-Off Insulators: Comply with UL 891 for use in switchboards, 600 V. Lexan or PVC, impulse tested at 5000 V.
  3. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.
- F. Labeling
1. Comply with TIA/EIA-606-A and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.





### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Entrance Facilities

1. Contact telecommunications service provider and arrange for installation of demarcation point, protected entrance terminals, and a housing when so directed by service provider.
2. Install underground **OR** buried **OR** aerial, **as directed**, pathways complying with recommendations in TIA/EIA-569-A, "Entrance Facilities" Article.
  - a. Install underground **OR** buried, **as directed**, entrance pathway complying with Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems".

#### B. Installation

1. Comply with NECA 1.
2. Comply with BICSI TDMM for layout and installation of communications equipment rooms.
3. Cable Trays: Comply with NEMA VE 2 and TIA/EIA-569-A-7.
4. Bundle, lace, and train conductors and cables to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.

#### C. Firestopping

1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
2. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A, Annex A, "Firestopping."
3. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping Systems" Article.

#### D. Grounding

1. Install grounding according to BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.
2. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.
3. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall allowing at least 2-inch (50-mm) clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar with a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor from grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground.
4. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.
  - a. Bond the shield of shielded cable to the grounding bus bar in communications rooms and spaces.

#### E. Identification

1. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA/EIA-606-A. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
2. Comply with requirements in Division 09 Section "Interior Painting" for painting backboards. For fire-resistant plywood, do not paint over manufacturer's label.
3. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA/EIA-606-A for Class 2 **OR** Class 3 **OR** Class 4, **as directed**, level of administration including optional identification requirements of this standard, **as directed**.
4. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type.

END OF SECTION 26 05 19 16c



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 26 05 19 16d - COMMUNICATIONS BACKBONE CABLING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for communications backbone cabling. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Pathways.
  - b. UTP cable.
  - c. 50/125 and 62.5/125-micrometer, optical fiber cabling.
  - d. Coaxial cable.
  - e. Cable connecting hardware, patch panels, and cross-connects.
  - f. Cabling identification products.

#### C. Definitions

1. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.
2. Cross-Connect: A facility enabling the termination of cable elements and their interconnection or cross-connection.
3. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
4. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.
5. LAN: Local area network.
6. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.
7. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

#### D. Backbone Cabling Description

1. Backbone cabling system shall provide interconnections between communications equipment rooms, main terminal space, and entrance facilities in the telecommunications cabling system structure. Cabling system consists of backbone cables, intermediate and main cross-connects, mechanical terminations, and patch cords or jumpers used for backbone-to-backbone cross-connection.
2. Backbone cabling cross-connects may be located in communications equipment rooms or at entrance facilities. Bridged taps and splitters shall not be used as part of backbone cabling.

#### E. Performance Requirements

1. General Performance: Backbone cabling system shall comply with transmission standards in TIA/EIA-568-B.1, when tested according to test procedures of this standard.

#### F. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings:
  - a. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules, in software and format selected by the Owner.
  - b. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules that are part of the cabling and asset identification system of the software.
  - c. Cabling administration drawings and printouts.
  - d. Wiring diagrams to show typical wiring schematics including the following:
    - 1) Cross-connects.
    - 2) Patch panels.
    - 3) Patch cords.



- e. Cross-connects and patch panels. Detail mounting assemblies, and show elevations and physical relationship between the installed components.
  - f. Cable tray layout, showing cable tray route to scale, with relationship between the tray and adjacent structural, electrical, and mechanical elements.
3. Qualification Data: For Installer, **as directed**, qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
  4. Source quality-control reports.
  5. Field quality-control reports.
  6. Maintenance Data.
  7. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:
    - a. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
    - b. Program Software Backup: On magnetic media or compact disk, complete with data files.
    - c. Device address list.
    - d. Printout of software application and graphic screens.
- G. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff **OR** personnel must possess the standards and experience for membership, **as directed**.
    - a. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings, Cabling Administration Drawings, and field testing program development by an RCDD **OR** personnel that possess the standards and experience for membership, **as directed**.
    - b. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Registered Technician **OR** Level 2 Installer, **as directed**, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
  2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
    - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
    - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 **OR** 450, **as directed**, or less.
  3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  4. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A.
  5. Grounding: Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.
- H. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.
    - a. Test optical fiber cable to determine the continuity of the strand end to end. Use optical fiber flashlight or optical loss test set.
    - b. Test optical fiber cable while on reels. Use an optical time domain reflectometer to verify the cable length and locate cable defects, splices, and connector, including the loss value of each. Retain test data and include the record in maintenance data.
    - c. Test each pair of UTP cable for open and short circuits.
- I. Software Service Agreement
1. Technical Support: Beginning with Final Completion, provide software support for two years.
  2. Upgrade Service: Update software to latest version at Project completion. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Final Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system. Upgrade shall include new or revised licenses for use of software.
    - a. Provide 30 days' notice to the Owner to allow scheduling and access to system and to allow the Owner to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.



## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Pathways

1. General Requirements: Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A.
2. Cable Support: NRTL labeled for support of Category 6 cabling, designed to prevent degradation of cable performance and pinch points that could damage cable.
  - a. Support brackets with cable tie slots for fastening cable ties to brackets.
  - b. Lacing bars, spools, J-hooks, and D-rings.
  - c. Straps and other devices.
3. Cable Trays:
  - a. Cable Tray Material: Metal, suitable for indoors, and protected against corrosion by electroplated zinc galvanizing, complying with ASTM B 633, Type 1, not less than 0.000472 inches (0.012 mm) thick **OR** hot-dip galvanizing, complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M, Grade 0.55, not less than 0.002165 inches (0.055 mm) thick, **as directed**.
    - 1) Basket Cable Trays: 6 inches (150 mm) wide and 2 inches (50 mm) deep. Wire mesh spacing shall not exceed 2 by 4 inches (50 by 100 mm).
    - 2) Trough Cable Trays: Nominally 6 inches (150 mm) wide.
    - 3) Ladder Cable Trays: Nominally 18 inches (455 mm) wide, and a rung spacing of 12 inches (305 mm).
    - 4) Channel Cable Trays: One-piece construction, nominally 4 inches (100 mm) wide. Slot spacing shall not exceed 4-1/2 inches (115 mm) o.c.
    - 5) Solid-Bottom Cable Trays: One-piece construction, nominally 12 inches (305 mm) wide. Provide with **OR** without, **as directed**, solid covers.
4. Conduit and Boxes: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems". Flexible metal conduit shall not be used.
  - a. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches (50 mm) wide, 3 inches (75 mm) high, and 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) deep.

### B. Backboards

1. Backboards: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, **as directed**, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches (19 by 1220 by 2440 mm). Comply with requirements in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry" for plywood backing panels.

### C. UTP Cable

1. Description: 100-ohm, 100-pair UTP, formed into 25-pair binder groups covered with a gray thermoplastic jacket and overall metallic shield.
  - a. Comply with ICEA S-90-661 for mechanical properties.
  - b. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1 for performance specifications.
  - c. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, Category 5e **OR** Category 6, **OR** Category 6e **as directed**.
  - d. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444 and NFPA 70 for the following types:
    - 1) Communications, General Purpose: Type CM or CMG; or MPP, CMP, MPR, CMR, MP, or MPG, **as directed**.
    - 2) Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CMP or MPP, **as directed**, complying with NFPA 262.
    - 3) Communications, Riser Rated: Type CMR; or MPP, CMP, or MPR, **as directed**, complying with UL 1666.
    - 4) Communications, Limited Purpose: Type CMX; or MPP, CMP, MPR, CMR, MP, MPG, CM, or CMG, **as directed**.
    - 5) Multipurpose: Type MP or MPG; or MPP or MPR, **as directed**.
    - 6) Multipurpose, Plenum Rated: Type MPP, complying with NFPA 262.
    - 7) Multipurpose, Riser Rated: Type MPR or MPP, **as directed**, complying with UL 1666.

### D. UTP Cable Hardware



1. General Requirements for Cable Connecting Hardware: Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.
2. Connecting Blocks: 110-style IDC for Category 5e **OR** 110-style IDC for Category 6 **OR** 66-style IDC for Category 5e, **OR** 110-style IDC for Category 6e **as directed**. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare. Integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.
3. Cross-Connect: Modular array of connecting blocks arranged to terminate building cables and permit interconnection between cables.
  - a. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.
4. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables.
  - a. Number of Jacks per Field: One for each four-pair UTP cable indicated **OR** conductor group of indicated cables, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria, **as directed**.
5. Jacks and Jack Assemblies: Modular, color-coded, eight-position modular receptacle units with integral IDC-type terminals.
6. Patch Cords: Factory-made, 4-pair cables in 36-inch (900-mm) **OR** 48-inch (1200-mm), **as directed**, lengths; terminated with 8-position modular plug at each end.
  - a. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure Category 6 performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.
  - b. Patch cords shall have color-coded boots for circuit identification.

#### E. Optical Fiber Cable

1. Description: Multimode, 50/125 **OR** 62.5/125, **as directed**,-micrometer, 24-fiber, nonconductive, **as directed**, tight buffer, optical fiber cable.
  - a. Comply with ICEA S-83-596 for mechanical properties.
  - b. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3 for performance specifications.
  - c. Comply with TIA/EIA-492AAAA-B **OR** TIA/EIA-492AAAA-A, **as directed**, for detailed specifications.
  - d. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444, UL 1651, and NFPA 70 for the following types:
    - 1) General Purpose, Nonconductive: Type OFN or OFNG, or OFNR, OFNP, **as directed**.
    - 2) Plenum Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP, complying with NFPA 262.
    - 3) Riser Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNR or OFNP, **as directed**, complying with UL 1666.
    - 4) General Purpose, Conductive: Type OFC or OFCG; or OFNG, OFN, OFCR, OFNR, OFCP, or OFNP, **as directed**.
    - 5) Plenum Rated, Conductive: Type OFCP or OFNP, **as directed**, complying with NFPA 262.
    - 6) Riser Rated, Conductive: Type OFCR; or OFNR, OFCP, or OFNP, **as directed**, complying with UL 1666.
  - e. Conductive cable shall be steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, armored type.
  - f. Maximum Attenuation: 3.50 dB/km at 850 nm; 1.5 dB/km at 1300 nm.
  - g. Minimum Modal Bandwidth: 160 MHz-km at 850 nm; 500 MHz-km at 1300 nm.
2. Jacket:
  - a. Jacket Color: Aqua for 50/125-micrometer cable **OR** Orange for 62.5/125-micrometer cable, **as directed**.
  - b. Cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color shall be according to TIA/EIA-598-B.
  - c. Imprinted with fiber count, fiber type, and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inches (1000 mm).

#### F. Optical Fiber Cable Hardware



1. Cross-Connects and Patch Panels: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered, duplex cable connectors.
    - a. Number of Connectors per Field: One for each fiber of cable or cables assigned to field, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria.
  2. Patch Cords: Factory-made, dual-fiber cables in 36-inch (900-mm) lengths.
  3. Cable Connecting Hardware:
    - a. Comply with Optical Fiber Connector Interchangeability Standards (FOCIS) specifications of TIA/EIA-604-2, TIA/EIA-604-3-A, and TIA/EIA-604-12. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
    - b. Quick-connect, simplex and duplex, Type SC **OR** Type ST **OR** Type LC **OR** Type MT-RJ, **as directed**, connectors. Insertion loss not more than 0.75 dB.
    - c. Type SFF connectors may be used in termination racks, panels, and equipment packages.
- G. Coaxial Cable
1. General Coaxial Cable Requirements: Broadband type, recommended by cable manufacturer specifically for broadband data transmission applications. Coaxial cable and accessories shall have 75-ohm nominal impedance with a return loss of 20 dB maximum from 7 to 806 MHz.
  2. RG-11/U: NFPA 70, Type CATV.
    - a. No. 14 AWG, solid, copper-covered steel conductor.
    - b. Gas-injected, foam-PE insulation.
    - c. Double shielded with 100 percent aluminum polyester tape and 60 percent aluminum braid.
    - d. Jacketed with sunlight-resistant, black PVC or PE.
    - e. Suitable for outdoor installations in ambient temperatures ranging from minus 40 to plus 85 deg C.
  3. RG59/U: NFPA 70, Type CATVR.
    - a. No. 20 AWG, solid, silver-plated, copper-covered steel conductor.
    - b. Gas-injected, foam-PE insulation.
    - c. Triple shielded with 100 percent aluminum polyester tape and 95 percent aluminum braid; covered by aluminum foil with grounding strip.
    - d. Color-coded PVC jacket.
  4. RG-6/U: NFPA 70, Type CATV or CM.
    - a. No. 16 AWG, solid, copper-covered steel conductor; gas-injected, foam-PE insulation.
    - b. Double shielded with 100 percent aluminum-foil shield and 60 percent aluminum braid.
    - c. Jacketed with black PVC or PE.
    - d. Suitable for indoor installations.
  5. RG59/U: NFPA 70, Type CATV.
    - a. No. 20 AWG, solid, copper-covered steel conductor; gas-injected, foam-PE insulation.
    - b. Double shielded with 100 percent aluminum polyester tape and 40 percent aluminum braid.
    - c. PVC jacket.
  6. RG59/U (Plenum Rated): NFPA 70, Type CMP.
    - a. No. 20 AWG, solid, copper-covered steel conductor; foam fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
    - b. Double shielded with 100 percent aluminum-foil shield and 65 percent aluminum braid.
    - c. Copolymer jacket.
  7. NFPA and UL compliance, listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 1655 and with NFPA 70, "Radio and Television Equipment" and "Community Antenna Television and Radio Distribution" Articles. Types are as follows:
    - a. CATV Cable: Type CATV, or CATVP or CATVR, **as directed**.
    - b. CATV Plenum Rated: Type CATVP, complying with NFPA 262.
    - c. CATV Riser Rated: Type CATVR; or CATVP, CATVR, or CATV, **as directed**, complying with UL 1666.
    - d. CATV Limited Rating: Type CATVX.
- H. Coaxial Cable Hardware
1. Coaxial-Cable Connectors: Type BNC, 75 ohms.
- I. Grounding



1. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.
2. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.

J. Identification Products

1. Comply with TIA/EIA-606-A and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

K. Source Quality Control

1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.
2. Factory test cables on reels according to TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
3. Factory test UTP cables according to TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
4. Factory test multimode optical fiber cables according to TIA/EIA-526-14-A and TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
5. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
6. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Entrance Facilities

1. Coordinate backbone cabling with the protectors and demarcation point provided by communications service provider.

B. Wiring Methods

1. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces, in attics, and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
  - a. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
  - b. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems".
2. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.
3. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables within enclosures. Connect to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

C. Installation Of Pathways

1. Cable Trays: Comply with NEMA VE 2 and TIA/EIA-569-A.
2. Comply with requirements for demarcation point, pathways, cabinets, and racks specified in Division 27 Section "Communications Equipment Room Fittings". Drawings indicate general arrangement of pathways and fittings.
3. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
4. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems" for installation of conduits and wireways.
5. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows whenever possible.
6. Pathway Installation in Communications Equipment Rooms:
  - a. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard where a single piece of plywood is installed, or in the corner of room where multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of room.
  - b. Install cable trays to route cables if conduits cannot be located in these positions.
  - c. Secure conduits to backboard when entering room from overhead.
  - d. Extend conduits 3 inches (76 mm) above finished floor.





- e. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.
7. Backboards: Install backboards with 96-inch (2440-mm) dimension vertical. Butt adjacent sheets tightly, and form smooth gap-free corners and joints.

#### D. Installation Of Cables

1. Comply with NECA 1.
2. General Requirements for Cabling:
  - a. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
  - b. Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 6, "Cable Termination Practices."
  - c. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated.
  - d. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.
  - e. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
  - f. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, to prevent straining connections, and to prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
  - g. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Use lacing bars and distribution spools.
  - h. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
  - i. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
  - j. In the communications equipment room, install a 10-foot- (3-m-) long service loop on each end of cable.
  - k. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.
3. UTP Cable Installation:
  - a. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
  - b. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.
4. Optical Fiber Cable Installation:
  - a. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
  - b. Cable may be terminated on connecting hardware that is rack or cabinet mounted.
5. Open-Cable Installation:
  - a. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
  - b. Suspend UTP cable not in a wireway or pathway, a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above ceilings by cable supports not more than 60 inches (1524 mm) apart.
  - c. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.
6. Installation of Cable Routed Exposed under Raised Floors:
  - a. Install plenum-rated cable only.
  - b. Install cabling after the flooring system has been installed in raised floor areas.
  - c. Coil cable 6 feet (1800 mm) long not less than 12 inches (300 mm) in diameter below each feed point.
7. Outdoor Coaxial Cable Installation:
  - a. Install outdoor connections in enclosures complying with NEMA 250, Type 4X. Install corrosion-resistant connectors with properly designed O-rings to keep out moisture.
  - b. Attach antenna lead-in cable to support structure at intervals not exceeding 36 inches (915 mm).
8. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.
9. Separation from EMI Sources:



- a. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA/EIA-569-A recommendations for separating unshielded copper voice and data communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
  - b. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
    - 1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).
    - 2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
    - 3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches (610 mm).
  - c. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
    - 1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).
    - 2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
    - 3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
  - d. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
    - 1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
    - 2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches (76 mm).
    - 3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
  - e. Separation between Communications Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches (1200 mm).
  - f. Separation between Communications Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).
- E. Firestopping
1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
  2. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A, Annex A, "Firestopping."
  3. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping Systems" Article.
- F. Grounding
1. Install grounding according to BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.
  2. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.
  3. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall allowing at least 2-inch (50-mm) clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar with a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor from grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground.
  4. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.
- G. Identification
1. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA/EIA-606-A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
    - a. Administration Class: 1 **OR** 2 **OR** 3 **OR** 4, **as directed**.
    - b. Color-code cross-connect fields and apply colors to voice and data service backboards, connections, covers, and labels.
  2. Comply with requirements in Division 09 Section "Interior Painting" for painting backboards. For fire-resistant plywood, do not paint over manufacturer's label.
  3. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA/EIA-606-A for Class 2 **OR** Class 3 **OR** Class 4, **as directed**, level of administration including optional identification requirements of this standard.



4. Comply with requirements in Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling" for cable and asset management software.
  5. Cable Schedule: Install in a prominent location in each equipment room and wiring closet. List incoming and outgoing cables and their designations, origins, and destinations. Protect with rigid frame and clear plastic cover. Furnish an electronic copy of final comprehensive schedules for Project.
  6. Cabling Administration Drawings: Show building floor plans with cabling administration-point labeling. Identify labeling convention and show labels for telecommunications closets, backbone pathways and cables, entrance pathways and cables, terminal hardware and positions, horizontal cables, work areas and workstation terminal positions, grounding buses and pathways, and equipment grounding conductors.
  7. Cable and Wire Identification:
    - a. Label each cable within 4 inches (100 mm) of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
    - b. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at device if color of wire is consistent with associated wire connected and numbered within panel or cabinet.
    - c. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding 15 feet (4.5 m).
    - d. Label each terminal strip and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.
      - 1) Individually number wiring conductors connected to terminal strips and identify each cable or wiring group being extended from a panel or cabinet to a building-mounted device with name and number of particular device as shown.
      - 2) Label each unit and field within distribution racks and frames.
    - e. Identification within Connector Fields in Equipment Rooms and Wiring Closets: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and connecting hardware. Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both voice and data communication cabling, use a different color for jacks and plugs of each service.
  8. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type with printing area and font color that contrasts with cable jacket color but still complies with requirements in TIA/EIA 606-A, for the following:
    - a. Cables use flexible vinyl or polyester that flexes as cables are bent.
- H. Field Quality Control
1. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. Visually inspect UTP and optical fiber jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for compliance with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
    - b. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
    - c. Test UTP copper cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not cross-connection.
      - 1) Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
    - d. Optical Fiber Cable Tests:
      - 1) Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.1. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
      - 2) Link End-to-End Attenuation Tests:



- 
- a) Horizontal and multimode backbone link measurements: Test at 850 or 1300 nm in 1 direction according to TIA/EIA-526-14-A, Method B, One Reference Jumper.
  - b) Attenuation test results for backbone links shall be less than 2.0 dB. Attenuation test results shall be less than that calculated according to equation in TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
2. Data for each measurement shall be documented. Data for submittals shall be printed in a summary report that is formatted similar to Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM, or transferred from the instrument to the computer, saved as text files, and printed and submitted.
  3. Remove and replace cabling where test results indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
  4. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  5. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 26 05 19 16d



## SECTION 26 05 19 16e - COMMUNICATIONS HORIZONTAL CABLING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for communications horizontal cabling. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Pathways.
  - b. UTP cabling.
  - c. 50/125 and 62.5/125-micrometer, optical fiber cabling.
  - d. Coaxial cable.
  - e. Multiuser telecommunications outlet assemblies.
  - f. Cable connecting hardware, patch panels, and cross-connects.
  - g. Telecommunications outlet/connectors.
  - h. Cabling system identification products.
  - i. Cable management system.

#### C. Definitions

1. Basket Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of wire mesh bottom and side rails.
2. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.
3. Channel Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of a one-piece, ventilated-bottom or solid-bottom channel.
4. Consolidation Point: A location for interconnection between horizontal cables extending from building pathways and horizontal cables extending into furniture pathways.
5. Cross-Connect: A facility enabling the termination of cable elements and their interconnection or cross-connection.
6. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
7. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.
8. Ladder Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of two longitudinal side rails connected by individual transverse members (rungs).
9. LAN: Local area network.
10. MUTOA: Multiuser telecommunications outlet assembly, a grouping in one location of several telecommunications outlet/connectors.
11. Outlet/Connectors: A connecting device in the work area on which horizontal cable or outlet cable terminates.
12. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.
13. Solid-Bottom or Nonventilated Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of longitudinal side rails and a bottom without ventilation openings.
14. Trough or Ventilated Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of longitudinal side rails and a bottom having openings for the passage of air.
15. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

#### D. Horizontal Cabling Description

1. Horizontal cable and its connecting hardware provide the means of transporting signals between the telecommunications outlet/connector and the horizontal cross-connect located in the communications equipment room. This cabling and its connecting hardware are called "permanent link," a term that is used in the testing protocols.
  - a. TIA/EIA-568-B.1 requires that a minimum of two telecommunications outlet/connectors be installed for each work area.



- b. Horizontal cabling shall contain no more than one transition point or consolidation point between the horizontal cross-connect and the telecommunications outlet/connector.
  - c. Bridged taps and splices shall not be installed in the horizontal cabling.
  - d. Splitters shall not be installed as part of the optical fiber cabling.
2. A work area is approximately 100 sq. ft. (9.3 sq. m), and includes the components that extend from the telecommunications outlet/connectors to the station equipment.
  3. The maximum allowable horizontal cable length is 295 feet (90 m). This maximum allowable length does not include an allowance for the length of 16 feet (4.9 m) to the workstation equipment. The maximum allowable length does not include an allowance for the length of 16 feet (4.9 m) in the horizontal cross-connect.
- E. Performance Requirements
1. General Performance: Horizontal cabling system shall comply with transmission standards in TIA/EIA-568-B.1, when tested according to test procedures of this standard.
- F. Submittals
1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
  2. Shop Drawings:
    - a. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules, in software and format selected by the Owner.
    - b. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules that are part of the cabling and asset identification system of the software.
    - c. Cabling administration drawings and printouts.
    - d. Wiring diagrams to show typical wiring schematics, including the following:
      - 1) Cross-connects.
      - 2) Patch panels.
      - 3) Patch cords.
    - e. Cross-connects and patch panels. Detail mounting assemblies, and show elevations and physical relationship between the installed components.
    - f. Cable tray layout, showing cable tray route to scale, with relationship between the tray and adjacent structural, electrical, and mechanical elements.
  3. Samples: For workstation outlets, jacks, jack assemblies, in specified finish, one for each size and outlet configuration and faceplates for color selection and evaluation of technical features.
  4. Qualification Data: For Installer, **as directed**, qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
  5. Source quality-control reports.
  6. Field quality-control reports.
  7. Maintenance Data.
  8. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:
    - a. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
    - b. Program Software Backup: On magnetic media or compact disk, complete with data files.
    - c. Device address list.
    - d. Printout of software application and graphic screens.
- G. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff **OR** personnel must possess the standards and experience for membership, **as directed**.
    - a. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings, Cabling Administration Drawings, and field testing program development by an RCDD **OR** personnel that possess the standards and experience for membership, **as directed**.
    - b. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Registered Technician **OR** Level 2 Installer, **as directed**, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.



2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
  - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 **OR** 450, **as directions**, or less.
3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
4. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A.
5. Grounding: Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.

#### H. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.
  - a. Test optical fiber cables to determine the continuity of the strand end to end. Use optical fiber flashlight or optical loss test set.
  - b. Test optical fiber cables while on reels. Use an optical time domain reflectometer to verify the cable length and locate cable defects, splices, and connector; including the loss value of each. Retain test data and include the record in maintenance data.
  - c. Test each pair of UTP cable for open and short circuits.

#### I. Software Service Agreement

1. Technical Support: Beginning with Final Completion, provide software support for two years.
2. Upgrade Service: Update software to latest version at Project completion. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Final Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system. Upgrade shall include new or revised licenses for use of software.
  - a. Provide 30 days' notice to the Owner to allow scheduling and access to system and to allow the Owner to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Pathways

1. General Requirements: Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A.
2. Cable Support: NRTL labeled for support of Category 6 cabling, designed to prevent degradation of cable performance and pinch points that could damage cable.
  - a. Support brackets with cable tie slots for fastening cable ties to brackets.
  - b. Lacing bars, spools, J-hooks, and D-rings.
  - c. Straps and other devices.
3. Cable Trays:
  - a. Cable Tray Materials: Metal, suitable for indoors, and protected against corrosion by electroplated zinc galvanizing, complying with ASTM B 633, Type 1, not less than 0.000472 inch (0.012 mm) thick **OR** hot-dip galvanizing, complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M, Grade 0.55, not less than 0.002165 inch (0.055 mm) thick, **as directed**.
    - 1) Basket Cable Trays: 6 inches (150 mm) wide and 2 inches (50 mm) deep. Wire mesh spacing shall not exceed 2 by 4 inches (50 by 100 mm).
    - 2) Trough Cable Trays: Nominally 6 inches (150 mm) wide.
    - 3) Ladder Cable Trays: Nominally 18 inches (455 mm) wide, and a rung spacing of 12 inches (305 mm).
    - 4) Channel Cable Trays: One-piece construction, nominally 4 inches (100 mm) wide. Slot spacing shall not exceed 4-1/2 inches (115 mm) o.c.
    - 5) Solid-Bottom Cable Trays: One-piece construction, nominally 12 inches (305 mm) wide. Provide with **OR** without, **as directed**, solid covers.
4. Conduit and Boxes: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems". Flexible metal conduit shall not be used.



- a. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches (50 mm) wide, 3 inches (75 mm) high, and 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) deep.
- B. Backboards
1. Backboards: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, **as directed**, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches (19 by 1220 by 2440 mm). Comply with requirements in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry" for plywood backing panels.
- C. UTP Cable
1. Description: 100-ohm, 4-pair UTP, formed into 25-pair, binder groups covered with a blue thermoplastic jacket.
    - a. Comply with ICEA S-90-661 for mechanical properties.
    - b. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1 for performance specifications.
    - c. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, Category 5e **OR** Category 6, **OR** Category 6e **as directed**.
    - d. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444 and NFPA 70 for the following types:
      - 1) Communications, General Purpose: Type CM or CMG; or MPP, CMP, MPR, CMR, MP, or MPG, **as directed**.
      - 2) Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CMP or MPP, **as directed**, complying with NFPA 262.
      - 3) Communications, Riser Rated: Type CMR; or MPP, CMP, or MPR, **as directed**, complying with UL 1666.
      - 4) Communications, Limited Purpose: Type CMX; or MPP, CMP, MPR, CMR, MP, MPG, CM, or CMG, **as directed**.
      - 5) Multipurpose: Type MP or MPG; or MPP or MPR, **as directed**.
      - 6) Multipurpose, Plenum Rated: Type MPP, complying with NFPA 262.
      - 7) Multipurpose, Riser Rated: Type MPR or MPP, **as directed**, complying with UL 1666.
- D. UTP Cable Hardware
1. General Requirements for Cable Connecting Hardware: Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.
  2. Connecting Blocks: 110-style IDC for Category 5e **OR** 110-style IDC for Category 6 **OR** 66-style IDC for Category 5e, **OR** 110-style IDC for Category 6e **as directed**. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare. Integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.
  3. Cross-Connect: Modular array of connecting blocks arranged to terminate building cables and permit interconnection between cables.
    - a. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.
  4. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables.
    - a. Number of Jacks per Field: One for each four-pair UTP cable indicated **OR** conductor group of indicated cables, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria, **as directed**.
  5. Jacks and Jack Assemblies: Modular, color-coded, eight-position modular receptacle units with integral IDC-type terminals.
  6. Patch Cords: Factory-made, four-pair cables in 36-inch (900 mm) **OR** 48-inch (1200-mm), **as directed**, lengths; terminated with eight-position modular plug at each end.
    - a. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure Category 6 performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.
    - b. Patch cords shall have color-coded boots for circuit identification.
- E. Optical Fiber Cable





1. Description: Multimode, 50/125 **OR** 62.5/125, **as directed**,-micrometer, 24-fiber, nonconductive, **as directed**, tight buffer, optical fiber cable.
    - a. Comply with ICEA S-83-596 for mechanical properties.
    - b. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3 for performance specifications.
    - c. Comply with TIA/EIA-492AAAA-B **OR** TIA/EIA-492AAAA-A, **as directed**, for detailed specifications.
    - d. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444, UL 1651, and NFPA 70 for the following types:
      - 1) General Purpose, Nonconductive: Type OFN or OFNG, or OFNR, OFNP, **as directed**.
      - 2) Plenum Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP, complying with NFPA 262.
      - 3) Riser Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNR or OFNP, **as directed**, complying with UL 1666.
      - 4) General Purpose, Conductive: Type OFC or OFCG; or OFNG, OFN, OFCR, OFNR, OFCP, or OFNP, **as directed**.
      - 5) Plenum Rated, Conductive: Type OFCP or OFNP, **as directed**, complying with NFPA 262.
      - 6) Riser Rated, Conductive: Type OFCR; or OFNR, OFCP, or OFNP, **as directed**, complying with UL 1666.
    - e. Conductive cable shall be steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, armored type.
    - f. Maximum Attenuation: 3.50 dB/km at 850 nm; 1.5 dB/km at 1300 nm.
    - g. Minimum Modal Bandwidth: 160 MHz-km at 850 nm; 500 MHz-km at 1300 nm.
  2. Jacket:
    - a. Jacket Color: Aqua for 50/125-micrometer cable **OR** Orange for 62.5/125-micrometer cable, **as directed**.
    - b. Cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color shall be according to TIA/EIA-598-B.
    - c. Imprinted with fiber count, fiber type, and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inches (1000 mm).
- F. Optical Fiber Cable Hardware
1. Cross-Connects and Patch Panels: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered, duplex cable connectors.
    - a. Number of Connectors per Field: One for each fiber of cable or cables assigned to field, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria.
  2. Patch Cords: Factory-made, dual-fiber cables in 36-inch (900-mm) lengths.
  3. Cable Connecting Hardware:
    - a. Comply with Optical Fiber Connector Intermateability Standards (FOCIS) specifications of TIA/EIA-604-2, TIA/EIA-604-3-A, and TIA/EIA-604-12. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
    - b. Quick-connect, simplex and duplex, Type SC **OR** Type ST **OR** Type LC **OR** Type MT-RJ, **as directed**, connectors. Insertion loss not more than 0.75 dB.
    - c. Type SFF connectors may be used in termination racks, panels, and equipment packages.
- G. Coaxial Cable
1. Cable Characteristics: Broadband type, recommended by cable manufacturer specifically for broadband data transmission applications. Coaxial cable and accessories shall have 75-ohm nominal impedance with a return loss of 20 dB maximum from 7 to 806 MHz.
  2. RG-11/U: NFPA 70, Type CATV.
    - a. No. 14 AWG, solid, copper-covered steel conductor.
    - b. Gas-injected, foam-PE insulation.
    - c. Double shielded with 100 percent aluminum polyester tape and 60 percent aluminum braid.
    - d. Jacketed with sunlight-resistant, black PVC or PE.
    - e. Suitable for outdoor installations in ambient temperatures ranging from minus 40 to plus 85 deg C.
  3. RG59/U: NFPA 70, Type CATVR.
    - a. No. 20 AWG, solid, silver-plated, copper-covered steel conductor.
    - b. Gas-injected, foam-PE insulation.



- c. Triple shielded with 100 percent aluminum polyester tape and 95 percent aluminum braid; covered by aluminum foil with grounding strip.
- d. Color-coded PVC jacket.
- 4. RG-6/U: NFPA 70, Type CATV or CM.
  - a. No. 16 AWG, solid, copper-covered steel conductor; gas-injected, foam-PE insulation.
  - b. Double shielded with 100 percent aluminum-foil shield and 60 percent aluminum braid.
  - c. Jacketed with black PVC or PE.
  - d. Suitable for indoor installations.
- 5. RG59/U: NFPA 70, Type CATV.
  - a. No. 20 AWG, solid, copper-covered steel conductor; gas-injected, foam-PE insulation.
  - b. Double shielded with 100 percent aluminum polyester tape and 40 percent aluminum braid.
  - c. PVC jacket.
- 6. RG59/U (Plenum Rated): NFPA 70, Type CMP.
  - a. No. 20 AWG, solid, copper-covered steel conductor; foam fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
  - b. Double shielded with 100 percent aluminum-foil shield and 65 percent aluminum braid.
  - c. Copolymer jacket.
- 7. NFPA and UL compliance, listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 1655 and with NFPA 70 "Radio and Television Equipment" and "Community Antenna Television and Radio Distribution" Articles. Types are as follows:
  - a. CATV Cable: Type CATV or CATVP or CATVR, **as directed**.
  - b. CATV Plenum Rated: Type CATVP, complying with NFPA 262.
  - c. CATV Riser Rated: Type CATVR; or CATVP, CATVR, or CATV, **as directed**, complying with UL 1666.
  - d. CATV Limited Rating: Type CATVX.

#### H. Coaxial Cable Hardware

- 1. Coaxial-Cable Connectors: Type BNC, 75 ohms.

#### I. Consolidation Points

- 1. Description: Consolidation points shall comply with requirements for cable connecting hardware.
  - a. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.
  - b. Number of Connectors per Field:
    - 1) One for each four-pair UTP cable indicated.
    - 2) One for each four-pair conductor group of indicated cables, plus 25 percent spare positions.
  - c. Mounting: Recessed in ceiling **OR** Wall **OR** Desk **OR** Furniture, **as directed**.
  - d. NRTL listed as complying with UL 50 and UL 1863.
  - e. When installed in plenums used for environmental air, NRTL listed as complying with UL 2043.

#### J. Multiuser Telecommunications Outlet Assembly (MUTOA)

- 1. Description: MUTOAs shall meet the requirements for cable connecting hardware.
  - a. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.
  - b. Number of Connectors per Field:
    - 1) One for each four-pair UTP cable indicated.
    - 2) One for each four-pair conductor group of indicated cables, plus 25 percent spare positions.
  - c. Mounting: Recessed in ceiling **OR** Wall **OR** Desk **OR** Furniture, **as directed**.
  - d. NRTL listed as complying with UL 50 and UL 1863.
  - e. Label shall include maximum length of work area cords, based on TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
  - f. When installed in plenums used for environmental air, NRTL listed as complying with UL 2043.

#### K. Telecommunications Outlet/Connectors



1. Jacks: 100-ohm, balanced, twisted-pair connector; four-pair, eight-position modular. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
2. Workstation Outlets: Two **OR** Four, **as directed**,-port-connector assemblies mounted in single or multigang faceplate.
  - a. Plastic Faceplate: High-impact plastic. Coordinate color with Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices".
  - b. Metal Faceplate: Stainless steel **OR** Brass, **as directed**, complying with requirements in Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices".
  - c. For use with snap-in jacks accommodating any combination of UTP, optical fiber, and coaxial work area cords.
    - 1) Flush mounting jacks, positioning the cord at a 45-degree angle.
  - d. Legend:
    - 1) Factory labeled by silk-screening or engraving for stainless steel **OR** brass, **as directed**, faceplates.  
**OR**  
Machine printed, in the field, using adhesive-tape label.  
**OR**  
Snap-in, clear-label covers and machine-printed paper inserts.

#### L. Grounding

1. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.
2. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.

#### M. Identification Products

1. Comply with TIA/EIA-606-A and UL 969 for labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.
2. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".

#### N. Cable Management System

1. Description: Computer-based cable management system, with integrated database and graphic, **as directed**, capabilities.
2. Document physical characteristics by recording the network, TIA/EIA details, and connections between equipment and cable.
3. Information shall be presented in database view, schematic plans, or technical drawings.
  - a. Microsoft Visio Professional or AutoCAD drawing software shall be used as drawing and schematic plans software.
4. System shall interface with the following testing and recording devices:
  - a. Direct upload tests from circuit testing instrument into the personal computer.
  - b. Direct download circuit labeling into labeling printer.

#### O. Source Quality Control

1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.
2. Factory test UTP and optical fiber cables on reels according to TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
3. Factory test UTP cables according to TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
4. Factory test multimode optical fiber cables according to TIA/EIA-526-14-A and TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
5. Factory-sweep test coaxial cables at frequencies from 5 MHz to 1 GHz. Sweep test shall test the frequency response, or attenuation over frequency, of a cable by generating a voltage whose frequency is varied through the specified frequency range and graphing the results.
6. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
7. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Entrance Facilities



1. Coordinate backbone cabling with the protectors and demarcation point provided by communications service provider.
- B. Wiring Methods
1. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces, in attics, and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
    - a. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
    - b. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems".
  2. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.
  3. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.
- C. Installation Of Pathways
1. Cable Trays: Comply with NEMA VE 2 and TIA/EIA-569-A-7.
  2. Comply with requirements for demarcation point, pathways, cabinets, and racks specified in Division 27 Section "Communications Equipment Room Fittings". Drawings indicate general arrangement of pathways and fittings.
  3. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
  4. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems" for installation of conduits and wireways.
  5. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows whenever possible.
  6. Pathway Installation in Communications Equipment Rooms:
    - a. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard where a single piece of plywood is installed, or in the corner of room where multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of room.
    - b. Install cable trays to route cables if conduits cannot be located in these positions.
    - c. Secure conduits to backboard when entering room from overhead.
    - d. Extend conduits 3 inches (76 mm) above finished floor.
    - e. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.
  7. Backboards: Install backboards with 96-inch (2440-mm) dimension vertical. Butt adjacent sheets tightly, and form smooth gap-free corners and joints.
- D. Installation Of Cables
1. Comply with NECA 1.
  2. General Requirements for Cabling:
    - a. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
    - b. Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 6, "Cable Termination Practices."
    - c. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated.
    - d. MUTOA shall not be used as a cross-connect point.
    - e. Consolidation points may be used only for making a direct connection to telecommunications outlet/connectors:
      - 1) Do not use consolidation point as a cross-connect point, as a patch connection, or for direct connection to workstation equipment.
      - 2) Locate consolidation points for UTP at least 49 feet (15 m) from communications equipment room.
    - f. Terminate conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.



- g. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
  - h. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, to prevent straining connections, and to prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
  - i. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
  - j. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
  - k. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
  - l. In the communications equipment room, install a 10-foot- (3-m-) long service loop on each end of cable.
  - m. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.
3. UTP Cable Installation:
    - a. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
    - b. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.
  4. Optical Fiber Cable Installation:
    - a. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
    - b. Cable may be terminated on connecting hardware that is rack or cabinet mounted.
  5. Open-Cable Installation:
    - a. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
    - b. Suspend UTP cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above ceilings by cable supports not more than 60 inches (1524 mm) apart.
    - c. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.
  6. Installation of Cable Routed Exposed under Raised Floors:
    - a. Install plenum-rated cable only.
    - b. Install cabling after the flooring system has been installed in raised floor areas.
    - c. Coil cable 6 feet (1800 mm) long not less than 12 inches (300 mm) in diameter below each feed point.
  7. Outdoor Coaxial Cable Installation:
    - a. Install outdoor connections in enclosures complying with NEMA 250, Type 4X. Install corrosion-resistant connectors with properly designed O-rings to keep out moisture.
    - b. Attach antenna lead-in cable to support structure at intervals not exceeding 36 inches (915 mm).
  8. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.
  9. Separation from EMI Sources:
    - a. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA/EIA-569-A for separating unshielded copper voice and data communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
    - b. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
      - 1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).
      - 2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
      - 3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches (610 mm).
    - c. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
      - 1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).



- 2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
  - 3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
  - d. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
    - 1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
    - 2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches (76 mm).
    - 3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
  - e. Separation between Communications Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches (1200 mm).
  - f. Separation between Communications Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).
- E. Firestopping
1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
  2. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A, Annex A, "Firestopping."
  3. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping Systems" Article.
- F. Grounding
1. Install grounding according to BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.
  2. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.
  3. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall allowing at least 2-inch (50-mm) clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar with a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor from grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground.
  4. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.
- G. Identification
1. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA/EIA-606-A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
    - a. Administration Class: **1 OR 2 OR 3 OR 4, as directed.**
    - b. Color-code cross-connect fields. Apply colors to voice and data service backboards, connections, covers, and labels.
  2. Using cable management system software specified in Part 2, develop Cabling Administration Drawings for system identification, testing, and management. Use unique, alphanumeric designation for each cable and label cable, jacks, connectors, and terminals to which it connects with same designation. At completion, cable and asset management software shall reflect as-built conditions.
  3. Comply with requirements in Division 09 Section "Interior Painting" for painting backboards. For fire-resistant plywood, do not paint over manufacturer's label.
  4. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA/EIA-606-A for Class 2 **OR** Class 3 **OR** Class 4, **as directed**, level of administration, including optional identification requirements of this standard.
  5. Cable Schedule: Post in prominent location in each equipment room and wiring closet. List incoming and outgoing cables and their designations, origins, and destinations. Protect with rigid frame and clear plastic cover. Furnish an electronic copy of final comprehensive schedules for Project.
  6. Cabling Administration Drawings: Show building floor plans with cabling administration-point labeling. Identify labeling convention and show labels for telecommunications closets, backbone pathways and cables, entrance pathways and cables, terminal hardware and positions, horizontal cables, work areas and workstation terminal positions, grounding buses and pathways, and



- equipment grounding conductors. Follow convention of TIA/EIA-606-A. Furnish electronic record of all drawings, in software and format selected by the Owner.
7. Cable and Wire Identification:
    - a. Label each cable within 4 inches (100 mm) of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
    - b. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at device if color of wire is consistent with associated wire connected and numbered within panel or cabinet.
    - c. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding 15 feet (4.5 m).
    - d. Label each terminal strip and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.
      - 1) Individually number wiring conductors connected to terminal strips, and identify each cable or wiring group being extended from a panel or cabinet to a building-mounted device shall be identified with name and number of particular device as shown.
      - 2) Label each unit and field within distribution racks and frames.
    - e. Identification within Connector Fields in Equipment Rooms and Wiring Closets: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and connecting hardware. Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both voice and data communication cabling, use a different color for jacks and plugs of each service.
    - f. Uniquely identify and label work area cables extending from the MUTOA to the work area. These cables may not exceed the length stated on the MUTOA label.
  8. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type with printing area and font color that contrasts with cable jacket color but still complies with requirements in TIA/EIA-606-A.
    - a. Cables use flexible vinyl or polyester that flex as cables are bent.

#### H. Field Quality Control

1. Tests and Inspections:
  - a. Visually inspect UTP and optical fiber cable jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for compliance with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
  - b. Visually confirm Category 5e **OR** Category 6, **OR** Category 6e **as directed**, marking of outlets, cover plates, outlet/connectors, and patch panels.
  - c. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
  - d. Test UTP backbone copper cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not cross-connection.
    - 1) Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
  - e. Optical Fiber Cable Tests:
    - 1) Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.1. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
    - 2) Link End-to-End Attenuation Tests:
      - a) Horizontal and multimode backbone link measurements: Test at 850 or 1300 nm in 1 direction according to TIA/EIA-526-14-A, Method B, One Reference Jumper.
      - b) Attenuation test results for backbone links shall be less than 2.0 dB. Attenuation test results shall be less than that calculated according to equation in TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
  - f. UTP Performance Tests:



- 1) Test for each outlet and MUTOA. Perform the following tests according to TIA/EIA-568-B.1 and TIA/EIA-568-B.2:
  - a) Wire map.
  - b) Length (physical vs. electrical, and length requirements).
  - c) Insertion loss.
  - d) Near-end crosstalk (NEXT) loss.
  - e) Power sum near-end crosstalk (PSNEXT) loss.
  - f) Equal-level far-end crosstalk (ELFEXT).
  - g) Power sum equal-level far-end crosstalk (PSELFEXT).
  - h) Return loss.
  - i) Propagation delay.
  - j) Delay skew.
- g. Optical Fiber Cable Performance Tests: Perform optical fiber end-to-end link tests according to TIA/EIA-568-B.1 and TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
- h. Coaxial Cable Tests: Conduct tests according to Division 27 Section "Master Antenna Television System".
- i. Final Verification Tests: Perform verification tests for UTP and optical fiber systems after the complete communications cabling and workstation outlet/connectors are installed.
  - 1) Voice Tests: These tests assume that dial tone service has been installed. Connect to the network interface device at the demarcation point. Go off-hook and listen and receive a dial tone. If a test number is available, make and receive a local, long distance, and digital subscription line telephone call.
  - 2) Data Tests: These tests assume the Information Technology Staff has a network installed and is available to assist with testing. Connect to the network interface device at the demarcation point. Log onto the network to ensure proper connection to the network.
2. Document data for each measurement. Data for submittals shall be printed in a summary report that is formatted similar to Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM, or transferred from the instrument to the computer, saved as text files, and printed and submitted.
3. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
4. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 26 05 19 16e



**SECTION 26 05 19 16f - CONDUCTORS AND CABLES FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for conductors and cables for electronic safety and security. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. UTP cabling.
  - b. 50/125 and 62.5/125-micrometer, multimode optical fiber cabling.
  - c. Coaxial cabling.
  - d. RS-232 cabling.
  - e. RS-485 cabling.
  - f. Low-voltage control cabling.
  - g. Control-circuit conductors.
  - h. Fire alarm wire and cable.
  - i. Identification products.

## C. Definitions

1. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.
2. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
3. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.
4. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control and signaling power-limited circuits.
5. Open Cabling: Passing telecommunications cabling through open space (e.g., between the studs of a wall cavity).
6. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.

## D. Performance Requirements

1. Seismic Performance: Pathways shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

## E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
  - a. For coaxial cable, include the following installation data for each type used:
    - 1) Nominal OD.
    - 2) Minimum bending radius.
    - 3) Maximum pulling tension.
2. Shop Drawings: Cable tray layout, showing cable tray route to scale, with relationship between the tray and adjacent structural, electrical, and mechanical elements. Include the following:
  - a. Vertical and horizontal offsets and transitions.
  - b. Clearances for access above and to side of cable trays.
  - c. Vertical elevation of cable trays above the floor or bottom of ceiling structure.
3. Qualification Data: For qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
4. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For pathways, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.



- a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  - b. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  - c. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
5. Source quality-control reports.
  6. Field quality-control reports.
  7. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wire and cable to include in operation and maintenance manuals. Include the following:
    - a. Allowable pulling tension of cable.
    - b. Cable connectors and terminations recommended by the manufacturer.

#### F. Quality Assurance

1. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL.
  - a. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD **OR** possess the standards and experience for membership, **as directed**, to supervise on-site testing.
2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
  - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 **OR** 450, **as directed**, or less.
3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

#### G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.
  - a. Test optical fiber cable to determine the continuity of the strand end to end. Use optical-fiber flashlight or optical loss test set.
  - b. Test optical fiber cable on reels. Use an optical time domain reflectometer to verify the cable length and locate cable defects, splices, and connector; include the loss value of each. Retain test data and include the record in maintenance data.
  - c. Test each pair of UTP cable for open and short circuits.

#### H. Project Conditions

1. Do not install conductors and cables that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
  - a. Indications that wire and cables are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration and sagging of factory packing materials.
2. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install UTP, optical fiber, and coaxial cables and connecting materials until wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Pathways

1. Support of Open Cabling: NRTL labeled for support of Category 5e **OR** Category 6, **OR** Category 6e **as directed**, cabling, designed to prevent degradation of cable performance and pinch points that could damage cable.
  - a. Support brackets with cable tie slots for fastening cable ties to brackets.
  - b. Lacing bars, spools, J-hooks, and D-rings.
  - c. Straps and other devices.
2. Cable Trays:



- a. Cable Tray Materials: Metal, suitable for indoors, and protected against corrosion by electroplated zinc galvanizing, complying with ASTM B 633, Type 1, not less than 0.000472 inch (0.012 mm) thick **OR** hot-dip galvanizing, complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M Grade 0.55, not less than 0.002165 inch (0.055 mm) thick, **as directed**.
    - 1) Basket Cable Trays: 6 inches (150 mm) wide and 2 inches (50 mm) deep, **as directed**. Wire mesh spacing shall not exceed 2 by 4 inches (50 by 100 mm).
    - 2) Trough Cable Trays: Nominally 6 inches (150 mm), **as directed**, wide.
    - 3) Ladder Cable Trays: Nominally 18 inches (455 mm), **as directed**, wide, and a rung spacing of 12 inches (305 mm), **as directed**.
    - 4) Channel Cable Trays: One-piece construction, nominally 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, wide. Slot spacing shall not exceed 4-1/2 inches (115 mm) o.c.
    - 5) Solid-Bottom Cable Trays: One-piece construction, nominally 12 inches (305 mm), **as directed**, wide. Provide with **OR** without, **as directed**, solid covers.
  3. Conduit and Boxes: Comply with requirements in Division 16 Section "Raceways and Boxes." Flexible metal conduit shall not be used, **as directed**.
  4. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches (50 mm) wide, 3 inches (75 mm) high, and 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) deep.
- B. Backboards
1. Backboards: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, **as directed**, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches (19 by 1220 by 2440 mm). Comply with requirements for plywood backing panels in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry".
- C. UTP Cable
1. Description: 100-ohm, 4-pair UTP, covered with a blue thermoplastic jacket.
    - a. Comply with ICEA S-90-661 for mechanical properties.
    - b. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1 for performance specifications.
    - c. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, Category 5e **OR** Category 6, **OR** Category 6e **as directed**.
    - d. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444 and NFPA 70 for the following types:
      - 1) Communications, General Purpose: Type CM or CMG; **OR** MPP, CMP, MPR, CMR, MP, or MPG, **as directed**.
      - 2) Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CMP **OR** MPP, **as directed**, complying with NFPA 262.
      - 3) Communications, Riser Rated: Type CMR; **OR** MPP, CMP, or MPR, **as directed**, complying with UL 1666.
      - 4) Communications, Limited Purpose: Type CMX; **OR** MPP, CMP, MPR, CMR, MP, MPG, CM, or CMG, **as directed**.
      - 5) Multipurpose: Type MP or MPG; **OR** MPP or MPR, **as directed**.
      - 6) Multipurpose, Plenum Rated: Type MPP, complying with NFPA 262.
      - 7) Multipurpose, Riser Rated: Type MPR **OR** MPP, **as directed**, complying with UL 1666.
- D. UTP Cable Hardware
1. UTP Cable Connecting Hardware: IDC type, using modules designed for punch-down caps or tools. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of the same category or higher.
  2. Connecting Blocks: 110-style for Category 5e **OR** 110-style for Category 6 **OR** 66-style for Category 5e, **OR** 110-style for Category 6e **as directed**. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25, **as directed**, percent spare. Integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.
- E. Optical Fiber Cable
1. Description: Multimode, 50/125 **OR** 62.5/125, **as directed**,-micrometer, 24-fiber, **as directed**, nonconductive, **as directed**, tight buffer, optical fiber cable.



- a. Comply with ICEA S-83-596 for indoor cable OR ICEA S-87-640 for outside plant, as directed, for mechanical properties.
  - b. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3 for performance specifications.
  - c. Comply with TIA-492AAAB **OR** TIA-492AAAA-A, **as directed**, for detailed specifications.
  - d. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444, UL 1651, and NFPA 70 for the following types:
    - 1) General Purpose, Nonconductive: Type OFN or OFNG, **OR** OFNR, OFNP, **as directed**.
    - 2) Plenum Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP, complying with NFPA 262.
    - 3) Riser Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNR or OFNP, complying with UL 1666.
    - 4) General Purpose, Conductive: Type OFC or OFCG; **OR** OFNG, OFN, OFCR, OFNR, OFCP, or OFNP, **as directed**.
    - 5) Plenum Rated, Conductive: Type OFCP or OFNP, complying with NFPA 262.
    - 6) Riser Rated, Conductive: Type OFCR; or OFNR, OFCP, or OFNP, **asa directed**, complying with UL 1666.
  - e. Conductive cable shall be steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, armored type.
  - f. Maximum Attenuation: 3.50 dB/km at 850 nm; 1.5 dB/km at 1300 nm.
  - g. Minimum Modal Bandwidth: 160 MHz-km at 850 nm; 500 MHz-km at 1300 nm.
2. Jacket:
- a. Jacket Color: Aqua for 50/125-micrometer cable **OR** Orange for 62.5/125-micrometer cable, **as directed**.
  - b. Cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color shall be according to TIA-598-C.
  - c. Imprinted with fiber count, fiber type, and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inches (1000 mm).

#### F. Optical Fiber Cable Hardware

1. Cable Connecting Hardware: Meet the Optical Fiber Connector Intermateability Standards (FOCIS) specifications of TIA-604-2-B, TIA-604-3-B, and TIA/EIA-604-12. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
  - a. Quick-connect, simplex and duplex, Type SC **OR** Type ST **OR** Type LC **OR** Type MT-RJ, **as directed**, connectors. Insertion loss not more than 0.75 dB.
  - b. Type SFF connectors may be used in termination racks, panels, and equipment packages.

#### G. Coaxial Cable

1. General Coaxial Cable Requirements: Broadband type, recommended by cable manufacturer specifically for broadband data transmission applications. Coaxial cable and accessories shall have 75-ohm nominal impedance with a return loss of 20 dB maximum from 7 to 806 MHz.
2. RG-11/U: NFPA 70, Type CATV.
  - a. No. 14 AWG, solid, copper-covered steel conductor.
  - b. Gas-injected, foam-PE insulation.
  - c. Double shielded with 100 percent aluminum polyester tape and 60 percent aluminum braid.
  - d. Jacketed with sunlight-resistant, black PVC or PE.
  - e. Suitable for outdoor installations in ambient temperatures ranging from minus 40 to plus 85 deg C.
3. RG59/U: NFPA 70, Type CATVR.
  - a. No. 20 AWG, solid, silver-plated, copper-covered steel conductor.
  - b. Gas-injected, foam-PE insulation.
  - c. Triple shielded with 100 percent aluminum polyester tape and 95 percent aluminum braid; covered by aluminum foil with grounding strip.
  - d. Color-coded PVC jacket.
4. RG-6/U: NFPA 70, Type CATV or CM.
  - a. No. 16 AWG, solid, copper-covered steel conductor; gas-injected, foam-PE insulation.
  - b. Double shielded with 100 percent aluminum-foil shield and 60 percent aluminum braid.
  - c. Jacketed with black PVC or PE.



- d. Suitable for indoor installations.
  5. RG59/U: NFPA 70, Type CATV.
    - a. No. 20 AWG, solid, copper-covered steel conductor; gas-injected, foam-PE insulation.
    - b. Double shielded with 100 percent aluminum polyester tape and 40 percent aluminum braid.
    - c. PVC jacket.
  6. RG59/U (Plenum Rated): NFPA 70, Type CMP.
    - a. No. 20 AWG, solid, copper-covered steel conductor; foam fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
    - b. Double shielded with 100 percent aluminum-foil shield and 65 percent aluminum braid.
    - c. Copolymer jacket.
  7. NFPA and UL Compliance: Coaxial cables shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 1655, and with NFPA 70 "Radio and Television Equipment" and "Community Antenna Television and Radio Distribution" Articles. Types are as follows:
    - a. CATV Cable: Type CATV, **OR** CATVP or CATVR, **as directed**.
    - b. CATV Plenum Rated: Type CATVP, complying with NFPA 262.
    - c. CATV Riser Rated: Type CATVR; **OR** CATVP, CATVR, or CATV, **as directed**, complying with UL 1666.
    - d. CATV Limited Rating: Type CATVX.
- H. Coaxial Cable Hardware
1. Coaxial-Cable Connectors: Type BNC, 75 ohms.
- I. RS-232 Cable
1. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CM.
    - a. Paired, 2 pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
    - b. Polypropylene insulation.
    - c. Individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage.
    - d. PVC jacket.
    - e. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned copper drain wire.
    - f. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.
  2. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
    - a. Paired, 2 pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
    - b. Plastic insulation.
    - c. Individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage.
    - d. Plastic jacket.
    - e. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned copper drain wire.
    - f. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.
- J. RS-485 Cable
1. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CM **OR** CMG, **as directed**.
    - a. Paired, 2 pairs, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
    - b. PVC insulation.
    - c. Unshielded.
    - d. PVC jacket.
    - e. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.
  2. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
    - a. Paired, 2 pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
    - b. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
    - c. Unshielded.
    - d. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
    - e. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262, Flame Test.
- K. Low-Voltage Control Cable



1. Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.
    - a. 1 pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) and No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned copper conductors.
    - b. PVC insulation.
    - c. Unshielded.
    - d. PVC jacket.
    - e. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.
  2. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
    - a. 1 pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) and No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned copper conductors.
    - b. PVC insulation.
    - c. Unshielded.
    - d. PVC jacket.
    - e. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.
- L. Control-Circuit Conductors
1. Class 1 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN-THWN, complying with UL 83, in raceway **OR** Type XHHN, complying with UL 44, in raceway, **as directed**.
  2. Class 2 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN-THWN, complying with UL 83, in raceway **OR** power-limited cable, complying with UL 83, concealed in building finishes **OR** power-limited tray cable, complying with UL 83, in cable tray **OR** Type XHHN, complying with UL 44, in raceway, **as directed**.
  3. Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits: Stranded copper, Type TW or TF, complying with UL 83.
- M. Fire Alarm Wire And Cable
1. General Wire and Cable Requirements: NRTL listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, Article 760.
  2. Signaling Line Circuits: Twisted, shielded pair, not less than **OR** No. 18 AWG **OR** size as recommended by system manufacturer, **as directed**.
    - a. Circuit Integrity Cable: Twisted shielded pair, NFPA 70, Article 760, Classification CI, for power-limited fire alarm signal service Type FPL. NRTL listed and labeled as complying with UL 1424 and UL 2196 for a 2-hour rating.
  3. Non-Power-Limited Circuits: Solid-copper conductors with 600-V rated, 75 deg C, color-coded insulation.
    - a. Low-Voltage Circuits: No. 16 AWG, minimum.
    - b. Line-Voltage Circuits: No. 12 AWG, minimum.
    - c. Multiconductor Armored Cable: NFPA 70, Type MC, copper conductors, Type TFN/THHN conductor insulation, copper drain wire, copper armor with outer jacket, **as directed**, with red identifier stripe, NRTL listed for fire alarm and cable tray installation, plenum rated, and complying with requirements in UL 2196 for a 2-hour rating.
- N. Identification Products
1. Comply with UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.
  2. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
- O. Source Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.
  2. Factory test UTP and optical fiber cables on reels according to TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
  3. Factory test UTP cables according to TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
  4. Factory test multimode optical fiber cables according to TIA-526-14-A and TIA/EIA-568-B.3.



5. Factory sweep test coaxial cables at frequencies from 5 MHz to 1 GHz. Sweep test shall test the frequency response, or attenuation over frequency, of a cable by generating a voltage whose frequency is varied through the specified frequency range and graphing the results.
6. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
7. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation Of Pathways

1. Cable Trays: Comply with NEMA VE 2 and TIA-569-B.
2. Comply with TIA-569-B for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
3. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems" for installation of conduits and wireways.
4. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows whenever possible.
5. Pathway Installation in Equipment Rooms:
  - a. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard where a single piece of plywood is installed or in the corner of room where multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of room.
  - b. Install cable trays to route cables if conduits cannot be located in these positions.
  - c. Secure conduits to backboard when entering room from overhead.
  - d. Extend conduits 3 inches (75 mm) above finished floor.
  - e. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.
6. Backboards: Install backboards with 96-inch (2440-mm) dimension vertical. Butt adjacent sheets tightly, and form smooth gap-free corners and joints.

#### B. Installation Of Hangers And Supports

1. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems" for installation of supports for pathways, conductors and cables.

#### C. Wiring Method

1. Install wiring in metal raceways and wireways. Conceal raceway except in unfinished spaces and as indicated. Minimum conduit size shall be 3/4 inch (21 mm). Control and data transmission wiring shall not share conduit with other building wiring systems.
2. Install wiring in raceways except in accessible indoor ceiling spaces and in interior hollow gypsum board partitions where cable may be used. Conceal raceways and wiring except in unfinished spaces and as indicated. Minimum conduit size shall be 3/4 inch (21 mm). Control and data transmission wiring shall not share conduit with other building wiring systems.
3. Install cable, concealed in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors when possible.
4. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points. Use lacing bars and distribution spools. Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended in writing by manufacturer. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of enclosure. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with intrusion system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal according to system's wiring diagrams. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.

#### D. Installation Of Conductors And Cables

1. Comply with NECA 1.
2. Conductors: Size according to system manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
3. General Requirements for Cabling:
  - a. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
  - b. Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 6, "Cable Termination Practices."



- c. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels.
  - d. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
  - e. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
  - f. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
  - g. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
  - h. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.
4. UTP Cable Installation: Install using techniques, practices, and methods that are consistent with Category 5e **OR** Category 6, **OR** Category 6e **as directed**, rating of components and that ensure Category 5e **OR** Category 6, **OR** Category 6e **as directed**, performance of completed and linked signal paths, end to end.
    - a. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
    - b. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated.
    - c. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.
  5. Optical Fiber Cable Installation:
    - a. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
    - b. Cable shall be terminated on connecting hardware that is rack or cabinet mounted.
  6. Outdoor Coaxial Cable Installation:
    - a. Install outdoor connections in enclosures complying with NEMA 250, Type 4X. Install corrosion-resistant connectors with properly designed O-rings to keep out moisture.
    - b. Attach antenna lead-in cable to support structure at intervals not exceeding 36 inches (915 mm).
  7. Open-Cable Installation:
    - a. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
    - b. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above ceilings by cable supports not more than 60 inches (1525 mm) apart.
    - c. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.
  8. Installation of Cable Routed Exposed under Raised Floors:
    - a. Install plenum-rated cable only.
    - b. Install cabling after the flooring system has been installed in raised floor areas.
    - c. Coil cable 72 inches (1830 mm) long shall be neatly coiled not less than 12 inches (300 mm) in diameter below each feed point.
  9. Separation from EMI Sources:
    - a. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA-569-B recommendations for separating unshielded copper voice and data communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
    - b. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
      - 1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).
      - 2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
      - 3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches (600 mm).





- c. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
    - 1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).
    - 2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
    - 3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
  - d. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
    - 1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
    - 2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches (75 mm).
    - 3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
  - e. Separation between Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches (1200 mm).
  - f. Separation between Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).
- E. Fire Alarm Wiring Installation
1. Comply with NECA 1 and NFPA 72.
  2. Wiring Method: Install wiring in metal raceway according to Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems".
    - a. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
    - b. Fire alarm circuits and equipment control wiring associated with the fire alarm system shall be installed in a dedicated raceway system. This system shall not be used for any other wire or cable.
  3. Wiring Method:
    - a. Cables and raceways used for fire alarm circuits, and equipment control wiring associated with the fire alarm system, may not contain any other wire or cable.
    - b. Fire-Rated Cables: Use of 2-hour, fire-rated fire alarm cables, NFPA 70, Types MI and CI, is **OR** is not, **as directed**, permitted.
    - c. Signaling Line Circuits: Power-limited fire alarm cables may **OR** shall not, **as directed**, be installed in the same cable or raceway as signaling line circuits.
  4. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended by manufacturer. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of the enclosure. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with the fire alarm system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal according to the system's wiring diagrams. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.
  5. Cable Taps: Use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes, cabinets, or equipment enclosures where circuit connections are made.
  6. Color-Coding: Color-code fire alarm conductors differently from the normal building power wiring. Use one color-code for alarm circuit wiring and another for supervisory circuits. Color-code audible alarm-indicating circuits differently from alarm-initiating circuits. Use different colors for visible alarm-indicating devices. Paint fire alarm system junction boxes and covers red.
  7. Risers: Install at least two vertical cable risers to serve the fire alarm system. Separate risers in close proximity to each other with a minimum one-hour-rated wall, so the loss of one riser does not prevent the receipt or transmission of signals from other floors or zones.
  8. Wiring to Remote Alarm Transmitting Device: 1-inch (25-mm) conduit between the fire alarm control panel and the transmitter. Install number of conductors and electrical supervision for connecting wiring as needed to suit monitoring function.
- F. Power And Control-Circuit Conductors
1. 120-V Power Wiring: Install according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables" unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Minimum Conductor Sizes:
    - a. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits, No. 14 AWG.



- b. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control and signal circuits, No. 16 AWG.
- c. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm and signal circuits, No. 12 AWG.

G. Connections

1. Comply with requirements in Division 28 Section "Perimeter Security Systems" for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.
2. Comply with requirements in Division 28 Section "Intrusion Detection" for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.
3. Comply with requirements in Division 28 Section "Access Control" for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.
4. Comply with requirements in Division 28 Section "Video Surveillance" for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.
5. Comply with requirements in Division 28 Section "Plc Electronic Detention Monitoring And Control Systems" for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.
6. Comply with requirements in Division 28 Section(s) "Digital, Addressable Fire-alarm System" OR "Zoned (dc Loop) Fire-alarm System", **as directed**, for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.
7. Comply with requirements in Division 28 Section "Refrigerant Detection And Alarm" for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.

H. Firestopping

1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
2. Comply with TIA-569-B, "Firestopping" Annex A.
3. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping Systems" Article.

I. Grounding

1. For communications wiring, comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A and with BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.
2. For low-voltage wiring and cabling, comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".

J. Identification

1. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA/EIA-606-A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".

K. Field Quality Control

1. Perform tests and inspections.
2. Tests and Inspections:
  - a. Visually inspect UTP and optical fiber cable jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations to confirm color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections to confirm compliance with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
  - b. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
  - c. Test UTP cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not cross connection.
    - 1) Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
  - d. Optical Fiber Cable Tests:



- 1) Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.1. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
- 2) Link End-to-End Attenuation Tests:
  - a) Multimode Link Measurements: Test at 850 or 1300 nm in 1 direction according to TIA-526-14-A, Method B, One Reference Jumper.
  - b) Attenuation test results for links shall be less than 2.0 dB. Attenuation test results shall be less than that calculated according to equation in TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
- e. Coaxial Cable Tests: Comply with requirements in Division 27 Section "Master Antenna Television System".
3. Document data for each measurement. Print data for submittals in a summary report that is formatted using Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM as a guide, or transfer the data from the instrument to the computer, save as text files, print, and submit.
4. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
5. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 26 05 19 16f



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
26 05 19 16	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
26 05 19 16	26 05 00 00	Common Work Results for Electrical
26 05 19 16	01 51 13 00	Electrical Renovation
26 05 19 16	26 05 13 16	Conductors And Cables
26 05 19 16	26 05 13 16a	Undercarpet Cables
26 05 19 16	26 05 13 16b	Medium-Voltage Cables
26 05 23 00	26 05 19 16b	Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 26 05 26 00 - LIGHTNING PROTECTION

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for lightning protection. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section includes lightning protection for structures, structure elements and building site components.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: For air terminals and mounting accessories.
  - a. Layout of the lightning protection system, along with details of the components to be used in the installation.
  - b. Include indications for use of raceway, data on how concealment requirements will be met, and calculations required by NFPA 780 for bonding of grounded and isolated metal bodies.
3. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and manufacturer. Include data on listing or certification by UL.
4. Certification, signed by Contractor, that roof adhesive is approved by manufacturer of roofing material.
5. Field quality-control reports.
6. Comply with recommendations in NFPA 780, Annex D, "Inspection and Maintenance of Lightning Protection Systems," for maintenance of the lightning protection system.
7. Other Informational Submittals: Plans showing dimensioned as-built locations of grounding features, including the following:
  - a. Ground rods.
  - b. Ground loop conductor.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications: Certified by UL or LPI as a Master Installer/Designer, trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
2. System Certificate:
  - a. UL Master Label.  
**OR**  
LPI System Certificate.  
**OR**  
UL Master Label Recertification.
3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 780, "Definitions" Article.

#### E. Coordination

1. Coordinate installation of lightning protection with installation of other building systems and components, including electrical wiring, supporting structures and building materials, metal bodies requiring bonding to lightning protection components, and building finishes.
2. Coordinate installation of air terminals attached to roof systems with roofing manufacturer and Installer.
3. Flashings of through-roof assemblies shall comply with roofing manufacturers' specifications.



## 1.2 PRODUCTS

- A. Lightning Protection System Components
1. Comply with UL 96 and NFPA 780, **as directed**.
  2. Roof-Mounted Air Terminals: NFPA 780, Class I **OR** Class II, **as directed**, aluminum **OR** copper, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Air Terminals More than 24 Inches (600 mm) Long: With brace attached to the terminal at not less than half the height of the terminal.
    - b. Single-Membrane, Roof-Mounted Air Terminals: Designed specifically for single-membrane roof system materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07.
  3. Main and Bonding Conductors: Copper **OR** Aluminum, **as directed**.
  4. Ground Loop Conductor: The same size and type as the main conductor except tinned.
  5. Ground Rods: Copper-clad **OR** Zinc-coated **OR** Stainless, **as directed**, steel, sectional type, **as directed**; 3/4 inch (19 mm) in diameter by 10 feet (3 m) **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm) in diameter by 96 inches (2400 mm), **as directed**, long.
  6. Heavy-Duty, Stack-Mounted, Lightning Protection Components: Stainless steel **OR** Solid copper **OR** Monel metal **OR** Lead sheathed, **as directed**.

## 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Installation
1. Install lightning protection components and systems according to UL 96A and NFPA 780.
  2. Install conductors with direct paths from air terminals to ground connections. Avoid sharp bends.
  3. Conceal the following conductors:
    - a. System conductors.
    - b. Down conductors.
    - c. Interior conductors.
    - d. Conductors within normal view of exterior locations at grade within 200 feet (60 m) of building.
  4. Cable Connections: Use crimped or bolted connections for all conductor splices and connections between conductors and other components. Use exothermic-welded connections in underground portions of the system.  
**OR**  
Cable Connections: Use exothermic-welded connections for all conductor splices and connections between conductors and other components.
    - a. Exception: In single-ply membrane roofing, exothermic-welded connections may be used only below the roof level.
  5. Air Terminals on Single-Ply Membrane Roofing: Comply with roofing membrane and adhesive manufacturer's written instructions.
  6. Bond extremities of vertical metal bodies exceeding 60 feet (18 m) in length to lightning protection components.
  7. Ground Loop: Install ground-level, potential equalization conductor and extend around the perimeter of structure **OR** area or item indicated, **as directed**.
    - a. Bury ground ring not less than 24 inches (600 mm) from building foundation.
    - b. Bond ground terminals to the ground loop.
    - c. Bond grounded building systems to the ground loop conductor within 12 feet (3.6 m) of grade level.
  8. Bond lightning protection components with intermediate-level interconnection loop conductors to grounded metal bodies of building at 60-foot (18-m) intervals.
- B. Corrosion Protection
1. Do not combine materials that can form an electrolytic couple that will accelerate corrosion in the presence of moisture unless moisture is permanently excluded from junction of such materials.





- 
2. Use conductors with protective coatings where conditions cause deterioration or corrosion of conductors.
- C. Field Quality Control
1. Notify the Owner at least 48 hours in advance of inspection before concealing lightning protection components.
  2. UL Inspection: Meet requirements to obtain a UL Master Label for system.  
**OR**  
LPI System Inspection: Meet requirements to obtain an LPI System Certificate.

END OF SECTION 26 05 26 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 26 05 26 00a - GROUNDING AND BONDING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for grounding and bonding. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes methods and materials for grounding systems and equipment, plus the following special applications, **as directed**:
  - a. Overhead-lines grounding.
  - b. Underground distribution grounding.
  - c. Common ground bonding with lightning protection system.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Informational Submittals: Plans showing dimensioned as-built locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
  - a. Test wells.
  - b. Ground rods.
  - c. Ground rings.
  - d. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
  - e. Grounding for sensitive electronic equipment.
3. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.
4. Field quality-control test reports.
5. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation And Maintenance Data", include the following:
  - a. Instructions for periodic testing and inspection of grounding features at test wells **OR** ground rings **OR** grounding connections for separately derived systems, **as directed** based on NETA MTS **OR** NFPA 70B, **as directed**.
    - 1) Tests shall determine if ground-resistance or impedance values remain within specified maximums, and instructions shall recommend corrective action if values do not.
    - 2) Include recommended testing intervals.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL **OR** one who meets the requirements necessary for certification, **as directed**.
  - a. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA **OR** one who meets the requirements necessary for certification, **as directed**, to supervise on-site testing.
2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
3. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Conductors

1. Insulated Conductors: Copper **OR** Tinned-copper, **as directed**, wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.



2. Bare Copper Conductors:
  - a. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
  - b. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
  - c. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
  - d. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
  - e. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
  - f. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
  - g. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
3. Bare Grounding Conductor and Conductor Protector for Wood Poles:
  - a. No. 4 AWG minimum, soft-drawn copper.
  - b. Conductor Protector: Half-round PVC or wood molding. If wood, use pressure-treated fir or cypress or cedar.
4. Grounding Bus: Predrilled rectangular bars of annealed copper, 1/4 by 2 inches (6 by 50 mm), **as directed**, in cross section, with 9/32-inch (7.14-mm) holes spaced 1-1/8 inches (28 mm) apart. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall comply with UL 891 for use in switchboards, 600 V. Lexan or PVC, impulse tested at 5000 V.

#### B. Connectors

1. Listed and labeled by a nationally recognized testing laboratory acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used, and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
2. Bolted Connectors for Conductors and Pipes: Copper or copper alloy, bolted pressure-type, with at least two bolts.
  - a. Pipe Connectors: Clamp type, sized for pipe.
3. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.
4. Bus-bar Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless compression **OR** exothermic-type wire terminals, **as directed**, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.

#### C. Grounding Electrodes

1. Ground Rods: Copper-clad **OR** Zinc-coated **OR** Stainless, **as directed**, steel, sectional type, **as directed**; 3/4 inch by 10 feet (19 mm by 3 m) **OR** 5/8 by 96 inches (16 by 2400 mm), **as directed**, in diameter.
2. Chemical-Enhanced Grounding Electrodes: Copper tube, straight or L-shaped, charged with nonhazardous electrolytic chemical salts.
  - a. Termination: Factory-attached No. 4/0 AWG bare conductor at least 48 inches (1200 mm) long.
  - b. Backfill Material: Electrode manufacturer's recommended material.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Applications

1. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare copper **OR** tinned-copper, **as directed**, conductor, No. 2/0 AWG minimum. Bury at least 24 inches (600 mm) below grade.
  - a. Bury at least 24 inches (600 mm) below grade.
  - b. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury 12 inches (300 mm) above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.



3. Isolated Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation with continuous yellow stripe. On feeders with isolated ground, identify grounding conductor where visible to normal inspection, with alternating bands of green and yellow tape, with at least three bands of green and two bands of yellow.
  4. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical and telephone equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
    - a. Install bus on insulated spacers 1 inch (25 mm), minimum, from wall 6 inches (150 mm) above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, down to specified height above floor, and connect to horizontal bus.
  5. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
    - a. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
    - b. Underground Connections: Welded connectors, except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
    - c. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
    - d. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.
- B. Grounding Overhead Lines
1. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.
  2. Install 2 parallel ground rods if resistance to ground by a single, ground-rod electrode exceeds 25 ohms.
  3. Drive ground rods until tops are 12 inches (300 mm) below finished grade in undisturbed earth.
  4. Ground-Rod Connections: Install bolted connectors for underground connections and connections to rods.
  5. Lightning Arrester Grounding Conductors: Separate from other grounding conductors.
  6. Secondary Neutral and Transformer Enclosure: Interconnect and connect to grounding conductor.
  7. Protect grounding conductors running on surface of wood poles with molding extended from grade level up to and through communication service and transformer spaces.
- C. Grounding Underground Distribution System Components
1. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.
  2. Grounding Manholes and Handholes: Install a driven ground rod through manhole or handhole floor, close to wall, and set rod depth so 4 inches (100 mm) will extend above finished floor. If necessary, install ground rod before manhole is placed and provide No. 1/0 AWG bare, tinned-copper conductor from ground rod into manhole through a waterproof sleeve in manhole wall. Protect ground rods passing through concrete floor with a double wrapping of pressure-sensitive insulating tape or heat-shrunk insulating sleeve from 2 inches (50 mm) above to 6 inches (150 mm) below concrete. Seal floor opening with waterproof, nonshrink grout.
  3. Grounding Connections to Manhole Components: Bond exposed-metal parts such as inserts, cable racks, pulling irons, ladders, and cable shields within each manhole or handhole, to ground rod or grounding conductor. Make connections with No. 4 AWG minimum, stranded, hard-drawn copper bonding conductor. Train conductors level or plumb around corners and fasten to manhole walls. Connect to cable armor and cable shields as recommended by manufacturer of splicing and termination kits.
  4. Pad-Mounted Transformers and Switches: Install two ground rods and ground ring around the pad. Ground pad-mounted equipment and noncurrent-carrying metal items associated with substations by connecting them to underground cable and grounding electrodes. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2 AWG for ground ring and for taps to equipment grounding terminals. Bury ground ring not less than 6 inches (150 mm) from the foundation.
- D. Equipment Grounding
1. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.
  2. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:
    - a. Feeders and branch circuits.



- b. Lighting circuits.
  - c. Receptacle circuits.
  - d. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
  - e. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
  - f. Flexible raceway runs.
  - g. Armored and metal-clad cable runs.
  - h. Busway Supply Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor from grounding bus in the switchgear, switchboard, or distribution panel to equipment grounding bar terminal on busway.
  - i. Computer and Rack-Mounted Electronic Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor in branch-circuit runs from equipment-area power panels and power-distribution units.
  - j. X-Ray Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor in circuits supplying x-ray equipment.
3. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.
  4. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.
  5. Isolated Grounding Receptacle Circuits: Install an insulated equipment grounding conductor connected to the receptacle grounding terminal. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service, unless otherwise indicated.
  6. Isolated Equipment Enclosure Circuits: For designated equipment supplied by a branch circuit or feeder, isolate equipment enclosure from supply circuit raceway with a nonmetallic raceway fitting listed for the purpose. Install fitting where raceway enters enclosure, and install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service, unless otherwise indicated.
  7. Signal and Communication Equipment: For telephone, alarm, voice and data, and other communication equipment, provide No. 4 AWG minimum insulated grounding conductor in raceway from grounding electrode system to each service location, terminal cabinet, wiring closet, and central equipment location.
    - a. Service and Central Equipment Locations and Wiring Closets: Terminate grounding conductor on a 1/4-by-2-by-12-inch (6-by-50-by-300-mm) grounding bus.
    - b. Terminal Cabinets: Terminate grounding conductor on cabinet grounding terminal.
  8. Metal and Wood Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors.

#### E. Installation

1. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible, unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
2. Common Ground Bonding with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system grounding electrode conductor, and install in conduit.
3. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inches (50 mm) below finished floor or final grade, unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating, if any.



- b. For grounding electrode system, install at least three rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to the service grounding electrode conductor.
4. Test Wells: Ground rod driven through drilled hole in bottom of handhole. Handholes are specified in Division 26 Section "Underground Ducts And Raceways For Electrical Systems" and shall be at least 12 inches (300 mm) deep, with cover.
  - a. Test Wells: Install at least one test well for each service, unless otherwise indicated. Install at the ground rod electrically closest to service entrance. Set top of test well flush with finished grade or floor.
5. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance, except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
  - a. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
  - b. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
  - c. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations, but if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.
6. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
  - a. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes, using a bolted clamp connector or by bolting a lug-type connector to a pipe flange, using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
  - b. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
  - c. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.
7. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install tinned bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.
8. Grounding for Steel Building Structure: Install a driven ground rod at base of each corner column and at intermediate exterior columns at distances not more than 60 feet (18 m) apart.
9. Ground Ring: Install a grounding conductor, electrically connected to each building structure ground rod and to each steel column **OR** indicated item, **as directed**, extending around the perimeter of building **OR** area or item indicated, **as directed**.
  - a. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2/0 AWG for ground ring and for taps to building steel.
  - b. Bury ground ring not less than 24 inches (600 mm) from building foundation.
10. Ufer Ground (Concrete-Encased Grounding Electrode): Fabricate according to NFPA 70, using a minimum of 20 feet (6 m) of bare copper conductor not smaller than No. 4 AWG.
  - a. If concrete foundation is less than 20 feet (6 m) long, coil excess conductor within base of foundation.
  - b. Bond grounding conductor to reinforcing steel in at least four locations and to anchor bolts. Extend grounding conductor below grade and connect to building grounding grid or to grounding electrode external to concrete.

#### F. Labeling

1. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems" for instruction signs. The label or its text shall be green.
2. Install labels at the telecommunications bonding conductor and grounding equalizer and at the grounding electrode conductor where exposed.
  - a. Label Text: "If this connector or cable is loose or if it must be removed for any reason, notify the facility manager."



- G. Field Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
  2. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
    - b. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, and at ground test wells.
      - 1) Measure ground resistance not less than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
      - 2) Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
    - c. Prepare dimensioned drawings locating each test well, ground rod and ground rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location, and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.
  3. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:
    - a. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
    - b. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity 500 to 1000 kVA: 5 ohms.
    - c. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity More Than 1000 kVA: 3 ohms.
    - d. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: 1 **OR** 3, **as directed**, ohm(s).
    - e. Substations and Pad-Mounted Equipment: 5 ohms.
    - f. Manhole Grounds: 10 ohms.
  4. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify the Owner promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 26 05 26 00a





## SECTION 26 05 26 00b - OVERHEAD ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for overhead electrical distribution. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Conductors, connectors, and splices.
  - b. Poles and crossarms.
  - c. Hardware and accessories.
  - d. Surge arresters.
  - e. Cutouts, switches, and fuses.
  - f. Pole-mounted distribution transformers.
  - g. Primary metering equipment.

#### C. Definitions

1. BIL: Basic impulse level, stated in kilovolts.
2. RUS: Department of Agriculture, Rural Utilities Service.
3. Sag: The distance measured vertically from a conductor to the straight line joining its two points of support, measured at the midpoint of the span, unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Final Sag: The sag of a conductor under specified conditions of loading and temperature applied after it has been subjected, for an appreciable period, to the loading prescribed for the loading district in which it is situated, or equivalent loading, and the loading removed. Final sag includes the effect of inelastic deformation (creep).
  - b. Initial Unloaded Sag: The sag of a conductor before the application of an external load.
4. Secondary: Conductors and components for circuits operating at the utilization voltage of 600 V or less.
5. Service: Set of insulated conductors extending from a pole to the metering point or service entrance connection at the location of utilization of electricity.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Qualification Data: For qualified manufacturer **OR** testing agency, **as directed**.
3. Material Certificates: For the following items, from manufacturers:
  - a. Wood poles.
  - b. Concrete poles.
  - c. Wood crossarms.
4. Listing Documentation: Indicate that products comply with RUS listing requirements specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
  - a. Time-Current Coordination Curves: Illustrate optimum coordination of protective devices involved in the Work of this Section.
  - b. Source quality-control test reports.
5. Field quality-control reports.
6. Operation and Maintenance Data: For switches **OR** transformers, **as directed**, to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
7. Survey records for locations of pole, anchors, and other features for inclusion in Project Record Documents.



#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Concrete Pole Manufacturer Qualifications: Certified by PCI as a qualified manufacturer of concrete utility poles of type and size indicated for this Project.
2. Inspection Agency Qualifications for Pole and Crossarm Inspection: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified to conduct inspections indicated.
3. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.
4. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA or an NRTL.
5. Treatment Technician Qualifications for Field Treatment of Wood Poles and Crossarms: Certified by authorities having jurisdiction over environmental protection at the location of Project for field application of chemicals required.
6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
7. Overhead-Line Components, Devices, and Accessories: Currently listed in RUS Informational Publication 202-1 without restriction for the intended application.
8. Comply with IEEE C2 **OR** CPUC General Order 95, **as directed**, except where stricter requirements are indicated or where local requirements that are stricter apply.
9. Strength of Line and Line Components Selected by Contractor: Provide grades of construction and strength required by IEEE C2 for conditions encountered at Project site for heavy **OR** medium **OR** light, **as directed**, line loading unless otherwise indicated.

#### F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Wood Pole Storage and Handling: Comply with ATIS O5.1. Do not use pointed handling tools capable of producing indentations greater than 1 inch (25 mm).

#### G. Project Conditions

1. Interruption of Existing Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
  - a. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
  - b. Do not proceed with interruption of service without Owner's written permission.

#### H. Coordination

1. Coordinate with utility supplying electricity to lines specified in this Section, and make final connections **OR** arrangements for final connections by utility, **as directed**.
2. Coordinate with those responsible for voice **OR** data **OR** video, **as directed**, systems that will have cables supported by poles installed according to this Section.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Conductors, Connectors, And Splices

1. Conductor Type AAC: Bare **OR** Bare and covered, **as directed**, all-aluminum, Alloy 1350-H19, complying with ASTM B 230/B 230M and ASTM B 231/B 231M.  
**OR**  
Conductor Type AAAC: Bare **OR** Bare and covered, **as directed**, all-aluminum-alloy, Alloy 6201-T81, complying with ASTM B 398/B 398M and ASTM B 399/B 399M.  
**OR**  
Conductor Type ACSR: Bare **OR** Bare and covered, **as directed**, aluminum conductor, steel reinforced, complying with ASTM B 232/B 232M.  
**OR**  
Conductor Type CU: Bare **OR** Bare and covered, **as directed**, hard-drawn copper, complying with ASTM B 1 and ASTM B 8.
2. Conductor Covering: UV resistant, complying with ICEA-S-70-547. HDPE **OR** XLP, **as directed**, 150 mils (3.81 mm) thick.



3. Self-Supported, Multiconductor, Insulated Medium-Voltage Wiring: Factory-assembled, messenger-supported type, listed under UL 1072 as sunlight-resistant Type MV cable for cable tray use.
  - a. Conductors: Aluminum, Alloy 1350, complying with ASTM B 230/B 230M and ASTM B 231/B 231M **OR** Hard-drawn copper, complying with ASTM B 1 and ASTM B 8, **as directed**; stranded for No. 2 AWG and larger.
  - b. Conductor Insulation: XLP, complying with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 **OR** EPR, complying with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658, **as directed**.
  - c. Insulation Level: 100 **OR** 133, **as directed**, percent of rated circuit line-to-line voltage.
  - d. Conductor Shield: Extruded, nonconducting, thermoset material, complying with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658; 18-mil (0.046-mm) minimum thickness.
  - e. Insulation Shield: Include the following two components:
    - 1) Nonmetallic conducting, material complying with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 1072, extruded over, and free stripping from the insulation.
    - 2) Metallic Tape Shield: Bare copper, 5-mil (0.127-mm) minimum thickness, helically applied with a 15 percent minimum overlap.
  - f. Conductor Jacket: Extruded, chlorosulfonated-polyethylene-based material, complying with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658.
  - g. Messenger: Copper **OR** Composite copper and copper, **as directed**, -clad steel.
  - h. Conductor Support Strap: Copper strap, wound around conductors and messenger the full length of the cable.
4. Secondary-Voltage Line Conductors: Aluminum conductor, steel **reinforced**, complying with ASTM B 232/B 232M **OR** Covered aluminum conductor, steel reinforced, complying with ICEA S-70-547, with HDPE or XLP covering, **as directed**, 60 mils (1.52 mm) thick.

**OR**

Secondary-Voltage Line Conductors: Bare hard-drawn copper, complying with ASTM B 1 and ASTM B 8 **OR** Covered hard-drawn copper, complying with ICEA S-70-547, with HDPE or XLP covering, **as directed**, 60 mils (1.52 mm) thick. Neutral-supported, secondary service-drop cable, **as directed**.

**OR**

Racked Secondary Conductors, 600 V and Less: Copper, insulated with XLP, complying with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658, **as directed**.
5. Neutral-Supported, Secondary Service-Drop Cable, 600 V and Less: Insulated conductors with bare neutral, complying with ICEA S-76-474, and using the following combination of materials:
  - a. Conductors and Neutral: Copper with copper-clad-steel neutral **OR** Aluminum with bare Alloy 1350 aluminum neutral **OR** Aluminum with ACSR neutral, **as directed**.
  - b. Insulation: XLP, complying with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 **OR** High-modular-weight, low-density polyethylene **OR** Weather-resistant polyolefin, complying with ICEA S-70-547, **as directed**.
6. Connectors, Splices, and Conductor Securing and Protecting Components: Items include wire clamps, ties, conductor armor, fittings, connectors, and terminals. Listed for the specific applications and conductor types and combinations of materials used. Descriptions as follows for various applications:
  - a. Copper to Copper: Copper alloy, complying with UL 486A-486B.
  - b. Aluminum Composition to Aluminum Composition: Aluminum alloy, complying with UL 486A-486B.
  - c. Copper to Aluminum Composition: Type suitable for this purpose, complying with UL 486A-486B.
  - d. Connectors and Splices for Secondary Conductors: Listed and labeled for the conditions and materials involved in each application.
  - e. Taps for Medium-Voltage Line Conductors: Hot-line clamps, screw type, with concealed threads and bare, hard-drawn copper stirrups. Listed for the combination of materials being connected.
  - f. Splices under Tension: Compression type with strength exceeding the conductors spliced.



- g. Splices and Terminations for Covered Conductors: As recommended by conductor manufacturer for conductor and covering combination and for specific materials and physical arrangement of each splice.
  - h. Splices and Terminations for Insulated Medium-Voltage Conductors: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Medium-voltage Cables".
- B. Wood Poles
- 1. Comply with ATIS O5.1 and RUS Bulletin 1728F-700, for wood poles pressure treated with creosote **OR** pentachlorophenol, **as directed**, **OR** ammoniacal copper arsenate, **OR** ammoniacal copper zinc arsenate **OR** chromated copper arsenate, **as directed**.
  - 2. Wood Species: Douglas fir **OR** Lodgepole pine **OR** Western larch **OR** Southern yellow pine, **as directed**.
  - 3. Pole Marking:
    - a. Manufacturer's Mark: Comply with ATIS O5.1; locate 10 feet (3 m) from the pole butt for poles 50 feet (15 m) long or less.
    - b. Pole Number: Machine-embossed aluminum, alphanumeric characters not less than 2-1/2 inches (65 mm) high, with aluminum nails.
  - 4. Factory Operations: Machine trim poles by turning smooth, full length. Roof, gain, and bore poles before pressure treatment.
- C. Concrete Poles
- 1. Description: Spun-cast prestressed concrete, complying with requirements of ASTM C 1089.
    - a. Comply with requirements of RUS Bulletin 1724E-216.
  - 2. Design: Base design on calculation of strength required by IEEE C2 or indicated on Drawings, whichever is greater. Design shall be suitable for installation at a location where annual temperature range is between minus 4 deg F and plus 100 deg F (minus 20 deg C and plus 38 deg C). Include pole design for embedded attachments matching fittings, brackets, and other items installed in the field.
  - 3. Shaft: Hollow, for poles at overhead-to-underground connections. Provide 3-1/2-inch- (89-mm-) minimum cable raceway capacity, with conduit elbow **OR** cable entry port, **as directed**, at base.
  - 4. Water Absorption: Not more than 3 percent.
  - 5. Surface: Smooth, hard, nonporous, and resistant to soil acids **OR** road salts **OR** frost and freezing damage, **as directed**.
  - 6. Pole Marking:
    - a. Manufacturer's Mark: Comply with ATIS O5.1; locate 10 feet (3 m) from the pole butt for poles 50 feet (15 m) long or less.
    - b. Pole Number: Machine-embossed aluminum, alphanumeric characters not less than 2-1/2 inches (65 mm) high.
- D. Crossarms
- 1. Description: Solid-wood distribution type, complying with RUS Bulletin 1728H-701 for specified construction grade **OR** Galvanized, steel angles, **as directed**, and complying with IEEE C2 for required climbing space and wire clearances.
  - 2. Braces: Galvanized, flat, ferrous-metal units; 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick by 1-1/4 inches (30 mm) wide, minimum, with length to suit crossarm dimensions.
- E. Guys And Anchors
- 1. Guy Strand Assemblies: Cable and attachment assemblies shall have uniform minimum breaking strength of the cable.
  - 2. Cable: Seven strands. Zinc-coated steel, complying with ASTM A 475 **OR** Aluminum-clad steel, complying with ASTM B 416 **OR** Copper-clad steel, complying with ASTM B 228, **as directed**. Breaking strength shall be not less than 10,000 lb (45 kN).
  - 3. Cable Termination:
    - 1) Thimble eye.

**OR**



- 2) Hooks and guy strain plates, complying with IEEE C135.1.
  - 2) Preformed galvanized-steel guy grips, matching material, galvanizing, and strength of the guy strand assembly.
  4. Anchor and Anchor-Rod Assemblies: Hot-dip galvanized steel.
    - a. Power-installed screw-type anchors.
      - 1) 15-inch (380-mm) screw; with rod 96 inches (2400 mm) long by 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter. Rated at 10,000 lb (45 kN) when installed.
      - 2) Guy anchors shall have strength and holding area as required for anchor load and soil conditions at location of that anchor.
  5. Strain Insulators: Epoxy-bonded fiberglass of length to meet clearance requirements specified in "Guy Installation" Article.
  6. Guy Markers: Round, of vinyl or PVC material, white **OR** yellow, **as directed**, color, 96 inches (2440 mm) long. Shatter resistant at temperatures below 0 deg F (minus 18 deg C).
- F. Hardware And Accessories
1. Description: Ferrous-metal items include, but are not limited to, bolts, nuts, washers, crossarm gains and braces, insulator pins, anchor rods, anchors, eyebolts, staples, and transformer brackets.
    - a. Comply with IEEE C135.1, IEEE C135.2, ANSI C135.4, ANSI C135.22, and RUS Informational Publication 202-1 listings with the exception that base material shall be malleable iron or ductile iron, and finish shall be hot-dip galvanized, **as directed**.
  2. Insulator Brackets: Hot-dip galvanized steel, style as indicated, designed to hold vertical-post-type or pin-type insulators, with one **OR** two, **as directed**, -bolt attachment to pole.
  3. Secondary Insulator Racks: Hot-dip galvanized steel, style as indicated, with smooth, rounded 12-gage struts designed to support two **OR** three **OR** four, **as directed**, spool insulators for attachment of secondary drop conductors. Spool spacing of 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 8 inches (200 mm) **OR** 12 inches (300 mm), **as directed**.
  4. Pole Riser Shields: Galvanized steel with boot **OR** backplate **OR** vent, **as directed**.
  5. Padlocks: ASTM F 883.
    - a. Class: PO1 **OR** PO2, **as directed**.
    - b. Grade: 1 **OR** 2 **OR** 3 **OR** 4 **OR** 5 **OR** 6, **as directed**.
    - c. Option: A **OR** B **OR** C **OR** D **OR** E **OR** F **OR** G, **as directed**.
  6. Insulators: Units rated 6 kV and above shall be free from radio interference.
    - a. Porcelain insulators shall be wet-process type, complying with the following:
      - 1) Pin: ANSI C29.5.
      - 2) Line Post: ANSI C29.7. Include mounting stud of length suitable for each mounting arrangement used.
      - 3) Suspension: ANSI C29.2.
      - 4) Guy Strain: ANSI C29.4.
      - 5) Secondary Spool: ANSI C29.3, Class 53-2.
    - b. Polymer-composite, fiberglass-reinforced insulators shall comply with the following:
      - 1) Line Post: CEA LWIWG-02.
      - 2) Dead End/Suspension: CEA LWIWG-01.
      - 3) Guy Strain: Fiberglass reinforced, epoxy finished. Designed specifically for use in guy assemblies.
  7. Grounding Materials: Comply with Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems", using materials listed by RUS for the intended purpose without restriction.
    - a. Conductors: No. 4 AWG, minimum; bare, solid, annealed copper, complying with ASTM B 8 unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Ground Conductor Protectors: PVC or half-round wood molding, fir, pressure treated according to AWPAC 25 **OR** cypress **OR** cedar, **as directed**.
- G. Surge Arresters
1. Distribution-Class Surge Arresters: Porcelain **OR** Polymer, **as directed**, -enclosed, gapless, metal-oxide type with automatic-indicating type, ground-lead disconnection feature, **as directed**, complying with IEEE C62.11 and NEMA LA 1.



2. Intermediate-Class Surge Arresters: Porcelain **OR** Polymer, **as directed**,-enclosed, gapless, metal-oxide type, complying with IEEE C62.11 and NEMA LA 1.
  - a. Voltage Rating: 3 **OR** 6 **OR** 9 **OR** 10 **OR** 12 **OR** 15 **OR** 27 **OR** 30 **OR** 36, **as directed**, kV, at the altitude of Project, unless otherwise indicated.

#### H. Cutouts, Switches, And Fuses

1. Description: Medium-voltage disconnect, protective, and bypass, **as directed**, units shall be rated for the line-to-line voltage of the systems in which installed, unless higher ratings are indicated. BIL ratings are 45 **OR** 60 **OR** 75 **OR** 95 **OR** 150 **OR** 200, **as directed**, kV.
  - a. Momentary Current Rating of Switching Devices: 20 **OR** 40, **as directed**, kA, asymmetrical at nominal system operating voltage.
  - b. Fuse Characteristics: Time-current characteristics for each set of fuses selected according to written recommendations of manufacturer of component protected by the fuses and coordinated with upstream and downstream protective devices. Prepare time-current coordination curves according to IEEE 242 that illustrate optimum coordination of devices in this Project.
  - c. Interrupting Rating of Fuses: **<Insert value>** symmetrical A at nominal system operating voltage.
2. Fuse Cutouts: Open **OR** enclosed, **as directed**, type, rated 100 **OR** 200, **as directed**, A, continuous, complying with ANSI C37.42.
  - a. Fuses: Enclosed link, Type K **OR** Type T, **as directed**, complying with ANSI C37.42.
  - b. Fuse Current Rating: 150 percent of the transformer full-load current unless otherwise indicated.
  - c. Switching Application: Include switch link instead of fuse.
  - d. Switch Current Interrupting Rating: Transformer magnetizing current.
3. Fused Switches: Single-pole, manual units.
  - a. Switch Rating: 400 **OR** 600, **as directed**,-A rms continuous and load-current interrupting.
  - b. Fuses: Dropout-type power fuses.
4. Nonfused Switches: Single-pole, manual units, rated 100 **OR** 200 **OR** 400 **OR** 600, **as directed**, -A rms continuous.
5. Group-Operated, Load-Interrupter Switches: Fused **OR** Nonfused, **as directed**, three-pole, single-throw units, manually operated by handle through insulated mechanical linkage.
  - a. High-pressure contact type, complying with ANSI C37.32.
  - b. Factory assembled to suit specific configuration and mounting conditions for this Project.
  - c. Operating Handle: Padlock equipped.
  - d. Current Interrupting Rating: Equal to continuous current rating of switch.
  - e. Fuses: Nondropout power type.
6. Group-Operated, Air-Break (Nonloadbreak) Switches: Three-pole, single-throw units, manually operated by handle through insulated mechanical linkage.
  - a. Comply with ANSI C37.32.
  - b. Factory assembled to suit specific configuration and mounting conditions for this Project.
  - c. Operating Handle: Padlock equipped.
  - d. Suitable for field conversion to load-interrupter switch by adding interrupter modules.

#### I. Distribution Transformers

1. Description: Single-phase, two-winding, single **OR** two, **as directed**,-bushing, liquid-filled, self-cooled, pole-mounting distribution type, suitable for external fuse and surge suppressor protection; complying with IEEE C 57.12.00, and tested according to IEEE C 57.12.90 and with the following additional requirements, **as directed**:
  - a. Cooling Class: OA.
  - b. Temperature Rise: 65 deg C.
  - c. Insulating Liquid: Mineral oil, ASTM D 3487, Type II.  
**OR**  
Insulating Liquid: High molecular weight, mineral oil based, and UL listed as less-flammable type.

**OR**

Insulating Liquid: Biodegradable insulating and cooling liquid, UL listed as less flammable type.

- d. Identification: Label the transformer as "non-PCB" and place manufacturer's name and type of fluid on the nameplate.
2. BIL: 95 **OR** 75 **OR** 60, **as directed**, kV.
3. Taps: Two, 2.5 percent above and below **OR** Four, 2.5 percent below, **as directed**, high-voltage and full-load rated. Tap changer shall have an external operating handle, **as directed**.
4. Mounting Brackets: Single **OR** Double, **as directed**, integral; suitable for pole mounting, individually or in cluster, or on crossarm.
5. Minimum Efficiency: Class 1, as defined by NEMA TP 1, based on test results that comply with requirements of NEMA TP 2.
6. Bushings: Creepage distance shall exceed nominal value standard for unit rating by at least 75 percent.
7. Hardware: Stainless steel.
8. Tank and Cover: Stainless steel, complying with ASTM A 167, Type 304 or 304L, with paint coating exterior finish system complying with IEEE C57.12.28, including manufacturer's standard color finish coat.
9. Show transformer kiloampere capacity using 2-1/2-inch (65-mm) numerals placed near the low-voltage bushings.

## J. Primary Metering Equipment

1. Metering Transformers: Outdoor current and potential transformers, designed for crossarm mounting, complying with IEEE C57.13, and having the following features:
  - a. BIL: 45 **OR** 60 **OR** 75 **OR** 95 **OR** 150 **OR** 200, **as directed**, kV.
  - b. Secondary connection box arranged for conduit connection.
  - c. Potential-Transformer Voltage Rating: 2.4 **OR** 4.16 **OR** 7.2 **OR** 12.0 **OR** 12.47, **as directed**, kV to 120-V ac, 60 Hz.
  - d. Potential-Transformer Accuracy Class: Minimum 0.3 at 75-VA burden.
  - e. Voltage Rating: 2.4 **OR** 4.16 **OR** 7.2 **OR** 12.0 **OR** 12.47, **as directed**, kV.
  - f. Current Rating: **<Insert value>** to 5 A.
  - g. Accuracy Class: Minimum 0.2 at 50-VA burden.
2. Watt-Hour Meter: Outdoor solid-state unit, with demand register, **OR** arranged for pulse initiation, **as directed**, complying with ANSI C12.10, and including the following ratings and features:
  - a. Form: 8S **OR** 9S, **as directed**.
  - b. Element: 2 **OR** 2-1/2 **OR** 3, **as directed**.
  - c. Voltage: 120 V.
  - d. Current: 2-1/2 A.
  - e. Frequency: 60 Hz.
  - f. Kilowatt-Hour Register: Five-digit type.
  - g. Demand-Register Multiplier: A quantity in even hundreds, indicated on meter face.
  - h. Demand-Register Interval: 15 **OR** 30, **as directed**, minutes.
  - i. Mounting: On matching socket, complying with ANSI C12.7, and complete with automatic current short-circuiting device.
  - j. Meter Test Block: Matched to meter, and furnished and equipped with open knife switches designed to isolate each metering component for test.
  - k. Meter Cabinet: Galvanized steel; weatherproof enclosure with pole-mounting bracket and the following features:
    - 1) Hinged Door: Arranged for padlocking in closed position.
    - 2) Size: Adequate to house meter and other equipment indicated, but not less than 20 by 30 by 11 inches (510 by 760 by 280 mm) deep.

## K. Source Quality Control

1. Factory Tests: Conduct routine tests of transformers **OR** medium-voltage switches **OR** metering equipment, **as directed**, according to referenced standards.



2. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to inspect poles and crossarms before and after preservative treatment for compliance of wood poles and crossarms with requirements indicated. RUS quality mark "WQC" on each item is acceptable in place of inspection as evidence of compliance.
3. Poles and crossarms will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
4. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Right-Of-Way Clearance And Tree Trimming

1. Clear right of way according to Division 01 Section(s) "Temporary Tree And Plant Protection" AND Division 31 Section(s) "Site Clearing".
2. Clear right of way to maintain minimum clearances required by IEEE C2, unless Drawings indicate greater clearances or greater clearances are required by state or local codes or regulations. If no minimum requirements are mandated, maintain a minimum of 15 feet (4.5 m) on both sides horizontally and below medium-voltage conductors and 60 inches (1500 mm) on both sides horizontally and below secondary-voltage conductors. Remove overhanging branches.

#### B. General Installation Requirements

1. Install underground power and metering circuits and those circuits indicated to be in raceways according to Division 26 Section "Underground Ducts And Raceways For Electrical Systems" and Division 26 Section "Medium-voltage Cables", and make splices and terminations for those circuits according to the applicable Sections.
2. Engage the services of a licensed surveyor to verify dimensions by field measurement, to identify locations of poles, anchors, and other features, and to verify all clearances. The survey document shall also identify locations of connections to new and existing supply lines and to primary and secondary services. Notify the Owner of discrepancies and field conditions that are not indicated and that will affect installation.
3. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
4. Apply warning signs and equipment labels according to Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".

#### C. Conductor Installation, General

1. Handle and string conductors to prevent cuts, gouges, scratches, kinks, flattening, or deformation. Remove damaged sections and splice conductors.
  - a. String new conductors to "initial" sag values recommended by manufacturer for type and size of conductor except as otherwise indicated.
  - b. Conductors Reinstalled or Resagged: String to "final" sag values recommended by manufacturer for type and size of conductor except as otherwise indicated.
2. Connections, Splices, and Terminations: Use kits listed for the specific type of connection and combination of materials in the connection or recommended for the specific use by manufacturer of material on which applied.
  - a. Splice Location: Do not install within 10 feet (3 m) of a support.
  - b. Line Conductors and Service Drops: Install so strength exceeds ultimate rated strength of conductor.
  - c. Splices and Terminations of Covered Conductors: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - d. Splices and Terminations of Insulated Conductors of Self-Supported, Medium-Voltage Cable: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

#### D. Medium-Voltage Line Conductor Installation

1. Application: Install bare conductors unless otherwise indicated.





2. Armor Rod: Install to protect conductors if line conductors are supported by insulators.
  3. Flat Aluminum Armor Wire: Install to protect conductors if they are supported by, or attached to, galvanized or coated iron or steel clamps or fittings.
  4. Support line conductors and taps as follows:
    - a. Use wire ties for conductor attachment to pin and vertical post insulators unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Install wire ties tight against conductor and insulator, and turn ends back and flat against conductor, to eliminate exposed wire ends.
    - c. Use wire clamps on horizontal post, dead end, and suspension insulators unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Pole And Crossarm Installation
1. Pole Orientation: Align curve of curved wood poles with straight-line runs of three or more poles. Align gained surfaces perpendicular to runs.
  2. Elevation of Line above Grade: Install poles with top at same elevation, unless grade changes dictate elevation change in poles, and according to the following:
    - a. On level ground, set poles so tops of consecutive poles vary not more than 60 inches (1500 mm) in elevation.
    - b. Shorten wood poles by cutting off the top and make cuts to shed water. Apply preservative to cuts.
  3. Set poles according to the following:
    - a. Make pole holes vertical, uniform in diameter, and large enough to permit effective use of tamping bars all around. Bore or excavate holes with an average diameter at grade less than twice the diameter of the pole at the same grade.
    - b. Use minimum depths indicated, except at locations where hole is partly or entirely in rock and if hole is not vertical or has a diameter at grade more than two times the pole diameter at the same level; in these conditions, increase the depth of the hole by the following increments before setting the pole:
      - 1) Poles up to 35 Feet (10.6 m) Long: 24 inches (600 mm).
      - 2) Poles 36 to 60 Feet (11 to 18.3 m) Long: 30 inches (760 mm).
      - 3) Poles 61 to 75 Feet (18.6 to 22.9 m) Long: 36 inches (900 mm).
    - c. For poles on slopes, indicated hole depth is from finished grade at lowest side of hole.
    - d. Set poles in alignment and plumb except at dead ends, angles, and points of extra strain; rake poles against conductor strain 1 inch (25 mm) minimum, 2 inches (51 mm) maximum, (after conductors are installed at required tension) for each 10 feet (3 m) of pole length. Rake poles so they will not lean or bend in direction of strain when loaded.
    - e. Backfill holes in 6-inch (150-mm) maximum lifts, and thoroughly tamp each layer before starting the next.
    - f. Place surplus earth around pole in a conical shape, and tamp thoroughly to provide drainage away from pole.
    - g. Set poles so alternate crossarm gains face in alternate directions, except at terminals and dead ends; place gains on last two poles on side facing terminal or dead end.
    - h. Poles Set in Concrete Paved Areas: Install poles with minimum of 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide, unpaved gap between the pole and the edge of adjacent concrete slab. Fill unpaved ring with pea gravel to a level 1 inch (25 mm) below top of concrete slab.
  4. Field treat factory-treated poles and crossarms as follows:
    - a. Poles Treated More Than One Year before Installation: Treat portion from 24 inches (600 mm) above ground line to butt.
    - b. Field-Bored Holes and Field-Cut Gains and Pole Tops: Treat cut portions.
    - c. Unused Holes: Treat and plug with treated-wood-dowel drive pins.
    - d. Engage the services of a technician certified according to "Quality Assurance" Article to apply treatment. Comply with requirements in AWPA standards that govern original factory treatment for field-applied treatment and application of chemicals.
  5. Crossarm Installation: Set line crossarms at right angle to line for straight runs and for angles 45 degrees and more. Bisect angles less than 45 degrees.
    - a. Buck Arms: Install at corners and junction poles unless otherwise indicated.



- b. Double Crossarms: Install at dead ends, corners, angles, and line crossings.
  - c. Equipment Arms: Locate below lines and set parallel or at right angles to them, whichever provides best climbing space.
  - d. Gains: Install factory-cut or metal-pole gains only. Do not cut gains in field without specific written approval.
6. Locate pole numbers to provide maximum visibility from the road or patrol route.

#### F. Guy Installation

1. Install guys to resist unbalanced loads, including those developed at angles, corners, and dead ends. Install two or more guys if a single guy will not provide adequate strength. Install separate guys if unbalanced loads are separated by 36 inches (900 mm) or more. Comply with IEEE C2.
  - a. Unless a thimble eye is used, at the pole end, install a minimum of two guy hooks and two guy strain plates.
  - b. At the anchor end, attach guy strand assembly with preformed grips.
2. Protect guy strands from damage. Replace damaged guy strands. Install guy insulators where required to comply with IEEE C2 clearance requirements.
3. Install guys with a lead-to-height ratio of 1 to 1 unless otherwise indicated. The minimum lead-to-height ratio shall be 1/2 to 1. When less than 1 to 1, increase guy strength by the ratio of the sine of the lead angle indicated to the sine of the lead angle provided.
4. Install screw-type guy anchors aligned in soil with guy. Set with anchor rod pointing at guy attachment on pole and rod projecting 6 to 9 inches (150 to 230 mm) from ground.
5. Install strain insulators to provide a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) of clearance between the nearest energized surface and the strain insulator fitting farthest from the pole. When loaded to the tension indicated, fiberglass strain insulators shall be loaded to not more than two-thirds of manufacturer's published rating.
6. Guy Markers: Install at anchor end of guys to visually mark the guy wire at all accessible locations. Clamp to guy strand or anchor at top and bottom of marker.

#### G. Hardware And Accessories Installation

1. Install washers against wood and under nuts, including eyenuts and locknuts.
2. Install nuts and locknuts wrench-tight on threaded connections.

#### H. Insulator Installation

1. Medium-Voltage Line Application: Install pin **OR** post, **as directed**, type, except install suspension type at corners, angles, dead ends, and other locations where horizontal forces exceed rated values for pin or line-post-type units.
  - a. Install suspension insulators and hardware that have mechanical strength exceeding rated breaking strength of attached conductors.
  - b. Install horizontal line-post insulators for armless construction.
2. Post-Insulator Conductor Support: Where installed horizontally and for line angles more than 15 degrees, install clamp-top conductor clamps.
3. Install spool-type insulators for secondary lines mounted on clevis attachments or secondary racks.
4. Guy Strain Type: Install porcelain **OR** fiberglass-reinforced, **as directed**, units.

#### I. Surge Arresters

1. Install surge arresters to protect distribution **OR** metering equipment **OR** reclosers, **as directed**, group-operated, load-interrupter switches, **as directed**, aerial-to-underground transitions, **as directed**, and other items indicated.
  - a. Units Installed 6000 Feet (1800 m) or More above Sea Level: Use arresters specifically rated for this service.

#### J. Cutout, Switch, And Fuse Installation

1. Hook-Stick-Operated Switches: Install to maximize safe operating access.



2. Group-Operated, Load-Interrupter Switches and Air-Break Switches: Install operating handle 42 inches (1067 mm) above finished grade.
  - a. Locking Provisions: Install padlock at hasp.
  
- K. Metering Component Installation
  1. Current and Voltage Transformers: Install secondary conductors between transformers and cabinet in sleeves made of galvanized rigid steel **OR** intermediate metal **OR** PVC, **as directed**, conduit. Install to prevent collection of moisture in raceway and cabinet system.
  2. Meter Cabinet: Mount on pole, 72 inches (1825 mm) above finished grade to center of cabinet.
    - a. Make conduit connections with raintight hubs.
    - b. Install metering transformer secondary leads without splices. Train leads at sides and bottom of enclosure, and secure with wire ties.
    - c. Install meter and meter test block within cabinet.
    - d. Install identical phase sequence, and color-code for both potential and current leads.
    - e. Identify leads using designations consistent with marking on transformer terminals.
  
- L. Field Quality Control
  1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
  2. Perform tests and inspections.
  3. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. Furnish instruments and equipment required for tests that comply with NETA Acceptance Testing Specification.
    - b. Guy Anchors: Test one of each type and capacity installed, plus additional units specifically indicated for testing, **as directed**. Apply rated pull-out force in the same pull direction applied by the guy at the test location.
      - 1) Acceptable Test Results: Denoted by movement of less than 3/8 inch (10 mm) by the holding component of the anchor in the earth or other medium in which it is installed.
      - 2) Replace or reinstall, at the Owner 's option, all anchors of same type and capacity as anchor type that fails this test.
    - c. Ground Resistance: Comply with Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems". Measure resistance of each separate grounding electrode, including pole grounds. Also measure resistance of separate grounding electrode systems before bonding together.
      - 1) Perform tests and obtain acceptable results before energizing any portion of overhead electrical distribution system.
      - 2) Results and Follow-up: If ground resistance for a single ground electrode or pole ground, tested individually, exceeds 25 ohms, add a ground electrode not less than 10 feet (3 m) away and interconnect with No. 2 AWG, minimum, bare conductor buried at least 12 inches (300 mm) below furnished grade.
    - d. Aerial Conductor Sag and Tension: Observe procedures used by Contractor to verify that initial stringing sags and tensions comply with IEEE C2 and conductor manufacturer's product data and written recommendations.
    - e. Self-Supported, Medium-Voltage Cable: After installation, while cable is isolated, and after terminations are installed and before connecting or energizing, apply dc voltage between each phase conductor and grounding connections of sheath or metallic shield. Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 for method, voltage, duration, pass-fail performance, and other test criteria. Perform other field inspections and tests recommended by manufacturer.
    - f. Neutral-Supported, Secondary Service-Drop Cable: Test for insulation resistance while cable is isolated, before connecting or energizing. Minimum acceptable resistance is 100 megohms.
    - g. Existing Surge Arresters: Disconnect and measure resistance between line and ground terminals with a megger test rated 600 V or more. Acceptable resistance values are 300 megohms and more.



- h. New Surge Arresters, Cutouts, and Switches: Inspect after installation and connection to wiring. Verify that ratings and characteristics match approved submittals and comply with system requirements. Verify that installation complies with requirements and that clearances of units and connecting wiring comply with IEEE C2 requirements.
- 1) Verify proper grounding of metallic equipment parts.
  - 2) Fuses and Disconnect Links: Verify that ratings and characteristics match submittals and comply with system requirements.
  - 3) Switches:
    - a) Manually operate each cutout and switch at least three times, to verify proper operation.
    - b) Verify correct contact alignment, blade penetration, travel stops, and arc interrupter operation.
  - 4) Group-Operated, Load-Interrupter Switches and Air-Break Switches:
    - a) Perform mechanical operator tests according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - b) Test resistance to ground of parts to be energized. Acceptable value is 200,000 megohms.
    - c) Perform contact-resistance test across all switch blade contacts. Refer to manufacturer's data for acceptable contact resistance.
  - 5) Verify that clearances of energized parts and connecting wires comply with IEEE C2 requirements.
- i. Distribution Transformers: Inspect after installation and connection to wiring and verify that ratings and characteristics match approved submittals and comply with system requirements. Verify the integrity and good condition of unit.
- 1) Inspect for physical damage, cracked insulators, leaks, tightness of connections, and overall mechanical and electrical integrity.
  - 2) Perform preenergizing inspections and tests recommended by manufacturer.
  - 3) Verify proper equipment grounding.
  - 4) Verify that clearances of terminals and connecting wires comply with IEEE C2.
- j. Metering Transformers: Inspect after installation and connection to wires, and verify that ratings and characteristics match approved submittals and comply with system requirements. Verify the integrity and good condition of unit.
- 1) Verify proper connections, tightness of bolted connections, and integrity of mounting provisions.
  - 2) Verify that required grounding and shorting connections provide good contact.
  - 3) Verify that clearances of terminals and connecting wires comply with IEEE C2.
  - 4) Perform electrical tests according to manufacturer's written instructions, including insulation-resistance tests, polarity tests, and turns-ratio and ratio-verification tests.
- k. Meters: Inspect after installation and connection to wiring and verify that ratings and characteristics match approved submittals and comply with system requirements. Verify the integrity and good condition of unit.
- 1) Verify tightness of electrical connections.
  - 2) Verify accuracy at 25, 50, 75, and 100 percent of full-rated load and verify all instrument multipliers according to manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- M. Adjusting
1. Distribution Transformers: Set voltage taps as directed by the Owner.
- N. Cleaning
1. After completing equipment installation, inspect equipment. Remove spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish. For distribution transformer, use tank touchup paint provided by manufacturer.
    - a. Clean enclosures internally, on completion of installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.



- 
- O. Demonstration
    - 1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain overhead electrical distribution.

END OF SECTION 26 05 26 00b



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
26 05 26 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





---

**SECTION 26 05 29 00 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for hangers and supports for electrical systems. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Summary**

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems.
  - b. Construction requirements for concrete bases.

**C. Definitions**

1. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.
2. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.
3. RMC: Rigid metal conduit.

**D. Performance Requirements**

1. Delegated Design: Design supports for multiple raceways, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. Design supports for multiple raceways capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems and its contents.
3. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
4. Rated Strength: Adequate in tension, shear, and pullout force to resist maximum loads calculated or imposed for this Project, with a minimum structural safety factor of five times the applied force.

**E. Submittals**

1. Product Data: For the following:
  - a. Steel slotted support systems.
  - b. Nonmetallic slotted support systems.
2. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:
  - a. Trapeze hangers. Include Product Data for components.
  - b. Steel slotted channel systems. Include Product Data for components.
  - c. Nonmetallic slotted channel systems. Include Product Data for components.
  - d. Equipment supports.
3. Welding certificates.

**F. Quality Assurance**

1. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. Comply with NFPA 70.

**1.2 PRODUCTS****A. Support, Anchorage, And Attachment Components**



1. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
    - a. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
    - b. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
    - c. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
    - d. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.
  2. Nonmetallic Slotted Support Systems: Structural-grade, factory-formed, glass-fiber-resin channels and angles with 9/16-inch- (14-mm-) diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches (200 mm) o.c., in at least 1 surface.
    - a. Fittings and Accessories: Products of channel and angle manufacturer and designed for use with those items.
    - b. Fitting and Accessory Materials: Same as channels and angles, except metal items may be stainless steel.
    - c. Rated Strength: Selected to suit applicable load criteria.
  3. Raceway and Cable Supports: As described in NECA 1 and NECA 101.
  4. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel **OR** Steel and malleable-iron, **as directed**, hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
  5. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for non-armored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be malleable iron.
  6. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
  7. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
    - a. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
    - b. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials in which used.
    - c. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units similar to MSS Type 18; complying with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
    - d. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58, type suitable for attached structural element.
    - e. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
    - f. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
    - g. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.
- B. Fabricated Metal Equipment Support Assemblies
1. Description: Welded or bolted, structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.
  2. Materials: Comply with requirements in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Application

1. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for application of hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems except if requirements in this Section are stricter.
2. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as required by **OR** scheduled in NECA 1, where its Table 1 lists maximum



- spacings less than stated in, **as directed**, NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
3. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted or other support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
    - a. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps **OR** single-bolt conduit clamps **OR** single-bolt conduit clamps using spring friction action for retention in support channel, **as directed**.
  4. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.
- B. Support Installation
1. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this Article.
  2. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMT **OR** IMC **OR** RMC, **as directed**, may be supported by openings through structure members, as permitted in NFPA 70.
  3. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb (90 kg).
  4. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
    - a. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
    - b. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
    - c. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
    - d. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
    - e. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches (100 mm) thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
    - f. To Steel: Welded threaded studs complying with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, with lock washers and nuts **OR** Beam clamps (MSS Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27) complying with MSS SP-69 **OR** Spring-tension clamps, **as directed**.
    - g. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
    - h. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate by means that meet seismic-restraint strength and anchorage requirements.
  5. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid reinforcing bars.
- C. Installation Of Fabricated Metal Supports
1. Comply with installation requirements in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.
  2. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
  3. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- D. Concrete Bases
1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.



2. Use 3000-psi (20.7-MPa), 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
3. Anchor equipment to concrete base.
  - a. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - b. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  - c. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Painting

1. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - a. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).
2. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **as directed**, for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.
3. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 26 05 29 00

**SECTION 26 05 29 00a - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for vibration and seismic controls for electrical systems. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Isolation pads.
  - b. Spring isolators.
  - c. Restrained spring isolators.
  - d. Channel support systems.
  - e. Restraint cables.
  - f. Hanger rod stiffeners.
  - g. Anchorage bushings and washers.

## C. Definitions

1. The IBC: International Building Code.
2. ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.
3. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development for the State of California.

## D. Performance Requirements

1. Seismic-Restraint Loading:
  - a. Site Class as Defined in the IBC: **A OR B OR C OR D OR E OR F, as directed.**
  - b. Assigned Seismic Use Group or Building Category as Defined in the IBC: **I OR II OR III, as directed.**
    - 1) Component Importance Factor: **1.0 OR 1.5, as directed.**
    - 2) Component Response Modification Factor: **1.5 OR 2.5 OR 3.5 OR 5.0, as directed.**
    - 3) Component Amplification Factor: **1.0 OR 2.5, as directed.**
  - c. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at Short Periods (0.2 Second): As required to meet Project requirements.
  - d. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at 1.0-Second Period: As required to meet Project requirements.

## E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For the following:
  - a. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
  - b. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of seismic-restraint component used.
    - 1) Tabulate types and sizes of seismic restraints, complete with report numbers and rated strength in tension and shear as evaluated by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES **OR** OSHPD **OR** an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, **as directed.**
    - 2) Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.
  - c. Restrained-Isolation Devices: Include ratings for horizontal, vertical, and combined loads.
2. Delegated-Design Submittal: For vibration isolation and seismic-restraint details indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.



- a. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight and operation, seismic forces required to select vibration isolators and seismic restraints.
  - 1) Coordinate design calculations with wind-load calculations required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Division 22 for equipment mounted outdoors.
- b. Indicate materials and dimensions and identify hardware, including attachment and anchorage devices.
- c. Field-fabricated supports.
- d. Seismic-Restraint Details:
  - 1) Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
  - 2) Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to the restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
  - 3) Preapproval and Evaluation Documentation: By an evaluation service member of ICC-ES **OR** OSHPD **OR** an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, **as directed**, showing maximum ratings of restraint items and the basis for approval (tests or calculations).
3. Welding certificates.
4. Field quality-control test reports.

#### F. Quality Assurance

1. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
2. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
3. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis and shall bear anchorage preapproval OPA number from OSHPD, preapproval by ICC-ES, or preapproval by another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are not available, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) to support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
4. Comply with NFPA 70.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Vibration Isolators

1. Pads: Arrange in single or multiple layers of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.
  - a. Resilient Material: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene **OR** rubber **OR** hermetically sealed compressed fiberglass, **as directed**.
2. Spring Isolators: Freestanding, laterally stable, open-spring isolators.
  - a. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  - b. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  - c. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  - d. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.



- e. Baseplates: Factory drilled for bolting to structure and bonded to 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) thick, rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside. Baseplates shall limit floor load to 500 psig (3447 kPa).
  - f. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.
3. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic or limit-stop restraint.
- a. Housing: Steel with resilient vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed; factory-drilled baseplate bonded to 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) thick, neoprene or rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside; and adjustable equipment mounting and leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
  - b. Restraint: Seismic or limit-stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
  - c. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  - d. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  - e. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  - f. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
- B. Seismic-Restraint Devices
1. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and application requirements shall be as defined in reports by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES **OR** OSHPD **OR** an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, **as directed**.
    - a. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.
  2. Channel Support System: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; and rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.
  3. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 603 galvanized-steel **OR** ASTM A 492 stainless-steel, **as directed**, cables with end connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivels, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with a minimum of two clamping bolts for cable engagement.
  4. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections **OR** Reinforcing steel angle clamped, **as directed**, to hanger rod. Do not weld stiffeners to rods.
  5. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchors and studs.
  6. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of attachment devices.
  7. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.
  8. Mechanical Anchor: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchors with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488. Minimum length of eight times diameter.
  9. Adhesive Anchor: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing polyvinyl or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.
- C. Factory Finishes



1. Finish:
  - a. Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.
  - b. Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested equipment before shipping.
    - 1) Powder coating on springs and housings.
    - 2) All hardware shall be galvanized. Hot-dip galvanize metal components for exterior use.
    - 3) Baked enamel or powder coat for metal components on isolators for interior use.
    - 4) Color-code or otherwise mark vibration isolation and seismic-control devices to indicate capacity range.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Applications

1. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Secure raceways and cables to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES **OR** OSHPD **OR** an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, **as directed**.
2. Hanger Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.
3. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

#### B. Seismic-Restraint Device Installation

1. Equipment and Hanger Restraints:
  - a. Install restrained isolators on electrical equipment.
  - b. Install resilient, bolt-isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).
  - c. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES **OR** OSHPD **OR** an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, **as directed**, providing required submittals for component.
2. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
3. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
4. Drilled-in Anchors:
  - a. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
  - b. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
  - c. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
  - d. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
  - e. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
  - f. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.





- C. Accommodation Of Differential Seismic Motion
1. Install flexible connections in runs of raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where they terminate with connection to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting them as they approach equipment.
- D. Field Quality Control
1. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
    - b. Schedule test with the Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless postconnection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
    - c. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
    - d. Test at least four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
    - e. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
    - f. Measure isolator restraint clearance.
    - g. Measure isolator deflection.
    - h. Verify snubber minimum clearances.
    - i. If a device fails test, modify all installations of same type and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.
  2. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
  3. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- E. Adjusting
1. Adjust isolators after isolated equipment is at operating weight.
  2. Adjust limit stops on restrained spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.
  3. Adjust active height of spring isolators.
  4. Adjust restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.

END OF SECTION 26 05 29 00a



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
26 05 29 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
26 05 29 00	05 12 23 00	Cold-Formed Metal Framing
26 05 29 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
26 05 33 13	26 05 00 00	Common Work Results for Electrical
26 05 33 13	26 05 19 16	Common Work Results for Communications
26 05 33 13	26 05 19 16a	Common Work Results for Electronic Safety and Security
26 05 33 13	01 51 13 00	Electrical Renovation
26 05 33 13	26 05 13 16	Conductors And Cables
26 05 33 13	26 05 19 16c	Communications Equipment Room Fittings
26 05 33 13	26 05 19 16d	Communications Backbone Cabling
26 05 33 13	26 05 19 16e	Communications Horizontal Cabling
26 05 33 13	26 05 19 16f	Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 26 05 33 16 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of raceways and boxes. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Summary**

1. This Section includes raceways, fittings, boxes, enclosures, and cabinets for electrical wiring.

**C. Definitions**

1. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.
2. ENT: Electrical nonmetallic tubing.
3. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
4. FMC: Flexible metal conduit.
5. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.
6. LFMC: Liquidtight flexible metal conduit.
7. LFNC: Liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit.
8. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.
9. RNC: Rigid nonmetallic conduit.

**D. Submittals**

1. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.
2. Shop Drawings: For the following raceway components. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - a. Custom enclosures and cabinets.
  - b. For handholes and boxes for underground wiring, including the following:
    - 1) Duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes.
    - 2) Frame and cover design.
    - 3) Grounding details.
    - 4) Dimensioned locations of cable rack inserts, and pulling-in and lifting irons.
    - 5) Joint details.
3. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required for wireways, nonmetallic wireways and surface raceways, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.
4. Coordination Drawings: Conduit routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
  - a. Structural members in the paths of conduit groups with common supports.
  - b. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in the paths of conduit groups with common supports.
5. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that enclosures and cabinets and their mounting provisions, including those for internal components, will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section(s) "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems" AND "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems". Include the following:
  - a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
    - 1) The term "withstand" means "the cabinet or enclosure will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will retain its enclosure characteristics, including its interior accessibility, after the seismic event."



- b. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
- c. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- 6. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.
- 7. Source quality-control test reports.

E. Quality Assurance

- 1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- 2. Comply with NFPA 70.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Metal Conduit And Tubing

- 1. Rigid Steel Conduit: ANSI C80.1.
- 2. Aluminum Rigid Conduit: ANSI C80.5.
- 3. IMC: ANSI C80.6.
- 4. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated rigid steel conduit **OR** IMC, **as directed**.
  - a. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
  - b. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch (1 mm), minimum.
- 5. EMT: ANSI C80.3.
- 6. FMC: Zinc-coated steel **OR** Aluminum **OR** Zinc-coated steel or aluminum, **as directed**.
- 7. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket.
- 8. Fittings for Conduit (Including all Types and Flexible and Liquidtight), EMT, and Cable: NEMA FB 1; listed for type and size raceway with which used, and for application and environment in which installed.
  - a. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 886.
  - b. Fittings for EMT: Steel **OR** Die-cast, **as directed**, set-screw **OR** compression, **as directed**, type.
  - c. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness, 0.040 inch (1 mm), with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.
- 9. Joint Compound for Rigid Steel Conduit or IMC: Listed for use in cable connector assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded raceway joints from corrosion and enhance their conductivity.

B. Nonmetallic Conduit And Tubing

- 1. ENT: NEMA TC 13.
- 2. RNC: NEMA TC 2, Type EPC-40-PVC, unless otherwise indicated.
- 3. LFNC: UL 1660.
- 4. Fittings for ENT and RNC: NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.
- 5. Fittings for LFNC: UL 514B.

C. Optical Fiber/Communications Cable Raceway And Fittings

- 1. Description: Comply with UL 2024; flexible type, approved for plenum **OR** riser **OR** general-use, **as directed**, installation.

D. Metal Wireways

- 1. Description: Sheet metal sized and shaped as indicated, NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** 12 **OR** 3R, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
- 2. Fittings and Accessories: Include couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.



3. Wireway Covers: Hinged type **OR** Screw-cover type **OR** Flanged-and-gasketed type **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  4. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.
- E. Nonmetallic Wireways
1. Description: Fiberglass polyester, extruded and fabricated to size and shape indicated, with no holes or knockouts. Cover is gasketed with oil-resistant gasket material and fastened with captive screws treated for corrosion resistance. Connections are flanged, with stainless-steel screws and oil-resistant gaskets.  
**OR**  
Description: PVC plastic, extruded and fabricated to size and shape indicated, with snap-on cover and mechanically coupled connections with plastic fasteners.
  2. Fittings and Accessories: Include couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- F. Surface Raceways
1. Surface Metal Raceways: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers. Manufacturer's standard enamel finish in color selected **OR** Prime coating, ready for field painting, **as directed**.
  2. Surface Nonmetallic Raceways: Two-piece construction, manufactured of rigid PVC with texture and color selected from manufacturer's standard **OR** custom, **as directed**, colors.
- G. Boxes, Enclosures, And Cabinets
1. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
  2. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
  3. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA OS 2.
  4. Metal Floor Boxes: Cast metal **OR** Sheet metal, **as directed**, fully adjustable **OR** semi-adjustable, **as directed**, rectangular.
  5. Nonmetallic Floor Boxes: Nonadjustable, round.
  6. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
  7. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: NEMA FB 1, cast aluminum **OR** galvanized, cast iron, **as directed**, with gasketed cover.
  8. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch, unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
    - b. Nonmetallic Enclosures: Plastic, finished inside with radio-frequency-resistant paint, **as directed**.
  9. Cabinets:
    - a. NEMA 250, Type 1, galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
    - b. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
    - c. Key latch to match panelboards.
    - d. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
    - e. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
- H. Handholes And Boxes For Exterior Underground Wiring
1. Description: Comply with SCTE 77.
    - a. Color of Frame and Cover: Gray **OR** Green **as directed**.
    - b. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have open **OR** closed **OR** integral closed, **as directed**, bottom, unless otherwise indicated.
    - c. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure.
    - d. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
    - e. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC" **OR** "TELEPHONE" **OR** as indicated for each service, **as directed**.



- f. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
- g. Handholes 12 inches wide by 24 inches long (300 mm wide by 600 mm long) and larger shall have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.
2. Polymer-Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with polymer resin, and reinforced with steel or fiberglass or a combination of the two.
3. Fiberglass Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Frame and Cover: Sheet-molded, fiberglass-reinforced, polyester-resin enclosure joined to polymer-concrete top ring or frame.
4. Fiberglass Handholes and Boxes: Molded of fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, with covers of polymer concrete **OR** reinforced concrete **OR** cast iron **OR** hot-dip galvanized-steel diamond plate **OR** fiberglass, **as directed**.

#### I. Sleeves For Raceways

1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel with minimum 0.052- or 0.138-inch (1.3- or 3.5-mm) thickness as indicated and of length to suit application.
4. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".

#### J. Sleeve Seals

1. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and cable.
  - a. Sealing Elements: EPDM **OR** NBR, **as directed**, interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
  - b. Pressure Plates: Plastic **OR** Carbon steel **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**. Include two for each sealing element.
  - c. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

#### K. Source Quality Control For Underground Enclosures

1. Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of handholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.
  - a. Tests of materials shall be performed by a independent testing agency.
  - b. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
  - c. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012, and traceable to NIST standards.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Raceway Application

1. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below, unless otherwise indicated:
  - a. Exposed Conduit: Rigid steel conduit **OR** IMC **OR** RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC **OR** RNC, Type EPC-80-PVC, **as directed**.
  - b. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: Rigid steel conduit **OR** IMC **OR** EMT **OR** RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC, **as directed**.
  - c. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC-40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, -PVC, direct buried.





- d. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LPMC **OR** LFNC, **as directed**.
- e. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R **OR** 4, **as directed**.
- f. Application of Handholes and Boxes for Underground Wiring:
  - 1) Handholes and Pull Boxes in Driveway, Parking Lot, and Off-Roadway Locations, Subject to Occasional, Nondeliberate Loading by Heavy Vehicles: Polymer concrete **OR** Fiberglass enclosures with polymer-concrete frame and cover **OR** Fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, **as directed**, SCTE 77, Tier 15 structural load rating.
  - 2) Handholes and Pull Boxes in Sidewalk and Similar Applications with a Safety Factor for Nondeliberate Loading by Vehicles: Polymer-concrete units **OR** Heavy-duty fiberglass units with polymer-concrete frame and cover, **as directed**, SCTE 77, Tier 8 structural load rating.
  - 3) Handholes and Pull Boxes Subject to Light-Duty Pedestrian Traffic Only: Fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, structurally tested according to SCTE 77 with 3000-lbf (13 345-N) vertical loading.
2. Comply with the following indoor applications, unless otherwise indicated:
  - a. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT **OR** ENT **OR** RNC, **as directed**.
  - b. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT **OR** RNC identified for such use, **as directed**.
  - c. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: Rigid steel conduit **OR** IMC, **as directed**. Includes raceways in the following locations:
    - 1) Loading dock.
    - 2) Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
    - 3) Mechanical rooms.
  - d. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT **OR** ENT **OR** RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC, **as directed**.
  - e. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LPMC in damp or wet locations.
  - f. Damp or Wet Locations: Rigid steel conduit **OR** IMC, **as directed**.
  - g. Raceways for Optical Fiber or Communications Cable in Spaces Used for Environmental Air: Plenum-type, optical fiber/communications cable raceway **OR** EMT, **as directed**.
  - h. Raceways for Optical Fiber or Communications Cable Risers in Vertical Shafts: Riser-type, optical fiber/communications cable raceway **OR** EMT, **as directed**.
  - i. Raceways for Concealed General Purpose Distribution of Optical Fiber or Communications Cable: General-use, optical fiber/communications cable raceway **OR** Riser-type, optical fiber/communications cable raceway **OR** Plenum-type, optical fiber/communications cable raceway **OR** EMT, **as directed**.
  - j. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4, stainless steel **OR** nonmetallic, **as directed**, in damp or wet locations.
3. Minimum Raceway Size: 1/2-inch (16-mm) **OR** 3/4-inch (21-mm), **as directed**, trade size.
4. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.
  - a. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings, unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with that material. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer.
5. Install nonferrous conduit or tubing for circuits operating above 60 Hz. Where aluminum raceways are installed for such circuits and pass through concrete, install in nonmetallic sleeve.
6. Do not install aluminum conduits in contact with concrete.

#### B. Installation

1. Comply with NECA 1 for installation requirements applicable to products specified in Part 2 except where requirements on Drawings or in this Article are stricter.
2. Keep raceways at least 6 inches (150 mm) away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.



3. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
4. Support raceways as specified in Division 26 Section(s) "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems" AND "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
5. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above the finished slab.
6. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for communications conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed.
7. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.
8. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:
  - a. Run conduit larger than 1-inch (27-mm) trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support.
  - b. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
  - c. Change from ENT to RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC, rigid steel conduit, or IMC before rising above the floor.
9. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.
10. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors, including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.
11. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb (90-kg) tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches (300 mm) of slack at each end of pull wire.
12. Raceways for Optical Fiber and Communications Cable: Install raceways, metallic and nonmetallic, rigid and flexible, as follows:
  - a. 3/4-Inch (19-mm) Trade Size and Smaller: Install raceways in maximum lengths of 50 feet (15 m).
  - b. 1-Inch (25-mm) Trade Size and Larger: Install raceways in maximum lengths of 75 feet (23 m).
  - c. Install with a maximum of two 90-degree bends or equivalent for each length of raceway unless Drawings show stricter requirements. Separate lengths with pull or junction boxes or terminations at distribution frames or cabinets where necessary to comply with these requirements.
13. Install raceway sealing fittings at suitable, approved, and accessible locations and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings at the following points:
  - a. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
  - b. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
14. Expansion-Joint Fittings for RNC: Install in each run of aboveground conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F (17 deg C), and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet (7.6 m).
  - a. Install expansion-joint fittings for each of the following locations, and provide type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for location:
    - 1) Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
    - 2) Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F (86 deg C) temperature change.
    - 3) Indoor Spaces: Connected with the Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
    - 4) Attics: 135 deg F (75 deg C) temperature change.
  - b. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.06 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change.



- c. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at the time of installation.
  15. Flexible Conduit Connections: Use maximum of 72 inches (1830 mm) of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed lighting fixtures, **as directed**, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
    - a. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
    - b. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.
  16. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall.
  17. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.
  18. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.
- C. Installation Of Underground Conduit
1. Direct-Buried Conduit:
    - a. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for pipe less than 6 inches (150 mm) in nominal diameter.
    - b. Install backfill as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving"
    - c. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches (300 mm) of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".
    - d. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor, unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout the length of the elbow.

**OR**

Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor.
      - 1) Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches (75 mm) of concrete.

**OR**

For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches (1500 mm) from edge of equipment pad or foundation. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
  - e. Warning Planks: Bury warning planks approximately 12 inches (300 mm) above direct-buried conduits, placing them 24 inches (600 mm) o.c. Align planks along the width and along the centerline of conduit.
- D. Installation Of Underground Handholes And Boxes
1. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
  2. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch (12.5-mm) sieve to No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
  3. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures 1 inch (25 mm) above finished grade.
  4. Install handholes and boxes with bottom below the frost line, **<Insert depth of frost line below grade at Project site>** below grade.
  5. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables, but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in the enclosure.



6. Field-cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

E. Sleeve Installation For Electrical Penetrations

1. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
2. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
3. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
4. Rectangular Sleeve Minimum Metal Thickness:
  - a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and no side greater than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
  - b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or greater than, 50 inches (1270 mm) and 1 or more sides equal to, or greater than, 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).
5. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
6. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.
7. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
8. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and raceway unless sleeve seal is to be installed or unless seismic criteria require different clearance.
9. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry and with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies, **as directed**.
10. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.
11. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway penetrations. Install sleeves and seal with firestop materials. Comply with Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".
12. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways with flexible, boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
13. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
14. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between raceway and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

F. Sleeve-Seal Installation

1. Install to seal underground, exterior wall penetrations.
2. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway material and size. Position raceway in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

G. Firestopping

1. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".

H. Protection

1. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure coatings, finishes, and cabinets are without damage or deterioration at time of Final Completion.



- 
- a. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
  - b. Repair damage to PVC or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 26 05 33 16



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

**SECTION 26 05 33 16a - WIRING DEVICES****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of wiring devices. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Summary**

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Receptacles, receptacles with integral GFCI, and associated device plates.
  - b. Twist-locking receptacles.
  - c. Receptacles with integral surge suppression units.
  - d. Wall-box motion sensors.
  - e. Isolated-ground receptacles.
  - f. Hospital-grade receptacles.
  - g. Snap switches and wall-box dimmers.
  - h. Solid-state fan speed controls.
  - i. Wall-switch and exterior occupancy sensors.
  - j. Communications outlets.
  - k. Pendant cord-connector devices.
  - l. Cord and plug sets.
  - m. Floor service outlets, poke-through assemblies, service poles, and multioutlet assemblies.

**C. Definitions**

1. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
2. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
3. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.
4. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
5. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppressor.
6. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

**D. Submittals**

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.
3. Samples: One for each type of device and wall plate specified, in each color specified.
4. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

**E. Quality Assurance**

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
2. Comply with NFPA 70.

**1.2 PRODUCTS****A. Straight Blade Receptacles**

1. Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, and UL 498.



2. Hospital-Grade, Duplex Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, and UL 498 Supplement SD.
  3. Isolated-Ground, Duplex Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, and UL 498.
    - a. Description: Straight blade; equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.
  4. Tamper-Resistant Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, and UL 498.
    - a. Description: Labeled to comply with NFPA 70, "Health Care Facilities" Article, "Pediatric Locations" Section.
- B. GFCI Receptacles
1. General Description: Straight blade, feed **OR** non-feed, **as directed**,-through type. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6, UL 498, and UL 943, Class A, and include indicator light that is lighted when device is tripped.
  2. Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
  3. Hospital-Grade, Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with UL 498 Supplement SD.
- C. TVSS Receptacles
1. General Description: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6, UL 498, and UL 1449, with integral TVSS in line to ground, line to neutral, and neutral to ground.
    - a. TVSS Components: Multiple metal-oxide varistors; with a nominal clamp-level rating of 400 volts and minimum single transient pulse energy dissipation of 240 J, according to IEEE C62.41.2 and IEEE C62.45.
    - b. Active TVSS Indication: Visual and audible, with light visible in face of device to indicate device is "active" or "no longer in service."
  2. Duplex TVSS Convenience Receptacles:
    - a. Description: Straight blade, 125 V, 20 A; NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R.
  3. Isolated-Ground, Duplex Convenience Receptacles:
    - a. Description: Straight blade, 125 V, 20 A; NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R. Equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.
  4. Hospital-Grade, Duplex Convenience Receptacles: Comply with UL 498 Supplement SD.
    - a. Description: Straight blade, 125 V, 20 A; NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R.
  5. Isolated-Ground, Hospital-Grade, Duplex Convenience Receptacles:
    - a. Description: Straight blade, 125 V, 20 A; NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R. Comply with UL 498 Supplement SD. Equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.
- D. Hazardous (Classified) Location Receptacles
1. Available Wiring Devices for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with NEMA FB 11 and UL 1010.
- E. Twist-Locking Receptacles
1. Single Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration L5-20R, and UL 498.
  2. Isolated-Ground, Single Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
    - a. Description: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration L5-20R, and UL 498. Equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw





terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.

F. Pendant Cord-Connector Devices

1. Description: Matching, locking-type plug and receptacle body connector; NEMA WD 6 configurations L5-20P and L5-20R, heavy-duty grade.
  - a. Body: Nylon with screw-open cable-gripping jaws and provision for attaching external cable grip.
  - b. External Cable Grip: Woven wire-mesh type made of high-strength galvanized-steel wire strand, matched to cable diameter, and with attachment provision designed for corresponding connector.

G. Cord And Plug Sets

1. Description: Match voltage and current ratings and number of conductors to requirements of equipment being connected.
  - a. Cord: Rubber-insulated, stranded-copper conductors, with Type SOW-A jacket; with green-insulated grounding conductor and equipment-rating ampacity plus a minimum of 30 percent.
  - b. Plug: Nylon body and integral cable-clamping jaws. Match cord and receptacle type for connection.

H. Snap Switches

1. Comply with NEMA WD 1 and UL 20.
2. Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
3. Pilot Light Switches, 20 A:
  - a. Description: Single pole, with neon-lighted handle, illuminated when switch is "ON."
4. Key-Operated Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
  - a. Description: Single pole, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.
5. Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary Contact, Center-Off Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A; for use with mechanically held lighting contactors.
6. Key-Operated, Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary Contact, Center-Off Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A; for use with mechanically held lighting contactors, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.

I. Wall-Box Dimmers

1. Dimmer Switches: Modular, full-wave, solid-state units with integral, quiet on-off switches, with audible frequency and EMI/RFI suppression filters.
2. Control: Continuously adjustable slider **OR** toggle switch **OR** rotary knob, **as directed**; with single-pole or three-way switching. Comply with UL 1472.
3. Incandescent Lamp Dimmers: 120 V; control shall follow square-law dimming curve. On-off switch positions shall bypass dimmer module.
  - a. 600 W; dimmers shall require no derating when ganged with other devices. Illuminated when "OFF," **as directed**.
4. Fluorescent Lamp Dimmer Switches: Modular; compatible with dimmer ballasts; trim potentiometer to adjust low-end dimming; dimmer-ballast combination capable of consistent dimming with low end not greater than 20 percent of full brightness.

J. Fan Speed Controls

1. Modular, 120-V, full-wave, solid-state units with integral, quiet on-off switches and audible frequency and EMI/RFI filters. Comply with UL 1917.
  - a. Continuously adjustable slider **OR** toggle switch **OR** rotary knob, **as directed**, 5 A **OR** 1.5 A, **as directed**.
  - b. Three-speed adjustable slider **OR** rotary knob, **as directed**, 1.5 A.

K. Occupancy Sensors

1. Wall-Switch Sensors:



- a. Description: Passive-infrared type, 120/277 V, adjustable time delay up to 30 minutes, 180-degree field of view, with a minimum coverage area of 900 sq. ft. (84 sq. m).
  2. Wall-Switch Sensors:
    - a. Description: Adaptive-technology type, 120/277 V, adjustable time delay up to 20 minutes, 180-degree field of view, with a minimum coverage area of 900 sq. ft. (84 sq. m).
  3. Long-Range Wall-Switch Sensors:
    - a. Description: Passive-infrared type, 120/277 V, adjustable time delay up to 30 minutes, 110-degree field of view, with a minimum coverage area of 1200 sq. ft. (111 sq. m).
  4. Long-Range Wall-Switch Sensors:
    - a. Description: Dual technology, with both passive-infrared- and ultrasonic-type sensing, 120/277 V, adjustable time delay up to 30 minutes, 110-degree field of view, and a minimum coverage area of 1200 sq. ft. (111 sq. m).
  5. Wide-Range Wall-Switch Sensors:
    - a. Description: Passive-infrared type, 120/277 V, adjustable time delay up to 30 minutes, 150-degree field of view, with a minimum coverage area of 1200 sq. ft. (111 sq. m).
  6. Exterior Occupancy Sensors:
    - a. Description: Passive-infrared type, 120/277 V, weatherproof, adjustable time delay up to 15 minutes, 180-degree field of view, and 110-foot (34-m) detection range. Minimum switch rating: 1000-W incandescent, 500-VA fluorescent.
- L. Communications Outlets
1. Telephone Outlet:
    - a. Description: Single RJ-45 jack for terminating 100-ohm, balanced, four-pair UTP; TIA/EIA-568-B.1; complying with Category 5e. Comply with UL 1863.
  2. Combination TV and Telephone Outlet:
    - a. Description: Single RJ-45 jack for 100-ohm, balanced, four-pair UTP; TIA/EIA-568-B.1; complying with Category 5e; and one Type F coaxial cable connector.
- M. Wall Plates
1. Single and combination types to match corresponding wiring devices.
    - a. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
    - b. Material for Finished Spaces: Steel with white baked enamel, suitable for field painting **OR** Smooth, high-impact thermoplastic **OR** 0.035-inch- (1-mm-) thick, satin-finished stainless steel **OR** 0.04-inch- (1-mm-) thick, brushed brass with factory polymer finish **OR** 0.05-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick anodized aluminum **OR** 0.04-inch- (1-mm-) thick steel with chrome-plated finish, **as directed**.
    - c. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel **OR** Smooth, high-impact thermoplastic, **as directed**.
    - d. Material for Damp Locations: Thermoplastic **OR** Cast aluminum, **as directed**, with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in "wet locations."
  2. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with type 3R weather-resistant, die-cast aluminum **OR** thermoplastic, **as directed**, with lockable cover.
- N. Floor Service Fittings
1. Type: Modular, flush-type **OR** flap-type **OR** above-floor, **as directed**, dual-service units suitable for wiring method used.
  2. Compartments: Barrier separates power from voice and data communication cabling.
  3. Service Plate: Rectangular **OR** Round, **as directed**, die-cast aluminum **OR** solid brass, **as directed**, with satin finish.
  4. Power Receptacle: NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, gray finish, unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Voice and Data Communication Outlet: Blank cover with bushed cable opening **OR** Two modular, keyed, color-coded, RJ-45 Category 5e jacks for UTP cable, **as directed**.
- O. Poke-Through Assemblies



1. Description: Factory-fabricated and -wired assembly of below-floor junction box with multichanneled, through-floor raceway/firestop unit and detachable matching floor service outlet assembly.
  - a. Service Outlet Assembly: Pedestal type with services indicated **OR** Flush type with two simplex receptacles and space for two RJ-45 jacks **OR** Flush type with four simplex receptacles and space for four RJ-45 jacks, **as directed**.
  - b. Size: Selected to fit nominal 3-inch (75-mm) **OR** 4-inch (100-mm), **as directed**, cored holes in floor and matched to floor thickness.
  - c. Fire Rating: Unit is listed and labeled for fire rating of floor-ceiling assembly.
  - d. Closure Plug: Arranged to close unused 3-inch (75-mm) **OR** 4-inch (100-mm), **as directed**, cored openings and reestablish fire rating of floor.
  - e. Wiring Raceways and Compartments: For a minimum of four No. 12 AWG conductors and a minimum of two **OR** four, **as directed**, 4-pair, Category 5e voice and data communication cables.

P. Multioutlet Assemblies

1. Components of Assemblies: Products from a single manufacturer designed for use as a complete, matching assembly of raceways and receptacles.
2. Raceway Material: Metal, with manufacturer's standard finish **OR** PVC, **as directed**.
3. Wire: No. 12 AWG.

Q. Service Poles

1. Description: Factory-assembled and -wired units to extend power and voice and data communication from distribution wiring concealed in ceiling to devices or outlets in pole near floor.
  - a. Poles: Nominal 2.5-inch- (65-mm-) square cross section, with height adequate to extend from floor to at least 6 inches (150 mm) above ceiling, and with separate channels for power wiring and voice and data communication cabling.
  - b. Mounting: Ceiling trim flange with concealed bracing arranged for positive connection to ceiling supports; with pole foot and carpet pad attachment.
  - c. Finishes: Manufacturer's standard painted finish and trim combination **OR** Satin-anodized aluminum, **as directed**.
  - d. Wiring: Sized for minimum of five No. 12 AWG power and ground conductors and a minimum of four, 4-pair, Category 3 or 5 voice and data communication cables.
  - e. Power Receptacles: Two duplex, 20-A, heavy-duty, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R units.
  - f. Voice and Data Communication Outlets: Blank insert with bushed cable opening **OR** Two RJ-45 Category 5e jacks **OR** Four RJ-45 Category 5e jacks, **as directed**.

R. Finishes

1. Color: Wiring device catalog numbers in Section Text do not designate device color.
  - a. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: Almond **OR** Black **OR** Brown **OR** Gray **OR** Ivory **OR** White **OR** As selected, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.
  - b. Wiring Devices Connected to Emergency Power System: Red.
  - c. TVSS Devices: Blue.
  - d. Isolated-Ground Receptacles: Orange **OR** As specified above, with orange triangle on face, **as directed**.

## 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation

1. Comply with NECA 1, including the mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise noted.
2. Coordination with Other Trades:



- a. Take steps to insure that devices and their boxes are protected. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of the boxes.
  - b. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
  - c. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
  - d. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.
3. Conductors:
- a. Do not strip insulation from conductors until just before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
  - b. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
  - c. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall meet provisions of NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
  - d. Existing Conductors:
    - 1) Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
    - 2) Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
    - 3) Pigtailing existing conductors is permitted provided the outlet box is large enough.
4. Device Installation:
- a. Replace all devices that have been in temporary use during construction or that show signs that they were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
  - b. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
  - c. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
  - d. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches (152 mm) in length.
  - e. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, 2/3 to 3/4 of the way around terminal screw.
  - f. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by the manufacturer.
  - g. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
  - h. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
  - i. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.
5. Receptacle Orientation:
- a. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles up **OR** down, **as directed**, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the right **OR** left, **as directed**.
  - b. Install hospital-grade receptacles in patient-care areas with the ground pin or neutral blade at the top.
6. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.
7. Dimmers:
- a. Install dimmers within terms of their listing.
  - b. Verify that dimmers used for fan speed control are listed for that application.
  - c. Install unshared neutral conductors on line and load side of dimmers according to manufacturers' device listing conditions in the written instructions.
8. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.
9. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.



B. Identification

1. Comply with Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
  - a. Receptacles: Identify panelboard and circuit number from which served. Use hot, stamped or engraved machine printing with black **OR** white **OR** red, **as directed**,-filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.

C. Field Quality Control

1. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
  - a. In healthcare facilities, prepare reports that comply with recommendations in NFPA 99.
  - b. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
  - c. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated LED indicators of measurement.
2. Tests for Convenience Receptacles:
  - a. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
  - b. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is not acceptable.
  - c. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
  - d. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
  - e. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
  - f. The tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.
3. Test straight blade convenience outlets in patient-care areas **OR** hospital-grade convenience outlets, **as directed**, for the retention force of the grounding blade according to NFPA 99. Retention force shall be not less than 4 oz. (115 g).

END OF SECTION 26 05 33 16a



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
26 05 33 16	01 51 13 00	Electrical Renovation
26 05 43 00	26 05 00 00	Common Work Results for Electrical
26 05 43 00	26 05 19 16	Common Work Results for Communications
26 05 43 00	26 05 19 16a	Common Work Results for Electronic Safety and Security
26 05 43 00	26 05 13 16	Conductors And Cables
26 05 43 00	26 05 19 16c	Communications Equipment Room Fittings
26 05 43 00	26 05 19 16d	Communications Backbone Cabling
26 05 43 00	26 05 19 16e	Communications Horizontal Cabling
26 05 43 00	26 05 19 16f	Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security
26 05 46 00	26 05 26 00b	Overhead Electrical Distribution



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





## SECTION 26 05 53 00 - ELECTRICAL IDENTIFICATION

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for electrical identification. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Identification for raceways.
  - b. Identification of power and control cables.
  - c. Identification for conductors.
  - d. Underground-line warning tape.
  - e. Warning labels and signs.
  - f. Instruction signs.
  - g. Equipment identification labels.
  - h. Miscellaneous identification products.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each electrical identification product indicated.
2. Samples: For each type of label and sign to illustrate size, colors, lettering style, mounting provisions, and graphic features of identification products.
3. Identification Schedule: An index of nomenclature of electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Comply with ANSI A13.1 and IEEE C2, **as directed**.
2. Comply with NFPA 70.
3. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
4. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.
5. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Power Raceway Identification Materials

1. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway size.
2. Colors for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:
  - a. Black letters on an orange field.
  - b. Legend: Indicate voltage and system or service type, **as directed**.
3. Colors for Raceways Carrying Circuits at More Than 600 V:
  - a. Black letters on an orange field.
  - b. Legend: "DANGER CONCEALED HIGH VOLTAGE WIRING" with 3-inch- (75-mm-) high letters on 20-inch (500-mm) centers.
4. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Labels for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.



5. Snap-Around Labels for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeve, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.
  6. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeve, 2 inches (50 mm) long, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.
  7. Tape and Stencil for Raceways Carrying Circuits More Than 600 V: 4-inch- (100-mm-) wide black stripes on 10-inch (250-mm) centers diagonally over orange background that extends full length of raceway or duct and is 12 inches (300 mm) wide. Stop stripes at legends.
  8. Metal Tags: Brass or aluminum, 2 by 2 by 0.05 inch (50 by 50 by 1.3 mm), with stamped legend, punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.
  9. Write-On Tags: Polyester tag, 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.015 inch (0.38 mm), **as directed**, thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and cable tie for attachment to conductor or cable.
    - a. Marker for Tags: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.

**OR**

Marker for Tags: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by printer manufacturer.
- B. Armored And Metal-Clad Cable Identification Materials
1. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway and cable size.
  2. Colors for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V and Less:
    - a. Black letters on an orange field.
    - b. Legend: Indicate voltage and system or service type, **as directed**.
  3. Colors for Raceways Carrying Circuits at More Than 600 V:
    - a. Black letters on an orange field.
    - b. Legend: "DANGER CONCEALED HIGH VOLTAGE WIRING" with 3-inch- (75-mm-) high letters on 20-inch (500-mm) centers.
  4. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.
 

**OR**

Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; 2 inches (50 mm) wide; compounded for outdoor use.
- C. Power And Control Cable Identification Materials
1. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway and cable size.
  2. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.
  3. Metal Tags: Brass or aluminum, 2 by 2 by 0.05 inch (50 by 50 by 1.3 mm), with stamped legend, punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.
  4. Write-On Tags: Polyester tag, 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.015 inch (0.38 mm), **as directed**, thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and cable tie for attachment to conductor or cable.
    - a. Marker for Tags: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.

**OR**

Marker for Tags: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by printer manufacturer.
  5. Snap-Around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeve, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.



6. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeve, 2 inches (50 mm) long, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.
- D. Conductor Identification Materials
1. Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Colored, self-adhesive vinyl tape not less than 3 mils (0.08 mm) thick by 1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm) wide.
  2. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.
  3. Snap-Around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeve, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.
  4. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeve, 2 inches (50 mm) long, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.
  5. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.
  6. Write-On Tags: Polyester tag, 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) **OR** 0.015 inch (0.38 mm), **as directed**, thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and cable tie for attachment to conductor or cable.
    - a. Marker for Tags: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.  
**OR**  
Marker for Tags: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by printer manufacturer.
- E. Floor Marking Tape
1. 2-inch- (50-mm-) wide, 5-mil (0.125-mm) pressure-sensitive vinyl tape, with black and white stripes and clear vinyl overlay.
- F. Underground-Line Warning Tape
1. Tape:
    - a. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground electrical and communications utility lines.
    - b. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial operations.
    - c. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert, and not subject to degrading when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.
  2. Color and Printing:
    - a. Comply with ANSI Z535.1 through ANSI Z535.5.
    - b. Inscriptions for Red-Colored Tapes: **ELECTRIC LINE, HIGH VOLTAGE.**
    - c. Inscriptions for Orange-Colored Tapes: **TELEPHONE CABLE, CATV CABLE, COMMUNICATIONS CABLE, OPTICAL FIBER CABLE.**
  3. Tag: Type I:
    - a. Pigmented polyolefin, bright-colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.
    - b. Thickness: 4 mils (0.1 mm).
    - c. Weight: 18.5 lb/1000 sq. ft. (9.0 kg/100 sq. m).
    - d. 3-Inch (75-mm) Tensile According to ASTM D 882: 30 lbf (133.4 N), and 2500 psi (17.2 MPa).
  4. Tag: Type II:
    - a. Multilayer laminate consisting of high-density polyethylene scrim coated with pigmented polyolefin, bright-colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.
    - b. Thickness: 12 mils (0.3 mm).
    - c. Weight: 36.1 lb/1000 sq. ft. (17.6 kg/100 sq. m).



- d. 3-Inch (75-mm) Tensile According to ASTM D 882: 400 lbf (1780 N), and 11,500 psi (79.2 MPa).
  5. Tag: Type ID:
    - a. Detectable three-layer laminate, consisting of a printed pigmented polyolefin film, a solid aluminum-foil core, and a clear protective film that allows inspection of the continuity of the conductive core, bright-colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.
    - b. Overall Thickness: 5 mils (0.125 mm).
    - c. Foil Core Thickness: 0.35 mil (0.00889 mm).
    - d. Weight: 28 lb/1000 sq. ft. (13.7 kg/100 sq. m).
    - e. 3-Inch (75-mm) Tensile According to ASTM D 882: 70 lbf (311.3 N), and 4600 psi (31.7 MPa).
  6. Tag: Type IID:
    - a. Reinforced, detectable three-layer laminate, consisting of a printed pigmented woven scrim, a solid aluminum-foil core, and a clear protective film that allows inspection of the continuity of the conductive core, bright-colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.
    - b. Overall Thickness: 8 mils (0.2 mm).
    - c. Foil Core Thickness: 0.35 mil (0.00889 mm).
    - d. Weight: 34 lb/1000 sq. ft. (16.6 kg/100 sq. m).
    - e. 3-Inch (75-mm) Tensile According to ASTM D 882: 300 lbf (1334 N), and 12,500 psi (86.1 MPa).
- G. Warning Labels And Signs
1. Comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
  2. Self-Adhesive Warning Labels: Factory-printed, multicolor, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for display on front cover, door, or other access to equipment unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Baked-Enamel Warning Signs:
    - a. Preprinted aluminum signs, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
    - b. 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting.
    - c. Nominal size, 7 by 10 inches (180 by 250 mm).
  4. Metal-Backed, Butyrate Warning Signs:
    - a. Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs with 0.0396-inch (1-mm) galvanized-steel backing; and with colors, legend, and size required for application.
    - b. 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting.
    - c. Nominal size, 10 by 14 inches (250 by 360 mm).
  5. Warning label and sign shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
    - a. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
    - b. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES (915 MM)."
- H. Instruction Signs
1. Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine plastic, minimum 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick for signs up to 20 sq. inches (129 sq. cm) and 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick for larger sizes.
    - a. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
    - b. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners.
    - c. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.
  2. Adhesive Film Label: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  3. Adhesive Film Label with Clear Protective Overlay: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm). Overlay shall provide a weatherproof and UV-resistant seal for label.



- I. Equipment Identification Labels
  1. Adhesive Film Label: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  2. Adhesive Film Label with Clear Protective Overlay: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm). Overlay shall provide a weatherproof and UV-resistant seal for label.
  3. Self-Adhesive, Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Adhesive backed, with white letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  4. Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Punched or drilled for screw mounting. White letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  5. Stenciled Legend: In nonfading, waterproof, black ink or paint. Minimum letter height shall be 1 inch (25 mm).
  
- J. Cable Ties
  1. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self extinguishing, one piece, self locking, Type 6/6 nylon.
    - a. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
    - b. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F (23 deg C), According to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa).
    - c. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C).
    - d. Color: Black except where used for color-coding.
  2. UV-Stabilized Cable Ties: Fungus inert, designed for continuous exposure to exterior sunlight, self extinguishing, one piece, self locking, Type 6/6 nylon.
    - a. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
    - b. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F (23 deg C), According to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa).
    - c. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C).
    - d. Color: Black.
  3. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self extinguishing, UV stabilized, one piece, self locking.
    - a. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
    - b. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F (23 deg C), According to ASTM D 638: 7000 psi (48.2 MPa).
    - c. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
    - d. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 140 deg C).
    - e. Color: Black.
  
- K. Miscellaneous Identification Products
  1. Paint: Comply with requirements in Division 07 for paint materials and application requirements. Select paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).
  2. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Installation
  1. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
  2. Location: Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment.
  3. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
  4. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Clean surfaces before application, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification device.
  5. Attach signs and plastic labels that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
  6. System Identification Color-Coding Bands for Raceways and Cables: Each color-coding band shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent bands of two-color markings in contact, side by side. Locate bands at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot



(15-m) maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot (7.6-m) maximum intervals in congested areas.

7. Aluminum Wraparound Marker Labels and Metal Tags: Secure tight to surface of conductor or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
8. Cable Ties: For attaching tags. Use general-purpose type, except as listed below:
  - a. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
  - b. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.
9. Underground-Line Warning Tape: During backfilling of trenches install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above line at 6 to 8 inches (150 to 200 mm) below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench or concrete envelope exceeds 16 inches (400 mm) overall.
10. Painted Identification: Comply with requirements in Division 07 for surface preparation and paint application.

#### B. Identification Schedule

1. Concealed Raceways, Duct Banks, More Than 600 V, within Buildings: Tape and stencil 4-inch- (100-mm-) wide black stripes on 10-inch (250-mm) centers over orange background that extends full length of raceway or duct and is 12 inches (300 mm) wide. Stencil legend "DANGER CONCEALED HIGH VOLTAGE WIRING" with 3-inch- (75-mm-) high black letters on 20-inch (500-mm) centers. Stop stripes at legends. Apply to the following finished surfaces:
  - a. Floor surface directly above conduits running beneath and within 12 inches (300 mm) of a floor that is in contact with earth or is framed above unexcavated space.
  - b. Wall surfaces directly external to raceways concealed within wall.
  - c. Accessible surfaces of concrete envelope around raceways in vertical shafts, exposed in the building, or concealed above suspended ceilings.
2. Accessible Raceways, Armored and Metal-Clad Cables, More Than 600 V: Self-adhesive vinyl **OR** Snap-around, **as directed**, labels. Install labels at 10-foot (3-m) **OR** 30-foot (10-m), **as directed**, maximum intervals.
3. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables, 600 V or Less, for Service, Feeder, and Branch Circuits More Than 30 A, and 120 V to ground: Identify with self-adhesive vinyl label **OR** self-adhesive vinyl tape applied in bands, **as directed**. Install labels at 10-foot (3-m) **OR** 30-foot (10-m), **as directed**, maximum intervals.
4. Accessible Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with self-adhesive vinyl labels with the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
  - a. Emergency Power.
  - b. Power.
  - c. UPS.
5. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use color-coding conductor tape to identify the phase.
  - a. Color-Coding for Phase and Voltage Level Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded service, feeder, and branch-circuit conductors.
    - 1) Color shall be factory applied or field applied for sizes larger than No. 8 AWG, if authorities having jurisdiction permit.
    - 2) Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
      - a) Phase A: Black.
      - b) Phase B: Red.
      - c) Phase C: Blue.
    - 3) Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:
      - a) Phase A: Brown.
      - b) Phase B: Orange.
      - c) Phase C: Yellow.
    - 4) Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches (150 mm) from terminal points and in boxes where



- splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding. Locate bands to avoid obscuring factory cable markings.
6. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, More than 600 V: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use write-on tags **OR** nonmetallic plastic tag holder with adhesive-backed phase tags, and a separate tag with the circuit designation, **as directed**.
  7. Install instructional sign including the color-code for grounded and ungrounded conductors using adhesive-film-type labels.
  8. Conductors to Be Extended in the Future: Attach write-on tags **OR** marker tape, **as directed**, to conductors and list source.
  9. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.
    - a. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
    - b. Use system of marker tape designations that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
    - c. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual.
  10. Locations of Underground Lines: Identify with underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical fiber cable.
    - a. Limit use of underground-line warning tape to direct-buried cables.
    - b. Install underground-line warning tape for both direct-buried cables and cables in raceway.
  11. Workspace Indication: Install floor marking tape to show working clearances in the direction of access to live parts. Workspace shall be as required by NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1926.403 unless otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.
  12. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Self-adhesive warning labels **OR** Baked-enamel warning signs **OR** Metal-backed, butyrate warning signs, **as directed**.
    - a. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145.
    - b. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.
    - c. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
    - d. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment including, but not limited to, the following:
      - 1) Power transfer switches.
      - 2) Controls with external control power connections.
  13. Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs to facilitate proper operation and maintenance of electrical systems and items to which they connect. Install instruction signs with approved legend where instructions are needed for system or equipment operation.
  14. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs with white legend on a red background with minimum 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer **OR** load shedding, **as directed**.
  15. Equipment Identification Labels: On each unit of equipment, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Apply labels to disconnect switches and protection equipment, central or master units, control panels, control stations, terminal cabinets, and racks of each system. Systems include power, lighting, control, communication, signal, monitoring, and alarm systems unless equipment is provided with its own identification.
    - a. Labeling Instructions:
      - 1) Indoor Equipment: Adhesive film label **OR** Adhesive film label with clear protective overlay **OR** Self-adhesive, engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label **OR** Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label, **as directed**. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) high letters on 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches (50 mm) high.
      - 2) Outdoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label **OR** Stenciled legend 4 inches (100 mm) high, **as directed**.



- 3) Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
  - 4) Unless provided with self-adhesive means of attachment, fasten labels with appropriate mechanical fasteners that do not change the NEMA or NRTL rating of the enclosure.
- b. Equipment to Be Labeled:
- 1) Panelboards: Typewritten directory of circuits in the location provided by panelboard manufacturer. Panelboard identification shall be self-adhesive, engraved **OR** engraved, **as directed**, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
  - 2) Enclosures and electrical cabinets.
  - 3) Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
  - 4) Switchgear.
  - 5) Switchboards.
  - 6) Transformers: Label that includes tag designation shown on Drawings for the transformer, feeder, and panelboards or equipment supplied by the secondary.
  - 7) Substations.
  - 8) Emergency system boxes and enclosures.
  - 9) Motor-control centers.
  - 10) Enclosed switches.
  - 11) Enclosed circuit breakers.
  - 12) Enclosed controllers.
  - 13) Variable-speed controllers.
  - 14) Push-button stations.
  - 15) Power transfer equipment.
  - 16) Contactors.
  - 17) Remote-controlled switches, dimmer modules, and control devices.
  - 18) Battery-inverter units.
  - 19) Battery racks.
  - 20) Power-generating units.
  - 21) Monitoring and control equipment.
  - 22) UPS equipment.

END OF SECTION 26 05 53 00





---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
26 05 53 00	01 51 13 00	Electrical Renovation
26 05 83 00	01 51 13 00	Electrical Renovation
26 05 83 00	26 05 13 16	Conductors And Cables
26 05 83 00	26 05 13 16a	Undercarpet Cables
26 05 83 00	26 05 13 16b	Medium-Voltage Cables



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 26 09 23 00 - LIGHTING CONTROLS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for lighting controls. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes manually operated lighting controls with relays, electrically operated circuit breakers, and control module.
2. This Section includes manually operated, PC-based, digital lighting controls with external signal source, relays, electrically operated circuit breakers, and control module.
3. This Section includes individually addressable lighting control devices communicating with data-entry and -retrieval devices using DALI protocol.

#### C. Definitions

1. BACnet: A networking communication protocol that complies with ASHRAE 135.
2. BAS: Building automation system.
3. DALI: Digital addressable lighting interface.
4. LonWorks: A control network technology platform for designing and implementing interoperable control devices and networks.
5. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling and power-limited circuits.
6. Monitoring: Acquisition, processing, communication, and display of equipment status data, metered electrical parameter values, power quality evaluation data, event and alarm signals, tabulated reports, and event logs.
7. PC: Personal computer; sometimes plural as "PCs."
8. Power Line Carrier: Use of radio-frequency energy to transmit information over transmission lines whose primary purpose is the transmission of power.
9. RS-485: A serial network protocol, similar to RS-232, complying with TIA/EIA-485-A.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For control modules, power distribution components, DALI network materials, manual switches and plates, and conductors and cables.
2. Shop Drawings: Detail assemblies of standard components, custom assembled for specific application on this Project.
  - a. Outline Drawings: Indicate dimensions, weights, arrangement of components, and clearance and access requirements.
  - b. Block Diagram: Show interconnections between components specified in this Section and devices furnished with power distribution system components. Indicate data communication paths and identify networks, data buses, data gateways, concentrators, and other devices to be used. Describe characteristics of network and other data communication lines.
  - c. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring. Coordinate nomenclature and presentation with a block diagram.
3. Coordination Drawings: Submit evidence that lighting controls are compatible with connected monitoring and control devices and systems specified in other Sections.
  - a. Show interconnecting signal and control wiring and interfacing devices that prove compatibility of inputs and outputs.
  - b. For networked controls, list network protocols and provide statements from manufacturers that input and output devices meet interoperability requirements of the network protocol.



4. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:
    - a. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
    - b. Program Software Backup: On a magnetic media or compact disc, complete with data files.
    - c. Device address list.
    - d. Printout of software application and graphic screens.
  5. Field quality-control test reports.
  6. Software licenses and upgrades required by and installed for operation and programming of digital and analog devices.
  7. Operation and maintenance data.
  8. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.
- E. Quality Assurance
1. Source Limitations: Obtain lighting control module and power distribution components through one source from a single manufacturer.
  2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
  3. Comply with 47 CFR, Subparts A and B, for Class A digital devices.
  4. Comply with protocol described in IEC 60929, Annex E, for DALI lighting control devices, wiring, and computer hardware and software.
  5. Comply with NFPA 70.
- F. Coordination
1. Coordinate lighting control components to form an integrated interconnection of compatible components. Match components and interconnections for optimum performance of lighting control functions.
    - a. Coordinate lighting controls with BAS **OR** HVAC controls, **as directed**. Design display graphics showing building areas controlled; include the status of lighting controls in each area.
    - b. Coordinate lighting controls with that in Sections specifying distribution components that are monitored or controlled by power monitoring and control equipment.
  2. Coordinate lighting control components specified in this Section with components specified in Division 26 Section "Panelboards".
- G. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of lighting controls that fail in materials or workmanship or from transient voltage surges within specified warranty period.
    - a. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - 1) Failure of software input/output to execute switching or dimming commands.
      - 2) Failure of modular relays to operate under manual or software commands.
      - 3) Damage of electronic components due to transient voltage surges.
    - b. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Final Completion.
    - c. Extended Warranty Period Failure Due to Transient Voltage Surges: Eight years.
    - d. Extended Warranty Period for Electrically Held Relays: 10 years from date of Final Completion.
- H. Software Service Agreement (May Not Be Allowed For Publicly Funded Projects)
1. Technical Support: Beginning with Final Completion, provide software support for two years.
  2. Upgrade Service: Update software to latest version at Project completion. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Final Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system. Upgrade shall include new or revise licenses for use of the software.



- a. Provide 30-day notice to the Owner to allow scheduling and access to system and to allow the Owner to upgrade computer equipment, if necessary.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. System Requirements

1. Expandability: System shall be capable of increasing the number of control functions in the future by 25 percent of current capacity; to include equipment ratings, housing capacities, spare relays, terminals, number of conductors in control cables, and control software.
2. Performance Requirements (for programmable system that controls manual and automatic operation that is not PC based): Manual switch operation sends a signal to programmable-system control module that processes the signal according to its programming and routes an open or close command to one or more relays **OR** electrically operated circuit breakers, **as directed**, in the power-supply circuits to groups of lighting fixtures or other loads.
3. Performance Requirements (for PC-based programmable system that controls manual and automatic operation): Manual switches, an internal timing and control unit, and external sensors or other control signal sources send a signal to a PC-based programmable-system control module that processes the signal according to its programming and routes an open or close command to one or more relays **OR** electrically operated circuit breakers, **as directed**, in the power-supply circuits, or routes variable commands to one or more dimmers, for groups of lighting fixtures or other loads.
4. Performance Requirements (for DALI-compliant program): Individually addressable devices (such as electronic ballasts, dimmers, and manual switches) are operated from digital signals received through a DALI-compliant bus, from data-entry and -retrieval devices (such as PCs, personal digital assistants (PDAs), hand-held infrared programming devices, wired Ethernet hubs, wireless IEEE 802.11 hubs). Devices also report status to data-entry and -retrieval devices through the bus.
5. BAS Interface: Provide hardware and software to enable the BAS to monitor, control, display, and record data for use in processing reports.
  - a. Hardwired Points:
    - 1) Monitoring: On-off status, <Insert monitoring point>.
    - 2) Control: On-off operation, <Insert control point>.
  - b. ASHRAE 135 (BACnet) **OR** LonTalk **OR** Modbus **OR** Industry-accepted, open-protocol, **as directed**, communication interface with the BAS shall enable the BAS operator to remotely control and monitor lighting from a BAS operator workstation. Control features and monitoring points displayed locally at lighting panel shall be available through the BAS.

### B. Control Module

1. Control Module Description: (This is a generic, nonproprietary control module that is not PC based.) Comply with UL 916 (CSA C22.2, No. 205); microprocessor-based, solid-state, 365-day timing and control unit. Output circuits shall be switched on or off by internally programmed time signals or by program-controlled analog or digital signals from external sources. Output circuits shall be pilot-duty relays compatible with power switching devices. An integral keypad shall provide local programming and control capability. A key-locked cover and a programmed security access code shall protect keypad use. An integral alphanumeric LCD or LED shall display menu-assisted programming and control.
2. Control Module Description: (These are typical systems developed by time-switch manufacturers as an expansion and refinement of their microprocessor-based, digital, time-switch product lines - controls are not PC based.) Comply with UL 916 (CSA C22.2, No. 205); microprocessor-based, solid-state, 365-day timing and control unit. Unit shall be programmable for control of indicated number of output circuits. Output circuits shall be switched on or off by internally programmed time signals or by program-controlled analog or digital signals from external sources. Output circuits shall be pilot-duty relays compatible with power switching devices, all located in other enclosures. An integral keypad shall provide local programming and control capability. A key-locked cover and a programmed security access code shall protect keypad use. An integral



alphanumeric LCD shall display manual-control and programming steps. Modules and their associated control panels shall include the following features:

- a. Multichannel output with <Insert number> channels.  
**OR**  
 Multiple inputs and multichannel output arranged for <Insert number> channels.
- b. Multiple inputs for indicated occupancy sensors and hand-held programming device.
3. Control Module Description: (These are low-voltage control systems developed by high-end, remote-control dimmer system manufacturers - controls are not PC based.) Comply with UL 916 (CSA C22.2, No. 205); microprocessor-based, solid-state, 365-day timing and control unit. Control units shall be programmable and capable of receiving inputs from indicated sensors and hand-held programmer. Output circuits shall be pilot-duty relays compatible with power switching devices. Output circuits shall include digital circuits arranged to transmit control commands to remote preset dimmers. Modules and their associated control panels shall include the following features:
  - a. Multichannel output with <Insert number> channels.  
**OR**  
 Multiple inputs and multichannel output arranged for <Insert number> channels.
  - b. Multiple inputs for occupancy sensors, daylight sensors, and dimming systems with associated daylight sensors.
4. Control Module Description: (This is a low-voltage control system developed around panelboards with electrically operated, molded-case circuit breakers and control module installed in panelboard - controls are not PC based.) Panelboard mounted; comply with UL 916 (CSA C22.2, No. 205); microprocessor based, solid-state, 365-day timing and control unit. Control units shall be programmable and capable of receiving inputs from sensors and other sources. Panelboard shall use low-voltage-controlled, electrically operated, molded-case branch circuit breakers as prime power-circuit switching devices. Circuit breakers and a limited number of digital or analog, low-voltage control-circuit outputs shall be individually controlled by control module. Line-voltage components and wiring shall be separated from low-voltage components and wiring by barriers. Control module shall be locally programmable. Panelboard shall also comply with Division 26 Section "Panelboards".
5. Control Module Description: (This is a refinement of classic low-voltage control system originally developed for manual, multipoint lighting control using latching-type, single-pole relays to switch 120- and 277-V circuits - controls are not PC based.) Comply with UL 508 (CSA C22.2, No. 14); microprocessor-based, programmable, control unit; mounted in preassembled, modular relay panel. Low-voltage-controlled, latching-type, single-pole lighting circuit relays shall be prime output circuit devices. Where indicated, a limited number of digital or analog, low-voltage control-circuit outputs shall be supported by control unit and circuit boards associated with relays. Control units shall be capable of receiving inputs from sensors and other sources. Line-voltage components and wiring shall be separated from low-voltage components and wiring by barriers. Control module shall be locally programmable.
6. Control Module Description: (This is a typical PC-based software control system developed to operate panelboards with electrically operated circuit breakers, relay boards with latching-type control relays, and individually addressable DALI-compliant devices. This control scheme is also suitable for integrating one or more of these boards to a PC-based control network (such as BAS, detention monitoring and control system, and HVAC control system) specified in another Section.) Programmable, PC-based unit with 17-inch color video monitor **OR** 15-inch color LCD, **as directed**, and keyboard for graphic display and programming of system status and to override breaker status; and to display status of local override controls and diagnostic information. If the control module is applied to emergency lighting units, control unit shall indicate failure of normal power and that the lighting units are, or are not, powered by the alternate power source.
  - a. Display: Single graphic display for programming lighting control panelboards.  
**OR**  
 Display: Separate graphic displays for programming each lighting control panelboard.
  - b. Interoperability: Control module shall be configured to connect with other control systems using RS-485 network to enable remote workstations to use control module functions.

**OR**

Interoperability: Control module shall be configured to connect to LonWorks-compliant **OR** BACnet-compliant, **as directed**, network, resulting in extending control to any network-compliant devices such as occupancy switches.

**OR**

Interoperability: Lighting control shall be configured to allow individual users to turn lighting on and off with their PCs. Software shall be written for Windows operating system, with Web page as the display and ActiveX controls that can be accessed through an Internet browser. Include at least three levels of password protection. Include an egress lighting option that will provide each user with a lighted path for exiting the building after normal working hours.

**OR**

Interoperability: Lighting control shall be configured to allow individual users to turn lighting on and off with DALI-compliant, digital-communication devices. Software shall be written for Windows operating system, with the full suite of DALI commands and device parameter settings.

- c. System Memory: Nonvolatile. System shall reboot program and reset time automatically without errors after power outages up to 90 days' duration.
- d. Software: Lighting control software shall be capable of linking switch inputs to relay outputs, retrieving links, viewing relay output status, controlling relay outputs, simulating switch inputs, setting device addresses, and assigning switch input and relay output modes.
- e. Automatic Time Adjustment: System shall automatically adjust for leap year and daylight saving time and shall provide weekly routine and annual holiday scheduling.
- f. Astronomic Control: Automatic adjustment of dawn and dusk switching.
- g. Demand Control: Demand shall be monitored through pulses from a remote meter and shall be controlled by programmed switching of loads. System capability shall include sliding window averaging and programming of load priorities and characteristics. Minimum of two different time-of-day demand schedules shall execute load-management control actions by switching output circuits or by transmitting other types of load-control signals.
- h. Confirmation: Each relay or contactor device operated by system shall have auxiliary contacts that provide a confirmation signal to the system of on or off status of device. On or off status confirmation for each electrically operated circuit breaker shall be provided by an auxiliary contact or by a sensing device at load terminal.
  - 1) Software shall interpret status signals, provide for their display, and initiate failure signals.

**OR**

Lamp or LED at control module or display panel shall identify status of each controlled circuit.

- i. Remote Communication Capability: Allow programming, data-gathering interrogation, status display, and controlled command override from a PC at a remote location over telephone lines **OR** data links **OR** DALI networks **OR** power line carrier, **as directed**. System shall include modem, communications and control software, and remote computer compatibility verification for this purpose.
- j. Telephone Override Capability: Override programmed lighting shutdown commands by telephoning computer and shall enter a voice-menu-guided, override touch-tone code specific to zone being controlled.
- k. Local Override Capability: Manual, low-voltage control devices shall override programmed shutdown of lighting and shall override other programmed control for intervals that may be duration programmed.
- l. Automatic Control of Local Override: Automatic control shall switch lighting off if lighting has been switched on by local override. Comply with provisions in California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Part 6, **as directed**.
- m. Automatic battery backup shall provide power to maintain program and system clock operation for 90 days' minimum duration when power is off.
- n. Programmed time signals shall change preset scenes and dimmer settings.



- o. Daylight Balancing Dimming Control: Control module shall interpret variable analog signal from photoelectric sensor and shall route dimming signals to dimming fluorescent ballast control circuits. Signal shall control dimming of fixture so illumination level remains constant as daylight contribution varies.
- p. Daylight Compensating Switch Control: Control module shall interpret a preset threshold illumination-level signal from a photoelectric relay and shall activate relays controlling power to selected groups of lighting fixtures to turn them on and off to maintain adjustable minimum illumination level as daylight contribution varies.
- q. Energy Conservation: Bilevel control of special ballasts or dimming circuits to comply with local energy codes.
- r. Flick Warning: Programmable momentary turnoff of lights shall warn that programmed shutoff will occur after a preset interval. Warning shall be repeated after a second preset interval before end of programmed override period.
- s. Diagnostics: When system operates improperly, software shall initiate factory-programmed diagnosis of failure and display messages identifying problem and possible causes.
- t. Additional Programming: In addition to system programming by the PC, individual control modules shall be programmable using data-entry and -retrieval (such as PCs, personal digital assistants (PDAs), hand-held infrared programming devices, wired Ethernet hubs, wireless IEEE 802.11 hubs).

C. Power Distribution Components (For DALI-Compliant Networks)

1. Modular Relay Panel: Comply with UL 508 (CSA C22.2, No. 14) and UL 916 (CSA C22.2, No. 205); factory assembled with modular single-pole relays, power supplies, and accessory components required for specified performance.
  - a. Cabinet: Steel with hinged, locking door.
    - 1) Barriers separate low-voltage and line-voltage components.
    - 2) Directory: Mounted on back of door. Identifies each relay as to load groups controlled and each programmed pilot device if any.
    - 3) Control Power Supply: Transformer and full-wave rectifier with filtered dc output.
  - b. Single-Pole Relays: Mechanically held unless otherwise indicated; split-coil, momentary-pulsed type.
    - 1) Low-Voltage Leads: Plug connector to the connector strip in cabinet and pilot light power where indicated.
    - 2) Rated Capacity (Mounted in Relay Panel): 20 A, 125-V ac for tungsten filaments; 20 A, 277-V ac for ballasts.
    - 3) Endurance: 50,000 cycles at rated capacity.
    - 4) Mounting: Provision for easy removal and installation in relay cabinet.
2. Electrically Operated, Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker Panelboard: Comply with NEMA PB 1 and UL 50 (CSA C22.2, No. 94), UL 67 (CSA C22.2, No. 29), UL 489 (CSA C22.2, No. 65), and UL 916 (CSA C22.2, No. 205).
  - a. Cabinets: In addition to requirements specified below, comply with Division 26 Section "Panelboards".
  - b. Electrically Operated, Molded-Case Circuit Breakers: Bolt-on type.
    - 1) Switching Endurance Ratings: Certified by manufacturer or by a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) for at least 20,000 open and close operations under rated load at 0.8 power factor.
    - 2) Minimum 30,000 open and close operations with load equal to circuit-breaker trip rating and consisting of 100 percent tungsten filament load.
    - 3) Minimum 30,000 open and close operations with load equal to circuit-breaker trip rating and consisting of 100 percent fluorescent ballasts rated for 10 percent total harmonic distortion.
    - 4) Listed and labeled as complying with UL SWD, HCAR, and HID ratings by a national recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Line-Voltage Surge Suppression: Factory installed as an integral part of 120- and 277-V ac, solid-state control panels.



**OR**

Line-Voltage Surge Suppression: Field-mounting surge suppressors that comply with Division 26 Section "Transient-voltage Suppression For Low-voltage Electrical Power Circuits" for Category A locations.

**OR**

Line-Voltage Surge Suppression: Factory installed as an integral part of 120- and 277-V ac, solid-state control panels or field-mounting surge suppressors that comply with Division 26 Section "Transient-voltage Suppression For Low-voltage Electrical Power Circuits" for Category A locations.

**D. DALI Network Materials**

1. Network Power Supply and Router: Interface device connecting TCP/IP control networks to DALI-compliant network.
  - a. DALI-Compliant Network Power Rating: One full-rated network for **OR** Two full-rated networks, each capable of, **as directed**, powering up to 64 addressable devices for each network; suitable for use with NFPA 70, Class 1 and Class 2 control circuits; and 16 V dc, 250 mA.
  - b. Primary Power: 120 or 277 V, field selectable; 12 VA.
  - c. 10basT Ethernet port.
  - d. LED indicator lights for Ethernet status (link, send, and receive), power-on, and DALI network failure.
2. Lighting Control Software:
  - a. Five-tier hierarchical architecture; high-speed, parallel query; and distributed-logic processing scalable from single rooms to full campuses.
  - b. Automatic backup for all settings and parameters.
  - c. TCP/IP network protocol.
  - d. Interactive with other building management systems at TCP/IP level.
  - e. At least three security levels.
  - f. Support the full suite of DALI commands and device parameter settings.
  - g. Scheduling modules to provide building-wide scene scheduling.
  - h. Billing modules to track energy use for multiple tenants and able to produce monthly billing statements.
  - i. Support load shedding, peak shaving, sweeps with local override, and other energy-conservation measures.
  - j. Able to report individual device status, including inoperative lamps, ballast failure detection, and dimmer position.

**E. Manual Switches And Plates**

1. Push-Button Switches: Modular, momentary-contact, low-voltage type.
  - a. Match color specified in Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices".
  - b. Integral green LED **OR** neon, **as directed**, pilot light to indicate when circuit is on.
  - c. Internal white LED **OR** neon, **as directed**, locator light to illuminate when circuit is off.
2. Manual, Maintained Contact, Full- or Low-Voltage Switch: Comply with Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices".
3. Wall-Box Dimmers: Comply with Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices".
4. Wall Plates: Single and multigang plates as specified in Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices"
5. Legend: Engraved or permanently silk-screened on wall plate where indicated. Use designations indicated on Drawings.

**F. Conductors And Cables**

1. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Class 2 Power Source: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG, complying with Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".
2. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cables: Multiconductor cable with copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 **OR** 22 **OR** 24, **as directed**, AWG, complying with Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".



3. Class 1 Control Cables: Multiconductor cable with copper conductors not smaller than No. 14 **OR** 16 **OR** 18, **as directed**, AWG, complying with Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".
4. Digital and Multiplexed Signal Cables: Unshielded, twisted-pair cable with copper conductors, complying with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, Category 5e **OR** 6, **as directed**, for horizontal copper cable and with Division 28 Section "Conductors And Cables For Electronic Safety And Security".

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Wiring Installation

1. Comply with NECA 1.
2. Wiring Method: Install wiring in raceways except where installed in accessible ceilings and gypsum board partitions. Comply with Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables". Minimum conduit size shall be 1/2 inch (13 mm).
3. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points. Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Install field-mounting transient voltage suppressors for lighting control devices in Category A locations that do not have integral line-voltage surge protection.
5. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions, unless otherwise indicated.
6. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in terminal cabinets, equipment enclosures, and in junction, pull, and outlet boxes.
7. Identify components and power and control wiring according to Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".

#### B. Field Quality Control

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and assist in field testing. Report results in writing.
2. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
  - a. Test for circuit continuity.
  - b. Verify that the control module features are operational.
  - c. Check operation of local override controls.
  - d. Test system diagnostics by simulating improper operation of several components selected by the Owner.

#### C. Software Installation

1. Install and program software with initial settings of adjustable values. Make backup copies of software and user-supplied values. Provide current licenses for software.

#### D. Adjusting

1. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Final Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting sensors and to assist the Owner's personnel in making program changes to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other than normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

#### E. Demonstration

1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain lighting controls and software training for PC-based control systems.

END OF SECTION 26 09 23 00



## SECTION 26 09 23 00a - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for lighting control devices. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following lighting control devices:
  - a. Time switches.
  - b. Outdoor and Indoor photoelectric switches.
  - c. Indoor occupancy sensors.
  - d. Outdoor motion sensors.
  - e. Lighting contactors.
  - f. Emergency shunt relays.

#### C. Definitions

1. LED: Light-emitting diode.
2. PIR: Passive infrared.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Field quality-control test reports.
3. Operation and maintenance data.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Time Switches

1. Electronic Time Switches: Electronic, solid-state programmable units with alphanumeric display; complying with UL 917.
  - a. Contact Configuration: SPST **OR** DPST **OR** DPDT, **as directed**.
  - b. Contact Rating: 30-A inductive or resistive, 240-V ac **OR** 20-A ballast load, 120/240-V ac, **as directed**.
  - c. Program: 8 on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Program: 2 on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule, allowing different set points for each day of the week and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Programs: channels; each channel shall be individually programmable with 8 on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule.  
**OR**  
Programs: channels; each channel shall be individually programmable with 2 on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule with skip-a-day weekly schedule.

**OR**

Programs: channels; each channel shall be individually programmable with 2 on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule, allowing different set points for each day of the week.

**OR**

Programs: channels; each channel shall be individually programmable with 40 on-off operations per week and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays.

**OR**

Programs: channels; each channel shall be individually programmable with 40 on-off operations per week, plus 4 seasonal schedules that modify the basic program, and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays.

**OR**

Program: Configuration, as directed by the Owner and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays, **as directed**.

- d. Circuitry: Allow connection of a photoelectric relay as substitute for on-off function of a program on selected channels, **as directed**.
  - e. Astronomic Time: All **OR** Selected, **as directed**, channels.
  - f. Battery Backup: For schedules and time clock.
2. Electromechanical-Dial Time Switches: Type complying with UL 917.
- a. Contact Configuration: SPST **OR** DPST **OR** SPDT **OR** DPDT, **as directed**.
  - b. Contact Rating: 30-A inductive or resistive, 240-V ac **OR** 20-A ballast load, 120/240-V ac, **as directed**.
  - c. Circuitry: Allow connection of a photoelectric relay as substitute for on-off function of a program.
  - d. Astronomic time dial.
  - e. Eight-Day Program: Uniquely programmable for each weekday and holidays.
  - f. Skip-a-day mode.
  - g. Wound-spring reserve carryover mechanism to keep time during power failures, minimum of 16 hours.

**B. Outdoor Photoelectric Switches**

- 1. Description: Solid state, with SPST **OR** DPST, **as directed**, dry contacts rated for 1800-VA tungsten or 1000-VA inductive, to operate connected relay, contactor coils, or microprocessor input; complying with UL 773A.
  - a. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1.5 to 10 fc (16.14 to 108 lx), with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range, and a directional lens in front of photocell to prevent fixed light sources from causing turn-off, **as directed**.
  - b. Time Delay: 15-second minimum, to prevent false operation.
  - c. Surge Protection: Metal-oxide varistor, complying with IEEE C62.41.1, IEEE C62.41.2, and IEEE 62.45 for Category A1 locations.
  - d. Mounting: Twist lock complying with IEEE C136.10, with base-and-stem mounting or stem-and-swivel mounting accessories as required to direct sensor to the north sky exposure.

**OR**

Description: Solid state, with SPST **OR** DPST, **as directed**, dry contacts rated for 1800 VA to operate connected load, relay, or contactor coils; complying with UL 773.

- a. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1.5 to 10 fc (16.14 to 108 lx), with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range.
- b. Time Delay: 30-second minimum, to prevent false operation.
- c. Lightning Arrester: Air-gap type.
- d. Mounting: Twist lock complying with IEEE C136.10, with base.

**C. Indoor Photoelectric Switches**



1. Ceiling-Mounted Photoelectric Switch: Solid-state, light-level sensor unit, with separate relay unit mounted on luminaire, **as directed**, to detect changes in lighting levels that are perceived by the eye. Cadmium sulfide photoresistors are not acceptable.
    - a. Sensor Output: Contacts rated to operate the associated relay, complying with UL 773A. Sensor shall be powered from the relay unit.
    - b. Relay Unit: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Power supply to sensor shall be 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source as defined by NFPA 70.
    - c. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 10 to 200 fc (108 to 2152 lx) **OR** 100 to 1000 fc (1080 to 10 800 lx), **as directed**, with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range.
    - d. Time Delay: Adjustable from 5 to 300 seconds to prevent cycling, with deadband adjustment.
    - e. Indicator: Two LEDs to indicate the beginning of on-off cycles.
  2. Skylight Photoelectric Sensors: Solid-state, light-level sensor; housed in a threaded, plastic fitting for mounting under skylight, facing up at skylight; with separate relay unit mounted on luminaire, **as directed**, to detect changes in lighting levels that are perceived by the eye. Cadmium sulfide photoresistors are not acceptable.
    - a. Sensor Output: Contacts rated to operate the associated relay, complying with UL 773A. Sensor shall be powered from the relay unit.
    - b. Relay Unit: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Power supply to sensor shall be 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source as defined by NFPA 70.
    - c. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1000 to 10,000 fc (10 800 to 108 000 lx), with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range.
    - d. Time Delay: Adjustable from 5 to 300 seconds to prevent cycling, with deadband adjustment.
    - e. Indicator: Two LEDs to indicate the beginning of on-off cycles.
- D. Indoor Occupancy Sensors
1. General Description: Wall- or ceiling-mounting, solid-state units with a separate relay unit.
    - a. Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when covered area is occupied and off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
    - b. Sensor Output: Contacts rated to operate the connected relay, complying with UL 773A. Sensor shall be powered from the relay unit.
    - c. Relay Unit: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Power supply to sensor shall be 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source as defined by NFPA 70.
    - d. Mounting:
      - 1) Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outlet box.
      - 2) Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2-inch (13-mm) knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
      - 3) Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.
    - e. Indicator: LED, to show when motion is being detected during testing and normal operation of the sensor.
    - f. Bypass Switch: Override the on function in case of sensor failure.
    - g. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc (21.5 to 2152 lx); keep lighting off when selected lighting level is present.
  2. PIR Type: Ceiling mounting; detect occupancy by sensing a combination of heat and movement in area of coverage.
    - a. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch- (150-mm-) minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in. (232 sq. cm).
    - b. Detection Coverage (Room): Detect occupancy anywhere in a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. (93 sq. m) when mounted on a 96-inch- (2440-mm-) high ceiling.



- c. Detection Coverage (Corridor): Detect occupancy within 90 feet (27.4 m) when mounted on a 10-foot- (3-m-) high ceiling.
  - 3. Ultrasonic Type: Ceiling mounting; detect occupancy by sensing a change in pattern of reflected ultrasonic energy in area of coverage.
    - a. Detector Sensitivity: Detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches (305 mm) in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s (305 mm/s).
    - b. Detection Coverage (Small Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 600 sq. ft. (56 sq. m) when mounted on a 96-inch- (2440-mm-) high ceiling.
    - c. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. (93 sq. m) when mounted on a 96-inch- (2440-mm-) high ceiling.
    - d. Detection Coverage (Large Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 2000 sq. ft. (186 sq. m) when mounted on a 96-inch- (2440-mm-) high ceiling.
    - e. Detection Coverage (Corridor): Detect occupancy anywhere within 90 feet (27.4 m) when mounted on a 10-foot- (3-m-) high ceiling in a corridor not wider than 14 feet (4.3 m).
  - 4. Dual-Technology Type: Ceiling mounting; detect occupancy by using a combination of PIR and ultrasonic detection methods in area of coverage. Particular technology or combination of technologies that controls on-off functions shall be selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.
    - a. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.
    - b. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch- (150-mm-) minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in. (232 sq. cm), and detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches (305 mm) in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s (305 mm/s).
    - c. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. (93 sq. m) when mounted on a 96-inch- (2440-mm-) high ceiling.
- E. Outdoor Motion Sensors (PIR)
  - 1. Performance Requirements: Suitable for operation in ambient temperatures ranging from minus 40 to plus 130 deg F (minus 40 to plus 54 deg C), rated as raintight according to UL 773A.
    - a. Operation: Turn lights on when sensing infrared energy changes between background and moving body in area of coverage; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
    - b. Mounting:
      - 1) Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outdoor junction box.
      - 2) Relay: Internally mounted in a standard weatherproof electrical enclosure.
      - 3) Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.
    - c. Bypass Switch: Override the on function in case of sensor failure.
    - d. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 1 to 20 fc (11 to 215 lx); keep lighting off during daylight hours.
  - 2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch- (150-mm-) minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in. (232 sq. cm).
  - 3. Detection Coverage: Up to 35 feet (11 m), with a field of view of 90 degrees **OR** Up to 100 feet (30 m), with a field of view of 60 degrees **OR** Up to 35 feet (11 m), with a field of view of 180 degrees **OR** Up to 52.5 feet (16 m), with a field of view of 270 degrees, **as directed**.
  - 4. Lighting Fixture Mounted Sensor: Suitable for switching 300 W of tungsten load at 120- or 277-V ac.
  - 5. Individually Mounted Sensor: Contacts rated to operate the connected relay, complying with UL 773A. Sensor shall be powered from the relay unit.
    - a. Relay Unit: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Power supply to sensor shall be 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source as defined by NFPA 70.



- b. Indicator: LED, to show when motion is being detected during testing and normal operation of the sensor.

F. Lighting Contactors

1. Description: Electrically operated and mechanically **OR** electrically, **as directed**, held, combination type with fusible switch **OR** nonfused disconnect, **as directed**, complying with NEMA ICS 2 and UL 508.
  - a. Current Rating for Switching: Listing or rating consistent with type of load served, including tungsten filament, inductive, and high-inrush ballast (ballast with 15 percent or less total harmonic distortion of normal load current).
  - b. Fault Current Withstand Rating: Equal to or exceeding the available fault current at the point of installation.
  - c. Enclosure: Comply with NEMA 250.
  - d. Provide with control and pilot devices as indicated on Drawings **OR** scheduled, **as directed**, matching the NEMA type specified for the enclosure.
2. BAS Interface: Provide hardware interface to enable the BAS to monitor and control lighting contactors.
  - a. Monitoring: On-off status, as directed by the Owner.
  - b. Control: On-off operation, as directed by the Owner.

G. Emergency Shunt Relay

1. Description: Normally closed, electrically held relay, arranged for wiring in parallel with manual or automatic, **as directed**, switching contacts; complying with UL 924.
  - a. Coil Rating: 120 **OR** 277, **as directed**, V.

H. Conductors And Cables

1. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".
2. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 **OR** 22 **OR** 24, **as directed**, AWG. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".
3. Class 1 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 14 **OR** 16 **OR** 18, **as directed**, AWG. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Sensor Installation

1. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90 percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Contactor Installation

1. Mount electrically held lighting contactors with elastomeric isolator pads, to eliminate structure-borne vibration, unless contactors are installed in an enclosure with factory-installed vibration isolators.

C. Wiring Installation

1. Wiring Method: Comply with Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables". Minimum conduit size shall be 1/2 inch (13 mm).
2. Wiring within Enclosures: Comply with NECA 1. Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions, unless otherwise indicated.



4. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

D. Identification

1. Identify components and power and control wiring according to Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
  - a. Identify controlled circuits in lighting contactors.
  - b. Identify circuits or luminaries controlled by photoelectric and occupancy sensors at each sensor.
2. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

E. Field Quality Control

1. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
  - a. After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, adjust and test for compliance with requirements.
  - b. Operational Test: Verify operation of each lighting control device, and adjust time delays.
2. Lighting control devices that fail tests and inspections are defective work.

END OF SECTION 26 09 23 00a



**SECTION 26 09 23 00b - ELECTRICAL POWER MONITORING AND CONTROL**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for electrical power monitoring and control. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following for monitoring and control of electrical power system:
  - a. PC-based workstation(s) and software.
  - b. Communication network and interface modules for RS-232; RS-485, Modbus TCP/IP; and IEEE 802.3 data transmission protocols.

## C. Definitions

1. Ethernet: Local area network based on IEEE 802.3 standards.
2. Firmware: Software (programs or data) that has been written onto read-only memory (ROM). Firmware is a combination of software and hardware. Storage media with ROMs that have data or programs recorded on them are firmware.
3. HTML: Hypertext markup language.
4. I/O: Input/output.
5. KB: Short for kilobyte. When used to describe data storage, "KB" represents 1024 bytes.
6. KY Pulse: A term used by the metering industry to describe a method of measuring consumption of electricity that is based on a relay changing status in response to the rotation of the disk in the meter.
7. LAN: Local area network; sometimes plural as "LANs."
8. LCD: Liquid crystal display.
9. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or remote-control, signaling and power-limited circuits.
10. Modbus TCP/IP: An open protocol for exchange of process data.
11. Monitoring: Acquisition, processing, communication, and display of equipment status data, metered electrical parameter values, power quality evaluation data, event and alarm signals, tabulated reports, and event logs.
12. PC: Personal computer; sometimes plural as "PCs."
13. rms: Root-mean-square value of alternating voltage, which is the square root of the mean value of the square of the voltage values during a complete cycle.
14. RS-232: A TIA standard for asynchronous serial data communications between terminal devices.
15. RS-485: A TIA standard for multipoint communications using two twisted-pairs.
16. TCP/IP: Transport control protocol/Internet protocol incorporated into Microsoft Windows.
17. THD: Total harmonic distortion.
18. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply; used both in singular and plural context.
19. WAN: Wide area network.

## D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
  - a. Attach copies of approved Product Data submittals for products (such as switchboards and switchgear) that describe power monitoring and control features to illustrate coordination among related equipment and power monitoring and control.
2. Shop Drawings: For power monitoring and control equipment. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - a. Outline Drawings: Indicate arrangement of components and clearance and access requirements.



- b. Block Diagram: Show interconnections between components specified in this Section and devices furnished with power distribution system components. Indicate data communication paths and identify networks, data buses, data gateways, concentrators, and other devices to be used. Describe characteristics of network and other data communication lines.
  - c. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - d. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring. Coordinate nomenclature and presentation with a block diagram.
  - e. UPS sizing calculations for workstation.
  3. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:
    - a. Self-study guide describing the process for setting equipment's network address; setting the Owner's options; procedures to ensure data access from any PC on the network, using a standard Web browser; and recommended firewall setup.
    - b. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
    - c. Software Backup: On a magnetic media or compact disc, complete with the Owner-selected options.
    - d. Device address list and the set point of each device and operator option, as set in applications software.
    - e. Graphic file and printout of graphic screens and related icons, with legend.
  4. Software Upgrade Kit: For the Owner to use in modifying software to suit future power system revisions or power monitoring and control revisions.
  5. Software licenses and upgrades required by and installed for operating and programming digital and analog devices.
  6. Field quality-control test reports.
  7. Operation and Maintenance Data: For power monitoring and control units, to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Include the following:
    - a. Operating and applications software documentation.
    - b. Software licenses.
    - c. Software service agreement.
    - d. PC installation and operating documentation, manuals, and software for the PC and all installed peripherals. Software shall include system restore, emergency boot diskettes, and drivers for all installed hardware. Provide separately for each PC.
    - e. Hard copies of manufacturer's specification sheets, operating specifications, design guides, user's guides for software and hardware, and PDF files on CD-ROM of the hard-copy submittal.
  8. Other Informational Submittals:
    - a. System installation and setup guides, with data forms to plan and record options and setup decisions.
- E. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- F. Software Service Agreement
1. Technical Support: Beginning with Final Completion, provide software support for two years.
  2. Upgrade Service: Update software to latest version at Project completion. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Final Completion. Upgrading software shall include the operating systems. Upgrade shall include new or revised licenses for use of software.
    - a. Provide 30-day notice to the Owner to allow scheduling and access to system and to allow the Owner to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.



## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Functional Description

1. Instrumentation and Recording Devices: Monitor and record load profiles and chart energy consumption patterns.
  - a. Calculate and Record the Following:
    - 1) Load factor.
    - 2) Peak demand periods.
    - 3) Consumption correlated with facility activities.
  - b. Measure and Record Metering Data for the Following:
    - 1) Electricity.
    - 2) Domestic water.
    - 3) Natural gas.
2. Software: Calculate allocation of utility costs.
  - a. Automatically Import Energy Usage Records to Allocate Energy Costs for the Following:
    - 1) At least 15 departments.
    - 2) At least 30 tenants.
    - 3) At least five processes.
    - 4) At least five buildings.
  - b. Verify utility bills and analyze alternate energy rates, **as directed**.
3. Power Quality Monitoring: Identify power system anomalies and measure, display, and record trends and alarms of the following power quality parameters:
  - a. Voltage regulation and unbalance.
  - b. Continuous three-phase rms voltage.
  - c. Periodic max./min./avg. samples.
  - d. Harmonics.
  - e. Voltage excursions.
4. Emergency Load Shedding. Preserve critical loads or avoid total shutdown due to unforeseen loss of power sources according to the following logic:
  - a. Determine system topology.
  - b. Evaluate remaining loads and sources.
  - c. Shed loads in less than 100 ms.
5. Demand Management:
  - a. Peaking or co-generator control.
  - b. Load interlocking.
  - c. Load shedding.
  - d. Load trimming.
6. System: Report equipment status and power system control.

### B. System Requirements

1. Monitoring and Control System: Include PC-based workstation **OR** multiple PC-based workstations **OR** multiple PC-based workstations with graphics capability and Web access, **as directed**, with its operating system and application software, connected to data transmission network.
2. Surge Protection: For external wiring of each conductor entry connection to components to protect components from voltage surges originating external to equipment housing and entering through power, communication, signal, control, or sensing leads.
  - a. Minimum Protection for Power Lines 120 V and More: Auxiliary panel suppressors complying with requirements in Division 26 Section "Transient-voltage Suppression For Low-voltage Electrical Power Circuits".
  - b. Minimum Protection for Communication, Signal, Control, and Low-Voltage Power Lines: Comply with requirements as recommended by manufacturer for type of line being protected.
3. Addressable Devices: All transmitters and receivers shall communicate unique device identification and status reports to monitoring and control clients.



4. BAS Interface: Provide factory-installed hardware and software to enable the BAS to monitor, display, and record data for use in processing reports.
    - a. Hardwired Monitoring Points: Electrical power demand (kilowatts), electrical power consumption (kilowatt-hours), power factor, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
 ASHRAE 135 (BACnet) **OR** LonTalk **OR** Modbus **OR** Industry-accepted, open-protocol, **as directed**, communication interface with the BAS shall enable the BAS operator to remotely monitor meter information from a BAS operator workstation. Control features and monitoring points displayed locally at metering panel shall be available through the BAS.
- C. Operating System
1. Software: Configured to run on a portable laptop computer, a single PC, or a palm computer, with capability for accessing a single meter at a time. System is not connected to a LAN. Modbus TCP/IP, RS-232, and RS-485 digital communications.  
**OR**  
 Software: Configured to run on a single PC, with capability for accessing multiple devices simultaneously. Modbus TCP/IP, RS-232, and RS-485 digital communications.  
**OR**  
 Software: Configured for a server and multiple client PCs, each with capability for accessing multiple devices simultaneously. Ethernet, Modbus TCP/IP, RS-232, and RS-485 digital communications.  
**OR**  
 Software: Configured for a server and multiple client PCs, each with capability for accessing multiple devices simultaneously. Software shall include interactive graphics client and shall be Web enabled. Workstations and portable computers shall not require any software except for an Internet browser to provide connectivity and full functionality. Include a firewall recommended by manufacturer. 100 Base-T Ethernet, Modbus TCP/IP RS-232, and RS-485 digital communications.
  2. Operating System Software: Based on 32-bit, Microsoft Windows workstation operating system. Software shall have the following features:
    - a. Multiuser and multitasking to allow independent activities and monitoring to occur simultaneously at different workstations.
    - b. Graphical user interface to show pull-down menus and a menu tree format.
    - c. Capability for future additions within the indicated system size limits.
  3. Peer Computer Control Software: Shall detect a failure of workstation and associated server, **as directed**, and shall cause other workstation and associated server, **as directed**, to assume control of all system functions without interruption of operation. Drivers shall be provided in both central computers to support this mode of operation.
- D. Applications Software
1. Basic Requirements:
    - a. Fully compatible with and based on the approved operating system.
    - b. Password-protected operator login and access; three levels, minimum.
    - c. Password-protected setup functions.
    - d. Context sensitive on-line help.
    - e. Capability of creating, deleting, and copying files; and automatically maintaining a directory of all files, including size and location of each sequential and random-ordered record.
    - f. Capability for importing custom icons into graphic views to represent alarms and I/O devices.
    - g. Automatic and encrypted backups for database and history; automatically stored at central control PC **OR** selected workstation, **as directed**, and encrypted with a nine-character alphanumeric password, which must be used to restore or read data contained in backup.
    - h. Operator audit trail for recording and reporting all changes made to user-defined system options.
  2. Workstation Server Functions:



- a. Support other client PCs on the LAN and WAN, **as directed**.
- b. Maintain recorded data in databases accessible from other PCs on the LAN and WAN, **as directed**.
3. Data Formats:
  - a. User-programmable export and import of data to and from commonly used Microsoft Windows spreadsheet, database, billing, and other applications; using dynamic data exchange technology.
  - b. Option to convert reports and graphics to HTML format.
  - c. Interactive graphics.
  - d. Option to send preprogrammed or operator designed e-mail reports.
4. Metered Data: Display metered values in real time.
5. Remote Control:
  - a. Display circuit-breaker status and allow breaker control.
  - b. User defined with load-shedding automatically initiated and executed schemes responding to programmed time schedules, set points of metered demands, utility contracted load shedding, or combinations of these.
6. Equipment Documentation: Database for recording of equipment ratings and characteristics; with capability for graphic display on monitors.
7. Graphics: Interactive color-graphics platform with pull-down menus and mouse-driven generation of power system graphics, in formats widely used for such drafting; to include the following:
  - a. Site plan.
  - b. Floor plans.
  - c. Equipment elevations.
  - d. Single-line diagrams.
8. User-Defined Monitoring and Control Events: Display and record with date and time stamps accurate to 0.1 second, and including the following:
  - a. Operator log on/off.
  - b. Attempted operator log on/off.
  - c. All alarms.
  - d. Equipment operation counters.
  - e. Out-of-limit, pickup, trip, and no-response events.
9. Trending Reports: Display data acquired in real-time from different meters or devices, in historical format over user-defined time; unlimited as to interval, duration, or quantity of trends.
  - a. Spreadsheet functions of sum, delta, percent, average, mean, standard deviation, and related functions applied to recorded data.
  - b. Charting, statistical, and display functions of standard Windows-based spreadsheet.
10. Alarms: Display and record alarm messages from discrete input and controls outputs, according to user programmable protocol.
  - a. Functions requiring user acknowledgment shall run in background during computer use for other applications and override other presentations when they occur.
11. Waveform Data: Display and record waveforms on demand or automatically on an alarm or programmed event; include the graphic displays of the following, based on user-specified criteria:
  - a. Phase voltages, phase currents, and residual current.
  - b. Overlay of three-phase currents, and overlay each phase voltage and current.
  - c. Waveforms ranging in length from 2 cycles to 5 minutes.
  - d. Disturbance and steady-state waveforms up to 512 points per cycle.
  - e. Transient waveforms up to 83,333 points per cycle on 60-Hz base.
  - f. Calculated waveform on a minimum of four cycles of data of the following:
    - 1) THD.
    - 2) rms magnitudes.
    - 3) Peak values.
    - 4) Crest factors.
    - 5) Magnitude of individual harmonics.
12. Data Sharing: Allow export of recorded displays and tabular data to third-party applications software.
13. Tenant or Activity Billing Software:



- a. Automatically compute and prepare tenant bills **OR** activity demand and energy-use statements, **as directed**, based on metering of energy use and peak demand integrated over user-defined interval.
  - b. Intervals shall be same as used by electric utilities, including current vendor.
  - c. Import metered data from saved records that were generated by metering and monitoring software.
  - d. Maintain separate directory for each tenant's historical billing information.
  - e. Prepare summary reports in user-defined formats and time intervals.
14. Reporting: User commands initiate the reporting of a list of current alarm, supervisory, and trouble conditions in system or a log of past events.
- a. Print a record of user-defined alarm, supervisory, and trouble events on workstation printer.
  - b. Sort and report by device name and by function.
  - c. Report type of signal (alarm, supervisory, or trouble), description, date, and time of occurrence.
  - d. Differentiate alarm signals from other indications.
  - e. When system is reset, report reset event with same information concerning device, location, date, and time.
- E. Communication Components And Networks
1. Transient Voltage Surge Suppression and Electromagnetic-Interference Immunity: Include in solid-state equipment. Comply with IEEE C37.90.
  2. Network Configuration: High-speed, multi-access, open nonproprietary, industry standard communication protocol; LANs complying with EIA 485, 100 Base-T Ethernet, and Modbus TCP/IP.
- F. Power Monitors
1. Separately mounted, permanently installed instrument for power monitoring and control.
    - a. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** 12, **as directed**.
  2. Environmental Conditions: System components shall be capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:
    - a. Indoor installation in non-air-conditioned **OR** nontemperature-controlled, **as directed**, spaces that have environmental controls to maintain ambient conditions of 0 to 122 deg F (minus 18 to plus 50 deg C) dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.
  3. rms Real-Time Measurements:
    - a. Current: Each phase, neutral, average of three phases, percent unbalance.
    - b. Voltage: Line-to-line each phase, line-to-line average of three phases, line-to-neutral each phase, line-to-neutral average of three phases, line-to-neutral percent unbalance.
    - c. Power: Per phase and three-phase total.
    - d. Reactive Power: Per phase and three-phase total.
    - e. Apparent Power: Per phase and three-phase total.
    - f. Power Factor: Per phase and three-phase total.
    - g. Displacement Power Factor: Per phase and three-phase total.
    - h. Frequency.
    - i. THD: Current and voltage.
    - j. Accumulated Energy: Real kWh, reactive kVARh, apparent kVAh (signed/absolute).
    - k. Incremental Energy: Real kWh, reactive kVARh, apparent kVAh (signed/absolute).
    - l. Conditional Energy: Real kWh, reactive kVARh, apparent kVAh (signed/absolute).
  4. Demand Current Calculations, per Phase, Three-Phase Average and Neutral:
    - a. Present.
    - b. Running average.
    - c. Last completed interval.
    - d. Peak.
  5. Demand Real Power Calculations, Three-Phase Total:



- a. Present.
  - b. Running average.
  - c. Last completed interval.
  - d. Predicted.
  - e. Peak.
  - f. Coincident with peak kVA demand.
  - g. Coincident with kVAR demand.
6. Demand Reactive Power Calculations, Three-Phase Total:
- a. Present.
  - b. Running average.
  - c. Last completed interval.
  - d. Predicted.
  - e. Peak.
  - f. Coincident with peak kVA demand.
  - g. Coincident with kVAR demand.
7. Demand Apparent Power Calculations, Three-Phase Total:
- a. Present.
  - b. Running average.
  - c. Last completed interval.
  - d. Predicted.
  - e. Peak.
  - f. Coincident with peak kVA demand.
  - g. Coincident with kVAR demand.
8. Average Power Factor Calculations, Demand Coincident, Three-Phase Total:
- a. Last completed interval.
  - b. Coincident with kW peak.
  - c. Coincident with kVAR peak.
  - d. Coincident with kVA peak.
9. Power Analysis Values:
- a. THD, Voltage and Current: Per phase, three phase, and neutral.
  - b. Displacement Power Factor: Per phase, three phase.
  - c. Fundamental Voltage, Magnitude and Angle: Per phase.
  - d. Fundamental Currents, Magnitude and Angle: Per phase.
  - e. Fundamental Real Power: Per phase, three phase.
  - f. Fundamental Reactive Power: Per phase.
  - g. Harmonic Power: Per phase, three phase.
  - h. Phase rotation.
  - i. Unbalance: Current and voltage.
  - j. Harmonic Magnitudes and Angles for Current and Voltages: Per phase, up to 31st **OR** 63<sup>rd</sup>, **as directed**, harmonic.
10. Power Demand Calculations: According to one of the following calculation methods, selectable by the user:
- a. Thermal Demand: Sliding window updated every second for the present demand and at end of the interval for the last interval. Adjustable window that can be set in 1-minute intervals, from 1 to 60 minutes.
  - b. Block Interval with Optional Subintervals: Adjustable for 1-minute intervals, from 1 to 60 minutes. User-defined parameters for the following block intervals:
    - 1) Sliding block that calculates demand every second, with intervals less than 15 minutes, and every 15 seconds with an interval between 15 and 60 minutes.
    - 2) Fixed block that calculates demand at end of the interval.
    - 3) Rolling block subinterval that calculates demand at end of each subinterval and displays it at end of the interval.
  - c. Demand Calculation Initiated by a Synchronization Signal:
    - 1) Signal is a pulse from an external source. Demand period begins with every pulse. Calculation shall be configurable as either a block or rolling block calculation.



- 2) Signal is a communication signal. Calculation shall be configurable as either a block or rolling block calculation.
  - 3) Demand can be synchronized with clock in the power meter.
11. Sampling:
    - a. Current and voltage shall be digitally sampled at a rate high enough to provide accuracy to 63rd harmonic of 60-Hz fundamental.
    - b. Power monitor shall provide continuous sampling at a rate of 128 samples per cycle on all voltage and current channels in the meter.
  12. Minimum and Maximum Values: Record monthly minimum and maximum values, including date and time of record. For three-phase measurements, identify phase of recorded value. Record the following parameters:
    - a. Line-to-line voltage.
    - b. Line-to-neutral voltage.
    - c. Current per phase.
    - d. Line-to-line voltage unbalance.
    - e. Line-to-neutral voltage unbalance.
    - f. Power factor.
    - g. Displacement power factor.
    - h. Total power.
    - i. Total reactive power.
    - j. Total apparent power.
    - k. THD voltage L-L.
    - l. THD voltage L-N.
    - m. THD current.
    - n. Frequency.
  13. Harmonic Calculation: Display and record the following:
    - a. Harmonic magnitudes and angles for each phase voltage and current through 31st **OR** 63<sup>rd</sup>, **as directed**, harmonic. Calculate for all three phases, current and voltage, and residual current. Current and voltage information for all phases shall be obtained simultaneously from same cycle.
    - b. Harmonic magnitude reported as a percentage of the fundamental or as a percentage of rms values, as selected by user.
  14. Current and Voltage Ratings:
    - a. Designed for use with current inputs from standard instrument current transformers with 5-A secondary and shall have a metering range of 0-10 A.
    - b. Withstand ratings shall be not less than 15 A, continuous; 50 A, lasting over 10 seconds, no more frequently than once per hour; 500 A, lasting 1 second, no more frequently than once per hour.
    - c. Designed for use with voltage inputs from standard instrument potential transformers with a 120-V secondary.
  15. Accuracy:
    - a. Comply with ANSI C12.20, Class 0.5; and IEC 60687, Class 0.5 for revenue meters.
    - b. Accuracy from Light to Full Rating:
      - 1) Power: Accurate to 0.25 percent of reading, plus 0.025 percent of full scale.
      - 2) Voltage and Current: Accurate to 0.075 percent of reading, plus 0.025 percent of full scale.
      - 3) Power Factor: Plus or minus 0.002, from 0.5 leading to 0.5 lagging.
      - 4) Frequency: Plus or minus 0.01 Hz at 45 to 67 Hz.
  16. Waveform Capture:
    - a. Capture and store steady-state waveforms of voltage and current channels; initiated manually. Each capture shall be for 3 cycles, 128 data points for each cycle, allowing resolution of harmonics to 31st harmonic of basic 60 Hz.
    - b. Store captured waveforms in internal nonvolatile memory; available for PC display, archiving, and analysis.
  17. Input: One digital input signal(s).





- a. Normal mode for on/off signal.
  - b. Demand interval synchronization pulse, accepting a demand synchronization pulse from a utility demand meter.
  - c. Conditional energy signal to control conditional energy accumulation.
18. Outputs:
- a. Operated either by user command sent via communication link, or set to operate in response to user-defined alarm or event.
  - b. Closed in either a momentary or latched mode as defined by user.
  - c. Each output relay used in a momentary contact mode shall have an independent timer that can be set by user.
  - d. One digital KY pulse to a user-definable increment of energy measurement. Output ratings shall be up to 120-V ac, 300-V dc, 50 mA, and provide 3500-V rms isolation.
  - e. One relay output module(s), providing a load voltage range from 20- to 240-V ac or from 20- to 30-V dc, supporting a load current of 2 A.
  - f. Output Relay Control:
    - 1) Relay outputs shall operate either by user command sent via communication link or in response to user-defined alarm or event.
    - 2) Normally open and normally closed contacts, field configured to operate as follows:
      - a) Normal contact closure where contacts change state for as long as signal exists.
      - b) Latched mode when contacts change state on receipts of a pickup signal; changed state is held until a dropout signal is received.
      - c) Timed mode when contacts change state on receipt of a pickup signal; changed state is held for a preprogrammed duration.
      - d) End of power demand interval when relay operates as synchronization pulse for other devices.
      - e) Energy Pulse Output: Relay pulses quantities used for absolute kWh, absolute kVARh, kVAh, kWh In, kVARh In, kWh Out, and kVARh Out.
      - f) Output controlled by multiple alarms using Boolean-type logic.
19. Onboard Data Logging:
- a. Store logged data, alarms, events, and waveforms in 80 **OR** 800, **as directed**, KB of onboard nonvolatile memory.
  - b. Stored Data:
    - 1) Billing Log: User configurable; data shall be recorded every 15 minutes, identified by month, day, and 15-minute interval. Accumulate 24 months of monthly data, 32 days of daily data, and between 2 to 52 days of 15-minute interval data, depending on number of quantities selected.
    - 2) Custom Data Logs: One **OR** Three, **as directed**, user-defined log(s) holding up to 96 parameters. Date and time stamp each entry to the second and include the following user definitions:
      - a) Schedule interval.
      - b) Event definition.
      - c) Configured as "fill-and-hold" or "circular, first-in first-out."
    - 3) Alarm Log: Include time, date, event information, and coincident information for each defined alarm or event.
    - 4) Waveform Log: Store captured waveforms configured as "fill-and-hold" or "circular, first-in first-out."
  - c. Default values for all logs shall be initially set at factory, with logging to begin on device power up.
20. Alarms.
- a. User Options:
    - 1) Define pickup, dropout, and delay.
    - 2) Assign one of four severity levels to make it easier for user to respond to the most important events first.
    - 3) Allow for combining up to four alarms using Boolean-type logic statements for outputting a single alarm.



- b. Alarm Events:
        - 1) Over/undercurrent.
        - 2) Over/undervoltage.
        - 3) Current imbalance.
        - 4) Phase loss, current.
        - 5) Phase loss, voltage.
        - 6) Voltage imbalance.
        - 7) Over kW demand.
        - 8) Phase reversal.
        - 9) Digital input off/on.
        - 10) End of incremental energy interval.
        - 11) End of demand interval.
  - 21. Control Power: 90- to 457-V ac or 100- to 300-V dc.
  - 22. Communications:
    - a. Power monitor shall be permanently connected to communicate via Modbus TCP via a 100 Base-T Ethernet **OR** RS-485 Modbus TCP/IP, **as directed**.
    - b. Local plug-in connections shall be for RS-232 and 100 Base-T Ethernet.
  - 23. Display Monitor:
    - a. Backlighted LCD to display metered data with touch-screen **OR** touch-pad, **as directed**, selecting device.
    - b. Touch-screen display shall be a minimum 12-inch diagonal, resolution of 800 by 600 RGB pixels, 256 colors; NEMA 250, Type 1 display enclosure.
    - c. Display four values on one screen at same time.
      - 1) Current, per phase rms, three-phase average and neutral, **as directed**.
      - 2) Voltage, phase to phase, phase to neutral, and three-phase averages of phase to phase and phase to neutral.
      - 3) Real power, per phase and three-phase total.
      - 4) Reactive power, per phase and three-phase total.
      - 5) Apparent power, per phase and three-phase total.
      - 6) Power factor, per phase and three-phase total.
      - 7) Frequency.
      - 8) Demand current, per phase and three-phase average.
      - 9) Demand real power, three-phase total.
      - 10) Demand apparent power, three-phase total.
      - 11) Accumulated energy (MWh and MVARh).
      - 12) THD, current and voltage, per phase.
    - d. Reset: Allow reset of the following parameters at the display:
      - 1) Peak demand current.
      - 2) Peak demand power (kW) and peak demand apparent power (kVA).
      - 3) Energy (MWh) and reactive energy (MVARh).
- G. Standalone, Web-Enabled Monitoring And Control Instrument
- 1. Separately mounted, permanently installed instrument for power monitoring and control.
    - a. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** 12, **as directed**.
  - 2. Environmental Conditions: System components shall be capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability.
    - a. Indoor installation in non-air-conditioned **OR** nontemperature-controlled, **as directed**, spaces that have environmental controls to maintain ambient conditions of 0 to 122 deg F (minus 18 to plus 50 deg C) dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.
  - 3. Power-Distribution Equipment Monitor: Web enabled, with integral network port and embedded Web server with factory-configured firmware and HTML-formatted Web pages for viewing of power monitoring and equipment status information from connected devices equipped with digital communication ports.



4. LAN Connectivity: Multipoint, RS-485 Modbus serial communication network, interconnecting all breaker trip units, protective relays, drives, and metering devices equipped with communications. Serial communication network connected to Ethernet server that functions as a gateway and server, providing data access via 10 Base-T **OR** 100 Base-T **OR** 100 Base-FX, **as directed**, LAN.
5. Communication Devices within the Equipment: Addressed at factory and tested to verify reliable communication with network server.
6. Server Configuration:
  - a. Initial network parameters set using a standard Web browser. Connect via a local operator interface, or an RJ-45 port accessible from front of equipment.
  - b. Network server shall be factory programmed with embedded HTML-formatted Web pages that are user configurable and that provide detailed communication diagnostic information for serial and Ethernet ports as status of RS-485 network; with internal memory management information pages for viewing using a standard Web browser.
  - c. Login: Password protected; password administration accessible from the LAN using a standard Web browser.
  - d. Operating Software: Suitable for local access; firewall protected.
7. Data Access:
  - a. Network server shall include embedded HTML pages providing real-time information from devices connected to RS-485 network ports via a standard Web browser.
8. Equipment Monitoring Options: Login shall be followed by a main menu for selecting summary Web pages that follow.
9. Summary Web pages shall be factory configured to display the following information for each communicating device within the power equipment lineup:
  - a. User-Configured Custom Home Page: Provide for the lineup, showing status-at-a-glance of key operating values, **as directed**.
  - b. Circuit Summary Page: Circuit name, three-phase average rms current, power (kW), power factor, and breaker status.
  - c. Load Current Summary Page: Circuit name, Phase A, B, and C rms current values.
  - d. Demand Current Summary Page: Circuit name, Phase A, B, and C average demand current values.
  - e. Power Summary Page: Circuit name, present demand power (kW), peak demand power (kW), and recorded time and date.
  - f. Energy Summary Page: Circuit name, energy (kWh), reactive energy (kVARh), and time/date of last reset.
  - g. Transformer Status Page: Transformer tag, coil temperatures, and cooling fan status.
  - h. Motor-Control Center Status Page: Circuit name, three-phase average rms current, thermal capacity (percentage), and drive output frequency (Hz) contactor status.
  - i. Specific Device Pages: Each individual communicating device shall display detailed, real-time information, as appropriate for device type.
    - 1) Display historical energy data that shall be logged automatically for each device, as appropriate for device type.
    - 2) Display historical data logged from each device in graphical time-trend plots. Value to be displayed on time-trend plot shall be user selectable. Time interval to be displayed on scale shall be for previous day or week.
  - j. Export historical energy data to a PC or workstation through network using FTP (File Transfer Protocol). Format exported data in a CSV (Comma Separated Variable) file format for importing into spreadsheet applications.
10. Communications:
  - a. Power monitor: Permanently connected to communicate via RS-485 Modbus TCP/IP **OR** Modbus TCP via an 100 Base-T Ethernet, **as directed**.
  - b. Local Plug-in Connections: RS-232 and 100 Base-T Ethernet.
  - c. Monitor Display: Backlighted LCD to display metered data with touch-screen **OR** touch-pad, **as directed**, selecting device.

#### H. Workstation Hardware



1. Environmental Conditions: System components shall be capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:
  - a. Indoor installation in spaces that have environmental controls to maintain ambient conditions of 36 to 122 deg F (2 to 50 deg C) dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.
2. Computer: Standard unmodified PC of modular design. CPU word size shall be 32 bytes or larger; CPU operating speed shall be at least 66 MHz **OR** GHz, **as directed**.
  - a. Memory: 256 MB of usable installed memory, expandable to a minimum of 1024 MB without additional chassis or power supplies.
  - b. Real-Time Clock:
    - 1) Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 minute per month.
    - 2) Time Keeping Format: 24-hour time format including seconds, minutes, hours, date, day, and month; automatic reset by software.
    - 3) Clock shall function for one year without power.
    - 4) Provide automatic time correction once every 24 hours by synchronizing clock with the Time Service Department of the U.S. Naval Observatory.
  - c. Serial Ports: Two RS-232-F serial ports for general use, with additional ports as required. Data transmission rates shall be selectable under program control.
  - d. Parallel Port: Enhanced.
  - e. LAN Adapter Card: 10/100-Mbps PCI bus, internal network interface card.
  - f. Sound Card: For playback and recording of digital WAV sound files associated with audible warning and alarm functions.
  - g. Color Monitor: PC compatible, not less than 18 inches (455 mm), LCD type, with a minimum resolution of 1280 by 1024 pixels, noninterlaced, and a maximum dot pitch of 0.28 mm.
  - h. Keyboard: Minimum of 64 characters, standard ASCII character set based on ANSI INCITS 154.
  - i. Mouse: Standard, compatible with installed software.
  - j. Disk Storage: Include the following, each with appropriate controller:
    - 1) Minimum 80-GB hard disk, maximum average access time of 10 ms.
    - 2) Floppy Disk Drive: High density, 3-1/2-inch (90-mm) size.
    - 3) PCMCIA slot with removable 500-MB media.
    - 4) 100-MB Iomega Zip drive.
    - 5) 250-MB Iomega Jaz drive.
  - k. Magnetic Tape System, **as directed**: 4-mm cartridge magnetic tape system with minimum 2 **OR** 4 **OR** 20, **as directed**, -GB formatted capacity per tape. Provide 10 tapes, each in a rigid cartridge with spring-loaded cover and operator-selectable write-protect feature.
  - l. Modem: 56,600 bps, full duplex for asynchronous communications. With error detection, auto answer/autodial, and call-in-progress detection. Modem shall comply with requirements in ITU-T v.34, ITU-T v.42, ITU-T v.42 Appendix VI for error correction, and ITU-T v.42 BIS for data compression standards; and shall be suitable for operating on unconditioned voice-grade telephone lines complying with 47 CFR 68.
  - m. Audible Alarm: Manufacturer's standard.
  - n. CD-ROM Drive:
    - 1) Nominal Storage Capacity: 650 MB.
    - 2) Data Transfer Rate: 1.2 Mbps.
    - 3) Average Access Time: 150 ms.
    - 4) Cache Memory: 256 KB.
    - 5) Data Throughput: 1 MB/second, minimum.
  - o. Report Printer: Minimum resolution 600 dpi laser printer.
    - 1) Connected to central station and designated workstations.
    - 2) RAM: 2 MB, minimum.
    - 3) Printing Speed: Minimum 12 pages per minute.



- 4) Paper Handling: Automatic sheet feeder with 250-sheet paper cassette and with automatic feed.
  - p. Interface: Bidirectional parallel and universal serial bus.
  - q. LAN Adapter Card: 10/100-Mbps internal network interface card.
  3. Redundant Central Computer: Connected in a hot standby, peer configuration; automatically maintains copies of system software, application software, and data files. System transactions and other activities that alter system data files shall be updated to system files of redundant computer in near real-time. If central computer fails, redundant computer shall assume control immediately and automatically.
  4. UPS: Self-contained; complying with requirements in Division 26 Section "Static Uninterruptible Power Supply".
    - a. Size: Provide a minimum of 6 hours of operation of workstation station equipment, including 2 hours of alarm printer operation, **as directed**.
    - b. Batteries: Sealed, valve regulated, recombinant, lead calcium.
    - c. Accessories:
      - 1) Transient voltage suppression.
      - 2) Input-harmonics reduction.
      - 3) Rectifier/charger.
      - 4) Battery disconnect device.
      - 5) Static bypass transfer switch.
      - 6) Internal maintenance bypass/isolation switch.
      - 7) External maintenance bypass/isolation switch.
      - 8) Output isolation transformer.
      - 9) Remote UPS monitoring.
      - 10) Battery monitoring.
      - 11) Remote battery monitoring.
- I. RS-232 ASCII Interface
1. ASCII interface shall allow RS-232 connections to be made between a meter or circuit monitor operating as the host PC and any equipment that will accept RS-232 ASCII command strings, such as local display panels **OR** dial-up modems **OR** alarm transmitters, **as directed**.
  2. Pager System Interface: Alarms shall be able to activate a pager system with customized message for each input alarm.
    - a. RS-232 output shall be capable of connection to a pager interface that can be used to call a paging system or service and send a signal to a portable pager. System shall allow an individual alphanumeric message per alarm input to be sent to paging system. This interface shall support both numeric and alphanumeric pagers.
  3. Alarm System Interface:
    - a. RS-232 output shall be capable of transmitting alarms from other monitoring and alarm systems to workstation software.
  4. Cables:
    - a. PVC-Jacketed, RS-232 Cable: Paired, 2 pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors, polypropylene insulation, and individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage; PVC jacket. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned copper drain wire.
      - 1) NFPA 70, Type CM.
      - 2) Flame Resistance: UL 1581, Vertical Tray.
    - b. Plenum-Type, RS-232 Cable: Paired, 2 pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors, plastic insulation, and individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage; plastic jacket. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned copper drain wire.
      - 1) NFPA 70, Type CMP.
      - 2) Flame Resistance: NFPA 262, Flame Test.
- J. LAN Cables
1. Comply with Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling".



2. RS-485 Cable:
  - a. PVC-Jacketed, RS-485 Cable: Paired, 2 pairs, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors, PVC insulation, unshielded, PVC jacket, and NFPA 70, Type CMG.
  - b. Plenum-Type, RS-485 Cable: Paired, 2 pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors, fluorinated-ethylene-propylene insulation, unshielded, and fluorinated-ethylene-propylene jacket, and NFPA 70, Type CMP.
3. Unshielded Twisted Pair Cables: Category 5e **OR 6, as directed**, as specified for horizontal cable for data service in Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling".

#### K. Low-Voltage Wiring

1. Low-Voltage Control Cable: Multiple conductor, color-coded, No. 20 AWG copper, minimum.
  - a. Sheath: PVC; except in plenum-type spaces, use sheath listed for plenums.
  - b. Ordinary Switching Circuits: Three conductors, unless otherwise indicated.
  - c. Switching Circuits with Pilot Lights or Locator Feature: Five conductors, unless otherwise indicated.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Cabling

1. Comply with NECA 1.
2. Install cables and wiring according to requirements in Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling".
3. Wiring Method: Install wiring in raceway and cable tray except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters. Conceal raceway and wiring except in unfinished spaces.  
**OR**  
Wiring Method: Install wiring in raceway and cable tray except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Use NRTL-listed plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
4. Install LAN cables using techniques, practices, and methods that are consistent with specified category rating of components and that ensure specified category performance of completed and linked signal paths, end to end.
5. Install cables without damaging conductors, shield, or jacket.

#### B. Identification

1. Identify components and power and control wiring according to Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
2. Label each power monitoring and control module with a unique designation.

#### C. Grounding

1. Comply with IEEE 1100, "Power and Grounding Sensitive Electronic Equipment."

#### D. Field Quality Control

1. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
  - a. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
2. Tests and Inspections:
  - a. Electrical Tests: Use caution when testing devices containing solid-state components.
  - b. Continuity tests of circuits.
  - c. Operational Tests: Set and operate controls at workstation and at monitored and controlled devices to demonstrate their functions and capabilities. Use a methodical sequence that cues and reproduces actual operating functions as recommended by



manufacturer. Submit sequences for approval. Note response to each test command and operation. Note time intervals between initiation of alarm conditions and registration of alarms at central-processing workstation.

- 1) Coordinate testing required by this Section with that required by Sections specifying equipment being monitored and controlled.
  - 2) Test LANs according to requirements in Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling".
  - 3) System components with battery backup shall be operated on battery power for a period of not less than 10 percent of calculated battery operating time.
  - 4) Verify accuracy of graphic screens and icons.
  - 5) Metering Test: Load feeders, measure loads on feeder conductor with an rms reading clamp-on ammeter, and simultaneously read indicated current on the same phase at central-processing workstation. Record and compare values measured at the two locations. Resolve discrepancies greater than 5 percent and record resolution method and results.
  - 6) Record metered values, control settings, operations, cues, time intervals, and functional observations and submit test reports printed by workstation printer.
3. Correct deficiencies, make necessary adjustments, and retest. Verify that specified requirements are met.
  4. Test Labeling: After satisfactory completion of tests and inspections, apply a label to tested components indicating test results, date, and responsible agency and representative.
  5. Reports: Written reports of tests and observations. Record defective materials and workmanship and unsatisfactory test results. Record repairs and adjustments.
  6. Remove and replace malfunctioning devices and circuits and retest as specified above.

E. Demonstration

1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems.
  - a. Train the Owner's management and maintenance personnel in interpreting and using monitoring displays and in configuring and using software and reports. Include troubleshooting, servicing, adjusting, and maintaining equipment. Provide a minimum of 12 hours' training.
  - b. Training Aid: Use approved final versions of software and maintenance manuals as training aids.

END OF SECTION 26 09 23 00b



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





## SECTION 26 09 23 00c - MOTOR-CONTROL CENTERS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for motor-control centers. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section includes MCCs for use with ac circuits rated 600 V and less and having the following factory-installed components:
  - a. Incoming main lugs and OCPDs.
  - b. Full-voltage magnetic controllers.
  - c. Reduced-voltage magnetic controllers.
  - d. Reduced-voltage, solid-state controllers.
  - e. Multispeed controllers.
  - f. VFCs.
  - g. Feeder-tap units.
  - h. TVSS.
  - i. Instrumentation.
  - j. Auxiliary devices.

#### C. Definitions

1. BAS: Building automation system.
2. CE: Conformite Europeene (European Compliance).
3. CPT: Control power transformer.
4. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
5. GFCI: Ground fault circuit interrupting.
6. IGBT: Insulated-gate bipolar transistor.
7. LAN: Local area network.
8. LED: Light-emitting diode.
9. MCC: Motor-control center.
10. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.
11. MCP: Motor-circuit protector.
12. NC: Normally closed.
13. NO: Normally open.
14. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.
15. PCC: Point of common coupling.
16. PID: Control action, proportional plus integral plus derivative.
17. PT: Potential transformer.
18. PWM: Pulse-width modulated.
19. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
20. SCR: Silicon-controlled rectifier.
21. TDD: Total demand (harmonic current) distortion.
22. THD(V): Total harmonic voltage demand.
23. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppressor.
24. VFC: Variable-frequency controller.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. Seismic Performance: MCCs shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.



- a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of controller and each type of MCC. Include shipping and operating weights, features, performance, electrical ratings, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit EA 5: For continuous metering equipment for energy consumption.
3. Shop Drawings: For each MCC, manufacturer's approval, custom and production drawings as defined in UL 845. In addition to requirements specified in UL 845, include dimensioned plans, elevations, and sections; and conduit entry locations and sizes, mounting arrangements, and details, including required clearances and service space around equipment.
  - a. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings. Include the following:
    - 1) Each installed unit's type and details.
    - 2) Factory-installed devices.
    - 3) Enclosure types and details.
    - 4) Nameplate legends.
    - 5) Short-circuit current (withstand) rating of complete MCC, and for bus structure and each unit.
    - 6) Features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of each installed controller and feeder device, and installed devices.
    - 7) Specified optional features and accessories.
  - b. Schematic and Connection Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring for each installed controller.
  - c. Nameplate legends.
  - d. Vertical and horizontal bus capacities.
  - e. Features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of each installed unit.
4. Harmonic Analysis Study and Report: Comply with IEEE 399 and NETA Acceptance Testing Specification; identify the effects of nonlinear loads and their associated harmonic contributions on the voltages and currents throughout the electrical system. Analyze possible **OR** designated, **as directed**, operating scenarios, including recommendations for VFC input filtering to limit TDD and THD(V) at each VFC **OR** at the defined PCC, **as directed**, to specified levels.
5. Standard Drawings: For each MCC, as defined in UL 845.
6. Production Drawings: For each MCC, as defined in UL 845.
7. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, drawn to scale, showing dimensioned layout, required working clearances, and required area above and around MCCs where pipe and ducts are prohibited. Show MCC layout and relationships between electrical components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements. Show support locations, type of support, and weight on each support. Indicate field measurements.
8. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For MCCs, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
  - a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  - b. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  - c. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
9. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
10. Product Certificates: For each MCC, from manufacturer.
11. Source quality-control reports.
12. Field quality-control reports.
13. Operation and Maintenance Data: For MCCs, all installed devices, and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Include the following:



- a. Manufacturer's Record Drawings: As defined in UL 845. In addition to requirements specified in UL 845, include field modifications and field-assigned wiring identification incorporated during construction by manufacturer, Contractor, or both.
  - b. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting circuit breaker and MCP trip settings.
  - c. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable overload relays.
  - d. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing, adjusting, and reprogramming reduced-voltage, solid-state controllers.
  - e. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing, adjusting, and reprogramming microprocessor control modules.
  - f. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable timers, controls, and status and alarm points.
14. Load-Current and Overload-Relay Heater List: Compile after motors have been installed, and arrange to demonstrate that selection of heaters suits actual motor nameplate full-load currents.
15. Load-Current and List of Settings of Adjustable Overload Relays: Compile after motors have been installed, and arrange to demonstrate that switch settings for motor running overload protection suit actual motors to be protected.
16. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.
- F. Quality Assurance
1. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.
    - a. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA **OR** one who meets the requirements necessary for certification, **as directed**, to supervise on-site testing.
  2. Source Limitations: Obtain MCCs and controllers of a single type from single source from single manufacturer.
  3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  4. Comply with NFPA 70.
  5. IEEE Compliance: Fabricate and test enclosed controllers according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
- G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver MCCs in shipping splits of lengths that can be moved past obstructions in delivery paths.
  2. Handle MCCs according to the following:
    - a. NEMA ICS 2.3, "Instructions for the Handling, Installation, Operation, and Maintenance of Motor Control Centers Rated Not More Than 600 Volts."
    - b. NECA 402, "Recommended Practice for Installing and Maintaining Motor Control Centers."
  3. If stored in space that is not permanently enclosed and air conditioned, remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside MCCs; install temporary electric heating, with at least 250 W per vertical section **OR** connect factory-installed space heaters to temporary electrical service, **as directed**.
- H. Project Conditions
1. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
    - a. Ambient Temperature: Less than 0 deg F (minus 18 deg C) or exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C), with an average value exceeding 95 deg F (35 deg C) over a 24-hour period.
    - b. Ambient Storage Temperature: Not less than minus 4 deg F (minus 20 deg C) and not exceeding 140 deg F (60 deg C).
    - c. Humidity: Less than 95 percent (noncondensing).
    - d. Altitude: Exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m), or 3300 feet (1000 m) if MCC includes solid-state devices.
  2. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service or Distribution Systems: Do not interrupt electrical service to, or distribution systems within, a facility occupied by the Owner or others unless



permitted under the following conditions, and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:

- a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
  - b. Indicate method of providing temporary electrical service.
  - c. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without the Owner's written permission.
  - d. Comply with NFPA 70E.
3. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for MCCs, including clearances between MCCs and adjacent surfaces and other items.

I. Coordination

1. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases.
2. Coordinate features of MCCs, installed units, and accessory devices with remote pilot devices and control circuits to which they connect.
3. Coordinate features, accessories, and functions of each MCC, each controller, and each installed unit with ratings and characteristics of supply circuits, motors, required control sequences, and duty cycle of motors and loads.

J. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace TVSS **OR** VFCs, **as directed**, that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - a. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Manufactured Units

1. General Requirements for MCCs: Comply with NEMA ICS 18 and UL 845, **as directed**.

B. Functional Features

1. Description: Modular arrangement of main units, controller units, control devices, feeder-tap units, instruments, metering, auxiliary devices, and other items mounted in vertical sections of MCC.
2. Controller Units: Combination controller units.
  - a. Install units up to and including Size 3 on drawout mountings with connectors that automatically line up and connect with vertical-section buses while being racked into their normal, energized positions.
  - b. Equip units in Type B and Type C MCCs with pull-apart terminal strips for external control connections.
3. Feeder-Tap Units: Through 225-A rating shall have drawout mountings with connectors that automatically line up and connect with vertical-section buses while being racked into their normal, energized positions.
4. Future Units: Compartments fully bused and equipped with guide rails or equivalent, ready for insertion of drawout units.
5. Spare Units: Installed in compartments indicated "spare."

C. Incoming Mains

1. Incoming Mains Location: Top and bottom, **as directed**.
2. Main Lugs Only: Conductor connectors suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
  - a. Material: Tin-plated aluminum **OR** Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity, **as directed**.
  - b. Main and Neutral Lugs: Compression **OR** Mechanical, **as directed**, type.



3. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with series-connected rating **OR** interrupting capacity, **as directed**, to meet available fault currents.
  - a. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
  - b. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
  - c. Electronic trip circuit breakers with rms sensing; field-replaceable rating plug or field-replaceable electronic trip; and the following field-adjustable settings:
    - 1) Instantaneous trip.
    - 2) Long- and short-time pickup levels.
    - 3) Long- and short-time time adjustments.
    - 4) Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and  $I^2t$  response.
  - d. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
  - e. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker; trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.
  - f. MCCB Features and Accessories:
    - 1) Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
    - 2) Lugs: Mechanical **OR** Compression, **as directed**, style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
    - 3) Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge (HID) lighting circuits.
    - 4) Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
    - 5) Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
    - 6) Communication Capability: Circuit-breaker-mounted **OR** Universal-mounted **OR** Integral **OR** Din-rail-mounted, **as directed**, communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Division 16 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
    - 7) Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 55 **OR** 75, **as directed**, percent of rated voltage.
    - 8) Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
    - 9) Auxiliary Contacts: One SPDT switch **OR** Two SPDT switches, **as directed**, with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
    - 10) Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
4. Insulated-Case Circuit Breaker: 80 **OR** 100, **as directed**, percent rated, sealed, insulated-case power circuit breaker with interrupting capacity rating to meet available fault current.
  - a. Fixed **OR** Drawout, **as directed**, circuit-breaker mounting.
  - b. Two-step, stored-energy closing.
  - c. Standard **OR** Full, **as directed**, -function, microprocessor-based trip units with interchangeable rating plug, trip indicators, and the following field-adjustable settings:
    - 1) Instantaneous trip.
    - 2) Long- and short-time time adjustments.
    - 3) Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and  $I^2t$  response.
  - d. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
  - e. Remote trip indication and control.



- f. Communication Capability: Integral communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Division 16 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
- g. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
- h. Control Voltage: 40-V dc **OR** 125-V dc **OR** 250-V dc **OR** 120-V ac, **as directed**.

#### D. Combination Controllers

1. Full-Voltage Controllers:
  - a. General Requirements for Full-Voltage Enclosed Controllers: Comply with NEMA ICS 2, general purpose, Class A.
  - b. Magnetic Controllers: Full voltage, across the line, electrically held.
    - 1) Configuration: Nonreversing and reversing.
2. Reduced-Voltage Magnetic Controllers:
  - a. General Requirements for Reduced-Voltage Magnetic Controllers: Comply with NEMA ICS 2, general purpose, Class A; closed transition; adjustable time delay on transition.
  - b. Reduced-Voltage Magnetic Controllers: Reduced voltage, electrically held.
    - 1) Configuration:
      - a) Wye-Delta Controller: Four contactors, with a three-phase starting resistor/reactor bank.
      - b) Part-Winding Controller: Separate START and RUN contactors, field-selectable for one-half or two-thirds winding start mode, with either six- or nine-lead motors; with separate overload relays for starting and running sequences.
      - c) Autotransformer Reduced-Voltage Controller: Medium-duty service, with integral overtemperature protection; taps for starting at 50, 65, and 80 percent of line voltage; two START and one RUN contactors.
3. Reduced-Voltage, Solid-State Controllers:
  - a. General Requirements for Reduced-Voltage, Solid-State Controllers: Comply with UL 508.
  - b. Reduced-Voltage, Solid-State Controllers: An integrated unit with power SCRs, heat sink, microprocessor logic board, door-mounted digital display and keypad, bypass contactor, and overload relay; suitable for use with NEMA MG 1, Design B, polyphase, medium-induction motors.
    - 1) Configuration: Standard duty **OR** Severe duty, **as directed**; nonreversible **OR** reversible, **as directed**.
    - 2) Starting Mode: Voltage ramping **OR** Current limit **OR** Torque control **OR** Torque control with voltage boost, **as directed**; field selectable, **as directed**.
    - 3) Stopping Mode: Coast to stop **OR** Adjustable torque deceleration **OR** Adjustable braking, **as directed**; field selectable, **as directed**.
    - 4) Shorting (Bypass) Contactor: Operates automatically when full voltage is applied to motor, and bypasses the SCRs. Solid-state controller protective features shall remain active when the shorting contactor is in the bypass mode.
    - 5) Shorting and Input Isolation, **as directed**, Contactor Coils: Pressure-encapsulated type; manufacturer's standard operating voltage, matching control power or line voltage, depending on contactor size and line-voltage rating. Provide coil transient suppressors, **as directed**.
    - 6) Logic Board: Identical for all ampere ratings and voltage classes, with environmental protective coating.
    - 7) Adjustable acceleration-rate control using voltage or current ramp, and adjustable starting torque control with up to 400 percent current limitation for 20 seconds.
    - 8) SCR bridge shall consist of at least two SCRs per phase, providing stable and smooth acceleration with **OR** without, **as directed**, external feedback from the motor or driven equipment.



- 9) Keypad, front accessible; for programming the controller parameters, functions, and features; shall be manufacturer's standard and include not less than the following functions:
    - a) Adjusting motor full-load amperes, as a percentage of the controller's rating.
    - b) Adjusting current limitation on starting, as a percentage of the motor full-load current rating.
    - c) Adjusting linear acceleration and deceleration ramps, in seconds.
    - d) Initial torque, as a percentage of the nominal motor torque.
    - e) Adjusting torque limit, as a percentage of the nominal motor torque.
    - f) Adjusting maximum start time, in seconds.
    - g) Adjusting voltage boost, as a percentage of the nominal supply voltage.
    - h) Selecting stopping mode, and adjusting parameters.
    - i) Selecting motor thermal-overload protection class between 5 and 30.
    - j) Activating and de-activating protection modes.
    - k) Selecting or activating communications modes.
  - 10) Digital display, front accessible; for showing motor, controller, and fault status; shall be manufacturer's standard and include not less than the following:
    - a) Controller Condition: Ready, starting, running, stopping.
    - b) Motor Condition: Amperes, voltage, power factor, power, and thermal state.
    - c) Fault Conditions: Controller thermal fault, motor overload alarm and trip, motor underload, overcurrent, shorted SCRs, line or phase loss, phase reversal, and line frequency over or under normal.
  - 11) Controller Diagnostics and Protection:
    - a) Microprocessor-based thermal protection system for monitoring SCR and motor thermal characteristics, and providing controller overtemperature and motor overload alarm and trip; settings selectable via the keypad.
    - b) Protection from line-side reverse phasing; line-side and motor-side phase loss; motor jam, stall, and underload conditions; and line frequency over or under normal.
    - c) Input isolation contactor that opens when the controller diagnostics detect a faulted solid-state component, or when the motor is stopped.  
**OR**  
Shunt trip that opens the disconnecting means when the controller diagnostics detect a faulted solid-state component.
  - 12) Remote Output Features:
    - a) All outputs prewired to terminal blocks.
    - b) Form C status contacts that change state when controller is running.
    - c) Form C alarm contacts that change state when a fault condition occurs.
  - 13) Optional Features:
    - a) Analog output for field-selectable assignment of motor operating characteristics; 0 to 10-V dc **OR** 4 to 20-mA dc, **as directed**.
    - b) Additional field-assignable Form C contacts for alarm outputs.
    - c) Surge suppressors in solid-state power circuits providing three-phase protection against damage from supply voltage surges 10 percent or more above nominal line voltage.
    - d) Full-voltage bypass contactor operating automatically **OR** manually, with NORMAL/BYPASS selector switch, **as directed**. Power contacts shall be totally enclosed, double break, and silver-cadmium oxide; and assembled to allow inspection and replacement without disturbing line or load wiring.
4. Multispeed Magnetic Controllers:
- a. General Requirements for Multispeed Magnetic Controllers: Comply with NEMA ICS 2, general purpose, Class A.
  - b. Multispeed Magnetic Controllers: Two speed, full voltage, across the line, electrically held. Compelling relay to ensure that motor will start only at low speed.
    - 1) Configuration: Nonreversing **OR** Reversing, **as directed**; consequent pole **OR** two winding, **as directed**.



- 2) Compelling relays shall ensure that motor starts only at low speed.
  - 3) Accelerating timer relays shall ensure properly timed acceleration through speeds lower than that selected.
  - 4) Decelerating timer relays shall ensure automatically timed deceleration through each speed.
  - 5) Antiplugging timer relays shall ensure a time delay when transferring from FORWARD to REVERSE and back.
5. Disconnecting Means and OCPDs:
- a. Fusible Disconnecting Means:
    - 1) NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, horsepower-rated, fusible switch with clips or bolt pads to accommodate Class J **OR** Class L, **as directed**, fuses.
    - 2) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
    - 3) Auxiliary Contacts: NO/NC, arranged to activate before switch blades open.
  - b. MCP Disconnecting Means:
    - 1) UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents, instantaneous-only circuit breaker with front-mounted, field-adjustable, short-circuit trip coordinated with motor locked-rotor amperes.
    - 2) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
    - 3) Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with MCP handle.
    - 4) NC **OR** NO, **as directed**, alarm contact that operates only when MCP has tripped.
    - 5) Current-limiting module to increase controller short-circuit current (withstand) rating to 100 kA.
  - c. MCCB Disconnecting Means:
    - 1) UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents; thermal-magnetic MCCB, with inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
    - 2) Front-mounted, adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
    - 3) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
    - 4) Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with MCCB handle.
    - 5) NC **OR** NO, **as directed**, alarm contact that operates only when MCCB has tripped.
  - d. Molded-Case Switch Disconnecting Means:
    - 1) UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with in-line fuse block for Class J or L power fuses (depending on ampere rating), providing an interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents; MCCB with fixed, high-set instantaneous trip only.
    - 2) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
    - 3) Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with molded-case switch handle.
    - 4) NC **OR** NO, **as directed**, alarm contact that operates only when molded-case switch has tripped.
6. Overload Relays:
- a. Melting-Alloy Overload Relays:
    - 1) Inverse-time-current characteristic.
    - 2) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 30, **as directed**, tripping characteristic.
    - 3) Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
  - b. Bimetallic Overload Relays:
    - 1) Inverse-time-current characteristic.
    - 2) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 30, **as directed**, tripping characteristic.
    - 3) Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
    - 4) Ambient compensated.





- 5) Automatic resetting.
  - c. Solid-State Overload Relays:
    - 1) Switch or dial selectable for motor running overload protection.
    - 2) Sensors in each phase.
    - 3) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 10/20 selectable, **as directed**, tripping characteristic selected to protect motor against voltage and current unbalance and single phasing.
      - a) Class II ground-fault protection, with start and run delays to prevent nuisance trip on starting.
      - b) Analog communication module.
  - d. NC **OR** NO, **as directed**, isolated overload alarm contact.
  - e. External overload reset push button.
  7. Control Power:
    - a. Control Circuits: 24 **OR** 120, **as directed**, -V ac; obtained from integral CPT, with primary and secondary fuses, with CPT **OR** control power source, **as directed**, of sufficient capacity to operate integral devices and remotely located pilot, indicating, and control devices.
      - 1) CPT Spare Capacity: 50 **OR** 100 **OR** 200, **as directed**, VA.
- E. VFCS
1. General Requirements for VFCs: Comply with NEMA ICS 7, NEMA ICS 61800-2, and UL 508C, **as directed**.
  2. Application: Constant torque and variable torque, **as directed**.
  3. VFC Description: Variable-frequency power converter (rectifier, dc bus, and IGBT PWM inverter) factory packaged in an enclosure, with integral disconnecting means and overcurrent and overload protection; listed and labeled by an NRTL as a complete unit; arranged to provide self-protection, protection, and variable-speed control of one or more three-phase induction motors by adjusting output voltage and frequency.
    - a. Units suitable for operation of NEMA MG 1, Design A and Design B motors as defined by NEMA MG 1, Section IV, Part 30, "Application Considerations for Constant Speed Motors Used on a Sinusoidal Bus with Harmonic Content and General Purpose Motors Used with Adjustable-Voltage or Adjustable-Frequency Controls or Both."
    - b. Units suitable for operation of inverter-duty motors as defined by NEMA MG 1, Section IV, Part 31, "Definite-Purpose Inverter-Fed Polyphase Motors."
    - c. Listed and labeled for integrated short-circuit current (withstand) rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
    - d. Listed and labeled for single-phase use by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  4. Design and Rating: Match load type such as fans, blowers, and pumps; and type of connection used between motor and load such as direct or through a power-transmission connection.
  5. Output Rating: Three-phase; 10 to 60 Hz, with voltage proportional to frequency throughout voltage range **OR** 66 Hz, with torque constant as speed changes, **as directed**; maximum voltage equals input voltage.
  6. Unit Operating Requirements:
    - a. Input AC Voltage Tolerance: Plus 10 and minus 10 **OR** 15, **as directed**, percent of VFC input voltage rating.
    - b. Input AC Voltage Unbalance: Not exceeding 3 **OR** 5, **as directed**, percent.
    - c. Input Frequency Tolerance: Plus or minus 3 percent of VFC frequency rating.
    - d. Minimum Efficiency: 96 **OR** 97, **as directed**, percent at 60 Hz, full load.
    - e. Minimum Displacement Primary-Side Power Factor: 96 **OR** 98, **as directed**, percent under any load or speed condition.
    - f. Overload Capability: 1.1 **OR** 1.5, **as directed**, times the base load current for 60 seconds; minimum of 1.8 times the base load current for three seconds.
    - g. Starting Torque: Minimum of 100 percent of rated torque from 3 to 60 Hz.
    - h. Speed Regulation: Plus or minus 5 **OR** 10, **as directed**, percent.
    - i. Output Carrier Frequency: Selectable; 0.5 to 15 kHz.



- j. Stop Modes: Programmable; includes fast, free-wheel, and dc injection braking.
- 7. Inverter Logic: Microprocessor based, 16 **OR** 32, **as directed**, bit, isolated from all power circuits.
- 8. Isolated Control Interface: Allows VFCs to follow remote-control signal over a minimum 40:1 speed range.
  - a. Signal: Electrical.  
**OR**  
Signal: Pneumatic.
- 9. Internal Adjustability Capabilities:
  - a. Minimum Speed: 5 to 25 percent of maximum rpm.
  - b. Maximum Speed: 80 to 100 percent of maximum rpm.
  - c. Acceleration: 0.1 to 999.9 seconds.
  - d. Deceleration: 0.1 to 999.9 seconds.
  - e. Current Limit: 30 to a minimum of 150 percent of maximum rating.
- 10. Self-Protection and Reliability Features:
  - a. Input transient protection by means of surge suppressors to provide three-phase protection against damage from supply voltage surges 10 percent or more above nominal line voltage.
  - b. Loss of Input Signal Protection: Selectable response strategy including speed default to a percent of the most recent speed, a preset speed, or stop; with alarm.
  - c. Under- and overvoltage trips.
  - d. Inverter overcurrent trips.
  - e. VFC and Motor Overload/Overtemperature Protection: Microprocessor-based thermal protection system for monitoring VFCs and motor thermal characteristics, and for providing VFC overtemperature and motor overload alarm and trip; settings selectable via the keypad; NRTL approved.
  - f. Critical frequency rejection, with three selectable, adjustable deadbands.
  - g. Instantaneous line-to-line and line-to-ground overcurrent trips.
  - h. Loss-of-phase protection.
  - i. Reverse-phase protection.
  - j. Short-circuit protection.
  - k. Motor overtemperature fault.
- 11. Automatic Reset/Restart: Attempt three restarts after drive fault or on return of power after an interruption and before shutting down for manual reset or fault correction; adjustable delay time between restart attempts.
- 12. Power-Interruption Protection: To prevent motor from re-energizing after a power interruption until motor has stopped, unless "Bidirectional Autospeed Search" feature is available and engaged.
- 13. Bidirectional Autospeed Search: Capable of starting VFC into rotating loads spinning in either direction and returning motor to set speed in proper direction, without causing damage to drive, motor, or load.
- 14. Torque Boost: Automatically varies starting and continuous torque to at least 1.5 times the minimum torque to ensure high-starting torque and increased torque at slow speeds.
- 15. Motor Temperature Compensation at Slow Speeds: Adjustable current fall-back based on output frequency for temperature protection of self-cooled, fan-ventilated motors at slow speeds.
- 16. Integral Input Disconnecting Means and OCPD: NEMA AB 1, instantaneous-trip circuit breaker **OR** NEMA AB 1, molded-case switch, with power fuse block and current-limiting fuses **OR** NEMA AB 1, thermal-magnetic circuit breaker **OR** NEMA KS 1, nonfusible switch, with power fuse block and current-limiting fuses **OR** NEMA KS 1, fusible switch, **as directed**, with pad-lockable, door-mounted handle mechanism.
  - a. Disconnect Rating (for VFCs without bypass systems): Not less than 115 percent of VFC input current rating.
  - b. Disconnect Rating (for VFCs with bypass systems): Not less than 115 percent of NFPA 70 motor full-load current rating or VFC input current rating, whichever is larger.
  - c. Auxiliary Contacts: NO/NC, arranged to activate before switch blades open.



- d. Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with circuit-breaker handle.
- e. NC **OR** NO, **as directed**, alarm contact that operates only when circuit breaker has tripped.

F. VFC Controls And Indication

1. Status Lights: Door-mounted LED indicators displaying the following conditions:
  - a. Power on.
  - b. Run.
  - c. Overvoltage.
  - d. Line fault.
  - e. Overcurrent.
  - f. External fault.
2. Panel-Mounted Operator Station: Manufacturer's standard front-accessible, sealed keypad and plain-English language digital display; allows complete programming, program copying, operating, monitoring, and diagnostic capability.
  - a. Keypad: In addition to required programming and control keys, include keys for HAND, OFF, and AUTO modes.
  - b. Security Access: Provide electronic security access to controls through identification and password with at least three levels of access: View only; view and operate; and view, operate, and service.
    - 1) Control Authority: Supports at least four conditions: Off, local manual control at VFC, local automatic control at VFC, and automatic control through a remote source.
3. Historical Logging Information and Displays:
  - a. Running log of total power versus time.
  - b. Total run time.
  - c. Fault log, maintaining last four faults with time and date stamp for each.
4. Indicating Devices: Digital display and additional readout devices as required, mounted flush in VFC door and connected to display VFC parameters, including, but not limited to:
  - a. Output frequency (Hz).
  - b. Motor speed (rpm).
  - c. Motor status (running, stop, fault).
  - d. Motor current (amperes).
  - e. Motor torque (percent).
  - f. Fault or alarming status (code).
  - g. PID feedback signal (percent).
  - h. DC-link voltage (V dc).
  - i. Set point frequency (Hz).
  - j. Motor output voltage (V ac).
5. Control Signal Interfaces:
  - a. Electric Input Signal Interface:
    - 1) A minimum of two programmable analog inputs: 0- to 10-V dc **OR** 4- to 20-mA dc **OR** Operator-selectable "x"- to "y"-mA dc, **as directed**.
    - 2) A minimum of six multifunction programmable digital inputs.
  - b. Pneumatic Input Signal Interface: 3 to 15 psig (20 to 104 kPa).
  - c. Remote Signal Inputs: Capability to accept any of the following speed-setting input signals from the BAS or other control systems:
    - 1) 0- to 10-V dc.
    - 2) 4- to 20-mA dc.
    - 3) Potentiometer using up/down digital inputs.
    - 4) Fixed frequencies using digital inputs.
  - d. Output Signal Interface: A minimum of one programmable analog output signal(s) (0- to 10-V dc **OR** 4- to 20-mA dc **OR** operator-selectable "x"- to "y"-mA dc, **as directed**), which can be configured for any of the following:
    - 1) Output frequency (Hz).
    - 2) Output current (load).



- 3) DC-link voltage (V dc).
  - 4) Motor torque (percent).
  - 5) Motor speed (rpm).
  - 6) Set point frequency (Hz).
  - e. Remote Indication Interface: A minimum of two programmable dry-circuit relay outputs (120-V ac, 1 A) for remote indication of the following:
    - 1) Motor running.
    - 2) Set point speed reached.
    - 3) Fault and warning indication (overtemperature or overcurrent).
    - 4) PID high- or low-speed limits reached.
  6. PID Control Interface: Provides closed-loop set point, differential feedback control in response to dual feedback signals. Allows for closed-loop control of fans and pumps for pressure, flow, or temperature regulation.
    - a. Number of Loops: One **OR** Two, **as directed**.
  7. BAS Interface: Factory-installed hardware and software to enable the BAS to monitor, control, and display VFC status and alarms and energy usage, **as directed**. Allows VFC to be used with an external system within a multidrop LAN configuration; settings retained within VFC's nonvolatile memory.
    - a. Network Communications Ports: Ethernet and RS-422/485.
    - b. Embedded BAS Protocols for Network Communications: ASHRAE 135 BACnet **OR** Echelon LonWorks **OR** Ethernet TCP/IP **OR** Johnson Metasys N2 **OR** Modbus/Memobus **OR** Siemens System 600 APOGEE **OR** an acceptable equivalent, **as directed**; protocols accessible via the communications ports.
- G. VFC Line Conditioning And Filtering
1. Input Line Conditioning: Based on the harmonic analysis study and report, provide input filtering, as required, to limit TDD at input terminals of VFCs to less than 5 **OR** 8, **as directed**, percent and THD(V) to 3 **OR** 5, **as directed**, percent.
  2. Input Line Conditioning: Based on the harmonic analysis study and report, provide input filtering, as required, to limit TDD and THD(V) at the defined PCC per IEEE 519.
  3. Input Line Conditioning: **<Insert requirements>**.
  4. VFC Output Filtering: **<Insert requirements>**.
  5. EMI/RFI Filtering: CE marked; certify compliance with IEC 61800-3 for Category C2.
- H. VFC Bypass Systems
1. Bypass Operation: Safely transfers motor between power converter output and bypass circuit, manually, automatically, or both. Selector switches set modes, and indicator lights indicate mode selected. Unit is capable of stable operation (starting, stopping, and running) with motor completely disconnected from power converter.
  2. Bypass Mode: Manual operation only; requires local operator selection at VFC. Transfer between power converter and bypass contactor and retransfer shall only be allowed with the motor at zero speed.  
**OR**  
Bypass Mode: Field-selectable automatic or manual, allows local and remote transfer between power converter and bypass contactor and retransfer, either via manual operator interface or automatic control system feedback.
  3. Bypass Controller: Two-contactor-style bypass allows motor operation via the power converter or the bypass controller; with input isolating switch and barrier arranged to isolate the power converter and permit safe troubleshooting and testing, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode, **as directed**.
    - a. Bypass Contactor: Load-break, IEC **OR** NEMA, **as directed**, -rated contactor.
    - b. Output Isolating Contactor: Non-load-break, IEC **OR** NEMA, **as directed**, -rated contactor.
    - c. Isolating Switch: Non-load-break switch arranged to isolate power converter and permit safe troubleshooting and testing of the power converter, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode; pad-lockable, door-mounted handle mechanism.

**OR**

Bypass Controller: Three-contactor-style bypass allows motor operation via the power converter or the bypass controller; with input isolating switch and barrier, **as directed**, arranged to isolate the power converter input and output and permit safe testing and troubleshooting of the power converter, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode.

- a. Bypass Contactor: Load-break, IEC **OR** NEMA, **as directed**, -rated contactor.
  - b. Input and Output Isolating Contactors: Non-load-break, IEC **OR** NEMA, **as directed**, -rated contactors.
  - c. Isolating Switch: Non-load-break switch arranged to isolate power converter and permit safe troubleshooting and testing of the power converter, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode; pad-lockable, door-mounted handle mechanism.
4. Bypass Contactor Configuration: Full-voltage (across-the-line) **OR** Reduced-voltage (autotransformer), **as directed**, type.
- a. NORMAL/BYPASS selector switch.
  - b. HAND/OFF/AUTO selector switch.
  - c. NORMAL/TEST Selector Switch: Allows testing and adjusting of VFC while the motor is running in the bypass mode.
  - d. Contactor Coils: Pressure-encapsulated type with coil transient suppressors, **as directed**.
    - 1) Operating Voltage: Depending on contactor NEMA size and line-voltage rating, manufacturer's standard matching control power or line voltage.
    - 2) Power Contacts: Totally enclosed, double break, and silver-cadmium oxide; assembled to allow inspection and replacement without disturbing line or load wiring.
  - e. Control Circuits: 120-V ac; obtained from integral CPT, with primary and secondary fuses **as directed**, with CPT **OR** control power source, **as directed**, of sufficient capacity to operate all integral devices and remotely located pilot, indicating, and control devices.
  - f. CPT Spare Capacity: 50 **OR** 100 **OR** 200, **as directed**, VA.
5. Overload Relays: NEMA ICS 2.
- a. Melting-Alloy Overload Relays:
    - 1) Inverse-time-current characteristic.
    - 2) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 30, **as directed**, tripping characteristic.
    - 3) Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
  - b. Bimetallic Overload Relays:
    - 1) Inverse-time-current characteristic.
    - 2) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 30, **as directed**, tripping characteristic.
    - 3) Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
    - 4) Ambient compensated.
    - 5) Automatic resetting.
  - c. Solid-State Overload Relays:
    - 1) Switch or dial selectable for motor-running overload protection.
    - 2) Sensors in each phase.
    - 3) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 10/20 selectable, **as directed**, tripping characteristic selected to protect motor against voltage and current unbalance and single phasing.
    - 4) Class II ground-fault protection, with start and run delays to prevent nuisance trip on starting.
    - 5) Analog communication module.
    - 6) NC **OR** NO, **as directed**, isolated overload alarm contact.
    - 7) External overload reset push button.
- I. Optional VFC Features
1. Multiple-Motor Capability: VFC suitable for variable-speed service to multiple motors. Overload protection shuts down VFC and motors served by it, and generates fault indications, when overload protection activates.



- a. Configure to allow two or more motors to operate simultaneously at the same speed; separate overload relay for each controlled motor.
  - b. Configure to allow two motors to operate separately; operator selectable via local or remote switch or contact closures; single overload relay for both motors; separate output magnetic contactors for each motor.
  - c. Configure to allow two motors to operate simultaneously and in a lead/lag mode, with one motor operated at variable speed via the power converter and the other at constant speed via the bypass controller; separate overload relay for each controlled motor.
2. Damper control circuit with end of travel feedback capability.
  3. Sleep Function: Senses a minimal deviation of a feedback signal and stops the motor. On an increase in speed-command signal deviation, VFC resumes normal operation.
  4. Motor Preheat Function: Preheats motor when idle to prevent moisture accumulation in the motor.
  5. Firefighter's Override (Smoke Purge) Input: On a remote contact closure from the firefighter's control station **OR** smoke-control fan controller, **as directed**, this password-protected input:
    - a. Overrides all other local and external inputs (analog/digital, serial communication, and all keypad commands).
    - b. Forces VFC to operate motor, without any other run or speed command, at a field-adjustable, preset speed.  
**OR**  
Forces VFC to transfer to Bypass Mode and operate motor at full speed.
    - c. Causes display of Override Mode on the VFC display.
    - d. Reset VFC to normal operation on removal of override signal automatically **OR** manually, **as directed**.
  6. Remote Indicating Circuit Terminals: Mode selection, controller status, and controller fault.
  7. Remote digital operator kit.
  8. Communication Port: RS-232 port, USB 2.0 port, or equivalent connection capable of connecting a printer and a notebook computer.
- J. Feeder-Tap Units
1. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with series-connected rating **OR** interrupting capacity, **as directed**, to meet available fault currents.
    - a. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
    - b. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
    - c. Electronic trip circuit breakers with rms sensing; field-replaceable rating plug or field-replicable electronic trip; and the following field-adjustable settings:
      - 1) Instantaneous trip.
      - 2) Long- and short-time pickup levels.
      - 3) Long- and short-time time adjustments.
      - 4) Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and  $I^2t$  response.
    - d. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
    - e. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker; trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.
    - f. MCCB Features and Accessories:
      - 1) Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
      - 2) Lugs: Mechanical **OR** Compression, **as directed**, style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
      - 3) Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge (HID) lighting circuits.



- 4) Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
  - 5) Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
  - 6) Communication Capability: Circuit-breaker-mounted **OR** Universal-mounted **OR** Integral **OR** Din-rail-mounted, **as directed**, communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Division 26 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring And Control".
  - 7) Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 55 **OR** 75, **as directed**, percent of rated voltage.
  - 8) Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
  - 9) Auxiliary Contacts: One SPDT switch **OR** Two SPDT switches, **as directed**, with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
  - 10) Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
2. Fusible Switch: NEMA KS 1, Type HD, clips to accommodate specified fuses with lockable handle.
  3. Fuses are specified in Division 26 Section "Fuses".

K. Transient Voltage Suppression Devices

1. Surge Protection Device Description: IEEE C62.41-compliant, integrally mounted, wired-in **OR** plug-in **OR** bolt-on, **as directed**, solid-state, parallel-connected, modular (with field-replaceable modules) **OR** non-modular, **as directed**, type, with sine-wave tracking suppression and filtering modules, UL 1449, second edition, short-circuit current rating matching or exceeding the MCC short-circuit rating, and with the following features and accessories:
  - a. Fuses, rated at 200-kA interrupting capacity.
  - b. Fabrication using bolted compression lugs for internal wiring.
  - c. Integral disconnect switch.
  - d. Redundant suppression circuits.
  - e. Redundant replaceable modules.
  - f. Arrangement with wire connections to phase buses, neutral bus, and ground bus.
  - g. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
  - h. Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
  - i. Form-C contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, one NO and one NC, for remote monitoring of system operation. Contacts shall reverse position on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.
  - j. Four **OR** Six, **as directed**, -digit, transient-event counter set to totalize transient surges.
2. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating: 160 kA per mode/320 kA per phase **OR** 120 kA per mode/240 kA per phase **OR** 80 kA per mode/160 kA per phase, **as directed**.
3. Withstand Capabilities: 12,000 IEEE C62.41, Category C3 (10 kA), 8-by-20-mic.sec. surges with less than 5 percent change in clamping voltage.
4. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for grounded wye circuits with 480Y/277 **OR** 208Y/120 **OR** 600Y/347, **as directed**, -V, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall be as follows:
  - a. Line to Neutral: 800 V for 480Y/277 **OR** 400 V for 208Y/120 **OR** 1200 V for 600Y/347, **as directed**.
  - b. Line to Ground: 800 V for 480Y/277 **OR** 400 V for 208Y/120 **OR** 1200 V for 600Y/347, **as directed**.
  - c. Neutral to Ground: 800 V for 480Y/277 **OR** 400 V for 208Y/120 **OR** 1200 V for 600Y/347, **as directed**.

**OR**

Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for 240/120-V, three-phase, four-wire circuits with high leg shall be as follows:



- a. Line to Neutral: 400 V, 800 V from high leg.
- b. Line to Ground: 400 V.
- c. Neutral to Ground: 400 V.

**OR**

Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for 240-, 480-, or 600-V, three-phase, three-wire, delta circuits shall be as follows:

- a. Line to Line: 2000 V for 480 V **OR** 1000 V for 240 V **OR** 2500 V for 600 V, **as directed**.
- b. Line to Ground: 1500 V for 480 V **OR** 800 V for 240 V **OR** 2500 V for 600 V, **as directed**.

## L. Instrumentation

1. Instrument Transformers (for the Owner metering): IEEE C57.13, NEMA EI 21.1, and the following:
  - a. PTs: IEEE C57.13; 120 V, 60 Hz, single **OR** tapped **OR** double, **as directed**, secondary; disconnecting type with integral fuse mountings. Burden and accuracy shall be consistent with connected metering and relay devices.
  - b. Current Transformers: IEEE C57.13; 5 A, 60 Hz, secondary; wound **OR** bushing **OR** bar or window, **as directed**, type; single **OR** double, **as directed**, secondary winding and secondary shorting device. Burden and accuracy shall be consistent with connected metering and relay devices.
  - c. CPTs: Dry type, mounted in separate compartments for units larger than 3 kVA.
  - d. Current Transformers for Neutral and Ground-Fault Current Sensing: Connect secondary wiring to ground overcurrent relays, via shorting terminals, to provide selective tripping of main and tie circuit breaker. Coordinate with feeder circuit-breaker, ground-fault protection.
2. Multifunction Digital-Metering Monitor: Microprocessor-based unit suitable for three- or four-wire systems and with the following features:
  - a. Listed or recognized by a nationally recognized testing laboratory.
  - b. Inputs from sensors or 5-A current-transformer secondaries, and potential terminals rated to 600 V.
  - c. Switch-selectable digital display of the following values with the indicated maximum accuracy tolerances:
    - 1) Phase Currents, Each Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
    - 2) Phase-to-Phase Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
    - 3) Phase-to-Neutral Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
    - 4) Three-Phase Real Power (Megawatts): Plus or minus 2 percent.
    - 5) Three-Phase Reactive Power (Megavars): Plus or minus 2 percent.
    - 6) Power Factor: Plus or minus 2 percent.
    - 7) Frequency: Plus or minus 0.5 percent.
    - 8) Accumulated Energy, Megawatt Hours: Plus or minus 2 percent; accumulated values unaffected by power outages up to 72 hours.
    - 9) Megawatt Demand: Plus or minus 2 percent; demand interval programmable from five to 60 minutes.
    - 10) Contact devices to operate remote impulse-totalizing demand meter.
  - d. Mounting: Display and control unit flush or semiflush mounted in instrument compartment door.
3. Ammeters, Voltmeters, and Power-Factor Meters: ANSI C39.1.
  - a. Meters: 4-inch (100-mm) diameter or 6 inches (150 mm) square, flush or semiflush, with antiparallax 250-degree scale and external zero adjustment.
  - b. Voltmeters: Cover an expanded-scale range of nominal voltage plus 10 percent.
4. Instrument Switches: Rotary type with off position.
  - a. Voltmeter Switches: Permit reading of all phase-to-phase voltages and phase-to-neutral voltages where a neutral is included.
  - b. Ammeter Switches: Permit reading of current in each phase and maintain current-transformer secondaries in a closed-circuit condition at all times.





5. Feeder Ammeters: 2-1/2-inch (64-mm) minimum size with 90- or 120-degree scale. Meter and transfer device with off position, located on overcurrent device door for feeder circuits, unless otherwise indicated.
  6. Watt-Hour Meters and Wattmeters:
    - a. Comply with ANSI C12.1.
    - b. Three-phase induction type with two stators, each with current and potential coil, rated 5 A, 120 V, 60 Hz.
    - c. Suitable for connection to three- and four-wire circuits.
    - d. Potential indicating lamps.
    - e. Adjustments for light and full load, phase balance, and power factor.
    - f. Four-dial clock register.
    - g. Integral demand indicator.

**OR**

Contact devices to operate remote impulse-totalizing demand meter.

    - h. Ratchets to prevent reverse rotation.
    - i. Removable meter with drawout test plug.
    - j. Semiflush mounted case with matching cover.
    - k. Appropriate multiplier tag.
  7. Impulse-Totalizing Demand Meter:
    - a. Comply with ANSI C12.1.
    - b. Suitable for use with MCC watt-hour meter, including two-circuit totalizing relay.
    - c. Cyclometer.
    - d. Four-dial, totalizing kilowatt-hour register.
    - e. Positive chart drive mechanism.
    - f. Capillary pen holding a minimum of one month's ink supply.
    - g. Roll chart with minimum 31-day capacity; appropriate multiplier tag.
    - h. Capable of indicating and recording five **OR 15 OR 30, as directed**,-minute integrated demand of totalized system.
- M. MCC Control Power
1. Control Circuits: 120-V ac, supplied through secondary disconnecting devices from CPT.  
**OR**  
Control Circuits: 120-V ac, supplied from remote branch circuit.
  2. Electrically Interlocked Main and Tie Circuit Breakers: Two CPTs in separate compartments, with interlocking relays, connected to the primary side of each CPT at the line side of the associated main circuit breaker. 120-V secondaries connected through automatic transfer relays to ensure a fail-safe automatic transfer scheme.
  3. Control Power Fuses: Primary and secondary fuses for current-limiting and overload protection of transformer and fuses for protection of control circuits.
  4. Control Wiring: Factory installed, with bundling, lacing, and protection included. Provide flexible conductors for No. 8 AWG and smaller, for conductors across hinges, and for conductors for interconnections between shipping units.
- N. Enclosures
1. Indoor Enclosures: Freestanding steel cabinets unless otherwise indicated. NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 1A **OR** Type 2 **OR** Type 12, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
  2. Space Heaters: Factory-installed electric space heaters of sufficient wattage in each vertical section to maintain enclosure temperature above expected dew point.
    - a. Space-Heater Control: Thermostats to maintain temperature of each section above expected dew point **OR** Manual switching of branch-circuit protective device, **as directed**.
    - b. Space-Heater Power Source: Transformer, factory installed in MCC **OR** 120-V external branch circuit, **as directed**.
  3. Enclosure Finish for Indoor Units: Factory-applied finish in manufacturer's standard gray **OR** custom color, **as directed**, finish over a rust-inhibiting primer on treated metal surface.



4. Outdoor Enclosures: Type 3R, non-walk-in aisle **OR** Type 3R, with interior-lighted walk-in aisle, **as directed**.
    - a. Finish: Factory-applied finish in manufacturer's standard **OR** custom, **as directed**, color; undersurfaces treated with corrosion-resistant undercoating.
    - b. Enclosure: Flat **OR** Downward, rearward sloping, **as directed**, roof; bolt-on rear covers **OR** rear hinged doors, **as directed**, for each section, with provisions for padlocking.
    - c. Doors: Personnel door at each end of aisle, minimum width of 30 inches (762 mm); opening outwards; with panic hardware and provisions for padlocking **OR** cylinder lock, **as directed**.
    - d. Accessories: Fluorescent lighting fixtures, ceiling mounted; wired to a three-way light switch at each end of aisle; GFCI duplex receptacle; emergency battery pack lighting fixture installed on wall of aisle midway between personnel doors.
    - e. Walk-in Aisle Heating and Ventilating:
      - 1) Factory-installed electric unit heater(s), wall or ceiling mounted, with integral thermostat and disconnect and with capacities to maintain switchboard interior temperature of 40 deg F (5 deg C) with outside design temperature of 104 deg F (40 deg C).
      - 2) Factory-installed exhaust fan with capacities to maintain switchboard interior temperature of 100 deg F (38 deg C) with outside design temperature of 23 deg F (minus 5 deg C).
      - 3) Ventilating openings complete with replaceable fiberglass air filters, **as directed**.
      - 4) Thermostat: Single stage; wired to control heat and exhaust fan.
    - f. Power for Space Heaters, Ventilation, Lighting, and Receptacle: Include a CPT within the switchboard. Supply voltage shall be 120 **OR** 120/240 **OR** 120/208, **as directed**, -V ac.  
**OR**  
Power for space heaters, ventilation, lighting, and receptacle provided by a remote source.
  5. Compartments: Modular; individual lift-off, **as directed**, doors with concealed hinges and quick-captive screw fasteners. Interlocks on units requiring disconnecting means in off position before door can be opened or closed, except by operating a permissive release device.
  6. Interchangeability: Compartments constructed to allow for removal of units without opening adjacent doors, disconnecting adjacent compartments, or disturbing operation of other units in MCC; same size compartments to permit interchangeability and ready rearrangement of units, such as replacing three single units with a unit requiring three spaces, without cutting or welding.
  7. Wiring Spaces:
    - a. Vertical wireways in each vertical section for vertical wiring to each unit compartment; supports to hold wiring in place.
    - b. Horizontal wireways in bottom **OR** top **OR** bottom and top, **as directed**, of each vertical section for horizontal wiring between vertical sections; supports to hold wiring in place.
- O. Auxiliary Devices
1. General Requirements for Control-Circuit and Pilot Devices: NEMA ICS 5; factory installed in controller enclosure cover unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Push Buttons, Pilot Lights, and Selector Switches: Heavy **OR** Standard, **as directed**, -duty, oiltight, **as directed**, type.
      - 1) Push Buttons: Covered **OR** Lockable **OR** Recessed **OR** Shielded **OR** Shrouded **OR** Unguarded, **as directed**, types; maintained **OR** momentary, **as directed**, contact unless otherwise indicated.
      - 2) Pilot Lights: Incandescent **OR** LED **OR** Neon **OR** Resistor **OR** Transformer, **as directed**, types; <Insert color(s)>; push to test, **as directed**.
      - 3) Selector Switches: Rotary type.
    - b. Elapsed-Time Meters: Heavy duty with digital readout in hours; nonresettable **OR** resettable, **as directed**.
    - c. Meters: Panel type, 2-1/2-inch (64-mm) minimum size with 90- or 120-degree scale and plus or minus 2 percent accuracy with selector switches having an off position.
  2. NC **OR** NO **OR** Reversible NC/NO, **as directed**, contactor auxiliary contact(s).



3. Control Relays: Auxiliary and adjustable pneumatic **OR** solid-state, **as directed**, time-delay relays.
4. Phase-Failure, Phase-Reversal, and Undervoltage and Overvoltage Relays: Solid-state sensing circuit with isolated output contacts for hard-wired connections. Provide adjustable undervoltage, overvoltage, and time-delay settings.
5. Space heaters, with NC auxiliary contacts, to mitigate condensation in enclosures installed outdoors or in unconditioned interior spaces subject to humidity and temperature swings.
6. Sun shields installed on fronts, sides, and tops of enclosures installed outdoors and subject to direct and extended sun exposure.
7. Cover gaskets for Type 1 enclosures.
8. Terminals for connecting power factor correction capacitors to the line **OR** load, **as directed**, side of overload relays.
9. Spare control-wiring terminal blocks; unwired **OR** wired, **as directed**.
10. Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Identified and compartmented steel box **OR** cabinet with hinged lockable door, **as directed**.

P. Characteristics And Ratings

1. Wiring: NEMA ICS 18, Class I **OR** Class I-S, **as directed**, Type A **OR** Type B, for starters above Size 3 **OR** Type B-D, for starter Size 3 and below **OR** Type B-T, for starter Size 3 and below **OR** Type C, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Wiring: NEMA ICS 18, Class II **OR** Class II-S, **as directed**, Type B, for starters above Size 3 **OR** Type B-D, for starter Size 3 and below **OR** Type B-T, for starter Size 3 and below **OR** Type C, **as directed**.
2. Control and Load Wiring: Factory installed, with bundling, lacing, and protection included. Provide flexible conductors for No. 8 AWG and smaller, for conductors across hinges, and for conductors for interconnections between shipping units.
3. Nominal System Voltage: 480 V, three phase, three wire **OR** 480Y/277 V, three phase, four wire, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Nominal System Voltage: 208 V, three phase, three wire **OR** 208/120 V, three phase, four wire, **as directed**.
4. Short-Circuit Current Rating for Each Unit: Combination series rated **OR** Fully rated, **as directed**; 22 **OR** 42 **OR** 65 **OR** 100, **as directed**, kA.
5. Short-Circuit Current Rating of MCC: Combination series rated **OR** Fully rated, **as directed**, with its main overcurrent device; 22 **OR** 42 **OR** 65 **OR** 100, **as directed**, kA.
6. Environmental Ratings:
  - a. Ambient Temperature Rating: Not less than 0 deg F (minus 18 deg C) and not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C), with an average value not exceeding 95 deg F (35 deg C) over a 24-hour period.
  - b. Ambient Storage Temperature Rating: Not less than minus 4 deg F (minus 20 deg C) and not exceeding 140 deg F (60 deg C)
  - c. Humidity Rating: Less than 95 percent (noncondensing).
  - d. Altitude Rating: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m), or 3300 feet (1000 m) if MCC includes solid-state devices.
7. Main-Bus Continuous Rating: 600 **OR** 800 **OR** 1000 **OR** 1200 **OR** 1600 **OR** 2000, **as directed**, A.
8. Vertical-Bus Minimum, **as directed**, Continuous Rating: 300 **OR** 600 **OR** 1200, **as directed**, A.
9. Horizontal and Vertical Bus Bracing (Short-Circuit Current Rating): Match MCC short-circuit current rating.
10. Main Horizontal and Equipment Ground Buses: Uniform capacity for entire length of MCC's main and vertical sections. Provide for future extensions from both ends, **as directed**. Brace bus extensions for busway feeder bus, **as directed**.
11. Vertical Phase and Equipment Ground Buses: Uniform capacity for entire usable height of vertical sections, except for sections incorporating single units.



12. Phase- and Neutral-, **as directed**, Bus Material: Hard-drawn copper of 98 percent conductivity, silver **OR** tin, **as directed**, plated.  
**OR**  
Phase- and Neutral-, **as directed**, Bus Material: Tin-plated, high-strength, electrical-grade aluminum alloy.
  13. Neutral Buses: 50 percent of the ampacity of phase buses unless otherwise indicated, equipped with mechanical **OR** compression, **as directed**, connectors for outgoing circuit neutral cables. Brace bus extensions for busway feeder neutral bus, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Neutral Buses: 100 percent of the ampacity of phase buses unless otherwise indicated, equipped with mechanical **OR** compression, **as directed**, connectors for outgoing circuit neutral cables. Brace bus extensions for busway feeder neutral bus, **as directed**.
  14. Ground Bus: Minimum size required by UL 845, hard-drawn copper of 98 percent conductivity, equipped with mechanical **OR** compression, **as directed**, connectors for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors. For busway feeders, extend insulated equipment grounding cable to busway ground connection and support cable at intervals in vertical run, **as directed**.
  15. Front-Connected, Front-Accessible MCCs:
    - a. Main Devices: Drawout **OR** Fixed, **as directed**, mounted.
    - b. Controller Units: Drawout and fixed, **as directed**, mounted.
    - c. Feeder-Tap Units: Drawout and fixed, **as directed**, mounted.
    - d. Sections front and rear aligned.
  16. Utility Metering Compartment: Fabricated, barrier compartment and section complying with utility company's requirements; hinged sealed door; buses provisioned for mounting utility company's current transformers and potential transformers or potential taps as required by utility company. If separate vertical section is required for utility metering, match and align with basic MCC. Provide service entrance label and necessary applicable service entrance features.
  17. the Owner Metering Compartment: A separate customer metering compartment and section with front hinged door, metering, and current transformers for each meter. Current transformer secondary wiring shall be terminated on shorting-type terminal blocks. Include potential transformers having primary and secondary fuses with disconnecting means and secondary wiring terminated on terminal blocks, **as directed**.
  18. Bus Transition and Incoming Pull Sections: Matched and aligned with basic MCC.
  19. Pull Box on Top of an MCC:
    - a. Adequate ventilation to maintain temperature in pull box within same limits as MCC.
    - b. Set back from front to clear circuit-breaker removal mechanism.
    - c. Removable covers forming top, front, and sides. Top covers at rear easily removable for drilling and cutting.
    - d. Insulated bottom of fire-resistive material with separate holes for cable drops into MCC.
    - e. Cable supports arranged to facilitate cabling and adequate to support cables, including those for future installation.
    - f. Isolation Barrier Access Provisions: Permit checking of bus-bolt tightness.
  20. Future Devices: Equip compartments with mounting brackets, supports, bus connections, and appurtenances at full rating of unit.
  21. Bus-Bar Insulation: Factory-applied, flame-retardant, tape wrapping of individual bus bars or flame-retardant, spray-applied insulation. Minimum insulation temperature rating of 105 deg C.
  22. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for OCPDs and other components including instruments and instrument transformers.
- Q. Source Quality Control
1. MCC Testing: Inspect and test MCCs according to requirements in NEMA ICS 18.
  2. VFC Testing: Test and inspect VFCs according to requirements in NEMA ICS 61800-2.
    - a. Test each VFC while connected to its specified motor **OR** a motor that is comparable to that for which the VFC is rated, **as directed**.



- b. Verification of Performance: Rate VFCs according to operation of functions and features specified.
3. MCCs will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
4. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

1. Examine areas and surfaces to receive MCCs, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
2. Examine enclosed controllers before installation. Reject enclosed controllers that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### B. Harmonic Analysis Study

1. Perform a harmonic analysis study to identify the effects of nonlinear loads and their associated harmonic contributions on the voltages and currents throughout the electrical system. Analyze possible **OR** designated, **as directed**, operating scenarios, including recommendations for VFC input filtering to limit TDD and THD(V) at the defined PCC to specified levels.
2. Prepare a harmonic analysis study report complying with IEEE 399 and NETA Acceptance Testing Specification.

#### C. Installation

1. Coordinate layout and installation of MCCs with other construction including conduit, piping, equipment, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
2. Floor-Mounting Controllers: Install MCCs on 4-inch (100-mm) nominal thickness concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
  - a. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
  - b. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - c. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - d. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
3. Seismic Bracing: Comply with requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
4. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
5. Install fuses in each fusible switch.
6. Install fuses in control circuits if not factory installed. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Fuses".
7. Install heaters in thermal-overload relays. Select heaters based on actual nameplate full-load amperes after motors have been installed.
8. Install, connect, and fuse thermal-protector monitoring relays furnished with motor-driven equipment.
9. Install power factor correction capacitors. Connect to the line **OR** load, **as directed**, side of overload relays. If connected to the load side of overload relays, adjust overload heater sizes to accommodate the reduced motor full-load currents.
10. Comply with NECA 1.

#### D. Identification

1. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems" for identification of MCC, MCC components, and control wiring.



- a. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
  - b. Label MCC and each cubicle with engraved nameplate.
  - c. Label each enclosure-mounted control and pilot device.
  - d. Mark up a set of manufacturer's connection wiring diagrams with field-assigned wiring identifications and return to manufacturer for inclusion in Record Drawings.
2. Operating Instructions: Frame printed operating instructions for MCCs, including control sequences and emergency procedures. Fabricate frame of finished metal, and cover instructions with clear acrylic plastic. Mount on front of MCCs.
- E. Control Wiring Installation
1. Install wiring between enclosed controllers **OR** master terminal boards, **as directed**, and remote devices and facility's BAS **OR** and facility's central-control system, **as directed**. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Control-voltage Electrical Power Cables".
  2. Bundle, train, and support wiring in enclosures.
  3. Connect selector switches and other automatic-control selection devices where applicable.
    - a. Connect selector switches to bypass only those manual- and automatic-control devices that have no safety functions when switch is in manual-control position.
    - b. Connect selector switches within enclosed controller circuit in both manual and automatic positions for safety-type control devices such as low- and high-pressure cutouts, high-temperature cutouts, and motor overload protectors.
- F. Connections
1. Comply with requirements for installation of conduit in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems". Drawings indicate general arrangement of conduit, fittings, and specialties.
  2. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
- G. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections.
  2. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
    - a. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed controller, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
    - b. Test continuity of each circuit.
  3. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. Inspect controllers, wiring, components, connections, and equipment installation. Test and adjust controllers, components, and equipment.
    - b. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed controller element, component, connecting motor supply, feeder, and control circuits.
    - c. Test continuity of each circuit.
    - d. Verify that voltages at controller locations are within 10 percent of motor nameplate rated voltages. If outside this range for any motor, notify the Owner before starting the motor(s).
    - e. Test each motor for proper phase rotation.
    - f. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
    - g. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
    - h. Perform the following infrared (thermographic) scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
      - 1) Initial Infrared Scanning: After Final Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each multipole enclosed controller. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
      - 2) Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each multipole enclosed controller 11 months after date of Final Completion.



- 3) Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
    - i. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
    - j. Mark up a set of manufacturer's drawings with all field modifications incorporated during construction and return to manufacturer for inclusion in Record Drawings.
  4. Enclosed controllers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
  5. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies enclosed controllers and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
- H. Startup Service
1. Perform startup service.
    - a. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- I. Adjusting
1. Set field-adjustable switches, auxiliary relays, time-delay relays, timers, and overload-relay pickup and trip ranges.
  2. Adjust overload relay heaters or settings if power factor correction capacitors are connected to the load side of the overload relays.
  3. Adjust the trip settings of MCPs and thermal-magnetic circuit breakers with adjustable, instantaneous trip elements. Initially adjust to six times the motor nameplate full-load amperes and attempt to start motors several times, allowing for motor cool-down between starts. If tripping occurs on motor inrush, adjust settings in increments until motors start without tripping. Do not exceed eight times the motor full-load amperes (or 11 times for NEMA Premium Efficient motors if required). Where these maximum settings do not allow starting of a motor, notify the Owner before increasing settings.
  4. Set the taps on reduced-voltage autotransformer controllers at 50 **OR** 65 **OR** 80, **as directed**, percent.
  5. Set field-adjustable switches and program microprocessors for required start and stop sequences in reduced-voltage, solid-state controllers.
  6. Program microprocessors in VFCs for required operational sequences, status indications, alarms, event recording, and display features. Clear events memory after final acceptance testing and prior to Final Completion.
  7. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Division 26 Section "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study".
- J. Protection
1. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions until enclosed controllers are ready to be energized and placed into service.
  2. Replace controllers whose interiors have been exposed to water or other liquids prior to Final Completion.
- K. Demonstration
1. Train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain enclosed controllers, and to use and reprogram microprocessor-based, reduced-voltage, solid-state controllers, **as directed**.

END OF SECTION 26 09 23 00c



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





## SECTION 26 09 23 00d - CENTRAL DIMMING CONTROLS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for central dimming controls. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes microprocessor-based central dimming controls with the following components:
  - a. Control network.
  - b. Master-control stations.
  - c. Partitioned-space master-control stations.
  - d. Wall stations.
  - e. Dimmer cabinets.
  - f. Manual switches and plates for controlling dimmers.

#### C. Definitions

1. Fade Override: The ability to temporarily set fade times to zero for all lighting scenes.
2. Fade Rate: The time it takes each zone to arrive at the next scene, dependent on the degree of change in lighting level.
3. Fade Time: The time it takes all zones to fade from one lighting scene to another, with all zones arriving at the next scene at the same time.
4. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70, term for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling, and power-limited circuits.
5. Scene: The lighting effect created by adjusting several zones of lighting to the desired intensity.
6. SCR: Silicon-controlled rectifier.
7. Zone: A fixture or group of fixtures controlled simultaneously as a single entity. Also known as a "channel."

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
  - a. For central dimming controls; include elevation, features, characteristics, and labels.
  - b. For dimmer panels; include dimensions, features, dimmer characteristics, ratings, and directories.
  - c. Device plates, plate color, and material.
  - d. Ballasts and lamp combinations compatible with dimmer controls.
  - e. Sound data including results of operational tests of central dimming controls.
  - f. Operational documentation for software and firmware.
2. Shop Drawings: Detail assemblies of standard components, custom assembled for specific application on Project. Indicate dimensions, weights, arrangement of components, and clearance and access requirements.
  - a. Include elevation views of front panels of control and indicating devices and control stations.
  - b. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Samples: For master-control stations, partitioned-space master-control stations, wall stations, dimmer cabinets, and faceplates with factory-applied color finishes and technical features.
  - a. Operation and Maintenance Data: For central dimming controls with remote-mounting dimmers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
4. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.



- E. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
  2. Comply with 47 CFR 15, Subparts A and B, for Class A digital devices.
  3. Comply with NFPA 70.
- F. Warranty
1. Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of central dimming controls that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
    - a. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - 1) Damage from transient voltage surges.
    - b. Warranty Period: Cost to repair or replace any parts for two years from date of Final Completion.
    - c. Extended Warranty Period: Cost of replacement parts (materials only, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site), for eight years, that failed in service due to transient voltage surges.
- G. Software Service Agreement
1. Services in this Article may not be allowed for publicly funded projects.
  2. Technical Support: Beginning with Final Completion, provide software support for two years.
  3. Upgrade Service: Update software to latest version at Project completion. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Final Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system. Upgrade shall include new or revised licenses for use of software.
    - a. Provide 30 days' notice to the Owner to allow scheduling and access to system and to allow the Owner to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

- A. General System Requirements
1. Compatibility: Dimming control components shall be compatible with other elements of lighting fixtures, ballasts, transformers, and lighting controls.
  2. Line-Voltage Surge Suppression: Factory installed as an integral part of 120- and 277-V ac, solid-state dimmers and control panels.
    - a. Alternative Line-Voltage Surge Suppression: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Transient-voltage Suppression For Low-voltage Electrical Power Circuits" for Category A **OR** B, **as directed**, locations.
  3. Dimmers and Dimmer Modules: Comply with UL 508.
    - a. Audible Noise and Radio-Frequency Interference Suppression: Solid-state dimmers shall operate smoothly over their operating ranges without audible lamp or dimmer noise or radio-frequency interference. Modules shall include integral or external filters to suppress audible noise and radio-frequency interference.
    - b. Dimmer or Dimmer-Module Rating: Not less than 125 percent of connected load unless otherwise indicated.
- B. System Description
1. Description: Microprocessor-based, solid-state controls consisting of control stations and a separately mounted dimmer cabinet.
    - a. Operation: Change variable dimmer settings of indicated number of zones simultaneously from one preset scene to another when a rocker switch **OR** pushbutton **OR** slider, **as directed**, is operated.
    - b. System control shall include master station(s), wall stations, and dimmer panels.
    - c. Each zone shall be configurable to control the following light sources:



- 1) Fluorescent lamps with electronic **OR** magnetic, **as directed**, ballasts.
  - 2) Line-voltage incandescent lamps.
  - 3) Low-voltage incandescent lamps.
  - 4) Cold cathode lamps.
  - 5) Non-dimmed loads.
  - 6) LED lamps.
- d. Control of each zone shall interface with controls for the following accessory functions:
- 1) Curtains and drapes.
  - 2) Blackout curtains.
  - 3) Projector screens.
  - 4) Motorized partitions.
  - 5) Manually positioned partitions.
- e. Memory: Retain preset scenes and fade settings through power failures for at least 90 days by retaining physical settings of controls or by an on-board, automatically recharged battery.
- C. Control Network
1. Dimmers shall receive signals from control stations that are linked to dimmer cabinet with a common network data cable.
  2. Functions of network control stations shall be set up at master station that include the number and arrangement of scene presets, zones, and fade times at wall stations.
    - a. Control Voltage: 24- or 10-V dc.
    - b. Comply with USITT AMX 192 **OR** USITT DMX 512, **as directed**, for data transmission.
- D. Master-Control Stations
1. Functions and Features:
    - a. Control adjustment of the lighting level for each scene of each zone, and adjustment of fade-time setting for each scene change from one preset scene to another. Controls shall use analog manual sliders **OR** digital rocker switches with LCD graphic display of light level, **as directed**.
    - b. Master channel shall raise and lower lighting level of all zones.
    - c. Fade rate for each scene shall be adjustable from zero to 60 seconds.
    - d. Fade override control for each scene.
    - e. Recall each preset scene and allow adjustment of zone controls associated with that scene.
    - f. Lockout switch to prevent changes when set.
    - g. On and off scene controls for non-dim channel contactors.
    - h. Emergency-control pushbutton to bypass all controls, turning all dimmers to full bright and turning on non-dim channel contactors.
    - i. Master on and off switch; off position enables housekeeping controls.
    - j. Housekeeping controls to turn on selected lighting fixtures for housekeeping functions.
    - k. Pushbuttons for accessory functions.
    - l. Enable and disable wall stations.
    - m. Communications link to other master stations.
    - n. Provide for connecting a portable computer to program the master station.
    - o. Rear-illuminate all scene-select buttons.
    - p. Show lighting-level setting and fade-rate setting graphically using LEDs or backlighted bar-graph indicator.
  2. Mounting: Single, flush wall box with manufacturer's standard faceplate with hinged transparent locking cover, **as directed**.
- E. Partitioned-Space Master-Control Station
1. Functions and Features:
    - a. Automatically combine and separate lighting and accessory function controls as spaces are configured with movable partitions; with controls for adjustment of the lighting level for



- each scene of each dimmer, and adjustment of fade-rate setting for each scene change from one preset scene to another.
- b. Master controls shall accommodate partitioning the space into six adjacent rooms.
  - c. Manual controls to set up six scenes for each room. Include wall stations in each room to control scenes.
  - d. Master channel to raise and lower the lighting level of all zones.
  - e. Adjustable fade rate for each scene from zero to 60 seconds.
  - f. Fade override control for each scene.
  - g. On and off scene controls for non-dim channel contactors.
  - h. Emergency-control pushbutton to bypass all controls, turning all dimmers to full bright and turning on non-dim channel contactors.
  - i. Master on and off switch; off position enables housekeeping controls.
  - j. Housekeeping controls to turn on selected lighting fixtures for housekeeping functions.
  - k. Pushbuttons for accessory functions.
  - l. Provide for connecting a portable computer to program the master station.
  - m. Rear-illuminate all scene-select buttons.
  - n. Show lighting-level setting and fade-rate setting graphically using LEDs or backlighted bar-graph indicator.
2. Custom Graphics. Include a graphical display of room configurations and the names for each. Indicate the current spaces configuration with LCD graphic or LED-illuminated indicators, and show which wall stations are active. Inactive wall stations shall be automatically deactivated.
  3. Mounting: Single, flush wall box with manufacturer's standard faceplate with hinged transparent locking cover, **as directed**.

#### F. Wall Stations

1. Functions and Features:
  - a. Wall stations shall function as a submaster to a master station, containing limited control of selected scenes of the master station.
  - b. Controls to adjust the lighting level of each dimmer for each scene, and the fade time setting for each scene change from one preset scene to another.
  - c. Numbered pushbuttons to select scenes.
  - d. Off switch to turn master station off. Operating the off switch at any remote station shall automatically turn on selected housekeeping lighting, **as directed**.
  - e. On switch turns all scenes of master station to full bright.
  - f. Pushbutton controls for accessory functions.
2. Mounting: Flush, wall box with manufacturer's standard faceplate.
3. Hand-held Cordless Control: Scene-select and accessory function pushbuttons using infrared **OR** radio-frequency, **as directed**, transmission.

#### G. Dimmer Cabinets

1. Factory wired, convection cooled without fans, with barriers to accommodate 120- and 277-V feeders and suitable to control designated lighting equipment or accessory functions.
2. Ambient Conditions:
  - a. Temperature: 60 to 95 deg F (15 to 35 deg C).
  - b. Relative Humidity: 10 to 90 percent, noncondensing.
  - c. Filtered air supply.
3. Dimmer Cabinet Assembly: NRTL listed and labeled.
4. Cabinet Type: Plug in, modular, and accepting dimmers of each specified type in any plug-in position.
  - a. Integrated Fault-Current Rating: 10,000-A RMS symmetrical.
5. Lighting Dimmers: Solid-state SCR dimmers.
  - a. Primary Protection: Magnetic or thermal-magnetic circuit breaker, also serving as the disconnecting means.
  - b. Dimmer response to control signal shall follow the "Square Law Dimming Curve" specified in IESNA's "IESNA Lighting Handbook."



- c. Dimming Range: 0 to 100 percent, full output voltage not less than 98 percent of line voltage.
  - d. Dimmed circuits shall be filtered to provide a minimum 350-mic.sec. current-rise time at a 90-degree conduction angle and 50 percent of rated dimmer capacity. Rate of current rise shall not exceed 30 mA/mic.sec., measured from 10 to 90 percent of load-current waveform.
  - e. Protect controls of each dimmer with a fuse and transient voltage surge suppression, **as directed**.
6. Non-dim modules shall include relays with contacts rated to switch 20-A tungsten-filament load at 120-V ac and 20-A electronic ballast load at 277-V ac.
  7. Accessory function control modules shall be compatible with requirement of the accessory being controlled.
  8. Digital Control Network:
    - a. Dimmers shall receive digital signals from digital network control stations that are linked to the dimmer cabinet with a common network data cable.
    - b. Functions of digital network control stations shall be set up at the dimmer cabinet's electronic controls that include indicated number and arrangement of scene presets, channels, and fade times.
  9. Emergency Power Transfer Switch: Comply with UL 1008; factory prewired and pretested to automatically transfer load circuits from normal to emergency power supply when normal supply fails.
    - a. Transfer from normal to emergency supply when normal-supply voltage drops to 55 percent or less.
    - b. Retransfer immediately to normal on failure of emergency supply and after an adjustable time-delay of 10 to 90 seconds on restoration of normal supply while emergency supply is available.
    - c. Integrated Fault-Current Rating: Same value as listed for the panel.
    - d. Test Switch: Simulate failure of normal supply to test controls associated with transfer scheme.
    - e. Fabricate and test dimmer boards to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
- H. Portable Computer
1. Description: As recommended by master-control station manufacturer, to program master station and associated wall stations, and all interconnected master stations, **as directed**. Portable computer shall be laptop style with a battery runtime of at least two hours. Display shall be an 11-inch (280-mm) interactive-matrix LCD and shall have required hardware, firmware, and software to program specified control functions of master-control stations.
  2. Software shall be configured and customized by master-station manufacturer.
- I. Manual Switches And Plates
1. Switches: Modular, momentary pushbutton, low-voltage type.
    - a. Color: White unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Integral Pilot Light: Indicate when circuit is on. Use where indicated.
    - c. Locator Light: Internal illumination.
    - d. Wall Plates: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices" for materials, finish, and color. Use multigang plates if more than one switch is indicated at a location.
    - e. Legend: Engraved or permanently silk-screened on wall plate where indicated. Use designations indicated on Drawings.
- J. Conductors And Cables
1. Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".



2. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 **OR** 22 **OR** 24, **as directed**, AWG. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".
3. Class 1 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 14 **OR** 16 **OR** 18, **as directed**, AWG. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".
4. Unshielded, Twisted-Pair Data Cable: Category 5e **OR** 6, **as directed**. Comply with requirements in Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling".

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Wiring Installation

1. Comply with NECA 1.
2. Wiring Method:
  - a. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables"
  - b. Install unshielded, twisted-pair cable for control and signal transmission conductors, complying with Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling".
  - c. Minimum conduit size shall be 1/2 inch (13 mm).
3. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points. Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
5. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.
6. Install dimmer cabinets for each zone.

#### B. Identification

1. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems" for identifying components and power and control wiring.
2. Label each dimmer module with a unique designation.
3. Label each scene control button with approved scene description.

#### C. Field Quality Control

1. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
  - a. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
2. Tests and Inspections:
  - a. Continuity tests of circuits.
  - b. Operational Test: Set and operate controls to demonstrate their functions and capabilities in a methodical sequence that cues and reproduces actual operating functions.
    - 1) Include testing of dimming control equipment under conditions that simulate actual operational conditions. Record control settings, operations, cues, and functional observations.
  - c. Emergency Power Transfer: Test listed functions.
3. Remove and replace malfunctioning dimming control components and retest as specified above.
4. Test Labeling: After satisfactory completion of tests and inspections, apply a label to tested components indicating test results, date, and responsible agency and representative.
5. Reports: Written reports of tests and observations. Record defective materials and workmanship and unsatisfactory test results. Record repairs and adjustments.

#### D. Demonstration



1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train **OR** Train, **as directed**, the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain central dimming controls. Laptop portable computer shall be used in training, **as directed**.
2. Coordinate demonstration of products specified in this Section with demonstration requirements for low-voltage, programmable lighting control system specified in Division 26 Section "Network Lighting Controls".

END OF SECTION 26 09 23 00d



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





## SECTION 26 09 23 00e - MODULAR DIMMING CONTROLS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for modular dimming controls. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Manual modular dimming controls.
  - b. Integrated, multipreset modular dimming controls.

#### C. Definitions

1. Fade Rate: The time it takes each zone to arrive at the next scene, dependent on the degree of change in lighting level.
2. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling and power-limited circuits.
3. Scene: The lighting effect created by adjusting several zones of lighting to the desired intensity.
4. SCR: Silicon-controlled rectifier.
5. Zone: A fixture or group of fixtures controlled simultaneously as a single entity. Also known as a "channel."

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
  - a. For modular dimming controls; include elevation, dimensions, features, characteristics, ratings, and labels.
  - b. Device plates and plate color and material.
  - c. Ballasts and lamp combinations compatible with dimmers.
  - d. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
2. Samples: For master and remote-control stations, and faceplates with factory-applied color finishes and technical features.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
2. Comply with NFPA 70.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. General Dimming Device Requirements

1. Compatibility: Dimming control components shall be compatible with other elements of lighting fixtures, ballasts, transformers, and lighting controls.
2. Dimmers and Dimmer Modules: Comply with UL 508.
  - a. Audible Noise and Radio-Frequency Interference Suppression: Solid-state dimmers shall operate smoothly over their operating ranges without audible lamp or dimmer noise or radio-frequency interference. Modules shall include integral or external filters to suppress audible noise and radio-frequency interference.
  - b. Dimmer or Dimmer-Module Rating: Not less than 125 percent of connected load unless otherwise indicated.



#### B. Manual Modular Multiscene Dimming Controls

1. Description: Factory-fabricated equipment providing manual modular dimming control consisting of a wall-box-mounted, master-scene controller and indicated number of wall-box zone stations. Controls and dimmers shall be integrated for mounting in one-, two-, or three-gang wall box under a single wall plate. Each zone station shall be adjustable to indicated number of scenes, which shall be recorded on the zone controller.
2. Operation: Automatically change variable dimmer settings of indicated number of zones simultaneously from one preset scene to another when a push button is operated.
3. Each manual modular multiscene dimming controller shall include a master control and remote controls.
4. Each zone shall be configurable to control the following:
  - a. Fluorescent lamps with electronic **OR** magnetic, **as directed**, ballasts.
  - b. Incandescent lamps.
  - c. Low-voltage incandescent lamps.
5. Memory: Retain preset scenes through power failures for at least seven days.
6. Device Plates: Style, material, and color shall comply with Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices".
7. Master-Scene Controller: Suitable for mounting in a single flush wall box.
  - a. Switches: Master off, group dim, group bright, and selectors for each scene.
  - b. LED indicator lights, one associated with each scene switch, and one for the master off switch.
8. Fluorescent Zone Dimmer: Suitable for operating lighting fixtures and ballasts specified in Division 26 Section "Interior Lighting", and arranged to dim number of scenes indicated for the master-scene controller. Scene selection is at the master-scene controller for setting light levels of each zone associated with scene.
  - a. Switch: Rocker **OR** Slider, **as directed**, style for setting the light level for each scene.
  - b. LED indicator lights, one associated with each scene.
  - c. Electrical Rating: 1000 **OR** 2000, **as directed**, VA, 120 V.
9. Incandescent Zone Dimmer: Suitable for operating incandescent lamps at line-voltage or low-voltage lamps connected to a transformer and arranged to dim number of scenes indicated for the master-scene controller. Scene selection shall be at the master-scene controller for setting light levels of each zone associated with scene.
  - a. Switch: Rocker **OR** Slider, **as directed**, style for setting the light level for each scene.
  - b. LED indicator lights, one associated with each scene.
  - c. Voltage Regulation: Dimmer shall maintain a constant light level, with no visible flicker, when the source voltage varies plus or minus 2 percent in RMS voltage.

#### C. Integrated, Multipreset Modular Dimming Controls

1. Indicate number of wall-box, remote-control stations.
2. Description: Factory-fabricated, microprocessor-based, solid-state controls providing manual dimming control consisting of a master station and multiple wall-box, remote-control stations.
3. Operation: Automatically changes variable dimmer settings of indicated number of zones simultaneously from one preset scene to another when a push button is operated.
4. Each zone shall be configurable to control the following:
  - a. Fluorescent lamps with electronic **OR** magnetic, **as directed**, ballasts.
  - b. Incandescent lamps.
  - c. Low-voltage incandescent lamps.
5. Memory: Retain preset scenes and fade settings through power failures by retaining physical settings of controls.
6. Master Station:
  - a. Contains control panel and multiple control and dimmer modules.
  - b. Controls and commands adjustment of each dimmer-zone setting for each scene change from one preset scene to another.
    - 1) Master zone raises and lowers lighting level.
    - 2) Adjustable fade rate for each scene from 1 to 60 seconds.
  - c. Rear-illuminated, scene-select buttons.



- d. Lighting-level setting and fade-rate setting shall be graphically shown using LEDs or backlighted bar-graph indicator.
- e. Mounting: Flush wall box with manufacturer's standard faceplate.
7. Remote-Control Stations:
  - a. Numbered push buttons to select scenes.
  - b. Off switch to turn master station off. Operating the off switch at any remote station shall automatically turn on selected housekeeping lighting, **as directed**.
  - c. On switch turns all scenes of master station to full bright.
  - d. Control Wiring: NFPA 70, Class 2.
  - e. Mounting: Single flush wall box with manufacturer's standard faceplate.
8. Infrared Remote-Control Station: Same functions as for standard remote-control station, except that functions are input by a hand-held infrared transmitter.
9. Dimmers: Modular, plug-in type, with circuit breaker to protect the dimmer and branch circuit.
  - a. Dimming Circuit: Two SCR dimmers, in inverse parallel configuration.
  - b. Dimming Curve: Modified "square law" as specified in IESNA's "IESNA Lighting Handbook"; control voltage is 0- to 10-V dc.
  - c. Dimming Range: 0 to 100 percent, full output voltage not less than 98 percent of line voltage.
  - d. Voltage Regulation: Dimmer shall maintain a constant light level, with no visible flicker, when the source voltage varies plus or minus 2 percent in RMS voltage.
  - e. Short-Circuit Rating: 10 kA for 120 V, 14 kA for 277 V.

D. Conductors And Cables

1. Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".
2. Class 2 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 **OR** 22 **OR** 24, **as directed**, AWG. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Wiring Installation

1. Comply with NECA 1.
2. Wiring Method: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables". Minimum conduit size shall be 1/2 inch (13 mm).
3. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points. Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
5. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

B. Identification

1. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems" for identifying components and power and control wiring.
2. Label each dimmer module with a unique designation.
3. Label each scene control button with approved scene description.

C. Field Quality Control

1. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
  - a. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.



2. Tests and Inspections:
  - a. Continuity tests of circuits.
  - b. Operational Test: Set and operate controls to demonstrate their functions and capabilities in a methodical sequence that cues and reproduces actual operating functions.
    - 1) Include testing of modular dimming control equipment under conditions that simulate actual operational conditions. Record control settings, operations, cues, and functional observations.
3. Remove and replace malfunctioning modular dimming control components and retest as specified above.
4. Test Labeling: After satisfactory completion of tests and inspections, apply a label to tested components indicating test results, date, and responsible agency and representative.
5. Reports: Written reports of tests and observations. Record defective materials and workmanship and unsatisfactory test results. Record repairs and adjustments.

D. Demonstration

1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train **OR** Train, **as directed**, Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain modular dimming controls. Laptop portable computer shall be used in training, **as directed**.
2. Coordinate demonstration of products specified in this Section with demonstration requirements for low-voltage, programmable lighting control system specified in Division 26 Section "Network Lighting Controls".

END OF SECTION 26 09 23 00e



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
26 09 23 00	26 01 50 51	Removal of Fluorescent Light Ballasts/Capacitors and Fluorescent Light Tubes
26 09 23 00	26 01 50 51a	Interior Lighting
26 09 23 00	26 01 50 51b	Exterior Lighting



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

**SECTION 26 11 13 00 - SECONDARY UNIT SUBSTATIONS****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for secondary unit substations. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Summary**

1. This Section includes indoor and outdoor secondary unit substations, each consisting of the following:
  - a. Primary incoming section.
  - b. Transformer.
  - c. Secondary distribution section.

**C. Definitions**

1. NETA ATS: Acceptance Testing Specification.

**D. Submittals**

1. Product Data: Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories.
2. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Time-Current Characteristic Curves: For overcurrent protective devices.
4. Primary Fuses: Submit recommendations and size calculations.
5. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that transformer assembly and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
6. Field quality-control test reports.
7. Operation and Maintenance Data: For secondary unit substations and accessories to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

**E. Quality Assurance**

1. Electrical Components, Devices and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
2. Comply with IEEE C2.
3. Comply with IEEE C37.121.
4. Comply with NFPA 70.

**F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling**

1. Deliver in shipping splits in sizes that can be moved past obstructions in delivery path.
2. Coordinate delivery of secondary unit substations to allow movement into designated space.
3. Store secondary unit substation components protected from weather and so condensation will not form on or in units. Provide temporary heating according to manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Handle secondary unit substation components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use factory-installed lifting provisions.

**G. Project Conditions**

1. Service Conditions: IEEE C37.121, usual service conditions, except for the following:
  - a. Exposure to significant solar radiation.
  - b. Altitudes above 3300 feet (1000 m).



- c. Exposure to fumes, vapors, or dust.
- d. Exposure to explosive environments.
- e. Exposure to hot and humid climate or to excessive moisture, including steam, salt spray, and dripping water.
- f. Exposure to seismic shock or to abnormal vibration, shock, or tilting.
- g. Exposure to excessively high or low temperatures.
- h. Unusual transportation or storage conditions.
- i. Unusual grounding resistance conditions.
- j. Unusual space limitations.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Manufactured Units

1. Indoor Unit Arrangement: Single assembly **OR** Separate secondary distribution equipment connected with busway, **as directed**.
2. Outdoor Unit Arrangement: Single assembly **OR** Separate secondary distribution equipment connected with busway, **as directed**.
  - a. Weatherproof, listed for installation outdoors, complying with IEEE C37.20.1.
  - b. Aisleless Construction: Full-height doors in front of basic weatherproof equipment.
3. Enclosure Finish: Factory-applied finish in manufacturer's standard color, including under surfaces treated with corrosion-resistant undercoating **OR** Factory-applied finish in manufacturer's standard gray over a rust-inhibiting primer on treated metal surface, **as directed**.

### B. Incoming Section

1. Primary Incoming Section: Terminal assembly with adequate space for incoming-cable terminations and surge arresters.
  - OR**
  - Transformer cover-mounted bushings.
  - OR**
  - Enclosed, air-interrupter, dual primary **OR** primary, **as directed**, switch.
    - a. Three pole, single throw, dead front, metal enclosed, with manual stored energy operator, with fuses mounted on a single frame **OR** without fuses, **as directed**, complying with IEEE C37.20.3.
    - b. Key interlocking system to prevent fuse access door from being opened unless switch is open. Additionally, interlock air-interrupter switch with transformer secondary main circuit breaker, preventing switch from being opened or closed unless secondary main circuit breaker is open.
    - c. Phase Barriers: Located between blades and fuses of each phase, designed for easy removal, allows visual inspection of switch components when barrier is in place.
    - d. Window: Permits viewing switch-blade positions when door is closed.
    - e. Accessory Set: Tools and miscellaneous items required for interrupter switchgear test, inspection, maintenance, and operation. Include fuse-handling tool as recommended by switchgear manufacturer.
    - f. Continuous-Current Rating: 600 A.
    - g. Short-Circuit Rating:
      - 1) Short-time momentary asymmetrical fault rating of 40 kA.
      - 2) 3-second symmetrical rating of 25-kA RMS.
      - 3) Fault close asymmetrical rating of 40 kA.
    - h. Fuses: Sizes recommended by secondary unit substation manufacturer, considering fan cooling, temperature-rise specification, and cycle loading. Comply with the following:
      - 1) Current-limiting type, rated for not less than 50-kA RMS symmetrical current-interrupting capacity.
      - 2) Indicator integral with each fuse to show when it has blown.





- 3) Spares: Include three fuses in use and three spare fuses in storage clips in each switch.
  2. Surge Arresters: Comply with IEEE C62.11, Distribution class; metal-oxide-varistor type, with ratings as indicated, connected in each phase of incoming circuit and ahead of any disconnecting device.
- C. Liquid-Filled Transformer Section
1. Description: IEEE C57.12.00 and UL 1062, liquid-filled, 2-winding, secondary unit substation transformer.
  2. Insulating Liquid: Mineral oil complying with ASTM D 3487, Type II, and tested according to ASTM D 117.  
**OR**  
Insulating Liquid: Less flammable, edible-seed-oil based, and UL listed as complying with NFPA 70 requirements for fire point of not less than 300 deg C when tested according to ASTM D 92. Liquid shall be biodegradable and nontoxic.  
**OR**  
Insulating Liquid: Less flammable, dielectric, and UL listed as complying with NFPA 70 requirements for fire point of not less than 300 deg C when tested according to ASTM D 92. Liquid shall be biodegradable and nontoxic.  
**OR**  
Insulating Liquid: Less flammable, silicone-based dielectric, and UL listed as complying with NFPA 70 requirements for fire point of not less than 300 deg C when tested according to ASTM D 92. Liquid shall have low toxicity and be nonhazardous.
  3. Insulation Temperature Rise: 65/55 deg C, based on an average ambient temperature of 30 deg C over 24 hours with a maximum ambient temperature of 40 deg C. Insulation system shall be rated to continuously allow an additional 12-percent kVA output, at 65 deg C temperature rise, without decreasing rated transformer life.  
**OR**  
Insulation Temperature Rise: 65 deg C, based on an average ambient temperature of 30 deg C over 24 hours with a maximum ambient temperature of 40 deg C.
  4. Basic Impulse Level: Comply with UL 1062.  
**OR**  
Basic Impulse Level: 60 **OR** 75 **OR** 95 **OR** 110, **as directed**, kV.
  5. Full-Capacity Voltage Taps: 4 nominal 2.5 percent taps, 2 above and 2 below rated primary voltage; with externally operable tap changer for de-energized use and with position indicator and padlock hasp.  
**OR**  
Full-Capacity Voltage Taps: 4 nominal 2.5 percent taps below rated primary voltage, with externally operable tap changer for de-energized use and with position indicator and padlock hasp.
  6. Cooling System: Class OA, liquid cooled **OR** OA/FA, liquid cooled, and with forced-air rating **OR** OA/FFA, liquid cooled, and with provisions for future forced-air rating, **as directed**. Cooling systems shall include auxiliary cooling equipment, automatic controls, and status indicating lights.
  7. Sound level may not exceed 58 dB, without fans.
  8. Impedance: Percentage as directed.
  9. Accessories: Grounding pads, lifting lugs, and provisions for jacking under base. Transformers shall have a steel base and frame allowing use of pipe rollers in any direction, and an insulated, low-voltage, neutral bushing with removable ground strap. Include the following additional accessories:
    - a. Liquid-level gage.
    - b. Pressure-vacuum gage.
    - c. Liquid temperature indicator.
    - d. Drain and filter valves.
    - e. Pressure relief device.
- D. Dry-Type Transformer Section



1. Description: IEEE C57.12.01, IEEE C57.12.50 for dry-type transformers rated up to 500 kVA, IEEE C57.12.51 for dry-type transformers rated 501 kVA and larger, or IEEE C57.12.52 for sealed dry-type transformers rated 501 kVA and larger, NEMA ST 20, and dry-type, 2-winding, secondary unit substation transformer.
  2. Enclosure: Indoor, ventilated **OR** Outdoor, ventilated **OR** Totally enclosed, nonventilated, **as directed**, cast coil/encapsulated coil, with primary and secondary windings individually cast in epoxy; with insulation system rated at 185 deg C with an 80 deg C average winding temperature rise above a maximum ambient temperature of 40 deg C.  
**OR**  
Enclosure: Indoor, ventilated **OR** Outdoor, ventilated **OR** Totally enclosed, nonventilated, **as directed**, vacuum-pressure, impregnated type and with insulation system rated at 220 deg C with an 80 deg C average winding temperature rise above a maximum ambient temperature of 40 deg C.
  3. Cooling System: Class AA, air cooled **OR** AA/FA, air cooled with forced-air rating **OR** AA/FFA, air cooled with provisions for future forced-air rating, **as directed**, complying with IEEE C57.12.01.
    - a. Automatic forced-air cooling system controls, including thermal sensors, fans, control wiring, temperature controller with test switch, power panel with current-limiting fuses, indicating lights, alarm, and alarm silencing relay.
    - b. Include mounting provision for fans.
  4. Insulation Materials: IEEE C57.12.01, rated 220 deg C.
  5. Insulation Temperature Rise: 80 **OR** 115 **OR** 150, **as directed**, deg C, maximum rise above 40 deg C.
  6. Basic Impulse Level: 60 **OR** 75 **OR** 95 **OR** 110, **as directed**, kV.
  7. Full-Capacity Voltage Taps: 4 nominal 2.5 percent taps, 2 above and 2 below rated primary voltage.  
**OR**  
Full-Capacity Voltage Taps: 4 nominal 2.5 percent taps below rated primary voltage.
  8. Sound level may not exceed maximum dBA level **as directed**, without fans operating.
  9. Impedance: Percentage **as directed**.
  10. High-Temperature Alarm: Sensor at transformer with local audible and visual alarm and contacts for remote alarm.
- E. Secondary Distribution Section
1. Secondary Terminal Compartment: Bus bars mounted on standoff insulators **OR** duct flange for close coupling with busway, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Secondary Distribution: Low-voltage switchgear as specified in Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Switchgear".  
**OR**  
Secondary Distribution: Low-voltage switchboard as specified in Division 26 Section "Switchboards".  
**OR**  
Secondary Distribution: Motor-control center as specified in Division 26 Section "Motor-control Centers".  
**OR**  
Distribution Panelboard: Panelboards as specified in Division 26 Section "Panelboards".
  2. Network Protectors:
    - a. Rated for continuous service in an ambient temperature of up to 40 deg C, applied to 3-phase, 4-wire, solidly grounded wye secondary networks. Comply with IEEE C57.12.44.
    - b. Dead-front, drawout design with externally mounted fuses, using hand-cranked rail system. Relay and control panel located on a separate drawout module.
    - c. Protector Operator: Spring-close and/or stored-energy mechanism, rated to close on a 25,000 **OR** 40,000, **as directed**, RMS symmetrical load.
    - d. Control Voltage: Not more than 125 V.



- e. Control microprocessor-based, three-phase, tripping relay with features and functions as follows:
  - 1) Close protector if positive sequence power flows into the network. Adjustable closing range shall be from 0.5 to 3.5 V in phase difference between network and transformer voltages.
  - 2) Trip protector if there is a net, three-phase, reverse power flow through protector. Trip protectors shall be adjustable from 0.05 to 5 percent of continuous-current rating of current transformers within protector.
  - 3) Trip protector if there is a flow of reverse magnetizing current of its associated transformer.
  - 4) Field-adjustable relay parameters and watt or watt-var trip values.
- f. Protector shall not open under any fault on network side of protector.
- g. Current-limiting fuses shall have interrupting capacity of 150,000 A on network side of protector for protection against switchboard bus faults.
- h. Mechanical interlocks shall prevent racking in and racking out when protector is closed.
- i. Auxiliary contacts shall be remotely tripped and locked out by four-wire remote pilot devices.
- j. Network protectors shall have not less than two spare auxiliary dry contacts.
- k. Network Switchgear-Mounted Disconnect Switch: Supply each network-protector circuit with a switchgear-mounted fuse truck, with Class L fuses rated for 200-kA interrupting capacity, and key interlocked with each associated protector.  
**OR**  
Network Switchgear-Mounted Disconnect Switch: Supply each network-protector circuit with a switchgear-mounted main circuit breaker rated for fault current that can be delivered by the network transformers, less one. Use drawout type to provide a means of isolating the load side of each protector from the network bus.

F. Identification Devices

- 1. Compartment Nameplates: Engraved, laminated-plastic or metal nameplate for each compartment, mounted with corrosion-resistant screws. Nameplates and label products are specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".

G. Source Quality Control

- 1. Factory Tests: Perform design and routine tests according to standards specified for components. Conduct transformer tests according to IEEE C57.12.90. Conduct switchgear and switchboard tests according to ANSI C37.51.  
**OR**  
Factory Tests: Perform the following factory-certified tests on each secondary unit substation:
  - a. Resistance measurements of all windings on the rated voltage connection and on tap extreme connections.
  - b. Ratios on the rated voltage connection and on tap extreme connections.
  - c. Polarity and phase relation on the rated voltage connection.
  - d. No-load loss at rated voltage on the rated voltage connection.
  - e. Exciting current at rated voltage on the rated voltage connection.
  - f. Impedance and load loss at rated current on the rated voltage connection and on tap extreme connections.
  - g. Applied potential.
  - h. Induced potential.
  - i. Temperature Test: If a transformer is supplied with auxiliary cooling equipment to provide more than one rating, test at lowest kilovolt-ampere Class OA or Class AA rating and highest kilovolt-ampere Class FA rating.
    - 1) Temperature test is not required if a record of a temperature test on an essentially duplicate unit is available.
  - j. the Owner will witness all required factory tests. Notify the Owner at least 14 days before date of tests and indicate their approximate duration.



### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation

1. Install secondary unit substations on concrete bases.
  - a. Anchor secondary unit substations to concrete bases according to manufacturer's written instructions, seismic codes at Project, and requirements in Division 26 Section "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems".
  - b. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit and 4 inches (100 mm) high.
  - c. Use 3000-psi (20.7-MPa), 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
  - d. Install dowel rods to connect concrete bases to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around full perimeter of base.
  - e. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for anchoring equipment to the concrete base.
  - f. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - g. Bolt transformers to channel-iron sills embedded in concrete bases. Install sills level and grout flush with floor or base.
2. Maintain minimum clearances and workspace at equipment according to manufacturer's written instructions and NFPA 70.

#### B. Identification

1. Identify field-installed wiring and components and provide warning signs as specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
2. Operating Instructions: Frame printed operating instructions for secondary unit substations, including key interlocking, control sequences, elementary single-line diagram, and emergency procedures. Fabricate frame of finished wood or metal and cover instructions with clear acrylic plastic. Mount on front of secondary unit substation.

#### C. Connections

1. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
2. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".

#### D. Cleaning

1. After completing equipment installation and before energizing, inspect unit components. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish. Vacuum interiors of secondary unit substation sections.

#### E. Field Quality Control

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.
2. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
  - a. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test according to NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - b. After installing secondary unit substation but before primary is energized, verify that grounding system at the substation tested at the specified value or less.
  - c. After installing secondary unit substation and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
  - d. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
    - 1) Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.



F. Follow-Up Service

1. Voltage Monitoring and Adjusting: After Final Completion, if requested by the Owner, but not more than six months after Final Acceptance, perform the following voltage monitoring:
  - a. During a period of normal load cycles as evaluated by the Owner, perform seven days of three-phase voltage recording at the outgoing section of each secondary unit substation. Use voltmeters with calibration traceable to the National Institute of Science and Technology standards and with a chart speed of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) per hour. Voltage unbalance greater than 1 percent between phases, or deviation of any phase voltage from the nominal value by more than plus or minus 5 percent during the test period, is unacceptable.
  - b. Corrective Action: If test results are unacceptable, perform the following corrective action, as appropriate:
    - 1) Adjust transformer taps.
    - 2) Rebalance loads.
    - 3) Prepare written request for voltage adjustment by electric utility.
  - c. Retests: Repeat monitoring, after corrective action has been performed, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  - d. Report: Prepare a written report covering monitoring performed and corrective action taken.
2. Infrared Scanning: Perform as specified in Division 26 Section "Medium-voltage Switchgear".

END OF SECTION 26 11 13 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 26 11 16 00 - SWITCHGEAR

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for switchgear. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes metal-enclosed, low-voltage power circuit-breaker switchgear rated 1000 V and less for use in ac systems.

#### C. Definitions

1. ATS: Acceptance Testing Service.
2. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of switchgear, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
2. Shop Drawings: For each type of switchgear and related equipment.
  - a. Dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details, including required clearances and service space around equipment. Include the following:
  - b. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans showing dimensioned layout, required working clearances, and required area above and around switchgear where pipe and ducts are prohibited. Show switchgear layout and relationships between components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements. Show support locations, type of support, and weight on each support. Indicate field measurements.
4. Samples: Representative portion of mimic bus with specified finish. Manufacturer's color charts showing colors available for mimic bus.
5. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that switchgear, overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
6. Field quality-control test reports.
7. Updated mimic-bus diagram reflecting field changes after final switchgear load connections have been made, for record.
8. Operation and Maintenance Data: For switchgear and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Include the following:
  - a. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
  - b. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - a. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Person currently certified by the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 3.



2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
3. Comply with NFPA 70.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver switchgear in sections of lengths that can be moved past obstructions in delivery path.
2. Store switchgear indoors in clean dry space with uniform temperature to prevent condensation. Protect switchgear from exposure to dirt, fumes, water, corrosive substances, and physical damage.
3. If stored in areas subjected to weather, cover switchgear to provide protection from weather, dirt, dust, corrosive substances, and physical damage. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside switchgear; install electric heating (250 W per section) to prevent condensation.

G. Project Conditions

1. Installation Pathway: Remove and replace building components and structures to provide pathway for moving switchgear into place.
2. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service.
3. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for switchgear, including clearances between switchgear, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
4. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions, unless otherwise indicated:
  - a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding 40 deg C.
  - b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2010 m).

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Ratings

1. Nominal System Voltage: 480 V, 3 wire **OR** 480/277 V, 4 wire **OR** 240 V, 3 wire **OR** 208/120 V, 4 wire, **as directed**, 60 Hz.
2. Main-Bus Continuous: 4000 **OR** 3200 **OR** 2000 **OR** 1600, **as directed**, A.
3. Short-Time and Short-Circuit Current: Match rating of highest-rated circuit breaker in switchgear assembly.

B. Fabrication

1. Factory assembled and tested and complying with IEEE C37.20.1.
2. Indoor Enclosure Material: Steel.
3. Outdoor Enclosure Material: Galvanized steel.
4. Outdoor Enclosure Fabrication Requirements: Weatherproof; integral structural-steel base frame with factory-applied asphaltic undercoating; and each compartment equipped with the following features:
  - a. Structural design and anchorage adequate to resist loads imposed by 125-mph (200-km/h), **as directed**, wind.
  - b. Space heater operating at one-half or less of rated voltage, sized to prevent condensation.
  - c. Louvers equipped with insect and rodent screen and filter; arranged to permit air circulation while excluding insects, rodents, and exterior dust.
  - d. Hinged front door with padlocking provisions.
  - e. Interior light with switch.
  - f. Weatherproof duplex receptacle.





- g. Common internal aisle of sufficient width to permit protective-device withdrawal, disassembly, and servicing in aisle.
  - h. Aisle access doors with outside padlocking provisions and interior panic latches.
  - i. Aisle space heaters operating at one-half or less of rated voltage, thermostatically controlled.
  - j. Vaporproof fluorescent aisle lights with low-temperature ballasts, controlled by wall switch at each entrance.
  - k. GFCI duplex receptacles, a minimum of two, located in aisle.
  - l. Aisle ventilation louvers equipped with insect and rodent screen and filter and arranged to permit air circulation while excluding insects, rodents, and exterior dust.
5. Finish: IEEE C37.20.1, manufacturer's standard gray finish over a rust-inhibiting primer on phosphatizing-treated metal surfaces.
6. Section barriers between main and tie circuit-breaker compartments shall be extended to rear of section.
7. Bus isolation barriers shall be arranged to isolate line bus from load bus at each main and tie circuit breaker.
8. Circuit-breaker compartments shall be equipped to house drawout-type circuit breakers and shall be fitted with hinged outer doors.
9. Fabricate enclosure with removable, hinged, rear cover panels to allow access to rear interior of switchgear.
10. Auxiliary Compartments: Match and align with basic switchgear assembly. Include the following:
- a. Utility metering compartment that complies with utility company requirements.
  - b. Bus transition sections.
  - c. Incoming-line pull sections.
  - d. Hinged front panels for access to metering, accessory, and blank compartments.
  - e. Pull box on top of switchgear for extra room for pulling cable, with removable top, front, and side covers and ventilation provisions adequate to maintain air temperature in pull box within same limits as switchgear.
    - 1) Set pull box back from front to clear circuit-breaker lifting mechanism.
    - 2) Bottom: Insulating, fire-resistant material with separate holes for cable drops into switchgear.
    - 3) Cable Supports: Arranged to ease cabling and adequate to support cables indicated, including those for future installation.
11. Bus bars connect between vertical sections and between compartments. Cable connections are not permitted.
- a. Main Phase Bus: Uniform capacity the entire length of assembly.
  - b. Neutral Bus: 50 **OR** 100, **as directed**, percent of phase-bus ampacity, except as indicated. Equip bus with pressure-connector terminations for outgoing circuit neutral conductors. Include braces for neutral-bus extensions for busway feeders.
  - c. Vertical Section Bus Size: Comply with IEEE C37.20.1, including allowance for spare circuit breakers and spaces for future circuit breakers.
  - d. Phase- and Neutral-Bus Material: Hard-drawn copper of 98 percent minimum conductivity, with copper feeder circuit-breaker line connections.

**OR**

Phase- and Neutral-Bus Material: Silver- or tin-plated, high-strength, electrical-grade aluminum alloy, with copper or tin-plated aluminum circuit-breaker line connections.

**OR**

Phase- and Neutral-Bus Material: Hard-drawn copper of 98 percent minimum conductivity or tin-plated, high-strength, electrical-grade aluminum alloy.
  - e. Use silver-plated copper or tin-plated aluminum for connecting circuit-breaker line to aluminum bus.
  - f. Use copper for connecting circuit-breaker line to copper bus.
  - g. Contact Surfaces of Buses: Silver plated.
  - h. Feeder Circuit-Breaker Load Terminals: Silver-plated copper bus extensions equipped with pressure connectors for outgoing circuit conductors.



- i. Ground Bus: Hard-drawn copper of 98 percent minimum conductivity, with pressure connector for feeder and branch-circuit ground conductors, minimum size 1/4 by 2 inches (6 by 50 mm).
- j. Supports and Bracing for Buses: Adequate strength for indicated short-circuit currents.
- k. Neutral bus equipped with pressure-connector terminations for outgoing circuit neutral conductors. Neutral-bus extensions for busway feeders are braced.
- l. Neutral Disconnect Link: Bolted, uninsulated, 1/4-by-2-inch (6-by-50-mm) copper bus, arranged to connect neutral bus to ground bus.
- m. Provide for future extensions from either end of main phase, neutral, and ground bus by means of predrilled bolt-holes and connecting links.
- n. Bus-Bar Insulation: Individual bus bars wrapped with factory-applied, flame-retardant tape or spray-applied, flame-retardant insulation.
  - 1) Sprayed Insulation Thickness: 3 mils (0.08 mm), minimum.
  - 2) Bolted Bus Joints: Insulate with secure joint covers that can easily be removed and reinstalled.

### C. Components

1. Instrument Transformers: Comply with IEEE C57.13.
  - a. Potential Transformers: Secondary-voltage rating of 120 V and NEMA accuracy class of 0.3 with burdens of W, X, and Y.
  - b. Current Transformers: Ratios as indicated; burden and accuracy class suitable for connected relays, meters, and instruments.
2. Multifunction Digital-Metering Monitor: UL-listed or -recognized, microprocessor-based unit suitable for three- or four-wire systems and with the following features:
  - a. Inputs from sensors or 5-A current-transformer secondaries, and potential terminals rated to 600 V.
  - b. Switch-selectable digital display of the following:
    - 1) Phase Currents, Each Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
    - 2) Phase-to-Phase Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
    - 3) Phase-to-Neutral Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
    - 4) Three-Phase Real Power: Plus or minus 2 percent.
    - 5) Three-Phase Reactive Power: Plus or minus 2 percent.
    - 6) Power Factor: Plus or minus 2 percent.
    - 7) Frequency: Plus or minus 0.5 percent.
    - 8) Integrated Demand, with Demand Interval Selectable from 5 to 60 Minutes: Plus or minus 2 percent.
    - 9) Accumulated energy, in megawatt hours (joules), plus or minus 2 percent; stored values unaffected by power outages for up to 72 hours.
  - c. Mounting: Display and control unit flush or semiflush mounted in instrument compartment door.
3. Analog Instruments: Rectangular, 4-1/2-inch (115-mm) square, accurate within 1 percent, semiflush mounting, with antiparallax 250-degree scale and external zero adjustment, complying with ANSI C39.1.
  - a. Voltmeters: Cover an expanded scale range of normal voltage plus 10 percent.
  - b. Voltmeter Selector Switch: Rotary type with off position to provide readings of phase-to-phase and phase-to-neutral voltages.
  - c. Ammeters: Cover an expanded scale range of bus rating plus 10 percent.
  - d. Ammeter Selector Switch: Permits current reading in each phase and keeps current-transformer secondary circuits closed in off position.
  - e. Locate meter and selector switch on circuit-breaker compartment door for indicated feeder circuits only.
  - f. Watt-Hour Meters: Flush- or semiflush-mounting type, 5 A, 120 V, 3 phase, 3 wire; with 3 elements, 15-minute indicating demand register, and provision for testing and adding pulse initiation.



- g. Recording Demand Meter: Usable as totalizing relay or indicating and recording maximum demand meter with 15-minute interval.
    - 1) Operation: Meter counts and records a succession of pulses entering two channels.
    - 2) Housing: Drawout, back-connected case arranged for semiflush mounting.
  - 4. Relays: Comply with IEEE C37.90, types and settings as indicated; with test blocks and plugs.
  - 5. Surge Arresters: Distribution class, metal-oxide-varistor type. Comply with IEEE C62.11 and NEMA LA 1.
    - a. Install in cable termination compartments and connect in each phase of circuit.
    - b. Coordinate rating with circuit voltage.
  - 6. Provision for Future Devices: Equip compartments with rails, mounting brackets, supports, necessary appurtenances, and bus connections.
  - 7. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for switchgear interior, including instruments and instrument transformers.
  - 8. Control Power Supply: Control power transformer supplying 120-V control circuits through secondary disconnect devices. Include the following features:
    - a. Dry-type transformers, in separate compartments for units larger than 3 kVA, including primary and secondary fuses.
    - b. Two control power transformers in separate compartments with necessary interlocking relays; each transformer connected to line side of associated main circuit breaker.
      - 1) Secondary windings connected through a relay or relays to control bus to effect an automatic transfer scheme.
      - 2) Secondary windings connected through an internal automatic transfer switch to switchgear control power bus.
    - c. Control Power Fuses: Primary and secondary fuses with current-limiting and overload protection.
    - d. Fuses are specified in Division 26 Section "Fuses".
  - 9. Control Wiring: Factory installed, complete with bundling, lacing, and protection; and complying with the following:
    - a. Flexible conductors for No. 8 AWG and smaller, for conductors across hinges and for conductors for interconnections between shipping units.
    - b. Conductors sized according to NFPA 70 for duty required.
- D. Circuit Breakers
- 1. Description: Comply with IEEE C37.13.
  - 2. Ratings: As indicated for continuous, interrupting, and short-time current ratings for each circuit breaker; voltage and frequency ratings same as switchgear.
  - 3. Operating Mechanism: Mechanically and electrically trip-free, stored-energy operating mechanism with the following features:
    - a. Normal Closing Speed: Independent of both control and operator.
    - b. Slow Closing Speed: Optional with operator for inspection and adjustment.
    - c. Stored-Energy Mechanism: Manually charged **OR** Electrically charged, with optional manual charging, **as directed**.
    - d. Operation counter.
  - 4. Trip Devices: Solid-state, overcurrent trip-device system consisting of one or two current transformers or sensors per phase, a release mechanism, and the following features:
    - a. Functions: Long-time-delay, short-time-delay, and instantaneous-trip functions, independent of each other in both action and adjustment.
    - b. Temperature Compensation: Ensures accuracy and calibration stability from minus 5 to plus 40 deg C.
    - c. Field-adjustable, time-current characteristics.
    - d. Current Adjustability: Dial settings and rating plugs on trip units or sensors on circuit breakers, or a combination of these methods.
    - e. Three bands, minimum, for long-time- and short-time-delay functions; marked "minimum," "intermediate," and "maximum."
    - f. Pickup Points: Five minimum, for long-time- and short-time-trip functions. Equip short-time-trip function for switchable  $I^2t$  operation.



- g. Pickup Points: Five minimum, for instantaneous-trip functions.
  - h. Ground-fault protection with at least three short-time-delay settings and three trip-time-delay bands; adjustable current pickup. Arrange to provide protection for the following:
    - 1) Three-wire circuit or system.
    - 2) Four-wire circuit or system.
    - 3) Four-wire, double-ended substation.
  - i. Trip Indication: Labeled, battery-powered lights or mechanical targets on trip device to indicate type of fault.
5. Auxiliary Contacts: For interlocking or remote indication of circuit-breaker position, with spare auxiliary switches and other auxiliary switches required for normal circuit-breaker operation, quantity as indicated. Each consists of two Type "a" and two Type "b" stages (contacts) wired through secondary disconnect devices to a terminal block in stationary housing.
  6. Drawout Features: Circuit-breaker mounting assembly equipped with a racking mechanism to position circuit breaker and hold it rigidly in connected, test, and disconnected positions. Include the following features:
    - a. Interlocks: Prevent movement of circuit breaker to or from connected position when it is closed, and prevent closure of circuit breaker unless it is in connected, test, or disconnected position.
    - b. Circuit-Breaker Positioning: An open circuit breaker may be racked to or from connected, test, and disconnected positions only with the associated compartment door closed unless live parts are covered by a full dead-front shield. An open circuit breaker may be manually withdrawn to a position for removal from the structure with the door open. Status for connection devices for different positions includes the following:
      - 1) Test Position: Primary disconnect devices disengaged, and secondary disconnect devices and ground contact engaged.
      - 2) Disconnected Position: Primary and secondary devices and ground contact disengaged.
  7. Arc Chutes: Readily removable from associated circuit breaker when it is in disconnected position, and arranged to permit inspection of contacts without removing circuit breaker from switchgear.
  8. Padlocking Provisions: For installing at least three padlocks on each circuit breaker to secure its enclosure and prevent movement of drawout mechanism.
  9. Operating Handle: One for each circuit breaker capable of manual operation.
  10. Electric Close Button: One for each electrically operated circuit breaker.
  11. Mechanical Interlocking of Circuit Breakers: Uses a mechanical tripping lever or equivalent design and electrical interlocks.
  12. Key Interlocks: Arranged so keys are attached at devices indicated. Mountings and hardware are included where future installation of key-interlock devices is indicated.
  13. Undervoltage Trip Devices: Instantaneous, with adjustable pickup voltage **OR** Adjustable time-delay and pickup voltage, **as directed**.
  14. Shunt-Trip Devices: Where indicated.
  15. Fused Circuit Breakers: Circuit breaker and fuse combinations complying with requirements for circuit breakers and trip devices and with the following:
    - a. Fuses: NEMA FU 1, Class L current limiting, sized to coordinate with and protect associated circuit breaker.
    - b. Circuit Breakers with Frame Size 1600 A and Smaller: Fuses on line side of associated circuit breaker, on a common drawout mounting, arranged so fuses are accessible only when circuit breaker is in disconnected position.
    - c. Circuit Breakers with Frame Sizes More Than 1600 A: Fuses and circuit breakers may be installed in separate compartments on separate drawout mountings. Fuse drawout element is interlocked with associated power circuit breaker to prevent drawing out fuse element unless circuit breaker is in open position.
    - d. Open-Fuse Trip Device: Positive means of tripping and holding circuit breaker in open position when a fuse opens. Open-fuse status is indicated at front of circuit breaker or fuse drawout element.



16. Indicating Lights: To indicate circuit breaker is open or closed, for main and bus tie circuit breakers interlocked either with each other or with external devices.

E. Accessories

1. Accessory Set: Furnish tools and miscellaneous items required for circuit-breaker and switchgear test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.
  - a. Racking handle to manually move circuit breaker between connected and disconnected positions.
  - b. Portable test set for testing all functions of circuit-breaker, solid-state trip devices without removal from switchgear.
  - c. Relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing switchgear meters and switchgear class relays.
2. Circuit-Breaker Removal Apparatus: Portable, floor-supported, roller-base, elevating carriage arranged for moving circuit breakers in and out of compartments.
3. Circuit-Breaker Removal Apparatus: Overhead-circuit-breaker lifting device, track mounted at top front of switchgear and complete with hoist and lifting yokes matching each size of drawout circuit breaker installed.
4. Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Identified and compartmented steel box or cabinet with lockable door.
5. Storage for Manual: Include a rack or holder, near the operating instructions, for a copy of maintenance manual.

F. Identification

1. Mimic Bus: Continuous mimic bus, arranged in single-line diagram format, using symbols and lettered designations consistent with approved mimic-bus diagram.
  - a. Mimic-bus segments coordinated with devices in switchgear sections to which applied, to produce a concise visual presentation of principal switchgear components and connections.
  - b. Medium: Painted graphics, as selected by Architect.
  - c. Color: Contrasting with factory-finish background; as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
2. System Power Riser Diagrams: Depict power sources, feeders, distribution components, and major loads. Include as-built data for low-voltage power switchgear and connections as follows:
  - a. Frame size of each circuit breaker.
  - b. Trip rating for each circuit breaker.
  - c. Conduit and wire size for each feeder.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation

1. Comply with applicable portions of NECA 400.
2. Anchor switchgear assembly to 4-inch (100-mm), channel-iron floor sill embedded in floor **OR** concrete base, **as directed**, and attach by bolting.
  - a. Sills: Select to suit switchgear; level and grout flush into floor **OR** concrete base, **as directed**.
  - b. Design each fastener and support to carry load indicated by seismic requirements and according to seismic-restraint details. See Division 26 Section "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems" for seismic-restraint requirements.
  - c. Concrete Bases: 4 inches (100 mm) high, reinforced, with chamfered edges. Extend base no more than 3 inches (75 mm) in all directions beyond the maximum dimensions of switchgear unless otherwise indicated or unless required for seismic anchor support. Construct concrete bases according to Division 26 Section "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems".
3. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, brackets, and temporary blocking of moving parts from switchgear units and components.



- B. Identification
1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs as specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
  2. Diagram and Instructions:
    - a. Frame and mount under clear acrylic plastic on the front of switchgear.
      - 1) Operating Instructions: Printed basic instructions for switchgear, including control and key-interlock sequences and emergency procedures.
      - 2) System Power Riser Diagrams: Depict power sources, feeders, distribution components, and major loads.
    - b. Storage for Maintenance: Include a rack or holder, near the operating instructions, for a copy of maintenance manual.
- C. Connections
1. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
  2. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".
- D. Field Quality Control
1. Prepare for acceptance tests as follows:
    - a. Test insulation resistance for each switchgear bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
    - b. Test continuity of each circuit.
  2. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform the following:
    - a. Inspect switchgear installation, including wiring, components, connections, and equipment. Test and adjust components and equipment.
    - b. Verify that electrical control wiring installation complies with manufacturer's submittal by means of point-to-point continuity testing. Verify that wiring installation complies with requirements in Division 22.
    - c. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - d. Assist in field testing of equipment including pretesting and adjusting of equipment and components.
    - e. Report results in writing.
  3. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
    - a. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters. Perform NETA tests and inspections for each of the following NETA categories:
      - 1) Switchgear.
      - 2) Circuit breakers.
      - 3) Protective relays.
      - 4) Instrument transformers.
      - 5) Metering and instrumentation.
      - 6) Ground-fault systems.
      - 7) Battery systems.
      - 8) Surge arresters.
      - 9) Capacitors.
    - b. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
  4. Infrared Scanning: After Final Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each switchgear. Remove front and rear panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
    - a. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switchgear 11 months after date of Final Completion.



- b. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
  - c. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switchgear checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
- E. Adjusting
- 1. Set field-adjustable, protective-relay trip characteristics according to results in Division 26 Section "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study".
  - 2. Set field-adjustable, protective-relay trip characteristics.
- F. Cleaning
- 1. On completion of installation, inspect interior and exterior of switchgear. Remove paint splatters and other spots. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning. Repair exposed surfaces to match original finish.
- G. Protection
- 1. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to switchgear, according to manufacturer's written instructions, throughout periods when switchgear environment is not controlled for temperature and humidity within manufacturer's stipulated service conditions.

END OF SECTION 26 11 16 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
26 11 16 00	26 11 13 00	Secondary Unit Substations

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 26 12 13 00 - MEDIUM-VOLTAGE TRANSFORMERS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for medium-voltage transformers. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following types of transformers with medium-voltage primaries:
  - a. Liquid-filled distribution and power transformers.
  - b. Dry-type distribution and power transformers.
  - c. Pad-mounted, liquid-filled transformers.

#### C. Definitions

1. NETA ATS: Acceptance Testing Specification.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: Include rated nameplate data, capacities, weights, dimensions, minimum clearances, installed devices and features, location of each field connection, and performance for each type and size of transformer indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Diagram power signal and control wiring.
3. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that transformer assembly and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
4. Field quality-control test reports.
5. Follow-up service reports.
6. Operation and Maintenance Data: For transformer and accessories to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
2. Comply with IEEE C2.
3. Comply with ANSI C57.12.10, ANSI C57.12.28, IEEE C57.12.70, and IEEE C57.12.80.
4. Comply with NFPA 70.

#### F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Store transformers protected from weather and so condensation will not form on or in units. Provide temporary heating according to manufacturer's written instructions.

#### G. Project Conditions

1. Service Conditions: IEEE C37.121, usual service conditions except for the following:
  - a. Exposure to significant solar radiation.
  - b. Altitudes above 3300 feet (1000 m).
  - c. Exposure to fumes, vapors, or dust.
  - d. Exposure to explosive environments.
  - e. Exposure to hot and humid climate or to excessive moisture, including steam, salt spray, and dripping water.
  - f. Exposure to seismic shock or to abnormal vibration, shock, or tilting.
  - g. Exposure to excessively high or low temperatures.



- h. Unusual transportation or storage conditions.
- i. Unusual grounding-resistance conditions.
- j. Unusual space limitations.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Liquid-Filled Distribution And Power Transformers

1. Description: IEEE C57.12.00 and UL 1062, liquid-filled, 2-winding transformers.
2. Insulating Liquid: Mineral oil, complying with ASTM D 3487, Type II, and tested according to ASTM D 117.  
**OR**  
Insulating Liquid: Less flammable, edible-seed-oil based, and UL listed as complying with NFPA 70 requirements for fire point of not less than 300 deg C when tested according to ASTM D 92. Liquid shall be biodegradable and nontoxic.  
**OR**  
Insulating Liquid: Less flammable, dielectric, and UL listed as complying with NFPA 70 requirements for fire point of not less than 300 deg C when tested according to ASTM D 92. Liquid shall be biodegradable and nontoxic.  
**OR**  
Insulating Liquid: Less flammable, silicone-based dielectric, and UL listed as complying with NFPA 70 requirements for fire point of not less than 300 deg C when tested according to ASTM D 92. Liquid shall have low toxicity and be nonhazardous.
3. Insulation Temperature Rise: 65/55 deg C, based on an average ambient temperature of 30 deg C over 24 hours with a maximum ambient temperature of 40 deg C. Insulation system shall be rated to continuously allow an additional 12 percent kilovolt-ampere output, at 65 deg C temperature rise, without decreasing rated transformer life.  
**OR**  
Insulation Temperature Rise: 65 deg C, based on an average ambient temperature of 30 deg C over 24 hours with a maximum ambient temperature of 40 deg C.
4. Basic Impulse Level: Comply with UL 1062.  
**OR**  
Basic Impulse Level: 60 **OR** 75 **OR** 95 **OR** 110, **as directed** kV.
5. Full-Capacity Voltage Taps: Four nominal 2.5 percent taps, 2 above and 2 below rated primary voltage; with externally operable tap changer for de-energized use and with position indicator and padlock hasp.  
**OR**  
Full-Capacity Voltage Taps: Four nominal 2.5 percent taps below rated primary voltage, with externally operable tap changer for de-energized use and with position indicator and padlock hasp.
6. Cooling System: Class OA, self-cooled **OR** OA/FA, self-cooled, and with forced-air-cooled rating **OR** OA/FFA, self-cooled, and with provisions for future forced-air-cooled rating, **as directed**. Cooling systems shall include auxiliary cooling equipment, automatic controls, and status indicating lights.
7. Sound level may not exceed sound levels listed in NEMA TR 1, without fans operating.
8. Accessories: Grounding pads, lifting lugs, and provisions for jacking under base. Transformers shall have a steel base and frame allowing use of pipe rollers in any direction, and an insulated, low-voltage, neutral bushing with removable ground strap. Include the following additional accessories:
  - a. Liquid-level gage.
  - b. Pressure-vacuum gage.
  - c. Liquid temperature indicator.
  - d. Drain and filter valves.
  - e. Pressure relief device.



B. Dry-Type Distribution And Power Transformers

1. Description: NEMA ST 20, IEEE C57.12.01, ANSI C57.12.50 for dry-type transformers rated up to 500 kVA, ANSI C57.12.51 for dry-type transformers rated 501 kVA and larger, or ANSI C57.12.52 for sealed dry-type transformers rated 501 kVA and larger, UL 1562 listed and labeled, dry-type, 2-winding transformers.
  - a. Indoor, ventilated **OR** Outdoor, ventilated **OR** Totally enclosed, nonventilated, **as directed**, cast coil/encapsulated coil, with primary and secondary windings individually cast in epoxy; with insulation system rated at 185 deg C with an 80 deg C average winding temperature rise above a maximum ambient temperature of 40 deg C.
  - b. Indoor, ventilated **OR** Outdoor, ventilated **OR** Totally enclosed, nonventilated, **as directed**, vacuum-pressure impregnated and with insulation system rated at 220 deg C with an 80 deg C average winding temperature rise above a maximum ambient temperature of 40 deg C.
2. Primary Connection: Air terminal compartment with removable **OR** hinged, **as directed**, door. Tin-plated copper bar for incoming line termination, predrilled to accept terminals for indicated conductors.  
**OR**  
Primary Connection: Transition terminal compartment with connection pattern to match switchgear.
3. Secondary Connection: Air terminal compartment with removable **OR** hinged, **as directed**, door. Tin-plated copper bar for incoming line termination, predrilled to accept terminals for indicated conductors.  
**OR**  
Secondary Connection: Transition terminal compartment with connection pattern to match switchgear **OR** bus duct, **as directed**.
4. Insulation Materials: IEEE C57.12.01, rated at 220 deg C.
5. Insulation Temperature Rise: 80 **OR** 115 **OR** 150, **as directed**, deg C, maximum rise above 40 deg C.
6. Basic Impulse Level: 60 **OR** 75 **OR** 95 **OR** 110, **as directed**, kV.
7. Full-Capacity Voltage Taps: Four nominal 2.5 percent taps, 2 above and 2 below rated primary voltage.  
**OR**  
Full-Capacity Voltage Taps: Four nominal 2.5 percent taps below rated primary voltage.
8. Cooling System: Class AA, self-cooled **OR** AA/FA, self-cooled, and with forced-air-cooled rating **OR** AA/FFA, self-cooled, and with provisions for future forced-air-cooled rating, **as directed**, complying with IEEE C57.12.01.
  - a. Automatic forced-air cooling system controls, including thermal sensors, fans, control wiring, temperature controller with test switch, power panel with current-limiting fuses, indicating lights, alarm, and alarm silencing relay.
  - b. Include mounting provision for fans.
9. Sound level may not exceed sound levels listed in NEMA TR 1, without fans operating.
10. High-Temperature Alarm: Sensor at transformer with local audible and visual alarm and contacts for remote alarm.

C. Pad-Mounted, Liquid-Filled Transformers

1. Description: ANSI C57.12.13, ANSI C57.12.26 for pad-mounted transformers with dead-front, separable, insulated, high-voltage, load-break cable connectors, IEEE C57.12.00 IEEE C57.12.22 for pad-mounted transformers with live-front high-voltage bushings pad-mounted, 2-winding transformers. Stainless-steel tank base and cabinet, **OR** cabinet, and sills, **as directed**.
2. Insulating Liquid: Mineral oil, complying with ASTM D 3487, Type II, and tested according to ASTM D 117.  
**OR**  
Insulating Liquid: Less flammable, edible-seed-oil based, and UL listed as complying with NFPA 70 requirements for fire point of not less than 300 deg C when tested according to ASTM D 92. Liquid shall be biodegradable and nontoxic.

**OR**

Insulating Liquid: Less flammable, dielectric, and UL listed as complying with NFPA 70 requirements for fire point of not less than 300 deg C when tested according to ASTM D 92. Liquid shall be biodegradable and nontoxic.

**OR**

Insulating Liquid: Less flammable, silicone-based dielectric, and UL listed as complying with NFPA 70 requirements for fire point of not less than 300 deg C when tested according to ASTM D 92. Liquid shall have low toxicity and be nonhazardous.

3. Insulation Temperature Rise: 55 **OR** 65, **as directed**, deg C when operated at rated kVA output in a 40 deg C ambient temperature. Transformer shall be rated to operate at rated kilovolt ampere in an average ambient temperature of 30 deg C over 24 hours with a maximum ambient temperature of 40 deg C without loss of service life expectancy.
4. Basic Impulse Level: 30 **OR** 60 **OR** 95, **as directed**, kV.
5. Full-Capacity Voltage Taps: Four 2.5 percent taps, 2 above and 2 below rated high voltage; with externally operable tap changer for de-energized use and with position indicator and padlock hasp.
6. High-Voltage Switch: 200 **OR** 300 **OR** 400, **as directed**, A, make-and-latch rating of 10-kA RMS, symmetrical, arranged for radial feed with 3-phase, 2-position, gang-operated, load-break switch that is oil immersed in transformer tank with hook-stick operating handle in primary compartment.
 

**OR**

High-Voltage Switch: 200 **OR** 300 **OR** 400, **as directed**, A, make-and-latch rating of 10-kA RMS, symmetrical, arranged for loop feed with 3-phase, 4-position, gang-operated, load-break switch that is oil immersed in transformer tank with hook-stick operating handle in primary compartment.
7. Primary Fuses: 150-kV fuse assembly with fuses complying with IEEE C37.47. Rating of current-limiting fuses shall be 50-kA RMS at specified system voltage.
  - a. Current-limiting type in dry-fuse holder wells, mechanically interlocked with liquid-immersed switch in transformer tank to prevent disconnect under load.
  - b. Internal liquid-immersed cartridge fuses.
  - c. Bay-O-Net liquid-immersed fuses that are externally replaceable without opening transformer tank.
  - d. Bay-O-Net liquid-immersed fuses in series with liquid-immersed current-limiting fuses. Bay-O-Net fuses shall be externally replaceable without opening transformer tank.
  - e. Bay-O-Net liquid-immersed current-limiting fuses that are externally replaceable without opening transformer tank.
8. Surge Arresters: Distribution class, one for each primary phase; complying with IEEE C62.11 and NEMA LA 1; support from tank wall within high-voltage compartment. Transformers shall have three arresters for radial-feed **OR** three arresters for loop-feed **OR** six arresters for loop-feed, **as directed**, circuits.
9. High-Voltage Terminations and Equipment: Live front with externally clamped porcelain bushings and cable connectors suitable for terminating primary cable.
 

**OR**

High-Voltage Terminations and Equipment: Dead front with universal-type bushing wells for dead-front bushing-well inserts, complying with IEEE 386 and including the following:

  - a. Bushing-Well Inserts: One for each high-voltage bushing well.
  - b. Surge Arresters: Dead-front, elbow-type, metal-oxide-varistor units.
  - c. Parking Stands: One for each high-voltage bushing well.
  - d. Portable Insulated Bushings: Arranged for parking insulated, high-voltage, load-break cable terminators; one for each primary feeder conductor terminating at transformer.
10. Accessories:
  - a. Drain Valve: 1 inch (25 mm), with sampling device.
  - b. Dial-type thermometer.
  - c. Liquid-level gage.
  - d. Pressure-vacuum gage.
  - e. Pressure Relief Device: Self-sealing with an indicator.
  - f. Mounting provisions for low-voltage current transformers.



- g. Mounting provisions for low-voltage potential transformers.
- h. Busway terminal connection at low-voltage compartment.
- i. Alarm contacts for gages and thermometer listed above.

D. Identification Devices

- 1. Nameplates: Engraved, laminated-plastic or metal nameplate for each transformer, mounted with corrosion-resistant screws. Nameplates and label products are specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".

E. Source Quality Control

- 1. Factory Tests: Perform design and routine tests according to standards specified for components. Conduct transformer tests according to ANSI C57.12.50 for ventilated dry-type distribution transformers 1 to 500 kVA, single phase, and 15 to 500 kVA, 3 phase, with high voltage 601 to 34,500 V and low voltage 208Y/120 to 4160 V; ANSI C57.12.51 for ventilated dry-type power transformers 501 kVA and larger, 3 phase, with high voltage 601 to 34,500 V and low voltage 208Y/120 to 4160 V; IEEE C57.12.90 for liquid-filled transformers; and IEEE C57.12.91 for dry-type distribution and power transformers.
- 2. Factory Tests: Perform the following factory-certified tests on each transformer:
  - a. Resistance measurements of all windings on rated-voltage connection and on tap extreme connections.
  - b. Ratios on rated-voltage connection and on tap extreme connections.
  - c. Polarity and phase relation on rated-voltage connection.
  - d. No-load loss at rated voltage on rated-voltage connection.
  - e. Excitation current at rated voltage on rated-voltage connection.
  - f. Impedance and load loss at rated current on rated-voltage connection and on tap extreme connections.
  - g. Applied potential.
  - h. Induced potential.
  - i. Temperature Test: If transformer is supplied with auxiliary cooling equipment to provide more than one rating, test at lowest kilovolt-ampere Class OA or Class AA rating and highest kilovolt-ampere Class OA/FA or Class AA/FA rating.
    - 1) Temperature test is not required if record of temperature test on an essentially duplicate unit is available.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation

- 1. Install transformers on concrete bases.
  - a. Anchor transformers to concrete bases according to manufacturer's written instructions, seismic codes at Project, and requirements in Division 26 Section "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems".
  - b. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit and 4 inches (100 mm) high.
  - c. Use 3000-psi (20.7-MPa), 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
  - d. Install dowel rods to connect concrete bases to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around full perimeter of base.
  - e. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts, for supported equipment, that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - f. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - g. Tack-weld or bolt transformers to channel-iron sills embedded in concrete bases. Install sills level and grout flush with floor or base.



2. Maintain minimum clearances and workspace at equipment according to manufacturer's written instructions and NFPA 70.
- B. Identification
1. Identify field-installed wiring and components and provide warning signs as specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems", **as directed**.
- C. Connections
1. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
  2. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".
- D. Field Quality Control
1. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
    - a. After installing transformers but before primary is energized, verify that grounding system at substation is tested at specified value or less.
    - b. After installing transformers and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
    - c. Perform visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters.
    - d. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  2. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
  3. Test Reports: Prepare written reports to record the following:
    - a. Test procedures used.
    - b. Test results that comply with requirements.
    - c. Test results that do not comply with requirements and corrective actions taken to achieve compliance with requirements.
- E. Follow-Up Service
1. Voltage Monitoring and Adjusting: If requested by the Owner, perform the following voltage monitoring after Final Completion but not more than six months after Final Acceptance:
    - a. During a period of normal load cycles as evaluated by the Owner, perform seven days of three-phase voltage recording at secondary terminals of each transformer. Use voltmeters with calibration traceable to National Institute of Science and Technology standards and with a chart speed of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) per hour. Voltage unbalance greater than 1 percent between phases, or deviation of any phase voltage from nominal value by more than plus or minus 5 percent during test period, is unacceptable.
    - b. Corrective Actions: If test results are unacceptable, perform the following corrective actions, as appropriate:
      - 1) Adjust transformer taps.
      - 2) Prepare written request for voltage adjustment by electric utility.
    - c. Retests: After corrective actions have been performed, repeat monitoring until satisfactory results are obtained.
    - d. Report: Prepare written report covering monitoring and corrective actions performed.
  2. Infrared Scanning: Perform as specified in Division 26 Section "Medium-voltage Switchgear".

END OF SECTION 26 12 13 00





## SECTION 26 12 13 00a - LOW-VOLTAGE TRANSFORMERS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for low-voltage transformers. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following types of dry-type transformers rated 600 V and less, with capacities up to 1000 kVA:
  - a. Distribution transformers.
  - b. Buck-boost transformers.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Indicate dimensions and weights.
  - a. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that transformers, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
4. Field quality-control test reports.
5. Operation and maintenance data.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
2. Comply with IEEE C57.12.91, "Test Code for Dry-Type Distribution and Power Transformers."

#### E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat according to manufacturer's written instructions within the enclosure of each ventilated-type unit, throughout periods during which equipment is not energized and when transformer is not in a space that is continuously under normal control of temperature and humidity.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. General Transformer Requirements

1. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, air-cooled units for 60-Hz service.
2. Cores: Grain-oriented, non-aging silicon steel.
3. Coils: Continuous windings without splices except for taps.
  - a. Internal Coil Connections: Brazed or pressure type.
  - b. Coil Material: Aluminum **OR** Copper, **as directed**.

#### B. Distribution Transformers

1. Comply with NEMA ST 20, and list and label as complying with UL 1561.
2. Provide transformers that are constructed to withstand seismic forces specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
3. Cores: One leg per phase.
4. Enclosure: Ventilated **OR** Totally enclosed, nonventilated, **as directed**, NEMA 250, Type 2.



- a. Core and coil shall be encapsulated within resin compound, sealing out moisture and air.
5. Enclosure: Ventilated **OR** Totally enclosed, nonventilated, **as directed**, NEMA 250, Type 3R **OR** Type 4X, stainless steel, **as directed**.
  - a. Core and coil shall be encapsulated within resin compound, sealing out moisture and air.
6. Transformer Enclosure Finish: Comply with NEMA 250.
  - a. Finish Color: Gray **OR** ANSI 49 gray **OR** ANSI 61 gray, **as directed**.
7. Taps for Transformers Smaller Than 3 kVA: None **OR** One 5 percent tap above normal full capacity, **as directed**.
8. Taps for Transformers 7.5 to 24 kVA: One 5 percent tap above and one 5 percent tap below normal full capacity **OR** Two 5 percent taps below rated voltage, **as directed**.
9. Taps for Transformers 25 kVA and Larger: Two 2.5 percent taps above and two 2.5 percent taps below normal full capacity **OR** Two 2.5 percent taps above and four 2.5 percent taps below normal full capacity, **as directed**.
10. Insulation Class: 220 deg C, UL-component-recognized insulation system with a maximum of 150 **OR** 115 **OR** 80, **as directed**, deg C rise above 40 deg C ambient temperature.
11. Energy Efficiency for Transformers Rated 15 kVA and Larger:
  - a. Complying with NEMA TP 1, Class 1 efficiency levels.
  - b. Tested according to NEMA TP 2.
12. K-Factor Rating: Transformers indicated to be K-factor rated shall comply with UL 1561 requirements for nonsinusoidal load current-handling capability to the degree defined by designated K-factor.
  - a. Unit shall not overheat when carrying full-load current with harmonic distortion corresponding to designated K-factor.
  - b. Indicate value of K-factor on transformer nameplate.
13. Electrostatic Shielding: Each winding shall have an independent, single, full-width copper electrostatic shield arranged to minimize interwinding capacitance.
14. Wall Brackets: Manufacturer's standard brackets.
15. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for coil and core.
16. Low-Sound-Level Requirements: Minimum of 3 dBA less than NEMA ST 20 standard sound levels when factory tested according to IEEE C57.12.91.

#### C. Buck-Boost Transformers

1. Description: Self-cooled, two-winding dry type, rated for continuous duty and with wiring terminals suitable for connection as autotransformer. Transformers shall comply with NEMA ST 1 and shall be listed and labeled as complying with UL 506 or UL 1561.
2. Enclosure: Ventilated, NEMA 250, Type 2.
  - a. Finish Color: Gray **OR** ANSI 49 gray **OR** ANSI 61 gray, **as directed**.

#### D. Identification Devices

1. Nameplates: Engraved, laminated-plastic or metal nameplate. Nameplates are specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation

1. Install wall-mounting transformers level and plumb with wall brackets fabricated by transformer manufacturer.
  - a. Brace wall-mounting transformers as specified in Division 26 Section "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems".
2. Construct concrete bases and anchor floor-mounting transformers according to manufacturer's written instructions, seismic codes applicable to Project, **as directed**, and requirements in Division 26 Section "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems".

#### B. Field Quality Control



1. Perform tests and inspections.
  2. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
    - b. Infrared Scanning: Two months after Final Completion, perform an infrared scan of transformer connections.
      - 1) Use an infrared-scanning device designed to measure temperature or detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide documentation of device calibration.
      - 2) Perform 2 follow-up infrared scans of transformers, one at 4 months and the other at 11 months after Final Completion.
      - 3) Prepare a certified report identifying transformer checked and describing results of scanning. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and scanning observations after remedial action.
- C. Adjusting
1. Adjust transformer taps to provide optimum voltage conditions at secondary terminals. Optimum is defined as not exceeding nameplate voltage plus 10 percent and not being lower than nameplate voltage minus 3 percent at maximum load conditions. Submit recording and tap settings as test results.
  2. Connect buck-boost transformers to provide nameplate voltage of equipment being served, plus or minus 5 percent, at secondary terminals.
  3. Output Settings Report: Prepare a written report recording output voltages and tap settings.
- D. Cleaning
1. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning.

END OF SECTION 26 12 13 00a



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
26 12 13 00	26 05 26 00b	Overhead Electrical Distribution
26 12 16 00	26 12 13 00	Medium-Voltage Transformers
26 12 16 00	26 12 13 00a	Low-Voltage Transformers
26 12 19 00	26 12 13 00	Medium-Voltage Transformers
26 12 19 00	26 12 13 00a	Low-Voltage Transformers
26 13 16 00	26 11 13 00	Secondary Unit Substations
26 13 19 00	26 11 13 00	Secondary Unit Substations
26 18 36 00	26 11 16 00	Switchgear
26 21 13 00	26 05 13 16	Conductors And Cables
26 21 13 00	26 05 13 16a	Undercarpet Cables
26 21 13 00	26 05 13 16b	Medium-Voltage Cables
26 21 13 00	26 05 26 00b	Overhead Electrical Distribution
26 22 13 00	26 12 13 00	Medium-Voltage Transformers
26 22 13 00	26 05 26 00b	Overhead Electrical Distribution
26 22 13 00	26 12 13 00a	Low-Voltage Transformers



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 26 24 13 00 - ELECTRICITY METERING**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for electricity metering. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. Section includes equipment for electricity metering by utility company and electricity metering by the Owner.

## C. Definitions

1. KY Pulse: Term used by the metering industry to describe a method of measuring consumption of electricity that is based on a relay opening and closing in response to the rotation of the disk in the meter.
2. PC: Personal computer.

## D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: For electricity-metering equipment.
  - a. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring. Identify terminals and wiring designations and color-codes to facilitate installation, operation, and maintenance. Indicate recommended types, wire sizes, and circuiting arrangements for field-installed wiring, and show circuit protection features.
3. Field quality-control reports.
4. Operation and Maintenance Data. Include the following:
  - a. Application and operating software documentation.
  - b. Software licenses.
  - c. Software service agreement.
  - d. Hard copies of manufacturer's operating specifications, design user's guides for software and hardware, and PDF files on CD-ROM of the hard-copy Submittal.

## E. Quality Assurance

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Receive, store, and handle modular meter center according to NECA 400.

## G. Project Conditions

1. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:
  - a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
  - b. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without the Owner's written permission.

## H. Coordination

1. Electrical Service Connections: Coordinate with utility companies and components they furnish as follows:



- a. Comply with requirements of utilities providing electrical power services.
  - b. Coordinate installation and connection of utilities and services, including provision for electricity-metering components.
- I. Software Service Agreement (May Not Be Allowed For Publicly Funded Projects)
1. Technical Support: Beginning with Final Completion, provide software support for two years.
  2. Upgrade Service: Update software to latest version at Project completion. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Final Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system. Upgrade shall include new or revised licenses for use of software.
    - a. Provide 30 days' notice to the Owner to allow scheduling and access to system and to allow the Owner to upgrade its computer equipment if necessary.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

- A. Equipment For Electricity Metering By Utility Company
1. Meters will be furnished by utility company.
  2. Current-Transformer Cabinets: Comply with requirements of electrical-power utility company.
  3. Meter Sockets: Comply with requirements of electrical-power utility company.
- OR**
- Meter Sockets: Steady-state and short-circuit current ratings shall meet indicated circuit ratings.
4. Modular Meter Center: Factory-coordinated assembly of a main service terminal box with lugs only **OR** disconnect device, **as directed**, wireways, tenant meter socket modules, and tenant feeder circuit breakers arranged in adjacent vertical sections. Assembly shall be complete with interconnecting buses and other features as specified below.
    - a. Comply with requirements of utility company for meter center.
    - b. Housing: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 3R, **as directed**, enclosure.
    - c. Minimum Short-Circuit Rating: 22,000 **OR** 42,000 **OR** 65,000 **OR** 100,000, **as directed**, A symmetrical at rated voltage.
    - d. Main Disconnect Device: Circuit breaker, series-combination rated for use with downstream feeder and branch circuit breakers.
 

**OR**

 Main Disconnect Device: Fusible switch, series-combination rated by circuit-breaker manufacturer to protect downstream feeder and branch circuit breakers.
    - e. Tenant Feeder Circuit Breakers: Series-combination-rated molded-case units, rated to protect circuit breakers in downstream tenant and to house loadcenters and panelboards that have 10,000-A interrupting capacity.
      - 1) Identification: Complying with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems" with legend identifying tenant's address.
      - 2) Physical Protection: Tamper resistant, with hasp for padlock.
    - f. Meter Socket: Rating coordinated with indicated tenant feeder circuit rating.
    - g. Surge Protection: For main disconnect device, comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Transient-voltage Suppression For Low-voltage Electrical Power Circuits".
- B. Equipment For Electricity Metering By the Owner
1. General Requirements for the Owner's Meters:
    - a. Comply with UL 1244.
    - b. Meters used for billing shall have an accuracy of 0.2 **OR** 0.5 **OR** 1.0, **as directed**, percent of reading, complying with requirements in ANSI C12.20.
    - c. Meters shall be certified by California Type Evaluation Program, **as directed**, as complying with Title 4, California Code of Regulations, Article 2.2, **as directed**.
    - d. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 3R, **as directed**, minimum, with hasp for padlocking or sealing.





- e. Identification: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
  - f. Memory Backup: Self-contained to maintain memory throughout power outages of 72 hours, minimum.
  - g. Sensors: Current-sensing type, with current or voltage output, selected for optimum range and accuracy for meters indicated for this application.
    - 1) Type: Split **OR** Split and solid, **as directed**, core.
  - h. Current-Transformer Cabinet: Listed or recommended by metering equipment manufacturer for use with sensors indicated.
  - i. Building Automation System (BAS) Interface: One digital KY pulse to a user-definable increment of energy measurement. Match signal to BAS input and arrange to convey the instantaneous, integrated, demand level measured by meter to provide data for processing and possible programmed demand control action by destination system.
2. Kilowatt-hour Meter: Electronic single **OR** three **OR** single- and three, **as directed**, -phase meters, measuring electricity used.
    - a. Voltage and Phase Configuration: Meter shall be designed for use on circuits with voltage rating and phase configuration indicated for its application.
    - b. Display: LCD with characters not less than 0.25 inch (6 mm) high, indicating accumulative kilowatt-hours and current kilowatt load. Retain accumulated kilowatt-hour in a nonvolatile memory, until reset.

**OR**

Display: Digital electromechanical counter, indicating accumulative kilowatt-hours.
  3. Kilowatt-hour/Demand Meter: Electronic single **OR** three **OR** single- and three, **as directed**, -phase meters, measuring electricity use and demand. Demand shall be integrated over a 15-minute interval.
    - a. Voltage and Phase Configuration: Meter shall be designed for use on circuits with voltage rating and phase configuration indicated for its application.
    - b. Display: LCD with characters not less than 0.25 inch (6 mm) high, indicating accumulative kilowatt-hours, current time and date, current demand, and historic peak demand, and time and date of historic peak demand. Retain accumulated kilowatt-hour and historic peak demand in a nonvolatile memory, until reset.
  4. Data Transmission Cable: Transmit KY pulse data over Class 1 control-circuit conductors in raceway. Comply with Division 26 Section "Control-voltage Electrical Power Cables".
  5. Software: PC based, a product of meter manufacturer, suitable for calculation of utility cost allocation and billing, **as directed**.
    - a. Utility Cost Allocation: Automatically import energy-usage records to allocate energy costs for the following:
      - 1) At least 15 departments.
      - 2) At least 30 tenants.
      - 3) At least five processes.
      - 4) At least five buildings.
    - b. Tenant or Activity Billing Software: Automatically import energy-usage records to automatically compute and prepare tenant bills **OR** activity demand and energy-use statements, **as directed**, based on metering of energy use and peak demand, **as directed**. Maintain separate directory for each tenant's historical billing information. Prepare summary reports in user-defined formats and time intervals.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation

1. Comply with equipment installation requirements in NECA 1.
2. Install meters furnished by utility company. Install raceways and equipment according to utility company's written requirements. Provide empty conduits for metering leads and extend grounding connections as required by utility company.
3. Install modular meter center according to NECA 400 switchboard installation requirements.



- B. Identification
1. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
    - a. Series Combination Warning Label: Self-adhesive type, with text as required by NFPA 70.
    - b. Equipment Identification Labels: Adhesive film labels with clear protective overlay. For residential meters, provide an additional card holder suitable for printed, weather-resistant card **OR** typewritten card, **as directed**, with occupant's name.
- C. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections.
    - a. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
  2. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. Connect a load of known kilowatt rating, 1.5 kW minimum, to a circuit supplied by metered feeder.
    - b. Turn off circuits supplied by metered feeder and secure them in off condition.
    - c. Run test load continuously for eight hours minimum, or longer, to obtain a measurable meter indication. Use test-load placement and setting that ensures continuous, safe operation.
    - d. Check and record meter reading at end of test period and compare with actual electricity used, based on test-load rating, duration of test, and sample measurements of supply voltage at test-load connection. Record test results.
  3. Electricity metering will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  4. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 26 24 13 00



## SECTION 26 24 13 00a - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for enclosed switches and circuit breakers. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Fusible switches.
  - b. Nonfusible switches.
  - c. Receptacle switches.
  - d. Shunt trip switches.
  - e. Molded-case circuit breakers (MCCBs).
  - f. Molded-case switches.
  - g. Enclosures.

#### C. Definitions

1. NC: Normally closed.
2. NO: Normally open.
3. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. Seismic Performance: Enclosed switches and circuit breakers shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event," **as directed**.

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - a. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
4. Field quality-control reports.
5. Operation and maintenance data.

#### F. Quality Assurance

1. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of or an NRTL **OR** one who meets the requirements necessary for certification, **as directed**.
  - a. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA **OR** one who meets the requirements necessary for certification, **as directed**, to supervise on-site testing.
2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. Comply with NFPA 70.

#### G. Project Conditions



1. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
  - a. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F (minus 30 deg C) and not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C).
  - b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2010 m).
2. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
  - a. Notify the Owner no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
  - b. Indicate method of providing temporary electric service.
  - c. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without the Owner's written permission.
  - d. Comply with NFPA 70E.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Fusible Switches

1. Type GD, General Duty, Single Throw, 240-V ac, 800 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with cartridge **OR** plug, **as directed**, fuse interiors to accommodate specified **OR** indicated, **as directed**, fuses, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
2. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Single Throw, 240 **OR** 600, **as directed**, -V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate specified **OR** indicated, **as directed**, fuses, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
3. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Six Pole, Single Throw, 240 **OR** 600, **as directed**, -V ac, 200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate specified **OR** indicated, **as directed**, fuses, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
4. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Double Throw, 240 **OR** 600, **as directed**, -V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate specified **OR** indicated, **as directed**, fuses, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
5. Accessories:
  - a. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
  - b. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
  - c. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
  - d. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
  - e. Auxiliary Contact Kit: One **OR** Two, **as directed**, NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open.
  - f. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
  - g. Lugs: Mechanical **OR** Compression, **as directed**, type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
  - h. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.
  - i. Accessory Control Power Voltage: Remote mounted and powered; 24-V ac **OR** 120-V ac **OR** 208-V ac **OR** 240-V ac **OR** 6-V dc **OR** 12-V dc **OR** 24-V dc, **as directed**.

### B. Nonfusible Switches

1. Type GD, General Duty, Single Throw, 600 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.



2. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Single Throw, 240 **OR** 600, **as directed**,-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
3. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Six Pole, Single Throw, 240 **OR** 600, **as directed**,-V ac, 200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
4. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Double Throw, 240 **OR** 600, **as directed**,-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
5. Accessories:
  - a. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
  - b. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
  - c. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
  - d. Auxiliary Contact Kit: One **OR** Two, **as directed**, NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open.
  - e. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
  - f. Lugs: Mechanical **OR** Compression, **as directed**, type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
  - g. Accessory Control Power Voltage: Remote mounted and powered; 24-V ac **OR** 120-V ac **OR** 208-V ac **OR** 240-V ac **OR** 6-V dc **OR** 12-V dc **OR** 24-V dc, **as directed**.

#### C. Receptacle Switches

1. Type HD, Heavy-Duty, Single-Throw Fusible Switch: 240 **OR** 600, **as directed**,-V ac, 30 **OR** 60 **OR** 100, **as directed**, A; UL 98 and NEMA KS 1; horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate specified **OR** indicated, **as directed**, fuses; lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks; interlocked with cover in closed position.
2. Type HD, Heavy-Duty, Single-Throw Nonfusible Switch: 240 **OR** 600, **as directed**,-V ac, 30 **OR** 60 **OR** 100, **as directed**, A; UL 98 and NEMA KS 1; horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks; interlocked with cover in closed position.
3. Interlocking Linkage: Provided between the receptacle and switch mechanism to prevent inserting or removing plug while switch is in the on position, inserting any plug other than specified, and turning switch on if an incorrect plug is inserted or correct plug has not been fully inserted into the receptacle.
4. Receptacle: Polarized, three-phase, four-wire receptacle (fourth wire connected to enclosure ground lug).

#### D. Shunt Trip Switches

1. General Requirements: Comply with ASME A17.1, **as directed**, UL 50, and UL 98, with 200-kA interrupting and short-circuit current rating when fitted with Class J fuses.
2. Switches: Three-pole, horsepower rated, with integral shunt trip mechanism and Class J fuse block; lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks; interlocked with cover in closed position.
3. Control Circuit: 120-V ac; obtained from integral control power transformer, with primary and secondary fuses, with a control power transformer **OR** source, **as directed**, of enough capacity to operate shunt trip, connected pilot, and indicating and control devices.
4. Accessories:
  - a. Oiltight key switch for key-to-test function.
  - b. Oiltight red **OR** green **OR** white **OR** yellow, **as directed**, ON pilot light.
  - c. Isolated neutral lug; 100 **OR** 200, **as directed**, percent rating.
  - d. Mechanically interlocked auxiliary contacts that change state when switch is opened and closed.
  - e. Form C alarm contacts that change state when switch is tripped.



- f. Three-pole, double-throw, fire-safety and alarm relay; 120-V ac **OR** 24-V dc, **as directed**, coil voltage.
- g. Three-pole, double-throw, fire-alarm voltage monitoring relay complying with NFPA 72.

E. Molded-Case Circuit Breakers

1. General Requirements: Comply with UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.
2. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
3. Adjustable, Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
4. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers: Field-replaceable rating plug, rms sensing, with the following field-adjustable settings:
  - a. Instantaneous trip.
  - b. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
  - c. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
  - d. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and  $I^2t$  response.
5. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller, and let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
6. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker and trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.
7. Ground-Fault, Circuit-Interrupter (GFCI) Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
8. Ground-Fault, Equipment-Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: With Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
9. Features and Accessories:
  - a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
  - b. Lugs: Mechanical **OR** Compression, **as directed**, type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
  - c. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge lighting circuits.
  - d. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1053; integrally mounted, self-powered **OR** remote-mounted and powered, **as directed**, type with mechanical ground-fault indicator; relay with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, internal memory, and shunt trip unit; and three-phase, zero-sequence current transformer/sensor.
  - e. Communication Capability: Circuit-breaker-mounted **OR** Universal-mounted **OR** Integral **OR** Din-rail-mounted, **as directed**, communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system, specified in Division 26 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring And Control".
  - f. Shunt Trip: Trip coil energized from separate circuit, with coil-clearing contact.
  - g. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
  - h. Auxiliary Contacts: One SPDT switch **OR** Two SPDT switches, **as directed**, with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
  - i. Alarm Switch: One NO **OR** NC, **as directed**, contact that operates only when circuit breaker has tripped.
  - j. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
  - k. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic **OR** ground-fault, **as directed**, trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
  - l. Electrical Operator: Provide remote control for on, off, and reset operations.



- m. Accessory Control Power Voltage: Integrally mounted, self-powered **OR** Remote mounted and powered, **as directed**; 24-V ac **OR** 120-V ac **OR** 208-V ac **OR** 240-V ac **OR** 6-V dc **OR** 12-V dc **OR** 24-V dc, **as directed**.

F. Molded-Case Switches

1. General Requirements: MCCB with fixed, high-set instantaneous trip only, and short-circuit withstand rating equal to equivalent breaker frame size interrupting rating.
2. Features and Accessories:
  - a. Standard frame sizes and number of poles.
  - b. Lugs: Mechanical **OR** Compression, **as directed**, type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
  - c. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1053; remote-mounted and powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator; relay with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, internal memory, and shunt trip unit; and three-phase, zero-sequence current transformer/sensor.
  - d. Shunt Trip: Trip coil energized from separate circuit, with coil-clearing contact.
  - e. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
  - f. Auxiliary Contacts: One SPDT switch **OR** Two SPDT switches, **as directed**, with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic switch contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of switch contacts.
  - g. Alarm Switch: One NO **OR** NC, **as directed**, contact that operates only when switch has tripped.
  - h. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit switch operation; key shall be removable only when switch is in off position.
  - i. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with ground-fault shunt trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
  - j. Electrical Operator: Provide remote control for on, off, and reset operations.
  - k. Accessory Control Power Voltage: Integrally mounted, self-powered **OR** Remote mounted and powered, **as directed**; 24-V ac **OR** 120-V ac **OR** 208-V ac **OR** 240-V ac **OR** 6-V dc **OR** 12-V dc **OR** 24-V dc, **as directed**.

G. Enclosures

1. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: NEMA AB 1, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
  - a. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
  - c. Kitchen **OR** Wash-Down, **as directed**, Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
  - d. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
  - e. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.
  - f. Hazardous Areas Indicated on Drawings: NEMA 250, Type 7 **OR** Type 9, **as directed**.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation

1. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
2. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
3. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
4. Install fuses in fusible devices.
5. Comply with NECA 1.



- B. Identification
1. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
    - a. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
    - b. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.
- C. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections.
  2. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
    - a. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed switch and circuit breaker, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
    - b. Test continuity of each circuit.
  3. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
    - b. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
    - c. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
      - 1) Initial Infrared Scanning: After Final Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
      - 2) Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker 11 months after date of Final Completion.
      - 3) Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
    - d. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  4. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
  5. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies enclosed switches and circuit breakers and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
- D. Adjusting
1. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
  2. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Division 26 Section "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study".

END OF SECTION 26 24 13 00a





## SECTION 26 24 13 00b - SWITCHBOARDS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for switchboards. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Service and distribution switchboards rated 600 V and less.
  - b. Transient voltage suppression devices.
  - c. Disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
  - d. Instrumentation.
  - e. Control power.
  - f. Accessory components and features.
  - g. Identification.
  - h. Mimic bus.

#### C. Performance Requirements

1. Seismic Performance: Switchboards shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
  - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: For each switchboard and related equipment.
  - a. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details, including required clearances and service space around equipment. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings.
  - b. Detail enclosure types for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - c. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
  - d. Detail short-circuit current rating of switchboards and overcurrent protective devices.
  - e. Include descriptive documentation of optional barriers specified for electrical insulation and isolation.
  - f. Detail utility company's metering provisions with indication of approval by utility company.
  - g. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
  - h. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
  - i. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in switchboards. Submit on translucent log-log graft paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.
  - j. Include diagram and details of proposed mimic bus.
  - k. Include schematic and wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Samples: Representative portion of mimic bus with specified material and finish, for color selection.
4. Seismic Qualification Certificates: Submit certification that switchboards, overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
5. Field Quality-Control Reports.



6. Operation and maintenance data.

E. Quality Assurance

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with NEMA PB 2.
3. Comply with NFPA 70.
4. Comply with UL 891.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver switchboards in sections or lengths that can be moved past obstructions in delivery path.
2. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside switchboards and install temporary electric heating (250 W per section) **OR** connect factory-installed space heaters to temporary electrical service, **as directed**, to prevent condensation.
3. Handle and prepare switchboards for installation according to NECA 400 **OR** NEMA PB 2.1, **as directed**.

G. Project Conditions

1. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
  - a. Notify the Owner no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
  - b. Indicate method of providing temporary electric service.
  - c. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without the Owner's written permission.
  - d. Comply with NFPA 70E.

H. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace transient voltage suppression devices that fail in materials or workmanship within five years from date of Final Completion.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Manufactured Units

1. Front-Connected, Front-Accessible Switchboards:
  - a. Main Devices: Panel **OR** Fixed, individually, **as directed**, mounted.
  - b. Branch Devices: Panel mounted.
  - c. Sections front and rear aligned.
2. Front- and Side-Accessible Switchboards:
  - a. Main Devices: Fixed, individually mounted.
  - b. Branch Devices: Panel mounted.
  - c. Sections front and rear aligned.
3. Front- and Rear-Accessible Switchboards:
  - a. Main Devices: Fixed, individually **OR** Drawout, **as directed**, mounted.
  - b. Branch Devices: Panel **OR** Fixed, individually **OR** Panel and fixed, individually **OR** Fixed and individually compartmented **OR** Individually compartmented and drawout, **as directed**, mounted.
  - c. Sections front and rear **OR** rear, **as directed**, aligned.
4. Nominal System Voltage: 480Y/277 V **OR** 208Y/120 V, **as directed**.
5. Main-Bus Continuous: 5000 **OR** 4000 **OR** 3000 **OR** 2500 **OR** 2000 **OR** 1600 **OR** 1200, **as directed**, A.



6. Seismic Requirements: Fabricate and test switchboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
7. Indoor Enclosures: Steel, NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 5, **as directed**.
8. Enclosure Finish for Indoor Units: Factory-applied finish in manufacturer's standard gray **OR** custom color, **as directed**, finish over a rust-inhibiting primer on treated metal surface.
9. Outdoor Enclosures: Type 3R **OR** Type 3R, with interior-lighted walk-in aisle, **as directed**.
  - a. Finish: Factory-applied finish in manufacturer's standard **OR** custom, **as directed**, color; undersurfaces treated with corrosion-resistant undercoating.
  - b. Enclosure: Flat **OR** Downward, rearward sloping, **as directed**, roof; bolt-on rear covers **OR** rear hinged doors, **as directed**, for each section, with provisions for padlocking.
  - c. Doors: Personnel door at each end of aisle, minimum width of 30 inches (762 mm); opening outwards; with panic hardware and provisions for padlocking **OR** cylinder lock, **as directed**.
  - d. Accessories: Fluorescent lighting fixtures, ceiling mounted; wired to a three-way light switch at each end of aisle; ground-fault circuit interrupter (GFCI) duplex receptacle; emergency battery pack lighting fixture installed on wall of aisle midway between personnel doors.
  - e. Walk-in Aisle Heating and Ventilating:
    - 1) Factory-installed electric unit heater(s), wall or ceiling mounted, with integral thermostat and disconnect and with capacities to maintain switchboard interior temperature of 40 deg F (5 deg C) with outside design temperature of 104 deg F (40 deg C).
    - 2) Factory-installed exhaust fan with capacities to maintain switchboard interior temperature of 100 deg F (38 deg C) with outside design temperature of 23 deg F (minus 5 deg C).
    - 3) Ventilating openings complete with replaceable fiberglass air filters.
    - 4) Thermostat: Single stage; wired to control heat and exhaust fan.
  - f. Power for Space Heaters, Ventilation, Lighting, and Receptacle: Include a control-power transformer within the switchboard. Supply voltage shall be 120 **OR** 120/240 **OR** 120/208, **as directed**, -V ac.
  - g. Power for space heaters, ventilation, lighting, and receptacle provided by a remote source.
10. Barriers: Between adjacent switchboard sections.
11. Insulation and isolation for main bus of main section, **as directed**, and main and vertical buses of feeder sections.
12. Cubical Space Heaters: Factory-installed electric space heaters of sufficient wattage in each vertical section to maintain enclosure temperature above expected dew point.
  - a. Space-Heater Control: Thermostats to maintain temperature of each section above expected dew point **OR** Manual switching of branch-circuit protective device, **as directed**.
  - b. Space-Heater Power Source: Transformer, factory installed in switchboard **OR** 120-V external branch circuit, **as directed**.
13. Utility Metering Compartment: Fabricated, barrier compartment and section complying with utility company's requirements; hinged sealed door; buses provisioned for mounting utility company's current transformers and potential transformers or potential taps as required by utility company. If separate vertical section is required for utility metering, match and align with basic switchboard. Provide service entrance label and necessary applicable service entrance features.
14. Customer Metering Compartment: A separate customer metering compartment and section with front hinged door, for indicated metering, and current transformers for each meter. Current transformer secondary wiring shall be terminated on shorting-type terminal blocks. Include potential transformers having primary and secondary fuses with disconnecting means and secondary wiring terminated on terminal blocks, **as directed**.
15. Bus Transition and Incoming Pull Sections: Matched and aligned with basic switchboard.
16. Removable, Hinged Rear Doors and Compartment Covers: Secured by captive thumb screws **OR** standard bolts, **as directed**, for access to rear interior of switchboard.
17. Hinged Front Panels: Allow access to circuit breaker, metering, accessory, and blank compartments.



18. Pull Box on Top of Switchboard:
  - a. Adequate ventilation to maintain temperature in pull box within same limits as switchboard.
  - b. Set back from front to clear circuit-breaker removal mechanism.
  - c. Removable covers shall form top, front, and sides. Top covers at rear shall be easily removable for drilling and cutting.
  - d. Bottom shall be insulating, fire-resistive material with separate holes for cable drops into switchboard.
  - e. Cable supports shall be arranged to facilitate cabling and adequate to support cables indicated, including those for future installation.
19. Buses and Connections: Three phase, four wire unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Phase- and Neutral-Bus Material: One of the following:
    - 1) Hard-drawn copper of 98 percent conductivity, silver-plated, **as directed**, with tin-plated aluminum or copper feeder circuit-breaker line connections.
    - 2) Tin-plated, high-strength, electrical-grade aluminum alloy with tin-plated aluminum circuit-breaker line connections.
    - 3) Hard-drawn copper of 98 percent conductivity, silver-plated, **as directed**, or tin-plated, high-strength, electrical-grade aluminum alloy.
  - b. Load Terminals: Insulated, rigidly braced, runback bus extensions, of same material as through buses, equipped with mechanical **OR** compression, **as directed**, connectors for outgoing circuit conductors. Provide load terminals for future circuit-breaker positions at full-ampere rating of circuit-breaker position.
  - c. Ground Bus: 1/4-by-2-inch- (6-by-50-mm-) **OR** 1/4-by-1-inch- (6-by-25-mm-) **OR** Minimum-size required by UL 891, **as directed**, hard-drawn copper of 98 percent conductivity, equipped with mechanical **OR** compression, **as directed**, connectors for feeder and branch-circuit ground conductors. For busway feeders, extend insulated equipment grounding cable to busway ground connection and support cable at intervals in vertical run.
  - d. Main Phase Buses and Equipment Ground Buses: Uniform capacity for entire length of switchboard's main and distribution sections. Provide for future extensions from both ends.
  - e. Neutral Buses: 50 percent of the ampacity of phase buses unless otherwise indicated, equipped with mechanical **OR** compression, **as directed**, connectors for outgoing circuit neutral cables. Brace bus extensions for busway feeder neutral bus.
  - f. Neutral Buses: 100 percent of the ampacity of phase buses unless otherwise indicated, equipped with mechanical **OR** compression, **as directed**, connectors for outgoing circuit neutral cables. Brace bus extensions for busway feeder neutral bus.
  - g. Isolation Barrier Access Provisions: Permit checking of bus-bolt tightness.
20. Future Devices: Equip compartments with mounting brackets, supports, bus connections, and appurtenances at full rating of circuit-breaker compartment.
21. Bus-Bar Insulation: Factory-applied, flame-retardant, tape wrapping of individual bus bars or flame-retardant, spray-applied insulation. Minimum insulation temperature rating of 105 deg C.
22. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for overcurrent protective devices and other components including instruments and instrument transformers.

#### B. Transient Voltage Suppression Devices

1. Surge Protection Device Description: IEEE C62.41-compliant, integrally mounted, wired-in **OR** plug-in **OR** bolt-on, **as directed**, solid-state, parallel-connected, modular (with field-replaceable modules) **OR** non-modular, **as directed**, type, with sine-wave tracking suppression and filtering modules, UL 1449, second edition, short-circuit current rating matching or exceeding the switchboard short-circuit rating, and with the following features and accessories:
  - a. Fuses, rated at 200-kA interrupting capacity.
  - b. Fabrication using bolted compression lugs for internal wiring.
  - c. Integral disconnect switch.
  - d. Redundant suppression circuits.
  - e. Redundant replaceable modules.
  - f. Arrangement with wire connections to phase buses, neutral bus, and ground bus.



- g. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
  - h. Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
  - i. Form-C contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of system operation. Contacts shall reverse position on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.
  - j. Four **OR** Six, **as directed**, -digit, transient-event counter set to totalize transient surges.
- 2. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating: 160 kA per mode/320 kA per phase **OR** 120 kA per mode/240 kA per phase **OR** 80 kA per mode/160 kA per phase, **as directed**.
  - 3. Withstand Capabilities: 12,000 IEEE C62.41, Category C3 (10 kA), 8-by-20-mic.sec. surges with less than 5 percent change in clamping voltage.
  - 4. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for grounded wye circuits with 480Y/277 **OR** 208Y/120 **OR** 600Y/347, **as directed**, -V, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall be as follows:
    - a. Line to Neutral: 800 V for 480Y/277 **OR** 400 V for 208Y/120 **OR** 1200 V for 600Y/347, **as directed**.
    - b. Line to Ground: 800 V for 480Y/277 **OR** 400 V for 208Y/120 **OR** 1200 V for 600Y/347, **as directed**.
    - c. Neutral to Ground: 800 V for 480Y/277 **OR** 400 V for 208Y/120 **OR** 1200 V for 600Y/347, **as directed**.
  - 5. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for 240/120-V, three-phase, four-wire circuits with high leg shall be as follows:
    - a. Line to Neutral: 400 V, 800 V from high leg.
    - b. Line to Ground: 400 V.
    - c. Neutral to Ground: 400 V.
  - 6. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for 240-, 480-, or 600-V, three-phase, three-wire, delta circuits shall be as follows:
    - a. Line to Line: 2000 V for 480 V **OR** 1000 V for 240 V **OR** 2500 V for 600 V, **as directed**.
    - b. Line to Ground: 1500 V for 480 V **OR** 800 V for 240 V **OR** 2500 V for 600 V, **as directed**.
- C. Disconnecting And Overcurrent Protective Devices
- 1. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB): Comply with UL 489, with series-connected rating **OR** interrupting capacity, **as directed**, to meet available fault currents.
    - a. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
    - b. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
    - c. Electronic trip circuit breakers with rms sensing; field-replaceable rating plug or field-replicable electronic trip; and the following field-adjustable settings:
      - 1) Instantaneous trip.
      - 2) Long- and short-time pickup levels.
      - 3) Long- and short-time time adjustments.
      - 4) Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and  $I^2t$  response.
    - d. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
    - e. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker; trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.
    - f. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
    - g. Ground-Fault Equipment Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
    - h. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker (MCCB) Features and Accessories:
      - 1) Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
      - 2) Lugs: Mechanical **OR** Compression, **as directed**, style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.



- 3) Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge (HID) lighting circuits.
  - 4) Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
  - 5) Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
  - 6) Communication Capability: Circuit-breaker-mounted **OR** Universal-mounted **OR** Integral **OR** Din-rail-mounted, **as directed**, communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Division 26 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring And Control".
  - 7) Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 55 **OR** 75, **as directed**, percent of rated voltage.
  - 8) Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
  - 9) Auxiliary Contacts: One SPDT switch **OR** Two SPDT switches, **as directed**, with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
  - 20) Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
2. Insulated-Case Circuit Breaker (ICCB): 80 **OR** 100, **as directed**, percent rated, sealed, insulated-case power circuit breaker with interrupting capacity rating to meet available fault current.
- a. Fixed **OR** Drawout, **as directed**, circuit-breaker mounting.
  - b. Two-step, stored-energy closing.
  - c. Standard **OR** Full, **as directed**,-function, microprocessor-based trip units with interchangeable rating plug, trip indicators, and the following field-adjustable settings:
    - 1) Instantaneous trip.
    - 2) Long- and short-time time adjustments.
    - 3) Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and  $I^2t$  response.
  - d. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
  - e. Remote trip indication and control.
  - f. Communication Capability: Integral communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Division 26 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring And Control".
  - g. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
  - h. Control Voltage: 40-V dc **OR** 125-V dc **OR** 250-V dc **OR** 120-V ac, **as directed**.
3. Bolted-Pressure Contact Switch: Operating mechanism uses rotary-mechanical-bolting action to produce and maintain high clamping pressure on the switch blade after it engages the stationary contacts.
- a. Main-Contact Interrupting Capability: Minimum of 12 times the switch current rating.
  - b. Operating Mechanism: Manual handle operation to close switch; stores energy in mechanism for opening and closing.
    - 1) Electrical Trip: Operation of lever or push-button trip switch, or trip signal from ground-fault relay or remote-control device, causes switch to open.
    - 2) Mechanical Trip: Operation of mechanical lever, push button, or other device causes switch to open.
  - c. Auxiliary Switches: Factory installed, single pole, double throw, with leads connected to terminal block, and including one set more than quantity required for functional performance indicated.
  - d. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.



- e. Ground-Fault Relay: Comply with UL 1053; self-powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator, test function, tripping relay with internal memory, and three-phase current transformer/sensor.
    - 1) Configuration: Integrally mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
    - 2) Internal Memory: Integrates the cumulative value of intermittent arcing ground-fault currents and uses the effect to initiate tripping.
    - 3) No-Trip Relay Test: Permits ground-fault simulation test without tripping switch.
    - 4) Test Control: Simulates ground fault to test relay and switch (or relay only if "no-trip" mode is selected).
  - f. Open-Fuse Trip Device: Arranged to trip switch open if a phase fuse opens.
  - 4. High-Pressure, Butt-Type Contact Switch: Operating mechanism uses butt-type contacts and a spring-charged mechanism to produce and maintain high-pressure contact when switch is closed.
    - a. Main-Contact Interrupting Capability: Minimum of 12 times the switch current rating.
    - b. Operating Mechanism: Manual handle operation to close switch; stores energy in mechanism for opening and closing.
      - 1) Electrical Trip: Operation of lever or push-button trip switch, or trip signal from ground-fault relay or remote-control device, causes switch to open.
      - 2) Mechanical Trip: Operation of mechanical lever, push button, or other device causes switch to open.
    - c. Auxiliary Switches: Factory installed, single pole, double throw, with leads connected to terminal block, and including one set more than quantity required for functional performance indicated.
    - d. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.
    - e. Ground-Fault Relay: Comply with UL 1053; self-powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator, test function, tripping relay with internal memory, and three-phase current transformer/sensor.
      - 1) Configuration: Integrally mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
      - 2) Internal Memory: Integrates the cumulative value of intermittent arcing ground-fault currents and uses the effect to initiate tripping.
      - 3) No-Trip Relay Test: Permits ground-fault simulation test without tripping switch.
      - 4) Test Control: Simulates ground fault to test relay and switch (or relay only if "no-trip" mode is selected).
    - f. Open-Fuse Trip Device: Arranged to trip switch open if a phase fuse opens.
  - 5. Fused Switch: NEMA KS 1, Type HD; clips to accommodate specified fuses; lockable handle.
  - 6. Fuses are specified in Division 26 Section "Fuses".
- D. Instrumentation
- 1. Instrument Transformers: IEEE C57.13, NEMA EI 21.1, and the following:
    - a. Potential Transformers: IEEE C57.13; 120 V, 60 Hz, single **OR** tapped **OR** double, **as directed**, secondary; disconnecting type with integral fuse mountings. Burden and accuracy shall be consistent with connected metering and relay devices.
    - b. Current Transformers: IEEE C57.13; 5 A, 60 Hz, secondary; wound **OR** bushing **OR** bar or window, **as directed**, type; single **OR** double, **as directed**, secondary winding and secondary shorting device. Burden and accuracy shall be consistent with connected metering and relay devices.
    - c. Control-Power Transformers: Dry type, mounted in separate compartments for units larger than 3 kVA.
    - d. Current Transformers for Neutral and Ground-Fault Current Sensing: Connect secondary wiring to ground overcurrent relays, via shorting terminals, to provide selective tripping of main and tie circuit breaker. Coordinate with feeder circuit-breaker, ground-fault protection.



2. Multifunction Digital-Metering Monitor: Microprocessor-based unit suitable for three- or four-wire systems and with the following features:
  - a. Switch-selectable digital display of the following values with maximum accuracy tolerances as indicated:
    - 1) Phase Currents, Each Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
    - 2) Phase-to-Phase Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
    - 3) Phase-to-Neutral Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
    - 4) Megawatts: Plus or minus 2 percent.
    - 5) Megavars: Plus or minus 2 percent.
    - 6) Power Factor: Plus or minus 2 percent.
    - 7) Frequency: Plus or minus 0.5 percent.
    - 8) Accumulated Energy, Megawatt Hours: Plus or minus 2 percent; accumulated values unaffected by power outages up to 72 hours.
    - 9) Megawatt Demand: Plus or minus 2 percent; demand interval programmable from five to 60 minutes.
    - 10) Contact devices to operate remote impulse-totalizing demand meter.
  - b. Mounting: Display and control unit flush or semiflush mounted in instrument compartment door.
3. Ammeters, Voltmeters, and Power-Factor Meters: ANSI C39.1.
  - a. Meters: 4-inch (100-mm) diameter or 6 inches (150 mm) square, flush or semiflush, with antiparallax 250-degree scales and external zero adjustment.
  - b. Voltmeters: Cover an expanded-scale range of nominal voltage plus 10 percent.
4. Instrument Switches: Rotary type with off position.
  - a. Voltmeter Switches: Permit reading of all phase-to-phase voltages and, where a neutral is indicated, phase-to-neutral voltages.
  - b. Ammeter Switches: Permit reading of current in each phase and maintain current-transformer secondaries in a closed-circuit condition at all times.
5. Feeder Ammeters: 2-1/2-inch (64-mm) minimum size with 90- or 120-degree scale. Meter and transfer device with off position, located on overcurrent device door for indicated feeder circuits only.
6. Watt-Hour Meters and Wattmeters:
  - a. Comply with ANSI C12.1.
  - b. Three-phase induction type with two stators, each with current and potential coil, rated 5 A, 120 V, 60 Hz.
  - c. Suitable for connection to three- and four-wire circuits.
  - d. Potential indicating lamps.
  - e. Adjustments for light and full load, phase balance, and power factor.
  - f. Four-dial clock register.
  - g. Integral demand indicator.
  - h. Contact devices to operate remote impulse-totalizing demand meter.
  - i. Ratchets to prevent reverse rotation.
  - j. Removable meter with drawout test plug.
  - k. Semiflush mounted case with matching cover.
  - l. Appropriate multiplier tag.
7. Impulse-Totalizing Demand Meter:
  - a. Comply with ANSI C12.1.
  - b. Suitable for use with switchboard watt-hour meter, including two-circuit totalizing relay.
  - c. Cyclometer.
  - d. Four-dial, totalizing kilowatt-hour register.
  - e. Positive chart drive mechanism.
  - f. Capillary pen holding a minimum of one month's ink supply.
  - g. Roll chart with minimum 31-day capacity; appropriate multiplier tag.
  - h. Capable of indicating and recording five **OR** 15 **OR** 30, **as directed**, -minute integrated demand of totalized system.





#### E. Control Power

1. Control Circuits: 120-V ac, supplied through secondary disconnecting devices from control-power transformer **OR** 120-V ac, supplied from remote branch circuit, **as directed**.
2. Electrically Interlocked Main and Tie Circuit Breakers: Two control-power transformers in separate compartments, with interlocking relays, connected to the primary side of each control-power transformer at the line side of the associated main circuit breaker. 120-V secondaries connected through automatic transfer relays to ensure a fail-safe automatic transfer scheme.
3. Control-Power Fuses: Primary and secondary fuses for current-limiting and overload protection of transformer and fuses for protection of control circuits.
4. Control Wiring: Factory installed, with bundling, lacing, and protection included. Provide flexible conductors for No. 8 AWG and smaller, for conductors across hinges, and for conductors for interconnections between shipping units.

#### F. Accessory Components And Features

1. Accessory Set: Include tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.
2. Portable Test Set: For testing functions of solid-state trip devices without removing from switchboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing switchboard meters and switchboard class relays.
3. Portable Circuit-Breaker Lifting Device: Floor-supported, roller-based, elevating carriage arranged for movement of circuit breakers in and out of compartments for present and future circuit breakers.
4. Overhead Circuit-Breaker Lifting Device: Mounted at top front of switchboard, with hoist and lifting yokes matching each drawout circuit breaker.
5. Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Suitably identified, wall-mounted, lockable, compartmented steel box or cabinet. Arrange for wall mounting.

#### G. Identification

1. Mimic Bus: Entire single-line switchboard bus work, as depicted on factory record drawing, on a photoengraved nameplate.
  - a. Nameplate: At least 0.032-inch- (0.813-mm-) thick anodized aluminum, located at eye level on front cover of the switchboard incoming service section.
2. Mimic Bus: Entire single-line switchboard bus work, as depicted on factory record drawing, on an engraved laminated-plastic (Gravoply) nameplate.
  - a. Nameplate: At least 0.0625-inch- (1.588 mm-) thick laminated plastic (Gravoply), located at eye level on front cover of the switchboard incoming service section.
3. Mimic Bus: Continuously integrated mimic bus factory applied to front of switchboard. Arrange in single-line diagram format, using symbols and letter designations consistent with final mimic-bus diagram.
4. Coordinate mimic-bus segments with devices in switchboard sections to which they are applied. Produce a concise visual presentation of principal switchboard components and connections.
5. Presentation Media: Painted graphics in color contrasting with background color to represent bus and components, complete with lettered designations.
6. Service Equipment Label: NRTL labeled for use as service equipment for switchboards with one or more service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation

1. Install switchboards and accessories according to NECA 400 **OR** NEMA PB 2.1, **as directed**.
2. Equipment Mounting: Install switchboards on concrete base, 4-inch (100-mm) nominal thickness. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
  - a. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.



- b. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - c. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - d. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to switchboards.
3. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from switchboard units and components.
  4. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems".
  5. Operating Instructions: Frame and mount the printed basic operating instructions for switchboards, including control and key interlocking sequences and emergency procedures. Fabricate frame of finished wood or metal and cover instructions with clear acrylic plastic. Mount on front of switchboards.
  6. Install filler plates in unused spaces of panel-mounted sections.
  7. Install overcurrent protective devices, transient voltage suppression devices, and instrumentation.
    - a. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.
  8. Install spare-fuse cabinet.
  9. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Connections
1. Comply with requirements for terminating feeder bus specified in Division 26 Section "Enclosed Bus Assemblies". Drawings indicate general arrangement of bus, fittings, and specialties.
  2. Comply with requirements for terminating cable trays specified in Division 26 Section "Cable Trays For Electrical Systems". Drawings indicate general arrangement of cable trays, fittings, and specialties.
- C. Identification
1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
  2. Switchboard Nameplates: Label each switchboard compartment with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
  3. Device Nameplates: Label each disconnecting and overcurrent protective device and each meter and control device mounted in compartment doors with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
- D. Field Quality Control
1. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
    - a. Test insulation resistance for each switchboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
    - b. Test continuity of each circuit.
  2. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
    - b. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
    - c. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
      - 1) Initial Infrared Scanning: After Final Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each switchboard. Remove front **OR** front and rear, **as directed**, panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
      - 2) Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switchboard 11 months after date of Final Completion.
      - 3) Instruments and Equipment:



- 
- a) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
  - d. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  - 3. Switchboard will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  - 4. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies switchboards included and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
- E. Adjusting
- 1. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
  - 2. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated **OR** as specified in Division 26 Section "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study", **as directed**.
- F. Protection
- 1. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat, to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions, until switchboard is ready to be energized and placed into service.

END OF SECTION 26 24 13 00b



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
26 24 16 00	01 51 13 00a	Panelboards

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 26 24 19 00 - ENCLOSED CONTROLLERS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for enclosed controllers. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section includes the following enclosed controllers rated 600 V and less:
  - a. Full-voltage manual.
  - b. Full-voltage magnetic.
  - c. Reduced-voltage magnetic.
  - d. Reduced-voltage solid state.
  - e. Multispeed.

#### C. Definitions

1. CPT: Control power transformer.
2. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.
3. MCP: Motor circuit protector.
4. N.C.: Normally closed.
5. N.O.: Normally open.
6. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.
7. SCR: Silicon-controlled rectifier.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. Seismic Performance: Enclosed controllers shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of enclosed controller. Include manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and enclosure types and finishes.
2. Shop Drawings: For each enclosed controller. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, details, and required clearances and service spaces around controller enclosures.
  - a. Show tabulations of the following:
    - 1) Each installed unit's type and details.
    - 2) Factory-installed devices.
    - 3) Nameplate legends.
    - 4) Short-circuit current rating of integrated unit.
    - 5) Listed and labeled for integrated short-circuit current (withstand) rating of OCPDs in combination controllers by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
    - 6) Features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual OCPDs in combination controllers.
  - b. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
4. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For enclosed controllers, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
  - a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.



- b. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
      - c. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
    5. Field quality-control reports.
    6. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed controllers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Include the following:
      - a. Routine maintenance requirements for enclosed controllers and installed components.
      - b. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting circuit breaker and MCP trip settings.
      - c. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable overload relays.
      - d. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing, adjusting, and reprogramming reduced-voltage solid-state controllers.
    7. Load-Current and Overload-Relay Heater List: Compile after motors have been installed, and arrange to demonstrate that selection of heaters suits actual motor nameplate full-load currents.
    8. Load-Current and List of Settings of Adjustable Overload Relays: Compile after motors have been installed, and arrange to demonstrate that switch settings for motor running overload protection suit actual motors to be protected.
- F. Quality Assurance
1. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL **OR** one who meets the requirements necessary for certification, **as directed**.
    - a. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA **OR** one who meets the requirements necessary for certification, **as directed**, to supervise on-site testing.
  2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  3. Comply with NFPA 70.
  4. IEEE Compliance: Fabricate and test enclosed controllers according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
- G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Store enclosed controllers indoors in clean, dry space with uniform temperature to prevent condensation. Protect enclosed controllers from exposure to dirt, fumes, water, corrosive substances, and physical damage.
  2. If stored in areas subject to weather, cover enclosed controllers to protect them from weather, dirt, dust, corrosive substances, and physical damage. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside controllers; install temporary electric heating, with at least 250 W per controller **OR** connect factory-installed space heaters to temporary electrical service, **as directed**.
- H. Project Conditions
1. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
    - a. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F (minus 30 deg C) and not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C).
    - b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2010 m).
  2. Interruption of Existing Electrical Systems: Do not interrupt electrical systems in facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:
    - a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical systems.
    - b. Indicate method of providing temporary utilities.
    - c. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical systems without the Owner's written permission.
    - d. Comply with NFPA 70E.





- I. Coordination
  1. Coordinate layout and installation of enclosed controllers with other construction including conduit, piping, equipment, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
  2. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 3.
  3. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Full-Voltage Controllers

1. General Requirements for Full-Voltage Controllers: Comply with NEMA ICS 2, general purpose, Class A.
2. Motor-Starting Switches: "Quick-make, quick-break" toggle or push-button action; marked to show whether unit is off or on.
  - a. Configuration: Nonreversing **OR** Reversing **OR** Two speed, **as directed**.
  - b. Flush **OR** Surface, **as directed**, mounting.
  - c. Red **OR** Green, **as directed**, pilot light.
  - d. Additional Nameplates: FORWARD and REVERSE for reversing switches **OR** HIGH and LOW for two-speed switches, **as directed**.
3. Fractional Horsepower Manual Controllers: "Quick-make, quick-break" toggle or push-button action; marked to show whether unit is off, on, or tripped.
  - a. Configuration: Nonreversing **OR** Two speed, **as directed**.
  - b. Overload Relays: Inverse-time-current characteristics; NEMA ICS 2, Class 10 tripping characteristics; heaters matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor; external reset push button; bimetallic type **OR** melting alloy type, **as directed**.
  - c. Flush **OR** Surface, **as directed**, mounting.
  - d. Red **OR** Green, **as directed**, pilot light.
  - e. Additional Nameplates: HIGH and LOW for two-speed controllers.
4. Integral Horsepower Manual Controllers: "Quick-make, quick-break" toggle or push-button action; marked to show whether unit is off, on, or tripped.
  - a. Configuration: Nonreversing **OR** Reversing **OR** Two speed, **as directed**.
  - b. Overload Relays: Inverse-time-current characteristics; NEMA ICS 2, Class 10 tripping characteristics; heaters and sensors in each phase, matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and having appropriate adjustment for duty cycle; external reset push button; bimetallic type **OR** melting alloy type, **as directed**.
  - c. Flush **OR** Surface, **as directed**, mounting.
  - d. Red **OR** Green, **as directed**, pilot light.
  - e. Additional Nameplates: FORWARD and REVERSE for reversing controllers **OR** HIGH and LOW for two-speed controllers, **as directed**.
  - f. N.O. **OR** N.C., **as directed**, auxiliary contact.
5. Magnetic Controllers: Full voltage, across the line, electrically held.
  - a. Configuration: Nonreversing **OR** Reversing, **as directed**.
  - b. Contactor Coils: Pressure-encapsulated type with coil transient suppressors, **as directed**.
    - 1) Operating Voltage: Depending on contactor NEMA size and line-voltage rating, manufacturer's standard matching control power or line voltage.
  - c. Power Contacts: Totally enclosed, double-break, silver-cadmium oxide; assembled to allow inspection and replacement without disturbing line or load wiring.
  - d. Control Circuits: 24 **OR** 120, **as directed**, -V ac; obtained from integral CPT, with primary and secondary fuses, **as directed**, with CPT **OR** control power source, **as directed**, of sufficient capacity to operate integral devices and remotely located pilot, indicating, and control devices.
    - 1) CPT Spare Capacity: 50 **OR** 100 **OR** 200, **as directed**, VA.
  - e. Melting Alloy Overload Relays:



- 1) Inverse-time-current characteristic.
- 2) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 30, **as directed**, tripping characteristic.
- 3) Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
- f. Bimetallic Overload Relays:
  - 1) Inverse-time-current characteristic.
  - 2) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 30, **as directed**, tripping characteristic.
  - 3) Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
  - 4) Ambient compensated.
  - 5) Automatic resetting.
- g. Solid-State Overload Relay:
  - 1) Switch or dial selectable for motor running overload protection.
  - 2) Sensors in each phase.
  - 3) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 10/20 selectable, **as directed**, tripping characteristic selected to protect motor against voltage and current unbalance and single phasing.
  - 4) Class II ground-fault protection, with start and run delays to prevent nuisance trip on starting.
  - 5) Analog communication module.
- h. N.C. **OR** N.O., **as directed**, isolated overload alarm contact.
- i. External overload reset push button.
6. Combination Magnetic Controller: Factory-assembled combination of magnetic controller, OCPD, and disconnecting means.
  - a. Fusible Disconnecting Means:
    - 1) NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, horsepower-rated, fusible switch with clips or bolt pads to accommodate Class J **OR** Class R **OR** indicated, **as directed**, fuses.
    - 2) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
    - 3) Auxiliary Contacts: N.O./N.C., arranged to activate before switch blades open.
  - b. Nonfusible Disconnecting Means:
    - 1) NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, horsepower-rated, nonfusible switch.
    - 2) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
    - 3) Auxiliary Contacts: N.O./N.C., arranged to activate before switch blades open.
  - c. MCP Disconnecting Means:
    - 1) UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents, instantaneous-only circuit breaker with front-mounted, field-adjustable, short-circuit trip coordinated with motor locked-rotor amperes.
    - 2) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
    - 3) Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with MCP handle.
    - 4) N.C. **OR** N.O., **as directed**, alarm contact that operates only when MCP has tripped.
    - 5) Current-limiting module to increase controller short-circuit current (withstand) rating to 100 kA.
  - d. MCCB Disconnecting Means:
    - 1) UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents; thermal-magnetic MCCB, with inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
    - 2) Front-mounted, adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
    - 3) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
    - 4) Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with MCCB handle.



- 5) N.C. **OR** N.O., **as directed**, alarm contact that operates only when MCCB has tripped.
- B. Reduced-Voltage Magnetic Controllers
1. General Requirements for Reduced-Voltage Magnetic Controllers: Comply with NEMA ICS 2, general purpose, Class A; closed-transition; adjustable time delay on transition.
  2. Reduced-Voltage Magnetic Controllers: Reduced voltage, electrically held.
    - a. Configuration:
      - 1) Wye-Delta Controller: Four contactors, with a three-phase starting resistor/reactor bank.
      - 2) Part-Winding Controller: Separate START and RUN contactors, field-selectable for 1/2- or 2/3-winding start mode, with either six- or nine-lead motors; with separate overload relays for starting and running sequences.
      - 3) Autotransformer Reduced-Voltage Controller: Medium-duty service, with integral overtemperature protection; taps for starting at 50, 65, and 80 percent of line voltage; two START and one RUN contactors.
    - b. Contactor Coils: Pressure-encapsulated type with coil transient suppressors, **as directed**.
      - 1) Operating Voltage: Depending on contactor NEMA size and line-voltage rating, manufacturer's standard matching control power or line voltage.
    - c. Power Contacts: Totally enclosed, double-break, silver-cadmium oxide; assembled to allow inspection and replacement without disturbing line or load wiring.
    - d. Control Circuits: 24 **OR** 120, **as directed**, -V ac; obtained from integral CPT, with primary and secondary fuses, **as directed**, with CPT **OR** control power source, **as directed**, of sufficient capacity to operate integral devices and remotely located pilot, indicating, and control devices.
      - 1) CPT Spare Capacity: 50 **OR** 100 **OR** 200, **as directed**, VA.
    - e. Melting Alloy Overload Relays:
      - 1) Inverse-time-current characteristic.
      - 2) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 30, **as directed**, tripping characteristic.
      - 3) Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
    - f. Bimetallic Overload Relays:
      - 1) Inverse-time-current characteristic.
      - 2) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 30, **as directed**, tripping characteristic.
      - 3) Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
      - 4) Ambient compensated.
      - 5) Automatic resetting.
    - g. Solid-State Overload Relay:
      - 1) Switch or dial selectable for motor running overload protection.
      - 2) Sensors in each phase.
      - 3) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 10/20 selectable, **as directed**, tripping characteristic selected to protect motor against voltage and current unbalance and single phasing.
      - 4) Class II ground-fault protection, with start and run delays to prevent nuisance trip on starting.
      - 5) Analog communication module.
    - h. N.C. **OR** N.O., **as directed**, isolated overload alarm contact.
    - i. External overload reset push button.
  3. Combination Reduced-Voltage Magnetic Controller: Factory-assembled combination of reduced-voltage magnetic controller, OCPD, and disconnecting means.
    - a. Fusible Disconnecting Means:
      - 1) NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, horsepower-rated, fusible switch with clips or bolt pads to accommodate Class J **OR** Class R **OR** indicated, **as directed**, fuses.
      - 2) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.



- 3) Auxiliary Contacts: N.O./N.C., arranged to activate before switch blades open.
  - b. Nonfusible Disconnecting Means:
    - 1) NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, horsepower-rated, nonfusible switch.
    - 2) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
    - 3) Auxiliary Contacts: N.O./N.C., arranged to activate before switch blades open.
  - c. MCP Disconnecting Means:
    - 1) UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents, instantaneous-only circuit breaker with front-mounted, field-adjustable, short-circuit trip coordinated with motor locked-rotor amperes.
    - 2) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
    - 3) Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with MCP handle.
    - 4) N.C. **OR** N.O., **as directed**, alarm contact that operates only when MCP has tripped.
    - 5) Current-limiting module to increase controller short-circuit current (withstand) rating to 100 kA.
  - d. MCCB Disconnecting Means:
    - 1) UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents; thermal-magnetic MCCB, with inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
    - 2) Front-mounted, adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
    - 3) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
    - 4) Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with MCCB handle.
    - 5) N.C. **OR** N.O., **as directed**, alarm contact that operates only when MCCB has tripped.
- C. Reduced-Voltage Solid-State Controllers
1. General Requirements for Reduced-Voltage Solid-State Controllers: Comply with UL 508.
  2. Reduced-Voltage Solid-State Controllers: An integrated unit with power SCRs, heat sink, microprocessor logic board, door-mounted digital display and keypad, bypass contactor, and overload relay; suitable for use with NEMA MG 1, Design B, polyphase, medium induction motors.
    - a. Configuration: Standard duty **OR** Severe duty, **as directed**; nonreversible **OR** reversible, **as directed**.
    - b. Starting Mode: Voltage ramping **OR** Current limit **OR** Torque control **OR** Torque control with voltage boost, **as directed**; field selectable, **as directed**.
    - c. Stopping Mode: Coast to stop **OR** Adjustable torque deceleration **OR** Adjustable braking, **as directed**; field selectable, **as directed**.
    - d. Shorting (Bypass) Contactor: Operates automatically when full voltage is applied to motor, and bypasses the SCRs. Solid-state controller protective features shall remain active when the shorting contactor is in the bypass mode.
    - e. Shorting and Input Isolation, **as directed**, Contactor Coils: Pressure-encapsulated type; manufacturer's standard operating voltage, matching control power or line voltage, depending on contactor size and line-voltage rating. Provide coil transient suppressors, **as directed**.
    - f. Logic Board: Identical for all ampere ratings and voltage classes, with environmental protective coating.
    - g. Control Circuits: 24 **OR** 120, **as directed**, -V ac; obtained from integral CPT, with primary and secondary fuses, **as directed**, with CPT **OR** control power source, **as directed**, of sufficient capacity to operate integral devices and remotely located pilot, indicating, and control devices.
      - 1) CPT Spare Capacity: 100 **OR** 200, **as directed**, VA.



- h. Adjustable acceleration-rate control using voltage or current ramp, and adjustable starting torque control with up to 400 percent current limitation for 20 seconds.
- i. SCR bridge shall consist of at least two SCRs per phase, providing stable and smooth acceleration with **OR** without, **as directed**, external feedback from the motor or driven equipment.
- j. Keypad, front accessible; for programming the controller parameters, functions, and features; shall be manufacturer's standard and include not less than the following functions:
  - 1) Adjusting motor full-load amperes, as a percentage of the controller's rating.
  - 2) Adjusting current limitation on starting, as a percentage of the motor full-load current rating.
  - 3) Adjusting linear acceleration and deceleration ramps, in seconds.
  - 4) Initial torque, as a percentage of the nominal motor torque.
  - 5) Adjusting torque limit, as a percentage of the nominal motor torque.
  - 6) Adjusting maximum start time, in seconds.
  - 7) Adjusting voltage boost, as a percentage of the nominal supply voltage.
  - 8) Selecting stopping mode, and adjusting parameters.
  - 9) Selecting motor thermal overload protection class between 5 and 30.
  - 10) Activating and de-activating protection modes.
  - 11) Selecting or activating communication modes.
- k. Digital display, front accessible; for showing motor, controller, and fault status; shall be manufacturer's standard and include not less than the following:
  - 1) Controller Condition: Ready, starting, running, stopping.
  - 2) Motor Condition: Amperes, voltage, power factor, power, and thermal state.
  - 3) Fault Conditions: Controller thermal fault, motor overload alarm and trip, motor underload, overcurrent, shorted SCRs, line or phase loss, phase reversal, and line frequency over or under normal.
- l. Controller Diagnostics and Protection:
  - 1) Microprocessor-based thermal protection system for monitoring SCR and motor thermal characteristics, and providing controller overtemperature and motor-overload alarm and trip; settings selectable via the keypad.
  - 2) Protection from line-side reverse phasing; line-side and motor-side phase loss; motor jam, stall, and underload conditions; and line frequency over or under normal.
  - 3) Input isolation contactor that opens when the controller diagnostics detect a faulted solid-state component or when the motor is stopped.  
**OR**  
Shunt trip that opens the disconnecting means when the controller diagnostics detect a faulted solid-state component.
- m. Remote Output Features:
  - 1) All outputs prewired to terminal blocks.
  - 2) Form C status contacts that change state when controller is running.
  - 3) Form C alarm contacts that change state when a fault condition occurs.
- n. Optional Features:
  - 1) Analog output for field-selectable assignment of motor operating characteristics; 0 to 10-V dc **OR** 4 to 20-mA dc, **as directed**.
  - 2) Additional field-assignable Form C contacts, as indicated, for alarm outputs.
  - 3) Surge suppressors in solid-state power circuits providing three-phase protection against damage from supply voltage surges 10 percent or more above nominal line voltage.
  - 4) Full-voltage bypass contactor operating automatically **OR** manually, with NORMAL/BYPASS selector switch, **as directed**. Power contacts shall be totally enclosed, double break, and silver-cadmium oxide; and assembled to allow inspection and replacement without disturbing line or load wiring.
  - 5) Melting Alloy Overload Relays:
    - a) Inverse-time-current characteristic.
    - b) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 30, **as directed**, tripping characteristic.



- c) Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
    - 6) Bimetallic Overload Relays:
      - a) Inverse-time-current characteristic.
      - b) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 30, **as directed**, tripping characteristic.
      - c) Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
      - d) Ambient compensated.
      - e) Automatic resetting.
    - 7) Solid-State Overload Relay:
      - a) Switch or dial selectable for motor running overload protection.
      - b) Sensors in each phase.
      - c) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 30, **as directed**, tripping characteristic selected to protect motor against voltage and current unbalance and single phasing.
      - d) Class II ground-fault protection, with start and run delays to prevent nuisance trip on starting.
      - e) Analog communication module.
    - 8) N.C. **OR** N.O., **as directed**, isolated overload alarm contact.
    - 9) External overload reset push button.
- 3. Combination Reduced-Voltage Solid-State Controller: Factory-assembled combination of reduced-voltage solid-state controller, OCPD, and disconnecting means.
  - a. Fusible Disconnecting Means:
    - 1) NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, horsepower-rated, fusible switch with clips or bolt pads to accommodate Class J **OR** Class L **OR** indicated, **as directed**, fuses.
    - 2) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
    - 3) Auxiliary Contacts: N.O./N.C., arranged to activate before switch blades open.
  - b. MCP Disconnecting Means:
    - 1) UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents, instantaneous-only circuit breaker with front-mounted, field-adjustable, short-circuit trip coordinated with motor locked-rotor amperes.
    - 2) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
    - 3) Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with MCP handle.
    - 4) N.C. **OR** N.O., **as directed**, alarm contact that operates only when MCP has tripped.
    - 5) Current-limiting module to increase controller short-circuit current (withstand) rating to 100 kA.
  - c. MCCB Disconnecting Means:
    - 1) UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents; thermal-magnetic MCCB, with inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
    - 2) Front-mounted, adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
    - 3) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
    - 4) Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with MCCB handle.
    - 5) N.C. **OR** N.O., **as directed**, alarm contact that operates only when MCCB has tripped.
  - d. Molded-Case Switch Disconnecting Means:
    - 1) UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with in-line fuse block for Class J or L power fuses (depending on ampere rating), providing an interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents; MCCB with fixed, high-set instantaneous trip only.
    - 2) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.



- 3) Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with molded-case switch handle.
- 4) N.C. **OR** N.O., **as directed**, alarm contact that operates only when molded-case switch has tripped.

D. Multispeed Magnetic Controllers

1. General Requirements for Multispeed Magnetic Controllers: Comply with NEMA ICS 2, general purpose, Class A.
2. Multispeed Magnetic Controllers: Two speed, full voltage, across the line, electrically held.
  - a. Configuration: Nonreversing **OR** Reversing, **as directed**; consequent pole **OR** two winding, **as directed**.
  - b. Contactor Coils: Pressure-encapsulated type with coil transient suppressors, **as directed**.
    - 1) Operating Voltage: Depending on contactor NEMA size and line-voltage rating, manufacturer's standard matching control power or line voltage.
  - c. Power Contacts: Totally enclosed, double break, silver-cadmium oxide; assembled to allow inspection and replacement without disturbing line or load wiring.
  - d. Control Circuits: 24 **OR** 120, **as directed**,-V ac; obtained from integral CPT, with primary and secondary fuses, **as directed**, with CPT **OR** control power source, **as directed**, of sufficient capacity to operate integral devices and remotely located pilot, indicating, and control devices.
    - 1) CPT Spare Capacity: 50 **OR** 100 **OR** 200, **as directed**, VA.
  - e. Compelling relays shall ensure that motor will start only at low speed.
  - f. Accelerating timer relays shall ensure properly timed acceleration through speeds lower than that selected.
  - g. Decelerating timer relays shall ensure automatically timed deceleration through each speed.
  - h. Antiplugging timer relays shall ensure a time delay when transferring from FORWARD to REVERSE and back.
  - i. Melting Alloy Overload Relays:
    - 1) Inverse-time-current characteristic.
    - 2) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 30, **as directed**, tripping characteristic.
    - 3) Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
  - j. Bimetallic Overload Relays:
    - 1) Inverse-time-current characteristic.
    - 2) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 30, **as directed**, tripping characteristic.
    - 3) Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
    - 4) Ambient compensated.
    - 5) Automatic resetting.
  - k. Solid-State Overload Relay:
    - 1) Switch or dial selectable for motor running overload protection.
    - 2) Sensors in each phase.
    - 3) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 10/20 selectable, **as directed**, tripping characteristic selected to protect motor against voltage and current unbalance and single phasing.
    - 4) Class II ground-fault protection, with start and run delays to prevent nuisance trip on starting.
    - 5) Analog communication module.
  - l. N.C. **OR** N.O., **as directed**, isolated overload alarm contact.
  - m. External overload reset push button.
3. Combination Multispeed Magnetic Controller: Factory-assembled combination of reduced-voltage magnetic controller, OCPD, and disconnecting means.
  - a. Fusible Disconnecting Means:
    - 1) NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, horsepower-rated, fusible switch with clips or bolt pads to accommodate Class J **OR** Class R **OR** indicated, **as directed**, fuses.



- 2) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
- 3) Auxiliary Contacts: N.O./N.C., arranged to activate before switch blades open.
- b. Nonfusible Disconnecting Means:
  - 1) NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, horsepower-rated, nonfusible switch.
  - 2) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
  - 3) Auxiliary Contacts: N.O./N.C., arranged to activate before switch blades open.
- c. MCP Disconnecting Means:
  - 1) UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents, instantaneous-only circuit breaker with front-mounted, field-adjustable, short-circuit trip coordinated with motor locked-rotor amperes.
  - 2) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
  - 3) Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with MCP handle.
  - 4) N.C. **OR** N.O., **as directed**, alarm contact that operates only when MCP has tripped.
  - 5) Current-limiting module to increase controller short-circuit current (withstand) rating to 100 kA.
- d. MCCB Disconnecting Means:
  - 1) UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents; thermal-magnetic MCCB, with inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
  - 2) Front-mounted, adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
  - 3) Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
  - 4) Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with MCCB handle.
  - 5) N.C. **OR** N.O., **as directed**, alarm contact that operates only when MCCB has tripped.

#### E. Enclosures

1. Enclosed Controllers: NEMA ICS 6, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
  - a. Dry and Clean Indoor Locations: Type 1.
  - b. Outdoor Locations: Type 3R **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**.
  - c. Kitchen **OR** Wash-Down, **as directed**, Areas: Type 4X, stainless steel.
  - d. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: Type 4.
  - e. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: Type 12.
  - f. Hazardous Areas Indicated on Drawings: Type 7 **OR** Type 9, **as directed**.

#### F. Accessories

1. General Requirements for Control Circuit and Pilot Devices: NEMA ICS 5; factory installed in controller enclosure cover unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Push Buttons, Pilot Lights, and Selector Switches: Heavy **OR** Standard, **as directed**, -duty, oiltight, **as directed**, type.
    - 1) Push Buttons: Covered **OR** Lockable **OR** Recessed **OR** Shielded **OR** Shrouded **OR** Unguarded, **as directed**, types; maintained **OR** momentary, **as directed**, as indicated.
    - 2) Pilot Lights: Incandescent **OR** LED **OR** Neon **OR** Resistor **OR** Transformer, **as directed**, types; colors as indicated; push to test, **as directed**.
    - 3) Selector Switches: Rotary type.
  - b. Elapsed Time Meters: Heavy duty with digital readout in hours; nonresettable **OR** resettable, **as directed**.





- c. Meters: Panel type, 2-1/2-inch (64-mm) minimum size with 90- or 120-degree scale and plus or minus two percent accuracy. Where indicated, provide selector switches with an off position.
2. N.C. **OR** N.O. **OR** Reversible N.C./N.O., **as directed**, auxiliary contact(s).
3. Control Relays: Auxiliary and adjustable pneumatic **OR** solid-state, **as directed**, time-delay relays.
4. Phase-Failure, Phase-Reversal, and Undervoltage and Overvoltage Relays: Solid-state sensing circuit with isolated output contacts for hard-wired connections. Provide adjustable undervoltage, overvoltage, and time-delay settings.
5. Breather and drain assemblies, to maintain interior pressure and release condensation in Type 4 **OR** Type 4X **OR** Type 7 **OR** Type 9, **as directed**, enclosures installed outdoors or in unconditioned interior spaces subject to humidity and temperature swings.
6. Space heaters, with N.C. auxiliary contacts, to mitigate condensation in Type 3R **OR** Type 4X **OR** Type 12, **as directed**, enclosures installed outdoors or in unconditioned interior spaces subject to humidity and temperature swings.
7. Sun shields installed on fronts, sides, and tops of enclosures installed outdoors and subject to direct and extended sun exposure.
8. Cover gaskets for Type 1 enclosures.
9. Terminals for connecting power factor correction capacitors to the line **OR** load, **as directed**, side of overload relays.
10. Spare control wiring terminal blocks, quantity as indicated; unwired **OR** wired, **as directed**.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

1. Examine areas and surfaces to receive enclosed controllers, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
2. Examine enclosed controllers before installation. Reject enclosed controllers that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### B. Installation

1. Wall-Mounted Controllers: Install enclosed controllers on walls with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated, and by bolting units to wall or mounting on lightweight structural-steel channels bolted to wall. For controllers not at walls, provide freestanding racks complying with Division 26 Section "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems".
2. Floor-Mounted Controllers: Install enclosed controllers on 4-inch (100-mm) nominal-thickness concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
  - a. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
  - b. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - c. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - d. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
3. Seismic Bracing: Comply with requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
4. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
5. Install fuses in each fusible-switch enclosed controller.
6. Install fuses in control circuits if not factory installed. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Fuses".
7. Install heaters in thermal overload relays. Select heaters based on actual nameplate full-load amperes after motors have been installed.



8. Install, connect, and fuse thermal-protector monitoring relays furnished with motor-driven equipment.
  9. Install power factor correction capacitors. Connect to the line **OR** load, **as directed**, side of overload relays. If connected to the load side of overload relays, adjust overload heater sizes to accommodate the reduced motor full-load currents.
  10. Comply with NECA 1.
- C. Identification
1. Identify enclosed controllers, components, and control wiring. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
    - a. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
    - b. Label each enclosure with engraved nameplate.
    - c. Label each enclosure-mounted control and pilot device.
- D. Control Wiring Installation
1. Install wiring between enclosed controllers and remote devices and facility's central control system, **as directed**. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Control-voltage Electrical Power Cables".
  2. Bundle, train, and support wiring in enclosures.
  3. Connect selector switches and other automatic-control selection devices where applicable.
    - a. Connect selector switches to bypass only those manual- and automatic-control devices that have no safety functions when switch is in manual-control position.
    - b. Connect selector switches with enclosed-controller circuit in both manual and automatic positions for safety-type control devices such as low- and high-pressure cutouts, high-temperature cutouts, and motor overload protectors.
- E. Field Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
  2. Perform tests and inspections.
  3. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
    - a. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed controller, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
    - b. Test continuity of each circuit.
  4. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. Inspect controllers, wiring, components, connections, and equipment installation. Test and adjust controllers, components, and equipment, **as directed**.
    - b. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed-controller element, component, connecting motor supply, feeder, and control circuits.
    - c. Test continuity of each circuit.
    - d. Verify that voltages at controller locations are within plus or minus 10 percent of motor nameplate rated voltages. If outside this range for any motor, notify the Owner before starting the motor(s).
    - e. Test each motor for proper phase rotation.
    - f. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
    - g. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
    - h. Perform the following infrared (thermographic) scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
      - 1) Initial Infrared Scanning: After Final Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each multi-pole enclosed controller. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
      - 2) Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each multi-pole enclosed controller 11 months after date of Final Completion.



- 3) Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
    - i. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  5. Enclosed controllers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
  6. Prepare test and inspection reports including a certified report that identifies enclosed controllers and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
- F. Adjusting
1. Set field-adjustable switches, auxiliary relays, time-delay relays, timers, and overload-relay pickup and trip ranges.
  2. Adjust overload-relay heaters or settings if power factor correction capacitors are connected to the load side of the overload relays.
  3. Adjust the trip settings of MCPs and thermal-magnetic circuit breakers with adjustable instantaneous trip elements. Initially adjust to six times the motor nameplate full-load ampere ratings and attempt to start motors several times, allowing for motor cooldown between starts. If tripping occurs on motor inrush, adjust settings in increments until motors start without tripping. Do not exceed eight times the motor full-load amperes (or 11 times for NEMA Premium Efficient motors if required). Where these maximum settings do not allow starting of a motor, notify the Owner before increasing settings.
  4. Set the taps on reduced-voltage autotransformer controllers at 50 **OR** 65 **OR** 80, **as directed**, percent.
  5. Set field-adjustable switches and program microprocessors for required start and stop sequences in reduced-voltage solid-state controllers.
  6. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Division 26 Section "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study", **as directed**.
- G. Protection
1. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions until enclosed controllers are ready to be energized and placed into service.
  2. Replace controllers whose interiors have been exposed to water or other liquids prior to Final Completion.
- H. Demonstration
1. Train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain enclosed controllers, and to use and reprogram microprocessor-based, reduced-voltage solid-state controllers, **as directed**.

END OF SECTION 26 24 19 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

**SECTION 26 24 19 00a - POWER DISTRIBUTION UNITS****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for power distribution units. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Summary**

1. This Section includes freestanding, prepackaged, power distribution units for transforming, conditioning, and distributing electrical power.

**C. Definitions**

1. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppression.
2. UPS: Uninterrupted power supply.

**D. Submittals**

1. Product Data: For power distribution units.
2. Shop Drawings: Include dimensioned plans, sections, and elevations. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - a. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that power distribution units, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems". Include the following:
4. Field quality-control test reports.
5. Operation and Maintenance Data: For power distribution units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

**E. Quality Assurance**

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
2. Comply with NFPA 70.

**F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling**

1. Deliver equipment in fully enclosed vehicles after specified environmental conditions have been permanently established in spaces where equipment is to be placed.
2. Store equipment in spaces with environments controlled within manufacturer's ambient temperature and humidity tolerances for non-operating equipment.

**1.2 PRODUCTS****A. Manufactured Units**

1. Description: Integrated and coordinated assembly of power-line-conditioning and distribution components packaged in a single cabinet or modular assembly of cabinets each with full-swivel casters mounted to bottom frame, **as directed**. Include the following components:
  - a. Input-power, circuit-breaker section.
  - b. Isolation transformer.
  - c. TVSS system.
  - d. Output panelboard(s).



- e. Alarm, monitoring, and control system.
  2. Provide units that are constructed to withstand seismic forces specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
  3. Unit Capacity Rating: Unit shall carry indicated rms kilovolt-ampere load continuously without exceeding rated insulation temperature for the following input voltage and load current:
    - a. Input Voltage: Within rated input-voltage tolerance band of unit.
    - b. Load Current: Minimum of 3.0 crest factor and 85 percent total harmonic distortion.
- B. Input-Power, Circuit-Breaker Section
1. Description: 3-pole, shunt-tripped, thermal-magnetic-type circuit breaker, rated for indicated interrupting capacity and 125 percent of input current of unit at 100 percent rated load.
    - a. Dual-Input Units:
      - 1) Two input circuit breakers arranged to provide transfer between two input-voltage sources.
      - 2) Controls and interfaces to allow both open- and closed-transition transfer between two input-voltage sources.
      - 3) Use a 120-V permissive signal from both upstream voltage sources to indicate acceptable conditions for closed-transition transfer.
      - 4) Open second circuit breaker automatically after closed-transition transfer is completed.
- C. Isolation Transformer Section
1. Description: Dry-type, electrostatically shielded, three-phase, common-core, convection-air-cooled isolation transformer.
    - a. Comply with UL 1561 including requirements for nonsinusoidal load-current-handling capability defined by designated K-factor, **as directed**.
    - b. Cores: Grain-oriented, non-aging silicon steel, one leg per phase.
    - c. Coil Material and Insulation: Copper windings with a 220 deg C insulation class.
    - d. Temperature Rise: Designed for 80 **OR** 115 **OR** 150, **as directed**, deg C rise above 40 deg C ambient.
    - e. Output Impedance: 3.5 plus or minus 0.5 percent.
    - f. Regulation: 2 to 4 percent maximum, at full-resistive load; 5 percent maximum, at rated nonlinear load.
    - g. Taps: 6 full-capacity compensation taps at 2.5 percent increments; 2 above and 4 below nominal voltage.
    - h. Full-Load Efficiency: Minimum 96 percent at rated nonlinear, **as directed**, load.
    - i. Magnetic-Field Strength External to Transformer Enclosure: Less than 0.1 gauss at 450 mm.
    - j. Audible Noise: Comply with NEMA ST 20.
    - k. Electrostatic Shielding: Independently shield each winding with a double-copper, electrostatic shield arranged to minimize interwinding capacitance.
      - 1) Coil leads and terminal trips shall be arranged to minimize capacitive coupling between input and output connections.
      - 2) Shield Terminal: Separate, and marked "Shield" for grounding connection.
      - 3) Capacitance: Limit capacitance between primary and secondary windings to a maximum of 33 picofarads over a frequency range of 20 Hz to 1 MHz.
      - 4) Common-Mode Noise Attenuation: 120 dB minimum, 0.5 to 1.5 kHz; minus 65 dB minimum, 1.5 to 100 kHz.
      - 5) Normal-Mode Noise Attenuation: Minus 52 dB minimum, 1.5 to 10 kHz.
    - l. Neutral Rating: 1.732 times the system full-load ampere rating.
- D. TVSS System
1. Description: Integrated TVSS system complying with Division 26 Section "Transient-voltage Suppression For Low-voltage Electrical Power Circuits", to protect unit panelboard, and having the following features:



- a. Disconnect Device: Manual, three-pole, fused disconnect switch to de-energize TVSS system while permitting power distribution units to continue operation. Fuses are rated at 200-kA interrupting capacity.
  - b. Nonlinear Loading: System shall accommodate rated-load current with a minimum 3.0 crest factor and 85 percent total harmonic distortion.
- E. Output Panelboards
1. Description: Panelboards complying with Division 26 Section "Panelboards", except for mounting provisions. Mount in front of power distribution units behind flush doors. Include the following features:
    - a. Construction: 42 pole, 240 V, 3 phase; capable of accepting branch circuit breakers rated to 100 A.
    - b. Panelboard Rating: 225 A, with main circuit breaker.
    - c. Panelboard Phase, Neutral and Ground Buses: Copper, with neutral bus at least 1.732 times the nominal phase bus rating.
    - d. Isolated Ground Bus: Copper, adequate for branch-circuit equipment ground conductors; insulated from supports.
    - e. Branch Circuit Breakers: Bolt **OR** Plug, **as directed**, on.
    - f. Cable Racks: Removable and arranged for supporting and routing cables for panelboard entrance.
    - g. Access Panels: Arranged so additional branch-circuit wiring can be installed and connected in the future.
- F. Power Distribution Unit Controls
1. Include the following control features:
    - a. Emergency, power-off switch integral with power distribution unit.
    - b. Emergency, power-off input terminals for connection to remote power-off switch.
    - c. Over-under alarm shutdown with automatic unit disconnection for the following alarm conditions:
      - 1) High temperature.
      - 2) High and low input or output voltage.
      - 3) Phase loss.
      - 4) Ground fault.
      - 5) Reverse phase rotation.
    - d. Ground-fault protection with automatic system shutdown.
    - e. Alarm Contacts: Electrically isolated, Form C (one normally open and one normally closed), summary alarm; contact set shall change state if any monitored function goes into alarm mode.
    - f. Remote Power-Off Control: Control circuit with connection to shunt trip of power distribution unit main power circuit breaker and terminals for connection to one or more remote power-off, push-button stations.
- G. Monitoring, Status, And Alarm Annunciation
1. Description: Microprocessor-based monitoring, status, and alarm annunciation panel mounted flush in front of power distribution unit to provide status display and failure-indicating interface for the following:
    - a. Power Monitoring:
      - 1) Input Voltage: Line to line, rms.
      - 2) Output Voltage: Line to line, rms.
      - 3) Output Voltage: Line to neutral, rms.
      - 4) Output current.
    - b. Status Indication: Unit on.
    - c. Alarm Annunciation:
      - 1) High temperature.
      - 2) High and low input voltage.
      - 3) High and low output voltage.



- 4) Phase loss.
  - 5) Ground fault.
  - 6) Frequency.
  - 7) Phase rotation.
  - 8) TVSS module failure.
- d. Audible Alarm and Silencing Switch: Alarm sounds when alarm indication occurs. Silencing switch shall silence audible alarm but leave visual indication active until failure or other alarm conditions are corrected.

#### H. Sound Level

1. General: Fully assembled products comply with minimum sound-level requirements in NEMA ST 20 for transformers of corresponding ratings when factory tested according to IEEE C57.12.91.
2. General: Fully assembled products have a minimum of 3 dB less than the maximum sound levels prescribed for transformers of corresponding ratings when factory tested according to IEEE C57.12.91.

#### I. Finishes

1. Manufacturer's standard finish over corrosion-resistant pretreatment and primer.

#### J. Source Quality Control

1. Factory Tests: Design and routine tests shall comply with referenced standards.
2. Factory Sound-Level Tests: Conduct sound-level tests on equipment. Comply with IEEE C57.12.91 and NEMA ST 20.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation

1. Arrange power distribution units to provide adequate access to equipment and circulation of cooling air.
2. Anchor or restrain floor-mounting power distribution units according to manufacturer's written instructions, seismic codes applicable to Project, **as directed**, and requirements in Division 26 Section "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems".
3. Identify equipment and install warning signs according to Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".

#### B. Connections

1. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
  - a. Separately Derived Systems: Make grounding connections to grounding electrodes as indicated; comply with NFPA 70.
2. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".

#### C. Field Quality Control

1. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
2. Tests and Inspections:
  - a. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification for circuit breakers, molded case; and for transformers, dry type, air cooled, low voltage, small. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - b. Perform functional tests of power distribution units throughout their operating ranges. Test each monitoring, status, and alarm function.
  - c. Infrared Scanning: Two months after Final Completion, perform an infrared scan of conductor and bus connections.





- 1) Use an infrared-scanning device designed to measure temperature or detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide documentation of device calibration.
  - 2) Perform 2 follow-up infrared scans of transformers, one at 4 months and the other at 11 months after Final Completion.
  - 3) Prepare a certified report identifying connections checked and describing results of scanning. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and scanning observations after remedial action.
3. Test Labeling: On completion of satisfactory testing of each unit, attach a dated and signed "Satisfactory Test" label to tested component.
- D. Adjusting
1. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
  2. Adjust power distribution units to provide optimum voltage to equipment served throughout normal operating cycle of loads served. Record input and output voltages and adjustment settings, and incorporate into test results.
- E. Cleaning
1. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning.

END OF SECTION 26 24 19 00a



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
26 24 19 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
26 24 19 00	26 09 23 00b	Electrical Power Monitoring And Control
26 24 19 00	26 11 16 00	Switchgear
26 24 19 00	26 09 23 00c	Motor-Control Centers



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 26 25 00 00 - ENCLOSED BUS ASSEMBLIES**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for enclosed bus assemblies. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Feeder-bus assemblies.
  - b. Plug-in bus assemblies.
  - c. Bus plug-in devices.

## C. Definitions

1. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppressor.

## D. Submittals

1. Shop Drawings: For each type of bus assembly **OR** bus assembly and plug-in device, **as directed**.
  - a. Show fabrication and installation details for enclosed bus assemblies. Include plans, elevations, and sections of components. Designate components and accessories, including clamps, brackets, hanger rods, connectors, straight lengths, and fittings.
  - b. Show fittings, materials, fabrication, and installation methods for listed fire-stop barriers and weather barriers.
  - c. Indicate required clearances, method of field assembly, and location and size of each field connection.
  - d. Detail connections to switchgear, switchboards, transformers, and panelboards.
  - e. Wiring Diagrams: Power and signal **OR** and control, **OR** signal, and control, **as directed**, wiring.
  - f. Seismic-Restraint Details: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
    - 1) Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints.
    - 2) Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
2. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans and sections, drawn to scale. Include scaled bus-assembly layouts and relationships between components and adjacent structural, mechanical, and electrical elements. Show the following:
  - a. Vertical and horizontal enclosed bus-assembly runs, offsets, and transitions.
  - b. Clearances for access above and to the side of enclosed bus assemblies.
  - c. Vertical elevation of enclosed bus assemblies above the floor or bottom of structure.
  - d. Support locations, type of support, and weight on each support.
3. Location of adjacent construction elements including light fixtures, HVAC and plumbing equipment, fire sprinklers and piping, signal and control devices, and other equipment.
4. Product Certificates: For each type of enclosed bus assembly, signed by product manufacturer.
5. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that enclosed bus assemblies, plug-in devices, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems" Include the following:
  - a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
    - 1) The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."



- 2) The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
  - b. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  - c. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
6. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.
7. Field quality-control test reports.
8. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed bus assemblies to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - a. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Person currently certified by the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 1.3.
2. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed bus assemblies and plug-in devices through one source from a single manufacturer.
4. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
5. Comply with NEMA BU 1, "Busways."
6. Comply with NFPA 70.

#### F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver, store, and handle enclosed bus assemblies according to NEMA BU 1.1, "General Instructions for Proper Handling, Installation, Operation and Maintenance of Busway Rated 600 Volts or Less."

#### G. Project Conditions

1. Derate enclosed bus assemblies for continuous operation at indicated ampere ratings for ambient temperature not exceeding 122 deg F (50 deg C) **OR** 140 deg F (60 deg C), **as directed**.

#### H. Coordination

1. Coordinate layout and installation of enclosed bus assemblies and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or floors or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.
2. Coordinate size and location of concrete curbs around openings for vertical bus. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 31.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Enclosed Bus Assemblies

1. Feeder-Bus Assemblies: NEMA BU 1, low-impedance bus assemblies in nonventilated housing; single-bolt joints; ratings as indicated.
  - a. Seismic Fabrication Requirements: Fabricate mounting provisions and attachments for feeder-bus assemblies with reinforcement strong enough to withstand seismic forces



- defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems" when mounting provisions and attachments are anchored to building structure
- b. Voltage: 120/208 **OR** 240 **OR** 480 **OR** 277/480, **as directed**, V; 3 phase; 100 **OR** 200 **OR** percent neutral capacity, **as directed**.
  - c. Temperature Rise: 55 deg C above 40 deg C ambient maximum for continuous rated current.
  - d. Bus Materials: Current-carrying copper **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, conductors, fully insulated with Class 130C insulation except at joints; plated surface at joints.
  - e. Ground:
    - 1) 50 percent capacity integral with housing.
    - 2) 50 percent capacity internal bus bars of material matching bus material.
    - 3) 50 percent capacity isolated, internal bus bar of material matching bus material.
  - f. Enclosure: Steel with manufacturer's standard finish **OR** Aluminum with manufacturer's standard finish **OR** Weatherproof, steel or aluminum with manufacturer's standard finish, sealed seams, drains, and removable closures, **as directed**.
  - g. Fittings and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard.
  - h. Mounting: Arranged flat, edgewise, or vertically without derating.
2. Plug-in Bus Assemblies: NEMA BU 1, low-impedance bus assemblies in nonventilated housing; single-bolt joints; ratings as indicated.
- a. Seismic Fabrication Requirements: Fabricate mounting provisions and attachments for switchboards with reinforcement strong enough to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems" when mounting provisions and attachments are anchored to building structure.
  - b. Voltage: 120/208 **OR** 240 **OR** 480 **OR** 277/480, **as directed**, V; 3 phase; 100 **OR** 200 **OR** percent neutral capacity, **as directed**.
  - c. Temperature Rise: 55 deg C above 40 deg C ambient maximum for continuous rated current.
  - d. Bus Materials: Current-carrying copper **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, conductors, fully insulated with Class 130C insulation except at stabs and joints; plated surface at stabs and joints.
  - e. Ground:
    - 1) 50 percent capacity integral with housing.
    - 2) 50 percent capacity internal bus bar of material matching bus material.
    - 3) 50 percent capacity isolated, internal bus bar of material matching bus material.
  - f. Enclosure: Steel, with manufacturer's standard finish, plug-in openings 24 inches (610 mm) o.c., and hinged covers over unused openings **OR** Aluminum, with manufacturer's standard finish, plug-in openings 24 inches (610 mm) o.c., and hinged covers over unused openings, **as directed**.
  - g. Fittings and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard.
  - h. Mounting: Arranged flat, edgewise, or vertically without derating.
- B. Plug-In Devices
1. Fusible Switches: NEMA KS 1, heavy duty; with R-type rejection **OR** J-type **OR** L-type, **as directed**, fuse clips to accommodate specified fuses; hookstick-operated handle, lockable with two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position. See Division 16 Section "Fuses" for fuses and fuse installation requirements.
  2. Molded-Case Circuit Breakers: NEMA AB 1; hookstick-operated handle, lockable with two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
  3. TVSS: NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure with NEMA KS 1, fusible, disconnect switch and external handle to isolate TVSS from busway. TVSS product and installation requirements are specified in Division 16 Section "Transient Voltage Suppression."
  4. Motor Controllers: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, full voltage, nonreversing, across the line, unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Control Circuit: 120 V; obtained from integral control power transformer, **as directed**, with a control power transformer **OR** source, **as directed**, of enough capacity to operate connected pilot, indicating and control devices, plus 100 percent spare capacity.



- b. Combination Controller: Factory-assembled combination controller and disconnect switch with or without overcurrent protection as indicated.
  - 1) Fusible Disconnecting Means: NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, fusible switch with R-type rejection **OR** J-type, **as directed**, fuse clips rated for fuses. Select and size fuses to provide Type 2 protection according to IEC 947-4-1, as certified by a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. See Division 26 Section "Fuses" for fuses and fuse installation requirements.  
**OR**  
Nonfusible Disconnecting Means: NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, nonfusible switch.  
**OR**  
Circuit-Breaker Disconnecting Means: NEMA AB 1, motor-circuit protector with field-adjustable, short-circuit trip coordinated with motor locked-rotor amperes.
- c. Overload Relay: Ambient-compensated type with inverse-time-current characteristic and NEMA ICS 2, Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 30, **as directed**, tripping characteristic. Overload relays shall have heaters or sensors in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of specific motor to which they connect and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
- d. Adjustable Overload Relay: Dipswitch selected for motor running overload protection with NEMA ICS 2, Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 30, **as directed**, tripping characteristic, and selected to protect motor against voltage and current unbalance and single phasing. Adjustable overload relays shall have Class II ground-fault protection with start and run delays to prevent nuisance trip on starting.
- 5. Multispeed Motor Controllers: Match controller to motor type, application, and number of speeds; include the following accessories:
  - a. Compelling relay ensures motor starts only at low speed.
  - b. Accelerating relay ensures properly timed acceleration through speeds lower than that selected.
  - c. Decelerating relay ensures automatically timed deceleration through each speed.
- 6. Accessories: Hookstick operator, adjustable to maximum extension of 14 feet (4.3 m), **as directed**.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation

- 1. Support bus assemblies independent of supports for other elements such as equipment enclosures at connections to panelboards and switchboards, pipes, conduits, ceilings, and ducts.
  - a. Design each fastener and support to carry load indicated by seismic requirements and to comply with seismic-restraint details according to Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
  - b. Design each fastener and support to carry 200 lb (90 kg) or 4 times the weight of bus assembly, whichever is greater.
  - c. Support bus assembly to prevent twisting from eccentric loading.
  - d. Support bus assembly with not less than 3/8-inch (10-mm) steel rods. Install side bracing to prevent swaying or movement of bus assembly. Modify supports after completion to eliminate strains and stresses on bus bars and housings.
  - e. Fasten supports securely to building structure according to Division 26 Section "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems".
- 2. Install expansion fittings at locations where bus assemblies cross building expansion joints. Install at other locations so distance between expansion fittings does not exceed manufacturer's recommended distance between fittings.
- 3. Construct rated fire-stop assemblies where bus assemblies penetrate fire-rated elements such as walls, floors, and ceilings. Seal around penetrations according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping".





4. Install weatherseal fittings and flanges where bus assemblies penetrate exterior elements such as walls or roofs. Seal around openings to make weathertight. See Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and application.
  5. Install a concrete curb at least 4 inches (100 mm) high around bus-assembly floor penetrations.
  6. Coordinate bus-assembly terminations to equipment enclosures to ensure proper phasing, connection, and closure.
  7. Tighten bus-assembly joints with torque wrench or similar tool recommended by bus-assembly manufacturer. Tighten joints again after bus assemblies have been energized for 30 days.
  8. Install bus-assembly, plug-in units. Support connecting conduit independent of plug-in unit.
- B. Connections
1. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
  2. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".
- C. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
  2. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  3. Remove and replace units that do not pass tests and inspections and retest as specified above.
  4. Infrared Scanning: Two months after Final Completion, perform an infrared scan of bus assembly including joints and plug-in units.
    - a. Use an infrared-scanning device designed to measure temperature or detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide documentation of device calibration.
    - b. Perform 2 follow-up infrared scans of bus assembly, one at 4 months and the other at 11 months after Final Completion.
    - c. Prepare a certified report identifying bus assembly checked and describing results of scanning. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and scanning observations after remedial action.
  5. Test Labeling: On completion of satisfactory testing of each unit, attach a dated and signed "Satisfactory Test" label to tested component.
- D. Adjusting
1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges and overload relay trip settings, **as directed**, as indicated.
- E. Cleaning
1. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning.
- F. Protection
1. Provide final protection to ensure that moisture does not enter bus assembly.

END OF SECTION 26 25 00 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
26 25 00 00	01 51 13 00	Electrical Renovation
26 27 13 00	26 05 26 00b	Overhead Electrical Distribution
26 27 16 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
26 27 16 00	01 51 13 00	Electrical Renovation
26 27 16 00	26 05 33 16	Raceways And Boxes
26 27 16 00	26 09 23 00b	Electrical Power Monitoring And Control
26 27 16 00	26 09 23 00c	Motor-Control Centers
26 27 23 00	26 05 33 16a	Wiring Devices
26 27 26 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
26 27 26 00	01 51 13 00	Electrical Renovation
26 27 26 00	26 05 33 16	Raceways And Boxes
26 27 26 00	26 05 33 16a	Wiring Devices
26 27 26 00	26 09 23 00b	Electrical Power Monitoring And Control
26 27 26 00	26 24 19 00	Enclosed Controllers
26 27 33 00	26 24 19 00a	Power Distribution Units
26 27 73 00	26 05 33 16a	Wiring Devices



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

**SECTION 26 28 13 00 - FUSES****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for fuses. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Summary**

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Cartridge fuses rated 600-V ac and less for use in control circuits, enclosed switches, panelboards, switchboards, enclosed controllers, and motor-control centers.
  - b. Plug fuses rated 125-V ac and less for use in plug-fuse-type enclosed switches, fuseholders, and panelboards.
  - c. Plug-fuse adapters for use in Edison-base, plug-fuse sockets.
  - d. Spare-fuse cabinets.

**C. Submittals**

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Operation and maintenance data.

**D. Quality Assurance**

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with NEMA FU 1 for cartridge fuses.
3. Comply with NFPA 70.
4. Comply with UL 248-11 for plug fuses.

**E. Project Conditions**

1. Where ambient temperature to which fuses are directly exposed is less than 40 deg F (5 deg C) or more than 100 deg F (38 deg C), apply manufacturer's ambient temperature adjustment factors to fuse ratings.

**1.2 PRODUCTS****A. Cartridge Fuses**

1. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, nonrenewable cartridge fuses with voltage ratings consistent with circuit voltages.

**B. Plug Fuses**

1. Characteristics: UL 248-11, nonrenewable plug fuses; 125-V ac.

**C. Plug-Fuse Adapters**

1. Characteristics: Adapters for using Type S, rejection-base plug fuses in Edison-base fuseholders or sockets; ampere ratings matching fuse ratings; irremovable once installed.

**D. Spare-Fuse Cabinet**

1. Characteristics: Wall-mounted steel unit with full-length, recessed piano-hinged door and key-coded cam lock and pull.
  - a. Size: Adequate for storage of spare fuses specified with 15 percent spare capacity minimum.



- b. Finish: Gray, baked enamel.
- c. Identification: "SPARE FUSES" in 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high letters on exterior of door.
- d. Fuse Pullers: For each size of fuse, where applicable and available, from fuse manufacturer.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Fuse Applications

1. Cartridge Fuses:
  - a. Service Entrance: Class L, fast acting **OR** Class L, time delay **OR** Class RK1, fast acting **OR** Class RK1, time delay **OR** Class J, fast acting **OR** Class J, time delay **OR** Class T, fast acting, **as directed**.
  - b. Feeders: Class L, fast acting **OR** Class L, time delay **OR** Class RK1, fast acting **OR** Class RK1, time delay **OR** Class RK5, fast acting **OR** Class RK5, time delay **OR** Class J, fast acting **OR** Class J, time delay, **as directed**.
  - c. Motor Branch Circuits: Class RK1 **OR** Class RK5, **as directed**, time delay.
  - d. Other Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay **OR** Class RK5, time delay **OR** Class J, fast acting **OR** Class J, time delay, **as directed**.
  - e. Control Circuits: Class CC, fast acting **OR** time delay, **as directed**.
2. Plug Fuses:
  - a. Motor Branch Circuits: Edison-base type, dual **OR** Edison-base type, single **OR** Type S, dual **OR** Type S, single, **as directed**, -element time delay.
  - b. Other Branch Circuits: Edison-base type, single-element fast acting **OR** Edison-base type, dual-element time delay **OR** Edison-base type, single-element time delay **OR** Type S, dual-element time delay **OR** Type S, single-element time delay, **as directed**.

#### B. Installation

1. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.
2. Install plug-fuse adapters in Edison-base fuseholders and sockets. Ensure that adapters are irremovable once installed.
3. Install spare-fuse cabinet(s).

#### C. Identification

1. Install labels complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems" and indicating fuse replacement information on inside door of each fused switch and adjacent to each fuse block, socket, and holder.

END OF SECTION 26 28 13 00



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
26 28 13 00	26 11 16 00	Switchgear
26 28 16 00	01 51 13 00	Electrical Renovation
26 29 13 13	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
26 29 13 13	01 51 13 00	Electrical Renovation
26 29 13 13	26 24 19 00	Enclosed Controllers



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



**SECTION 26 29 23 00 - VARIABLE FREQUENCY CONTROLLERS**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for variable frequency controllers. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. Section includes separately enclosed, pre-assembled, combination VFCs, rated 600 V and less, for speed control of three-phase, squirrel-cage induction motors.

## C. Definitions

1. BAS: Building automation system.
2. CE: Conformite Europeene (European Compliance).
3. CPT: Control power transformer.
4. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
5. IGBT: Insulated-gate bipolar transistor.
6. LAN: Local area network.
7. LED: Light-emitting diode.
8. MCP: Motor-circuit protector.
9. NC: Normally closed.
10. NO: Normally open.
11. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.
12. PCC: Point of common coupling.
13. PID: Control action, proportional plus integral plus derivative.
14. PWM: Pulse-width modulated.
15. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
16. TDD: Total demand (harmonic current) distortion.
17. THD(V): Total harmonic voltage demand.
18. VFC: Variable-frequency motor controller.

## D. Performance Requirements

1. Seismic Performance: VFCs shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

## E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type and rating of VFC indicated. Include features, performance, electrical ratings, operating characteristics, shipping and operating weights, and furnished specialties and accessories.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit EA 5: For continuous metering equipment for energy consumption.
3. Shop Drawings: For each VFC indicated. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, and sections; and conduit entry locations and sizes, mounting arrangements, and details, including required clearances and service space around equipment.
  - a. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings. Include the following:
    - 1) Each installed unit's type and details.
    - 2) Factory-installed devices.



- 3) Enclosure types and details.
  - 4) Nameplate legends.
  - 5) Short-circuit current (withstand) rating of enclosed unit.
  - 6) Features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of each VFC and installed devices.
  - 7) Specified modifications.
- b. Schematic and Connection Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Harmonic Analysis Study and Report: Comply with IEEE 399 and NETA Acceptance Testing Specification; identify the effects of nonlinear loads and their associated harmonic contributions on the voltages and currents throughout the electrical system. Analyze possible **OR** designated, **as directed**, operating scenarios, including recommendations for VFC input filtering to limit TDD and THD(V) at each VFC **OR** at the defined PCC, **as directed**, to specified levels.
  5. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, drawn to scale, showing dimensioned layout, required working clearances, and required area above and around VFCs. Show VFC layout and relationships between electrical components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements. Show support locations, type of support, and weight on each support. Indicate field measurements.
  6. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
  7. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For VFCs, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
    - a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
    - b. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
    - c. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based, and their installation requirements.
  8. Product Certificates: For each VFC, from manufacturer.
  9. Source quality-control reports.
  10. Field quality-control reports.
  11. Operation and Maintenance Data: For VFCs to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Include the following:
    - a. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting thermal-magnetic circuit breaker and MCP trip settings.
    - b. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable overload relays.
    - c. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing, adjusting, and reprogramming microprocessor control modules.
    - d. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable timers, controls, and status and alarm points.
  12. Load-Current and Overload-Relay Heater List: Compile after motors have been installed, and arrange to demonstrate that selection of heaters suits actual motor nameplate, full-load currents.
  13. Load-Current and List of Settings of Adjustable Overload Relays: Compile after motors have been installed and arrange to demonstrate that switch settings for motor-running overload protection suit actual motors to be protected.
- F. Quality Assurance
1. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.
    - a. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.
  2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  3. Comply with NFPA 70.
  4. IEEE Compliance: Fabricate and test VFC according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
- G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling



1. If stored in space that is not permanently enclosed and air conditioned, remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside controllers and install temporary electric heating, with at least 250 W per controller **OR** connect factory-installed space heaters to temporary electrical service, **as directed**.

#### H. Project Conditions

1. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation, capable of driving full load without derating, under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
  - a. Ambient Temperature: Not less than 14 deg F (minus 10 deg C) and not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C).
  - b. Ambient Storage Temperature: Not less than minus 4 deg F (minus 20 deg C) and not exceeding 140 deg F (60 deg C)
  - c. Humidity: Less than 95 percent (noncondensing).
  - d. Altitude: Not exceeding 3300 feet (1005 m).
2. Interruption of Existing Electrical Systems: Do not interrupt electrical systems in facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:
  - a. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical systems.
  - b. Indicate method of providing temporary electrical service.
  - c. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical systems without Owner's written permission.
  - d. Comply with NFPA 70E.
3. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for VFCs, including clearances between VFCs, and adjacent surfaces and other items.

#### I. Coordination

1. Coordinate features of motors, load characteristics, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
  - a. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
  - b. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
  - c. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.
2. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases.
3. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

#### J. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace VFCs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - a. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Final Completion.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Manufactured Units

1. General Requirements for VFCs: Comply with NEMA ICS 7, NEMA ICS 61800-2, and UL 508C.
2. Application: Constant torque and variable torque.
3. VFC Description: Variable-frequency power converter (rectifier, dc bus, and IGBT, PWM inverter) factory packaged in an enclosure, with integral disconnecting means and overcurrent and overload protection; listed and labeled by an NRTL as a complete unit; arranged to provide self-protection, protection, and variable-speed control of one or more three-phase induction motors by adjusting output voltage and frequency.
  - a. Units suitable for operation of NEMA MG 1, Design A and Design B motors as defined by NEMA MG 1, Section IV, Part 30, "Application Considerations for Constant Speed Motors Used on a Sinusoidal Bus with Harmonic Content and General Purpose Motors Used with Adjustable-Voltage or Adjustable-Frequency Controls or Both."



- b. Units suitable for operation of inverter-duty motors as defined by NEMA MG 1, Section IV, Part 31, "Definite-Purpose Inverter-Fed Polyphase Motors."
- c. Listed and labeled for integrated short-circuit current (withstand) rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- 4. Design and Rating: Match load type, such as fans, blowers, and pumps; and type of connection used between motor and load such as direct or through a power-transmission connection.
- 5. Output Rating: Three-phase; 10 to 60 Hz, with voltage proportional to frequency throughout voltage range **OR** 66 Hz, with torque constant as speed changes, **as directed**; maximum voltage equals input voltage.
- 6. Unit Operating Requirements:
  - a. Input AC Voltage Tolerance: Plus 10 and minus 10 **OR** 15, **as directed**, percent of VFC input voltage rating.
  - b. Input AC Voltage Unbalance: Not exceeding 3 **OR** 5, **as directed**, percent.
  - c. Input Frequency Tolerance: Plus or minus 3 percent of VFC frequency rating.
  - d. Minimum Efficiency: 96 **OR** 97, **as directed**, percent at 60 Hz, full load.
  - e. Minimum Displacement Primary-Side Power Factor: 96 **OR** 98, **as directed**, percent under any load or speed condition.
  - f. Minimum Short-Circuit Current (Withstand) Rating: 10 **OR** 22 **OR** 65 **OR** 100, **as directed**, kA.
  - g. Ambient Temperature Rating: Not less than 14 deg F (minus 10 deg C) and not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C).
  - h. Ambient Storage Temperature Rating: Not less than minus 4 deg F (minus 20 deg C) and not exceeding 140 deg F (60 deg C)
  - i. Humidity Rating: Less than 95 percent (noncondensing).
  - j. Altitude Rating: Not exceeding 3300 feet (1005 m).
  - k. Vibration Withstand: Comply with IEC 60068-2-6.
  - l. Overload Capability: 1.1 **OR** 1.5, **as directed**, times the base load current for 60 seconds; minimum of 1.8 times the base load current for three seconds.
  - m. Starting Torque: Minimum 100 percent of rated torque from 3 to 60 Hz.
  - n. Speed Regulation: Plus or minus 5 **OR** 10, **as directed**, percent.
  - o. Output Carrier Frequency: Selectable; 0.5 to 15, **as directed**, kHz.
  - p. Stop Modes: Programmable; includes fast, free-wheel, and dc injection braking.
- 7. Inverter Logic: Microprocessor based, 16 **OR** 32, **as directed**, bit, isolated from all power circuits.
- 8. Isolated Control Interface: Allows VFCs to follow remote-control signal over a minimum 40:1 speed range.
  - a. Signal: Electrical.
  - b. Signal: Pneumatic.
- 9. Internal Adjustability Capabilities:
  - a. Minimum Speed: 5 to 25 percent of maximum rpm.
  - b. Maximum Speed: 80 to 100 percent of maximum rpm.
  - c. Acceleration: 0.1 to 999.9 seconds.
  - d. Deceleration: 0.1 to 999.9 seconds.
  - e. Current Limit: 30 to minimum of 150 percent of maximum rating.
- 10. Self-Protection and Reliability Features:
  - a. Input transient protection by means of surge suppressors to provide three-phase protection against damage from supply voltage surges 10 percent or more above nominal line voltage.
  - b. Loss of Input Signal Protection: Selectable response strategy, including speed default to a percent of the most recent speed, a preset speed, or stop; with alarm.
  - c. Under- and overvoltage trips.
  - d. Inverter overcurrent trips.
  - e. VFC and Motor Overload/Overtemperature Protection: Microprocessor-based thermal protection system for monitoring VFCs and motor thermal characteristics, and for providing



- VFC overtemperature and motor overload alarm and trip; settings selectable via the keypad; NRTL approved.
- f. Critical frequency rejection, with three selectable, adjustable deadbands.
  - g. Instantaneous line-to-line and line-to-ground overcurrent trips.
  - h. Loss-of-phase protection.
  - i. Reverse-phase protection.
  - j. Short-circuit protection.
  - k. Motor overtemperature fault.
11. Automatic Reset/Restart: Attempt three restarts after drive fault or on return of power after an interruption and before shutting down for manual reset or fault correction; adjustable delay time between restart attempts.
  12. Power-Interruption Protection: To prevent motor from re-energizing after a power interruption until motor has stopped, unless "Bidirectional Autospeed Search" feature is available and engaged.
  13. Bidirectional Autospeed Search: Capable of starting VFC into rotating loads spinning in either direction and returning motor to set speed in proper direction, without causing damage to drive, motor, or load.
  14. Torque Boost: Automatically varies starting and continuous torque to at least 1.5 times the minimum torque to ensure high-starting torque and increased torque at slow speeds.
  15. Motor Temperature Compensation at Slow Speeds: Adjustable current fall-back based on output frequency for temperature protection of self-cooled, fan-ventilated motors at slow speeds.
  16. Integral Input Disconnecting Means and OCPD: NEMA AB 1, instantaneous-trip circuit breaker **OR** NEMA AB 1, molded-case switch, with power fuse block and current-limiting fuses **OR** NEMA AB 1, thermal-magnetic circuit breaker **OR** NEMA KS 1, nonfusible switch, with power fuse block and current-limiting fuses **OR** NEMA KS 1, fusible switch, **as directed**, with pad-lockable, door-mounted handle mechanism.
    - a. Disconnect Rating: Not less than 115 percent of VFC input current rating.
    - b. Disconnect Rating: Not less than 115 percent of NFPA 70 motor full-load current rating or VFC input current rating, whichever is larger.
    - c. Auxiliary Contacts: NO/NC, arranged to activate before switch blades open.
    - d. Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with circuit-breaker handle.
    - e. NC **OR** NO, **as directed**, alarm contact that operates only when circuit breaker has tripped.
- B. Controls And Indication
1. Status Lights: Door-mounted LED indicators displaying the following conditions:
    - a. Power on.
    - b. Run.
    - c. Overvoltage.
    - d. Line fault.
    - e. Overcurrent.
    - f. External fault.
  2. Panel-Mounted Operator Station: Manufacturer's standard front-accessible, sealed keypad and plain-English language digital display; allows complete programming, program copying, operating, monitoring, and diagnostic capability.
    - a. Keypad: In addition to required programming and control keys, include keys for HAND, OFF, and AUTO modes.
    - b. Security Access: Provide electronic security access to controls through identification and password with at least three levels of access: View only; view and operate; and view, operate, and service.
      - 1) Control Authority: Supports at least four conditions: Off, local manual control at VFC, local automatic control at VFC, and automatic control through a remote source.
  3. Historical Logging Information and Displays:
    - a. Real-time clock with current time and date.
    - b. Running log of total power versus time.



- c. Total run time.
- d. Fault log, maintaining last four faults with time and date stamp for each.
- 4. Indicating Devices: Digital display and additional readout devices as required, mounted flush in VFC door and connected to display VFC parameters including, but not limited to:
  - a. Output frequency (Hz).
  - b. Motor speed (rpm).
  - c. Motor status (running, stop, fault).
  - d. Motor current (amperes).
  - e. Motor torque (percent).
  - f. Fault or alarming status (code).
  - g. PID feedback signal (percent).
  - h. DC-link voltage (V dc).
  - i. Set point frequency (Hz).
  - j. Motor output voltage (V ac).
- 5. Control Signal Interfaces:
  - a. Electric Input Signal Interface:
    - 1) A minimum of two programmable analog inputs: 0- to 10-V dc **OR** 4- to 20-mA dc **OR** Operator-selectable "x"- to "y"-mA dc, **as directed**.
    - 2) A minimum of six multifunction programmable digital inputs.
  - b. Pneumatic Input Signal Interface: 3 to 15 psig (20 to 104 kPa).
  - c. Remote Signal Inputs: Capability to accept any of the following speed-setting input signals from the BAS or other control systems:
    - 1) 0- to 10-V dc.
    - 2) 4- to 20-mA dc.
    - 3) Potentiometer using up/down digital inputs.
    - 4) Fixed frequencies using digital inputs.
  - d. Output Signal Interface: A minimum of one programmable analog output signal(s) (0- to 10-V dc **OR** 4- to 20-mA dc **OR** operator-selectable "x"- to "y"-mA dc, **as directed**), which can be configured for any of the following:
    - 1) Output frequency (Hz).
    - 2) Output current (load).
    - 3) DC-link voltage (V dc).
    - 4) Motor torque (percent).
    - 5) Motor speed (rpm).
    - 6) Set point frequency (Hz).
  - e. Remote Indication Interface: A minimum of two programmable dry-circuit relay outputs (120-V ac, 1 A) for remote indication of the following:
    - 1) Motor running.
    - 2) Set point speed reached.
    - 3) Fault and warning indication (overtemperature or overcurrent).
    - 4) PID high- or low-speed limits reached.
- 6. PID Control Interface: Provides closed-loop set point, differential feedback control in response to dual feedback signals. Allows for closed-loop control of fans and pumps for pressure, flow, or temperature regulation.
  - a. Number of Loops: One **OR** Two, **as directed**.
- 7. BAS Interface: Factory-installed hardware and software to enable the BAS to monitor, control, and display VFC status and alarms and energy usage. Allows VFC to be used with an external system within a multidrop LAN configuration; settings retained within VFC's nonvolatile memory.
  - a. Network Communications Ports: Ethernet and RS-422/485.
  - b. Embedded BAS Protocols for Network Communications: ASHRAE 135 BACnet **OR** Echelon LonWorks **OR** Johnson Metasys N2 **OR** Modbus/Memobus **OR** Siemens System 600 APOGEE, **as directed**; protocols accessible via the communications ports.

### C. Line Conditioning And Filtering



1. Input Line Conditioning: Based on the harmonic analysis study and report, provide input filtering, as required, to limit TDD at input terminals of all **OR** indicated, **as directed**, VFCs to less than 5 **OR** 8, **as directed**, percent and THD(V) to 3 **OR** 5, **as directed**, percent.  
**OR**  
Input Line Conditioning: Based on the harmonic analysis study and report, provide input filtering, as required, to limit TDD and THD(V) at the defined PCC per IEEE 519.
2. Output Filtering: **<Insert requirements>**.
3. EMI/RFI Filtering: CE marked; certify compliance with IEC 61800-3 for Category C2.

D. Bypass Systems

1. Bypass Operation: Safely transfers motor between power converter output and bypass circuit, manually, automatically, or both. Selector switches set modes and indicator lights indicate mode selected. Unit is capable of stable operation (starting, stopping, and running) with motor completely disconnected from power converter.
2. Bypass Mode: Manual operation only; requires local operator selection at VFC. Transfer between power converter and bypass contactor and retransfer shall only be allowed with the motor at zero speed.  
**OR**  
Bypass Mode: Field-selectable automatic or manual, allows local and remote transfer between power converter and bypass contactor and retransfer, either via manual operator interface or automatic control system feedback.
3. Bypass Controller: Two-contactor-style bypass allows motor operation via the power converter or the bypass controller; with input isolating switch and barrier arranged to isolate the power converter and permit safe troubleshooting and testing, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode.
  - a. Bypass Contactor: Load-break, IEC **OR** NEMA **as directed**, -rated contactor.
  - b. Output Isolating Contactor: Non-load-break, IEC **OR** NEMA, **as directed**, -rated contactor.
  - c. Isolating Switch: Non-load-break switch arranged to isolate power converter and permit safe troubleshooting and testing of the power converter, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode; pad-lockable, door-mounted handle mechanism.**OR**  
Bypass Controller: Three-contactor-style bypass allows motor operation via the power converter or the bypass controller; with input isolating switch and barrier arranged to isolate the power converter input and output and permit safe testing and troubleshooting of the power converter, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode.
  - a. Bypass Contactor: Load-break, IEC **OR** NEMA, **as directed**, -rated contactor.
  - b. Input and Output Isolating Contactors: Non-load-break, IEC **OR** NEMA, **as directed**, -rated contactors.
  - c. Isolating Switch: Non-load-break switch arranged to isolate power converter and permit safe troubleshooting and testing of the power converter, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode; pad-lockable, door-mounted handle mechanism.
4. Bypass Contactor Configuration: Full-voltage (across-the-line) **OR** Reduced-voltage (autotransformer), **as directed**, type.
  - a. NORMAL/BYPASS selector switch.
  - b. HAND/OFF/AUTO selector switch.
  - c. NORMAL/TEST Selector Switch: Allows testing and adjusting of VFC while the motor is running in the bypass mode.
  - d. Contactor Coils: Pressure-encapsulated type with coil transient suppressors, **as directed**.
    - 1) Operating Voltage: Depending on contactor NEMA size and line-voltage rating, manufacturer's standard matching control power or line voltage.
    - 2) Power Contacts: Totally enclosed, double break, and silver-cadmium oxide; assembled to allow inspection and replacement without disturbing line or load wiring.
  - e. Control Circuits: 120-V ac; obtained from integral CPT, with primary and secondary fuses, with CPT **OR** control power source, **as directed**, of sufficient capacity to operate all integral devices and remotely located pilot, indicating, and control devices.
    - 1) CPT Spare Capacity: 50 **OR** 100 **OR** 200, **as directed**, VA.



- f. Overload Relays: NEMA ICS 2.
- 1) Melting-Alloy Overload Relays:
    - a) Inverse-time-current characteristic.
    - b) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 30, **as directed**, tripping characteristic.
    - c) Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
  - 2) Bimetallic Overload Relays:
    - a) Inverse-time-current characteristic.
    - b) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 30, **as directed**, tripping characteristic.
    - c) Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
    - d) Ambient compensated.
    - e) Automatic resetting.
  - 3) Solid-State Overload Relays:
    - a) Switch or dial selectable for motor-running overload protection.
    - b) Sensors in each phase.
    - c) Class 10 **OR** Class 20 **OR** Class 10/20 selectable, **as directed**, tripping characteristic selected to protect motor against voltage and current unbalance and single phasing.
    - d) Class II ground-fault protection, with start and run delays to prevent nuisance trip on starting.
    - e) Analog communication module.
  - 4) NC **OR** NO, **as directed**, isolated overload alarm contact.
  - 5) External overload reset push button.

#### E. Optional Features

1. Multiple-Motor Capability: VFC suitable for variable-speed service to multiple motors. Overload protection shuts down VFC and motors served by it, and generates fault indications, when overload protection activates.
  - a. Configure to allow two or more motors to operate simultaneously at the same speed; separate overload relay for each controlled motor.  
**OR**  
Configure to allow two motors to operate separately; operator selectable via local or remote switch or contact closures; single overload relay for both motors; separate output magnetic contactors for each motor.  
**OR**  
Configure to allow two motors to operate simultaneously and in a lead/lag mode, with one motor operated at variable speed via the power converter and the other at constant speed via the bypass controller; separate overload relay for each controlled motor.
2. Damper control circuit with end of travel feedback capability.
3. Sleep Function: Senses a minimal deviation of a feedback signal and stops the motor. On an increase in speed-command signal deviation, VFC resumes normal operation.
4. Motor Preheat Function: Preheats motor when idle to prevent moisture accumulation in the motor.
5. Firefighter's Override (Smoke Purge) Input: On a remote contact closure from the firefighter's control station **OR** smoke-control fan controller, **as directed**, this password-protected input:
  - a. Overrides all other local and external inputs (analog/digital, serial communication, and all keypad commands).
  - b. Forces VFC to operate motor, without any other run or speed command, at a field-adjustable, preset speed.  
**OR**  
Forces VFC to transfer to Bypass Mode and operate motor at full speed.
  - c. Causes display of Override Mode on the VFC display.
  - d. Reset VFC to normal operation on removal of override signal automatically **OR** manually, **as directed**.





6. Remote Indicating Circuit Terminals: Mode selection, controller status, and controller fault.
7. Remote digital operator kit.
8. Communication Port: RS-232 port, USB 2.0 port, or equivalent connection capable of connecting a printer and a notebook computer.

F. Enclosures

1. VFC Enclosures: NEMA 250, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
  - a. Dry and Clean Indoor Locations: Type 1.
  - b. Outdoor Locations: Type 3R **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**.
  - c. Kitchen **OR** Wash-Down, **as directed**, Areas: Type 4X, stainless steel.
  - d. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: Type 4.
  - e. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: Type 12.
2. Plenum Rating: UL 1995; NRTL certification label on enclosure, clearly identifying VFC as "Plenum Rated."

G. Accessories

1. General Requirements for Control-Circuit and Pilot Devices: NEMA ICS 5; factory installed in VFC enclosure cover unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Push Buttons, Pilot Lights, and Selector Switches: Heavy **OR** Standard, **as directed**, -duty, oiltight, **as directed**, type.
    - 1) Push Buttons: Covered **OR** Lockable **OR** Recessed **OR** Shielded **OR** Shrouded **OR** Unguarded, **as directed**, types; maintained **OR** momentary, **as directed**.
    - 2) Pilot Lights: Incandescent **OR** LED **OR** Neon **OR** Resistor **OR** Transformer, **as directed**, types; push to test.
    - 3) Selector Switches: Rotary type.
    - 4) Stop and Lockout Push-Button Station: Momentary-break, push-button station with a factory-applied hasp arranged so padlock can be used to lock push button in depressed position with control circuit open.
2. NC **OR** NO **OR** Reversible NC/NO, **as directed**, bypass contactor auxiliary contact(s).
3. Control Relays: Auxiliary and adjustable pneumatic **OR** solid-state, **as directed**, time-delay relays.
4. Phase-Failure, Phase-Reversal, and Undervoltage and Overvoltage Relays: Solid-state sensing circuit with isolated output contacts for hard-wired connections. Provide adjustable undervoltage, overvoltage, and time-delay settings.
  - a. Current Transformers: Continuous current rating, basic impulse insulating level (BIL) rating, burden, and accuracy class suitable for connected circuitry. Comply with IEEE C57.13.
5. Supplemental Analog **OR** Digital, **as directed**, Meters:
  - a. Elapsed-time meter.
  - b. Kilowatt meter.
  - c. Kilowatt-hour meter.
6. Breather and drain assemblies, to maintain interior pressure and release condensation in NEMA 250, Type 4 **OR** Type 4X **OR** Type 12, **as directed**, enclosures installed outdoors or in unconditioned interior spaces subject to humidity and temperature swings.
7. Space heaters, with NC auxiliary contacts, to mitigate condensation in NEMA 250, Type 3R **OR** Type 4X **OR** Type 12, **as directed**, enclosures installed outdoors or in unconditioned interior spaces subject to humidity and temperature swings.
8. Cooling Fan and Exhaust System: For NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 12, **as directed**; UL 508 component recognized: Supply fan, with composite **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, intake and exhaust grills and filters, **as directed**; 120-V ac; obtained from integral CPT.
9. Sun shields installed on fronts, sides, and tops of enclosures installed outdoors and subject to direct and extended sun exposure.
10. Spare control-wiring terminal blocks; unwired **OR** wired, **as directed**.

H. Source Quality Control



1. Testing: Test and inspect VFCs according to requirements in NEMA ICS 61800-2.
  - a. Test each VFC while connected to its specified motor **OR** a motor that is comparable to that for which the VFC is rated, **as directed**.
  - b. Verification of Performance: Rate VFCs according to operation of functions and features specified.
2. VFCs will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
3. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

1. Examine areas, surfaces, and substrates to receive VFCs, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
2. Examine VFC before installation. Reject VFCs that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
3. Examine roughing-in for conduit systems to verify actual locations of conduit connections before VFC installation.
4. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### B. Harmonic Analysis Study

1. Perform a harmonic analysis study to identify the effects of nonlinear loads and their associated harmonic contributions on the voltages and currents throughout the electrical system. Analyze possible **OR** designated, **as directed**, operating scenarios, including recommendations for VFC input filtering to limit TDD and THD(V) at each VFC **OR** at the defined PCC, **as directed**, to specified levels.
2. Prepare a harmonic analysis study and report complying with IEEE 399 and NETA Acceptance Testing Specification.

#### C. Installation

1. Coordinate layout and installation of VFCs with other construction including conduit, piping, equipment, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
2. Wall-Mounting Controllers: Install VFCs on walls with tops at uniform height and with disconnect operating handles not higher than 79 inches (2000 mm) above finished floor unless otherwise indicated, and by bolting units to wall or mounting on lightweight structural-steel channels bolted to wall. For controllers not on walls, provide freestanding racks complying with Division 26 Section "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems".
3. Floor-Mounting Controllers: Install VFCs on 4-inch (100-mm) nominal thickness concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
  - a. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
  - b. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - c. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - d. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
4. Roof-Mounting Controllers: Install VFC on roofs with tops at uniform height and with disconnect operating handles not higher than 79 inches (2000 mm) above finished roof surface unless otherwise indicated, and by bolting units to curbs or mounting on freestanding, lightweight, structural-steel channels bolted to curbs. Seal roof penetrations after raceways are installed.
  - a. Curbs and roof penetrations are specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories".
  - b. Structural-steel channels are specified in Division 26 Section "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems".



5. Seismic Bracing: Comply with requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
  6. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
  7. Install fuses in each fusible-switch VFC.
  8. Install fuses in control circuits if not factory installed. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Fuses".
  9. Install heaters in thermal-overload relays. Select heaters based on actual nameplate full-load amperes after motors have been installed.
  10. Install, connect, and fuse thermal-protector monitoring relays furnished with motor-driven equipment.
  11. Comply with NECA 1.
- D. Identification
1. Identify VFCs, components, and control wiring. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
    - a. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
    - b. Label each VFC with engraved nameplate.
    - c. Label each enclosure-mounted control and pilot device.
  2. Operating Instructions: Frame printed operating instructions for VFCs, including control sequences and emergency procedures. Fabricate frame of finished metal, and cover instructions with clear acrylic plastic. Mount on front of VFC units.
- E. Control Wiring Installation
1. Install wiring between VFCs and remote devices and facility's central-control system, **as directed**. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Control-voltage Electrical Power Cables"
  2. Bundle, train, and support wiring in enclosures.
  3. Connect selector switches and other automatic control devices where applicable.
    - a. Connect selector switches to bypass only those manual- and automatic control devices that have no safety functions when switches are in manual-control position.
    - b. Connect selector switches with control circuit in both manual and automatic positions for safety-type control devices such as low- and high-pressure cutouts, high-temperature cutouts, and motor overload protectors.
- F. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections.
  2. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
    - a. Test insulation resistance for each VFC element, bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
    - b. Test continuity of each circuit.
  3. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. Inspect VFC, wiring, components, connections, and equipment installation. Test and adjust controllers, components, and equipment.
    - b. Test insulation resistance for each VFC element, component, connecting motor supply, feeder, and control circuits.
    - c. Test continuity of each circuit.
    - d. Verify that voltages at VFC locations are within 10 percent of motor nameplate rated voltages. If outside this range for any motor, notify Owner before starting the motor(s).
    - e. Test each motor for proper phase rotation.
    - f. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
    - g. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.



- h. Perform the following infrared (thermographic) scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
    - 1) Initial Infrared Scanning: After Final Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each VFC. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
    - 2) Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each VFC 11 months after date of Final Completion.
    - 3) Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
  - i. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  4. VFCs will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
  5. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies the VFC and describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations made after remedial action.
- G. Startup Service
1. Perform startup service.
    - a. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- H. Adjusting
1. Program microprocessors for required operational sequences, status indications, alarms, event recording, and display features. Clear events memory after final acceptance testing and prior to Final Completion.
  2. Set field-adjustable switches, auxiliary relays, time-delay relays, timers, and overload-relay pickup and trip ranges.
  3. Adjust the trip settings of MCPs and thermal-magnetic circuit breakers with adjustable, instantaneous trip elements. Initially adjust to six times the motor nameplate full-load amperes and attempt to start motors several times, allowing for motor cool-down between starts. If tripping occurs on motor inrush, adjust settings in increments until motors start without tripping. Do not exceed eight times the motor full-load amperes (or 11 times for NEMA Premium Efficient motors if required). Where these maximum settings do not allow starting of a motor, notify Owner before increasing settings.
  4. Set the taps on reduced-voltage autotransformer controllers.
  5. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Division 26 Section "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study".
  6. Set field-adjustable pressure switches.
- I. Protection
1. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions until controllers are ready to be energized and placed into service.
  2. Replace VFCs whose interiors have been exposed to water or other liquids prior to Final Completion.
- J. Demonstration
1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, reprogram, and maintain VFCs.

END OF SECTION 26 29 23 00

**SECTION 26 31 00 00 - PHOTOVOLTAIC ENERGY EQUIPMENT****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for Photovoltaic Energy Equipment. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Summary**

1. Section Includes:
  - a. PV laminates (cells laminated into rigid sheets, with connecting cables).
  - b. PV modules (laminates in mounting frames).
  - c. Charge controllers.
  - d. Inverters.
  - e. Mounting structures.

**C. Definitions**

1. CEC: California Energy Commission.
2. ETFE: Ethylene tetrafluoroethylene.
3. FEP: Fluorinated ethylene propylene.
4. IP Code: Required ingress protection to comply with IEC 60529.
5. MPPT: Maximum power point tracking.
6. PTC: USA standard conditions for PV.
7. PV: Photovoltaic.
8. STC: Standard Test Conditions defined in IEC 61215.

**D. Action Submittals**

1. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - a. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for PV panels.
  - b. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
2. Shop Drawings: For PV modules.
  - a. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
  - b. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - c. Detail fabrication and assembly.
  - d. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

**E. Informational Submittals**

1. Field quality-control reports.
2. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special materials and workmanship warranty and minimum power output warranty.

**F. Closeout Submittals**

1. Operation and Maintenance Data: For PV modules to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

**G. Warranty**



1. Manufacturer's Special Materials and Workmanship Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of PV modules that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - a. Manufacturer's materials and workmanship warranties include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) Faulty operation of PV modules.
  - b. Warranty Period: Two **OR** Five years from date of Final Completion.
2. Manufacturer's Special Minimum Power Output Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of PV modules that fail to exhibit the minimum power output within specified warranty period. Special warranty, applying to modules only, applies to materials only, on a prorated basis, for period specified.
  - a. Manufacturer's minimum power output warranties include, but are not limited to, the following warranty periods, from date of Final Completion:
    - 1) Specified minimum power output to 80 percent or more, for a period of 25 years.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Performance Requirements

1. NRTL (Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory) Listing: Entire assembly shall be listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for electrical and fire safety, Class A **OR** Class C, according to UL 1703.
2. FM approved for NFPA 70, Class 1, Division 2, Group C and Group D hazardous locations.

### B. System Description

1. Grid-Tied PV System:
  - a. Connected via a utility meter to the electrical utility.
  - b. An array of six modules to generate a total nominal 1000 rated W.
  - c. System Components:
    - 1) Cell materials.
    - 2) PV modules.
    - 3) Array frame.
    - 4) Charge controller.
    - 5) Inverter.
    - 6) Overcurrent protection/combiner box.
    - 7) Mounting structure.
    - 8) Utility meter.
2. Battery-Storage PV System:
  - a. Connected to a battery bank to provide electricity to Project.
  - b. An array of six modules to generate a total nominal 1000 rated W.
  - c. System Components:
    - 1) Cell materials.
    - 2) PV modules.
    - 3) Array frame.
    - 4) Charge controller.
    - 5) Inverter.
    - 6) Overcurrent protection/combiner box.
    - 7) Mounting structure.
    - 8) Battery charge controller(s).
    - 9) Batteries.
    - 10) Battery-storage structure.

### C. Manufactured Units

1. Cell Materials: Amorphous silicon (a-Si) **OR** Cell Materials: Copper indium (di)selenide (CIS) **OR** Cell Materials: Copper indium gallium (di)selenide (CIGS) **OR** Cadmium telluride (CdTe) **OR**



- Cadmium sulfide **OR** Polycrystalline (c-Si) **OR** Polycrystalline (Gallium arsenide (GaAs) **OR** Monocrystalline (c-Si) **OR** Monocrystalline (Gallium arsenide (GaAs)), **as directed**.
2. Module Construction:
    - a. Nominal Size: 32 inches (800 mm) wide by 64 inches (1600 mm) long.
    - b. Weight: 42.8 lb (19.4 kg).
  3. Insulating Substrate Film: Flexible **OR** Rigid, polyester **OR** polyimide, **as directed**.
  4. Conducting Substrate Film: Flexible **OR** Rigid **OR** luoropolymer, ETFE **OR** FEP, **as directed**.
  5. Encapsulant: Ethyl vinyl acetate.
  6. Front Panel: Fully tempered glass.
  7. Front Panel: 0.125-inch- (3.2-mm-) thick glass.
  8. Front Panel: Low iron glass.
  9. Front Panel: Antireflective coating glass.
  10. Front Panel: Laminating film.
  11. Front Panel: Laminating material.
  12. Backing Material: Tempered glass.
  13. Backing Material: 0.125-inch- (3.2-mm-) thick glass; color **as directed**.
  14. Backing Material: Polyester film.
    - a. Layers: **as directed**.
    - b. Color: White **OR as directed**.
  15. Backing Material: PVC film.
    - a. Layers: **as directed**.
    - b. Color: White **OR as directed**.
  16. Bypass Diode Protection: Internal.
  17. Junction Box:
    - a. Size: 1.56 by 3.96 by 0.52 inch (39.6 by 100.6 by 13.2 mm).
    - b. Fully potted, vandal resistant.
    - c. IP Code: IP65 **OR** IP66 **OR** IP67, **as directed**.
    - d. Flammability Test: UL 1703.
  18. Output Cabling:
    - a. **0.158 inch (4 mm)**.
    - b. Quick, multiconnect, polarized connectors.
    - c. Two-Conductor Harness: No traditional return wire is needed from the end of a row back to the source combiner.
  19. Series Fuse Rating: **as directed**.
- D. Capacities And Characteristics
1. Minimum Electrical Characteristics:
    - a. Rated Open Circuit Voltage ( $V_{oc}$ ): **as directed**.
    - b. Maximum System Voltage: **as directed**.
    - c. Maximum Power at Voltage ( $V_{pm}$ ): **as directed**.
    - d. Short-Circuit Temperature Coefficient: **as directed**.
    - e. Rated Short-Circuit Current ( $I_{sc}$ ): **as directed**.
    - f. Maximum System: **as directed**.
    - g. Rated Operation Current ( $I_{mp}$ ): **as directed**.
    - h. Maximum Power at STC ( $P_{max}$ ): **as directed**.
  2. Additional Electrical Characteristics:
    - a. PTC Rating: **as directed**.
    - b. Peak Power per Unit Area: **as directed**.
    - c. Tolerance of Pmax: **as directed**.
    - d. Minimum Peak Power: **as directed**.
    - e. Series Fuse Rating: **as directed**.
    - f. Module Efficiency: **as directed**.
    - g. Temperature Cycling Range: **as directed**.
    - h. Humidity, Freeze, Damp Heat Condition: **as directed**.
    - i. Wind Loading or Surface Pressure: **as directed**.
    - j. Maximum Distortion Angle: **as directed**.



- k. Hailstone Impact Withstand: **as directed.**
- l. Series Fuse Rating: **as directed.**
- 3. Normal Operating Temperature Characteristics (NOTC):
  - a. Temperature at Nominal Operating Cell Temperature: **as directed.**
  - b. Temperature Coefficient (NOTC  $P_{max}$ ): **as directed.**
  - c. Temperature Coefficient (NOTC  $V_{oc}$ ): **as directed..**
  - d. Temperature Coefficient (NOTC  $I_{sc}$ ): **as directed.**
  - e. Temperature Coefficient (NOTC  $V_{mp}$ ): **as directed.**
  - f. Temperature Coefficient (NOTC  $I_{mp}$ ): **as directed.**
- E. Module Framing
  - 1. PV laminates mounted in anodized extruded-aluminum frames.
    - a. Entire assembly UL listed for electrical and fire safety, Class A **OR** Class C, according to UL 1703, complying with IEC 61215.
    - b. Frame strength exceeding requirements of certifying agencies in subparagraph above.
    - c. Finish: Anodized aluminum.
      - 1) Alloy and temper recommended by framing manufacturer for strength, corrosion resistance, and application of required finish.
      - 2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations.
    - d. Finish: High-performance organic finish.
      - 1) Fluoropolymer Two-Coat System: Manufacturer's standard two-coat, thermocured system consisting of specially formulated inhibitive primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVC resin by weight.
      - 2) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations.
    - e. Finish: Baked-enamel finish.
      - 1) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations.
- F. Array Construction
  - 1. Framing:
    - a. Material: Extruded aluminum **OR** Galvanized steel **OR** Coated steel, **as directed.**
    - b. Maximum System Weight: Less than 4 lb/sq. ft. (19.53 kg/sq. m).
    - c. Minimum Distance to Connectors: **as directed.**
    - d. Raceway Cover Plates: Plastic **OR** Aluminum **OR** Galvanized steel, **as directed.**
  - 2. Flat-Roof Mounting:
    - a. No roof penetrations.
    - b. Self-ballasting.
    - c. Wind-tunnel tested to 110-mph (160-km/h) wind.
    - d. Service Life: **25** years.
    - e. Freestanding system.
- G. Charge Controller
  - 1. Charge Controller Electrical Characteristics:
    - a. Output Current Rating: **as directed.**
    - b. Nominal Battery Voltage: **as directed.**
    - c. PV Maximum Open Circuit Voltage: **as directed.**
    - d. Equalization Voltage: **as directed.**
    - e. Voltage Step-Down Capability: **as directed.**
    - f. Power Conversion Efficiency: **as directed.**
  - 2. Charge controllers shall have the following:
    - a. Digital display.
    - b. Data logging.
    - c. Remote interface.
    - d. External sensors.
    - e. Temperature compensation.





#### H. Inverter

1. Control Type: Pulse width modulation control.
2. Control Type: Maximum power point tracker control.
3. Inverter Electrical Characteristics:
  - a. Maximum Recommended PV Input Power: **as directed**.
  - b. Maximum Voc: **as directed**.
  - c. PV Start Voltage: **as directed**.
  - d. MPPT Voltage Range: **as directed**.
  - e. Maximum Input Current: **as directed**.
  - f. Number of String Inputs: **as directed**.
  - g. Number of Independent MPPT Circuits: **as directed**.
  - h. Nominal Output Voltage: **as directed**.
  - i. CEC Rated Power: **as directed**.
  - j. Nominal Output Voltage: **as directed**.
  - k. Maximum Output Current: **as directed**.
  - l. Peak Efficiency: **as directed**.
  - m. CEC Weighted Efficiency: **as directed**.
  - n. CEC Night Tare Loss: **as directed**.
  - o. DC/AC Terminal Range (AWG): **as directed**.
  - p. NEMA 250 Enclosure Rating: **as directed**.
4. Operating Conditions:
  - a. Operating Ambient Temperatures: Minus 4 to plus 122 deg F (20 to plus 50 deg C).
  - b. Storage Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 122 deg F (minus 40 to plus 50 deg C).
  - c. Relative Humidity: 0 to 95 percent, noncondensing.
5. Charge controllers shall have the following:
  - a. Overcurrent protection.
  - b. Generator input breaker box.
  - c. Automatic transfer relay.
  - d. Digital display.
  - e. Transformer.
  - f. Disconnect switch.
  - g. Shunt controller.
  - h. Shunt regulator.
  - i. Surge overload protection.
6. Enclosure:
  - a. NEMA 250, Type 3R.
  - b. Enclosure Material: Galvanized steel **OR** Steel, **as directed**.
  - c. Cooling Methods:
    - 1) Fan convection cooling.
    - 2) Passive cooling.
  - d. Protective Functions:
    - 1) AC over/under voltage.
    - 2) AC over/under frequency.
    - 3) Ground over current.
    - 4) Overtemperature.
    - 5) AC and dc overcurrent.
    - 6) DC over voltage.
  - e. Standard liquid crystal display, four lines, 20 characters, with user display and on/off toggle switch.
  - f. Weight: 260 lb (118 kg).
  - g. Dimensions: 54 by 36 by 19 inches (137 by 91 by 48 cm).
7. Disconnects:
  - a. Low-voltage disconnect.
  - b. Low-voltage reconnect.
  - c. High-temperature disconnect.
  - d. High-temperature reconnect.



8. Regulatory Approvals:
  - a. IEEE 1547.1.
  - b. IEEE 1547.3.
  - c. UL 1741.
9. Characteristics:
  - a. Inverter Dimensions: **as directed**.
  - b. Inverter Weight: **as directed**.

I. System Overcurrent Protection

1. Combiner Box:
  - a. Fuses: **as directed**.
  - b. Circuit Breakers: **as directed**.

J. Mounting Structures

1. Roof Mount: Extruded aluminum, two **OR** four rails, **as directed**, tilt legs, and roof standoffs.
2. Pole Mount: Top **OR** Panel tops **OR** Side, **as directed**.
3. Tracking Mounts: One **OR** Two axis, **as directed**.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination

1. Examine substrate areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
2. Do not begin installation until mounting surfaces have been properly prepared.
3. If preparation of mounting surfaces is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.
4. Examine modules and array frame before installation. Reject modules and arrays that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
5. Examine roofs, supports, and supporting structures for suitable conditions where PV system will be installed.
6. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Field Quality Control

1. Perform tests and inspections **with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative**.
2. PV module will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
3. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 26 31 00 00



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
26 31 00 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 26 32 13 13 - PACKAGED ENGINE GENERATORS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for packaged engine generators. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes packaged engine-generator sets for emergency **OR** standby, **as directed**, power supply with the following features:
  - a. Gas and Diesel engine.
  - b. Unit-mounted and Remote-mounting cooling system.
  - c. Unit-mounted and Remote-mounting control and monitoring.
  - d. Performance requirements for sensitive loads.
  - e. Load banks.
  - f. Outdoor enclosure.

#### C. Definitions

1. Operational Bandwidth: The total variation from the lowest to highest value of a parameter over the range of conditions indicated, expressed as a percentage of the nominal value of the parameter.
2. LP: Liquid petroleum.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of packaged engine generator and accessory indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that day tank, engine-generator set, batteries, battery racks, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
4. Source quality-control test reports.
5. Field quality-control test reports.
6. Operation and maintenance data.
7. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
2. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer. Maintain, within 200 miles (321 km) of Project site, a service center capable of providing training, parts, and emergency maintenance repairs.
3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
4. Comply with ASME B15.1.
5. Comply with NFPA 37.
6. Comply with NFPA 70.
7. Comply with NFPA 99 for healthcare facilities.
8. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 **OR** 2, **as directed**, emergency power supply system.



9. Comply with UL 2200.
10. Engine Exhaust Emissions: Comply with applicable state and local government requirements.
11. Noise Emission: Comply with applicable state and local government requirements for maximum noise level at adjacent property boundaries due to sound emitted by generator set including engine, engine exhaust, engine cooling-air intake and discharge, and other components of installation.

F. Project Conditions

1. Environmental Conditions: Engine-generator system shall withstand the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of performance capability:
  - a. Ambient Temperature: 5 to 40 deg C **OR** Minus 15 to plus 40 deg C, **as directed**.
  - b. Relative Humidity: 0 to 95 percent for outdoor units.
  - c. Altitude: Sea level to 1000 feet (300 m).
2. Unusual Service Conditions: Engine-generator equipment and installation are required to operate under the following conditions:
  - a. High salt-dust content in the air due to sea-spray evaporation.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Engine-Generator Set

1. Factory-assembled and -tested, engine-generator set.
2. Mounting Frame: Maintain alignment of mounted components without depending on concrete foundation; and have lifting attachments.
  - a. Rigging Diagram: Inscribed on metal plate permanently attached to mounting frame to indicate location and lifting capacity of each lifting attachment and generator-set center of gravity.
3. Capacities and Characteristics:
  - a. Power Output Ratings: Nominal ratings as indicated, with capacity as required to operate as a unit as evidenced by records of prototype testing.
  - b. Output Connections: Three-phase, three **OR** four, **as directed**, wire.
  - c. Nameplates: For each major system component to identify manufacturer's name and address, and model and serial number of component.
4. Generator-Set Performance:
  - a. Steady-State Voltage Operational Bandwidth: 3 percent of rated output voltage from no load to full load.
  - b. Transient Voltage Performance: Not more than 20 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Voltage shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within three seconds.
  - c. Steady-State Frequency Operational Bandwidth: 0.5 percent of rated frequency from no load to full load.
  - d. Steady-State Frequency Stability: When system is operating at any constant load within the rated load, there shall be no random speed variations outside the steady-state operational band and no hunting or surging of speed.
  - e. Transient Frequency Performance: Less than 5 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Frequency shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within five seconds.
  - f. Output Waveform: At no load, harmonic content measured line to line or line to neutral shall not exceed 5 percent total and 3 percent for single harmonics. Telephone influence factor, determined according to NEMA MG 1, shall not exceed 50 percent.
  - g. Sustained Short-Circuit Current: For a 3-phase, bolted short circuit at system output terminals, system shall supply a minimum of 250 percent of rated full-load current for not less than 10 seconds and then clear the fault automatically, without damage to generator system components.
  - h. Start Time: Comply with NFPA 110, Type 10, system requirements.



5. Generator-Set Performance for Sensitive Loads:
  - a. Oversizing generator compared with the rated power output of the engine is permissible to meet specified performance.
    - 1) Nameplate Data for Oversized Generator: Show ratings required by the Contract Documents rather than ratings that would normally be applied to generator size installed.
  - b. Steady-State Voltage Operational Bandwidth: 1 percent of rated output voltage from no load to full load.
  - c. Transient Voltage Performance: Not more than 10 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Voltage shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within 0.5 second.
  - d. Steady-State Frequency Operational Bandwidth: Plus or minus 0.25 percent of rated frequency from no load to full load.
  - e. Steady-State Frequency Stability: When system is operating at any constant load within the rated load, there shall be no random speed variations outside the steady-state operational band and no hunting or surging of speed.
  - f. Transient Frequency Performance: Less than 2-Hz variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Frequency shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within three seconds.
  - g. Output Waveform: At no load, harmonic content measured line to neutral shall not exceed 2 percent total with no slot ripple. Telephone influence factor, determined according to NEMA MG 1, shall not exceed 50 percent.
  - h. Sustained Short-Circuit Current: For a 3-phase, bolted short circuit at system output terminals, system shall supply a minimum of 300 percent of rated full-load current for not less than 10 seconds and then clear the fault automatically, without damage to winding insulation or other generator system components.
  - i. Excitation System: Performance shall be unaffected by voltage distortion caused by nonlinear load.
    - 1) Provide permanent magnet excitation for power source to voltage regulator.
  - j. Start Time: Comply with NFPA 110, Type 10, system requirements.

B. Engine

1. Fuel: Fuel oil, Grade DF-2 **OR** Natural gas with automatic LP-gas standby **OR** Natural gas, **as directed**.
2. Rated Engine Speed: 1800 rpm.
3. Maximum Piston Speed for Four-Cycle Engines: 2250 fpm (11.4 m/s).
4. Lubrication System: The following items are mounted on engine or skid:
  - a. Filter and Strainer: Rated to remove 90 percent of particles 5 micrometers and smaller while passing full flow.
  - b. Thermostatic Control Valve: Control flow in system to maintain optimum oil temperature. Unit shall be capable of full flow and is designed to be fail-safe.
  - c. Crankcase Drain: Arranged for complete gravity drainage to an easily removable container with no disassembly and without use of pumps, siphons, special tools, or appliances.
5. Engine Fuel System:
  - a. Main Fuel Pump For Diesel-Fueled Engine: Mounted on engine. Pump ensures adequate primary fuel flow under starting and load conditions.
  - b. Relief-Bypass Valve For Diesel-Fueled Engine: Automatically regulates pressure in fuel line and returns excess fuel to source.
  - c. Dual Natural Gas with LP-Gas Backup (Vapor-Withdrawal) System:
    - 1) Carburetor.
    - 2) Secondary Gas Regulators: One for each fuel type.
    - 3) Fuel-Shutoff Solenoid Valves: One for each fuel source.
    - 4) Flexible Fuel Connectors: One for each fuel source.
6. Coolant Jacket Heater: Electric-immersion type, factory installed in coolant jacket system. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 equipment for heater capacity.
7. Governor: Adjustable isochronous, with speed sensing.



8. Cooling System:
  - a. Closed loop, liquid cooled, with radiator factory mounted on engine-generator-set mounting frame and integral engine-driven coolant pump.
    - 1) Coolant: Solution of 50 percent ethylene-glycol-based antifreeze and 50 percent water, with anticorrosion additives as recommended by engine manufacturer.
    - 2) Size of Radiator: Adequate to contain expansion of total system coolant from cold start to 110 percent load condition.
    - 3) Expansion Tank: Constructed of welded steel plate and rated to withstand maximum closed-loop coolant system pressure for engine used. Equip with gage glass and petcock.
    - 4) Temperature Control: Self-contained, thermostatic-control valve modulates coolant flow automatically to maintain optimum constant coolant temperature as recommended by engine manufacturer.
    - 5) Coolant Hose: Flexible assembly with inside surface of nonporous rubber and outer covering of aging-, ultraviolet-, and abrasion-resistant fabric.
      - a) Rating: 50-psig (345-kPa) maximum working pressure with coolant at 180 deg F (82 deg C), and noncollapsible under vacuum.
      - b) End Fittings: Flanges or steel pipe nipples with clamps to suit piping and equipment connections.
  - b. Closed loop, liquid cooled, with remote radiator and integral engine-driven coolant pump.
    - 1) Configuration: Vertical **OR** Horizontal, **as directed**, air discharge.
    - 2) Radiator Core Tubes: Aluminum **OR** Nonferrous-metal construction other than aluminum, **as directed**.
    - 3) Size of Radiator: Adequate to contain expansion of total system coolant from cold start to 110 percent load condition.
    - 4) Expansion Tank: Constructed of welded steel plate and rated to withstand maximum closed-loop coolant system pressure for engine used. Equip with gage glass and petcock.
    - 5) Fan: Driven by multiple belts from engine shaft **OR** totally enclosed electric motor with sealed bearings, **as directed**.
    - 6) Coolant: Solution of 50 percent ethylene-glycol-based antifreeze and 50 percent water, with anticorrosion additives as recommended by engine manufacturer.
    - 7) Temperature Control: Self-contained, thermostatic-control valve modulates coolant flow automatically to maintain optimum constant coolant temperature as recommended by engine manufacturer.
9. Muffler/Silencer:
  - a. Critical type, sized as recommended by engine manufacturer and selected with exhaust piping system to not exceed engine manufacturer's engine backpressure requirements.
    - 1) Minimum sound attenuation of 25 dB at 500 Hz.
    - 2) Sound level measured at a distance of 10 feet (3 m) from exhaust discharge after installation is complete shall be 85 dBA or less.
  - b. Residential type, sized as recommended by engine manufacturer and selected with exhaust piping system to not exceed engine manufacturer's engine backpressure requirements.
    - 1) Minimum sound attenuation of 18 dB at 500 Hz.
    - 2) Sound level measured at a distance of 10 feet (3 m) from exhaust discharge after installation is complete shall be 95 dBA or less.
  - c. Industrial type, sized as recommended by engine manufacturer and selected with exhaust piping system to not exceed engine manufacturer's engine backpressure requirements.
    - 1) Minimum sound attenuation of 12 dB at 500 Hz.
    - 2) Sound level measured at a distance of 25 feet (8 m) from exhaust discharge after installation is complete shall be 87 dBA or less.
10. Air-Intake Filter: Standard **OR** Heavy, **as directed**, -duty, engine-mounted air cleaner with replaceable dry-filter element and "blocked filter" indicator.
11. Starting System: 12 **OR** 24, **as directed**, -V electric, with negative ground.





- a. Components: Sized so they will not be damaged during a full engine-cranking cycle with ambient temperature at maximum specified in Part 1 "Project Conditions" Article.
- b. Cranking Motor: Heavy-duty unit that automatically engages and releases from engine flywheel without binding.
- c. Cranking Cycle: As required by NFPA 110 for system level specified **OR** 60 seconds, **as directed**.
- d. Battery: Adequate capacity within ambient temperature range specified in Part 1.1 "Project Conditions" Article to provide specified cranking cycle at least twice **OR** three times, **as directed**, without recharging.
- e. Battery Cable: Size as recommended by engine manufacturer for cable length indicated. Include required interconnecting conductors and connection accessories.
- f. Battery Compartment: Factory fabricated of metal with acid-resistant finish and thermal insulation. Thermostatically controlled heater shall be arranged to maintain battery above 10 deg C regardless of external ambient temperature within range specified in Part 1.1 "Project Conditions" Article. Include accessories required to support and fasten batteries in place.
- g. Battery-Charging Alternator: Factory mounted on engine with solid-state voltage regulation and 35-A minimum continuous rating.
- h. Battery Charger: Current-limiting, automatic-equalizing and float-charging type. Unit shall comply with UL 1236.
  - 1) Operation: Equalizing-charging rate of 10 A shall be initiated automatically after battery has lost charge until an adjustable equalizing voltage is achieved at battery terminals. Unit shall then be automatically switched to a lower float-charging mode and shall continue to operate in that mode until battery is discharged again.
  - 2) Automatic Temperature Compensation: Adjust float and equalize voltages for variations in ambient temperature from minus 40 deg C to plus 60 deg C to prevent overcharging at high temperatures and undercharging at low temperatures.
  - 3) Automatic Voltage Regulation: Maintain constant output voltage regardless of input voltage variations up to plus or minus 10 percent.
  - 4) Ammeter and Voltmeter: Flush mounted in door. Meters shall indicate charging rates.
  - 5) Safety Functions: Sense abnormally low battery voltage and close contacts providing low battery voltage indication on control and monitoring panel. Sense high battery voltage and loss of ac input or dc output of battery charger. Either condition shall close contacts that provide a battery-charger malfunction indication at system control and monitoring panel.
  - 6) Enclosure and Mounting: NEMA 250, Type 1, wall-mounted cabinet.

#### C. Fuel Oil Storage

1. Comply with NFPA 30.
2. Day Tank: Comply with UL 142, freestanding, factory-fabricated fuel tank assembly, with integral, float-controlled transfer pump and the following features:
  - a. Containment: Integral rupture basin with a capacity of 150 percent of nominal capacity of day tank.
    - 1) Leak Detector: Locate in rupture basin and connect to provide audible and visual alarm in the event of day-tank leak.
  - b. Tank Capacity: As recommended by engine manufacturer for an uninterrupted period of 4 hours' operation at 100 percent of rated power output of engine-generator system without being refilled.
  - c. Pump Capacity: Exceeds maximum flow of fuel drawn by engine-mounted fuel supply pump at 110 percent of rated capacity, including fuel returned from engine.
  - d. Low-Level Alarm Sensor: Liquid-level device operates alarm contacts at 25 percent of normal fuel level.
  - e. High-Level Alarm Sensor: Liquid-level device operates alarm and redundant fuel shutoff contacts at midpoint between overflow level and 100 percent of normal fuel level.



- f. Piping Connections: Factory-installed fuel supply and return lines from tank to engine; local fuel fill, vent line, overflow line; and tank drain line with shutoff valve.
  - g. Redundant High-Level Fuel Shutoff: Actuated by high-level alarm sensor in day tank to operate a separate motor device that disconnects day-tank pump motor. Sensor shall signal solenoid valve, located in fuel suction line between fuel storage tank and day tank, to close. Both actions shall remain in shutoff state until manually reset. Shutoff action shall initiate an alarm signal to control panel but shall not shut down engine-generator set.
  3. Base-Mounted Fuel Oil Tank: Factory installed and piped, complying with UL 142 fuel oil tank. Features include the following:
    - a. Tank level indicator.
    - b. Capacity: Fuel for eight hours' continuous operation at 100 percent rated power output.
    - c. Vandal-resistant fill cap.
    - d. Containment Provisions: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Control And Monitoring
1. Automatic Starting System Sequence of Operation: When mode-selector switch on the control and monitoring panel is in the automatic position, remote-control contacts in one or more separate automatic transfer switches initiate starting and stopping of generator set. When mode-selector switch is switched to the on position, generator set starts. The off position of same switch initiates generator-set shutdown. When generator set is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down generator set and initiate alarms.
  2. Manual Starting System Sequence of Operation: Switching on-off switch on the generator control panel to the on position starts generator set. The off position of same switch initiates generator-set shutdown. When generator set is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down generator set and initiate alarms.
  3. Configuration:
    - a. Operating and safety indications, protective devices, basic system controls, and engine gages shall be grouped in a common control and monitoring panel mounted on the generator set. Mounting method shall isolate the control panel from generator-set vibration.
    - b. Operating and safety indications, protective devices, basic system controls, and engine gages shall be grouped in a common wall-mounted control and monitoring panel.
    - c. Operating and safety indications, protective devices, basic system controls, engine gages, instrument transformers, generator disconnect switch or circuit breaker, and other indicated components shall be grouped in a combination control and power panel. Control and monitoring section of panel shall be isolated from power sections by steel barriers. Panel features shall include the following:
      - 1) Wall-Mounting Cabinet Construction: Rigid, self-supporting steel unit complying with NEMA ICS 6. Power bus shall be copper. Bus, bus supports, control wiring, and temperature rise shall comply with UL 891.
      - 2) Switchboard Construction: Freestanding unit complying with Division 26 Section "Switchboards".
      - 3) Switchgear Construction: Freestanding unit complying with Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Switchgear".
      - 4) Current and Potential Transformers: Instrument accuracy class.
  4. Indicating and Protective Devices and Controls: As required by NFPA 110 for Level 1 **OR** 2, **as directed**, system, and the following:
    - a. AC voltmeter.
    - b. AC ammeter.
    - c. AC frequency meter.
    - d. DC voltmeter (alternator battery charging).
    - e. Engine-coolant temperature gage.
    - f. Engine lubricating-oil pressure gage.
    - g. Running-time meter.
    - h. Ammeter-voltmeter, phase-selector switch(es).



- i. Generator-voltage adjusting rheostat.
  - j. Fuel tank derangement alarm.
  - k. Fuel tank high-level shutdown of fuel supply alarm.
  - l. Generator overload.
5. Indicating and Protective Devices and Controls:
- a. AC voltmeter.
  - b. AC ammeter.
  - c. AC frequency meter.
  - d. DC voltmeter (alternator battery charging).
  - e. Engine-coolant temperature gage.
  - f. Engine lubricating-oil pressure gage.
  - g. Running-time meter.
  - h. Ammeter-voltmeter, phase-selector switch(es).
  - i. Generator-voltage adjusting rheostat.
  - j. Start-stop switch.
  - k. Overspeed shutdown device.
  - l. Coolant high-temperature shutdown device.
  - m. Coolant low-level shutdown device.
  - n. Oil low-pressure shutdown device.
  - o. Fuel tank derangement alarm.
  - p. Fuel tank high-level shutdown of fuel supply alarm.
  - q. Generator overload.
6. Supporting Items: Include sensors, transducers, terminals, relays, and other devices and include wiring required to support specified items. Locate sensors and other supporting items on engine or generator, unless otherwise indicated.
7. Connection to Data Link: A separate terminal block, factory wired to Form C dry contacts, for each alarm and status indication is reserved for connections for data-link transmission of indications to remote data terminals. Data system connections to terminals are covered in Division 26 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring And Control".
8. Common Remote Audible Alarm:
- a. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 systems. Include necessary contacts and terminals in control and monitoring panel.
    - 1) Overcrank shutdown.
    - 2) Coolant low-temperature alarm.
    - 3) Control switch not in auto position.
    - 4) Battery-charger malfunction alarm.
    - 5) Battery low-voltage alarm.
  - b. Common Remote Audible Alarm for manually starting systems or for automatically starting systems not specified to comply with NFPA 110, Level 1, but where some remote alarm functions are needed. Signal the occurrence of any events listed below without differentiating between event types. Connect so that after an alarm is silenced, clearing of initiating condition will reactivate alarm until silencing switch is reset.
    - 1) Engine high-temperature shutdown.
    - 2) Lube-oil, low-pressure shutdown.
    - 3) Overspeed shutdown.
    - 4) Remote emergency-stop shutdown.
    - 5) Engine high-temperature prealarm.
    - 6) Lube-oil, low-pressure prealarm.
    - 7) Fuel tank, low-fuel level.
    - 8) Low coolant level.
9. Remote Alarm Annunciator: Comply with NFPA 99. An LED labeled with proper alarm conditions shall identify each alarm event and a common audible signal shall sound for each alarm condition. Silencing switch in face of panel shall silence signal without altering visual indication. Connect so that after an alarm is silenced, clearing of initiating condition will reactivate alarm until silencing switch is reset. Cabinet and faceplate are surface- or flush-mounting type to suit mounting conditions indicated.



10. Remote Emergency-Stop Switch: Flush; wall mounted, unless otherwise indicated; and labeled. Push button shall be protected from accidental operation.

E. Generator Overcurrent And Fault Protection

1. Generator Circuit Breaker:
  - a. Molded-case, thermal-magnetic type; 100 percent rated; complying with NEMA AB 1 and UL 489.
    - 1) Tripping Characteristic: Designed specifically for generator protection.
    - 2) Trip Rating: Matched to generator rating.
    - 3) Shunt Trip: Connected to trip breaker when generator set is shut down by other protective devices.
    - 4) Mounting: Adjacent to or integrated with control and monitoring panel.
  - b. Molded-case, electronic-trip type; 100 percent rated; complying with UL 489.
    - 1) Tripping Characteristics: Adjustable long-time and short-time delay and instantaneous.
    - 2) Trip Settings: Selected to coordinate with generator thermal damage curve.
    - 3) Shunt Trip: Connected to trip breaker when generator set is shut down by other protective devices.
    - 4) Mounting: Adjacent to or integrated with control and monitoring panel.
  - c. Insulated-case, electronic-trip type; 100 percent rated; complying with UL 489.
  - d. Tripping Characteristics: Adjustable long-time and short-time delay and instantaneous.
  - e. Trip Settings: Selected to coordinate with generator thermal damage curve.
  - f. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip breaker when generator set is shut down by other protective devices.
  - g. Mounting: Adjacent to or integrated with control and monitoring panel.
2. Generator Disconnect Switch: Molded-case type, 100 percent rated.
  - a. Rating: Matched to generator output rating.
  - b. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip switch when signaled by generator protector or by other protective devices.
3. Generator Protector: Microprocessor-based unit shall continuously monitor current level in each phase of generator output, integrate generator heating effect over time, and predict when thermal damage of alternator will occur. When signaled by generator protector or other generator-set protective devices, a shunt-trip device in the generator disconnect switch shall open the switch to disconnect the generator from load circuits. Protector shall perform the following functions:
  - a. Initiates a generator overload alarm when generator has operated at an overload equivalent to 110 percent of full-rated load for 60 seconds. Indication for this alarm is integrated with other generator-set malfunction alarms.
  - b. Under single or three-phase fault conditions, regulates generator to 300 percent of rated full-load current for up to 10 seconds.
  - c. As overcurrent heating effect on the generator approaches the thermal damage point of the unit, protector switches the excitation system off, opens the generator disconnect device, and shuts down the generator set.
  - d. Senses clearing of a fault by other overcurrent devices and controls recovery of rated voltage to avoid overshoot.
  - e. Ground-Fault Indication: Comply with NFPA 70, "Emergency System" signals for ground-fault. Integrate ground-fault alarm indication with other generator-set alarm indications.

F. Generator, Exciter, And Voltage Regulator

1. Comply with NEMA MG 1.
2. Drive: Generator shaft shall be directly connected to engine shaft. Exciter shall be rotated integrally with generator rotor.
3. Electrical Insulation: Class H or Class F.
4. Stator-Winding Leads: Brought out to terminal box to permit future reconnection for other voltages if required.



5. Construction shall prevent mechanical, electrical, and thermal damage due to vibration, overspeed up to 125 percent of rating, and heat during operation at 110 percent of rated capacity.
6. Enclosure: Dripproof.
7. Instrument Transformers: Mounted within generator enclosure.
8. Voltage Regulator: Solid-state type, separate from exciter, providing performance as specified.
  - a. Adjusting rheostat on control and monitoring panel shall provide plus or minus 5 percent adjustment of output-voltage operating band.
9. Strip Heater: Thermostatically controlled unit arranged to maintain stator windings above dew point.
10. Windings: Two-thirds pitch stator winding and fully linked amortisseur winding.
11. Subtransient Reactance: 12 percent, maximum.

#### G. Load Bank

1. Description: Permanent, outdoor, weatherproof, remote-controlled, forced-air-cooled, resistive **OR** resistive and reactive, **as directed**, unit capable of providing a balanced 3-phase, delta-connected load to generator set at 100 percent rated-system capacity, at 80 percent power factor, lagging. Unit may be composed of separate resistive and reactive load banks controlled by a common control panel. Unit shall be capable of selective control of load in 25 percent steps and with minimum step changes of approximately 5 and 10 percent available.
2. Resistive Load Elements: Corrosion-resistant chromium alloy with ceramic and steel supports. Elements shall be double insulated and designed for repetitive on-off cycling. Elements shall be mounted in removable aluminized-steel heater cases.
3. Reactive Load Elements: Epoxy-encapsulated reactor coils.
4. Load-Bank Heat Dissipation: Integral fan with totally enclosed motor shall provide uniform cooling airflow through load elements. Airflow and coil operating current shall be such that, at maximum load, with ambient temperature at the upper end of specified range, load-bank elements operate at not more than 50 percent of maximum continuous temperature rating of resistance elements.
5. Load Element Switching: Remote-controlled contactors switch groups of load elements. Contactor coils are rated 120 V. Contactors shall be located in a separate NEMA 250, Type 3R enclosure within load-bank enclosure, accessible from exterior through hinged doors with tumbler locks.
6. Contactor Enclosures: Heated by thermostatically controlled strip heaters to prevent condensation.
7. Load-Bank Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 3R, complying with NEMA ICS 6. Louvers at cooling-air intake and discharge openings shall prevent entry of rain and snow. Openings for airflow shall be screened with 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) square, galvanized-steel mesh. Reactive load bank shall include automatic shutters at air intake and discharge.
8. Protective Devices: Power input circuits to load banks shall be fused, and fuses shall be selected to coordinate with generator circuit breaker. Fuse blocks shall be located in contactor enclosure. Cooling airflow and overtemperature sensors shall automatically shut down and lock out load bank until manually reset. Safety interlocks on access panels and doors shall disconnect load power, control, and heater circuits. Fan motor shall be separately protected by overload and short-circuit devices. Short-circuit devices shall be noninterchangeable fuses with 200,000-A interrupting capacity.
9. Remote-Control Panel: Separate from load bank in NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure with a control power switch and pilot light, and switches controlling groups of load elements.
10. Control Sequence: Control panel may be preset for adjustable single-step loading of generator during automatic exercising.

#### H. Outdoor Generator-Set Enclosure

1. Description:
  - a. Vandal-resistant, weatherproof steel housing, wind resistant up to 100 mph (160 km/h). Multiple panels shall be lockable and provide adequate access to components requiring maintenance. Panels shall be removable by one person without tools. Instruments and control shall be mounted within enclosure.



- b. Prefabricated or preengineered walk-in enclosure with the following features:
    - 1) Construction: Galvanized-steel, metal-clad, integral structural-steel-framed building erected on concrete foundation.
    - 2) Structural Design and Anchorage: Comply with ASCE 7 for wind loads.
    - 3) Space Heater: Thermostatically controlled and sized to prevent condensation.
    - 4) Louvers: Equipped with bird screen and filter arranged to permit air circulation when engine is not running while excluding exterior dust, birds, and rodents.
    - 5) Hinged Doors: With padlocking provisions.
    - 6) Ventilation: Louvers equipped with bird screen and filter arranged to permit air circulation while excluding exterior dust, birds, and rodents.
    - 7) Thermal Insulation: Manufacturer's standard materials and thickness selected in coordination with space heater to maintain winter interior temperature within operating limits required by engine-generator-set components.
    - 8) Muffler Location: Within **OR** External to, **as directed**, enclosure.
  2. Engine Cooling Airflow through Enclosure: Maintain temperature rise of system components within required limits when unit operates at 110 percent of rated load for 2 hours with ambient temperature at top of range specified in system service conditions.
    - a. Louvers: Fixed-engine, cooling-air inlet and discharge. Storm-proof and drainable louvers prevent entry of rain and snow.
    - b. Automatic Dampers: At engine cooling-air inlet and discharge. Dampers shall be closed to reduce enclosure heat loss in cold weather when unit is not operating.
  3. Interior Lights with Switch: Factory-wired, vaporproof-type fixtures within housing; arranged to illuminate controls and accessible interior. Arrange for external electrical connection.
    - a. AC lighting system and connection point for operation when remote source is available.
    - b. DC lighting system for operation when remote source and generator are both unavailable.
  4. Convenience Outlets: Factory wired, GFCI. Arrange for external electrical connection.
- I. Motors
1. General requirements for motors are specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Hvac Equipment".
    - a. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
    - b. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Electrical devices and connections are specified in Division 22.
- J. Vibration Isolation Devices
1. Elastomeric Isolator Pads: Oil- and water-resistant elastomer or natural rubber, arranged in single or multiple layers, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.
    - a. Material: Standard neoprene **OR** Natural rubber **OR** Bridge-bearing neoprene, complying with AASHTO M 251, **as directed**.
    - b. Durometer Rating: 30 **OR** 40 **OR** 45 **OR** 50 **OR** 60 **OR** 65 **OR** 70, **as directed**.
    - c. Number of Layers: One **OR** Two **OR** Three **OR** Four, **as directed**.
  2. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic restraint.
    - a. Housing: Steel with resilient vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to wind loads or if weight is removed; factory-drilled baseplate bonded to 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) thick, elastomeric isolator pad attached to baseplate underside; and adjustable equipment mounting and leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
    - b. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of compressed height of the spring at rated load.
    - c. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of required deflection at rated load.
    - d. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
    - e. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.



- K. Finishes
  - 1. Indoor and Outdoor Enclosures and Components: Manufacturer's standard finish over corrosion-resistant pretreatment and compatible primer.
- L. Source Quality Control
  - 1. Prototype Testing: Factory test engine-generator set using same engine model, constructed of identical or equivalent components and equipped with identical or equivalent accessories.
    - a. Tests: Comply with NFPA 110, Level 1 Energy Converters and with IEEE 115.
    - b. Report factory test results within 10 days of completion of test.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Installation
  - 1. Comply with packaged engine-generator manufacturers' written installation and alignment instructions and with NFPA 110.
  - 2. Install packaged engine generator to provide access, without removing connections or accessories, for periodic maintenance.
  - 3. Install packaged engine generator with elastomeric isolator pads **OR** restrained spring isolators, **as directed**, having a minimum deflection of 1 inch (25 mm) on 4-inch- (100-mm-) high concrete base. Secure sets to anchor bolts installed in concrete bases. Concrete base construction is specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
  - 4. Install remote radiator with elastomeric isolator pads **OR** restrained spring isolators, **as directed**, having a minimum deflection of 1 inch (25 mm) on concrete base on grade **OR** roof equipment supports on roof, **as directed**.
  - 5. Install Schedule 40, black steel piping with welded joints for cooling water piping between engine-generator set and heat exchanger **OR** remote radiator, **as directed**. Piping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping".
  - 6. Install Schedule 40, black steel piping with welded joints and connect to engine muffler. Install thimble at wall. Piping shall be same diameter as muffler outlet. Flexible connectors and steel piping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping".
    - a. Install condensate drain piping to muffler drain outlet full size of drain connection with a shutoff valve, stainless-steel flexible connector, and Schedule 40, black steel pipe with welded joints. Flexible connectors and piping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping".
  - 7. Electrical Wiring: Install electrical devices furnished by equipment manufacturers but not specified to be factory mounted.
  - 8. Piping installation requirements are specified in Division 21. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping and specialties.
  - 9. Connect fuel, cooling-system, and exhaust-system piping adjacent to packaged engine generator to allow service and maintenance.
  - 10. Connect cooling-system water piping to engine-generator set and remote radiator **OR** heat exchanger, **as directed** with flexible connectors.
  - 11. Connect engine exhaust pipe to engine with flexible connector.
  - 12. Connect fuel piping to engines with a gate valve and union and flexible connector.
    - a. Natural-gas piping, valves, and specialties for gas distribution are specified in Division 23 Section "Facility Natural-gas Piping".
    - b. LP-gas piping, valves, and specialties for gas piping are specified in Division 23 Section "Facility Liquefied-petroleum Gas Piping".
  - 13. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
  - 14. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".
  - 15. Identify system components according to Division 23 Section "Identification For Hvac Piping And Equipment" and Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".



## B. Field Quality Control

1. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
  - a. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
2. Tests and Inspections:
  - a. Perform tests recommended by manufacturer and each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection (except those indicated to be optional) for "AC Generators and for Emergency Systems" specified in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - b. NFPA 110 Acceptance Tests: Perform tests required by NFPA 110 that are additional to those specified here including, but not limited to, single-step full-load pickup test.
  - c. Battery Tests: Equalize charging of battery cells according to manufacturer's written instructions. Record individual cell voltages.
    - 1) Measure charging voltage and voltages between available battery terminals for full-charging and float-charging conditions. Check electrolyte level and specific gravity under both conditions.
    - 2) Test for contact integrity of all connectors. Perform an integrity load test and a capacity load test for the battery.
    - 3) Verify acceptance of charge for each element of the battery after discharge.
    - 4) Verify that measurements are within manufacturer's specifications.
  - d. Battery-Charger Tests: Verify specified rates of charge for both equalizing and float-charging conditions.
  - e. System Integrity Tests: Methodically verify proper installation, connection, and integrity of each element of engine-generator system before and during system operation. Check for air, exhaust, and fluid leaks.
  - f. Exhaust-System Back-Pressure Test: Use a manometer with a scale exceeding 40-inch wg (120 kPa). Connect to exhaust line close to engine exhaust manifold. Verify that back pressure at full-rated load is within manufacturer's written allowable limits for the engine.
  - g. Exhaust Emissions Test: Comply with applicable government test criteria.
  - h. Voltage and Frequency Transient Stability Tests: Use recording oscilloscope to measure voltage and frequency transients for 50 and 100 percent step-load increases and decreases, and verify that performance is as specified.
  - i. Harmonic-Content Tests: Measure harmonic content of output voltage under 25 percent and at 100 percent of rated linear load. Verify that harmonic content is within specified limits.
  - j. Noise Level Tests: Measure A-weighted level of noise emanating from generator-set installation, including engine exhaust and cooling-air intake and discharge, at four locations on the property line, and compare measured levels with required values.
3. Coordinate tests with tests for transfer switches and run them concurrently.
4. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
5. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
6. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
7. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest **OR** reinspect, **as directed**, as specified above.
8. Retest: Correct deficiencies identified by tests and observations and retest until specified requirements are met.
9. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation resistances, time delays, and other values and observations. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.

## C. Demonstration





1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain packaged engine generators.

END OF SECTION 26 32 13 13



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
26 32 13 19	26 32 13 13	Packaged Engine Generators
26 32 13 26	26 32 13 13	Packaged Engine Generators
26 32 29 00	26 32 13 13	Packaged Engine Generators



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 26 33 43 00 - CENTRAL BATTERY INVERTERS**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for central battery inverters. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. This Section includes slow-transfer, fast-transfer, and UPS central battery inverters with the following features:
  - a. Output distribution section.
  - b. Internal maintenance bypass/isolation switch.
  - c. External maintenance bypass/isolation switch.
  - d. Multiple output voltages.
  - e. Emergency-only circuits.
  - f. Remote monitoring provisions.

## C. Definitions

1. LCD: Liquid-crystal display.
2. LED: Light-emitting diode.
3. THD: Total harmonic distortion.
4. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.

## D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For the following:
  - a. Electrical ratings, including the following:
    - 1) Capacity to provide power during failure of normal ac.
    - 2) Inverter voltage regulation and THD of output current.
    - 3) Rectifier data.
    - 4) Transfer time of transfer switch.
    - 5) Data for specified optional features.
  - b. Transfer switch.
  - c. Inverter.
  - d. Battery charger.
  - e. Batteries.
  - f. Battery monitoring.
  - g. Battery-cycle warranty monitor.
2. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, components, and location and identification of each field connection. Show access, workspace, and clearance requirements; details of control panels; and battery arrangement.
  - a. Wiring Diagrams: Detail internal and interconnecting wiring; and power, signal, and control wiring.
  - b. Elevation and details of control and indication displays.
  - c. Output distribution section.
3. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that central battery inverter equipment will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
4. Operation and Maintenance Data.

## E. Quality Assurance



1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
2. Central Battery Inverter System: UL 924 and UL 1778, **as directed**, listed.
3. Comply with NFPA 70 and NFPA 101.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver equipment in fully enclosed vehicles.
2. Store equipment in spaces having environments controlled within manufacturers' written instructions for ambient temperature and humidity conditions for non-operating equipment.

G. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace batteries that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. Special warranty, applying to batteries only, applies to materials only, on a prorated basis, for period specified.
  - a. Warranty Period: Include the following warranty periods, from date of Final Completion:
    - 1) Premium, Valve-Regulated, Recombinant, Lead-Calcium Batteries:
      - a) Full Warranty: One year.
      - b) Pro Rata: 19 years.
    - 2) Standard, Valve-Regulated, Recombinant, Lead-Calcium Batteries:
      - a) Full Warranty: One year.
      - b) Pro Rata: Nine years.
    - 3) Nickel-Cadmium, Wet-Cell Batteries:
      - a) Full Warranty: Five years.
      - b) Pro Rata: 15 years.
    - 4) Lead-Calcium, Wet-Cell Batteries:
      - a) Full Warranty: One year.
      - b) Pro Rata: Nine years.
    - 5) Lead-Antimony, Wet-Cell Batteries:
      - a) Full Warranty: One year.
      - b) Pro Rata: Nine years.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Inverter Performance Requirements

1. Slow-Transfer Central Battery Inverters: Automatically sense loss of normal ac supply and use an electromechanical switch to transfer loads. Transfer in one second or less from normal supply to battery-inverter supply.
  - a. Operation: Unit supplies power to output circuits from a single, external, normal supply source. Unit automatically transfers load from normal source to internal battery/inverter source. Retransfer to normal is automatic when normal power is restored.
2. Fast-Transfer Central Battery Inverters: Automatically sense loss of normal ac supply and use a solid-state switch to transfer loads. Transfer in 0.004 second or less from normal supply to battery-inverter supply.
  - a. Operation: Unit supplies power to output circuits from a single, external, normal supply source. Unit automatically transfers load from normal source to internal battery/inverter source. Retransfer to normal is automatic when normal power is restored.
3. UPS-Type Central Battery Inverters: Continuously provide ac power to connected electrical system.
  - a. Automatic Operation:
    - 1) Normal Conditions: Supply the load with ac power flowing from normal ac power input terminals, through rectifier-charger and inverter, with battery connected in parallel with rectifier-charger output.



- 2) Abnormal Supply Conditions: If normal ac supply deviates from specified and adjustable voltage, voltage waveform, or frequency limits, battery supplies constant, regulated, inverter ac power output to the load without switching or disturbance.
  - 3) If normal power fails, battery continues supply-regulated ac power through the inverter to the load without switching or disturbance.
  - 4) When power is restored at normal supply terminals of system, controls automatically synchronize inverter with the external source before transferring the load. Rectifier-charger then supplies power to the load through the inverter and simultaneously recharges battery.
  - 5) If battery becomes discharged and normal supply is available, rectifier-charger charges battery. When battery is fully charged, rectifier-charger automatically shifts to float-charge mode.
  - 6) If any element of central battery inverter system fails and power is available at normal supply terminals of system, static bypass transfer switch transfers the load to normal ac supply circuit without disturbance or interruption of supply.
  - 7) If a fault occurs in system supplied by central battery inverter and current flows in excess of the overload rating of central battery inverter system, static bypass transfer switch operates to bypass fault current to normal ac supply circuit for fault clearing.
  - 8) When fault has cleared, static bypass transfer switch returns the load to central battery inverter system.
  - 9) If battery is disconnected, central battery inverter continues to supply power to the load with no degradation of its regulation of voltage and frequency of output bus.
- b. Manual Operation:
- 1) Turning inverter off causes static bypass transfer switch to transfer the load directly to normal ac supply circuit without disturbance or interruption.
  - 2) Turning inverter on causes static bypass transfer switch to transfer the load to inverter.
4. Maximum Acoustical Noise: **<Insert value>** dB, "A" weighting, emanating from any UPS component under any condition of normal operation, measured 39 inches (990 mm) from nearest surface of component enclosure.
- B. Service Conditions
1. Environmental Conditions: Inverter system shall be capable of operating continuously in the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:
    - a. Ambient Temperature for Electronic Components: 32 to 98 deg F (0 to 37 deg C).
    - b. Relative Humidity: 0 to 95 percent, noncondensing.
    - c. Altitude: Sea level to 4000 feet (1220 m).
- C. Inverters
1. Description: Solid-state type, with the following operational features:
    - a. Automatically regulate output voltage to within plus or minus 5 percent.
    - b. Automatically regulate output frequency to within plus or minus 1 Hz, from no load to full load at unit power factor over the operating range of battery voltage.
    - c. Output Voltage Waveform of Unit: Sine wave with maximum 10 percent THD throughout battery operating-voltage range, from no load to full load.
      - 1) THD may not exceed 5 percent when serving a resistive load of 100 percent of unit rating.
    - d. Output Protection: Current-limiting and short-circuit protection.  
**OR**  
Output Protection: Ferroresonant transformer to provide inherent overload and short-circuit protection.
    - e. Surge Protection: Panelboard **OR** Auxiliary panel, **as directed**, suppressors specified in Division 26 Section "Transient-voltage Suppression For Low-voltage Electrical Power Circuits".



- f. Overload Capability: 125 percent for 10 minutes; 150 percent surge.
- g. Brownout Protection: Produces rated power without draining batteries when input voltage is down to 75 percent of normal.

D. Battery Charger

- 1. Description: Solid-state, automatically maintaining batteries in fully charged condition when normal power is available. With LED indicators for "float" and "high-charge" modes.

E. Batteries

- 1. Description: Premium, valve-regulated, recombinant, lead-calcium **OR** Standard, valve-regulated, recombinant, lead-calcium **OR** Nickel-cadmium, wet-cell **OR** Lead-calcium, wet-cell **OR** Lead-antimony, wet-cell, **as directed**, batteries.
  - a. Capable of sustaining full-capacity output of inverter unit for minimum of 90 minutes.

F. Enclosures

- 1. NEMA 250, Type 1 steel cabinets with access to components through hinged doors with flush tumbler lock and latch.
- 2. Finish: Manufacturer's standard baked-enamel finish over corrosion-resistant prime treatment.

G. Seismic Requirements

- 1. Central battery inverter assemblies, subassemblies, components, fastenings, supports, and mounting and anchorage devices shall be designed and fabricated to withstand seismic forces, **as directed**. The term "withstand" is defined in the "Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification" Paragraph in Part 1.1 "Submittals" Article.

H. Control And Indication

- 1. Description: Group displays, indications, and basic system controls on common control panel on front of central battery inverter enclosure.
- 2. Minimum displays, indicating devices, and controls shall include those in lists below. Provide sensors, transducers, terminals, relays, and wiring required to support listed items. Alarms shall include an audible signal and a visual display.
- 3. Indications: Labeled LED **OR** Plain-language messages on a digital LCD or LED, **as directed**.
  - a. Quantitative Indications:
    - 1) Input voltage, each phase, line to line.
    - 2) Input current, each phase, line to line.
    - 3) System output voltage, each phase, line to line.
    - 4) System output current, each phase.
    - 5) System output frequency.
    - 6) DC bus voltage.
    - 7) Battery current and direction (charge/discharge).
    - 8) Elapsed time-discharging battery.
  - b. Basic Status Condition Indications:
    - 1) Normal operation.
    - 2) Load-on bypass.
    - 3) Load-on battery.
    - 4) Inverter off.
    - 5) Alarm condition exists.
  - c. Alarm Indications:
    - 1) Battery system alarm.
    - 2) Control power failure.
    - 3) Fan failure.
    - 4) Overload.
    - 5) Battery-charging control faulty.
    - 6) Input overvoltage or undervoltage.
    - 7) Approaching end of battery operation.





- 8) Battery undervoltage shutdown.
  - 9) Inverter fuse blown.
  - 10) Inverter transformer overtemperature.
  - 11) Inverter overtemperature.
  - 12) Static bypass transfer switch overtemperature.
  - 13) Inverter power supply fault.
  - 14) Inverter output overvoltage or undervoltage.
  - 15) System overload shutdown.
  - 16) Inverter output contactor open.
  - 17) Inverter current limit.
- d. Controls:
- 1) Inverter on-off.
  - 2) Start.
  - 3) Battery test.
  - 4) Alarm silence/reset.
  - 5) Output-voltage adjustment.
4. Dry-form "C" contacts shall be available for remote indication of the following conditions:
- a. Inverter on battery.
  - b. Inverter on-line.
  - c. Inverter load-on bypass.
  - d. Inverter in alarm condition.
  - e. Inverter off (maintenance bypass closed).
5. Include the following minimum array:
- a. Ready, normal-power on light.
  - b. Charge light.
  - c. Inverter supply load light.
  - d. Battery voltmeter.
  - e. AC output voltmeter with minimum accuracy of 2 percent of full scale.
  - f. Load ammeter.
  - g. Test switch to simulate ac failure.
6. Enclosure: Steel, with hinged lockable doors, suitable for wall **OR** floor, **as directed**, mounting. Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant finish.
- I. Optional Features
1. Multiple Output Voltages: Supply unit branch circuits at different voltage levels if required. Transform voltages internally as required to produce indicated output voltages.
  2. Emergency-Only Circuits: Automatically energize only when normal supply has failed. Disconnect emergency-only circuits when normal power is restored.
  3. Maintenance Bypass/Isolation Switch: Load is supplied, bypassing central battery inverter system. Normal supply, electromechanical transfer switch, and system load terminals are completely disconnected from external circuits.
  4. Maintenance Bypass/Isolation Switch: Switch is interlocked so it cannot be operated unless static bypass transfer switch is in bypass mode. Switch provides manual selection among the following three conditions without interrupting supply to the load during switching:
    - a. Full Isolation: Load is supplied, bypassing central battery inverter system. Normal ac input circuit, static bypass transfer switch, and central battery inverter load terminals are completely disconnected from external circuits.
    - b. Maintenance Bypass: Load is supplied, bypassing central battery inverter system. Central battery inverter ac supply terminals are energized to permit operational checking, but system load terminals are isolated from the load.
    - c. Normal: Normal central battery inverter ac supply terminals are energized and the load is supplied either through static bypass transfer switch and central battery inverter rectifier-charger and inverter or through battery and inverter.
- J. Output Distribution Section



1. Panelboard: Comply with Division 26 Section "Panelboards" except provide assembly integral to equipment cabinet.

K. System Monitoring And Alarms

1. Remote Status and Alarm Panel: Labeled LEDs on panel faceplate shall indicate five basic status conditions. Audible signal indicates alarm conditions. Silencing switch in face of panel silences signal without altering visual indication.
  - a. Cabinet and Faceplate: Surface or flush mounted to suit mounting conditions indicated.
2. Provisions for Remote Computer Monitoring: Communication module in unit control panel provides capability for remote monitoring of status, parameters, and alarms specified in Part 1.2 "Control and Indication" Article. Remote computer and connecting signal wiring will be provided by the Owner. Include the following features:
  - a. Connectors and network interface units or modems for data transmission via RS-232 link.
  - b. Software shall be designed to control and monitor inverter system functions and to provide on-screen explanations, interpretations, diagnosis, action guidance, and instructions for use of monitoring indications and development of reports. Include capability for storage and analysis of power-line transient records. Software shall be compatible with requirements in Division 26 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring And Control" and the operating system and configuration of the Owner-furnished computers.
3. Battery Ground-Fault Detector: Initiates alarm when resistance to ground of positive or negative bus of battery is less than 5000 ohms.
  - a. Annunciation of Alarms: At inverter system control panel.
4. Battery-Cycle Warranty Monitoring: Electronic device, acceptable to battery manufacturer as a basis for warranty action, for monitoring charge-discharge cycle history of batteries covered by cycle-life warranty.
  - a. Basic Functional Performance: Automatically measures and records each discharge event, classifies it according to duration category, and totals discharges according to warranty criteria, displaying remaining warranted battery life on integral LCD.
  - b. Additional monitoring functions and features shall include the following:
    - 1) Measuring and recording of total voltage at battery terminals; providing alarm for excursions outside proper float voltage level.
    - 2) Monitoring of ambient temperature at battery and initiating an alarm if temperature deviates from normally acceptable range.
    - 3) Keypad on device front panel provides access to monitored data using front panel display.
    - 4) Alarm contacts arranged to provide local **OR** remote, **as directed**, alarm for battery discharge events **OR** abnormal temperature **OR** abnormal battery voltage or temperature, **as directed**.
    - 5) Memory device to store recorded data in nonvolatile electronic memory.
    - 6) RS-232 port to permit downloading of data to a portable personal computer.
    - 7) Modem to make measurements and recorded data accessible to remote personal computer via telephone line. Computer will be provided by the Owner.

L. Source Quality Control

1. Factory test complete inverter system, including battery, before shipment. Include the following:
  - a. Functional test and demonstration of all functions, controls, indicators, sensors, and protective devices.
  - b. Full-load test.
  - c. Transient-load response test.
  - d. Overload test.
  - e. Power failure test.
2. Observation of Test: Give 14 days' advance notice of tests and provide access for the Owner's representative to observe tests at the Owner's option.
3. Report test results. Include the following data:



- a. Description of input source and output loads used. Describe actions required to simulate source load variation and various operating conditions and malfunctions.
- b. List of indications, parameter values, and system responses considered satisfactory for each test action. Include tabulation of actual observations during test.
- c. List of instruments and equipment used in factory tests.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation

1. Install system components on floor **OR** concrete base, **as directed**, and attach by bolting.
  - a. Design each fastener and support to carry load indicated by seismic requirements and according to seismic-restraint details. See Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems" for seismic-restraint requirements.
  - b. Concrete Bases: 4 inches (100 mm) high, reinforced, with chamfered edges. Extend base no more than 3 inches (75 mm) in all directions beyond the maximum dimensions of switchgear unless otherwise indicated or unless required for seismic anchor support. Construct concrete bases according to Division 26 Section "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems".
  - c. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - d. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
  - e. Use 3000-psi (20.7-MPa), 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
2. Maintain minimum clearances and workspace at equipment according to manufacturer's written instructions and NFPA 70.

#### B. Connections

1. Connections: Interconnect system components. Make connections to supply and load circuits according to manufacturer's wiring diagrams, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
  - a. Separately Derived Systems: Make grounding connections to grounding electrodes and bonding connections to metallic piping systems as indicated; comply with NFPA 70.
3. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".

#### C. Identification

1. Identify equipment and components according to Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".

#### D. Field Quality Control

1. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
  - a. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
2. Tests and Inspections:
  - a. Inspect interiors of enclosures for integrity of mechanical and electrical connections, component type and labeling verification, and ratings of installed components.
  - b. Test manual and automatic operational features and system protective and alarm functions.
  - c. Test communication of status and alarms to remote monitoring equipment.
  - d. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specifications. Certify compliance with test parameters.



- e. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- 3. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

E. Startup Service

- 1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
- 2. Verify that central battery inverter is installed and connected according to the Contract Documents.
- 3. Verify that electrical wiring installation complies with manufacturer's submittal and installation requirements in Division 22.
- 4. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Adjusting And Cleaning

- 1. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
- 2. Install new filters in each equipment cabinet within 14 days from date of Final Completion.

END OF SECTION 26 33 43 00

**SECTION 26 33 43 00a - NURSE CALL****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for nurse call. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Summary**

1. Section includes visual/tone and audiovisual/voice nurse-call system.

**C. Submittals**

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - a. Detail equipment cabinets and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - b. Cabling Diagrams: Single-line block diagrams showing cabling interconnection of all components for this specific equipment. Include cable type for each interconnection.
  - c. Station Installation Details: For built-in equipment, dimensioned and to scale.
3. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
4. Field quality-control reports.
5. Operation and Maintenance Data: For nurse-call equipment to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
6. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

**D. Quality Assurance**

1. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
2. Compatibility: System shall be capable of integration with any brand of phone system (wired or wireless), staff locating system, CCTV, and fire-alarm system.
3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled according to UL 1069 as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

**E. Warranty**

1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace batteries that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. Special warranty for batteries applies to materials only, on a prorated basis for specified period.
  - a. Warranty Period: Include the following warranty periods, from date of Final Completion:
    - 1) Nickel-Cadmium Batteries, Lithium Batteries, and Wet-Cell Batteries:
      - a) Full Warranty: Five years.
      - b) Pro Rata: 15 years.

**1.2 PRODUCTS****A. Nurse-Call System General Requirements**

1. Station Zones: Able to program 256 station zones for each master station in the network with eight priority levels and addressable visual and audible annunciation of audible devices such as smoke detectors and door contacts.
2. System shall provide integrated and centralized "Code Blue" and "Staff Emergency" calls.



3. Expansion Capability: Equipment ratings, housing volume, spare keys, switches, relays, annunciator modules, terminals, and cable conductor quantities adequate to increase the number of stations in the future by 25 percent above those indicated without adding internal or external components or main trunk cable conductors.
4. Existing System Compatibility: Functionally and electrically compatible with existing system so components and wiring operate as an extension or upgrade of the existing system and existing or upgraded functional performance of the existing system applies to the entire final system. Colors, tones, types, and durations of signal manifestation shall be common among new and existing systems.
5. Resistance to Electrostatic Discharge: System, components, and cabling, and the selection, arrangement, and connection of materials and circuits, shall be protected against damage or diminished performance when subjected to electrostatic discharges of up to 25,000 V in an environment with a relative humidity of 20 percent or less.
6. Equipment: Microprocessor, electronic, modular.
7. Master Nurse-Call Station: Programmed via a PC.
8. Wall-Mounted Component Connection Method: Components connect to system wiring in back boxes with factory-wired plug connectors.
9. Telephone Interface: Permit use of wired and wireless telephones to execute nurse-call master station functions.
10. Third-Party Pager Interface: Programmable to send tone, numeric, and alphanumeric message to pocket pagers or personal digital assistants and to use industry standard-protocol, RS-485 interface.

#### B. Visual/Tone Nurse-Call System

1. Operational Requirements:
  - a. Patient Station Call: Lights a steady call-placed lamp on the station, steady lamps in the zone light and corridor dome light associated with the patient's room, and steady lamps at the central annunciator and other system display devices and displays message on master and staff/duty stations. At the same time, it sounds a programmed tone at intervals, at the respective annunciator and master and staff/duty stations. Legends at the central annunciator and master station identify the calling station.
  - b. Pull-Cord-Call Station Call: Flashes a call-placed lamp on the station and distinctive-color lamps in the zone light and corridor dome light and at the central annunciator and staff/duty stations. At the same time, it sounds a programmed tone at intervals, at the central annunciator and master and staff/duty stations. A legend at the master station identifies the calling station, priority as programmed, and bed identification.
  - c. Emergency-Call Station Call: Produces the same responses as pull-cord-call station calls except rapidly flashing red emergency digital display and tone repetition rates are more frequent, tone frequency is higher, and lamps in the zone light and corridor dome light are a different color. Indicator lamps may be extinguished and the system reset only at the calling station. Displays message on pocket pagers, sounds programmed tone on phones, and displays message on display equipped phones.
  - d. System Reset: Operating reset button at the originating station cancels signals associated with the call. Illuminates a green digital display on the patient station and log presence on the master station.
  - e. Cord-Set Removal: Initiates a patient station call when the cord set is removed from the jack in the patient station faceplate. Displays location and "cord removed" message on master station, pocket pagers, and display equipped phones. Inserting a cord-set plug or a dummy plug into the jack and operating the station reset button resets the call.
  - f. Patient Control Unit: Controls entertainment volume and channel selection. Nurse button on the unit initiates a patient station call. Integral speaker reproduces entertainment sound.
  - g. Emergency Bath Station Call: Illuminates the digital display on the emergency bath station; rapidly flashes white dome lamp; displays location, priority, and bath on master



- station; and sounds programmed tone on master station display equipped phones and pocket pagers.
- h. Staff/Duty Station Operation: Operation shall be identified to patient station except the message staff shall display on all devices when the staff call button is activated.
  - i. Privacy Key Activation: When privacy key is activated on patient station, the system shall disconnect the patient station microphone and slowly flash yellow privacy digital display on the patient station. Displays "privacy" on master station when selecting this room/bed.
- 2. Central Annunciator:
    - a. Lamp type.
    - b. Lamp Legends: Machine lettered and legible from a distance of at least 48 inches (1200 mm) when a call is present. Legend shall identify initiating station and priority of call.
    - c. Power-on Indicator: Digital, or push-to-test switch.
    - d. Audible Signal: Electronic tone.
  - 3. Central Equipment Cabinet:
    - a. Lockable metal.
    - b. Houses power supplies, controls, terminal strips, and other components.
    - c. Power-on indicator lamp.
    - d. Battery Backup Unit: Sealed nickel-cadmium, wet-cell battery supplies power through an automatic switch when normal power fails, for a period of not less than six minutes at rated output. System shall lose no unanswered calls or calls in progress during the transfer operation.
      - 1) Automatic retransfer to normal power, after a 15-minute time delay.
      - 2) Two-rate battery charger with an automatic trickle rate and a recharge rate.
  - 4. Single-Patient Station: Call-placed lamp, reset push button, and polarized receptacle matching cord-set plug; mounted in a single faceplate.
  - 5. Dual-Patient Station: Single call-placed lamp, single reset push button, and two polarized receptacles matching cord-set plug; mounted in a single faceplate.
  - 6. Ambulatory-Patient Station: Call push-button switch, call-placed lamp, and reset push button; mounted in a single faceplate.
  - 7. Staff/Duty Stations: A minimum of two call lamps, one for routine calls and one for emergency calls; and an audible tone signal device.
- C. Audiovisual/Voice Nurse-Call System
- 1. Operational Requirements:
    - a. Station Selection from Master Station: Capable of selectively communicating with other stations or groups of stations on its system by touch screen, mouse click, or manual switch; and capable of programming up to 256 stations for each master station in the network.
    - b. Master Station Privacy: Capable of conversing with individual stations in complete privacy.
    - c. Called Station:
      - 1) Capable of hands-free and two-way conversation.
      - 2) Pressing "talk/listen" key shall cause the annunciation tone to cease.
      - 3) Pressing "cancel" key terminates normal calls and conversations.
      - 4) Terminating of high-priority level 1 **OR** 2 **OR** 3 **OR** 4, **as directed**, shall not be allowed except at calling station location and shall send "remind" message if the call is not acknowledged at point of origin in programmed time frame.
    - d. Annunciation:
      - 1) At the master station, a programmable tone announces an incoming call; an annunciator light or digital display identifies the calling station and indicates the priority of the call.
      - 2) Call type indications include alarm assist, bath, bed, code, communication fault, cord out, door, emergency, and fire.
      - 3) Memory lamps or lighted displays identify stations selected for outgoing calls.
    - e. System Reset at Master Station: A normal, incoming call can be canceled, associated lights and audible tones extinguished, and the system reset when the station switch is returned to the normal position.



- f. Patient Station Calls:
  - 1) Lights the call-placed lamp at patient station, zone, and corridor dome lights.
  - 2) Sounds a tone and lights the call lights at staff/duty stations and actuates annunciation at the master station.
  - 3) When the calling station is selected at the master station, the patient can converse with the master station without moving and without raising or directing the voice.
  - 4) During voice communications, entertainment audio at the calling station is automatically muted.
- g. Pull-Cord-Call Station Calls and Emergency-Call Station Calls:
  - 1) Lights call-placed lamp and corridor dome light and flashes zone light.
  - 2) Master station tone pulses and annunciator light for that room flashes.
  - 3) When master station acknowledges the call by touch screen or switch, the tone stops but lights continue to flash until the call is canceled at the initiating point.
- h. Code Blue and Staff/Duty Station Calls:
  - 1) Lights the call-placed lamp at the station and actuates annunciation at the master station.
  - 2) When the called station is selected at the master station, the caller and the master station operator can converse.
  - 3) Code Blue: Unique sound and light pattern indicating the highest priority emergency.
  - 4) Staff Station: Unique sound and light pattern indicating an emergency.
  - 5) Duty Station: Sound and light pattern indicating a call to the nurse station.
- i. Handset Operation: Lifting the handset on master station disconnects speaker/microphone and transfers conversation to the handset.
- j. Station Privacy: No patient or staff/duty station can be remotely monitored without lighting a warning lamp at the monitored station.
- k. Patient Station Cord-Set Removal:
  - 1) A patient station call is initiated as described above when a patient station cord-set plug is removed from the jack in the station faceplate.
  - 2) Tone stops but lights continue to flash until the call is canceled at the initiating point or the plug is reinserted or replaced with a dummy plug when the master station call button for the station is pressed.
- l. Patient Control Unit:
  - 1) Controls entertainment volume and channel selection.
  - 2) Speaker is used for both nurse communication and entertainment sound.
  - 3) Entertainment sound is automatically muted when station is communicating with master station.
  - 4) Nurse button on the unit initiates a patient station call.
- m. Selective Paging: Master station is capable of initiating a message to selected groups of stations or speakers simultaneously by using station group switches.
- n. Staff Reminder:
  - 1) Master station can initiate a staff reminder that a patient requires direct staff response by operating a reminder control while in contact with the patient station.
  - 2) This reminder will light a distinctive-color lamp in the corridor dome light at the patient's room and in the appropriate zone lights.
  - 3) Reminder calls are canceled by operating a staff reminder cancel switch in the patient's room.
- o. Call Priority Indication:
  - 1) Capable of eight call priority levels in addition to normal.
  - 2) Call priority switch near each patient station, or integral with the master station, shall control priority status of the call transmitted by individual stations.
  - 3) Switch selects one of the following status levels:
    - a) Normal: No change to the normal call initiation and canceling sequence.





- b) Emergency: Call initiation produces signals and indications identical to those of emergency-call stations. Indicator lamps are extinguished and the system is reset only at the originating station.
- c) Priority: System response is the same for emergency status except voice communication between the master station and the calling station is locked in from the time of call initiation until the system is reset at the originating station.
- p. Additional Call:
  - 1) Waiting display window on the master station similar to current call window displays incoming calls.
  - 2) Master station shall have a call-overflow indicator when incoming calls exceed <Insert number> calls.
  - 3) System shall store unlimited number of incoming calls.
  - 4) System shall be capable of automatically answering incoming calls in order of priority.
- q. Calling Intercom Stations:
  - 1) Master station shall be capable of calling any intercom station using the handset or the hands-free speaker/microphone.
  - 2) Receipt of a call at the intercom station shall be preceded by an optional pre-announce tone.
  - 3) If there is a call in process, system shall place the active call on automatic hold while the new call is placed, then reestablish the previous call when the new call has ended.
- r. Privacy Override:
  - 1) Temporarily deactivates the "Privacy" mode of a called station by calling the station and instructing the called party to press the call-cord button.
  - 2) On completion of the conversation, the called station shall automatically return to the "Privacy" mode.
  - 3) When in "Privacy" mode, a called station shall be capable of hearing the master station; however, the master station shall not be capable of hearing the called station; a privacy message shall be indicated on the master station display.
- s. Master-Station-to-Master-Station Calls:
  - 1) Master stations shall be capable of calling other master stations using the handset.
  - 2) Calls from master stations shall be answered using the handset only.
  - 3) Busy master stations shall be indicated by a master station intercom busy tone.
- t. Voice Paging:
  - 1) Capable of voice paging to all stations using a single "All Call" key. The page shall be preceded by an optional pre-announce tone, **as directed**.
  - 2) Capable of voice paging to eight user-defined groups of stations by selecting the group and then the "All Call" key. The page shall be preceded by a pre-announce tone, **as directed**.
  - 3) Capable of voice paging to all staff/duty stations and all patient stations where staff has registered presence using a single "Public Address (PA)/Staff" key. The page shall be preceded by a pre-announce tone, **as directed**.
  - 4) Capable of voice paging through a third-party PA system.
  - 5) Capable of including or excluding any station from the voice paging function(s).
  - 6) Automatically places an active station call on hold during any page and reestablishes the connection at the end of the page.
  - 7) Automatically cancels a page if the talk mode is inactive for more than 15 seconds.
- u. Station Monitor:
  - 1) An audio monitor feature shall allow a user to sequentially or simultaneously listen to one or all stations that are included in the user-created list.
  - 2) Master station display shall indicate which station is being monitored when in sequential mode.
  - 3) The dwell time each station is monitored shall be user programmable.
  - 4) The user shall be able to stop the monitoring sequence by activating a "pause" key.



- 5) The user shall be able to manually sequence through stations using a "next" key.
- v. Night Service:
- 1) Functions shall be adaptable for nighttime staffing levels, patient traffic, and day/night operations.
  - 2) Staff Follow:
    - a) Capable of locating roving staff; forwarding visual and audible annunciation of incoming calls to station(s) where personnel have registered presence.
    - b) Master station shall display locations where staff have registered presence.
    - c) Incorporates a programmable timer that automatically cancels a forgotten staff presence registration.
  - 3) Tones:
    - a) Deactivates audio signals from a duty station and mini-master display telephones.
    - b) Capable of changing the tone volume at the master and duty stations.
    - c) Satellite function shall permit the user to deactivate audio signals from duty stations and other remote annunciator devices.
  - 4) Transfer:
    - a) Permits one nurse station to take control of all or individually selected bed call cords from another nurse station. It shall be possible to view transfer status of a nurse station.
    - b) Includes a minimum of three transfer modes to allow one nurse station to take control or share calls and operations from another nurse station.
      - i. Parallel Transfer Mode: Permits both nurse stations to share all calls and operations.
      - ii. Supervised Transfer Mode: Permits the transferred nurse station to share all calls and operations with the controlling nurse station; however, the controlling nurse station calls are not shared with the transferring station.
      - iii. Capture Transfer Mode: Transfers all calls and operations from the transferred nurse station to the controlling nurse station.
      - iv. Transferred station shall have no control over calls, and its display shall indicate calls have been transferred to another station.
    - c) Includes two "patient swing" modes to allow one nurse station to take control or share calls from one or many calls from another nurse station.
      - i. Supervised Transfer Mode: Permits the transferred calls to be shared with the controlling nurse station.
      - ii. Capture Transfer Mode: Transfers all calls from the call cord from the transferred nurse station to the controlling nurse station.
      - iii. Transferred station has no control over those transferred calls.
- w. Service Request:
- 1) Permits users to assign a service request to a substation, at programmable priority level.
  - 2) Displays service request on the nurse station display and light the green flashing corridor lamp at the respective substation and automatically generate a service reminder request.
  - 3) Cancels service requests only at the initiating point.
  - 4) Recall calls shall sound and be displayed at the master station if the service request has not been cancelled at the initiating point within the programmed period of time.
- x. Call Reminder Function:
- 1) Automatically generates a reminder call for a patient- or staff-initiated, high-priority 2 **OR 3 OR 4, as directed**, request that has had the call tones silenced, allowing time to physically attend to the request and cancel the call at the initiating point.
  - 2) Regenerated calls shall display the same tones and visual indications and priority as the original call and shall also display a "regenerated call" message.
  - 3) Capable of manually adding low-priority calls to the reminder list.



- 4) "Call Reminder" function and reminder timer shall be programmable by call priority.
- y. Hide Function: Prevents a selected station from displaying calls or generating tones on the nurse station.
- z. Door Control Function: Capable of being programmed to enable the user to remotely activate electric door locks.
- aa. Test and Diagnostics Feature:
  - 1) Able to automatically diagnose system faults and categorize them as warnings, communication errors, or fatal errors.
  - 2) Warnings shall indicate possible system problems.
  - 3) Communication errors shall indicate the inability of the master station to communicate with a substation or another nurse-call station.
  - 4) Fatal errors shall indicate a major hardware or software failure.
- bb. User-Configured System Programming - Access Code Not Required:
  - 1) Patient call-cord priority levels.
  - 2) Monitor list.
  - 3) "All Call" list.
  - 4) Master station communication parameters (volume, filtering, talk/listen, sensitivity).
  - 5) Master and duty station call annunciation tone volume.
  - 6) Date/time.
  - 7) Staff-follow operating mode.
  - 8) Transfer type.
  - 9) Pocket pager list assignment.
  - 10) Presence mode.
- cc. User-Configured System Programming - Access Code Required:
  - 1) Master station number.
  - 2) Room device type.
  - 3) Room number.
  - 4) Bed number.
  - 5) Bed alpha or numeric.
  - 6) Reminder duration.
  - 7) Staff presence registration cancel duration.
  - 8) Display language.
  - 9) Paging group assignment(s).
  - 10) Zone group assignments.
  - 11) Monitoring duration.
  - 12) Pocket pager number.
  - 13) Call tone assignment by priority.
  - 14) Pretone activation.
  - 15) Call tones minimum volume.
  - 16) Clock mode (12 h/24 h).
- 2. Master Station:
  - a. Speaker/microphone unit with operating controls.
  - b. Indicator lamps with legends or by digital display designate identification and priority of calling stations and called stations.
  - c. Pulse rate of incoming-call lights denotes priority of calls awaiting response.
  - d. Station Selection Controls: Touchpad select stations for two-way voice communications.
  - e. Signal Tones: Programmable to announce incoming calls.
  - f. Pulse rate and frequency of tone identify the highest priority call awaiting response at one time.
  - g. Volume Control: Regulates incoming-call volume.
  - h. Privacy Handset with Hook Switch: Of the type that does not require push-to-talk switch attached to each station unless otherwise indicated.
  - i. Staff Reminder Control: Initiates flashing of corresponding corridor dome lights for patients requiring service. Permits scanning equipment to indicate which patients are currently in reminder status.



- j. Call Priority Selection: Controls associated with patient-station selection switches determine the priority displayed when a call is initiated at a patient station.
3. Central Equipment Cabinet:
- a. Lockable metal.
  - b. Houses amplifiers, tone generators, power supplies, controls, terminal strips, and other components.
  - c. Amplifier: With fidelity and overall gain necessary to achieve the sound-transmission and reproduction characteristics specified, considering interoperability with the installed speakers/microphones and wiring.
    - 1) Power Output: Not less than 3 W at a total harmonic distortion not exceeding 5 percent.
    - 2) Hum and Noise: 60 dB below full output with normal input open.
    - 3) Volume Control: Concealed within the amplifier unit to control the volume of sound reproduced at all stations.
    - 4) Protection: Circuit to prevent damage to the amplifier in case of shorted or open circuit.
  - d. Selective Paging Amplifiers: Plug-in card mounted in central equipment cabinet, rated 15 W.
  - e. System Power Supply:
    - 1) 24-V dc for operation of the call system.
    - 2) Equipment Rating: Suitable for continuous operation between 32 and 120 deg F (0 and 49 deg C), from a primary line voltage between 105- to 125-V ac, 60 Hz.
    - 3) Output: Regulated 24-V dc with protection against overloads. Line-to-load regulation shall not exceed 2-1/2 percent with ripple and noise remaining below the 10-mV, rms level.
    - 4) Overload Protection: Electronic fold-back circuit set to limit the volt-ampere output to less than 100 VA during overloaded or shorted output. Restore power output automatically on removal of overload without resetting circuit breakers or replacing fuses.
  - f. Power-on indicator lamp.
  - g. Surge Protector Device: Comply with Division 26 Section "Transient-voltage Suppression For Low-voltage Electrical Power Circuits" for auxiliary panel suppressors, with digital indicator lights for power and protection status.
  - h. Battery Backup Unit: Sealed nickel-cadmium, wet-cell battery supplies power through an automatic switch when normal power fails, for a period of not less than six minutes at rated output.
    - 1) Automatic retransfer to normal power, after a 15-minute time delay.
    - 2) Two-rate battery charger with an automatic trickle rate and a recharge rate.
4. Speaker/Microphones:
- a. Type: Permanent-magnet, dynamic or ceramic, protected against dust and humidity.
  - b. Sound Reproduction: Sound level of 90 dB plus or minus 3 dB at a distance of 48 inches (1220 mm) on the axis without overdriving or distorting any frequencies between 300 and 3000 Hz when installed in an enclosure or in the pillow speaker.
  - c. Power Handling Capacity: Not susceptible to damage from overdriving within the range of power available from the amplifier.
  - d. Impedance Matching: Coordinated and matched to the input and output circuits of the amplifier, both for single connection and for group monitoring, to provide the sound reproduction specified. Subsystems or components shall not be combined, which could cause unacceptable distortion such as feedback between pillow speakers and unmuted room speaker/microphone combinations. This protection shall extend throughout the entire range of operation (volume control) of all components.
5. Single-Patient Station: Speaker/microphone with 2-inch (50-mm) dynamic cone, a polarized receptacle to match the cord-set plug, monitor lamp, reset switch, and call-placed lamp; assembled under a single faceplate.
6. Dual-Patient Station:



- a. Speaker/microphone with 2-inch (50-mm) dynamic cone, two polarized receptacles to match cord-set plugs, monitor lamp, and reset switch; assembled under a single faceplate.
  - b. Single call-placed lamp serves both beds.  
**OR**  
Dual call-placed lamps, one for each bed.
7. Staff/Duty Stations: Audible call-tone signal device, speaker/microphone with 2-inch (50-mm) dynamic cone, monitor lamp, reset switch, routine-call lamp, emergency-call lamp, and call push button; assembled under a single faceplate.
  8. Code Blue Station: Audible call-tone signal device, speaker/microphone with 2-inch (50-mm) dynamic cone, monitor lamp, reset switch, Code Blue emergency-call lamp, and call push button; assembled under a single faceplate.
  9. Ambulatory-Patient Station: Speaker/microphone with 2-inch (50-mm) dynamic cone, monitor lamp, reset switch, call-placed lamp, and call push button; assembled under a single faceplate.
  10. Selective Paging Speakers: 8-inch (200-mm) cone type with 1-inch (25-mm) voice coil and minimum 5-oz. (140-g) ceramic magnet, multitap matching transformer, flush-mounted steel back-box, and white enamel-finished metal ceiling grille.
  11. Call Priority Switch Station: Three-position, tamper-resistant priority selection switch. Positions designated by labeling "Normal," "Emergency," and "Priority."
  12. Staff Reminder Cancel Switch Station: Momentary contact.
- D. System Components
1. Emergency-Call Station: Locking-type push button, labeled "Push to Call Help"; reset trigger to release push button and cancel call; and call-placed lamp, mounted in a single faceplate.
  2. Emergency-Bath Station:
    - a. Consists of a sliding, chemical-resistant, ABS red fascia marked with the word "URGENT" in bold letters.
    - b. Capable of being activated with nylon pull cord or by sliding the face of the unit downwards.
    - c. Activation of the station shall illuminate a reassurance digital display on the face of the unit in addition to notifying the master station.
    - d. Water resistant and able to withstand routine cleaning and chemical disinfectants.
    - e. Uses magnetic reed switch technology for reliability and corrosion resistance.
    - f. Mounts on a single-gang electrical box wire to the respective patient station or input controller.
  3. Code Blue Station:
    - a. Consists of a sliding, chemical-resistant, ABS blue fascia marked with the word "CODE" in bold letters.
    - b. Capable of being activated with nylon pull cord or by sliding the face of the unit downwards.
    - c. Activation of the station shall illuminate a reassurance digital display on the face of the unit in addition to notifying the master station.
    - d. Water resistant and able to withstand routine cleaning and chemical disinfectants.
    - e. Uses magnetic reed switch technology for reliability and corrosion resistance.
    - f. Mounts on a single-gang electrical box wire to the respective patient station or input controller.
  4. Staff, Emergency Station:
    - a. Consists of a sliding, chemical-resistant, ABS red fascia marked with the word "EMERGENCY" in bold letters.
    - b. Capable of being activated with nylon pull cord or by sliding the face of the unit downwards.
    - c. Activation of the station shall illuminate a reassurance digital display on the face of the unit in addition to notifying the master station.
    - d. Mounts on a single-gang electrical box wire to the input controller.
  5. Pull-Cord-Call Station:
    - a. Pull-Down Switch: Lever-locking type, labeled "Pull Down to Call Help."
    - b. Reset trigger.



- c. Call-placed lamp.
- d. Water-resistant construction.
6. Patient Control Unit:
  - a. Equipped with plug and 96-inch- (2400-mm-) long white cord.
  - b. Ethylene oxide, sterilizable.
  - c. Light-Control Switch: Arranged for independent on-off control of patient's up and down light.
  - d. Integral Speaker: 2 inches (50 mm), with 0.35-oz. (9.9-g) magnet, rated 0.2 W.
  - e. Controls: Speaker volume, TV control, and nurse call.
  - f. Housing: High-impact white plastic.
  - g. Attachment: Stainless-steel bed clamp with permanently attached polyester film strap.
  - h. Quantity: 12 units for every 10 patient beds.
7. Call-Button Cord Set:
  - a. Plug and 72-inch (1800-mm) white cord; cord set shall be resistant to medical gas environment equipped with momentary-action, call-button switch.
  - b. Ethylene oxide, sterilizable.
  - c. Washable cord.
  - d. Palladium switch contacts in high-impact white housing with cord-set strain relief.
  - e. Attachment: Stainless-steel bed clamp with permanently attached polyester film strap.
  - f. Quantity: Three cord sets for every 10 patient beds.
8. Geriatric Call-Button Cord Set:
  - a. Plug and 72-inch (1800-mm) white cord.
  - b. Resistant to medical gas environment equipped with momentary-action, light-pressure switch in soft outer jacket.
  - c. Ethylene oxide, sterilizable.
  - d. Washable cord.
  - e. Palladium switch contacts in high-impact white housing with cord-set strain relief.
  - f. Attachment: Stainless-steel bed clamp with permanently attached polyester film strap.
  - g. Quantity: Two cord sets for every 10 patient beds.
9. Squeeze-Bulb Switch Cord Set:
  - a. Plug and 72-inch (1800-mm) washable tube with white cord set.
  - b. Resistant to medical gas environment; washable; equipped with neoprene squeeze-bulb activator, and plug-mounted, momentary contact switch.
  - c. Ethylene oxide, sterilizable.
  - d. Attachment: Stainless-steel bed clamp with permanently attached polyester film strap.
  - e. Quantity: Two cord sets for every 10 patient beds.
10. Breath Call Cord:
  - a. Flexible PVC jacketed cable and a momentary contact air-pressure sensitive switch.
  - b. Cord: 108 inches (2700 mm) long.
  - c. Include an adjustable arm for clamping and suitable for use in oxygen atmospheres.
  - d. Include 12 replacement straws.
11. Pillow Speakers:
  - a. Eight-conductor, DIN, flexible PVC jacketed cable.
  - b. Contain nurse-call button, volume control, speaker, and channel control in molded flame-retardant ABS housing.
  - c. Cord: 96 inches (2400 mm) long with sheet clip.
12. Call-Button Plug:
  - a. Designed to plug into patient station cord-set receptacle.
  - b. Button switches call circuit.
  - c. Two plugs for every 10 patient beds.
13. Dummy Plugs:
  - a. Designed to plug into patient station cord-set receptacle when call-button plug or patient cord set is not used.
  - b. Three plugs for every 10 patient beds.
14. Indicator Lamps: Digital type with rated life of 20 years unless otherwise indicated.



15. Station Faceplates:
  - a. Stainless steel, a minimum of 0.0375 inch (0.95 mm) thick.
  - b. Finish: Brushed.
  - c. Machine-engraved labeling identifies indicator lamps and controls.

**OR**

Station Faceplates:

  - a. High-impact plastic.
  - b. Color: Beige.
  - c. Molded or machine-engraved labeling identifies indicator lamps and controls.
16. Corridor Dome Lights and Zone Lights:
  - a. Three-lamp signal lights.
  - b. Lamps: Front replaceable without tools, low voltage with rated life of 7500 hours. Barriers are such that only one color is displayed at a time.
  - c. Lenses: Heat-resistant, shatterproof, translucent polymer that will not deform, discolor, or craze when exposed to hospital cleaning agents.
  - d. Filters: Two per unit, amber and red.
17. Cable:
  - a. Conductors: Jacketed single and multiple, twisted-pair copper cables.
  - b. Sizes and Types: As recommended by equipment manufacturer.
  - c. Cable for Use in Plenums: Listed and labeled for plenum installation.
18. Grounding Components: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".

E. Software Requirements

1. Telephone System Interface:
  - a. Permits use of wired and/or wireless telephones to execute nurse-call master station.
  - b. Two-way communication with patient and staff stations.
  - c. Two-way communication with the master nurse station.
  - d. "All Call," group call, and staff call paging.
  - e. Capable of being programmed to forward calls destined for a master nurse station to any connected telephone.
  - f. Telephones connected to the telephone interface shall have the same call tone ring patterns as those generated at the master nurse station.
  - g. Telephones having a display shall indicate the call type, priority code, and the calling station number of incoming calls.
  - h. Telephones shall be capable of initiating a service request for a particular patient station, logging calls on the master station's reminder list, and activating door lock mechanisms associated with a call station.
  - i. Capable of routine setup and configuration changes using the keypads on display telephone and/or the master station.
2. Display Telephones:
  - a. Digital telephones for use as mini-master nurse-call stations.
  - b. Digital display shall indicate the call type, priority code, and calling station number of incoming calls.
  - c. Ring patterns shall be identical to those generated at the master station.
  - d. Capable of two-way communication with patient and staff stations and the master station, and other telephones interfaced with the system.
  - e. Capable of placing or answering outside calls when interfaced with the facility telephone system.
  - f. Capable of "All Call," group call, and staff call paging and of initiating service requests, logging calls to the reminder list, and activating optional door controls.
3. Third-Party Pocket Pager Interface:
  - a. Equipped with a standalone pocket pager interface.
  - b. Connects with the facility paging system and transmit alphanumeric messages to the pocket pagers as preprogrammed in the system.
4. Statistical Software:



- a. Includes a data statistical software package that stores, sorts, and analyzes activities occurring on the nurse-call system network.
  - b. Windows based and operated on a PC that is connected to the nurse-call system network.
  - c. Stores events on the PC's hard disk. Accumulation of these stored events shall make up the database that is used to generate reports and statistics.
  - d. Events stored by the software shall include date, day of week, time, ward, priority, and room number.
  - e. Capable of assigning a patient name to bed number.
  - f. Stored events shall include, but not be limited to, calls placed, call priority, calls cancelled at the nurse station, calls cancelled at the point of origin, regenerated calls, calls answered, calls sent to pager interface, staff presence registration, staff presence cancellation, service request, service cancellation, and system and network error messages.
5. Data Analysis Software:
- a. Capable of analyzing the stored information and generating computed analysis.
  - b. Analysis of the database can be conducted by specifying one, many, or all of the following parameters of the database: date, day of week, time, wards, priority, and room number.
  - c. Analysis shall include, but not be limited to, total number of calls placed, average call response time (from call placed to call cancellation), total number of presence registrations, average presence time in a room, total number of service requests, average response time (from audio answer to call cancellation), and average ring time (from call placed to audio answer).
6. Statistical Software Package:
- a. Capable of displaying multiple calls/events on a PC monitor or on a RS-485 data-bus-driven digital display panel.
  - b. Calls from patient or staff stations and associated devices shall be displayed by priority. Display shall be customizable as follows:
    - 1) Choice of color by type of call.
    - 2) Choice of display size (character size).
    - 3) Choice of priority levels, type of events, points of origin.
    - 4) Identification of facility.
    - 5) Identification of ward.
    - 6) Identification of patient with specific patient information.

#### F. Conductors And Cables

1. Audio Cables:
  - a. Conductors: Jacketed, twisted-pair and twisted-multipair, untinned solid copper. Sizes as recommended by system manufacturer, but no smaller than No. 22 AWG.
  - b. Insulation: Thermoplastic, not less than 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) thick.
  - c. Shielding: For speaker/microphone leads and elsewhere where recommended by manufacturer; No. 34 AWG, tinned, soft-copper strands formed into a braid or equivalent foil.
  - d. Minimum Shielding Coverage on Conductors: 60 percent.
  - e. Plenum Cable: Listed and labeled for plenum installation.
2. Data Cable and Hardware: Category 5e **OR** Category 6, **as directed**, UTP and UTP hardware. Comply with requirements in Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling".
3. Power Conductors and Cables: Copper, solid, No. 20 AWG. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".
4. Grounding Conductors and Cables: Copper, stranded, No. 16 AWG. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation

1. Wiring Method:





- a. Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used, **as directed**.
    - 1) Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
    - 2) Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
  - b. Cable Trays: Comply with requirements in Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling".
  - c. Conduit and Boxes: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems". Flexible metal conduit shall not be used, **as directed**.
    - 1) Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches (50 mm) wide, 3 inches (75 mm) high, and 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) deep.
2. Install cables without damaging conductors, shield, or jacket.
  3. Do not bend cables, while handling or installing, to radii smaller than as recommended by manufacturer.
  4. Pull cables without exceeding cable manufacturer's recommended pulling tensions.
    - a. Pull cables simultaneously if more than one is being installed in same raceway.
    - b. Use pulling compound or lubricant if necessary. Use compounds that will not damage conductor or insulation.
    - c. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire or cable grips, that will not damage media or raceway.
  5. Install exposed raceways and cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces or exposed structural members, and follow surface contours. Secure and support cables by straps, staples, or similar fittings designed and installed so as not to damage cables. Secure cable at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, or fittings.
  6. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.
  7. Separation of Wires: Separate speaker/microphone, line-level, speaker-level, and power-wiring runs. Run in separate raceways or, if exposed or in same enclosure, provide 12-inch (300-mm) minimum separation between conductors to speaker/microphones and adjacent parallel power and telephone wiring. Provide separation as recommended by equipment manufacturer for other conductors.
  8. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make splices, taps, and terminations on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures. Install terminal cabinets where there are splices, taps, or terminations for eight or more conductors.
  9. Impedance and Level Matching: Carefully match input and output impedances and signal levels at signal interfaces. Provide matching networks if required.
  10. Identification of Conductors and Cables: Comply with requirements in Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling" for cable administration, cable schedule, and cable and wire identification.
  11. Equipment Identification:
    - a. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems" for equipment labels and signs and labeling installation requirements.
    - b. Label stations, controls, and indications using approved consistent nomenclature.
- B. Existing Systems
1. Examine existing systems for proper operation, compatibility with new equipment, and deficiencies. If discrepancies or impairments to successful connection and operation of interconnected equipment are found, report them and do not proceed with installation until directed. Schedule existing systems' examination so there is reasonable time to resolve problems without delaying construction.
- C. Grounding
1. Ground cable shields and equipment to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize ground loops, common-mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other signal impairments.



2. Signal Ground Terminal: Locate at main equipment cabinet. Isolate from power system and equipment grounding except at connection to main building ground bus.
3. Grounding Provisions: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".

D. Field Quality Control

1. Perform tests and inspections.
2. Tests and Inspections:
  - a. Schedule tests a minimum of seven days in advance.
  - b. Report: Submit a written record of test results.
  - c. Operational Test: Perform an operational system test and demonstrate proper operations, adjustment, and sensitivity of each station. Perform tests that include originating station-to-station and "All Call" messages and pages at each nurse-call station. Verify proper routing, volume levels, and freedom from noise and distortion. Test each available message path from each station on the system. Meet the following criteria:
    - 1) Speaker Output: 90 dB plus or minus 3 dB, 300 to 3000 Hz, reference level threshold of audibility 0 dB at 0.02 mPa of sound pressure.
    - 2) Gain from patient's bedside station to nurse station, with distortion less than 65 dB (plus or minus 3 dB, 300 to 3000 Hz).
    - 3) Signal-to-Noise Ratio: Hum and noise level at least 45 dB below full output.
  - d. Test Procedure:
    - 1) Frequency Response: Determine frequency response of two transmission paths by transmitting and recording audio tones.
    - 2) Signal-to-Noise Ratio: Measure the ratio of signal to noise of the complete system at normal gain settings using the following procedure: Disconnect a speaker/microphone and replace it in the circuit with a signal generator using a 1000-Hz signal. Measure the ratio of signal to noise and repeat the test for four speaker microphones.
    - 3) Distortion Test: Measure distortion at normal gain settings and rated power. Feed signals at frequencies of 300, 400, 1000, and 3000 Hz into each nurse-call equipment amplifier, and measure the distortion in the amplifier output.
3. Retesting: Rectify deficiencies indicated by tests and completely retest work affected by such deficiencies at Contractor's expense. Verify, by the system test, that the total system meets these Specifications and complies with applicable standards. Report results in writing.
4. Inspection: Verify that units and controls are properly labeled and interconnecting wires and terminals are identified.
5. Prepare test and inspection reports.

E. Adjusting

1. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Final Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting sound levels and controls to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to three visits to Project during other-than-normal operating hours for this purpose.

F. Demonstration

1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel and caregiver staff to adjust, operate, and maintain nurse-call equipment.

END OF SECTION 26 33 43 00a



---

**SECTION 26 33 43 00b - PUBLIC ADDRESS AND MASS NOTIFICATION SYSTEMS****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of public address and mass notification systems. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Summary**

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Preamplifiers.
  - b. Power amplifiers.
  - c. Transfer to standby amplifier.
  - d. Microphones.
  - e. Volume limiter/compressors.
  - f. Control console.
  - g. Equipment cabinet.
  - h. Equipment rack.
  - i. Telephone paging adapters.
  - j. Tone generator.
  - k. Monitor panel.
  - l. Loudspeakers.
  - m. Noise-operated gain controllers.
  - n. Microphone and headphone outlets.
  - o. Battery backup power unit.
  - p. Conductors and cables.
  - q. Raceways.

**C. Definitions**

1. Channels: Separate parallel signal paths, from sources to loudspeakers or loudspeaker zones, with separate amplification and switching that permit selection between paths for speaker alternative program signals.
2. VU: Volume unit.
3. Zone: Separate group of loudspeakers and associated supply wiring that may be arranged for selective switching between different channels.

**D. Performance Requirements**

1. Delegated Design: Design supports and seismic restraints for control consoles, equipment cabinets and racks, and components, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. Seismic Performance: Supports and seismic restraints for control consoles, equipment cabinets and racks, and components shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
  - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

**E. Submittals**

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: For supports and seismic restraints for control consoles, equipment cabinets and racks, and components. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.



- a. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - b. Console layouts.
  - c. Control panels.
  - d. Rack arrangements.
  - e. Calculations: For sizing backup battery.
  - f. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
    - 1) Identify terminals to facilitate installation, operation, and maintenance.
    - 2) Single-line diagram showing interconnection of components.
    - 3) Cabling diagram showing cable routing.
3. Delegated-Design Submittal: For supports and seismic restraints for control consoles, equipment cabinets and racks, and components indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
    - a. Detail fabrication and assembly of supports and seismic restraints for control consoles, equipment cabinets and racks, and components.
  4. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For control consoles, equipment cabinets and racks, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
    - a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
    - b. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
    - c. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
  5. Field quality-control reports.
  6. Operation and maintenance data.
- F. Quality Assurance
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  2. Comply with NFPA 70.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Functional Description Of System

1. System Functions:
  - a. Selectively connect any zone to any available signal channel.
  - b. Selectively control sound from microphone outlets and other inputs.
  - c. "All-call" feature shall connect the all-call sound signal simultaneously to all zones regardless of zone or channel switch settings.
  - d. Telephone paging adapter shall allow paging by dialing an extension from any local telephone instrument and speaking into the telephone.
  - e. Produce a program-signal tone that is amplified and sounded over all speakers, overriding signals currently being distributed.
  - f. Reproduce high-quality sound that is free of noise and distortion at all loudspeakers at all times during equipment operation including standby mode with inputs off; output free of non-uniform coverage of amplified sound.

### B. General Equipment And Material Requirements

1. Compatibility of Components: Coordinate component features to form an integrated system. Match components and interconnections for optimum performance of specified functions.
2. Equipment: Comply with UL 813. Equipment shall be modular, using solid-state components, and fully rated for continuous duty unless otherwise indicated. Select equipment for normal operation on input power usually supplied at 110 to 130 V, 60 Hz.



3. Equipment Mounting: Where rack, cabinet, or console mounting is indicated, equipment shall be designed to mount in a 19-inch (483-mm) housing complying with TIA/EIA-310-D.
  4. Weather-Resistant Equipment: Listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency for duty outdoors or in damp locations.
- C. Preamplifiers
1. Preamplifier: Separately mounted.
  2. Preamplifier: Integral to power amplifier.
  3. Output Power: Plus 4 dB above 1 mW at matched power-amplifier load.
  4. Total Harmonic Distortion: Less than 1 percent.
  5. Frequency Response: Within plus or minus 2 dB from 20 to 20,000 Hz.
  6. Input Jacks: Minimum of two. One matched for low-impedance microphone; the other matchable to cassette deck, CD player, or radio tuner signals without external adapters.
  7. Minimum Noise Level: Minus 55 dB below rated output.
  8. Controls: On-off, input levels, and master gain.
- D. Power Amplifiers
1. Mounting: Console **OR** Rack, **as directed**.
  2. Output Power: 70-V balanced line. 80 percent of the sum of wattage settings of connected for each station and speaker connected in all-call mode of operation, plus an allowance for future stations.
  3. Total Harmonic Distortion: Less than 3 percent at rated power output from 50 to 12,000 Hz.
  4. Minimum Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 60 dB, at rated output.
  5. Frequency Response: Within plus or minus 2 dB from 50 to 12,000 Hz.
  6. Output Regulation: Less than 2 dB from full to no load.
  7. Controls: On-off, input levels, and low-cut filter.
  8. Input Sensitivity: Matched to preamplifier and to provide full-rated output with sound-pressure level of less than 10 dynes/sq. cm impinging on speaker microphone or handset transmitter.
- E. Transfer To Standby Amplifier
1. Monitoring Circuit and Sensing Relay: Detect reduction in output of power amplifier of 40 percent or more and, in such event, transfer load and signal automatically to standby amplifier.
- F. Microphones
1. Paging Microphone:
    - a. Type: Dynamic, with cardioid **OR** omni, **as directed**, polar characteristic.
    - b. Impedance: 150 ohms.
    - c. Frequency Response: Uniform, 50 to 14,000 Hz.
    - d. Output Level: Minus 58 dB, minimum.
    - e. Finish: Satin chrome.
    - f. Cable: C25J.
    - g. Mounting: Desk stand with integral-locking, press-to-talk switch.
- G. Volume Limiter/Compressor
1. Minimum Performance Requirements:
    - a. Frequency Response: 45 to 15,000 Hz, plus or minus 1 dB minimum.
    - b. Signal Reduction Ratio: At least a 10:1 and 5:1 selectable capability.
    - c. Distortion: 1 percent, maximum.
    - d. Rated Output: Minimum of plus 14 dB.
    - e. Inputs: Minimum of two inputs with variable front-panel gain controls and VU or decibel meter for input adjustment.
    - f. Rack mounting.
- H. Control Console
1. Cabinet: Modular, desktop **OR** desk style, **as directed**; complying with TIA/EIA-310-D.



2. Housing: Steel, 0.0478 inch (1.2 mm) minimum, with removable front and rear panels. Side panels are removable for interconnecting side-by-side mounting.
  3. Panel for Equipment and Controls: Rack mounted.
  4. Controls:
    - a. Switching devices to select signal sources for distribution channels.
    - b. Program selector switch to select source for each program channel.
    - c. Switching devices to select zones for paging.
    - d. All-call selector switch.
  5. Indicators: A visual annunciation for each distribution channel to indicate source being used.
  6. Self-Contained Power and Control Unit: A single assembly of basic control, electronics, and power supply necessary to accomplish specified functions.
  7. Spare Positions: 20 percent spare zone control and annunciation positions on console.
  8. Microphone jack.
- I. Equipment Cabinet
1. Comply with TIA/EIA-310-D.
  2. House amplifiers and auxiliary equipment at each location.
  3. Cabinet Housing:
    - a. Constructed of 0.0478-inch (1.2-mm) steel, minimum, with front- and rear-locking doors and standard TIA/EIA-310-D-compliant, 19-inch (483-mm) racks.
    - b. Arranged for floor or wall mounting as indicated.
    - c. Sized to house all equipment indicated, plus spare capacity.
    - d. Include 20 percent minimum spare capacity for future equipment in addition to space required for future cassette deck and CD player.
  4. Power Provisions: A single switch in cabinet shall disconnect cabinet power distribution system and electrical outlets, which shall be uniformly spaced to accommodate ac-power cords for each item of equipment.
  5. Ventilation: A low-noise fan for forced-air cabinet ventilation. Fan shall be equipped with a filtered input vent and shall be connected to operate from 105- to 130-V ac, 60 Hz; separately fused and switched; arranged to be powered when main cabinet power switch is on.
- J. Equipment Rack
1. Racks: 19 inches (483 mm) standard, complying with TIA/EIA-310-D.
  2. Power-Supply Connections: Compatible plugs and receptacles.
  3. Enclosure Panels: Ventilated rear and sides and solid top. Use louvers in panels to ensure adequate ventilation.
  4. Finish: Uniform, baked-enamel factory finish over rust-inhibiting primer.
  5. Power-Control Panel: On front of equipment housing, with master power on-off switch and pilot light; and with socket for 5-A cartridge fuse for rack equipment power.
  6. Service Light: At top rear of rack with an adjacent control switch.
  7. Vertical Plug Strip: Grounded receptacles, 12 inches (300 mm) o.c.; the full height of rack.
  8. Maintenance Receptacles: Duplex convenience outlets supplied independent of vertical plug strip and located in front and bottom rear of rack.
  9. Spare Capacity: 20 percent in rack for future equipment.
- K. Telephone Paging Adapter
1. Adapters shall accept voice signals from telephone extension dialing access and automatically provide amplifier input and program override for preselected zones.
    - a. Minimum Frequency Response: Flat, 200 to 2500 Hz.
    - b. Impedance Matching: Adapter matches telephone line to public address equipment input.
    - c. Rack mounting.
- L. Tone Generator
1. Generator shall provide clock and program interface with public address and mass notification system.



2. Signals: Minimum of seven distinct, audible signal types including wail, warble, high/low, alarm, repeating and single-stroke chimes, and tone.
  3. Pitch Control: Chimes and tone.
  4. Volume Control: All outputs.
  5. Activation-Switch Network: Establishes priority and hierarchy of output signals produced by different activation setups.
  6. Mounting: Rack.
- M. Monitor Panel
1. Monitor power amplifiers.
  2. Components: VU or dB meter, speaker with volume control, and multiple-position rotary selector switch.
  3. Selector Switch and Volume Control: Selective monitoring of output of each separate power amplifier via VU or dB meter and speaker.
  4. Mounting: Rack.
- N. Loudspeakers
1. Cone-Type Loudspeakers:
    - a. Minimum Axial Sensitivity: 91 dB at one meter, with 1-W input.
    - b. Frequency Response: Within plus or minus 3 dB from 50 to 15,000 Hz.
    - c. Size: 8 inches (200 mm) with 1-inch (25-mm) voice coil and minimum 5-oz. (140-g) ceramic magnet.
    - d. Minimum Dispersion Angle: 100 degrees.
    - e. Rated Output Level: 10 W.
    - f. Matching Transformer: Full-power rated with four taps. Maximum insertion loss of 0.5 dB.
    - g. Surface-Mounting Units: Ceiling, wall, or pendant mounting, as indicated, in steel back boxes, acoustically dampened. Front face of at least 0.0478-inch (1.2-mm) steel and whole assembly rust proofed and shop primed for field painting.
    - h. Flush-Ceiling-Mounting Units: In steel back boxes, acoustically dampened. Metal ceiling grille with white baked enamel.
  2. Horn-Type Loudspeakers:
    - a. Type: Single-horn units, double-reentrant design, with minimum full-range power rating of 15 W.
    - b. Matching Transformer: Full-power rated with four standard taps. Maximum insertion loss of 0.5 dB.
    - c. Frequency Response: Within plus or minus 3 dB from 250 to 12,000 Hz.
    - d. Dispersion Angle: 130 by 110 degrees.
    - e. Mounting: Integral bracket.
    - f. Units in Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Listed and labeled for environment in which they are located.
- O. Noise-Operated Gain Controller
1. Gain controller shall be designed to continuously sense space noise level and automatically adjust signal level to local speakers.
  2. Frequency Response: 20 to 20,000 Hz, plus or minus 1 dB.
  3. Level Adjustment Range: 20 dB minimum.
  4. Maximum Distortion: 1 percent.
  5. Control: Permits adjustment of sensing level of device.
- P. Outlets
1. Volume Attenuator Station: Wall-plate-mounted autotransformer type with paging priority feature.
    - a. Wattage Rating: 10 W unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Attenuation per Step: 3 dB, with positive off position.
    - c. Insertion Loss: 0.4 dB maximum.



- d. Attenuation Bypass Relay: Single pole, double throw. Connected to operate and bypass attenuation when all-call, paging, program signal, or prerecorded message features are used. Relay returns to normal position at end of priority transmission.
- e. Label: "PA Volume."
- 2. Microphone Outlet: Three-pole, polarized, locking-type, microphone receptacles in single-gang boxes. Equip wall outlets with brushed stainless-steel device plates. Equip floor outlets with gray tapered rubber or plastic cable nozzles and fixed outlet covers.
- 3. Headphone Outlet (for the Hearing Impaired): Microphone receptacles in single-gang boxes. Equip wall outlets with brushed stainless-steel device plates. Equip floor outlets with gray tapered rubber or plastic cable nozzles and fixed-outlet covers.

Q. Battery Backup Power Unit

- 1. Unit shall be rack mounted, consisting of time-delay relay, sealed lead-calcium battery, battery charger, on-off switch, "normal" and "emergency" indicating lights, and adequate capacity to supply maximum equipment power requirements for one hour of continuous full operation.
- 2. Unit shall supply public address equipment with 12- to 15-V dc power automatically during an outage of normal 120-V ac power.
- 3. Battery shall be on float charge when not supplying system and to transfer automatically to supply system after three to five seconds of continuous outage of normal power, as sensed by time-delay relay.
- 4. Unit shall automatically retransfer system to normal supply when normal power has been reestablished for three to five seconds continuously.

R. Conductors And Cables

- 1. Jacketed, twisted pair and twisted multipair, untinned solid copper.
  - a. Insulation for Wire in Conduit: Thermoplastic, not less than 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) thick.
  - b. Microphone Cables: Neoprene jacketed, not less than 2/64 inch (0.8 mm) thick, over shield with filled interstices. Shield No. 34 AWG, tinned, soft-copper strands formed into a braid or approved equivalent foil. Shielding coverage on conductors is not less than 60 percent.
  - c. Plenum Cable: Listed and labeled for plenum installation.

S. Raceways

- 1. Conduit and Boxes: Comply with Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems". Flexible metal conduit shall not be used, unless directed otherwise.
  - a. Outlet boxes shall be not less than 2 inches (50 mm) wide, 3 inches (75 mm) high, and 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) deep.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Wiring Methods

- 1. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters, and except in accessible ceiling spaces and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used, **as directed**. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
  - a. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
  - b. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems".
- 2. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.
- 3. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.





- B. Installation Of Raceways
1. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems" for installation of conduits and wireways.
  2. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows whenever possible.
- C. Installation Of Cables
1. Comply with NECA 1.
  2. General Cable Installation Requirements:
    - a. Terminate conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at outlets and terminals.
    - b. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Arrange on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures. Cables may not be spliced.
    - c. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
    - d. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
    - e. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
    - f. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used.
  3. Open-Cable Installation:
    - a. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
    - b. Suspend speaker cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above ceiling by cable supports not more than 60 inches (1524 mm) apart.
    - c. Cable shall not be run through structural members or be in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.
  4. Separation of Wires: Separate speaker-microphone, line-level, speaker-level, and power wiring runs. Install in separate raceways or, where exposed or in same enclosure, separate conductors at least 12 inches (300 mm) apart for speaker microphones and adjacent parallel power and telephone wiring. Separate other intercommunication equipment conductors as recommended by equipment manufacturer.
- D. Installation
1. Match input and output impedances and signal levels at signal interfaces. Provide matching networks where required.
  2. Identification of Conductors and Cables: Color-code conductors and apply wire and cable marking tape to designate wires and cables so they identify media in coordination with system wiring diagrams.
  3. Equipment Cabinets and Racks:
    - a. Group items of same function together, either vertically or side by side, and arrange controls symmetrically. Mount monitor panel above the amplifiers.
    - b. Arrange all inputs, outputs, interconnections, and test points so they are accessible at rear of rack for maintenance and testing, with each item removable from rack without disturbing other items or connections.
    - c. Blank Panels: Cover empty space in equipment racks so entire front of rack is occupied by panels.
  4. Volume Limiter/Compressor: Equip each zone with a volume limiter/compressor. Install in central equipment cabinet. Arrange to provide a constant input to power amplifiers.
  5. Wall-Mounted Outlets: Flush mounted.
  6. Floor-Mounted Outlets: Conceal in floor and install cable nozzles through outlet covers. Secure outlet covers in place. Trim with carpet in carpeted areas.



7. Conductor Sizing: Unless otherwise indicated, size speaker circuit conductors from racks to loudspeaker outlets not smaller than No. 18 AWG and conductors from microphone receptacles to amplifiers not smaller than No. 22 AWG.
  8. Weatherproof Equipment: For units that are mounted outdoors, in damp locations, or where exposed to weather, install consistent with requirements of weatherproof rating.
  9. Speaker-Line Matching Transformer Connections: Make initial connections using tap settings indicated on Drawings.
  10. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".
- E. Grounding
1. Ground cable shields and equipment to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize ground loops, common-mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments.
  2. Signal Ground Terminal: Locate at main equipment cabinet. Isolate from power system and equipment grounding.
  3. Install grounding electrodes as specified in Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
- F. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections.
    - a. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
  2. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. Schedule tests with at least seven days' advance notice of test performance.
    - b. After installing public address and mass notification systems and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
    - c. Operational Test: Perform tests that include originating program and page messages at microphone outlets, preamplifier program inputs, and other inputs. Verify proper routing and volume levels and that system is free of noise and distortion.
    - d. Signal-to-Noise Ratio Test: Measure signal-to-noise ratio of complete system at normal gain settings as follows:
      - 1) Disconnect microphone at connector or jack closest to it and replace it in the circuit with a signal generator using a 1000-Hz signal. Replace all other microphones at corresponding connectors with dummy loads, each equal in impedance to microphone it replaces. Measure signal-to-noise ratio.
      - 2) Repeat test for each separately controlled zone of loudspeakers.
      - 3) Minimum acceptance ratio is 50 dB.
    - e. Distortion Test: Measure distortion at normal gain settings and rated power. Feed signals at frequencies of 50, 200, 400, 1000, 3000, 8000, and 12,000 Hz into each preamplifier channel. For each frequency, measure distortion in the paging and all-call amplifier outputs. Maximum acceptable distortion at any frequency is 3 percent total harmonics.
    - f. Acoustic Coverage Test: Feed pink noise into system using octaves centered at 500 and 4000 Hz. Use sound-level meter with octave-band filters to measure level at five locations in each zone. For spaces with seated audiences, maximum permissible variation in level is plus or minus 2 dB. In addition, the levels between locations in same zone and between locations in adjacent zones must not vary more than plus or minus 3 dB.
    - g. Power Output Test: Measure electrical power output of each power amplifier at normal gain settings of 50, 1000, and 12,000 Hz. Maximum variation in power output at these frequencies must not exceed plus or minus 1 dB.
    - h. Signal Ground Test: Measure and report ground resistance at public address equipment signal ground. Comply with testing requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".



3. Inspection: Verify that units and controls are properly labeled and interconnecting wires and terminals are identified. Prepare a list of final tap settings of paging speaker-line matching transformers.
4. Public address and mass notification systems will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
5. Prepare test and inspection reports.
  - a. Include a record of final speaker-line matching transformer-tap settings, and signal ground-resistance measurement certified by Installer.

END OF SECTION 26 33 43 00b



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 26 33 53 00 - STATIC UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLY**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for static uninterruptible power supply. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Three-phase, on-line, double-conversion, static-type, UPS units with the following features:
    - 1) Surge suppression.
    - 2) Input harmonics reduction.
    - 3) Rectifier-charger.
    - 4) Inverter.
    - 5) Static bypass transfer switch.
    - 6) Battery and battery disconnect device.
    - 7) Internal and External maintenance bypass/isolation switch.
    - 8) Output isolation transformer.
    - 9) Remote UPS monitoring provisions.
    - 10) Battery monitoring.
    - 11) Remote monitoring.

## C. Definitions

1. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
2. LCD: Liquid-crystal display.
3. LED: Light-emitting diode.
4. PC: Personal computer.
5. THD: Total harmonic distortion.
6. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.

## D. Performance Requirements

1. Seismic Performance: UPS shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7, **as directed**.
  - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

## E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include data on features, components, ratings, and performance.
2. Shop Drawings: For UPS. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - a. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, components, and location and identification of each field connection. Show access, workspace, and clearance requirements; details of control panels; and battery arrangement.
  - b. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For UPS equipment, from manufacturer.
  - a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  - b. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.



- c. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- 4. Factory Test Reports: Comply with specified requirements.
- 5. Field quality-control reports.
- 6. Operation and maintenance data.
- 7. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

F. Quality Assurance

- 1. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL **OR** one who meets the requirements necessary for certification, **as directed**.
  - a. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA **OR** one who meets the requirements necessary for certification, **as directed**, to supervise on-site testing.
- 2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- 3. UL Compliance: Listed and labeled under UL 1778 by an NRTL.
- 4. NFPA Compliance: Mark UPS components as suitable for installation in computer rooms according to NFPA 75.

G. Warranty

- 1. Special Battery Warranties: Specified form in which manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace UPS system storage batteries that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - a. Warranted Cycle Life for Valve-Regulated, Lead-Calcium Batteries: Equal to or greater than that represented in manufacturer's published table, including figures corresponding to the following, based on annual average battery temperature of 77 deg F (25 deg C):

Discharge Rate	Discharge Duration	Discharge End Voltage	Cycle Life
8 hours	8 hours	1.67	6 cycles
30 minutes	30 minutes	1.67	20 cycles
15 minutes	45 seconds	1.67	120 cycles

**OR**

Warranted Cycle Life for Premium Valve-Regulated, Lead-calcium Batteries: Equal to or greater than that represented in manufacturer's published table, including figures corresponding to the following, based on annual average battery temperature of 77 deg F (25 deg C):

Discharge Rate	Discharge Duration	Discharge End Voltage	Cycle Life
8 hours	8 hours	1.67	40 cycles
30 minutes	30 minutes	1.67	125 cycles
15 minutes	1.5 minutes	1.67	750 cycles

**OR**

Warranted Cycle Life for Flooded Batteries: Equal to or greater than that represented in manufacturer's published table, including figures corresponding to the following, based on annual average battery temperature of 77 deg F (25 deg C):

Discharge Rate	Discharge Duration	Discharge End Voltage	Cycle Life
8 hours	8 hours	1.75	40 cycles
1 hour	1 hour	1.75	80 cycles
15 minutes	45 seconds	1.67	2700 cycles



2. Special UPS Warranties: Specified form in which manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components that fail in materials or workmanship within Two **OR** Three, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Operational Requirements

1. Automatic operation includes the following:
  - a. Normal Conditions: Load is supplied with power flowing from the normal power input terminals, through the rectifier-charger and inverter, with the battery connected in parallel with the rectifier-charger output.
  - b. Abnormal Supply Conditions: If normal supply deviates from specified and adjustable voltage, voltage waveform, or frequency limits, the battery supplies energy to maintain constant, regulated inverter power output to the load without switching or disturbance.
  - c. If normal power fails, energy supplied by the battery through the inverter continues supply-regulated power to the load without switching or disturbance.
  - d. When power is restored at the normal supply terminals of the system, controls automatically synchronize the inverter with the external source before transferring the load. The rectifier-charger then supplies power to the load through the inverter and simultaneously recharges the battery.
  - e. If the battery becomes discharged and normal supply is available, the rectifier-charger charges the battery. On reaching full charge, the rectifier-charger automatically shifts to float-charge mode.
  - f. If any element of the UPS system fails and power is available at the normal supply terminals of the system, the static bypass transfer switch switches the load to the normal ac supply circuit without disturbance or interruption.
  - g. If a fault occurs in the system supplied by the UPS, and current flows in excess of the overload rating of the UPS system, the static bypass transfer switch operates to bypass the fault current to the normal ac supply circuit for fault clearing.
  - h. When the fault has cleared, the static bypass transfer switch returns the load to the UPS system.
  - i. If the battery is disconnected, the UPS continues to supply power to the load with no degradation of its regulation of voltage and frequency of the output bus.
2. Manual operation includes the following:
  - a. Turning the inverter off causes the static bypass transfer switch to transfer the load directly to the normal ac supply circuit without disturbance or interruption.
  - b. Turning the inverter on causes the static bypass transfer switch to transfer the load to the inverter.
3. Maintenance Bypass/Isolation Switch Operation: Switch is interlocked so it cannot be operated unless the static bypass transfer switch is in the bypass mode. Device provides manual selection among the three conditions in subparagraphs below without interrupting supply to the load during switching:
  - a. Full Isolation: Load is supplied, bypassing the UPS. Normal UPS ac input circuit, static bypass transfer switch, and UPS load terminals are completely disconnected from external circuits.
  - b. Maintenance Bypass: Load is supplied, bypassing the UPS. UPS ac supply terminals are energized to permit operational checking, but system load terminals are isolated from the load.
  - c. Normal: Normal UPS ac supply terminals are energized and the load is supplied through either the static bypass transfer switch and the UPS rectifier-charger and inverter, or the battery and the inverter.
4. Environmental Conditions: The UPS shall be capable of operating continuously in the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability, except battery performance.
  - a. Ambient Temperature for Electronic Components: 32 to 104 deg F (0 to 40 deg C).



- b. Ambient Temperature for Battery: 41 to 95 deg F (5 to 35 deg C).
- c. Relative Humidity: 0 to 95 percent, noncondensing.
- d. Altitude: Sea level to 4000 feet (1220 m).

**B. Performance Requirements**

1. The UPS shall perform as specified in this article while supplying rated full-load current, composed of any combination of linear and nonlinear load, up to 100 percent nonlinear load with a load crest factor of 3.0, under the following conditions or combinations of the following conditions:
  - a. Inverter is switched to battery source.
  - b. Steady-state ac input voltage deviates up to plus or minus 10 percent from nominal voltage.
  - c. Steady-state input frequency deviates up to plus or minus 5 percent from nominal frequency.
  - d. THD of input voltage is 15 percent or more with a minimum crest factor of 3.0, and the largest single harmonic component is a minimum of 5 percent of the fundamental value.
  - e. Load is 30 **OR** 50 **OR** 100, **as directed**, percent unbalanced continuously.
2. Minimum Duration of Supply: If battery is sole energy source supplying rated full UPS load current at 80 percent power factor, duration of supply is five **OR** 10 **OR** 15, **as directed**, minutes.
3. Input Voltage Tolerance: System steady-state and transient output performance remains within specified tolerances when steady-state ac input voltage varies plus 10, minus 15 **OR** 20 **OR** 30, **as directed**, percent from nominal voltage.
4. Overall UPS Efficiency:

**NOMINAL OVERALL UPS EFFICIENCY RATINGS**

SIZE RANGE OF UPS UNITS	EFFICIENCY AT 100% RATED LOAD	EFFICIENCY AT 75% RATED LOAD	EFFICIENCY AT 50% RATED LOAD
30 kVA and Smaller	86	85	84
37.5 to 74 kVA	89	88	87
75 to 124 kVA	90	88	87
125 to 224 kVA	90	89	88
225 kVA and Larger	90	89	88

5. Maximum Acoustical Noise:

**NOMINAL OVERALL UPS AUDIBLE NOISE RATINGS**

SIZE RANGE OF UPS UNITS	MAXIMUM NOISE VALUE	DISTANCE AT WHICH MEASURED
10 kVA and Smaller	58 dB	36 inches (900 mm)
20 to 125 kVA	60 dB	48 inches (1200 mm)
150 to 300 kVA	78 dB	48 inches (1200 mm)
300 kVA and Larger	83 dB	48 inches (1200 mm)

6. Maximum Energizing Inrush Current: Six **OR** Eight, **as directed**, times the full-load current.
7. Maximum AC Output-Voltage Regulation for Loads up to 50 Percent Unbalanced: Plus or minus 2 percent over the full range of battery voltage.
8. Output Frequency: 60 Hz, plus or minus 0.5 percent over the full range of input voltage, load, and battery voltage.
9. Limitation of harmonic distortion of input current to the UPS shall be as follows:





- a. Description: Either a tuned harmonic filter or an arrangement of rectifier-charger circuits shall limit THD to 5 **OR** 10, **as directed**, percent, maximum, at rated full UPS load current, for power sources with X/R ratio between 2 and 30.  
**OR**  
Description: THD is limited to a maximum of 32 percent, at rated full UPS load current, for power sources with X/R ratio between 2 and 30.
10. Maximum Harmonic Content of Output-Voltage Waveform: 5 percent rms total and 3 percent rms for any single harmonic, for 100 percent rated nonlinear load current with a load crest factor of 3.0.  
**OR**  
Maximum Harmonic Content of Output-Voltage Waveform: 5 percent rms total and 3 percent rms for any single harmonic, for rated full load with THD up to 50 percent, with a load crest factor of 3.0.
11. Minimum Overload Capacity of UPS at Rated Voltage: 125 percent of rated full load for 10 minutes, and 150 percent for 30 seconds in all operating modes.
12. Maximum Output-Voltage Transient Excursions from Rated Value: For the following instantaneous load changes, stated as percentages of rated full UPS load, voltage shall remain within stated percentages of rated value and recover to, and remain within, plus or minus 2 percent of that value within 100 ms:
  - a. 50 Percent: Plus or minus 5 percent.
  - b. 100 Percent: Plus or minus 5 percent.
  - c. Loss of AC Input Power: Plus or minus 1 percent.
  - d. Restoration of AC Input Power: Plus or minus 1 percent.
13. Input Power Factor: A minimum of 0.70 **OR** 0.85, **as directed**, lagging when supply voltage and current are at nominal rated values and the UPS is supplying rated full-load current.
14. EMI Emissions: Comply with FCC Rules and Regulations and with 47 CFR 15 for Class A equipment.

### C. UPS Systems

1. Electronic Equipment: Solid-state devices using hermetically sealed, semiconductor elements. Devices include rectifier-charger, inverter, static bypass transfer switch, and system controls.
2. Enclosures: Comply with NEMA 250, Type 1, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Control Assemblies: Mount on modular plug-ins, readily accessible for maintenance.
4. Surge Suppression: Protect internal UPS components from surges that enter at each ac power input connection including main disconnect switch, static bypass transfer switch, and maintenance bypass/isolation switch, **as directed**. Protect rectifier-charger, inverter, controls, and output components.
  - a. Use factory-installed surge suppressors tested according to IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2, Category B **OR** Category C, **as directed**.
  - b. Additional Surge Protection: Protect internal UPS components from low-frequency, high-energy voltage surges described in IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2. Design the circuits connecting with external power sources and select circuit elements, conductors, conventional surge suppressors, and rectifier components and controls so input assemblies will have adequate mechanical strength and thermal and current-carrying capacity to withstand stresses imposed by 40-Hz, 180 percent voltage surges described in IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2.
5. Maintainability Features (for units rated more than approximately 100 kVA): Mount rectifier-charger and inverter sections and the static bypass transfer switch on modular plug-ins, readily accessible for maintenance.
6. Capacity Upgrade Capability: Arrange wiring, controls, and modular component plug-in provisions to permit future 25 percent increase in UPS capacity.
7. Seismic-Restraint Design: UPS assemblies, subassemblies, and components (and fastenings and supports, mounting, and anchorage devices for them) shall be designed and fabricated to withstand static and seismic forces.
8. UPS Cabinet Ventilation: Redundant fans or blowers draw in ambient air near the bottom of cabinet and discharge it near the top rear.



9. Output Circuit Neutral Bus, Conductor, and Terminal Ampacity (for a UPS with heavy nonlinear loading): Rated phase current times a multiple of 1.73, minimum.

**D. Rectifier-Charger**

1. Capacity: Adequate to supply the inverter during rated full output load conditions and simultaneously recharge the battery from fully discharged condition to 95 percent of full charge within 10 times the rated discharge time for duration of supply under battery power at full load.
2. Output Ripple: Limited by output filtration to less than 0.5 percent of rated current, peak to peak.
3. Control Circuits: Immune to frequency variations within rated frequency ranges of normal and emergency power sources.
  - a. Response Time: Field adjustable for maximum compatibility with local generator-set power source.
4. Battery Float-Charging Conditions: Comply with battery manufacturer's written instructions for battery terminal voltage and charging current required for maximum battery life.

**E. Inverter**

1. Description: Pulse-width modulated, with sinusoidal output.  
**OR**  
 Description (if the UPS may be supplied power from a standby engine-generator set): Pulse-width modulated, with sinusoidal output. Include a bypass phase synchronization window adjustment to optimize compatibility with local engine-generator-set power source.

**F. Static Bypass Transfer Switch**

1. Description: Solid-state switching device providing uninterrupted transfer. A contactor or electrically operated circuit breaker automatically provides electrical isolation for the switch.
2. Switch Rating: Continuous duty at the rated full UPS load current, minimum.

**G. Battery**

**ALTERNATIVE BATTERY TYPES FOR UPS SYSTEMS**

TYPE	NOMINAL LIFE EXPECTANCY (YEARS)*	TYPICAL WARRANTY (YEARS)*		MINIMUM NOMINAL MAINTENANCE INTERVAL	APPROX. INITIAL COST FACTOR**	SPECIAL FEATURES
		FULL	PRO RATA			
Premium quality, valve regulated, recombinant, lead calcium	20	1	19	1 year	2.5	Spill proof.
Standard quality, valve regulated, recombinant, lead calcium	10	1	9	1 year	1.0	Spill proof.
Nickel cadmium, flooded	25	5	15	3 years	4.0	Can operate in high ambient temperatures. Can be completely discharged without damage.
Lead calcium, flooded	20	1	9	6 months	2.5	-

\*Life expectancy and warranty data apply to installations where batteries are considered to be in a "float-service"



application. Use the data only as a general guide because UPS batteries are typically considered to be in a separate service application category that accounts for the numerous discharges of varying duration they experience.

\*\*Cost includes an allowance for space requirements and environmental control.

1. Description: Valve-regulated, recombinant, lead-calcium units, factory assembled in an isolated compartment of UPS cabinet, complete with battery disconnect switch.
  - a. Arrange for drawout removal of battery assembly from cabinet for testing and inspecting.

**OR**

Description: Valve-regulated, premium, heavy-duty, recombinant, lead-calcium units; factory assembled in an isolated compartment or in a separate matching cabinet, complete with battery disconnect switch.

  - a. Arrange for drawout removal of battery assembly from cabinet for testing and inspecting.

**OR**

Description: Flooded, lead-calcium, heavy-duty industrial units in styrene acrylonitrile containers mounted on three-tier, **as directed**, acid-resistant, painted steel racks. Assembly includes battery disconnect switch, intercell connectors, hydrometer syringe, and thermometer with specific gravity-correction scales.
2. Seismic-Restraint Design: Battery racks, cabinets, assemblies, subassemblies, and components (and fastenings and supports, mounting, and anchorage devices for them) shall be designed and fabricated to withstand static and seismic forces.

#### H. Controls And Indications

1. Description: Group displays, indications, and basic system controls on a common control panel on front of UPS enclosure.
2. Minimum displays, indicating devices, and controls include those in lists below. Provide sensors, transducers, terminals, relays, and wiring required to support listed items. Alarms include audible signals and visual displays.
3. Indications: Labeled LED **OR** Plain-language messages on a digital LCD or LED, **as directed**.
  - a. Quantitative indications shall include the following:
    - 1) Input voltage, each phase, line to line.
    - 2) Input current, each phase, line to line.
    - 3) Bypass input voltage, each phase, line to line.
    - 4) Bypass input frequency.
    - 5) System output voltage, each phase, line to line.
    - 6) System output current, each phase.
    - 7) System output frequency.
    - 8) DC bus voltage.
    - 9) Battery current and direction (charge/discharge).
    - 10) Elapsed time discharging battery.
  - b. Basic status condition indications shall include the following:
    - 1) Normal operation.
    - 2) Load-on bypass.
    - 3) Load-on battery.
    - 4) Inverter off.
    - 5) Alarm condition.
  - c. Alarm indications shall include the following:
    - 1) Bypass ac input overvoltage or undervoltage.
    - 2) Bypass ac input overfrequency or underfrequency.
    - 3) Bypass ac input and inverter out of synchronization.
    - 4) Bypass ac input wrong-phase rotation.
    - 5) Bypass ac input single-phase condition.
    - 6) Bypass ac input filter fuse blown.
    - 7) Internal frequency standard in use.
    - 8) Battery system alarm.
    - 9) Control power failure.
    - 10) Fan failure.



- 11) UPS overload.
  - 12) Battery-charging control faulty.
  - 13) Input overvoltage or undervoltage.
  - 14) Input transformer overtemperature.
  - 15) Input circuit breaker tripped.
  - 16) Input wrong-phase rotation.
  - 17) Input single-phase condition.
  - 18) Approaching end of battery operation.
  - 19) Battery undervoltage shutdown.
  - 20) Maximum battery voltage.
  - 21) Inverter fuse blown.
  - 22) Inverter transformer overtemperature.
  - 23) Inverter overtemperature.
  - 24) Static bypass transfer switch overtemperature.
  - 25) Inverter power supply fault.
  - 26) Inverter transistors out of saturation.
  - 27) Identification of faulty inverter section/leg.
  - 28) Inverter output overvoltage or undervoltage.
  - 29) UPS overload shutdown.
  - 30) Inverter current sensor fault.
  - 31) Inverter output contactor open.
  - 32) Inverter current limit.
- d. Controls shall include the following:
- 1) Inverter on-off.
  - 2) UPS start.
  - 3) Battery test.
  - 4) Alarm silence/reset.
  - 5) Output-voltage adjustment.
4. Dry-form "C" contacts shall be available for remote indication of the following conditions:
- a. UPS on battery.
  - b. UPS on-line.
  - c. UPS load-on bypass.
  - d. UPS in alarm condition.
  - e. UPS off (maintenance bypass closed).
5. Emergency Power Off Switch: Capable of local operation and operation by means of activation by external dry contacts.

I. Maintenance Bypass/Isolation Switch

1. Description: Manually operated switch or arrangement of switching devices with mechanically actuated contact mechanism arranged to route the flow of power to the load around the rectifier-charger, inverter, and static bypass transfer switch.
  - a. Switch shall be electrically and mechanically interlocked to prevent interrupting power to the load when switching to bypass mode.
  - b. Switch shall electrically isolate other UPS components to permit safe servicing.
2. Comply with NEMA PB 2 and UL 891.
3. Switch Rating: Continuous duty at rated full UPS load current.
4. Mounting Provisions: Internal to system cabinet **OR** Separate wall- or floor-mounted unit, **as directed**.
5. Key interlock requires unlocking maintenance bypass/isolation switch before switching from normal position with key that is released only when the UPS is bypassed by the static bypass transfer switch. Lock is designed specifically for mechanical and electrical component interlocking.

J. Output Isolation Transformer



1. Description: Shielded unit **OR** Unit, **as directed**, with low forward transfer impedance up to 3 kHz, minimum. Include the following features:
  - a. Comply with applicable portions of UL 1561, including requirements for nonlinear load current-handling capability for a K-factor of approximately 4 **OR** 9 **OR** 13 **OR** 20, **as directed**.
  - b. Output Impedance at Fundamental Frequency: Between 3 and 4 percent.
  - c. Regulation: 5 percent, maximum, at rated nonlinear load current.
  - d. Full-Load Efficiency at Rated Nonlinear Load Current: 96 percent, minimum.
  - e. Electrostatic Shielding of Windings: Independent for each winding.
  - f. Coil Leads: Physically arranged for minimum interlead capacitance.
  - g. Shield Grounding Terminal: Separately mounted; labeled "Shield Ground."
  - h. Capacitive Coupling between Primary and Secondary: 33 picofarads, maximum, over a frequency range of 20 Hz to 1 MHz.
  
- K. Output Distribution Section
  1. Panelboards: Comply with Division 26 Section "Panelboards" except provide assembly integral to UPS cabinet.
  
- L. Monitoring By Remote Status And Alarm Panel
  1. Description: Labeled LEDs on panel faceplate indicate five basic status conditions. Audible signal indicates alarm conditions. Silencing switch in face of panel silences signal without altering visual indication.
    - a. Cabinet and Faceplate: Surface or flush mounted to suit mounting conditions indicated.
  
- M. Monitoring By Remote Computer
  1. Description: Communication module in unit control panel provides capability for remote monitoring of status, parameters, and alarms specified in "Controls and Indications" Article. The remote computer and the connecting signal wiring are not included in this Section. Include the following features:
    - a. Connectors and network interface units or modems for data transmission via RS-232 link.
    - b. Software designed for control and monitoring of UPS functions and to provide on-screen explanations, interpretations, diagnosis, action guidance, and instructions for use of monitoring indications and development of meaningful reports. Permit storage and analysis of power-line transient records. Designs for Windows applications, software, and computer are not included in this Section.
    - c. Software and Hardware: Compatible with that specified in Division 26 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring And Control".
  
- N. Basic Battery Monitoring
  1. Battery Ground-Fault Detector: Initiates alarm when resistance to ground of positive or negative bus of battery is less than 5000 ohms.
  2. Battery compartment smoke/high-temperature detector initiates an alarm when smoke or a temperature greater than 75 deg C occurs within the compartment.
  3. Annunciation of Alarms: At UPS control panel.
  
- O. Additional Battery Monitoring
  1. Monitoring features and components shall include the following:
    - a. Factory-wired sensing leads to cell and battery terminals and cell temperature sensors.
    - b. Connections for data transmission via RS-232 link, network interface and, **as directed**, modem and, **as directed**, external signal wiring to computer **OR** electrical power monitoring and control equipment, **as directed**. External signal wiring and computer are not specified in this Section.
    - c. PC-based software designed to store and analyze battery data. Software compiles reports on individual-cell parameters and total battery performance trends, and provides data for scheduling and prioritizing battery maintenance.



2. Performance: Automatically measures and electronically records the following parameters on a routine schedule and during battery discharge events. During discharge events, records measurements timed to nearest second; includes measurements of the following parameters:
  - a. Total battery voltage and ambient temperature.
  - b. Individual-cell voltage, impedance, and temperature. During battery-discharging events such as utility outages, measures battery and cell voltages timed to nearest second.
  - c. Individual-cell electrolyte levels.

P. Battery-Cycle Warranty Monitoring

1. Description: Electronic device, acceptable to battery manufacturer as a basis for warranty action, for monitoring of charge-discharge cycle history of batteries covered by cycle-life warranties.
2. Performance: Automatically measures and records each discharge event, classifies it according to duration category, and totals discharges according to warranty criteria, displaying remaining warranted battery life on front panel display.
3. Additional monitoring functions and features shall include the following:
  - a. Measuring and Recording: Total voltage at battery terminals; initiates alarm for excursions outside the proper float-voltage level.
  - b. Monitors: Ambient temperature at battery; initiates alarm if temperature deviates from normally acceptable range.
  - c. Keypad on Device Front Panel: Provides access to monitored data using front panel display.
  - d. Alarm Contacts: Arranged to initiate local **OR** remote, **as directed**, alarm for battery discharge events **OR** abnormal temperature **OR** abnormal battery voltage or temperature, **as directed**.
  - e. Memory: Stores recorded data in nonvolatile electronic memory.
  - f. RS-232 Port: Permits downloading of data to a portable PC.
  - g. Modem: Makes measurements and recorded data accessible to a remote PC via telephone line. Computer is not specified in this Section.

Q. Source Quality Control

1. Factory test complete UPS system before shipment. Use actual batteries that are part of final installation **OR** simulated battery testing, **as directed**. Include the following:
  - a. Test and demonstration of all functions, controls, indicators, sensors, and protective devices.
  - b. Full-load test.
  - c. Transient-load response test.
  - d. Overload test.
  - e. Power failure test.
2. Observation of Test: Give 14 days' advance notice of tests and provide opportunity for Owner's representative to observe tests at Owner's choice.
3. Report test results. Include the following data:
  - a. Description of input source and output loads used. Describe actions required to simulate source load variation and various operating conditions and malfunctions.
  - b. List of indications, parameter values, and system responses considered satisfactory for each test action. Include tabulation of actual observations during test.
  - c. List of instruments and equipment used in factory tests.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation

1. Equipment Mounting: Install UPS on concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
  - a. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.



- b. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - c. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - d. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  2. Maintain minimum clearances and workspace at equipment according to manufacturer's written instructions and NFPA 70.
  3. Connections: Interconnect system components. Make connections to supply and load circuits according to manufacturer's wiring diagrams unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Grounding
1. Separately Derived Systems: If not part of a listed power supply for a data-processing room, comply with NFPA 70 requirements for connecting to grounding electrodes and for bonding to metallic piping near isolation transformer.
- C. Identification
1. Identify components and wiring according to Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
    - a. Identify each battery cell individually.
- D. Battery Equalization
1. Equalize charging of battery cells according to manufacturer's written instructions. Record individual-cell voltages.
- E. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections.
    - a. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
  2. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
    - b. Inspect interiors of enclosures, including the following:
      - 1) Integrity of mechanical and electrical connections.
      - 2) Component type and labeling verification.
      - 3) Ratings of installed components.
    - c. Inspect batteries and chargers according to requirements in NETA Acceptance Testing Specifications.
    - d. Test manual and automatic operational features and system protective and alarm functions.
    - e. Test communication of status and alarms to remote monitoring equipment.
    - f. Load the system using a variable-load bank to simulate kilovolt amperes, kilowatts, and power factor of loads for unit's rating. Use instruments calibrated within the previous six months according to NIST standards.
      - 1) Simulate malfunctions to verify protective device operation.
      - 2) Test duration of supply on emergency, low-battery voltage shutdown, and transfers and restoration due to normal source failure.
      - 3) Test harmonic content of input and output current less than 25, 50, and 100 percent of rated loads.
      - 4) Test output voltage under specified transient-load conditions.
      - 5) Test efficiency at 50, 75, and 100 percent of rated loads.
      - 6) Test remote status and alarm panel functions.
      - 7) Test battery-monitoring system functions.
  3. Seismic-restraint tests and inspections shall include the following:
    - a. Inspect type, size, quantity, arrangement, and proper installation of mounting or anchorage devices.



- 
- b. Test mounting and anchorage devices according to requirements in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
  - 4. The UPS system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  - 5. Record of Tests and Inspections: Maintain and submit documentation of tests and inspections, including references to manufacturers' written instructions and other test and inspection criteria. Include results of tests, inspections, and retests.
  - 6. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- F. Demonstration
- 1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain the UPS.

END OF SECTION 26 33 53 00





---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
26 33 53 00	26 33 43 00	Central Battery Inverters

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 26 35 33 00 - POWER FACTOR CORRECTION CAPACITORS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for power factor correction capacitors. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section includes power and automatic power factor correction equipment rated 600 V and less.

#### C. Performance Requirements

1. Seismic Performance: Power factor correction equipment shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include dimensions, operating characteristics of multiple capacitor cells or elements, and data on features, ratings, and performance.
2. Shop Drawings: For automatic power factor correction units.
  - a. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection. Show access and workspace requirements and required clearances.
  - b. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
4. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For capacitors, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
  - a. Basis of Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  - b. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  - c. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
5. Field quality-control reports.
6. Operation and Maintenance Data: For equipment to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Include the following:
  - a. Lists of spare parts and replacement components recommended for storage at Project site.
  - b. Detailed instructions covering operation under both normal and abnormal conditions.
7. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL **OR** one who meets the requirements necessary for certification, **as directed**.
  - a. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA **OR** one who meets the requirements necessary for certification, **as directed**, to supervise on-site testing.
2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. Comply with IEEE 18 and NEMA CP 1.
4. Comply with NFPA 70.



- F. Coordination
1. Coordinate sensor-communication module package with data network and with monitoring equipment specified in Division 26 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring And Control" for successful transmission and remote readout of remote monitoring data specified in this Section.
- G. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace capacitor-bank components that fail in materials or workmanship within five years from date of Final Completion.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

- A. Capacitors, General
1. Comply with UL 810.
  2. Service Conditions: Capacitor equipment suitable for the following conditions:
    - a. Operating Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 115 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 46 deg C).
    - b. Maximum Altitude: 6000 feet (1800 m).
    - c. Humidity: 0 to 95 percent, noncondensing.
  3. Construction: Multiple capacitor cells or elements, factory wired in three-phase groups and mounted in metal enclosures.
  4. Cells: Dry metallized-dielectric, self-healing type. Each cell shall be encapsulated in thermosetting resin inside plastic container.
  5. Rupture Protection: Pressure-sensitive circuit interrupter for each cell.
- B. Fixed Capacitors
1. Description: Factory wired, ready for field connection to external circuits at a single set of pressure terminals. Comply with UL 810.
  2. Fuses: Current-limiting, noninterchangeable type; factory installed in each phase and located within the equipment enclosure. Features include the following:
    - a. Interrupting Capacity: 100,000 **OR** 200,000, **as directed**, A
    - b. Fuse Ratings and Characteristics: As recommended by capacitor manufacturer.
    - c. Neon Indicator Lamp for Each Fuse: Connect to illuminate when fuse has opened, but is still in place, and locate so it is visible from outside the enclosure.
  3. Discharge Resistors: Factory installed and wired.
  4. Enclosure: NEMA 250, steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, arranged to contain the fluid leakage from capacitor cells; factory equipped with mounting brackets suitable for type of mounting indicated.
    - a. Indoor Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 12 or as indicated.  
**OR**  
Outdoor Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 3R or as indicated.  
**OR**  
Outdoor Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 4, equipped with watertight conduit connections.
- C. Automatic Power Factor Correction Units
1. Description: Capacitors, contactors, controls, and accessories factory installed in independent enclosures **OR** motor-control center, with a connection to motor-control center bus, **as directed**, complying with NEMA ICS 2. Comply with UL 810.
  2. Performance Requirements: Controls permit selection of a target power factor, adjustable to any value between unity and 0.80 lagging. Controls continuously sense the power factor on circuits being corrected and, when the power factor differs from the target setting for more than 10 seconds, operate a contractor to switch a capacitor bank into or out of the circuit. Contactors are opened or closed as required to bring the corrected circuit power factor closer to the target setting. Provide number of switching steps indicated on the Three-Phase Capacitor-Bank Schedule.



3. Current Transformer: Type, configuration, and ratio to suit sensing and mounting conditions.
4. Main Circuit Breaker: Thermal-magnetic, inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger. Operable from outside the enclosure to disconnect the unit.
5. Controls: Solid-state, microprocessor-based controls, including the following:
  - a. Undervoltage relay that interrupts capacitor switching and disconnects capacitors for power-supply interruptions longer than 15 minutes.
  - b. "Advance" and "Retard" push buttons on the control panel to permit manually controlled capacitor-bank switching.
6. Contactors: Three pole; rated for the repetitive high-inrush-switching duty in the capacitor application.
7. Fuses for Protection of Capacitor Banks: Rated to protect contactor, interconnecting wiring, and capacitors.
  - a. Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Identified and compartmented steel box **OR** cabinet with hinged lockable door, **as directed**.
8. Discharge Resistors: Factory installed and wired.  
**OR**  
Inductors: Air-core type, connected in capacitor circuits; rated to limit switching surges to within contactor ratings.
9. Precharge Capacitor Circuit: Resistive, precharge circuit to charge capacitors prior to switching and to limit switching surges to within contactor ratings.
10. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** Type 3R **OR** Type 12, **as directed**, steel or aluminum, with hinged door and hand-operated catch. Door shall be interlocked with controls or main circuit breaker to de-energize capacitors when door is opened.
  - a. Factory Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel over corrosion-resistant treatment or primer coat.
11. Local Display: LED or liquid-crystal digital type, mounted in door of enclosure, indicating the following:
  - a. Target and actual power factors accurate to plus or minus 1 percent of reading.
  - b. Steps energized.
  - c. Step reconnection delay.
  - d. Real and reactive currents.
  - e. Voltage total harmonic distortion.
  - f. Alarm codes.
12. System Alarms: Alarm relay and local display indication of the following conditions:
  - a. Low power factor.
  - b. Leading power factor.
  - c. Frequency not detected.
  - d. Overcurrent.
  - e. Overvoltage.
  - f. Overtemperature.
  - g. Excessive voltage total harmonic distortion.
  - h. Capacitor overload.
  - i. Loss of capacitance.
13. Remote Monitoring Components: Sensors, associated communication modules, and network interface units, matched to and compatible with electrical power monitoring and control network. Communication module shall have capability to transmit the following data to remote monitoring devices:
  - a. System in alarm.
  - b. Power factor set point.
  - c. Corrected power factor.
  - d. Number of capacitor steps activated.

D. Source Quality Control



1. Factory test power factor correction equipment before shipment. Comply with NEMA CP 1. Include the following:
  - a. Routine capacitor production tests, including short-time overvoltage, capacitance, leak, and dissipation-factor tests.
  - b. Functional test of all operations, controls, indicators, sensors, and protective devices.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation

1. Install freestanding equipment on concrete bases. Cast-in-place concrete is specified in Division 3.
2. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
3. Maintain minimum workspace according to manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Connect remote monitoring communication module to electrical power monitoring and control data network through appropriate network interface unit.
5. Identify components according to Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".

#### B. Field Quality Control

1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
2. Perform tests and inspections.
3. Tests and Inspections: Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in the following Sections, except optional tests, in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - a. Current Transformers.
  - b. Capacitors and Reactors, Capacitors.

#### C. Startup Service

1. Perform startup service.
  - a. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - b. Connect and run installed motors and equipment to verify the automatic switching of the capacitors. Verification shall include automatic switching of the total capacity of installed capacitors.
    - 1) Provide sufficient inductive/reactive load banks, in combination with resistive load banks, for the test.

#### D. Demonstration

1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain automatic power factor correction units.

END OF SECTION 26 35 33 00



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
26 35 33 00	26 09 23 00b	Electrical Power Monitoring And Control
26 35 53 00	26 32 13 13	Packaged Engine Generators



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





## SECTION 26 36 13 00 - TRANSFER SWITCHES

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for transfer switches. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes transfer switches rated 600 V and less, including the following:
  - a. Automatic transfer switches.
  - b. Bypass/isolation switches.
  - c. Nonautomatic transfer switches.
  - d. Remote annunciation systems.
  - e. Remote annunciation and control systems.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: Include rated capacities, weights, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
2. Shop Drawings: Dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details showing minimum clearances, conductor entry provisions, gutter space, installed features and devices, and material lists for each switch specified.
3. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that transfer switches accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems". Include the following:
4. Field quality-control test reports.
5. Operation and maintenance data.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
2. Comply with NEMA ICS 1.
3. Comply with NFPA 70.
4. Comply with NFPA 99.
5. Comply with NFPA 110.
6. Comply with UL 1008 unless requirements of these Specifications are stricter.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. General Transfer-Switch Product Requirements

1. Indicated Current Ratings: Apply as defined in UL 1008 for continuous loading and total system transfer, including tungsten filament lamp loads not exceeding 30 percent of switch ampere rating, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Tested Fault-Current Closing and Withstand Ratings: Adequate for duty imposed by protective devices at installation locations in Project under the fault conditions indicated, based on testing according to UL 1008.
  - a. Where transfer switch includes internal fault-current protection, rating of switch and trip unit combination shall exceed indicated fault-current value at installation location.
3. Solid-State Controls: Repetitive accuracy of all settings shall be plus or minus 2 percent or better over an operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.



4. Resistance to Damage by Voltage Transients: Components shall meet or exceed voltage-surge withstand capability requirements when tested according to IEEE C62.41. Components shall meet or exceed voltage-impulse withstand test of NEMA ICS 1.
5. Electrical Operation: Accomplish by a nonfused, momentarily energized solenoid or electric-motor-operated mechanism, mechanically and electrically interlocked in both directions.
6. Switch Characteristics: Designed for continuous-duty repetitive transfer of full-rated current between active power sources.
  - a. Limitation: Switches using molded-case switches or circuit breakers or insulated-case circuit-breaker components are not acceptable.
  - b. Switch Action: Double throw; mechanically held in both directions.
  - c. Contacts: Silver composition or silver alloy for load-current switching. Conventional automatic transfer-switch units, rated 225 A and higher, shall have separate arcing contacts.
7. Neutral Switching. Where four-pole switches are indicated, provide neutral pole switched simultaneously with phase poles **OR** overlapping neutral contacts, **as directed**.
8. Neutral Terminal: Solid and fully rated, unless otherwise indicated.
9. Oversize Neutral: Ampacity and switch rating of neutral path through units indicated for oversize neutral shall be double the nominal rating of circuit in which switch is installed.
10. Heater: Equip switches exposed to outdoor temperatures and humidity, and other units indicated, with an internal heater. Provide thermostat within enclosure to control heater.
11. Battery Charger: For generator starting batteries.
  - a. Float type rated 2 **OR** 10, **as directed**, A.
  - b. Ammeter to display charging current.
  - c. Fused ac inputs and dc outputs.
12. Annunciation, Control, and Programming Interface Components: Devices at transfer switches for communicating with remote programming devices, annunciators, or annunciator and control panels shall have communication capability matched with remote device.
13. Factory Wiring: Train and bundle factory wiring and label, consistent with Shop Drawings, either by color-code or by numbered or lettered wire and cable tape markers at terminations. Color-coding and wire and cable tape markers are specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
  - a. Designated Terminals: Pressure type, suitable for types and sizes of field wiring indicated.
  - b. Power-Terminal Arrangement and Field-Wiring Space: Suitable for top, side, or bottom entrance of feeder conductors as indicated.
  - c. Control Wiring: Equipped with lugs suitable for connection to terminal strips.
14. Enclosures: General-purpose NEMA 250, Type 1 **OR** 3R **OR** 12, **as directed**, complying with NEMA ICS 6 and UL 508, unless otherwise indicated.

#### B. Automatic Transfer Switches

1. Comply with Level 1 equipment according to NFPA 110.
2. Switching Arrangement: Double-throw type, incapable of pauses or intermediate position stops during normal functioning, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Manual Switch Operation: Under load, with door closed and with either or both sources energized. Transfer time is same as for electrical operation. Control circuit automatically disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.
4. Manual Switch Operation: Unloaded. Control circuit automatically disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.
5. Signal-Before-Transfer Contacts: A set of normally open/normally closed dry contacts operates in advance of retransfer to normal source. Interval is adjustable from 1 to 30 seconds.
6. Digital Communication Interface: Matched to capability of remote annunciator or annunciator and control panel.
7. Transfer Switches Based on Molded-Case-Switch Components: Comply with NEMA AB 1, UL 489, and UL 869A.
8. Automatic Closed-Transition Transfer Switches: Include the following functions and characteristics:



- a. Fully automatic make-before-break operation.
  - b. Load transfer without interruption, through momentary interconnection of both power sources not exceeding 100 ms.
  - c. Initiation of No-Interruption Transfer: Controlled by in-phase monitor and sensors confirming both sources are present and acceptable.
    - 1) Initiation occurs without active control of generator.
    - 2) Controls ensure that closed-transition load transfer closure occurs only when the 2 sources are within plus or minus 5 electrical degrees maximum, and plus or minus 5 percent maximum voltage difference.
  - d. Failure of power source serving load initiates automatic break-before-make transfer.
9. In-Phase Monitor: Factory-wired, internal relay controls transfer so it occurs only when the two sources are synchronized in phase. Relay compares phase relationship and frequency difference between normal and emergency sources and initiates transfer when both sources are within 15 electrical degrees, and only if transfer can be completed within 60 electrical degrees. Transfer is initiated only if both sources are within 2 Hz of nominal frequency and 70 percent or more of nominal voltage.
10. Motor Disconnect and Timing Relay: Controls designate starters so they disconnect motors before transfer and reconnect them selectively at an adjustable time interval after transfer. Control connection to motor starters is through wiring external to automatic transfer switch. Time delay for reconnecting individual motor loads is adjustable between 1 and 60 seconds, and settings are as indicated. Relay contacts handling motor-control circuit inrush and seal currents are rated for actual currents to be encountered.
11. Programmed Neutral Switch Position: Switch operator has a programmed neutral position arranged to provide a midpoint between the two working switch positions, with an intentional, time-controlled pause at midpoint during transfer. Pause is adjustable from 0.5 to 30 seconds minimum and factory set for 0.5 second, unless otherwise indicated. Time delay occurs for both transfer directions. Pause is disabled unless both sources are live.
12. Automatic Transfer-Switch Features:
- a. Undervoltage Sensing for Each Phase of Normal Source: Sense low phase-to-ground voltage on each phase. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal, and dropout voltage is adjustable from 75 to 98 percent of pickup value. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent and dropout at 85 percent.
  - b. Adjustable Time Delay: For override of normal-source voltage sensing to delay transfer and engine start signals. Adjustable from zero to six seconds, and factory set for one second.
  - c. Voltage/Frequency Lockout Relay: Prevent premature transfer to generator. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent. Pickup frequency shall be adjustable from 90 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 95 percent.
  - d. Time Delay for Retransfer to Normal Source: Adjustable from 0 to 30 minutes, and factory set for 10 minutes to automatically defeat delay on loss of voltage or sustained undervoltage of emergency source, provided normal supply has been restored.
  - e. Test Switch: Simulate normal-source failure.
  - f. Switch-Position Pilot Lights: Indicate source to which load is connected.
  - g. Source-Available Indicating Lights: Supervise sources via transfer-switch normal- and emergency-source sensing circuits.
    - 1) Normal Power Supervision: Green light with nameplate engraved "Normal Source Available."
    - 2) Emergency Power Supervision: Red light with nameplate engraved "Emergency Source Available."
  - h. Unassigned Auxiliary Contacts: Two normally open, single-pole, double-throw contacts for each switch position, rated 10 A at 240-V ac.
  - i. Transfer Override Switch: Overrides automatic retransfer control so automatic transfer switch will remain connected to emergency power source regardless of condition of normal source. Pilot light indicates override status.



- j. Engine Starting Contacts: One isolated and normally closed, and one isolated and normally open; rated 10 A at 32-V dc minimum.
- k. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Instantaneous; shall initiate shutdown sequence at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
- l. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Time delay adjustable from zero to five minutes, and factory set for five minutes. Contacts shall initiate shutdown at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
- m. Engine-Generator Exerciser: Solid-state, programmable-time switch starts engine generator and transfers load to it from normal source for a preset time, then retransfers and shuts down engine after a preset cool-down period. Initiates exercise cycle at preset intervals adjustable from 7 to 30 days. Running periods are adjustable from 10 to 30 minutes. Factory settings are for 7-day exercise cycle, 20-minute running period, and 5-minute cool-down period. Exerciser features include the following:
  - 1) Exerciser Transfer Selector Switch: Permits selection of exercise with and without load transfer.
  - 2) Push-button programming control with digital display of settings.
  - 3) Integral battery operation of time switch when normal control power is not available.

#### C. Bypass/Isolation Switches

1. Comply with requirements for Level 1 equipment according to NFPA 110.
2. Description: Manual type, arranged to select and connect either source of power directly to load, isolating transfer switch from load and from both power sources. Include the following features for each combined automatic transfer switch and bypass/isolation switch:
  - a. Means to lock bypass/isolation switch in the position that isolates transfer switch with an arrangement that permits complete electrical testing of transfer switch while isolated. While isolated, interlocks prevent transfer-switch operation, except for testing or maintenance.
  - b. Drawout Arrangement for Transfer Switch: Provide physical separation from live parts and accessibility for testing and maintenance operations.
  - c. Bypass/Isolation Switch Current, Voltage, Closing, and Short-Circuit Withstand Ratings: Equal to or greater than those of associated automatic transfer switch, and with same phase arrangement and number of poles.
  - d. Contact temperatures of bypass/isolation switches shall not exceed those of automatic transfer-switch contacts when they are carrying rated load.
  - e. Operability: Constructed so load bypass and transfer-switch isolation can be performed by 1 person in no more than 2 operations in 15 seconds or less.
  - f. Legend: Manufacturer's standard legend for control labels and instruction signs shall describe operating instructions.
  - g. Maintainability: Fabricate to allow convenient removal of major components from front without removing other parts or main power conductors.
3. Interconnection of Bypass/Isolation Switches with Automatic Transfer Switches: Factory-installed copper bus bars; plated at connection points and braced for the indicated available short-circuit current.

#### D. Nonautomatic Transfer Switches

1. Operation: Electrically actuated by push buttons designated "Normal Source" and "Alternate Source." Switch shall be capable of transferring load in either direction with either or both sources energized.
2. Operation: Electrically actuated by push buttons designated "Normal Source" and "Alternate Source." In addition, removable manual handle provides quick-make, quick-break manual-switching action. Switch shall be capable of electrically or manually transferring load in either direction with either or both sources energized. Control circuit disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.
3. Double-Throw Switching Arrangement: Incapable of pauses or intermediate position stops during switching sequence.



4. Nonautomatic Transfer-Switch Accessories:
  - a. Pilot Lights: Indicate source to which load is connected.
  - b. Source-Available Indicating Lights: Supervise sources via transfer-switch normal- and alternate-source sensing circuits.
    - 1) Normal Power Supervision: Green light with nameplate engraved "Normal Source Available."
    - 2) Emergency Power Supervision: Red light with nameplate engraved "Alternate Source Available."
  - c. Unassigned Auxiliary Contacts: One set of normally closed contacts for each switch position, rated 10 A at 240-V ac.
- E. Remote Annunciator System
  1. Functional Description: Remote annunciator panel shall annunciate conditions for indicated transfer switches. Annunciation shall include the following:
    - a. Sources available, as defined by actual pickup and dropout settings of transfer-switch controls.
    - b. Switch position.
    - c. Switch in test mode.
    - d. Failure of communication link.
  2. Annunciator Panel: LED-lamp type with audible signal and silencing switch.
    - a. Indicating Lights: Grouped for each transfer switch monitored.
    - b. Label each group, indicating transfer switch it monitors, location of switch, and identity of load it serves.
    - c. Mounting: Flush, modular, steel cabinet, unless otherwise indicated.
    - d. Lamp Test: Push-to-test or lamp-test switch on front panel.
- F. Remote Annunciator And Control System
  1. Functional Description: Include the following functions for indicated transfer switches:
    - a. Indication of sources available, as defined by actual pickup and dropout settings of transfer-switch controls.
    - b. Indication of switch position.
    - c. Indication of switch in test mode.
    - d. Indication of failure of digital communication link.
    - e. Key-switch or user-code access to control functions of panel.
    - f. Control of switch-test initiation.
    - g. Control of switch operation in either direction.
    - h. Control of time-delay bypass for transfer to normal source.
  2. Malfunction of annunciator, annunciation and control panel, or communication link shall not affect functions of automatic transfer switch. In the event of failure of communication link, automatic transfer switch automatically reverts to stand-alone, self-contained operation. Automatic transfer-switch sensing, controlling, or operating function shall not depend on remote panel for proper operation.
  3. Remote Annunciation and Control Panel: Solid-state components. Include the following features:
    - a. Controls and indicating lights grouped together for each transfer switch.
    - b. Label each indicating light control group. Indicate transfer switch it controls, location of switch, and load it serves.
    - c. Digital Communication Capability: Matched to that of transfer switches supervised.
    - d. Mounting: Flush, modular, steel cabinet, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Source Quality Control
  1. Factory test and inspect components, assembled switches, and associated equipment. Ensure proper operation. Check transfer time and voltage, frequency, and time-delay settings for compliance with specified requirements. Perform dielectric strength test complying with NEMA ICS 1.



### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation

1. Design each fastener and support to carry load indicated by seismic requirements and according to seismic-restraint details. See Division 26 Section "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems".
2. Floor-Mounting Switch: Anchor to floor by bolting.
  - a. Concrete Bases: 4 inches (100 mm) high, reinforced, with chamfered edges. Extend base no more than 4 inches (100 mm) in all directions beyond the maximum dimensions of switch, unless otherwise indicated or unless required for seismic support. Construct concrete bases according to Division 26 Section "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems".
3. Annunciator and Control Panel Mounting: Flush in wall, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Identify components according to Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
5. Set field-adjustable intervals and delays, relays, and engine exerciser clock.

#### B. Connections

1. Wiring to Remote Components: Match type and number of cables and conductors to control and communication requirements of transfer switches as recommended by manufacturer. Increase raceway sizes at no additional cost to the Owner if necessary to accommodate required wiring.
2. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
3. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".

#### C. Field Quality Control

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections. Report results in writing.
2. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
  - a. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in testing.
  - b. After installing equipment and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
  - c. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - d. Measure insulation resistance phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with insulation-resistance tester. Use test voltages and procedure recommended by manufacturer. Comply with manufacturer's specified minimum resistance.
    - 1) Check for electrical continuity of circuits and for short circuits.
    - 2) Inspect for physical damage, proper installation and connection, and integrity of barriers, covers, and safety features.
    - 3) Verify that manual transfer warnings are properly placed.
    - 4) Perform manual transfer operation.
  - e. After energizing circuits, demonstrate interlocking sequence and operational function for each switch at least three times.
    - 1) Simulate power failures of normal source to automatic transfer switches and of emergency source with normal source available.
    - 2) Simulate loss of phase-to-ground voltage for each phase of normal source.
    - 3) Verify time-delay settings.
    - 4) Verify pickup and dropout voltages by data readout or inspection of control settings.
    - 5) Perform contact-resistance test across main contacts and correct values exceeding 500 microhms and values for 1 pole deviating by more than 50 percent from other poles.



- 6) Verify proper sequence and correct timing of automatic engine starting, transfer time delay, retransfer time delay on restoration of normal power, and engine cool-down and shutdown.
  - f. Ground-Fault Tests: Coordinate with testing of ground-fault protective devices for power delivery from both sources.
    - 1) Verify grounding connections and locations and ratings of sensors.
  3. Coordinate tests with tests of generator and run them concurrently.
  4. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation and contact resistances and time delays. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.
  5. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
  6. Infrared Scanning: After Final Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each switch. Remove all access panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
    - a. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switch 11 months after date of Final Completion.
    - b. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
    - c. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
- D. Demonstration
1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain transfer switches and related equipment as specified below.
  2. Coordinate this training with that for generator equipment.

END OF SECTION 26 36 13 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
26 36 13 00	26 24 13 00a	Enclosed Switches And Circuit Breakers
26 36 23 00	26 24 13 00a	Enclosed Switches And Circuit Breakers
26 36 23 00	26 36 13 00	Transfer Switches



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 26 43 13 00 - TRANSIENT VOLTAGE SUPPRESSION

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for transient voltage suppression. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section includes field-mounted TVSS for low-voltage (120 to 600 V) power distribution and control equipment.

#### C. Definitions

1. ATS: Acceptance Testing Specifications.
2. SVR: Suppressed voltage rating.
3. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppressor(s), both singular and plural; also, transient voltage surge suppression.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating weights, electrical characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
2. Field quality-control reports.
3. Operation and maintenance data.
4. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with IEEE C62.41.2 and test devices according to IEEE C62.45.
3. Comply with NEMA LS 1.
4. Comply with UL 1283, **as directed**, and UL 1449.
5. Comply with NFPA 70.

#### F. Project Conditions

1. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:
  - a. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed electrical service interruptions.
  - b. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Owner's written permission.
2. Service Conditions: Rate TVSS devices for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
  - a. Maximum Continuous Operating Voltage: Not less than 115 percent of nominal system operating voltage.
  - b. Operating Temperature: 30 to 120 deg F (0 to 50 deg C).
  - c. Humidity: 0 to 85 percent, noncondensing.
  - d. Altitude: Less than 20,000 feet (6090 m) above sea level.

#### G. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of surge suppressors that fail in materials or workmanship within Five years from date of Final Completion.



2. Special Warranty for Cord-Connected, Plug-in Surge Suppressors: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace electronic equipment connected to circuits protected by surge suppressors.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Service Entrance Suppressors

#### 1. Surge Protection Devices:

- a. Non-modular.
- b. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
- c. Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
- d. Form-C contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of protection status. Contacts shall reverse on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.

#### OR

#### Surge Protection Devices:

- e. Comply with UL 1449.
  - f. Modular design (with field-replaceable modules) **OR** Non-modular design, **as directed**.
  - g. Fuses, rated at 200-kA interrupting capacity.
  - h. Fabrication using bolted compression lugs for internal wiring.
  - i. Integral disconnect switch (if a fused switch or circuit breaker is not provided for the TVSS in the panelboard and the TVSS will not have a direct bus bar connection).
  - j. Redundant suppression circuits.
  - k. Redundant replaceable modules.
  - l. Arrangement with copper bus bars and for bolted connections to phase buses, neutral bus, and ground bus.
- #### OR
- Arrangement with wire connections to phase buses, neutral bus, and ground bus.
- m. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
  - n. Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
  - o. Form-C contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of protection status. Contacts shall reverse on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.
  - p. Four **OR** Six, **as directed**, -digit transient-event counter set to totalize transient surges.
2. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating: 320 kA per mode/640 kA **OR** 240 kA per mode/480 kA **OR** 160 kA per mode/320 kA, **as directed**, per phase.
  3. Minimum single impulse current ratings, using 8-by-20-mic.sec waveform described in IEEE C62.41.2
    - a. Line to Neutral: 70,000 A.
    - b. Line to Ground: 70,000 A.
    - c. Neutral to Ground: 50,000 A.
  4. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for grounded wye circuits with 480Y/277 V **OR** 208Y/120 V **OR** 600Y/347 V, **as directed**, 3-phase, 4-wire circuits shall be as follows:
    - a. Line to Neutral: 800 V for 480Y/277 V **OR** 400 V for 208Y/120 V **OR** 1200 V for 600Y/347 V, **as directed**.
    - b. Line to Ground: 800 V for 480Y/277 V **OR** 400 V for 208Y/120 V **OR** 1200 V for 600Y/347 V, **as directed**.
    - c. Neutral to Ground: 800 V for 480Y/277 V **OR** 400 V for 208Y/120 V **OR** 1200 V for 600Y/347 V, **as directed**.

#### OR

Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for 240/120 V, single-phase, 3-wire circuits shall be as follows:



- a. Line to Neutral: 400 V.
- b. Line to Ground: 400 V.
- c. Neutral to Ground: 400 V.

**OR**

Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for 240/120-V, 3-phase, 4-wire circuits with high leg shall be as follows:

- a. Line to Neutral: 400 V, 800 V from high leg.
- b. Line to Ground: 400 V.
- c. Neutral to Ground: 400 V.

**OR**

Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for 240 V, 480 V, or 600 V, 3-phase, 3-wire, delta circuits shall be as follows:

- a. Line to Line: 2000 V for 480 V **OR** 1000 V for 240 V **OR** 2500 V for 600 V, **as directed**.
- b. Line to Ground: 2000 V for 480 V **OR** 1000 V for 240 V **OR** 2500 V for 600 V, **as directed**.

**B. Panelboard Suppressors****1. Surge Protection Devices:**

- a. Non-modular.
- b. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
- c. Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
- d. Form-C contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of protection status. Contacts shall reverse on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.

**OR**

Surge Protection Devices:

- a. Comply with UL 1449.
  - b. Modular design (with field-replaceable modules) **OR** Non-modular design, **as directed**.
  - c. Short-circuit current rating complying with UL 1449, and matching or exceeding the panelboard short-circuit rating and redundant suppression circuits; with individually fused metal-oxide varistors.
  - d. Fuses, rated at 200-kA interrupting capacity.
  - e. Fabrication using bolted compression lugs for internal wiring.
  - f. Integral disconnect switch (if a fused switch or circuit breaker is not provided for the TVSS in the panelboard and the TVSS will not have a direct bus bar connection).
  - g. Redundant suppression circuits.
  - h. Redundant replaceable modules.
  - i. Arrangement with wire connections to phase buses, neutral bus, and ground bus.
  - j. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
  - k. Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
  - l. Form-C contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of protection status. Contacts shall reverse on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.
  - m. Four **OR** Six, **as directed**, -digit transient-event counter set to totalize transient surges.
2. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating: 160 kA per mode/320 kA **OR** 120 kA per mode/240 kA **OR** 80 kA per mode/160 kA, **as directed**, per phase.
  3. Minimum single impulse current ratings, using 8-by-20-mic.sec waveform described in IEEE C62.41.2:
    - a. Line to Neutral: 70,000 A.
    - b. Line to Ground: 70,000 A.
    - c. Neutral to Ground: 50,000 A.
  4. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for grounded wye circuits with 480Y/277 V **OR** 208Y/120 V **OR** 600Y/347 V, **as directed**, 3-phase, 4-wire circuits shall be as follows:
    - a. Line to Neutral: 800 V for 480Y/277 V **OR** 400 V for 208Y/120 V **OR** 1200 V for 600Y/347 V, **as directed**.



- b. Line to Ground: 800 V for 480Y/277 V **OR** 400 V for 208Y/120 V **OR** 1200 V for 600Y/347 V, **as directed**.
- c. Neutral to Ground: 800 V for 480Y/277 V **OR** 400 V for 208Y/120 V **OR** 1200 V for 600Y/347 V, **as directed**.

**OR**

Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for 240/120-V, single-phase, 3-wire circuits shall be as follows:

- a. Line to Neutral: 400 V.
- b. Line to Ground: 400 V.
- c. Neutral to Ground: 400 V.

**OR**

Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for 240/120-V, 3-phase, 4-wire circuits with high leg shall be as follows:

- a. Line to Neutral: 400 V, 800 V from high leg.
- b. Line to Ground: 400 V.
- c. Neutral to Ground: 400 V.

**OR**

Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for 240 V, 480 V, or 600 V, 3-phase, 3-wire, delta circuits shall be as follows:

- a. Line to Line: 2000 V for 480 V **OR** 1000 V for 240 V **OR** 2500 V for 600 V, **as directed**.
- b. Line to Ground: 1500 V for 480 V **OR** 800 V for 240 V **OR** 2500 V for 600 V, **as directed**.

## C. Enclosures

- 1. Indoor Enclosures: NEMA 250 Type 1 **OR** Type 12, **as directed**.
- 2. Outdoor Enclosures: NEMA 250 Type 3R **OR** Type 4 **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**.

## 1.3 EXECUTION

## A. Installation

- 1. Install TVSS devices at service entrance on load side, with ground lead bonded to service entrance ground.
- 2. Install TVSS devices for panelboards and auxiliary panels with conductors or buses between suppressor and points of attachment as short and straight as possible. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended lead length. Do not bond neutral and ground.
  - a. Provide multiple, 30 **OR** 60 **OR** 100, **as directed**, -A circuit breaker as a dedicated disconnecting means for TVSS unless otherwise indicated.

## B. Field Quality Control

- 1. Perform tests and inspections.
  - a. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- 2. Tests and Inspections:
  - a. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA ATS, "Surge Arresters, Low-Voltage Surge Protection Devices" Section. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - b. After installing TVSS devices but before electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
  - c. Complete startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- 3. TVSS device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- 4. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## C. Startup Service



- 
- a. Do not energize or connect service entrance equipment **OR** panelboards **OR** control terminals **OR** data terminals, **as directed**, to their sources until TVSS devices are installed and connected.
  - b. Do not perform insulation resistance tests of the distribution wiring equipment with the TVSS installed. Disconnect before conducting insulation resistance tests, and reconnect immediately after the testing is over.

D. Demonstration

- a. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to maintain TVSS devices.

END OF SECTION 26 43 13 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
26 53 00 00	26 01 50 51a	Interior Lighting

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 26 55 68 00 - SPORTS LIGHTING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for exterior athletic lighting. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section includes lighting for the following outdoor sports venues:
  - a. Baseball fields.
  - b. Softball fields.
  - c. Football fields.
  - d. Soccer fields.
  - e. Outdoor tennis courts.

#### C. Definitions

1. CV: Coefficient of variation; a statistical measure of the weighted average of all relevant illumination values for the playing area, expressed as the ratio of the standard deviation for all illuminance values to the mean illuminance value.
2. Delegated-Design Submittals: Documents, including drawings, calculations, and material and product specifications prepared as a responsibility of Contractor to obtain acceptance by the Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Illuminance: The metric most commonly used to evaluate lighting systems. It is the density of luminous flux, or flow of light, reaching a surface divided by the area of that surface.
  - a. Horizontal Illuminance: Measurement in foot-candles (lux), on a horizontal surface 36 inches (914 mm) above ground unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Target Illuminance: Average maintained illuminance level, calculated by multiplying initial illuminance by LLF.
  - c. Vertical Illuminance: Measurement in foot-candles (lux), in two **OR** four, **as directed**, directions on a vertical surface, at an elevation coinciding with plane height of horizontal measurements.
4. LC: Lighting Certified.
5. Light Trespass: Light spill into areas and properties outside the playing areas, which is either annoying or unwanted.
6. LLD: Lamp lumen depreciation, which is the decrease in lamp output as the lamp ages.
7. LLF: Light loss factor, which is the product of all factors that contribute to light loss in the system.
8. Luminaire: Complete lighting fixture, including ballast housing if integral.
9. UG: Uniformity gradient; the rate of change of illuminance on the playing field, expressed as a ratio between the illuminances of adjacent measuring points on a uniform grid.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. Facility Type: Professional **OR** College **OR** Semiprofessional **OR** Sports club **OR** Amateur league **OR** High school **OR** Training facility **OR** Elementary school **OR** Recreational or social facility, **as directed**.
2. Illumination Criteria:
  - a. Minimum average target illuminance level for each lighted area for each sports venue and for the indicated class of play according to IESNA RP-6.
  - b. CV and maximum-to-minimum uniformity ratios for each lighted area equal to or less than those listed in IESNA RP-6 for the indicated class of play.
  - c. UG levels within each lighted area equal to or less than those listed in IESNA RP-6 for the indicated speed of sport.



3. Illumination Criteria:
  - a. Minimum Average Target Illumination: <Insert value>.
  - b. CV: <Insert value>.
  - c. Maximum-to-Minimum Uniformity Ratio: <Insert value>.
  - d. UG Level: <Insert value>.
4. Illumination Calculations: Computer-analyzed point method complying with IESNA RP-6 to optimize selection, location, and aiming of luminaires.
  - a. Grid Pattern Dimensions: For playing areas of each sport and areas of concern for spill-light control, correlate and reference calculated parameters to the grid areas. Each grid point represents the center of the grid area defined by the length and width of the grid spacing.
  - b. Spill-Light Control: Minimize spill light for each playing area on adjacent and nearby areas.
    - 1) Prevent light trespass on properties near Project as defined by <Insert name(s) of authorities having jurisdiction>.
    - 2) For areas indicated on Drawings as "spill-light critical," limit the level of illuminance directed into the area from any luminaire or group of luminaires, and measured 36 inches (914 mm) above grade to the following:
      - a) Maximum Horizontal Illuminance: 0.25 fc (2.7 lux) **OR** 0.5 fc (5.4 lux) **OR** 0.75 fc (8.1 lux), **as directed**.
      - b) Maximum Vertical Illuminance from the Direction of the Greatest Contribution of Light: 1.0 fc (10.8 lux) **OR** 2.0 fc (21.5 lux) **OR** 3.0 fc (32.3 lux), **as directed**.
    - 3) Calculate the horizontal and vertical illuminance due to spill light for points spaced 20 feet (6 m) apart in areas indicated on Drawings as "spill-light critical," to ensure that design meets the above limits.
  - c. Glare Control: Design illumination for each playing area to minimize direct glare in adjacent and nearby areas.
    - 1) Design source intensity of luminaires that may be observed at an elevation of 60 inches (1524 mm) above finished grade from nearby properties to be less than 12,000 **OR** 20,000 **OR** 30,000, **as directed**, candela when so observed.
    - 2) Design source intensity of luminaires that may be observed at an elevation of 60 inches (1524 mm) above finished grade from designated "spill-light critical" areas to be less than 12,000 **OR** 20,000 **OR** 30,000, **as directed**, candela when so observed.
  - d. Determine LLF according to IESNA RP-6 and manufacturer's test data.
    - 1) Use LLD at 100 percent of rated lamp life. LLF shall be applied to initial illumination to ensure that target illumination is achieved at 100 percent of lamp life and shall include consideration of field factor.
    - 2) LLF shall not be higher than 70 percent, and may be lower when determined by manufacturer after application of the ballast output and optical system output according to IESNA RP-6.
  - e. Luminaire Mounting Height: Comply with IESNA RP-6, with consideration for requirements to minimize spill light and glare.
  - f. Luminaire Placement: Luminaire clusters shall be outside the glare zones defined by IESNA RP-6.
5. Baseball Fields:
  - a. IESNA RP-6, Class of Play: I **OR** II **OR** III **OR** IV, **as directed**.
  - b. Speed of Sport: Fast **OR** Moderate **OR** Slow, **as directed**.
  - c. Grid Pattern Dimensions: 30 by 30 feet (9 by 9 m).
6. Softball Fields:
  - a. IESNA RP-6, Class of Play: I **OR** II **OR** III **OR** IV, **as directed**.
  - b. Speed of Sport: Fast **OR** Moderate **OR** Slow, **as directed**.
  - c. Grid Pattern Dimensions: 20 by 20 feet (6 by 6 m).
7. Football Fields:
  - a. IESNA RP-6, Class of Play: I **OR** II **OR** III **OR** IV, **as directed**.



- b. Speed of Sport: Fast **OR** Moderate **OR** Slow, **as directed**.
- c. Grid Pattern Dimensions: 30 by 30 feet (9 by 9 m).
- 8. Soccer Fields:
  - a. IESNA RP-6, Class of Play: I **OR** II **OR** III **OR** IV, **as directed**.
  - b. Speed of Sport: Fast **OR** Moderate **OR** Slow, **as directed**.
  - c. Grid Pattern Dimensions: 30 by 30 feet (9 by 9 m).
- 9. Outdoor Tennis Courts:
  - a. IESNA RP-6, Class of Play: I **OR** II **OR** III **OR** IV, **as directed**.
  - b. Speed of Sport: Fast **OR** Moderate **OR** Slow, **as directed**.
  - c. Grid Pattern Dimensions: 10 by 10 feet (3 by 3 m).
- 10. Egress Lighting: In case of power failure, provide a minimum of 1.0-fc (10.8-lux) illumination, within 30 seconds, measured at grade in spectator and spectator egress areas.
  - a. Duration of emergency illumination shall be not less than 15 minutes.
  - b. Momentary Power Interruptions: Provide emergency illumination immediately following restoration of power to the lighting circuits. Emergency illumination shall automatically extinguish after 15 minutes.
- 11. Lighting Control: Manual, low voltage, or digital; providing the following functions, integrated into a single control station, with multiple subcontrol stations as indicated:
  - a. Control Station: Key-operated master switch, manual push-button controls, and system status indicator lights. Test switch of egress lighting system, **as directed**.
  - b. Light Levels: Two levels of control - 100/50 percent of minimum target illumination.
- 12. Electric Power Distribution Requirements:
  - a. Electric Power: 208 **OR** 230 **OR** 480, **as directed**, V; three phase.
    - 1) Include roughing-in of service indicated for nonsports improvements on Project site.
    - 2) Balance load between phases. Install wiring to balance three phases at each support structure.
    - 3) Include required overcurrent protective devices and individual lighting control for each sports field or venue.
    - 4) Include indicated feeder capacity and panelboard provisions for future lighted sports field construction.
- 13. Maximum Total Load: **<Insert number> A**.
  - a. Maximum Total Voltage Drop from Source to Load: 5 percent, including voltage drops in branch circuit, subfeeder, and feeder.
- 14. Seismic Performance: Luminaires, ballasts, and support structures shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
- 15. Life-Cycle Cost Criteria:
  - a. Estimated life-cycle cost of lighting system for period of **<Insert number>** years based on the parameters below:
    - 1) Energy Cost: **<Insert value>** {Calculate energy costs by multiplying (number of luminaires) x (kilowatt demand per luminaire) x (power cost at \$/kilowatts) x (number of annual usage hours) x (number of years)}.
    - 2) Lamp Replacement Cost: **<Insert value>** (Calculate replacement costs by multiplying (cost to replace a lamp) x (number of luminaires) x (number of relamps over the period of years used in calculating the energy cost)).
    - 3) General Maintenance: **<Insert value>** (Calculate maintenance costs by multiplying (number of repairs) x (cost per repair) over the life cycle).

**OR**

Life-Cycle Cost Criteria: **<Insert value>** (Calculate according to Federal Energy Management Program's "Building Life-Cycle Cost").

E. Submittals

- 1. Product Data: For each type of lighting product indicated. Include the following:



- a. Lamp life, output, and energy-efficiency data. Lamp data certified by NVLAP or NRTL; comply with IESNA LM-47.
  - b. Photometric data based on laboratory tests of each luminaire type, complete with lamps, ballasts, and accessories; comply with IESNA LM-5.
    - 1) Photometric data shall be certified by a qualified independent testing agency.
 

**OR**

 Photometric data shall be certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
  2. Delegated-Design Submittal: For exterior athletic lighting indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
    - a. Drawings and specifications for construction of lighting system.
    - b. Manufacturer's determination of LLF used in design calculations.
    - c. Lighting system design calculations for the following:
      - 1) Target illuminance.
      - 2) Point calculations of horizontal and vertical illuminance, CV, and UG at minimum grid size and area.
      - 3) Point calculations of horizontal and vertical illuminance in indicated areas of concern for spill light.
      - 4) Calculations of source intensity of luminaires observed at eye level from indicated properties near the playing fields.
    - d. Electrical system design calculations for the following:
      - 1) Short-circuit current calculations for rating of panelboards.
      - 2) Total connected and estimated peak-demand electrical load, in kilowatts, of lighting system.
      - 3) Capacity of feeder **OR** service, **as directed**, required to supply lighting system.
    - e. Wiring requirements, including required conductors and cables and wiring methods.
    - f. Structural analysis data and calculations used for pole selection.
      - 1) Manufacturer Wind-Load Strength Certification: Submit certification that selected total support system, including poles, complies with AASHTO LTS-4-M for location of Project.
  3. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer, manufacturer, professional engineer, luminaire photometric data testing laboratory and field testing agency.
  4. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For luminaires, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
    - a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
    - b. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
    - c. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
  5. Manufacturer Certificates: For support structures, including brackets, arms, appurtenances, bases, anchorages, and foundations, from manufacturer.
  6. Welding certificates.
  7. Field quality-control reports.
  8. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sports lighting system components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  9. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.
- F. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
  2. Manufacturer Qualifications: Manufacturer's responsibilities include fabricating sports lighting and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility.



- a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of delegated-design submittals and comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer who is additionally LC by the National Council on Qualifications for the Lighting Professions, **as directed**.
3. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory: By manufacturers' laboratories that are accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
4. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory: By an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL.
5. Field Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency that is accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products, or an NRTL as defined in 29 CFR 1910, with the experience and capability to conduct field testing according to IESNA LM-5.

**OR**

Field Testing Agency Qualifications: A qualified independent professional engineer not associated with Contractor or lighting equipment manufacturer, who is additionally LC by the National Council on Qualifications for the Lighting Professions, **as directed**.

6. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel" and AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
7. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

G. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of luminaires, lamps, and luminaire alignment products and to correct misalignment that occurs subsequent to successful acceptance tests. Manufacturer may exclude lightning damage, hail damage, vandalism, abuse, and unauthorized repairs and alterations from special warranty coverage.
  - a. Luminaire Warranty: Luminaire and luminaire assembly (excluding fuses and lamps) shall be free from defects in materials and workmanship for a period of five years from date of Final Completion.
  - b. Lamp Warranty:
    - 1) Replace lamps and fuses that fail within 12 months from date of Final Completion.
    - 2) Provide replacement lamps for lamps that fail within the second 12 months from date of Final Completion.
  - c. Alignment Warranty: Accuracy of alignment of luminaires shall remain within specified illuminance uniformity ratios for a period of five years from date of successful completion of acceptance tests.
    - 1) Realign luminaires that become misaligned during the warranty period.
    - 2) Replace alignment products that fail within the warranty period.
    - 3) Verify successful realignment of luminaires by retesting as specified in "Field Quality Control" Article.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Luminaires, Lamps, And Ballasts

1. Luminaires: Listed and labeled, by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for compliance with UL 1598 for installation in wet locations.
  - a. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free from light leakage under operating conditions, and arranged to permit relamping without using tools. Arrange doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other pieces to prevent their accidental falling during relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lens.
  - b. Exposed Hardware: Stainless-steel latches, fasteners, and hinges.



- c. Spill-Light Control Devices: Internal louvers and external baffles furnished by manufacturer and designed for secure attachment to specific luminaire.
- d. Luminaires for tennis courts shall be bracket-mounted, full-cutoff type with integral ballasts.
- e. Lamps for Tennis Court Luminaires: Metal halide, rated 1000 W.
2. Ballast Mounting: Grouped in cabinets, remote from **OR** At, **as directed**, location of associated luminaires unless otherwise indicated.

#### B. Support Structures

1. Support-Structure Wind-Load Strength: Poles and other support structures, brackets, arms, appurtenances, bases, anchorages, and foundations shall comply with AASHTO LTS-4-M and shall be certified by manufacturers to withstand winds up to 100 mph (160 km/h) without permanent deflection or whipping.
2. Support-Structure Seismic Strength: Poles or other support structures, brackets, arms, appurtenances, bases, anchorages, and foundations shall be designed to prevent separation of components or fracture of poles, luminaire supports, or pole foundations during a seismic event.
3. Mountings, Fasteners, and Appurtenances:
  - a. Corrosion resistant, compatible with support components, and which shall not cause galvanic action at contact points.
    - 1) Steel Components: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication, complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M.
    - 2) Mounting Hardware Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized, complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M, or minimum 18-8 grade stainless steel.
  - b. Accommodate attachments and wiring of other indicated systems.
4. Concrete for Pole Foundations: 3000-psi (20.7-MPa), 28-day minimum compressive strength. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
5. Direct-buried steel structures or poles shall not be used.

#### C. Power Distribution And Control

1. Wiring Method for Feeders, Subfeeders, Branch Circuits, and Control Wiring: Underground nonmetallic raceway; No. 10 AWG minimum conductor size for power wiring.
2. Overhead-, pole-, or structure-supported wiring and transformers are **OR** are not, **as directed**, permitted.
3. Electrical Enclosures Exposed to Weather: NEMA 250, Type 3R enclosure constructed from stainless steel **OR** corrosion-resistant material, **as directed**, with hinged doors fitted with padlock hasps or lockable latches.

#### D. Surge Protection

1. Surge Protection: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Transient-voltage Suppression For Low-voltage Electrical Power Circuits" and include surge suppressors with the following requirements:
  - a. Panelboard type.
  - b. Nonmodular, with digital indicator lights and one set of dry contacts, **as directed**.
  - c. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating: **<Insert number>** kA per phase.

#### E. Pole And Base Protection

1. Pole Pads: Wraparound pad, with 4 inches (100 mm) of extra-firm polyfoam, 360-degree coverage of ground-mounted poles and supports, continuous hook-and-loop fastening, and not less than 72 inches (1820 mm) high.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation





1. Use web fabric slings (not chain or cable) to raise and set structural members. Protect equipment during installation to prevent corrosion.
  2. Install poles and other structural units level, plumb, and square.
  3. Except for embedded structural members, grout void between pole base and foundation. Use nonshrinking or expanding concrete grout firmly packed in entire void space. Use a short piece of 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) diameter pipe to make a drain hole through grout. Arrange to drain condensation from interior of pole. Nonshrink grout is specified in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications".
  4. Install pole pads at all poles inside playing field boundaries and when located within 20 feet (6 m) of the field boundary.
  5. Extend cast-in-place bolted base foundations 36 inches (914 mm) above grade, minimum.
  6. Install protective pipe bollards on two **OR** three, **as directed**, sides of each embedded pole installed in paved areas. See Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for pipe bollards.
  7. Install controls and ballast housings in cabinets mounted on support structure at least 10 feet (3 m) above finished grade.
- B. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests, inspections, and analysis according to IESNA RP-6 and IESNA LM-5 where applicable.
  2. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. After installing sports lighting system and after electrical circuits have been energized, perform proof-of-performance field measurements and analysis for compliance with requirements.
    - b. Playing and Other Designated Areas: Make field measurements at intersections of grids, dimensioned and located as specified in "Performance Requirements" Article and as described below:
      - 1) Baseball Fields: Measure at least 25 points of the infield and 87 points of the outfield. Extend the grid 15 feet (5 m) outside the foul lines, extending to outfield boundary or fence.
      - 2) Softball Fields: Measure at least 16 points of the infield and 48 points of the outfield. Extend the grid 15 feet (5 m) outside the foul lines, extending to outfield boundary.
      - 3) Football Fields: Lighted area is 180 by 360 feet (55 by 110 m). Measure at least 91 points.
      - 4) Soccer Fields: Lighted area is 210 by 370 feet (64 by 113 m). Measure at least 91 points.
      - 5) Tennis Courts: Measure at least 30 points for a double court.
    - c. Make field measurements at established test points in areas of concern for spill light and glare.
    - d. Perform analysis to demonstrate correlation of field measurements with specified illumination quality and quantity values and corresponding computer-generated values that were submitted with engineered design documents. Submit a report of the analysis. For computer-generated values, use manufacturer's lamp lumens that are adjusted to lamp age at time of field testing.
  3. Correction of Illumination Deficiencies for Playing Areas: Make corrections to illumination quality or quantity, measured in field quality-control tests, that varies from specified illumination criteria by plus or minus 10 percent.
    - a. Add or replace luminaires, or change mounting height, revise aiming, or install louvers, shields, or baffles.
    - b. If luminaires are added or mounting height is changed, revise aiming and recalculate and modify or replace support structures if indicated.
    - c. Do not replace luminaires with units of higher or lower wattage without the Owner's approval.
    - d. Retest as specified above after repairs, adjustments, or replacements are made.
    - e. Report results in writing.



- 
4. Correction of Excessive Illumination in Spill-Light-Critical Areas: If measurements indicate that specified limits for spill light are exceeded, make corrections to illumination quantity, measured in field quality-control tests, that reduce levels to within specified maximum values.
    - a. Replace luminaires, or change mounting heights, revise aiming, or install louvers, shields, or baffles.
    - b. Obtain the Owner's approval to replace luminaires with units of higher or lower wattage.
    - c. If mounting height is changed, revise aiming and recalculate and modify or replace support structures if indicated.
    - d. Retest as specified above after repairs, adjustments, or replacements are made.
    - e. Report results in writing.
  5. Sports lighting will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  6. Prepare test and inspection reports.

C. Demonstration

1. Train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain exterior athletic lighting.

END OF SECTION 26 55 68 00



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
26 56 13 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
26 56 13 00	26 05 26 00b	Overhead Electrical Distribution
26 56 13 00	26 01 50 51b	Exterior Lighting
26 56 16 00	26 01 50 51b	Exterior Lighting
26 56 23 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
26 56 23 00	26 05 26 00b	Overhead Electrical Distribution
26 56 23 00	26 01 50 51a	Interior Lighting
26 56 23 00	26 01 50 51b	Exterior Lighting
26 56 26 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
26 56 26 00	26 01 50 51b	Exterior Lighting
26 56 33 00	26 01 50 51a	Interior Lighting
26 56 33 00	26 01 50 51b	Exterior Lighting
26 56 36 00	26 01 50 51b	Exterior Lighting



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 27 05 26 00 - INTERCOMMUNICATIONS AND PROGRAM SYSTEMS**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for intercommunications and program systems. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. Section Includes: Manually switched and Microprocessor-switched intercommunications and program systems with the following components:
  - a. Master stations.
  - b. Speaker-microphone stations.
  - c. Call-switch unit.
  - d. All-call amplifier.
  - e. Intercommunication amplifier.
  - f. Paging amplifier.
  - g. Loudspeakers/speaker microphones.
  - h. Conductors and cables.
  - i. Raceways.

## C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: For intercommunications and program systems. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - a. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
    - 1) Identify terminals to facilitate installation, operation, and maintenance.
    - 2) Single-line diagram showing interconnection of components.
    - 3) Cabling diagram showing cable routing.
3. Field quality-control reports.
4. Operation and maintenance data.

## D. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. Comply with NFPA 70.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

## A. Functional Description Of Manually Switched Systems

1. Master Station:
  - a. Communicating selectively with other master and speaker-microphone stations by actuating selector switches.
  - b. Communicating simultaneously with all other stations by actuating a single all-call switch.
  - c. Communicating with individual stations in privacy.
  - d. Including other master-station connections in a multiple-station conference call.
  - e. Accessing separate paging speakers or groups of paging speakers by actuating selector switches.
  - f. Overriding any conversation by a designated master station.



2. Speaker-Microphone Station:
    - a. Having privacy from remote monitoring without a warning tone signal at monitored station. Designated speaker-microphone stations have a privacy switch to prevent another station from listening and to permit incoming calls.
    - b. Communicating hands free.
    - c. Calling master station by actuating call switch.
    - d. Returning a busy signal to indicate that station is already in use.
    - e. Being free of noise and distortion during operation and when in standby mode.
  3. Speakers: Free of noise and distortion during operation and when in standby mode.
- B. Functional Description Of Microprocessor-Switched Systems
1. Master Station:
    - a. Communicating selectively with other master and speaker-microphone stations by dialing station's number on a 12-digit keypad.
    - b. Communicating simultaneously with all other stations by dialing a designated number on a 12-digit keypad.
    - c. Communicating with individual stations in privacy.
    - d. Including other master-station connections in a multiple-station conference call.
    - e. Accessing separate paging speakers or groups of paging speakers by dialing designated numbers on a 12-digit keypad.
    - f. Overriding any conversation by a designated master station.
    - g. Displaying selected station.
  2. Speaker-Microphone Station:
    - a. Having privacy from remote monitoring without a warning tone signal at monitored station. Designated speaker-microphone stations have a privacy switch to prevent another station from listening and to permit incoming calls.
    - b. Communicating hands free.
    - c. Calling master station by actuating call switch.
    - d. Returning a busy signal to indicate that station is already in use.
    - e. Being free of noise and distortion during operation and when in standby mode.
  3. Speakers: Free of noise and distortion during operation and when in standby mode.
- C. General Requirements For Equipment And Materials
1. Coordinate features and select components to form an integrated system. Match components and interconnections for optimum performance of specified functions.
  2. Expansion Capability: Increase number of stations in the future by 25 percent above those indicated without adding any internal or external components or main trunk cable conductors.
  3. Equipment: Modular type using solid-state components, fully rated for continuous duty unless otherwise indicated. Select equipment for normal operation on input power usually supplied at 110 to 130 V, 60 Hz.
  4. Weather-Resistant Equipment: Listed and labeled by an NRTL for duty outdoors or in damp locations.
- D. Master Station For Manually Switched Systems
1. Station-Selector and Talk-Listen Switches: Heavy-duty type with gold-plated contacts rated for five million operations.
  2. Volume Control: Regulates incoming-call volume.
  3. LED Annunciation: Identifies calling stations and stations in use. LED remains on until call is answered.
  4. Tone Annunciation: Momentary audible tone signal announces incoming calls.
  5. Speaker Microphone: Transmits and receives calls.
  6. Handset with Hook Switch: Telephone type with 18-inch- (450-mm-) long, permanently coiled cord. Arrange to disconnect speaker when handset is lifted.
  7. Equipment Cabinet: Comply with TIA/EIA-310-D. Lockable, ventilated metal cabinet houses terminal strips, power supplies, amplifiers, system volume control, and auxiliary equipment.



- E. Master Station For Microprocessor-Switched Systems
1. 12-Digit Keypad Selector: Transmits calls to other stations and initiates commands for programming and operation.
  2. Volume Control: Regulates incoming-call volume.
  3. LED Annunciation: Identifies calling stations and stations in use. LED remains on until call is answered.
  4. Tone Annunciation: Momentary audible tone signal announces incoming calls.
  5. Handset with Hook Switch: Telephone type with 18-inch- (450-mm-) long, permanently coiled cord. Arrange to disconnect speaker when handset is lifted.
  6. Reset Control: Cancels call and resets system for next call.
  7. Equipment Cabinet: Comply with TIA/EIA-310-D. Lockable, ventilated metal cabinet houses terminal strips, power supplies, amplifiers, system volume control, and other switching and control devices required for conversation channels and control functions.
- F. Speaker-Microphone Stations
1. Mounting: Flush unless otherwise indicated, and suitable for mounting conditions indicated.
  2. Faceplate: Stainless steel or anodized aluminum with tamperproof mounting screws.
  3. Back Box: Two-gang galvanized steel with 2-1/2-inch (64-mm) minimum depth.
  4. Speaker: 3 inches (76 mm), 2.3 oz. (65 g) minimum; permanent magnet.
  5. Tone Annunciation: Recurring momentary tone indicates incoming calls.
  6. Call Switch: Mount on faceplate. Permits calls to master station.
  7. Privacy Switch: Mount on faceplate. When in on position, switch prevents transmission of sound from remote station to system; when in off position, without further switch manipulation, response can be made to incoming calls.
  8. Handset with Hook Switch: Telephone type with 18-inch- (450-mm-) long, permanently coiled cord. Arrange to disconnect speaker when handset is lifted.
- G. Call-Switch Unit
1. Enclosure: Single-gang box with stainless-steel faceplate.
  2. Call Switch: Momentary contact signals system that a call has been placed.
  3. Privacy Switch: Prevents transmission of sound signals from station to system.
  4. Volume Control: Operated by screwdriver blade through a hole in faceplate to adjust output level of associated speaker.
  5. Handset with Hook Switch: Telephone type with 18-inch- (450-mm-) long, permanently coiled cord. Arrange to disconnect speaker when handset is lifted.
- H. All-Call Amplifier
1. Output Power: 70-V balanced line. 80 percent of the sum of wattage settings of connected for each station and speaker connected in all-call mode of operation, plus an allowance for future stations.
  2. Total Harmonic Distortion: Less than 5 percent at rated output power with load equivalent to quantity of stations connected in all-call mode of operation.
  3. Minimum Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 45 dB, at rated output.
  4. Frequency Response: Within plus or minus 3 dB from 70 to 12,000 Hz.
  5. Output Regulation: Maintains output level within 2 dB from full to no load.
  6. Input Sensitivity: Compatible with master stations and central equipment so amplifier delivers full-rated output with sound-pressure level of less than 10 dynes/sq. cm impinging on master stations, speaker microphones, or handset transmitters.
  7. Amplifier Protection: Prevents damage from shorted or open output.
- I. Intercommunication Amplifier
1. Minimum Output Power: 2 W; adequate for all functions.
  2. Total Harmonic Distortion: Less than 5 percent at rated output power with load equivalent to one station connected to output terminals.
  3. Minimum Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 45 dB, at rated output.
  4. Frequency Response: Within plus or minus 3 dB from 70 to 10,000 Hz.



5. Output Regulation: Maintains output level within 2 dB from full to no load.
  6. Input Sensitivity: Matched to input circuit and to provide full-rated output with sound-pressure level of less than 10 dynes/sq. cm impinging on master stations, speaker microphones, or handset transmitters.
  7. Amplifier Protection: Prevents damage from shorted or open output.
- J. Paging Amplifier
1. Input Voltage: 120-V ac, 60 Hz.
  2. Frequency Response: Within plus or minus 3 dB from 60 to 10,000 Hz.
  3. Minimum Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 60 dB, at rated output.
  4. Total Harmonic Distortion: Less than 3 percent at rated power output from 70 to 12,000 Hz.
  5. Output Regulation: Less than 2 dB from full to no load.
  6. Controls: On-off, input levels, and low-cut filter.
  7. Input Sensitivity: Matched to input circuit and to provide full-rated output with sound-pressure level of less than 10 dynes/sq. cm impinging on speaker microphones or handset transmitters.
  8. Amplifier Protection: Prevents damage from shorted or open output.
  9. Output Circuit: 70-V line.
- K. Cone-Type Loudspeakers/Speaker Microphones
1. Minimum Axial Sensitivity: 91 dB at one meter, with 1-W input.
  2. Frequency Response: Within plus or minus 3 dB from 70 to 15,000 Hz.
  3. Minimum Dispersion Angle: 100 degrees.
  4. Line Transformer: Maximum insertion loss of 0.5 dB, power rating equal to speaker's, and at least four level taps.
  5. Enclosures: Steel housings or back boxes, acoustically dampened, with front face of at least 0.0478-inch (1.2-mm) steel and whole assembly rust proofed and factory primed; complete with mounting assembly and suitable for surface ceiling, flush ceiling, pendant or wall mounting; with relief of back pressure.
  6. Baffle: For flush speakers, minimum thickness of 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) aluminum brushed to a satin sheen and lacquered **OR** with textured white finish, **as directed**.
  7. Vandal-Proof, High-Strength Baffle: For flush **OR** surface, **as directed**, -mounted speakers, self-aging cast aluminum with tensile strength of 44,000 psi (303 MN/sq. m), 0.025-inch (0.65-mm) minimum thickness; countersunk heat-treated alloy mounting screws; and textured white epoxy finish.
  8. Size: 8 inches (200 mm) with 1-inch (25-mm) voice coil and minimum 5-oz. (140-g) ceramic magnet.
- L. Horn-Type Loudspeakers/Speaker Microphones
1. Speakers shall be all-metal, weatherproof construction; complete with universal mounting brackets.
  2. Frequency Response: Within plus or minus 3 dB from 275 to 14,000 Hz.
  3. Minimum Power Rating of Driver: 15 W, continuous.
  4. Minimum Dispersion Angle: 110 degrees.
  5. Line Transformer: Maximum insertion loss of 0.5 dB, power rating equal to speaker's, and at least four level taps.
- M. Horn-Type Explosion-Proof Loudspeakers
1. Speakers shall be all-metal construction; complete with universal mounting brackets.
  2. Units in Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Listed and labeled for environment in which they are located.
  3. Frequency Response: Within plus or minus 3 dB from 300 to 12,000 Hz.
  4. Minimum Power Rating of Driver: 30 **OR** 60, **as directed**, W, continuous.
  5. Minimum Dispersion Angle: 95 **OR** 60 by 120, **as directed**, degrees.
  6. Line Transformer: Internally mounted and factory installed, power rating equal to speaker's, and at least four level taps.





#### N. Conductors And Cables

1. Conductors: Jacketed, twisted pair and twisted multipair, untinned solid copper. Sizes as recommended by system manufacturer, but no smaller than No. 22 AWG.
2. Insulation: Thermoplastic, not less than 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) thick.
3. Shielding: For speaker-microphone leads and elsewhere where recommended by manufacturer; No. 34 AWG, tinned, soft-copper strands formed into a braid or equivalent foil.
  - a. Minimum Shielding Coverage on Conductors: 60 percent.
4. Plenum Cable: Listed and labeled for plenum installation.

#### O. Raceways

1. Intercommunication and Program System Raceways and Boxes: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems".
2. Intercommunication and Program System Raceways and Boxes: Same as required for electrical branch circuits specified in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems".
3. Intercommunication and Program System Raceways and Boxes: EMT **OR** ENT **OR** RNC **OR** Optical-fiber/communication raceways and fittings **OR** Metal wireways **OR** Nonmetal wireways **OR** Surface metal raceways **OR** Surface nonmetal raceways, **as directed**.
4. Outlet boxes shall be not less than 2 inches (50 mm) wide, 3 inches (75 mm) high, and 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) deep.
5. Flexible metal conduit is prohibited.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Wiring Methods

1. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters, and except in accessible ceiling spaces and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
  - a. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
  - b. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems".
2. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.
3. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

#### B. Installation Of Raceways

1. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems" for installation of conduits and wireways.
2. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows whenever possible.

#### C. Installation Of Cables

1. Comply with NECA 1.
2. General Requirements:
  - a. Terminate conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at outlets and terminals.
  - b. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Arrange on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures. Cables may not be spliced.
  - c. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
  - d. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.



- e. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
  - f. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used.
3. Open-Cable Installation:
    - a. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunication spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
    - b. Suspend speaker cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above ceiling by cable supports not more than 60 inches (1524 mm) apart.
    - c. Cable shall not be run through structural members or be in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.
  4. Separation of Wires: Separate speaker-microphone, line-level, speaker-level, and power wiring runs. Install in separate raceways or, where exposed or in same enclosure, separate conductors at least 12 inches (300 mm) apart for speaker microphones and adjacent parallel power and telephone wiring. Separate other intercommunication equipment conductors as recommended by equipment manufacturer.
- D. Installation
1. Match input and output impedances and signal levels at signal interfaces. Provide matching networks where required.
  2. Identification of Conductors and Cables: Color-code conductors and apply wire and cable marking tape to designate wires and cables so they identify media in coordination with system wiring diagrams.
  3. Weatherproof Equipment: For units that are mounted outdoors, in damp locations, or where exposed to weather, install consistent with requirements of weatherproof rating.
  4. Speaker-Line Matching Transformer Connections: Make initial connections using tap settings indicated on Drawings.
  5. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
- E. Grounding
1. Ground cable shields and equipment to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize ground loops, common-mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments.
  2. Signal Ground Terminal: Locate at main equipment cabinet. Isolate from power system and equipment grounding.
  3. Install grounding electrodes as specified in Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
- F. System Programming
1. Programming: Fully brief the Owner on available programming options. Record the Owner's decisions and set up initial system program. Prepare a written record of decisions, implementation methodology, and final results.
- G. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections.
    - a. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
  2. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. Schedule tests with at least seven days' advance notice of test performance.
    - b. After installing intercommunications and program systems and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
    - c. Operational Test: Test originating station-to-station, all-call, and page messages at each intercommunication station. Verify proper routing and volume levels and that system is



- free of noise and distortion. Test each available message path from each station on system.
- d. Frequency Response Test: Determine frequency response of two transmission paths, including all-call and paging, by transmitting and recording audio tones. Minimum acceptable performance is within 3 dB from 150 to 2500 Hz.
  - e. Signal-to-Noise Ratio Test: Measure signal-to-noise ratio of complete system at normal gain settings as follows:
    - 1) Disconnect speaker microphone and replace it in the circuit with a signal generator using a 1000-Hz signal. Measure signal-to-noise ratio at speakers or paging speakers.
    - 2) Repeat test for four speaker microphones and for each separately controlled zone of paging loudspeakers.
    - 3) Minimum acceptable ratio is 35 dB.
  - f. Distortion Test: Measure distortion at normal gain settings and rated power. Feed signals at frequencies of 150, 200, 400, 1000, and 2500 Hz into each paging and all-call amplifier, and a minimum of two selected intercommunication amplifiers. For each frequency, measure distortion in the paging and all-call amplifier outputs. Maximum acceptable distortion at any frequency is 5 percent total harmonics.
  - g. Acoustic Coverage Test: Feed pink noise into system using octaves centered at 500 and 4000 Hz. Use sound-level meter with octave-band filters to measure level at three locations in each paging zone. Maximum permissible variation in level is plus or minus 3 dB; in levels between adjacent zones, plus or minus 5 dB.
  - h. Power Output Test: Measure electrical power output of each paging amplifier at normal gain settings of 150, 1000, and 2500 Hz. Maximum variation in power output at these frequencies is plus or minus 3 dB.
  - i. Signal Ground Test: Measure and report ground resistance at system signal ground. Comply with testing requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
3. Inspection: Verify that units and controls are properly labeled and interconnecting wires and terminals are identified. Prepare a list of final tap settings of paging speaker-line matching transformers.
  4. Intercommunications and program systems will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
  5. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 27 05 26 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
27 11 16 00	02 61 13 00	Underground Storage Tank Removal
27 11 16 00	27 05 26 00	Intercommunications and Program Systems



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 27 11 19 00 - LOOSE-TUBE GEL-FILLED FIBER OPTIC CABLES****GENERAL**

## Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of loose-tube gel-filled fiber optic cables. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## Shop Drawings And Samples

2. The following shall be submitted:
  - a. Complete bill of materials.
  - b. Drawings indicating the locations of all pull boxes with station numbers.
  - c. Catalog data on all testing devices proposed for use plus certifications of accuracy, calibration, and traceability to standards of the National Institute for Standards and Testing.
  - d. Cable pulling calculations for all conduit runs. Indicate on the submittal any additional pull boxes that are required, including station number and a written description, of the location.
  - e. A cable pulling and splicing work plan shall be submitted a minimum of 45 days prior to the planned initiation of cable pulling. The pulling plan and pull tension calculations may be prepared by using a software program such as Pull-Planner 2000 by American Polywater Corporation. The cable pulling and splicing work plan must be approved a minimum of 15 days prior to pulling cable. Work plan shall include the following:
    - 1) Pull tension calculations
    - 2) Calculated amount of lubrication required
    - 3) Detailed description of pull operation methods for all conduit runs

## Quality Assurance

3. All work described in this section shall meet or exceed the applicable provisions of the following documents:
  - a. ANSI C8.471983, American National Standard for Polyolefin Insulated Thermoplastic Jacketed Communication Cables.
  - b. EIA-455 (addendum 1 through 5) Standard Test Procedures for Fiber Optics, Cables, Transducers, Connecting and Terminating Devices.
  - c. EIA-455-27A, Method of Measuring (Uncoated) Diameter of Optical Waveguide Fibers.
  - d. EIA-455-28A, Method For Measuring Tensile Failure Point of Optical Waveguide Fibers.
  - e. EIA-455-34, Interconnection Device Insertion Loss Test.
  - f. EIA-455-89, Fiber Optic Cable Jacket Elongation and Tensile Strength.

## Warranty

4. The Contractor shall provide an unconditional warranty on all installed cable for a minimum period of two (2) years.

**PRODUCTS**

## Materials

5. Fiber Optic Cable - 24 strand
  - a. Cable type: Outdoor Plant Stranded Loose-Tube, Gel-Filled Fiber Optic Cable, Corning Altos 024RW4-14101A20 or Lucent Lightpack 7D1X-024-BXD.
  - b. Number of fibers: 24 fibers.
  - c. Buffer Tubes: All optical fibers shall be placed inside a loose buffer tube. The optical cable shall contain three buffer tubes, numbered 1, 2, and 3. The tubes shall be color coded according to the table below:



Buffer Tube Number	Buffer Tube Color
1	Blue
2	Orange
3	Green

- d. Each buffer tube shall contain 8 singlemode fibers. Each fiber shall be numbered and distinguishable by means of the color coding established in the main body of the specification.
  - e. The colors of the individual fibers shall be stable across the specified storage and operating temperature range and not subject to fading or smearing onto each other or into the gel filling material. Colors shall not cause fibers to stick together.
  - f. The fibers shall not adhere to the inside walls of the loose buffer tube. Buffer tubes shall be kink resistant within the specified minimum bend radius.
  - g. Filler may be included in the cable core composition to lend symmetry to the cable cross-section where needed.
  - h. A central anti-buckling member shall be included into the cable to prevent buckling of the cable. The anti-buckling member shall be composed of a glass reinforced plastic rod.
  - i. Each buffer tube shall be filled with a non-hygroscopic, non-nutritive to fungus, electrically non-conductive, homogenous gel. The gel shall be free from dirt and foreign matter. The gel shall be readily removable with conventional nontoxic solvents.
  - j. Buffer tubes shall be stranded around a central member using the reverse oscillation, or "S-Z", stranding process.
  - k. The cable core shall contain a water-blocking material. The water blocking material shall be non-nutritive to fungus, electrically non-conductive and homogenous. It shall also be free from dirt and foreign matter and shall be readily removable with conventional nontoxic solvents.
  - l. Binders shall be applied with sufficient tension to secure the buffer tubes to the member without crushing the buffer tubes. The binders shall be non-hygroscopic, non-wicking and dialectic with low shrinkage.
  - m. Tensile strength shall be provided by a combination of high tensile strength dielectric yarns. The high tensile strength dielectric yarns shall be helically stranded evenly around the cable core.
  - n. The all-dielectric cable shall be sheathed with medium density polyethylene (MDPE). The minimum nominal jacket thickness shall be 1.4 mm. Jacketing material shall be applied directly over the tensile strength members and water blocking material. The jacket or sheath shall be free of holes, splits, and blisters. The cable jacket shall contain no metallic elements and shall be of a consistent thickness.
  - o. The cable shall contain at least one ripcord under the sheath for easy sheath removal.
6. Fiber Optic Cable - 36 Strand
- a. Cable type: Outdoor Plant Stranded Loose-Tube, Gel-Filled Fiber Optic Cable, Corning Altos 036RW4-14101A20 or Lucent Lightpack 7D1X-036-BXD.
  - b. Number of fibers: 36 fibers.
  - c. Buffer Tubes: All optical fibers shall be placed inside a loose buffer tube. The optical cable shall contain three buffer tubes, numbered 1, 2, and 3. The tubes shall be color coded according to the table below:

Buffer Tube Number	Buffer Tube Color
1	Blue
2	Orange
3	Green

- d. Each buffer tube shall contain 12 single mode fibers. Each fiber shall be numbered and distinguishable by means of the color coding established in the main body of the specification.





- e. The colors of the individual fibers shall be stable across the specified storage and operating temperature range and not subject to fading or smearing onto each other or into the gel filling material. Colors shall not cause fibers to stick together.
  - f. The fibers shall not adhere to the inside walls of the loose buffer tube. Buffer tubes shall be kink resistant within the specified minimum bend radius.
  - g. Filler may be included in the cable core composition to lend symmetry to the cable cross-section where needed.
  - h. A central anti-buckling member shall be included into the cable to prevent buckling of the cable. The anti-buckling member shall be composed of a glass reinforced plastic rod.
  - i. Each buffer tube shall be filled with a non-hygroscopic, non-nutritive to fungus, electrically non-conductive, homogenous gel. The gel shall be free from dirt and foreign matter. The gel shall be readily removable with conventional nontoxic solvents.
  - j. Buffer tubes shall be stranded around a central member using the reverse oscillation, or "S-Z", stranding process.
  - k. The cable core shall contain a water-blocking material. The water blocking material shall be non-nutritive to fungus, electrically non-conductive and homogenous. It shall also be free from dirt and foreign matter and shall be readily removable with conventional nontoxic solvents.
  - l. Binders shall be applied with sufficient tension to secure the buffer tubes to the member without crushing the buffer tubes. The binders shall be non-hygroscopic, non-wicking and dielectric with low shrinkage.
  - m. Tensile strength shall be provided by a combination of high tensile strength dielectric yarns. The high tensile strength dielectric yarns shall be helically stranded evenly around the cable core.
  - n. The all-dielectric cable shall be sheathed with medium density polyethylene (MDPE). The minimum nominal jacket thickness shall be 1.4 mm. Jacketing material shall be applied directly over the tensile strength members and water blocking material. The jacket or sheath shall be free of holes, splits, and blisters. The cable jacket shall contain no metallic elements and shall be of a consistent thickness.
  - o. The cable shall contain at least one ripcord under the sheath for easy sheath removal.
7. Fan-Out Termination for Loose Tube Cables
- a. Individual fibers within the loose tube cable require handling protection inside the termination cabinets. Fan-out kits shall be installed in the patch panel enclosures to transition the loose tube fibers to ruggedized tight-buffered fiber pigtail cables. Fan-out tubes or furcation kits shall not be used. Optical fusion splices shall connect the loose tube fibers to the tight-buffered pigtail cables. The optical splice loss shall comply with the specifications for optical splices. Splice protection sleeves shall be employed on all splices to protect the splices. A wall-mountable splice center shall house the splices and serve to fully protect excess lengths of loose tube fibers from exposure.
  - b. The tight-buffered pigtails shall be terminated with ST connectors as specified.
8. Fan-out Pigtail Cable Specifications
- a. Singlemode fiber (Corning SMF-28) shall be used in the pigtails. Optical characteristics shall comply with the optical fiber performance specifications.

Buffer material	Thermoplastic
Buffer O.D.	900 um
Strength Member	Kevlar
Jacket Material	PVC
Jacket O.D.	3.0 mm
Temperature Range	-20 to +70 C

- 9. Fiber Optic Termination Patch Panels:
  - a. Where shown on the plans or in the Appendix, the fiber optic cable shall terminate inside a communications cabinet on a termination patch panel. All fiber sub-cables within the cable shall be terminated with "ST<sup>TM</sup> compatible" connectors. The patch panel shall have a 24-fiber capacity, and shall facilitate fiber-optic cable cross-connection between outside plant



- cables and opto-electronic interface equipment cabling. The patch panel shall contain "ST<sup>TM</sup>" type bayonet couplings. All unused couplings shall have protective dust covers. Factory-terminated, tight-buffered, aramid-reinforced fiber optic jumper assemblies or interconnect cables, standard 3.0-mm O.D., shall connect the optical cable terminations to the patch panel couplings.
- b. The termination panel shall be equipped with a suitable means for routing and securing of cables and shall provide a suitable means of protection for the mounted fiber connectors, to prevent damage to fibers and connectors during all regular operation and maintenance functions. Bend diameters on cable fibers and jumpers must be greater than four (4) inches at all times to ensure optical and mechanical integrity of the optical fibers.
10. Optical Connectors
    - a. All connectors shall be field-installable and perfectly matched to the cable used. The connectors shall provide tight fitting termination, to the cladding and buffer coating. Epoxy-based or "hot melt" adhesives shall be used to bond the fiber and buffer to the connector ferrule and body prior to polishing the end face. No dry-termination or "quick crimp" connectors are allowed.
    - b. After termination with connectors, the fiber ends must be visually inspected at a magnification of not less than 100 power to check for cracks or pits in the end face of the fiber. If any irregularities found cannot be removed by further polishing, the entire process must be redone by cutting off and disposing the connector body.
    - c. Connectors shall have a maximum allowable connection loss of 0.3 dB per mated pair, as measured per EIA-455-34. No index-matching gel is to be used, dry interfaces only. Singlemode connectors shall be capable of field installation on 9/125 micron fibers with 900 micron buffers (OD).
    - d. Each connector shall be of the industry standard ST type compatible, designed for singlemode tolerances, and shall meet or exceed the applicable provisions of EIA-455-5, 455-2A, and 455-34, and shall be capable of 100 repeated matings with a maximum loss increase of 0.1 dB. Connectors shall incorporate a key-way design and shall have a zirconia ceramic ferrule. Connector bodies and couplings shall be made of corrosion-resistant and oxidation-resistant materials, such as nickel plated zinc, designed to operate in humid environments without degradation of surface finishes.
  11. Splice Closures:
    - a. Splice closures shall be of the re-enterable type, with an external moisture-proof shell, inner closure and encapsulant.
    - b. Closure shall have removable interior splice trays.
    - c. Closures shall be Corning Cable Systems (Sicor) type SCN or equal.

## EXECUTION

### Fiber Optic Cable Installation

12. General:
  - a. The Contractor shall determine a suitable cable installation method to ensure that all cable installation requirements shall be met in all conduit sections. All work shall be carried out in accordance and consistent with the highest standards of quality and craftsmanship in the communication industry with regard to the electrical and mechanical integrity of the connections; the finished appearance of the installation; as well as the accuracy and completeness of the documentation.
  - b. The Contractor shall make a physical survey of the project site for the purpose of establishing the exact cable routing and cutting lengths prior to the commencement of any work or committing any materials.
  - c. The cable shall be carefully inspected for jacket defects as it is removed from the reel. If defects are noticed, the pulling operation shall be terminated immediately and the the Owner notified.



- d. Precautions shall be taken during installation to prevent the cable from being kinked or crushed. Crushed or kinked cable shall be replaced with new cable. As the cable is pulled into the conduit system, it shall be sufficiently lubricated with a lubricant that shall be the water-based type and approved by the cable manufacturer. Lubricant shall be applied at a rate to provide a continuous 10-mil coating, as recommended by the manufacturer. Lubricant shall be Polywater F® manufactured by American Polywater, or approved equivalent.
  - e. The mechanical stress placed upon the cable during installation shall not be such that the cable is twisted and stretched or exceeds manufacturer's specifications.
  - f. The pulling of the cable shall be hand assisted at each handhole or pullbox. When pulling through intermediate pullboxes, the cable shall be placed on the ground near the pullbox and care taken to prevent damage by vehicles or other objects. The cable shall not be crushed, kinked or forced around a sharp corner. A minimum of 3 foot slack shall be left in each pullbox and enough left at each end of the cable to allow proper cable termination.
13. Fiber optic cables shall be installed in continuous lengths without intermediate splices throughout the project. Cable installation personnel shall be familiar with the manufacturer's recommended procedures including, but not limited to the following:
- a. Proper attachment to the cable strength elements for pulling during installation. Depending on cable design, this will involve direct attachment to internal strength members or attaching an external "Kellums" or split mesh grip using a 600 lb breakaway swivel.
  - b. Cable tensile limitations and tension monitoring procedures.
  - c. Cable bending radius limitations.
  - d. Cable twisting limitations.
14. The Contractor shall comply with the cable manufacturer's recommended installation procedures at all times. Cable installation procedures shall conform to Belcore guidelines.
15. To accommodate long continuous installation lengths, bi-directional "center pull" techniques for pulling of the fiber optic cable is acceptable and shall be implemented as follows:
- a. From the midpoint, pull the fiber optic cable into the conduit from the shipping reel in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.
  - b. When this portion of the pull is complete, the remainder of the cable must be removed from the reel to make the inside end available for pulling in the opposite direction.
  - c. This is accomplished by hand pulling the cable from the reel and laying into large "figure eight" loops on the ground.
  - d. The purpose of the figure eight pattern is to avoid cable tangling and kinking.
  - e. The loops shall be laid carefully one upon the other (to prevent subsequent tangling) and shall be in a protected area.
  - f. The inside reel end of the cable is then available for installation.
  - g. In some cases, it may be necessary to set up a winch at an intermediate cable vault.
  - h. The required length of cable shall be pulled to that point, and brought out of the cable vault and coiled into a figure eight.
  - i. The figure eight is then turned over to gain access to the free cable end. This can then be reinserted into the duct system for installation into the next section.
16. At pullboxes, the Contractor shall provide 30 feet of cable slack. The fiber optic cable shall be coiled and secured with cable ties in the pullbox. The Contractor shall ensure that the minimum bending radius of the fiber optic cable is not compromised when preparing this stored cable slack.
17. The pulling eye/sheath termination hardware on the fiber optic cables shall not be pulled over any sheave blocks.
18. When power equipment is used to install fiber optic cabling, the pulling speed shall not exceed 30 meters per minute. The pulling tension, bending radius and twist limitation for fiber optic cable shall not be exceeded under any circumstances.
19. Large diameter wheels, pulling sheaves, and cable guides shall be used to maintain the appropriate bending radius. Tension monitoring shall be accomplished using commercial dynamometers or loadcell instruments.
- a. All pulls shall be documented by a graph which is annotated with the following information:
    - 1) Reel number
    - 2) Station from and station to



- 3) Date and tune
- 4) Explanations of abnormalities in readings or interruptions
- 5) Sign-off by Contractor and the Owner
- b. Under no conditions shall the FOC be left exposed or unattended.
20. Repairs: Repair of cable jacket will not be permitted. Jacket damage will require removal and re-installation of a new cable run at the Contractor's expense.
21. Splicing:
  - a. Splicing of fiber optic cable shall not be permitted except in emergency conditions or as specified on the plans or in the special conditions for a specified project. Fiber optic cable runs and required looping of the cable shall be provided in one continuous length. When splicing is authorized by the the Owner, splicing shall be by trained, authorized persons only. Any allowed splicing of fiber optic cable shall be by fusion splice only, no mechanical splices are permitted.
  - b. All fusion splicing equipment shall be in good working order, properly calibrated, and meeting all industry standards and safety regulations. Cable preparation, closure installation and splicing shall be accomplished in accordance with accepted and approved industry standards.
  - c. Spices shall be made in pullboxes and shall use re-enterable splice closures.
  - d. The average splice loss shall be 0.1 dB or less per splice. The average splice loss is defined as the summation of the loss as measured in both directions using an optical time domain reflectometer (OTDR) through the fusion splice, divided by two. No individual splice loss measured in a single direction shall exceed 0.15 dB.
  - e. Upon completion of the splicing operation, all waste material shall be deposited in suitable containers, removed from the job site, arid disposed of in an environmentally acceptable manner.
22. After the cables are installed and spliced, they shall be racked and all conduits sealed. A minimum of 30 feet of FOC shall be stored at each end of one splice. Racking shall conform to the following:
  - a. Cables shall be loosely secured in racked position with Ty-Raps or equal.
  - b. Imprinted plastic coated cloth identification/warning tags shall be securely attached to the cables in at least two locations in each handhole. Tags shall be by Brady or Thomas & Betts.
  - c. All coiled cable shall be suitably protected to prevent damage to the cable and fibers. Racking shall include securing cables to brackets and racking hardware that extend from the sidewalls of the handhole.
  - d. When all cables at each handhole are securely racked, unused conduits and void areas around conduit containing cables shall be sealed.

#### Cable Protection During Installation

23. All fiber optic cable shall be pulled in conduit except as specified on the plans. Care shall be exercised during cable pulls through conduit bends and looping in pull boxes.
24. To reduce the possibility of damage to the outer jacket of the fiber optic cable, protective measures shall be used when the cable is installed. The requirements herein shall be followed, but does not limit the installation to only those identified. The purpose of the installation specifications is to ensure protection, of the fiber optic cable when it is installed. Other protective measures not specified herein may be taken during installation if it will ensure protection of the cable.
25. A cable feeder guide shall be used between the cable reel and the face of the duct and conduit to protect the cable and guide it off the reel and into the duct. The cable shall be carefully inspected for jacket defects as it is removed from the reel. If defects are noticed, the pulling operation shall be terminated immediately and the the Owner notified.
26. Precautions shall be taken during installation to prevent the cable from being kinked, crushed or twisted. A pulling eye shall be attached to the cable end and be used to pull the cable through the duct and conduit system. As the cable is pulled off the reel and into the cable feeder guide, it shall



- be sufficiently lubricated with a lubricant that shall be of the water based type and approved by the cable manufacturer.
27. Dynamometers or break away pulling swings shall be used to ensure the pulling line tension does not exceed the installation tension values specified by the cable manufacturer. The mechanical stress placed upon the cable during installation shall not be such that the cable is twisted and stretched. Maximum allowable cable strain during installation shall be less than 0.75%.
  28. The pulling of the cable shall be hand assisted at each handhole or pullbox. The cable shall not be crushed, kinked or forced around a sharp corner. Sufficient slack shall be left at each end of the cable to allow proper cable termination.
  29. The cable shall be looped in all pull boxes as noted on the plans to provide approximately thirty (30) feet of extra cable in the pull box. At termination points, such as at cabinets or computers, a thirty (30) foot loop shall also be provided wherever space permits.
  30. Cable Marking: At each pullbox and at each cabinet, the cable shall be visibly marked with yellow warning tape as follows:

### **"CAUTION - FIBER OPTIC CABLE"**

#### Fiber Optic Cable Testing

31. General: The Contractor shall perform pre-installation and post-installation FOC tests. The the Owner shall be notified a minimum of 10 days in advance so that these tests are witnessed. All test equipment shall be traceable to NIST standards.
32. Test equipment: The Contractor, shall use the following to perform pre-installation and post-installation FOC tests:
  - a. Optical time domain reflectometer (OTDR). The OTDR shall be laser precision, ALT Inc. MODEL 5200 LRFL, or equal.
33. Pre-installation tests
  - a. The purpose of these tests is to perform acceptance tests on the cable prior to installation to verify that the cable conforms to the manufacturer's specifications, and is free of defects, breaks and damages by transportation and manufacturing processes.
  - b. Prior to removal of each cable from the delivery reel, all optical fibers within the cables shall be tested by the Contractor using an OTDR. The OTDR tests shall consist of end-to-end length and fiber attenuation (dB/km) measurements to ensure proper performance of the fiber optic cable. The tests shall be performed from both ends of each fiber to ensure complete fiber continuity within the cable structure.
  - c. Pre-installation, "on-reel" test results shall be compared with the manufacturer's test report delivered with the cable. Gross dissimilarities shall be noted and remedied between the Contractor and manufacturer. In all cases, all fibers must meet the optical attenuation specifications prior to cable installation.
  - d. The Contractor shall perform tests on all reels of cable. The the Owner shall be notified a minimum of 15 days prior to any test.
  - e. The Contractor shall document each test and submit the report to the the Owner for review. Documentation shall consist of both hard copy and 3-1/2 inch electronic disk complete with all application software.
  - f. Cable shall not be installed until the the Owner has reviewed the test report.
  - g. Maximum allowable attenuation is 0.5 dB/km at 1310 and 1550 nm.
34. Post-installation tests: After FOC has been installed the following tests shall be performed:
  - a. A recording OTDR shall be used to test for end-to-end continuity and attenuation of each optical fiber. The OTDR shall be equipped with a 1310 nm and 1550 nm light source for the single mode fiber (SMF). The OTDR shall have an X-Y plotter to provide a hard copy record of each trace of each fiber: The OTDR shall be equipped with sufficient internal masking to allow the entire cable section to be tested. This may be achieved by using an optical fiber pigtail of 30 feet or more to display the required cable section.
  - b. The OTDR shall be calibrated for the correct index of refraction to provide proper length measurement for the known length of reference fiber.



- c. A transmission test shall be performed with the use of a 1310 and 1550 nm stabilized light sources and 1310 nm/1550 nm power meters for SMF. This test shall be conducted in both directions on each fiber of each cable.
  - d. Hard and electronic copy of test documentation shall be submitted to the the Owner. The documentation shall include the trace plot, index, dB/km loss, cable length, date and time of test, wavelength, pulse width, the test site, cable ID, fiber number and type, and operator's initials. The Contractor shall compare the pre-installation test results to the post-installation results. If a deviation of greater than one dB occurs, the the Owner shall be notified in writing by the Contractor, and the cable shall be removed and replaced at no additional cost to the Owner.
  - e. Upon completion of the previous tests all FOC coils shall be secured with ends capped to prevent intrusion of dirt and water.
35. Required OTDR Trace Information:
- a. All traces shall display the entire length of cable under test, highlighting any localized loss discontinuities (installation-induced losses and/or connector losses). The trace shall display fiber length (in kilofeet), fiber loss (dB), and average fiber attenuation (in dB/km) as measured between two markers placed as near to the opposite ends of the fiber under test as is possible while still allowing an accurate reading. Care shall be taken to ensure that the markers are placed in the linear region of the trace: away from the front-end response and far-end Fresnel reflection spike. Time averaging shall be used to improve the display signal to noise ratio. The pulse width of the OTDR shall be set to a sufficient width to provide adequate injected power to measure the entire length the fiber under test.
  - b. If connectors exist in the cable under test, then two traces shall be recorded. One trace shall record the fiber loss (dB) and average attenuation (dB/km) of the entire cable segment under test, including connectors. The second trace shall display a magnified view of the connector regions, revealing the connector losses (dB). All connector losses shall be measured using the 5-point splice loss measurement technique.
  - c. The OTDR trace shall also include the following information:
    - 1) The date and time of the test
    - 2) The cable ID number
    - 3) The cable segment ID number
    - 4) The fiber color or sub-cable number
    - 5) Launch point connector number
    - 6) The optical wavelength used for the test
    - 7) The refractive index setting of the OTDR
    - 8) The pulse width setting of the OTDR
    - 9) The averaging interval of the test

END OF SECTION 27 11 19 00



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
27 11 19 00	02 61 13 00	Underground Storage Tank Removal
27 11 19 00	27 05 26 00	Intercommunications and Program Systems
27 11 23 00	27 05 26 00	Intercommunications and Program Systems
27 14 13 13	26 05 13 16	Conductors And Cables
27 14 13 13	26 05 13 16a	Undercarpet Cables
27 14 13 13	26 05 13 16b	Medium-Voltage Cables
27 14 13 13	27 05 26 00	Intercommunications and Program Systems
27 14 13 16	26 05 13 16	Conductors And Cables
27 14 13 16	26 05 13 16a	Undercarpet Cables
27 14 13 16	26 05 19 16b	Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables
27 14 13 16	26 05 13 16b	Medium-Voltage Cables
27 14 23 13	27 11 19 00	Loose-Tube Gel-Filled Fiber Optic Cables
27 14 33 16	26 05 13 16	Conductors And Cables
27 14 33 16	26 05 13 16a	Undercarpet Cables
27 14 33 16	26 05 19 16b	Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables
27 14 33 16	26 05 13 16b	Medium-Voltage Cables
27 14 43 00	27 05 26 00	Intercommunications and Program Systems
27 14 53 00	27 11 19 00	Loose-Tube Gel-Filled Fiber Optic Cables
27 16 16 00	27 11 19 00	Loose-Tube Gel-Filled Fiber Optic Cables
27 16 19 00	26 05 13 16	Conductors And Cables
27 16 19 00	27 11 19 00	Loose-Tube Gel-Filled Fiber Optic Cables
27 21 16 00	27 11 19 00	Loose-Tube Gel-Filled Fiber Optic Cables
27 21 16 00	27 05 26 00	Intercommunications and Program Systems
27 31 13 00	02 61 13 00	Underground Storage Tank Removal
27 31 13 00	27 05 26 00	Intercommunications and Program Systems
27 32 19 00	02 61 13 00	Underground Storage Tank Removal
27 32 19 00	26 05 33 16a	Wiring Devices
27 32 19 00	27 05 26 00	Intercommunications and Program Systems
27 32 26 00	02 61 13 00	Underground Storage Tank Removal
27 32 26 00	27 05 26 00	Intercommunications and Program Systems
27 51 23 20	27 05 26 00	Intercommunications and Program Systems
27 51 23 20	26 33 43 00b	Public Address and Mass Notification Systems



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



**SECTION 27 51 33 00 - EDUCATIONAL INTERCOMMUNICATIONS AND PROGRAM SYSTEMS**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for educational intercommunications and program systems. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. Section Includes: Manually switched intercommunications, Microprocessor-switched intercommunications, Microprocessor-switched telephone/intercommunications and program systems with the following components:
  - a. Master stations.
  - b. Call control console.
  - c. Speaker-microphone stations.
  - d. Call-switch unit.
  - e. All-call amplifier.
  - f. Intercommunication amplifier.
  - g. Paging amplifier.
  - h. Loudspeakers/speaker microphones.
  - i. Conductors and cables.
  - j. Raceways.

## C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: For educational intercommunications and program systems. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - a. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
    - 1) Identify terminals to facilitate installation, operation, and maintenance.
    - 2) Single-line diagram showing interconnection of components.
    - 3) Cabling diagram showing cable routing.
3. Field quality-control reports.
4. Operation and maintenance data.

## D. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for location and application.
3. Comply with NFPA 70.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

## A. Functional Description Of Manually Switched Systems

1. Master Station:
  - a. Communicating selectively with other master and speaker-microphone stations by actuating selector switches.
  - b. Communicating simultaneously with all other stations by actuating a single all-call switch.
  - c. Communicating with individual stations in privacy.
  - d. Including other master-station connections in a multiple-station conference call.



- e. Accessing separate paging speakers or groups of paging speakers by actuating selector switches.
  - f. Overriding any conversation by a designated master station.
  2. Speaker-Microphone Station:
    - a. Having privacy from remote monitoring without a warning tone signal at monitored station. Designated speaker-microphone stations have a privacy switch to prevent another station from listening and to permit incoming calls.
    - b. Communicating hands free.
    - c. Calling master station by actuating call switch.
    - d. Returning a busy signal to indicate that station is already in use.
    - e. Being free of noise and distortion during operation and when in standby mode.
  3. Speakers: Free of noise and distortion during operation and when in standby mode.
- B. Functional Description Of Microprocessor-Switched Systems
1. Master Station:
    - a. Communicating selectively with other master and speaker-microphone stations by dialing station's number on a 12-digit keypad.
    - b. Communicating with individual stations in privacy.
    - c. Communicating on a minimum of three voice channels with up to two simultaneous conversations between master stations and one conversation between a master station and a speaker-microphone station.
    - d. Increasing the number of conversation channels by adding a module in central-control cabinet.
    - e. Including up to three other station connections in a conference call.
    - f. Accessing separate paging speakers or groups of paging speakers by dialing designated numbers on a 12-digit keypad.
    - g. Overriding any conversation by a designated master station.
    - h. Displaying selected station.
    - i. Communicating simultaneously with all other stations by dialing a designated number on a 12-digit keypad.
    - j. Automatically controlling gain to ensure constant intercom speech level.
    - k. Controlling the simultaneous distribution of program material to various combinations of speaker-microphone stations or groups over two program channels by using keypad to control sources and distribute programs.
    - l. Operating and correcting secondary clocks and controlling class-change signals to speakers and bells by using keypad.
    - m. User-programmable features include the following:
      - 1) Station calling by room number.
      - 2) Room station call-in priority levels.
      - 3) Clock signal schedule functions.
      - 4) Schedule characteristics of audible signals.
      - 5) Call-in tone characteristic.
      - 6) Precedence among master stations as destinations for incoming calls from room stations.
      - 7) Grouping of rooms and speakers into zones for paging and program distribution purposes.
  2. Speaker-Microphone Station:
    - a. Having privacy from remote monitoring without a warning tone signal at monitored station. Designated speaker-microphone stations have a privacy switch to prevent another station from listening and to permit incoming calls.
    - b. Communicating hands free.
    - c. Calling master station by actuating call switch.
    - d. Returning a busy signal to indicate that station is already in use.
  3. Speakers: Free of noise and distortion during operation and when in standby mode.



C. Functional Description Of Telephone/Intercommunication Systems

1. Integrated central system with the following:
  - a. Direct-dial, full duplex private telephone communications between all locations equipped with telephones. Call initiation among master stations and between master and remote stations by dialing station's number on a 12-digit keypad.
  - b. 16 channels for unrestricted simultaneous communications.
  - c. Initial system operation with <Insert number> master and remote stations, expandable to 360 stations.
  - d. Direct-dial, two-way amplified voice intercommunication between master telephones and remote stations without use of press-to-talk or talk-listen switches.
  - e. Automatic queuing for intercommunication channels, with automatic call waiting.
  - f. Call transfer among master stations.
  - g. Display of selected station and answering calling station by pressing a single "response button."
  - h. Simultaneous communication with other stations on system by dialing a designated number on a 12-digit keypad.
  - i. Automatic gain control to ensure constant intercom speech level.
  - j. Simultaneous distribution of emergency announcements to all locations equipped with speakers by dialing a predetermined code number.
  - k. User-selectable facility for providing selected telephones with dial tone.
  - l. User-selectable facility for permitting linkage of selected stations to media retrieval center and for permitting on- and off-premise computer linkage.
  - m. Assignment of speaker locations within any one or more of eight zones for zone paging or time signal reception.
  - n. Digital readout displays on which up to three incoming calls are displayed with additional calls stored for subsequent display.
  - o. Off-site diagnostics through a serial data port on central-control station.
  - p. Control of simultaneous distribution of program material to various combinations of remote stations or groups by using keypad to control sources and distribute programs.
  - q. Operation and correction of secondary clocks and control of class-change signals to speakers and bells by using keypad.
  - r. User-programmable features include the following:
    - 1) Station calling by room number.
    - 2) Room station call-in priority levels.
    - 3) Clock signal schedule functions.
    - 4) Schedule characteristics of audible signals.
    - 5) Call-in tone characteristic.
    - 6) Precedence among master stations as destinations for incoming calls from room stations.
    - 7) Grouping rooms and speakers into zones for paging and program distribution purposes.
  - s. Telephone interconnect features include the following:
    - 1) Direct connection to central office trunk lines with initial system wiring for <Insert number> trunk lines.
    - 2) Routing of outside trunk lines for "attendant answer incoming" and "direct inward line" functions.
    - 3) Station programming for access to outside trunk lines to be any of the following:
      - a) Totally unrestricted access.
      - b) Restricted access.
      - c) No access.
    - 4) System programming to allow or disallow local prefixes, and to authorize access for as many as three area codes.
    - 5) Discriminating ringing for identifying internal and outside calls.
    - 6) Circular hunting for outside trunks to prevent excess usage of any one trunk.
    - 7) Direct connection of a single trunk to designated telephone with transfer to attendant if unanswered.



- 8) Call parking allowing paged party to remotely pick up outside call from any master station.
  - 9) Night-answer mode to allow one or all of the following:
    - a) Incoming call transferred to predetermined extension.
    - b) Tone transmitted to speakers to notify key personnel to answer telephone.
    - c) Dial tone to remote stations to allow answering call from all locations.
  - 10) Call control console to do as follows:
    - a) Identify, answer, and route incoming outside calls, with reminder and recall features.
    - b) Directly access outside trunk lines.
    - c) Hold, park, and transfer calls.
    - d) Screen outside calls.
2. Remote Stations:
- a. Speaker-Microphone Station:
    - 1) Having privacy from remote monitoring without a warning tone signal at monitored station. Designated speaker-microphone stations have a privacy switch to prevent another station from listening and to permit incoming calls.
    - 2) Communicating hands free.
    - 3) Calling master station by actuating call switch.
    - 4) Returning a busy signal to indicate that station is already in use.
  3. Speakers: Free of noise and distortion during operation and when in standby mode.
- D. General Requirements For Equipment And Materials
1. Coordinate features and select components to form an integrated system. Match components and interconnections for optimum performance of specified functions.
  2. Expansion Capability: Increase number of stations in the future by 25 percent above those indicated without adding any internal or external components or main trunk cable conductors.
  3. Equipment: Modular type using solid-state components, fully rated for continuous duty unless otherwise indicated. Select equipment for normal operation on input power usually supplied at 110 to 130 V, 60 Hz. Comply with UL 813.
  4. Weather-Resistant Equipment: Listed and labeled by an NRTL for duty outdoors or in damp locations.
- E. Master Station For Manually Switched Systems
1. Station-Selector and Talk-Listen Switches: Heavy-duty type with gold-plated contacts rated for five million operations.
  2. Volume Control: Regulates incoming-call volume.
  3. LED Annunciation: Identifies calling stations and stations in use. LED remains on until call is answered.
  4. Tone Annunciation: Momentary audible tone signal announces incoming calls.
  5. Speaker Microphone: Transmits and receives calls.
    - a. Minimum Speaker Sensitivity: 91 dB at one meter, with 1-W input.
  6. Handset with Hook Switch: Telephone type with 18-inch- (450-mm-) long, permanently coiled cord. Arrange to disconnect speaker when handset is lifted.
  7. Central-Equipment Cabinet: Comply with TIA/EIA-310-D. Lockable, ventilated metal cabinet houses terminal strips, power supplies, amplifiers, system volume control, and auxiliary equipment.
- F. Master Station For Microprocessor-Switched Systems
1. 12-Digit Keypad Selector: Transmits calls to other stations and initiates commands for programming and operation.
  2. Volume Control: Regulates incoming-call volume.
  3. Tone Annunciation: Momentary audible tone signal announces incoming calls.
  4. Lamp Annunciation: Identifies calling stations and stations in use. Lamp remains on until call is answered.



5. Speaker Microphone: Transmits intercom voice signals when used via a voice-operated switch.
    - a. Minimum Speaker Sensitivity: 91 dB at one meter, with 1-W input.
  6. Link Button: To transfer calls.
  7. Reset Control: Cancels call and resets system for next call.
  8. Digital Display: 16-digit alphanumeric LCD readout to register up to four three-digit station numbers.
  9. Central-Equipment Cabinet: Comply with TIA/EIA-310-D. Lockable, ventilated metal cabinet houses terminal strips, power supplies, amplifiers, system volume control, and other switching and control devices required for conversation channels and control functions.
- G. Call Control Console
1. Microprocessor-based instrument to process outside and internal calls with a 12-digit keypad selector.
  2. 20-character alphanumeric display for the following:
    - a. Simultaneous display of up to three calling stations plus last station dialed.
    - b. Display of calls in order received with emergency calls taking precedence on the display.
    - c. Review of calls stored in groups of four.
    - d. Display of prompt messages to assist in system operation.
  3. Programmable Keys: Minimum of 20 with LED indicators for ringing/busy status; programmable for trunk and operator functions.
  4. Transfer Button: Calls to busy extensions and unanswered calls automatically returned to call control console.
  5. Hold Button: With reminder feature every 30 seconds for parked calls or calls placed on hold.
  6. Release Button: For use with parked calls or calls placed on hold.
  7. Page Button: For engaging system paging functions.
  8. Programmable for night answer, remote answer, and remote pickup features.
  9. Programmable for distribution of emergency announcements, all-page announcements, zone-page announcements, and emergency/evacuation alert.
  10. Central-Control Cabinet Equipment: Central switching equipment, central office adapter module, line link modules, power supplies, chassis adapters, and other switching and control devices required for trunk and internal conversation channels and control functions.
- H. Speaker-Microphone Stations
1. Mounting: Flush unless otherwise indicated, and suitable for mounting conditions indicated.
  2. Faceplate: Stainless steel or anodized aluminum with tamperproof mounting screws.
  3. Back Box: Two-gang galvanized steel with 2-1/2-inch (64-mm) minimum depth.
  4. Speaker: Minimum axial sensitivity shall be 91 dB at one meter, with 1-W input. Voice coil shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm), 2.3 oz. (65 g) minimum; permanent magnet.
  5. Tone Annunciation: Recurring momentary tone indicates incoming calls.
  6. Call Switch: Mount on faceplate. Permits calls to master station.
  7. Privacy Switch: Mount on faceplate. When in on position, switch prevents transmission of sound from remote station to system; when in off position, without further switch manipulation, response can be made to incoming calls.
- I. Call-Switch Unit
1. Enclosure: Single-gang box with stainless-steel faceplate.
  2. Call Switch: Momentary contact signals system that a call has been placed.
  3. Privacy Switch: Prevents transmission of sound signals from station to system.
  4. Volume Control: Operated by screwdriver blade through a hole in faceplate to adjust output level of associated speaker.
- J. All-Call Amplifier
1. Output Power: 70-V balanced line. 80 percent of the sum of wattage settings of connected for each station and speaker connected in all-call mode of operation, plus an allowance for future stations.



2. Total Harmonic Distortion: Less than 5 percent at rated output power with load equivalent to quantity of stations connected in all-call mode of operation.
  3. Minimum Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 60 dB, at rated output.
  4. Frequency Response: Within plus or minus 2 dB from 50 to 12,000 Hz.
  5. Output Regulation: Maintains output level within 2 dB from full to no load.
  6. Input Sensitivity: Compatible with master stations and central equipment so amplifier delivers full-rated output with sound-pressure level of less than 10 dynes/sq. cm impinging on master stations, speaker microphones, or handset transmitters.
  7. Amplifier Protection: Prevents damage from shorted or open output.
- K. Intercommunication Amplifier
1. Minimum Output Power: 15 W; adequate for all functions.
  2. Total Harmonic Distortion: Less than 5 percent at rated output power with load equivalent to one station connected to output terminals.
  3. Minimum Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 50 dB, at rated output.
  4. Frequency Response: Within plus or minus 3 dB from 70 to 10,000 Hz.
  5. Output Regulation: Maintains output level within 2 dB from full to no load.
  6. Input Sensitivity: Matched to input circuit and to provide full-rated output with sound-pressure level of less than 10 dynes/sq. cm impinging on microphones in master stations, speaker microphones, or handset transmitters.
  7. Amplifier Protection: Prevents damage from shorted or open output.
- L. Paging Amplifier
1. Input Voltage: 120-V ac, 60 Hz.
  2. Frequency Response: Within plus or minus 3 dB from 60 to 10,000 Hz.
  3. Minimum Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 60 dB, at rated output.
  4. Total Harmonic Distortion: Less than 3 percent at rated output power from 70 to 12,000 Hz.
  5. Output Regulation: Less than 2 dB from full to no load.
  6. Controls: On-off, input levels, and low-cut filter.
  7. Input Sensitivity: Matched to input circuit and to provide full-rated output with sound-pressure level of less than 10 dynes/sq. cm impinging on speaker microphones or handset transmitters.
  8. Amplifier Protection: Prevents damage from shorted or open output.
- M. Cone-Type Loudspeakers/Speaker Microphones
1. Minimum Axial Sensitivity: 91 dB at one meter, with 1-W input.
  2. Frequency Response: Within plus or minus 3 dB from 70 to 15,000 Hz.
  3. Minimum Dispersion Angle: 100 degrees.
  4. Line Transformer: Maximum insertion loss of 0.5 dB, power rating equal to speaker's, and at least four level taps.
  5. Enclosures: Steel housings or back boxes, acoustically dampened, with front face of at least 0.0478-inch (1.2-mm) steel and whole assembly rust proofed and factory primed; complete with mounting assembly and suitable for surface ceiling, flush ceiling, pendant or wall mounting; with relief of back pressure.
  6. Baffle: For flush speakers, minimum thickness of 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) aluminum brushed to a satin sheen and lacquered **OR** with textured white finish, **as directed**.
  7. Vandal-Proof, High-Strength Baffle: For flush **OR** surface, **as directed**, -mounted speakers, self-aging cast aluminum with tensile strength of 44,000 psi (303 MN/sq. m), 0.025-inch (0.65-mm) minimum thickness; countersunk heat-treated alloy mounting screws; and textured white epoxy finish.
  8. Size: 8 inches (200 mm) with 1-inch (25-mm) voice coil and minimum 5-oz. (140-g) ceramic magnet.
- N. Horn-Type Loudspeakers/Speaker Microphones
1. Speakers shall be all-metal, weatherproof construction; complete with universal mounting brackets.



2. Frequency Response: Within plus or minus 3 dB from 275 to 14,000 Hz.
3. Minimum Power Rating of Driver: 15 W, continuous.
4. Minimum Dispersion Angle: 110 degrees.
5. Line Transformer: Maximum insertion loss of 0.5 dB, power rating equal to speaker's, and at least four level taps.

O. Conductors And Cables

1. Conductors: Jacketed, twisted pair and twisted multipair, untinned solid copper. Sizes as recommended by system manufacturer, but no smaller than No. 22 AWG.
2. Insulation: Thermoplastic, not less than 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) thick.
3. Shielding: For speaker-microphone leads and elsewhere where recommended by manufacturer; No. 34 AWG, tinned, soft-copper strands formed into a braid or equivalent foil.
  - a. Minimum Shielding Coverage on Conductors: 60 percent.
4. Plenum Cable: Listed and labeled for plenum installation.

P. Raceways

1. Educational Intercommunication and Program System Raceways and Boxes: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems".
2. Educational Intercommunication and Program System Raceways and Boxes: Same as required for electrical branch circuits specified in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems".
3. Educational Intercommunication and Program System Raceways and Boxes: EMT **OR** ENT **OR** RNC **OR** Optical-fiber/communication raceways and fittings **OR** Metal wireways **OR** Nonmetal wireways **OR** Surface metal raceways **OR** Surface nonmetal raceways, **as directed**.
4. Outlet boxes shall be not less than 2 inches (50 mm) wide, 3 inches (75 mm) high, and 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) deep.
5. Flexible metal conduit is prohibited.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Wiring Methods

1. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters, and except in accessible ceiling spaces and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used, **as directed**. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
  - a. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
  - b. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems".
2. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.
3. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

B. Installation Of Raceways

1. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems" for installation of conduits and wireways.
2. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows whenever possible.

C. Installation Of Cables

1. Comply with NECA 1.
2. General Requirements:
  - a. Terminate conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at outlets and terminals.



- b. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Arrange on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures. Cables may not be spliced.
  - c. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
  - d. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
  - e. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
  - f. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used.
3. Open-Cable Installation:
- a. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunication spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
  - b. Suspend speaker cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above ceiling by cable supports not more than 60 inches (1524 mm) apart.
  - c. Cable shall not be run through structural members or be in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.
4. Separation of Wires: Separate speaker-microphone, line-level, speaker-level, and power wiring runs. Install in separate raceways or, where exposed or in same enclosure, separate conductors at least 12 inches (300 mm) apart for speaker microphones and adjacent parallel power and telephone wiring. Separate other intercommunication equipment conductors as recommended by equipment manufacturer.

#### D. Installation

- 1. Match input and output impedances and signal levels at signal interfaces. Provide matching networks where required.
- 2. Identification of Conductors and Cables: Color-code conductors and apply wire and cable marking tape to designate wires and cables so they identify media in coordination with system wiring diagrams.
- 3. Weatherproof Equipment: For units that are mounted outdoors, in damp locations, or where exposed to weather, install consistent with requirements of weatherproof rating.
- 4. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".

#### E. Grounding

- 1. Ground cable shields and equipment to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize ground loops, common-mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments.
- 2. Signal Ground Terminal: Locate at main equipment cabinet. Isolate from power system and equipment grounding.
- 3. Install grounding electrodes as specified in Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".

#### F. System Programming

- 1. Programming: Fully brief the Owner on available programming options. Record the Owner's decisions and set up initial system program. Prepare a written record of decisions, implementation methodology, and final results.

#### G. Field Quality Control

- 1. Perform tests and inspections.
  - a. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.





2. Tests and Inspections:
  - a. Schedule tests with at least seven days' advance notice of test performance.
  - b. After installing educational intercommunications and program systems and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
  - c. Operational Test: Test originating station-to-station **OR** originating station-to-station, all-call, and page, **as directed**, messages at each intercommunication station. Verify proper routing and volume levels and that system is free of noise and distortion. Test each available message path from each station on system.
  - d. Frequency Response Test: Determine frequency response of two transmission paths, including all-call and paging, **as directed**, by transmitting and recording audio tones. Minimum acceptable performance is within 3 dB from 150 to 2500 Hz.
  - e. Signal-to-Noise Ratio Test: Measure signal-to-noise ratio of complete system at normal gain settings as follows:
    - 1) Disconnect speaker microphone and replace it in the circuit with a signal generator using a 1000-Hz signal. Measure signal-to-noise ratio at paging, **as directed**, speakers.
    - 2) Repeat test for three speaker microphones, one master station microphone, and for each separately controlled zone of paging loudspeakers.
    - 3) Minimum acceptable ratio is 45 dB.
  - f. Distortion Test: Measure distortion at normal gain settings and rated power. Feed signals at frequencies of 150, 200, 400, 1000, and 2500 Hz into each intercom **OR** intercom, paging, and all-call amplifier, **as directed**. For each frequency, measure distortion in the paging and all-call amplifier outputs. Maximum acceptable distortion at any frequency is 5 percent total harmonics.
  - g. Acoustic Coverage Test: Feed pink noise into system using octaves centered at 500 and 4000 Hz. Use sound-level meter with octave-band filters to measure level at five locations in each paging zone. Maximum permissible variation in level is plus or minus 3 dB; in levels between adjacent zones, plus or minus 5 dB.
  - h. Power Output Test: Measure electrical power output of each paging amplifier at normal gain settings of 150, 1000, and 2500 Hz. Maximum variation in power output at these frequencies is plus or minus 3 dB.
  - i. Signal Ground Test: Measure and report ground resistance at system signal ground. Comply with testing requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
3. Inspection: Verify that units and controls are properly labeled and interconnecting wires and terminals are identified. Prepare a list of final tap settings of paging and independent room speaker-line matching transformers.
4. Educational intercommunications and program systems will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
5. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 27 51 33 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
27 51 33 00	26 33 43 00b	Public Address and Mass Notification Systems

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 27 53 13 00 - CLOCK AND PROGRAM CONTROL

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for clock and program control. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
2. Master clock and program control unit.
3. Secondary indicating clocks.
4. Program signal devices.
5. Clock circuit power boosters.
6. Interface with intercom and public-address system.
7. System wire and cable.

#### C. Definitions

1. NIST: The National Institute of Science and Technology.
2. PC: Personal computer.
3. UTC: Universal time coordinated. The precisely measured time at zero degrees longitude; a worldwide standard for time synchronization.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. Seismic Performance: Master clock and housing shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
2. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes (including available colors) for each product indicated and describe features and operating sequences, both automatic and manual.
2. Shop Drawings: For clock systems. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - a. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring and correction circuits.
    - 1) Identify terminals and wiring color codes to facilitate installation, operation, and maintenance.
    - 2) Indicate recommended wire types and sizes, and circuiting arrangements for field-installed system wiring. Show protection from overcurrent, static discharge, and voltage surge.
  - b. Details of seismic restraints including mounting, anchoring, and fastening devices for the following system components:
    - 1) Surface-mounted and semirecessed secondary indicating clocks.
    - 2) Master clock enclosures **OR** mounting racks, **as directed**.
    - 3) Clock circuit power boosters.
  - c. Details of seismic strengthening of master clock enclosures **OR** mounting racks, **as directed**.



- d. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of the Mounting Rack for the Master Clock: Show internal seismic bracing, and locate center of gravity of fully equipped and assembled unit. Locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Delegated-Design Submittal: For the master clock and housing indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - a. Detail fabrication and assembly of the master clock and housing.
  - b. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints.
4. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For the master clock, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
5. Field quality-control reports.
6. Operation and maintenance data.

F. Quality Assurance

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with NFPA 70.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Master And Secondary Clock System

1. System Functions and Features:
  - a. Supply power to remote indicating clocks except those indicated to have correction signals applied through a data circuit.
  - b. Maintain correct synchronized time and transmit time-correction signals over dedicated system wiring from a master clock to any one **OR** two, **as directed**, type(s) of secondary indicating clocks, including the following:
    - 1) Analog Synchronous Clocks: Correct for minute- and second-hand synchronization at least once each hour and for hour-hand synchronization at least once each day.
    - 2) Digital Clocks: Test clocks automatically for synchronization with master time control at least once every hour and automatically correct those not synchronized with the time reference unit. Automatically correct clocks immediately when power is restored after an outage of power to the master clock.
  - c. Initiate and execute programs for scheduled automatic operation of remote devices. Include audible signal devices and visual signal devices, **as directed**, and on and off switching of equipment and circuits, **as directed**.
  - d. Provide for manual control of programmed signal and equipment-switching circuits.
  - e. Communicate with remote PC for access to UTC time base and to permit programming from remote location, **as directed**.
  - f. Maintain system access security with a minimum of one level **OR** two levels **OR** three levels, **as directed**, of user-access control to restrict use of system controls to authorized personnel. Levels of access apply to both local access and access from a remote computer, **as directed**. Access to user programming and control functions is accomplished by entering a minimum three-digit code. Access levels include the following:
    - 1) Access to review existing programs only.
    - 2) Access to normal system operating controls.
    - 3) Access to all user-programming and control functions.
  - g. Regulate system timing functions using power-line frequency, backed up for power outages by an internal battery-powered, crystal-controlled oscillator.  
**OR**  
 Regulate system timing functions using power-line frequency, backed up for power outages by an internal battery-powered, crystal-controlled oscillator, and automated periodic reference to NIST or UTC time signals via internal telephone modem and automatic dialup connection **OR** internal modem and network or microcomputer Internet



access **OR** dedicated internal radio receiver tuned to NIST time signal broadcasts, **as directed**. Reference time signals shall be automatically accessed at programmable intervals.

- h. Provide for programming multiple independent event schedules into memory and running them simultaneously for different output circuits.
  - 1) Quantity of Programmable Schedules: Three **OR** Four **OR** Eight **OR** 18 **OR** 250, **as directed**, minimum.
  - 2) Number of Weekly Events That Can Be Programmed for Each Schedule: 64 **OR** 128 **OR** 300 **OR** 600 **OR** 2500, **as directed**, minimum.
  - 3) Simultaneous operation of independent schedules shall be limited only by the number of signal-device and equipment-switching output circuits.
  - 4) Advance Programming for Automatic Holiday Schedule Changes: Number of schedule changes that can be programmed to suit holidays and vacations shall be 10 **OR** 16 **OR** 50 **OR** 100, **as directed**, and each change may be programmed up to a year in advance to occur on any day of the calendar year.
- i. Automatically check functioning of LEDs, switches, input keys, central processor, read-only memory, random access memory, and output circuits. A display on the control panel or a remote computer with the proper access code, **as directed**, shall indicate failure by identifying faulty component or circuit and shall recommend corrective action.
- j. Provide manually initiated **OR** programming for automatic, **as directed**, daylight savings time correction.
- k. Provide for adjustments to master clock output signals. Duration of momentary signal shall be individually programmable for each signal and equipment-control output circuit from 1 to 99 seconds. Signals shall be programmable for either on or off switching to suit equipment-operation scheduling.

#### B. Master Clock

- 1. Description: Microprocessor-based, software-controlled unit complying with Class A device requirements in 47 CFR 15.
  - a. Programming and control switches.
  - b. Informational Display: LED or backlit LCD type.
    - 1) Normally shows current time, date, and day of week, **as directed**, display.
    - 2) Provides programming cues when system is being programmed.
  - c. Output Circuits for Power and Correction of Secondary Indicating Clocks:
    - 1) Wired Synchronous Clock Power-and-Correction Circuits: For analog and digital, **as directed**, clocks; a minimum of one **OR** two, **as directed**, required. Relay controlled.  
**OR**  
Wired Synchronous Digital Clock Power-and-Correction Circuits: One, **as directed**, required.
    - 2) Existing Clock Power-and-Correction Circuit: An output circuit suitable for the of existing power-and-correction circuit and number of clocks to be connected.
  - d. Data Output Port for Digital, **as directed**, Secondary Clock Correction Circuit: RS485 or similar circuit for scheduled periodic correction signals.
  - e. Modem and PC interface software suitable for remote programming and automatic NIST or UTC synchronization, **as directed**.
  - f. Circuits for Audible and Visual, **as directed**, Signal Devices: Relay controlled, manually switchable, using controls on the master clock. Rated 120-V ac, five **OR** 10, **as directed**, A minimum. A minimum of two **OR** four **OR** six **OR** eight, **as directed**, circuits.
  - g. Circuits for Programmable Switching of Remote Equipment and Circuits: Relay controlled, manually switchable, using controls on the master clock. Rated 120-V ac, 5 **OR** 10, **as directed**, A minimum. A minimum of two **OR** four **OR** six **OR** eight, **as directed**, circuits.
  - h. Power Supplies: Capacity for internal loads and power-and correction circuits of connected clocks.



- i. Enclosure: Metal cabinet with locking front panel. When cabinet is locked, display indication shall be visible on or through front panel face. Arrange cabinet for surface, semirecessed, or flush mounting as indicated.  
**OR**  
Housing: Rack-mounting metal enclosure with display indication visible on front panel face.
  - 1) Reinforce mounting and attachment capable of resisting seismic forces described in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
- j. Battery Backup for Time Base: Lithium battery to maintain the timekeeping function and retain the programs in memory during outage of normal ac power supply for up to 10 years.
- k. Electrostatic Discharge Resistance: Master clock and secondary indicating clocks, **as directed**, shall be tested and certified according to IEC 61000-4-2 in both human-discharge and direct-injection modes.

### C. Secondary Indicating Clocks

- 1. Analog Clock: Equipped with a sweep second hand. Movement shall be driven by self-starting, permanently lubricated, sealed synchronous motor equipped with a correcting solenoid actuator, or be a microprocessor-based, second impulse unit, compatible with the master clock.
- 2. Digital Clock: Microprocessor-controlled unit complying with Class A device requirements in 47 CFR 15, with red LED digital time display of hours and minutes **OR**, minutes, and seconds, **as directed**.
  - a. Display Height: 2-1/2-Inch (64-mm) Clock: Hour and minute numerals readable at 50 feet (15 m).  
**OR**  
Display Height: 4-Inch (102-mm) Clock: Hour and minute numerals readable at 100 feet (30 m).
  - b. Display Format: Selectable between 12-hour with "PM" LED display and 24-hour formats.
  - c. Connections for Power and Correction:
    - 1) Wired synchronous connection to the master clock for both operating power and correction.
      - a) Time-Base Backup: Internal alkaline battery shall back up internal time base to maintain timekeeping during power outages of up to six days' duration.  
**OR**  
Time-Base Backup: Internal capacitor shall back up internal time base to maintain timekeeping during power outages of up to 12 hours' duration.
      - b) Correction by RS485, Ethernet, or similar data line with operating power supplied over a separate connection.
      - c) Power Connection for Secondary Indicating Clocks: Plug connector **OR** Wire pigtail or compression splice, **as directed**.
- 3. Interval-Timer Clock: Digital microprocessor-controlled, 4-inch (102-mm) unit with 2-1/2-inch (64-mm), red LED digital display for hours and minutes and 1-5/16-inch (33-mm) display for seconds; a separately mounted, mode-control switch; and the following features:
  - a. Display Visibility: Hour and minute numerals readable at 30 feet (10 m) in normal ambient light.
  - b. Operating Modes:
    - 1) Normal: Clock operates as a regular secondary system clock, displaying corrected time in normal display configuration, selectable between 12- and 24-hour formats, with "PM" digital display for 12-hour format.
    - 2) Count-Down or Count-Up Timer: Selected by mode-control switch count-up and count-down positions, and capable of being preset at the mode-control station.
    - 3) Code Blue: Automatically selected by a signal through a wiring connection from the code-blue system. This signal captures control of the clock regardless of current mode or correction status and instantly initiates count-up operation, starting at time 00:00:00. While in this mode, other clock functions, including correction, shall run in





- the background. Clock shall revert to normal operating mode when the initiating-signal system is reset.
- c. Mode-Selector Switch: Push-button or rotary, multiposition type, flush mounted; with start, stop, and reset capability in both count-up and count-down modes.
  - d. Audible tone signal: Housed in clock or mode-selector-switch box. Sounds at end of preset up or down count.
4. Provision for Modular Panel Installation: Equip designated clock for panel mounting. Mount flush or semirecessed with arrangement and trim as indicated. Coordinate wiring with other modular panel components, including room lighting switches **OR** intercom devices **OR** convenience outlets **OR** data outlets **OR** speaker **OR** other similar devices, **as directed**.
  5. Provision for Time-Tone-Unit Installation: Equip indicated clocks for housing or mounting in an acoustically treated and baffled speaker compartment specified in Division 27 Section "Public Address And Mass Notification Systems".
- D. Secondary Indicating Clock Characteristics:
- a. Clock Type: Analog **OR** Digital, **as directed**.
  - b. Face Configuration: Single **OR** Double, **as directed**.
  - c. Mounting: Recessed **OR** Semirecessed **OR** Pendant **OR** Surface **OR** Suspended **OR** Within time-tone unit **OR** Within modular panel, **as directed**.
  - d. Nominal Dimensions: as directed by the Owner.
  - e. Casing Finish: Types and colors, as directed by the Owner.
  - f. Special Environmental Conditions: Describe conditions such as corrosive, damp, or wet locations, as directed by the Owner.
  - g. For analog clocks.
    - 1) Dial Face Color: as directed by the Owner.
    - 2) Analog Clock Crystal: Clear glass **OR** acrylic **OR** polycarbonate, **as directed**.
  - h. For digital clocks.
    - 1) Face Color: as directed by the Owner.
    - 2) Display Height: as directed by the Owner.
    - 3) Seconds Display: Yes **OR** No, **as directed**.
    - 4) Digital Clock Lens: Antiglare acrylic material.
    - 5) Battery Backup: Yes **OR** No, **as directed**.
    - 6) Interval-Timer Display: Yes **OR** No, **as directed**.
- E. Program Signal Devices
1. Bells: Heavy-duty, modular, vibrating type with the following sound-output ratings measured at 10 feet (3 m):
    - a. 4-Inch (100-mm) Bell: 90 dB.
    - b. 6-Inch (150-mm) Bell: 95 dB.
    - c. 10-Inch (250-mm) Bell: 104 dB.
  2. Chimes: Heavy-duty, modular, vibrating chimes with polished-chrome tone bar and enamel-finished housing. Minimum sound-output rating measured at 10 feet (3 m) shall be 75 dB.
  3. Clock Buzzers: Adjustable output signal device designed for mounting within clock housing or outlet box.
    - a. Sound-Output Rating Measured at 3 Feet (1 m): 75 dB.
    - b. Audible Tone Frequency: Manufacturer's standard between 120 Hz and 2 kHz.
  4. Horns: Modular, adjustable-output, vibrating type with minimum full-intensity-rated sound output of 103 dB measured at 10 feet (3 m).
  5. Projector Horns: Adjustable-output, vibrating type with single **OR** double, **as directed**, projector arranged to channel sound in the direction of the projector axis, and with minimum full-intensity-rated sound output of 104 dB measured at 10 feet (3 m).
  6. Loudspeakers for Audible Tones: See Division 27 Section "Public Address And Mass Notification Systems".
  7. Visible Signal Devices: Strobe lights with blue **OR** yellow, **as directed**, polycarbonate lens and xenon flash tube, with lens mounted on an aluminum faceplate and the word "Program" engraved



in letters at least 1 inch (25 mm) high on lens. Lamp unit shall have a minimum rated light output of 75 candela.

8. Combination Audible and Visible Signal Devices: Factory-integrated horn and strobe light in a single mounting assembly.
9. Outdoor Signal Equipment: Weatherproof models listed for outdoor use.
10. Mounting Arrangement for Signal Devices: Designed for attachment with screws on the mounting plate of a flush-mounted back box unless otherwise indicated.
11. Enclosures for Flush-Mounting Bells and Horns: Enclosure, mounting plate, and grille assembly shall be furnished by device manufacturer to match features of the device to be mounted. Enclosure shall be recessed in wall, completely enclosing the device, with grille mounting over the open side of the enclosure and flush with the wall.
12. Connection Provision for Signal-Indicating Devices: Plug connector **OR** Wire pigtail or compression splice, **as directed**.

F. Clock Circuit Power Booster

1. Description: Transformer power supply, mounted in steel cabinet with hinged door, and having fuse-protected input and output circuits.

G. Back Boxes For Secondary Indicating Clocks And Program Devices

1. Description: Box and cover-plate assembly shall be furnished by device manufacturer and be suitable for device to be mounted. Back boxes shall be equipped with knockouts and hanger straps or mounting adapters arranged for flush mounting the device unless otherwise indicated.

H. Guards

1. Description: Formed-steel wire, shaped to fit around guarded device, with 1-inch (25-mm) maximum clearance.
  - a. Mounting Provisions: Fixed tabs, welded to guard and arranged for screw attachment to mounting surface.
  - b. Finish for Indoor Devices: Clear epoxy lacquer over zinc plating.
  - c. Finish for Outdoor Devices: Black powder coat over zinc plating and primer.

I. Rack-Mounting Provision For Master Clock

1. Equipment Cabinet: Floor **OR** Wall, **as directed**, -mounted, rack type. Comply with EIA-310-D and the following:
  - a. Cabinet Housing: Constructed of steel, with front and rear, **as directed**, doors; with manufacturer's standard tumbler locks, keyed alike.
    - 1) Front door shall have a clear panel in front of the master clock display.
    - 2) Housing shall enclose master clock and auxiliary clock system components, plus a minimum of 20 percent spare capacity for future equipment.
  - b. Forced Ventilation: Internal low-noise fan with a filtered intake vent, connected to operate from 105- to 130-V ac, 60 Hz; separately fused and switchable and arranged to be powered when main cabinet power switch is on.
 

**OR**

Natural Ventilation: Ventilated rear and sides with louvers and solid top.
  - c. For freestanding, floor-mounting cabinet, arrange inputs, outputs, interconnections, and test points so they are accessible at rear of rack for maintenance and testing, with each item removable from rack without disturbing other items or connections.
  - d. Blank Panels: Cover empty space in equipment racks so entire front of rack is occupied by equipment or panels.
  - e. Finish: Uniform, baked-enamel, manufacturer's standard color finish over rust-inhibiting primer.
  - f. Power-Control Panel: On front of equipment housing; with master power on-off switch and pilot light, and socket for a 5-A, indicating, cartridge fuse for rack equipment power.
  - g. Vertical Plug Strip: Grounded receptacles, 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. the full height of rack, to supply rack-mounting equipment.



- h. Maintenance Receptacles: Duplex convenience outlet with supply terminals separate from equipment plug strip and located in front of rack.

J. Conductors And Cables

1. Conductors: Jacketed, twisted pair and twisted multipair, untinned solid copper. Sizes as recommended by system manufacturer, but not smaller than No. 22 AWG. Voltage drop for signal, control, and clock correction circuits shall not exceed 10 percent under peak load conditions. Comply with requirements in Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling".
2. 120-V AC and Class 1 Signal and Control Circuits: Stranded, single conductors of size and type recommended by system manufacturer. Materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".
3. Class 2 and Class 3 Signal and Control Circuits: Single conductor or twisted-pair cable, unshielded, unless manufacturer recommends shielded cable.
4. Data Circuits: Category 6 minimum, unshielded, twisted-pair cable, unless manufacturer recommends shielded cable.
5. Insulation: Thermoplastic, not less than 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) thick.
6. Plenum Cable: Listed and labeled for plenum installation.
7. Conductor Color-Coding: Uniformly identified and coordinated with wiring diagrams.
8. Shielding: For speaker-microphone leads and at other locations recommended by manufacturer; No. 34 AWG tinned, soft-copper strands formed into a braid or equivalent foil.
  - a. Minimum Shielding Coverage on Conductors: 60 percent.

K. Pathways

1. Intercommunication and Program System Raceways and Boxes: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems".  
**OR**  
Intercommunication and Program System Raceways and Boxes: Same as required for electrical branch circuits specified in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems".  
**OR**  
Intercommunication and Program System Raceways and Boxes: Optical fiber/communications raceway and fittings **OR** Metal wireways **OR** Nonmetal wireways **OR** Surface metal raceways **OR** Surface nonmetal raceways, **as directed**.
2. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches (50 mm) wide, 3 inches (75 mm) high, and 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) deep.
3. Flexible metal conduit is prohibited.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation

1. Mount system components with fastening methods and devices designed to resist the seismic forces indicated in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".

B. Wiring Methods

1. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
  - a. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
  - b. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems".

**OR**

Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.



2. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.
  3. Support cables not enclosed in raceways on J-Hooks. Install, size, and space J-Hooks to comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.
- C. Electrical Connections
1. Make splices, taps, and terminations on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.
  2. Use plug connectors **OR** splices, **as directed**, for connections to clocks and signal devices.
  3. Ground clocks, programming equipment, and conductor and cable shields to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize ground loops, common-mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments.
- D. Identification
1. Comply with Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
  2. Color-code wires, and apply wire and cable marking tape to designate wires and cables so they are uniformly identified and coordinated with wiring diagrams throughout the system.
- E. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections.
    - a. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
  2. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. Perform operational-system tests to verify compliance with the Specifications and make adjustments to bring system into compliance. Include operation of all modes of clock correction and all programming and manually programmed signal and relay operating functions.
    - b. Verify that units and controls are properly labeled and interconnecting wires and terminals are identified.
  3. Clock system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  4. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- F. Adjusting
1. Program system according to the Owner's requirements. Set system so signal devices operate on the Owner-required schedules and are activated for durations selected by the Owner. Program equipment-control output circuits to suit the Owner's operating schedule for equipment controlled.
  2. Adjust sound-output level of adjustable signal devices to suit the Owner's requirements.
  3. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Final Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
- G. Demonstration
1. Train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain clock-and-program-control system components.

END OF SECTION 27 53 13 00



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
28 42 00 00	22 12 23 26	Underground Storage Tanks

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 28 46 00 00 - OIL/WATER SEPARATOR**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for oil/water separator. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Scope

1. The separator shall be designed for gravity separation of sand, grit, settleable solids, or semisolids, and free oils (hydrocarbons and other petroleum products) from wastewater. Separator shall be installed belowground with top access at or above grade level. The source of the influent to the separator shall be gravity flow from storm water runoff, hydrocarbon spills, and/or cleaning/maintenance operations.

## C. Performance

## 1. Influent Characteristics

- a. Provide separator designed for intermittent and variable flows of water, oil, or any combination of non-emulsified oil-water mixtures. Minimum separator retention time shall be 10 minutes. Operating temperatures of the influent oil in water mixture shall range from 40 degrees F. to 80 degrees F. The specific gravity of the oils at operating temperatures shall range from 0.71 to 0.92. The specific gravity of the fresh water at operating temperatures shall range from 1.00 to 1.03.

## 2. Effluent Characteristics

- a. The free oil and grease concentration in the effluent from the separator shall not exceed 10 mg/l (10 PPM) to satisfy requirements of the NPDES stormwater discharge permit. To achieve this goal, it will be necessary to remove all free oil droplets equal to and greater than 20 microns.

## D. Design Criteria

1. The separator shall be listed to Underwriters' Laboratories UL-SU2215. Construction and performance of the oil/water separators shall be in accordance with UL-SU2215. Provide certification documentation detailing criteria under which the system was tested. UL-SU2215 label shall be prominently displayed on manway covers.
2. Separator shall be designed in accordance with Stokes Law and the American Petroleum Institute Publication 421, "Monographs on Refinery Environmental Control - Management of Water Discharges; Design and Operation of Oil/Water Separators." Effective surface area calculations, signed and stamped by a Registered Professional Engineer shall be submitted to document specified effluent quality based on complete removal of the specified oil globule at design flow. A separator with lower effective surface area than required is not permissible.
3. Separator capacities, dimensions, construction, and thickness shall be in strict accordance with Underwriters' Laboratories, Subject UL-58 Standard for Safety, Steel Underground Tanks for Flammable and Combustible Liquids, September 30, 1997, Double Wall construction with 360 degree Steel Secondary Containment. The inner steel tank shall be completely contained within the outer steel tank, enclosing 100% of the tank volume. The tank shall have a double steel shell with a space between the layers. The space between the inner and outer steel walls shall be monitored with an approved electronic leak detection device through a pipe that extends vertically to the top of the tank from a small sump at the bottom. Tank construction using thin walled primary tank with external fiberglass jacket shall not be permissible.
4. Separator Corrosion Control System shall be in strict accordance with Underwriters' Laboratories Inc. Subject UL-1746 Standard for External Corrosion Protection Systems for Steel Underground Storage Tanks and the HighGuard® External Corrosion Protection Specifications.



5. Oil/water separator shall comply with National Fire Protection Association NFPA 30 Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code, 2003 Edition.
6. Separator vessel volume shall allow for a hydraulic retention time of ten (10) minutes to ensure laminar flow conditions which result in hydraulic uniformity and high effluent quality. Volume reduction will adversely affect separator performance by increasing horizontal velocity and turbulence, therefore a separator of smaller volume is not permissible.
7. Separator shall be the standard patented product of a steel tank manufacturer regularly engaged in the production of such equipment. Manufacturer shall have at least 20 years experience in manufacturing similar units for identical applications. No subcontracting of tank fabrication shall be permitted.
8. Separator shall be fabricated, inspected, and tested for leakage before shipment from the factory by manufacturer as a completely assembled vessel ready for installation.
9. Separator shall be cylindrical, horizontal, atmospheric-type steel vessel intended for the separation and storage of flammable and combustible liquids. The separator shall have the structural strength to withstand static and dynamic hydraulic loading while empty and during operating conditions. The Oil/Water Separator's dimensions and thickness shall be in strict compliance with Roark's Formulas for Stress and Strain as presented in UL 58, September 30, 1997. Calculations, signed and stamped by a Registered Professional Engineer shall be submitted to document structural strength under specified overbearing or external pressure. A separator with a reduced shell thickness is not permissible.
10. Separator shall have an oil storage capacity equal to about 43% of the total vessel volume and an emergency oil spill capacity equal to 80% of the total vessel volume.
11. To prevent extensive shutdown and maintenance, the separator design must allow solids to fall unhindered by turbulence, and oil droplets to rise without risk of re-emulsifying due to collisions with interfering solids. The use of plastic perforated tubes, spherical balls, or irregular shaped media will increase the facility's maintenance costs and shall not be permitted.
12. Separator shall consist of inlet and outlet connections, integral sand interceptor compartment, non-clogging flow distributor and energy dissipater device, stationary under flow baffle, presettling chamber for solids, sludge baffle, oil coalescing chamber with removable parallel flat/corrugated plate coalescer, with removable plates, and sectionalized removable polypropylene impingement coalescers to optimize separation of free oil from water, effluent downcomer positioned to prevent discharge of free oil that has been separated from the water, access ways for coalescers and each chamber, fittings for vent, oil pump-out, sampling, gauging, leak detection, and lifting lugs.

E. Submittals:

1. Shop Drawings: shop drawings for oil water separators shall show principal dimensions and location of all fittings.
2. Instructions: provide three complete sets of installation, operation, and maintenance instructions with separator.
3. Quality Control: Quality control, inspection procedures, and reports shall be considered part of the submittal package.

F. Warranty

1. The manufacturer shall warrant its products to be free from defects in material and workmanship for a period of one year from the date of shipment. The warranty shall be limited to repair or replacement of the defective part(s).
2. The manufacturer's warranty shall be standard limited warranty in effect at time of purchase.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Highland Tank, One Highland Road, Box 338, Stoystown, PA 15563, Phone 814-893-5701, FAX 893-6126, E-mail [ows.info@highlandtank.com](mailto:ows.info@highlandtank.com), Website <http://www.highlandtank.com>



**B. Product**

1. Provide and install Highland Tank Model HTC Series "G" UL-SU2215 approved Belowground Double Wall Parallel Flat/Corrugated Plate Gravity Displacement Oil/Water Separator with Integral Sand Interceptor Compartment. Separator shall be furnished with oil level alarm and leak detection systems. Oil/Water Separator shall be of capacity to comply with Spill Prevention Control and Countermeasures (SPCC) plan requirements at the facility. The sizing of this oil/water separator is consistent with industry protocols for complying with the minimum federal spill and discharge regulations therefore a separator of smaller volume is not permissible.
2. Separator shall be furnished with a Corella™ inclined parallel flat/corrugated plate coalescer to simultaneously separate free oil droplets and settleable or suspended solids particles from water without clogging of the coalescer.

**C. Description**

1. Separator shall be standard prefabricated inclined parallel flat/corrugated plate, gravity displacement type unit.
2. Separator shall be cylindrical with capacities, dimensions, construction, and thickness in strict accordance with Underwriters' Laboratories Subject 58, Double Wall construction using flat-flanged heads. Separator shall comply with National Fire Protection Association NFPA 30 Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code, 2003 Edition.
3. The separator shall be a pre-packaged, pre-engineered, ready to install unit consisting of:
  - a. An influent connection, flanged. An internal influent nozzle at the inlet end of the separator. Nozzle discharge to be located at the furthest diagonal point from the effluent discharge opening.
  - b. An integral sand interceptor compartment containing one (1) manhole, UL approved, complete with extension, cover, gasket, and bolts. A heavy-duty bulkhead shall retain sand, grit, settleable solids or semisolids and prevent them from entering the separation chamber. Bulkhead shall have a transfer pipe.
  - c. A velocity head diffusion baffle at the inlet to:
    - 1) reduce horizontal velocity and flow turbulence.
    - 2) distribute the flow equally over the separator's cross-sectional area.
    - 3) direct the flow in a serpentine path in order to enhance hydraulic characteristics and fully utilize all separator volume.
    - 4) completely isolate all inlet turbulence from the separation chamber.
  - d. A sediment chamber to disperse flow and collect oily solids and sediments.
  - e. A sludge baffle to retain settleable solids and sediment and prevent them from entering the separation chamber.
  - f. An Oil/Water Separation Chamber containing a removable Corella™ inclined parallel flat/corrugated plate coalescer. The coalescer shall have individual removable plates, sloped towards the sediment chamber. Each coalescing plate shall be flat on the top and corrugated on the bottom. The flat top plate shall resist clogging and clotting with solids. The corrugations of each of the plate bottoms shall be shaped and positioned to enhance collisions between the rising oil droplets and coalesce between them thereby improving separator efficiency. The coalescer shall:
    - 1) effect separation of oil and solids from all strata of the wastewater stream.
    - 2) shorten the vertical distance that an oil globule or solid particle has to rise or sink, respectively, for effective removal. Minimum plate gap to be 3/4".
    - 3) enhance coalescence and agglomeration by causing the smaller globules and particles (those possessing smaller rising/settling rates) to coalesce and collect on the plates thereby forming larger globules and particles that separate rapidly in water.
    - 4) direct the flow paths of the separated oil to the surface of the separator and separated solids to the bottom of the separator.
    - 5) allow solids to fall unhindered by turbulence, and oil droplets to rise without risk of re-emulsifying due to collisions with interfering solids.
  - g. The Oil/Water Separation Chamber shall also contain a sectionalized removable "Petro-Screen"™ polypropylene impingement coalescer designed to intercept oil globules of less



than 20 microns in diameter. Heavy, one-piece impingement coalescers are not permissible.

- h. An internal effluent downcomer at the outlet end of the separator, to allow for discharge from the bottom of the separation chamber only.
- i. An effluent connection, flanged.
- j. Fittings for vent, interface/level sensor, leak detection, waste oil pump-out, sampling, and gauge.
- k. Two (2) manholes, UL approved, complete with extension, cover, gasket, and bolts. One manway shall be placed between the inlet and the parallel flat/corrugated plate coalescer to facilitate access into sediment chamber for solids removal. One manway shall be placed between the parallel flat/corrugated plate coalescer and outlet to facilitate access into the oil water separation chamber for oil removal.
- l. Lifting lugs at balancing points for handling and installation.
- m. Identification plates: Plates shall be affixed in prominent location and be durable and legible throughout equipment life.
- n. HighGuard® Corrosion Protection System consisting of:
  - 1) Isolation Spool Pieces
  - 2) Dielectric Isolation Gaskets and Bushings
  - 3) External surfaces commercial grit blast, coated 75 mils DFT Self-Reinforcing Polyurethane.
- o. Internal surfaces commercial grit blast and coated with 10 mils DFT heavy duty Polyurethane.

#### D. Accessories

- 1. Separator shall be supplied with an audible and visual alarm system that indicates hi oil level (visual only) and hi hi oil level (audible and visual) of oil storage in the oil/water separator and an audible and visual leak detection alarm system that indicates hydrocarbon and/or water in the interstice. A silence control shall be provided for the audible alarms. Level sensor(s) shall be intrinsically safe. Level sensor floats shall be made of stainless steel. The control panel shall contain both level sensor and detection control. The control panel shall be NEMA 4. Power to the control panel shall be as directed by the Owner.
- 2. Separator shall be supplied with Polyester Hold-down straps.
- 3. Separator shall be supplied with prefabricated Concrete Deadman Anchors.
- 4. Separator shall be supplied with cylindrical and/or rectangular steel Grade Level Manways designed to AASHTO H20 requirements.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation

- 1. Installation shall be in strict compliance with manufacturer's instructions and shall comply with all applicable local, state, and federal requirements.

END OF SECTION 28 46 00 00

**SECTION 28 46 21 33 - DIGITAL, ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEM**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for digital, addressable fire alarm system. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Fire-alarm control unit.
  - b. Manual fire-alarm boxes.
  - c. System smoke detectors.
  - d. Nonsystem smoke detectors.
  - e. Heat detectors.
  - f. Notification appliances.
  - g. Firefighters' two-way telephone communication service.
  - h. Magnetic door holders.
  - i. Remote annunciator.
  - j. Addressable interface device.
  - k. Digital alarm communicator transmitter.
  - l. Radio alarm transmitter.
  - m. System printer.

## C. Definitions

1. LED: Light-emitting diode.
2. NICET: National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies.

## D. System Description

1. Noncoded, UL-certified **OR** FMG-placarded, **as directed**, addressable system, with multiplexed signal transmission, dedicated to fire-alarm service only.
2. Noncoded addressable system, with automatic sensitivity control of certain smoke detectors and multiplexed signal transmission, dedicated to fire-alarm service only.

## E. Performance Requirements

1. Seismic Performance: Fire-alarm control unit and raceways shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
  - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event," **as directed**.

## F. Submittals

1. General Submittal Requirements:
  - a. Submittals shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction prior to submitting them to the Owner.
  - b. Shop Drawings shall be prepared by persons with the following qualifications:
    - 1) Trained and certified by manufacturer in fire-alarm system design.
    - 2) NICET-certified fire-alarm technician, Level III **OR** Level IV, **as directed**, minimum.
    - 3) Licensed or certified by authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
3. Shop Drawings: For fire-alarm system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.



- a. Comply with recommendations in the "Documentation" Section of the "Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems" Chapter in NFPA 72.
- b. Include voltage drop calculations for notification appliance circuits.
- c. Include battery-size calculations.
- d. Include performance parameters and installation details for each detector, verifying that each detector is listed for complete range of air velocity, temperature, and humidity possible when air-handling system is operating.
- e. Include plans, sections, and elevations of heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning ducts, drawn to scale and coordinating installation of duct smoke detectors and access to them. Show critical dimensions that relate to placement and support of sampling tubes, detector housing, and remote status and alarm indicators. Locate detectors according to manufacturer's written recommendations.
- f. Include voice/alarm signaling-service equipment rack or console layout, grounding schematic, amplifier power calculation, and single-line connection diagram.
- g. Include floor plans to indicate final outlet locations showing address of each addressable device. Show size and route of cable and conduits.
4. Delegated-Design Submittal: For smoke and heat detectors indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - a. Drawings showing the location of each smoke and heat detector, ratings of each, and installation details as needed to comply with listing conditions of the detector.
  - b. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting the spacing and sensitivity of detection, complying with NFPA 72.
5. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
6. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For fire-alarm control unit, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
  - a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  - b. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  - c. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
7. Field quality-control reports.
8. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire-alarm systems and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Deliver copies to authorities having jurisdiction and include the following:
  - a. Comply with the "Records" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72.
  - b. Provide "Record of Completion Documents" according to NFPA 72 article "Permanent Records" in the "Records" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter.
  - c. Record copy of site-specific software.
  - d. Provide "Maintenance, Inspection and Testing Records" according to NFPA 72 article of the same name and include the following:
    - 1) Frequency of testing of installed components.
    - 2) Frequency of inspection of installed components.
    - 3) Requirements and recommendations related to results of maintenance.
    - 4) Manufacturer's user training manuals.
  - e. Manufacturer's required maintenance related to system warranty requirements.
  - f. Abbreviated operating instructions for mounting at fire-alarm control unit.
  - g. Copy of NFPA 25.
9. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:
  - a. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
  - b. Program Software Backup: On magnetic media or compact disk, complete with data files.
  - c. Device address list.
  - d. Printout of software application and graphic screens.



G. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications: Personnel shall be trained and certified by manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.
2. Installer Qualifications: Installation shall be by personnel certified by NICET as fire-alarm Level II **OR** Level III **OR** Level IV, **as directed**, technician.
3. Source Limitations for Fire-Alarm System and Components: Obtain fire-alarm system from single source from single manufacturer. Components shall be compatible with, and operate as, an extension of existing system.
4. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
5. NFPA Certification: Obtain certification according to NFPA 72 by an NRTL.
6. NFPA Certification: Obtain certification according to NFPA 72 by a UL-listed alarm company.
7. NFPA Certification: Obtain certification according to NFPA 72 in the form of a placard by an FMG-approved alarm company.
8. NFPA Certification: Obtain certification according to NFPA 72 by agency having jurisdiction.

H. Project Conditions

1. Interruption of Existing Fire-Alarm Service: Do not interrupt fire-alarm service to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary guard service according to requirements indicated:
  - a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of fire-alarm service.
  - b. Do not proceed with interruption of fire-alarm service without the Owner written permission.

I. Sequencing And Scheduling

1. Existing Fire-Alarm Equipment: Maintain existing equipment fully operational until new equipment has been tested and accepted. As new equipment is installed, label it "NOT IN SERVICE" until it is accepted. Remove labels from new equipment when put into service and label existing fire-alarm equipment "NOT IN SERVICE" until removed from the building.
2. Equipment Removal: After acceptance of new fire-alarm system, remove existing disconnected fire-alarm equipment and wiring.

J. Software Service Agreement

1. Comply with UL 864.
2. Technical Support: Beginning with Final Completion, provide software support for two years.
3. Upgrade Service: Update software to latest version at Project completion. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Final Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system. Upgrade shall include new or revised licenses for use of software.
  - a. Provide 30 days' notice to the Owner to allow scheduling and access to system and to allow the Owner to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Systems Operational Description

1. Fire-alarm signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and systems, **as directed**:
  - a. Manual stations.
  - b. Heat detectors.
  - c. Flame detectors.
  - d. Smoke detectors.
  - e. Duct smoke detectors.
  - f. Verified automatic alarm operation of smoke detectors.
  - g. Automatic sprinkler system water flow.
  - h. Heat detectors in elevator shaft and pit.



- i. Fire-extinguishing system operation.
- j. Fire standpipe system.
- 2. Fire-alarm signal shall initiate the following actions:
  - a. Continuously operate alarm notification appliances.
  - b. Identify alarm at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators, **as directed**.
  - c. Transmit an alarm signal to the remote alarm receiving station.
  - d. Unlock electric door locks in designated egress paths.
  - e. Release fire and smoke doors held open by magnetic door holders.
  - f. Activate voice/alarm communication system.
  - g. Switch heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning equipment controls to fire-alarm mode.
  - h. Activate smoke-control system (smoke management) at firefighter smoke-control system panel.
  - i. Activate stairwell and elevator-shaft pressurization systems.
  - j. Close smoke dampers in air ducts of designated air-conditioning duct systems.
  - k. Recall elevators to primary or alternate recall floors.
  - l. Activate emergency lighting control.
  - m. Activate emergency shutoffs for gas and fuel supplies.
  - n. Record events in the system memory.
  - o. Record events by the system printer.
- 3. Supervisory signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:
  - a. Valve supervisory switch.
  - b. Low-air-pressure switch of a dry-pipe sprinkler system.
  - c. Elevator shunt-trip supervision.
- 4. System trouble signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:
  - a. Open circuits, shorts, and grounds in designated circuits.
  - b. Opening, tampering with, or removing alarm-initiating and supervisory signal-initiating devices.
  - c. Loss of primary power at fire-alarm control unit.
  - d. Ground or a single break in fire-alarm control unit internal circuits.
  - e. Abnormal ac voltage at fire-alarm control unit.
  - f. Break in standby battery circuitry.
  - g. Failure of battery charging.
  - h. Abnormal position of any switch at fire-alarm control unit or annunciator.
  - i. Fire-pump power failure, including a dead-phase or phase-reversal condition.
  - j. Low-air-pressure switch operation on a dry-pipe or preaction sprinkler system.
- 5. System Trouble and Supervisory Signal Actions: Initiate notification appliance and annunciate at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators, **as directed**. Record the event on system printer.

#### B. Fire-Alarm Control Unit

- 1. General Requirements for Fire-Alarm Control Unit:
  - a. Field-programmable, microprocessor-based, modular, power-limited design with electronic modules, complying with UL 864 and listed and labeled by an NRTL.
    - 1) System software and programs shall be held in flash electrically erasable programmable read-only memory (EEPROM), retaining the information through failure of primary and secondary power supplies.
    - 2) Include a real-time clock for time annotation of events on the event recorder and printer.
  - b. Addressable initiation devices that communicate device identity and status.
    - 1) Smoke sensors shall additionally communicate sensitivity setting and allow for adjustment of sensitivity at fire-alarm control unit, **as directed**.
    - 2) Temperature sensors shall additionally test for and communicate the sensitivity range of the device.
  - c. Addressable control circuits for operation of mechanical equipment.



2. Alphanumeric Display and System Controls: Arranged for interface between human operator at fire-alarm control unit and addressable system components including annunciation and supervision. Display alarm, supervisory, and component status messages and the programming and control menu.
  - a. Annunciator and Display: Liquid-crystal type, 1 **OR** 2 **OR** 3, **as directed**, line(s) of 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, characters, minimum.
  - b. Keypad: Arranged to permit entry and execution of programming, display, and control commands and to indicate control commands to be entered into the system for control of smoke-detector sensitivity and other parameters, **as directed**.
3. Circuits:
  - a. Initiating Device, Notification Appliance, and Signaling Line Circuits: NFPA 72, Class A.
    - 1) Initiating Device Circuits: Style D **OR** Style E, **as directed**.
    - 2) Notification Appliance Circuits: Style Z.
    - 3) Signaling Line Circuits: Style 2 **OR** Style 5 **OR** Style 6 **OR** Style 7, **as directed**.
    - 4) Install no more than 50 addressable devices on each signaling line circuit.
  - b. Initiating Device, Notification Appliance, and Signaling Line Circuits: NFPA 72, Class B.
    - 1) Initiating Device Circuits: Style A **OR** Style B **OR** Style C, **as directed**.
    - 2) Notification Appliance Circuits: Style W **OR** Style X **OR** Style Y, **as directed**.
    - 3) Signaling Line Circuits: Style 0.5 **OR** Style 1 **OR** Style 3 **OR** Style 3.5 **OR** Style 4 **OR** Style 4.5, **as directed**.
    - 4) Install no more than 50 addressable devices on each signaling line circuit.
  - c. Serial Interfaces: Two RS-232 ports for printers.
4. Stairwell Pressurization: Provide an output signal using an addressable relay to start the stairwell pressurization system. Signal shall remain on until alarm conditions are cleared and fire-alarm system is reset. Signal shall not stop in response to alarm acknowledge or signal silence commands.
  - a. Pressurization starts when any alarm is received at fire-alarm control unit.
  - b. Alarm signals from smoke detectors at pressurization air supplies have a higher priority than other alarm signals that start the system.
5. Smoke-Alarm Verification:
  - a. Initiate audible and visible indication of an "alarm-verification" signal at fire-alarm control unit.
  - b. Activate an NRTL-listed and -approved "alarm-verification" sequence at fire-alarm control unit and detector.
  - c. Record events by the system printer.
  - d. Sound general alarm if the alarm is verified.
  - e. Cancel fire-alarm control unit indication and system reset if the alarm is not verified.
6. Notification Appliance Circuit: Operation shall sound in a <Insert pattern>.
7. Elevator Recall:
  - a. Smoke detectors at the following locations shall initiate automatic elevator recall. Alarm-initiating devices, except those listed, shall not start elevator recall, **as directed**.
    - 1) Elevator lobby detectors except the lobby detector on the designated floor.
    - 2) Smoke detector in elevator machine room.
    - 3) Smoke detectors in elevator hoistway.
  - b. Elevator lobby detectors located on the designated recall floors shall be programmed to move the cars to the alternate recall floor.
  - c. Water-flow alarm connected to sprinkler in an elevator shaft and elevator machine room shall shut down elevators associated with the location without time delay.
    - 1) Water-flow switch associated with the sprinkler in the elevator pit may have a delay to allow elevators to move to the designated floor.
8. Door Controls: Door hold-open devices that are controlled by smoke detectors at doors in smoke barrier walls shall be **OR** not be, **as directed**, connected to fire-alarm system.
9. Remote Smoke-Detector Sensitivity Adjustment: Controls shall select specific addressable smoke detectors for adjustment, display their current status and sensitivity settings, and change those settings. Allow controls to be used to program repetitive, time-scheduled, and automated changes in sensitivity of specific detector groups. Record sensitivity adjustments and sensitivity-



adjustment schedule changes in system memory, and print out the final adjusted values on system printer.

10. Transmission to Remote Alarm Receiving Station: Automatically transmit alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals to a remote alarm station.
11. Voice/Alarm Signaling Service: Central emergency communication system with redundant microphones, preamplifiers, amplifiers, and tone generators provided in a separate cabinet located in the fire command center **OR** as a special module that is part of fire-alarm control unit, **as directed**.
  - a. Indicated number of alarm channels for automatic, simultaneous transmission of different announcements to different zones or for manual transmission of announcements by use of the central-control microphone. Amplifiers shall comply with UL 1711 and be listed by an NRTL.
    - 1) Allow the application of and evacuation signal to indicated number of zones and, at same time, allow voice paging to the other zones selectively or in any combination.
    - 2) Programmable tone and message sequence selection.
    - 3) Standard digitally recorded messages for "Evacuation" and "All Clear."
    - 4) Generate tones to be sequenced with audio messages of type recommended by NFPA 72 and that are compatible with tone patterns of notification appliance circuits of fire-alarm control unit.
  - b. Status Annunciator: Indicate the status of various voice/alarm speaker zones and the status of firefighters' two-way telephone communication zones.
  - c. Preamplifiers, amplifiers, and tone generators shall automatically transfer to backup units, on primary equipment failure.
12. Printout of Events: On receipt of signal, print alarm, supervisory, and trouble events. Identify zone, device, and function. Include type of signal (alarm, supervisory, or trouble) and date and time of occurrence. Differentiate alarm signals from all other printed indications. Also print system reset event, including same information for device, location, date, and time. Commands initiate the printing of a list of existing alarm, supervisory, and trouble conditions in the system and a historical log of events.
13. Primary Power: 24-V dc obtained from 120-V ac service and a power-supply module. Initiating devices, notification appliances, signaling lines, trouble signals, supervisory signals **OR** supervisory and digital alarm communicator transmitters **OR** digital alarm radio transmitters, **as directed**, shall be powered by 24-V dc source.
  - a. Alarm current draw of entire fire-alarm system shall not exceed 80 percent of the power-supply module rating.
14. Secondary Power: 24-V dc supply system with batteries, automatic battery charger, and automatic transfer switch.
  - a. Batteries: Sealed lead calcium **OR** Sealed, valve-regulated, recombinant lead acid **OR** Vented, wet-cell pocket, plate nickel cadmium, **as directed**.
15. Instructions: Computer printout or typewritten instruction card mounted behind a plastic or glass cover in a stainless-steel or aluminum frame. Include interpretation and describe appropriate response for displays and signals. Briefly describe the functional operation of the system under normal, alarm, and trouble conditions.

#### C. Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes

1. General Requirements for Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes: Comply with UL 38. Boxes shall be finished in red with molded, raised-letter operating instructions in contrasting color; shall show visible indication of operation; and shall be mounted on recessed outlet box. If indicated as surface mounted, provide manufacturer's surface back box.
  - a. Single-action mechanism, breaking-glass or plastic-rod **OR** pull-lever, **as directed**, type; with integral addressable module arranged to communicate manual-station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
  - b. Double-action mechanism requiring two actions to initiate an alarm, breaking-glass or plastic-rod **OR** pull-lever, **as directed**, type; with integral addressable module arranged to communicate manual-station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.





- c. Station Reset: Key- or wrench-operated switch.
  - d. Indoor Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated clear plastic enclosure hinged at the top to permit lifting for access to initiate an alarm. Lifting the cover actuates an integral battery-powered audible horn intended to discourage false-alarm operation.
  - e. Weatherproof Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated clear plastic enclosure hinged at the top to permit lifting for access to initiate an alarm.
- D. System Smoke Detectors
- 1. General Requirements for System Smoke Detectors:
    - a. Comply with UL 268; operating at 24-V dc, nominal.
    - b. Detectors shall be four **OR** two, **as directed**, -wire type.
    - c. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
    - d. Base Mounting: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a twist-lock module that connects to a fixed base. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection to building wiring.
    - e. Self-Restoring: Detectors do not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
    - f. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type indicating detector has operated and power-on status, **as directed**.
    - g. Remote Control: Unless otherwise indicated, detectors shall be analog-addressable type, individually monitored at fire-alarm control unit for calibration, sensitivity, and alarm condition and individually adjustable for sensitivity by fire-alarm control unit.
      - 1) Rate-of-rise temperature characteristic shall be selectable at fire-alarm control unit for 15 or 20 deg F (8 or 11 deg C) per minute.
      - 2) Fixed-temperature sensing shall be independent of rate-of-rise sensing and shall be settable at fire-alarm control unit to operate at 135 or 155 deg F (57 or 68 deg C).
      - 3) Provide multiple levels of detection sensitivity for each sensor.
  - 2. Photoelectric Smoke Detectors:
    - a. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
    - b. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
      - 1) Primary status.
      - 2) Device type.
      - 3) Present average value.
      - 4) Present sensitivity selected.
      - 5) Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
  - 3. Ionization Smoke Detector:
    - a. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
    - b. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
      - 1) Primary status.
      - 2) Device type.
      - 3) Present average value.
      - 4) Present sensitivity selected.
      - 5) Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
  - 4. Duct Smoke Detectors: Photoelectric type complying with UL 268A.
    - a. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
    - b. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
      - 1) Primary status.
      - 2) Device type.
      - 3) Present average value.



- 4) Present sensitivity selected.
  - 5) Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
  - c. Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X; NRTL listed for use with the supplied detector.
  - d. Each sensor shall have multiple levels of detection sensitivity.
  - e. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.
  - f. Relay Fan Shutdown: Rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.
- E. Nonsystem Smoke Detectors
1. Single-Station Smoke Detectors:
    - a. Comply with UL 217; suitable for NFPA 101, residential occupancies; operating at 120-V ac with 9-V dc battery as the secondary power source. Provide with "low" or "missing" battery chirping-sound device, **as directed**.
    - b. Auxiliary Relays: One Form C rated at 0.5 A **OR** Form A and one Form C, both rated at 0.5 A, **as directed**.
    - c. Audible Notification Appliance: Piezoelectric sounder rated at 90 dBA at 10 feet (3 m) according to UL 464.
    - d. Visible Notification Appliance: 177-cd strobe.
    - e. Heat sensor, 135 deg F (57 deg C) combination rate-of-rise, **as directed**, and fixed temperature.
    - f. Test Switch: Push to test; simulates smoke at rated obscuration.
    - g. Tandem Connection: Allow tandem connection of number of indicated detectors; alarm on one detector shall actuate notification on all connected detectors.
    - h. Plug-in Arrangement: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a plug-in module that connects to a fixed base. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection to building wiring.
    - i. Self-Restoring: Detectors shall not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
    - j. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type indicating detector has operated and power-on status, **as directed**.
  2. Single-Station Duct Smoke Detectors:
    - a. Comply with UL 268A; operating at 120-V ac.
    - b. Sensor: LED or infrared light source with matching silicon-cell receiver.
      - 1) Detector Sensitivity: Smoke obscuration between 2.5 and 3.5 percent/foot (0.008 and 0.011 percent/mm) when tested according to UL 268A.
    - c. Base Mounting: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a twist-lock module that connects to a fixed base. The fixed base shall be designed for mounting directly to air duct. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection to building wiring.
      - 1) Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X; NRTL listed for use with the supplied detector.
    - d. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.
    - e. Relay Fan Shutdown: Rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.
- F. Heat Detectors
1. General Requirements for Heat Detectors: Comply with UL 521.
  2. Heat Detector, Combination Type: Actuated by either a fixed temperature of 135 deg F (57 deg C) or a rate of rise that exceeds 15 deg F (8 deg C) per minute unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Mounting: Adapter plate for outlet box mounting **OR** Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases, **as directed**.
    - b. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.



3. Heat Detector, Fixed-Temperature Type: Actuated by temperature that exceeds a fixed temperature of 190 deg F (88 deg C).
    - a. Mounting: Adapter plate for outlet box mounting **OR** Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases, **as directed**.
    - b. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
  4. Continuous Linear Heat-Detector System:
    - a. Detector Cable: Rated detection temperature 155 deg F (68 deg C). NRTL listed for "regular" service and a standard environment. Cable includes two steel actuator wires twisted together with spring pressure, wrapped with protective tape, and finished with PVC outer sheath. Each actuator wire is insulated with heat-sensitive material that reacts with heat to allow the cable twist pressure to short-circuit wires at the location of elevated temperature.
    - b. Control Unit: Two-zone or multizone unit as indicated. Provide same system power supply, supervision, and alarm features as specified for fire-alarm control unit.
    - c. Signals to Fire-Alarm Control Unit: Any type of local system trouble shall be reported to fire-alarm control unit as a composite "trouble" signal. Alarms on each detection zone shall be individually reported to central fire-alarm control unit as separately identified zones.
    - d. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
- G. Notification Appliances
1. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Individually addressed, connected to a signaling line circuit, equipped for mounting as indicated and with screw terminals for system connections.
  2. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Connected to notification appliance signal circuits, zoned as indicated, equipped for mounting as indicated and with screw terminals for system connections.
    - a. Combination Devices: Factory-integrated audible and visible devices in a single-mounting assembly, equipped for mounting as indicated and with screw terminals for system connections.
  3. Chimes, Low-Level Output: Vibrating type, 75-dBA minimum rated output.
  4. Chimes, High-Level Output: Vibrating type, 81-dBA minimum rated output.
  5. Horns: Electric-vibrating-polarized type, 24-V dc; with provision for housing the operating mechanism behind a grille. Comply with UL 464. Horns shall produce a sound-pressure level of 90 dBA, measured 10 feet (3 m) from the horn, using the coded signal prescribed in UL 464 test protocol.
  6. Visible Notification Appliances: Xenon strobe lights comply with UL 1971, with clear or nominal white polycarbonate lens mounted on an aluminum faceplate. The word "FIRE" is engraved in minimum 1-inch- (25-mm-) high letters on the lens.
    - a. Rated Light Output:
      - 1) 15 **OR** 30 **OR** 75 **OR** 110 **OR** 177, **as directed**, cd.  
**OR**  
15/30/75/110 cd, selectable in the field.
    - b. Mounting: Wall mounted unless otherwise indicated.
    - c. For units with guards to prevent physical damage, light output ratings shall be determined with guards in place.
    - d. Flashing shall be in a temporal pattern, synchronized with other units.
    - e. Strobe Leads: Factory connected to screw terminals.
    - f. Mounting Faceplate: Factory finished, red **OR** white, **as directed**.
  7. Voice/Tone Notification Appliances:
    - a. Appliances shall comply with UL 1480 and shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL.
    - b. High-Range Units: Rated 2 to 15 W.
    - c. Low-Range Units: Rated 1 to 2 W.
    - d. Mounting: Flush **OR** Semirecessed **OR** Surface mounted and bidirectional, **as directed**.



- e. Matching Transformers: Tap range matched to acoustical environment of speaker location.
- H. Firefighters' Two-Way Telephone Communication Service
- 1. Dedicated, two-way, supervised, telephone voice communication links between fire-alarm control unit, the fire command center, **as directed**, and remote firefighters' telephone stations. Supervised telephone lines shall be connected to talk circuits by controls in a control module. Provide the following:
    - a. Common-talk type for firefighter use only.
    - b. Selective-talk type for use by firefighters and fire wardens.
    - c. Controls to disconnect phones from talk circuits if too many phones are in use simultaneously.
    - d. Audible Pulse and Tone Generator, and High-Intensity Lamp: When a remote telephone is activated, it causes audible signal to sound and high-intensity lamp to flash.
    - e. Selector panel controls shall provide for simultaneous operation of up to six telephones in selected zones. Indicate ground faults and open or shorted telephone lines on the panel front by individual LEDs.
    - f. Display: Graphic **OR** Liquid-crystal digital, **as directed**, to indicate location of caller.
    - g. Remote Telephone Cabinet: Flush- or surface-mounted cabinet as indicated, factory-standard red finish, with handset.
      - 1) Install one-piece handset to cabinet with vandal-resistant armored cord. Silk-screened or engraved label on cabinet door, designating "Fire Warden Phone" **OR** "Fire Emergency Phone", **as directed**.
      - 2) With "break-glass" type door access lock.
    - h. Remote Telephone Jack Stations: Single-gang, stainless-steel-plate mounted plug, engraved "Fire Warden Phone" **OR** "Fire Emergency Phone", **as directed**.
    - i. Handsets: **<Insert number>** push-to-talk-type sets with noise-canceling microphone, **as directed**, stored in a cabinet adjacent to fire-alarm control unit **OR** in the fire command center, **as directed**.
- I. Magnetic Door Holders
- 1. Description: Units are equipped for wall or floor mounting as indicated and are complete with matching doorplate.
    - a. Electromagnet: Requires no more than 3 W to develop 25-lbf (111-N) holding force.
    - b. Wall-Mounted Units: Flush mounted unless otherwise indicated.
    - c. Rating: 24-V ac or dc.
    - d. Rating: 120-V ac.
  - 2. Material and Finish: Match door hardware.
- J. Remote Annunciator
- 1. Description: Annunciator functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit for alarm, supervisory, and trouble indications. Manual switching functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit, including acknowledging, silencing, resetting, and testing.
    - a. Mounting: Flush **OR** Surface, **as directed**, cabinet, NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - 2. Display Type and Functional Performance: Alphanumeric display and LED indicating lights shall match those of fire-alarm control unit. Provide controls to acknowledge, silence, reset, and test functions for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals.
- K. Addressable Interface Device
- 1. Description: Microelectronic monitor module, NRTL listed for use in providing a system address for alarm-initiating devices for wired applications with normally open contacts.
  - 2. Integral Relay: Capable of providing a direct signal to elevator controller to initiate elevator recall **OR** to circuit-breaker shunt trip for power shutdown, **as directed**.
- L. Digital Alarm Communicator Transmitter



1. Digital alarm communicator transmitter shall be acceptable to the remote central station and shall comply with UL 632 and be listed and labeled by an NRTL.
2. Functional Performance: Unit shall receive an alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal from fire-alarm control unit and automatically capture one **OR** two, **as directed**, telephone line(s) and dial a preset number for a remote central station. When contact is made with central station(s), signals shall be transmitted. If service on either, **as directed**, line is interrupted for longer than 45 seconds, transmitter shall initiate a local trouble signal and transmit the signal indicating loss of telephone line to the remote alarm receiving station over the remaining line. Transmitter shall automatically report telephone service restoration to the central station. If service is lost on both telephone lines, transmitter shall initiate the local trouble signal.
3. Local functions and display at the digital alarm communicator transmitter shall include the following:
  - a. Verification that both telephone lines are available.
  - b. Programming device.
  - c. LED display.
  - d. Manual test report function and manual transmission clear indication.
  - e. Communications failure with the central station or fire-alarm control unit.
4. Digital data transmission shall include the following:
  - a. Address of the alarm-initiating device.
  - b. Address **OR** Zone, **as directed**, of the supervisory signal.
  - c. Address **OR** Zone, **as directed**, of the trouble-initiating device.
  - d. Loss of ac supply or loss of power.
  - e. Low battery.
  - f. Abnormal test signal.
  - g. Communication bus failure.
5. Secondary Power: Integral rechargeable battery and automatic charger.
6. Self-Test: Conducted automatically every 24 hours with report transmitted to central station.

M. Radio Alarm Transmitter

1. Transmitter shall comply with NFPA 1221 and shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL.
2. Comply with 47 CFR 90.
3. Description: Manufacturer's standard commercial product; factory assembled, wired, tested, and ready for installation and operation.
  - a. Packaging: A single, modular, NEMA 250, Type 1 metal enclosure with a tamper-resistant flush tumbler lock.
  - b. Signal Transmission Mode and Frequency: VHF or UHF 2-W power output, coordinated with operating characteristics of the established remote alarm receiving station designated by the Owner.
  - c. Normal Power Input: 120-V ac.
  - d. Secondary Power: Integral-sealed, rechargeable, 12-V battery and charger. Comply with NFPA 72 requirements for battery capacity; submit calculations.
  - e. Antenna: Omnidirectional, coaxial half-wave, dipole type with driving point impedance matched to transmitter and antenna cable output impedance. Wind-load strength of antenna and mounting hardware and supports shall withstand 100 mph (160 km/h), **as directed**, with a gust factor of 1.3 without failure.
  - f. Antenna Cable: Coaxial cable with impedance matched to the transmitter output impedance.
  - g. Antenna-Cable Connectors: Weatherproof.
  - h. Alarm Interface Devices: Circuit boards, modules, and other auxiliary devices, integral to the transmitter, matching fire-alarm and other system outputs to message-generating inputs of the transmitter that produce required message transmissions.
4. Functional Performance: Unit shall receive an alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal from fire-alarm control unit or from its own internal sensors or controls and shall automatically transmit signal along with a unique code that identifies the transmitting station to the remote alarm receiving station. Transmitted messages shall correspond to standard designations for fire-



reporting system to which the signal is being transmitted and shall include separately designated messages in response to the following events or conditions:

- a. Transmitter Low-Battery Condition: Sent when battery voltage is below 85 percent of rated value.
- b. System Test Message: Initiated manually by a test switch within the transmitter cabinet, or automatically at an optionally preselected time, once every 24 hours, with transmission time controlled by a programmed timing device integral to transmitter controls.
- c. Transmitter Trouble Message: Actuated by failure, in excess of one-minute duration, of the transmitter normal power source, derangement of the wiring of the transmitter, or any alarm input interface circuit or device connected to it.
- d. Local Fire-Alarm-System Trouble Message: Initiated by events or conditions that cause a trouble signal to be indicated on the building system.
- e. Local Fire-Alarm-System Alarm Message: Actuated when the building system goes into an alarm state. Identifies device that initiated the alarm.
- f. Local Fire-Alarm-System Supervisory-Alarm Message: Actuated when the building alarm system indicates a supervisory alarm, **as directed**.

N. System Printer

1. Printer shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL as an integral part of fire-alarm system.

O. Device Guards

1. Description: Welded wire mesh of size and shape for the manual station, smoke detector, gong, or other device requiring protection.
  - a. Factory fabricated and furnished by manufacturer of device.
  - b. Finish: Paint of color to match the protected device.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Equipment Installation

1. Comply with NFPA 72 for installation of fire-alarm equipment.
2. Equipment Mounting: Install fire-alarm control unit on concrete base with tops of cabinets not more than 72 inches (1830 mm) above the finished floor. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
  - a. Install seismic bracing. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
  - b. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
  - c. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - d. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - e. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
3. Equipment Mounting: Install fire-alarm control unit on finished floor with tops of cabinets not more than 72 inches (1830 mm) above the finished floor.
  - a. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
4. Install wall-mounted equipment, with tops of cabinets not more than 72 inches (1830 mm) above the finished floor.
  - a. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
5. Connecting to Existing Equipment: Verify that existing fire-alarm system is operational before making changes or connections.
  - a. Connect new equipment to existing control panel in existing part of the building.
  - b. Connect new equipment to existing monitoring equipment at the supervising station.



- c. Expand, modify, and supplement existing control **OR** monitoring, **as directed**, equipment as necessary to extend existing control **OR** monitoring, **as directed**, functions to the new points. New components shall be capable of merging with existing configuration without degrading the performance of either system.
  6. Smoke- or Heat-Detector Spacing:
    - a. Comply with NFPA 72, "Smoke-Sensing Fire Detectors" Section in the "Initiating Devices" Chapter, for smoke-detector spacing.
    - b. Comply with NFPA 72, "Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors" Section in the "Initiating Devices" Chapter, for heat-detector spacing.
    - c. Smooth ceiling spacing shall not exceed 30 feet (9 m)
    - d. Spacing of detectors for irregular areas, for irregular ceiling construction, and for high ceiling areas shall be determined according to Appendix A or Appendix B in NFPA 72.
    - e. HVAC: Locate detectors not closer than 3 feet (1 m) **OR** 5 feet (1.5 m), **as directed**, from air-supply diffuser or return-air opening.
    - f. Lighting Fixtures: Locate detectors not closer than 12 inches (300 mm) from any part of a lighting fixture.
  7. Duct Smoke Detectors: Comply with NFPA 72 and NFPA 90A. Install sampling tubes so they extend the full width of duct.
  8. Heat Detectors in Elevator Shafts: Coordinate temperature rating and location with sprinkler rating and location.
  9. Single-Station Smoke Detectors: Where more than one smoke alarm is installed within a dwelling or suite, they shall be connected so that the operation of any smoke alarm causes the alarm in all smoke alarms to sound.
  10. Remote Status and Alarm Indicators: Install near each smoke detector and each sprinkler water-flow switch and valve-tamper switch that is not readily visible from normal viewing position.
  11. Audible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install not less than 6 inches (150 mm) below the ceiling. Install bells and horns on flush-mounted back boxes with the device-operating mechanism concealed behind a grille.
  12. Visible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install adjacent to each alarm bell or alarm horn and at least 6 inches (150 mm) below the ceiling.
  13. Device Location-Indicating Lights: Locate in public space near the device they monitor.
  14. Fire-Alarm Control Unit: Surface mounted, with tops of cabinets not more than 72 inches (1830 mm) above the finished floor.
  15. Annunciator: Install with top of panel not more than 72 inches (1830 mm) above the finished floor.
  16. Antenna for Radio Alarm Transmitter: Mount to building structure where indicated. Use mounting arrangement and substrate connection that will resist 100-mph (160-km/h), **as directed**, wind load with a gust factor of 1.3 without damage.
- B. Connections
1. For fire-protection systems related to doors in fire-rated walls and partitions and to doors in smoke partitions, comply with requirements in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware". Connect hardware and devices to fire-alarm system.
    - a. Verify that hardware and devices are NRTL listed for use with fire-alarm system in this Section before making connections.
  2. Make addressable connections with a supervised interface device to the following devices and systems. Install the interface device less than 3 feet (1 m) from the device controlled. Make an addressable confirmation connection when such feedback is available at the device or system being controlled.
    - a. Alarm-initiating connection to smoke-control system (smoke management) at firefighter smoke-control system panel.
    - b. Alarm-initiating connection to stairwell and elevator-shaft pressurization systems.
    - c. Smoke dampers in air ducts of designated air-conditioning duct systems.
    - d. Alarm-initiating connection to elevator recall system and components.
    - e. Alarm-initiating connection to activate emergency lighting control.
    - f. Alarm-initiating connection to activate emergency shutoffs for gas and fuel supplies.



- g. Supervisory connections at valve supervisory switches.
  - h. Supervisory connections at low-air-pressure switch of each dry-pipe sprinkler system.
  - i. Supervisory connections at elevator shunt trip breaker.
  - j. Supervisory connections at fire-pump power failure including a dead-phase or phase-reversal condition.
  - k. Supervisory connections at fire-pump engine control panel.
- C. Identification
- 1. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
  - 2. Install framed instructions in a location visible from fire-alarm control unit.
- D. Grounding
- 1. Ground fire-alarm control unit and associated circuits; comply with IEEE 1100. Install a ground wire from main service ground to fire-alarm control unit.
- E. Field Quality Control
- 1. Field tests shall be witnessed by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. Visual Inspection: Conduct visual inspection prior to testing.
      - 1) Inspection shall be based on completed Record Drawings and system documentation that is required by NFPA 72 in its "Completion Documents, Preparation" Table in the "Documentation" Section of the "Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems" Chapter.
      - 2) Comply with "Visual Inspection Frequencies" Table in the "Inspection" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72; retain the "Initial/Reacceptance" column and list only the installed components.
    - b. System Testing: Comply with "Test Methods" Table in the "Testing" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72.
    - c. Test audible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions. Perform the test using a portable sound-level meter complying with Type 2 requirements in ANSI S1.4.
    - d. Test audible appliances for the private operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - e. Test visible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - f. Factory-authorized service representative shall prepare the "Fire Alarm System Record of Completion" in the "Documentation" Section of the "Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems" Chapter in NFPA 72 and the "Inspection and Testing Form" in the "Records" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72.
  - 3. Reacceptance Testing: Perform reacceptance testing to verify the proper operation of added or replaced devices and appliances.
  - 4. Fire-alarm system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  - 5. Prepare test and inspection reports.
  - 6. Maintenance Test and Inspection: Perform tests and inspections listed for weekly, monthly, quarterly, and semiannual periods. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.
  - 7. Annual Test and Inspection: One year after date of Final Completion, test fire-alarm system complying with visual and testing inspection requirements in NFPA 72. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.

END OF SECTION 28 46 21 33





## SECTION 28 46 21 33a - ZONED (DC LOOP) FIRE-ALARM SYSTEM

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for zoned (DC loop) fire alarm system. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Fire-alarm control unit.
  - b. Manual fire-alarm boxes.
  - c. System smoke detectors.
  - d. Nonsystem smoke detectors.
  - e. Heat detectors.
  - f. Notification appliances.
  - g. Magnetic door holders.
  - h. Remote annunciator.
  - i. Digital alarm communicator transmitter.
  - j. Radio alarm transmitter.

#### C. Definitions

1. LED: Light-emitting diode.
2. NICET: National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies.

#### D. System Description

1. Noncoded system, dedicated to fire-alarm service only.

#### E. Submittals

1. General Submittal Requirements:
  - a. Submittals shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction prior to submitting them to the Owner.
  - b. Shop Drawings shall be prepared by persons with the following qualifications:
    - 1) Trained and certified by manufacturer in fire-alarm system design.
    - 2) NICET-certified fire-alarm technician, Level III **OR** Level IV **OR** one who meets the requirements necessary for certification, **as directed**, minimum.
    - 3) Licensed or certified by authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
3. Shop Drawings: For fire-alarm system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - a. Comply with recommendations in the "Documentation" Section of the "Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems" Chapter in NFPA 72.
  - b. Include voltage drop calculations for notification appliance circuits.
  - c. Include battery size calculations.
  - d. Include performance parameters and installation details for each detector, verifying that each detector is listed for the complete range of air velocity, temperature, and humidity possible when air-handling system is operating.
  - e. Include plans, sections, and elevations of heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning ducts, drawn to scale and coordinating installation of duct smoke detectors and access to them. Show critical dimensions that relate to placement and support of sampling tubes, detector housing, and remote status and alarm indicators. Locate detectors according to manufacturer's written recommendations.



- f. Include floor plans to indicate final outlet locations showing zone designation of each device. Show size and route of cable and conduits.
  4. Delegated-Design Submittal: For smoke and heat detectors indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data, signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
    - a. Drawings showing the location of each smoke and heat detector, the ratings of each, and installation details as needed to comply with the listing conditions of the detector.
    - b. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting the spacing and sensitivity of detection, complying with NFPA 72.
  5. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
  6. Field quality-control reports.
  7. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire-alarm systems and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Deliver copies to authorities having jurisdiction, **as directed**, and include the following:
    - a. Comply with the "Records" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72.
    - b. Provide "Record of Completion Documents" according to NFPA 72 article "Permanent Records" in the "Records" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter.
    - c. Record copy of site-specific software.
    - d. Provide "Maintenance, Inspection and Testing Records" according to NFPA 72 article of the same name and include the following:
      - 1) Frequency of testing of installed components.
      - 2) Frequency of inspection of installed components.
      - 3) Requirements and recommendations related to results of maintenance.
      - 4) Manufacturer's user training manuals.
    - e. Manufacturer's required maintenance related to system warranty requirements.
    - f. Abbreviated operating instructions for mounting at fire-alarm control unit.
    - g. Copy of NFPA 25.
- F. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: Personnel shall be trained and certified by manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.
  2. Installer Qualifications: Installation shall be by personnel certified by NICET as fire-alarm Level II **OR** Level III **OR** Level IV **OR** one who meets the requirements necessary for certification, **as directed**, technician.
  3. Source Limitations for Fire-Alarm System and Components: Obtain fire-alarm system from single source from single manufacturer. Components shall be compatible with, and operate as, an extension of existing system.
  4. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- G. Project Conditions
1. Interruption of Existing Fire-alarm Service: Do not interrupt fire-alarm service to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary guard service according to requirements indicated:
    - a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of fire-alarm service.
    - b. Do not proceed with interruption of fire-alarm service without the Owner 's written permission.
- H. Sequencing And Scheduling
1. Existing Fire-Alarm Equipment: Maintain existing equipment fully operational until new equipment has been tested and accepted. As new equipment is installed, label it "NOT IN SERVICE" until it is accepted. Remove labels from new equipment when put into service and label existing fire-alarm equipment "NOT IN SERVICE" until removed from the building.



2. Equipment Removal: After acceptance of new fire-alarm system, remove existing disconnected fire-alarm equipment and wiring.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Systems Operational Description

1. Fire-alarm signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and systems, **as directed**:
  - a. Manual stations.
  - b. Heat detectors.
  - c. Smoke detectors.
  - d. Duct smoke detectors.
  - e. Automatic sprinkler system water flow.
  - f. Fire-extinguishing system operation.
  - g. Fire standpipe system.
2. Fire-alarm signal shall initiate the following actions:
  - a. Continuously operate alarm notification appliances.
  - b. Identify alarm zone at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators, **as directed**.
  - c. Transmit an alarm signal to the remote alarm receiving station.
3. Supervisory signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and systems:
  - a. Valve supervisory switch.
4. System trouble signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:
  - a. Open circuits, shorts, and grounds in designated circuits.
  - b. Opening, tampering with, or removing alarm-initiating and supervisory signal-initiating devices.
  - c. Loss of primary power at fire-alarm control unit.
  - d. Ground or a single break in fire-alarm control unit internal circuits.
  - e. Abnormal ac voltage at fire-alarm control unit.
  - f. Break in standby battery circuitry.
  - g. Failure of battery charging.
  - h. Abnormal position of any switch at fire-alarm control unit or annunciator, **as directed**.
5. System Trouble and Supervisory Signal Actions: Initiate notification appliance and annunciate at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators, **as directed**.

### B. Fire-Alarm Control Unit

1. General Requirements for Fire-Alarm Control Unit:
  - a. Modular, power-limited design with electronic modules, UL 864 listed.
    - 1) Include a real-time clock for time annotation of events.
2. Alphanumeric Display and System Controls: Display alarm, supervisory, and component status messages and the programming and control menu.
  - a. Annunciator and Display: Liquid-crystal type, one line of 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, characters, minimum.
3. Circuits:
  - a. No Fewer Than Five Initiating Device Circuits:
    - 1) Four circuits, NFPA 72, Class B.
    - 2) One circuit(s), NFPA 72, Class A, Style 6
  - b. No Fewer Than Two Notification Appliance Circuits: NFPA 72, Class B, Style Y.
4. Notification Appliance Circuit: Operation shall sound in a **<Insert pattern>**.
5. Door Controls: Door hold-open devices that are controlled by smoke detectors at doors in smoke barrier walls shall be **OR** not be, **as directed**, connected to fire-alarm system.
6. Transmission to Remote Alarm Receiving Station: Automatically transmit alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals to a remote alarm station.
7. Primary Power: 24-V dc obtained from 120-V ac service and a power-supply module. Initiating devices, notification appliances, signaling lines, trouble signals, supervisory signals **OR**



supervisory and digital alarm communicator transmitters **OR** digital alarm radio transmitters, **as directed**, shall be powered by the 24-V dc source.

- a. Alarm current draw of the entire fire-alarm system shall not exceed 80 percent of the power-supply module rating.
8. Secondary Power: 24-V dc supply system with batteries, automatic battery charger, and automatic transfer switch.
  - a. Batteries: Sealed lead calcium **OR** Sealed, valve-regulated, recombinant lead acid **OR** Vented, wet-cell pocket, plate nickel cadmium, **as directed**.
9. Instructions: Computer printout or typewritten instruction card mounted behind a plastic or glass cover in a stainless-steel or aluminum frame. Include interpretation and describe appropriate response for displays and signals. Briefly describe the functional operation of the system under normal, alarm, and trouble conditions.

#### C. Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes

1. General Requirements for Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes: Comply with UL 38. Boxes shall be finished in red with molded, raised-letter operating instructions in contrasting color; shall show visible indication of operation; and shall be mounted on recessed outlet box. If indicated as surface mounted, provide manufacturer's surface back box.
  - a. Single-action mechanism, breaking-glass or plastic-rod **OR** pull-lever, **as directed**, type.
  - b. Double-action mechanism requiring two actions to initiate an alarm, breaking-glass or plastic-rod **OR** pull-lever, **as directed**, type.
  - c. Station Reset: Key- or wrench-operated switch.
  - d. Indoor Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated clear plastic enclosure hinged at the top to permit lifting for access to initiate an alarm. Lifting the cover actuates an integral battery-powered audible horn intended to discourage false-alarm operation.
  - e. Weatherproof Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated clear plastic enclosure hinged at the top to permit lifting for access to initiate an alarm.

#### D. System Smoke Detectors

1. General Requirements for System Smoke Detectors:
  - a. Operating at 24-V dc, nominal.
  - b. Detectors shall be four **OR** two, **as directed**, -wire type.
  - c. Base Mounting: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a twist-lock module that connects to a fixed base. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection to building wiring.
  - d. Self-Restoring: Detectors do not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
  - e. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type indicating detector has operated and power-on status, **as directed**.
  - f. Provide multiple levels of detection sensitivity for each sensor, with alarm-verification feature, **as directed**.
2. Photoelectric Smoke Detectors: Comply with UL 268.
3. Ionization Smoke Detector: Comply with UL 268.
4. Duct Smoke Detectors: Photoelectric type complying with UL 268A.
  - a. Remote indication and test, **as directed**, station. Operating key switch initiates an alarm test, **as directed**.
  - b. Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X; NRTL listed for use with the supplied detector.
  - c. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.
  - d. Relay Fan Shutdown: Rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.

#### E. Nonsystem Smoke Detectors

1. Single-Station Smoke Detectors:



- a. Comply with UL 217; suitable for NFPA 101, residential occupancies; operating at 120-V ac with 9-V dc battery as the secondary power source. Provide with "low" or "missing" battery chirping-sound device, **as directed**.
  - b. Auxiliary Relays: One Form C rated at 0.5 A **OR** Form A and one Form C, both rated at 0.5 A, **as directed**.
  - c. Audible Notification Appliance: Piezoelectric sounder rated at 90 dBA at 10 feet (3 m) according to UL 464.
  - d. Visible Notification Appliance: 177-cd strobe.
  - e. Heat sensor, 135 deg F (57 deg C) combination rate-of-rise and fixed temperature, **as directed**.
  - f. Test Switch: Push-to-test; simulates smoke at rated obscuration.
  - g. Tandem Connection: Allow tandem connection of number of indicated detectors; alarm on one detector shall actuate notification on all connected detectors.
  - h. Plug-in Arrangement: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a plug-in module that connects to a fixed base. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection to building wiring.
  - i. Self-Restoring: Detectors shall not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
  - j. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type indicating detector has operated and power-on status, **as directed**.
2. Single-Station Duct Smoke Detectors:
- a. Comply with UL 268A; operating at 120-V ac.
  - b. Base Mounting: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a twist-lock module that connects to a fixed base. The fixed base shall be designed for mounting directly to air duct. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection to building wiring.
    - 1) Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X; NRTL listed for use with the supplied detector.
  - c. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.
  - d. Relay Fan Shutdown: Rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.
- F. Heat Detectors
- 1. General Requirements for Heat Detectors: Comply with UL 521.
  - 2. Heat Detector, Combination Type: Actuated by either a fixed temperature of 135 deg F (57 deg C) or a rate of rise that exceeds 15 deg F (8 deg C) per minute unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Mounting: Adapter plate for outlet box mounting **OR** Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases, **as directed**.
  - 3. Heat Detector, Fixed-Temperature Type: Actuated by temperature that exceeds a fixed temperature of 190 deg F (88 deg C).
    - a. Mounting: Adapter plate for outlet box mounting **OR** Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases, **as directed**.
- G. Notification Appliances
- 1. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Connected to notification appliance signal circuits, zoned as indicated, equipped for mounting as indicated and with screw terminals for system connections.
    - a. Combination Devices: Factory-integrated audible and visible devices in a single-mounting assembly, equipped for mounting as indicated and with screw terminals for system connections.
  - 2. Chimes, High-Level Output: Vibrating type, 81-dBA minimum rated output.
  - 3. Horns: Electric-vibrating-polarized type, 24-V dc; with provision for housing the operating mechanism behind a grille. Comply with UL 464. Horns shall produce a sound-pressure level of 90 dBA, measured 10 feet (3 m) from the horn, using the coded signal prescribed in UL 464 test protocol.



4. Visible Notification Appliances: Xenon strobe lights comply with UL 1971, with clear or nominal white polycarbonate lens mounted on an aluminum faceplate. The word "FIRE" is engraved in minimum 1-inch- (25-mm-) high letters on the lens.
    - a. Rated Light Output:
      - 1) Indicated on Drawings.
      - 2) **15 OR 30 OR 75 OR 110 OR 177, as directed, cd.**  
**OR**  
15/30/75/110 cd, selectable in the field.
    - b. Mounting: Indicated on Drawings **OR** Wall mounted, **as directed**.
    - c. For units with guards to prevent physical damage, light output ratings shall be determined with guards in place.
    - d. Flashing shall be in a temporal pattern, synchronized with other units.
    - e. Strobe Leads: Factory connected to screw terminals.
    - f. Mounting Faceplate: Factory finished, red **OR** white, **as directed**.
- H. Magnetic Door Holders
1. Description: Units are equipped for wall or floor mounting as indicated and are complete with matching doorplate.
    - a. Electromagnet: Requires no more than 3 W to develop 25-lbf (111-N) holding force.
    - b. Wall-Mounted Units: Flush mounted unless otherwise indicated.
    - c. Rating: 24-V ac or dc.
    - d. Rating: 120-V ac.
  2. Material and Finish: Match door hardware.
- I. Remote Annunciator
1. Description: Annunciator functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit for alarm, supervisory, and trouble indications. Manual switching functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit, including acknowledging, silencing, resetting, and testing.
    - a. Mounting: Flush **OR** Surface, **as directed**, cabinet, NEMA 250, Type 1.
  2. Display Type and Functional Performance: Alphanumeric display and LED indicating lights shall match those of fire-alarm control unit. Provide controls to acknowledge, silence, reset, and test functions for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals.
- J. Digital Alarm Communicator Transmitter
1. Digital alarm communicator transmitter shall be acceptable to the remote central station and shall comply with UL 632 and be listed and labeled by an NRTL.
  2. Functional Performance: Unit shall receive an alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal from fire-alarm control unit and automatically capture one **OR** two, **as directed**, telephone line(s) and dial a preset number for a remote central station. When contact is made with central station(s), signals shall be transmitted. If service on either, **as directed**, line is interrupted for longer than 45 seconds, transmitter shall initiate a local trouble signal and transmit the signal indicating loss of telephone line to the remote alarm receiving station over the remaining line. Transmitter shall automatically report telephone service restoration to the central station. If service is lost on both telephone lines, transmitter shall initiate the local trouble signal.
  3. Local functions and display at the digital alarm communicator transmitter shall include the following:
    - a. Verification that both telephone lines are available.
    - b. Programming device.
    - c. LED display.
    - d. Manual test report function and manual transmission clear indication.
    - e. Communications failure with the central station or fire-alarm control unit.
  4. Digital data transmission shall include the following:
    - a. Zone of the alarm initiating device.
    - b. Zone of the supervisory signal.
    - c. Zone of the trouble initiating device.



- d. Loss of ac supply or loss of power.
  - e. Low battery.
  - f. Abnormal test signal.
  - g. Communication bus failure.
  - 5. Secondary Power: Integral rechargeable battery and automatic charger.
  - 6. Self-Test: Conducted automatically every 24 hours with report transmitted to central station.
- K. Radio Alarm Transmitter
- 1. Transmitter shall comply with NFPA 1221 and shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL.
  - 2. Comply with 47 CFR 90.
  - 3. Description: Manufacturer's standard commercial product; factory assembled, wired, tested, and ready for installation and operation.
    - a. Packaging: A single, modular, NEMA 250, Type 1 metal enclosure with a tamper-resistant flush tumbler lock.
    - b. Signal Transmission Mode and Frequency: VHF or UHF 2-W power output, coordinated with operating characteristics of the established remote alarm receiving station designated by the Owner.
    - c. Normal Power Input: 120-V ac.
    - d. Secondary Power: Integral-sealed, rechargeable, 12-V battery and charger. Comply with NFPA 72 requirements for battery capacity; submit calculations.
    - e. Antenna: Omnidirectional, coaxial half-wave, dipole type with driving point impedance matched to transmitter and antenna cable output impedance. Wind-load strength of antenna and mounting hardware and supports shall withstand 100 mph (160 km/h) with a gust factor of 1.3 without failure.
    - f. Antenna Cable: Coaxial cable with impedance matched to the transmitter output impedance.
    - g. Antenna-Cable Connectors: Weatherproof.
    - h. Alarm Interface Devices: Circuit boards, modules, and other auxiliary devices, integral to the transmitter, matching fire-alarm and other system outputs to message-generating inputs of the transmitter that produce required message transmissions.
  - 4. Functional Performance: Unit shall receive an alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal from fire-alarm control unit or from its own internal sensors or controls and shall automatically transmit signal along with a unique code that identifies the transmitting station to the remote alarm receiving station. Transmitted messages shall correspond to standard designations for fire-reporting system to which the signal is being transmitted and shall include separately designated messages in response to the following events or conditions:
    - a. Transmitter Low-Battery Condition: Sent when battery voltage is below 85 percent of rated value.
    - b. System Test Message: Initiated manually by a test switch within the transmitter cabinet, or automatically at an optionally preselected time, once every 24 hours, with transmission time controlled by a programmed timing device integral to transmitter controls.
    - c. Transmitter Trouble Message: Actuated by failure, in excess of one-minute duration, of the transmitter normal power source, derangement of the wiring of the transmitter, or any alarm input interface circuit or device connected to it.
    - d. Local Fire-Alarm-System Trouble Message: Initiated by events or conditions that cause a trouble signal to be indicated on the building system.
    - e. Local Fire-Alarm-System Alarm Message: Actuated when the building system goes into an alarm state. Identifies device that initiated the alarm.
    - f. Local Fire-Alarm-System Supervisory-Alarm Message: Actuated when the building alarm system indicates a supervisory alarm, **as directed**.
- L. Device Guards
- 1. Description: Welded wire mesh of size and shape for the manual station, smoke detector, gong, or other device requiring protection.
    - a. Factory fabricated and furnished by manufacturer of the device.
    - b. Finish: Paint of color to match the protected device.



### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Equipment Installation

1. Comply with NFPA 72 for installation of fire-alarm equipment.
2. Connecting to Existing Equipment: Verify that existing fire-alarm system is operational before making changes or connections.
  - a. Connect new equipment to the existing control panel in the existing part of the building.
  - b. Connect new equipment to the existing monitoring equipment at the supervising station.
  - c. Expand, modify, and supplement the existing control **OR** monitoring, **as directed**, equipment as necessary to extend the existing control **OR** monitoring, **as directed**, functions to the new points. New components shall be capable of merging with the existing configuration without degrading the performance of either system.
3. Smoke- or Heat-Detector Spacing:
  - a. Comply with NFPA 72, "Smoke-Sensing Fire Detectors" Section in the "Initiating Devices" Chapter, for smoke-detector spacing.
  - b. Comply with NFPA 72, "Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors" Section in the "Initiating Devices" Chapter, for heat-detector spacing.
  - c. Smooth ceiling spacing shall not exceed 30 feet (9 m), **as directed**.
  - d. Spacing of detectors for irregular areas, for irregular ceiling construction, and for high ceiling areas shall be determined according to Appendix A or Appendix B, **as directed**, in NFPA 72.
  - e. HVAC: Locate detectors not closer than 3 feet (1 m) **OR** 5 feet (1.5 m), **as directed**, from air-supply diffuser or return-air opening.
  - f. Lighting Fixtures: Locate detectors not closer than 12 inches (300 mm) from any part of a lighting fixture.
4. Duct Smoke Detectors: Comply with NFPA 72 and NFPA 90A. Install sampling tubes so they extend the full width of duct.
5. Heat Detectors in Elevator Shafts: Coordinate temperature rating and location with sprinkler rating and location.
6. Single-Station Smoke Detectors: Where more than one smoke alarm is installed within a dwelling or suite, they shall be connected so that the operation of any smoke alarm causes the alarm in all smoke alarms to sound.
7. Remote Status and Alarm Indicators: Install near each smoke detector and each sprinkler water-flow switch and valve-tamper switch that is not readily visible from normal viewing position.
8. Audible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install not less than 6 inches (150 mm) below the ceiling. Install bells and horns on flush-mounted back boxes with the device-operating mechanism concealed behind a grille.
9. Visible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install adjacent to each alarm bell or alarm horn and at least 6 inches (150 mm) below the ceiling.
10. Device Location-Indicating Lights: Locate in public space near the device they monitor.
11. Fire-Alarm Control Unit: Surface mounting, with tops of cabinets not more than 72 inches (1830 mm) above the finished floor.
12. Annunciator: Install with top of panel not more than 72 inches (1830 mm) above the finished floor.
13. Antenna for Radio Alarm Transmitter: Mount to building structure where indicated. Use mounting arrangement and substrate connection that will resist 100-mph (160-km/h), **as directed**, wind load with a gust factor of 1.3 without damage.

#### B. Connections

1. For fire-protection systems related to doors in fire-rated walls and partitions and to doors in smoke partitions, comply with requirements in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware". Connect hardware and devices to fire-alarm system.
  - a. Verify that hardware and devices are NRTL listed for use with fire-alarm system in this Section before making connections.





2. Connect supervised interface devices to the following devices and systems. Install the interface device less than 3 feet (1 m) from the device controlled.
  - a. Smoke dampers in air ducts of designated air-conditioning duct systems.
  - b. Supervisory connections at valve supervisory switches.
  - c. Supervisory connections at fire-pump power failure including a dead-phase or phase-reversal condition.
  - d. Supervisory connections at fire-pump engine control panel.
- C. Identification
  1. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
  2. Install framed instructions in a location visible from fire-alarm control unit.
- D. Grounding
  1. Ground fire-alarm control unit and associated circuits; comply with IEEE 1100. Install a ground wire from main service ground to fire-alarm control unit.
- E. Field Quality Control
  1. Field tests shall be witnessed by authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. Visual Inspection: Conduct the visual inspection prior to testing.
      - 1) Inspection shall be based on completed Record Drawings and system documentation that is required by NFPA 72 in its "Completion Documents, Preparation" Table in the "Documentation" Section of the "Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems" Chapter.
      - 2) Comply with "Visual Inspection Frequencies" Table in the "Inspection" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72; retain the "Initial/Reacceptance" column and list only the installed components.
    - b. System Testing: Comply with "Test Methods" Table in the "Testing" Section of the "Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72.
    - c. Test audible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions. Perform the test using a portable sound-level meter complying with Type 2 requirements in ANSI S1.4.
    - d. Test visible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - e. Factory-authorized service representative shall prepare the "Fire Alarm System Record of Completion" in the "Documentation" Section of the "Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems" Chapter in NFPA 72 and the "Inspection and Testing Form" in the "Records" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72.
  3. Reacceptance Testing: Perform reacceptance testing to verify the proper operation of added or replaced devices and appliances.
  4. Fire-alarm system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  5. Prepare test and inspection reports.
  6. Maintenance Test and Inspection: Perform tests and inspections listed for weekly, monthly, quarterly, and semiannual periods. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.
  7. Annual Test and Inspection: One year after date of Final Completion, test fire-alarm system complying with the visual and testing inspection requirements in NFPA 72. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.

END OF SECTION 28 46 21 33a



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 31 01 20 00 - EARTHWORK

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for earthwork. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Preparing subgrades for slabs-on-grade, walks, pavements, turf and grasses, and plants.
  - b. Excavating and backfilling for buildings and structures.
  - c. Drainage course for concrete slabs-on-grade.
  - d. Subbase course for concrete walks and pavements.
  - e. Subbase course and base course for asphalt paving.
  - f. Subsurface drainage backfill for walls and trenches.
  - g. Excavating and backfilling trenches for utilities and pits for buried utility structures.
  - h. Excavating well hole to accommodate elevator-cylinder assembly.

#### C. Definitions

1. Backfill: Soil material or controlled low-strength material used to fill an excavation.
  - a. Initial Backfill: Backfill placed beside and over pipe in a trench, including haunches to support sides of pipe.
  - b. Final Backfill: Backfill placed over initial backfill to fill a trench.
2. Base Course: Aggregate layer placed between the subbase course and hot-mix asphalt paving.
3. Bedding Course: Aggregate layer placed over the excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.
4. Borrow Soil: Satisfactory soil imported from off-site for use as fill or backfill.
5. Drainage Course: Aggregate layer supporting the slab-on-grade that also minimizes upward capillary flow of pore water.
6. Excavation: Removal of material encountered above subgrade elevations and to lines and dimensions indicated.
  - a. Authorized Additional Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions as directed by the Owner. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.
  - b. Bulk Excavation: Excavation more than 10 feet (3 m) in width and more than 30 feet (9 m) in length.
  - c. Unauthorized Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions without direction by the Owner. Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work directed by the Owner, shall be without additional compensation.
7. Fill: Soil materials used to raise existing grades.
8. Rock: Rock material in beds, ledges, unstratified masses, conglomerate deposits, and boulders of rock material that exceed 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m) for bulk excavation or 3/4 cu. yd. (0.57 cu. m) for footing, trench, and pit excavation that cannot be removed by rock excavating equipment equivalent to the following in size and performance ratings, without systematic drilling, ram hammering, ripping, or blasting, when permitted:
  - a. Excavation of Footings, Trenches, and Pits: Late-model, track-mounted hydraulic excavator; equipped with a 42-inch- (1065-mm-) wide, maximum, short-tip-radius rock bucket; rated at not less than 138-hp (103-kW) flywheel power with bucket-curling force of not less than 28,700 lbf (128 kN) and stick-crowd force of not less than 18,400 lbf (82 kN) with extra-long reach boom; measured according to SAE J-1179.



- b. Bulk Excavation: Late-model, track-mounted loader; rated at not less than 230-hp (172-kW) flywheel power and developing a minimum of 47,992-lbf (213.3-kN) breakout force with a general-purpose bare bucket; measured according to SAE J-732.
- 9. If Standard Penetration Values are used to Define Rock: Rock material in beds, ledges, unstratified masses, conglomerate deposits, and boulders of rock material 3/4 cu. yd. (0.57 cu. m) or more in volume that exceed a standard penetration resistance of 100 blows/2 inches (97 blows/50 mm) when tested by a geotechnical testing agency, according to ASTM D 1586.
- 10. Structures: Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man-made stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.
- 11. Subbase Course: Aggregate layer placed between the subgrade and base course for hot-mix asphalt pavement, or aggregate layer placed between the subgrade and a cement concrete pavement or a cement concrete or hot-mix asphalt walk.
- 12. Subgrade: Uppermost surface of an excavation or the top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below subbase, drainage fill, drainage course, or topsoil materials.
- 13. Utilities: On-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables, as well as underground services within buildings.

#### D. Submittals

- 1. Product Data: For each type of the following manufactured products required:
  - a. Geotextiles.
  - b. Controlled low-strength material, including design mixture.
  - c. Geofoam.
  - d. Warning tapes.
- 2. Samples: For the following products, in sizes indicated below:
  - a. Geotextile: 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm).
  - b. Warning Tape: 12 inches (300 mm) long; of each color.
- 3. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- 4. Material Test Reports: For each on-site and borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill as follows:
  - a. Classification according to ASTM D 2487.
  - b. Laboratory compaction curve according to ASTM D 698 **OR** ASTM D 1557, **as directed**.
- 5. Blasting plan approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- 6. Seismic survey report from seismic survey agency.
- 7. Pre-excavation Photographs or Videotape: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by earth moving operations. Submit before earth moving begins.

#### E. Quality Assurance

- 1. Blasting:
  - a. Blasting will not be allowed.

**OR**

Comply with applicable requirements in NFPA 495, "Explosive Materials Code," and prepare a blasting plan reporting the following:

  - 1) Types of explosive and sizes of charge to be used in each area of rock removal, types of blasting mats, sequence of blasting operations, and procedures that will prevent damage to site improvements and structures on Project site and adjacent properties.
  - 2) Seismographic monitoring during blasting operations.
- 2. Seismic Survey Agency: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, experienced in seismic surveys and blasting procedures to perform the following services:
  - a. Report types of explosive and sizes of charge to be used in each area of rock removal, types of blasting mats, sequence of blasting operations, and procedures that will prevent damage to site improvements and structures on Project site and adjacent properties.



- b. Seismographic monitoring during blasting operations.
3. Geotechnical Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 and ASTM D 3740 for testing indicated.
4. Pre-excavation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

F. Project Conditions

1. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during earth moving operations.
  - a. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from the Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
  - b. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by the Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Improvements on Adjoining Property: Authority for performing earth moving indicated on property adjoining the Owner's property will be obtained by the Owner before award of Contract.
3. Do not proceed with work on adjoining property until directed by the Owner.
4. Utility Locator Service: Notify utility locator service **OR** "Miss Utility" **OR** "Call Before You Dig" **OR** "Dig Safe System" **OR** "One Call", **as directed**, for area where Project is located before beginning earth moving operations.
5. Do not commence earth moving operations until temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures, specified in Division 01 Section(s) "Temporary Facilities And Controls" **OR** Division 31 Section(s) "Site Clearing", **as directed**, are in place.
6. Do not commence earth moving operations until plant-protection measures specified in Division 01 Section "Temporary Tree And Plant Protection" are in place.
7. The following practices are prohibited within protection zones:
  - a. Storage of construction materials, debris, or excavated material.
  - b. Parking vehicles or equipment.
  - c. Foot traffic.
  - d. Erection of sheds or structures.
  - e. Impoundment of water.
  - f. Excavation or other digging unless otherwise indicated.
  - g. Attachment of signs to or wrapping materials around trees or plants unless otherwise indicated.
8. Do not direct vehicle or equipment exhaust towards protection zones.
9. Prohibit heat sources, flames, ignition sources, and smoking within or near protection zones.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Soil Materials

1. General: Provide borrow soil materials when sufficient satisfactory soil materials are not available from excavations.
2. Satisfactory Soils: Soil Classification Groups GW, GP, GM, SW, SP, and SM according to ASTM D 2487 **OR** Groups A-1, A-2-4, A-2-5, and A-3 according to AASHTO M 145, **as directed**, or a combination of these groups; free of rock or gravel larger than 3 inches (75 mm) in any dimension, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, and other deleterious matter.
3. Unsatisfactory Soils: Soil Classification Groups GC, SC, CL, ML, OL, CH, MH, OH, and PT according to ASTM D 2487 **OR** Groups A-2-6, A-2-7, A-4, A-5, A-6, and A-7 according to AASHTO M 145, **as directed**, or a combination of these groups.
  - a. Unsatisfactory soils also include satisfactory soils not maintained within 2 percent of optimum moisture content at time of compaction.
4. Subbase Material: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch (37.5-mm) sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 (0.075-mm) sieve.
5. Base Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 95 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch (37.5-mm) sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 (0.075-mm) sieve.



6. Engineered Fill: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch (37.5-mm) sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 (0.075-mm) sieve.
7. Bedding Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; except with 100 percent passing a 1-inch (25-mm) sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 (0.075-mm) sieve.
8. Drainage Course: Narrowly graded mixture of washed, **as directed**, crushed stone, or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 57; with 100 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch (37.5-mm) sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 8 (2.36-mm) sieve.
9. Filter Material: Narrowly graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, or crushed stone and natural sand; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 67; with 100 percent passing a 1-inch (25-mm) sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve.
10. Sand: ASTM C 33; fine aggregate.
11. Impervious Fill: Clayey gravel and sand mixture capable of compacting to a dense state.

#### B. Geotextiles

1. Subsurface Drainage Geotextile: Nonwoven needle-punched geotextile, manufactured for subsurface drainage applications, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation greater than 50 percent; complying with AASHTO M 288 and the following, measured per test methods referenced:
  - a. Survivability: Class 2; AASHTO M 288.
  - b. Apparent Opening Size: No. 40 (0.425-mm) **OR** No. 60 (0.250-mm) **OR** No. 70 (0.212-mm), **as directed**, sieve, maximum; ASTM D 4751.
  - c. Permittivity: 0.5 **OR** 0.2 **OR** 0.1, **as directed**, per second, minimum; ASTM D 4491.
  - d. UV Stability: 50 percent after 500 hours' exposure; ASTM D 4355.
2. Separation Geotextile: Woven geotextile fabric, manufactured for separation applications, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation less than 50 percent; complying with AASHTO M 288 and the following, measured per test methods referenced:
  - a. Survivability: Class 2; AASHTO M 288.
  - b. Apparent Opening Size: No. 60 (0.250-mm) sieve, maximum; ASTM D 4751.
  - c. Permittivity: 0.02 per second, minimum; ASTM D 4491.
  - d. UV Stability: 50 percent after 500 hours' exposure; ASTM D 4355.

#### C. Controlled Low-Strength Material

1. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Self-compacting, low-density, **as directed**, flowable concrete material produced from the following:
  - a. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I **OR** Type II **OR** Type III, **as directed**.
  - b. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C or F.
  - c. Normal-Weight Aggregate: ASTM C 33, 3/4-inch (19-mm) **OR** 3/8-inch (10-mm), **as directed**, nominal maximum aggregate size.
  - d. Foaming Agent (if low-density, controlled low-strength material is required): ASTM C 869.
  - e. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M.
  - f. Air-Entraining Admixture (not required for low-density, controlled low-strength material using foaming agent): ASTM C 260.
2. Produce low-density, controlled low-strength material with the following physical properties:
  - a. As-Cast Unit Weight: 30 to 36 lb/cu. ft. (480 to 576 kg/cu. m) **OR** 36 to 42 lb/cu. ft. (576 to 675 kg/cu. m), **as directed**, at point of placement, when tested according to ASTM C 138/C 138M.
  - b. Compressive Strength: 80 psi (550 kPa) **OR** 140 psi (965 kPa), **as directed**, when tested according to ASTM C 495.

**OR**

Produce conventional-weight, controlled low-strength material with 80-psi (550-kPa) **OR** 140-psi (965-kPa), **as directed**, compressive strength when tested according to ASTM C 495.

#### D. Geofoam



1. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type IV, 1.55-lb/cu. ft. (25-kg/cu. m) density, 25-psi (173-kPa) compressive strength **OR** Type X, 1.30-lb/cu. ft. (21-kg/cu. m) density, 15-psi (104-kPa) compressive strength **OR** Type VI, 1.80-lb/cu. ft. (29-kg/cu. m) density, 40-psi (276-kPa) compressive strength **OR** Type VII, 2.20-lb/cu. ft. (35-kg/cu. m) density, 60-psi (414-kPa) compressive strength **OR** Type V, 3.00-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) density, 100-psi (690-kPa) compressive strength, **as directed**.
2. Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type I, 0.90-lb/cu. ft. (15-kg/cu. m) density, 10-psi (69-kPa) compressive strength **OR** Type VIII, 1.15-lb/cu. ft. (18-kg/cu. m) density, 13-psi (90-kPa) compressive strength **OR** Type II, 1.35-lb/cu. ft. (22-kg/cu. m) density, 15-psi (104-kPa) compressive strength, **as directed**.
  - a. Manufacture molded polystyrene with an inorganic mineral registered with the EPA and suitable for application as a termite deterrent.
3. Rigid Cellular Polystyrene Geofoam: ASTM D 6817, Type EPS 19, 1.15-lb/cu. ft. (18.4-kg/cu. m) density, 5.8-psi (40-kPa) compressive strength at 1 percent deformation; 16-psi (110-kPa) compressive strength at 10 percent deformation **OR** Type EPS 39, 2.40-lb/cu. ft. (38.4-kg/cu. m) density, 15-psi (103-kPa) compressive strength at 1 percent deformation; 40-psi (276-kPa) compressive strength at 10 percent deformation, **as directed**.
4. Connectors: Geofoam manufacturer's multibarbed, galvanized-steel sheet connectors **OR** Deformed steel reinforcing bars, 3/4 inch (19 mm) in diameter, **as directed**.

#### E. Accessories

1. Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, 6 inches (150 mm) wide and 4 mils (0.1 mm) thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility; colored as follows:
  - a. Red: Electric.
  - b. Yellow: Gas, oil, steam, and dangerous materials.
  - c. Orange: Telephone and other communications.
  - d. Blue: Water systems.
  - e. Green: Sewer systems.**OR**  
Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) wide and 4 mils (0.1 mm) thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches (750 mm) deep; colored as follows:
  - f. Red: Electric.
  - g. Yellow: Gas, oil, steam, and dangerous materials.
  - h. Orange: Telephone and other communications.
  - i. Blue: Water systems.
  - j. Green: Sewer systems.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Preparation

1. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earth moving operations.
2. Protect and maintain erosion and sedimentation controls during earth moving operations.
3. Protect subgrades and foundation soils from freezing temperatures and frost. Remove temporary protection before placing subsequent materials.

#### B. Dewatering

1. Prevent surface water and ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding Project site and surrounding area.



2. Protect subgrades from softening, undermining, washout, and damage by rain or water accumulation.
  - a. Reroute surface water runoff away from excavated areas. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Do not use excavated trenches as temporary drainage ditches.

C. Explosives

1. Explosives: Do not use explosives.

**OR**

Explosives: Obtain written permission from authorities having jurisdiction before bringing explosives to Project site or using explosives on Project site.

- a. Perform blasting without damaging adjacent structures, property, or site improvements.
- b. Perform blasting without weakening the bearing capacity of rock subgrade and with the least-practicable disturbance to rock to remain.

D. Excavation, General

1. Unclassified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations regardless of the character of surface and subsurface conditions encountered. Unclassified excavated materials may include rock, soil materials, and obstructions. No changes in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time will be authorized for rock excavation or removal of obstructions.
  - a. If excavated materials intended for fill and backfill include unsatisfactory soil materials and rock, replace with satisfactory soil materials.
  - b. Remove rock to lines and grades indicated to permit installation of permanent construction without exceeding the following dimensions:
    - 1) 24 inches (600 mm) outside of concrete forms other than at footings.
    - 2) 12 inches (300 mm) outside of concrete forms at footings.
    - 3) 6 inches (150 mm) outside of minimum required dimensions of concrete cast against grade.
    - 4) Outside dimensions of concrete walls indicated to be cast against rock without forms or exterior waterproofing treatments.
    - 5) 6 inches (150 mm) beneath bottom of concrete slabs-on-grade.
    - 6) 6 inches (150 mm) beneath pipe in trenches, and the greater of 24 inches (600 mm) wider than pipe or 42 inches (1065 mm) wide.
2. Classified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations. Material to be excavated will be classified as earth and rock. Do not excavate rock until it has been classified and cross sectioned by the Owner. The Contract Sum will be adjusted for rock excavation according to unit prices included in the Contract Documents. Changes in the Contract Time may be authorized for rock excavation.
  - a. Earth excavation includes excavating pavements and obstructions visible on surface; underground structures, utilities, and other items indicated to be removed; together with soil, boulders, and other materials not classified as rock or unauthorized excavation.
    - 1) Intermittent drilling; blasting, if permitted; ram hammering; or ripping of material not classified as rock excavation is earth excavation.
  - b. Rock excavation includes removal and disposal of rock. Remove rock to lines and subgrade elevations indicated to permit installation of permanent construction without exceeding the following dimensions:
    - 1) 24 inches (600 mm) outside of concrete forms other than at footings.
    - 2) 12 inches (300 mm) outside of concrete forms at footings.
    - 3) 6 inches (150 mm) outside of minimum required dimensions of concrete cast against grade.
    - 4) Outside dimensions of concrete walls indicated to be cast against rock without forms or exterior waterproofing treatments.
    - 5) 6 inches (150 mm) beneath bottom of concrete slabs-on-grade.
    - 6) 6 inches (150 mm) beneath pipe in trenches, and the greater of 24 inches (600 mm) wider than pipe or 42 inches (1065 mm) wide.





- E. Excavation For Structures
1. Excavate to indicated elevations and dimensions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm). If applicable, extend excavations a sufficient distance from structures for placing and removing concrete formwork, for installing services and other construction, and for inspections.
    - a. Excavations for Footings and Foundations: Do not disturb bottom of excavation. Excavate by hand to final grade just before placing concrete reinforcement. Trim bottoms to required lines and grades to leave solid base to receive other work.
    - b. Pile Foundations: Stop excavations 6 to 12 inches (150 to 300 mm) above bottom of pile cap before piles are placed. After piles have been driven, remove loose and displaced material. Excavate to final grade, leaving solid base to receive concrete pile caps.
    - c. Excavation for Underground Tanks, Basins, and Mechanical or Electrical Utility Structures: Excavate to elevations and dimensions indicated within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm). Do not disturb bottom of excavations intended as bearing surfaces.
  2. Excavations at Edges of Tree- and Plant-Protection Zones:
    - a. Excavate by hand to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades. Use narrow-tine spading forks to comb soil and expose roots. Do not break, tear, or chop exposed roots. Do not use mechanical equipment that rips, tears, or pulls roots.
    - b. Cut and protect roots according to requirements in Division 01 Section "Temporary Tree And Plant Protection".
- F. Excavation For Walks And Pavements
1. Excavate surfaces under walks and pavements to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades.
- G. Excavation For Utility Trenches
1. Excavate trenches to indicated gradients, lines, depths, and elevations.
    - a. Beyond building perimeter, excavate trenches to allow installation of top of pipe below frost line.
  2. Excavate trenches to uniform widths to provide the following clearance on each side of pipe or conduit. Excavate trench walls vertically from trench bottom to 12 inches (300 mm) higher than top of pipe or conduit unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Clearance: 12 inches (300 mm) each side of pipe or conduit **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  3. Trench Bottoms (if a bedding course is not required under pipe and conduit): Excavate and shape trench bottoms to provide uniform bearing and support of pipes and conduit. Shape subgrade to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits. Remove projecting stones and sharp objects along trench subgrade.
    - a. For pipes and conduit less than 6 inches (150 mm) in nominal diameter, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support pipe and conduit on an undisturbed subgrade.
    - b. For pipes and conduit 6 inches (150 mm) or larger in nominal diameter, shape bottom of trench to support bottom 90 degrees of pipe or conduit circumference. Fill depressions with tamped sand backfill.
    - c. For flat-bottomed, multiple-duct conduit units, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support conduit on an undisturbed subgrade.
    - d. Excavate trenches 6 inches (150 mm) deeper than elevation required in rock or other unyielding bearing material to allow for bedding course.
  4. Trench Bottoms (if a bedding course is required under pipe and conduit): Excavate trenches 4 inches (100 mm) deeper than bottom of pipe and conduit elevations to allow for bedding course. Hand-excavate deeper for bells of pipe.
    - a. Excavate trenches 6 inches (150 mm) deeper than elevation required in rock or other unyielding bearing material to allow for bedding course.
  5. Trenches in Tree- and Plant-Protection Zones:
    - a. Hand-excavate to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades. Use narrow-tine spading forks to comb soil and expose roots. Do not break, tear, or chop exposed roots. Do not use mechanical equipment that rips, tears, or pulls roots.



- b. Do not cut main lateral roots or taproots; cut only smaller roots that interfere with installation of utilities.
  - c. Cut and protect roots according to requirements in Division 01 Section "Temporary Tree And Plant Protection".
- H. Excavation For Elevator Cylinder
- 1. Drill well hole plumb in elevator pit to accommodate installation of elevator-cylinder assembly. Coordinate with applicable requirements for diameter and tolerances in Division 14 Section(s) "Hydraulic Elevators" OR "Hydraulic Freight Elevators", **as directed**.
  - 2. Provide well casing as necessary to retain walls of well hole.
- I. Subgrade Inspection
- 1. Notify the Owner when excavations have reached required subgrade.
  - 2. If the Owner determines that unsatisfactory soil is present, continue excavation and replace with compacted backfill or fill material as directed.
  - 3. Proof-roll subgrade below the building slabs and pavements with a pneumatic-tired and loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons (13.6 tonnes) to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.
    - a. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction, repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph (5 km/h).
    - b. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by the Owner, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.
  - 4. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.
  - 5. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, as directed by the Owner, without additional compensation.
- J. Unauthorized Excavation
- 1. Fill unauthorized excavation under foundations or wall footings by extending bottom elevation of concrete foundation or footing to excavation bottom, without altering top elevation. Lean concrete fill, with 28-day compressive strength of 2500 psi (17.2 MPa), may be used when approved by the Owner.
    - a. Fill unauthorized excavations under other construction, pipe, or conduit as directed by the Owner.
- K. Storage Of Soil Materials
- 1. Stockpile borrow soil materials and excavated satisfactory soil materials without intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
    - a. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.
- L. Backfill
- 1. Place and compact backfill in excavations promptly, but not before completing the following:
    - a. Construction below finish grade including, where applicable, subdrainage, dampproofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
    - b. Surveying locations of underground utilities for Record Documents.
    - c. Testing and inspecting underground utilities.
    - d. Removing concrete formwork.
    - e. Removing trash and debris.
    - f. Removing temporary shoring and bracing, and sheeting.
    - g. Installing permanent or temporary horizontal bracing on horizontally supported walls.
  - 2. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- M. Utility Trench Backfill
- 1. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.



2. Place and compact bedding course on trench bottoms and where indicated. Shape bedding course to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits.
3. Trenches under Footings: Backfill trenches excavated under footings and within 18 inches (450 mm) of bottom of footings with satisfactory soil; fill with concrete to elevation of bottom of footings. Concrete is specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
4. Trenches under Roadways: Provide 4-inch- (100-mm-) thick, concrete-base slab support for piping or conduit less than 30 inches (750 mm) below surface of roadways. After installing and testing, completely encase piping or conduit in a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) of concrete before backfilling or placing roadway subbase course. Concrete is specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
5. Backfill voids with satisfactory soil while removing shoring and bracing.
6. If soil material is required as initial backfill, place and compact initial backfill of subbase material **OR** satisfactory soil, **as directed**, free of particles larger than 1 inch (25 mm) in any dimension, to a height of 12 inches (300 mm) over the pipe or conduit.
  - a. Carefully compact initial backfill under pipe haunches and compact evenly up on both sides and along the full length of piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of piping or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.
7. Controlled Low-Strength Material: If controlled low-strength material is permitted or required as initial backfill, place initial backfill of controlled low-strength material to a height of 12 inches (300 mm) over the pipe or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.
8. If satisfactory soil material is required as final backfill, place and compact final backfill of satisfactory soil to final subgrade elevation.
9. Controlled Low-Strength Material: If controlled low-strength material is permitted or required as final backfill, place final backfill of controlled low-strength material to final subgrade elevation.
10. Install warning tape directly above utilities, 12 inches (300 mm) below finished grade, except 6 inches (150 mm) below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

N. Soil Fill

1. Plow, scarify, bench, or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing material.
2. Place and compact fill material in layers to required elevations as follows:
  - a. Under grass and planted areas, use satisfactory soil material.
  - b. Under walks and pavements, use satisfactory soil material.
  - c. Under steps and ramps, use engineered fill.
  - d. Under building slabs, use engineered fill.
  - e. Under footings and foundations, use engineered fill.
3. Place soil fill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

O. Geofoam Fill

1. Place a leveling course of sand, 2 inches (50 mm) thick, over subgrade. Finish leveling course to a tolerance of 1/2 inch (13 mm) when tested with a 10-foot (3-m) straightedge.
  - a. Place leveling course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
  - b. Install geofoam blocks in layers with abutting edges and ends and with the long dimension of each block at right angles to blocks in each subsequent layer. Offset joints of blocks in successive layers.
  - c. Install geofoam connectors at each layer of geofoam to resist horizontal displacement according to geofoam manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Cover geofoam with subdrainage **OR** separation, **as directed**, geotextile before placing overlying soil materials.

P. Soil Moisture Control

1. Uniformly moisten or aerate subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill soil layer before compaction to within 2 percent of optimum moisture content.
  - a. Do not place backfill or fill soil material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.



- b. Remove and replace, or scarify and air dry, otherwise satisfactory soil material that exceeds optimum moisture content by 2 percent and is too wet to compact to specified dry unit weight.

Q. Compaction Of Soil Backfills And Fills

1. Place backfill and fill soil materials in layers not more than 8 inches (200 mm) in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment, and not more than 4 inches (100 mm) in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.
2. Place backfill and fill soil materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations, and uniformly along the full length of each structure.
3. Compact soil materials to not less than the following percentages of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698 **OR** ASTM D 1557, **as directed**:
  - a. Under structures, building slabs, steps, and pavements, scarify and recompact top 12 inches (300 mm) of existing subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.
  - b. Under walkways, scarify and recompact top 6 inches (150 mm) below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 92 percent.
  - c. Under turf or unpaved areas, scarify and recompact top 6 inches (150 mm) below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 85 percent.
  - d. For utility trenches, compact each layer of initial and final backfill soil material at 85 percent.

R. Grading

1. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free of irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.
  - a. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.
  - b. Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to comply with required surface tolerances.
2. Site Rough Grading: Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to required elevations within the following tolerances:
  - a. Turf or Unpaved Areas: Plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
  - b. Walks: Plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
  - c. Pavements: Plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm).
3. Grading inside Building Lines: Finish subgrade to a tolerance of 1/2 inch (13 mm) when tested with a 10-foot (3-m) straightedge.

S. Subsurface Drainage

1. Subdrainage Pipe: Specified in Division 33 Section "Storm Utility Drainage Piping".
2. Subsurface Drain: If nonwoven geotextile is used in subsurface drainage applications, place subsurface drainage geotextile around perimeter of subdrainage trench. Place a 6-inch (150-mm) course of filter material on subsurface drainage geotextile to support subdrainage pipe. Encase subdrainage pipe in a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) of filter material, placed in compacted layers 6 inches (150 mm) thick, and wrap in subsurface drainage geotextile, overlapping sides and ends at least 6 inches (150 mm).
  - a. Compact each filter material layer to 85 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698 **OR** with a minimum of two passes of a plate-type vibratory compactor, **as directed**.
3. Drainage Backfill: If using free-draining granular backfill against walls, place and compact filter material over subsurface drain, in width indicated, to within 12 inches (300 mm) of final subgrade, in compacted layers 6 inches (150 mm) thick. Overlay drainage backfill with one layer of subsurface drainage geotextile, overlapping sides and ends at least 6 inches (150 mm).
  - a. Compact each filter material layer to 85 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698 **OR** with a minimum of two passes of a plate-type vibratory compactor, **as directed**.



- b. Place and compact impervious fill over drainage backfill in 6-inch- (150-mm-) thick compacted layers to final subgrade.
- T. Subbase And Base Courses Under Pavements And Walks
1. Place subbase course and base course, **as directed**, on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
  2. On prepared subgrade, place subbase course and base course, **as directed**, under pavements and walks as follows:
    - a. Install separation geotextile on prepared subgrade according to manufacturer's written instructions, overlapping sides and ends.
    - b. Place base course material over subbase course under hot-mix asphalt pavement.
    - c. Shape subbase course and base course, **as directed**, to required crown elevations and cross-slope grades.
    - d. Place subbase course and base course, **as directed**, 6 inches (150 mm) or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
    - e. Place subbase course and base course, **as directed**, that exceeds 6 inches (150 mm) in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6 inches (150 mm) thick or less than 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
    - f. Compact subbase course and base course, **as directed**, at optimum moisture content to required grades, lines, cross sections, and thickness to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698 **OR** ASTM D 1557, **as directed**.
  3. Pavement Shoulders: Place shoulders along edges of subbase course and base course, **as directed**, to prevent lateral movement. Construct shoulders, at least 12 inches (300 mm) wide, of satisfactory soil materials and compact simultaneously with each subbase and base, **as directed**, layer to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698 **OR** ASTM D 1557, **as directed**.
- U. Drainage Course Under Concrete Slabs-On-Grade
1. Place drainage course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
  2. On prepared subgrade, place and compact drainage course under cast-in-place concrete slabs-on-grade as follows:
    - a. Install subdrainage geotextile on prepared subgrade according to manufacturer's written instructions, overlapping sides and ends.
    - b. Place drainage course 6 inches (150 mm) or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
    - c. Place drainage course that exceeds 6 inches (150 mm) in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6 inches (150 mm) thick or less than 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
    - d. Compact each layer of drainage course to required cross sections and thicknesses to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.
- V. Field Quality Control
1. Special Inspections: If special inspections are required by code, engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
    - a. Determine prior to placement of fill that site has been prepared in compliance with requirements.
    - b. Determine that fill material and maximum lift thickness comply with requirements.
    - c. Determine, at the required frequency, that in-place density of compacted fill complies with requirements.
  2. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified geotechnical engineering testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
  3. Allow testing agency to inspect and test subgrades and each fill or backfill layer. Proceed with subsequent earth moving only after test results for previously completed work comply with requirements.
  4. Footing Subgrade: At footing subgrades, at least one test of each soil stratum will be performed to verify design bearing capacities. Subsequent verification and approval of other footing



subgrades may be based on a visual comparison of subgrade with tested subgrade when approved by the Owner.

5. Testing agency will test compaction of soils in place according to ASTM D 1556, ASTM D 2167, ASTM D 2922, and ASTM D 2937, as applicable. Tests will be performed at the following locations and frequencies:
  - a. Paved and Building Slab Areas: At subgrade and at each compacted fill and backfill layer, at least one test for every 2000 sq. ft. (186 sq. m) or less of paved area or building slab, but in no case fewer than three tests.
  - b. Foundation Wall Backfill: At each compacted backfill layer, at least one test for every 100 feet (30 m) or less of wall length, but no fewer than two tests.
  - c. Trench Backfill: At each compacted initial and final backfill layer, at least one test for every 150 feet (46 m) or less of trench length, but no fewer than two tests.
6. When testing agency reports that subgrades, fills, or backfills have not achieved degree of compaction specified, scarify and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace soil materials to depth required; recompact and retest until specified compaction is obtained.

W. Protection

1. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.
2. Repair and reestablish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or where they lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.
  - a. Scarify or remove and replace soil material to depth as directed by the Owner; reshape and recompact.
3. Where settling occurs before Project correction period elapses, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional soil material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.
  - a. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to greatest extent possible.

X. Disposal Of Surplus And Waste Materials

1. Remove surplus satisfactory soil and waste materials, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off the Owner's property.  
**OR**  
Transport surplus satisfactory soil to designated storage areas on the Owner's property. Stockpile or spread soil as directed by the Owner.
  - a. Remove waste materials, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off the Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 31 01 20 00



## SECTION 31 05 13 00 - SUBDRAINAGE

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for subdrainage. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Perforated-wall pipe and fittings.
  - b. Drainage conduits.
  - c. Drainage panels.
  - d. Geotextile filter fabrics.

#### C. Submittals

1. Drainage conduits, including rated capacities.
2. Drainage panels, including rated capacities.
3. Geotextile filter fabrics.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Perforated-Wall Pipes And Fittings

1. Perforated PE Pipe and Fittings:
  - a. NPS 6 (DN 150) and Smaller: ASTM F 405 or AASHTO M 252, Type CP; corrugated, for coupled joints.
  - b. NPS 8 (DN 200) and Larger: ASTM F 667; AASHTO M 252, Type CP; or AASHTO M 294, Type CP; corrugated; for coupled joints.
  - c. Couplings: Manufacturer's standard, band type.
2. Perforated PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM D 2729, bell-and-spigot ends, for loose joints.
3. Perforated Clay Pipe and Fittings: ASTM C 700, Standard- and Extra-Strength classes, unglazed, socket-and-spigot ends, for gasketed joints.
  - a. Gaskets: ASTM C 425, rubber.
4. Perforated Concrete Pipe and Fittings: ASTM C 444 (ASTM C 444M), Type 1, and applicable requirements in ASTM C 14 (ASTM C 14M), Class 2, socket-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints.
  - a. Gaskets: ASTM C 443 (ASTM C 443M), rubber.

#### B. Drainage Conduits

1. Molded-Sheet Drainage Conduits: Prefabricated geocomposite with cusped, molded-plastic drainage core wrapped in geotextile filter fabric.
  - a. Nominal Size: 12 inches (305 mm) high by approximately 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    - 1) Minimum In-Plane Flow: 30 gpm (114 L/min.) at hydraulic gradient of 1.0 when tested according to ASTM D 4716.
  - b. Nominal Size: 18 inches (457 mm) high by approximately 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    - 1) Minimum In-Plane Flow: 45 gpm (170 L/min.) at hydraulic gradient of 1.0 when tested according to ASTM D 4716.
  - c. Filter Fabric: PP geotextile.
  - d. Fittings: HDPE with combination NPS 4 and NPS 6 (DN 100 and DN 150) outlet connection.



2. Multipipe Drainage Conduits: Prefabricated geocomposite with interconnected, corrugated, perforated-pipe core molded from HDPE complying with ASTM D 1248 and wrapped in geotextile filter fabric.
  - a. Nominal Size: 6 inches (152 mm) high by approximately 1-1/4 inches (31 mm) thick.
    - 1) Minimum In-Plane Flow: 15 gpm (57 L/min.) at hydraulic gradient of 1.0 when tested according to ASTM D 4716.
  - b. Nominal Size: 12 inches (305 mm) high by approximately 1-1/4 inches (31 mm) thick.
    - 1) Minimum In-Plane Flow: 30 gpm (114 L/min.) at hydraulic gradient of 1.0 when tested according to ASTM D 4716.
  - c. Nominal Size: 18 inches (457 mm) high by approximately 1-1/4 inches (31 mm) thick.
    - 1) Minimum In-Plane Flow: 45 gpm (170 L/min.) at hydraulic gradient of 1.0 when tested according to ASTM D 4716.
  - d. Filter Fabric: Nonwoven, needle-punched geotextile.
  - e. Fittings: HDPE with combination NPS 4 and NPS 6 (DN 100 and DN 150) outlet connection.
  - f. Couplings: HDPE.
3. Single-Pipe Drainage Conduits: Prefabricated geocomposite with perforated corrugated core molded from HDPE complying with ASTM D 3350 and wrapped in geotextile filter fabric.
  - a. Nominal Size: 12 inches (305 mm) high by approximately 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    - 1) Minimum In-Plane Flow: 30 gpm (114 L/min.) at hydraulic gradient of 1.0 when tested according to ASTM D 4716.
  - b. Nominal Size: 18 inches (457 mm) high by approximately 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    - 1) Minimum In-Plane Flow: 45 gpm (170 L/min.) at hydraulic gradient of 1.0 when tested according to ASTM D 4716.
  - c. Filter Fabric: Nonwoven, PP geotextile.
  - d. Fittings: HDPE with combination NPS 4 and NPS 6 (DN 100 and DN 150) outlet connection.
  - e. Couplings: Corrugated HDPE band.
4. Mesh Fabric Drainage Conduits: Prefabricated geocomposite with plastic-filament drainage core wrapped in geotextile filter fabric. Include fittings for bends and connection to drainage piping.
  - a. Nominal Size: 6 inches (2-mm) high by approximately 0.9 inch (23 mm) thick.
    - 1) Minimum In-Plane Flow: 2.4 gpm (9.1 L/min.) at hydraulic gradient of 1.0 when tested according to ASTM D 4716.
  - b. Filter Fabric: Nonwoven geotextile made of PP or polyester fibers or combination of both. Flow rates range from 120 to 200 gpm/sq. ft. (81 to 136 L/s per sq. m) when tested according to ASTM D 4491.
5. Ring Fabric Drainage Conduits: Drainage conduit with HDPE-rings-in-grid-pattern drainage core, for field-applied geotextile filter fabric. Include fittings for bends and connection to drainage piping.
  - a. Nominal Size: 18 inches (0.5 m) high by 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    - 1) Minimum In-Plane Flow: 82 gpm (310 L/min.) at hydraulic gradient of 1.0 when tested according to ASTM D 4716.
  - b. Nominal Size: 36 inches (1 m) high by 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    - 1) Minimum In-Plane Flow: 164 gpm (621 L/min.) at hydraulic gradient of 1.0 when tested according to ASTM D 4716.
  - c. Filter Fabric: Specified in Part 1.2 "Geotextile Filter Fabrics" Article.

#### C. Drainage Panels

1. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panels: Prefabricated geocomposite, 36 to 60 inches (915 to 1525 mm) wide with drainage core faced with geotextile filter fabric.
  - a. Drainage Core: Three-dimensional, nonbiodegradable, molded PP.
    - 1) Minimum Compressive Strength: 10,000 lbf/sq. ft. (479 kPa) **OR** 15,000 lbf/sq. ft. (718 kPa) **OR** 18,000 lbf/sq. ft. (862 kPa) **OR** 21,000 lbf/sq. ft. (1005 kPa), **as directed**, when tested according to ASTM D 1621.





- 2) Minimum In-Plane Flow Rate: 2.8 gpm/ft. (35 L/min. per m) **OR** 7 gpm/ft. (87 L/min. per m) **OR** 15 gpm/ft. (188 L/min. per m), **as directed**, of unit width at hydraulic gradient of 1.0 and compressive stress of 25 psig (172 kPa) when tested according to ASTM D 4716.
- b. Filter Fabric: Nonwoven needle-punched geotextile, manufactured for subsurface drainage, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation greater than 50 percent; complying with the following properties determined according to AASHTO M 288:
  - 1) Survivability: Class 1 **OR** 2 **OR** 3, **as directed**.
  - 2) Apparent Opening Size: No. 40 (0.425-mm) **OR** No. 60 (0.25-mm) **OR** No. 70 (0.212-mm), **as directed**, sieve, maximum.
  - 3) Permittivity: 0.5 **OR** 0.2 **OR** 0.1, **as directed**, per second, minimum.
- c. Filter Fabric: Woven geotextile fabric, manufactured for subsurface drainage, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation less than 50 percent; complying with the following properties determined according to AASHTO M 288:
  - 1) Survivability: Class 1 **OR** 2 **OR** 3, **as directed**.
  - 2) Apparent Opening Size: No. 40 (0.425-mm) **OR** No. 60 (0.25-mm) **OR** No. 70 (0.212-mm) **OR** No. 30 (0.6-mm), **as directed**, sieve, maximum.
  - 3) Permittivity: 0.5 **OR** 0.2 **OR** 0.1 **OR** 0.02, **as directed**, per second, minimum.
- d. Film Backing: Polymeric film bonded to drainage core surface.
2. Mesh Fabric Drainage Panels: Prefabricated geocomposite with drainage core faced with geotextile filter fabric.
  - a. Drainage Core: Open-construction, resilient, approximately 0.4-inch- (10.2-mm-) thick, plastic-filament mesh.
    - 1) Minimum In-Plane Flow Rate: 2.4 gpm/ft. (30 L/min. per m) of unit width at hydraulic gradient of 1.0 and normal pressure of 25 psig (172 kPa) when tested according to ASTM D 4716.
  - b. Filter Fabric: Nonwoven geotextile of PP or polyester fibers or combination of both. Flow rates range from 120 to 200 gpm/sq. ft. (81 to 136 L/s per sq. m) when tested according to ASTM D 4491.
3. Net Fabric Drainage Panels: Prefabricated geocomposite with drainage core faced with geotextile filter fabric.
  - a. Drainage Core: 3-dimensional, PE nonwoven-strand geonet, approximately 0.25-inch- (6-mm-) thick.
    - 1) Minimum In-Plane Flow Rate: 2.4 gpm/ft. (30 L/min. per m) **OR** 5 gpm/ft. (62 L/min. per m), **as directed**, of unit width at hydraulic gradient of 1.0 and normal pressure of 25 psig (172 kPa) when tested according to ASTM D 4716.
  - b. Filter Fabric: Nonwoven geotextile of PP or polyester fibers or combination of both. Flow rates range from 120 to 200 gpm/sq. ft. (81 to 136 L/s per sq. m) when tested according to ASTM D 4491.
4. Ring Fabric Drainage Panels: Drainage-core panel for field application of geotextile filter fabric.
  - a. Drainage Core: 3-dimensional, HDPE rings in grid pattern, approximately 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    - 1) Minimum In-Plane Flow Rate: 40 gpm/ft. (500 L/min. per m) of unit width at hydraulic gradient of 1.0 and normal pressure of 25 psig (172 kPa) when tested according to ASTM D 4716.
5. Fabric-Covered Insulated Drainage Panels: Extruded PS board insulation complying with ASTM C 578; fabricated with shiplap **OR** tongue-and-groove, **as directed**, edges and with one side having grooved drainage channels; unfaced **OR** ; faced with geotextile filter fabric, **as directed**.
  - a. Type IV, 1.6-lb/cu. ft. (26-kg/cu. m) minimum density and 25-psig (172-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
  - b. Type VI, 1.8-lb/cu. ft. (29-kg/cu. m) minimum density and 40-psig (276-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
  - c. Minimum In-Plane Flow Rate: 9 gpm/ft. (112 L/min. per m) of unit width when tested according to ASTM D 4716.



- d. Filter Fabric: Nonwoven geotextile of PP or polyester fibers or combination of both. Flow rates range from 120 to 200 gpm/sq. ft. (81 to 136 L/s per sq. m) when tested according to ASTM D 4491.
6. Noncovered Insulated Drainage Panels: Extruded PS board insulation complying with ASTM C 578; fabricated with rabbeted edges and with one side having ribbed drainage channels.
  - a. Type VI, 1.8-lb/cu. ft. (29-kg/cu. m) minimum density and 40-psig (276-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
  - b. Type VII, 2.2-lb/cu. ft. (35-kg/cu. m) minimum density and 60-psig (414-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
  - c. Minimum In-Plane Flow Rate: 9 gpm/ft. (112 L/min. per m) of unit width when tested according to ASTM D 4716.
7. Expanded PS Insulated Drainage Panels: PS bead board insulation; panels are 4 inches (102 mm) thick by 48 inches (1220 mm) wide and faced with geotextile filter fabric.
  - a. Density: 2 lb/cu. ft. (32 kg/cu. m).
  - b. Compressive Strength: 800 lbf/sq. ft. (38 kPa).
  - c. Minimum In-Plane Flow Rate: 3 gpm/ft. (37 L/min. per m) of unit width when tested according to ASTM D 4716.
  - d. Filter Fabric: Nonwoven geotextile of PP or polyester fibers or combination of both. Flow rates range from 120 to 200 gpm/sq. ft. (81 to 136 L/s per sq. m) when tested according to ASTM D 4491.

#### D. Soil Materials

1. Soil materials are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".

#### E. Waterproofing Felts

1. Material: Comply with ASTM D 226, Type I, asphalt **OR** ASTM D 227, coal-tar, **as directed**, -saturated organic felt.

#### F. Geotextile Filter Fabrics

1. Description: Fabric of PP or polyester fibers or combination of both, with flow rate range from 110 to 330 gpm/sq. ft. (4480 to 13 440 L/min. per sq. m) when tested according to ASTM D 4491.
  - a. Structure Type: Nonwoven, needle-punched continuous filament.
    - 1) Survivability: AASHTO **M 288 Class 2**.
    - 2) Style(s): Flat **OR** sock, **as directed**.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Earthwork

1. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".

#### B. Foundation Drainage Installation

1. Place impervious fill material on subgrade adjacent to bottom of footing after concrete footing forms have been removed. Place and compact impervious fill to dimensions indicated, but not less than 6 inches (150 mm) deep and 12 inches (300 mm) wide.
2. Lay flat-style geotextile filter fabric in trench and overlap trench sides.
3. Place supporting layer of drainage course over compacted subgrade and geotextile filter fabric, to compacted depth of not less than 4 inches (100 mm).
4. Encase pipe with sock-style geotextile filter fabric before installing pipe. Connect sock sections with adhesive or tape.
5. Install drainage piping as indicated in Article 1.3 "Piping Installation" for foundation subdrainage.
6. Add drainage course to width of at least 6 inches (150 mm) on side away from wall and to top of pipe to perform tests.
7. After satisfactory testing, cover drainage piping to width of at least 6 inches (150 mm) on side away from footing and above top of pipe to within 12 inches (300 mm) of finish grade.



8. Install drainage course and wrap top of drainage course with flat-style geotextile filter fabric.
9. Place layer of flat-style geotextile filter fabric **OR** waterproofing felt, **as directed**, over top of drainage course, overlapping edges at least 4 inches (100 mm).
10. Install drainage panels on foundation walls as follows:
  - a. Coordinate placement with other drainage materials.
  - b. Lay perforated drainage pipe at base of footing. Install as indicated in Article 1.3 "Piping Installation."
  - c. Separate 4 inches (100 mm) of fabric at beginning of roll and cut away 4 inches (100 mm) of core. Wrap fabric around end of remaining core.
  - d. Attach panels to wall beginning at subdrainage pipe. Place and secure molded-sheet drainage panels, with geotextile facing away from wall.
11. Place backfill material over compacted drainage course. Place material in loose-depth layers not exceeding 6 inches (150 mm). Thoroughly compact each layer. Final backfill to finish elevations and slope away from building.

C. Underslab Drainage Installation

1. Excavate for underslab drainage system after subgrade material has been compacted but before drainage course has been placed. Include horizontal distance of at least 6 inches (150 mm) between drainage pipe and trench walls. Grade bottom of trench excavations to required slope, and compact to firm, solid bed for drainage system.
2. Lay flat-style geotextile filter fabric in trench and overlap trench sides.
3. Place supporting layer of drainage course over compacted subgrade and geotextile filter fabric, to compacted depth of not less than 4 inches (100 mm).
4. Encase pipe with sock-style geotextile filter fabric before installing pipe. Connect sock sections with adhesive or tape.
5. Install drainage piping as indicated in Part 1.3 "Piping Installation" Article for underslab subdrainage.
6. Add drainage course to width of at least 6 inches (150 mm) on side away from wall and to top of pipe to perform tests.
7. After satisfactory testing, cover drainage piping with drainage course to elevation of bottom of slab, and compact and wrap top of drainage course with flat-style geotextile filter fabric.
8. Install horizontal drainage panels as follows:
  - a. Coordinate placement with other drainage materials.
  - b. Lay perforated drainage pipe at inside edge of footings.
  - c. Place drainage panel over drainage pipe with core side up. Peel back fabric and wrap fabric around pipe. Locate top of core at bottom elevation of floor slab.
  - d. Butt additional panels against other installed panels. If panels have plastic flanges, overlap installed panel with flange.

D. Retaining-Wall Drainage Installation

1. Lay flat-style geotextile filter fabric in trench and overlap trench sides.
2. Place supporting layer of drainage course over compacted subgrade to compacted depth of not less than 4 inches (100 mm).
3. Encase pipe with sock-style geotextile filter fabric before installing pipe. Connect sock sections with adhesive or tape.
4. Install drainage piping as indicated in Article 1.3 "Piping Installation" for retaining-wall subdrainage.
5. Add drainage course to width of at least 6 inches (150 mm) on side away from wall and to top of pipe to perform tests.
6. After satisfactory testing, cover drainage piping to width of at least 6 inches (150 mm) on side away from footing and above top of pipe to within 12 inches (300 mm) of finish grade.
7. Place drainage course in layers not exceeding 3 inches (75 mm) in loose depth; compact each layer placed and wrap top of drainage course with flat-style geotextile filter fabric.
8. Place layer of flat-style geotextile filter fabric **OR** waterproofing felt, **as directed**, over top of drainage course, overlapping edges at least 4 inches (100 mm).
9. Install drainage panels on walls as follows:



- a. Coordinate placement with other drainage materials.
  - b. Lay perforated drainage pipe at base of footing as described elsewhere in this Specification. Do not install aggregate.
  - c. If weep holes are used instead of drainage pipe, cut 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) diameter holes on core side at weep-hole locations. Do not cut fabric.
  - d. Mark horizontal chalk line on wall at a point 6 inches (150 mm) less than panel width above footing bottom. Before marking wall, subtract footing width.
  - e. Separate 4 inches (100 mm) of fabric at beginning of roll and cut away 4 inches (100 mm) of core. Wrap fabric around end of remaining core.
  - f. Attach panel to wall at horizontal mark and at beginning of wall corner. Place core side of panel against wall. Use concrete nails with washers through product. Place nails from 2 to 6 inches (50 to 150 mm) below top of panel, approximately 48 inches (1200 mm) apart. Construction adhesives, metal stick pins, or double-sided tape may be used instead of nails. Do not penetrate waterproofing. Before using adhesives, discuss with waterproofing manufacturer.
  - g. If another panel is required on same row, cut away 4 inches (100 mm) of installed panel core and wrap fabric over new panel.
  - h. If additional rows of panel are required, overlap lower panel with 4 inches (100 mm) of fabric.
  - i. Cut panel as necessary to keep top 12 inches (300 mm) below finish grade.
  - j. For inside corners, bend panel. For outside corners, cut core to provide 3 inches (75 mm) for overlap.
10. Fill to Grade: Place satisfactory soil fill material over compacted drainage course . Place material in loose-depth layers not exceeding 6 inches (150 mm). Thoroughly compact each layer. Fill to finish grade.

#### E. Landscaping Drainage Installation

1. Provide trench width to allow installation of drainage conduit. Grade bottom of trench excavations to required slope, and compact to firm, solid bed for drainage system.
2. Lay flat-style geotextile filter fabric in trench and overlap trench sides.
3. Place supporting layer of drainage course over compacted subgrade and geotextile filter fabric, to compacted depth of not less than 4 inches (100 mm).
4. Install drainage conduits as indicated in Article 1.3 "Piping Installation" for landscaping subdrainage with horizontal distance of at least 6 inches (150 mm) between conduit and trench walls. Wrap drainage conduits without integral geotextile filter fabric with flat-style geotextile filter fabric before installation. Connect fabric sections with adhesive or tape.
5. Add drainage course to top of drainage conduits.
6. After satisfactory testing, cover drainage conduit to within 12 inches (300 mm) of finish grade.
7. Install drainage course and wrap top of drainage course with flat-style geotextile filter fabric.
8. Place layer of flat-style geotextile filter fabric **OR** waterproofing felt, **as directed**, over top of drainage course, overlapping edges at least 4 inches (100 mm).
9. Fill to Grade: Place satisfactory soil fill material over drainage course. Place material in loose-depth layers not exceeding 6 inches (150 mm). Thoroughly compact each layer. Fill to finish grade.

#### F. Piping Installation

1. Install piping beginning at low points of system, true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Bed piping with full bearing in filtering material. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions and other requirements indicated.
  - a. Foundation Subdrainage: Install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at a minimum slope of 0.5 percent and with a minimum cover of 36 inches (915 mm), unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Underslab Subdrainage: Install piping level.
  - c. Plaza Deck Subdrainage: Install piping level.



- d. Retaining-Wall Subdrainage: When water discharges at end of wall into stormwater piping system, install piping level and with a minimum cover of 36 inches (915 mm), unless otherwise indicated.
  - e. Landscaping Subdrainage: Install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at a minimum slope of 0.5 percent and with a minimum cover of 36 inches (915 mm), unless otherwise indicated.
  - f. Lay perforated pipe with perforations down.
  - g. Excavate recesses in trench bottom for bell ends of pipe. Lay pipe with bells facing upslope and with spigot end entered fully into adjacent bell.
2. Use increasers, reducers, and couplings made for different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings being connected. Reduction of pipe size in direction of flow is prohibited.
  3. Install thermoplastic piping according to ASTM D 2321.
- G. Pipe Joint Construction
1. Join perforated PE pipe and fittings with couplings according to ASTM D 3212 with loose banded, coupled, or push-on joints.
  2. Join perforated PVC sewer pipe and fittings according to ASTM D 3212 with loose bell-and-spigot, push-on joints.
  3. Special Pipe Couplings: Join piping made of different materials and dimensions with special couplings made for this application. Use couplings that are compatible with and fit materials and dimensions of both pipes.
- 1.4 Backwater Valve Installation
1. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Division 2 Section "Storm Drainage."
  2. Install horizontal backwater valves in header piping downstream from perforated subdrainage piping.
  3. Install horizontal backwater valves in piping in manholes or pits where indicated.
- B. Cleanout Installation
1. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Division 2 Section "Storm Drainage."
  2. Cleanouts for Foundation, Retaining-Wall, and Landscaping Subdrainage:
    - a. Install cleanouts from piping to grade. Locate cleanouts at beginning of piping run and at changes in direction. Install fittings so cleanouts open in direction of flow in piping.
    - b. In vehicular-traffic areas, use NPS 4 (DN 100) cast-iron soil pipe and fittings for piping branch fittings and riser extensions to cleanout. Set cleanout frames and covers in a cast-in-place concrete anchor, 18 by 18 by 12 inches (450 by 450 by 300 mm) in depth. Set top of cleanout flush with grade. Cast-iron pipe may also be used for cleanouts in nonvehicular-traffic areas.
    - c. In nonvehicular-traffic areas, use NPS 4 (DN 100) cast-iron **OR** PVC, **as directed**, pipe and fittings for piping branch fittings and riser extensions to cleanout. Set cleanout frames and covers in a cast-in-place concrete anchor, 12 by 12 by 4 inches (300 by 300 by 100 mm) in depth. Set top of cleanout plug 1 inch (25 mm) above grade.
  3. Cleanouts for Underslab Subdrainage:
    - a. Install cleanouts and riser extensions from piping to top of slab. Locate cleanouts at beginning of piping run and at changes in direction. Install fittings so cleanouts open in direction of flow in piping.
    - b. Use NPS 4 (DN 100) cast-iron soil pipe and fittings for piping branch fittings and riser extensions to cleanout flush with top of slab.
- C. Connections
1. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Division 2 Section "Storm Drainage." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
  2. Connect low elevations of subdrainage system to building's solid-wall-piping storm drainage system.



3. Where required, connect low elevations of foundation **OR** Underslab, **as directed**, subdrainage to stormwater sump pumps.

D. Identification

1. Arrange for installation of green warning tapes directly over piping. Comply with requirements for underground warning tapes specified in specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".
  - a. Install PE warning tape or detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.
  - b. Install detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground structures.

E. Field Quality Control

1. Tests and Inspections:
  - a. After installing drainage course to top of piping, test drain piping with water to ensure free flow before backfilling.
  - b. Remove obstructions, replace damaged components, and repeat test until results are satisfactory.
2. Drain piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
3. Prepare test and inspection reports.

F. Cleaning

1. Clear interior of installed piping and structures of dirt and other superfluous material as work progresses. Maintain swab or drag in piping and pull past each joint as it is completed. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted pipe at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 31 05 13 00



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
31 05 13 00	31 01 20 00	Earthwork
31 05 16 00	31 01 20 00	Earthwork
31 05 16 00	31 05 13 00	Subdrainage



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





## SECTION 31 11 00 00 - SITE CLEARING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for site clearing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Protecting existing vegetation to remain.
  - b. Removing existing vegetation.
  - c. Clearing and grubbing.
  - d. Stripping and stockpiling topsoil.
  - e. Removing above- and below-grade site improvements.
  - f. Disconnecting, capping or sealing, and removing site utilities **OR** abandoning site utilities in place, **as directed**.
  - g. Temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures.

#### C. Definitions

1. Subsoil: All soil beneath the topsoil layer of the soil profile, and typified by the lack of organic matter and soil organisms.  
**OR**  
Surface Soil: Soil that is present at the top layer of the existing soil profile at the Project site. In undisturbed areas, the surface soil is typically topsoil; but in disturbed areas such as urban environments, the surface soil can be subsoil.
2. Topsoil: Top layer of the soil profile consisting of existing native surface topsoil or existing in-place surface soil and is the zone where plant roots grow.  
**OR**  
Topsoil: Top layer of the soil profile consisting of existing native surface topsoil or existing in-place surface soil and is the zone where plant roots grow. Its appearance is generally friable, pervious, and black or a darker shade of brown, gray, or red than underlying subsoil; reasonably free of subsoil, clay lumps, gravel, and other objects more than 2 inches (50 mm) in diameter; and free of subsoil and weeds, roots, toxic materials, or other nonsoil materials.
3. Plant-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees, groups of trees, shrubs, or other vegetation to be protected during construction, and indicated on Drawings.  
**OR**  
Tree-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees or groups of trees to be protected during construction, and indicated on Drawings **OR** defined by a circle concentric with each tree with a radius 1.5 times the diameter of the drip line unless otherwise indicated, **as directed**.
4. Vegetation: Trees, shrubs, groundcovers, grass, and other plants.

#### D. Material Ownership

1. Except for stripped topsoil and other materials indicated to be stockpiled or otherwise remain the Owner's property, cleared materials shall become Contractor's property and shall be removed from Project site.

#### E. Submittals

1. Existing Conditions: Documentation of existing trees and plantings, adjoining construction, and site improvements that establishes preconstruction conditions that might be misconstrued as damage caused by site clearing.
  - a. Use sufficiently detailed photographs or videotape.



- b. Include plans and notations to indicate specific wounds and damage conditions of each tree or other plants designated to remain.
2. Record Drawings: Identifying and accurately showing locations of capped utilities and other subsurface structural, electrical, and mechanical conditions.

F. Quality Assurance

1. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

G. Project Conditions

1. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during site-clearing operations.
  - a. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from the Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
  - b. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by the Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Improvements on Adjoining Property: Authority for performing site clearing indicated on property adjoining the Owner's property will be obtained by the Owner before award of Contract.
  - a. Do not proceed with work on adjoining property until directed by the Owner.
3. Salvable Improvements: Carefully remove items indicated to be salvaged and store on the Owner's premises where indicated.
4. Utility Locator Service: Notify utility locator service **OR** Miss Utility **OR** Call Before You Dig **OR** Dig Safe System **OR** One Call, **as directed**, for area where Project is located before site clearing.
5. Do not commence site clearing operations until temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control and plant-protection measures are in place.
6. The following practices are prohibited within protection zones:
  - a. Storage of construction materials, debris, or excavated material.
  - b. Parking vehicles or equipment.
  - c. Foot traffic.
  - d. Erection of sheds or structures.
  - e. Impoundment of water.
  - f. Excavation or other digging unless otherwise indicated.
  - g. Attachment of signs to or wrapping materials around trees or plants unless otherwise indicated.
7. Do not direct vehicle or equipment exhaust towards protection zones.
8. Prohibit heat sources, flames, ignition sources, and smoking within or near protection zones.
9. Soil Stripping, Handling, and Stockpiling: Perform only when the topsoil is dry or slightly moist.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials

1. Satisfactory Soil Material: Requirements for satisfactory soil material are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".
  - a. If soil backfill is required in below-grade areas after site clearing, obtain approved borrow soil material off-site when satisfactory soil material is not available on-site.
2. Antirust Coating: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, self-curing, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI #79, Alkyd Anticorrosive Metal Primer **OR** SSPC-Paint 20 or SSPC-Paint 29 zinc-rich coating, **as directed**.
  - a. Use coating with a VOC content of 420 g/L (3.5 lb/gal.) or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation



1. Protect and maintain benchmarks and survey control points from disturbance during construction.
  2. Locate and clearly identify trees, shrubs, and other vegetation to remain or to be relocated. Flag **OR** Wrap a 1-inch (25-mm) blue vinyl tie tape flag around, **as directed**, each tree trunk at 54 inches (1372 mm) above the ground.
  3. Protect existing site improvements to remain from damage during construction.
    - a. Restore damaged improvements to their original condition, as acceptable to the Owner.
- B. Temporary Erosion And Sedimentation Control
1. Provide temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways, according to erosion- and sedimentation-control Drawings and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross protection zones.
  3. Inspect, maintain, and repair erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
  4. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.
- C. Tree And Plant Protection
1. General: Protect trees and plants remaining on-site according to requirements in Division 01 Section "Temporary Tree And Plant Protection".
  2. Repair or replace trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain or be relocated that are damaged by construction operations, in a manner approved by the Owner.
- D. Existing Utilities
1. the Owner will arrange for disconnecting and sealing indicated utilities that serve existing structures before site clearing, when requested by Contractor.  
**OR**  
Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before proceeding with site clearing.
  2. Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap utilities indicated to be removed.
    - a. Arrange with utility companies to shut off indicated utilities.  
**OR**  
the Owner will arrange to shut off indicated utilities when requested by Contractor.
  3. Locate, identify, and disconnect utilities indicated to be abandoned in place.
  4. Interrupting Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
    - a. Notify the Owner not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
    - b. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without the Owner's written permission.
  5. Excavate for and remove underground utilities indicated to be removed.  
**OR**  
Removal of underground utilities is included in Division 21 OR Division 22 OR Division 23 OR Division 26 OR Division 28.
- E. Clearing And Grubbing
1. Remove obstructions, trees, shrubs, and other vegetation to permit installation of new construction.
    - a. Do not remove trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain or to be relocated.
    - b. Grind down stumps and remove roots, obstructions, and debris to a depth of 18 inches (450 mm) below exposed subgrade.
    - c. Use only hand methods for grubbing within protection zones.
    - d. Chip removed tree branches and stockpile in areas approved by the Owner **OR** dispose of off-site, **as directed**.
  2. Fill depressions caused by clearing and grubbing operations with satisfactory soil material unless further excavation or earthwork is indicated.



- 
- a. Place fill material in horizontal layers not exceeding a loose depth of 8 inches (200 mm), and compact each layer to a density equal to adjacent original ground.
- F. Topsoil Stripping
1. Remove sod and grass before stripping topsoil.
  2. Strip topsoil to depth indicated on Drawings **OR** to depth of 6 inches (150 mm), **as directed**, in a manner to prevent intermingling with underlying subsoil or other waste materials.
    - a. Remove subsoil and nonsoil materials from topsoil, including clay lumps, gravel, and other objects more than 2 inches (50 mm) in diameter; trash, debris, weeds, roots, and other waste materials.
  3. Stockpile topsoil away from edge of excavations without intermixing with subsoil. Grade and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust and erosion by water.
    - a. Limit height of topsoil stockpiles to 72 inches (1800 mm).
    - b. Do not stockpile topsoil within protection zones.
    - c. Dispose of surplus topsoil. Surplus topsoil is that which exceeds quantity indicated to be stockpiled or reused.
    - d. Stockpile surplus topsoil to allow for respreading deeper topsoil.
- G. Site Improvements
1. Remove existing above- and below-grade improvements as indicated and necessary to facilitate new construction.
  2. Remove slabs, paving, curbs, gutters, and aggregate base as indicated.
    - a. Unless existing full-depth joints coincide with line of demolition, neatly saw-cut along line of existing pavement to remain before removing adjacent existing pavement. Saw-cut faces vertically.
    - b. Paint cut ends of steel reinforcement in concrete to remain with two coats of antirust coating, following coating manufacturer's written instructions. Keep paint off surfaces that will remain exposed.
- H. Disposal Of Surplus And Waste Materials
1. Remove surplus soil material, unsuitable topsoil, obstructions, demolished materials, and waste materials including trash and debris, and legally dispose of them off the Owner's property.
  2. Separate recyclable materials produced during site clearing from other nonrecyclable materials. Store or stockpile without intermixing with other materials and transport them to recycling facilities. Do not interfere with other Project work.

END OF SECTION 31 11 00 00



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
31 13 13 00	31 11 00 00	Site Clearing

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 31 13 16 00 - TREE PROTECTION AND TRIMMING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for tree protection and trimming. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section includes general protection and pruning of existing trees and plants that are affected by execution of the Work, whether temporary or permanent construction.

#### C. Definitions

1. Caliper: Diameter of a trunk measured by a diameter tape or the average of the smallest and largest diameters at 6 inches (150 mm) above the ground for trees up to, and including, 4-inch (100-mm) size; and 12 inches (300 mm) above the ground for trees larger than 4-inch (100-mm) size.
2. Plant-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees, groups of trees, shrubs, or other vegetation to be protected during construction, and indicated on Drawings.
3. Tree-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees or groups of trees to be protected during construction, and indicated on Drawings **OR** defined by a circle concentric with each tree with a radius 1.5 times the diameter of the drip line unless otherwise indicated, **as directed**.
4. Vegetation: Trees, shrubs, groundcovers, grass, and other plants.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Tree Pruning Schedule: Written schedule detailing scope and extent of pruning of trees to remain that interfere with or are affected by construction.
3. Qualification Data: For qualified arborist and tree service firm.
4. Certification: From arborist, certifying that trees indicated to remain have been protected during construction according to recognized standards and that trees were promptly and properly treated and repaired when damaged.
5. Maintenance Recommendations: From arborist, for care and protection of trees affected by construction during and after completing the Work.
6. Existing Conditions: Documentation of existing trees and plantings indicated to remain, which establishes preconstruction conditions that might be misconstrued as damage caused by construction activities.
  - a. Use sufficiently detailed photographs or videotape.
  - b. Include plans and notations to indicate specific wounds and damage conditions of each tree or other plants designated to remain.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Arborist Qualifications: Certified Arborist as certified by ISA **OR** Certified Arborist-Municipal Specialist as certified by ISA **OR** Licensed arborist in jurisdiction where Project is located **OR** Current member of ASCA **OR** Registered Consulting Arborist as designated by ASCA, **as directed**.
2. Tree Service Firm Qualifications: An experienced tree service firm that has successfully completed temporary tree and plant protection work similar to that required for this Project and that will assign an experienced, qualified arborist to Project site during execution of the Work.
3. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### F. Project Conditions



1. The following practices are prohibited within protection zones:
  - a. Storage of construction materials, debris, or excavated material.
  - b. Parking vehicles or equipment.
  - c. Foot traffic.
  - d. Erection of sheds or structures.
  - e. Impoundment of water.
  - f. Excavation or other digging unless otherwise indicated.
  - g. Attachment of signs to or wrapping materials around trees or plants unless otherwise indicated.
2. Do not direct vehicle or equipment exhaust toward protection zones.
3. Prohibit heat sources, flames, ignition sources, and smoking within or near protection zones and organic mulch.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Materials

1. Topsoil: Natural or cultivated top layer of the soil profile or manufactured topsoil; containing organic matter and sand, silt, and clay particles; friable, pervious, and black or a darker shade of brown, gray, or red than underlying subsoil; reasonably free of subsoil, clay lumps, gravel, and other objects more than 1 inch (25 mm) in diameter; and free of weeds, roots, and toxic and other nonsoil materials.
  - a. Obtain topsoil only from well-drained sites where topsoil is 4 inches (100 mm) deep or more; do not obtain from bogs or marshes.

**OR**

Topsoil: Stockpiled topsoil from location shown on Drawings **OR** Imported or manufactured topsoil complying with ASTM D 5268, **as directed**.
2. Organic Mulch: Free from deleterious materials and suitable as a top dressing for trees and shrubs, consisting of one of the following:
  - a. Type: Shredded hardwood **OR** Ground or shredded bark **OR** Wood and bark chips, **as directed**.
  - b. Size Range: 3 inches (76 mm) maximum, 1/2 inch (13 mm) minimum.
3. Protection-Zone Fencing: Fencing fixed in position and meeting one of the following requirements, **as directed**. Previously used materials may be used when approved by the Owner.
  - a. Chain-Link Protection-Zone Fencing: Galvanized-steel **OR** Polymer-coated steel **OR** Polymer-coated galvanized-steel, **as directed**, fencing fabricated from minimum 2-inch (50-mm) opening, 0.148-inch- (3.76-mm-) diameter wire chain-link fabric; with pipe posts, minimum 2-3/8-inch- (60-mm-) OD line posts, and 2-7/8-inch- (73-mm-) OD corner and pull posts; with 1-5/8-inch- (42-mm-) OD top rails **OR** with 0.177-inch- (4.5-mm-) diameter top tension wire, **as directed**, and 0.177-inch- (4.5-mm-) diameter bottom tension wire; with tie wires, hog ring ties, and other accessories for a complete fence system.
    - 1) Height: 4 feet (1.2 m) **OR** 6 feet (1.8 m) **OR** 8 feet (2.4 m), **as directed**.
    - 2) Polymer-Coating Color (if polymer coating is required): Dark green **OR** Olive green **OR** Brown **OR** Black, **as directed**.
  - b. Plywood Protection-Zone Fencing: Plywood framed with four 2-by-4-inch (50-by-100-mm) rails, with 4-by-4-inch (100-by-100-mm) preservative-treated wood posts spaced not more than 8 feet (2.4 m) apart.
    - 1) Height: 4 feet (1.2 m) **OR** 6 feet (1.8 m), **as directed**.
    - 2) Plywood and Lumber: Comply with requirements in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry" **OR** Division 06 Section "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry", **as directed**.
  - c. Wood Protection-Zone Fencing: Constructed of two 2-by-4-inch (50-by-100-mm) horizontal rails, with 4-by-4-inch (100-by-100-mm) preservative-treated wood posts spaced not more than 8 feet (2.4 m) apart, and lower rail set halfway between top rail and ground.
    - 1) Height: 4 feet (1.2 m).





- 2) Lumber: Comply with requirements in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry" **OR** Division 06 Section "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry", **as directed**.
- d. Plastic Protection-Zone Fencing: Plastic construction fencing constructed of high-density extruded and stretched polyethylene fabric with 2-inch (50-mm) maximum opening in pattern and weighing a minimum of 0.4 lb/ft. (0.6 kg/m); remaining flexible from minus 60 to plus 200 deg F (minus 16 to plus 93 deg C); inert to most chemicals and acids; minimum tensile yield strength of 2000 psi (13.8 MPa) and ultimate tensile strength of 2680 psi (18.5 MPa); secured with plastic bands or galvanized-steel or stainless-steel wire ties; and supported by tubular or T-shape galvanized-steel posts spaced not more than 8 feet (2.4 m) apart.
  - 1) Height: 4 feet (1.2 m).
  - 2) Color: High-visibility orange, nonfading.
- e. Gates: Single **OR** Double, **as directed**, swing access gates matching material and appearance of fencing, to allow for maintenance activities within protection zones; leaf width 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 36 inches (914 mm) **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
4. Protection-Zone Signage: Shop-fabricated, rigid plastic or metal sheet with attachment holes prepunched and reinforced; legibly printed with nonfading lettering and as follows:
  - a. Size and Text: As shown on Drawings.
  - b. Lettering: 3-inch- (75-mm-) high minimum, white **OR** black, **as directed**, characters on white **OR** red, **as directed**, background.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

1. Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Examine the site to verify that temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures are in place. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross protection zones.
2. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by arborist, listing conditions detrimental to tree and plant protection.

#### B. Preparation

1. Locate and clearly identify trees, shrubs, and other vegetation to remain or to be relocated. Flag **OR** Tie a 1-inch (25-mm) blue-vinyl tape around, **as directed**, each tree trunk at 54 inches (1372 mm) above the ground.
2. Protect tree root systems from damage caused by runoff or spillage of noxious materials while mixing, placing, or storing construction materials. Protect root systems from ponding, eroding, or excessive wetting caused by dewatering operations.
3. Tree-Protection Zones: Mulch areas inside tree-protection zones and other areas indicated.
  - a. Apply 4-inch (100-mm) **OR** 6-inch (150-mm), **as directed**, average thickness of organic mulch. Do not place mulch within 6 inches (150 mm) of tree trunks.

#### C. Tree- And Plant-Protection Zones

1. Protection-Zone Fencing: Install protection-zone fencing along edges of protection zones before materials or equipment are brought on the site and construction operations begin in a manner that will prevent people and animals from easily entering protected area except by entrance gates. Construct fencing so as not to obstruct safe passage or visibility at vehicle intersections where fencing is located adjacent to pedestrian walkways or in close proximity to street intersections, drives, or other vehicular circulation.
  - a. Chain-Link Fencing: Install to comply with ASTM F 567 and with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - b. Posts: Set or drive posts into ground one-third the total height of the fence without concrete footings. Where a post is located on existing paving or concrete to remain, provide appropriate means of post support acceptable to the Owner.
  - c. Access Gates: Install where indicated; adjust to operate smoothly, easily, and quietly, free of binding, warp, excessive deflection, distortion, nonalignment, misplacement, disruption,



or malfunction, throughout entire operational range. Confirm that latches and locks engage accurately and securely without forcing or binding.

2. Protection-Zone Signage: Install protection-zone signage in visibly prominent locations in a manner approved by the Owner. Install one sign spaced approximately every 20 feet (6 m) **OR** 35 feet (10.5 m) **OR** 50 feet (15 m), **as directed**, on protection-zone fencing, but no fewer than four signs with each facing a different direction.
3. Maintain protection zones free of weeds and trash.
4. Repair or replace trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain or be relocated that are damaged by construction operations, in a manner approved by the Owner.
5. Maintain protection-zone fencing and signage in good condition as acceptable to the Owner and remove when construction operations are complete and equipment has been removed from the site.
  - a. Do not remove protection-zone fencing, even temporarily, to allow deliveries or equipment access through the protection zone.
  - b. Temporary access is permitted subject to preapproval in writing by arborist if a root buffer effective against soil compaction is constructed as directed by arborist. Maintain root buffer so long as access is permitted.

#### D. Excavation

1. General: Excavate at edge of protection zones and for trenches indicated within protection zones according to requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".
2. Trenching near Trees: Where utility trenches are required within protection zones, hand excavate under or around tree roots or tunnel under the roots by drilling, auger boring, or pipe jacking. Do not cut main lateral tree roots or taproots; cut only smaller roots that interfere with installation of utilities. Cut roots as required for root pruning.
3. Redirect roots in backfill areas where possible. If encountering large, main lateral roots, expose roots beyond excavation limits as required to bend and redirect them without breaking. If encountered immediately adjacent to location of new construction and redirection is not practical, cut roots approximately 3 inches (75 mm) back from new construction and as required for root pruning.
4. Do not allow exposed roots to dry out before placing permanent backfill. Provide temporary earth cover or pack with peat moss and wrap with burlap. Water and maintain in a moist condition. Temporarily support and protect roots from damage until they are permanently relocated and covered with soil.

#### E. Root Pruning

1. Prune roots that are affected by temporary and permanent construction. Prune roots as follows:
  - a. Cut roots manually by digging a trench and cutting exposed roots with sharp pruning instruments; do not break, tear, chop, or slant the cuts. Do not use a backhoe or other equipment that rips, tears, or pulls roots.
  - b. Cut Ends: Do not paint cut root ends **OR** Coat cut ends of roots more than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter with an emulsified asphalt or other coating formulated for use on damaged plant tissues and that is acceptable to arborist, **as directed**.
  - c. Temporarily support and protect roots from damage until they are permanently redirected and covered with soil.
  - d. Cover exposed roots with burlap and water regularly.
  - e. Backfill as soon as possible according to requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".
2. Root Pruning at Edge of Protection Zone: Prune roots 12 inches (300 mm) outside **OR** 12 inches (300 mm) inside **OR** 6 inches (150 mm) outside **OR** 6 inches (150 mm) inside **OR** flush with the edge, **as directed**, of the protection zone, by cleanly cutting all roots to the depth of the required excavation.
3. Root Pruning within Protection Zone: Clear and excavate by hand to the depth of the required excavation to minimize damage to root systems. Use narrow-tine spading forks, comb soil to expose roots, and cleanly cut roots as close to excavation as possible.



- F. Crown Pruning
1. Prune branches that are affected by temporary and permanent construction. Prune branches as follows:
    - a. Prune trees to remain to compensate for root loss caused by damaging or cutting root system. Provide subsequent maintenance during Contract period as recommended by arborist.
    - b. Pruning Standards: Prune trees according to ANSI A300 (Part 1) and the following:
      - 1) Type of Pruning: Cleaning **OR** Thinning **OR** Raising **OR** Reduction, **as directed**.
      - 2) Specialty Pruning: Restoration **OR** Vista **OR** Palm **OR** Utility, **as directed**.
    - c. Cut branches with sharp pruning instruments; do not break or chop.
    - d. Do not apply pruning paint to wounds.
  2. Chip removed branches and spread over areas identified by the Owner **OR** stockpile in areas approved by the Owner **OR** dispose of off-site, **as directed**.
- G. Regrading
1. Lowering Grade: Where new finish grade is indicated below existing grade around trees, slope grade beyond the protection zone. Maintain existing grades within the protection zone.  
**OR**  
Lowering Grade within Protection Zone: Where new finish grade is indicated below existing grade around trees, slope grade away from trees as recommended by arborist unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Root Pruning: Prune tree roots exposed by lowering the grade. Do not cut main lateral roots or taproots; cut only smaller roots. Cut roots as required for root pruning.
  2. Raising Grade: Where new finish grade is indicated above existing grade around trees, slope grade beyond the protection zone. Maintain existing grades within the protection zone.  
**OR**  
Minor Fill within Protection Zone: Where existing grade is 2 inches (50 mm) or less below elevation of finish grade, fill with topsoil. Place topsoil in a single uncompacted layer and hand grade to required finish elevations.
- H. Field Quality Control
1. Inspections: Engage a qualified arborist to direct plant-protection measures in the vicinity of trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain and to prepare inspection reports.
- I. Repair And Replacement
1. General: Repair or replace trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain or be relocated that are damaged by construction operations, in a manner approved by the Owner.
    - a. Submit details of proposed root cutting and tree and shrub repairs.
    - b. Have arborist perform the root cutting, branch pruning, and damage repair of trees and shrubs.
    - c. Treat damaged trunks, limbs, and roots according to arborist's written instructions.
    - d. Perform repairs within 24 hours.
    - e. Replace vegetation that cannot be repaired and restored to full-growth status, as determined by the Owner.
  2. Trees: Remove and replace trees indicated to remain that are more than 25 **OR** 66, **as directed**, percent dead or in an unhealthy condition before the end of the corrections period or are damaged during construction operations that the Owner determines are incapable of restoring to normal growth pattern.
    - a. Provide new trees of same size and species as those being replaced for each tree that measures 6 inches (150 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, or smaller in caliper size.  
**OR**  
Provide one **OR** two, **as directed**, new tree(s) of 6-inch (150-mm) **OR** 4-inch (100-mm), **as directed**, caliper size for each tree being replaced that measures more than 6 inches (150 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, in caliper size.
      - 1) Species: Species selected by the Owner.



- 
- b. Plant and maintain new trees as specified in Division 32 Section "Plants".
  - 3. Soil Aeration: Where directed by the Owner, aerate surface soil compacted during construction. Aerate 10 feet (3 m) beyond drip line and no closer than 36 inches (900 mm) to tree trunk. Drill 2-inch- (50-mm-) diameter holes a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) deep at 24 inches (600 mm) o.c. Backfill holes with an equal mix of augered soil and sand.
- J. Disposal Of Surplus And Waste Materials
- 1. Disposal: Remove excess excavated material, displaced trees, trash and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 31 13 16 00



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
31 13 16 00	31 11 00 00	Site Clearing

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 31 23 16 13 - EXCAVATION SUPPORT AND PROTECTION

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for excavation support and protection. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Performance Requirements

1. Design, **as directed**, furnish, install, monitor, and maintain excavation support and protection system capable of supporting excavation sidewalls and of resisting soil and hydrostatic pressure and superimposed and construction loads.
  - a. Delegated Design: Design excavation support and protection system, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
  - b. Prevent surface water from entering excavations by grading, dikes, or other means.
  - c. Install excavation support and protection systems without damaging existing buildings, structures, and site improvements adjacent to excavation.
  - d. Monitor vibrations, settlements, and movements.

#### C. Submittals

1. Shop Drawings: For excavation support and protection system.
2. Delegated-Design Submittal: For excavation support and protection system indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### E. Project Conditions

1. Interruption of Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt any utility serving facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility according to requirements indicated:
  - a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of utility.
  - b. Do not proceed with interruption of utility without the Owner's written permission.
2. Survey Work: Engage a qualified land surveyor or professional engineer to survey adjacent existing buildings, structures, and site improvements; establish exact elevations at fixed points to act as benchmarks. Clearly identify benchmarks and record existing elevations.
  - a. During installation of excavation support and protection systems, regularly resurvey benchmarks, maintaining an accurate log of surveyed elevations and positions for comparison with original elevations and positions. Promptly notify the Owner if changes in elevations or positions occur or if cracks, sags, or other damage is evident in adjacent construction.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Materials

1. General: Provide materials that are either new or in serviceable condition.
2. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, ASTM A 690/A 690M, or ASTM A 992/A 992M.
3. Steel Sheet Piling: ASTM A 328/A 328M, ASTM A 572/A 572M, or ASTM A 690/A 690M; with continuous interlocks.



- a. Corners: Site-fabricated mechanical interlock **OR** Roll-formed corner shape with continuous interlock, **as directed**.
4. Wood Lagging: Lumber, mixed hardwood, nominal rough thickness of size and strength required for application, **OR** 3 inches (75 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**.
5. Shotcrete: Comply with Division 03 Section "Shotcrete" for shotcrete materials and mixes, reinforcement, and shotcrete application.
6. Cast-in-Place Concrete: ACI 301, of compressive strength required for application.
7. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed.
8. Tiebacks: Steel bars, ASTM A 722/A 722M.
9. Tiebacks: Steel strand, ASTM A 416/A 416M.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Preparation

1. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards that could develop during excavation support and protection system operations.
  - a. Shore, support, and protect utilities encountered.
2. Install excavation support and protection systems to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
  - a. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from the Owner and authorities having jurisdiction. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Locate excavation support and protection systems clear of permanent construction so that forming and finishing of concrete surfaces are not impeded.
4. Monitor excavation support and protection systems daily during excavation progress and for as long as excavation remains open. Promptly correct bulges, breakage, or other evidence of movement to ensure that excavation support and protection systems remain stable.
5. Promptly repair damages to adjacent facilities caused by installing excavation support and protection systems.

#### B. Soldier Piles And Lagging

1. Install steel soldier piles before starting excavation. Extend soldier piles below excavation grade level to depths adequate to prevent lateral movement. Space soldier piles at regular intervals not to exceed allowable flexural strength of wood lagging. Accurately align exposed faces of flanges to vary not more than 2 inches (50 mm) from a horizontal line and not more than 1:120 out of vertical alignment.
2. Install wood lagging within flanges of soldier piles as excavation proceeds. Trim excavation as required to install lagging. Fill voids behind lagging with soil, and compact.
3. Install wales horizontally at locations indicated on Drawings and secure to soldier piles.

#### C. Sheet Piling

1. Before starting excavation, install one-piece sheet piling lengths and tightly interlock to form a continuous barrier. Accurately place the piling, using templates and guide frames unless otherwise recommended in writing by the sheet piling manufacturer. Limit vertical offset of adjacent sheet piling to 60 inches (1500 mm). Accurately align exposed faces of sheet piling to vary not more than 2 inches (50 mm) from a horizontal line and not more than 1:120 out of vertical alignment. Cut tops of sheet piling to uniform elevation at top of excavation.

#### D. Tiebacks

1. Tiebacks: Drill, install, grout, and tension tiebacks. Test load-carrying capacity of each tieback and replace and retest deficient tiebacks.
  - a. Test loading shall be observed by a qualified professional engineer responsible for design of excavation support and protection system.





- b. Maintain tiebacks in place until permanent construction is able to withstand lateral soil and hydrostatic pressures.
- E. Bracing
- 1. Bracing: Locate bracing to clear columns, floor framing construction, and other permanent work. If necessary to move brace, install new bracing before removing original brace.
    - a. Do not place bracing where it will be cast into or included in permanent concrete work unless otherwise approved by the Owner.
    - b. Install internal bracing, if required, to prevent spreading or distortion of braced frames.
    - c. Maintain bracing until structural elements are supported by other bracing or until permanent construction is able to withstand lateral earth and hydrostatic pressures.
- F. Removal And Repairs
- 1. Remove excavation support and protection systems when construction has progressed sufficiently to support excavation and bear soil and hydrostatic pressures. Remove in stages to avoid disturbing underlying soils or damaging structures, pavements, facilities, and utilities.
    - a. Remove excavation support and protection systems to a minimum depth of 48 inches (1200 mm) below overlaying construction and abandon remainder.
    - b. Fill voids immediately with approved backfill compacted to density specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".
    - c. Repair or replace, as approved by the Owner, adjacent work damaged or displaced by removing excavation support and protection systems.
  - 2. Leave excavation support and protection systems permanently in place.

END OF SECTION 31 23 16 13



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
31 23 16 13	31 01 20 00	Earthwork

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 31 23 16 26 - EMBANKMENT**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the reuse of suitable excavated material or furnishing material at the Contractor's expense to construct embankments where and as required by the Owner.

## B. Submittals

1. Preconstruction Submittals
  - a. Construction equipment list.
  - b. Contractor shall record Existing Conditions prior to starting work in accordance with the paragraph entitled, "Existing Conditions," of this section.
  - c. Location of Utilities
  - d. Location of Tests
  - e. Location of Inspection
  - f. Location of Approved Utilities
  - g. A protection plan verifying the Existing Utilities left in place.
2. Test Reports for Soil Test within three working days of test date. Soil test shall comply with paragraph entitled, "Quality Control Testing During Construction."
3. Certificates of compliance for Proposed Soil Materials shall be submitted in accordance with paragraph entitled, "Tests for Proposed Soil Materials."

## C. Definitions

1. Soil Materials
  - a. Cohesionless soil materials include gravels, gravel-sand mixtures, sands, and gravelly sands. Moisture-density relations of compacted cohesionless soils when plotted on graphs will show straight lines or reverse-shaped moisture-density curves.
  - b. Cohesive soil materials include clayey and silty gravels, sand-clay mixtures, gravel-silt mixtures, clayey and silty sands, sand-silt mixtures, clays, silts, and very fine sands. Moisture density relations of compacted cohesive soils when plotted on graphs will show normal moisture-density curves.
2. Subgrade shall mean the top surface of a backfill or fill or the uppermost surface of an excavation, graded to conform to the required subgrade elevation and compacted to densities indicated.
3. Degree of compaction required is expressed as a percentage of the maximum density obtained by the test procedure in AASHTO T 180, Method B or D.
4. Classified Excavation: Separate consideration will be given to the nature of the materials excavated, in accordance with the following designations and classifications.
  - a. Rock excavation shall include blasting, excavating, grading, and disposing of material classified as rock and shall include the satisfactory removal and disposition of boulders 1/2-cu yd (0.4 cu m) or more in volume; solid rock; rock material in ledges, bedded deposits, and unstratified masses which cannot be removed without systematic drilling and blasting; and conglomerate deposits that are so firmly cemented as to possess the characteristics of solid rock that is impossible to remove without systematic drilling and blasting. The removal of any concrete or masonry structures, except pavements, exceeding 1/2-cu yd (0.4 cu m) in volume that may be encountered in the work shall be included in this classification.
  - b. Common excavation shall include the satisfactory removal and disposition of materials not classified as rock excavation.
5. Unclassified Excavation: No consideration will be given to the nature of the materials, and all excavation will be designated as unclassified excavation.

## D. Sampling And Testing



1. Soil Test and Inspection Service: Soil survey for satisfactory soil materials and samples of soil materials shall be furnished by the Contractor. A certified soil testing service approved by the Owner shall be provided by the Contractor. Testing shall include soil survey for satisfactory soil materials, sampling and testing soil materials proposed for use in the work, and field-testing facilities for quality control during construction period.
2. Tests for Proposed Soil Materials: Soil materials proposed for use in the work shall be tested. The materials shall be approved by the Owner prior to start of work as follows:

<u>MATERIAL</u>	<u>REQUIREMENT</u>	<u>TEST METHOD</u>	<u>NUMBER OF TESTS</u>
Satisfactory soil materials	Sampling	AASHTO T 2	One for each source of materials to determine conformance to definition of satisfactory soil materials; additional tests whenever there is any apparent change
	Preparation of samples	AASHTO T 87	
	Sieve analysis of fine and coarse aggregate	ASTM C 136	
	Mechanical analysis of soils	ASTM D 422	
	Liquid limit of Soils	ASTM D 4318	
	Plastic limit and plasticity index of soils	ASTM D 4318	
	Moisture-density relations of soil	AASHTO T 180, Method B or D	



- 3. Quality Control Testing During Construction: Soil Test on materials shall be performed during construction as follows:

<u>MATERIAL</u>	<u>REQUIREMENT</u>	<u>TEST METHOD</u>	<u>MATERIAL TESTED AND NUMBER OF TESTS</u>
Soil material-in-place after compaction	Density of soil-in-place	ASTM D 1556 Sand Cone Method or ASTM D 2922 Nuclear Method	At least three daily for each subgrade soil material, and for each layer of soil material; additional tests whenever there is any change in moisture

- 4. Field Testing Facilities at Subbase Mixing Plant: Field-testing facilities for the purpose of testing subbase course material at the mixing plant shall be provided by the Contractor's soil-testing service.
- 5. Reports: No soil material shall be used until soil test reports have been reviewed and approved.
- 6. Evaluation of Test Results
  - a. Soil materials of any classification shall not have a moisture content at the time of compaction that would be classified as unsatisfactory soil materials in the paragraph entitled, "Definitions."
  - b. Results of density of soil-in-place tests shall be considered satisfactory if the average of any group of four consecutive density tests which may be selected is in each instance equal to or greater than the specified density, and if no density test has a value more than 2 percentage points below the specified density.

E. Use Of Explosives:

- 1. Explosives shall not be used or brought to the project site without prior written approval. Such approval shall not be construed as relieving the Contractor of responsibility for injury to persons or for damage to property due to blasting operations. Blasting shall be performed by skilled personnel in accordance with governing authorities and as approved. Minimum safety requirements for blasting shall be in accordance with OSHA Regulations 29 CFR 1926, Subpart U.  
**OR**  
The use of explosives will not be permitted.

F. Protection Of Persons And Property

- 1. Excavations shall be barricaded and posted with warning signs for the safety of persons. Warning lights shall be provided during hours of darkness.
- 2. Structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities immediately adjacent to excavations shall be protected against damage including settlement, lateral movement, undermining, and washout.
- 3. Topsoil removal operations shall be conducted to ensure safety of persons and to prevent damage to existing structures and utilities, construction in progress, trees and vegetation to remain standing, and other property.

G. Construction Equipment List: Construction Equipment List for all major equipment to be used in this section shall be submitted to the Owner prior to start of work.

H. Existing Conditions

- 1. Records of Existing Conditions shall be submitted by the Contractor prior to the start of work. The Contractor shall verify the existing conditions are correct as shown on the plans and described in the specifications. the Owner shall be notified immediately if any discrepancies are found.



2. Records of underground utilities, Location of Utilities, Location of Inspection, Location of Tests, and Location of Approved Utilities shall be submitted to the Owner prior to start of work.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Materials

1. Satisfactory Materials shall mean AASHTO M 145 (ASTM D 3282), Soil Classification Groups A-1, A-2-4, A-2-5, and A-3.
2. Unsatisfactory Materials shall mean AASHTO M 145, Soil Classification Groups A-2-6, A-2-7, A-4, A-5, A-6, and A-7, peat and other highly organic soils, and soil materials of any classification that have a moisture content, at the time of compaction, beyond the range of 1 percentage point below and 3 percentage points above the optimum moisture content of the soil material as determined by moisture-density relations test.
3. Topsoil shall be any soil removed from the project site which consists of clay or sandy loam. The topsoil shall be reasonably free from subsoil, clay lumps, brush, objectionable weeds, and other litter, and shall be free from stones, stumps, roots, and other objectionable material larger than 2 in. (50 mm) in any dimension.
4. Compost shall be yard trimmings or yard waste compost processed and graded according to state and local regulations.
5. Topsoil Blend: Where insufficient topsoil is removed from the project site for later reuse, the topsoil removed shall be stockpiled and blended with compost at the site to achieve the required volume.

## 1.3 EXECUTION

### A. Blasting:

1. Where explosives are used in rock excavation, the charges shall be so proportioned and placed that they will not loosen the rock outside the excavation lines indicated, or as specified. Contractor shall remove, at no additional cost, any material outside the authorized cross section that may be shattered or loosened by blasting.

**OR**

Blasting is not required or permitted.

- B. Conservation Of Topsoil: Topsoil shall be stripped to a depth of not less than 4 in. (100 mm); when stored it shall be kept separate from other excavated materials, free of roots, stones, and other undesirable materials. Where indicated, topsoil shall be removed without contamination with subsoil and spread on areas already graded and prepared for topsoil, or when so specified, topsoil shall be transported and deposited in stockpiles convenient to areas that are to receive application of the topsoil later or at locations indicated or specified by the Owner. Topsoil blend shall be used on all embankments when there is not enough topsoil available.

### C. Excavation

1. Excavations specified shall be done on either a classified or unclassified basis as directed by the Owner.
2. Contractor shall perform excavation of every type of material encountered by cutting accurately to the cross sections to the lines, grades, and elevations indicated. Grading shall be in conformity with the typical sections indicated and the tolerances specified in paragraph entitled, "Finishing."
3. Satisfactory excavated materials shall be transported to and placed in fill or embankment areas within the limits of the work. Unsatisfactory materials encountered within the limits of the work shall be excavated below grade and replaced with satisfactory materials as directed. Surplus satisfactory excavated material not required for fill or embankment shall be disposed in areas approved for surplus materials storage or designated waste areas. Unsatisfactory excavated material shall be disposed in designated waste or spoil areas. During construction, excavation





- and filling shall be performed in a manner and sequence that will provide proper drainage at all times. Material required for fill or embankment in excess of that produced by excavation within the grading limits shall be excavated from the borrow areas indicated or from other approved areas selected by the Owner.
4. Excavation of Ditches, Gutters, and Channels: Care shall be taken not to excavate ditches and gutters below grades shown. Excessive open-ditch or gutter excavation shall be backfilled with suitable materials to grades indicated at no additional cost. Materials excavated shall be disposed as indicated, except that in no case shall material be deposited less than 3 ft. (1 m) from the edge of a ditch. Contractor shall maintain excavations free from debris until final acceptance of the work.
  5. Excavation for Drainage Structures
    - a. Dimensions and elevations of footings and foundation excavations indicated are only approximate and may be changed if necessary to ensure adequate foundation support. Trenches and foundation pits shall be of sufficient size to permit the placement and removal of forms for the full length and width of structure footings and foundations. Rock or other hard foundation material shall be cleaned of loose debris and cut to a firm surface, either level, stepped, or serrated. Loose disintegrated rock and thin strata shall be removed. When concrete or masonry is to be placed in an excavated area, special care shall be taken not to disturb the bottom of the excavation. Excavation to the final grade level shall not be made until just before concrete or masonry is to be placed.
    - b. Where pile foundations are to be used, the excavation of each pit shall be stopped at an elevation 1 ft. (300 mm) above the base of the footing, as specified, before piles are driven. After pile driving has been completed, loose and displaced material shall be removed and excavation completed, leaving a smooth, solid, undisturbed surface to receive concrete or masonry.
  6. Protection or Removal of Utility Lines: Existing Utilities that are indicated to be retained, or the locations of which have been ascertained from the Owner utility drawings, as well as utility lines encountered during excavation, shall be protected from damage during excavation and backfilling. However, reliance on the information obtained from the Owner drawings does not absolve the Contractor of responsibility for damages, so careful hand methods shall be used to verify the location of underground utilities. Damage shall be reported immediately and satisfactorily repaired by the Contractor at no additional cost. The Contractor shall provide sketches of existing conditions if there are variances, as well as any modifications, on "as-built" drawings. When utility lines that are to be removed are encountered within the area of operations, the Contractor shall give notice in ample time for the necessary measures to be taken to prevent interruption of service.
- D. Classification Of Excavation: Excavations specified shall be done on either a classified or unclassified basis as provided for under the item designations of the Contract.
- E. Utilization Of Excavation Materials: Unsatisfactory materials removed from excavations shall be disposed in designated areas. Satisfactory material removed from excavations shall be used, insofar as practicable, in the construction of fills, embankments, subgrades, shoulders, bedding; as backfill; and for similar purposes. No satisfactory excavated material shall be wasted without specific written authorization. Satisfactory material authorized to be wasted shall be disposed in designated areas approved for surplus material storage or designated waste areas as directed. Coarse rock from excavations shall be stockpiled and used for constructing slopes of embankments adjacent to streams, for constructing slopes or sides and bottoms of channels, and for protecting against erosion. Hand placing of coarse rock from excavations will not be required. Excavated material shall not be disposed in a manner as to obstruct the flow of any stream, endanger a partly finished structure, impair the efficiency or appearance of any structure, or be detrimental to the completed work in any way.
- F. Selection Of Borrow Material: Borrow material shall be selected to meet the requirements and conditions of the particular fill or embankment for which it is to be used. Borrow material shall be obtained from the borrow areas indicated on the plans or from other approved sources, either private or within the limits of the project site, selected by the Contractor. Unless otherwise provided in the



contract, the Contractor shall obtain from the Owner the right to procure material, pay all royalties and other charges involved, and bear all expense of developing the sources, including rights-of-way for hauling. Borrow material from approved sources on the Owner-controlled land may be obtained without payment of royalties. Unless specifically provided, no borrow shall be obtained within the limits of the project site without prior written approval. Necessary clearing, grubbing, and satisfactory drainage of borrow pits and the disposal of debris shall be considered related operations to the borrow excavation and shall be performed by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner.

- G. **Opening And Drainage Of Excavation And Borrow Pits:** The Contractor shall give notice sufficiently in advance of the opening of any excavation or borrow pit to permit elevations and measurements of the undisturbed ground surface to be taken. Unless otherwise permitted, borrow pits and other excavation areas shall be excavated in such manner as will afford adequate drainage. Overburden and other spoil material shall be transported to designated spoil areas or otherwise disposed as directed. Borrow pits shall be neatly trimmed and left in such shape as will facilitate accurate measurements after the excavation is completed.
- H. **Grading Areas:** When so provided and indicated, work under contract will be divided into grading areas, within which satisfactory excavated material shall be placed in embankments, fills, and required backfills. Contractor shall not haul satisfactory material excavated in one grading area to another grading area, except when so directed in writing.
- I. **Preparation Of Ground Surface For Embankments**
1. Ground surface on which fill is to be placed shall be stripped of live, dead, or decayed vegetation, rubbish, debris, and other unsatisfactory material; shall be plowed, disked, or otherwise broken up; pulverized; moistened or aerated as necessary; mixed; and compacted to at least 90 percent maximum density for cohesive materials or 100 percent maximum density for cohesionless materials.
  2. Compaction shall be accomplished by sheepsfoot rollers, pneumatic-tired rollers, steel-wheeled rollers, or other approved equipment. The prepared ground surface shall be scarified and moistened or aerated just prior to placement of embankment materials to ensure adequate bond between embankment material and the prepared ground surface.
- J. **Embankments**
1. **Earth Embankments**
    - a. Earth embankments shall be constructed from satisfactory materials free of organic or frozen material and rocks with maximum dimensions not greater than 3 in. (75 mm). The material shall be placed in successive horizontal layers of loose material not more than 6 in. (150 mm) in depth. Each layer shall be spread uniformly on a prepared surface, i.e., a soil surface that has been moistened or aerated and scarified plowed, disked, or otherwise broken up in such a manner that the fill will bond with the surface on which it is placed, mixed, and compacted to at least 90 percent maximum density for borrow materials or 100 percent maximum density for excavated materials. Compaction requirements for the upper portion of earth embankments forming subgrade for pavements shall be identical to those requirements specified in paragraph entitled, "Subgrade Preparation."
    - b. Compaction shall be accomplished by sheepsfoot rollers, pneumatic-tired rollers, steel-wheeled rollers, or other approved equipment.
  2. **Rock Embankments**
    - a. Rock embankments shall be constructed from material essentially classified as rock excavation, placed in successive horizontal layers of loose material not more than 8 to 10 in. (200 to 250 mm) in depth. Pieces of rock larger than 8 to 10 in. (200 to 250 mm) in greatest dimension shall not be used.
    - b. Each layer of material shall be spread uniformly and shall be completely saturated and compacted to density as directed by the Owner.



- c. Each layer of material shall be spread uniformly and shall be completely saturated and compacted until the interstices are filled with well-compacted materials and the entire layer is a dense, compacted mass.
  - d. Each successive layer of material shall adequately bond to the material on which it is placed.
  - e. Compaction shall be accomplished with vibratory compactors with a minimum static weight of 20,000 lbs. (90 kN), heavy rubber-tired rollers weighing not less than 25,000 lbs. (110 kN) or steel-wheeled rollers with a loaded weight of not less than 4,000 lb/ft (58,400 N/m) of drum length.
  - f. Rock shall not be used above a point 6 in. (150 mm) below the surface of an embankment that is to be paved.
- K. Subgrade Preparation
1. Construction
    - a. Subgrade shall be shaped to line, grade, and cross section and compacted as specified. This operation shall include plowing, disking, and any moistening or aerating required to obtain proper compaction. Soft or otherwise unsatisfactory material shall be removed and replaced with satisfactory excavated material or other approved material as directed. Rock encountered in the cut sections shall be excavated to a depth of 6 in. (150 mm) below finished grade for the subgrade. Low areas resulting from removal of unsatisfactory material or excavation of rock shall be brought up to required grade with satisfactory materials, and the entire subgrade shall be shaped to line, grade, and cross section and compacted as specified.
    - b. After rolling, the surface of the subgrade for roadways and/or airfields shall indicate a deviation not greater than 3/8 in. (10 mm) when tested with a 10-ft (3.0 m) straightedge applied both parallel with, and at right angles to, the centerline of the area.
    - c. Elevation of the finished subgrade shall vary not more than 1/4-in. (6 mm) from the established grade and approved cross section.
  2. Compaction: Compaction for pavements and shoulders shall be accomplished with approved equipment until the layer is compacted to the full depth to at least 95 percent maximum density.
- L. Shoulder Construction: Shoulders shall be constructed of satisfactory excavated or borrow materials or as otherwise indicated on the plans. Shoulders shall be constructed as soon as possible after adjacent paving is complete, but in the case of rigid pavements, shoulders shall not be constructed until permission has been obtained. The entire shoulder area shall be compacted to at least the percentage of maximum density as specified for specific ranges of depth below the surface of the shoulder. Compaction shall be accomplished with approved equipment. Shoulder construction shall be done in proper sequence in such a manner that adjacent ditches will be drained effectively and no damage of any kind is done to the adjacent, completed pavement. The completed shoulders shall be true to alignment and grade and shaped to drain in conformity with the cross section indicated.
- M. Finishing: Surface of excavations, embankments, and subgrades shall be finished to a reasonably smooth and compact surface substantially in accordance with the lines, grades, and cross sections or elevations indicated. Degree of finish for graded areas shall be within 1/10 ft (30 mm) of the grades and elevations indicated, except that the degree of finish for subgrades shall be as specified. Gutters and ditches shall be finished as indicated. Surface of areas to be turfed shall be finished to a smoothness suitable for the application of turfing materials.
- N. Subgrade And Embankment Protection: During construction, embankments and excavations shall be kept shaped and drained. Ditches and drains along subgrade shall be maintained in such a manner as to drain effectively at all times. Finished subgrade shall not be disturbed by traffic or other operations and shall be protected and maintained by the Contractor in a satisfactory condition until ballast, subbase, base, or pavement is placed. Storage or stockpiling materials on finished subgrade will not be permitted. Subbase, base course, ballast, or pavement shall not be laid until the subgrade has been checked and approved, and in no case shall subbase, base, surfacing, pavement, or ballast be placed on a muddy, spongy, or frozen subgrade.



---

END OF SECTION 31 23 16 26



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
31 23 16 26	31 01 20 00	Earthwork
31 23 16 33	31 01 20 00	Earthwork
31 23 16 36	31 23 16 13	Excavation Support And Protection
31 23 16 36	31 01 20 00	Earthwork
31 23 16 43	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
31 23 16 43	31 23 16 13	Excavation Support And Protection
31 23 16 43	31 01 20 00	Earthwork



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 31 23 19 00 - DEWATERING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for dewatering. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Performance Requirements

1. Dewatering Performance: Design, furnish, install, test, operate, monitor, and maintain dewatering system of sufficient scope, size, and capacity to control hydrostatic pressures and to lower, control, remove, and dispose of ground water and permit excavation and construction to proceed on dry, stable subgrades.
  - a. Delegated Design: Design dewatering system, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
  - b. Continuously monitor and maintain dewatering operations to ensure erosion control, stability of excavations and constructed slopes, that excavation does not flood, and that damage to subgrades and permanent structures is prevented.
  - c. Prevent surface water from entering excavations by grading, dikes, or other means.
  - d. Accomplish dewatering without damaging existing buildings, structures, and site improvements adjacent to excavation.
  - e. Remove dewatering system when no longer required for construction.

#### C. Submittals

1. Shop Drawings: For dewatering system. Show arrangement, locations, and details of wells and well points; locations of risers, headers, filters, pumps, power units, and discharge lines; and means of discharge, control of sediment, and disposal of water.
  - a. Include layouts of piezometers and flow-measuring devices for monitoring performance of dewatering system.
  - b. Include a written plan for dewatering operations including control procedures to be adopted if dewatering problems arise.
2. Delegated-Design Submittal: For dewatering system indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning dewatering. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### E. Project Conditions

1. Interruption of Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt any utility serving facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility according to requirements indicated:
  - a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of utility.
  - b. Do not proceed with interruption of utility without the Owner's written permission.
2. Survey Work: Engage a qualified land surveyor or professional engineer to survey adjacent existing buildings, structures, and site improvements, establishing exact elevations at fixed points to act as benchmarks. Clearly identify benchmarks and record existing elevations.
  - a. During dewatering, regularly resurvey benchmarks, maintaining an accurate log of surveyed elevations for comparison with original elevations. Promptly notify the Owner if



changes in elevations occur or if cracks, sags, or other damage is evident in adjacent construction.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS (Not Used)

## 1.3 EXECUTION

### A. Preparation

1. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by dewatering operations.
  - a. Prevent surface water and subsurface or ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding site and surrounding area.
  - b. Protect subgrades and foundation soils from softening and damage by rain or water accumulation.
2. Install dewatering system to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
  - a. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from the Owner and authorities having jurisdiction. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Provide temporary grading to facilitate dewatering and control of surface water.
4. Monitor dewatering systems continuously.
5. Promptly repair damages to adjacent facilities caused by dewatering.
6. Protect and maintain temporary erosion and sedimentation controls, which are specified in Division 31 Section "Site Clearing" during dewatering operations.

### B. Installation

1. Install dewatering system utilizing wells, well points, or similar methods complete with pump equipment, standby power and pumps, filter material gradation, valves, appurtenances, water disposal, and surface-water controls.
  - a. Space well points or wells at intervals required to provide sufficient dewatering.
  - b. Use filters or other means to prevent pumping of fine sands or silts from the subsurface.
2. Before excavating below ground-water level, place system into operation to lower water to specified levels. Operate system continuously until drains, sewers, and structures have been constructed and fill materials have been placed or until dewatering is no longer required.
3. Provide an adequate system to lower and control ground water to permit excavation, construction of structures, and placement of fill materials on dry subgrades. Install sufficient dewatering equipment to drain water-bearing strata above and below bottom of foundations, drains, sewers, and other excavations.
  - a. Do not permit open-sump pumping that leads to loss of fines, soil piping, subgrade softening, and slope instability.
4. Reduce hydrostatic head in water-bearing strata below subgrade elevations of foundations, drains, sewers, and other excavations.
  - a. Maintain piezometric water level a minimum of 24 inches (600 mm) **OR** 60 inches (1500 mm), **as directed**, below surface of excavation.
5. Dispose of water removed by dewatering in a manner that avoids endangering public health, property, and portions of work under construction or completed. Dispose of water and sediment in a manner that avoids inconvenience to others. Provide sumps, sedimentation tanks, and other flow-control devices as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
6. Provide standby equipment on site, installed and available for immediate operation, to maintain dewatering on continuous basis if any part of system becomes inadequate or fails. If dewatering requirements are not satisfied due to inadequacy or failure of dewatering system, restore damaged structures and foundation soils at no additional expense to the Owner.





- 
- a. Remove dewatering system from Project site on completion of dewatering. Plug or fill well holes with sand or cut off and cap wells a minimum of 36 inches (900 mm) below overlying construction.
  7. Damages: Promptly repair damages to adjacent facilities caused by dewatering operations.

END OF SECTION 31 23 19 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
31 23 19 00	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
31 23 23 23	31 01 20 00	Earthwork
31 23 23 33	31 23 16 13	Excavation Support And Protection
31 23 23 33	31 01 20 00	Earthwork



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

**SECTION 31 24 13 00 - LEVEE CLOSURE****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing of labor and materials for providing levee closures.

**1.2 PRODUCTS - (Not Used)****1.3 EXECUTION****A. If there is deemed, by the Owner, to be considerable risk of flooding involved with removing drainage structures and gates in the existing Levee System, the Contractor shall perform the work of this contract as follows:**

1. Only one drainage structure/flap gate will be allowed to be disrupted at one time. All proposed work at each drainage structure shall be completed before proceeding to the next structure.
2. The Contractor shall have all materials required for each structure installation secured on site, before beginning construction on that structure.
3. The Contractor shall have all necessary materials on site to temporarily plug existing and/or proposed piping through the levee.
4. Weather and river flow conditions shall be monitored at all times by the Contractor while each drainage structure is open to flow. The Contractor shall construct an adequate closure in a timely fashion to plug the drainage structure preventing flow through the levee.

END OF SECTION 31 24 13 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
31 24 13 00	31 01 20 00	Earthwork
31 24 13 00	31 23 16 26	Embankment



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





---

**SECTION 31 25 14 13 - GEOSYNTHETIC FABRIC****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing of labor, material and equipment for the installation of geosynthetic fabric.

**1.2 PRODUCTS****A. Materials**

1. Erosion Control Fabric - Photo and biodegradable plastic Curlex Blanket as manufactured by American Excelsior Co. or approved equal.
2. Drainage/Leach Bed - Non-woven polypropylene/polyethylene fabric, Mirafi 140N or approved equal.
3. Road Base and Structure Reinforcement - Woven polypropylene fabric, Mirafi 600X or approved equal.
4. Sediment and Job Site erosion control - woven polypropylene fabric - Envirofence by Mirafi or approved equal.

**1.3 EXECUTION**

- A. For sediment and job site erosion control fabric, the Contractor shall provide and install silt fence as detailed on the Storm Water Management and Erosion Control Plan. It shall be the Contractor's option to provide fabricated reinforced silt fence or prefabricated units, unless otherwise noted. In all installations, the bottom flap of filter cloth shall be firmly embedded into undisturbed or stabilized grade. Embedment shall resist pullout and prevent flow under the installation.

END OF SECTION 31 25 14 13



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
31 25 14 13	01 56 26 00	Sediment Removal
31 25 14 13	01 56 26 00a	Erosion Control
31 25 14 16	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
31 25 14 16	01 56 26 00	Sediment Removal
31 25 14 16	31 25 14 13	Geosynthetic Fabric
31 25 14 16	01 56 26 00a	Erosion Control



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

**SECTION 31 25 14 23 - UNIT PAVERS****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for unit pavers. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Summary**

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Brick pavers set in aggregate, bituminous or mortar setting beds.
  - b. Concrete pavers set in aggregate, bituminous or mortar setting beds.
  - c. Asphalt-block pavers set in bituminous setting beds.
  - d. Stone pavers set in aggregate or mortar setting beds.
  - e. Plastic or Steel or Aluminum edge restraints.
  - f. Cast-in-place concrete edge restraints.
  - g. Precast concrete curbs.
  - h. Stone curbs.

**C. Preconstruction Testing**

1. Preconstruction Adhesion and Compatibility Testing: Submit to latex-additive manufacturer, for testing as indicated below, samples of paving materials that will contact or affect mortar and grout that contain latex additives.
  - a. Use manufacturer's standard test methods to determine whether mortar and grout materials will obtain optimum adhesion with, and will be nonstaining to, installed pavers and other materials constituting paver installation.

**D. Action Submittals**

1. Product Data: For materials other than water and aggregates.
2. Product Data: For the following:
  - a. Pavers.
  - b. Bituminous setting materials.
  - c. Mortar and grout materials.
  - d. Edge restraints.
  - e. Precast concrete curbs.
  - f. Stone curbs.
3. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Certificates for Credit MR 5: For products and materials required to comply with requirements for regional materials, certificates indicating location of material manufacturer and point of extraction, harvest, or recovery for each raw material. Include statement indicating distance to Project, cost for each regional material, and fraction by weight that is considered regional.
4. Adhesion and Compatibility Test Reports: From latex-additive manufacturer for mortar and grout containing latex additives.
5. Sieve Analyses: For aggregate setting-bed materials, according to ASTM C 136.
6. Samples for Initial Selection: For the following:
  - a. Each type of unit paver indicated.
  - b. Joint materials involving color selection.
  - c. Exposed edge restraints involving color selection.
  - d. Precast concrete curbs.
  - e. Granite for stone curbs.
7. Samples for Verification:



- a. Full-size units of each type of unit paver indicated. Assemble no fewer than five Samples of each type of unit on suitable backing and grout joints.]
- b. Joint materials.
- c. Exposed edge restraints.
- d. Precast concrete curbs.
- e. Stone curbs.

E. Quality Assurance

1. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of unit paver, joint material, and setting material from single source with resources to provide materials and products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.
2. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
  - a. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Final Completion.
3. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Store pavers on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied.
2. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
3. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
4. Store liquids in tightly closed containers protected from freezing.
5. Store asphalt cement and other bituminous materials in tightly closed containers.

G. Project Conditions

1. Cold-Weather Protection: Do not use frozen materials or build on frozen subgrade or setting beds.
2. Weather Limitations for Bituminous Setting Bed:
  - a. Install bituminous setting bed only when ambient temperature is above 40 deg F (4 deg C) and when base is dry.
  - b. Apply asphalt adhesive only when ambient temperature is above 50 deg F (10 deg C) and when temperature has not been below 35 deg F (2 deg C) for 12 hours immediately before application. Do not apply when setting bed is wet or contains excess moisture.
3. Weather Limitations for Mortar and rout:
  - a. Cold-Weather Requirements: Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
  - b. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602. Provide artificial shade and windbreaks and use cooled materials as required. Do not apply mortar to substrates with temperatures of 100 deg F (38 deg C) and higher.
    - 1) When ambient temperature exceeds 100 deg F (38 deg C), or when wind velocity exceeds 8 mph (13 km/h) and ambient temperature exceeds 90 deg F (32 deg C), set pavers within 1 minute of spreading setting-bed mortar.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Brick Pavers

1. Regional Materials: Provide brick pavers that have been manufactured within 500 miles (800 km) of Project site from materials that have been extracted, harvested, or recovered, as well as manufactured, within 500 miles (800 km) of Project site.



2. Brick Pavers: Light-traffic paving brick; ASTM C 902; Class SX for exposure to freezing weather **OR** Class MX for exterior uses that do not expose brick to freezing, **as directed**, Type I for locations exposed to extensive abrasion, such as sidewalks and driveways in public spaces **OR** Type II for locations exposed to intermediate abrasion, such as heavily traveled residential walkways and driveways **OR** Type III for locations exposed to low abrasion, such as floors and patios exposed in single-family homes, **as directed**. Application PS normal tolerance for installation with grouted joints **OR** Application PX close tolerance for ungrouted joints **OR** Application PA non-uniform sized for decorative effect, **as directed**. Provide brick without frogs or cores in surfaces exposed to view in the completed Work.
  - a. Thickness: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) **OR** 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) **OR** 2-5/8 inches (67 mm), **as directed**.
  - b. Face Size: 3-3/4 by 7-1/2 inches (95 by 190 mm) **OR** 3-5/8 by 7-5/8 inches (92 by 194 mm) **OR** 3-5/8 by 11-5/8 inches (92 by 295 mm) **OR** 7-5/8 by 7-5/8 inches (194 by 194 mm) **OR** 4 by 8 inches (102 by 203 mm) **OR** 4 by 12 inches (102 by 305 mm) **OR** 8 by 8 inches (203 by 203 mm), **as directed**.
  - c. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
3. Brick Pavers: Heavy vehicular paving brick; ASTM C 1272, Type F, Application PX **OR** Type R, Application PS **OR** Type R, Application PX **OR** Type R, Application PA, **as directed**. Provide brick without frogs or cores in surfaces exposed to view in the completed Work.
  - a. Type R is for units set in a mortar setting bed or a bituminous setting bed supported by an adequate base. Type F is for units set in a sand setting bed with sand between the pavers. Application PS is for general use; Application PX is for pavers with close dimensional tolerances. Application PX must be selected if specifying Type F
  - b. Thickness: 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) **OR** 2-5/8 inches (67 mm), **as directed**.
  - c. Face Size: 3-3/4 by 7-1/2 inches (95 by 190 mm) **OR** 3-5/8 by 7-5/8 inches (92 by 194 mm) **OR** 3-5/8 by 11-5/8 inches (92 by 295 mm) **OR** 7-5/8 by 7-5/8 inches (194 by 194 mm) **OR** 4 by 8 inches (102 by 203 mm) **OR** 4 by 12 inches (102 by 305 mm) **OR** 8 by 8 inches (203 by 203 mm), **as directed**.
  - d. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
4. Efflorescence: Brick shall be rated "not effloresced" when tested according to ASTM C 67.
5. Temporary Protective Coating: Precoat exposed surfaces of brick pavers with a continuous film of a temporary protective coating that is compatible with brick, mortar, and grout products and can be removed without damaging grout or brick. Do not coat unexposed brick surfaces; handle brick to prevent coated surfaces from contacting backs or edges of other units. If, despite these precautions, coating does contact bonding surfaces of brick, remove coating from bonding surfaces before setting brick.

#### B. Concrete Pavers

1. Concrete Pavers: Solid interlocking paving units complying with ASTM C 936 and resistant to freezing and thawing when tested according to ASTM C 67, made from normal-weight aggregates.
  - a. Thickness: 2-3/8 inches (60 mm) **OR** 3-1/8 inches (80 mm), **as directed**.
  - b. Face Size and Shape: 3-7/8 inches (98 mm) square **OR** 4-7/16 inches (113 mm) **OR** 8-7/8 inches (225 mm) **OR** 9 inches (229 mm) square, **as directed**.
  - c. Face Size and Shape: 3-7/8-by-7-7/8 inch (98-by-200 mm) **OR** 4-by-8-inch (102-by-203-mm) **OR** 4-7/16-by-8-7/8 inch (113-by-225-mm), **as directed**, rectangle.
  - d. Face Size and Shape: 5-1/2-inch (140-mm) octagon with attached 3-1/2-inch (89-mm) square **OR** 4-1/2-by-9 inch (114-by-229 mm) rectangle with saw-tooth edges **OR** 4-3/4-inch (121-mm) rectangular and trapezoidal units arranged in semicircular courses to produce fan-shaped pattern, **as directed**.
  - e. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
2. Concrete Pavers: Solid paving units, made from normal-weight concrete with a compressive strength not less than 5000 psi (34 MPa) **OR** 6000 psi (41 MPa), **as directed**, water absorption not more than 5 percent according to ASTM C 140, and no breakage and not more than 1 percent mass loss when tested for freeze-thaw resistance according to ASTM C 67.



- a. Thickness: 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) **OR** 1-3/4 inches (45 mm) **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 2-3/8 inches (60 mm), **as directed**.
  - b. Face Size and Shape: 8-7/8 inches (225 mm) square **OR** 9 inches (229 mm) square **OR** 12 inches (305 mm) square **OR** 18 inches (457 mm) square **OR** 24 inches (610 mm) square, **as directed**.
  - c. Face Size and Shape: 9-by-18 inch (229-by-457 mm) **OR** 12-by-24 inch (305-by-610 mm), **as directed**, rectangle.
  - d. Face Size and Shape: As indicated.
  - e. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
3. Concrete Pavers: Solid paving units complying with ASTM C 1491, made from lightweight concrete.
- a. Thickness: 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) **OR** 1-3/4 inches (45 mm) **OR** 2 inches (51 mm), **as directed**.
  - b. Face Size and Shape: 9 inches (229 mm) square **OR** 12 inches (305 mm) square **OR** 18 inches (457 mm) square, **as directed**.
  - c. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
- C. Asphalt-Block Pavers
1. Asphalt-Block Pavers: Solid units made from asphalt cement complying with ASTM D 312, Type III; inorganic stone dust or cement filler; and coarse aggregate, consisting of clean, hard, unweathered stone crushed into angular particles varying in size up to 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
    - a. Thickness: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 3 inches (76 mm), **as directed**.
    - b. Face Size: 4 by 6 inches (102 by 152 mm) **OR** 6 by 6 inches (152 by 152 mm) **OR** 8 by 8 inches (203 by 203 mm) **OR** 5 by 12 inches (127 by 305 mm) **OR** 6 by 12 inches (152 by 305 mm) **OR** 8-inch- (203-mm-) wide hexagon, **as directed**.
    - c. Finish: Natural, smooth **OR** Ground **OR** Ground and sandblasted, **as directed**.
    - d. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
- D. Stone Pavers
1. Granite Pavers: Rectangular paving slabs made from granite complying with ASTM C 615
    - a. Color and Grain: Light gray **OR** Dark gray **OR** Buff **OR** White **OR** Black **OR** Pink, **as directed**, with medium **OR** fine, **as directed**, grain.
    - b. Finish: Honed **OR** Thermal, **as directed**.
    - c. Match Architect's samples for color, finish, and other stone characteristics relating to aesthetic effects.
    - d. Thickness: Not less than 3/4 inch (20 mm) **OR** 30 mm **OR** 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) **OR** 1-5/8 inches (40 mm), **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
    - e. Face Size: 9 inches (229 mm) square **OR** 12 inches (305 mm) square **OR** 18 inches (457 mm) square **OR** 9 by 18 inches (229 by 457 mm), **as directed**.
  2. Limestone Pavers: Rectangular paving slabs made from limestone complying with ASTM C 568.
    - a. Classification: II Medium-Density **OR** III High-Density, **as directed**.
    - b. Stone Abrasion Resistance: Minimum value of 10, based on testing according to ASTM C 241 or ASTM C 1353.
    - c. Finish: Smooth **OR** Chat sawed **OR** Shot sawed, **as directed**.
    - d. Match Architect's samples for color, finish, and other stone characteristics relating to aesthetic effects.
    - e. Thickness: Not less than 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) **OR** 1-5/8 inches (40 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
    - f. Face Size: 9 inches (229 mm) square **OR** 12 inches (305 mm) square **OR** 18 inches (457 mm) square **OR** 9 by 18 inches (229 by 457 mm), **as directed**.
  3. Marble Pavers: Rectangular paving slabs made from marble complying with ASTM C 503.
    - a. Stone Abrasion Resistance: Minimum value of 10, based on testing according to ASTM C 241 or ASTM C 1353.
    - b. Description: Uniform, fine- to medium-grained, white stone with only slight veining.





- c. Finish: Honed **OR as directed.**
  - d. Match samples for color, finish, and other stone characteristics relating to aesthetic effects.
  - e. Thickness: Not less than 3/4 inch (20 mm) **OR 30 mm OR 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), as directed.**
  - f. Face Size: 9 inches (229 mm) square **OR 12 inches (305 mm) square OR 18 inches (457 mm) square OR 9 by 18 inches (229 by 457 mm) as directed.**
4. Quartz-Based Stone Pavers: Rectangular paving slabs **OR** Random polygonal flagstones made from quartz-based stone complying with ASTM C 616, Classification I Sandstone **OR** II Quartzitic Sandstone **OR** III Quartzite, **as directed.**
- a. Stone Abrasion Resistance: Minimum value of 10, based on testing according to ASTM C 241 or ASTM C 1353.
  - b. Finish: Sand rubbed **OR** Natural cleft **OR** Thermal, **as directed.**
  - c. Match samples for color, finish, and other stone characteristics relating to aesthetic effects.
  - d. Thickness: Not less than 1 inch (25 mm) **OR 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) OR 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) OR 1-5/8 inches (40 mm) OR 2 inches (50 mm), as directed.**
  - e. Face Size: 9 inches (229 mm) square **OR 12 inches (305 mm) square OR 18 inches (457 mm) square OR 9 by 18 inches (229 by 457 mm), as directed.**
5. Slate Pavers: Rectangular paving slabs **OR** Random polygonal flagstones made from slate complying with ASTM C 629, Classification I Exterior, with a fine, even grain and unfading color, from clear, sound stock.
- a. Color: Black **OR** Blue-black **OR** Gray **OR** Blue-gray **OR** Green **OR** Purple **OR** Mottled purple and green **OR** Red, **as directed.**
  - b. Stone Abrasion Resistance: Minimum value of 8, based on testing according to ASTM C 241 or ASTM C 1353.
  - c. Finish: Honed **OR** Sand rubbed **OR** Natural cleft, **as directed.**
  - d. Match samples for color, finish, and other stone characteristics relating to aesthetic effects.
  - e. Thickness: Not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR 3/4 inch (20 mm) OR 1 inch (25 mm), as directed.**
  - f. Face Size: 9 inches (229 mm) square **OR 12 inches (305 mm) square OR 18 inches (457 mm) square OR 9 by 18 inches (229 by 457 mm), as directed.**
6. Travertine Pavers: Rectangular paving slabs made from travertine complying with ASTM C 1527, Classification I Exterior.
- a. Stone Abrasion Resistance: Minimum value of 10, based on testing according to ASTM C 241 or ASTM C 1353.
  - b. Cut: Vein cut.
  - c. Filling: Fill pores on faces of stone with cementitious filler of color as selected by the Owner.
  - d. Finish: Honed **OR as directed.**
  - e. Match samples for color, finish, and other stone characteristics relating to aesthetic effects.
  - f. Thickness: Not less than 3/4 inch (20 mm) **OR 30 mm OR 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), as directed.**
  - g. Face Size: 9 inches (229 mm) square **OR 12 inches (305 mm) square OR 18 inches (457 mm) square OR 9 by 18 inches (229 by 457 mm), as directed.**
7. Rough-Stone Pavers: Rectangular tumbled paving stones, with split or thermal-finished faces and edges, made from granite complying with ASTM C 615.
- a. Granite Color and Grain: Light gray **OR** Dark gray **OR** Buff **OR** White **OR** Black **OR** Pink, **as directed**, with medium **OR** fine, **as directed**, grain.
  - b. Thickness: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) **OR 2 inches (51 mm) OR 3 inches (76 mm) OR 4 inches (102 mm) OR 4 inches (102 mm), plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm), as directed.**
  - c. Face Size: 4 by 4 inches (100 by 100 mm), plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR 3 to 5 inches (75 to 125 mm) by 8 to 12 inches (200 to 300 mm), as directed.**
- E. Curbs And Edge Restraints
- 1. Plastic Edge Restraints: Manufacturer's standard triangular PVC extrusions 1-3/4 inches (45 mm) high by 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) wide **OR 3-1/8 inches (79 mm) high by 9-1/2 inches (241 mm) wide, as directed**, designed to serve as edge restraints for unit pavers; rigid type for straight



edges and flexible type for curved edges, with pipe connectors and 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) diameter by 12-inch- (300-mm-) long steel spikes.

2. Steel Edge Restraints: Manufacturer's standard painted steel edging 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) thick by 4 inches (100 mm) high **OR** 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) thick by 5 inches (125 mm) high, **as directed** with loops pressed from or welded to face to receive stakes at 36 inches (900 mm) o.c., and steel stakes 15 inches (380 mm) long for each loop.
  - a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
3. Aluminum Edge Restraints: Manufacturer's standard straight, 1/8-inch- (3.2-mm-) thick by 4-inch- (100-mm-) high **OR** straight, 3/16-inch- (4.8-mm-) thick by 4-inch- (100-mm-) high **OR** L-shaped, 1/8-inch- (3.2-mm-) thick by 1-3/8-inch- (35-mm-) high **OR** L-shaped, 3/16-inch- (4.8-mm-) thick by 2-1/4-inch- (57-mm-) high, **as directed** extruded-aluminum edging with loops pressed from face to receive stakes at 12 inches (300 mm) o.c., and aluminum stakes 12 inches (300 mm) long for each loop.
4. Job-Built Concrete Edge Restraints: Comply with requirements in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, ready-mixed concrete with minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20 MPa).
5. Precast Concrete Curbs: Made from normal-weight concrete with a compressive strength not less than 5000 psi (34 MPa) **OR** 6000 psi (41 MPa), **as directed** and water absorption not more than 5 percent, in shapes and sizes indicated.
6. Stone Curbs: Granite curbing, with face battered 1 inch per foot (1:12), produced in random lengths not less than 36 inches (900 mm) from granite complying with ASTM C 615.
  - a. Granite Color and Grain: Light gray **OR** Dark gray **OR** Buff **OR** White **OR** Black **OR** Pink, **as directed** with fine **OR** medium **OR** coarse grain, **as directed**.
  - b. Top Width: 4 inches (102 mm) **OR** 5 inches (127 mm) **OR** 6 inches (152 mm), **as directed**.
  - c. Face Height: 4 inches (102 mm) **OR** 6 inches (152 mm) **OR** 8 inches (203 mm), **as directed**.
  - d. Total Height: 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** 16 inches (406 mm) **OR** 18 inches (457 mm), **as directed**.
  - e. Top Finish: Sawed **OR** Thermal **OR** Bush hammered, **as directed**.
  - f. Face Finish: Split **OR** Sawed **OR** Thermal **OR** Bush hammered, **as directed**.

#### F. Accessories

1. Cork Joint Filler: Preformed strips complying with ASTM D 1752, Type II.
2. Compressible Foam Filler: Preformed strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1.

#### G. Aggregate Setting-Bed Materials

1. Graded Aggregate for Sub-base: Sound, crushed stone or gravel complying with ASTM D 448 for Size No. 57 **OR** ASTM D 2940, sub-base material **OR** requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for sub-base material, **as directed**.
2. Graded Aggregate for Base: Sound, crushed stone or gravel complying with ASTM D 448 for Size No. 8 **OR** ASTM D 2940, base material **OR** requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for base course, **as directed**.
3. Sand for Leveling Course: Sound, sharp, washed, natural sand or crushed stone complying with gradation requirements in ASTM C 33 for fine aggregate.
4. Stone Screenings for Leveling Course: Sound stone screenings complying with ASTM D 448 for Size No. 10.
5. Sand for Joints: Fine, sharp, washed, natural sand or crushed stone with 100 percent passing No. 16 (1.18-mm) sieve and no more than 10 percent passing No. 200 (0.075-mm) sieve.
  - a. Provide sand of color needed to produce required joint color.
6. Separation Geotextile: Woven geotextile fabric, manufactured for separation applications; made from polyolefins or polyesters, with elongation less than 50 percent; complying with AASHTO M 288 and the following, measured per test methods referenced:
  - a. Survivability: Class 2, AASHTO M 288.
  - b. Apparent Opening Size: No. 60 (0.250-mm) sieve, maximum; ASTM D 4751.



- c. Permittivity: 0.02 per second, minimum; ASTM D 4491.
  - d. UV Stability: 50 percent after 500 hours' exposure, ASTM D 4355.
  7. Drainage Geotextile: Nonwoven needle-punched geotextile made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation greater than 50 percent; complying with AASHTO M 288 and the following, measured per test methods referenced:
    - a. Survivability: Class 2, AASHTO M 288.
    - b. Apparent Opening Size: No. 40 (0.425-mm) sieve, maximum; ASTM D 4751.
    - c. Permittivity: 0.5 per second, minimum; ASTM D 4491.
    - d. UV Stability: 50 percent after 500 hours' exposure, ASTM D 4355.
  8. Herbicide: Commercial chemical for weed control, registered with the EPA. Provide in granular, liquid, or wettable powder form.
- H. Bituminous Setting-Bed Materials
1. Primer for Base: ASTM D 2028, cutback asphalt, grade as recommended by unit paver manufacturer.
  2. Fine Aggregate for Setting Bed: ASTM D 1073, No. 2 or No. 3.
  3. Asphalt Cement: ASTM D 3381, Viscosity Grade AC-10 or Grade AC-20.
  4. Neoprene-Modified Asphalt Adhesive: Paving manufacturer's standard adhesive consisting of oxidized asphalt combined with 2 percent neoprene and 10 percent long-fibered mineral fibers containing no asbestos.
  5. Sand for Joints: Fine, sharp, washed, natural sand or crushed stone with 100 percent passing No. 16 (1.18-mm) sieve and no more than 10 percent passing No. 200 (0.075-mm) sieve.
    - a. Provide sand of color needed to produce required joint color.
- I. Mortar Setting-Bed Materials
1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II.
  2. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
  3. Sand: ASTM C 144.
  4. Latex Additive: Manufacturer's standard, acrylic resin or styrene-butadiene-rubber water emulsion, **as directed** serving as replacement for part or all of gaging water, of type specifically recommended by latex-additive manufacturer for use with field-mixed portland cement and aggregate mortar bed, and not containing a retarder.
  5. Thinset Mortar: Latex-modified portland cement mortar complying with ANSI A118.4.
    - a. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix containing dry, redispersible, vinyl acetate or acrylic additive to which only water must be added at Project site.
    - b. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix combined with acrylic resin or styrene-butadiene-rubber liquid-latex additive at Project site, as directed.
  6. Water: Potable.
  7. Reinforcing Wire Fabric: Galvanized, welded wire fabric, 2-by-2-inch (51-by-51-mm) by 0.062-inch- (1.57-mm-) diameter wire; comply with ASTM A 1064/A 1064M and ASTM A 82/A 82M except for minimum wire size.
- J. Grout Materials
1. Sand-Portland Cement Grout: ANSI A108.10, composed of white or gray cement, unfading mineral pigments and white or colored sand as required to produce required color.
    - a. Colored Mortar Pigments for Grout: Natural and synthetic iron and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar and grout mixes. Use only pigments that have proved, through testing and experience, to be satisfactory for use in portland cement grout.
  2. Standard Cement Grout: ANSI A118.6, sanded.
  3. Polymer-Modified Grout: ANSI A118.7, sanded grout; in color indicated.
    - a. Polymer Type: Ethylene-vinyl acetate or acrylic additive in dry, redispersible form; prepackaged with other dry ingredients.
    - b. Polymer Type: Acrylic resin or styrene-butadiene rubber in liquid-latex form for addition to prepackaged dry-grout mix.
  4. Grout Colors: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
  5. Water: Potable.



- K. Bituminous Setting-Bed Mix
1. Mix bituminous setting-bed materials at an asphalt plant in approximate proportion, by weight, of 7 percent asphalt cement to 93 percent fine aggregate, unless otherwise indicated. Heat mixture to 300 deg F (149 deg C).
- L. Mortar And Grout Mixes
1. General: Comply with referenced standards and with manufacturers' written instructions. Discard mortars and grout if they have reached their initial set before being used.
  2. Mortar-Bed Bond Coat: Mix neat cement or cement and sand with latex additive **OR** water, **as directed**, to a creamy consistency.
  3. Portland Cement-Lime Setting-Bed Mortar: Type M complying with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification.
  4. Latex-Modified, Portland Cement Setting-Bed Mortar: Proportion and mix portland cement, sand, and latex additive for setting bed to comply with written instructions of latex-additive manufacturer and as necessary to produce stiff mixture with a moist surface when bed is ready to receive pavers.
  5. Latex-Modified, Portland Cement Slurry Bond Coat: Proportion and mix portland cement, aggregate, and liquid latex for bond coat to comply with written instructions of liquid-latex manufacturer.
  6. Thinset Mortar Bond Coat: Proportion and mix thinset mortar ingredients according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  7. Job-Mixed Portland Cement Grout: Proportion and mix job-mixed portland cement and aggregate grout to match setting-bed mortar except omit hydrated lime and use enough water to produce a pourable mixture.
    - a. Pigmented Grout: Select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Do not exceed pigment-to-cement ratio of 1:10, by weight.
    - b. Colored-Aggregate Grout: Produce color required by combining colored sand with portland cement of selected color.
  8. Package Grout Mix: Proportion and mix grout ingredients according to grout manufacturer's written instructions.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Examination
1. Examine areas indicated to receive paving, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
  2. Where pavers are to be installed over waterproofing, examine waterproofing installation, with waterproofing Installer present, for protection from paving operations, including areas where waterproofing system is turned up or flashed against vertical surfaces.
  3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and waterproofing protection is in place.
- B. Preparation
1. Remove substances from concrete substrates that could impair mortar bond, including curing and sealing compounds, form oil, and laitance.
  2. Sweep concrete substrates to remove dirt, dust, debris, and loose particles.
  3. Proof-roll prepared subgrade according to requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Proceed with unit paver installation only after deficient subgrades have been corrected and are ready to receive subbase and base course for unit pavers.
- C. Installation, General
1. Do not use unit pavers with chips, cracks, voids, discolorations, or other defects that might be visible or cause staining in finished work.



2. Mix pavers from several pallets or cubes, as they are placed, to produce uniform blend of colors and textures.
3. Cut unit pavers with motor-driven masonry saw equipment to provide pattern indicated and to fit adjoining work neatly. Use full units without cutting where possible.
  - a. For concrete pavers, a block splitter may be used.
4. Handle protective-coated brick pavers to prevent coated surfaces from contacting backs or edges of other units. If, despite these precautions, coating does contact bonding surfaces of brick, remove coating from bonding surfaces before setting brick.
5. Joint Pattern: Running bond **OR** Herringbone **OR** Basket weave **OR** Match and continue existing unit paver joint pattern, **as directed**.
6. Pavers over Waterproofing: Exercise care in placing pavers and setting materials over waterproofing so protection materials are not displaced and waterproofing is not punctured or otherwise damaged. Carefully replace protection materials that become displaced and arrange for repair of damaged waterproofing before covering with paving.
  - a. Provide joint filler at waterproofing that is turned up on vertical surfaces, unless otherwise indicated; where unfilled joints are indicated, provide temporary filler or protection until paver installation is complete.
7. Tolerances: For smooth pavers where slopes to drains are critical. Do not exceed 1/32-inch (0.8-mm) unit-to-unit offset from flush (lippage) nor 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m) from level, or indicated slope, for finished surface of paving.

**OR**

Tolerances: For smooth, flat pavers. Do not exceed 1/16-inch (1.6-mm) unit-to-unit offset from flush (lippage) nor 1/8 inch in 24 inches (3 mm in 600 mm) and 1/4 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in 3 m) from level, or indicated slope, for finished surface of paving.
8. Expansion and Control Joints: Provide for sealant-filled joints at locations and of widths indicated. Provide compressible foam filler as backing for sealant-filled joints unless otherwise indicated; where unfilled joints are indicated, provide temporary filler until paver installation is complete. Install joint filler before setting pavers. Sealant materials and installation are specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".

**OR**

Expansion and Control Joints: Provide cork joint filler at locations and of widths indicated. Install joint filler before setting pavers. Make top of joint filler flush with top of pavers.
9. Provide edge restraints as indicated. Install edge restraints before placing unit pavers.
  - a. Install edge restraints to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install stakes at intervals required to hold edge restraints in place during and after unit paver installation.
  - b. For metal edge restraints with top edge exposed, drive stakes at least 1 inch (25 mm) below top edge.
  - c. Install job-built concrete edge restraints to comply with requirements in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
  - d. Where pavers set in mortar bed are indicated as edge restraints for pavers set in aggregate setting bed, install pavers set in mortar and allow mortar to cure before placing aggregate setting bed and remainder of pavers. Cut off mortar bed at a steep angle so it will not interfere with aggregate setting bed.
  - e. Where pavers embedded in concrete are indicated as edge restraints for pavers set in aggregate setting bed, install pavers embedded in concrete and allow concrete to cure before placing aggregate setting bed and remainder of pavers. Hold top of concrete below aggregate setting bed.
10. Provide steps made of pavers as indicated. Install paver steps before installing adjacent pavers.
  - a. Where pavers set in mortar bed are indicated for steps constructed adjacent to pavers set in aggregate setting bed, install steps and allow mortar to cure before placing aggregate setting bed and remainder of pavers. Cut off mortar bed at a steep angle so it will not interfere with aggregate setting bed.

D. Aggregate Setting-Bed Applications

1. Compact soil subgrade uniformly to at least 95 percent of ASTM D 698 **OR** ASTM D 1557, **as directed**, laboratory density.



2. Proof-roll prepared subgrade to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.
3. Place separation geotextile over prepared subgrade, overlapping ends and edges at least 12 inches (300 mm).
4. Place aggregate subbase and base **OR** base, **as directed**.
  - a. For light-traffic compact by tamping with plate vibrator, and screed to depth indicated.
  - b. For heavy duty compact to 100 percent of ASTM D 1557 maximum laboratory density, and screed to depth indicated.
5. Place drainage geotextile over compacted base course, overlapping ends and edges at least 12 inches (300 mm).
6. Place leveling course and screed to a thickness of 1 to 1-1/2 inches (25 to 38 mm), taking care that moisture content remains constant and density is loose and constant until pavers are set and compacted.
7. Treat leveling course with herbicide to inhibit growth of grass and weeds.
8. Set pavers with a minimum joint width of 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) and a maximum of 1/8 inch (3 mm), being careful not to disturb leveling base. If pavers have spacer bars, place pavers hand tight against spacer bars. Use string lines to keep straight lines. Fill gaps between units that exceed 3/8 inch (10 mm) with pieces cut to fit from full-size unit pavers.
  - a. When installation is performed with mechanical equipment, use only unit pavers with spacer bars on sides of each unit.
9. Vibrate pavers into leveling course with a low-amplitude plate vibrator capable of a 3500- to 5000-lbf (16- to 22-kN) compaction force at 80 to 90 Hz. Use vibrator with neoprene mat on face of plate or other means as needed to prevent cracking and chipping of pavers. Perform at least three passes across paving with vibrator.
  - a. Compact pavers when there is sufficient surface to accommodate operation of vibrator, leaving at least 36 inches (900 mm) of uncompacted pavers adjacent to temporary edges.
  - b. Before ending each day's work, compact installed concrete pavers except for 36-inch (900 mm) width of uncompacted pavers adjacent to temporary edges (laying faces).
  - c. As work progresses to perimeter of installation, compact installed pavers that are adjacent to permanent edges unless they are within 36 inches (90 mm) of laying face.
  - d. Before ending each day's work and when rain interrupts work, cover pavers that have not been compacted and cover leveling course on which pavers have not been placed with nonstaining plastic sheets to protect them from rain.
10. Spread dry sand and fill joints immediately after vibrating pavers into leveling course. Vibrate pavers and add sand until joints are completely filled, then remove excess sand. Leave a slight surplus of sand on the surface for joint filling.
11. Do not allow traffic on installed pavers until sand has been vibrated into joints.
12. Repeat joint-filling process 30 days later.

#### E. Bituminous Setting-Bed Applications

1. Apply primer to concrete slab or binder course immediately before placing setting bed.
2. Prepare for setting-bed placement by locating 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) deep control bars approximately 11 feet (3.3 m) apart, to serve as guides for striking board. Adjust bars for accurate setting of paving units to finished grades indicated.
3. Place bituminous setting bed between control bars. Spread mix at a minimum temperature of 250 deg F (121 deg C). Strike setting bed smooth, firm, even, and not less than 3/4 inch (19 mm) thick. Add fresh bituminous material to low, porous spots after each pass of striking board. Carefully fill depressions that remain after removing depth-control bars.
  - a. Roll setting bed with power roller to a nominal depth of 3/4 inch (19 mm). Adjust thickness as necessary to allow accurate setting of unit pavers to finished grades indicated. Complete rolling before mix temperature cools to 185 deg F (85 deg C).
4. Apply neoprene-modified asphalt adhesive to cold setting bed by squeegeeing or troweling to a uniform thickness of 1/16 inch (1.6 mm). Proceed with setting of paving units only after adhesive is tacky and surface is dry to touch.



5. Place pavers carefully by hand in straight courses, maintaining accurate alignment and uniform top surface. Protect newly laid pavers with plywood panels on which workers can stand. Advance protective panels as work progresses, but maintain protection in areas subject to continued movement of materials and equipment to avoid creating depressions or disrupting alignment of pavers. If additional leveling of paving is required, and before treating joints, roll paving with power roller after sufficient heat has built up in the surface from several days of hot weather.
6. Joint Treatment: Place unit pavers with hand-tight joints. Fill joints by sweeping sand over paved surface until joints are filled. Remove excess sand after joints are filled.

F. Mortar Setting-Bed Applications

1. Saturate concrete sub-base with clean water several hours before placing setting bed. Remove surface water about one hour before placing setting bed.
2. Apply mortar-bed bond coat over surface of concrete sub-base about 15 minutes before placing setting bed. Limit area of bond coat to avoid its drying out before placing setting bed. Do not exceed 1/16-inch (1.6-mm) thickness for bond coat.
3. Apply mortar bed over bond coat immediately after applying bond coat. Spread and screed to subgrade elevations required for accurate setting of pavers to finished grades indicated.
4. Place reinforcing wire over concrete sub-base, lapped at joints by at least one full mesh and supported so mesh becomes embedded in the middle of setting bed. Hold edges back from vertical surfaces approximately 1/2 inch (13 mm).
5. Place mortar bed with reinforcing wire fully embedded in middle of setting bed. Spread and screed setting bed to uniform thickness at subgrade elevations required for accurate setting of pavers to finished grades indicated.
6. Mix and place only that amount of mortar that can be covered with pavers before initial set. Cut back and discard setting-bed material that has reached initial set before placing pavers.
7. Wet brick pavers before laying if the initial rate of absorption exceeds 30 g/30 sq. in. (30 g/194 sq. cm) per minute when tested per ASTM C 67. Allow units to absorb water so they are damp but not wet at time of laying.
8. Place pavers before initial set of cement occurs. Immediately before placing pavers, apply uniform 1/16-inch- (1.5-mm-) thick, slurry bond coat to bed or to back of each paver.
9. Tamp or beat pavers with a wooden block or rubber mallet to obtain full contact with setting bed and to bring finished surfaces within indicated tolerances. Set each paver in a single operation before initial set of mortar; do not return to areas already set or disturb pavers for purposes of realigning finished surfaces or adjusting joints.
10. Spaced Joint Widths: Provide 3/8-inch (10-mm) **OR** 1/2-inch (13-mm) **OR** 3/4-inch (19-mm), **as directed**, nominal joint width with variations not exceeding plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) **OR** 1/8 inch (3 mm) **OR** 3/16 inch (4.5 mm), **as directed**.
11. Grouted Joints: Grout paver joints complying with ANSI A108.10.
12. Grout joints as soon as possible after initial set of setting bed.
  - a. Force grout into joints, taking care not to smear grout on adjoining surfaces.
  - b. Clean pavers as grouting progresses by dry brushing or rubbing with dry burlap to remove smears before tooling joints.
  - c. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard.
  - d. If tooling squeezes grout from joints, remove excess grout and smears by dry brushing or rubbing with dry burlap and tool joints again to produce a uniform appearance.
13. Cure grout by maintaining in a damp condition for seven days, unless otherwise recommended by grout or liquid-latex manufacturer.

G. Repairing, Pointing, And Cleaning

1. Remove and replace unit pavers that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Provide new units to match adjoining units and install in same manner as original units, with same joint treatment and with no evidence of replacement.
2. Pointing: During tooling of joints, enlarge voids or holes and completely fill with grout. Point joints at sealant joints to provide a neat, uniform appearance, properly prepared for sealant application.



- 
3. Cleaning: Remove excess grout from exposed paver surfaces; wash and scrub clean.
    - a. Remove temporary protective coating as recommended by coating manufacturer and as acceptable to paver and grout manufacturers.
    - b. Do not allow protective coating to enter floor drains. Trap, collect, and remove coating material.

END OF SECTION 31 25 14 23





---

**SECTION 31 25 14 23a - SPRAY APPLICATIONS, SEAL COATS, AND SURFACE TREATMENTS****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for the spray applications, seal coats, and surface treatments of asphalt concrete pavements. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Submittals**

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

**1.2 PRODUCTS**

- A. Bituminous Material: Bituminous material shall be liquid asphalt complying with ASTM D 2028, Grade RC-250, or tar complying with ASTM D 490, Grade RT-6.

- B. Aggregate: Aggregates shall consist of crushed stone, crushed gravel, or crushed slag. The moisture content of the aggregate shall be such that the aggregate will be readily coated with the bituminous material. Aggregate gradations shall be in compliance with ASTM C 136.

**C. Construction Equipment**

1. Bituminous Distributor shall be designed and equipped to distribute the bituminous material uniformly at even heat on variable widths of surface at readily determined and controlled rates and pressures recommended by the manufacturer and with an allowable variation from any specified rate not exceeding 5 percent.
2. Single-Pass Surface Treatment Machine shall be capable of distributing the bituminous material and aggregates uniformly in controlled amounts in a single-pass operation over the surface to be sealed.
3. Heating Equipment for Storage Tanks shall consist of steam coils, hot oil coils, or electrical coils. If steam or hot oil coils are used, the coils must be so designed and maintained that the bituminous material cannot become contaminated.
4. Power Rollers shall be the self-propelled tandem and three-wheel type rollers, weighing not less than 5 tons and shall be suitable for rolling bituminous pavements.
5. Self-Propelled Pneumatic-Tired rollers shall have a total compacting width of not less than 60 inches. The gross weight shall be adjustable within the ranges of 200 to 350 lb/in. of compacting width.
6. Spreading Equipment: Aggregate spreading equipment shall be adjustable and capable of spreading aggregate at controlled amounts per square yard.
7. Drags: Broom drags shall consist of brooms mounted on a frame, designed to spread fine aggregate uniformly over the surface of a bituminous pavement. Towing equipment shall have pneumatic tires.
8. Brooms and Blowers shall be of the power type and shall be suitable for cleaning surfaces of bituminous pavements.

**1.3 EXECUTION****A. Installation**

1. Spreading Aggregate: Application of seal aggregate shall immediately follow the application of bituminous material, and in no case shall the time to application exceed 15 minutes.



- 
2. Brooming and Rolling: Begin the rolling operations immediately following the application of cover aggregate. Rolling shall be accomplished with pneumatic-tired rollers; steel-wheeled rollers shall be used in a supplementary capacity only. All surplus aggregate shall be swept off the surface and removed not less than 26 hours or more than four days after rolling is completed.

END OF SECTION 31 25 14 23a



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
31 25 14 23	01 56 26 00	Sediment Removal
31 25 14 23	31 25 14 13	Geosynthetic Fabric
31 25 14 23	01 56 26 00a	Erosion Control
31 25 14 23	03 31 13 00	Cement Concrete Pavement
31 25 14 23	03 31 13 00a	Roller Compacted Concrete Pavement



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

**SECTION 31 25 14 26 - SILT FENCES****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing of labor, material and equipment for the installation of silt fencing.

**1.2 PRODUCTS****A. Materials**

1. Fabricated Units
  - a. Posts: 36" long, 2" hardwood or "T" or "U" type steel.
  - b. Fence: Woven wire, 14-1/2 ga. 6-inch max. mesh opening.
  - c. Filter Cloth: MIRAFL 100X or approved equal.
2. Prefabricated Units
  - a. Envirofence by MIRAFL or approved equal.

**1.3 EXECUTION**

- A. The Contractor shall provide and install silt fences as directed by the Owner. It shall be the Contractor's option to provide fabricated reinforced silt fence or prefabricated units, unless otherwise directed. In all installations, the bottom flap of filter cloth shall be firmly embedded into undisturbed or stabilized grade. Embedment shall resist pullout and prevent flow under the installation.

END OF SECTION 31 25 14 26



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
31 25 14 26	01 56 26 00	Sediment Removal
31 25 14 26	01 56 26 00a	Erosion Control



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





## SECTION 31 31 16 13 - TERMITE CONTROL

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for termite control. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Soil and wood treatment with termiticide.
  - b. Bait-station system.
  - c. Metal mesh barrier system.
  - d. Polymer sheet barrier system with termiticide.
  - e. Polymer barrier fittings with termiticide for installation around utility penetrations.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of termite control product.
  - a. Include the EPA-Registered Label for termiticide products.
2. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
3. Product Certificates: For termite control products, from manufacturer.
4. Soil Treatment Application Report: After application of termiticide is completed, submit report for Owner's records and include the following:
  - a. Date and time of application.
  - b. Moisture content of soil before application.
  - c. Termiticide brand name and manufacturer.
  - d. Quantity of undiluted termiticide used.
  - e. Dilutions, methods, volumes used, and rates of application.
  - f. Areas of application.
  - g. Water source for application.
5. Wood Treatment Application Report: After application of termiticide is completed, submit report for Owner's records and include the following:
  - a. Date and time of application.
  - b. Termiticide brand name and manufacturer.
  - c. Quantity of undiluted termiticide used.
  - d. Dilutions, methods, volumes used, and rates of application.
  - e. Areas of application.
6. Bait-Station System Application Report: After installation of bait-station system is completed, submit report for Owner's records and include the following:
  - a. Location of areas and sites conducive to termite feeding and activity.
  - b. Plan drawing showing number and locations of bait stations.
  - c. Dated report for each monitoring and inspection occurrence indicating level of termite activity, procedure, and treatment applied before time of Final Completion.
  - d. Termiticide brand name and manufacturer.
  - e. Quantities of termiticide and nontoxic termite bait used.
  - f. Schedule of inspections for one year from date of Final Completion.
7. Polymer Sheet Barrier System with Termiticide Application Report: After installation of polymer sheet barrier system with termiticide is completed, submit report for Owner's records and include the following:
  - a. Plan drawing showing extent of sheet barrier and number and locations of each type of polymer barrier fitting.
  - b. Termiticide brand name and manufacturer.



- c. Schedule of inspections for one year from date of Final Completion.
  8. Polymer Barrier Fittings with Termiticide Application Report: After installation of polymer barrier fittings with termiticide is completed, submit report for Owner's records and include the following:
    - a. Plan drawing showing number and locations of each type of polymer barrier fitting with termiticide.
    - b. Termiticide brand name and manufacturer.
    - c. Schedule of inspections for one year from date of Final Completion.
  9. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.
- D. Quality Assurance
  1. Installer Qualifications: A specialist who is licensed according to regulations of authorities having jurisdiction to apply termite control treatment and products in jurisdiction where Project is located, and who employs workers trained and approved by manufacturer to install manufacturer's products.
  2. Regulatory Requirements: Formulate and apply termiticides and termiticide devices according to the EPA-Registered Label.
  3. Source Limitations: Obtain termite control products from single source.
  4. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
- E. Project Conditions
  1. Environmental Limitations: To ensure penetration, do not treat soil that is water saturated or frozen. Do not treat soil while precipitation is occurring. Comply with requirements of the EPA-Registered Label and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Coordinate soil treatment application with excavating, filling, grading, and concreting operations. Treat soil under footings, grade beams, and ground-supported slabs before construction.
  3. Apply wood treatment after framing, sheathing, and exterior weather protection is completed but before electrical and mechanical systems are installed.
  4. Install bait-station system during construction to determine areas of termite activity and after construction, including landscaping, is completed.
  5. Install polymer sheet barrier system with termiticide prior to placing concrete slab reinforcement and pouring concrete and after installation and inspection of footings, foundations, and plumbing and electrical pipes and conduits.
  6. Install polymer barrier fittings with termiticide around utility penetrations prior to pouring concrete and after installation and inspection of plumbing and electrical pipes and conduits, slab vapor barrier, and concrete slab reinforcement.
- F. Warranty
  1. Soil Treatment Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by Applicator and Contractor, certifying that termite control work, consisting of applied soil termiticide treatment, will prevent infestation of subterranean termites. If subterranean termite activity or damage is discovered during warranty period, re-treat soil and repair or replace damage caused by termite infestation.
    - a. Warranty Period: Three **OR** Five, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.
  2. Wood Treatment Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by Applicator and Contractor, certifying that termite control work, consisting of applied wood termiticide treatment, will prevent infestation of subterranean termites. If subterranean termite damage is discovered during warranty period, repair or replace damage caused by termite infestation and treat replacement wood.
    - a. Warranty Period: 12 years from date of Final Completion.
  3. Polymer Sheet Barrier System with Termiticide Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by Applicator and Contractor, certifying that termite control work, consisting of installation of polymer sheet barrier system with termiticide, will prevent infestation of subterranean termites. If subterranean termite activity or damage is discovered during warranty period, re-treat and repair or replace damage caused by termite infestation.
    - a. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Final Completion.



4. Polymer Barrier Fittings with Termiticide Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by Applicator and Contractor, certifying that termite control work, consisting of installation of polymer barrier fittings with termiticide, will prevent infestation of subterranean termites. If subterranean termite activity or damage is discovered during warranty period, re-treat and repair or replace damage caused by termite infestation.
  - a. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Final Completion.

G. Maintenance Service

1. Continuing Service (as directed): Beginning at Final Completion, provide 12 months' continuing service including monitoring, inspection, and re-treatment for occurrences of termite activity. Provide a standard continuing service agreement. State services, obligations, conditions, terms for agreement period, and terms for future renewal options.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Soil Treatment

1. Termiticide: Provide an EPA-Registered termiticide, complying with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, in an aqueous solution formulated to prevent termite infestation. Provide quantity required for application at the label volume and rate for the maximum termiticide concentration allowed for each specific use, according to product's EPA-Registered Label.
  - a. Service Life of Treatment: Soil treatment termiticide that is effective for not less than three **OR** five, **as directed**, years against infestation of subterranean termites.

B. Wood Treatment

1. Borate: Provide an EPA-Registered borate termiticide, complying with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, in an aqueous solution for spray application and a gel solution for pressure injection, formulated to prevent termite infestation in wood. Provide quantity required for application at the label volume and rate for the maximum diffusible borate concentration allowed for each specific use, according to product's EPA-Registered Label.

C. Bait-Station System

1. Provide bait stations based on the dimensions of building perimeter indicated on Drawings, according to manufacturer's EPA-Registered Label for product, manufacturer's written instructions, and the following:
  - a. No fewer than one bait station per 8 linear feet (2.4 linear meters) **OR** 20 linear feet (6.1 linear meters), **as directed**.
  - b. No fewer than one cluster of bait stations per 20 linear feet (6.1 linear meters), consisting of no fewer than three bait stations per cluster.

D. Metal Mesh Barrier System

1. Stainless-Steel Mesh: 0.025-by-0.018-inch (0.64-by-0.45-mm) mesh of 0.08-inch- (2.0-mm-) diameter, stainless-steel wire, Type 316.

E. Polymer Sheet Barrier System

1. Polymer Sheet: 16-mil- (0.40-mm-) thick, multilayered, laminated, polymer sheet with lambda-cyhalothrin termiticide sealed between two outer polymer layers.

F. Polymer Barrier Fittings

1. Pipe/Conduit Fitting: Integral 2-1/2-inch- (65-mm-) long polymer sleeve and 1-inch- (25-mm-) wide circular flange with lambda-cyhalothrin termiticide sealed between two outer polymer layers; with fasteners.
2. Tub Trap Fitting: Integral polymer boot and 23-by-23-inch (585-by-585-mm) flange with lambda-cyhalothrin termiticide sealed between two outer polymer layers; with fasteners.



### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

1. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for moisture content of soil per termiticide label requirements, interfaces with earthwork, slab and foundation work, landscaping, utility installation, and other conditions affecting performance of termite control.
2. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### B. Preparation

1. General: Comply with the most stringent requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and with manufacturer's written instructions for preparation before beginning application of termite control treatment. Remove all extraneous sources of wood cellulose and other edible materials such as wood debris, tree stumps and roots, stakes, formwork, and construction waste wood from soil within and around foundations.
2. Soil Treatment Preparation: Remove foreign matter and impermeable soil materials that could decrease treatment effectiveness on areas to be treated. Loosen, rake, and level soil to be treated except previously compacted areas under slabs and footings. Termiticides may be applied before placing compacted fill under slabs if recommended in writing by termiticide manufacturer.
  - a. Fit filling hose connected to water source at the site with a backflow preventer, complying with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

#### C. Application, General

1. General: Comply with the most stringent requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and with manufacturer's EPA-Registered Label for products.

#### D. Applying Soil Treatment

1. Application: Mix soil treatment termiticide solution to a uniform consistency. Provide quantity required for application at the label volume and rate for the maximum specified concentration of termiticide, according to manufacturer's EPA-Registered Label, to the following so that a continuous horizontal and vertical termiticidal barrier or treated zone is established around and under building construction. Distribute treatment evenly.
  - a. Slabs-on-Grade and Basement Slabs: Under ground-supported slab construction, including footings, building slabs, and attached slabs as an overall treatment. Treat soil materials before concrete footings and slabs are placed.
  - b. Foundations: Adjacent soil, including soil along the entire inside perimeter of foundation walls; along both sides of interior partition walls; around plumbing pipes and electric conduit penetrating the slab; around interior column footers, piers, and chimney bases; and along the entire outside perimeter, from grade to bottom of footing. Avoid soil washout around footings.
  - c. Crawlspace: Soil under and adjacent to foundations as previously indicated. Treat adjacent areas including around entrance platform, porches, and equipment bases. Apply overall treatment only where attached concrete platform and porches are on fill or ground.
  - d. Masonry: Treat voids.
  - e. Penetrations: At expansion joints, control joints, and areas where slabs will be penetrated.
2. Avoid disturbance of treated soil after application. Keep off treated areas until completely dry.
3. Protect termiticide solution, dispersed in treated soils and fills, from being diluted until ground-supported slabs are installed. Use waterproof barrier according to EPA-Registered Label instructions.
4. Post warning signs in areas of application.
5. Reapply soil treatment solution to areas disturbed by subsequent excavation, grading, landscaping, or other construction activities following application.

#### E. Applying Wood Treatment



1. Application: Mix wood treatment solution to a uniform consistency. Provide quantity required for application at the label volume and rate for the maximum specified concentration of borate, according to manufacturer's EPA-Registered Label, so that wood framing, sheathing, siding, and structural members subject to infestation receive treatment.
  - a. Framing and Sheathing: Apply termiticide solution by spray to bare wood for complete coverage.
  - b. Wood Members More Than 4 Inches (100 mm) Thick: Inject termiticide gel solution under pressure into holes of size and spacing required by manufacturer for treatment.
  - c. Exterior Uncoated Wood Trim and Siding: Apply termiticide solution to bare wood siding. After 48 hours, apply a seal coat of paint as specified in Division 07.
  
- F. Installing Bait-Station System
  1. Place bait stations according to the EPA-Registered Label for the product and manufacturer's written instructions, in the following areas that are conducive to termite feeding and activity:
    - a. Conducive sites and locations indicated on Drawings.
    - b. In and around infested trees and stumps.
    - c. In mulch beds.
    - d. Where wood directly contacts soil.
    - e. Areas of high soil moisture.
    - f. Near irrigation sprinkler heads.
    - g. Each area where roof drainage system, including downspouts and scuppers, drains to soil.
    - h. Along driplines of roof overhangs without gutters.
    - i. Where condensate lines from mechanical equipment drip or drain to soil.
    - j. At plumbing penetrations through ground-supported slabs.
    - k. Other sites and locations as determined by licensed Installer.
  2. Inspect and service bait stations from time of their application until Final Completion unless extended by continuing service agreement, according to the EPA-Registered Label for product and manufacturer's written instructions for termite management system and bait products.
    - a. Service Frequency: Inspect bait stations not less than once every **OR** every three, **as directed**, month(s).
  
- G. Installing Metal Mesh Barrier System
  1. Install metal mesh barrier system where indicated to provide a continuous barrier to entry of subterranean termites according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - a. Fit mesh tightly around pipe or other penetrations, and terminate at slab and foundation perimeters.
    - b. Install mesh under the perimeter of concrete slab edges and joints after vapor barrier and reinforcing steel are in place, and comply with manufacturer's written installation methods.
  2. Inspect annually for termite activity and effectiveness of metal mesh barrier system according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  
- H. Installing Polymer Sheet Barrier System
  1. Install polymer sheet barrier system according to manufacturer's EPA-Registered Label to provide a complete and continuous barrier to entry of subterranean termites.
  2. Remove any pipe wrap material so that the polymer sheet barrier system and fittings can be applied directly to the pipe or conduit. After installing the barrier, reapply pipe wrap material both below and above the blocker to protect the pipe from contact with concrete.
  3. Install polymer barrier fittings around each utility pipe and conduit penetrating concrete slab and/or foundation walls according to the EPA-Registered Label for the product and manufacturer's written instructions.
  
- I. Installing Polymer Barrier Fittings
  1. Remove any pipe wrap material so that the polymer barrier fittings can be applied directly to the pipe or conduit. After installing the barrier, reapply pipe wrap material both below and above the blocker to protect the pipe from contact with concrete.



- 
2. Install polymer barrier fittings around each utility pipe and conduit penetrating concrete slab and/or foundation walls according to the EPA-Registered Label for the product and manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 31 31 16 13



---

**SECTION 31 31 19 13 - SOIL STERILIZATION****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers soil sterilization. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations.

**1.2 PRODUCTS**

- A. Weed Eradication and Soil Fumigation: Products approved by the Environmental Protection Agency.
- B. Liquid and Dry Herbicides:
  1. Bare Ground Herbicides: Bromacil powder mixture or an ammonium sulfamate spray.
  2. Wetting Agents: As required.
- C. Equipment: Equipment shall be appropriate to the application and approved before use by the Owner.

**1.3 EXECUTION**

- A. Soil: After the subgrade has been prepared, all areas to be surfaced shall be treated with a weed eradicator and soil fumigant only in the designated areas.
- B. Wetting Agents may be used as an additive to improve the performance of weed and brush herbicides.

END OF SECTION 31 31 19 13



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





---

**SECTION 31 32 13 16 - SOIL STABILIZATION-LIME****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers furnishing of materials and the preparation and production of a stabilized subgrade by the addition of hydrated lime to the native material.

**1.2 PRODUCTS****A. Hydrated lime material requirements shall be as follows:**

1. Available Lime Index as Calcium Hydroxide: 90 percent minimum.
2. Residue retained on No. 30 Sieve: 1 percent maximum.
3. Residue retained on No. 200 Sieve: 20 percent maximum.

**1.3 EXECUTION:**

- A. Preparation: Scarify the subgrade to the depth required and pulverize the material until it is substantially free of lumps greater than three inches in diameter.
- B. Installation: Lime shall be applied to the pulverized material as a slurry, unless otherwise directed. Water shall be added as needed to provide a moisture content of not less than 20 percent. Surface-applied lime slurry shall be plowed and/or disked into the soil as necessary. The resulting mixture shall be aged for not less than 48 hours before compaction.

END OF SECTION 31 32 13 16



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
31 32 13 19	31 32 13 16	Soil Stabilization-Lime
31 32 13 29	31 32 13 16	Soil Stabilization-Lime
31 32 19 13	31 32 13 16	Soil Stabilization-Lime
31 32 19 13	31 25 14 13	Geosynthetic Fabric



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

**SECTION 31 32 19 16 - SEWAGE TREATMENT LAGOONS****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for the repair and maintenance of sewage treatment lagoons. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Submittals**

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

**1.2 PRODUCTS****A. Materials**

1. Concrete Block shall comply with ASTM C 129.
2. Concrete Grout shall comply with Fed. Spec. MMM-A-001993.
3. Riprap Stone shall comply with AREA-01.
4. Concrete Repair Material shall comply with Fed. Spec. MMM-A-001993.
5. Sand shall comply with ASTM C 33.
6. Portland Cement shall comply with ASTM C 150, Type V.
7. Rubble shall consist of broken concrete or broken stone.

**1.3 EXECUTION**

- A. Algae Removal shall be by mechanical or manual methods and shall include, but not be limited to, skimming, pumping through a screen, raking, or draining and cleaning the lagoon.
- B. Slope and Dike Reconstruction shall be made to re-establish the original design configuration and grades. Place riprap, where required, so that its angle of repose is not exceeded.
- C. Liner Reconstruction and Repair shall be made with materials compatible with the existing liner and compatible with the wastewater and sludge to be contained therein.
- D. Repairs to Elastomeric Membrane Liners shall be made with like material and shall overlap all cuts, tears, fractures or other defects a minimum of 4 inches. Cut repair pieces square or rectangular. The method of bonding the new material to existing material shall be similar to the original joint banding method, except when the original joints have failed. In this case, the material supplier shall demonstrate that an alternate jointing system shall be satisfactory to the Owner. Replace earth or sand cover removed during repair or replacement of plastic liner to the same thickness as the original installation.
- E. Repairs to Non-Elastomeric Membrane Liners shall be made by cutting out defective areas back to sound liner material and replacing with similar material. Joints shall be watertight.

END OF SECTION 31 32 19 16



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 31 32 19 16a - POND RESERVOIR LINERS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for pond and reservoir liners. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes geomembrane liners and floating covers for ponds and reservoirs.

#### C. Definitions

1. Plastics Terminology: See ASTM D 1600 for definitions of abbreviated terms for plastics not otherwise defined in this Section.
2. CSPE: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene.
3. EIA: Ethylene interpolymer alloy.
4. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer.
5. PE: Polyethylene.
6. PP: Polypropylene.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. Provide geomembrane liners and floating covers, **as directed**, that prevent the passage of water and gas, **as directed**.

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include the following:
  - a. Sheets for geomembrane liners and floating covers.
  - b. Seaming adhesives, solvents, and extrusions.
  - c. Penetration assemblies.
  - d. Accessories for floating covers.
2. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for geomembrane liners. Show panel layout, seams, penetrations, perimeter anchorage, floating cover, and methods of attachment and sealing to other construction. Differentiate between factory and field seams and joints.
3. Samples: For the following products, in sizes indicated:
  - a. Geomembrane Panels: For each type, not less than one 12-inch (300-mm) seam length for factory-bonded sheets and one 12-inch (300-mm) seam length for field-bonded sheets.
4. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer **OR** testing agency, **as directed**.
5. Product Certificates: For each type of geomembrane liner and floating cover, from manufacturer.
6. Product Test Reports: For each geomembrane sheet, based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
7. Source quality-control reports.
8. Field quality-control reports.
9. Maintenance Data: For geomembrane liner and floating cover to include in maintenance manuals.
10. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

#### F. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products **OR** An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer, **as directed**.
2. Source Limitations: Obtain geomembrane liner and floating cover, accessories, and required seaming materials, solvents, and adhesives from single source.
3. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.



- a. Inspect and discuss condition of substrate and other preparatory work performed by other trades.
- b. Review structural load limitations.
- c. Review limitations on equipment and Installer's personnel.
- d. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
- e. Review required testing, inspecting, and certifying procedures.
- f. Review existing and forecasted weather conditions and procedures for unfavorable conditions.

#### G. Project Conditions

1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit placement and seaming of geomembrane liners and floating covers to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

#### H. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Specified form in which geomembrane manufacturer, geomembrane liner and floating cover fabricator, and geomembrane liner and floating cover Installer agree to repair or replace geomembrane liner and floating cover that fail(s) in materials or workmanship or that deteriorate(s) under conditions of normal weather within specified warranty period. Warranty does not include deterioration or failure of geomembrane liner and floating cover due to exposure to harmful chemicals, gases or vapors, abnormal and severe weather phenomena, fire, earthquakes, floods, vandalism, or abuse by persons, animals, or equipment.
  - a. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) Leaks in geomembrane liner and floating cover.
    - 2) Defects in seams.
    - 3) Cracks and holes in floating cover.
  - b. Warranty Period: One **OR** Five **OR** 10, **as directed**, year(s) from date of Final Completion.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. CSPE Sheet Materials

1. CSPE Sheet: Formulated from CSPE for use in hydraulic structures and formed into uniform, flexible sheets.
  - a. Reinforcing Scrim: One-ply polyester fabric totally encapsulated between two sheets.
    - 1) Construction: 6 x 6 - 1000 d **OR** 8 x 8 - 250 d **OR** 10 x 10 - 1000 d, **as directed**.
  - b. Nominal Thickness: 45-mil- (1.14-mm-) thick sheet per ASTM D 5199 or ASTM D 751, Optical Method.
  - c. Nominal Thickness over Scrim: 11-mil- (0.28-mm-) thick sheet per ASTM D 5199 or ASTM D 751, Optical Method.
  - d. Breaking Strength: Not less than 200 lbf (0.89 kN) minimum average per ASTM D 751, Procedure A.
  - e. Tear Strength, Initial: Not less than 70 lbf (0.31 kN) minimum average per ASTM D 5884 or ASTM D 751, Procedure B.
  - f. Tear Strength, after Aging: Not less than 35 lbf (0.16 kN) minimum average per ASTM D 5884 or ASTM D 751, Procedure B.
  - g. Puncture Resistance: Not less than 200 lbf (0.89 kN) minimum average per ASTM D 4833.
  - h. Hydrostatic Resistance: Not less than 250-psi (1725-kPa) minimum average resistance per ASTM D 5514, Procedure A or ASTM D 751, Method A, Procedure 1.
  - i. Dimensional Stability, Reinforced Sheet: Not more than plus or minus 2 percent per ASTM D 1204.
  - j. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Pass, 1/8-inch (3-mm) mandrel, four hours at minus 40 deg F (minus 40 deg C), and per ASTM D 2136.





- k. UV-Light Resistance: Pass, 4000 hours at 176 deg F (80 deg C), per ASTM G 155.
- l. Ply Adhesion: Not less than 7 lbf/in. (1.2 kN/m) **OR** 10 lbf/in. (1.75 kN/m), **as directed**, of seam width, or film tearing bond, according to ASTM D 413, Machine Method.
- m. Water Absorption (for low-water-absorption CSPE): Not more than 2 percent at 70 deg F (21 deg C) and not more than 30 percent at 158 deg F (70 deg C) for 30 days each per ASTM D 471, 30-mil- (0.76-mm-) thick sheet.

B. EIA Sheet Materials

- 1. EIA Sheet: Formulated from EIA for use in hydraulic structures and formed into uniform, flexible sheets.
  - a. Reinforcing Scrim: One-ply polyester fabric totally encapsulated between two sheets.
    - 1) Construction: 6 x 6 - 1000 d **OR** 8 x 8 - 500 d **OR** 10 x 10 - 1000 d **OR** 10 x 11 - 2520 d x 2000 d, **as directed**.
  - b. Nominal Thickness: 36-mil- (0.91-mm-) thick sheet per ASTM D 1593 or ASTM D 751, Optical Method.
  - c. Tensile Strength: Not less than 400 lbf (1.8 kN) minimum average per ASTM D 751, Procedure A.
  - d. Tear Strength: Not less than 35 lbf (0.16 kN) minimum average per ASTM D 5884 or ASTM D 751, Procedure B.
  - e. Puncture Resistance: Not less than 150 lbf (0.67 kN) minimum average per ASTM D 4833.
  - f. Hydrostatic Resistance: Not less than 100-psi (690-kPa) minimum average resistance per ASTM D 751, Procedure A.
  - g. Dimensional Stability, Reinforced Sheet: Not more than plus or minus 2 percent per ASTM D 1204.
  - h. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Pass, 1/8-inch (3-mm) mandrel, four hours at minus 30 deg F (minus 34 deg C), and per ASTM D 2136.
  - i. UV-Light Resistance: Pass, 4000 hours at 176 deg F (80 deg C), per ASTM G 155.
  - j. Ply Adhesion: Not less than 7 lbf/in. (1.2 kN/m) **OR** 10 lbf/in. (1.75 kN/m), **as directed**, of seam width, or film tearing bond, according to ASTM D 413, Machine Method.

C. EPDM Sheet Materials

- 1. EPDM Sheet: Formulated from EPDM, compounded for use in hydraulic structures and formed into uniform, flexible sheets.
  - a. Reinforcing Scrim: One-ply polyester fabric totally encapsulated between two sheets.
    - 1) Construction: 9 x 9 - 1000 d **OR** 10 x 10 - 1000 d, **as directed**.
  - b. Nominal Thickness: 45-mil- (1.14-mm-) thick sheet per ASTM D 5199 or ASTM D 751, Optical Method.
  - c. Breaking Strength: Not less than 190 lbf (0.85 kN) minimum average per ASTM D 882, ASTM D 7004, or ASTM D 751, Procedure A.
  - d. Tear Resistance: Not less than 130 lb (0.58 kN) minimum average per ASTM D 1004.
  - e. Puncture Strength: Not less than 60 lbf (0.27 kN) minimum average per ASTM D 4833.

D. PE Sheet Materials

- 1. PE Sheet: Formulated from virgin PE, compounded for use in hydraulic structures, and formed into uniform sheets.
  - a. Sheet Texture: One side smooth; other side smooth **OR** textured, **as directed**.
  - b. Nominal Density: Low density, 0.910 to 0.925 g/cu. cm **OR** Linear low density, 0.919 to 0.925 g/cu. cm **OR** Medium density, 0.926 to 0.939 g/cu. cm **OR** High density, 0.940 to 0.959 g/cu. Cm, **as directed**, per ASTM D 1505.
  - c. Nominal Thickness: 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick sheet per ASTM D 5199 **OR** ASTM D 5994, **as directed**.
  - d. Melt Flow Index: Not more than 0.035 oz./10 minutes (1.0 g/10 minutes) per ASTM D 1238, Condition 190/2.16.
  - e. Carbon Black Content: 2 to 3 percent per ASTM D 1603 or ASTM D 4218.
  - f. Carbon Black Dispersion: Per ASTM D 5596, Category 1 and 2.



- g. Oxidation Induction Time: Not less than 100 minutes per ASTM D 3895.
- h. Tensile Properties: Not less than indicated for each direction, per ASTM D 638, Type IV or ASTM D 6693, Type IV.
  - 1) Strength at Yield: Not less than 126 lbf/in. (22 kN/m) and 2100 psi (14.5 MPa) minimum average.
  - 2) Strength at Break: Not less than 228 lbf/in. (40 kN/m) and 3800 psi (26.2 MPa) minimum average.
  - 3) Elongation at Yield: Not less than 12 percent minimum average.
  - 4) Elongation at Break: Not less than 700 percent minimum average.
- i. Tear Resistance: Not less than 39 lbf (0.18 kN) minimum average per ASTM D 1004.
- j. Puncture Resistance: Not less than 108 lbf (0.48 kN) minimum average per ASTM D 4833.
- k. Dimensional Stability, Reinforced Sheet: Not more than plus or minus 2 percent per ASTM D 1204.
- l. Low-Temperature Brittleness: Four hours at minus 76 deg F (minus 60 deg C) per ASTM D 746.
- m. Environmental Stress Cracking Resistance: Not less than 1500 hours per ASTM D 1693, Condition B.

#### E. PP Sheet Materials

- 1. PP Sheet: Formulated from virgin PP, compounded for use in hydraulic structures, and formed into uniform, flexible sheets.
  - a. Reinforcing Scrim: One-ply polyester fabric totally encapsulated between two sheets.
    - 1) Construction: 9 x 9 - 1000 d **OR** 10 x 10 - 1000 d, **as directed**.
  - b. Sheet Texture: One side smooth; other side smooth **OR** textured, **as directed**.
  - c. Nominal Thickness: 45-mil- (1.14-mm-) thick sheet per ASTM D 5199 or ASTM D 751, Optical Method **OR** ASTM D 5994, **as directed**.
  - d. Tensile Strength: Not less than 250 lbf (1.1 kN) minimum average per ASTM D 412, ASTM D 7003, ASTM D 6693, or ASTM D 751, Procedure A.
  - e. Tear Resistance: Not less than 55 lbf (0.24 kN) minimum average per ASTM D 1004, ASTM D 5884, ASTM D 7003, or ASTM D 751, Procedure B.
  - f. Puncture Resistance: Not less than 200 lbf (0.88 kN) minimum average per ASTM D 4833 or ASTM D 7003.
  - g. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Pass, 1/8-inch (3-mm) mandrel, four hours at minus 40 deg F (minus 40 deg C), and per ASTM D 2136.
  - h. Hydrostatic Resistance: Not less than 250-psi (1725-kPa) minimum average resistance per ASTM D 5514, Procedure A or ASTM D 751, Method A, Procedure 1.
  - i. Dimensional Stability, Reinforced Sheet: Not more than plus or minus 1 percent per ASTM D 1204.
  - j. Ply Adhesion: Not less than 20 lbf/in. (3.5 kN/m) of seam width, or film tearing bond, according to ASTM D 413, Machine Method.

#### F. PVC Sheet Materials

- 1. PVC Sheet: Formulated from virgin PVC with plasticizers and other modifiers, compounded for use in hydraulic structures, and formed into uniform, flexible sheets with material properties complying with ASTM D 7176 **OR** PGI 1104, "Specification for PVC Geomembranes", **as directed**, for nominal thickness indicated.
  - a. Nominal Thickness: 10 mils (0.25 mm) **OR** 20 mils (0.51 mm) **OR** 30 mils (0.76 mm) **OR** 40 mils (1.02 mm) **OR** 50 mils (1.3 mm) **OR** 60 mils (1.5 mm), **as directed**.
  - b. Sheet Texture: One side smooth; other side smooth **OR** matte **OR** faille textured, **as directed**.

#### G. Floating Cover Accessories

- 1. Screened Scupper Hoses: Manufacturer's standard.



2. Flotation Blocks: Closed-cell polyethylene foam blocks approximately 4 by 12 inches (102 by 300 mm), 2.2 lb/cu. ft. (35.2 kg/cu. m).
3. Access Hatch: Manufacturer's standard, in size indicated.

#### H. Miscellaneous Materials

1. Adhesives: Provide types of adhesive primers, compounds, solvents, and tapes recommended in writing by geomembrane liner manufacturer for bonding to structures (if required), for sealing of seams in geomembrane liner, and for sealing penetrations through geomembrane liner.
2. Penetration Assemblies: Provide manufacturer's standard factory-fabricated assemblies for sealing penetrations. Include joint sealant recommended in writing by geomembrane liner manufacturer and compatible with geomembrane liner, containment conditions, and materials.
3. Battens: Long-length strips of material indicated, size as shown on Drawings. Fabricate battens with sharp projections removed and edges eased and then predrilled or punched for anchors. Provide anchors, or other type of attachment, of type and spacing recommended in writing by geomembrane liner manufacturer for attaching geomembrane liner system to substrate and as indicated.
  - a. Batten Material: Liner manufacturer's standard system.  
**OR**  
Batten Material: Aluminum; with stainless-steel anchors, complete with gasket and sealant compatible with geomembrane liner, containment conditions, and materials.  
**OR**  
Batten Material: Stainless steel; with stainless-steel anchors, complete with gasket and sealant compatible with geomembrane liner, containment conditions, and materials.  
**OR**  
Batten Material: Plastic compatible with geomembrane liner, cast in place or fastened with stainless-steel anchors, designed to continuously seal geomembrane liner to batten.
4. Sand: ASTM C 33; fine aggregate, natural or manufactured sand.

#### I. Fabrication

1. Fabricate geomembrane liner and floating cover, **as directed**, panels from sheets in sizes as large as possible with factory-sealed seams, consistent with limitations of weight and installation procedures. Minimize field seaming.
2. Fabricate flotation blocks, wrap in geomembrane, and attach to underside of floating cover according to manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Fabricate ballast tubes of sand-filled geomembrane and attach to top surface of floating cover according to manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Install built-in accessories, hatches, access panels, vents, and walkways on geomembrane floating cover.

#### J. Source Quality Control

1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate geomembrane seams.
2. Destructive Testing: Test for bonded seam strength and peel adhesion every 3000 feet (915 m) or once per panel, whichever is more frequent.
3. CSPE Liner and Floating Cover: Test and inspect factory seams, according to ASTM D 4545, for peel adhesion not less than 10 lbf/in. (1.75 kN/m) of seam width and for bonded seam strength not less than 180 lbf/in. (32 kN/m) of seam width for seams constructed from two scrim-reinforced sheets, each with nominal sheet thickness of not less than 45 mils (1.14 mm).
4. EIA Liner and Floating Cover: Test and inspect factory seams, according to ASTM D 4545, for peel adhesion not less than 10 lbf/in. (1.75 kN/m) of seam width and for bonded seam strength not less than 270 lbf/in. (48 kN/m) of seam width for seams constructed from two scrim-reinforced sheets, each with nominal sheet thickness of not less than 36 mils (0.91 mm).
5. EPDM Liner: Test and inspect factory seams, according to ASTM D 4545, for peel adhesion not less than 10 lbf/in. (1.75 kN/m) of seam width and for bonded seam strength not less than 160 lbf/in. (28 kN/m) of seam width for seams constructed from two scrim-reinforced sheets, each with nominal sheet thickness of not less than 45 mils (1.14 mm).



6. PE Liner: Test and inspect factory seams, according to ASTM D 4545, for peel adhesion and for bonded seam strength indicated.
  - a. Peel Adhesion/Extrusion: Film tear bond and not less than 78 lbf/in. (13.7 kN/m) of extrusion-bonded seam width.  
**OR**  
Peel Adhesion/Fusion: Film tear bond and not less than 90 lbf/in. (15.8 kN/m) of fused seam width.
  - b. Bonded Seam Strength: Not less than 120 lbf/in. (21 kN/m) of seam width for seams constructed from two scrim-reinforced sheets, each with nominal sheet thickness of not less than 45 mils (1.14 mm).
7. PP Liner and Floating Cover: Test and inspect factory seams, according to ASTM D 4545, for peel adhesion not less than 20 lbf/in. (3.5 kN/m) of seam width and for bonded seam strength not less than 200 lbf/in. (35 kN/m) of seam width for seams constructed from two scrim-reinforced sheets, each with nominal sheet thickness of not less than 45 mils (1.14 mm).
8. PVC Liner and Floating Cover: Test and inspect factory seams, according to ASTM D 4545, for peel adhesion not less than 10 lbf/in. (1.75 kN/m) of seam width and for bonded seam strength not less than that indicated below for seams constructed from two sheets of minimum nominal thickness indicated for each:
  - a. Bonded Seam Strength for 10-mil- (0.25-mm-) Thick Sheets: 20 lbf/in. (3.5 kN/m) of seam width.
  - b. Bonded Seam Strength for 20-mil- (0.51-mm-) Thick Sheets: 38.5 lbf/in. (6.7 kN/m) of seam width.
  - c. Bonded Seam Strength for 30-mil- (0.76-mm-) Thick Sheets: 58.4 lbf/in. (10.2 kN/m) of seam width.
  - d. Bonded Seam Strength for 40-mil- (1.02-mm-) Thick Sheets: 77.6 lbf/in. (13.6 kN/m) of seam width.
  - e. Bonded Seam Strength for 50-mil- (1.3-mm-) Thick Sheets: 96 lbf/in. (16.8 kN/m) of seam width.
  - f. Bonded Seam Strength for 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) Thick Sheets: 116 lbf/in. (20.3 kN/m) of seam width.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

1. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for soil compaction and grading; for subgrade free from angular rocks, rubble, roots, vegetation, debris, voids, protrusions, and ground water; and for other conditions affecting performance of geomembrane liner.
2. Examine anchor trench excavation **OR** concrete perimeter, **as directed**, where geomembrane liner and floating cover, **as directed**, will be secured, for substrate conditions indicated above and for correct location and configuration.
3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### B. Preparation

1. Provide temporary ballast, until edges are permanently secured, that does not damage geomembrane liner or substrate, to prevent uplift of geomembrane liner in areas with prevailing winds.
2. Prepare surfaces of construction penetrating through geomembrane liner according to geomembrane liner manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Remove curing compounds and coatings from concrete surfaces to be sealed to geomembrane liner.

#### C. Installation



1. General: Place geomembrane liner over prepared surfaces to ensure minimum handling. Install according to Shop Drawings and in compliance with geomembrane liner manufacturer's written instructions. Begin placing geomembrane liner at Project's upwind direction and proceed downwind. Install geomembrane liner in a relaxed condition, free from stress and with minimum wrinkles, and in full contact with subgrade. Do not bridge over voids or low areas in the subgrade. Fit closely and seal around inlets, outlets, and other projections through geomembrane liner. Permanently secure edges.
  2. Field Seams: Comply with geomembrane liner and floating cover manufacturer's written instructions. Form seams by lapping edges of panels 2 to 4 inches (50 to 102 mm) unless instructions require a larger overlap. Wipe contact surfaces clean and free of dirt, dust, moisture, and other foreign materials. Use solvent-cleaning methods and grind geomembrane seam surfaces if recommended by geomembrane liner manufacturer. Proceed with seaming at required temperatures for materials and ambient conditions. Continuously bond sheet to sheet to construct single or double seams of width recommended for method of seaming used. Seal or fuse free seam edges. Inspect seams and reseal voids.
    - a. Adhesive Bonding: Apply bonding cement to both contact surfaces in seam area and press together immediately, or use other seaming methods as instructed by geomembrane liner manufacturer. Roll to press surfaces together, to distribute adhesive to leading edges of panels, and to remove wrinkles and fishmouths. Remove excess adhesive.  
**OR**  
Thermal Bonding: Use thermal-welding technique recommended by geomembrane liner manufacturer. Apply pressure to smoothly bond surfaces together. Examine for and patch wrinkles and fishmouths.
  3. Installation in Anchor Trench: Install geomembrane liner and floating cover in trench according to manufacturer's written instructions. Backfill and compact to lock liner into trench.
  4. Attachment to Concrete: Use manufacturer's standard system to suit Project conditions. Support adhesive and geomembrane on minimum 8-inch- (200-mm-) wide concrete substrate unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Install batten strips over geomembrane liner and floating cover as shown on Drawings.
    - b. Install antichafing strips of geomembrane sheet between geomembrane liner and floating cover according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - c. Install floating cover with perimeter fold.
  5. Floating Cover Flotation Control: Connect drainage hoses in perimeter fold, sumps, or scuppers to pump or gravity drain system.
  6. Liner Repairs: Repair tears, punctures, and other imperfections in geomembrane liner field and seams using patches of geomembrane liner material, liner-to-liner bonding materials, and bonding methods according to geomembrane liner manufacturer's written instructions. Apply bonding solvent or weld to contact surfaces of both patch and geomembrane liner, and press together immediately. Roll to remove wrinkles.
- D. Field Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
  2. Nondestructive Testing: Visually inspect seams and patches. Comply with ASTM D 4437 for Air Lance Test, Vacuum Box Testing, or Ultrasonic (High Frequency) Pulse Echo Testing or with GRI Test Method GM6, as applicable to geomembrane liner and floating cover and seam construction. Record locations of failed seams and patches. Individually number and date occurrences and details of leak and remedial action. Repair leaking seams and patches.
  3. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- E. Disinfection
1. Disinfect the complete installation according to procedures in AWWA C652.
- F. Protection
1. Protect installed geomembrane liner and floating cover according to manufacturer's written instructions. Repair or replace areas of geomembrane liner damaged by scuffing, punctures, traffic, rough subgrade, or other unacceptable conditions.



- 
2. Before initial filling of pond or placement of earth cover, inspect seams and patched areas to ensure tight, continuously bonded installation. Repair damaged geomembrane and seams and reinspect repaired work.

END OF SECTION 31 32 19 16a



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
31 32 19 16	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
31 32 19 16	31 32 13 16	Soil Stabilization-Lime
31 32 19 16	31 25 14 13	Geosynthetic Fabric



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



**SECTION 31 36 13 00 - WIRE MESH GABIONS**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of wire mesh gabions. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

- B. Description: Gabion units shall consist of compartmented rectangular basket containers filled with stone. The required sizes of the gabion units are Length times Width times Depth. Twisted or welded wire mesh shall be used. Baskets shall be fabricated from galvanized steel wire formed into a nonraveling mesh.

## C. Submittals

1. Samples: Stone fill material submitted for approval prior to delivery.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

- A. Steel Twisted Wire Mesh Gabions: Gabion basket units shall be of nonraveling construction and fabricated from a double twisted hexagonal wire mesh. The size of mesh openings shall be approximately 3-1/4 in. by 4-1/2 in. (80 by 115 mm). The gabion mesh wires shall be wrapped around the selvage wire no less than 1 1/2 times and shall interconnect with adjacent mesh wires. All steel wire used shall be galvanized prior to fabrication into mesh. All gabion diaphragm and frame wire shall equal or exceed ASTM A 641, and possess soft tensile strength of 60,000 psi (415 Mpa) with a tolerance of minus 2,000 psi (14 Mpa). The galvanized wire shall have a Finish 5, Class 3, zinc coating, as indicated in ASTM A 641. The weight of coating shall be determined by ASTM A 90. The grade of zinc used for coating shall be High Grade or Special High Grade as prescribed in ASTM B 6, Table 1. The uniformity of coating shall equal or exceed four 1-minute dips by the Preece Test, as determined by ASTM A 239.

- B. Steel Welded Wire Mesh Gabions: Gabion basket units shall be of nonraveling construction and fabricated from a welded square wire mesh. The size of mesh openings shall be approximately 3 in. by 3 in. (75 by 75 mm). The welded joints of the wire mesh shall conform to ASTM A 1064 except that the weld shears shall be at least 600 lbs (2700 N). All gabion diaphragm and frame wire shall equal or exceed ASTM A 641, and possess soft tensile strength of 60,000 psi (415 Mpa) with a tolerance of minus 2,000 psi (14 Mpa). The galvanized wire shall have a Finish 5 Class 3 zinc coating, indicated in ASTM A 641. The weight of coating shall be determined by ASTM A 90. The grade of zinc used for coating shall be High Grade or Special High Grade as prescribed in ASTM B 6, Table 1. The uniformity of coating shall equal or exceed four 1-minute dips by the Preece Test, as determined by ASTM A 239.

- C. Mesh wire shall be minimum 0.120-in. (3.05 mm) diameter after coating with 0.85 oz/sq ft (240 g/sq m) zinc coating.

- D. Selvage wire shall be minimum 0.150-in. (3.80 mm) diameter after coating with 0.85 oz/sq ft (240 g/sq m) zinc coating.

- E. Wire used for lacing or as internal connecting wire within basket cells shall be minimum 0.087-in. (2.21 mm) diameter after coating with 0.70 oz/sq ft (220 g/sq m) zinc coating and may have soft tensile strength designation.

- F. Stone Fill



1. **Quality:** Stone shall be durable and of suitable quality to ensure permanence in the structure and climate in which it is to be used. It shall be free of cracks, seams, and other defects that would tend to increase unduly its deterioration from natural causes or reduce its size to that which could not be retained in the gabion baskets. The inclusion of more than 5% by weight of dirt, sand, clay, and rock fines will not be permitted. The sources from which the Contractor proposes to obtain the material shall be selected well in advance of the time when the material will be required in the work. Suitable samples of stone fill material shall be collected in the presence of the Owner's representative and submitted to the Owner for approval prior to delivery of any such material to the site of the work. Unless otherwise specified, all test samples shall be obtained by the Contractor and delivered at its expense to the Owner. Suitable tests and/or service records will be used to determine the acceptability of the stone. In the event suitable test reports and service records are not available, the material shall be subjected to such tests as are necessary to determine its acceptability for use in the work. Tests to which the material may be subjected include petrographic analysis, specific gravity, absorption, wetting and drying, freezing and thawing, and such other tests as may be considered necessary to demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Owner that the materials are acceptable for use in the work.
2. **Gradation:** Stone fill used in the gabions shall be a well-graded mixture with sizes ranging between 4 in. and 8 in. (100 and 200 mm), based on US Standard square mesh sieves. No stone shall have a minimum dimension less than 4 in. (100 mm) and a maximum dimension greater than 12 in. (300 mm) in any direction. The ratio of the maximum dimension to the minimum dimension shall not be greater than two. If the height of the gabion basket is 12 in. (300 mm) or less, stone shall have no dimensions greater than 8 in. (200 mm) in any direction.
3. **Filter Material:** The material shall be composed of tough durable particles, reasonably free from thin, flat, and elongated pieces, and contain no organic matter or soft friable particles in quantities considered objectionable by the Owner. Filter material shall consist of sand and gravel or crushed stone, well graded between the prescribed limits listed below, and conform to the requirements of paragraph STONE FILL, subparagraph QUALITY as to quality.

### 1.3 EXECUTION:

- A. **Foundation Preparation:** No foundation preparation work shall take place on frozen or snow-covered ground. After excavation or stripping to the extent indicated on the drawings or as directed by the Owner, all remaining loose or otherwise unsuitable materials shall be removed. All depressions shall be carefully backfilled to grade. If pervious materials are encountered in the foundation depressions, the areas shall be backfilled with free-draining materials. Otherwise, the depressions shall be backfilled with suitable materials from adjacent required excavation, or other approved source, and compacted to a density at least equal to that of the adjacent foundation. Any buried debris protruding from the foundation that will impede the proper installation and final appearance of the gabion layer shall also be removed, and the voids carefully backfilled and compacted as specified above. Immediately prior to placing the material, the prepared foundation surface shall be inspected by the Owner, and no material shall be placed thereon until that area has been approved.
- B. **Filter Placement:** Filter material shall be spread uniformly on the prepared foundation surface in a manner satisfactory to the Owner, and to the slopes, lines, and grades as indicated on the drawings or as directed. Placing of filter material by methods which will tend to segregate particle sizes will not be permitted. Any damage to the foundation surface during filter placement shall be repaired before proceeding with the work. Compaction of the filter materials will not be required, but it shall be finished to present a reasonably even surface free from mounds or windrows.
- C. **Fabrication:** Gabions shall be fabricated in such a manner that the sides, ends, lid, and diaphragms can be assembled at the construction site into rectangular baskets of the sizes specified and shown on the drawings. Gabions shall be of single unit construction, i.e., the base, lid, ends, and sides shall be either woven into a single unit, or one edge of these members connected to the base section of the gabion in such a manner that the minimum strengths of the wire mesh and connections as stated in paragraph



MATERIALS are met. Where the length of the gabion exceeds one and one-half its horizontal width, the gabion shall be equally divided by diaphragms of the same mesh and gage as the body of the gabions, into cells whose length does not exceed the horizontal width. The gabion shall be furnished with the necessary diaphragms secured in proper position on the base in such a manner that no additional tying at this juncture will be necessary. For twisted wire gabions, all perimeter edges of the mesh forming the gabion shall be securely selvaged. In addition, the selvaged edges shall be so wrapped and reinforced with the mesh ends that the selvaige wire will not be deformed locally about the lacing wire or wire fasteners when baskets are filled or during lid closing. Lacing wire, connecting wire, and/or wire fasteners shall be supplied in sufficient quantity for securely fastening all diaphragms and edges of the gabion.

- D. Assembly And Installation: For gabion units in excess of 4 ft. (1.3 m) in thickness, and placed in horizontal or near horizontal position to resist high velocity flow, or as part of a stilling basin feature, a minimum of two uniformly spaced vertical connecting wires per cell linking the foundation mesh to basket lid mesh should be specified. Empty gabion units shall be assembled individually and placed on the approved surface with the sides, ends, and diaphragms erected in such a manner to ensure the correct position of all creases and that the tops of all sides are level. Filling of gabion units in one place and then transporting them to their final position in the work will not be permitted. The front row of gabion units shall be placed first and successively constructed toward the top of the slope or the back of the structure. All gabion units shall be properly staggered horizontally and vertically. Finished gabion structure shall have no gaps along the perimeter of the contact surfaces between adjoining gabion basket units. All adjoining empty gabion units shall be connected by lacing wire/or wire fasteners along the perimeter of their contact surfaces in order to obtain a monolithic structure. Lacing of adjoining basket units shall be accomplished by continuous stitching with alternating single and double loops at intervals of not more than 5 in. (125 mm), and a half hitch shall be included at every double loop. All lacing wire terminals shall be securely fastened. Wire fasteners may be used in lieu of lacing wire for forming individual baskets and joining empty baskets together prior to stone filling. All joining shall be made through selvaige-to-selvaige or selvaige-to-edge wire connection; mesh-to-mesh or selvaige-to-mesh wire connection is prohibited except in the case where baskets are offset or stacked and selvaige-to-mesh or mesh-to-mesh wire connection would be necessary. Wire fasteners shall not be used to tie or join stone-filled baskets, unless approved by the Owner. As a minimum, a fastener shall be installed at each mesh opening at the location where mesh wire meets selvaige or edge wire. The initial line of basket units shall be placed on the prepared filter layer surface and partially filled to provide anchorage against deformation and displacement during filling operations. After adjoining empty basket units are set to line and grade and common sides with adjacent units thoroughly laced or fastened, they shall be placed in tension and stretched to remove any kinks from the mesh and to a uniform alignment. The stretching of empty basket units shall be accomplished in such a manner as to prevent any possible unraveling. Stone filling operations shall carefully proceed with placement by hand or machine so as not to damage galvanized wire coating, to assure a minimum of voids between the stones, and the maintenance of alignment throughout the filling process. Undue deformation and bulging of the mesh shall be corrected prior to further stone filling. To avoid localized deformation, the basket units in any row are to be filled in stages consisting of maximum 12-in. (300 mm) courses, and at no time shall any cell be filled to a depth exceeding 1 ft. (300 mm) more than the adjoining cell. The maximum height from which the stone may be dropped into the basket units shall be 36 in. (1 m). For gabion units in excess of 2 ft. (0.67 m) in height, two uniformly spaced internal connecting wires shall be placed between each stone layer in all front and side gabion units, connecting the back and the front faces of the compartments. Connecting wires or alternatively the preformed stiffeners shall be looped around two twisted wire mesh openings or a welded wire joint at each basket face and the wire terminals shall be securely twisted to prevent their loosening. For twisted wire gabions, the internal connecting wires or preformed stiffeners are installed. For welded wire gabion units, preformed stiffeners are installed across the corners of gabion panels. Along all exposed faces, the outer layer of stone shall be carefully placed and arranged by hand to ensure a neat and compact appearance. The last layer of stone shall be uniformly overfilled 1 to 2 in. (25 to 50 mm) to compensate for the future settlement in rock but still allow for the proper closing of the lid and to provide an even surface that is uniform in appearance. Final adjustments for compaction and surface tolerance shall be done by hand. Lids shall be stretched tight over the stone fill using only an approved lid closing tool, until the lid meets the perimeter edges of



the front and end panels. Using crowbars or other single point leverage bars for lid closing shall be prohibited. The lid shall then be tightly tied with lacing wire, or with wire fasteners if approved by the Owner, along all edges, ends, and internal cell diaphragms by continuous stitching with alternating single and double loops at intervals of not more than 5 in. (125 mm), and a half hitch shall be included at every double loop. Special attention shall be given to see that all projections or wire ends are turned into the baskets. The Contractor shall have the option of providing gabion baskets with separate roll-out lids for the slope baskets. Roll-out lids shall be fabricated of the same material as the basket units and shall be furnished in widths as required for the contract work. as directed by the Owner, or where a complete gabion unit cannot be installed because of space limitations, the basket unit shall be cut, folded, and wired together to suit existing site conditions. The mesh must be cleanly cut and the surplus mesh cut out completely, or folded back and neatly wired to an adjacent gabion face. The assembling, installation, filling, lid closing, and lacing of the reshaped gabion units shall be carried out as specified above.

END OF SECTION 31 36 13 00



---

**SECTION 31 37 00 00 - RIPRAP****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of riprap. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**1.2 PRODUCTS**

- A. Riprap: Stone used for dumped riprap shall be hard, durable, angular in shape, resistant to weathering and to water action, and free from overburden, spoil, shale, and organic material. Neither width nor thickness of a single stone should be less than one third its length. Rounded stone, boulders, shale, and stone with shale seams will not be acceptable. The minimum density of the riprap material shall be 162 pounds per cubic foot. Each load of riprap shall be reasonably well graded. Sand and rock dust exceeding 5 percent by weight of each load shall not be permitted.
- B. Riprap Bedding: The riprap bedding blanket shall consist of well graded gravel, crushed rock, sand, or a combination thereof with a maximum size of 6 inches. All material comprising the riprap bedding blanket shall be composed of tough, durable particles, reasonably free from thin, flat, and elongated pieces, and shall contain no organic matter nor soft, friable particles in excess quantities.

**1.3 EXECUTION**

- A. Preparation: Prepare earth slopes by grading and compacting.
- B. Installation:
  1. Riprap Bedding Blanket Layers shall be placed on the prepared slope or area to develop the full thickness. Each layer shall be placed in one operation, using methods that will not cause segregation of particle sizes within the bedding. The surface of the finished layer should be reasonably even and free from mounds or windows.
  2. Stone for Riprap shall be placed on the prepared slope or area in a manner that will product a reasonably well-graded mass of stone with the minimum practicable percentage of voids. Riprap shall be placed to its full course in one operation and in such a manner as to avoid displacing the underlying material. The larger stones shall be well distributed and the entire mass of stone shall be well-graded. The result shall be a compact, uniform riprap layer.

END OF SECTION 31 37 00 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
31 37 00 00	31 32 19 16	Sewage Treatment Lagoons

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





## SECTION 31 41 13 00 - DRILLED PIERS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for drilled piers. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Dry-installed drilled piers.
  - b. Slurry displacement-installed drilled piers.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture.
3. Shop Drawings: For concrete reinforcement.
4. Welding certificates.
5. Material certificates **OR** test reports, **as directed**.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - a. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - b. AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel."
2. Drilled-Pier Standard: Comply with ACI 336.1 unless modified in this Section.
3. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### E. Project Conditions

1. Existing Utilities: Locate existing underground utilities before excavating drilled piers. If utilities are to remain in place, provide protection from damage during drilled-pier operations.
  - a. Should uncharted or incorrectly charted piping or other utilities be encountered during excavation, adapt drilling procedure if necessary to prevent damage to utilities. Cooperate with the Owner and utility companies in keeping services and facilities in operation without interruption. Repair damaged utilities to satisfaction of utility the Owner.
2. Interruption of Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt any utility to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility according to requirements indicated:
  - a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of utility.
  - b. Do not proceed with interruption of utility without the Owner's written permission.
3. Survey Work: Engage a qualified land surveyor or professional engineer to perform surveys, layouts, and measurements for drilled piers. Before excavating, lay out each drilled pier to lines and levels required. Record actual measurements of each drilled pier's location, shaft diameter, bottom and top elevations, deviations from specified tolerances, and other specified data.
  - a. Record and maintain information pertinent to each drilled pier and cooperate with the Owner's testing and inspecting agency to provide data for required reports.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Steel Reinforcement

1. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed.
2. Low-Alloy-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 706/A 706M, deformed.



3. Galvanized Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) **OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed bars, ASTM A 767/A 767M, Class I **OR** Class II, **as directed**, zinc coated after fabrication and bending.
4. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) **OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed bars, ASTM A 775/A 775M or ASTM A 934/A 934M, epoxy coated, with less than 2 percent damaged coating in each 12-inch (300-mm) bar length.
5. Plain-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82, as drawn **OR** galvanized, **as directed**.
6. Deformed-Steel Wire: ASTM A 496.
7. Epoxy-Coated Wire: ASTM A 884/A 884M, Class A, Type 1 coated, as-drawn, plain **OR** deformed, **as directed**, steel wire, with less than 2 percent damaged coating in each 12-inch (300-mm) wire length.
8. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), plain. Cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burrs.

#### B. Concrete Materials

1. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of same type, brand, and source, throughout Project:
  - a. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I **OR** Type II **OR** Type I/II **OR** Type III **OR** Type V, **as directed**. Supplement with the following, **as directed**:
    - 1) Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C **OR** Class F, **as directed**.
    - 2) Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.
  - b. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595, Type IS, portland blast-furnace slag **OR** Type IP, portland-pozzolan **OR** Type I (PM), pozzolan-modified portland **OR** Type I (SM), slag-modified Portland, **as directed**, cement.
2. Normal-Weight Aggregate: ASTM C 33, graded, 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) nominal maximum coarse-aggregate size.
  - a. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
3. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M and potable.
4. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that will not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
  - a. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
  - b. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
  - c. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
  - d. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.
5. Sand-Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type II; clean natural sand, ASTM C 404; and water to result in grout with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 1000 psi (6.9 MPa), of consistency required for application.

#### C. Steel Casings

1. Steel Pipe Casings: ASTM A 283/A 283M, Grade C, or ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plate, with joints full-penetration welded according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
2. Corrugated-Steel Pipe Casings: ASTM A 929/A 929M, steel sheet, zinc coated.
3. Liners: Comply with ACI 336.1.

#### D. Slurry

1. Slurry: Pulverized bentonite, pulverized attapulgite, or polymers mixed with water to form stable colloidal suspension; complying with ACI 336.1 for density, viscosity, sand content, and pH.

#### E. Concrete Mixtures

1. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301.
2. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement according to ACI 301 limits as if concrete were exposed to deicing chemicals.



3. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 **OR** 0.30, **as directed**, percent by weight of cement.
4. Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
  - a. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 6000 psi (41.4 MPa) **OR** 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) **OR** 4500 psi (31 MPa) **OR** 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) **OR** 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) **OR** 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), **as directed**.
  - b. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.50 **OR** 0.45 **OR** 0.40, **as directed**.
  - c. Minimum Slump: Capable of maintaining the following slump until completion of placement:
    - 1) 4 inches (100 mm) for dry, uncased, or permanent-cased drilling method.
    - 2) 6 inches (150 mm) for temporary-casing drilling method.
    - 3) 7 inches (175 mm) for slurry displacement method.
  - d. Air Content: Do not air entrain concrete.

F. Fabricating Reinforcement

1. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

G. Concrete Mixing

1. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M, and furnish batch ticket information.
  - a. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F (30 and 32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F (32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation

1. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, vibration, and other hazards created by drilled-pier operations.

B. Excavation

1. Unclassified Excavation: Excavate to bearing elevations regardless of character of surface and subsurface conditions encountered. Unclassified excavated materials may include rock, soil materials, and obstructions.
  - a. Obstructions: Unclassified excavation may include removal of unanticipated boulders, concrete, masonry, or other subsurface obstructions. No changes in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time will be authorized for removal of obstructions.
2. Classified Excavation: Excavation is classified as standard excavation, special excavation, and obstruction removal and includes excavation to bearing elevations as follows:
  - a. Standard excavation includes excavation accomplished with conventional augers fitted with soil or rock teeth, drilling buckets, or underreaming tools attached to drilling equipment of size, power, torque, and downthrust necessary for the Work.
  - b. Special excavation includes excavation that requires special equipment or procedures above or below indicated depth of drilled piers where drilled-pier excavation equipment used in standard excavation, operating at maximum power, torque, and downthrust, cannot advance the shaft.
    - 1) Special excavation requires use of special rock augers, core barrels, air tools, blasting, or other methods of hand excavation.
    - 2) Earth seams, rock fragments, and voids included in rock excavation area will be considered rock for full volume of shaft from initial contact with rock.
  - c. Obstructions: Payment for removing unanticipated boulders, concrete, masonry, or other subsurface obstructions that cannot be removed by conventional augers fitted with soil or rock teeth, drilling buckets, or underreaming tools attached to drilling equipment of size, power, torque, and downthrust necessary for the Work will be according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.



3. Prevent surface water from entering excavated shafts. Conduct water to site drainage facilities.
  4. Excavate shafts for drilled piers to indicated elevations. Remove loose material from bottom of excavation.
    - a. Excavate bottom of drilled piers to level plane within 1:12 tolerance.
    - b. Remove water from excavated shafts before concreting.
    - c. Excavate rock sockets of dimensions indicated.
    - d. Cut series of grooves about perimeter of shaft to height from bottom of shaft, vertical spacing, and dimensions indicated.
  5. Notify and allow testing and inspecting agency to test and inspect bottom of excavation. If unsuitable bearing stratum is encountered, make adjustments to drilled piers as determined by the Owner.
    - a. Do not excavate shafts deeper than elevations indicated unless approved by the Owner.
    - b. Payment for additional authorized excavation will be according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.
  6. End-Bearing Drilled Piers: If further exploration below bearing elevation is required for end-bearing piers or if soft soils are suspected, probe with auger to a depth below bearing elevation, equal to diameter of the bearing area of drilled pier. Determine whether voids, clay seams, or solution channels exist.
    - a. Fill augur-probe holes with grout.
  7. End-Bearing Drilled Piers: If drilled piers bear on clay or hardpan, probe with auger to a depth of 96 inches (2450 mm) below bottom elevation of shaft, and visually inspect and classify soil. Verify continuity and thickness of stratum.
  8. Excavate shafts for closely spaced drilled piers and for drilled piers occurring in fragile or sand strata only after adjacent drilled piers are filled with concrete and allowed to set.
  9. Slurry Displacement Method: Stabilize excavation with slurry maintained a minimum of 60 inches (1500 mm) above ground-water level and above unstable soil strata to prevent caving or sloughing of shaft. Maintain slurry properties before concreting.
    - a. Excavate and complete concreting of drilled pier on same day if possible, or redrill, clean, and test slurry in excavation before concreting.
    - b. Clean bottom of each shaft before concreting.
  10. Temporary Casings: Install watertight steel casings of sufficient length and thickness to prevent water seepage into shaft; to withstand compressive, displacement, and withdrawal stresses; and to maintain stability of shaft walls.
    - a. Remove temporary casings, maintained in plumb position, during concrete placement and before initial set of concrete, or leave temporary casings in place, **as directed**.
  11. Bells: Excavate bells for drilled piers to shape, base thickness, and slope angle indicated. Excavate bottom of bells to level plane and remove loose material before placing concrete.
    - a. Shore bells in unstable soil conditions to prevent cave-in during excavation, inspection, and concreting.
  12. Tolerances: Construct drilled piers to remain within ACI 336.1 tolerances.
    - a. If location or out-of-plumb tolerances are exceeded, provide corrective construction. Submit design and construction proposals to the Owner for review before proceeding.
- C. Permanent Steel Casings
1. Install steel casings of minimum wall thickness indicated and of diameter not less than diameter of drilled pier.
    - a. Install casings as excavation proceeds, to maintain sidewall stability.
    - b. Fabricate bottom edge of lowest casing section with cutting shoe capable of penetrating rock and achieving water seal.
    - c. Connect casing sections by continuous penetration welds to form watertight, continuous casing.
    - d. Remove and replace or repair casings that have been damaged during installation and that could impair strength or efficiency of drilled pier.
    - e. Fill annular void between casing and shaft wall with grout.



2. Corrugated-Steel Casings: Provide corrugated-steel casings formed from zinc-coated steel sheet.
  - a. Corrugated casings may be delivered in sections or panels of convenient length and field connected according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Steel Reinforcement
  1. Comply with recommendations in CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
  2. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, and other materials that reduce or destroy bond with concrete.
  3. Fabricate and install reinforcing cages symmetrically about axis of shafts in a single unit.
  4. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement during concreting. Maintain minimum cover over reinforcement.
  5. Use templates to set anchor bolts, leveling plates, and other accessories furnished in work of other Sections. Provide blocking and holding devices to maintain required position during final concrete placement.
  6. Protect exposed ends of extended reinforcement, dowels, or anchor bolts from mechanical damage and exposure to weather.
- E. Concrete Placement
  1. Place concrete in continuous operation and without segregation immediately after inspection and approval of shaft by the Owner's independent testing and inspecting agency.
    - a. Construct a construction joint if concrete placement is delayed more than one hour. Level top surface of concrete and insert joint dowel bars, **as directed**. Before placing remainder of concrete, clean surface laitance, roughen, and slush concrete with commercial bonding agent or with sand-cement grout mixed at ratio of 1:1.
  2. Dry Method: Place concrete to fall vertically down the center of drilled pier without striking sides of shaft or steel reinforcement.
    - a. Where concrete cannot be directed down shaft without striking reinforcement, place concrete with chutes, tremies, or pumps.
    - b. Vibrate top 60 inches (1500 mm) of concrete.
  3. Slurry Displacement Method: Place concrete in slurry-filled shafts by tremie methods or pumping. Control placement operations to ensure that tremie or pump pipe is embedded no fewer than 60 inches (1500 mm) into concrete and that flow of concrete is continuous from bottom to top of drilled pier.
  4. Coordinate withdrawal of temporary casings with concrete placement to maintain at least a 60-inch (1500-mm) head of concrete above bottom of casing.
    - a. Vibrate top 60 inches (1500 mm) of concrete after withdrawal of temporary casing.
  5. Screed concrete at cutoff elevation level and apply scoured, rough finish. Where cutoff elevation is above the ground elevation, form top section above grade and extend shaft to required elevation.
  6. Protect concrete work, according to ACI 301, from frost, freezing, or low temperatures that could cause physical damage or reduced strength.
    - a. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
    - b. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other mineral-containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators.
  7. If hot-weather conditions exist that would seriously impair quality and strength of concrete, place concrete according to ACI 301 to maintain delivered temperature of concrete at no more than 90 deg F (32 deg C).
    - a. Place concrete immediately on delivery. Keep exposed concrete surfaces and formed shaft extensions moist by fog sprays, wet burlap, or other effective means for a minimum of seven days.
- F. Field Quality Control



1. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
  - a. Drilled piers.
  - b. Excavation.
  - c. Concrete.
  - d. Steel reinforcement welding.
2. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
3. Drilled-Pier Tests and Inspections: For each drilled pier, before concrete placement.
  - a. Soil Testing: Bottom elevations, bearing capacities, and lengths of drilled piers indicated have been estimated from available soil data. Actual elevations and drilled-pier lengths and bearing capacities will be determined by testing and inspecting agency. Final evaluations and approval of data will be determined by the Owner.
    - 1) Bearing Stratum Tests: Testing agency will take undisturbed hardpan **OR** rock, **as directed**, core samples from drilled-pier bottoms and test each sample for compression, moisture content, and density, and will report results and evaluations.
4. Concrete Tests and Inspections: ASTM C 172 except modified for slump to comply with ASTM C 94/C 94M.
  - a. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each compressive-strength test but no fewer than one test for each concrete load.
  - b. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; 1 test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and below and 80 deg F (27 deg C) and above, and 1 test for each set of compressive-strength specimens.
  - c. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M; one set of four standard cylinders for each compressive-strength test unless otherwise indicated. Mold and store cylinders for laboratory-cured test specimens unless field-cured test specimens are required.
  - d. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39; one set for each drilled pier but not more than one set for each truck load. One specimen will be tested at 7 days, 2 specimens will be tested at 28 days, and 1 specimen will be retained in reserve for later testing if required.
  - e. If frequency of testing will provide fewer than five strength tests for a given class of concrete, testing will be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
  - f. If strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, Contractor shall evaluate operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
  - g. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi (3.4 MPa).
  - h. Report test results in writing to the Owner, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. List Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests in reports of compressive-strength tests.
  - i. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by the Owner but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
  - j. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency will make additional tests of concrete if test results indicate that slump, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by the Owner.
    - 1) Continuous coring of drilled piers may be required, at Contractor's expense, if temporary casings have not been withdrawn within specified time limits or if observations of placement operations indicate deficient concrete quality, presence of voids, segregation, or other possible defects.



- k. Perform additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
  - l. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate do not comply with the Contract Documents.
  5. An excavation, concrete, or a drilled pier will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  6. Prepare test and inspection reports for each drilled pier as follows:
    - a. Actual top and bottom elevations.
    - b. Actual drilled-pier diameter at top, bottom, and bell.
    - c. Top of rock elevation.
    - d. Description of soil materials.
    - e. Description, location, and dimensions of obstructions.
    - f. Final top centerline location and deviations from requirements.
    - g. Variation of shaft from plumb.
    - h. Shaft excavating method.
    - i. Design and tested bearing capacity of bottom.
    - j. Depth of rock socket.
    - k. Levelness of bottom and adequacy of cleanout.
    - l. Properties of slurry and slurry test results at time of slurry placement and at time of concrete placement.
    - m. Ground-water conditions and water-infiltration rate, depth, and pumping.
    - n. Description, purpose, length, wall thickness, diameter, tip, and top and bottom elevations of temporary or permanent casings. Include anchorage and sealing methods used and condition and weather tightness of splices if any.
    - o. Description of soil or water movement, sidewall stability, loss of ground, and means of control.
    - p. Bell dimensions and variations from original design.
    - q. Date and time of starting and completing excavation.
    - r. Inspection report.
    - s. Condition of reinforcing steel and splices.
    - t. Position of reinforcing steel.
    - u. Concrete placing method, including elevation of consolidation and delays.
    - v. Elevation of concrete during removal of casings.
    - w. Locations of construction joints.
    - x. Concrete volume.
    - y. Concrete testing results.
    - z. Remarks, unusual conditions encountered, and deviations from requirements.
- G. Disposal Of Surplus And Waste Materials
1. Disposal: Remove surplus satisfactory soil and waste material, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of it off the Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 31 41 13 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
31 41 16 13	31 23 16 13	Excavation Support And Protection
31 41 16 13	31 41 13 00	Drilled Piers



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

**SECTION 31 45 13 00 - SOIL STABILIZATION-VIBROFLOTATION****1.1 GENERAL**

- A. This specification covers soil stabilization of sandy subsurfaces by the method of vibroflotation.

**1.2 PRODUCTS - (Not Used)****1.3 EXECUTION**

- A. The vibroflotation process shall be applied only to areas of clean, granular soils, with not over 20 percent silt or 10 percent clay. Vibrators shall be water-jetted into the soil mass to the depth required. The vibrator shall be withdrawn in 1 foot increments as the saturated soil compacts laterally and at a rate of approximately 1 ft/min to a minimum relative density of 70 percent. As the surface crater forms, sand or crushed rock shall be added and compacted to the appropriate line and grade. The horizontal distance between successive treatments shall not exceed 5 feet, or as directed.

END OF SECTION 31 45 13 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 31 62 23 13 - CONCRETE-FILLED STEEL PILES

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for concrete-filled steel piles. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section includes concrete-filled steel shell and pipe piles.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: For composite piles. Show fabrication and installation details for piles, including splices and tip details.
  - a. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld.
  - b. Indicate locations, sizes, type, and arrangement of reinforcement.
  - c. Include arrangement of static pile reaction frame, test and anchor piles, equipment, and instrumentation. Submit structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
3. Welding certificates.
4. Design Mixes: For each concrete mix. Include revised mix proportions when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
5. Material Certificates: For steel shell piles and accessories, steel pipe piles and accessories, steel reinforcement and concrete admixtures, from manufacturer.
6. Material Test Reports: For concrete materials.
7. Pile-Driving Equipment Data: Include type, make, and rated energy range; weight of striking part of hammer; weight of drive cap; and, type, size, and properties of hammer cushion.
  - a. Include mandrel type and details.
8. Static Pile Test Reports: Submit within three days of completing each test.
9. Pile-Driving Records: Submit within three days of driving each pile.
10. Field quality-control reports.
11. Preconstruction Photographs: Photographs or video of existing conditions of adjacent construction. Submit before the Work begins.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
2. Comply with requirements in ACI 301, "Specifications for Structural Concrete."
3. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - a. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel"
  - b. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
4. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver piles to Project site in such quantities and at such times to ensure continuity of installation. Handle and store piles at Project site to prevent physical damage.
  - a. Painted Piles: Protect finish and touch up damage before driving piles.

#### F. Project Conditions



1. Protect structures, underground utilities, and other construction from damage caused by pile driving.
2. Preconstruction Photographs: Inventory and record the condition of adjacent structures, underground utilities, and other construction. Provide photographs **OR** video, **as directed**, of conditions that might be misconstrued as damage caused by pile driving.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Steel Shell Piles

1. Fluted Pile Shells: Manufacturer's standard, vertically fluted pile shells; cold formed from steel sheet; 50,000-psi (345-MPa) minimum yield strength after forming. Fabricate watertight, uniformly tapered sections with forged-steel conical nose welded to tip.
  - a. Constant Diameter Extensions: Fabricate with splice overlap capable of telescoping into tapered section.
  - b. Taper: 0.14 inch in 12 inches (1:86) **OR** 0.25 inch in 12 inches (1:48) **OR** 0.40 inch in 12 inches (1:30), **as directed**.
  - c. Thickness: 0.150 inch (3.80 mm) **OR** 0.179 inch (4.55 mm) **OR** 0.209 inch (5.31 mm) **OR** 0.239 inch (6.07 mm), **as directed**.
2. Helically Corrugated Pile Shells: Manufacturer's standard, helically corrugated, uniform-diameter, steel sheet shell piles; of sufficient strength and thickness to remain watertight and resist distortion and buckling due to soil pressure, internal mandrel operation, or re-driving. Fabricate in one-piece lengths with 3/16-inch- (4.76-mm-) thick, minimum steel-plate boot continuously welded to tip and as follows:
  - a. Nominal Diameter: 8-5/8 inches (219 mm) **OR** 10-5/8 inches (270 mm) **OR** 11-1/8 inches (283 mm) **OR** 12-1/4 inches (311 mm) **OR** 14 inches (350 mm) **OR** 16-1/8 inches (410 mm), **as directed**.
  - b. Thickness: 0.048 inch (1.21 mm), minimum **OR** 0.060 inch (1.52 mm), minimum **OR** 0.075 inch (1.90 mm), minimum **OR** 0.105 inch (2.66 mm), **as directed**.

### B. Steel Pipe Piles

1. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 252, Grade 2 **OR** Grade 3, **as directed**; seamless or welded.

### C. Steel Reinforcement

1. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420); deformed.
2. Low-Alloy-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 706/A 706M.
3. Galvanized Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 767/A 767M, Class II zinc coated, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and bending, as follows:
  - a. Steel Reinforcement: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) **OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**; deformed.
4. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 775/A 775M or ASTM A 934/A 934M, as follows:
  - a. Steel Reinforcement: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420) **OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**; deformed.
5. Plain Steel Wire: ASTM A 82/A 82M, as drawn **OR** galvanized, **as directed**.
6. Deformed-Steel Wire: ASTM A 496/A 496M.
7. Epoxy-Coated-Steel Wire: ASTM A 884/A 884M, Class A coated, plain **OR** deformed, **as directed**.

### D. Concrete Materials

1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II.
  - a. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C or F.
  - b. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.
2. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595, Type IS, portland blast-furnace slag **OR** Type IP, portland-pozzolan **OR** Type I (PM), pozzolan-modified portland **OR** Type I (SM), slag-modified Portland, **as directed**, cement.



3. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, Class 4S **OR** Class 4M **OR** Class 1N, **as directed**, uniformly graded, 3/4-inch (19-mm) maximum aggregate size. Provide aggregates from a single source.
  4. Water: Potable, complying with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements.
  5. Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and to contain not more than 0.1 percent chloride ions by mass of cementitious material.
    - a. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
    - b. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
    - c. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
    - d. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
    - e. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
    - f. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
    - g. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.
- E. Pile Accessories
1. Driving Points: Manufacturer's standard 60-degree conical driving point, with integral reinforcing ribs, to provide full bearing of pipe pile tip. Fabricate from steel castings as follows:
  2. Inside Cutting Shoes: Manufacturer's standard, inside-flanged, open-ended cutting shoe, to provide full bearing of pipe pile tip. Fabricate from steel castings as follows:
  3. Outside Cutting Shoes: Manufacturer's standard, outside-flanged, open-ended cutting shoe, to provide full bearing of pipe pile tip. Fabricate from steel castings as follows:
    - a. Carbon-Steel Castings: ASTM A 27/A 27M, Grade 65-35 (Grade 450-240), heat treated **OR** Grade N1, **as directed**.
    - b. High-Strength Steel Castings: ASTM A 148/A 148M, Grade 80-40 (Grade 550-275) **OR** Grade 90-60 (Grade 620-415), **as directed**.
  4. Splice Coupling: Manufacturer's standard splice coupling, rolled from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel bar or cast from heat-treated carbon steel, ASTM A 27/A 27M, Grade 65-35 (Grade 450-240), with interior stop and internally tapered for friction fit driving.
- F. Paint
1. Paint: SSPC-Paint 16; self-priming, two-component, coal-tar epoxy polyamide, black **OR** red **OR** manufacturer's standard color, **as directed**.
- G. Concrete Mixes
1. Prepare concrete design mixes according to ACI 301, determined by either laboratory trial batch or field test data basis.
    - a. Use a qualified testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mix designs determined by laboratory trial batch.
  2. Proportion mixes according to ACI 301 to provide normal-weight concrete suitable for piles with the following properties:
    - a. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) **OR** 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) **OR** 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), **as directed**.
    - b. Maximum Water-Cementitious Material Ratio at Point of Placement: 0.45 **OR** 0.50, **as directed**.
    - c. Slump Limit: 5 inches (127 mm) **OR** 8 inches (203 mm), **as directed**, plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
  3. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in normal-weight concrete at point of placement having an air content of 6.0 percent, plus or minus 1.5 **OR** 2.5 to 4.5, **as directed**, percent.
  4. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement according to ACI 301 limits as if concrete were exposed to deicing chemicals.
  5. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 **OR** 0.30, **as directed**, percent by weight of cement.
  6. Concrete-mix design adjustments may be considered if characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant. Resubmit and obtain approval from the Owner of proposed changes to concrete-mix proportions.



#### H. Fabrication

1. Fabricate and assemble piles in shop to greatest extent possible.
2. Fabricate full-length piles to eliminate splicing during driving.

**OR**

Fabricate full-length piles by splicing pile lengths together. Maintain axial alignment of pile lengths. Maintain structural properties of pile across splice.

- a. Splice Coupling: Fit splice coupling into position and weld to adjoining steel pipe pile sections according to manufacturer's written instructions and AWS D1.1/D1.1M for procedures, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
  - b. Welded Splices: Accurately mill meeting ends of steel pipe piles and bevel for welding. Continuously weld pile according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M for procedures, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
  - c. Welded Splices: Continuously weld steel shell pile according to manufacturer's written instructions and AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.3, **as directed**, for procedures, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
  - d. Splice piles during fabrication or field installation.
3. Fit and weld driving points to tip of pile according to manufacturer's written instructions and AWS D1.1/D1.1M for procedures, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.

**OR**

Fit and weld cutting shoes to tip of pile according to manufacturer's written instructions and AWS D1.1/D1.1M for procedures, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.

4. Pile-Length Markings: Mark each pile with horizontal lines at 12-inch (305-mm) intervals; label the distance from pile tip at 60-inch (1.52-m) intervals. Maintain markings on piles until driven.

#### I. Shop Painting, **as directed**

1. General: Shop paint steel pile surfaces, except for surfaces to be encased in concrete, as follows:
  - a. Extend painting to a depth of 60 inches (1.52 m) below finished grade **OR** low-tide level, **as directed**, to top of exposed pile.
2. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and loose mill scale, and remove spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to SSPC-SP 10/NACE No. 2, "Near-White Blast Cleaning."
3. Painting: Immediately after surface preparation, apply coat of paint according to manufacturer's written instructions to provide a dry film thickness of not less than 8 mils (0.2 mm).
  - a. Apply second coat to provide a dry film thickness of not less than 8 mils (0.2 mm), resulting in a two-coat paint system thickness of not less than 16 mils (0.4 mm).
  - b. Apply second and third coats with each coat having a dry film thickness of not less than 8 mils (0.2 mm), resulting in a three-coat paint system thickness of not less than 24 mils (0.6 mm).
  - c. Mark pile lengths after shop painting.

#### J. Concrete Mixing

1. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Comply with ASTM C 94/C 94M.
  - a. Do not add water to concrete mix after mixing.
  - b. Maintain concrete temperature to not exceed 90 deg F (32 deg C).

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination





1. Site Conditions: Do not start pile-driving operations until earthwork fills have been completed or excavations have reached an elevation of 6 to 12 inches (152 to 305 mm) above bottom of footing or pile cap.
- B. Driving Equipment
1. Pile Hammer: Air-, steam-, hydraulic-, or diesel-powered type capable of consistently delivering adequate peak-force duration and magnitude to develop the ultimate capacity required for type and size of pile driven and character of subsurface material anticipated.
  2. Hammer Cushions and Driving Caps: Between hammer and top of pile, provide hammer cushion and steel driving cap as recommended by hammer manufacturer and as required to drive pile without damage.
  3. Leads: Use fixed, semifixed, or hanging-type pile-driver leads that will hold full length of pile firmly in position and in axial alignment with hammer.
  4. Mandrel: Expandable mandrel, capable of distributing driving energy throughout length of steel shell pile.
- C. Static Pile Tests, **as directed**
1. General: Static pile tests will be used to verify driving criteria and pile lengths and to confirm allowable load of piles.
    - a. Furnish test piles 60 inches (1.52 m) longer than production piles.
    - b. Determination of actual length of piles will be based on results of static pile tests.
  2. Pile Tests: Arrange and perform the following pile tests:
    - a. Axial Compressive Static Load Test: ASTM D 1143.
    - b. Axial Tension Static Load Test: ASTM D 3689.
    - c. Lateral Load Test: ASTM D 3966.
  3. Equip each test pile with two telltale rods, according to ASTM D 1143, for measuring deformation during load test.
  4. Provide pile reaction frame, anchor piles, equipment, and instrumentation with sufficient reaction capacity to perform tests. Notify the Owner at least 48 hours in advance of performing tests. On completion of testing, remove testing structure, anchor piles, equipment, and instrumentation.
    - a. Allow a minimum of seven days to elapse after driving test piles before starting pile testing.
    - b. Number of Test Piles: One pile **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  5. Driving Test Piles: Drive test piles at locations indicated to the minimum penetration or driving resistance indicated. Use test piles identical to those required for Project and drive with appropriate pile-driving equipment operating at rated driving energy to be used in driving permanent piles.
    - a. Pile Design Load: As indicated **OR as directed**.
  6. Approval Criteria: Allowable load shall be the load acting on the test pile when the lesser of, **as directed**, the following criteria are met, divided by a factor of safety of 2:
    - a. Net settlement, after deducting rebound, of not more than 0.01 inch/ton (0.25 mm/907 kg) of test load.
    - b. Total settlement exceeds the pile elastic compression by 0.15 inch (4 mm), plus 1.0 percent of the tip diagonal dimension.
    - c. A plunging failure or sharp break in the load settlement curve.
  7. Test Pile-Driving Records: Prepare driving records for each test pile, compiled and attested to by a qualified professional engineer, **as directed**. Include same data as required for driving records of permanent piles.
  8. Test piles that comply with requirements, including location tolerances, may be used on Project.
- D. Steel Reinforcement
1. Comply with recommendations in CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
  2. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, and other materials that reduce or destroy bond with concrete.
  3. Fabricate and install reinforcement cages symmetrically about axis of pile shell **OR** pipe, **as directed**, in a single unit.



4. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement during concreting. Maintain minimum cover on reinforcement.
5. Protect exposed ends of extended reinforcement, dowels, or anchor bolts from mechanical damage and exposure to weather.

#### E. Concrete Placement

1. Do not place concrete until other piles within a radius of 20 feet (6 m) have been driven and approved.
2. Inspection: Before placing concrete, allow testing and inspecting agency to visually inspect and verify that each pile shell **OR** pipe, **as directed**, is clean, watertight, plumb, and free of distortion or other defects.
3. Place concrete in a continuous operation and without segregation immediately after cleaning out pile shell **OR** pipe, **as directed**.
4. Place concrete by means of bottom discharge bucket, flexible drop chute, steep-sided funnel hopper, or tremie or pump concrete into place.
5. Place concrete in a dry pile shell **OR** pipe, **as directed**, unless placement underwater is approved by the Owner.
  - a. Place concrete underwater by tremie method or pumping. Control placement operations to ensure tremie is embedded no less than 60 inches (1.52 m) into concrete, and flow of tremied concrete is continuous from bottom to top of pile shell **OR** pipe, **as directed**.
  - b. Other methods of depositing concrete may be used if approved by the Owner.
6. Consolidate final 10 feet (3 m) of concrete during placement to ensure that concrete is thoroughly worked around steel reinforcement and into corners.
7. Screed concrete level at cutoff elevation and apply a scoured, rough finish.

#### F. Driving Piles

1. General: Continuously drive piles to elevations or penetration resistance indicated or established by static load testing of piles, **as directed**. Establish and maintain axial alignment of leads and piles before and during driving.
2. Predrilling, **as directed**: Provide pre-excavated holes where indicated, to depths indicated. Drill holes with a diameter less than the largest cross-section dimension of pile.
  - a. Firmly seat pile in predrilled hole by driving with reduced energy before starting final driving.
3. Heaved Piles: Redrive heaved piles to tip elevation at least as deep as original tip elevation with a driving resistance at least as great as original driving resistance.
4. Pile Splices: Splice piles during installation and align pile segments concentrically.
5. Driving Tolerances: Drive piles without exceeding the following tolerances, measured at pile heads:
  - a. Location: 4 inches (102 mm) from location indicated after initial driving, and 6 inches (152 mm) after pile driving is completed.
  - b. Plumb: Maintain 1 inch (25 mm) in 4 feet (1.2 m) from vertical, or a maximum of 4 inches (102 mm), measured when pile is aboveground in leads.
  - c. Batter Angle: Maximum 1 inch (25 mm) in 4 feet (1.2 m) from required angle, measured when pile is aboveground in leads.
6. Excavation: Clean out steel pipe pile by removing soil and debris from inside pile before placing steel reinforcement or concrete.
7. Withdraw damaged or defective piles and piles that exceed driving tolerances and install new piles within driving tolerances.
  - a. Fill holes left by withdrawn piles using cohesionless soil material such as gravel, broken stone, and gravel-sand mixtures. Place and compact in lifts not exceeding 72 inches (1.83 m).  
**OR**  
Fill holes left by withdrawn piles as directed by the Owner.

**OR**



- Abandon and cut off rejected piles as directed by the Owner. Leave rejected piles in place and install new piles in locations as directed by the Owner.
8. Cutting Off: Cut off tops of driven piles square with pile axis and at elevations indicated.
  9. Pile-Driving Records: Maintain accurate driving records for each pile, compiled and attested to by a qualified professional engineer, **as directed**. Include the following data:
    - a. Project name and number.
    - b. Name of Contractor.
    - c. Pile location in pile group and designation of pile group.
    - d. Sequence of driving in pile group.
    - e. Pile dimensions.
    - f. Ground elevation.
    - g. Elevation of tips after driving.
    - h. Final tip and cutoff elevations of piles after driving pile group.
    - i. Records of re-driving.
    - j. Elevation of splices.
    - k. Type, make, model, and rated energy of hammer.
    - l. Weight and stroke of hammer.
    - m. Type of pile-driving cap used.
    - n. Cushion material and thickness.
    - o. Actual stroke and blow rate of hammer.
    - p. Pile-driving start and finish times, and total driving time.
    - q. Time, pile-tip elevation, and reason for interruptions.
    - r. Number of blows for every 12 inches (305 mm) of penetration, and number of blows per 1 inch (25 mm) for the last 6 inches (152 mm) of driving.
    - s. Pile deviations from location and plumb.
    - t. Preboring, jetting, or special procedures used.
    - u. Unusual occurrences during pile driving.
- G. Field Quality Control
1. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
    - a. Pile foundations.
  2. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
  3. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. Dynamic Pile Testing: High-strain dynamic monitoring shall be performed and reported according to ASTM D 4945 during initial driving and during restriking on 5 single piles **OR** 3 percent of piles, **as directed**.
    - b. Low-strain integrity measurement shall be performed and reported for each pile.
    - c. Weld Testing: In addition to visual inspection, welds shall be tested and inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the inspection procedures listed in subparagraphs below, at testing agency's option. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.
      - 1) Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
      - 2) Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration will not be accepted.
      - 3) Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94; minimum quality level "2-2T."
      - 4) Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
    - d. Concrete: Sampling and testing of concrete for quality control shall include the following:
      - 1) Sampling Fresh Concrete: ASTM C 172, except modified for slump to comply with ASTM C 94/C 94M.
        - a) Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each compressive-strength test, but no fewer than one test for each concrete load.
        - b) Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F (5 deg C) and below or when 80 deg F (27 deg C) and above, and one test for each set of compressive-strength specimens.



- c) Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M; one set of four standard cylinders for each compressive-strength test unless otherwise indicated. Mold and store cylinders for laboratory-cured test specimens unless field-cured test specimens are required.
  - d) Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; one set for each truck load. One specimen shall be tested at seven days, two specimens shall be tested at 28 days, and one specimen shall be retained in reserve for later testing if required.
- 2) When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five strength tests for a given class of concrete, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
  - 3) When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, evaluate current operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
  - 4) Strength level of concrete will be considered satisfactory if averages of sets of three consecutive strength test results equal or exceed specified compressive strength and no individual strength test result falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi (3.45 MPa).
  - 5) Test results shall be reported in writing to the Owner, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 24 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, concrete type and class, location of concrete batch in piles, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete-mix proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
  - 6) Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted but shall not be used as sole basis for acceptance or rejection.
  - 7) Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate concrete strengths or other requirements have not been met.

H. Touchup Painting, **as directed**

- 1. Clean field welds, splices, and abraded painted areas and field-apply paint according to SSPC-PA 1. Use same paint and apply same number of coats as specified for shop painting.
  - a. Apply touchup paint before driving piles to surfaces that will be immersed or inaccessible after driving.

I. Disposal

- 1. Remove withdrawn piles and cutoff sections of piles from site and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 31 62 23 13



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
31 64 13 00	31 41 13 00	Drilled Piers
31 68 13 00	31 41 13 00	Drilled Piers



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

**SECTION 32 01 11 53 - ASPHALT PAVING****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for asphalt paving. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Summary**

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Cold milling of existing hot-mix asphalt pavement.
  - b. Hot-mix asphalt patching.
  - c. Hot-mix asphalt paving.
  - d. Hot-mix asphalt paving overlay.
  - e. Asphalt surface treatments.
  - f. Pavement-marking paint.
  - g. Traffic-calming devices.
  - h. Imprinted asphalt.

**C. Definition**

1. Hot-Mix Asphalt Paving Terminology: Refer to ASTM D 8 for definitions of terms.

**D. Submittals**

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include technical data and tested physical and performance properties.
  - a. Job-Mix Designs: Certification, by authorities having jurisdiction, of approval of each job mix proposed for the Work.
  - b. Job-Mix Designs: For each job mix proposed for the Work.
2. Material Certificates: For each paving material, from manufacturer.

**E. Quality Assurance**

1. Manufacturer Qualifications: A paving-mix manufacturer registered with and approved by authorities having jurisdiction or the DOT of state in which Project is located.
2. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with materials, workmanship, and other applicable requirements of State or local DOT for asphalt paving work.
  - a. Measurement and payment provisions and safety program submittals included in standard specifications do not apply to this Section.
3. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

**F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling**

1. Deliver pavement-marking materials to Project site in original packages with seals unbroken and bearing manufacturer's labels containing brand name and type of material, date of manufacture, and directions for storage.
2. Store pavement-marking materials in a clean, dry, protected location within temperature range required by manufacturer. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

**G. Project Conditions**

1. Environmental Limitations: Do not apply asphalt materials if subgrade is wet or excessively damp, if rain is imminent or expected before time required for adequate cure, or if the following conditions are not met:
  - a. Prime Coat: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F (15.6 deg C).
  - b. Tack Coat: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F (15.6 deg C).



- c. Slurry Coat: Comply with weather limitations in ASTM D 3910.
  - d. Asphalt Base Course: Minimum surface temperature of 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and rising at time of placement.
  - e. Asphalt Surface Course: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F (15.6 deg C) at time of placement.
2. Pavement-Marking Paint: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces and at a minimum ambient or surface temperature of 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) for oil-based materials **OR** 55 deg F (12.8 deg C) for water-based materials, **as directed**, and not exceeding 95 deg F (35 deg C).
  3. Imprinted Asphalt Paving: Proceed with coating imprinted pavement only when air temperature is at least 50 deg F (10 deg C) and rising and will not drop below 50 deg F (10 deg C) within 8 hours of coating application. Proceed only if no precipitation is expected within two hours after applying the final layer of coating.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Aggregates

1. General: Use materials and gradations that have performed satisfactorily in previous installations.
2. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM D 692, sound; angular crushed stone, crushed gravel, or cured, crushed blast-furnace slag.
3. Fine Aggregate: ASTM D 1073 or AASHTO M 29, sharp-edged natural sand or sand prepared from stone, gravel, cured blast-furnace slag, or combinations thereof.
  - a. For hot-mix asphalt, limit natural sand to a maximum of 20 percent by weight of the total aggregate mass.
4. Mineral Filler: ASTM D 242 or AASHTO M 17, rock or slag dust, hydraulic cement, or other inert material.

### B. Asphalt Materials

1. Asphalt Binder: AASHTO M 320 or AASHTO MP 1a, PG 64-22 **OR** PG 58-28 **OR** PG 70-22, **as directed**.
2. Asphalt Cement: ASTM D 3381 for viscosity-graded material **OR** ASTM D 946 for penetration-graded material, **as directed**.
3. Prime Coat:
  - a. ASTM D 2027, medium-curing cutback asphalt, MC-30 or MC-70 **OR** MC-250, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Asphalt emulsion prime coat complying with State or local DOT requirements.
4. Tack Coat: ASTM D 977 or AASHTO M 140 emulsified asphalt, or ASTM D 2397 or AASHTO M 208 cationic emulsified asphalt, slow setting, diluted in water, of suitable grade and consistency for application.
5. Fog Seal: ASTM D 977 or AASHTO M 140 emulsified asphalt, or ASTM D 2397 or AASHTO M 208 cationic emulsified asphalt, slow setting, factory diluted in water, of suitable grade and consistency for application.
6. Slurry Seal: ASTM D 3910, Type 1 **OR** Type 2 **OR** Type 3, **as directed**.
7. Chip Seal: ASTM D 977 or AASHTO M 140 emulsified asphalt, or ASTM D 2397 or AASHTO M 208 cationic emulsified asphalt, slow setting, factory diluted in water, of suitable grade and consistency for application. RS-2 **OR** RS-2P **OR** CRS-2 **OR** CRS-2P **OR** HFRS-2 **OR** HFRS-2P, **as directed**.
8. Sand Seal: AASHTO M 140 emulsified asphalt or AASHTO M 208 cationic emulsified asphalt, slow setting, factory diluted in water, of suitable grade and consistency for application. Sand shall meet the following gradation as tested by AASHTO T27.
9. Water: Potable.
10. Undersealing Asphalt: ASTM D 3141, pumping consistency.





C. Auxiliary Materials

1. Herbicide: Commercial chemical for weed control, registered by the EPA. Provide in granular, liquid, or wettable powder form.
2. Sand: ASTM D 1073 or AASHTO M 29, Grade Nos. 2 or 3.
3. Paving Geotextile: AASHTO M 288, nonwoven polypropylene; resistant to chemical attack, rot, and mildew; and specifically designed for paving applications.
4. Joint Sealant: ASTM D 6690 or AASHTO M 324, Type I **OR** Type II or III **OR** Type IV, **as directed**, hot-applied, single-component, polymer-modified bituminous sealant.
5. Pavement-Marking Paint: Color shall be White **OR** Yellow **OR** Blue, **as directed**.
  - a. Alkyd-resin type, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with AASHTO M 248, Type N **OR** Type F **OR** Type S, **as directed**; colors complying with FS TT-P-1952.  
**OR**  
MPI #32 Alkyd Traffic Marking Paint.  
**OR**  
Latex, waterborne emulsion, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with FS TT-P-1952, Type II, with drying time of less than three **OR** 45, **as directed**, minutes.  
**OR**  
MPI #97 Latex Traffic Marking Paint.
6. Glass Beads: AASHTO M 247, Type 1.
7. Wheel Stops:
  - a. Precast, air-entrained concrete, 2500-psi (17.2-MPa) minimum compressive strength, 4-1/2 inches (115 mm) high by 9 inches (225 mm) wide by 72 inches (1800 mm) long. Provide chamfered corners, drainage slots on underside, and holes for anchoring to substrate.  
**OR**  
Solid, integrally colored, 96 percent recycled HDPE or commingled postconsumer and postindustrial recycled plastic; UV stabilized; 4 inches (100 mm) high by 6 inches (150 mm) wide by 72 inches (1800 mm) long. Provide chamfered corners, drainage slots on underside, and holes for anchoring to substrate.
  - b. Dowels: Galvanized steel, 3/4-inch (19-mm) diameter, 10-inch (254-mm) minimum length.
  - c. Adhesive: As recommended by wheel-stop manufacturer for application to asphalt pavement.

D. Preformed Traffic-Calming Devices

1. Speed Bumps **OR** Humps **OR** Cushions, **as directed**: Solid, integrally colored, 100 percent postconsumer or commingled postconsumer and postindustrial recycled rubber **OR** plastic, **as directed**; UV stabilized. Provide holes for anchoring to substrate.
  - a. Size: Modular bumps 2 inches (51 mm) high by 10 inches (254 mm) wide by 72 inches (1800 mm) long, with overall length as dimensioned on Drawings.
  - b. Size: Modular assemblies 3 inches (76 mm) high by 12 feet (3.7 m) in overall width **OR** 4 inches (102 mm) high by 14 feet (4.3 m) in overall width, **as directed**, with overall length as dimensioned on Drawings.
  - c. Mounting Hardware: Galvanized-steel spike, 1/2-inch (13-mm) diameter, 10-inch (254-mm) minimum length **OR** lag screw, shield, and washers; 1/2-inch (13-mm) diameter, 8-inch (203-mm) minimum length **OR** hardware as standard with device manufacturer, **as directed**.
  - d. Adhesive: As recommended by device manufacturer.

E. Imprinted Asphalt Materials

1. Templates: Imprinted-asphalt manufacturer's standard flexible templates for imprinting pattern into hot asphalt paving.
  - a. Pattern: Running bond brick **OR** Cobblestone **OR** Custom pattern indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
2. Coating System: Imprinted-asphalt manufacturer's standard system formulated for exterior application on asphalt paving surfaces.
  - a. Base Coating: Portland cement and epoxy-modified acrylic polymer blended with sand and aggregate, formulated for exterior application on asphalt paving surfaces.



- b. Top Coating: Epoxy-modified acrylic polymer blended with sand and aggregate, formulated for exterior application on asphalt paving surfaces.
  - c. Colorant: UV-stable pigment blend, added to each coating layer.
  - d. Color: White **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.
3. Precut Marking Material: Imprinted-asphalt manufacturer's standard, reflectorized, thermoplastic, 90-mil (2.3-mm) minimum thickness, formulated for exterior application on asphalt paving surfaces, and matching the imprinted pattern of templates.

#### F. Mixes

1. Hot-Mix Asphalt: Dense, hot-laid, hot-mix asphalt plant mixes approved by authorities having jurisdiction; designed according to procedures in AI MS-2, "Mix Design Methods for Asphalt Concrete and Other Hot-Mix Types"; and complying with the following requirements:
  - a. Provide mixes with a history of satisfactory performance in geographical area where Project is located.
  - b. Base Course: In accordance with state or local DOT specifications.
  - c. Surface Course: In accordance with state or local DOT specifications.
2. Hot-Mix Asphalt Based on ASTM D 3515 Requirements: Dense, hot-laid, hot-mix asphalt plant mixes approved by authorities having jurisdiction and designed according to procedures in AI MS-2, "Mix Design Methods for Asphalt Concrete and Other Hot-Mix Types."
  - a. Provide mixes with a history of satisfactory performance in geographical area where Project is located.
  - b. Provide mixes complying with composition, grading, and tolerance requirements in ASTM D 3515 for the following nominal, maximum aggregate sizes:
    - 1) Base Course: 1 inch (25 mm).
    - 2) Surface Course: 1/2 inch (13 mm).
3. Emulsified-Asphalt Slurry: ASTM D 3910, Type 1 **OR** Type 2 **OR** Type 3, **as directed**.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

1. Verify that subgrade is dry and in suitable condition to begin paving.
2. Proof-roll subgrade below pavements with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.
  - a. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction, repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph (5 km/h).
  - b. Proof roll with a loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons (13.6 tonnes).
  - c. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by the Owner, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.
3. Proceed with paving only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
4. Verify that utilities, traffic loop detectors, and other items requiring a cut and installation beneath the asphalt surface have been completed and that asphalt surface has been repaired flush with adjacent asphalt prior to beginning installation of imprinted asphalt.

#### B. Cold Milling

1. Clean existing pavement surface of loose and deleterious material immediately before cold milling. Remove existing asphalt pavement by cold milling to grades and cross sections indicated.
  - a. Mill to a depth of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm), **as directed**.
  - b. Mill to a uniform finished surface free of excessive gouges, grooves, and ridges.
  - c. Control rate of milling to prevent tearing of existing asphalt course.
  - d. Repair or replace curbs, manholes, and other construction damaged during cold milling.



- e. Excavate and trim unbound-aggregate base course, if encountered, and keep material separate from milled hot-mix asphalt.
- f. Transport milled hot-mix asphalt to asphalt recycling facility.
- g. Keep milled pavement surface free of loose material and dust.

#### C. Patching

1. Hot-Mix Asphalt Pavement: Saw cut perimeter of patch and excavate existing pavement section to sound base. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending 12 inches (300 mm) into adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Remove excavated material. Recompact existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade.
2. Portland Cement Concrete Pavement: Break cracked slabs and roll as required to reseat concrete pieces firmly.
  - a. Pump hot undersealing asphalt under rocking slab until slab is stabilized or, if necessary, crack slab into pieces and roll to reseat pieces firmly.
  - b. Remove disintegrated or badly cracked pavement. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending into adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Recompact existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade.
3. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to vertical surfaces abutting or projecting into new, hot-mix asphalt paving at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd. (0.2 to 0.7 L/sq. m).
  - a. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
  - b. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.
4. Patching:
  - a. Fill excavated pavements with hot-mix asphalt base mix for full thickness of patch and, while still hot, compact flush with adjacent surface.  
**OR**  
Partially fill excavated pavements with hot-mix asphalt base mix and, while still hot, compact. Cover asphalt base course with compacted, hot-mix surface layer finished flush with adjacent surfaces.

#### D. Repairs

1. Leveling Course: Install and compact leveling course consisting of hot-mix asphalt surface course to level sags and fill depressions deeper than 1 inch (25 mm) in existing pavements.
  - a. Install leveling wedges in compacted lifts not exceeding 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
2. Crack and Joint Filling: Remove existing joint filler material from cracks or joints to a depth of 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - a. Clean cracks and joints in existing hot-mix asphalt pavement.
  - b. Use emulsified-asphalt slurry to seal cracks and joints less than 1/4 inch (6 mm) wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.
  - c. Use hot-applied joint sealant to seal cracks and joints more than 1/4 inch (6 mm) wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.

#### E. Surface Preparation

1. General: Immediately before placing asphalt materials, remove loose and deleterious material from substrate surfaces. Ensure that prepared subgrade is ready to receive paving.
2. Herbicide Treatment: Apply herbicide according to manufacturer's recommended rates and written application instructions. Apply to dry, prepared subgrade or surface of compacted-aggregate base before applying paving materials.
  - a. Mix herbicide with prime coat if formulated by manufacturer for that purpose.
3. Prime Coat: Apply uniformly over surface of compacted unbound-aggregate base course at a rate of 0.15 to 0.50 gal./sq. yd. (0.7 to 2.3 L/sq. m). Apply enough material to penetrate and seal but not flood surface. Allow prime coat to cure.
  - a. If prime coat is not entirely absorbed within 24 hours after application, spread sand over surface to blot excess asphalt. Use enough sand to prevent pickup under traffic. Remove loose sand by sweeping before pavement is placed and after volatiles have evaporated.



- b. Protect primed substrate from damage until ready to receive paving.
    4. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to surfaces of existing pavement at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd. (0.2 to 0.7 L/sq. m).
      - a. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
      - b. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.
- F. Paving Geotextile Installation
1. Apply tack coat **OR** asphalt binder **OR** asphalt cement, **as directed**, uniformly to existing pavement surfaces at a rate of 0.20 to 0.30 gal./sq. yd. (0.8 to 1.2 L/sq. m).
  2. Place paving geotextile promptly according to manufacturer's written instructions. Broom or roll geotextile smooth and free of wrinkles and folds. Overlap longitudinal joints 4 inches (100 mm) and transverse joints 6 inches (150 mm).
    - a. Protect paving geotextile from traffic and other damage and place hot-mix asphalt paving overlay the same day.
- G. Hot-Mix Asphalt Placing
1. Machine place hot-mix asphalt on prepared surface, spread uniformly, and strike off. Place asphalt mix by hand to areas inaccessible to equipment in a manner that prevents segregation of mix. Place each course to required grade, cross section, and thickness when compacted.
    - a. Place hot-mix asphalt base course in number of lifts and thicknesses indicated.
    - b. Place hot-mix asphalt surface course in single lift.
    - c. Spread mix at minimum temperature of 250 deg F (121 deg C).
    - d. Begin applying mix along centerline of crown for crowned sections and on high side of one-way slopes unless otherwise indicated.
    - e. Regulate paver machine speed to obtain smooth, continuous surface free of pulls and tears in asphalt-paving mat.
  2. Place paving in consecutive strips not less than 10 feet (3 m) wide unless infill edge strips of a lesser width are required.
    - a. After first strip has been placed and rolled, place succeeding strips and extend rolling to overlap previous strips. Complete a section of asphalt base course before placing asphalt surface course.
  3. Promptly correct surface irregularities in paving course behind paver. Use suitable hand tools to remove excess material forming high spots. Fill depressions with hot-mix asphalt to prevent segregation of mix; use suitable hand tools to smooth surface.
- H. Joints
1. Construct joints to ensure a continuous bond between adjoining paving sections. Construct joints free of depressions, with same texture and smoothness as other sections of hot-mix asphalt course.
    - a. Clean contact surfaces and apply tack coat to joints.
    - b. Offset longitudinal joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
    - c. Offset transverse joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 24 inches (600 mm).
    - d. Construct transverse joints at each point where paver ends a day's work and resumes work at a subsequent time. Construct these joints using either "bulkhead" or "papered" method according to AI MS-22, for both "Ending a Lane" and "Resumption of Paving Operations" **OR** as shown on Drawings, **as directed**.
    - e. Compact joints as soon as hot-mix asphalt will bear roller weight without excessive displacement.
    - f. Compact asphalt at joints to a density within 2 percent of specified course density.
- I. Compaction
1. General: Begin compaction as soon as placed hot-mix paving will bear roller weight without excessive displacement. Compact hot-mix paving with hot, hand tampers or with vibratory-plate compactors in areas inaccessible to rollers.



- a. Complete compaction before mix temperature cools to 185 deg F (85 deg C).
  2. Breakdown Rolling: Complete breakdown or initial rolling immediately after rolling joints and outside edge. Examine surface immediately after breakdown rolling for indicated crown, grade, and smoothness. Correct laydown and rolling operations to comply with requirements.
  3. Intermediate Rolling: Begin intermediate rolling immediately after breakdown rolling while hot-mix asphalt is still hot enough to achieve specified density. Continue rolling until hot-mix asphalt course has been uniformly compacted to the following density:
    - a. Average Density:
      - 1) 96 percent of reference laboratory density according to ASTM D 6927 or AASHTO T 245, but not less than 94 percent nor greater than 100 percent.

**OR**

    - 92 percent of reference maximum theoretical density according to ASTM D 2041, but not less than 90 percent nor greater than 96 percent.
  4. Finish Rolling: Finish roll paved surfaces to remove roller marks while hot-mix asphalt is still warm.
  5. Edge Shaping: While surface is being compacted and finished, trim edges of pavement to proper alignment. Bevel edges while asphalt is still hot; compact thoroughly.
  6. Repairs: Remove paved areas that are defective or contaminated with foreign materials and replace with fresh, hot-mix asphalt. Compact by rolling to specified density and surface smoothness.
  7. Protection: After final rolling, do not permit vehicular traffic on pavement until it has cooled and hardened.
  8. Erect barricades to protect paving from traffic until mixture has cooled enough not to become marked.
- J. Asphalt Curbs
1. Construct hot-mix asphalt curbs over compacted pavement surfaces. Apply a light tack coat unless pavement surface is still tacky and free from dust. Spread mix at minimum temperature of 250 deg F (121 deg C).
    - a. Asphalt Mix: Same as pavement surface-course mix.
  2. Place hot-mix asphalt to curb cross section indicated or, if not indicated, to local standard shapes, by machine or by hand in wood or metal forms. Tamp hand-placed materials and screed to smooth finish. Remove forms after hot-mix asphalt has cooled.
- K. Asphalt Traffic-Calming Devices
1. Construct hot-mix asphalt speed bumps, humps, cushions, and tables over compacted pavement surfaces. Apply a tack coat unless pavement surface is still tacky and free from dust. Spread mix at minimum temperature of 250 deg F (121 deg C).
    - a. Tack Coat Application: Apply uniformly to surfaces of existing pavement at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd. (0.2 to 0.7 L/sq. m).
    - b. Asphalt Mix: Same as pavement surface-course mix.
    - c. Before installation, mill pavement that will be in contact with bottom of traffic-calming device. Mill to a depth of 1 inch (25 mm) from top of pavement to a clean, rough profile.
  2. Place hot-mix asphalt to cross section indicated, by machine or by hand in wood or metal forms. Tamp hand-placed materials and screed to smooth finish. Remove forms after hot-mix asphalt has cooled.
- L. Installation Tolerances
1. Pavement Thickness: Compact each course to produce the thickness indicated within the following tolerances:
    - a. Base Course: Plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm).
    - b. Surface Course: Plus 1/4 inch (6 mm), no minus.
  2. Pavement Surface Smoothness: Compact each course to produce a surface smoothness within the following tolerances as determined by using a 10-foot (3-m) straightedge applied transversely or longitudinally to paved areas:
    - a. Base Course: 1/4 inch (6 mm).



- b. Surface Course: 1/8 inch (3 mm).
  - c. Crowned Surfaces: Test with crowned template centered and at right angle to crown. Maximum allowable variance from template is 1/4 inch (6 mm).
3. Traffic-Calming Devices: Compact and form asphalt to produce the contour indicated and within a tolerance of plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm) of height indicated above pavement surface.

M. Surface Treatments

1. Fog Seals: Apply fog seal at a rate of 0.10 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd. (0.45 to 0.7 L/sq. m) to existing asphalt pavement and allow to cure. With fine sand, lightly dust areas receiving excess fog seal.
2. Slurry Seals: Apply slurry coat in a uniform thickness according to ASTM D 3910 and allow to cure.
  - a. Roll slurry seal to remove ridges and provide a uniform, smooth surface.
3. Chip Seals: Apply asphalt binder directly to the pavement followed by a layer of ¼ inch aggregate chips **OR** as directed, and roll to embed aggregate into the binder.
  - a. Can be applied as double **OR** triple layers, **as directed**, which are accomplished by applying additional layers of asphaltic material and aggregate. After applying each layer of aggregate, the surface is compacted using a roller to embed aggregates in the binder.
4. Sand Seals: Spray emulsion directly to the pavement followed by a layer of sand. The sand can be spread immediately for maximum stick, **OR** wait until after the emulsion breaks and be rolled with a pneumatic tire roller, **as directed**.

N. Pavement Marking

1. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with the Owner.
2. Allow paving to age for 30 **OR** 90, **as directed**, days before starting pavement marking.
3. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.
4. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings, of dimensions indicated, with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils (0.4 mm).
  - a. Broadcast glass beads uniformly into wet pavement markings at a rate of 6 lb/gal. (0.72 kg/L).

O. Wheel Stops

1. Install wheel stops in bed of adhesive as recommended by manufacturer.
2. Securely attach wheel stops to pavement with not less than two galvanized-steel dowels embedded at one-quarter to one-third points. Securely install dowels into pavement and bond to wheel stop. Recess head of dowel beneath top of wheel stop.

P. Preformed Traffic-Calming Devices

1. Install preformed speed bumps **OR** humps **OR** cushions, **as directed**, in bed of adhesive as recommended by manufacturer for heavy traffic.
2. Securely attach preformed speed bumps **OR** humps **OR** cushions, **as directed**, to pavement with hardware spaced as recommended by manufacturer for heavy traffic. Recess head of hardware beneath top surface.

Q. Imprinting Asphalt

1. General: Imprint asphalt according to manufacturer's written instructions, using manufacturer's recommended equipment.
2. Freshly Laid Asphalt: Immediately after asphalt has been laid and compacted but still plastic, begin the surface imprinting process.
  - a. Monitor asphalt surface temperature in compliance with manufacturer's written recommendations to ensure required temperature to perform surface imprinting.
  - b. Reheat asphalt if surface temperature drops below that required.
3. Reheating Asphalt: Soften asphalt pavement surface by heating to a depth of at least 1/2 inch (13 mm) without burning asphalt.



- a. Heat to a temperature of 300 to 325 deg F (149 to 163 deg C) immediately before applying templates.
  - b. Regularly monitor the pavement temperature to prevent overheating.
  - c. Direct flame heaters are not permitted.
  - d. If pavement is overheated and begins to emit black smoke, remove damaged pavement by milling down 1 inch (25 mm) and replace removed pavement with new, compacted surface course prior to resuming imprinting work.
4. Surface Imprinting: Apply and imprint templates to a minimum depth of 1/4 inch (6 mm) **OR** as required to embed precut marking material flush or barely beneath pavement surface, **as directed**.
  5. Coating Application: After imprinted surface has cooled, apply two layers of base coating followed by two layers of top coating **OR** four layers of top coating, **as directed**. Do not allow traffic until coating has completely dried and cured.
  6. Precut Marking Material Application: Position precut marking material aligned with imprinted pattern and slowly heat to a temperature no higher than 325 deg F (163 deg C) until marking material begins to liquefy and flow. Do not allow traffic until installed marking material has cooled to ambient temperature.
- R. Field Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
  2. Thickness: In-place compacted thickness of hot-mix asphalt courses will be determined according to ASTM D 3549.
  3. Surface Smoothness: Finished surface of each hot-mix asphalt course will be tested for compliance with smoothness tolerances.
  4. Traffic-Calming Devices: Finished height of asphalt speed bumps, humps, cushions, and tables above pavement will be measured for compliance with tolerances.
  5. In-Place Density: Testing agency will take samples of uncompacted paving mixtures and compacted pavement according to ASTM D 979 or AASHTO T 168.
    - a. Reference maximum theoretical density will be determined by averaging results from four samples of hot-mix asphalt-paving mixture delivered daily to site, prepared according to ASTM D 2041, and compacted according to job-mix specifications.
    - b. In-place density of compacted pavement will be determined by testing core samples according to ASTM D 1188 or ASTM D 2726.
      - 1) One core sample will be taken for every 1000 sq. yd. (836 sq. m) or less of installed pavement, with no fewer than 3 cores taken.
      - 2) Field density of in-place compacted pavement may also be determined by nuclear method according to ASTM D 2950 and correlated with ASTM D 1188 or ASTM D 2726.
  6. Replace and compact hot-mix asphalt where core tests were taken.
  7. Remove and replace or install additional hot-mix asphalt where test results or measurements indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
- S. Disposal
1. Except for material indicated to be recycled, remove excavated materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in an EPA-approved landfill.
    - a. Do not allow milled materials to accumulate on-site.

END OF SECTION 32 01 11 53



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





## SECTION 32 01 11 53a - TRAFFIC COATINGS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for traffic coating. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes traffic coatings for the following applications:
  - a. Interior and exterior pedestrian traffic.
  - b. Vehicular traffic.
  - c. Pavement markings.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Show extent of each traffic coating. Include details for treating substrate joints and cracks, flashings, deck penetrations, and other termination conditions.
3. Samples: For each type of finish indicated.
4. Material test reports.
5. Material certificates.
6. Qualification data.
7. Maintenance data.
8. Warranty.
9. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.2: For interior field-applied traffic coatings and pavement marking paints, including printed statement of VOC content.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of traffic coatings required for this Project.
2. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide traffic coating materials with the fire-test-response characteristics as determined by testing identical products per test method below for deck type and slopes indicated by an independent testing and inspecting agency that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - a. Class A **OR B OR C, as directed**, roof covering per ASTM E 108 or UL 790.
3. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver materials in original packages and containers with seals unbroken and bearing manufacturer's labels showing the following information:
  - a. Manufacturer's brand name.
  - b. Type of material.
  - c. Directions for storage.
  - d. Date of manufacture and shelf life.
  - e. Lot or batch number.
  - f. Mixing and application instructions.
  - g. Color.
2. Store materials in a clean, dry location protected from exposure to direct sunlight. In storage areas, maintain environmental conditions within range recommended in writing by manufacturer.

#### F. Project Conditions



1. Environmental Limitations: Apply traffic coatings within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended in writing by manufacturer. Do not apply traffic coatings to damp or wet substrates, when temperatures are below 40 deg F (5 deg C), when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent, or when temperatures are less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above dew point.
  - a. Do not apply traffic coatings in snow, rain, fog, or mist, or when such weather conditions are imminent during the application and curing period. Apply only when frost-free conditions occur throughout the depth of substrate.
2. Do not install traffic coating until items that will penetrate membrane have been installed.

#### G. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which traffic coating manufacturer agrees to repair or replace traffic coatings that deteriorate during the specified warranty period. Warranty does not include deterioration or failure of traffic coating due to unusual weather phenomena, failure of prepared and treated substrate, formation of new substrate cracks exceeding 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) in width, fire, vandalism, or abuse by snowplow, maintenance equipment, and truck traffic.
  - a. Deterioration of traffic coatings includes the following:
    - 1) Adhesive or cohesive failures.
    - 2) Abrasion or tearing failures.
    - 3) Surface crazing or spalling.
    - 4) Intrusion of water, oils, gasoline, grease, salt, deicer chemicals, or acids into deck substrate.
  - b. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Final Completion.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Materials

1. Traffic Coatings: Complying with ASTM C 957.
2. Material Compatibility: Provide primers; base, intermediate, and topcoats; and miscellaneous materials that are compatible with one another and with substrate under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
3. VOC Content: Provide traffic coatings and pavement marking paints, for use inside the weatherproofing system, with VOC content of 150 g/L when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

### B. Traffic Coating

1. Primer: Manufacturer's standard factory-formulated primer recommended for substrate and conditions indicated.
  - a. Material: Epoxy **OR** Urethane, **as directed**.
2. Preparatory and Base Coats: Single- or multicomponent, aromatic liquid urethane elastomer.
3. Intermediate Coat: Single- or multicomponent, aromatic liquid urethane elastomer **OR** Single- or multicomponent, aliphatic liquid urethane elastomer **OR** Liquid epoxy, **as directed**.
4. Topcoat: Single- or multicomponent, aromatic liquid urethane elastomer **OR** Single- or multicomponent, aliphatic liquid urethane elastomer **OR** Single- or multicomponent, aromatic liquid urethane elastomer with UV inhibitors **OR** Liquid epoxy, **as directed**.
  - a. Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
5. Aggregate: Uniformly graded, washed silicon carbide sand **OR** Uniformly graded, washed silica sand **OR** Uniformly graded, washed flint shot silica **OR** Walnut shell granules **OR** Aluminum-oxide grit, **as directed**, of particle sizes, shape, and minimum hardness recommended in writing by traffic coating manufacturer.
  - a. Spreading Rate: As recommended by manufacturer for substrate and service conditions indicated, but not less than the following:
    - 1) Intermediate Coat: 8 to 10 lb/100 sq. ft. (3.6 to 4.5 kg/10 sq. m) **OR** To refusal, **as directed**.



- 2) Topcoat: 8 to 10 lb/100 sq. ft. (3.6 to 4.5 kg/10 sq. m) **OR** As required to achieve slip-resistant finish, **as directed**.

C. Miscellaneous Materials

1. Joint Sealants: As specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
2. Sheet Flashing: Nonstaining.
  - a. Minimum Thickness: 60 mils (1.5 mm) **OR** 50 mils (1.3 mm), **as directed**.
  - b. Material: Sheet material recommended in writing by traffic coating manufacturer **OR** Uncured neoprene sheet **OR** Cured neoprene sheet, **as directed**.
3. Adhesive: Contact adhesive recommended in writing by traffic coating manufacturer.
4. Reinforcing Strip: Fiberglass mesh recommended in writing by traffic coating manufacturer.

D. Pavement Markings

1. Pavement-Marking Paint: Alkyd-resin ready mixed, complying with AASHTO M 248, Type S **OR** N **OR** F, **as directed**.
  - a. Color: White **OR** Yellow **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
    - 1) Use blue for spaces accessible to people with disabilities.
2. Pavement-Marking Paint: Latex, waterborne emulsion, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with FS TT-P-1952, with drying time of less than three **OR** 45, **as directed**, minutes.
  - a. Color: White **OR** Yellow **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
    - 1) Use blue for spaces accessible to people with disabilities.
3. Glass Beads: AASHTO M 247, Type 1.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination

1. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and for other conditions affecting performance of traffic coatings.
  - a. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance.
  - b. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates.
  - c. Begin coating application only after minimum concrete curing and drying period recommended by traffic coating manufacturer has passed, after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected, and after surfaces are dry.
  - d. Verify that substrates are visibly dry and free of moisture.
    - 1) Test for moisture vapor transmission by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
    - 2) Test for moisture content by measuring with an electronic moisture meter **OR** method recommended in writing by manufacturer, **as directed**.
  - e. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

B. Preparation

1. Clean and prepare substrates according to ASTM C 1127 and manufacturer's written recommendations to produce clean, dust-free, dry substrate for traffic coating application.
2. Mask adjoining surfaces not receiving traffic coatings, deck drains, and other deck substrate penetrations to prevent spillage, leaking, and migration of coatings.
3. Concrete Substrates: Mechanically abrade concrete surfaces to a uniform profile according to ASTM D 4259. Do not acid etch.
  - a. Remove grease, oil, paints, and other penetrating contaminants from concrete.
  - b. Remove concrete fins, ridges, and other projections.
  - c. Remove laitance, glaze, efflorescence, curing compounds, concrete hardeners, form-release agents, and other incompatible materials that might affect coating adhesion.
  - d. Remove remaining loose material to provide a sound surface, and clean surfaces according to ASTM D 4258.



C. Terminations And Penetrations

1. Prepare vertical and horizontal surfaces at terminations and penetrations through traffic coatings and at expansion joints, drains, and sleeves according to ASTM C 1127 and manufacturer's written recommendations.
2. Provide sealant cants at penetrations and at reinforced and nonreinforced, deck-to-wall butt joints.
3. Terminate edges of deck-to-deck expansion joints with preparatory base-coat strip.
4. Install sheet flashings at deck-to-wall expansion and dynamic joints, and bond to deck and wall substrates according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

D. Joint And Crack Treatment

1. Prepare, treat, rout, and fill joints and cracks in substrates according to ASTM C 1127 and manufacturer's written recommendations. Before coating surfaces, remove dust and dirt from joints and cracks according to ASTM D 4258.
  - a. Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for joint-sealant installation.

E. Traffic Coating Application

1. Apply traffic coating material according to ASTM C 1127 and manufacturer's written recommendations.
  - a. Start traffic coating application in presence of manufacturer's technical representative.
  - b. Verify that wet film thickness of each component coat complies with requirements every 100 sq. ft. (9 sq. m).
2. Apply traffic coatings to prepared wall terminations and vertical surfaces to height indicated, and omit aggregate on vertical surfaces.
3. Cure traffic coatings according to manufacturer's written recommendations. Prevent contamination and damage during application and curing stages.

F. Pavement Markings

1. Do not apply traffic paint for striping and other markings until traffic coating has cured according to manufacturer's written recommendations.
2. Apply traffic paint for striping and other markings with mechanical equipment to produce uniform straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates for a 15-mil- (0.38-mm-) minimum wet film thickness.
3. Spread glass beads uniformly into wet traffic paint at a rate of 6 lb/gal. (0.72 kg/L).

G. Field Quality Control

1. Testing: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
  - a. Samples of material delivered to Project site shall be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in presence of the Owner and Contractor.
  - b. Testing agency shall perform tests for characteristics specified, using applicable referenced testing procedures.
  - c. Testing agency shall verify thickness of coatings during traffic coating application.
  - d. If test results show traffic coating materials do not comply with requirements, remove noncomplying materials, prepare surfaces, and reapply traffic coatings.
2. Flood Testing: Flood test each deck area for leaks, according to recommendations in ASTM D 5957, after traffic coating has completely cured. Install temporary containment assemblies, plug or dam drains, and flood with potable water.
  - a. Flood to an average depth of 2-1/2 inches (65 mm) with a minimum depth of 1 inch (25 mm) and not exceeding a depth of 4 inches (100 mm).
  - b. Flood each area for 24 **OR** 48 **OR** 72, **as directed**, hours.
  - c. After flood testing, repair leaks, repeat flood tests, and make further repairs until traffic coating installation is watertight.
  - d. Engage an independent testing agency to observe flood testing and examine underside of decks and terminations for evidence of leaks during flood testing.



3. Final Traffic Coating Inspection: Arrange for traffic coating manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect membrane installation on completion.
    - a. Notify the Owner 48 hours in advance of date and time of inspection.
  4. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- H. Protecting And Cleaning
1. Protect traffic coatings from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
  2. Clean spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 32 01 11 53a



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
32 01 11 53	03 31 13 00	Cement Concrete Pavement
32 01 11 53	03 31 13 00b	Pavement Joint Sealants



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





## SECTION 32 01 13 61 - CRACK SEALING OF BITUMINOUS PAVEMENTS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for crack sealing of bituminous pavements. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Submittals

1. Manufacturer's Recommendations: Where installation procedures, or any part thereof, are required to be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, printed copies of these recommendations shall be submitted to the Owner. Installation of the material will not be allowed until the recommendations are received. Failure to furnish these recommendations can be cause for rejection of the material.
2. Schedules/Construction Equipment List: List of proposed equipment to be used in performance of construction work including descriptive data shall be submitted to the Owner.
3. Samples: Samples of the materials (sealant, primer if required, and backup material), in sufficient quantity for testing and approval shall be submitted to the Owner. No material will be allowed to be used until it has been approved.

- C. Safety: Joint sealant shall not be placed within 25 feet of any liquid oxygen (LOX) equipment, LOX storage, or LOX piping. Joints in this area shall be thoroughly cleaned and left unsealed.

- D. Test Requirements: The joint sealant and backup or separating material shall be tested for conformance with the referenced applicable material specification. Testing of the materials shall be performed in an approved independent laboratory and certified copies of the test reports shall be submitted and approved prior to the use of the materials at the job site. Samples will be retained by the Owner for possible future testing should the materials appear defective during or after application. Conformance with the requirements of the laboratory tests specified will not constitute final acceptance of the materials. Final acceptance will be based on the performance of the in-place materials.

- E. Equipment: Machines, tools, and equipment used in the performance of the work required by this section shall be approved before the work is started and shall be maintained in satisfactory condition at all times.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Materials

1. Liquid Asphalt: ASTM D 2027, Grade MC-250.
2. Emulsified Asphalt: ASTM D 977, Grade AS-2.
3. Sealing Compound: ASTM D 3405.
4. Backer Rod: ASTM D 5249.
5. Fine Aggregate: Natural sand or crusher dust having a maximum size of not more than 1/8 inch and be free of clay or organic-matter.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Preparation:

1. All cracks to be sealed shall be cleaned of dirt and debris, and moisture shall be removed.



2. Crack Cleaning Equipment shall consist of a portable air compressor with hose and nozzles for directing air directly into cracks and stiff bristle brooms.
3. Heating Equipment for Liquid Asphalt shall be mobile and shall be equipped with an agitating device for stirring material during heating, a thermometer, regulating equipment for heat control, and a gravity-type draw-off valve.
4. Heating Equipment for Sealing Compound: Unless otherwise required by the manufacturer's recommendations, the equipment shall be mobile and shall consist of double-boiler, agitator-type kettles with oil medium in the outer space for heat transfer. The applicator unit shall be so designed that the sealant will circulate through the delivery hose and return to the inner kettle when not sealing cracks.
5. Application Equipment shall have a spout or nozzle of such size that the sealing material will be placed in the cracks without entrapping air in cracks or spreading material on adjacent pavement surface.

B. Installation:

1. Backer Rod: Install backer in accordance with manufacturer's instructions where required under sealing compound.
2. Sealing Compound: All cracks 1/8 inch wide and wider shall be sealed. The application temperature for sealing compound shall comply with ASTM C 1193. Cracks 1/2 inch wide and wider shall be filled with a slurry of fine sand and an emulsified asphalt or liquid asphalt. After the slurry has cured, cracks shall be sealed with liquid asphalt or emulsified asphalt and lightly sanded.
3. Liquid and Emulsified Asphalt Sealer: The temperature shall be varied so that it flows freely into cracks and completely fills cracks without entrapping air. Cracks shall be free of moisture before filling and shall be filled slightly above the pavement surface. When excess sealer has been removed, the sealer shall be covered with fine sand.
4. Traffic Control: Traffic will not be permitted over sealed cracks until the sealer has cooled so that it is not picked up by vehicle tires. The Contractor will be responsible for all barricades and flagmen necessary to control traffic.

END OF SECTION 32 01 13 61



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
32 01 13 61	32 01 11 53	Asphalt Paving
32 01 13 61	31 25 14 23a	Spray Applications, Seal Coats, And Surface Treatments



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 32 01 16 71 - GRINDING/GROOVING PAVEMENT**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of grinding/grooving pavement. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS - Not Used

## 1.3 EXECUTION

## A. Grinding: This covers grinding asphalt concrete or portland cement concrete pavement and roadway surfaces of structures as shown on the plans and as specified in these specifications and the special provisions

1. Grinding shall be performed with abrasive grinding equipment utilizing diamond cutting blades.
2. Existing portland cement concrete pavement not constructed as part of the project shall be ground as follows:
  - a. Grinding shall be performed so that the pavement surface on both sides of all transverse joints and cracks has essentially the same depth of texture and does not vary from a true plane enough to permit a 1.9 mm thick shim 75 mm wide to pass under a one-meter straightedge adjacent to either side of the joint or crack when the straightedge is laid on the pavement parallel to centerline with its midpoint at the joint or crack. After grinding has been completed, the pavement shall conform to the straightedge and profile requirements specified in paving specification, paragraph "Final Finishing," except that pavement on tangent alignment and on horizontal curves of any radius shall have a profile index of 19 mm or less per 0.1-km.
  - b. Abnormally depressed areas due to subsidence or other localized causes will be excluded from testing with the profilograph and 3.6-m±0.06-m straightedge. The accumulated total of the excluded areas shall not exceed 5 percent of the total area to be ground. Profilograph testing shall end 8 m prior to excluded areas and shall resume 8 m following the excluded areas.
3. Existing asphalt concrete pavement not constructed as part of the project shall be ground so that the finished surface shall not vary from a true plane enough to permit a 3-mm thick shim 75 mm wide to pass under a straightedge 3.6 m±0.06-m long when the straightedge is laid on the finished surface parallel with the centerline. The transverse slope of the finished surface shall be uniform to a degree such that a 6 mm thick shim 75 mm wide will not pass under a straightedge 3.6 m±0.06-m long when the straightedge is laid on the finished surface in a direction transverse to the centerline and extending from edge to edge of a 3.6-m traffic lane.
4. Ground areas on structures, approach slabs and the adjacent 15 m of approach pavement shall conform to the provisions for smoothness and concrete cover over reinforcing steel.
5. Ground surfaces shall not be smooth or polished and, except as otherwise specified, shall have a coefficient of friction of not less than 0.30.
6. Residue from grinding operations shall be picked up by means of a vacuum attachment to the grinding machine and shall not be allowed to flow across the pavement nor be left on the surface of the pavement. Residue from grinding portland cement concrete pavement shall be disposed of



as directed. Residue from grinding asphalt concrete shall be disposed of outside the highway right of way.

7. At the option of the Contractor, the residue from grinding portland cement concrete pavement may be disposed of as directed by the authorities having jurisdiction over the site. A copy of the approval shall be delivered to the Engineer before disposing of residue at the site.
8. The noise level created by the combined grinding operation shall not exceed 86 dBA at a distance of 15 m at right angles to the direction of travel.

B. Grooving: This work shall consist of grooving the surface of asphalt concrete or Portland cement concrete pavement and bridge decks as shown on the plans and as specified in these specifications and the special provisions

1. Grooved areas shall begin and end at lines normal to the pavement center line and shall be centered within the lane width. If new concrete pavement is grooved, the grooving in any lane shall cover the full lane width.
2. Grooving blades shall be 2.41 mm  $\pm$  0.13-mm wide and shall be spaced 19 mm on centers. The grooves shall be cut not less than 3 mm nor more than 7 mm deep. The grooves on bridge decks shall be cut not less than 3 mm nor more than 5 mm deep. Grooves over inductive loop detectors shall be cut not less than 2 mm nor more than 3 mm deep.
3. At the beginning of each work shift, all grooving machines shall be equipped with a full complement of grooving blades that are capable of cutting grooves of the specified width, depth and spacing.
4. If during the course of work a single grooving blade on any individual grooving machine becomes incapable of cutting a groove, work will be permitted to continue for the remainder of the work shift, and the Contractor will not be required to otherwise cut the groove omitted because of the failed blade. Should 2 or more grooving blades on any individual grooving machine become incapable of cutting grooves the Contractor shall either:
  - a. Discontinue work with the affected grooving machine within 15 m of the location where more than one blade became incapable, in which event the Contractor will not be required to otherwise cut the grooves omitted because of the failed blades; **OR**  
Continue work with the affected grooving machine for the remainder of the work shift and by other means cut all grooves omitted, including grooves omitted because a single blade was incapable, by the affected grooving machine within that work shift. The omitted grooves shall be cut before any of the grooving work performed during the time the grooves were omitted will be accepted.
5. The actual grooved area of any selected 0.6-m by 30 m longitudinal area of pavement specified to be grooved shall be not less than 95 percent of the selected area. Grooves which are omitted as permitted for blades which become incapable will be measured as being actually grooved. No area will be measured until omitted grooves, which are required to be cut before the area is accepted, have been cut. Except as provided for omitted grooves due to an incapable blade, any area within the selected area not grooved shall be due only to irregularities in the pavement surface and for no other reason.
6. Residue from grooving operations shall be picked up by means of a vacuum attachment to the grooving machine and shall not be allowed to flow across the pavement nor be left on the surface of the pavement. Residue from grooving portland cement concrete pavement shall be disposed of as directed. Residue from grooving asphalt concrete shall be disposed of outside the highway right of way.
7. At the option of the Contractor, the residue from grooving portland cement concrete pavement may be disposed as directed by the authorities having jurisdiction over the site. A copy of the approval shall be delivered to the Engineer before disposing of residue at the site.
8. The noise level created by the combined grooving operation shall not exceed 86 dBA at a distance of 15 m at right angles to the direction of travel.

C. Highway or Street Grooving: AASHTO recommends the following groove specifications: 2.4 mm wide; depth of 3.2 to 4.8 mm, and a center-to-center spacing of 19.1 mm (0.75 inches) (7). The center 10-foot portion of a 12-foot lane is typically grooved, leaving a 1-foot strip ungrooved at the edge of each lane.



- D. Boat Ramp Grooving: Grooves shall be non-skid V-grooves spaced 2 inches on center, 1/2-inch radius, 1/2-inch deep.
- E. Runway Grooving
1. General
    - a. The grooving dimensions shall be as follows:
      - 1) Depth - One-quarter (1/4) inch  $\pm$  one sixteenth (1/16) inch
      - 2) Width - One-quarter (1/4) inch  $\pm$  one sixteenth (1/16) inch
      - 3) Center to center - One and one-half (1 1/2) inch  $\pm$  one eighth (1/8) inch
    - b. Grooving shall not begin until new pavement has properly cooled/cured and permission is given.
    - c. In no case shall final painted pavement markings be applied prior to grooving.
  2. The pavement must be grooved by approved diamond bladed saw-cutting equipment. Variations in the grooving contour will not be permitted without approval. All reasonable precautions shall be taken to avoid breaking or chipping the pavement surfaces between grooves. Excessive spalling of the grooved edges will not be permitted.
  3. The Contractor shall groove bituminous concrete and portland cement concrete pavements according to the following specifications (from FAA Advisory Circular 150/5320-12B, Section IV):
    - a. The depth of 90 percent or more of the groove shall not be less than 1/4 inch.
    - b. The grooves shall be continuous for the entire runway length and transverse (perpendicular) to the direction of aircraft landing and takeoff operations.
    - c. The grooves shall be continued to the end of the runway where the concrete meets the asphalt.
    - d. The grooves shall not vary more than 3 inches in alignment for 75 feet, allowing for realignment every 500 feet.
    - e. Grooves shall not be closer than 3 inches or more than 9 inches from transverse joints in concrete pavements.
    - f. Grooving through longitudinal or diagonal saw kerfs where lighting cables are installed shall be avoided. Grooves may be continued through longitudinal construction joints.
    - g. Grooves shall be sawed no closer than 6 inches and no more than 18 inches from in-pavement light fixtures.
  4. Cleanup is extremely important and should be continuous throughout the grooving operations. Accumulation of debris resulting from the grooving operations shall be cleaned from the grooves and removed from the pavement by air jets, high pressure water streams, or other approved methods, after each grooving operation at hourly intervals. The Contractor shall provide water for cleanup operations. The waste material shall not be flushed into the storm or sanitary sewer system. The waste material shall not be allowed to drain onto the shoulders or left on the runway surface in order to prevent foreign object damage.

END OF SECTION 32 01 16 71



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



**SECTION 32 01 16 71a - COLD MIX RECYCLING**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of cold mix recycling of existing paving and the addition of new materials. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

## A. Aggregates:

1. General: Aggregates shall consist of material obtained from milling, or removing and crushing the existing in situ material, and/or new aggregate material as needed.
2. Aggregate Quality and Gradation: Aggregate for bituminous mixture shall be of such size that the material can be spread with a paver to the desired thickness and compacted to meet the specified smoothness, grade, and density requirements. New aggregates shall be approved and be equal to or better than the reclaimed aggregate in quality. Maximum size of new aggregate shall not exceed one-half of the layer thickness and in no case shall the maximum aggregate size exceed 1 inch.

- B. Bituminous Materials: Bituminous materials, if required, shall be an emulsified asphalt conforming to ASTM D 977 or ASTM D 2397, grade as required.

- C. Job-Mix Formula: The Job-Mix Formula (JMF) for the recycled mixture will be furnished by the Contractor to the Owner. The formula will indicate a definite percentage of water and asphalt to be added to the mixture. The JMF will be allowed an asphalt content tolerance of 0.3 percent. The asphalt content may be adjusted by the Owner to improve paving mixture, without adjustment in contract unit price. When asphalt is added, the optimum asphalt content will be selected to provide the following properties when samples are compacted at 250 F with 75 blows of standard Marshall hammer on each side of the specimen.

## Property Requirement

Stability minimum, pounds	1,800
Flow maximum, 1/100-inch units	16
Voids in total mix, percent	3-5
Voids filled with bitumen, percent	70-80

The water content will be selected to provide maximum density when samples are prepared at the optimum asphalt content and compacted with 75 blows of Marshall hammer at ambient temperature. When no asphalt binder is added to the mixture, the water content will be selected by the Owner to provide maximum density.

## 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Preparation of Bituminous Mixtures: The required amount of bituminous material for each batch, or calibrated amount of continuous mixing, shall be introduced into the mixer. Aggregates, asphalt emulsion, and water shall be mixed for 35 seconds or longer, as necessary, to thoroughly coat all



particles with bituminous material. When longer mixing time is necessary, additional mixing time shall be determined by the Owner.

- B. Conditioning of Existing Surface: Ruts or soft yielding spots that appear in the existing pavement areas and deviations of surface from requirements specified shall be corrected. An asphalt tack coat shall be applied to all contact surfaces in advance of the recycled overlayment. The asphalt tack shall be placed at an asphalt residue coverage rate of 0.05 gal/sq. yd.
- C. Placing:
1. Layer Thickness and Curing: Each layer of compacted mixture shall be no more than 2-1/2 inches in thickness; each layer of bituminous mixture shall be allowed to cure for at least 5 days before placing a succeeding layer.
  2. Compaction of Mixture: Bituminous mixtures shall be rolled until all roller marks are eliminated and a density of at least 86 percent of the theoretical maximum density has been obtained when tested in accordance with MIL-STD-620, Method 101 or ASTM D 2041. When bituminous material is not added to the cold recycled mixture, the material shall be compacted to 100 percent of density determined by MIL-STD-621, Method 100, compaction effort designation CE-55.
  3. Joints: Longitudinal joints shall be offset at least 1 foot from existing joints. Transverse joints shall be offset at least 2 feet from existing transverse joints.
  4. Surface Smoothness: After final rolling, the pavement surface shall not vary in excess of 1/8 inch from a straightedge laid on the surface.

END OF SECTION 32 01 16 71a



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
32 01 16 73	32 01 11 53	Asphalt Paving
32 01 16 73	32 01 16 71a	Cold Mix Recycling



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 32 01 16 74 - BITUMINOUS REJUVENATION**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of bituminous rejuvenation of airfield pavements, roads, streets, parking areas, and other general applications by the use of a chemical rejuvenator. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

- A. Rejuvenator: The asphalt rejuvenating agent shall be composed of a petroleum resin-oil base uniformly emulsified with water and shall conform to the following physical and chemical requirements:

## B. Property Test Method Requirement

Viscosity, S.F. at 77 F, sec.	ASTM D 244	15-40
Residue, % (1)	ASTM D 244 (Mod.)	60-65(min.)
Sieve Test, %	ASTM D 244 (Mod.)	0.10 (max.)
Viscosity @ 140 F, centistokes (2)	ASTM D 2170	80-500
Flash Point, Cleveland Open Cup(COC), °F (3)	ASTM D 92	350 (min.)

(1) ASTM D 244 Modified Evaporation Test for percent residue is made by heating 50 gm samples to 300°F until foaming ceases; then cool immediately and calculate results.

(2) Viscosity on residue obtained from evaporation test.

(3) Flash point on residue from evaporation test.

- C. Aggregate: Gradation of mineral aggregate shall meet the following requirements:

Sieve Percent by Designation	Weight Passing
No. 16	100
No. 30	40-75
No. 50	4-12
No. 100	0-5

## 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Bituminous Storage Tanks shall be capable of heating the bituminous material under effective and positive control at all times to the required temperature.
- B. Bituminous Distributor shall be designed and equipped to spray the bituminous material in a uniform double to triple lap at the temperature recommended by the manufacturer, at variable widths, and at readily determined and controlled rates from 0.04 to 0.2 gallons per square yard, plus or minus 5 percent.
- C. Brooms and Blowers shall be of the power type.
- D. Preparation of Surface: Immediately before applying the rejuvenator, all loose material, dirt, clay, or other objectionable material shall be removed from the surface to be treated.



- 
- E. Application of Rejuvenator: The rejuvenator shall be uniformly applied over the surface at the approved rate with an allowable variation of plus or minus 20 percent. Materials shall be applied at the temperature recommended by the manufacturer.
  - F. Excess Rejuvenator Material: Approved mineral aggregate shall be provided by the Contractor and shall be spread in sufficient quantity to effectively blot up any excess rejuvenator material remaining on the treated pavement surface after 24 hours.
  - G. Insufficient Rejuvenator Material: When it is determined by the Owner that the actual application rate of the rejuvenator is more than 20 percent below the approved application rate, subsequent application(s) shall be made within 24 hours to ensure adequate penetration into the pavement surface.

END OF SECTION 32 01 16 74

**SECTION 32 01 16 74a - CENTRAL PLANT HOT-MIX RECYCLING**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of central plant hot-mix recycling of existing asphalt concrete intermediate and wearing courses for airfields, heliports, and heavy-duty pavements. The specification also includes the addition of new materials, as required to meet project requirements. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

## A. Aggregates:

1. General: Aggregates shall consist of material obtained from milling, or removing and crushing the existing in-situ material, and/or new aggregate material as needed.
2. Aggregate Quality and Gradation: Aggregate for the bituminous mixture shall be such size that the material can be spread with a paver to the desired thickness and compacted to meet the specified smoothness, grade, and density requirements. New aggregates shall be approved and shall be equal to or better than the reclaimed aggregate in quality. Maximum size of new aggregate shall not exceed one-half of the layer thickness, and in no case shall the maximum aggregate size exceed one inch. Aggregate gradations shall be as prescribed by local usage, with the approval of the Owner. In order to meet pollution requirements and ensure the recycled mixture is satisfactory, the amount of reclaimed asphalt pavement shall not exceed 60 percent for drum mixers or 50 percent for batch plants.

## B. Mineral Filler shall conform to ASTM D 242.

## C. Bituminous Materials:

1. New Asphalt Cement: The appropriate types and grades of bituminous materials for the anticipated use and climactic environment shall be used. Requirements of ASTM D 946 shall be used to specify penetration-graded asphalt cement, or ASTM D 3381 for viscosity-graded asphalt cement.
2. Recycled Asphalt Cement: The penetration of asphalt cement recovered from the recycled mixture shall be in accordance with ASTM D 1856 and shall have a penetration between 50 and 70 percent of that specified for the particular region for new asphalt cement, measured in accordance with ASTM D 5.

## D. Job-Mix Formula (JMF): The JMF for the recycled mixture will be furnished by the Contractor to the Owner. The formula will indicate the percentage of reclaimed asphalt pavement, the percentage of bitumen, and the temperature of the completed mixture when discharged from the mixer. The requirements for stability, flow, and voids are shown in the following tables for nonabsorptive and absorptive mixtures, respectively.

## 1. Nonabsorptive-Aggregate Mixture

	Wearing Property Course	Intermediate Course
Stability minimum, lbs	1,800	1,800
Flow maximum, 1/100-inch units	16	16



	Voids total mix, percent	3-5	5-7
	Voids filled with bitumen, percent	70-80	50-70
2.	Absorptive-Aggregate Mixture		
		Wearing	Intermediate
		Property Course	Course
	Stability minimum, lbs.	1,800	1,800
	Flow maximum, 1/100-inch units	16	16
	Voids total mix, percent	2-4	4-6
	Voids filled with bitumen, percent	75-80	55-75

When the water-absorption value of the entire blend of aggregate does not exceed 2.5 percent, the aggregate is designated as nonabsorptive. When the water-absorption value exceeds 2.5 percent as determined by ASTM C 127 and ASTM C 128, the aggregate is designated as absorptive.

1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Preparation of Bituminous Mixtures: Aggregates, reclaimed asphalt pavement, mineral filler, bitumen, and recycling agent shall be conveyed into the mixer in proportionate quantities required to meet the JMF. Particles larger than 2 inches shall be removed from the reclaimed asphalt pavement prior to being added to the mixer. Mixing time shall be as required to obtain a uniform coating of the aggregate with the bituminous material. Temperature of bitumen at time of mixing will be as required to meet project requirements. Temperature of aggregate and mineral filler in the mixer shall not exceed 325 F when bitumen is added.
- B. Surface Preparation of Underlying Course: Prior to placing of intermediate or wearing course, the underlying course shall be cleaned of all foreign or objectionable matter. The surface of previously constructed base course shall be sprayed with a prime coat at an asphalt residue coverage rate of 0.25 gal/sq. yd. Contact surfaces of previously constructed pavement, curbs, manholes, and other structures shall be sprayed with a thin tack coat at an asphalt residue coverage rate of 0.05 gal/sq. yd.
- C. Placing:
  - 1. Layer Thickness and Curing: A required uncompacted thickness of intermediate course, 7 inches or less, may be spread and compacted in one layer. Where the required thickness of base is more than 7 inches, the mixture shall be spread and compacted in two or more layers. Each layer of compacted mixture for the surface course shall be no more than 2-1/2 inches in thickness. Each layer of bituminous mixture shall be allowed to cure for at least 5 days before placing a succeeding layer.
  - 2. Compaction of Mixture: Rolling shall begin as soon after placing as the mixture will bear roller without undue displacement. After the Contractor is assured of meeting crown, grade, and smoothness requirements, rolling shall be continued until a mat density of 98 to 100.0 percent and a joint density of 96.5 to 100.0 percent of density is obtained. Places inaccessible to rollers shall be thoroughly compacted with hot hand tampers.
  - 3. Joints: Longitudinal joints shall be offset at least 1 foot from existing joints. Transverse joints shall be offset at least 2 feet from existing transverse joints.
  - 4. Surface Smoothness: After final rolling, the pavement surface shall not vary in excess of 1/8 inch from a straightedge laid on the surface.

END OF SECTION 32 01 16 74a





---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
32 01 16 74	32 01 11 53	Asphalt Paving
32 01 16 74	32 01 16 71a	Cold Mix Recycling
32 01 17 61	32 01 11 53	Asphalt Paving
32 01 17 61	32 01 13 61	Crack Sealing Of Bituminous Pavements
32 01 17 61	31 25 14 23a	Spray Applications, Seal Coats, And Surface Treatments
32 01 17 63	32 01 11 53	Asphalt Paving
32 01 26 71	32 01 16 71	Grinding/Grooving Pavement
32 01 90 13	31 13 16 00	Tree Protection And Trimming
32 01 90 19	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
32 01 90 23	31 13 16 00	Tree Protection And Trimming
32 01 90 26	31 13 16 00	Tree Protection And Trimming
32 01 90 36	31 13 16 00	Tree Protection And Trimming
32 01 90 36	31 31 19 13	Soil Sterilization
32 01 90 39	31 13 16 00	Tree Protection And Trimming
32 01 90 43	31 13 16 00	Tree Protection And Trimming
32 01 90 46	31 13 16 00	Tree Protection And Trimming
32 01 90 53	31 13 16 00	Tree Protection And Trimming



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 32 11 16 16 - CRUSHED STONE PAVING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of crushed stone paving. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Aggregates: Aggregates shall consist of crushed stone or slag, crushed gravel, angular sand, or other approved materials. Aggregates shall be durable, sound, and free from foreign material.

1. Coarse Aggregates, consisting of angular fragments of uniform density and quality, shall have a percentage of wear not to exceed 50 percent after 500 revolutions when tested in accordance with ASTM C131. The amount of flat and elongated particles (length to width greater than 3 to 1) shall not exceed 30 percent.
2. Crushed Gravel shall be manufactured from gravel particles with the following gradation:

100% passing	2" sieve
25 - 60% passing	1/4" sieve
5 - 40% passing	#40 sieve
0 - 10%	#200 sieve
3. Crushed Stone shall contain at least 50 percent by weight of crushed pieces having two or more freshly fractured faces for each range of sizes.
4. Slag shall be an air-cooled blast-furnace product having a dry weight of not less than 65 pcf.

#### B. Binder Material shall consist of screenings, angular sand, or other finely divided mineral matter processed or naturally combined with the coarse aggregate.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation:

1. Mixing and Placing: Materials shall be mixed in such a manner as to obtain a uniform stabilized-aggregate material and a uniform optimum water content for compaction. Mixing and placing procedures shall produce true grades, minimize segregation and degradation, optimize water content, and ensure a satisfactory base course.
2. Compaction: Each layer of stabilized-aggregate paving shall be compacted. Water content shall be maintained at optimum. Areas inaccessible to the rollers shall be compacted, with mechanical tampers and shall be shaped and finished by hand methods.
3. Layer Thickness: No layer shall be in excess of 8 inches nor less than 3 inches in compacted thickness.
4. Proof Rolling: Materials in paving or underlying materials that produce unsatisfactory results by rolling shall be removed and replaced with satisfactory materials and recompact.
5. Edges of Paving: Approved materials shall be placed along edges of stabilized-aggregate paving course in such quantities as will compact to thickness of the course being constructed, allowing at least a 1-foot width of the shoulder to be rolled and compacted simultaneously with rolling and compacting of each layer of the paving course.
6. Finishing: Finished surface shall be of uniform grade and texture.
7. Thickness Control: Compacted thickness of the stabilized paving course shall be within 1/2 inch of the thickness required.



---

END OF SECTION 32 11 16 16



**SECTION 32 11 16 16a - CRUSHED STONE**

1.1 GENERAL

A. Description Of Work

1. The work under this section consists of furnishing, placing and compacting crushed stone where called for and as detailed, in conformance with lines, grades and typical as follows or as directed by the Owner.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials

1. Material shall consist of clean, coating free, durable, sharp angled fragments of crushed stone, crushed ledge rock, or blends thereof that conform to the specific requirements of the following table. Shale will not be acceptable.
2. Crushed Stone used in Absorption Beds shall be washed and free of fines.
3. Gradation: Crushed stone sizes shall meet the gradation requirements of Table 1-1.

TABLE 1-1 (1)GRADATION OF CRUSHED STONE

Size Designation	4"	3"	2-1/2"	2"	1-1/2"	1"	1/2"	1/4"	1/8"	No.80 Sieve
Screening (2)							100	90-100		
1B								100	90-100	0-15
1A							100	90-100	0-15	
1 <sup>st</sup>							100	0-15		
1						100	90-100	0-15		
2					100	90-100	0-15			
3A				100	90-100	0-15				
3			100	90-100	5-70	0-15				
4A		100	90-100		0-20					
4	100	90-100		0-15						
5	90-100	0-15								

- a. Percentage by weight passing the following square openings.
- b. Screenings shall include all of the fine material passing a 1/4-inch screen.
4. All crushing plants shall be fitted with tailing chutes so that no aggregate will reach the bins other than that which passes through the proper screens

B. Soundness: Material furnished under this item shall be substantially free of shale or other soft, poor durability particles. A visual inspection of particle composition by the Owner will generally be the basis



---

for acceptance. Where the State elects to test for this requirement, a Magnesium Sulfate Soundness Loss exceeding 35 percent will be cause for rejection.

- C. Contamination: Contamination of the crushed stone with any deleterious material, such as silt, clay, mud, ice, snow or organic materials, through any cause whatsoever, shall be corrected by the Contractor by excavation and replacement of the material in the affected areas.
- D. Sampling: Samples and certified gradations shall be furnished by the Contractor to the Owner and approval of these samples must be received prior to delivery or placement of the material.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Compaction: All material shall be placed in uniform horizontal layers not exceeding 6-inches thickness before compaction. All portions of each layer shall be mechanically compacted to the satisfaction of the Owner. Compaction equipment shall be approved by the Owner.

END OF SECTION 32 11 16 16a

**SECTION 32 11 16 16b - SELECT GRAVEL**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. The work under this section consists of furnishing, placing and compacting select gravel where called for and as detailed, in conformance with lines, grades and typical sections as provided or directed by the Owner.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

## A. Materials

1. Material shall consist of clean, durable gravel or crushed stone free from coating.
2. Select Gravel used for stone paving shall be manufactured from crushed stone and contain no gravel.
3. Gradation of gravel or stone shall be as follows with percent passing calculated by weight:

Select Gravel	
<u>Sieve</u>	<u>Percent Passing</u>
2"	100
1/4"	30 - 65
No. 40	5 - 40
No. 200	0 - 10

## 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Soundness: Materials furnished under this item shall be substantially free of shale, organic or other soft, poor durability particles. A visual inspection of particle composition by the Owner will generally be the basis for acceptance. Where the Owner elects to test for this requirement, a Magnesium Sulfate Soundness Loss exceeding 35 percent will be cause for rejection.
- B. Contamination: Contamination of the Select Gravel with any deleterious material, such as silt, clay, mud, ice, snow or organic material, through any cause whatsoever, shall be corrected by the Contractor by excavation and replacement of the material in the affected area.
- C. Sampling: Samples and certified gradations shall be furnished by the Contractor to the Owner and approval of these samples must be received prior to delivery or placement of the material.
- D. Compaction:
  1. All material shall be placed in uniform horizontal layers not exceeding 6-inches thickness before compaction. All portions of each layer shall be mechanically compacted to the percentage of the Standard Proctor Maximum Density (AASHTO T-99) as follows, unless noted otherwise. Compaction equipment approval shall be made by the Owner.
  2. Density determination.
    - a. Structures (entire area within 10 feet outside perimeter) 95%
    - b. Building Slabs and Steps: 95%
    - c. Lawn or Unpaved Areas: 90%
    - d. Pavements and Walkways: 95%
    - e. Pipes and Tunnels: 95%
    - f. Pipe Bedding: 100%



---

END OF SECTION 32 11 16 16b





---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
32 11 23 16	32 11 16 16	Crushed Stone Paving
32 11 23 16	32 11 16 16a	Crushed Stone
32 11 23 16	32 11 16 16b	Select Gravel



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 32 12 13 13 - BITUMINOUS PAVING-REPAIR AND RESURFACING**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials repair and resurfacing of bituminous pavements. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Submittals

1. Reports: Copies of test results, within 24 hours after completion of tests.
2. Waybills and Delivery Tickets: Copies of waybills or delivery tickets, during the progress of the work.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS:

## A. Asphaltic Concrete:

1. Hot-Mixed, Hot-Mixed Asphaltic Concrete and Emulsified asphalt shall comply with requirements of ASTM D 3515.
2. Plant-Mixed, Stockpiled Asphalt Cold Mixes shall comply with the requirements of Asphalt Institute Specification PM-2.

## B. Bituminous Prime: Bituminous primer shall comply with ASTM D 2027.

## C. Base Course: Base course material shall comply with State highway department specification for dense-graded, high-quality material.

## D. Bituminous Tack Coat: Bituminous tack coat shall comply with ASTM D 2027.

## 1.3 EXECUTION:

## A. Preparation of Areas for Patching:

1. Pot Holes: Trim the perimeter of each hole to a vertical face with a carborundum blade in a square or rectangular pattern at least 18 inches from ragged edge. Remove material to a depth that provides a uniform well-compacted bottom surface. Remove all loose material resulting from trimming or otherwise existing in the hole. If subbase is disturbed, reestablish in a like manner to adjacent substrate. Areas to be repaired shall be dry before repair is started.
2. Alligator-Cracked and Rutted Areas: The pavement shall be sawed or cut with pavement breakers to a smooth vertical face 18 inches outside of the alligator-cracked area. Unsatisfactory material shall be removed in a manner not to disturb the sides of the excavated area.
3. Slippage Areas: Saw a rectangular area around the slippage area that overlaps into the well-bonded material by at least 18 inches. The depth of the saw cut shall be equal to the thickness of the layer of material that is slipping. The surface where slipping is occurring shall be broomed clean and all loose material removed.

## B. Installation:

1. Application Temperatures: Application temperatures for all asphalt material shall comply with provisions of the Asphalt Institute Publications and the applicable ASTM Standards.



2. Base Course: Place base course material in layers not exceeding a compacted thickness of 6 inches. After placing, compact each layer by mechanical compactors to a density of not less than the density of the corresponding layer of the adjacent pavement structure.
3. Prime Coat: Prime base course with MC-70 liquid asphalt at a rate of 0.20 to 0.30 gallon per sq. yd. Bolt excess prime with sand before the surfacing material is applied.
4. Tack Coat: Give the edges of existing asphaltic concrete or surfaces of Portland cement concrete and asphaltic concrete a tack coat of MC-70 liquid asphalt at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gallon per sq. yd. Allow the material to cure before placing the surfacing material.
5. Hot-Mixed Asphaltic Concrete: Place the material in layers not exceeding 2-1/2 inches in thickness and compact to a density equal to the density of the adjacent asphaltic concrete.
6. Stockpiled Cold Mixes: The compacted thickness of each layer of material shall not exceed 2 inches. Before compaction, the material shall be allowed to aerate, if necessary, until the proper amount of cohesion has developed to obtain adequate compaction. When more than one layer is used, each layer shall be thoroughly cured before the succeeding layer is placed.

END OF SECTION 32 12 13 13

**SECTION 32 12 13 13a - ASPHALTIC CONCRETE OVERLAYS**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of asphaltic concrete overlays. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

- A. Asphalt Cement: The asphalt cement shall comply with ASTM D 946 penetration grade 85-100 requirements and shall show a negative spot test when tested in compliance with AASHTO T 102.

- B. Mineral Aggregates: Shall comply with ASTM D 3515 for 3/4-inch maximum aggregate mix.

- C. Test Properties: The bituminous mixture shall meet the following requirements when tested in compliance with MIL-STD 620.

Stability minimum, lb	500
Flow maximum, 1/100-in. units	20
Voids total mix, %	3-5
Voids filled with bitumen, %	75-85

## 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Preparation of Existing Surface: The Contractor shall raise and reset all structures such as manhole frames, valve boxes, drainage structures, etc., to meet the required grade. An asphalt tack coat shall be applied to all contact surfaces in advance of the asphalt concrete overlay placement. The asphalt tack shall be placed at an asphalt residue coverage rate of 0.05 gal/sq yd.

## B. Installation:

1. Joints: Longitudinal joints of the overlay shall be offset at least 1 foot from existing joints. Transverse joints shall be offset at least 2 feet from existing transverse joints.
2. All Asphalt Concrete Mixture and Pavement that are contaminated, damaged, or defective shall be removed and replaced by the Contractor. Skin patching of rolled pavement will not be permitted.
3. Compaction of Mixture: The asphalt concrete mixture shall be rolled until a density of not less than 95 percent and not more than 100 percent of laboratory compacted specimen is obtained.
4. Surface Smoothness: After final rolling, the pavement surface shall not vary in excess of 1/8 inch from a 10-foot straightedge laid on the surface.

END OF SECTION 32 12 13 13a



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
32 12 13 13	32 01 11 53	Asphalt Paving
32 12 13 19	32 01 11 53	Asphalt Paving
32 12 13 19	32 12 13 13	Bituminous Paving-Repair And Resurfacing
32 12 13 19	32 12 13 13a	Asphaltic Concrete Overlays
32 12 16 13	32 01 11 53	Asphalt Paving
32 12 16 13	32 12 13 13	Bituminous Paving-Repair And Resurfacing
32 12 16 13	32 12 13 13a	Asphaltic Concrete Overlays
32 12 16 19	32 12 13 13	Bituminous Paving-Repair And Resurfacing
32 12 16 19	32 12 13 13a	Asphaltic Concrete Overlays
32 12 16 39	31 32 13 16	Soil Stabilization-Lime
32 12 16 39	31 25 14 13	Geosynthetic Fabric
32 12 16 43	32 01 11 53	Asphalt Paving
32 12 16 43	32 01 13 61	Crack Sealing Of Bituminous Pavements
32 12 16 43	31 25 14 23a	Spray Applications, Seal Coats, And Surface Treatments
32 12 33 00	32 01 11 53	Asphalt Paving
32 12 33 00	32 12 13 13	Bituminous Paving-Repair And Resurfacing
32 12 33 00	32 12 13 13a	Asphaltic Concrete Overlays
32 12 36 16	32 01 11 53	Asphalt Paving
32 12 36 16	32 01 13 61	Crack Sealing Of Bituminous Pavements
32 12 36 16	31 25 14 23a	Spray Applications, Seal Coats, And Surface Treatments
32 12 73 00	03 31 13 00	Cement Concrete Pavement
32 13 13 33	03 31 13 00	Cement Concrete Pavement
32 13 13 33	03 31 13 00a	Roller Compacted Concrete Pavement
32 13 13 33	03 31 13 00b	Pavement Joint Sealants
32 13 13 33	03 31 13 00c	Decorative Cement Concrete Pavement
32 13 13 33	03 31 13 00d	Portland Cement Concrete Overlays
32 13 13 33	03 31 13 00e	Steel Reinforced Portland Cement Concrete Overlays
32 13 13 33	03 31 13 00f	Fiber Reinforced Portland Cement Concrete Overlays
32 13 16 13	03 31 13 00	Cement Concrete Pavement
32 13 43 00	03 31 13 00	Cement Concrete Pavement
32 13 73 13	32 01 11 53	Asphalt Paving
32 13 73 13	32 01 13 61	Crack Sealing Of Bituminous Pavements
32 13 73 13	03 31 13 00b	Pavement Joint Sealants
32 13 73 13	31 25 14 23a	Spray Applications, Seal Coats, And Surface Treatments
32 13 73 16	32 01 11 53	Asphalt Paving
32 13 73 16	32 01 13 61	Crack Sealing Of Bituminous Pavements
32 13 73 16	31 25 14 23a	Spray Applications, Seal Coats, And Surface Treatments
32 13 73 19	32 01 11 53	Asphalt Paving
32 13 73 19	31 25 14 23a	Spray Applications, Seal Coats, And Surface Treatments



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





## SECTION 32 14 09 00 - EXTERIOR PLANTS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for exterior plants. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Plants.
  - b. Planting soils.
  - c. Tree stabilization.
  - d. Landscape edgings.
  - e. Tree grates.

#### C. Definitions

1. Backfill: The earth used to replace or the act of replacing earth in an excavation.
2. Balled and Burlapped Stock: Plants dug with firm, natural balls of earth in which they were grown, with ball size not less than sizes indicated **OR** diameter and depth recommended by ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant required, **as directed**; wrapped with burlap, tied, rigidly supported, and drum laced with twine with the root flare visible at the surface of the ball as recommended by ANSI Z60.1.
3. Balled and Potted Stock: Plants dug with firm, natural balls of earth in which they are grown and placed, unbroken, in a container. Ball size is not less than sizes indicated **OR** diameter and depth recommended by ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant required, **as directed**.
4. Bare-Root Stock: Plants with a well-branched, fibrous-root system developed by transplanting or root pruning, with soil or growing medium removed, and with not less than minimum root spread according to ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant required.
5. Container-Grown Stock: Healthy, vigorous, well-rooted plants grown in a container, with a well-established root system reaching sides of container and maintaining a firm ball when removed from container. Container shall be rigid enough to hold ball shape and protect root mass during shipping and be sized according to ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant required.
6. Duff Layer: The surface layer of native topsoil that is composed of mostly decayed leaves, twigs, and detritus.
7. Fabric Bag-Grown Stock: Healthy, vigorous, well-rooted plants established and grown in-ground in a porous fabric bag with well-established root system reaching sides of fabric bag. Fabric bag size is not less than diameter, depth, and volume required by ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant.
8. Finish Grade: Elevation of finished surface of planting soil.
9. Manufactured Topsoil: Soil produced off-site by homogeneously blending mineral soils or sand with stabilized organic soil amendments to produce topsoil or planting soil.
10. Pesticide: A substance or mixture intended for preventing, destroying, repelling, or mitigating a pest. This includes insecticides, miticides, herbicides, fungicides, rodenticides, and molluscicides. It also includes substances or mixtures intended for use as a plant regulator, defoliant, or desiccant.
11. Pests: Living organisms that occur where they are not desired, or that cause damage to plants, animals, or people. These include insects, mites, grubs, mollusks (snails and slugs), rodents (gophers, moles, and mice), unwanted plants (weeds), fungi, bacteria, and viruses.
12. Planting Area: Areas to be planted.



13. Planting Soil: Standardized topsoil; existing, native surface topsoil; existing, in-place surface soil; imported topsoil; or manufactured topsoil that is modified with soil amendments and perhaps fertilizers to produce a soil mixture best for plant growth.
14. Plant; Plants; Plant Material: These terms refer to vegetation in general, including trees, shrubs, vines, ground covers, ornamental grasses, bulbs, corms, tubers, or herbaceous vegetation.
15. Root Flare: Also called "trunk flare." The area at the base of the plant's stem or trunk where the stem or trunk broadens to form roots; the area of transition between the root system and the stem or trunk.
16. Stem Girdling Roots: Roots that encircle the stems (trunks) of trees below the soil surface.
17. Subgrade: Surface or elevation of subsoil remaining after excavation is complete, or the top surface of a fill or backfill before planting soil is placed.
18. Subsoil: All soil beneath the topsoil layer of the soil profile, and typified by the lack of organic matter and soil organisms.
19. Surface Soil: Soil that is present at the top layer of the existing soil profile at the Project site. In undisturbed areas, the surface soil is typically topsoil; but in disturbed areas such as urban environments, the surface soil can be subsoil.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, including soils.
2. Samples of mineral mulch.
3. Product certificates.
4. Maintenance Instructions: Recommended procedures to be established by the Owner for maintenance of plants during a calendar year.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Installer's Field Supervision: Require Installer to maintain an experienced full-time supervisor on Project site when work is in progress.
  - a. Pesticide Applicator: State licensed, commercial.
2. Soil Analysis: For each unamended soil type, furnish soil analysis and a written report by a qualified soil-testing laboratory.
  - a. The soil-testing laboratory shall oversee soil sampling.
  - b. Report suitability of tested soil for plant growth.
    - 1) State recommendations for nitrogen, phosphorus, and potash nutrients and soil amendments to be added to produce satisfactory planting soil suitable for healthy, viable plants.
    - 2) Report presence of problem salts, minerals, or heavy metals; if present, provide additional recommendations for corrective action.
3. Provide quality, size, genus, species, and variety of plants indicated, complying with applicable requirements in ANSI Z60.1.
4. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Packaged Materials: Deliver packaged materials in original, unopened containers showing weight, certified analysis, name and address of manufacturer, and indication of conformance with state and federal laws if applicable.
2. Bulk Materials:
  - a. Do not dump or store bulk materials near structures, utilities, walkways and pavements, or on existing turf areas or plants.
  - b. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of bulk materials, discharge of soil-bearing water runoff, and airborne dust reaching adjacent properties, water conveyance systems, or walkways.
  - c. Accompany each delivery of bulk fertilizers, lime, and soil amendments with appropriate certificates.
3. Deliver bare-root stock plants freshly dug. Immediately after digging up bare-root stock, pack root system in wet straw, hay, or other suitable material to keep root system moist until planting.



4. Do not prune trees and shrubs before delivery. Protect bark, branches, and root systems from sun scald, drying, wind burn, sweating, whipping, and other handling and tying damage. Do not bend or bind-tie trees or shrubs in such a manner as to destroy their natural shape. Provide protective covering of plants during shipping and delivery. Do not drop plants during delivery and handling.
5. Handle planting stock by root ball.
6. Store bulbs, corms, and tubers in a dry place at 60 to 65 deg F (16 to 18 deg C) until planting.
7. Deliver plants after preparations for planting have been completed, and install immediately. If planting is delayed more than six hours after delivery, set plants and trees in their appropriate aspect (sun, filtered sun, or shade), protect from weather and mechanical damage, and keep roots moist.
  - a. Heel-in bare-root stock. Soak roots that are in dry condition in water for two hours. Reject dried-out plants.
  - b. Set balled stock on ground and cover ball with soil, peat moss, sawdust, or other acceptable material.
  - c. Do not remove container-grown stock from containers before time of planting.
  - d. Water root systems of plants stored on-site deeply and thoroughly with a fine-mist spray. Water as often as necessary to maintain root systems in a moist, but not overly-wet condition.

#### G. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace plantings and accessories that fail in materials, workmanship, or growth within specified warranty period.
  - a. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) Death and unsatisfactory growth, except for defects resulting from abuse, lack of adequate maintenance, or neglect by the Owner, or incidents that are beyond Contractor's control.
    - 2) Structural failures including plantings falling or blowing over.
    - 3) Faulty performance of tree stabilization, edgings, or tree grates.
    - 4) Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
  - b. Warranty Periods from Date of Planting Completion **OR** Final Completion, **as directed**:
    - 1) Trees, Shrubs, Vines, and Ornamental Grasses: 12 months.
    - 2) Ground Covers, Biennials, Perennials, and Other Plants: 12 **OR** Nine **OR** Six **OR** Three, **as directed**, months.
    - 3) Annuals: Three **OR** Two, **as directed**, months.

#### H. Maintenance Service

1. Initial Maintenance Service: Provide maintenance by skilled employees of landscape Installer. Maintain as required in Part 1.3. Begin maintenance immediately after plants are installed and continue until plantings are acceptably healthy and well established but for not less than maintenance period below.
  - a. Maintenance Period for Trees and Shrubs: 12 **OR** Six **OR** Three, **as directed**, months from date of planting completion **OR** Final Completion, **as directed**.
  - b. Maintenance Period for Ground Cover and Other Plants: Six **OR** Three, **as directed**, months from date of planting completion **OR** Final Completion, **as directed**.
2. Continuing Maintenance Proposal: From Installer to the Owner, in the form of a standard yearly (or other period) maintenance agreement, starting on date initial maintenance service is concluded. State services, obligations, conditions, and terms for agreement period and for future renewal options.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Plant Material



1. General: Furnish nursery-grown plants true to genus, species, variety, cultivar, stem form, shearing, and other features indicated in Plant Schedule or Plant Legend shown on Drawings and complying with ANSI Z60.1; and with healthy root systems developed by transplanting or root pruning. Provide well-shaped, fully branched, healthy, vigorous stock, densely foliated when in leaf and free of disease, pests, eggs, larvae, and defects such as knots, sun scald, injuries, abrasions, and disfigurement.
  - a. Trees with damaged, crooked, or multiple leaders; tight vertical branches where bark is squeezed between two branches or between branch and trunk ("included bark"); crossing trunks; cut-off limbs more than 3/4 inch (19 mm) in diameter; or with stem girdling roots will be rejected.
  - b. Collected Stock: Do not use plants harvested from the wild, from native stands, from an established landscape planting, or not grown in a nursery unless otherwise indicated.
2. Root-Ball Depth: Furnish trees and shrubs with root balls measured from top of root ball, which shall begin at root flare according to ANSI Z60.1. Root flare shall be visible before planting.
3. Annuals and Biennials: Provide healthy, disease-free plants of species and variety shown or listed, with well-established root systems reaching to sides of the container to maintain a firm ball, but not with excessive root growth encircling the container. Provide only plants that are acclimated to outdoor conditions before delivery and that are in bud but not yet in bloom.

#### B. Inorganic Soil Amendments

1. Lime: ASTM C 602, agricultural liming material containing a minimum of 80 percent calcium carbonate equivalent and as follows:
  - a. Class: T, with a minimum of 99 percent passing through No. 8 (2.36-mm) sieve and a minimum of 75 percent passing through No. 60 (0.25-mm) sieve.  
**OR**  
Class: O, with a minimum of 95 percent passing through No. 8 (2.36-mm) sieve and a minimum of 55 percent passing through No. 60 (0.25-mm) sieve.
  - b. Provide lime in form of ground dolomitic limestone **OR** calcitic limestone **OR** mollusk shells, **as directed**.
2. Sulfur: Granular, biodegradable, and containing a minimum of 90 percent sulfur, with a minimum of 99 percent passing through No. 6 (3.35-mm) sieve and a maximum of 10 percent passing through No. 40 (0.425-mm) sieve.
3. Iron Sulfate: Granulated ferrous sulfate containing a minimum of 20 percent iron and 10 percent sulfur.
4. Aluminum Sulfate: Commercial grade, unadulterated.
5. Perlite: Horticultural perlite, soil amendment grade.
6. Agricultural Gypsum: Minimum 90 percent calcium sulfate, finely ground with 90 percent passing through No. 50 (0.30-mm) sieve.
7. Sand: Clean, washed, natural or manufactured, and free of toxic materials.
8. Diatomaceous Earth: Calcined, 90 percent silica, with approximately 140 percent water absorption capacity by weight.  
**OR**  
Zeolites: Mineral clinoptilolite with at least 60 percent water absorption by weight.

#### C. Organic Soil Amendments

1. Compost: Well-composted, stable, and weed-free organic matter, pH range of 5.5 to 8; moisture content 35 to 55 percent by weight; 100 percent passing through 1-inch (25-mm) **OR** 3/4-inch (19-mm) **OR** 1/2-inch (13-mm), **as directed**, sieve; soluble salt content of 5 to 10 decisiemens/m; not exceeding 0.5 percent inert contaminants and free of substances toxic to plantings; and as follows:
  - a. Organic Matter Content: 50 to 60 percent of dry weight.
  - b. Feedstock: Agricultural, food, or industrial residuals; biosolids; yard trimmings; or source-separated or compostable mixed solid waste.
2. Sphagnum Peat: Partially decomposed sphagnum peat moss, finely divided or granular texture, with a pH range of 3.4 to 4.8.



3. Muck Peat: Partially decomposed moss peat, native peat, or reed-sedge peat, finely divided or of granular texture, with a pH range of 6 to 7.5, and having a water-absorbing capacity of 1100 to 2000 percent.
4. Wood Derivatives: Decomposed, nitrogen-treated sawdust, ground bark, or wood waste; of uniform texture and free of chips, stones, sticks, soil, or toxic materials.
  - a. In lieu of decomposed wood derivatives, mix partially decomposed wood derivatives with ammonium nitrate at a minimum rate of 0.15 lb/cu. ft. (2.4 kg/cu. m) of loose sawdust or ground bark, or with ammonium sulfate at a minimum rate of 0.25 lb/cu. ft. (4 kg/cu. m) of loose sawdust or ground bark.
5. Manure: Well-rotted, unleached, stable or cattle manure containing not more than 25 percent by volume of straw, sawdust, or other bedding materials; free of toxic substances, stones, sticks, soil, weed seed, debris, and material harmful to plant growth.

#### D. Fertilizers

1. Bonemeal: Commercial, raw or steamed, finely ground; a minimum of 1 **OR** 4, **as directed**, percent nitrogen and 10 **OR** 20, **as directed**, percent phosphoric acid.
2. Superphosphate: Commercial, phosphate mixture, soluble; a minimum of 20 percent available phosphoric acid.
3. Commercial Fertilizer: Commercial-grade complete fertilizer of neutral character, consisting of fast- and slow-release nitrogen, 50 percent derived from natural organic sources of urea formaldehyde, phosphorous, and potassium in the following composition:
  - a. Composition: 1 lb/1000 sq. ft. (0.45 kg/92.9 sq. m) of actual nitrogen, 4 percent phosphorous, and 2 percent potassium, by weight.
  - b. Composition: Nitrogen, phosphorous, and potassium in amounts recommended in soil reports from a qualified soil-testing laboratory.
4. Slow-Release Fertilizer: Granular or pelleted fertilizer consisting of 50 percent water-insoluble nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium in the following composition:
  - a. Composition: 20 percent nitrogen, 10 percent phosphorous, and 10 percent potassium, by weight.
  - b. Composition: Nitrogen, phosphorous, and potassium in amounts recommended in soil reports from a qualified soil-testing laboratory.
5. Planting Tablets: Tightly compressed chip type, long-lasting, slow-release, commercial-grade planting fertilizer in tablet form. Tablets shall break down with soil bacteria, converting nutrients into a form that can be absorbed by plant roots.
  - a. Size: 5-gram **OR** 10-gram **OR** 21-gram, **as directed**, tablets.
  - b. Nutrient Composition: 20 percent nitrogen, 10 percent phosphorous, and 5 percent potassium, by weight plus micronutrients.
6. Chelated Iron: Commercial-grade FeEDDHA for dicots and woody plants, and commercial-grade FeDTPA for ornamental grasses and monocots.

#### E. Planting Soils

1. Planting Soil: ASTM D 5268 topsoil, with pH range of 5.5 to 7, a minimum of 2 percent organic material content **OR** Existing, native surface topsoil formed under natural conditions with the duff layer retained during excavation process **OR** Existing, in-place surface soil **OR** Imported topsoil or manufactured topsoil from off-site sources; do not obtain from agricultural land, bogs or marshes, **as directed**. Verify suitability of soil to produce viable planting soil. Clean soil of roots, plants, sod, stones, clods, clay lumps, pockets of coarse sand, concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, building debris, and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth. Mix soil with the following soil amendments and fertilizers in the following quantities to produce planting soil:
  - a. Ratio of Loose Compost to Topsoil by Volume: 1:4 **OR** 1:3 **OR** 1:2, **as directed**.
  - b. Ratio of Loose Sphagnum **OR** Muck, **as directed**, Peat to Topsoil by Volume: as directed by the Owner.
  - c. Ratio of Loose Wood Derivatives to Topsoil by Volume: as directed by the Owner.
  - d. Weight of Lime per 1000 Sq. Ft. (92.9 Sq. m): as directed by the Owner.



- e. Weight of Sulfur **OR** Iron Sulfate **OR** Aluminum Sulfate, **as directed**, per 1000 Sq. Ft. (92.9 Sq. m): as directed by the Owner.
  - f. Weight of Agricultural Gypsum per 1000 Sq. Ft. (92.9 Sq. m): as directed by the Owner.
  - g. Volume of Sand Plus 10 Percent Diatomaceous Earth **OR** Zeolites, **as directed**, per 1000 Sq. Ft. (92.9 Sq. m): as directed by the Owner.
  - h. Weight of Bonemeal per 1000 Sq. Ft. (92.9 Sq. m): as directed by the Owner.
  - i. Weight of Superphosphate per 1000 Sq. Ft. (92.9 Sq. m): as directed by the Owner.
  - j. Weight of Commercial Fertilizer per 1000 Sq. Ft. (92.9 Sq. m): as directed by the Owner.
  - k. Weight of Slow-Release Fertilizer per 1000 Sq. Ft. (92.9 Sq. m): as directed by the Owner.
- F. Mulches
- 1. Organic Mulch: Shredded hardwood **OR** Ground or shredded bark **OR** Wood and bark chips **OR** Pine straw **OR** Salt hay or threshed straw **OR** Pine needles **OR** Peanut, pecan, and cocoa-bean shells, **as directed**.
  - 2. Compost Mulch: Well-composted, stable, and weed-free organic matter, pH range of 5.5 to 8; moisture content 35 to 55 percent by weight; 100 percent passing through 1-inch (25-mm) sieve; soluble salt content of 2 to 5 decisiemens/m; not exceeding 0.5 percent inert contaminants and free of substances toxic to plantings.
  - 3. Mineral Mulch: Rounded riverbed gravel or smooth-faced stone **OR** Crushed stone or gravel **OR** Marble chips **OR** Granite chips, **as directed**.
    - a. Size Range: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) maximum, 3/4 inch (19 mm) minimum **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm) maximum, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) minimum, **as directed**.
    - b. Color: Uniform tan-beige color range acceptable to the Owner **OR** Readily available natural gravel color range, **as directed**.
- G. Weed-Control Barriers
- 1. Nonwoven Geotextile Filter Fabric: Polypropylene or polyester fabric, 3 oz./sq. yd. (101g/sq. m) minimum, composed of fibers formed into a stable network so that fibers retain their relative position. Fabric shall be inert to biological degradation and resist naturally-encountered chemicals, alkalis, and acids.
  - 2. Composite Fabric: Woven, needle-punched polypropylene substrate bonded to a nonwoven polypropylene fabric, 4.8 oz./sq. yd. (162 g/sq. m).
- H. Pesticides
- 1. General: Pesticide registered and approved by EPA, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and of type recommended by manufacturer for each specific problem and as required for Project conditions and application. Do not use restricted pesticides unless authorized in writing by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Pre-Emergent Herbicide (Selective and Non-Selective): Effective for controlling the germination or growth of weeds within planted areas at the soil level directly below the mulch layer.
  - 3. Post-Emergent Herbicide (Selective and Non-Selective): Effective for controlling weed growth that has already germinated.
- I. Tree Stabilization Materials
- 1. Stakes and Guys:
    - a. Upright and Guy Stakes: Rough-sawn, sound, new hardwood **OR** softwood with specified wood pressure-preservative treatment, **as directed**, free of knots, holes, cross grain, and other defects, 2-by-2-inch nominal (38-by-38-mm actual) by length indicated, pointed at one end.
    - b. Wood Deadmen: Timbers measuring 8 inches (200 mm) in diameter and 48 inches (1200 mm) long, treated with specified wood pressure-preservative treatment.
    - c. Flexible Ties: Wide rubber or elastic bands or straps of length required to reach stakes or turnbuckles **OR** compression springs, **as directed**.
    - d. Guys and Tie Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1, galvanized-steel wire, two-strand, twisted, 0.106 inch (2.7 mm) in diameter.



- e. Tree-Tie Webbing: UV-resistant polypropylene or nylon webbing with brass grommets.
  - f. Guy Cables: Five-strand, 3/16-inch- (4.8-mm-) diameter, galvanized-steel cable, with zinc-coated turnbuckles **OR** compression springs, **as directed**, a minimum of 3 inches (75 mm) long, with two 3/8-inch (10-mm) galvanized eyebolts.
  - g. Flags: Standard surveyor's plastic flagging tape, white, 6 inches (150 mm) long.
  - h. Proprietary Staking-and-Guying Devices: Proprietary stake and adjustable tie systems to secure each new planting by plant stem; sized as indicated and per manufacturer's written recommendations.
2. Root-Ball Stabilization Materials:
- a. Upright Stakes and Horizontal Hold-Down: Rough-sawn, sound, new hardwood or softwood, free of knots, holes, cross grain, and other defects, 2-by-2-inch nominal (38-by-38-mm actual) by length indicated; stakes pointed at one end.
  - b. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.
  - c. Proprietary Root-Ball Stabilization Devices: Proprietary at- or below-grade stabilization systems to secure each new planting by root ball; sized per manufacturer's written recommendations unless otherwise indicated.
3. Palm Bracing: Battens or blocks, struts, straps, and protective padding as indicated.
- a. Battens or Blocks and Struts: Rough-sawn, sound, new hardwood or softwood, free of knots, holes, cross grain, and other defects, 2-by-4-inch nominal (38-by-89-mm actual) by lengths indicated.
  - b. Straps: Adjustable steel or plastic package banding straps.
  - c. Padding: Burlap.
  - d. Proprietary Palm-Bracing Devices: Proprietary systems to secure each new planting by trunk; sized per manufacturer's written recommendations unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Landscape Edgings
1. Wood Edging: Of sizes shown on Drawings, and wood stakes as follows:
- a. Species: Western red cedar, all heart **OR** Southern pine with specified wood pressure-preservative treatment, **as directed**.
  - b. Stakes: Same species as edging, 1-by-2-inch nominal (19-by-38-mm actual) by 18 inches (450 mm) long, with galvanized nails for anchoring edging.
2. Steel Edging: Standard commercial-steel edging, rolled edge, fabricated in sections of standard lengths, with loops stamped from or welded to face of sections to receive stakes.
- a. Edging Size: 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) wide by 4 inches (100 mm) deep **OR** 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) wide by 5 inches (125 mm) deep **OR** 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) wide by 4 inches (100 mm) deep **OR** 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) wide by 4 inches (100 mm) deep **OR** 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) wide by 6 inches (150 mm) deep **OR** 0.1 inch (2.5 mm) wide by 4 inches (100 mm) deep, **as directed**.
  - b. Stakes: Tapered steel, a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) **OR** 15 inches (380 mm), **as directed**, long.
  - c. Accessories: Standard tapered ends, corners, and splicers.
  - d. Finish: Standard paint **OR** Zinc coated **OR** Unfinished, **as directed**.
  - e. Paint Color: Black **OR** Green **OR** Brown, **as directed**.
3. Aluminum Edging: Standard-profile extruded-aluminum edging, ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T6, fabricated in standard lengths with interlocking sections with loops stamped from face of sections to receive stakes.
- a. Edging Size: 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) wide by 5-1/2 inches (140 mm) deep **OR** 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) wide by 4 inches (100 mm) deep **OR** 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) wide by 5-1/2 inches (140 mm) deep **OR** 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) wide by 4 inches (100 mm) deep, **as directed**.
  - b. Stakes: Aluminum, ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6061-T6, approximately 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) wide by 12 inches (300 mm) long.
  - c. Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint **OR** Powder-coat paint **OR** Mill (natural aluminum) **OR** Black anodized, **as directed**.
  - d. Paint Color: Black **OR** Green **OR** Brown, **as directed**.



4. Plastic Edging: Standard black polyethylene or vinyl edging, V-lipped bottom **OR** horizontally grooved, **as directed**, extruded in standard lengths, with 9-inch (225-mm) steel angle **OR** plastic, **as directed**, stakes.
  - a. Edging Size: 0.1 inch (2.5 mm) wide by 5 inches (125 mm) deep **OR** 0.07 inch (1.8 mm) wide by 5 inches (125 mm) deep, **as directed**.
  - b. Top Profile: Straight, with top 2 inches (50 mm) being 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) thick.
  - c. Top Profile: Round top, 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, in diameter.
  - d. Accessories: Manufacturer's standard alignment clips or plugs.

#### K. Tree Grates

1. Tree Grates and Frames: ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 35 (Class 250) or better, gray-iron castings of shape, pattern, and size indicated.  
**OR**  
Tree Grates and Frames: ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 35 (Class 250) or better, gray-iron castings and ASTM A 36/A 36M steel-angle frames of shape, pattern, and size indicated; steel frames hot-dip galvanized.
2. Shape and Size: As indicated **OR** Round, 36 inches (914 mm) in diameter **OR** Round, 72 inches (1828 mm) in diameter **OR** 48 inches (1219 mm) square **OR** 60 inches (1524 mm) square **OR** Rectangular, 36 by 60 inches (914 by 1524 mm) **OR** Rectangular, 48 by 72 inches (1219 by 1828 mm), **as directed**.
3. Finish: As fabricated **OR** Powder-coat finish, **as directed**.
  - a. Color: Low-gloss black **OR** dark brown **OR** dark green **OR** dark gray, **as directed**.

#### L. Miscellaneous Products

1. Wood Pressure-Preservative Treatment: AWPAC2, with waterborne preservative for soil and freshwater use, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and containing no arsenic; including ammoniacal copper arsenate, ammoniacal copper zinc arsenate, and chromated copper arsenate.
2. Root Barrier: Black, molded, modular panels manufactured with 50 percent recycled polyethylene plastic with ultraviolet inhibitors, 85 mils (2.2 mm) thick, with vertical root deflecting ribs protruding 3/4 inch (19 mm) out from panel, and each panel 18 inches (457 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm), **as directed**, wide.
3. Antidesiccant: Water-insoluble emulsion, permeable moisture retarder, film forming, for trees and shrubs. Deliver in original, sealed, and fully labeled containers and mix according to manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Burlap: Non-synthetic, biodegradable.
5. Planter Drainage Gravel: Washed, sound crushed stone or gravel complying with ASTM D 448 for Size No. 8.
6. Planter Filter Fabric: Woven **OR** Nonwoven, **as directed**, geotextile manufactured for separation applications and made of polypropylene, polyolefin, or polyester fibers or combination of them.
7. Mycorrhizal Fungi: Dry, granular inoculant containing at least 5300 spores per lb (0.45 kg) of vesicular-arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi and 95 million spores per lb (0.45 kg) of ectomycorrhizal fungi, 33 percent hydrogel, and a maximum of 5.5 percent inert material.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Preparation

1. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities and turf areas and existing plants from damage caused by planting operations.
2. Install erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of soils and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways.
3. Lay out individual tree and shrub locations and areas for multiple plantings. Stake locations, outline areas, adjust locations when requested, and obtain Architect's acceptance of layout before excavating or planting. Make minor adjustments as required.





4. Lay out plants at locations directed by Architect. Stake locations of individual trees and shrubs and outline areas for multiple plantings.
  5. Apply antidesiccant to trees and shrubs using power spray to provide an adequate film over trunks (before wrapping), branches, stems, twigs, and foliage to protect during digging, handling, and transportation.
    - a. If deciduous trees or shrubs are moved in full leaf, spray with antidesiccant at nursery before moving and again two weeks after planting.
  6. Wrap trees and shrubs with burlap fabric over trunks, branches, stems, twigs, and foliage to protect from wind and other damage during digging, handling, and transportation.
- B. Planting Area Establishment
1. Loosen subgrade of planting areas to a minimum depth of 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 6 inches (150 mm) **OR** 8 inches (200 mm) **OR** 12 inches (300 mm), **as directed**. Remove stones larger than 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, in any dimension and sticks, roots, rubbish, and other extraneous matter and legally dispose of them off the Owner's property.
    - a. Apply superphosphate fertilizer directly to subgrade before loosening.
    - b. Thoroughly blend planting soil off-site before spreading or spread topsoil, apply soil amendments and fertilizer on surface, and thoroughly blend planting soil.
      - 1) Delay mixing fertilizer with planting soil if planting will not proceed within a few days.
      - 2) Mix lime with dry soil before mixing fertilizer.
    - c. Spread planting soil to a depth of 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 6 inches (150 mm) **OR** 8 inches (200 mm) **OR** 12 inches (300 mm), **as directed**, but not less than required to meet finish grades after natural settlement. Do not spread if planting soil or subgrade is frozen, muddy, or excessively wet.
      - 1) Spread approximately one-half the thickness of planting soil over loosened subgrade. Mix thoroughly into top 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, of subgrade. Spread remainder of planting soil.
  2. Finish Grading: Grade planting areas to a smooth, uniform surface plane with loose, uniformly fine texture. Roll and rake, remove ridges, and fill depressions to meet finish grades.
  3. Before planting, obtain the Owner's acceptance of finish grading; restore planting areas if eroded or otherwise disturbed after finish grading.
  4. Application of Mycorrhizal Fungi: At time directed by the Owner, broadcast dry product uniformly over prepared soil at application rate indicated on Drawings.
- C. Excavation For Trees And Shrubs
1. Planting Pits and Trenches: Excavate circular planting pits with sides sloping inward at a 45-degree angle. Excavations with vertical sides are not acceptable. Trim perimeter of bottom leaving center area of bottom raised slightly to support root ball and assist in drainage away from center. Do not further disturb base. Ensure that root ball will sit on undisturbed base soil to prevent settling. Scarify sides of planting pit smeared or smoothed during excavation.
    - a. Excavate approximately three times as wide as ball diameter for balled and burlapped **OR** balled and potted **OR** container-grown **OR** fabric bag-grown, **as directed**, stock.
    - b. Excavate at least 12 inches (300 mm) wider than root spread and deep enough to accommodate vertical roots for bare-root stock.
    - c. Do not excavate deeper than depth of the root ball, measured from the root flare to the bottom of the root ball.
    - d. If area under the plant was initially dug too deep, add soil to raise it to the correct level and thoroughly tamp the added soil to prevent settling.
    - e. Maintain required angles of repose of adjacent materials as shown on the Drawings. Do not excavate subgrades of adjacent paving, structures, hardscapes, or other new or existing improvements.
    - f. Maintain supervision of excavations during working hours.
    - g. Keep excavations covered or otherwise protected overnight **OR** after working hours **OR** when unattended by Installer's personnel, **as directed**.



- h. If drain tile is shown on Drawings or required under planting areas, excavate to top of porous backfill over tile.
  2. Subsoil and topsoil removed from excavations may **OR** may not, **as directed**, be used as planting soil.
  3. Obstructions: Notify the Owner if unexpected rock or obstructions detrimental to trees or shrubs are encountered in excavations.
    - a. Hardpan Layer: Drill 6-inch- (150-mm-) diameter holes, 24 inches (600 mm) apart, into free-draining strata or to a depth of 10 feet (3 m), whichever is less, and backfill with free-draining material.
  4. Drainage: Notify the Owner if subsoil conditions evidence unexpected water seepage or retention in tree or shrub planting pits.
  5. Fill excavations with water and allow to percolate away before positioning trees and shrubs.
- D. Tree, Shrub, And Vine Planting
1. Before planting, verify that root flare is visible at top of root ball according to ANSI Z60.1. If root flare is not visible, remove soil in a level manner from the root ball to where the top-most root emerges from the trunk. After soil removal to expose the root flare, verify that root ball still meets size requirements.
  2. Remove stem girdling roots and kinked roots. Remove injured roots by cutting cleanly; do not break.
  3. Set balled and burlapped stock plumb and in center of planting pit or trench with root flare 1 inch (25 mm) above **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) above, **as directed**, adjacent finish grades.
    - a. Use planting soil for backfill.
    - b. After placing some backfill around root ball to stabilize plant, carefully cut and remove burlap, rope, and wire baskets from tops of root balls and from sides, but do not remove from under root balls. Remove pallets, if any, before setting. Do not use planting stock if root ball is cracked or broken before or during planting operation.
    - c. Backfill around root ball in layers, tamping to settle soil and eliminate voids and air pockets. When planting pit is approximately one-half filled, water thoroughly before placing remainder of backfill. Repeat watering until no more water is absorbed.
    - d. Place planting tablets in each planting pit when pit is approximately one-half filled; in amounts recommended in soil reports from soil-testing laboratory. Place tablets beside the root ball about 1 inch (25 mm) from root tips; do not place tablets in bottom of the hole.
    - e. Continue backfilling process. Water again after placing and tamping final layer of soil.
  4. Set balled and potted **OR** container-grown, **as directed**, stock plumb and in center of planting pit or trench with root flare 1 inch (25 mm) above **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) above, **as directed**, adjacent finish grades.
    - a. Use planting soil for backfill.
    - b. Carefully remove root ball from container without damaging root ball or plant.
    - c. Backfill around root ball in layers, tamping to settle soil and eliminate voids and air pockets. When planting pit is approximately one-half filled, water thoroughly before placing remainder of backfill. Repeat watering until no more water is absorbed.
    - d. Place planting tablets in each planting pit when pit is approximately one-half filled; in amounts recommended in soil reports from soil-testing laboratory. Place tablets beside the root ball about 1 inch (25 mm) from root tips; do not place tablets in bottom of the hole.
    - e. Continue backfilling process. Water again after placing and tamping final layer of soil.
  5. Set fabric bag-grown stock plumb and in center of planting pit or trench with root flare 1 inch (25 mm) above **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) above, **as directed**, adjacent finish grades.
    - a. Use planting soil for backfill.
    - b. Carefully remove root ball from fabric bag without damaging root ball or plant. Do not use planting stock if root ball is cracked or broken before or during planting operation.
    - c. Backfill around root ball in layers, tamping to settle soil and eliminate voids and air pockets. When planting pit is approximately one-half filled, water thoroughly before placing remainder of backfill. Repeat watering until no more water is absorbed.



- d. Place planting tablets in each planting pit when pit is approximately one-half filled; in amounts recommended in soil reports from soil-testing laboratory. Place tablets beside the root ball about 1 inch (25 mm) from root tips; do not place tablets in bottom of the hole.
  - e. Continue backfilling process. Water again after placing and tamping final layer of soil.
  - f. Set and support bare-root stock in center of planting pit or trench with root flare 1 inch (25 mm) above **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) above, **as directed**, adjacent finish grade.
6. Use planting soil for backfill.
    - a. Spread roots without tangling or turning toward surface, and carefully work backfill around roots by hand. Puddle with water until backfill layers are completely saturated. Plumb before backfilling, and maintain plumb while working backfill around roots and placing layers above roots.
    - b. Place planting tablets in each planting pit when pit is approximately one-half filled; in amounts recommended in soil reports from soil-testing laboratory. Place tablets beside soil-covered roots about 1 inch (25 mm) from root tips; do not place tablets in bottom of the hole or touching the roots.
    - c. Continue backfilling process. Water again after placing and tamping final layer of soil.
  7. When planting on slopes, set the plant so the root flare on the uphill side is flush with the surrounding soil on the slope; the edge of the root ball on the downhill side will be above the surrounding soil. Apply enough soil to cover the downhill side of the root ball.
- E. Mechanized Tree Spade Planting
1. Trees shall **OR** may, **as directed**, be planted with an approved mechanized tree spade at the designated locations. Do not use tree spade to move trees larger than the maximum size allowed for a similar field-grown, balled-and-burlapped root-ball diameter according to ANSI Z60.1, or larger than the manufacturer's maximum size recommendation for the tree spade being used, whichever is smaller.
  2. When extracting the tree, center the trunk within the tree spade and move tree with a solid ball of earth.
  3. Cut exposed roots cleanly during transplanting operations.
  4. Use the same tree spade to excavate the planting hole as was used to extract and transport the tree.
  5. Plant trees as shown on Drawings, following procedures in "Tree, Shrub, and Vine Planting" Article.
  6. Where possible, orient the tree in the same direction as in its original location.
- F. Tree, Shrub, And Vine Pruning
1. Remove only dead, dying, or broken branches. Do not prune for shape.
  2. Prune, thin, and shape trees, shrubs, and vines as directed by Architect.
  3. Prune, thin, and shape trees, shrubs, and vines according to standard professional horticultural and arboricultural practices. Unless otherwise indicated by Architect, do not cut tree leaders; remove only injured, dying, or dead branches from trees and shrubs; and prune to retain natural character.
  4. Do not apply pruning paint to wounds.
- G. Tree Stabilization
1. Install trunk stabilization as follows unless otherwise indicated:
    - a. Upright Staking and Tying: Stake trees of 2- through 5-inch (50- through 125-mm) caliper. Stake trees of less than 2-inch (50-mm) caliper only as required to prevent wind tip out. Use a minimum of two stakes of length required to penetrate at least 18 inches (450 mm) below bottom of backfilled excavation and to extend to the dimension shown on Drawings **OR** at least 72 inches (1830 mm) **OR** one-third of trunk height, **as directed**, above grade. Set vertical stakes and space to avoid penetrating root balls or root masses.
    - b. Use two stakes for trees up to 12 feet (3.6 m) high and 2-1/2 inches (63 mm) or less in caliper; three stakes for trees less than 14 feet (4.2 m) high and up to 4 inches (100 mm) in caliper. Space stakes equally around trees.



- c. Support trees with bands of flexible ties at contact points with tree trunk. Allow enough slack to avoid rigid restraint of tree.  
**OR**  
 Support trees with two strands of tie wire, connected to the brass grommets of tree-tie webbing at contact points with tree trunk. Allow enough slack to avoid rigid restraint of tree.
2. Staking and Guying: Stake and guy trees more than 14 feet (4.2 m) in height and more than 3 inches (75 mm) in caliper unless otherwise indicated. Securely attach no fewer than three guys to stakes 30 inches (760 mm) long, driven to grade.
- a. Site-Fabricated Staking-and-Guying Method:
- 1) For trees more than 6 inches (150 mm) in caliper, anchor guys to wood deadmen buried at least 36 inches (900 mm) below grade. Provide turnbuckle **OR** compression spring, **as directed**, for each guy wire and tighten securely.
  - 2) Support trees with bands of flexible ties at contact points with tree trunk and reaching to turnbuckle **OR** compression spring, **as directed**. Allow enough slack to avoid rigid restraint of tree.
  - 3) Support trees with strands of cable or multiple strands of tie wire, connected to the brass grommets of tree-tie webbing at contact points with tree trunk and reaching to turnbuckle **OR** compression spring, **as directed**. Allow enough slack to avoid rigid restraint of tree.
  - 4) Attach flags to each guy wire, 30 inches (760 mm) above finish grade.  
**OR**  
 Paint turnbuckles **OR** compression springs, **as directed**, with luminescent white paint.
- b. Proprietary Staking and Guying Device: Install staking and guying system sized and positioned as recommended by manufacturer unless otherwise indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Root-Ball Stabilization: Install at- or below-grade stabilization system to secure each new planting by the root ball unless otherwise indicated.
- a. Wood Hold-Down Method: Place vertical stakes against side of root ball and drive them into subsoil; place horizontal wood hold-down stake across top of root ball and screw at each end to one of the vertical stakes.
- 1) Install stakes of length required to penetrate at least to the dimension shown on Drawings **OR** 18 inches (450 mm), **as directed**, below bottom of backfilled excavation. Saw stakes off at horizontal stake.
  - 2) Install screws through horizontal hold-down and penetrating at least 1 inch (25 mm) into stakes. Predrill holes if necessary to prevent splitting wood.
  - 3) Install second set of stakes on other side of root trunk for larger trees as indicated.
- b. Proprietary Root-Ball Stabilization Device: Install root-ball stabilization system sized and positioned as recommended by manufacturer unless otherwise indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Palm Bracing: Install bracing system at three or more places equally spaced around perimeter of trunk to secure each palm until established unless otherwise indicated.
- a. Site-Fabricated Palm-Bracing Method:
- 1) Place battens over padding and secure battens in place around trunk perimeter with at least two straps, tightened to prevent displacement. Ensure that straps do not contact trunk.
  - 2) Place diagonal braces and cut to length. Secure upper ends of diagonal braces with galvanized nails into battens or into nail-attached blocks on battens. Do not drive nails, screws, or other securing devices into palm trunk; do not penetrate palm trunk in any fashion. Secure lower ends of diagonal braces with stakes driven into ground to prevent outward slippage of braces.
- b. Proprietary Palm-Bracing Device: Install palm-bracing system sized and positioned as recommended by manufacturer unless otherwise indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.



#### H. Root-Barrier Installation

1. Install root barrier where trees are planted within 60 inches (1500 mm) **OR** 48 inches (1200 mm), **as directed**, of paving or other hardscape elements, such as walls, curbs, and walkways unless otherwise shown on Drawings.
2. Align root barrier vertically **OR** with bottom edge angled at 20 degrees away from the paving or other hardscape element, **as directed**, and run it linearly along and adjacent to the paving or other hardscape elements to be protected from invasive roots.
3. Install root barrier continuously for a distance of 60 inches (1500 mm) in each direction from the tree trunk, for a total distance of 10 feet (3 m) per tree. If trees are spaced closer, use a single continuous piece of root barrier.
  - a. Position top of root barrier flush with finish grade **OR** 1/2 inch (13 mm) above finish grade **OR** per manufacturer's recommendations, **as directed**.
  - b. Overlap root barrier a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) at joints.
  - c. Do not distort or bend root barrier during construction activities.
  - d. Do not install root barrier surrounding the root ball of tree.

#### I. Planting In Planters

1. Place a layer of drainage gravel at least 4 inches (100 mm) thick in bottom of planter. Cover bottom with filter fabric and wrap filter fabric 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 6 inches (150 mm), **as directed**, up on all sides. Duct tape along the entire top edge of the filter fabric, to secure the filter fabric against the sides during the soil-filling process.
2. Fill planter with lightweight on-structure planting soil. Place soil in lightly compacted layers to an elevation of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) below top of planter, allowing natural settlement.

#### J. Ground Cover And Plant Planting

1. Set out and space ground cover and plants other than trees, shrubs, and vines 9 inches (225 mm) apart **OR** 12 inches (300 mm) apart **OR** 18 inches (450 mm) apart **OR** 24 inches (600 mm) apart **OR** as indicated, **as directed**, in even rows with triangular spacing.
2. Use planting soil for backfill.
3. Dig holes large enough to allow spreading of roots.
4. For rooted cutting plants supplied in flats, plant each in a manner that will minimally disturb the root system but to a depth not less than two nodes.
5. Work soil around roots to eliminate air pockets and leave a slight saucer indentation around plants to hold water.
6. Water thoroughly after planting, taking care not to cover plant crowns with wet soil.
7. Protect plants from hot sun and wind; remove protection if plants show evidence of recovery from transplanting shock.

#### K. Planting Area Mulching

1. Install weed-control barriers before mulching according to manufacturer's written instructions. Completely cover area to be mulched, overlapping edges a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) **OR** 12 inches (300mm), **as directed**, and secure seams with galvanized pins.
2. Mulch backfilled surfaces of planting areas and other areas indicated.
  - a. Trees and Tree-like Shrubs in Turf Areas: Apply organic **OR** mineral, **as directed**, mulch ring of 2-inch (50-mm) **OR** 3-inch (75-mm), **as directed**, average thickness, with 12-inch (300-mm) **OR** 24-inch (600-mm) **OR** 36-inch (900-mm), **as directed**, radius around trunks or stems. Do not place mulch within 3 inches (75 mm) **OR** 6 inches (150 mm), **as directed**, of trunks or stems.
  - b. Organic Mulch in Planting Areas: Apply 2-inch (50-mm) **OR** 3-inch (75-mm), **as directed**, average thickness of organic mulch extending 12 inches (300 mm) beyond edge of individual planting pit or trench and over whole surface of planting area, and finish level with adjacent finish grades. Do not place mulch within 3 inches (75 mm) **OR** 6 inches (150 mm), **as directed**, of trunks or stems.
  - c. Mineral Mulch in Planting Areas: Apply 2-inch (50-mm) **OR** 3-inch (75-mm), **as directed**, average thickness of mineral mulch extending 12 inches (300 mm) beyond edge of individual planting pit or trench and over whole surface of planting area, and finish level



with adjacent finish grades. Do not place mulch within 3 inches (75 mm) **OR** 6 inches (150 mm), **as directed**, of trunks or stems.

L. Edging Installation

1. Wood Edging: Install edging where indicated. Mitre cut joints and connections at a 45 degree angle. Fasten each cut joint or connection with two galvanized nails. Anchor with wood stakes spaced up to 36 inches (900 mm) apart, driven at least 1 inch (25 mm) below top elevation of edging. Use two galvanized nails per stake to fasten edging, of length as needed to penetrate both edging and stake and provide 1/2-inch (13-mm) clinch at point. Pre-drill stakes if needed to avoid splitting. Replace stakes that crack or split during installation process.
2. Steel Edging: Install steel edging where indicated according to manufacturer's written instructions. Anchor with steel stakes spaced approximately 30 inches (760 mm) apart, driven below top elevation of edging.
3. Aluminum Edging: Install aluminum edging where indicated according to manufacturer's written instructions. Anchor with aluminum stakes spaced approximately 36 inches (900 mm) **OR** 48 inches (1200 mm), **as directed**, apart, driven below top elevation of edging.
4. Plastic Edging: Install plastic edging where indicated according to manufacturer's written instructions. Anchor with steel stakes spaced approximately 36 inches (900 mm) **OR** 48 inches (1200 mm), **as directed**, apart, driven through upper base grooves or V-lip of edging.
5. Shovel-Cut Edging: Separate mulched areas from turf areas, curbs, and paving with a 45-degree, 4- to 6-inch- (100- to 150-mm-) deep, shovel-cut edge as shown on Drawings.

M. Tree Grate Installation

1. Tree Grates: Set grate segments flush with adjoining surfaces as shown on Drawings. Shim from supporting substrate with soil-resistant plastic. Maintain a 3-inch- (75-mm-) minimum growth radius around base of tree; break away units of casting, if necessary, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

N. Plant Maintenance

1. Maintain plantings by pruning, cultivating, watering, weeding, fertilizing, mulching, restoring planting saucers, adjusting and repairing tree-stabilization devices, resetting to proper grades or vertical position, and performing other operations as required to establish healthy, viable plantings. Spray or treat as required to keep trees and shrubs free of insects and disease.
2. Fill in as necessary soil subsidence that may occur because of settling or other processes. Replace mulch materials damaged or lost in areas of subsidence.
3. Apply treatments as required to keep plant materials, planted areas, and soils free of pests and pathogens or disease. Use integrated pest management practices whenever possible to minimize the use of pesticides and reduce hazards. Treatments include physical controls such as hosing off foliage, mechanical controls such as traps, and biological control agents.

O. Pesticide Application

1. Apply pesticides and other chemical products and biological control agents in accordance with authorities having jurisdiction and manufacturer's written recommendations. Coordinate applications with the Owner's operations and others in proximity to the Work. Notify the Owner before each application is performed.
2. Pre-Emergent Herbicides (Selective and Non-Selective): Apply to tree, shrub, and ground-cover areas in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations. Do not apply to seeded areas.
3. Post-Emergent Herbicides (Selective and Non-Selective): Apply only as necessary to treat already-germinated weeds and in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations.

P. Cleanup And Protection

1. During planting, keep adjacent paving and construction clean and work area in an orderly condition.



2. Protect plants from damage due to landscape operations and operations of other contractors and trades. Maintain protection during installation and maintenance periods. Treat, repair, or replace damaged plantings.
  3. After installation and before Final Completion, remove nursery tags, nursery stakes, tie tape, labels, wire, burlap, and other debris from plant material, planting areas, and Project site.
- Q. Disposal
1. Remove surplus soil and waste material including excess subsoil, unsuitable soil, trash, and debris and legally dispose of them off the Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 32 14 09 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



**SECTION 32 14 11 00 - ASPHALT CONCRETE SIDEWALKS**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of asphalt concrete sidewalks. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

## A. Asphaltic Concrete:

1. Hot-Mixed, Hot-Laid Bituminous Paving Mixtures: ASTM D 3515.
2. Plant-Mixed, Stockpiled Asphalt Cold Mixes: Asphalt Institute Manual MS-14.

## B. Bituminous Prime: ASTM D 2027, Grades MC-30 or MC-70; ASTM D 2028, Grade RC-70; or ASTM D 2026, Grade SC-70.

## C. Base Course: ASTM D 2940.

## D. Bituminous Tack Coat: ASTM D 977, Grades RS-1, MS-1 or SS-1h; ASTM D 2027, Grade MC-30; ASTM D 2028, Grade RC-70; ASTM D 2026, Grade SC-70; or ASTM D 2397, Grades CRS-1 or CSS-1.

## E. Seal Coat: ASTM D 2027, Grade HC-250 or MC-800; or D 2028, Grade RC-250 or RC-800.

## F. Slurry Coat Mixture shall be comprised of 70 percent sand or fine aggregate, 10 percent water, and 20 percent liquid or emulsified asphalt.

1. Fine Aggregate: ASTM D 1073, Grade 2.
2. Emulsified Asphalt: ASTM D 977, Grades SS-1 or SS-1h.

## 1.3 EXECUTION

## A. Application Temperatures: Application temperatures for all asphalt materials shall comply with provisions of the Asphalt Institute publications and the applicable ASTM standards.

## B. Subgrade: Construct the subgrade for walkway replacement true to grade and compact as required.

## C. Base Course

1. Placing: Spread the base course material evenly upon the prepared subgrade, in a layer of such depth that when compacted the layer will be uniform and of the thickness required.
2. Compaction: Immediately following the spreading of the material, compact the base course with equipment to a density as required.

## D. Surface Course

1. Placing: Apply prime coat, and allow it to cure. The placing of the mixture shall be continuous. Paint all contact surfaces of previously constructed sidewalk with a tack coat of rapid-setting liquid asphalt just before the fresh mixture is placed.



2. Forms: Set forms with the upper edge true to line and hold grade rigidly in place by stakes placed on the outside of the forms and set flush with the top edge of the forms.
3. Compaction: Immediately following the placement of the asphalt concrete mixture, compact the surface course with equipment to a density as required.
4. Backfilling: After removing the forms and debris, backfill the exposed or excavated area adjoining the sidewalk with granular material, grade, and compact to conform to the surrounding area.

E. Patching

1. For Repair Operations Involving Raveling, Heaving, Spalling, and Alligating: Cut asphalt concrete paving back to solid material, making cut area rectangular with vertical sides. Remove deteriorated pavement including base material if required. Replace base course, compact, and tack coat the base material and the vertical surfaces of cut area. Fill area with new asphalt concrete and compact level with existing walkway. Dust patched area with sand or mineral dust.
2. Pothole Repair: Cut rectangular hole around pothole back to solid pavement leaving straight, vertical edges. Remove loose material and water to firm base. Fill holes and compact to within 3 inches of the surface in layers not exceeding 6 inches with either base material or asphalt mixture. Apply tack coat to base material and vertical edges. On the surface layer, fill with asphalt mixture and mound to such height that when compacted the mix will be level with surrounding walkway surface. Dust patched area with sand or mineral dust.
3. Low Spot or Depression Repair: Determine limits of depression with straightedge, and mark outline with crayon. Apply tack coat, 0.05 to 0.15 gallon per square yard, to the cleaned area, and allow to cure. Spread area with asphalt concrete mix and feather edge by raking and manipulation of the material. Roll and compact area to surrounding walkway level. Recheck with straightedge. Apply a sand seal to the patched area to prevent entrance of water.
4. Polished Aggregate Repair: Clean and dry area thoroughly. Apply tack coat at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gallon per square yard; overlay area with new asphalt concrete mix to a minimum 1-1/2 inch thickness and feather to adjoining walkway surfaces. Roll with pneumatic or steel rollers.
5. Damaged Edging Repair: Remove damaged or deteriorated edging materials and replace.
6. Prime Coat: Prime new base course with MC-70 liquid asphalt at a rate of 0.20 to 0.30 gallon per square yard. Take care to apply to more asphalt than will penetrate into the base course during curing. Blot excess prime with sand before the surfacing material is applied.
7. Tack Coat: Surfaces and cut edges of existing asphalt concrete shall be given a tack coat of MC-70 liquid asphalt at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gallon per square yard. After application of the tack coat, allow time for the material to cure before surfacing and patching material is placed.
8. Seal Coat Spray Application: Walkway surfaces that are to be sealed shall receive a liquid asphalt coat applied at a rate of 0.15 to 0.20 gallon per square yard, along with a fine aggregate at a rate of 15 to 20 pounds per square yard.

- F. Crack Repair: Fill cracks after drying with liquid asphalt, sand asphalt emulsion water mixture, or slurry seal. After thorough cleaning, work the mixture into cracks by broom or squeegee. Cracks 1/8 to 1/2 inch width shall be slurry sealed and filled with liquid asphalt. Dust repaired cracks with fine aggregate or mineral dust to prevent cracking. Final thickness of the slurry seal shall be 1/8 inch minimum.

END OF SECTION 32 14 11 00

**SECTION 32 14 11 00a - MISCELLANEOUS SIDEWALKS**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of miscellaneous sidewalks. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

## A. Aggregate shall comply with the following:

1. Surface Course Aggregates shall be well-graded, crushed stone, 3/4- to 1-1/4 inch size, consisting of clean, sound, durable particles.
2. Masonry Grout Aggregate: ASTM C 404, Size 2.

## B. Base Course: Base course material shall be a granular dense-graded, high-quality compactable material.

## C. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Ready-mixed concrete shall comply with ASTM C 94. The concrete shall attain a minimum compressive strength of 3,000 psi at 28 days.

## D. Portland Cement Concrete: Cement shall comply with ASTM C 150.

## E. Joint Filler: Masonry joint filler shall be Portland cement concrete mix with cement complying with ASTM C 150.

## F. Masonry Units: Color and texture shall match the existing as nearly as is practicable.

## G. Wood and Preservatives: Footboards and supports shall be 1-1/2 inch thick Number 1 dense Douglas fir or yellow pine lumber, pressure-treated with chromated copper arsenate (CCA) preservative complying with applicable ASTM Standards. Retention shall be a minimum of 0.25 pounds per cubic foot.

## 1.3 EXECUTION

## A. Base Course Repair: Remove material in soft spots to such depth required to provide a firm foundation for surface materials and fill with granular material of a quality that will compact when moistened. Roll or tamp this material to obtain the proper density.

## B. Surface Repair

1. Aggregate Walkways: Spread the surface material evenly on the base course in a layer of such depth that when compacted, the layer will be uniform with a minimum thickness of 4 inches.
2. Joint Filling: Completely remove and clean the joint of all loose joint material, dirt, clay, or other foreign matter. Fill the joint flush with concrete to provide a uniform surface.
3. Wood Walkways: Secure wood members with galvanized nails, screws, bolts, or other approved fasteners to ensure tight joints.



- 
4. Masonry Walkways: New or salvaged masonry units will be placed on a 3/4-inch mortar setting bed with mortar joints matching the existing walkway. Place the setting bed on a fresh 3-inch thick Portland cement concrete slab.

END OF SECTION 32 14 11 00a

**SECTION 32 14 11 00b - PRECAST SIDEWALKS AND PAVERS**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of precast sidewalks and pavers. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
  - a. For stone varieties proposed for use on Project, include data on physical properties specified or required by referenced ASTM standards.
2. Stone Samples: For each color, grade, finish, and variety of stone required.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

- A. Precast Concrete Patio Blocks: ASTM C 936. Natural or colored, minimum 2 inches thick.

## B. Exposed Aggregate or Granite: ASTM C 615 and National Building Granite Quarries Association, Inc.

1. Exposed Limestone: Limestone (Oolitic), ASTM C 568, Category II.
2. Exposed White Tumblestone Aggregate: As required to meet project requirements.

## C. Stone Pavers

1. Bluestone Flagging Paver: Irregular cut, 1 inch thick.
2. White Marble, Crushed Stone: ASTM C 503 and Marble Institute of America (MIA), 3 inches thick.
3. Bluestone, Crushed Stone: 3 inches thick.
4. Natural Cleft Slate: ASTM C 629, 3/4-inch irregular cut, 1/2-inch random rectangular cut, or 1/4-inch random rectangular butted joints.

- D. Granite Blocks: Blocks shall be 3 to 5 inches thick and comply with requirements of ASTM C 615 and National Building Granite Quarries Association, Inc. Sizes shall be 3-1/2 inches square; 4 to 12 inches by 3 to 5 inches; and 6 to 15 inches by 3 to 6 inches.

## E. Mortar and Grout

1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150 and the staining requirements of ASTM C 91.
2. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91, non-staining.
3. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
4. Sand: ASTM C 144.
  - a. White Pointing Mortar: Natural white sand or ground white stone.
  - b. Colored Pointing Mortar: Marble, granite, or sound stone.

## 1.3 EXECUTION

## A. Preparation

1. Clean stone or concrete block with clear water.
2. Ferrous Metal: Apply a heavy coat of bituminous paint on metal surfaces in contact with block.

## B. Installation

1. Expansion Joints: Install continuous strips of preformed joint filler.



2. Clean sub-base and saturate with clean water.
3. Slush Coat: Apply 1/16-in. thick slush coat of cement grout over concrete sub-base about 15 minutes prior to placing setting bed.
4. Setting Bed: Mix one 94-lb. bag of cement to 3 cu. ft. of sand. Use only enough water to produce a moist surface when setting bed is ready for setting of stone. Spread and screed to a uniform thickness.
5. Set stone or concrete block before initial set of cement bed occurs. Wet stone or block thoroughly before setting. Apply a thin layer of neat cement paste 1/32-in. to 1/16-in. thick to setting bed, or bottom of stone or block.
6. Grout joints as soon as possible after initial set of setting bed and tool slightly concave. Use grout mix of one bag Portland cement to 2 cu. ft. sand. Cure grout by maintaining in a moist condition for 7 days. Do not permit traffic on surface during setting of units or for at least 24 hours after final grouting of joints.

END OF SECTION 32 14 11 00b



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
32 14 11 00	03 31 13 00	Cement Concrete Pavement
32 14 11 00	31 25 14 23	Unit Pavers
32 14 13 16	03 31 13 00	Cement Concrete Pavement
32 14 13 19	03 31 13 00	Cement Concrete Pavement
32 14 16 00	03 31 13 00	Cement Concrete Pavement
32 14 16 00	32 14 11 00	Asphalt Concrete Sidewalks
32 14 16 00	32 14 11 00a	Miscellaneous Sidewalks
32 14 16 00	32 14 11 00b	Precast Sidewalks And Pavers
32 14 16 00	31 25 14 23	Unit Pavers



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





## SECTION 32 14 33 00 - POROUS UNIT PAVING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for porous unit paving. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Porous paving consisting of concrete pavers set in aggregate setting beds.
  - b. Edge restraints.
  - c. Cast-in-place concrete edge restraints.
  - d. Precast concrete curbs.
  - e. Granite curbs.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For materials other than aggregates.
2. Sieve Analyses: For aggregate materials, according to ASTM C 136.
3. Samples:
  - a. Full-size units of each type of unit paver indicated.
  - b. Exposed edge restraints.
  - c. Precast concrete curbs.
  - d. Granite curbs.
  - e. Aggregate fill.
4. Material Certificates: For unit pavers. Include statements of material properties indicating compliance with requirements, including compliance with standards. Provide for each type and size of unit.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Store pavers on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied.
2. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination can be avoided.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Concrete Unit Pavers

1. Concrete Grid Pavers: Grid paving units complying with ASTM C 1319, made from normal-weight aggregates.
2. Solid Concrete Pavers for Porous Paving: Solid interlocking paving units of shapes that provide openings between units, complying with ASTM C 936, resistant to freezing and thawing when tested according to ASTM C 67, **as directed**, and made from normal-weight aggregates.
  - a. Thickness: 2-3/8 inches (60 mm) **OR** 3-1/8 inches (80 mm) **OR** 3-1/2 inches (90 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**.
  - b. Face Size and Shape: As indicated.
  - c. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.



## B. Accessories

1. Plastic Edge Restraints: Triangular PVC extrusions, 1-3/4 inches (45 mm) high by 3-1/2 inches (90mm) wide **OR** 3-1/8 inches (80 mm) high by 9-1/2 inches (240 mm) wide, **as directed**, designed to serve as edge restraints for unit pavers; rigid type for straight edges and flexible type for curved edges, with pipe connectors and 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) diameter by 12-inch- (300-mm-) long steel spikes.
2. Steel Edge Restraints: Painted steel edging, 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) thick by 4 inches (100 mm) high **OR** 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) thick by 5 inches (125 mm) high, **as directed**, with loops pressed from or welded to face to receive stakes at 36 inches (900 mm) o.c., and with steel stakes 15 inches (380 mm) long for each loop.
  - a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
3. Aluminum Edge Restraints: Straight, 1/8-inch- (3.2-mm-) thick by 4-inch- (100-mm-) high **OR** Straight, 3/16-inch- (4.8-mm-) thick by 4-inch- (100-mm-) high **OR** L-shaped, 1/8-inch- (3.2-mm-) thick by 1-3/8-inch- (35-mm-) high **OR** L-shaped, 3/16-inch- (4.8-mm-) thick by 2-1/4-inch- (57-mm-) high, **as directed**, extruded-aluminum edging, with loops pressed from face to receive stakes at 12 inches (300 mm) o.c., and with aluminum stakes 12 inches (300 mm) long for each loop.
4. Precast Concrete Curbs: Made from normal-weight concrete with a compressive strength not less than 5000 psi (35 MPa) **OR** 6000 psi (41 MPa), **as directed**, and water absorption not more than 5 percent, in shapes and sizes indicated.
  - a. Color and Texture: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
5. Granite Curbs: Granite curbing, with face battered 1 inch per foot (1:12), produced in random lengths not less than 36 inches (900 mm) from granite complying with ASTM C 615.
  - a. Granite Color and Grain: Light gray **OR** Dark gray **OR** Buff **OR** White **OR** Black **OR** Pink, **as directed**, with fine **OR** medium **OR** coarse, **as directed**, grain.
  - b. Top Width: 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 5 inches (125 mm) **OR** 6 inches (150 mm), **as directed**.
  - c. Face Height: 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 6 inches (150 mm) **OR** 8 inches (200 mm), **as directed**.
  - d. Total Height: 12 inches (300 mm) **OR** 16 inches (400 mm) **OR** 18 inches (450 mm), **as directed**.
  - e. Top Finish: Sawed **OR** Thermal **OR** Bushhammered, **as directed**.
  - f. Face Finish: Split **OR** Sawed **OR** Thermal **OR** Bushhammered, **as directed**.

## C. Aggregate Setting-Bed Materials

1. Graded Aggregate for Subbase: Sound crushed stone or gravel complying with ASTM D 448 for Size No. 57 **OR** ASTM D 448 for Size No. 5 **OR** ASTM D 2940, subbase material **OR** requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for subbase material, **as directed**.
2. Graded Aggregate for Base Course: Sound crushed stone or gravel complying with ASTM D 448 for Size No. 8 **OR** ASTM D 448 for Size No. 57 **OR** ASTM D 2940, base-course material **OR** requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for base-course material, **as directed**.
3. Sand for Leveling Course: Sound, sharp, washed, natural sand or crushed stone complying with gradation requirements in ASTM C 33 for fine aggregate.
4. Soil Mix for Leveling Course: Sound, sharp, washed, natural sand or crushed stone complying with gradation requirements in ASTM C 33 for fine aggregate blended with planting soil mix complying with requirements in Division 32 Section(s) "Turf And Grasses" **OR** "Plants", **as directed**. Use blend consisting of 1/2 sand and 1/2 soil mix **OR** 2/3 sand and 1/3 soil mix, **as directed**.
5. Graded Aggregate for Leveling Course: Sound crushed stone or gravel complying with ASTM D 448 for Size No. 8 **OR** 9, **as directed**.
6. Soil for Porous Paver Fill: Planting soil mix complying with requirements in Division 32 Section(s) "Turf And Grasses" **OR** "Plants", **as directed**.



7. Graded Aggregate for Porous Paver Fill: Sound crushed stone or gravel complying with ASTM D 448 for Size No. 8 **OR** 9, **as directed**.
  - a. Provide stone of color indicated **OR** to match the Owner's sample, **as directed**.
8. Grass Seed: Comply with requirements in Division 32 Section "Turf And Grasses".
9. Separation Geotextile: Woven geotextile fabric, manufactured for separation applications; made from polyolefins or polyesters, with elongation less than 50 percent; complying with AASHTO M 288 and the following, measured per test methods referenced:
  - a. Survivability: Class 2; AASHTO M 288.
  - b. Apparent Opening Size: No. 60 (0.250-mm) sieve, maximum; ASTM D 4751.
  - c. Permittivity: 0.02 per second, minimum; ASTM D 4491.
  - d. UV Stability: 50 percent after 500 hours' exposure; ASTM D 4355.
10. Drainage Geotextile: Nonwoven needle-punched geotextile, manufactured for subsurface drainage applications, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation greater than 50 percent; complying with AASHTO M 288 and the following, measured per test methods referenced:
  - a. Survivability: Class 2; AASHTO M 288.
  - b. Apparent Opening Size: No. 40 (0.425-mm) sieve, maximum; ASTM D 4751.
  - c. Permittivity: 0.5 per second, minimum; ASTM D 4491.
  - d. UV Stability: 50 percent after 500 hours' exposure; ASTM D 4355.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Preparation

1. Proof-roll prepared subgrade according to requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Proceed with porous paver installation only after deficient subgrades have been corrected and are ready to receive subbase and base **OR** base, **as directed**, course for porous paving.

#### B. Installation, General

1. Do not use unit pavers with chips, cracks, voids, discolorations, and other defects that might be structurally unsound or visible in finished work.
2. Cut unit pavers with motor-driven masonry saw equipment or a block splitter, **as directed**, to provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Cut units to provide pattern indicated and to fit adjoining work neatly. Use full units without cutting where possible. Hammer cutting is not acceptable.
3. Tolerances:
  - a. Variation in Plane between Adjacent Units (Lipping): Do not exceed 1/16-inch (1.5-mm) unit-to-unit offset from flush.
  - b. Variation from Level or Indicated Slope: Do not exceed 1/8 inch in 24 inches (3 mm in 600 mm) and 1/4 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in 3 m) or a maximum of 1/2 inch (13 mm).
4. Provide edge restraints as indicated. Install edge restraints before placing unit pavers.
  - a. Install edge restraints to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install stakes at intervals required to hold edge restraints in place during and after porous paver installation.
  - b. For metal edge restraints with top edge exposed, drive stakes at least 1 inch (25 mm) below top edge.
  - c. Install job-built concrete edge restraints to comply with requirements in Division 32 Section "Concrete Paving".
5. Provide curbs as indicated. Install curbs before placing unit pavers.
  - a. Install precast concrete **OR** granite, **as directed**, curbs on a bedding of compacted base-course material over compacted subgrade. Install curbs before placing base course for pavers. Set curbs at elevations indicated, accurately aligned, and place and compact base-course material behind curbs as indicated.
  - b. Install precast concrete curbs on aggregate base course after placing and compacting base course for pavers. Set curbs with top edge 1 inch (25 mm) below top of pavers. Anchor curbs with metal stakes driven through holes in curbs into base-course material.



- c. Install precast concrete curbs on aggregate-base course after placing and compacting base course for pavers. Set curbs with top surface 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, above top of pavers. Anchor curbs with metal stakes driven behind curbs into base-course material.

#### C. Setting-Bed Installation

1. Compact soil subgrade uniformly to at least 95 percent of ASTM D 698 **OR** ASTM D 1557, **as directed**, laboratory density.
2. Proof-roll prepared subgrade to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by the Owner, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.
3. Place separation **OR** drainage, **as directed**, geotextile over prepared subgrade, overlapping ends and edges at least 12 inches (300 mm).
4. For light-traffic uses, place aggregate subbase **OR** subbase and base, **as directed**, compact by tamping with plate vibrator, and screed to depth indicated.
5. For heavy-duty applications, place aggregate subbase **OR** subbase and base, **as directed**, compact to 100 percent of ASTM D 1557 maximum laboratory density, and screed to depth indicated.
6. Place drainage geotextile over compacted subbase, overlapping ends and edges at least 12 inches (300 mm).
7. Place drainage geotextile over compacted base course, overlapping ends and edges at least 12 inches (300 mm).
8. Place leveling course and screed to a thickness of 1 to 1-1/2 inches (25 to 38 mm) **OR** 2 to 2-1/2 inches (50 to 64 mm) **OR** 3 inches (76 mm), **as directed**, taking care that moisture content remains constant and density is loose and constant until pavers are set and compacted.

#### D. Paver Installation

1. Set unit pavers on leveling course, being careful not to disturb leveling base. If pavers have lugs or spacer bars to control spacing, place pavers hand tight against lugs or spacer bars. If pavers do not have lugs or spacer bars, place pavers with a 1/16-inch- (1.6-mm-) minimum and 1/8-inch- (3.2-mm-) maximum joint width. Use string lines to keep straight lines. Fill gaps between units that exceed 3/8 inch (10 mm) with pieces cut to fit from full-size pavers.
  - a. When installation is performed with mechanical equipment, use only unit pavers with lugs or spacer bars on sides of each unit.
2. Compact pavers into leveling course with a low-amplitude plate vibrator capable of a 3500- to 5000-lbf (16- to 22-kN) compaction force at 80 to 90 Hz. Use vibrator with neoprene mat on face of plate or other means as needed to prevent cracking and chipping of pavers. Perform at least three passes across paving with vibrator.
  - a. Compact pavers when there is sufficient surface to accommodate operation of vibrator, leaving at least 36 inches (900 mm) of uncompacted pavers adjacent to temporary edges.
  - b. Before ending each day's work, compact installed concrete pavers except for 36-inch (900 mm) width of uncompacted pavers adjacent to temporary edges (laying faces).
  - c. As work progresses to perimeter of installation, compact installed pavers that are adjacent to permanent edges unless they are within 36 inches (90 mm) of laying face.
  - d. Before ending each day's work and when rain interrupts work, cover pavers that have not been compacted and leveling course on which pavers have not been placed with nonstaining plastic sheets to protect them from rain.
3. Place soil fill as follows, immediately after vibrating pavers into leveling course. Spread and screed soil fill level with tops of pavers. Vibrate pavers and add soil fill until porous paving is filled to about 3/4 inch (19 mm) from top surface; remove excess soil fill if any.
  - a. Before ending each day's work, place soil fill in installed porous paving except for 42-inch (1067-mm) width of unfilled paving adjacent to temporary edges (laying faces).
  - b. As work progresses to perimeter of installation, place soil fill in installed paving that is adjacent to permanent edges unless it is within 42 inches (1067 mm) of laying face.



- c. Before ending each day's work and when rain interrupts work, cover paving that has not been filled with nonstaining plastic sheets to protect it from rain.
  4. After filling pavers with soil, sow seed to comply with requirements in Division 32 Section "Turf And Grasses". except sow seed at half the rate specified for seeding lawns. Sweep seed from surfaces of pavers into voids and water with fine spray.
    - a. Within 24 hours after sowing seed, spread an additional 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) of soil fill over seed and soak with water.
  5. Place graded aggregate fill immediately after vibrating pavers into leveling course. Spread and screed aggregate fill level with tops of pavers.
    - a. Before ending each day's work, place aggregate fill in installed porous paving except for 42-inch (1067-mm) width of unfilled paving adjacent to temporary edges (laying faces).
    - b. As work progresses to perimeter of installation, place aggregate fill in installed paving that is adjacent to permanent edges unless it is within 42 inches (1067 mm) of laying face.
    - c. Before ending each day's work and when rain interrupts work, cover paving that has not been filled with nonstaining plastic sheets to protect it from rain.
  6. Remove and replace pavers that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Provide new units to match adjoining units and install in same manner as original units, with same joint treatment and with no evidence of replacement.
- E. Maintenance And Protection
  1. Water newly planted grass and keep moist until grass is established. Maintain grass that is planted in paving to comply with requirements in Division 32 Section "Turf And Grasses".
  2. Erect barricades and warning signs as required to protect newly planted areas from traffic. Maintain barricades for 60 days after planting.

END OF SECTION 32 14 33 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 32 14 33 00a - VITRIFIED BRICK PAVEMENT REPLACEMENT**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. General

1. Limits of Brick Pavement Replacement shall be as per the detail entitled "Payment Limits for Surface Restoration" shown in the plans, plus one foot on each side. Alternate individual bricks may have to be removed in order to maintain staggered joint pattern along the edge of the undisturbed brick pavement.

## 1.2 PRODUCT

## A. Preparation

1. Base shall be provided and shaped to match level, kind and thickness (4" min.) of adjoining base. The base material shall be compacted to meet the density standards. 4" 2500 PSI concrete base may be used for irregular patches and where compaction is otherwise impractical. Concrete shall be properly placed, consolidated and cured. One inch of sand, or good grade dirt, free from clay, loam or other foreign matter shall be used for cushion to hold the bricks in place. The sand shall be shaped to a true surface parallel to required finished pavement surface.

## B. Materials

1. Existing bricks shall be cleaned, stored, and secured by the Contractor.

## 1.3 EXECUTION

## A. Reinstallation of Bricks

1. The bricks shall be installed in rows, better face upward, sorted by size with joints staggered, then rolled daily with a static tandem wheel roller. Additional bricks, if required, will be supplied by the Owner. City Personnel shall inspect work daily. After inspection, the bricks shall be sprayed with a solution of lime and water, using 26 lbs. of lime to 55 gallons of water. Asphalt steep 7330 or equal shall be used for joint filler. The steep shall be heated until fluid and poured over bricks and removed when cool with square pointed shovels dipped in lime water. Removed asphalt may be reused. If adjoining bricks are grouted, new filler shall be grout (8:1, builders sand: cement).

## B. Acceptance

1. Upon completion of the work, and before acceptance and final payment, the Contractor shall remove all false work, equipment, rubbish, surplus, and discarded materials. The Contractor shall restore in an acceptable manner all property, both public and private, damaged during the prosecution of the work. The Contractor shall leave the roadway in a neat and presentable condition each day.

END OF SECTION 32 14 33 00a



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
32 14 40 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
32 14 40 00	03 31 13 00	Cement Concrete Pavement
32 15 40 00	32 11 16 16	Crushed Stone Paving
32 15 40 00	32 11 16 16a	Crushed Stone
32 15 40 00	32 11 16 16b	Select Gravel



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 32 16 13 13 - STEEL CURBS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of steel curbs. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

- #### A. Standard Steel Curb Sections: Noncorrosive steel sections as required to match existing.

- #### B. Coating: Steel curb sections shall be zinc coated.

#### C. Joint Materials

1. Expansion Joint Fillers: ASTM D 1751 or ASTM D 1752.
2. Joint Sealers: ASTM D 1850.

- #### D. Concrete: Concrete shall have a minimum compressive strength of 3,000 psi. The maximum size of aggregate shall be 1-1/2 inches. Concrete shall have a slump of not more than 3 inches and an air content by volume of concrete of 3 to 6 percent.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- #### A. Preparation: The subgrade shall be constructed to grade and cross section. The subgrade shall be of materials equal in bearing quality to the subgrade under the adjacent pavement and shall be compacted. The subgrade shall be maintained in a smooth, compacted condition, in conformity with the required section and established grade until the concrete is placed. The subgrade shall be in a moist condition when concrete is placed.

#### B. Installation

1. Steel Curb Setting: Steel curbs shall be carefully set to alignment and grade and to conform to the dimensions of the curb.
2. Concrete Placement And Finishing: Concrete shall be placed in layers not to exceed 6 inches. Concrete shall be thoroughly consolidated. Floated surfaces shall then be brushed with longitudinal strokes. The top surface of the entrance shall be finished to grade with a wood float. Expansion joints and contraction joints shall be constructed at right angles to the line of curb. Contraction joints shall be constructed by means of 1/8-inch thick separators, of a section conforming to the cross section of the curb and gutter. Contraction joints shall match joints in abutting Portland cement concrete pavement. At other pavements, construction joints shall be placed at not less than 5 feet nor greater than 15 feet apart. Expansion joints shall be formed by means of preformed expansion joint filler material cut and shaped to the cross section of curb. Expansion joints shall be provided in curb at the end of all returns. Expansion joints shall match expansion joints of abutting Portland cement concrete pavement. At other pavements, expansion joints at least 1/2 inch in width shall be provided at intervals not exceeding 45 feet. Exposed concrete surfaces shall be cured for not less than 7 days.



- 
3. Backfilling: After curing, debris shall be removed and the area adjoining the concrete shall be backfilled, graded, and compacted.
  4. Sealing Joints: Expansion joints and the top 1-inch depth of contraction joints shall be sealed with joint sealer. The joint opening shall be thoroughly cleaned before the sealing material is placed. Excess material on exposed surfaces of the concrete shall be removed immediately and exposed concrete surfaces cleaned.

END OF SECTION 32 16 13 13



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
32 16 13 13	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
32 16 13 13	03 31 13 00	Cement Concrete Pavement
32 16 13 14	03 31 13 00	Cement Concrete Pavement
32 16 13 14	32 16 13 13	Steel Curbs
32 16 13 16	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
32 16 13 16	03 31 13 00	Cement Concrete Pavement
32 16 13 16	32 16 13 13	Steel Curbs
32 16 13 19	03 31 13 00	Cement Concrete Pavement
32 16 13 19	32 14 11 00	Asphalt Concrete Sidewalks
32 16 13 19	32 14 11 00a	Miscellaneous Sidewalks
32 16 13 19	32 14 11 00b	Precast Sidewalks And Pavers
32 16 13 19	31 25 14 23	Unit Pavers
32 16 13 23	03 31 13 00	Cement Concrete Pavement
32 16 13 23	32 16 13 13	Steel Curbs
32 16 13 33	03 31 13 00	Cement Concrete Pavement
32 16 13 33	32 16 13 13	Steel Curbs
32 16 13 43	32 14 33 00	Porous Unit Paving
32 16 23 00	03 31 13 00	Cement Concrete Pavement
32 16 23 00	32 14 11 00	Asphalt Concrete Sidewalks
32 16 23 00	32 14 11 00a	Miscellaneous Sidewalks
32 16 23 00	32 14 11 00b	Precast Sidewalks And Pavers
32 16 23 00	31 25 14 23	Unit Pavers
32 16 43 00	32 01 11 53	Asphalt Paving



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 32 17 13 23 - PARKING CONTROL EQUIPMENT

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for parking control equipment. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Automatic barrier gates.
  - b. Vehicle detectors.
  - c. Traffic controllers.
  - d. Entry terminal ticket dispensers.
  - e. Exit terminals.
  - f. Pay stations.
  - g. Fee computers.
  - h. Parking facility management software.
  - i. Access control units.

#### C. System Description

1. Parking Control System: Intended to be used for the following types of parking management:
  - a. Transient Parking: Hourly rated parking, with fee paid while entering **OR** exiting, **as directed**.
  - b. Monthly Parking: Monthly rated parking, with fee paid by the month and access gained by access control card.
  - c. Flat-Rate Parking: Unlimited-duration parking, with free gate entry and fixed-fee amount paid while exiting.
  - d. Special-Event Parking: Duration-of-event parking, with fee paid while entering with gates up or down.
  - e. Limited Date(s) and Time(s) Parking: Limited-duration parking, with predetermined fee access control card.
  - f. Merchant Validated Parking: Fee set, reduced, or waived by merchant validation, with free gate entry and fee paid while exiting.
  - g. Valet Parking: Assisted parking, with fee paid while entering or exiting.
  - h. Hotel Guest Parking: Unlimited access for duration of stay, with access gained by access control card.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: For parking control equipment. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - a. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - b. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Field quality-control reports.
4. Operation and Maintenance Data: For parking control equipment to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
5. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:
  - a. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
  - b. Program Software Backup: On magnetic media or compact disk, complete with data files.
  - c. Device address list.



d. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

E. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

F. Software Service Agreement

1. Technical Support: Beginning with Final Completion, provide software support for two, **as directed**, years.
2. Upgrade Service: Update software to latest version at Project completion. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system. Upgrade shall include new or revised licenses for use of software.
  - a. Provide 30, **as directed**, days' notice to the Owner to allow scheduling and access to system and to allow the Owner to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials

1. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated, and as follows:
  - a. Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M).
  - b. Extruded Shapes: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M).
2. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
3. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, commercial quality, with G60 (Z180) coating designation; mill phosphatized.
4. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304.
5. Anchorages: Anchor bolts, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M and ASTM F 2329.

B. Automatic Barrier Gates

1. General: Provide UL-approved parking control device consisting of operator and controller housed in a weathertight, tamper-resistant cabinet enclosure with gate arm. Device shall be activated by a signal from access or revenue control device. Fabricate unit with gate-arm height in down position of not more than 35 inches (889 mm) above pavement to prevent even small vehicles from passing under gate arm.
2. Standard: Provide barrier gates and gate operators that are listed and labeled according to UL 325 by a qualified testing agency. Provide barrier gates that comply with ASTM F 2200, **as directed**.
3. Controller: Factory-sealed, solid-state, plug-in type, with galvanized-steel box for wiring connections.
  - a. Type: Noncommunicating.
    - 1) Capable of logic for one- and two-way lanes.
    - 2) Separate momentary contacts for transient patrons, monthly patrons, vehicle entries, and vehicle exits.
  - b. Type: Communicating.
    - 1) Real-time communication of lane counts, status messages, and execute commands.
    - 2) Monitor illegal entries and exits, tailgates, tickets, monthlies, and backouts.
    - 3) Status messages for gate up too long, backouts, ticket in chute, and gate-arm rebound.





- 4) Communication commands for resetting loops, turning "Full" signs on/off, raising and lowering gate arm, and disabling ticket dispensers **OR** card readers, **as directed**.
- c. Features: Equip unit with the following:
  - 1) Able to store successive inputs and sequentially processing each one.
  - 2) Automatic instant-reversing obstacle detector mechanism that stops downward motion of gate arm if arm contacts or nears an object and that immediately returns arm to upward position. Include a 0- to 60-second, variable-time reset device.
  - 3) On-off power supply switch.
  - 4) Automatic-manual switch.
  - 5) Differential counter.
  - 6) Directional arming logic.
  - 7) RS-422 communication port.
  - 8) Broken gate-arm monitoring.
  - 9) Programmable automatic, **as directed**, timer.
  - 10) Internal resettable **OR** non-resettable, **as directed**, counters.
  - 11) Thermal-overload protection with manual reset.
  - 12) Plug-in connectors for two **OR** three, **as directed**, vehicle loop detectors.
  - 13) Thermostatically controlled heater with on/off/auto switch.
  - 14) Diagnostic mode for on-site testing, with LEDs for inputs and outputs, **as directed**.
  - 15) Automatic and continuous testing of inputs and outputs.
  - 16) Switch to test motor and limit switches.
  - 17) Emergency manual disconnect.
  - 18) Battery backup.
  - 19) Single, 115-V ac grounded power receptacle.
  - 20) Reversible arm capability for right- or left-handed operation.
4. Cabinets: Fabricated from metal sheet with seams welded and ground smooth; approximately 15 inches square by 40 inches tall (381 mm square by 1016 mm tall). Provide single, gasketed access door for each cabinet with flush-mounted locks. Furnish two keys for each lock, all locks keyed alike, **as directed**. Fabricate cabinet with internal reinforcing and four mounting holes accessible only from inside cabinet.
  - a. Material: Not less than 0.097-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick, galvanized-, **as directed**, steel sheet or 0.125-inch- (3.2-mm-) thick aluminum sheet.
    - 1) Finish cabinet, interior and exterior, with manufacturer's standard white **OR** yellow, **as directed**, baked-enamel finish over primer.
  - b. Material: Not less than 0.109-inch- (2.8-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet.
    - 1) Finish cabinet exterior with No. 4 finish.  
**OR**  
Finish cabinet, interior and exterior, with manufacturer's standard white **OR** yellow, **as directed**, baked-enamel finish over primer.
5. Straight Gate Arm: 1-by-4-inch nominal- (19-by-89-mm actual-) size pine or redwood **OR** 0.097-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick steel **OR** Fiberglass, PVC, or polycarbonate **OR** Aluminum, **as directed**, with painted finish and black diagonal stripes on traffic-side face. Provide mounting flange with breakaway feature to ensure clean break if arm is struck by vehicle.
  - a. Length: 10 feet (3.0 m) **OR** 12 feet (3.7 m) **OR** As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
6. Folding Gate Arm: Two pieces of 1-by-4-inch nominal- (19-by-89-mm actual-) size pine or redwood joined together with metal side brackets; with painted finish and black diagonal stripes on traffic-side face. Provide mounting flange with breakaway feature to ensure clean break if arm is struck by vehicle.
  - a. Length: 10 feet (3.0 m) **OR** 12 feet (3.7 m) **OR** As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
7. Straight Gate Arm with Counterbalance: 1-by-6-inch nominal- (19-by-140-mm actual-) size pine or redwood with steel counterweights; with painted finish and black diagonal stripes on traffic-side face. Provide mounting flange with breakaway feature to ensure clean break if arm is struck by vehicle.
  - a. Length: 16 feet (4.9 m) **OR** As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
8. Wishbone-Style Gate Arm: 1-by-4-inch nominal- (19-by-89-mm actual-) size pine or redwood **OR** 0.097-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick steel, **as directed**, formed into wishbone configuration, with steel



counterweights; with painted finish and black diagonal stripes on traffic-side face. Provide mounting flange with breakaway feature to ensure clean break if arm is struck by vehicle.

- a. Length: 14 feet (4.3 m) **OR** As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
9. Operator: 1/3 **OR** 1/2, **as directed**, hp; 60-Hz, single-phase, instant-reversing, continuous-duty motor for operating gate arm. Transmit power to gate-arm drive shaft through speed reducer to harmonic-acting crank and connecting rod. Fabricate crank, rod, and drive shaft of galvanized solid bar steel. Provide an operable cam for adjusting arm travel.
  - a. Opening Time: Three **OR** Six, **as directed**, seconds.
  - b. Inherently adjustable torque limiting clutch for safety.
10. Accessories:
  - a. Audible alarm that activates as part of a safety device system.
  - b. Additional obstruction detector; noncontact infrared **OR** photoelectric **OR** radio-frequency barrier, **as directed**.
  - c. Barrier-arm warning safety signs on both sides of unit limiting traffic to vehicular traffic.
  - d. Low-voltage yellow **OR** red, **as directed**, warning lights that illuminate when gate is in down position.
  - e. Low-voltage light on cabinet top that flashes or changes from red to green when barrier gate is operating.
  - f. Manually operated crank for emergency operation.
  - g. Local authorities' emergency access as directed by the Owner.
  - h. Gate-arm tip support with electromagnetic lock, **as directed**.

#### C. Vehicle Detectors

1. Vehicle Loop Detector System: Provide self-tuning electronic presence detector with adjustable detection patterns, adjustable sensitivity and frequency settings, and panel indicator light designed to detect presence or transit of a vehicle over an embedded loop of wire and to emit signal activating gate-arm operator. Include automatic closing timer with adjustable time delay before closing, timer cut-off switch, **as directed**, and vehicle loop detector designed to open and close gate arm **OR** hold gate arm open until traffic clears, **as directed**. Provide number of loops consisting of multiple strands of wire, number of turns, loop size, and method of placement at location shown on Drawings, as recommended in writing by detection system manufacturer for function indicated.
  - a. Field-Assembled Loop: Wire, in size indicated for field assembly, and sealant; style for pave-over **OR** saw-cut, **as directed**, installation.
  - b. Factory-Formed Loop: Wire, preformed in size indicated; style for pave-over **OR** saw-cut, **as directed**, installation.
  - c. System Performance: Capable of the following:
    - 1) Recognize two vehicles within 6 inches (152 mm) of each other on standard-sized loop.
    - 2) Recognize vehicle direction by detecting vehicle moving from one loop to another.
    - 3) Generate reverse count if vehicle backs up after generating directional count in forward direction.
    - 4) Continuous diagnostic monitoring for intermittently operating and failed loops.
    - 5) Crosstalk test between adjacent loops.
2. Active Infrared Vehicle Detector: Provide retroreflective **OR** emitter/receiver, **as directed**,-type presence detector with adjustable detection zone pattern and sensitivity, designed to detect the presence or transit of vehicle in gate-arm pathway by interrupting infrared beam in zone pattern and to emit signal activating gate-arm operator. Include automatic closing timer with adjustable time delay before closing, timer cut-off switch, **as directed**, and vehicle presence detector designed to open and close gate arm **OR** hold gate arm open until traffic clears, **as directed**.

#### D. Traffic Controllers

1. Penetrating Type: Provide directional enforcement system consisting of multiple raised teeth that allow vehicular traffic in one direction and that puncture tires of vehicular traffic in the other direction. Fabricate system from steel plate contained in welded steel frame.



- a. Mounting: Surface **OR** Recessed, **as directed**.
  - b. Operation: Manual, with each tooth controlled by torsion spring **OR** Electromechanical **OR** Hydraulic, **as directed**.
  - c. Latch Down: Allow disarming for two-way traffic flow. Provide one, **as directed**, tool(s) for latch-down operation.
  - d. Illuminated Warning Signs: Single **OR** Double, **as directed**, -faced warning signs consisting of fluorescent lamps with cold-start ballasts contained in welded steel bodies with baked-enamel finish and fiberglass sign faces. Provide base sleeves and posts for post mounting, **as directed**.
    - 1) Sign Copy: "Wrong Way, Stop, Severe Tire Damage" **OR** "Warning, Do Not Back Up, Tire Damage," **as directed**.
2. Nonpenetrating Type: Provide directional enforcement system consisting of spring-activated steel curb that allows traffic in only one direction. Fabricate system from steel plate contained in welded steel frame.
    - a. Mounting: Surface **OR** Recessed, **as directed**.
    - b. Operation: Manual **OR** Electromechanical **OR** Hydraulic, **as directed**.
- E. Entry Terminal Ticket Dispensers
1. General: Provide entry terminal ticket dispensers, consisting of ticket-printing and issuing mechanisms, ticket magazines, thermal printers, and controllers housed in cabinet enclosures.
    - a. Features: Include the following:
      - 1) Time and date display.
      - 2) Time Indicator: 24-hour cycle with A.M. and P.M. **OR** military-time, **as directed**, clock mechanism.
      - 3) Voice annunciation.
      - 4) Tickets: Standard paper **OR** Magnetic-stripe **OR** Barcode, **as directed**, type.
      - 5) Removable ticket tray with capacity of 5000, **as directed**, fan-folded tickets.
      - 6) Operation: Standalone **OR** Online communication to remote computer, **as directed**.
      - 7) Battery backup for clock and RAM memory.
      - 8) RS-422 communication port.
      - 9) Thermostatically controlled heater with on/off/auto switch.
      - 10) Access **OR** Credit, **as directed**, card acceptance with activation slot and "Insert Ticket/Card" message.
      - 11) License plate recognition.
      - 12) Multiple ticket option for valet parking.
      - 13) Intercom.
  2. System Performance: Activation by button with "Push for Ticket" message **OR** vehicle detector **OR** card reader, **as directed**. On activation, unit automatically records entry time and date on ticket, sounds buzzer, **as directed**, and dispenses ticket.
    - a. Automatic ticket validation.
    - b. Program ticket numbering.
    - c. Low-ticket alarm.
    - d. Out-of-ticket alarm.
    - e. Ticket jam detection.
    - f. Print test ticket.
  3. Cabinets: Fabricated from metal sheet with seams welded and ground smooth, approximately 15 inches square by 40 inches tall (381 mm square by 1016 mm tall); consisting of base and top components. Provide single, gasketed access door for each base component with flush-mounted locks. Furnish two keys for each lock, all locks keyed alike, **as directed**. Fabricate cabinet with internal reinforcing and four mounting holes accessible only from inside cabinet. Fabricate top component so it can be unlocked and opened for ticket loading and maintenance. Include flush-mounted lock in rear of top, keyed the same as base component lock.
    - a. Material: Not less than 0.097-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick, galvanized-, **as directed**, steel sheet or 0.125-inch- (3.2-mm-) thick aluminum sheet.
      - 1) Finish cabinet, interior and exterior, with manufacturer's standard white **OR** yellow, **as directed**, baked-enamel finish over primer.



b. Material: Not less than 0.109-inch- (2.8-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet.

1) Finish cabinet exterior with No. 4 finish.

**OR**

Finish cabinet, interior and exterior, with manufacturer's standard white **OR** yellow, **as directed**, baked-enamel finish over primer.

4. Ticket-Dispensing Mechanisms: Removable assembly, with self-sharpening ticket cutter or ticket burster and plug-in controller.

#### F. Exit Terminals

1. General: Provide exit terminals consisting of ticket collectors, magnetic-stripe ticket readers, LCD, **as directed**, displays, thermal printers, and controllers housed in cabinet enclosures. Provide "Please Insert Ticket" sign on side of cabinet visible to driver.

a. Features: Include the following:

1) Operation: Standalone **OR** Online communication to remote computer, **as directed**.

2) Battery backup for clock and RAM memory.

3) Thermostatically controlled heater with on/off/auto switch.

4) RS-422 communication port.

5) Access **OR** Credit, **as directed**, card acceptance with activation slot and "Insert Ticket/Card" message.

6) Intercom.

2. System Performance: Capable of the following:

a. Activated by vehicle detector **OR** card reader, **as directed**.

b. Print receipts on demand.

c. Voice annunciation.

d. Program facility code.

e. Program grace period.

f. Program display.

g. Program timer for closing barrier gate.

h. Reports for events and exception events.

i. Built-in service diagnostics.

3. Operation: Inserting exit ticket into exit ticket reader results in the following actions:

a. Valid Exit Ticket: Exit ticket reader captures ticket and automatically sends signal to raise barrier gate.

b. Invalid Exit Ticket: Exit ticket reader rejects ticket and displays "Pay Cashier First" message.

c. Exit Ticket with Elapsed Grace Time: Exit ticket reader rejects ticket and displays "Return to Cashier" message.

4. Cabinets: Fabricated from metal sheet with seams welded and ground smooth; approximately 15 inches square by 40 inches tall (381 mm square by 1016 mm tall). Provide single, gasketed access door for each cabinet with flush-mounted locks. Furnish two keys for each lock, all locks keyed alike, **as directed**. Fabricate cabinet with internal reinforcing and four mounting holes accessible only from inside cabinet.

a. Material: Not less than 0.097-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick, galvanized-, **as directed**, steel sheet or 0.125-inch- (3.2-mm-) thick aluminum sheet.

1) Finish cabinet, interior and exterior, with manufacturer's standard white **OR** yellow, **as directed**, baked-enamel finish over primer.

b. Material: Not less than 0.109-inch- (2.8-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet.

1) Finish cabinet exterior with No. 4 finish.

**OR**

Finish cabinet, interior and exterior, with manufacturer's standard white **OR** yellow, **as directed**, baked-enamel finish over primer.

#### G. Pay Stations

1. General: Provide self-contained cashiering central **OR** entry **OR** exit, **as directed**, pay stations designed for self-service operation; consisting of magnetic-stripe ticket dispensers and, **as**



**directed**, readers/validators, LCD, **as directed**, displays, fee computers, controllers, **as directed**, and thermal printers housed in a combined enclosure.

- a. Features: Include the following:
  - 1) Operation: Standalone **OR** Online communication to remote computer, **as directed**.
  - 2) Battery backup for clock and RAM memory.
  - 3) Thermostatically controlled heater with on/off/auto switch.
  - 4) Access card acceptance.
  - 5) Intercom.
2. System Performance: Capable of the following:
  - a. Compute multiple parking fees based on entry times on ticket from ticket dispenser.
  - b. Compute multiple taxes by percent and fixed amount.
  - c. Program lost ticket function.
  - d. Display fee.
  - e. Accept payment by cash credit card **OR** debit card **OR** merchant ticket, **as directed**.
  - f. Compute change.
  - g. Print receipts on demand.
  - h. Print validation on ticket.
  - i. Voice annunciation.
  - j. Print audit trail.
  - k. Program six, **as directed**, fee structures.
  - l. Program time.
  - m. Program merchant validations.
  - n. Test mode to verify accuracy of fee structure program.
  - o. Built-in service diagnostics.
  - p. Print cash audit, revenue, operational, and statistical reports on demand.
  - q. Duress alarm output for emergencies.
  - r. Battery backup.
3. Cabinets: Fabricated from cold-rolled steel sheet with seams welded and ground smooth, approximately 36 inches wide by 18 inches deep by 60 inches tall (914 mm wide by 457 mm deep by 1524 mm tall). Provide single, gasketed access door with flush-mounted locks. Furnish two keys for each lock, all locks keyed alike, **as directed**. Fabricate cabinet with internal reinforcing and four mounting holes accessible only from inside cabinet.
  - a. Finish cabinet, interior and exterior, with manufacturer's standard white **OR** yellow, **as directed**, baked-enamel finish over primer.

#### H. Fee Computers

1. Fee Computer System: Provide modular PC-based, **as directed**, system consisting of fee computer terminal, cash drawer, **OR** two cash drawers, **as directed**, standard ticket reader, **OR** magnetic-stripe ticket reader, **OR** barcode ticket reader, **as directed**, and detachable printer. Register permanent record of each transaction in computer's memory.
  - a. Features: Provide the following:
    - 1) Battery backup for clock and RAM memory.
    - 2) RS-422 communication port.
    - 3) Keyed **OR** Keyless-membrane, **as directed**, keypad.
2. System Performance: Capable of the following:
  - a. Compute multiple parking fees based on entry times on ticket from ticket dispenser.
  - b. Compute multiple taxes by percent and fixed amount.
  - c. Program lost ticket function.
  - d. Display fee on remote fee display device.
  - e. Accept payment by cash check **OR** credit card **OR** debit card **OR** merchant ticket, **as directed**.
  - f. Control independent cash drawer.
  - g. Compute change.
  - h. Print receipts.
  - i. Print validation on ticket.
  - j. Print audit trail.



- k. Interface to automatic barrier gate.
  - l. Program six, **as directed**, fee structures.
  - m. Program time.
  - n. Program keys.
  - o. Program special events validations.
  - p. Program automatic activation for limited date(s) and time(s) validations.
  - q. Program merchant validations.
  - r. Program valet parking.
  - s. Program hotel guest parking.
  - t. Three levels of security, including cashier, supervisor, and master.
  - u. Recall last transaction.
  - v. Test mode to verify accuracy of fee structure program.
  - w. Built-in service diagnostics.
  - x. View cash audit, revenue, operational, and statistical reports on screen or print on demand.
  - y. Duress alarm output for emergencies.
  - z. Battery backup.
3. Cash Drawer: Fabricated with a removable tray and drawer, with five compartments for paper currency and five compartments for coins.
  4. Remote Fee Display: Single-faced signs designed for use with fee computer, consisting of 1-inch- (25-mm-) tall, LCD or LED displays contained in welded steel bodies with baked-enamel finish.
    - a. Messages: Amount due, "Thank You," "Closed," and time in A.M./P.M. format.
    - b. Mounting: Front of cashier's booth **OR** 42-inch- (1067-mm-) high pedestal, **as directed**.
- I. Miscellaneous Parking Control Equipment
1. Lot "Full" Signs: Single-faced signs consisting of illumination source contained in welded steel bodies with extended hood and baked-enamel finish. Sign copy shall be 4 inches (102 mm), **as directed**, tall.
    - a. Type: Flashing **OR** Nonflashing, **as directed**.
    - b. Operation: Manual by push button **OR** Automatic by barrier gate controller, **as directed**.
    - c. Illumination: Traffic signal lamps and colored **OR** Neon tube and clear, **as directed**, fiberglass sign face.
    - d. Mounting: Top of barrier gate cabinet **OR** 42-inch- (1067-mm-) high pedestal, **as directed**.
- J. Parking Facility Management Software
1. General: Manufacturer's standard software that is compatible with security access control system and that provides automatic facility monitoring, supervision, and remote control of parking control equipment from one or more locations.
    - a. System Performance: Capable of the following:
      - 1) Collect data for revenue and activity reporting.
      - 2) Collect data for access and space control.
      - 3) Track tickets.
      - 4) Program parking control equipment.
- K. Access Control Units
1. General: Provide access control unit that activates barrier gates.
    - a. Unit Housing: Fabricate from welded cold-rolled steel or aluminum sheet **OR** plastic, **as directed**, with weatherproof front access panel equipped with flush-mounted lock and two keys. Provide face-lighted unit fully visible at night.
      - 1) Steel Finish: Manufacturer's standard baked-enamel coating system.
  2. Card Reader Controlled Unit: Functions only when authorized card is presented.
    - a. System: Magnetically coded, single-code system activated by coded card **OR** Programmable, multiple-code capability permitting validating or voiding of individual cards, **as directed**.
      - 1) Permit four different access time periods.



- b. Reader: Swipe type for magnetic-stripe **OR** barcode **OR** Wiegand, **as directed**, cards.  
**OR**  
Reader: Insertion type for magnetic-stripe **OR** barcode **OR** Wiegand, **as directed**, cards.  
**OR**  
Reader: Proximity type for proximity cards.
  - c. Operation: Standalone **OR** Online communication to remote parking control system computer **OR** Online communication to remote security access control system computer, **as directed**.
  - d. Features: Timed antipassback **OR** Limited-time usage **OR** Capable of monitoring and auditing barrier gate activity **OR** LCD display **OR** Programmable by PDA (personal digital assistant) by infrared interface, **as directed**.
  - e. Mounting: With pedestal **OR** Wall **OR** In enclosed cabinet **OR** As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
  - f. Cards: Provide number as directed by the Owner..
    - 1) Imprint cards: as directed by the Owner.
  - 3. Digital Keypad Controlled Unit: Functions only when authorized code is entered on keyed **OR** keyless-membrane, **as directed**, keypad.
    - a. System: Multiple-code capability of not less than five **OR** 100 **OR** 500, **as directed**, possible individual codes.  
**OR**  
System: Programmable, multiple-code capability permitting validating or voiding of not less than 100 **OR** 2500 **OR** 10,000, **as directed**, possible individual codes, consisting of one to six, **as directed**, digits, and permitting four different access time periods, **as directed**.
    - b. Operation: Standalone **OR** Online communication to remote parking control system computer **OR** Online communication to remote security access control system computer, **as directed**.
    - c. Features: Timed antipassback **OR** Limited-time usage **OR** Capable of monitoring and auditing barrier gate activity, **as directed**.
    - d. Mounting: With pedestal **OR** Wall **OR** As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
  - 4. Radio-Controlled System: Digital access control system consisting of code-compatible universal coaxial receiver, one per barrier gate, **OR**, where indicated on Drawings, **as directed**, remote antenna with coaxial cable and mounting brackets, and one permanently mounted **OR** four portable, **as directed**, transmitter(s) per receiver designed to operate barrier gates. Provide programmable transmitter with multiple-code capability permitting validating or voiding of not less than 1000 **OR** 10,000, **as directed**, codes per channel configured for the following functions:
    - a. Transmitters: Single-button operated, with open **OR** open and close, **as directed**, functions.  
**OR**  
Transmitters: Triple-button operated, with open, close, and stop functions.
      - 1) Provide transmitters featuring two **OR** three **OR** four, **as directed**, independent channel settings controlling separate receivers for operating more than one barrier gate from each transmitter.
- L. Aluminum Finishes
- 1. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
    - a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match sample **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
- M. Steel Finishes
- 1. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with the following:
    - a. ASTM A 123/A 123M for iron and steel parking control equipment.
    - b. ASTM A 153/A 153M and ASTM F 2329 for iron and steel hardware for parking control equipment.



2. Galvanized-Steel and Steel Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
  - a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match sample **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

N. Stainless-Steel Finishes

1. Surface Preparation: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
2. Polished Finishes: Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches.
  - a. Run grain of directional finishes with long dimension of each piece.
  - b. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation

1. Excavation for Traffic Controllers: Saw cut existing pavement for recessed traffic controllers and hand-excavate recesses to dimensions and depths and at locations as required by traffic controller manufacturer's written instructions and as indicated on Drawings.

B. Installation

1. General: Install parking control equipment as required for a complete and integrated installation.
  - a. Rough-in electrical connections according to requirements specified in Division 22..
2. Automatic Barrier Gates: Anchor cabinets to concrete bases with anchor bolts or expansion anchors and mount barrier gate arms.
  - a. Install barrier gates according to UL 325.
3. Vehicle Loop Detectors: Cut grooves in pavement and bury **OR** Bury, **as directed**, and seal wire loop at locations indicated on Drawings according to manufacturer's written instructions. Connect to parking control equipment operated by detector.
4. Traffic Controllers: Anchor controllers to recessed concrete bases **OR** driveway surfaces, **as directed**, with anchor bolts or expansion anchors.
5. Entry Terminal Ticket Dispensers, Pay Stations and Exit Terminals: Attach cabinets to concrete bases with anchor bolts or expansion anchors.
  - a. Connect equipment to remote computer.
  - b. Load ticket dispenser with supply of tickets.
6. Fee Computers: Install computers at locations indicated, including connecting to peripheral equipment and remote computers, **as directed**.
7. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".
8. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".

C. Field Quality Control

1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
2. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
3. Perform tests and inspections.
  - a. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
4. Tests and Inspections:
  - a. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.





- 
- b. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - c. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  5. Parking control equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  6. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- D. Adjusting
1. Adjust parking control equipment to function smoothly and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
  2. Confirm that locks engage accurately and securely without forcing or binding.
  3. After completing installation of exposed, factory-finished parking control equipment, inspect exposed finishes and repair damaged finishes.
- E. Protection
1. Remove barrier gate arms during the construction period to prevent damage, and install them immediately before Final Completion.

END OF SECTION 32 17 13 23



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 32 17 13 23a - PREFABRICATED CONTROL BOOTHS**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for prefabricated control booths. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. Section includes prefabricated steel and aluminum control booths.

## C. Definition

1. ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines: U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines."

## D. Performance Requirements

1. Structural Performance: Control booths shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.

## E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
3. Samples: For control booths with factory-applied color finishes.
4. Delegated-Design Submittal: For control booths indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
5. Welding certificates.
6. Maintenance data.
7. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

## F. Quality Assurance

1. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - a. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - b. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
  - c. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
2. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC/ANSI A117.1.
3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
4. Safety Glazing Products: Category II materials complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201.
5. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

## G. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace wall panels that fail in materials or workmanship within five years from date of Final Completion.



## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Materials

1. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated, and as follows:
  - a. Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M).
  - b. Extruded Shapes: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M).
  - c. Rolled Tread Plate: ASTM B 632/B 632M, Alloy 6061-T4 or Alloy 6061-T6.
2. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, commercial quality, G90 (Z275) coating designation; mill phosphatized.
3. Galvanized, Rolled Steel Tread Plate: ASTM A 786/A 786M, rolled from steel plate complying with ASTM A 572/A 572M, Grade 55 (380); hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
4. Steel Structural Tubing: ASTM A 500, Grade B.
5. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
6. Steel Mechanical Tubing: ASTM A 513, welded steel mechanical tubing.
7. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel: Hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
8. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304.
9. Plastic Laminate: NEMA LD 3, HGS or HGL grade.
10. Plywood: DOC PS 1, Exterior grade.
11. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2.
12. Clear Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 1, Quality q3.
13. Clear Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Class 1, and Quality q3.
14. Insulating Glass: Units complying with ASTM E 774 for Class CBA and consisting of two lites of 2.5-mm-thick clear float glass and dehydrated air space, with a total overall unit thickness of 7/16 inch (11 mm) and with manufacturer's standard dual seal.
15. Ballistics-Resistant Glazing: Comply with requirements specified in Division 08 Section "Security Glazing".
16. Anchorages: Anchor bolts; hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329 **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.

### B. Prefabricated Control Booths, General

1. General: Provide a complete, integrated set of mutually dependent components that form a completely assembled, prefabricated control booth, ready for installation on Project site.
  - a. Building Style: Standard square corners **OR** Radius corners **OR** Round corners **OR** Butt-glazed corners **OR** Wraparound type, with single rounded building end **OR** Wraparound type, with both building ends rounded **OR** As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
  - b. Doors: Sliding door on one side **OR** Sliding doors on both sides **OR** Swinging door on back **OR** As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
2. Windows: Extruded-aluminum sash frames glazed with 6-mm-thick, clear tempered glass **OR** clear insulating glass **OR** ballistics-resistant glazing, UL 752 Level **as directed**.
  - a. Frame Finish: Mill **OR** Clear anodic, **as directed**.
  - b. Provide insect screens for each operable window.
  - c. Provide galvanized-steel security screens for each window.
  - d. Corner Shape: Square **OR** Round, **as directed**.
3. Horizontal Sliding Windows: Extruded-aluminum sash frames glazed with 3-mm-thick, clear tempered float glass. Equip windows with cam locks, weather stripping, and stainless-steel **OR** nylon, **as directed**, ball-bearing rollers.
  - a. Frame Finish: Mill **OR** Clear anodic, **as directed**.
  - b. Provide insect screens for each operable window.
  - c. Corner Shape: Square **OR** Round, **as directed**.
4. Work Counters: Full width of control booth, reinforced; with 16-inch- (406-mm-) wide storage **OR** cash, **as directed**, drawer below each counter, and an access opening for electrical cords at each rear corner of counter.



- a. Material: 0.078-inch- (1.98-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet **OR** 0.079-inch (2.01-mm) nominal-thickness, galvanized-steel sheet **OR** 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) thick particleboard with plastic-laminate finish, **as directed**.
  - b. Depth: 22 inches (559 mm) **OR** 20 inches (508 mm) **OR** 18 inches (457 mm), **as directed**.
  5. Electrical Power Service: 125-A, 120/240-V ac, single-phase, three-wire load center, with no fewer than four open circuits **OR** service with 8-16 circuit-breaker panel, **as directed**; located under one end of work counter. Run copper wiring in 1/2-inch (13-mm) EMT conduit.
    - a. Provide one 120-V ground-fault circuit interrupter (GFCI) power receptacle(s).
  6. Lighting Fixtures: One **OR** Two, **as directed**, ceiling-mounted fluorescent lighting fixture(s), 48 inches (1219 mm) long, with acrylic lens and two 40-W lamps in each fixture. Provide single-pole switch mounted adjacent to door to control lighting fixture.
  7. Heating Unit: Wall-mounted **OR** Roof-mounted, **as directed**, thermostatically controlled, 110-V, 1500-W electric heater with fan-forced operation and with capacity of not less than 5000 Btu/h (1465 W). Enclose in enameled-steel cabinet and mount under work counter.
  8. Cooling Unit: Wall-mounted **OR** Roof-mounted, **as directed**, thermostatically controlled air conditioner with cooling capacity of not less than 13,500 Btu/h (3956 W). Enclose in enameled-steel cabinet.
  9. Accessories: Provide the following for each control booth:
    - a. Through-wall transaction drawers and speaking apertures complying with requirements specified in Division 08 Section "Security Windows".
    - b. Antifatigue mats.
    - c. Exterior stainless-steel counter.
    - d. Floor-mounted **OR** Wall-mounted, **as directed**, safe.
    - e. Signage: **<Insert requirements>**.
    - f. Ventilation fan.
    - g. Intercom.
    - h. Traffic control lights.
- C. Prefabricated Steel Control Booths
1. Structural Framework: Fabricated from 2-by-2-by-0.075-inch (50-by-50-by-1.90-mm) steel structural or mechanical tubing. Connect framework by welding.
  2. Base/Floor Assembly: 4-inch- (102-mm-) **OR** 3-inch- (76-mm-), **as directed**, high assembly consisting of perimeter frame welded to structural framework of booth. Fabricate frame from 2-by-4-inch (51-by-102-mm) galvanized-steel structural tubing; 0.108-inch (2.74-mm) nominal-thickness, C-shaped, galvanized-steel sheet channels; or galvanized structural-steel angles. Include anchor clips fabricated from 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) thick galvanized-steel plate, predrilled and welded to exterior of integral floor frame.
    - a. Finished Floor: 0.108-inch (2.74-mm) nominal-thickness, galvanized, rolled steel tread plate.
    - b. Subfloor and Finished Floor: Assembly consisting of 0.079-inch (2.01-mm) nominal-thickness, galvanized-steel sheet underside with rigid insulation core; covered by 0.125-inch- (3.18-mm-) thick, aluminum rolled tread plate; with overall assembly thickness of 2 inches (51 mm).

**OR**

Subfloor and Finished Floor: Assembly consisting of one **OR** two, **as directed**, layer(s) of 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) thick plywood or oriented strand board with 0.125-inch- (3.18-mm-) thick, aluminum rolled tread plate **OR** vinyl composition flooring **OR** carpeting, **as directed**.

**OR**

Base/Floor Assembly: No perimeter frame, with finished floor fabricated from 0.108-inch (2.74-mm) nominal-thickness, galvanized, rolled steel tread plate.

**OR**

Base/Floor Assembly: No perimeter frame, with surface of supporting concrete base as finished floor.
  3. Wall Panel Assembly: Assembly consisting of exterior face panel fabricated from 0.079-inch (2.01-mm) nominal-thickness, galvanized-steel sheet; and interior face panel fabricated from 0.064-inch (1.63-mm) **OR** 0.052-inch (1.32-mm), **as directed**, nominal-thickness, galvanized-



steel sheet; with 2-inch- (51-mm-) **OR** 3-inch- (76-mm-), **as directed**, thick, rigid fiberglass or polystyrene board insulation in cavity between exterior and interior face panels.

- a. Thermal Resistance Value (R-Value): R-7.
4. Flat Roof/Ceiling Assembly: Consisting of exterior roof panels, interior ceiling panels, and insulation between exterior and interior panels; sloped to drain at booth perimeter.
  - a. Exterior Roof Panel: Fabricated from 0.079-inch (2.01-mm) **OR** 0.064-inch (1.63-mm), **as directed**, nominal-thickness, galvanized-steel sheet; with painted finish **OR** EPDM membrane, **as directed**, continuously welded seams, and full-perimeter gutter.
  - b. Interior Ceiling Panel: Fabricated from 0.079-inch (2.01-mm) nominal-thickness, galvanized-steel sheet; with fiberglass insulation in cavity between ceiling and roof.
    - 1) Thermal Resistance Value (R-Value): R-17.
  - c. Insulated Exterior/Interior Panel: Fabricated from 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) nominal-thickness, galvanized-steel **OR** 0.032-inch- (0.81-mm-) thick, aluminum, **as directed**, sheet faces and expanded-foam insulation core.
    - 1) Thermal Resistance Value (R-Value): R-17.
  - d. Canopy Fascia: Fabricated from 0.079-inch (2.01-mm) nominal-thickness, galvanized-steel sheet, of manufacturer's standard design **OR** custom design indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
    - 1) Height: 6 inches (152 mm) **OR** 8 inches (203 mm), **as directed**.
    - 2) Overhang: 3 inches (76 mm) beyond **OR** Flush with, **as directed**, face of walls below.
  - e. Downspouts: Integral, extending 3 inches (76 mm) beyond booth walls.
  - f. Roof scuppers.
  - g. Rooftop finial.
5. Sliding Door: Top suspended from aluminum track with ball-bearing rollers; 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) thick; tubular-frame design fabricated from clear-anodized aluminum **OR** galvanized steel, **as directed**; with top half of door glazed. Equip door with deadlock, lock support, guide hardware, and full weather stripping.
  - a. Glazing: Fixed **OR** Horizontal sliding, **as directed**, unit with 6-mm-thick, clear tempered float glass.
  - b. Deadlock: Mortised, laminated-hook bolt type with removable cylinder capable of being master keyed.
6. Swinging Door: 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) thick; tubular-frame design fabricated from clear-anodized aluminum **OR** galvanized steel, **as directed**; with top half of door glazed. Equip door with deadlock, three butt hinges, closer, and full weather stripping.
  - a. Glazing: Fixed **OR** Horizontal sliding, **as directed**, unit with 6-mm-thick, clear tempered float glass.
  - b. Deadlock: Mortised, with lever handle and removable cylinder capable of being master keyed.
7. Finish: Finish exposed metal surfaces, including structural framework, walls, canopy, and ceiling with rust-inhibitive primer and one finish coat of industrial air-dry acrylic **OR** polyurethane, **as directed**, enamel.
  - a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

#### D. Prefabricated Aluminum Control Booths

1. Structural Framework: Fabricated from 2-by-2-by-0.125-inch (51-by-51-by-3.18-mm) aluminum tubing, channel, angle, or tee extrusions; with clear **OR** color, **as directed**, anodic finish. Connect framework with exposed, **as directed**, mechanical fasteners.
2. Base/Floor Assembly: 4-inch- (102-mm-) high assembly consisting of perimeter frame welded to structural framework of booth. Fabricate frame from 2-by-4-by-0.125-inch (51-by-102-by-3.18-mm) aluminum tubing or aluminum angles. Include anchor clips fabricated from 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) thick aluminum, predrilled and welded to exterior of integral floor frame.
  - a. Subfloor and Finished Floor: Assembly consisting of 0.032-inch- (0.81-mm-) thick, aluminum sheet underside, plywood and rigid insulation core; covered by 0.125-inch-



(3.18-mm-) thick, aluminum rolled tread plate; with overall assembly thickness of 2 inches (51 mm).

**OR**

Subfloor and Finished Floor: Assembly consisting of one **OR** two, **as directed**, layer(s) of 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) thick plywood or oriented strand board with 0.125-inch- (3.18-mm-) thick, aluminum rolled tread plate **OR** vinyl composition flooring **OR** carpeting, **as directed**.

**OR**

Base/Floor Assembly: No perimeter frame, with surface of supporting concrete base as finished floor.

3. Wall Panel Assembly: Assembly consisting of exterior face panel fabricated from 0.032-inch- (0.81-mm-) **OR** 0.063-inch- (1.60-mm-), **as directed**, thick aluminum sheet, and interior face panel fabricated from 0.032-inch- (0.81-mm-) **OR** 0.050-inch- (1.27-mm-), **as directed**, thick aluminum sheet; with 2-inch- (51-mm-) thick, polystyrene or polyisocyanurate board insulation in cavity between exterior and interior face panels.
  - a. Thermal Resistance Value (R-Value): R-7.
4. Flat Roof/Ceiling Assembly: Consisting of exterior roof panels, interior ceiling panels, and insulation between exterior and interior panels; sloped to drain at booth perimeter.
  - a. Exterior Roof Panel: Fabricated from 0.032-inch- (0.81-mm-) thick aluminum sheet with protective plastic sheet finish and full-perimeter gutter.
  - b. Interior Ceiling Panel: Fabricated from 0.125-inch- (3.18-mm-) thick hardboard; with polyisocyanurate board insulation in cavity between ceiling and roof.
    - 1) Thermal Resistance Value (R-Value): R-19.
  - c. Insulated Exterior/Interior Panel: Fabricated from 0.032-inch- (0.81-mm-) thick, aluminum **OR** 0.021-inch (0.53-mm) nominal-thickness, galvanized-steel, **as directed**, sheet faces and expanded-foam insulation core.
    - 1) Thermal Resistance Value (R-Value): R-19.
  - d. Canopy Fascia: Fabricated from 0.063-inch- (1.60-mm-) thick aluminum sheet, of manufacturer's standard design **OR** custom design indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
    - 1) Height: 6 inches (152 mm) **OR** 8 inches (203 mm), **as directed**.
    - 2) Overhang: 3 inches (76 mm) beyond **OR** Flush with, **as directed**, face of walls below.
  - e. Downspouts: Integral, extending 3 inches (76 mm) beyond booth walls.
  - f. Roof scuppers.
  - g. Rooftop finial.
5. Sliding Door: Top suspended from aluminum track with ball-bearing rollers; 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) thick; tubular-frame design fabricated from aluminum matching exterior and interior wall panels; with top half of door glazed and with extruded-aluminum door frame. Equip door with deadlock, lock support, guide hardware, and full weather stripping.
  - a. Glazing: Fixed **OR** Horizontal sliding, **as directed**, unit with 6-mm-thick, clear tempered float glass.
  - b. Deadlock: Mortised, laminated-hook bolt type with removable cylinder capable of being master keyed.
6. Swinging Door: 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) thick; tubular-frame design fabricated from aluminum matching exterior and interior wall panels; with top half of door glazed and with extruded-aluminum door frame. Equip door with deadlock, three butt hinges, closer, and full weather stripping.
  - a. Glazing: Fixed **OR** Horizontal sliding, **as directed**, unit with 6-mm-thick, clear tempered float glass.
  - b. Deadlock: Mortised, with lever handle and removable cylinder capable of being master keyed.
7. Finish: Finish exposed metal surfaces, including structural framework, walls, canopy, and ceiling with clear anodizing **OR** color anodizing **OR** baked enamel or powder coat, **as directed**.
  - a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

E. Fabrication

1. Fabricate control booths completely in factory.



2. Preglaze windows and doors at factory.
3. Prewire control booths at factory, ready for connection to service at Project site.
4. Fabricate control booths with forklift pockets in base of booth **OR** removable lifting eye centered in roof, **as directed**.
5. Accessible Control Booths: Where indicated to be accessible, fabricate control booths as follows:
  - a. Provide service windows located no higher than 34 inches (865 mm) above exterior grade.
  - b. Provide door opening with minimum 32-inch (813-mm) clear width.
  - c. Provide minimum 60-inch (1525-mm) clear turning spacing within the booth.
  - d. Provide minimum 27-inch (685-mm) clearance beneath interior work surfaces. Locate work surfaces 28 inches (710 mm) minimum and 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the floor.
  - e. Locate controls and operable parts no lower than 15 inches (381 mm) and no higher than 48 inches (1219 mm) above the floor where reach is unobstructed. Where side reach is obstructed, locate controls and operable parts no lower than 15 inches (381 mm) and no higher than 46 inches (1219 mm) above the floor.

#### F. General Finish Requirements

1. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
2. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

#### G. Finishes

1. Steel and Galvanized-Steel Factory Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
  - a. Color and Gloss: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

#### H. Aluminum Finishes

1. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm **OR** AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm, **as directed**, or thicker.
2. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm **OR** AA-M12C22A32/A34, Class II, 0.010 mm, **as directed**, or thicker.
  - a. Color: Light bronze **OR** Medium bronze **OR** Dark bronze **OR** Black **OR** As selected from full range of industry colors and color densities, **as directed**.
3. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
  - a. Color and Gloss: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation

1. Install control booths according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Accessible Control Booths: Install with interior floor surface at same elevation as adjacent paved surfaces.
3. Set control booths plumb and aligned. Level baseplates true to plane with full bearing on concrete bases.
4. Fasten control booths securely to cast-in anchor bolts **OR** concrete bases with expansion anchors, **as directed**.
5. Connect electrical power service to power distribution system according to requirements specified in Division 22.





B. Adjusting

1. Adjust doors, operable windows, and hardware to operate smoothly, easily, properly, and without binding. Confirm that locks engage accurately and securely without forcing or binding.
2. Lubricate hardware and other moving parts.
3. After completing installation, inspect exposed finishes and repair damaged finishes.

END OF SECTION 32 17 13 23a



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
32 17 13 26	32 17 13 23	Parking Control Equipment
32 17 13 26	32 17 13 23a	Prefabricated Control Booths
32 17 16 00	32 01 11 53	Asphalt Paving



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

**SECTION 32 17 23 13 - TRACK, COURT, AND PLAYGROUND MARKINGS****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing of materials and the installation of track, court, and playground markings. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Submittals**

1. Submit product data and manufacturer's recommendations for each marking to be furnished.
2. Submit sample of each marking to be furnished.
3. Submit "Line Layout Drawing" prior to installation of marking and upon completion of markings, submit three (3) certified line layout drawings indicating all lines and colors.

**C. Quality Assurance: Personnel shall have a minimum of three years marking experience.****D. Delivery, Storage and Handling: Deliver paint to site in original sealed containers or drums, with labels legible, intact and unbroken. Comply with all health and fire regulations.****E. Environmental Requirements: Do not install markings on wet or frozen surfaces. Comply with manufacturer's instructions for temperature requirements.****1.2 PRODUCTS****A. Manufacturers**

1. Line Paint for Resilient Surface: Aliphatic polyurethane paint, such as Hi-Build Aliphatic Polyurethane paint by Sherwin-Williams, or approved equivalent.
2. Line Paint for Asphaltic Concrete Pavement: Latex traffic marking paint, such as Setfast Latex Traffic Marking paint by Sherwin-Williams, or approved equivalent.
3. Line Paint for Athletic Wearing Surface (Plexipave): 100% acrylic latex paint, such as Plexicolor by California Products, or approved equivalent.

**1.3 EXECUTION****A. Application****1. Line Painting**

- a. Accurately measure and layout line markings.
- b. Apply paint with mechanical equipment.
- c. Paint lines as specified below under "Track Marking".
- d. Provide uniform straight edges.
- e. Apply not less than two coats in accordance with manufacturer's recommended rates.
- f. Lines shall be 2 in. (50 mm) wide unless otherwise specified.

**2. Track Marking**

- a. Employ a licensed land surveyor to accurately measure and lay out line markings in accordance with National Federation of State High School Athletic Association Regulations or other Standards set forth by the Owner.
- b. Events:
  - 1) 100 meter dash
  - 2) 200 meter dash
  - 3) 400 meter dash



- 4) 800 meter run
  - 5) 1600 meter run
  - 6) 3200 meter run
  - 7) One mile run
  - 8) 4 x 100 meter relay
  - 9) 4 x 200 meter relay
  - 10) 4 x 400 meter relay
  - 11) 4 x 800 meter relay
  - 12) 110 meter high hurdles
  - 13) 300 meter intermediate hurdles
  - 14) Girls 100 meter hurdles
  - 15) Girls 300 meter hurdles
  - c. Hurdle location markers: yellow hash marks.
  - d. Lane lines: white (min. 42 in. (105 cm) apart).
  - e. Exchange zones:
    - 1) 4 x100 m green
    - 2) 4 x 200 m blue
    - 3) 4 x 400 m yellow
    - 4) 12 in. (305 mm) across entire lane width.
  - f. Lane numbers: Stenciled in three locations from inside to outside. Numbers shall be 24 in. (60 cm) high and white in color.
  - g. Finish line to be located near bleachers.
  - h. All starts and finishes to be white.
- B. Cleaning: Upon completion of work, remove containers and debris and leave site in clean orderly condition acceptable to the Owner.
- C. Protection
1. Erect temporary barriers to protect paint during drying period.
  2. Protect markings from damage until completion of project.

END OF SECTION 32 17 23 13



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
32 17 23 13	32 01 11 53	Asphalt Paving
32 17 23 13	03 31 13 00	Cement Concrete Pavement
32 17 23 13	32 01 11 53a	Traffic Coatings
32 17 23 23	32 01 11 53	Asphalt Paving
32 17 23 23	03 31 13 00	Cement Concrete Pavement
32 17 23 23	32 01 11 53a	Traffic Coatings
32 17 23 33	32 01 11 53	Asphalt Paving
32 17 23 33	03 31 13 00	Cement Concrete Pavement
32 17 23 33	32 01 11 53a	Traffic Coatings



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



**SECTION 32 17 26 00 - TACTILE/DETECTABLE WARNING TILE**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for tactile/detectable warning tile. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Submittals

1. Product data for each specified product.
2. Shop drawings, showing detailed plans of tile profile, fastener locations, and installation methods
3. Two (2) tile samples, minimum size 6" x 8" of the kind proposed for use.
4. Material Test Reports: Submit test reports from qualified independent testing laboratory indicating that materials proposed for use are in compliance with requirements and meet the properties indicated. All test reports shall be conducted on a cast-in-place tactile panel system as certified by a qualified independent testing laboratory.
5. Maintenance Instructions: Submit copies of manufacturer's specified maintenance practices for each type of tactile tile and accessory as required.

## C. Quality Control

1. Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA): Provide tactile warning surfaces, which comply with the detectable warnings on walking surfaces, section of the Americans with Disabilities Act (Title 49 CFR TRANSPORTATION, PART 37.9 STANDARDS FOR ACCESSIBLE TRANSPORTATION FACILITIES, Appendix A, Section 4.29.2 DETECTABLE WARNINGS ON WALKING SURFACES.
2. California Code of Regulations (CCR): Provide only approved DSAAC detectable warning products as provided in the California Code of Regulations (CCR). Title 24, Part 1, Articles 2, 3 and 4 and Part 2, Section 205 definition of "Detectable Warning". Section 1127B.5 for "Curb Ramps" and Section 1133B.8.5 for "Detectable Warnings at Hazardous Vehicle Area's".
3. Performance: Tiles shall meet or exceed the following criteria:
  - a. Water Absorption: 0.35% maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM D570.
  - b. Slip Resistance: 0.90 minimum combined wet/ dry static coefficient of friction on top of domes and field area, when tested in accordance with ASTM C1028.
  - c. Compressive Strength: 18,000 psi minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM D695.
  - d. Tensile Strength: 10,000 psi minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM D638.
  - e. Flexural Strength: 24,000 psi minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM C293.
  - f. Gardner Impact: 450 inch-pounds per inch minimum, when tested in accordance with Geometry "GE" of ASTM D5420.
  - g. Chemical Stain Resistance: No reaction to 1% hydrochloric acid, urine, calcium chloride, stamp pad ink, gum and red aerosol paint, when tested in accordance with ASTM D543.
  - h. Wear Depth: 0.03" maximum, after 1000 abrasion cycles of 40 grit Norton Metallite sandpaper, when tested in accordance with ASTM D2486-Modified.
  - i. Flame Spread: 25 maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  - j. Accelerated Weathering: No deterioration, fading or chalking for 2000 hours, when tested in accordance with ASTM D2565.
4. Tactile warning tiles embedded in or adhered to concrete shall meet or exceed the following performance criteria:
  - a. Accelerated Aging and Freeze Thaw of Adhesive System: No cracking, delamination, warping, checking, blistering, color change, loosening, etc. when tested in accordance with ASTM D1037.
  - b. Salt and Spray Performance: No deterioration after 100 hours of exposure, when tested in accordance with ASTM B117.



- D. Delivery, Storage And Handling
  1. Tiles shall be suitably packaged or crated to prevent damage in shipment or handling. Finished surfaces shall be protected by sturdy wrappings, and tile type shall be identified by part number.
  2. Tiles shall be delivered to location at building site for storage prior to installation.
- E. Warranty
  1. Installed tiles shall be warranted for a minimum of five (5) years against failure of adhesives, fasteners and sealants.

## 1.2 PRODUCT

- A. Materials
  1. Vitrified Polymer Composite (VPC) tiles shall be an epoxy polymer composition with an ultra violet stabilized coating employing aluminum oxide particles in the truncated domes. The tile shall incorporate an in-line dome pattern of truncated domes. For wheelchair safety the field area shall consist of a non-slip surface with a minimum of 40 - 90° raised points 0.045" high, per square inch.
  2. Color: Safety Yellow, (Federal Color # 33538) colorfast, UV stabilized coating. Color shall be homogeneous throughout the tile.
- B. Cast-In-Place Tactile Tile
  1. Tile shall be minimum 1-3/8" thick, with minimum 3/8" thick face and ribs designed for after-pour embedment in concrete.
- C. Surface Applied Detectable Warning Surface Tile
  1. The tile shall have with countersunk fastening holes and perimeter beveled edges.
  2. Accessories:
    - a. Fasteners: Color matched, corrosion resistant, flat head drive anchor, 1/4" diameter x 1-3/4" long.
    - b. Adhesive: Urethane elastomeric adhesive.
    - c. Sealants: Epoxy two component sealant.
- D. Modular Paver Tactile Tile
  1. Pre-cast with a 1-3/8" thick reinforced epoxy polymer concrete core.
    - a. Polymer Concrete and/or epoxy resin properties shall meet or exceed the following criteria:
 

Tensile Strength of Resin:	greater than 7,000psi; ASTM D638
Modulus of Elasticity of Resin:	greater than 4,000psi; ASTM D638
Bond Strength of Polymeric Concrete:	greater than 8,000psi; ASTM C551
  2. Accessories:
    - a. Adhesive: Urethane elastomeric adhesive.
    - b. Backer Rod: ASTM C 1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin) **OR** Type O (open-cell material) **OR** Type B (bicellular material with a surface skin), **as directed**, as approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer for joint application indicated, and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance
- E. Surface Applied Detectable Guidance Tiles
  1. Accessories:
    - a. Adhesive: Heavy-duty polyurethane elastomeric adhesive.
    - b. Sealants: Heavy-duty polyurethane elastomeric sealant.
- F. Surface Applied Detectable Directional Bar Tiles
  1. Accessories:
    - a. Fasteners: Stainless steel low profile expansion anchors, 3/16" diameter by 2" long.



- b. Adhesive: Heavy-duty polyurethane elastomeric adhesive.
- c. Sealants: Heavy-duty polyurethane elastomeric sealant.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation

- 1. Installation shall be in strict compliance with manufacturer's printed instructions.

END OF SECTION 32 17 26 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

**SECTION 32 18 16 13 - PLAYGROUND SURFACE SYSTEMS****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for playground surface systems. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Summary**

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Unitary synthetic seamless surface.
  - b. Synthetic, dual-density tile surface.
  - c. Organic loose-fill surface.
  - d. Inorganic loose-fill surface.

**C. Definitions**

1. Critical Height: Standard measure of shock attenuation. According to CPSC No. 325, this means "the fall height below which a life-threatening head injury would not be expected to occur."
2. SBR: Styrene-butadiene rubber.

**D. Performance Requirements**

1. Impact Attenuation: According to ASTM F 1292.
2. Accessibility of Surface Systems: According to ASTM F 1951.
3. Minimum Characteristics for Organic Loose-Fill Surfaces: According to ASTM F 2075.

**E. Submittals**

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Show the following:
  - a. Installation details for curbs, ramps, and accessories.
  - b. Colors and pattern of surfaces.
  - c. Location of wear mats in organic loose-fill surfaces.
  - d. Location of drainage accessories.
3. Samples: For each type of playground surface system indicated.
  - a. Minimum 1-quart (0.95-L) loose-fill surface sealed in a container.
  - b. Minimum 6-by-6-inch- (150-by-150-mm-) square Sample of unitary synthetic seamless **OR** synthetic tile **OR** synthetic, dual-density, tile, **as directed**, surface.
  - c. 6-inch (150-mm) long by full-size cross section of border edging.
  - d. Minimum 12-by-12-inch (300-by-300-mm) Sample of geosynthetic fabric.
  - e. Minimum 6-by-6-inch (150-by-150-mm) Sample of geosynthetic, molded-sheet drainage panel.
4. Qualification Data: For Installer and testing agency.
5. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency, indicating compliance with requirements:
  - a. Unitary synthetic seamless surface.
  - b. Synthetic tile surface.
  - c. Organic loose-fill surface.
  - d. Inorganic loose-fill surface.
6. Material Certificates: For each playground surface system product, signed by manufacturers.
7. Field quality-control test reports.
8. Maintenance Data: For playground surface system to include in maintenance manuals.
9. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

**F. Quality Assurance**



1. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
2. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ANSI Z34.1 for testing indicated.
3. Source Limitations: Obtain playground surface system materials, including primers and binders, through one source from a single manufacturer.
  - a. Provide secondary materials including adhesives, primers, geosynthetics, and repair materials of type and from source recommended by manufacturer of playground surface system materials.

G. Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of playground surface system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Reduction in impact attenuation.
  - b. Deterioration of surface and other materials beyond normal weathering.
2. Warranty Period: Three **OR** Five **OR** 10, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Unitary Synthetic Seamless Surface

1. Surface System: Poured-in-place, single-layer system. Provide manufacturer's standard thickness as required for overall thickness indicated, tested for impact attenuation according to ASTM F 1292 and for accessibility according to ASTM F 1951.
  - a. Cushion Course: Manufacturer's standard blend of recycled SBR and EPDM rubber, particles forming an integral wearing course and cushion course, site mixed and applied.
  - b. Binder: Weather-resistant, UV-stabilized, flexible, nonhardening, 100 percent solids polyurethane complying with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for nontoxic and low VOC content.
  - c. Critical Height: 3 feet (1 m) **OR** 4 feet (1.2 m) **OR** 5 feet (1.5 m) **OR** 6 feet (1.8 m) **OR** 7 feet (2.1 m) **OR** 8 feet (2.4 m) **OR** 9 feet (2.7 m) **OR** 10 feet (3 m) **OR** 12 feet (3.7 m), **as directed**.
  - d. Overall Thickness: Not less than as required for critical height indicated 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm) **OR** 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**.
  - e. Primer/Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard primer and weather-resistant, moisture-cured polyurethane adhesive suitable for unit, substrate, and location indicated.
  - f. Color(s): As selected from manufacturer's full range.
2. Leveling and Patching Material: Portland cement-based grout or epoxy- or polyurethane-based formulation suitable for exterior use and approved by playground surface system manufacturer.

### B. Unitary Synthetic Dual-Density Seamless Surface

1. Surface System: Poured-in-place, two-layer system with wearing course over cushion course. Provide manufacturer's standard thickness for each layer as required for overall thickness indicated, tested for impact attenuation according to ASTM F 1292 and for accessibility according to ASTM F 1951.
  - a. Wearing Course: Formulation of EPDM rubber particles, with minimum of 20 percent and maximum of 26 percent of ethylene propylene-diene-saturated polymethylene main chain along with other organic and inorganic components.
  - b. Cushion Course: Manufacturer's standard formulation of recycled SBR particles and polyurethane, site mixed and applied.
  - c. Binder: Weather-resistant, UV-stabilized, flexible, nonhardening, 100 percent solids polyurethane complying with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for nontoxic and low VOC content.
  - d. Lacquer Top Coat: Manufacturer's standard polyurethane-based formulation.



- e. Critical Height: **3 feet (1 m) OR [4 feet (1.2 m) OR 5 feet (1.5 m) OR [6 feet (1.8 m) OR 7 feet (2.1 m) OR 8 feet (2.4 m) OR 9 feet (2.7 m) OR 10 feet (3 m) OR 12 feet (3.7 m), as directed.**
  - f. Overall Thickness: Not less than as required for critical height indicated **1-1/2 inches (38 mm) OR 2 inches (50 mm) OR 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) OR 3 inches (75 mm) OR 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) OR 4 inches (100 mm) OR 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) OR 5 inches (125 mm) OR 5-1/2 inches (140 mm), as directed.**
  - g. Primer/Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard primer and weather-resistant, moisture-cured polyurethane adhesive suitable for unit, substrate, and location indicated.
  - h. Wearing Course Color(s): As selected from manufacturer's full range.
    - 1) Color **Pattern OR Graphics**: As directed.
2. Leveling and Patching Material: Portland cement-based grout or epoxy- or polyurethane-based formulation suitable for exterior use and approved by playground surface system manufacturer.
- C. Unitary Synthetic Tile Surface
1. Tile System: Manufacturer's standard blend of recycled SBR, EPDM rubber, or PVC particles forming an integral wearing course and cushion course, tested for impact attenuation according to ASTM F 1292 and for accessibility according to ASTM F 1951.
    - a. Unit Size: **24 by 24 inches (600 by 600 mm).**
    - b. Base Profile: With integral ribbed or grid-patterned underside forming channels for water drainage between surface and substrate.
    - c. Border Edge and Corner Units: Tapered, bevel-edged units that transition from the face of playground surface to the adjacent surface below it with a straight-sloped outside edge; size compatible with field units maintaining layout pattern continuity. Provide border edge and corner units where surface does not abut vertical surfaces.
    - d. Critical Height: **7 feet (2.1 m) OR 12 feet (3.7 m), as directed.**
    - e. Overall Thickness: Not less than as required for critical height indicated **1-3/4 inches (45 mm) OR 2-3/4 inches (70 mm) OR 4 inches (100 mm), as directed.**
    - f. Anchors: Manufacturer's standard.
    - g. Anchor Cement: Manufacturer's standard nonshrink grout or polymer resin.
    - h. Tile Color(s): **As directed.**
      - 1) Color **Pattern OR Graphics**: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
    - i. Filler/Sealant: Manufacturer's standard clear silicone or polyurethane filler/sealant suitable for exterior use.
  2. Leveling and Patching Material: Portland cement-based grout or epoxy- or polyurethane-based formulation suitable for exterior use and approved by playground surface system manufacturer.
- D. Organic Loose-Fill Surface
1. Wood Chips: Random-sized wood chips suitable for mulching trees and shrubs.
  2. Double-Shredded Bark Mulch: Random-sized bark, shredded twice, suitable for mulching trees and shrubs.
  3. Engineered Wood Fibers: Random-sized wood fibers, in manufacturer's standard fiber size, approximately 10 times longer than wide; containing no bark, leaves, twigs, or foreign or toxic materials according to ASTM F 2075; graded according to manufacturer's standard specification for material consistency for playground surfaces and for accessibility according to ASTM F 1951.
    - a. Critical Height: **6 feet (1.8 m) OR 9 feet (2.7 m) OR 10 feet (3 m) OR 11 feet (3.4 m), as directed.**
    - b. Uncompressed Material Depth: Not less than as required for critical height indicated **OR 6 inches (150 mm) OR 9 inches (229 mm) OR 12 inches (305 mm), as directed.**
- E. Inorganic Loose-Fill Surface
1. Inorganic Aggregate Materials: Clean, washed, and free of loam, clay, organic matter, debris, and other foreign substances.
    - a. Fine Sand: Complying with ASTM C 136 for the following sieve analysis test results; provide minimum depth of material with critical height indicated according to CPSC No. 325:



- 1) Sieve Sizes and Percent Passing through Screen: No. 16 passing 100 percent, No. 30 passing 98 percent, No. 50 passing 62 percent, No. 100 passing 17 percent, and No. 200 passing 0 to 1 percent.
- b. Coarse Sand: Complying with ASTM C 136 for the following sieve analysis test results; provide minimum depth of material with critical height indicated according to CPSC No. 325:
  - 1) Sieve Sizes and Percent Passing through Screen: No. 4 passing 98 percent, No. 8 passing 73 percent, No. 16 passing 4 percent, No. 30 passing 1 percent, and No. 50 passing 0 to 1 percent.
- c. Fine Gravel: Rounded, hard, durable stone, free of sand, with particle size less than 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) in diameter complying with ASTM C 136 for the following sieve analysis test results; provide minimum depth of material with critical height indicated according to CPSC No. 325:
  - 1) Sieve Sizes and Percent Passing through Screen: 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) passing 100 percent, No. 3-1/2 passing 93 percent, No. 4 passing 65 percent, No. 8 passing 8 percent, No. 16 passing 5 percent, and No. 30 passing 4 percent.
- d. Medium Gravel: Rounded, hard, durable, riverbed gravel or tumbled stone, free of sand, with particle size less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) in diameter complying with ASTM C 136 for the following sieve analysis test results; provide minimum depth of material with critical height indicated according to CPSC No. 325:
  - 1) Sieve Sizes and Percent Passing through Screen: 1/2 inch (13 mm) passing 100 percent, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) passing 80 percent, 5/16 inch (8 mm) passing 20 percent, No. 4 passing 8 percent, and No. 16 passing 3 percent.
2. Shredded Tires: Rubber particles from 100 percent recycled tires, free from steel wires, rubber dust, and other foreign substances, tested for impact attenuation according to ASTM F 1292 and for accessibility according to ASTM F 1951.
  - a. Critical Height: 6 feet (1.8 m) **OR** 9 feet (2.7 m) **OR** 10 feet (3 m) **OR** 11 feet (3.4 m), **as directed**.
  - b. Uncompressed Material Depth: Not less than as required for critical height indicated **OR** 6 inches (150 mm) **OR** 9 inches (229 mm) **OR** 12 inches (305 mm), **as directed**.

#### F. Loose-Fill Accessories

1. Edgings: Anchored-in-place, weather-resistant containment barrier designed to minimize sharp edges, protrusions, and tripping hazards; formed by interconnected, modular units.
  - a. Polyethylene Units: UV-light-stabilized, 100 percent recycled polyethylene, not less than 1/4-inch (6-mm) wall thickness; made into smooth-surfaced straight and curved units with radiused exposed edges and integral, molded-in color; in manufacturer's standard sizes.
    - 1) Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
  - b. Metal Units: Steel fabricated with radiused exposed edges and finished with PVC plastisol coating, straight **OR** right-angled corner, **as directed**, and curved units, in manufacturer's standard sizes.
    - 1) Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
  - c. Rubber Units: Compression molded from 100 percent recycled SBR, in manufacturer's standard sizes.
    - 1) Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
  - d. Anchor Stakes: Manufacturer's standard, of corrosion-resistant-coated metal or noncorrodible material, designed to be nonprotruding when installed, for connecting units and securing in-place.
2. Stabilizing Mats: Manufacturer's standard, water-permeable PVC or rubber mats tested for impact attenuation according to ASTM F 1292, and rated for use in the following locations, with anchoring system designed to anchor mat securely to subgrade through engineered wood:
  - a. Location: At excessive wear areas and as follows:
    - 1) On top of loose-fill surface.
    - 2) Below top of loose-fill surface.
    - 3) On subgrade below loose-fill surface.





- 4) Under and in front of slide exits.
  - 5) Under and around swings.
  - 6) At finished grade around transfer stations at accessible perimeter.
  - 7) At high-traffic areas and playground equipment where indicated.
  - 8) Where indicated.
- b. Size: 36 by 36 inches (914 by 914 mm) **OR** 40 by 40 inches (1016 by 1016 mm) **OR** 48 by 48 inches (1200 by 1200 mm), **as directed**.
- c. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

#### G. Geosynthetics

1. Drainage/Separation Geotextile: Nonwoven, needle-punched geotextile, manufactured for subsurface drainage applications and made from polyolefins or polyesters; complying with the following minimum properties determined according to ASTM D 4759 and referenced standard test methods:
  - a. Weight: 4 oz./sq. yd. (136 g/sq. m) according to ASTM D 5261.
  - b. Water Flow Rate: 100 gpm/sq. ft. (68 L/s per sq. m) **OR** 150 gpm/sq. ft. (102 L/s per sq. m), **as directed**, according to ASTM D 4491.
2. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Prefabricated, composite drainage panels made with drainage core and filter fabric.
  - a. Drainage Core: Three-dimensional, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet material designed to effectively drain water under maximum fill pressures.
  - b. Fabric: Nonwoven, needle-punched geotextile, specifically manufactured as a filter geotextile and made from polyolefins or polyesters; complying with the following minimum properties determined according to ASTM D 4759 and referenced standard test methods:
    - 1) Weight: 4 oz./sq. yd. (136 g/sq. m) according to ASTM D 5261.
    - 2) Water Flow Rate: 100 gpm/sq. ft. (68 L/s per sq. m) **OR** 150 gpm/sq. ft. (102 L/s per sq. m), **as directed**, according to ASTM D 4491.
  - c. Minimum Flow Rate: 9 gpm/foot (1.9 L/s per m) according to ASTM D 4491.
3. Weed-Control Barrier: Composite fabric geotextile consisting of woven, needle-punched polypropylene substrate bonded to a nonwoven polypropylene fabric, weighing not less than 4.8 oz./sq. yd. (160 g/sq. m).

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Preparation

1. General: Prepare substrates to receive surfacing products according to playground surface system manufacturer's written instructions. Verify that substrates are sound and without high spots, ridges, holes, and depressions.
2. Concrete **OR** Asphalt, **as directed**, Substrates: Provide sound surface free of laitance, efflorescence, curing compounds, and other contaminants incompatible with playground surface system.
  - a. Repair unsatisfactory surfaces and fill holes and depressions.
  - b. Mechanically scarify or otherwise prepare concrete substrates to achieve recommended degree of roughness.
  - c. Saw cut concrete **OR** asphalt, **as directed**, for terminal edges of playground surface systems as indicated.
  - d. Treat control joints and other nonmoving substrate cracks to prevent telegraphing through playground surface system.

#### B. Installation, General

1. General: Comply with playground surface system manufacturer's written installation instructions. Install playground surface system over area and in thickness indicated.

#### C. Geosynthetic Installation



1. General: Install geosynthetics according to playground surface system manufacturer's and geosynthetic manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Geotextiles: Completely cover area indicated, overlapping sides and edges a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 8 inches (200 mm), **as directed**, with manufacturer's standard treatment for **OR** overlapping loosely laid **OR** adhesively bonded, **as directed**, seams.
    - 1) Perimeter: Adhere edges on all sides to top of perimeter curb or footing.

#### D. Installation Of Seamless Playground Surface Systems

1. Seamless Surface: Mix and apply components of playground surface system according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Substrate Primer: Apply over prepared substrate at manufacturer's standard spreading rate for type of substrate.
  - b. Cushion Course: Spread evenly over primed substrate to form a uniform layer applied at manufacturer's standard spreading rate in one continuous operation, with a minimum of cold joints.
  - c. Cushion Course: Lay out tile units from center marks established with principal perimeter edges, discounting minor offsets, so units at opposite edges of installation are of equal width. Adjust as necessary to avoid using cut widths that equal less than one-half of a unit at perimeter.
  - d. Intercoat Primer: Over cured cushion course, apply primer at manufacturer's standard spreading rate.
  - e. Wearing Course: Spread over primed base course to form a uniform layer applied at manufacturer's standard spreading rate in one continuous operation and, except where color changes, with no **OR** a minimum of, **as directed**, cold joints. Finish surface to produce manufacturer's standard wearing-surface texture.
    - 1) Where colored pattern is **OR** graphics are, **as directed**, indicated, place adjacent colored material as soon as placed colored material is sufficiently cured, using primer or adhesive if required by manufacturer's written instructions.
  - f. Edge Treatment: Flush **OR** Extended surface course **OR** Saw-cut base and vertical pour, **as directed**.

#### E. Installation Of Tile Playground Surface Systems

1. Tile Units: Provide a uniform wearing surface with no unaligned units, raised edges, or surface imperfections.
  - a. Lay out units from center marks established with principal perimeter edges, discounting minor offsets, so units at opposite edges of installation are of equal width. Adjust as necessary to avoid using cut widths that equal less than one-half of a unit at perimeter. Allow for border edge.
    - 1) Alignment Axis and Pattern: Lay units along axis and in grid pattern indicated.  
**OR**  
Alignment Axis: Lay units square **OR** at a 45-degree angle, **as directed**, with playground equipment axis.
    - 2) Pattern: Lay units in straight-line grid pattern with joints aligned.  
**OR**  
Pattern: Lay units in half-unit, offset grid pattern with staggered joints.
  - b. Cut and fit units around playground equipment supports and vertical surfaces. Do not create voids greater than 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) wide.
    - 1) Do not stretch units during installation.
  - c. Adhesively Applied Units: Adhere units to substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied to substrate or to unit and to each other.
  - d. Mechanically Fastened Units: Anchor to substrates.
  - e. Mechanically Attached Units (only for solid revulcanized rubber units): Mechanically attach all four sides of units, including border edge and corner units, to each other using number of fasteners per side as recommended by system manufacturer. Free lay sheet of attached units on substrate.



- f. Mechanically Attached Units Retained by Adhesively Applied Perimeter Units: Mechanically attach all four sides of units to each other using number of fasteners per side as recommended by system manufacturer. Adhere not less than one course of perimeter units and border edge and corner units to substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied to substrate or to unit and to each other.
  - g. Edge Borders: Maintain fully cushioned thickness.
  - h. Filler/Sealant: Mask area surrounding cutouts around playground equipment supports and other obstructions. Apply a full bead of filler/sealant, filling cutouts immediately after laying tile with cutout.
- F. Installation Of Loose-Fill Playground Surface Systems
- 1. Loose-Fill Edgings: Place as indicated, and permanently secure in place and attach to each other according to edging manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Loose Fill: Place playground surface system materials including manufacturer's standard amount of excess material for compacting naturally with time **OR** including manufacturer's standard amount of excess material for compacting mechanically, **as directed**, to required depths after Installation of playground equipment support posts and foundations.
  - 3. Stabilizing Mats: Coordinate installation of mats and mat anchoring system with placing and compacting of loose-fill.
  - 4. Compacting and Grading: Uniformly compact and grade loose-fill according to manufacturer's written instructions to an even surface free from irregular surface changes as indicated.
  - 5. Finish Grading: Hand rake to a smooth finished surface and to required elevations.
- G. Field Quality Control
- 1. Testing Services: Testing and inspecting of completed applications of playground surface system shall take place according to ASTM F 1292.
  - 2. Remove and replace applications of playground surface system where test results indicate that it does not comply with requirements.
  - 3. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with requirements.
- H. Protection
- 1. Seamless **OR** Tile, **as directed**, Systems: Prevent traffic over system for not less than 48 hours after installation.

END OF SECTION 32 18 16 13



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 32 18 16 13a - SYNTHETIC RUNNING TRACK SURFACE**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of synthetic running track surface. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Submittals: Submit the following:

1. Sample of the actual sport surface in the standard color(s) selected.
2. Technical data sheets of the product.
3. Adhesive product data sheets and manufacturer's certificate indicating approval for the proposed application.
4. Line paint data sheets and the manufacturer's certificate indicating approval for the proposed application.
5. Submit 3 copies of the maintenance instruction.

## C. Delivery and Storage: Deliver and store the material in the original packaging with the labels intact in a controlled environment of a minimum temperature of 55°F (13°C) and under 50% relative humidity. Protect work until accepted by the Owner.

## D. Warranty: Provide manufacturer's standard warranty.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

## A. Acrylic Color Coating System

1. Manufacturer: Copeland Coating Company or approved equivalent.
2. System shall consist of stone base, asphalt binder/top, cushion made of granulated rubber particles suspended in acrylic emulsions (**as directed**), acrylic filler coat(s), acrylic finish coat, and acrylic line paint.
3. Design and construction shall be by materials manufacturer.

## B. Polyurethane

1. Manufacturer: Conica Sports Surfaces or approved equivalent.
2. Impermeable, full polyurethane, 3 layer athletic track system. In-situ applied with a granular colored EPDM finish. IAAF certified as required.

## C. Rubber Granule Surface

1. Manufacturer: Atlas Track & Tennis or approved equivalent.
2. Rubber granules applied "dry" to the surface and adhered by spray application of a resin binder. This process is repeated until the specified thickness is achieved, allowing sufficient curing time between each application. The process is then finished with a structural spray coating of highly pigmented polyurethane coating.

## D. Prefabricated Rubber Surface

1. Manufacturer: Mondo USA, or approved equivalent.
2. Prefabricated rubber sport surface to be 6 mm (1/4") **OR** 8mm (5/16") **OR** 10mm (3/8") **OR** 12mm (1/2") **OR** 14mm (9/16"), **as directed**, thickness, with a non-slip, non-reflecting, highly spike resistant top surface. Provided in manufacturer's standard colors.
3. Prefabricated rubber surface to be sheet goods, double durometer or homogenous vulcanized and calandered, with a particular closed cell structure, based on special isoprenic rubbers, mineral fillers, vulcanizing and stabilizing agents and color pigments, highly resistant to UV rays



and atmospherical agents, with system of differentiated elasticity between top surface and base, supplied in rolls of suitable size and thickness. Surface shall have a special texture including adhesive and striping

4. Prefabricated rubber sport surface to be manufactured in two layers, which are vulcanized together. The shore hardness of the lower layer to be less than the upper layer, shore hardness of the respected layers to be recommended by the manufacturer and within the limits hereinafter specified. Field laminated triple durometer are unacceptable.
  5. Adhesive: Rubber sport surface adhesive to be two part polyurethane adhesive suitable for adherence of a sheet good to asphalt, concrete or urethane substrate. Adhesive to be supplied or approved/recommended by sport surface manufacturer.
- E. Patching Compound: Patching compound to be supplied or approved/recommended by sport surface manufacturer.
- F. Line marking: Line marking paint to be supplied by sport surface manufacturer.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation

1. Install sport flooring in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions.
2. Prefabricated sport flooring shall be unrolled and allowed to relax.
3. Cut and adjust prefabricated sport flooring prior to adhesion.
4. Mix adhesive in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
5. Hold all seams in place with suitable weights for a minimum of 12 hours.
6. Lines to be painted as per manufacturer's recommendations.
7. Surface to be protected before, during and after installation until project's acceptance by the the Owner or his agent.

END OF SECTION 32 18 16 13a



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
32 18 16 13	32 17 23 13	Track, Court, And Playground Markings
32 18 16 13	11 68 13 00	Playground Equipment And Structures
32 18 16 13	11 68 13 00a	Recreational Facilities



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





## SECTION 32 18 23 13 - LAWNS AND GRASSES

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for lawns and grasses. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Seeding.
  - b. Hydroseeding.
  - c. Sodding.
  - d. Plugging.
  - e. Sprigging.
  - f. Meadow grasses and wildflowers.
  - g. Turf renovation.
  - h. Erosion-control material(s).
  - i. Grass paving.

#### C. Definitions

1. Duff Layer: The surface layer of native topsoil that is composed of mostly decayed leaves, twigs, and detritus.
2. Finish Grade: Elevation of finished surface of planting soil.
3. Manufactured Topsoil: Soil produced off-site by homogeneously blending mineral soils or sand with stabilized organic soil amendments to produce topsoil or planting soil.
4. Pesticide: A substance or mixture intended for preventing, destroying, repelling, or mitigating a pest. This includes insecticides, miticides, herbicides, fungicides, rodenticides, and molluscicides. It also includes substances or mixtures intended for use as a plant regulator, defoliant, or desiccant.
5. Pests: Living organisms that occur where they are not desired or that cause damage to plants, animals, or people. These include insects, mites, grubs, mollusks (snails and slugs), rodents (gophers, moles, and mice), unwanted plants (weeds), fungi, bacteria, and viruses.
6. Planting Soil: Standardized topsoil; existing, native surface topsoil; existing, in-place surface soil; imported topsoil; or manufactured topsoil that is modified with soil amendments and perhaps fertilizers to produce a soil mixture best for plant growth.
7. Subgrade: Surface or elevation of subsoil remaining after excavation is complete, or top surface of a fill or backfill before planting soil is placed.
8. Subsoil: All soil beneath the topsoil layer of the soil profile, and typified by the lack of organic matter and soil organisms.
9. Surface Soil: Soil that is present at the top layer of the existing soil profile at the Project site. In undisturbed areas, the surface soil is typically topsoil, but in disturbed areas such as urban environments, the surface soil can be subsoil.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Certification of Grass Seed.
  - a. Certification of each seed mixture for turfgrass sod **OR** plugs, **as directed**.
3. Product Certificates: For soil amendments and fertilizers, from manufacturer.
4. Maintenance Instructions: Recommended procedures to be established by the Owner for maintenance of turf and meadows during a calendar year. Submit before expiration of required initial maintenance periods.



E. Quality Assurance

1. Installer's Field Supervision: Require Installer to maintain an experienced full-time supervisor on Project site when work is in progress.
  - a. Pesticide Applicator: State licensed, commercial.
2. Soil Analysis: For each unamended soil type, furnish soil analysis and a written report by a qualified soil-testing laboratory.
  - a. The soil-testing laboratory shall oversee soil sampling.
  - b. Report suitability of tested soil for turf growth.
    - 1) State recommendations for nitrogen, phosphorus, and potash nutrients and soil amendments to be added to produce satisfactory planting soil suitable for healthy, viable plants.
    - 2) Report presence of problem salts, minerals, or heavy metals; if present, provide additional recommendations for corrective action.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Seed and Other Packaged Materials: Deliver packaged materials in original, unopened containers showing weight, certified analysis, name and address of manufacturer, and indication of conformance with state and federal laws, as applicable.
2. Sod: Harvest, deliver, store, and handle sod according to requirements in "Specifications for Turfgrass Sod Materials" and "Specifications for Turfgrass Sod Transplanting and Installation" in TPI's "Guideline Specifications to Turfgrass Sodding." Deliver sod in time for planting within 24 hours of harvesting. Protect sod from breakage and drying.
3. Bulk Materials:
  - a. Do not dump or store bulk materials near structures, utilities, walkways and pavements, or on existing turf areas or plants.
  - b. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of bulk materials, discharge of soil-bearing water runoff, and airborne dust reaching adjacent properties, water conveyance systems, or walkways.
  - c. Accompany each delivery of bulk fertilizers, lime, and soil amendments with appropriate certificates.

G. Maintenance Service

1. Initial Turf Maintenance Service: Provide full maintenance by skilled employees of landscape Installer. Maintain as required in Part 1.3. Begin maintenance immediately after each area is planted and continue until acceptable turf is established but for not less than the following periods:
  - a. Seeded Turf: 60 days from date of planting completion **OR** Final Completion, **as directed**.
    - 1) When initial maintenance period has not elapsed before end of planting season, or if turf is not fully established, continue maintenance during next planting season.
  - b. Sodded Turf: 30 days from date of planting completion **OR** Final Completion, **as directed**.
  - c. Plugged Turf: 30 days from date of planting completion **OR** Final Completion, **as directed**.
  - d. Sprigged Turf: 30 days from date of planting completion **OR** Final Completion, **as directed**.
2. Initial Meadow Maintenance Service: Provide full maintenance by skilled employees of landscape Installer. Maintain as required in Part 1.3. Begin maintenance immediately after each area is planted and continue until acceptable meadow is established, but for not less than 40 days from date of planting completion **OR** Final Completion, **as directed**.
3. Continuing Maintenance Proposal: From Installer to the Owner, in the form of a standard yearly (or other period) maintenance agreement, starting on date initial maintenance service is concluded. State services, obligations, conditions, and terms for agreement period and for future renewal options.



## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Seed

1. Grass Seed: Fresh, clean, dry, new-crop seed complying with AOSA's "Journal of Seed Technology; Rules for Testing Seeds" for purity and germination tolerances.
2. Seed Species: If grass seed is required to be certified by the State Department of Agriculture, State-certified seed of grass species as follows:  
**OR**  
Seed Species: If grass seed is not required to be certified by the State Department of Agriculture, seed of grass species as follows, with not less than 95 percent germination, not less than 85 percent pure seed, and not more than 0.5 percent weed seed:
  - a. Warm-season grass
    - 1) Full Sun: Bermudagrass (*Cynodon dactylon*).
  - b. Cool-season grass
    - 1) Full Sun: Kentucky bluegrass (*Poa pratensis*), a minimum of three cultivars.
    - 2) Sun and Partial Shade: Proportioned by weight as follows:
      - a) 50 percent Kentucky bluegrass (*Poa pratensis*).
      - b) 30 percent chewings red fescue (*Festuca rubra* variety).
      - c) 10 percent perennial ryegrass (*Lolium perenne*).
      - d) 10 percent redtop (*Agrostis alba*).
    - 3) Shade: Proportioned by weight as follows:
      - a) 50 percent chewings red fescue (*Festuca rubra* variety).
      - b) 35 percent rough bluegrass (*Poa trivialis*).
      - c) 15 percent redtop (*Agrostis alba*).
3. Grass Seed Mix: Proprietary seed mix as directed by the Owner.

### B. Turfgrass Sod

1. Turfgrass Sod: Certified **OR** Approved **OR** Number 1 Quality/Premium, including limitations on thatch, weeds, diseases, nematodes, and insects, **as directed**, complying with "Specifications for Turfgrass Sod Materials" in TPI's "Guideline Specifications to Turfgrass Sodding." Furnish viable sod of uniform density, color, and texture, strongly rooted, and capable of vigorous growth and development when planted.
2. Turfgrass Species (warm-season grass): Bermudagrass (*Cynodon dactylon*) **OR** Carpetgrass (*Axonopus affinis*) **OR** Centipedegrass (*Eremochloa ophiuroides*) **OR** St. Augustinegrass (*Stenotaphrum secundatum*) **OR** Zoysiagrass (*Zoysia japonica*) **OR** Zoysiagrass (*Zoysia matrella*), **as directed**.
3. Turfgrass Species (cool-season grass): Sod of grass species as follows, with not less than 95 percent germination, not less than 85 percent pure seed, and not more than 0.5 percent weed seed:
  - a. Full Sun: Kentucky bluegrass (*Poa pratensis*), a minimum of three cultivars.
  - b. Sun and Partial Shade: Proportioned by weight as follows:
    - 1) 50 percent Kentucky bluegrass (*Poa pratensis*).
    - 2) 30 percent chewings red fescue (*Festuca rubra* variety).
    - 3) 10 percent perennial ryegrass (*Lolium perenne*).
    - 4) 10 percent redtop (*Agrostis alba*).
  - c. Shade: Proportioned by weight as follows:
    - 1) 50 percent chewings red fescue (*Festuca rubra* variety).
    - 2) 35 percent rough bluegrass (*Poa trivialis*).
    - 3) 15 percent redtop (*Agrostis alba*).

### C. Plugs

1. Plugs: Turfgrass sod, certified **OR** approved **OR** Number 1 Quality/Premium, including limitations on thatch, weeds, diseases, nematodes, and insects, **as directed**, complying with "Specifications for Turfgrass Sod Materials" in TPI's "Guideline Specifications to Turfgrass Sodding." Furnish viable sod of uniform density, color, and texture, cut into square or round plugs, strongly rooted,



and capable of vigorous growth and development when planted; of the following turfgrass species and plug size:

- a. Turfgrass Species (warm-season grass): Bermudagrass (*Cynodon dactylon*) **OR** Carpetgrass (*Axonopus affinis*) **OR** Centipedegrass (*Eremochloa ophiuroides*) **OR** St. Augustinegrass (*Stenotaphrum secundatum*) **OR** Zoysiagrass (*Zoysia japonica*) **OR** Zoysiagrass (*Zoysia matrella*), **as directed**.
- b. Plug Size: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 3 inches (75 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**.

#### D. Sprigs

1. Sod Sprigs: Healthy living stems, rhizomes, or stolons with a minimum of two nodes and attached roots free of soil, of the following turfgrass species:
  - a. Turfgrass Species (warm-season grass): Bermudagrass (*Cynodon dactylon*) **OR** Carpetgrass (*Axonopus affinis*) **OR** Centipedegrass (*Eremochloa ophiuroides*) **OR** St. Augustinegrass (*Stenotaphrum secundatum*) **OR** Zoysiagrass (*Zoysia japonica*) **OR** Zoysiagrass (*Zoysia matrella*), **as directed**.
  - b. Turfgrass Species (cool-season grass): Creeping bentgrass (*Agrostis palustris*).

#### E. Meadow Grasses And Wildflowers

1. Wildflower Seed: Fresh, clean, and dry new seed, of mixed species as directed.
2. Native Grass Seed: Fresh, clean, and dry new seed, of mixed species as directed.
3. Wildflower and Native Grass Seed: Fresh, clean, and dry new seed, of mixed species as directed.
4. Seed Carrier: Inert material, sharp clean sand or perlite, mixed with seed at a ratio of not less than two parts seed carrier to one part seed.

#### F. Inorganic Soil Amendments

1. Lime: ASTM C 602, agricultural liming material containing a minimum of 80 percent calcium carbonate equivalent and as follows:
  - a. Class T, with a minimum of 99 percent passing through No. 8 (2.36-mm) sieve and a minimum of 75 percent passing through No. 60 (0.25-mm) sieve.  
**OR**  
Class O, with a minimum of 95 percent passing through No. 8 (2.36-mm) sieve and a minimum of 55 percent passing through No. 60 (0.25-mm) sieve.
  - b. Provide lime in form of ground dolomitic limestone **OR** calcitic limestone **OR** mollusk shells, **as directed**.
2. Sulfur: Granular, biodegradable, containing a minimum of 90 percent sulfur, and with a minimum of 99 percent passing through No. 6 (3.35-mm) sieve and a maximum of 10 percent passing through No. 40 (0.425-mm) sieve.
3. Iron Sulfate: Granulated ferrous sulfate containing a minimum of 20 percent iron and 10 percent sulfur.
4. Aluminum Sulfate: Commercial grade, unadulterated.
5. Perlite: Horticultural perlite, soil amendment grade.
6. Agricultural Gypsum: Minimum 90 percent calcium sulfate, finely ground with 90 percent passing through No. 50 (0.30-mm) sieve.
7. Sand: Clean, washed, natural or manufactured, and free of toxic materials.
8. Diatomaceous Earth: Calcined, 90 percent silica, with approximately 140 percent water absorption capacity by weight.  
**OR**  
Zeolites: Mineral clinoptilolite with at least 60 percent water absorption by weight.

#### G. Organic Soil Amendments

1. Compost: Well-composted, stable, and weed-free organic matter, pH range of 5.5 to 8; moisture content 35 to 55 percent by weight; 100 percent passing through 1-inch (25-mm) **OR** 3/4-inch (19-mm) **OR** 1/2-inch (12.5-mm), **as directed**, sieve; soluble salt content of 5 to 10



decisiemens/m; not exceeding 0.5 percent inert contaminants and free of substances toxic to plantings; and as follows:

- a. Organic Matter Content: 50 to 60 percent of dry weight.
  - b. Feedstock: Agricultural, food, or industrial residuals; biosolids; yard trimmings; or source-separated or compostable mixed solid waste.
2. Sphagnum Peat: Partially decomposed sphagnum peat moss, finely divided or of granular texture, with a pH range of 3.4 to 4.8.
  3. Muck Peat: Partially decomposed moss peat, native peat, or reed-sedge peat, finely divided or of granular texture, with a pH range of 6 to 7.5, and having a water-absorbing capacity of 1100 to 2000 percent.
  4. Wood Derivatives: Decomposed, nitrogen-treated sawdust, ground bark, or wood waste; of uniform texture and free of chips, stones, sticks, soil, or toxic materials.
    - a. In lieu of decomposed wood derivatives, mix partially decomposed wood derivatives with ammonium nitrate at a minimum rate of 0.15 lb/cu. ft. (2.4 kg/cu. m) of loose sawdust or ground bark, or with ammonium sulfate at a minimum rate of 0.25 lb/cu. ft. (4 kg/cu. m) of loose sawdust or ground bark.
  5. Manure: Well-rotted, unleached, stable or cattle manure containing not more than 25 percent by volume of straw, sawdust, or other bedding materials; free of toxic substances, stones, sticks, soil, weed seed, and material harmful to plant growth.

#### H. Fertilizers

1. Bonemeal: Commercial, raw or steamed, finely ground; a minimum of 1 **OR** 4, **as directed**, percent nitrogen and 10 **OR** 20, **as directed**, percent phosphoric acid.
2. Superphosphate: Commercial, phosphate mixture, soluble; a minimum of 20 percent available phosphoric acid.
3. Commercial Fertilizer: Commercial-grade complete fertilizer of neutral character, consisting of fast- and slow-release nitrogen, 50 percent derived from natural organic sources of urea formaldehyde, phosphorous, and potassium in the following composition:
  - a. Composition: 1 lb/1000 sq. ft. (0.45 kg/92.9 sq. m) of actual nitrogen, 4 percent phosphorous, and 2 percent potassium, by weight.
  - b. Composition: Nitrogen, phosphorous, and potassium in amounts recommended in soil reports from a qualified soil-testing laboratory.
4. Slow-Release Fertilizer: Granular or pelleted fertilizer consisting of 50 percent water-insoluble nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium in the following composition:
  - a. Composition: 20 percent nitrogen, 10 percent phosphorous, and 10 percent potassium, by weight.  
**OR**  
Composition: Nitrogen, phosphorous, and potassium in amounts recommended in soil reports from a qualified soil-testing laboratory.

#### I. Planting Soils

1. Planting Soil: ASTM D 5268 topsoil, with pH range of 5.5 to 7, a minimum of 2 percent organic material content **OR** Existing, native surface topsoil formed under natural conditions with the duff layer retained during excavation process **OR** Existing, in-place surface soil **OR** Imported topsoil or manufactured topsoil from off-site sources; do not obtain from agricultural land, bogs or marshes, **as directed**. Verify suitability of soil to produce viable planting soil. Clean soil of roots, plants, sod, stones, clods, clay lumps, pockets of coarse sand, concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, building debris, and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth. Mix soil with the following soil amendments and fertilizers in the following quantities to produce planting soil:
  - a. Ratio of Loose Compost to Topsoil by Volume: 1:4 **OR** 1:3 **OR** 1:2, **as directed**.
  - b. Ratio of Loose Sphagnum **OR** Muck, **as directed**, Peat to Topsoil by Volume: as directed by the Owner .
  - c. Ratio of Loose Wood Derivatives to Topsoil by Volume: as directed by the Owner.
  - d. Weight of Lime per 1000 Sq. Ft. (92.9 Sq. m): as directed by the Owner.



- e. Weight of Sulfur **OR** Iron Sulfate **OR** Aluminum Sulfate, **as directed**, per 1000 Sq. Ft. (92.9 Sq. m): as directed by the Owner.
- f. Weight of Agricultural Gypsum per 1000 Sq. Ft. (92.9 Sq. m): as directed by the Owner.
- g. Volume of Sand Plus 10 Percent Diatomaceous Earth **OR** Zeolites, **as directed**, per 1000 Sq. Ft. (92.9 Sq. m): as directed by the Owner.
- h. Weight of Bonemeal per 1000 Sq. Ft. (92.9 Sq. m): as directed by the Owner.
- i. Weight of Superphosphate per 1000 Sq. Ft. (92.9 Sq. m): as directed by the Owner.
- j. Weight of Commercial Fertilizer per 1000 Sq. Ft. (92.9 Sq. m): as directed by the Owner.
- k. Weight of Slow-Release Fertilizer per 1000 Sq. Ft. (92.9 Sq. m): as directed by the Owner.

#### J. Mulches

- 1. Straw Mulch: Provide air-dry, clean, mildew- and seed-free, salt hay or threshed straw of wheat, rye, oats, or barley.
- 2. Sphagnum Peat Mulch: Partially decomposed sphagnum peat moss, finely divided or of granular texture, and with a pH range of 3.4 to 4.8.
- 3. Muck Peat Mulch: Partially decomposed moss peat, native peat, or reed-sedge peat, finely divided or of granular texture, with a pH range of 6 to 7.5, and having a water-absorbing capacity of 1100 to 2000 percent.
- 4. Compost Mulch: Well-composted, stable, and weed-free organic matter, pH range of 5.5 to 8; moisture content 35 to 55 percent by weight; 100 percent passing through 1-inch (25-mm) sieve; soluble salt content of 2 to 5 decisiemens/m; not exceeding 0.5 percent inert contaminants and free of substances toxic to plantings; and as follows:
  - a. Organic Matter Content: 50 to 60 percent of dry weight.
  - b. Feedstock: Agricultural, food, or industrial residuals; biosolids; yard trimmings; or source-separated or compostable mixed solid waste.
- 5. Fiber Mulch: Biodegradable, dyed-wood, cellulose-fiber mulch; nontoxic and free of plant-growth or germination inhibitors; with a maximum moisture content of 15 percent and a pH range of 4.5 to 6.5.
- 6. Nonasphaltic Tackifier: Colloidal tackifier recommended by fiber-mulch manufacturer for slurry application; nontoxic and free of plant-growth or germination inhibitors.
- 7. Asphalt Emulsion: ASTM D 977, Grade SS-1; nontoxic and free of plant-growth or germination inhibitors.

#### K. Pesticides

- 1. General: Pesticide, registered and approved by EPA, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and of type recommended by manufacturer for each specific problem and as required for Project conditions and application. Do not use restricted pesticides unless authorized in writing by authorities having jurisdiction.
- 2. Pre-Emergent Herbicide (Selective and Non-Selective): Effective for controlling the germination or growth of weeds within planted areas at the soil level directly below the mulch layer.
- 3. Post-Emergent Herbicide (Selective and Non-Selective): Effective for controlling weed growth that has already germinated.

#### L. Erosion-Control Materials

- 1. Erosion-Control Blankets: Biodegradable wood excelsior, straw, or coconut-fiber mat enclosed in a photodegradable plastic mesh. Include manufacturer's recommended steel wire staples, 6 inches (150 mm) long.
- 2. Erosion-Control Fiber Mesh: Biodegradable burlap or spun-coir mesh, a minimum of 0.92 lb/sq. yd. (0.5 kg/sq. m), with 50 to 65 percent open area. Include manufacturer's recommended steel wire staples, 6 inches (150 mm) long.
- 3. Erosion-Control Mats: Cellular, non-biodegradable slope-stabilization mats designed to isolate and contain small areas of soil over steeply sloped surface, of 3-inch (75-mm) **OR** 4-inch (100-mm) **OR** 6-inch (150-mm), **as directed**, nominal mat thickness. Include manufacturer's recommended anchorage system for slope conditions.



#### M. Grass-Paving Materials

1. Grass Paving: Cellular, non-biodegradable plastic mats, designed to contain small areas of soil and enhance the ability of turf to support vehicular and pedestrian traffic, of 1-inch (25-mm) **OR** 1-3/4-inch (45-mm) **OR** 2-inch (50-mm) **OR** manufacturer's standard, **as directed**, nominal mat thickness. Include manufacturer's recommended anchorage system for slope conditions.
2. Base Course: Sound crushed stone or gravel complying with ASTM D 448 for Size No. 8 **OR** Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for base-course material, **as directed**.
3. Sand: Sound, sharp, washed, natural sand or crushed stone complying with gradation requirements in ASTM C 33 for fine aggregate.
4. Proprietary Growing Mix: As submitted and acceptable to the Owner.
5. Sandy Loam Soil Mix: Sound, sharp, washed, natural sand or crushed stone complying with gradation requirements in ASTM C 33 for fine aggregate blended with planting soil as specified. Use blend consisting of 1/2 sand and 1/2 planting soil **OR** 2/3 sand and 1/3 planting soil, **as directed**.
6. Soil for Paving Fill: Planting soil as specified.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Preparation

1. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities, trees, shrubs, and plantings from damage caused by planting operations.
  - a. Protect adjacent and adjoining areas from hydroseeding and hydromulching overspray.
  - b. Protect grade stakes set by others until directed to remove them.
2. Install erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of soils and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways.

#### B. Turf Area Preparation

1. Limit turf subgrade preparation to areas to be planted.
2. Newly Graded Subgrades: Loosen subgrade to a minimum depth of 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 6 inches (150 mm) **OR** 8 inches (200 mm), **as directed**. Remove stones larger than 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, in any dimension and sticks, roots, rubbish, and other extraneous matter and legally dispose of them off the Owner's property.
  - a. Apply superphosphate fertilizer directly to subgrade before loosening.
  - b. Thoroughly blend planting soil off-site before spreading or spread topsoil, apply soil amendments and fertilizer on surface, and thoroughly blend planting soil.
    - 1) Delay mixing fertilizer with planting soil if planting will not proceed within a few days.
    - 2) Mix lime with dry soil before mixing fertilizer.
  - c. Spread planting soil to a depth of 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 6 inches (150 mm) **OR** 8 inches (200 mm), **as directed**, but not less than required to meet finish grades after light rolling and natural settlement. Do not spread if planting soil or subgrade is frozen, muddy, or excessively wet.
    - 1) Spread approximately 1/2 the thickness of planting soil over loosened subgrade. Mix thoroughly into top 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 4 inches (100 mm), **as directed**, of subgrade. Spread remainder of planting soil.
    - 2) Reduce elevation of planting soil to allow for soil thickness of sod.
3. Unchanged Subgrades: If turf is to be planted in areas unaltered or undisturbed by excavating, grading, or surface-soil stripping operations, prepare surface soil as follows:
  - a. Remove existing grass, vegetation, and turf. Do not mix into surface soil.
  - b. Loosen surface soil to a depth of at least 6 inches (150 mm) **OR** 8 inches (200 mm), **as directed**. Apply soil amendments and fertilizers according to planting soil mix proportions and mix thoroughly into top 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 6 inches (150 mm), **as directed**, of soil. Till soil to a homogeneous mixture of fine texture.
    - 1) Apply superphosphate fertilizer directly to surface soil before loosening.
  - c. Remove stones larger than 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, in any dimension and sticks, roots, trash, and other extraneous matter.



- d. Legally dispose of waste material, including grass, vegetation, and turf, off the Owner's property.
  4. Finish Grading: Grade planting areas to a smooth, uniform surface plane with loose, uniformly fine texture. Grade to within plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm) of finish elevation. Roll and rake, remove ridges, and fill depressions to meet finish grades. Limit finish grading to areas that can be planted in the immediate future.
  5. Moisten prepared area before planting if soil is dry. Water thoroughly and allow surface to dry before planting. Do not create muddy soil.
  6. Before planting, obtain the Owner's acceptance of finish grading; restore planting areas if eroded or otherwise disturbed after finish grading.
- C. Preparation For Erosion-Control Materials
1. Prepare area as specified in "Turf Area Preparation" Article.
  2. For erosion-control mats, install planting soil in two lifts, with second lift equal to thickness of erosion-control mats. Install erosion-control mat and fasten as recommended by material manufacturer.
  3. Fill cells of erosion-control mat with planting soil and compact before planting.
  4. For erosion-control blanket or mesh, install from top of slope, working downward, and as recommended by material manufacturer for site conditions. Fasten as recommended by material manufacturer.
  5. Moisten prepared area before planting if surface is dry. Water thoroughly and allow surface to dry before planting. Do not create muddy soil.
- D. Preparation For Grass-Paving Materials
1. Reduce subgrade elevation soil to allow for thickness of grass-paving system. Grade planting areas to a smooth, uniform surface plane with loose, uniformly fine texture. Grade so that installed paving is within plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm) of finish elevation. Roll and rake, remove ridges, and fill depressions.
  2. Install base course **OR** sand course **OR** base course and sand course, **as directed**, and sandy loam soil mix **OR** proprietary growing mix **OR** soil for paving fill, **as directed**, as recommended by paving-material manufacturer for site conditions; comply with details shown on Drawings. Compact according to paving-material manufacturer's written instructions.
  3. Install paving mat and fasten according to paving-material manufacturer's written instructions.
  4. Before planting, fill cells of paving mat with planting soil **OR** sandy loam soil mix **OR** proprietary growing mix **OR** sand half full, **as directed**, and compact according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  5. Moisten prepared area before planting if surface is dry. Water thoroughly and allow surface to dry before planting. Do not create muddy soil.
- E. Seeding
1. Sow seed with spreader or seeding machine. Do not broadcast or drop seed when wind velocity exceeds 5 mph (8 km/h). Evenly distribute seed by sowing equal quantities in two directions at right angles to each other.
    - a. Do not use wet seed or seed that is moldy or otherwise damaged.
    - b. Do not seed against existing trees. Limit extent of seed to outside edge of planting saucer.
  2. Sow seed at a total rate of 2 lb/1000 sq. ft. (0.9 kg/92.9 sq. m) **OR** 3 to 4 lb/1000 sq. ft. (1.4 to 1.8 kg/92.9 sq. m) **OR** 5 to 8 lb/1000 sq. ft. (2.3 to 3.6 kg/92.9 sq. m), **as directed**.
  3. Rake seed lightly into top 1/8 inch (3 mm) of soil, roll lightly, and water with fine spray.
  4. Protect seeded areas with slopes exceeding 1:4 with erosion-control blankets and 1:6 with erosion-control fiber mesh installed and stapled according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  5. Protect seeded areas with erosion-control mats where shown on Drawings; install and anchor according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  6. Protect seeded areas with slopes not exceeding 1:6 by spreading straw mulch. Spread uniformly at a minimum rate of 2 tons/acre (42 kg/92.9 sq. m) to form a continuous blanket 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in loose thickness over seeded areas. Spread by hand, blower, or other suitable equipment.





- a. Anchor straw mulch by crimping into soil with suitable mechanical equipment.
  - b. Bond straw mulch by spraying with asphalt emulsion at a rate of 10 to 13 gal./1000 sq. ft. (38 to 49 L/92.9 sq. m). Take precautions to prevent damage or staining of structures or other plantings adjacent to mulched areas. Immediately clean damaged or stained areas.
7. Protect seeded areas from hot, dry weather or drying winds by applying compost mulch **OR** peat mulch **OR** planting soil, **as directed**, within 24 hours after completing seeding operations. Soak areas, scatter mulch uniformly to a thickness of 3/16 inch (4.8 mm), and roll surface smooth.
- F. Hydroseeding
1. Hydroseeding: Mix specified seed, fertilizer, and fiber mulch in water, using equipment specifically designed for hydroseed application. Continue mixing until uniformly blended into homogeneous slurry suitable for hydraulic application.
    - a. Mix slurry with nonasphaltic **OR** asphalt-emulsion **OR** fiber-mulch manufacturer's recommended, **as directed**, tackifier.
    - b. Apply slurry uniformly to all areas to be seeded in a one-step process. Apply slurry at a rate so that mulch component is deposited at not less than 1500-lb/acre (15.6-kg/92.9 sq. m) dry weight, and seed component is deposited at not less than the specified seed-sowing rate.  
**OR**  
Apply slurry uniformly to all areas to be seeded in a two-step process. Apply first slurry coat at a rate so that mulch component is deposited at not less than 500-lb/acre (5.2-kg/92.9 sq. m) dry weight, and seed component is deposited at not less than the specified seed-sowing rate. Apply slurry cover coat of fiber mulch (hydromulching) at a rate of 1000 lb/acre (10.4 kg/92.9 sq. m).
- G. Sodding
1. Lay sod within 24 hours of harvesting. Do not lay sod if dormant or if ground is frozen or muddy.
  2. Lay sod to form a solid mass with tightly fitted joints. Butt ends and sides of sod; do not stretch or overlap. Stagger sod strips or pads to offset joints in adjacent courses. Avoid damage to subgrade or sod during installation. Tamp and roll lightly to ensure contact with subgrade, eliminate air pockets, and form a smooth surface. Work sifted soil or fine sand into minor cracks between pieces of sod; remove excess to avoid smothering sod and adjacent grass.
    - a. Lay sod across angle of slopes exceeding 1:3.
    - b. Anchor sod on slopes exceeding 1:6 with wood pegs or steel staples spaced as recommended by sod manufacturer but not less than 2 anchors per sod strip to prevent slippage.
  3. Saturate sod with fine water spray within two hours of planting. During first week after planting, water daily or more frequently as necessary to maintain moist soil to a minimum depth of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) below sod.
- H. Plugging
1. Plant plugs in holes or furrows, spaced 12 inches (300 mm) **OR** 18 inches (450 mm), **as directed**, apart in both directions. On slopes, contour furrows to near level.
- I. Sprigging
1. Plant freshly shredded sod sprigs in furrows 1 to 1-1/2 inches (25 to 38 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 to 2 inches (38 to 50 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 to 3 inches (64 to 75 mm), **as directed**, deep. Place individual sprigs with roots and portions of stem in moistened soil, 6 inches (150 mm) **OR** 12 inches (300 mm), **as directed**, apart in rows 10 inches (250 mm) **OR** 18 inches (450 mm), **as directed**, apart, and fill furrows without covering growing tips. Lightly roll and firm soil around sprigs after planting.
  2. Broadcast sprigs uniformly over prepared surface at a rate of 10 cu. ft./1000 sq. ft. (0.28 cu. m/92.9 sq. m) and mechanically force sprigs into lightly moistened soil.
    - a. Spread a 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) thick layer of compost mulch **OR** peat mulch **OR** planting soil, **as directed**, on sprigs.
    - b. Lightly roll and firm soil around sprigs after planting.



- c. Water sprigs immediately after planting and keep moist by frequent watering until well rooted.

J. Turf Renovation

1. Renovate existing turf.
2. Renovate existing turf damaged by Contractor's operations, such as storage of materials or equipment and movement of vehicles.
  - a. Reestablish turf where settlement or washouts occur or where minor regrading is required.
  - b. Install new planting soil as required.
3. Remove sod and vegetation from diseased or unsatisfactory turf areas; do not bury in soil.
4. Remove topsoil containing foreign materials such as oil drippings, fuel spills, stones, gravel, and other construction materials resulting from Contractor's operations, and replace with new planting soil.
5. Mow, dethatch, core aerate, and rake existing turf.
6. Remove weeds before seeding. Where weeds are extensive, apply selective herbicides as required. Do not use pre-emergence herbicides.
7. Remove waste and foreign materials, including weeds, soil cores, grass, vegetation, and turf, and legally dispose of them off the Owner's property.
8. Till stripped, bare, and compacted areas thoroughly to a soil depth of 6 inches (150 mm).
9. Apply soil amendments and initial fertilizers required for establishing new turf and mix thoroughly into top 4 inches (100 mm) of existing soil. Install new planting soil to fill low spots and meet finish grades.
10. Apply seed and protect with straw mulch **OR** sod, **as directed**, as required for new turf.
11. Water newly planted areas and keep moist until new turf is established.

K. Turf Maintenance

1. Maintain and establish turf by watering, fertilizing, weeding, mowing, trimming, replanting, and performing other operations as required to establish healthy, viable turf. Roll, regrade, and replant bare or eroded areas and remulch to produce a uniformly smooth turf. Provide materials and installation the same as those used in the original installation.
  - a. Fill in as necessary soil subsidence that may occur because of settling or other processes. Replace materials and turf damaged or lost in areas of subsidence.
  - b. In areas where mulch has been disturbed by wind or maintenance operations, add new mulch and anchor as required to prevent displacement.
  - c. Apply treatments as required to keep turf and soil free of pests and pathogens or disease. Use integrated pest management practices whenever possible to minimize the use of pesticides and reduce hazards.
2. Watering: Install and maintain temporary piping, hoses, and turf-watering equipment to convey water from sources and to keep turf uniformly moist to a depth of 4 inches (100 mm).
  - a. Schedule watering to prevent wilting, puddling, erosion, and displacement of seed or mulch. Lay out temporary watering system to avoid walking over muddy or newly planted areas.
  - b. Water turf with fine spray at a minimum rate of 1 inch (25 mm) per week unless rainfall precipitation is adequate.
3. Mow turf as soon as top growth is tall enough to cut. Repeat mowing to maintain specified height without cutting more than 1/3 of grass height. Remove no more than 1/3 of grass-leaf growth in initial or subsequent mowings. Do not delay mowing until grass blades bend over and become matted. Do not mow when grass is wet. Schedule initial and subsequent mowings to maintain the following grass height:
  - a. Mow bentgrass to a height of 1/2 inch (13 mm) or less.
  - b. Mow bermudagrass to a height of 1/2 to 1 inch (13 to 25 mm).
  - c. Mow carpetgrass, centipedegrass, perennial ryegrass, and zoysiagrass to a height of 1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm).
  - d. Mow Kentucky bluegrass, buffalograss, annual ryegrass, and chewings red fescue to a height of 1-1/2 to 2 inches (38 to 50 mm).



- e. Mow bahiagrass, turf-type tall fescue, and St. Augustinegrass to a height of 2 to 3 inches (50 to 75 mm).
4. Turf Postfertilization: Apply fertilizer after initial mowing and when grass is dry.
  - a. Use fertilizer that will provide actual nitrogen of at least 1 lb/1000 sq. ft. (0.45 kg/92.9 sq. m) to turf area.
- L. Satisfactory Turf
  1. Turf installations shall meet the following criteria as determined by Architect:
    - a. Satisfactory Seeded Turf: At end of maintenance period, a healthy, uniform, close stand of grass has been established, free of weeds and surface irregularities, with coverage exceeding 90 percent over any 10 sq. ft. (0.92 sq. m) and bare spots not exceeding 5 by 5 inches (125 by 125 mm).
    - b. Satisfactory Sodded Turf: At end of maintenance period, a healthy, well-rooted, even-colored, viable turf has been established, free of weeds, open joints, bare areas, and surface irregularities.
    - c. Satisfactory Plugged Turf: At end of maintenance period, the required number of plugs has been established as well-rooted, viable patches of grass, and areas between plugs are free of weeds and other undesirable vegetation.
    - d. Satisfactory Sprigged Turf: At end of maintenance period, the required number of sprigs has been established as well-rooted, viable plants, and areas between sprigs are free of weeds and other undesirable vegetation.
  2. Use specified materials to reestablish turf that does not comply with requirements and continue maintenance until turf is satisfactory.
- M. Meadow
  1. Sow seed with spreader or seeding machine. Do not broadcast or drop seed when wind velocity exceeds 5 mph (8 km/h). Evenly distribute seed by sowing equal quantities in two directions at right angles to each other.
    - a. Do not use wet seed or seed that is moldy or otherwise damaged.
  2. Sow seed at a total rate of 4 oz./1000 sq. ft. (113 g/92.9 sq. m) **OR** 5 oz./1000 sq. ft. (142 g/92.9 sq. m) **OR** 6 oz./1000 sq. ft. (170 g/92.9 sq. m), **as directed**.
  3. Brush seed into top 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) of soil, roll lightly, and water with fine spray.
  4. Protect seeded areas from hot, dry weather or drying winds by applying peat or compost mulch within 24 hours after completing seeding operations. Soak areas, scatter mulch uniformly to a thickness of 3/16 inch (4.8 mm), and roll surface smooth.
  5. Water newly planted areas and keep moist until meadow is established.
- N. Meadow Maintenance
  1. Maintain and establish meadow by watering, weeding, mowing, trimming, replanting, and performing other operations as required to establish a healthy, viable meadow. Roll, regrade, and replant bare or eroded areas and remulch. Provide materials and installation the same as those used in the original installation.
    - a. Fill in as necessary soil subsidence that may occur because of settling or other processes. Replace materials and meadow damaged or lost in areas of subsidence.
    - b. In areas where mulch has been disturbed by wind or maintenance operations, add new mulch and anchor as required to prevent displacement.
    - c. Apply treatments as required to keep meadow and soil free of pests and pathogens or disease. Use integrated pest management practices whenever possible to minimize the use of pesticides and reduce hazards.
  2. Watering: Install and maintain temporary piping, hoses, and meadow-watering equipment to convey water from sources and to keep meadow uniformly moist.
    - a. Schedule watering to prevent wilting, puddling, erosion, and displacement of seed or mulch. Lay out temporary watering system to avoid walking over muddy or newly planted areas.
    - b. Water meadow with fine spray at a minimum rate of 1/2 inch (13 mm) per week for four **OR** six **OR** eight, **as directed**, weeks after planting unless rainfall precipitation is adequate.



- 
- O. Pesticide Application
1. Apply pesticides and other chemical products and biological control agents in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and manufacturer's written recommendations. Coordinate applications with the Owner's operations and others in proximity to the Work. Notify the Owner before each application is performed.
  2. Post-Emergent Herbicides (Selective and Non-Selective): Apply only as necessary to treat already-germinated weeds and in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations.
- P. Cleanup And Protection
1. Promptly remove soil and debris created by turf work from paved areas. Clean wheels of vehicles before leaving site to avoid tracking soil onto roads, walks, or other paved areas.
  2. Erect temporary fencing or barricades and warning signs as required to protect newly planted areas from traffic. Maintain fencing and barricades throughout initial maintenance period and remove after plantings are established.
  3. Remove nondegradable erosion-control measures after grass establishment period.

END OF SECTION 32 18 23 13



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
32 18 23 13	11 68 23 13	Playing Fields
32 18 23 23	11 68 23 13	Playing Fields
32 18 23 23	32 18 23 13	Lawns And Grasses



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

## SECTION 32 18 23 29 - COLORED ATHLETIC WEARING SURFACE

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of colored athletic wearing surface on asphaltic concrete base. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

- B. Submittals: Submit product data and manufacturer's application instruction.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

- A. Manufacturer: Athletic wearing surface shall be the "Plexipave" system by California Products Corporation, 169 Waverly Street, Cambridge Ma. 02139 or approved equal.

- B. Plexipave Court Patch Binder prepared as per manufacturers recommendations.

- C. California Acrylic Resurfacer prepared as per manufacturers recommendations.

- D. Fortified Plexipave Job Mix prepared as per manufacturers recommendations.

- E. Plexipave Color Base as required to meet project requirements.

- F. Plexichrome Color as required to meet project requirements.

### 1.3 EXECUTION:

- A. Personnel used to install athletic wearing surface must have a minimum of three years experience and at least three jobs with similar square footage of placement.

- B. When required, asphaltic concrete base shall be placed to conform to manufacturer's planarity requirements.

- C. Protect adjacent surfaces not to receive coating during application.

- D. All finished surfaces must have a uniform appearance and be free of ridges and tool marks and shall not vary more than 1/8" in 10 feet measured in any direction.

END OF SECTION 32 18 23 29



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



**SECTION 32 18 23 29a - SYNTHETIC TURF****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This section covers the furnishing and/or installation of: synthetic turf with covers for cut-outs; paint lines and markings for football, soccer and baseball fields; the painting of a logo at midfield; line painter equipment, portable blower for ground clean-up, turf vacuum cleaner, and pylon markers. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Submittals:**

1. Turf covers for baseball infield cutouts.
2. Painting template for a logo.
3. Layouts for lines and markings of game fields.
4. Maintenance Manual: 2 copies, providing a full description of materials to be used for maintaining Synthetic Turf System.
5. Manufacturer's literature for line painter equipment, turf vacuum cleaner, and portable blowers.
6. Warranties: For synthetic turf, for line painter equipment, for turf vacuum cleaner, and for portable blowers.
7. Synthetic turf: Sample, technical data and manufacturer's directions for installation and maintenance.
8. Line Paint: Manufacturer's literature and application directions.

**C. Warranties: The warranty submitted shall have the following characteristics:**

1. Shall provide full coverage for eight (8) years, from date of first use.
2. Shall warrant materials and workmanship.
3. Shall warrant that the materials installed meet or exceed the product specifications.
4. Shall have a provision to either: (a) make repairs or (b) replace such portions of the installed materials that are no longer serviceable, to maintain a serviceable and playable surface, and make good without cost or expense to the Owner.
5. Shall state all limitations and exclusions.
6. Shall be a warranty from a single source covering workmanship and all self-manufactured or procured materials.
7. Warranty shall be for full value, not prorated.

**1.2 PRODUCTS****A. Synthetic Turf**

1. Synthetic turf shall be Astro Turf-8, by Astro Turf Industries, Inc., 809 Kenner Street, Dalton, Georgia 30720, or approved equivalent.
2. Turf fabric: Knitted of nylon 6.6 ribbon with a polyester filament backing yarns and weighing approximately 63 ounces per square yard.
3. Pile material: 500 denier, textured nylon, 6.6 ribbon with a 1/2-inch pile height to give the appearance of mown grass; weight 50 ounces per square yard; pigmented green and stabilized for outdoor exposure.
4. Backing Yarns: High strength polyester fiber yarns, heat set for maximum dimensional stability.

**B. Underpad**

1. Underpad: 5/8-inch thick, energy-absorbing, made of closed cell foam, reinforced with carbon black, and perforated for drainage.
2. Pad density: 7.5 pounds per cubic foot.
3. Compression module: 25%, 8 pounds per square inch.



4. Perforations: 3/8-inch holes, 3 on center in a staggered pattern, factory perforated.
- C. Adhesives for bonding the synthetic turf to the pad shall be weather-resistant to withstand the climate of the site and shall be compatible with the materials of the turf and pad.
  - D. All butt seams of the turf surface shall be sewn and glued.
  - E. Paint shall be Sherwin-Williams "Watch-Guard System Metalex" semi-gloss enamel, or approved equivalent.
  - F. Line painter shall be Model 98-331, as manufactured by Binks Co., or approved equivalent, with 5 gallon pressure-tested tank, adjustable line marker, quick disconnect for ease of cleaning, 12" front pneumatic wheels, 5HP 4-cycle air-cooled gasoline engine, air-actuated spray gun, dual cylinder compressor.
  - G. Turf vacuum cleaner shall be Model BT-80-VIC, manufactured by the Billy Goat Industries, Inc., Lees Summit, MO, or approved equivalent. Vacuum shall be 8 HP Push-gasoline Big Wheel model complete with 5" intake hose kit (Part No. 800521) exhaust hose kit (Part No. 800077), and caster assembly (Part No. 800065).
  - H. Portable Blower for Ground Cleanup
    1. Windmill "Fast-Blo", Model No. 22B hand-held gas power blower as supplied by A.M. Leonard Inc., Piqua, Ohio, or approved equivalent.
    2. Variable speed control, 2-cycle gas engine type, weighing 10 pounds.
  - I. Football Pylons: Model No. "WP-12"
    1. "Ethafoam", water and mildew resistant, size 4" x 4" x18", of standard bright color.
    2. Weighted: Springs back upon impact.
    3. Provide two (2) sets of twelve (12) pylons for a total of 24, for football field.
  - J. Soccer Flags
    1. Soccer Flags: Model "WSF" as manufactured by Marty Gilman, Inc., Gilman, CT. 06336, or approved equivalent.
    2. Provide two (2) sets of four (4) flags for a total of eight, for soccer field.
  - K. Baseball Infield Conversion System
    1. Submit Shop Drawings indicating method of detailing conversion panels for approval.
    2. Panels shall be removable in conversion area.
    3. Cut panels from same synthetic turf material as football field, to match.
    4. Provide spacers and pad wedges.
- 1.3 EXECUTION
- A. Before any synthetic turf is installed, the Contractor shall inspect the asphaltic concrete base and, when satisfied with its condition, shall notify the Owner in writing of acceptance of the base.
  - B. A manufacturer's representative shall be present at the job site when the synthetic turf is installed. Turf shall be laid in strict accordance with the manufacturer's instructions by workmen who are skilled in this type of work.
  - C. Turf material shall be protected before, during and after installation.
  - D. Installed work and materials of other trades shall be protected.



- E. Assurance
1. Qualified bidders must have successfully installed at least five (5) other outdoor installations of synthetic stadium surface within the last three (3) years of a type described herein.
  2. The field installation shall be made under the direct, active, personal supervision of technical representatives of the synthetic turf manufacturer. All key positions shall be manned by experienced employees of the installer.
  3. The synthetic turf contractor shall keep a full-time superintendent on the project during the installation of the synthetic turf.
  4. The synthetic turf system supplied shall be of previous acceptance at all levels of competition, including University and Professional.
- F. Underpad Installation
1. At "float drain" system: strip glue underpad at all joints.
  2. At "vertical drain" system: provide intermittent gluing at a spread rate of 150-160 sq. ft./gal.
  3. Sew Pad joints, using thread and stitching recommended by the synthetic turf manufacturer.
  4. Lay out work so that seams of the underpad are offset from the seams of turf, but not less than 12".
- G. Turf Installation
1. The synthetic turf shall be bonded to the pad with no wrinkles, ripples or bubbles. Slits in the fabric to relieve such defects are not permitted. Joints in the turf shall be offset from joints of the pad by not less than 12".
  2. Side seams in the fabric shall be at 15'-0" intervals, at 5-yard lines for the football field. There shall be no cross or head seams.
  3. Sew seams with high strength polyester fiber cord and lay with a bed of adhesive. Seams shall be flat, tight and permanent, with no separation or fraying.
  4. Covers for the baseball infield cut-outs shall be flush and tight. Install covers and check for proper fittings.
  5. Insert edges of turf in trench drain receptor at perimeter of field for "float drain" systems; terminated edges at concrete curb and wood nailer at "vertical drain" systems.
  6. Provide covering caps for football and soccer goal posts and markers within the playing fields.
  7. At completion, remove all excess materials and all debris resulting from operations of Work in this Section. Leave entire Work in neat, clean condition.
- H. Painting
1. Lines and markings for game fields shall be painted in accordance with the approved Shop Drawings.
  2. Any logo shall be painted at midfield in accordance with the approved Shop Drawings.
- I. Maintenance
1. Manual shall describe the materials, devices and procedures to be followed for use and maintenance of the synthetic turf system, including the cleaning, paint application and removal, and conversion techniques. Include any precautions required by the warranty.
  2. Training: Give demonstrations and training sessions, devoting a sufficient amount of time to thoroughly instruct the Owner's personnel in operation and maintenance (for cleaning, conversion of baseball-to-football, and line striping) of the synthetic turf system and equipment.
- J. Acceptance
1. Before the acceptance of the work, should any imperfect areas or spots develop in the surface, such areas shall be removed and replaced with new materials.
  2. All such repair work shall be done at no additional cost to the Owner.
- K. At the completion of the Work, remove all material scraps, debris, and equipment from the site and leave the synthetic turf area ready for use.



---

END OF SECTION 32 18 23 29a



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
32 18 23 29	32 17 23 13	Track, Court, And Playground Markings
32 18 23 29	11 68 23 13	Playing Fields
32 18 23 33	32 18 23 29	Colored Athletic Wearing Surface
32 18 23 33	32 18 23 29a	Synthetic Turf
32 18 23 33	32 17 23 13	Track, Court, And Playground Markings
32 18 23 33	32 18 16 13a	Synthetic Running Track Surface
32 18 23 39	32 18 23 29	Colored Athletic Wearing Surface
32 18 23 39	32 18 23 29a	Synthetic Turf
32 18 23 39	32 17 23 13	Track, Court, And Playground Markings
32 18 23 39	32 18 16 13a	Synthetic Running Track Surface
32 18 23 53	32 17 23 13	Track, Court, And Playground Markings
32 18 23 53	11 68 23 13	Playing Fields
32 18 23 56	32 18 23 29	Colored Athletic Wearing Surface
32 18 23 56	32 18 23 29a	Synthetic Turf
32 18 23 56	32 17 23 13	Track, Court, And Playground Markings
32 18 23 56	11 68 23 13	Playing Fields
32 18 23 61	32 18 23 29	Colored Athletic Wearing Surface
32 18 23 61	32 18 23 29a	Synthetic Turf
32 18 23 61	32 17 23 13	Track, Court, And Playground Markings



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 32 31 11 00 - CHAIN-LINK FENCES AND GATES**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for chain-link fences and gates. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Chain-link fences.
  - b. Gates: Manually and Motor operated, horizontal slide and swing.

## C. Performance Requirements

1. Delegated Design: Design chain-link fences and gates, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. Structural Performance: Chain-link fence and gate framework shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7:
  - a. Minimum Post Size and Maximum Spacing: Determine according to CLFMI WLG 2445, based on mesh size and pattern specified and on the following:
    - 1) Wind Loads: **<Insert loads required for Project location>**.
    - 2) Exposure Category: **B OR C OR D, as directed**.
    - 3) Fence Height: 10 feet (3 m).
    - 4) Material Group: **IA, ASTM F 1043, Schedule 40 steel pipe OR IC, electric-resistance-welded round steel pipe, as directed**.
3. Lightning Protection System: Maximum grounding-resistance value of 25 ohms under normal dry conditions.

## D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for chain-link fences and gates.
  - a. Fence and gate posts, rails, and fittings.
  - b. Chain-link fabric, reinforcements, and attachments.
  - c. Accessories: Privacy slats **OR** Barbed wire **OR** Barbed tape, **as directed**.
  - d. Gates and hardware.
  - e. Gate operators, including operating instructions.
  - f. Motors: Show nameplate data, ratings, characteristics, and mounting arrangements.
2. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work. Show accessories, hardware, gate operation, and operational clearances.
  - a. Gate Operator: Show locations and details for installing operator components, switches, and controls. Indicate motor size, electrical characteristics, drive arrangement, mounting, and grounding provisions.
  - b. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Samples: Prepared on Samples of size indicated below:
  - a. Polymer-Coated Components: In 6-inch (150-mm) lengths for components and on full-sized units for accessories.
4. Delegated-Design Submittal: For chain-link fences and gate framework indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.



5. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer **OR** testing agency **OR** factory-authorized service representative, **as directed**.
6. Product Certificates: For each type of chain-link fence, operator, and gate, from manufacturer.
7. Product Test Reports: For framing strength according to ASTM F 1043.
8. Field quality-control reports.
9. Operation and Maintenance Data: For the following to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals:
  - a. Polymer finishes.
  - b. Gate hardware.
  - c. Gate operator.
10. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing fence grounding. Member company of NETA or an NRTL.
  - a. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.
2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. Emergency Access Requirements: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for gates with automatic gate operators serving as a required means of access.
4. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### F. Project Conditions

1. Field Measurements: Verify layout information for chain-link fences and gates shown on Drawings in relation to property survey and existing structures. Verify dimensions by field measurements.

#### G. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer **OR** Installer, **as directed**, agrees to repair or replace components of chain-link fences and gates that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - a. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) Faulty operation of gate operators and controls.
    - 2) Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
  - b. Warranty Period: Five **OR** 15, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Chain-Link Fence Fabric

1. General: Provide fabric in one-piece heights measured between top and bottom of outer edge of selvage knuckle or twist. Comply with CLFMI Product Manual and with requirements indicated below:
  - a. Fabric Height: As indicated on Drawings **OR** As directed.
  - b. Steel Wire Fabric: Wire with a diameter of 0.192 inch (4.88 mm) **OR** 0.148 inch (3.76 mm) **OR** 0.120 inch (3.05 mm) **OR** 0.113 inch (2.87 mm), **as directed**.
    - 1) Mesh Size: 2-1/8 inches (54 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**.
    - 2) Aluminum-Coated Fabric: ASTM A 491, Type I, 0.40 oz./sq. ft. (122 g/sq. m) **OR** 0.35 oz./sq. ft. (107 g/sq. m) **OR** 0.30 oz./sq. ft. (92 g/sq. m), **as directed**.
    - 3) Zinc-Coated Fabric: ASTM A 392, Type II, Class 1, 1.2 oz./sq. ft. (366 g/sq. m) **OR** Class 2, 2.0 oz./sq. ft. (610 g/sq. m), **as directed**, with zinc coating applied before **OR** after, **as directed**, weaving.





- 4) Zn-5-Al-MM Aluminum-Mischmetal-Coated Fabric: ASTM F 1345, Type III, Class 1, 0.60 oz./sq. ft. (183 g/sq. m) **OR** Class 2, 1.0 oz./sq. ft. (305 g/sq. m), **as directed**.
- 5) Polymer-Coated Fabric: ASTM F 668, Class 1 **OR** Class 2a **OR** Class 2b, **as directed**, over aluminum **OR** zinc **OR** Zn-5-Al-MM-alloy, **as directed**, -coated steel wire.
  - a) Color: Dark green **OR** Olive green **OR** Brown **OR** Black **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**, complying with ASTM F 934.
- 6) Coat selvage ends of fabric that is metallic coated before the weaving process with manufacturer's standard clear protective coating.
- c. Aluminum Wire Fabric: ASTM F 1183, with mill **OR** caustic-cleaned or etched, **as directed**, finish, and wire diameter of 0.148 inch (3.76 mm) **OR** 0.192 inch (4.88 mm), **as directed**.
  - 1) Mesh Size: 2 inches (50 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**.
- d. Selvage: Knuckled at both selvages **OR** Twisted top and knuckled bottom, **as directed**.

B. Fence Framing

1. Posts and Rails: Comply with ASTM F 1043 for framing, including rails, braces, and line; terminal; and corner posts. Provide members with minimum dimensions and wall thickness according to ASTM F 1043 or ASTM F 1083, **as directed**, based on the following:
  - a. Fence Height: 72 inches (1830 mm) **OR** 96 inches (2440 mm) **OR** As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
  - b. Light Industrial Strength: Material Group IC-L, round steel pipe, electric-resistance-welded pipe **OR** Group II-L, roll-formed steel C-section shapes **OR** Group III-L, hot-rolled H-beam shapes **OR** Group IV, Alternative Design, **as directed**.
    - 1) Line Post: 1.9 inches (48 mm) in diameter **OR** 2.375 inches (60 mm) in diameter **OR** 2.875 inches (73 mm) in diameter **OR** 2.25 by 1.7 inches (57 by 43 mm), **as directed**.
    - 2) End, Corner and Pull Post: 2.375 inches (60 mm) **OR** 2.875 inches (73 mm) **OR** 4.0 inches (102 mm) **OR** 2.25 by 1.7 inches (57 by 43 mm), **as directed**.
  - c. Heavy Industrial Strength: Material Group IA, round steel pipe, Schedule 40 **OR** Group IC, round steel pipe, electric-resistance-welded pipe **OR** Group II, roll-formed steel C-section shapes **OR** Group III, hot-rolled H-beam shapes **OR** Group IV, Alternative Design, **as directed**.
    - 1) Line Post: 1.9 inches (48 mm) in diameter **OR** 2.375 inches (60 mm) in diameter **OR** 2.875 inches (73 mm) in diameter **OR** 4.0 inches (102 mm) in diameter **OR** 6.625 inches (168 mm) in diameter **OR** 1.875 by 1.63 inches (48 by 41 mm) **OR** 2.25 by 1.70 inches (67 by 43 mm) **OR** 3.25 by 2.50 inches (83 by 64 mm), **as directed**.
    - 2) End, Corner and Pull Post: 2.375 inches (60 mm) in diameter **OR** 2.875 inches (73 mm) in diameter **OR** 4.0 inches (102 mm) in diameter **OR** 6.625 inches (168 mm) in diameter **OR** 2.25 by 1.70 inches (67 by 43 mm) **OR** 3.25 by 2.50 inches (83 by 64 mm) **OR** 3.5 by 1.5 inches (89 by 38 mm), **as directed**.
  - d. Horizontal Framework Members: Intermediate, top and bottom rails, **as directed**, complying with ASTM F 1043.
    - 1) Top Rail: 1.66 inches (42 mm) in diameter **OR** 1.25 by 1.63 inches (32 by 41 mm), **as directed**.
  - e. Brace Rails: Comply with ASTM F 1043.
  - f. Metallic Coating for Steel Framing:
    - 1) Type A, consisting of not less than minimum 2.0-oz./sq. ft. (0.61-kg/sq. m) average zinc coating per ASTM A 123/A 123M or 4.0-oz./sq. ft. (1.22-kg/sq. m) zinc coating per ASTM A 653/A 653M.
    - 2) Type B, zinc with organic overcoat, consisting of a minimum of 0.9 oz./sq. ft. (0.27 kg/sq. m) of zinc after welding, a chromate conversion coating, and a clear, verifiable polymer film.
    - 3) External, Type B, zinc with organic overcoat, consisting of a minimum of 0.9 oz./sq. ft. (0.27 kg/sq. m) of zinc after welding, a chromate conversion coating, and a clear,



verifiable polymer film. Internal, Type D, consisting of 81 percent, not less than 0.3-mil- (0.0076-mm-) thick, zinc-pigmented coating.

- 4) Type C, Zn-5-Al-MM alloy, consisting of not less than 1.8-oz./sq. ft. (0.55-kg/sq. m) coating.
- 5) Coatings: Any coating above.
- g. Polymer coating over metallic coating.
  - 1) Color: Match chain-link fabric **OR** Dark green **OR** Olive green **OR** Brown **OR** Black **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**, complying with ASTM F 934.

#### C. Tension Wire

1. Metallic-Coated Steel Wire: 0.177-inch- (4.5-mm-) diameter, marcelled tension wire complying with ASTM A 817 and ASTM A 824, with the following metallic coating:
  - a. Type I, aluminum coated (aluminized).
  - b. Type II, zinc coated (galvanized) by hot-dip **OR** electrolytic, **as directed**, process, with the following minimum coating weight:
    - 1) Class 3: Not less than 0.8 oz./sq. ft. (244 g/sq. m) of uncoated wire surface.
    - 2) Class 4: Not less than 1.2 oz./sq. ft. (366 g/sq. m) of uncoated wire surface.
    - 3) Class 5: Not less than 2 oz./sq. ft. (610 g/sq. m) of uncoated wire surface.
    - 4) Matching chain-link fabric coating weight.
  - c. Type III, Zn-5-Al-MM alloy with the following minimum coating weight:
    - 1) Class 60: Not less than 0.6 oz./sq. ft. (183 g/sq. m) of uncoated wire surface.
    - 2) Class 100: Not less than 1 oz./sq. ft. (305 g/sq. m) of uncoated wire surface.
    - 3) Matching chain-link fabric coating weight.
2. Polymer-Coated Steel Wire: 0.177-inch- (4.5-mm-) **OR** 0.148-inch- (3.8-mm-), **as directed**, diameter, tension wire complying with ASTM F 1664, Class 1 **OR** Class 2a **OR** Class 2b, **as directed**, over aluminum **OR** zinc **OR** Zn-5-Al-MM-alloy, **as directed**, -coated steel wire.
  - a. Color: Match chain-link fabric **OR** Dark green **OR** Olive green **OR** Brown **OR** Black **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**, complying with ASTM F 934.
3. Aluminum Wire: 0.192-inch- (4.88-mm-) diameter tension wire, mill finished, complying with ASTM B 211 (ASTM B211M), Alloy 6061-T94 with 50,000-psi (344-MPa) minimum tensile strength.

#### D. Swing Gates

1. General: Comply with ASTM F 900 for gate posts and single **OR** double, **as directed**, swing gate types. Provide automated vehicular gates that comply with ASTM F 2200, **as directed**.
  - a. Gate Leaf Width: 36 inches (914 mm) **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  - b. Gate Fabric Height: 72 inches (1830 mm) or less **OR** More than 72 inches (1830 mm) **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
2. Pipe and Tubing:
  - a. Zinc-Coated Steel: Comply with ASTM F 1043 and ASTM F 1083; protective coating and finish to match fence framing **OR** manufacturer's standard protective coating and finish, **as directed**.
  - b. Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B 429/B 429M; mill **OR** manufacturer's standard, **as directed**, finish.
  - c. Gate Posts: Round tubular steel **OR** Rectangular tubular steel **OR** Round tubular aluminum **OR** Rectangular tubular aluminum, **as directed**.
  - d. Gate Frames and Bracing: Round tubular steel **OR** Rectangular tubular steel **OR** Round tubular aluminum **OR** Rectangular tubular aluminum, **as directed**.
3. Frame Corner Construction: Welded **OR** Assembled with corner fittings, **as directed**.
4. Extended Gate Posts and Frame Members: Extend gate posts and frame end members above top of chain-link fabric at both ends of gate frame 12 inches (300 mm) **OR** as indicated, **as directed**, to attach barbed wire **OR** tape, **as directed**, assemblies.
5. Hardware:



- a. Hinges: 180-degree inward **OR** 180-degree outward **OR** 360-degree inward and outward, **as directed**, swing.
  - b. Latches permitting operation from both sides of gate with provision for padlocking accessible from both sides of gate, **as directed**.
  - c. Padlock and Chain: Owner furnished.
  - d. Lock: Manufacturer's standard internal device furnished in lieu of gate latch, **as directed**.
  - e. Closer: Manufacturer's standard, **as directed**.
- E. Horizontal-Slide Gates
1. General: Comply with ASTM F 1184 for gate posts and single **OR** double, **as directed**, sliding gate types. Provide automated vehicular gates that comply with ASTM F 2200, **as directed**.
    - a. Classification: Type I Overhead Slide (opening widths to 40 feet (12.2 m) with an overhead clearance of up to 22 feet (6.7 m)).
      - 1) Gate Leaf Width: As indicated **OR** As directed.
      - 2) Gate Fabric Height: 72 inches (1830 mm) or less **OR** More than 72 inches (1830 mm) **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
    - b. Classification: Type II Cantilever Slide (opening widths to 30 feet (9.1 m) and heights to 8 feet (2.44 m))
      - 1) Class 1 with external **OR** Class 2 with internal, **as directed**, roller assemblies.
      - 2) Gate Frame Width and Height: 48 inches (1200 mm) wide or less by 72 inches (1830 mm) high or less **OR** More than 48 inches (1200 mm) wide by any height **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  2. Pipe and Tubing:
    - a. Zinc-Coated Steel: Protective coating and finish to match fence framing **OR** Manufacturer's standard protective coating and finish, **as directed**.
    - b. Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B 429/B 429M; mill **OR** manufacturer's standard, **as directed**, finish.
    - c. Gate Posts: Comply with ASTM F 1184. Provide round tubular steel **OR** rectangular tubular steel **OR** round tubular aluminum **OR** rectangular tubular aluminum, **as directed**, posts.
    - d. Gate Frames and Bracing: Round tubular steel **OR** Rectangular tubular steel **OR** Round tubular aluminum **OR** Rectangular tubular aluminum, **as directed**.
  3. Frame Corner Construction: Welded **OR** Assembled with corner fittings, **as directed**.
  4. Extended Gate Posts and Frame Members: Extend gate posts and frame end members above top of chain-link fabric at both ends of gate frame 12 inches (300 mm) **OR** as indicated, **as directed**, as required to attach barbed wire **OR** tape, **as directed**, assemblies.
  5. Overhead Track Assembly: Manufacturer's standard track, with overhead framing supports, bracing, and accessories, engineered to support size, weight, width, operation, and design of gate and roller assemblies.
  6. Hardware:
    - a. Latches permitting operation from both sides of gate with provision for padlocking accessible from both sides of gate, **as directed**.
    - b. Padlock and Chain: Owner furnished.
    - c. Lock: Manufacturer's standard internal device furnished in lieu of gate latch, **as directed**.
    - d. Hangers, roller assemblies, and stops fabricated from galvanized steel **OR** galvanized malleable iron **OR** mill-finished Grade 319 aluminum-alloy casting with stainless-steel fasteners, **as directed**.
- F. Fittings
1. General: Comply with ASTM F 626.
  2. Post Caps: Provide for each post.
    - a. Provide line post caps with loop to receive tension wire or top rail.
  3. Rail and Brace Ends: For each gate, corner, pull, and end post.
  4. Rail Fittings: Provide the following:
    - a. Top Rail Sleeves: Pressed-steel or round-steel tubing **OR** Aluminum Alloy 6063, **as directed**, not less than 6 inches (152 mm) long.



- b. Rail Clamps: Line and corner boulevard clamps for connecting intermediate, and bottom, **as directed**, rails in the fence line-to-line posts.
5. Tension and Brace Bands: Pressed steel **OR** Aluminum Alloy 6063, **as directed**.
6. Tension Bars: Steel **OR** Aluminum **OR** Fiberglass, **as directed**, length not less than 2 inches (50 mm) shorter than full height of chain-link fabric. Provide one bar for each gate and end post, and two for each corner and pull post, unless fabric is integrally woven into post.
7. Truss Rod Assemblies: Steel, hot-dip galvanized after threading **OR** Mill-finished aluminum, **as directed**, rod and turnbuckle or other means of adjustment.
8. Barbed Wire Arms: Pressed steel or cast iron **OR** Aluminum, **as directed**, with clips, slots, or other means for attaching strands of barbed wire, and means for attaching to posts **OR** integral with post cap, **as directed**; for each post unless otherwise indicated, and as follows:
- Provide line posts with arms that accommodate top rail or tension wire.
  - Provide corner arms at fence corner posts, unless extended posts are indicated.
  - Type I, single slanted arm.
  - Type II, single vertical arm.
  - Type III, V-shaped arm.
  - Type IV, A-shaped arm.
9. Tie Wires, Clips, and Fasteners: According to ASTM F 626.
- Standard Round Wire Ties: For attaching chain-link fabric to posts, rails, and frames, complying with the following:
    - Hot-Dip Galvanized Steel: 0.106-inch- (2.69-mm-) **OR** 0.148-inch- (3.76-mm-), **as directed**, diameter wire; galvanized coating thickness matching coating thickness of chain-link fence fabric, **as directed**.
    - Aluminum: ASTM B 211 (ASTM B 211M); Alloy 1350-H19; 0.148-inch- (3.76-mm-) **OR** 0.192-inch- (4.88-mm-), **as directed**, diameter, mill-finished wire.
10. Finish:
- Metallic Coating for Pressed Steel or Cast Iron: Not less than 1.2 oz. /sq. ft. (366 g /sq. m) zinc.
    - Polymer coating over metallic coating.
  - Aluminum: Mill finish.
- G. Privacy Slats
- Material: PVC, UV-light stabilized, flame resistant, four ply, **as directed**, not less than 0.006 inch (0.15 mm) **OR** 0.023 inch (0.58 mm), **as directed**, thick; attached to not less than 0.0475-inch- (1.21-mm-) diameter, twisted galvanized wire; hedge-type lattice, **as directed**; sized to fit mesh specified for direction indicated.  
**OR**  
Material: Polyethylene tubular slats, not less than 0.023 inch (0.58 mm) thick, manufactured for chain-link fences from virgin polyethylene containing UV inhibitor, sized to fit mesh specified for direction indicated; with vandal-resistant fasteners and lock strips **OR** fins for increased privacy factor, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Material: Fiber-glass-reinforced plastic, UV-light stabilized, not less than 0.06 inch (1.5 mm) thick, sized to fit mesh specified for direction indicated; with vandal-resistant fasteners and lock strips, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Material: Aluminum, not less than 0.01 inch (0.25 mm) thick, sized to fit mesh specified for direction indicated.  
**OR**  
Material: Redwood, 5/16 inch (7.9 mm) thick, sized to fit mesh specified for direction indicated.
  - Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range **OR** As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
- H. Barbed Wire



1. Steel Barbed Wire: Comply with ASTM A 121, for two-strand barbed wire, 0.099-inch- (2.51-mm-) diameter line wire with 0.080-inch- (2.03-mm-) diameter, four-point round barbs spaced not more than 5 inches (127 mm) o.c.
    - a. Aluminum Coating: Type A.
    - b. Zinc Coating: Type Z, Class 3.
  2. Polymer-Coated, Galvanized-Steel Barbed Wire: Comply with ASTM F 1665 two-strand barbed wire, 0.080-inch- (2.03-mm-) diameter line wire with 0.080-inch- (2.03-mm-) diameter, four-point round aluminum alloy **OR** galvanized-steel, **as directed**, barbs spaced not more than 5 inches (127 mm) o.c.:
    - a. Polymer Coating: Class 1 **OR** Class 2a **OR** Class 2b, **as directed**, over aluminum **OR** zinc **OR** Zn-5-Al-MM-alloy, **as directed**, -coated steel wire.
      - 1) Color: Match chain-link fabric **OR** Dark green **OR** Olive green **OR** Brown **OR** Black **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**, complying with ASTM F 934.
- I. Barbed Tape
1. Wire-Reinforced Tape: ASTM F 1910; with four-point, needle-sharp barbs permanently cold clenched around a core wire.
    - a. Core Wire: High-tensile-strength, zinc-coated steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.
  2. Clips: Stainless steel, 0.065 inch (1.7 mm) thick by 0.375 inch (9.5 mm) wide, capable of withstanding a minimum 150-lbf (667-N) pull load to limit extension of coil, resulting in a concertina pattern when deployed.
  3. Tie Wires: Stainless steel, 0.065 inch (1.7 mm) in diameter.
  4. Fabrication: Continuous coils of barbed tape as defined in ASTM F 1379 for the following characteristics:
    - a. Configuration: Single **OR** Double, **as directed**, coil.
    - b. Style: Helical **OR** Concertina, **as directed**, pattern.
    - c. Coil Diameter(s): 18 inches (457 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 24-inch (610-mm) inner coil and 30-inch (762-mm) outer coil **OR** As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
    - d. Coil Loop Spacing(s): 12 inches (300 mm) **OR** Manufacturer's standard **OR** As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
    - e. Barb Length Classification: Long, 1.2-inch (30.5-mm) **OR** Medium, 0.4-inch (10.2-mm) **OR** Short, 0.1875-inch (4.76-mm), **as directed**, barb.
    - f. Barb Spacing: 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
    - g. Barb Set: Straight **OR** Offset **OR** Manufacturer's standard, **as directed**.
- J. Gate Operators
1. General: Provide factory-assembled automatic operating system designed for gate size, type, weight, and operation frequency. Provide operation control system with characteristics suitable for Project conditions, with remote-control stations, safety devices, and weatherproof enclosures; coordinate electrical requirements with building electrical system.
    - a. Provide operator designed so motor may be removed without disturbing limit-switch adjustment and without affecting auxiliary emergency operator.
    - b. Provide operator with UL approval **OR** -approved components, **as directed**.
    - c. Provide electronic components with built-in troubleshooting diagnostic feature.
    - d. Provide unit designed and wired for both right-hand/left-hand opening, permitting universal installation.
  2. Comply with NFPA 70.
  3. UL Standard: Fabricate and label gate operators to comply with UL 325.
  4. Motor Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, within installed environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate rating or considering service factor. Comply with NEMA MG 1 and the following:
    - a. Voltage: 12-V dc **OR** 120 V **OR** 208-220 V **OR** NEMA standard voltage selected to operate on nominal circuit voltage to which motor is connected, **as directed**.
    - b. Horsepower: 1/4 **OR** 1/3 **OR** 3/4, **as directed**.
    - c. Enclosure: Open dripproof **OR** Totally enclosed **OR** Manufacturer's standard, **as directed**.



- d. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 105 deg F (40 deg C) and at altitude of 3300 feet (1005 m) above sea level.
  - e. Service Factor: 1.15 for open dripproof motors; 1.0 for totally enclosed motors.
  - f. Phase: One **OR** Polyphase, **as directed**.
5. Gate Operators: Gate **OR** Equipment base/pad **OR** Pedestal post **OR** In ground, **as directed**, mounted and as follows:
- a. Hydraulic Swing **OR** Slide, **as directed**, Gate Operators:
    - 1) Duty: Light **OR** Medium **OR** Heavy, **as directed**, duty, residential **OR** commercial/industrial, **as directed**.
    - 2) Gate Speed: Minimum 45 feet (13.7 m) **OR** 60 feet (18.2 m), **as directed**, per minute.
    - 3) Maximum Gate Weight: 300 lb (137 kg).
    - 4) Frequency of Use: 10 cycles per hour **OR** 25 cycles per hour **OR** Continuous duty, **as directed**.
    - 5) Locking: Hydraulic in both directions.
    - 6) Heater: Manufacturer's standard track and roller heater with thermostatic control.
    - 7) Operating Type: Crank arm **OR** Wheel and rail drive **OR** Roller chain, **as directed**, with manual release, **as directed**.
  - b. Mechanical Swing **OR** Slide, **as directed**, Gate Operators:
    - 1) Duty: Light **OR** Medium **OR** Heavy, **as directed**, duty, residential **OR** commercial/industrial, **as directed**.
    - 2) Gate Speed: Minimum 45 feet (13.7 m) per minute **OR** 60 feet (18.2 m) per minute **OR** variable speed, **as directed**.
    - 3) Maximum Gate Weight: 600 lb (272 kg) **OR** 800 lb (363 kg), **as directed**.
    - 4) Frequency of Use: 10 cycles per hour **OR** 25 cycles per hour **OR** 60 cycles per hour **OR** Continuous duty, **as directed**.
    - 5) Operating Type: Crank arm **OR** Wheel and rail drive **OR** Roller chain, **as directed**, with manual release, **as directed**.
    - 6) Drive Type: Enclosed worm gear **OR** worm gear and chain-and-sprocket, **as directed**, reducers, roller-chain drive. **OR**  
Drive Type: V-belt and worm gear **OR** chain-and-sprocket, **as directed**, reducers, roller-chain drive.
6. Remote Controls: Electric controls separated from gate and motor and drive mechanism, with NEMA ICS 6, Type 1 **OR** NEMA ICS 6, Type 4, **as directed**, enclosure for surface **OR** recessed or flush **OR** equipment base/pad **OR** pedestal, **as directed**, mounting and with space for additional optional equipment. Provide the following remote-control device(s):
- a. Control Station: Keyed, two **OR** three, **as directed**, -position switch, located remotely from gate. Provide two keys per station. **OR**  
Control Station: Momentary-contact, single **OR** three, **as directed**, -button-operated; located remotely from gate. Key switch to lock out open and close buttons, **as directed**.
    - 1) Function: Open, stop, **as directed**, and close.
  - b. Card Reader: Functions only when authorized card is presented. Programmable, magnetic multiple **OR** single, **as directed**, -code system, permitting four different access time periods, **as directed**; face-lighted unit fully visible at night, **as directed**.
    - 1) Reader Type: Touch plate **OR** Swipe **OR** Insertion **OR** Proximity, **as directed**.
    - 2) Features: Timed anti-passback **OR** Limited-time usage **OR** Capable of monitoring and auditing gate activity, **as directed**.
  - c. Digital Keypad Entry Unit: Multiple-code capability **OR** Multiple-programmable, code capability, **as directed**, of not less than five **OR** 500 **OR** 2500, **as directed**, possible individual codes, consisting of one- to seven **OR** four **OR** five, **as directed**, -digit codes, and permitting four different access time periods, **as directed**.
    - 1) Features: Timed anti-passback **OR** Limited-time usage **OR** Capable of monitoring and auditing gate activity, **as directed**.



- 2) Face-lighted unit with metal-keyed **OR** keyless-membrane, **as directed**, keypad fully visible at night.
- d. Radio Control: Digital system consisting of code-compatible universal receiver for each gate, located where indicated, with remote antenna with coaxial cable and mounting brackets designed to operate gates. Provide one **OR** two, **as directed**, programmable transmitter(s) with multiple-code capability permitting validating or voiding of not less than 1000 **OR** 10,000, **as directed**, codes per channel configured for the following functions:
  - 1) Transmitters: Single **OR** Three, **as directed**, button operated, with open **OR** open and close, **as directed**, function.
  - 2) Channel Settings: Two **OR** Three **OR** Four, **as directed**, independent channel settings controlling separate receivers for operating more than one gate from each transmitter.
- e. Telephone Entry System: Hands-free voice-communication system for connection to building telephone system with digital-entry code activation of gate operator and auxiliary keypad entry, **as directed**.
  - 1) Residential System: Designed to be wired to same line with telephone.  
**OR**  
Multiunit System: Designed to be wired to a dedicated telephone line, with capacity to access 20 **OR** 100, **as directed**, telephones and with electronic directory, **as directed**.
- f. Vehicle Loop Detector: System including automatic closing timer with adjustable time delay before closing, timer cut-off switch, **as directed**, and loop detector designed to open and close gate **OR** hold gate open until traffic clears **OR** reverse gate, **as directed**. Provide electronic detector with adjustable detection patterns, adjustable sensitivity and frequency settings, and panel indicator light designed to detect presence or transit of a vehicle over an embedded loop of wire and to emit a signal activating the gate operator. Provide number of loops consisting of multiple strands of wire, number of turns, loop size, and method of placement at location shown on Drawings, as recommended in writing by detection system manufacturer for function indicated.
  - 1) Loop: Wire, in size indicated for field assembly, for pave-over **OR** saw-cut with epoxy-grouted, **as directed**, installation.  
**OR**  
Loop: Factory preformed in size indicated; style for pave-over **OR** saw-cut with epoxy-grouted, **as directed**, installation.
- g. Vehicle Presence Detector: System including automatic closing timer with adjustable time delay before closing, timer cut-off switch, **as directed**, and presence detector designed to open and close gate **OR** hold gate open until traffic clears **OR** reverse gate, **as directed**. Provide retroreflective **OR** emitter/receiver, **as directed**, detector with adjustable detection zone pattern and sensitivity, designed to detect the presence or transit of a vehicle in gate pathway when infrared beam in zone pattern is interrupted, and to emit a signal activating the gate operator.
7. Obstruction Detection Devices: Provide each motorized gate with automatic safety sensor(s). Activation of sensor(s) causes operator to immediately function as follows:
  - a. Action: Reverse gate in both opening and closing cycles and hold until clear of obstruction **OR** Stop gate in opening cycle and reverse gate in closing cycle and hold until clear of obstruction, **as directed**.
  - b. Internal Sensor: Built-in torque or current monitor senses gate is obstructed.
  - c. Sensor Edge: Contact-pressure-sensitive safety edge, profile, and sensitivity designed for type of gate and component indicated, in locations as follows. Connect to control circuit using take-up cable reel **OR** self-coiling cable **OR** gate edge transmitter and operator receiver system, **as directed**.
    - 1) Along entire gate leaf leading edge (for swing gates and slide gates).
    - 2) Along entire gate leaf trailing edge (for slide gates).
    - 3) Across entire gate leaf bottom edge (for vehicular swing and slide gates complying with UL 325 or to suit Project; consider retaining for pedestrian gates).



- 4) Along entire length of gate posts (for slide gates; revise for sensor edge at pinch point post of swing gates).
- 5) Along entire length of gate guide posts (for Type II Cantilever Slide, Class 1 gates).
- 6) Where indicated on Drawings.
- d. Photoelectric/Infrared Sensor System: Designed to detect an obstruction in gate's path when infrared beam in the zone pattern is interrupted.
8. Limit Switches: Adjustable switches, interlocked with motor controls and set to automatically stop gate at fully retracted and fully extended positions.
  - a. Type: Integral fail-safe release, allowing gate to be pushed open without mechanical devices, keys, cranks, or special knowledge **OR** Mechanical device, key, or crank-activated release, **as directed**.
9. Operating Features:
  - a. Digital Microprocessor Control: Electronic programmable means for setting, changing, and adjusting control features with capability for monitoring and auditing gate activity, **as directed**. Provide unit that is isolated from voltage spikes and surges.
  - b. System Integration: With controlling circuit board capable of accepting any type of input from external devices.
  - c. Master/Slave Capability: Control stations designed and wired for gate pair operation.
  - d. Automatic Closing Timer: With adjustable time delay before closing and timer cut-off switch, **as directed**.
  - e. Open Override Circuit: Designed to override closing commands.
  - f. Reversal Time Delay: Designed to protect gate system from shock load on reversal in both directions.
  - g. Maximum Run Timer: Designed to prevent damage to gate system by shutting down system if normal time to open gate is exceeded.
  - h. Clock Timer: 24-hour **OR** Seven-day, **as directed**, programmable for regular events.
10. Accessories:
  - a. Warning Module: Audio **OR** Visual, **as directed**, constant **OR** strobe, **as directed**,-light alarm sounding three to five seconds in advance of gate operation and continuing until gate stops moving; compliant with the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines.
  - b. Battery Backup System: Battery-powered drive and access-control system, independent of primary drive system.
    - 1) Fail Safe: Gate opens and remains open until power is restored.
    - 2) Fail Secure: Gate cycles on battery power, then fail safe when battery is discharged.
  - c. External electric-powered solenoid **OR** magnetic, **as directed**, lock with delay timer allowing time for lock to release before gate operates.
  - d. Fire **OR** Postal, **as directed**, box.
  - e. Fire strobe **OR** siren, **as directed**, alarm.
  - f. Intercom System: <Insert requirements>.
  - g. Instructional, Safety, and Warning Labels and Signs: According to UL 325 **OR** Manufacturer's standard for components and features specified **OR** As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
  - h. Equipment Bases/Pads: Cast-in-place or precast concrete, depth not less than 12 inches (300 mm), dimensioned and reinforced according to gate-operator component manufacturer's written instructions and as indicated on Drawings.
- K. Grout And Anchoring Cement
  1. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Premixed, factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout, recommended in writing by manufacturer, for exterior applications.
  2. Erosion-Resistant Anchoring Cement: Factory-packaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic-controlled expansion cement formulation for mixing with potable water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching, and grouting compound. Provide formulation that is resistant to





erosion from water exposure without needing protection by a sealer or waterproof coating and that is recommended in writing by manufacturer, for exterior applications.

- L. Fence Grounding
  - 1. Conductors: Bare, solid wire for No. 6 AWG and smaller; stranded wire for No. 4 AWG and larger.
    - a. Material above Finished Grade: Copper **OR** Aluminum, **as directed**.
    - b. Material on or below Finished Grade: Copper.
    - c. Bonding Jumpers: Braided copper tape, 1 inch (25 mm) wide, woven of No. 30 AWG bare copper wire, terminated with copper ferrules.
  - 2. Connectors and Grounding Rods: Comply with UL 467.
    - a. Connectors for Below-Grade Use: Exothermic welded type.
    - b. Grounding Rods: Copper-clad steel, 5/8 by 96 inches (16 by 2440 mm).

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Examination
  - 1. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for a verified survey of property lines and legal boundaries, **as directed**, site clearing, earthwork, pavement work, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
    - a. Do not begin installation before final grading is completed unless otherwise permitted by the Owner.
  - 2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- B. Preparation
  - 1. Stake locations of fence lines, gates, and terminal posts. Do not exceed intervals of 500 feet (152.5 m) or line of sight between stakes. Indicate locations of utilities, lawn sprinkler system, underground structures, benchmarks, and property monuments.
- C. Installation, General
  - 1. Install chain-link fencing to comply with ASTM F 567 and more stringent requirements indicated.
    - a. Install fencing on established boundary lines inside property line.
- D. Chain-Link Fence Installation
  - 1. Post Excavation: Drill or hand-excavate holes for posts to diameters and spacings indicated, in firm, undisturbed soil.
  - 2. Post Setting: Set posts in concrete **OR** with mechanical anchors **OR** by mechanically driving into soil, **as directed**, at indicated spacing into firm, undisturbed soil.
    - a. Verify that posts are set plumb, aligned, and at correct height and spacing, and hold in position during setting with concrete or mechanical devices.
    - b. Concrete Fill: Place concrete around posts to dimensions indicated and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Protect aboveground portion of posts from concrete splatter.
      - 1) Exposed Concrete: Extend 2 inches (50 mm) above grade; shape and smooth to shed water.
      - 2) Concealed Concrete: Top 2 inches (50 mm) below grade as indicated on Drawings to allow covering with surface material.
      - 3) Posts Set into Concrete in Sleeves: Use steel pipe sleeves preset and anchored into concrete for installing posts. After posts have been inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between post and sleeve with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout **OR** anchoring cement, **as directed**, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions, and finished sloped to drain water away from post.
      - 4) Posts Set into Voids in Concrete: Form or core drill holes not less than 5 inches (125 mm) deep and 3/4 inch (20 mm) larger than OD of post. Clean holes of loose material, insert posts, and fill annular space between post and concrete with



- nonshrink, nonmetallic grout **OR** anchoring cement, **as directed**, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions, and finished sloped to drain water away from post.
- c. Mechanically Driven Posts: Drive into soil to depth of 30 inches (762 mm) **OR** 36 inches (914 mm), **as directed**. Protect post top to prevent distortion.
  3. Terminal Posts: Locate terminal end, corner, and gate posts per ASTM F 567 and terminal pull posts at changes in horizontal or vertical alignment of 15 degrees or more **OR** 30 degrees or more **OR** as indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
  4. Line Posts: Space line posts uniformly at 96 inches (2440 mm) **OR** 10 feet (3 m), **as directed**, o.c.
  5. Post Bracing and Intermediate Rails: Install according to ASTM F 567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fencing. Diagonally brace terminal posts to adjacent line posts with truss rods and turnbuckles. Install braces at end and gate posts and at both sides of corner and pull posts.
    - a. Locate horizontal braces at midheight of fabric 72 inches (1830 mm) or higher, on fences with top rail and at two-third fabric height on fences without top rail. Install so posts are plumb when diagonal rod is under proper tension.
  6. Tension Wire: Install according to ASTM F 567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fencing. Pull wire taut, without sags. Fasten fabric to tension wire with 0.120-inch- (3.05-mm-) diameter hog rings of same material and finish as fabric wire, spaced a maximum of 24 inches (610 mm) o.c. Install tension wire in locations indicated before stretching fabric. Provide horizontal tension wire at the following locations:
    - a. Extended along top **OR** bottom **OR** top and bottom, **as directed**, of fence fabric. Install top tension wire through post cap loops. Install bottom tension wire within 6 inches (152 mm) of bottom of fabric and tie to each post with not less than same diameter and type of wire.
    - b. Extended along top of barbed wire arms **OR** extended posts, **as directed**, and top of fence fabric for supporting barbed tape.
    - c. As indicated.
  7. Top Rail: Install according to ASTM F 567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fencing. Run rail continuously through line post caps, bending to radius for curved runs and terminating into rail end attached to posts or post caps fabricated to receive rail at terminal posts. Provide expansion couplings as recommended in writing by fencing manufacturer.
  8. Intermediate and Bottom Rails: Install and secure to posts with fittings.
  9. Chain-Link Fabric: Apply fabric to outside **OR** inside, **as directed**, of enclosing framework. Leave 1 inch (25.4 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, between finish grade or surface and bottom selvage unless otherwise indicated. Pull fabric taut and tie to posts, rails, and tension wires. Anchor to framework so fabric remains under tension after pulling force is released.
  10. Tension or Stretcher Bars: Thread through fabric and secure to end, corner, pull, and gate posts with tension bands spaced not more than 15 inches (380 mm) o.c.
  11. Tie Wires: Use wire of proper length to firmly secure fabric to line posts and rails. Attach wire at one end to chain-link fabric, wrap wire around post a minimum of 180 degrees, and attach other end to chain-link fabric per ASTM F 626. Bend ends of wire to minimize hazard to individuals and clothing.
    - a. Maximum Spacing: Tie fabric to line posts at 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. and to braces at 24 inches (610 mm) o.c.
  12. Fasteners: Install nuts for tension bands and carriage bolts on the side of the fence opposite the fabric side. Peen ends of bolts or score threads to prevent removal of nuts, **as directed**.
  13. Privacy Slats: Install slats in direction indicated, securely locked in place.
    - a. Vertically **OR** Horizontally, **as directed**, for privacy factor of 70 to 75.  
**OR**  
Diagonally, for privacy factor of 80 to 85.  
**OR**  
Direction and privacy factor, **as directed**, as indicated.



14. Barbed Wire: Install barbed wire uniformly spaced, angled toward security side of fence **OR** as indicated on Drawings, **as directed**. Pull wire taut, install securely to extension arms, and secure to end post or terminal arms.
  15. Barbed Tape: Comply with ASTM F 1911. Install barbed tape uniformly in configurations indicated and fasten securely to prevent movement or displacement.
- E. Gate Installation
1. Install gates according to manufacturer's written instructions, level, plumb, and secure for full opening without interference. Attach fabric as for fencing. Attach hardware using tamper-resistant or concealed means. Install ground-set items in concrete for anchorage. Adjust hardware for smooth operation and lubricate where necessary.
- F. Gate Operator Installation
1. General: Install gate operators according to manufacturer's written instructions, aligned and true to fence line and grade.
  2. Excavation for Support Posts **OR** Pedestals **OR** Equipment Bases/Pads, **as directed**: Hand-excavate holes for bases/pads, in firm, undisturbed soil to dimensions and depths and at locations as required by gate-operator component manufacturer's written instructions and as indicated.
  3. Vehicle Loop Detector System: Cut grooves in pavement and bury **OR** Bury, **as directed**, and seal wire loop according to manufacturer's written instructions. Connect to equipment operated by detector.
  4. Comply with NFPA 70 and manufacturer's written instructions for grounding of electric-powered motors, controls, and other devices.
- G. Grounding And Bonding
1. Fence Grounding: Install at maximum intervals of 1500 feet (450 m), **as directed**, except as follows:
    - a. Fences within 100 Feet (30 m) of Buildings, Structures, Walkways, and Roadways: Ground at maximum intervals of 750 feet (225 m), **as directed**.
      - 1) Gates and Other Fence Openings: Ground fence on each side of opening.
        - a) Bond metal gates to gate posts.
        - b) Bond across openings, with and without gates, except openings indicated as intentional fence discontinuities. Use No. 2 AWG wire and bury it at least 18 inches (460 mm) below finished grade.
  2. Protection at Crossings of Overhead Electrical Power Lines: Ground fence at location of crossing and at a maximum distance of 150 feet (45 m) on each side of crossing.
  3. Fences Enclosing Electrical Power Distribution Equipment: Ground as required by IEEE C2 unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Grounding Method: At each grounding location, drive a grounding rod vertically until the top is 6 inches (150 mm) below finished grade. Connect rod to fence with No. 6 AWG conductor. Connect conductor to each fence component at the grounding location, including the following:
    - a. Make grounding connections to each barbed wire strand with wire-to-wire connectors designed for this purpose.
    - b. Make grounding connections to each barbed tape coil with connectors designed for this purpose.
  5. Bonding Method for Gates: Connect bonding jumper between gate post and gate frame.
  6. Connections: Make connections to minimize possibility of galvanic action or electrolysis. Select connectors, connection hardware, conductors, and connection methods so metals in direct contact will be galvanically compatible.
    - a. Use electroplated or hot-tin-coated materials to ensure high conductivity and to make contact points closer in order of galvanic series.
    - b. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.
    - c. Make aluminum-to-steel connections with stainless-steel separators and mechanical clamps.



- d. Make aluminum-to-galvanized-steel connections with tin-plated copper jumpers and mechanical clamps.
  - e. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.
7. Bonding to Lightning Protection System: If fence terminates at lightning-protected building or structure, ground the fence and bond the fence grounding conductor to lightning protection down conductor or lightning protection grounding conductor complying with NFPA 780.
- H. Field Quality Control
1. Grounding-Resistance Testing: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
    - a. Grounding-Resistance Tests: Subject completed grounding system to a megger test at each grounding location. Measure grounding resistance no fewer than two full days after last trace of precipitation, without soil having been moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural grounding resistance. Perform tests by two-point method according to IEEE 81.
    - b. Excessive Grounding Resistance: If resistance to grounding exceeds specified value, notify the Owner promptly. Include recommendations for reducing grounding resistance and a proposal to accomplish recommended work.
    - c. Report: Prepare test reports certified by a testing agency of grounding resistance at each test location. Include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results.
- I. Adjusting
1. Gates: Adjust gates to operate smoothly, easily, and quietly, free of binding, warp, excessive deflection, distortion, nonalignment, misplacement, disruption, or malfunction, throughout entire operational range. Confirm that latches and locks engage accurately and securely without forcing or binding.
  2. Automatic Gate Operator: Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices. Adjust operators, controls, safety devices, alarms, **as directed**, and limit switches.
    - a. Hydraulic Operator: Purge operating system, adjust pressure and fluid levels, and check for leaks.
    - b. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
    - c. Test and adjust controls, alarms, **as directed**, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  3. Lubricate hardware, gate operator, **as directed**, and other moving parts.
- J. Demonstration
1. Train the Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain chain-link fences and gates.

END OF SECTION 32 31 11 00

**SECTION 32 31 13 13 - HIGH-SECURITY CHAIN-LINK FENCES AND GATES**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for high-security chain-link fences and gates. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. High-security chain-link fences.
  - b. Gates: Motor operated, horizontal slide and swing.

## C. Performance Requirements

1. Delegated-Design Submittal: For chain-link fences and gate framework indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
2. Structural Performance: Chain-link fences and gate framework shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7:
  - a. Minimum Post Size: Determine according to ASTM F 1043 for framework up to 12 feet (3.66 m) high, and post spacing not to exceed 10 feet (3 m) for Material Group IA, ASTM F 1043, Schedule 40 steel pipe **OR** Group IC, electric-resistance-welded round steel pipe, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Minimum Post Size and Maximum Spacing: Provide line posts of size and in spacing indicated, but not less than sizes and spacings determined according to ASTM F 1916, including Appendix **OR** CLFMI WLG 2445, **as directed**, based on mesh size and pattern specified and the following:
    - 1) Wind Loads: Determine design wind loads applicable to Project from basic wind speed and exposure category according to CLFMI WLG 2445.
    - 2) Exposure Category: B **OR** C **OR** D, **as directed**.
    - 3) Fence Height: 10 feet (3 m).
    - 4) Material Group: IA, ASTM F 1043, Schedule 40 steel pipe **OR** IC, electric-resistance-welded round steel pipe, **as directed**.
  - b. Fabric Tension: Provide fences in which fabric deflections do not exceed those indicated in Table X1.1 of ASTM F 1916 when tested by applying a 30-lbf (133-N) force at midpoint between rails and horizontally between posts for every eighth lower panel along the fence line.
  - c. Fence Post Rigidity: Provide fences in which post deflections do not exceed 3/4 inch (19 mm) when tested according to ASTM F 1916 by applying a 50-lbf (222-N) force at midheight of every eighth post along the fence line.
3. Lightning Protection System: Maximum grounding-resistance value of 25 ohms under normal dry conditions.

## D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for chain-link fences and gates, **as directed**.
  - a. Fence and gate posts, rails, and fittings.
  - b. Chain-link fabric, reinforcements, and attachments.
  - c. Accessories: Barbed wire **OR** Barbed tape, **as directed**.



- d. Gates and hardware.
  - e. Gate Operator: Show locations and details for installing operator components, switches, and controls. Indicate motor size, electrical characteristics, drive arrangement, mounting, and grounding provisions.
  - f. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
  2. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work. Show accessories, hardware, gate operation, and operational clearances.
    - a. Gate Operator: Show locations and details for installing operator components, switches, and controls. Indicate motor size, electrical characteristics, drive arrangement, mounting, and grounding provisions.
    - b. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
  3. Samples: Prepared on Samples of size indicated below:
    - a. Polymer-Coated Components: In 6-inch (150-mm) lengths for components and on full-sized units for accessories.
  4. Delegated-Design Submittal: For chain-link fences and gate framework indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  5. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer **OR** testing agency **OR** factory-authorized service representative, **as directed**.
  6. Product Certificates: For each type of chain-link fence, operator, **as directed**, and gate, from manufacturer.
  7. Product Test Reports: For framing strength according to ASTM F 1043.
  8. Field quality-control reports.
  9. Soil sterilization certificate of treatment stating materials and quantities used, and date of application.
  10. Operation and Maintenance Data: For the following to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals:
    - a. Polymer finishes.
    - b. Gate hardware.
    - c. Gate operator.
  11. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.
- E. Quality Assurance
1. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing fence grounding. Member company of NETA or an NRTL **OR** one who meets the requirements necessary for certification, **as directed**.
    - a. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing **OR** one who meets the requirements necessary for certification, **as directed**.
  2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  3. Emergency Access Requirements: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for automatic gate operators serving as a required means of access.
  4. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
- F. Project Conditions
1. Field Measurements: Verify layout information for chain-link fences and gates shown on Drawings in relation to property survey and existing structures. Verify dimensions by field measurements.
- G. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer **OR** Installer, **as directed**, agrees to repair or replace components of high-security chain-link fences and gates that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
    - a. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - 1) Deflection of fence fabric beyond design limits.



- 2) Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
- 3) Faulty operation of gate operators and controls.
- b. Warranty Period: Five **OR** 15, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Chain-Link Fence Fabric

1. Chain-Link Fence Fabric: Provide fabric in one **OR** two, **as directed**,-piece heights measured between top and bottom of outer edge of selvage. Comply with CLFMI Product Manual and with requirements indicated below:
  - a. Fabric Height: As indicated on Drawings **OR** As directed.
    - 1) Steel Wire Fabric: Wire with a diameter of 0.192 inch (4.88 mm) **OR** 0.148 inch (3.76 mm) **OR** 0.120 inch (3.05 mm) **OR** 0.113 inch (2.87 mm), **as directed**.
      - a) Mesh Size: 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25.4 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (9.5 mm), **as directed**.
    - b. Fabric Heights and Overlap: As indicated on Drawings **OR** As directed.
      - 1) Steel Wire Lower Fabric: Wire with a diameter of 0.192 inch (4.88 mm) **OR** 0.148 inch (3.76 mm) **OR** 0.120 inch (3.05 mm) **OR** 0.113 inch (2.87 mm), **as directed**.
        - a) Mesh Size: 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25.4 mm) **OR** 3/8 inch (9.5 mm), **as directed**.
      - 2) Steel Wire Upper Fabric: Wire with a diameter of 0.120 inch (3.05 mm).
        - a) Mesh Size: 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
    - c. Aluminum-Coated Fabric: ASTM A 491, Type I, 0.40 oz./sq. ft. (122 g/sq. m) **OR** 0.35 oz./sq. ft. (107 g/sq. m) **OR** 0.30 oz./sq. ft. (92 g/sq. m), **as directed**.
    - d. Zinc-Coated Fabric: ASTM A 392, Type II, Class 1, 1.2 oz./sq. ft. (366 g/sq. m) **OR** Class 2, 2.0 oz./sq. ft. (610 g/sq. m), **as directed**, with zinc coating applied before **OR** after, **as directed**, weaving.
    - e. Zn-5-Al-MM Aluminum-Mischmetal-Coated Fabric: ASTM F 1345, Type III, Class 2, 1.0 oz./sq. ft. (305 g/sq. m).
    - f. Polymer-Coated Fabric: ASTM F 668, Class 2b over aluminum **OR** zinc **OR** Zn-5-Al-MM-alloy, **as directed**, -coated steel wire.
      - 1) Color: Dark green **OR** Olive green **OR** Brown **OR** Black **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**, complying with ASTM F 934.
    - g. Coat selvage ends of fabric that is metallic coated before the weaving process with manufacturer's standard clear protective coating.
    - h. Selvage: Twisted and barbed top and bottom.

### B. Security Fence Framing

1. Posts and Rails: Comply with ASTM F 1043 for framing, including rails, braces, and line; terminal; and corner posts.
  - a. Fence Height: 96 inches (2440 mm) **OR** 12 feet (3.66 m) **OR** As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
  - b. Heavy **OR** Light, **as directed**, Industrial Strength: Material Group IA, round steel pipe, Schedule 40 **OR** Group IC, round steel pipe, electric resistance-welded pipe, **as directed**.
    - 1) Line Post: 2.375 inches (60 mm) in diameter **OR** 2.875 inches (73 mm) in diameter **OR** 4 inches (100-mm) in diameter **OR** 6.625 inches (168 mm) in diameter **OR** 8.625 inches (168 mm) in diameter **OR** 2.25 by 1.70 inches (67 by 43 mm) **OR** 3.25 by 2.50 inches (83 by 64 mm), **as directed**.
    - 2) End, Corner, and Pull Post: 2.875 inches (73 mm) in diameter **OR** 4.0 inches (102 mm) in diameter **OR** 6.625 inches (168 mm) in diameter **OR** 8.625 inches (168 mm) in diameter, **as directed**.
  - c. Rail Members: Intermediate, top, and brace, **as directed**, rails complying with ASTM F 1043 for Heavy Industrial.
  - d. Metallic Coating for Steel Framing:



- 1) Type A, consisting of not less than minimum 2.0-oz./sq. ft. (0.61-kg/sq. m) average zinc coating per ASTM A 123/A 123M or 4.0-oz./sq. ft. (1.22-kg/sq. m) zinc coating per ASTM A 653/A 653M.
- 2) Type B, zinc with organic overcoat, consisting of a minimum of 0.9 oz./sq. ft. (0.27 kg/sq. m) of zinc after welding, a chromate conversion coating, and a clear, verifiable polymer film.
- 3) External, Type B, zinc with organic overcoat, consisting of a minimum of 0.9 oz./sq. ft. (0.27 kg/sq. m) of zinc after welding, a chromate conversion coating, and a clear, verifiable polymer film. Internal, Type D, consisting of 81 percent, not less than 0.3-mil- (0.0076-mm-) thick, zinc-pigmented coating.
- 4) Type C, Zn-5-Al-MM alloy, consisting of not less than 1.8-oz./sq. ft. (0.55-kg/sq. m) coating.
- 5) Coatings: Any coating above.
- e. Polymer coating over metallic coating.
  - 1) Color: Match chain-link fabric **OR** Dark green **OR** Olive green **OR** Brown **OR** Black **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**, complying with ASTM F 934.

#### C. Tension Wire

1. Metallic-Coated Steel Wire: 0.177-inch- (4.5-mm-) diameter, marcelled tension wire complying with ASTM A 817 and ASTM A 824, with the following metallic coating:
  - a. Type I, aluminum coated (aluminized).
  - b. Type II, zinc coated (galvanized) by hot-dip **OR** electrolytic, **as directed**, process, with Class 5 minimum coating weight of not less than 2.0 oz./sq. ft. (610 g/sq. m) of uncoated wire surface.
2. Polymer-Coated Steel Wire: 0.177-inch- (4.5-mm-) diameter, tension wire complying with ASTM F 1664, Class 1 **OR** Class 2a **OR** Class 2b, **as directed**, over aluminum **OR** zinc **OR** Zn-5-Al-MM-alloy, **as directed**, -coated steel wire.
  - a. Color: Match chain-link fabric **OR** Dark green **OR** Olive green **OR** Brown **OR** Black **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**, complying with ASTM F 934.

#### D. Swing Gates

1. General: Comply with ASTM F 900 for gate posts and single **OR** double, **as directed**, swing gate types. Provide automated vehicular gates that comply with ASTM F 2200, **as directed**.
  - a. Gate Leaf Width: 36 inches (914 mm) **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  - b. Gate Fabric Height: 72 inches (1830 mm) or less **OR** More than 72 inches (1830 mm) **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
2. Pipe and Tubing:
  - a. Zinc-Coated Steel: Comply with ASTM F 1043 and ASTM F 1083; protective coating and finish to match fence framing **OR** manufacturer's standard protective coating and finish, **as directed**.
  - b. Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B 429/B 429M; mill **OR** manufacturer's standard, **as directed**, finish.
  - c. Gate Post Size and Weight: Not less than required by ASTM F 900 **OR** ASTM F 1916, **as directed**.
  - d. Gate Posts: Round tubular steel **OR** Rectangular tubular steel **OR** Round tubular aluminum **OR** Rectangular tubular aluminum, **as directed**.
  - e. Gate Frames and Bracing: Round tubular steel **OR** Rectangular tubular steel **OR** Round tubular aluminum **OR** Rectangular tubular aluminum, **as directed**.
3. Frame Corner Construction: Welded **OR** Assembled with corner fittings, **as directed**, and 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) diameter, adjustable truss rods for panels 5 feet (1.52 m) or wider.
4. Extended Gate Posts and Frame Members: Extend above top of chain-link fabric at both ends of gate frame 12 inches (300 mm) **OR** as indicated, **as directed**, as required to attach barbed wire **OR** tape, **as directed**, assemblies.
5. Provide separate isolated gate frame according to ASTM F 1916 and as indicated.





- a. Separation between Hinge and Latch Post and Fence Termination Post: 2 inches (51 mm) minimum, 2-1/2 inches (63.5 mm) maximum.
6. Hardware: Comply with ASTM F 1916.
  - a. Hinges: 180-degree inward **OR** 180-degree outward **OR** 360-degree inward and outward, **as directed**, swing.
  - b. Latches permitting operation from one side **OR** both sides, **as directed**, of gate with provision for padlocking accessible from both sides of gate, **as directed**.
  - c. Padlock and Chain: the Owner furnished.
  - d. Lock: Manufacturer's standard, **as directed**, internal device furnished in lieu of gate latch, **as directed**.
  - e. Closer: Manufacturer's standard, **as directed**.
  - f. For gates 14 feet (4.27 m) and higher, add locking device to transom.
- E. Horizontal-Slide Gates
  1. General: Comply with ASTM F 1184 for gate posts and single **OR** double, **as directed**, sliding gate types. Provide automated vehicular gates that comply with ASTM F 2200, **as directed**.
    - a. Classification: Type I Overhead Slide.
      - 1) Gate Leaf Width: As indicated.
      - 2) Gate Fabric Height: 72 inches (1830 mm) or less **OR** More than 72 inches (1830 mm) **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
    - b. Classification: Type II Cantilever Slide, Class 1 with external **OR** Class 2 with internal, **as directed**, roller assemblies.
      - 1) Gate Frame Width and Height: 48 inches (1200 mm) wide or less by 72 inches (1830 mm) high or less **OR** More than 48 inches (1200 mm) wide by any height **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  2. Pipe and Tubing:
    - a. Zinc-Coated Steel: Protective coating and finish to match fence framing **OR** Manufacturer's standard protective coating and finish, **as directed**.
    - b. Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B 429/B 429M; mill **OR** manufacturer's standard, **as directed**, finish.
    - c. Gate Post Size and Weight: Not less than required by ASTM F 1184 **OR** ASTM F 1916, **as directed**.
    - d. Gate Frames and Bracing: Round tubular steel **OR** Rectangular tubular steel **OR** Round tubular aluminum **OR** Rectangular tubular aluminum, **as directed**.
  3. Frame Corner Construction: Welded **OR** Assembled with corner fittings, **as directed**, and 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) diameter, adjustable truss rods for panels 5 feet (1.52 m) or wider.
  4. Extended Gate Posts and Frame Members: Extend above top of chain-link fabric at both ends of gate frame 12 inches (300 mm) **OR** as indicated, **as directed**, as required to attach barbed wire **OR** tape, **as directed**, assemblies.
  5. Overhead Track Assembly: Manufacturer's standard track, with overhead framing supports, bracing, and accessories, engineered to support size, weight, width, operation, and design of gate and roller assemblies.
  6. Hardware:
    - a. Latches permitting operation from one side **OR** both sides, **as directed**, of gate with provision for padlocking accessible from both sides of gate, **as directed**.
    - b. Padlock and Chain: the Owner furnished.
    - c. Lock: Manufacturer's standard, **as directed**, internal device furnished in lieu of gate latch, **as directed**.
    - d. Hangers, roller assemblies, and stops fabricated from galvanized steel **OR** galvanized malleable iron **OR** mill-finished Grade 319 aluminum-alloy casting with stainless-steel fasteners, **as directed**.
- F. Fittings
  1. General: Comply with ASTM F 626.
  2. Post Caps: Provide for each post.
    - a. Provide line post caps with loop to receive tension wire or top rail.



3. Rail and Brace Ends: For each gate, corner, pull, and end post.
  4. Rail Fittings: Provide the following:
    - a. Top-Rail Sleeves: Pressed steel or round steel tubing not less than 6 inches (152 mm) long.
    - b. Rail Clamps: Line and corner boulevard clamps for connecting intermediate and bottom, **as directed**, rails in the fence line to line posts.
  5. Tension and Brace Bands, Tension Bars, and Truss Rod Assemblies: Comply with ASTM F 2611.
  6. Barbed Wire Arms: Pressed steel or cast iron **OR** Aluminum, **as directed**, with clips, slots, or other means for attaching strands of barbed wire, and means for attaching to posts **OR** integral with post cap, **as directed**; for each post unless otherwise indicated, and as follows:
    - a. Provide line posts with arms that accommodate top rail or tension wire.
    - b. Provide corner arms at fence corner posts, unless extended posts are indicated.
    - c. Type I, single slanted arm.
    - d. Type II, single vertical arm.
    - e. Type III, V-shaped arm.
    - f. Type IV, A-shaped arm.
    - g. Bolts or rivets for connection to post.
  7. Tie Wires, Clips, and Fasteners: Comply with ASTM F 626 and ASTM F 1916.
    - a. High-Security Round Wire Ties: For attaching chain-link fabric to posts, rails, and frames, complying with the following:
      - 1) Metallic-Coated Steel: 0.148-inch- (3.76-mm-) **OR** 0.192-inch- (4.88-mm-), **as directed**, diameter wire; zinc **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, coating.
      - 2) Stainless steel.
  8. Power-Driven Fabric Fasteners: Comply with ASTM F 1916.
  9. Finish:
    - a. Metallic Coating for Pressed Steel or Cast Iron: Not less than 1.2 oz. /sq. ft. (366 g/sq. m) of zinc.
      - 1) Polymer coating over metallic coating.
    - b. Aluminum: Mill finish.
- G. Barbed Wire
1. Steel Barbed Wire: Comply with ASTM A 121, High Security Grade, for two-strand barbed wire; 0.099-inch- (2.51-mm-) diameter line wire with 0.080-inch- (2.03-mm-) diameter, four-point round barbs spaced not more than 3 inches (76 mm) o.c.
    - a. Aluminum Coating: Type A.
  2. Polymer-Coated, Galvanized-Steel Barbed Wire: Comply with ASTM F 1665, Type II, for two-strand barbed wire; 0.080-inch- (2.03-mm-) diameter line wire with 0.080-inch- (2.03-mm-) diameter, four-point round aluminum-alloy **OR** galvanized-steel, **as directed**, barbs spaced not more than 3 inches (76 mm) o.c.
    - a. Polymer Coating: Class 1 **OR** Class 2a **OR** Class 2b, **as directed**, over aluminum **OR** zinc **OR** Zn-5-Al-MM-alloy, **as directed**, -coated steel wire.
      - 1) Color: Match chain-link fabric **OR** Dark green **OR** Olive green **OR** Brown **OR** Black **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**, complying with ASTM F 934.
- H. Barbed Tape
1. Wire-Reinforced Tape: ASTM F 1910; with four-point, needle-sharp barbs permanently cold clenched around a core wire.
    - a. Core Wire: High-tensile-strength, zinc-coated steel or stainless steel.
  2. Clips: Stainless steel, 0.065 inch (1.65 mm) thick by 0.375 inch (9.5 mm) wide; capable of withstanding a minimum 150-lbf (667-N) pull load to limit extension of coil, resulting in a concertina pattern when deployed.
  3. Tie Wires: Stainless steel, 0.065 inch (1.65 mm) in diameter.



4. Fabrication: Continuous coils of barbed tape as defined in ASTM F 1379 for the following characteristics:
    - a. Configuration: Single **OR** Double, **as directed**, coil.
    - b. Style: Helical **OR** Concertina, **as directed**, pattern.
    - c. Coil Diameter(s): 18 inches (457 mm) **OR** 24 inches (610 mm) **OR** 24-inch (610-mm) inner coil and 30-inch (762-mm) outer coil **OR** As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
    - d. Coil Loop Spacing(s): 12 inches (305 mm) **OR** Manufacturer's standard **OR** As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
    - e. Barb Length Classification: Long, 1.2-inch (30.5-mm) **OR** Medium, 0.4-inch (10.2-mm) **OR** Short, 0.1875-inch (4.76-mm), **as directed**, barb.
    - f. Barb Spacing: 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
    - g. Barb Set: Straight **OR** Offset **OR** Manufacturer's standard, **as directed**.
  5. Ground Barrier Stakes: 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) diameter galvanized reinforcing bar, 18 inches (457 mm) long with 180-degree end hook 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) long.
- I. Gate Operators
1. General: Provide factory-assembled automatic operating system designed for gate size, type, weight, and operation frequency. Provide operation control system with characteristics suitable for Project conditions, with remote-control stations, safety devices, and weatherproof enclosures; coordinate electrical requirements with building electrical system.
    - a. Provide operator designed so motor may be removed without disturbing limit-switch adjustment and without affecting auxiliary emergency operator.
    - b. Provide operator with UL approval **OR** UL-approved components, **as directed**.
    - c. Provide electronic components with built-in troubleshooting diagnostic feature.
    - d. Provide unit designed and wired for both right-hand/left-hand opening, permitting universal installation.
  2. Comply with NFPA 70.
  3. UL Standard: Manufacturer and label gate operators to comply with UL 325.
  4. Motor Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, within installed environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate rating or considering service factor. Comply with NEMA MG 1 and the following:
    - a. Voltage: 12-V dc **OR** 120 V **OR** 208-220 V **OR** NEMA standard voltage selected to operate on nominal circuit voltage to which motor is connected, **as directed**.
    - b. Horsepower: 1/4 **OR** 1/3 **OR** 3/4, **as directed**.
    - c. Enclosure: Open dripproof **OR** Totally enclosed **OR** Manufacturer's standard, **as directed**.
    - d. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 105 deg F (40 deg C) and at altitude of 3300 feet (1005 m) above sea level.
    - e. Service Factor: 1.15 for open dripproof motors; 1.0 for totally enclosed motors.
    - f. Phase: One **OR** Polyphase, **as directed**.
  5. Gate Operators: Gate **OR** Equipment base/pad **OR** Pedestal post **OR** In ground, **as directed**, mounted and as follows:
    - a. Hydraulic Swing **OR** Slide, **as directed**, Gate Operators:
      - 1) Duty: Medium **OR** Heavy, **as directed**.
      - 2) Gate Speed: Minimum 45 feet (13.7 m) **OR** 60 feet (18.2 m), **as directed**, per minute.
      - 3) Maximum Gate Weight: 800 lb (363 kg).
      - 4) Frequency of Use: 10 cycles per hour **OR** 25 cycles per hour **OR** Continuous duty, **as directed**.
      - 5) Operating Type: Wheel and rail drive with manual release, **as directed**.
      - 6) Hydraulic Fluid: Of viscosity required for gate operation at ambient temperature range for Project.
      - 7) Locking: Hydraulic in both directions.
      - 8) Heater: Manufacturer's standard track and roller heater with thermostatic control.
    - b. Mechanical Swing **OR** Slide, **as directed**, Gate Operators:
      - 1) Duty: Medium **OR** Heavy **OR** Maximum security, **as directed**.



- 2) Gate Speed: Minimum 45 feet (13.7 m) per minute **OR** 60 feet (18.2 m) per minute **OR** variable speed, **as directed**.
  - 3) Maximum Gate Weight: 800 lb (363 kg) **OR** 3000 lb (1360 kg), **as directed**.
  - 4) Frequency of Use: 10 cycles per hour **OR** 25 cycles per hour **OR** 60 cycles per hour **OR** Continuous duty, **as directed**.
  - 5) Operating Type: Crank arm **OR** Enclosed **OR** Wheel and rail drive **OR** Roller chain, **as directed**, with manual release, **as directed**.
  - 6) Drive Type: Enclosed worm gear and chain-and-sprocket, **as directed**, reducers, roller-chain drive.  
**OR**  
Drive Type: V-belt and worm gear **OR** chain-and-sprocket, **as directed**, reducers, roller-chain drive.
6. Remote Controls: Electric controls separated from gate and motor and drive mechanism, with NEMA ICS 6, Type 1 **OR** NEMA ICS 6, Type 4, **as directed**, enclosure for surface **OR** recessed or flush **OR** equipment base/pad **OR** pedestal, **as directed**, mounting and with space for additional optional equipment. Provide the following remote-control device(s):
- a. Control Station: Keyed, two **OR** three, **as directed**, -position switch, located remotely from gate. Provide two keys per station.  
**OR**  
Control Station: Momentary contact, single **OR** three, **as directed**, -button operated, located remotely from gate. Key switch to lock out open and close buttons, **as directed**.
    - 1) Function: Open, stop, **as directed**, and close.
  - b. Card Reader: Functions only when authorized card is presented. Programmable, magnetic multiple **OR** single, **as directed**, -code system, permitting four different access time periods, **as directed**; face-lighted unit fully visible at night, **as directed**.
    - 1) Reader Type: Touch plate **OR** Swipe **OR** Insertion **OR** Proximity, **as directed**.
    - 2) Features: Timed anti-passback **OR** Limited-time usage **OR** Capable of monitoring and auditing gate activity, **as directed**.
  - c. Digital Keypad Entry Unit: Multiple-code capability **OR** Multiple-programmable code capability, **as directed**, of not less than five **OR** 500 **OR** 2500, **as directed**, possible individual codes, consisting of one- to seven **OR** four **OR** five, **as directed**, -digit codes and permitting four different access time periods, **as directed**.
    - 1) Features: Timed anti-passback **OR** Limited-time usage **OR** Capable of monitoring and auditing gate activity, **as directed**.
    - 2) Face-lighted unit with metal-keyed **OR** keyless-membrane, **as directed**, keypad fully visible at night.
  - d. Radio Control: Digital system consisting of code-compatible universal receiver for each gate, located where indicated, with remote antenna with coaxial cable and mounting brackets designed to operate gates. Provide one **OR** two, **as directed**, programmable transmitter(s) with multiple-code capability permitting validating or voiding of not less than 1000 **OR** 10,000, **as directed**, codes per channel configured for the following functions:
    - 1) Transmitters: Single **OR** Three, **as directed**, -button operated, with open **OR** open and close, **as directed**, function.
    - 2) Channel Settings: Two **OR** Three **OR** Four, **as directed**, independent channel settings controlling separate receivers for operating more than one gate from each transmitter.
  - e. Telephone Entry System: Hands-free voice-communication system for connection to building telephone system with digital-entry code activation of gate operator and auxiliary keypad entry, **as directed**.
    - 1) System: Designed to be wired to same line with telephone.  
**OR**  
Multiunit System: Designed to be wired to a dedicated telephone line, with capacity to access 20 **OR** 100, **as directed**, telephones and with electronic directory, **as directed**.



- f. Vehicle Loop Detector: System including automatic closing timer with adjustable time delay before closing, timer cut-off switch, **as directed**, and loop detector designed to open and close gate **OR** hold gate open until traffic clears **OR** reverse gate, **as directed**. Provide electronic detector with adjustable detection patterns, adjustable sensitivity and frequency settings, and panel indicator light designed to detect presence or transit of a vehicle over an embedded loop of wire and to emit a signal activating the gate operator. Provide number of loops consisting of multiple strands of wire, number of turns, loop size, and method of placement at location shown on Drawings, as recommended in writing by detection system manufacturer for function indicated.
- 1) Loop: Wire, in size indicated for field assembly, for pave-over **OR** saw-cut with epoxy-grouted, **as directed**, installation.  
**OR**  
Loop: Factory preformed in size indicated; style for pave-over **OR** saw-cut with epoxy-grouted, **as directed**, installation.
- g. Vehicle Presence Detector: System including automatic closing timer with adjustable time delay before closing, timer cut-off switch, **as directed**, and presence detector designed to open and close gate **OR** hold gate open until traffic clears **OR** reverse gate, **as directed**. Provide retroreflective **OR** emitter/receiver, **as directed**, detector with adjustable detection zone pattern and sensitivity, designed to detect presence or transit of a vehicle in gate pathway when an infrared beam in zone pattern is interrupted, and to emit a signal activating the gate operator.
7. Obstruction Detection Devices: Provide each motorized gate with automatic safety sensor(s). Activation of sensor(s) causes operator to immediately function as follows:
- a. Action: Reverse gate in both opening and closing cycles and hold until clear of obstruction **OR** Stop gate in opening cycle and reverse gate in closing cycle and hold until clear of obstruction, **as directed**.
  - b. Internal Sensor: Built-in torque or current monitor senses gate is obstructed.
  - c. Sensor Edge: Contact-pressure-sensitive safety edge, profile, and sensitivity designed for type of gate and component indicated, in locations as follows. Connect to control circuit using take-up cable reel **OR** self-coiling cable **OR** gate edge transmitter and operator receiver system, **as directed**.
    - 1) Along entire gate leaf leading edge (for swing gates and slide gates).
    - 2) Along entire gate leaf trailing edge (for slide gates).
    - 3) Across entire gate leaf bottom edge (for vehicular swing and slide gates complying with UL 325 or to suit Project; consider retaining for pedestrian gates).
    - 4) Along entire length of gate posts (for slide gates; revise for sensor edge at pinch point post of swing gates).
    - 5) Along entire length of gate guide posts (for Type II Cantilever Slide, Class 1 gates).
    - 6) Where indicated on Drawings.
  - d. Photoelectric/Infrared Sensor: System designed to detect an obstruction in gate's path when infrared beam in the zone pattern is interrupted.
8. Limit Switches: Adjustable switches, interlocked with motor controls and set to automatically stop gate at fully retracted and fully extended positions.
9. Emergency Release Mechanism: Quick-disconnect release of operator drive system of the following type of mechanism, permitting manual operation if operator fails. Design system so control circuit power is disconnected during manual operation.
- a. Type: Integral fail-safe release, allowing gate to be pushed open without mechanical devices, keys, cranks, or special knowledge **OR** Mechanical device, key, or crank-activated release, **as directed**.
10. Operating Features:
- a. Digital Microprocessor Control: Electronic programmable means for setting, changing, and adjusting control features with capability of monitoring and auditing gate activity, **as directed**. Provide unit that is isolated from voltage spikes and surges.
  - b. System Integration: With controlling circuit board capable of accepting any type of input from external devices.
  - c. Master/Slave Capability: Control stations designed and wired for gate pair operation.



- d. Automatic Closing Timer: With adjustable time delay before closing and timer cut-off switch, **as directed**.
  - e. Open Override Circuit: Designed to override closing commands.
  - f. Reversal Time Delay: Designed to protect gate system from shock load on reversal in both directions.
  - g. Maximum Run Timer: Designed to prevent damage to gate system by shutting down system if normal time to open gate is exceeded.
  - h. Clock Timer: 24-hour **OR** Seven-day, **as directed**, programmable for regular events.
11. Accessories:
- a. Warning Module: Audio **OR** Visual, **as directed**, constant **OR** strobe, **as directed**, -light alarm sounding three to five seconds in advance of gate operation and continuing until gate stops moving; compliant with the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines.
  - b. Battery Backup System: Battery-powered drive and access-control system, independent of primary drive system.
    - 1) Fail Safe: Gate opens and remains open until power is restored.
    - 2) Fail Secure: Gate cycles on battery power, then fail safe when battery is discharged.
  - c. External electric-powered solenoid **OR** magnetic, **as directed**, lock with delay timer allowing time for lock to release before gate operates.
  - d. Fire **OR** Postal, **as directed**, box.
  - e. Fire strobe **OR** siren, **as directed**, sensor.
  - f. Intercom System: As required to meet Project requirements.
  - g. Instructional, Safety, and Warning Labels and Signs: According to UL 325 **OR** Manufacturer's standard for components and features specified **OR** As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
  - h. Equipment Bases/Pads: Precast concrete, depth not less than 12 inches (305 mm), dimensioned and reinforced according to gate operator component manufacturer's written instructions and as indicated on Drawings.
- J. Grout And Anchoring Cement
- 1. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Premixed, factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout, recommended in writing by manufacturer, for exterior applications.
  - 2. Erosion-Resistant Anchoring Cement: Factory-packaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic-controlled expansion cement formulation for mixing with potable water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching, and grouting compound. Provide formulation that is resistant to erosion from water exposure without needing protection by a sealer or waterproof coating and that is recommended in writing by manufacturer for exterior applications.
- K. Fence Grounding
- 1. Conductors: Bare, solid wire for No. 6 AWG and smaller; stranded wire for No. 4 AWG and larger.
    - a. Material above Finished Grade: Copper **OR** Aluminum, **as directed**.
    - b. Material on or below Finished Grade: Copper.
    - c. Bonding Jumpers: Braided copper tape, 1 inch (25.4 mm) wide, woven of No. 30 AWG bare copper wire, terminated with copper ferrules.
  - 2. Connectors and Grounding Rods: Listed in UL 467.
    - a. Connectors for Below-Grade Use: Exothermic welded type.
    - b. Grounding Rods: Copper-clad steel, 5/8 by 96 inches (16 by 2440 mm).
- L. Soil Sterilization
- 1. Soil Sterilant: Type approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Polyethylene Sheeting: 6 mils (0.15 mm) thick, black, and serving as soil separation fabric.
  - 3. Stone Ground Cover: 3/4- to 2-inch (19- to 51-mm) crushed stone or washed gravel.



### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

1. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for a verified survey of property lines and legal boundaries, **as directed**, site clearing, earthwork, pavement work, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - a. Do not begin installation before final grading is completed unless otherwise permitted by the Owner.
2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### B. Preparation

1. Stake locations of fence lines, gates, and terminal posts. Do not exceed intervals of 500 feet (152 m) or line of sight between stakes. Indicate locations of utilities, lawn sprinkler system, underground structures, benchmarks, and property monuments.

#### C. Installation, General

1. Install chain-link fencing to comply with ASTM F 567 **OR** ASTM F 1916, **as directed**, and more stringent requirements specified.
  - a. Install fencing on established boundary lines inside property line.

#### D. Chain-Link Fence Installation

1. Post Excavation: Drill or hand-excavate holes for posts to diameters and spacings indicated, in firm, undisturbed soil.
2. Post Setting: Set posts in concrete **OR** with mechanical anchors **OR** by mechanically driving into soil, **as directed**, at indicated spacing into firm, undisturbed soil.
  - a. Verify that posts are set plumb, aligned, and at correct height and spacing, and hold in position during setting with concrete or mechanical devices.
  - b. Concrete Fill: Place concrete around posts to dimensions indicated and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Protect aboveground portion of posts from concrete splatter.
    - 1) Exposed Concrete: Extend 2 inches (51 mm) above grade or to same elevation as concrete grade beam, **as directed**; shape and smooth to shed water.
    - 2) Concealed Concrete: Top 2 inches (51 mm) below grade as indicated on Drawings to allow covering with surface material.
    - 3) Posts Set into Concrete in Sleeves: Use steel pipe sleeves preset and anchored into concrete for installing posts. After posts have been inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between post and sleeve with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout **OR** anchoring cement, **as directed**, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions, and finished sloped to drain water away from post.
    - 4) Posts Set into Voids in Concrete: Form or core drill holes not less than 5 inches (127 mm) deep and 3/4 inch (19 mm) larger than OD of post. Clean holes of loose material, insert posts, and fill annular space between post and concrete with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout **OR** anchoring cement, **as directed**, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions, and finished sloped to drain water away from post.
3. Terminal Posts: Locate and install terminal end, corner, and gate posts per ASTM F 567 and terminal pull posts at changes in horizontal or vertical alignment of 15 degrees or more, at any abrupt change in grade, and at intervals not greater than 500 feet (152 m). For runs exceeding 500 feet (152 m), space pull posts an equal distance between corner or end posts.
4. Line Posts: Space line posts uniformly at 96 inches (2440 mm) **OR** 10 feet (3 m), **as directed**, o.c.
5. Post Bracing and Intermediate Rails: Install according to ASTM F 567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fencing. Diagonally brace terminal posts to adjacent line posts with truss rods and turnbuckles. Install braces at end and gate posts and at both sides of corner and pull posts.



- a. Locate horizontal braces at midheight of fabric 72 inches (1830 mm) or higher, on fences with top rail and at two-third fabric height on fences without top rail. Install so posts are plumb when diagonal rod is under proper tension.
6. Barbed Wire Arms: Bolt or rivet to top of post. Angle single arms away from approach side of fence.
7. Tension Wire: Install according to ASTM F 567 and ASTM F 1916, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fencing. Pull wire taut, without sags. Fasten fabric to tension wire with 0.120-inch- (3.05-mm-) diameter hog rings of same material and finish as fabric wire, spaced a maximum of 24 inches (610 mm) o.c. Install tension wire in locations indicated before stretching fabric. Provide horizontal tension wire at the following locations:
  - a. Extended along top and bottom, **as directed**, of fence fabric. Install top tension wire through post cap loops. Install bottom tension wire within 6 inches (152 mm) of bottom of fabric and tie to each post with not less than same diameter and type of wire.
  - b. Extended along top of barbed wire arms **OR** extended posts, **as directed**, and top of fence fabric for supporting barbed tape.
  - c. As indicated.
8. Top Rail: Install according to ASTM F 567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fencing. Run rail continuously through line post caps, bending to radius for curved runs and terminating into rail end attached to posts or post caps fabricated to receive rail at terminal posts. Provide expansion couplings as recommended by fencing manufacturer.
9. Bottom Rails: Install and secure to posts with fittings; anchor rail at midspan to concrete footing **OR** continuous grade beam, **as directed**.
10. Chain-Link Fabric: Apply fabric on the approach side of fence, inside of enclosing framework. Pull fabric taut and tie to posts, rails, and tension wires. Anchor to framework so fabric remains under tension after pulling force is released.
  - a. Leave 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) **OR** 2 inches (51 mm), **as directed**, between finish grade or surface and bottom selvage unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Where indicated, bury an 18-inch- (457-mm-) wide, polymer-coated fabric 12 inches (305 mm) into trench; overlap above-grade fabric 6 inches (152 mm) and secure to bottom rail with tie wires. Backfill and compact trench.
  - c. Overlapping Fabric: At or between post or rail according to ASTM F 1916, with wire ties or steel strap method.
11. Tension or Stretcher Bars: Thread through fabric and secure to end, corner, pull, and gate posts with tension bands spaced not more than 15 inches (381 mm) o.c.
12. Tie Wires: Power-fastened or manually fastened ties configured to wrap a full 360 degrees around rail or post and a minimum of one complete diamond of fabric. Twist ends one and one-half machine twists or three full manual twists, and cut off protruding ends to preclude untwisting by hand.
  - a. Maximum Spacing: Tie fabric to line posts at 12 inches (305 mm) o.c. and to braces at 24 inches (610 mm) o.c.
13. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fasten 0.192- or 0.148-inch (4.87- or 3.76-mm) wire fabric with 2- or 1-inch (51- or 25.4-mm) mesh size.
  - a. Fasten fabric to line posts 12 inches (305 mm) o.c. and to braces 24 inches (610 mm) o.c.
14. Fasteners: Install nuts for tension bands and carriage bolts on the side of fence opposite the fabric side. Peen ends of bolts or score threads to prevent removal of nuts, **as directed**.
15. Barbed Wire: Install barbed wire uniformly spaced as indicated on Drawings **OR** as directed. Pull wire taut, install securely to extension arms, and secure to end post or terminal arms.
16. Barbed Tape: Comply with ASTM F 1911. Install barbed tape uniformly in configurations indicated and fasten securely to prevent movement or displacement.
17. Ground Barrier Stakes: Stake coils at 10 feet (3 m) o.c., driven to full depth.

#### E. Gate Installation

1. Install gates according to manufacturer's written instructions, level, plumb, and secure for full opening without interference. Attach fabric as for fencing. Attach hardware using tamper-





resistant or concealed means. Install ground-set items in concrete for anchorage. Adjust hardware for smooth operation and lubricate where necessary.

F. Gate Operator Installation

1. General: Install gate operators according to manufacturer's written instructions, aligned and true to fence line and grade.
2. Excavation for Support Posts **OR** Pedestals **OR** Equipment Bases/Pads, **as directed**: Hand-excavate holes for bases/pads, in firm, undisturbed soil to dimensions and depths and at locations as required by gate operator component manufacturer's written instructions and as indicated.
3. Vehicle Loop Detector System: Cut grooves in pavement and bury **OR** Bury, **as directed**, and seal wire loop according to manufacturer's written instructions. Connect to equipment operated by detector.
4. Comply with NFPA 70 and manufacturer's written instructions for grounding of electric-powered motors, controls, and other devices.

G. Grounding And Bonding

1. Fence Grounding: Install at maximum intervals of 100 feet (30 m) except as follows:
  - a. Gates and Other Fence Openings: Ground fence on each side of opening.
    - 1) Bond metal gates to gate posts.
    - 2) Bond across openings, with and without gates, except openings indicated as intentional fence discontinuities. Use No. 2 AWG wire and bury it at least 18 inches (457 mm) below finished grade.
2. Protection at Crossings of Overhead Electrical Power Lines: Ground fence at location of crossing and at a maximum distance of 150 feet (45 m) on each side of crossing.
3. Fences Enclosing Electrical Power Distribution Equipment: Ground as required by IEEE C2 unless otherwise indicated.
4. Grounding Method: At each grounding location, drive a grounding rod vertically until the top is 6 inches (152 mm) below finished grade. Connect rod to fence with No. 6 AWG conductor. Connect conductor to each fence component at grounding location, including the following:
  - a. Make grounding connections to each barbed wire strand with wire-to-wire connectors designed for this purpose.
  - b. Make grounding connections to each barbed tape coil with connectors designed for this purpose.
5. Bonding Method for Gates: Connect bonding jumper between gate post and gate frame.
6. Connections: Make connections to minimize possibility of galvanic action or electrolysis. Select connectors, connection hardware, conductors, and connection methods so metals in direct contact will be galvanically compatible.
  - a. Use electroplated or hot-tin-coated materials to ensure high conductivity and to make contact points closer in order of galvanic series.
  - b. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.
  - c. Make aluminum-to-steel connections with stainless-steel separators and mechanical clamps.
  - d. Make aluminum-to-galvanized-steel connections with tin-plated copper jumpers and mechanical clamps.
  - e. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.
7. Bonding to Lightning Protection System: If fence terminates at lightning-protected building or structure, ground the fence and bond the fence grounding conductor to lightning protection down conductor or lightning protection grounding conductor complying with NFPA 780.

H. Soil Sterilization

1. General: Comply with ASTM F 1916.
2. Apply sterilant after completing grounding and other below-grade electrical work along fence line and within zone between double-row chain-link fence installation.



3. Install soil separation fabric continuously between double-row chain-link fence installation, overlapping punctures and joints 6 inches (152 mm).
4. Lay continuous 3-inch- (75-mm-) deep bed of crushed stone or washed gravel over soil separation fabric.
5. Extend soil sterilization 4 feet (1.2 m) **OR** 6 feet (1.8 m), **as directed**, beyond outside and inside of fence.

I. Field Quality Control

1. Fabric Testing: Test fabric tension according to ASTM F 1916.
2. Fence Post Rigidity Testing: Test line posts for rigidity according to ASTM F 1916.
3. Grounding-Resistance Testing: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
  - a. Grounding-Resistance Tests: Subject completed grounding system to a megger test at each grounding location. Measure grounding resistance no fewer than two full days after last trace of precipitation, without soil having been moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural grounding resistance. Perform tests by two-point method according to IEEE 81.
  - b. Excessive Grounding Resistance: If resistance to grounding exceeds specified value, notify the Owner promptly. Include recommendations for reducing grounding resistance and a proposal to accomplish recommended work.
  - c. Report: Prepare test reports, certified by testing agency, of grounding resistance at each test location. Include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results.

J. Adjusting

1. Gates: Adjust gates to operate smoothly, easily, and quietly, free of binding, warp, excessive deflection, distortion, nonalignment, misplacement, disruption, or malfunction, throughout entire operational range. Confirm that latches and locks engage accurately and securely without forcing or binding.
2. Automatic Gate Operator: Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices. Adjust operators, controls, safety devices, alarms, **as directed**, and limit switches.
  - a. Hydraulic Operator: Purge operating system, adjust pressure and fluid levels, and check for leaks.
  - b. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - c. Test and adjust controls, alarms, **as directed**, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
3. Lubricate hardware, gate operator, **as directed**, and other moving parts.

K. Demonstration

1. Train the Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain high-security chain-link fences and gates.

END OF SECTION 32 31 13 13



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
32 31 13 13	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
32 31 13 13	31 13 16 00	Tree Protection And Trimming
32 31 13 13	32 31 11 00	Chain-Link Fences And Gates



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 32 31 19 00 - ORNAMENTAL METAL FENCES AND GATES**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of ornamental metal fences and gates. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Decorative metallic-coated steel tubular picket fences.
  - b. Decorative metallic-coated steel wire fences.
  - c. Decorative metallic-coated steel security fences.
  - d. Decorative steel fences.
  - e. Decorative aluminum fences.
  - f. Swing gates.
  - g. Horizontal-slide gates.
  - h. Gate operators, including controls.

## C. Performance Requirements

1. Lightning-Protection System: Maximum grounding-resistance value of 25 ohms under normal dry conditions.

## D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: For gates. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - a. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Samples: For each fence material and for each color specified.
  - a. Provide Samples 12 inches (300 mm) in length for linear materials.
  - b. Provide Samples 12 inches (300 mm) square for wire mesh, bar grating, and sheet or plate materials.
4. Welding certificates.
5. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for decorative metallic-coated steel tubular picket fences, including finish, indicating compliance with referenced standard and other specified requirements.
6. Maintenance Data: For gate operators to include in maintenance manuals.

## E. Quality Assurance

1. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel **OR** AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum", **as directed**.
2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. UL Standard: Provide gate operators that comply with UL 325.
4. Emergency Access Requirements: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for automatic gate operators on gates that must provide emergency access.
5. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.



## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Aluminum

1. Aluminum, General: Provide alloys and tempers with not less than the strength and durability properties of alloy and temper designated in paragraphs below for each aluminum form required.
2. Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T5.
3. Tubing: ASTM B 429, Alloy 6063-T6.
4. Plate and Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 6061-T6.
5. Die and Hand Forgings: ASTM B 247 (ASTM B 247M), Alloy 6061-T6.
6. Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy A356.0-T6.

### B. Steel And Iron

1. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
2. Bars (Pickets): Hot-rolled, carbon steel complying with ASTM A 29/A 29M, Grade 1010.
3. Tubing: ASTM A 500, cold formed steel tubing.
4. Bar Grating: NAAMM MBG 531.
  - a. Bars: Hot-rolled steel strip, ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, Commercial Steel, Type B.
  - b. Wire Rods: ASTM A 510 (ASTM A 510M).
5. Uncoated Steel Sheet: Hot-rolled steel sheet, ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, Structural Steel, Grade 45 (Grade 310) or cold-rolled steel sheet, ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Structural Steel, Grade 50 (Grade 340).
6. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural quality, Grade 50 (Grade 340), with G90 (Z275) **OR** G60 (Z180), **as directed**, coating.
7. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792/A 792M, structural quality, Grade 50 (Grade 340), with AZ60 (AZM180) coating.
8. Castings: Either gray or malleable iron unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Gray Iron: ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 30.
  - b. Malleable Iron: ASTM A 47/A 47M.

### C. Coating Materials

1. Shop Primers for Steel: Provide primers that comply with Division 09 Section(s) "Exterior Painting" OR "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
2. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer for Steel: Complying with MPI #20 and compatible with coating specified to be applied over it.
  - a. Use primer with a VOC content of 420 g/L **OR** 400 g/L **OR** 340 g/L, **as directed**, or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Epoxy Primer for Galvanized Steel: Complying with MPI #101 and compatible with coating specified to be applied over it.
  - a. Use primer with a VOC content of 420 g/L **OR** 400 g/L **OR** 300 g/L, **as directed**, or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
4. Epoxy Intermediate Coat: Complying with MPI #77 and compatible with primer and topcoat.
  - a. Use product with a VOC content of 420 g/L **OR** 400 g/L **OR** 250 g/L, **as directed**, or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
5. Polyurethane Topcoat: Complying with MPI #72 and compatible with undercoat.
  - a. Use product with a VOC content of 420 g/L **OR** 400 g/L **OR** 250 g/L, **as directed**, or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

### D. Miscellaneous Materials

1. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
  - a. For aluminum, provide type and alloy as recommended by producer of metal to be welded and as required for strength and compatibility in fabricated items.
2. Concrete: Normal-weight, air-entrained, ready-mix concrete complying with requirements in Division 03 Section "Miscellaneous Cast-in-place Applications) Concrete" with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20 MPa), 3-inch (75-mm) slump, and 1-inch (25-mm)



- maximum aggregate size or dry, packaged, normal-weight concrete mix complying with ASTM C 387 mixed with potable water according to manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Nonshrink Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107 and specifically recommended by manufacturer for exterior applications.
- E. Grounding Materials
1. Grounding Conductors: Bare, solid wire for No. 6 AWG and smaller; stranded wire for No. 4 AWG and larger.
    - a. Material above Finished Grade: Copper **OR** Aluminum, **as directed**.
    - b. Material on or below Finished Grade: Copper.
    - c. Bonding Jumpers: Braided copper tape, 1 inch (25 mm) wide, woven of No. 30 AWG bare copper wire, terminated with copper ferrules.
  2. Grounding Connectors and Grounding Rods: Comply with UL 467.
    - a. Connectors for Below-Grade Use: Exothermic-welded type.
    - b. Grounding Rods: Copper-clad steel.
      - 1) Size: 5/8 by 96 inches (16 by 2440 mm).
- F. Decorative Metallic-Coated Steel Tubular Picket Fences
1. Decorative Metallic-Coated Steel Tubular Picket Fences: Comply with ASTM F 2408, for residential **OR** light industrial (commercial) **OR** industrial, **as directed**, application (class) unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Galvanized-steel sheet or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet.
  3. Interior surface of tubes formed from uncoated steel sheet shall be hot-dip zinc coated same as exterior or coated with zinc-rich thermosetting coating to comply with ASTM F 2408.
  4. Posts:
    - a. End and Corner Posts: Square tubes 2-1/2 by 2-1/2 inches (64 by 64 mm) **OR** 3 by 3 inches (76 by 76 mm), **as directed**, formed from 0.108-inch (2.74-mm) nominal-thickness, metallic-coated steel sheet or formed from 0.105-inch (2.66-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet and hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
    - b. Swing Gate Posts:
      - 1) Square tubes 3 by 3 inches (76 by 76 mm) formed from 0.108-inch (2.74-mm) nominal-thickness, metallic-coated steel sheet or formed from 0.105-inch (2.66-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet and hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.  
**OR**  
Square steel tubing 3 by 3 inches (76 by 76 mm) **OR** 4 by 4 inches (102 by 102 mm), **as directed**, with 3/16-inch (4.76-mm) wall thickness, hot-dip galvanized.
    - c. Horizontal-Slide Gate Post, Openings up to 12 Feet (3.7 m): Square steel tubing 3 by 3 inches (76 by 76 mm) **OR** 4 by 4 inches (102 by 102 mm), **as directed**, with 3/16-inch (4.76-mm) wall thickness, hot-dip galvanized.
    - d. Horizontal-Slide Gate Post, Openings Wider Than 12 Feet (3.7 m): Square steel tubing 4 by 4 inches (102 by 102 mm) with 3/16-inch (4.76-mm) wall thickness, hot-dip galvanized.
    - e. Guide Posts for Class 1 Horizontal-Slide Gates:
      - 1) Square tubes 3 by 3 inches (76 by 76 mm) formed from 0.108-inch (2.74-mm) nominal-thickness, metallic-coated steel sheet or formed from 0.105-inch (2.66-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet and hot-dip galvanized after fabrication; installed adjacent to gate post to permit gate to slide in space between.  
**OR**  
Square steel tubing 3 by 3 inches (76 by 76 mm) **OR** 4 by 4 inches (102 by 102 mm), **as directed**, with 3/16-inch (4.76-mm) wall thickness, hot-dip galvanized; installed adjacent to gate post to permit gate to slide in space between.
  5. Post Caps: Formed from steel sheet and hot-dip galvanized after forming **OR** UV-resistant plastic **OR** Aluminum castings **OR** Aluminum castings with round ball finials, **as directed**.
  6. Rails: Square tubes **OR** Double-wall channels, **as directed**.
    - a. Size: 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches (38 by 38 mm) **OR** 1-3/4 by 1-3/4 inches (45 by 45 mm), **as directed**.



- b. Metal and Thickness: 0.079-inch (2.01-mm) nominal-thickness, metallic-coated steel sheet or 0.075-inch (1.90-mm) nominal-thickness, uncoated steel sheet, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
- 7. Pickets: Square tubes.
  - a. Terminate tops of pickets at top rail for flush top appearance **OR** Extend pickets beyond top rail as indicated and terminate with UV-resistant plastic caps **OR** Extend pickets beyond top rail as indicated and terminate with galvanized-steel caps **OR** Extend pickets beyond top rail as indicated and press flat and trim to produce spear point shape, **as directed**.
  - b. Picket Spacing: 6 inches (152.4 mm) **OR** 4 inches (101.6 mm) **OR** 1-3/4 inches (44 mm), **as directed**, clear, maximum.
- 8. Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard concealed fastening system.
- 9. Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard tamperproof, **as directed**, corrosion-resistant, color-coated fasteners matching fence components, with resilient polymer washers, **as directed**.
- 10. Galvanizing: For components indicated to be galvanized and for which galvanized coating is not specified in ASTM F 2408, hot-dip galvanize to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M. For hardware items, hot-dip galvanize to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- 11. Finish: Organic coating complying with requirements in ASTM F 2408 **OR** Powder coating, **as directed**.

#### G. Decorative Metallic-Coated Steel Wire Fences

- 1. Metallic-Coated Steel Wire: Welded-wire fence fabric, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication. Weight of zinc coating shall be not less than 1.0 oz./sq. ft. (305 g/sq. m).
  - a. Spacing of Vertical Wires: 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) **OR** 4 inches (102 mm) **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  - b. Vertical Wire Size: 0.187 inch (4.76 mm) **OR** 0.192 inch (4.88 mm) **OR** 0.225 inch (5.72 mm) **OR** 0.25 inch (6.35 mm) **OR** 0.262 inch (6.67 mm), **as directed**.
  - c. Spacing of Horizontal Wires: 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) **OR** 2 inches (51 mm) **OR** 4 inches (102 mm) **OR** 8 inches (203 mm) **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  - d. Horizontal Wire Size: 0.187 inch (4.76 mm) **OR** 0.192 inch (4.88 mm) **OR** 0.225 inch (5.72 mm) **OR** 0.25 inch (6.35 mm) **OR** 0.312 inch (7.94 mm), **as directed**.
- 2. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Galvanized-steel sheet or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet.
- 3. Interior surface of tubes formed from uncoated steel sheet shall be hot-dip zinc coated same as exterior or coated with zinc-rich thermosetting coating to comply with ASTM F 2408.
- 4. Posts:
  - a. Line Posts: Square tubes 2 by 2 inches (50 by 50 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 by 2-1/2 inches (64 by 64 mm) **OR** 3 by 3 inches (76 by 76 mm), **as directed**, formed from 0.064-inch (1.63-mm) **OR** 0.079-inch (2.01-mm) **OR** 0.108-inch (2.74-mm), **as directed**, nominal-thickness, metallic-coated steel sheet or formed from 0.060-inch (1.52-mm) **OR** 0.075-inch (1.90-mm) **OR** 0.105-inch (2.66-mm), **as directed**, nominal-thickness steel sheet and hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
  - b. End and Corner Posts: Square tubes 2-1/2 by 2-1/2 inches (64 by 64 mm) **OR** 3 by 3 inches (76 by 76 mm), **as directed**, formed from 0.108-inch (2.74-mm) nominal-thickness, metallic-coated steel sheet or formed from 0.105-inch (2.66-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet and hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
  - c. Swing Gate Posts:
    - 1) Square tubes 3 by 3 inches (76 by 76 mm) formed from 0.108-inch (2.74-mm) nominal-thickness, metallic-coated steel sheet or formed from 0.105-inch (2.66-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet and hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.  
**OR**  
Square steel tubing 3 by 3 inches (76 by 76 mm) **OR** 4 by 4 inches (102 by 102 mm), **as directed**, with 3/16-inch (4.76-mm) wall thickness, hot-dip galvanized.
  - d. Horizontal-Slide Gate Post, Openings up to 12 Feet (3.7 m): Square steel tubing 3 by 3 inches (76 by 76 mm) **OR** 4 by 4 inches (102 by 102 mm), **as directed**, with 3/16-inch (4.76-mm) wall thickness, hot-dip galvanized.





- e. Horizontal-Slide Gate Post, Openings Wider Than 12 Feet (3.7 m): Square steel tubing 4 by 4 inches (102 by 102 mm) with 3/16-inch (4.76-mm) wall thickness, hot-dip galvanized.
  - f. Guide Posts for Class 1 Horizontal-Slide Gates:
    - 1) Square tubes 3 by 3 inches (76 by 76 mm) formed from 0.108-inch (2.74-mm) nominal-thickness, metallic-coated steel sheet or formed from 0.105-inch (2.66-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet and hot-dip galvanized after fabrication; installed adjacent to gate post to permit gate to slide in space between.  
**OR**  
Square steel tubing 3 by 3 inches (76 by 76 mm) **OR** 4 by 4 inches (102 by 102 mm), **as directed**, with 3/16-inch (4.76-mm) wall thickness, hot-dip galvanized; installed adjacent to gate post to permit gate to slide in space between.
  5. Post Caps: Formed from steel sheet and hot-dip galvanized after forming **OR** UV-resistant plastic **OR** Aluminum castings **OR** Aluminum castings with round ball finials, **as directed**.
  6. Rails: Square tubes.
    - a. Size: 1-3/16 by 1-1/2 inches (30 by 38 mm) **OR** 1-3/8 by 1-1/2 inches (35 by 38 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches (38 by 38 mm), **as directed**.
    - b. Metal and Thickness: 0.064-inch (1.63-mm) **OR** 0.079-inch (2.01-mm), **as directed**, nominal-thickness, metallic-coated steel sheet or 0.060-inch (1.52-mm) **OR** 0.075-inch (1.90-mm), **as directed**, nominal-thickness, uncoated steel sheet, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
  7. Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard tamperproof, **as directed**, corrosion-resistant, color-coated fasteners matching fence components with resilient polymer washers or clips, **as directed**.
  8. Galvanizing: For components indicated to be galvanized and for which galvanized coating is not specified, hot-dip galvanize to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M. For hardware items, hot-dip galvanize to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
  9. Finish: Organic coating complying with requirements in ASTM F 2408 **OR** Powder coating, **as directed**.
- H. Decorative Metallic-Coated Steel Security Fences
1. Posts: 1-3/4-by-4-inch (45-by-102-mm) double-thickness, I-shaped sections.
    - a. Metal and Thickness: 0.108-inch (2.74-mm) nominal-thickness, metallic-coated steel sheet or 0.105-inch (2.66-mm) nominal-thickness, uncoated steel sheet, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
  2. Post Caps: Aluminum castings.
  3. Rails: 2-by-2-1/2-inch (50-by-64-mm) pentagon-shaped box channel designed to shed water and to enclose wire rope reinforcement.
    - a. Metal and Thickness: 0.108-inch (2.74-mm) nominal-thickness, metallic-coated steel sheet or 0.105-inch (2.66-mm) nominal-thickness, uncoated steel sheet, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
    - b. Wire Rope Reinforcement: 3/4-inch (19-mm) zinc-coated steel wire rope.
  4. Pickets: 3/4-by-2-3/4-inch (19-by-70-mm) M-shaped pales.
    - a. Metal and Thickness: 0.079-inch (2.01-mm) nominal-thickness, metallic-coated steel sheet or 0.075-inch (1.90-mm) nominal-thickness, uncoated steel sheet, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
    - b. Extend pickets beyond top rail as indicated and terminate with rounded edge **OR** cut and split to form three points, **as directed**.
    - c. Picket Spacing: 6 inches (152.4 mm) o.c.
  5. Fasteners: Stainless-steel carriage bolts with tamperproof nuts.
  6. Galvanizing: For components indicated to be galvanized, hot-dip galvanize to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M unless otherwise indicated. For hardware items, hot-dip galvanize to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
  7. Finish: Powder coating.
- I. Decorative Steel Fences
1. Decorative Steel Fences: Fences made from steel tubing bars, **as directed**, and shapes, hot-dip galvanized, **as directed**.



2. Posts: Square steel tubing.
  - a. Line Posts: 2 by 2 inches (50 by 50 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 by 2-1/2 inches (64 by 64 mm) **OR** 3 by 3 inches (76 by 76 mm), **as directed**, with 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) **OR** 3/16-inch (4.76-mm), **as directed**, wall thickness.
  - b. End and Corner Posts: 2-1/2 by 2-1/2 inches (64 by 64 mm) **OR** 3 by 3 inches (76 by 76 mm) **OR** 4 by 4 inches (102 by 102 mm), **as directed**, with 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) **OR** 3/16-inch (4.76-mm), **as directed**, wall thickness.
  - c. Swing Gate Posts: 3 by 3 inches (76 by 76 mm) **OR** 4 by 4 inches (102 by 102 mm), **as directed**, with 3/16-inch (4.76-mm) wall thickness.
  - d. Horizontal-Slide Gate Post, Openings up to 12 Feet (3.7 m): 3 by 3 inches (76 by 76 mm) **OR** 4 by 4 inches (102 by 102 mm), **as directed**, with 3/16-inch (4.76-mm) wall thickness.
  - e. Horizontal-Slide Gate Post, Openings Wider Than 12 Feet (3.7 m): 4 by 4 inches (102 by 102 mm) with 3/16-inch (4.76-mm) wall thickness.
  - f. Guide Posts for Class 1 Horizontal-Slide Gates: 3 by 3 inches (76 by 76 mm) **OR** 4 by 4 inches (102 by 102 mm), **as directed**, with 3/16-inch (4.76-mm) wall thickness; installed adjacent to gate post to permit gate to slide in space between.
3. Post Caps: Formed from steel sheet **OR** Formed from steel sheet and hot-dip galvanized after forming **OR** Aluminum castings **OR** Aluminum castings with round ball finials, **as directed**.
4. Rails:
  - a. Steel Tube Rails: Square steel tubing 2 by 2 inches (50 by 50 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 by 2-1/2 inches (64 by 64 mm), **as directed**, with 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) wall thickness.
  - b. Steel Channel Rails: Steel channels 2 by 1 inch (50 by 25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 by 3/4 inch (38 by 19 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 by 1/2 inch (38 by 13 mm), **as directed**.
5. Pickets: 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) square steel bars **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) square steel bars **OR** Decorative steel bars of pattern and size indicated **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm) square by 0.065-inch (1.65-mm) steel tubes **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm) square by 0.083-inch (2.11-mm) steel tubes **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm) square by 0.065-inch (1.65-mm) steel tubes **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm) square by 0.083-inch (2.11-mm) steel tubes **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) square by 0.065-inch (1.65-mm) steel tubes **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) square by 0.083-inch (2.11-mm) steel tubes, **as directed**.
  - a. Terminate tops of pickets at top rail for flush top appearance **OR** Extend pickets beyond top rail as indicated and mill ends to pyramid shaped points **OR** Extend pickets beyond top rail as indicated and press flat and trim to produce spear point shape **OR** Extend pickets beyond top rail as indicated and cap with metal spear point finial **OR** Extend pickets beyond top rail as indicated and cap with metal tripoint finial, **as directed**.
  - b. Picket Spacing: 6 inches (152.4 mm) **OR** 4 inches (101.6 mm) **OR** 1-3/4 inches (44 mm), **as directed**, clear, maximum.
  - c. Treillage: Provide iron castings of pattern indicated between each pair of pickets.
6. Infill: Forge-welded steel bar grating.
  - a. Perimeter Bars: Steel flat bars 1 by 1/8 inch (25 by 3.2 mm).
  - b. Vertical Main Bars: Steel flat bars 1 by 1/8 inch (25 by 3.2 mm) **OR** 1-3/16 by 5/32 inch (30 by 4 mm), **as directed**.
  - c. Vertical Main Bar Spacing: 1-21/32 inches (42 mm) **OR** 1-7/8 inches (48 mm) **OR** 2-7/16 inches (62 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
  - d. Horizontal Cross Rods: 3/16-inch- (4.8-mm-) **OR** 1/4-inch- (6.4-mm-), **as directed**, diameter, steel rods.
  - e. Horizontal Cross Rod Spacing: 1-3/4 inches (45 mm) **OR** 2-19/32 inches (66 mm) **OR** 5-3/16 inches (132 mm), **as directed**, o.c.
7. Infill: Custom design as indicated on Drawings.
  - a. Bars: 1/2-inch- (12.7 -mm-) square steel bars **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) square steel bars **OR** 1/2-inch- (12.7 -mm-) diameter, round steel bars **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) diameter, round steel bars **OR** 1-by-1/8-inch (25-by-3.2-mm) steel flat bars **OR** 1-by-1/4-inch (25-by-6.4-mm) steel flat bars **OR** 1-by-1/2-inch (25-by-12.7 -mm) steel flat bars, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.



- b. Square Tubes: Square steel tubing 2 by 2 inches (50 by 50 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 by 2-1/2 inches (64 by 64 mm), **as directed**, with 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) wall thickness unless otherwise indicated.
  - c. Round Tubes: 1-inch- (25-mm-) **OR** 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) **OR** 2-inch- (50-mm-) **OR** 2-1/2-inch- (64-mm-), **as directed**, diameter, round steel tubing with 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) wall thickness unless otherwise indicated.
  - d. Steel Plate: 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) **OR** 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) **OR** 1/4 inch (6.4 mm), **as directed**, thick unless otherwise indicated.
  - e. Perforated Metal Sheet: Uncoated steel sheet, perforated as indicated, 0.060-inch (1.52-mm) **OR** 0.075-inch (1.90-mm) **OR** 0.105-inch (2.66-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness.
  8. Fasteners: Stainless-steel carriage bolts and tamperproof, **as directed**, nuts.
  9. Fabrication:
    - a. Assemble fences into sections by welding pickets to rails.
      - 1) Fabricate sections with clips welded to rails for fastening to posts in field.
      - 2) Drill posts and clips for fasteners before finishing to maximum extent possible.
    - b. Fabricate bar grating infill into sections of size indicated.
      - 1) Fabricate rails with clips welded to rails for fastening to posts in field.
      - 2) Drill posts, clips, **as directed**, and bar grating for fasteners before finishing to maximum extent possible.
  10. Finish exposed welds to comply with NOMMA Guideline 1, Finish #2 - completely sanded joint, some undercutting and pinholes okay **OR** Finish #3 - partially dressed weld with splatter removed **OR** Finish #4 - good-quality, uniform undressed weld with minimal splatter, **as directed**.
  11. Galvanizing: For items other than hardware that are indicated to be galvanized, hot-dip galvanize to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M. For hardware items, hot-dip galvanize to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
    - a. Hot-dip galvanize posts and rails, **as directed**.
    - b. Hot-dip galvanize rail and picket assemblies after fabrication.
    - c. Hot-dip galvanize bar grating infill after fabrication.
    - d. Hot-dip galvanize custom-design rail and infill assemblies after fabrication.
  12. Finish for Bar Grating Infill: Powder coating.
  13. Finish for Steel Items Other than Bar Grating Infill: Primed **OR** Shop painted **OR** High-performance coating, **as directed**.
  14. Finish for Metallic-Coated Steel Items Other than Bar Grating Infill: High-performance coating **OR** Galvanized finish, **as directed**.
- J. Decorative Aluminum Fences
1. Decorative Aluminum Fences: Fences made from aluminum extrusions.
  2. Posts: Square extruded tubes.
    - a. Line Posts: 2 by 2 inches (50 by 50 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 by 2-1/2 inches (64 by 64 mm) **OR** 3 by 3 inches (76 by 76 mm), **as directed**, with 0.062-inch (1.57-mm) **OR** 0.080-inch (2.03-mm) **OR** 0.093-inch (2.36-mm) **OR** 0.100-inch (2.54-mm) **OR** 0.125-inch (3.18-mm), **as directed**, wall thickness.
    - b. End and Corner Posts: 2 by 2 inches (50 by 50 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 by 2-1/2 inches (64 by 64 mm) **OR** 3 by 3 inches (76 by 76 mm), **as directed**, with 0.062-inch (1.57-mm) **OR** 0.080-inch (2.03-mm) **OR** 0.093-inch (2.36-mm) **OR** 0.100-inch (2.54-mm) **OR** 0.125-inch (3.18-mm), **as directed**, wall thickness.
    - c. Swing Gate Posts: 2-1/2 by 2-1/2 inches (64 by 64 mm) **OR** 3 by 3 inches (76 by 76 mm) **OR** 4 by 4 inches (102 by 102 mm), **as directed**, with 0.125-inch (3.18-mm) **OR** 0.250-inch (6.35-mm), **as directed**, wall thickness.
    - d. Horizontal-Slide Gate Post, Openings up to 12 Feet (3.7 m): 2-1/2 by 2-1/2 inches (64 by 64 mm) **OR** 3 by 3 inches (76 by 76 mm) **OR** 4 by 4 inches (102 by 102 mm), **as directed**, with 0.125-inch (3.18-mm) **OR** 0.250-inch (6.35-mm), **as directed**, wall thickness.
    - e. Horizontal-Slide Gate Post, Openings Wider Than 12 Feet (3.7 m): 3 by 3 inches (76 by 76 mm) **OR** 4 by 4 inches (102 by 102 mm) **OR** 6 by 6 inches (152 by 152 mm), **as directed**, with 0.125-inch (3.18-mm) **OR** 0.250-inch (6.35-mm), **as directed**, wall thickness.



- f. Guide Posts for Class 1 Horizontal-Slide Gates: 2 by 2 inches (50 by 50 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 by 2-1/2 inches (64 by 64 mm) **OR** 3 by 3 inches (76 by 76 mm), **as directed**, with 0.062-inch (1.57-mm) **OR** 0.093-inch (2.36-mm) **OR** 0.125-inch (3.18-mm), **as directed**, wall thickness; installed adjacent to gate post to permit gate to slide in space between.
  3. Post Caps: Aluminum castings that cover entire top of posts **OR** project at least 1/4 inch (6 mm) beyond posts, **as directed**, with round ball finial, **as directed**.
  4. Rails: Extruded-aluminum channels, 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches (38 by 38 mm), with 0.100-inch- (2.54-mm-) thick sidewalls and 0.070-inch- (1.78-mm-) thick top **OR** 1 by 1-1/2 inches (25 by 38 mm), with 0.082-inch- (2.08-mm-) thick sidewalls and 0.055-inch- (1.40-mm-) thick top **OR** 1-1/4 by 1-1/4 inches (32 by 32 mm), with 0.078-inch- (1.98-mm-) thick sidewalls and 0.062-inch- (1.57-mm-) thick top **OR** 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), with 0.080-inch- (2.03-mm-) thick sidewalls and 0.055-inch- (1.40-mm-) thick top **OR** 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), with 0.078-inch- (1.98-mm-) thick sidewalls and 0.062-inch- (1.57-mm-) thick top, **as directed**.
  5. Pickets: Extruded-aluminum tubes, 1 inch (25 mm) square, with 0.062-inch (1.57-mm) wall thickness **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) square, with 0.060-inch (1.52-mm) wall thickness **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm) square, with 0.050-inch (1.27-mm) wall thickness **OR** 1 by 5/8 inch (25 by 16 mm), with 0.050-inch (1.27-mm) wall thickness **OR** 5/8 inch (16 mm) square, with 0.050-inch (1.27-mm) wall thickness, **as directed**.
    - a. Terminate tops of pickets at top rail for flush top appearance **OR** Extend pickets beyond top rail as indicated and terminate with UV-resistant plastic caps **OR** Extend pickets beyond top rail as indicated and terminate with cast-aluminum caps **OR** Extend pickets beyond top rail as indicated and press flat and trim to produce spear point shape **OR** Extend pickets beyond top rail as indicated and terminate with cast-aluminum spear point finial **OR** Extend pickets beyond top rail as indicated and terminate with cast-aluminum tripoint finial, **as directed**.
    - b. Picket Spacing: 6 inches (152.4 mm) **OR** 4 inches (101.6 mm) **OR** 1-3/4 inches (44 mm), **as directed**, clear, maximum.
  6. Fasteners:
    - a. Manufacturer's standard concealed fastening system. **OR** Manufacturer's standard tamperproof, **as directed**, corrosion-resistant, color-coated fasteners matching fence components with resilient polymer washers, **as directed**.
  7. Fabrication: Assemble fences into sections by welding **OR** fastening, **as directed**, pickets to rails.
    - a. Fabricate sections with clips welded to rails for fastening to posts in field.
    - b. Drill clips for fasteners before finishing.
  8. Finish exposed welds to comply with NOMMA Guideline 1, Finish #2 - completely sanded joint, some undercutting and pinholes okay **OR** Finish #3 - partially dressed weld with splatter removed **OR** Finish #4 - good-quality, uniform undressed weld with minimal splatter, **as directed**.
  9. Finish: Baked enamel or powder coating.
- K. Swing Gates
1. Gate Configuration: Single leaf **OR** Double leaf, **unless directed otherwise**.
  2. Gate Frame Height: 72 inches (1830 mm), **unless directed otherwise**.
  3. Gate Opening Width: 36 inches (914 mm), **unless directed otherwise**.
  4. Galvanized-Steel Frames and Bracing: Fabricate members from square tubes 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches (38 by 38 mm) **OR** 1-3/4 by 1-3/4 inches (45 by 45 mm) **OR** 2 by 2 inches (50 by 50 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 by 2-1/2 inches (64 by 64 mm), **as directed**, formed from 0.108-inch (2.74-mm) nominal-thickness, metallic-coated steel sheet or formed from 0.105-inch (2.66-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet and hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
  5. Steel Frames and Bracing: Fabricate members from square steel tubing 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches (38 by 38 mm) **OR** 2 by 2 inches (50 by 50 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 by 2-1/2 inches (64 by 64 mm), **as directed**, with 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) wall thickness. Hot-dip galvanize frames after fabrication, **as directed**.



6. Aluminum Frames and Bracing: Fabricate members from square extruded-aluminum tubes 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches (38 by 38 mm) **OR** 2 by 2 inches (50 by 50 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 by 2-1/2 inches (64 by 64 mm), **as directed**, with 0.100-inch (2.54-mm) **OR** 0.125-inch (3.18-mm) **OR** 0.140-inch (3.56-mm) **OR** 0.154-inch (3.91-mm), **as directed**, wall thickness.
7. Frame Corner Construction: Welded or assembled with corner fittings and 5/16-inch- (7.9-mm-) diameter, adjustable truss rods for panels 5 feet (1.52 m) wide or wider.
8. Additional Rails: Provide as indicated, complying with requirements for fence rails.
9. Infill: Comply with requirements for adjacent fence.
10. Picket Size, Configuration, and Spacing: Comply with requirements for adjacent fence.
  - a. Treillage: Provide iron castings of pattern indicated between each pair of pickets. Finish as specified for adjacent fence **OR** gates, **as directed**.
11. Hardware: Latches permitting operation from both sides of gate, hinges, and keepers for each gate leaf more than 5 feet (1.52 m) wide. Provide center gate stops and cane bolts for pairs of gates. Fabricate latches with integral eye openings for padlocking; padlock accessible from both sides of gate, **as directed**.
12. Spring Hinges: BHMA A156.17, Grade 1, suitable for exterior use.
  - a. Function: 320 - Gate spring pivot hinge. Adjustable tension **OR** 321 - Gate spring pivot hinge. Fixed tension, **as directed**.
  - b. Material: Malleable iron.
13. Hinges: BHMA A156.1, Grade 1, suitable for exterior use.
  - a. Function: 39 - Full surface, triple weight, antifriction bearing.
  - b. Material: Wrought steel, forged steel, cast steel, or malleable iron.
14. Rim Locks: BHMA A156.5, Grade 1, suitable for exterior use.
  - a. Function: 621 - Latchbolt by key from outside and by turn from inside. Latchbolt is held retracted by device from inside **OR** 622 - Deadbolt by key from outside and by turn from inside **OR** 629 - Deadlocking latchbolt by key from outside and by turn from inside **OR** 626 - Interlocking deadbolt operated by key from either side **OR** 627 - Interlocking deadbolt operated by key from outside and by turn from inside, **as directed**.
  - b. Material: Cast, forged, or extruded brass or bronze.
  - c. Mounting Plate: Configuration necessary for mounting locks. Fabricate from 1/8-inch- (3.2-mm-) thick, steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, plate.
15. Mortise Locks: BHMA A156.13, Grade 1, suitable for exterior use.
  - a. Function: F06 - Holdback lock **OR** F07 - Storeroom or closet lock **OR** F09 - Apartment, exit, or public toilet lock **OR** F16 - Double-cylinder dead lock **OR** F17 - Dead lock, **as directed**.
  - b. Material: Brass or bronze.
  - c. Levers: Cast, forged, or extruded brass or bronze.
  - d. Mounting Box: Configuration necessary to enclose locks. Fabricate from 1/8-inch- (3.2-mm-) thick, steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, plate.
16. Electric Strikes: BHMA A156.31, Grade 1, of configuration required for use with lock specified, fail safe **OR** fail secure, **as directed**, and suitable for exterior use.
  - a. Mounting Plate: Configuration necessary for mounting electric strikes. Fabricate from 1/8-inch- (3.2-mm-) thick, steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, plate.
  - b. Mounting: Mortise into post.
17. Exit Hardware: BHMA A156.3, Grade 1, Type 1 (rim exit device), with push pad actuating bar, suitable for exterior use.
  - a. Function: 01 - Exit only, no trim or blank escutcheon **OR** 04 - Entrance by trim when latch bolt is released by key or set in a retracted position by key **OR** 08 - Entrance by lever. Key locks or unlocks lever **OR** 09 - Entrance by lever only when released by key. Key removable only when locked, **as directed**.
  - b. Mounting Channel: Bent-plate channel formed from 1/8-inch- (3.2-mm-) thick, steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, plate. Channel spans gate frame. Exit device is mounted on channel web, recessed between flanges, with flanges extending 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) beyond push pad surface.
18. Cane Bolts: Provide for inactive leaf of pairs of gates. Fabricated from 1/2-inch- (12.7 -mm-) **OR** 3/4-inch- (19-mm-), **as directed**, diameter, round steel bars, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.



Finish to match gates. Provide galvanized-steel pipe strikes to receive cane bolts in closed position **OR** both open and closed positions, **as directed**.

19. Finish exposed welds to comply with NOMMA Guideline 1, Finish #2 - completely sanded joint, some undercutting and pinholes okay **OR** Finish #3 - partially dressed weld with splatter removed **OR** Finish #4 - good-quality, uniform undressed weld with minimal splatter, **as directed**.
20. Galvanizing: For items other than hardware that are indicated to be galvanized, hot-dip galvanize to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M unless otherwise indicated. For hardware items, hot-dip galvanize to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
21. Metallic-Coated Steel Finish: High-performance coating **OR** Galvanized finish, **as directed**.
22. Steel Finish: Primed **OR** Shop painted **OR** High-performance coating, **as directed**.
23. Aluminum Finish: Baked enamel or powder coating.

#### L. Horizontal-Slide Gates

1. Gate Configuration: Single leaf **OR** Double leaf **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  - a. Type:
    - 1) Overhead slide.
 

**OR**

Cantilever slide, with external **OR** internal, **as directed**, roller assemblies.
2. Gate Frame Height: 72 inches (1830 mm), **unless directed otherwise**.
3. Gate Opening Width: 36 inches (914 mm), **unless directed otherwise**.
4. Galvanized-Steel Frames and Bracing: Fabricate members from square tubing.
  - a. Frame Members: Square tubes 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches (38 by 38 mm) **OR** 1-3/4 by 1-3/4 inches (45 by 45 mm) **OR** 2 by 2 inches (50 by 50 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 by 2-1/2 inches (64 by 64 mm), **as directed**, formed from 0.108-inch (2.74-mm) nominal-thickness, metallic-coated steel sheet or formed from 0.105-inch (2.66-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet and hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
  - b. Bracing Members: Square tubes 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches (38 by 38 mm) **OR** 1-3/4 by 1-3/4 inches (45 by 45 mm) **OR** 2 by 2 inches (50 by 50 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 by 2-1/2 inches (64 by 64 mm), **as directed**, formed from 0.108-inch (2.74-mm) nominal-thickness, metallic-coated steel sheet or formed from 0.105-inch (2.66-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet and hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
5. Steel Frames and Bracing: Fabricate members from square tubing. Hot-dip galvanize frames after fabrication, **as directed**.
  - a. Frame Members: Steel tubing 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches (38 by 38 mm) **OR** 2 by 2 inches (50 by 50 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 by 2-1/2 inches (64 by 64 mm), **as directed**, with 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) wall thickness.
  - b. Bracing Members: Steel tubing 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches (38 by 38 mm) **OR** 2 by 2 inches (50 by 50 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 by 2-1/2 inches (64 by 64 mm), **as directed**, with 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) wall thickness.
6. Aluminum Frames and Bracing: Fabricate members from square tubing.
  - a. Frame Members: Extruded-aluminum tubes 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches (38 by 38 mm) **OR** 2 by 2 inches (50 by 50 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 by 2-1/2 inches (64 by 64 mm), **as directed**, with 0.100-inch (2.54-mm) **OR** 0.125-inch (3.18-mm) **OR** 0.140-inch (3.56-mm) **OR** 0.154-inch (3.91-mm), **as directed**, wall thickness.
  - b. Bracing Members: Extruded-aluminum tubes 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches (38 by 38 mm) **OR** 2 by 2 inches (50 by 50 mm) **OR** 2-1/2 by 2-1/2 inches (64 by 64 mm), **as directed**, with 0.100-inch (2.54-mm) **OR** 0.125-inch (3.18-mm) **OR** 0.140-inch (3.56-mm) **OR** 0.154-inch (3.91-mm), **as directed**, wall thickness.
7. Frame Corner Construction:
  - a. Welded frame with panels assembled with bolted or riveted corner fittings and 5/16-inch- (7.9-mm-) diameter, adjustable truss rods for panels 5 feet (1.52 m) wide or wider.
  - b. Overhead Slide Gates: Welded or assembled with corner fittings including 5/16-inch- (7.9-mm-) diameter, adjustable truss rods for panels 5 feet (1.52 m) wide or wider.
8. Additional Rails: Provide as indicated, complying with requirements for fence rails.
9. Infill: Comply with requirements for adjacent fence.



10. Picket Size, Configuration, and Spacing: Comply with requirements for adjacent fence.
  - a. Treillage: Provide iron castings of pattern indicated between each pair of pickets. Finish as specified for adjacent fence **OR** gates, **as directed**.
11. Overhead Track Assembly: Manufacturer's standard track, with overhead framing supports, bracing, and accessories, engineered to support size, weight, width, operation, and design of gate and roller assemblies.
12. Hardware: Latches permitting operation from both sides of gate, locking devices, hangers, roller assemblies, and stops fabricated from galvanized steel **OR** galvanized malleable iron **OR** mill-finished, Grade 319 aluminum-alloy casting with stainless-steel fasteners, **as directed**. Fabricate latches with integral eye openings for padlocking; padlock accessible from both sides of gate, **as directed**.
13. Finish exposed welds to comply with NOMMA Guideline 1, Finish #2 - completely sanded joint, some undercutting and pinholes okay **OR** Finish #3 - partially dressed weld with splatter removed **OR** Finish #4 - good-quality, uniform undressed weld with minimal splatter, **as directed**.
14. Galvanizing: For items other than hardware that are indicated to be galvanized, hot-dip galvanize to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M unless otherwise indicated. For hardware items, hot-dip galvanize to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
15. Metallic-Coated Steel Finish: High-performance coating **OR** Galvanized finish, **as directed**.
16. Steel Finish: Primed **OR** Shop painted **OR** High-performance coating, **as directed**.
17. Aluminum Finish: Baked enamel or powder coating.

M. Gate Operators

1. General: Provide factory-assembled automatic operating system designed for gate size, type, weight, and operation frequency. Provide operation control system with characteristics suitable for Project conditions, with remote-control stations, safety devices, and weatherproof enclosures; coordinate electrical requirements with building electrical system.
  - a. Provide operator designed so motor may be removed without disturbing limit-switch adjustment and without affecting auxiliary emergency operator.
  - b. Provide operator with UL approval **OR** UL-approved components, **as directed**.
  - c. Provide electronic components with built-in troubleshooting diagnostic feature.
  - d. Provide unit designed and wired for both right-hand/left-hand opening, permitting universal installation.
  - e. Provide controllers, electrical devices, and wiring that comply with requirements specified in Division 22.
2. Motors: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 11 Section "Common Motor Requirements For Equipment".
  - a. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
  - b. Horsepower: Not less than 1/4 **OR** 1/3 **OR** 1/2 **OR** 3/4, **as directed**.
  - c. Enclosure: Open dripproof **OR** Totally enclosed **OR** Manufacturer's standard, **as directed**.
  - d. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 105 deg F (40 deg C) and at altitude of 3300 feet (1005 m) above sea level.
  - e. Service Factor: 1.15 for open dripproof motors; 1.0 for totally enclosed motors.
  - f. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 22.
3. Gate Operators: Gate **OR** Concrete base **OR** Post **OR** In-ground, **as directed**, mounted and as follows:
  - a. Hydraulic Swing **OR** Slide, **as directed**, Gate Operators:
    - 1) Duty: Light **OR** Medium **OR** Heavy, **as directed**, duty, residential **OR** commercial/industrial, **as directed**.
    - 2) Gate Speed: Minimum 45 feet (13.7 m) **OR** 60 feet (18.2 m), **as directed**, per minute.
    - 3) Maximum Gate Weight: Not to exceed operator manufacturer's recommendations.
    - 4) Frequency of Use: 10 cycles per hour **OR** 25 cycles per hour **OR** Continuous duty, **as directed**.



- 5) Locking: Hydraulic in both directions.
- 6) Heater: Manufacturer's standard track and roller heater with thermostatic control, as directed.
- 7) Operating Type: Crank arm **OR** Wheel and rail drive **OR** Roller chain, **as directed**, with manual release, **as directed**.
- b. Mechanical Swing **OR** Slide, **as directed**, Gate Operators:
  - 1) Duty: Light **OR** Medium **OR** Heavy, **as directed**, duty, residential **OR** commercial/industrial, **as directed**.
  - 2) Gate Speed: Minimum 45 feet (13.7 m) per minute **OR** 60 feet (18.2 m) per minute **OR** variable speed, **as directed**.
  - 3) Maximum Gate Weight: 600 lb (272 kg) **OR** 800 lb (363 kg), **as directed**.
  - 4) Frequency of Use: 10 cycles per hour **OR** 25 cycles per hour **OR** 60 cycles per hour **OR** Continuous duty, **as directed**.
  - 5) Operating Type: Crank arm **OR** Wheel and rail drive **OR** Roller chain, **as directed**, with manual release, **as directed**.
  - 6) Drive Type:
    - a) Enclosed worm gear and chain-and-sprocket, **as directed**, reducers, roller-chain drive.  
**OR**  
V-belt and worm gear **OR** chain-and-sprocket, **as directed**, reducers, roller-chain drive.
4. Remote Controls: Electric controls separated from gate and motor and drive mechanism, with NEMA ICS 6, Type 1 **OR** NEMA ICS 6, Type 4, **as directed**, enclosure for surface **OR** recessed or flush, **as directed**, concrete base **OR** pedestal, **as directed**, mounting, and with space for additional optional equipment. Provide the following remote-control device(s):
  - a. Control Station:
    - 1) Keyed, two-position **OR** three-position, **as directed**, switch with open, stop, **as directed**, and close function; located remotely from gate. Provide two keys per station.  
**OR**  
Momentary-contact, single-button-operated **OR** three-button-operated, **as directed**, with open, stop, **as directed**, and close function; located remotely from gate. Key switch to lock out open and close buttons, **as directed**.
  - b. Card Reader: Functions only when authorized card is presented. Programmable, multiple-code **OR** single-code, **as directed**, system, permitting four different access time periods, **as directed**, face-lighted unit fully visible at night, **as directed**.
    - 1) Reader Type: Touch plate **OR** Swipe **OR** Insertion **OR** Proximity, **as directed**.
    - 2) Features: Timed antipassback **OR** Limited-time usage **OR** Capable of monitoring and auditing gate activity, **as directed**.
  - c. Digital Keypad Entry Unit: Multiple-programmable **OR** Multiple-code, **as directed**, capability of not less than 5 **OR** 500 **OR** 2500, **as directed**, possible individual codes, consisting of 1- to 7 **OR** 4 **OR** 5, **as directed**,-digit codes, and permitting 4 different access time periods, **as directed**.
    - 1) Features: Timed antipassback **OR** Limited-time usage **OR** Capable of monitoring and auditing gate activity, **as directed**.
    - 2) Face-lighted unit with metal-keyed **OR** keyless-membrane, **as directed**, keypad fully visible at night.
  - d. Radio Control: Digital system consisting of code-compatible universal receiver for each gate, located where indicated, with remote antenna with coaxial cable and mounting brackets designed to operate gates. Provide 1 **OR** 2, **as directed**, programmable transmitter(s) with multiple-code capability permitting validating or voiding of not less than 1000 **OR** 10,000, **as directed**, codes per channel configured for the following functions:
    - 1) Transmitters: Single **OR** Three, **as directed**,-button operated, with open and close, **as directed**, function.





- 2) Channel Settings: Two **OR** Three **OR** Four, **as directed**, independent channel settings controlling separate receivers for operating more than one gate from each transmitter.
  - e. Telephone Entry System: Hands-free, voice-communication system for connection to building telephone system with digital-entry code activation of gate operator and auxiliary keypad entry, **as directed**.
    - 1) Residential System: Designed to be wired to same line with telephone.
    - 2) Multiunit System: Designed to be wired to a dedicated telephone line, with capacity to access 20 **OR** 100, **as directed**, telephones, and with electronic directory, **as directed**.
  - f. Vehicle Loop Detector: System including automatic closing timer with adjustable time delay before closing, timer cutoff switch, **as directed**, and loop detector designed to open and close gate **OR** hold gate open until traffic clears **OR** reverse gate, **as directed**. Provide electronic detector with adjustable detection patterns, adjustable sensitivity and frequency settings, and panel indicator light designed to detect presence or transit of a vehicle over an embedded loop of wire and to emit a signal activating the gate operator. Provide number of loops consisting of multiple strands of wire, number of turns, loop size, and method of placement at location shown on Drawings, as recommended in writing by detection system manufacturer for function indicated.
    - 1) Loop:
      - a) Wire, in size indicated for field assembly, for pave-over **OR** saw cut with epoxy-grouted, **as directed**, installation.  
**OR**  
Loop: Factory preformed in size indicated; style for pave-over **OR** saw cut with epoxy-grouted, **as directed**, installation.
  - g. Vehicle Presence Detector: System including automatic closing timer with adjustable time delay before closing, timer cutoff switch, **as directed**, and presence detector designed to open and close gate **OR** hold gate open until traffic clears **OR** reverse gate, **as directed**. Provide retroreflective **OR** emitter/receiver, **as directed**, detector with adjustable detection zone pattern and sensitivity, designed to detect the presence or transit of a vehicle in gate pathway when infrared beam in zone pattern is interrupted, and to emit a signal activating the gate operator.
5. Obstruction Detection Devices: Provide each motorized gate with automatic safety sensor(s). Activation of sensor(s) causes operator to immediately function as follows:
- a. Action:
    - 1) Reverse gate in both opening and closing cycles and hold until clear of obstruction.  
**OR**  
Stop gate in opening cycle and reverse gate in closing cycle and hold until clear of obstruction.
  - b. Internal Sensor: Built-in torque or current monitor senses gate is obstructed.
  - c. Sensor Edge: Contact-pressure-sensitive safety edge, profile, and sensitivity designed for type of gate and component indicated, in locations as follows. Connect to control circuit using take-up cable reel **OR** self-coiling cable **OR** gate edge transmitter and operator receiver system, **as directed**.
    - 1) Along entire gate leaf leading edge **OR** Along entire gate leaf trailing edge **OR** Across entire gate leaf bottom edge **OR** Along entire length of gate posts **OR** Along entire length of gate guide posts **OR** Where indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
  - d. Photoelectric/Infrared Sensor System: Designed to detect an obstruction in gate's path when infrared beam in the zone pattern is interrupted.
6. Limit Switches: Adjustable switches, interlocked with motor controls and set to automatically stop gate at fully retracted and fully extended positions.
7. Emergency Release Mechanism: Quick-disconnect release of operator drive system of the following type of mechanism, permitting manual operation if operator fails. Design system so control-circuit power is disconnected during manual operation.
- a. Type:



- 1) Integral fail-safe release, allowing gate to be pushed open without mechanical devices, keys, cranks, or special knowledge.

**OR**

Mechanical device, key, or crank-activated release.

8. Operating Features:

- a. Digital Microprocessor Control: Electronic programmable means for setting, changing, and adjusting control features with capability for monitoring and auditing gate activity, **as directed**. Provide unit that is isolated from voltage spikes and surges.
- b. System Integration: With controlling circuit board capable of accepting any type of input from external devices.
- c. Master/Slave Capability: Control stations designed and wired for gate pair operation.
- d. Automatic Closing Timer: With adjustable time delay before closing and timer cutoff switch, **as directed**.
- e. Open Override Circuit: Designed to override closing commands.
- f. Reversal Time Delay: Designed to protect gate system from shock load on reversal in both directions.
- g. Maximum Run Timer: Designed to prevent damage to gate system by shutting down system if normal time to open gate is exceeded.
- h. Clock Timer: 24-hour **OR** Seven-day, **as directed**, programmable for regular events.

9. Accessories:

- a. Warning Module: Audio **OR** Visual, **as directed**, ADA/ABA-compliant, constant-light **OR** strobe-light, **as directed**, alarm sounding three to five seconds in advance of gate operation and continuing until gate stops moving.
- b. Battery Backup System: Battery-powered drive and access-control system, independent of primary drive system:
  - 1) Fail Safe: Gate opens and remains open until power is restored.
  - 2) Fail Secure: Gate cycles on battery power, then fail safe when battery is discharged.
- c. External electric-powered solenoid **OR** magnetic, **as directed**, lock with delay timer allowing time for lock to release before gate operates.
- d. Fire **OR** Postal, **as directed**, box.
- e. Fire strobe **OR** siren, **as directed**, alarm.
- f. Intercom System: as directed by the Owner.
- g. Instructional, Safety, and Warning Labels and Signs: According to UL 325 **OR** Manufacturer's standard for components and features specified **OR** As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.

N. Aluminum Finishes

1. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils (0.05 mm). Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
  - a. Color and Gloss: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

O. Steel Finishes

1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces according to SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning" **OR** SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning", **as directed**.
  - a. After cleaning, apply a conversion coating suited to the organic coating to be applied over it.
2. Powder Coating: Immediately after cleaning, apply 2-coat finish consisting of epoxy primer and TGIC polyester topcoat, with a minimum total dry film thickness of not less than 8 mils (0.20 mm). Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Color and Gloss: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
3. Primer Application: Apply zinc-rich epoxy primer immediately after cleaning, to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils (0.05 mm) per applied coat, to surfaces that will be exposed after assembly and installation, and to concealed surfaces.



4. Shop-Painted Finish: Comply with Division 09 Section(s) "Exterior Painting" OR "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
5. High-Performance Coating: Apply epoxy intermediate and polyurethane topcoats to prime-coated surfaces. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions and with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Apply at spreading rates recommended by coating manufacturer.
  - a. Match approved Samples for color, texture, and coverage. Remove and refinish, or recoat work that does not comply with specified requirements.

P. Metallic-Coated Steel Finishes

1. Galvanized Finish: Clean welds, mechanical connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.
2. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces with nonpetroleum solvent so surfaces are free of oil and other contaminants. After cleaning, apply a zinc-phosphate, **as directed**, conversion coating suited to the organic coating to be applied over it. Clean welds, mechanical connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.
3. Powder Coating: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply TGIC polyester powder-coat finish, with a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils (0.05 mm).
  - a. Color and Gloss: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
4. Powder Coating: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply 2-coat finish consisting of zinc-rich, **as directed**, epoxy prime coat and TGIC polyester topcoat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils (0.05 mm) for topcoat. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions to achieve a minimum total dry film thickness of 4 mils (0.10 mm).
  - a. Color and Gloss: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
  - b. Comply with surface finish testing requirements in ASTM F 2408 except change corrosion-resistance requirement to 3000 hours without failure, **as directed**.
5. High-Performance Coating: Apply epoxy primer, epoxy intermediate coat, and polyurethane topcoat to prepared surfaces. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions and with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Apply at spreading rates recommended by coating manufacturer.
  - a. Match approved Samples for color, texture, and coverage. Remove and refinish, or recoat work that does not comply with specified requirements.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination

1. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for site clearing, earthwork, pavement work, construction layout, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
2. Do not begin installation before final grading is completed unless otherwise permitted by the Owner.
3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Preparation

1. Stake locations of fence lines, gates, and terminal posts. Do not exceed intervals of 500 feet (152.5 m) or line of sight between stakes. Indicate locations of utilities, lawn sprinkler system, underground structures, benchmarks, and property monuments.

C. Decorative Fence Installation

1. Install fences according to manufacturer's written instructions.  
**OR**  
Install fences by setting posts as indicated and fastening rails and infill panels to posts. Peen threads of bolts after assembly to prevent removal, **as directed**.



2. Post Excavation: Drill or hand-excavate holes for posts in firm, undisturbed soil. Excavate holes to a diameter of not less than 4 times post size and a depth of not less than 24 inches (600 mm) plus 3 inches (75 mm) for each foot (300 mm) or fraction of a foot (300 mm) that fence height exceeds 4 feet (1200 mm).
  3. Post Setting: Set posts in concrete **OR** with mechanical anchors **OR** by mechanically driving into soil, **as directed**, at indicated spacing into firm, undisturbed soil.
    - a. Verify that posts are set plumb, aligned, and at correct height and spacing, and hold in position during setting with concrete or mechanical devices.
    - b. Concrete Fill: Place concrete around posts and sleeves, **as directed**, and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Protect aboveground portion of posts from concrete splatter.
      - 1) Exposed Concrete: Extend 2 inches (50 mm) above grade. Finish and slope top surface to drain water away from post.
      - 2) Concealed Concrete: Top 2 inches (50 mm) below grade as indicated on Drawings to allow covering with surface material. Slope top surface of concrete to drain water away from post.
    - c. Posts Set in Concrete: Extend post to within 6 inches (150 mm) of specified excavation depth, but not closer than 3 inches (75 mm) to bottom of concrete.
    - d. Posts Set into Concrete in Sleeves: Use galvanized-steel pipe sleeves with inside diameter at least 3/4 inch (20 mm) larger than outside diagonal dimension of post, preset and anchored into concrete for installing posts.
      - 1) Extend posts at least 5 inches (125 mm) into sleeve.
      - 2) After posts have been inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between post and sleeve with nonshrink grout, mixed and placed to comply with grout manufacturer's written instructions; shape and smooth to shed water. Finish and slope top surface of grout to drain water away from post.
    - e. Posts Set into Voids in Concrete: Form or core drill holes not less than 3/4 inch (20 mm) larger than outside diagonal dimension of post.
      - 1) Extend posts at least 5 inches (125 mm) into concrete.
      - 2) Clean holes of loose material, insert posts, and fill annular space between post and concrete with nonshrink grout, mixed and placed to comply with grout manufacturer's written instructions. Finish and slope top surface of grout to drain water away from post.
    - f. Mechanically Driven Posts: Drive into soil to depth of 30 inches (762 mm) **OR** 36 inches (914 mm), **as directed**. Protect post top to prevent distortion.
    - g. Space posts uniformly at 6 feet (1.83 m) **OR** 8 feet (2.44 m), **as directed**, o.c.
- D. Gate Installation
1. Install gates according to manufacturer's written instructions, level, plumb, and secure for full opening without interference. Attach hardware using tamper-resistant or concealed means. Install ground-set items in concrete for anchorage. Adjust hardware for smooth operation and lubricate where necessary.
- E. Gate Operator Installation
1. General: Install gate operators according to manufacturer's written instructions, aligned and true to fence line and grade.
  2. Excavation for Support Posts **OR** Pedestals **OR** Concrete Bases, **as directed**: Hand-excavate holes for bases, in firm, undisturbed soil to dimensions and depths and at locations as required by gate operator component manufacturer's written instructions and as indicated.
  3. Concrete Bases: Cast-in-place or precast concrete, depth not less than 12 inches (300 mm) **OR** 6 to 12 inches (150 to 300 mm) below frost line, **as directed**, dimensioned and reinforced according to gate operator component manufacturer's written instructions and as indicated on Drawings.
  4. Vehicle Loop Detector System: Cut grooves in pavement, **as directed**, and bury and seal wire loop according to manufacturer's written instructions. Connect to equipment operated by detector.



5. Comply with NFPA 70 and manufacturer's written instructions for grounding of electric-powered motors, controls, and other devices.

F. Grounding And Bonding

1. Fence Grounding: Install at maximum intervals of 1500 feet (450 m) except as follows:
  - a. Fences within 100 Feet (30 m) of Buildings, Structures, Walkways, and Roadways: Ground at maximum intervals of 750 feet (225 m).
    - 1) Gates and Other Fence Openings: Ground fence on each side of opening.
      - a) Bond metal gates to gate posts.
      - b) Bond across openings, with and without gates, except openings indicated as intentional fence discontinuities. Use No. 2 AWG wire and bury it at least 18 inches (460 mm) below finished grade.
  2. Protection at Crossings of Overhead Electrical Power Lines: Ground fence at location of crossing and at a maximum distance of 150 feet (45 m) on each side of crossing.
  3. Fences Enclosing Electrical Power Distribution Equipment: Ground as required by IEEE C2 unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Grounding Method: At each grounding location, drive a grounding rod vertically until the top is 6 inches (150 mm) below finished grade. Connect rod to fence with No. 6 AWG conductor. Connect conductor to each fence component at the grounding location.
  5. Bonding Method for Gates: Connect bonding jumper between gate post and gate frame.
  6. Connections: Make connections so possibility of galvanic action or electrolysis is minimized. Select connectors, connection hardware, conductors, and connection methods so metals in direct contact will be galvanically compatible.
    - a. Use electroplated or hot-tin-coated materials to ensure high conductivity and to make contact points closer in order of galvanic series.
    - b. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.
    - c. Make aluminum-to-steel connections with stainless-steel separators and mechanical clamps.
    - d. Make aluminum-to-galvanized-steel connections with tin-plated copper jumpers and mechanical clamps.
    - e. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.
  7. Bonding to Lightning-Protection System: If fence terminates at lightning-protected building or structure, ground the fence and bond the fence grounding conductor to lightning-protection down conductor or lightning-protection grounding conductor, complying with NFPA 780.

G. Field Quality Control

1. Grounding-Resistance Testing: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
  - a. Grounding-Resistance Tests: Subject completed grounding system to a megger test at each grounding location. Measure grounding resistance not less than two full days after last trace of precipitation, without soil having been moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural grounding resistance. Perform tests by two-point method according to IEEE 81.
  - b. Excessive Grounding Resistance: If resistance to grounding exceeds specified value, notify the Owner promptly. Include recommendations for reducing grounding resistance and a proposal to accomplish recommended work.
  - c. Report: Prepare test reports certified by a testing agency of grounding resistance at each test location. Include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results.

H. Adjusting

1. Gates: Adjust gates to operate smoothly, easily, and quietly, free of binding, warp, excessive deflection, distortion, nonalignment, misplacement, disruption, or malfunction, throughout entire



operational range. Confirm that latches and locks engage accurately and securely without forcing or binding.

2. Automatic Gate Operators: Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices. Adjust operators, controls, safety devices, alarms, **as directed**, and limit switches.
    - a. Hydraulic Operators: Purge Operating System, Adjust Pressure And Fluid Levels, And Check For Leaks.
    - b. Operational Test: After Electrical Circuitry Has Been Energized, Start Units To Confirm Proper Motor Rotation And Unit Operation.
    - c. Test And Adjust Controls, Alarms, **as directed**, And Safeties. Replace Damaged And Malfunctioning Controls And Equipment.
  3. Lubricate hardware, gate operators, **as directed**, and other moving parts.
- I. Demonstration
1. Train Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain gates.

END OF SECTION 32 31 19 00



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
32 31 19 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
32 31 19 00	32 31 13 13	High-Security Chain-Link Fences And Gates
32 31 23 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



**SECTION 32 31 29 00 - PERMANENT WOOD FENCING****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. The specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for repair and maintenance of permanent wood fencing. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

- B. Submittals: Shop drawings shall be submitted for approval.

**1.2 PRODUCTS**

- A. Review MSDS and Manufacturers Application Instructions.

**B. Pickets:**

1. Size: Wood For picket shall match the existing fencing in material, configuration, dimensions, texture, and finishes,
2. Attachment: Hot-dipped galvanized nails complying with Fed. Spec. FF-N-105 shall be used to fasten pickets to rails.

**C. Framework:**

1. Line Posts: 4 x 4 of required length to match existing post height and extend into the ground as required to ensure rigid installation.
2. Terminal and Corner Posts: 4 x 4 of required length.
3. Gate Posts: 4 x 6 and of the length required for firm embedment to resist gate action.
4. Top Rail: 2 x 4 of length required to span between posts.
5. Where bracing is required, it shall match top and bottom rails in dimension and finish.
6. Metal Posts and Rails: Solid mild steel galvanized in compliance with ASTM A 123 of the length and style required to match existing.

**D. Gates:**

1. Frame: 2 x 4 members with attached pickets. Configuration of gate shall match that of existing gates.
2. Bracing: Single 2 x 4 running diagonally across the gate to opposite corners of the frame.
3. Hardware: Hinges, latches, and other hardware shall be hot dipped galvanized and of configurations to match existing hardware. Bolts and nuts shall comply with ASTM A 307 and galvanized in compliance with ASTM A 153.

- E. Finish: All wood fence members shall be given a pressure preservative treatment in a closed retort. The treatment shall comply with Fed. Spec. TT-W-571. Wood cut or sawed after treatment shall have the cut surfaces well brush-coated with the preservative used in the treatment. Paint to match existing after treatment and installation.

**1.3 EXECUTION**

- A. Posts: Hold in line in a true vertical position by temporary bracing until backfilling is completed. Compact by hand tamping or other suitable methods to a density comparable to that of adjacent ground. Posts of fencing that are higher than four feet and exposed to strong winds and posts at all gates shall be of heavy construction and shall be embedded in concrete.



- 
- B. Rails: Install at the height and in the manner required to match existing fencing, and secure to post with fasteners similar to existing.
  - C. Pickets: Space, attach, and position to match existing pattern and attachment methods.
  - D. Accessories: Install to match existing conditions.

END OF SECTION 32 31 29 00



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
32 31 29 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 32 32 13 00 - SEGMENTAL RETAINING WALLS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for segmental retaining walls. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes single- and multiple- depth segmental retaining walls with and without soil reinforcement.

#### C. Performance Requirements

1. Basis of Design: Design of segmental retaining walls is based on products indicated. If comparable products of other manufacturers are proposed, provide engineering design for proposed products, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. Delegated Design: Design segmental retaining walls, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
3. Structural Performance: Engineering design shall be based on the following loads and be according to NCMA's "Design Manual for Segmental Retaining Walls."
4. Gravity loads due to soil pressures resulting from grades and sloped backfill indicated.
  - a. Superimposed loads (surcharge) indicated on Drawings.
5. Seismic Performance: Engineering design shall be based on the following loads and factors and be according to NCMA's "Segmental Retaining Walls - Seismic Design Manual."
  - a. Gravity loads due to soil pressures resulting from grades and sloped backfill indicated.
  - b. Superimposed loads (surcharge) indicated on Drawings.
  - c. Horizontal Peak Ground Acceleration (A) for Project: **As directed.**

#### D. Preconstruction Testing

1. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform the following preconstruction testing:
  - a. Test soil reinforcement and backfill materials for pullout resistance according to ASTM D 6706.
  - b. Test soil reinforcement and backfill materials for coefficient of friction according to ASTM D 5321.

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Samples: For each color and texture of concrete unit required. Submit full-size units **OR** sections of units not less than 3 inches (75 mm) square, **as directed.**
  - a. Include one full-size unit for each type of concrete unit required.
3. Delegated-Design Submittal: For segmental retaining walls indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - a. Compliance Review: Qualified professional engineer responsible for segmental retaining wall design shall review and approve submittals and source and field quality-control reports for compliance of materials and construction with design.
4. Product Certificates: For segmental retaining wall units and soil reinforcement, from manufacturer.



- a. Include test data for shear strength between segmental retaining wall units according to ASTM D 6916.
- b. Include test data for connection strength between segmental retaining wall units and soil reinforcement according to ASTM D 6638.
5. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for segmental retaining wall units and soil reinforcement.
  - a. Include test data for freeze-thaw durability of segmental retaining wall units.
  - b. Include test data for shear strength between segmental retaining wall units according to ASTM D 6916.
  - c. Include test data for connection strength between segmental retaining wall units and soil reinforcement according to ASTM D 6638.

#### F. Quality Assurance

1. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
2. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects.
  - a. Build mockup of segmental retaining wall as shown on Drawings **OR** approximately 72 inches (1800 mm) long by not less than 36 inches (900 mm) high above finished grade at front of wall, **as directed**.
    - 1) Include typical soil reinforcement.
    - 2) Include typical base and cap or finished top construction.
    - 3) Include backfill to typical finished grades at both sides of wall.
    - 4) Include typical end construction at one end of mockup.
    - 5) Include 36-inch (900-mm) return at 1 end of mockup, with typical corner construction.
  - b. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
3. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - a. Review methods and procedures related to segmental retaining walls including, but not limited to, the following:
    - 1) Structural load limitations.
    - 2) Construction schedule. Verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
    - 3) Field quality-control procedures.

#### G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Store and handle concrete units and accessories to prevent deterioration or damage due to contaminants, breaking, chipping, or other causes.
2. Store geosynthetics in manufacturer's original packaging with labels intact. Store and handle geosynthetics to prevent deterioration or damage due to sunlight, chemicals, flames, temperatures above 160 deg F (71 deg C) or below 32 deg F (0 deg C), and other conditions that might damage them. Verify identification of geosynthetics before using and examine them for defects as material is placed.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Segmental Retaining Wall Units

1. Concrete Units: ASTM C 1372, Normal Weight, except that maximum water absorption shall not exceed 7 percent by weight and units shall not differ in height more than plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) from specified dimension.
  - a. Provide units that comply with requirements for freeze-thaw durability.
  - b. Provide units that interlock with courses above and below by means of integral lugs or lips, pins, clips, or hollow cores filled with drainage fill.
2. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.



3. Shape and Texture: Provide units of basic shape and dimensions indicated with machine-split textured **OR** smooth, **as directed**, exposed faces.
4. Shape and Texture: Provide units matching basic shape, dimensions, and face texture indicated by referencing manufacturer's pattern designation.
5. Shape and Texture: Provide units of any basic shape and dimensions that will produce segmental retaining walls of dimensions and profiles indicated without interfering with other elements of the Work and with machine-split textured, flat exposed face **OR** shaped exposed face with deeply beveled vertical edges, **as directed**.
6. Batter: Provide units that offset from course below to provide at least 1:24 **OR** 1:16 **OR** 1:14 **OR** 1:8 **OR** 1:5, **as directed**, batter.
7. Cap Units: Provide cap units of shape indicated **OR** same shape as other units, **as directed**, with smooth, as-cast top surfaces without holes or lugs.
8. Special Units: Provide corner units, end units, and other shapes as needed to produce segmental retaining walls of dimensions and profiles indicated and to provide texture on exposed surfaces matching face **OR** as indicated, **as directed**.

B. Installation Materials

1. Pins: Product supplied by segmental retaining wall unit manufacturer for use with units provided, made from nondegrading polymer reinforced with glass fibers.
2. Clips: Product supplied by segmental retaining wall unit manufacturer for use with units provided, made from nondegrading polymer reinforced with glass fibers.
3. Cap Adhesive: Product supplied or recommended by segmental retaining wall unit manufacturer for adhering cap units to units below.
4. Leveling Base: Comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for base material **OR** Division 33 Section "Subdrainage" for drainage fill, **as directed**.
  - a. Leveling Course: Lean concrete with a compressive strength of not more than 500 psi (3.4 MPa).
5. Drainage Fill: Comply with requirements in Division 33 Section "Subdrainage".
6. Reinforced-Soil Fill: ASTM D 2487; GW, GP, SW, SP, and SM soil classification groups or a combination of these groups; free of debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, and other deleterious matter; meeting the following gradation according to ASTM C 136: 20 to 100 percent passing No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve, 0 to 60 percent passing No. 40 (0.425-mm) sieve, 0 to 35 percent passing No. 200 (0.075-mm) sieve, and with fine fraction having a plasticity index of less than 20.
7. Nonreinforced-Soil Fill: Comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for satisfactory soils.
8. Drainage Geotextile: Nonwoven needle-punched geotextile, manufactured for subsurface drainage applications, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation greater than 50 percent.
  - a. Apparent Opening Size: No. 70 to 100 (0.212- to 0.150-mm) sieve, maximum; ASTM D 4751.
  - b. Minimum Grab Tensile Strength: 110 lb (49.9 kg); ASTM D 4632.
  - c. Minimum Weight: 4 oz./sq. yd. (132 g/sq. m).
9. Subdrainage Pipe and Filter Fabric: Comply with requirements in Division 33 Section "Subdrainage".
  - a. Product Type: Knitted or woven geogrid made from polyester yarns with a protective coating **OR** Molded geogrid made from high-density polyethylene **OR** Woven geotextile made from polyamides, polyesters, or polyolefins, **as directed**.

C. Source Quality Control

1. Direct manufacturer to test and inspect each roll of soil reinforcement at the factory for minimum average roll values for geosynthetic index property tests, including the following:
  - a. Weight.
  - b. Roll size.
  - c. Grab or single-rib strength.
  - d. Aperture opening.
  - e. Rib or yarn size.



### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

1. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for excavation tolerances, condition of subgrades, and other conditions affecting performance of segmental retaining walls.
2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### B. Retaining Wall Installation

1. General: Place units according to NCMA's "Segmental Retaining Wall Installation Guide" and segmental retaining wall unit manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Lay units in running bond **OR** bond pattern indicated, **as directed**.
  - b. Form corners and ends by using special units **OR** cutting units with motor-driven saw **OR** splitting units with mason's hammer and chisel, **as directed**.
2. Leveling Base: Place and compact base material to thickness indicated and with not less than 95 percent maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.
  - a. Leveling Course: At Contractor's option, unreinforced lean concrete may be substituted for upper 1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm) of base **OR** Place unreinforced lean concrete over leveling base 1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm) thick, **as directed**. Compact and screed concrete to a smooth, level surface.
3. First Course: Place first course of segmental retaining wall units for full length of wall. Place units in firm contact with each other, properly aligned and level.
  - a. Tamp units into leveling base as necessary to bring tops of units into a level plane.
4. Subsequent Courses: Remove excess fill and debris from tops of units in course below. Place units in firm contact, properly aligned, and directly on course below.
  - a. For units with lugs designed to fit into holes in adjacent units, lay units so lugs are accurately aligned with holes, and bedding surfaces are firmly seated on beds of units below.
  - b. For units with lips at front of units, slide units as far forward as possible for firm contact with lips of units below.
  - c. For units with lips at bottom rear of units, slide units as far forward as possible for firm contact of lips with units below.
  - d. For units with pins, install pins and align units.
  - e. For units with clips, install clips and align units.
5. Cap Units: Place cap units and secure with cap adhesive.

#### C. Fill Placement

1. General: Comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving", NCMA's "Segmental Retaining Wall Installation Guide," and segmental retaining wall unit manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Fill voids between and within units with drainage fill. Place fill as each course of units is laid.
3. Place, spread, and compact drainage fill and soil fill in uniform lifts for full width and length of embankment as wall is laid. Place and compact fills without disturbing alignment of units. Where both sides of wall are indicated to be filled, place fills on both sides at same time. Begin at wall and place and spread fills toward embankment.
  - a. Use only hand-operated compaction equipment within 48 inches (1200 mm) of wall, or one-half of height above bottom of wall, whichever is greater.
  - b. Compact reinforced-soil fill to not less than 95 percent maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.
    - 1) In areas where only hand-operated compaction equipment is allowed, compact fills to not less than 90 percent maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.
    - 2) In areas where fill height exceeds 15 feet (4.5 m), compact reinforced-soil fill that will be more than 15 feet (4.5 m) below finished grade to not less than 98 percent maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.





- 3) In areas where fill height exceeds 30 feet (9 m), compact reinforced-soil fill that will be more than 30 feet (9 m) below finished grade to not less than 100 percent maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.
    - c. Compact nonreinforced-soil fill to comply with Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".
  4. Place drainage geotextile against back of wall and place layer of drainage fill at least 12 inches (300 mm) **OR** 6 inches (150 mm), **as directed**, wide behind drainage geotextile to within 12 inches (300 mm) of finished grade. Place another layer of drainage geotextile between drainage fill and soil fill.
  5. Place a layer of drainage fill at least 12 inches (300 mm) **OR** 6 inches (150 mm), **as directed**, wide behind wall to within 12 inches (300 mm) of finished grade. Place a layer of drainage geotextile between drainage fill and soil fill.
  6. Wrap subdrainage pipe with filter fabric and place in drainage fill as indicated, sloped not less than 0.5 percent to drain.
  7. Place impervious fill over top edge of drainage fill layer.
  8. Slope grade at top of wall away from wall unless otherwise indicated. Slope grade at base of wall away from wall. Provide uniform slopes that will prevent ponding.
  9. Place soil reinforcement in horizontal joints of retaining wall where indicated and according to soil-reinforcement manufacturer's written instructions. Embed reinforcement a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) into retaining wall and stretch tight over compacted backfill. Anchor soil reinforcement before placing fill.
    - a. Place additional soil reinforcement at corners and curved walls to provide continuous reinforcement.
    - b. Place geosynthetics with seams, if any, oriented perpendicular to segmental retaining walls.
    - c. Do not dump fill material directly from trucks onto geosynthetics.
    - d. Place at least 6 inches (150 mm) of fill over reinforcement before compacting with tracked vehicles or 4 inches (100 mm) before compacting with rubber-tired vehicles.
    - e. Do not turn vehicles on fill until first layer of fill is compacted and second layer is placed over each soil-reinforcement layer.
- D. Construction Tolerances
1. Variation from Level: For bed-joint lines along walls, do not exceed 1-1/4 inches in 10 feet (32 mm in 3 m), 3 inches (75 mm) maximum.
  2. Variation from Indicated Batter: For slope of wall face, do not vary from indicated slope by more than 1-1/4 inches in 10 feet (32 mm in 3 m).
  3. Variation from Indicated Wall Line: For walls indicated as straight, do not vary from straight line by more than 1-1/4 inches in 10 feet (32 mm in 3 m).
- E. Field Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
  2. Comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for field quality control.
    - a. In each compacted backfill layer, perform at least 1 field in-place compaction test for each 150 feet (45 m) or less of segmental retaining wall length.
    - b. In each compacted backfill layer, perform at least 1 field in-place compaction test for each 24 inches (600 mm) of fill depth and each 50 feet (15 m) or less of segmental retaining wall length.
- F. Adjusting
1. Remove and replace segmental retaining wall construction of the following descriptions:
    - a. Broken, chipped, stained, or otherwise damaged units. Units may be repaired if the Owner approves methods and results.
    - b. Segmental retaining walls that do not match approved Samples.
    - c. Segmental retaining walls that do not comply with other requirements indicated.
  2. Replace units so segmental retaining wall matches approved Samples and mockups, complies with other requirements, and shows no evidence of replacement.



---

END OF SECTION 32 32 13 00



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
32 32 16 00	03 41 16 00	Plant-Precast Structural Concrete
32 32 23 13	32 32 13 00	Segmental Retaining Walls
32 32 26 00	32 32 13 00	Segmental Retaining Walls
32 32 29 00	32 32 13 00	Segmental Retaining Walls
32 32 53 00	32 32 13 00	Segmental Retaining Walls



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 32 35 16 00 - SOUND BARRIER WALLS**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of sound barrier walls. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.
2. Design:
  - a. The sound barrier wall and foundation shall be designed by a registered professional engineer.
  - b. Barrier design shall be in accordance with the requirements of the State Department of Transportation Standards, AASHTO Guide Specification for the Structural Design of Sound Barriers, and AASHTO Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges.
  - c. Wind Load: Minimum 84 mph.
  - d. Difference in Earth Pressure: 2 feet.
  - e. Exposure Category: B 1.
  - f. The design shall comply with all restrictions imposed by the plans such as drainage openings, accommodation of existing utilities, -limitations on dimensions or sound barrier wall location, and similar conditions that may be noted. The top of sound barrier wall elevation shall be at or above the top of wall line shown on the plans. The bottom of sound barrier wall shall extend a minimum of 2 feet below low finish grade.
  - g. The sound barrier wall shall be free standing and finished on both sides. The maximum panel length shall be 40 feet.
  - h. Although alternate materials are permitted, the sound barrier wall shall be the same material throughout the project.

## B. Site Conditions

1. The tops of footings or drilled shafts shall be a minimum of 6 inches below finish grade and the bottom of footing or grade beams shall be a minimum of 2 feet below finish grade unless otherwise shown on the plans.
2. To design wall footings assume a cohesion value consistent with the soil values standard for the location of the Work and an allowable bearing capacity of 4.3 ksf.
3. The Contractor shall be responsible for determining the actual ground elevations at the location of the sound barrier wall and the post or column length and panel height necessary, if applicable.
4. Existing Utilities: The Contractor shall consider existing utilities in the vicinity of the sound barrier wall when developing details of the sound barrier wall. Any additional work or materials necessary to acceptably construct the sound barrier wall, without disturbing the utilities, shall be shown on the shop drawing.

## C. Submittals

1. Product Data: Submit product data including shop drawings for standard specified products.
2. Design calculations and Shop Drawings: Submit one (1) set of the design calculations and one (1) full set of the construction plans to the Owner for review. The construction plans shall show top and bottom elevations of panels and foundations, finish grade line in front and back of the sound barrier wall. The sound barrier wall shall be submitted on one set of plans. Shop drawings for all precast sections shall be submitted in accordance with the requirements for prestressed girders.
3. Samples:
  - a. Masonry: At least three different masonry units for selection of color and texture. All masonry used in each continuous sound barrier wall shall come from one source and shall match within reasonable limits the color and texture of the approved sample.



- b. Precast Concrete: Two full size samples minimum 4 feet by 8 feet shall be cast using the form liner for the back face and the stamped or rolled finish for the front face liner and colored using the selected color for final approval. One approved full size sample shall be retained at the casting yard and shall be the standard of comparison for all future work. The second full size sample shall be delivered to the job site and stained there.
  4. Quality Assurance Submittals: Submit the following:
    - a. Letter of Certification: Certify compliance with all applicable requirements of the specifications.
    - b. Test Reports: Certified test reports showing compliance with specified performance characteristics and physical properties including compressive strength test results, and concrete mix design.
    - c. Manufacturer's Instructions: Manufacturers installation instructions.
  5. Closeout Submittals: Submit the following:
    - a. Anti-graffiti procedures.
- D. Delivery And Handling
  1. General: Comply with manufacturer's instructions and requirements.
  2. Ordering: Comply with manufacturer's ordering instructions and fabrication schedule requirements to avoid construction and shipment delays.
  3. Installer's Responsibilities for Dunnage, Receiving, Handling, and Unloading: Prepare jobsite access suitable for products shipped on flatbed trucks. Prepare to off-load posts and safely store on-site prior to installation into the wall. Store posts in a manner that will not result in staining of surfaces with mud or other materials. Prepare to install panels directly from trucks upon arrival of the truck at the project site. Remove and safely store dunnage used for panel delivery from trucks and return to the supplier upon request.
  4. Delivery: Inspect materials prior to off-loading, note damage on shipping bill of lading and inform the supplier of any damage resulting from shipment, prior to the departure of the delivery truck.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

- A. Masonry
  1. Design masonry sound barrier wall with pier supports at uniform intervals. Piers shall be visible on both sides of the sound barrier wall.
  2. All products and materials shall comply with applicable ASTM and/or AASHTO specifications.
  3. Concrete for piers, fill for masonry columns and concrete caps shall be normal-weight 3000 psi.
  4. Steel Reinforcement: ASTM A 615, Grade 60 deformed.
  5. Wire Reinforcement for Horizontal Joints: AASHTO M 55, zinc coated according to ASTM A 116 Class 3, and install in horizontal joints at two foot vertical intervals.
  6. Masonry Mortar: Type S, ASTM C 270.
    - a. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91.
    - b. Sand: ASTM C 144.
    - c. Water: Potable.
  7. All sound barrier walls and piers shall be capped with two inch thick pieces of Indiana Limestone. The Contractor shall determine the number of pieces required to cover each sound barrier wall section so that they are of uniform length minimum 2 feet. Caps of piers shall be one piece. All caps shall extend beyond each face of the sound barrier wall or pier at least one inch.
  8. Masonry may be brick or concrete block.
    - a. Brick
      - 1) Brick for the sound barrier wall may be 6 inch through-the-wall units that comply with ASTM C 216 or C 652. They shall not exceed 12 inches in length or 4 inches in height.
      - 2) Brick for the piers may be normal size units if they match the wall units in color and texture; at the option of the Contractor and with the approval of The Owner.
    - b. Concrete Block



- 1) Concrete block for the sound barrier wall and piers may be 6 inch, half height, and double split faced complying with ASTM C 90 for lightweight Grade N-1 masonry units. They shall not exceed 16 inches in length or 4 inches in height; at the option of the Contractor and with the approval of the Owner.
- B. Precast Interlocking Modules
1. Proprietary concrete sound barrier wall systems, comprised of elements, are permitted if approved by the Owner. Both faces of the sound barrier wall shall receive an approved surface treatment.
- C. Precast Concrete Panels
1. Precast sound barrier wall may be post and panel design or connected panels in a shadow box layout. Design shall comply with ACI 318 and PCI MNL 120
  2. Precast concrete shall be normal-weight concrete with a minimum 28 day compressive strength of 5000 psi. Ingredient materials and reinforcement shall conform to ACI 211.1 and the State Highway Department's Standard Specifications.
  3. Precast panels, pilasters, and other precast elements may be prestressed. Prestressing tendons may be either bar or strand. Prestressing bars shall conform to ASTM A 722, 'Uncoated Steel Bars for Prestressed Concrete'. Prestressing strands shall be seven wire strands conforming to ASTM A 416, 'Uncoated Seven-Wire Stress-Relieved Strand for Prestressed Concrete'.
  4. Concrete for foundations or cast in place appurtenances shall be minimum 4000 psi.
  5. Steel Reinforcement: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, deformed, galvanized in accordance with ASTM A 123.
  6. Preformed Joint Filler: AASHTO M 153 for Types I, II or III or AASHTO M 213.
  7. Steel dowels used to provide positive alignment of adjacent panels shall be epoxy coated.
  8. Posts shall be concrete and shall be cast using metal forms. All exposed surfaces shall be finished smooth.
  9. Finish
    - a. All exposed concrete on the front face (face toward the roadway) of precast panels shall have a stamped or rolled pattern finish (i.e. cobblestone, etc.). All exposed concrete on the back face of precast panels shall be textured using approved form liners.
    - b. The Contractor shall indicate that the panel finish, form liner, pigmentation, staining, etc. and the size, type, color, etc. for the masonry be selected and shown on the shop drawings.
    - c. All exposed concrete of posts and panels shall be tinted or colored by use of pigments in the mixture or an approved stain. All color in each continuous sound barrier wall shall be reasonably uniform. Coloring agents shall be outdoor grade and shall be applied in strict accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions. If stain is used, the color shall be applied to the entire panel face.
    - d. If inconsistent color results from the use of a pigment in the concrete mixture, the entire side of the sound barrier wall where the inconsistency occurs shall be covered with an approved stain. If stain is used, the stain shall be applied after the sound barrier wall has been erected.
    - e. The form lining shall be placed so any grooves, lines, or striations normal to joints in adjacent panels line up with no appreciable offset at the joints or panels may be cast with an untextured minimum 4 inch and a maximum 12 inch border around the perimeter of each panel.
  10. Panels shall be designed to provide positive means for alignment of adjacent panels to avoid unsightly breaks in the plane of either face, using tongue and groove joints, steel dowels or other approved means. When panels are assembled with horizontal joints and steel dowels are used for alignment, one dowel is required at the mid point for panels up to 20 feet long, panels over 20 feet long will require 2 dowels located at the one-third points.
  11. Acceptable means to fill or seal all joints between adjacent panels and between posts and panels shall be provided to prevent sound leaks and shall be subject to approval by the Owner.
  12. Elevation changes for the top of the sound barrier wall shall be made in steps, with the sound barrier wall level between steps. These elevation changes shall be made only at posts or vertical



joints between panels, if posts are not used. Elevation changes in tops of panels shall be such that the top of the sound barrier wall is at or above the top of the sound barrier wall shown on the plans.

13. Post to foundation connections shall be above ground and all steel parts shall be galvanized to appropriate AASHTO standards. Steel connections shall be bolted. Field welding will not be permitted. Both durability and ease of inspection and maintenance will be considered when joint details are reviewed by the Owner.
14. Precast panel walls shall be built with slotted pilasters and recessed panels. The pilasters can protrude as much as 12" from the panel face. This will create a void between the roadway barrier and panel. This void shall be filled with sand or crushed stone provided that the weep hole drains through the wall are required.

D. Cast in Place

1. Concrete for Cast in Place sound barrier walls and foundations for all barriers shall be minimum 4000 psi.

E. Wood Caps

1. Where required, provide redwood caps in lieu of concrete caps. Size and finish shall be as directed.

F. Manufactured Systems

1. Complete systems manufactured by one of the following, or approved equivalent:
  - a. Durisol USA Inc.
  - b. Sound Fighter Systems® LLC
  - c. Sound Zero™ LLC

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Manufacturer's Instructions

1. Compliance: Comply with manufacturer's recommendations for installation.

B. Examination

1. Site Verification of Conditions: Verify geotechnical conditions, underground and overhead utilities or obstructions and ground elevations along wall alignment to confirm acceptability for installation of wall prior to preparation of shop drawings.
2. Product Acceptance: Prior to installation, inspect delivered product for any defects. Installation of any defective products shall not be the responsibility of the manufacturer.

C. Construction Requirements

1. General - All Sound Barrier Wall Types
  - a. All clearing necessary to construct the sound barrier wall shall be performed and the resulting debris removed from the right of way. Sound standing trees in the construction limits of the barrier shall be removed or trimmed as directed. the Owner may direct or approve minor alignment changes to avoid unnecessary damage to existing trees or shrubs.
  - b. Sound barrier walls shall be constructed in accordance with the plans and completed shop drawings. Joints shall be constructed so the barrier is structurally sound and sound leaks are prevented. The face of the completed sound barrier wall shall not deviate from the vertical more than 1/2 inch in 10 feet. Horizontal alignment shall be uniform with no significant irregularities.
  - c. If solid rock is encountered above the bottom of post or bottom of footing elevations required by the plans, the Contractor may submit an alternate foundation design for review by the Owner. Before preparing an alternate foundation design, the Contractor should contact the Owner to obtain the design criteria that must be met. The proposed design





- shall include all calculations. If the Owner determines that the proposed design is not acceptable, then the foundations shall be constructed in accordance with the plans.
- d. No extension of contract time for delay during the review of the proposed design will be considered. No increase will be made in the contract unit price for the concrete sound barrier as a result of permitting a change in foundation design.
2. Precast Concrete
    - a. Transportation, storage, handling, and erection of precast units shall be in accordance with manufacturer's requirements, ACI, PCI, and AASHTO.
  3. Masonry
    - a. Weep hole ventilators, to match the height of the head joints, shall be installed in the first course at 2 feet intervals on both sides of the sound barrier wall.
    - b. All mortar joints shall be tooled with a concave or V jointer selected by the Owner.
    - c. All stone caps shall be laid in mortar for proper alignment. All head and bed joints shall be raked to a depth of 3/4 inch. After curing a minimum of seven days each joint shall be filled with a 1/4 inch backer rod and 2 inch sealant. Sealant may be an approved brand of polysulfide, polyurethane, or silicone.
    - d. All materials shall be protected from the weather from the time of manufacture until they are in a finished sound barrier wall. All sound barrier walls shall be protected with adequate covering when not in the process of construction until the caps are in place.
    - e. All sound barrier wall surfaces shall be cleaned after a minimum of seven days with an approved masonry cleaner. The cleaner shall be selected by the Contractor and approved by the Owner according to the recommendations of the masonry manufacturer.
- D. Related Products Installation
1. Apply acrylic stain anti-graffiti coating, where required, in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions
- E. Cleaning And Inspection
1. Cleaning: Remove dirt from wall with water. Remove debris from site and legally dispose. Return dunnage to manufacture as directed.
  2. Panel Inspection: When panel installation is completed on any single barrier wall, post and panel appearance and alignment shall be inspected for acceptance. View the surface of walls from a distance of not less than 100 feet for architectural acceptability. Prepare a written punchlist of any and all items in need of correction. Forward a list of action items required of the noise barrier manufacturer for review and preparation of a schedule for completion.

END OF SECTION 32 35 16 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 32 39 23 00 - MISCELLANEOUS SITE AND STREET FURNISHINGS**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of miscellaneous site and street furnishings. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Submittals

1. Shop Drawings: Fabrication and installation drawings for each type of product indicated.
2. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

## C. Qualification Of Welders

1. Qualify welders in accordance with AWS D1.1 using procedures, materials, and equipment of the type required for the work.

## D. Delivery, Storage, And Protection

1. Protect from corrosion, staining, and other types of damage. Store items in an enclosed area free from contact with soil and weather. Remove and replace damaged items with new items.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

## A. Precast Benches

1. Design precast benches in accordance with manufacturer's standards, size as indicated. Finish and color as indicated selected from manufacturer's standards.
2. Glass Fiber Reinforced Concrete (GFRC) Benches
  - a. Provide glass fiber reinforced concrete (GFRC) benches at locations as directed. Comply with PCI MNL-128 recommended practice for glass fiber reinforced concrete, including Appendix G, Polymer Modified Glass Fiber Reinforced Concrete Panels.
  - b. Design precast benches to sustain a live load of not less than 200 pounds per square foot (10 kPa), constructed of minimum 3000 psi concrete with ASTM C 150 cement, white or grey color consistent with final finish, using alkali resistant (AR) glass fibers produced specifically for use in glass fiber reinforced concrete, minimum three percent glass fiber content. Aggregate shall be clear silica sand aggregate; washed, dried and free from deleterious materials. Provide type with successful history of uses in GFRC fabrication standard with the manufacturer. Provide manufacturer's standard acrylic thermoplastic copolymer admixture.
  - c. Provide factory finished units standard with the manufacturer; texture and color as selected.
3. Precast Concrete/Cast Stone Benches
  - a. Provide reinforced precast concrete benches consisting of a mixture of cement, aggregates and mineral colors suitable for exterior use, located as directed.
  - b. Design benches to sustain a live load of not less than 200 pounds per square foot (10 kPa).
    - 1) Portland cement: ASTM C150 Type I, II, or III.
    - 2) Aggregate: ASTM C33, maximum size 3/4 inch (19 mm).
    - 3) Reinforcing steel: ASTM A615/A615M
    - 4) Galvanized wire mesh: ASTM A1064
    - 5) Integral color: ASTM C979, pure mineral oxide, limeproof and non-fading.
    - 6) Provide minimum 5000 psi (35 MPa) 28 day compressive strength concrete, maximum five percent absorption.



- 7) Admixture: ASTM C260 for air-entraining.
- B. Precast Concrete Bicycle Rack
1. Provide one-piece precast concrete bicycle rack base with embedded galvanized metal hitching loops. Design bicycle rack with wheel notches for bike support and wheel locking device.
- C. Precast Concrete Bollards
1. Provide reinforced concrete bollards 12 inch (300 mm) **OR** 18 inch (450 mm), **as directed**, square **OR** round, **as directed**, height as indicated, suitable for ground mount installation. Provide exposed aggregate or sandblast finish as indicated; manufacturer's standard clear acrylic sealer.
    - a. Portland cement: ASTM C150, Type I II or III.
    - b. Aggregate: ASTM C33, maximum size 3/4 inch (19 mm).
    - c. Reinforcing steel: ASTM A615/A615M.
    - d. Integral color: ASTM C979, pure mineral oxide, limeproof and non-fading.
    - e. Concrete strength: 5000 psi (35 MPa), 28 day minimum compressive strength.
    - f. Admixture: ASTM C260 for air-entraining.
- D. Planters, Receptacles, Ash Receptacles
1. Provide for waste receptacles spun aluminum **OR** reinforced fiberglass, **as directed**, flat **OR** domed, **as directed**, tops and removable semi-rigid plastic liner insert. Provide top-mounted ash trays for ash receptacles.
  2. Glass Fiber Reinforced Concrete (GFRC) Precast:
    - a. Provide glass fiber reinforced concrete (GFRC) precast planters/waste receptacles/ash receptacles at locations as directed. Comply with PCI MNL-117 and PCI MNL-128.
    - b. Materials: Provide manufacturer's standard shell thickness of 3/8 to 5/8 inch (9 to 16 mm).
      - 1) Cement: ASTM C150, use only one brand and type of cement throughout the Project.
      - 2) Glass Fibers: Alkali resistant (AR) glass fibers produced specifically for use in glass fiber reinforced concrete. Glass content of GFRC unit to be a minimum of three percent.
      - 3) Aggregates: clear silica sand; washed, dried, and free from deleterious materials; provide type with successful history of use in GFRC and as standard with the manufacturer.
      - 4) Compressive Strength: Minimum 3000 psi (20/25 MPa) 28 day strength.
      - 5) Density: Approximately 120 pcf (1921 kg/cu. m).
      - 6) Polymer Admixture: Manufacturer's standard acrylic thermoplastic copolymer.
    - c. Finishes: Provide factory finished units with manufacturer's standard texture or sandblasted finish as selected.
      - 1) Cement: White or grey as consistent with final finish.
  3. Precast Concrete/Cast Stone Planters
    - a. Provide reinforced precast concrete planters/waste receptacles/ash receptacles consisting of a mixture of cement, aggregates, and mineral colors suitable for exterior use as located on the drawings. Provide manufacturer's standard exposed aggregate or sandblast finish (with clear acrylic coating) as selected.
      - 1) Portland Cement: ASTM C150, gray, Type I.
      - 2) Aggregate: ASTM C33, crushed limestone and sand.
      - 3) Galvanized Steel Mesh: ASTM A1064.
      - 4) Integral Color: ASTM C979, pure mineral oxide, limeproof and non-fading.
      - 5) Concrete Strength: 4000 psi (30 MPa) minimum compressive strength at 28 days.
      - 6) Admixture: ASTM C260 for air-entraining.
  4. Wood Planters
    - a. Provide manufacturer's standard wood planter/waste receptacle/ash receptacles fabricated of 3/4 inch (19 mm) thick tongue and grooved wood slats permanently bonded with



- fiberglass interior shell. Provide wood top trim for square planters and fiberglass top trim for round planters.
- 1) Wood Species: As directed.
  - 2) Fiberglass: Molded with multiple laminations of glass fiber impregnated with polyester isophthalic thermosetting resins with a finish of 12-15 mil (0.30-0.38 mm) color impregnated polyester gel coat.
  - 3) Metal Frame: Black color-coated steel frame.
5. Wood Planters with Metal Frames
- a. Provide manufacturer's standard wood planter/waste receptacle/ash receptacle with galvanized steel welded frames, and nominal 2 inch (50 mm) tongue and grooved, beveled or square cut wood staves. Attach wood staves to metal frame from inside with steel plated screws.
    - 1) Wood species: Kiln dried, maximum 19 percent moisture content, species as directed.
    - 2) Metal frame: Reinforced with steel bars as per manufacture's standard construction, black color factory finish coated.
    - 3) Bottom: 1/4 inch (6.25 mm) exterior grade redwood with drain holes.
    - 4) Liners: Removable galvanized steel or manufacturer's standard.
    - 5) Tops: Hinged top opening, spun aluminum open top with molded rim, ash top.
6. Fiberglass Planters/Waste Receptacles/Ash Receptacles
- a. Provide reinforced fiberglass planters/waste receptacles/ash receptacles molded with multiple laminations of glass fiber impregnated with polyester isophthalic thermosetting resins; with 12-15 mil (0.30-0.38 mm) color impregnated polyester gel coat finish; minimum thickness of 1/4 inch (6.25 mm); color as selected.
  - b. Receptacles:
    - 1) Shall be manufactured by Maglin,
    - 2) Color: Malaga Green
- E. Shelters
1. AISC S342L; AISC S335. Provide prefabricated shelter systems to meet design conditions indicated. Shelter design shall conform to all applicable State and Local Building Codes and shall meet manufacturer's standards of construction and materials. Shelter systems shall be preglazed, pre-drilled and pre-cut, shipped with all hardware and accessories necessary for complete field assembly.
  2. Framing Systems: Framing system; columns, rafters, ridge, purlins and other structural framing members shall be aluminum/steel/wood as indicated. Manufacturer shall provide shop drawings and calculations prepared by a structural engineer.
    - a. Extruded aluminum alloy tubing shall conform to ASTM B429 6063-T5 or 3003-H14, anodized or powder coat finish, color as directed. Framing sizes and configurations shall be as required for size of structure indicated meeting manufacturer's standards and applicable building codes.
    - b. Structural steel shall conform to ASTM A36/A36M or ASTM A500, 36,000 psi (248 MPa) yield strength and 58,000 psi (400 MPa) tensile strength, factory finished with rust inhibited primer and powder coat conforming to ASTM D3451. Framing sizes and configurations shall be as required for size of structure indicated meeting manufacturer's standard and applicable building codes.
    - c. Wood framing system shall consist of surfaced four sides (S4S), #2 grade southern yellow pine solid timber columns with eased edges, pressure treated CCA (Copper Chrome Arsinat) 0.6 PCF (9.6 kg/cu.m) against decay, fungi and insect infestation, surfaced four sides (S4S), #1 grade, southern pine, glue-laminated columns manufactured in accordance with ANSI/AITC A190.1 and AITC certified glue-laminated structural grade southern yellow pine beams, rafters and purlins, factory sealed and individually wrapped for protection during shipment. Factory stain all wood members prior to shipment.
  3. Roof Panels/Decking: Provide manufacturer's standard molded acrylic translucent roof panel, OR standing seam metal roof panel, OR wood decking, OR V-beam aluminum roof panels, OR



FRP roof panels, as indicated. Materials shall be factory finished and shipped with all necessary fasteners and accessories as required for complete site assembly.

4. Glazing: Factory installed in separate structural window frames, gasketed and glazed as per manufacturer's standard, interchangeable, glazing system. Provide 1/4 inch (6.25 mm) acrylic sheet, OR tempered glass, OR polycarbonate plastic sheet OR mar-resistant polycarbonate plastic sheet, clear OR color.

#### F. Tables

1. Precast Concrete Tables: Provide reinforced precast concrete tables with smooth tops; minimum 4500 psi (35 MPa) concrete, 28 day minimum compressive strength, consisting of a mixture of cement, aggregates, and mineral colors suitable for exterior use as located on the drawings. Provide manufacturer's standard exposed aggregate or sandblast finish with clear acrylic coating.
  - a. Portland cement: ASTM C150, gray, Type I.
  - b. Aggregate: ASTM C33, washed limestone and sand.
  - c. Galvanized wire mesh: 14 gage (1.9 mm), 2 by two inch (50 by 50 mm).
  - d. Welded wire fabric: ASTM A1064.
  - e. Reinforcing steel: ASTM A615/A615M.
  - f. Integral color: ASTM C979, pure mineral oxide, limeproof and non-fading.
  - g. Admixture: ASTM C260 for air-entraining..
2. Fiberglass Tables: Provide reinforced fiberglass table tops molded with multiple laminations of glass fiber impregnated with polyester isophthalic thermosetting resins, minimum thickness of 1/4 inch (6.25 mm) with 12-15 mil (0.30-0.38 mm) thickness color impregnated polyester gel coat, color as selected.
  - a. Steel pedestal base: ASTM A53 Schedule 40 steel pipe.
  - b. Mounting: Type as indicated.
  - c. Metal finish: Powder coating conforming to ASTM D3451 testing.
3. Perforated Steel Tables: Provide 14 gage (1.9 mm) **OR** 16 gage (1.6 mm), **as directed**, perforated steel sheet table tops with solid metal edges as per manufacturer's standard. Weld tops to base as required for frame support.
  - a. Steel pedestal base: ASTM A53 Schedule 40 steel pipe, 2 3/8 inch (60 mm) O.D.
  - b. Mounting: Type as indicated.
  - c. Hardware: Zinc or cadmium plated nuts, bolts, screws, and lock washers.
  - d. Metal finish: Powder coating conforming to ASTM D3451 testing.
4. Wood Seats and Tables
  - a. Provide manufacturer's standard wood seats and tables, minimum 1-5/8 inches (40 mm ) thick with rounded edges, with wood or metal bases as indicated. Provide fasteners and accessories required for on site assembly. Kiln dry and pressure treat wood components to manufacturer's standard, maximum 19 percent moisture content. Pre-treat metal components and provide manufacturer's standard primer and powder coat finish complying with ASTM D3451, color as selected.
    - 1) Design wood tables to sustain a live load of not less than 200 pounds per square foot (10 kPa).
    - 2) Provide kiln dried, surfaced four sides (S4S), clear all sides wood slats of species and sizes indicated.
      - a) Species: As directed.
      - b) Nominal wood slat sizes: As directed.
  - b. Support Base: Provide wood or metal support bases as per manufacturer's standard.
    - 1) Wood: Match in species, grade, grain, color and finish of the wood slats.
    - 2) Steel: ASTM A653/A653M.
    - 3) Cast grey iron: ASTM A 48/A48M, Class 30 or recycled cast grey iron ASTM A48/A48M, Class 25.
    - 4) Cast aluminum: ASTM B26/B26M or ASTM B108 as applicable.
    - 5) Design bases to support the loads imposed in the design of the tables.

#### G. Grates



1. Provide cast aluminum **OR** cast iron **OR** cast bronze **OR** punched steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, tree grates in round **OR** square, **as directed**, model of sizes indicated on the drawings. Furnish complete with angle steel frames with finish to match tree grates.

#### H. Fabrication Finishes

1. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items specified to be zinc-coated, after fabrication where practicable. Galvanizing: ASTM A123/A123M, ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM A653/A653M, as applicable.
2. Galvanize: Anchor bolts, grating fasteners, washers, and parts or devices necessary for proper installation, unless indicated otherwise.
3. Repair of Zinc-Coated Surfaces: Repair damaged surfaces with galvanizing repair method and paint conforming to ASTM A780 or by the application of stick or thick paste material specifically designed for repair of galvanizing, as approved. Clean areas to be repaired and remove the slag from the welds. Heat surfaces to which stick or paste material is applied, with a torch to a temperature sufficient to melt the metallics in stick or paste; spread the molten material uniformly over surfaces to be coated and wipe the excess material off.
4. Pretreatment, Priming and Painting: Apply pretreatment, primer, and paint in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions. On surfaces concealed in the finished construction or not accessible for finish painting, apply an additional prime coat to a minimum dry film thickness of 1.0 mil (0.03 mm). Tint additional prime coat with a small amount of tinting pigment.
5. Nonferrous Metal Surfaces: Protect by plating, anodic, or organic coatings.
6. Aluminum Surfaces
  - a. Surface Condition: Before finishes are applied, remove roll marks, scratches, rolled-in scratches, kinks, stains, pits, orange peel, die marks, structural streaks, and other defects which will affect uniform appearance of finished surfaces.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation

1. Install items at locations indicated, according to manufacturer's instructions. Items listed below require additional procedures.
  - a. Assembly and Erection of Components: Items shall be shipped knocked-down (KD) ready for site assembly. Packaged components shall be complete including all accessories and hardware. Follow manufacturer's instructions for assembly and erection. Provide mounting bolts or hardware for mounting items to substrate.

#### B. Anchorage, Fastenings, And Connections

1. Provide anchorage where necessary for fastening furniture or furnishings securely in place. Include for anchorage not otherwise specified or indicated slotted inserts, expansion shields, and powder-driven fasteners, when approved for concrete; toggle bolts and through bolts for masonry; machine and carriage bolts for steel; through bolts, lag bolts, and screws for wood. Do not use wood plugs in any material. Provide non-ferrous attachments for non-ferrous metal. Make exposed fastenings of compatible materials, generally matching in color and finish, to which fastenings are applied. Conceal fastenings where practicable.

#### C. Built-In-Work

1. Form for anchorage metal work built-in with concrete or masonry, or provide with suitable anchoring devices as indicated or as required. Furnish metal work in ample time for securing in place as the work progresses.

#### D. Welding

1. Perform welding, welding inspection, and corrective welding, in accordance with AWS D1.1. Use continuous welds on all exposed connections. Grind visible welds smooth in the finished installation.



E. Finishes: Dissimilar Materials

1. Where dissimilar metals are in contact, protect surfaces with a coat conforming to FS TT-P-664 to prevent galvanic or corrosive action. Where aluminum is in contact with concrete, mortar, masonry, wood, or absorptive materials subject to wetting, protect with ASTM D1187, asphalt-base emulsion.

F. Bollards

1. Install in pipe sleeves embedded in concrete and filled with non-shrink grout or quick setting anchoring cement.

G. Shelters

1. Secure to the adjacent construction with the clip angles attached to the concrete. Secure to concrete with not less than two 1/2 inch (12 mm) diameter expansion bolts.
  - a. Glazing: Factory install windows into separate structural frame. Miter corners and connect internally by extruded aluminum corner keys or screw bosses with tamper-proof stainless steel screws. Provide continuous gasketing around windows set to metal frames. Provide 1/2 to 3/4 inch (13 to 19 mm) deep pocket for polycarbonate glazing. Fully gasket and frame in independent interchangeable factory assembled units. Affix to shelter frame with 3/16 inch (5 mm) shallow head aluminum rivets at approximately 13 1/4 inches (331 mm) on centers for full 360 degrees (6.28 rad), rivet from inside of shelter.
  - b. Roof: Provide manufacturer's standard roof system including fascia **OR** gutter, **as directed**, assembly, ensuring a weather-tight seal and installation.

END OF SECTION 32 39 23 00



**SECTION 32 84 00 00 - MODIFIED BITUMOUS PROTECTED MEMBRANE ROOFING**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for modified bituminous protected membrane roofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. Section includes APP-modified and SBS-modified bituminous protected membrane roofing.

## C. Definitions

1. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definition of terms related to roofing work in this Section.
2. Hot Roofing Asphalt: Roofing asphalt heated to its equiviscous temperature, the temperature at which its viscosity is 125 centipoise for mop-applied roofing asphalt and 75 centipoise for mechanical spreader-applied roofing asphalt, within a range of plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C), measured at the mop cart or mechanical spreader immediately before application.

## D. Performance Requirements

1. General Performance: Installed membrane roofing and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Membrane roofing and base flashings shall remain watertight.
2. Material Compatibility: Provide roofing materials that are compatible with one another under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by membrane roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
3. Roofing System Design: If membrane roofing system is to be designed to withstand uplift pressure established by ASCE/SEI 7, provide membrane roofing system that is identical to systems that have been successfully tested by a qualified testing and inspecting agency to resist uplift pressure calculated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - a. Corner Uplift Pressure: as directed by the Owner.
  - b. Perimeter Uplift Pressure: as directed by the Owner.
  - c. Field-of-Roof Uplift Pressure: as directed by the Owner.
4. FM Approvals Listing: If Project is FM Global insured or if FM Approvals requirements will set a minimum quality standard, provide membrane roofing, base flashings, and component materials that comply with requirements in FM Approvals 4450 and FM Approvals 4470 as part of a membrane roofing system, and that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FM Approvals markings.
  - a. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-60 **OR** Class 1A-75 **OR** Class 1A-90 **OR** Class 1A-105 **OR** Class 1A-120, **as directed.**
  - b. Hail Resistance Rating: MH **OR** SH, **as directed.**
5. Energy Performance (if required for LEED-NC Credit SS 7.2): Provide roofing system with initial Solar Reflectance Index not less than 78 when calculated according to ASTM E 1980 based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency.

**OR**

Energy Performance (for roofs that must comply with the DOE's ENERGY STAR requirements): Provide roofing system that is listed on the DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for low-slope roof products.

**OR**



Energy Performance (for roofs that must comply with California Energy Commission's CEC-Title 24): Provide roofing system with initial Solar Reflectance not less than 0.70 and Thermal Emittance not less than 0.75 when tested according to CRRC-1.

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Test Reports for Credit SS 7.2: For roof materials, indicating that roof materials comply with Solar Reflectance Index requirement.
  - b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings: For roofing system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - a. Base flashings and membrane terminations.
  - b. Tapered insulation, including slopes.
  - c. Crickets, saddles, and tapered edge strips, including slopes.
4. Samples: For the following products:
  - a. Sheet roofing materials, including base sheet, base-ply sheet, roofing membrane sheet, flashing backer sheet, membrane cap sheet and flashing sheet, of color specified.
  - b. Roof insulation.
  - c. 10 lb (4.5 kg) of aggregate ballast in gradation and color indicated.
  - d. Roof paver, full sized, in each color and texture required.
5. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and manufacturer.
6. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by roofing manufacturer certifying that roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
  - a. Submit evidence of compliance with performance requirements.
7. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for components of membrane roofing system.
8. Research/Evaluation Reports: For components of membrane roofing system, from the ICC-ES or applicable model code organization.
9. Maintenance Data: For roofing system to include in maintenance manuals.
10. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

#### F. Quality Assurance

1. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is UL listed **OR** FM Approvals approved, **as directed**, for membrane roofing system identical to that used for this Project.
2. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by membrane roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.
3. Source Limitations: Obtain components including roof insulation and fasteners for membrane roofing system from same manufacturer as membrane roofing or approved by membrane roofing manufacturer.
4. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E 108, Class A **OR** Class B **OR** Class C, **as directed**; for application and roof slopes indicated, as determined by testing identical membrane roofing materials by a qualified testing agency. Materials shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
5. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide fire-resistance-rated roof assemblies identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
6. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.



2. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
  - a. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
3. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
4. Handle and store roofing materials and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

#### H. Project Conditions

1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

#### I. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard or customized form, without monetary limitation, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of membrane roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - a. Special warranty includes membrane roofing, base flashings, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, substrate board, roofing accessories, roof pavers, and other components of membrane roofing system.
  - b. Warranty Period: 10 **OR** 15, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. APP-Modified Asphalt-Sheet Materials

1. Roofing Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 6222, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.
2. Smooth-Surfaced Roofing Membrane Cap Sheet: ASTM D 6222, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.  
**OR**  
Granule-Surfaced Roofing Membrane Cap Sheet: ASTM D 6222, Grade G, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade G, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified.

#### B. SBS-Modified Asphalt-Sheet Materials

1. Roofing Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 6164, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6163, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers) **OR** ASTM D 6162, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.
2. Smooth-Surfaced Roofing Membrane Cap Sheet: ASTM D 6164, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6163, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers) **OR** ASTM D 6162, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.  
**OR**



Granule-Surface Roofing Membrane Cap Sheet: ASTM D 6164, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6163, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers) **OR** ASTM D 6162, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified.

**OR**

Metal-Foil-Surfaced Roofing Membrane Cap Sheet: ASTM D 6298, metal-foil surfaced SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers); suitable for application method specified, and as follows:

a. Foil Surfacing: Aluminum **OR** Copper **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.

#### C. Base-Sheet Materials

1. Base Sheet: ASTM D 4601, Type II, SBS-modified asphalt-impregnated and -coated sheet, with glass-fiber-reinforcing mat, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

a. Weight: 25 lb/100 sq. ft. (1.2 kg/sq. m) **OR** 40 lb/100 sq. ft. (1.95 kg/sq. m) **OR** 50 lb/100 sq. ft. (2.4 kg/sq. m) **OR** 60 lb/100 sq. ft. (2.9 kg/sq. m) **OR** 75 lb/100 sq. ft. (3.7 kg/sq. m), **as directed**, minimum.

**OR**

Base Sheet: ASTM D 4601, Type I **OR** Type II, **as directed**, nonperforated, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber sheet, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

**OR**

Base Sheet: ASTM D 4897, Type II, venting, nonperforated, heavyweight, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber base sheet with coarse granular surfacing or embossed venting channels on bottom surface.

**OR**

Base Sheet: ASTM D 2626, asphalt-saturated and -coated organic felt, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

#### D. Base-Ply Sheet Materials

1. Glass-Fiber Base-Ply Sheet: ASTM D 2178, Type IV **OR** Type VI, **as directed**, asphalt-impregnated, glass-fiber felt.

#### E. Base Flashing Sheet Materials

1. Backer Sheet: ASTM D 4601, Type I **OR** Type II, **as directed**, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber sheet, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

**OR**

Backer Sheet: ASTM D 2626, asphalt-saturated and -coated organic felt, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

**OR**

Backer Sheet: ASTM D 6222, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.

**OR**

Backer Sheet: ASTM D 6164, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6163, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers) **OR** ASTM D 6162, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.

2. Smooth-Surfaced Flashing Sheet: ASTM D 6222, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.

3. Granule-Surfaced Flashing Sheet (for use with APP-modified roofing membranes): ASTM D 6222, Grade G, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester



fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade G, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified, and as follows:

- a. Granule Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Tan, **as directed**.
4. Granule-Surfaced Flashing Sheet (for use with SBS-modified roofing membranes): ASTM D 6164, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6163, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers) **OR** ASTM D 6162, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified, and as follows:
  - a. Granule Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Tan, **as directed**.
5. Metal-Foil-Surfaced Flashing Sheet: ASTM D 6298, metal-foil surfaced SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers); suitable for application method specified, and as follows:
  - a. Foil Surfacing: Aluminum **OR** Copper **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Aluminum, fluoropolymer coated finish, of color and gloss selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
6. Glass-Fiber Fabric: Woven glass-fiber cloth, treated with asphalt, complying with ASTM D 1668, Type I.

F. Auxiliary Roofing Membrane Materials

1. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by roofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with roofing membrane.
  - a. Liquid-type auxiliary materials shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - b. Adhesives and sealants that are not on the exterior side of weather barrier shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
    - 1) Plastic Foam Adhesives: 50 g/L.
    - 2) Multipurpose Construction Adhesives: 70 g/L.
    - 3) Fiberglass Adhesives: 80 g/L.
    - 4) Contact Adhesives: 80 g/L.
    - 5) Other Adhesives: 250 g/L.
    - 6) Nonmembrane Roof Sealants: 300 g/L.
    - 7) Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
    - 8) Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
2. Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 41.
3. Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 312, Type III **OR** Type IV **OR** Type III or IV as recommended by roofing manufacturer for application, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 6152, SEBS modified.
4. Cold-Applied Adhesive: Roofing manufacturer's standard asphalt-based, one- or two-part, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive specially formulated for compatibility and use with roofing membrane and base flashings.
5. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required by roofing manufacturer for application.
6. Mastic Sealant: Polyisobutylene, plain or modified bitumen, nonhardening, nonmigrating, nonskinning, and nondrying.
7. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roofing membrane components to substrate, tested by manufacturer for required pullout strength, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
8. Insulation Cant Strips: ASTM C 728, perlite insulation board.  
**OR**  
Insulation Cant Strips: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 1, cellulosic-fiber insulation board.
9. Metal Flashing Sheet: As specified in Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."



10. Roofing Granules: Ceramic-coated **OR** Slate, **as directed**, roofing granules, No. 11 screen size with 100 percent passing No. 8 (2.36-mm) sieve and 98 percent of mass retained on No. 40 (0.425-mm) sieve, color to match roofing membrane.
11. Separator Sheet: Polyethylene sheet, 4 mils (0.1 mm) thick, minimum.
12. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide those recommended by roofing system manufacturer.

G. Coating Materials

1. Roof Coating: ASTM D 1227, Type II, Class 1, mineral-colloid-emulsified, fibered **OR** Class 2, chemically emulsified, filled or fibered, **as directed**, asphalt emulsion, asbestos free.  
**OR**  
Roof Coating: ASTM D 1227, Type III, Class 1, mineral-colloid-emulsified **OR** Class 2, chemically emulsified, **as directed**, asphalt emulsion, nonfibered.  
**OR**  
Roof Coating: ASTM D 2824, Type I, nonfibered **OR** Type III, fibered, asbestos-free, **as directed**, aluminum-pigmented asphaltic coating.  
**OR**  
Roof Coating: Acrylic elastomer emulsion coating, formulated for use on bituminous roof surfaces and complying with ASTM D 6083.
  - a. Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Buff, **as directed**.

H. Roof Insulation

1. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by roofing manufacturer, selected from manufacturer's standard sizes suitable for application, of thicknesses indicated and that produce FM Approvals-approved roof insulation, **as directed**.
2. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type VI, 1.8 lb/cu. ft. (29 kg/cu. m) **OR** Type VII, 2.2 lb/cu. ft. (35 kg/cu. m), **as directed**, with two or four edges rabbeted.
3. Mortar-Faced, Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type VI, 1.8-lb/cu. ft. (29-kg/cu. m) minimum density, with tongue-and-groove edges on long dimension, and latex-modified cement mortar topping, 3/8 inch (9 mm) thick, 4.5 lb/sq. ft. (19.5 kg/sq. m) **OR** 15/16 inch (23 mm) thick, 11 lb/sq. ft. (53.7 kg/sq. m), **as directed**.

I. Insulation Accessories

1. General: Furnish roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with membrane roofing.
2. Protection Mat: Woven or nonwoven polypropylene, polyolefin, or polyester fabric, water permeable and resistant to UV degradation, type and weight as recommended by roofing system manufacturer for application.
3. Metal Securement System: Perimeter securement flashing and strapping fabricated from stainless steel, a minimum of 0.031 inch (0.8 mm) thick. Provide fasteners as recommended by mortar-faced insulation manufacturer.

J. Ballast

1. Aggregate Ballast: Washed, crushed stone or smooth stone that will withstand weather exposure without significant deterioration and will not contribute to membrane degradation; of the following size:
  - a. Size: ASTM D 448, Size 5, ranging in size from 1/2 to 1 inch (13 to 25 mm).
  - b. Size: ASTM D 448, Size 4, ranging in size from 3/4 to 1-1/2 inches (19 to 38 mm).
  - c. Size: ASTM D 448, Size 2, ranging in size from 1-1/2 to 2-1/2 inches (38 to 63 mm).
2. Interlocking Roof Pavers: Interlocking, lightweight concrete units, specially factory cast for use as roof ballast; grooved back, with four-way drainage capability; beveled, doweled, or otherwise profiled. Size and weight shall be as directed.
  - a. Compressive Strength: 2500 psi (17 MPa) **OR** 5000 psi (34 MPa), **as directed**, minimum.
  - b. Colors and Textures: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.



3. Roof Pavers: Heavyweight, hydraulically pressed, concrete units, square edged **OR** with top edges beveled 3/16 inch (5 mm), **as directed**, factory cast for use as roof pavers; absorption not greater than 5 percent, ASTM C 140; no breakage and maximum 1 percent mass loss when tested for freeze-thaw resistance, ASTM C 67; and as follows:
  - a. Size: 24 by 24 inches (600 by 600 mm). Manufacture pavers to dimensional tolerances of plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) in length, height, and thickness.
  - b. Weight: Weight shall be as directed.
  - c. Compressive Strength: 7500 psi (52 MPa) **OR** 6500 psi (45 MPa), **as directed**, minimum; ASTM C 140.
  - d. Colors and Textures: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  - e. Paver Supports: Integral corner pedestals.  
**OR**  
Paver Supports: Paver manufacturer's standard SBR rubber, high-density polyethylene, or polyurethane paver support assembly, including fixed-height **OR** adjustable or stackable, **as directed**, pedestals, shims, and spacer tabs for joint spacing of 1/8 inch (3 mm) **OR** 3/16 inch (5 mm) **OR** 1/8 to 3/16 inch (3 to 5 mm), **as directed**.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

1. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with the following requirements and other conditions affecting performance of roofing system:
  - a. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place and curbs are set and braced and that roof drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
  - b. Verify that wood cants, blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations.
  - c. Verify that minimum concrete drying period recommended by roofing system manufacturer has passed.
  - d. Verify that concrete substrate is visibly dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
    - 1) Test for moisture by pouring 1 pint (0.5 L) of hot roofing asphalt on deck at start of each day's work and at start of each roof area or plane. Do not proceed with roofing work if test sample foams or can be easily and cleanly stripped after cooling.
  - e. Verify that concrete curing compounds that will impair adhesion of roofing components to roof deck have been removed.
2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### B. Preparation

1. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
2. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
3. Prime surface of concrete deck with asphalt primer at a rate of 3/4 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.3 L/sq. m) and allow primer to dry.

#### C. Roofing Membrane Installation, General

1. If referencing NRCA's roof assembly identification matrix system, install roofing membrane system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions and applicable recommendations in ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Polymer Modified Bitumen Roofing."
  - a. Install roofing system MBA **OR** S, **as directed**, -4-C-T **OR** M **OR** L, **as directed**, -P, according to roof assembly identification matrix and roof assembly layout illustrations in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" and requirements in this Section.



2. For roof system that exceeds requirements of NRCA's roof assemblies, install roofing membrane system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions and applicable recommendations in ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Polymer Modified Bitumen Roofing" and as follows:
    - a. Membrane: A (APP) **OR** S (SBS), **as directed**.
    - b. Deck Type: C (concrete or nonnailable).
    - c. Adhering Method: T (torched) **OR** M (mopped) **OR** L (cold-applied adhesive), **as directed**.
    - d. Base Sheet: One.
    - e. Number of Glass-Fiber Base-Ply Sheets: One.
    - f. Number of Modified Asphalt Sheets: Two.
    - g. Surfacing Type: P (protected).
  3. Start installation of roofing membrane in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
  4. Where roof slope exceeds 1/2 inch per 12 inches (1:24) **OR** 3/4 inch per 12 inches (1:18), **as directed**, install roofing membrane sheets parallel with slope.
    - a. Backnail roofing membrane sheets to nailer strips according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
  5. Cooperate with testing agencies engaged or required to perform services for installing roofing system.
  6. Coordinate installing roofing system so components of the roofing membrane system not permanently exposed are not subjected to precipitation or left uncovered at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast.
    - a. Provide tie-offs at end of each day's work to cover exposed roofing membrane sheets with a course of coated felt set in roofing cement or hot roofing asphalt with joints and edges sealed.
    - b. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system.
    - c. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.
  7. Asphalt Heating: Do not raise roofing asphalt temperature above equiviscous temperature range more than one hour before time of application. Do not exceed roofing asphalt manufacturer's recommended temperature limits during roofing asphalt heating. Do not heat roofing asphalt within 25 deg F (14 deg C) of flash point. Discard roofing asphalt maintained at a temperature exceeding finished blowing temperature for more than four hours.  
**OR**  
Asphalt Heating: Heat and apply SEBS-modified roofing asphalt according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
  8. Substrate-Joint Penetrations: Prevent roofing asphalt from penetrating substrate joints, entering building, or damaging roofing system components or adjacent building construction.
- D. Base-Sheet Installation
1. Install lapped base sheet course, extending sheet over and terminating beyond cants. Attach base sheet as follows:
    - a. Spot- or strip-mop to substrate with hot roofing asphalt.  
**OR**  
Adhere to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt **OR** uniform coating of cold-applied adhesive, **as directed**.
- E. Base-Ply Sheet Installation
1. Install glass-fiber base-ply sheets according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions starting at low point of roofing system. Align glass-fiber base-ply sheets without stretching. Extend glass-fiber base-ply sheets over and terminate beyond cants. Embed each glass-fiber base-ply sheet in a continuous void-free mopping of hot roofing asphalt, to form a uniform membrane without glass-fiber base-ply sheets touching.
- F. Modified Bituminous Membrane Installation





1. Install modified bituminous roofing membrane sheet and cap sheet according to roofing manufacturer's written instructions, starting at low point of roofing system. Extend roofing membrane sheets over and terminate beyond cants.
    - a. Unroll roofing membrane sheets and allow them to relax for minimum time period required by manufacturer.
  2. Laps: Accurately align roofing membrane sheets, without stretching, and maintain uniform side and end laps. Stagger end laps. Completely bond and seal laps, leaving no voids.
    - a. Repair tears and voids in laps and lapped seams not completely sealed.
    - b. Apply roofing granules to cover exuded bead at laps while bead is hot.
  3. Install roofing membrane sheets so side and end laps shed water.
- G. Flashing And Stripping Installation
1. Install base flashing over cant strips and other sloping and vertical surfaces, at roof edges, and at penetrations through roof, and secure to substrates according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
    - a. Prime substrates with asphalt primer if required by roofing system manufacturer.
    - b. Backer Sheet Application: Mechanically fasten backer sheet to walls or parapets. Adhere backer sheet over roofing membrane at cants in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt **OR** cold-applied adhesive, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Backer Sheet Application: Adhere backer sheet to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt **OR** cold-applied adhesive at rate required by roofing system manufacturer, **as directed**.
    - c. Flashing Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in cold-applied adhesive at rate required by roofing system manufacturer.  
**OR**  
Flashing Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in asphalt roofing cement at rate required by roofing system manufacturer.  
**OR**  
Flashing Sheet Application: Torch apply flashing sheet to substrate.  
**OR**  
Flashing Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt applied at not less than 425 deg F (218 deg C). Apply hot roofing asphalt to back of flashing sheet if recommended by roofing system manufacturer.
  2. Extend base flashing up walls or parapets a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above roofing membrane and 4 inches (100 mm) onto field of roofing membrane.
  3. Mechanically fasten top of base flashing securely at terminations and perimeter of roofing.
    - a. Seal top termination of base flashing with a strip of glass-fiber fabric set in asphalt roofing cement, **as directed**.
  4. Install roofing membrane cap-sheet stripping where metal flanges and edgings are set on membrane roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
  5. Roof Drains: Set 30-by-30-inch (760-by-760-mm) metal flashing in bed of roofing-manufacturer-approved asphaltic adhesive on completed roofing membrane. Cover metal flashing with roofing membrane cap-sheet stripping and extend a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) **OR** 6 inches (150 mm), **as directed**, beyond edge of metal flashing onto field of roofing membrane. Clamp roofing membrane, metal flashing, and stripping into roof-drain clamping ring.
    - a. Install stripping according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- H. Coating Installation
1. Apply coatings to base flashings according to manufacturer's written instructions, by spray, roller, or other suitable application method.
- I. Insulation Installation
1. Loosely lay separator sheet over cooled roofing membrane, with minimum 2-inch (50-mm) side laps and 4-inch (100-mm) end laps.



2. Loosely lay board insulation units over roofing membrane, with long joints of insulation in continuous straight lines and with end joints staggered between rows. Abut edges and ends between units.
3. Install one or more layers of insulation to achieve required thickness over roofing membrane. Cut and fit to within 3/4 inch (19 mm) of projections and penetrations.
  - a. Where overall insulation thickness is 2 inches (50 mm) or more, install required thickness in two or more layers with joints of each succeeding layer staggered over joints of previous layer a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) in each direction.
4. Install geotextile fabric over insulation, overlapping edges and ends at least 12 inches (300 mm). Do not lap ends of fabric sheets within 72 inches (1800 mm) of roof perimeter. Extend fabric 2 to 3 inches (50 to 75 mm) above ballast at perimeter and penetrations. Apply additional layer of fabric around penetrations to prevent aggregate from getting between penetration and insulation. Do not cover drains or restrict water flow to drains.

#### J. Ballast Installation

1. To roofed area, apply aggregate ballast uniformly over geotextile fabric at rate required by insulation manufacturer, but not less than the following, carefully spreading aggregate to not damage roofing membrane and base flashings. Install roof-paver ballast according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions, **as directed**. Apply ballast as insulation is installed, leaving roofing membrane insulated and ballasted at end of workday.
  - a. Ballast (Dow's "Standard Design"): 15 lb/sq. ft. (75 kg/sq. m) **OR** 20 lb/sq. ft. (100 kg/sq. m), **as directed**, Size 5 aggregate within 102 inches (2600 mm) of roof perimeter and corners and 24 inches (600 mm) of roof penetrations; 10 lb/sq. ft. (50 kg/sq. m), Size 5 aggregate elsewhere.
    - 1) If partially replacing aggregate ballast with roof pavers, install one row of roof pavers in lieu of aggregate ballast at roof perimeter, corners, and penetrations.
  - b. Ballast (for Dow's "Design #1"): 15 lb/sq. ft. (75 kg/sq. m) **OR** 20 lb/sq. ft. (100 kg/sq. m), **as directed**, Size 4 aggregate within 102 inches (2600 mm) of roof perimeter and corners and 24 inches (600 mm) of roof penetrations; 12 lb/sq. ft. (60 kg/sq. m), Size 4 aggregate elsewhere.
  - c. Ballast (for Dow's "Design #1") (if combining aggregate ballast with roof pavers): 12 lb/sq. ft. (60 kg/sq. m), Size 4 aggregate to field of roof; install two rows of roof pavers at roof perimeter, corners, and penetrations according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions.
  - d. Ballast (for Dow's "Design #2") (for aggregate ballast with roof pavers at corners): 15 lb/sq. ft. (75 kg/sq. m) **OR** 20 lb/sq. ft. (100 kg/sq. m), **as directed**, Size 2 aggregate within 102 inches (2600 mm) of roof perimeter and 24 inches (600 mm) of roof penetrations; 13 lb/sq. ft. (65 kg/sq. m), Size 2 aggregate to field of roof; and install three rows of roof pavers at corners of roof according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions. Mechanically fasten securement strapping to center of first perimeter corner row of roof pavers.
  - e. Ballast (for Dow's "Design #2") (if combining aggregate ballast with roof pavers at roof perimeters, corners, and penetrations): 13 lb/sq. ft. (65 kg/sq. m), Size 2 aggregate to field of roof and install three rows of concrete pavers at roof perimeter, corners, and penetrations according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions. Mechanically fasten securement strapping to center of first perimeter and perimeter corner row of roof pavers.
  - f. Ballast (for Dow's "Design #3"): 15 lb/sq. ft. (75 kg/sq. m) **OR** 20 lb/sq. ft. (100 kg/sq. m), **as directed**, Size 2 aggregate within 24 inches (600 mm) of roof penetrations; 13 lb/sq. ft. (65 kg/sq. m), Size 2 aggregate to field of roof; and install four rows of roof pavers at roof perimeter and corners according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions. Mechanically fasten securement strapping to center of first two perimeter and perimeter corner rows of roof pavers.
2. Walkway Pavers: Install walkways formed from one row **OR** two rows, **as directed**, of roof pavers, loosely laid and butted.



K. Roof-Paver Installation

1. Interlocking Roof Pavers: Install interlocking roof pavers over roofed area according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. For Dow's Technote 508 "Standard Design" and "Design #1", install roof pavers over roofed area according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions.
3. For Dow's Technote 508 "Standard Design" and "Design #2", install roof pavers over roofed area according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions. Mechanically fasten roof-paver metal straps to center of first perimeter and first perimeter corner row of roof pavers.
4. For Dow's Technote 508 "Standard Design" and "Design #3", install roof pavers over roofed area according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions. Mechanically fasten roof-paver metal straps to center of first two perimeters and first two perimeter corner rows of roof pavers.
5. Install roof pavers on pedestals set according to pedestal manufacturer's written instructions.

L. Mortar-Faced Board Insulation Installation

1. Install mortar-faced board insulation loosely laid, according to manufacturer's written instructions, with tongue-and-groove joints nested. Stagger end joints of adjoining rows and abut insulation.
  - a. Mechanically fasten metal securement strapping at penetrations and at perimeter edges of mortar-faced board insulation.
  - b. Over mortar-faced board insulation, install roof pavers on roof perimeter and corners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Install one row **OR** two rows, **as directed**, of 24-inch- (600-mm-) wide roof pavers to roof perimeter, corners, and penetrations according to mortar-faced board insulation manufacturer's written instructions.

M. Field Quality Control

1. Testing Agency: Perform tests and inspections and to prepare reports.
2. Test Cuts: Test specimens will be removed to evaluate problems observed during quality-assurance inspections of roofing membrane as follows:
  - a. Approximate quantities of components within roofing membrane will be determined according to ASTM D 3617.
  - b. Test specimens will be examined for interply voids according to ASTM D 3617 and to comply with criteria established in Appendix 3 in ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Polymer Modified Bitumen Roofing."
  - c. Repair areas where test cuts were made according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion.
  - a. Notify the Owner and Owner 48 hours in advance of date and time of inspection.
4. Roofing system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  - a. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

N. Protecting And Cleaning

1. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction will not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to the Owner and Owner.
2. Correct deficiencies in or remove roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Final Completion and according to warranty requirements.
3. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 32 84 00 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 32 84 13 00 - IRRIGATION SYSTEMS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for irrigation systems. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Piping.
  - b. Encasement for piping.
  - c. Manual valves.
  - d. Pressure-reducing valves.
  - e. Automatic control valves.
  - f. Automatic drain valves.
  - g. Transition fittings.
  - h. Dielectric fittings.
  - i. Miscellaneous piping specialties.
  - j. Sprinklers.
  - k. Quick couplers.
  - l. Drip irrigation specialties.
  - m. Controllers.
  - n. Boxes for automatic control valves.

#### C. Definitions

1. Circuit Piping: Downstream from control valves to sprinklers, specialties, and drain valves. Piping is under pressure during flow.
2. Drain Piping: Downstream from circuit-piping drain valves. Piping is not under pressure.
3. Main Piping: Downstream from point of connection to water distribution piping to, and including, control valves. Piping is under water-distribution-system pressure.
4. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. Irrigation zone control shall be automatic operation with controller and automatic control **OR** manual operation with manual, **as directed**, valves.
2. Location of Sprinklers and Specialties: Design location is approximate. Make minor adjustments necessary to avoid plantings and obstructions such as signs and light standards. Maintain 100 percent irrigation coverage of areas indicated.
3. Delegated Design: Design 100 percent coverage irrigation system, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
  - a. Available land records indicate the following soil conditions:
    - 1) Type: Coarse **OR** Medium **OR** Fine, **as directed**.
    - 2) Texture:
      - a) Sand: as directed by the Owner.
      - b) Silt: as directed by the Owner .
      - c) Clay: as directed by the Owner.
    - 3) Particle Size:
      - a) Sand: as directed by the Owner.
      - b) Silt: as directed by the Owner.



- c) Clay: as directed by the Owner.
  - 4) Structure: Single grained **OR** Granular **OR** Platy **OR** Blocky, **as directed**.
  - 5) Density: as directed by the Owner.
  - 6) Moisture Content: as directed by the Owner.
  - 7) Infiltration Rate: as directed by the Owner.
4. Minimum Working Pressures: The following are minimum pressure requirements for piping, valves, and specialties unless otherwise indicated:
- a. Irrigation Main Piping: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
  - b. Circuit Piping: 150 psig (1035 kPa).

#### E. Submittals

- 1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- 3. Delegated-Design Submittal: For irrigation systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- 4. Zoning Chart: Show each irrigation zone and its control valve.
- 5. Controller Timing Schedule: Indicate timing settings for each automatic controller zone.
- 6. Field quality-control reports.
- 7. Operation and maintenance data.

#### F. Quality Assurance

- 1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

#### G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

- 1. Deliver piping with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe-end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- 2. Store plastic piping protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

#### H. Project Conditions

- 1. Interruption of Existing Water Service: Do not interrupt water service to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water service according to requirements indicated:
  - a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of water service.
  - b. Do not proceed with interruption of water service without the Owner's written permission.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Pipes, Tubes, And Fittings

- 1. Comply with requirements in the piping schedule for applications of pipe, tube, and fitting materials, and for joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.
- 2. Galvanized-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Standard Weight, Type E, Grade B.
  - a. Galvanized-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M or ASTM A 106/A 106M, Standard Weight, seamless-steel pipe with threaded ends.
  - b. Galvanized, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
  - c. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal, bronze seating surface, and female threaded ends.
  - d. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125.
- 3. Ductile-Iron Pipe with Mechanical Joints: AWWA C151, with mechanical-joint bell and spigot ends.



- a. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
    - 1) Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
  4. Ductile-Iron Pipe with Push-on Joint: AWWA C151, with push-on-joint bell and spigot ends.
    - a. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
      - 1) Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
  5. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), water tube, annealed temper.
    - a. Copper Pressure Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
    - b. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint end.
    - c. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces and solder-joint or threaded ends.
  6. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), and ASTM B 88, Type M (ASTM B 88M, Type C), water tube, drawn temper.
    - a. Copper Pressure Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
    - b. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint end.
    - c. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces and solder-joint or threaded ends.
  7. PE Pipe with Controlled ID: ASTM F 771, PE 3408 compound; SIDR 11.5 and SIDR 15.
    - a. Insert Fittings for PE Pipe: ASTM D 2609, nylon or propylene plastic with barbed ends. Include bands or other fasteners.
  8. PE Pipe with Controlled OD: ASTM F 771, PE 3408 compound, SDR 11.
    - a. PE Butt, Heat-Fusion Fittings: ASTM D 3261.
    - b. PE Socket-Type Fittings: ASTM D 2683.
  9. PE Pressure Pipe: AWWA C906, with DR of 7.3, 9, or 9.3 and PE compound number required to give pressure rating not less than 160 psig (1100 kPa) **OR** 200 psig (1380 kPa), **as directed**.
    - a. PE Butt, Heat-Fusion Fittings: ASTM D 3261.
    - b. PE Socket-Type Fittings: ASTM D 2683.
  10. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, PVC 1120 compound, Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80, **as directed**.
    - a. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2466, Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80, **as directed**.
    - b. PVC Threaded Fittings: ASTM D 2464, Schedule 80.
    - c. PVC Socket Unions: Construction similar to MSS SP-107, except both headpiece and tailpiece shall be PVC with socket ends.
  11. PVC Pipe, Pressure Rated: ASTM D 2241, PVC 1120 compound, SDR 21 and SDR 26.
    - a. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2467, Schedule 80.
    - b. PVC Socket Unions: Construction similar to MSS SP-107, except both headpiece and tailpiece shall be PVC with socket or threaded ends.
- B. Piping Joining Materials
1. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick unless otherwise indicated; full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
  5. Solvent Cements for Joining PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
  6. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Encasement For Piping
1. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.



2. Form: Sheet **OR** Tube, **as directed**.
3. Material: LLDPE film of 0.008-inch (0.20-mm) **OR** LLDPE film of 0.008-inch (0.20-mm) minimum thickness or high-density, cross-laminated PE film of 0.004-inch (0.10-mm) **OR** High-density, cross-laminated PE film of 0.004-inch (0.10-mm), **as directed**, minimum thickness.
4. Color: Black **OR** Natural, **as directed**.

#### D. Manual Valves

1. Curb Valves:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: AWWA C800.
    - 2) NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller Pressure Rating: 100 psig (690 kPa) minimum **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**.
    - 3) NPS 1-1/4 to NPS 2 (DN 32 to DN 50) Pressure Rating: 80 psig (550 kPa) minimum **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**.
    - 4) Body Material: Brass or bronze with ball or ground-key plug.
    - 5) End Connections: Matching piping.
    - 6) Stem: With wide-tee head.
2. Curb-Valve Casing:
  - a. Standard: Similar to AWWA M44 for cast-iron valve casings.
  - b. Top Section: Telescoping, of length required for depth of burial of curb valve.
  - c. Barrel: Approximately 3-inch (75-mm) diameter.
  - d. Plug: With lettering "WATER."
  - e. Bottom Section: With base of size to fit over valve.
  - f. Base Support: Concrete collar **OR** wood frame, **as directed**.
3. Shutoff Rods for Curb-Valve Casings: Furnish one **OR** two, **as directed**, steel, tee-handle shutoff rod(s) with one pointed end, stem of length to operate deepest buried valve, and slotted end matching curb valve for Project.
4. Brass Ball Valves:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - 2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
    - 4) Body Design: Two piece.
    - 5) Body Material: Forged brass.
    - 6) Ends: Threaded or solder joint if indicated.
    - 7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - 8) Stem: Brass.
    - 9) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    - 10) Port: Full **OR** regular, but not reduced, **as directed**.
5. Bronze Ball Valves:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - 2) SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
    - 4) Body Design: Two piece.
    - 5) Body Material: Bronze.
    - 6) Ends: Threaded or solder joint if indicated.
    - 7) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - 8) Stem: Bronze.
    - 9) Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    - 10) Port: Full **OR** regular, but not reduced, **as directed**.
6. Iron Ball Valves:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-72.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).





- 3) Body Design: Split body.
  - 4) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
  - 5) Ends: Flanged.
  - 6) Seats: PTFE or TFE.
  - 7) Stem: Stainless steel.
  - 8) Ball: Stainless steel.
  - 9) Port: Full.
7. Plastic Ball Valves:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-122.
    - 2) Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**.
    - 3) Body Material: PVC.
    - 4) Type: Union.
    - 5) End Connections: Socket or threaded.
    - 6) Port: Full.
8. Bronze Gate Valves:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
    - 2) Class: 125.
    - 3) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 4) Body Material: ASTM B 62 bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
    - 5) Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
    - 6) Stem: Bronze, nonrising.
    - 7) Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
    - 8) Packing: Asbestos free.
    - 9) Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.
9. Iron Gate Valves, Resilient Seated:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: AWWA C509.
    - 2) Pressure Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa) **OR** 250 psig (1725 kPa), **as directed**, minimum.
    - 3) Body Material: Ductile or gray iron with bronze trim.
    - 4) End Connections: Mechanical joint or push-on joint.
    - 5) Interior Coating: Comply with AWWA C550.
    - 6) Body Design: Nonrising stem.
    - 7) Operator: Stem nut.
    - 8) Disc: Solid wedge with resilient coating.
10. Iron Gate Valve Casings:
- a. Standard: AWWA M44 for cast-iron valve casings.
  - b. Top Section: Adjustable extension of length required for depth of burial of valve.
  - c. Barrel: Approximately 5-inch (125-mm) diameter.
  - d. Plug: With lettering "WATER."
  - e. Bottom Section: With base of size to fit over valve.
  - f. Base Support: Concrete collar **OR** wood frame, **as directed**.
11. Operating Wrenches for Iron Gate Valve Casings: Furnish one **OR** two, **as directed**, steel, tee-handle operating wrench(es) with one pointed end, stem of length to operate deepest buried valve, and socket matching valve operating nut for Project.
12. Iron Gate Valves, NRS:
- a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
    - 4) Ends: Flanged.
    - 5) Trim: All bronze.
    - 6) Disc: Solid wedge.



- 7) Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
13. Iron Gate Valves, OS&Y:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
    - 2) CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - 3) Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
    - 4) Ends: Flanged.
    - 5) Trim: All bronze.
    - 6) Disc: Solid wedge.
    - 7) Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
- E. Pressure-Reducing Valves
  1. Water Regulators:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Standard: ASSE 1003.
      - 2) Body Material: Bronze for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3 (DN 65 and DN 80).
      - 3) Pressure Rating: Initial pressure of 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      - 4) End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3 (DN 65 and DN 80).
  2. Water Control Valves:
    - a. Description: Pilot-operation, diaphragm-type, single-seated main water control valve. Include small pilot control valve, restrictor device, specialty fittings, and sensor piping.
      - 1) Main Valve Body: Cast- or ductile-iron body with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, interior epoxy coating; or stainless-steel body.
      - 2) Pattern: Angle-valve **OR** Globe-valve, **as directed**, design.
      - 3) Trim: Stainless steel.
      - 4) Pressure Rating: Initial pressure of 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum.
      - 5) End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
- F. Automatic Control Valves
  1. Bronze, Automatic Control Valves:
    - a. Description: Cast-bronze body, normally closed, diaphragm type with manual-flow adjustment, and operated by 24-V ac solenoid.
  2. Plastic, Automatic Control Valves:
    - a. Description: Molded-plastic body, normally closed, diaphragm type with manual-flow adjustment, and operated by 24-V ac solenoid.
- G. Automatic Drain Valves
  1. Description: Spring-loaded-ball type of corrosion-resistant construction and designed to open for drainage if line pressure drops below 2-1/2 to 3 psig (17 to 20 kPa).
- H. Transition Fittings
  1. General Requirements: Same size as, and with pressure rating at least equal to and with ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
  2. Transition Couplings:
    - a. Description: AWWA C219, metal sleeve-type coupling for underground pressure piping.
  3. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
    - a. Description: PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-socket or threaded end.
  4. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:



- a. Description: MSS SP-107, PVC four-part union. Include one brass or stainless-steel threaded end, one solvent-cement-joint or threaded plastic end, rubber O-ring, and union nut.
- I. Dielectric Fittings
1. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials or ferrous material body with separating nonconductive insulating material suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
  2. Dielectric Unions:
    - a. Description: Factory-fabricated union, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.
      - 1) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum **OR** 250 psig (1725 kPa), **as directed**, at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
      - 2) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded ferrous.
  3. Dielectric Flanges:
    - a. Description: Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100) and larger.
      - 1) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum **OR** 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum **OR** 300 psig (2070 kPa), **as directed**.
      - 2) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
  4. Dielectric-Flange Kits:
    - a. Description: Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
      - 1) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum.
      - 2) Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
      - 3) Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
      - 4) Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
  5. Dielectric Couplings:
    - a. Description: Galvanized-steel coupling.
      - 1) Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
      - 2) End Connections: Female threaded.
      - 3) Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining.
  6. Dielectric Nipples:
    - a. Description: Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
      - 1) Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
      - 2) End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
      - 3) Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.
- J. Miscellaneous Piping Specialties
1. Water Hammer Arresters: ASSE 1010 or PDI WH 201, with bellows or piston-type pressurized cushioning chamber and in sizes complying with PDI WH 201, Sizes A to F.
  2. Pressure Gages: ASME B40.1. Include 4-1/2-inch- (115-mm-) diameter dial, dial range of two times system operating pressure, and bottom outlet.
- K. Sprinklers
1. General Requirements: Designed for uniform coverage over entire spray area indicated at available water pressure.
  2. Metal, Exposed, Impact-Drive Rotary Sprinklers:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Construction: Brass and other corrosion-resistant metals.
      - 2) Mounting: Aboveground, exposed on riser.
  3. Plastic, Exposed, Impact-Drive Rotary Sprinklers:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Construction: ABS and corrosion-resistant metals.
      - 2) Mounting: Aboveground, exposed on riser.
  4. Plastic, Pop-up, Gear-Drive Rotary Sprinklers:



- a. Description:
  - 1) Body Material: ABS.
  - 2) Nozzle: ABS **OR** Brass, **as directed**.
  - 3) Retraction Spring: Stainless steel.
  - 4) Internal Parts: Corrosion resistant.
5. Metal, Pop-up, Impact-Drive Rotary Sprinklers:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Case: Brass.
    - 2) Body Material: Brass.
    - 3) Pop-up Height: Approximately 3 inches (75 mm).
    - 4) Sprinkler Construction: Brass and other corrosion-resistant metals.
6. Plastic, Pop-up, Impact-Drive Rotary Sprinklers:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Case: ABS.
    - 2) Pop-up Height: Approximately 3 inches (75 mm).
    - 3) Sprinkler Construction: ABS and other corrosion-resistant metals.
7. Metal, Surface Spray Sprinklers:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Body Material and Flange: Brass.
    - 2) Nozzle: Brass.
    - 3) Pattern: Fixed, with flow adjustment.
8. Plastic, Surface Spray Sprinklers:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Body Material and Flange: ABS.
    - 2) Pattern: Fixed, with flow adjustment.
9. Metal, Surface, Pop-up Spray Sprinklers:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Body Material and Flange: Brass.
    - 2) Nozzle: Brass.
    - 3) Pattern: Fixed, with flow adjustment.
10. Plastic, Surface, Pop-up Spray Sprinklers:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Body Material and Flange: ABS.
    - 2) Pattern: Fixed, with flow adjustment.
11. Plastic, Pop-up Spray Sprinklers:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Body Material: ABS.
    - 2) Nozzle: ABS **OR** Brass, **as directed**.
    - 3) Retraction Spring: Stainless steel.
    - 4) Internal Parts: Corrosion resistant.
    - 5) Pattern: Fixed, with flow adjustment.
12. Metal Shrub Sprinklers:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Body Material: Brass.
    - 2) Nozzle: Brass.
    - 3) Pattern: Fixed, with flow adjustment.
13. Plastic Shrub Sprinklers:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Body Material: ABS or other plastic.
    - 2) Pattern: Fixed, with flow adjustment.

#### L. Quick Couplers

1. Description: Factory-fabricated, bronze or brass, two-piece assembly. Include coupler water-seal valve; removable upper body with spring-loaded or weighted, rubber-covered cap; hose swivel with ASME B1.20.7, 3/4-11.5NH threads for garden hose on outlet; and operating key.



- a. Locking-Top Option: Vandal-resistant locking feature. Include one **OR** two, **as directed**, matching key(s).

M. Drip Irrigation Specialties

1. Freestanding Emitters: Device to deliver water at approximately 20 psig (138 kPa).
  - a. Body Material: PE or vinyl, with flow control.
  - b. Riser to Emitter: PE or PVC flexible tubing.
2. Manifold Emitter Systems: Manifold with tubing and emitters.
  - a. Manifold: With multiple outlets to deliver water to emitters.
    - 1) Body Material: Plastic.
    - 2) Outlet Caps: Plastic, for outlets without installed tubing.
    - 3) Operation: Automatic pressure compensating.
  - b. Tubing: PE or PVC; 1/8-inch (3-mm) minimum ID.
  - c. Emitter: Device to deliver water at approximately 20 psig (138 kPa).
    - 1) Body Material: PE or vinyl, with flow control.
3. Multiple-Outlet Emitter Systems: Emitter with tubing and button-type outlets.
  - a. Emitter: With multiple outlets to deliver water to remote outlets.
    - 1) Body Material: Plastic, with flow control.
    - 2) Outlet Caps: Plastic, for outlets without installed tubing.
    - 3) Operation: Automatic pressure compensating.
    - 4) Emitters: Devices to deliver water at approximately 20 psig (138 kPa).
  - b. Tubing: PE or PVC; 1/8-inch (3-mm) minimum ID.
4. Drip Tubes with Direct-Attached Emitters:
  - a. Tubing: Flexible PE or PVC with plugged end.
  - b. Emitters: Devices to deliver water at approximately 20 psig (138 kPa).
    - 1) Body Material: PE or vinyl, with flow control.
    - 2) Mounting: Inserted into tubing at set intervals.
5. Drip Tubes with Remote Discharge:
  - a. Tubing: Flexible PE or PVC with plugged end.
  - b. Emitters: Devices to deliver water at approximately 20 psig (138 kPa).
    - 1) Body Material: PE or vinyl, with flow control.
    - 2) Mounting: Inserted into tubing at set intervals.
6. Off-Ground Supports: Plastic stakes.
7. Application Pressure Regulators: Brass or plastic housing, NPS 3/4 (DN 20), with corrosion-resistant internal parts; capable of controlling outlet pressure to approximately 20 psig (138 kPa).
8. Filter Units: Brass or plastic housing, with corrosion-resistant internal parts; of size and capacity required for devices downstream from unit.
9. Air Relief Valves: Brass or plastic housing, with corrosion-resistant internal parts.
10. Vacuum Relief Valves: Brass or plastic housing, with corrosion-resistant internal parts.

N. Controllers

1. Description:
  - a. Controller Stations for Automatic Control Valves: Each station is variable from approximately 5 to 60 minutes. Include switch for manual or automatic operation of each station.
  - b. Exterior Control Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 4, weatherproof, with locking cover and two matching keys; include provision for grounding.
    - 1) Body Material: Enameled-steel sheet metal **OR** Stainless-steel sheet metal **OR** Molded plastic, **as directed**.
    - 2) Mounting: Freestanding type for concrete base **OR** Surface type for wall, **as directed**.
  - c. Interior Control Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 12, dripproof, with locking cover and two matching keys.
    - 1) Body Material: Enameled-steel sheet metal **OR** Stainless-steel sheet metal **OR** Molded plastic, **as directed**.



- 2) Mounting: Freestanding type for concrete base **OR** Surface type for wall, **as directed**.
- d. Control Transformer: 24-V secondary, with primary fuse.
- e. Timing Device: Adjustable, 24-hour, 14-day clock, with automatic operations to skip operation any day in timer period, to operate every other day, or to operate two or more times daily.
  - 1) Manual or Semiautomatic Operation: Allows this mode without disturbing preset automatic operation.
  - 2) Nickel-Cadmium Battery and Trickle Charger: Automatically powers timing device during power outages.
  - 3) Surge Protection: Metal-oxide-varistor type on each station and primary power.
- f. Moisture Sensor: Adjustable from one to seven days, to shut off water flow during rain.
- g. Wiring: UL 493, Type UF multiconductor, with solid-copper conductors; insulated cable; suitable for direct burial.
  - 1) Feeder-Circuit Cables: No. 12 AWG minimum, between building and controllers.
  - 2) Low-Voltage, Branch-Circuit Cables: No. 14 AWG minimum, between controllers and automatic control valves; color-coded different from feeder-circuit-cable jacket color; with jackets of different colors for multiple-cable installation in same trench.
  - 3) Splicing Materials: Manufacturer's packaged kit consisting of insulating, spring-type connector or crimped joint and epoxy resin moisture seal; suitable for direct burial.
- h. Concrete Base: Reinforced precast concrete not less than 36 by 24 by 4 inches (900 by 600 by 100 mm) thick, and 6 inches (150 mm) greater in each direction than overall dimensions of controller. Include opening for wiring.

#### O. Boxes For Automatic Control Valves

1. Plastic Boxes:
  - a. Description: Box and cover, with open bottom and openings for piping; designed for installing flush with grade.
    - 1) Size: As required for valves and service.
    - 2) Shape: Round **OR** Square **OR** Rectangular, **as directed**.
    - 3) Sidewall Material: PE **OR** PE, ABS, or FRP, **as directed**.
    - 4) Cover Material: PE **OR** PE, ABS, or FRP, **as directed**.
      - a) Lettering: "VALVE BOX" **OR** "IRRIGATION," **as directed**.
2. Polymer-Concrete Boxes:
  - a. Description: Box and cover, with open bottom and openings for piping; designed for installing flush with grade.
    - 1) Size: As required for valves and service.
    - 2) Shape: Round **OR** Square **OR** Rectangular, **as directed**.
    - 3) Sidewall Material: Polymer concrete with lateral and vertical sidewall design loading of 5000 lb (2268 kg) **OR** 10,000 lb (4536 kg) **OR** 15,000 lb (6800 kg), **as directed**, minimum over 10 by 10 inches (254 by 254 mm) square.
    - 4) Cover Material: Polymer concrete **OR** Reinforced polymer concrete, **as directed**, with cover design loading of 5000 lb (2268 kg) **OR** 10,000 lb (4536 kg) **OR** 15,000 lb (6800 kg), **as directed**, minimum over 10 by 10 inches (254 by 254 mm) square.
      - a) Lettering: "VALVE BOX" **OR** "IRRIGATION," **as directed**.
3. Drainage Backfill: Cleaned gravel or crushed stone, graded from 3/4 inch (19 mm) minimum to 3 inches (75 mm) maximum.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Earthwork

1. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".
2. Install warning tape directly above pressure piping, 12 inches (300 mm) below finished grades, except 6 inches (150 mm) below subgrade under pavement and slabs.



3. Drain Pockets: Excavate to sizes indicated. Backfill with cleaned gravel or crushed stone, graded from 3/4 to 3 inches (19 to 75 mm), to 12 inches (300 mm) below grade. Cover gravel or crushed stone with sheet of asphalt-saturated felt and backfill remainder with excavated material.
4. Provide minimum cover over top of underground piping according to the following:
  - a. Irrigation Main Piping: Minimum depth of 36 inches (900 mm) below finished grade, or not less than 18 inches (450 mm) below average local frost depth, whichever is deeper.
  - b. Circuit Piping: 12 inches (300 mm).
  - c. Drain Piping: 12 inches (300 mm)
  - d. Sleeves: 24 inches (600 mm).

#### B. Piping Installation

1. Location and Arrangement: Drawings indicate location and arrangement of piping systems. Install piping as indicated unless deviations are approved on Coordination Drawings.
2. Install piping at minimum uniform slope of 0.5 percent down toward drain valves.
3. Install piping free of sags and bends.
4. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit valve servicing.
5. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
6. Install unions adjacent to valves and to final connections to other components with NPS 2 (DN 50) or smaller pipe connection.
7. Install flanges adjacent to valves and to final connections to other components with NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) or larger pipe connection.
8. Install underground thermoplastic piping according to ASTM D 2774 and ASTM F 690.
9. Install expansion loops in control-valve boxes for plastic piping.
10. Lay piping on solid subbase, uniformly sloped without humps or depressions.
11. Install ductile-iron piping according to AWWA C600.
12. Install PVC piping in dry weather when temperature is above 40 deg F (5 deg C). Allow joints to cure at least 24 hours at temperatures above 40 deg F (5 deg C) before testing.
13. Install water regulators with shutoff valve and strainer on inlet and pressure gage on outlet. Install shutoff valve on outlet. Install aboveground or in control-valve boxes.
14. Water Hammer Arresters: Install between connection to building main and circuit valves aboveground or in control-valve boxes.
15. Install piping in sleeves under parking lots, roadways, and sidewalks.
16. Install sleeves made of Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80, **as directed**, PVC pipe and socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
17. Install transition fittings for plastic-to-metal pipe connections according to the following:
  - a. Underground Piping:
    - 1) NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Plastic-to-metal transition fittings.
    - 2) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger: AWWA transition couplings.
  - b. Aboveground Piping:
    - 1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Plastic-to-metal transition fittings **OR** unions, **as directed**.
    - 2) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits with one plastic flange.
18. Install dielectric fittings for dissimilar-metal pipe connections according to the following:
  - a. Underground Piping:
    - 1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Dielectric coupling or dielectric nipple.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Prohibited except in control-valve box.
  - b. Aboveground Piping:
    - 1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Dielectric union.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Dielectric flange.
    - 3) NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Dielectric flange kit.
  - c. Piping in Control-Valve Boxes:
    - 1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Dielectric union.
    - 2) NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Dielectric flange.
    - 3) NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Dielectric flange kit.

#### C. Joint Construction



1. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
  2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
  3. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
    - a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
    - b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
  4. Flanged Joints: Select rubber gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
  5. Ductile-Iron Piping Gasketed Joints: Comply with AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
  6. Copper-Tubing Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal.
  7. Copper-Tubing Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813 water-flushable flux to tube end unless otherwise indicated. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy (0.20 percent maximum lead content) complying with ASTM B 32.
  8. PE Piping Fastener Joints: Join with insert fittings and bands or fasteners according to piping manufacturer's written instructions.
  9. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
    - a. Plain-End PE Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
    - b. Plain-End PE Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.
  10. PVC Piping Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
    - a. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
    - b. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number, ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
    - c. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
- D. Valve Installation
1. Underground Curb Valves: Install in curb-valve casings with tops flush with grade.
  2. Underground Iron Gate Valves, Resilient Seat: Comply with AWWA C600 and AWWA M44. Install in valve casing with top flush with grade.
    - a. Install valves and PVC pipe with restrained, gasketed joints.
  3. Aboveground Valves: Install as components of connected piping system.
  4. Pressure-Reducing Valves: Install in boxes for automatic control valves or aboveground between shutoff valves. Install full-size valved bypass, **as directed**.
  5. Throttling Valves: Install in underground piping in boxes for automatic control valves.
  6. Drain Valves: Install in underground piping in boxes for automatic control valves.
- E. Sprinkler Installation
1. Install sprinklers after hydrostatic test is completed.
  2. Install sprinklers at manufacturer's recommended heights.
  3. Locate part-circle sprinklers to maintain a minimum distance of 4 inches (100 mm) from walls and 2 inches (50 mm) from other boundaries unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Drip Irrigation Specialty Installation
1. Install freestanding emitters on pipe riser to mounting height indicated.
  2. Install manifold emitter systems with tubing to emitters. Plug unused manifold outlets. Install emitters on off-ground supports at height indicated.





3. Install multiple-outlet emitter systems with tubing to outlets. Plug unused emitter outlets. Install outlets on off-ground supports at height indicated.
  4. Install drip tubes with direct-attached emitters on ground.
  5. Install drip tubes with remote-discharge on ground with outlets on off-ground supports at height indicated.
  6. Install off-ground supports of length required for indicated mounted height of device.
  7. Install application pressure regulators and filter units in piping near device being protected, and aboveground **OR** in control-valve boxes, **as directed**.
  8. Install air relief valves and vacuum relief valves in piping, and aboveground **OR** in control-valve boxes, **as directed**.
- G. Automatic Irrigation-Control System Installation
1. Equipment Mounting: Install interior controllers on floor **OR** concrete bases **OR** wall, **as directed**.
    - a. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
    - b. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  2. Equipment Mounting: Install exterior freestanding controllers on precast concrete bases.
    - a. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
    - b. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  3. Install control cable in same trench as irrigation piping and at least 2 inches (51 mm) below or beside piping. Provide conductors of size not smaller than recommended by controller manufacturer. Install cable in separate sleeve under paved areas.
- H. Connections
1. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Division 22 Section "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for water supply from exterior water service piping, water meters, protective enclosures, and backflow preventers. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
  2. Install piping adjacent to equipment, valves, and devices to allow service and maintenance.
  3. Connect wiring between controllers and automatic control valves.
- I. Identification
1. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 Section "Identification For Plumbing Piping And Equipment".
  2. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplates and signs on each automatic controller.
    - a. Text: In addition to identifying unit, distinguish between multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations.
  3. Warning Tapes: Arrange for installation of continuous, underground, detectable warning tapes over underground piping during backfilling of trenches. See Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for warning tapes.
- J. Field Quality Control
1. Perform tests and inspections.
  2. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
    - b. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, operate controllers and automatic control valves to confirm proper system operation.
    - c. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  3. Any irrigation product will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  4. Prepare test and inspection reports.



- K. Adjusting
1. Adjust settings of controllers.
  2. Adjust automatic control valves to provide flow rate at rated operating pressure required for each sprinkler circuit.
  3. Adjust sprinklers and devices, except those intended to be mounted aboveground, so they will be flush with, or not more than 1/2 inch (13 mm) above, finish grade.
- L. Cleaning
1. Flush dirt and debris from piping before installing sprinklers and other devices.
- M. Piping Schedule
1. Install components having pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
  2. Piping in control-valve boxes and aboveground may be joined with flanges or unions instead of joints indicated.
  3. Aboveground irrigation main piping, NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller, shall be one of the following:
    - a. Galvanized-steel pipe and galvanized-steel pipe nipples; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
    - b. Type L (Type B) **OR** Type M (Type C), **as directed**, hard copper tube, wrought- or cast-copper fittings, and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
    - c. Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80, **as directed**, PVC pipe; socket-type PVC fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
    - d. Schedule 80, PVC pipe; Schedule 80, threaded PVC fittings; and threaded joints.
  4. Aboveground irrigation main piping, NPS 5 (DN 125) and larger, shall be one of the following:
    - a. Galvanized-steel pipe and galvanized-steel pipe nipples; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
    - b. Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80, **as directed**, PVC pipe and socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
    - c. Schedule 80, PVC pipe; Schedule 80, threaded PVC fittings; and threaded joints.
  5. Underground irrigation main piping, NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller, shall be one of the following:
    - a. NPS 3 and NPS 4 (DN 80 and DN 100) ductile-iron, mechanical-joint pipe; ductile-iron, mechanical-joint fittings, glands, bolts, and nuts; and gasketed joints.
    - b. NPS 3 and NPS 4 (DN 80 and DN 100) ductile-iron, push-on-joint pipe; ductile-iron, push-on-joint fittings and gaskets; and gasketed joints.
    - c. Type L (Type B) soft copper tube, wrought-copper fittings, and brazed joints.
    - d. NPS 4 (DN 100) PE pressure pipe; PE butt, heat-fusion or socket-type fittings; and heat-fusion joints.
    - e. Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80, **as directed**, PVC pipe and socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
    - f. Schedule 80, PVC pipe; Schedule 80, threaded PVC fittings; and threaded joints.
    - g. SDR 21, PVC, pressure-rated pipe; Schedule 80, PVC socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
  6. Underground irrigation main piping, NPS 5 (DN 125) and larger, shall be one of the following:
    - a. NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger ductile-iron, mechanical-joint pipe; ductile-iron, mechanical-joint fittings, glands, bolts, and nuts; and gasketed joints.
    - b. NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger ductile-iron, push-on-joint pipe; ductile-iron, push-on-joint fittings and gaskets; and gasketed joints.
    - c. PE pressure pipe; PE butt, heat-fusion fittings; and heat-fusion joints.
    - d. Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80, **as directed**, PVC pipe and socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
    - e. SDR 21, PVC, pressure-rated pipe; Schedule 80, PVC socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
  7. Circuit piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be one of the following:
    - a. SDR 7 **OR** SDR 9, **as directed**, PE, controlled ID pipe; insert fittings for PE pipe; and fastener joints.



- b. DR 9 **OR** DR 11, **as directed**, PE, controlled OD pipe; PE butt, heat-fusion, or PE socket-type fittings; and heat-fusion joints.
  - c. Schedule 40, PVC pipe and socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
  - d. SDR 26, PVC, pressure-rated pipe; Schedule 40, PVC socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
8. Circuit piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100), shall be one of the following:
- a. SIDR 7 **OR** SIDR 9, **as directed**, PE, controlled ID pipe; insert fittings for PE pipe; and banded or fastener joints.
  - b. DR 9 **OR** DR 11, **as directed**, PE, controlled OD pipe; PE socket or butt-fusion fittings; and heat-fusion joints. NPS 3 (DN 80) pipe and fittings if NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) pipe and fittings are not available.
  - c. Schedule 40, PVC pipe and socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
  - d. SDR 26, PVC, pressure-rated pipe; Schedule 40, PVC socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
9. Underground Branches and Offsets at Sprinklers and Devices: Schedule 80, PVC pipe; threaded PVC fittings; and threaded joints.
- a. Option: Plastic swing-joint assemblies, with offsets for flexible joints, manufactured for this application.
10. Risers to Aboveground Sprinklers and Specialties: Type L (Type B) **OR** Type M (Type C), **as directed**, hard copper tube, wrought-copper fittings, and brazed **OR** soldered, **as directed**, joints.
11. Risers to Aboveground Sprinklers and Specialties: Schedule 80, PVC pipe and socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
12. Drain piping shall be one of the following:
- a. SIDR 9, 11.5, or 15, PE, controlled ID pipe; insert fittings for PE pipe; and banded or fastener joints.
  - b. Schedule 40, PVC pipe and socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
  - c. SDR 21, 26, or 32.5, PVC, pressure-rated pipe; Schedule 40, PVC socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
- N. Valve Schedule
1. Underground, Shutoff-Duty Valves: Use the following:
    - a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Curb valve, curb-valve casing, and shutoff rod.
    - b. NPS 3 (DN 80) and Larger: Iron gate valve, resilient seated; iron gate valve casing; and operating wrench(es).
  2. Aboveground, Shutoff-Duty Valves:
    - a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Brass **OR** Bronze **OR** Plastic, **as directed**, ball valve.
    - b. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze gate valve.
    - c. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Iron ball valve.
    - d. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Iron gate valve, NRS **OR** OS&Y, **as directed**.
  3. Throttling-Duty Valves:
    - a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze **OR** Plastic, **as directed**, automatic control valve.
    - b. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Brass **OR** Bronze **OR** Plastic, **as directed**, ball valve.
    - c. NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3 (DN 65 and DN 80): Bronze **OR** Plastic, **as directed**, automatic control valve.
    - d. NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3 (DN 65 and DN 80): Iron ball valve.
  4. Drain Valves:
    - a. NPS 1/2 and NPS 3/4 (DN 15 and DN 20): Automatic drain valve.
    - b. NPS 1/2 and NPS 3/4 (DN 15 and DN 20): Brass **OR** Bronze **OR** Plastic, **as directed**, ball valve.
    - c. NPS 1/2 and NPS 3/4 (DN 15 and DN 20): Bronze gate valve.
    - d. NPS 1 to NPS 2 (DN 25 to DN 50): Brass **OR** Bronze **OR** Plastic, **as directed**, ball valve.
    - e. NPS 1 to NPS 2 (DN 25 to DN 50): Bronze gate valve.

END OF SECTION 32 84 13 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
32 84 13 00	32 84 00 00	Modified Bitumous Protected Membrane Roofing
32 84 23 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
32 84 23 00	32 84 13 00	Irrigation Systems
32 84 23 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
32 84 23 00	32 84 00 00	Modified Bitumous Protected Membrane Roofing
32 84 23 00	22 11 16 00	Common Work Results for Fire Suppression
32 84 23 00	22 11 16 00a	Common Work Results for Plumbing
32 84 23 00	22 11 16 00b	Common Work Results for HVAC



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 32 91 13 16 - TREE RELOCATION**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers labor, materials, necessary equipment and services to complete the tree relocation work. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.
2. Before tree excavation, pruning, removal, or relocation of existing trees, contractor shall notify:
  - a. the Owner of schedule of operation.
  - b. Appropriate utility companies and the Owner for flagging and coordination of service disconnection as necessary to complete work.
  - c. Coordinate work with other trades.

## B. Definitions

1. Toxic Substances: Do not deliver any toxic substance or item as defined by the state, to the site without furnishing to the Owner a Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS). Provide current MSDS information with each initial shipment.
  - a. The MSDS shall contain the following information:
    - 1) The chemical name and the common name of the toxic substance.
    - 2) The hazards or other risks in the use of the toxic substance, including:
      - a) The potential for fire, explosion, corrosivity and reactivity.
      - b) The known acute and chronic health effects of risks from exposure, including the medical conditions which are generally recognized as being aggravated by exposure to the toxic substance.
      - c) The primary routes of entry and symptoms of overexposure.
    - 3) The proper precautions, handling practices, necessary personal protective equipment, any other safety precautions in the use of or exposure to the toxic substance including appropriate emergency treatment in case of overexposure.
    - 4) The emergency procedure for spills, fire disposal, and first aid.
    - 5) A description in lay terms of the known specific potential health risks posed by the toxic substance intended to alert any person reading this information.
    - 6) The year and month, if available, that the information was compiled and the name, address, and emergency telephone number of the manufacturer responsible for preparing the information.

## C. Description

1. Protect existing trees to remain during construction phases. Provide tree protection barriers for those existing trees adjacent to tree transplantation operations. Any trees scarred or destroyed, designated to remain, will be replaced at the Contractor's expense, with similar species, size, and quality.
2. Remove other vegetation as necessary and as required to meet project requirements to accommodate new plantings. Prepare areas to be planted according to Division 32 Section "Plants".
3. Resulting tree pits of relocated material shall be backfilled with clean fill and brought back flush with surrounding grade, unless the pits are to be immediately replanted. Stabilize grade if required. Correct problems caused by erosion, wind, etc., in the reclaimed area. Pits to be quickly replanted shall be surrounded by safety barricades to prevent accidental falls into pits.
  - a. In areas where new plant material will replace relocated plant material, appropriate planting soil mix shall be used as backfill.

## D. Submittals



1. Submit a list of equipment, procedure, and labor force anticipated for use for tree relocation for approval by the Owner.
2. Submit a schedule by day indicating units to be dug and relocated. Note materials requiring root pruning, and that the relocation schedule is to begin at the end of the specified root pruning period.
3. Obtain permits required by authority having jurisdiction.
4. Submit written certification that trees indicated to remain have been protected during the course of construction according to recognized standards of the industry. Certify that where damage did occur:
  - a. Trees were promptly and properly treated.
  - b. Indicate which damaged trees (if any) are incapable of retaining full growth potential and are recommended to be replaced.
5. Submit for approval, proposed methods, and schedule for effecting tree and plant protection.

E. Quality Assurance

1. Unless otherwise specified, tree transplanting shall comply with NAA Ref.1.
2. Comply with NAA standards for pruning and remove branches from trees to remain to clear new construction.
3. Recommend procedures to compensate for loss of roots (if any) and perform initial pruning of branches and stimulation of root growth where removed to accommodate new construction.
4. Perform tree repair work for damage incurred by new construction.
5. Provide routine progress evaluation reports on relocated trees until the end of the maintenance period.
6. Evaluate existing trees and verify trees are free of disease and ready to survive relocation from the site to their new location on-site or off-site.

F. Delivery, Storage, and Handling

1. Properly handle trees and palms during moving so trunks will not be scarred or damaged and to avoid broken limbs. Broken limbs not causing the tree to be rejected shall be repaired as follows:
  - a. Properly prune dead, dying, or damaged branches with clean, sharp equipment.
  - b. Remove injured bark and wood of a tree would with a clean, sharp knife to a point where healthy bark and wood make contact at their margins.
  - c. Inspect and treat wound for insect and disease.
  - d. Seal wounds with bituminous base wound paint for all oak limbs greater than 3 inch diameter.
2. Transport trees on vehicles of adequate size to prevent overcrowding, broken limbs, foliage damage, or root ball damage.
3. Keep root balls moist during relocation.
4. Protect tree crowns with shade cloth to prevent desiccation and wind burn. Crowns shall be periodically sprayed with water to help ensure against desiccation.
5. Handle plant material only in ways and means accepted by the landscaping industry and accepted by the Owner.
6. Plant material shall be planted the same day it is dug. Coordinate preparation of planting pits or beds to ensure this schedule.

G. Warranty

1. Relocated plant material does not fall under the standard 12 month guarantee.
2. For relocated trees or palms that die, replace their canopy area with new trees as specified.
  - a. Canopy spread for all palms and trees shall be listed on proposal when submitted for relocation work.
  - b. Replacements (mitigation plantings) shall be provided at no additional cost to the Owner.
  - c. Submit the attached form to the Owner for review and approval.
  - d. Proposed replacement canopy tree species shall be the Owner accepted trees and palms.
3. Repair damage to other plants and lawn or construction work within the relocation area during tree transplantation at no cost to the Owner. This includes, but is not limited to, damage to curbs,





walks, roads, fences, site furnishings, etc. Replacing and replanting of damaged trees or shrubs shall be according to Division 32 Section "Plants" Replacing and replanting of damaged turf shall be according to Division 32 Section "Turf And Grasses".

H. Maintenance

1. Maintain relocated plant materials immediately after each item is planted and continued until the 90 day watering period is completed, upon which time the Owner will take over maintenance of materials following procedures and recommendations of contractor and specifications.
2. During the maintenance period, maintain relocated plant materials.

1.2 PRODUCT

A. Materials

1. Bone meal shall be readily available steamed bone meal, useable as a natural organic nitrogen fertilizer.
2. Peat moss, topsoil, planting soil, mulch, staking, and guying shall be as specified in Division 32 Section "Plants".

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Transplantation

1. Transplanting shall consist of on-site or off-site transplanting of existing trees or palms from proposed construction areas to permanent positions.
2. Digging, Wrapping, and Handling: Plants shall be dug and prepared for moving in a manner that will not cause damage to branches, shape, root system, and development.
3. Balled and Burlapped Plants:
  - a. Balls shall be firmly wrapped with burlap or accepted cloth substitute.
  - b. No balled plant will be acceptable if the ball is cracked and broken or if the stem or trunk is loose in the ball, either before or during transplanting.
  - c. Balled plants shall be lifted and handled from the bottom of the ball.
  - d. Protect ball and deliver to the site, plant immediately, and water thoroughly.
  - e. Ball sizes shall be as recommended in ANSI Z 60.1.

B. Planting

1. Relocated Material
  - a. Relocated trees/palms shall be planted according to procedures described for new material, Division 32 Section "Plants". Verify final grades have been established before planting operations. Ensure proposed planting pits drain by test-filling with water before transplantation.
  - b. Continue watering and caring for relocated material as specified.
  - c. Mulch tree pit areas to reduce weeds, discourage foot traffic, conserve moisture, and minimize temperature fluctuations.
  - d. Brace trunk and leave in place for approximately one year until trees are wind firm.
  - e. Wrap trunks and structural branches of thin-barked trees to protect against sun scald and dehydration. Retain through at least one growing season, and through cold season.
  - f. Feed with a diluted solution of N-P-K in solution form with a soil needle, providing water, air, and nutrients.
  - g. Where foliage is retarded, spray with one of the soluble types of foliage feeders.
  - h. At time of planting, fill air pockets and keep roots, especially feeder roots, moist, live, and healthy. Use soil needles for watering new transplants. Direct fine spray at foliage to help harden-off new leaves.

- C. Staking And Guying: Stake and guy designated material according to procedures described for new plant materials, Division 32 Section "Plants".



D. Watering

1. Following transplantation, water trees daily for the first two weeks, every other day for the next three weeks, and every third day for the balance of the three month watering/maintenance period. Such watering shall thoroughly saturate the root ball to its full depth.
2. Following relocation, trees designated for transplanting shall be watered as specified in this section. Such watering shall thoroughly saturate the root ball to its full depth.
3. Provide manual watering of relocated plant materials for 90 days. If used, after watering period, Contractor shall be responsible for the complete removal of all temporary watering systems.

E. Tagging: Trees within the designated areas for relocation shall be clearly marked by means of yellow plastic surveyor's ribbons and coordinated with, inspected, and accepted by the Owner before root pruning and digging.

F. Root Preparation

1. Trees to be relocated shall be root pruned at least 45 days before digging with clean, sharp equipment.
  - a. Maintain root pruned materials by watering, weeding, mowing, spraying, fertilizing, and other horticulture practices.
  - b. After root pruning, backfill with good rooting medium, fertilize with organic fertilizer to promote root growth.
  - c. Mulch to reduce weeds, discourage foot traffic, conserve moisture, and minimize temperature fluctuation.
2. Root Ball Size Chart: Root ball sizes shall be according to minimum standards set forth in Grades and Standards for Nursery Plants Part II, Palms and Trees, local state Department of Agriculture.
  - a. Trees-Minimum Ball Sizes:

Caliper	Minimum Ball Diameter
3-1/2" to 4"	28"
4" to 4-1/2"	30"
4-1/2" to 5"	32"
5" to 5-1/2"	34"
Larger sizes increase proportionally.	

b. Minimum Ball Depth:

Ball Diameter	Depth
Less than 20"	Not less than 75 percent of diameter.
20" to 30"	Not less than 65 percent of diameter.
30" to 48"	Not less than 60 percent of diameter.

G. Crown Preparation

1. Shade and Flowering Trees
  - a. Shade Trees: Selectively prune and thin crown to remove approximately one third of the branches. Preserve the basic shape and form of the tree, eliminate cross-branching and dead or diseased branches.
  - b. Hand strip selected species of all leaves following pruning and before moving.
2. Palms: Follow standard procedure for transplantation of palms.

H. Hand Digging: Burlapping is required. Trees that are burlapped for relocation shall comply and be handled in same manner as new plant material specified in Section "Exterior Plants."



- I. Special Conditions
  - 1. Multi-Trunk Trees: Relocate multi-trunk tree as one unit. Measure unit by taking the aggregate total of all DBH measurements.
  - 2. Multi-Trunk Palms: Relocate multi-trunk palms as one unit. Unit shall be measured as follows:
    - a. 50 percent of the value in dollars of the largest trunk in the grouping times the number of trunks in the clump.
  - 3. On-site relocation
    - a. On-site relocation shall include root pruning, canopy pruning, on-site transportation, hauling and dumping of debris, and 90-day maintenance.
    - b. If the tree or palm should die within the 90-day maintenance period, remove the tree, replace the material, and restore the site at no additional cost to the Owner.
  
- J. Cleaning
  - 1. Cleaning up the Site
    - a. Upon completion of the work, thoroughly clean up the project site.
    - b. In addition to removing equipment, unused materials, deleterious material, and surplus excavated material, the Contractor shall fine grade all disturbed areas and the areas adjacent to the transplanted material to provide a neat and uniform site.
    - c. All damaged or altered existing structures, as a result of the landscape work, shall be corrected.

END OF SECTION 32 91 13 16



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
32 91 13 26	32 91 13 16	Tree Relocation
32 91 13 33	31 13 16 00	Tree Protection And Trimming
32 91 13 33	31 01 20 00	Earthwork
32 91 13 33	31 23 16 26	Embankment
32 91 13 33	32 18 23 13	Lawns And Grasses
32 91 13 36	32 91 13 16	Tree Relocation
32 91 13 36	32 18 23 13	Lawns And Grasses



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



**SECTION 32 91 19 13 - CONCRETE REVETMENT**

**1.1 GENERAL**

**A. Description Of Work**

- 1. This specification covers installation of a concrete revetment. Work includes but is not limited to furnishing all labor, materials, equipment and supervision necessary to construct concrete revetment as follows or as directed by the Owner.

**1.2 PRODUCTS**

A. The Concrete Revetment shall be an articulating cellular concrete block system, as manufactured by American Excelsior Company, or approved equal, (800-713-8245), is a block structure installed over a geotextile fabric as described herein. The cellular blocks are made of Portland Cement Concrete cast into "lock" blocks and "key" blocks to provide a three directional interlock to resist lateral movement. The articulating cellular concrete block system is a "flexible" concrete revetment which allows the blocks to traverse changes in terrain without disruption of the placement pattern and interlock feature.

- 1. The minimum concrete strength shall be 3,000 psi. Nominal block thickness shall be either 4 inches, 6 inches or 8 inches, as required to meet project requirements. Block weights, per pair of "key" and "lock" blocks, shall be approximately 50, 70 and 90 pounds for #4010-4 inch, #4015-6 inch and #4020-8 inch thick blocks, respectively. Each pair of "key" and "lock" blocks shall cover approximately 1.54 square feet, including uncovered openings between the blocks. The system shall provide approximately 80 percent coverage of the area with blocks, leaving approximately 20 percent, but not less than 16 percent, uncovered area at the ground surface.

B. Filter fabric shall be Tri-Lock Fabric #792 as supplied by American Excelsior Company, or approved equal, (800) 713-8245; roll values:

<u>Property</u>	<u>Specification</u>	<u>Test Method</u>
Weight	7.4 oz/sy	ASTM D3776
Thickness	25 mils	ASTM D1777
Permeability	0.5 cm/sec	ASTM D4491
Abrasion Resistance	Warp: 58 percent	ASTM N3884
(% strength retained)	Fill: 81 percent	
Tensile Grab Strength	350 lbs. x 395 lbs	ASTM D4632
Grab Elongation	24% x 24%	ASTM D4632
Burst Strength	780 psi	ASTM D3786
Trapezoid Tear	120 lbs x 110 lbs.	ASTM D4533
Puncture Strength	165 lbs.	ASTM D4833
Apparent Opening Size	40-70	ASTM D-4751
UV Resistance @ 500 hours	90 percent	ASTM D-4355

C. Tri-Lock block size selection shall be determined from documented hydraulic characteristics, derived from test procedures outlined in: "Hydraulic Stability of Articulating Concrete block Revetment Systems During Overtopping Flow." Report No. FHWA-RD-89-199, and "Minimizing Embankment Damage During Overtopping Flow." Report No. FHWA-RD-88-181.

D. Backfill: Topsoil and seeding shall be as per Division 31 Section(s) "Earth Moving" AND Division 32 Section(s) "Turf And Grasses".

**1.3 EXECUTION**



- 
- A. Excavation shall be made so that the placement of the geotextile and concrete blocks shall be in conformity with the lines and grades shown on the plans or as required to meet project requirements. The area for placement shall be free from obstructions such as tree roots, projecting stones or other foreign matter and graded smooth. Voids or soft areas shall be filled with suitable materials and compacted to non-movement. Place the geotextile on the prepared subgrade. Lock the edges into a key trench as required to meet project requirements. The concrete blocks shall be assembled overlaying a geotextile in a manner that allows maximum flexibility but discourages vertical movement of any single component. Fill open areas of the blocks with concrete at the interface to concrete structure. After placement, the open areas of the block system shall be backfilled with topsoil to the top of the blocks. The backfilling shall be completed within 14 days of placement of the geotextile.

END OF SECTION 32 91 19 13





## SECTION 32 91 19 13a - SEPTIC TANK SYSTEMS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for septic tank systems. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Septic tanks.
  - b. Distribution boxes.
  - c. Pipe and fittings.
  - d. Absorption systems

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
  - a. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components, and profiles.
  - b. Include manhole openings, covers, and pipe connections.
2. Shop Drawings: For [trench absorption systems] [bed absorption systems].
  - a. Include manhole openings, covers, pipe connections, and accessories.
  - b. Include piping with sizes and invert elevations.
  - c. Include underground structures.
  - d. Include other utilities.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Septic Tanks

1. Precast Concrete Septic Tanks: ASTM C 1227, single-chamber **OR** two-chamber, **as directed**, precast, reinforced-concrete tank with internal baffle, **as directed**, and covers.
  - a. Design: For A-8 (H10-44) **OR** A-12 (HS15-44) **OR** A-16 (HS20-44), **as directed**, traffic loading according to ASTM C 890.
  - b. Manholes: 20-inch- (508-mm-) **OR** 22-inch- (559-mm-) **OR** 24-inch- (610-mm-), **as directed**, minimum diameter opening with reinforced-concrete risers to grade and access lid with steel lift rings. Include manhole in center of each septic tank compartment top.
  - c. Filter Access: Reinforced-concrete access hole, large enough to remove filter, over filter position.
  - d. Inlet and Outlet Access: 12-inch- (300-mm-) minimum diameter, reinforced-concrete access lids with steel lift rings. Include access centered over inlet and outlet.
  - e. Resilient Connectors: ASTM C 923 (ASTM C 923M), of size required for piping, fitted into inlet and outlet openings.
2. Fiberglass Septic Tanks: UL 1316, single-chamber, FRP construction; fabricated for septic tank application with at least one access riser and manhole.
  - a. Manholes: 22-inch- (559-mm-) **OR** 24-inch- (610-mm-), **as directed**, minimum diameter opening with FRP access risers to grade and cover.
  - b. Filter Access: Include access hole, large enough to remove filter, over filter position.
  - c. Resilient Connectors: ASTM C 923 (ASTM C 923M) or other watertight seal, of size required for piping, fitted into inlet and outlet openings.
3. Polyethylene Septic Tanks: Single-chamber, molded, HDPE or PE construction; fabricated for septic tank application, with baffle, **as directed**, and at least one access riser and manhole.



4. Polyethylene Septic Tanks: Two-chamber, molded, HDPE or PE construction; fabricated for septic tank application, with access risers and manholes.
    - a. Manholes: 18-inch- (457-mm-) **OR** 20-inch- (508-mm-) **OR** 22-inch- (559-mm-), **as directed**, minimum diameter opening with HDPE or PE access risers to grade and cover.
    - b. Filter Access: Include access hole, large enough to remove filter, over filter position.
    - c. Resilient Connectors: ASTM C 923 (ASTM C 923M) or other watertight seal, of size required for piping, fitted into inlet and outlet openings.
- B. Filters
1. Description: Removable, septic-tank-outlet filter that restricts discharge solids to 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).
    - a. Housing: HDPE or PVC.
    - b. Outlet Size: NPS 4 (DN 100) **OR** NPS 6 (DN 150), **as directed**.
- C. Dosing Tanks
1. Dosing Tanks: Comply with ASTM C 913 for precast, reinforced-concrete tank and cover; designed for structural loading according to ASTM C 890.
    - a. Design: For effluent pump, **OR** automatic siphon, **as directed**, installation and A-8 (H10-44) **OR** A-12 (HS15-44) **OR** A-16 (HS20-44), **as directed**, traffic loading according to ASTM C 890.
    - b. Manholes: 20-inch- (508-mm-) **OR** 22-inch- (559-mm-) **OR** 24-inch- (610-mm-), **as directed**, minimum diameter opening with reinforced-concrete risers to grade and access lid with steel lift rings. Include manhole in center of each septic tank compartment top.
    - c. Resilient Connectors: ASTM C 923 (ASTM C 923M), of size required for piping, fitted into inlet and outlet openings.
- D. Automatic Siphons
1. Description: Manufactured siphon assembly of molded-HDPE trap, pipe, and bell, with PVC vent piping and stainless-steel bolts.
- E. Distribution Boxes
1. Description: Precast concrete, single-chamber box and cover.
    - a. Design: Made according to ASTM C 913, and for A-8 (H10-44) **OR** A-12 (HS15-44) **OR** A-16 (HS20-44), **as directed**, traffic loading according to ASTM C 890. Include baffle opposite inlet.
    - b. Manholes: 20-inch- (508-mm-) **OR** 22-inch- (559-mm-) **OR** 24-inch- (610-mm-), **as directed**, minimum diameter opening with reinforced-concrete risers to grade and cover with steel lift rings in center of distribution box cover.
    - c. Pipe Connections: ASTM C 923 (ASTM C 923M) resilient connectors, of size required for piping, fitted into inlet and outlet openings. Include watertight plugs in outlets not required.
  2. Description: Molded-HDPE or -PE, single-chamber box and cover.
    - a. Manholes: 18-inch- (457-mm-) **OR** 20-inch- (508-mm-) **OR** 22-inch- (559-mm-), **as directed**, minimum diameter opening with HDPE or PE access risers to grade and cover. Access for PE distribution boxes may be a removable plastic cover and is usually small. **OR** Manufacturer's standard cover or other access opening of size that permits access to distribution-box inlet and outlets.
    - b. Pipe Connections: With seal that prevents leakage. Include watertight plugs in outlets not required.
- F. Leaching Pipes And Fittings
1. Pipe: PE, complying with ASTM F 810, perforated.
    - a. Fittings: ASTM D 2729 PVC for loose joints; ASTM D 3034, PVC for gasketed joints; or ASTM D 2751, ABS for gasketed joints.



2. Tube and Fittings: PE, complying with ASTM F 405, perforated corrugated tube with solid-wall fittings.
    - a. Couplings: PE band, matching tube and fitting dimensions.
  3. Pipe and Fittings: PVC, complying with ASTM D 2729, perforated, for solvent-cement joints.
    - a. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656
  4. Drainage Tile: Clay drain tile, complying with ASTM C 4, Standard class, drain tile with regular and smooth ends, for open joints.
- G. Nonpressure-Type Pipe Couplings
1. Description: Comply with ASTM C 1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, for joining underground nonpressure piping. Include ends of same sizes as piping to be joined and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
    - a. Sleeve Materials:
      - 1) For Concrete Pipes: ASTM C 443 (ASTM C 443M), rubber.
      - 2) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
      - 3) For Vitrified-Clay Pipes: ASTM C 425, rubber.
      - 4) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
- H. Leaching Chambers
1. Description: Arched, molded-PE structures with solid top, perforated sides, open ends, and open bottom.
    - a. End Pieces: Solid and solid with pipe opening types.
    - b. Effluent Distribution Piping: PE or PVC pipe, with holes or slots along pipe, attached to underside of top of chambers.
- I. Trench **OR** Bed, **as directed**, Absorption-System Materials
1. Filtering Material: ASTM D 448, Size No. 24, 3/4 to 2-1/2 inches (19 to 63 mm), washed, crushed stone or gravel; or broken, hard-burned clay brick.
  2. Filter Mat: Geotextile woven or spun filter fabric, in 1 or more layers, for minimum total unit weight of 3 oz./sq. yd. (101 g/sq. m) **OR** Untreated building paper or similar porous material, **as directed**.
  3. Cover for Distribution Pipe: Geotextile woven filter fabric, in 1 or more layers, for minimum total unit weight of 3 oz./sq. yd. (101 g/sq. m).
  4. Fill Material: Soil removed from trench.
- J. Mound Absorption-System Materials
1. Sand Filtering Material: 25 percent or more of very coarse, coarse, or medium sand or combination; maximum of 50 percent fine or very fine sand or combination; and silt and clay combination not to exceed 25 percent. If clay exceeds 60 percent in combination with silt, mixture cannot exceed 15 percent of sand filtering material.
  2. Aggregate Filtering Material: Coarse, 1/2 to 2-1/2 inches (13 to 63 mm).
  3. Cap: Clay, silt, or combination of clay and silt.
  4. Topsoil: Good quality, free of stones, metal, and glass.
  5. Vegetation Cover: Grass compatible with adjacent ground cover. No shrubs or trees.
  6. Filter Mat: Geotextile woven or spun filter fabric, in 1 or more layers, for minimum total unit weight of 3 oz./sq. yd. (101 g/sq. m) **OR** Untreated building paper or similar porous material, **as directed**.
  7. Cover for Distribution Pipe: Geotextile woven filter fabric, in 1 or more layers, for minimum total unit weight of 3 oz./sq. yd. (101 g/sq. m).
- K. Chamber Absorption-System Materials
1. Chamber: Arched, molded-PE structures with solid top, perforated sides, open ends, and open bottom.
  2. End Pieces: Blank without opening for distribution pipe at end of last chamber in row, and with opening for distribution pipe where pipe penetrates chamber.



3. Retain first paragraph below to run piping through chambers to improve distribution.
4. Effluent Distribution Piping: PE or PVC pipe, with holes or slots along pipe, attached to underside of top of chambers.

L. Seepage Pit Absorption-System Materials

1. Constructed-in-Place-Type Seepage Pit: Include the following materials.
  - a. Pit Lining: ASTM C 62, Type SW, clay bricks; ASTM C 55, concrete bricks; ASTM C 90, hollow, concrete masonry units; or precast concrete rings with notches or weep holes.
  - b. Filtering Material: ASTM D 448, Size No. 24, 3/4 to 2-1/2 inches (19 to 63 mm), washed, crushed stone or gravel; or broken, hard-burned clay brick.
  - c. Cover: Precast concrete slab; designed for A-8 (H10-44) **OR** A-12 (HS15-44) **OR** A-16 (HS20-44), **as directed**, traffic loading according to ASTM C 890 and made according to ASTM C 913. Include slab dimensions that will extend minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) beyond edge of excavation. Cast cover with opening for manhole in center.
  - d. Manholes: 20-inch- (508-mm-) **OR** 22-inch- (559-mm-) **OR** 24-inch- (610-mm-), **as directed**, minimum diameter opening with reinforced-concrete risers to grade and access lid with steel lift rings.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Earthwork

1. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling for piping and seepage pits are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".
  - a. Stockpile topsoil for reuse in finish grading without intermixing with other excavated material. Stockpile materials away from edge of excavation and do not store within drip line of remaining trees.
  - b. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
2. Excavating and Backfilling for Septic and Dosing Tanks:
  - a. Excavate sufficient width and length for tanks to depth determined by tank inlet elevation. Provide level bottom.
  - b. Backfill with excavated soil, mounding soil above original grade without compacting.
3. Excavating and Backfilling for Trench **OR** Bed, **as directed**, Absorption Fields:
  - a. Excavate for trench absorption fields 30 inches (760 mm) wide and 24 inches (600 mm) deep, minimum.
  - b. Backfill trench absorption fields with excavated soil, mounding soil above original grade without compacting.
  - c. Excavate for bed absorption fields of width indicated and 24 inches (600 mm) deep, minimum.
  - d. Backfill bed absorption fields with excavated soil, mounding soil above original grade without compacting.

B. Excavating and Backfilling for Chamber Absorption Systems:

1. Excavate for trench-type chamber absorption systems **30 inches (762 mm)** wide and **24 inches (610 mm)** deep, minimum.
2. Excavate for bed-type chamber absorption systems of width indicated and **24 inches (610 mm)** deep, minimum.
3. Backfill chamber absorption systems with excavated soil, mounding soil above original grade without compacting.

C. Excavating and Backfilling for Seepage-Pit Absorption Systems:

1. Excavate sufficient hole diameter for pits to depth determined by tank inlet and bottom elevations. Provide level bottom.
2. Backfill with excavated soil, mounding soil above original grade without compacting.



- D. Septic Tank Installation
1. Install precast concrete septic tanks level according to ASTM C 891.
  2. Install septic tanks level.
  3. Connect septic tank to concrete ballast pad.
  4. Install filter in septic tank outlet. Secure filter to septic tank wall. Make direct connections to distribution piping.
  5. Install insulation on exterior sides and top of septic tank.
  6. Fill septic tank with water.
- E. Dosing Tank Installation
1. Install dosing tanks level and according to ASTM C 891.
  2. Install automatic siphons embedded in precast concrete dosing tank. Make direct connections to distribution piping.
  3. Set submersible effluent pumps on dosing tank floor. Make direct connections to distribution piping.
  4. Fill dosing tanks with water.
- F. Distribution Box Installation
1. Install precast concrete distribution boxes according to ASTM C 891 and at invert elevations indicated. Set level and plumb.
  2. Install PE distribution boxes at invert elevations indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions. Set level and plumb.
- G. Piping Installation
1. Install leaching piping according to the following:
    - a. Use perforated pipe and fittings for trench **OR** bed **OR** mound, **as directed**, absorption fields with perforations at bottom.
    - b. PE Tube and Fittings: ASTM F 481.
    - c. PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM F 481.
- H. Pipe Joint Construction
1. Basic piping joint construction is specified in Division 33 Section "Common Work Results For Utilities". Where specific joint construction is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Join distribution piping with or according to the following:
    - a. Install leaching pipe and fittings for trench **OR** bed **OR** mound, as directed, absorption fields with closed joints, unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. PE Tube and Fittings: With PE band couplings.
    - c. PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings: With solvent-cemented joints according to ASTM F 402 and ASTM D 2321.
  3. Join dissimilar pipe materials according to ASTM D 5926, with couplings and gaskets compatible with pipe materials being joined.
- I. Cleanout Installation
1. Install cleanouts according to the following:
    - a. Inlet and Outlet of Septic Tanks: Cast-iron cleanouts.
    - b. Inlet and Outlet of Dosing Tanks: Cast-iron cleanouts.
    - c. Inlet and Outlet of Distribution Boxes: Cast-iron **OR** PVC cleanouts.
    - d. At Each Change in Direction of Sewer Piping: Cast-iron **OR** PVC cleanouts.
    - e. At Ends of Each Row and at Each Change in Direction of Distribution Piping: Cast-iron **OR** PVC cleanouts.
  2. Cast-Iron Cleanouts: Install with PVC fitting riser from distribution and leaching piping to cast-iron cleanout housing at grade. Use NPS 4 (DN 100) PVC sewer pipe and fittings with solvent-cemented joints for risers. Attach riser to cleanout housing with rubber gasket or coupling.



3. PVC Cleanouts: Install with PVC riser from distribution and leaching piping to PVC cleanout at grade. Use NPS 4 (DN 100) PVC sewer pipe and fittings with solvent-cemented joints for risers and cleanout fitting.
4. Cleanout Support: Set cleanouts in concrete blocks 18 by 18 by 12 inches (457 by 457 by 305 mm) deep, unless location is in concrete pavement. Formwork, reinforcement, and concrete are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
5. Set top of cleanout 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**, above surrounding rough grade, or set flush with grade if installed in pavement.

J. Trench **OR** Bed **OR** Absorption-Field, **as directed**, Installation

1. Filtering Material: Place supporting layer of filtering material over the compacted trench **OR** bed, **as directed**, base to a compacted depth not less than 6 inches (150 mm) below bottom of pipe.
2. Refer to Part 1.3 "Piping Installation" and "Pipe Joint Construction" articles for specific piping material installation.
3. Install distribution piping at minimum slope of 1 percent and maximum slope of 2 percent.
4. Install leaching piping solidly bedded in filtering material, with full bearing for each pipe section throughout its length. Maintain pipe alignment with no slope.
  - a. Install perforated pipe with perforations down and joints tightly closed. Install collars and couplings as required.
  - b. Install open-joint pipe with 1/2-inch (13-mm) space, maximum, between ends, unless otherwise indicated. Cover top two-thirds of joint opening with joint cover, and tie with corrosion-resistant wire. Commercial joint-cover assemblies may be provided.
  - c. Install elbow fittings with tight joints.
  - d. Place additional filtering material around sides to a minimum compacted depth of 8 inches (200 mm) above the top of leaching piping.
5. Install filter mat over filter material before backfilling.
6. Install leaching chambers with no slope in bottom of trench **OR** bed, **as directed**.
  - a. Install leaching chamber distribution piping with tight joints throughout chambers.
7. Backfill according to Part 1.3 "Earthwork" Article.

K. Mound Absorption-Field Installation

1. Plow top 6 inches (150 mm) of surface.
2. Place layers of sand, aggregate, **as directed**, cap, and topsoil above plowed area. Provide grass topping to match adjacent vegetation. Provide side slope not steeper than 3:1. Tie slope toe smoothly into existing grade.
3. Refer to Part 1.3 "Piping Installation" and "Pipe Joint Construction" articles for specific piping material installation.
4. Provide solid vent pipe with vent cap extending 12 inches (300 mm) above top of mounds.
5. Install distribution piping with no slope for pressurized effluent system.
6. Install distribution piping at a minimum slope of 1 percent and a maximum slope of 2 percent for gravity effluent system.
7. Install leaching piping solidly bedded in filtering material, with full bearing for each pipe section throughout its length. Maintain pipe alignment with no slope.
  - a. Install perforated pipe with perforations down and joints tightly closed. Install collars and couplings as required.
  - b. Install open-joint pipe with 1/2-inch (13-mm) space, maximum, between ends, unless otherwise indicated. Cover top two-thirds of joint opening with joint cover, and tie with corrosion-resistant wire. Commercial joint-cover assemblies may be provided.
  - c. Install elbow fittings with tight joints.
8. Install leaching chambers with no slope above plowed area.
  - a. Install leaching chamber distribution piping with tight joints throughout chambers.
9. Provide adequate grading around mound absorption field to prevent storm runoff from washing away a portion of mound absorption field and to prevent exposing pipes.

L. Seepage Pit Installation



1. Excavate hole to minimum diameter of 6 inches (150 mm) greater than outside of pit lining.
2. Do not extend pit depth into ground-water table.
3. Install constructed-in-place seepage pits according to the following procedure if no requirements of authorities having jurisdiction apply:
  - a. Install brick pit lining material dry and laid flat with staggered joints for seepage.
  - b. Install block pit lining material dry with staggered joints and a minimum of 20 percent of blocks on side for seepage. Install precast concrete rings with notches or weep holes for seepage.
  - c. Extend pit lining material so top of manhole will be approximately 8 inches (200 mm) below finished grade.
  - d. Backfill bottom of inside of pit with filtering material at least 12 inches (300 mm) above bottom of lining material.
  - e. Extend effluent inlet pipe 12 inches (300 mm) into seepage pit and terminate into side of tee fitting.
  - f. Backfill around outside of pit lining with filtering material to top of lining.
  - g. Install manhole risers from top of pit to grade. Support cover on undisturbed soil. Do not support cover on pit lining.

M. Identification

1. Identification materials and their installation are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving". Arrange for installation of green warning tape directly over piping (including absorption-field piping), at outside edges of underground structures, and at outside edges of absorption fields.
2. Use detectable warning tape over piping, over edges of underground structures, and over edges of absorption fields.

N. Field Quality Control

1. System Tests: Perform testing of completed septic tank system piping and structures according to authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Additional Tests: Fill underground structures with water and let stand overnight. If water level recedes, locate and repair leaks and retest. Repeat tests and repairs until no leaks exist.

O. Cleaning

1. Clear interior of piping and structures of dirt and other superfluous material as work progresses.
2. Maintain swab or drag in piping, and pull past each joint as it is completed. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted pipe at end of workday or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 32 91 19 13a



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
32 91 19 13	02 41 13 13a	Portland Cement Concrete Removal
32 91 19 13	31 11 00 00	Site Clearing
32 91 19 13	31 13 16 00	Tree Protection And Trimming
32 91 19 13	31 01 20 00	Earthwork
32 91 19 13	31 23 16 26	Embankment
32 91 19 13	32 18 23 13	Lawns And Grasses
32 91 19 16	02 41 13 13a	Portland Cement Concrete Removal
32 91 19 16	31 11 00 00	Site Clearing
32 91 19 16	31 13 16 00	Tree Protection And Trimming
32 91 19 16	31 01 20 00	Earthwork
32 91 19 16	31 23 16 26	Embankment
32 91 19 16	32 91 19 13	Concrete Retevment
32 91 19 16	32 91 19 13a	Septic Tank Systems
32 91 19 16	32 18 23 13	Lawns And Grasses
32 92 16 00	32 18 23 13	Lawns And Grasses
32 92 19 13	32 18 23 13	Lawns And Grasses
32 92 19 19	32 18 23 13	Lawns And Grasses
32 92 23 00	32 18 23 13	Lawns And Grasses
32 93 13 00	32 14 09 00	Exterior Plants
32 93 23 00	32 14 09 00	Exterior Plants
32 93 33 00	31 11 00 00	Site Clearing
32 93 33 00	32 14 09 00	Exterior Plants
32 93 43 00	32 14 09 00	Exterior Plants
32 93 53 00	31 13 16 00	Tree Protection And Trimming
32 93 53 00	32 91 13 16	Tree Relocation
32 93 53 00	32 14 09 00	Exterior Plants
32 94 13 00	32 14 09 00	Exterior Plants
32 94 16 00	32 14 09 00	Exterior Plants
32 94 23 00	31 13 16 00	Tree Protection And Trimming



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 32 94 43 00 - SITE FURNISHINGS**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for site furnishings. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Seating.
  - b. Tables.
  - c. Bicycle racks.
  - d. Bicycle lockers.
  - e. Trash receptacles.
  - f. Ash receptacles.
  - g. Planters.
  - h. Bollards.

## C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required.
3. Product Schedule: For site furnishings. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
4. Material Certificates: For site furnishings, signed by manufacturers.
  - a. Wood Preservative Treatment: Include certification by treating plant stating type of preservative solution and pressure process used, net amount of preservative retained, and compliance with applicable standards.
  - b. Sustainably Harvested Wood: Include certification by manufacturer and from sources that participate in sustained yield programs.
  - c. Recycled plastic.
5. Maintenance Data: For site furnishings to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

## A. Materials

1. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated; free of surface blemishes and complying with the following:
  - a. Rolled or Cold-Finished Bars, Rods, and Wire: ASTM B 211 (ASTM B 211M).
  - b. Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M).
  - c. Structural Pipe and Tube: ASTM B 429.
  - d. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M).
  - e. Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M.
2. Steel and Iron: Free of surface blemishes and complying with the following:
  - a. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
  - b. Steel Pipe: Standard-weight steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53, or electric-resistance-welded pipe complying with ASTM A 135.
  - c. Tubing: Cold-formed steel tubing complying with ASTM A 500.
  - d. Mechanical Tubing: Cold-rolled, electric-resistance-welded carbon or alloy steel tubing complying with ASTM A 513, or steel tubing fabricated from steel complying with ASTM A 1011/A 1011M and complying with dimensional tolerances in ASTM A 500; zinc coated internally and externally.



- e. Sheet: Commercial steel sheet complying with ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.
- f. Perforated Metal: From steel sheet not less than 0.0747-inch (1.9-mm) **OR** 0.0897-inch (2.3-mm) **OR** 0.1196-inch (3.0-mm), **as directed**, nominal thickness; manufacturer's standard perforation pattern.
- g. Expanded Metal: Carbon-steel sheets, deburred after expansion, and complying with ASTM F 1267.
- h. Malleable-Iron Castings: ASTM A 47/A 47M, grade as recommended by fabricator for type of use intended.
- i. Gray-Iron Castings: ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 200.
- 3. Stainless Steel: Free of surface blemishes and complying with the following:
  - a. Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bars: ASTM A 666.
  - b. Pipe: Schedule 40 steel pipe complying with ASTM A 312/A 312M.
  - c. Tubing: ASTM A 554.
- 4. Wood: Surfaced smooth on four sides with eased edges; kiln dried, free of knots, solid stock of species indicated.
  - a. Wood Species: Manufacturer's standard.
    - 1) Douglas Fir: Clear Grade, vertical grain.
    - 2) Pine: Southern pine; No. 2 or better; preservative treated, kiln dried after treatment.
    - 3) Eastern White **OR** Red **OR** Yellow **OR** Cedar, **as directed**: Select Grade or better.
    - 4) Redwood: Clear all heart **OR** Construction heart or better, **as directed**, free-of-heart center.
    - 5) Teak (Tectona Grandis): Clear Grade. Provide wood obtained from sources that participate in a well-managed forest and chain-of-custody program certified by an independent agency accredited by FSC.
    - 6) Finish: Manufacturer's standard stain and transparent sealer **OR** transparent wood preservative treatment and sealer, **as directed**.
- 5. Fiberglass: Multiple laminations of glass-fiber-reinforced polyester resin with UV-light stable, colorfast, nonfading, weather- and stain-resistant, colored polyester gel coat, and manufacturer's standard finish.
- 6. Plastic: Color impregnated, color and UV-light stabilized, and mold resistant.
  - a. Polyethylene: Fabricated from virgin plastic HDPE resin.
  - b. Recycled Polyethylene: Fabricated from not less than 96 percent recycled, purified, fractional-melt plastic resin with not less than 90 percent recycled postconsumer waste by weight HDPE.
- 7. Anchors, Fasteners, Fittings, and Hardware: Stainless steel **OR** Brass **OR** Galvanized steel **OR** Zinc-plated steel **OR** Manufacturer's standard, corrosion-resistant-coated or noncorrodible materials, **as directed**; commercial quality, tamperproof, vandal and theft resistant **OR** concealed, recessed, and capped or plugged, **as directed**.
  - a. Angle Anchors: For inconspicuously bolting legs of site furnishings to on **OR** below, **as directed** -grade substrate; one per leg **OR** extent as indicated, **as directed**.
  - b. Antitheft Hold-Down Brackets: For securing site furnishings to substrate; two per unit **OR** extent as indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
- 8. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Premixed, factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107; recommended in writing by manufacturer, for exterior applications.
- 9. Erosion-Resistant Anchoring Cement: Factory-packaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic-controlled expansion cement formulation for mixing with potable water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching, and grouting compound; resistant to erosion from water exposure without needing protection by a sealer or waterproof coating; recommended in writing by manufacturer, for exterior applications.
- 10. Galvanizing: Where indicated for steel and iron components, provide the following protective zinc coating applied to components after fabrication:
  - a. Zinc-Coated Tubing: External, zinc with organic overcoat, consisting of a minimum of 0.9 oz./sq. ft. (0.27 kg/sq. m) of zinc after welding, a chromate conversion coating, and a clear,



- polymer film. Internal, same as external or consisting of 81 percent zinc pigmented coating, not less than 0.3 mil (0.0076 mm) thick.
- b. Hot-Dip Galvanizing: According to ASTM A 123/A 123M, ASTM A 153/A 153M, or ASTM A 924/A 924M.
- B. Seating And Tables
1. Frame: Cast aluminum **OR** Cast iron **OR** Steel **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Wrought iron **OR** Cedar **OR** Teak, **as directed**.
  2. Seat **OR** Seat and Back, **as directed**:
    - a. Material:
      - 1) Aluminum Sheet: Perforated **OR** Expanded, **as directed**, metal.
      - 2) Steel **OR** Painted Steel, **as directed**: Perforated metal **OR** Expanded metal **OR** Evenly spaced, parallel flat straps or bars **OR** Evenly woven, flat straps or bars **OR** Edge framed, evenly spaced, parallel rods or rolled bars, **as directed**.
      - 3) Stainless Steel: Perforated metal **OR** Expanded metal **OR** Evenly spaced, parallel flat straps or bars **OR** Evenly woven, flat straps or bars **OR** Edge framed, evenly spaced, parallel rods or rolled bars, **as directed**.
      - 4) Wood: Douglas fir **OR** Pine **OR** Cedar **OR** Redwood **OR** Teak, **as directed**; formed into evenly spaced parallel slats **OR** planks, **as directed**.
      - 5) Recycled **OR** Plastic **OR** fiberglass, **as directed**, Planks: Evenly spaced, parallel.
      - 6) Recycled **OR** Plastic **OR** Fiberglass, **as directed**, Sheet: Solid **OR** Perforated, **as directed**.
    - b. Seat Height: As indicated.
    - c. Seat Surface Shape: Flat **OR** Contoured or dished, **as directed**.
    - d. Overall Height: As indicated.
    - e. Overall Width: As indicated.
    - f. Overall Depth: As indicated.
    - g. Arms: None **OR** One, as indicated **OR** Two, one at each end **OR** Three, one at each end and in center, **as directed**.
      - 1) Arm Material: Match frame **OR** seat, **as directed**.
    - h. Seating Configuration: Multiple units as indicated.
      - 1) Straight **OR** Angled **OR** Curved, **as directed**, shape.
      - 2) Closed hexagon **OR** circle **OR** shape indicated, **as directed**, around a tree trunk **OR** planter **OR** light post, **as directed**.
  3. Table Top:
    - a. Material:
      - 1) Aluminum Sheet: Perforated **OR** Expanded, **as directed**, metal.
      - 2) Steel **OR** Painted Steel, **as directed**: Perforated metal **OR** Expanded metal **OR** Evenly spaced, parallel flat straps or bars **OR** Evenly woven, flat straps or bars **OR** Edge framed, evenly spaced, parallel rods or rolled bars, **as directed**.
      - 3) Stainless Steel: Perforated metal **OR** Expanded metal **OR** Evenly spaced, parallel flat straps or bars **OR** Evenly woven, flat straps or bars **OR** Edge framed, evenly spaced, parallel rods or rolled bars, **as directed**.
      - 4) Wood: Douglas fir **OR** Pine **OR** Cedar **OR** Redwood **OR** Teak, **as directed**; formed into evenly spaced parallel slats **OR** planks, **as directed**.
      - 5) Recycled **OR** Plastic **OR** Fiberglass, **as directed**, Planks: Evenly spaced, parallel.
      - 6) Recycled **OR** Plastic **OR** Fiberglass, **as directed**, Sheet: Solid **OR** Perforated, **as directed**.
    - b. Surface Shape: Round **OR** Hexagon **OR** Shape indicated, **as directed**.
    - c. Feature: Center umbrella hole.
  4. Aluminum Finish: Mill finish **OR** Color coated, **as directed**.
    - a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
  5. Steel Finish: Galvanized and color **OR** PVC-color, **as directed**, coated.
    - a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
  6. Stainless-Steel Finish: Dull Satin No. 6.



7. Wood Finish: Unfinished **OR** Factory-applied transparent finish **OR** Factory-applied stain and transparent finish **OR** Factory-applied opaque finish **OR** Manufacturer's standard finish, **as directed**.
  - a. Stain: Manufacturer's standard.
8. Fiberglass **OR** HDPE, **as directed**, Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
9. Graphics: Surface-applied **OR** Engraved **OR** Attached brass plaque with engraved, **as directed**, copy, content, and style per manufacturer's standard **OR** as indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.

#### C. Bicycle Racks

1. Bicycle Rack Construction:
  - a. Frame: Aluminum **OR** Steel **OR** Galvanized steel **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Steel and redwood **OR** Steel and pine, **as directed**.
    - 1) Pipe **OR** Tubing, **as directed**, OD: Not less than 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) **OR** 2-3/8 inches (60 mm) **OR** 2-7/8 inches (73 mm) **OR** 4-1/2 inches (115 mm), **as directed**.
    - 2) Locking Bars: Solid round bar, not less than 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm), **as directed**, in diameter.
  - b. Style: Single-side parking **OR** Double-side parking **OR** Bollard **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
    - 1) Capacity: Designed to accommodate no fewer than two **OR** three **OR** four, **as directed**, bicycles.
  - c. Security: Designed to lock wheel and frame.
  - d. Accessories: Base covers for each pipe and tubing anchored end **OR** Wheel stops, **as directed**.
  - e. Installation Method: Freestanding **OR** Surface flange anchored at finished grade to substrate indicated **OR** Surface flange anchored below finished grade to substrate indicated **OR** Cast in concrete **OR** Bolted to cast-in anchor bolts **OR** Wall mounted **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
2. Aluminum Finish: Mill finish **OR** Color coated, **as directed**.
  - a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
3. Steel Finish: Galvanized **OR** Color coated, **as directed**.
  - a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
4. Stainless-Steel Finish: Directional Satin No. 4.
5. Wood Finish: Unfinished **OR** Manufacturer's standard finish, **as directed**.

#### D. Bicycle Lockers

1. Bicycle Locker Construction:
  - a. Locker: Molded one-piece fiberglass **OR** Sheet steel, 0.053 inch (1.4 mm) thick, **OR** Sheet steel, 0.053 inch (1.4 mm) thick, with perforated metal sides, **as directed**, with welded tubular steel frame.
  - b. Door: Molded one-piece fiberglass **OR** Sheet steel, 0.053 inch (1.4 mm) thick, **as directed**, with tubular steel frame **OR** Match locker, **as directed**.
  - c. View Window **OR** Grille, **as directed**: Lexan, 12 inches (305 mm) square **OR** Perforated metal, **as directed**.
  - d. Lock: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Key lock with internal locking bar **OR** Coin/token lock, **as directed**.
    - 1) Provide four keys.
  - e. Overall Height: As indicated.
  - f. Overall Width: As indicated.
  - g. Overall Depth: As indicated.
  - h. Capacity: Designed to accommodate one **OR** two, **as directed**, bicycle(s).
  - i. Installation Method: Locker anchored at finished grade to substrate indicated **OR** Locker anchored below finished grade to substrate indicated **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  - j. Locker Configuration: Multiple **OR** Four, **as directed**, units as indicated, in straight row **OR** curved shape **OR** shape indicated, **as directed**.
2. Steel Finish: Color coated.



- a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
  3. Fiberglass Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
- E. Trash And Ash Receptacles
1. Aluminum Facing Surrounds: Aluminum sheet **OR** Perforated aluminum sheet **OR** Grid in tubular frame **OR** Evenly patterned, parallel flat aluminum straps, bars, or tubular shapes **OR** Match benches, **as directed**.
  2. Steel Facing Surrounds: Steel sheet **OR** Perforated-steel sheet **OR** Evenly patterned, parallel flat steel straps, bars, or tubular shapes **OR** Evenly patterned, parallel round steel rods, bars, or tubular shapes **OR** Grid in tubular frame **OR** Match benches, **as directed**.
  3. Stainless-Steel Facing Surrounds: Steel sheet **OR** Perforated-steel sheet **OR** Evenly patterned, parallel flat steel straps, bars, or tubular shapes **OR** Evenly patterned, parallel round steel rods, bars, or tubular shapes **OR** Grid in tubular frame **OR** Match benches, **as directed**.
  4. Wood Facing Surrounds: Evenly spaced, Douglas fir slats **OR** Evenly spaced pine slats **OR** Evenly spaced cedar slats **OR** Redwood panels **OR** Evenly spaced redwood slats **OR** Teak panels **OR** Evenly spaced teak slats **OR** Match benches, **as directed**.
  5. Fiberglass Facing Surrounds: Molded fiberglass shape.
  6. Plastic Facing Surrounds: Molded HDPE shape **OR** Evenly spaced HDPE slats **OR** Evenly spaced, recycled HDPE slats **OR** Match benches, **as directed**.
  7. Support Frames: Steel **OR** Galvanized steel, **as directed**; welded.
  8. Trash and Ash Receptacles:
    - a. Receptacle Shape and Form: Round cylinder **OR** Round cylinder with tapered funnel top **OR** Round, tapered column **OR** Square column **OR** Rectangular column **OR** As indicated, **as directed**; with opening for depositing trash in lid or top **OR** side of lid or top **OR** receptacle side, **as directed**.
    - b. Ash Receptacle Function: Uncovered receptacle with sand pan **OR** Uncovered receptacle with bowl and funnel **OR** Covered receptacle with sand pan **OR** Covered receptacle with bowl and screen **OR** Covered receptacle with slots **OR** Uncovered receptacle with sand pan attaching to side of trash receptacle, **as directed**, for depositing cigarette butts; fire-proof design; bowl and pan removable for cleaning.
    - c. Lids and Tops: Matching facing panels **OR** Aluminum **OR** Steel **OR** HDPE **OR** Recycled HDPE, **as directed**, secured by cable or chain, hinged, swiveled, or permanently secured.
      - 1) Description: Flat rim ring lid with center opening **OR** Dome top **OR** Arched top **OR** Elevated flat or shallow dome rain-cap lid **OR** Combination ash sand pan and rim lid **OR** Combination ash sand pan and dome top **OR** Combination ash sand pan and elevated flat or shallow dome rain-cap lid, **as directed**.
      - 2) Opening for depositing trash covered by self-closing, spring-loaded-hinged, push-in **OR** rotating, **as directed**, weather flap.
    - d. Inner Container: Aluminum **OR** Galvanized steel sheet **OR** Perforated-metal **OR** Fiberglass **OR** Rigid plastic, **as directed**, container with drain holes **OR** lift-out handles, **as directed**; designed to be removable and reusable.
    - e. Disposable Liners: Provide receptacle designed to accommodate disposable liners.
    - f. Capacity: Not less than 22 gal. (83 L) **OR** 28 gal. (106 L) **OR** 30 gal. (114 L) **OR** 32 gal. (121 L) **OR** 40 gal. (151 L) **OR** 55 gal. (208 L), **as directed**.
    - g. Service Access: Removable lid or top **OR** Fixed lid or top, side access, **as directed**; inner container and disposable liner lift or slide out for emptying; lockable with padlock hasps **OR** keyed lock with two keys per receptacle **OR** self-latching hinge, **as directed**.
    - h. Post Mount: Color-coated steel pipe; color to match receptacle **OR** Galvanized steel pipe **OR** Wood, **as directed**; for mounting one **OR** two **OR** three, **as directed**, receptacle(s).
    - i. Ash Receptacle Accessories: Sand sifter **OR** Butt stub-out, **as directed**.
  9. Aluminum Finish: Mill finish **OR** Color coated, **as directed**.
    - a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
  10. Steel Finish: Galvanized and color **OR** PVC-color, **as directed**, coated.
    - a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
  11. Stainless-Steel Finish: Dull Satin No. 6.



12. Wood Finish: Unfinished **OR** Factory-applied transparent finish **OR** Factory-applied stain and transparent finish **OR** Factory-applied opaque finish **OR** Manufacturer's standard finish, **as directed**.
  - a. Stain: Manufacturer's standard.
13. Fiberglass **OR** HDPE, **as directed**, Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
14. Graphics: Surface-applied **OR** Engraved **OR** Attached brass plaque with engraved, **as directed**, copy, content, and style per manufacturer's standard **OR** as indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
  - a. Copy: Litter **OR** Trash **OR** Waste **OR** Recycle, **as directed**.

#### F. Planters

1. Aluminum Facing Surrounds: Aluminum sheet **OR** Perforated aluminum sheet **OR** Grid in tubular frame **OR** Evenly patterned, parallel flat aluminum, **as directed**, straps, bars, or tubular shapes **OR** Match benches, **as directed**.
2. Steel Facing Surrounds: Steel sheet **OR** Perforated-steel sheet **OR** Evenly patterned, parallel flat steel straps, bars, or tubular shapes **OR** Evenly patterned, parallel round steel rods, bars, or tubular shapes **OR** Grid in tubular frame **OR** Match benches, **as directed**.
3. Stainless-Steel Facing Surrounds: Steel sheet **OR** Perforated-steel sheet **OR** Evenly patterned, parallel flat steel straps, bars, or tubular shapes **OR** Evenly patterned, parallel round steel rods, bars, or tubular shapes **OR** Grid in tubular frame **OR** Match benches, **as directed**.
4. Wood Facing Surrounds: Evenly spaced, Douglas fir slats **OR** Evenly spaced pine slats **OR** Evenly spaced cedar slats **OR** Redwood panels **OR** Evenly spaced redwood slats **OR** Teak panels **OR** Evenly spaced teak slats **OR** Match benches, **as directed**.
5. Fiberglass Facing Surrounds: Molded fiberglass shape.
6. Plastic Facing Surrounds: Molded HDPE shape **OR** Evenly spaced HDPE slats **OR** Evenly spaced, recycled HDPE slats **OR** Match benches, **as directed**.
7. Support Frames: Steel **OR** Galvanized steel, **as directed**; welded.
8. Planter Shape and Form: Round cylinder **OR** Round cylinder with tapered funnel top **OR** Round, tapered column **OR** Square column **OR** Rectangular column **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
9. Style: To match benches **OR** As indicated by manufacturer's designation, **as directed**.
10. Inner Container: Aluminum **OR** Galvanized steel sheet **OR** Fiberglass **OR** Rigid plastic, **as directed**, container with drain holes.
11. Capacity: Not less than 22 gal. (83 L) **OR** 28 gal. (106 L) **OR** 30 gal. (114 L) **OR** 32 gal. (121 L) **OR** 40 gal. (151 L) **OR** 55 gal. (208 L), **as directed**.
12. Installation Method: Freestanding **OR** Freestanding with weighted base **OR** Anchored to substrate indicated on Drawings **OR** Wall mounted **OR** Post mounted **OR** Mounted on elevated leg angles anchored at finished grade to substrate indicated on Drawings **OR** Mounted on elevated leg angles anchored below finished grade to substrate indicated on Drawings **OR** As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
  - a. Post Mount: Color-coated steel pipe; color to match receptacle **OR** Galvanized steel pipe **OR** Wood, **as directed**; for mounting one **OR** two **OR** three, **as directed**, planter(s).
13. Aluminum Finish: Color coated.
  - a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
14. Steel Finish: Galvanized and color **OR** PVC-color, **as directed**, coated.
  - a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
15. Stainless-Steel Finish: Dull Satin No. 6.
16. Wood Finish: Unfinished **OR** Factory-applied transparent finish **OR** Factory-applied stained and transparent finish, **as directed**.
17. Fiberglass **OR** HDPE, **as directed**, Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
  - a. Finish: Smooth **OR** Textured, **as directed**.

#### G. Bollards

1. Bollard Construction:
  - a. Pipe **OR** Tubing **OR** Cast, **as directed** OD: Not less than 4-1/2 inches (115 mm), fluted, **as directed**.
    - 1) Steel: Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, pipe.





- 2) Aluminum: Extruded pipe and tubes **OR** Castings, **as directed**.
  - 3) Stainless Steel: Tubes **OR** Pipe, **as directed**.
  - 4) Cast Iron: Tapered **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  - b. Round **OR** Square, **as directed**, Wood: Cedar, 8 inches (203 mm) square **OR** 10 inches (254 mm) in diameter, **as directed**.
  - c. Style: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Chamfered top **OR** Dome top **OR** Ornamental cap **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  - d. Accessories: Eye bolts.
  - e. Installation Method: Surface flange anchored at finished grade to substrate indicated **OR** Surface flange anchored below finished grade to substrate indicated **OR** Cast in concrete **OR** Bolted to cast-in anchor bolts **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  2. Aluminum Finish: Mill finish **OR** Color coated, **as directed**.
    - a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
  3. Steel Finish: Galvanized **OR** Color coated, **as directed**.
    - a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
  4. Cast-Iron Finish: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Galvanized **OR** Color coated, **as directed**.
    - a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
  5. Stainless-Steel Finish: Directional Satin No. 4.
  6. Wood Finish: Unfinished **OR** Manufacturer's standard finish, **as directed**.
- H. Fabrication
1. Metal Components: Form to required shapes and sizes with true, consistent curves, lines, and angles. Separate metals from dissimilar materials to prevent electrolytic action.
  2. Welded Connections: Weld connections continuously. Weld solid members with full-length, full-penetration welds and hollow members with full-circumference welds. At exposed connections, finish surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness or unevenness shows after finishing and welded surface matches contours of adjoining surfaces.
  3. Pipes and Tubes: Form simple and compound curves by bending members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each repetitive configuration required; maintain cylindrical cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of handrail and railing components.
  4. Preservative-Treated Wood Components: Complete fabrication of treated items before treatment if possible. If cut after treatment, apply field treatment complying with AWPA M4 to cut surfaces.
  5. Exposed Surfaces: Polished, sanded, or otherwise finished; all surfaces smooth, free of burrs, barbs, splinters, and sharpness; all edges and ends rolled, rounded, or capped.
  6. Factory Assembly: Assemble components in the factory to greatest extent possible to minimize field assembly. Clearly mark units for assembly in the field.
- I. Finishes, General
1. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
  2. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- J. Aluminum Finishes
1. Baked-Enamel, Powder-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard, baked, polyester, powder-coat finish complying with finish manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation, including pretreatment, application, baking, and minimum dry film thickness.
- K. Steel And Galvanized Steel Finishes
1. Baked-Enamel, Powder-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard, baked, polyester, powder-coat finish complying with finish manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation, including pretreatment, application, baking, and minimum dry film thickness.



2. PVC Finish: Manufacturer's standard, UV-light stabilized, mold-resistant, slip-resistant, matte-textured, dipped or sprayed-on, PVC-plastisol finish, with flame retardant added; complying with coating manufacturer's written instructions for pretreatment, application, and minimum dry film thickness.

L. Iron Finishes

1. Baked-Enamel, Powder-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard, baked, polyester, powder-coat finish complying with finish manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation, including pretreatment, application, baking, and minimum dry film thickness.

M. Stainless-Steel Finishes

1. Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines or blend into finish.
2. Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform, directionally textured, polished finish indicated, free of cross scratches. Run grain with long dimension of each piece.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation, General

1. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Complete field assembly of site furnishings where required.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, install site furnishings after landscaping and paving have been completed.
3. Install site furnishings level, plumb, true, and securely anchored **OR** positioned, **as directed**, at locations indicated on Drawings.
4. Post Setting: Set cast-in support posts in concrete footing with smooth top, shaped to shed water. Protect portion of posts above footing from concrete splatter. Verify that posts are set plumb or at correct angle and are aligned and at correct height and spacing. Hold posts in position during placement and finishing operations until concrete is sufficiently cured.
5. Posts Set into Voids in Concrete: Form or core-drill holes for installing posts in concrete to depth recommended in writing by manufacturer of site furnishings and 3/4 inch (19 mm) larger than OD of post. Clean holes of loose material, insert posts, and fill annular space between post and concrete with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout or anchoring cement, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions, with top smoothed and shaped to shed water.
6. Pipe Sleeves: Use steel pipe sleeves preset and anchored into concrete for installing posts. After posts have been inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between post and sleeve with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout or anchoring cement, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions, with top smoothed and shaped to shed water.

B. Cleaning

1. After completing site furnishing installation, inspect components. Remove spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finishes to match original finish or replace component.

END OF SECTION 32 94 43 00



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
32 94 43 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
32 94 43 00	32 39 23 00	Miscellaneous Site and Street Furnishings
32 94 49 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
32 94 49 00	31 13 16 00	Tree Protection And Trimming
32 94 49 00	32 14 09 00	Exterior Plants
32 96 33 00	32 91 13 16	Tree Relocation
32 96 43 00	32 91 13 16	Tree Relocation



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 33 01 10 58 - REPAIR AND MAINTENANCE OF IMHOFF TANKS**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for repair and maintenance of sewage treatment plant Imhoff tanks. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## B. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

## A. Coatings:

1. Epoxy-Filler Compound for concrete surfaces shall comply with Fed. Spec. MMM-A-001993.
2. Coal-Tar Epoxy shall comply with SSPC-PAINT 16.
3. Epoxy Paint shall comply with Mil. Spec. MIL-P-24441.
4. Red-Lead Base Paint shall comply with Fed. Spec. TT-P-86, Type I.
5. Aluminum Finish Paint shall comply with Fed. Spec. TT-P-38.

- B. Steel Tank Repair Material for minor leaks shall be a two-component epoxy sealing compound. For badly corroded areas, a steel plate of the same composition and thickness as the original tank shall be used.

- C. Pipe and Fittings for replacement shall be equivalent to the existing pipe and fittings.

## 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Preparation: Drain the contents of the tank and dispose of the sludge and sewage.

## B. Leak Repair:

1. Concrete Tanks: Repair concrete tank leaks by cleaning and chipping or sandblasting the area of the leak and applying two-component epoxy concrete sealant.
2. Steel Tanks: Repair steel tank leaks by cleaning, scraping, chipping, or sandblasting the area of the leak and applying epoxy steel sealant. Repair badly corroded areas of steel tanks by cutting out the corroded area and welding a section of new steel plate in place. Welding shall be in compliance with AWS D1.1.

- C. Pipe and Fittings: Replace pipe and fittings as required.

## D. Cleaning and Coatings:

1. Interior Concrete Surfaces of the tank shall be cleaned with high pressure water or steam to remove dirt and residue, allowed to dry, and brush sandblasted.
2. Holes and Voids in the concrete surfaces left from the blast cleaning shall be filled by means of troweling and squeeze application of epoxy filler. Two coats of coal-tar epoxy shall be applied to the surface after the epoxy has cured.
3. Submerged Ferrous Metal Surfaces such as piping and equipment that are exposed to the sewage shall be sandblasted and coated with two coats of coal-tar epoxy.



- 
4. Exterior Concrete Surfaces of the tank shall be cleaned by means of brush sandblast. The surfaces shall be blown down with air to remove the blasting residue and dust, and two coats of epoxy-polyamide paint shall be applied.
  5. Ferrous Metal Surfaces that are not submerged shall be cleaned by means of sandblasting. Coat surfaces with one coat of red-lead base paint. After the base paint has dried sufficiently, apply two coats of aluminum finish paint.

END OF SECTION 33 01 10 58



---

**SECTION 33 01 10 58a - SEWER LINE CLEANING****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers sewer line cleaning. Cleaning procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

- B. Submittals: Submit product data and manufacturer's instruction.

**1.2 PRODUCTS**

- A. All materials shall be clean, free of defects, corrosion, and damage. All items shall be of proper type, size, design, and characteristics for the use intended. Unless otherwise specified, all items shall be factory-made.
- B. Portable Cleaning Equipment: Equipment used in the cleaning of sewer lines shall be as required to complete the work for the size, length, and conditions of the sewer. Portable and mobile equipment shall comply with Water Pollution Control Federation Manual No. 7.
- C. Chemicals shall be of the strength required to perform the work. The chemicals shall not be damaging to pipe materials, manholes, pumping equipment, nor treatment process and shall not be contaminated by foreign substances.

**1.3 EXECUTION****A. Preparation**

1. Protection required to prevent damage to adjacent materials, equipment, fixtures, and finishes shall be provided. Necessary protective clothing and accessories for personnel working with chemicals shall be provided.
2. Ventilation of Sewers: Contractor shall provide proper ventilation for personnel working in the sewer.
3. Alternate Sewage Discharge: Contractor shall provide an alternate routing of sewage discharge to a downstream manhole.
4. Traffic: Contractor shall provide all traffic signs required to safely direct traffic at and around work areas.

**B. Installation**

1. Direction of Work: Sewer line cleaning work, with the exception of hydraulic scouring, shall proceed in the downstream direction. Cleaning by hydraulic scouring shall proceed in the upstream direction.
2. Testing: Upon completion of cleaning operation, test sewer lines for proper operation and observe for a period of 24 hours. Clean out all stoppages and the retest the line for proper operation.

END OF SECTION 33 01 10 58a



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
33 01 10 58	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 33 01 10 71 - PIPE LINING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of pipe lining. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Lining Material:

1. Polyethylene Pipe: Extruded, flexible industrial grade, high density (Type 3 or 4) in 40 foot lengths, complying with ASTM D 2239 and D 2447.
  - a. Diameter: Outside diameter shall be as large as possible while allowing for ease of pulling into the existing pipes. Pipe dimensions shall comply with ASTM D 2447 and D 2837.
  - b. Liner Thickness and Class shall be suitable for the use intended. The tolerance on the pipe wall thickness shall be as noted in Table 2 of ASTM D 2447.
  - c. Gravity Sanitary, Gravity Storm, and Gravity Industrial Sewers shall be Schedule 40.
  - d. Gravity Thermal Discharge Sewers shall be Schedule 80.
  - e. Low Pressure Sewers shall be Schedule 40, complying with ASTM D 2239.
  - f. High Pressure Sewers shall be Schedule 80, complying with ASTM D 2239 and D 2837.
  - g. Chemical Resistance: Pipe liner shall be resistant to chemical attack, erosion, and corrosion.
  - h. Fittings shall be fabricated from polyethylene pipe. The polyethylene fittings shall have the same pressure rating as the pipe and shall comply with ASTM D 3261.
2. Cement-Mortar Lining:
  - a. Portland Cement shall comply with ASTM C 150, Type 1.
  - b. Pozzolan Cement shall comply with ASTM C 618 and shall not comprise more than 20 percent of total cement amount, by weight.
  - c. Sand shall be well graded, clean, free from organic and extraneous matter. One hundred percent shall pass the 16-mesh size screen.
  - d. Lining Thickness: Cement lining shall be not less than 1/8 inch for pipe sizes 4 to 14 inches, not less than 3/16 inch for pipe sized 16 inches and larger, and not less than 1/4 inch for steel pipe 16 inches and larger.
3. Reinforced Mortar Pipe Slip-Lining:
  - a. Gravity Sewers: Slip-lining shall be of glass fiber reinforced polyester mortar pipe, complying with ASTM D 3262.
  - b. Pressure Sewers (Force Mains): Slip-lining shall be of glass fiber reinforced polyester mortar pipe complying with ASTM D 2517.
  - c. Diameter: Outside diameter shall be as large as possible while allowing for ease of pulling into existing pipes, as recommended by the manufacturer.
  - d. Chemical Resistance: Pipe liner shall be resistant to chemical attack, erosion, and corrosion.
4. Fittings: Fittings shall be manufactured of the same materials as is the glass fiber reinforced polyester mortar pipe.
5. Epoxy-Mortar Lining:
  - a. Epoxy compound shall comply with ASTM D 1763.
  - b. Admixtures shall be well graded with one hundred percent passing. The 16-mesh size screen. All admixtures shall improve the workability, density, and strength of the mortar.



- c. Lining Thickness: For pipe sizes 4 to 14 inches, epoxy mortar lining thickness shall be not less than 1/8 inch. For pipe sizes 16 inches and larger, epoxy mortar lining shall be not less than 3/16 inch.

B. Joint:

1. Slip-Lining:

- a. Polyethylene Pipe Butt Joints: Pipe lengths, fittings, and flanged connections to be joined by thermal butt fusion shall be of the same time, grade, and class of polyethylene compound and supplied by pipe supplier.
- b. Flanged Joints shall consist of a polyethylene flange, thermally butt fused to the ends of the pipe. The companion flange shall be steel or cast iron and nylon-coated.
- c. Lateral Service Connections: Sidewall connections shall be made with polyethylene pipe sections of the same material, grade, and class as the liner material and shall have the same pressure ratings. Lateral connections shall be watertight.

2. Reinforced Mortar Lining:

- a. Bell and spigot joints shall be the inverted type.
- b. Manhole Joints and Connections shall be oakum ring and grout as required.

1.3 EXECUTION:

A. Slip-Lining, Polyethylene Pipe:

- 1. Insertion of Liner: Liner shall be laid at a constant line and grade as the existing pipe, without undulations or damage. Where the existing pipe is not at constant grade, the liner shall follow as true a constant grade as possible.
- 2. Grouting: At manholes, annular space shall be packed with oakum and expansion grout or nonshrink grout as required. At existing line, after liner has been inserted, grout wherever existing pipe has failed structurally.
- 3. Concrete Encasement: Crown of liner shall be encased in concrete a minimum thickness of 6 inches for the entire length of the excavated trench and out at least 6 inches each side of the bottom half of the original pipe remaining down to firm soil. Wherever existing concrete encasement has been removed, the liner shall be encased in the same manner as the original pipe.
- 4. Thrust Blocks: Concrete thrust blocks shall be provided as required.

B. Cement Mortar and Epoxy Mortar Lining:

- 1. Cement Mortar Mixing: One part cement to one and one-half parts of sand by volume.
- 2. Application of Lining: The lining shall be applied to produce a smooth, uniform thickness throughout the interior of the pipe line.
- 3. Curing of the Cement Mortar Lining: Immediately upon completion of the lining of a length of pipe between access openings or at the end of a day's run, the section of pipe shall be closed at each end, the access openings covered to prevent the circulation of air, and the atmosphere kept moist.
- 4. Reconnection of Pipes After Lining: Close and make watertight all openings in the lines.
- 5. Pressure Test and Leaks: Hydrostatic and leakage tests shall be conducted on all pipe that is cleaned and lined.

C. Reinforced Mortar Pipe Lining:

- 1. Joining of Pipe Ends: Liner sections containing bell and spigot joints shall be joined using an O-ring.
- 2. Grouting Work shall be accomplished following the same techniques as described in paragraph Slip-Lining, Polyethylene Pipe.

D. Cement Mortar Lining:



1. Epoxy Mortar Lining: Excessive mortar shall be removed from the manhole walls and bottom. Manhole bottom shall receive special care in making all transitions smooth.
2. Work at Service Connections: Plugs or caps shall be placed at the access point of the service connection to the lines and shall be removed once the mortar has set. The completed lining shall not be damaged.
3. Reinforced Mortar Pipe Lining: Joining of fiberglass reinforced polyester mortar pipe shall be carried out in the trench, with the first section of liner already inserted.
4. Lateral Connections: Service to connections shall be provided for and continued after installation of the lining.
5. Testing: Upon completion of lining operation, the sewer line shall be tested for proper operation and shall be observed for a period of 24 hours. All deficiencies shall be corrected.
6. Pavement Restoration: All disturbed pavement shall be restored to its original condition and shall match existing adjacent.
7. Inspection: Large diameter sewers shall be inspected from inside to ensure that all lateral connections and joints are in proper order. Sewers that have been cement-lined may be inspected for a smooth finish, while plugs and caps are being removed.

END OF SECTION 33 01 10 71



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
33 01 10 71	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
33 01 10 71	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
33 01 30 11	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
33 01 30 41	33 01 10 58a	Sewer Line Cleaning



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





---

**SECTION 33 01 30 42 - REPAIR AND MAINTENANCE OF SIPHON TANK AND SIPHONS****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for the repair and maintenance of sewage treatment plant dosing siphon tanks. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Submittals**

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

**1.2 PRODUCTS**

- A. Tank Repair Material shall be epoxy type grout complying with Fed. Spec. MMM-A-001993.

**B. Concrete Coatings:**

1. Outside and Above Grade shall be epoxy type in compliance with Mil. Spec. MIL-P-24441.
2. Inside and Below Grade shall be coal-tar epoxy type in compliance with SSPC-PAINT 16.

- C. Steel Repair Material shall be steel plate or epoxy cement and fiberglass cloth.

- D. Corroded or Defective Siphons: Replace those parts corroded or defective with new parts compatible with the unit, as recommended by the manufacturer.

**E. Steel Coatings:**

1. Red-Lead Base Coat shall comply with Fed. Spec. TT-P-86, Type I.
2. Aluminum Paint shall comply with Fed. Spec. TT-P-38.

**1.3 EXECUTION**

- A. Corroded or Broken Pipe and Fittings: Replace as required.

- B. Minor Leaks: Repair minor leaks in the tank using material and surface preparation and application methods recommended by the material manufacturer.

- C. Spalled Areas: Repair as required.

**D. Cleaning and Coating:**

1. Interior Concrete Surfaces of the tank shall be cleaned with high pressure water or steam to remove all dirt and residue, allowed to dry, and brush sandblasted in compliance with SSPC-SP 7.
2. The Exterior Concrete Surfaces of the tank shall be cleaned by means of brush sandblasting in compliance with SSPC-SP 7. The surfaces shall be blown down with air to remove the blasting residue and dust, and two coats of epoxy-polyamide paint shall be applied.
3. Holes and Voids in the concrete surfaces left from the blast cleaning shall be filled by means of troweling and squeeze application of an epoxy filler. The surfacing material shall be allowed to cure overnight, and then two coats of coal-tar epoxy complying with SSPC-PAINT 16 shall be applied.



- 
4. Submerged Ferrous Metal Surfaces that are exposed to the sewage shall be sandblasted in compliance with SSPC-SP 10 and coated with two coats of coal-tar epoxy.
  5. Ferrous Metal Surfaces that are not submerged shall be cleaned by means of sandblasting in compliance with SSPC-SP 6. Surfaces inaccessible to sandblasting shall be power tool cleaned in compliance with SSPC-SP 3. Surfaces shall be coated with one coat of red-lead base paint. After the base paint has dried sufficiently, two coats of aluminum finish paint shall be applied.

END OF SECTION 33 01 30 42



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
33 01 30 42	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
33 01 30 42	33 01 10 58	Repair And Maintenance Of Imhoff Tanks
33 01 30 42	33 01 10 58a	Sewer Line Cleaning
33 01 30 51	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
33 01 30 51	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
33 01 30 51	33 01 10 58	Repair And Maintenance Of Imhoff Tanks
33 01 30 51	33 01 30 42	Repair And Maintenance Of Siphon Tank And Siphons
33 01 30 61	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
33 01 30 71	33 42 11 00	Storm Drainage



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

**SECTION 33 01 30 81 - UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND UTILITY STRUCTURES****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for underground ducts and utility structures. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Summary**

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Conduit, ducts, and duct accessories for direct-buried and concrete-encased duct banks, and in single duct runs\.
  - b. Handholes and pull boxes.
  - c. Manholes.

**C. Definition**

1. RNC: Rigid nonmetallic conduit.

**D. Submittals**

1. Product Data: For the following:
  - a. Duct-bank materials, including separators and miscellaneous components.
  - b. Ducts and conduits and their accessories, including elbows, end bells, bends, fittings, and solvent cement.
  - c. Accessories for manholes, handholes, pull boxes, and other utility structures.
  - d. Warning tape.
  - e. Warning planks.
2. Shop Drawings for Precast or Factory-Fabricated Underground Utility Structures: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, attachments to other work, and accessories, including the following:
  - a. Duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes.
  - b. Reinforcement details.
  - c. Frame and cover design and manhole frame support rings.
  - d. Ladder **OR** Step, **as directed**, details.
  - e. Grounding details.
  - f. Dimensioned locations of cable rack inserts, pulling-in and lifting irons, and sumps.
  - g. Joint details.
3. Shop Drawings for Factory-Fabricated Handholes and Pull Boxes Other Than Precast Concrete: Include dimensioned plans, sections, and elevations, and fabrication and installation details, including the following:
  - a. Duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes.
  - b. Cover design.
  - c. Grounding details.
  - d. Dimensioned locations of cable rack inserts, and pulling-in and lifting irons.
4. Duct-Bank Coordination Drawings: Show duct profiles and coordination with other utilities and underground structures.
  - a. Include plans and sections, drawn to scale, and show bends and locations of expansion fittings.
  - b. Drawings shall be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
5. Product Certificates: For concrete and steel used in precast concrete manholes and handholes, as required by ASTM C 858.
6. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer and testing agency.
7. Source quality-control reports
8. Field quality-control test reports.



- E. Quality Assurance
  - 1. Comply with IEEE C2.
  - 2. Comply with NFPA 70.
  
- F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
  - 1. Deliver ducts to Project site with ends capped. Store nonmetallic ducts with supports to prevent bending, warping, and deforming.
  - 2. Store precast concrete and other factory-fabricated underground utility structures at Project site as recommended by manufacturer to prevent physical damage. Arrange so identification markings are visible.
  - 3. Lift and support precast concrete units only at designated lifting or supporting points.
  
- G. Project Conditions
  - 1. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:
    - a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
    - b. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without the Owner's written permission.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

- A. Conduit
  - 1. Rigid Steel Conduit: Galvanized. Comply with ANSI C80.1.
  - 2. RNC: NEMA TC 2, Type EPC-40-PVC and Type EPC-80-PVC, UL 651, with matching fittings by same manufacturer as the conduit, complying with NEMA TC 3 and UL 514B.
  
- B. Nonmetallic Ducts And Duct Accessories
  - 1. Underground Plastic Utilities Duct: NEMA TC 6 & 8, Type EB-20-PVC, ASTM F 512, UL 651A, with matching fittings by the same manufacturer as the duct, complying with NEMA TC 9.
  - 2. Underground Plastic Utilities Duct: NEMA TC 6 & 8, Type DB-60-PVC and Type DB-120-PVC, ASTM F 512, with matching fittings by the same manufacturer as the duct, complying with NEMA TC 9.
  - 3. Duct Accessories:
    - a. Duct Separators: Factory-fabricated rigid PVC interlocking spacers, sized for type and sizes of ducts with which used, and selected to provide minimum duct spacings indicated while supporting ducts during concreting or backfilling.
    - b. Warning Tape: Underground-line warning tape specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
    - c. Concrete Warning Planks: Nominal 12 by 24 by 3 inches (300 by 600 by 76 mm) in size, manufactured from 6000-psi (41-MPa) concrete.
      - 1) Color: Red dye added to concrete during batching.
      - 2) Mark each plank with "ELECTRIC" in 2-inch- (50-mm-) high, 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) deep letters.
  
- C. Precast Concrete Handholes And Pull Boxes
  - 1. Comply with ASTM C 858 for design and manufacturing processes.
  - 2. Ferrous metal hardware shall be hot-dip galvanized in accordance with ASTM A153 (ASTM A153M) and ASTM A123 (ASTM A123M).
  - 3. Description: Factory-fabricated, reinforced-concrete, monolithically poured walls and bottom unless open-bottom enclosures are indicated. Frame and cover shall form top of enclosure and shall have load rating consistent with that of handhole or pull box.



- a. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof cast-iron frame, with cast-iron cover with recessed cover hook eyes and tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts.
  - b. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof steel frame, with steel cover with recessed cover hook eyes and tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts.
  - c. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof steel frame, with hinged steel access door assembly with tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts.
    - 1) Cover Hinges: Concealed, with hold-open ratchet assembly.
    - 2) Cover Handle: Recessed.
  - d. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof aluminum frame with hinged aluminum access door assembly with tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing stainless-steel bolts.
    - 1) Cover Hinges: Concealed, with hold-open ratchet assembly.
    - 2) Cover Handle: Recessed.
  - e. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
  - f. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC" **OR** "TELEPHONE" **OR** As indicated for each service, **as directed**.
  - g. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have open **OR** closed **OR** integral closed, **as directed**, bottom, unless otherwise indicated.
  - h. Extensions and Slabs: Designed to mate with bottom of enclosure. Same material as enclosure.
    - 1) Extension shall provide increased depth of 12 inches (300 mm).
    - 2) Slab: Same dimensions as bottom of enclosure, and arranged to provide closure.
  - i. Windows: Precast openings in walls, arranged to match dimensions and elevations of approaching ducts and duct banks plus an additional 12 inches (300 mm) vertically and horizontally to accommodate alignment variations.
    - 1) Windows shall be located no less than 6 inches (150 mm) from interior surfaces of walls, floors, or frames and covers of handholes, but close enough to corners to facilitate racking of cables on walls.
    - 2) Window opening shall have cast-in-place, welded wire fabric reinforcement for field cutting and bending to tie in to concrete envelopes of duct banks.
    - 3) Window openings shall be framed with at least two additional No. 4 steel reinforcing bars in concrete around each opening.
  - j. Duct Entrances in Handhole Walls: Cast end-bell or duct-terminating fitting in wall for each entering duct.
    - 1) Type and size shall match fittings to duct or conduit to be terminated.
    - 2) Fittings shall align with elevations of approaching ducts and be located near interior corners of handholes to facilitate racking of cable.
  - k. Handholes 12 inches wide by 24 inches long (300 mm wide by 600 mm long) and larger shall have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.
- D. Handholes and Pull Boxes Other Than Precast Concrete
- 1. Description: Comply with SCTE 77.
    - a. Color: Gray **OR** Green, **as directed**.
    - b. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have open **OR** closed **OR** integral closed, **as directed**, bottom, unless otherwise indicated.
    - c. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure.
    - d. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
    - e. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC" **OR** "TELEPHONE" **OR** As indicated for each service, **as directed**.
    - f. Direct-Buried Wiring Entrance Provisions: Knockouts equipped with insulated bushings or end-bell fittings, selected to suit box material, sized for wiring indicated, and arranged for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
    - g. Duct Entrance Provisions: Duct-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
    - h. Handholes 12 inches wide by 24 inches long (300 mm wide by 600 mm long) and larger shall have factory-installed inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons.



2. Polymer Concrete Handholes and Pull Boxes with Polymer Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with a polymer resin, and reinforced with steel or fiberglass or a combination of the two.
3. Fiberglass Handholes and Pull Boxes with Polymer Concrete Frame and Cover: Sheet-molded, fiberglass-reinforced, polyester resin enclosure joined to polymer concrete top ring or frame.
4. Fiberglass Handholes and Pull Boxes: Molded of fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, with covers of polymer concrete **OR** reinforced concrete **OR** cast iron **OR** hot-dip galvanized-steel diamond plate **OR** fiberglass, **as directed**.
5. High-Density Plastic Pull Boxes: Injection molded of high-density polyethylene or copolymer-polypropylene. Cover shall be polymer concrete **OR** hot-dip galvanized-steel diamond plate **OR** plastic, **as directed**.

#### E. Precast Manholes

1. Comply with ASTM C 858, with structural design loading as specified in Para. 1.3 "Underground Enclosure Application" Article and with interlocking mating sections, complete with accessories, hardware, and features.
  - a. Windows: Precast openings in walls, arranged to match dimensions and elevations of approaching ducts and duct banks plus an additional 12 inches (300 mm) vertically and horizontally to accommodate alignment variations.
    - 1) Windows shall be located no less than 6 inches (150 mm) from interior surfaces of walls, floors, or roofs of manholes, but close enough to corners to facilitate racking of cables on walls.
    - 2) Window opening shall have cast-in-place, welded wire fabric reinforcement for field cutting and bending to tie in to concrete envelopes of duct banks.
    - 3) Window openings shall be framed with at least two additional No. 4 steel reinforcing bars in concrete around each opening.
  - b. Duct Entrances in Manhole Walls: Cast end-bell or duct-terminating fitting in wall for each entering duct.
    - 1) Type and size shall match fittings to duct or conduit to be terminated.
    - 2) Fittings shall align with elevations of approaching ducts and be located near interior corners of manholes to facilitate racking of cable.
2. Concrete Knockout Panels: 1-1/2 to 2 inches (38 to 50 mm) thick, for future conduit entrance and sleeve for ground rod.
3. Joint Sealant: Asphaltic-butyl material with adhesion, cohesion, flexibility, and durability properties necessary to withstand maximum hydrostatic pressures at the installation location with the ground-water level at grade.

#### F. Cast-In-Place Manholes

1. Description: Underground utility structures, constructed in place, complete with accessories, hardware, and features. Include concrete knockout panels for conduit entrance and sleeve for ground rod.
2. Materials: Comply with ASTM C 858 and with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
  - a. Concrete shall have a minimum compressive strength of 3000 psi (20 MPa).
3. Structural Design Loading: As specified in "Underground Enclosure Application" Article.

#### G. Utility Structure Accessories

1. Ferrous metal hardware, where indicated, shall be hot-dip galvanized complying with ASTM A 153 (A 153M) and A 123 (A 123M).
2. Manhole Frames, Covers, and Chimney Components: Comply with structural design loading specified for manhole.
  - a. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof, gray cast iron complying with ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 30B **OR** cast aluminum, **as directed**, with milled cover-to-frame bearing surfaces; diameter, 26 inches (660 mm) **OR** 29 inches (737 mm), **as directed**.
    - 1) Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.





- 2) Special Covers: Recess in face of cover designed to accept finish material in paved areas.
- b. Cover Legend: Cast in. Selected to suit system.
  - 1) Legend: "ELECTRIC-LV" for duct systems with power wires and cables for systems operating at 600 V and less.
  - 2) Legend: "ELECTRIC-HV" for duct systems with medium-voltage cables.
  - 3) Legend: "SIGNAL" for communications, data, and telephone duct systems.
- c. Manhole Chimney Components: Precast concrete rings with dimensions matched to those of roof opening.
  - 1) Mortar for Chimney Ring and Frame and Cover Joints: Comply with ASTM C 270, Type M, except for quantities less than 2.0 cu. ft. (60 L) where packaged mix complying with ASTM C 387, Type M, may be used.
3. Manhole Sump Frame and Grate: ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 30B, gray cast iron.
4. Pulling Eyes in Concrete Walls: Eyebolt with reinforcing-bar fastening insert, 2-inch- (50-mm-) diameter eye, and 1-by-4-inch (25-by-100-mm) bolt.
  - a. Working Load Embedded in 6-Inch (150-mm), 4000-psi (27.6-MPa) Concrete: 13,000-lbf (58-kN) minimum tension.
5. Pulling Eyes in Nonconcrete Walls: Eyebolt with reinforced fastening, 1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-) diameter eye, rated 2500-lbf (11-kN) minimum tension.
6. Pulling-In and Lifting Irons in Concrete Floors: 7/8-inch- (22-mm-) diameter, hot-dip galvanized, bent steel rod; stress relieved after forming; and fastened to reinforcing rod. Exposed triangular opening.
  - a. Ultimate Yield Strength: 40,000-lbf (180-kN) shear and 60,000-lbf (270-kN) tension.
7. Bolting Inserts for Concrete Utility Structure Cable Racks and Other Attachments: Flared, threaded inserts of noncorrosive, chemical-resistant, nonconductive thermoplastic material; 1/2-inch (13-mm) ID by 2-3/4 inches (69 mm) deep, flared to 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) minimum at base.
  - a. Tested Ultimate Pullout Strength: 12,000 lbf (53 kN) minimum.
8. Expansion Anchors for Installation after Concrete Is Cast: Zinc-plated, carbon-steel-wedge type with stainless-steel expander clip with 1/2-inch (13-mm) bolt, 5300-lbf (24-kN) rated pullout strength, and minimum 6800-lbf (30-kN) rated shear strength.
9. Cable Rack Assembly: Steel, hot-rolled **OR** hot-dip, **as directed**, galvanized, except insulators.
  - a. Stanchions: T-section or channel; 2-1/4-inch (57-mm) nominal size; punched with 14 holes on 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) centers for cable-arm attachment.
  - b. Arms: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) wide, lengths ranging from 3 inches (75 mm) with 450-lb (204-kg) minimum capacity to 18 inches (460 mm) with 250-lb (114-kg) minimum capacity. Arms shall have slots along full length for cable ties and be arranged for secure mounting in horizontal position at any vertical location on stanchions.
  - c. Insulators: High-glaze, wet-process porcelain arranged for mounting on cable arms.
10. Cable Rack Assembly: Nonmetallic. Components fabricated from nonconductive, fiberglass-reinforced polymer.
  - a. Stanchions: Nominal 36 inches (900 mm) high by 4 inches (100 mm) wide, with minimum of 9 holes for arm attachment.
  - b. Arms: Arranged for secure, drop-in attachment in horizontal position at any location on cable stanchions, and capable of being locked in position. Arms shall be available in lengths ranging from 3 inches (75 mm) with 450-lb (204-kg) minimum capacity to 20 inches (508 mm) with 250-lb (114-kg) minimum capacity. Top of arm shall be nominally 4 inches (100 mm) wide, and arm shall have slots along full length for cable ties.
11. Duct-Sealing Compound: Nonhardening, safe for contact with human skin, not deleterious to cable insulation, and workable at temperatures as low as 35 deg F (2 deg C). Capable of withstanding temperature of 300 deg F (150 deg C) without slump and adhering to clean surfaces of plastic ducts, metallic conduits, conduit coatings, concrete, masonry, lead, cable sheaths, cable jackets, insulation materials, and common metals.
12. Fixed Manhole Ladders: Arranged for attachment to roof or wall **OR** and floor, **as directed**, of manhole. Ladder and mounting brackets and braces shall be fabricated from nonconductive, structural-grade, fiberglass-reinforced resin **OR** hot-dip galvanized steel, **as directed**.



13. Portable Manhole Ladders: UL-listed, heavy-duty wood **OR** fiberglass, **as directed**, specifically designed for portable use for access to electrical manholes. Minimum length equal to distance from deepest manhole floor to grade plus 36 inches (900 mm). One required.
14. Cover Hooks: Heavy duty, designed for lifts 60 lbf (270 N) and greater **OR** Light duty, designed for lifts less than 60 lbf (270 N), **as directed**. Two required.

#### H. Source Quality Control

1. Test and inspect precast concrete utility structures according to ASTM C 1037.
2. Nonconcrete Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of manholes and pull boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.
  - a. Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate nonconcrete handholes and pull boxes.
  - b. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012, and traceable to NIST standards.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Corrosion Protection

1. Aluminum shall not be installed in contact with earth or concrete.

#### B. Underground Duct Application

1. Ducts for Electrical Cables Over 600 V: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-80 **OR** EPC-40 **OR** EB-20, **as directed**, -PVC, in concrete-encased duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Ducts for Electrical Feeders 600 V and Less: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-80 **OR** EPC-40 **OR** EB-20, **as directed**, -PVC, in concrete-encased duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Ducts for Electrical Feeders 600 V and Less: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-80 **OR** EPC-40 **as directed**, -PVC, in direct-buried duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Ducts for Electrical Branch Circuits: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-80 **OR** EPC-40, **as directed**, -PVC, in direct-buried duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Underground Ducts for Telephone, Communications, or Data Utility Service Cables: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40 **OR** EB-20, **as directed**, -PVC, in concrete-encased duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.
6. Underground Ducts for Telephone, Communications, or Data Utility Service Cables: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC **OR** Underground plastic utilities duct, NEMA Type DB-60-PVC **OR** Underground plastic utilities duct, NEMA Type DB-120-PVC, **as directed**, installed in direct-buried **OR** concrete-encased, **as directed**, duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.
7. Underground Ducts for Telephone, Communications, or Data Circuits: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40 **OR** DB-60 **OR** DB-120, **as directed**, -PVC, in direct-buried duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.
8. Underground Ducts for Telephone, Communications, or Data Circuits: RNC, NEMA Type EB-20-PVC, in concrete-encased duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.
9. Underground Ducts Crossing Paved Paths **OR** Walks and Driveways **OR** Roadways and Railroads, **as directed**: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, encased in reinforced concrete.

#### C. Underground Enclosure Application

1. Handholes and Pull Boxes for 600 V and Less, Including Telephone, Communications, and Data Wiring:
  - a. Units in Roadways and Other Deliberate Traffic Paths: Precast concrete, AASHTO HB 17, H-10 **OR** H-20, **as directed**, structural load rating.
  - b. Units in Driveway, Parking Lot, and Off-Roadway Locations, Subject to Occasional, Nondeliberate Loading by Heavy Vehicles: Precast concrete, AASHTO HB 17, H-20 **OR** Polymer concrete, SCTE 77, Tier 15 **OR** Fiberglass enclosures with polymer concrete frame and cover, SCTE 77, Tier 15 **OR** Fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, SCTE 77, Tier 15 **OR** High-density plastic, SCTE 77, Tier 15, **as directed**, structural load rating.



- c. Units in Sidewalk and Similar Applications with a Safety Factor for Nondeliberate Loading by Vehicles: Precast concrete, AASHTO HB 17, H-10 **OR** Polymer concrete units, SCTE 77, Tier 8 **OR** Heavy-duty fiberglass units with polymer concrete frame and cover, SCTE 77, Tier 8 **OR** High-density plastic, SCTE 77, Tier 8, **as directed**, structural load rating.
  - d. Units Subject to Light-Duty Pedestrian Traffic Only: Fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin **OR** High-density plastic, **as directed**, structurally tested according to SCTE 77 with 3000-lbf (13 345-N) vertical loading.
  2. Manholes: Precast or cast-in-place concrete.
    - a. Units Located in Roadways and Other Deliberate Traffic Paths by Heavy or Medium Vehicles: H-20 structural load rating according to AASHTO HB 17.
    - b. Units Not Located in Deliberate Traffic Paths by Heavy or Medium Vehicles: H-10 load rating according to AASHTO HB 17.
- D. Earthwork
1. Excavation and Backfill: Comply with Division 31 Section "Earth Moving", but do not use heavy-duty, hydraulic-operated, compaction equipment.
  2. Restore surface features at areas disturbed by excavation and reestablish original grades, unless otherwise indicated. Replace removed sod immediately after backfilling is completed.
  3. Restore areas disturbed by trenching, storing of dirt, cable laying, and other work. Restore vegetation and include necessary topsoiling, fertilizing, liming, seeding, sodding, sprigging, and mulching. Comply with Division 32 Section(s) "Turf And Grasses" AND "Plants".
  4. Cut and patch existing pavement in the path of underground ducts and utility structures according to Division 01 Section "Cutting And Patching".
- E. Duct Installation
1. Slope: Pitch ducts a minimum slope of 1:300 down toward manholes and handholes and away from buildings and equipment. Slope ducts from a high point in runs between two manholes to drain in both directions.
  2. Curves and Bends: Use 5-degree angle couplings for small changes in direction. Use manufactured long sweep bends with a minimum radius of 48 inches (1220 mm) **OR** 12.5 feet (4 m) **OR** 25 feet (7.5 m), **as directed**, both horizontally and vertically, at other locations, unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Joints: Use solvent-cemented joints in ducts and fittings and make watertight according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger couplings so those of adjacent ducts do not lie in same plane.
  4. Duct Entrances to Manholes and Concrete and Polymer Concrete Handholes: Use end bells, spaced approximately 10 inches (250 mm) o.c. for 5-inch (125-mm) ducts, and vary proportionately for other duct sizes.
    - a. Begin change from regular spacing to end-bell spacing 10 feet (3 m) from the end bell without reducing duct line slope and without forming a trap in the line.
    - b. Direct-Buried Duct Banks: Install an expansion and deflection fitting in each conduit in the area of disturbed earth adjacent to manhole or handhole.
    - c. Grout end bells into structure walls from both sides to provide watertight entrances.
  5. Building Wall Penetrations: Make a transition from underground duct to rigid steel conduit at least 10 feet (3 m) outside the building wall without reducing duct line slope away from the building, and without forming a trap in the line. Use fittings manufactured for duct-to-conduit transition. Install conduit penetrations of building walls as specified in Division 26 Section "Common Work Results For Electrical".
  6. Sealing: Provide temporary closure at terminations of ducts that have cables pulled. Seal spare ducts at terminations. Use sealing compound and plugs to withstand at least 15-psig (1.03-MPa) hydrostatic pressure.
  7. Pulling Cord: Install 100-lbf- (445-N-) test nylon cord in ducts, including spares.
  8. Concrete-Encased Ducts: Support ducts on duct separators.
    - a. Separator Installation: Space separators close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of ducts, with not less than 4 **OR** 5, **as directed**, spacers per 20 feet (6 m) of duct. Secure



- separators to earth and to ducts to prevent floating during concreting. Stagger separators approximately 6 inches (150 mm) between tiers. Tie entire assembly together using fabric straps; do not use tie wires or reinforcing steel that may form conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
- b. Concreting Sequence: Pour each run of envelope between manholes or other terminations in one continuous operation.
    - 1) Start at one end and finish at the other, allowing for expansion and contraction of ducts as their temperature changes during and after the pour. Use expansion fittings installed according to manufacturer's written recommendations, or use other specific measures to prevent expansion-contraction damage.
    - 2) If more than one pour is necessary, terminate each pour in a vertical plane and install 3/4-inch (19-mm) reinforcing rod dowels extending 18 inches (450 mm) into concrete on both sides of joint near corners of envelope.
  - c. Pouring Concrete: Spade concrete carefully during pours to prevent voids under and between conduits and at exterior surface of envelope. Do not allow a heavy mass of concrete to fall directly onto ducts. Use a plank to direct concrete down sides of bank assembly to trench bottom. Allow concrete to flow to center of bank and rise up in middle, uniformly filling all open spaces. Do not use power-driven agitating equipment unless specifically designed for duct-bank application.
  - d. Reinforcement: Reinforce concrete-encased duct banks where they cross disturbed earth and where indicated. Arrange reinforcing rods and ties without forming conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
  - e. Forms: Use walls of trench to form side walls of duct bank where soil is self-supporting and concrete envelope can be poured without soil inclusions; otherwise, use forms.
  - f. Minimum Space between Ducts: 3 inches (75 mm) between ducts and exterior envelope wall, 2 inches (50 mm) between ducts for like services, and 4 inches (100 mm) between power and signal ducts.
  - g. Depth: Install top of duct bank at least 24 inches (600 mm) below finished grade in areas not subject to deliberate traffic, and at least 30 inches (750 mm) below finished grade in deliberate traffic paths for vehicles, unless otherwise indicated.
  - h. Stub-Ups:
    - 1) Use manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor, unless otherwise indicated. Extend concrete encasement throughout the length of the elbow.  
**OR**  
Use manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor.
      - a) Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches (75 mm) of concrete.
      - b) Stub-Ups to Equipment: For equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches (1500 mm) from edge of base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
  - i. Warning Tape: Bury warning tape approximately 12 inches (300 mm) above all concrete-encased ducts and duct banks. Align tape parallel to and within 3 inches (75 mm) of the centerline of duct bank. Provide an additional warning tape for each 12-inch (300-mm) increment of duct-bank width over a nominal 18 inches (450 mm). Space additional tapes 12 inches (300 mm) apart, horizontally.
9. Direct-Buried Duct Banks:
- a. Support ducts on duct separators coordinated with duct size, duct spacing, and outdoor temperature.
  - b. Space separators close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of ducts, with not less than 4 **OR** 5, **as directed**, spacers per 20 feet (6 m) of duct. Secure separators to earth and to ducts to prevent displacement during backfill and yet permit linear duct movement



due to expansion and contraction as temperature changes. Stagger spacers approximately 6 inches (150 mm) between tiers.

- c. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for duct bank. Prepare trench bottoms as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for pipes less than 6 inches (150 mm) in nominal diameter.
- d. Install backfill as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".
- e. After installing first tier of ducts, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point and work toward end of duct run, leaving ducts at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Repeat procedure after placing each tier. After placing last tier, hand-place backfill to 4 inches (100 mm) over ducts and hand tamp. Firmly tamp backfill around ducts to provide maximum supporting strength. Use hand tamper only. After placing controlled backfill over final tier, make final duct connections at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".
- f. Install ducts with a minimum of 3 inches (75 mm) between ducts for like services and 6 inches (150 mm) between power and signal ducts.
- g. Depth: Install top of duct bank at least 36 inches (900 mm) below finished grade, unless otherwise indicated.
- h. Set elevation of bottom of duct bank below the frost line.
- i. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor, unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout the length of the elbow.

**OR**

Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor.

- 1) Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches (75 mm) of concrete.
  - 2) For equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches (1500 mm) from edge of equipment pad or foundation. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
- j. Warning Planks: Bury warning planks approximately 12 inches (300 mm) above direct-buried ducts and duct banks, placing them 24 inches (600 mm) o.c. Align planks along the width and along the centerline of duct bank. Provide an additional plank for each 12-inch (300-mm) increment of duct-bank width over a nominal 18 inches (450 mm). Space additional planks 12 inches (300 mm) apart, horizontally.

**F. Installation Of Concrete Manholes, Handholes, And Pull Boxes**

1. Cast-in-Place Manhole Installation:
  - a. Finish interior surfaces with a smooth-troweled finish.
  - b. Windows for Future Duct Connections: Form and pour concrete knockout panels 1-1/2 to 2 inches (38 to 50 mm) thick, arranged as indicated.
  - c. Cast-in-place concrete, formwork, and reinforcement are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
2. Precast Concrete Handhole and Manhole Installation:
  - a. Comply with ASTM C 891, unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Install units level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting ducts to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
  - c. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1-inch (25-mm) sieve to No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
3. Elevations:
  - a. Manhole Roof: Install with rooftop at least 15 inches (380 mm) below finished grade.
  - b. Manhole Frame: In paved areas and trafficways, set frames flush with finished grade. Set other manhole frames 1 inch (25 mm) above finished grade.
  - c. Install handholes with bottom below the frost line, below grade.



- d. Handhole Covers: In paved areas and trafficways, set surface flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes 1 inch (25 mm) above finished grade.
  - e. Where indicated, cast handhole cover frame integrally with handhole structure.
  4. Drainage: Install drains in bottom of manholes where indicated. Coordinate with drainage provisions indicated.
  5. Manhole Access: Circular opening in manhole roof; sized to match cover size.
    - a. Manholes with Fixed Ladders: Offset access opening from manhole centerlines to align with ladder.
    - b. Install chimney, constructed of precast concrete collars and rings to support frame and cover and to connect cover with manhole roof opening. Provide moisture-tight masonry joints and waterproof grouting for cast-iron frame to chimney.
  6. Waterproofing: Apply waterproofing to exterior surfaces of manholes and handholes after concrete has cured at least three days. Waterproofing materials and installation are specified in Division 07 Section(s) "Elastomeric Sheet Waterproofing" OR "Thermoplastic Sheet Waterproofing", **as directed**. After ducts have been connected and grouted, and before backfilling, waterproof joints and connections and touch up abrasions and scars. Waterproof exterior of manhole chimneys after mortar has cured at least three days.
  7. Dampproofing: Apply dampproofing to exterior surfaces of manholes and handholes after concrete has cured at least three days. Dampproofing materials and installation are specified in Division 07 Section "Bituminous Dampproofing". After ducts have been connected and grouted, and before backfilling, dampproof joints and connections and touch up abrasions and scars. Dampproof exterior of manhole chimneys after mortar has cured at least three days.
  8. Hardware: Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, and cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated.
  9. Fixed Manhole Ladders: Arrange to provide for safe entry with maximum clearance from cables and other items in manholes.
  10. Field-Installed Bolting Anchors in Manholes and Concrete Handholes: Do not drill deeper than 3-7/8 inches (98 mm) for manholes and 2 inches (50 mm) for handholes, for anchor bolts installed in the field. Use a minimum of two anchors for each cable stanchion.
  11. Warning Sign: Install "Confined Space Hazard" warning sign on the inside surface of each manhole cover.
- G. Installation Of Handholes And Pull Boxes Other Than Precast Concrete
1. Install handholes and pull boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting ducts to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances. Use box extension if required to match depths of ducts, and seal joint between box and extension as recommended by the manufacturer.
  2. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch (12.7-mm) sieve to No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
  3. Elevation: In paved areas and trafficways, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes 1 inch (25 mm) above finished grade.
  4. Install handholes and pull boxes with bottom below the frost line, below grade.
  5. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables, but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in the enclosure.
  6. Field-cut openings for ducts and conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.
  7. For enclosures installed in asphalt paving and subject to occasional, nondeliberate, heavy-vehicle loading, form and pour a concrete ring encircling, and in contact with, enclosure and with top surface screeded to top of box cover frame. Bottom of ring shall rest on compacted earth.
    - a. Concrete: 3000 psi (20 kPa), 28-day strength, complying with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete", with a troweled finish.



b. Dimensions: 10 inches wide by 12 inches deep (250 mm wide by 300 mm deep).

H. Grounding

1. Ground underground ducts and utility structures according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".

I. Field Quality Control

1. Perform the following tests and inspections:

a. Demonstrate capability and compliance with requirements on completion of installation of underground ducts and utility structures.

b. Pull aluminum or wood test mandrel through duct to prove joint integrity and test for out-of-round duct. Provide mandrel equal to 80 percent fill of duct. If obstructions are indicated, remove obstructions and retest.

c. Test manhole and handhole grounding to ensure electrical continuity of grounding and bonding connections. Measure and report ground resistance as specified in Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".

2. Correct deficiencies and retest as specified above to demonstrate compliance.

3. Prepare test and inspection reports.

J. Cleaning

1. Pull leather-washer-type duct cleaner, with graduated washer sizes, through full length of ducts. Follow with rubber duct swab for final cleaning and to assist in spreading lubricant throughout ducts.

2. Clean internal surfaces of manholes, including sump. Remove foreign material.

END OF SECTION 33 01 30 81



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
33 01 30 81	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
33 01 30 81	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
33 01 30 81	22 05 76 00	Sanitary Sewerage
33 01 30 81	33 01 10 58	Repair And Maintenance Of Imhoff Tanks
33 01 30 81	33 01 30 42	Repair And Maintenance Of Siphon Tank And Siphons
33 01 30 81	33 42 11 00	Storm Drainage
33 01 30 81	31 32 19 16	Sewage Treatment Lagoons
33 01 30 82	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
33 01 30 82	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
33 01 30 82	22 05 76 00	Sanitary Sewerage
33 01 30 82	33 01 10 58	Repair And Maintenance Of Imhoff Tanks
33 01 30 82	33 01 30 42	Repair And Maintenance Of Siphon Tank And Siphons
33 01 30 86	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
33 01 30 86	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
33 01 30 86	22 05 76 00	Sanitary Sewerage
33 01 30 86	33 01 10 58	Repair And Maintenance Of Imhoff Tanks
33 01 30 86	33 01 30 42	Repair And Maintenance Of Siphon Tank And Siphons
33 01 30 89	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
33 01 34 13	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 33 05 07 13 - TRENCHLESS EXCAVATION USING MICROTUNNELING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of trenchless excavation using microtunneling. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Design Requirements

1. Pipe Casing: Provide pipe casing in thickness indicated of polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic **OR** clay tile **OR** concrete **OR** steel, **as directed**, pipe. Provide utility line accessories, valves, connections, and manholes as specified and where indicated. Submit design calculations of pipe casing.

#### C. Submittals: Submit the following:

1. Preconstruction Submittals: Microtunneling Boring Machine equipment to be used.
2. Product Data
  - a. Piping casing, joints, fittings, valves, and couplings
  - b. Bentonite
  - c. Submit manufacturer's standard drawings or catalog cuts, except submit both drawings and cuts for push-on and rubber-gasketed bell-and-spigot joints. Include information concerning gaskets with submittal for joints and couplings.
3. Design Data: Design calculations of pipe casing
4. Certificates
  - a. Piping casing piping, fittings, joints, valves, and coupling
  - b. Shop-applied linings
  - c. Certificates shall attest that tests set forth in each applicable referenced publication have been performed, whether specified in that publication to be mandatory or otherwise and that production control tests have been performed at the intervals or frequency specified in the publication. Other tests shall have been performed within 3 years of the date of submittal or certificates on the same type, class, grade, and size of material as is being provided for the project.
5. Manufacturer's Instructions: Installation procedures for pipe casing

#### D. Delivery, Storage, and Handling:

1. Inspect materials delivered to site for damage. Unload and store with minimum handling. Store materials on site in enclosures or under protective covering. Store plastic piping, jointing materials and rubber gaskets under cover out of direct sunlight. Do not store materials directly on the ground. Keep inside of pipes, fittings, and valves free of dirt and debris.
2. Handle pipe, fittings, valves, hydrants, and other accessories in a manner to ensure delivery to the excavation in sound undamaged condition. Take special care to avoid injury to coatings and linings on pipe and fittings; make satisfactory repairs if coatings or linings are damaged. Carry, do not drag pipe to the excavation. Store plastic piping, jointing materials and rubber gaskets that are not to be installed immediately, under cover out of direct sunlight. Handle steel pipe with coal-tar enamel **OR** coal-tar epoxy, **as directed**, coating in accordance with the provisions for handling coal-tar enamel coated pipe in AWWA C203.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Design Calculations of Pipe Casing: Submit design calculations of pipe casing demonstrating that the pipe casing selected has been designed to support the maximum anticipated earth loads and superimposed live loads, both static and dynamic, which may be imposed on the pipe casing.



## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Piping Casing Materials

1. Ductile-Iron Piping
  - a. Pipe and Fittings: Pipe, except flanged pipe, ANSI/AWWA C151/A21.51 Pressure Class and/or Thickness Class as required to meet Project requirements. The outside diameter of ductile iron microtunneling pipe shall be in accordance with AWWA C150/A21.50.
  - b. Joints and Jointing Material: Joints: Pressure and gravity microtunneling pipe shall have either an integral-bell push-on or rubber gasket coupled joint meeting the following criteria:
    - 1) Integral-bell push-on joint microtunneling pipe shall consist of a rubber-gasket joint manufactured to conform with AWWA C111/A21.11 and the dimensions shown in ANSI/AWWA C151/A21.51. The exterior of the pipe shall be coated with a durable cement-mortar or concrete coating applied in such a manner as to provide a uniform outside diameter.
    - 2) Cement-mortar or concrete strength, reinforcement and method of placement shall be in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Durable Coatings of other types may be substituted provided they maintain a uniform outside diameter and they are approved by the designer. Rubber gasket coupled microtunneling joint shall be manufactured so as to provide a joint which has the same nominal outside diameter as the pipe barrel.
2. Polyvinyl Chloride Pipe (PVC): ASTM F 794. ASTM D 3212 for gasketed joint systems. ASTM F 477 for gasket materials.
3. Reinforced Concrete Pipe
  - a. Nominal dimensions: Typical nominal dimensions for reinforced concrete pipe are detailed in ASTM standards ASTM C 76 (ASTM C 76M), ASTM C 361 (ASTM C361M), ASTM C 655 (ASTM C 655M), ASTM C 822. Pipe meeting these requirements is generally acceptable for jacking. The permissible variation allowed with respect to these and other dimensions shall be in accordance with the variations listed in the section.
  - b. Joints and Jointing Material: Joint shall be formed entirely of concrete and as detailed in the contract drawings, may **OR** shall, **as directed**, utilize a rubber gasket or mastic to provide the seal. Incorporate an assembly of steel bands or steel bell ends and spigot rings and rubber gaskets in accordance with contract drawings.
4. Steel Pipe
  - a. Steel pipe shall be in conformance with ASTM A 139, Grade B with a minimum yield strength of 35,000 psi (242 MPa) **OR** AWWA C200 **OR** API SPEC 5L Grade B **OR** ASTM A 53 **OR** ASTM A 716 **OR** ASTM A 746, **as directed**. Steel pipe shall be welded, seamless, square cut with even lengths and shall comply of Articles 4.2, 4.3, and 4.4 of the API SPEC 5L.
  - b. Joints: The connection of adjacent pieces of microtunneling steel pipe may be accomplished by field butt welding, internal weld sleeves, integral press fit connectors, as long as loading and installation design criteria are met.
5. Fiberglass Pipe
  - a. Pipe: Fiberglass pipe shall meet the requirements of ASTM D 3262, Type 1, Liner 2, Grade 3. The method of the manufacture shall be centrifugal casting resulting in a controlled outside diameter. Minimum wall thickness shall be +1.5 inches (+38 mm).
  - b. Joints: The pipes shall be connected by gasket-sealed bell-spigot joints. The gasket material shall meet requirements of ASTM F 477. The joint shall meet the requirements of ASTM D 4161 and shall be leak-free under the following conditions:
    - 1) External pressures up to 2 bars, 29 psi (200 kPa) from bentonite injection, slurry system operation or groundwater head.
    - 2) Internal air testing up to 5 psi (35 kPa).
    - 3) Gaps between the pipe ends up to two percent of the diameter (maximum of 1-inch (25 mm)).



- c. The liner shall consist of a minimum thickness of 0.04 inch (1.2 mm) of reinforced polyester resin. The outside pipe coating shall have a minimum thickness of 0.03 inches (one mm) and shall consist of thermosetting polyester resin and sand.
6. Vitrified Clay Pipe: ASTM C 700.
  - a. Pipe: Vitrified clay pipe shall be manufactured from fire clay, shale, surface clay, or a combination that can meet three edge bearing strength for nominal diameters ranging from 4 inches 2000 lb/linear foot (100 mm 2980 kg/m) to 42 inches 7000 lb/linear foot (1050 mm 10430 kg/m).
  - b. Joints: Joints shall be capable of supporting a shear load of 50 pounds per inch (8755 N/m) of nominal diameter uniformly applied over an arc of not less than 120 degrees (2.09 rad) and along a distance of 12 inches (300 mm) adjacent to the joint. Apply an internal 10 foot (3 m) head 4.3 psi (30 kPa) of water pressure for a period of one hour. Joints shall fully comply with ASTM C 1208 (ASTM C 1208M).
7. Concrete: Concrete shall be 3000 psi (25 MPa) and conform with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
8. Bentonite: Bentonite shall conform with API SPEC 13A and have the capacity of mixing with water to form a stable and homogeneous suspension.
9. Backfill: Reuse excavated sand for backfill that conforms with Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Preparation

1. Access Shafts
  - a. Construction methods required to provide access shafts for microtunneling shall be subject to approval of the Owner. Acceptable construction methods may include the use of interlocked steel sheet piling or precast circular concrete segments lowered in place during excavation.
  - b. Final dimensions of access shafts selected by the Contractor shall be modified as required following installation of pipe casings to the size and shape of acceptable manhole designs shown on the Contract Drawings to permit installation of conveyance piping.
  - c. Shafts shall be of a size commensurate with safe working practices and located as shown on plans. With the approval of the Owner, the Contractor may relocate shafts to better suit the capabilities of the microtunneling method proposed. Where no locations are given, the Contractor shall determine such officer.
  - d. Shaft locations shall, where possible, be kept clear of road intersections and within a single traffic lane, in order to minimize disruption to the flow of traffic. Support equipment, spoil piles, and materials shall also be located such as to minimize disruption to traffic and are subject to the approval of the Owner.
  - e. The Contractor shall properly support all excavations and prevent movement of the soil, pavement, utilities or structures outside of the excavation. The Contractor shall furnish, place and maintain sheeting, bracing, and lining required to support the sides and floor of all pits and to provide adequate protection of the work, personnel, and the general public. Design loads on the sides of the jacking and receiving pit walls are dependent on the construction method and flexibility of the wall systems.
  - f. Construct a starter shaft to accommodate the installation of pipe casings, slurry shield and piping jacking device. Install thrust block as required and consolidate the ground (grout) where the casings exit the shaft.
  - g. Construct a receiver shaft to accommodate the installation of pipe casings and the slurry shield. Consolidate the ground (grout) where the casings enter the shaft.
  - h. The Contractor shall furnish, install, and maintain equipment to keep the jacking shaft free of excess water. The Contractor shall also provide surface protection during the period of construction to ensure that surface runoff does not enter driving shaft(s). Groundwater dewatering shall comply with the approved dewatering plan and shall not affect



surrounding soils or structures beyond the tolerances stated in paragraph entitled "Settlement, Alignment and Tolerances."

- i. Provide security fence around all access shaft areas and provide shaft cover(s) when the shaft area is not in use.
- j. Design of the jacking and receiving pit supports should also take into account the loading from shield or pipe jacking where appropriate, as well as special provisions and reinforcement around the breakout location. The base of the pits shall be designed to withstand uplift forces from the full design head of water, unless approved dewatering or other ground modification methods are employed.
- k. Where a thrust block is required to transfer jacking loads into the soil, it shall be properly designed and constructed by the Contractor. The backstop shall be normal (square) with the proposed pipe alignment and shall be designed to withstand the maximum jacking pressure to be used with a factor of safety of at least 2.0. It shall also be designed to minimize excessive deflections in such a manner as to avoid disturbance of adjacent structures or utilities or excessive ground movement. If a concrete thrust block or treated soil zone is utilized to transfer jacking loads into the soil, the tunnel boring is not to be jacked until the concrete or other materials have attained the required strength.
- l. Pit Backfill and Compaction: Upon completion of the pipe drive and approval of the installed pipeline by the Owner, remove all equipment, debris, and unacceptable materials from the pits and commence backfilling operation. Backfilling, compaction and pavement repairs shall be completed in accordance with Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".
- m. If tremie concrete sealing slabs are placed within the earth support system to prevent groundwater inflow when access shafts are dewatered, the sealing slabs shall be of sufficient thickness to provide a factor of safety equal to 1.2 against hydrostatic uplift in order to prevent bottom blowout when the excavation is completely dewatered.

#### B. Installation

1. Installation of Tracer Wire: Install a continuous length of tracer wire for the full length of each run of nonmetallic pipe. Attach wire to top of pipe in such a manner that will not be displaced during construction operations.
2. Connections to Existing Lines: Make connections to existing lines after the Owner approval is obtained and with a minimum interruption of service on the existing line. Make connections to existing lines under pressure in accordance with the recommended procedures of the manufacturer of the pipe being tapped.
3. Minimum depth of cover over the pipe being installed shall be 6 feet (1.8 m) or 1.5 times the outer diameter of the pipe being installed.
4. Settlement, Alignment and Tolerances
  - a. Settlement or heave of ground surface along centerline of microtunneling alignments during and after installation of pipe casings shall not exceed 1 inch (25 mm).
  - b. No more than 1 inch (25 mm) lateral and 1 inch (25 mm) vertical deviation shall be permitted in the position of the completed jacked pipe casings. Water shall be free draining between any two points at the pipe invert. No reverse grades will be allowed.
  - c. Overcut shall not exceed 1 inch (25 mm) on the radius of the pipe being installed. The annular space created by the overcut must be filled with the lubrication material that is used to reduce soil friction drag on the pipe.
5. Microtunneling
  - a. Using Unmanned Tunneling Machine
    - 1) The microtunneling boring machine shall be an unmanned mechanical type earth pressure counter-balanced bentonite slurry shield system. The machine shall be laser guided and monitored continuously, with a closed circuit television system. The machine shall be capable of fully supporting the face both during excavation and during shutdown and shall have the capability, of positively measuring the earth pressure at the face. Excavation face pressure shall be maintained at all times between the measured active earth pressure and 50 percent of the computed passive earth pressure. Fluid pressure applied at the face to stabilize the



- excavation shall be maintained at a level slightly in excess of normal hydrostatic pressure and shall be monitored continuously. The machine shall be operated so as to prevent either surface heave or loss of ground during tunneling and shall be steerable and capable of controlling the advance of the heading to maintain line and grade within the tolerances specified in paragraph entitled "Settlement, Alignment and Tolerances." The machine shall be capable of handling and removing materials of high water content from the machine head.
- 2) Each pipe casing section shall be jacked forward as the excavation progresses in such a way to provide complete and adequate, ground support at all times. A bentonite slurry (driller's mud) shall be applied to the external surface of the pipe to reduce skin friction. A jacking frame shall be provided for developing a uniform distribution of jacking forces around the periphery of the pipe. A plywood spacer shall be placed on the outer shoulder of the pipe casing joint. The thrust reaction backstop shall be properly designed and constructed.
  - 3) The backstop shall be normal (square) with the proposed pipe casing alignment and shall be designed to support the maximum obtainable jacking pressure with a safety factor at least 2.0.
  - 4) The jacking system shall be capable of continuously monitoring the jacking pressure and rate of advancement. Special care shall be taken when setting the pipe guard rails in the starter shaft to ensure correctness of the alignment, grade and stability.
- b. Using Tunneling Shields
- 1) Only tunneling equipment capable of fully supporting the face of the tunnel shall be used for pipe jacking work described.
  - 2) Tunneling equipment selected for the project shall be compatible with the geotechnical information contained in this contract. The tunneling equipment shall be capable of tunneling through mixed face conditions without exceeding the settlement tolerances specified in paragraph "Settlement, Alignment and Tolerances."
  - 3) Face pressure exerted at the heading by the tunneling machine shall be maintained as required to prevent loss of ground, groundwater inflows, and settlement or heave of the ground surface by balancing soils and groundwater pressures present.
  - 4) Dewatering for groundwater control shall be allowed at the jacking and receiving pits only.
- c. Do not jack pipe casing until the concrete thrust block and tremie seal (if selected), and grouted soil zone in starter and receiving shafts have attained the required strength.
- d. The pipe casing shall be jacked in place without damaging the pipe casing joints or completed pipe casing section.
- e. After completion of the jacking operation between starter and receiver shafts, the lubricate material shall be displaced from between the pipe casing exterior and the surrounding ground by a cement grout. Pressure and the amount of grout shall be controlled to avoid pipe damage and displacement of the pipe and soil beyond the tolerances specified in paragraph "Settlement, Alignment and Tolerances." Grouting shall be accomplished promptly after pipe installation has been completed to prevent any surface settlement due to movement of soil material into the void space or loosened zone around the pipe casing.
- f. Any pipe casing which has been damaged during installation shall be replaced by the Contractor at no additional cost. If a new replacement pipe casing is required extending from the starter to the receiver shaft, it shall be installed in conformance with the contract drawings and this section.
- g. Steel pipe casing joints shall be continuously welded with butt joint per AWS D1.1. The welds shall attain the full strength of the pipe and shall result in a full watertight section. The inner face of internal weld seam shall be flush with the pipe to facilitate the installation of the conveyance pipe in the pipe casing.
- h. Perform all welding in accordance with requirements for shielded metal arc welding of AWS D1.5 for bridges and AWS D1.1 for buildings and other structures.
- i. Fiberglass pipe casing joints shall be fully watertight and shall attain the full strength of the pipe. Casing joints shall be field connected with sleeve couplings or bell and spigot type



- joints that utilize elastomeric sealing gaskets as the sole means to maintain joint water tightness.
- j. The joint shall have the same outside diameter as the pipe so when the pipelines are assembled such that the joints are flush with the pipe inside and outside surface to facilitate installation of it conveyance pipe in the pipe casing.
  - k. All excavated material from tunnel and shaft construction shall be disposed of away from the construction site. On-site storage of material must comply with Division 01 requirements and must be stored in areas shown on site drawings or as directed. Stockpiling shall be permitted on the construction site and material shall be removed at regular intervals as directed by the Owner.
  - l. Monitor ground movements associated with the project and make suitable changes in the construction methods that control ground movements and prevent damage or detrimental movement to the work and adjacent structures and pavements.
  - m. Install instrumentation, take readings and provide the Owner with weekly reports containing measurements data with weekly reports to inspector. These actions are meant to supplement the Contractor's monitoring system and do not relieve the Contractor of its responsibility, nor place on the Owner, responsibility for control of ground movement and protection of the project and adjacent structures. Instrumentation readings shall be continued for a period of time as directed by the Owner after pipe casings have been installed to establish that detrimental settlement has not occurred.
  - n. Unprotected mining of the tunnel bore is not permitted. The tunnel face and bore shall be fully supported at all times.
  - o. A topographic survey will be performed by the Contractor before and after microtunneling and at intervals as directed by the Owner. Survey markers will be installed by the contractor at grid points located as directed by the Owner centered on the proposed tunnel alignments. Perform all remedial work including repaired if heave or settlement greater than 1 inch (25 mm) is recorded.
  - p. Approval by the Owner of the topographic survey and final set of readings provided by the Contractor will constitute partial approval of the microtunneling phase of work.
6. Ventilation: Adequate ventilation shall be provided for all cased tunnels and shafts. Follow confined space entry procedures. Local burn permit regulations must be obeyed and complied with. The design of ventilating system shall include such factors as the volume required to furnish fresh air in the shafts, and the volume to remove dust that may be caused by the cutting of the face and other operations which may impact the laser guidance system.
  7. Lighting: Adequate lighting shall be provided for the nature of the activity being conducted by workers for the microtunneling. Both power and lighting circuits shall be separated and thoroughly insulated with ground fault interrupters are required. Lights shall comply with requirements with regards to shatter resistance and illumination requirements.
  8. Spoil Transportation: The soil transportation system shall match the excavation rate with rate of spoil removal. The system must also be capable of balancing groundwater pressures and adjustment to maintain face stability for the particular soil conditions of this project.
  9. Pipe Jacking Equipment: The main jacking equipment installed must have a capacity greater than the anticipated jacking load. Intermediate jacking stations shall be provided by the Contractor when the total anticipated jacking force needed to complete the installation may exceed the capacity of the main jacks or the designed maximum jacking force for the pipe. The jacking system shall develop a uniform distribution of jacking forces on the end of the pipe by use of thruster rings and cushioning material.
  10. Jacking Pipe: In general, pipe used for jacking shall be smooth, round, have an even outer surface, and joints that allow for easy connections between pipes. Pipe ends shall be square and smooth so that jacking loads are minimized when the pipe is jacking. Pipe used for pipe jacking shall be capable of withstanding the jacking forces that will be imposed by the process or installation, as well as the final place loading conditions. The driving ends of the pipe and intermediate joints shall be protected from damage.





- 
- a. Any pipe showing signs of failure may be jacked through to the receiving shaft and removed. Other methods of repairing the damaged pipe may be used, as recommended by the manufacturer and subject to approval by the Owner.
  - b. The pipe manufacturer's design jacking loads shall not be exceeded during the installation process. The pipe shall be designed to take full account of all temporary installation loads.
- C. Field Quality Control
1. Field Tests and Inspections: The Contractor shall perform field tests, and provide labor, equipment, and incidentals required for testing. The Contractor shall produce evidence, when required, that any item of work has been constructed in accordance with drawings and specifications.
  2. Testing Requirements: For pressure test, use a hydrostatic pressure 50 percent greater than the maximum working pressure of the system. Hold this pressure for not less than 2 hours. For leakage test, use a hydrostatic pressure not less than the maximum working pressure of the system. Leakage test may be performed at the same time and at the same test pressure as the pressure test.

END OF SECTION 33 05 07 13



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
33 05 07 13	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
33 05 07 23	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
33 05 07 23	33 05 07 13	Trenchless Excavation Using Microtunneling
33 05 07 24	33 05 07 13	Trenchless Excavation Using Microtunneling
33 05 61 00	22 05 76 00	Sanitary Sewerage
33 05 61 00	33 42 11 00	Storm Drainage
33 05 63 00	33 01 30 81	Underground Ducts And Utility Structures
33 05 84 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
33 05 84 00	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
33 05 84 00	22 05 76 00	Sanitary Sewerage
33 05 84 00	33 01 30 81	Underground Ducts And Utility Structures
33 05 84 00	33 42 11 00	Storm Drainage
33 05 84 00	31 32 19 16	Sewage Treatment Lagoons
33 05 97 16	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 33 11 13 00 - MONITORING WELLS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for monitoring wells including drilling, casing, well screen, gravel packing, grouting, development, monitoring device, and incidental related work complete and ready for operation. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. General Requirements

1. Each system, including equipment, materials, installation, and performance, shall be in accordance with local, State, and Federal regulations, ASTM D 5092, and EPA 600-4-89-034 except as modified herein. Consider the advisory or recommended provisions to be mandatory, as though the word "shall" has been substituted for the word "should" wherever it appears. Reference to the "Project Representative" and the "Owner" shall be interpreted to mean the Owner. Additional requirements are included under Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities And Controls". Mark and secure monitoring wells to avoid unauthorized access and tampering.

#### C. Submittals:

1. Shop Drawings: Well construction.
2. Product Data
  - a. Well casing
  - b. Well screen
  - c. Filter pack
  - d. Neat cement grout
  - e. Bentonite seal
3. Certificates
  - a. Well Drilling/Development Material Handling Plan
  - b. Health and Safety Plan
  - c. Field Sampling and Laboratory Testing Plan
  - d. Treatment facility permit
  - e. Installation Survey Report
  - f. Well Development Report
  - g. Borehole Analysis Report
4. Closeout Submittals
  - a. Well Construction Permit
  - b. Shipment manifests
  - c. Delivery certificates
  - d. Treatment and disposal certificates

#### D. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver materials in an undamaged condition. Unload and store with minimal handling. Store materials in on-site enclosures or under protective coverings. Store plastic piping and jointing materials, and rubber gaskets under cover, out of direct sunlight. Store materials off the ground. Keep insides of pipes and fittings free of dirt and debris. Replace defective or damaged materials with new materials.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Required Drawings: Submit well construction drawings showing components and details of well casing, well screen, filter pack, annular seal, and associated items. Drawings shall be prepared by a State certified professional geologist or hydrogeologist, or by a State registered professional



civil engineer, hereafter referred to as the Contractor's Professional Consultant (CPC). Drawings shall be sealed.

2. Well Drilling/Development Material Handling Plan: A material handling plan shall be furnished by the Contractor 15 days prior to initiation of the work that describes phases of dealing with the potentially contaminated soil and groundwater, including the following: a schedule to be employed in the well drilling and development stages, a sequence of operations, the method of drilling and development, material hauling, proposed equipment, handling of the contaminated materials, soil and water testing requirements, and safety precautions and requirements.
3. Health and Safety Plan (HASP): Describe safety precautions for each phase of the project as specifically related to handling of soil and water removed during well drilling and development operations. Identify appropriate requirements of 29 CFR 1910 and COE EM-385-1-1. Identify safety equipment and procedures to be available and used during the project. Furnish the name and qualifications based on education, training, and work experience of the proposed Health and Safety Officer (HASO) and the members of the drill crew. The CPC may perform the responsibilities of the HASO if properly qualified.
4. Field Sampling and Laboratory Testing Plan: Describe field sampling methods and quality control procedures. Identify laboratory and laboratory methods to be used for contamination testing. Sample reports shall show sample identification for location, date, time, sample method, contamination level, name of individual sampler, identification of laboratory, and quality control procedures.
5. Treatment Facility Permit: Verification that the proposed treatment facility is permitted to accept the contaminated materials specified, prior to the start of excavation.
6. Well Development Report: Provide report, containing the following data for each well: project name and location, well designation, date and time of well installation, date and time of well development, static water level from top of well casing before development and 24 hours after development, field measurements of pH, temperature, and specific conductivity, depth of well from top of casing to bottom of well, screen length, description of development methodology size/capacity of pump or bailer, pumping rate, and recharge rate.
7. Well Construction Permit: Submit a completed permit application and a proposed method of construction to the appropriate state agency prior to construction of the well. Construction of the wells will not be allowed until an approved Well Construction Permit has been submitted to the Owner.
8. Shipment Manifests: Copies of manifests and other documentation required for shipment of waste materials within 24 hours after removal of waste from the site. Shipment manifests shall be signed by the Owner.
9. Delivery Certificates: Verification that the wastes were actually delivered to the approved treatment facility, within 7 days of shipment.
10. Treatment and Disposal Certificates: Verification that the wastes were successfully treated and remediated to the levels specified herein.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Well Casing

1. Stainless Steel Piping: ASTM A 312/A 312M, Type 304, Schedule 40S, with flush threaded joint end fittings. Threaded joints shall be wrapped with fluoropolymer tape, and provided with nitrile O-ring gaskets.
2. PVC Piping: ASTM F 480, Type 1, Grade 1, PVC 12454, NSF wc or NSF pw, Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, with flush threaded joint fittings. Threaded joints shall be wrapped with fluoropolymer tape, and provided with nitrile O-ring gaskets.

- ### B. Well Screen: Well screens shall be located as directed. The length of each screen shall be as directed. Slot size shall be as required to meet project requirements. Slotted openings shall be distributed uniformly around the circumference of the screen. Open area shall approach the formation's natural porosity.



1. Stainless Steel Screens: ASTM A 312/A 312M, Type 304, Schedule 40S, continuous slot construction, wire wound, with flush threaded joint ends.
  2. PVC Screens: ASTM D 1785, PVC 1120, NSF wc or NSF pw, Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, screen, Schedule 80, machine-slotted construction, flush threaded joint ends. Slots shall be even in width, length, and separation.
- C. Primary Filter Pack: Provide clean, durable, well-rounded, and washed quartz or granite, with less than 5 percent non-siliceous material. The filter pack shall not contain organic matter or friable materials. The filter pack shall allow free flow of water in the well, and shall prevent the infiltration of aquifer materials. Filter pack shall have a 30 percent finer than (d-30) grain size size as required to meet project requirements, and a uniformity coefficient less than 2.5, in accordance with ASTM C 117 and ASTM C 136.
- D. Secondary Filter Pack: Gradation in accordance with ASTM D 5092. Provide clean, durable, well-rounded, and washed quartz or granite. Pack shall not contain organic matter or friable materials.
- E. Annular Sealants
1. Bentonite Seal: Provide powdered, granular, pelletized, or chipped sodium **OR** calcium, **as directed**, montmorillonite in sealed containers from a commercial source, free of impurities. Diameter of pellets shall be less than one fifth the diameter of the borehole annular space to prevent bridging. Bentonite base grout shall be in accordance with ASTM D 5092.
  2. Neat Cement Grout: Provide neat cement grout in accordance with ASTM D 5092. Cement shall be in accordance with ASTM C 150. Quick setting admixtures shall not be allowed. Drilling mud or cuttings shall not be used as a sealing material.
- F. Bottom Plugs: Provide flush threaded solid plug at the bottom of the well. Plug shall be the same material as the well casing **OR** screen to which it is attached, **as directed**. Joints shall be wrapped with fluoropolymer tape and provided with nitrile O-ring gaskets.
- G. Locking Well Cap: Provide flush threaded, weatherproof, and non-removable locking well cap on the top of the well. Well cap shall be of the same material as the well casing to which it is attached. Well cap shall accommodate padlock. Provide a long shackled padlock in accordance with ASTM F 883. Provide two keys for the padlock, and turn them over to the Owner. Locks at the well site shall be keyed alike.
- H. Well Head Completions: Clearly mark and secure the well to avoid unauthorized access and tampering. Cast the words "MONITORING WELL" on the well head cover. Provide a sign reading, "WELL IS FOR MONITORING AND IS NOT SAFE FOR DRINKING." Provide stamped metal identification tag as follows:
- DO NOT DISTURB
  - ID #: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_
  - Installed By: \_\_\_\_\_
  - Total Depth: \_\_\_\_\_
  - Screened Interval: \_\_\_\_\_
  - TOC Elevation: \_\_\_\_\_
  - Other: \_\_\_\_\_
  - For Information, Call: \_\_\_\_\_
1. Aboveground Completions: Provide protective outer casing around the well casing extending above grade. The diameter of the protective outer casing shall be a minimum of 4 in. (100 mm) larger than the well casing diameter. The top of the protective outer casing shall extend a minimum of 6 in. (150 mm) above the top of the well casing cap. The protective outer casing shall be set in cement grout and the bottom of the protective well casing shall extend below the depth of the frost line **OR** to the depth indicated, **as directed**. A 1/4 in. (6 mm) diameter weep hole shall be drilled in the protective outer casing 3 in. (75 mm) above the ground surface. The annular space between the protective outer casing and the well casing shall be filled with pea gravel or coarse sand to just below the level of the cap on the well casing. The locking well cap



shall be provided on top of the protective outer casing. Provide 6 in. (150 mm) diameter steel pipe bollards, filled with concrete as indicated to protect the exposed well head.

- a. Protective Outer Casing and Bollards: ASTM A 53, Type E or S, Grade B.
  - b. Well Casing Cap: Provide cap on top of the protective outer casing. Cap shall be flush threaded and of the same material as the protective outer casing. Threaded joints shall be wrapped with fluoropolymer tape and provided with nitrile O-ring gaskets.
2. At-Grade Completions: Provide cast iron **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, vault box, 30 by 30 in. (750 by 750 mm) **OR** 12 in. (300 mm) diameter, **as directed**, with watertight frame and cover. Vault shall support H-20 loading for traffic areas **OR** a 100,000 lb. (45,360 kg) loading for airfield locations, **as directed**. The frame shall be 6 in. (150 mm) deep, and shall be set in a concrete collar a minimum of 8 in. (200 mm) thick, and extending 4 in. (100 mm) beyond the edge of the frame in all directions. Frame and concrete collar shall be set flush with the level of the existing pavement **OR** set 3 in. (75 mm) above the existing grade, **as directed**. Locking well cap shall be provided on top of the well casing, which will terminate inside the vault as indicated.
- I. Polyethylene Sheeting: ASTM D 4397.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. General: Notify the Owner at least 15 days prior to commencement of work. Locations of wells shall be as indicated. Drilling, installation, and development of the monitoring wells shall be supervised, directed, and monitored by the CPC. Drilling, sampling, and well development equipment introduced to the well shall be decontaminated before and after each use in accordance with ASTM D 5088.
- B. Drilling: Borehole shall be advanced using conventional 10 in. (250 mm) hollow-stem auger **OR** solid auger **OR** rotary wash, **as directed**, drilling methods. If it is the opinion of the CPC that an alternate drilling method is required, justification for a boring method change shall be submitted to the Owner, and approval for the change granted prior to drilling. Drill crew shall be experienced and trained in drilling and safety requirements for contaminated sites.
1. Sampling: Obtain samples in accordance with ASTM D 1586 or ASTM D 1587. Perform standard penetration tests at the following depths 0.0 to 1.5 ft (0 to 450 mm); 1.5 to 3.0 ft (450 to 900 mm); 3.0 to 4.5 ft (900 to 1350 mm); and 5 ft (1500 mm) centers or at changes in soil formation thereafter. Each soil sample shall be screened in the field with an organic vapor analyzer/flame ionization device (OVA/FID) capable of detecting vapors to a minimum of one ppm. Log boring in accordance with ASTM D 2487 and ASTM D 2488. Groundwater elevation shall be indicated.
  2. Analysis: The CPC shall review the log data from each borehole and compare the data with the well design requirements. The CPC shall verify the adequacy of the well design, or shall offer a proposed modification to the design based on the geologic and hydrogeologic data obtained from the borehole. This review and analysis shall be conducted for each borehole **OR** for one borehole considered representative of the entire project, **as directed**. The CPC shall submit the borehole boring logs, the analysis of the well design, and any proposed design modifications to the Owner in a Borehole Analysis Report. Any modifications to the well design approved by the Owner shall be considered a change to the contract documents and shall be negotiated in accordance with the "CHANGES" clause.
  3. Alignment: Verify that the well is straight by lowering a 10 ft (3 m) section of steel pipe 1/4 in. (6 mm) smaller in diameter than the inside diameter of the casing in to the well. For wells deeper than 200 ft (60 m), Contractor shall verify that the well is plumb.
- C. Soil Removed From The Borehole
1. Temporary Containment of Soil Removed from the Borehole: Soil removed from the borehole shall be placed in a temporary containment area. Provide a temporary containment area near the well site. Cover containment area with 10 mil (0.25 mm) reinforced polyethylene sheeting. Place soil removed from the borehole[s] on the impervious barrier and cover with 6 mil (0.15 mm) reinforced polyethylene sheeting. Provide a straw bale berm around the outer limits of the





containment area and cover with polyethylene sheets. Secure edges of sheets with weights to keep the polyethylene sheeting in place. Water runoff shall be diverted from the stockpiled material. As an option, soil may be stockpiled in trucks suitable for transporting contaminated soils as specified herein.

2. Testing Requirements for Stockpiled Soils

a. Sampling: A minimum of one composite sample shall be developed and analyzed for each required test for every 100 cu. yds. (76.4 cu. m) or fraction thereof from a composite stockpile of soil removed from all well sites. To develop a composite sample of the size necessary to run the required tests, the Contractor shall take several samples from different areas along the surface and in the center of the stockpile. These samples shall be combined and thoroughly mixed to develop the composite sample.

b. Testing

- 1) The soil shall contain no free liquid as demonstrated by EPA SW-846, Method 9095, paint filter liquids test.
- 2) The sum of benzene, toluene, ethyl benzene, and xylene (BTEX) concentrations shall be determined by using EPA SW-846, Method 5030/8020.
- 3) TPH (total petroleum hydrocarbons) concentrations shall be determined by using EPA SW-846, Method 8015, which has been modified for use with soil.
- 4) Material shall be tested for TOX (total organic halogens) in accordance with EPA SW-846, Method 9020.
- 5) Material shall be analyzed for full TCLP in accordance with EPA SW-846, Method 1311 and for ignitability, corrosivity, and reactivity.
- 6) Material shall be tested for polychlorinated biphenyls (PCB's) in accordance with EPA SW-846, Method 8080.
- 7) Moisture content of the sample shall be determined in accordance with EPA Method 160.3.

c. Disposal of Stockpiled Soils

- 1) Soils exhibiting TPH less than 100 ppm, BTEX less than 10 ppm, TOX less than 100 ppm, passing TCLP tests, and testing negative for PCB's shall be considered clean as shall be disposed of on-site, as directed by the Owner.
- 2) Soils failing the TCLP test or exhibiting TOX greater than 100 ppm shall be managed in accordance with applicable State and local regulations. Payment for disposal of materials failing the TCLP metals test or TOX test shall be made in accordance with the "CHANGES" clause of the General Conditions.
- 3) If the concentration of total BTEX is greater than 10 ppm or TPH greater than 100 ppm, the soil shall be treated and disposed of at a permitted soil recycling facility.

D. Well Installation: Well installation shall be in accordance with ASTM D 5092 and EPA 600-4-89-034, and as indicated on the well construction drawings submitted by the CPC and approved by the Owner. Borehole shall be stable and shall be verified straight before beginning installation.

1. Casings and Screens: Well casings, screens, plugs, and caps shall be decontaminated prior to delivery by the manufacturer and shall be certified clean. Materials shall be delivered, stored, and handled in such manner as to ensure that grease, oil, or other contaminants do not contact any portion of the well screen and casing assembly prior to installation. If directed by the Owner, the well screen and casing assembly shall be cleaned with high pressure water prior to installation. Personnel shall wear clean cotton or surgical gloves while handling the assembly. Centralizers shall be used to ensure that the well screen and casing assembly is installed concentrically in the borehole. When the assembly has been installed at the appropriate elevation, it shall be adequately secured to preclude movement during placement of the filter packs and annular seals. The top of the well casing shall be capped during filter pack placement.
2. Primary and Secondary Filter Packs: Primary and secondary filter packs shall be placed as indicated on the approved well construction drawings to fill the entire annular space between the screen and casing assembly and the outside wall of the borehole. Place both the primary and secondary filters with a tremie pipe in accordance with EPA 600-4-89-034 and ASTM D 5092. Placement of the primary and secondary filters by gravity or free fall methods is not allowed. Control speed of filter placement to prevent bridging and to allow for settlement. Prior to



- commencement of work, equipment and methods required to place filters shall be approved by the Owner.
3. **Bentonite Seal:** Bentonite shall be placed as a slurry through a tremie pipe. Control speed of bentonite placement to prevent bridging or segregation of slurry. Additional water shall be added to the annular space as directed by the CPC to ensure complete hydration of the bentonite. Bentonite shall cure a minimum of 48 hours before the placement of cement grout to ensure complete hydration and expansion of the bentonite.
  4. **Neat Cement Grout:** Cement grout shall be placed in the annular space above the bentonite seal as indicated on the well construction drawings. Cement grout shall be placed as a slurry through a tremie pipe, and injected under pressure to reduce chance of voids. Grout shall be injected in one continuous operation until full strength grout flows out at the ground surface without evidence of drilling cuttings or fluid. Cement grout shall cure a minimum of 48 hours before beginning well development operations.
  5. **Well Head Completions:** Well head completions shall be as indicated and as specified herein.
- E. **Well Development:** Well development shall be in accordance with EPA 600-4-89-034 and ASTM D 5092 except as modified herein. Bailing, surging, and pumping/overpumping/backwashing are acceptable development methods. Air surging and jetting are prohibited. Method of development shall be chosen by the CPC and approved by the Owner. Well development shall not begin until the well installation is complete and accepted by the Owner. Well development operations shall be conducted continuously until development water flows clear and free of drilling fluids, cuttings, or other materials. At such time representative water samples shall be tested for pH, temperature, and specific conductivity in accordance with EPA 600-4-79-20. Samples shall be taken every 3 hours. When stabilized readings of these parameters, as accepted by the Owner, have been achieved for 12 consecutive hours, well development operations shall cease.
- F. **Water From Well Development Operations:** Water from the well development operations shall be containerized in accordance with State and local regulations. One sample shall be taken and analyzed for each required test for every 1000 gallons (3780 liters) of stored water from well development operations.
1. **Testing**
    - a. The sum of benzene, toluene, ethyl benzene, and xylene (BTEX) concentrations shall be determined by using EPA SW-846, Method 8020.
    - b. TPH (total petroleum hydrocarbons) concentrations shall be determined by using EPA SW-846, Method 8015.
  2. **Disposal of Containerized Water**
    - a. Water exhibiting TPH less than 0.5 ppm and BTEX less than 1 ppb shall be considered clean and shall be disposed of on-site as directed by the Owner.
    - b. If the concentration of total BTEX is greater than 1 ppb or TPH greater than 0.5 ppm, the water shall be treated and disposed of at a permitted facility.
- G. **Transportation Of Contaminated Soil And Water:** The Contractor shall be solely responsible for complying with Federal, State, and local requirements for transporting contaminated materials through the applicable jurisdictions and shall bear responsibility and cost for any noncompliance. In addition to those requirements, the Contractor shall do the following:
1. Inspect and document vehicles and containers for proper operation and covering.
  2. Inspect vehicles and containers for proper markings, manifest documents, and other requirements for waste shipment.
  3. Perform and document decontamination procedures prior to leaving the worksite and again before leaving the disposal site.
- H. **Disposal Of Contaminated Soil And Water:** Contaminated materials removed from the site shall be disposed of in a treatment/disposal facility permitted to accept such materials.



- 
- I. Installation Survey: Upon completion of well installation and development and acceptance by the Owner therefor, the Contractor vertical and horizontal position of each well shall be determined by a registered land surveyor licensed in the State where the work is located . The survey shall document the vertical elevations of the top of the casing pipe and the ground surface elevation adjacent to each well. Survey shall be accurate to the nearest 0.01 ft (3 mm). This data shall be submitted with a well location map as the Installation Survey Report.
  
  - J. Cleanup: Upon completion of the well construction, remove debris and surplus materials from the jobsite.

END OF SECTION 33 11 13 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

**SECTION 33 11 13 00a - WELL REPAIR****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for repair and maintenance of water wells. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Submittals**

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

**1.2 PRODUCTS**

- A. Repair and Replacement Parts shall be clean, free of rust and scale, and of proper size and design for the specific well repair to be made.

**1.3 EXECUTION**

- A. Cement Grout may be hand mixed at the site.
- B. Level and Re-Sod Area, after heavy equipment has been used or if chemicals have been spilled.
- C. Abandoned Wells shall be sealed in accordance with AWWA A100.
- D. Disinfect well, after repair, in accordance with AWWA A100.

END OF SECTION 33 11 13 00a



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
33 11 13 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
33 11 13 00	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
33 11 13 00	22 11 23 23	Water Supply Wells
33 14 00 00	22 05 23 00a	Water Distribution
33 14 11 00	22 05 23 00a	Water Distribution
33 14 13 00	22 05 23 00a	Water Distribution
33 14 13 13	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
33 14 13 13	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
33 14 13 13	31 62 23 13	Concrete-Filled Steel Piles
33 14 13 13	22 05 23 00a	Water Distribution
33 14 13 13	22 05 76 00	Sanitary Sewerage
33 14 13 13	33 42 11 00	Storm Drainage



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





---

**SECTION 33 14 13 23 - SAND DRAINS****1.1 GENERAL****A. Description Of Work**

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of sand drains. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**B. Submittals**

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

**1.2 PRODUCTS**

- A. Galvanized Perforated Corrugated Metal Pipe: AASHTO M36.

- B. Perforated Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Plastic Pipe: ASTM D 1784.

- C. Aggregate shall be sand, gravel, crushed rock, or chat that is clean, sound, and of a good quality. Gradation shall conform to the following table:

Retained on the 1-inch sieve	0%
Retained on the 3/8-inch sieve	0-15%
Retained on the No. 8 sieve	40-60%
Retained on the No. 30 sieve	70-95%
Retained on the No. 100 sieve	98-100%

**1.3 EXECUTION**

- A. Pipe Bedding: Aggregate shall be placed in uniform layers on level excavation.

- B. Perforated Pipe shall be installed with securely aligned joints to lines and grades, which will allow proper drainage.

- C. Perforated Pipe shall be embedded with a minimum coverage of two feet of aggregate or as directed.

END OF SECTION 33 14 13 23



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 33 14 13 23a - HYDRONIC DISTRIBUTION

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for hydronic distribution. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes underground piping outside the building for distribution of heating hot and chilled water.

#### C. Performance Requirements

1. Provide components and installation capable of producing hydronic piping systems with the following minimum working-pressure ratings:
  - a. Hot-Water Piping: 100 psig (690 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**.
  - b. Chilled-Water Piping: 100 psig (690 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**.
  - c. Condenser-Water Piping: 100 psig (690 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1035 kPa), **as directed**.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data
2. Shop Drawings
3. Welding certificates.
4. Source quality-control test reports.
5. Field quality-control test reports.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
2. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation.

#### F. Project Conditions

1. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
  - a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
  - b. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without the Owner's written permission.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Piping Materials

1. Refer to Part 1.3 "Piping Application" Article for applications of pipes, tubes, fittings, and joining methods.
2. Refer to Division 33 Section "Common Work Results For Utilities" for commonly used joining materials.

#### B. Steel Pipes And Fittings

1. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Standard Weight; with plain ends.
2. Nipples: ASTM A 733, Standard Weight, seamless, carbon-steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M.



3. Malleable-Iron, Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 **OR** 300, **as directed**, with threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
4. Cast-Iron, Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Classes 125 **OR** 250, **as directed**, standard pattern, with threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
5. Steel Welding Fittings: ASME B16.9 **OR** ASTM A 234/A 234M, **as directed**, seamless or welded.
6. Ductile-Iron, Grooved-End Fittings: ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting with dimensions matching piping.
7. Steel-Pipe, Keyed Couplings: AWWA C606 for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, gasket suitable for hot water, and bolts and nuts.

#### C. Conduit Piping

1. Description: Factory-fabricated and -assembled, airtight and watertight, drainable, pressure-tested piping with conduit, inner pipe supports, and insulated carrier piping. Fabricate so insulation can be dried in place by forcing dry air through conduit.
2. Carrier Pipe: Steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B with beveled **OR** socket, **as directed**, ends for welded joints.
3. Carrier Pipe Insulation:
  - a. Mineral-Wool Pipe Insulation: ASTM C 547, Type I, molded.
    - 1) Apparent Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.31 at 200 deg F (0.044 at 93 deg C) mean temperature.
    - 2) Density: Maximum 10 lb/cu. ft. (160 kg/cu. m) average.
    - 3) Compressive Strength: 10 psig (69 kPa) minimum at 5 percent deformation.
    - 4) Bands: ASTM A 666, Type 304, stainless steel, 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide, 0.020 inch (0.5 mm) thick.
  - b. Calcium Silicate Pipe Insulation: ASTM C 533, Type I; preformed, incombustible, inorganic, with non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement.
    - 1) Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.60 at 500 deg F (0.087 at 260 deg C).
    - 2) Dry Density: 15 lb/cu. ft. (240 kg/cu. m) maximum.
    - 3) Compressive Strength: 60 psig (414 kPa) minimum at 5 percent deformation.
    - 4) Bands: ASTM A 666, Type 304, stainless steel, 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide, 0.020 inch (0.5 mm) thick.
  - c. Polyisocyanurate Foam Pipe Insulation: ASTM C 591, preformed, rigid, cellular.
    - 1) Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.14 at 75 deg F (0.020 at 24 deg C).
    - 2) Service Temperature: Minus 250 to plus 400 deg F (Minus 156 to plus 204 deg C).
    - 3) Moisture Absorption: ASTM D 2842, maximum 0.054 percent by volume.
    - 4) Minimum 90 percent closed cell.
    - 5) Dry Density: 2 lb/cu. ft. (32 kg/cu. m) maximum.
    - 6) Compressive Strength: 35 psig (242 kPa) minimum at 5 percent deformation.
    - 7) Water-Vapor Transmission: 1.26 perm inches (1.83 ng/Pa x s x m) according to ASTM E 96.
  - d. Polyurethane Foam Pipe Insulation: ASTM C 591, preformed, rigid, cellular.
    - 1) Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.13 at 75 deg F (0.019 at 24 deg C).
    - 2) Service Temperature: Minus 250 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 156 to plus 93 deg C).
    - 3) Moisture Absorption: ASTM D 2842, maximum 0.054 percent by volume.
    - 4) Minimum 90 percent closed cell.
    - 5) Dry Density: 2 lb/cu. ft. (32 kg/cu. m) maximum.
    - 6) Compressive Strength: 35 psig (242 kPa) minimum at 5 percent deformation.
    - 7) Water-Vapor Transmission: 1.26 perm inches (1.83 ng/Pa x s x m) according to ASTM E 96.
4. Minimum Clearance:
  - a. Between Carrier Pipe Insulation and Conduit: 1 inch (25 mm).
  - b. Between Insulation of Multiple Carrier Pipes: 3/16 inch (4.75 mm).
  - c. Between Bottom of Carrier Pipe Insulation and Conduit: 1 inch (25 mm).
  - d. Between Bottom of Bare, Carrier Pipe and Casing: 1-3/8 inches (35 mm).



5. Conduit: Spiral wound, steel. Finish conduit with 2 coats of fusion-bonded epoxy, minimum 20 mils (0.50 mm) thick. Cover with polyurethane foam insulation with a high-density polyethylene jacket; thickness indicated in Part 1.3 "Piping Application" Article, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Conduit: Spiral wound, bare steel. Cover with polyurethane foam insulation with a high-density polyethylene jacket; thickness indicated in Part 1.3 "Piping Application" Article.
6. Carrier Piping Supports within Conduit: Corrugated galvanized steel with a maximum spacing of 10 feet (3 m).
7. Fittings: Factory-fabricated and -insulated elbows and tees. Elbows may be bent pipe equal to carrier pipe. Tees shall be factory fabricated and insulated, and shall be compatible with the carrier pipe.
8. Expansion Offsets and Loops: Size casing to contain piping expansion.
9. Conduit accessories include the following:
  - a. Water Shed: Terminal end protector for carrier pipes entering building through floor, 3 inches (75 mm) deep and 2 inches (50 mm) larger than casing; terminate casing 20 inches (500 mm) above the floor level.
  - b. Guides and Anchors: Steel plate welded to carrier pipes and to casing, complete with vent and drainage openings inside casing.
  - c. End Seals: Steel plate welded to carrier pipes and to casing, complete with drain and vent openings on vertical centerline.
  - d. Gland Seals: Packed stuffing box and gland follower mounted on steel plate, welded to end of casing, permitting axial movement of carrier piping, with drain and vent connections on vertical centerline.
  - e. Joint Kit: Half-shell, pourable or split insulation and shrink-wrap sleeve.
10. Source Quality Control: Factory test the conduit to 15 psig (105 kPa) for a minimum of 2 minutes with no change in pressure. Factory test the carrier pipe to 150 percent of the operating pressure of system. Furnish test certificates.

#### D. Cased Piping

1. Description: Factory-fabricated piping with carrier pipe, insulation, and casing.
2. Carrier Pipe: Steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B with beveled **OR** socket, **as directed**, ends for welded joints.
3. Carrier Pipe Insulation:
  - a. Polyurethane Foam Pipe Insulation: ASTM C 591, preformed, rigid, cellular.
    - 1) Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.13 at 75 deg F (0.019 at 24 deg C).
    - 2) Service Temperature: Minus 250 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 156 to plus 93 deg C).
    - 3) Moisture Absorption: ASTM D 2842, maximum 0.054 percent by volume.
    - 4) Minimum 90 percent closed cell.
    - 5) Dry Density: 2 lb/cu. ft. (32 kg/cu. m) maximum.
    - 6) Compressive Strength: 35 psig (242 kPa) minimum at 5 percent deformation.
    - 7) Water-Vapor Transmission: 1.26 perm inches (1.83 ng/Pa x s x m) according to ASTM E 96.
4. Casing: High-density polyethylene **OR** Filament-wound, fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin **OR** PVC, **as directed**.
5. Casing accessories include the following:
  - a. Joint Kit: Half-shell, pourable or split insulation, casing sleeve, and shrink-wrap sleeve.
  - b. Expansion Blanket: Elastomeric foam, formed to fit over piping.
  - c. End Seals: Shrink wrap the casing material to seal watertight around casing and carrier pipe.
6. Source Quality Control: Factory test the carrier pipe to 150 percent of the operating pressure of system. Furnish test certificates.

#### E. Loose-Fill Insulation

1. Granular, Loose-Fill Insulation: Inorganic, nontoxic, nonflammable, sodium potassium aluminum silicate with calcium carbonate filler. Include chemical treatment that renders insulation hydrophobic.



- a. Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.60 at 175 deg F (0.087 at 79 deg C) and 0.65 at 300 deg F (0.094 at 149 deg C).
  - b. Application Temperature Range: 35 to 800 deg F (2 to 426 deg C).
  - c. Dry Density: 40 to 42 lb/cu. ft. (640 to 672 kg/cu. m).
  - d. Strength: 12,000 lb/sq. ft. (58 600 kg/sq. m).
2. Powder, Loose-Fill Insulation: Inert, nontoxic, nonflammable, calcium carbonate particles. Include chemical treatment that renders insulation hydrophobic.
- a. Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): ASTM C 177, 0.58 at 100 deg F (0.084 at 37 deg C) and 0.68 at 300 deg F (0.098 at 149 deg C).
  - b. Application Temperature Range: Minus 273 to plus 480 deg F (Minus 169 to plus 250 deg C).
  - c. Dry Density: Approximately 60 lb/cu. ft. (960 kg/cu. m).
  - d. Strength: 12,000 lb/sq. ft. (58 600 kg/sq. m).

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Earthwork: Refer to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.
- B. Piping Application
1. Hot-Water Piping: Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80, **as directed**, steel pipe with cast-iron, threaded fittings and threaded **OR** steel fittings and welded **OR** ductile-iron, grooved-end fittings and mechanical, **as directed**, joints; granular **OR** powder, loose-fill insulation.  
**OR**  
 Hot-Water Piping: Conduit piping with mineral-wool **OR** calcium silicate **OR** polyisocyanurate **OR** polyurethane, **as directed**, carrier-pipe insulation and with coated **OR** coated and insulated, **as directed**, conduit.
    - a. Insulation Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**.**OR**  
 Hot-Water Piping: Cased piping with polyurethane carrier-pipe insulation.
  2. Chilled-Water Piping: Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80, **as directed**, steel pipe with cast-iron, threaded fittings and threaded **OR** steel welding fittings and welded **OR** ductile-iron, grooved-end fittings and mechanical, **as directed**, joints; granular **OR** powder, **as directed**, loose-fill insulation.  
**OR**  
 Chilled-Water Piping: Conduit piping with mineral-wool **OR** calcium silicate **OR** polyisocyanurate **OR** polyurethane, **as directed**, carrier-pipe insulation and with coated **OR** coated and insulated, **as directed**, conduit.
    - a. Insulation Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**.**OR**  
 Chilled-Water Piping: Cased piping with polyurethane carrier-pipe insulation.
  3. Condenser-Water Piping: Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80, **as directed**, steel pipe with cast-iron, threaded fittings and threaded **OR** steel welding fittings and welded **OR** ductile-iron, grooved-end fittings and mechanical, **as directed**, joints; granular **OR** powder, **as directed**, loose-fill insulation.  
**OR**  
 Condenser-Water Piping: Conduit piping with mineral-wool **OR** calcium silicate **OR** polyisocyanurate **OR** polyurethane, **as directed**, carrier-pipe insulation and with coated **OR** coated and insulated, **as directed**, conduit.
    - a. Insulation Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**.**OR**  
 Condenser-Water Piping: Cased piping with polyurethane carrier-pipe insulation.
- C. Piping Installation



1. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawings indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated, unless deviations to layout are approved.
2. Remove any standing water in the bottom of trench.
3. Bed the pipe on a minimum 6-inch (150-mm) layer of granular fill material with a minimum 6-inch (150-mm) clearance between the pipes.
4. Do not insulate piping or backfill piping trench until field quality-control testing has been completed and results approved.
5. Install piping at uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow or as indicated.
6. Install components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
7. Install piping free of sags and bends.
8. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
9. Refer to Division 23 Section "Common Work Results For Hvac" for sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals through exterior building walls.
10. Secure anchors with concrete thrust blocks. Concrete is specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
11. Connect to hydronic piping where it passes through the building wall. Hydronic piping inside the building is specified in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping".

D. Loose-Fill Insulation Installation

1. Do not disturb the bottom of trench, or compact and stabilize it to ensure proper support.
2. Remove any standing water in the bottom of trench.
3. Form insulation trench by excavation or by installing drywall side forms to establish required height and width of the insulation.
4. Support piping with proper pitch, separation, and clearance to backfill or side forms using temporary supporting devices that can be removed after back filling with insulation.
5. Place insulation and backfill after field quality-control testing has been completed and results approved.
6. Apply bitumastic coating to carbon-steel anchors and guides. Pour concrete thrust blocks and anchors. Refer to Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete" for concrete and reinforcement.
7. Wrap piping at expansion loops and offsets with mineral-wool insulation of thickness appropriate for calculated expansion amount.
8. Pour loose-fill insulation to required dimension agitating insulation to eliminate voids around piping.
9. Remove temporary hangers and supports.
10. Cover loose-fill insulation with polyethylene sheet a minimum of 4 mils (0.10 mm) thick, and empty loose-fill insulation bags on top.
11. Manually backfill 6 inches (150 mm) of clean backfill. If mechanical compaction is required, manually backfill to 12 inches (300 mm) before using mechanical-compaction equipment.

E. Joint Construction

1. Refer to Division 33 Section "Common Work Results For Utilities" for basic piping joint construction.
2. Keyed-Coupling Joints: Cut- or roll-groove pipes. Assemble joints with keyed couplings, gaskets, lubricant, and bolts.
3. Conduit and Cased Piping Joints: Assemble sections and finish joints with pourable or split insulation, exterior jacket sleeve, and apply shrink-wrap seals as required by manufacturer's written installation instructions.

- F. Identification: Install continuous plastic underground warning tapes during back filling of trenches for underground hydronic distribution piping. Locate 6 to 8 inches (150 to 200 mm) below finished grade, directly over piping. Refer to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for warning-tape materials and devices and their installation.

G. Field Quality Control



1. Prepare hydronic piping for testing according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:
  - a. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
  - b. Isolate equipment. Do not subject equipment to test pressure.
  - c. Install relief valve set at pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure.
  - d. Fill system with water. Where there is risk of freezing, air or a safe, compatible liquid may be used.
  - e. Use vents installed at high points to release trapped air while filling system.
2. Test hydronic piping as follows:
  - a. Subject hydronic piping to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the design pressure.
  - b. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for 10 minutes, examine joints for leakage. Remake leaking joints using new materials and repeat hydrostatic test until no leaks exist.
3. Test conduit as follows:
  - a. Seal vents and drains and subject conduit to 15 psig (105 kPa) for 4 hours with no loss of pressure. Repair leaks and retest as required.
4. Prepare a written report of testing.

END OF SECTION 33 14 13 23a





## SECTION 33 14 13 23b - GROUND-LOOP HEAT-PUMP PIPING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for ground-loop, heat-pump piping. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes piping for horizontal or vertical, direct-buried, ground-loop, heat-pump systems that operate between 23 and 104 deg F (minus 5 and plus 40 deg C).

#### C. Performance Requirements

1. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure, unless otherwise indicated:
  - a. Ground-Loop, Heat-Pump Piping: 160 psig (1100 kPa) **OR** 200 psig (1380 kPa), **as directed**

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For the following:
  - a. Pipe and fittings.
  - b. Joining method and equipment.
  - c. Propylene glycol solution.
2. Field quality-control test reports.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Pipes And Fittings

1. PE Pipe: ASTM D 2239, SIDR Numbers 5.3, 7, 9, or 11.5; with PE compound number required to achieve required system working pressure.
  - a. Molded PE Fittings: ASTM D 2683 or ASTM D 3261, PE resin, socket- or butt-fusion type, made to match PE pipe dimensions and class.
2. U-Bend Assembly: Factory fabricated with embossed depth stamp every 24 inches (600 mm) **OR** 36 inches (900 mm), **as directed** from U-bend.

#### B. Borehole Backfill

1. Surface Seal: Bentonite **OR** Cement, **as directed**, with thermal conductivity greater than 1.2 Btu/h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.7 W/sq. m x K).
2. Backfill below Surface Seal: Natural or manufactured sand specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".

#### C. Antifreeze Solution

1. Propylene Glycol: Minimum 99 percent propylene glycol with corrosion inhibitors and environmental stabilizer additives to be mixed with water to protect the piping circuit and connected equipment from physical damage from freezing or corrosion.
2. Quantity: Sufficient solution for initial system startup and for preventive maintenance for one year from date of Final Completion.
3. Dilution Water: Chloride content shall be less than 25 ppm, sulfate less than 25 ppm, and hardness less than 100 ppm.



### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Earthwork

1. Excavating, trenching, warning tape, and backfilling are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".

#### B. Horizontal Piping Installation

1. Separate trenches by 10 feet (3 m) minimum, unless otherwise indicated. Remove rocks in trenches that could contact pipe.
2. Backfill to 24 inches (600 mm) above pipe with mud developed from excavated rock-free soil or with sand, pea gravel, or fly ash. Backfill from slurry level to grade with excavated soil, compacting as specified for pipe burial in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".
3. Extend pipe from trench onto the bottom of the body of water at an elevation that is at least 12 inches (300 mm) below frost line. Seal membrane or impervious liner under the body of water after installing piping.
4. Install PE piping in trenches according to ASTM D 2774 or ASTM F 645.
  - a. Clean PE pipe and fittings and make heat-fusion joints according to ASTM D 2657. Minimize number of joints.
5. Purge, flush, and pressure test piping before backfilling trenches.
6. Install continuous detectable warning tape for underground piping. Locate tape a minimum of 24 inches (600 mm) below finished grade, directly over piping. Underground warning tapes are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".
7. Common piping installation requirements are specified in Division 23 Section "Common Work Results For Hvac".

#### C. Vertical Piping Installation

1. Install PE piping in boreholes according to ASTM D 2774 or ASTM F 645.
  - a. Clean PE pipe and fittings and make heat-fusion joints according to ASTM D 2657. Minimize number of joints.
2. Purge, flush, and pressure test piping before backfilling boreholes.
3. After installation of loop pipe in borehole, fill piping loop with water or antifreeze solution, and pump backfill into borehole to discharge at base of borehole.
4. Fill borehole with backfill to a point at least 60 inches (1524 mm) below grade and backfill remainder with surface seal material.
5. Extend piping and connect to water-source, ground-loop, heat-pump piping systems at outside face of building wall in locations and pipe sizes indicated.
  - a. Terminate water-service piping at building wall until building water-source, ground-loop, heat-pump piping systems are installed. Terminate piping with caps. Make connections to building water-source, ground-loop, heat-pump piping systems when those systems are installed.
6. Wall sleeves are specified in Division 23 Section "Common Work Results For Hvac".
7. Mechanical sleeve seals are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results For Plumbing".

#### D. Antifreeze Solution Fill

1. Fill system with required quantity of propylene glycol and water to provide minus 10 deg F (minus 23 deg C) freezing temperature.
2. Test the dilute solution using gas chromatography to verify concentration of propylene glycol, and forward report to the Owner.

#### E. Connections

1. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

#### F. Field Quality Control



1. Piping Tests: Fill piping 24 hours before testing and apply test pressure to stabilize piping. Use potable water only.
2. Hydrostatic Tests: Test at not less than 1-1/2 times the pipe working-pressure rating allowing for static pressure of borehole depth.
  - a. Increase pressure in 50-psig (345-kPa) increments and inspect each joint between increments. Hold at test pressure for 30 minutes. Slowly increase to next test pressure increment and hold for 30 minutes. After testing at maximum test pressure, reduce pressure to 30 psig (207 kPa). Hold for 90 minutes, and measure pressure at 30-minute intervals. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
3. Prepare reports of testing activity.

END OF SECTION 33 14 13 23b



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
33 14 13 23	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
33 14 13 23	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
33 14 13 23	22 05 23 00a	Water Distribution
33 14 13 23	33 11 13 00	Monitoring Wells
33 14 13 23	22 11 23 23	Water Supply Wells
33 14 13 23	22 05 76 00	Sanitary Sewerage
33 14 13 23	32 91 19 13a	Septic Tank Systems
33 14 13 23	31 05 13 00	Subdrainage
33 14 13 23	33 42 11 00	Storm Drainage



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 33 14 13 36 - STEAM DISTRIBUTION

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for steam distribution. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes underground piping outside the building for distribution of steam and condensate.

#### C. Performance Requirements

1. Provide components and installation capable of producing steam piping systems with the following minimum working-pressure ratings:
  - a. Steam Piping: 15 psig (104 kPa) **OR** 125 psig (860 kPa), **as directed**.
  - b. Condensate Piping: 100 psig (690 kPa).

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data:
2. Shop Drawings:
3. Welding certificates.
4. Source quality-control test reports.
5. Field quality-control test reports.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
2. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.1, "Power Piping" **OR** ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," **as directed**, for materials, products, and installation.
3. ASME Compliance: Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear appropriate ASME labels.

#### F. Project Conditions

1. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
  - a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
  - b. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without written permission.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Piping Materials

1. Refer to Article 1.3 "Piping Application" for applications of pipes, tubes, fittings, and joining methods.
2. Refer to Division 33 Section "Common Work Results For Utilities" for commonly used joining materials.

#### B. Steel Pipes And Fittings

1. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade A, Standard Weight; with plain ends.
2. Nipples: ASTM A 733, Standard Weight, seamless, carbon-steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M.



3. Malleable-Iron, Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300, with threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
4. Cast-Iron, Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Classes 125 and 250, standard pattern, with threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
5. Steel Welding Fittings: ASME B16.9 and ASTM A 234/A 234M, seamless or welded.

#### C. Conduit Piping

1. Description: Factory-fabricated and -assembled, airtight and watertight, drainable, pressure-tested piping with conduit, inner pipe supports, and insulated carrier piping. Fabricate so insulation can be dried in place by forcing dry air through conduit.
2. Carrier Pipe: Steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade A with beveled **OR** socket, **as directed**, ends for welded joints.
3. Carrier Pipe Insulation:
  - a. Mineral-Wool Pipe Insulation: ASTM C 547, Type I, molded.
    - 1) Apparent Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.31 at 200 deg F (0.044 at 93 deg C) mean temperature.
    - 2) Density: Maximum 10 lb/cu. ft. (160 kg/cu. m) average.
    - 3) Compressive Strength: 10 psig (69 kPa) minimum at 5 percent deformation.
    - 4) Bands: ASTM A 666, Type 304, stainless steel, 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide, 0.020 inch (0.5 mm) thick.
  - b. Calcium Silicate Pipe Insulation: ASTM C 533, Type I; preformed, incombustible, inorganic, with non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement.
    - 1) Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.60 at 500 deg F (0.087 at 260 deg C).
    - 2) Dry Density: 15 lb/cu. ft. (240 kg/cu. m) maximum.
    - 3) Compressive Strength: 60 psig (414 kPa) minimum at 5 percent deformation.
    - 4) Bands: ASTM A 666, Type 304, stainless steel, 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide, 0.020 inch (0.5 mm) thick.
  - c. Polyisocyanurate Foam Pipe Insulation: ASTM C 591, preformed, rigid, cellular.
    - 1) Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.14 at 75 deg F (0.020 at 24 deg C).
    - 2) Service Temperature: Minus 250 to plus 400 deg F (Minus 156 to plus 204 deg C).
    - 3) Moisture Absorption: ASTM D 2842, maximum 0.054 percent by volume.
    - 4) Minimum 90 percent closed cell.
    - 5) Dry Density: 2 lb/cu. ft. (32 kg/cu. m) maximum.
    - 6) Compressive Strength: 35 psig (242 kPa) minimum at 5 percent deformation.
    - 7) Water-Vapor Transmission: 1.26 perm inches (1.83 ng/Pa x s x m) according to ASTM E 96.
  - d. Polyurethane Foam Pipe Insulation: ASTM C 591, preformed, rigid, cellular.
    - 1) Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.13 at 75 deg F (0.019 at 24 deg C).
    - 2) Service Temperature: Minus 250 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 156 to plus 93 deg C).
    - 3) Moisture Absorption: ASTM D 2842, maximum 0.054 percent by volume.
    - 4) Minimum 90 percent closed cell.
    - 5) Dry Density: 2 lb/cu. ft. (32 kg/cu. m) maximum.
    - 6) Compressive Strength: 35 psig (242 kPa) minimum at 5 percent deformation.
    - 7) Water-Vapor Transmission: 1.26 perm inches (1.83 ng/Pa x s x m) according to ASTM E 96.
4. Minimum Clearance:
  - a. Between Carrier Pipe Insulation and Conduit: 1 inch (25 mm).
  - b. Between Insulation of Multiple Carrier Pipes: 3/16 inch (4.75 mm).
  - c. Between Bottom of Carrier Pipe Insulation and Conduit: 1 inch (25 mm).
  - d. Between Bottom of Bare, Carrier Pipe and Casing: 1-3/8 inches (35 mm).
5. Conduit: Spiral wound, steel. Finish conduit with 2 coats of fusion-bonded epoxy, minimum 20 mils (0.50 mm) thick. Cover with polyurethane foam insulation with a high-density polyethylene jacket; thickness indicated in Part 1.3 "Piping Application" Article, **as directed**.
6. Conduit: Spiral wound, bare steel. Cover with polyurethane foam insulation with a high-density polyethylene jacket; thickness indicated in Part 1.3 "Piping Application" Article.





7. Carrier Piping Supports within Conduit: Corrugated galvanized steel with a maximum spacing of 10 feet (3 m).
8. Fittings: Factory-fabricated and -insulated elbows and tees. Elbows may be bent pipe equal to carrier pipe. Tees shall be factory fabricated and insulated, and shall be compatible with the carrier pipe.
9. Expansion Offsets and Loops: Size casing to contain piping expansion.
10. Conduit accessories include the following:
  - a. Water Shed: Terminal end protector for carrier pipes entering building through floor, 3 inches (75 mm) deep and 2 inches (50 mm) larger than casing; terminate casing 20 inches (500 mm) above the floor level.
  - b. Guides and Anchors: Steel plate welded to carrier pipes and to casing, complete with vent and drainage openings inside casing.
  - c. End Seals: Steel plate welded to carrier pipes and to casing, complete with drain and vent openings on vertical centerline.
  - d. Gland Seals: Packed stuffing box and gland follower mounted on steel plate, welded to end of casing, permitting axial movement of carrier piping, with drain and vent connections on vertical centerline.
  - e. Joint Kit: Half-shell, pourable or split insulation and shrink-wrap sleeve.
11. Source Quality Control: Factory test the conduit to 15 psig (105 kPa) for a minimum of 2 minutes with no change in pressure. Factory test the carrier pipe to 150 percent of the operating pressure of system. Furnish test certificates.

#### D. Cased Piping

1. Description: Factory-fabricated piping with carrier pipe, insulation, and casing.
2. Carrier Pipe: Steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade A with beveled **OR** socket, **as directed**, ends for welded joints.
3. Carrier Pipe Insulation:
  - a. Polyurethane Foam Pipe Insulation: ASTM C 591, preformed, rigid, cellular.
    - 1) Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.13 at 75 deg F (0.019 at 24 deg C).
    - 2) Service Temperature: Minus 250 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 156 to plus 93 deg C).
    - 3) Moisture Absorption: ASTM D 2842, maximum 0.054 percent by volume.
    - 4) Minimum 90 percent closed cell.
    - 5) Dry Density: 2 lb/cu. ft. (32 kg/cu. m) maximum.
    - 6) Compressive Strength: 35 psig (242 kPa) minimum at 5 percent deformation.
    - 7) Water-Vapor Transmission: 1.26 perm inches (1.83 ng/Pa x s x m) according to ASTM E 96.
4. Casing: High-density polyethylene **OR** Filament-wound, fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin **OR** PVC, **as directed**.
5. Casing accessories include the following:
  - a. Joint Kit: Half-shell, pourable or split insulation, casing sleeve, and shrink-wrap sleeve.
  - b. Expansion Blanket: Elastomeric foam, formed to fit over piping.
  - c. End Seals: Shrink wrap the casing material to seal watertight around casing and carrier pipe.
6. Source Quality Control: Factory test the carrier pipe to 150 percent of the operating pressure of system. Furnish test certificates.

#### E. Loose-Fill Insulation

1. Granular, Loose-Fill Insulation: Inorganic, nontoxic, nonflammable, sodium potassium aluminum silicate with calcium carbonate filler. Include chemical treatment that renders insulation hydrophobic.
  - a. Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.60 at 175 deg F (0.087 at 79 deg C) and 0.65 at 300 deg F (0.094 at 149 deg C).
  - b. Application Temperature Range: 35 to 800 deg F (2 to 426 deg C).
  - c. Dry Density: 40 to 42 lb/cu. ft. (640 to 672 kg/cu. m).
  - d. Strength: 12,000 lb/sq. ft. (58 600 kg/sq. m).



2. Powder, Loose-Fill Insulation: Inert, nontoxic, nonflammable, calcium carbonate particles. Include chemical treatment that renders insulation hydrophobic.
  - a. Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): ASTM C 177, 0.58 at 100 deg F (0.084 at 37 deg C) and 0.68 at 300 deg F (0.098 at 149 deg C).
  - b. Application Temperature Range: Minus 273 to plus 480 deg F (Minus 169 to plus 250 deg C).
  - c. Dry Density: Approximately 60 lb/cu. ft. (960 kg/cu. m).
  - d. Strength: 12,000 lb/sq. ft. (58 600 kg/sq. m).

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Earthwork: Refer to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.
- B. Piping Application
  1. Steam Piping: Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80, **as directed**, steel pipe with cast-iron, threaded fittings and threaded **OR** steel fittings and welded **OR** ductile-iron, grooved-end fittings and mechanical, **as directed**, joints; granular **OR** powder, **as directed**, loose-fill insulation.
  2. Steam Piping: Conduit piping with mineral-wool **OR** calcium silicate **OR** polyisocyanurate **OR** polyurethane, **as directed**, carrier-pipe insulation and with coated, **unless directed otherwise to be coated and insulated**, conduit.
    - a. Insulation Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**.
  3. Condensate Piping: Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80, **as directed**, steel pipe with cast-iron, threaded fittings and threaded **OR** steel welding fittings and welded **OR** ductile-iron, grooved-end fittings and mechanical, **as directed**, joints; granular **OR** powder, **as directed**, loose-fill insulation.
  4. Condensate Piping: Conduit piping with mineral-wool **OR** calcium silicate **OR** polyisocyanurate **OR** polyurethane, **as directed**, carrier-pipe insulation and with coated **OR** coated and insulated, **as directed**, conduit.
    - a. Insulation Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 2 inches (50 mm), **as directed**.
  5. Condensate Piping: Cased piping with polyurethane carrier-pipe insulation.
- C. Piping Installation
  1. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawings indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated, unless deviations to layout are approved.
  2. Remove any standing water in the bottom of trench.
  3. Bed the pipe on a minimum 6-inch (150-mm) layer of granular fill material with a minimum 6-inch (150-mm) clearance between the pipes.
  4. Do not insulate piping or backfill piping trench until field quality-control testing has been completed and results approved.
  5. Install piping at uniform grade of 0.2 percent downward in direction of flow or as indicated.
  6. Install condensate piping at uniform grade of 0.4 percent downward in direction of flow.
  7. Install components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
  8. Install piping free of sags and bends.
  9. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
  10. Refer to Division 23 Section "Common Work Results For Hvac" for sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals through exterior building walls.
  11. Secure anchors with concrete thrust blocks. Concrete is specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
  12. Connect to steam and condensate piping where it passes through the building wall. Steam and condensate piping inside the building is specified in Division 23 Section "Steam And Condensate Heating Piping".



- D. Loose-Fill Insulation Installation
1. Do not disturb the bottom of trench, or compact and stabilize it to ensure proper support.
  2. Remove any standing water in the bottom of trench.
  3. Form insulation trench by excavation or by installing drywall side forms to establish the required height and width of the insulation.
  4. Support piping with proper pitch, separation, and clearance to backfill or side forms using temporary supporting devices that can be removed after back filling with insulation.
  5. Place insulation and backfill after field quality-control testing has been completed and results approved.
  6. Apply bitumastic coating to carbon-steel anchors and guides. Pour concrete thrust blocks and anchors. Refer to Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete" for concrete and reinforcement.
  7. Wrap piping at expansion loops and offsets with mineral-wool insulation of thickness appropriate for calculated expansion amount.
  8. Pour loose-fill insulation to required dimension agitating insulation to eliminate voids around piping.
  9. Remove temporary hangers and supports.
  10. Cover loose-fill insulation with polyethylene sheet a minimum of 4 mils (0.10 mm) thick, and empty loose-fill insulation bags on top.
  11. Manually backfill 6 inches (150 mm) of clean backfill. If mechanical compaction is required manually backfill to 12 inches (300 mm) before using mechanical-compaction equipment.
- E. Joint Construction
1. Refer to Division 33 Section "Common Work Results For Utilities" for basic piping joint construction.
  2. Keyed-Coupling Joints: Cut- or roll-groove pipes. Assemble joints with keyed couplings, gaskets, lubricant, and bolts.
  3. Conduit and Cased Piping Joints: Assemble sections and finish joints with pourable or split insulation, exterior jacket sleeve, and apply shrink-wrap seals as required by manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- F. Identification: Install continuous plastic underground warning tapes during back filling of trenches for underground steam and condensate distribution piping. Locate 6 to 8 inches (150 to 200 mm) below finished grade, directly over piping. Refer to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for warning-tape materials and devices and their installation.
- G. Field Quality Control
1. Prepare steam and condensate piping for testing according to ASME B31.1 and ASME B31.9 and as follows:
    - a. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
    - b. Isolate equipment. Do not subject equipment to test pressure.
    - c. Install relief valve set at pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure.
    - d. Fill system with temperature water. Where there is risk of freezing, air or a safe, compatible liquid may be used.
    - e. Use vents installed at high points to release trapped air while filling system. Use drip legs installed at low points for complete removal of liquid.
  2. Test steam and condensate piping as follows:
    - a. Subject steam and condensate piping to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the design pressure.
    - b. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for 10 minutes, examine joints for leakage. Remake leaking joints using new materials and repeat hydrostatic test until no leaks exist.
  3. Test conduit as follows:
    - a. Seal vents and drains and subject conduit to 15 psig (105 kPa) for 4 hours with no loss of pressure. Repair leaks and retest as required.
  4. Prepare a written report of testing.



---

END OF SECTION 33 14 13 36



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
33 14 13 36	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
33 14 13 36	22 11 23 23	Water Supply Wells
33 14 13 36	33 14 13 23a	Hydronic Distribution
33 14 13 39	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
33 14 13 39	22 05 23 00a	Water Distribution
33 14 13 43	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
33 14 13 43	22 05 23 00a	Water Distribution
33 14 13 43	22 11 23 23	Water Supply Wells
33 14 13 43	22 05 76 00	Sanitary Sewerage
33 14 13 43	33 14 13 23a	Hydronic Distribution
33 14 13 43	33 14 13 36	Steam Distribution
33 14 13 53	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
33 14 13 53	22 05 23 00a	Water Distribution
33 14 13 53	22 11 16 00	Common Work Results for Fire Suppression
33 14 13 53	22 11 16 00a	Common Work Results for Plumbing
33 14 13 53	22 11 16 00b	Common Work Results for HVAC
33 14 13 53	22 11 16 00c	Domestic Water Piping
33 14 13 53	22 11 16 00d	Sanitary Waste And Vent Piping
33 14 13 53	22 11 16 00e	Storm Drainage Piping
33 14 13 53	22 11 16 00f	Hydronic Piping
33 14 13 53	22 11 16 00g	Steam And Condensate Piping
33 14 13 53	22 11 16 00h	Refrigerant Piping
33 14 13 53	22 11 16 00i	General-Service Compressed-Air Piping
33 14 15 23	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
33 14 15 23	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
33 14 15 23	22 05 23 00a	Water Distribution
33 14 19 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
33 14 19 00	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
33 14 19 00	22 05 23 00a	Water Distribution



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 33 19 11 00 - METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for meters and gages for plumbing piping. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Bimetallic-actuated thermometers.
  - b. Filled-system thermometers.
  - c. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
  - d. Light-activated thermometers.
  - e. Thermowells.
  - f. Dial-type pressure gages.
  - g. Gage attachments.
  - h. Test plugs.
  - i. Test-plug kits.
  - j. Sight flow indicators.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage, from manufacturer.
3. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Bimetallic-Actuated Thermometers

1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Case: Liquid-filled and sealed type(s); stainless steel with 3-inch (76-mm) **OR** 5-inch (127-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter.
3. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings and scales in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
4. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable angle **OR** rigid, back **OR** rigid, bottom, **as directed**, with unified-inch screw threads.
5. Connector Size: 1/2 inch (13 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
6. Stem: 0.25 or 0.375 inch (6.4 or 9.4 mm) in diameter; stainless steel.
7. Window: Plain glass or plastic.
8. Ring: Stainless steel.
9. Element: Bimetal coil.
10. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
11. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 **OR** 1.5, **as directed**, percent of scale range.

#### B. Filled-System Thermometers

1. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
  - a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  - b. Case: Sealed type, cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** 5-inch (127-mm) **OR** 6-inch (152-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter.
  - c. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.



- d. Movement: Mechanical, dampening type, **as directed**, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
- e. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
- f. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
- g. Window: Glass or plastic.
- h. Ring: Metal **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
- i. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device **OR** rigid, back **OR** rigid, bottom, **as directed**; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
- j. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
  - 1) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
- k. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.
- 2. Direct-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
  - a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  - b. Case: Sealed type, plastic; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** 5-inch (127-mm) **OR** 6-inch (152-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter.
  - c. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
  - d. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
  - e. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
  - f. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
  - g. Window: Glass or plastic.
  - h. Ring: Metal or plastic.
  - i. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device **OR** rigid, back **OR** rigid, bottom, **as directed**; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
  - j. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
    - 1) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
  - k. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.
- 3. Remote-Mounted, Metal-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
  - a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  - b. Case: Sealed type, cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** 6-inch (152-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter with back **OR** front, **as directed**, flange and holes for panel mounting.
  - c. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
  - d. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
  - e. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
  - f. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
  - g. Window: Glass or plastic.
  - h. Ring: Metal **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
  - i. Connector Type(s): Union joint, back **OR** bottom, **as directed**; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
  - j. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
    - 1) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
  - k. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.
- 4. Remote-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
  - a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  - b. Case: Sealed type, plastic; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** 6-inch (152-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter with back **OR** front, **as directed**, flange and holes for panel mounting.
  - c. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.





- d. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
- e. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
- f. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
- g. Window: Glass or plastic.
- h. Ring: Metal or plastic.
- i. Connector Type(s): Union joint, threaded, back **OR** bottom, **as directed**; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
- j. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
  - 1) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
- k. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

### C. Liquid-In-Glass Thermometers

- 1. Metal-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
  - a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  - b. Case: Cast aluminum; 6-inch (152-mm) nominal size.
  - c. Case Form: Back angle **OR** Straight, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
  - d. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
  - e. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
  - f. Window: Glass or plastic.
  - g. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.
    - 1) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
  - h. Connector: 3/4 inch (19 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
  - i. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.
- 2. Plastic-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
  - a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  - b. Case: Plastic; 6-inch (152-mm) nominal size.
  - c. Case Form: Back angle **OR** Straight, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
  - d. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
  - e. Tube Background: Nonreflective with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
  - f. Window: Glass or plastic.
  - g. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.
    - 1) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
  - h. Connector: 3/4 inch (19 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
  - i. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.
- 3. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
  - a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  - b. Case: Cast aluminum; 7-inch (178-mm) **OR** 9-inch (229-mm), **as directed**, nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
  - c. Case Form: Adjustable angle **OR** Back angle **OR** Straight, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
  - d. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
  - e. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
  - f. Window: Glass or plastic.
  - g. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
    - 1) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
  - h. Connector: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
  - i. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.



4. Plastic-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
  - a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  - b. Case: Plastic; 7-inch (178-mm) **OR** 9-inch (229-mm), **as directed**, nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
  - c. Case Form: Adjustable angle **OR** Back angle **OR** Straight, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
  - d. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
  - e. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
  - f. Window: Glass or plastic.
  - g. Stem: Aluminum **OR** Brass **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Aluminum, brass, or stainless steel, **as directed**, and of length to suit installation.
    - 1) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
  - h. Connector: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
  - i. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.
  
- D. Light-Activated Thermometers
  1. Direct-Mounted, Light-Activated Thermometers:
    - a. Case: Plastic **OR** Metal, **as directed**; 7-inch (178-mm) **OR** 9-inch (229-mm), **as directed**, nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Scale(s): Deg F (Deg C) **OR** Deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
    - c. Case Form: Adjustable angle.
    - d. Connector: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
    - e. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
      - 1) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
    - f. Display: Digital.
    - g. Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 deg F (1 deg C).
  2. Remote-Mounted, Light-Activated Thermometers:
    - a. Case: Plastic, for wall mounting.
    - b. Scale(s): Deg F (Deg C) **OR** Deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
    - c. Sensor: Bulb and thermister wire.
      - 1) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
    - d. Display: Digital.
    - e. Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 deg F (1 deg C).
  
- E. Thermowells
  1. Thermowells:
    - a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
    - b. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
    - c. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR or CUNI.
    - d. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES **OR** CSA, **as directed**.
    - e. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
    - f. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, (DN 15, DN 20, or NPS 25,) ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
    - g. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch (13, 19, and 25 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
    - h. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
    - i. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
    - j. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
    - k. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.
  2. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.
  
- F. Pressure Gages



1. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
  - a. Standard: ASME B40.100.
  - b. Case: Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed **OR** Open-front, pressure relief **OR** Solid-front, pressure relief, **as directed**, type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** 6-inch (152-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter.
  - c. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
  - d. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) **OR** NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), **as directed**, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
  - e. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
  - f. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi (kPa) **OR** psi and kPa, **as directed**.
  - g. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
  - h. Window: Glass or plastic.
  - i. Ring: Metal **OR** Brass **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
  - j. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade C, plus or minus 3 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade D, plus or minus 5 percent of whole, **as directed**, scale range.
2. Direct-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
  - a. Standard: ASME B40.100.
  - b. Case: Sealed type; plastic; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** 6-inch (152-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter.
  - c. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
  - d. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) **OR** NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), **as directed**, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
  - e. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
  - f. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi (kPa) **OR** psi and kPa, **as directed**.
  - g. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
  - h. Window: Glass or plastic.
  - i. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade C, plus or minus 3 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade D, plus or minus 5 percent of whole, **as directed**, scale range.
3. Remote-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
  - a. Standard: ASME B40.100.
  - b. Case: Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed, **as directed**, type; cast aluminum or drawn steel **OR** metal, **as directed**; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** 6-inch (152-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter with back **OR** front, **as directed**, flange and holes for panel mounting.
  - c. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
  - d. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) **OR** NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), **as directed**, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
  - e. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
  - f. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi (kPa) **OR** psi and kPa, **as directed**.
  - g. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
  - h. Window: Glass or plastic.
  - i. Ring: Metal **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
  - j. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade C, plus or minus 3 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade D, plus or minus 5 percent of whole, **as directed**, scale range.
4. Remote-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
  - a. Standard: ASME B40.100.
  - b. Case: Sealed type; plastic; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** 6-inch (152-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter with back **OR** front, **as directed**, flange and holes for panel mounting.



- c. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
- d. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) **OR** NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), **as directed**, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
- e. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
- f. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi (kPa) **OR** psi and kPa, **as directed**.
- g. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
- h. Window: Glass or plastic.
- i. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade C, plus or minus 3 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade D, plus or minus 5 percent of whole, **as directed**, scale range.

#### G. Gage Attachments

1. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) **OR** NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), **as directed**, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston **OR** porous-metal, **as directed**, -type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
2. Valves: Brass ball **OR** Brass or stainless-steel needle, **as directed**, with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) **OR** NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), **as directed**, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

#### H. Test Plugs

1. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
2. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.
3. Thread Size: NPS 1/4 (DN 8) or NPS 1/2 (DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
4. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F (3450 kPa at 93 deg C).
5. Core Inserts: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic and EPDM self-sealing rubber.

#### I. Test-Plug Kits

1. Furnish one test-plug kit(s) containing one **OR** two, **as directed**, thermometer(s), one pressure gage and adapter, and carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gage, and adapter probes shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.
2. Low-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- (25- to 51-mm-) diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 25 to 125 deg F (minus 4 to plus 52 deg C).
3. High-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- (25- to 51-mm-) diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 220 deg F (minus 18 to plus 104 deg C).
4. Pressure Gage: Small, Bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch- (51- to 76-mm-) diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 200 psig (0 to 1380 kPa).
5. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.

#### J. Sight Flow Indicators

1. Description: Piping inline-installation device for visual verification of flow.
2. Construction: Bronze or stainless-steel body, with sight glass and ball, flapper, or paddle wheel indicator, and threaded or flanged ends.
3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1034 kPa), **as directed**.
4. Minimum Temperature Rating: 200 deg F (93 deg C).
5. End Connections for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded.
6. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged.



### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation

1. Install thermowells with socket extending a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) into fluid **OR** one-third of pipe diameter **OR** to center of pipe, **as directed**, and in vertical position in piping tees.
2. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
3. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
4. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
5. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
6. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.
7. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
8. Install remote-mounted pressure gages on panel.
9. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids.
10. Install test plugs in piping tees.
11. Install thermometers in the following locations:
  - a. Inlet and outlet of each water heater.
  - b. Inlets and outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger.
  - c. Inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank.
  - d. Inlet and outlet of each remote domestic water chiller.
12. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
  - a. Building water service entrance into building.
  - b. Inlet and outlet of each pressure-reducing valve.
  - c. Suction and discharge of each domestic water pump.

#### B. Connections

1. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

#### C. Adjusting

1. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

#### D. Thermometer Schedule

1. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic water heater shall be one of the following:
  - a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed, **as directed**, bimetallic-actuated type.
  - b. Direct **OR** Remote, **as directed**, -mounted, metal **OR** plastic, **as directed**, -case, vapor-actuated type.
  - c. Compact **OR** Industrial, **as directed**, -style, liquid-in-glass type.
  - d. Direct **OR** Remote, **as directed**, -mounted, light-activated type.
  - e. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.
2. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger shall be one of the following:
  - a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed, **as directed**, bimetallic-actuated type.
  - b. Direct **OR** Remote, **as directed**, -mounted, metal **OR** plastic, **as directed**, -case, vapor-actuated type.
  - c. Compact **OR** Industrial, **as directed**, -style, liquid-in-glass type.
  - d. Direct **OR** Remote, **as directed**, -mounted, light-activated type.
  - e. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.
3. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank shall be one of the following:
  - a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed, **as directed**, bimetallic-actuated type.



- b. Direct **OR** Remote, **as directed**, -mounted, metal **OR** plastic, **as directed**, -case, vapor-actuated type.
  - c. Compact **OR** Industrial, **as directed**, -style, liquid-in-glass type.
  - d. Direct **OR** Remote, **as directed**, -mounted, light-activated type.
  - e. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.
4. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each remote domestic water chiller shall be one of the following:
    - a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed, **as directed**, bimetallic-actuated type.
    - b. Direct **OR** Remote, **as directed**, -mounted, metal **OR** plastic, **as directed**, -case, vapor-actuated type.
    - c. Compact **OR** Industrial, **as directed**, -style, liquid-in-glass type.
    - d. Direct **OR** Remote, **as directed**, -mounted, light-activated type.
    - e. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.
  5. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.
- E. Thermometer Scale-Range Schedule
1. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 50 deg C) **OR** 0 to 100 deg F and minus 20 to plus 50 deg C, **as directed**.
  2. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: 0 to 150 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 70 deg C) **OR** 0 to 150 deg F and minus 20 to plus 70 deg C, **as directed**.
  3. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: 30 to 240 deg F (0 to plus 115 deg C) **OR** 30 to 240 deg F and 0 to plus 115 deg C, **as directed**.
  4. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 250 deg F (0 to 150 deg C) **OR** 0 to 250 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C, **as directed**.
  5. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 20 to 240 deg F (0 to 150 deg C) **OR** 20 to 240 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C, **as directed**.
  6. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 30 to 240 deg F (0 to plus 115 deg C) **OR** 30 to 240 deg F and 0 to plus 115 deg C, **as directed**.
  7. Scale Range for Domestic Cooled-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 50 deg C) **OR** 0 to 100 deg F and minus 20 to plus 50 deg C, **as directed**.
  8. Scale Range for Domestic Cooled-Water Piping: 0 to 150 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 70 deg C) **OR** 0 to 150 deg F and minus 20 to plus 70 deg C, **as directed**.
- F. Pressure-Gage Schedule
1. Pressure gages at discharge of each water service into building shall be one of the following:
    - a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed **OR** Open-front, pressure-relief **OR** Solid-front, pressure-relief, **as directed**, direct **OR** remote, **as directed**, -mounted, metal case.
    - b. Sealed, direct **OR** remote, **as directed**, -mounted, plastic case.
    - c. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.
  2. Pressure gages at inlet and outlet of each water pressure-reducing valve shall be one of the following:
    - a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed **OR** Open-front, pressure-relief **OR** Solid-front, pressure-relief, **as directed**, direct **OR** remote, **as directed**, -mounted, metal case.
    - b. Sealed, direct **OR** remote, **as directed**, -mounted, plastic case.
    - c. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.
  3. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each domestic water pump shall be one of the following:
    - a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed **OR** Open-front, pressure-relief **OR** Solid-front, pressure-relief, **as directed**, direct **OR** remote, **as directed**, -mounted, metal case.
    - b. Sealed, direct **OR** remote, **as directed**, -mounted, plastic case.



- c. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.

G. Pressure-Gage Scale-Range Schedule

1. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: 0 to 100 psi (0 to 600 kPa) **OR** 0 to 100 psi and 0 to 600 kPa, **as directed**.
2. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: 0 to 160 psi (0 to 1100 kPa) **OR** 0 to 160 psi and 0 to 1100 kPa, **as directed**.
3. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: 0 to 200 psi (0 to 1400 kPa) **OR** 0 to 200 psi and 0 to 1400 kPa, **as directed**.
4. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi (0 to 600 kPa) **OR** 0 to 100 psi and 0 to 600 kPa, **as directed**.
5. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 160 psi (0 to 1100 kPa) **OR** 0 to 160 psi and 0 to 1100 kPa, **as directed**.
6. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 200 psi (0 to 1400 kPa) **OR** 0 to 200 psi and 0 to 1400 kPa, **as directed**.
7. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 300 psi (0 to 2500 kPa) **OR** 0 to 300 psi and 0 to 2500 kPa, **as directed**.

END OF SECTION 33 19 11 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





## SECTION 33 19 11 00a - METERS AND GAGES FOR HVAC PIPING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for meters and gages for HVAC piping. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Bimetallic-actuated thermometers.
  - b. Filled-system thermometers.
  - c. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
  - d. Light-activated thermometers.
  - e. Thermowells.
  - f. Dial-type pressure gages.
  - g. Gage attachments.
  - h. Test plugs.
  - i. Test-plug kits.
  - j. Sight flow indicators.
  - k. Orifice flowmeters.
  - l. Pitot-tube flowmeters.
  - m. Turbine flowmeters.
  - n. Venturi flowmeters.
  - o. Vortex-shedding flowmeters.
  - p. Impeller-turbine, thermal-energy meters.
  - q. Ultrasonic, thermal-energy meters.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage, from manufacturer.
4. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Bimetallic-Actuated Thermometers

1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Case: Liquid-filled and sealed type(s); stainless steel with 3-inch (76-mm) **OR** 5-inch (127-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter.
3. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings and scales in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
4. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable angle **OR** rigid, back **OR** rigid, bottom, **as directed**, with unified-inch screw threads.
5. Connector Size: 1/2 inch (13 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
6. Stem: 0.25 or 0.375 inch (6.4 or 9.4 mm) in diameter; stainless steel.
7. Window: Plain glass or plastic.
8. Ring: Stainless steel.
9. Element: Bimetal coil.
10. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.



11. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 **OR** 1.5, **as directed**, percent of scale range.

B. Filled-System Thermometers

1. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
  - a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  - b. Case: Sealed type, cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** 5-inch (127-mm) **OR** 6-inch (152-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter.
  - c. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
  - d. Movement: Mechanical, dampening type, **as directed**, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
  - e. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
  - f. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
  - g. Window: Glass or plastic.
  - h. Ring: Metal **OR** Stainless steel.
  - i. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device **OR** rigid, back **OR** rigid, bottom, **as directed**; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
  - j. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
    - 1) Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
    - 2) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
  - k. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.
2. Direct-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
  - a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  - b. Case: Sealed type, plastic; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** 5-inch (127-mm) **OR** 6-inch (152-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter.
  - c. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
  - d. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
  - e. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
  - f. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
  - g. Window: Glass or plastic.
  - h. Ring: Metal or plastic.
  - i. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device **OR** rigid, back **OR** rigid, bottom, **as directed**; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
  - j. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
    - 1) Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
    - 2) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
  - k. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.
3. Remote-Mounted, Metal-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
  - a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  - b. Case: Sealed type, cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** 6-inch (152-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter with back **OR** front, **as directed**, flange and holes for panel mounting.
  - c. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
  - d. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
  - e. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
  - f. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
  - g. Window: Glass or plastic.
  - h. Ring: Metal **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.



- i. Connector Type(s): Union joint, back **OR** bottom, **as directed**; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
  - j. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
    - 1) Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
    - 2) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
  - k. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.
4. Remote-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
- a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  - b. Case: Sealed type, plastic; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** 6-inch (152-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter with back **OR** front, **as directed**, flange and holes for panel mounting.
  - c. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
  - d. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
  - e. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
  - f. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
  - g. Window: Glass or plastic.
  - h. Ring: Metal or plastic.
  - i. Connector Type(s): Union joint, threaded, back **OR** bottom, **as directed**; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
  - j. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
    - 1) Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
    - 2) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
  - k. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.
- C. Liquid-In-Glass Thermometers
- 1. Metal-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
    - a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
    - b. Case: Cast aluminum; 6-inch (152-mm) nominal size.
    - c. Case Form: Back angle **OR** Straight, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
    - d. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red, **as directed**, organic liquid.
    - e. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
    - f. Window: Glass or plastic.
    - g. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.
      - 1) Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
      - 2) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
    - h. Connector: 3/4 inch (19 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
    - i. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.
  - 2. Plastic-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
    - a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
    - b. Case: Plastic; 6-inch (152-mm) nominal size.
    - c. Case Form: Back angle **OR** Straight, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
    - d. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red, **as directed**, organic liquid.
    - e. Tube Background: Nonreflective with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
    - f. Window: Glass or plastic.
    - g. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.
      - 1) Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
      - 2) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
    - h. Connector: 3/4 inch (19 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
    - i. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.



3. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
    - a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
    - b. Case: Cast aluminum; 7-inch (178-mm) **OR** 9-inch (229-mm), **as directed**, nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
    - c. Case Form: Adjustable angle **OR** Back angle **OR** Straight, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
    - d. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red, **as directed**, organic liquid.
    - e. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
    - f. Window: Glass or plastic.
    - g. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
      - 1) Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
      - 2) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
    - h. Connector: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
    - i. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.
  4. Plastic-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
    - a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
    - b. Case: Plastic; 7-inch (178-mm) **OR** 9-inch (229-mm), **as directed**, nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
    - c. Case Form: Adjustable angle **OR** Back angle **OR** Straight, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
    - d. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red, **as directed**, organic liquid.
    - e. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F (deg C) **OR** deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
    - f. Window: Glass or plastic.
    - g. Stem: Aluminum **OR** Brass **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**, and of length to suit installation.
      - 1) Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
      - 2) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
    - h. Connector: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
    - i. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.
- D. Light-Activated Thermometers
1. Direct-Mounted, Light-Activated Thermometers:
    - a. Case: Plastic **OR** Metal, **as directed**; 7-inch (178-mm) **OR** 9-inch (229-mm), **as directed**, nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Scale(s): Deg F (Deg C) **OR** Deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
    - c. Case Form: Adjustable angle.
    - d. Connector: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
    - e. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
      - 1) Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
      - 2) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
    - f. Display: Digital.
    - g. Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 deg F (1 deg C).
  2. Remote-Mounted, Light-Activated Thermometers:
    - a. Case: Plastic, for wall mounting.
    - b. Scale(s): Deg F (Deg C) **OR** Deg F and deg C, **as directed**.
    - c. Sensor: Bulb and thermister wire.
      - 1) Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
      - 2) Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
    - d. Display: Digital.
    - e. Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 deg F (1 deg C).



- E. Duct-Thermometer Mounting Brackets
1. Description: Flanged bracket with screw holes, for attachment to air duct and made to hold thermometer stem.
- F. Thermowells
1. Thermowells:
    - a. Standard: ASME B40.200.
    - b. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
    - c. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR **OR** CUNI, **as directed**.
    - d. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES **OR** CSA, **as directed**.
    - e. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
    - f. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, (DN 15, DN 20, or NPS 25,) ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
    - g. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch (13, 19, and 25 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
    - h. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
    - i. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
    - j. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
    - k. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.
  2. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.
- G. Pressure Gages
1. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
    - 1) Standard: ASME B40.100.
    - 2) Case: Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed **OR** Open-front, pressure relief **OR** Solid-front, pressure relief, **as directed**, type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** 6-inch (152-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter.
    - 3) Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
    - 4) Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), **as directed**, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
    - 5) Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
    - 6) Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi (kPa) **OR** psi and kPa, **as directed**.
    - 7) Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
    - 8) Window: Glass or plastic.
    - 9) Ring: Metal **OR** Brass **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
    - 10) Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade C, plus or minus 3 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade D, plus or minus 5 percent of whole, **as directed**, scale range.
  2. Direct-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
    - a. Standard: ASME B40.100.
    - b. Case: Sealed type; plastic; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** 6-inch (152-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter.
    - c. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
    - d. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), **as directed**, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
    - e. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
    - f. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi (kPa) **OR** psi and kPa, **as directed**.
    - g. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
    - h. Window: Glass or plastic.
    - i. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade C, plus or minus 3 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade D, plus or minus 5 percent of whole, **as directed**, scale range.



3. Remote-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
    - a. Standard: ASME B40.100.
    - b. Case: Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed, **as directed**, type; cast aluminum or drawn steel **OR** metal, **as directed**; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** 6-inch (152-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter with back **OR** front, **as directed**, flange and holes for panel mounting.
    - c. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
    - d. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), **as directed**, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
    - e. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
    - f. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi (kPa) **OR** psi and kPa, **as directed**.
    - g. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
    - h. Window: Glass or plastic.
    - i. Ring: Metal **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
    - j. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade C, plus or minus 3 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade D, plus or minus 5 percent of whole, **as directed**, scale range.
  4. Remote-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
    - a. Standard: ASME B40.100.
    - b. Case: Sealed type; plastic; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) **OR** 6-inch (152-mm), **as directed**, nominal diameter with back **OR** front, **as directed**, flange and holes for panel mounting.
    - c. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
    - d. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), **as directed**, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
    - e. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
    - f. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi (kPa) **OR** psi and kPa, **as directed**.
    - g. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
    - h. Window: Glass or plastic.
    - i. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade C, plus or minus 3 percent of middle half of **OR** Grade D, plus or minus 5 percent of whole, **as directed**, scale range.
- H. Gage Attachments
1. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), **as directed**, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston-type **OR** porous-metal-type, **as directed**, surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
  2. Siphons: Loop-shaped section of brass **OR** stainless-steel **OR** steel, **as directed**, pipe with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), **as directed**, pipe threads.
  3. Valves: Brass ball **OR** Brass or stainless-steel needle, **as directed**, with NPS 1/4 (DN 8) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), **as directed**, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
- I. Test Plugs
1. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
  2. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.
  3. Thread Size: NPS 1/4 (DN 8) **OR** NPS 1/2 (DN 15), **as directed**, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
  4. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F (3450 kPa at 93 deg C).
  5. Core Inserts: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber.
- J. Test-Plug Kits
1. Furnish one test-plug kit(s) containing one **OR** two, **as directed**, thermometer(s), one pressure gage and adapter, and carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gage, and adapter probes shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.



2. Low-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- (25- to 51-mm-) diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 25 to 125 deg F (minus 4 to plus 52 deg C).
  3. High-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- (25- to 51-mm-) diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 220 deg F (minus 18 to plus 104 deg C).
  4. Pressure Gage: Small, Bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch- (51- to 76-mm-) diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 200 psig (0 to 1380 kPa).
  5. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.
- K. Sight Flow Indicators
1. Description: Piping inline-installation device for visual verification of flow.
  2. Construction: Bronze or stainless-steel body, with sight glass and ball, flapper, or paddle wheel indicator, and threaded or flanged ends.
  3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) **OR** 150 psig (1034 kPa), **as directed**.
  4. Minimum Temperature Rating: 200 deg F (93 deg C).
  5. End Connections for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded.
  6. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged.
- L. Flowmeters
1. Orifice Flowmeters:
    - a. Description: Flowmeter with sensor, hoses or tubing, fittings, valves, indicator, and conversion chart.
    - b. Flow Range: Sensor and indicator shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.
    - c. Sensor: Wafer-orifice-type, calibrated, flow-measuring element; for installation between pipe flanges.
      - 1) Design: Differential-pressure-type measurement for gas **OR** oil **OR** steam **OR** water, **as directed**.
      - 2) Construction: Cast-iron body, brass valves with integral check valves and caps, and calibrated nameplate.
      - 3) Minimum Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
      - 4) Minimum Temperature Rating: 250 deg F (121 deg C).
    - d. Permanent Indicators: Meter suitable for wall or bracket mounting, calibrated for connected sensor and having 6-inch- (152-mm-) diameter, or equivalent, dial with fittings and copper tubing for connecting to sensor.
      - 1) Scale: Gallons per minute (Liters per second).
      - 2) Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent between 20 and 80 percent of scale range.
    - e. Portable Indicators: Hand-held, differential-pressure type, calibrated for connected sensor and having two 12-foot (3.7-m) hoses, with carrying case.
      - 1) Scale: Gallons per minute (Liters per second).
      - 2) Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 percent between 20 and 80 percent of scale range.
    - f. Display: Shows rate of flow, with register to indicate total volume in gallons (liters).
    - g. Conversion Chart: Flow rate data compatible with sensor and indicator.
    - h. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each flowmeter.
  2. Pitot-Tube Flowmeters:
    - a. Description: Flowmeter with sensor and indicator.
    - b. Flow Range: Sensor and indicator shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.
    - c. Sensor: Insertion type; for inserting probe into piping and measuring flow directly in gallons per minute (liters per second).
      - 1) Design: Differential-pressure-type measurement for oil **OR** water, **as directed**.
      - 2) Construction: Stainless-steel probe of length to span inside of pipe, with integral transmitter and direct-reading scale.
      - 3) Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
      - 4) Minimum Temperature Rating: 250 deg F (121 deg C).



- d. Indicator: Hand-held meter; either an integral part of sensor or a separate meter.
  - e. Integral Transformer: For low-voltage power connection.
  - f. Accuracy: Plus or minus 3 percent.
  - g. Display: Shows rate of flow, with register to indicate total volume in gallons (liters).
  - h. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each flowmeter.
3. Turbine Flowmeters:
- a. Description: Flowmeter with sensor and indicator.
  - b. Flow Range: Sensor and indicator shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.
  - c. Sensor: Impeller turbine; for inserting into pipe fitting or for installing in piping and measuring flow directly in gallons per minute (liters per second).
    - 1) Design: Device or pipe fitting with inline turbine and integral direct-reading scale for gas **OR** oil **OR** steam **OR** water, **as directed**.
    - 2) Construction: Bronze or stainless-steel body, with plastic turbine or impeller.
    - 3) Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 4) Minimum Temperature Rating: 180 deg F (82 deg C).
  - d. Indicator: Hand-held meter; either an integral part of sensor or a separate meter.
  - e. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1-1/2 percent.
  - f. Display: Shows rate of flow, with register to indicate total volume in gallons (liters).
  - g. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each flowmeter.
4. Venturi Flowmeters:
- a. Description: Flowmeter with calibrated flow-measuring element, hoses or tubing, fittings, valves, indicator, and conversion chart.
  - b. Flow Range: Sensor and indicator shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.
  - c. Sensor: Venturi-type, calibrated, flow-measuring element; for installation in piping.
    - 1) Design: Differential-pressure-type measurement for gas **OR** oil **OR** steam **OR** water, **as directed**.
    - 2) Construction: Bronze, brass, or factory-primed steel, with brass fittings and attached tag with flow conversion data.
    - 3) Minimum Pressure Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa).
    - 4) Minimum Temperature Rating: 250 deg F (121 deg C).
    - 5) End Connections for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded.
    - 6) End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged or welded.
    - 7) Flow Range: Flow-measuring element and flowmeter shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.
  - d. Permanent Indicators: Meter suitable for wall or bracket mounting, calibrated for connected flowmeter element, and having 6-inch- (152-mm-) diameter, or equivalent, dial with fittings and copper tubing for connecting to flowmeter element.
    - 1) Scale: Gallons per minute (Liters per second).
    - 2) Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent between 20 and 80 percent of scale range.
  - e. Portable Indicators: Hand-held, differential-pressure type, calibrated for connected flowmeter element and having two 12-foot (3.7-m) hoses, with carrying case.
    - 1) Scale: Gallons per minute (Liters per second).
    - 2) Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 percent between 20 and 80 percent of scale range.
  - f. Display: Shows rate of flow, with register to indicate total volume in gallons (liters).
  - g. Conversion Chart: Flow rate data compatible with sensor.
  - h. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each flowmeter.
5. Vortex-Shedding Flowmeters:
- a. Description: Flowmeter with sensor and indicator.
  - b. Flow Range: Sensor and indicator shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.
  - c. Sensor: Inline type; for installing between pipe flanges and measuring flow directly in gallons per minute (liters per second).





- 1) Design: Flow obstruction device, vortex-measurement type for gas **OR** steam **OR** liquids, **as directed**.
- 2) Construction: Stainless-steel body, with integral transmitter and direct-reading scale.
- 3) Minimum Pressure Rating: 1000 psig (6900 kPa).
- 4) Minimum Temperature Rating: 500 deg F (260 deg C).
- 5) Integral Transformer: For low-voltage power operation.
- d. Indicator: Hand-held meter; either an integral part of sensor or a separate meter.
- e. Accuracy: Plus or minus 0.25 percent for liquids and 0.75 percent for gases.
- f. Display: Shows rate of flow, with register to indicate total volume in gallons (liters).
- g. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each flowmeter.

M. Thermal-Energy Meters

- 1. Impeller-Turbine, Thermal-Energy Meters:
  - a. Description: System with strainer, **as directed**, flow sensor, temperature sensors, transmitter, indicator, and connecting wiring.
  - b. Flow Sensor: Impeller turbine with corrosion-resistant-metal body and transmitter; for installing in piping.
    - 1) Design: Total thermal-energy measurement.
    - 2) Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) Minimum Temperature Range: 40 to 250 deg F (5 to 121 deg C).
  - c. Temperature Sensors: Insertion-type transducer.
  - d. Indicator: Solid-state, integrating-type meter with integral battery pack, **as directed**; for wall mounting.
    - 1) Data Output: Six-digit electromechanical counter with readout in kilowatts per hour or British thermal units (joules).
    - 2) Battery Pack: Five-year lithium battery.
  - e. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent.
  - f. Display: Visually indicates total fluid volume in gallons (liters) and thermal-energy flow in kilowatts per hour or British thermal units (joules).
  - g. Strainer: Full size of main line piping.
  - h. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each thermal-energy meter system.
- 2. Ultrasonic, Thermal-Energy Meters:
  - a. Description: Meter with flow sensor, temperature sensors, transmitter, indicator, and connecting wiring.
  - b. Flow Sensor: Transit-time ultrasonic type with transmitter.
  - c. Temperature Sensors: Insertion-type or strap-on transducer.
  - d. Indicator: Solid-state, integrating-type meter with integral battery pack, **as directed**.
    - 1) Data Output: Six-digit electromechanical counter with readout in kilowatts per hour or British thermal units (joules).
    - 2) Battery Pack: Five-year lithium battery.
  - e. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent.
  - f. Display: Visually indicates total fluid volume in gallons (liters) and thermal-energy flow in kilowatts per hour or British thermal units (joules).
  - g. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each thermal-energy meter system.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation

- 1. Install thermowells with socket extending a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) into fluid **OR** one-third of pipe diameter **OR** to center of pipe, **as directed**, and in vertical position in piping tees.
- 2. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.



3. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
  4. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
  5. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
  6. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.
  7. Install duct-thermometer mounting brackets in walls of ducts. Attach to duct with screws.
  8. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
  9. Install remote-mounted pressure gages on panel.
  10. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids (except steam).
  11. Install valve and syphon fitting in piping for each pressure gage for steam.
  12. Install test plugs in piping tees.
  13. Install flow indicators in piping systems in accessible positions for easy viewing.
  14. Assemble and install connections, tubing, and accessories between flow-measuring elements and flowmeters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  15. Install flowmeter elements in accessible positions in piping systems.
  16. Install wafer-orifice flowmeter elements between pipe flanges.
  17. Install differential-pressure-type flowmeter elements, with at least minimum straight lengths of pipe, upstream and downstream from element according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  18. Install permanent indicators on walls or brackets in accessible and readable positions.
  19. Install connection fittings in accessible locations for attachment to portable indicators.
  20. Mount thermal-energy meters on wall if accessible; if not, provide brackets to support meters.
  21. Install thermometers in the following locations:
    - a. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone.
    - b. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic boiler.
    - c. Two inlets and two outlets of each chiller.
    - d. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units.
    - e. Two inlets and two outlets of each hydronic heat exchanger.
    - f. Inlet and outlet of each thermal-storage tank.
    - g. Outside-, return-, supply-, and mixed-air ducts.
  22. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
    - a. Discharge of each pressure-reducing valve.
    - b. Inlet and outlet of each chiller chilled-water and condenser-water connection.
    - c. Suction and discharge of each pump.
- B. Connections
1. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.
  2. Connect flowmeter-system elements to meters.
  3. Connect flowmeter transmitters to meters.
  4. Connect thermal-energy meter transmitters to meters.
- C. Adjusting
1. After installation, calibrate meters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.
- D. Thermometer Schedule
1. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone shall be one of the following:
    - a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed, **as directed**, bimetallic-actuated type.
    - b. Direct-mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, metal-case **OR** plastic-case, **as directed**, vapor-actuated type.
    - c. Compact-style **OR** Industrial-style, **as directed**, liquid-in-glass type.
    - d. Direct-mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, light-activated type.
    - e. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.



2. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic boiler shall be one of the following:
  - a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed, **as directed**, bimetallic-actuated type.
  - b. Direct-mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, metal-case **OR** plastic-case, **as directed**, vapor-actuated type.
  - c. Compact-style **OR** Industrial-style, **as directed**, liquid-in-glass type.
  - d. Direct-mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, light-activated type.
  - e. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.
3. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each chiller shall be one of the following:
  - a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed, **as directed**, bimetallic-actuated type.
  - b. Direct-mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, metal-case **OR** plastic-case, **as directed**, vapor-actuated type.
  - c. Compact-style **OR** Industrial-style, **as directed**, liquid-in-glass type.
  - d. Direct-mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, light-activated type.
  - e. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.
4. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units and built-up central systems shall be one of the following:
  - a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed, **as directed**, bimetallic-actuated type.
  - b. Direct-mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, metal-case **OR** plastic-case, **as directed**, vapor-actuated type.
  - c. Compact-style **OR** Industrial-style, **as directed**, liquid-in-glass type.
  - d. Direct-mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, light-activated type.
  - e. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.
5. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each hydronic heat exchanger shall be one of the following:
  - a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed, **as directed**, bimetallic-actuated type.
  - b. Direct-mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, metal-case **OR** plastic-case, **as directed**, vapor-actuated type.
  - c. Compact-style **OR** Industrial-style, **as directed**, liquid-in-glass type.
  - d. Direct-mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, light-activated type.
  - e. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.
6. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic heat-recovery unit shall be one of the following:
  - a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed, **as directed**, bimetallic-actuated type.
  - b. Direct-mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, metal-case **OR** plastic-case, **as directed**, vapor-actuated type.
  - c. Compact-style **OR** Industrial-style, **as directed**, liquid-in-glass type.
  - d. Direct-mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, light-activated type.
  - e. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.
7. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each thermal-storage tank shall be one of the following:
  - a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed, **as directed**, bimetallic-actuated type.
  - b. Direct-mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, metal-case **OR** plastic-case, **as directed**, vapor-actuated type.
  - c. Compact-style **OR** Industrial-style, **as directed**, liquid-in-glass type.
  - d. Direct-mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, light-activated type.
  - e. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.
8. Thermometers at outside-, return-, supply-, and mixed-air ducts shall be one of the following:
  - a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed, **as directed**, bimetallic-actuated type.
  - b. Direct-mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, metal-case **OR** plastic-case, **as directed**, vapor-actuated type.
  - c. Compact-style **OR** Industrial-style, **as directed**, liquid-in-glass type.
  - d. Direct-mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, light-activated type.
9. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.



E. Thermometer Scale-Range Schedule

1. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: Minus 40 to plus 160 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 100 deg C) **OR** Minus 40 to plus 160 deg F and minus 40 to plus 100 deg C, **as directed**.
2. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 50 deg C) **OR** 0 to 100 deg F and minus 20 to plus 50 deg C, **as directed**.
3. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 150 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 70 deg C) **OR** 0 to 150 deg F and minus 20 to plus 70 deg C, **as directed**.
4. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 250 deg F (0 to 150 deg C) **OR** 0 to 250 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C, **as directed**.
5. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 50 deg C) **OR** 0 to 100 deg F and minus 20 to plus 50 deg C, **as directed**.
6. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 150 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 70 deg C) **OR** 0 to 150 deg F and minus 20 to plus 70 deg C, **as directed**.
7. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 250 deg F (0 to 150 deg C) **OR** 0 to 250 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C, **as directed**.
8. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 20 to 240 deg F (0 to 150 deg C) **OR** 20 to 240 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C, **as directed**.
9. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 30 to 240 deg F (0 to plus 115 deg C) **OR** 30 to 240 deg F and 0 to plus 115 deg C, **as directed**.
10. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 250 deg F (0 to 150 deg C) **OR** 0 to 250 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C, **as directed**.
11. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 20 to 240 deg F (0 to 150 deg C) **OR** 20 to 240 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C, **as directed**.
12. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 30 to 240 deg F (0 to plus 115 deg C) **OR** 30 to 240 deg F and 0 to plus 115 deg C, **as directed**.
13. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 50 to 400 deg F (0 to 200 deg C) **OR** 50 to 400 deg F and 0 to 200 deg C, **as directed**.
14. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 50 to 550 deg F (10 to 300 deg C) **OR** 50 to 550 deg F and 10 to 300 deg C, **as directed**.
15. Scale Range for Steam and Steam-Condensate Piping: 0 to 250 deg F (0 to 150 deg C) **OR** 0 to 250 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C, **as directed**.
16. Scale Range for Steam and Steam-Condensate Piping: 20 to 240 deg F (0 to 150 deg C) **OR** 20 to 240 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C, **as directed**.
17. Scale Range for Steam and Steam-Condensate Piping: 30 to 240 deg F (0 to plus 115 deg C) **OR** 30 to 240 deg F and 0 to plus 115 deg C, **as directed**.
18. Scale Range for Steam and Steam-Condensate Piping: 50 to 400 deg F (0 to 200 deg C) **OR** 50 to 400 deg F and 0 to 200 deg C, **as directed**.
19. Scale Range for Air Ducts: Minus 40 to plus 110 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 45 deg C) **OR** Minus 40 to plus 110 deg F and minus 40 to plus 45 deg C, **as directed**.
20. Scale Range for Air Ducts: Minus 40 to plus 160 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 100 deg C) **OR** Minus 40 to plus 160 deg F and minus 40 to plus 100 deg C, **as directed**.
21. Scale Range for Air Ducts: 0 to 100 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 50 deg C) **OR** 0 to 100 deg F and minus 20 to plus 50 deg C, **as directed**.
22. Scale Range for Air Ducts: 0 to 150 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 70 deg C) **OR** 0 to 150 deg F and minus 20 to plus 70 deg C, **as directed**.
23. Scale Range for Air Ducts: 0 to 250 deg F (0 to 150 deg C) **OR** 0 to 250 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C, **as directed**.
24. Scale Range for Air Ducts: 20 to 240 deg F (0 to 150 deg C) **OR** 20 to 240 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C, **as directed**.
25. Scale Range for Air Ducts: 30 to 240 deg F (0 to plus 115 deg C) **OR** 30 to 240 deg F and 0 to plus 115 deg C, **as directed**.
26. Scale Range for Air Ducts: 50 to 400 deg F (0 to 200 deg C) **OR** 50 to 400 deg F and 0 to 200 deg C, **as directed**.

F. Pressure-Gage Schedule



1. Pressure gages at discharge of each pressure-reducing valve shall be one of the following:
    - a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed **OR** Open-front, pressure-relief **OR** Solid-front, pressure-relief, **as directed**, direct-mounted **OR** remote-mounted, **as directed**, metal case.
    - b. Sealed, direct-mounted **OR** remote-mounted, **as directed**, plastic case.
    - c. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.
  2. Pressure gages at inlet and outlet of each chiller chilled-water and condenser-water connection shall be one of the following:
    - a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed **OR** Open-front, pressure-relief **OR** Solid-front, pressure-relief, **as directed**, direct-mounted **OR** remote-mounted, **as directed**, metal case.
    - b. Sealed, direct-mounted **OR** remote-mounted, **as directed**, plastic case.
    - c. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.
  3. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each pump shall be one of the following:
    - a. Liquid-filled **OR** Sealed **OR** Open-front, pressure-relief **OR** Solid-front, pressure-relief, **as directed**, direct-mounted **OR** remote-mounted, **as directed**, metal case.
    - b. Sealed, direct-mounted **OR** remote-mounted, **as directed**, plastic case.
    - c. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic **OR** EPDM, **as directed**, self-sealing rubber inserts.
- G. Pressure-Gage Scale-Range Schedule
1. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 30 in. Hg to 15 psi (minus 100 to 0 kPa) **OR** 30 in. Hg to 15 psi and minus 100 to 0 kPa, **as directed**.
  2. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 30 psi (0 to 240 kPa) **OR** 0 to 30 psi and 0 to 240 kPa, **as directed**.
  3. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi (0 to 600 kPa) **OR** 0 to 100 psi and 0 to 600 kPa, **as directed**.
  4. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 160 psi (0 to 1100 kPa) **OR** 0 to 160 psi and 0 to 1100 kPa, **as directed**.
  5. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 200 psi (0 to 1400 kPa) **OR** 0 to 200 psi and 0 to 1400 kPa, **as directed**.
  6. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 300 psi (0 to 2500 kPa) **OR** 0 to 300 psi and 0 to 2500 kPa, **as directed**.
  7. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 600 psi (0 to 4000 kPa) **OR** 0 to 600 psi and 0 to 4000 kPa, **as directed**.
  8. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 30 in. Hg to 15 psi (minus 100 to 0 kPa) **OR** 30 in. Hg to 15 psi and minus 100 to 0 kPa, **as directed**.
  9. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 30 psi (0 to 240 kPa) **OR** 0 to 30 psi and 0 to 240 kPa, **as directed**.
  10. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi (0 to 600 kPa) **OR** 0 to 100 psi and 0 to 600 kPa, **as directed**.
  11. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 160 psi (0 to 1100 kPa) **OR** 0 to 160 psi and 0 to 1100 kPa, **as directed**.
  12. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 200 psi (0 to 1400 kPa) **OR** 0 to 200 psi and 0 to 1400 kPa, **as directed**.
  13. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 300 psi (0 to 2500 kPa) **OR** 0 to 300 psi and 0 to 2500 kPa, **as directed**.
  14. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 600 psi (0 to 4000 kPa) **OR** 0 to 600 psi and 0 to 4000 kPa, **as directed**.
  15. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 30 in. Hg to 15 psi (minus 100 to 0 kPa) **OR** 30 in. Hg to 15 psi and minus 100 to 0 kPa, **as directed**.
  16. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 30 psi (0 to 240 kPa) **OR** 0 to 30 psi and 0 to 240 kPa, **as directed**.
  17. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi (0 to 600 kPa) **OR** 0 to 100 psi and 0 to 600 kPa, **as directed**.



18. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 160 psi (0 to 1100 kPa) **OR** 0 to 160 psi and 0 to 1100 kPa, **as directed**.
19. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 200 psi (0 to 1400 kPa) **OR** 0 to 200 psi and 0 to 1400 kPa, **as directed**.
20. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 300 psi (0 to 2500 kPa) **OR** 0 to 300 psi and 0 to 2500 kPa, **as directed**.
21. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 600 psi (0 to 4000 kPa) **OR** 0 to 600 psi and 0 to 4000 kPa, **as directed**.
22. Scale Range for Steam Piping: 30 in. Hg to 15 psi (minus 100 to 0 kPa) **OR** 30 in. Hg to 15 psi and minus 100 to 0 kPa, **as directed**.
23. Scale Range for Steam Piping: 0 to 30 psi (0 to 240 kPa) **OR** 0 to 30 psi and 0 to 240 kPa, **as directed**.
24. Scale Range for Steam Piping: 0 to 100 psi (0 to 600 kPa) **OR** 0 to 100 psi and 0 to 600 kPa, **as directed**.
25. Scale Range for Steam Piping: 0 to 160 psi (0 to 1100 kPa) **OR** 0 to 160 psi and 0 to 1100 kPa, **as directed**.
26. Scale Range for Steam Piping: 0 to 200 psi (0 to 1400 kPa) **OR** 0 to 200 psi and 0 to 1400 kPa, **as directed**.
27. Scale Range for Steam Piping: 0 to 300 psi (0 to 2500 kPa) **OR** 0 to 300 psi and 0 to 2500 kPa, **as directed**.
28. Scale Range for Steam Piping: 0 to 600 psi (0 to 4000 kPa) **OR** 0 to 600 psi and 0 to 4000 kPa, **as directed**.

H. Flowmeter Schedule

1. Flowmeters for Chilled-Water Piping: Orifice **OR** Pitot-tube **OR** Turbine **OR** Venturi **OR** Vortex-shedding, **as directed**, type.
2. Flowmeters for Condenser-Water Piping: Orifice **OR** Pitot-tube **OR** Turbine **OR** Venturi **OR** Vortex-shedding, **as directed**, type.
3. Flowmeters for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: Orifice **OR** Pitot-tube **OR** Turbine **OR** Venturi **OR** Vortex-shedding, **as directed**, type.
4. Flowmeters for Steam and Steam-Condensate Piping: Orifice **OR** Turbine **OR** Venturi **OR** Vortex-shedding, **as directed**, type.

I. Thermal-Energy Meter Schedule

1. Thermal-Energy Meters for Chilled-Water Piping: Impeller-turbine **OR** Ultrasonic, **as directed**, type.
2. Thermal-Energy Meters for Condenser-Water Piping: Impeller-turbine **OR** Ultrasonic, **as directed**, type.
3. Thermal-Energy Meters for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: Impeller-turbine **OR** Ultrasonic, **as directed**, type.
4. Thermal-Energy Meters for Steam and Steam-Condensate Piping: Impeller-turbine **OR** Ultrasonic, **as directed**, type.

END OF SECTION 33 19 11 00a



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
33 19 11 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
33 19 11 00	22 05 23 00a	Water Distribution
33 31 11 00	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
33 31 11 00	33 14 13 23	Sand Drains
33 31 11 00	22 05 23 00a	Water Distribution
33 31 11 00	33 11 13 00	Monitoring Wells
33 31 11 00	22 11 23 23	Water Supply Wells
33 31 11 00	22 05 76 00	Sanitary Sewerage
33 31 11 00	32 91 19 13a	Septic Tank Systems
33 31 11 00	33 14 13 23a	Hydronic Distribution
33 31 11 00	31 05 13 00	Subdrainage
33 31 11 00	33 42 11 00	Storm Drainage
33 32 16 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
33 32 16 00	22 13 29 13b	Sewage Pumps
33 34 13 13	32 91 19 13a	Septic Tank Systems
33 34 13 23	32 91 19 13a	Septic Tank Systems
33 34 13 33	32 91 19 13a	Septic Tank Systems
33 34 51 00	32 91 19 13a	Septic Tank Systems
33 34 53 13	32 91 19 13a	Septic Tank Systems
33 34 56 00	32 91 19 13a	Septic Tank Systems
33 41 16 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
33 41 16 00	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
33 41 16 00	22 05 76 00	Sanitary Sewerage
33 41 16 00	32 91 19 13a	Septic Tank Systems
33 41 16 00	31 05 13 00	Subdrainage
33 41 16 00	33 42 11 00	Storm Drainage
33 41 16 00	22 11 16 00e	Storm Drainage Piping
33 41 19 00	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
33 41 19 00	31 05 13 00	Subdrainage



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





## SECTION 33 42 11 00 - STORM DRAINAGE

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for storm drainage. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Pipe and fittings.
  - b. Nonpressure transition couplings.
  - c. Pressure pipe couplings.
  - d. Expansion joints and deflection fittings.
  - e. Backwater valves.
  - f. Cleanouts.
  - g. Drains.
  - h. Encasement for piping.
  - i. Manholes.
  - j. Channel drainage systems.
  - k. Catch basins.
  - l. Stormwater inlets.
  - m. Stormwater detention structures.
  - n. Pipe outlets.
  - o. Dry wells.
  - p. Stormwater disposal systems.

#### C. Definitions

1. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings:
  - a. Manholes: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, frames, and covers.
  - b. Catch basins, stormwater inlets, and dry wells. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, frames, covers, and grates.
  - c. Stormwater Detention Structures: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, frames, covers, design calculations, and concrete design-mix reports.
3. Coordination Drawings: Show pipe sizes, locations, and elevations. Show other piping in same trench and clearances from storm drainage system piping. Indicate interface and spatial relationship between manholes, piping, and proximate structures.
4. Profile Drawings: Show system piping in elevation. Draw profiles at horizontal scale of not less than 1 inch equals 50 feet (1:500) and vertical scale of not less than 1 inch equals 5 feet (1:50). Indicate manholes and piping. Show types, sizes, materials, and elevations of other utilities crossing system piping.
5. Product Certificates: For each type of cast-iron soil pipe and fitting, from manufacturer.
6. Field quality-control reports.

#### E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Do not store plastic manholes, pipe, and fittings in direct sunlight.
2. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.
3. Handle manholes according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.



4. Handle catch basins and stormwater inlets according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

F. Project Conditions

1. Interruption of Existing Storm Drainage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
  - a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
  - b. Do not proceed with interruption of service without the Owner written permission.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Hub-And-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Pipe And Fittings

1. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service class **OR** Extra-Heavy class, **as directed**.
2. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
3. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

B. Hubless Cast-Iron Soil Pipe And Fittings

1. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
2. CISPI-Trademarked, Shielded Couplings:
  - a. Description: ASTM C 1277 and CISPI 310, with stainless-steel corrugated shield; stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
3. Heavy-Duty, Shielded Couplings:
  - a. Description: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540, with stainless-steel shield; stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
4. Cast-Iron, Shielded Couplings:
  - a. Description: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM A 48/A 48M, two-piece, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

C. Ductile-Iron, Culvert Pipe And Fittings

1. Pipe: ASTM A 716, for push-on joints.
2. Standard Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron, for push-on joints.
3. Compact Fittings: AWWA C153, for push-on joints.
4. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.

D. Ductile-Iron, Pressure Pipe And Fittings

1. Push-on-Joint Piping:
  - a. Pipe: AWWA C151, for push-on joints.
  - b. Standard Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron, for push-on joints.
  - c. Compact Fittings: AWWA C153, for push-on joints.
  - d. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber, of shape matching pipe and fittings.
2. Mechanical-Joint Piping:
  - a. Pipe: AWWA C151, with bolt holes in bell.
  - b. Standard Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron, with bolt holes in bell.
  - c. Compact Fittings: AWWA C153, with bolt holes in bells.
  - d. Glands: Cast or ductile iron, with bolt holes and high-strength, cast-iron or high-strength, low-alloy steel bolts and nuts.
  - e. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber, of shape matching pipe, fittings, and glands.

E. Steel Pipe And Fittings



1. Corrugated-Steel Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 760/A 760M, Type I with fittings of similar form and construction as pipe.
  - a. Special-Joint Bands: Corrugated steel with O-ring seals.
  - b. Standard-Joint Bands: Corrugated steel.
  - c. Coating: Aluminum **OR** Zinc, **as directed**.
  
- F. Aluminum Pipe And Fittings
  1. Corrugated Aluminum Pipe and Fittings: ASTM B 745/B 745M, Type I with fittings of similar form and construction as pipe.
    - a. Special-Joint Bands: Corrugated steel with O-ring seals.
    - b. Standard-Joint Bands: Corrugated steel.
  
- G. ABS Pipe And Fittings
  1. ABS Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM D 2751, with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints.
    - a. NPS 3 to NPS 6 (DN 80 to DN 150): SDR 35.
    - b. NPS 8 to NPS 12 (DN 200 to DN 300): SDR 42.
  2. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
  
- H. PE Pipe And Fittings
  1. Corrugated PE Drainage Pipe and Fittings NPS 3 to NPS 10 (DN 80 to DN 250): AASHTO M 252M, Type S, with smooth waterway for coupling joints.
    - a. Silttight Couplings: PE sleeve with ASTM D 1056, Type 2, Class A, Grade 2 gasket material that mates with tube and fittings.
    - b. Soiltight Couplings: AASHTO M 252M, corrugated, matching tube and fittings.
  2. Corrugated PE Pipe and Fittings NPS 12 to NPS 60 (DN 300 to DN 1500): AASHTO M 294M, Type S, with smooth waterway for coupling joints.
    - a. Silttight Couplings: PE sleeve with ASTM D 1056, Type 2, Class A, Grade 2 gasket material that mates with pipe and fittings.
    - b. Soiltight Couplings: AASHTO M 294M, corrugated, matching pipe and fittings.
  
- I. PVC Pipe And Fittings
  1. PVC Cellular-Core Piping:
    - a. PVC Cellular-Core Pipe and Fittings: ASTM F 891, Sewer and Drain Series, PS 50 minimum stiffness, PVC cellular-core pipe with plain ends for solvent-cemented joints.
    - b. Fittings: ASTM D 3034, SDR 35, PVC socket-type fittings.
  2. PVC Corrugated Sewer Piping:
    - a. Pipe: ASTM F 949, PVC, corrugated pipe with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints.
    - b. Fittings: ASTM F 949, PVC molded or fabricated, socket type.
    - c. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
  3. PVC Profile Sewer Piping:
    - a. Pipe: ASTM F 794, PVC profile, gravity sewer pipe with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints.
    - b. Fittings: ASTM D 3034, PVC with bell ends.
    - c. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
  4. PVC Type PSM Sewer Piping:
    - a. Pipe: ASTM D 3034, SDR 35, PVC Type PSM sewer pipe with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints.
    - b. Fittings: ASTM D 3034, PVC with bell ends.
    - c. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
  5. PVC Gravity Sewer Piping:
    - a. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM F 679, T-1 **OR** T-2, **as directed**, wall thickness, PVC gravity sewer pipe with bell-and-spigot ends and with integral ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals for gasketed joints.
  6. PVC Pressure Piping:
    - a. Pipe: AWWA C900, Class 100 **OR** Class 150 **OR** Class 200, **as directed**, PVC pipe with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints.



- b. Fittings: AWWA C900, Class 100 **OR** Class 150 **OR** Class 200, **as directed**, PVC pipe with bell ends
- c. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
- 7. PVC Water-Service Piping:
  - a. Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40 **OR** Schedule 80, **as directed**, PVC, with plain ends for solvent-cemented joints.
  - b. Fittings: ASTM D 2466, Schedule 40 **OR** ASTM D 2467, Schedule 80, **as directed**, PVC, socket type.
- J. Fiberglass Pipe And Fittings
  - 1. Fiberglass Sewer Pipe: ASTM D 3262, RTRP for gasketed joints fabricated with Type 2, polyester **OR** Type 4, epoxy, **as directed**, resin.
    - a. Liner: Reinforced thermoset **OR** Nonreinforced thermoset **OR** Thermoplastic **OR** No liner, **as directed**.
    - b. Grade: Reinforced, surface layer matching pipe resin **OR** Nonreinforced, surface layer matching pipe resin **OR** No surface layer, **as directed**.
    - c. Stiffness: 9 psig (62 kPa) **OR** 18 psig (124 kPa) **OR** 36 psig (248 kPa) **OR** 72 psig (496 kPa), **as directed**.
  - 2. Fiberglass Nonpressure Fittings: ASTM D 3840, RTRF for gasketed joints.
    - a. Laminating Resin: Type 1, polyester **OR** Type 2, epoxy, **as directed**, resin.
    - b. Reinforcement: Grade with finish compatible with resin.
  - 3. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.
- K. Concrete Pipe And Fittings
  - 1. Nonreinforced-Concrete Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM C 14 (ASTM C 14M), Class 1 **OR** Class 2 **OR** Class 3, **as directed**, with bell-and-spigot **OR** tongue-and-groove, **as directed** ends and gasketed joints with ASTM C 443 (ASTM C 443M), rubber gaskets **OR** sealant joints with ASTM C 990 (ASTM C 990M), bitumen or butyl-rubber sealant, **as directed**.
  - 2. Reinforced-Concrete Sewer Pipe and Fittings: ASTM C 76 (ASTM C 76M).
    - a. Bell-and-spigot **OR** Tongue-and-groove, **as directed**, ends and gasketed joints with ASTM C 443 (ASTM C 443M), rubber gaskets **OR** sealant joints with ASTM C 990 (ASTM C 990M), bitumen or butyl-rubber sealant, **as directed**.
    - b. Class I, Wall A **OR** Wall B, **as directed**.
    - c. Class II, Wall A **OR** Wall B **OR** Wall C, **as directed**.
    - d. Class III, Wall A **OR** Wall B **OR** Wall C, **as directed**.
    - e. Class IV, Wall A **OR** Wall B **OR** Wall C, **as directed**.
    - f. Class V, Wall B **OR** Wall C, **as directed**.
- L. Nonpressure Transition Couplings
  - 1. Comply with ASTM C 1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, for joining underground nonpressure piping. Include ends of same sizes as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
  - 2. Sleeve Materials:
    - a. For Concrete Pipes: ASTM C 443 (ASTM C 443M), rubber.
    - b. For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
    - c. For Fiberglass Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
    - d. For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
    - e. For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
  - 3. Unshielded, Flexible Couplings:
    - a. Description: Elastomeric sleeve, with stainless-steel shear ring, **as directed**, and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
  - 4. Shielded, Flexible Couplings:



- a. Description: ASTM C 1460, elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
5. Ring-Type, Flexible Couplings:
  - a. Description: Elastomeric compression seal with dimensions to fit inside bell of larger pipe and for spigot of smaller pipe to fit inside ring.
- M. Pressure Pipe Couplings
  1. Description: AWWA C219, tubular-sleeve coupling, with center sleeve, gaskets, end rings, and bolt fasteners.
  2. Metal, bolted, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, for joining underground pressure piping. Include 150-psig (1035-kPa) **OR** 200-psig (1380-kPa), **as directed**, minimum pressure rating and ends sized to fit adjoining pipes.
  3. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Carbon steel **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Ductile iron **OR** Malleable iron, **as directed**.
  4. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
  5. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.
- N. Expansion Joints And Deflection Fittings
  1. Ductile-Iron Flexible Expansion Joints:
    - a. Description: Compound fitting with combination of flanged and mechanical-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include two gasketed ball-joint sections and one or more gasketed sleeve sections, rated for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure and for offset and expansion indicated.
  2. Ductile-Iron Expansion Joints:
    - a. Description: Three-piece assembly of telescoping sleeve with gaskets and restrained-type, ductile-iron or steel with protective coating, bell-and-spigot end sections complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include rating for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure and for expansion indicated.
  3. Ductile-Iron Deflection Fittings:
    - a. Description: Compound-coupling fitting, with ball joint, flexing section, gaskets, and restrained-joint ends, complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include rating for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure and for up to 15 degrees of deflection.
- O. Backwater Valves
  1. Cast-Iron Backwater Valves:
    - a. Description: ASME A112.14.1, gray-iron body and bolted cover, with bronze seat.
    - b. Horizontal type; with swing check valve and hub-and-spigot ends.
    - c. Combination horizontal and manual gate-valve type; with swing check valve, integral gate valve, and hub-and-spigot ends.
    - d. Terminal type; with bronze seat, swing check valve, and hub inlet.
  2. Plastic Backwater Valves:
    - a. Description: Horizontal type; with PVC body, PVC removable cover, and PVC swing check valve.
- P. Cleanouts
  1. Cast-Iron Cleanouts:
    - a. Description: ASME A112.36.2M, round, gray-iron housing with clamping device and round, secured, scoriated, gray-iron cover. Include gray-iron ferrule with inside calk or spigot connection and countersunk, tapered-thread, brass closure plug.
    - b. Top-Loading Classification(s): Light Duty **OR** Medium Duty **OR** Heavy Duty **OR** Extra-Heavy Duty, **as directed**.
    - c. Sewer Pipe Fitting and Riser to Cleanout: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
  2. Plastic Cleanouts:



- a. Description: PVC body with PVC threaded plug. Include PVC sewer pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as sewer piping.

#### Q. Drains

##### 1. Cast-Iron Area Drains:

- a. Description: ASME A112.6.3 gray-iron round body with anchor flange and round secured **OR** non-secured, **as directed**, grate. Include bottom outlet with inside calk or spigot connection, of sizes indicated.
- b. Top-Loading Classification(s): Medium Duty **OR** Heavy Duty, **as directed**.

##### 2. Cast-Iron Trench Drains:

- a. Description: ASME A112.6.3, 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide top surface, rectangular body with anchor flange or other anchoring device, and rectangular secured **OR** non-secured, **as directed**, grate. Include units of total length indicated and quantity of bottom outlets with inside calk or spigot connections, of sizes indicated.
- b. Top-Loading Classification(s): Medium Duty **OR** Heavy Duty **OR** Extra-Heavy Duty **OR** Medium and Heavy Duty **OR** Medium and Extra-Heavy Duty **OR** Heavy and Extra-Heavy Duty **OR** Medium, Heavy, and Extra-Heavy Duty, **as directed**.

##### 3. Steel Trench Drains:

- a. Description: Factory fabricated from ASTM A 242/A 242M, welded steel plate, to form rectangular body with uniform bottom downward slope of 2 percent toward outlet, anchor flange, and grate. Include units of total length indicated, bottom outlet of size indicated, outlet strainer, acid-resistant enamel coating on inside and outside surfaces, and grate with openings of total free area at least two times cross-sectional area of outlet.
- b. Plate Thicknesses: 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) **OR** 1/4 inch (6.4 mm), **as directed**.
- c. Overall Widths: 7-1/2 inches (190 mm) **OR** 12-1/3 inches (313 mm), **as directed**.
  - 1) Grate Openings: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) circular **OR** 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) circular **OR** 3/8-by-3-inch (9.5-by-76-mm) slots, **as directed**.

#### R. Encasement For Piping

1. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
2. Material: Linear low-density polyethylene film of 0.008-inch (0.20-mm) **OR** high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film of 0.004-inch (0.10-mm), **as directed**, minimum thickness.
3. Form: Sheet **OR** Tube, **as directed**.
4. Color: Black **OR** Natural, **as directed**.

#### S. Manholes

##### 1. Standard Precast Concrete Manholes:

- a. Description: ASTM C 478 (ASTM C 478M), precast, reinforced concrete, of depth indicated, with provision for sealant joints.
- b. Diameter: 48 inches (1200 mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- c. Ballast: Increase thickness of precast concrete sections or add concrete to base section as required to prevent flotation.
- d. Base Section: 6-inch (150-mm) minimum thickness for floor slab and 4-inch (102-mm) minimum thickness for walls and base riser section, and separate base slab or base section with integral floor.
- e. Riser Sections: 4-inch (102-mm) minimum thickness, and lengths to provide depth indicated.
- f. Top Section: Eccentric-cone type unless concentric-cone or flat-slab-top type is indicated, and top of cone of size that matches grade rings.
- g. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 990 (ASTM C 990M), bitumen or butyl rubber.
- h. Resilient Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923 (ASTM C 923M), cast or fitted into manhole walls, for each pipe connection.
- i. Steps: Individual FRP steps or FRP ladder **OR** Individual FRP steps; FRP ladder; or ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP **OR** ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel reinforcing



- rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP, **as directed**, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch (300- to 400-mm) intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of manhole to finished grade is less than 60 inches (1500 mm).
- j. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking HDPE rings with level or sloped edge in thickness and diameter matching manhole frame and cover, and of height required to adjust manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.
- OR**
- Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch (150- to 225-mm) total thickness, to match diameter of manhole frame and cover, and height as required to adjust manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope.
2. Designed Precast Concrete Manholes:
- a. Description: ASTM C 913; designed according to ASTM C 890 for A-16 (AASHTO HS20-44), heavy-traffic, structural loading; of depth, shape, and dimensions indicated, with provision for sealant joints.
- b. Ballast: Increase thickness of one or more precast concrete sections or add concrete to manhole as required to prevent flotation.
- c. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 990 (ASTM C 990M), bitumen or butyl rubber.
- d. Resilient Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923 (ASTM C 923M), cast or fitted into manhole walls, for each pipe connection.
- e. Steps: Individual FRP steps or FRP ladder **OR** Individual FRP steps; FRP ladder; or ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP **OR** ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP, **as directed**, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch (300- to 400-mm) intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of manhole to finished grade is less than 60 inches (1500 mm).
- f. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking HDPE rings with level or sloped edge in thickness and diameter matching manhole frame and cover, and of height required to adjust manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.
- OR**
- Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch (150- to 225-mm) total thickness, to match diameter of manhole frame and cover, and of height required to adjust manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope.
3. Fiberglass Manholes:
- a. Description: ASTM D 3753.
- b. Diameter: 48 inches (1200 mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- c. Ballast: Increase thickness of concrete base as required to prevent flotation.
- d. Base Section: Concrete, 6-inch (150-mm) minimum thickness.
- e. Resilient Pipe Connectors (if required): ASTM C 923 (ASTM C 923M), cast or fitted into manhole walls, for each pipe connection.
- f. Steps: Individual FRP steps or FRP ladder, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch (300- to 400-mm) intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of manhole to finished grade is less than 60 inches (1500 mm).
- g. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking HDPE rings with level or sloped edge in thickness and diameter matching manhole frame and cover, and of height required to adjust manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.
- OR**
- Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch (150- to 225-mm) total thickness, to match diameter of manhole frame and cover, and height as required to adjust manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope.
4. Manhole Frames and Covers:



- a. Description: Ferrous; 24-inch (610-mm) ID by 7- to 9-inch (175- to 225-mm) riser with 4-inch- (102-mm-) minimum width flange and 26-inch- (660-mm-) diameter cover. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to "STORM SEWER."
- b. Material: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18 ductile **OR** ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 35 gray, **as directed**, iron unless otherwise indicated.

#### T. Concrete

1. General: Cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318, ACI 350/350R (ACI 350M/350RM), and the following:
  - a. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II.
  - b. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33, sand.
  - c. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C 33, crushed gravel.
  - d. Water: Potable.
2. Portland Cement Design Mix: 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) minimum, with 0.45 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio.
  - a. Reinforcing Fabric: ASTM A 1064/A 1064M, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
  - b. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (420 MPa) deformed steel.
3. Manhole Channels and Benches: Factory or field formed from concrete. Portland cement design mix, 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) minimum, with 0.45 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio. Include channels and benches in manholes.
  - a. Channels: Concrete invert, formed to same width as connected piping, with height of vertical sides to three-fourths of pipe diameter. Form curved channels with smooth, uniform radius and slope.
    - 1) Invert Slope: **1 OR 2, as directed**, percent through manhole.
  - b. Benches: Concrete, sloped to drain into channel.
    - 1) Slope: **4 OR 8, as directed**, percent.
4. Ballast and Pipe Supports: Portland cement design mix, 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) minimum, with 0.58 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio.
  - a. Reinforcing Fabric: ASTM A 1064/A 1064M, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
  - b. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (420 MPa) deformed steel.

#### U. Polymer-Concrete, Channel Drainage Systems

1. General Requirements for Polymer-Concrete, Channel Drainage Systems: Modular system of precast, polymer-concrete channel sections, grates, and appurtenances; designed so grates fit into channel recesses without rocking or rattling. Include quantity of units required to form total lengths indicated.
2. Sloped-Invert, Polymer-Concrete Systems:
  - a. Channel Sections:
    - 1) Interlocking-joint, precast, modular units with end caps.
    - 2) 4-inch (102-mm) inside width and deep, rounded bottom, with built-in invert slope of 0.6 percent and with outlets in quantities, sizes, and locations indicated.
    - 3) Extension sections necessary for required depth.
    - 4) Frame: Include gray-iron or steel frame for grate.
  - b. Grates:
    - 1) Manufacturer's designation "Heavy **OR** "Medium, **as directed**, Duty," with slots or perforations that fit recesses in channels.
    - 2) Material: Fiberglass **OR** Galvanized steel **OR** Gray iron **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
  - c. Covers: Solid gray iron if indicated.
  - d. Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections.
3. Narrow-Width, Level-Invert, Polymer-Concrete Systems:
  - a. Channel Sections:
    - 1) Interlocking-joint, precast, modular units with end caps.





- 2) 5-inch (127-mm) inside width and 9-3/4-inch- (248-mm-) deep, rounded bottom, with level invert and with NPS 4 (DN 100) outlets in quantities, sizes, and locations indicated.
  - b. Grates:
    - 1) Slots or perforations that fit recesses in channels.
    - 2) Material: Fiberglass **OR** Galvanized steel **OR** Gray iron **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
  - c. Covers: Solid gray iron if indicated.
  - d. Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections.
4. Wide-Width, Level-Invert, Polymer-Concrete Systems:
- a. Channel Sections:
    - 1) Interlocking-joint, precast, modular units with end caps.
    - 2) 8-inch (203-mm) inside width and 13-3/4-inch- (350-mm-) deep, rounded bottom, with level invert and with outlets in quantities, sizes, and locations indicated.
  - b. Grates:
    - 1) Slots or other openings that fit recesses in channels.
    - 2) Material: Fiberglass **OR** Gray iron, **as directed**.
  - c. Covers: Solid gray iron if indicated.
  - d. Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections.
5. Drainage Specialties: Precast, polymer-concrete units.
- a. Large Catch Basins:
    - 1) 24-by-12-inch (610-by-305-mm) polymer-concrete body, with outlets in quantities and sizes indicated.
    - 2) Gray-iron slotted grate.
    - 3) Frame: Include gray-iron or steel frame for grate.
  - b. Small Catch Basins:
    - 1) 19- to 24-inch by approximately 6-inch (483- to 610-mm by approximately 150-mm) polymer-concrete body, with outlets in quantities and sizes indicated.
    - 2) Gray-iron slotted grate.
    - 3) Frame: Include gray-iron or steel frame for grate.
  - c. Oil Interceptors:
    - 1) Polymer-concrete body with interior baffle and four steel support channels and two 1/4-inch- (6.4-mm-) thick, steel-plate covers.
    - 2) Steel-plate covers.
    - 3) Capacity: 140 gal. (530 L) **OR** 200 gal. (757 L) **OR** 260 gal. (984 L), **as directed**.
    - 4) Inlet and Outlet: NPS 4 (DN 100) **OR** NPS 6 (DN 150), **as directed**.
  - d. Sediment Interceptors:
    - 1) 27-inch- (686-mm-) square, polymer-concrete body, with outlets in quantities and sizes indicated.
    - 2) 24-inch- (610-mm-) square, gray-iron frame and slotted grate.
6. Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard unless otherwise indicated.
7. Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.

#### V. Plastic, Channel Drainage Systems

1. General Requirements for Plastic, Channel Drainage Systems:
  - a. Modular system of plastic channel sections, grates, and appurtenances.
  - b. Designed so grates fit into frames without rocking or rattling.
  - c. Number of units required to form total lengths indicated.
2. Fiberglass Systems:
  - a. Channel Sections:
    - 1) Interlocking-joint, fiberglass modular units, with built-in invert slope of approximately 1 percent and with end caps.
    - 2) Rounded or inclined inside bottom surface, with outlets in quantities, sizes, and locations indicated.



- 3) Width: 6 inches (150 mm) **OR** 6 or 8 inches (150 or 203 mm) **OR** 8 inches (203 mm), **as directed**.
  - b. Factory- or field-attached frames that fit channel sections and grates.
    - 1) Material: Galvanized steel **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Manufacturer's standard metal, **as directed**.
  - c. Grates with slots or perforations that fit frames.
    - 1) Material: Fiberglass **OR** Galvanized steel **OR** Gray iron **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
  - d. Covers: Solid gray iron if indicated.
  - e. Drainage Specialties:
    - 1) Large Catch Basins: 24-inch- (610-mm-) square plastic body, with outlets in quantities and sizes indicated. Include gray-iron frame and slotted grate.
    - 2) Small Catch Basins: 12-by-24-inch (305-by-610-mm) plastic body, with outlets in quantities and sizes indicated. Include gray-iron frame and slotted grate.
3. PE Systems:
- a. Channel Sections: Interlocking-joint, PE modular units, 4 inches (102 mm) wide, with end caps. Include rounded bottom, with level invert and with outlets in quantities, sizes, and locations indicated.
  - b. Grates: PE, ladder shaped; with stainless-steel screws.
  - c. Color: Gray unless otherwise indicated.
  - d. Drainage Specialties: Include the following PE components:
    - 1) Drains: 4-inch- (102-mm-) diameter, round, slotted top; with NPS 4 (DN 100) bottom outlet.  
**OR**  
Drains: 8-inch- (203-mm-) diameter, round, slotted top; with NPS 6 (DN 150) bottom outlet.  
**OR**  
Drains: 4-inch- (102-mm-) square, slotted top; with NPS 3 (DN 80) bottom outlet.  
**OR**  
Drains: 8-inch- (203-mm-) square, slotted top; with NPS 6 (DN 150) bottom outlet.  
**OR**  
Catch Basins: 12-inch- (305-mm-) square plastic body, with outlets in quantities and sizes indicated. Include PE slotted grate 11-3/4 inches (298 mm) square by 1-1/8 inches (28.6 mm) thick.
4. Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.

#### W. Catch Basins

1. Standard Precast Concrete Catch Basins:
  - a. Description: ASTM C 478 (ASTM C 478M), precast, reinforced concrete, of depth indicated, with provision for sealant joints.
  - b. Base Section: 6-inch (150-mm) minimum thickness for floor slab and 4-inch (102-mm) minimum thickness for walls and base riser section, and separate base slab or base section with integral floor.
  - c. Riser Sections: 4-inch (102-mm) minimum thickness, 48-inch (1200-mm) diameter, and lengths to provide depth indicated.
  - d. Top Section: Eccentric-cone type unless concentric-cone or flat-slab-top type is indicated. Top of cone of size that matches grade rings.
  - e. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 990 (ASTM C 990M), bitumen or butyl rubber.
  - f. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking rings with level or sloped edge in thickness and shape matching catch basin frame and grate. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.  
**OR**  
Grade Rings: Include two or three reinforced-concrete rings, of 6- to 9-inch (150- to 225-mm) total thickness, that match 24-inch- (610-mm-) diameter frame and grate.



- g. Steps: Individual FRP steps or FRP ladder **OR** Individual FRP steps; FRP ladder; or ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP **OR** ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP, **as directed**, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch (300- to 400-mm) intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of catch basin to finished grade is less than 60 inches (1500 mm).
  - h. Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923 (ASTM C 923M), resilient, of size required, for each pipe connecting to base section.
  - 2. Designed Precast Concrete Catch Basins: ASTM C 913, precast, reinforced concrete; designed according to ASTM C 890 for A-16 (ASSHTO HS20-44), heavy-traffic, structural loading; of depth, shape, and dimensions indicated, with provision for joint sealants.
    - a. Joint Sealants: ASTM C 990 (ASTM C 990M), bitumen or butyl rubber.
    - b. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking rings with level or sloped edge in thickness and shape matching catch basin frame and grate. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.  
**OR**  
Grade Rings: Include two or three reinforced-concrete rings, of 6- to 9-inch (150- to 225-mm) total thickness, that match 24-inch- (610-mm-) diameter frame and grate.
    - c. Steps: Individual FRP steps or FRP ladder **OR** Individual FRP steps; FRP ladder; or ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP **OR** ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP, **as directed**, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch (300- to 400-mm) intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of catch basin to finished grade is less than 60 inches (1500 mm).
    - d. Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923 (ASTM C 923M), resilient, of size required, for each pipe connecting to base section.
  - 3. Frames and Grates (for rectangular structures): ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, ductile iron designed for A-16, structural loading. Include flat grate with small square or short-slotted drainage openings.
    - a. Size: 24 by 24 inches (610 by 610 mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Grate Free Area: Approximately 50 percent unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Frames and Grates (for round, manhole-type structures): ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, ductile iron designed for A-16, structural loading. Include 24-inch (610-mm) ID by 7- to 9-inch (175- to 225-mm) riser with 4-inch (102-mm) minimum width flange, and 26-inch- (660-mm-) diameter flat grate with small square or short-slotted drainage openings.
    - a. Grate Free Area: Approximately 50 percent unless otherwise indicated.
- X. Stormwater Inlets
- 1. Curb Inlets: Made with vertical curb opening, of materials and dimensions according to utility standards.
  - 2. Gutter Inlets: Made with horizontal gutter opening, of materials and dimensions according to utility standards. Include heavy-duty frames and grates.
  - 3. Combination Inlets: Made with vertical curb and horizontal gutter openings, of materials and dimensions according to utility standards. Include heavy-duty frames and grates.
  - 4. Frames and Grates: Heavy duty, according to utility standards.
- Y. Stormwater Detention Structures
- 1. Cast-in-Place Concrete, Stormwater Detention Structures: Constructed of reinforced-concrete bottom, walls, and top; designed according to ASTM C 890 for A-16 (AASHTO HS20-44), heavy-traffic, structural loading; of depth, shape, dimensions, and appurtenances indicated.
    - a. Ballast: Increase thickness of concrete as required to prevent flotation.
    - b. Grade Rings (if required): Include two or three reinforced-concrete rings, of 6- to 9-inch (150- to 229-mm) total thickness, that match 24-inch- (610-mm-) diameter frame and cover.



- c. Steps: Individual FRP steps or FRP ladder **OR** Individual FRP steps; FRP ladder; or ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP **OR** ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP, **as directed**, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch (300- to 400-mm) intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of structure to finished grade is less than 60 inches (1500 mm).
2. Manhole Frames and Covers: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, ductile-iron castings designed for heavy-duty service. Include 24-inch (610-mm) ID by 7- to 9-inch (175- to 225-mm) riser with 4-inch (102-mm) minimum width flange, and 26-inch- (660-mm-) diameter cover. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to "STORM SEWER."

#### Z. Pipe Outlets

1. Head Walls: Cast-in-place reinforced concrete, with apron and tapered sides.
2. Riprap Basins: Broken, irregularly sized and shaped, graded stone according to NSSGA's "Quarried Stone for Erosion and Sediment Control."
  - a. Average Size: NSSGA No. R-3, screen opening 2 inches (51 mm).
  - b. Average Size: NSSGA No. R-4, screen opening 3 inches (76 mm).
  - c. Average Size: NSSGA No. R-5, screen opening 5 inches (127 mm).
3. Filter Stone: According to NSSGA's "Quarried Stone for Erosion and Sediment Control," No. FS-2, No. 4 screen opening, average-size graded stone.
4. Energy Dissipaters: According to NSSGA's "Quarried Stone for Erosion and Sediment Control," No. A-1, 3-ton (2721-kg) average weight armor stone, unless otherwise indicated.

#### AA. Dry Wells

1. Description: ASTM C 913, precast, reinforced, perforated concrete rings. Include the following:
  - a. Floor: Cast-in-place concrete.
  - b. Cover: Liff-off-type concrete cover with cast-in lift rings.
  - c. Wall Thickness: 4 inches (102 mm) minimum with 1-inch (25-mm) diameter or 1-by-3-inch- (25-by-76-mm-) maximum slotted perforations arranged in rows parallel to axis of ring.
    - 1) Total Free Area of Perforations: Approximately 15 percent of ring interior surface.
    - 2) Ring Construction: Designed to be self-aligning.
  - d. Filtering Material: ASTM D 448, Size No. 24, 3/4- to 2-1/2-inch (19- to 63-mm) washed, crushed stone or gravel.

#### **OR**

Description: Manufactured PE side panels and top cover that assemble into 50-gal. (190-L) storage capacity units.

- a. Side Panels: With knockout ports for piping and seepage holes.
- b. Top Cover: With knockout port for drain.
- c. Filter Fabric: As recommended by unit manufacturer.
- d. Filtering Material: ASTM D 448, Size No. 24, 3/4- to 2-1/2-inch (19- to 63-mm) washed, crushed stone or gravel.

#### **OR**

Description: Constructed-in-place aggregate type. Include the following:

- a. Lining: Clay or concrete bricks.
 

#### **OR**

Lining: Concrete blocks or precast concrete rings with notches or weep holes.
- b. Filtering Material: ASTM D 448, Size No. 24, 3/4- to 2-1/2-inch (19- to 63-mm) washed, crushed stone or gravel.
- c. Cover: Precast, reinforced-concrete slab, designed for structural loading according to ASTM C 890 and made according to ASTM C 913. Include slab dimensions that will extend 12 inches (300 mm) minimum beyond edge of excavation, with bituminous coating over entire surface. Cast cover with opening for manhole in center.
- d. Manhole: 24-inch- (610-mm-) diameter, reinforced-concrete access lid with steel lift rings. Include bituminous coating over entire surface.

**BB. Stormwater Disposal Systems****1. Chamber Systems:**

- a. Storage and Leaching Chambers: Molded PE with perforated sides and open bottom. Include number of chambers, distribution piping, end plates, and other standard components as required for system total capacity.
- b. Filtering Material: ASTM D 448, Size No. 24, 3/4- to 2-1/2-inch (19- to 63-mm) washed, crushed stone or gravel.
- c. Filter Mat: Geotextile woven or spun filter fabric, in one or more layers, for minimum total unit weight of 4 oz./sq. yd. (135 g/sq. m).

**OR**

Pipe Systems: Perforated manifold, header, and lateral piping complying with AASHTO M 252M for NPS 10 (DN 250) and smaller, AASHTO M 294M for NPS 12 to NPS 60 (DN 300 to DN 1500). Include proprietary fittings, couplings, seals, and filter fabric.

**1.3 EXECUTION****1.4 EARTHWORK**

A. Excavation, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".

**B. Piping Installation**

1. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground storm drainage piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take into account design considerations. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical. Where specific installation is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
3. Install manholes for changes in direction unless fittings are indicated. Use fittings for branch connections unless direct tap into existing sewer is indicated.
4. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
5. When installing pipe under streets or other obstructions that cannot be disturbed, use pipe-jacking process of microtunneling.
6. Install gravity-flow, nonpressure drainage piping according to the following:
  - a. Install piping pitched down in direction of flow.
  - b. Install piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger with restrained joints at tee fittings and at changes in direction. Use corrosion-resistant rods, pipe or fitting manufacturer's proprietary restraint system, or cast-in-place concrete supports or anchors.
  - c. Install piping with 36-inch (915-mm) **OR** 48-inch (1220-mm) **OR** 60-inch (1520-mm) **OR** 72-inch (1830-mm), **as directed**, minimum cover.
  - d. Install hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook."
  - e. Install hubless cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook."
  - f. Install ductile-iron piping and special fittings according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41.
  - g. Install corrugated steel piping according to ASTM A 798/A 798M.
  - h. Install corrugated aluminum piping according to ASTM B 788/B 788M.
  - i. Install ABS sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
  - j. Install PE corrugated sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321.
  - k. Install PVC cellular-core piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
  - l. Install PVC sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
  - m. Install PVC profile gravity sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.



- n. Install PVC water-service piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
  - o. Install fiberglass sewer piping according to ASTM D 3839 and ASTM F 1668.
  - p. Install nonreinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ASTM C 1479 and ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual."
  - q. Install reinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ASTM C 1479 and ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual."
7. Install force-main pressure piping according to the following:
- a. Install piping with restrained joints at tee fittings and at horizontal and vertical changes in direction. Use corrosion-resistant rods, pipe or fitting manufacturer's proprietary restraint system, or cast-in-place concrete supports or anchors.
  - b. Install piping with 36-inch (915-mm) **OR** 48-inch (1220-mm) **OR** 60-inch (1520-mm) **OR** 72-inch (1830-mm), **as directed**, minimum cover.
  - c. Install **ductile**-iron pressure piping according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41.
  - d. Install ductile-iron special fittings according to AWWA C600.
  - e. Install PVC pressure piping according to AWWA M23, or ASTM D 2774 and ASTM F 1668.
  - f. Install PVC water-service piping according to ASTM D 2774 and ASTM F 1668.
8. Install corrosion-protection piping encasement over the following underground metal piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105:
- a. Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
  - b. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
  - c. Ductile-iron pipe and fittings.
  - d. Expansion joints and deflection fittings.

#### C. Pipe Joint Construction

1. Join gravity-flow, nonpressure drainage piping according to the following:
- a. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasketed joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
  - b. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with calked joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead and oakum calked joints.
  - c. Join hubless cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-coupling joints.
  - d. Join ductile-iron culvert piping according to AWWA C600 for push-on joints.
  - e. Join ductile-iron piping and special fittings according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41.
  - f. Join corrugated steel sewer piping according to ASTM A 798/A 798M.
  - g. Join corrugated aluminum sewer piping according to ASTM B 788/B 788M.
  - h. Join ABS sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM D 2751 for elastomeric-seal joints.
  - i. Join corrugated PE piping according to ASTM D 3212 for push-on joints.
  - j. Join PVC cellular-core piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 891 for solvent-cemented joints.
  - k. Join PVC corrugated sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 for elastomeric-seal joints.
  - l. Join PVC sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-seal joints or ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-gasketed joints.
  - m. Join PVC profile gravity sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 for elastomeric-seal joints or ASTM F 794 for gasketed joints.
  - n. Join fiberglass sewer piping according to ASTM D 3839 for elastomeric-seal joints.
  - o. Join nonreinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ASTM C 14 (ASTM C 14M) and ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual" for rubber-gasketed joints.
  - p. Join reinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual" for rubber-gasketed joints.
  - q. Join dissimilar pipe materials with nonpressure-type flexible couplings.
2. Join force-main pressure piping according to the following:
- a. Join ductile-iron pressure piping according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41 for push-on joints.



- b. Join ductile-iron special fittings according to AWWA C600 or AWWA M41 for push-on joints.
  - c. Join PVC pressure piping according to AWWA M23 for gasketed joints.
  - d. Join PVC water-service piping according to ASTM D 2855 for solvent-cemented joints.
  - e. Join dissimilar pipe materials with pressure-type couplings.
- D. Backwater Valve Installation
1. Install horizontal-type backwater valves in piping where indicated.
  2. Install combination horizontal and manual gate-valve type in piping and in manholes where indicated.
  3. Install terminal-type backwater valves on end of piping and in manholes where indicated.
- E. Cleanout Installation
1. Install cleanouts and riser extensions from sewer pipes to cleanouts at grade. Use cast-iron soil pipe fittings in sewer pipes at branches for cleanouts and cast-iron soil pipe for riser extensions to cleanouts. Install piping so cleanouts open in direction of flow in sewer pipe.
    - a. Use Light-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in earth or unpaved foot-traffic areas.
    - b. Use Medium-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in paved foot-traffic areas.
    - c. Use Heavy-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in vehicle-traffic service areas.
    - d. Use Extra-Heavy-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in roads.
    - e. Set cleanout frames and covers in earth in cast-in-place concrete block, 18 by 18 by 12 inches (450 by 450 by 300 mm) deep. Set with tops 1 inch (25 mm) above surrounding earth grade.
    - f. Set cleanout frames and covers in concrete pavement and roads with tops flush with pavement surface.
- F. Drain Installation
1. Install type of drains in locations indicated.
    - a. Use Light-Duty, top-loading classification drains in earth or unpaved foot-traffic areas.
    - b. Use Medium-Duty, top-loading classification drains in paved foot-traffic areas.
    - c. Use Heavy-Duty, top-loading classification drains in vehicle-traffic service areas.
    - d. Use Extra-Heavy-Duty, top-loading classification drains in roads.
  2. Embed drains in 4-inch (102-mm) minimum concrete around bottom and sides.
  3. Fasten grates to drains if indicated.
  4. Set drain frames and covers with tops flush with pavement surface.
  5. Assemble trench sections with flanged joints.
  6. Embed trench sections in 4-inch (102-mm) minimum concrete around bottom and sides.
- G. Manhole Installation
1. General: Install manholes, complete with appurtenances and accessories indicated.
  2. Install precast concrete manhole sections with sealants according to ASTM C 891.
  3. Where specific manhole construction is not indicated, follow manhole manufacturer's written instructions.
  4. Set tops of frames and covers flush with finished surface of manholes that occur in pavements. Set tops 3 inches (76 mm) above finished surface elsewhere unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Catch Basin Installation
1. Construct catch basins to sizes and shapes indicated.
  2. Set frames and grates to elevations indicated.
- I. Stormwater Inlet And Outlet Installation
1. Construct inlet head walls, aprons, and sides of reinforced concrete, as indicated.
  2. Construct riprap of broken stone, as indicated.
  3. Install outlets that spill onto grade, anchored with concrete, where indicated.
  4. Install outlets that spill onto grade, with flared end sections that match pipe, where indicated.
  5. Construct energy dissipaters at outlets, as indicated.

**J. Dry Well Installation**

1. Excavate hole to diameter of at least 6 inches (150 mm) greater than outside of dry well. Do not extend excavation into ground-water table.
2. Install precast, concrete-ring dry wells according to the following:
  - a. Assemble rings to depth indicated.
  - b. Extend rings to height where top of cover will be approximately 8 inches (203 mm) below finished grade.
  - c. Backfill bottom of inside of rings with filtering material to level at least 12 inches (300 mm) above bottom.
  - d. Extend effluent inlet pipe 12 inches (300 mm) into rings and terminate into side of tee fitting.
  - e. Backfill around outside of rings with filtering material to top level of rings.
  - f. Install cover over top of rings.
3. Install manufactured, PE dry wells according to manufacturer's written instructions and the following:
  - a. Assemble and install panels and cover.
  - b. Backfill bottom of inside of unit with filtering material to level at least 12 inches (300 mm) above bottom.
  - c. Extend effluent inlet pipe 12 inches (300 mm) into unit and terminate into side of tee fitting.
  - d. Install filter fabric around outside of unit.
  - e. Install filtering material around outside of unit.
4. Install constructed-in-place dry wells according to the following:
  - a. Install brick lining material dry and laid flat, with staggered joints for seepage. Build to diameter and depth indicated.
  - b. Install block lining material dry, with staggered joints and 20 percent minimum of blocks on side for seepage. Install precast concrete rings with notches or weep holes for seepage. Build to diameter and depth indicated.
  - c. Extend lining material to height where top of manhole will be approximately 8 inches (203 mm) below finished grade.
  - d. Backfill bottom of inside of lining with filtering material to level at least 12 inches (300 mm) above bottom.
  - e. Extend effluent inlet pipe 12 inches (300 mm) into lining and terminate into side of tee fitting.
  - f. Backfill around outside of lining with filtering material to top level of lining.
  - g. Install manhole over top of dry well. Support cover on undisturbed soil. Do not support cover on lining.

**K. Concrete Placement**

1. Place cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318.

**L. Channel Drainage System Installation**

1. Install with top surfaces of components, except piping, flush with finished surface.
2. Assemble channel sections to form slope down toward drain outlets. Use sealants, adhesives, fasteners, and other materials recommended by system manufacturer.
3. Embed channel sections and drainage specialties in 4-inch (102-mm) minimum concrete around bottom and sides.
4. Fasten grates to channel sections if indicated.
5. Assemble channel sections with flanged or interlocking joints.
6. Embed channel sections in 4-inch (102-mm) minimum concrete around bottom and sides.

**M. Stormwater Disposal System Installation**

1. Chamber Systems: Excavate trenches of width and depth, and install system and backfill according to chamber manufacturer's written instructions. Include storage and leaching chambers, filtering material, and filter mat.

**OR**





Piping Systems: Excavate trenches of width and depth, and install piping system, filter fabric, and backfill, according to piping manufacturer's written instructions.

N. Connections

1. Connect nonpressure, gravity-flow drainage piping in building's storm building drains specified in Division 22 Section "Facility Storm Drainage Piping".
2. Connect force-main piping to building's storm drainage force mains specified in Division 22 Section "Facility Storm Drainage Piping". Terminate piping where indicated.
3. Make connections to existing piping and underground manholes.
  - a. Use commercially manufactured wye fittings for piping branch connections. Remove section of existing pipe; install wye fitting into existing piping; and encase entire wye fitting, plus 6-inch (150-mm) overlap, with not less than 6 inches (150 mm) of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20.7 MPa).
  - b. Make branch connections from side into existing piping, NPS 4 to NPS 20 (DN 100 to DN 500). Remove section of existing pipe, install wye fitting into existing piping, and encase entire wye with not less than 6 inches (150 mm) of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20.7 MPa).
  - c. Make branch connections from side into existing piping, NPS 21 (DN 525) or larger, or to underground manholes and structures by cutting into existing unit and creating an opening large enough to allow 3 inches (76 mm) of concrete to be packed around entering connection. Cut end of connection pipe passing through pipe or structure wall to conform to shape of and be flush with inside wall unless otherwise indicated. On outside of pipe, manhole, or structure wall, encase entering connection in 6 inches (150 mm) of concrete for minimum length of 12 inches (300 mm) to provide additional support of collar from connection to undisturbed ground.
    - 1) Use concrete that will attain a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) unless otherwise indicated.
    - 2) Use epoxy-bonding compound as interface between new and existing concrete and piping materials.
  - d. Protect existing piping, manholes, and structures to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making tap connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.
4. Connect to sediment interceptors specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Interceptors".
5. Pipe couplings, expansion joints, and deflection fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Use nonpressure-type flexible couplings where required to join gravity-flow, nonpressure sewer piping unless otherwise indicated.
    - 1) Unshielded **OR** Shielded, **as directed**, flexible couplings for same or minor difference OD pipes.
    - 2) Unshielded, increaser/reducer-pattern, flexible couplings for pipes with different OD.
    - 3) Ring-type flexible couplings for piping of different sizes where annular space between smaller piping's OD and larger piping's ID permits installation.
  - b. Use pressure-type pipe couplings for force-main joints.

O. Closing Abandoned Storm Drainage Systems

1. Abandoned Piping: Close open ends of abandoned underground piping indicated to remain in place. Include closures strong enough to withstand hydrostatic and earth pressures that may result after ends of abandoned piping have been closed. Use either procedure below:
  - a. Close open ends of piping with at least 8-inch- (203-mm-) thick, brick masonry bulkheads.
  - b. Close open ends of piping with threaded metal caps, plastic plugs, or other acceptable methods suitable for size and type of material being closed. Do not use wood plugs.
2. Abandoned Manholes and Structures: Excavate around manholes and structures as required and use one procedure below:
  - a. Remove manhole or structure and close open ends of remaining piping.



- b. Remove top of manhole or structure down to at least 36 inches (915 mm) below final grade. Fill to within 12 inches (300 mm) of top with stone, rubble, gravel, or compacted dirt. Fill to top with concrete.
3. Backfill to grade according to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".

P. Identification

1. Materials and their installation are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving". Arrange for installation of green warning tape directly over piping and at outside edge of underground structures.
  - a. Use warning tape **OR** detectable warning tape, **as directed**, over ferrous piping.
  - b. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground structures.

Q. Field Quality Control

1. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches (610 mm) of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.
  - a. Submit separate reports for each system inspection.
  - b. Defects requiring correction include the following:
    - 1) Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
    - 2) Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
    - 3) Damage: Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
    - 4) Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.
    - 5) Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.
  - c. Replace defective piping using new materials, and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
  - d. Reinspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.
2. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.
  - a. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
  - b. Test completed piping systems according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - c. Schedule tests and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
  - d. Submit separate report for each test.
  - e. Gravity-Flow Storm Drainage Piping: Test according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, UNI-B-6, and the following:
    - 1) Exception: Piping with soiltight joints unless required by authorities having jurisdiction.
    - 2) Option: Test plastic piping according to ASTM F 1417.
    - 3) Option: Test concrete piping according to ASTM C 924 (ASTM C 924M).
  - f. Force-Main Storm Drainage Piping: Perform hydrostatic test after thrust blocks, supports, and anchors have hardened. Test at pressure not less than 1-1/2 times the maximum system operating pressure, but not less than 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 1) Ductile-Iron Piping: Test according to AWWA C600, "Hydraulic Testing" Section.
    - 2) PVC Piping: Test according to AWWA M23, "Testing and Maintenance" Chapter.
3. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
4. Replace leaking piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.

R. Cleaning

1. Clean interior of piping of dirt and superfluous materials. Flush with potable water **OR** Flush with water, **as directed**.



---

END OF SECTION 33 42 11 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
33 42 11 00	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
33 42 11 00	33 14 13 23	Sand Drains
33 42 11 00	22 05 23 00a	Water Distribution
33 42 11 00	22 05 76 00	Sanitary Sewerage
33 42 11 00	33 14 13 23b	Ground-Loop Heat-Pump Piping
33 42 11 00	31 05 13 00	Subdrainage
33 42 11 00	22 11 16 00e	Storm Drainage Piping
33 42 11 00	22 05 76 00a	Storm Drainage Piping Specialties



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## SECTION 33 42 13 13 - CULVERTS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for culverts. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

#### C. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Delivery and Storage: Materials delivered to site shall be inspected for damage, unloaded, and stored with a minimum of handling. Materials shall not be stored directly on the ground. The inside of pipes and fittings shall be kept free of dirt and debris. Before, during, and after installation, plastic pipe and fittings shall be protected from any environment that would result in damage or deterioration to the material. The Contractor shall have a copy of the manufacturer's instructions available at the construction site at all times and shall follow these instructions unless directed otherwise by the the Owner. Solvents, solvent compounds, lubricants, elastomeric gaskets, and any similar materials required to install plastic pipe shall be stored in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and shall be discarded if the storage period exceeds the recommended shelf life. Solvents in use shall be discarded when the recommended pot life is exceeded.
2. Handling: Materials shall be handled in a manner that ensures delivery to the trench in sound, undamaged condition. Pipe shall be carried to the trench, not dragged.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Pipe For Culverts

1. Pipe for culverts and storm drains shall be of the sizes indicated and shall conform to the requirements specified.
2. Concrete Pipe
  - a. ASTM C76/ASTM C76M, Class I **OR II OR III OR IV OR V, as directed**, or ASTM C655 D-Load. Note: D-load is defined as the minimum required three-edge test load on a pipe to produce a 0.01 inch crack and/or ultimate failure in pounds per linear foot per foot (no metric definition) of inside diameter.
  - b. Reinforced Arch Culvert and Storm Drainpipe: ASTM C506/ASTM C506M, Class A-II **OR A-III OR A-IV, as directed**.
  - c. Reinforced Elliptical Culvert and Storm Drainpipe: ASTM C507/ASTM C507M. Horizontal elliptical pipe shall be Class HE-A **OR HE-I OR HE-II OR HE-III OR HE-IV, as directed**. Vertical elliptical pipe shall be Class VE-II **OR VE-III OR VE-IV OR VE-V OR VE-VI, as directed**.
  - d. Nonreinforced Pipe: ASTM C14/ASTM C14M, Class 1 **OR 2 OR 3, as directed**.
    - 1) Cast-In-Place Nonreinforced Conduit: ACI 346, except that testing shall be the responsibility of and at the expense of the Contractor. In the case of other conflicts between ACI 346 and project specifications, requirements of ACI 346 shall govern.  
NOTE: This type conduit should not be used beneath structures, for drain crossings, adjacent to paved areas, or under high fills.
3. Clay Pipe: Standard or extra strength, as indicated, conforming to ASTM C700.  
NOTE: "Bell-and-spigot piping only" in areas where corrosion problems may be anticipated with the stainless steel parts of the couplings used for plain-end piping.



4. Corrugated Steel Pipe
  - a. ASTM A760/A760M, zinc or aluminum (Type 2) coated pipe of either:
    - 1) Type I **OR** II, **as directed**, pipe with annular **OR** helical, **as directed**, 2-2/3 by 1/2 inch (68 by 13 mm) corrugations.
    - 2) Type IR **OR** IIR, **as directed**, pipe with helical 3/4 by 3/4 by 7-1/2 inch (19 by 19 by 190 mm) corrugations.
  - b. Fully Bituminous Coated
    - 1) AASHTO M190 Type A and ASTM A760/A 760M zinc or aluminum (Type 2) coated pipe of either:
      - a) Type I **OR** II, **as directed**, pipe with annular **OR** helical, **as directed**, 2-2/3 by 1/2 inch (68 by 13 mm) corrugations.
      - b) Type IR **OR** IIR, **as directed**, pipe with helical 3/4 by 3/4 by 7-1/2 inch (19 by 19 by 190 mm) corrugations.
    - c. Half Bituminous Coated, Part Paved: AASHTO M190 Type B and ASTM A760/A 760M zinc or aluminum (Type 2) coated Type I **OR** II, **as directed**, pipe with annular **OR** helical, **as directed**, 2-2/3 by 1/2 inch (68 by 13 mm) corrugations.
    - d. Fully Bituminous Coated, Part Paved: AASHTO M190 Type C and ASTM A760/A 760M zinc or aluminum (Type 2) coated Type I **OR** II, **as directed**, pipe with annular **OR** helical, **as directed**, 2-2/3 by 1/2 inch (68 by 13 mm) corrugations.
    - e. Fully Bituminous Coated, Fully Paved: AASHTO M190 Type D and ASTM A760/A 760M zinc or aluminum (Type 2) coated Type I **OR** II, **as directed**, pipe with annular **OR** helical, **as directed**, 2-2/3 by 1/2 inch (68 by 13 mm) corrugations.
    - f. Concrete-Lined: ASTM A760/A760M zinc coated Type I corrugated steel pipe with annular **OR** helical, **as directed**, 2-2/3 by 1/2 inch (68 by 13 mm) corrugations and a concrete lining in accordance with ASTM A849.
    - g. Polymer Precoated: ASTM A 762/A 762M corrugated steel pipe fabricated from ASTM A742/A742M Grade 250/250 10/10 polymer precoated sheet of either:
      - 1) Type I **OR** II, **as directed**, pipe with annular **OR** helical, **as directed**, 2-2/3 by 1/2 inch (68 by 13 mm) corrugations.
      - 2) Type IR **OR** IIR, **as directed**, pipe with helical 3/4 by 3/4 by 7-1/2 inch (19 by 19 by 190 mm) corrugations.
    - h. Polymer Precoated, Part Paved: ASTM A762/A762M Type I **OR** II, **as directed**, corrugated steel pipe and AASHTO M190 Type B (modified) paved invert only, fabricated from ASTM A742/A742M Grade 250/250 10/10 polymer precoated sheet with annular **OR** helical, **as directed**, 2-2/3 by 1/2 inch (68 by 13 mm) corrugations.
    - i. Polymer Precoated, Fully Paved: ASTM A762/A762M Type I **OR** II, **as directed**, corrugated steel pipe and AASHTO M190 Type D (modified), fully paved only, fabricated from ASTM A 742/A 742M Grade 250/250 10/10 polymer precoated sheet with annular **OR** helical, **as directed**, 2-2/3 by 1/2 inch (68 by 13 mm) corrugations.
  5. Corrugated Aluminum Alloy Pipe: ASTM B745/B745M corrugated aluminum alloy pipe of either:
    - 1) Type I **OR** II, **as directed**, pipe with annular **OR** helical, **as directed**, corrugations.
    - 2) Type IA **OR** IR **OR** IIA **OR** IIR, **as directed**, pipe with helical corrugations.
    - b. Aluminum Fully Bituminous Coated: Bituminous coating shall conform to ASTM A849. Piping shall conform to AASHTO M190 Type A and ASTM B745/B745M corrugated aluminum alloy pipe of either:
      - 1) Type I **OR** II, **as directed**, pipe with annular **OR** helical, **as directed**, corrugations.
      - 2) Type IA **OR** IR **OR** IIA **OR** IIR, **as directed**, pipe with helical corrugations.
    - c. Aluminum Fully Bituminous Coated, Part Paved: Bituminous coating shall conform to ASTM A849. Piping shall conform to AASHTO M190 Type C and ASTM B 745/B 745M corrugated aluminum alloy pipe of either:
      - 1) Type I **OR** II, **as directed**, pipe with annular **OR** helical, **as directed**, corrugations.
      - 2) Type IR **OR** IIR, **as directed**, pipe with helical corrugations.
  6. Structural Plate, Steel Pipe, Pipe Arches and Arches





- a. Assembled with galvanized steel nuts and bolts, from galvanized corrugated steel plates conforming to AASHTO M167. Pipe coating, when required, shall conform to the requirements of AASHTO M190 Type A **OR** AASHTO M243, **as directed**.
- b. Thickness of plates shall be as indicated.
- 7. Structural Plate, Aluminum Pipe, Pipe Arches and Arches
  - a. Assembled with either aluminum alloy, aluminum coated steel, stainless steel or zinc coated steel nuts and bolts. Nuts and bolts, and aluminum alloy plates shall conform to AASHTO M219. Pipe coating, when required, shall conform to the requirements of AASHTO M190, Type A **OR** AASHTO M 243, **as directed**.
  - b. Thickness of plates shall be as indicated.
- 8. Ductile Iron Culvert Pipe: ASTM A716.
- 9. Cast-Iron Soil Piping: Cast-Iron Soil Pipe shall conform to ASTM A74, service-weight; gaskets shall be compression-type rubber conforming to ASTM C564.
- 10. PVC Pipe
  - a. The pipe manufacturer's resin certification, indicating the cell classification of PVC used to manufacture the pipe, shall be submitted prior to installation of the pipe.
  - b. Type PSM PVC Pipe: ASTM D3034, Type PSM, maximum SDR 35, produced from PVC certified by the compounder as meeting the requirements of ASTM D1784, minimum cell class 12454-B.
  - c. Profile PVC Pipe: ASTM F794, Series 46, produced from PVC certified by the compounder as meeting the requirements of ASTM D1784, minimum cell class 12454-B.
  - d. Smooth Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM F679 produced from PVC certified by the compounder as meeting the requirements of ASTM D1784, minimum cell class 12454-B.
  - e. Corrugated PVC Pipe: ASTM F949 produced from PVC certified by the compounder as meeting the requirements of ASTM D 1784, minimum cell class 12454-B.
- 11. PE Pipe
  - a. The pipe manufacturer's resin certification indicating the cell classification of PE used to manufacture the pipe shall be submitted prior to installation of the pipe. The minimum cell classification for polyethylene plastic shall apply to each of the seven primary properties of the cell classification limits in accordance with ASTM D3350.
  - b. Smooth Wall PE Pipe: ASTM F714, maximum DR of 21 for pipes 3 to 24 inches (80 to 600 mm) in diameter and maximum DR of 26 for pipes 26 to 48 inches (650 to 1200 mm) in diameter. Pipe shall be produced from PE certified by the resin producer as meeting the requirements of ASTM D3350, minimum cell class 335434C.
  - c. Corrugated PE Pipe: AASHTO M294, Type S or D, for pipes 12 to 48 inches (300 to 1200 mm) and AASHTO MP 7, Type S or D, for pipes 54 to 60 inches (1350 to 1500 mm) produced from PE certified by the resin producer as meeting the requirements of ASTM D3350, minimum cell class in accordance with AASHTO M294. Pipe walls shall have the following properties:  
 NOTE: Corrugated PE pipe culverts and storm drains shall not be installed beneath airfield pavements, Class A, B, or C roads, or road pavements with a design index of 6 or greater. Type S pipe has a full circular cross-section, with an outer corrugated pipe wall and a smooth inner liner. Type C pipe has a full circular cross-section, with a corrugated surface both inside and outside. Corrugations may be either annular or helical.

Nominal Size (in.)	Minimum Wall Area (square in/ft)	Minimum Moment of Inertia of Wall Section (in to the 4th/in)
12	1.50	0.024
15	1.91	0.053
18	2.34	0.062
24	3.14	0.116
30	3.92	0.163
36	4.50	0.222
42	4.69	0.543



48	5.15	0.543
54	5.67	0.800
60	6.45	0.800
Nominal Size (mm)	Minimum Wall Area (square mm/m)	Minimum Moment of Inertia of Wall Section (mm to the 4th/mm)
300	3200	390
375	4000	870
450	4900	1020
600	6600	1900
750	8300	2670
900	9500	3640
1050	9900	8900
1200	10900	8900
1350	12000	13110
1500	13650	13110

- d. Profile Wall PE Pipe: ASTM F894, RSC 160, produced from PE certified by the resin producer as meeting the requirements of ASTM D3350, minimum cell class 334433C. Pipe walls shall have the following properties:

Nominal Size (in.)	Minimum Wall Area (square in/ft)	Minimum Moment Of Inertia of Wall Section (in to the 4th/in)	
		Cell Class 334433C	Cell Class 335434C
18	2.96	0.052	0.038
21	4.15	0.070	0.051
24	4.66	0.081	0.059
27	5.91	0.125	0.091
30	5.91	0.125	0.091
33	6.99	0.161	0.132
36	8.08	0.202	0.165
42	7.81	0.277	0.227
48	8.82	0.338	0.277
Nominal Size (mm)	Minimum Wall Area (square mm/m)	Minimum Moment Of Inertia of Wall Section (mm to the 4th/mm)	
		Cell Class 334433C	Cell Class 335434C
450	6300	850	620
525	8800	1150	840
600	9900	1330	970
675	12500	2050	1490
750	12500	2050	1490



---

825	14800	2640	2160
900	17100	3310	2700
1050	16500	4540	3720
1200	18700	5540	4540

**B. Drainage Structures**

1. Flared End Sections: Sections shall be of a standard design fabricated from zinc coated steel sheets meeting requirements of ASTM A929/A929M.
2. Precast Reinforced Concrete Box: Four-sided box section with open ends to be monolithically cast of reinforced concrete, smooth inside surfaces. Each box section shall be manufactured with chamfered inside corners. Design and manufacture shall conform to ASTM C890.
  - a. Design References: ACI 318.
    - 1) Boxes subjected to highway loadings shall conform to requirements of AASHTO M259 or M273, as applicable, and ASTM C789, C850, C1433, and PS62.
    - 2) Boxes subjected to aircraft loadings shall conform to requirements of FAA specifications.
    - 3) Boxes subjected to railway loadings shall conform to requirements of AREMA specifications.
  - b. Concrete: 5,000 psi @ 30 days, unless otherwise directed.
  - c. Entrained Air: 5 to 9 percent.
  - d. Steel Reinforcing: ASTM A1064, A615, A616, Grade 60, 60 ksi.
  - e. Design Loading: AASHTO HS-20-44 or HS-25-44 with 30 percent impact and equivalent soil pressure of 130 psf. Floatation forces not accounted for.
  - f. Joints: Each section shall have a male and female end with no less than 1-1/2-inch of concrete overlap and shall include a 1-inch square neoprene gasket, cemented to male surface of section during manufacture.
  - g. End Sections: As required for the individual installation, provide:
    - 1) Doweled end for 1-inch diameter x 12-inch deep steel dowels, keyway slot.
    - 2) Keyway slot, a shear connection between the precast and field cast sections.
    - 3) Plain end, for use where wing and end walls act independently of precast box.
  - h. Lifting Pins: Each section shall be equipped with 4 OSHA approved lifting pins.
  - i. For multi-cell installations, fill 1-inch spacing between cells with granular material to assume proper load distribution.
3. Three-Sided Structures for Culverts or Short Span Bridge System
  - a. Structures shall conform to requirements of ASTM C1504 and ACI 318. For structures subjected to roadway loadings, conform to requirements of AASHTO specifications.

**C. Miscellaneous Materials**

1. Concrete
  - a. Unless otherwise specified, concrete and reinforced concrete shall conform to the requirements concrete under Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete". The concrete mixture shall have air content by volume of concrete, based on measurements made immediately after discharge from the mixer, of 5 to 7 percent when maximum size of coarse aggregate exceeds 1-1/2 inches (37.5 mm).
  - b. Air content shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C231. The concrete covering over steel reinforcing shall not be less than 1 inch (25 mm) thick for covers and not less than 1-1/2 inches (40 mm) thick for walls and flooring. Concrete covering deposited directly against the ground shall have a thickness of at least 3 inches (75 mm) between steel and ground.
  - c. Expansion-joint filler material shall conform to ASTM D1751, or ASTM D1752, or shall be resin-impregnated fiberboard conforming to the physical requirements of ASTM D1752.
2. Mortar: Mortar for pipe joints, connections to other drainage structures, and brick or block construction shall conform to ASTM C270, Type M, except that the maximum placement time shall be 1 hour. The quantity of water in the mixture shall be sufficient to produce a stiff workable mortar. Water shall be clean and free of harmful acids, alkalis, and organic impurities. The mortar shall be used within 30 minutes after the ingredients are mixed with water. The inside of



- the joint shall be wiped clean and finished smooth. The mortar head on the outside shall be protected from air and sun with a proper covering until satisfactorily cured.
3. Precast Concrete Segmental Blocks: Precast concrete segmental block shall conform to ASTM C139, not more than 8 inches (200 mm) thick, not less than 8 inches (200 mm) long, and of such shape that joints can be sealed effectively and bonded with cement mortar.
  4. Brick
    - a. Brick shall conform to ASTM C62, Grade SW; ASTM C55, Grade S-I or S-II; or ASTM C32, Grade MS. Mortar for jointing and plastering shall consist of one part portland cement and two parts fine sand. Lime may be added to the mortar in a quantity not more than 25 percent of the volume of cement.
    - b. The joints shall be filled completely and shall be smooth and free from surplus mortar on the inside of the structure. Brick structures shall be plastered with 1/2 inch (10 mm) of mortar over the entire outside surface of the walls. For square or rectangular structures, brick shall be laid in stretcher courses with a header course every sixth course. For round structures, brick shall be laid radially with every sixth course a stretcher course.
  5. Precast Reinforced Concrete Manholes
    - a. Precast reinforced concrete manholes shall conform to ASTM C478/ASTM C478M.
    - b. Joints between precast concrete risers and tops shall be full-bedded in cement mortar and shall be smoothed to a uniform surface on both interior and exterior of the structure **OR** made with flexible watertight, rubber-type gaskets meeting the requirements of paragraph JOINTS, **as directed**.
  6. Prefabricated Corrugated Metal Manholes
    - a. Manholes shall be of the type and design recommended by the manufacturer.
    - b. Manholes shall be complete with frames and cover, or frames and gratings.
  7. Frame and Cover for Gratings
    - a. Frame and cover for gratings shall be cast gray iron, ASTM A48/A48M,
    - b. Class 35B; cast ductile iron, ASTM A536, Grade 65-45-12; or cast aluminum, ASTM B26M/B26, Alloy 356.OT6. Weight, shape, size, and waterway openings for grates and curb inlets shall be as indicated on the plans.
  8. Joints
    - a. Flexible Watertight Joints
      - 1) Materials: Flexible watertight joints shall be made with plastic or rubber-type gaskets for concrete pipe and with factory-fabricated resilient materials for clay pipe. The design of joints and the physical requirements for plastic gaskets shall conform to AASHTO M198, and rubber-type gaskets shall conform to ASTM C443/ASTM C443M. Factory-fabricated resilient joint materials shall conform to ASTM C425. Gaskets shall have not more than one factory-fabricated splice, except that two factory-fabricated splices of the rubber-type gasket are permitted if the nominal diameter of the pipe being gasketed exceeds 54 inches (1.35 m).
      - 2) Test Requirements: Watertight joints shall be tested and shall meet test requirements of paragraph HYDROSTATIC TEST ON WATERTIGHT JOINTS. Rubber gaskets shall comply with the oil resistant gasket requirements of ASTM C443/ASTM C443M. Certified copies of test results shall be delivered to the the Owner before gaskets or jointing materials are installed. Alternate types of watertight joint may be furnished, if specifically approved.
    - b. External Sealing Bands: Requirements for external sealing bands shall conform to ASTM C877/ASTM C877M.
    - c. Flexible Watertight, Gasketed Joints
      - 1) Gaskets: When infiltration or exfiltration is a concern for pipe lines, the couplings may be required to have gaskets. The closed-cell expanded rubber gaskets shall be a continuous band approximately 7 inches (178 mm) wide and approximately 3/8 inch (10 mm) thick, meeting the requirements of ASTM D1056, Type 2 A1 **OR** B3, **as directed**, and shall have a quality retention rating of not less than 70 percent when tested for weather resistance by ozone chamber exposure, Method B of ASTM D1171. Rubber O-ring gaskets shall be 13/16 inch (21 mm) in diameter for pipe



diameters of 36 inches (914 mm) or smaller and 7/8 inch (22 mm) in diameter for larger pipe having 1/2 inch (13 mm) deep end corrugation. Rubber O-ring gaskets shall be 1-3/8 inches (35 mm) in diameter for pipe having 1 inch (25 mm) deep end corrugations. O-rings shall meet the requirements of AASHTO M198 or ASTM C443/ASTM C443M. Flexible plastic gaskets shall conform to requirements of AASHTO M198, Type B.

- 2) Connecting Bands: Connecting bands shall be of the type, size and sheet thickness of band, and the size of angles, bolts, rods and lugs as indicated or where not indicated as specified in the applicable standards or specifications for the pipe. Exterior rivet heads in the longitudinal seam under the connecting band shall be countersunk or the rivets shall be omitted and the seam welded. Watertight joints shall be tested and shall meet the test requirements of paragraph HYDROSTATIC TEST ON WATERTIGHT JOINTS.

- d. PVC Plastic Pipes: Joints shall be solvent cement or elastomeric gasket type in accordance with the specification for the pipe and as recommended by the pipe manufacturer.
- e. Smooth Wall PE Plastic Pipe: Pipe shall be joined using butt fusion method as recommended by the pipe manufacturer.
- f. Corrugated PE Plastic Pipe: Water tight joints shall be made using a PVC or PE coupling and rubber gaskets as recommended by the pipe manufacturer. Rubber gaskets shall conform to ASTM F477. Soil tight joints shall conform to the requirements in AASHTO HB-17, Division II, Section 26.4.2.4.(e) for soil tightness and shall be as recommended by the pipe manufacturer.
- g. Profile Wall PE Plastic Pipe: Joints shall be gasketed or thermal weld type with integral bell in accordance with ASTM F894.
- h. Ductile Iron Pipe: Couplings and fittings shall be as recommended by the pipe manufacturer.

#### D. Steel Ladder

1. Steel ladder shall be provided where the depth of the manhole exceeds 12 feet (3.66 m). These ladders shall be not less than 16 inches (406 mm) in width, with 3/4 inch (19 mm) diameter rungs spaced 12 inches (305 mm) apart. The two stringers shall be a minimum 3/8 inch (10 mm) thick and 2-1/2 inches (63 mm) wide. Ladders and inserts shall be galvanized after fabrication in conformance with ASTM A123/A123M.

#### E. Resilient Connectors

1. Flexible, watertight connectors used for connecting pipe to manholes and inlets shall conform to ASTM C923/ASTM C923M.

#### F. Hydrostatic Test On Watertight Joints

1. Concrete, Clay, PVC and PE Pipe: A hydrostatic test shall be made on the watertight joint types as proposed. Only one sample joint of each type needs testing; however, if the sample joint fails because of faulty design or workmanship, an additional sample joint may be tested. During the test period, gaskets or other jointing material shall be protected from extreme temperatures which might adversely affect the performance of such materials. Performance requirements for joints in reinforced and nonreinforced concrete pipe shall conform to AASHTO M198 or ASTM C443M ASTM C443. Test requirements for joints in clay pipe shall conform to ASTM C425. Test requirements for joints in PVC and PE plastic pipe shall conform to ASTM D3212.
2. Corrugated Steel and Aluminum Pipe: A hydrostatic test shall be made on the watertight joint system or coupling band type proposed. The moment strength required of the joint is expressed as 15 percent of the calculated moment capacity of the pipe on a transverse section remote from the joint by the AASHTO HB-17 (Division II, Section 26). The pipe shall be supported for the hydrostatic test with the joint located at the point which develops 15 percent of the moment capacity of the pipe based on the allowable span in meters feet for the pipe flowing full or 40,000 foot-pounds (54,233 Newton meters), whichever is less. Performance requirements shall be met



at an internal hydrostatic pressure of 10 psi (69 kPa) for a 10 minute period for both annular corrugated metal pipe and helical corrugated metal pipe with factory reformed ends.

- G. Erosion Control Riprap
  1. Provide nonerodible rock not exceeding 15 inches (375 mm) in its greatest dimension and choked with sufficient small rocks to provide a dense mass with a minimum thickness of 8 inches (200 mm) or as indicated.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Excavation for Pipe Culverts and Drainage Structures
  1. Excavation of trenches, and for appurtenances and backfilling for culverts and storm drains, shall be in accordance with the applicable portions of Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" and the requirements specified below.
  2. Trenching: The width of trenches at any point below the top of the pipe shall be not greater than the outside diameter of the pipe plus 12-inches (300 mm) each side of pipe to permit satisfactory jointing and thorough tamping of the bedding material under and around the pipe. Sheet piling and bracing, where required, shall be placed within the trench width as specified. Contractor shall not overexcavate. Where trench widths are exceeded, redesign with a resultant increase in cost of stronger pipe or special installation procedures will be necessary. Cost of this redesign and increased cost of pipe or installation shall be borne by the Contractor without additional cost to the Owner.
  3. Removal of Rock: Rock in either ledge or boulder formation shall be replaced with suitable materials to provide a compacted earth cushion having a thickness between unremoved rock and the pipe of at least 8 inches (200 mm) or 1/2 inch (13 mm) for each meter foot of fill over the top of the pipe, whichever is greater, but not more than three-fourths the nominal diameter of the pipe. Where bell-and-spigot pipe is used, the cushion shall be maintained under the bell as well as under the straight portion of the pipe. Rock excavation shall be as specified and defined in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".
  4. Removal of Unstable Material: Where wet or otherwise unstable soil incapable of properly supporting the pipe, as determined by the the Owner, is unexpectedly encountered in the bottom of a trench, such material shall be removed to the depth required and replaced to the proper grade with select granular material, compacted as provided in paragraph BACKFILLING. When removal of unstable material is due to the fault or neglect of the Contractor while performing shoring and sheet piling, water removal, or other specified requirements, such removal and replacement shall be performed at no additional cost to the Owner.
- B. Bedding
  1. The bedding surface for the pipe shall provide a firm foundation of uniform density throughout the entire length of the pipe.
  2. Concrete Pipe Requirements: When no bedding class is specified or detailed on the drawings, concrete pipe shall be bedded in a soil foundation accurately shaped and rounded to conform to the lowest one-fourth of the outside portion of circular pipe or to the lower curved portion of pipe arch for the entire length of the pipe or pipe arch. When necessary, the bedding shall be tamped. Bell holes and depressions for joints shall be not more than the length, depth, and width required for properly making the particular type of joint.
  3. Clay Pipe Requirements: Bedding for clay pipe shall be as specified by ASTM C12.
  4. Corrugated Metal Pipe: Bedding for corrugated metal pipe and pipe arch shall be in accordance with ASTM A798/A798M. It is not required to shape the bedding to the pipe geometry. However, for pipe arches, the Contractor shall either shape the bedding to the relatively flat bottom arc or fine grade the foundation to a shallow v-shape. Bedding for corrugated structural plate pipe shall meet requirements of ASTM A807/A807M.
  5. Ductile Iron and Cast-Iron Pipe: Bedding for ductile iron and cast-iron pipe shall be as shown on the drawings.



- 6. Plastic Pipe: Bedding for PVC and PE pipe shall meet the requirements of ASTM D2321. Bedding, haunching, and initial backfill shall be either Class IB or II material.

C. Placing Pipe

- 1. Each pipe shall be thoroughly examined before being laid; defective or damaged pipe shall not be used. Plastic pipe shall be protected from exposure to direct sunlight prior to laying, if necessary to maintain adequate pipe stiffness and meet installation deflection requirements. Pipelines shall be laid to the grades and alignment indicated. Proper facilities shall be provided for lowering sections of pipe into trenches. Lifting lugs in vertically elongated metal pipe shall be placed in the same vertical plane as the major axis of the pipe. Pipe shall not be laid in water, and pipe shall not be laid when trench conditions or weather are unsuitable for such work. Diversion of drainage or dewatering of trenches during construction shall be provided as necessary. Deflection of installed flexible pipe shall not exceed the following limits:

TYPE OF PIPE	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE DEFLECTION (%)
Corrugated Steel and Aluminum Alloy	5
Concrete-Lined Corrugated Steel	3
Ductile Iron Culvert	3
Plastic	7.5

Not less than 30 days after the completion of backfilling, the Owner may perform a deflection test on the entire length of installed flexible pipe using a mandrel or other suitable device. Installed flexible pipe showing deflections greater than those indicated above shall be retested by a run from the opposite direction. If the retest also fails, the suspect pipe shall be replaced.

- 2. Concrete, Clay, PVC, Ribbed PVC, Ductile Iron and Cast-Iron Pipe: Laying shall proceed upgrade with spigot ends of bell-and-spigot pipe and tongue ends of tongue-and-groove pipe pointing in the direction of the flow.
- 3. Elliptical and Elliptical Reinforced Concrete Pipe: The manufacturer's reference lines, designating the top of the pipe, shall be within 5 degrees of a vertical plane through the longitudinal axis of the pipe, during placement. Damage to or misalignment of the pipe shall be prevented in all backfilling operations.
- 4. Corrugated PE Pipe: Laying shall be with the separate sections joined firmly on a bed shaped to line and grade and shall follow manufacturer's recommendations.
- 5. Corrugated Metal Pipe and Pipe Arch: Laying shall be with the separate sections joined firmly together, with the outside laps of circumferential joints pointing upstream, and with longitudinal laps on the sides. Part paved pipe shall be installed so that the centerline of bituminous pavement in the pipe, indicated by suitable markings on the top at each end of the pipe sections, coincides with the specified alignment of pipe. Fully paved steel pipe or pipe arch shall have a painted or otherwise applied label inside the pipe or pipe arch indicating sheet thickness of pipe or pipe arch. Any unprotected metal in the joints shall be coated with bituminous material as specified in AASHTO M190 or AASHTO M243. Interior coating shall be protected against damage from insertion or removal of struts or tie wires. Lifting lugs shall be used to facilitate moving pipe without damage to exterior or interior coatings. During transportation and installation, pipe or pipe arch and coupling bands shall be handled with care to preclude damage to the coating, paving or lining. Damaged coatings, pavings and linings shall be repaired in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations prior to placing backfill. Pipe on which coating, paving or lining has been damaged to such an extent that satisfactory field repairs cannot be made shall be removed and replaced. Vertical elongation, where indicated, shall be accomplished by factory elongation. Suitable markings or properly placed lifting lugs shall be provided to ensure placement of factory elongated pipe in a vertical plane.
- 6. Structural-Plate Steel: Structural plate shall be installed in accordance with ASTM A807/A807M. Structural plate shall be assembled in accordance with instructions furnished by the manufacturer. Instructions shall show the position of each plate and the order of assembly. Bolts shall be tightened progressively and uniformly, starting at one end of the structure after all plates are in place. The operation shall be repeated to ensure that all bolts are tightened to meet the torque requirements of 200 foot-pounds (270 Newton meters) plus or minus 50 foot-pounds (68 Newton meters). Any power wrenches used shall be checked by the use of hand torque



wrenches or long-handled socket or structural wrenches for amount of torque produced. Power wrenches shall be checked and adjusted frequently as needed, according to type or condition, to ensure proper adjustment to supply the required torque.

7. Structural-Plate Aluminum: Structural plate shall be assembled in accordance with instructions furnished by the manufacturer. Instructions shall show the position of each plate and the order of assembly. Bolts shall be tightened progressively and uniformly, starting at one end of the structure after all plates are in place. The operation shall be repeated to ensure that all bolts are torqued to a minimum of 100 foot-pounds (136 Newton meters) on aluminum alloy bolts and a minimum of 150 foot-pounds (203 Newton meters) on galvanized steel bolts. Any power wrenches used shall be checked by the use of hand torque wrenches or long-handled socket or structural wrenches for the amount of torque produced. Power wrenches shall be checked and adjusted as frequently as needed, according to type or condition, to ensure that they are in proper adjustment to supply the required torque.
8. Multiple Culverts: Where multiple lines of pipe are installed, adjacent sides of pipe shall be at least half the nominal pipe diameter or 1 meter 3 feet apart, whichever is less.
9. Jacking Pipe Through Fills: Methods of operation and installation for jacking pipe through fills shall conform to requirements specified in Volume 1, Chapter 1, Part 4 of AREMA Manual.

#### D. Jointing

##### 1. Concrete and Clay Pipe

- a. Cement-Mortar Bell-and-Spigot Joint: The first pipe shall be bedded to the established gradeline, with the bell end placed upstream. The interior surface of the bell shall be thoroughly cleaned with a wet brush and the lower portion of the bell filled with mortar as required to bring inner surfaces of abutting pipes flush and even. The spigot end of each subsequent pipe shall be cleaned with a wet brush and uniformly matched into a bell so that sections are closely fitted. After each section is laid, the remainder of the joint shall be filled with mortar, and a bead shall be formed around the outside of the joint with sufficient additional mortar. If mortar is not sufficiently stiff to prevent appreciable slump before setting, the outside of the joint shall be wrapped or bandaged with cheesecloth to hold mortar in place.
- b. Cement-Mortar Oakum Joint for Bell-and-Spigot Pipe: A closely twisted gasket shall be made of jute or oakum of the diameter required to support the spigot end of the pipe at the proper grade and to make the joint concentric. Joint packing shall be in one piece of sufficient length to pass around the pipe and lap at top. This gasket shall be thoroughly saturated with neat cement grout. The bell of the pipe shall be thoroughly cleaned with a wet brush, and the gasket shall be laid in the bell for the lower third of the circumference and covered with mortar. The spigot of the pipe shall be thoroughly cleaned with a wet brush, inserted in the bell, and carefully driven home. A small amount of mortar shall be inserted in the annular space for the upper two-thirds of the circumference. The gasket shall be lapped at the top of the pipe and driven home in the annular space with a caulking tool. The remainder of the annular space shall be filled completely with mortar and beveled at an angle of approximately 45 degrees with the outside of the bell. If mortar is not sufficiently stiff to prevent appreciable slump before setting, the outside of the joint thus made shall be wrapped with cheesecloth. Placing of this type of joint shall be kept at least five joints behind laying operations.
- c. Cement-Mortar Diaper Joint for Bell-and-Spigot Pipe: The pipe shall be centered so that the annular space is uniform. The annular space shall be caulked with jute or oakum. Before caulking, the inside of the bell and the outside of the spigot shall be cleaned.
  - 1) Diaper Bands: Diaper bands shall consist of heavy cloth fabric to hold grout in place at joints and shall be cut in lengths that extend one-eighth of the circumference of pipe above the spring line on one side of the pipe and up to the spring line on the other side of the pipe. Longitudinal edges of fabric bands shall be rolled and stitched around two pieces of wire. Width of fabric bands shall be such that after fabric has been securely stitched around both edges on wires, the wires will be uniformly spaced not less than 200 mm 8 inches apart. Wires shall be cut into





- lengths to pass around pipe with sufficient extra length for the ends to be twisted at top of pipe to hold the band securely in place; bands shall be accurately centered around lower portion of joint.
- 2) Grout: Grout shall be poured between band and pipe from the high side of band only, until grout rises to the top of band at the spring line of pipe, or as nearly so as possible, on the opposite side of pipe, to ensure a thorough sealing of joint around the portion of pipe covered by the band. Silt, slush, water, or polluted mortar grout forced up on the lower side shall be forced out by pouring, and removed.
  - 3) Remainder of Joint: The remaining unfilled upper portion of the joint shall be filled with mortar and a bead formed around the outside of this upper portion of the joint with a sufficient amount of additional mortar. The diaper shall be left in place. Placing of this type of joint shall be kept at least five joints behind actual laying of pipe. No backfilling around joints shall be done until joints have been fully inspected and approved.
- d. Cement-Mortar Tongue-and-Groove Joint: The first pipe shall be bedded carefully to the established gradeline with the groove upstream. A shallow excavation shall be made underneath the pipe at the joint and filled with mortar to provide a bed for the pipe. The grooved end of the first pipe shall be thoroughly cleaned with a wet brush, and a layer of soft mortar applied to the lower half of the groove. The tongue of the second pipe shall be cleaned with a wet brush; while in horizontal position, a layer of soft mortar shall be applied to the upper half of the tongue. The tongue end of the second pipe shall be inserted in the grooved end of the first pipe until mortar is squeezed out on interior and exterior surfaces. Sufficient mortar shall be used to fill the joint completely and to form a bead on the outside.
  - e. Cement-Mortar Diaper Joint for Tongue-and-Groove Pipe: The joint shall be of the type described for cement-mortar tongue-and-groove joint in this paragraph, except that the shallow excavation directly beneath the joint shall not be filled with mortar until after a gauze or cheesecloth band dipped in cement mortar has been wrapped around the outside of the joint. The cement-mortar bead at the joint shall be at least 1/2 inch (15 mm), thick and the width of the diaper band shall be at least 8 inches (200 mm). The diaper shall be left in place. Placing of this type of joint shall be kept at least five joints behind the actual laying of the pipe. Backfilling around the joints shall not be done until the joints have been fully inspected and approved.
  - f. Plastic Sealing Compound Joints for Tongue-and-Grooved Pipe: Sealing compounds shall follow the recommendation of the particular manufacturer in regard to special installation requirements. Surfaces to receive lubricants, primers, or adhesives shall be dry and clean. Sealing compounds shall be affixed to the pipe not more than 3 hours prior to installation of the pipe, and shall be protected from the sun, blowing dust, and other deleterious agents at all times. Sealing compounds shall be inspected before installation of the pipe, and any loose or improperly affixed sealing compound shall be removed and replaced. The pipe shall be aligned with the previously installed pipe, and the joint pulled together. If, while making the joint with mastic-type sealant, a slight protrusion of the material is not visible along the entire inner and outer circumference of the joint when the joint is pulled up, the pipe shall be removed and the joint remade. After the joint is made, all inner protrusions shall be cut off flush with the inner surface of the pipe. If nonmastic-type sealant material is used, the "Squeeze-Out" requirement above will be waived.
  - g. Flexible Watertight Joints: Gaskets and jointing materials shall be as recommended by the particular manufacturer in regard to use of lubricants, cements, adhesives, and other special installation requirements. Surfaces to receive lubricants, cements, or adhesives shall be clean and dry. Gaskets and jointing materials shall be affixed to the pipe not more than 24 hours prior to the installation of the pipe, and shall be protected from the sun, blowing dust, and other deleterious agents at all times. Gaskets and jointing materials shall be inspected before installing the pipe; any loose or improperly affixed gaskets and jointing materials shall be removed and replaced. The pipe shall be aligned with the previously installed pipe, and the joint pushed home. If, while the joint is being made the gasket becomes visibly dislocated the pipe shall be removed and the joint remade.



- h. External Sealing Band Joint for Noncircular Pipe: Surfaces to receive sealing bands shall be dry and clean. Bands shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- 2. Corrugated Metal Pipe
  - a. Field Joints: Transverse field joints shall be designed so that the successive connection of pipe sections will form a continuous line free of appreciable irregularities in the flow line. In addition, the joints shall meet the general performance requirements described in ASTM A798/A798M. Suitable transverse field joints which satisfy the requirements for one or more of the joint performance categories can be obtained with the following types of connecting bands furnished with suitable band-end fastening devices: corrugated bands, bands with projections, flat bands, and bands of special design that engage factory reformed ends of corrugated pipe. The space between the pipe and connecting bands shall be kept free from dirt and grit so that corrugations fit snugly. The connecting band, while being tightened, shall be tapped with a soft-head mallet of wood, rubber or plastic, to take up slack and ensure a tight joint. The annular space between abutting sections of part paved, and fully paved pipe and pipe arch, in sizes 30 inches (750 mm) or larger, shall be filled with a bituminous material after jointing. Field joints for each type of corrugated metal pipe shall maintain pipe alignment during construction and prevent infiltration of fill material during the life of the installations. The type, size, and sheet thickness of the band and the size of angles or lugs and bolts shall be as indicated or where not indicated, shall be as specified in the applicable standards or specifications for the pipe.
  - b. Flexible Watertight, Gasketed Joints: Installation shall be as recommended by the gasket manufacturer for use of lubricants and cements and other special installation requirements. The gasket shall be placed over one end of a section of pipe for half the width of the gasket. The other half shall be doubled over the end of the same pipe. When the adjoining section of pipe is in place, the doubled-over half of the gasket shall then be rolled over the adjoining section. Any unevenness in overlap shall be corrected so that the gasket covers the end of pipe sections equally. Connecting bands shall be centered over adjoining sections of pipe, and rods or bolts placed in position and nuts tightened. Band Tightening: The band shall be tightened evenly, even tension being kept on the rods or bolts, and the gasket; the gasket shall seat properly in the corrugations. Watertight joints shall remain uncovered for a period of time designated, and before being covered, tightness of the nuts shall be measured with a torque wrench. If the nut has tended to loosen its grip on the bolts or rods, the nut shall be retightened with a torque wrench and remain uncovered until a tight, permanent joint is assured.

#### E. Concrete Placement

- 1. Place cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318/318R.

#### F. Drainage Structures

- 1. Manholes and Inlets: Construction shall be of reinforced concrete, plain concrete, brick, precast reinforced concrete, precast concrete segmental blocks, prefabricated corrugated metal, or bituminous coated corrugated metal; complete with frames and covers or gratings; and with fixed galvanized steel ladders where indicated. Pipe studs and junction chambers of prefabricated corrugated metal manholes shall be fully bituminous-coated and paved when the connecting branch lines are so treated. Pipe connections to concrete manholes and inlets shall be made with flexible, watertight connectors.
- 2. Walls and Headwalls: Construction shall be as indicated.

#### G. Steel Ladder Installation

- 1. Ladder shall be adequately anchored to the wall by means of steel inserts spaced not more than 6 feet (1.83 m) vertically, and shall be installed to provide at least 6 inches (152 mm) of space between the wall and the rungs. The wall along the line of the ladder shall be vertical for its entire length.



#### H. Backfilling

1. **Backfilling Pipe in Trenches:** After the pipe has been properly bedded, selected material from excavation or borrow, at a moisture content that will facilitate compaction, shall be placed along both sides of pipe in layers not exceeding 6 inches (150 mm) in compacted depth. The backfill shall be brought up evenly on both sides of pipe for the full length of pipe. The fill shall be thoroughly compacted under the haunches of the pipe. Each layer shall be thoroughly compacted with mechanical tampers or rammers. This method of filling and compacting shall continue until the fill has reached an elevation of at least 12 inches (300 mm) above the top of the pipe. The remainder of the trench shall be backfilled and compacted by spreading and rolling or compacted by mechanical rammers or tampers in layers not exceeding 8 inches (200 mm). Tests for density shall be made as necessary to ensure conformance to the compaction requirements specified below. Where it is necessary, in the opinion of the the Owner, that sheeting or portions of bracing used be left in place, the contract will be adjusted accordingly. Untreated sheeting shall not be left in place beneath structures or pavements.
2. **Backfilling Pipe in Fill Sections:** For pipe placed in fill sections, backfill material and the placement and compaction procedures shall be as specified below. The fill material shall be uniformly spread in layers longitudinally on both sides of the pipe, not exceeding 6 inches (150 mm) in compacted depth, and shall be compacted by rolling parallel with pipe or by mechanical tamping or ramming. Prior to commencing normal filling operations, the crown width of the fill at a height of 12 inches (300 mm) above the top of the pipe shall extend a distance of not less than twice the outside pipe diameter on each side of the pipe or 12 feet (4 m), whichever is less. After the backfill has reached at least 12 inches (300 mm) above the top of the pipe, the remainder of the fill shall be placed and thoroughly compacted in layers not exceeding 8 inches (200 mm).
3. **Movement of Construction Machinery:** When compacting by rolling or operating heavy equipment parallel with the pipe, displacement of or injury to the pipe shall be avoided. Movement of construction machinery over a culvert or storm drain at any stage of construction shall be at the Contractor's risk. Any damaged pipe shall be repaired or replaced.
4. **Compaction**
  - a. **General Requirements:** Cohesionless materials include gravels, gravel-sand mixtures, sands, and gravelly sands. Cohesive materials include clayey and silty gravels, gravel-silt mixtures, clayey and silty sands, sand-clay mixtures, clays, silts, and very fine sands. When results of compaction tests for moisture-density relations are recorded on graphs, cohesionless soils will show straight lines or reverse-shaped moisture-density curves, and cohesive soils will show normal moisture-density curves.
  - b. **Minimum Density:** Backfill over and around the pipe and backfill around and adjacent to drainage structures shall be compacted at the approved moisture content to the following applicable minimum density, which will be determined as specified below.
    - 1) Under airfield and heliport pavements, paved roads, streets, parking areas, and similar-use pavements including adjacent shoulder areas, the density shall be not less than 90 percent of maximum density for cohesive material and 95 percent of maximum density for cohesionless material, up to the elevation where requirements for pavement subgrade materials and compaction shall control.
    - 2) Under unpaved or turfed traffic areas, density shall not be less than 90 percent of maximum density for cohesive material and 95 percent of maximum density for cohesionless material.
    - 3) Under nontraffic areas, density shall be not less than that of the surrounding material.
5. **Determination of Density:** Testing shall be the responsibility of the Contractor and performed at no additional cost to the Owner. Testing shall be performed by an approved commercial testing laboratory or by the Contractor subject to approval. Tests shall be performed in sufficient number to ensure that specified density is being obtained. Laboratory tests for moisture-density relations shall be made in accordance with ASTM D1557 except that mechanical tampers may be used provided the results are correlated with those obtained with the specified hand tamper. Field density tests shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D2167 or ASTM D2922. When ASTM D2922 is used, the calibration curves shall be checked and adjusted, if necessary, using the sand cone method as described in paragraph Calibration of the referenced publications.



ASTM D2922 results in a wet unit weight of soil and when using this method ASTM D3017 shall be used to determine the moisture content of the soil. The calibration curves furnished with the moisture gauges shall be checked along with density calibration checks as described in ASTM D3017 or ASTM D2922. Test results shall be furnished to the Owner. The calibration checks of both the density and moisture gauges shall be made at the beginning of a job on each different type of material encountered and at intervals as directed.

I. Pipeline Testing

1. Leakage Tests: Lines shall be tested for leakage by low pressure air or water testing or exfiltration tests, as appropriate. Low pressure air testing for vitrified clay pipes shall conform to ASTM C828. Low pressure air testing for concrete pipes shall conform to ASTM C924/ASTM C924M. Low pressure air testing for plastic pipe shall conform to ASTM F1417. Low pressure air testing procedures for other pipe materials shall use the pressures and testing times prescribed in ASTM C828 or ASTM C924/ASTM C924M, after consultation with the pipe manufacturer. Testing of individual joints for leakage by low pressure air or water shall conform to ASTM C1103/ASTM C1103M. Prior to exfiltration tests, the trench shall be backfilled up to at least the lower half of the pipe. If required, sufficient additional backfill shall be placed to prevent pipe movement during testing, leaving the joints uncovered to permit inspection. Visible leaks encountered shall be corrected regardless of leakage test results. When the water table is 600 mm 2 feet or more above the top of the pipe at the upper end of the pipeline section to be tested, infiltration shall be measured using a suitable weir or other device acceptable to the Owner. An exfiltration test shall be made by filling the line to be tested with water so that a head of at least 2 feet (600 mm) is provided above both the water table and the top of the pipe at the upper end of the pipeline to be tested. The filled line shall be allowed to stand until the pipe has reached its maximum absorption, but not less than 4 hours. After absorption, the head shall be reestablished. The amount of water required to maintain this water level during a 2-hour test period shall be measured. Leakage as measured by the exfiltration test shall not exceed 250 gallons per inch in diameter per mile (60 liters per mm in diameter per kilometer) of pipeline per day **OR** 0.2 gallons per inch in diameter per 100 feet (9 mL per mm in diameter per 100 meters), **as directed**, of pipeline per hour. When leakage exceeds the maximum amount specified, satisfactory correction shall be made and retesting accomplished.
2. Deflection Testing: Perform a deflection test on entire length of installed plastic pipeline on completion of work adjacent to and over the pipeline, including leakage tests, backfilling, placement of fill, grading, paving, concreting, and any other superimposed loads. Deflection of pipe in the installed pipeline under external loads shall not exceed 4.5 percent of the average inside diameter of pipe. Determine whether the allowable deflection has been exceeded by use of a pull-through device or a deflection measuring device.
  - a. Pull-through device: This device shall be a spherical, spheroidal, or elliptical ball, a cylinder, or circular sections fused to a common shaft. Circular sections shall be so spaced on the shaft that distance from external faces of front and back sections will equal or exceed diameter of the circular section. Pull-through device may also be of a design promulgated by the Uni-Bell Plastic Pipe Association, provided that the device meets the applicable requirements specified in this paragraph, including those for diameter of the device. Ball, cylinder, or circular sections shall conform to the following:
    - 1) A diameter, or minor diameter as applicable, of 95 percent of the average inside diameter of the pipe; tolerance of plus 0.5 percent will be permitted.
    - 2) A homogeneous material throughout, with a density greater than 1.0 as related to water at 39.2 degrees F (4 degrees C), and a surface Brinell hardness of not less than 150.
    - 3) Center bored and through bolted with a 1/4 inch (6 mm) minimum diameter steel shaft having a yield strength of not less than 70,000 psi (483 MPa), with eyes or loops at each end for attaching pulling cables.
    - 4) Each eye or loop shall be suitably backed with a flange or heavy washer such that a pull exerted on opposite end of shaft will produce compression throughout remote end.



- b. Deflection measuring device: Sensitive to 1.0 percent of the diameter of the pipe being tested and accurate to 1.0 percent of the indicated dimension. Deflection measuring device shall be approved by the the Owner prior to use.
- c. Pull-through device: Pass the pull-through device through each run of pipe, either by pulling it through or flushing it through with water. If the device fails to pass freely through a pipe run, replace pipe which has the excessive deflection and completely retest in same manner and under same conditions as specified.
- d. Deflection measuring device procedure: Measure deflections through each run of installed pipe. If deflection readings in excess of 4.5 percent of average inside diameter of pipe are obtained, retest pipe by a run from the opposite direction. If retest continues to show a deflection in excess of 4.5 percent of average inside diameter of pipe, remove pipe which has excessive deflection, replace with new pipe, and completely retest in same manner and under same conditions.
- e. Warranty period test: Pipe found to have a deflection of greater than 5 percent of average inside diameter when deflection test is performed just prior to end of one-year warranty period shall be replaced with new pipe and tested as specified for leakage and deflection.

J. Field Painting

- 1. After installation, clean cast-iron frames, covers, gratings, and steps not buried in masonry or concrete to bare metal of mortar, rust, grease, dirt, and other deleterious materials and apply a coat of bituminous paint **OR** After installation, clean steel covers and steel or concrete frames not buried in masonry or concrete to bare metal of mortar, dirt, grease, and other deleterious materials. Apply a coat of primer and apply a top coat as specified in Division 09 Section "Exterior Painting", **as directed**. Do not paint surfaces subject to abrasion.

END OF SECTION 33 42 13 13



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
33 42 13 13	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
33 42 13 13	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
33 42 13 13	22 05 76 00	Sanitary Sewerage
33 42 13 13	33 42 11 00	Storm Drainage
33 42 23 00	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
33 42 23 00	33 42 11 00	Storm Drainage
33 42 23 00	31 32 19 16	Sewage Treatment Lagoons
33 42 26 16	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
33 42 26 16	33 14 13 23	Sand Drains
33 42 26 16	33 42 11 00	Storm Drainage
33 42 26 19	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
33 42 26 19	33 42 11 00	Storm Drainage
33 42 26 23	33 42 11 00	Storm Drainage
33 42 31 00	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
33 42 31 00	33 42 11 00	Storm Drainage
33 42 31 00	31 32 19 16	Sewage Treatment Lagoons
33 42 33 00	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
33 42 33 00	33 42 11 00	Storm Drainage
33 42 33 00	31 32 19 16	Sewage Treatment Lagoons
33 42 36 00	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
33 42 36 00	33 42 11 00	Storm Drainage
33 42 36 00	31 32 19 16	Sewage Treatment Lagoons
33 44 36 00	22 13 19 26	Interceptors
33 44 36 00	28 46 00 00	Oil/Water Separator



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





## SECTION 33 46 53 00 - RELIEF WELLS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for relief wells. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Submittals

1. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings.
2. Statements
  - a. Before installation, all well screen shall be approved.
  - b. The filter pack material and its gradation shall be approved before it is placed.
  - c. Submit the cement grout mixture proportion to be used in plugging abandoned wells.
3. Reports: Submit sampling and testing reports for each relief well, logs of the borings, well screen and riser pipe, backfill material, and pump tests. Register each well with the state as required by the state in which the well is installed.

- #### C. Regulatory Requirements: The state statutory and regulatory requirements form a part of this specification.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

- #### A. Well Screen: The Contractor may, at its option, furnish and install well screen of any of the alternate types specified. The clear inside diameter of the screen shall be as directed by the Owner. Screen openings shall be uniform in size and pattern, and shall be spaced approximately equally around the circumference of the pipe.

1. PVC Pipe Screen: Pipe, fittings, and screen shall be of the size and types specified. Pipe, fittings, and screen shall conform to ASTM D 1784, ASTM D 1785, ASTM D 2466, or ASTM D 2467. All joints in the PVC pipe shall include couplings and shall be glued with a solvent cement conforming to ASTM D 2564. The PVC pipe strength properties shall be equivalent to PVC 1120 Schedule 40 **OR** 80, **as directed**, unthreaded plastic pipe.
  - a. Couplings: Couplings shall be bonded socket **OR** threaded, **OR** certilock, **as directed**, type. Fittings shall be produced of the same material and equal quality as specified for plastic pipe screen. Socket type fitting connections of pipe sections shall be bonded with solvent cement. The determination of the proportions and preparation of adhesives, the method of application, and the procedure used for making and curing the connections shall be the responsibility of the Contractor. The system for making joints at the relief well site shall provide a curing period adequate to develop the ultimate strength of the solvent cement. Self-tapping screws or other devices for holding pipe in the couplings during the setting period may be utilized as long as the screws do not penetrate the inside of the pipe. In no case shall a newly-made joint in the casing be stressed, lowered into the relief well, or be submerged in water prior to complete curing of the solvent cement adhesive.
  - b. Perforations: The PVC well screen shall be mill slot **OR** continuous wire wrapped rod base **OR** continuous wire wrapped rod base on perforated pipe **OR** continuous wire wrapped on perforated pipe screen **OR** similar to that manufactured by Johnson Well Equipment, Inc., Pensacola, FL, telephone (904) 453-3131, **as directed**. All well screen shall have smooth, sharp-edged openings free of burns, chipped edges, or broken areas on the interior and exterior surfaces of the pipe. The slots or groups of slots shall be distributed in a uniform pattern around the periphery of the pipe and shall be oriented with the length of the slot parallel to, normal to, or diagonal with the axis of the pipe.



2. **Fiberglass Pipe Screen:** Fiberglass pipe screen and fittings shall be manufactured from thermosetting epoxy resins and glass fiber by either a centrifugal casting process or by a filament winding process. Glass fiber used shall be continuous filament, electrical glass with a finish compatible with epoxy resins. Each glass fiber or filament shall be thoroughly impregnated with epoxy resin. Fiberglass pipe wall thickness, strength and durability requirements shall be equivalent to the Fiberglass/Epoxy pipe produced by Fiberglass Resources Corporation of Farmingdale, New York or Burgess Well Company, Inc., Minden, Nebraska, telephone (308) 832-1642. All fiberglass pipe and fittings shall be round and straight, of uniform quality and workmanship, and free from all defects including indentation, delamination, bends, cracks, blisters, porosity, dry spots, resin segregation and resin-starved areas. The inside of the pipe and fittings shall be smooth and uniform. The impregnation of the glass fiber with resin shall be such that when the pipe is cut or slotted, no fraying or looseness of glass fiber occurs.
  - a. **Couplings:** Couplings for fiberglass pipe sections shall be socket threaded or mechanical key-type couplings. The couplings shall be manufactured of the same materials used for the fiberglass pipe specified herein and may be either cast integrally with the pipe sections or as separate components for attachment to the pipe in the manufacturers plant. Key-type couplings shall consist of male and female halves designed for joining and locking together by means of a key strip inserted in grooves in the coupling halves. The minimum wall thickness remaining at any grooved section shall not be less than the minimum thickness specified for pipe. Key strips and locking strips shall be of fiberglass, plastic or other non-corrosive material capable of withstanding shearing and bearing stresses equivalent to the design load for the coupling. Socket type fitting connections of the pipe sections shall be bonded with epoxy adhesive. The epoxy materials and bonding agents shall be as recommended by the pipe manufacturer. Self-tapping screws or other devices for holding adhesive-joined pipe in the couplings during the curing period may be utilized. In no case shall a newly-made joint in the casing pipe be lowered into the relief well, or be submerged in water prior to complete curing of the adhesive.
  - b. **Perforations:** All fiberglass well screen shall be mill slot **OR** continuous wire wrapped rod base, **as directed**. All relief well screen shall have smooth, sharp-edged openings free of burrs, chipped edges, or broken areas on the interior and exterior surfaces of the pipe. The slots or groups of slots shall be distributed in a uniform pattern around the periphery of the pipe and shall be oriented with the length of the slot parallel to, normal to, or diagonal with the axis of the pipe.
3. **Steel Pipe Screen:** Steel well screen shall consist of perforated or slotted sections of steel pipe conforming to the requirements of ASTM A 53.
  - a. **Couplings:** Couplings for steel pipe screen shall be welded joints or threaded couplings. Welding shall be performed in accordance with requirements in ASME B31.9. Couplings shall meet the material requirements specified for steel pipe screen, except perforations shall be omitted. All threaded pipe and fittings shall be threaded in accordance with ASME B1.20.1. All threaded pipe sections may be field connected. Couplings shall be given the same protection against corrosion as specified for the well screen pipe. Protective coatings damaged while making couplings shall have the areas recoated.
  - b. **Perforations:** All steel pipe to be used as relief well screen shall be provided with perforations which shall consist of either machine-cut slots; drilled or punched openings. The slots or groups of slots shall be distributed in a uniform pattern around the periphery of the pipe and shall be oriented with the length of the slot parallel to, normal to, or diagonal with the axis of the pipe. The pattern of the openings shall be uniformly spaced around the periphery of the pipe.
4. **Stainless Steel Well Screen:** The perforated well screen and fittings shall be fabricated entirely from stainless steel conforming to ASTM A 312/A 312M, Type 304, 304-L, 316 or 316-L. The well screen shall be of stainless steel with a keystone wire-wrapped continuous slot strainer equivalent to that manufactured by Howard Smith Screen Company, Houston, TX, telephone (713) 869-5771 or Johnson Screens, St. Paul, MN 55164, telephone (612) 636-3900.
  - a. **Couplings:** Couplings for the stainless steel well screen shall consist of the same material as the well screen and shall be threaded, flanged, and/or fitted with a welding ring. The



couplings shall conform in design to the couplings recommended by the manufacturer of the well screen.

- b. Tailpipe for Well Screen: The tailpipe for each well screen shall be made of the same material and at least the same minimum thickness as the riser pipe and shall include a bottom plug.
- B. Riser Pipe: The relief well riser pipe material and method of manufacture shall conform to the requirements specified in paragraph WELL SCREEN, except that the screen perforations or opening shall be omitted. The relief well riser pipe diameter and discharge details shall be as directed. Couplings to the well screen and between riser pipe sections shall be as specified in paragraph COUPLING.
- C. Filter Pack: Material for the filter pack around the riser pipes and screens shall be a washed grave, **OR** washed sand **OR** dry processed sand, **as directed**, composed of hard, tough, and durable particles free from adherent coating. The filter pack shall not be crushed stone. The filter pack material shall contain no detrimental quantities of organic matter nor soft, friable, thin, or elongated particles in accordance with the quality requirements in ASTM C 33, Table 1 and Table 3, Class 5S, and in ASTM E 11, Table 1.
- D. Outlet For Relief Well: Check Valve.
1. The check valve shall be a one piece reinforced all rubber (neoprene) check valve with an integral elastomer flange similar and equal to the Red Valve Series 35, manufactured by Red Valve Company, Inc., 700 North Bell Ave., Pittsburgh, PA 15106, telephone (412) 279-0044. The backup ring for the check valve shall be stainless steel. Stainless steel bolts, washers, and nuts shall be used to fasten the valves onto the flanged end of the pipes. The check valve shall be installed with the flared end duck bill in a vertical position.  
**OR**  
Fabricate check valves of brass **OR** stainless steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, plate, threaded fasteners and rods. Fabricate sealing disc of silicone sponge rubber free of porous areas, foreign materials, and visible defects.
  2. Workmanship and metalwork fabrication of check valves shall be as directed. Install check valves accurately vertically and adjust to the required elevation.
- E. Concrete: Concrete shall conform to the requirements specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Drilling: Wells may be drilled by the reverse rotary circulation method or other method approved, which will ensure proper placement of the well screen, riser pipe, and filter pack. Methods which involve radical displacement of the formation, or which may reduce the yield of the well, will not be permitted. Excavated material shall be disposed of as directed.
1. Reverse Circulation Method: If the reverse circulation method is used for drilling wells, all of the drilling fluid shall be removed from the filter pack and the natural pervious formation. If in the opinion of the Owner the walls of the hole above the top of the filter pack require support during development operations, a temporary casing similar to that specified in paragraph TEMPORARY CASING shall be placed so as to extend from the ground surface to at least 3 ft (1 m) below the top of the filter pack. The diameter of the hole shall be such as will permit the placement of the minimum thickness of filter pack as specified in paragraph FILTER PACK PLACEMENT. The drilling fluid shall be a suspension of fine grained soil or shall be a commercial product of a recognized manufacturer, shall be approved by the Owner, and shall have the characteristic of being readily removable from the filter pack and the walls of the formation by development as specified in paragraph DEVELOPMENT. The use of bentonite will not be permitted.
  2. Temporary Casing: Temporary well casing of either iron or steel of sufficient length to case to the bottom of all borings shall be available at the construction site. the Owner will direct the use of a temporary casing to the bottom of the boring during drilling and placement of screen, riser, and



filter pack when it believes it is necessary to provide adequate support to the sides of the hole. When the walls of the boring will require support only during development operations a temporary casing will be required to extend only to a depth 3 ft (3 m) below the top of the filter pack. The temporary casing, shall have sufficient thickness to retain its shape and maintain a true section throughout its depth, and may be in sections of any convenient length. The temporary casing shall be such as to permit its removal without disturbing the filter pack, riser, or well screen. The setting of temporary casing shall be such that no cavity will be created outside of it at any point along its length. In the event the temporary casing should become unduly distorted or bent it shall be discarded and a new casing shall be used during installation of any additional relief wells.

**B. Installation Of Riser Pipe And Screen**

1. **Assembly:** All riser pipe and screen shall be in good condition before installation and all couplings and other accessory parts shall be securely fastened in place. The successive lengths of pipe shall be arranged to provide accurate placement of the screen sections in the bore hole. The riser-pipe shall be provided with an approved cap and a flanged top section, the top of which shall be set at the elevation directed. Centralizers shall be attached to the assembled riser pipe and screen in such numbers and of a type that they will satisfactorily center the riser pipe and screen in the well and will hold it securely in position while the filter pack material is being placed.
2. **Joints:** Sections of relief well pipe shall be joined together as specified in paragraph COUPLINGS. Joints shall be designed and constructed to have the strength of the pipe and where possible a strength capable to support the weight of the relief well stem as it is lowered into the hole. When not practicable to construct joints that will support the weight of the relief well stem, the stem shall be supported at the lower end by any approved means that will assure that the joints do not open while being lowered into place in the well.
3. **Installation:** The assembled riser pipe and screen shall be placed in the bore hole in such manner as to avoid jarring impacts and to ensure that the assembly is centered and not damaged or disconnected. The screen shall be suspended in the hole and not resting on the bottom of the hole. After the screen and riser pipe have been placed, a filter pack shall be constructed around the screen section as specified in paragraph FILTER PACK PLACEMENT and the well developed as specified in paragraph DEVELOPMENT. The top of the riser pipe shall be held at the designated elevation during placement of the filter pack.
4. **Check for Plumbness and Alignment:** The well shall be constructed and all casing set round, plumb, and true. The Contractor shall perform the following tests after the installation of the well but prior to backfilling, and before its acceptance. Additional tests may be made during the performance of the work at the option of the Contractor. Should the Contractor fail to correct, at no additional cost to the Owner, any faulty alignment or plumbness disclosed as a result of these tests, the Owner may refuse to accept the well. the Owner may waive the requirements for plumbness if in its judgement the Contractor has exercised all possible care in constructing the well and the defect is due to circumstances beyond its control or if the utility of the completed well is not materially affected or if the cost of necessary remedial measures will be excessive. In no event will the provisions with respect to alignment be waived.
  - a. **Plumbness:** Plumbness shall be tested by use of a plumb line. The plummet shall be suspended from a small diameter wire rope and its point of suspension shall be in the exact center of the plummet. The plummet shall be sufficiently heavy to stretch the wire rope taut. The wire rope shall pass over a guide sheave which shall be positioned above the top of the well and adjusted horizontally so that the plummet hangs in the center of the well. Displacement of the wire rope during the plumbness check shall be measured by means of a transparent plastic sheet on which a number of concentric circles shall be scribed or drawn, and which is centered on the top of the well. The exact center of these circles shall be marked, and then a slot, slightly larger than the plumb line and extending from this center to the edge, shall be cut in the plastic sheet. As the plummet is lowered, any out-of-plumb condition of the well will be indicated by the wire rope tending to drift away from the center, and the plastic sheet shall be rotated until the slot is oriented in the direction of this drift, while at all times maintaining the center of the concentric circles coincident with the center of the well. Measurement of the amount of drift shall be made



along the edge of the slot for each increment by which the plummet is lowered into the well. Drift at any depth shall be determined by multiplying the measured plumb line displacement by the total length of the plumb line and dividing the result by the fixed distance between the guide sheave and the top of the well. If desired, alignment may be calculated from the plumbness data in lieu of the alignment check described in paragraph ALIGNMENT. Should the well vary from the vertical in excess of allowable, the plumbness of the well shall be corrected by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner.

- b. Alignment: Alignment shall be tested by lowering into the well a section of cylinder or a dummy of the same length. The outside diameter of cylinder shall be smaller than the inside diameter of the well. Should the cylinder fail to move freely throughout the length of the well, the alignment of the well shall be corrected by the Contractor at no additional expense to the Owner.

- C. Filter Pack Placement: After the well screen and riser pipe have been installed, the filter pack material shall be placed by tremie, when using a well graded material, in an approved manner such that segregation will not occur. When using a uniform graded filter material, the material may be poured around the well screen at a rate that will prevent bridging of the material. The material shall be placed around all sides of the screen to assure that the screen is not pushed against the side of the bore hole causing the screen to come in contact with foundation material or prevent the proper thickness of filter from being placed uniformly around the screen. The filter pack shall be placed at a constant rate from the start of placement until it has reached the elevation directed. If a tremie is required, a double string of tremie pipe shall be used. The pipes shall be placed on opposite sides of the screen and/or casing, that is, 180 degrees apart, and shall be guided in such a manner that they will remain in this position throughout the placing process. The tremie pipes shall be set in place, filled completely with filter pack prior to being lifted off the bottom of the hole. The filter pack in the tremie pipe shall be kept above the water surface in the well throughout the placing process. In no case shall the gradation of the filter pack fall outside of the range specified in paragraph FILTER PACK.

D. Development

1. General: Following placement of filter pack materials, the Contractor shall develop the relief well by jetting, surging, intermittent pumping, or other approved methods as may be necessary to give the maximum yield of water. At the time of development of any relief well, the well shall be free of drawdown or surcharge effects due to pump testing, developing or drilling at another location. The Contractor shall be responsible for maintaining at the relief well the needed access and work area and clearance in the relief well necessary to accomplish development. The Contractor shall furnish, install, or construct the necessary discharge line and troughs to conduct and dispose of the discharge a sufficient distance from the work areas to prevent damage. Development shall be conducted to achieve a stable well of maximum efficiency and shall be continued until a satisfactory sand test, as specified in paragraph SAND TEST, is obtained. As development proceeds, filter pack material shall be added to the annular space around the screen to maintain the top elevation of the filter pack to the specified elevation. The Contractor shall provide an open tube or other approved means for accurately determining the water level in the well under all conditions. If at any time during the development process it becomes apparent in the opinion of the Owner that the well may be damaged, development operations shall be immediately terminated. the Owner may require a change in method if the method selected does not accomplish the desired results. the Owner may order that wells which continue to produce excessive amounts of fines after development for 6 hours be abandoned, plugged, and backfilled, and may require the Contractor to construct new wells nearby. All materials pulled into the well by the development process shall be removed prior to performing the pumping test.
  - a. Jetting: Jetting should be performed using either a single or double ring jet. The jetting tool shall be constructed of high-strength material and conservatively designed and proportioned so that it will withstand high pressures. The jetting tool shall have two hydraulically balanced nozzles spaced 180 degrees **OR** four diameter holes spaced 90 degrees, **as directed**, apart and which shall exert the jetting force horizontally through the screen slots. The rings shall be constructed such that the tips of the jets shall be within 1/2 in. (13 mm) from the inner surface of the well screen. The pump used in conjunction with



the jetting tool shall be capable of providing a minimum jetting fluid exit velocity of 150 feet per second (45 meters per second). Prior to commencing jetting, and following each jetting cycle, all sand and/or other materials shall be removed from inside the screen. All wells shall be pumped during the jetting cycle to remove incoming sand and other material. Such pumping shall be at a rate not less than 115 percent of the rate at which fluid is introduced through the jetting tool. This will allow a flow of material into the well as it is being developed. Water used for development shall be free of sand. the Owner may require other means of developing the well such as intermittent pumping method, variation of the intermittent pumping method, or surge block if it appears that the development of the well is not producing the desired results.

- b. Intermittent Pumping: Intermittent pumping shall be performed by pumping the well at a capacity sufficient to produce a rapid drawdown, stopping the pump (backflow through pump will not be permitted) to permit the water surface to rise to its former elevation, and repeating this procedure. Cycle time for this procedure will vary as directed but will not be more than 3 cycles per minute. A deep well turbine pump, or electric submersible pump with check valve, shall be used with any attachment necessary to accomplish rapid starting and stopping for intermittent pumping. The intake shall be set below the maximum expected drawdown in the well. Prior to commencing intermittent pumping, and periodically during development by this method, all sand and/or other materials shall be removed from inside the screen. The amount of drawdown may be decreased if, in the opinion of the Owner, the efficiency of the well might otherwise be impaired.
  - c. Surging: Surging of the well shall require use of a circular block which is smaller in diameter than the inside diameter of the relief well and is constructed of a material which will not damage the screen if the block comes in contact with the screen, and a bailer or pump to remove materials drawn into the well. The surging shall be continued for a period of approximately one hour or until little or no additional material from the foundation or filter pack can be pulled through the screen. The surge block shall be moved by a steady motion up and down the full length of the well screen. Prior to commencing surging, and periodically during development by this method, all sand and/or other materials shall be removed from inside the screen. All materials pulled into the well by the surging process shall be removed by the Contractor.
- E. Backfilling: After the well has been developed, additional filter pack shall be added if necessary to meet the requirements of paragraph FILTER PACK PLACEMENT. Then the annular space above the filter pack, shall be backfilled by first placing a layer of concrete sand on the filter pack and then filling the remainder of the space up to the finished ground surface **OR** well pit, **as directed**, with grout or concrete. The concrete backfill shall be placed to a depth at least equal to the existing impervious blanket. For PVC riser pipe, after the well has been developed, additional filter pack shall be added if necessary for it to meet the requirements of paragraph FILTER PACK PLACEMENT. Then the remaining annular space above the filter pack shall be backfilled by first placing a layer of concrete sand on the filter pack and then filling the remainder of the space up to the finished ground surface **OR** well pit, **as directed**, with bentonite. The temporary casing, if used, shall be withdrawn in increments as the backfill is placed. The Contractor shall fill with impervious material to original grade all pits such as those incidental to the reverse rotary circulation method of drilling.
- F. Plugging Of Abandoned Wells: The Contractor has the option of attempting to remove the well screen. If the well screen can be removed, the Contractor will grout the bore hole starting from the bottom of the hole. The grouting shall start at the elevation of the bottom of the tailpipe of the well. If the well screen can not be removed or breaks off during the removal attempt, the Contractor shall still be responsible for grouting the well from the bottom of the tailpipe to within 3 ft (1 m) of ground surface. Either of the above abandonment procedures may require the Contractor to redrill the hole so that the bore hole can be grouted. The well shall be grouted from the bottom of the tailpipe. After the grout has setup the riser pipe shall be cutoff. Then the hole shall be backfilled. The cement grout mixture proportion to be used shall be submitted for approval.



#### G. Tests

1. Pump Test: Upon completion but before acceptance, each well shall be subjected to a pump test of which a sand test will form a part. The Contractor shall provide a deep well turbine pump, capable of producing the specified drawdowns over periods of time sufficient to satisfactorily perform the pump test specified herein. The intake shall be set below the maximum expected drawdown in the well. The amount of sand shall be measured after each test. The pump shall be complete with either gasoline, diesel, or electric motor of adequate size. In case an electric motor is used, the Contractor shall provide, without additional cost to the Owner, the electric power and the necessary wiring. The Contractor shall provide an open tube or other approved means for accurately determining the water level in the well. The Contractor shall furnish and install an orifice meter of approved design or other approved equipment for the purpose of measuring the discharge from the well during the pumping test. The Contractor shall furnish, install, or construct the necessary pipe discharge line, troughs, or ditches necessary to dispose of the pumping test discharge a sufficient distance from the work area to prevent damage. The tests will be conducted under the direction of the Owner and may be made as soon as each well is completed. Test data will be recorded by the Owner. The Contractor shall test each well by pumping continuously for a minimum of 6 hours. Prior to starting the pump test all material shall be removed from the bottom of the well. If the test is interrupted, other than by order of the Owner, prior to the completion of the specified period of continuous operation, the test shall be re-run. In addition to the required pumping test, the Owner may direct the Contractor to perform additional pump tests. Such additional testing shall conform in general to the requirements specified herein except that the duration of the tests and the approximate draw-down will be determined by the Owner. In the event that sand or other material collects in the well as a result of the pump test, accurate measurements shall be taken as to the quantity of material in the well and all such material shall be removed by the Contractor. Upon completion of the pump test, the Contractor shall remove all equipment, discharge lines, electrical lines, lumber, and debris, and shall backfill any excavated areas with impervious material.
2. Sand Test: As part of each Pump Test or at the end of each intermittent pumping a determination of the amount of sand (filter pack and/or foundation material) a well is producing shall be performed. Prior to starting the sand test all material shall be removed from the bottom of the tailpipe. After the pump is at the desired pumping rate the flow from the discharge shall be diverted into a container that will collect all the sand being carried by the water **OR** through a Rossum Sand Tester, **as directed**. Upon completion of the test the amount of sand in the tailpipe shall be determined to verify that no material is being deposited in the bottom of the well.
3. Filter Pack Sampling and Testing: The Contractor shall verify that all materials conform to the specifications before delivery to the project. The particle size distribution of the filter pack shall be sampled and tested by the Contractor in accordance with ASTM C 136 and ASTM D 75. Within 48 hours before being placed in the relief well to be back-filled, the filter pack shall be sampled from the material stockpiled at the project site. There shall be at least one particle size distribution test on the filter pack for each well. A pump test shall be performed in accordance with technical provisions herein specified.
4. Reports: Reports shall include, for each relief well, logs of the boring, elevations of the well screen, top of riser pipe, bottom of the tailpipe, filter pack gradation, quantity of filter pack added during development, pump test, sand test, and report of backfilling. The log of backfill material shall include the filter pack particle size distribution test data, and notes concerning installation and development of the relief well. The pump test log shall include the duration of the test and the draw-down response data with time in the pumped well, in adjacent wells, and in nearby piezometers. The relief well log and the pump test log shall be submitted to the Owner. The Contractor shall also submit a report of the well installation to the appropriate public agency and in the form required by state statutory and/or regulatory requirements specified in paragraph REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS.

END OF SECTION 33 46 53 00



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
33 46 53 00	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
33 46 53 00	33 14 13 23	Sand Drains
33 51 29 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
33 51 29 00	22 11 23 23	Water Supply Wells
33 51 29 00	22 11 16 00	Common Work Results for Fire Suppression
33 51 29 00	22 11 16 00a	Common Work Results for Plumbing
33 51 29 00	22 11 16 00b	Common Work Results for HVAC
33 51 29 00	22 13 19 33	General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping
33 51 29 00	22 13 19 33a	General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping
33 51 29 00	22 11 16 00d	Sanitary Waste And Vent Piping
33 53 16 00	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
33 59 11 00	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
33 59 16 00	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
34 01 43 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
34 05 43 00	32 01 11 53	Asphalt Paving
34 05 43 00	32 12 13 13	Bituminous Paving-Repair And Resurfacing
34 05 43 00	32 12 13 13a	Asphaltic Concrete Overlays
34 05 43 00	03 41 16 00	Plant-Precast Structural Concrete
34 05 43 00	03 01 30 71	Concrete Rehabilitation
34 05 43 00	05 05 23 00	Structural Steel
34 05 43 00	05 12 23 00	Cold-Formed Metal Framing
34 05 43 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 34 41 13 00 - ELECTRICAL TRAFFIC CONTROL SIGNALS**

## 1.1 GENERAL

## A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of electrical traffic control signals. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

## 1.2 PRODUCT

- A. General: Replacement equipment items shall be regularly manufactured products.
- B. Concrete Poles: Cement ASTM C 150; aggregate ASTM C 33; minimum compressive strength 6,000 psi when tested in compliance with AASHTO T22. Tensioning steel shall comply with ASTM A 603. Strands shall not be tensioned above 70 percent of the rated ultimate strength. Epoxy compound for sealing hollow cores shall comply with ASTM D 1763.
- C. Galvanized Conduit Nipples: UL 514B.
- D. Ground Wire: Cast-in-concrete pole, No. 6 stranded bare wire, ASTM A 603.
- E. Wood Poles: ANSI 05.1, waterborne preservative-treated in compliance with AWPA C3, Retention Zone 1.
- F. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36.
- G. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53.
- H. Steel Bars: ASTM A 576.
- I. Wire Strand: ASTM A 475.
- J. Zinc Coatings: Members, ASTM A 123; fasteners, ASTM A 153.
- K. Mast Arms for Supporting Traffic Signals: ASTM A 36; aluminum alloy 3003, or alloy alcad 3004 complying with ASTM B 209.
- L. Concrete for Pull Boxes: ASTM C 94, 3,000 psi.
- M. Cast-Iron Covers: ASTM A 48.
- N. Signal Lens: Manufactured in compliance with Article 5 and 6, ITE Technical Report Number 1.
- O. Loop Wire for Vehicle Detectors: No. 14 AWG or No. 12 AWG, stranded copper wire, type TTHN, THWN, or THW, ASTM B3.
- P. Grout: One part cement complying with ASTM C 150 and two parts sand complying with ASTM C 33.
- Q. Conduit: Polyvinyl chloride, UL 651, Schedule 40 or galvanized rigid metal, ASTM B 3.



---

R. Ground Wire: Soft drawn copper, bare, stranded, ANSI C7.1.

S. Electrical Work: NFPA No. 70.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Scheduling and Coordination: The Contractor shall ensure that required notices have been given and that power interruptions have been scheduled and approved.

B. Traffic: Provide temporary traffic signs at and around work area. Signs and locations shall be as approved by the the Owner.

C. Vehicle Detector Assemblies, Loop Type: Saw out existing loops to be replaced to their full depth. Install and seal loop wire. Splice and solder loop wire and lead-in cable and wrap a minimum of two wraps with silicone tape and heavy-duty electrical tape. Install sealant in compliance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Excavate and remove existing lead-in cable to be replaced, and install new lead-in cable in place and connect to cabinet ground.

END OF SECTION 34 41 13 00



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
34 41 13 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
34 41 13 00	05 15 16 00	Ornamental Metal
34 41 13 00	27 11 19 00	Loose-Tube Gel-Filled Fiber Optic Cables
34 41 13 00	26 05 33 16a	Wiring Devices
34 41 16 00	34 41 13 00	Electrical Traffic Control Signals



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





## SECTION 34 71 13 13 - BEAM-TYPE GUARDRAIL

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for beam-type guardrail. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop drawings shall be submitted for approval.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Rail Elements, End Sections, and Fasteners

1. ARTBA technical bulletin No. 268-B.
2. Provide galvanized steel W-beam in accordance with AASHTO M-180, class A, type 1.
3. Shop curve rail elements when required radius of installation on horizontal curve is 150 ft (46 m) or less. Provide W-beam rail (ARTBA RE-3) with a flared end section (ARTBA RE-5), rounded end section (ARTBA RE-6) at each end of installations.
4. Provide standard back-up plates behind rail elements at all intermediate, non-splice posts when steel posts and blocks are used.
5. Galvanize the rail sections, including end sections, in accordance with ASTM A 525, coating G-210.

#### B. Posts

1. Wood: Provide wood posts with blocks, size as required by State DOT. Rough sawn or S4S timber of Douglas Fir or any other locally approved species that is either No. 1 grade or Select Structural grade when graded in accordance with the requirements for Timber and Posts as set forth in WWPA-01 may be used. Give all wood posts and blocks a preservative treatment in accordance with the requirements of AASHTO M-133. Cut to length and bore posts and blocks for bolt holes before treatment.
2. Steel: Provide steel posts with blocks. Fabricate posts and blocks from W6X9 structural steel shapes complying with the requirements of ASTM A 36. Fabricate in the shop, grind smooth all corners and edges, galvanize posts and blocks after fabrication in accordance with ASTM A 123.

#### C. Bolts, Nuts, and Washers

1. Provide galvanized bolts, nuts, and washers that meet common ARTBA standards, designed to develop the required joint strength. Provide bolts with rounded heads to provide minimum obstruction.
2. Provide galvanized steel bolts conforming to the requirements of ASTM A 307, nuts conforming to the requirements of ASTM A 563, Grade A or better and galvanized steel washers, all galvanized in accordance with the requirements of ASTM A 153. Provide high strength bolts conforming to the requirements of ASTM A 325 where needed.

#### D. Reflectors: Provide guardrail reflectors as indicated. Place the galvanized steel tabs with reflective sheeting at every post except no reflectors are to be placed along the guardrail end flares.

#### E. Breakaway Cable Terminal (BCT) Assemblies: Provide BCT assemblies in accordance with the ARTBA details and standards referenced on the details.



- 
- F. Concrete and Reinforcement for the Post Footings: In accordance with applicable sections of Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Guardrail: Erect steel beam-type guardrail in locations and to lines and grades as directed and in accordance with details indicated.
- B. Erection
  1. Firmly set posts spaced at 6 ft. 3 in. (1.9 m) centers to the required depth. Set posts by placing in hand or mechanically dug holes or by driving, with or without pilot holes. Backfill gaps around posts with approved material that is moistened and thoroughly compacted. Repair damaged roadway surfacing where pavement is disturbed.
  2. Position the top of W-beam rail at 27 in. (0.69 m) above the finished roadway surface. Align rail both vertically and horizontally within 1/4-in. (6 mm) from the theoretical alignments. Lap the rail sections at posts, in the direction of traffic in the adjacent lane, and lap end sections on the face of the rail.
  3. Exercise care to avoid damage to treated wood and galvanized steel parts. Repair or replace damaged parts at the Contractor's expense. Securely tighten all bolts in the finished guardrail. Toenail the wood blocks to wood posts with two 16 penny galvanized nails, one on each side of the top of the block.

END OF SECTION 34 71 13 13



## SECTION 34 71 13 16 - ACTIVE VEHICLE BARRIERS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for active vehicle barriers. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Submittals

1. Shop Drawings: Installation, Equipment, and Electrical Work
  - a. Detail drawings containing complete wiring and schematic diagrams, and any other details required to demonstrate that the system has been coordinated and will properly function as a unit. Drawings shall show proposed layout and anchorage of equipment and appurtenances, and equipment relationship to other parts of the work including foundation and clearances for maintenance and operation. For Federal work, detail drawings shall include a copy of the Department of State certificate of barrier performance.
2. Product Data:
  - a. Vehicle Barriers: A complete list of equipment, materials, including industrial standards used and how they apply to the applicable component and manufacturer's descriptive data and technical literature, catalog cuts, and installation instructions. Information necessary to document a minimum 1-year successful field operation performance history for each type of vehicle barrier installed.
  - b. Spare Parts: Spare parts data for each different item of material and equipment used, after approval of the detail drawings. The data shall include a complete list of parts and supplies, with current unit prices and source of supply.
3. Test Reports
  - a. Field Testing: Test reports in booklet form showing all field tests, including component adjustments and demonstration of compliance with the specified performance criteria, upon completion and testing of the installed system. Each test report shall indicate the final position of controls.
4. Operation and Maintenance Data
  - a. Vehicle Barriers: Operating and Maintenance Instructions
    - 1) Six copies of operation and maintenance manuals, a minimum of 2 weeks prior to field training. One complete set prior to performance testing and the remainder upon acceptance. Manuals shall be approved prior to acceptance. Operation manuals shall outline the step-by-step procedures required for system startup, operation, and shutdown. The manuals shall include the manufacturer's name, model number, service manual, parts list, and brief description of all equipment and their basic operating features. Maintenance manuals shall include routine maintenance procedures, possible breakdowns and repairs, and troubleshooting guide. The manuals shall include piping layout, equipment layout, and simplified wiring and control diagrams of the system as installed. The manuals shall also include synthetic biodegradable hydraulic oil types to be used for ambient temperature ranges of minus 30 degrees F (minus 34 degrees C) to 150 degrees F (plus 66 degrees C) to cover winter operation, summer operation, and ambient temperature ranges in between.

#### C. General Requirements

1. Performance levels shall be based on the following:
  - a. The Department of State (DOS) publication SD-SDT-02.01 Specification for Vehicle Crash Testing of Perimeter Barriers and Gates (April 1985) in which:
    - 1) Impact Conditions:



Condition Designation	Vehicle Weight	Impact Speed	Kinetic Energy
K4	15,000 lb (6,800 kg)	30 mph (48 km/h)	450,000 ft-lb (610 kJ)
K8	15,000 lb (6,800 kg)	40 mph (65 km/h)	800,000 ft-lb (1084 kJ)
K12	15,000 lb (6,800 kg)	50 mph (80 km/h)	1,250,000 ft-lb (1695 kJ)

2) Performance Levels:

- a) L 3.0 Vehicle and cargo are to be stopped although vehicle partial penetration and/or barrier deflection of up to 3 feet (1 m) permitted.
- b) L 2.0 Vehicle and cargo are to be stopped although vehicle partial penetration and/or barrier deflection of up to 20 feet (6 m) is permitted.
- c) L 1.0 Vehicle is disabled and does not travel more than 50 feet (15 m) after impact.

2. Vehicle Barriers furnished shall in all respects be identical to the unit tested and certified except for the width of the vehicle barrier, which is as indicated and except for bollards which have a diameter based on a required crash rating. Crash test shall be performed and data compiled by an approved independent testing agency. Test vehicle shall not vault or penetrate the barrier during the test. The design and structural materials of the vehicle barrier furnished shall be the same as those used in the crash tested barrier.

D. Nameplates

1. Nameplate data shall be permanently attached to each vehicle barrier. The data shall be legibly marked on corrosion-resistant metal plates and shall consist of at least the following:
  - a. Manufacturer's name.
  - b. Model number.
  - c. Serial number.
  - d. Date of manufacture.

E. Delivery And Storage

1. Components placed in storage shall be protected from the weather, humidity, and temperature variation, dirt and dust, or other contaminants. Structural materials shall be stored on sleepers or pallets and shall be protected from rust and objectionable materials such as dirt, grease, or oil.

F. Spare Parts

1. A manufacturer's standard recommended spare parts package, with current unit prices and source of supply complete with detailed manuals on parts replacement, shall be provided with each barrier to facilitate 1 year of normal operation. Particular consideration shall be given to system components which are not readily available from local or commercial sources and which are critical to the operation of the system.

G. Manufacturer's Services

1. Services of a manufacturer's representative who is experienced in the installation, adjustment, and operation of the equipment supplied shall be available. The representative shall supervise the installation, adjustment, and testing of the equipment.

1.2 PRODUCT

- A. Retractable Barriers: When in the raised position, the total retractable barrier heights shall be no less than 28 inches (711 mm) above the roadway surface and shall be 144 inches (3.66 m) wide. When in the lowered position, the retractable barrier shall extend no more than 5/8 inch (16 mm) above the roadway surface. Retractable barriers in the lowered position shall be capable of supporting a 32,000 pound (142 kN) axle load or a 16,000 (71 kN) wheel load. Design for this load shall be in accordance with AASHTO HB-17.

1. Powered Retractable Barrier: The retractable barrier shall be capable of 300 complete up/down cycles per hour. The retractable barrier motion shall be instantly reversible and shall be capable



of raising the barrier from the lowered position to the raised position within 8 seconds during normal use, and within 2 seconds during an emergency. Also, the barrier shall be capable of being lowered from the raised position to the lowered position in not more than 3 seconds. Retractable barrier shall withstand a K4 **OR** K8 **OR** K12, **as directed**, impact condition with Performance Level of L1.0 **OR** L2.0 **OR** L3.0, **as directed**.

- a. Failure Modes of Operation: The system shall be designed to remain in the last commanded position in the event of hydraulic, electrical, or mechanical failure. A manual pump, or other system, shall be included for operation of hydraulic barriers without power.
  - b. Electric Motors: Unless otherwise indicated, electric motors shall have drip-proof **OR** totally enclosed **OR** totally enclosed fan cooled, **as directed**, enclosures. All couplings, motor shafts, gears, and other moving parts shall be fully guarded in accordance with 29 CFR 1910 Subpart O. Guards shall be removable without disassembling the guarded unit. For multiple barriers operated from a single hydraulic unit it is highly recommended that the electric motor be 3-phase.
  - c. System: The system shall be designed to maintain the barriers in the raised position, without inspection, for periods of time of up to 1 week. If a hydraulic system is used, it shall be equipped with pressure relief valves to prevent overpressure. The system shall not require continuous running of the motor to stay in the raised position, excluding the use of manual pinning to do so.
  - d. Hydraulic Power Unit: The hydraulic power unit shall contain synthetic biodegradable hydraulic fluid which maintains its viscosity operating range, even at constant heaviest use rate, for an ambient temperature range of 20 to 150 degrees F (minus 7 to plus 66 degrees C). A hydraulic fluid heater shall be provided so that the viscosity remains within its operating range if ambient temperatures below 20 degrees F (minus 7 degrees C) are expected. Buried hydraulic lines for the connection of the hydraulic power unit to the barrier shall be flexible or carbon steel pipe, or a combination of flexible and carbon steel pipe. Flexible and rigid hydraulic line working pressures shall exceed the maximum system relief pressure. PVC pipe and fittings for burial of hydraulic lines shall be in accordance with ASTM D 3034 Type PS 46 with minimum pipe stiffness of 46.
    - 1) Flexible hydraulic lines shall be in accordance with SAE J517.
    - 2) Rigid hydraulic lines shall be seamless carbon steel pipe in accordance with ASTM A 106.
  - e. Hydraulic Power Unit Enclosure: A NEMA Type 3R enclosure as specified in NEMA 250 shall be provided to enclose the hydraulic power unit. The enclosure shall be designed for easy removal of the hydraulic power unit and other accessories without complete removal of the enclosure. An access door with hinges and an inside and outside operable/lockable (exterior) door latch shall be provided. Equipment within the enclosure shall be placed and configured so that all periodic maintenance can be performed through the access door without removal of the equipment. The enclosure shall be equipped with weatherproof louver vents appropriately sized and located to dissipate internal heat generation.
2. Manual Retractable Barriers: The manual barrier shall be capable of being raised and lowered by manual means such as levers or hydraulics requiring a maximum 60 pounds (267 N) of force. The manual mechanism shall contain a locking pin which accepts a padlock for securing the barrier when it is in the "UP" position. Retractable barrier shall withstand a K4 **OR** K8 **OR** K12, **as directed**, impact condition with Performance Level of L1.0 **OR** L2.0 **OR** L3.0, **as directed**. Barrier should be capable of being locked in the down position.
- B. Retractable Bollards: The total bollard height when in the raised position shall be no less than 30 inches (750 mm) above the roadway surface and shall have an outside diameter of no less than 8 inches (200 mm). A bollard system shall consist of a minimum of 3 bollards spaced no more than 36 inches (915 mm) from centerline to centerline of bollards across a 10 foot (3.0 m) roadway. Bollards in the lowered position shall be capable of supporting a 16,000 pound (71 kN) wheel load each. Design for this load shall be in accordance with AASHTO HB-17. Retractable bollards shall withstand a K4 **OR** K8 **OR** K12, **as directed**, Impact Condition with Performance Level of L1.0 **OR** L2.0 **OR** L3.0, **as directed**.



1. Powered Retractable Bollards: The retractable bollard shall be capable of 300 complete up/down cycles per hour. Bollards shall be capable of being raised or lowered within a 3 to 15-second range during normal use and within 2.5 seconds for emergency operations.
    - a. Failure Modes of Operation: The system shall be designed to prevent lowering of the barrier in the event of hydraulic, electrical, or mechanical failure. A manual pump, or other system, shall be included for operation of hydraulic and/or mechanical barriers without power.
    - b. Electric Motors: Unless otherwise indicated, electric motors shall have drip-proof **OR** totally enclosed, **as directed**, enclosures. For multiple barriers being operated from a hydraulic power unit it is highly recommended that the electric motor be 3-phase.
    - c. System: The system shall be designed to maintain the barriers in the raised position, without inspection, for period of time of up to 1 week. If a hydraulic system is used, it shall be equipped with pressure relief valves to prevent overpressure.
    - d. Hydraulic Power Unit: The hydraulic power unit shall contain synthetic biodegradable hydraulic fluid which maintains its viscosity operating range, even at constant heaviest use rate, for an ambient temperature range of 20 to 150 degrees F (minus 7 to plus 66 degrees C). A hydraulic fluid heater shall be provided so that the viscosity remains within its operating range, if ambient temperatures below 20 degrees F (minus 7 degrees C) are expected. Buried hydraulic lines for the connection of the hydraulic power unit to the barrier shall be flexible or carbon steel pipe, or a combination of flexible and carbon steel pipe. Flexible and rigid hydraulic line working pressures shall exceed the maximum system relief pressure. PVC pipe and fittings for burial of hydraulic lines shall be in accordance with ASTM D 3034 Type PS 46 with minimum pipe stiffness of 46.
      - 1) Flexible hydraulic lines shall be in accordance with SAE J517.
      - 2) Rigid hydraulic lines shall be seamless carbon steel pipe in accordance with ASTM A 106.
    - e. Hydraulic Power Unit Enclosure: A NEMA Type 3R enclosure as specified in NEMA 250 shall be provided to enclose the hydraulic power unit. The enclosure shall be designed for easy removal of the hydraulic power unit and other accessories without complete removal of the enclosure. An access door with hinges and an inside and outside operable/lockable (exterior) door latch shall be provided. Equipment within the enclosure shall be placed and configured so that all periodic maintenance can be performed through the access door without removal of the equipment. The enclosure shall be equipped with weatherproof louver vents appropriately sized and located to dissipate internal heat generation.
  2. Manual Retractable Bollards: Manual bollards shall be capable of being raised and lowered utilizing a recessed handle on the top surface of the bollard or a manual hydraulic pump, either requiring a maximum 60 pounds (267 N) of force. A mechanism, that is lockable, shall be provided to secure the bollard in either the full "UP" or full "DOWN" position.
- C. Crash Gate: The crash gate shall consist of steel buttresses anchored into the ground and an above grade assembly consisting of a heavy steel structure or a combination of heavy steel and structural aluminum capable of being opened and closed. The height of the gate shall be a minimum of 84 inches (2.1 m) from the road surface to the top of the gate frame. The length shall close and protect a minimum 120 inch (3.0 m) clear opening. The maximum clear opening between the gate frame and end posts, between the bottom of the gate and finished grade, and between any grill work shall be 3 inches (75 mm).
1. Powered Crash Gate: The gate movement shall be controlled by an electro-mechanical gate operator **OR** a hydraulic gate operator, **as directed**, consisting of an operator unit with required control circuits and operator station. The control and operating voltage shall be 24 vac (nominal) or, as an option 24 vdc. A remote control master station shall be capable of driving the gate at minimum 48 fpm (14.6 m per minute) for a slide gate or 6 degrees per second for a swing gate. Unless otherwise indicated, motors shall have drip-proof **OR** totally enclosed, **as directed**, enclosures. Crash gate shall withstand a 15,000 pound (6804 kg) vehicle at impact speed of 30 **OR** 40 **OR** 50, **as directed**, mph (48 **OR** 64 **OR** 80, **as directed**, km/hour), with maximum barrier deflection or vehicle penetration of 3 feet (1 m).



- a. Failure Mode of Operation: The system shall be designed to prevent opening of the crash gate in the event of electrical or mechanical failure. A disconnect system for the gate drive shall be provided to allow manual operation of the barrier in the event of a power outage.
  - b. Hydraulic Power Unit: The hydraulic power unit shall contain synthetic biodegradable hydraulic fluid which maintains its viscosity within its operating range, even at constant heaviest use rate, for an ambient temperature range of 20 to 150 degrees F (minus 7 to plus 66 degrees C). A hydraulic fluid heater shall be provided so that the viscosity remains within its operating range if ambient temperatures below 20 degrees F (minus 7 degrees C) are expected. Buried hydraulic lines for the connection of the hydraulic power unit to the barrier shall be flexible or carbon steel pipe, or a combination of flexible and carbon steel. Flexible and rigid hydraulic line working pressures shall exceed the maximum system relief pressure. PVC pipe and fittings for burial of hydraulic lines shall be in accordance with ASTM D 3034 Type PS 46 with minimum pipe stiffness of 46.
    - 1) Flexible hydraulic lines shall be in accordance with SAE J517.
    - 2) Rigid hydraulic lines shall be seamless carbon steel pipe in accordance with ASTM A 106.
  - c. Hydraulic Power Unit Enclosure: A NEMA Type 3R enclosure as specified in NEMA 250 shall be provided to enclose the hydraulic power unit. The enclosure shall be designed for easy removal of the hydraulic power unit and other accessories without complete removal of the enclosure. An access door with hinges and an inside and outside operable/lockable (exterior) door latch shall be provided. Equipment within the enclosure shall be placed and configured so that all periodic maintenance can be performed through the access door without removal of the equipment. The enclosure shall be equipped with weatherproof louver vents appropriately sized and located to dissipate internal heat generation.
2. Manual Crash Gate: The manual crash gate shall be capable of being hinged from either side. Hinge points of both buttresses shall each contain a locking pin with padlock acceptance for securing the crash gate in the closed position. The crash gate shall withstand a 10,000 pound (4535 kg) vehicle at impact speed of 50 mph (80 km/hour), with maximum gate deflection or vehicle penetration of 10 feet (3 m) 15,000 pound (6804 kg) vehicle traveling at impact speed of 30 **OR** 40 **OR** 50, **as directed**, mph (48 **OR** 64 **OR** 80, **as directed**, km/hour), with a maximum gate deflection or vehicle penetration of up to 3 feet (1 m).
- D. Crash Beam: The crash beam shall be an above-grade assembly that, in the "DOWN" position, shall present a visible obstacle to approaching vehicles. The height of the barrier shall be a minimum of 30 inches (750 mm) as measured from the roadway surface to the centerline of the crash beam. The crash beam shall be capable of blocking a minimum road width of 120 inches (3.0 m). The crash beam end shall contain a locking pin with padlock acceptance for securing the crash beam when it is in the "DOWN" position. Crash beam shall withstand a 15,000 pound (6804 kg) vehicle traveling at 30 **OR** 40 **OR** 50, **as directed**, mph (48 **OR** 64 **OR** 80, **as directed**, km/hour), with maximum vehicle penetration of 20 feet (6 m) 10,000 pound (4535 kg) vehicle at impact speed of 15 mph (24 km/hour), with a maximum vehicle penetration of 10 feet (3 m).
1. Powered Crash Beam: The crash beam shall be operated by means of a hydraulic power system. The crash beam shall be capable of being raised or lowered within an 8 to 15 second time range.
    - a. Failure Mode of Operation: A disconnect system for the crash beam shall be provided to allow manual operation of the barrier in the event of an electrical or mechanical failure.
    - b. Hydraulic Power Unit: The hydraulic power unit shall contain synthetic biodegradable hydraulic fluid which maintains its viscosity operating range, even at constant heaviest use rate, for an ambient temperature range of 20 to 150 degrees F (minus 7 to plus 66 degrees C). A hydraulic fluid heater shall be provided so that the viscosity remains within its operating range if ambient temperatures below 20 degrees F (minus 7 degrees C) are expected. Buried hydraulic lines for the connection of the hydraulic power unit to the barrier shall be flexible or carbon steel pipe or a combination of flexible and carbon steel pipe. Flexible and rigid hydraulic line working pressures shall exceed the maximum system relief pressure. PVC pipe and fittings for burial of hydraulic lines shall be in accordance with ASTM D 3034 Type PS 46 with minimum pipe stiffness of 46.



- 1) Flexible hydraulic lines shall be in accordance with SAE J517.
  - 2) Rigid hydraulic lines shall be seamless carbon steel pipe in accordance with ASTM A 106.
- c. Hydraulic Power Unit Enclosure: A NEMA Type 3R enclosure as specified in NEMA 250 shall be provided to enclose the hydraulic power unit. The enclosure shall be designed for easy removal of the hydraulic power unit components and other accessories without complete removal of the enclosure. An access door with hinges and an inside and outside operable/lockable exterior door latch shall be provided. Equipment within the enclosure shall be placed and configured so that all periodic maintenance can be performed through the access door without removal of the equipment. The enclosure shall be equipped with weatherproof louver vents appropriately sized and located to dissipate internal heat generation.
2. Manual Crash Beam: The crash beam shall be manually raised and lowered with the aid of a counterbalanced end requiring approximately 60 pounds (267 N) of force.
- E. Portable Retractable Barrier: The portable retractable barrier shall be transportable and capable of manual and/or electro-mechanical operation. When in the raised position, the total barrier heights shall be no less than 28 inches (711 mm) above the roadway surface and shall be up to 144 inches (3.66 m wide). The barrier shall be equipped with entrance/exit ramps when the barrier extends more than 5/8 inch (16 mm) above the roadway surface. Retractable barriers in the lowered position shall be capable of supporting a 32,000 pound (142 kN) axle load or a 16,000 (71 kN) pound wheel load. Design for this load shall be in accordance with AASHTO HB-17.
1. Powered Portable Retractable Barrier: The portable retractable barrier shall be capable of 300 complete up/down cycles per hour. The retractable barrier motion shall be instantly reversible and shall be capable of raising the barrier from the lowered position to the raised position within 8 seconds during normal use, and within 2 seconds during an emergency. Also, the barrier shall be capable of being closed from the raised position to the lowered position in not more than 3 seconds. Retractable barrier shall withstand a K4 **OR** K8 **OR** K12, **as directed**, impact condition with Performance Level of L1.0 **OR** L2.0 **OR** L3.0, **as directed**. Portable retractable barrier, when impacted by a 15,000 pound (6,800 kg) vehicle at impact speed of 50 mph (80 km/hour) shall disable the vehicle and allow it to travel no more than 50 feet (15.2 m) after impact. Portable power assisted retractable barriers shall be equipped with on and off ramps for smooth transition between surfaces when the barrier extends more than 5/8 inch (16 mm) above the roadway surface.
    - a. Failure Modes of Operation: The system shall be designed to prevent lowering of the barrier in the event of hydraulic, electric, or mechanical failure. A manual pump shall be included for operation of hydraulic and/or mechanical barriers without power.
    - b. Electric Motors: Unless otherwise indicated, electric motors shall have drip-proof **OR** totally enclosed, **as directed**, enclosures.
    - c. System: The system shall be designed to maintain the barriers in the raised position, without inspection, for periods of time of up to 1 week. If a hydraulic system is used, it shall be equipped with pressure relief valves to prevent overpressure.
    - d. Hydraulic Power Unit: The hydraulic power unit shall contain synthetic biodegradable hydraulic fluid which maintains its viscosity operating range, even at constant heaviest use rate, for an ambient temperature range of 20 to 150 degrees F (minus 7 to plus 66 degrees C). A hydraulic fluid heater shall be provided so that the viscosity remains within its operating range if ambient temperatures below 20 degrees F (minus 7 degrees C) are expected. Flexible hydraulic lines shall be used for the connection of the hydraulic power unit to the barrier. Flexible hydraulic line working pressures shall exceed the maximum system relief pressure; flexible hydraulic lines shall be in accordance with SAE J517.
  2. Manual Retractable Portable Barriers: The manual barrier shall be capable of being raised and lowered by manual means such as levers or hydraulics requiring a maximum 60 pounds (267 N) of force. The manual mechanism shall contain a locking pin which accepts a padlock for securing the barrier when it is in the "UP" position and shall also be capable of being locked in the





"DOWN" position. Retractable barrier shall withstand a K4 **OR** K8 **OR** K12, **as directed**, impact condition with Performance Level of L1.0 **OR** L2.0 **OR** L3.0, **as directed**

- F. Portable Crash Beam: The portable crash beam shall be an above-grade assembly that, in the "DOWN" position, shall present a visible obstacle to approaching vehicles. The height of the barrier shall be a minimum of 30 inches (750 mm) as measured from the roadway surface to the centerline of the crash beam. The crash beam shall be capable of blocking a minimum road width of 120 inches (3.0 m). The crash beam end shall contain a locking pin with padlock acceptance for securing the crash beam when it is in the "DOWN" position. Crash beam shall withstand a 15,000 pound (6804 kg) vehicle traveling at 30 mph (48 km/hour), with maximum vehicle penetration and/or barrier deflection of 20 feet (6 m).
1. Powered Portable Crash Beam: The portable crash beam shall be operated by means of a hydraulic power system. The crash beam shall be capable of being raised or lowered within an 8 to 15 second time range.
    - a. Failure Mode of Operation: A disconnect system for the portable crash beam shall be provided to allow manual operation of the barrier in the event of an electrical or mechanical failure.
    - b. Hydraulic Power Unit: The hydraulic power unit shall contain synthetic biodegradable hydraulic fluid which maintains its viscosity operating range, even at constant heaviest use rate, for an ambient temperature range of 20 to 150 degrees F (minus 7 to plus 66 degrees C). A hydraulic fluid heater shall be provided so that the viscosity remains within its operating range if ambient temperatures below 20 degrees F (minus 7 degrees C) are expected. Flexible hydraulic lines shall be used for the connection of the hydraulic power unit to the barrier. Flexible hydraulic line working pressures shall exceed the maximum system relief pressure; flexible hydraulic lines shall be in accordance with SAE J517.
    - c. Hydraulic Power Unit Enclosure: A weather resistant enclosure shall be provided to enclose the hydraulic power unit. The enclosure shall be designed for easy removal of the hydraulic power unit components and other accessories without complete removal of the enclosure. An access door with hinges and an inside and outside operable lockable (exterior) door latch shall be provided. Equipment within the enclosure shall be placed and configured so that all periodic maintenance can be performed through the access door without removal of the equipment. The enclosure shall be equipped with weatherproof louver vents appropriately sized and located to dissipate internal heat generation.
  2. Manual Portable Crash Beam: The crash beam shall be manually operated by means of a counter balanced system requiring approximately 60 pounds (267 N) of force.
- G. Electrical Work: Motors, manual or automatic motor control equipment except where installed in motor control centers and protective or signal devices required for the operation specified herein shall be provided in accordance with Division 22. All field wiring for loop detectors, communication lines, and power circuits shall have surge protection. Any wiring required for the operation specified herein, but not shown on the electrical plans, shall be provided under this section in accordance with Division 22.
- H. Control Panel: A control panel and control circuit shall be provided to interface between all barrier control stations and the power unit. A control panel shall be provided for the inbound lanes and a separate one for the outbound lanes where the barriers are located. The control station is defined as the main control panel and the remote control panel as shown. The control circuit shall contain all relays, timers, and other devices or an industrial programmable controller programmed as necessary for the barrier operation. The control panel shall allow direct interface with auxiliary equipment such as card readers, remote switches, loop detectors, infrared sensors, and sliding **OR** swinging, **as directed**, gate limit switches. Loop controllers shall not cause an automatic barrier raise following power loss or restoration. The enclosure shall be as indicated on the drawings. All device interconnect lines shall be run to terminal strips.
1. Voltage: The control circuit shall operate from a 120 volt 60 **OR** 50, **as directed**, Hz supply. The control circuit voltage shall be 12 **OR** 24, **as directed**, ac **OR** dc, **as directed**, for all external control panels.



2. Main Control Panel: A main control panel shall be supplied to control barrier function. This panel shall have a key-lockable main switch with main power "ON" and panel "ON" lights. Buttons to raise and lower each barrier **OR** set of barriers, **as directed**, shall be provided. Barrier "UP" and "DOWN" indicator lights shall be included for each barrier **OR** set of barriers, **as directed**. An emergency fast operate circuit (EFO) shall be operated from a push button larger than the normal controls and have a flip safety cover installed over the push button or toggle switch. The EFO shall also be furnished with an EFO-active light and reset button. The main control panel shall have a key lockable switch to arm or disable the remote control panel. An indicator light shall show if the remote control panel is enabled.
3. Remote Control Panel: A remote control panel, one panel for the inbound lane(s) and a separate panel for the outbound lane(s), shall have a panel "ON" light that is lit when enabled by a key lockable switch on the main control panel. Buttons to raise and lower each barrier shall be provided. Barrier "UP" and "DOWN" indicator lights shall be included for each barrier. The EFO shall be operated from a push button larger than the normal controls and have a flip safety cover installed over the push button or toggle switch. Activation of either EFO will operate all barriers. The EFO shall be interconnected with an EFO-active light. When the remote control panel EFO is pushed, operation of the barrier will not be possible from this panel until reset at the main control panel.

I. Miscellaneous Equipment

1. Safety Equipment

- a. Barrier Systems Sensors: The sensors shall be compatible with the barrier controller and shall function as part of a complete barrier control system. The barrier system sensors shall consist of the following:
  - 1) Suppression Loops - Two inductive loops whose outputs shall be used to prevent barriers raising when a vehicle is within a prescribed distance of the barrier. The output of the loops shall override all barrier rise signals until one second after a vehicle clears the suppression loop.
  - 2) Speed Loops - Two inductive loops whose output shall be used to signal the barrier controller of a vehicle approaching at a speed greater than the posted speed (25 mph (11.2 m/sec) or less (recommended)). The speed loops shall cause the barrier control panel to annunciate a warning sound alerting the guard to make a decision as to whether the barrier should be raised or not.
  - 3) Wrong Way Loops - Two inductive loops whose output shall be used to signal the barrier control panel to enunciate a warning sound if a vehicle is attempting to enter the facility through the exit lane. The warning sound will alert the guard to make a decision as to whether the barrier should be raised or not.
- b. Traffic Lights: Red/yellow 8 inch (200 mm) traffic lights shall be supplied for each entrance and exit to alert motorists of the barrier position. Traffic lights are not required for manual barriers. The yellow flashing light shall indicate that the barrier is fully open. All other positions shall cause the light to show red. Brackets shall be supplied to allow the light to be mounted a minimum 4.5 feet (1.4 m) above the roadway pavement on a 3.5 inch (90 mm) outside diameter metal post or mounted directly on the crash gate.
2. Warning Annunciator: Provide a warning annunciator built into the barrier control panel that produces a pulsing audible sound when the speed loop detects a vehicle entering the facility with excess speed. Provide a warning annunciator built into the barrier control panel that produces a continuous sound whenever a wrong way loop detects a vehicle entering from the exit. The warning annunciator shall sound until a warning annunciator silence reset button is pressed.
3. Heater: A waterproof barrier heater with a thermostat control and NEMA 4 junction box connection point shall be provided for de-icing and snow melting. The heater shall provide barrier operation to an ambient temperature of minus 40 degrees F (minus 40 degrees C). For retractable bollards, a 250-watt heater shall be provided for each bollard.
4. Signage: Signage shall read "Axle Weight Limit 9 Tons" and shall conform to FHWA SA-89-006 sign (R12.2).



5. Vertical Arm Gates (Traffic Arms): Vertical arm gates shall have an opening and closing time of less than or equal to 5 seconds. The gates shall be capable of 500 duty cycles per hour as a minimum. Gate shall operate the arm through 90 degrees. Gate operators shall be supplied with single phase 120 volt motors. Each entry lane shall be provided with a vertical arm gate. Each gate shall be capable of being operated from a remote open-close push button station in each guard booth and the gatehouse for the respective entry lane. Gates shall have a hand-crank, or other means, which will allow manual operation during power failures. Gate arms shall be constructed out of wood, steel, fiberglass, or aluminum, as specified by the manufacturer for the given lengths as shown on the drawings. Gate arms shall be covered with 16 inch (406 mm) wide reflectorized red and white sheeting. Each gate shall be furnished with a spare gate arm. Gate operator cabinets shall be constructed of galvanized steel, or aluminum and shall be painted manufacturers standard color as approved. Each gate operator shall be provided with an obstruction detector that will automatically reverse the gate motor when an obstruction is detected. The obstruction detector shall be any of the following 3 types: An electronic loop vehicle detector buried in the road, a photocell electric eye mounted on the gate operator, or a safety strip mounted on the lower edge of the arm. The detector system shall be automatically deactivated when the arm reaches the fully lowered position. Slab size and anchorage for gate operator shall be per manufacturer requirements.
  6. Vehicle Barrier Vertical Arm Gate (Traffic Arm): A traffic arm, as a separate piece of equipment, will be included with each non-portable active vehicle barrier as part of the barrier safety operating system. This traffic arm shall automatically deploy (close) when the emergency up button is activated and open when the vehicle barrier is reset. This traffic arm will not be equipped with an automatic obstruction detector.
- J. Finish: Surfaces shall be painted in accordance with requirements of Division 09 Section(s) "Exterior Painting" OR "Interior Painting", as applicable. The roadway plate shall have a nonskid surface painted white with reflective red 4 **OR** 6, **as directed**, inch (100 **OR** 150, **as directed**, mm) wide red reflective stripes 4 inches (100 mm) apart. The barrier front shall be painted white and have 4 **OR** 6, **as directed**, inch (100 **OR** 150, **as directed**, mm) wide reflective red stripes 4 inches (100 mm) apart. The diagonal striping should point down and outward from the center of the device. Bollards shall be painted white with 2 **OR** 3, **as directed**, inch (50 **OR** 75, **as directed**, mm) wide reflective red diagonal stripes. The barrier crash gate shall be painted as specified by purchaser and the crash beam shall be painted white with 3 inch (75 mm) wide reflective red diagonal stripes.
- K. Concrete: The concrete shall conform to Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
- L. Welding: Welding shall be in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- M. Pavement: After placement of the vehicle barrier, the pavement sections shall be replaced to match the section and depth of the surrounding pavement. Pavement shall be warped to match the elevations of existing pavement. Positive surface drainage, away from the vehicle barrier, shall be provided by pavement slope.
- ### 1.3 EXECUTION
- A. Installation: Installation shall be in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and in the presence of a representative of the manufacturer. Manufacturer's representative shall be experienced in the installation, adjustment, and operation of the equipment provided. The representative shall also be present during adjustment and testing of the equipment.
- B. Hydraulic Lines: Buried hydraulic lines shall be placed in polyvinyl chloride (PVC) sleeves. Positive drainage shall be provided from the hydraulic power unit to the barrier for drainage of condensation within the PVC sleeve.



- C. Pit Drainage: A drain connection and oil/water separator, **as directed**, shall be provided in each barrier that requires pit/vault type construction. Hookups between the storm drains shall be made. The self-priming sump pump shall have the capacity to remove minimum 150 gallons per minute (34 cubic meters per hour).
- D. Electrical: All control power wiring requiring compression terminals shall use ring-style terminals. Terminals and compression tools shall conform to UL 486A. Roundhead screws and lockwashers shall be used to provide vibration-resistant connections. Connections between any printed circuit cards and the chassis shall be made with screw connections or other locking means to prevent shock or vibration separation of the card from its chassis. The electrical power supply breaker for the hydraulic power unit shall be capable of being locked in the power on and power off positions.
- E. Field Testing: Upon completion of construction, a field test shall be performed for each vehicle barrier. The test shall include raising and lowering the barrier, both electrically and manually, through its complete range of operation. Each vehicle barrier shall then be continuously cycled for not less than 30 minutes to test for heat build-up in the hydraulic system. The Owner shall be notified at least 7 days prior to the beginning of the field test. The Contractor shall furnish all equipment and make all necessary corrections and adjustments prior to tests witnessed by the Owner. Any conditions that interfere with the proper operation of the barrier disclosed by the test shall be corrected at no additional cost to the Owner. Adjustments and repairs shall be done by the Contractor under the direction of the Owner. After adjustments are made to assure correct functioning of components, applicable tests shall be completed.
- F. Field Training: A field training course shall be provided for designated operating staff members. Training shall be provided for a total period of not less than 8 hours (for electrical/hydraulic operated units) or 1 hour (for manually operated units) of normal working time and shall start after the system is functionally complete but prior to final acceptance tests. Field training shall cover all of the items contained in the operating and maintenance instructions.

END OF SECTION 34 71 13 16



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
34 71 13 16	34 71 13 13	Beam-Type Guardrail
34 71 13 26	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
34 71 13 26	34 71 13 13	Beam-Type Guardrail
34 71 16 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
34 71 16 00	34 71 13 16	Active Vehicle Barriers
34 71 16 00	34 71 13 13	Beam-Type Guardrail
34 71 19 16	32 17 13 23	Parking Control Equipment
34 71 19 16	32 17 13 23a	Prefabricated Control Booths
34 82 23 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
34 82 26 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
35 05 70 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

---



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**





---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
40 05 23 43	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
40 05 23 43	33 46 53 00	Relief Wells
40 05 23 43	33 11 13 00	Monitoring Wells
40 05 23 43	22 11 23 23	Water Supply Wells
40 05 23 43	22 05 76 00	Sanitary Sewerage
40 05 23 43	22 11 16 00	Common Work Results for Fire Suppression
40 05 23 43	22 11 16 00a	Common Work Results for Plumbing
40 05 23 43	22 11 16 00b	Common Work Results for HVAC



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



43 - Process Gas and Liquid Handling, Purification, and Storage  
Equipment

---

<b>Task</b>	<b>Specification</b>	<b>Specification Description</b>
43 23 78 31	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
43 24 41 23	22 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
43 42 41 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required



---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

Task	Specification(s)
01 22 16 00	01 22 16 00
01 22 20 00	01 22 16 00
01 22 23 00	01 22 16 00
01 51 13 00	01 51 13 00, 01 51 13 00a
01 51 26 00	01 51 13 00
01 52 13 00	01 52 13 00, 01 22 16 00
01 52 19 00	01 22 16 00, 01 52 13 00
01 53 16 00	01 22 16 00
01 54 23 00	01 54 23 00, 01 54 23 00a, 01 22 16 00
01 54 26 00	01 22 16 00
01 55 23 00	01 22 16 00
01 55 26 00	01 22 16 00
01 56 16 00	01 22 16 00
01 56 26 00	01 56 26 00, 01 56 26 00a, 01 22 16 00
01 56 29 00	01 22 16 00
01 56 33 00	01 22 16 00
01 56 39 00	01 22 16 00
01 57 13 00	01 56 26 00
01 58 13 00	01 22 16 00
01 66 19 00	01 22 16 00
01 71 13 00	01 22 16 00
01 71 23 16	01 71 23 16
01 74 16 00	01 22 16 00
01 74 19 00	01 74 19 00, 01 22 16 00
02 32 13 00	02 32 13 00, 01 22 16 00
02 41 13 13	02 41 13 13, 02 41 13 13a
02 41 19 13	02 41 19 13, 01 71 23 16, 02 41 13 13, 02 41 13 13a
02 43 13 13	01 22 16 00
02 61 00 00	02 61 00 00
02 61 13 00	02 61 13 00, 02 61 13 00a, 02 61 13 00b, 02 41 13 13, 02 61 00 00
02 61 26 00	02 61 26 00, 02 61 26 00a
02 62 16 00	01 22 16 00
02 65 00 00	02 41 13 13, 02 61 00 00, 02 61 13 00, 02 61 13 00a, 02 61 13 00b
02 81 00 00	02 61 00 00, 02 61 26 00
02 82 16 00	02 82 16 00
02 82 33 00	02 82 33 00, 01 22 16 00, 02 61 26 00, 02 61 26 00a, 02 82 16 00
02 83 19 13	02 83 19 13, 02 83 19 13a, 02 83 19 13b, 02 83 19 13c
02 83 33 13	02 83 19 13, 02 83 19 13a, 02 83 19 13b, 02 83 19 13c
02 86 00 00	02 41 13 13, 02 61 00 00, 02 61 13 00, 02 61 13 00a, 02 61 13 00b, 02 61 26 00
02 87 13 33	02 87 13 33
02 87 16 13	02 87 16 13
02 89 00 00	01 22 16 00, 02 83 19 13, 02 83 19 13a, 02 83 19 13b, 02 83 19 13c
03 01 30 71	03 01 30 71, 01 22 16 00
03 05 13 00	03 05 13 00
03 11 13 00	01 22 16 00, 03 05 13 00
03 11 16 13	03 11 16 13, 03 11 16 13a, 03 05 13 00
03 11 23 00	01 22 16 00, 03 05 13 00
03 15 13 13	03 05 13 00
03 15 13 16	03 05 13 00
03 15 16 00	03 05 13 00
03 15 19 00	05 50 00 00
03 21 11 00	03 05 13 00
03 21 16 00	03 05 13 00
03 22 11 00	03 05 13 00

Task	Specification(s)
03 22 13 00	03 05 13 00
03 22 16 00	03 05 13 00
03 30 53 00	03 05 13 00
03 31 13 00	03 31 13 00, 03 31 13 00a, 03 31 13 00b, 03 31 13 00c, 03 31 13 00d, 03 31 13 00e, 03 31 13 00f, 03 05 13 00
03 35 13 00	03 05 13 00
03 35 16 00	03 05 13 00
03 35 19 00	03 05 13 00
03 35 23 00	03 35 23 00, 03 05 13 00
03 35 26 00	03 05 13 00
03 35 29 00	03 05 13 00, 03 11 16 13a
03 35 33 00	03 05 13 00
03 35 63 00	03 05 13 00
03 35 66 00	03 05 13 00
03 35 83 00	03 05 13 00
03 37 13 00	03 37 13 00, 03 37 13 00a
03 37 16 00	03 05 13 00, 03 11 16 13a
03 39 13 00	03 11 16 13a
03 39 23 23	03 05 13 00
03 41 16 00	03 41 16 00, 03 41 16 00a
03 41 19 00	03 41 16 00
03 41 23 00	03 41 23 00, 03 41 16 00
03 41 26 00	03 41 26 00, 03 41 16 00
03 41 33 00	03 41 16 00
03 48 16 00	03 41 23 00
03 48 21 00	03 41 23 00
03 48 22 00	03 41 23 00, 03 37 13 00a
03 48 24 00	03 41 23 00
03 48 29 00	03 41 16 00, 03 41 23 00
03 48 46 00	03 41 16 00, 03 41 23 00
03 48 49 00	03 41 16 00, 03 41 23 00
03 53 14 00	03 53 14 00
03 53 19 00	03 53 14 00
03 54 16 00	03 54 16 00
03 61 16 00	01 22 16 00
03 62 13 00	03 41 16 00
03 62 16 00	03 41 16 00
03 64 23 00	03 41 16 00
03 64 26 00	01 22 16 00
05 05 19 00	05 50 00 00
05 05 23 00	05 05 23 00, 05 50 00 00
05 12 23 00	05 12 23 00, 05 05 23 00, 05 50 00 00
05 14 13 00	05 14 13 00, 01 22 16 00
05 15 16 00	05 15 16 00, 05 50 00 00
05 15 19 00	05 15 16 00
05 41 00 00	05 12 23 00
05 42 13 00	05 12 23 00
05 43 00 00	01 22 16 00, 05 12 23 00, 05 50 00 00
05 50 00 00	05 50 00 00
05 51 13 00	05 51 13 00, 05 51 13 00a, 05 50 00 00
05 51 19 00	05 50 00 00, 05 51 13 00, 05 51 13 00a
05 51 33 13	05 50 00 00, 05 52 13 00
05 51 33 16	05 50 00 00

Task	Specification(s)
05 51 33 23	05 50 00 00, 05 52 13 00
05 52 13 00	05 52 13 00, 05 50 00 00
05 53 13 00	05 53 13 00, 01 22 16 00, 05 50 00 00
05 54 00 00	05 50 00 00
05 55 13 00	05 50 00 00, 05 51 13 00, 05 51 13 00a
05 55 16 00	05 50 00 00, 05 51 13 00, 05 51 13 00a
05 56 00 00	05 50 00 00
05 58 16 00	05 58 16 00, 05 15 16 00
05 59 65 00	01 22 16 00, 05 15 16 00
07 11 13 00	07 11 13 00, 07 14 16 00
07 11 19 00	07 11 19 00
07 13 13 00	07 13 13 00, 07 11 13 00
07 13 53 00	07 13 53 00, 07 13 53 00a
07 14 13 00	07 14 13 00
07 14 16 00	07 14 16 00
07 16 13 00	07 16 13 00
07 16 16 00	07 16 16 00
07 16 19 00	07 16 19 00
07 19 13 00	07 19 13 00
07 19 16 00	07 19 13 00
09 91 13 00	09 91 13 00, 09 91 13 00a, 01 22 16 00
09 91 33 00	09 91 33 00, 09 91 13 00a
09 91 43 00	03 01 30 71
09 96 00 00	09 96 00 00
09 96 53 00	09 91 13 00
09 96 56 00	09 96 56 00, 09 96 00 00
09 96 66 00	09 96 66 00
09 97 13 23	09 96 00 00
09 97 13 24	09 96 00 00
09 97 26 13	09 96 00 00
09 97 63 00	09 96 00 00
10 14 53 11	10 14 53 11
10 81 13 00	10 81 13 00
11 68 13 00	11 68 13 00, 11 68 13 00a
11 68 23 13	11 68 23 13
11 82 19 00	11 82 19 00
11 82 26 00	11 82 26 00, 11 82 26 00a
13 47 13 13	13 47 13 13
22 05 23 00	22 05 23 00, 22 05 23 00a, 01 22 16 00
22 05 76 00	22 05 76 00, 22 05 76 00a
22 07 19 00	22 07 19 00, 22 07 19 00a
22 11 16 00	22 11 16 00, 22 11 16 00a, 22 11 16 00b, 22 11 16 00c, 22 11 16 00d, 22 11 16 00e, 22 11 16 00f, 22 11 16 00g, 22 11 16 00h, 22 11 16 00i, 22 11 16 00j, 22 11 16 00k, 22 11 16 00l
22 11 19 00	22 11 19 00, 01 22 16 00, 22 05 23 00, 22 05 23 00a, 22 11 16 00, 22 11 16 00a, 22 11 16 00b, 22 11 16 00g
22 11 23 13	22 11 23 13, 22 11 23 13a
22 11 23 23	22 11 23 23, 22 11 23 23a, 22 05 23 00
22 12 19 00	22 12 19 00, 22 12 19 00a
22 12 23 13	22 12 23 13, 22 12 23 13a
22 12 23 26	22 12 23 26, 22 12 23 26a, 22 05 23 00
22 13 16 00	22 05 23 00, 22 11 23 23, 22 05 76 00, 22 11 16 00, 22 11 16 00a, 22 11 16 00b, 22 11 16 00d, 22 11 16 00e
22 13 19 00	22 13 19 00

Task	Specification(s)
22 13 19 13	22 13 19 00
22 13 19 26	22 13 19 26, 22 13 19 00
22 13 19 33	22 13 19 33, 22 13 19 33a, 22 05 23 00, 22 05 76 00, 22 13 19 00
22 13 19 36	22 13 19 00
22 13 23 00	22 13 19 26
22 13 29 13	22 13 29 13, 22 13 29 13a, 22 13 29 13b
22 13 29 16	22 13 29 13b
22 13 29 33	01 22 16 00
22 66 53 00	22 11 16 00, 22 11 16 00a, 22 11 16 00b, 22 11 16 00d, 22 11 16 00i
26 01 20 91	01 51 13 00
26 01 30 91	01 22 16 00
26 01 50 51	26 01 50 51, 26 01 50 51a, 26 01 50 51b, 01 22 16 00
26 01 50 52	26 01 50 51, 26 01 50 51a, 26 01 50 51b
26 01 50 53	26 01 50 51, 26 01 50 51a, 26 01 50 51b
26 05 00 00	26 05 00 00
26 05 13 16	26 05 13 16, 26 05 13 16a, 26 05 13 16b
26 05 19 16	26 05 19 16, 26 05 19 16a, 26 05 19 16b, 26 05 19 16c, 26 05 19 16d, 26 05 19 16e, 26 05 19 16f, 01 22 16 00, 26 05 00 00, 01 51 13 00, 26 05 13 16, 26 05 13 16a, 26 05 13 16b
26 05 23 00	26 05 19 16b
26 05 26 00	26 05 26 00, 26 05 26 00a, 26 05 26 00b, 01 22 16 00
26 05 29 00	26 05 29 00, 26 05 29 00a, 01 22 16 00, 05 12 23 00, 05 50 00 00
26 05 33 13	26 05 00 00, 26 05 19 16, 26 05 19 16a, 01 51 13 00, 26 05 13 16, 26 05 19 16c, 26 05 19 16d, 26 05 19 16e, 26 05 19 16f
26 05 33 16	26 05 33 16, 26 05 33 16a, 01 51 13 00
26 05 43 00	26 05 00 00, 26 05 19 16, 26 05 19 16a, 26 05 13 16, 26 05 19 16c, 26 05 19 16d, 26 05 19 16e, 26 05 19 16f
26 05 46 00	26 05 26 00b
26 05 53 00	26 05 53 00, 01 51 13 00
26 05 83 00	01 51 13 00, 26 05 13 16, 26 05 13 16a, 26 05 13 16b
26 09 23 00	26 09 23 00, 26 09 23 00a, 26 09 23 00b, 26 09 23 00c, 26 09 23 00d, 26 09 23 00e, 26 01 50 51, 26 01 50 51a, 26 01 50 51b
26 11 13 00	26 11 13 00
26 11 16 00	26 11 16 00, 26 11 13 00
26 12 13 00	26 12 13 00, 26 12 13 00a, 26 05 26 00b
26 12 16 00	26 12 13 00, 26 12 13 00a
26 12 19 00	26 12 13 00, 26 12 13 00a
26 13 16 00	26 11 13 00
26 13 19 00	26 11 13 00
26 18 36 00	26 11 16 00
26 21 13 00	26 05 13 16, 26 05 13 16a, 26 05 13 16b, 26 05 26 00b
26 22 13 00	26 12 13 00, 26 05 26 00b, 26 12 13 00a
26 24 13 00	26 24 13 00, 26 24 13 00a, 26 24 13 00b
26 24 16 00	01 51 13 00a
26 24 19 00	26 24 19 00, 26 24 19 00a, 01 22 16 00, 26 09 23 00b, 26 11 16 00, 26 09 23 00c
26 25 00 00	26 25 00 00, 01 51 13 00
26 27 13 00	26 05 26 00b
26 27 16 00	01 22 16 00, 01 51 13 00, 26 05 33 16, 26 09 23 00b, 26 09 23 00c
26 27 23 00	26 05 33 16a
26 27 26 00	01 22 16 00, 01 51 13 00, 26 05 33 16, 26 05 33 16a, 26 09 23 00b, 26 24 19 00
26 27 33 00	26 24 19 00a
26 27 73 00	26 05 33 16a
26 28 13 00	26 28 13 00, 26 11 16 00
26 28 16 00	01 51 13 00



Task	Specification(s)
26 29 13 13	01 22 16 00, 01 51 13 00, 26 24 19 00
26 29 23 00	26 29 23 00
26 31 00 00	26 31 00 00, 01 22 16 00
26 32 13 13	26 32 13 13
26 32 13 19	26 32 13 13
26 32 13 26	26 32 13 13
26 32 29 00	26 32 13 13
26 33 43 00	26 33 43 00, 26 33 43 00a, 26 33 43 00b
26 33 53 00	26 33 53 00, 26 33 43 00
26 35 33 00	26 35 33 00, 26 09 23 00b
26 35 53 00	26 32 13 13
26 36 13 00	26 36 13 00, 26 24 13 00a
26 36 23 00	26 24 13 00a, 26 36 13 00
26 43 13 00	26 43 13 00
26 53 00 00	26 01 50 51a
26 55 68 00	26 55 68 00
26 56 13 00	01 22 16 00, 26 05 26 00b, 26 01 50 51b
26 56 16 00	26 01 50 51b
26 56 23 00	01 22 16 00, 26 05 26 00b, 26 01 50 51a, 26 01 50 51b
26 56 26 00	01 22 16 00, 26 01 50 51b
26 56 33 00	26 01 50 51a, 26 01 50 51b
26 56 36 00	26 01 50 51b
27 05 26 00	27 05 26 00
27 11 16 00	02 61 13 00, 27 05 26 00
27 11 19 00	27 11 19 00, 02 61 13 00, 27 05 26 00
27 11 23 00	27 05 26 00
27 14 13 13	26 05 13 16, 26 05 13 16a, 26 05 13 16b, 27 05 26 00
27 14 13 16	26 05 13 16, 26 05 13 16a, 26 05 19 16b, 26 05 13 16b
27 14 23 13	27 11 19 00
27 14 33 16	26 05 13 16, 26 05 13 16a, 26 05 19 16b, 26 05 13 16b
27 14 43 00	27 05 26 00
27 14 53 00	27 11 19 00
27 16 16 00	27 11 19 00
27 16 19 00	26 05 13 16, 27 11 19 00
27 21 16 00	27 11 19 00, 27 05 26 00
27 31 13 00	02 61 13 00, 27 05 26 00
27 32 19 00	02 61 13 00, 26 05 33 16a, 27 05 26 00
27 32 26 00	02 61 13 00, 27 05 26 00
27 51 23 20	27 05 26 00, 26 33 43 00b
27 51 33 00	27 51 33 00, 26 33 43 00b
27 53 13 00	27 53 13 00
28 42 00 00	22 12 23 26
28 46 00 00	28 46 00 00
28 46 21 33	28 46 21 33, 28 46 21 33a
31 01 20 00	31 01 20 00
31 05 13 00	31 05 13 00, 31 01 20 00
31 05 16 00	31 01 20 00, 31 05 13 00
31 11 00 00	31 11 00 00
31 13 13 00	31 11 00 00
31 13 16 00	31 13 16 00, 31 11 00 00
31 23 16 13	31 23 16 13, 31 01 20 00
31 23 16 26	31 23 16 26, 31 01 20 00
31 23 16 33	31 01 20 00
31 23 16 36	31 23 16 13, 31 01 20 00

Task	Specification(s)
31 23 16 43	01 22 16 00, 31 23 16 13, 31 01 20 00
31 23 19 00	31 23 19 00, 22 05 23 00
31 23 23 23	31 01 20 00
31 23 23 33	31 23 16 13, 31 01 20 00
31 24 13 00	31 24 13 00, 31 01 20 00, 31 23 16 26
31 25 14 13	31 25 14 13, 01 56 26 00, 01 56 26 00a
31 25 14 16	01 22 16 00, 01 56 26 00, 31 25 14 13, 01 56 26 00a
31 25 14 23	31 25 14 23, 31 25 14 23a, 01 56 26 00, 31 25 14 13, 01 56 26 00a, 03 31 13 00, 03 31 13 00a
31 25 14 26	31 25 14 26, 01 56 26 00, 01 56 26 00a
31 31 16 13	31 31 16 13
31 31 19 13	31 31 19 13
31 32 13 16	31 32 13 16
31 32 13 19	31 32 13 16
31 32 13 29	31 32 13 16
31 32 19 13	31 32 13 16, 31 25 14 13
31 32 19 16	31 32 19 16, 31 32 19 16a, 22 05 23 00, 31 32 13 16, 31 25 14 13
31 36 13 00	31 36 13 00
31 37 00 00	31 37 00 00, 31 32 19 16
31 41 13 00	31 41 13 00
31 41 16 13	31 23 16 13, 31 41 13 00
31 45 13 00	31 45 13 00
31 62 23 13	31 62 23 13
31 64 13 00	31 41 13 00
31 68 13 00	31 41 13 00
32 01 11 53	32 01 11 53, 32 01 11 53a, 03 31 13 00, 03 31 13 00b
32 01 13 61	32 01 13 61, 32 01 11 53, 31 25 14 23a
32 01 16 71	32 01 16 71, 32 01 16 71a
32 01 16 73	32 01 11 53, 32 01 16 71a
32 01 16 74	32 01 16 74, 32 01 16 74a, 32 01 11 53, 32 01 16 71a
32 01 17 61	32 01 11 53, 32 01 13 61, 31 25 14 23a
32 01 17 63	32 01 11 53
32 01 26 71	32 01 16 71
32 01 90 13	31 13 16 00
32 01 90 19	01 22 16 00
32 01 90 23	31 13 16 00
32 01 90 26	31 13 16 00
32 01 90 36	31 13 16 00, 31 31 19 13
32 01 90 39	31 13 16 00
32 01 90 43	31 13 16 00
32 01 90 46	31 13 16 00
32 01 90 53	31 13 16 00
32 11 16 16	32 11 16 16, 32 11 16 16a, 32 11 16 16b
32 11 23 16	32 11 16 16, 32 11 16 16a, 32 11 16 16b
32 12 13 13	32 12 13 13, 32 12 13 13a, 32 01 11 53
32 12 13 19	32 01 11 53, 32 12 13 13, 32 12 13 13a
32 12 16 13	32 01 11 53, 32 12 13 13, 32 12 13 13a
32 12 16 19	32 12 13 13, 32 12 13 13a
32 12 16 39	31 32 13 16, 31 25 14 13
32 12 16 43	32 01 11 53, 32 01 13 61, 31 25 14 23a
32 12 33 00	32 01 11 53, 32 12 13 13, 32 12 13 13a
32 12 36 16	32 01 11 53, 32 01 13 61, 31 25 14 23a
32 12 73 00	03 31 13 00
32 13 13 33	03 31 13 00, 03 31 13 00a, 03 31 13 00b, 03 31 13 00c, 03 31 13 00d, 03 31 13 00e,

Task	Specification(s)
	03 31 13 00f
32 13 16 13	03 31 13 00
32 13 43 00	03 31 13 00
32 13 73 13	32 01 11 53, 32 01 13 61, 03 31 13 00b, 31 25 14 23a
32 13 73 16	32 01 11 53, 32 01 13 61, 31 25 14 23a
32 13 73 19	32 01 11 53, 31 25 14 23a
32 14 09 00	32 14 09 00
32 14 11 00	32 14 11 00, 32 14 11 00a, 32 14 11 00b, 03 31 13 00, 31 25 14 23
32 14 13 16	03 31 13 00
32 14 13 19	03 31 13 00
32 14 16 00	03 31 13 00, 32 14 11 00, 32 14 11 00a, 32 14 11 00b, 31 25 14 23
32 14 33 00	32 14 33 00, 32 14 33 00a
32 14 40 00	01 22 16 00, 03 31 13 00
32 15 40 00	32 11 16 16, 32 11 16 16a, 32 11 16 16b
32 16 13 13	32 16 13 13, 01 22 16 00, 03 31 13 00
32 16 13 14	03 31 13 00, 32 16 13 13
32 16 13 16	01 22 16 00, 03 31 13 00, 32 16 13 13
32 16 13 19	03 31 13 00, 32 14 11 00, 32 14 11 00a, 32 14 11 00b, 31 25 14 23
32 16 13 23	03 31 13 00, 32 16 13 13
32 16 13 33	03 31 13 00, 32 16 13 13
32 16 13 43	32 14 33 00
32 16 23 00	03 31 13 00, 32 14 11 00, 32 14 11 00a, 32 14 11 00b, 31 25 14 23
32 16 43 00	32 01 11 53
32 17 13 23	32 17 13 23, 32 17 13 23a
32 17 13 26	32 17 13 23, 32 17 13 23a
32 17 16 00	32 01 11 53
32 17 23 13	32 17 23 13, 32 01 11 53, 03 31 13 00, 32 01 11 53a
32 17 23 23	32 01 11 53, 03 31 13 00, 32 01 11 53a
32 17 23 33	32 01 11 53, 03 31 13 00, 32 01 11 53a
32 17 26 00	32 17 26 00
32 18 16 13	32 18 16 13, 32 18 16 13a, 32 17 23 13, 11 68 13 00, 11 68 13 00a
32 18 23 13	32 18 23 13, 11 68 23 13
32 18 23 23	11 68 23 13, 32 18 23 13
32 18 23 29	32 18 23 29, 32 18 23 29a, 32 17 23 13, 11 68 23 13
32 18 23 33	32 18 23 29, 32 18 23 29a, 32 17 23 13, 32 18 16 13a
32 18 23 39	32 18 23 29, 32 18 23 29a, 32 17 23 13, 32 18 16 13a
32 18 23 53	32 17 23 13, 11 68 23 13
32 18 23 56	32 18 23 29, 32 18 23 29a, 32 17 23 13, 11 68 23 13
32 18 23 61	32 18 23 29, 32 18 23 29a, 32 17 23 13
32 31 11 00	32 31 11 00
32 31 13 13	32 31 13 13, 01 22 16 00, 31 13 16 00, 32 31 11 00
32 31 19 00	32 31 19 00, 01 22 16 00, 32 31 13 13
32 31 23 00	01 22 16 00
32 31 29 00	32 31 29 00, 01 22 16 00
32 32 13 00	32 32 13 00
32 32 16 00	03 41 16 00
32 32 23 13	32 32 13 00
32 32 26 00	32 32 13 00
32 32 29 00	32 32 13 00
32 32 53 00	32 32 13 00
32 35 16 00	32 35 16 00
32 39 23 00	32 39 23 00
32 84 00 00	32 84 00 00
32 84 13 00	32 84 13 00, 32 84 00 00

Task	Specification(s)
32 84 23 00	01 22 16 00, 32 84 13 00, 03 05 13 00, 32 84 00 00, 22 11 16 00, 22 11 16 00a, 22 11 16 00b
32 91 13 16	32 91 13 16
32 91 13 26	32 91 13 16
32 91 13 33	31 13 16 00, 31 01 20 00, 31 23 16 26, 32 18 23 13
32 91 13 36	32 91 13 16, 32 18 23 13
32 91 19 13	32 91 19 13, 32 91 19 13a, 02 41 13 13a, 31 11 00 00, 31 13 16 00, 31 01 20 00, 31 23 16 26, 32 18 23 13
32 91 19 16	02 41 13 13a, 31 11 00 00, 31 13 16 00, 31 01 20 00, 31 23 16 26, 32 91 19 13, 32 91 19 13a, 32 18 23 13
32 92 16 00	32 18 23 13
32 92 19 13	32 18 23 13
32 92 19 19	32 18 23 13
32 92 23 00	32 18 23 13
32 93 13 00	32 14 09 00
32 93 23 00	32 14 09 00
32 93 33 00	31 11 00 00, 32 14 09 00
32 93 43 00	32 14 09 00
32 93 53 00	31 13 16 00, 32 91 13 16, 32 14 09 00
32 94 13 00	32 14 09 00
32 94 16 00	32 14 09 00
32 94 23 00	31 13 16 00
32 94 43 00	32 94 43 00, 01 22 16 00, 32 39 23 00
32 94 49 00	01 22 16 00, 31 13 16 00, 32 14 09 00
32 96 33 00	32 91 13 16
32 96 43 00	32 91 13 16
33 01 10 58	33 01 10 58, 33 01 10 58a, 22 05 23 00
33 01 10 71	33 01 10 71, 01 22 16 00, 22 05 23 00
33 01 30 11	01 22 16 00
33 01 30 41	33 01 10 58a
33 01 30 42	33 01 30 42, 22 05 23 00, 33 01 10 58, 33 01 10 58a
33 01 30 51	01 22 16 00, 22 05 23 00, 33 01 10 58, 33 01 30 42
33 01 30 61	01 22 16 00
33 01 30 71	33 42 11 00
33 01 30 81	33 01 30 81, 01 22 16 00, 22 05 23 00, 22 05 76 00, 33 01 10 58, 33 01 30 42, 33 42 11 00, 31 32 19 16
33 01 30 82	01 22 16 00, 22 05 23 00, 22 05 76 00, 33 01 10 58, 33 01 30 42
33 01 30 86	01 22 16 00, 22 05 23 00, 22 05 76 00, 33 01 10 58, 33 01 30 42
33 01 30 89	01 22 16 00
33 01 34 13	22 05 23 00
33 05 07 13	33 05 07 13, 01 22 16 00
33 05 07 23	01 22 16 00, 33 05 07 13
33 05 07 24	33 05 07 13
33 05 61 00	22 05 76 00, 33 42 11 00
33 05 63 00	33 01 30 81
33 05 84 00	01 22 16 00, 22 05 23 00, 22 05 76 00, 33 01 30 81, 33 42 11 00, 31 32 19 16
33 05 97 16	01 22 16 00
33 11 13 00	33 11 13 00, 33 11 13 00a, 01 22 16 00, 22 05 23 00, 22 11 23 23
33 14 00 00	22 05 23 00a
33 14 11 00	22 05 23 00a
33 14 13 00	22 05 23 00a
33 14 13 13	01 22 16 00, 22 05 23 00, 31 62 23 13, 22 05 23 00a, 22 05 76 00, 33 42 11 00
33 14 13 23	33 14 13 23, 33 14 13 23a, 33 14 13 23b, 01 22 16 00, 22 05 23 00, 22 05 23 00a, 33 11 13 00, 22 11 23 23, 22 05 76 00, 32 91 19 13a, 31 05 13 00, 33 42 11 00

Task	Specification(s)
33 14 13 36	33 14 13 36, 22 05 23 00, 22 11 23 23, 33 14 13 23a
33 14 13 39	22 05 23 00, 22 05 23 00a
33 14 13 43	22 05 23 00, 22 05 23 00a, 22 11 23 23, 22 05 76 00, 33 14 13 23a, 33 14 13 36
33 14 13 53	01 22 16 00, 22 05 23 00a, 22 11 16 00, 22 11 16 00a, 22 11 16 00b, 22 11 16 00c, 22 11 16 00d, 22 11 16 00e, 22 11 16 00f, 22 11 16 00g, 22 11 16 00h, 22 11 16 00i
33 14 15 23	01 22 16 00, 22 05 23 00, 22 05 23 00a
33 14 19 00	01 22 16 00, 22 05 23 00, 22 05 23 00a
33 19 11 00	33 19 11 00, 33 19 11 00a, 01 22 16 00, 22 05 23 00a
33 31 11 00	22 05 23 00, 33 14 13 23, 22 05 23 00a, 33 11 13 00, 22 11 23 23, 22 05 76 00, 32 91 19 13a, 33 14 13 23a, 31 05 13 00, 33 42 11 00
33 32 16 00	01 22 16 00, 22 13 29 13b
33 34 13 13	32 91 19 13a
33 34 13 23	32 91 19 13a
33 34 13 33	32 91 19 13a
33 34 51 00	32 91 19 13a
33 34 53 13	32 91 19 13a
33 34 56 00	32 91 19 13a
33 41 16 00	01 22 16 00, 22 05 23 00, 22 05 76 00, 32 91 19 13a, 31 05 13 00, 33 42 11 00, 22 11 16 00e
33 41 19 00	22 05 23 00, 31 05 13 00
33 42 11 00	33 42 11 00, 22 05 23 00, 33 14 13 23, 22 05 23 00a, 22 05 76 00, 33 14 13 23b, 31 05 13 00, 22 11 16 00e, 22 05 76 00a
33 42 13 13	33 42 13 13, 01 22 16 00, 22 05 23 00, 22 05 76 00, 33 42 11 00
33 42 23 00	22 05 23 00, 33 42 11 00, 31 32 19 16
33 42 26 16	22 05 23 00, 33 14 13 23, 33 42 11 00
33 42 26 19	22 05 23 00, 33 42 11 00
33 42 26 23	33 42 11 00
33 42 31 00	22 05 23 00, 33 42 11 00, 31 32 19 16
33 42 33 00	22 05 23 00, 33 42 11 00, 31 32 19 16
33 42 36 00	22 05 23 00, 33 42 11 00, 31 32 19 16
33 44 36 00	22 13 19 26, 28 46 00 00
33 46 53 00	33 46 53 00, 22 05 23 00, 33 14 13 23
33 51 29 00	01 22 16 00, 22 11 23 23, 22 11 16 00, 22 11 16 00a, 22 11 16 00b, 22 13 19 33, 22 13 19 33a, 22 11 16 00d
33 53 16 00	22 05 23 00
33 59 11 00	22 05 23 00
33 59 16 00	22 05 23 00
34 01 43 00	01 22 16 00
34 05 43 00	32 01 11 53, 32 12 13 13, 32 12 13 13a, 03 41 16 00, 03 01 30 71, 05 05 23 00, 05 12 23 00, 05 50 00 00
34 41 13 00	34 41 13 00, 01 22 16 00, 05 15 16 00, 27 11 19 00, 26 05 33 16a
34 41 16 00	34 41 13 00
34 71 13 13	34 71 13 13
34 71 13 16	34 71 13 16, 34 71 13 13
34 71 13 26	01 22 16 00, 34 71 13 13
34 71 16 00	01 22 16 00, 34 71 13 16, 34 71 13 13
34 71 19 16	32 17 13 23, 32 17 13 23a
34 82 23 00	01 22 16 00
34 82 26 00	01 22 16 00
35 05 70 00	01 22 16 00
40 05 23 43	22 05 23 00, 33 46 53 00, 33 11 13 00, 22 11 23 23, 22 05 76 00, 22 11 16 00, 22 11 16 00a, 22 11 16 00b
43 23 78 31	22 05 23 00
43 24 41 23	22 05 23 00
43 42 41 00	01 22 16 00



This Page Intentionally Left Blank

[www.gordian.com](http://www.gordian.com)  
855.467.9444

30 Patewood Drive, Suite 350  
Greenville, South Carolina 29615

**G** **RDIAN**®